



THE HOLY BIBLE

QFT VERSION

QUEST FOR TRUTH INSTITUTE



THE HOLY BIBLE

QFT VERSION



Copyright © 2024
Quest For Truth Institute Inc.

All rights reserved. Except for brief excerpts for review purposes, no part of this publication may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means – electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or information storage and retrieval systems, or use of hermeneutical conclusions of copyright owner. However, all Scripture may be freely quoted.

OLD TESTAMENT

[Genesis](#)

[Exodus](#)

[Leviticus](#)

[Numbers](#)

[Deuteronomy](#)

[Joshua](#)

[Judges](#)

[Ruth](#)

[1 Samuel](#)

[2 Samuel](#)

[1 Kings](#)

[2 Kings](#)

[1 Chronicles](#)

[2 Chronicles](#)

[Ezra](#)

[Nehemiah](#)

[Esther](#)

[Job](#)

[Psalms](#)

[Proverbs](#)

[Ecclesiastes](#)

[Song of Solomon](#)

[Isaiah](#)

[Jeremiah](#)

[Lamentations](#)

[Ezekiel](#)

[Daniel](#)

[Hosea](#)

[Joel](#)

[Amos](#)

[Obadiah](#)

[Jonah](#)

[Micah](#)

[Nahum](#)

[Habakkuk](#)

[Zephaniah](#)

[Haggai](#)

[Zechariah](#)

[Malachi](#)

NEW TESTAMENT

[Matthew](#)

[Mark](#)

[Luke](#)

[John](#)

[Acts](#)

[Romans](#)

[1 Corinthians](#)

[2 Corinthians](#)

[Galatians](#)

[Ephesians](#)

[Philippians](#)

[Colossians](#)

[1 Thessalonians](#)

[2 Thessalonians](#)

[1 Timothy](#)

[2 Timothy](#)

[Titus](#)

[Philemon](#)

[Hebrews](#)

[James](#)

[1 Peter](#)

[2 Peter](#)

[1 John](#)

[2 John](#)

[3 John](#)

[Jude](#)

[Revelation](#)

Genesis

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#) [41](#) [42](#) [43](#) [44](#) [45](#) [46](#) [47](#) [48](#) [49](#) [50](#)

GENESIS ONE

Elohim creates heaven and earth

1 In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth. [Job 38:4](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Ps 89:11](#); [Ps 136:5](#); [Acts 14:15](#); [Acts 17:24](#); [Heb 11:3](#); [\[Neh 9:6\]](#); [\[Jer 10:12\]](#); [\[Jer 51:15\]](#); [\[Rev 14:7\]](#);

2 And the earth became without form, and void; and darkness *was* upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of Elohim was hovering upon the surface of the waters. [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#);

the light

3 And Elohim said, Let there be light: and there was light. [\[John 1:3\]](#); [\[2Cor 4:6\]](#); [\[Eph 3:9\]](#); [\[Col 1:16\]](#); [\[Heb 1:2\]](#);

4 And Elohim saw the light, that *it was* good: and Elohim separated the light from the darkness. [\[Acts 7:50\]](#);

5 And Elohim called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And the night and the morning were the first day.

the firmament

6 And Elohim said, Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters. [Ps 33:6](#); [Ps 104:2](#); [Ps 136:5](#); [Prov 8:28](#); [Isa 42:5](#); [Jer 10:12](#); [Jer 51:15](#); [\[Job 9:8\]](#); [\[Job 37:18\]](#); [\[Ps 148:5\]](#);

7 And Elohim made the expanse, and separated the waters which *were* under the expanse from the waters which *were* above the expanse: and it was so. [Ps 33:7](#); [Ps 136:6](#); [Prov 8:24](#); [Ps 148:4](#);

8 And Elohim called the expanse Heaven. And the night and the morning were the second day.

separates the dry land

9 And Elohim said, Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the dry *land* appear: and it was so. [Job 26:10](#); [Job 38:8](#); [Ps 24:2](#); [Ps 136:6](#); [\[Prov 3:20\]](#); [\[Prov 8:29\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:5\]](#);

10 And Elohim called the dry *land* Earth; and the gathering together of the waters called he Seas: and Elohim saw that *it was* good.

11 And Elohim said, Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, *and* the fruit tree yielding fruit after its kind, whose seed *is* in itself, upon the earth: and it was so.

12 And the earth brought forth grass, *and* herb yielding seed after its kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed *was* in itself, after its kind: and Elohim saw that *it was* good.

13 And the night and the morning were the third day.

forms the sun, moon, and stars

14 And Elohim said, Let there be lights in the expanse of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for signs, and for appointed times, and for days, and years: [Ps 136:7](#); [\[Ps 74:16\]](#);

15 And let them be for lights in the expanse of the heaven to give light upon the earth: and it was so. [Deut 4:19](#); [Jer 31:35](#);

16 And Elohim made two great lights; the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night: *He made* the stars also. [\[Ps 136:8\]](#); [\[Jer 31:35\]](#);

17 And Elohim set them in the expanse of the heaven to give light upon the earth,

18 And to rule over the day and over the night, and to separate the light from the darkness: and Elohim saw that *it was* good.

19 And the night and the morning were the fourth day.

fishes and fowls

20 And Elohim said, Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that has life, and fowl *that* may fly above the earth in the open expanse of heaven.

21 And Elohim created great whales, and every living creature that moves, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind, and every winged fowl after its kind: and Elohim saw that *it was* good.

22 And Elohim blessed them, saying, Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth. [Gen 8:17](#);

23 And the night and the morning were the fifth day.

cattle, wild beasts, and creeping things

24 And Elohim said, Let the earth bring forth the living creature after its kind, cattle, and creeping thing, and beast of the earth after its kind: and it was so.

25 And Elohim made the beast of the earth after its kind, and cattle after their kind, and every thing that crawls upon the earth after its kind: and Elohim saw that *it was* good.

creates man in his own image, blesses him

26 And Elohim said, Let Us make man in Our image, after Our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that crawls upon the earth. [\[Gen 5:1\]](#); [\[Gen 5:2\]](#); [\[1Cor 11:7\]](#); [\[Col 3:10\]](#);

27 So Elohim created man in His *own* image, in the image of Elohim He created him; male and female He created them. [Gen 5:1](#); [Gen 9:6](#); [1Cor 11:7](#); [Eph 4:24](#); [Col 3:10](#); [Matt 19:4](#); [\[Matt 12:12\]](#); [\[Mark 10:6\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:13\]](#); [\[Jas 3:9\]](#);

28 And Elohim blessed them, and Elohim said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth. [Gen 8:17](#); [Gen 9:1-2](#); [Gen 9:7](#); [\[Gen 9:1\]](#);

grants the fruits of the earth for food

29 And Elohim said, Behold, I have given you every herb bearing seed, which *is* upon the face of all the earth, and every tree, upon which *is* the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you it shall be for food. [Gen 9:3](#); [Ps 104:14-15](#); [\[1Tim 4:3\]](#);

30 And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the air, and to every thing that crawls upon the earth, wherein *there is* life, *I have given* every green herb for food: and it was so. [Ps 104:14](#);

31 And Elohim saw everything that He had made, and, behold, *it was* very good. And the night and the morning were the sixth day. [Deut 32:4](#); [Mark 7:37](#); [\[Exod 31:17\]](#); [\[1Tim 4:4\]](#);

The first Sabbath

1 Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them.

2 And on the seventh day Elohim ended His work which He had made; and He rested on the seventh day from all His work which He had made. [Exod 20:11](#); [Exod 31:17](#); [Deut 5:14](#); [Heb 4:4](#); [\[Deut 5:12\]](#);

3 And Elohim blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that on it He had rested from all His work which Elohim created and made.

Further particulars concerning the manner of creation

4 These *are* the generations of the heavens and of the earth when they were created, in the day that the YAHWEH Elohim made the earth and the heavens,

5 And every plant of the field before it was in the earth, and every herb of the field before it grew: for the YAHWEH Elohim had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and *there was* not a man to till the ground.

6 But there went up a mist from the earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.

7 And the YAHWEH Elohim formed man *of* the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being. [1Cor 15:47](#); [1Cor 15:45](#); [\[Job 10:9\]](#); [\[Eccl 12:7\]](#); [\[Acts 17:25\]](#);

The planting of the garden of Eden, and its situation

8 And the YAHWEH Elohim planted a garden eastward in Eden; and there He put the man whom He had formed. [\[Ezek 31:8\]](#);

9 And out of the ground the YAHWEH Elohim caused to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge of good and evil. [Rev 2:7](#);

10 And a river went out of Eden to water the garden; and from thence it was parted, and became into four heads.

11 The name of the first *is* Pison: that *is* it which compasses the whole land of Havilah, where *there is* gold;

12 And the gold of that land *is* good: there *is* bdellium and the onyx stone.

13 And the name of the second river *is* Gihon: the same *is* it that compasses the whole land of Ethiopia.

14 And the name of the third river *is* Hiddekel: that *is* it which goes toward the east of Assyria. And the fourth river *is* Euphrates. [\[Dan 10:4\]](#);

man is placed in it; and the tree of knowledge only forbidden

15 And the YAHWEH Elohim took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it.

16 And the YAHWEH Elohim commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden you may freely eat:

17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you shall not eat of it: for in the day that you eat thereof you shall surely die. [\[Rom 5:12\]](#); [\[Rom 6:23\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:21\]](#);

The animals are named by Adam

18 And the YAHWEH Elohim said, *It is* not good that the man should be alone; I will make him a help meet for him. [\[1Cor 11:8\]](#);

19 And out of the ground the YAHWEH Elohim formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought *them* unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that *was* the name thereof.

20 And Adam gave names to all cattle, and to the fowl of the air, and to every beast of the field; but for Adam there was not found a help meet for him.

The making of woman, and the institution of marriage

21 And the YAHWEH Elohim caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and He took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof; [\[1Cor 11:8\];](#)

22 And the rib, which the YAHWEH Elohim had taken from man, He made into a woman, and brought her unto the man. [1Cor 11:8; \[1Tim 2:13\];](#)

23 And Adam said, This *is* now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman, because she was taken out of Man. [Mal 2:14; Eph 5:30-31;](#)

24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh. [Matt 19:5; Mark 10:7; Eph 5:31; 1Cor 6:16; Eph 5:28-29;](#)

25 And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed. [Gen 3:7;](#)

GENESIS THREE

The serpent deceives Eve

1 Now the serpent was more cunning than any creature of the field which the YAHWEH Elohim had made. And he said unto the woman, yes, has Elohim said, you shall not eat of every tree of the garden? [\[John 8:44\];](#)

2 And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:

3 But of the fruit of the tree which *is* in the midst of the garden, Elohim has said, you shall not eat of it, neither shall you touch it, lest you die.

4 And the serpent said unto the woman, you shall not surely die: [2Cor 11:3;](#)

5 For Elohim knows that in the day you eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and you shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. [John 8:44;](#)

Both she and Adam transgress the divine command, and fall into sin and misery

6 And when the woman saw that the tree *was* good for food, and that it *was* pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make *one* wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat. [Rom 5:12; Rom 5:14-15; 1Tim 2:14; \[1Cor 15:21\];](#)

7 And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they *were* naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons. [Gen 2:25;](#)

Elohim arraigns them

8 And they heard the voice of the YAHWEH Elohim walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the YAHWEH Elohim among the trees of the garden.

9 And the YAHWEH Elohim called unto Adam, and said unto him, Where are you?

10 And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I *was* naked; and I hid myself.

11 And He said, Who told you that you *were* naked? Have you eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded you that you should not eat?

12 And the man said, The woman whom You gave *to be* with me, she gave me of the tree, and I did eat.

13 And the YAHWEH Elohim said unto the woman, What *is* this *that* you have done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I did eat. [Rev 12:13;](#)

The serpent is cursed

14 And the YAHWEH Elohim said unto the serpent, Because you have done this, you are cursed above all cattle, and above every animal of the field; upon thy belly shall you go, and dust shall you eat all the days of thy life:

The promised seed

15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; He shall bruise thy head, and you shall bruise His heel. [Matt 4:1; Col 2:15; \[Luke 24:27\]; \[John 1:45\]; \[John 5:46\]; \[Acts 10:43\]; \[Acts 13:32\]; \[Acts 26:6\]; \[Acts 28:23\]; \[Rom 1:2\];](#)

The punishment of mankind

16 Unto the woman he said, I will greatly multiply thy sorrow and thy conception; in sorrow you shall bring forth children; and thy desire *shall be* to thy husband, and he shall rule over you. [1Cor 14:34; 1Tim 2:11-12; Titus 2:5; 1Pet 3:6; \[Eph 5:22\]; \[Col 3:18\]; \[1Tim 2:12\]; \[1Pet 3:1\];](#)

17 And unto Adam he said, Because you have hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and have eaten of the tree, of which I commanded you, saying, you shall not eat of it: cursed *is* the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shall you eat *of* it all the days of thy life;

18 Thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to you; and you shall eat the herb of the field;

19 In the sweat of thy face shall you eat bread, till you return unto the ground; for out of it were you taken: for dust you are, and unto dust shall you return. [\[Job 10:9\]](#); [\[Job 34:15\]](#); [\[Eccl 3:20\]](#); [\[Eccl 12:7\]](#);

20 And Adam called his wife's name Eve; because she was the mother of all living.

Their first clothing

21 Unto Adam also and to his wife did the YAHWEH Elohim make coats of skins, and clothed them.

Their expulsion from paradise

22 And the YAHWEH Elohim said, Behold, the man has become like one of Us, to know good and evil: and now, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live for ever:

23 Therefore the YAHWEH Elohim sent him forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground from whence he was taken.

24 So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to guard the way to the tree of life.

GENESIS FOUR

The birth, occupation, and offering of Cain and Abel

1 And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bore Cain, and said, I have gotten a man from the YAHWEH.

2 And she again bore his brother Abel. And Abel was a keeper of sheep, but Cain was a tiller of the ground.

3 And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto the YAHWEH.

4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the YAHWEH had regard unto Abel and his offering: [Heb 11:4](#);

5 But He did not have regard unto Cain and his offering. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell.

6 And the YAHWEH said unto Cain, Why are you wroth? and why is thy countenance fallen?

7 If you do well, shall you not be accepted? If you do not well, sin lies at the door. And unto you *shall be* his desire, and you shall rule over him.

Cain murders his brother Abel

8 And Cain talked with Abel his brother: and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him. [Matt 23:35](#); [1John 3:12](#); [Jude 1:11](#); [\[Luke 11:51\]](#);

9 And the YAHWEH said unto Cain, Where *is* Abel thy brother? And he said, I do not know: *Am* I my brother's keeper?

10 And he said, What have you done? the voice of thy brother's blood cries unto me from the ground. [Heb 12:24](#);

The curse of Cain

11 And now are you cursed from the earth, which has opened her mouth to receive thy brother's blood from thy hand;

12 When you till the ground, it shall not henceforth yield unto you her strength; you shall be a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth. [Prov 28:17](#);

13 And Cain said unto the YAHWEH, My punishment *is* greater than I can bear.

14 Behold, you have driven me out this day from the face of the earth; and from thy face shall I be hid; and I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth; and it shall come to pass, *that* every one that finds me shall slay me. [Job 15:20-21](#);

15 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Therefore whosoever slays Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold. And the YAHWEH set a mark upon Cain, so no one who found him would kill him. [\[Gen 4:24\]](#);

16 And Cain went out from the presence of the YAHWEH, and dwelt in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden.

Has a son called Enoch, and builds a city, which he calls after his name

17 And Cain knew his wife; and she conceived, and bore Enoch: and he built a city, and called the name of the city, after the name of his son, Enoch.

His descendants, with Lamech and his two wives

18 And unto Enoch was born Irad: and Irad begat Mehujael: and Mehujael begat Methusael: and Methusael begat Lamech.

19 And Lamech took unto him two wives: the name of the one *was* Adah, and the name of the other Zillah.

20 And Adah bore Jabal: he was the father of such as dwell in tents, and *of such as have* cattle.

21 And his brother's name *was* Jubal: he was the father of all such as handle the harp and organ.

22 And Zillah, she also bore Tubalcain, a hammerer of every tool made of brass and iron: and the sister of Tubalcain *was* Naamah.

23 And Lamech said unto his wives, Adah and Zillah, Hear my voice; you wives of Lamech, hearken unto my speech: for I have slain a man for wounding me, and a young man for hurting me.

24 If Cain shall be avenged sevenfold, truly Lamech seventy and sevenfold. [Gen 4:15](#);

The birth of Seth

25 And Adam knew his wife again; and she bore a son, and called his name Seth: For Elohim, *she said*, has appointed me another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew.

and Enos

26 And to Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name Enos: then began men to call upon the name of the YAHWEH. [\[Gen 5:6\]](#); [\[Gen 13:4\]](#); [\[Gen 21:33\]](#); [\[Ezek 16:61\]](#);

Recapitulation of the creation of man

- 1** This *is* the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that Elohim created man, in the likeness of Elohim He made him; [Gen 1:26](#); [Gen 9:6](#); [1Cor 11:7](#); [\[Gen 1:27\]](#); [\[Col 3:10\]](#);
2 He created them male and female; and blessed them, and called them mankind, in the day when they were created. [Gen 1:26](#); [Matt 19:4](#); [Mark 10:6](#);

The genealogy, age, and death of the patriarchs from Adam to Noah

- 3** And Adam lived a hundred and thirty years, and begat *a son* in his own likeness, after his image; and called his name Seth: [\[1Chr 1:1\]](#); [\[Job 14:4\]](#); [\[Luke 3:38\]](#);
4 And the days of Adam after he had begotten Seth were eight hundred years: and he begat sons and daughters: [1Chr 1:1](#);
5 And all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years: and he died.
6 And Seth lived a hundred and five years, and begat Enos: [Gen 4:26](#);
7 And Seth lived after he begat Enos eight hundred and seven years, and begat sons and daughters:
8 And all the days of Seth were nine hundred and twelve years: and he died.
9 And Enos lived ninety years, and begat Cainan: [1Chr 1:2](#);
10 And Enos lived after he begat Cainan eight hundred and fifteen years, and begat sons and daughters:
11 And all the days of Enos were nine hundred and five years: and he died.
12 And Cainan lived seventy years, and begat Mahalaleel:
13 And Cainan lived after he begat Mahalaleel eight hundred and forty years, and begat sons and daughters:
14 And all the days of Cainan were nine hundred and ten years: and he died.
15 And Mahalaleel lived sixty and five years, and begat Jared:
16 And Mahalaleel lived after he begat Jared eight hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters:
17 And all the days of Mahalaleel were eight hundred ninety and five years: and he died.
18 And Jared lived a hundred sixty and two years, and he begat Enoch: [1Chr 1:3](#); [\[Jude 1:14\]](#);
19 And Jared lived after he begat Enoch eight hundred years, and begat sons and daughters:
20 And all the days of Jared were nine hundred sixty and two years: and he died.
21 And Enoch lived sixty and five years, and begat Methuselah: [Jude 1:14](#);

The godliness and translation of Enoch

- 22** And Enoch walked with Elohim after he begat Methuselah three hundred years, and begat sons and daughters: [Heb 11:5](#); [\[Gen 6:9\]](#); [\[Gen 17:1\]](#);
23 And all the days of Enoch were three hundred sixty and five years:
24 And Enoch walked with Elohim: and he *was* not; for Elohim took him. [2Kgs 2:11](#); [Heb 11:5](#);

The birth of Noah, etc

- 25** And Methuselah lived a hundred eighty and seven years, and begat Lamech:
26 And Methuselah lived after he begat Lamech seven hundred eighty and two years, and begat sons and daughters:
27 And all the days of Methuselah were nine hundred sixty and nine years: and he died.
28 And Lamech lived a hundred eighty and two years, and begat a son:
29 And he called his name Noah, saying, This *same* shall comfort us concerning our work and toil of our hands, because of the ground which the YAHWEH has cursed.
30 And Lamech lived after he begat Noah five hundred ninety and five years, and begat sons and daughters:
31 And all the days of Lamech were seven hundred seventy and seven years: and he died.

32 And Noah was five hundred years old: and Noah begat Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

The wickedness of the world, which provoked Elohim's wrath, and caused the flood

- 1** And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them,
- 2** That the sons of Elohim saw the daughters of men that they *were* fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. [\[Matt 24:37\]; \[Luke 17:26\];](#)
- 3** And the YAHWEH said, My spirit shall not always abide with mankind, for they indeed *are* flesh: yet their *remaining* days shall be a hundred and twenty years. [\[1Pet 3:20\];](#)
- 4** The Nephilim were on the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of Elohim came in unto the daughters of men, and they bore *children* to them, the same *became* mighty men which *were* of old, men of renown.
- 5** And GOD saw that the wickedness of man *was* great in the earth, and *that* every imagination of the thoughts of his heart *was* only evil continually. [Gen 8:21; Job 15:16; Prov 6:14; Jer 17:9; Matt 15:19; Rom 3:10-12; Rom 8:6; \[Matt 7:11\]; \[Mark 7:21\]; \[Rom 7:18\]; \[1Pet 3:20\];](#)
- 6** And the YAHWEH felt sorry that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart.
- 7** And the YAHWEH said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth; both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air; for I am sorry that I have made them.

Noah finds grace

- 8** But Noah found grace in the eyes of the YAHWEH.

His generations, etc

- 9** These *are* the generations of Noah: Noah was a just man *and* perfect in his generations, *and* Noah walked with Elohim. [Gen 5:22; \[Gen 7:1\];](#)
- 10** And Noah begat three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. [\[Gen 9:18\];](#)
- 11** The earth also was corrupt before Elohim, and the earth was filled with violence.
- 12** And Elohim looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.
- 13** And Elohim said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth. [\[Heb 11:7\];](#)

The order, form, dimensions, and end of the ark

- 14** Make you an ark of gopher wood; rooms shall you make in the ark, and shall pitch it within and without with pitch. [\[1Pet 3:20\];](#)
- 15** And this *is the fashion* which you shall make it *of*: The length of the ark *shall be* three hundred cubits, the breadth of it fifty cubits, and the height of it thirty cubits.
- 16** A window shall you make to the ark, and in a cubit shall you finish it above; and the door of the ark shall you set in the side thereof; *with* lower, second, and third *stories* shall you make it.
- 17** And, behold, I, even I, do bring a flood of waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh, wherein *is* the breath of life, from under heaven; *and* every thing that *is* in the earth shall die.
- 18** But with you will I establish my covenant; and you shall come into the ark, you, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons' wives with you. [1Pet 3:20; 2Pet 2:5;](#)
- 19** And of every living thing of all flesh, two of every *sort* shall you bring into the ark, to keep *them* alive with you; they shall be male and female.
- 20** Of fowls after their kind, and of cattle after their kind, of every creeping thing of the earth after its kind, two of every *sort* shall come unto you, to keep *them* alive.

21 And take you unto you of all food that is eaten, and you shall gather *it* to you; and it shall be for food for you, and for them.

22 Thus did Noah; according to all that Elohim commanded him, so did he. [Gen 7:5](#); [Heb 11:7](#);

Noah, with his family, and the living creatures, enter the ark, and the flood begins

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Noah, Come you and all thy house into the ark; for you have I seen righteous before me in this generation. [2Pet 2:5](#); [Gen 6:9](#);

2 Of every clean beast you shall take to you by sevens, the male and his female: and of beasts that *are* not clean by two, the male and his female. [Lev 11:1-47](#);

3 Of fowls also of the air by sevens, the male and the female; to keep seed alive upon the face of all the earth.

4 For yet seven days, and I will cause it to rain upon the earth forty days and forty nights; and every living substance that I have made will I destroy from off the face of the earth.

5 And Noah did according unto all that the YAHWEH commanded him. [Gen 6:22](#);

6 And Noah *was* six hundred years old when the flood of waters was upon the earth.

7 And Noah went in, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him, into the ark, because of the waters of the flood. [Matt 24:38](#); [Luke 17:27](#); [1Pet 3:20](#); [[Luke 17:26](#)];

8 Of clean beasts, and of beasts that *are* not clean, and of fowls, and of every thing that crawls upon the earth,

9 There went in two and two unto Noah into the ark, the male and the female, as Elohim had commanded Noah.

10 And it came to pass after seven days, that the waters of the flood were upon the earth. [[2Pet 3:6](#)];

11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened. [[Prov 8:28](#)];

12 And the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights.

13 In the selfsame day entered Noah, and Shem, and Ham, and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, into the ark;

14 They, and every beast after its kind, and all the cattle after their kind, and every creeping thing that crawls upon the earth after its kind, and every fowl after its kind, every bird of every sort.

15 And they went in unto Noah into the ark, two and two of all flesh, wherein *is* the breath of life.

16 And they that went in, went in male and female of all flesh, as Elohim had commanded him: and the YAHWEH shut him in.

The increase and continuance of the flood for forty days

17 And the flood was forty days upon the earth; and the waters increased, and bore up the ark, and it was lifted up above the earth.

18 And the waters prevailed, and were increased greatly upon the earth; and the ark went upon the face of the waters.

19 And the waters prevailed exceedingly upon the earth; and all the high hills, that *were* under the whole heaven, were covered.

20 Fifteen cubits upward did the waters prevail; and the mountains were covered.

All flesh is destroyed by it

21 And all flesh died that moved upon the earth, both of fowl, and of cattle, and of beast, and of every creeping thing that crawls upon the earth, and every man: [Luke 17:27](#); [[2Pet 3:6](#)];

22 All in whose nostrils *was* the breath of life, of all that *was* in the dry *land*, died.

23 And every living substance was destroyed which was upon the face of the ground, both man, and cattle, and the creeping things, and the fowl of the heaven; and they were destroyed from the earth: and Noah only remained *alive*, and they that *were* with him in the ark. [2Pet 2:5](#);

Its duration

24 And the waters prevailed upon the earth a hundred and fifty days.

GENESIS EIGHT

Elohim remembers Noah, and assuages the waters

1 And Elohim remembered Noah, and every living thing, and all the cattle that *was* with him in the ark: and Elohim made a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters subsided;

2 The fountains also of the deep and the windows of heaven were stopped, and the rain from heaven was restrained;

3 And the waters returned from off the earth continually: and after the end of the hundred and fifty days the waters were abated.

The ark rests on Ararat

4 And the ark rested in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, upon the mountains of Ararat.

5 And the waters decreased continually until the tenth month: in the tenth *month*, on the first *day* of the month, were the tops of the mountains seen.

Noah sends forth a raven and then a dove

6 And it came to pass at the end of forty days, that Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made:

7 And he sent forth a raven, which went forth to and fro, until the waters were dried up from off the earth.

8 Also he sent forth a dove from him, to see if the waters were abated from off the face of the ground;

9 But the dove found no rest for the sole of her foot, and she returned unto him into the ark, for the waters *were* on the face of the whole earth: then he put forth his hand, and took her, and pulled her in unto him into the ark.

10 And he stayed yet other seven days; and again he sent forth the dove out of the ark;

11 And the dove came in to him in the evening; and, lo, in her mouth *was* a freshly plucked olive leaf: so Noah knew that the waters were abated from off the earth.

12 And he stayed yet other seven days; and sent forth the dove; which returned not again unto him any more.

Noah, being commanded, goes forth from the ark

13 And it came to pass in the six hundredth and first year, in the first *month*, the first *day* of the month, the waters were dried up from off the earth: and Noah removed the covering of the ark, and looked, and, behold, the face of the ground was dry.

14 And in the second month, on the seven and twentieth day of the month, was the earth dried.

15 And Elohim spoke unto Noah, saying,

16 Go forth of the ark, you, and thy wife, and thy sons, and thy sons' wives with you.

17 Bring forth with you every living thing that *is* with you, of all flesh, *both* of fowl, and of cattle, and of every creeping thing that crawls upon the earth; that they may breed abundantly in the earth, and be fruitful, and multiply upon the earth. [Gen 1:22](#); [Gen 1:28](#); [Gen 9:1](#); [[Gen 9:7](#)];

18 And Noah went forth, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him: [[1Pet 3:20](#)];

19 Every beast, every creeping thing, and every fowl, *and* whatsoever crawls upon the earth, after their kinds, went forth out of the ark.

He builds an altar, and offers sacrifice, which Elohim accepts, and promises to curse the earth no more

20 And Noah built an altar unto the YAHWEH; and took of every clean beast, and of every clean fowl, and offered burnt offerings on the altar. [Lev 11:1-47](#);

21 And the YAHWEH smelled a sweet savour; and the YAHWEH said in his heart, I will not again curse the ground any more for man's sake; for the imagination of man's heart *is* evil from his youth; neither will I again smite any more every thing living, as I have done. [Gen 6:5](#); [Prov 22:15](#); [Matt 15:19](#); [[Matt 7:11](#)]; [[Mark 7:21](#)]; [[Rom 7:18](#)];

22 While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease. [Jer 33:20](#); [Jer 33:25](#);

Elohim blesses Noah and his sons, and grants them flesh for food

1 And Elohim blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. [Gen 1:28](#); [Gen 8:17](#);

2 And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moves *upon* the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered.

3 Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things. [Gen 1:29](#); [\[1Tim 4:3\]](#);

Blood and murder are forbidden

4 But flesh with the life thereof, *which is* the blood thereof, shall you not eat. [Lev 3:17](#); [Lev 7:26](#); [Lev 17:14](#); [Lev 19:26](#); [Deut 12:23](#); [\[Lev 17:10\]](#); [\[Deut 12:16\]](#); [\[Ezek 33:25\]](#); [\[Acts 15:20\]](#); [\[Acts 15:29\]](#); [\[Acts 21:25\]](#);

5 And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man. [Exod 21:12](#); [Exod 21:28](#);

6 Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of Elohim made he man. [Lam 4:13](#); [Matt 26:52](#); [Rev 13:10](#); [Gen 1:27](#); [\[Gen 5:1\]](#); [\[Deut 19:11\]](#); [\[1Cor 11:7\]](#); [\[Col 3:10\]](#);

7 And you, be you fruitful, and multiply; bring forth abundantly in the earth, and multiply therein. [Gen 1:28](#); [Gen 8:17](#);

Elohim's covenant, of which the rainbow was constituted a pledge

8 And Elohim spoke unto Noah, and to his sons with him, saying,

9 And I, behold, I establish my covenant with you, and with your seed after you; [Isa 54:9](#);

10 And with every living creature that *is* with you, of the fowl, of the cattle, and of every beast of the earth with you; from all that go out of the ark, to every beast of the earth.

11 And I will establish my covenant with you; neither shall all flesh be cut off any more by the waters of a flood; neither shall there any more be a flood to destroy the earth. [\[Isa 54:9\]](#);

12 And Elohim said, This *is* the token of the covenant which I make between me and you and every living creature that *is* with you, for perpetual generations:

13 I do set my bow in the cloud, and it shall be for a token of a covenant between me and the earth.

14 And it shall come to pass, when I bring a cloud over the earth, that the bow shall be seen in the cloud:

15 And I will remember my covenant, which *is* between me and you and every living creature of all flesh; and the waters shall no more become a flood to destroy all flesh.

16 And the bow shall be in the cloud; and I will look upon it, that I may remember the everlasting covenant between Elohim and every living creature of all flesh that *is* upon the earth.

17 And Elohim said unto Noah, This *is* the token of the covenant, which I have established between me and all flesh that *is* upon the earth.

Noah's family replenish the world

18 And the sons of Noah, that went forth of the ark, were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth: and Ham *is* the father of Canaan. [Gen 6:10](#);

19 These *are* the three sons of Noah: and of them was the whole earth overspread.

Noah plants a vineyard

20 And Noah began *to be* a husbandman, and he planted a vineyard:

Is drunken, and mocked by his son

21 And he drank of the wine, and was drunken; and he was uncovered within his tent.

22 And Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father, and told his two brethren without.

23 And Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid *it* upon both their shoulders, and went backward, and covered the nakedness of their father; and their faces *were* backward, and they saw not their father's nakedness.

24 And Noah awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger son had done unto him.

Curses Canaan

25 And he said, Cursed *be* Canaan; a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren.

Blesses Shem

26 And he said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.

Prays for Japheth, and dies

27 Elohim shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.

28 And Noah lived after the flood three hundred and fifty years.

29 And all the days of Noah were nine hundred and fifty years: and he died.

The generations of Noah

1 Now these *are* the generations of the sons of Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth: and unto them were sons born after the flood. [1Chr 1:4](#);

Japheth

2 The sons of Japheth; Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras. [1Chr 1:5](#);

3 And the sons of Gomer; Ashkenaz, and Riphaz, and Togarmah.

4 And the sons of Javan; Elishah, and Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

5 By these were the isles of the Gentiles divided in their lands; every one after his tongue, after their families, in their nations.

Ham

6 And the sons of Ham; Cush, and Mizraim, and Phut, and Canaan. [1Chr 1:8](#);

7 And the sons of Cush; Seba, and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabtecha: and the sons of Raamah; Sheba, and Dedan.

Nimrod the first monarch, and the descendants of Canaan

8 And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be a mighty one in the earth. [1Chr 1:10](#);

9 He was a mighty hunter in opposition to the YAHWEH: wherefore it is said, Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter in opposition to the YAHWEH.

10 And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. [\[Gen 11:2\]](#);

11 Out of that land went forth Asshur, and built Nineveh, and the city Rehoboth, and Calah, [\[Jonah 1:2\]](#);

12 And Resen between Nineveh and Calah: the same *is* a great city.

13 And Mizraim begat Ludim, and Anamim, and Lehabim, and Naphtuhim,

14 And Pathrusim, and Casluhim, (out of whom came Philistim,) and Caphtorim. [\[1Chr 1:12\]](#);

15 And Canaan begat Sidon his firstborn, and Heth,

16 And the Jebusite, and the Amorite, and the Girgasite,

17 And the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite,

18 And the Arvadite, and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite: and afterward were the families of the Canaanites spread abroad. [\[Gen 12:6\]](#);

19 And the border of the Canaanites was from Sidon, as you come to Gerar, unto Gaza; as you go, unto Sodom, and Gomorrah, and Admah, and Zeboim, even unto Lasha.

20 These *are* the sons of Ham, after their families, after their tongues, in their countries, *and* in their nations.

The sons of Shem

21 Unto Shem also, the father of all the children of Eber, the brother of Japheth the elder, even to him were *children* born.

22 The children of Shem; Elam, and Asshur, and Arphaxad, and Lud, and Aram. [1Chr 1:17](#); [Gen 11:10](#);

23 And the children of Aram; Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Mash.

24 And Arphaxad begat Salah; and Salah begat Eber. [1Chr 1:18](#);

25 And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of one *was* Peleg; for in his days was the earth divided; and his brother's name *was* Joktan.

26 And Joktan begat Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,

27 And Hadoram, and Uzal, and Diklah,

28 And Obal, and Abimael, and Sheba,

29 And Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab: all these *were* the sons of Joktan.

30 And their dwelling was from Mesha, as you go unto Sephar a mount of the east.

31 These *are* the sons of Shem, after their families, after their tongues, in their lands, after their nations.

32 These *are* the families of the sons of Noah, after their generations, in their nations: and by these were the nations divided in the earth after the flood.

One language in the world

1 And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech.

The building of Babel

2 And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar; and they dwelt there. [Gen 10:10](#);

3 And they said one to another, Go to, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar.

4 And they said, Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top *may reach* unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth.

It is interrupted by the confusion of tongues, and the builders dispersed

5 And the YAHWEH came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men built.

6 And the YAHWEH said, Behold, the people are one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do.

7 Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech.

8 So the YAHWEH scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city. [Deut 32:8](#); [Acts 17:26](#);

9 Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the YAHWEH did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the YAHWEH scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.

The generations of Shem

10 These *are* the generations of Shem: Shem *was* a hundred years old, and begat Arphaxad two years after the flood: [Gen 10:22](#); [1Chr 1:17](#); [[1Chr 1:24](#)]; [[Luke 3:34](#)];

11 And Shem lived after he begat Arphaxad five hundred years, and begat sons and daughters.

12 And Arphaxad lived five and thirty years, and begat Salah:

13 And Arphaxad lived after he begat Salah four hundred and three years, and begat sons and daughters.

14 And Salah lived thirty years, and begat Eber:

15 And Salah lived after he begat Eber four hundred and three years, and begat sons and daughters.

16 And Eber lived four and thirty years, and begat Peleg:

17 And Eber lived after he begat Peleg four hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters.

18 And Peleg lived thirty years, and begat Reu: [1Chr 1:25](#);

19 And Peleg lived after he begat Reu two hundred and nine years, and begat sons and daughters.

20 And Reu lived two and thirty years, and begat Serug:

21 And Reu lived after he begat Serug two hundred and seven years, and begat sons and daughters.

22 And Serug lived thirty years, and begat Nahor:

23 And Serug lived after he begat Nahor two hundred years, and begat sons and daughters.

24 And Nahor lived nine and twenty years, and begat Terah:

25 And Nahor lived after he begat Terah a hundred and nineteen years, and begat sons and daughters.

26 And Terah lived seventy years, and begat Abram, Nahor, and Haran. [\[Josh 24:2\]](#);

The generations of Terah, the father of Abram

27 Now these *are* the generations of Terah: Terah begat Abram, Nahor, and Haran; and Haran begat Lot. [Josh 24:2](#); [1Chr 1:26](#);

28 And Haran died before his father Terah in the land of his nativity, in Ur of the Chaldees.

29 And Abram and Nahor took them wives: the name of Abram's wife *was* Sarai; and the name of Nahor's wife, Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah, and the father of Iscah. [Gen 22:20](#);

30 But Sarai was barren; she *had* no child. [Gen 16:1-2](#); [Gen 18:11-12](#);

Terah, with Abram and Lot, remove from Ur to Haran

31 And Terah took Abram his son, and Lot the son of Haran his son's son, and Sarai his daughter in law, his son Abram's wife; and they went forth with them from Ur of the Chaldees, to go into the land of Canaan; and they came unto Haran, and dwelt there. [Josh 24:2](#); [Neh 9:7](#); [Acts 7:4](#);

32 And the days of Terah were two hundred and five years: and Terah died in Haran.

Elohim calls Abram, and blesses him with a promise of the Messiah

1 Now the YAHWEH had said unto Abram, Get you out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will show you: [Acts 7:3](#); [Heb 11:8](#); [\[Gen 24:7\]](#); [\[Josh 24:3\]](#); [\[Neh 9:7\]](#);

2 And I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you, and make thy name great; and you shall be a blessing: [\[Gen 17:2\]](#);

3 And I will bless them that bless you, and curse him that curses you: and in you shall all families of the earth be blessed. [Gen 18:18](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Acts 3:25](#); [Gal 3:8](#); [\[Gen 27:29\]](#); [\[Gen 28:14\]](#); [\[Exod 23:22\]](#); [\[John 4:22\]](#); [\[Heb 6:14\]](#);

He departs with Lot from Haran, and comes to Canaan

4 So Abram departed, as the YAHWEH had spoken unto him; and Lot went with him: and Abram *was* seventy and five years old when he departed out of Haran. [\[Heb 11:8\]](#);

5 And Abram took Sarai his wife, and Lot his brother's son, and all their substance that they had gathered, and the beings that they had gotten in Haran; and they went forth to go into the land of Canaan; and into the land of Canaan they came. [Acts 7:4](#);

He journeys through Canaan

6 And Abram passed through the land unto the place of Sichem, unto the plain of Moreh. And the Canaanite *was* then in the land. [Gen 10:18-19](#); [Gen 13:7](#);

which is promised to him in a vision

7 And the YAHWEH appeared unto Abram, and said, Unto thy seed will I give this land: and there built he an altar unto the YAHWEH, who appeared unto him. [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 17:8](#); [Gen 24:7](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [\[Gen 28:4\]](#); [\[Exod 32:13\]](#); [\[Exod 33:1\]](#); [\[Deut 9:5\]](#); [\[Neh 9:8\]](#); [\[Ezek 47:14\]](#); [\[Acts 7:5\]](#);

8 And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel, and pitched his tent, *having* Bethel on the west, and Hai on the east: and there he built an altar unto the YAHWEH, and called upon the name of the YAHWEH. [\[Gen 13:3\]](#); [\[Gen 13:4\]](#);

9 And Abram journeyed, going on still toward the south.

He is driven by famine into Egypt

10 And there was a famine in the land: and Abram went down into Egypt to sojourn there; for the famine *was* grievous in the land.

Fear makes him feign his wife to be his sister

11 And it came to pass, when he was come near to enter into Egypt, that he said unto Sarai his wife, Behold now, I know that you are a fair woman to look upon:

12 Therefore it shall come to pass, when the Egyptians shall see you, that they shall say, This *is* his wife: and they will kill me, but they will save you alive.

13 Say, I pray you, you are my sister: that it may be well with me for thy sake; and my being shall live because of you. [Gen 20:12](#); [Gen 26:7](#); [\[Gen 20:2\]](#); [\[Gen 20:13\]](#);

Pharaoh, having taken her from him, by plagues is compelled to restore her

14 And it came to pass, that, when Abram was come into Egypt, the Egyptians beheld the woman that she *was* very fair.

15 The princes also of Pharaoh saw her, and commended her before Pharaoh: and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house.

16 And he entreated Abram well for her sake: and he had sheep, and oxen, and he asses, and menservants, and maidservants, and she asses, and camels.

17 And the YAHWEH plagued Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai Abram's wife. [Ps 105:14](#);

He reproves Abram, whom he dismisses

18 And Pharaoh called Abram, and said, What *is* this *that* you have done unto me? why didst you not tell me that she *was* thy wife?

19 Why did you say, She *is* my sister? so I might have taken her to me to wife: now therefore behold thy wife, take *her*, and go thy way.

20 And Pharaoh commanded *his* men concerning him: and they sent him away, and his wife, and all that he had. [\[1Chr 16:21\]](#);

Abram and Lot return with great riches out of Egypt

- 1** And Abram went out of Egypt, he, and his wife, and all that he had, and Lot with him, into the south.
- 2** And Abram *was* very rich in cattle, in silver, and in gold.
- 3** And he went on his journeys from the south even to Bethel, unto the place where his tent had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Hai; [Gen 12:8](#);
- 4** Unto the place of the altar, which he had made there at the first: and there Abram called on the name of the YAHWEH. [Gen 4:26](#); [Gen 12:8](#);
- 5** And Lot also, which went with Abram, had flocks, and herds, and tents.

Strife arises between Abram's herdsmen and those of Lot

- 6** And the land was not able to bear them, that they might dwell together: for their substance was great, so that they could not dwell together. [Gen 36:7](#);
- 7** And there was a strife between the herdmen of Abram's cattle and the herdmen of Lot's cattle: and the Canaanite and the Perizzite dwelt then in the land. [Gen 12:6](#);

Abram meekly refers it to Lot to choose his part of the country

- 8** And Abram said unto Lot, Let there be no strife, I pray you, between me and you, and between my herdmen and thy herdmen; for we *be* brethren.
- 9** *Is* not the whole land before you? separate thyself, I pray you, from me: if you *will take* the left hand, then I will go to the right; or if you *depart* to the right hand, then I will go to the left. [Gen 20:15](#); [Gen 34:10](#);

and Lot goes to Sodom

- 10** And Lot lifted up his eyes, and beheld all the plain of Jordan, that it *was* well watered every where, before the YAHWEH destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, *even* as the garden of the YAHWEH, like the land of Egypt, as you come unto Zoar.
- 11** Then Lot chose him all the plain of Jordan; and Lot journeyed east: and they separated themselves the one from the other.
- 12** Abram dwelt in the land of Canaan, and Lot dwelt in the cities of the plain, and pitched *his* tent toward Sodom.
- 13** But the men of Sodom *were* wicked and sinners before the YAHWEH exceedingly. [Gen 18:20](#); [Ezek 16:49](#);

Elohim renews the promise to Abram

- 14** And the YAHWEH said unto Abram, after that Lot was separated from him, Lift up now thine eyes, and look from the place where you are northward, and southward, and eastward, and westward:
- 15** For all the land which you seest, to you will I give it, and to thy seed for ever. [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 15:7](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 17:8](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [Acts 7:5](#); [\[Gen 17:7\]](#); [\[Gen 24:7\]](#); [\[Gen 26:3\]](#); [\[Gen 28:4\]](#); [\[Exod 32:13\]](#); [\[Deut 9:5\]](#); [\[Neh 9:8\]](#); [\[Ps 105:11\]](#);
- 16** And I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth: so that if a man can number the dust of the earth, *then* shall thy seed also be numbered. [Gen 15:5](#); [Gen 17:4](#); [Deut 10:22](#); [Jer 33:22](#); [Rom 4:17-18](#); [Heb 11:12](#); [\[Gen 17:2\]](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#);
- 17** Arise, walk through the land in the length of it and in the breadth of it; for I will give it unto you.

He removes to Hebron, and there builds an altar

- 18** Then Abram removed *his* tent, and came and dwelt in the plain of Mamre, which *is* in Hebron, and built there an altar unto the YAHWEH. [Gen 14:13](#);

The battle of four kings against the king of Sodom and his allies

1 And it came to pass in the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of nations;

2 *That these* made war with Bera king of Sodom, and with Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which is Zoar.

3 All these were joined together in the vale of Siddim, which is the salt sea.

4 Twelve years they served Chedorlaomer, and in the thirteenth year they rebelled.

5 And in the fourteenth year came Chedorlaomer, and the kings that *were* with him, and smote the Rephaims in Ashteroth Karnaim, and the Zuzims in Ham, and the Emims in Shaveh Kiriathaim, [Gen 15:20; Deut 2:10-11;](#)

6 And the Horites in their mount Seir, unto Elparan, which *is* by the wilderness.

7 And they returned, and came to Enmishpat, which *is* Kadesh, and smote all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites, that dwelt in Hazezontamar.

8 And there went out the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (the same *is* Zoar;) and they joined battle with them in the vale of Siddim;

9 With Chedorlaomer the king of Elam, and with Tidal king of nations, and Amraphel king of Shinar, and Arioch king of Ellasar; four kings with five.

10 And the vale of Siddim *was full of* slimepits; and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, and fell there; and they that remained fled to the mountain.

11 And they took all the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah, and all their victuals, and went their way.

Lot is taken prisoner

12 And they took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who dwelt in Sodom, and his goods, and departed.

13 And there came one that had escaped, and told Abram the Hebrew; for he dwelt in the plain of Mamre the Amorite, brother of Eshcol, and brother of Aner: and these *were* confederate with Abram. [Gen 13:18;](#)

Abram rescues him

14 And when Abram heard that his nephew was taken captive, he armed his trained *servants*, born in his own house, three hundred and eighteen, and pursued *them* unto Dan.

15 And he divided himself against them, he and his servants, by night, and smote them, and pursued them unto Hobah, which *is* on the left hand of Damascus.

16 And he brought back all the goods, and also brought again his nephew Lot, and his goods, and the women also, and the people.

Melchizedek blesses Abram at his return, who gives him tithes

17 And the king of Sodom went out to meet him after his return from the slaughter of Chedorlaomer, and of the kings that *were* with him, at the valley of Shaveh, which *is* the king's dale.

18 And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he *was* the priest of the most high Elohim. [Heb 7:1-3; \[Heb 7:1\];](#)

19 And he blessed him, and said, Blessed *be* Abram of the most high Elohim, possessor of heaven and earth: [\[Deut 10:14\];](#)

20 And blessed be the most high Elohim, which has delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him tithes of all. [\[Heb 7:6\];](#)

The rest of the spoil, his partners having had their portions he restores to the king of Sodom

21 And the king of Sodom said unto Abram, Give me the persons, and take the goods to thyself.

22 And Abram said to the king of Sodom, I have lifted up mine hand unto the YAHWEH, the most high Elohim, the possessor of heaven and earth,

23 That I will not *take* from a thread even to a shoelatchet, and that I will not take any thing that *is* thine, lest you should say, I have made Abram rich: [\[Gen 21:23\]](#);

24 Save only that which the young men have eaten, and the portion of the men which went with me, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre; let them take their portion.

Elohim encourages Abram, who complains for want of a heir

1 After these things the word of the YAHWEH came unto Abram in a vision, saying, Fear not, Abram: I *am* thy shield, *and* thy exceeding great reward. [Ps 16:6](#); [Ps 18:2](#); [Ps 19:11](#);

2 And Abram said, Lord GOD, what will you give me, seeing I go childless, and the steward of my house *is* this Eliezer of Damascus?

3 And Abram said, Behold, to me you have given no seed: and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir.

Elohim promises him a son, and a multiplying of his seed

4 And, behold, the word of the YAHWEH *came* unto him, saying, This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir.

5 And he brought him forth abroad, and said, Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if you be able to number them: and he said unto him, So shall thy seed be. [Exod 32:13](#); [Deut 10:22](#); [Rom 4:18](#); [Heb 11:12](#); [\[Gen 13:16\]](#); [\[Gen 17:2\]](#);

Abram is justified by faith

6 And he believed in the YAHWEH; and he counted it to him for righteousness. [Rom 4:3](#); [Rom 4:9](#); [Rom 4:18](#); [Rom 4:22](#); [Gal 3:6](#); [Jas 2:23](#); [\[Neh 9:8\]](#);

Canaan is promised again, and confirmed by a sign, and a vision, prophetic of the condition of his posterity till brought out of Egypt

7 And he said unto him, I *am* the YAHWEH that brought you out of Ur of the Chaldees, to give you this land to inherit it. [Ps 105:11](#); [\[Gen 13:15\]](#); [\[Deut 9:5\]](#);

8 And he said, Lord GOD, whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?

9 And he said unto him, Take me a heifer of three years old, and a she goat of three years old, and a ram of three years old, and a turtledove, and a young pigeon.

10 And he took unto him all these, and divided them in the midst, and laid each piece one against another: but the birds divided he not.

11 And when the fowls came down upon the carcases, Abram drove them away.

12 And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram; and, lo, a horror of great darkness fell upon him.

13 And he said unto Abram, Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land *that is* not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years; [Exod 12:40](#); [Acts 7:6](#); [Gal 3:17](#);

14 And also that nation, whom they shall serve, will I judge: and afterward shall they come out with great substance. [Exod 3:22](#); [Exod 11:2](#); [Exod 12:35-36](#); [\[Exod 2:24\]](#); [\[Ps 105:42\]](#);

15 And you shall go to thy fathers in peace; you shall be buried in a good old age. [Gen 25:7-8](#); [\[Gen 25:8\]](#);

16 But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again: for the iniquity of the Amorites *is* not yet full. [Exod 12:40](#); [\[Acts 7:6\]](#); [\[Acts 7:7\]](#);

17 And it came to pass, that, when the sun went down, and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace, and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

18 In the same day the YAHWEH made a covenant with Abram, saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates: [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 24:7](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Exod 32:13](#); [Deut 1:8](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [\[Gen 17:2\]](#); [\[Gen 17:8\]](#); [\[Gen 26:3\]](#); [\[Gen 28:4\]](#); [\[Neh 9:8\]](#); [\[Ps 105:11\]](#);

19 The Kenites, and the Kenizzites, and the Kadmonites,

20 And the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Rephaims, [\[Gen 14:5\]](#);

21 And the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.

Sarai, being barren, gives Hagar to Abram

1 Now Sarai Abram's wife bore him no children: and she had a handmaid, an Egyptian, whose name *was* Hagar. [\[Gen 11:30\];](#)

2 And Sarai said unto Abram, Behold now, the YAHWEH has restrained me from bearing: I pray you, go in unto my maid; it may be that I may obtain children by her. And Abram hearkened to the voice of Sarai. [\[Gal 4:22\];](#)

3 And Sarai Abram's wife took Hagar her maid the Egyptian, after Abram had dwelt ten years in the land of Canaan, and gave her to her husband Abram to be his wife.

Hagar, being afflicted for despising her mistress, runs away

4 And he went in unto Hagar, and she conceived: and when she saw that she had conceived, her mistress was despised in her eyes.

5 And Sarai said unto Abram, My wrong *be* upon you: I have given my maid into thy bosom; and when she saw that she had conceived, I was despised in her eyes: the YAHWEH judge between me and you.

6 But Abram said unto Sarai, Behold, thy maid *is* in thy hand; do to her as it pleaseth you. And when Sarai dealt hardly with her, she fled from her face.

An angel commands her to return and submit herself, promises her a numerous posterity, and shows their character and condition

7 And the angel of the YAHWEH found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur.

8 And he said, Hagar, Sarai's maid, whence camest you? and whither will you go? And she said, I flee from the face of my mistress Sarai.

9 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto her, Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands.

10 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude. [\[Gen 17:20\]; \[Gen 21:13\]; \[Gen 21:18\]; \[Gen 46:3\];](#)

11 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto her, Behold, you are with child, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Ishmael; because the YAHWEH has heard thy affliction.

12 And he will be a wild man; his hand *will be* against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren. [Gen 25:18;](#)

Hagar names the place, and returns to Sarai

13 And she called the name of the YAHWEH that spoke unto her, you Elohim seest me: for she said, Have I also here looked after him that seeth me?

14 Wherefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; behold, *it is* between Kadesh and Bered. [Gen 24:62; Gen 25:11;](#)

Ishmael is born

15 And Hagar bore Abram a son: and Abram called his son's name, which Hagar bare, Ishmael. [Gal 4:22; \[1Chr 1:28\];](#)

The age of Abram

16 And Abram *was* fourscore and six years old, when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

Elohim renews the covenant with Abram, and changes his name to Abraham, in token of a greater blessing

- 1** And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the YAHWEH appeared to Abram, and said unto him, I *am* the Almighty Elohim; walk before me, and be you perfect. [Gen 5:22](#); [\[Gen 35:11\]](#); [\[Gen 48:3\]](#); [\[Eph 4:1\]](#); [\[Phil 1:27\]](#); [\[Col 1:10\]](#); [\[1Thess 2:12\]](#);
- 2** And I will make my covenant between me and you, and will multiply you exceedingly. [Gen 15:18](#); [Exod 2:24](#); [Exod 6:5](#); [Lev 26:42](#); [Gen 12:2](#); [Gen 13:16](#); [Gen 15:5](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#);
- 3** And Abram fell on his face: and Elohim talked with him, saying,
- 4** As for me, behold, my covenant *is* with you, and you shall be a father of many nations. [Rom 4:17](#); [\[Gen 13:16\]](#); [\[Heb 6:14\]](#);
- 5** Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be Abraham; for a father of many nations have I made you. [\[Neh 9:7\]](#);
- 6** And I will make you exceedingly fruitful, and I will make nations of you, and kings shall come out of you. [Matt 1:6](#); [\[Gen 35:11\]](#);
- 7** And I will establish my covenant between me and you and thy seed after you in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a Elohim unto you, and to thy seed after you. [Gen 13:15](#); [\[Deut 1:8\]](#); [\[Deut 26:17\]](#); [\[Deut 29:13\]](#); [\[Judg 2:1\]](#);
- 8** And I will give unto you, and to thy seed after you, the land wherein you are a stranger, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their Elohim. [Gen 15:18](#); [Deut 1:8](#); [\[Gen 12:7\]](#); [\[Gen 13:15\]](#); [\[Deut 9:5\]](#); [\[Neh 9:8\]](#); [\[Ezek 47:14\]](#);

Circumcision is instituted

- 9** And Elohim said unto Abraham, you shall keep my covenant therefore, you, and thy seed after you in their generations. [\[1Chr 16:15\]](#);
- 10** This *is* my covenant, which you shall keep, between me and you and thy seed after you; Every man child among you shall be circumcised. [\[Gen 21:4\]](#); [\[John 7:22\]](#); [\[Acts 7:8\]](#); [\[Acts 15:1\]](#);
- 11** And you shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin; and it shall be a token of the covenant between me and you. [Acts 7:8](#); [Rom 4:11](#);
- 12** And he that is eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every man child in your generations, he that is born in the house, or bought with money of any stranger, which *is* not of thy seed. [Lev 12:3](#); [Luke 2:21](#); [\[Gen 34:14\]](#); [\[Luke 1:59\]](#);
- 13** He that is born in thy house, and he that is bought with thy money, must needs be circumcised: and my covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.
- 14** And the uncircumcised man child whose flesh of his foreskin is not circumcised, that being shall be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant.

Sarai's name is changed to Sarah, and she is blessed

- 15** And Elohim said unto Abraham, As for Sarai thy wife, you shall not call her name Sarai, but Sarah *shall* her name *be*.
- 16** And I will bless her, and give you a son also of her: yes, I will bless her, and she shall be *a mother* of nations; kings of people shall be of her. [\[Gen 35:11\]](#);

Isaac is promised, and the time of his birth fixed

- 17** Then Abraham fell upon his face, and laughed, and said in his heart, Shall *a child* be born unto him that is a hundred years old? and shall Sarah, that is ninety years old, bear? [\[Gen 18:11\]](#); [\[Luke 1:18\]](#); [\[John 8:56\]](#);
- 18** And Abraham said unto Elohim, O that Ishmael might live before you!

19 And Elohim said, Sarah thy wife shall bear you a son indeed; and you shall call his name Isaac: and I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, *and* with his seed after him. [Gen 18:10](#); [Gen 21:2](#); [\[Gen 21:1\]](#); [\[Luke 1:55\]](#); [\[Heb 11:11\]](#);

20 And as for Ishmael, I have heard you: Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly; twelve princes shall he beget, and I will make him a great nation. [Gen 16:10](#); [Gen 25:12](#); [Gen 25:16](#); [\[Gen 21:13\]](#); [\[Gen 21:18\]](#);

21 But my covenant will I establish with Isaac, which Sarah shall bear unto you at this set time in the next year. [Gen 21:2](#); [\[Gen 18:10\]](#);

22 And he left off talking with him, and Elohim went up from Abraham.

Abraham and Ishmael are circumcised

23 And Abraham took Ishmael his son, and all that were born in his house, and all that were bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house; and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin in the selfsame day, as Elohim had said unto him.

24 And Abraham *was* ninety years old and nine, when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

25 And Ishmael his son *was* thirteen years old, when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

26 In the selfsame day was Abraham circumcised, and Ishmael his son.

27 And all the men of his house, born in the house, and bought with money of the stranger, were circumcised with him.

The Lord appears to Abraham, who entertains angels

- 1** And the YAHWEH appeared unto him in the plains of Mamre: and he sat in the tent door in the heat of the day; [\[Heb 13:2\];](#)
- 2** And he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, lo, three men stood by him: and when he saw *them*, he ran to meet them from the tent door, and bowed himself toward the ground, [Heb 13:2;](#)
- 3** And said, My Lord, if now I have found favor in thy sight, pass not away, I pray you, from thy servant:
- 4** Let a little water, I pray you, be fetched, and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree: [\[Gen 19:2\]; \[Gen 43:24\]; \[1Tim 5:10\];](#)
- 5** And I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort you your hearts; after that you shall pass on: for therefore are you come to your servant. And they said, So do, as you have said.
- 6** And Abraham hastened into the tent unto Sarah, and said, Make ready quickly three measures of fine meal, knead *it*, and make cakes upon the hearth.
- 7** And Abraham ran unto the herd, and took a calf tender and good, and gave *it* unto a young man; and he hasted to dress it.
- 8** And he took butter, and milk, and the calf which he had dressed, and set *it* before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat.

Sarah is reproved for laughing at the promise of a son

- 9** And they said unto him, Where *is* Sarah thy wife? And he said, Behold, in the tent.
- 10** And he said, I will certainly return unto you according to the time of life; and, lo, Sarah thy wife shall have a son. And Sarah heard *it* in the tent door, which *was* behind him. [Gen 17:19; Gen 17:21; Gen 21:2; \[Gen 21:1\]; \[2Kgs 4:16\]; \[Rom 9:9\];](#)
- 11** Now Abraham and Sarah *were* old *and* well stricken in age; *and* it ceased to be with Sarah after the manner of women. [Gen 17:17; Rom 4:19; Heb 11:11; \[Gen 11:30\];](#)
- 12** Therefore Sarah laughed within herself, saying, After I am waxed old shall I have pleasure, my lord being old also? [Judg 19:26; 1Pet 3:6;](#)
- 13** And the YAHWEH said unto Abraham, Wherefore did Sarah laugh, saying, Shall I truly bear a child, when I am old?
- 14** Is any thing too hard for the YAHWEH? At the time appointed I will return unto you, according to the time of life, and Sarah shall have a son. [Matt 19:26; Luke 1:37; \[Gen 21:2\]; \[2Kgs 4:16\];](#)
- 15** Then Sarah denied, saying, I laughed not; for she was afraid. And he said, Nay; but you didst laugh.

The destruction of Sodom is revealed to Abraham

- 16** And the men rose up from thence, and looked toward Sodom: and Abraham went with them to bring them on the way.
- 17** And the YAHWEH said, Shall I hide from Abraham that thing which I do; [Amos 3:7;](#)
- 18** Seeing that Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him? [Gen 12:3; Gen 22:18; Gen 26:4; Acts 3:25; Gal 3:8; \[Gen 28:14\]; \[John 4:22\];](#)
- 19** For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the YAHWEH, to do justice and judgment; that the YAHWEH may bring upon Abraham that which he has spoken of him.
- 20** And the YAHWEH said, Because the cry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous; [\[Gen 13:13\];](#)
- 21** I will go down now, and see whether they have done altogether according to the cry of it, which is come unto me; if not, I will know.

22 And the men turned their faces from thence, and went toward Sodom: but Abraham stood yet before the YAHWEH.

Abraham makes intercession for the inhabitants

23 And Abraham drew near, and said, will you also destroy the righteous with the wicked?

24 Suppose there be fifty righteous within the city: will you also destroy and not spare the place for the fifty righteous that *are* therein?

25 That be far from you to do after this manner, to slay the righteous with the wicked: and that the righteous should be as the wicked, that be far from you: Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right? [Rom 3:6](#); [\[Job 34:17\]](#);

26 And the YAHWEH said, If I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city, then I will spare all the place for their sakes.

27 And Abraham answered and said, Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto the Lord, though I *am but* dust and ashes:

28 Suppose five of the fifty righteous are lacking: will you destroy all the city for *lack of* five? And he said, If I find there forty and five, I will not destroy *it*.

29 And he spoke unto him yet again, and said, Suppose there shall be forty found there. And he said, I will not do *it* for forty's sake.

30 And he said *unto him*, Oh let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak: Suppose there shall thirty be found there. And he said, I will not do *it*, if I find thirty there.

31 And he said, Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto the Lord: Suppose there shall be twenty found there. And he said, I will not destroy *it* for twenty's sake.

32 And he said, Oh let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak yet but this once: Suppose ten shall be found there. And he said, I will not destroy *it* for ten's sake. [\[Judg 6:39\]](#);

33 And the YAHWEH went his way, as soon as he had left communing with Abraham: and Abraham returned unto his place.

Lot entertains two angels

1 And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot seeing *them* rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground; [[Jer 20:16](#)]; [[Heb 13:2](#)];

2 And he said, Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and you shall rise up early, and go on your ways. And they said, Nay; but we will abide in the street all night. [Gen 18:4](#); [[1Tim 5:10](#)];

3 And he pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house; and he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat. [Heb 13:2](#); [[Luke 24:29](#)]; [[Acts 16:15](#)];

The vicious Sodomites are smitten with blindness

4 But before they lay down, the men of the city, *even* the men of Sodom, compassed the house round, both old and young, all the people from every quarter: [[Judg 19:22](#)];

5 And they called unto Lot, and said unto him, Where *are* the men which came in to you this night? bring them out unto us, that we may know them.

6 And Lot went out at the door unto them, and shut the door after him,

7 And said, I pray you, brethren, do not so wickedly. [[2Pet 2:7](#)];

8 Behold now, I have two daughters which have not known man; let me, I pray you, bring them out unto you, and do you to them as *is* good in your eyes: only unto these men do nothing; for therefore came they under the shadow of my roof.

9 And they said, Stand back. And they said *again*, This one *fellow* came in to sojourn, and keeps acting as a judge: now will we deal worse with you, than with them. And they pressed sore upon the man, *even* Lot, and came near to break the door. [Exod 2:14](#); [Acts 7:27](#); [2Pet 2:7-8](#);

10 But the men put forth their hand, and pulled Lot into the house to them, and shut the door.

11 And they smote the men that *were* at the door of the house with blindness, both small and great: so that they wearied themselves to find the door. [[2Kgs 6:18](#)];

Lot is warned, and in vain warns his sons-in-law

12 And the men said unto Lot, Have you here any besides? son in law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whatsoever you have in the city, bring *them* out of this place: [[Rev 18:4](#)];

13 For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of the YAHWEH; and the YAHWEH has sent us to destroy it.

14 And Lot went out, and spoke unto his sons in law, which married his daughters, and said, Up, get you out of this place; for the YAHWEH will destroy this city. But he seemed as one that mocked unto his sons in law.

He is directed to flee with his family to the mountains, but obtains leave to go into Zoar

15 And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, Arise, take thy wife, and thy two daughters, which are here; lest you be consumed in the iniquity of the city.

16 And while he lingered, the men laid hold upon his hand, and upon the hand of his wife, and upon the hand of his two daughters; the YAHWEH being merciful unto him: and they brought him forth, and set him without the city.

17 And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that he said, Escape for thy life; look not behind you, neither stay you in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest you be consumed. [\[Heb 2:2\];](#)

18 And Lot said unto them, Oh, not so, my Lord:

19 Behold now, thy servant has found grace in thy sight, and you have magnified thy mercy, which you have showed unto me in saving my life; and I cannot escape to the mountain, lest some evil take me, and I die:

20 Behold now, this city *is* near to flee unto, and it *is* a little one: Oh, let me escape thither, (*is* it not a little one?) and my being shall live.

21 And he said unto him, See, I have accepted you concerning this thing also, that I will not overthrow this city, for the which you have spoken.

22 Haste you, escape thither; for I cannot do any thing till you be come thither. Therefore the name of the city was called Zoar.

23 The sun was risen upon the earth when Lot entered into Zoar.

Sodom and Gomorrah are destroyed

24 Then the YAHWEH rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the YAHWEH out of heaven; [Deut 29:23; Isa 13:19; Jer 20:16; Jer 50:40; Lam 4:6; Ezek 16:50; Hos 11:8; Amos 4:11; Zeph 2:9; Luke 17:29; 2Pet 2:6; Jude 1:7; \[Isa 1:9\]; \[Rom 9:29\];](#)

25 And he overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground. [\[Isa 13:19\]; \[Jer 49:18\]; \[Jer 50:40\];](#)

Lot's wife becomes a pillar of salt

26 But his wife looked back from behind him, and she became a pillar of salt. [Luke 17:32; \[Heb 2:2\];](#)

27 And Abraham got up early in the morning and went to the place where he stood before the YAHWEH:

28 And he looked toward Sodom and Gomorrah, and toward all the land of the plain, and beheld, and, lo, the smoke of the country went up as the smoke of a furnace.

Lot dwells in a cave

29 And it came to pass, when Elohim destroyed the cities of the plain, that Elohim remembered Abraham, and sent Lot out of the midst of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities where Lot dwelt.

30 And Lot went up out of Zoar, and dwelt in the mountain, and his two daughters with him; for he feared to dwell in Zoar: and he dwelt in a cave, he and his two daughters.

The incestuous origin of Moab and Ammon

31 And the firstborn said unto the younger, Our father *is* old, and *there is* not a man in the earth to come in unto us after the manner of all the earth:

32 Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, that we may preserve seed of our father.

33 And they made their father drink wine that night: and the firstborn went in, and lay with her father; and he perceived not when she lay down, nor when she arose.

34 And it came to pass on the morrow, that the firstborn said unto the younger, Behold, I lay last night with my father: let us make him drink wine this night also; and go you in, *and* lie with him, that we may preserve seed of our father.

35 And they made their father drink wine that night also: and the younger arose, and lay with him; and he perceived not when she lay down, nor when she arose.

36 Thus were both the daughters of Lot with child by their father.

37 And the firstborn bore a son, and called his name Moab: the same *is* the father of the Moabites unto this day.

38 And the younger, she also bore a son, and called his name Benammi: the same *is* the father of the children of Ammon unto this day.

Abraham sojourns at Gerar

1 And Abraham journeyed from thence toward the south country, and dwelt between Kadesh and Shur, and sojourned in Gerar.

Denies his wife, who is taken by Abimelech

2 And Abraham said of Sarah his wife, She *is* my sister: and Abimelech king of Gerar sent, and took Sarah. [Gen 12:13](#); [Gen 26:7](#);

Abimelech is reproved for her in a dream

3 But Elohim came to Abimelech in a dream by night, and said to him, Behold, you are *but* a dead man, for the woman which you have taken; for she *is* a man's wife.

4 But Abimelech had not come near her: and he said, Lord, will you slay also a righteous nation?

5 Said he not unto me, She *is* my sister? and she, even she herself said, He *is* my brother: in the integrity of my heart and innocence of my hands have I done this.

6 And Elohim said unto him in a dream, yes, I know that you didst this in the integrity of thy heart; for I also withheld you from sinning against me: therefore suffered I you not to touch her.

7 Now therefore restore the man *his* wife; for he *is* a prophet, and he shall pray for you, and you shall live: if you restore *her* not, know you that you shall surely die, you, and all that *are* thine.

8 Therefore Abimelech rose early in the morning, and called all his servants, and told all these things in their ears: and the men were sore afraid.

He rebukes Abraham

9 Then Abimelech called Abraham, and said unto him, What have you done unto us? and what have I offended you, that you have brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin? you have done deeds unto me that ought not to be done.

10 And Abimelech said unto Abraham, What prompted you, that you have done this thing?

11 And Abraham said, Because I thought, Surely the fear of Elohim *is* not in this place; and they will slay me for my wife's sake.

12 And yet indeed *she is* my sister; she *is* the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. [\[Gen 12:13\]](#);

13 And it came to pass, when Elohim caused me to wander from my father's house, that I said unto her, This *is* thy kindness which you shall show unto me; at every place whither we shall come, say of me, He *is* my brother. [Gen 12:13](#);

Restores Sarah

14 And Abimelech took sheep, and oxen, and male and female servants, and gave *them* unto Abraham, and restored him Sarah his wife.

15 And Abimelech said, Behold, my land *is* before you: dwell where it pleaseth you. [\[Gen 13:9\]](#);

and reproves her

16 And unto Sarah he said, Behold, I have given thy brother a thousand *pieces* of silver: behold, he *is* to you a covering of the eyes, unto all that *are* with you, and with all *other*: thus she was reproved.

Abimelech and his family are healed at Abraham's prayer

17 So Abraham prayed unto Elohim: and Elohim healed Abimelech, and his wife, and his maidservants; and they bore *children*.

18 For the YAHWEH had fast closed up all the wombs of the house of Abimelech, because of Sarah Abraham's wife.

Isaac is born, and circumcised

1 And the YAHWEH visited Sarah as he had said, and the YAHWEH did unto Sarah as he had spoken. [Gen 17:19](#); [Gen 18:10](#);

2 For Sarah conceived, and bore Abraham a son in his old age, at the set time of which Elohim had spoken to him. [Gal 4:23](#); [Heb 11:11](#); [Gen 18:10](#); [Gen 18:14](#); [[Gen 17:19](#)]; [[Gen 17:21](#)]; [[Josh 24:3](#)]; [[1Chr 1:28](#)]; [[Matt 1:2](#)]; [[Acts 7:8](#)]; [[Gal 4:22](#)];

3 And Abraham called the name of his son that was born unto him, whom Sarah bore to him, Isaac.

4 And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac being eight days old, as Elohim had commanded him. [Gen 17:10](#);

5 And Abraham was a hundred years old, when his son Isaac was born unto him.

Sarah's joy

6 And Sarah said, Elohim has made me to laugh, *so that* all that hear will laugh with me.

7 And she said, Who would have said unto Abraham, that Sarah should have given children suck? for I have born *him* a son in his old age.

Isaac is weaned

8 And the child grew, and was weaned: and Abraham made a great feast the *same* day that Isaac was weaned.

Hagar and Ishmael are cast forth

9 And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, which she had born unto Abraham, mocking. [\[Gal 4:29\]](#);

10 Wherefore she said unto Abraham, Cast out this bondwoman and her son: for the son of this bondwoman shall not be heir with my son, *even* with Isaac. [Gal 4:30](#);

11 And the thing was very grievous in Abraham's sight because of his son.

12 And Elohim said unto Abraham, Let it not be grievous in thy sight because of the lad, and because of thy bondwoman; in all that Sarah has said unto you, hearken unto her voice; for in Isaac shall thy seed be called. [Rom 9:7](#); [Heb 11:18](#); [[Gal 3:29](#)];

13 And also of the son of the bondwoman will I make a nation, because he *is* thy seed. [Gen 16:10](#); [Gen 17:20](#);

14 And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and took bread, and a bottle of water, and gave *it* unto Hagar, putting *it* on her shoulder, and the child, and sent her away: and she departed, and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.

Hagar in distress

15 And the water was spent in the bottle, and she cast the child under one of the shrubs.

16 And she went, and sat her down over against *him* a good way off, as it were a bowshot: for she said, Let me not see the death of the child. And she sat over against *him*, and lifted up her voice, and wept.

The angel relieves and comforts her

17 And Elohim heard the voice of the lad; and the angel of Elohim called to Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her, What aileth you, Hagar? fear not; for Elohim has heard the voice of the lad where he *is*.

18 Arise, lift up the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a great nation. [Gen 16:10](#); [Gen 17:20](#);

19 And Elohim opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water; and she went, and filled the bottle with water, and gave the lad drink.

20 And Elohim was with the lad; and he grew, and dwelt in the wilderness, and became an archer.

21 And he dwelt in the wilderness of Paran: and his mother took him a wife out of the land of Egypt.

22 And it came to pass at that time, that Abimelech and Phichol the chief captain of his host spoke unto Abraham, saying, Elohim *is* with you in all that you do:

Abimelech's covenant with Abraham at Beer-sheba

23 Now therefore swear unto me here by Elohim that you will not deal falsely with me, nor with my son, nor with my son's son: *but* according to the kindness that I have done unto you, you shall do unto me, and to the land wherein you have sojourned. [Gen 14:23](#);

24 And Abraham said, I will swear.

25 And Abraham reprov'd Abimelech because of a well of water, which Abimelech's servants had violently taken away.

26 And Abimelech said, I wot not who has done this thing: neither didst you tell me, neither yet heard I *of it*, but to day.

27 And Abraham took sheep and oxen, and gave them unto Abimelech; and both of them made a covenant.

28 And Abraham set seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves.

29 And Abimelech said unto Abraham, What *mean* these seven ewe lambs which you have set by themselves?

30 And he said, For *these* seven ewe lambs shall you take of my hand, that they may be a witness unto me, that I have digged this well.

31 Wherefore he called that place Beersheba; because there they swore both of them.

32 Thus they made a covenant at Beersheba: then Abimelech rose up, and Phichol the chief captain of his host, and they returned into the land of the Philistines.

33 And *Abraham* planted a grove in Beersheba, and called there on the name of the YAHWEH, the everlasting Elohim. [Gen 4:26](#);

34 And Abraham sojourned in the Philistines' land many days.

Abraham is tempted to offer Isaac

1 And it came to pass after these things, that Elohim tested Abraham, and said unto him, Abraham: and he said, Behold, *here I am*.

2 And he said, Take now thy son, thine only *son* Isaac, whom you lovest, and get you into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell you of. [Heb 11:17](#);

He gives proof of his faith and obedience

3 And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and saddled his ass, and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son, and clave the wood for the burnt offering, and rose up, and went unto the place of which Elohim had told him.

4 Then on the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes, and saw the place afar off.

5 And Abraham said unto his young men, Abide you here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you.

6 And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering, and laid *it* upon Isaac his son; and he took the fire in his hand, and a knife; and they went both of them together.

7 And Isaac spoke unto Abraham his father, and said, My father: and he said, Here *am* I, my son. And he said, Behold the fire and the wood: but where *is* the lamb for a burnt offering?

8 And Abraham said, My son, Elohim will provide himself a lamb for a burnt offering: so they went both of them together.

9 And they came to the place which Elohim had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood. [Jas 2:21](#);

10 And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. [\[Heb 11:17\]](#); [\[Jas 2:21\]](#);

The angel prevents him

11 And the angel of the YAHWEH called unto him out of heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: and he said, Here *am* I.

12 And he said, Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do you any thing unto him: for now I know that you fearest Elohim, seeing you have not withheld thy son, thine only *son* from me. [\[Rom 8:32\]](#);

Isaac is exchanged for a ram

13 And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind *him* a ram caught in a thicket by his horns: and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son.

The place is called Jehovah-jireh

14 And Abraham called the name of that place Jehovahjireh: as it is said *to* this day, In the mount of the YAHWEH it shall be seen.

Abraham is again blessed

15 And the angel of the YAHWEH called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time,

16 And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the YAHWEH, for because you have done this thing, and have not withheld thy son, thine only *son*: [Luke 1:73](#); [Heb 6:13](#); [\[Ezek 16:8\]](#); [\[Heb 6:14\]](#);

17 That in blessing I will bless you, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which *is* upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies; [Gen 24:60](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#); [\[Neh 9:23\]](#); [\[Heb 11:12\]](#);

18 And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because you have obeyed my voice. [Gen 12:3](#); [Gen 18:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Acts 3:25](#); [Gal 3:8](#); [\[Gen 28:14\]](#); [\[Jer 4:2\]](#); [\[Luke 1:55\]](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[John 4:22\]](#); [\[John 5:46\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#);

19 So Abraham returned unto his young men, and they rose up and went together to Beersheba; and Abraham dwelt at Beersheba.

The generations of Nahor unto Rebekah

20 And it came to pass after these things, that it was told Abraham, saying, Behold, Milcah, she has also born children unto thy brother Nahor; [\[Gen 11:29\]](#);

21 Huz his firstborn, and Buz his brother, and Kemuel the father of Aram,

22 And Chesed, and Hazo, and Pildash, and Jidlaph, and Bethuel.

23 And Bethuel begat Rebekah: these eight Milcah did bear to Nahor, Abraham's brother. [\[Gen 24:15\]](#); [\[Gen 24:24\]](#);

24 And his concubine, whose name *was* Reumah, she bore also Tebah, and Gaham, and Thahash, and Maachah.

The age and death of Sarah

1 And Sarah was a hundred and seven and twenty years old: *these were* the years of the life of Sarah.

2 And Sarah died in Kirjatharba; the same *is* Hebron in the land of Canaan: and Abraham came to mourn for Sarah, and to weep for her. [\[Acts 8:2\];](#)

The purchase of the field and cave of Machpelah

3 And Abraham stood up from before his dead, and spoke unto the sons of Heth, saying,

4 I *am* a stranger and a sojourner with you: give me a possession of a buryingplace with you, that I may bury my dead out of my sight. [Acts 7:5; \[Heb 11:13\];](#)

5 And the children of Heth answered Abraham, saying unto him,

6 Hear us, my lord: you are a mighty prince among us: in the choice of our sepulchers bury thy dead; none of us shall withhold from you his sepulcher, but that you may bury thy dead.

7 And Abraham stood up, and bowed himself to the people of the land, *even* to the children of Heth.

8 And he communed with them, saying, If it be your mind that I should bury my dead out of my sight; hear me, and intreat for me to Ephron the son of Zohar,

9 That he may give me the cave of Machpelah, which he has, which *is* in the end of his field; for as much money as it is worth he shall give it me for a possession of a burial place among you. [\[Gen 49:30\];](#)

10 And Ephron dwelt among the children of Heth: and Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham in the audience of the children of Heth, *even* of all that went in at the gate of his city, saying,

11 Nay, my lord, hear me: the field give I you, and the cave that *is* therein, I give it you; in the presence of the sons of my people give I it you: bury thy dead.

12 And Abraham bowed down himself before the people of the land.

13 And he spoke unto Ephron in the audience of the people of the land, saying, But if you will *give it*, I pray you, hear me: I will give you money for the field; take *it* of me, and I will bury my dead there.

14 And Ephron answered Abraham, saying unto him,

15 My lord, hearken unto me: the land *is worth* four hundred shekels of silver; what *is* that between me and you? bury therefore thy dead.

16 And Abraham hearkened unto Ephron; and Abraham weighed to Ephron the silver, which he had named in the audience of the sons of Heth, four hundred shekels of silver, current *money* with the merchant. [Gen 50:13; \[Gen 49:30\]; \[Acts 7:16\];](#)

17 And the field of Ephron, which *was* in Machpelah, which *was* before Mamre, the field, and the cave which *was* therein, and all the trees that *were* in the field, that *were* in all the borders round about, were made sure [Acts 7:16;](#)

18 Unto Abraham for a possession in the presence of the children of Heth, before all that went in at the gate of his city.

where Sarah is buried

19 And after this, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre: the same *is* Hebron in the land of Canaan.

20 And the field, and the cave that *is* therein, were made sure unto Abraham for a possession of a buryingplace by the sons of Heth.

Abraham swears his servant

- 1** And Abraham was old, *and* well stricken in age: and the YAHWEH had blessed Abraham in all things.
- 2** And Abraham said unto his eldest servant of his house, that ruled over all that he had, Put, I pray you, thy hand under my thigh: [Gen 47:29](#);
- 3** And I will make you swear by the YAHWEH, the Elohim of heaven, and the Elohim of the earth, that you shall not take a wife unto my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell: [Gen 28:1](#);
- 4** But you shall go unto my country, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son Isaac.
- 5** And the servant said unto him, Perhaps the woman will not be willing to follow me unto this land: must I bring thy son again unto the land from whence you camest?
- 6** And Abraham said unto him, Beware you that you bring not my son thither again.
- 7** The YAHWEH Elohim of heaven, which took me from my father's house, and from the land of my kindred, and which spoke unto me, and that swore unto me, saying, Unto thy seed will I give this land; he shall send his angel before you, and you shall take a wife unto my son from thence. [Gen 12:1](#); [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Exod 32:13](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [Acts 7:5](#); [[Gen 28:4](#)]; [[Ezek 16:8](#)];
- 8** And if the woman will not be willing to follow you, then you shall be clear from this my oath: only bring not my son thither again.
- 9** And the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master, and swore to him concerning that matter.

The servant's journey

- 10** And the servant took ten camels of the camels of his master, and departed; for all the goods of his master *were* in his hand: and he arose, and went to Mesopotamia, unto the city of Nahor.
- 11** And he made his camels to kneel down without the city by a well of water at the time of the evening, *even* the time that women go out to draw *water*.

His prayer

- 12** And he said, O YAHWEH Elohim of my master Abraham, I pray you, send me good speed this day, and show kindness unto my master Abraham.
- 13** Behold, I stand *here* by the well of water; and the daughters of the men of the city come out to draw water:

His sign

- 14** And let it come to pass, that the damsel to whom I shall say, Let down thy pitcher, I pray you, that I may drink; and she shall say, Drink, and I will give thy camels drink also: *let the same be* she *that* you have appointed for thy servant Isaac; and thereby shall I know that you have showed kindness unto my master.

Rebekah meets him

- 15** And it came to pass, before he had done speaking, that, behold, Rebekah came out, who was born to Bethuel, son of Milcah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother, with her pitcher upon her shoulder. [Gen 22:23](#);
- 16** And the damsel *was* very fair to look upon, a virgin, neither had any man known her: and she went down to the well, and filled her pitcher, and came up.
- 17** And the servant ran to meet her, and said, Let me, I pray you, drink a little water of thy pitcher.

fulfils his sign

- 18** And she said, Drink, my lord: and she hasted, and let down her pitcher upon her hand, and gave him drink.

19 And when she had done giving him drink, she said, I will draw *water* for thy camels also, until they have done drinking.

20 And she hasted, and emptied her pitcher into the trough, and ran again unto the well to draw *water*, and drew for all his camels.

21 And the man wondering at her held his peace, to wit whether the YAHWEH had made his journey prosperous or not.

receives jewels

22 And it came to pass, as the camels had done drinking, that the man took a golden earring of half a shekel weight, and two bracelets for her hands of ten *shekels* weight of gold;

shows her kindred

23 And said, Whose daughter are you? tell me, I pray you: is there room *in* thy father's house for us to lodge in?

24 And she said unto him, I *am* the daughter of Bethuel the son of Milcah, which she bore unto Nahor. [Gen 22:23](#);

and invites him home

25 She said moreover unto him, We have both straw and provender enough, and room to lodge in.

The servant blesses Elohim

26 And the man bowed down his head, and worshipped the YAHWEH.

27 And he said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of my master Abraham, who has not left destitute my master of his mercy and his truth: I *being* in the way, the YAHWEH led me to the house of my master's brethren.

28 And the damsel ran, and told *them of* her mother's house these things.

Laban entertains him

29 And Rebekah had a brother, and his name *was* Laban: and Laban ran out unto the man, unto the well.

30 And it came to pass, when he saw the earring and bracelets upon his sister's hands, and when he heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, Thus spoke the man unto me; that he came unto the man; and, behold, he stood by the camels at the well.

31 And he said, Come in, you blessed of the YAHWEH; wherefore standest you without? for I have prepared the house, and room for the camels.

32 And the man came into the house: and he ungirded his camels, and gave straw and provender for the camels, and water to wash his feet, and the men's feet that *were* with him.

33 And there was set *meat* before him to eat: but he said, I will not eat, until I have told mine errand. And he said, Speak on.

The servant shows his message

34 And he said, I *am* Abraham's servant.

35 And the YAHWEH has blessed my master greatly; and he is become great: and he has given him flocks, and herds, and silver, and gold, and menservants, and maidservants, and camels, and asses.

36 And Sarah my master's wife bore a son to my master when she was old: and unto him has he given all that he has. [\[Gen 25:5\]](#);

37 And my master made me swear, saying, you shall not take a wife to my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, in whose land I dwell:

38 But you shall go unto my father's house, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son.

39 And I said unto my master, Perhaps the woman will not follow me.

40 And he said unto me, The YAHWEH, before whom I walk, will send his angel with you, and prosper thy way; and you shall take a wife for my son of my kindred, and of my father's house:

41 Then shall you be clear from *this* my oath, when you come to my kindred; if they give not you *one*, you shall be clear from my oath.

42 And I came this day unto the well, and said, O YAHWEH Elohim of my master Abraham, if now you do prosper my way which I go:

43 Behold, I stand by the well of water; and it shall come to pass, that when the virgin cometh forth to draw *water*, and I say to her, Give me, I pray you, a little water of thy pitcher to drink;

44 And she say to me, Both drink you, and I will also draw for thy camels: *let* the same *be* the woman whom the YAHWEH has appointed out for my master's son.

45 And before I had done speaking in mine heart, behold, Rebekah came forth with her pitcher on her shoulder; and she went down unto the well, and drew *water*: and I said unto her, Let me drink, I pray you.

46 And she made haste, and let down her pitcher from her *shoulder*, and said, Drink, and I will give thy camels drink also: so I drank, and she made the camels drink also.

47 And I asked her, and said, Whose daughter are you? And she said, The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milcah bore unto him: and I put the earring upon her face, and the bracelets upon her hands.

48 And I bowed down my head, and worshipped the YAHWEH, and blessed the YAHWEH Elohim of my master Abraham, which had led me in the right way to take my master's brother's daughter unto his son.

49 And now if you will deal kindly and truly with my master, tell me: if not, tell me; that I may turn to the right hand, or to the left.

Laban and Bethuel approve it

50 Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, The thing proceedeth from the YAHWEH: we cannot speak unto you bad or good.

51 Behold, Rebekah *is* before you, take *her*, and go, and let her be thy master's son's wife, as the YAHWEH has spoken.

52 And it came to pass, that, when Abraham's servant heard their words, he worshipped the YAHWEH, *bowing himself* to the earth.

53 And the servant brought forth jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment, and gave *them* to Rebekah: he gave also to her brother and to her mother precious things.

54 And they did eat and drink, he and the men that *were* with him, and tarried all night; and they rose up in the morning, and he said, Send me away unto my master.

55 And her brother and her mother said, Let the damsel abide with us *a few* days, at the least ten; after that she shall go.

56 And he said unto them, Hinder me not, seeing the YAHWEH has prospered my way; send me away that I may go to my master.

57 And they said, We will call the damsel, and enquire at her mouth.

Rebekah consents to go, and departs

58 And they called Rebekah, and said unto her, will you go with this man? And she said, I will go.

59 And they sent away Rebekah their sister, and her nurse, and Abraham's servant, and his men.

60 And they blessed Rebekah, and said unto her, you are our sister, be you *the mother* of thousands of millions, and let thy seed possess the gate of those which hate them. [\[Gen 22:17\];](#)

61 And Rebekah arose, and her damsels, and they rode upon the camels, and followed the man: and the servant took Rebekah, and went his way.

Isaac meets and marries her

62 And Isaac came from the way of the well Lahairoi; for he dwelt in the south country. [Gen 16:14; Gen 25:11;](#)

63 And Isaac went out to meditate in the field at the eventide: and he lifted up his eyes, and saw, and, behold, the camels *were* coming.

64 And Rebekah lifted up her eyes, and when she saw Isaac, she lighted off the camel.

65 For she *had* said unto the servant, What man *is* this that walketh in the field to meet us? And the servant *had* said, It *is* my master: therefore she took a vail, and covered herself.

66 And the servant told Isaac all things that he had done.

67 And Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent, and took Rebekah, and she became his wife; and he loved her: and Isaac was comforted after his mother's *death*.

The sons of Abraham by Keturah

- 1** Then again Abraham took a wife, and her name *was* Keturah.
- 2** And she bore him Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah. [1Chr 1:32](#);
- 3** And Jokshan begat Sheba, and Dedan. And the sons of Dedan were Asshurim, and Letushim, and Leummim.
- 4** And the sons of Midian; Ephah, and Epher, and Hanoch, and Abida, and Eldaah. All these *were* the children of Keturah.

The division of his goods

- 5** And Abraham gave all that he had unto Isaac. [Gen 24:36](#);
- 6** But unto the sons of the concubines, which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts, and sent them away from Isaac his son, while he yet lived, eastward, unto the east country.

His age, death, and burial

- 7** And these *are* the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived, a hundred threescore and fifteen years. [\[Gen 15:15\]](#);
- 8** Then Abraham gave up the ghost, and died in a good old age, an old man, and full *of years*; and was gathered to his people. [Gen 15:15](#); [\[Gen 35:29\]](#);
- 9** And his sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite, which *is* before Mamre; [\[Gen 49:31\]](#);
- 10** The field which Abraham purchased of the sons of Heth: there was Abraham buried, and Sarah his wife.

Elohim blesses Isaac

- 11** And it came to pass after the death of Abraham, that Elohim blessed his son Isaac; and Isaac dwelt by the well Lahairoi. [\[Gen 16:14\]](#); [\[Gen 24:62\]](#);

The generations of Ishmael

- 12** Now these *are* the generations of Ishmael, Abraham's son, whom Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's handmaid, bore unto Abraham: [\[Gen 17:20\]](#);
- 13** And these *are* the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names, according to their generations: the firstborn of Ishmael, Nebajoth; and Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam, [1Chr 1:29](#);
- 14** And Mishma, and Dumah, and Massa,
- 15** Hadar, and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah:
- 16** These *are* the sons of Ishmael, and these *are* their names, by their towns, and by their castles; twelve princes according to their nations. [\[Gen 17:20\]](#);

His age and death

- 17** And these *are* the years of the life of Ishmael, a hundred and thirty and seven years: and he gave up the ghost and died; and was gathered unto his people.
- 18** And they dwelt from Havilah unto Shur, that *is* before Egypt, as you go toward Assyria: *and* he died in the presence of all his brethren. [\[Gen 16:12\]](#);

Isaac prays for Rebekah, being barren

- 19** And these *are* the generations of Isaac, Abraham's son: Abraham begat Isaac:

20 And Isaac was forty years old when he took Rebekah to wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Syrian of Padanaram, the sister to Laban the Syrian.

21 And Isaac intreated the YAHWEH for his wife, because she *was* barren: and the YAHWEH was intreated of him, and Rebekah his wife conceived. [Rom 9:10](#); [\[1Chr 1:34\]](#);

The children strive in her womb

22 And the children struggled together within her; and she said, If *it be* so, why *am* I thus? And she went to enquire of the YAHWEH. [\[1Sam 9:9\]](#);

23 And the YAHWEH said unto her, Two nations *are* in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and *the one* people shall be stronger than *the other* people; and the elder shall serve the younger. [2Sam 8:14](#); [Rom 9:12](#);

The birth of Esau and Jacob

24 And when her days to be delivered were fulfilled, behold, *there were* twins in her womb. [\[Josh 24:4\]](#); [\[1Chr 1:34\]](#); [\[Acts 7:8\]](#);

25 And the first came out red, all over like a hairy garment; and they called his name Esau.

26 And after that came his brother out, and his hand took hold on Esau's heel; and his name was called Jacob: and Isaac *was* threescore years old when she bore them. [Hos 12:3](#); [\[Matt 1:2\]](#);

Their different characters and pursuits

27 And the boys grew: and Esau was a cunning hunter, a man of the field; and Jacob *was* a plain man, dwelling in tents.

28 And Isaac loved Esau, because he did eat of *his* venison: but Rebekah loved Jacob.

Esau sells his birthright

29 And Jacob sod pottage: and Esau came from the field, and he *was* faint:

30 And Esau said to Jacob, Feed me, I pray you, with that same red *pottage*; for I *am* faint: therefore was his name called Edom.

31 And Jacob said, Sell me this day thy birthright.

32 And Esau said, Behold, I *am* at the point to die: and what profit shall this birthright do to me? [Isa 22:13](#); [1Cor 15:32](#);

33 And Jacob said, Swear to me this day; and he swore unto him: and he sold his birthright unto Jacob. [\[Gen 27:36\]](#); [\[Heb 12:16\]](#);

34 Then Jacob gave Esau bread and pottage of lentiles; and he did eat and drink, and rose up, and went his way: thus Esau despised *his* birthright.

Isaac, because of famine, sojourns in Gerar, and the Lord instructs and blesses him

1 And there was a famine in the land, beside the first famine that was in the days of Abraham. And Isaac went unto Abimelech king of the Philistines unto Gerar.

2 And the YAHWEH appeared unto him, and said, Go not down into Egypt; dwell in the land which I shall tell you of:

3 Sojourn in this land, and I will be with you, and will bless you; for unto you, and unto thy seed, I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I swore unto Abraham thy father; [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [\[Gen 28:4\]](#); [\[1Chr 16:16\]](#); [\[Ezek 47:14\]](#);

4 And I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; [Gen 12:3](#); [Gen 18:18](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [\[Gen 12:7\]](#); [\[Gen 13:15\]](#); [\[Gen 15:18\]](#); [\[Gen 24:7\]](#); [\[Gen 28:14\]](#); [\[Exod 32:13\]](#); [\[Exod 33:1\]](#); [\[Deut 9:5\]](#); [\[Deut 34:4\]](#); [\[Neh 9:8\]](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[John 4:22\]](#); [\[John 5:46\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#); [\[Gal 3:8\]](#);

5 Because that Abraham obeyed my voice, and kept my charge, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws.

6 And Isaac dwelt in Gerar:

He is reproved by Abimelech for denying his wife

7 And the men of the place asked *him* of his wife; and he said, She *is* my sister: for he feared to say, *She is* my wife; lest, *said he*, the men of the place should kill me for Rebekah; because she *was* fair to look upon. [\[Gen 12:13\]](#); [\[Gen 20:2\]](#);

8 And it came to pass, when he had been there a long time, that Abimelech king of the Philistines looked out at a window, and saw, and, behold, Isaac *was* sporting with Rebekah his wife.

9 And Abimelech called Isaac, and said, Behold, of a surety she *is* thy wife: and how did you say, She *is* my sister? And Isaac said unto him, Because I said, Lest I die for her.

10 And Abimelech said, What *is* this you have done unto us? one of the people might lightly have lien with thy wife, and you should have brought guiltiness upon us.

11 And Abimelech charged all *his* people, saying, He that toucheth this man or his wife shall surely be put to death.

He grows rich, and the Philistines envy his prosperity

12 Then Isaac sowed in that land, and received in the same year a hundredfold: and the YAHWEH blessed him.

13 And the man waxed great, and went forward, and grew until he became very great:

14 For he had possession of flocks, and possession of herds, and great store of servants: and the Philistines envied him.

15 For all the wells which his father's servants had digged in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines had stopped them, and filled them with earth.

16 And Abimelech said unto Isaac, Go from us; for you are much mightier than we.

17 And Isaac departed thence, and pitched his tent in the valley of Gerar, and dwelt there.

He digs Esek, Sitnah, and Rehoboth

18 And Isaac digged again the wells of water, which they had digged in the days of Abraham his father; for the Philistines had stopped them after the death of Abraham: and he called their names after the names by which his father had called them.

19 And Isaac's servants digged in the valley, and found there a well of springing water.

20 And the herdmen of Gerar did strive with Isaac's herdmen, saying, The water *is* ours: and he called the name of the well Esek; because they strove with him.

21 And they digged another well, and strove for that also: and he called the name of it Sitnah.

22 And he removed from thence, and digged another well; and for that they strove not: and he called the name of it Rehoboth; and he said, For now the YAHWEH has made room for us, and we shall be fruitful in the land.

Elohim appears to him at Beer-sheba, and blesses him; and Abimelech makes a covenant with him

23 And he went up from thence to Beersheba.

24 And the YAHWEH appeared unto him the same night, and said, I *am* the Elohim of Abraham thy father: fear not, for I *am* with you, and will bless you, and multiply thy seed for my servant Abraham's sake. [\[Gen 46:3\];](#)

25 And he built an altar there, and called upon the name of the YAHWEH, and pitched his tent there: and there Isaac's servants digged a well.

26 Then Abimelech went to him from Gerar, and Ahuzzath one of his friends, and Phichol the chief captain of his army.

27 And Isaac said unto them, Wherefore come you to me, seeing you hate me, and have sent me away from you?

28 And they said, We saw certainly that the YAHWEH was with you: and we said, Let there be now an oath between us, *even* between us and you, and let us make a covenant with you;

29 That you will do us no hurt, as we have not touched you, and as we have done unto you nothing but good, and have sent you away in peace: you are now the blessed of the YAHWEH.

30 And he made them a feast, and they did eat and drink.

31 And they rose up early in the morning, and swore one to another: and Isaac sent them away, and they departed from him in peace.

32 And it came to pass the same day, that Isaac's servants came, and told him concerning the well which they had digged, and said unto him, We have found water.

33 And he called it Shebah: therefore the name of the city *is* Beersheba unto this day.

Esau's wives

34 And Esau was forty years old when he took to wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Bashemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite:

35 Which were a grief of mind unto Isaac and to Rebekah. [Gen 27:46;](#)

Isaac sends Esau for venison

- 1** And it came to pass, that when Isaac was old, and his eyes were dim, so that he could not see, he called Esau his eldest son, and said unto him, My son: and he said unto him, Behold, *here am I*.
- 2** And he said, Behold now, I am old, I know not the day of my death:
- 3** Now therefore take, I pray you, thy weapons, thy quiver and thy bow, and go out to the field, and take me *some* venison;
- 4** And make me savoury meat, such as I love, and bring *it* to me, that I may eat; that my being may bless you before I die.
- 5** And Rebekah heard when Isaac spoke to Esau his son. And Esau went to the field to hunt *for* venison, *and* to bring *it*.

Rebekah instructs Jacob to obtain the blessing

- 6** And Rebekah spoke unto Jacob her son, saying, Behold, I heard thy father speak unto Esau thy brother, saying,
- 7** Bring me venison, and make me savoury meat, that I may eat, and bless you before the YAHWEH before my death.
- 8** Now therefore, my son, obey my voice according to that which I command you.
- 9** Go now to the flock, and fetch me from thence two good kids of the goats; and I will make them savoury meat for thy father, such as he loveth:
- 10** And you shall bring *it* to thy father, that he may eat, and that he may bless you before his death.
- 11** And Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, Behold, Esau my brother *is* a hairy man, and I *am* a smooth man:
- 12** My father perhaps will feel me, and I shall seem to him as a deceiver; and I shall bring a curse upon me, and not a blessing.
- 13** And his mother said unto him, Upon me *be* thy curse, my son: only obey my voice, and go fetch me *them*.

Jacob, feigning to be Esau, obtains it

- 14** And he went, and fetched, and brought *them* to his mother: and his mother made savoury meat, such as his father loved.
- 15** And Rebekah took goodly raiment of her eldest son Esau, which *were* with her in the house, and put them upon Jacob her younger son:
- 16** And she put the skins of the kids of the goats upon his hands, and upon the smooth of his neck:
- 17** And she gave the savoury meat and the bread, which she had prepared, into the hand of her son Jacob.
- 18** And he came unto his father, and said, My father: and he said, Here *am I*; who are you, my son?
- 19** And Jacob said unto his father, I *am* Esau thy firstborn; I have done according as you badest me: arise, I pray you, sit and eat of my venison, that thy being may bless me.
- 20** And Isaac said unto his son, How *is it* that you have found *it* so quickly, my son? And he said, Because the YAHWEH thy Elohim brought *it* to me.
- 21** And Isaac said unto Jacob, Come near, I pray you, that I may feel you, my son, whether you *be* my very son Esau or not.
- 22** And Jacob went near unto Isaac his father; and he felt him, and said, The voice *is* Jacob's voice, but the hands *are* the hands of Esau.
- 23** And he discerned him not, because his hands were hairy, as his brother Esau's hands: so he blessed him.

24 And he said, are you my very son Esau? And he said, I *am*.
25 And he said, Bring *it* near to me, and I will eat of my son's venison, that my being may bless you. And he brought *it* near to him, and he did eat: and he brought him wine, and he drank.
26 And his father Isaac said unto him, Come near now, and kiss me, my son.
27 And he came near, and kissed him: and he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, See, the smell of my son *is* as the smell of a field which the YAHWEH has blessed:
28 Therefore Elohim give you of the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine: [Heb 11:20](#);
29 Let people serve you, and nations bow down to you: be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to you: cursed *be* every one that curses you, and blessed *be* he that blesseth you. [Gen 12:3](#);

Esau brings venison

30 And it came to pass, as soon as Isaac had made an end of blessing Jacob, and Jacob was yet scarce gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, that Esau his brother came in from his hunting.
31 And he also had made savoury meat, and brought it unto his father, and said unto his father, Let my father arise, and eat of his son's venison, that thy being may bless me.
32 And Isaac his father said unto him, Who are you? And he said, I *am* thy son, thy firstborn Esau.

Isaac trembles

33 And Isaac trembled very exceedingly, and said, Who? where *is* he that has taken venison, and brought *it* me, and I have eaten of all before you camest, and have blessed him? yes, *and* he shall be blessed.

Esau complains, and by importunity obtains a blessing

34 And when Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a great and exceeding bitter cry, and said unto his father, Bless me, *even* me also, O my father. [Heb 12:17](#);
35 And he said, Thy brother came with subtilty, and has taken away thy blessing.
36 And he said, Is not he rightly named Jacob? for he has supplanted me these two times: he took away my birthright; and, behold, now he has taken away my blessing. And he said, Have you not reserved a blessing for me? [Gen 25:33](#); [\[Heb 12:17\]](#);
37 And Isaac answered and said unto Esau, Behold, I have made him thy lord, and all his brethren have I given to him for servants; and with grain and wine have I sustained him: and what shall I do now unto you, my son?
38 And Esau said unto his father, Have you but one blessing, my father? bless me, *even* me also, O my father. And Esau lifted up his voice, and wept. [Heb 12:17](#);
39 And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, Behold, thy dwelling shall be the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above; [\[Heb 11:20\]](#);
40 And by thy sword shall you live, and shall serve thy brother; and it shall come to pass when you shall have the dominion, that you shall break his yoke from off thy neck. [\[2Kgs 8:20\]](#);

He threatens Jacob's life

41 And Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing wherewith his father blessed him: and Esau said in his heart, The days of mourning for my father are at hand; then will I slay my brother Jacob. [\[Obad 1:10\]](#);

Rebekah disappoints him, by sending Jacob away

42 And these words of Esau her elder son were told to Rebekah: and she sent and called Jacob her younger son, and said unto him, Behold, thy brother Esau, as touching you, comforts himself, *purposing* to kill you.

43 Now therefore, my son, obey my voice; and arise, flee you to Laban my brother to Haran; [\[Gen 35:1\];](#)

44 And tarry with him a few days, until thy brother's fury turn away;

45 Until thy brother's anger turn away from you, and he forget *that* which you have done to him: then I will send, and fetch you from thence: why should I be deprived also of you both in one day?

46 And Rebekah said to Isaac, I am weary of my life because of the daughters of Heth: if Jacob take a wife of the daughters of Heth, such as these *which are* of the daughters of the land, what good shall my life do me? [Gen 26:35;](#)

Isaac blesses Jacob, and sends him to Padan-aram

1 And Isaac called Jacob, and blessed him, and charged him, and said unto him, you shall not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan. [\[Gen 24:3\]](#);

2 Arise, go to Padanaram, to the house of Bethuel thy mother's father; and take you a wife from thence of the daughters of Laban thy mother's brother. [Hos 12:12](#);

3 And Elohim Almighty bless you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, that you may be a multitude of people; [\[Gen 35:11\]](#); [\[Gen 48:4\]](#);

4 And give you the blessing of Abraham, to you, and to thy seed with you; that you may inherit the land wherein you are a stranger, which Elohim gave unto Abraham. [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 24:7](#); [Gen 26:3](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [Acts 7:5](#);

5 And Isaac sent away Jacob: and he went to Padanaram unto Laban, son of Bethuel the Syrian, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob's and Esau's mother. [\[Hos 12:12\]](#);

Esau marries Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael

6 When Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob, and sent him away to Padanaram, to take him a wife from thence; and that as he blessed him he gave him a charge, saying, you shall not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan;

7 And that Jacob obeyed his father and his mother, and was gone to Padanaram;

8 And Esau seeing that the daughters of Canaan pleased not Isaac his father;

9 Then went Esau unto Ishmael, and took unto the wives which he had Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael Abraham's son, the sister of Nebajoth, to be his wife.

Jacob journeys, and has a vision of a ladder

10 And Jacob went out from Beersheba, and went toward Haran.

11 And he lighted upon a certain place, and tarried there all night, because the sun was set; and he took of the stones of that place, and put *them for* his pillows, and lay down in that place to sleep.

12 And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of Elohim ascending and descending on it. [John 1:51](#); [\[Gen 35:1\]](#); [\[Hos 12:4\]](#);

13 And, behold, the YAHWEH stood above it, and said, I *am* the YAHWEH Elohim of Abraham thy father, and the Elohim of Isaac: the land whereon you liest, to you will I give it, and to thy seed; [Gen 35:1](#); [Gen 35:3](#); [Gen 48:3](#); [Deut 12:20](#); [Deut 19:8](#); [\[Gen 31:13\]](#); [\[Gen 32:12\]](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#); [\[Exod 32:13\]](#); [\[Exod 33:1\]](#); [\[Deut 9:5\]](#); [\[Deut 34:4\]](#); [\[1Chr 16:17\]](#); [\[Ps 105:10\]](#); [\[Ezek 47:14\]](#);

14 And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and you shall spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south: and in you and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed. [Gen 12:3](#); [Gen 18:18](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [\[John 5:46\]](#);

15 And, behold, I *am* with you, and will keep you in all *places* whither you go, and will bring you again into this land; for I will not leave you, until I have done *that* which I have spoken to you of.

16 And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, Surely the YAHWEH is in this place; and I knew *it* not.

17 And he was afraid, and said, How dreadful *is* this place! this *is* none other but the house of Elohim, and this *is* the gate of heaven.

The stone of Beth-el

18 And Jacob rose up early in the morning, and took the stone that he had put *for* his pillows, and set it up *for* a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it. [Gen 31:13](#); [Gen 35:14](#);

19 And he called the name of that place Bethel: but the name of that city *was called* Luz at the first. [\[Gen 35:7\]](#); [\[Judg 1:23\]](#); [\[Hos 12:4\]](#);

Jacob's vow

20 And Jacob vowed a vow, saying, If Elohim will be with me, and will keep me in this way that I go, and will give me bread to eat, and raiment to put on,

21 So that I come again to my father's house in peace; then shall the YAHWEH be my Elohim:

22 And this stone, which I have set *for* a pillar, shall be Elohim's house: and of all that you shall give me I will surely give the tenth unto you.

Jacob comes to the well of Haran

- 1** Then Jacob went on his journey, and came into the land of the people of the east.
- 2** And he looked, and behold a well in the field, and, lo, there *were* three flocks of sheep lying by it; for out of that well they watered the flocks: and a great stone *was* upon the well's mouth.
- 3** And thither were all the flocks gathered: and they rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the sheep, and put the stone again upon the well's mouth in his place.
- 4** And Jacob said unto them, My brethren, whence *be* you? And they said, Of Haran *are* we.
- 5** And he said unto them, Know you Laban the son of Nahor? And they said, We know *him*.
- 6** And he said unto them, *Is* he well? And they said, *He is* well: and, behold, Rachel his daughter cometh with the sheep.
- 7** And he said, Lo, *it is* yet high day, neither *is it* time that the cattle should be gathered together: water you the sheep, and go *and* feed *them*.
- 8** And they said, We cannot, until all the flocks be gathered together, and *till* they roll the stone from the well's mouth; then we water the sheep.

He becomes acquainted with Rachel

- 9** And while he yet spoke with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep: for she kept them.
- 10** And it came to pass, when Jacob saw Rachel the daughter of Laban his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, that Jacob went near, and rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the flock of Laban his mother's brother.
- 11** And Jacob kissed Rachel, and lifted up his voice, and wept.
- 12** And Jacob told Rachel that he *was* her father's brother, and that he *was* Rebekah's son: and she ran and told her father.

Laban entertains him

- 13** And it came to pass, when Laban heard the tidings of Jacob his sister's son, that he ran to meet him, and embraced him, and kissed him, and brought him to his house. And he told Laban all these things.
- 14** And Laban said to him, Surely you are my bone and my flesh. And he abode with him the space of a month.
- 15** And Laban said unto Jacob, Because you are my brother, should you therefore serve me for nought? tell me, what *shall* thy wages *be*?
- 16** And Laban had two daughters: the name of the elder *was* Leah, and the name of the younger *was* Rachel.
- 17** Leah *was* tender eyed; but Rachel was beautiful and well favored.

Jacob covenants for Rachel

- 18** And Jacob loved Rachel; and said, I will serve you seven years for Rachel thy younger daughter. [Hos 12:12;](#)
- 19** And Laban said, *It is* better that I give her to you, than that I should give her to another man: abide with me.
- 20** And Jacob served seven years for Rachel; and they seemed unto him *but* a few days, for the love he had to her. [\[Hos 12:12\];](#)
- 21** And Jacob said unto Laban, Give *me* my wife, for my days are fulfilled, that I may go in unto her.
- 22** And Laban gathered together all the men of the place, and made a feast.

He is deceived by Laban with Leah

23 And it came to pass in the evening, that he took Leah his daughter, and brought her to him; and he went in unto her.

24 And Laban gave unto his daughter Leah Zilpah his maid *for* a handmaid. [\[Gen 46:18\];](#)

25 And it came to pass, that in the morning, behold, it *was* Leah: and he said to Laban, What *is* this you have done unto me? did not I serve with you for Rachel? wherefore then have you beguiled me?

26 And Laban said, It must not be so done in our country, to give the younger before the firstborn.

27 Fulfil her week, and we will give you this also for the service which you shall serve with me yet seven other years.

He marries also Rachel, and serves for her seven years more

28 And Jacob did so, and fulfilled her week: and he gave him Rachel his daughter to wife also. [\[Hos 12:12\];](#)

29 And Laban gave to Rachel his daughter Bilhah his handmaid to be her maid. [\[Gen 46:25\];](#)

30 And he went in also unto Rachel, and he loved also Rachel more than Leah, and served with him yet seven other years.

31 And when the YAHWEH saw that Leah *was* hated, he opened her womb: but Rachel *was* barren.

Leah bears Reuben

32 And Leah conceived, and bore a son, and she called his name Reuben: for she said, Surely the YAHWEH has looked upon my affliction; now therefore my husband will love me. [\[Gen 49:3\]; \[Ruth 4:11\]; \[1Chr 2:1\]; \[Acts 7:8\];](#)

Simeon

33 And she conceived again, and bore a son; and said, Because the YAHWEH has heard that I *was* hated, he has therefore given me this *son* also: and she called his name Simeon.

Levi

34 And she conceived again, and bore a son; and said, Now this time will my husband be joined unto me, because I have born him three sons: therefore was his name called Levi.

and Judah

35 And she conceived again, and bore a son: and she said, Now will I praise the YAHWEH: therefore she called his name Judah; and left bearing. [\[Matt 1:2\];](#)

Rachel, in grief for her barrenness, gives Bilhah her maid unto Jacob

1 And when Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister; and said unto Jacob, Give me children, or else I die.

2 And Jacob's anger was kindled against Rachel: and he said, *Am* I in Elohim's stead, who has withheld from you the fruit of the womb?

3 And she said, Behold my maid Bilhah, go in unto her; and she shall bear upon my knees, that I may also have children by her.

4 And she gave him Bilhah her handmaid to wife: and Jacob went in unto her.

Bilhah bears Dan and Naphtali

5 And Bilhah conceived, and bore Jacob a son. [\[1Chr 2:1\]](#); [\[Acts 7:8\]](#);

6 And Rachel said, Elohim has judged me, and has also heard my voice, and has given me a son: therefore called she his name Dan.

7 And Bilhah Rachel's maid conceived again, and bore Jacob a second son.

8 And Rachel said, With great wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed: and she called his name Naphtali.

Leah gives Zilpah her maid, who bears Gad and Asher

9 When Leah saw that she had left bearing, she took Zilpah her maid, and gave her Jacob to wife.

10 And Zilpah Leah's maid bore Jacob a son.

11 And Leah said, A troop cometh: and she called his name Gad.

12 And Zilpah Leah's maid bore Jacob a second son.

13 And Leah said, Happy am I, for the daughters will call me blessed: and she called his name Asher.

Reuben finds mandrakes, with which Leah buys her husband's company of Rachel

14 And Reuben went in the days of wheat harvest, and found mandrakes in the field, and brought them unto his mother Leah. Then Rachel said to Leah, Give me, I pray you, of thy son's mandrakes.

15 And she said unto her, *Is it* a small matter that you have taken my husband? and wouldest you take away my son's mandrakes also? And Rachel said, Therefore he shall lie with you to night for thy son's mandrakes.

16 And Jacob came out of the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him, and said, you must come in unto me; for surely I have hired you with my son's mandrakes. And he lay with her that night.

Leah bears Issachar, Zebulun, and Dinah

17 And Elohim hearkened unto Leah, and she conceived, and bore Jacob the fifth son.

18 And Leah said, Elohim has given me my hire, because I have given my maiden to my husband: and she called his name Issachar.

19 And Leah conceived again, and bore Jacob the sixth son.

20 And Leah said, Elohim has endued me *with* a good dowry; now will my husband dwell with me, because I have born him six sons: and she called his name Zebulun.

21 And afterwards she bore a daughter, and called her name Dinah. [\[Gen 34:1\]](#);

Rachel bears Joseph

22 And Elohim remembered Rachel, and Elohim hearkened to her, and opened her womb.

23 And she conceived, and bore a son; and said, Elohim has taken away my reproach: [\[Luke 1:25\]](#);

24 And she called his name Joseph; and said, The YAHWEH shall add to me another son. [\[Ruth 4:11\]](#);

Jacob desires to depart

25 And it came to pass, when Rachel had born Joseph, that Jacob said unto Laban, Send me away, that I may go unto mine own place, and to my country.

26 Give *me* my wives and my children, for whom I have served you, and let me go: for you knowest my service which I have done you.

Laban detains him on a new agreement

27 And Laban said unto him, I pray you, if I have found favor in thine eyes, *tarry: for* I have learned by experience that the YAHWEH has blessed me for thy sake.

28 And he said, Appoint me thy wages, and I will give *it*.

29 And he said unto him, you knowest how I have served you, and how thy cattle was with me.

30 For *it was* little which you hadst before I *came*, and it is *now* increased unto a multitude; and the YAHWEH has blessed you since my coming: and now when shall I provide for mine own house also?

31 And he said, What shall I give you? And Jacob said, you shall not give me any thing: if you will do this thing for me, I will again feed *and* keep thy flock:

32 I will pass through all thy flock to day, removing from thence all the speckled and spotted cattle, and all the brown cattle among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats: and *of such* shall be my hire.

33 So shall my righteousness answer for me in time to come, when it shall come for my hire before thy face: every one that *is* not speckled and spotted among the goats, and brown among the sheep, that shall be counted stolen with me.

34 And Laban said, Behold, I would it might be according to thy word.

35 And he removed that day the he goats that were ringstraked and spotted, and all the she goats that were speckled and spotted, *and* every one that had *some* white in it, and all the brown among the sheep, and gave *them* into the hand of his sons.

36 And he set three days' journey between himself and Jacob: and Jacob fed the rest of Laban's flocks.

Jacob's policy, whereby he becomes rich

37 And Jacob took him rods of green poplar, and of the hazel and chesnut tree; and pilled white strakes in them, and made the white appear which *was* in the rods.

38 And he set the rods which he had pilled before the flocks in the gutters in the watering troughs when the flocks came to drink, that they should conceive when they came to drink.

39 And the flocks conceived before the rods, and brought forth cattle ringstraked, speckled, and spotted.

40 And Jacob did separate the lambs, and set the faces of the flocks toward the ringstraked, and all the brown in the flock of Laban; and he put his own flocks by themselves, and put them not unto Laban's cattle.

41 And it came to pass, whensoever the stronger cattle did conceive, that Jacob laid the rods before the eyes of the cattle in the gutters, that they might conceive among the rods.

42 But when the cattle were feeble, he put *them* not in: so the feebler were Laban's, and the stronger Jacob's.

43 And the man increased exceedingly, and had much cattle, and maidservants, and menservants, and camels, and asses.

Jacob, displeased with the envy of Laban and his sons, departs secretly

- 1** And he heard the words of Laban's sons, saying, Jacob has taken away all that *was* our father's; and of *that* which *was* our father's has he gotten all this glory.
- 2** And Jacob beheld the countenance of Laban, and, behold, it *was* not toward him as before.
- 3** And the YAHWEH said unto Jacob, Return unto the land of thy fathers, and to thy kindred; and I will be with you.
- 4** And Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field unto his flock,
- 5** And said unto them, I see your father's countenance, that it *is* not toward me as before; but the Elohim of my father has been with me.
- 6** And you know that with all my power I have served your father.
- 7** And your father has deceived me, and changed my wages ten times; but Elohim suffered him not to hurt me.
- 8** If he said thus, The speckled shall be thy wages; then all the cattle bore speckled: if he said thus, The ringstraked shall be thy hire; then bore all the cattle ringstraked.
- 9** Thus Elohim has taken away the cattle of your father, and given *them* to me.
- 10** And it came to pass at the time that the cattle conceived, that I lifted up mine eyes, and saw in a dream, and, behold, the rams which leaped upon the cattle *were* ringstraked, speckled, and grised.
- 11** And the angel of Elohim spoke unto me in a dream, *saying*, Jacob: And I said, Here *am* I.
- 12** And he said, Lift up now thine eyes, and see, all the rams which leap upon the cattle *are* ringstraked, speckled, and grised: for I have seen all that Laban doeth unto you.
- 13** I *am* the Elohim of Bethel, where you anointedst the pillar, *and* where you vowedst a vow unto me: now arise, get you out from this land, and return unto the land of thy kindred. [Gen 28:13-15](#); [\[Gen 28:18\]](#); [\[Gen 32:9\]](#);
- 14** And Rachel and Leah answered and said unto him, *Is there* yet any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?
- 15** Are we not counted of him strangers? for he has sold us, and has quite devoured also our money.
- 16** For all the riches which Elohim has taken from our father, that *is* ours, and our children's: now then, whatsoever Elohim has said unto you, do.
- 17** Then Jacob rose up, and set his sons and his wives upon camels;
- 18** And he carried away all his cattle, and all his goods which he had gotten, the cattle of his getting, which he had gotten in Padanaram, for to go to Isaac his father in the land of Canaan.

Rachel steals her father's images

- 19** And Laban went to shear his sheep: and Rachel had stolen the images that *were* her father's.
- 20** And Jacob stole away unawares to Laban the Syrian, in that he told him not that he fled.
- 21** So he fled with all that he had; and he rose up, and passed over the river, and set his face *toward* the mount Gilead.

Laban pursues after him, and complains of the wrong

- 22** And it was told Laban on the third day that Jacob was fled.
- 23** And he took his brethren with him, and pursued after him seven days' journey; and they overtook him in the mount Gilead.
- 24** And Elohim came to Laban the Syrian in a dream by night, and said unto him, Take heed that you speak not to Jacob either good or bad.
- 25** Then Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the mount: and Laban with his brethren pitched in the mount of Gilead.
- 26** And Laban said to Jacob, What have you done, that you have stolen away unawares to me, and carried away my daughters, as captives *taken* with the sword?

27 Wherefore didst you flee away secretly, and steal away from me; and didst not tell me, that I might have sent you away with mirth, and with songs, with tabret, and with harp?

28 And have not suffered me to kiss my sons and my daughters? you have now done foolishly in *so* doing.

29 It is in the power of my hand to do you hurt: but the Elohim of your father spoke unto me last night, saying, Take you heed that you speak not to Jacob either good or bad.

30 And now, though you wouldest needs be gone, because you sore longedst after thy father's house, yet wherefore have you stolen my gods?

31 And Jacob answered and said to Laban, Because I was afraid: for I said, Perhaps you wouldest take by force thy daughters from me.

32 With whomsoever you findest thy gods, let him not live: before our brethren discern you what *is* thine with me, and take *it* to you. For Jacob knew not that Rachel had stolen them.

33 And Laban went into Jacob's tent, and into Leah's tent, and into the two maidservants' tents; but he found *them* not. Then went he out of Leah's tent, and entered into Rachel's tent.

Rachel's stratagem to hide the images

34 Now Rachel had taken the images, and put them in the camel's furniture, and sat upon them. And Laban searched all the tent, but found *them* not.

35 And she said to her father, Let it not displease my lord that I cannot rise up before you; for the custom of women *is* upon me. And he searched, but found not the images.

Jacob's complaint of Laban

36 And Jacob was wroth, and chode with Laban: and Jacob answered and said to Laban, What *is* my trespass? what *is* my sin, that you have so hotly pursued after me?

37 Whereas you have searched all my stuff, what have you found of all thy household stuff? set *it* here before my brethren and thy brethren, that they may judge between us both.

38 This twenty years *have I been* with you; thy ewes and thy she goats have not cast their young, and the rams of thy flock have I not eaten.

39 That which was torn *of beasts* I brought not unto you; I bore the loss of it; of my hand didst you require it, *whether* stolen by day, or stolen by night.

40 *Thus* I was; in the day the drought consumed me, and the frost by night; and my sleep departed from mine eyes.

41 Thus have I been twenty years in thy house; I served you fourteen years for thy two daughters, and six years for thy cattle: and you have changed my wages ten times.

42 Except the Elohim of my father, the Elohim of Abraham, and the fear of Isaac, had been with me, surely you hadst sent me away now empty. Elohim has seen mine affliction and the labour of my hands, and rebuked you last night. [\[Gen 48:16\];](#)

The covenant of Laban and Jacob at Galeed

43 And Laban answered and said unto Jacob, *These* daughters *are* my daughters, and *these* children *are* my children, and *these* cattle *are* my cattle, and all that you seest *is* mine: and what can I do this day unto these my daughters, or unto their children which they have born?

44 Now therefore come you, let us make a covenant, I and you; and let it be for a witness between me and you.

45 And Jacob took a stone, and set it up *for* a pillar.

46 And Jacob said unto his brethren, Gather stones; and they took stones, and made a heap: and they did eat there upon the heap.

47 And Laban called it Jegarsahadutha: but Jacob called it Galeed.

48 And Laban said, This heap *is* a witness between me and you this day. Therefore was the name of it called Galeed; [\[Josh 22:27\]](#);

49 And Mizpah; for he said, The YAHWEH watch between me and you, when we are absent one from another.

50 If you shall afflict my daughters, or if you shall take *other* wives beside my daughters, no man *is* with us; see, Elohim *is* witness between me and you.

51 And Laban said to Jacob, Behold this heap, and behold *this* pillar, which I have cast between me and you;

52 This heap *be* witness, and *this* pillar *be* witness, that I will not pass over this heap to you, and that you shall not pass over this heap and this pillar unto me, for harm.

53 The Elohim of Abraham, and the Elohim of Nahor, the Elohim of their father, judge between us. And Jacob swore by the fear of his father Isaac.

54 Then Jacob offered sacrifice upon the mount, and called his brethren to eat bread: and they did eat bread, and tarried all night in the mount.

55 And early in the morning Laban rose up, and kissed his sons and his daughters, and blessed them: and Laban departed, and returned unto his place.

Jacob's vision at Mahanaim

1 And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of Elohim met him. [Gen 48:16](#);

2 And when Jacob saw them, he said, This *is* Elohim's host: and he called the name of that place Mahanaim. [\[Ps 103:21\]](#);

His message to Esau

3 And Jacob sent messengers before him to Esau his brother unto the land of Seir, the country of Edom.

4 And he commanded them, saying, Thus shall you speak unto my lord Esau; Thy servant Jacob saith thus, I have sojourned with Laban, and stayed there until now:

5 And I have oxen, and asses, flocks, and menservants, and womenservants: and I have sent to tell my lord, that I may find grace in thy sight.

He is afraid of Esau's coming

6 And the messengers returned to Jacob, saying, We came to thy brother Esau, and also he cometh to meet you, and four hundred men with him.

7 Then Jacob was greatly afraid and distressed: and he divided the people that *was* with him, and the flocks, and herds, and the camels, into two bands;

8 And said, If Esau come to the one company, and smite it, then the other company which is left shall escape.

He prays for deliverance

9 And Jacob said, O Elohim of my father Abraham, and Elohim of my father Isaac, the YAHWEH which saidst unto me, Return unto thy country, and to thy kindred, and I will deal well with you: [Gen 31:13](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#);

10 I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which you have showed unto thy servant; for with my staff I passed over this Jordan; and now I am become two bands.

11 Deliver me, I pray you, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau: for I fear him, lest he will come and smite me, *and* the mother with the children.

12 And you saidst, I will surely do you good, and make thy seed as the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for multitude. [Gen 28:13](#); [\[Hos 1:10\]](#);

He sends a present to Esau, and passes the brook Jabbok

13 And he lodged there that same night; and took of that which came to his hand a present for Esau his brother;

14 Two hundred she goats, and twenty he goats, two hundred ewes, and twenty rams,

15 Thirty milch camels with their colts, forty kine, and ten bulls, twenty she asses, and ten foals.

16 And he delivered *them* into the hand of his servants, every drove by themselves; and said unto his servants, Pass over before me, and put a space between drove and drove.

17 And he commanded the foremost, saying, When Esau my brother meeteth you, and asketh you, saying, Whose are you? and whither go you? and whose *are* these before you?

18 Then you shall say, *They be* thy servant Jacob's; it *is* a present sent unto my lord Esau: and, behold, also he *is* behind us.

19 And so commanded he the second, and the third, and all that followed the droves, saying, On this manner shall you speak unto Esau, when you find him.

20 And say you moreover, Behold, thy servant Jacob *is* behind us. For he said, I will appease him with the present that goes before me, and afterward I will see his face; perhaps he will accept me.

21 So went the present over before him: and himself lodged that night in the company.

22 And he rose up that night, and took his two wives, and his two womenservants, and his eleven sons, and passed over the ford Jabbok.

23 And he took them, and sent them over the brook, and sent over that he had.

He wrestles with an angel at Peniel, where he is called Israel

24 And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day.

25 And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him.

26 And he said, Let me go, for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let you go, except you bless me. [Hos 12:3](#);

27 And he said unto him, What *is* thy name? And he said, Jacob.

28 And he said, Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince have you power with Elohim and with men, and have prevailed. [Gen 35:10](#); [\[1Kgs 18:31\]](#); [\[2Kgs 17:34\]](#);

29 And Jacob asked *him*, and said, Tell *me*, I pray you, thy name. And he said, Wherefore *is* it *that* you dost ask after my name? And he blessed him there.

30 And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel: for I have seen Elohim face to face, and my life is preserved.

He halts

31 And as he passed over Penuel the sun rose upon him, and he halted upon his thigh.

32 Therefore the children of Israel eat not *of* the sinew which shrank, which *is* upon the hollow of the thigh, unto this day: because he touched the hollow of Jacob's thigh in the sinew that shrank.

Jacob and Esau's meeting; and Esau's departure

- 1** And Jacob lifted up his eyes, and looked, and, behold, Esau came, and with him four hundred men. And he divided the children unto Leah, and unto Rachel, and unto the two handmaids.
- 2** And he put the handmaids and their children foremost, and Leah and her children after, and Rachel and Joseph hindermost.
- 3** And he passed over before them, and bowed himself to the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother.
- 4** And Esau ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell on his neck, and kissed him: and they wept.
- 5** And he lifted up his eyes, and saw the women and the children; and said, Who *are* those with you? And he said, The children which Elohim has graciously given thy servant.
- 6** Then the handmaidens came near, they and their children, and they bowed themselves.
- 7** And Leah also with her children came near, and bowed themselves: and after came Joseph near and Rachel, and they bowed themselves.
- 8** And he said, What *meanest* you by all this drove which I met? And he said, *These are* to find grace in the sight of my lord.
- 9** And Esau said, I have enough, my brother; keep that you have unto thyself.
- 10** And Jacob said, Nay, I pray you, if now I have found grace in thy sight, then receive my present at my hand: for therefore I have seen thy face, as though I had seen the face of Elohim, and you were pleased with me.
- 11** Take, I pray you, my blessing that is brought to you; because Elohim has dealt graciously with me, and because I have enough. And he urged him, and he took *it*. [[Acts 16:15](#)];
- 12** And he said, Let us take our journey, and let us go, and I will go before you.
- 13** And he said unto him, My lord knoweth that the children *are* tender, and the flocks and herds with young *are* with me: if men should overdrive them one day, all the flock will die.
- 14** Let my lord, I pray you, pass over before his servant: and I will lead on softly, according as the cattle that goes before me and the children be able to endure, until I come unto my lord unto Seir.
- 15** And Esau said, Let me now leave with you *some* of the folk that *are* with me. And he said, What needeth it? let me find grace in the sight of my lord.
- 16** So Esau returned that day on his way unto Seir.

Jacob comes to Succoth

- 17** And Jacob journeyed to Succoth, and built him a house, and made booths for his cattle: therefore the name of the place is called Succoth.

At Shalem he buys a field, and builds an altar, called El-elohe-Israel

- 18** And Jacob came to Shalem, a city of Shechem, which *is* in the land of Canaan, when he came from Padanaram; and pitched his tent before the city. [[Josh 24:32](#); [Acts 7:16](#)];
- 19** And he bought a parcel of a field, where he had spread his tent, at the hand of the children of Hamor, Shechem's father, for a hundred pieces of money. [[John 4:5](#)];
- 20** And he erected there an altar, and called it Elelohe-Israel.

Dinah is ravished by Shechem

1 And Dinah the daughter of Leah, which she bore unto Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land. [Gen 30:21](#);

2 And when Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, prince of the country, saw her, he took her, and lay with her, and defiled her.

3 And his being clave unto Dinah the daughter of Jacob, and he loved the damsel, and spoke kindly unto the damsel.

He sues to marry her

4 And Shechem spoke unto his father Hamor, saying, Get me this damsel to wife.

5 And Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter: now his sons were with his cattle in the field: and Jacob held his peace until they were come.

6 And Hamor the father of Shechem went out unto Jacob to commune with him.

7 And the sons of Jacob came out of the field when they heard *it*: and the men were grieved, and they were very wroth, because he had wrought folly in Israel in lying with Jacob's daughter; which thing ought not to be done.

8 And Hamor communed with them, saying, The being of my son Shechem longeth for your daughter: I pray you give her him to wife.

9 And make you marriages with us, *and* give your daughters unto us, and take our daughters unto you.

10 And you shall dwell with us: and the land shall be before you; dwell and trade you therein, and get you possessions therein. [\[Gen 13:9\]](#);

11 And Shechem said unto her father and unto her brethren, Let me find grace in your eyes, and what you shall say unto me I will give.

12 Ask me never so much dowry and gift, and I will give according as you shall say unto me: but give me the damsel to wife.

The sons of Jacob offer the condition of circumcision to the Shechemites

13 And the sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father deceitfully, and said, because he had defiled Dinah their sister:

14 And they said unto them, We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to one that is uncircumcised; for that *were* a reproach unto us: [Gen 17:12-14](#);

15 But in this will we consent unto you: If you will be as we *be*, that every male of you be circumcised;

16 Then will we give our daughters unto you, and we will take your daughters to us, and we will dwell with you, and we will become one people.

17 But if you will not hearken unto us, to be circumcised; then will we take our daughter, and we will be gone.

18 And their words pleased Hamor, and Shechem Hamor's son.

19 And the young man deferred not to do the thing, because he had delight in Jacob's daughter: and he *was* more honourable than all the house of his father.

Hamor and Shechem persuade them to accept it

20 And Hamor and Shechem his son came unto the gate of their city, and communed with the men of their city, saying,

21 These men *are* peaceable with us; therefore let them dwell in the land, and trade therein; for the land, behold, *it is* large enough for them; let us take their daughters to us for wives, and let us give them our daughters.

22 Only herein will the men consent unto us for to dwell with us, to be one people, if every male among us be circumcised, as they *are* circumcised.

23 *Shall* not their cattle and their substance and every beast of theirs *be* ours? only let us consent unto them, and they will dwell with us.

24 And unto Hamor and unto Shechem his son hearkened all that went out of the gate of his city; and every male was circumcised, all that went out of the gate of his city.

The sons of Jacob upon that advantage slay them, and spoil their city

25 And it came to pass on the third day, when they were sore, that two of the sons of Jacob, Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brethren, took each man his sword, and came upon the city boldly, and slew all the males.

[Gen 49:6](#);

26 And they slew Hamor and Shechem his son with the edge of the sword, and took Dinah out of Shechem's house, and went out.

27 The sons of Jacob came upon the slain, and spoiled the city, because they had defiled their sister.

28 They took their sheep, and their oxen, and their asses, and that which *was* in the city, and that which *was* in the field,

29 And all their wealth, and all their little ones, and their wives took they captive, and spoiled even all that *was* in the house.

Jacob reproves Simeon and Levi

30 And Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, you have troubled me to make me to stink among the inhabitants of the land, among the Canaanites and the Perizzites: and I *being* few in number, they shall gather themselves together against me, and slay me; and I shall be destroyed, I and my house.

31 And they said, Should he deal with our sister as with a harlot?

Elohim commands Jacob to go to Bethel

1 And Elohim said unto Jacob, Arise, go up to Bethel, and dwell there: and make there an altar unto Elohim, that appeared unto you when you fleddest from the face of Esau thy brother. [Gen 28:12-13](#); [Gen 27:43](#); [\[Gen 28:13\]](#);

He purges his house of idols

2 Then Jacob said unto his household, and to all that *were* with him, Put away the strange gods that *are* among you, and be clean, and change your garments:

3 And let us arise, and go up to Bethel; and I will make there an altar unto Elohim, who answered me in the day of my distress, and was with me in the way which I went. [\[Gen 28:13\]](#);

4 And they gave unto Jacob all the strange gods which *were* in their hand, and *all their* earrings which *were* in their ears; and Jacob hid them under the oak which *was* by Shechem.

5 And they journeyed: and the terror of Elohim was upon the cities that *were* round about them, and they did not pursue after the sons of Jacob. [\[Ps 105:14\]](#);

He builds an altar at Bethel

6 So Jacob came to Luz, which *is* in the land of Canaan, that *is*, Bethel, he and all the people that *were* with him. [\[Gen 48:3\]](#);

7 And he built there an altar, and called the place Elbethel: because there Elohim appeared unto him, when he fled from the face of his brother. [Gen 28:19](#); [\[Hos 12:4\]](#);

Deborah dies at Allon-bachuth

8 But Deborah Rebekah's nurse died, and she was buried beneath Bethel under an oak: and the name of it was called Allonbachuth.

Elohim blesses Jacob at Bethel

9 And Elohim appeared unto Jacob again, when he came out of Padanaram, and blessed him. [Hos 12:4](#); [\[Hos 12:3\]](#);

10 And Elohim said unto him, Thy name *is* Jacob: thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but Israel shall be thy name: and he called his name Israel. [Gen 32:28](#); [2Kgs 17:34](#);

11 And Elohim said unto him, I *am* Elohim Almighty: be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of you, and kings shall come out of thy loins; [Gen 17:1](#); [Gen 28:3](#); [Gen 48:3](#); [Gen 17:6](#); [Gen 17:16](#); [Matt 1:6](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#); [\[Gen 48:4\]](#); [\[1Chr 16:17\]](#); [\[Ps 105:10\]](#);

12 And the land which I gave Abraham and Isaac, to you I will give it, and to thy seed after you will I give the land.

13 And Elohim went up from him in the place where he talked with him.

14 And Jacob set up a pillar in the place where he talked with him, *even* a pillar of stone: and he poured a drink offering thereon, and he poured oil thereon. [Gen 28:18](#); [\[Hos 12:4\]](#);

15 And Jacob called the name of the place where Elohim spoke with him, Bethel.

Rachel travails of Benjamin, and dies in the way to Edar

16 And they journeyed from Bethel; and there was but a little way to come to Ephrath: and Rachel travailed, and she had hard labour.

17 And it came to pass, when she was in hard labour, that the midwife said unto her, Fear not; you shall have this son also. [\[Ruth 4:11\]](#);

18 And it came to pass, as her being was in departing, (for she died) that she called his name Benoni: but his father called him Benjamin. [\[1Chr 2:1\]](#);

- 19** And Rachel died, and was buried in the way to Ephrath, which *is* Bethlehem. [Gen 48:7](#);
20 And Jacob set a pillar upon her grave: that *is* the pillar of Rachel's grave unto this day.
21 And Israel journeyed, and spread his tent beyond the tower of Edar.

Reuben lies with Bilhah

- 22** And it came to pass, when Israel dwelt in that land, that Reuben went and lay with Bilhah his father's concubine: and Israel heard *it*. Now the sons of Jacob were twelve: [Gen 49:4](#); [\[1Chr 2:1\]](#);

The sons of Jacob

- 23** The sons of Leah; Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, and Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Zebulun: [Gen 46:8](#); [Exod 1:2](#); [\[Acts 7:8\]](#);
24 The sons of Rachel; Joseph, and Benjamin:
25 And the sons of Bilhah, Rachel's handmaid; Dan, and Naphtali:
26 And the sons of Zilpah, Leah's handmaid; Gad, and Asher: these *are* the sons of Jacob, which were born to him in Padanaram.

Jacob comes to Isaac at Hebron

- 27** And Jacob came unto Isaac his father unto Mamre, unto the city of Arbah, which *is* Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac sojourned.

The age, death, and burial of Isaac

- 28** And the days of Isaac were a hundred and fourscore years.
29 And Isaac gave up the ghost, and died, and was gathered unto his people, *being* old and full of days: and his sons Esau and Jacob buried him. [Gen 25:8](#); [\[Gen 49:31\]](#);

Esau's three wives

- 1** Now these *are* the generations of Esau, who *is* Edom. [1Chr 1:35](#);
- 2** Esau took his wives of the daughters of Canaan; Adah the daughter of Elon the Hittite, and Aholibamah the daughter of Anah the daughter of Zibeon the Hivite;
- 3** And Bashemath Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebajoth.
- 4** And Adah bore to Esau Eliphaz; and Bashemath bore Reuel;
- 5** And Aholibamah bore Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah: these *are* the sons of Esau, which were born unto him in the land of Canaan.

His removal to mount Seir

- 6** And Esau took his wives, and his sons, and his daughters, and all the persons of his house, and his cattle, and all his beasts, and all his substance, which he had got in the land of Canaan; and went into the country from the face of his brother Jacob.
- 7** For their riches were more than that they might dwell together; and the land wherein they were strangers could not bear them because of their cattle. [Gen 13:6](#); [\[Gen 37:1\]](#);
- 8** Thus dwelt Esau in mount Seir: Esau *is* Edom. [Josh 24:4](#); [\[Deut 2:5\]](#);

His sons

- 9** And these *are* the generations of Esau the father of the Edomites in mount Seir:
- 10** These *are* the names of Esau's sons; Eliphaz the son of Adah the wife of Esau, Reuel the son of Bashemath the wife of Esau. [\[1Chr 1:35\]](#);
- 11** And the sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, and Gatam, and Kenaz.
- 12** And Timna was concubine to Eliphaz Esau's son; and she bore to Eliphaz Amalek: these *were* the sons of Adah Esau's wife.
- 13** And these *are* the sons of Reuel; Nahas, and Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah: these were the sons of Bashemath Esau's wife.
- 14** And these were the sons of Aholibamah, the daughter of Anah the daughter of Zibeon, Esau's wife: and she bore to Esau Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah.

The dukes which descended of his sons

- 15** These *were* dukes of the sons of Esau: the sons of Eliphaz the firstborn *son* of Esau; duke Teman, duke Omar, duke Zepho, duke Kenaz,
- 16** Duke Korah, duke Gatam, *and* duke Amalek: these *are* the dukes *that came* of Eliphaz in the land of Edom; these *were* the sons of Adah.
- 17** And these *are* the sons of Reuel Esau's son; duke Nahas, duke Zerah, duke Shammah, duke Mizzah: these *are* the dukes *that came* of Reuel in the land of Edom; these *are* the sons of Bashemath Esau's wife.
- 18** And these *are* the sons of Aholibamah Esau's wife; duke Jeush, duke Jaalam, duke Korah: these *were* the dukes *that came* of Aholibamah the daughter of Anah, Esau's wife.
- 19** These *are* the sons of Esau, who *is* Edom, and these *are* their dukes.

The sons and dukes of Seir the Horite

- 20** These *are* the sons of Seir the Horite, who inhabited the land; Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah, [1Chr 1:38](#);

21 And Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan: these *are* the dukes of the Horites, the children of Seir in the land of Edom.

22 And the children of Lotan were Hori and Hemam; and Lotan's sister *was* Timna.

23 And the children of Shobal *were* these; Alvan, and Manahas, and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

Anah finds mules

24 And these *are* the children of Zibeon; both Ajah, and Anah: this *was that* Anah that found the mules in the wilderness, as he fed the asses of Zibeon his father.

25 And the children of Anah *were* these; Dishon, and Aholibamah the daughter of Anah.

26 And these *are* the children of Dishon; Hemdan, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Cheran.

27 The children of Ezer *are* these; Bilhan, and Zaavan, and Akan.

28 The children of Dishan *are* these; Uz, and Aran.

29 These *are* the dukes *that came* of the Horites; duke Lotan, duke Shobal, duke Zibeon, duke Anah,

30 Duke Dishon, duke Ezer, duke Dishan: these *are* the dukes *that came* of Hori, among their dukes in the land of Seir.

The kings of Edom

31 And these *are* the kings that reigned in the land of Edom, before there reigned any king over the children of Israel. [1Chr 1:43](#);

32 And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom: and the name of his city *was* Dinhabah.

33 And Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his stead.

34 And Jobab died, and Husham of the land of Temani reigned in his stead.

35 And Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad, who smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his stead: and the name of his city *was* Avith.

36 And Hadad died, and Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his stead.

37 And Samlah died, and Saul of Rehoboth *by* the river reigned in his stead.

38 And Saul died, and Baalhanan the son of Achbor reigned in his stead.

39 And Baalhanan the son of Achbor died, and Hadar reigned in his stead: and the name of his city *was* Pau; and his wife's name *was* Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab.

The dukes that descended of Esau

40 And these *are* the names of the dukes *that came* of Esau, according to their families, after their places, by their names; duke Timnah, duke Alvah, duke Jetheth, [1Chr 1:51](#);

41 Duke Aholibamah, duke Elah, duke Pinon,

42 Duke Kenaz, duke Teman, duke Mibzar,

43 Duke Magdiel, duke Iram: these *be* the dukes of Edom, according to their habitations in the land of their possession: he *is* Esau the father of the Edomites.

Joseph is loved by Jacob, but hated by his brethren

- 1** And Jacob dwelt in the land wherein his father was a stranger, in the land of Canaan. [Gen 36:7; Heb 11:9;](#)
- 2** These *are* the generations of Jacob. Joseph, *being* seventeen years old, was feeding the flock with his brethren; and the lad *was* with the sons of Bilhah, and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives: and Joseph brought unto his father their evil report.
- 3** Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his children, because he *was* the son of his old age: and he made him a coat of *many* colours.
- 4** And when his brethren saw that their father loved him more than all his brethren, they hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him. [Gen 49:23; \[Acts 7:9\];](#)

His dreams and the interpretation

- 5** And Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told *it* his brethren: and they hated him yet the more. [\[Gen 42:9\];](#)
- 6** And he said unto them, Hear, I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed:
- 7** For, behold, we *were* binding sheaves in the field, and, lo, my sheaf arose, and also stood upright; and, behold, your sheaves stood round about, and made obeisance to my sheaf. [\[Gen 42:6\];](#)
- 8** And his brethren said to him, shall you indeed reign over us? or shall you indeed have dominion over us? And they hated him yet the more for his dreams, and for his words.
- 9** And he dreamed yet another dream, and told it his brethren, and said, Behold, I have dreamed a dream more; and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance to me.
- 10** And he told *it* to his father, and to his brethren: and his father rebuked him, and said unto him, What *is* this dream that you have dreamed? Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to you to the earth? [\[Gen 43:26\];](#)
- 11** And his brethren envied him; but his father observed the saying. [Acts 7:9;](#)

Jacob sends him to his brethren, who counsel to slay him

- 12** And his brethren went to feed their father's flock in Shechem.
- 13** And Israel said unto Joseph, Do not thy brethren feed *the flock* in Shechem? come, and I will send you unto them. And he said to him, Here *am I*.
- 14** And he said to him, Go, I pray you, see whether it be well with thy brethren, and well with the flocks; and bring me word again. So he sent him out of the vale of Hebron, and he came to Shechem.
- 15** And a certain man found him, and, behold, *he was* wandering in the field: and the man asked him, saying, What seekest you?
- 16** And he said, I seek my brethren: tell me, I pray you, where they feed *their flocks*.
- 17** And the man said, They are departed hence; for I heard them say, Let us go to Dothan. And Joseph went after his brethren, and found them in Dothan.
- 18** And when they saw him afar off, even before he came near unto them, they conspired against him to slay him. [\[Matt 21:38\]; \[Mark 12:7\]; \[Luke 20:14\];](#)
- 19** And they said one to another, Behold, this dreamer cometh.
- 20** Come now therefore, and let us slay him, and cast him into some pit, and we will say, Some evil beast has devoured him: and we shall see what will become of his dreams.

At Reuben's desire they cast him into a pit

- 21** And Reuben heard *it*, and he delivered him out of their hands; and said, Let us not kill him. [Gen 42:22;](#)
- 22** And Reuben said unto them, Shed no blood, *but* cast him into this pit that *is* in the wilderness, and lay no hand upon him; that he might rid him out of their hands, to deliver him to his father again.

23 And it came to pass, when Joseph was come unto his brethren, that they stript Joseph out of his coat, *his* coat of *many* colours that *was* on him;

24 And they took him, and cast him into a pit: and the pit *was* empty, *there was* no water in it.

and afterwards sell him to the Ishmaelites; while Ruben grieves at not finding him

25 And they sat down to eat bread: and they lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a company of Ishmeelites came from Gilead with their camels bearing spicery and balm and myrrh, going to carry *it* down to Egypt. [\[Jer 8:22\]](#);

26 And Judah said unto his brethren, What profit *is it* if we slay our brother, and conceal his blood?

27 Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmeelites, and let not our hand be upon him; for he *is* our brother *and* our flesh. And his brethren were content.

28 Then there passed by Midianites merchantmen; and they drew and lifted up Joseph out of the pit, and sold Joseph to the Ishmeelites for twenty *pieces* of silver: and they brought Joseph into Egypt. [Ps 105:17](#); [Acts 7:9](#); [\[Gen 39:1\]](#); [\[Gen 45:4\]](#);

29 And Reuben returned unto the pit; and, behold, Joseph *was* not in the pit; and he rent his clothes.

30 And he returned unto his brethren, and said, The child *is* not; and I, whither shall I go?

His coat, covered with blood, is sent to Jacob, who mourns him inordinately

31 And they took Joseph's coat, and killed a kid of the goats, and dipped the coat in the blood;

32 And they sent the coat of *many* colours, and they brought *it* to their father; and said, This have we found: know now whether it *be* thy son's coat or no.

33 And he knew it, and said, *It is* my son's coat; an evil beast has devoured him; Joseph is without doubt rent in pieces. [Gen 44:28](#);

34 And Jacob rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his loins, and mourned for his son many days.

35 And all his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him; but he refused to be comforted; and he said, For I will go down into the grave unto my son mourning. Thus his father wept for him. [Gen 42:38](#); [Gen 44:29](#); [Gen 44:31](#);

Joseph is brought to Egypt and sold to Potiphar

36 And the Midianites sold him into Egypt unto Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh's, *and* captain of the guard. [Gen 39:1](#); [Ps 105:17](#);

Judah begets Er, Onan, and Shelah

1 And it came to pass at that time, that Judah went down from his brethren, and turned in to a certain Adullamite, whose name *was* Hirah.

2 And Judah saw there a daughter of a certain Canaanite, whose name *was* Shuah; and he took her, and went in unto her. [1Chr 2:3](#);

3 And she conceived, and bore a son; and he called his name Er. [\[Gen 46:12\]](#); [\[1Chr 2:3\]](#);

4 And she conceived again, and bore a son; and she called his name Onan.

5 And she yet again conceived, and bore a son; and called his name Shelah: and he was at Chezib, when she bore him. [Num 26:20](#); [\[1Chr 4:21\]](#);

Er's marriage with Tamar, and death

6 And Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, whose name *was* Tamar.

7 And Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of the YAHWEH; and the YAHWEH slew him. [\[Num 26:19\]](#);

The trespass of Onan

8 And Judah said unto Onan, Go in unto thy brother's wife, and marry her, and raise up seed to thy brother.

9 And Onan knew that the seed should not be his; and it came to pass, when he went in unto his brother's wife, that he spilled *it* on the ground, lest that he should give seed to his brother.

10 And the thing which he did displeased the YAHWEH: wherefore he slew him also. [\[Num 26:19\]](#);

Tamar is reserved for Shelah

11 Then said Judah to Tamar his daughter in law, Remain a widow at thy father's house, till Shelah my son be grown: for he said, Lest he die also, as his brethren *did*. And Tamar went and dwelt in her father's house.

Judah's wife dies

12 And in process of time the daughter of Shuah Judah's wife died; and Judah was comforted, and went up unto his sheepshearers to Timnath, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.

Tamar deceives Judah

13 And it was told Tamar, saying, Behold thy father in law goes up to Timnath to shear his sheep.

14 And she put her widow's garments off from her, and covered her with a vail, and wrapped herself, and sat in an open place, which *is* by the way to Timnath; for she saw that Shelah was grown, and she was not given unto him to wife.

15 When Judah saw her, he thought her *to be* a harlot; because she had covered her face.

16 And he turned unto her by the way, and said, Go to, I pray you, let me come in unto you; (for he knew not that she *was* his daughter in law.) And she said, What will you give me, that you may come in unto me?

17 And he said, I will send you a kid from the flock. And she said, will you give *me* a pledge, till you send *it*?

18 And he said, What pledge shall I give you? And she said, Thy signet, and thy bracelets, and thy staff that *is* in thine hand. And he gave *it* her, and came in unto her, and she conceived by him.

19 And she arose, and went away, and laid by her vail from her, and put on the garments of her widowhood.

20 And Judah sent the kid by the hand of his friend the Adullamite, to receive *his* pledge from the woman's hand: but he found her not.

21 Then he asked the men of that place, saying, Where *is* the harlot, that *was* openly by the way side? And they said, There was no harlot in this *place*.

22 And he returned to Judah, and said, I cannot find her; and also the men of the place said, *that* there was no harlot in this *place*.

23 And Judah said, Let her take *it* to her, lest we be shamed: behold, I sent this kid, and you have not found her.

24 And it came to pass about three months after, that it was told Judah, saying, Tamar thy daughter in law has played the harlot; and also, behold, she *is* with child by whoredom. And Judah said, Bring her forth, and let her be burnt.

25 When she *was* brought forth, she sent to her father in law, saying, By the man, whose these *are*, *am* I with child: and she said, Discern, I pray you, whose *are* these, the signet, and bracelets, and staff.

26 And Judah acknowledged *them*, and said, She has been more righteous than I; because that I gave her not to Shelah my son. And he knew her again no more.

She bears twins, Pharez and Zarah

27 And it came to pass in the time of her travail, that, behold, twins *were* in her womb. [1Chr 2:4](#); [\[Matt 1:3\]](#);

28 And it came to pass, when she travailed, that *the one* put out *his* hand: and the midwife took and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread, saying, This came out first. [\[1Chr 2:4\]](#);

29 And it came to pass, as he drew back his hand, that, behold, his brother came out: and she said, How have you broken forth? *this* breach *be* upon you: therefore his name was called Pharez. [Matt 1:3](#); [\[Ruth 4:12\]](#); [\[1Chr 4:1\]](#);

30 And afterward came out his brother, that had the scarlet thread upon his hand: and his name was called Zarah.

Joseph is bought by Potiphar, and preferred in the family

1 And Joseph was brought down to Egypt; and Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, captain of the guard, an Egyptian, bought him of the hands of the Ishmeelites, which had brought him down thither. [Gen 37:28](#); [Ps 105:17](#); [[Gen 37:36](#)];

2 And the YAHWEH was with Joseph, and he was a prosperous man; and he was in the house of his master the Egyptian. [Gen 39:21](#); [Acts 7:9](#);

3 And his master saw that the YAHWEH *was* with him, and that the YAHWEH made all that he did to prosper in his hand.

4 And Joseph found grace in his sight, and he served him: and he made him overseer over his house, and all *that* he had he put into his hand.

5 And it came to pass from the time *that* he had made him overseer in his house, and over all that he had, that the YAHWEH blessed the Egyptian's house for Joseph's sake; and the blessing of the YAHWEH was upon all that he had in the house, and in the field.

6 And he left all that he had in Joseph's hand; and he knew not ought he had, save the bread which he did eat. And Joseph was *a* goodly *person*, and well favored.

He resists his mistress's temptation

7 And it came to pass after these things, that his master's wife cast her eyes upon Joseph; and she said, Lie with me. [Prov 7:13](#);

8 But he refused, and said unto his master's wife, Behold, my master wotteth not what *is* with me in the house, and he has committed all that he has to my hand;

9 *There is* none greater in this house than I; neither has he kept back any thing from me but you, because you are his wife: how then can I do this great wickedness, and sin against Elohim?

10 And it came to pass, as she spoke to Joseph day by day, that he hearkened not unto her, to lie by her, *or* to be with her.

11 And it came to pass about this time, that *Joseph* went into the house to do his business; and *there was* none of the men of the house there within.

12 And she caught him by his garment, saying, Lie with me: and he left his garment in her hand, and fled, and got him out.

He is falsely accused by her

13 And it came to pass, when she saw that he had left his garment in her hand, and was fled forth,

14 That she called unto the men of her house, and spoke unto them, saying, See, he has brought in an Hebrew unto us to mock us; he came in unto me to lie with me, and I cried with a loud voice:

15 And it came to pass, when he heard that I lifted up my voice and cried, that he left his garment with me, and fled, and got him out.

16 And she laid up his garment by her, until his lord came home.

17 And she spoke unto him according to these words, saying, The Hebrew servant, which you have brought unto us, came in unto me to mock me:

18 And it came to pass, as I lifted up my voice and cried, that he left his garment with me, and fled out.

19 And it came to pass, when his master heard the words of his wife, which she spoke unto him, saying, After this manner did thy servant to me; that his wrath was kindled.

He is cast into prison

20 And Joseph's master took him, and put him into the prison, a place where the king's prisoners *were* bound: and he was there in the prison. [Ps 105:18](#);

Elohim is with him there, and he is advanced by the keeper of prison

21 But the YAHWEH was with Joseph, and showed him mercy, and gave him favor in the sight of the keeper of the prison. [\[Gen 39:2\]](#);

22 And the keeper of the prison committed to Joseph's hand all the prisoners that *were* in the prison; and whatsoever they did there, he was the doer *of it*.

23 The keeper of the prison looked not to any thing *that was* under his hand; because the YAHWEH was with him, and *that* which he did, the YAHWEH made *it* to prosper.

The chief butler and baker of Pharaoh being imprisoned, Joseph is charged with them

1 And it came to pass after these things, *that* the butler of the king of Egypt and *his* baker had offended their lord the king of Egypt.

2 And Pharaoh was wroth against two *of* his officers, against the chief of the butlers, and against the chief of the bakers.

3 And he put them in ward in the house of the captain of the guard, into the prison, the place where Joseph *was* bound.

4 And the captain of the guard charged Joseph with them, and he served them: and they spent many days in custody.

He interprets their dreams

5 And they dreamed a dream both of them, each man his dream in one night, each man according to the interpretation of his dream, the butler and the baker of the king of Egypt, which *were* bound in the prison. [\[Gen 41:8\];](#)

6 And Joseph came in unto them in the morning, and looked upon them, and, behold, they *were* sad.

7 And he asked Pharaoh's officers that *were* with him in the ward of his lord's house, saying, Wherefore look you *so* sadly to day?

8 And they said unto him, We have dreamed a dream, and *there is* no interpreter of it. And Joseph said unto them, *Do* not interpretations *belong* to Elohim? tell me *them*, I pray you.

9 And the chief butler told his dream to Joseph, and said to him, In my dream, behold, a vine *was* before me;

10 And in the vine *were* three branches: and it *was* as though it budded, *and* her blossoms shot forth; and the clusters thereof brought forth ripe grapes:

11 And Pharaoh's cup *was* in my hand: and I took the grapes, and pressed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand.

12 And Joseph said unto him, This *is* the interpretation of it: The three branches *are* three days:

13 Yet within three days shall Pharaoh lift up thine head, and restore you unto thy place: and you shall deliver Pharaoh's cup into his hand, after the former manner when you were his butler.

14 But think on me when it shall be well with you, and show kindness, I pray you, unto me, and make mention of me unto Pharaoh, and bring me out of this house:

15 For indeed I was stolen away out of the land of the Hebrews: and here also have I done nothing that they should put me into the dungeon.

16 When the chief baker saw that the interpretation was good, he said unto Joseph, I also *was* in my dream, and, behold, *I had* three white baskets on my head:

17 And in the uppermost basket *there was* of all manner of baked foods for Pharaoh; and the birds did eat them out of the basket upon my head.

18 And Joseph answered and said, This *is* the interpretation thereof: The three baskets *are* three days:

19 Yet within three days shall Pharaoh lift up thy head from off you, and shall hang you on a tree; and the birds shall eat thy flesh from off you.

They are accomplished according to his interpretation

20 And it came to pass the third day, *which was* Pharaoh's birthday, that he made a feast unto all his servants: and he lifted up the head of the chief butler and of the chief baker among his servants. [\[Matt 14:6\]; \[Mark 6:21\];](#)

21 And he restored the chief butler unto his butlership again; and he gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand:

22 But he hanged the chief baker: as Joseph had interpreted to them.

The ingratitude of the butler, in forgetting Joseph

23 yet did not the chief butler remember Joseph, but forgot him.

Pharaoh has two dreams

- 1** And it came to pass at the end of two full years, that Pharaoh dreamed: and, behold, he stood by the river.
- 2** And, behold, there came up out of the river seven well favored kine and fatfleshed; and they fed in a meadow.
- 3** And, behold, seven other kine came up after them out of the river, ill favored and leanfleshed; and stood by the *other* kine upon the brink of the river.
- 4** And the ill favored and leanfleshed kine did eat up the seven well favored and fat kine. So Pharaoh awoke.
- 5** And he slept and dreamed the second time: and, behold, seven ears of grain came up upon one stalk, rank and good.
- 6** And, behold, seven thin ears and blasted with the east wind sprung up after them.
- 7** And the seven thin ears devoured the seven rank and full ears. And Pharaoh awoke, and, behold, *it was* a dream.
- 8** And it came to pass in the morning that his spirit was troubled; and he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt, and all the wise men thereof: and Pharaoh told them his dream; but *there was* none that could interpret them unto Pharaoh. [Gen 40:5](#);

Joseph interprets them

- 9** Then spoke the chief butler unto Pharaoh, saying, I do remember my faults this day:
- 10** Pharaoh was wroth with his servants, and put me in ward in the captain of the guard's house, *both* me and the chief baker:
- 11** And we dreamed a dream in one night, I and he; we dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream. [Dan 2:2](#);
- 12** And *there was* there with us a young man, an Hebrew, servant to the captain of the guard; and we told him, and he interpreted to us our dreams; to each man according to his dream he did interpret.
- 13** And it came to pass, as he interpreted to us, so it was; me he restored unto mine office, and him he hanged.
- 14** Then Pharaoh sent and called Joseph, and they brought him hastily out of the dungeon: and he shaved *himself*, and changed his raiment, and came in unto Pharaoh. [Ps 105:20](#); [Dan 2:25](#);
- 15** And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, I have dreamed a dream, and *there is* none that can interpret it: and I have heard say of you, *that* you canst understand a dream to interpret it.
- 16** And Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, *It is* not in me: Elohim shall give Pharaoh an answer of peace.
- 17** And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, In my dream, behold, I stood upon the bank of the river:
- 18** And, behold, there came up out of the river seven kine, fatfleshed and well favored; and they fed in a meadow:
- 19** And, behold, seven other kine came up after them, poor and very ill favored and leanfleshed, such as I never saw in all the land of Egypt for badness:
- 20** And the lean and the ill favored kine did eat up the first seven fat kine:
- 21** And when they had eaten them up, it could not be known that they had eaten them; but they *were* still ill favored, as at the beginning. So I awoke.
- 22** And I saw in my dream, and, behold, seven ears came up in one stalk, full and good:
- 23** And, behold, seven ears, withered, thin, *and* blasted with the east wind, sprung up after them:
- 24** And the thin ears devoured the seven good ears: and I told *this* unto the magicians; but *there was* none that could declare *it* to me.

25 And Joseph said unto Pharaoh, The dream of Pharaoh *is* one: Elohim has showed Pharaoh what he *is* about to do.

26 The seven good kine *are* seven years; and the seven good ears *are* seven years: the dream *is* one.

27 And the seven thin and ill favored kine that came up after them *are* seven years; and the seven empty ears blasted with the east wind shall be seven years of famine.

28 This *is* the thing which I have spoken unto Pharaoh: What Elohim *is* about to do he sheweth unto Pharaoh.

29 Behold, there come seven years of great plenty throughout all the land of Egypt:

30 And there shall arise after them seven years of famine; and all the plenty shall be forgotten in the land of Egypt; and the famine shall consume the land;

31 And the plenty shall not be known in the land by reason of that famine following; for it *shall be* very grievous.

32 And for that the dream was doubled unto Pharaoh twice; *it is* because the thing *is* established by Elohim, and Elohim will shortly bring it to pass.

He gives Pharaoh counsel, and is highly advanced, and married

33 Now therefore let Pharaoh look out a man discreet and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt.

34 Let Pharaoh do *this*, and let him appoint officers over the land, and take up the fifth part of the land of Egypt in the seven plenteous years.

35 And let them gather all the food of those good years that come, and lay up grain under the hand of Pharaoh, and let them keep food in the cities.

36 And that food shall be for store to the land against the seven years of famine, which shall be in the land of Egypt; that the land perish not through the famine.

37 And the thing was good in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of all his servants. [Acts 7:10](#);

38 And Pharaoh said unto his servants, Can we find *such a one* as this *is*, a man in whom the Spirit of Elohim *is*? [Ps 105:22](#);

39 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, Forasmuch as Elohim has showed you all this, *there is* none so discreet and wise as you are:

40 *you* shall be over my house, and according unto thy word shall all my people be ruled: only in the throne will I be greater than you. [Ps 105:21](#); [\[Acts 7:10\]](#);

41 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, See, I have set you over all the land of Egypt.

42 And Pharaoh took off his ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph's hand, and arrayed him in vestures of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck;

43 And he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had; and they cried before him, Bow the knee: and he made him *ruler* over all the land of Egypt.

44 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, I *am* Pharaoh, and without you shall no man lift up his hand or foot in all the land of Egypt.

45 And Pharaoh called Joseph's name Zaphnathpaaneah; and he gave him to wife Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On. And Joseph went out over *all* the land of Egypt.

The seven years of plenty

46 And Joseph *was* thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh, and went throughout all the land of Egypt.

47 And in the seven plenteous years the earth brought forth by handfuls.

48 And he gathered up all the food of the seven years, which were in the land of Egypt, and laid up the food in the cities: the food of the field, which *was* round about every city, laid he up in the same.

49 And Joseph gathered grain as the sand of the sea, very much, until he left numbering; for *it was* without number.

He begets children

50 And unto Joseph were born two sons before the years of famine came, which Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On bore unto him. [Gen 46:20](#); [Gen 48:5](#);

51 And Joseph called the name of the firstborn Manasseh: For Elohim, *said he*, has made me forget all my toil, and all my father's house.

52 And the name of the second called he Ephraim: For Elohim has caused me to be fruitful in the land of my affliction.

The famine begins

53 And the seven years of plenteousness, that was in the land of Egypt, were ended.

54 And the seven years of dearth began to come, according as Joseph had said: and the dearth was in all lands; but in all the land of Egypt there was bread. [Gen 45:6](#); [Ps 105:16](#); [\[Acts 7:11\]](#);

55 And when all the land of Egypt was famished, the people cried to Pharaoh for bread: and Pharaoh said unto all the Egyptians, Go unto Joseph; what he saith to you, do.

56 And the famine was over all the face of the earth: And Joseph opened all the storehouses, and sold unto the Egyptians; and the famine waxed sore in the land of Egypt.

57 And all countries came into Egypt to Joseph for to buy *corn*; because that the famine was *so* sore in all lands.

Jacob sends his ten sons to buy grain in Egypt

1 Now when Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt, Jacob said unto his sons, Why do you look one upon another? [\[Acts 7:12\];](#)

2 And he said, Behold, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt: get you down thither, and buy for us from thence; that we may live, and not die. [Acts 7:12;](#)

3 And Joseph's ten brethren went down to buy grain in Egypt. [\[Gen 43:20\];](#)

4 But Benjamin, Joseph's brother, Jacob sent not with his brethren; for he said, Lest harm might happen to him.

5 And the sons of Israel came to buy grain among those that came: for the famine was in the land of Canaan.

6 And Joseph *was* the governor over the land, *and* he *it was* that sold to all the people of the land: and Joseph's brethren came, and bowed down themselves before him *with* their faces to the earth. [Gen 37:7; \[Gen 43:26\];](#)

7 And Joseph saw his brethren, and he knew them, but made himself strange unto them, and spoke roughly unto them; and he said unto them, Whence come you? And they said, From the land of Canaan to buy food.

8 And Joseph knew his brethren, but they knew not him.

9 And Joseph remembered the dreams which he dreamed of them, and said unto them, you *are* spies; to see the nakedness of the land you are come. [Gen 37:5;](#)

10 And they said unto him, Nay, my lord, but to buy food are thy servants come.

11 We *are* all one man's sons; we *are* true *men*, thy servants are no spies.

12 And he said unto them, Nay, but to see the nakedness of the land you are come.

13 And they said, Thy servants *are* twelve brethren, the sons of one man in the land of Canaan; and, behold, the youngest *is* this day with our father, and one *is* not. [Gen 43:29;](#)

14 And Joseph said unto them, That *is it* that I spoke unto you, saying, you *are* spies:

15 Hereby you shall be proved: By the life of Pharaoh you shall not go forth hence, except your youngest brother come hither. [\[Gen 44:21\];](#)

They are imprisoned by Joseph for spies

16 Send one of you, and let him fetch your brother, and you shall be kept in prison, that your words may be proved, whether *there be any* truth in you: or else by the life of Pharaoh surely you *are* spies.

17 And he put them all together into ward three days.

They are set at liberty, on condition to bring Benjamin

18 And Joseph said unto them the third day, This do, and live; *for* I fear Elohim:

19 If you *be* true *men*, let one of your brethren be bound in the house of your prison: go you, carry grain for the famine of your houses:

20 But bring your youngest brother unto me; so shall your words be verified, and you shall not die. And they did so. [Gen 43:5; Gen 44:23;](#)

They have remorse for Joseph

21 And they said one to another, We *are* verily guilty concerning our brother, in that we saw the anguish of his being, when he besought us, and we would not hear; therefore is this distress come upon us.

22 And Reuben answered them, saying, spoke I not unto you, saying, Do not sin against the child; and you would not hear? therefore, behold, also his blood is required. [Gen 37:21-22; \[Gen 37:21\];](#)

23 And they knew not that Joseph understood *them*; for he spoke unto them by an interpreter.

Simeon is kept for a pledge

24 And he turned himself about from them, and wept; and returned to them again, and communed with them, and took from them Simeon, and bound him before their eyes.

They return with corn, and their money

25 Then Joseph commanded to fill their sacks with corn, and to restore every man's money into his sack, and to give them provision for the way: and thus did he unto them. [\[Gen 42:35\];](#)

26 And they laded their asses with the corn, and departed thence.

27 And as one of them opened his sack to give his ass provender in the inn, he espied his money; for, behold, it *was* in his sack's mouth. [\[Gen 43:21\];](#)

28 And he said unto his brethren, My money is restored; and, lo, *it is* even in my sack: and their heart failed *them*, and they were afraid, saying one to another, What *is* this *that* Elohim has done unto us?

Their relation to Jacob

29 And they came unto Jacob their father unto the land of Canaan, and told him all that befell unto them; saying,

30 The man, *who is* the lord of the land, spoke roughly to us, and took us for spies of the country.

31 And we said unto him, We *are* true *men*; we are no spies:

32 We *be* twelve brethren, sons of our father; one *is* not, and the youngest *is* this day with our father in the land of Canaan.

33 And the man, the lord of the country, said unto us, Hereby shall I know that you *are* true *men*; leave one of your brethren *here* with me, and take *food for* the famine of your households, and be gone:

34 And bring your youngest brother unto me: then shall I know that you *are* no spies, but *that* you *are* true *men*: *so* will I deliver you your brother, and you shall traffick in the land.

35 And it came to pass as they emptied their sacks, that, behold, every man's bundle of money *was* in his sack: and when *both* they and their father saw the bundles of money, they were afraid. [Gen 42:25; Gen 44:1; \[Gen 43:21\];](#)

Jacob refuses to send Benjamin

36 And Jacob their father said unto them, Me have you bereaved *of my children*: Joseph *is* not, and Simeon *is* not, and you will take Benjamin *away*: all these things are against me.

37 And Reuben spoke unto his father, saying, Slay my two sons, if I bring him not to you: deliver him into my hand, and I will bring him to you again.

38 And he said, My son shall not go down with you; for his brother is dead, and he is left alone: if mischief befall him by the way in which you go, then shall you bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave. [\[Gen 37:35\]; \[Gen 44:29\];](#)

Jacob is hardly persuaded to send Benjamin

- 1** And the famine *was* sore in the land.
- 2** And it came to pass, when they had eaten up the grain which they had brought out of Egypt, their father said unto them, Go again, buy us a little food.
- 3** And Judah spoke unto him, saying, The man did solemnly protest unto us, saying, you shall not see my face, except your brother *be* with you. [\[Gen 44:23\];](#)
- 4** If you will send our brother with us, we will go down and buy you food:
- 5** But if you will not send *him*, we will not go down: for the man said unto us, you shall not see my face, except your brother *be* with you. [Gen 42:20; Gen 44:23;](#)
- 6** And Israel said, Wherefore dealt you *so* ill with me, *as* to tell the man whether you had yet a brother?
- 7** And they said, The man asked us straitly of our state, and of our kindred, saying, *Is* your father yet alive? have you *another* brother? and we told him according to the tenor of these words: could we certainly know that he would say, Bring your brother down?
- 8** And Judah said unto Israel his father, Send the lad with me, and we will arise and go; that we may live, and not die, both we, and you, *and* also our little ones.
- 9** I will be surety for him; of my hand shall you require him: if I bring him not unto you, and set him before you, then let me bear the blame for ever: [Gen 44:32;](#)
- 10** For except we had lingered, surely now we had returned this second time.
- 11** And their father Israel said unto them, If *it must be* so now, do this; take of the best fruits in the land in your vessels, and carry down the man a present, a little balm, and a little honey, spices, and myrrh, nuts, and almonds:
- 12** And take double money in your hand; and the money that was brought again in the mouth of your sacks, carry *it* again in your hand; perhaps it *was* an oversight:
- 13** Take also your brother, and arise, go again unto the man:
- 14** And Elohim Almighty give you mercy before the man, that he may send away your other brother, and Benjamin. If I be bereaved *of my children*, I am bereaved.

Joseph entertains his brethren

- 15** And the men took that present, and they took double money in their hand, and Benjamin; and rose up, and went down to Egypt, and stood before Joseph.
- 16** And when Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the ruler of his house, Bring *these* men home, and slay, and make ready; for *these* men shall dine with me at noon.
- 17** And the man did as Joseph bade; and the man brought the men into Joseph's house.
- 18** And the men were afraid, because they were brought into Joseph's house; and they said, Because of the money that was returned in our sacks at the first time are we brought in; that he may seek occasion against us, and fall upon us, and take us for bondmen, and our asses.

They discover their fears to the steward

- 19** And they came near to the steward of Joseph's house, and they communed with him at the door of the house,
- 20** And said, O sir, we came indeed down at the first time to buy food: [Gen 42:3;](#)
- 21** And it came to pass, when we came to the inn, that we opened our sacks, and, behold, *every* man's money *was* in the mouth of his sack, our money in full weight: and we have brought it again in our hand. [Gen 42:27; Gen 42:35;](#)
- 22** And other money have we brought down in our hands to buy food: we cannot tell who put our money in our sacks. [\[Gen 46:34\];](#)

23 And he said, Peace *be* to you, fear not: your Elohim, and the Elohim of your father, has given you treasure in your sacks: I had your money. And he brought Simeon out unto them.

24 And the man brought the men into Joseph's house, and gave *them* water, and they washed their feet; and he gave their asses provender. [Gen 18:4](#);

25 And they made ready the present for Joseph's arrival at noon: for they heard that they should eat bread there.

Joseph makes them a feast

26 And when Joseph came home, they brought him the present which *was* in their hand into the house, and bowed themselves to him to the earth. [Gen 37:10](#); [Gen 42:6](#);

27 And he asked them of *their* welfare, and said, *Is* your father well, the old man of whom you spoke? *Is* he yet alive?

28 And they answered, Thy servant our father *is* in good health, he *is* yet alive. And they bowed down their heads, and made obeisance.

29 And he lifted up his eyes, and saw his brother Benjamin, his mother's son, and said, *Is* this your younger brother, of whom you spoke unto me? And he said, Elohim be gracious unto you, my son. [Gen 42:13](#);

30 And Joseph made haste; for his bowels did yearn upon his brother: and he sought *where* to weep; and he entered into *his* chamber, and wept there. [Gen 45:2](#);

31 And he washed his face, and went out, and refrained himself, and said, Set on bread.

32 And they set on for him by himself, and for them by themselves, and for the Egyptians, which did eat with him, by themselves: because the Egyptians might not eat bread with the Hebrews; for that *is* an abomination unto the Egyptians. [\[Exod 8:26\]](#);

33 And they sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth: and the men marvelled one at another.

34 And he took *and sent* messes unto them from before him: but Benjamin's mess was five times so much as any of theirs. And they drank, and were merry with him.

Joseph's policy to stay his brethren

- 1** And he commanded the steward of his house, saying, Fill the men's sacks *with* food, as much as they can carry, and put every man's money in his sack's mouth. [\[Gen 42:35\];](#)
- 2** And put my cup, the silver cup, in the sack's mouth of the youngest, and his grain money. And he did according to the word that Joseph had spoken.
- 3** As soon as the morning was light, the men were sent away, they and their asses.
- 4** *And* when they were gone out of the city, *and* not yet far off, Joseph said unto his steward, Up, follow after the men; and when you dost overtake them, say unto them, Wherefore have you rewarded evil for good?
- 5** *Is* not this *it* in which my lord drinketh, and whereby indeed he divineth? you have done evil in so doing.

The cup is found in Benjamin's sack

- 6** And he overtook them, and he spoke unto them these same words.
- 7** And they said unto him, Wherefore saith my lord these words? Elohim forbid that thy servants should do according to this thing:
- 8** Behold, the money, which we found in our sacks' mouths, we brought again unto you out of the land of Canaan: how then should we steal out of thy lord's house silver or gold?
- 9** With whomsoever of thy servants it be found, both let him die, and we also will be my lord's bondmen.
- 10** And he said, Now also *let* it *be* according unto your words: he with whom it is found shall be my servant; and you shall be blameless.
- 11** Then they speedily took down every man his sack to the ground, and opened every man his sack.
- 12** And he searched, *and* began at the eldest, and left at the youngest: and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack.
- 13** Then they rent their clothes, and laded every man his ass, and returned to the city.

They are brought before Joseph

- 14** And Judah and his brethren came to Joseph's house; for he *was* yet there: and they fell before him on the ground.
- 15** And Joseph said unto them, What deed *is* this that you have done? wot you not that such a man as I can certainly divine?
- 16** And Judah said, What shall we say unto my lord? what shall we speak? or how shall we clear ourselves? Elohim has found out the iniquity of thy servants: behold, we *are* my lord's servants, both we, and *he* also with whom the cup is found.
- 17** And he said, Elohim forbid that I should do so: *but* the man in whose hand the cup is found, he shall be my servant; and as for you, get you up in peace unto your father.

Judah's humble supplication to Joseph

- 18** Then Judah came near unto him, and said, Oh my lord, let thy servant, I pray you, speak a word in my lord's ears, and let not thine anger burn against thy servant: for you are even as Pharaoh.
- 19** My lord asked his servants, saying, Have you a father, or a brother?
- 20** And we said unto my lord, We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a little one; and his brother is dead, and he alone is left of his mother, and his father loveth him.
- 21** And you saidst unto thy servants, Bring him down unto me, that I may set mine eyes upon him. [Gen 42:15;](#)
- 22** And we said unto my lord, The lad cannot leave his father: for *if* he should leave his father, *his father* would die.

23 And you saidst unto thy servants, Except your youngest brother come down with you, you shall see my face no more. [Gen 43:3](#); [Gen 43:5](#); [[Gen 42:20](#)];

24 And it came to pass when we came up unto thy servant my father, we told him the words of my lord.

25 And our father said, Go again, *and* buy us a little food.

26 And we said, We cannot go down: if our youngest brother be with us, then will we go down: for we may not see the man's face, except our youngest brother *be* with us.

27 And thy servant my father said unto us, you know that my wife bore me two *sons*:

28 And the one went out from me, and I said, Surely he is torn in pieces; and I saw him not since: [Gen 37:33](#);

29 And if you take this also from me, and mischief befall him, you shall bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave. [Gen 42:38](#); [[Gen 37:35](#)];

30 Now therefore when I come to thy servant my father, and the lad *be* not with us; seeing that his life is bound up in the lad's life;

31 It shall come to pass, when he seeth that the lad *is* not *with us*, that he will die: and thy servants shall bring down the gray hairs of thy servant our father with sorrow to the grave. [[Gen 37:35](#)];

32 For thy servant became surety for the lad unto my father, saying, If I bring him not unto you, then I shall bear the blame to my father for ever. [Gen 43:9](#);

33 Now therefore, I pray you, let thy servant abide instead of the lad a bondman to my lord; and let the lad go up with his brethren.

34 For how shall I go up to my father, and the lad *be* not with me? lest I see the evil that shall come on my father.

Joseph makes himself known to his brethren

1 Then Joseph could not refrain himself before all them that stood by him; and he cried, Cause every man to go out from me. And there stood no man with him, while Joseph made himself known unto his brethren.

2 And he wept aloud: and the Egyptians and the house of Pharaoh heard. [\[Gen 43:30\];](#)

3 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I *am* Joseph; does my father yet live? And his brethren could not answer him; for they were troubled at his presence.

4 And Joseph said unto his brethren, Come near to me, I pray you. And they came near. And he said, I *am* Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt. [Acts 7:13; Gen 37:28; Ps 105:17; Acts 7:9;](#)

He comforts them in Elohim's providence

5 Now therefore be not grieved, nor angry with yourselves, that you sold me hither: for Elohim did send me before you to preserve life. [Gen 50:19-21; \[Gen 50:19\]; \[Ps 105:17\];](#)

6 For these two years *has* the famine *been* in the land: and yet *there are* five years, in which *there shall* neither *be* plowing nor harvesting. [\[Gen 41:54\];](#)

7 And Elohim sent me before you to preserve you a posterity in the earth, and to save your lives by a great deliverance.

8 So now *it was* not you *that* sent me hither, but Elohim: and he has made me a father to Pharaoh, and lord of all his house, and a ruler throughout all the land of Egypt.

He sends for his father

9 Haste you, and go up to my father, and say unto him, Thus saith thy son Joseph, Elohim has made me lord of all Egypt: come down unto me, tarry not:

10 And you shall dwell in the land of Goshen, and you shall be near unto me, you, and thy children, and thy children's children, and thy flocks, and thy herds, and all that you hast: [\[Gen 47:1\]; \[1Tim 5:4\];](#)

11 And there will I nourish you; for yet *there are* five years of famine; lest you, and thy household, and all that you hast, come to poverty.

12 And, behold, your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin, that *it is* my mouth that speaketh unto you.

13 And you shall tell my father of all my glory in Egypt, and of all that you have seen; and you shall haste and bring down my father hither. [Acts 7:14;](#)

14 And he fell upon his brother Benjamin's neck, and wept; and Benjamin wept upon his neck.

15 Moreover he kissed all his brethren, and wept upon them: and after that his brethren talked with him.

Pharaoh confirms it

16 And the fame thereof was heard in Pharaoh's house, saying, Joseph's brethren are come: and it pleased Pharaoh well, and his servants.

17 And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, Say unto thy brethren, This do you; lade your beasts, and go, get you unto the land of Canaan;

18 And take your father and your households, and come unto me: and I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and you shall eat the fat of the land.

19 Now you are commanded, this do you; take you wagons out of the land of Egypt for your little ones, and for your wives, and bring your father, and come.

20 Also regard not your stuff; for the good of all the land of Egypt *is* yours.

Joseph furnishes then for their journey, and exhorts them to concord

21 And the children of Israel did so: and Joseph gave them wagons, according to the commandment of Pharaoh, and gave them provision for the way.

22 To all of them he gave each man changes of raiment; but to Benjamin he gave three hundred *pieces* of silver, and five changes of raiment.

23 And to his father he sent after this *manner*; ten asses laden with the good things of Egypt, and ten she asses laden with grain and bread and meat for his father by the way.

24 So he sent his brethren away, and they departed: and he said unto them, See that you fall not out by the way.

Jacob is revived with the news

25 And they went up out of Egypt, and came into the land of Canaan unto Jacob their father,

26 And told him, saying, Joseph *is* yet alive, and he *is* governor over all the land of Egypt. And Jacob's heart fainted, for he believed them not.

27 And they told him all the words of Joseph, which he had said unto them: and when he saw the wagons which Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived:

28 And Israel said, *It is* enough; Joseph my son *is* yet alive: I will go and see him before I die.

Jacob is comforted by Elohim at Beer-sheba

1 And Israel took his journey with all that he had, and came to Beersheba, and offered sacrifices unto the Elohim of his father Isaac. [\[Deut 26:5\]; \[Josh 24:4\];](#)

2 And Elohim spoke unto Israel in the visions of the night, and said, Jacob, Jacob. And he said, Here *am* I.

3 And he said, I *am* Elohim, the Elohim of thy father: fear not to go down into Egypt; for I will there make of you a great nation: [Gen 26:24; Gen 28:13; Gen 32:9; Gen 13:16; Gen 16:10; Gen 17:2; Gen 22:17; Gen 35:11; Gen 48:4;](#)

4 I will go down with you into Egypt; and I will also surely bring you up *again*: and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes. [Num 20:15; Deut 10:22; Josh 24:4-6; Ps 105:23-24; Isa 52:4; Hos 11:1;](#)

Thence he with his company goes into Egypt

5 And Jacob rose up from Beersheba: and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father, and their little ones, and their wives, in the wagons which Pharaoh had sent to carry him. [Acts 7:15; \[1Sam 12:8\];](#)

6 And they took their cattle, and their goods, which they had gotten in the land of Canaan, and came into Egypt, Jacob, and all his seed with him: [\[Isa 52:4\];](#)

7 His sons, and his sons' sons with him, his daughters, and his sons' daughters, and all his seed brought he with him into Egypt.

The number of his family that went into Egypt

8 And these *are* the names of the children of Israel, which came into Egypt, Jacob and his sons: Reuben, Jacob's firstborn. [Exod 1:2; Exod 6:13; Num 26:5; 1Chr 5:1-26; 1Chr 6:1-81; 1Chr 7:1-40; 1Chr 8:1-40; \[Gen 35:23\]; \[Exod 1:1\]; \[1Chr 2:1\];](#)

9 And the sons of Reuben; Hanoch, and Phallu, and Hezron, and Carmi. [\[Exod 6:14\]; \[Num 26:5\]; \[1Chr 5:3\];](#)

10 And the sons of Simeon; Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jachin, and Zohar, and Shaul the son of a Canaanitish woman. [Exod 6:15; 1Chr 4:24;](#)

11 And the sons of Levi; Gershon, Kohas, and Merari. [1Chr 6:1; \[Exod 6:16\];](#)

12 And the sons of Judah; Er, and Onan, and Shelah, and Pharez, and Zerah: but Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan. And the sons of Pharez were Hezron and Hamul. [Gen 38:3-5; 1Chr 2:5; \[Num 26:19\]; \[Num 26:21\]; \[1Chr 2:3\]; \[1Chr 4:1\];](#)

13 And the sons of Issachar; Tola, and Phuvah, and Job, and Shimron. [\[1Chr 7:1\];](#)

14 And the sons of Zebulun; Sered, and Elon, and Jahleel.

15 These *be* the sons of Leah, which she bore unto Jacob in Padanaram, with his daughter Dinah: all the beings of his sons and his daughters *were* thirty and three.

16 And the sons of Gad; Ziphion, and Haggi, Shuni, and Ezbon, Eri, and Arodi, and Areli. [1Chr 5:11;](#)

17 And the sons of Asher; Jimnah, and Ishuah, and Isui, and Beriah, and Serah their sister: and the sons of Beriah; Heber, and Malchiel. [1Chr 7:30;](#)

18 These *are* the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban gave to Leah his daughter, and these she bore unto Jacob, *even* sixteen beings. [Gen 29:24;](#)

19 The sons of Rachel Jacob's wife; Joseph, and Benjamin.

20 And unto Joseph in the land of Egypt were born Manasseh and Ephraim, which Asenath the daughter of Potipherah priest of On bore unto him. [Gen 41:50; Gen 48:5; \[Josh 17:1\];](#)

21 And the sons of Benjamin *were* Belah, and Becher, and Ashbel, Gera, and Naaman, Ehi, and Rosh, Muppim, and Huppim, and Ard. [1Chr 7:6; 1Chr 8:1;](#)

22 These *are* the sons of Rachel, which were born to Jacob: all the beings *were* fourteen.

23 And the sons of Dan; Hushim.

24 And the sons of Naphtali; Jahzeel, and Guni, and Jezer, and Shillem. [1Chr 7:13;](#)

25 These *are* the sons of Bilhah, which Laban gave unto Rachel his daughter, and she bore these unto Jacob: all the beings *were* seven. [Gen 29:29](#);

26 All the beings that came with Jacob into Egypt, which came out of his loins, besides Jacob's sons' wives, all the beings *were* threescore and six;

27 And the sons of Joseph, which were born him in Egypt, *were* two beings: all the beings of the house of Jacob, which came into Egypt, *were* threescore and ten. [Deut 10:22](#); [Acts 7:14](#); [\[Exod 1:5\]](#);

Joseph meets Jacob

28 And he sent Judah before him unto Joseph, to direct his face unto Goshen; and they came into the land of Goshen.

29 And Joseph made ready his chariot, and went up to meet Israel his father, to Goshen, and presented himself unto him; and he fell on his neck, and wept on his neck a good while.

30 And Israel said unto Joseph, Now let me die, since I have seen thy face, because you are yet alive. [\[Luke 2:29\]](#);

He instructs his brethren how to answer Pharaoh

31 And Joseph said unto his brethren, and unto his father's house, I will go up, and show Pharaoh, and say unto him, My brethren, and my father's house, which *were* in the land of Canaan, are come unto me;

32 And the men *are* shepherds, for their trade has been to feed cattle; and they have brought their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have.

33 And it shall come to pass, when Pharaoh shall call you, and shall say, What *is* your occupation?

34 That you shall say, Thy servants' trade has been about cattle from our youth even until now, both we, *and* also our fathers: that you may dwell in the land of Goshen; for every shepherd *is* an abomination unto the Egyptians. [Gen 43:22](#); [Exod 8:26](#); [\[Gen 47:3\]](#);

Joseph presents his father, and five of his brethren before Pharaoh

1 Then Joseph came and told Pharaoh, and said, My father and my brethren, and their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have, are come out of the land of Canaan; and, behold, they *are* in the land of Goshen. [Gen 45:10](#);

2 And he took some of his brethren, *even* five men, and presented them unto Pharaoh.

3 And Pharaoh said unto his brethren, What *is* your occupation? And they said unto Pharaoh, Thy servants *are* shepherds, both we, *and* also our fathers. [Gen 46:34](#);

4 They said moreover unto Pharaoh, For to sojourn in the land are we come; for thy servants have no pasture for their flocks; for the famine *is* sore in the land of Canaan: now therefore, we pray you, let thy servants dwell in the land of Goshen.

5 And Pharaoh spoke unto Joseph, saying, Thy father and thy brethren are come unto you:

6 The land of Egypt *is* before you; in the best of the land make thy father and brethren to dwell; in the land of Goshen let them dwell: if you knowest *any* men of activity among them, then make them rulers over my cattle.

7 And Joseph brought in Jacob his father, and set him before Pharaoh: and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

8 And Pharaoh said unto Jacob, How old are you?

9 And Jacob said unto Pharaoh, The days of the years of my pilgrimage *are* a hundred and thirty years: few and evil have the days of the years of my life been, and have not attained unto the days of the years of the life of my fathers in the days of their pilgrimage. [Ps 119:19](#); [Heb 11:9](#); [Heb 11:13](#); [[Job 8:9](#)];

10 And Jacob blessed Pharaoh, and went out from before Pharaoh.

He gives them habitation and maintenance

11 And Joseph placed his father and his brethren, and gave them a possession in the land of Egypt, in the best of the land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.

12 And Joseph nourished his father, and his brethren, and all his father's household, with bread, according to *their* families.

He gets the Egyptians' money

13 And *there was* no bread in all the land; for the famine *was* very sore, so that the land of Egypt and *all* the land of Canaan fainted by reason of the famine.

14 And Joseph gathered up all the money that was found in the land of Egypt, and in the land of Canaan, for the grain which they bought: and Joseph brought the money into Pharaoh's house.

15 And when money failed in the land of Egypt, and in the land of Canaan, all the Egyptians came unto Joseph, and said, Give us bread: for why should we die in thy presence? for the money faileth.

their cattle

16 And Joseph said, Give your cattle; and I will give you for your cattle, if money fail.

17 And they brought their cattle unto Joseph: and Joseph gave them bread *in exchange* for horses, and for the flocks, and for the cattle of the herds, and for the asses: and he fed them with bread for all their cattle for that year.

and their lands, except the priests', to Pharaoh

18 When that year was ended, they came unto him the second year, and said unto him, We will not hide *it* from my lord, how that our money is spent; my lord also has our herds of cattle; there is not ought left in the sight of my lord, but our bodies, and our lands:

19 Wherefore shall we die before thine eyes, both we and our land? buy us and our land for bread, and we and our land will be servants unto Pharaoh: and give *us* seed, that we may live, and not die, that the land be not desolate.

20 And Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh; for the Egyptians sold every man his field, because the famine prevailed over them: so the land became Pharaoh's.

21 And as for the people, he removed them to cities from *one* end of the borders of Egypt even to the *other* end thereof.

22 Only the land of the priests bought he not; for the priests had a portion *assigned them* of Pharaoh, and did eat their portion which Pharaoh gave them: wherefore they sold not their lands.

He restores the land for a fifth

23 Then Joseph said unto the people, Behold, I have bought you this day and your land for Pharaoh: lo, *here is* seed for you, and you shall sow the land.

24 And it shall come to pass in the increase, that you shall give the fifth *part* unto Pharaoh, and four parts shall be your own, for seed of the field, and for your food, and for them of your households, and for food for your little ones.

25 And they said, you have saved our lives: let us find grace in the sight of my lord, and we will be Pharaoh's servants.

26 And Joseph made it a law over the land of Egypt unto this day, *that* Pharaoh should have the fifth *part*; except the land of the priests only, *which* became not Pharaoh's.

27 And Israel dwelt in the land of Egypt, in the country of Goshen; and they had possessions therein, and grew, and multiplied exceedingly.

Jacob's age

28 And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years: so the whole age of Jacob was a hundred forty and seven years.

He swears Joseph to bury him with his fathers

29 And the time drew nigh that Israel must die: and he called his son Joseph, and said unto him, If now I have found grace in thy sight, put, I pray you, thy hand under my thigh, and deal kindly and truly with me; bury me not, I pray you, in Egypt: [Gen 24:2](#); [\[Gen 50:5\]](#);

30 But I will lie with my fathers, and you shall carry me out of Egypt, and bury me in their buryingplace. And he said, I will do as you have said.

31 And he said, Swear unto me. And he swore unto him. And Israel bowed himself upon the bed's head. [Heb 11:21](#);

Joseph with his sons visits his sick father

1 And it came to pass after these things, that *one* told Joseph, Behold, thy father *is* sick: and he took with him his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim.

Jacob strengthens himself to bless them

2 And *one* told Jacob, and said, Behold, thy son Joseph cometh unto you: and Israel strengthened himself, and sat upon the bed.

He repeats Elohim's promise

3 And Jacob said unto Joseph, Elohim Almighty appeared unto me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and blessed me, [Gen 17:1](#); [Gen 35:6](#); [\[Gen 28:13\]](#); [\[Gen 35:11\]](#);

4 And said unto me, Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you, and I will make of you a multitude of people; and will give this land to thy seed after you *for* an everlasting possession. [Gen 28:3](#); [Gen 35:11](#); [\[Gen 46:3\]](#);

He takes Ephraim and Manasseh as his own sons

5 And now thy two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, which were born unto you in the land of Egypt before I came unto you into Egypt, *are* mine; as Reuben and Simeon, they shall be mine. [Gen 41:50](#); [Gen 46:20](#);

6 And thy issue, which you begetteth after them, shall be thine, *and* shall be called after the name of their brethren in their inheritance.

He tells Joseph of his mother's grave

7 And as for me, when I came from Padan, Rachel died by me in the land of Canaan in the way, when yet *there was* but a little way to come unto Ephrath: and I buried her there in the way of Ephrath; the same *is* Bethlehem. [Gen 35:19](#);

He blesses Ephraim and Manasseh

8 And Israel beheld Joseph's sons, and said, Who *are* these?

9 And Joseph said unto his father, They *are* my sons, whom Elohim has given me in this *place*. And he said, Bring them, I pray you, unto me, and I will bless them.

10 Now the eyes of Israel were dim for age, *so that* he could not see. And he brought them near unto him; and he kissed them, and embraced them.

11 And Israel said unto Joseph, I had not thought to see thy face: and, lo, Elohim has showed me also thy seed.

12 And Joseph brought them out from between his knees, and he bowed himself with his face to the earth.

13 And Joseph took them both, Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand, and brought *them* near unto him.

14 And Israel stretched out his right hand, and laid *it* upon Ephraim's head, who *was* the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh's head, guiding his hands wittingly; for Manasseh *was* the firstborn.

15 And he blessed Joseph, and said, Elohim, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the Elohim which fed me all my life long unto this day, [Heb 11:21](#);

16 The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth. [Gen 31:42](#); [Gen 32:1](#);

He prefers the younger before the elder

17 And when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him: and he held up his father's hand, to remove it from Ephraim's head unto Manasseh's head.

18 And Joseph said unto his father, Not so, my father: for this *is* the firstborn; put thy right hand upon his head.

19 And his father refused, and said, I know *it*, my son, I know *it*: he also shall become a people, and he also shall be great: but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his seed shall become a multitude of nations. [Ruth 4:11-12](#);

20 And he blessed them that day, saying, In you shall Israel bless, saying, Elohim make you as Ephraim and as Manasseh: and he set Ephraim before Manasseh. [Jer 31:20](#);

He prophesies their return to Canaan

21 And Israel said unto Joseph, Behold, I die: but Elohim shall be with you, and bring you again unto the land of your fathers.

22 Moreover I have given to you one portion above thy brethren, which I took out of the hand of the Amorite with my sword and with my bow. [Josh 13:7](#); [Josh 16:1](#); [Josh 17:1](#); [Josh 24:8](#); [[John 4:5](#)];

Jacob calls his sons to bless them

1 And Jacob called unto his sons, and said, Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you *that* which shall befall you in the last days.

2 Gather yourselves together, and hear, you sons of Jacob; and hearken unto Israel your father.

Their blessing in particular

3 Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power: [Gen 29:32](#); [\[Deut 21:17\]](#);

4 Unstable as water, you shall not excel; because you wentest up to thy father's bed; then defiledst you *it*: he went up to my couch. [Gen 35:22](#); [1Chr 5:1](#);

5 Simeon and Levi *are* brethren; instruments of cruelty *are in* their habitations.

6 O my being, come not you into their secret; unto their assembly, mine honour, be not you united: for in their anger they slew a man, and in their selfwill they digged down a wall. [Gen 34:25](#);

7 Cursed *be* their anger, for *it was* fierce; and their wrath, for it was cruel: I will divide them in Jacob, and scatter them in Israel. [Josh 19:1](#); [Josh 21:3-4](#);

8 Judah, you are *he* whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand *shall be* in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before you.

9 Judah *is* a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, you are gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up? [Num 24:9](#); [Mic 5:8](#); [\[Rev 5:5\]](#);

10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him *shall* the gathering of the people *be*. [Matt 2:6](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[John 19:15\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#); [\[Gal 3:8\]](#); [\[Gal 4:4\]](#); [\[Eph 1:10\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:10\]](#);

11 Binding his foal unto the vine, and his ass's colt unto the choice vine; he washed his garments in wine, and his clothes in the blood of grapes:

12 His eyes *shall be* red with wine, and his teeth white with milk.

13 Zebulun shall dwell at the haven of the sea; and he *shall be* for a haven of ships; and his border *shall be* unto Zidon. [Josh 19:10-11](#);

14 Issachar *is* a strong ass couching down between two burdens:

15 And he saw that rest *was* good, and the land that *it was* pleasant; and bowed his shoulder to bear, and became a servant unto tribute.

16 Dan shall judge his people, as one of the tribes of Israel.

17 Dan shall be a serpent by the way, an adder in the path, that biteth the horse heels, so that his rider shall fall backward.

18 I have waited for thy salvation, O YAHWEH.

19 Gad, a troop shall overcome him: but he shall overcome at the last.

20 Out of Asher his bread *shall be* fat, and he shall yield royal dainties.

21 Naphtali *is* a hind let loose: he giveth goodly words.

22 Joseph *is* a fruitful bough, *even* a fruitful bough by a well; *whose* branches run over the wall: [1Chr 5:1](#);

23 The archers have sorely grieved him, and shot *at him*, and hated him: [Gen 50:20](#); [\[Gen 37:4\]](#);

24 But his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty *Elohim* of Jacob; (from thence *is* the shepherd, the stone of Israel:)

25 *Even* by the *Elohim* of thy father, who shall help you; and by the Almighty, who shall bless you with blessings of heaven above, blessings of the deep that lies below, blessings of the breasts, and of the womb: [\[Deut 33:13\]](#);

26 The blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my progenitors unto the utmost bound of the everlasting hills: they shall be on the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the head of him that was separate from his brethren. [\[Deut 33:16\]](#);

27 Benjamin shall ravin *as* a wolf: in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night he shall divide the spoil. [\[Phil 3:5\];](#)

28 All these *are* the twelve tribes of Israel: and this *is it* that their father spoke unto them, and blessed them; every one according to his blessing he blessed them.

He charges them about his burial

29 And he charged them, and said unto them, I am to be gathered unto my people: bury me with my fathers in the cave that *is* in the field of Ephron the Hittite,

30 In the cave that *is* in the field of Machpelah, which *is* before Mamre, in the land of Canaan, which Abraham bought with the field of Ephron the Hittite for a possession of a buryingplace. [Gen 23:9; Gen 23:16;](#)

31 There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife; there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife; and there I buried Leah. [Gen 25:9; Gen 35:29; Acts 7:16;](#)

32 The purchase of the field and of the cave that *is* therein *was* from the children of Heth.

He dies

33 And when Jacob had made an end of commanding his sons, he gathered up his feet into the bed, and yielded up the ghost, and was gathered unto his people. [Acts 7:15;](#)

The mourning for Jacob

1 And Joseph fell upon his father's face, and wept upon him, and kissed him.

2 And Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father: and the physicians embalmed Israel.

3 And forty days were fulfilled for him; for so are fulfilled the days of those which are embalmed: and the Egyptians mourned for him threescore and ten days.

Joseph gets leave of Pharaoh to go to bury him

4 And when the days of his mourning were past, Joseph spoke unto the house of Pharaoh, saying, If now I have found grace in your eyes, speak, I pray you, in the ears of Pharaoh, saying,

5 My father made me swear, saying, Lo, I die: in my grave which I have digged for me in the land of Canaan, there shall you bury me. Now therefore let me go up, I pray you, and bury my father, and I will come again. [Gen 47:29](#);

6 And Pharaoh said, Go up, and bury thy father, according as he made you swear.

The funeral

7 And Joseph went up to bury his father: and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh, the elders of his house, and all the elders of the land of Egypt,

8 And all the house of Joseph, and his brethren, and his father's house: only their little ones, and their flocks, and their herds, they left in the land of Goshen.

9 And there went up with him both chariots and horsemen: and it was a very great company.

10 And they came to the threshingfloor of Atad, which *is* beyond Jordan, and there they mourned with a great and very sore lamentation: and he made a mourning for his father seven days. [\[Acts 8:2\]](#);

11 And when the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning in the floor of Atad, they said, This *is* a grievous mourning to the Egyptians: wherefore the name of it was called Abelmizraim, which *is* beyond Jordan.

12 And his sons did unto him according as he commanded them:

13 For his sons carried him into the land of Canaan, and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which Abraham bought with the field for a possession of a buryingplace of Ephron the Hittite, before Mamre. [Acts 7:15-16](#); [Gen 23:16](#); [\[Acts 7:16\]](#);

14 And Joseph returned into Egypt, he, and his brethren, and all that went up with him to bury his father, after he had buried his father.

Joseph comforts his brethren, who crave his pardon

15 And when Joseph's brethren saw that their father was dead, they said, Joseph will perhaps hate us, and will certainly requite us all the evil which we did unto him.

16 And they sent a messenger unto Joseph, saying, Thy father did command before he died, saying,

17 So shall you say unto Joseph, Forgive, I pray you now, the trespass of thy brethren, and their sin; for they did unto you evil: and now, we pray you, forgive the trespass of the servants of the Elohim of thy father. And Joseph wept when they spoke unto him.

18 And his brethren also went and fell down before his face; and they said, Behold, we *be* thy servants.

19 And Joseph said unto them, Fear not: for *am* I in the place of Elohim? [Gen 45:5](#);

20 But as for you, you thought evil against me; *but* Elohim meant it unto good, to bring to pass, as *it is* this day, to save much people alive. [\[Gen 49:23\]](#);

21 Now therefore fear you not: I will nourish you, and your little ones. And he comforted them, and spoke kindly unto them.

His age

22 And Joseph dwelt in Egypt, he, and his father's house: and Joseph lived a hundred and ten years.

He sees the third generation of his sons

23 And Joseph saw Ephraim's children of the third *generation*: the children also of Machir the son of Manasseh were brought up upon Joseph's knees. [Num 32:39](#);

He prophesies unto his brethren of their return

24 And Joseph said unto his brethren, I die: and Elohim will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land unto the land which he swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. [Heb 11:22](#);

He takes an oath of them concerning his bones

25 And Joseph took an oath of the children of Israel, saying, Elohim will surely visit you, and you shall carry up my bones from hence. [Exod 13:19](#); [Josh 24:32](#);

He dies, and is put into a coffin

26 So Joseph died, *being* a hundred and ten years old: and they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt. [\[Exod 1:6\]](#);

Exodus

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#)

EXODUS ONE

The children of Israel, after Joseph's death, increase

- 1** Now these *are* the names of the children of Israel, which came into Egypt; every man and his household came with Jacob. [Gen 46:8](#); [Exod 6:14](#); [\[Acts 13:17\]](#);
2 Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, [\[Gen 35:23\]](#); [\[Gen 46:8\]](#);
3 Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin,
4 Dan, and Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.
5 And all the beings that came out of the loins of Jacob were seventy beings: for Joseph was in Egypt *already*. [Gen 46:27](#); [Deut 10:22](#); [Acts 7:14](#);
6 And Joseph died, and all his brethren, and all that generation. [Gen 50:26](#);
7 And the children of Israel were fruitful, and increased abundantly, and multiplied, and waxed exceeding mighty; and the land was filled with them. [Deut 26:5](#); [Acts 7:17](#); [\[Ps 105:24\]](#);

The more they are oppressed by a new king, the more they multiply

- 8** Now there arose up a new king over Egypt, which knew not Joseph. [Acts 7:18](#);
9 And he said unto his people, Behold, the people of the children of Israel *are* more and mightier than we: [\[Ps 105:24\]](#); [\[Ps 105:25\]](#);
10 Come on, let us deal wisely with them; lest they multiply, and it come to pass, that, when there falleth out any war, they join also unto our enemies, and fight against us, and *so* get them up out of the land. [Acts 7:19](#); [\[Exod 18:11\]](#);
11 Therefore they did set over them taskmasters to afflict them with their burdens. And they built for Pharaoh treasure cities, Pithom and Raamses.
12 But the more they afflicted them, the more they multiplied and grew. And they were grieved because of the children of Israel. [Ps 105:24](#); [\[Ps 105:25\]](#);
13 And the Egyptians made the children of Israel to serve with rigour:
14 And they made their lives bitter with hard bondage, in mortar, and in brick, and in all manner of service in the field: all their service, wherein they made them serve, *was* with rigour.

The godliness of the midwives, in saving the men children alive

- 15** And the king of Egypt spoke to the Hebrew midwives, of which the name of the one *was* Shiphrah, and the name of the other Puah:
16 And he said, When you do the office of a midwife to the Hebrew women, and see *them* upon the stools; if it *be* a son, then you shall kill him: but if it *be* a daughter, then she shall live. [\[Exod 18:11\]](#);
17 But the midwives feared Elohim, and did not as the king of Egypt commanded them, but saved the men children alive.
18 And the king of Egypt called for the midwives, and said unto them, Why have you done this thing, and have saved the men children alive?
19 And the midwives said unto Pharaoh, Because the Hebrew women *are* not as the Egyptian women; for they *are* lively, and are delivered ere the midwives come in unto them.
20 Therefore Elohim dealt well with the midwives: and the people multiplied, and waxed very mighty.

21 And it came to pass, because the midwives feared Elohim, that he made them houses.

Pharaoh commands the male children to be cast into the river

22 And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying, Every son that is born you shall cast into the river, and every daughter you shall save alive. [Acts 7:19](#); [[Exod 18:11](#)];

EXODUS TWO

Moses is born, and in an ark cast into the flags

- 1** And there went a man of the house of Levi, and took *to wife* a daughter of Levi. [Exod 6:20](#); [Num 26:59](#);
2 And the woman conceived, and bore a son: and when she saw him that he *was a* goodly *child*, she hid him three months. [1Chr 23:13](#); [Acts 7:20](#); [Heb 11:23](#);
3 And when she could not longer hide him, she took for him an ark of bulrushes, and daubed it with slime and with pitch, and put the child therein; and she laid *it* in the flags by the river's brink.
4 And his sister stood afar off, to wit what would be done to him.

He is found, and brought up by Pharaoh's daughter

- 5** And the daughter of Pharaoh came down to wash *herself* at the river; and her maidens walked along by the river's side; and when she saw the ark among the flags, she sent her maid to fetch it. [Acts 7:21](#); [Heb 11:23](#);
6 And when she had opened *it*, she saw the child: and, behold, the babe wept. And she had compassion on him, and said, This *is one* of the Hebrews' children.

who employs his mother to nurse him

- 7** Then said his sister to Pharaoh's daughter, Shall I go and call to you a nurse of the Hebrew women, that she may nurse the child for you?
8 And Pharaoh's daughter said to her, Go. And the maid went and called the child's mother.
9 And Pharaoh's daughter said unto her, Take this child away, and nurse it for me, and I will give you thy wages. And the woman took the child, and nursed it.
10 And the child grew, and she brought him unto Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. And she called his name Moses: and she said, Because I drew him out of the water.

He slays an Egyptian

- 11** And it came to pass in those days, when Moses was grown, that he went out unto his brethren, and looked on their burdens: and he spied an Egyptian smiting an Hebrew, one of his brethren. [Acts 7:23](#); [Heb 11:24-25](#); [\[Acts 7:24\]](#);
12 And he looked this way and that way, and when he saw that *there was* no man, he slew the Egyptian, and hid him in the sand.

He reproves an Hebrew

- 13** And when he went out the second day, behold, two men of the Hebrews strove together: and he said to him that did the wrong, Wherefore smitest thou thy fellow? [\[Acts 7:26\]](#);
14 And he said, Who made you a prince and a judge over us? intendest thou to kill me, as you killedst the Egyptian? And Moses feared, and said, Surely this thing is known. [Acts 7:27](#); [\[Gen 19:9\]](#); [\[Matt 21:23\]](#); [\[Mark 11:28\]](#); [\[Acts 4:7\]](#);

He flees into Midian, and marries Zipporah

- 15** Now when Pharaoh heard this thing, he sought to slay Moses. But Moses fled from the face of Pharaoh, and dwelt in the land of Midian: and he sat down by a well. [Acts 7:29](#);
16 Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters: and they came and drew *water*, and filled the troughs to water their father's flock. [\[Exod 18:1\]](#);
17 And the shepherds came and drove them away: but Moses stood up and helped them, and watered their flock.
18 And when they came to Reuel their father, he said, How *is it that* you are come so soon to day?

19 And they said, An Egyptian delivered us out of the hand of the shepherds, and also drew *water* enough for us, and watered the flock.

20 And he said unto his daughters, And where *is* he? why *is* it *that* you have left the man? call him, that he may eat bread.

21 And Moses was content to dwell with the man: and he gave Moses Zipporah his daughter.

Gershom is born

22 And she bore *him* a son, and he called his name Gershom: for he said, I have been a stranger in a strange land. [Exod 18:2-3](#); [\[Exod 18:3\]](#); [\[1Chr 23:15\]](#);

Elohim respects the Israelites' cry

23 And it came to pass in process of time, that the king of Egypt died: and the children of Israel sighed by reason of the bondage, and they cried, and their cry came up unto Elohim by reason of the bondage. [\[Num 20:16\]](#); [\[Deut 26:7\]](#); [\[1Sam 12:8\]](#);

24 And Elohim heard their groaning, and Elohim remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. [Gen 15:14](#); [\[Gen 17:2\]](#);

25 And Elohim looked upon the children of Israel, and Elohim had respect unto *them*.

EXODUS THREE

Moses keeps Jethro's flock

1 Now Moses kept the flock of Jethro his father in law, the priest of Midian: and he led the flock to the backside of the desert, and came to the mountain of Elohim, *even* to Horeb. [\[Exod 18:1\]; \[Jer 1:6\];](#)

Elohim appears to him in a burning bush

2 And the angel of the YAHWEH appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush: and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire, and the bush *was* not consumed. [\[Acts 7:30\];](#)

3 And Moses said, I will now turn aside, and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt.

4 And when the YAHWEH saw that he turned aside to see, Elohim called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said, Moses, Moses. And he said, Here *am* I.

5 And he said, Draw not nigh hither: put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon you standest *is* holy ground. [Josh 5:15;](#)

6 Moreover he said, I *am* the Elohim of thy father, the Elohim of Abraham, the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob. And Moses hid his face; for he was afraid to look upon Elohim. [Matt 22:32; Mark 12:26; Luke 20:37; Acts 7:32; \[1Kgs 18:36\]; \[Heb 11:16\];](#)

7 And the YAHWEH said, I have surely seen the affliction of my people which *are* in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows; [Acts 7:34; \[Neh 9:9\];](#)

8 And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites. [\[Lev 20:24\]; \[Num 13:27\]; \[Ezek 20:5\];](#)

He sends him to deliver Israel

9 Now therefore, behold, the cry of the children of Israel is come unto me: and I have also seen the oppression wherewith the Egyptians oppress them.

10 Come now therefore, and I will send you unto Pharaoh, that you may bring forth my people the children of Israel out of Egypt. [Ps 105:26; Hos 12:13; Mic 6:4; Acts 7:35; \[Josh 24:5\]; \[1Sam 12:8\];](#)

11 And Moses said unto Elohim, Who *am* I, that I should go unto Pharaoh, and that I should bring forth the children of Israel out of Egypt?

12 And he said, Certainly I will be with you; and this *shall be* a token unto you, that I have sent you: When you have brought forth the people out of Egypt, you shall serve Elohim upon this mountain. [Josh 1:5; \[Acts 7:7\];](#)

The name of Elohim

13 And Moses said unto Elohim, Behold, *when* I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The Elohim of your fathers has sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, What *is* his name? what shall I say unto them?

14 And Elohim said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shall you say unto the children of Israel, I AM has sent me unto you. [\[Rev 1:4\];](#)

His message to Israel, and Pharaoh, whose opposition is foretold

15 And Elohim said moreover unto Moses, Thus shall you say unto the children of Israel, The YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers, the Elohim of Abraham, the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob, has sent me unto you: this *is* my name for ever, and this *is* my memorial unto all generations.

16 Go, and gather the elders of Israel together, and say unto them, The YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers, the Elohim of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob, appeared unto me, saying, I have surely visited you, and *seen* that which is done to you in Egypt:

17 And I have said, I will bring you up out of the affliction of Egypt unto the land of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, unto a land flowing with milk and honey.

18 And they shall hearken to thy voice: and you shall come, you and the elders of Israel, unto the king of Egypt, and you shall say unto him, The YAHWEH Elohim of the Hebrews has met with us: and now let us go, we beseech you, three days' journey into the wilderness, that we may sacrifice to the YAHWEH our Elohim. [\[Exod 5:3\];](#)

19 And I am sure that the king of Egypt will not let you go, no, not by a mighty hand. [\[Exod 5:2\];](#)

He is assured of Israel's deliverance

20 And I will stretch out my hand, and smite Egypt with all my wonders which I will do in the midst thereof: and after that he will let you go.

21 And I will give this people favor in the sight of the Egyptians: and it shall come to pass, that, when you go, you shall not go empty: [\[Exod 12:35\];](#)

22 But every woman shall borrow of her neighbour, and of her that sojourneth in her house, jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment: and you shall put *them* upon your sons, and upon your daughters; and you shall spoil the Egyptians. [Exod 11:2; Exod 12:35; Ezek 39:10; \[Gen 15:14\];](#)

EXODUS FOUR

Moses's rod is turned into a serpent

- 1** And Moses answered and said, But, behold, they will not believe me, nor hearken unto my voice: for they will say, The YAHWEH has not appeared unto you. [\[Jer 1:6\];](#)
- 2** And the YAHWEH said unto him, What *is* that in thine hand? And he said, A rod.
- 3** And he said, Cast it on the ground. And he cast it on the ground, and it became a serpent; and Moses fled from before it.
- 4** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Put forth thine hand, and take it by the tail. And he put forth his hand, and caught it, and it became a rod in his hand:
- 5** That they may believe that the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, the Elohim of Abraham, the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob, has appeared unto you.

His hand is leprous

- 6** And the YAHWEH said furthermore unto him, Put now thine hand into thy bosom. And he put his hand into his bosom: and when he took it out, behold, his hand *was* leprous as snow.
- 7** And he said, Put thine hand into thy bosom again. And he put his hand into his bosom again; and plucked it out of his bosom, and, behold, it was turned again as his *other* flesh.
- 8** And it shall come to pass, if they will not believe you, neither hearken to the voice of the first sign, that they will believe the voice of the latter sign.
- 9** And it shall come to pass, if they will not believe also these two signs, neither hearken unto thy voice, that you shall take of the water of the river, and pour *it* upon the dry *land*: and the water which you take out of the river shall become blood upon the dry *land*. [Exod 7:19;](#)

He is loath to be sent

- 10** And Moses said unto the YAHWEH, O my Lord, I *am* not eloquent, neither heretofore, nor since you have spoken unto thy servant: but I *am* slow of speech, and of a slow tongue. [\[Exod 6:12\]; \[Exod 6:30\];](#)
- 11** And the YAHWEH said unto him, Who has made man's mouth? or who maketh the dumb, or deaf, or the seeing, or the blind? have not I the YAHWEH? [\[Ps 94:9\]; \[Prov 20:12\]; \[John 10:21\];](#)
- 12** Now therefore go, and I will be with thy mouth, and teach you what you shall say. [Matt 10:19; Mark 13:11; Luke 12:12; \[Ps 105:26\]; \[Luke 21:15\]; \[Acts 6:10\];](#)

Aaron is appointed to assist him

- 13** And he said, O my Lord, send, I pray you, by the hand *of him whom* you will send.
- 14** And the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Moses, and he said, *Is* not Aaron the Levite thy brother? I know that he can speak well. And also, behold, he cometh forth to meet you: and when he seeth you, he will be glad in his heart. [\[Exod 7:2\];](#)
- 15** And you shall speak unto him, and put words in his mouth: and I will be with thy mouth, and with his mouth, and will teach you what you shall do. [Exod 7:2;](#)
- 16** And he shall be thy spokesman unto the people: and he shall be, *even* he shall be to you instead of a mouth, and you shall be to him instead of Elohim.
- 17** And you shall take this rod in thine hand, wherewith you shall do signs.

Moses departs from Jethro

- 18** And Moses went and returned to Jethro his father in law, and said unto him, Let me go, I pray you, and return unto my brethren which *are* in Egypt, and see whether they be yet alive. And Jethro said to Moses, Go in peace.

19 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses in Midian, Go, return into Egypt: for all the men are dead which sought thy life.

20 And Moses took his wife and his sons, and set them upon an ass, and he returned to the land of Egypt: and Moses took the rod of Elohim in his hand.

Elohim's message to Pharaoh

21 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, When you go to return into Egypt, see that you do all those wonders before Pharaoh, which I have put in thine hand: but I will harden his heart, that he shall not let the people go. [\[Exod 9:35\]; \[Exod 10:1\]; \[Exod 14:4\];](#)

22 And you shall say unto Pharaoh, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Israel *is* my son, *even* my firstborn: [\[Jer 31:9\];](#)

23 And I say unto you, Let my son go, that he may serve me: if you refuse to let him go, behold, I will slay thy son, *even* thy firstborn.

Zipporah circumcises her son

24 And it came to pass by the way in the inn, that the YAHWEH met him, and sought to kill him.

25 Then Zipporah took a sharp stone, and cut off the foreskin of her son, and cast *it* at his feet, and said, Surely a bloody husband are you to me. [\[Josh 5:2\];](#)

26 So he let him go: then she said, A bloody husband you *are*, because of the circumcision.

Aaron is sent to meet Moses

27 And the YAHWEH said to Aaron, Go into the wilderness to meet Moses. And he went, and met him in the mount of Elohim, and kissed him.

28 And Moses told Aaron all the words of the YAHWEH who had sent him, and all the signs which he had commanded him.

The people believe them

29 And Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the children of Israel:

30 And Aaron spoke all the words which the YAHWEH had spoken unto Moses, and did the signs in the sight of the people.

31 And the people believed: and when they heard that the YAHWEH had visited the children of Israel, and that he had looked upon their affliction, then they bowed their heads and worshipped. [\[Ezek 20:5\];](#)

Pharaoh chides Moses and Aaron for their message

1 And afterward Moses and Aaron went in, and told Pharaoh, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Let my people go, that they may hold a feast unto me in the wilderness. [Exod 12:14];

2 And Pharaoh said, Who *is* the YAHWEH, that I should obey his voice to let Israel go? I know not the YAHWEH, neither will I let Israel go. Job 21:15; Exod 3:19;

3 And they said, The Elohim of the Hebrews has met with us: let us go, we pray you, three days' journey into the desert, and sacrifice unto the YAHWEH our Elohim; lest he fall upon us with pestilence, or with the sword. Exod 3:18;

4 And the king of Egypt said unto them, Wherefore do you, Moses and Aaron, let the people from their works? get you unto your burdens.

5 And Pharaoh said, Behold, the people of the land now *are* many, and you make them rest from their burdens.

He increases the Israelites' task

6 And Pharaoh commanded the same day the taskmasters of the people, and their officers, saying,

7 *you* shall no more give the people straw to make brick, as heretofore: let them go and gather straw for themselves. [Exod 18:11];

8 And the tale of the bricks, which they did make heretofore, you shall lay upon them; you shall not diminish *ought* thereof: for they *be* idle; therefore they cry, saying, Let us go *and* sacrifice to our Elohim.

9 Let there more work be laid upon the men, that they may labour therein; and let them not regard vain words.

10 And the taskmasters of the people went out, and their officers, and they spoke to the people, saying, Thus saith Pharaoh, I will not give you straw.

11 Go you, get you straw where you can find it: yet not ought of your work shall be diminished.

12 So the people were scattered abroad throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble instead of straw.

13 And the taskmasters hasted *them*, saying, Fulfil your works, *your* daily tasks, as when there was straw.

14 And the officers of the children of Israel, which Pharaoh's taskmasters had set over them, were beaten, *and* demanded, Wherefore have you not fulfilled your task in making brick both yosterday and to day, as heretofore?

He checks their complaints

15 Then the officers of the children of Israel came and cried unto Pharaoh, saying, Wherefore dealest you thus with thy servants?

16 There is no straw given unto thy servants, and they say to us, Make brick: and, behold, thy servants *are* beaten; but the fault *is* in thine own people.

17 But he said, you *are* idle, you *are* idle: therefore you say, Let us go *and* do sacrifice to the YAHWEH.

18 Go therefore now, *and* work; for there shall no straw be given you, yet shall you deliver the tale of bricks.

They cry out upon Moses and Aaron

19 And the officers of the children of Israel did see *that* they *were* in evil *case*, after it was said, you shall not minish *ought* from your bricks of your daily task.

20 And they met Moses and Aaron, who stood in the way, as they came forth from Pharaoh:

21 And they said unto them, The YAHWEH look upon you, and judge; because you have made our savour to be abhorred in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of his servants, to put a sword in their hand to slay us.

Moses complains to Elohim

22 And Moses returned unto the YAHWEH, and said, Lord, wherefore have you *so* evil entreated this people? why *is it that* you have sent me?

23 For since I came to Pharaoh to speak in thy name, he has done evil to this people; neither have you delivered thy people at all.

Elohim renews his promise by his name JEHOVAH

- 1** Then the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Now shall you see what I will do to Pharaoh: for with a strong hand shall he let them go, and with a strong hand shall he drive them out of his land.
- 2** And Elohim spoke unto Moses, and said unto him, I *am* the YAHWEH:
- 3** And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by *the name of* Elohim Almighty, but by my name JEHOVAH was I not known to them.
- 4** And I have also established my covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land of their pilgrimage, wherein they were strangers. [Ps 136:12];
- 5** And I have also heard the groaning of the children of Israel, whom the Egyptians keep in bondage; and I have remembered my covenant. [Gen 17:2];
- 6** Wherefore say unto the children of Israel, I *am* the YAHWEH, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great judgments:
- 7** And I will take you to me for a people, and I will be to you a Elohim: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, which bringeth you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians. [Jer 32:21];
- 8** And I will bring you in unto the land, concerning the which I did swear to give it to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob; and I will give it you for a heritage: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Ezek 20:5];

Moses vainly attempts to encourage the Israelites

- 9** And Moses spoke so unto the children of Israel: but they hearkened not unto Moses for anguish of spirit, and for cruel bondage. [Exod 14:12];

He and Aaron are again sent to Pharaoh

- 10** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 11** Go in, speak unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, that he let the children of Israel go out of his land.
- 12** And Moses spoke before the YAHWEH, saying, Behold, the children of Israel have not hearkened unto me; how then shall Pharaoh hear me, who *am* of uncircumcised lips? [Exod 6:29; Exod 4:10; [Exod 6:30]; [Jer 1:6];
- 13** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, and gave them a charge unto the children of Israel, and unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt. [Gen 46:8];

The genealogy of Reuben, of Simeon, and of Levi, of whom came Moses and Aaron

- 14** These *be* the heads of their fathers' houses: The sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel; Hanoch, and Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi: these *be* the families of Reuben. [Gen 46:9; Num 26:5; 1Chr 5:3; [Exod 1:1];
- 15** And the sons of Simeon; Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jachin, and Zohar, and Shaul the son of a Canaanitish woman: these *are* the families of Simeon. [Gen 46:10; Num 26:12; 1Chr 4:24; [Num 3:17];
- 16** And these *are* the names of the sons of Levi according to their generations; Gershon, and Kohas, and Merari: and the years of the life of Levi *were* a hundred thirty and seven years. [Gen 46:11; Num 3:17; Num 26:57; 1Chr 6:1; 1Chr 6:16; 1Chr 23:6];
- 17** The sons of Gershon; Libni, and Shimi, according to their families. [1Chr 6:17; 1Chr 23:7; [Num 26:57]; [1Chr 6:16];
- 18** And the sons of Kohas; Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel: and the years of the life of Kohas *were* a hundred thirty and three years. [1Chr 6:18; 1Chr 23:12];
- 19** And the sons of Merari; Mahali and Mushi: these *are* the families of Levi according to their generations. [1Chr 6:19; 1Chr 23:21];

20 And Amram took him Jochebed his father's sister to wife; and she bore him Aaron and Moses: and the years of the life of Amram *were* a hundred and thirty and seven years. [Exod 2:1](#); [Num 26:59](#); [\[1Chr 23:13\]](#); [\[Acts 7:20\]](#);

21 And the sons of Izhar; Korah, and Nepheg, and Zichri.

22 And the sons of Uzziel; Mishael, and Elzaphan, and Zithri.

23 And Aaron took him Elisheba, daughter of Amminadab, sister of Naashon, to wife; and she bore him Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. [Num 3:2](#); [Num 26:60](#); [1Chr 6:3](#); [1Chr 24:1](#);

24 And the sons of Korah; Assir, and Elkanah, and Abiasaph: these *are* the families of the Korhites. [\[1Chr 6:22\]](#);

25 And Eleazar Aaron's son took him *one* of the daughters of Putiel to wife; and she bore him Phinehas: these *are* the heads of the fathers of the Levites according to their families.

The history resumed

26 These *are* that Aaron and Moses, to whom the YAHWEH said, Bring out the children of Israel from the land of Egypt according to their armies.

27 These *are* they which spoke to Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring out the children of Israel from Egypt: these *are* that Moses and Aaron.

28 And it came to pass on the day *when* the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in the land of Egypt,

29 That the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, I *am* the YAHWEH: speak you unto Pharaoh king of Egypt all that I say unto you. [\[Exod 6:12\]](#);

30 And Moses said before the YAHWEH, Behold, I *am* of uncircumcised lips, and how shall Pharaoh hearken unto me? [Exod 6:12](#); [Exod 4:10](#); [\[Jer 1:6\]](#);

Moses and Aaron are encouraged to go again to Pharaoh

- 1** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, See, I have made you a god to Pharaoh: and Aaron thy brother shall be thy prophet. [\[1Chr 16:21\]](#); [\[Neh 9:10\]](#); [\[Ps 135:9\]](#); [\[Acts 7:36\]](#); [\[Rev 11:6\]](#);
- 2** **you** shall speak all that I command you: and Aaron thy brother shall speak unto Pharaoh, that he send the children of Israel out of his land. [Exod 4:14](#); [\[Exod 4:15\]](#);
- 3** And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and multiply my signs and my wonders in the land of Egypt. [\[Exod 7:13\]](#); [\[Exod 9:35\]](#);
- 4** But Pharaoh shall not hearken unto you, that I may lay my hand upon Egypt, and bring forth mine armies, *and* my people the children of Israel, out of the land of Egypt by great judgments.
- 5** And the Egyptians shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I stretch forth mine hand upon Egypt, and bring out the children of Israel from among them.
- 6** And Moses and Aaron did as the YAHWEH commanded them, so did they.

Their age

- 7** And Moses *was* fourscore years old, and Aaron fourscore and three years old, when they spoke unto Pharaoh.

Aaron's rod is turned into a serpent

- 8** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 9** When Pharaoh shall speak unto you, saying, show a miracle for you: then you shall say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and cast *it* before Pharaoh, *and* it shall become a serpent. [\[Ps 105:27\]](#);
- 10** And Moses and Aaron went in unto Pharaoh, and they did so as the YAHWEH had commanded: and Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh, and before his servants, and it became a serpent.

The sorcerers do the like; but their rods are swallowed up by Aaron's

- 11** Then Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers: now the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments. [\[Acts 13:8\]](#); [\[2Tim 3:8\]](#);
- 12** For they cast down every man his rod, and they became serpents: but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods.

Pharaoh's heart is hardened

- 13** And he hardened Pharaoh's heart, that he hearkened not unto them; as the YAHWEH had said. [Exod 7:3](#);

Elohim's message to Pharaoh

- 14** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Pharaoh's heart *is* hardened, he refuseth to let the people go. [\[Exod 8:15\]](#);
- 15** Get you unto Pharaoh in the morning; lo, he goes out unto the water; and you shall stand by the river's bank to meet him; and the rod which was turned to a serpent shall you take in thine hand.
- 16** And you shall say unto him, The YAHWEH Elohim of the Hebrews has sent me unto you, saying, Let my people go, that they may serve me in the wilderness: and, behold, hitherto you wouldest not hear.
- 17** Thus saith the YAHWEH, In this you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH: behold, I will smite with the rod that *is* in mine hand upon the waters which *are* in the river, and they shall be turned to blood.
- 18** And the fish that *is* in the river shall die, and the river shall stink; and the Egyptians shall lothe to drink of the water of the river.

The river is turned into blood; and the consequent distress of the Egyptians

19 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and stretch out thine hand upon the waters of Egypt, upon their streams, upon their rivers, and upon their ponds, and upon all their pools of water, that they may become blood; and *that* there may be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, both in *vessels of wood*, and in *vessels of stone*. [\[Exod 4:9\];](#)

20 And Moses and Aaron did so, as the YAHWEH commanded; and he lifted up the rod, and smote the waters that *were* in the river, in the sight of Pharaoh, and in the sight of his servants; and all the waters that *were* in the river were turned to blood. [Exod 17:5; Ps 78:44; Ps 105:29; \[Rev 16:3\];](#)

21 And the fish that *was* in the river died; and the river stank, and the Egyptians could not drink of the water of the river; and there was blood throughout all the land of Egypt.

22 And the magicians of Egypt did so with their enchantments: and Pharaoh's heart was hardened, neither did he hearken unto them; as the YAHWEH had said.

23 And Pharaoh turned and went into his house, neither did he set his heart to this also.

24 And all the Egyptians digged round about the river for water to drink; for they could not drink of the water of the river.

25 And seven days were fulfilled, after that the YAHWEH had smitten the river.

EXODUS EIGHT

Frogs are sent

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, Go unto Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Let my people go, that they may serve me. [\[1Chr 16:21\]](#); [\[Neh 9:10\]](#); [\[Ps 135:9\]](#); [\[Acts 7:36\]](#); [\[Rev 11:6\]](#);

2 And if you refuse to let *them* go, behold, I will smite all thy borders with frogs:

3 And the river shall bring forth frogs abundantly, which shall go up and come into thine house, and into thy bedchamber, and upon thy bed, and into the house of thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thine ovens, and into thy kneadingtroughs:

4 And the frogs shall come up both on you, and upon thy people, and upon all thy servants.

5 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Stretch forth thine hand with thy rod over the streams, over the rivers, and over the ponds, and cause frogs to come up upon the land of Egypt.

6 And Aaron stretched out his hand over the waters of Egypt; and the frogs came up, and covered the land of Egypt. [\[Ps 78:45\]](#);

7 And the magicians did so with their enchantments, and brought up frogs upon the land of Egypt.

Pharaoh sues to Moses, who by prayer removes them away

8 Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and said, Intreat the YAHWEH, that he may take away the frogs from me, and from my people; and I will let the people go, that they may do sacrifice unto the YAHWEH. [\[1Kgs 13:6\]](#);

9 And Moses said unto Pharaoh, Glory over me: when shall I intreat for you, and for thy servants, and for thy people, to destroy the frogs from you and thy houses, *that* they may remain in the river only?

10 And he said, To morrow. And he said, *Be it* according to thy word: that you may know that *there is* none like unto the YAHWEH our Elohim.

11 And the frogs shall depart from you, and from thy houses, and from thy servants, and from thy people; they shall remain in the river only.

12 And Moses and Aaron went out from Pharaoh: and Moses cried unto the YAHWEH because of the frogs which he had brought against Pharaoh.

13 And the YAHWEH did according to the word of Moses; and the frogs died out of the houses, out of the villages, and out of the fields.

14 And they gathered them together upon heaps: and the land stank.

15 But when Pharaoh saw that there was respite, he hardened his heart, and hearkened not unto them; as the YAHWEH had said. [Exod 7:14](#); [\[Exod 8:32\]](#);

The dust is turned into lice, which the magicians could not do

16 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Say unto Aaron, Stretch out thy rod, and smite the dust of the land, that it may become lice throughout all the land of Egypt.

17 And they did so; for Aaron stretched out his hand with his rod, and smote the dust of the earth, and it became lice in man, and in beast; all the dust of the land became lice throughout all the land of Egypt. [Ps 105:31](#);

18 And the magicians did so with their enchantments to bring forth lice, but they could not: so there were lice upon man, and upon beast.

19 Then the magicians said unto Pharaoh, This *is* the finger of Elohim: and Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he hearkened not unto them; as the YAHWEH had said.

The plague of flies

20 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh; lo, he cometh forth to the water; and say unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Let my people go, that they may serve me.

21 Else, if you will not let my people go, behold, I will send swarms *of flies* upon you, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thy houses: and the houses of the Egyptians shall be full of swarms *of flies*, and also the ground whereon they *are*.

22 And I will sever in that day the land of Goshen, in which my people dwell, that no swarms *of flies* shall be there; to the end you may know that I *am* the YAHWEH in the midst of the earth.

23 And I will put a division between my people and thy people: to morrow shall this sign be.

24 And the YAHWEH did so; and there came a grievous swarm *of flies* into the house of Pharaoh, and into his servants' houses, and into all the land of Egypt: the land was corrupted by reason of the swarm *of flies*. [Ps 105:31](#); [Ps 78:45](#);

Pharaoh inclines to let the people go, but yet is hardened

25 And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and said, Go you, sacrifice to your Elohim in the land.

26 And Moses said, It is not meet so to do; for we shall sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians to the YAHWEH our Elohim: lo, shall we sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians before their eyes, and will they not stone us? [Gen 43:32](#); [Gen 46:34](#);

27 We will go three days' journey into the wilderness, and sacrifice to the YAHWEH our Elohim, as he shall command us.

28 And Pharaoh said, I will let you go, that you may sacrifice to the YAHWEH your Elohim in the wilderness; only you shall not go very far away: intreat for me.

29 And Moses said, Behold, I go out from you, and I will intreat the YAHWEH that the swarms *of flies* may depart from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people, to morrow: but let not Pharaoh deal deceitfully any more in not letting the people go to sacrifice to the YAHWEH.

30 And Moses went out from Pharaoh, and intreated the YAHWEH.

31 And the YAHWEH did according to the word of Moses; and he removed the swarms *of flies* from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people; there remained not one.

32 And Pharaoh hardened his heart at this time also, neither would he let the people go. [Exod 8:15](#);

The murrain of beasts

- 1** Then the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh, and tell him, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me. [\[1Chr 16:21\]](#); [\[Neh 9:10\]](#); [\[Ps 135:9\]](#); [\[Acts 7:36\]](#); [\[Rev 11:6\]](#);
- 2** For if you refuse to let *them* go, and will hold them still,
- 3** Behold, the hand of the YAHWEH is upon thy cattle which *is* in the field, upon the horses, upon the asses, upon the camels, upon the oxen, and upon the sheep: *there shall be* a very grievous murrain.
- 4** And the YAHWEH shall sever between the cattle of Israel and the cattle of Egypt: and there shall nothing die of all *that is* the children's of Israel.
- 5** And the YAHWEH appointed a set time, saying, To morrow the YAHWEH shall do this thing in the land.
- 6** And the YAHWEH did that thing on the morrow, and all the cattle of Egypt died: but of the cattle of the children of Israel died not one. [\[Ps 78:50\]](#);
- 7** And Pharaoh sent, and, behold, there was not one of the cattle of the Israelites dead. And the heart of Pharaoh was hardened, and he did not let the people go.

The plague of boils and sores

- 8** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses and unto Aaron, Take to you handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it toward the heaven in the sight of Pharaoh.
- 9** And it shall become small dust in all the land of Egypt, and shall be a boil breaking forth *with* sores upon man, and upon beast, throughout all the land of Egypt. [\[Deut 28:27\]](#); [\[Rev 16:2\]](#);
- 10** And they took ashes of the furnace, and stood before Pharaoh; and Moses sprinkled it up toward heaven; and it became a boil breaking forth *with* sores upon man, and upon beast.
- 11** And the magicians could not stand before Moses because of the boils; for the boil was upon the magicians, and upon all the Egyptians.
- 12** And the YAHWEH hardened the heart of Pharaoh, and he hearkened not unto them; as the YAHWEH had spoken unto Moses.

The message of Moses about the hail

- 13** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me.
- 14** For I will at this time send all my plagues upon thine heart, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people; that you may know that *there is* none like me in all the earth.
- 15** For now I will stretch out my hand, that I may smite you and thy people with pestilence; and you shall be cut off from the earth.
- 16** And in very deed for this *cause* have I raised you up, for to show *in* you my power; and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth. [Rom 9:17](#); [\[Exod 11:10\]](#); [\[Ps 106:8\]](#);
- 17** As yet exaltest you thyself against my people, that you will not let them go?
- 18** Behold, to morrow about this time I will cause it to rain a very grievous hail, such as has not been in Egypt since the foundation thereof even until now. [\[Job 37:13\]](#);
- 19** Send therefore now, *and* gather thy cattle, and all that you have in the field; *for upon* every man and beast which shall be found in the field, and shall not be brought home, the hail shall come down upon them, and they shall die.
- 20** He that feared the word of the YAHWEH among the servants of Pharaoh made his servants and his cattle flee into the houses:
- 21** And he that regarded not the word of the YAHWEH left his servants and his cattle in the field.

The plague of hail

22 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Stretch forth thine hand toward heaven, that there may be hail in all the land of Egypt, upon man, and upon beast, and upon every herb of the field, throughout the land of Egypt.

23 And Moses stretched forth his rod toward heaven: and the YAHWEH sent thunder and hail, and the fire ran along upon the ground; and the YAHWEH rained hail upon the land of Egypt. [\[Job 37:13\]; \[Ps 29:3\]; \[Ps 78:47\];](#)

24 So there was hail, and fire mingled with the hail, very grievous, such as there was none like it in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation.

25 And the hail smote throughout all the land of Egypt all that *was* in the field, both man and beast; and the hail smote every herb of the field, and brake every tree of the field.

26 Only in the land of Goshen, where the children of Israel *were*, was there no hail.

Pharaoh sues to Moses, but yet is hardened

27 And Pharaoh sent, and called for Moses and Aaron, and said unto them, I have sinned this time: the YAHWEH *is* righteous, and I and my people *are* wicked.

28 Intreat the YAHWEH (for *it is* enough) that there be no *more* mighty thunderings and hail; and I will let you go, and you shall stay no longer. [\[1Kgs 13:6\];](#)

29 And Moses said unto him, As soon as I am gone out of the city, I will spread abroad my hands unto the YAHWEH; *and* the thunder shall cease, neither shall there be any more hail; that you may know how that the earth *is* the YAHWEH'S.

30 But as for you and thy servants, I know that you will not yet fear the YAHWEH Elohim.

31 And the flax and the barley was smitten: for the barley *was* in the ear, and the flax *was* budded.

32 But the wheat and the rie were not smitten: for they *were* not grown up.

33 And Moses went out of the city from Pharaoh, and spread abroad his hands unto the YAHWEH: and the thunders and hail ceased, and the rain was not poured upon the earth.

34 And when Pharaoh saw that the rain and the hail and the thunders were ceased, he sinned yet more, and hardened his heart, he and his servants. [\[Exod 10:1\];](#)

35 And the heart of Pharaoh was hardened, neither would he let the children of Israel go; as the YAHWEH had spoken by Moses. [Exod 4:21; Exod 7:3;](#)

Elohim threatens to send locusts

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh: for I have hardened his heart, and the heart of his servants, that I might show these my signs before him: [Exod 4:21](#); [Exod 9:34](#); [\[1Chr 16:21\]](#); [\[Neh 9:10\]](#); [\[Ps 135:9\]](#); [\[Acts 7:36\]](#); [\[Rev 11:6\]](#);

2 And that you may tell in the ears of thy son, and of thy son's son, what things I have wrought in Egypt, and my signs which I have done among them; that you may know how that I *am* the YAHWEH.

3 And Moses and Aaron came in unto Pharaoh, and said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of the Hebrews, How long will you refuse to humble thyself before me? let my people go, that they may serve me.

4 Else, if you refuse to let my people go, behold, to morrow will I bring the locusts into thy coast: [\[Rev 9:7\]](#);

5 And they shall cover the face of the earth, that one cannot be able to see the earth: and they shall eat the residue of that which is escaped, which remaineth unto you from the hail, and shall eat every tree which groweth for you out of the field:

6 And they shall fill thy houses, and the houses of all thy servants, and the houses of all the Egyptians; which neither thy fathers, nor thy fathers' fathers have seen, since the day that they were upon the earth unto this day. And he turned himself, and went out from Pharaoh.

Pharaoh moved by his servants, inclines to let the Israelites go

7 And Pharaoh's servants said unto him, How long shall this man be a snare unto us? let the men go, that they may serve the YAHWEH their Elohim: knowest you not yet that Egypt is destroyed?

8 And Moses and Aaron were brought again unto Pharaoh: and he said unto them, Go, serve the YAHWEH your Elohim: *but* who *are* they that shall go?

9 And Moses said, We will go with our young and with our old, with our sons and with our daughters, with our flocks and with our herds will we go; for we *must hold* a feast unto the YAHWEH.

10 And he said unto them, Let the YAHWEH be so with you, as I will let you go, and your little ones: look *to it*; for evil *is* before you.

11 Not so: go now you *that are* men, and serve the YAHWEH; for that you did desire. And they were driven out from Pharaoh's presence.

The plague of the locusts

12 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand over the land of Egypt for the locusts, that they may come up upon the land of Egypt, and eat every herb of the land, *even* all that the hail has left.

13 And Moses stretched forth his rod over the land of Egypt, and the YAHWEH brought an east wind upon the land all that day, and all *that* night; *and* when it was morning, the east wind brought the locusts. [Ps 78:46](#); [Ps 105:34-35](#);

14 And the locusts went up over all the land of Egypt, and rested in all the coasts of Egypt: very grievous *were they*; before them there were no such locusts as they, neither after them shall be such.

15 For they covered the face of the whole earth, so that the land was darkened; and they did eat every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees which the hail had left: and there remained not any green thing in the trees, or in the herbs of the field, through all the land of Egypt.

Pharaoh entreats Moses

16 Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron in haste; and he said, I have sinned against the YAHWEH your Elohim, and against you.

17 Now therefore forgive, I pray you, my sin only this once, and intreat the YAHWEH your Elohim, that he may take away from me this death only. [\[1Kgs 13:6\]](#);

18 And he went out from Pharaoh, and intreated the YAHWEH.

19 And the YAHWEH turned a mighty strong west wind, which took away the locusts, and cast them into the Red sea; there remained not one locust in all the coasts of Egypt.

20 But the YAHWEH hardened Pharaoh's heart, so that he would not let the children of Israel go.

The plague of darkness

21 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, even darkness *which* may be felt.

22 And Moses stretched forth his hand toward heaven; and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt three days: [Ps 105:27-28](#);

23 They saw not one another, neither rose any from his place for three days: but all the children of Israel had light in their dwellings.

Pharaoh again entreats Moses, but yet is hardened

24 And Pharaoh called unto Moses, and said, Go you, serve the YAHWEH; only let your flocks and your herds be stayed: let your little ones also go with you.

25 And Moses said, you must give us also sacrifices and burnt offerings, that we may sacrifice unto the YAHWEH our Elohim.

26 Our cattle also shall go with us; there shall not a hoof be left behind; for thereof must we take to serve the YAHWEH our Elohim; and we know not with what we must serve the YAHWEH, until we come thither.

27 But the YAHWEH hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he would not let them go.

28 And Pharaoh said unto him, Get you from me, take heed to thyself, see my face no more; for in *that* day you seest my face you shall die.

29 And Moses said, you have spoken well, I will see thy face again no more. [Heb 11:27](#);

Elohim's message to the Israelites to borrow jewels of their neighbours

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, yet will I bring one plague *more* upon Pharaoh, and upon Egypt; afterwards he will let you go hence: when he shall let *you* go, he shall surely thrust you out hence altogether. [\[1Chr 16:21\]](#); [\[Neh 9:10\]](#); [\[Acts 7:36\]](#);

2 Speak now in the ears of the people, and let every man borrow of his neighbour, and every woman of her neighbour, jewels of silver, and jewels of gold. [Exod 3:22](#); [Exod 12:35](#); [\[Gen 15:14\]](#);

3 And the YAHWEH gave the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians. Moreover the man Moses *was* very great in the land of Egypt, in the sight of Pharaoh's servants, and in the sight of the people. [Exod 12:36](#);

Moses threatens Pharaoh with the death of the firstborn

4 And Moses said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, About midnight will I go out into the midst of Egypt: [Exod 12:29](#);

5 And all the firstborn in the land of Egypt shall die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the firstborn of the maidservant that *is* behind the mill; and all the firstborn of beasts. [Exod 12:12](#);

6 And there shall be a great cry throughout all the land of Egypt, such as there was none like it, nor shall be like it any more.

7 But against any of the children of Israel shall not a dog move his tongue, against man or beast: that you may know how that the YAHWEH puts a difference between the Egyptians and Israel.

8 And all these thy servants shall come down unto me, and bow down themselves unto me, saying, Get you out, and all the people that follow you: and after that I will go out. And he went out from Pharaoh in a great anger. [Exod 12:30](#);

9 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Pharaoh shall not hearken unto you; that my wonders may be multiplied in the land of Egypt.

10 And Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh: and the YAHWEH hardened Pharaoh's heart, so that he would not let the children of Israel go out of his land. [Exod 9:16](#); [Rom 9:17](#);

The beginning of the year is changed

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt, saying, [Num 9:2]; [Ezra 6:19]; [Neh 9:10]; [Rev 11:6];

2 This month *shall be* unto you the beginning of months: it *shall be* the first month of the year to you. [Deut 16:1];

The passover is instituted

3 Speak you unto all the congregation of Israel, saying, In the tenth *day* of this month they shall take to them every man a lamb, according to the house of *their* fathers, a lamb for a house: [2Kgs 23:21]; [Ezek 45:21]; [John 1:36]; [1Cor 5:8];

4 And if the household be too little for the lamb, let him and his neighbour next unto his house take *it* according to the number of the beings; every man according to his eating shall make your count for the lamb.

5 Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male of the first year: you shall take *it* out from the sheep, or from the goats: Lev 1:3; Lev 22:21; Mal 1:8; 1Pet 1:19;

6 And you shall keep it up until the fourteenth day of the same month: and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it between the evenings. [Josh 5:10];

7 And they shall take of the blood, and strike *it* on the two side posts and on the upper door post of the houses, wherein they shall eat it.

8 And they shall eat the flesh in that night, roast with fire, and unleavened bread; *and* with bitter *herbs* they shall eat it. Num 9:11; 1Cor 5:8; [2Chr 35:13];

9 Eat not of it raw, nor sodden at all with water, but roast *with* fire; his head with his legs, and with the purtenance thereof.

10 And you shall let nothing of it remain until the morning; and that which remaineth of it until the morning you shall burn with fire. [Deut 16:4];

The import of the rite of the passover

11 And thus shall you eat it; *with* your loins girded, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand; and you shall eat it in haste: it *is* the YAHWEH'S passover.

12 For I will pass through the land of Egypt this night, and will smite all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgment: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Exod 11:5]; [Ps 135:8];

13 And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where you *are*: and when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy *you*, when I smite the land of Egypt.

14 And this day shall be unto you for a memorial; and you shall keep it a feast to the YAHWEH throughout your generations; you shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever. Exod 5:1; [Exod 23:15];

Unleavened bread, etc

15 Seven days shall you eat unleavened bread; even the first day you shall put away leaven out of your houses: for whosoever eateth leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that being shall be cut off from Israel. [Exod 34:18]; [Luke 22:1]; [1Cor 5:8];

16 And in the first day *there shall be* a holy convocation, and in the seventh day there shall be a holy convocation to you; no manner of work shall be done in them, save *that* which every man must eat, that only may be done of you.

17 And you shall observe *the feast of* unleavened bread; for in this selfsame day have I brought your armies out of the land of Egypt: therefore shall you observe this day in your generations by an ordinance for ever. [Matt 26:17]; [Mark 14:12];

18 In the first *month*, on the fourteenth day of the month at even, you shall eat unleavened bread, until the one and twentieth day of the month at even. Lev 23:5; Num 28:16; [John 6:4];

19 Seven days shall there be no leaven found in your houses: for whosoever eateth that which is leavened, even that being shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether he be a stranger, or born in the land. [\[Deut 16:3\];](#)

20 *you* shall eat nothing leavened; in all your habitations shall you eat unleavened bread. [Deut 16:3;](#)

21 Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, Draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the passover. [Heb 11:28;](#)

22 And you shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip *it* in the blood that *is* in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that *is* in the basin; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house until the morning.

23 For the YAHWEH will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side posts, the YAHWEH will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite *you*. [Heb 11:28;](#)

24 And you shall observe this thing for an ordinance to you and to thy sons for ever.

25 And it shall come to pass, when you be come to the land which the YAHWEH will give you, according as he has promised, that you shall keep this service.

26 And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, What mean you by this service? [Josh 4:6;](#)

27 That you shall say, It *is* the sacrifice of the YAHWEH'S passover, who passed over the houses of the children of Israel in Egypt, when he smote the Egyptians, and delivered our houses. And the people bowed the head and worshipped.

28 And the children of Israel went away, and did as the YAHWEH had commanded Moses and Aaron, so did they. [Heb 11:28;](#)

The firstborn are slain

29 And it came to pass, that at midnight the YAHWEH smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh that sat on his throne unto the firstborn of the captive that *was* in the dungeon; and all the firstborn of cattle. [Ps 78:51; Ps 105:36; Ps 135:8; Ps 136:10; \[Exod 11:4\];](#)

30 And Pharaoh rose up in the night, he, and all his servants, and all the Egyptians; and there was a great cry in Egypt; for *there was* not a house where *there was* not one dead. [Ps 105:8; \[Exod 11:8\];](#)

The Israelites are driven out of the land

31 And he called for Moses and Aaron by night, and said, Rise up, *and* get you forth from among my people, both you and the children of Israel; and go, serve the YAHWEH, as you have said. [\[1Sam 6:6\]; \[Ps 136:11\];](#)

32 Also take your flocks and your herds, as you have said, and be gone; and bless me also.

33 And the Egyptians were urgent upon the people, that they might send them out of the land in haste; for they said, We *be* all dead *men*. [\[Ps 105:38\];](#)

34 And the people took their dough before it was leavened, their kneadingtroughs being bound up in their clothes upon their shoulders.

35 And the children of Israel did according to the word of Moses; and they borrowed of the Egyptians jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment: [Exod 3:21; Exod 11:2; Ps 105:37; \[Gen 15:14\]; \[Exod 3:22\];](#)

36 And the YAHWEH gave the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians, so that they lent unto them *such things as they required*. And they spoiled the Egyptians. [\[Exod 11:3\];](#)

They come to Succoth

37 And the children of Israel journeyed from Rameses to Succoth, about six hundred thousand on foot *that were* men, beside children. [\[Num 33:3\]; \[Josh 24:5\];](#)

38 And a mixed multitude went up also with them; and flocks, and herds, *even* very much cattle. [Num 11:4];

39 And they baked unleavened cakes of the dough which they brought forth out of Egypt, for it was not leavened; because they were thrust out of Egypt, and could not tarry, neither had they prepared for themselves any victual. [Josh 5:11];

40 Now the sojourning of the children of Israel, who dwelt in Egypt, *was* four hundred and thirty years. Gen 15:13; Acts 7:6; Gal 3:17; [Gen 15:16];

The time of their sojourning

41 And it came to pass at the end of the four hundred and thirty years, even the selfsame day it came to pass, that all the hosts of the YAHWEH went out from the land of Egypt.

42 It *is* a night to be much observed unto the YAHWEH for bringing them out from the land of Egypt: this *is* that night of the YAHWEH to be observed of all the children of Israel in their generations.

The ordinance of the passover

43 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses and Aaron, This *is* the ordinance of the passover: There shall no stranger eat thereof:

44 But every man's servant that is bought for money, when you have circumcised him, then shall he eat thereof.

45 A foreigner and a hired servant shall not eat thereof.

46 In one house shall it be eaten; you shall not carry forth ought of the flesh abroad out of the house; neither shall you break a bone thereof. Num 9:12; John 19:36;

47 All the congregation of Israel shall keep it.

48 And when a stranger shall sojourn with you, and will keep the passover to the YAHWEH, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near and keep it; and he shall be as one that is born in the land: for no uncircumcised person shall eat thereof.

49 One law shall be to him that is homeborn, and unto the stranger that sojourneth among you. [Num 9:14]; [Num 15:15];

50 Thus did all the children of Israel; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses and Aaron, so did they.

51 And it came to pass the selfsame day, *that* the YAHWEH did bring the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their armies. [Ps 136:11]; [Amos 2:10]; [Mic 6:4];

The firstborn are sanctified to Elohim

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [Acts 7:36];

2 Sanctify unto me all the firstborn, whatsoever openeth the womb among the children of Israel, *both* of man and of beast: it *is* mine. Exod 22:29; Exod 34:19; Lev 27:26; Num 3:13; Num 8:17; Luke 2:23; [Num 3:12]; [Num 18:15]; [Deut 15:19]; [Neh 10:36]; [Ezek 44:30];

The memorial of the passover is commanded

3 And Moses said unto the people, Remember this day, in which you came out from Egypt, out of the house of bondage; for by strength of hand the YAHWEH brought you out from this *place*: there shall no leavened bread be eaten. [Exod 20:2]; [Exod 23:15]; [Deut 4:37]; [Ps 114:1]; [Ps 136:11];

4 This day came you out in the month Abib. Exod 23:15;

5 And it shall be when the YAHWEH shall bring you into the land of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, which he swore unto thy fathers to give you, a land flowing with milk and honey, that you shall keep this service in this month.

6 Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, and in the seventh day *shall be* a feast to the YAHWEH.

7 Unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days; and there shall no leavened bread be seen with you, neither shall there be leaven seen with you in all thy quarters.

8 And you shall show thy son in that day, saying, *This is done* because of that *which* the YAHWEH did unto me when I came forth out of Egypt.

9 And it shall be for a sign unto you upon thine hand, and for a memorial between thine eyes, that the YAHWEH'S law may be in thy mouth: for with a strong hand has the YAHWEH brought you out of Egypt. [Deut 4:37]; [Prov 3:3];

10 *you* shall therefore keep this ordinance at its appointed time from year to year.

The firstlings of man and beast are set apart

11 And it shall be when the YAHWEH shall bring you into the land of the Canaanites, as he swore unto you and to thy fathers, and shall give it you,

12 That you shall set apart unto the YAHWEH all that openeth the matrix, and every firstling that cometh of a beast which you hast; the males *shall be* the YAHWEH'S. Exod 22:30; Exod 34:19; Lev 27:26; Num 8:17; Ezek 44:30; [Exod 22:29];

13 And every firstling of an ass you shall redeem with a lamb; if you will not redeem it, then you shall break his neck: and all the firstborn of man among thy children shall you redeem. [Exod 34:20];

14 And it shall be when thy son asketh you in time to come, saying, What *is* this? that you shall say unto him, By strength of hand the YAHWEH brought us out from Egypt, from the house of bondage: [Deut 4:37];

15 And it came to pass, when Pharaoh would hardly let us go, that the YAHWEH slew all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of man, and the firstborn of beast: therefore I sacrifice to the YAHWEH all that openeth the matrix, being males; but all the firstborn of my children I redeem.

16 And it shall be for a token upon thine hand, and for frontlets between thine eyes: for by strength of hand the YAHWEH brought us forth out of Egypt.

The Israelites go out of Egypt, and carry Joseph's bones with them

17 And it came to pass, when Pharaoh had let the people go, that Elohim led them not *through* the way of the land of the Philistines, although that *was* near; for Elohim said, Lest the people repent when they see war, and they return to Egypt: [Ps 136:11];

18 But Elohim led the people around by the way of the wilderness toward the Red Sea: and the children of Israel went up harnessed out of the land of Egypt. [\[Ezek 20:10\];](#)

19 And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him: for he had straitly sworn the children of Israel, saying, Elohim will surely visit you; and you shall carry up my bones away hence with you. [Gen 50:25; Josh 24:32; \[Acts 7:16\];](#)

They come to Etham

20 And they took their journey from Succoth, and encamped in Etham, in the edge of the wilderness. [Num 33:6;](#)

Elohim guides them by a pillar of a cloud, and a pillar of fire

21 And the YAHWEH went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way; and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light; to go by day and night: [Exod 40:38; Num 14:14; Deut 1:33; Neh 9:12; Neh 9:19; Ps 78:14; Ps 105:39; 1Cor 10:1; \[Exod 16:10\];](#)

22 He took not away the pillar of the cloud by day, nor the pillar of fire by night, *from* before the people. [\[Neh 9:19\];](#)

Elohim instructs the Israelites in their journey

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[Josh 24:6\]](#); [\[Neh 9:10\]](#); [\[Ps 135:9\]](#); [\[Isa 10:26\]](#); [\[Acts 7:36\]](#);
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, that they turn back and encamp before Pihahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, over against Baalzephon: before it shall you encamp by the sea. [Num 33:7](#);
3 For Pharaoh will say of the children of Israel, They *are* entangled in the land, the wilderness has shut them in.
4 And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, that he shall follow after them; and I will be honoured upon Pharaoh, and upon all his host; that the Egyptians may know that I *am* the YAHWEH. And they did so. [Exod 4:21](#); [Exod 40:20](#);

Pharaoh pursues after them

- 5** And it was told the king of Egypt that the people fled: and the heart of Pharaoh and of his servants was turned against the people, and they said, Why have we done this, that we have let Israel go from serving us?
6 And he made ready his chariot, and took his people with him:
7 And he took six hundred chosen chariots, and all the chariots of Egypt, and captains over every one of them.
8 And the YAHWEH hardened the heart of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and he pursued after the children of Israel: and the children of Israel went out with a high hand. [\[Ps 105:43\]](#);
9 But the Egyptians pursued after them, all the horses *and* chariots of Pharaoh, and his horsemen, and his army, and overtook them encamping by the sea, beside Pihahiroth, before Baalzephon. [Josh 24:6](#);

The Israelites murmur

- 10** And when Pharaoh drew nigh, the children of Israel lifted up their eyes, and, behold, the Egyptians marched after them; and they were sore afraid: and the children of Israel cried out unto the YAHWEH. [\[Neh 9:9\]](#);
11 And they said unto Moses, Because *there were* no graves in Egypt, have you taken us away to die in the wilderness? wherefore have you dealt thus with us, to carry us forth out of Egypt? [\[Deut 9:7\]](#); [\[Ps 106:7\]](#);
12 *Is* not this the word that we did tell you in Egypt, saying, Let us alone, that we may serve the Egyptians? For *it had been* better for us to serve the Egyptians, than that we should die in the wilderness. [Exod 6:9](#);

Moses comforts them

- 13** And Moses said unto the people, Fear you not, stand still, and see the salvation of the YAHWEH, which he will show to you to day: for the Egyptians whom you have seen to day, you shall see them again no more for ever. [\[2Chr 20:15\]](#);
14 The YAHWEH shall fight for you, and you shall hold your peace. [\[Josh 23:5\]](#);

Elohim instructs Moses

- 15** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Wherefore criest you unto me? speak unto the children of Israel, that they go forward:
16 But lift you up thy rod, and stretch out thine hand over the sea, and divide it: and the children of Israel shall go on dry *ground* through the midst of the sea.
17 And I, behold, I will harden the hearts of the Egyptians, and they shall follow them: and I will get me honour upon Pharaoh, and upon all his host, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen.

18 And the Egyptians shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I have gotten me honour upon Pharaoh, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen. [\[Exod 18:11\]](#);

The cloud removes behind the camp

19 And the angel of Elohim, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them; and the pillar of the cloud went from before their face, and stood behind them: [\[Num 20:16\]](#); [\[Neh 9:12\]](#);

20 And it came between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel; and it was a cloud and darkness *to them*, but it gave light by night *to these*: so that the one came not near the other all the night.

The Israelites pass through the Red sea, which drowns the Egyptians

21 And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea; and the YAHWEH caused the sea to go *back* by a strong east wind all that night, and made the sea dry *land*, and the waters were divided. [Ps 66:6](#); [Josh 4:23](#); [Ps 78:13](#); [Ps 106:9](#); [Ps 114:3](#); [\[Josh 2:10\]](#); [\[Ps 74:13\]](#); [\[Ps 77:16\]](#); [\[Ps 136:13\]](#);

22 And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry *ground*: and the waters *were* a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left. [1Cor 10:1](#); [Heb 11:29](#); [\[Neh 9:11\]](#);

23 And the Egyptians pursued, and went in after them to the midst of the sea, *even* all Pharaoh's horses, his chariots, and his horsemen.

24 And it came to pass, that in the morning watch the YAHWEH looked unto the host of the Egyptians through the pillar of fire and of the cloud, and troubled the host of the Egyptians, [\[Exod 23:27\]](#); [\[Ps 77:17\]](#); [\[Ps 136:15\]](#);

25 And took off their chariot wheels, that they drave them heavily: so that the Egyptians said, Let us flee from the face of Israel; for the YAHWEH fighteth for them against the Egyptians. [\[Neh 4:20\]](#);

26 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Stretch out thine hand over the sea, that the waters may come again upon the Egyptians, upon their chariots, and upon their horsemen.

27 And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and the YAHWEH overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea. [\[Ps 78:53\]](#); [\[Ps 106:11\]](#);

28 And the waters returned, and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, *and* all the host of Pharaoh that came into the sea after them; there remained not so much as one of them. [Ps 78:53](#); [Ps 106:11](#);

29 But the children of Israel walked upon dry *land* in the midst of the sea; and the waters *were* a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left. [Ps 77:19](#); [\[Ps 68:22\]](#); [\[Ps 106:9\]](#); [\[Isa 11:16\]](#);

30 Thus the YAHWEH saved Israel that day out of the hand of the Egyptians; and Israel saw the Egyptians dead upon the sea shore. [\[Mic 6:4\]](#);

31 And Israel saw that great work which the YAHWEH did upon the Egyptians: and the people feared the YAHWEH, and believed the YAHWEH, and his servant Moses. [\[Ps 106:12\]](#);

The song of Moses, Miriam, and Israel on their deliverance

- 1** Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto the YAHWEH, and spoke, saying, I will sing unto the YAHWEH, for he has triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider has he thrown into the sea. [Ps 106:12](#); [\[Ps 136:16\]](#);
- 2** The YAHWEH *is* my strength and song, and he is become my salvation: he *is* my Elohim, and I will prepare him a habitation; my father's Elohim, and I will exalt him. [Ps 18:1](#); [Ps 118:14](#); [Isa 12:2](#);
- 3** The YAHWEH *is* a man of war: the YAHWEH *is* his name.
- 4** Pharaoh's chariots and his host has he cast into the sea: his chosen captains also are drowned in the Red sea.
- 5** The depths have covered them: they sank into the bottom as a stone. [Neh 9:11](#); [\[Ps 106:11\]](#);
- 6** Thy right hand, O YAHWEH, is become glorious in power: thy right hand, O YAHWEH, has dashed in pieces the enemy. [Ps 118:15-16](#);
- 7** And in the greatness of thine excellency you have overthrown them that rose up against you: you sentest forth thy wrath, *which* consumed them as stubble. [\[Isa 5:24\]](#);
- 8** And with the blast of thy nostrils the waters were gathered together, the floods stood upright as a heap, *and* the depths were congealed in the heart of the sea. [Isa 63:12-13](#); [Hab 3:10](#);
- 9** The enemy said, I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil; my lust shall be satisfied upon them; I will draw my sword, my hand shall destroy them.
- 10** You didst blow with thy wind, the sea covered them: they sank as lead in the mighty waters. [Ps 74:13](#); [Ps 106:11](#); [\[Ps 78:53\]](#);
- 11** Who *is* like unto you, O YAHWEH, among the gods? who *is* like you, glorious in holiness, fearful *in* praises, doing wonders? [\[2Chr 6:14\]](#); [\[Ps 77:14\]](#);
- 12** You stretchedst out thy right hand, the earth swallowed them.
- 13** You in thy mercy have led forth the people *which* you have redeemed: you have guided *them* in thy strength unto thy holy habitation. [Ps 77:20](#);
- 14** The people shall hear, *and* be afraid: sorrow shall take hold on the inhabitants of Philistia.
- 15** Then the dukes of Edom shall be amazed; the mighty men of Moab, trembling shall take hold upon them; all the inhabitants of Canaan shall melt away. [Deut 2:4](#);
- 16** Fear and dread shall fall upon them; by the greatness of thine arm they shall be *as* still as a stone; till thy people pass over, O YAHWEH, till the people pass over, *which* you have purchased. [Deut 2:25](#); [Deut 11:25](#); [Josh 2:9](#);
- 17** You shall bring them in, and plant them in the mountain of thine inheritance, *in* the place, O YAHWEH, *which* you have made for you to dwell in, *in* the Sanctuary, O Lord, *which* thy hands have established. [\[Ps 44:2\]](#); [\[Jer 2:21\]](#);
- 18** The YAHWEH shall reign for ever and ever. [\[Ps 146:10\]](#);
- 19** For the horse of Pharaoh went in with his chariots and with his horsemen into the sea, and the YAHWEH brought again the waters of the sea upon them; but the children of Israel went on dry *land* in the midst of the sea.
- 20** And Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a timbrel in her hand; and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances. [1Sam 18:6](#);
- 21** And Miriam answered them, Sing you to the YAHWEH, for he has triumphed gloriously; the horse and his rider has he thrown into the sea. [\[1Sam 18:7\]](#);

The people want water in the wilderness

- 22** So Moses brought Israel from the Red sea, and they went out into the wilderness of Shur; and they went three days in the wilderness, and found no water. [\[Num 33:8\]](#);

The waters at Marah are bitter, they murmur, Moses prays, and sweetens the waters by Elohim's direction

23 And when they came to Marah, they could not drink of the waters of Marah, for they *were* bitter: therefore the name of it was called Marah. [Num 33:8](#);

24 And the people murmured against Moses, saying, What shall we drink?

25 And he cried unto the YAHWEH; and the YAHWEH showed him a tree, *which* when he had cast into the waters, the waters were made sweet: there he made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there he proved them, [\[Josh 24:25\]](#); [\[2Kgs 4:41\]](#);

26 And said, If you will diligently hearken to the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and will do that which is right in his sight, and will give ear to his commandments, and keep all his statutes, I will put none of these diseases upon you, which I have brought upon the Egyptians: for I *am* the YAHWEH that healeth you. [\[Exod 23:25\]](#); [\[Ps 147:3\]](#);

They encamp at Elim, where are twelve wells, and seventy palm trees

27 And they came to Elim, where *were* twelve wells of water, and threescore and ten palm trees: and they encamped there by the waters. [\[Num 33:9\]](#);

The Israelites come to Sin, and murmur for want of bread

1 And they took their journey from Elim, and all the congregation of the children of Israel came unto the wilderness of Sin, which *is* between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departing out of the land of Egypt. [Num 33:11]; [Ps 136:16]; [Acts 7:36];

2 And the whole congregation of the children of Israel murmured against Moses and Aaron in the wilderness: [Deut 9:7]; [1Cor 10:10];

3 And the children of Israel said unto them, Would to Elohim we had died by the hand of the YAHWEH in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the flesh pots, *and* when we did eat bread to the full; for you have brought us forth into this wilderness, to kill this whole assembly with hunger. 1Cor 10:10; Num 11:4; [Ps 106:14];

Elohim promises them bread and flesh from heaven, and they are rebuked

4 Then said the YAHWEH unto Moses, Behold, I will rain bread from heaven for you; and the people shall go out and gather a certain rate every day, that I may prove them, whether they will walk in my law, or no. Ps 78:24; Ps 105:40; [John 6:31]; [John 6:49];

5 And it shall come to pass, that on the sixth day they shall prepare *that* which they bring in; and it shall be twice as much as they gather daily.

6 And Moses and Aaron said unto all the children of Israel, At even, then you shall know that the YAHWEH has brought you out from the land of Egypt:

7 And in the morning, then you shall see the glory of the YAHWEH; for that he heareth your murmurings against the YAHWEH: and what *are* we, that you murmur against us?

8 And Moses said, *This shall be*, when the YAHWEH shall give you in the evening flesh to eat, and in the morning bread to the full; for that the YAHWEH heareth your murmurings which you murmur against him: and what *are* we? your murmurings *are* not against us, but against the YAHWEH.

9 And Moses spoke unto Aaron, Say unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, Come near before the YAHWEH: for he has heard your murmurings.

10 And it came to pass, as Aaron spoke unto the whole congregation of the children of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, the glory of the YAHWEH appeared in the cloud. Exod 13:21;

11 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

12 I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel: speak unto them, saying, At even you shall eat flesh, and in the morning you shall be filled with bread; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. John 6:49; John 6:58;

Quails and manna are sent

13 And it came to pass, that at even the quails came up, and covered the camp: and in the morning the dew lay round about the host. Num 11:31; Ps 105:40;

14 And when the dew that lay was gone up, behold, upon the face of the wilderness *there lay* a small round thing, *as* small as the hoar frost on the ground. Num 11:7; Neh 9:15; Ps 78:24; Ps 105:40; [Deut 8:3]; [Deut 8:16]; [John 6:31];

15 And when the children of Israel saw *it*, they said one to another, It *is* manna: for they wist not what it *was*. And Moses said unto them, This *is* the bread which the YAHWEH has given you to eat. John 6:31; 1Cor 10:3;

The ordering of manna

16 This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH has commanded, Gather of it every man according to his eating, an omer for every man, *according to* the number of your persons; take you every man for *them* which *are* in his tents.

17 And the children of Israel did so, and gathered, some more, some less.

18 And when they did mete *it* with an omer, he that gathered much had nothing over, and he that gathered little had no lack; they gathered every man according to his eating. [2Cor 8:15](#);

19 And Moses said, Let no man leave of it till the morning.

20 Notwithstanding they hearkened not unto Moses; but some of them left of it until the morning, and it bred worms, and stank: and Moses was wroth with them.

21 And they gathered it every morning, every man according to his eating: and when the sun waxed hot, it melted.

22 And it came to pass, *that* on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread, two omers for one *man*: and all the rulers of the congregation came and told Moses.

23 And he said unto them, This *is that* which the YAHWEH has said, To morrow *is* the rest of the holy Sabbath unto the YAHWEH: bake *that* which you will bake *to day*, and seethe that you will seethe; and that which remaineth over lay up for you to be kept until the morning. [\[Exod 35:3\]](#);

24 And they laid it up till the morning, as Moses bade: and it did not stink, neither was there any worm therein.

It was not to be found on the Sabbath

25 And Moses said, Eat that to day; for to day *is* a Sabbath unto the YAHWEH: to day you shall not find it in the field.

26 Six days you shall gather it; but on the seventh day, *which is* the Sabbath, in it there shall be none.

27 And it came to pass, *that* there went out *some* of the people on the seventh day for to gather, and they found none.

28 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, How long refuse you to keep my commandments and my laws? [\[Ezek 20:13\]](#);

29 See, for that the YAHWEH has given you the Sabbath, therefore he giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide you every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day.

30 So the people rested on the seventh day.

31 And the house of Israel called the name thereof Manna: and it *was* like coriander seed, white; and the taste of it *was* like wafers *made* with honey. [Num 11:7](#);

An omer of it is preserved

32 And Moses said, This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH commandeth, Fill an omer of it to be kept for your generations; that they may see the bread wherewith I have fed you in the wilderness, when I brought you forth from the land of Egypt.

33 And Moses said unto Aaron, Take a pot, and put an omer full of manna therein, and lay it up before the YAHWEH, to be kept for your generations. [Heb 9:4](#);

34 As the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so Aaron laid it up before the Testimony, to be kept.

35 And the children of Israel did eat manna forty years, until they came to a land inhabited; they did eat manna, until they came unto the borders of the land of Canaan. [John 5:12](#); [Neh 9:15](#); [\[Acts 13:18\]](#);

36 Now an omer *is* the tenth *part* of an ephah. [\[Num 28:5\]](#);

The people murmur for water at Rephidim

1 And all the congregation of the children of Israel journeyed from the wilderness of Sin, after their journeys, according to the commandment of the YAHWEH, and pitched in Rephidim: and *there was* no water for the people to drink. [Num 33:14]; [Ps 136:16];

2 Wherefore the people did chide with Moses, and said, Give us water that we may drink. And Moses said unto them, Why chide you with me? wherefore do you tempt the YAHWEH? Num 20:3-4; [Deut 6:16]; [Deut 9:7]; [1Cor 10:10]; [Heb 3:8];

3 And the people thirsted there for water; and the people murmured against Moses, and said, Wherefore *is* this *that* you have brought us up out of Egypt, to kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?

4 And Moses cried unto the YAHWEH, saying, What shall I do unto this people? they be almost ready to stone me.

5 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Go on before the people, and take with you of the elders of Israel; and thy rod, wherewith you smotest the river, take in thine hand, and go. Exod 7:20; [Ps 74:15];

Elohim sends them for water to the rock in Horeb

6 Behold, I will stand before you there upon the rock in Horeb; and you shall smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it, that the people may drink. And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel. Num 20:9; Ps 78:15; Ps 114:8; 1Cor 10:4; [Deut 8:15]; [Neh 9:15]; [Ps 78:20];

The place is called Massah and Meribah

7 And he called the name of the place Massah, and Meribah, because of the chiding of the children of Israel, and because they tempted the YAHWEH, saying, Is the YAHWEH among us, or not? [Deut 9:22]; [Ps 95:8];

Amalek is overcome by Joshua, while Moses holds up his hands with the rod of Elohim

8 Then came Amalek, and fought with Israel in Rephidim. Deut 25:17-18; [Deut 25:17]; [1Sam 15:2];

9 And Moses said unto Joshua, Choose us out men, and go out, fight with Amalek: to morrow I will stand on the top of the hill with the rod of Elohim in mine hand.

10 So Joshua did as Moses had said to him, and fought with Amalek: and Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill.

11 And it came to pass, when Moses held up his hand, that Israel prevailed: and when he let down his hand, Amalek prevailed.

12 But Moses' hands *were* heavy; and they took a stone, and put *it* under him, and he sat thereon; and Aaron and Hur stayed up his hands, the one on the one side, and the other on the other side; and his hands were steady until the going down of the sun.

13 And Joshua discomfited Amalek and his people with the edge of the sword.

Amalek is doomed to destruction; and Moses builds the altar JEHOVAH-nissi

14 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Write this *for* a memorial in a book, and rehearse *it* in the ears of Joshua: for I will utterly put out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven. Num 24:20; Deut 25:17-19; 1Sam 15:2-3; [1Sam 15:2];

15 And Moses built an altar, and called the name of it Jehovahnissi:

16 For he said, Because the YAHWEH has sworn *that* the YAHWEH *will have* war with Amalek from generation to generation. 1Sam 15:2;

Jethro brings his wife and two sons to Moses

- 1** When Jethro, the priest of Midian, Moses' father in law, heard of all that Elohim had done for Moses, and for Israel his people, *and* that the YAHWEH had brought Israel out of Egypt; [Exod 2:16](#); [Exod 3:1](#);
- 2** Then Jethro, Moses' father in law, took Zipporah, Moses' wife, after he had sent her back, [\[Exod 2:22\]](#);
- 3** And her two sons; of which the name of the one *was* Gershom; for he said, I have been an alien in a strange land: [Exod 2:22](#); [\[1Chr 23:15\]](#);
- 4** And the name of the other *was* Eliezer; for the Elohim of my father, *said he, was* mine help, and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh:
- 5** And Jethro, Moses' father in law, came with his sons and his wife unto Moses into the wilderness, where he encamped at the mount of Elohim:
- 6** And he said unto Moses, I thy father in law Jethro am come unto you, and thy wife, and her two sons with her.

Moses entertains him, and relates the goodness of the Lord

- 7** And Moses went out to meet his father in law, and did obeisance, and kissed him; and they asked each other of *their* welfare; and they came into the tent.
- 8** And Moses told his father in law all that the YAHWEH had done unto Pharaoh and to the Egyptians for Israel's sake, *and* all the travail that had come upon them by the way, and *how* the YAHWEH delivered them.

Jethro rejoices, blesses Elohim, and offers sacrifice

- 9** And Jethro rejoiced for all the goodness which the YAHWEH had done to Israel, whom he had delivered out of the hand of the Egyptians.
- 10** And Jethro said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH, who has delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of Pharaoh, who has delivered the people from under the hand of the Egyptians. [\[1Sam 15:6\]](#);
- 11** Now I know that the YAHWEH *is* greater than all gods: for in the thing wherein they dealt proudly *he was* above them. [Exod 1:10](#); [Exod 1:16](#); [Exod 1:22](#); [Exod 5:7](#); [Exod 14:18](#);
- 12** And Jethro, Moses' father in law, took a burnt offering and sacrifices for Elohim: and Aaron came, and all the elders of Israel, to eat bread with Moses' father in law before Elohim.

He gives good counsel, which is accepted

- 13** And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses sat to judge the people: and the people stood by Moses from the morning unto the evening.
- 14** And when Moses' father in law saw all that he did to the people, he said, What *is* this thing that you do to the people? why sittest you thyself alone, and all the people stand by you from morning unto evening?
- 15** And Moses said unto his father in law, Because the people come unto me to enquire of Elohim:
- 16** When they have a matter, they come unto me; and I judge between one and another, and I do make *them* know the statutes of Elohim, and his laws.
- 17** And Moses' father in law said unto him, The thing that you do *is* not good. [\[Acts 6:2\]](#);
- 18** You will surely wear away, both you, and this people that *is* with you: for this thing *is* too heavy for you; you are not able to perform it thyself alone. [\[Deut 1:9\]](#);
- 19** Harken now unto my voice, I will give you counsel, and Elohim shall be with you: Be you for the people to Elohim-ward, that you may bring the causes unto Elohim: [\[1Sam 15:6\]](#);

20 And you shall teach them ordinances and laws, and shall show them the way wherein they must walk, and the work that they must do.

21 Moreover you shall provide out of all the people able men, such as fear Elohim, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place *such* over them, *to be* rulers of thousands, *and* rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens: [\[1Sam 8:3\]](#);

22 And let them judge the people at all times: and it shall be, *that* every great matter they shall bring unto you, but every small matter they shall judge: so shall it be easier for thyself, and they shall bear *the burden* with you.

23 If you shall do this thing, and Elohim command you *so*, then you shall be able to endure, and all this people shall also go to their place in peace.

24 So Moses hearkened to the voice of his father in law, and did all that he had said. [Deut 1:9](#);

25 And Moses chose able men out of all Israel, and made them heads over the people, rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.

26 And they judged the people at all times: the hard causes they brought unto Moses, but every small matter they judged themselves.

Jethro departs

27 And Moses let his father in law depart; and he went his way into his own land.

The people arrive at Sinai

1 In the third month, when the children of Israel were gone forth out of the land of Egypt, the same day came they *into* the wilderness of Sinai. [Num 33:15]; [Ps 68:8]; [Ps 136:16];

2 For they were departed from Rephidim, and were come *to* the desert of Sinai, and had pitched in the wilderness; and there Israel camped before the mount.

Elohim's message by Moses unto the people out of the mount

3 And Moses went up unto Elohim, and the YAHWEH called unto him out of the mountain, saying, Thus shall you say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel; [Acts 7:38; [Acts 7:53];

4 You have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and *how* I bore you on eagles' wings, and brought you unto myself. [Deut 29:2; Deut 32:11; [Ps 105:45];

5 Now therefore, if you will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then you shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth *is* mine: [Deut 7:6; Deut 10:14-15; Deut 14:2; Deut 26:18; Ps 135:4; Isa 41:8; Titus 2:14; Ps 24:1; [Deut 4:20]; [Deut 5:2]; [1Kgs 8:53]; [Job 41:11]; [Ps 50:12]; [Jer 7:23]; [Amos 6:1]; [1Cor 10:26]; [Eph 1:14]; [1Pet 2:9];

6 And you shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation. These *are* the words which you shall speak unto the children of Israel. [1Pet 2:9; [Rev 5:10];

7 And Moses came and called for the elders of the people, and laid before their faces all these words which the YAHWEH commanded him.

The people's answer returned again

8 And all the people answered together, and said, All that the YAHWEH has spoken we will do. And Moses returned the words of the people unto the YAHWEH. [Exod 24:3];

The people are prepared against the third day, for the giving of the law

9 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Lo, I come unto you in a thick cloud, that the people may hear when I speak with you, and believe you for ever. And Moses told the words of the people unto the YAHWEH.

10 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Go unto the people, and sanctify them to day and to tomorrow, and let them wash their clothes, [Heb 12:18];

11 And be ready against the third day: for the third day the YAHWEH will come down in the sight of all the people upon mount Sinai.

The mountain must not be touched

12 And you shall set bounds unto the people round about, saying, Take heed to yourselves, *that you* go *not* up into the mount, or touch the border of it: whosoever toucheth the mount shall be surely put to death: [Heb 12:18; [Exod 34:3];

13 There shall not a hand touch it, but he shall surely be stoned, or shot through; whether *it be* beast or man, it shall not live: when the trumpet soundeth long, they shall come up to the mount. [Exod 34:3]; [Heb 12:20];

14 And Moses went down from the mount unto the people, and sanctified the people; and they washed their clothes.

15 And he said unto the people, Be ready against the third day: do not come near *your* wives. [1Sam 21:4; 1Cor 7:5];

The fearful presence of Elohim upon the mount

16 And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud; so that all the people that *was* in the camp trembled. [Heb 12:18](#); [[Deut 5:5](#)];

17 And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet with Elohim; and they stood at the nether part of the mount. [Deut 4:10-11](#); [[Exod 20:21](#)];

18 And mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because the YAHWEH descended upon it in fire: and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly. [Judg 5:4](#); [Ps 68:8](#); [Ps 114:4](#); [Hab 3:10](#); [[Deut 4:11](#)]; [[Judg 5:5](#)]; [[Nah 1:5](#)];

19 And when the voice of the trumpet sounded long, and waxed louder and louder, Moses spoke, and Elohim answered him by a voice.

20 And the YAHWEH came down upon mount Sinai, on the top of the mount: and the YAHWEH called Moses *up* to the top of the mount; and Moses went up. [[Neh 9:13](#)];

21 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Go down, charge the people, lest they break through unto the YAHWEH to gaze, and many of them perish.

22 And let the priests also, which come near to the YAHWEH, sanctify themselves, lest the YAHWEH break forth upon them.

23 And Moses said unto the YAHWEH, The people cannot come up to mount Sinai: for you chargedst us, saying, Set bounds about the mount, and sanctify it.

24 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Away, get you down, and you shall come up, you, and Aaron with you: but let not the priests and the people break through to come up unto the YAHWEH, lest he break forth upon them.

25 So Moses went down unto the people, and spoke unto them.

The ten commandments are spoken by Jehovah

- 1** And Elohim spoke all these words, saying, [\[Neh 9:13\]](#); [\[John 1:17\]](#); [\[John 7:19\]](#);
- 2** I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which have brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. [Exod 13:3](#); [Deut 5:6](#); [Ps 81:10](#);
- 3** You shall have no other gods before me. [\[2Kgs 17:12\]](#); [\[Acts 15:20\]](#); [\[Acts 15:29\]](#); [\[Acts 21:25\]](#);
- 4** You shall not make unto you any graven image, or any likeness *of any thing* that *is* in heaven above, or that *is* in the earth beneath, or that *is* in the water under the earth: [Lev 26:1](#); [Ps 97:7](#);
- 5** You shall not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the YAHWEH thy Elohim *am* a jealous Elohim, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth *generation* of them that hate me; [\[Exod 34:14\]](#); [\[Num 14:18\]](#); [\[Deut 4:24\]](#); [\[Deut 5:9\]](#); [\[Deut 7:9\]](#); [\[Isa 14:21\]](#); [\[Nah 1:2\]](#);
- 6** And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments. [\[Exod 34:7\]](#); [\[Neh 1:5\]](#); [\[Luke 1:50\]](#); [\[Jas 2:5\]](#);
- 7** You shall not take the name of the YAHWEH thy Elohim in vain; for the YAHWEH will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain. [Lev 9:12](#); [Matt 5:33](#); [\[Lev 19:12\]](#); [\[Mal 3:5\]](#);
- 8** Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. [Ezek 20:12](#); [\[Exod 23:12\]](#); [\[Exod 31:14\]](#); [\[Exod 35:2\]](#); [\[Neh 13:17\]](#); [\[Jer 17:22\]](#);
- 9** Six days shall you labour, and do all thy work: [Exod 23:12](#); [Exod 34:21](#); [Luke 13:14](#); [\[Lev 23:3\]](#);
- 10** But the seventh day *is* the Sabbath of the YAHWEH thy Elohim: *in it* you shall not do any work, you, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that *is* within thy gates: [\[Neh 10:31\]](#); [\[Matt 12:2\]](#); [\[Mark 2:24\]](#); [\[Luke 6:2\]](#); [\[John 5:10\]](#);
- 11** For *in* six days the YAHWEH made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them *is*, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the YAHWEH blessed the Sabbath day, and hallowed it. [Gen 2:2](#); [\[Exod 31:17\]](#); [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#); [\[Heb 4:4\]](#);
- 12** Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you. [Matt 15:4](#); [Eph 6:2](#); [\[Lev 19:3\]](#); [\[Matt 19:18\]](#); [\[Mark 7:10\]](#);
- 13** You shall not kill. [Matt 5:21](#); [\[Mark 10:19\]](#); [\[Luke 18:20\]](#); [\[Rom 13:9\]](#);
- 14** You shall not commit adultery. [Matt 5:27](#); [\[Jas 2:11\]](#);
- 15** You shall not steal. [\[Lev 19:11\]](#);
- 16** You shall not bear false witness against thy neighbour.
- 17** You shall not covet thy neighbour's house, you shall not covet thy neighbour's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that *is* thy neighbour's. [Rom 7:7](#);

The people are afraid, but Moses comforts them

- 18** And all the people saw the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the noise of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking: and when the people saw *it*, they removed, and stood afar off. [\[Deut 5:5\]](#);
- 19** And they said unto Moses, Speak you with us, and we will hear: but let not Elohim speak with us, lest we die. [Deut 5:25](#); [Heb 12:19](#); [\[Deut 5:27\]](#); [\[Deut 18:16\]](#);
- 20** And Moses said unto the people, Fear not: for Elohim is come to prove you, and that his fear may be before your faces, that you sin not.

Idolatry is forbidden

- 21** And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where Elohim *was*. [Exod 19:17](#); [Heb 12:18](#); [\[1Kgs 8:12\]](#);

22 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Thus you shall say unto the children of Israel, you have seen that I have talked with you from heaven.

Of what sort the altar should be

23 You shall not make with me gods of silver, neither shall you make unto you gods of gold.

24 An altar of earth you shall make unto me, and shall sacrifice thereon thy burnt offerings, and thy peace offerings, thy sheep, and thine oxen: in all places where I record my name I will come unto you, and I will bless you. [Exod 27:1](#); [Exod 38:1](#);

25 And if you will make me an altar of stone, you shall not build it of hewn stone: for if you lift up thy tool upon it, you have polluted it. [Deut 27:5](#); [Josh 8:30-31](#); [[Josh 8:31](#)];

26 Neither shall you go up by steps unto mine altar, that thy nakedness be not discovered thereon.

Laws for men servants

- 1** Now these *are* the judgments which you shall set before them.
- 2** If you buy an Hebrew servant, six years he shall serve: and in the seventh he shall go out free for nothing. [Deut 15:12](#); [Jer 34:14](#); [\[Lev 25:39\]](#); [\[Deut 15:1\]](#); [\[Jer 34:8\]](#);
- 3** If he came in by himself, he shall go out by himself: if he were married, then his wife shall go out with him.
- 4** If his master have given him a wife, and she have born him sons or daughters; the wife and her children shall be her master's, and he shall go out by himself.

For the servant whose ear is bored

- 5** And if the servant shall plainly say, I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free: [Deut 15:16](#);
- 6** Then his master shall bring him unto the judges; he shall also bring him to the door, or unto the door post; and his master shall bore his ear through with an awl; and he shall serve him for ever. [\[Deut 15:17\]](#);

For women servants

- 7** And if a man sell his daughter to be a maidservant, she shall not go out as the menservants do.
- 8** If she please not her master, who has betrothed her to himself, then shall he let her be redeemed: to sell her unto a strange nation he shall have no power, seeing he has dealt deceitfully with her.
- 9** And if he have betrothed her unto his son, he shall deal with her after the manner of daughters.
- 10** If he take him another *wife*; her food, her raiment, and her duty of marriage, shall he not diminish.
- 11** And if he do not these three unto her, then shall she go out free without money.

For manslaughter

- 12** He that smiteth a man, so that he die, shall be surely put to death. [Lev 24:17](#); [\[Gen 9:5\]](#); [\[Deut 19:11\]](#); [\[Mark 10:19\]](#);
- 13** And if a man lie not in wait, but Elohim deliver *him* into his hand; then I will appoint you a place whither he shall flee. [\[Deut 19:2\]](#); [\[Deut 19:4\]](#); [\[Josh 20:2\]](#);
- 14** But if a man come presumptuously upon his neighbour, to slay him with guile; you shall take him from mine altar, that he may die. [\[Deut 19:11\]](#);
- 15** And he that smiteth his father, or his mother, shall be surely put to death. [Matt 15:4](#);

For stealers of men

- 16** And he that stealeth a man, and selleth him, or if he be found in his hand, he shall surely be put to death. [\[Deut 24:7\]](#);

For cursers of parents

- 17** And he that curses his father, or his mother, shall surely be put to death. [Lev 20:9](#); [Prov 20:20](#); [Matt 15:4](#); [Mark 7:10](#);

For smiters

- 18** And if men strive together, and one smite another with a stone, or with *his* fist, and he die not, but keepeth *his* bed:
- 19** If he rise again, and walk abroad upon his staff, then shall he that smote *him* be quit: only he shall pay *for* the loss of his time, and shall cause *him* to be thoroughly healed.
- 20** And if a man smite his servant, or his maid, with a rod, and he die under his hand; he shall be surely punished.
- 21** Notwithstanding, if he continue a day or two, he shall not be punished: for he *is* his money.

For a hurt by chance

22 If men strive, and hurt a woman with child, so that her fruit depart *from her*, and yet no mischief follow: he shall be surely punished, according as the woman's husband will lay upon him; and he shall pay as the judges *determine*.

23 And if *any* mischief follow, then you shall give life for life, [\[Deut 19:21\]](#);

24 Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, [Lev 24:20](#); [Deut 19:21](#); [Matt 5:38](#);

25 Burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.

26 And if a man smite the eye of his servant, or the eye of his maid, that it perish; he shall let him go free for his eye's sake.

27 And if he smite out his manservant's tooth, or his maidservant's tooth; he shall let him go free for his tooth's sake.

For an ox that gores

28 If an ox gore a man or a woman, that they die: then the ox shall be surely stoned, and his flesh shall not be eaten; but the owner of the ox *shall be* quit. [Gen 9:5](#);

29 But if the ox were wont to push with his horn in time past, and it has been testified to his owner, and he has not kept him in, but that he has killed a man or a woman; the ox shall be stoned, and his owner also shall be put to death.

30 If there be laid on him a sum of money, then he shall give for the ransom of his life whatsoever is laid upon him.

31 Whether he have gored a son, or have gored a daughter, according to this judgment shall it be done unto him.

32 If the ox shall push a manservant or a maidservant; he shall give unto their master thirty shekels of silver, and the ox shall be stoned.

For him that is an occasion of harm

33 And if a man shall open a pit, or if a man shall dig a pit, and not cover it, and an ox or an ass fall therein;

34 The owner of the pit shall make *it* good, *and* give money unto the owner of them; and the dead *beast* shall be his.

35 And if one man's ox hurt another's, that he die; then they shall sell the live ox, and divide the money of it; and the dead *ox* also they shall divide.

36 Or if it be known that the ox has used to push in time past, and his owner has not kept him in; he shall surely pay ox for ox; and the dead shall be his own.

Of theft

- 1** If a man shall steal an ox, or a sheep, and kill it, or sell it; he shall restore five oxen for an ox, and four sheep for a sheep. [2Sam 12:6](#); [\[Prov 6:31\]](#);
- 2** If a thief be found breaking up, and be smitten that he die, *there shall* no blood *be shed* for him.
- 3** If the sun be risen upon him, *there shall be* blood *shed* for him; *for* he should make full restitution; if he have nothing, then he shall be sold for his theft.
- 4** If the theft be certainly found in his hand alive, whether it be ox, or ass, or sheep; he shall restore double. [\[Prov 6:31\]](#);

Of damage

- 5** If a man shall cause a field or vineyard to be eaten, and shall put in his beast, and shall feed in another man's field; of the best of his own field, and of the best of his own vineyard, shall he make restitution.
- 6** If fire break out, and catch in thorns, so that the stacks of corn, or the standing corn, or the field, be consumed *therewith*; he that kindled the fire shall surely make restitution.

Of trespasses

- 7** If a man shall deliver unto his neighbour money or stuff to keep, and it be stolen out of the man's house; if the thief be found, let him pay double.
- 8** If the thief be not found, then the master of the house shall be brought unto the judges, *to see* whether he have put his hand unto his neighbour's goods.
- 9** For all manner of trespass, *whether it be* for ox, for ass, for sheep, for raiment, *or* for any manner of lost thing, which *another* challengeth to be his, the cause of both parties shall come before the judges; *and* whom the judges shall condemn, he shall pay double unto his neighbour.
- 10** If a man deliver unto his neighbour an ass, or an ox, or a sheep, or any beast, to keep; and it die, or be hurt, or driven away, no man seeing *it*:
- 11** *Then* shall an oath of the YAHWEH be between them both, that he has not put his hand unto his neighbour's goods; and the owner of it shall accept *thereof*, and he shall not make *it* good. [\[Heb 6:16\]](#);
- 12** And if it be stolen from him, he shall make restitution unto the owner thereof.
- 13** If it be torn in pieces, *then* let him bring it *for* witness, *and* he shall not make good that which was torn.

Of borrowing

- 14** And if a man borrow *ought* of his neighbour, and it be hurt, or die, the owner thereof *being* not with it, he shall surely make *it* good.
- 15** *But* if the owner thereof *be* with it, he shall not make *it* good: if it *be* a hired *thing*, it came for his hire.

Of fornication

- 16** And if a man entice a maid that is not betrothed, and lie with her, he shall surely endow her to be his wife. [\[Deut 22:29\]](#);
- 17** If her father utterly refuse to give her unto him, he shall pay money according to the dowry of virgins.

Of witchcraft

- 18** *you* shall not suffer a witch to live. [Deut 18:10-11](#);

Of bestiality

19 Whosoever lies with a beast shall surely be put to death. [Lev 18:23](#); [Lev 20:15](#);

Of idolatry

20 He that sacrificeth unto *any* god, save unto the YAHWEH only, he shall be utterly destroyed. [Deut 17:2-5](#);

Of strangers, widows, and fatherless

21 You shall neither vex a stranger, nor oppress him: for you were strangers in the land of Egypt. [Lev 19:34](#); [\[Exod 23:9\]](#); [\[Lev 19:33\]](#); [\[Deut 24:17\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:7\]](#);

22 You shall not afflict any widow, or fatherless child. [Zech 7:10](#); [\[Prov 22:23\]](#); [\[Mal 3:5\]](#);

23 If you afflict them in any wise, and they cry at all unto me, I will surely hear their cry;

24 And my wrath shall wax hot, and I will kill you with the sword; and your wives shall be widows, and your children fatherless.

Of usury

25 If you lend money to *any of* my people *that is* poor by you, you shall not be to him as an usurer, neither shall you lay upon him usury. [Lev 25:36-37](#); [Deut 23:19-20](#); [Ps 15:5](#); [Prov 28:8](#); [Ezek 18:8](#); [\[Lev 25:36\]](#); [\[Deut 23:19\]](#);

Of pledges

26 If you at all take thy neighbour's raiment to pledge, you shall deliver it unto him by that the sun goes down: [Deut 24:12-13](#); [\[Deut 24:13\]](#); [\[Job 22:6\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:7\]](#);

27 For that *is* his covering only, it *is* his raiment for his skin: wherein shall he sleep? and it shall come to pass, when he cries unto me, that I will hear; for I *am* gracious.

Of reverence to magistrates

28 You shall not revile Elohim, nor curse the ruler of thy people. [Acts 23:3-5](#); [\[Eccl 10:20\]](#); [\[Acts 23:5\]](#);

Of the first fruits

29 You shall not delay *to offer* the first of thy ripe fruits, and of thy liquors: the firstborn of thy sons shall you give unto me. [Exod 13:2](#); [Exod 13:12](#); [\[Exod 34:19\]](#); [\[Lev 27:26\]](#); [\[Num 3:13\]](#); [\[Num 8:17\]](#); [\[Num 18:15\]](#); [\[Deut 15:19\]](#); [\[Ezek 44:30\]](#);

30 Likewise shall you do with thine oxen, *and* with thy sheep: seven days it shall be with his dam; on the eighth day you shall give it me. [Exod 23:19](#); [Lev 22:27](#); [Ezek 44:30](#); [\[Exod 13:12\]](#);

Of torn flesh

31 And you shall be holy men unto me: neither shall you eat *any* flesh *that is* torn of beasts in the field; you shall cast it to the dogs. [Lev 22:8](#); [Ezek 44:31](#); [\[Lev 17:15\]](#);

Of slander, false witness, and partiality

1 You shall not raise a false report: put not thine hand with the wicked to be an unrighteous witness. [\[Lev 19:16\]; \[Prov 14:5\]; \[John 7:51\];](#)

2 You shall not follow a multitude to *do* evil; neither shall you speak in a cause to decline after many to wrest *judgment*:

3 Neither shall you countenance a poor man in his cause. [Lev 19:15; \[Prov 24:23\];](#)

Of charitableness

4 If you meet thine enemy's ox or his ass going astray, you shall surely bring it back to him again. [Deut 22:1-2; Luke 6:27; Phil 2:4; \[Deut 22:1\]; \[Prov 25:21\]; \[Matt 12:11\];](#)

5 If you see the ass of him that hateth you lying under his burden, and wouldest forbear to help him, you shall surely help with him. [Deut 22:4; \[Luke 13:15\]; \[Luke 14:5\];](#)

Of justice in judgment

6 You shall not wrest the judgment of thy poor in his cause. [Deut 27:19; \[Prov 22:22\]; \[Prov 24:23\];](#)

7 Keep you far from a false matter; and the innocent and righteous slay you not: for I will not justify the wicked. [\[Prov 17:15\];](#)

Of taking bribes

8 And you shall take no gift: for the gift blindeth the wise, and perverteth the words of the righteous. [Deut 16:19; 1Sam 8:3; Prov 19:6; Eccl 7:7; \[1Tim 6:10\]; \[Heb 13:5\];](#)

Of oppressing a stranger

9 Also you shall not oppress a stranger: for you know the heart of a stranger, seeing you were strangers in the land of Egypt. [Exod 22:21; Lev 19:33; Deut 24:17;](#)

Of the year of rest

10 And six years you shall sow thy land, and shall gather in the fruits thereof: [\[Lev 25:2\]; \[Neh 10:31\];](#)

11 But the seventh year you shall let it rest and lie still; that the poor of thy people may eat: and what they leave the beasts of the field shall eat. In like manner you shall deal with thy vineyard, *and* with thy oliveyard. [Lev 25:4-5;](#)

Of the Sabbath

12 Six days you shall do thy work, and on the seventh day you shall rest: that thine ox and thine ass may rest, and the son of thy handmaid, and the stranger, may be refreshed. [Exod 20:8; Exod 31:13-14; \[Exod 20:9\]; \[Lev 23:3\]; \[Deut 5:12\]; \[Jer 17:22\];](#)

Of idolatry

13 And in all *things* that I have said unto you be circumspect: and make no mention of the name of other gods, neither let it be heard out of thy mouth. [Num 32:38; Josh 23:7; Ps 16:4; Hos 2:17; Zech 13:2;](#)

Of the three feasts

14 Three times you shall keep a feast unto me in the year. [\[1Sam 1:3\]; \[2Chr 8:13\];](#)

15 You shall keep the feast of unleavened bread: (thou shall eat unleavened bread seven days, as I commanded you, in the time appointed of the month Abib; for in it you camest out from Egypt: and none shall appear before me empty:) [Exod 12:14-15; Exod 13:3; Exod 34:20; Deut 16:16; \[Exod 13:4\]; \[Exod 34:18\]; \[Lev 23:5\]; \[Num 28:16\]; \[Ezek 45:21\]; \[Luke 2:41\];](#)

16 And the feast of harvest, the firstfruits of thy labours, which you have sown in the field: and the feast of ingathering, *which is* in the end of the year, when you have gathered in thy labours out of the field. [\[Exod 34:22\]; \[Lev 23:34\]; \[Deut 16:9\]; \[Deut 16:13\]; \[Neh 8:14\];](#)

17 Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord GOD. [\[Exod 34:23\]](#); [\[Deut 16:16\]](#); [\[Luke 2:41\]](#);

Of the blood and the fat of the sacrifice

18 You shall not offer the blood of my sacrifice with leavened bread; neither shall the fat of my sacrifice remain until the morning. [\[Exod 34:25\]](#);

19 The first of the firstfruits of thy land you shall bring into the house of the YAHWEH thy Elohim. you shall not seethe a kid in his mother's milk. [Exod 34:26](#); [\[Exod 22:30\]](#); [\[Deut 14:21\]](#); [\[Deut 26:2\]](#); [\[Neh 10:35\]](#); [\[Prov 3:9\]](#);

An angel is promised, with a blessing, if they obey him

20 Behold, I send an Angel before you, to keep you in the way, and to bring you into the place which I have prepared. [Exod 33:2](#);

21 Beware of him, and obey his voice, provoke him not; for he will not pardon your transgressions: for my name *is* in him.

22 But if you shall indeed obey his voice, and do all that I speak; then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies, and an adversary unto thine adversaries. [Gen 12:3](#); [\[Isa 41:11\]](#); [\[Jer 30:16\]](#);

23 For mine Angel shall go before you, and bring you in unto the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites: and I will cut them off. [\[Josh 5:13\]](#);

24 You shall not bow down to their gods, nor serve them, nor do after their works: but you shall utterly overthrow them, and quite break down their images. [Lev 18:3](#); [\[Deut 7:5\]](#); [\[2Kgs 23:14\]](#);

25 And you shall serve the YAHWEH your Elohim, and he shall bless thy bread, and thy water; and I will take sickness away from the midst of you. [Exod 15:26](#); [Deut 7:15](#);

26 There shall nothing cast their young, nor be barren, in thy land: the number of thy days I will fulfil. [Deut 7:14](#);

27 I will send my fear before you, and will destroy all the people to whom you shall come, and I will make all thine enemies turn their backs unto you. [Exod 14:24](#); [Josh 10:10](#); [\[Deut 11:25\]](#); [\[Josh 23:5\]](#);

28 And I will send hornets before you, which shall drive out the Hivite, the Canaanite, and the Hittite, from before you. [Deut 7:20](#); [Josh 24:12](#);

29 I will not drive them out from before you in one year; lest the land become desolate, and the beast of the field multiply against you.

30 By little and little I will drive them out from before you, until you be increased, and inherit the land.

31 And I will set thy bounds from the Red sea even unto the sea of the Philistines, and from the desert unto the river: for I will deliver the inhabitants of the land into your hand; and you shall drive them out before you. [Num 34:3-4](#); [\[Deut 12:20\]](#);

32 You shall make no covenant with them, nor with their gods. [Exod 34:12](#); [Exod 34:15](#); [Deut 7:2](#); [\[Josh 11:15\]](#); [\[Acts 10:28\]](#); [\[Acts 11:3\]](#);

33 They shall not dwell in thy land, lest they make you sin against me: for if you serve their gods, it will surely be a snare unto you. [Josh 23:13](#); [Judg 2:3](#);

Moses is called up into the mountain

1 And he said unto Moses, Come up unto the YAHWEH, you, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel; and worship you afar off.

2 And Moses alone shall come near the YAHWEH: but they shall not come nigh; neither shall the people go up with him.

The people promise obedience

3 And Moses came and told the people all the words of the YAHWEH, and all the judgments: and all the people answered with one voice, and said, All the words which the YAHWEH has said will we do. [Exod 19:8](#); [Exod 24:7](#); [Deut 5:27](#); [\[John 7:19\]](#); [\[Acts 7:53\]](#);

Moses builds an altar, and twelve pillars

4 And Moses wrote all the words of the YAHWEH, and rose up early in the morning, and built an altar under the hill, and twelve pillars, according to the twelve tribes of Israel.

5 And he sent young men of the children of Israel, which offered burnt offerings, and sacrificed peace offerings of oxen unto the YAHWEH.

He sprinkles the blood of the covenant

6 And Moses took half of the blood, and put *it* in basins; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the altar.

7 And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the audience of the people: and they said, All that the YAHWEH has said will we do, and be obedient. [\[Exod 24:3\]](#);

8 And Moses took the blood, and sprinkled *it* on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant, which the YAHWEH has made with you concerning all these words. [Heb 9:20](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [\[Matt 26:28\]](#);

The glory of Elohim appears

9 Then went up Moses, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel:

10 And they saw the Elohim of Israel: and *there was* under his feet as it were a paved work of a sapphire stone, and as it were the body of heaven in *his* clearness.

11 And upon the nobles of the children of Israel he laid not his hand: also they saw Elohim, and did eat and drink.

12 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Come up to me into the mount, and be there: and I will give you tables of stone, and a law, and commandments which I have written; that you may teach them. [\[2Cor 3:3\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:7\]](#);

13 And Moses rose up, and his minister Joshua: and Moses went up into the mount of Elohim.

Aaron and Hur have the charge of the people

14 And he said unto the elders, Tarry you here for us, until we come again unto you: and, behold, Aaron and Hur *are* with you: if any man have any matters to do, let him come unto them.

Moses goes into the mountain, where he continues forty days and forty nights

15 And Moses went up into the mount, and a cloud covered the mount.

16 And the glory of the YAHWEH abode upon mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days: and the seventh day he called unto Moses out of the midst of the cloud.

17 And the sight of the glory of the YAHWEH *was* like devouring fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the children of Israel. [Heb 12:29](#);

18 And Moses went into the midst of the cloud, and got him up into the mount: and Moses was in the mount forty days and forty nights. [\[Exod 34:28\]](#); [\[Deut 9:9\]](#);

What the Israelites were to offer for the formation of the tabernacle

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, that they bring me an offering: of every man that giveth it willingly with his heart you shall take my offering. [Exod 35:5](#); [1Chr 29:3](#); [1Chr 29:5](#); [1Chr 29:9](#); [1Chr 29:14](#); [Ezra 2:68](#); [Ezra 3:5](#); [Neh 11:2](#); [\[2Cor 9:7\]](#);
- 3** And this *is* the offering which you shall take of them; gold, and silver, and brass,
- 4** And blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' *hair*, [\[Exod 35:6\]](#);
- 5** And rams' skins dyed red, and badgers' skins, and shittim wood, [\[Exod 35:7\]](#);
- 6** Oil for the light, spices for anointing oil, and for sweet incense, [\[Exod 35:8\]](#); [\[Exod 35:28\]](#);
- 7** Onyx stones, and stones to be set in the ephod, and in the breastplate. [Exod 28:4](#); [\[Exod 35:9\]](#);
- 8** And let them make me a sanctuary; that I may dwell among them. [\[Exod 29:45\]](#);
- 9** According to all that I show you, *after* the pattern of the tabernacle, and the pattern of all the instruments thereof, even so shall you make *it*. [\[Exod 26:30\]](#);

The form of the ark

- 10** And they shall make an ark *of* shittim wood: two cubits and a half *shall be* the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof. [Exod 37:1](#); [Heb 9:1](#); [\[Heb 9:4\]](#);
- 11** And you shall overlay it with pure gold, within and without shall you overlay it, and shall make upon it a crown of gold round about.
- 12** And you shall cast four rings of gold for it, and put *them* in the four corners thereof; and two rings *shall be* in the one side of it, and two rings in the other side of it.
- 13** And you shall make staves *of* shittim wood, and overlay them with gold.
- 14** And you shall put the staves into the rings by the sides of the ark, that the ark may be borne with them. [\[1Chr 15:15\]](#);
- 15** The staves shall be in the rings of the ark: they shall not be taken from it. [1Kgs 8:8](#);
- 16** And you shall put into the ark the testimony which I shall give you. [Heb 9:4](#);

The mercy seat, with the cherubims

- 17** And you shall make a mercy seat *of* pure gold: two cubits and a half *shall be* the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof. [Exod 37:6](#); [\[Rom 3:25\]](#);
- 18** And you shall make two cherubims *of* gold, *of* beaten work shall you make them, in the two ends of the mercy seat. [Heb 9:5](#); [\[1Kgs 6:23\]](#);
- 19** And make one cherub on the one end, and the other cherub on the other end: *even* of the mercy seat shall you make the cherubims on the two ends thereof. [\[Exod 37:8\]](#);
- 20** And the cherubims shall stretch forth *their* wings on high, covering the mercy seat with their wings, and their faces *shall look* one to another; toward the mercy seat shall the faces of the cherubims be. [Heb 9:5](#); [\[Exod 37:9\]](#); [\[1Kgs 6:27\]](#);
- 21** And you shall put the mercy seat above upon the ark; and in the ark you shall put the testimony that I shall give you. [Heb 9:4-5](#);
- 22** And there I will meet with you, and I will commune with you from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims which *are* upon the ark of the testimony, of all *things* which I will give you in commandment unto the children of Israel. [Num 7:89](#); [\[Num 17:4\]](#); [\[Heb 9:5\]](#);

The table of show bread, with the furniture thereof

- 23** You shall also make a table *of* shittim wood: two cubits *shall be* the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof. [\[Exod 35:13\]](#); [\[Exod 37:10\]](#); [\[1Kgs 7:48\]](#);
- 24** And you shall overlay it with pure gold, and make thereto a crown of gold round about. [\[Exod 37:11\]](#);
- 25** And you shall make unto it a border of a hand breadth round about, and you shall make a golden crown to the border thereof round about. [\[Exod 37:12\]](#);
- 26** And you shall make for it four rings of gold, and put the rings in the four corners that *are* on the four feet thereof. [\[Exod 37:13\]](#);
- 27** Over against the border shall the rings be for places of the staves to bear the table. [\[Exod 37:14\]](#);
- 28** And you shall make the staves *of* shittim wood, and overlay them with gold, that the table may be borne with them.
- 29** And you shall make the dishes thereof, and spoons thereof, and covers thereof, and bowls thereof, to cover withal: *of* pure gold shall you make them. [\[Exod 37:16\]](#);
- 30** And you shall set upon the table showbread before me always. [\[Exod 35:13\]](#); [\[Exod 40:23\]](#); [\[Num 4:7\]](#);

The golden candlestick, with the instruments thereof

- 31** And you shall make a lampstand *of* pure gold: *of* beaten work shall the lampstand be made: his shaft, and his branches, his bowls, his knops, and his flowers, shall be of the same. [Exod 37:17](#); [\[Num 4:9\]](#); [\[Num 8:4\]](#);
- 32** And six branches shall come out of the sides of it; three branches of the candlestick out of the one side, and three branches of the candlestick out of the other side: [\[Exod 37:18\]](#);
- 33** Three bowls made like unto almonds, *with* a knop and a flower in one branch; and three bowls made like almonds in the other branch, *with* a knop and a flower: so in the six branches that come out of the candlestick. [\[Exod 37:19\]](#);
- 34** And in the candlestick *shall be* four bowls made like unto almonds, *with* their knops and their flowers. [\[Exod 37:20\]](#);
- 35** And *there shall be* a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, according to the six branches that proceed out of the candlestick.
- 36** Their knops and their branches shall be of the same: all it *shall be* one beaten work *of* pure gold. [\[Exod 37:22\]](#);
- 37** And you shall make the seven lamps thereof: and they shall light the lamps thereof, that they may give light over against it. [\[Exod 37:23\]](#); [\[Num 8:2\]](#);
- 38** And the tongs thereof, and the snuffdishes thereof, *shall be of* pure gold. [\[Num 4:9\]](#);
- 39** *Of* a talent of pure gold shall he make it, with all these vessels. [\[Exod 37:24\]](#);
- 40** And look that you make *them* after their pattern, which was showed you in the mount. [Acts 7:44](#); [Heb 8:5](#); [\[Exod 26:30\]](#);

The ten curtains of the tabernacle

- 1** Moreover you shall make the tabernacle *with* ten curtains *of* fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet: *with* cherubims of cunning work shall you make them. [Exod 36:8](#); [\[Exod 35:35\]](#); [\[Heb 9:2\]](#);
- 2** The length of one curtain *shall be* eight and twenty cubits, and the breadth of one curtain four cubits: and every one of the curtains shall have one measure. [\[Exod 36:9\]](#);
- 3** The five curtains shall be coupled together one to another; and *other* five curtains *shall be* coupled one to another.
- 4** And you shall make loops of blue upon the edge of the one curtain from the selvedge in the coupling; and likewise shall you make in the uttermost edge of *another* curtain, in the coupling of the second. [\[Exod 36:11\]](#);
- 5** Fifty loops shall you make in the one curtain, and fifty loops shall you make in the edge of the curtain that *is* in the coupling of the second; that the loops may take hold one of another. [\[Exod 36:12\]](#);
- 6** And you shall make fifty taches of gold, and couple the curtains together with the taches: and it shall be one tabernacle. [\[Exod 36:13\]](#);

The eleven curtains of goats' hair, and the covering of rams' and badgers' skins

- 7** And you shall make curtains *of* goats' *hair* to be a covering upon the tabernacle: eleven curtains shall you make. [Exod 36:14](#);
- 8** The length of one curtain *shall be* thirty cubits, and the breadth of one curtain four cubits: and the eleven curtains *shall be all* of one measure.
- 9** And you shall couple five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves, and shall double the sixth curtain in the forefront of the tabernacle.
- 10** And you shall make fifty loops on the edge of the one curtain *that is* outmost in the coupling, and fifty loops in the edge of the curtain which coupleth the second. [\[Exod 36:12\]](#);
- 11** And you shall make fifty taches of brass, and put the taches into the loops, and couple the tent together, that it may be one. [\[Exod 36:18\]](#);
- 12** And the remnant that remaineth of the curtains of the tent, the half curtain that remaineth, shall hang over the backside of the tabernacle.
- 13** And a cubit on the one side, and a cubit on the other side of that which remaineth in the length of the curtains of the tent, it shall hang over the sides of the tabernacle on this side and on that side, to cover it.
- 14** And you shall make a covering for the tent *of* rams' skins dyed red, and a covering above *of* badgers' skins. [Exod 36:19](#);

The boards of the tabernacle, with their sockets and bars

- 15** And you shall make boards for the tabernacle *of* shittim wood standing up. [\[Exod 36:20\]](#); [\[Num 4:31\]](#);
- 16** Ten cubits *shall be* the length of a board, and a cubit and a half *shall be* the breadth of one board. [\[Exod 36:21\]](#);
- 17** Two tenons *shall there be* in one board, set in order one against another: thus shall you make for all the boards of the tabernacle. [\[Exod 36:22\]](#);
- 18** And you shall make the boards for the tabernacle, twenty boards on the south side southward. [\[Exod 36:23\]](#);
- 19** And you shall make forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards; two sockets under one board for his two tenons, and two sockets under another board for his two tenons. [\[Exod 36:24\]](#);

20 And for the second side of the tabernacle on the north side *there shall be* twenty boards: [Exod 36:25];
21 And their forty sockets *of* silver; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board. [Exod 36:26];
22 And for the sides of the tabernacle westward you shall make six boards. [Exod 36:27];
23 And two boards shall you make for the corners of the tabernacle in the two sides. [Exod 36:28];
24 And they shall be coupled together beneath, and they shall be coupled together above the head of it unto one ring: thus shall it be for them both; they shall be for the two corners. [Exod 36:29];
25 And they shall be eight boards, and their sockets *of* silver, sixteen sockets; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board. [Exod 36:30];
26 And you shall make bars *of* shittim wood; five for the boards of the one side of the tabernacle, [Exod 35:11]; [Exod 36:31];
27 And five bars for the boards of the other side of the tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the side of the tabernacle, for the two sides westward. [Exod 36:32];
28 And the middle bar in the midst of the boards shall reach from end to end. [Exod 36:33];
29 And you shall overlay the boards with gold, and make their rings *of* gold *for* places for the bars: and you shall overlay the bars with gold. [Exod 36:34];
30 And you shall rear up the tabernacle according to the fashion thereof which was showed you in the mount. [Exod 25:9; Exod 25:40; Acts 7:44; Heb 8:5];

The vail for the ark

31 And you shall make a vail *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen of cunning work: with cherubims shall it be made: [Exod 36:35];
32 And you shall hang it upon four pillars of shittim *wood* overlaid with gold: their hooks *shall be of* gold, upon the four sockets of silver. [Exod 36:36];
33 And you shall hang up the vail under the taches, that you may bring in thither within the vail the ark of the testimony: and the vail shall divide unto you between the holy *place* and the most holy.
34 And you shall put the mercy seat upon the ark of the testimony in the most holy *place*.
35 And you shall set the table without the vail, and the candlestick over against the table on the side of the tabernacle toward the south: and you shall put the table on the north side. [Exod 40:4];

The hanging for the door

36 And you shall make a hanging for the door of the tent, *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, wrought with needlework. [Exod 36:37; [Exod 35:15]; [Exod 40:5];
37 And you shall make for the hanging five pillars *of* shittim *wood*, and overlay them with gold, *and* their hooks *shall be of* gold: and you shall cast five sockets of brass for them. [Exod 36:38];

The altar of burnt offering, with the vessels thereof

1 And you shall make an altar *of* shittim wood, five cubits long, and five cubits broad; the altar shall be foursquare: and the height thereof *shall be* three cubits. [Exod 38:1](#); [\[Exod 20:24\]](#);

2 And you shall make the horns of it upon the four corners thereof: his horns shall be of the same: and you shall overlay it with brass. [\[Exod 38:2\]](#);

3 And you shall make his pans to receive his ashes, and his shovels, and his basins, and his fleshhooks, and his firepans: all the vessels thereof you shall make *of* brass. [\[Exod 38:3\]](#);

4 And you shall make for it a grate of network *of* brass; and upon the net shall you make four brasen rings in the four corners thereof. [\[Exod 35:16\]](#); [\[Exod 38:4\]](#);

5 And you shall put it under the compass of the altar beneath, that the net may be even to the midst of the altar.

6 And you shall make staves for the altar, staves *of* shittim wood, and overlay them with brass.

7 And the staves shall be put into the rings, and the staves shall be upon the two sides of the altar, to bear it.

8 Hollow with boards shall you make it: as it was showed you in the mount, so shall they make *it*. [\[Exod 38:7\]](#);

The court of the tabernacle inclosed with hangings and pillars

9 And you shall make the court of the tabernacle: for the south side southward *there shall be* hangings for the court *of* fine twined linen of a hundred cubits long for one side: [Exod 38:9](#); [\[Exod 35:17\]](#);

10 And the twenty pillars thereof and their twenty sockets *shall be of* brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets *shall be of* silver.

11 And likewise for the north side in length *there shall be* hangings of a hundred *cubits* long, and his twenty pillars and their twenty sockets *of* brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets *of* silver.

12 And *for* the breadth of the court on the west side *shall be* hangings of fifty cubits: their pillars ten, and their sockets ten.

13 And the breadth of the court on the east side eastward *shall be* fifty cubits.

14 The hangings of one side *of the gate shall be* fifteen cubits: their pillars three, and their sockets three.

15 And on the other side *shall be* hangings fifteen *cubits*: their pillars three, and their sockets three.

16 And for the gate of the court *shall be* a hanging of twenty cubits, *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, wrought with needlework: *and* their pillars *shall be* four, and their sockets four. [\[Exod 35:17\]](#); [\[Exod 40:8\]](#);

17 All the pillars round about the court *shall be* filleted with silver; their hooks *shall be of* silver, and their sockets *of* brass.

The measure of the court, and the furniture of brass

18 The length of the court *shall be* a hundred cubits, and the breadth fifty every where, and the height five cubits *of* fine twined linen, and their sockets *of* brass.

19 All the vessels of the tabernacle in all the service thereof, and all the pins thereof, and all the pins of the court, *shall be of* brass. [\[Exod 35:18\]](#);

The oil for the lamp

20 And you shall command the children of Israel, that they bring you pure oil olive beaten for the light, to cause the lamp to burn always. [Lev 24:2](#); [\[Exod 40:4\]](#);

21 In the tabernacle of the congregation without the vail, which *is* before the testimony, Aaron and his sons shall order it from evening to morning before the YAHWEH: *it shall be* a statute for ever unto their generations on the behalf of the children of Israel.

Aaron and his sons are set apart for the priest's office

1 And take you unto you Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office, *even* Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's sons. [Heb 5:4](#); [\[Exod 35:19\]](#); [\[Lev 8:2\]](#); [\[1Chr 23:13\]](#); [\[2Chr 29:11\]](#);

Holy garments are appointed

2 And you shall make holy garments for Aaron thy brother for glory and for beauty.

3 And you shall speak unto all *that are* wise hearted, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, that they may make Aaron's garments to consecrate him, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

4 And these *are* the garments which they shall make; a breastplate, and an ephod, and a robe, and a brodered coat, a mitre, and a girdle: and they shall make holy garments for Aaron thy brother, and his sons, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office. [\[Exod 25:7\]](#); [\[Exod 28:39\]](#); [\[Lev 8:7\]](#);

5 And they shall take gold, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen.

The ephod and girdle

6 And they shall make the ephod *of* gold, *of* blue, and *of* purple, *of* scarlet, and fine twined linen, with cunning work. [Exod 39:2](#); [\[Exod 39:3\]](#);

7 It shall have the two shoulderpieces thereof joined at the two edges thereof; and *so* it shall be joined together.

8 And the curious girdle of the ephod, which *is* upon it, shall be of the same, according to the work thereof; *even of* gold, *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen. [\[Exod 39:5\]](#);

9 And you shall take two onyx stones, and grave on them the names of the children of Israel: [\[Exod 39:6\]](#);

10 Six of their names on one stone, and *the other* six names of the rest on the other stone, according to their birth.

11 With the work of an engraver in stone, *like* the engravings of a signet, shall you engrave the two stones with the names of the children of Israel: you shall make them to be set in ouches of gold.

12 And you shall put the two stones upon the shoulders of the ephod *for* stones of memorial unto the children of Israel: and Aaron shall bear their names before the YAHWEH upon his two shoulders for a memorial. [\[Exod 39:7\]](#);

13 And you shall make ouches *of* gold;

14 And two chains *of* pure gold at the ends; *of* wreathen work shall you make them, and fasten the wreathen chains to the ouches.

The breast-plate with twelve precious stones

15 And you shall make the breastplate of judgment with cunning work; after the work of the ephod you shall make it; *of* gold, *of* blue, and *of* purple, and *of* scarlet, and *of* fine twined linen, shall you make it. [Exod 39:8](#);

16 Foursquare it shall be *being* doubled; a span *shall be* the length thereof, and a span *shall be* the breadth thereof. [\[Exod 39:9\]](#);

17 And you shall set in it settings of stones, *even* four rows of stones: *the first row shall be* a sardius, a topaz, and a carbuncle: *this shall be* the first row. [\[Exod 35:9\]](#); [\[Exod 39:10\]](#);

18 And the second row *shall be* an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. [\[Exod 39:11\]](#);

19 And the third row a ligure, an agate, and an amethyst.

20 And the fourth row a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper: they shall be set in gold in their inclosings. [\[Exod 35:9\]](#);

21 And the stones shall be with the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names, *like* the engravings of a signet; every one with his name shall they be according to the twelve tribes.

22 And you shall make upon the breastplate chains at the ends *of* wreathen work *of* pure gold.

23 And you shall make upon the breastplate two rings of gold, and shall put the two rings on the two ends of the breastplate.

24 And you shall put the two wreathen *chains* of gold in the two rings *which are* on the ends of the breastplate.

25 And *the other* two ends of the two wreathen *chains* you shall fasten in the two ouches, and put *them* on the shoulderpieces of the ephod before it.

26 And you shall make two rings of gold, and you shall put them upon the two ends of the breastplate in the border thereof, which *is* in the side of the ephod inward.

27 And two *other* rings of gold you shall make, and shall put them on the two sides of the ephod underneath, toward the forepart thereof, over against the *other* coupling thereof, above the curious girdle of the ephod.

28 And they shall bind the breastplate by the rings thereof unto the rings of the ephod with a lace of blue, that *it* may be above the curious girdle of the ephod, and that the breastplate be not loosed from the ephod.

29 And Aaron shall bear the names of the children of Israel in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart, when he goes in unto the holy *place*, for a memorial before the YAHWEH continually.

The Urim and Thummim

30 And you shall put in the breastplate of judgment the Urim and the Thummim; and they shall be upon Aaron's heart, when he goes in before the YAHWEH: and Aaron shall bear the judgment of the children of Israel upon his heart before the YAHWEH continually. [\[Lev 8:8\]; \[Num 27:21\];](#)

The robe of the ephod, with pomegranates and bells

31 And you shall make the robe of the ephod all *of* blue. [Exod 39:22;](#)

32 And there shall be a hole in the top of it, in the midst thereof: it shall have a binding of woven work round about the hole of it, as it were the hole of a habergeon, that it be not rent.

33 And *beneath* upon the hem of it you shall make pomegranates *of* blue, and *of* purple, and *of* scarlet, round about the hem thereof; and bells of gold between them round about:

34 A golden bell and a pomegranate, a golden bell and a pomegranate, upon the hem of the robe round about.

35 And it shall be upon Aaron to minister: and his sound shall be heard when he goes in unto the holy *place* before the YAHWEH, and when he cometh out, that he die not.

The plate of the mitre

36 And you shall make a plate *of* pure gold, and grave upon it, *like* the engravings of a signet, HOLINESS TO THE YAHWEH. [Exod 39:30; \[Lev 8:9\];](#)

37 And you shall put it on a blue lace, that it may be upon the mitre; upon the forefront of the mitre it shall be. [\[Exod 39:31\];](#)

38 And it shall be upon Aaron's forehead, that Aaron may bear the iniquity of the holy things, which the children of Israel shall hallow in all their holy gifts; and it shall be always upon his forehead, that they may be accepted before the YAHWEH.

The embroidered coat

39 And you shall embroider the coat of fine linen, and you shall make the mitre *of* fine linen, and you shall make the girdle *of* needlework. [Exod 28:4; \[Exod 39:27\];](#)

The garments for Aaron's sons

40 And for Aaron's sons you shall make coats, and you shall make for them girdles, and bonnets shall you make for them, for glory and for beauty.

41 And you shall put them upon Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him; and shall anoint them, and consecrate them, and sanctify them, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office.

42 And you shall make them linen breeches to cover their nakedness; from the loins even unto the thighs they shall reach:

43 And they shall be upon Aaron, and upon his sons, when they come in unto the tabernacle of the congregation, or when they come near unto the altar to minister in the holy *place*; that they bear not iniquity, and die: *it shall be* a statute for ever unto him and his seed after him. [\[1Sam 2:30\]](#);

The sacrifice and ceremonies of consecrating the priests and the altar

- 1** And this *is* the thing that you shall do unto them to hallow them, to minister unto me in the priest's office: Take one young bullock, and two rams without blemish, [Lev 8:2](#); [Lev 9:2](#); [\[Lev 8:14\]](#);
- 2** And unleavened bread, and cakes unleavened tempered with oil, and wafers unleavened anointed with oil: *of* wheaten flour shall you make them.
- 3** And you shall put them into one basket, and bring them in the basket, with the bullock and the two rams.
- 4** And Aaron and his sons you shall bring unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and shall wash them with water. [\[Lev 8:5\]](#);
- 5** And you shall take the garments, and put upon Aaron the coat, and the robe of the ephod, and the ephod, and the breastplate, and gird him with the curious girdle of the ephod:
- 6** And you shall put the mitre upon his head, and put the holy crown upon the mitre. [\[Exod 39:30\]](#); [\[Lev 8:9\]](#);
- 7** Then shall you take the anointing oil, and pour *it* upon his head, and anoint him. [Exod 30:25](#);
- 8** And you shall bring his sons, and put coats upon them.
- 9** And you shall gird them with girdles, Aaron and his sons, and put the bonnets on them: and the priest's office shall be theirs for a perpetual statute: and you shall consecrate Aaron and his sons. [\[Lev 8:13\]](#); [\[1Sam 2:30\]](#);
- 10** And you shall cause a bullock to be brought before the tabernacle of the congregation: and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the bullock. [Lev 1:3](#);
- 11** And you shall kill the bullock before the YAHWEH, *by* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
- 12** And you shall take of the blood of the bullock, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar with thy finger, and pour all the blood beside the bottom of the altar.
- 13** And you shall take all the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul *that is* above the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* upon them, and burn *them* upon the altar. [\[Lev 3:3\]](#);
- 14** But the flesh of the bullock, and his skin, and his dung, shall you burn with fire without the camp: it *is* a sin offering. [Lev 4:12](#); [Heb 13:11](#); [\[Lev 4:11\]](#); [\[Lev 8:17\]](#); [\[Num 19:5\]](#);
- 15** You shall also take one ram; and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 16** And you shall slay the ram, and you shall take his blood, and sprinkle *it* round about upon the altar. [Heb 9:12](#); [Heb 9:19](#);
- 17** And you shall cut the ram in pieces, and wash the inwards of him, and his legs, and put *them* unto his pieces, and unto his head.
- 18** And you shall burn the whole ram upon the altar: it *is* a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH: it *is* a sweet savour, an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH. [\[Lev 4:31\]](#); [\[Lev 8:21\]](#); [\[Lev 17:6\]](#); [\[Num 15:3\]](#);
- 19** And you shall take the other ram; and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 20** Then shall you kill the ram, and take of his blood, and put *it* upon the tip of the right ear of Aaron, and upon the tip of the right ear of his sons, and upon the thumb of their right hand, and upon the great toe of their right foot, and sprinkle the blood upon the altar round about.
- 21** And you shall take of the blood that *is* upon the altar, and of the anointing oil, and sprinkle *it* upon Aaron, and upon his garments, and upon his sons, and upon the garments of his sons with him: and he shall be hallowed, and his garments, and his sons, and his sons' garments with him. [\[Lev 8:30\]](#);
- 22** Also you shall take of the ram the fat and the rump, and the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul *above* the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* upon them, and the right shoulder; for it *is* a ram of consecration: [\[Lev 3:3\]](#); [\[Lev 8:25\]](#);
- 23** And one loaf of bread, and one cake of oiled bread, and one wafer out of the basket of the unleavened bread that *is* before the YAHWEH:
- 24** And you shall put all in the hands of Aaron, and in the hands of his sons; and shall wave them *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH. [\[Lev 7:30\]](#); [\[Lev 8:27\]](#); [\[Lev 14:12\]](#);

25 And you shall receive them of their hands, and burn *them* upon the altar for a burnt offering, for a sweet savour before the YAHWEH: it *is* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH. [Lev 3:5];

26 And you shall take the breast of the ram of Aaron's consecration, and wave it *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH: and it shall be thy part. [Lev 8:29];

27 And you shall sanctify the breast of the wave offering, and the shoulder of the heave offering, which is waved, and which is heaved up, of the ram of the consecration, *even* of *that* which *is* for Aaron, and of *that* which is for his sons: [Lev 7:34]; [Num 6:20];

28 And it shall be Aaron's and his sons' by a statute for ever from the children of Israel: for it *is* a heave offering: and it shall be a heave offering from the children of Israel of the sacrifice of their peace offerings, *even* their heave offering unto the YAHWEH. Lev 7:31; Lev 7:34; Lev 10:14;

29 And the holy garments of Aaron shall be his sons' after him, to be anointed therein, and to be consecrated in them.

30 And that son that is priest in his stead shall put them on seven days, when he cometh into the tabernacle of the congregation to minister in the holy *place*. [Ps 141:2];

31 And you shall take the ram of the consecration, and seethe his flesh in the holy place.

32 And Aaron and his sons shall eat the flesh of the ram, and the bread that *is* in the basket, *by* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. Lev 8:31; Lev 24:9;

33 And they shall eat those things wherewith the atonement was made, to consecrate *and* to sanctify them: but a stranger shall not eat *thereof*, because they *are* holy. Lev 10:14; Matt 12:4;

34 And if ought of the flesh of the consecrations, or of the bread, remain unto the morning, then you shall burn the remainder with fire: it shall not be eaten, because it *is* holy.

35 And thus shall you do unto Aaron, and to his sons, according to all *things* which I have commanded you: seven days shall you consecrate them.

36 And you shall offer every day a bullock *for* a sin offering for atonement: and you shall cleanse the altar, when you have made an atonement for it, and you shall anoint it, to sanctify it.

37 Seven days you shall make an atonement for the altar, and sanctify it; and it shall be an altar most holy: whatsoever toucheth the altar shall be holy. [Exod 40:10]; [Lev 6:18]; [Matt 23:19];

The continual burnt offerings

38 Now this *is that* which you shall offer upon the altar; two lambs of the first year day by day continually. Num 28:3; [Lev 9:17];

39 The one lamb you shall offer in the morning; and the other lamb you shall offer between the evenings:

40 And with the one lamb a tenth deal of flour mingled with the fourth part of a hin of beaten oil; and the fourth part of a hin of wine *for* a drink offering. [Num 28:5];

41 And the other lamb you shall offer at even, and shall do thereto according to the meat offering of the morning, and according to the drink offering thereof, for a sweet savour, an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

42 *This shall be* a continual burnt offering throughout your generations *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the YAHWEH: where I will meet you, to speak there unto you.

43 And there I will meet with the children of Israel, and *the tabernacle* shall be sanctified by my glory.

44 And I will sanctify the tabernacle of the congregation, and the altar: I will sanctify also both Aaron and his sons, to minister to me in the priest's office.

Elohim's promise to dwell among the children of Israel

45 And I will dwell among the children of Israel, and will be their Elohim. Exod 25:8; Lev 26:12; Ps 78:60; Zech 2:10; 2Cor 6:16; Rev 21:3;

46 And they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim, that brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, that I may dwell among them: I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim.

The altar of incense

- 1** And you shall make an altar to burn incense upon: *of* shittim wood shall you make it. [Exod 37:25](#); [\[Exod 35:15\]](#); [\[1Kgs 7:48\]](#);
- 2** A cubit *shall be* the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof; foursquare shall it be: and two cubits *shall be* the height thereof: the horns thereof *shall be* of the same.
- 3** And you shall overlay it with pure gold, the top thereof, and the sides thereof round about, and the horns thereof; and you shall make unto it a crown of gold round about. [\[Exod 37:26\]](#);
- 4** And two golden rings shall you make to it under the crown of it, by the two corners thereof, upon the two sides of it shall you make *it*; and they shall be for places for the staves to bear it withal. [\[Exod 37:27\]](#);
- 5** And you shall make the staves *of* shittim wood, and overlay them with gold. [\[Exod 37:28\]](#);
- 6** And you shall put it before the vail that *is* by the ark of the testimony, before the mercy seat that *is* over the testimony, where I will meet with you.
- 7** And Aaron shall burn thereon sweet incense every morning: when he dresseth the lamps, he shall burn incense upon it. [1Sam 3:3](#); [\[1Chr 6:49\]](#); [\[Luke 1:9\]](#);
- 8** And when Aaron lighteth the lamps at even, he shall burn incense upon it, a perpetual incense before the YAHWEH throughout your generations.
- 9** You shall offer no strange incense thereon, nor burnt sacrifice, nor meat offering; neither shall you pour drink offering thereon.
- 10** And Aaron shall make an atonement upon the horns of it once in a year with the blood of the sin offering of atonements: once in the year shall he make atonement upon it throughout your generations: it *is* most holy unto the YAHWEH. [\[Lev 16:2\]](#); [\[Lev 16:34\]](#); [\[1Chr 6:49\]](#); [\[Heb 9:7\]](#); [\[Heb 9:25\]](#);

The ransom of beings

- 11** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[2Chr 24:6\]](#);
- 12** When you takest the sum of the children of Israel after their number, then shall they give every man a ransom for his being unto the YAHWEH, when you numberest them; that there be no plague among them, when you numberest them. [Num 1:2](#);
- 13** This they shall give, every one that passeth among them that are numbered, half a shekel after the shekel of the sanctuary: (a shekel *is* twenty gerahs:) a half shekel *shall be* the offering of the YAHWEH. [Lev 27:25](#); [Num 3:47](#); [Ezek 45:12](#); [\[Lev 5:15\]](#); [\[Num 18:16\]](#);
- 14** Every one that passeth among them that are numbered, from twenty years old and above, shall give an offering unto the YAHWEH.
- 15** The rich shall not give more, and the poor shall not give less than half a shekel, when *they* give an offering unto the YAHWEH, to make an atonement for your beings.
- 16** And you shall take the atonement money of the children of Israel, and shall appoint it for the service of the tabernacle of the congregation; that it may be a memorial unto the children of Israel before the YAHWEH, to make an atonement for your beings. [Exod 38:25](#);

The brazen laver

- 17** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 18** You shall also make a laver *of* brass, and his foot *also of* brass, to wash *withal*: and you shall put it between the tabernacle of the congregation and the altar, and you shall put water therein. [\[Exod 35:16\]](#); [\[Exod 38:8\]](#);
- 19** For Aaron and his sons shall wash their hands and their feet thereat:

20 When they go into the tabernacle of the congregation, they shall wash with water, that they die not; or when they come near to the altar to minister, to burn offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH:

21 So they shall wash their hands and their feet, that they die not: and it shall be a statute for ever to them, *even* to him and to his seed throughout their generations.

The holy anointing oil

22 Moreover the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [Exod 37:29];

23 Take you also unto you principal spices, of pure myrrh five hundred *shekels*, and of sweet cinnamon half so much, *even* two hundred and fifty *shekels*, and of sweet calamus two hundred and fifty *shekels*, [Num 4:16];

24 And of cassia five hundred *shekels*, after the shekel of the sanctuary, and of oil olive a hin:

25 And you shall make it an oil of holy ointment, an ointment compound after the art of the perfumer: it shall be a holy anointing oil. [Exod 29:7]; [Lev 8:2];

26 And you shall anoint the tabernacle of the congregation therewith, and the ark of the testimony,

27 And the table and all his vessels, and the candlestick and his vessels, and the altar of incense,

28 And the altar of burnt offering with all his vessels, and the laver and his foot.

29 And you shall sanctify them, that they may be most holy: whatsoever toucheth them shall be holy.

30 And you shall anoint Aaron and his sons, and consecrate them, that *they* may minister unto me in the priest's office.

31 And you shall speak unto the children of Israel, saying, This shall be a holy anointing oil unto me throughout your generations. [Num 3:47];

32 Upon man's flesh shall it not be poured, neither shall you make *any other* like it, after the composition of it: it *is* holy, *and* it shall be holy unto you.

33 Whosoever compoundeth *any* like it, or whosoever puts *any* of it upon a stranger, shall even be cut off from his people.

The composition of the incense

34 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Take unto you sweet spices, stacte, and onycha, and galbanum; *these* sweet spices with pure frankincense: of each shall there be a like *weight*: [Exod 37:29]; [Num 4:16];

35 And you shall make it a perfume, a confection after the are of the perfumer, tempered together, pure *and* holy:

36 And you shall beat *some* of it very small, and put of it before the testimony in the tabernacle of the congregation, where I will meet with you: it shall be unto you most holy.

37 And *as for* the perfume which you shall make, you shall not make to yourselves according to the composition thereof: it shall be unto you holy for the YAHWEH.

38 Whosoever shall make like unto that, to smell thereto, shall even be cut off from his people.

Bezaleel and Aholiab are appointed and qualified for the work of the tabernacle

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
2 See, I have called by name Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah: [Exod 35:30](#); [1Chr 2:20](#);
3 And I have filled him with the spirit of Elohim, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship, [\[Exod 35:31\]](#); [\[1Kgs 7:14\]](#);
4 To devise cunning works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, [\[Exod 35:32\]](#);
5 And in cutting of stones, to set *them*, and in carving of timber, to work in all manner of workmanship. [\[Exod 35:33\]](#);
6 And I, behold, I have given with him Aholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan: and in the hearts of all that are wise hearted I have put wisdom, that they may make all that I have commanded you;
7 The tabernacle of the congregation, and the ark of the testimony, and the mercy seat that *is* thereupon, and all the furniture of the tabernacle,
8 And the table and his furniture, and the pure candlestick with all his furniture, and the altar of incense, [\[Exod 39:36\]](#);
9 And the altar of burnt offering with all his furniture, and the laver and his foot,
10 And the cloths of service, and the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office, [\[Exod 35:19\]](#); [\[Exod 39:1\]](#); [\[Exod 39:41\]](#);
11 And the anointing oil, and sweet incense for the holy *place*: according to all that I have commanded you shall they do. [\[Exod 35:15\]](#);

The observation of the Sabbath is again commanded

- 12** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
13 Speak you also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my Sabbaths you shall keep: for it *is* a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that you may know that I *am* the YAHWEH that sanctifies you. [\[Exod 23:12\]](#); [\[Lev 19:3\]](#); [\[Jer 17:22\]](#); [\[Ezek 20:12\]](#);
14 You shall keep the Sabbath therefore; for it *is* holy unto you: every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death: for whosoever doeth *any* work therein, that being shall be cut off from among his people. [Exod 20:8](#); [Deut 5:12](#); [Ezek 20:12](#);
15 Six days may work be done; but in the seventh *is* the Sabbath of rest, holy to the YAHWEH: whosoever doeth *any* work in the Sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death. [\[Exod 35:2\]](#);
16 Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, *for* a perpetual covenant.
17 It *is* a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever: for *in* six days the YAHWEH made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed. [Gen 1:31](#); [Gen 2:2-3](#); [Exod 20:11](#); [\[Gen 2:2\]](#); [\[Heb 4:4\]](#);

Moses receives the two tables

- 18** And he gave unto Moses, when he had made an end of communing with him upon mount Sinai, two tables of testimony, tables of stone, written with the finger of Elohim. [Exod 32:16](#); [\[Exod 34:28\]](#); [\[Deut 9:10\]](#);

The people, in the absence of Moses, cause Aaron to make a calf

1 And when the people saw that Moses delayed to come down out of the mount, the people gathered themselves together unto Aaron, and said unto him, Up, make us gods, which shall go before us; for *as* for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him. [Acts 7:40](#); [\[Neh 9:18\]](#);

2 And Aaron said unto them, Break off the golden earrings, which *are* in the ears of your wives, of your sons, and of your daughters, and bring *them* unto me.

3 And all the people brake off the golden earrings which *were* in their ears, and brought *them* unto Aaron.

4 And he received *them* at their hand, and fashioned it with a graving tool, after he had made it a molten calf: and they said, These *be* thy gods, O Israel, which brought you up out of the land of Egypt. [\[Deut 9:8\]](#); [\[Ps 106:19\]](#);

5 And when Aaron saw *it*, he built an altar before it; and Aaron made proclamation, and said, To morrow *is* a feast to the YAHWEH.

6 And they rose up early on the morrow, and offered burnt offerings, and brought peace offerings; and the people sat down to eat and to drink, and rose up to play. [1Cor 10:7](#);

Elohim informs Moses, who intercedes for Israel, and prevails

7 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Go, get you down; for thy people, which you broughtest out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted *themselves*: [Deut 32:5](#);

8 They have turned aside quickly out of the way which I commanded them: they have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed thereunto, and said, These *be* thy gods, O Israel, which have brought you up out of the land of Egypt. [1Kgs 12:28](#); [\[2Kgs 17:16\]](#);

9 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, I have seen this people, and, behold, it *is* a stiffnecked people: [Exod 33:3](#); [Deut 9:6](#); [Deut 9:13](#); [Isa 48:4](#); [Jer 5:3](#); [Hos 4:16](#); [\[Deut 10:16\]](#); [\[Ps 78:8\]](#);

10 Now therefore let me alone, that my wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them: and I will make of you a great nation. [\[Deut 9:14\]](#); [\[Jer 7:16\]](#); [\[Jer 14:11\]](#); [\[Matt 21:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:46\]](#);

11 And Moses besought the YAHWEH his Elohim, and said, YAHWEH, why does thy wrath wax hot against thy people, which you have brought forth out of the land of Egypt with great power, and with a mighty hand? [Ps 106:21](#); [\[Deut 9:26\]](#); [\[Ps 106:23\]](#); [\[Dan 9:15\]](#);

12 Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, and say, For mischief did he bring them out, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth? Turn from thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against thy people. [Num 14:13](#); [\[Deut 9:28\]](#);

13 Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, thy servants, to whom you swore by thine own self, and saidst unto them, I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have spoken of will I give unto your seed, and they shall inherit *it* for ever. [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 28:13](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [\[Gen 15:5\]](#); [\[Gen 24:7\]](#);

14 And the YAHWEH relented of the evil which he thought to do unto his people. [\[Jer 15:1\]](#);

Moses comes down with the tables

15 And Moses turned, and went down from the mount, and the two tables of the testimony *were* in his hand: the tables *were* written on both their sides; on the one side and on the other *were* they written.

16 And the tables *were* the work of Elohim, and the writing *was* the writing of Elohim, graven upon the tables. [Exod 31:18](#); [Deut 9:10](#);

17 And when Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he said unto Moses, *There is* a noise of war in the camp.

18 And he said, *It is* not the voice of *them that* shout for mastery, neither *is it* the voice of *them that* cry for being overcome: *but* the noise of *them that* sing do I hear.

He breaks them

19 And it came to pass, as soon as he came nigh unto the camp, that he saw the calf, and the dancing: and Moses' anger waxed hot, and he cast the tables out of his hands, and brake them beneath the mount. [Deut 9:17](#);

He destroys the calf

20 And he took the calf which they had made, and burnt *it* in the fire, and ground *it* to powder, and strawed *it* upon the water, and made the children of Israel drink *of it*. [Deut 9:21](#);

21 And Moses said unto Aaron, What did this people unto you, that you have brought so great a sin upon them?

Aaron's excuse for himself

22 And Aaron said, Let not the anger of my lord wax hot: you knowest the people, that they *are set* on mischief. [1John 5:19](#);

23 For they said unto me, Make us gods, which shall go before us: for *as for* this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.

24 And I said unto them, Whosoever has any gold, let them break *it* off. So they gave *it* me: then I cast it into the fire, and there came out this calf.

Moses causes the idolaters to be slain

25 And when Moses saw that the people *were* naked; (for Aaron had made them naked unto *their* shame among their enemies:)

26 Then Moses stood in the gate of the camp, and said, Who *is* on the YAHWEH'S side? *let him come* unto me. And all the sons of Levi gathered themselves together unto him.

27 And he said unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Put every man his sword by his side, *and* go in and out from gate to gate throughout the camp, and slay every man his brother, and every man his companion, and every man his neighbour.

28 And the children of Levi did according to the word of Moses: and there fell of the people that day about three thousand men.

29 For Moses had said, Consecrate yourselves to day to the YAHWEH, even every man upon his son, and upon his brother; that he may bestow upon you a blessing this day.

He prays for the people

30 And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses said unto the people, you have sinned a great sin: and now I will go up unto the YAHWEH; perhaps I shall make an atonement for your sin. [\[1Kgs 12:25\]](#);

31 And Moses returned unto the YAHWEH, and said, Oh, this people have sinned a great sin, and have made them gods of gold.

32 Yet now, if you will forgive their sin--; if not, blot me, I pray you, out of thy book which you have written. [\[Ps 106:23\]](#); [\[Luke 10:20\]](#); [\[Rom 9:3\]](#); [\[Phil 4:3\]](#); [\[Rev 3:5\]](#); [\[Rev 17:8\]](#); [\[Rev 20:12\]](#); [\[Rev 21:27\]](#);

33 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Whosoever has sinned against me, him will I blot out of my book. [\[Rev 13:8\]](#);

34 Therefore now go, lead the people unto *the place* of which I have spoken unto you: behold, mine Angel shall go before you: nevertheless in the day when I visit I will visit their sin upon them.

35 And the YAHWEH plagued the people, because they made the calf, which Aaron made.

The Lord refuses to go as he had promised with the people

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Depart, *and* go up hence, you and the people which you have brought up out of the land of Egypt, unto the land which I swore unto Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, Unto thy seed will I give it: [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 28:13](#);

2 And I will send an angel before you; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite: [\[Exod 23:20\]](#);

3 Unto a land flowing with milk and honey: for I will not go up in the midst of you; for you are a stiffnecked people: lest I consume you in the way. [Exod 32:9](#); [Deut 9:13](#); [\[Num 13:27\]](#); [\[Deut 10:16\]](#); [\[Ps 78:8\]](#);

The people mourn thereat

4 And when the people heard these evil tidings, they mourned: and no man did put on him his ornaments.

5 For the YAHWEH had said unto Moses, Say unto the children of Israel, you *are* a stiffnecked people: I will come up into the midst of you in a moment, and consume you: therefore now put off thy ornaments from you, that I may know what to do unto you. [\[Ps 78:8\]](#);

6 And the children of Israel stripped themselves of their ornaments by the mount Horeb.

The tabernacle is removed out of the camp

7 And Moses took the tabernacle, and pitched it without the camp, afar off from the camp, and called it the Tabernacle of the congregation. And it came to pass, *that* every one which sought the YAHWEH went out unto the tabernacle of the congregation, which *was* without the camp.

8 And it came to pass, when Moses went out unto the tabernacle, *that* all the people rose up, and stood every man *at* his tent door, and looked after Moses, until he was gone into the tabernacle.

The Lord talks familiarly with Moses

9 And it came to pass, as Moses entered into the tabernacle, the cloudy pillar descended, and stood *at* the door of the tabernacle, and *the* YAHWEH talked with Moses.

10 And all the people saw the cloudy pillar stand *at* the tabernacle door: and all the people rose up and worshipped, every man *in* his tent door.

11 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses face to face, as a man speaketh unto his friend. And he turned again into the camp: but his servant Joshua, the son of Nun, a young man, departed not out of the tabernacle. [\[Num 12:8\]](#);

Moses prevails with Elohim, and desires to see his glory

12 And Moses said unto the YAHWEH, See, you sayest unto me, Bring up this people: and you have not let me know whom you will send with me. yet you have said, I know you by name, and you have also found grace in my sight.

13 Now therefore, I pray you, if I have found grace in thy sight, show me now thy way, that I may know you, that I may find grace in thy sight: and consider that this nation *is* thy people.

14 And he said, My presence shall go *with you*, and I will give you rest.

15 And he said unto him, If thy presence go not *with me*, carry us not up hence.

16 For wherein shall it be known here that I and thy people have found grace in thy sight? *is it* not in that you go with us? so shall we be separated, I and thy people, from all the people that *are* upon the face of the earth. [Deut 4:7](#);

17 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, I will do this thing also that you have spoken: for you have found grace in my sight, and I know you by name.

18 And he said, I beseech you, show me thy glory.

19 And he said, I will make all my goodness pass before you, and I will proclaim the name of the YAHWEH before you; and will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy. [Rom 9:15](#); [\[Exod 34:6\]](#);

20 And he said, you canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me, and live. [\[Judg 13:22\]](#); [\[John 1:18\]](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:16\]](#); [\[1John 4:12\]](#);

21 And the YAHWEH said, Behold, *there is* a place by me, and you shall stand upon a rock:

22 And it shall come to pass, while my glory passeth by, that I will put you in a clift of the rock, and will cover you with my hand while I pass by:

23 And I will take away mine hand, and you shall see my back parts: but my face shall not be seen.

The tables are renewed

- 1** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Hew you two tables of stone like unto the first: and I will write upon *these* tables the words that were in the first tables, which you brakest. [Deut 10:1](#); [\[Exod 34:28\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:3\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:7\]](#);
- 2** And be ready in the morning, and come up in the morning unto mount Sinai, and present thyself there to me in the top of the mount.
- 3** And no man shall come up with you, neither let any man be seen throughout all the mount; neither let the flocks nor herds feed before that mount. [Exod 19:12](#); [Exod 19:13](#);
- 4** And he hewed two tables of stone like unto the first; and Moses rose up early in the morning, and went up unto mount Sinai, as the YAHWEH had commanded him, and took in his hand the two tables of stone.

The name of the YAHWEH proclaimed

- 5** And the YAHWEH descended in the cloud, and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the YAHWEH.
- 6** And the YAHWEH passed by before him, and proclaimed, The YAHWEH, The YAHWEH Elohim, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, [Exod 33:19](#); [\[Num 14:18\]](#); [\[2Chr 30:9\]](#); [\[Ps 86:15\]](#); [\[Ps 103:8\]](#); [\[Ps 145:8\]](#); [\[Joel 2:13\]](#); [\[Jonah 4:2\]](#); [\[Mic 7:18\]](#);
- 7** Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and that will by no means clear *the guilty*; visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, unto the third and to the fourth *generation*. [Exod 20:6](#); [Num 14:18](#); [Deut 5:10](#); [Ps 86:15](#); [Ps 103:8](#); [Ps 145:8](#); [Jer 32:18](#); [\[Deut 5:9\]](#); [\[Neh 1:5\]](#); [\[Neh 9:17\]](#); [\[1Cor 4:4\]](#);

Moses entreats Elohim to go with them

- 8** And Moses made haste, and bowed his head toward the earth, and worshipped.
- 9** And he said, If now I have found grace in thy sight, O Lord, let my Lord, I pray you, go among us; for it *is* a stiffnecked people; and pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us for thine inheritance. [Lev 25:38](#); [Ps 28:9](#); [Ps 33:12](#); [Zech 2:12](#); [\[Deut 9:13\]](#); [\[Deut 10:16\]](#); [\[Ps 78:8\]](#);

Elohim makes a covenant with them, repeating certain duties of the first table

- 10** And he said, Behold, I make a covenant: before all thy people I will do marvels, such as have not been done in all the earth, nor in any nation: and all the people among which you are shall see the work of the YAHWEH: for it *is* a terrible thing that I will do with you. [Deut 5:2](#); [Josh 10:12-13](#);
- 11** Observe you that which I command you this day: behold, I drive out before you the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite.
- 12** Take heed to thyself, lest you make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land whither you go, lest it be for a snare in the midst of you: [Exod 23:32](#); [Num 33:51](#); [Deut 7:2](#); [\[Deut 12:2\]](#); [\[Josh 11:15\]](#); [\[Judg 2:3\]](#);
- 13** But you shall destroy their altars, break their images, and cut down their groves: [\[Deut 7:5\]](#); [\[2Kgs 23:14\]](#);
- 14** For you shall worship no other god: for the YAHWEH, whose name *is* Jealous, *is* a jealous Elohim: [Exod 20:5](#); [\[Deut 4:24\]](#); [\[Deut 5:9\]](#);
- 15** Lest you make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land, and they go a whoring after their gods, and do sacrifice unto their gods, and *one* call you, and you eat of his sacrifice; [\[Exod 23:32\]](#); [\[Deut 7:2\]](#); [\[Acts 10:28\]](#); [\[Acts 11:3\]](#);
- 16** And you take of their daughters unto thy sons, and their daughters go a whoring after their gods, and make thy sons go a whoring after their gods. [1Kgs 11:2](#); [\[Deut 7:3\]](#); [\[Neh 10:30\]](#);
- 17** You shall make you no molten gods. [\[Lev 19:4\]](#);

- 18** The feast of unleavened bread shall you keep. Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, as I commanded you, in the time of the month Abib: for in the month Abib you camest out from Egypt. [Exod 12:15](#); [Exod 23:15](#); [\[Deut 16:3\]](#);
- 19** All that openeth the matrix *is* mine; and every firstling among thy cattle, *whether* ox or sheep, *that is* male. [Exod 13:2](#); [Exod 22:29](#); [Ezek 44:30](#); [\[Exod 13:12\]](#); [\[Lev 27:26\]](#); [\[Num 3:13\]](#); [\[Num 8:17\]](#); [\[Deut 15:19\]](#);
- 20** But the firstling of an ass you shall redeem with a lamb: if you redeem *him* not, then shall you break his neck. All the firstborn of thy sons you shall redeem. And none shall appear before me empty. [Exod 13:13](#); [Exod 23:15](#); [Deut 16:16](#);
- 21** Six days you shall work, but on the seventh day you shall rest: in plowing time and in harvest you shall rest. [Exod 20:9](#); [\[Neh 10:31\]](#);
- 22** And you shall observe the feast of weeks, of the firstfruits of wheat harvest, and the feast of ingathering at the year's end. [Exod 23:16](#);
- 23** Thrice in the year shall all your men children appear before the Lord GOD, the Elohim of Israel. [Exod 23:17](#); [Deut 16:16](#);
- 24** For I will cast out the nations before you, and enlarge thy borders: neither shall any man desire thy land, when you shall go up to appear before the YAHWEH thy Elohim thrice in the year.
- 25** You shall not offer the blood of my sacrifice with leaven; neither shall the sacrifice of the feast of the passover be left unto the morning. [Exod 23:18](#);
- 26** The first of the firstfruits of thy land you shall bring unto the house of the YAHWEH thy Elohim. you shall not seethe a kid in his mother's milk. [Exod 23:19](#); [Deut 26:2](#); [Lev 22:27](#); [Deut 14:21](#); [\[Prov 3:9\]](#);
- 27** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Write you these words: for after the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with you and with Israel. [\[1Kgs 8:9\]](#);

Moses, after forty days in the mount, comes down with the tables

- 28** And he was there with the YAHWEH forty days and forty nights; he did neither eat bread, nor drink water. And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten commandments. [Exod 24:18](#); [Deut 9:9](#); [Deut 9:18](#); [Exod 34:1](#); [Exod 31:18](#); [Deut 4:13](#); [\[1Kgs 19:8\]](#); [\[Luke 4:2\]](#);

His face shines, and he covers it with a vail

- 29** And it came to pass, when Moses came down from mount Sinai with the two tables of testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses wist not that the skin of his face shone while he talked with him. [2Cor 3:7](#); [\[Heb 9:4\]](#);
- 30** And when Aaron and all the children of Israel saw Moses, behold, the skin of his face shone; and they were afraid to come nigh him. [\[2Cor 3:7\]](#);
- 31** And Moses called unto them; and Aaron and all the rulers of the congregation returned unto him: and Moses talked with them.
- 32** And afterward all the children of Israel came nigh: and he gave them in commandment all that the YAHWEH had spoken with him in mount Sinai. [\[Exod 35:1\]](#);
- 33** And *till* Moses had done speaking with them, he put a vail on his face. [2Cor 3:7](#); [2Cor 3:13](#);
- 34** But when Moses went in before the YAHWEH to speak with him, he took the vail off, until he came out. And he came out, and spoke unto the children of Israel *that* which he was commanded.
- 35** And the children of Israel saw the face of Moses, that the skin of Moses' face shone: and Moses put the vail upon his face again, until he went in to speak with him. [\[2Cor 3:13\]](#);

The Sabbath

- 1** And Moses gathered all the congregation of the children of Israel together, and said unto them, These *are* the words which the YAHWEH has commanded, that you should do them. [Exod 34:32](#);
- 2** Six days shall work be done, but on the seventh day there shall be to you a holy day, a Sabbath of rest to the YAHWEH: whosoever doeth work therein shall be put to death. [Exod 20:8](#); [Exod 31:15](#); [Lev 23:3](#); [Deut 5:12](#); [Luke 13:14](#); [\[Ezek 20:12\]](#);
- 3** You shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the Sabbath day. [Exod 16:23](#);

The free gifts for the tabernacle

- 4** And Moses spoke unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, saying, This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH commanded, saying,
- 5** Take you from among you an offering unto the YAHWEH: whosoever *is* of a willing heart, let him bring it, an offering of the YAHWEH; gold, and silver, and brass, [Exod 25:2](#); [\[2Cor 9:7\]](#);
- 6** And blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' *hair*, [Exod 25:4](#);
- 7** And rams' skins dyed red, and badgers' skins, and shittim wood, [Exod 25:5](#);
- 8** And oil for the light, and spices for anointing oil, and for the sweet incense, [Exod 25:6](#);
- 9** And onyx stones, and stones to be set for the ephod, and for the breastplate. [Exod 25:7](#); [Exod 28:17](#); [Exod 28:20](#);
- 10** And every wise hearted among you shall come, and make all that the YAHWEH has commanded;
- 11** The tabernacle, his tent, and his covering, his taches, and his boards, his bars, his pillars, and his sockets, [Exod 26:26](#); [\[Exod 39:33\]](#);
- 12** The ark, and the staves thereof, *with* the mercy seat, and the vail of the covering, [\[Exod 40:21\]](#);
- 13** The table, and his staves, and all his vessels, and the showbread, [Exod 25:23](#); [Exod 25:30](#);
- 14** The candlestick also for the light, and his furniture, and his lamps, with the oil for the light,
- 15** And the incense altar, and his staves, and the anointing oil, and the sweet incense, and the hanging for the door at the entering in of the tabernacle, [Exod 30:1](#); [Exod 31:11](#); [Exod 26:36](#);
- 16** The altar of burnt offering, with his brasen grate, his staves, and all his vessels, the laver and his foot, [Exod 27:4](#); [Exod 30:18](#);
- 17** The hangings of the court, his pillars, and their sockets, and the hanging for the door of the court, [Exod 27:9](#); [Exod 27:16](#);
- 18** The pins of the tabernacle, and the pins of the court, and their cords, [Exod 27:19](#);
- 19** The cloths of service, to do service in the holy *place*, the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office. [Exod 28:1](#); [Exod 31:10](#); [\[Exod 39:1\]](#);

The readiness of the people to offer

- 20** And all the congregation of the children of Israel departed from the presence of Moses.
- 21** And they came, every one whose heart stirred him up, and every one whom his spirit made willing, *and* they brought the YAHWEH'S offering to the work of the tabernacle of the congregation, and for all his service, and for the holy garments.
- 22** And they came, both men and women, as many as were willing hearted, *and* brought bracelets, and earrings, and rings, and tablets, all jewels of gold: and every man that offered *offered* an offering of gold unto the YAHWEH.
- 23** And every man, with whom was found blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' *hair*, and red skins of rams, and badgers' skins, brought *them*.
- 24** Every one that did offer an offering of silver and brass brought the YAHWEH'S offering: and every man, with whom was found shittim wood for any work of the service, brought *it*.

25 And all the women that were wise hearted did spin with their hands, and brought that which they had spun, *both* of blue, and of purple, *and* of scarlet, and of fine linen. [Prov 31:19](#);
26 And all the women whose heart stirred them up in wisdom spun goats' *hair*.
27 And the rulers brought onyx stones, and stones to be set, for the ephod, and for the breastplate;
28 And spice, and oil for the light, and for the anointing oil, and for the sweet incense. [Exod 25:6](#);
29 The children of Israel brought a willing offering unto the YAHWEH, every man and woman, whose heart made them willing to bring for all manner of work, which the YAHWEH had commanded to be made by the hand of Moses.

Bezaleel and Aholiab are called to the work

30 And Moses said unto the children of Israel, See, the YAHWEH has called by name Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah; [Exod 31:2](#);
31 And he has filled him with the spirit of Elohim, in wisdom, in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship; [Exod 31:3](#);
32 And to devise curious works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, [Exod 31:4](#);
33 And in the cutting of stones, to set *them*, and in carving of wood, to make any manner of cunning work. [Exod 31:5](#);
34 And he has put in his heart that he may teach, *both* he, and Aholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan.
35 Them has he filled with wisdom of heart, to work all manner of work, of the engraver, and of the cunning workman, and of the embroiderer, in blue, and in purple, in scarlet, and in fine linen, and of the weaver, *even* of them that do any work, and of those that devise cunning work. [Exod 26:1](#);

The offerings are delivered to the workmen

1 Then wrought Bezaleel and Aholiab, and every wise hearted man, in whom the YAHWEH put wisdom and understanding to know how to work all manner of work for the service of the sanctuary, according to all that the YAHWEH had commanded. [\[Heb 9:2\];](#)

2 And Moses called Bezaleel and Aholiab, and every wise hearted man, in whose heart the YAHWEH had put wisdom, *even* every one whose heart stirred him up to come unto the work to do it:

3 And they received of Moses all the offering, which the children of Israel had brought for the work of the service of the sanctuary, to make it *withal*. And they brought yet unto him free offerings every morning.

The liberality of the people is restrained

4 And all the wise men, that wrought all the work of the sanctuary, came every man from his work which they made;

5 And they spoke unto Moses, saying, The people bring much more than enough for the service of the work, which the YAHWEH commanded to make.

6 And Moses gave commandment, and they caused it to be proclaimed throughout the camp, saying, Let neither man nor woman make any more work for the offering of the sanctuary. So the people were restrained from bringing.

7 For the stuff they had was sufficient for all the work to make it, and too much.

The curtains with cherubims

8 And every wise hearted man among them that wrought the work of the tabernacle made ten curtains *of* fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet: *with* cherubims of cunning work made he them. [\[Exod 26:1\];](#)

9 The length of one curtain *was* twenty and eight cubits, and the breadth of one curtain four cubits: the curtains *were* all of one size. [Exod 26:2;](#)

10 And he coupled the five curtains one unto another: and *the other* five curtains he coupled one unto another.

11 And he made loops of blue on the edge of one curtain from the selvedge in the coupling: likewise he made in the uttermost side of *another* curtain, in the coupling of the second. [Exod 26:4;](#)

12 Fifty loops made he in one curtain, and fifty loops made he in the edge of the curtain which *was* in the coupling of the second: the loops held one *curtain* to another. [Exod 26:10; Exod 26:5;](#)

13 And he made fifty taches of gold, and coupled the curtains one unto another with the taches: so it became one tabernacle. [Exod 26:6;](#)

The curtains of goats' hair

14 And he made curtains *of* goats' *hair* for the tent over the tabernacle: eleven curtains he made them. [\[Exod 26:7\];](#)

15 The length of one curtain *was* thirty cubits, and four cubits *was* the breadth of one curtain: the eleven curtains *were* of one size.

16 And he coupled five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves.

17 And he made fifty loops upon the uttermost edge of the curtain in the coupling, and fifty loops made he upon the edge of the curtain which coupleth the second.

18 And he made fifty taches *of* brass to couple the tent together, that it might be one. [Exod 26:11;](#)

The covering of skins

19 And he made a covering for the tent *of* rams' skins dyed red, and a covering *of* badgers' skins above *that*. [Exod 26:14](#);

The boards with their sockets

20 And he made boards for the tabernacle *of* shittim wood, standing up. [Exod 26:15](#);

21 The length of a board *was* ten cubits, and the breadth of a board one cubit and a half. [Exod 26:16](#);

22 One board had two tenons, equally distant one from another: thus did he make for all the boards of the tabernacle. [Exod 26:17](#);

23 And he made boards for the tabernacle; twenty boards for the south side southward: [Exod 26:18](#);

24 And forty sockets of silver he made under the twenty boards; two sockets under one board for his two tenons, and two sockets under another board for his two tenons. [Exod 26:19](#);

25 And for the other side of the tabernacle, *which is* toward the north corner, he made twenty boards, [Exod 26:20](#);

26 And their forty sockets of silver; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board. [Exod 26:21](#);

27 And for the sides of the tabernacle westward he made six boards. [Exod 26:22](#);

28 And two boards made he for the corners of the tabernacle in the two sides. [Exod 26:23](#);

29 And they were coupled beneath, and coupled together at the head thereof, to one ring: thus he did to both of them in both the corners. [Exod 26:24](#);

30 And there were eight boards; and their sockets *were* sixteen sockets of silver, under every board two sockets. [Exod 26:25](#);

The bars

31 And he made bars of shittim wood; five for the boards of the one side of the tabernacle, [Exod 26:26](#);

32 And five bars for the boards of the other side of the tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the tabernacle for the sides westward. [Exod 26:27](#);

33 And he made the middle bar to shoot through the boards from the one end to the other. [Exod 26:28](#);

34 And he overlaid the boards with gold, and made their rings *of* gold *to be* places for the bars, and overlaid the bars with gold. [Exod 26:29](#);

The vail

35 And he made a vail *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen: *with* cherubims made he it of cunning work. [Exod 26:31](#);

36 And he made thereunto four pillars *of* shittim *wood*, and overlaid them with gold: their hooks *were of* gold; and he cast for them four sockets of silver. [Exod 26:32](#);

The hanging for the door

37 And he made a hanging for the tabernacle door *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, of needlework; [Exod 26:36](#);

38 And the five pillars of it with their hooks: and he overlaid their chapiters and their fillets with gold: but their five sockets *were of* brass. [Exod 26:37](#);

The ark and mercy seat with cherubims made

- 1** And Bezaleel made the ark *of* shittim wood: two cubits and a half *was* the length of it, and a cubit and a half the breadth of it, and a cubit and a half the height of it: [Exod 25:10](#);
- 2** And he overlaid it with pure gold within and without, and made a crown of gold to it round about.
- 3** And he cast for it four rings of gold, *to be set* by the four corners of it; even two rings upon the one side of it, and two rings upon the other side of it.
- 4** And he made staves *of* shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold.
- 5** And he put the staves into the rings by the sides of the ark, to bear the ark.
- 6** And he made the mercy seat *of* pure gold: two cubits and a half *was* the length thereof, and one cubit and a half the breadth thereof. [\[Exod 25:17\]](#);
- 7** And he made two cherubims *of* gold, beaten out of one piece made he them, on the two ends of the mercy seat;
- 8** One cherub on the end on this side, and another cherub on the *other* end on that side: out of the mercy seat made he the cherubims on the two ends thereof. [Exod 25:19](#);
- 9** And the cherubims spread out *their* wings on high, *and* covered with their wings over the mercy seat, with their faces one to another; *even* to the mercy seatward were the faces of the cherubims. [Exod 25:20](#);

The table of show-bread with its vessels

- 10** And he made the table *of* shittim wood: two cubits *was* the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof: [Exod 25:23](#);
- 11** And he overlaid it with pure gold, and made thereunto a crown of gold round about. [Exod 25:24](#);
- 12** Also he made thereunto a border of a handbreadth round about; and made a crown of gold for the border thereof round about. [Exod 25:25](#);
- 13** And he cast for it four rings of gold, and put the rings upon the four corners that *were* in the four feet thereof. [Exod 25:26](#);
- 14** Over against the border were the rings, the places for the staves to bear the table. [Exod 25:27](#);
- 15** And he made the staves *of* shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold, to bear the table.
- 16** And he made the vessels which *were* upon the table, his dishes, and his spoons, and his bowls, and his covers to cover withal, *of* pure gold. [Exod 25:29](#);

The candlestick with its lamps and instruments

- 17** And he made the candlestick *of* pure gold: *of* beaten work made he the candlestick; his shaft, and his branch, his bowls, his knops, and his flowers, were of the same: [Exod 25:31](#);
- 18** And six branches going out of the sides thereof; three branches of the candlestick out of the one side thereof, and three branches of the candlestick out of the other side thereof: [Exod 25:32](#);
- 19** Three bowls made after the fashion of almonds in one branch, a knop and a flower; and three bowls made like almonds in another branch, a knop and a flower: so throughout the six branches going out of the candlestick. [Exod 25:33](#);
- 20** And in the candlestick *were* four bowls made like almonds, his knops, and his flowers: [Exod 25:34](#);
- 21** And a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, according to the six branches going out of it.
- 22** Their knops and their branches were of the same: all of it *was* one beaten work *of* pure gold. [Exod 25:36](#);
- 23** And he made his seven lamps, and his snuffers, and his snuffdishes, *of* pure gold. [Exod 25:37-38](#);
- 24** *Of* a talent of pure gold made he it, and all the vessels thereof. [Exod 25:39](#);

The altar of incense

25 And he made the incense altar *of* shittim wood: the length of it *was* a cubit, and the breadth of it a cubit; *it was* foursquare; and two cubits *was* the height of it; the horns thereof were of the same. [Exod 30:1-2](#); [\[Exod 30:1\]](#);

26 And he overlaid it with pure gold, *both* the top of it, and the sides thereof round about, and the horns of it: also he made unto it a crown of gold round about. [Exod 30:3](#);

27 And he made two rings of gold for it under the crown thereof, by the two corners of it, upon the two sides thereof, to be places for the staves to bear it withal. [Exod 30:4](#);

28 And he made the staves *of* shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold. [Exod 30:5](#);

The anointing oil and sweet incense

29 And he made the holy anointing oil, and the pure incense of sweet spices, according to the work of the perfumer. [Exod 30:22](#); [Exod 30:34](#);

The altar of burnt offering

1 And he made the altar of burnt offering *of* shittim wood: five cubits *was* the length thereof, and five cubits the breadth thereof; *it was* foursquare; and three cubits the height thereof. [Exod 27:1](#); [[Exod 20:24](#)]; [[2Chr 1:5](#)];

2 And he made the horns thereof on the four corners of it; the horns thereof were of the same: and he overlaid it with brass. [Exod 27:2](#);

3 And he made all the vessels of the altar, the pots, and the shovels, and the basins, *and* the fleshhooks, and the firepans: all the vessels thereof made he *of* brass. [Exod 27:3](#);

4 And he made for the altar a brasen grate of network under the compass thereof beneath unto the midst of it. [Exod 27:4-5](#);

5 And he cast four rings for the four ends of the grate of brass, *to be* places for the staves.

6 And he made the staves *of* shittim wood, and overlaid them with brass.

7 And he put the staves into the rings on the sides of the altar, to bear it withal; he made the altar hollow with boards. [Exod 27:8](#);

The laver of brass

8 And he made the laver *of* brass, and the foot of it *of* brass, of the lookingglasses of *the women* assembling, which assembled *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. [Exod 30:18](#);

The court, and its hangings

9 And he made the court: on the south side southward the hangings of the court *were of* fine twined linen, a hundred cubits: [Exod 27:9](#);

10 Their pillars *were* twenty, and their brasen sockets twenty; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets *were of* silver.

11 And for the north side *the hangings were* a hundred cubits, their pillars *were* twenty, and their sockets of brass twenty; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets *of* silver.

12 And for the west side *were* hangings of fifty cubits, their pillars ten, and their sockets ten; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets *of* silver.

13 And for the east side eastward fifty cubits.

14 The hangings of the one side *of the gate were* fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.

15 And for the other side of the court gate, on this hand and that hand, *were* hangings of fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.

16 All the hangings of the court round about *were of* fine twined linen.

17 And the sockets for the pillars *were of* brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets *of* silver; and the overlaying of their chapiters *of* silver; and all the pillars of the court *were* filleted with silver.

18 And the hanging for the gate of the court *was* needlework, *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen: and twenty cubits *was* the length, and the height in the breadth *was* five cubits, answerable to the hangings of the court.

19 And their pillars *were* four, and their sockets *of* brass four; their hooks *of* silver, and the overlaying of their chapiters and their fillets *of* silver.

20 And all the pins of the tabernacle, and of the court round about, *were of* brass.

The sum of what the people offered, and the use to which it was applied

21 This is the sum of the tabernacle, *even* of the tabernacle of testimony, as it was counted, according to the commandment of Moses, *for* the service of the Levites, by the hand of Ithamar, son to Aaron the priest.

22 And Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, made all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

23 And with him *was* Aholiab, son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, an engraver, and a cunning workman, and an embroiderer in blue, and in purple, and in scarlet, and fine linen.

24 All the gold that was occupied for the work in all the work of the holy *place*, even the gold of the offering, was twenty and nine talents, and seven hundred and thirty shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary.

25 And the silver of them that were numbered of the congregation *was* a hundred talents, and a thousand seven hundred and threescore and fifteen shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary: [\[Exod 30:16\]](#);

26 A bekah for every man, *that is*, half a shekel, after the shekel of the sanctuary, for every one that went to be numbered, from twenty years old and upward, for six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty *men*. [\[Num 1:46\]](#); [\[Num 2:32\]](#);

27 And of the hundred talents of silver were cast the sockets of the sanctuary, and the sockets of the vail; a hundred sockets of the hundred talents, a talent for a socket.

28 And of the thousand seven hundred seventy and five shekels he made hooks for the pillars, and overlaid their chapiters, and filleted them.

29 And the brass of the offering *was* seventy talents, and two thousand and four hundred shekels.

30 And therewith he made the sockets to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and the brasen altar, and the brasen grate for it, and all the vessels of the altar,

31 And the sockets of the court round about, and the sockets of the court gate, and all the pins of the tabernacle, and all the pins of the court round about.

The cloths of service and holy garments

1 And of the blue, and purple, and scarlet, they made cloths of service, to do service in the holy *place*, and made the holy garments for Aaron; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 31:10](#); [Exod 35:19](#);

The ephod

2 And he made the ephod *of* gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen. [Exod 28:6](#);

3 And they did beat the gold into thin plates, and cut *it into* wires, to work *it* in the blue, and in the purple, and in the scarlet, and in the fine linen, *with* cunning work. [Exod 28:6](#);

4 They made shoulderpieces for it, to couple *it* together: by the two edges was it coupled together.

5 And the curious girdle of his ephod, that *was* upon it, *was* of the same, according to the work thereof; *of* gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 28:8](#);

6 And they wrought onyx stones inclosed in ouches of gold, graven, as signets are graven, with the names of the children of Israel. [Exod 28:9-11](#);

7 And he put them on the shoulders of the ephod, *that they should be* stones for a memorial to the children of Israel; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 28:12](#);

The breast-plate

8 And he made the breastplate *of* cunning work, like the work of the ephod; *of* gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen. [Exod 28:15](#);

9 It was foursquare; they made the breastplate double: a span *was* the length thereof, and a span the breadth thereof, *being* doubled. [Exod 28:16](#);

10 And they set in it four rows of stones: *the first row was* a sardius, a topaz, and a carbuncle: this *was* the first row. [Exod 28:17](#);

11 And the second row, an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. [Exod 28:18](#);

12 And the third row, a ligure, an agate, and an amethyst.

13 And the fourth row, a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper: *they were* inclosed in ouches of gold in their inclosings.

14 And the stones *were* according to the names of the children of Israel, twelve, according to their names, *like* the engravings of a signet, every one with his name, according to the twelve tribes.

15 And they made upon the breastplate chains at the ends, *of* wreathen work *of* pure gold.

16 And they made two ouches *of* gold, and two gold rings; and put the two rings in the two ends of the breastplate.

17 And they put the two wreathen chains of gold in the two rings on the ends of the breastplate.

18 And the two ends of the two wreathen chains they fastened in the two ouches, and put them on the shoulderpieces of the ephod, before it.

19 And they made two rings of gold, and put *them* on the two ends of the breastplate, upon the border of it, which *was* on the side of the ephod inward.

20 And they made two *other* golden rings, and put them on the two sides of the ephod underneath, toward the forepart of it, over against the *other* coupling thereof, above the curious girdle of the ephod.

21 And they did bind the breastplate by his rings unto the rings of the ephod with a lace of blue, that it might be above the curious girdle of the ephod, and that the breastplate might not be loosed from the ephod; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The robe of the ephod

22 And he made the robe of the ephod *of* woven work, all *of* blue. [\[Exod 28:31\]](#);

23 And *there was* a hole in the midst of the robe, as the hole of a habergeon, *with* a band round about the hole, that it should not rend.

24 And they made upon the hems of the robe pomegranates *of* blue, and purple, and scarlet, *and* twined linen.

25 And they made bells *of* pure gold, and put the bells between the pomegranates upon the hem of the robe, round about between the pomegranates;

26 A bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate, round about the hem of the robe to minister *in*; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The coats, mitre, and girdle of fine linen

27 And they made coats *of* fine linen *of* woven work for Aaron, and for his sons, [Exod 28:39](#);

28 And a mitre *of* fine linen, and goodly bonnets *of* fine linen, and linen breeches *of* fine twined linen, [Ezek 44:18](#);

29 And a girdle *of* fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, *of* needlework; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The plate of the holy crown

30 And they made the plate of the holy crown *of* pure gold, and wrote upon it a writing, *like to* the engravings of a signet, HOLINESS TO THE YAHWEH. [Exod 28:36](#); [Exod 29:6](#);

31 And they tied unto it a lace of blue, to fasten *it* on high upon the mitre; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 28:37](#);

All is finished, reviewed, and approved by Moses

32 Thus was all the work of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation finished: and the children of Israel did according to all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so did they.

33 And they brought the tabernacle unto Moses, the tent, and all his furniture, his taches, his boards, his bars, and his pillars, and his sockets, [Exod 35:11](#);

34 And the covering of rams' skins dyed red, and the covering of badgers' skins, and the vail of the covering,

35 The ark of the testimony, and the staves thereof, and the mercy seat,

36 The table, *and* all the vessels thereof, and the showbread, [Exod 31:8](#);

37 The pure candlestick, *with* the lamps thereof, *even with* the lamps to be set in order, and all the vessels thereof, and the oil for light,

38 And the golden altar, and the anointing oil, and the sweet incense, and the hanging for the tabernacle door,

39 The brasen altar, and his grate of brass, his staves, and all his vessels, the laver and his foot,

40 The hangings of the court, his pillars, and his sockets, and the hanging for the court gate, his cords, and his pins, and all the vessels of the service of the tabernacle, for the tent of the congregation,

41 The cloths of service to do service in the holy *place*, and the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and his sons' garments, to minister in the priest's office. [Exod 31:10](#);

42 According to all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so the children of Israel made all the work.

43 And Moses did look upon all the work, and, behold, they had done it as the YAHWEH had commanded, even so had they done it: and Moses blessed them.

The tabernacle is commanded to be reared, anointed, and consecrated

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** On the first day of the first month shall you set up the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation.
- 3** And you shall put therein the ark of the testimony, and cover the ark with the vail.
- 4** And you shall bring in the table, and set in order the things that are to be set in order upon it; and you shall bring in the candlestick, and light the lamps thereof. [Exod 26:35](#); [Exod 27:20](#);
- 5** And you shall set the altar of gold for the incense before the ark of the testimony, and put the hanging of the door to the tabernacle. [Exod 26:36](#);
- 6** And you shall set the altar of the burnt offering before the door of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation.
- 7** And you shall set the laver between the tent of the congregation and the altar, and shall put water therein.
- 8** And you shall set up the court round about, and hang up the hanging at the court gate. [Exod 27:16](#);
- 9** And you shall take the anointing oil, and anoint the tabernacle, and all that *is* therein, and shall hallow it, and all the vessels thereof: and it shall be holy.
- 10** And you shall anoint the altar of the burnt offering, and all his vessels, and sanctify the altar: and it shall be an altar most holy. [Exod 29:37](#);
- 11** And you shall anoint the laver and his foot, and sanctify it.
- 12** And you shall bring Aaron and his sons unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and wash them with water.

Aaron and his sons to be sanctified

- 13** And you shall put upon Aaron the holy garments, and anoint him, and sanctify him; that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.
- 14** And you shall bring his sons, and clothe them with coats:
- 15** And you shall anoint them, as you didst anoint their father, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office: for their anointing shall surely be an everlasting priesthood throughout their generations.

Moses performs all things accordingly

- 16** Thus did Moses: according to all that the YAHWEH commanded him, so did he.
- 17** And it came to pass in the first month in the second year, on the first *day* of the month, *that* the tabernacle was reared up. [Num 7:1](#);
- 18** And Moses reared up the tabernacle, and fastened his sockets, and set up the boards thereof, and put in the bars thereof, and reared up his pillars. [\[Num 7:1\]](#);
- 19** And he spread abroad the tent over the tabernacle, and put the covering of the tent above upon it; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 20** And he took and put the testimony into the ark, and set the staves on the ark, and put the mercy seat above upon the ark: [\[Exod 14:4\]](#);
- 21** And he brought the ark into the tabernacle, and set up the vail of the covering, and covered the ark of the testimony; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 35:12](#);
- 22** And he put the table in the tent of the congregation, upon the side of the tabernacle northward, without the vail.
- 23** And he set the bread in order upon it before the YAHWEH; as the YAHWEH had commanded Moses. [Exod 25:30](#);
- 24** And he put the candlestick in the tent of the congregation, over against the table, on the side of the tabernacle southward.

- 25** And he lighted the lamps before the YAHWEH; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 26** And he put the golden altar in the tent of the congregation before the veil:
- 27** And he burnt sweet incense thereon; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 28** And he set up the hanging *at* the door of the tabernacle.
- 29** And he put the altar of burnt offering *by* the door of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation, and offered upon it the burnt offering and the meat offering; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 30** And he set the laver between the tent of the congregation and the altar, and put water there, to wash *withal*.
- 31** And Moses and Aaron and his sons washed their hands and their feet thereat:
- 32** When they went into the tent of the congregation, and when they came near unto the altar, they washed; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 33** And he reared up the court round about the tabernacle and the altar, and set up the hanging of the court gate. So Moses finished the work.

A cloud covers the tabernacle

- 34** Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, and the glory of the YAHWEH filled the tabernacle. [Num 9:15](#); [1Kgs 8:10](#); [\[1Kgs 8:11\]](#); [\[Rev 15:8\]](#);
- 35** And Moses was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation, because the cloud abode thereon, and the glory of the YAHWEH filled the tabernacle.
- 36** And when the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the children of Israel went onward in all their journeys: [\[Num 9:22\]](#);
- 37** But if the cloud were not taken up, then they journeyed not till the day that it was taken up.
- 38** For the cloud of the YAHWEH *was* upon the tabernacle by day, and fire was on it by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel, throughout all their journeys. [Exod 13:21](#); [Num 14:14](#); [Deut 1:33](#); [Neh 9:19](#); [Ps 78:14](#); [Ps 105:39](#); [1Cor 10:1](#); [\[Neh 9:12\]](#);

Leviticus

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#)

LEVITICUS ONE

The law of burnt offerings

1 And the YAHWEH called unto Moses, and spoke unto him out of the tabernacle of the congregation, saying,

2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, If any man of you bring an offering unto the YAHWEH, you shall bring your offering of the cattle, *even* of the herd, and of the flock.

of the herd

3 If his offering *be* a burnt sacrifice of the herd, let him offer a male without blemish: he shall offer it of his own voluntary will at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the YAHWEH. [Exod 29:10](#); [\[Exod 12:5\]](#); [\[2Chr 23:18\]](#);

4 And he shall put his hand upon the head of the burnt offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him.

5 And he shall kill the bullock before the YAHWEH: and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall bring the blood, and sprinkle the blood round about upon the altar that *is by* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

6 And he shall flay the burnt offering, and cut it into his pieces.

7 And the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire upon the altar, and lay the wood in order upon the fire:

8 And the priests, Aaron's sons, shall lay the parts, the head, and the fat, in order upon the wood that *is* on the fire which *is* upon the altar:

9 But his inwards and his legs shall he wash in water: and the priest shall burn all on the altar, *to be* a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.

of the flocks

10 And if his offering *be* of the flocks, *namely*, of the sheep, or of the goats, for a burnt sacrifice; he shall bring it a male without blemish.

11 And he shall kill it on the side of the altar northward before the YAHWEH: and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall sprinkle his blood round about upon the altar.

12 And he shall cut it into his pieces, with his head and his fat: and the priest shall lay them in order on the wood that *is* on the fire which *is* upon the altar:

13 But he shall wash the inwards and the legs with water: and the priest shall bring *it* all, and burn *it* upon the altar: it *is* a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.

of the fowls

14 And if the burnt sacrifice for his offering to the YAHWEH *be* of fowls, then he shall bring his offering of turtledoves, or of young pigeons.

15 And the priest shall bring it unto the altar, and wring off his head, and burn *it* on the altar; and the blood thereof shall be wrung out at the side of the altar: [\[Lev 5:8\]](#); [\[Lev 5:10\]](#);

16 And he shall pluck away his crop with his feathers, and cast it beside the altar on the east part, by the place of the ashes:

17 And he shall cleave it with the wings thereof, *but* shall not divide *it* asunder: and the priest shall burn it upon the altar, upon the wood that *is* upon the fire: it *is* a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.

LEVITICUS TWO

The meat offering of flour with oil and incense

1 And when any will offer a meat offering unto the YAHWEH, his offering shall be *of* fine flour; and he shall pour oil upon it, and put frankincense thereon: [Lev 6:14](#); [Lev 9:17](#); [Num 15:4](#); [\[Num 28:5\]](#); [\[Amos 4:5\]](#);

2 And he shall bring it to Aaron's sons the priests: and he shall take thereout his handful of the flour thereof, and of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof; and the priest shall burn the memorial of it upon the altar, *to be* an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH: [Lev 6:15](#); [\[Lev 5:12\]](#);

3 And the remnant of the meat offering *shall be* Aaron's and his sons': *it is* a thing most holy of the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire. [Lev 10:12](#); [\[Lev 5:13\]](#); [\[Lev 10:13\]](#);

either baked in the oven

4 And if you bring an oblation of a meat offering baked in the oven, *it shall be* unleavened cakes of fine flour mingled with oil, or unleavened wafers anointed with oil.

or on a plate

5 And if thy oblation *be* a meat offering *baken* in a pan, it shall be *of* fine flour unleavened, mingled with oil.

6 *you* shall part it in pieces, and pour oil thereon: *it is* a meat offering.

or in a frying-pan

7 And if thy oblation *be* a meat offering *baken* in the fryingpan, it shall be made *of* fine flour with oil.

8 And you shall bring the meat offering that is made of these things unto the YAHWEH: and when it is presented unto the priest, he shall bring it unto the altar.

9 And the priest shall take from the meat offering a memorial thereof, and shall burn *it* upon the altar: *it is* an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH. [\[Lev 6:15\]](#);

10 And that which is left of the meat offering *shall be* Aaron's and his sons': *it is* a thing most holy of the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire.

11 No meat offering, which you shall bring unto the YAHWEH, shall be made with leaven: for you shall burn no leaven, nor any honey, in any offering of the YAHWEH made by fire.

The first fruits not to be burnt on the altar

12 As for the oblation of the firstfruits, you shall offer them unto the YAHWEH: but they shall not be burnt on the altar for a sweet savour.

Salt to be used with every offering

13 And every oblation of thy meat offering shall you season with salt; neither shall you suffer the salt of the covenant of thy Elohim to be lacking from thy meat offering: with all thine offerings you shall offer salt. [Mark 9:49](#);

The offering of first fruits in the ear

14 And if you offer a grain offering of thy firstfruits unto the YAHWEH, you shall offer for the grain offering of thy firstfruits kernels of grain from fresh ears, dry-roasted with fire. [\[Deut 26:2\]](#); [\[Josh 5:11\]](#);

15 And you shall put oil upon it, and lay frankincense thereon: *it is* a grain offering. [\[Amos 4:5\]](#);

16 And the priest shall burn the memorial portion of it, its grits and olive oil, with all the frankincense thereof: *it is* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

LEVITICUS THREE

The peace offering of the herd

1 And if his oblation *be* a sacrifice of peace offering, if he offer *it* of the herd; whether *it be* a male or female, he shall offer it without blemish before the YAHWEH.

2 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of his offering, and kill it *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation: and Aaron's sons the priests shall sprinkle the blood upon the altar round about.

3 And he shall offer of the sacrifice of the peace offering an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that *is* upon the inwards, [Exod 29:13](#); [Exod 29:22](#); [\[Lev 4:8\]](#); [\[Lev 4:31\]](#);

4 And the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* on them, which *is* by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away.

5 And Aaron's sons shall burn it on the altar upon the burnt sacrifice, which *is* upon the wood that *is* on the fire: *it is* an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH. [Exod 29:25](#); [Lev 6:12](#); [\[Lev 4:10\]](#);

of the flock

6 And if his offering for a sacrifice of peace offering unto the YAHWEH *be* of the flock; male or female, he shall offer it without blemish.

whether a lamb

7 If he offer a lamb for his offering, then shall he offer it before the YAHWEH.

8 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of his offering, and kill it before the tabernacle of the congregation: and Aaron's sons shall sprinkle the blood thereof round about upon the altar.

9 And he shall offer of the sacrifice of the peace offering an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH; the fat thereof, *and* the whole rump, it shall he take off hard by the backbone; and the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that *is* upon the inwards,

10 And the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* upon them, which *is* by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away.

11 And the priest shall burn it upon the altar: *it is* the food of the offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH. [Lev 21:6](#); [Lev 21:8](#); [Lev 21:17](#); [Lev 21:21-22](#); [Lev 22:25](#); [Ezek 44:7](#); [Mal 1:12](#);

or a goat

12 And if his offering *be* a goat, then he shall offer it before the YAHWEH.

13 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of it, and kill it before the tabernacle of the congregation: and the sons of Aaron shall sprinkle the blood thereof upon the altar round about.

14 And he shall offer thereof his offering, *even* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that *is* upon the inwards, [\[Lev 4:31\]](#);

15 And the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* upon them, which *is* by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away.

16 And the priest shall burn them upon the altar: *it is* the food of the offering made by fire for a sweet savour: all the fat *is* the YAHWEH'S.

A prohibition to eat fat or blood

17 *It shall be* a perpetual statute for your generations throughout all your dwellings, that you eat neither fat nor blood. [Gen 9:4](#); [Lev 7:26](#); [Lev 17:10](#); [Lev 17:14](#); [\[Ezek 33:25\]](#);

The sin offering of ignorance

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If a being shall sin through ignorance against any of the commandments of the YAHWEH *concerning things* which ought not to be done, and shall do against any of them:

for the priest

3 If the priest that is anointed do sin according to the sin of the people; then let him bring for his sin, which he has sinned, a young bullock without blemish unto the YAHWEH for a sin offering.

4 And he shall bring the bullock unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the YAHWEH; and shall lay his hand upon the bullock's head, and kill the bullock before the YAHWEH.

5 And the priest that is anointed shall take of the bullock's blood, and bring it to the tabernacle of the congregation: [Lev 16:14](#); [Num 19:4](#); [\[Lev 6:30\]](#); [\[Lev 10:18\]](#);

6 And the priest shall dip his finger in the blood, and sprinkle of the blood seven times before the YAHWEH, before the vail of the sanctuary. [\[Lev 16:14\]](#);

7 And the priest shall put *some* of the blood upon the horns of the altar of sweet incense before the YAHWEH, which *is* in the tabernacle of the congregation; and shall pour all the blood of the bullock at the bottom of the altar of the burnt offering, which *is at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. [Lev 9:9](#);

8 And he shall take off from it all the fat of the bullock for the sin offering; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that *is* upon the inwards, [Lev 3:3-4](#);

9 And the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* upon them, which *is* by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away,

10 As it was taken off from the bullock of the sacrifice of peace offerings: and the priest shall burn them upon the altar of the burnt offering. [Lev 3:5](#);

11 And the skin of the bullock, and all his flesh, with his head, and with his legs, and his inwards, and his dung, [Exod 29:14](#); [Num 19:5](#); [\[Lev 8:17\]](#);

12 Even the whole bullock shall he carry forth without the camp unto a clean place, where the ashes are poured out, and burn him on the wood with fire: where the ashes are poured out shall he be burnt. [Lev 16:27](#); [Num 19:3](#); [Heb 13:11](#); [\[Exod 29:14\]](#);

for the congregation

13 And if the whole congregation of Israel sin through ignorance, and the thing be hid from the eyes of the assembly, and they have done *somewhat against* any of the commandments of the YAHWEH *concerning things* which should not be done, and are guilty; [Lev 9:15](#); [Num 15:24](#);

14 When the sin, which they have sinned against it, is known, then the congregation shall offer a young bullock for the sin, and bring him before the tabernacle of the congregation. [\[2Chr 29:21\]](#);

15 And the elders of the congregation shall lay their hands upon the head of the bullock before the YAHWEH: and the bullock shall be killed before the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 29:23\]](#);

16 And the priest that is anointed shall bring of the bullock's blood to the tabernacle of the congregation:

17 And the priest shall dip his finger *in some* of the blood, and sprinkle *it* seven times before the YAHWEH, *even* before the vail.

18 And he shall put *some* of the blood upon the horns of the altar which *is* before the YAHWEH, that *is* in the tabernacle of the congregation, and shall pour out all the blood at the bottom of the altar of the burnt offering, which *is at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

19 And he shall take all his fat from him, and burn *it* upon the altar.

20 And he shall do with the bullock as he did with the bullock for a sin offering, so shall he do with this: and the priest shall make an atonement for them, and it shall be forgiven them.

21 And he shall carry forth the bullock without the camp, and burn him as he burned the first bullock: it *is* a sin offering for the congregation. [\[Heb 13:11\];](#)

for the ruler

22 When a ruler has sinned, and done *somewhat* through ignorance *against* any of the commandments of the YAHWEH his Elohim *concerning things* which should not be done, and is guilty;

23 Or if his sin, wherein he has sinned, come to his knowledge; he shall bring his offering, a kid of the goats, a male without blemish:

24 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the goat, and kill it in the place where they kill the burnt offering before the YAHWEH: it *is* a sin offering.

25 And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin offering with his finger, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar of burnt offering, and shall pour out his blood at the bottom of the altar of burnt offering.

26 And he shall burn all his fat upon the altar, as the fat of the sacrifice of peace offerings: and the priest shall make an atonement for him as concerning his sin, and it shall be forgiven him.

for any of the people

27 And if any one of the common people sin through ignorance, while he doeth *somewhat against* any of the commandments of the YAHWEH *concerning things* which ought not to be done, and be guilty; [Num 15:27;](#)

28 Or if his sin, which he has sinned, come to his knowledge: then he shall bring his offering, a kid of the goats, a female without blemish, for his sin which he has sinned.

29 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the sin offering, and slay the sin offering in the place of the burnt offering.

30 And the priest shall take of the blood thereof with his finger, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar of burnt offering, and shall pour out all the blood thereof at the bottom of the altar.

31 And he shall take away all the fat thereof, as the fat is taken away from off the sacrifice of peace offerings; and the priest shall burn *it* upon the altar for a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH; and the priest shall make an atonement for him, and it shall be forgiven him. [Lev 3:3-4; Lev 3:14; Exod 29:18; \[Lev 17:6\];](#)

32 And if he bring a lamb for a sin offering, he shall bring it a female without blemish.

33 And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the sin offering, and slay it for a sin offering in the place where they kill the burnt offering.

34 And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin offering with his finger, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar of burnt offering, and shall pour out all the blood thereof at the bottom of the altar:

35 And he shall take away all the fat thereof, as the fat of the lamb is taken away from the sacrifice of the peace offerings; and the priest shall burn them upon the altar, according to the offerings made by fire unto the YAHWEH: and the priest shall make an atonement for his sin that he has committed, and it shall be forgiven him. [\[Lev 5:12\];](#)

He that sins in concealing his knowledge

1 And if a being sin, and hear the voice of swearing, and *is* a witness, whether he has seen or known *of it*; if he do not utter *it*, then he shall bear his iniquity. [[Prov 29:24](#)];

in touching an unclean thing

2 Or if a being touch any unclean thing, whether *it be* a carcase of an unclean beast, or a carcase of unclean cattle, or the carcase of unclean creeping things, and *if it* be hidden from him; he also shall be unclean, and guilty. [Hag 2:13](#); [2Cor 6:17](#);

3 Or if he touch the uncleanness of man, whatsoever uncleanness *it be* that a man shall be defiled withal, and it be hid from him; when he knoweth *of it*, then he shall be guilty.

or in making an oath

4 Or if a being swear, pronouncing with *his* lips to do evil, or to do good, whatsoever *it be* that a man shall pronounce with an oath, and it be hid from him; when he knoweth *of it*, then he shall be guilty in one of these.

5 And it shall be, when he shall be guilty in one of these *things*, that he shall confess that he has sinned in that *thing*:

His trespass offering, of the flock

6 And he shall bring his trespass offering unto the YAHWEH for his sin which he has sinned, a female from the flock, a lamb or a kid of the goats, for a sin offering; and the priest shall make an atonement for him concerning his sin.

of fowls

7 And if he be not able to bring a lamb, then he shall bring for his trespass, which he has committed, two turtledoves, or two young pigeons, unto the YAHWEH; one for a sin offering, and the other for a burnt offering. [Lev 12:8](#); [Luke 2:24](#);

8 And he shall bring them unto the priest, who shall offer *that* which *is* for the sin offering first, and wring off his head from his neck, but shall not divide *it* asunder: [Lev 1:15](#);

9 And he shall sprinkle of the blood of the sin offering upon the side of the altar; and the rest of the blood shall be wrung out at the bottom of the altar: it *is* a sin offering.

10 And he shall offer the second *for* a burnt offering, according to the manner: and the priest shall make an atonement for him for his sin which he has sinned, and it shall be forgiven him. [Lev 1:15](#);

or of flour

11 But if he be not able to bring two turtledoves, or two young pigeons, then he that sinned shall bring for his offering the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a sin offering; he shall put no oil upon it, neither shall he put *any* frankincense thereon: for it *is* a sin offering.

12 Then shall he bring it to the priest, and the priest shall take his handful of it, *even* a memorial thereof, and burn *it* on the altar, according to the offerings made by fire unto the YAHWEH: it *is* a sin offering. [Lev 2:2](#); [Lev 4:35](#);

13 And the priest shall make an atonement for him as touching his sin that he has sinned in one of these, and it shall be forgiven him: and *the remnant* shall be the priest's, as a meat offering. [Lev 2:3](#);

The trespass offering in sacrilege

14 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

15 If a being commit a trespass, and sin through ignorance, in the holy things of the YAHWEH; then he shall bring for his trespass unto the YAHWEH a ram without blemish out of the flocks, with thy estimation by shekels of silver, after the shekel of the sanctuary, for a trespass offering: [Lev 27:2-3](#); [Exod 30:13](#); [\[1Kgs 15:15\]](#);

16 And he shall make amends for the harm that he has done in the holy thing, and shall add the fifth part thereto, and give it unto the priest: and the priest shall make an atonement for him with the ram of the trespass offering, and it shall be forgiven him.

and in sins of ignorance

17 And if a being sin, and commit any of these things which are forbidden to be done by the commandments of the YAHWEH; though he wist *it* not, yet is he guilty, and shall bear his iniquity.

18 And he shall bring a ram without blemish out of the flock, with thy estimation, for a trespass offering, unto the priest: and the priest shall make an atonement for him concerning his ignorance wherein he erred and wist *it* not, and it shall be forgiven him.

19 It *is* a trespass offering: he has certainly trespassed against the YAHWEH.

The trespass offering for sins done wittingly

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[Num 5:6\];](#)
- 2** If a being sin, and commit a trespass against the YAHWEH, and lie unto his neighbour in that which was delivered him to keep, or in fellowship, or in a thing taken away by violence, or has deceived his neighbour;
- 3** Or have found that which was lost, and lies concerning it, and sweareth falsely; in any of all these that a man doeth, sinning therein: [Num 5:6;](#)
- 4** Then it shall be, because he has sinned, and is guilty, that he shall restore that which he took violently away, or the thing which he has deceitfully gotten, or that which was delivered him to keep, or the lost thing which he found,
- 5** Or all that about which he has sworn falsely; he shall even restore it in the principal, and shall add the fifth part more thereto, *and* give it unto him to whom it appertaineth, in the day of his trespass offering. [\[Num 5:7\];](#)
- 6** And he shall bring his trespass offering unto the YAHWEH, a ram without blemish out of the flock, with thy estimation, for a trespass offering, unto the priest:
- 7** And the priest shall make an atonement for him before the YAHWEH: and it shall be forgiven him for any thing of all that he has done in trespassing therein.

The law of the burnt offering

- 8** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 9** Command Aaron and his sons, saying, This *is* the law of the burnt offering: It *is* the burnt offering, because of the burning upon the altar all night unto the morning, and the fire of the altar shall be burning in it.
- 10** And the priest shall put on his linen garment, and his linen breeches shall he put upon his flesh, and take up the ashes which the fire has consumed with the burnt offering on the altar, and he shall put them beside the altar.
- 11** And he shall put off his garments, and put on other garments, and carry forth the ashes without the camp unto a clean place.
- 12** And the fire upon the altar shall be burning in it; it shall not be put out: and the priest shall burn wood on it every morning, and lay the burnt offering in order upon it; and he shall burn thereon the fat of the peace offerings. [\[Lev 3:5\];](#)
- 13** The fire shall ever be burning upon the altar; it shall never go out.

and of the meat offering

- 14** And this *is* the law of the meat offering: the sons of Aaron shall offer it before the YAHWEH, before the altar. [Num 15:4; \[Lev 2:1\];](#)
- 15** And he shall take of it his handful, of the flour of the meat offering, and of the oil thereof, and all the frankincense which *is* upon the meat offering, and shall burn *it* upon the altar *for* a sweet savour, *even* the memorial of it, unto the YAHWEH. [Lev 2:9; \[Lev 2:2\];](#)
- 16** And the remainder thereof shall Aaron and his sons eat: with unleavened bread shall it be eaten in the holy place; in the court of the tabernacle of the congregation they shall eat it. [\[Lev 10:13\];](#)
- 17** It shall not be baken with leaven. I have given it *unto them for* their portion of my offerings made by fire; it *is* most holy, as *is* the sin offering, and as the trespass offering.

18 All the males among the children of Aaron shall eat of it. *It shall be* a statute for ever in your generations concerning the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire: every one that toucheth them shall be holy. [Exod 29:37](#);

The offering at the consecration of a priest

19 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

20 This *is* the offering of Aaron and of his sons, which they shall offer unto the YAHWEH in the day when he is anointed; the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a meat offering perpetual, half of it in the morning, and half thereof between the evenings.

21 In a pan it shall be made with oil; *and when it is* baked, you shall bring it in: *and* the baken pieces of the meat offering shall you offer *for* a soothing aroma unto the YAHWEH.

22 And the priest of his sons that is anointed in his stead shall offer it: *it is* a statute for ever unto the YAHWEH; it shall be wholly burnt.

23 For every meat offering for the priest shall be wholly burnt: it shall not be eaten.

The law of the sin offering

24 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

25 Speak unto Aaron and to his sons, saying, This *is* the law of the sin offering: In the place where the burnt offering is killed shall the sin offering be killed before the YAHWEH: it *is* most holy.

26 The priest that offereth it for sin shall eat it: in the holy place shall it be eaten, in the court of the tabernacle of the congregation. [Hos 4:8](#); [\[Lev 10:18\]](#); [\[Prov 3:24\]](#);

27 Whatsoever shall touch the flesh thereof shall be holy: and when there is sprinkled of the blood thereof upon any garment, you shall wash that whereon it was sprinkled in the holy place.

28 But the earthen vessel wherein it is sodden shall be broken: if it be sodden in a brasen pot, it shall be both scoured, and rinsed in water. [\[Lev 15:12\]](#);

29 All the males among the priests shall eat thereof: it *is* most holy.

30 And no sin offering, whereof *any* of the blood is brought into the tabernacle of the congregation to reconcile *withal* in the holy *place*, shall be eaten: it shall be burnt in the fire. [Lev 4:5](#); [Heb 13:11](#); [\[Lev 16:27\]](#);

The law of the trespass offering

- 1** Likewise this *is* the law of the trespass offering: it *is* most holy.
- 2** In the place where they kill the burnt offering shall they kill the trespass offering: and the blood thereof shall he sprinkle round about upon the altar.
- 3** And he shall offer of it all the fat thereof; the rump, and the fat that covereth the inwards,
- 4** And the two kidneys, and the fat that *is* on them, which *is* by the flanks, and the caul *that is* above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away:
- 5** And the priest shall burn them upon the altar *for* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH: it *is* a trespass offering.
- 6** Every male among the priests shall eat thereof: it shall be eaten in the holy place: it *is* most holy.
- 7** As the sin offering *is*, so *is* the trespass offering: *there is* one law for them: the priest that maketh atonement therewith shall have *it*. [Lev 14:13];
- 8** And the priest that offereth any man's burnt offering, *even* the priest shall have to himself the skin of the burnt offering which he has offered.
- 9** And all the meat offering that is baked in the oven, and all that is dressed in the fryingpan, and in the pan, shall be the priest's that offereth it.
- 10** And every meat offering, mingled with oil, and dry, shall all the sons of Aaron have, one *as much* as another.

and of the peace offering

- 11** And this *is* the law of the sacrifice of peace offerings, which he shall offer unto the YAHWEH.

whether it be for a thanksgiving

- 12** If he offer it for a thanksgiving, then he shall offer with the sacrifice of thanksgiving unleavened cakes mingled with oil, and unleavened wafers anointed with oil, and cakes mingled with oil, of fine flour, fried. [Ps 116:17; [Ps 107:22];
- 13** Besides the cakes, he shall offer *for* his offering leavened bread with the sacrifice of thanksgiving of his peace offerings. [Amos 4:5];
- 14** And of it he shall offer one out of the whole oblation *for* a heave offering unto the YAHWEH, *and* it shall be the priest's that sprinkleth the blood of the peace offerings.
- 15** And the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace offerings for thanksgiving shall be eaten the same day that it is offered; he shall not leave any of it until the morning. [Lev 22:30];

or a vow, or a free will offering

- 16** But if the sacrifice of his offering *be* a vow, or a voluntary offering, it shall be eaten the same day that he offereth his sacrifice: and on the morrow also the remainder of it shall be eaten: [Lev 19:6];
- 17** But the remainder of the flesh of the sacrifice on the third day shall be burnt with fire.
- 18** And if *any* of the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace offerings be eaten at all on the third day, it shall not be accepted, neither shall it be imputed unto him that offereth it: it shall be an abomination, and the being that eateth of it shall bear his iniquity.
- 19** And the flesh that toucheth any unclean *thing* shall not be eaten; it shall be burnt with fire: and as for the flesh, all that be clean shall eat thereof.
- 20** But the being that eateth *of* the flesh of the sacrifice of peace offerings, that *pertain* unto the YAHWEH, having his uncleanness upon him, even that being shall be cut off from his people. [Lev 15:3];
- 21** Moreover the being that shall touch any unclean *thing*, *as* the uncleanness of man, or *any* unclean beast, or any abominable unclean *thing*, and eat of the flesh of the sacrifice of peace offerings, which *pertain* unto the YAHWEH, even that being shall be cut off from his people.

The fat and the blood are forbidden

22 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

23 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, you shall eat no manner of fat, of ox, or of sheep, or of goat.

24 And the fat of the beast that dieth of itself, and the fat of that which is torn with beasts, may be used in any other use: but you shall in no wise eat of it.

25 For whosoever eateth the fat of the beast, of which men offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH, even the being that eateth *it* shall be cut off from his people.

26 Moreover you shall eat no manner of blood, *whether it be* of fowl or of beast, in any of your dwellings. [Gen 9:4](#); [Lev 3:17](#); [Lev 17:14](#); [\[Deut 12:16\]](#);

27 Whatsoever being *it be* that eateth any manner of blood, even that being shall be cut off from his people. [\[Lev 17:10\]](#);

The priests' portion in the peace offerings

28 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

29 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, He that offereth the sacrifice of his peace offerings unto the YAHWEH shall bring his oblation unto the YAHWEH of the sacrifice of his peace offerings.

30 His own hands shall bring the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire, the fat with the breast, it shall he bring, that the breast may be waved *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH. [Exod 29:24](#);

31 And the priest shall burn the fat upon the altar: but the breast shall be Aaron's and his sons'. [\[Exod 29:28\]](#);

32 And the right shoulder shall you give unto the priest *for* a heave offering of the sacrifices of your peace offerings. [\[Lev 9:21\]](#);

33 He among the sons of Aaron, that offereth the blood of the peace offerings, and the fat, shall have the right shoulder for *his* part. [\[Lev 8:29\]](#);

34 For the wave breast and the heave shoulder have I taken of the children of Israel from off the sacrifices of their peace offerings, and have given them unto Aaron the priest and unto his sons by a statute for ever from among the children of Israel. [Exod 29:27](#); [Num 18:11](#); [\[Exod 29:28\]](#);

The whole summed up

35 This *is the portion* of the anointing of Aaron, and of the anointing of his sons, out of the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire, in the day *when* he presented them to minister unto the YAHWEH in the priest's office;

36 Which the YAHWEH commanded to be given them of the children of Israel, in the day that he anointed them, *by* a statute for ever throughout their generations.

37 This *is* the law of the burnt offering, of the meat offering, and of the sin offering, and of the trespass offering, and of the consecrations, and of the sacrifice of the peace offerings;

38 Which the YAHWEH commanded Moses in mount Sinai, in the day that he commanded the children of Israel to offer their oblations unto the YAHWEH, in the wilderness of Sinai.

LEVITICUS EIGHT

Moses consecrates Aaron and his sons

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Take Aaron and his sons with him, and the garments, and the anointing oil, and a bullock for the sin offering, and two rams, and a basket of unleavened bread; [Exod 28:1-2](#); [Exod 30:25](#); [[Exod 29:1](#)];
- 3** And gather you all the congregation together unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
- 4** And Moses did as the YAHWEH commanded him; and the assembly was gathered together unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
- 5** And Moses said unto the congregation, This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH commanded to be done. [Exod 29:4](#);
- 6** And Moses brought Aaron and his sons, and washed them with water.
- 7** And he put upon him the coat, and girded him with the girdle, and clothed him with the robe, and put the ephod upon him, and he girded him with the curious girdle of the ephod, and bound *it* unto him therewith. [Exod 28:4](#);
- 8** And he put the breastplate upon him: also he put in the breastplate the Urim and the Thummim. [Exod 28:30](#); [[Num 27:21](#)];
- 9** And he put the mitre upon his head; also upon the mitre, *even* upon his forefront, did he put the golden plate, the holy crown; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 28:36](#); [Exod 29:6](#);
- 10** And Moses took the anointing oil, and anointed the tabernacle and all that *was* therein, and sanctified them.
- 11** And he sprinkled thereof upon the altar seven times, and anointed the altar and all his vessels, both the laver and his foot, to sanctify them.
- 12** And he poured of the anointing oil upon Aaron's head, and anointed him, to sanctify him. [Ps 133:2](#);
- 13** And Moses brought Aaron's sons, and put coats upon them, and girded them with girdles, and put bonnets upon them; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 29:9](#);

Their sin offering

- 14** And he brought the bullock for the sin offering: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the bullock for the sin offering. [Exod 29:1](#); [[2Chr 29:22](#)];
- 15** And he slew *it*; and Moses took the blood, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar round about with his finger, and purified the altar, and poured the blood at the bottom of the altar, and sanctified it, to make reconciliation upon it.
- 16** And he took all the fat that *was* upon the inwards, and the caul *above* the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and Moses burned *it* upon the altar.
- 17** But the bullock, and his hide, his flesh, and his dung, he burnt with fire without the camp; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 29:14](#); [Lev 4:11](#);

Their burnt offering

- 18** And he brought the ram for the burnt offering: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 19** And he killed *it*; and Moses sprinkled the blood upon the altar round about.
- 20** And he cut the ram into pieces; and Moses burnt the head, and the pieces, and the fat.
- 21** And he washed the inwards and the legs in water; and Moses burnt the whole ram upon the altar: it *was* a burnt sacrifice for a sweet savour, *and* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 29:18](#);

The ram of consecration

22 And he brought the other ram, the ram of consecration: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram.

23 And he slew *it*; and Moses took of the blood of it, and put *it* upon the tip of Aaron's right ear, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot.

24 And he brought Aaron's sons, and Moses put of the blood upon the tip of their right ear, and upon the thumbs of their right hands, and upon the great toes of their right feet: and Moses sprinkled the blood upon the altar round about.

25 And he took the fat, and the rump, and all the fat that *was* upon the inwards, and the caul *above* the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and the right shoulder: [Exod 29:22](#);

26 And out of the basket of unleavened bread, that *was* before the YAHWEH, he took one unleavened cake, and a cake of oiled bread, and one wafer, and put *them* on the fat, and upon the right shoulder:

27 And he put all upon Aaron's hands, and upon his sons' hands, and waved them *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH. [Exod 29:24](#);

28 And Moses took them from off their hands, and burnt *them* on the altar upon the burnt offering: they *were* consecrations for a soothing aroma: it *is* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

29 And Moses took the breast, and waved it *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH: *for* of the ram of consecration it was Moses' part; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 29:26](#); [Lev 7:33](#);

30 And Moses took of the anointing oil, and of the blood which *was* upon the altar, and sprinkled *it* upon Aaron, *and* upon his garments, and upon his sons, and upon his sons' garments with him; and sanctified Aaron, *and* his garments, and his sons, and his sons' garments with him. [Exod 29:21](#);

The place and time of their consecration

31 And Moses said unto Aaron and to his sons, Boil the flesh *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation: and there eat it with the bread that *is* in the basket of consecrations, as I commanded, saying, Aaron and his sons shall eat it. [Exod 29:32](#); [Lev 24:9](#);

32 And that which remaineth of the flesh and of the bread shall you burn with fire.

33 And you shall not go out of the door of the tabernacle of the congregation *in* seven days, until the days of your consecration be at an end: for seven days shall he consecrate you.

34 As he has done this day, *so* the YAHWEH has commanded to do, to make an atonement for you.

35 Therefore shall you abide *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation day and night seven days, and keep the charge of the YAHWEH, that you die not: for so I am commanded. [\[Lev 10:3\]](#);

36 So Aaron and his sons did all things which the YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses.

The first offerings of Aaron, for himself and the people

- 1** And it came to pass on the eighth day, *that* Moses called Aaron and his sons, and the elders of Israel;
- 2** And he said unto Aaron, Take you a young calf for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering, without blemish, and offer *them* before the YAHWEH. [Exod 29:1](#);
- 3** And unto the children of Israel you shall speak, saying, Take you a kid of the goats for a sin offering; and a calf and a lamb, *both* of the first year, without blemish, for a burnt offering;
- 4** Also a bullock and a ram for peace offerings, to sacrifice before the YAHWEH; and a meat offering mingled with oil: for to day the YAHWEH will appear unto you.
- 5** And they brought *that* which Moses commanded before the tabernacle of the congregation: and all the congregation drew near and stood before the YAHWEH.
- 6** And Moses said, This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH commanded that you should do: and the glory of the YAHWEH shall appear unto you.
- 7** And Moses said unto Aaron, Go unto the altar, and offer thy sin offering, and thy burnt offering, and make an atonement for thyself, and for the people: and offer the offering of the people, and make an atonement for them; as the YAHWEH commanded. [Lev 16:6](#); [Heb 7:27](#); [[Heb 5:3](#)];

The sin offering

- 8** Aaron therefore went unto the altar, and slew the calf of the sin offering, which *was* for himself.
- 9** And the sons of Aaron brought the blood unto him: and he dipped his finger in the blood, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar, and poured out the blood at the bottom of the altar: [[Lev 4:7](#)];
- 10** But the fat, and the kidneys, and the caul above the liver of the sin offering, he burnt upon the altar; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 11** And the flesh and the hide he burnt with fire without the camp.

and the burnt offering for himself

- 12** And he slew the burnt offering; and Aaron's sons presented unto him the blood, which he sprinkled round about upon the altar. [[Exod 20:7](#)];
- 13** And they presented the burnt offering unto him, with the pieces thereof, and the head: and he burnt *them* upon the altar. [[Luke 10:7](#)];
- 14** And he did wash the inwards and the legs, and burnt *them* upon the burnt offering on the altar.

The offerings for the people

- 15** And he brought the people's offering, and took the goat, which *was* the sin offering for the people, and slew it, and offered it for sin, as the first. [Lev 4:13](#);
- 16** And he brought the burnt offering, and offered it according to the manner.
- 17** And he brought the meat offering, and took a handful thereof, and burnt *it* upon the altar, beside the burnt sacrifice of the morning. [Lev 2:1](#); [Exod 29:38](#);
- 18** He slew also the bullock and the ram *for* a sacrifice of peace offerings, which *was* for the people: and Aaron's sons presented unto him the blood, which he sprinkled upon the altar round about,
- 19** And the fat of the bullock and of the ram, the rump, and that which covereth *the inwards*, and the kidneys, and the caul *above* the liver:
- 20** And they put the fat upon the breasts, and he burnt the fat upon the altar:
- 21** And the breasts and the right shoulder Aaron waved *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH; as Moses commanded. [Lev 7:32](#);
- 22** And Aaron lifted up his hand toward the people, and blessed them, and came down from offering of the sin offering, and the burnt offering, and peace offerings.

Moses and Aaron bless the people

23 And Moses and Aaron went into the tabernacle of the congregation, and came out, and blessed the people: and the glory of the YAHWEH appeared unto all the people.

Fire comes from the Lord, upon the altar

24 And there came a fire out from before the YAHWEH, and consumed upon the altar the burnt offering and the fat: *which* when all the people saw, they shouted, and fell on their faces. [1Kgs 18:38](#); [2Chr 7:1](#);

Nadab and Abihu, for offering strange fire, are burnt by fire

1 And Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took either of them his censer, and put fire therein, and put incense thereon, and offered strange fire before the YAHWEH, which he commanded them not. [\[Lev 16:1\]; \[Num 3:4\]; \[1Chr 24:1\];](#)

2 And there went out fire from the YAHWEH, and devoured them, and they died before the YAHWEH. [Num 3:4; Num 26:61; 1Chr 24:2;](#)

3 Then Moses said unto Aaron, This *is it* that the YAHWEH spoke, saying, I will be sanctified in them that come nigh me, and before all the people I will be glorified. And Aaron held his peace. [Lev 8:35;](#)

4 And Moses called Mishael and Elzaphan, the sons of Uzziel the uncle of Aaron, and said unto them, Come near, carry your brethren from before the sanctuary out of the camp.

5 So they went near, and carried them in their coats out of the camp; as Moses had said.

Aaron and his sons are forbidden to mourn for them

6 And Moses said unto Aaron, and unto Eleazar and unto Ithamar, his sons, Uncover not your heads, neither rend your clothes; lest you die, and lest wrath come upon all the people: but let your brethren, the whole house of Israel, bewail the burning which the YAHWEH has kindled.

7 And you shall not go out from the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, lest you die: for the anointing oil of the YAHWEH *is* upon you. And they did according to the word of Moses. [Lev 21:12;](#)

The priests are forbidden wine when they are to go into the tabernacle

8 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Aaron, saying,

9 Do not drink wine nor strong drink, you, nor thy sons with you, when you go into the tabernacle of the congregation, lest you die: *it shall be* a statute for ever throughout your generations: [\[Titus 1:7\];](#)

10 And that you may put difference between holy and unholy, and between unclean and clean; [\[Ezek 22:26\];](#)

11 And that you may teach the children of Israel all the statutes which the YAHWEH has spoken unto them by the hand of Moses.

The law of eating the holy things

12 And Moses spoke unto Aaron, and unto Eleazar and unto Ithamar, his sons that were left, Take the meat offering that remaineth of the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire, and eat it without leaven beside the altar: for it *is* most holy: [\[Lev 2:3\]; \[Num 5:10\];](#)

13 And you shall eat it in the holy place, because it *is* thy due, and thy sons' due, of the sacrifices of the YAHWEH made by fire: for so I am commanded. [Lev 2:3; Lev 6:16;](#)

14 And the wave breast and heave shoulder shall you eat in a clean place; you, and thy sons, and thy daughters with you: for *they be* thy due, and thy sons' due, *which* are given out of the sacrifices of peace offerings of the children of Israel. [\[Exod 29:28\]; \[Exod 29:33\]; \[Lev 22:13\]; \[Num 18:11\]; \[1Sam 2:28\];](#)

15 The heave shoulder and the wave breast shall they bring with the offerings made by fire of the fat, to wave *it for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH; and it shall be thine, and thy sons' with you, by a statute for ever; as the YAHWEH has commanded.

Aaron's excuse for transgressing thereof

16 And Moses diligently sought the goat of the sin offering, and, behold, it was burnt: and he was angry with Eleazar and Ithamar, the sons of Aaron *which were* left *alive*, saying,

17 Wherefore have you not eaten the sin offering in the holy place, seeing it *is* most holy, and *Elohim* has given it you to bear the iniquity of the congregation, to make atonement for them before the YAHWEH?

18 Behold, the blood of it was not brought in within the holy *place*: you should indeed have eaten it in the holy *place*, as I commanded. [Lev 4:5](#); [Lev 6:26](#); [Lev 16:27](#);

19 And Aaron said unto Moses, Behold, this day have they offered their sin offering and their burnt offering before the YAHWEH; and such things have befallen me: and *if* I had eaten the sin offering to day, should it have been accepted in the sight of the YAHWEH?

20 And when Moses heard *that*, he was content.

What beasts may

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and to Aaron, saying unto them, [\[Gen 7:2\]](#); [\[Gen 8:20\]](#);
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, These *are* the beasts which you shall eat among all the beasts that *are* on the earth. [Deut 14:4](#); [Acts 10:14](#); [\[Lev 20:25\]](#); [\[Col 2:16\]](#); [\[Heb 9:10\]](#);
3 Whatsoever parteth the hoof, and is clovenfooted, *and* cheweth the cud, among the beasts, that shall you eat.

and what may not be eaten

- 4** Nevertheless these shall you not eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that divide the hoof: *as* the camel, because he cheweth the cud, but divideth not the hoof; he *is* unclean unto you. [\[Acts 10:14\]](#); [\[Acts 11:8\]](#);
5 And the coney, because he cheweth the cud, but divideth not the hoof; he *is* unclean unto you.
6 And the hare, because he cheweth the cud, but divideth not the hoof; he *is* unclean unto you.
7 And the swine, though he divide the hoof, and be clovenfooted, yet he cheweth not the cud; he *is* unclean to you.
8 Of their flesh shall you not eat, and their carcase shall you not touch; they *are* unclean to you.

What fishes

- 9** These shall you eat of all that *are* in the waters: whatsoever has fins and scales in the waters, in the seas, and in the rivers, them shall you eat.
10 And all that have not fins and scales in the seas, and in the rivers, of all that move in the waters, and of any living thing which *is* in the waters, they *shall be* an abomination unto you:
11 They shall be even an abomination unto you; you shall not eat of their flesh, but you shall have their carcasses in abomination.
12 Whatsoever has no fins nor scales in the waters, that *shall be* an abomination unto you.

What fowls

- 13** And these *are they which* you shall have in abomination among the fowls; they shall not be eaten, they *are* an abomination: the eagle, and the ossifrage, and the ospray,
14 And the vulture, and the kite after its kind;
15 Every raven after its kind;
16 And the owl, and the night hawk, and the cuckow, and the hawk after its kind,
17 And the little owl, and the cormorant, and the great owl,
18 And the swan, and the pelican, and the gier eagle,
19 And the stork, the heron after her kind, and the lapwing, and the bat.
20 All fowls that creep, going upon *all* four, *shall be* an abomination unto you.
21 Yet these may you eat of every flying creeping thing that goes upon *all* four, which have legs above their feet, to leap withal upon the earth;
22 *Even* these of them you may eat; the locust after its kind, and the bald locust after its kind, and the beetle after its kind, and the grasshopper after its kind. [\[Mark 1:6\]](#);
23 But all *other* flying creeping things, which have four feet, *shall be* an abomination unto you.
24 And for these you shall be unclean: whosoever toucheth the carcase of them shall be unclean until the even.
25 And whosoever beareth *ought* of the carcase of them shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even.
26 *The carcasses* of every beast which divideth the hoof, and *is* not clovenfooted, nor cheweth the cud, *are* unclean unto you: every one that toucheth them shall be unclean.

27 And whatsoever goes upon his paws, among all manner of beasts that go on *all* four, those *are* unclean unto you: whoso toucheth their carcase shall be unclean until the even.

28 And he that beareth the carcase of them shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even: they *are* unclean unto you.

The creeping things which are unclean

29 These also *shall be* unclean unto you among the creeping things that creep upon the earth; the weasel, and the mouse, and the tortoise after its kind,

30 And the ferret, and the chameleon, and the lizard, and the snail, and the mole.

31 These *are* unclean to you among all that creep: whosoever touches them, when they be dead, shall be unclean until the even.

32 And upon whatsoever *any* of them, when they are dead, falls, it shall be unclean; whether *it be* any vessel of wood, or raiment, or skin, or sack, whatsoever vessel *it be*, wherein *any* work is done, it must be put into water, and it shall be unclean until the even; so it shall be cleansed. [Lev 15:12](#);

33 And every earthen vessel, whereinto *any* of them falleth, whatsoever *is* in it shall be unclean; and you shall break it. [\[Lev 15:12\]](#);

34 Of all meat which may be eaten, *that* on which *such* water cometh shall be unclean: and all drink that may be drunk in every *such* vessel shall be unclean.

35 And every *thing* whereupon *any part* of their carcase falleth shall be unclean; *whether it be* oven, or ranges for pots, they shall be broken down: *for they are* unclean, and shall be unclean unto you.

36 Nevertheless a fountain or pit, *wherein there is* plenty of water, shall be clean: but that which toucheth their carcase shall be unclean.

37 And if *any part* of their carcase fall upon any sowing seed which is to be sown, it *shall be* clean.

38 But if *any* water be put upon the seed, and *any part* of their carcase fall thereon, it *shall be* unclean unto you.

39 And if any beast, of which you may eat, die; he that toucheth the carcase thereof shall be unclean until the even.

40 And he that eateth of the carcase of it shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even: he also that beareth the carcase of it shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even. [\[Lev 17:15\]](#);

41 And every creeping thing that crawls upon the earth *shall be* an abomination; it shall not be eaten.

42 Whatsoever goes upon the belly, and whatsoever goes upon *all* four, or whatsoever has more feet among all creeping things that creep upon the earth, them you shall not eat; for they *are* an abomination.

43 **you** shall not make yourselves abominable with any creeping thing that crawls, neither shall you make yourselves unclean with them, that you should be defiled thereby.

44 For I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim: you shall therefore sanctify yourselves, and you shall be holy; for I *am* holy: neither shall you defile yourselves with any manner of creeping thing that crawls upon the earth. [Lev 19:2](#); [Lev 20:7](#); [1Pet 1:16](#);

45 For I *am* the YAHWEH that bringeth you up out of the land of Egypt, to be your Elohim: you shall therefore be holy, for I *am* holy.

46 This *is* the law of the beasts, and of the fowl, and of every living creature that moves in the waters, and of every creature that crawls upon the earth:

47 To make a difference between the unclean and the clean, and between the beast that may be eaten and the beast that may not be eaten.

The purification of a woman after childbirth

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If a woman have conceived seed, and born a man child: then she shall be unclean seven days; according to the days of the separation for her infirmity shall she be unclean.
- 3** And in the eighth day the flesh of his foreskin shall be circumcised. [Gen 17:12](#); [Luke 1:59](#); [Luke 2:21](#); [John 7:22](#); [\[Acts 15:1\]](#);
- 4** And she shall then continue in the blood of her purifying three and thirty days; she shall touch no hallowed thing, nor come into the sanctuary, until the days of her purifying be fulfilled.
- 5** But if she bear a maid child, then she shall be unclean two weeks, as in her separation: and she shall continue in the blood of her purifying threescore and six days.

Her offerings for her purifying

- 6** And when the days of her purifying are fulfilled, for a son, or for a daughter, she shall bring a lamb of the first year for a burnt offering, and a young pigeon, or a turtledove, for a sin offering, unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, unto the priest: [\[Luke 2:22\]](#);
- 7** Who shall offer it before the YAHWEH, and make an atonement for her; and she shall be cleansed from the issue of her blood. This *is* the law for her that has born a male or a female.
- 8** And if she be not able to bring a lamb, then she shall bring two turtles, or two young pigeons; the one for the burnt offering, and the other for a sin offering: and the priest shall make an atonement for her, and she shall be clean. [\[Lev 5:7\]](#); [\[Luke 2:24\]](#);

The laws and tokens whereby the priest is to be guided in discerning the leprosy

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and Aaron, saying,
- 2** When a man shall have in the skin of his flesh a rising, a scab, or bright spot, and it be in the skin of his flesh *like* the plague of leprosy; then he shall be brought unto Aaron the priest, or unto one of his sons the priests: [Deut 24:8]; [Matt 8:4]; [Mark 1:44]; [Luke 5:14]; [Luke 17:14];
- 3** And the priest shall look on the plague in the skin of the flesh: and *when* the hair in the plague is turned white, and the plague in sight *be* deeper than the skin of his flesh, it *is* a plague of leprosy: and the priest shall look on him, and pronounce him unclean. [Num 5:2];
- 4** If the bright spot *be* white in the skin of his flesh, and in sight *be* not deeper than the skin, and the hair thereof be not turned white; then the priest shall shut up *him that has* the plague seven days:
- 5** And the priest shall look on him the seventh day: and, behold, *if* the plague in his sight be at a stay, *and* the plague spread not in the skin; then the priest shall shut him up seven days more:
- 6** And the priest shall look on him again the seventh day: and, behold, *if* the plague *be* somewhat dark, *and* the plague spread not in the skin, the priest shall pronounce him clean: it *is but* a scab: and he shall wash his clothes, and be clean.
- 7** But if the scab spread much abroad in the skin, after that he has been seen of the priest for his cleansing, he shall be seen of the priest again:
- 8** And *if* the priest see that, behold, the scab spreadeth in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it *is* a leprosy.
- 9** When the plague of leprosy is in a man, then he shall be brought unto the priest;
- 10** And the priest shall see *him*: and, behold, *if* the rising *be* white in the skin, and it have turned the hair white, and *there be* quick raw flesh in the rising;
- 11** It *is* an old leprosy in the skin of his flesh, and the priest shall pronounce him unclean, and shall not shut him up: for he *is* unclean.
- 12** And if a leprosy break out abroad in the skin, and the leprosy cover all the skin of *him that has* the plague from his head even to his foot, wheresoever the priest looketh;
- 13** Then the priest shall consider: and, behold, *if* the leprosy have covered all his flesh, he shall pronounce *him* clean *that has* the plague: it is all turned white: he *is* clean.
- 14** But when raw flesh appeareth in him, he shall be unclean.
- 15** And the priest shall see the raw flesh, and pronounce him to be unclean: *for* the raw flesh *is* unclean: it *is* a leprosy.
- 16** Or if the raw flesh turn again, and be changed unto white, he shall come unto the priest;
- 17** And the priest shall see him: and, behold, *if* the plague be turned into white; then the priest shall pronounce *him* clean *that has* the plague: he *is* clean.
- 18** The flesh also, in which, *even* in the skin thereof, was a boil, and is healed,
- 19** And in the place of the boil there be a white rising, or a bright spot, white, and somewhat reddish, and it be showed to the priest;
- 20** And if, when the priest seeth it, behold, it *be* in sight lower than the skin, and the hair thereof be turned white; the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it *is* a plague of leprosy broken out of the boil.
- 21** But if the priest look on it, and, behold, *there be* no white hairs therein, and *if it be* not lower than the skin, but *be* somewhat dark; then the priest shall shut him up seven days:
- 22** And if it spread much abroad in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it *is* a plague.
- 23** But if the bright spot stay in his place, *and* spread not, it *is* a burning boil; and the priest shall pronounce him clean.
- 24** Or if there be *any* flesh, in the skin whereof *there is* a hot burning, and the quick *flesh* that burneth have a white bright spot, somewhat reddish, or white;

25 Then the priest shall look upon it: and, behold, *if* the hair in the bright spot be turned white, and it *be* *in* sight deeper than the skin; it *is* a leprosy broken out of the burning: wherefore the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it *is* the plague of leprosy.

26 But if the priest look on it, and, behold, *there be* no white hair in the bright spot, and it *be* no lower than the *other* skin, but *be* somewhat dark; then the priest shall shut him up seven days:

27 And the priest shall look upon him the seventh day: if it be spread much abroad in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it *is* the plague of leprosy.

28 And if the bright spot stay in his place, *and* spread not in the skin, but it *be* somewhat dark; it *is* a rising of the burning, and the priest shall pronounce him clean: for it *is* an inflammation of the burning.

29 If a man or woman have a plague upon the head or the beard;

30 Then the priest shall see the plague: and, behold, if it *be* in sight deeper than the skin; *and there be* in it a youlflow thin hair; then the priest shall pronounce him unclean: it *is* a dry scall, *even* a leprosy upon the head or beard.

31 And if the priest look on the plague of the scall, and, behold, it *be* not in sight deeper than the skin, and *that there is* no black hair in it; then the priest shall shut up *him that has* the plague of the scall seven days:

32 And in the seventh day the priest shall look on the plague: and, behold, *if* the scall spread not, and there be in it no youlflow hair, and the scall *be* not in sight deeper than the skin;

33 He shall be shaven, but the scall shall he not shave; and the priest shall shut up *him that has* the scall seven days more:

34 And in the seventh day the priest shall look on the scall: and, behold, *if* the scall be not spread in the skin, nor *be* in sight deeper than the skin; then the priest shall pronounce him clean: and he shall wash his clothes, and be clean.

35 But if the scall spread much in the skin after his cleansing;

36 Then the priest shall look on him: and, behold, if the scall be spread in the skin, the priest shall not seek for youlflow hair; he *is* unclean.

37 But if the scall be in his sight at a stay, and *that* there is black hair grown up therein; the scall is healed, he *is* clean: and the priest shall pronounce him clean.

38 If a man also or a woman have in the skin of their flesh bright spots, *even* white bright spots;

39 Then the priest shall look: and, behold, *if* the bright spots in the skin of their flesh *be* darkish white; it *is* a freckled spot *that* groweth in the skin; he *is* clean.

40 And the man whose hair is fallen off his head, he *is* bald; yet *is* he clean.

41 And he that has his hair fallen off from the part of his head toward his face, he *is* forehead bald: yet *is* he clean.

42 And if there be in the bald head, or bald forehead, a white reddish sore; it *is* a leprosy sprung up in his bald head, or his bald forehead.

43 Then the priest shall look upon it: and, behold, *if* the rising of the sore *be* white reddish in his bald head, or in his bald forehead, as the leprosy appeareth in the skin of the flesh;

44 He is a leprous man, he *is* unclean: the priest shall pronounce him utterly unclean; his plague *is* in his head.

45 And the leper in whom the plague *is*, his clothes shall be rent, and his head bare, and he shall put a covering upon his upper lip, and shall cry, Unclean, unclean. [Lam 4:15](#);

46 All the days wherein the plague *shall be* in him he shall be defiled; he *is* unclean: he shall dwell alone; without the camp *shall* his habitation *be*. [\[Num 5:2\]](#); [\[Num 12:14\]](#); [\[2Kgs 7:3\]](#);

47 The garment also that the plague of leprosy is in, *whether it be* a woollen garment, or a linen garment;

48 Whether *it be* in the warp, or woof; of linen, or of woollen; whether in a skin, or in any thing made of skin;

49 And if the plague be greenish or reddish in the garment, or in the skin, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in any thing of skin; it *is* a plague of leprosy, and shall be showed unto the priest:

50 And the priest shall look upon the plague, and shut up *it that has* the plague seven days:

51 And he shall look on the plague on the seventh day: if the plague be spread in the garment, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in a skin, *or* in any work that is made of skin; the plague *is* a fretting leprosy; it *is* unclean.

52 He shall therefore burn that garment, whether warp or woof, in woollen or in linen, or any thing of skin, wherein the plague is: for it *is* a fretting leprosy; it shall be burnt in the fire.

53 And if the priest shall look, and, behold, the plague be not spread in the garment, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in any thing of skin;

54 Then the priest shall command that they wash *the thing* wherein the plague *is*, and he shall shut it up seven days more:

55 And the priest shall look on the plague, after that it is washed: and, behold, *if* the plague have not changed his colour, and the plague be not spread; it *is* unclean; you shall burn it in the fire; it *is* fret inward, *whether* it *be* bore within or without.

56 And if the priest look, and, behold, the plague *be* somewhat dark after the washing of it; then he shall rend it out of the garment, or out of the skin, or out of the warp, or out of the woof:

57 And if it appear still in the garment, either in the warp, or in the woof, or in any thing of skin; it *is* a spreading *plague*: you shall burn that wherein the plague *is* with fire.

58 And the garment, either warp, or woof, or whatsoever thing of skin *it be*, which you shall wash, if the plague be departed from them, then it shall be washed the second time, and shall be clean.

59 This *is* the law of the plague of leprosy in a garment of woollen or linen, either in the warp, or woof, or any thing of skins, to pronounce it clean, or to pronounce it unclean.

The rites and sacrifices in cleansing the leper

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[Mark 1:44\];](#)
- 2** This shall be the law of the leper in the day of his cleansing: He shall be brought unto the priest: [Matt 8:4; Mark 1:44; Luke 5:14; Luke 17:14;](#)
- 3** And the priest shall go forth out of the camp; and the priest shall look, and, behold, *if* the plague of leprosy be healed in the leper;
- 4** Then shall the priest command to take for him that is to be cleansed two birds alive *and* clean, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop: [\[Ps 51:7\];](#)
- 5** And the priest shall command that one of the birds be killed in an earthen vessel over running water:
- 6** As for the living bird, he shall take it, and the cedar wood, and the scarlet, and the hyssop, and shall dip them and the living bird in the blood of the bird *that was* killed over the running water: [\[Ps 51:7\];](#)
- 7** And he shall sprinkle upon him that is to be cleansed from the leprosy seven times, and shall pronounce him clean, and shall let the living bird loose into the open field.
- 8** And he that is to be cleansed shall wash his clothes, and shave off all his hair, and wash himself in water, that he may be clean: and after that he shall come into the camp, and shall tarry abroad out of his tent seven days.
- 9** But it shall be on the seventh day, that he shall shave all his hair off his head and his beard and his eyebrows, even all his hair he shall shave off: and he shall wash his clothes, also he shall wash his flesh in water, and he shall be clean.
- 10** And on the eighth day he shall take two he lambs without blemish, and one ewe lamb of the first year without blemish, and three tenth deals of fine flour *for* a meat offering, mingled with oil, and one log of oil.
- 11** And the priest that maketh *him* clean shall present the man that is to be made clean, and those things, before the YAHWEH, *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation:
- 12** And the priest shall take one he lamb, and offer him for a trespass offering, and the log of oil, and wave them *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH: [Exod 29:24;](#)
- 13** And he shall slay the lamb in the place where he shall kill the sin offering and the burnt offering, in the holy place: for as the sin offering *is* the priest's, *so is* the trespass offering: it *is* most holy: [Lev 7:7;](#)
- 14** And the priest shall take *some* of the blood of the trespass offering, and the priest shall put *it* upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot:
- 15** And the priest shall take *some* of the log of oil, and pour *it* into the palm of his own left hand:
- 16** And the priest shall dip his right finger in the oil that *is* in his left hand, and shall sprinkle of the oil with his finger seven times before the YAHWEH:
- 17** And of the rest of the oil that *is* in his hand shall the priest put upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot, upon the blood of the trespass offering:
- 18** And the remnant of the oil that *is* in the priest's hand he shall pour upon the head of him that is to be cleansed: and the priest shall make an atonement for him before the YAHWEH. [\[Jas 5:11\];](#)
- 19** And the priest shall offer the sin offering, and make an atonement for him that is to be cleansed from his uncleanness; and afterward he shall kill the burnt offering:
- 20** And the priest shall offer the burnt offering and the meat offering upon the altar: and the priest shall make an atonement for him, and he shall be clean.
- 21** And if he *be* poor, and cannot get so much; then he shall take one lamb *for* a trespass offering to be waved, to make an atonement for him, and one tenth deal of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering, and a log of oil;
- 22** And two turtledoves, or two young pigeons, such as he is able to get; and the one shall be a sin offering, and the other a burnt offering.

23 And he shall bring them on the eighth day for his cleansing unto the priest, unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, before the YAHWEH.

24 And the priest shall take the lamb of the trespass offering, and the log of oil, and the priest shall wave them *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH:

25 And he shall kill the lamb of the trespass offering, and the priest shall take *some* of the blood of the trespass offering, and put *it* upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot:

26 And the priest shall pour of the oil into the palm of his own left hand:

27 And the priest shall sprinkle with his right finger *some* of the oil that *is* in his left hand seven times before the YAHWEH:

28 And the priest shall put of the oil that *is* in his hand upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot, upon the place of the blood of the trespass offering:

29 And the rest of the oil that *is* in the priest's hand he shall put upon the head of him that is to be cleansed, to make an atonement for him before the YAHWEH.

30 And he shall offer the one of the turtledoves, or of the young pigeons, such as he can get;

31 *Even* such as he is able to get, the one *for* a sin offering, and the other *for* a burnt offering, with the meat offering: and the priest shall make an atonement for him that is to be cleansed before the YAHWEH.

32 This *is* the law *of him* in whom *is* the plague of leprosy, whose hand is not able to get *that which pertaineth* to his cleansing.

The signs of leprosy in a house

33 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,

34 When you be come into the land of Canaan, which I give to you for a possession, and I put the plague of leprosy in a house of the land of your possession;

35 And he that owneth the house shall come and tell the priest, saying, It seemeth to me *there is* as it were a plague in the house:

36 Then the priest shall command that they empty the house, before the priest go *into it* to see the plague, that all that *is* in the house be not made unclean: and afterward the priest shall go in to see the house:

37 And he shall look on the plague, and, behold, *if* the plague *be* in the walls of the house with hollow strakes, greenish or reddish, which in sight *are* lower than the wall;

38 Then the priest shall go out of the house to the door of the house, and shut up the house seven days:

39 And the priest shall come again the seventh day, and shall look: and, behold, *if* the plague be spread in the walls of the house;

40 Then the priest shall command that they take away the stones in which the plague *is*, and they shall cast them into an unclean place without the city:

41 And he shall cause the house to be scraped within round about, and they shall pour out the dust that they scrape off without the city into an unclean place:

42 And they shall take other stones, and put *them* in the place of those stones; and he shall take other mortar, and shall plaister the house.

43 And if the plague come again, and break out in the house, after that he has taken away the stones, and after he has scraped the house, and after it is plaistered;

44 Then the priest shall come and look, and, behold, *if* the plague be spread in the house, it *is* a fretting leprosy in the house: it *is* unclean.

45 And he shall break down the house, the stones of it, and the timber thereof, and all the mortar of the house; and he shall carry *them* forth out of the city into an unclean place.

46 Moreover he that goes into the house all the while that it is shut up shall be unclean until the even.

47 And he that lies in the house shall wash his clothes; and he that eateth in the house shall wash his clothes.

The cleansing of that house

48 And if the priest shall come in, and look *upon it*, and, behold, the plague has not spread in the house, after the house was plastered: then the priest shall pronounce the house clean, because the plague is healed.

49 And he shall take to cleanse the house two birds, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop:

50 And he shall kill the one of the birds in an earthen vessel over running water:

51 And he shall take the cedar wood, and the hyssop, and the scarlet, and the living bird, and dip them in the blood of the slain bird, and in the running water, and sprinkle the house seven times:

52 And he shall cleanse the house with the blood of the bird, and with the running water, and with the living bird, and with the cedar wood, and with the hyssop, and with the scarlet:

53 But he shall let go the living bird out of the city into the open fields, and make an atonement for the house: and it shall be clean.

54 This *is* the law for all manner of plague of leprosy, and scall,

55 And for the leprosy of a garment, and of a house,

56 And for a rising, and for a scab, and for a bright spot:

57 To teach when *it is* unclean, and when *it is* clean: this *is* the law of leprosy.

The uncleanness of men in their issues

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and to Aaron, saying,
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When any man has a running issue out of his flesh, *because of* his issue he *is* unclean. [Lev 22:4]; [Num 5:2];
3 And this shall be his uncleanness in his issue: whether his flesh run with his issue, or his flesh be stopped from his issue, it *is* his uncleanness. [Lev 7:20];
4 Every bed, whereon he lies that has the issue, is unclean: and every thing, whereon he sitteth, shall be unclean.
5 And whosoever toucheth his bed shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.
6 And he that sitteth on *any* thing whereon he sat that has the issue shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.
7 And he that toucheth the flesh of him that has the issue shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.
8 And if he that has the issue spit upon him that is clean; then he shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.
9 And what saddle soever he rideth upon that has the issue shall be unclean.
10 And whosoever toucheth any thing that was under him shall be unclean until the even: and he that beareth *any of* those things shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.
11 And whomsoever he toucheth that has the issue, and has not rinsed his hands in water, he shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.
12 And the vessel of earth, that he toucheth which has the issue, shall be broken: and every vessel of wood shall be rinsed in water. [Lev 6:28; Lev 11:33; [Lev 11:32];

The cleansing of them

- 13** And when he that has an issue is cleansed of his issue; then he shall number to himself seven days for his cleansing, and wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in running water, and shall be clean.
14 And on the eighth day he shall take to him two turtledoves, or two young pigeons, and come before the YAHWEH unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and give them unto the priest:
15 And the priest shall offer them, the one *for* a sin offering, and the other *for* a burnt offering; and the priest shall make an atonement for him before the YAHWEH for his issue.
16 And if any man's seed of copulation go out from him, then he shall wash all his flesh in water, and be unclean until the even.
17 And every garment, and every skin, whereon is the seed of copulation, shall be washed with water, and be unclean until the even.
18 The woman also with whom man shall lie *with* seed of copulation, they shall *both* bathe *themselves* in water, and be unclean until the even.

The uncleanness of women in their issues

- 19** And if a woman have an issue, *and* her issue in her flesh be blood, she shall be put apart seven days: and whosoever toucheth her shall be unclean until the even. [2Sam 11:4];
20 And every thing that she lies upon in her separation shall be unclean: every thing also that she sitteth upon shall be unclean.
21 And whosoever toucheth her bed shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.

22 And whosoever toucheth any thing that she sat upon shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.

23 And if it *be* on *her* bed, or on any thing whereon she sitteth, when he toucheth it, he shall be unclean until the even.

24 And if any man lie with her at all, and her flowers be upon him, he shall be unclean seven days; and all the bed whereon he lies shall be unclean. [Lev 18:19](#);

25 And if a woman have an issue of her blood many days out of the time of her separation, or if it run beyond the time of her separation; all the days of the issue of her uncleanness shall be as the days of her separation: she *shall be* unclean. [Matt 9:20](#); [\[Mark 5:25\]](#); [\[Luke 8:43\]](#);

26 Every bed whereon she lies all the days of her issue shall be unto her as the bed of her separation: and whatsoever she sitteth upon shall be unclean, as the uncleanness of her separation.

27 And whosoever toucheth those things shall be unclean, and shall wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even.

Their cleansing

28 But if she be cleansed of her issue, then she shall number to herself seven days, and after that she shall be clean.

29 And on the eighth day she shall take unto her two turtles, or two young pigeons, and bring them unto the priest, to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

30 And the priest shall offer the one *for* a sin offering, and the other *for* a burnt offering; and the priest shall make an atonement for her before the YAHWEH for the issue of her uncleanness.

31 Thus shall you separate the children of Israel from their uncleanness; that they die not in their uncleanness, when they defile my tabernacle that *is* among them.

32 This *is* the law of him that has an issue, and *of him* whose seed goes from him, and is defiled therewith;

33 And of her that is sick of her flowers, and of him that has an issue, of the man, and of the woman, and of him that lies with her that is unclean.

How the high priest must enter into the holy place

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses after the death of the two sons of Aaron, when they offered before the YAHWEH, and died; [Lev 10:1-2](#);
- 2** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Speak unto Aaron thy brother, that he come not at all times into the holy *place* within the vail before the mercy seat, which *is* upon the ark; that he die not: for I will appear in the cloud upon the mercy seat. [Exod 30:10](#); [Heb 9:7](#); [\[1Kgs 8:12\]](#); [\[Heb 9:25\]](#);
- 3** Thus shall Aaron come into the holy *place*: with a young bullock for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering.
- 4** He shall put on the holy linen coat, and he shall have the linen breeches upon his flesh, and shall be girded with a linen girdle, and with the linen mitre shall he be attired: these *are* holy garments; therefore shall he wash his flesh in water, and *so* put them on.
- 5** And he shall take of the congregation of the children of Israel two kids of the goats for a sin offering, and one ram for a burnt offering.
- 6** And Aaron shall offer his bullock of the sin offering, which *is* for himself, and make an atonement for himself, and for his house. [Heb 7:27-28](#); [\[Lev 9:7\]](#); [\[Heb 5:3\]](#); [\[Heb 7:27\]](#);
- 7** And he shall take the two goats, and present them before the YAHWEH *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
- 8** And Aaron shall cast lots upon the two goats; one lot for the YAHWEH, and the other lot for Azazel.
- 9** And Aaron shall bring the goat upon which the YAHWEH'S lot fell, and offer him *for* a sin offering.
- 10** But the goat, on which the lot fell to be Azazel, shall be presented alive before the YAHWEH, to make an atonement with him, *and* to let him go to be removed into the wilderness.

The sin offering for himself

- 11** And Aaron shall bring the bullock of the sin offering, which *is* for himself, and shall make an atonement for himself, and for his house, and shall kill the bullock of the sin offering which *is* for himself:
- 12** And he shall take a censer full of burning coals of fire from off the altar before the YAHWEH, and his hands full of sweet incense beaten small, and bring *it* within the vail:
- 13** And he shall put the incense upon the fire before the YAHWEH, that the cloud of the incense may cover the mercy seat that *is* upon the testimony, that he die not:
- 14** And he shall take of the blood of the bullock, and sprinkle *it* with his finger upon the mercy seat eastward; and before the mercy seat shall he sprinkle of the blood with his finger seven times. [Lev 4:6](#); [Heb 9:25](#); [Heb 10:4](#); [\[Lev 4:5\]](#); [\[Heb 9:13\]](#);

The sin offering for the people

- 15** Then shall he kill the goat of the sin offering, that *is* for the people, and bring his blood within the vail, and do with that blood as he did with the blood of the bullock, and sprinkle it upon the mercy seat, and before the mercy seat:
- 16** And he shall make an atonement for the holy *place*, because of the uncleanness of the children of Israel, and because of their transgressions in all their sins: and so shall he do for the tabernacle of the congregation, that remaineth among them in the midst of their uncleanness.
- 17** And there shall be no man in the tabernacle of the congregation when he goes in to make an atonement in the holy *place*, until he come out, and have made an atonement for himself, and for his household, and for all the congregation of Israel. [\[Luke 1:9\]](#);
- 18** And he shall go out unto the altar that *is* before the YAHWEH, and make an atonement for it; and shall take of the blood of the bullock, and of the blood of the goat, and put *it* upon the horns of the altar round about.

19 And he shall sprinkle of the blood upon it with his finger seven times, and cleanse it, and hallow it from the uncleanness of the children of Israel.

Goat for Azazel removed

20 And when he has made an end of reconciling the holy *place*, and the tabernacle of the congregation, and the altar, he shall bring the live goat:

21 And Aaron shall lay both his hands upon the head of the live goat, and confess over him all the iniquities of the children of Israel, and all their transgressions in all their sins, putting them upon the head of the goat, and shall send *him* away by the hand of a fit man into the wilderness:

22 And the goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities unto a land not inhabited: and he shall let go the goat in the wilderness.

23 And Aaron shall come into the tabernacle of the congregation, and shall put off the linen garments, which he put on when he went into the holy *place*, and shall leave them there:

24 And he shall wash his flesh with water in the holy place, and put on his garments, and come forth, and offer his burnt offering, and the burnt offering of the people, and make an atonement for himself, and for the people.

25 And the fat of the sin offering shall he burn upon the altar.

26 And he that let go the goat for Azazel shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward come into the camp.

27 And the bullock *for* the sin offering, and the goat *for* the sin offering, whose blood was brought in to make atonement in the holy *place*, shall *one* carry forth without the camp; and they shall burn in the fire their skins, and their flesh, and their dung. [Lev 6:30](#); [Heb 13:11](#); [[Lev 4:12](#)]; [[Lev 10:18](#)];

28 And he that burneth them shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp.

The yearly feast of the expiations

29 And *this* shall be a statute for ever unto you: *that* in the seventh month, on the tenth *day* of the month, you shall afflict your beings, and do no work at all, *whether it be* one of your own country, or a stranger that sojourneth among you: [Lev 23:27](#); [[Num 29:7](#)];

30 For on that day shall *the priest* make an atonement for you, to cleanse you, *that* you may be clean from all your sins before the YAHWEH.

31 It *shall be* a Sabbath of rest unto you, and you shall afflict your beings, by a statute for ever. [[Lev 23:27](#)]; [[Num 29:7](#)];

32 And the priest, whom he shall anoint, and whom he shall consecrate to minister in the priest's office in his father's stead, shall make the atonement, and shall put on the linen clothes, *even* the holy garments:

33 And he shall make an atonement for the holy sanctuary, and he shall make an atonement for the tabernacle of the congregation, and for the altar, and he shall make an atonement for the priests, and for all the people of the congregation.

34 And this shall be an everlasting statute unto you, to make an atonement for the children of Israel for all their sins once a year. And he did as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 30:10](#); [Heb 9:7](#); [[Heb 9:25](#)];

The blood of all slain beasts must be offered to the Lord at the door of the tabernacle

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
2 Speak unto Aaron, and unto his sons, and unto all the children of Israel, and say unto them; This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH has commanded, saying,
3 What man soever *there be* of the house of Israel, that killeth an ox, or lamb, or goat, in the camp, or that killeth *it* out of the camp,
4 And bringeth it not unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, to offer an offering unto the YAHWEH before the tabernacle of the YAHWEH; blood shall be imputed unto that man; he has shed blood; and that man shall be cut off from among his people:
5 To the end that the children of Israel may bring their sacrifices, which they offer in the open field, even that they may bring them unto the YAHWEH, unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, unto the priest, and offer them *for* peace offerings unto the YAHWEH.
6 And the priest shall sprinkle the blood upon the altar of the YAHWEH *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and burn the fat for a soothing aroma unto the YAHWEH. [Exod 29:18](#); [Lev 4:31](#);

They must not offer to demons

- 7** And they shall no more offer their sacrifices unto satyrs, after whom they have gone a whoring. This shall be a statute for ever unto them throughout their generations. [\[1Cor 10:20\]](#);
8 And you shall say unto them, Whatsoever man *there be* of the house of Israel, or of the strangers which sojourn among you, that offereth a burnt offering or sacrifice,
9 And bringeth it not unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, to offer it unto the YAHWEH; even that man shall be cut off from among his people.

All eating of blood is forbidden

- 10** And whatsoever man *there be* of the house of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among you, that eateth any manner of blood; I will even set my face against that being that eateth blood, and will cut him off from among his people. [Gen 9:4](#); [Lev 3:17](#); [Lev 7:27](#); [Lev 19:26](#); [Deut 12:16](#); [Deut 12:23](#); [1Sam 14:33](#);
11 For the life of the flesh *is* in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your beings: for it *is* the blood *that* maketh an atonement for the being.
12 Therefore I said unto the children of Israel, No being of you shall eat blood, neither shall any stranger that sojourneth among you eat blood.
13 And whatsoever man *there be* of the children of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among you, which hunteth and catcheth any beast or fowl that may be eaten; he shall even pour out the blood thereof, and cover it with dust.
14 For *it is* the life of all flesh; the blood of it *is* for the life thereof: therefore I said unto the children of Israel, you shall eat the blood of no manner of flesh: for the life of all flesh *is* the blood thereof: whosoever eateth it shall be cut off. [Gen 9:4](#); [\[Lev 3:17\]](#); [\[Lev 7:26\]](#); [\[Acts 15:29\]](#);

and of all that dies by itself, or is torn

- 15** And every being that eateth that which died *of itself*, or that which was torn *with beasts, whether it be* one of your own country, or a stranger, he shall both wash his clothes, and bathe *himself* in water, and be unclean until the even: then shall he be clean. [Exod 22:31](#); [Lev 11:40](#); [Ezek 44:31](#); [\[Lev 22:8\]](#);
16 But if he wash *them* not, nor bathe his flesh; then he shall bear his iniquity.

Unlawful marriages, and unlawful lusts

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, I am the YAHWEH your Elohim.
- 3** After the doings of the land of Egypt, wherein you dwelt, shall you not do: and after the doings of the land of Canaan, whither I bring you, shall you not do: neither shall you walk in their ordinances. [\[Exod 23:24\]; \[Lev 20:23\]; \[2Kgs 17:8\]; \[2Kgs 17:19\];](#)
- 4** You shall do my judgments, and keep mine ordinances, to walk therein: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.
- 5** You shall therefore keep my statutes, and my judgments: which if a man do, he shall live in them: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Ezek 20:11; Ezek 20:13; Rom 10:5; Gal 3:12; \[Neh 9:29\]; \[Prov 7:2\];](#)
- 6** None of you shall approach to any that is near of kin to him, to uncover *their* nakedness: I *am* the YAHWEH.
- 7** The nakedness of thy father, or the nakedness of thy mother, shall you not uncover: she *is* thy mother; you shall not uncover her nakedness.
- 8** The nakedness of thy father's wife shall you not uncover: it *is* thy father's nakedness. [Lev 20:11; 1Cor 5:1; \[Ezek 22:10\];](#)
- 9** The nakedness of thy sister, the daughter of thy father, or daughter of thy mother, *whether she be* born at home, or born abroad, *even* their nakedness you shall not uncover. [\[Lev 20:17\]; \[Ezek 22:11\];](#)
- 10** The nakedness of thy son's daughter, or of thy daughter's daughter, *even* their nakedness you shall not uncover: for theirs *is* thine own nakedness.
- 11** The nakedness of thy father's wife's daughter, begotten of thy father, she *is* thy sister, you shall not uncover her nakedness. [Lev 20:17;](#)
- 12** You shall not uncover the nakedness of thy father's sister: she *is* thy father's near kinswoman. [Lev 20:19;](#)
- 13** You shall not uncover the nakedness of thy mother's sister: for she *is* thy mother's near kinswoman.
- 14** You shall not uncover the nakedness of thy father's brother, you shall not approach to his wife: she *is* thine aunt. [Lev 20:20; Ezek 22:11;](#)
- 15** You shall not uncover the nakedness of thy daughter in law: she *is* thy son's wife; you shall not uncover her nakedness. [Lev 20:12; \[Ezek 22:11\];](#)
- 16** You shall not uncover the nakedness of thy brother's wife: it *is* thy brother's nakedness. [Lev 20:21; \[Matt 14:4\]; \[Mark 6:18\];](#)
- 17** You shall not uncover the nakedness of a woman and her daughter, neither shall you take her son's daughter, or her daughter's daughter, to uncover her nakedness; *for they are* her near kinswomen: it *is* wickedness. [Lev 20:14;](#)
- 18** Neither shall you take a wife to her sister, to vex *her*, to uncover her nakedness, beside the other in her life *time*.
- 19** Also you shall not approach unto a woman to uncover her nakedness, as long as she is put apart for her uncleanness. [Lev 20:18; \[Lev 15:24\]; \[2Sam 11:4\]; \[Ezek 18:6\]; \[Ezek 22:10\];](#)
- 20** Moreover you shall not lie carnally with thy neighbour's wife, to defile thyself with her. [Lev 20:10; \[Ezek 18:6\]; \[Ezek 22:11\];](#)
- 21** And you shall not let any of thy seed pass through *the fire* to Molech, neither shall you profane the name of thy Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Lev 20:2; Deut 18:10; 2Kgs 17:17; 2Kgs 23:10; \[2Kgs 16:3\]; \[2Chr 33:6\]; \[Ps 106:37\];](#)
- 22** You shall not lie with a male, as with a woman: it *is* abomination. [Lev 20:13; \[Rom 1:26\];](#)
- 23** Neither shall you lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith: neither shall any woman stand before a beast to lie down thereto: it *is* confusion. [Lev 20:15-16; \[Exod 22:19\]; \[Lev 20:15\];](#)
- 24** Defile not you yourselves in any of these things: for in all these the nations are defiled which I cast out before you: [\[Ezek 5:7\];](#)

25 And the land is defiled: therefore I do visit the iniquity thereof upon it, and the land itself vomiteth out her inhabitants. [\[Ezra 9:11\];](#)

26 You shall therefore keep my statutes and my judgments, and shall not commit *any* of these abominations; *neither* any of your own nation, nor any stranger that sojourneth among you: [Lev 20:22;](#)

27 (For all these abominations have the men of the land done, which *were* before you, and the land is defiled;) [\[Ezra 9:11\];](#)

28 That the land spue not you out also, when you defile it, as it spued out the nations that *were* before you. [\[Ezek 5:7\];](#)

29 For whosoever shall commit any of these abominations, even the beings that commit *them* shall be cut off from among their people.

30 Therefore shall you keep mine ordinance, that you commit not *any one* of these abominable customs, which were committed before you, and that you defile not yourselves therein: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [\[Lev 20:23\];](#)

A repetition of sundry laws

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say unto them, you shall be holy: for I the YAHWEH your Elohim *am* holy. [Lev 11:44](#); [Lev 20:7](#); [Lev 20:26](#); [1Pet 1:16](#);
- 3** You shall fear every man his mother, and his father, and keep my Sabbaths: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [Exod 20:12](#); [Exod 31:13](#); [Lev 26:2](#); [[Deut 5:16](#)];
- 4** Turn you not unto idols, nor make to yourselves molten gods: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [Exod 34:17](#);
- 5** And if you offer a sacrifice of peace offerings unto the YAHWEH, you shall offer it at your own will.
- 6** It shall be eaten the same day you offer it, and on the morrow: and if ought remain until the third day, it shall be burnt in the fire. [Lev 7:16](#);
- 7** And if it be eaten at all on the third day, it *is* abominable; it shall not be accepted.
- 8** Therefore *every one* that eateth it shall bear his iniquity, because he has profaned the hallowed thing of the YAHWEH: and that being shall be cut off from among his people.
- 9** And when you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not wholly reap the corners of thy field, neither shall you gather the gleanings of thy harvest. [Lev 23:22](#); [Deut 24:19](#);
- 10** And you shall not glean thy vineyard, neither shall you gather *every* grape of thy vineyard; you shall leave them for the poor and stranger: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.
- 11** You shall not steal, neither deal falsely, neither lie one to another. [Exod 20:15](#);
- 12** And you shall not swear by my name falsely, neither shall you profane the name of thy Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Exod 20:7](#); [Deut 5:11](#); [[Matt 5:33](#)];
- 13** You shall not defraud thy neighbour, neither rob *him*: the wages of him that is hired shall not abide with you all night until the morning. [Deut 24:14](#); [Jas 5:4](#); [[Job 24:10](#)]; [[Jer 22:13](#)]; [[Ezek 18:7](#)]; [[Matt 10:10](#)]; [[1Cor 9:14](#)]; [[1Tim 5:18](#)];
- 14** You shall not curse the deaf, nor put a stumblingblock before the blind, but shall fear thy Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH.
- 15** You shall do no unrighteousness in judgment: you shall not respect the person of the poor, nor honour the person of the mighty: *but* in righteousness shall you judge thy neighbour. [Deut 1:17](#); [Deut 16:19](#); [Prov 24:23](#); [[Exod 23:3](#)]; [[Prov 18:5](#)]; [[Prov 31:9](#)]; [[John 7:51](#)]; [[Jas 2:1](#)];
- 16** You shall not go up and down *as* a talebearer among thy people: neither shall you stand against the blood of thy neighbour: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Exod 23:1](#);
- 17** You shall not hate thy brother in thine heart: you shall in any wise rebuke thy neighbour, and not suffer sin upon him. [1John 2:9](#); [1John 2:11](#); [1John 3:15](#); [Matt 18:15](#); [Luke 17:3](#); [[Matt 19:19](#)];
- 18** You shall not avenge, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people, but you shall love thy neighbour as thyself: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Matt 5:39](#); [Matt 5:44](#); [Luke 6:27](#); [Rom 12:19](#); [1Cor 6:7](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [1Pet 3:9](#); [Matt 5:43](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [Rom 13:9](#); [Gal 5:14](#); [Jas 2:8](#); [[Mark 12:31](#)]; [[Luke 10:27](#)]; [[John 13:34](#)]; [[John 15:12](#)]; [[1Thess 4:9](#)]; [[1John 3:23](#)]; [[1John 4:21](#)];
- 19** You shall keep my statutes. you shall not let thy cattle gender with a diverse kind: you shall not sow thy field with mingled seed: neither shall a garment mingled of linen and woollen come upon you. [Deut 22:9](#);
- 20** And whosoever lies carnally with a woman, that *is* a bondmaid, betrothed to a husband, and not at all redeemed, nor freedom given her; she shall be scourged; they shall not be put to death, because she was not free.
- 21** And he shall bring his trespass offering unto the YAHWEH, unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, *even* a ram for a trespass offering.
- 22** And the priest shall make an atonement for him with the ram of the trespass offering before the YAHWEH for his sin which he has done: and the sin which he has done shall be forgiven him.

23 And when you shall come into the land, and shall have planted all manner of trees for food, then you shall count the fruit thereof as uncircumcised: three years shall it be as uncircumcised unto you: it shall not be eaten of. [\[Deut 20:6\]; \[Neh 10:35\];](#)

24 But in the fourth year all the fruit thereof shall be holy to praise the YAHWEH *withal*.

25 And in the fifth year shall you eat of the fruit thereof, that it may yield unto you the increase thereof: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

26 You shall not eat *any thing* with the blood: neither shall you use enchantment, nor observe times. [\[Gen 9:4\]; \[Lev 17:10\];](#)

27 You shall not round the corners of your heads, neither shall you mar the corners of thy beard. [Lev 19:27; \[Deut 14:1\];](#)

28 You shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, nor print any marks upon you: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Deut 14:1; \[Jer 16:6\]; \[1Thess 4:13\];](#)

29 Do not prostitute thy daughter, to cause her to be a whore; lest the land fall to whoredom, and the land become full of wickedness.

30 You shall keep my Sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary: I *am* the YAHWEH. [\[Lev 26:2\]; \[Neh 13:17\];](#)

31 Regard not them that have familiar spirits, neither seek after wizards, to be defiled by them: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [Lev 19:31; \[2Kgs 23:24\];](#)

32 You shall rise up before the hoary head, and honour the face of the old man, and fear thy Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH. [\[1Tim 5:1\];](#)

33 And if a stranger sojourn with you in your land, you shall not vex him. [Exod 22:21; \[Exod 23:9\];](#)

34 *But* the stranger that dwelleth with you shall be unto you as one born among you, and you shall love him as thyself; for you were strangers in the land of Egypt: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [\[Exod 22:21\];](#)

35 You shall do no unrighteousness in judgment, in meteyard, in weight, or in measure. [\[Ezek 45:10\];](#)

36 Just balances, just weights, a just ephah, and a just hin, shall you have: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, which brought you out of the land of Egypt. [Prov 11:1; Prov 16:11; Prov 20:10;](#)

37 Therefore shall you observe all my statutes, and all my judgments, and do them: I *am* the YAHWEH. [\[Deut 4:1\];](#)

Of him that gives of his seed to Moloch

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

2 Again, you shall say to the children of Israel, Whosoever *he be* of the children of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn in Israel, that giveth *any* of his seed unto Molech; he shall surely be put to death: the people of the land shall stone him with stones. [Lev 18:21](#); [\[2Kgs 16:3\]](#);

3 And I will set my face against that man, and will cut him off from among his people; because he has given of his seed unto Molech, to defile my sanctuary, and to profane my holy name. [\[2Kgs 17:17\]](#);

Of him that favors such an one

4 And if the people of the land do any ways hide their eyes from the man, when he giveth of his seed unto Molech, and kill him not:

5 Then I will set my face against that man, and against his family, and will cut him off, and all that go a whoring after him, to commit whoredom with Molech, from among their people.

Of going to wizards

6 And the being that turneth after such as have familiar spirits, and after wizards, to go a whoring after them, I will even set my face against that being, and will cut him off from among his people. [Lev 19:31](#);

Of sanctification

7 Sanctify yourselves therefore, and be you holy: for I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [Lev 11:44](#); [Lev 19:2](#); [1Pet 1:16](#);

8 And you shall keep my statutes, and do them: I *am* the YAHWEH which sanctify you. [\[Deut 4:1\]](#);

Of him that curses his parents

9 For every one that curses his father or his mother shall be surely put to death: he has cursed his father or his mother; his blood *shall be* upon him. [Exod 21:17](#); [Prov 20:20](#); [Matt 15:4](#); [\[Mark 7:10\]](#);

Of adultery

10 And the man that committeth adultery with *another* man's wife, *even he* that committeth adultery with his neighbour's wife, the adulterer and the adulteress shall surely be put to death. [Lev 18:20](#); [Deut 22:22](#); [John 8:5](#);

Of incest

11 And the man that lies with his father's wife has uncovered his father's nakedness: both of them shall surely be put to death; their blood *shall be* upon them. [Lev 18:8](#);

12 And if a man lie with his daughter in law, both of them shall surely be put to death: they have wrought confusion; their blood *shall be* upon them. [Lev 18:15](#);

Of sodomy

13 If a man also lies with a male, as he lies with a woman, both of them have committed an abomination: they shall surely be put to death; their blood *shall be* upon them. [Lev 18:22](#);

14 And if a man take a wife and her mother, it *is* wickedness: they shall be burnt with fire, both he and they; that there be no wickedness among you. [Lev 18:17](#);

Of bestiality

15 And if a man lie with a beast, he shall surely be put to death: and you shall slay the beast. [Lev 18:23](#); [\[Exod 22:19\]](#);

16 And if a woman approach unto any beast, and lie down thereto, you shall kill the woman, and the beast: they shall surely be put to death; their blood *shall be* upon them.

17 And if a man shall take his sister, his father's daughter, or his mother's daughter, and see her nakedness, and she see his nakedness; it *is* a wicked thing; and they shall be cut off in the sight of their people: he has uncovered his sister's nakedness; he shall bear his iniquity. [Lev 18:9](#); [\[Lev 18:11\]](#);

Of uncleanness

18 And if a man shall lie with a woman having her sickness, and shall uncover her nakedness; he has discovered her fountain, and she has uncovered the fountain of her blood: and both of them shall be cut off from among their people. [Lev 18:19](#);

19 And you shall not uncover the nakedness of thy mother's sister, nor of thy father's sister: for he uncovereth his near kin: they shall bear their iniquity. [Lev 18:12-13](#); [\[Lev 18:12\]](#);

20 And if a man shall lie with his uncle's wife, he has uncovered his uncle's nakedness: they shall bear their sin; they shall die childless. [Lev 18:14](#);

21 And if a man shall take his brother's wife, it *is* an unclean thing: he has uncovered his brother's nakedness; they shall be childless. [Lev 18:16](#); [\[Mark 6:18\]](#);

Obedience is required with holiness

22 You shall therefore keep all my statutes, and all my judgments, and do them: that the land, whither I bring you to dwell therein, spue you not out. [Lev 18:26](#);

23 And you shall not walk in the manners of the nation, which I cast out before you: for they committed all these things, and therefore I abhorred them. [Lev 18:3](#); [Lev 18:30](#);

24 But I have said unto you, you shall inherit their land, and I will give it unto you to possess it, a land that floweth with milk and honey: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, which have separated you from *other* people. [Exod 3:8](#);

25 You shall therefore put difference between clean beasts and unclean, and between unclean fowls and clean: and you shall not make your beings abominable by beast, or by fowl, or by any manner of living thing that crawls on the ground, which I have separated from you as unclean. [Lev 11:2](#); [Deut 14:4](#);

26 And you shall be holy unto me: for I the YAHWEH *am* holy, and have severed you from *other* people, that you should be mine. [\[Lev 19:2\]](#);

Wizards must be put to death

27 A man also or woman that has a familiar spirit, or that is a wizard, shall surely be put to death: they shall stone them with stones: their blood *shall be* upon them. [Deut 18:10](#); [1Sam 28:7](#); [\[2Kgs 23:24\]](#);

Of the priests' mourning

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Speak unto the priests the sons of Aaron, and say unto them, There shall none be defiled for the dead among his people: [Num 5:2];

2 But for his kin, that is near unto him, *that is*, for his mother, and for his father, and for his son, and for his daughter, and for his brother,

3 And for his sister a virgin, that is nigh unto him, which has had no husband; for her may he be defiled.

4 *But* he shall not defile himself, *being* a chief man among his people, to profane himself.

5 They shall not make baldness upon their head, neither shall they shave off the corner of their beard, nor make any cuttings in their flesh. [Lev 19:27]; [Deut 14:1];

Of their holiness

6 They shall be holy unto their Elohim, and not profane the name of their Elohim: for the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire, *and* the bread of their Elohim, they do offer: therefore they shall be holy. [Lev 3:11];

Of their marriages

7 They shall not take a wife *that is* a whore, or profane; neither shall they take a woman put away from her husband: for he *is* holy unto his Elohim.

Of their estimation

8 You shall sanctify him therefore; for he offereth the bread of thy Elohim: he shall be holy unto you: for I the YAHWEH, which sanctify you, *am* holy. [Lev 3:11];

Of the priest's daughter convicted of whoredom

9 And the daughter of any priest, if she profane herself by playing the whore, she profaneth her father: she shall be burnt with fire.

Of the high priest's holiness

10 And *he that is* the high priest among his brethren, upon whose head the anointing oil was poured, and that is consecrated to put on the garments, shall not uncover his head, nor rend his clothes;

11 Neither shall he go in to any dead body, nor defile himself for his father, or for his mother;

12 Neither shall he go out of the sanctuary, nor profane the sanctuary of his Elohim; for the crown of the anointing oil of his Elohim *is* upon him: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Lev 10:7];

Of his marriage

13 And he shall take a wife in her virginity. [Ezek 44:22]; [2Cor 11:2];

14 A widow, or a divorced woman, or profane, *or* a harlot, these shall he not take: but he shall take a virgin of his own people to wife.

15 Neither shall he profane his seed among his people: for I the YAHWEH do sanctify him.

The priests that have blemishes must not minister in the sanctuary

16 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

17 Speak unto Aaron, saying, Whosoever *he be* of thy seed in their generations that has *any* blemish, let him not approach to offer the bread of his Elohim. [Lev 3:11];

18 For whatsoever man *he be* that has a blemish, he shall not approach: a blind man, or a lame, or he that has a flat nose, or any thing superfluous,

19 Or a man that is brokenfooted, or brokenhanded,

20 Or crookbackt, or a dwarf, or that has a blemish in his eye, or be scurvy, or scabbed, or has his stones broken;

21 No man that has a blemish of the seed of Aaron the priest shall come nigh to offer the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire: he has a blemish; he shall not come nigh to offer the bread of his Elohim. [[Lev 3:11](#)];

22 He shall eat the bread of his Elohim, *both* of the most holy, and of the holy.

23 Only he shall not go in unto the vail, nor come nigh unto the altar, because he has a blemish; that he profane not my sanctuaries: for I the YAHWEH do sanctify them.

24 And Moses told *it* unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the children of Israel.

The priests in their uncleanness must abstain from the holy things

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

2 Speak unto Aaron and to his sons, that they separate themselves from the holy things of the children of Israel, and that they profane not my holy name *in those things* which they hallow unto me: I *am* the YAHWEH.

3 Say unto them, Whosoever *he be* of all your seed among your generations, that goes unto the holy things, which the children of Israel hallow unto the YAHWEH, having his uncleanness upon him, that being shall be cut off from my presence: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Deut 23:4];

4 What man soever of the seed of Aaron *is* a leper, or has a running issue; he shall not eat of the holy things, until he be clean. And whoso toucheth any thing *that is* unclean *by* the dead, or a man whose seed goes from him; Lev 15:2;

5 Or whosoever toucheth any creeping thing, whereby he may be made unclean, or a man of whom he may take uncleanness, whatsoever uncleanness he has;

How they shall be cleansed

6 The being which has touched any such shall be unclean until even, and shall not eat of the holy things, unless he wash his flesh with water.

7 And when the sun is down, he shall be clean, and shall afterward eat of the holy things; because it *is* his food.

8 That which dieth of itself, or is torn *with beasts*, he shall not eat to defile himself therewith: I *am* the YAHWEH. Exod 22:31; Lev 17:15; Ezek 44:31;

9 They shall therefore keep mine ordinance, lest they bear sin for it, and die therefore, if they profane it: I the YAHWEH do sanctify them.

Who of the priest's house may eat of the holy things

10 There shall no stranger eat *of* the holy thing: a sojourner of the priest, or a hired servant, shall not eat *of* the holy thing.

11 But if the priest buy *any* being with his money, he shall eat of it, and he that is born in his house: they shall eat of his meat.

12 If the priest's daughter also be *married* unto a stranger, she may not eat of an offering of the holy things.

13 But if the priest's daughter be a widow, or divorced, and have no child, and is returned unto her father's house, as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's meat: but there shall no stranger eat thereof. Lev 10:14;

14 And if a man eat *of* the holy thing unwittingly, then he shall put the fifth *part* thereof unto it, and shall give *it* unto the priest with the holy thing.

15 And they shall not profane the holy things of the children of Israel, which they offer unto the YAHWEH;

16 Or suffer them to bear the iniquity of trespass, when they eat their holy things: for I the YAHWEH do sanctify them.

The sacrifices must be without blemish

17 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

18 Speak unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the children of Israel, and say unto them, Whatsoever *he be* of the house of Israel, or of the strangers in Israel, that will offer his oblation for all his vows, and for all his freewill offerings, which they will offer unto the YAHWEH for a burnt offering;

19 You *shall offer* at your own will a male without blemish, of the cattle, of the sheep, or of the goats.

20 *But* whatsoever has a blemish, *that* shall you not offer: for it shall not be acceptable for you. [Deut 15:21]; [Deut 17:1];

21 And whosoever offereth a sacrifice of peace offerings unto the YAHWEH to accomplish *his* vow, or a freewill offering in cattle or sheep, it shall be perfect to be accepted; there shall be no blemish therein. Deut 15:21; Deut 17:1; [Exod 12:5]; [Num 15:3];

22 Blind, or broken, or maimed, or having a wen, or scurvy, or scabbed, you shall not offer these unto the YAHWEH, nor make an offering by fire of them upon the altar unto the YAHWEH.

23 Either a bullock or a lamb that has any thing superfluous or lacking in his parts, that may you offer *for* a freewill offering; but for a vow it shall not be accepted.

24 You shall not offer unto the YAHWEH that which is bruised, or crushed, or broken, or cut; neither shall you make *any offering thereof* in your land.

25 Neither from a stranger's hand shall you offer the bread of your Elohim of any of these; because their corruption *is* in them, *and* blemishes *be* in them: they shall not be accepted for you. [Lev 3:11];

The age of the sacrifice

26 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

27 When a bullock, or a sheep, or a goat, is brought forth, then it shall be seven days under the dam; and from the eighth day and thenceforth it shall be accepted for an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH. [Exod 22:30]; [Exod 34:26];

28 And *whether it be* cow or ewe, you shall not kill it and her young both in one day.

The law of eating the sacrifice of thanksgiving

29 And when you will offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving unto the YAHWEH, offer *it* at your own will.

30 On the same day it shall be eaten up; you shall leave none of it until the morrow: I *am* the YAHWEH. Lev 7:15;

31 Therefore shall you keep my commandments, and do them: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Deut 4:1];

32 Neither shall you profane my holy name; but I will be hallowed among the children of Israel: I *am* the YAHWEH which hallow you,

33 That brought you out of the land of Egypt, to be your Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH.

The feasts of the Lord

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, *Concerning* the feasts of the YAHWEH, which you shall proclaim *to be* holy convocations, *even* these *are* my feasts. [\[Neh 10:31\]](#); [\[John 5:1\]](#); [\[Col 2:16\]](#);

The Sabbath

3 Six days shall work be done: but the seventh day *is* Sabbath of rest, a holy convocation; you shall do no work *therein*: it *is* a Sabbath of the YAHWEH in all your dwellings. [Exod 20:9](#); [Exod 23:12](#); [Deut 5:13](#); [Luke 13:14](#); [\[Exod 35:2\]](#); [\[Deut 5:12\]](#);

The passover

4 These *are* the feasts of the YAHWEH, *even* holy convocations, which you shall proclaim in their appointed times.

5 In the fourteenth *day* of the first month between the evenings *is* the YAHWEH'S passover. [Exod 12:18](#); [Exod 23:15](#); [Num 28:16](#); [Deut 16:1](#); [\[Num 9:2\]](#); [\[Ezra 6:19\]](#); [\[Ezek 45:21\]](#); [\[Luke 2:41\]](#); [\[John 6:4\]](#);

6 And on the fifteenth day of the same month *is* the feast of unleavened bread unto the YAHWEH: seven days you must eat unleavened bread.

7 In the first day you shall have a holy convocation: you shall do no servile work therein. [\[Num 28:18\]](#); [\[John 6:4\]](#);

8 But you shall offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH seven days: in the seventh day *is* a holy convocation: you shall do no servile work *therein*.

The sheaf of first-fruits

9 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

10 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you be come into the land which I give unto you, and shall reap the harvest thereof, then you shall bring a sheaf of the firstfruits of your harvest unto the priest: [\[Deut 26:2\]](#);

11 And he shall wave the sheaf before the YAHWEH, to be accepted for you: on the morrow after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it.

12 And you shall offer that day when you wave the sheaf a he lamb without blemish of the first year for a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH.

13 And the meat offering thereof *shall be* two tenth deals of fine flour mingled with oil, an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH *for* a sweet savour: and the drink offering thereof *shall be* of wine, the fourth *part* of a hin.

14 And you shall eat neither bread, nor parched corn, nor green ears, until the selfsame day that you have brought an offering unto your Elohim: *it shall be* a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

The feast of Pentecost

15 And you shall count unto you from the morrow after the Sabbath, from the day that you brought the sheaf of the wave offering; seven Sabbaths shall be complete: [Deut 16:9](#); [\[Acts 2:1\]](#);

16 Even unto the morrow after the seventh Sabbath shall you number fifty days; and you shall offer a new meat offering unto the YAHWEH.

17 You shall bring out of your habitations two wave loaves of two tenth deals: they shall be of fine flour; they shall be baked with leaven; *they are* the firstfruits unto the YAHWEH. [\[Neh 10:37\]](#);

18 And you shall offer with the bread seven lambs without blemish of the first year, and one young bullock, and two rams: they shall be *for* a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH, with their meat offering, and their drink offerings, *even* an offering made by fire, of soothing aroma unto the YAHWEH.

19 Then you shall sacrifice one kid of the goats for a sin offering, and two lambs of the first year for a sacrifice of peace offerings.

20 And the priest shall wave them with the bread of the firstfruits *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH, with the two lambs: they shall be holy to the YAHWEH for the priest.

21 And you shall proclaim on the selfsame day, *that* it may be a holy convocation unto you: you shall do no servile work *therein: it shall be* a statute for ever in all your dwellings throughout your generations.

Gleanings to be left for the poor

22 And when you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not make clean riddance of the corners of thy field when you reapest, neither shall you gather any gleaning of thy harvest: you shall leave them unto the poor, and to the stranger: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [Lev 19:9](#); [Deut 24:19](#);

The feast of trumpets

23 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

24 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, In the seventh month, in the first *day* of the month, shall you have a Sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, a holy convocation. [Num 29:1](#);

25 You shall do no servile work *therein*: but you shall offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

The day of atonement

26 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

27 Also on the tenth *day* of this seventh month *there shall be* a day of atonement: it shall be a holy convocation unto you; and you shall afflict your beings, and offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH. [Lev 16:29](#); [Lev 16:31](#); [Num 29:7](#);

28 And you shall do no work in that same day: for it *is* a day of atonement, to make an atonement for you before the YAHWEH your Elohim.

29 For whatsoever being *it be* that shall not be afflicted in that same day, he shall be cut off from among his people.

30 And whatsoever being *it be* that doeth any work in that same day, the same being will I destroy from among his people.

31 You shall do no manner of work: *it shall be* a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

32 It *shall be* unto you a Sabbath of rest, and you shall afflict your beings: in the ninth *day* of the month at even, from even unto even, shall you celebrate your Sabbath.

The feast of tabernacles

33 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[Ezek 45:25\]](#);

34 Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, The fifteenth day of this seventh month *shall be* the feast of tabernacles *for* seven days unto the YAHWEH. [Exod 23:16](#); [Num 29:12](#); [Deut 16:15](#); [\[Deut 16:13\]](#); [\[Ezra 3:4\]](#); [\[Neh 8:14\]](#); [\[John 7:2\]](#);

35 On the first day *shall be* a holy convocation: you shall do no servile work *therein*.

36 Seven days you shall offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH: on the eighth day shall be a holy convocation unto you; and you shall offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH: it *is* a solemn assembly; *and* you shall do no servile work *therein*. [John 7:37](#); [\[Num 29:35\]](#);

37 These *are* the feasts of the YAHWEH, which you shall proclaim *to be* holy convocations, to offer an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH, a burnt offering, and a meat offering, a sacrifice, and drink offerings, every thing upon his day:

38 Beside the Sabbaths of the YAHWEH, and beside your gifts, and beside all your vows, and beside all your freewill offerings, which you give unto the YAHWEH.

39 Also in the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when you have gathered in the fruit of the land, you shall keep a feast unto the YAHWEH seven days: on the first day *shall be* a Sabbath, and on the eighth day *shall be* a Sabbath.

40 And you shall take you on the first day the boughs of goodly trees, branches of palm trees, and the boughs of thick trees, and willows of the brook; and you shall rejoice before the YAHWEH your Elohim seven days.

41 And you shall keep it a feast unto the YAHWEH seven days in the year. *It shall be* a statute for ever in your generations: you shall celebrate it in the seventh month.

42 You shall dwell in booths seven days; all that are Israelites born shall dwell in booths:

43 That your generations may know that I made the children of Israel to dwell in booths, when I brought them out of the land of Egypt: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

44 And Moses declared unto the children of Israel the feasts of the YAHWEH.

The oil for the lamps

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
2 Command the children of Israel, that they bring unto you pure oil olive beaten for the light, to cause the lamps to burn continually. [\[Exod 27:20\];](#)
3 Without the vail of the testimony, in the tabernacle of the congregation, shall Aaron order it from the evening unto the morning before the YAHWEH continually: *it shall be* a statute for ever in your generations.
4 He shall order the lamps upon the pure candlestick before the YAHWEH continually.

The show-bread

- 5** And you shall take fine flour, and bake twelve cakes thereof: two tenth deals shall be in one cake. [\[Heb 9:2\];](#)
6 And you shall set them in two rows, six on a row, upon the pure table before the YAHWEH.
7 And you shall put pure frankincense upon *each* row, that it may be on the bread for a memorial, *even* an offering made by fire unto the YAHWEH.
8 Every Sabbath he shall set it in order before the YAHWEH continually, *being taken* from the children of Israel by an everlasting covenant.
9 And it shall be Aaron's and his sons'; and they shall eat it in the holy place: for it *is* most holy unto him of the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire by a perpetual statute. [Exod 29:32; Lev 8:31; 1Sam 21:6; Matt 12:4; \[Mark 2:26\]; \[Luke 6:4\];](#)

Shelomith's son blasphemeth

- 10** And the son of an Israelitish woman, whose father *was* an Egyptian, went out among the children of Israel: and this son of the Israelitish *woman* and a man of Israel strove together in the camp;
11 And the Israelitish woman's son blasphemed the name *of the YAHWEH*, and cursed. And they brought him unto Moses: (and his mother's name *was* Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan:)
12 And they put him in ward, that the mind of the YAHWEH might be showed them. [\[Num 15:34\];](#)

The law of blasphemy

- 13** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
14 Bring forth him that has cursed without the camp; and let all that heard *him* lay their hands upon his head, and let all the congregation stone him.
15 And you shall speak unto the children of Israel, saying, Whosoever curses his Elohim shall bear his sin.
16 And he that blasphemeth the name of the YAHWEH, he shall surely be put to death, *and* all the congregation shall certainly stone him: as well the stranger, as he that is born in the land, when he blasphemeth the name *of the YAHWEH*, shall be put to death. [\[Matt 26:66\]; \[John 19:7\];](#)

Of murder

- 17** And he that killeth any man shall surely be put to death. [\[Exod 21:12\]; \[Deut 19:11\];](#)

Of damage

- 18** And he that killeth a beast shall make it good; beast for beast.
19 And if a man cause a blemish in his neighbour; as he has done, so shall it be done to him;
20 Breach for breach, eye for eye, tooth for tooth: as he has caused a blemish in a man, so shall it be done to him *again*. [Exod 21:24; Deut 19:21; Matt 5:38;](#)
21 And he that killeth a beast, he shall restore it: and he that killeth a man, he shall be put to death.

22 You shall have one manner of law, as well for the stranger, as for one of your own country: for I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

The blasphemer is stoned

23 And Moses spoke to the children of Israel, that they should bring forth him that had cursed out of the camp, and stone him with stones. And the children of Israel did as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The Sabbath of the seventh year

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in mount Sinai, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you come into the land which I give you, then shall the land keep a Sabbath unto the YAHWEH. [Exod 23:10](#); [\[Lev 26:34\]](#); [\[Neh 10:31\]](#);
- 3** Six years you shall sow thy field, and six years you shall prune thy vineyard, and gather in the fruit thereof;
- 4** But in the seventh year shall be a Sabbath of rest unto the land, a Sabbath for the YAHWEH: you shall neither sow thy field, nor prune thy vineyard. [\[Exod 23:11\]](#);
- 5** That which groweth of its own accord of thy harvest you shall not reap, neither gather the grapes of thy vine undressed: *for* it is a year of rest unto the land.
- 6** And the Sabbath of the land shall be meat for you; for you, and for thy servant, and for thy maid, and for thy hired servant, and for thy stranger that sojourneth with you,
- 7** And for thy cattle, and for the beast that *are* in thy land, shall all the increase thereof be meat.

The jubilee in the fiftieth year

- 8** And you shall number seven Sabbaths of years unto you, seven times seven years; and the space of the seven Sabbaths of years shall be unto you forty and nine years.
- 9** Then shall you cause the trumpet of the jubile to sound on the tenth *day* of the seventh month, in the day of atonement shall you make the trumpet sound throughout all your land.
- 10** And you shall hallow the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout *all* the land unto all the inhabitants thereof: it shall be a jubile unto you; and you shall return every man unto his possession, and you shall return every man unto his family.
- 11** A jubile shall that fiftieth year be unto you: you shall not sow, neither reap that which groweth of itself in it, nor gather *the grapes* in it of thy vine undressed.
- 12** For it *is* the jubile; it shall be holy unto you: you shall eat the increase thereof out of the field.
- 13** In the year of this jubile you shall return every man unto his possession.

Of oppression

- 14** And if you sell ought unto thy neighbour, or buyest *ought* of thy neighbour's hand, you shall not oppress one another: [\[Ezek 18:7\]](#);
- 15** According to the number of years after the jubile you shall buy of thy neighbour, *and* according unto the number of years of the fruits he shall sell unto you:
- 16** According to the multitude of years you shall increase the price thereof, and according to the fewness of years you shall diminish the price of it: for *according* to the number *of the years* of the fruits does he sell unto you.
- 17** You shall not therefore oppress one another; but you shall fear thy Elohim: for I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

A blessing of obedience

- 18** Wherefore you shall do my statutes, and keep my judgments, and do them; and you shall dwell in the land in safety.
- 19** And the land shall yield her fruit, and you shall eat your fill, and dwell therein in safety. [\[Lev 26:5\]](#);
- 20** And if you shall say, What shall we eat the seventh year? behold, we shall not sow, nor gather in our increase:
- 21** Then I will command my blessing upon you in the sixth year, and it shall bring forth fruit for three years.

22 And you shall sow the eighth year, and eat yet of old fruit until the ninth year; until her fruits come in you shall eat *of* the old *store*.

The redemption of land

23 The land shall not be sold for ever: for the land *is* mine; for you *are* strangers and sojourners with me. [Ps 39:12];

24 And in all the land of your possession you shall grant a redemption for the land.

25 If thy brother be waxen poor, and has sold away *some* of his possession, and if any of his kin come to redeem it, then shall he redeem that which his brother sold.

26 And if the man have none to redeem it, and himself be able to redeem it;

27 Then let him count the years of the sale thereof, and restore the overplus unto the man to whom he sold it; that he may return unto his possession.

28 But if he be not able to restore *it* to him, then that which is sold shall remain in the hand of him that has bought it until the year of jubile: and in the jubile it shall go out, and he shall return unto his possession.

Of houses

29 And if a man sell a dwelling house in a walled city, then he may redeem it within a whole year after it is sold; *within* a full year may he redeem it.

30 And if it be not redeemed within the space of a full year, then the house that *is* in the walled city shall be established for ever to him that bought it throughout his generations: it shall not go out in the jubile.

31 But the houses of the villages which have no wall round about them shall be counted as the fields of the country: they may be redeemed, and they shall go out in the jubile.

32 Notwithstanding the cities of the Levites, *and* the houses of the cities of their possession, may the Levites redeem at any time.

33 And if a man purchase of the Levites, then the house that was sold, and the city of his possession, shall go out in *the year of* jubile: for the houses of the cities of the Levites *are* their possession among the children of Israel.

34 But the field of the suburbs of their cities may not be sold; for it *is* their perpetual possession.

Compassion to the poor

35 And if thy brother be waxen poor, and fallen in decay with you; then you shall relieve him: yes, *though he be* a stranger, or a sojourner; that he may live with you. [Ezek 18:8];

36 Take you no usury of him, or increase: but fear thy Elohim; that thy brother may live with you. Exod 22:25; Deut 23:19; Prov 28:8; Ezek 18:8; Ezek 22:12;

37 You shall not give him thy money upon usury, nor lend him thy victuals for increase.

38 I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, to give you the land of Canaan, *and* to be your Elohim. [Exod 34:9];

The usage of bondmen

39 And if thy brother *that dwelleth* by you be waxen poor, and be sold unto you; you shall not compel him to serve as a bondservant: Exod 21:2; Deut 15:12; Jer 34:14; [1Kgs 9:22]; [2Kgs 4:1];

40 *But* as a hired servant, *and* as a sojourner, he shall be with you, *and* shall serve you unto the year of jubile:

41 And *then* shall he depart from you, *both* he and his children with him, and shall return unto his own family, and unto the possession of his fathers shall he return.

42 For they *are* my servants, which I brought forth out of the land of Egypt: they shall not be sold as bondmen.

43 You shall not rule over him with rigour; but shall fear thy Elohim. Eph 6:9; Col 4:1;

44 Both thy bondmen, and thy bondmaids, which you shall have, *shall be* of the heathen that are round about you; of them shall you buy bondmen and bondmaids.

45 Moreover of the children of the strangers that do sojourn among you, of them shall you buy, and of their families that *are* with you, which they begat in your land: and they shall be your possession.

46 And you shall take them as an inheritance for your children after you, to inherit *them for* a possession; they shall be your bondmen for ever: but over your brethren the children of Israel, you shall not rule one over another with rigour.

The redemption of servants

47 And if a sojourner or stranger wax rich by you, and thy brother *that dwelleth* by him wax poor, and sell himself unto the stranger *or* sojourner by you, or to the stock of the stranger's family:

48 After that he is sold he may be redeemed again; one of his brethren may redeem him:

49 Either his uncle, or his uncle's son, may redeem him, or *any* that is nigh of kin unto him of his family may redeem him; or if he be able, he may redeem himself.

50 And he shall reckon with him that bought him from the year that he was sold to him unto the year of jubile: and the price of his sale shall be according unto the number of years, according to the time of a hired servant shall it be with him.

51 If *there be* yet many years *behind*, according unto them he shall give again the price of his redemption out of the money that he was bought for.

52 And if there remain but few years unto the year of jubile, then he shall count with him, *and* according unto his years shall he give him again the price of his redemption.

53 *And* as a yearly hired servant shall he be with him: *and the other* shall not rule with rigour over him in thy sight.

54 And if he be not redeemed in these years, then he shall go out in the year of jubile, *both* he, and his children with him.

55 For unto me the children of Israel *are* servants; they *are* my servants whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

Of idolatry

1 You shall make you no idols nor graven image, neither rear you up a standing image, neither shall you set up *any* image of stone in your land, to bow down unto it: for I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim. [Exod 20:4](#); [Deut 5:8](#); [Deut 16:22](#); [Ps 97:7](#); [\[Judg 2:15\]](#);

Religiousness

2 You shall keep my Sabbaths, and reverence my sanctuary: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Lev 19:30](#); [\[Lev 19:3\]](#);

A blessing to them that keep the commandments

3 If you walk in my statutes, and keep my commandments, and do them; [Deut 28:1](#); [\[Deut 7:12\]](#); [\[Jer 11:4\]](#);

4 Then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit.

5 And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time: and you shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. [Lev 25:19](#); [\[1Kgs 4:25\]](#); [\[Job 11:18\]](#); [\[Ps 4:8\]](#);

6 And I will give peace in the land, and you shall lie down, and none shall make *you* afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land. [Job 11:18-19](#); [\[Job 11:19\]](#);

7 And you shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword.

8 And five of you shall chase a hundred, and a hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight: and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword. [Josh 23:10](#);

9 For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish my covenant with you.

10 And you shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new.

11 And I will set my tabernacle among you: and my being shall not abhor you. [Ezek 37:26](#); [2Cor 6:16](#);

12 And I will walk among you, and will be your Elohim, and you shall be my people. [\[Exod 29:45\]](#); [\[Jer 7:23\]](#); [\[Jer 11:4\]](#); [\[Zech 2:10\]](#);

13 I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, that you should not be their bondmen; and I have broken the bands of your yoke, and made you go upright.

A curse to those that break them

14 But if you will not hearken unto me, and will not do all these commandments; [Deut 28:15](#); [Lam 2:17](#); [Mal 2:2](#); [\[Prov 3:33\]](#); [\[Dan 9:11\]](#);

15 And if you shall despise my statutes, or if your being abhor my judgments, so that you will not do all my commandments, *but* that you break my covenant:

16 I also will do this unto you; I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning fever, that shall consume the eyes, and cause sorrow of heart: and you shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it. [\[Deut 28:22\]](#); [\[Jer 5:17\]](#); [\[Jer 12:13\]](#); [\[Jer 15:3\]](#);

17 And I will set my face against you, and you shall be slain before your enemies: they that hate you shall reign over you; and you shall flee when none pursueth you. [Prov 28:1](#);

18 And if you will not yet for all this hearken unto me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins.

19 And I will break the pride of your power; and I will make your heaven as iron, and your earth as brass: [\[Deut 28:23\]](#);

20 And your strength shall be spent in vain: for your land shall not yield her increase, neither shall the trees of the land yield their fruits.

21 And if you walk contrary unto me, and will not hearken unto me; I will bring seven times more plagues upon you according to your sins.

22 I will also send wild beasts among you, which shall rob you of your children, and destroy your cattle, and make you few in number; and your *high* ways shall be desolate. [Isa 7:23]; [Ezek 5:17];

23 And if you will not be reformed by me by these things, but will walk contrary unto me;

24 Then will I also walk contrary unto you, and will punish you yet seven times for your sins. 2Sam 22:27; Ps 18:26;

25 And I will bring a sword upon you, that shall avenge the quarrel of *my* covenant: and when you are gathered together within your cities, I will send the pestilence among you; and you shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy.

26 And when I have broken the staff of your bread, ten women shall bake your bread in one oven, and they shall deliver *you* your bread again by weight: and you shall eat, and not be satisfied. [Ezek 4:16]; [Ezek 5:16]; [Ezek 14:13];

27 And if you will not for all this hearken unto me, but walk contrary unto me;

28 Then I will walk contrary unto you also in fury; and I, even I, will chastise you seven times for your sins.

29 And you shall eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters shall you eat. Deut 28:53; 2Kgs 6:28; Lam 4:10; [Jer 19:9]; [Ezek 5:10];

30 And I will destroy your high places, and cut down your images, and cast your carcases upon the carcases of your idols, and my being shall abhor you. 2Chr 34:7;

31 And I will make your cities waste, and bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours.

32 And I will bring the land into desolation: and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it.

33 And I will scatter you among the heathen, and will draw out a sword after you: and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste. [Jer 9:16];

34 Then shall the land enjoy her Sabbaths, as long as it lies desolate, and you *be* in your enemies' land; *even* then shall the land rest, and enjoy her Sabbaths. Lev 25:2;

35 As long as it lies desolate it shall rest; because it did not rest in your Sabbaths, when you dwelt upon it.

36 And upon them that are left *alive* of you I will send a faintness into their hearts in the lands of their enemies; and the sound of a shaken leaf shall chase them; and they shall flee, as fleeing from a sword; and they shall fall when none pursueth. [Prov 28:1];

37 And they shall fall one upon another, as it were before a sword, when none pursueth: and you shall have no power to stand before your enemies.

38 And you shall perish among the heathen, and the land of your enemies shall eat you up.

39 And they that are left of you shall pine away in their iniquity in your enemies' lands; and also in the iniquities of their fathers shall they pine away with them.

Elohim promises to remember them that repent

40 If they shall confess their iniquity, and the iniquity of their fathers, with their trespass which they trespassed against me, and that also they have walked contrary unto me; [Ps 106:6];

41 And *that* I also have walked contrary unto them, and have brought them into the land of their enemies; if then their uncircumcised hearts be humbled, and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity: [Jer 9:26];

42 Then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land. [Gen 17:2];

43 The land also shall be left of them, and shall enjoy her Sabbaths, while she lies desolate without them: and they shall accept of the punishment of their iniquity: because, even because they despised my judgments, and because their being abhorred my statutes.

44 And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly, and to break my covenant with them: for I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim. [Deut 4:31](#); [Rom 11:1](#); [Rom 11:26](#);

45 But I will for their sakes remember the covenant of their ancestors, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the heathen, that I might be their Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH.

46 These *are* the statutes and judgments and laws, which the YAHWEH made between him and the children of Israel in mount Sinai by the hand of Moses.

He that makes a singular vow must be the Lord's

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
2 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When a man shall make a singular vow, the persons *shall be* for the YAHWEH by thy estimation. [Lev 5:15];

The estimation of the person

- 3** And thy estimation shall be of the male from twenty years old even unto sixty years old, even thy estimation shall be fifty shekels of silver, after the shekel of the sanctuary.
4 And if it *be* a female, then thy estimation shall be thirty shekels.
5 And if *it be* from five years old even unto twenty years old, then thy estimation shall be of the male twenty shekels, and for the female ten shekels.
6 And if *it be* from a month old even unto five years old, then thy estimation shall be of the male five shekels of silver, and for the female thy estimation *shall be* three shekels of silver.
7 And if *it be* from sixty years old and above; if *it be* a male, then thy estimation shall be fifteen shekels, and for the female ten shekels.
8 But if he be poorer than thy estimation, then he shall present himself before the priest, and the priest shall value him; according to his ability that vowed shall the priest value him.

of a beast given by vow

- 9** And if *it be* a beast, whereof men bring an offering unto the YAHWEH, all that *any man* giveth of such unto the YAHWEH shall be holy.
10 He shall not alter it, nor change it, a good for a bad, or a bad for a good: and if he shall at all change beast for beast, then it and the exchange thereof shall be holy.
11 And if *it be* any unclean beast, of which they do not offer a sacrifice unto the YAHWEH, then he shall present the beast before the priest:
12 And the priest shall value it, whether it be good or bad: as you valuest it, *who are* the priest, so shall it be.
13 But if he will at all redeem it, then he shall add a fifth *part* thereof unto thy estimation.

of a house

- 14** And when a man shall sanctify his house *to be* holy unto the YAHWEH, then the priest shall estimate it, whether it be good or bad: as the priest shall estimate it, so shall it stand.
15 And if he that sanctified it will redeem his house, then he shall add the fifth *part* of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be his.

of a field, and the redemption thereof

- 16** And if a man shall sanctify unto the YAHWEH *some part* of a field of his possession, then thy estimation shall be according to the seed thereof: a homer of barley seed *shall be valued* at fifty shekels of silver.
17 If he sanctify his field from the year of jubile, according to thy estimation it shall stand.
18 But if he sanctify his field after the jubile, then the priest shall reckon unto him the money according to the years that remain, even unto the year of the jubile, and it shall be abated from thy estimation.
19 And if he that sanctified the field will in any wise redeem it, then he shall add the fifth *part* of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be assured to him.
20 And if he will not redeem the field, or if he have sold the field to another man, it shall not be redeemed any more.

21 But the field, when it goes out in the jubile, shall be holy unto the YAHWEH, as a field devoted; the possession thereof shall be the priest's.

22 And if *a man* sanctify unto the YAHWEH a field which he has bought, which *is* not of the fields of his possession;

23 Then the priest shall reckon unto him the worth of thy estimation, *even* unto the year of the jubile: and he shall give thine estimation in that day, *as* a holy thing unto the YAHWEH.

24 In the year of the jubile the field shall return unto him of whom it was bought, *even* to him to whom the possession of the land *did belong*.

25 And all thy estimations shall be according to the shekel of the sanctuary: twenty gerahs shall be the shekel. [Exod 30:13](#); [Num 3:47](#); [Ezek 45:12](#); [[Num 18:16](#)];

26 Only the firstling of the beasts, which should be the YAHWEH'S firstling, no man shall sanctify it; whether *it be* ox, or sheep: it *is* the YAHWEH'S. [Exod 13:2](#); [Exod 22:29](#); [Exod 34:19](#); [Num 3:13](#); [Num 8:17](#); [[Exod 13:12](#)]; [[Num 18:15](#)]; [[Deut 15:19](#)];

27 And if *it be* of an unclean beast, then he shall redeem *it* according to thine estimation, and shall add a fifth *part* of it thereto: or if it be not redeemed, then it shall be sold according to thy estimation.

No devoted thing may be redeemed

28 Notwithstanding no devoted thing, that a man shall devote unto the YAHWEH of all that he has, *both* of man and beast, and of the field of his possession, shall be sold or redeemed: every devoted thing *is* most holy unto the YAHWEH. [Josh 6:18](#); [Josh 7:13](#); [[Num 18:14](#)];

29 None devoted, which shall be devoted of men, shall be redeemed; *but* shall surely be put to death.

The tithe may not be changed

30 And all the tithe of the land, *whether* of the seed of the land, *or* of the fruit of the tree, *is* the YAHWEH'S: *it is* holy unto the YAHWEH. [[Deut 26:12](#)];

31 And if a man will at all redeem *ought* of his tithes, he shall add thereto the fifth *part* thereof.

32 And concerning the tithe of the herd, or of the flock, *even* of whatsoever passeth under the rod, the tenth shall be holy unto the YAHWEH.

33 He shall not search whether it be good or bad, neither shall he change it: and if he change it at all, then both it and the change thereof shall be holy; it shall not be redeemed.

34 These *are* the commandments, which the YAHWEH commanded Moses for the children of Israel in mount Sinai.

Numbers

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#)

NUMBERS ONE

Elohim commands Moses to number the people

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the tabernacle of the congregation, on the first *day* of the second month, in the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying, [\[Num 26:4\]](#);

2 Take you the sum of all the congregation of the children of Israel, after their families, by the house of their fathers, with the number of *their* names, every male by their polls; [Exod 30:12](#);

3 From twenty years old and upward, all that are able to go forth to war in Israel: you and Aaron shall number them by their armies. [\[Num 26:2\]](#);

4 And with you there shall be a man of every tribe; every one head of the house of his fathers.

The princes of the tribes

5 And these *are* the names of the men that shall stand with you: of *the tribe of* Reuben; Elizur the son of Shedeur.

6 Of Simeon; Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.

7 Of Judah; Nahshon the son of Amminadab. [\[Num 10:14\]](#); [\[1Chr 2:10\]](#);

8 Of Issachar; Nethaneel the son of Zuar.

9 Of Zebulun; Eliab the son of Helon.

10 Of the children of Joseph: of Ephraim; Elishama the son of Ammihud: of Manasseh; Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

11 Of Benjamin; Abidan the son of Gideoni.

12 Of Dan; Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

13 Of Asher; Pagiel the son of Ocran.

14 Of Gad; Eliasaph the son of Deuel.

15 Of Naphtali; Ahira the son of Enan.

16 These *were* the renowned of the congregation, princes of the tribes of their fathers, heads of thousands in Israel.

The number of every tribe

17 And Moses and Aaron took these men which are expressed by *their* names:

18 And they assembled all the congregation together on the first *day* of the second month, and they declared their pedigrees after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, by their polls.

19 As the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so he numbered them in the wilderness of Sinai.

20 And the children of Reuben, Israel's eldest son, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, by their polls, every male from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

21 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Reuben, *were* forty and six thousand and five hundred.

22 Of the children of Simeon, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, those that were numbered of them, according to the number of the names, by their polls, every male from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

23 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Simeon, *were* fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.

24 Of the children of Gad, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

25 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Gad, *were* forty and five thousand six hundred and fifty.

26 Of the children of Judah, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

27 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Judah, *were* threescore and fourteen thousand and six hundred.

28 Of the children of Issachar, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

29 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Issachar, *were* fifty and four thousand and four hundred.

30 Of the children of Zebulun, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

31 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Zebulun, *were* fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.

32 Of the children of Joseph, *namely*, of the children of Ephraim, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

33 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Ephraim, *were* forty thousand and five hundred.

34 Of the children of Manasseh, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

35 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Manasseh, *were* thirty and two thousand and two hundred.

36 Of the children of Benjamin, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

37 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Benjamin, *were* thirty and five thousand and four hundred.

38 Of the children of Dan, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

39 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Dan, *were* threescore and two thousand and seven hundred.

40 Of the children of Asher, by their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

41 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Asher, *were* forty and one thousand and five hundred.

42 Of the children of Naphtali, throughout their generations, after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war;

43 Those that were numbered of them, *even* of the tribe of Naphtali, *were* fifty and three thousand and four hundred.

44 These *are* those that were numbered, which Moses and Aaron numbered, and the princes of Israel, *being* twelve men: each one was for the house of his fathers.

45 So were all those that were numbered of the children of Israel, by the house of their fathers, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war in Israel;

46 Even all they that were numbered were six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty. [Exod 38:26](#); [\[Num 2:32\]](#);

The Levites are exempted for the service of the Lord

47 But the Levites after the tribe of their fathers were not numbered among them.

48 For the YAHWEH had spoken unto Moses, saying, [\[Num 2:33\]](#);

49 Only you shall not number the tribe of Levi, neither take the sum of them among the children of Israel:

50 But you shall appoint the Levites over the tabernacle of testimony, and over all the vessels thereof, and over all things that *belong* to it: they shall bear the tabernacle, and all the vessels thereof; and they shall minister unto it, and shall encamp round about the tabernacle.

51 And when the tabernacle setteth forward, the Levites shall take it down: and when the tabernacle is to be pitched, the Levites shall set it up: and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.

52 And the children of Israel shall pitch their tents, every man by his own camp, and every man by his own standard, throughout their hosts.

53 But the Levites shall pitch round about the tabernacle of testimony, that there be no wrath upon the congregation of the children of Israel: and the Levites shall keep the charge of the tabernacle of testimony.

54 And the children of Israel did according to all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so did they.

NUMBERS TWO

The order of the tribes in their tents

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2** Every man of the children of Israel shall pitch by his own standard, with the ensign of their father's house: far off about the tabernacle of the congregation shall they pitch.
- 3** And on the east side toward the rising of the sun shall they of the standard of the camp of Judah pitch throughout their armies: and Nahshon the son of Amminadab *shall be* captain of the children of Judah. [\[Num 10:14\]; \[1Chr 2:10\];](#)
- 4** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* threescore and fourteen thousand and six hundred.
- 5** And those that do pitch next unto him *shall be* the tribe of Issachar: and Nethaneel the son of Zuar *shall be* captain of the children of Issachar.
- 6** And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, *were* fifty and four thousand and four hundred.
- 7** *Then* the tribe of Zebulun: and Eliab the son of Helon *shall be* captain of the children of Zebulun.
- 8** And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, *were* fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.
- 9** All that were numbered in the camp of Judah *were* a hundred thousand and fourscore thousand and six thousand and four hundred, throughout their armies. These shall first set forth.
- 10** On the south side *shall be* the standard of the camp of Reuben according to their armies: and the captain of the children of Reuben *shall be* Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 11** And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, *were* forty and six thousand and five hundred.
- 12** And those which pitch by him *shall be* the tribe of Simeon: and the captain of the children of Simeon *shall be* Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.
- 13** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.
- 14** Then the tribe of Gad: and the captain of the sons of Gad *shall be* Eliasaph the son of Reuel.
- 15** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* forty and five thousand and six hundred and fifty.
- 16** All that were numbered in the camp of Reuben *were* a hundred thousand and fifty and one thousand and four hundred and fifty, throughout their armies. And they shall set forth in the second rank.
- 17** Then the tabernacle of the congregation shall set forward with the camp of the Levites in the midst of the camp: as they encamp, so shall they set forward, every man in his place by their standards.
- 18** On the west side *shall be* the standard of the camp of Ephraim according to their armies: and the captain of the sons of Ephraim *shall be* Elishama the son of Ammihud.
- 19** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* forty thousand and five hundred.
- 20** And by him *shall be* the tribe of Manasseh: and the captain of the children of Manasseh *shall be* Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.
- 21** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* thirty and two thousand and two hundred.
- 22** Then the tribe of Benjamin: and the captain of the sons of Benjamin *shall be* Abidan the son of Gideon.
- 23** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* thirty and five thousand and four hundred.
- 24** All that were numbered of the camp of Ephraim *were* a hundred thousand and eight thousand and a hundred, throughout their armies. And they shall go forward in the third rank.
- 25** The standard of the camp of Dan *shall be* on the north side by their armies: and the captain of the children of Dan *shall be* Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
- 26** And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* threescore and two thousand and seven hundred.

27 And those that encamp by him *shall be* the tribe of Asher: and the captain of the children of Asher *shall be* Pagiel the son of Ocran.

28 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* forty and one thousand and five hundred.

29 Then the tribe of Naphtali: and the captain of the children of Naphtali *shall be* Ahira the son of Enan.

30 And his host, and those that were numbered of them, *were* fifty and three thousand and four hundred.

31 All they that were numbered in the camp of Dan *were* a hundred thousand and fifty and seven thousand and six hundred. They shall go hindmost with their standards.

32 These *are* those which were numbered of the children of Israel by the house of their fathers: all those that were numbered of the camps throughout their hosts *were* six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty. [Exod 38:26](#); [Num 1:46](#);

33 But the Levites were not numbered among the children of Israel; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Num 1:48-49](#);

34 And the children of Israel did according to all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses: so they pitched by their standards, and so they set forward, every one after their families, according to the house of their fathers.

NUMBERS THREE

The sons of Aaron

1 These also *are* the generations of Aaron and Moses in the day *that* the YAHWEH spoke with Moses in mount Sinai.

2 And these *are* the names of the sons of Aaron; Nadab the firstborn, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. [Exod 6:23](#);

3 These *are* the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests which were anointed, whom he consecrated to minister in the priest's office.

4 And Nadab and Abihu died before the YAHWEH, when they offered strange fire before the YAHWEH, in the wilderness of Sinai, and they had no children: and Eleazar and Ithamar ministered in the priest's office in the sight of Aaron their father. [Lev 10:1-2](#); [Num 26:61](#); [1Chr 24:2](#); [[Lev 10:2](#)];

The Levites are given to the priests instead of the first-born

5 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

6 Bring the tribe of Levi near, and present them before Aaron the priest, that they may minister unto him. [Num 16:9](#); [Num 18:2](#); [[2Chr 29:11](#)]; [[Ezra 6:18](#)];

7 And they shall keep his charge, and the charge of the whole congregation before the tabernacle of the congregation, to do the service of the tabernacle.

8 And they shall keep all the instruments of the tabernacle of the congregation, and the charge of the children of Israel, to do the service of the tabernacle.

9 And you shall give the Levites unto Aaron and to his sons: they *are* wholly given unto him out of the children of Israel.

10 And you shall appoint Aaron and his sons, and they shall wait on their priest's office: and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death. [[Num 3:38](#)]; [[1Kgs 12:31](#)];

11 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

12 And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from among the children of Israel instead of all the firstborn that openeth the matrix among the children of Israel: therefore the Levites shall be mine; [Exod 13:2](#); [[Num 8:18](#)];

13 Because all the firstborn *are* mine; *for* on the day that I smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt I hallowed unto me all the firstborn in Israel, both man and beast: mine shall they be: I *am* the YAHWEH. [Exod 13:2](#); [Exod 22:29](#); [Exod 34:19](#); [Lev 27:26](#); [Num 8:16](#); [Luke 2:22](#); [[Num 8:17](#)]; [[Num 18:15](#)]; [[Deut 15:19](#)]; [[Neh 10:36](#)]; [[Luke 2:23](#)];

are numbered by their families

14 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, saying,

15 Number the children of Levi after the house of their fathers, by their families: every male from a month old and upward shall you number them.

16 And Moses numbered them according to the word of the YAHWEH, as he was commanded.

17 And these were the sons of Levi by their names; Gershon, and Kohas, and Merari. [Exod 6:15-17](#); [Num 26:57](#); [1Chr 6:1](#); [1Chr 23:6](#); [[Exod 6:16](#)];

18 And these *are* the names of the sons of Gershon by their families; Libni, and Shimei.

19 And the sons of Kohas by their families; Amram, and Izeahar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

20 And the sons of Merari by their families; Mahli, and Mushi. These *are* the families of the Levites according to the house of their fathers.

The families, number, and charge of the Gershonites

21 Of Gershon *was* the family of the Libnites, and the family of the Shimites: these *are* the families of the Gershonites.

22 Those that were numbered of them, according to the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, *even* those that were numbered of them *were* seven thousand and five hundred.

23 The families of the Gershonites shall pitch behind the tabernacle westward.

24 And the chief of the house of the father of the Gershonites *shall be* Eliasaph the son of Lael.

25 And the charge of the sons of Gershon in the tabernacle of the congregation *shall be* the tabernacle, and the tent, the covering thereof, and the hanging for the door of the tabernacle of the congregation,

26 And the hangings of the court, and the curtain for the door of the court, which *is* by the tabernacle, and by the altar round about, and the cords of it for all the service thereof.

of the Kohasites

27 And of Kohas *was* the family of the Amramites, and the family of the Izecharites, and the family of the Hebronites, and the family of the Uzzielites: these *are* the families of the Kohasites.

28 In the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, *were* eight thousand and six hundred, keeping the charge of the sanctuary.

29 The families of the sons of Kohas shall pitch on the side of the tabernacle southward.

30 And the chief of the house of the father of the families of the Kohasites *shall be* Elizaphan the son of Uzziel.

31 And their charge *shall be* the ark, and the table, and the candlestick, and the altars, and the vessels of the sanctuary wherewith they minister, and the hanging, and all the service thereof.

32 And Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest *shall be* chief over the chief of the Levites, *and have* the oversight of them that keep the charge of the sanctuary. [Ezra 6:18];

of the Merarites

33 Of Merari *was* the family of the Mahlites, and the family of the Mushites: these *are* the families of Merari.

34 And those that were numbered of them, according to the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, *were* six thousand and two hundred.

35 And the chief of the house of the father of the families of Merari *was* Zuriel the son of Abihail: *these* shall pitch on the side of the tabernacle northward.

36 And *under* the custody and charge of the sons of Merari *shall be* the boards of the tabernacle, and the bars thereof, and the pillars thereof, and the sockets thereof, and all the vessels thereof, and all that serveth thereto,

37 And the pillars of the court round about, and their sockets, and their pins, and their cords.

The place and charge of Moses and Aaron

38 But those that encamp before the tabernacle toward the east, *even* before the tabernacle of the congregation eastward, *shall be* Moses, and Aaron and his sons, keeping the charge of the sanctuary for the charge of the children of Israel; and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death. Num 3:10; Num 16:40;

39 All that were numbered of the Levites, which Moses and Aaron numbered at the commandment of the YAHWEH, throughout their families, all the males from a month old and upward, *were* twenty and two thousand.

The first-born are freed by the Levites

40 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Number all the firstborn of the males of the children of Israel from a month old and upward, and take the number of their names.

41 And you shall take the Levites for me (I *am* the YAHWEH) instead of all the firstborn among the children of Israel; and the cattle of the Levites instead of all the firstlings among the cattle of the children of Israel.

42 And Moses numbered, as the YAHWEH commanded him, all the firstborn among the children of Israel.

43 And all the firstborn males by the number of names, from a month old and upward, of those that were numbered of them, were twenty and two thousand two hundred and threescore and thirteen.

The overplus are redeemed

44 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

45 Take the Levites instead of all the firstborn among the children of Israel, and the cattle of the Levites instead of their cattle; and the Levites shall be mine: I *am* the YAHWEH. [\[Num 8:14\]](#); [\[Num 18:6\]](#);

46 And for those that are to be redeemed of the two hundred and threescore and thirteen of the firstborn of the children of Israel, which are more than the Levites;

47 You shall even take five shekels apiece by the poll, after the shekel of the sanctuary shall you take *them*: (the shekel *is* twenty gerahs:) [Exod 30:31](#); [Lev 27:25](#); [Num 18:16](#); [Ezek 45:12](#); [\[Exod 30:13\]](#);

48 And you shall give the money, wherewith the odd number of them is to be redeemed, unto Aaron and to his sons.

49 And Moses took the redemption money of them that were over and above them that were redeemed by the Levites:

50 Of the firstborn of the children of Israel took he the money; a thousand three hundred and threescore and five *shekels*, after the shekel of the sanctuary:

51 And Moses gave the money of them that were redeemed unto Aaron and to his sons, according to the word of the YAHWEH, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The age at which the Levites were to begin to serve, and the duration of the service

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2** Take the sum of the sons of Kohas from among the sons of Levi, after their families, by the house of their fathers,
- 3** From thirty years old and upward even until fifty years old, all that enter into the host, to do the work in the tabernacle of the congregation.

The duty of the Kohasites

- 4** This *shall be* the service of the sons of Kohas in the tabernacle of the congregation, *about* the most holy things: [Num 10:21];
- 5** And when the camp setteth forward, Aaron shall come, and his sons, and they shall take down the covering vail, and cover the ark of testimony with it:
- 6** And shall put thereon the covering of badgers' skins, and shall spread over *it* a cloth wholly of blue, and shall put in the staves thereof.
- 7** And upon the table of showbread they shall spread a cloth of blue, and put thereon the dishes, and the spoons, and the bowls, and covers to cover withal: and the continual bread shall be thereon: Exod 25:30;
- 8** And they shall spread upon them a cloth of scarlet, and cover the same with a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put in the staves thereof.
- 9** And they shall take a cloth of blue, and cover the candlestick of the light, and his lamps, and his tongs, and his snuffdishes, and all the oil vessels thereof, wherewith they minister unto it: Exod 25:31; Exod 25:38;
- 10** And they shall put it and all the vessels thereof within a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put *it* upon a bar.
- 11** And upon the golden altar they shall spread a cloth of blue, and cover it with a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put to the staves thereof:
- 12** And they shall take all the instruments of ministry, wherewith they minister in the sanctuary, and put *them* in a cloth of blue, and cover them with a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put *them* on a bar:
- 13** And they shall take away the ashes from the altar, and spread a purple cloth thereon:
- 14** And they shall put upon it all the vessels thereof, wherewith they minister about it, *even* the censers, the fleshhooks, and the shovels, and the basins, all the vessels of the altar; and they shall spread upon it a covering of badgers' skins, and put to the staves of it.
- 15** And when Aaron and his sons have made an end of covering the sanctuary, and all the vessels of the sanctuary, as the camp is to set forward; after that, the sons of Kohas shall come to bear *it*: but they shall not touch *any* holy thing, lest they die. These *things are* the burden of the sons of Kohas in the tabernacle of the congregation. [1Chr 15:2]; [1Chr 15:15];

The charge of Eleazar

- 16** And to the office of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest *pertaineth* the oil for the light, and the sweet incense, and the daily meat offering, and the anointing oil, *and* the oversight of all the tabernacle, and of all that therein *is*, in the sanctuary, and in the vessels thereof. Exod 30:34-35; Exod 30:23-24; [1Chr 6:49];

The office of the priests

- 17** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 18** Cut you not off the tribe of the families of the Kohasites from among the Levites:
- 19** But thus do unto them, that they may live, and not die, when they approach unto the most holy things: Aaron and his sons shall go in, and appoint them every one to his service and to his burden:
- 20** But they shall not go in to see when the holy things are covered, lest they die.

The duty of the Gershonites

21 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

22 Take also the sum of the sons of Gershon, throughout the houses of their fathers, by their families;

23 From thirty years old and upward until fifty years old shall you number them; all that enter in to perform the service, to do the work in the tabernacle of the congregation.

24 This *is* the service of the families of the Gershonites, to serve, and for burdens:

25 And they shall bear the curtains of the tabernacle, and the tabernacle of the congregation, his covering, and the covering of the badgers' skins that *is* above upon it, and the hanging for the door of the tabernacle of the congregation,

26 And the hangings of the court, and the hanging for the door of the gate of the court, which *is* by the tabernacle and by the altar round about, and their cords, and all the instruments of their service, and all that is made for them: so shall they serve.

27 At the appointment of Aaron and his sons shall be all the service of the sons of the Gershonites, in all their burdens, and in all their service: and you shall appoint unto them in charge all their burdens.

28 This *is* the service of the families of the sons of Gershon in the tabernacle of the congregation: and their charge *shall be* under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.

of the Merarites

29 As for the sons of Merari, you shall number them after their families, by the house of their fathers;

30 From thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old shall you number them, every one that entereth into the service, to do the work of the tabernacle of the congregation.

31 And this *is* the charge of their burden, according to all their service in the tabernacle of the congregation; the boards of the tabernacle, and the bars thereof, and the pillars thereof, and sockets thereof, [Exod 26:15](#);

32 And the pillars of the court round about, and their sockets, and their pins, and their cords, with all their instruments, and with all their service: and by name you shall reckon the instruments of the charge of their burden.

33 This *is* the service of the families of the sons of Merari, according to all their service, in the tabernacle of the congregation, under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.

The number of the Kohasites

34 And Moses and Aaron and the chief of the congregation numbered the sons of the Kohasites after their families, and after the house of their fathers,

35 From thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entereth into the service, for the work in the tabernacle of the congregation:

36 And those that were numbered of them by their families were two thousand seven hundred and fifty.

37 These *were* they that were numbered of the families of the Kohasites, all that might do service in the tabernacle of the congregation, which Moses and Aaron did number according to the commandment of the YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

of the Gershonites

38 And those that were numbered of the sons of Gershon, throughout their families, and by the house of their fathers,

39 From thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entereth into the service, for the work in the tabernacle of the congregation,

40 Even those that were numbered of them, throughout their families, by the house of their fathers, were two thousand and six hundred and thirty.

41 These *are* they that were numbered of the families of the sons of Gershon, of all that might do service in the tabernacle of the congregation, whom Moses and Aaron did number according to the commandment of the YAHWEH.

and of the Merarites

42 And those that were numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, throughout their families, by the house of their fathers,

43 From thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entereth into the service, for the work in the tabernacle of the congregation,

44 Even those that were numbered of them after their families, were three thousand and two hundred.

45 These *be* those that were numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, whom Moses and Aaron numbered according to the word of the YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

46 All those that were numbered of the Levites, whom Moses and Aaron and the chief of Israel numbered, after their families, and after the house of their fathers,

47 From thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that came to do the service of the ministry, and the service of the burden in the tabernacle of the congregation,

48 Even those that were numbered of them, were eight thousand and five hundred and fourscore.

49 According to the commandment of the YAHWEH they were numbered by the hand of Moses, every one according to his service, and according to his burden: thus were they numbered of him, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The unclean are removed out of camp

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
2 Command the children of Israel, that they put out of the camp every leper, and every one that has an issue, and whosoever is defiled by the dead: [Lev 13:3](#); [Lev 13:46](#); [Lev 15:2](#); [Lev 21:1](#);
3 Both male and female shall you put out, without the camp shall you put them; that they defile not their camps, in the midst whereof I dwell.
4 And the children of Israel did so, and put them out without the camp: as the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, so did the children of Israel.

Restitution is to be made in trespass

- 5** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
6 Speak unto the children of Israel, When a man or woman shall commit any sin that men commit, to do a trespass against the YAHWEH, and that person be guilty; [Lev 6:1](#); [Lev 6:3](#);
7 Then they shall confess their sin which they have done: and he shall recompense his trespass with the principal thereof, and add unto it the fifth *part* thereof, and give *it* unto *him* against whom he has trespassed. [Lev 6:5](#);
8 But if the man have no kinsman to recompense the trespass unto, let the trespass be recompensed unto the YAHWEH, *even* to the priest; beside the ram of the atonement, whereby an atonement shall be made for him.
9 And every offering of all the holy things of the children of Israel, which they bring unto the priest, shall be his.
10 And every man's hallowed things shall be his: whatsoever any man giveth the priest, it shall be his. [Lev 10:12](#);

The trial of jealousy

- 11** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
12 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, If any man's wife go aside, and commit a trespass against him,
13 And a man lie with her carnally, and it be hid from the eyes of her husband, and be kept close, and she be defiled, and *there be* no witness against her, neither she be taken *with the manner*;
14 And the spirit of jealousy come upon him, and he be jealous of his wife, and she be defiled: or if the spirit of jealousy come upon him, and he be jealous of his wife, and she be not defiled:
15 Then shall the man bring his wife unto the priest, and he shall bring her offering for her, the tenth *part* of an ephah of barley meal; he shall pour no oil upon it, nor put frankincense thereon; for it *is* an offering of jealousy, an offering of memorial, bringing iniquity to remembrance.
16 And the priest shall bring her near, and set her before the YAHWEH:
17 And the priest shall take holy water in an earthen vessel; and of the dust that is in the floor of the tabernacle the priest shall take, and put *it* into the water:
18 And the priest shall set the woman before the YAHWEH, and uncover the woman's head, and put the offering of memorial in her hands, which *is* the jealousy offering: and the priest shall have in his hand the bitter water that causeth the curse: [\[1Cor 11:6\]](#);
19 And the priest shall charge her by an oath, and say unto the woman, If no man have lain with you, and if you have not gone aside to uncleanness *with another* instead of thy husband, be you free from this bitter water that causeth the curse:
20 But if you have gone aside *to another* instead of thy husband, and if you be defiled, and some man have lain with you beside thine husband:

- 21** Then the priest shall charge the woman with an oath of cursing, and the priest shall say unto the woman, The YAHWEH make you a curse and an oath among thy people, when the YAHWEH makes thy thigh to rot, and thy belly to swell;
- 22** And this water that causeth the curse shall go into thy bowels, to make *thy* belly to swell, and *thy* thigh to rot: And the woman shall say, Amen, amen.
- 23** And the priest shall write these curses in a book, and he shall blot *them* out with the bitter water:
- 24** And he shall cause the woman to drink the bitter water that causeth the curse: and the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her, *and become* bitter.
- 25** Then the priest shall take the jealousy offering out of the woman's hand, and shall wave the offering before the YAHWEH, and offer it upon the altar:
- 26** And the priest shall take a handful of the offering, *even* the memorial thereof, and burn *it* upon the altar, and afterward shall cause the woman to drink the water.
- 27** And when he has made her to drink the water, then it shall come to pass, *that*, if she be defiled, and have done trespass against her husband, that the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her, *and become* bitter, and her belly shall swell, and her thigh shall rot: and the woman shall be a curse among her people.
- 28** And if the woman be not defiled, but be clean; then she shall be free, and shall conceive seed.
- 29** This *is* the law of jealousies, when a wife goes aside *to another* instead of her husband, and is defiled;
- 30** Or when the spirit of jealousy cometh upon him, and he be jealous over his wife, and shall set the woman before the YAHWEH, and the priest shall execute upon her all this law.
- 31** Then shall the man be guiltless from iniquity, and this woman shall bear her iniquity.

The law of the Nazarite in the days of his separation

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When either man or woman shall separate *themselves* to vow a vow of a Nazarite, to separate *themselves* unto the YAHWEH: [[Judg 13:4](#)];
- 3** He shall separate *himself* from wine and strong drink, and shall drink no vinegar of wine, or vinegar of strong drink, neither shall he drink any liquor of grapes, nor eat moist grapes, or dried.
- 4** All the days of his separation shall he eat nothing that is made of the vine tree, from the kernels even to the husk.
- 5** All the days of the vow of his separation there shall no razor come upon his head: until the days be fulfilled, in the which he separateth *himself* unto the YAHWEH, he shall be holy, *and* shall let the locks of the hair of his head grow. [Judg 13:5](#); [1Sam 1:11](#);
- 6** All the days that he separateth *himself* unto the YAHWEH he shall not come near a dead body.
- 7** He shall not make himself unclean for his father, or for his mother, for his brother, or for his sister, when they die: because the consecration of his Elohim *is* upon his head.
- 8** All the days of his separation he *is* holy unto the YAHWEH.
- 9** And if any man die very suddenly by him, and he has defiled the head of his consecration; then he shall shave his head in the day of his cleansing, on the seventh day shall he shave it.
- 10** And on the eighth day he shall bring two turtles, or two young pigeons, to the priest, to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation:
- 11** And the priest shall offer the one for a sin offering, and the other for a burnt offering, and make an atonement for him, for that he sinned by the dead, and shall hallow his head that same day.
- 12** And he shall consecrate unto the YAHWEH the days of his separation, and shall bring a lamb of the first year for a trespass offering: but the days that were before shall be lost, because his separation was defiled.

and after their completion

- 13** And this *is* the law of the Nazarite, when the days of his separation are fulfilled: he shall be brought unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation:
- 14** And he shall offer his offering unto the YAHWEH, one he lamb of the first year without blemish for a burnt offering, and one ewe lamb of the first year without blemish for a sin offering, and one ram without blemish for peace offerings,
- 15** And a basket of unleavened bread, cakes of fine flour mingled with oil, and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with oil, and their meat offering, and their drink offerings.
- 16** And the priest shall bring *them* before the YAHWEH, and shall offer his sin offering, and his burnt offering:
- 17** And he shall offer the ram *for* a sacrifice of peace offerings unto the YAHWEH, with the basket of unleavened bread: the priest shall offer also his meat offering, and his drink offering.
- 18** And the Nazarite shall shave the head of his separation *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and shall take the hair of the head of his separation, and put *it* in the fire which *is* under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. [Acts 21:24](#); [[Acts 18:18](#)];
- 19** And the priest shall take the sodden shoulder of the ram, and one unleavened cake out of the basket, and one unleavened wafer, and shall put *them* upon the hands of the Nazarite, after *the hair* of his separation is shaven:
- 20** And the priest shall wave them *for* a wave offering before the YAHWEH: this *is* holy for the priest, with the wave breast and heave shoulder: and after that the Nazarite may drink wine. [Exod 29:27](#);

21 This *is* the law of the Nazarite who has vowed, *and of* his offering unto the YAHWEH for his separation, beside *that* that his hand shall get: according to the vow which he vowed, so he must do after the law of his separation.

The form of blessing the people

22 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

23 Speak unto Aaron and unto his sons, saying, On this wise you shall bless the children of Israel, saying unto them,

24 The YAHWEH bless you, and keep you:

25 The YAHWEH make his face shine upon you, and be gracious unto you: [\[Ps 67:1\]](#);

26 The YAHWEH lift up his countenance upon you, and give you peace.

27 And they shall put my name upon the children of Israel; and I will bless them.

The offering of the princes at the dedication of the tabernacle

- 1** And it came to pass on the day that Moses had fully set up the tabernacle, and had anointed it, and sanctified it, and all the instruments thereof, both the altar and all the vessels thereof, and had anointed them, and sanctified them; [Exod 40:18](#); [\[Exod 40:17\]](#);
- 2** That the princes of Israel, heads of the house of their fathers, who *were* the princes of the tribes, and were over them that were numbered, offered:
- 3** And they brought their offering before the YAHWEH, six covered wagons, and twelve oxen; a wagon for two of the princes, and for each one an ox: and they brought them before the tabernacle.
- 4** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 5** Take *it* of them, that they may be to do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation; and you shall give them unto the Levites, to every man according to his service.
- 6** And Moses took the wagons and the oxen, and gave them unto the Levites.
- 7** Two wagons and four oxen he gave unto the sons of Gershon, according to their service:
- 8** And four wagons and eight oxen he gave unto the sons of Merari, according unto their service, under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.
- 9** But unto the sons of Kohas he gave none: because the service of the sanctuary belonging unto them *was that* they should bear upon their shoulders. [\[1Chr 15:15\]](#);

Their several offerings at the dedication of the altar

- 10** And the princes offered for dedicating of the altar in the day that it was anointed, even the princes offered their offering before the altar. [\[1Chr 6:49\]](#);
- 11** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, They shall offer their offering, each prince on his day, for the dedicating of the altar.
- 12** And he that offered his offering the first day was Nahshon the son of Amminadab, of the tribe of Judah:
- 13** And his offering *was* one silver charger, the weight thereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them *were* full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 14** One spoon of ten *shekels* of gold, full of incense:
- 15** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 16** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 17** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Nahshon the son of Amminadab.
- 18** On the second day Nethaneel the son of Zuar, prince of Issachar, did offer:
- 19** He offered *for* his offering one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 20** One spoon of gold of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 21** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 22** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 23** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Nethaneel the son of Zuar.
- 24** On the third day Eliab the son of Helon, prince of the children of Zebulun, *did offer*:
- 25** His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:

- 26** One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 27** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 28** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 29** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Eliab the son of Helon.
- 30** On the fourth day Elizur the son of Shedeur, prince of the children of Reuben, *did offer*:
- 31** His offering *was* one silver charger of the weight of a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 32** One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 33** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 34** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 35** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 36** On the fifth day Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai, prince of the children of Simeon, *did offer*:
- 37** His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 38** One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 39** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 40** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 41** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.
- 42** On the sixth day Eliasaph the son of Deuel, prince of the children of Gad, *offered*:
- 43** His offering *was* one silver charger of the weight of a hundred and thirty *shekels*, a silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 44** One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 45** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 46** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 47** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Eliasaph the son of Deuel.
- 48** On the seventh day Elishama the son of Ammihud, prince of the children of Ephraim, *offered*:
- 49** His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 50** One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 51** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 52** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:
- 53** And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Elishama the son of Ammihud.
- 54** On the eighth day *offered* Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur, prince of the children of Manasseh:
- 55** His offering *was* one silver charger of the weight of a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:
- 56** One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
- 57** One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:
- 58** One kid of the goats for a sin offering:

59 And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

60 On the ninth day Abidan the son of Gideoni, prince of the children of Benjamin, *offered*:

61 His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:

62 One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:

63 One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:

64 One kid of the goats for a sin offering:

65 And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Abidan the son of Gideoni.

66 On the tenth day Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai, prince of the children of Dan, *offered*:

67 His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:

68 One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:

69 One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:

70 One kid of the goats for a sin offering:

71 And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

72 On the eleventh day Pagiel the son of Ocran, prince of the children of Asher, *offered*:

73 His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:

74 One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:

75 One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:

76 One kid of the goats for a sin offering:

77 And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Pagiel the son of Ocran.

78 On the twelfth day Ahira the son of Enan, prince of the children of Naphtali, *offered*:

79 His offering *was* one silver charger, the weight whereof *was* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering:

80 One golden spoon of ten *shekels*, full of incense:

81 One young bullock, one ram, one lamb of the first year, for a burnt offering:

82 One kid of the goats for a sin offering:

83 And for a sacrifice of peace offerings, two oxen, five rams, five he goats, five lambs of the first year: this *was* the offering of Ahira the son of Enan.

84 This *was* the dedication of the altar, in the day when it was anointed, by the princes of Israel: twelve chargers of silver, twelve silver bowls, twelve spoons of gold:

85 Each charger of silver *weighing* a hundred and thirty *shekels*, each bowl seventy: all the silver vessels *weighed* two thousand and four hundred *shekels*, after the shekel of the sanctuary:

86 The golden spoons *were* twelve, full of incense, *weighing* ten *shekels* apiece, after the shekel of the sanctuary: all the gold of the spoons *was* a hundred and twenty *shekels*.

87 All the oxen for the burnt offering *were* twelve bullocks, the rams twelve, the lambs of the first year twelve, with their meat offering: and the kids of the goats for sin offering twelve.

88 And all the oxen for the sacrifice of the peace offerings *were* twenty and four bullocks, the rams sixty, the he goats sixty, the lambs of the first year sixty. This *was* the dedication of the altar, after that it was anointed.

Elohim speaks to Moses from the mercy seat

89 And when Moses was gone into the tabernacle of the congregation to speak with him, then he heard the voice of one speaking unto him from off the mercy seat that *was* upon the ark of testimony, from between the two cherubims: and he spoke unto him. [\[Exod 25:22\]](#);

How the lamps are to be lighted

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto Aaron, and say unto him, When you lightest the lamps, the seven lamps shall give light over against the candlestick. [Exod 25:37](#);
- 3** And Aaron did so; he lighted the lamps thereof over against the candlestick, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.
- 4** And this work of the candlestick *was of* beaten gold, unto the shaft thereof, unto the flowers thereof, *was* beaten work: according unto the pattern which the YAHWEH had showed Moses, so he made the candlestick. [Exod 25:31](#);

The consecration of the Levites

- 5** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 6** Take the Levites from among the children of Israel, and cleanse them.
- 7** And thus shall you do unto them, to cleanse them: Sprinkle water of purifying upon them, and let them shave all their flesh, and let them wash their clothes, and *so* make themselves clean.
- 8** Then let them take a young bullock with his meat offering, *even* fine flour mingled with oil, and another young bullock shall you take for a sin offering.
- 9** And you shall bring the Levites before the tabernacle of the congregation: and you shall gather the whole assembly of the children of Israel together:
- 10** And you shall bring the Levites before the YAHWEH: and the children of Israel shall put their hands upon the Levites:
- 11** And Aaron shall offer the Levites before the YAHWEH *for* an offering of the children of Israel, that they may execute the service of the YAHWEH. [\[Ezra 6:18\]](#);
- 12** And the Levites shall lay their hands upon the heads of the bullocks: and you shall offer the one *for* a sin offering, and the other *for* a burnt offering, unto the YAHWEH, to make an atonement for the Levites.
- 13** And you shall set the Levites before Aaron, and before his sons, and offer them *for* an offering unto the YAHWEH.
- 14** Thus shall you separate the Levites from among the children of Israel: and the Levites shall be mine. [Num 3:45](#); [\[2Chr 29:11\]](#);
- 15** And after that shall the Levites go in to do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation: and you shall cleanse them, and offer them *for* an offering.
- 16** For they *are* wholly given unto me from among the children of Israel; instead of such as open every womb, *even instead of* the firstborn of all the children of Israel, have I taken them unto me. [\[Num 3:13\]](#); [\[Luke 2:23\]](#);
- 17** For all the firstborn of the children of Israel *are* mine, *both* man and beast: on the day that I smote every firstborn in the land of Egypt I sanctified them for myself. [Exod 13:2](#); [Exod 22:29](#); [Exod 34:19](#); [Lev 27:26](#); [Num 3:13](#); [Luke 2:23](#); [\[Exod 13:12\]](#); [\[Neh 10:36\]](#);
- 18** And I have taken the Levites for all the firstborn of the children of Israel. [Num 3:12](#);
- 19** And I have given the Levites *as* a gift to Aaron and to his sons from among the children of Israel, to do the service of the children of Israel in the tabernacle of the congregation, and to make an atonement for the children of Israel: that there be no plague among the children of Israel, when the children of Israel come nigh unto the sanctuary.
- 20** And Moses, and Aaron, and all the congregation of the children of Israel, did to the Levites according unto all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so did the children of Israel unto them.
- 21** And the Levites were purified, and they washed their clothes; and Aaron offered them *as* an offering before the YAHWEH; and Aaron made an atonement for them to cleanse them.

22 And after that went the Levites in to do their service in the tabernacle of the congregation before Aaron, and before his sons: as the YAHWEH had commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so did they unto them.

The age and time of their service

23 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

24 This *is it* that *belongeth* unto the Levites: from twenty and five years old and upward they shall go in to wait upon the service of the tabernacle of the congregation:

25 And from the age of fifty years they shall cease waiting upon the service *thereof*, and shall serve no more:

26 But shall minister with their brethren in the tabernacle of the congregation, to keep the charge, and shall do no service. Thus shall you do unto the Levites touching their charge.

The passover is again commanded

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying, [Deut 16:1];
- 2** Let the children of Israel also keep the passover at its appointed season. Exod 12:1; Lev 23:5; Num 28:16; Deut 16:2;
- 3** In the fourteenth day of this month, between the evenings, you shall keep it at its appointed season: according to all the rites of it, and according to all the ceremonies thereof, shall you keep it. [Ezek 45:21];
- 4** And Moses spoke unto the children of Israel, that they should keep the passover.
- 5** And they kept the passover on the fourteenth day of the first month between the evenings in the wilderness of Sinai: according to all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so did the children of Israel.

A second passover for the unclean or absent

- 6** And there were certain men, who were defiled by the dead body of a man, that they could not keep the passover on that day: and they came before Moses and before Aaron on that day:
- 7** And those men said unto him, We *are* defiled by the dead body of a man: wherefore are we kept back, that we may not offer an offering of the YAHWEH at its appointed season among the children of Israel?
- 8** And Moses said unto them, Stand still, and I will hear what the YAHWEH will command concerning you.
- 9** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 10** Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If any man of you or of your posterity shall be unclean by reason of a dead body, or *be* in a journey afar off, yet he shall keep the passover unto the YAHWEH. [2Chr 30:2]; [1Cor 11:27];
- 11** The fourteenth day of the second month between the evenings they shall keep it, *and* eat it with unleavened bread and bitter *herbs*. [Exod 12:8];
- 12** They shall leave none of it unto the morning, nor break any bone of it: according to all the ordinances of the passover they shall keep it. Exod 12:46; John 19:33; John 19:36;
- 13** But the man that *is* clean, and is not in a journey, and forbeareth to keep the passover, even the same being shall be cut off from among his people: because he brought not the offering of the YAHWEH at its appointed season, that man shall bear his sin. [1Cor 11:27];
- 14** And if a stranger shall sojourn among you, and will keep the passover unto the YAHWEH; according to the ordinance of the passover, and according to the manner thereof, so shall he do: you shall have one ordinance, both for the stranger, and for him that was born in the land. Exod 12:49; [Num 15:15];

The cloud directs the removals and encampments of the Israelites

- 15** And on the day that the tabernacle was reared up the cloud covered the tabernacle, *namely*, the tent of the testimony: and at even there was upon the tabernacle as it were the appearance of fire, until the morning. Exod 40:34;
- 16** So it was always: the cloud covered it *by day*, and the appearance of fire by night.
- 17** And when the cloud was taken up from the tabernacle, then after that the children of Israel journeyed: and in the place where the cloud abode, there the children of Israel pitched their tents.
- 18** At the commandment of the YAHWEH the children of Israel journeyed, and at the commandment of the YAHWEH they pitched: as long as the cloud abode upon the tabernacle they rested in their tents. 1Cor 10:1;
- 19** And when the cloud tarried long upon the tabernacle many days, then the children of Israel kept the charge of the YAHWEH, and journeyed not.
- 20** And *so* it was, when the cloud was a few days upon the tabernacle; according to the commandment of the YAHWEH they abode in their tents, and according to the commandment of the YAHWEH they journeyed.

21 And *so* it was, when the cloud abode from even unto the morning, and *that* the cloud was taken up in the morning, then they journeyed: whether *it was* by day or by night that the cloud was taken up, they journeyed.

22 Or *whether it were* two days, or a month, or a year, that the cloud tarried upon the tabernacle, remaining thereon, the children of Israel abode in their tents, and journeyed not: but when it was taken up, they journeyed. [Exod 40:36-37](#);

23 At the commandment of the YAHWEH they rested in the tents, and at the commandment of the YAHWEH they journeyed: they kept the charge of the YAHWEH, at the commandment of the YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

The use of the silver trumpets

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Make you two trumpets of silver; of a whole piece shall you make them: that you may use them for the calling of the assembly, and for the journeying of the camps.
- 3** And when they shall blow with them, all the assembly shall assemble themselves to you at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
- 4** And if they blow *but* with one *trumpet*, then the princes, *which are* heads of the thousands of Israel, shall gather themselves unto you.
- 5** When you blow an alarm, then the camps that lie on the east parts shall go forward.
- 6** When you blow an alarm the second time, then the camps that lie on the south side shall take their journey: they shall blow an alarm for their journeys.
- 7** But when the congregation is to be gathered together, you shall blow, but you shall not sound an alarm.
- 8** And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow with the trumpets; and they shall be to you for an ordinance for ever throughout your generations.
- 9** And if you go to war in your land against the enemy that oppresseth you, then you shall blow an alarm with the trumpets; and you shall be remembered before the YAHWEH your Elohim, and you shall be saved from your enemies.
- 10** Also in the day of your gladness, and in your solemn days, and in the beginnings of your months, you shall blow with the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings; that they may be to you for a memorial before your Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

The Israelites remove from Sinai to Paran

- 11** And it came to pass on the twentieth *day* of the second month, in the second year, that the cloud was taken up from off the tabernacle of the testimony.
- 12** And the children of Israel took their journeys out of the wilderness of Sinai; and the cloud rested in the wilderness of Paran.
- 13** And they first took their journey according to the commandment of the YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

The order of their march

- 14** In the first *place* went the standard of the camp of the children of Judah according to their armies: and over his host *was* Nahshon the son of Amminadab. [Num 2:3](#); [Num 1:7](#);
- 15** And over the host of the tribe of the children of Issachar *was* Nethaneel the son of Zuar.
- 16** And over the host of the tribe of the children of Zebulun *was* Eliab the son of Helon.
- 17** And the tabernacle was taken down; and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari set forward, bearing the tabernacle.
- 18** And the standard of the camp of Reuben set forward according to their armies: and over his host *was* Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- 19** And over the host of the tribe of the children of Simeon *was* Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.
- 20** And over the host of the tribe of the children of Gad *was* Eliasaph the son of Deuel.
- 21** And the Kohasites set forward, bearing the sanctuary: and *the other* did set up the tabernacle against they came. [Num 4:4](#);
- 22** And the standard of the camp of the children of Ephraim set forward according to their armies: and over his host *was* Elishama the son of Ammihud.
- 23** And over the host of the tribe of the children of Manasseh *was* Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

- 24 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Benjamin *was* Abidan the son of Gideoni.
- 25 And the standard of the camp of the children of Dan set forward, *which was* the rereward of all the camps throughout their hosts: and over his host *was* Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
- 26 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Asher *was* Pagiel the son of Ocran.
- 27 And over the host of the tribe of the children of Naphtali *was* Ahira the son of Enan.
- 28 Thus *were* the journeyings of the children of Israel according to their armies, when they set forward.

Hobab is entreated by Moses not to leave them

- 29 And Moses said unto Hobab, the son of Raguel the Midianite, Moses' father in law, We are journeying unto the place of which the YAHWEH said, I will give it you: come you with us, and we will do you good: for the YAHWEH has spoken good concerning Israel. [\[Judg 4:11\]](#); [\[1Sam 15:6\]](#);
- 30 And he said unto him, I will not go; but I will depart to mine own land, and to my kindred.
- 31 And he said, Leave us not, I pray you; forasmuch as you knowest how we are to encamp in the wilderness, and you may be to us instead of eyes.
- 32 And it shall be, if you go with us, yes, it shall be, that what goodness the YAHWEH shall do unto us, the same will we do unto you.

The blessing of Moses at the removing and resting of the ark

- 33 And they departed from the mount of the YAHWEH three days' journey: and the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH went before them in the three days' journey, to search out a resting place for them.
- 34 And the cloud of the YAHWEH *was* upon them by day, when they went out of the camp.
- 35 And it came to pass, when the ark set forward, that Moses said, Rise up, YAHWEH, and let thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate you flee before you. [Ps 68:1](#);
- 36 And when it rested, he said, Return, O YAHWEH, unto the many thousands of Israel.

The burning at Taberah quenched by Moses' prayer

1 And *when* the people complained, it displeased the YAHWEH: and the YAHWEH heard *it*; and his anger was kindled; and the fire of the YAHWEH burnt among them, and consumed *them that were* in the uttermost parts of the camp. [Deut 9:22](#); [Ps 78:21](#); [\[Ps 78:19\]](#);

2 And the people cried unto Moses; and when Moses prayed unto the YAHWEH, the fire was quenched.

3 And he called the name of the place Taberah: because the fire of the YAHWEH burnt among them.

The people lust for flesh, and loathe manna

4 And the mixt multitude that *was* among them fell a lusting: and the children of Israel also wept again, and said, Who shall give us flesh to eat? [Exod 12:38](#); [Ps 106:14](#); [1Cor 10:6](#); [Exod 16:3](#); [\[Deut 9:7\]](#); [\[Deut 9:22\]](#); [\[Ps 78:19\]](#);

5 We remember the fish, which we did eat in Egypt freely; the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlick:

6 But now our being *is* dried away: *there is* nothing at all, beside this manna, *before* our eyes. [\[Num 21:5\]](#); [\[Ps 106:14\]](#);

7 And the manna *was* as coriander seed, and the colour thereof as the colour of bdellium. [Exod 16:14](#); [Exod 16:31](#); [Ps 78:24](#); [John 6:31](#); [John 6:49](#);

8 *And* the people went about, and gathered *it*; and ground *it* in mills, or beat *it* in a mortar, and baked *it* in pans, and made cakes of it: and the taste of it was as the taste of fresh oil.

9 And when the dew fell upon the camp in the night, the manna fell upon it.

Moses complains of his charge

10 Then Moses heard the people weep throughout their families, every man in the door of his tent: and the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled greatly; Moses also was displeased.

11 And Moses said unto the YAHWEH, Wherefore have you afflicted thy servant? and wherefore have I not found favor in thy sight, that you layest the burden of all this people upon me?

12 Have I conceived all this people? have I begotten them, that you should say unto me, Carry them in thy bosom, as a nursing father beareth the sucking child, unto the land which you swore unto their fathers?

13 Whence should I have flesh to give unto all this people? for they weep unto me, saying, Give us flesh, that we may eat.

14 I am not able to bear all this people alone, because *it is* too heavy for me.

15 And if you deal thus with me, kill me, I pray you, out of hand, if I have found favor in thy sight; and let me not see my wretchedness.

Elohim promises to divide his burden unto seventy elders, and to give the people flesh for a month

16 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Gather unto me seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom you knowest to be the elders of the people, and officers over them; and bring them unto the tabernacle of the congregation, that they may stand there with you.

17 And I will come down and talk with you there: and I will take of the spirit which *is* upon you, and will put *it* upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with you, that you bear *it* not thyself alone. [\[Neh 9:20\]](#);

18 And say you unto the people, Sanctify yourselves against to morrow, and you shall eat flesh: for you have wept in the ears of the YAHWEH, saying, Who shall give us flesh to eat? for *it was* well with us in Egypt: therefore the YAHWEH will give you flesh, and you shall eat.

19 You shall not eat one day, nor two days, nor five days, neither ten days, nor twenty days; [Deut 6:7];
20 *But* even a whole month, until it come out at your nostrils, and it be loathsome unto you: because that you have despised the YAHWEH which *is* among you, and have wept before him, saying, Why came we forth out of Egypt? Num 21:5; [Ps 106:15];

Moses' faith is staggered

21 And Moses said, The people, among whom I *am, are* six hundred thousand footmen; and you have said, I will give them flesh, that they may eat a whole month.
22 Shall the flocks and the herds be slain for them, to suffice them? or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered together for them, to suffice them? John 6:7;
23 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Is the YAHWEH'S hand waxed short? you shall see now whether my word shall come to pass unto you or not. Isa 50:2; Isa 59:1;
24 And Moses went out, and told the people the words of the YAHWEH, and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people, and set them round about the tabernacle.
25 And the YAHWEH came down in a cloud, and spoke unto him, and took of the spirit that *was* upon him, and gave *it* unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, *that*, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease. [1Sam 10:5];
26 But there remained two *of the* men in the camp, the name of the one *was* Eldad, and the name of the other Medad: and the spirit rested upon them; and they *were* of them that were written, but went not out unto the tabernacle: and they prophesied in the camp.
27 And there ran a young man, and told Moses, and said, Eldad and Medad do prophesy in the camp.
28 And Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of Moses, *one* of his young men, answered and said, My lord Moses, forbid them.
29 And Moses said unto him, Enviest you for my sake? would Elohim that all the YAHWEH'S people were prophets, *and* that the YAHWEH would put his spirit upon them! [Jas 4:5];
30 And Moses got him into the camp, he and the elders of Israel.

Quails are given in wrath at Kibroth-hattaavah

31 And there went forth a wind from the YAHWEH, and brought quails from the sea, and let *them* fall by the camp, as it were a day's journey on this side, and as it were a day's journey on the other side, round about the camp, and as it were two cubits *high* upon the face of the earth. Exod 16:13; Ps 78:26;
32 And the people stood up all that day, and all *that* night, and all the next day, and they gathered the quails: he that gathered least gathered ten homers: and they spread *them* all abroad for themselves round about the camp.
33 And while the flesh *was* yet between their teeth, ere it was chewed, the wrath of the YAHWEH was kindled against the people, and the YAHWEH smote the people with a very great plague. Ps 78:30-31; [Ps 78:31]; [Ps 106:14]; [Ps 106:15]; [1Cor 10:6];
34 And he called the name of that place Kibrothhattaavah: because there they buried the people that lusted. [Num 33:16]; [Deut 9:22];
35 *And* the people journeyed from Kibrothhattaavah unto Hazeroth; and abode at Hazeroth.

NUMBERS TWELVE

Elohim rebukes the sedition of Miriam and Aaron

1 And Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses because of the Ethiopian woman whom he had married: for he had married an Ethiopian woman.

2 And they said, Has the YAHWEH indeed spoken only by Moses? has he not spoken also by us? And the YAHWEH heard *it*.

3 (Now the man Moses *was* very meek, above all the men which *were* upon the face of the earth.)

4 And the YAHWEH spoke suddenly unto Moses, and unto Aaron, and unto Miriam, Come out you three unto the tabernacle of the congregation. And they three came out.

5 And the YAHWEH came down in the pillar of the cloud, and stood *in* the door of the tabernacle, and called Aaron and Miriam: and they both came forth.

6 And he said, Hear now my words: If there be a prophet among you, *I* the YAHWEH will make myself known unto him in a vision, *and* will speak unto him in a dream.

7 My servant Moses *is* not so, who *is* faithful in all mine house. [Heb 3:2](#);

8 With him will I speak mouth to mouth, even apparently, and not in dark speeches; and the similitude of the YAHWEH shall he behold: wherefore then were you not afraid to speak against my servant Moses?

[Exod 33:11](#); [Deut 34:10](#);

9 And the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against them; and he departed.

10 And the cloud departed from off the tabernacle; and, behold, Miriam *became* leprous, *white* as snow: and Aaron looked upon Miriam, and, behold, *she was* leprous. [\[Deut 24:9\]](#); [\[2Kgs 5:27\]](#);

Miriam's leprosy is healed at the prayer of Moses

11 And Aaron said unto Moses, Alas, my lord, I beseech you, lay not the sin upon us, wherein we have done foolishly, and wherein we have sinned.

12 Let her not be as one dead, of whom the flesh is half consumed when he cometh out of his mother's womb.

13 And Moses cried unto the YAHWEH, saying, Heal her now, O Elohim, I beseech you.

Elohim commands her to be shut out of the host

14 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, If her father had but spit in her face, should she not be ashamed seven days? let her be shut out from the camp seven days, and after that let her be received in *again*.

[Lev 13:46](#); [\[1Cor 5:11\]](#);

15 And Miriam was shut out from the camp seven days: and the people journeyed not till Miriam was brought in *again*.

The people encamp in the wilderness of Paran

16 And afterward the people removed from Hazeroth, and pitched in the wilderness of Paran.

The names of the men who were sent to search the land

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Send you men, that they may search the land of Canaan, which I give unto the children of Israel: of every tribe of their fathers shall you send a man, every one a ruler among them. [\[Deut 1:23\]](#);
- 3** And Moses by the commandment of the YAHWEH sent them from the wilderness of Paran: all those men *were* heads of the children of Israel. [\[Num 32:8\]](#); [\[Deut 9:23\]](#);
- 4** And these *were* their names: of the tribe of Reuben, Shammua the son of Zaccur.
- 5** Of the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat the son of Hori.
- 6** Of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh.
- 7** Of the tribe of Issachar, Igal the son of Joseph.
- 8** Of the tribe of Ephraim, Oshea the son of Nun.
- 9** Of the tribe of Benjamin, Palti the son of Raphu.
- 10** Of the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel the son of Sodi.
- 11** Of the tribe of Joseph, *namely*, of the tribe of Manasseh, Gaddi the son of Susi.
- 12** Of the tribe of Dan, Ammiel the son of Gemalli.
- 13** Of the tribe of Asher, Sethur the son of Michael.
- 14** Of the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi the son of Vophsi.
- 15** Of the tribe of Gad, Geuel the son of Machi.
- 16** These *are* the names of the men which Moses sent to spy out the land. And Moses called Oshea the son of Nun Jehoshua.

Their instructions

- 17** And Moses sent them to spy out the land of Canaan, and said unto them, Get you up this *way* southward, and go up into the mountain:
- 18** And see the land, what it *is*; and the people that dwelleth therein, whether they *be* strong or weak, few or many;
- 19** And what the land *is* that they dwell in, whether it *be* good or bad; and what cities *they be* that they dwell in, whether in tents, or in strong holds;
- 20** And what the land *is*, whether it *be* fat or lean, whether there be wood therein, or not. And be you of good courage, and bring of the fruit of the land. Now the time *was* the time of the firstripe grapes.

Their acts

- 21** So they went up, and searched the land from the wilderness of Zin unto Rehob, as men come to Hamath.
- 22** And they ascended by the south, and came unto Hebron; where Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, the children of Anak, *were*. (Now Hebron was built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.)
- 23** And they came unto the brook of Eshcol, and cut down from thence a branch with one cluster of grapes, and they bore it between two upon a staff; and *they brought* of the pomegranates, and of the figs. [\[Deut 1:24\]](#);
- 24** The place was called the brook Eshcol, because of the cluster of grapes which the children of Israel cut down from thence.
- 25** And they returned from searching of the land after forty days.

Their relation

26 And they went and came to Moses, and to Aaron, and to all the congregation of the children of Israel, unto the wilderness of Paran, to Kadesh; and brought back word unto them, and unto all the congregation, and showed them the fruit of the land.

27 And they told him, and said, We came unto the land whither you sentest us, and surely it floweth with milk and honey; and this *is* the fruit of it. [Exod 3:8](#); [Exod 33:3](#);

28 Nevertheless the people *be* strong that dwell in the land, and the cities *are* walled, *and* very great: and moreover we saw the children of Anak there. [\[Deut 1:28\]](#);

29 The Amalekites dwell in the land of the south: and the Hittites, and the Jebusites, and the Amorites, dwell in the mountains: and the Canaanites dwell by the sea, and by the coast of Jordan.

30 And Caleb stilled the people before Moses, and said, Let us go up at once, and possess it; for we are well able to overcome it.

31 But the men that went up with him said, We be not able to go up against the people; for they *are* stronger than we.

32 And they brought up an evil report of the land which they had searched unto the children of Israel, saying, The land, through which we have gone to search it, *is* a land that eateth up the inhabitants thereof; and all the people that we saw in it *are* men of a great stature. [\[Deut 9:2\]](#);

33 And there we saw the giants, the sons of Anak, *which come* of the giants: and we were in our own sight as grasshoppers, and so we were in their sight.

The people murmur at the news

- 1** And all the congregation lifted up their voice, and cried; and the people wept that night. [\[Deut 9:23\]; \[Ps 106:24\];](#)
- 2** And all the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron: and the whole congregation said unto them, Would Elohim that we had died in the land of Egypt! or would Elohim we had died in this wilderness! [\[Deut 1:26\];](#)
- 3** And wherefore has the YAHWEH brought us unto this land, to fall by the sword, that our wives and our children should be a prey? were it not better for us to return into Egypt?
- 4** And they said one to another, Let us make a captain, and let us return into Egypt. [\[Neh 9:17\];](#)
- 5** Then Moses and Aaron fell on their faces before all the assembly of the congregation of the children of Israel.

Joshua and Caleb labour to still them

- 6** And Joshua the son of Nun, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, *which were* of them that searched the land, rent their clothes:
- 7** And they spoke unto all the company of the children of Israel, saying, The land, which we passed through to search it, *is* an exceeding good land.
- 8** If the YAHWEH delight in us, then he will bring us into this land, and give it us; a land which floweth with milk and honey. [\[Rom 8:31\];](#)
- 9** Only rebel not you against the YAHWEH, neither fear you the people of the land; for they *are* bread for us: their defence is departed from them, and the YAHWEH *is* with us: fear them not. [Deut 20:3; \[Neh 4:14\];](#)
- 10** But all the congregation bade stone them with stones. And the glory of the YAHWEH appeared in the tabernacle of the congregation before all the children of Israel.

Elohim threatens them

- 11** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, How long will this people provoke me? and how long will it be ere they believe me, for all the signs which I have showed among them? [\[Isa 63:10\];](#)
- 12** I will smite them with the pestilence, and disinherit them, and will make of you a greater nation and mightier than they.

Moses intercedes with Elohim, and obtains pardon

- 13** And Moses said unto the YAHWEH, Then the Egyptians shall hear *it*, (for you broughtest up this people in thy might from among them;) [Exod 32:12; \[Deut 9:26\];](#)
- 14** And they will tell *it* to the inhabitants of this land: *for* they have heard that you YAHWEH are among this people, that you YAHWEH are seen face to face, and *that* thy cloud standeth over them, and *that* you go before them, by day time in a pillar of a cloud, and in a pillar of fire by night. [Exod 13:21; Exod 40:38;](#)
- 15** Now *if* you shall kill *all* this people as one man, then the nations which have heard the fame of you will speak, saying,
- 16** Because the YAHWEH was not able to bring this people into the land which he swore unto them, therefore he has slain them in the wilderness. [Deut 9:28;](#)
- 17** And now, I beseech you, let the power of my Lord be great, according as you have spoken, saying,
- 18** The YAHWEH *is* longsuffering, and of great mercy, forgiving iniquity and transgression, and by no means clearing *the guilty*, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth *generation*. [Exod 34:6; Ps 86:15; Ps 103:8; Ps 145:8; Jonah 4:2; Exod 20:5; Exod 34:7; Deut 5:9; \[Neh 1:5\]; \[Neh 9:17\];](#)
- 19** Pardon, I beseech you, the iniquity of this people according unto the greatness of thy mercy, and as you have forgiven this people, from Egypt even until now.
- 20** And the YAHWEH said, I have pardoned according to thy word:

21 But *as* truly *as* I live, all the earth shall be filled with the glory of the YAHWEH. [\[Heb 3:11\];](#)
22 Because all those men which have seen my glory, and my miracles, which I did in Egypt and in the wilderness, and have tempted me now these ten times, and have not hearkened to my voice; [\[Deut 1:35\];](#)
23 Surely they shall not see the land which I swore unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that provoked me see it: [Deut 1:35-36; \[Josh 5:6\];](#)
24 But my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit with him, and has followed me fully, him will I bring into the land whereinto he went; and his seed shall possess it. [Josh 14:8-9; \[Josh 14:6\]; \[Josh 14:8\]; \[Judg 1:20\];](#)
25 (Now the Amalekites and the Canaanites dwelt in the valley.) To morrow turn you, and get you into the wilderness by the way of the Red sea.

The murmurers are debarred from entering into the land

26 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
27 How long *shall I bear with* this evil congregation, which murmur against me? I have heard the murmurings of the children of Israel, which they murmur against me. [Ps 106:26;](#)
28 Say unto them, *As truly as* I live, saith the YAHWEH, as you have spoken in mine ears, so will I do to you: [Num 26:65; Num 32:11; \[Ps 106:26\];](#)
29 Your carcases shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward, which have murmured against me, [Deut 1:35; Heb 3:17; \[Jude 1:5\];](#)
30 Doubtless you shall not come into the land, *concerning* which I swore to make you dwell therein, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun. [Josh 14:6;](#)
31 But your little ones, which you said should be a prey, them will I bring in, and they shall know the land which you have despised.
32 But *as for* you, your carcases, they shall fall in this wilderness.
33 And your children shall wander in the wilderness forty years, and bear your whoredoms, until your carcases be wasted in the wilderness.
34 After the number of the days in which you searched the land, *even* forty days, each day for a year, shall you bear your iniquities, *even* forty years, and you shall know my breach of promise. [Ps 95:10; \[Num 26:65\]; \[Ezek 4:5\]; \[Acts 13:18\];](#)
35 I the YAHWEH have said, I will surely do it unto all this evil congregation, that are gathered together against me: in this wilderness they shall be consumed, and there they shall die. [\[Num 27:3\];](#)

The men who raised the evil report die by a plague

36 And the men, which Moses sent to search the land, who returned, and made all the congregation to murmur against him, by bringing up a slander upon the land, [\[1Cor 10:10\]; \[Heb 3:17\];](#)
37 Even those men that did bring up the evil report upon the land, died by the plague before the YAHWEH. [1Cor 10:10; Jude 1:5;](#)
38 But Joshua the son of Nun, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, *which were* of the men that went to search the land, lived *still*.
39 And Moses told these sayings unto all the children of Israel: and the people mourned greatly.

The people that would invade the land against the will of Elohim are smitten

40 And they rose up early in the morning, and got them up into the top of the mountain, saying, Lo, we *be here*, and will go up unto the place which the YAHWEH has promised: for we have sinned.
41 And Moses said, Wherefore now do you transgress the commandment of the YAHWEH? but it shall not prosper. [Deut 1:41;](#)
42 Go not up, for the YAHWEH *is* not among you; that you be not smitten before your enemies.
43 For the Amalekites and the Canaanites *are* there before you, and you shall fall by the sword: because you are turned away from the YAHWEH, therefore the YAHWEH will not be with you.

44 But they presumed to go up unto the hill top: nevertheless the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, and Moses, departed not out of the camp.

45 Then the Amalekites came down, and the Canaanites which dwelt in that hill, and smote them, and discomfited them, *even* unto Hormah.

The law of the meat offering, and the drink offering

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you be come into the land of your habitations, which I give unto you,
- 3** And will make an offering by fire unto the YAHWEH, a burnt offering, or a sacrifice in performing a vow, or in a freewill offering, or in your solemn feasts, to make a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH, of the herd, or of the flock: [Lev 22:21](#); [Exod 29:18](#);
- 4** Then shall he that offereth his offering unto the YAHWEH bring a meat offering of a tenth deal of flour mingled with the fourth *part* of a hin of oil. [Lev 2:1](#); [Lev 6:14](#);
- 5** And the fourth *part* of a hin of wine for a drink offering shall you prepare with the burnt offering or sacrifice, for one lamb.
- 6** Or for a ram, you shall prepare *for* a meat offering two tenth deals of flour mingled with the third *part* of a hin of oil.
- 7** And for a drink offering you shall offer the third *part* of a hin of wine, *for* a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.
- 8** And when you preparest a bullock *for* a burnt offering, or *for* a sacrifice in performing a vow, or peace offerings unto the YAHWEH:
- 9** Then shall he bring with a bullock a meat offering of three tenth deals of flour mingled with half a hin of oil.
- 10** And you shall bring for a drink offering half a hin of wine, *for* an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.
- 11** Thus shall it be done for one bullock, or for one ram, or for a lamb, or a kid.
- 12** According to the number that you shall prepare, so shall you do to every one according to their number.
- 13** All that are born of the country shall do these things after this manner, in offering an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.

The stranger is under the same law

- 14** And if a stranger sojourn with you, or whosoever *be* among you in your generations, and will offer an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH; as you do, so he shall do.
- 15** One ordinance *shall be both* for you of the congregation, and also for the stranger that sojourneth *with you*, an ordinance for ever in your generations: as you *are*, so shall the stranger be before the YAHWEH. [Exod 12:49](#); [Num 9:14](#);
- 16** One law and one manner shall be for you, and for the stranger that sojourneth with you.

The law of the first of the dough for a heave offering

- 17** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[Deut 26:2\]](#);
- 18** Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you come into the land whither I bring you,
- 19** Then it shall be, that, when you eat of the bread of the land, you shall offer up a heave offering unto the YAHWEH. [\[Neh 10:37\]](#);
- 20** You shall offer up a cake of the first of your dough *for* a heave offering: as you *do* the heave offering of the threshingfloor, so shall you heave it.
- 21** Of the first of your dough you shall give unto the YAHWEH a heave offering in your generations.

The sacrifice for sins of ignorance

22 And if you have erred, and not observed all these commandments, which the YAHWEH has spoken unto Moses,

23 *Even* all that the YAHWEH has commanded you by the hand of Moses, from the day that the YAHWEH commanded *Moses*, and henceforward among your generations;

24 Then it shall be, if *ought* be committed by ignorance without the knowledge of the congregation, that all the congregation shall offer one young bullock for a burnt offering, for a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH, with his meat offering, and his drink offering, according to the manner, and one kid of the goats for a sin offering. [\[Lev 4:13\];](#)

25 And the priest shall make an atonement for all the congregation of the children of Israel, and it shall be forgiven them; for it *is* ignorance: and they shall bring their offering, a sacrifice made by fire unto the YAHWEH, and their sin offering before the YAHWEH, for their ignorance:

26 And it shall be forgiven all the congregation of the children of Israel, and the stranger that sojourneth among them; seeing all the people *were* in ignorance.

27 And if any being sin through ignorance, then he shall bring a she goat of the first year for a sin offering. [Lev 4:27;](#)

28 And the priest shall make an atonement for the being that sinneth ignorantly, when he sinneth by ignorance before the YAHWEH, to make an atonement for him; and it shall be forgiven him.

29 You shall have one law for him that sinneth through ignorance, *both* for him that is born among the children of Israel, and for the stranger that sojourneth among them.

The punishment of presumption

30 But the being that doeth *ought* presumptuously, *whether he be* born in the land, or a stranger, the same reproacheth the YAHWEH; and that being shall be cut off from among his people. [\[Matt 12:32\]; \[Heb 10:26\]; \[1John 5:16\];](#)

31 Because he has despised the word of the YAHWEH, and has broken his commandment, that being shall utterly be cut off; his iniquity *shall be* upon him.

He that violated the Sabbath is stoned

32 And while the children of Israel were in the wilderness, they found a man that gathered sticks upon the Sabbath day.

33 And they that found him gathering sticks brought him unto Moses and Aaron, and unto all the congregation.

34 And they put him in ward, because it was not declared what should be done to him. [Lev 24:12;](#)

35 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, The man shall be surely put to death: all the congregation shall stone him with stones without the camp.

36 And all the congregation brought him without the camp, and stoned him with stones, and he died; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The law of fringes

37 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

38 Speak unto the children of Israel, and bid them that they make them fringes in the borders of their garments throughout their generations, and that they put upon the fringe of the borders a ribband of blue: [Deut 22:12; Matt 23:5;](#)

39 And it shall be unto you for a fringe, that you may look upon it, and remember all the commandments of the YAHWEH, and do them; and that you seek not after your own heart and your own eyes, after which you use to go a whoring:

40 That you may remember, and do all my commandments, and be holy unto your Elohim.

41 I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, which brought you out of the land of Egypt, to be your Elohim: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

The rebellion of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram

- 1** Now Korah, the son of Izhar, the son of Kohas, the son of Levi, and Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and On, the son of Peleth, sons of Reuben, took *men*: [Num 26:9](#); [Num 27:3](#); [Jude 1:11](#);
- 2** And they rose up before Moses, with certain of the children of Israel, two hundred and fifty princes of the assembly, famous in the congregation, men of renown: [\[Ps 106:16\]](#);
- 3** And they gathered themselves together against Moses and against Aaron, and said unto them, you *take* too much upon you, seeing all the congregation *are* holy, every one of them, and the YAHWEH *is* among them: wherefore then lift you up yourselves above the congregation of the YAHWEH?
- 4** And when Moses heard *it*, he fell upon his face:
- 5** And he spoke unto Korah and unto all his company, saying, Even to morrow the YAHWEH will show who *are* his, and *who is* holy; and will cause *him* to come near unto him: even *him* whom he has chosen will he cause to come near unto him.
- 6** This do; Take you censers, Korah, and all his company;
- 7** And put fire therein, and put incense in them before the YAHWEH to morrow: and it shall be *that* the man whom the YAHWEH chooses, he *shall be* holy: you *take* too much upon you, you sons of Levi.
- 8** And Moses said unto Korah, Hear, I pray you, you sons of Levi:
- 9** *Seemeth it but* a small thing unto you, that the Elohim of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel, to bring you near to himself to do the service of the tabernacle of the YAHWEH, and to stand before the congregation to minister unto them? [\[Num 3:6\]](#);
- 10** And he has brought you near *to him*, and all thy brethren the sons of Levi with you: and seek you the priesthood also?
- 11** For which cause *both* you and all thy company *are* gathered together against the YAHWEH: and what *is* Aaron, that you murmur against him?
- 12** And Moses sent to call Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab: which said, We will not come up: [\[Num 26:9\]](#);
- 13** *Is it* a small thing that you have brought us up out of a land that floweth with milk and honey, to kill us in the wilderness, except you make thyself altogether a prince over us?
- 14** Moreover you have not brought us into a land that floweth with milk and honey, or given us inheritance of fields and vineyards: will you put out the eyes of these men? we will not come up.
- 15** And Moses was very wroth, and said unto the YAHWEH, Respect not you their offering: I have not taken one ass from them, neither have I hurt one of them. [1Sam 12:3](#);
- 16** And Moses said unto Korah, Be you and all thy company before the YAHWEH, you, and they, and Aaron, to morrow:
- 17** And take every man his censer, and put incense in them, and bring you before the YAHWEH every man his censer, two hundred and fifty censers; you also, and Aaron, each *of you* his censer.
- 18** And they took every man his censer, and put fire in them, and laid incense thereon, and stood in the door of the tabernacle of the congregation with Moses and Aaron.
- 19** And Korah gathered all the congregation against them unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation: and the glory of the YAHWEH appeared unto all the congregation.
- 20** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 21** Separate yourselves from among this congregation, that I may consume them in a moment.
- 22** And they fell upon their faces, and said, O Elohim, the Elohim of the spirits of all flesh, shall one man sin, and will you be wroth with all the congregation? [Num 27:16](#); [Heb 12:9](#); [\[Eccl 12:7\]](#); [\[Jer 32:27\]](#);

Moses separates the people from the rebels' tents

23 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
24 Speak unto the congregation, saying, Get you up from about the tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.
25 And Moses rose up and went unto Dathan and Abiram; and the elders of Israel followed him.
26 And he spoke unto the congregation, saying, Depart, I pray you, from the tents of these wicked men, and touch nothing of theirs, lest you be consumed in all their sins.
27 So they got up from the tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, on every side: and Dathan and Abiram came out, and stood in the door of their tents, and their wives, and their sons, and their little children.
28 And Moses said, Hereby you shall know that the YAHWEH has sent me to do all these works; for *I have not done them* of mine own mind.
29 If these men die the common death of all men, or if they be visited after the visitation of all men; *then* the YAHWEH has not sent me.
30 But if the YAHWEH make a new thing, and the earth open her mouth, and swallow them up, with all that *appertain* unto them, and they go down quick into the pit; then you shall understand that these men have provoked the YAHWEH.

The earth swallows up Korah, and a fire consumes others

31 And it came to pass, as he had made an end of speaking all these words, that the ground clave asunder that *was* under them: [\[Deut 11:6\]](#); [\[Ps 106:17\]](#);
32 And the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed them up, and their houses, and all the men that *appertained* unto Korah, and all *their* goods. [Num 26:10](#); [Num 27:3](#); [Deut 11:6](#); [Ps 106:17](#); [\[Num 20:3\]](#);
33 They, and all that *appertained* to them, went down alive into the pit, and the earth closed upon them: and they perished from among the congregation.
34 And all Israel that *were* round about them fled at the cry of them: for they said, Lest the earth swallow us up *also*.
35 And there came out a fire from the YAHWEH, and consumed the two hundred and fifty men that offered incense. [\[Ps 106:18\]](#);

The censers are reserved to holy use

36 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
37 Speak unto Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, that he take up the censers out of the burning, and scatter you the fire yonder; for they are hallowed.
38 The censers of these sinners against their own beings, let them make them broad plates *for* a covering of the altar: for they offered them before the YAHWEH, therefore they are hallowed: and they shall be a sign unto the children of Israel.
39 And Eleazar the priest took the brasen censers, wherewith they that were burnt had offered; and they were made broad *plates for* a covering of the altar:
40 *To be* a memorial unto the children of Israel, that no stranger, which *is* not of the seed of Aaron, come near to offer incense before the YAHWEH; that he be not as Korah, and as his company: as the YAHWEH said to him by the hand of Moses. [\[Num 3:38\]](#);

Fourteen thousand and seven hundred are slain by a plague, for murmuring against Moses and Aaron

41 But on the morrow all the congregation of the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron, saying, you have killed the people of the YAHWEH.
42 And it came to pass, when the congregation was gathered against Moses and against Aaron, that they looked toward the tabernacle of the congregation: and, behold, the cloud covered it, and the glory of the YAHWEH appeared.

43 And Moses and Aaron came before the tabernacle of the congregation.

44 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

45 Get you up from among this congregation, that I may consume them as in a moment. And they fell upon their faces.

Aaron by incense stays the plague

46 And Moses said unto Aaron, Take a censer, and put fire therein from off the altar, and put on incense, and go quickly unto the congregation, and make an atonement for them: for there is wrath gone out from the YAHWEH; the plague is begun. [\[Ps 106:18\];](#)

47 And Aaron took as Moses commanded, and ran into the midst of the congregation; and, behold, the plague was begun among the people: and he put on incense, and made an atonement for the people.

48 And he stood between the dead and the living; and the plague was stayed.

49 Now they that died in the plague were fourteen thousand and seven hundred, beside them that died about the matter of Korah. [\[Num 20:3\];](#)

50 And Aaron returned unto Moses unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation: and the plague was stayed.

Aaron's rod, among all the rods of the tribes, only flourishes

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Speak unto the children of Israel, and take of every one of them a rod according to the house of *their* fathers, of all their princes according to the house of their fathers twelve rods: write you every man's name upon his rod.
- 3** And you shall write Aaron's name upon the rod of Levi: for one rod *shall be* for the head of the house of their fathers.
- 4** And you shall lay them up in the tabernacle of the congregation before the testimony, where I will meet with you. [Exod 25:22](#);
- 5** And it shall come to pass, *that* the man's rod, whom I shall choose, shall blossom: and I will make to cease from me the murmurings of the children of Israel, whereby they murmur against you.
- 6** And Moses spoke unto the children of Israel, and every one of their princes gave him a rod apiece, for each prince one, according to their fathers' houses, *even* twelve rods: and the rod of Aaron *was* among their rods.
- 7** And Moses laid up the rods before the YAHWEH in the tabernacle of witness.
- 8** And it came to pass, that on the morrow Moses went into the tabernacle of witness; and, behold, the rod of Aaron for the house of Levi was budded, and brought forth buds, and bloomed blossoms, and yielded almonds.
- 9** And Moses brought out all the rods from before the YAHWEH unto all the children of Israel: and they looked, and took every man his rod.

It is left for a monument against the rebels

- 10** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Bring Aaron's rod again before the testimony, to be kept for a token against the rebels; and you shall quite take away their murmurings from me, that they die not. [Heb 9:4](#);
- 11** And Moses did *so*: as the YAHWEH commanded him, so did he.
- 12** And the children of Israel spoke unto Moses, saying, Behold, we die, we perish, we all perish.
- 13** Whosoever cometh any thing near unto the tabernacle of the YAHWEH shall die: shall we be consumed with dying?

The charge of the priests and Levites

- 1** And the YAHWEH said unto Aaron, you and thy sons and thy father's house with you shall bear the iniquity of the sanctuary: and you and thy sons with you shall bear the iniquity of your priesthood. [1Chr 6:49];
- 2** And thy brethren also of the tribe of Levi, the tribe of thy father, bring you with you, that they may be joined unto you, and minister unto you: but you and thy sons with you *shall minister* before the tabernacle of witness. [Num 3:6]; [2Chr 29:11];
- 3** And they shall keep thy charge, and the charge of all the tabernacle: only they shall not come nigh the vessels of the sanctuary and the altar, that neither they, nor you also, die.
- 4** And they shall be joined unto you, and keep the charge of the tabernacle of the congregation, for all the service of the tabernacle: and a stranger shall not come nigh unto you.
- 5** And you shall keep the charge of the sanctuary, and the charge of the altar: that there be no wrath any more upon the children of Israel.
- 6** And I, behold, I have taken your brethren the Levites from among the children of Israel: to you *they are* given *as* a gift for the YAHWEH, to do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation. Num 3:45;
- 7** Therefore you and thy sons with you shall keep your priest's office for every thing of the altar, and within the vail; and you shall serve: I have given your priest's office *unto you* as a service of gift: and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.

The priests' portion

- 8** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Aaron, Behold, I also have given you the charge of mine heave offerings of all the hallowed things of the children of Israel; unto you have I given them by reason of the anointing, and to thy sons, by an ordinance for ever. [Num 31:41];
- 9** This shall be thine of the most holy things, *reserved* from the fire: every oblation of theirs, every meat offering of theirs, and every sin offering of theirs, and every trespass offering of theirs, which they shall render unto me, *shall be* most holy for you and for thy sons.
- 10** In the most holy *place* shall you eat it; every male shall eat it: it shall be holy unto you.
- 11** And this *is* thine; the heave offering of their gift, with all the wave offerings of the children of Israel: I have given them unto you, and to thy sons and to thy daughters with you, by a statute for ever: every one that is clean in thy house shall eat of it. Lev 10:14; [Lev 7:34]; [Ezek 44:30];
- 12** All the best of the oil, and all the best of the wine, and of the wheat, the firstfruits of them which they shall offer unto the YAHWEH, them have I given you. [Neh 10:37];
- 13** *And* whatsoever is first ripe in the land, which they shall bring unto the YAHWEH, shall be thine; every one that is clean in thine house shall eat *of* it.
- 14** Every thing devoted in Israel shall be thine. Lev 27:28;
- 15** Every thing that openeth the matrix in all flesh, which they bring unto the YAHWEH, *whether it be* of men or beasts, shall be thine: nevertheless the firstborn of man shall you surely redeem, and the firstling of unclean beasts shall you redeem. Exod 13:2; Exod 22:29; Lev 27:26; Num 3:13;
- 16** And those that are to be redeemed from a month old shall you redeem, according to thine estimation, for the money of five shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary, which *is* twenty gerahs. Exod 30:13; Lev 27:25; Num 3:47; Ezek 45:12;
- 17** But the firstling of a cow, or the firstling of a sheep, or the firstling of a goat, you shall not redeem; they *are* holy: you shall sprinkle their blood upon the altar, and shall burn their fat *for* an offering made by fire, for a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.
- 18** And the flesh of them shall be thine, as the wave breast and as the right shoulder are thine.

19 All the heave offerings of the holy things, which the children of Israel offer unto the YAHWEH, have I given you, and thy sons and thy daughters with you, by a statute for ever: it *is* a covenant of salt for ever before the YAHWEH unto you and to thy seed with you. [\[Num 31:41\];](#)

20 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Aaron, you shall have no inheritance in their land, neither shall you have any part among them: I *am* thy part and thine inheritance among the children of Israel. [Deut 10:9; Deut 28:2; Ezek 44:28; \[Deut 12:12\]; \[Deut 14:27\]; \[Deut 18:1\]; \[Deut 18:2\]; \[Josh 13:33\];](#)

The Levites' portion

21 And, behold, I have given the children of Levi all the tenth in Israel for an inheritance, for their service which they serve, *even* the service of the tabernacle of the congregation. [\[Heb 7:5\];](#)

22 Neither must the children of Israel henceforth come nigh the tabernacle of the congregation, lest they bear sin, and die.

23 But the Levites shall do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation, and they shall bear their iniquity: *it shall be* a statute for ever throughout your generations, that among the children of Israel they have no inheritance.

24 But the tithes of the children of Israel, which they offer *as* a heave offering unto the YAHWEH, I have given to the Levites to inherit: therefore I have said unto them, Among the children of Israel they shall have no inheritance. [\[Deut 14:27\]; \[Deut 26:12\]; \[Neh 10:37\];](#)

The heave offering to the priests out of the Levites' portion

25 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

26 Thus speak unto the Levites, and say unto them, When you take of the children of Israel the tithes which I have given you from them for your inheritance, then you shall offer up a heave offering of it for the YAHWEH, *even* a tenth *part* of the tithe. [\[Neh 10:38\];](#)

27 And *this* your heave offering shall be reckoned unto you, as though *it were* the grain of the threshingfloor, and as the fulness of the winepress.

28 Thus you also shall offer a heave offering unto the YAHWEH of all your tithes, which you receive of the children of Israel; and you shall give thereof the YAHWEH'S heave offering to Aaron the priest.

29 Out of all your gifts you shall offer every heave offering of the YAHWEH, of all the best thereof, *even* the hallowed part thereof out of it.

30 Therefore you shall say unto them, When you have heaved the best thereof from it, then it shall be counted unto the Levites as the increase of the threshingfloor, and as the increase of the winepress.

31 And you shall eat it in every place, you and your households: for it *is* your reward for your service in the tabernacle of the congregation.

32 And you shall bear no sin by reason of it, when you have heaved from it the best of it: neither shall you pollute the holy things of the children of Israel, lest you die.

The water of separation made of the ashes of a red heifer

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,
- 2** This *is* the ordinance of the law which the YAHWEH has commanded, saying, Speak unto the children of Israel, that they bring you a red heifer without spot, wherein *is* no blemish, *and* upon which never came yoke:
- 3** And you shall give her unto Eleazar the priest, that he may bring her forth without the camp, and *one* shall slay her before his face: [Heb 13:11-12](#); [\[Lev 4:12\]](#); [\[Heb 13:11\]](#);
- 4** And Eleazar the priest shall take of her blood with his finger, and sprinkle of her blood directly before the tabernacle of the congregation seven times: [Heb 9:13](#); [\[Lev 4:5\]](#); [\[Heb 10:4\]](#);
- 5** And *one* shall burn the heifer in his sight; her skin, and her flesh, and her blood, with her dung, shall he burn: [Exod 29:14](#); [Lev 4:11-12](#); [\[Lev 4:11\]](#);
- 6** And the priest shall take cedar wood, and hyssop, and scarlet, and cast *it* into the midst of the burning of the heifer. [\[Ps 51:7\]](#);
- 7** Then the priest shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp, and the priest shall be unclean until the even. [\[Heb 9:10\]](#);
- 8** And he that burneth her shall wash his clothes in water, and bathe his flesh in water, and shall be unclean until the even.
- 9** And a man *that is* clean shall gather up the ashes of the heifer, and lay *them* up without the camp in a clean place, and it shall be kept for the congregation of the children of Israel for a water of separation: *it is* a purification for sin. [\[Num 31:23\]](#);
- 10** And he that gathereth the ashes of the heifer shall wash his clothes, and be unclean until the even: and it shall be unto the children of Israel, and unto the stranger that sojourneth among them, for a statute for ever.

The law for the use of it in purification of the unclean

- 11** He that toucheth the dead body of any man shall be unclean seven days. [Num 31:19](#); [Hag 2:13](#);
- 12** He shall purify himself with it on the third day, and on the seventh day he shall be clean: but if he purify not himself the third day, then the seventh day he shall not be clean.
- 13** Whosoever toucheth the dead body of any man that is dead, and purifieth not himself, defileth the tabernacle of the YAHWEH; and that being shall be cut off from Israel: because the water of separation was not sprinkled upon him, he shall be unclean; his uncleanness *is* yet upon him.
- 14** This *is* the law, when a man dieth in a tent: all that come into the tent, and all that *is* in the tent, shall be unclean seven days.
- 15** And every open vessel, which has no covering bound upon it, *is* unclean.
- 16** And whosoever toucheth one that is slain with a sword in the open fields, or a dead body, or a bone of a man, or a grave, shall be unclean seven days.
- 17** And for an unclean *person* they shall take of the ashes of the burnt heifer of purification for sin, and running water shall be put thereto in a vessel:
- 18** And a clean person shall take hyssop, and dip *it* in the water, and sprinkle *it* upon the tent, and upon all the vessels, and upon the persons that were there, and upon him that touched a bone, or one slain, or one dead, or a grave: [Ps 51:7](#);
- 19** And the clean *person* shall sprinkle upon the unclean on the third day, and on the seventh day: and on the seventh day he shall purify himself, and wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and shall be clean at even.

20 But the man that shall be unclean, and shall not purify himself, that being shall be cut off from among the congregation, because he has defiled the sanctuary of the YAHWEH: the water of separation has not been sprinkled upon him; he *is* unclean.

21 And it shall be a perpetual statute unto them, that he that sprinkleth the water of separation shall wash his clothes; and he that toucheth the water of separation shall be unclean until even.

22 And whatsoever the unclean *person* toucheth shall be unclean; and the being that toucheth *it* shall be unclean until even.

The children of Israel come to Zin, where Miriam dies

1 Then came the children of Israel, *even* the whole congregation, into the desert of Zin in the first month: and the people abode in Kadesh; and Miriam died there, and was buried there. [Num 33:36]; [Ps 95:8];

They murmur for want of water

2 And there was no water for the congregation: and they gathered themselves together against Moses and against Aaron.

3 And the people chode with Moses, and spoke, saying, Would Elohim that we had died when our brethren died before the YAHWEH! Num 16:32; Num 16:49; [Exod 17:2]; [Deut 6:16]; [Ps 95:8];

4 And why have you brought up the congregation of the YAHWEH into this wilderness, that we and our cattle should die there?

5 And wherefore have you made us to come up out of Egypt, to bring us in unto this evil place? it *is* no place of seed, or of figs, or of vines, or of pomegranates; neither *is* there any water to drink.

6 And Moses and Aaron went from the presence of the assembly unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and they fell upon their faces: and the glory of the YAHWEH appeared unto them.

Moses smiting the rock, brings forth water at Meribah

7 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

8 Take the rod, and gather you the assembly together, you, and Aaron thy brother, and speak you unto the rock before their eyes; and it shall give forth his water, and you shall bring forth to them water out of the rock: so you shall give the congregation and their beasts drink. Neh 9:15; Ps 78:15-16; Ps 105:41; Ps 114:8;

9 And Moses took the rod from before the YAHWEH, as he commanded him. [Exod 17:6]; [Neh 9:15];

10 And Moses and Aaron gathered the congregation together before the rock, and he said unto them, Hear now, you rebels; must we fetch you water out of this rock? Ps 106:32-33; Deut 32:51;

11 And Moses lifted up his hand, and with his rod he smote the rock twice: and the water came out abundantly, and the congregation drank, and their beasts *also*. Ps 78:15; Ps 105:41; Isa 48:21; 1Cor 10:4; Isa 43:20; [Deut 8:15]; [Ps 74:15]; [Ps 78:20];

12 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and Aaron, Because you believed me not, to sanctify me in the eyes of the children of Israel, therefore you shall not bring this congregation into the land which I have given them. Num 27:14; Deut 1:37; [Deut 32:51]; [Ps 106:32];

13 This *is* the water of Meribah; because the children of Israel strove with the YAHWEH, and he was sanctified in them. [Ps 95:8];

Moses at Kadesh desires passage through Edom, which is denied him

14 And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh unto the king of Edom, Thus saith thy brother Israel, you knowest all the travail that has befallen us: Deut 23:7; Obad 1:10; Obad 1:12;

15 How our fathers went down into Egypt, and we have dwelt in Egypt a long time; and the Egyptians vexed us, and our fathers: [Gen 46:4];

16 And when we cried unto the YAHWEH, he heard our voice, and sent an angel, and has brought us forth out of Egypt: and, behold, we *are* in Kadesh, a city in the uttermost of thy border: Exod 2:23; Exod 14:19;

17 Let us pass, I pray you, through thy country: we will not pass through the fields, or through the vineyards, neither will we drink *of* the water of the wells: we will go by the king's *high* way, we will not turn to the right hand nor to the left, until we have passed thy borders. [Num 21:22]; [Judg 11:17];

18 And Edom said unto him, you shall not pass by me, lest I come out against you with the sword.

19 And the children of Israel said unto him, We will go by the high way: and if I and my cattle drink of thy water, then I will pay for it: I will only, without *doing* any thing *else*, go through on my feet.

20 And he said, you shall not go through. And Edom came out against him with much people, and with a strong hand.

21 Thus Edom refused to give Israel passage through his border: wherefore Israel turned away from him. [Judg 11:18](#);

At mount Hor Aaron resigns his place to Eleazar, and dies

22 And the children of Israel, *even* the whole congregation, journeyed from Kadesh, and came unto mount Hor. [Num 33:37](#);

23 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and Aaron in mount Hor, by the coast of the land of Edom, saying,

24 Aaron shall be gathered unto his people: for he shall not enter into the land which I have given unto the children of Israel, because you rebelled against my word at the water of Meribah. [\[Num 27:13\]](#);

25 Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up unto mount Hor: [Num 33:38](#); [Deut 32:50](#);

26 And strip Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son: and Aaron shall be gathered *unto his people*, and shall die there.

27 And Moses did as the YAHWEH commanded: and they went up into mount Hor in the sight of all the congregation.

28 And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son; and Aaron died there in the top of the mount: and Moses and Eleazar came down from the mount. [Deut 10:6](#); [Deut 32:50](#);

29 And when all the congregation saw that Aaron was dead, they mourned for Aaron thirty days, *even* all the house of Israel.

Israel destroys the Canaanites at Hormah

1 And *when* king Arad the Canaanite, which dwelt in the south, heard tell that Israel came by the way of the spies; then he fought against Israel, and took *some* of them prisoners. [Num 33:40];

2 And Israel vowed a vow unto the YAHWEH, and said, If you will indeed deliver this people into my hand, then I will utterly destroy their cities.

3 And the YAHWEH hearkened to the voice of Israel, and delivered up the Canaanites; and they utterly destroyed them and their cities: and he called the name of the place Hormah.

The people murmuring are plagued with fiery serpents

4 And they journeyed from mount Hor by the way of the Red sea, to compass the land of Edom: and the being of the people was much discouraged because of the way. [Num 33:41];

5 And the people spoke against Elohim, and against Moses, Wherefore have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? for *there is* no bread, neither *is there any* water; and our being loatheth this light bread. Num 11:6; [Num 11:20]; [1Cor 10:9];

6 And the YAHWEH sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died. 1Cor 10:9;

They repenting are healed by a brazen serpent

7 Therefore the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against the YAHWEH, and against you; pray unto the YAHWEH, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people. [1Kgs 13:6]; [Acts 8:24];

8 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Make you a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live. John 3:14;

9 And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived. 2Kgs 18:4; John 3:14; [John 8:28]; [John 12:32];

Sundry journeys of the Israelites

10 And the children of Israel set forward, and pitched in Oboth. Num 33:43;

11 And they journeyed from Oboth, and pitched at Ijeabarim, in the wilderness which *is* before Moab, toward the sunrising.

12 From thence they removed, and pitched in the valley of Zared.

13 From thence they removed, and pitched on the other side of Arnon, which *is* in the wilderness that cometh out of the coasts of the Amorites: for Arnon *is* the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites. Judg 11:18; [Judg 11:15];

14 Wherefore it is said in the book of the wars of the YAHWEH, What he did in the Red sea, and in the brooks of Arnon,

15 And at the stream of the brooks that goes down to the dwelling of Ar, and lies upon the border of Moab.

16 And from thence *they went* to Beer: that *is* the well whereof the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, Gather the people together, and I will give them water.

17 Then Israel sang this song, Spring up, O well; sing you unto it:

18 The princes digged the well, the nobles of the people digged it, by *the direction* of the lawgiver, with their staves. And from the wilderness *they went* to Mattanah:

19 And from Mattanah to Nahaliel: and from Nahaliel to Bamoth:

20 And from Bamoth *in* the valley, that *is* in the country of Moab, to the top of Pisgah, which looketh toward Jeshimon.

Sihon is overcome

21 And Israel sent messengers unto Sihon king of the Amorites, saying, [Deut 2:26](#); [Judg 11:19](#); [\[Deut 2:27\]](#); [\[Josh 24:8\]](#); [\[Neh 9:22\]](#);

22 Let me pass through thy land: we will not turn into the fields, or into the vineyards; we will not drink *of* the waters of the well: *but* we will go along by the king's *high* way, until we be past thy borders. [Num 20:17](#); [\[Judg 11:19\]](#);

23 And Sihon would not suffer Israel to pass through his border: but Sihon gathered all his people together, and went out against Israel into the wilderness: and he came to Jahaz, and fought against Israel. [Deut 2:30](#); [Deut 29:7](#); [Josh 24:8](#); [Judg 11:20](#); [\[Deut 2:32\]](#);

24 And Israel smote him with the edge of the sword, and possessed his land from Arnon unto Jabbok, even unto the children of Ammon: for the border of the children of Ammon *was* strong. [Deut 2:33](#); [Deut 29:7](#); [Josh 12:2](#); [Josh 24:8](#); [Judg 11:21](#); [Ps 135:11-12](#); [Ps 136:19](#); [Amos 2:9](#); [Deut 2:37](#); [\[Deut 1:4\]](#); [\[Deut 4:46\]](#); [\[Deut 31:4\]](#); [\[Josh 2:10\]](#); [\[Josh 9:10\]](#); [\[Josh 12:6\]](#); [\[Ps 136:17\]](#);

25 And Israel took all these cities: and Israel dwelt in all the cities of the Amorites, in Heshbon, and in all the villages thereof. [Deut 2:34-35](#);

26 For Heshbon *was* the city of Sihon the king of the Amorites, who had fought against the former king of Moab, and taken all his land out of his hand, even unto Arnon.

27 Wherefore they that speak in proverbs say, Come into Heshbon, let the city of Sihon be built and prepared:

28 For there is a fire gone out of Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon: it has consumed Ar of Moab, *and* the lords of the high places of Arnon. [\[Jer 48:45\]](#);

29 Woe to you, Moab! you are undone, O people of Chemosh: he has given his sons that escaped, and his daughters, into captivity unto Sihon king of the Amorites. [1Kgs 11:7](#); [1Kgs 11:33](#);

30 We have shot at them; Heshbon is perished even unto Dibon, and we have laid them waste even unto Nophah, which *reacheth* unto Medeba.

31 Thus Israel dwelt in the land of the Amorites.

32 And Moses sent to spy out Jaazer, and they took the villages thereof, and drove out the Amorites that *were* there.

and Og

33 And they turned and went up by the way of Bashan: and Og the king of Bashan went out against them, he, and all his people, to the battle at Edrei. [Deut 3:1](#); [Deut 29:7](#); [\[Deut 1:4\]](#); [\[Deut 4:47\]](#); [\[Deut 31:4\]](#); [\[Josh 9:10\]](#); [\[Josh 24:8\]](#); [\[Neh 9:22\]](#); [\[Ps 68:22\]](#);

34 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Fear him not: for I have delivered him into thy hand, and all his people, and his land; and you shall do to him as you didst unto Sihon king of the Amorites, which dwelt at Heshbon. [Ps 136:20](#); [\[Deut 3:2\]](#); [\[Josh 2:10\]](#); [\[Ps 136:17\]](#);

35 So they smote him, and his sons, and all his people, until there was none left him alive: and they possessed his land. [Ps 136:20-22](#);

Balak's first message for Balaam is refused

- 1** And the children of Israel set forward, and pitched in the plains of Moab on this side Jordan *by* Jericho.
- 2** And Balak the son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites. [\[Judg 11:25\]](#);
- 3** And Moab was sore afraid of the people, because they *were* many: and Moab was distressed because of the children of Israel.
- 4** And Moab said unto the elders of Midian, Now shall this company lick up all *that are* round about us, as the ox licketh up the grass of the field. And Balak the son of Zippor *was* king of the Moabites at that time.
- 5** He sent messengers therefore unto Balaam the son of Beor to Pethor, which *is* by the river of the land of the children of his people, to call him, saying, Behold, there is a people come out from Egypt: behold, they cover the face of the earth, and they abide over against me: [Josh 24:9](#); [\[Neh 13:2\]](#); [\[Mic 6:5\]](#);
- 6** Come now therefore, I pray you, curse me this people; for they *are* too mighty for me: perhaps I shall prevail, *that* we may smite them, and *that* I may drive them out of the land: for I wot that he whom you blessest *is* blessed, and he whom you cursest is cursed.
- 7** And the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian departed with the rewards of divination in their hand; and they came unto Balaam, and spoke unto him the words of Balak. [\[2Pet 2:15\]](#); [\[Jude 1:11\]](#);
- 8** And he said unto them, Lodge here this night, and I will bring you word again, as the YAHWEH shall speak unto me: and the princes of Moab abode with Balaam.
- 9** And Elohim came unto Balaam, and said, What men *are* these with you?
- 10** And Balaam said unto Elohim, Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab, has sent unto me, *saying*,
- 11** Behold, *there is* a people come out of Egypt, which covereth the face of the earth: come now, curse me them; perhaps I shall be able to overcome them, and drive them out.
- 12** And Elohim said unto Balaam, you shall not go with them; you shall not curse the people: for they *are* blessed.
- 13** And Balaam rose up in the morning, and said unto the princes of Balak, Get you into your land: for the YAHWEH refuseth to give me leave to go with you.
- 14** And the princes of Moab rose up, and they went unto Balak, and said, Balaam refuseth to come with us.

His second message obtains him

- 15** And Balak sent yet again princes, more, and more honourable than they.
- 16** And they came to Balaam, and said to him, Thus saith Balak the son of Zippor, Let nothing, I pray you, hinder you from coming unto me:
- 17** For I will promote you unto very great honour, and I will do whatsoever you sayest unto me: come therefore, I pray you, curse me this people.
- 18** And Balaam answered and said unto the servants of Balak, If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the word of the YAHWEH my Elohim, to do less or more. [Num 24:13](#); [\[1Kgs 13:8\]](#);
- 19** Now therefore, I pray you, tarry you also here this night, that I may know what the YAHWEH will say unto me more.
- 20** And Elohim came unto Balaam at night, and said unto him, If the men come to call you, rise up, *and* go with them; but yet the word which I shall say unto you, that shall you do.
- 21** And Balaam rose up in the morning, and saddled his ass, and went with the princes of Moab. [\[2Pet 2:15\]](#); [\[2Pet 2:16\]](#); [\[Jude 1:11\]](#);

An angel would have slain him, if he had not been saved by his ass

22 And Elohim's anger was kindled because he went: and the angel of the YAHWEH stood in the way for an adversary against him. Now he was riding upon his ass, and his two servants *were* with him.

23 And the ass saw the angel of the YAHWEH standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and the ass turned aside out of the way, and went into the field: and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way. [2Pet 2:16](#); [Jude 1:11](#); [\[Rev 2:14\]](#);

24 But the angel of the YAHWEH stood in a path of the vineyards, a wall *being* on this side, and a wall on that side.

25 And when the ass saw the angel of the YAHWEH, she thrust herself unto the wall, and crushed Balaam's foot against the wall: and he smote her again.

26 And the angel of the YAHWEH went further, and stood in a narrow place, where *was* no way to turn either to the right hand or to the left.

27 And when the ass saw the angel of the YAHWEH, she fell down under Balaam: and Balaam's anger was kindled, and he smote the ass with a staff.

28 And the YAHWEH opened the mouth of the ass, and she said unto Balaam, What have I done unto you, that you have smitten me these three times? [2Pet 2:16](#); [Jude 1:11](#);

29 And Balaam said unto the ass, Because you have mocked me: I would there were a sword in mine hand, for now would I kill you.

30 And the ass said unto Balaam, *Am* not I thine ass, upon which you have ridden ever since *I was* thine unto this day? was I ever wont to do so unto you? And he said, Nay.

31 Then the YAHWEH opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of the YAHWEH standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand: and he bowed down his head, and fell flat on his face.

32 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto him, Wherefore have you smitten thine ass these three times? behold, I went out to withstand you, because *thy* way is perverse before me: [2Pet 2:15](#);

33 And the ass saw me, and turned from me these three times: unless she had turned from me, surely now also I had slain you, and saved her alive.

34 And Balaam said unto the angel of the YAHWEH, I have sinned; for I knew not that you stoodest in the way against me: now therefore, if it displease you, I will get me back again.

35 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto Balaam, Go with the men: but only the word that I shall speak unto you, that you shall speak. So Balaam went with the princes of Balak. [\[Num 23:16\]](#);

Balak entertains him

36 And when Balak heard that Balaam was come, he went out to meet him unto a city of Moab, which *is* in the border of Arnon, which *is* in the utmost coast.

37 And Balak said unto Balaam, Did I not earnestly send unto you to call you? wherefore camest you not unto me? am I not able indeed to promote you to honour?

38 And Balaam said unto Balak, Lo, I am come unto you: have I now any power at all to say any thing? the word that Elohim puts in my mouth, that shall I speak.

39 And Balaam went with Balak, and they came unto Kirjathhuzoth.

40 And Balak offered oxen and sheep, and sent to Balaam, and to the princes that *were* with him.

41 And it came to pass on the morrow, that Balak took Balaam, and brought him up into the high places of Baal, that thence he might see the utmost *part* of the people.

Balak's sacrifices

1 And Balaam said unto Balak, Build me here seven altars, and prepare me here seven oxen and seven rams.

2 And Balak did as Balaam had spoken; and Balak and Balaam offered on *every* altar a bullock and a ram.

3 And Balaam said unto Balak, Stand by thy burnt offering, and I will go: perhaps the YAHWEH will come to meet me: and whatsoever he sheweth me I will tell you. And he went to a high place.

4 And Elohim met Balaam: and he said unto him, I have prepared seven altars, and I have offered upon *every* altar a bullock and a ram.

5 And the YAHWEH put a word in Balaam's mouth, and said, Return unto Balak, and thus you shall speak.

6 And he returned unto him, and, lo, he stood by his burnt sacrifice, he, and all the princes of Moab.

Balaam's parables

7 And he took up his parable, and said, Balak the king of Moab has brought me from Aram, out of the mountains of the east, *saying*, Come, curse me Jacob, and come, defy Israel. [[Mic 6:5](#)];

8 How shall I curse, whom Elohim has not cursed? or how shall I defy, *whom* the YAHWEH has not defied?

9 For from the top of the rocks I see him, and from the hills I behold him: lo, the people shall dwell alone, and shall not be reckoned among the nations. [Deut 33:28](#);

10 Who can count the dust of Jacob, and the number of the fourth *part* of Israel? Let me die the death of the righteous, and let my last end be like his!

11 And Balak said unto Balaam, What have you done unto me? I took you to curse mine enemies, and, behold, you have blessed *them* altogether.

12 And he answered and said, Must I not take heed to speak that which the YAHWEH has put in my mouth?

Balak's sacrifices

13 And Balak said unto him, Come, I pray you, with me unto another place, from whence you may see them: you shall see but the utmost part of them, and shall not see them all: and curse me them from thence.

14 And he brought him into the field of Zophim, to the top of Pisgah, and built seven altars, and offered a bullock and a ram on *every* altar.

15 And he said unto Balak, Stand here by thy burnt offering, while I meet *the* YAHWEH yonder.

16 And the YAHWEH met Balaam, and put a word in his mouth, and said, Go again unto Balak, and say thus. [Num 22:35](#);

17 And when he came to him, behold, he stood by his burnt offering, and the princes of Moab with him. And Balak said unto him, What has the YAHWEH spoken?

Balaam's parables

18 And he took up his parable, and said, Rise up, Balak, and hear; hearken unto me, you son of Zippor:

19 Elohim *is* not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: has he said, and shall he not do *it*? or has he spoken, and shall he not make it good? [1Sam 15:29](#); [Jas 1:17](#); [[Rom 3:3](#)]; [[Rom 9:6](#)]; [[2Tim 2:13](#)]; [[Titus 1:2](#)];

20 Behold, I have received *commandment* to bless: and he has blessed; and I cannot reverse it.

21 He has not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither has he seen perverseness in Israel: the YAHWEH his Elohim *is* with him, and the shout of a king *is* among them. [Ps 32:1-2](#); [Ps 51:9](#); [Jer 50:20](#); [Rom 4:7](#);

22 Elohim brought them out of Egypt; he has as it were the strength of an unicorn. [Num 24:8](#);

23 Surely *there is* no enchantment against Jacob, neither *is there* any divination against Israel: according to this time it shall be said of Jacob and of Israel, What has Elohim wrought!

24 Behold, the people shall rise up as a great lion, and lift up himself as a young lion: he shall not lie down until he eat *of* the prey, and drink the blood of the slain. [\[Num 24:9\]](#);

Balak's sacrifices

25 And Balak said unto Balaam, Neither curse them at all, nor bless them at all.

26 But Balaam answered and said unto Balak, Told not I you, saying, All that the YAHWEH speaketh, that I must do?

27 And Balak said unto Balaam, Come, I pray you, I will bring you unto another place; perhaps it will please Elohim that you may curse me them from thence.

28 And Balak brought Balaam unto the top of Peor, that looketh toward Jeshimon.

29 And Balaam said unto Balak, Build me here seven altars, and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams.

30 And Balak did as Balaam had said, and offered a bullock and a ram on *every* altar.

Balaam, leaving divinations, prophesies the happiness of Israel

1 And when Balaam saw that it pleased the YAHWEH to bless Israel, he went not, as at other times, to seek for enchantments, but he set his face toward the wilderness.

2 And Balaam lifted up his eyes, and he saw Israel abiding *in his tents* according to their tribes; and the spirit of Elohim came upon him.

3 And he took up his parable, and said, Balaam the son of Beor has said, and the man whose eyes are open has said:

4 He has said, which heard the words of Elohim, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling *into a trance*, but having his eyes open:

5 How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob, *and* thy tabernacles, O Israel!

6 As the valleys are they spread forth, as gardens by the river's side, as the trees of lign aloes which the YAHWEH has planted, *and* as cedar trees beside the waters.

7 He shall pour the water out of his buckets, and his seed *shall be* in many waters, and his king shall be higher than Agag, and his kingdom shall be exalted. [1Sam 15:8];

8 Elohim brought him forth out of Egypt; he has as it were the strength of an unicorn: he shall eat up the nations his enemies, and shall break their bones, and pierce *them* through with his arrows. Num 23:22;

9 He couched, he lay down as a lion, and as a great lion: who shall stir him up? Blessed *is* he that blesseth you, and cursed *is* he that curses you. Gen 49:9; Num 23:24;

Balak, in anger, dismisses him

10 And Balak's anger was kindled against Balaam, and he smote his hands together: and Balak said unto Balaam, I called you to curse mine enemies, and, behold, you have altogether blessed *them* these three times.

11 Therefore now flee you to thy place: I thought to promote you unto great honour; but, lo, the YAHWEH has kept you back from honour.

12 And Balaam said unto Balak, spoke I not also to thy messengers which you sentest unto me, saying,

13 If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the commandment of the YAHWEH, to do *either* good or bad of mine own mind; *but* what the YAHWEH saith, that will I speak? Num 22:18;

14 And now, behold, I go unto my people: come *therefore, and* I will warn you what this people shall do to thy people in the latter days. [Rev 2:14];

He prophesies of the Star of Jacob, and the destruction of some nations

15 And he took up his parable, and said, Balaam the son of Beor has said, and the man whose eyes are open has said:

16 He has said, which heard the words of Elohim, and knew the knowledge of the most High, *which* saw the vision of the Almighty, falling *into a trance*, but having his eyes open:

17 I shall see him, but not now: I shall behold him, but not nigh: there shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth.

18 And Edom shall be a possession, Seir also shall be a possession for his enemies; and Israel shall do valiantly.

19 Out of Jacob shall come he that shall have dominion, and shall destroy him that remaineth of the city. 2Sam 8:14;

20 And when he looked on Amalek, he took up his parable, and said, Amalek *was* the first of the nations; but his latter end *shall be* that he perish for ever. [\[Exod 17:14\];](#)

21 And he looked on the Kenites, and took up his parable, and said, Strong is thy dwellingplace, and you puttest thy nest in a rock.

22 Nevertheless the Kenite shall be wasted, until Asshur shall carry you away captive.

23 And he took up his parable, and said, Alas, who shall live when Elohim doeth this!

24 And ships *shall come* from the coast of Chittim, and shall afflict Asshur, and shall afflict Eber, and he also shall perish for ever.

25 And Balaam rose up, and went and returned to his place: and Balak also went his way.

Israel at Shittim commit whoredom and idolatry

1 And Israel abode in Shittim, and the people began to commit whoredom with the daughters of Moab. [Num 31:16](#); [Num 33:49](#); [\[Mic 6:5\]](#); [\[1Cor 10:8\]](#); [\[Rev 2:14\]](#);

2 And they called the people unto the sacrifices of their gods: and the people did eat, and bowed down to their gods. [Ps 106:28](#); [Hos 9:10](#);

3 And Israel joined himself unto Baalpeor: and the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Israel. [Ps 106:29](#); [\[Josh 22:17\]](#); [\[Ps 106:28\]](#); [\[Hos 9:10\]](#);

4 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Take all the heads of the people, and hang them up before the YAHWEH facing the sun, that the fierce anger of the YAHWEH may be turned away from Israel. [Deut 4:3](#); [Josh 22:17](#);

5 And Moses said unto the judges of Israel, Slay you every one his men that were joined unto Baalpeor.

Phinehas kills Zimri and Cozbi

6 And, behold, one of the children of Israel came and brought unto his brethren a Midianitish woman in the sight of Moses, and in the sight of all the congregation of the children of Israel, who *were* weeping *before* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

7 And when Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, saw *it*, he rose up from among the congregation, and took a javelin in his hand; [Ps 106:30](#);

8 And he went after the man of Israel into the tent, and thrust both of them through, the man of Israel, and the woman through her belly. So the plague was stayed from the children of Israel.

9 And those that died in the plague were twenty and four thousand. [1Cor 10:8](#);

Elohim therefore gives him an everlasting priesthood

10 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

11 Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, has turned my wrath away from the children of Israel, while he was zealous for my sake among them, that I consumed not the children of Israel in my jealousy. [2Cor 11:2](#);

12 Wherefore say, Behold, I give unto him my covenant of peace: [Ps 106:31](#);

13 And he shall have it, and his seed after him, *even* the covenant of an everlasting priesthood; because he was zealous for his Elohim, and made an atonement for the children of Israel.

14 Now the name of the Israelite that was slain, *even* that was slain with the Midianitish woman, *was* Zimri, the son of Salu, a prince of a chief house among the Simeonites.

15 And the name of the Midianitish woman that was slain *was* Cozbi, the daughter of Zur; he *was* head over a people, *and* of a chief house in Midian.

The Midianites are to be vexed

16 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

17 Vex the Midianites, and smite them: [Num 31:2](#);

18 For they vex you with their wives, wherewith they have beguiled you in the matter of Peor, and in the matter of Cozbi, the daughter of a prince of Midian, their sister, which was slain in the day of the plague for Peor's sake. [Rev 18:6](#); [\[Num 31:16\]](#);

The sum of all Israel is taken in the plains of Moab

1 And it came to pass after the plague, that the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses and unto Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying,

2 Take the sum of all the congregation of the children of Israel, from twenty years old and upward, throughout their fathers' house, all that are able to go to war in Israel. [Num 1:3](#);

3 And Moses and Eleazar the priest spoke with them in the plains of Moab by Jordan *near* Jericho, saying,

4 *Take the sum of the people*, from twenty years old and upward; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses and the children of Israel, which went forth out of the land of Egypt. [Num 1:1-3](#);

5 Reuben, the eldest son of Israel: the children of Reuben; Hanoch, *of whom cometh* the family of the Hanochites: of Pallu, the family of the Palluites: [Gen 46:9](#); [Exod 6:14](#); [1Chr 5:1](#); [[Gen 46:8](#)]; [[1Chr 5:3](#)];

6 Of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites: of Carmi, the family of the Carmites.

7 These *are* the families of the Reubenites: and they that were numbered of them were forty and three thousand and seven hundred and thirty.

8 And the sons of Pallu; Eliab.

9 And the sons of Eliab; Nemuel, and Dathan, and Abiram. This *is that* Dathan and Abiram, *which were* famous in the congregation, who strove against Moses and against Aaron in the company of Korah, when they strove against the YAHWEH: [Num 16:12](#); [[Num 16:1](#)];

10 And the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed them up together with Korah, when that company died, what time the fire devoured two hundred and fifty men: and they became a sign. [[Num 16:32](#)];

11 Notwithstanding the children of Korah died not.

12 The sons of Simeon after their families: of Nemuel, the family of the Nemuelites: of Jamin, the family of the Jaminites: of Jachin, the family of the Jachinites: [[Exod 6:15](#)];

13 Of Zerah, the family of the Zarhites: of Shaul, the family of the Shaulites.

14 These *are* the families of the Simeonites, twenty and two thousand and two hundred.

15 The children of Gad after their families: of Zephon, the family of the Zephonites: of Haggi, the family of the Haggites: of Shuni, the family of the Shunites:

16 Of Ozni, the family of the Oznites: of Eri, the family of the Erites:

17 Of Arod, the family of the Arodites: of Areli, the family of the Arelites.

18 These *are* the families of the children of Gad according to those that were numbered of them, forty thousand and five hundred.

19 The sons of Judah *were* Er and Onan: and Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan. [Gen 38:7](#); [Gen 38:10](#); [Gen 46:12](#); [[1Chr 2:3](#)];

20 And the sons of Judah after their families were; of Shelah, the family of the Shelanites: of Pharez, the family of the Pharzites: of Zerah, the family of the Zarhites. [[Gen 38:5](#)];

21 And the sons of Pharez were; of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites: of Hamul, the family of the Hamulites. [Gen 46:12](#);

22 These *are* the families of Judah according to those that were numbered of them, threescore and sixteen thousand and five hundred.

23 *Of* the sons of Issachar after their families: *of* Tola, the family of the Tolaites: of Pua, the family of the Punites: [[1Chr 7:1](#)];

24 Of Jashub, the family of the Jashubites: of Shimron, the family of the Shimronites.

25 These *are* the families of Issachar according to those that were numbered of them, threescore and four thousand and three hundred.

26 *Of* the sons of Zebulun after their families: of Sered, the family of the Sardites: of Elon, the family of the Elonites: of Jahleel, the family of the Jahleelites.

27 These *are* the families of the Zebulunites according to those that were numbered of them, threescore thousand and five hundred.

28 The sons of Joseph after their families *were* Manasseh and Ephraim.

29 Of the sons of Manasseh: of Machir, the family of the Machirites: and Machir begat Gilead: of Gilead *come* the family of the Gileadites. [Josh 17:1](#);

30 These *are* the sons of Gilead: *of* Jeezer, the family of the Jeezerites: of Helek, the family of the Helekites:

31 And *of* Asriel, the family of the Asrielites: and *of* Shechem, the family of the Shechemites:

32 And *of* Shemida, the family of the Shemidaïtes: and *of* Hephher, the family of the Hephherites.

33 And Zelophehad the son of Hephher had no sons, but daughters: and the names of the daughters of Zelophehad *were* Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. [Num 27:1](#); [Josh 17:3](#);

34 These *are* the families of Manasseh, and those that were numbered of them, fifty and two thousand and seven hundred.

35 These *are* the sons of Ephraim after their families: of Shuthelah, the family of the Shuthalhites: of Becher, the family of the Bachrites: of Tahan, the family of the Tahanites. [\[1Chr 7:20\]](#);

36 And these *are* the sons of Shuthelah: of Eran, the family of the Eranites.

37 These *are* the families of the sons of Ephraim according to those that were numbered of them, thirty and two thousand and five hundred. These *are* the sons of Joseph after their families.

38 The sons of Benjamin after their families: of Bela, the family of the Belaites: of Ashbel, the family of the Ashbelites: of Ahiram, the family of the Ahiramites: [\[1Chr 7:6\]](#);

39 Of Shupham, the family of the Shuphamites: of Hupham, the family of the Huphamites.

40 And the sons of Bela were Ard and Naaman: *of* Ard, the family of the Ardites: *and* of Naaman, the family of the Naamites.

41 These *are* the sons of Benjamin after their families: and they that were numbered of them *were* forty and five thousand and six hundred.

42 These *are* the sons of Dan after their families: of Shuham, the family of the Shuhamites. These *are* the families of Dan after their families.

43 All the families of the Shuhamites, according to those that were numbered of them, *were* threescore and four thousand and four hundred.

44 *Of* the children of Asher after their families: of Jimna, the family of the Jimnites: of Jesui, the family of the Jesuites: of Beriah, the family of the Beriites. [\[1Chr 7:30\]](#);

45 Of the sons of Beriah: of Heber, the family of the Heberites: of Malchiel, the family of the Malchielites.

46 And the name of the daughter of Asher *was* Sarah.

47 These *are* the families of the sons of Asher according to those that were numbered of them; *who were* fifty and three thousand and four hundred.

48 *Of* the sons of Naphtali after their families: of Jahzeel, the family of the Jahzeelites: of Guni, the family of the Gunites:

49 Of Jezer, the family of the Jezerites: of Shillem, the family of the Shillemites.

50 These *are* the families of Naphtali according to their families: and they that were numbered of them *were* forty and five thousand and four hundred.

51 These *were* the numbered of the children of Israel, six hundred thousand and a thousand seven hundred and thirty.

The law of dividing among them the inheritance of the land

52 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

53 Unto these the land shall be divided for an inheritance according to the number of names.

- 54** To many you shall give the more inheritance, and to few you shall give the less inheritance: to every one shall his inheritance be given according to those that were numbered of him. [Num 33:54](#);
- 55** Notwithstanding the land shall be divided by lot: according to the names of the tribes of their fathers they shall inherit. [Num 33:54](#); [Josh 11:23](#); [Josh 14:2](#); [[Num 36:2](#)];
- 56** According to the lot shall the possession thereof be divided between many and few.

The families and number of the Levites

- 57** And these *are* they that were numbered of the Levites after their families: of Gershon, the family of the Gershonites: of Kohas, the family of the Kohasites: of Merari, the family of the Merarites. [Exod 6:17-20](#); [[Exod 6:16](#)]; [[Num 3:17](#)]; [[1Chr 6:1](#)];
- 58** These *are* the families of the Levites: the family of the Libnites, the family of the Hebronites, the family of the Mahlites, the family of the Mushites, the family of the Korathites. And Kohas begat Amram.
- 59** And the name of Amram's wife *was* Jochebed, the daughter of Levi, whom *her mother* bore to Levi in Egypt: and she bore unto Amram Aaron and Moses, and Miriam their sister. [Exod 2:1-2](#); [Exod 6:20](#); [[Exod 2:1](#)]; [[Acts 7:20](#)];
- 60** And unto Aaron was born Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. [[Exod 6:23](#)];
- 61** And Nadab and Abihu died, when they offered strange fire before the YAHWEH. [Lev 10:2](#); [Num 3:4](#); [1Chr 24:2](#);
- 62** And those that were numbered of them were twenty and three thousand, all males from a month old and upward: for they were not numbered among the children of Israel, because there was no inheritance given them among the children of Israel.

None was left of them which were numbered at Sinai, but Caleb and Joshua

- 63** These *are* they that were numbered by Moses and Eleazar the priest, who numbered the children of Israel in the plains of Moab by Jordan *near* Jericho.
- 64** But among these there was not a man of them whom Moses and Aaron the priest numbered, when they numbered the children of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai. [[Num 27:3](#)]; [[Jude 1:5](#)];
- 65** For the YAHWEH had said of them, They shall surely die in the wilderness. And there was not left a man of them, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun. [Num 14:28-29](#); [Num 14:34-35](#); [1Cor 10:5-6](#); [[Num 14:28](#)]; [[1Cor 10:5](#)];

The daughters of Zelophehad sue for an inheritance

1 Then came the daughters of Zelophehad, the son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the families of Manasseh the son of Joseph: and these *are* the names of his daughters; Mahlah, Noah, and Hoglah, and Milcah, and Tirzah. [Num 26:33](#); [Num 36:2](#); [Josh 17:3](#); [[Num 36:11](#)];

2 And they stood before Moses, and before Eleazar the priest, and before the princes and all the congregation, *by* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, saying,

3 Our father died in the wilderness, and he was not in the company of them that gathered themselves together against the YAHWEH in the company of Korah; but died in his own sin, and had no sons. [Num 14:35](#); [Num 26:64](#); [Num 16:1](#); [[Num 16:32](#)]; [[Deut 11:6](#)];

4 Why should the name of our father be done away from among his family, because he has no son? Give unto us *therefore* a possession among the brethren of our father.

5 And Moses brought their cause before the YAHWEH.

The law of inheritances

6 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

7 The daughters of Zelophehad speak right: you shall surely give them a possession of an inheritance among their father's brethren; and you shall cause the inheritance of their father to pass unto them. [Num 36:2](#); [[Josh 17:4](#)];

8 And you shall speak unto the children of Israel, saying, If a man die, and have no son, then you shall cause his inheritance to pass unto his daughter.

9 And if he have no daughter, then you shall give his inheritance unto his brethren.

10 And if he have no brethren, then you shall give his inheritance unto his father's brethren.

11 And if his father have no brethren, then you shall give his inheritance unto his kinsman that is next to him of his family, and he shall possess it: and it shall be unto the children of Israel a statute of judgment, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

Moses, being told of his death, sues for a successor

12 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Get you up into this mount Abarim, and see the land which I have given unto the children of Israel. [Deut 32:48-49](#); [[Deut 31:2](#)]; [[Deut 32:49](#)];

13 And when you have seen it, you also shall be gathered unto thy people, as Aaron thy brother was gathered. [Num 20:24](#); [[Num 31:2](#)]; [[Deut 32:50](#)];

14 For you rebelled against my commandment in the desert of Zin, in the strife of the congregation, to sanctify me at the water before their eyes: that *is* the water of Meribah in Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin. [Num 20:12](#); [[Deut 1:37](#)];

15 And Moses spoke unto the YAHWEH, saying,

16 Let the YAHWEH, the Elohim of the spirits of all flesh, set a man over the congregation, [Num 16:22](#); [Heb 12:9](#);

17 Which may go out before them, and which may go in before them, and which may lead them out, and which may bring them in; that the congregation of the YAHWEH be not as sheep which have no shepherd. [1Kgs 22:17](#); [Matt 9:36](#); [Mark 6:34](#); [[Josh 14:11](#)];

Joshua is appointed to succeed him

18 And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Take you Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom *is* the spirit, and lay thine hand upon him; [Deut 3:21](#); [Deut 34:9](#); [[Deut 31:3](#)];

19 And set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation; and give him a charge in their sight.

20 And you shall put *some* of thine honour upon him, that all the congregation of the children of Israel may be obedient.

21 And he shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who shall ask *counsel* for him after the judgment of Urim before the YAHWEH: at his word shall they go out, and at his word they shall come in, *both* he, and all the children of Israel with him, even all the congregation. [Exod 28:30](#); [Lev 8:8](#);

22 And Moses did as the YAHWEH commanded him: and he took Joshua, and set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation:

23 And he laid his hands upon him, and gave him a charge, as the YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses.

Offerings are to be observed

1 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[2Chr 31:3\]](#);

2 Command the children of Israel, and say unto them, My offering, *and* my bread for my sacrifices made by fire, *for* a sweet savour unto me, shall you observe to offer unto me in their due season.

The continual burnt offering

3 And you shall say unto them, This *is* the offering made by fire which you shall offer unto the YAHWEH; two lambs of the first year without spot day by day, *for* a continual burnt offering. [Exod 29:38](#); [\[Ezra 3:3\]](#); [\[Heb 9:6\]](#);

4 The one lamb shall you offer in the morning, and the other lamb shall you offer in the late afternoon;

5 And a tenth *part* of an ephah of flour for a meat offering, mingled with the fourth *part* of a hin of beaten oil. [Exod 16:36](#); [Lev 2:1](#); [Exod 29:40](#);

6 *It is* a continual burnt offering, which was ordained in mount Sinai for a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

7 And the drink offering thereof *shall be* the fourth *part* of a hin for the one lamb: in the holy *place* shall you cause the strong wine to be poured unto the YAHWEH *for* a drink offering.

8 And the other lamb shall you offer at even: as the meat offering of the morning, and as the drink offering thereof, you shall offer *it*, a sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH.

The offering on the Sabbath

9 And on the Sabbath day two lambs of the first year without spot, and two tenth deals of flour *for* a meat offering, mingled with oil, and the drink offering thereof: [\[2Chr 2:4\]](#); [\[Matt 12:5\]](#);

10 *This is* the burnt offering of every Sabbath, beside the continual burnt offering, and his drink offering.

on the new moons

11 And in the beginnings of your months you shall offer a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH; two young bullocks, and one ram, seven lambs of the first year without spot; [\[Ezra 3:5\]](#);

12 And three tenth deals of flour *for* a meat offering, mingled with oil, for one bullock; and two tenth deals of flour *for* a meat offering, mingled with oil, for one ram;

13 And a several tenth deal of flour mingled with oil *for* a meat offering unto one lamb; *for* a burnt offering of a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

14 And their drink offerings shall be half a hin of wine unto a bullock, and the third *part* of a hin unto a ram, and a fourth *part* of a hin unto a lamb: this *is* the burnt offering of every month throughout the months of the year.

15 And one kid of the goats for a sin offering unto the YAHWEH shall be offered, beside the continual burnt offering, and his drink offering.

at the passover

16 And in the fourteenth day of the first month *is* the passover of the YAHWEH. [Exod 12:18](#); [Exod 23:15](#); [Lev 23:5](#); [\[Num 9:2\]](#); [\[Deut 16:1\]](#); [\[Ezra 6:19\]](#); [\[Ezek 45:21\]](#); [\[John 6:4\]](#);

17 And in the fifteenth day of this month *is* the feast: seven days shall unleavened bread be eaten.

18 In the first day *shall be* a holy convocation; you shall do no manner of servile work *therein*: [Lev 23:7](#);

19 But you shall offer a sacrifice made by fire *for* a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH; two young bullocks, and one ram, and seven lambs of the first year: they shall be unto you without blemish: [\[Num 29:8\]](#);

20 And their meat offering *shall be of* flour mingled with oil: three tenth deals shall you offer for a bullock, and two tenth deals for a ram;

- 21** A several tenth deal shall you offer for every lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
- 22** And one goat *for* a sin offering, to make an atonement for you.
- 23** You shall offer these beside the burnt offering in the morning, which *is* for a continual burnt offering.
- 24** After this manner you shall offer daily, throughout the seven days, the meat of the sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH: it shall be offered beside the continual burnt offering, and his drink offering.
- 25** And on the seventh day you shall have a holy convocation; you shall do no servile work.

in the day of the first-fruits

- 26** Also in the day of the firstfruits, when you bring a new meat offering unto the YAHWEH, after your weeks *be out*, you shall have a holy convocation; you shall do no servile work: [\[Deut 16:9\]](#);
- 27** But you shall offer the burnt offering for a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH; two young bullocks, one ram, seven lambs of the first year;
- 28** And their meat offering of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals unto one bullock, two tenth deals unto one ram,
- 29** A several tenth deal unto one lamb, throughout the seven lambs; [\[Neh 10:33\]](#);
- 30** *And* one kid of the goats, to make an atonement for you.
- 31** You shall offer *them* beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, (they shall be unto you without blemish) and their drink offerings.

The offering at the feast of trumpets

- 1** And in the seventh month, on the first *day* of the month, you shall have a holy convocation; you shall do no servile work: it is a day of blowing the trumpets unto you. [Lev 23:24](#); [\[2Chr 31:3\]](#);
- 2** And you shall offer a burnt offering for a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH; one young bullock, one ram, *and* seven lambs of the first year without blemish:
- 3** And their meat offering *shall be* of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals for a bullock, *and* two tenth deals for a ram,
- 4** And one tenth deal for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
- 5** And one kid of the goats *for* a sin offering, to make an atonement for you:
- 6** Beside the burnt offering of the month, and his meat offering, and the daily burnt offering, and his meat offering, and their drink offerings, according unto their manner, for a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto the YAHWEH.

at the day of afflicting their beings

- 7** And you shall have on the tenth *day* of this seventh month a holy convocation; and you shall afflict your beings: you shall not do any work *therein*: [Lev 16:29](#); [Lev 16:31](#); [Lev 23:27](#);
- 8** But you shall offer a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH *for* a sweet savour; one young bullock, one ram, *and* seven lambs of the first year; they shall be unto you without blemish: [Num 28:19](#);
- 9** And their meat offering *shall be* of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals to a bullock, *and* two tenth deals to one ram,
- 10** A several tenth deal for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
- 11** One kid of the goats *for* a sin offering; beside the sin offering of atonement, and the continual burnt offering, and the meat offering of it, and their drink offerings.

and on the eight days of the feast of tabernacles

- 12** And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month you shall have a holy convocation; you shall do no servile work, and you shall keep a feast unto the YAHWEH seven days: [\[Lev 23:34\]](#); [\[Ezra 3:4\]](#); [\[Neh 8:14\]](#); [\[Ezek 45:25\]](#);
- 13** And you shall offer a burnt offering, a sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH; thirteen young bullocks, two rams, *and* fourteen lambs of the first year; they shall be without blemish:
- 14** And their meat offering *shall be* of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals unto every bullock of the thirteen bullocks, two tenth deals to each ram of the two rams,
- 15** And a several tenth deal to each lamb of the fourteen lambs:
- 16** And one kid of the goats *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.
- 17** And on the second day you *shall offer* twelve young bullocks, two rams, fourteen lambs of the first year without spot:
- 18** And their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:
- 19** And one kid of the goats *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and the meat offering thereof, and their drink offerings.
- 20** And on the third day eleven bullocks, two rams, fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish;
- 21** And their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:
- 22** And one goat *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, and his drink offering.
- 23** And on the fourth day ten bullocks, two rams, *and* fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish:

24 Their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:

25 And one kid of the goats *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

26 And on the fifth day nine bullocks, two rams, *and* fourteen lambs of the first year without spot:

27 And their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:

28 And one goat *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, and his drink offering.

29 And on the sixth day eight bullocks, two rams, *and* fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish:

30 And their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:

31 And one goat *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

32 And on the seventh day seven bullocks, two rams, *and* fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish:

33 And their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:

34 And one goat *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

35 On the eighth day you shall have a solemn assembly: you shall do no servile work *therein*: [Lev 23:36](#);

36 But you shall offer a burnt offering, a sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto the YAHWEH: one bullock, one ram, seven lambs of the first year without blemish:

37 Their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullock, for the ram, and for the lambs, *shall be* according to their number, after the manner:

38 And one goat *for* a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, and his drink offering.

39 These *things* you shall do unto the YAHWEH in your set feasts, beside your vows, and your freewill offerings, for your burnt offerings, and for your meat offerings, and for your drink offerings, and for your peace offerings.

40 And Moses told the children of Israel according to all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

Vows are not to be broken

1 And Moses spoke unto the heads of the tribes concerning the children of Israel, saying, This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH has commanded.

2 If a man vow a vow unto the YAHWEH, or swear an oath to bind his being with a bond; he shall not break his word, he shall do according to all that proceedeth out of his mouth. [Deut 23:21](#); [\[Eccl 5:4\]](#);

The exceptions of a maid's vows

3 If a woman also vow a vow unto the YAHWEH, and bind herself by a bond, *being* in her father's house in her youth;

4 And her father hear her vow, and her bond wherewith she has bound her being, and her father shall hold his peace at her: then all her vows shall stand, and every bond wherewith she has bound her being shall stand.

5 But if her father disallow her in the day that he heareth; not any of her vows, or of her bonds wherewith she has bound her being, shall stand: and the YAHWEH shall forgive her, because her father disallowed her.

of a wife's

6 And if she had at all a husband, when she vowed, or uttered ought out of her lips, wherewith she bound her being;

7 And her husband heard *it*, and held his peace at her in the day that he heard *it*: then her vows shall stand, and her bonds wherewith she bound her being shall stand.

8 But if her husband disallowed her on the day that he heard *it*; then he shall make her vow which she vowed, and that which she uttered with her lips, wherewith she bound her being, of none effect: and the YAHWEH shall forgive her.

of a widow's; or her that is divorced

9 But every vow of a widow, and of her that is divorced, wherewith they have bound their beings, shall stand against her.

10 And if she vowed in her husband's house, or bound her being by a bond with an oath;

11 And her husband heard *it*, and held his peace at her, *and* disallowed her not: then all her vows shall stand, and every bond wherewith she bound her being shall stand.

12 But if her husband has utterly made them void on the day he heard *them*; *then* whatsoever proceeded out of her lips concerning her vows, or concerning the bond of her being, shall not stand: her husband has made them void; and the YAHWEH shall forgive her.

13 Every vow, and every binding oath to afflict the being, her husband may establish it, or her husband may make it void.

14 But if her husband altogether hold his peace at her from day to day; then he establisheth all her vows, or all her bonds, which *are* upon her: he confirmeth them, because he held his peace at her in the day that he heard *them*.

15 But if he shall any ways make them void after that he has heard *them*; then he shall bear her iniquity.

16 These *are* the statutes, which the YAHWEH commanded Moses, between a man and his wife, between the father and his daughter, *being yet* in her youth in her father's house.

The Midianites are spoiled, and Balaam slain

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Avenge the children of Israel of the Midianites: afterward shall you be gathered unto thy people. [Num 25:17](#); [Num 27:13](#);
- 3** And Moses spoke unto the people, saying, Arm some of yourselves unto the war, and let them go against the Midianites, and avenge the YAHWEH of Midian.
- 4** Of every tribe a thousand, throughout all the tribes of Israel, shall you send to the war.
- 5** So there were delivered out of the thousands of Israel, a thousand of *every* tribe, twelve thousand armed for war.
- 6** And Moses sent them to the war, a thousand of *every* tribe, them and Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, to the war, with the holy instruments, and the trumpets to blow in his hand.
- 7** And they warred against the Midianites, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses; and they slew all the males.
- 8** And they slew the kings of Midian, beside the rest of them that were slain; *namely*, Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, five kings of Midian: Balaam also the son of Beor they slew with the sword. [Josh 13:21-22](#); [\[Josh 13:22\]](#);
- 9** And the children of Israel took *all* the women of Midian captives, and their little ones, and took the spoil of all their cattle, and all their flocks, and all their goods.
- 10** And they burnt all their cities wherein they dwelt, and all their goodly castles, with fire.
- 11** And they took all the spoil, and all the prey, *both* of men and of beasts. [Deut 20:14](#);
- 12** And they brought the captives, and the prey, and the spoil, unto Moses, and Eleazar the priest, and unto the congregation of the children of Israel, unto the camp at the plains of Moab, which *are* by Jordan *near* Jericho.

Moses is wroth with the officers, for saving the women alive

- 13** And Moses, and Eleazar the priest, and all the princes of the congregation, went forth to meet them without the camp.
- 14** And Moses was wroth with the officers of the host, *with* the captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, which came from the battle.
- 15** And Moses said unto them, Have you saved all the women alive?
- 16** Behold, these caused the children of Israel, through the counsel of Balaam, to commit trespass against the YAHWEH in the matter of Peor, and there was a plague among the congregation of the YAHWEH. [Num 25:1-2](#); [Num 25:18](#); [2Pet 2:15](#); [Rev 2:14](#); [\[Num 25:1\]](#); [\[Ps 106:28\]](#);
- 17** Now therefore kill every male among the little ones, and kill every woman that has known man by lying with him. [Judg 21:11](#);
- 18** But all the women children, that have not known a man by lying with him, keep alive for yourselves.

How the soldiers, with their captives and spoil, are to be purified

- 19** And do you abide without the camp seven days: whosoever has killed any person, and whosoever has touched any slain, purify *both* yourselves and your captives on the third day, and on the seventh day. [\[Num 19:11\]](#);
- 20** And purify all *your* raiment, and all that is made of skins, and all work of goats' *hair*, and all things made of wood.
- 21** And Eleazar the priest said unto the men of war which went to the battle, This *is* the ordinance of the law which the YAHWEH commanded Moses;
- 22** Only the gold, and the silver, the brass, the iron, the tin, and the lead, [\[Josh 8:27\]](#);

23 Every thing that may abide the fire, you shall make *it* go through the fire, and it shall be clean: nevertheless it shall be purified with the water of separation: and all that abideth not the fire you shall make go through the water. [Num 19:9](#);

24 And you shall wash your clothes on the seventh day, and you shall be clean, and afterward you shall come into the camp.

The proportion in which the prey is to be divided

25 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,

26 Take the sum of the prey that was taken, *both* of man and of beast, you, and Eleazar the priest, and the chief fathers of the congregation: [\[Josh 8:27\]](#);

27 And divide the prey into two parts; between them that took the war upon them, who went out to battle, and between all the congregation: [1Sam 30:24](#);

28 And levy a tribute unto the YAHWEH of the men of war which went out to battle: one being of five hundred, *both* of the persons, and of the cattle, and of the asses, and of the sheep:

29 Take *it* of their half, and give it unto Eleazar the priest, *for* a heave offering of the YAHWEH.

30 And of the children of Israel's half, you shall take one portion of fifty, of the persons, of the cattle, of the asses, and of the flocks, of all manner of beasts, and give them unto the Levites, which keep the charge of the tabernacle of the YAHWEH.

31 And Moses and Eleazar the priest did as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

32 And the booty, *being* the rest of the prey which the men of war had caught, was six hundred thousand and seventy thousand and five thousand sheep,

33 And threescore and twelve thousand cattle,

34 And threescore and one thousand asses,

35 And thirty and two thousand persons in all, of women that had not known man by lying with him.

36 And the half, *which was* the portion of them that went out to war, was in number three hundred thousand and seven and thirty thousand and five hundred sheep:

37 And the YAHWEH'S tribute of the sheep was six hundred and threescore and fifteen.

38 And the cattle *were* thirty and six thousand; of which the YAHWEH'S tribute *was* threescore and twelve.

39 And the asses *were* thirty thousand and five hundred; of which the YAHWEH'S tribute *was* threescore and one.

40 And the persons *were* sixteen thousand; of which the YAHWEH'S tribute *was* thirty and two persons.

41 And Moses gave the tribute, *which was* the YAHWEH'S heave offering, unto Eleazar the priest, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Num 18:8](#); [Num 18:19](#);

42 And of the children of Israel's half, which Moses divided from the men that warred,

43 (Now the half *that pertained unto* the congregation was three hundred thousand and thirty thousand *and* seven thousand and five hundred sheep,

44 And thirty and six thousand cattle,

45 And thirty thousand asses and five hundred,

46 And sixteen thousand persons;)

47 Even of the children of Israel's half, Moses took one portion of fifty, *both* of man and of beast, and gave them unto the Levites, which kept the charge of the tabernacle of the YAHWEH; as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The voluntary oblation unto the treasury of the Lord

48 And the officers which *were* over thousands of the host, the captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds, came near unto Moses:

49 And they said unto Moses, Thy servants have taken the sum of the men of war which *are* under our charge, and there lacketh not one man of us.

50 We have therefore brought an oblation for the YAHWEH, what every man has gotten, of jewels of gold, chains, and bracelets, rings, earrings, and tablets, to make an atonement for our beings before the YAHWEH.

51 And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of them, *even* all wrought jewels.

52 And all the gold of the offering that they offered up to the YAHWEH, of the captains of thousands, and of the captains of hundreds, was sixteen thousand seven hundred and fifty shekels.

53 (*For* the men of war had taken spoil, every man for himself.) [Deut 20:14](#);

54 And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and brought it into the tabernacle of the congregation, *for* a memorial for the children of Israel before the YAHWEH. [\[Josh 6:19\]](#);

The Reubenites and Gadites sue for their inheritance on the east side of Jordan

1 Now the children of Reuben and the children of Gad had a very great multitude of cattle: and when they saw the land of Jazer, and the land of Gilead, that, behold, the place *was* a place for cattle;

2 The children of Gad and the children of Reuben came and spoke unto Moses, and to Eleazar the priest, and unto the princes of the congregation, saying,

3 Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Shebam, and Nebo, and Beon,

4 *Even* the country which the YAHWEH smote before the congregation of Israel, *is* a land for cattle, and thy servants have cattle:

5 Wherefore, said they, if we have found grace in thy sight, let this land be given unto thy servants for a possession, *and* bring us not over Jordan.

Moses reproves them

6 And Moses said unto the children of Gad and to the children of Reuben, Shall your brethren go to war, and shall you sit here?

7 And wherefore discourage you the heart of the children of Israel from going over into the land which the YAHWEH has given them?

8 Thus did your fathers, when I sent them from Kadeshbarnea to see the land. [Num 13:3](#); [Deut 1:22](#);

9 For when they went up unto the valley of Eshcol, and saw the land, they discouraged the heart of the children of Israel, that they should not go into the land which the YAHWEH had given them.

10 And the YAHWEH'S anger was kindled the same time, and he sware, saying,

11 Surely none of the men that came up out of Egypt, from twenty years old and upward, shall see the land which I swore unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob; because they have not wholly followed me: [Num 14:28](#); [Deut 1:35](#);

12 Save Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenezite, and Joshua the son of Nun: for they have wholly followed the YAHWEH.

13 And the YAHWEH'S anger was kindled against Israel, and he made them wander in the wilderness forty years, until all the generation, that had done evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, was consumed.

14 And, behold, you are risen up in your fathers' stead, an increase of sinful men, to augment yet the fierce anger of the YAHWEH toward Israel.

15 For if you turn away from after him, he will yet again leave them in the wilderness; and you shall destroy all this people.

They offer him conditions with which he is content

16 And they came near unto him, and said, We will build sheepfolds here for our cattle, and cities for our little ones:

17 But we ourselves will go ready armed before the children of Israel, until we have brought them unto their place: and our little ones shall dwell in the fenced cities because of the inhabitants of the land.

18 We will not return unto our houses, until the children of Israel have inherited every man his inheritance.

19 For we will not inherit with them on yonder side Jordan, or forward; because our inheritance is fallen to us on this side Jordan eastward.

20 And Moses said unto them, If you will do this thing, if you will go armed before the YAHWEH to war, [\[Deut 3:18\]](#); [\[Josh 4:12\]](#); [\[Josh 22:2\]](#);

21 And will go all of you armed over Jordan before the YAHWEH, until he has driven out his enemies from before him,

22 And the land be subdued before the YAHWEH: then afterward you shall return, and be guiltless before the YAHWEH, and before Israel; and this land shall be your possession before the YAHWEH.

23 But if you will not do so, behold, you have sinned against the YAHWEH: and be sure your sin will find you out.

24 Build you cities for your little ones, and folds for your sheep; and do that which has proceeded out of your mouth.

25 And the children of Gad and the children of Reuben spoke unto Moses, saying, Thy servants will do as my lord commandeth.

26 Our little ones, our wives, our flocks, and all our cattle, shall be there in the cities of Gilead:

27 But thy servants will pass over, every man armed for war, before the YAHWEH to battle, as my lord saith.

28 So concerning them Moses commanded Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the chief fathers of the tribes of the children of Israel: [Josh 1:13](#); [Josh 4:12](#);

29 And Moses said unto them, If the children of Gad and the children of Reuben will pass with you over Jordan, every man armed to battle, before the YAHWEH, and the land shall be subdued before you; then you shall give them the land of Gilead for a possession: [\[Josh 4:12\]](#);

30 But if they will not pass over with you armed, they shall have possessions among you in the land of Canaan.

31 And the children of Gad and the children of Reuben answered, saying, As the YAHWEH has said unto thy servants, so will we do.

32 We will pass over armed before the YAHWEH into the land of Canaan, that the possession of our inheritance on this side Jordan *may be* ours.

Moses assigns them the land

33 And Moses gave unto them, *even* to the children of Gad, and to the children of Reuben, and unto half the tribe of Manasseh the son of Joseph, the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, the land, with the cities thereof in the coasts, *even* the cities of the country round about. [Deut 3:12](#); [Josh 13:8](#); [Josh 22:4](#); [\[Deut 29:8\]](#); [\[Josh 12:6\]](#);

34 And the children of Gad built Dibon, and Ataroth, and Aroer,

35 And Atroth, Shopan, and Jaazer, and Jogbehah,

36 And Bethnimrah, and Bethharan, fenced cities: and folds for sheep.

37 And the children of Reuben built Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Kirjathaim,

38 And Nebo, and Baalmeon, (their names being changed,) and Shibmah: and gave other names unto the cities which they built. [\[Exod 23:13\]](#);

They conquer it

39 And the children of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead, and took it, and dispossessed the Amorite which *was* in it. [Gen 50:23](#);

40 And Moses gave Gilead unto Machir the son of Manasseh; and he dwelt therein.

41 And Jair the son of Manasseh went and took the small towns thereof, and called them Havothjair.

42 And Nobah went and took Kenath, and the villages thereof, and called it Nobah, after his own name.

The two and forty journeys of the Israelites

- 1** These *are* the journeys of the children of Israel, which went forth out of the land of Egypt with their armies under the hand of Moses and Aaron.
- 2** And Moses wrote their goings out according to their journeys by the commandment of the YAHWEH: and these *are* their journeys according to their goings out.
- 3** And they departed from Rameses in the first month, on the fifteenth day of the first month; on the morrow after the passover the children of Israel went out with a high hand in the sight of all the Egyptians. [Exod 12:37](#); [\[Ps 105:43\]](#);
- 4** For the Egyptians buried all *their* firstborn, which the YAHWEH had smitten among them: upon their gods also the YAHWEH executed judgments.
- 5** And the children of Israel removed from Rameses, and pitched in Succoth.
- 6** And they departed from Succoth, and pitched in Etham, which *is* in the edge of the wilderness. [Exod 13:20](#);
- 7** And they removed from Etham, and turned again unto Pihahiroth, which *is* before Baalzephon: and they pitched before Migdol. [Exod 14:2](#);
- 8** And they departed from before Pihahiroth, and passed through the midst of the sea into the wilderness, and went three days' journey in the wilderness of Etham, and pitched in Marah. [Exod 15:22-23](#); [\[Exod 15:23\]](#);
- 9** And they removed from Marah, and came unto Elim: and in Elim *were* twelve fountains of water, and threescore and ten palm trees; and they pitched there. [Exod 15:27](#);
- 10** And they removed from Elim, and encamped by the Red sea.
- 11** And they removed from the Red sea, and encamped in the wilderness of Sin. [Exod 16:1](#);
- 12** And they took their journey out of the wilderness of Sin, and encamped in Dophkah.
- 13** And they departed from Dophkah, and encamped in Alush.
- 14** And they removed from Alush, and encamped at Rephidim, where was no water for the people to drink. [Exod 17:1](#);
- 15** And they departed from Rephidim, and pitched in the wilderness of Sinai. [Exod 19:1](#);
- 16** And they removed from the desert of Sinai, and pitched at Kibrothhattaavah. [Num 11:34-35](#);
- 17** And they departed from Kibrothhattaavah, and encamped at Hazeroth.
- 18** And they departed from Hazeroth, and pitched in Rithmah.
- 19** And they departed from Rithmah, and pitched at Rimmonparez.
- 20** And they departed from Rimmonparez, and pitched in Libnah.
- 21** And they removed from Libnah, and pitched at Rissah.
- 22** And they journeyed from Rissah, and pitched in Kehelathah.
- 23** And they went from Kehelathah, and pitched in mount Shapher.
- 24** And they removed from mount Shapher, and encamped in Haradah.
- 25** And they removed from Haradah, and pitched in Makheloth.
- 26** And they removed from Makheloth, and encamped at Tahas.
- 27** And they departed from Tahas, and pitched at Tarah.
- 28** And they removed from Tarah, and pitched in Mithcah.
- 29** And they went from Mithcah, and pitched in Hashmonah.
- 30** And they departed from Hashmonah, and encamped at Moseroth. [Deut 10:6](#);
- 31** And they departed from Moseroth, and pitched in Benejaakan.
- 32** And they removed from Benejaakan, and encamped at Horhagidgad. [\[Deut 10:7\]](#);
- 33** And they went from Horhagidgad, and pitched in Jotbathah.
- 34** And they removed from Jotbathah, and encamped at Ebronah.

35 And they departed from Ebronah, and encamped at Eziongaber.
36 And they removed from Eziongaber, and pitched in the wilderness of Zin, which *is* Kadesh. [Num 20:1](#);
37 And they removed from Kadesh, and pitched in mount Hor, in the edge of the land of Edom. [Num 20:22](#);
38 And Aaron the priest went up into mount Hor at the commandment of the YAHWEH, and died there, in the fortieth year after the children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the first *day* of the fifth month. [Num 20:25](#); [Deut 32:50](#); [[Deut 10:6](#)];
39 And Aaron *was* a hundred and twenty and three years old when he died in mount Hor.
40 And king Arad the Canaanite, which dwelt in the south in the land of Canaan, heard of the coming of the children of Israel. [Num 21:1](#);
41 And they departed from mount Hor, and pitched in Zalmonah. [Num 21:4](#);
42 And they departed from Zalmonah, and pitched in Punon.
43 And they departed from Punon, and pitched in Oboth. [Num 21:10](#);
44 And they departed from Oboth, and pitched in Ijeabarim, in the border of Moab.
45 And they departed from Iim, and pitched in Dibongad.
46 And they removed from Dibongad, and encamped in Almondiblathaim.
47 And they removed from Almondiblathaim, and pitched in the mountains of Abarim, before Nebo.
48 And they departed from the mountains of Abarim, and pitched in the plains of Moab by Jordan *near* Jericho.
49 And they pitched by Jordan, from Bethjesimoth *even* unto Abelshittim in the plains of Moab. [Num 25:1](#); [Josh 2:1](#);

The Canaanites are to be destroyed

50 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in the plains of Moab by Jordan *near* Jericho, saying,
51 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you are passed over Jordan into the land of Canaan; [[Exod 34:12](#)];
52 Then you shall drive out all the inhabitants of the land from before you, and destroy all their pictures, and destroy all their molten images, and quite pluck down all their high places: [Deut 7:2-3](#); [[Deut 7:2](#)]; [[Deut 20:16](#)]; [[Josh 11:15](#)]; [[2Kgs 23:14](#)];
53 And you shall dispossess *the inhabitants* of the land, and dwell therein: for I have given you the land to possess it. [[Josh 23:5](#)];
54 And you shall divide the land by lot for an inheritance among your families: *and* to the more you shall give the more inheritance, and to the fewer you shall give the less inheritance: every man's *inheritance* shall be in the place where his lot falleth; according to the tribes of your fathers you shall inherit. [Num 26:54](#); [[Num 26:55](#)]; [[Num 36:2](#)];
55 But if you will not drive out the inhabitants of the land from before you; then it shall come to pass, that those which you let remain of them *shall be* pricks in your eyes, and thorns in your sides, and shall vex you in the land wherein you dwell. [Josh 23:13](#); [Judg 2:3](#);
56 Moreover it shall come to pass, *that* I shall do unto you, as I thought to do unto them.

The borders of the land

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 2** Command the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you come into the land of Canaan; (this *is* the land that shall fall unto you for an inheritance, *even* the land of Canaan with the coasts thereof:)
- 3** Then your south quarter shall be from the wilderness of Zin along by the coast of Edom, and your south border shall be the outmost coast of the salt sea eastward: [Josh 15:1](#); [\[Exod 23:31\]](#);
- 4** And your border shall turn from the south to the ascent of Akrabbim, and pass on to Zin: and the going forth thereof shall be from the south to Kadeshbarnea, and shall go on to Hazaraddar, and pass on to Azmon: [\[Josh 15:2\]](#);
- 5** And the border shall fetch a compass from Azmon unto the river of Egypt, and the goings out of it shall be at the sea.
- 6** And *as for* the western border, you shall even have the great sea for a border: this shall be your west border. [\[Josh 15:12\]](#);
- 7** And this shall be your north border: from the great sea you shall point out for you mount Hor:
- 8** From mount Hor you shall point out *your border* unto the entrance of Hamath; and the goings forth of the border shall be to Zedad:
- 9** And the border shall go on to Ziphron, and the goings out of it shall be at Hazarenan: this shall be your north border.
- 10** And you shall point out your east border from Hazarenan to Shepham:
- 11** And the coast shall go down from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of Ain; and the border shall descend, and shall reach unto the side of the sea of Chinnereth eastward:
- 12** And the border shall go down to Jordan, and the goings out of it shall be at the salt sea: this shall be your land with the coasts thereof round about.
- 13** And Moses commanded the children of Israel, saying, This *is* the land which you shall inherit by lot, which the YAHWEH commanded to give unto the nine tribes, and to the half tribe:
- 14** For the tribe of the children of Reuben according to the house of their fathers, and the tribe of the children of Gad according to the house of their fathers, have received *their inheritance*; and half the tribe of Manasseh have received their inheritance: [\[Josh 13:23\]](#);
- 15** The two tribes and the half tribe have received their inheritance on this side Jordan *near* Jericho eastward, toward the sunrising.

The names of the men who shall divide the land

- 16** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying,
- 17** These *are* the names of the men which shall divide the land unto you: Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun. [Josh 14:1](#);
- 18** And you shall take one prince of every tribe, to divide the land by inheritance.
- 19** And the names of the men *are* these: Of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh.
- 20** And of the tribe of the children of Simeon, Shemuel the son of Ammihud.
- 21** Of the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad the son of Chislon.
- 22** And the prince of the tribe of the children of Dan, Bukki the son of Jogli.
- 23** The prince of the children of Joseph, for the tribe of the children of Manasseh, Hanniel the son of Ephod.
- 24** And the prince of the tribe of the children of Ephraim, Kemuel the son of Shiptan.
- 25** And the prince of the tribe of the children of Zebulun, Elizaphan the son of Parnach.
- 26** And the prince of the tribe of the children of Issachar, Paltiel the son of Azzan.
- 27** And the prince of the tribe of the children of Asher, Ahihud the son of Shelomi.

28 And the prince of the tribe of the children of Naphtali, Pedahel the son of Ammihud.

29 These *are they* whom the YAHWEH commanded to divide the inheritance unto the children of Israel in the land of Canaan.

Eight and forty cities for the Levites, with their suburbs, and measure thereof

- 1** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses in the plains of Moab by Jordan *near* Jericho, saying,
- 2** Command the children of Israel, that they give unto the Levites of the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell in; and you shall give *also* unto the Levites suburbs for the cities round about them. [Josh 21:2](#);
- 3** And the cities shall they have to dwell in; and the suburbs of them shall be for their cattle, and for their goods, and for all their beasts.
- 4** And the suburbs of the cities, which you shall give unto the Levites, *shall reach* from the wall of the city and outward a thousand cubits round about.
- 5** And you shall measure from without the city on the east side two thousand cubits, and on the south side two thousand cubits, and on the west side two thousand cubits, and on the north side two thousand cubits; and the city *shall be* in the midst: this shall be to them the suburbs of the cities.

Six of them are to be cities of refuge

- 6** And among the cities which you shall give unto the Levites *there shall be* six cities for refuge, which you shall appoint for the manslayer, that he may flee thither: and to them you shall add forty and two cities. [Josh 21:21](#); [\[Deut 4:41\]](#); [\[Josh 20:2\]](#);
- 7** *So* all the cities which you shall give to the Levites *shall be* forty and eight cities: them *shall you give* with their suburbs.
- 8** And the cities which you shall give *shall be* of the possession of the children of Israel: from *them that have* many you shall give many; but from *them that have* few you shall give few: every one shall give of his cities unto the Levites according to his inheritance which he inheriteth.

The laws of murder and manslaughter

- 9** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses, saying, [\[Deut 19:2\]](#);
- 10** Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When you be come over Jordan into the land of Canaan; [Deut 19:2](#); [Josh 20:2](#);
- 11** Then you shall appoint you cities to be cities of refuge for you; that the slayer may flee thither, which killeth any person at unawares.
- 12** And they shall be unto you cities for refuge from the avenger; that the manslayer die not, until he stand before the congregation in judgment.
- 13** And of these cities which you shall give six cities shall you have for refuge.
- 14** You shall give three cities on this side Jordan, and three cities shall you give in the land of Canaan, *which* shall be cities of refuge. [Deut 4:41](#); [Josh 20:8](#);
- 15** These six cities shall be a refuge, *both* for the children of Israel, and for the stranger, and for the sojourner among them: that every one that killeth any person unawares may flee thither.
- 16** And if he smite him with an instrument of iron, so that he die, he *is* a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death. [\[Deut 19:11\]](#);
- 17** And if he smite him with throwing a stone, wherewith he may die, and he die, he *is* a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death.
- 18** Or *if* he smite him with a hand weapon of wood, wherewith he may die, and he die, he *is* a murderer: the murderer shall surely be put to death.
- 19** The revenger of blood himself shall slay the murderer: when he meeteth him, he shall slay him.
- 20** But if he thrust him of hatred, or hurl at him by laying of wait, that he die; [Deut 19:11](#);
- 21** Or in enmity smite him with his hand, that he die: he that smote *him* shall surely be put to death; *for* he *is* a murderer: the revenger of blood shall slay the murderer, when he meeteth him.

22 But if he thrust him suddenly without enmity, or have cast upon him any thing without laying of wait, [\[Josh 20:4\]](#);

23 Or with any stone, wherewith a man may die, seeing *him* not, and cast *it* upon him, that he die, and *was* not his enemy, neither sought his harm:

24 Then the congregation shall judge between the slayer and the revenger of blood according to these judgments:

25 And the congregation shall deliver the slayer out of the hand of the revenger of blood, and the congregation shall restore him to the city of his refuge, whither he was fled: and he shall abide in it unto the death of the high priest, which was anointed with the holy oil.

26 But if the slayer shall at any time come without the border of the city of his refuge, whither he was fled;

27 And the revenger of blood find him without the borders of the city of his refuge, and the revenger of blood kill the slayer; he shall not be guilty of blood:

28 Because he should have remained in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest: but after the death of the high priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession.

29 So these *things* shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

30 Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses: but one witness shall not testify against any person *to cause him* to die. [Deut 17:6](#); [Deut 19:15](#); [\[Matt 18:16\]](#); [\[John 8:17\]](#); [\[2Cor 13:1\]](#); [\[Heb 10:28\]](#);

No satisfaction for murder

31 Moreover you shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer, which *is* guilty of death: but he shall be surely put to death.

32 And you shall take no satisfaction for him that is fled to the city of his refuge, that he should come again to dwell in the land, until the death of the priest.

33 So you shall not pollute the land wherein you *are*: for blood it defileth the land: and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it. [\[Ps 106:38\]](#);

34 Defile not therefore the land which you shall inhabit, wherein I dwell: for I the YAHWEH dwell among the children of Israel.

The inconvenience of the inheritance of daughters is remedied by marrying in their own tribes

1 And the chief fathers of the families of the children of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the families of the sons of Joseph, came near, and spoke before Moses, and before the princes, the chief fathers of the children of Israel:

2 And they said, The YAHWEH commanded my lord to give the land for an inheritance by lot to the children of Israel: and my lord was commanded by the YAHWEH to give the inheritance of Zelophehad our brother unto his daughters. [Num 26:55-56](#); [Num 33:54](#); [Num 27:7](#); [Josh 17:3-4](#); [[Num 27:1](#)]; [[Josh 17:4](#)];

3 And if they be married to any of the sons of the *other* tribes of the children of Israel, then shall their inheritance be taken from the inheritance of our fathers, and shall be put to the inheritance of the tribe whereunto they are received: so shall it be taken from the lot of our inheritance.

4 And when the jubile of the children of Israel shall be, then shall their inheritance be put unto the inheritance of the tribe whereunto they are received: so shall their inheritance be taken away from the inheritance of the tribe of our fathers.

5 And Moses commanded the children of Israel according to the word of the YAHWEH, saying, The tribe of the sons of Joseph has said well.

6 This *is* the thing which the YAHWEH commands concerning the daughters of Zelophehad, saying, Let them marry to whom they think best; only to the family of the tribe of their father shall they marry.

lest the inheritance should be removed from the tribe

7 So shall not the inheritance of the children of Israel remove from tribe to tribe: for every one of the children of Israel shall keep himself to the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers.

8 And every daughter, that possesseth an inheritance in any tribe of the children of Israel, shall be wife unto one of the family of the tribe of her father, that the children of Israel may enjoy every man the inheritance of his fathers.

9 Neither shall the inheritance remove from *one* tribe to another tribe; but every one of the tribes of the children of Israel shall keep himself to his own inheritance.

The daughters of Zelophehad marry their father's brothers' sons

10 Even as the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so did the daughters of Zelophehad:

11 For Mahlah, Tirzah, and Hoglah, and Milcah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, were married unto their father's brothers' sons: [Num 27:1](#);

12 *And* they were married into the families of the sons of Manasseh the son of Joseph, and their inheritance remained in the tribe of the family of their father.

13 These *are* the commandments and the judgments, which the YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses unto the children of Israel in the plains of Moab by Jordan *near* Jericho.

Deuteronomy

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#)

DEUTERONOMY ONE

Moses' speech in the end of the fortieth year

1 These *be* the words which Moses spoke unto all Israel on this side Jordan in the wilderness, in the plain over against the Red *sea*, between Paran, and Tophel, and Laban, and Hazeroth, and Dizahab.

2 (*There are* eleven days' *journey* from Horeb by the way of mount Seir unto Kadeshbarnea.)

3 And it came to pass in the fortieth year, in the eleventh month, on the first *day* of the month, *that* Moses spoke unto the children of Israel, according unto all that the YAHWEH had given him in commandment unto them; [[Acts 7:36](#)];

4 After he had slain Sihon the king of the Amorites, which dwelt in Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, which dwelt at Astaroth in Edrei: [Num 21:24](#); [Num 21:33](#); [[Deut 4:46](#)]; [[Josh 9:10](#)]; [[Josh 12:4](#)];

5 On this side Jordan, in the land of Moab, began Moses to declare this law, saying,

briefly rehearsing the history of Elohim's sending them from Horeb

6 The YAHWEH our Elohim spoke unto us in Horeb, saying, you have dwelt long enough in this mount:

7 Turn you, and take your journey, and go to the mount of the Amorites, and unto all *the places* nigh thereunto, in the plain, in the hills, and in the vale, and in the south, and by the sea side, to the land of the Canaanites, and unto Lebanon, unto the great river, the river Euphrates.

8 Behold, I have set the land before you: go in and possess the land which the YAHWEH swore unto your fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to give unto them and to their seed after them. [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 17:7-8](#); [[Gen 17:8](#)];

9 And I spoke unto you at that time, saying, I am not able to bear you myself alone: [Exod 18:18](#); [[Exod 18:24](#)];

10 The YAHWEH your Elohim has multiplied you, and, behold, you *are* this day as the stars of heaven for multitude.

11 (The YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers make you a thousand times so many more as you *are*, and bless you, as he has promised you!)

12 How can I myself alone bear your cumbrance, and your burden, and your strife?

13 Take you wise men, and understanding, and known among your tribes, and I will make them rulers over you. [[Acts 6:3](#)];

of giving them officers

14 And you answered me, and said, The thing which you have spoken *is* good *for us* to do.

15 So I took the chief of your tribes, wise men, and known, and made them heads over you, captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, and captains over fifties, and captains over tens, and officers among your tribes.

16 And I charged your judges at that time, saying, Hear *the causes* between your brethren, and judge righteously between *every* man and his brother, and the stranger *that is* with him. [John 7:24](#); [[Prov 31:9](#)];

17 You shall not respect persons in judgment; *but* you shall hear the small as well as the great; you shall not be afraid of the face of man; for the judgment *is* Elohim's: and the cause that is too hard for you, bring *it* unto me, and I will hear it. [Lev 19:15](#); [1Sam 16:7](#); [Prov 24:23](#); [Jas 2:1](#); [[Deut 16:19](#)]; [[Prov 18:5](#)]; [[John 7:51](#)];

18 And I commanded you at that time all the things which you should do.

of sending the spies to search the land

19 And when we departed from Horeb, we went through all that great and terrible wilderness, which you saw by the way of the mountain of the Amorites, as the YAHWEH our Elohim commanded us; and we came to Kadeshbarnea.

20 And I said unto you, you are come unto the mountain of the Amorites, which the YAHWEH our Elohim gives unto us.

21 Behold, the YAHWEH thy Elohim has set the land before you: go up *and* possess *it*, as the YAHWEH Elohim of thy fathers has said unto you; fear not, neither be discouraged. [Josh 8:1]; [Neh 4:14];

22 And you came near unto me every one of you, and said, We will send men before us, and they shall search us out the land, and bring us word again by what way we must go up, and into what cities we shall come. [Num 32:8];

23 And the saying pleased me well: and I took twelve men of you, one of a tribe: Num 13:2-3;

24 And they turned and went up into the mountain, and came unto the valley of Eshcol, and searched it out. Num 13:23;

25 And they took of the fruit of the land in their hands, and brought *it* down unto us, and brought us word again, and said, *It is* a good land which the YAHWEH our Elohim gives us.

26 Notwithstanding you would not go up, but rebelled against the commandment of the YAHWEH your Elohim: Num 14:2; [1Sam 12:14];

27 And you murmured in your tents, and said, Because the YAHWEH hated us, he has brought us forth out of the land of Egypt, to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites, to destroy us.

28 Whither shall we go up? our brethren have discouraged our heart, saying, The people are greater and taller than we; the cities *are* great and walled up to heaven; and moreover we have seen the sons of the Anakims there. Num 13:28; [Nah 2:10];

29 Then I said unto you, Dread not, neither be afraid of them.

30 The YAHWEH your Elohim which goes before you, he shall fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes; [Neh 4:20];

31 And in the wilderness, where you have seen how that the YAHWEH thy Elohim bore you, as a man bears his son, in all the way that you went, until you came into this place.

32 Yet in this thing you did not believe the YAHWEH your Elohim,

33 Who went in the way before you, to search you out a place to pitch your tents *in*, in fire by night, to show you by what way you should go, and in a cloud by day. Exod 13:21; [Exod 40:38]; [1Cor 10:1];

of his anger for their incredulity

34 And the YAHWEH heard the voice of your words, and was wroth, and sware, saying, [Heb 3:11]; [Heb 3:18];

35 Surely there shall not one of these men of this evil generation see that good land, which I swore to give unto your fathers, Num 14:22-23; Ps 95:11; [Num 14:23]; [Num 14:29]; [Num 32:11];

36 Save Caleb the son of Jephunneh; he shall see it, and to him will I give the land that he has trodden upon, and to his children, because he has wholly followed the YAHWEH. [Josh 14:6];

37 Also the YAHWEH was angry with me for your sakes, saying, you also shall not go in thither. Num 20:12; Num 27:14; Deut 3:26; Deut 4:21; Deut 34:4;

38 *But* Joshua the son of Nun, which standeth before you, he shall go in thither: encourage him: for he shall cause Israel to inherit it. [Josh 1:1];

39 Moreover your little ones, which you said should be a prey, and your children, which in that day had no knowledge between good and evil, they shall go in thither, and unto them will I give it, and they shall possess it.

40 But *as for* you, turn you, and take your journey into the wilderness by the way of the Red sea.

and disobedience

41 Then you answered and said unto me, We have sinned against the YAHWEH, we will go up and fight, according to all that the YAHWEH our Elohim commanded us. And when you had girded on every man his weapons of war, you were ready to go up into the hill. [Num 14:41];

42 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Say unto them, Go not up, neither fight; for I *am* not among you; lest you be smitten before your enemies.

43 So I spoke unto you; and you would not hear, but rebelled against the commandment of the YAHWEH, and went presumptuously up into the hill.

44 And the Amorites, which dwelt in that mountain, came out against you, and chased you, as bees do, and destroyed you in Seir, *even* unto Hormah.

45 And you returned and wept before the YAHWEH; but the YAHWEH would not hearken to your voice, nor give ear unto you.

46 So you abode in Kadesh many days, according unto the days that you abode *there*.

The story is continued, that they were not to meddle with the Edomites

- 1** Then we turned, and took our journey into the wilderness by the way of the Red sea, as the YAHWEH spoke unto me: and we compassed mount Seir many days.
- 2** And the YAHWEH spoke unto me, saying,
- 3** You have compassed this mountain long enough: turn you northward.
- 4** And command you the people, saying, you *are* to pass through the coast of your brethren the children of Esau, which dwell in Seir; and they shall be afraid of you: take you good heed unto yourselves therefore: [\[Exod 15:15\]](#);
- 5** Meddle not with them; for I will not give you of their land, no, not so much as a foot breadth; because I have given mount Seir unto Esau *for* a possession. [Gen 36:8](#);
- 6** You shall buy meat of them for money, that you may eat; and you shall also buy water of them for money, that you may drink.
- 7** For the YAHWEH thy Elohim has blessed you in all the works of thy hand: he knoweth thy walking through this great wilderness: these forty years the YAHWEH thy Elohim *has been* with you; you have lacked nothing. [\[Neh 9:21\]](#);
- 8** And when we passed by from our brethren the children of Esau, which dwelt in Seir, through the way of the plain from Elath, and from Eziongaber, we turned and passed by the way of the wilderness of Moab.

nor with the Moabites

- 9** And the YAHWEH said unto me, Distress not the Moabites, neither contend with them in battle: for I will not give you of their land *for* a possession; because I have given Ar unto the children of Lot *for* a possession. [\[Judg 11:15\]](#);
- 10** The Emims dwelt therein in times past, a people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims; [\[Gen 14:5\]](#);
- 11** Which also were accounted giants, as the Anakims; but the Moabites call them Emims.
- 12** The Horims also dwelt in Seir before; but the children of Esau succeeded them, when they had destroyed them from before them, and dwelt in their stead; as Israel did unto the land of his possession, which the YAHWEH gave unto them.
- 13** Now rise up, *said I*, and get you over the brook Zered. And we went over the brook Zered.
- 14** And the space in which we came from Kadeshbarnea, until we were come over the brook Zered, *was* thirty and eight years; until all the generation of the men of war were wasted out from among the host, as the YAHWEH swore unto them.
- 15** For indeed the hand of the YAHWEH was against them, to destroy them from among the host, until they were consumed.

nor with the Ammonites

- 16** So it came to pass, when all the men of war were consumed and dead from among the people,
- 17** That the YAHWEH spoke unto me, saying,
- 18** You are to pass over through Ar, the coast of Moab, this day:
- 19** And *when* you come nigh over against the children of Ammon, distress them not, nor meddle with them: for I will not give you of the land of the children of Ammon *any* possession; because I have given it unto the children of Lot *for* a possession. [\[Judg 11:15\]](#);
- 20** (That also was accounted a land of giants: giants dwelt therein in old time; and the Ammonites call them Zamzummims;
- 21** A people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims; but the YAHWEH destroyed them before them; and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead:
- 22** As he did to the children of Esau, which dwelt in Seir, when he destroyed the Horims from before them; and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead even unto this day:

23 And the Avims which dwelt in Hazerim, *even* unto Azzah, the Caphtorims, which came forth out of Caphtor, destroyed them, and dwelt in their stead.)

but Sihon the Amorite was subdued by them

24 Rise you up, take your journey, and pass over the river Arnon: behold, I have given into thine hand Sihon the Amorite, king of Heshbon, and his land: begin to possess *it*, and contend with him in battle.

25 This day will I begin to put the dread of you and the fear of you upon the nations *that are* under the whole heaven, who shall hear report of you, and shall tremble, and be in anguish because of you. [Exod 15:16];

26 And I sent messengers out of the wilderness of Kedemoth unto Sihon king of Heshbon with words of peace, saying, Num 21:21; Judg 11:19;

27 Let me pass through thy land: I will go along by the high way, I will neither turn unto the right hand nor to the left. Num 21:21-22;

28 You shall sell me meat for money, that I may eat; and give me water for money, that I may drink: only I will pass through on my feet;

29 (As the children of Esau which dwell in Seir, and the Moabites which dwell in Ar, did unto me;) until I shall pass over Jordan into the land which the YAHWEH our Elohim giveth us.

30 But Sihon king of Heshbon would not let us pass by him: for the YAHWEH thy Elohim hardened his spirit, and made his heart obstinate, that he might deliver him into thy hand, as *appeareth* this day. [Num 21:23];

31 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Behold, I have begun to give Sihon and his land before you: begin to possess, that you may inherit his land. [Amos 2:9];

32 Then Sihon came out against us, he and all his people, to fight at Jahaz. Num 21:23; [Deut 29:7];

33 And the YAHWEH our Elohim delivered him before us; and we smote him, and his sons, and all his people. Deut 29:7; [Num 21:24];

34 And we took all his cities at that time, and utterly destroyed the men, and the women, and the little ones, of every city, we left none to remain: [Num 21:25];

35 Only the cattle we took for a prey unto ourselves, and the spoil of the cities which we took.

36 From Aroer, which *is* by the brink of the river of Arnon, and *from* the city that *is* by the river, even unto Gilead, there was not one city too strong for us: the YAHWEH our Elohim delivered all unto us: [Judg 11:22];

37 Only unto the land of the children of Ammon you camest not, *nor* unto any place of the river Jabbok, nor unto the cities in the mountains, nor unto whatsoever the YAHWEH our Elohim forbad us. [Num 21:24];

The conquest of Og, king of Bashan

- 1** Then we turned, and went up the way to Bashan: and Og the king of Bashan came out against us, he and all his people, to battle at Edrei. [Num 21:33](#); [Deut 29:7](#); [\[Ps 136:20\]](#);
- 2** And the YAHWEH said unto me, Fear him not: for I will deliver him, and all his people, and his land, into thy hand; and you shall do unto him as you didst unto Sihon king of the Amorites, which dwelt at Heshbon. [Num 21:34](#);
- 3** So the YAHWEH our Elohim delivered into our hands Og also, the king of Bashan, and all his people: and we smote him until none was left to him remaining. [\[Deut 4:47\]](#);
- 4** And we took all his cities at that time, there was not a city which we took not from them, threescore cities, all the region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan.
- 5** All these cities *were* fenced with high walls, gates, and bars; beside unwalled towns a great many.
- 6** And we utterly destroyed them, as we did unto Sihon king of Heshbon, utterly destroying the men, women, and children, of every city.
- 7** But all the cattle, and the spoil of the cities, we took for a prey to ourselves.
- 8** And we took at that time out of the hand of the two kings of the Amorites the land that *was* on this side Jordan, from the river of Arnon unto mount Hermon; [\[Josh 12:2\]](#);
- 9** (*Which* Hermon the Sidonians call Sirion; and the Amorites call it Shenir;)
- 10** All the cities of the plain, and all Gilead, and all Bashan, unto Salchah and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan.

The size of his bed

- 11** For only Og king of Bashan remained of the remnant of giants; behold, his bed *was* a bed of iron; *is* it not in Rabbath of the children of Ammon? nine cubits *was* the length thereof, and four cubits the breadth of it, after the cubit of a man.

The distribution of his lands to the two tribes and half

- 12** And this land, *which* we possessed at that time, from Aroer, which *is* by the river Arnon, and half mount Gilead, and the cities thereof, gave I unto the Reubenites and to the Gadites. [Num 32:33](#); [\[Deut 29:8\]](#);
- 13** And the rest of Gilead, and all Bashan, *being* the kingdom of Og, gave I unto the half tribe of Manasseh; all the region of Argob, with all Bashan, which was called the land of giants. [\[Josh 22:4\]](#);
- 14** Jair the son of Manasseh took all the country of Argob unto the coasts of Geshuri and Maachasi; and called them after his own name, Bashanhavothjair, unto this day.
- 15** And I gave Gilead unto Machir.
- 16** And unto the Reubenites and unto the Gadites I gave from Gilead even unto the river Arnon half the valley, and the border even unto the river Jabbok, *which is* the border of the children of Ammon; [\[Josh 12:2\]](#);
- 17** The plain also, and Jordan, and the coast *thereof*, from Chinnereth even unto the sea of the plain, *even* the salt sea, under Ashdothpisgah eastward.
- 18** And I commanded you at that time, saying, The YAHWEH your Elohim has given you this land to possess it: you shall pass over armed before your brethren the children of Israel, all *that are* meet for the war. [Num 32:20](#); [\[Josh 22:2\]](#);
- 19** But your wives, and your little ones, and your cattle, (*for* I know that you have much cattle,) shall abide in your cities which I have given you;
- 20** Until the YAHWEH have given rest unto your brethren, as well as unto you, and *until* they also possess the land which the YAHWEH your Elohim has given them beyond Jordan: and *then* shall you return every man unto his possession, which I have given you.

21 And I commanded Joshua at that time, saying, Thine eyes have seen all that the YAHWEH your Elohim has done unto these two kings: so shall the YAHWEH do unto all the kingdoms whither you passest. [Num 27:18](#);

22 You shall not fear them: for the YAHWEH your Elohim he shall fight for you.

Moses prays to enter into the land

23 And I besought the YAHWEH at that time, saying,

24 O Lord GOD, you have begun to show thy servant thy greatness, and thy mighty hand: for what Elohim *is there* in heaven or in earth, that can do according to thy works, and according to thy might? [1Sam 2:2](#); [Ps 89:6-8](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#); [\[1Chr 17:20\]](#); [\[Ps 86:8\]](#);

25 I pray you, let me go over, and see the good land that *is* beyond Jordan, that goodly mountain, and Lebanon.

He is permitted to see it

26 But the YAHWEH was wroth with me for your sakes, and would not hear me: and the YAHWEH said unto me, Let it suffice you; speak no more unto me of this matter. [Deut 1:37](#); [Deut 31:2](#); [Deut 34:4](#); [\[Deut 4:21\]](#);

27 Get you up into the top of Pisgah, and lift up thine eyes westward, and northward, and southward, and eastward, and behold *it* with thine eyes: for you shall not go over this Jordan. [\[Deut 34:1\]](#);

28 But charge Joshua, and encourage him, and strengthen him: for he shall go over before this people, and he shall cause them to inherit the land which you shall see.

29 So we abode in the valley over against Bethpeor.

An exhortation to obedience

- 1** Now therefore hearken, O Israel, unto the statutes and unto the judgments, which I teach you, for to do *them*, that you may live, and go in and possess the land which the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers giveth you. [Lev 19:37](#); [Lev 20:8](#); [Lev 22:31](#); [\[Ps 105:45\]](#);
- 2** You shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall you diminish *ought* from it, that you may keep the commandments of the YAHWEH your Elohim which I command you. [Deut 12:32](#); [Prov 30:6](#); [Rev 22:18](#); [\[Rev 22:19\]](#);
- 3** Your eyes have seen what the YAHWEH did because of Baalpeor: for all the men that followed Baalpeor, the YAHWEH thy Elohim has destroyed them from among you. [Num 25:4](#); [Josh 22:17](#);
- 4** But you that did cleave unto the YAHWEH your Elohim *are* alive every one of you this day.
- 5** Behold, I have taught you statutes and judgments, even as the YAHWEH my Elohim commanded me, that you should do so in the land whither you go to possess it.
- 6** Keep therefore and do *them*; for this *is* your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the nations, which shall hear all these statutes, and say, Surely this great nation *is* a wise and understanding people. [\[Ps 149:9\]](#);
- 7** For what nation *is there so* great, who *has* Elohim *so* nigh unto them, as the YAHWEH our Elohim *is* in all *things that* we call upon him *for*? [Deut 26:19](#); [\[Exod 33:16\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:23\]](#); [\[1Chr 17:21\]](#);
- 8** And what nation *is there so* great, that has statutes and judgments *so* righteous as all this law, which I set before you this day?
- 9** Only take heed to thyself, and keep thy being diligently, lest you forget the things which thine eyes have seen, and lest they depart from thy heart all the days of thy life: but teach them thy sons, and thy sons' sons; [Deut 6:7](#); [Deut 11:19](#); [\[Ps 78:5\]](#); [\[Ps 145:4\]](#);
- 10** *Specially* the day that you stoodest before the YAHWEH thy Elohim in Horeb, when the YAHWEH said unto me, Gather me the people together, and I will make them hear my words, that they may learn to fear me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and *that* they may teach their children. [\[Exod 19:17\]](#);
- 11** And you came near and stood under the mountain; and the mountain burned with fire unto the midst of heaven, with darkness, clouds, and thick darkness. [Exod 19:18](#); [\[1Kgs 8:12\]](#);
- 12** And the YAHWEH spoke unto you out of the midst of the fire: you heard the voice of the words, but saw no similitude; only you *heard* a voice. [\[John 1:18\]](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:16\]](#); [\[1John 4:12\]](#);
- 13** And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, *even* ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone. [\[Exod 34:28\]](#);
- 14** And the YAHWEH commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and judgments, that you might do them in the land whither you go over to possess it.
- 15** Take you therefore good heed unto yourselves; for you saw no manner of similitude on the day *that* the YAHWEH spoke unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire:
- 16** Lest you corrupt *yourselves*, and make you a graven image, the similitude of any figure, the likeness of male or female,
- 17** The likeness of any beast that *is* on the earth, the likeness of any winged fowl that flies in the air,
- 18** The likeness of any thing that crawls on the ground, the likeness of any fish that *is* in the waters beneath the earth:
- 19** And lest you lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when you seest the sun, and the moon, and the stars, *even* all the host of heaven, should be driven to worship them, and serve them, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has divided unto all nations under the whole heaven. [\[Gen 1:15\]](#); [\[Job 31:26\]](#);
- 20** But the YAHWEH has taken you, and brought you forth out of the iron furnace, *even* out of Egypt, to be unto him a people of inheritance, as you *are* this day. [Exod 19:5](#); [\[Deut 7:6\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:53\]](#); [\[Jer 11:4\]](#);

21 Furthermore the YAHWEH was angry with me for your sakes, and swore that I should not go over Jordan, and that I should not go in unto that good land, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you *for* an inheritance: [Deut 1:37](#); [Deut 3:26](#); [Deut 31:2](#); [Deut 34:4](#);

22 But I must die in this land, I must not go over Jordan: but you shall go over, and possess that good land.

23 Take heed unto yourselves, lest you forget the covenant of the YAHWEH your Elohim, which he made with you, and make you a graven image, *or* the likeness of any *thing*, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has forbidden you.

24 For the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* a consuming fire, *even* a jealous Elohim. [Deut 9:3](#); [Heb 12:29](#); [Exod 20:5](#); [Exod 34:14](#); [Deut 5:9](#); [Deut 6:15](#);

25 When you shall beget children, and children's children, and you shall have remained long in the land, and shall corrupt *yourselves*, and make a graven image, *or* the likeness of any *thing*, and shall do evil in the sight of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to provoke him to anger: [\[Neh 1:8\]](#);

26 I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that you shall soon utterly perish from off the land whereunto you go over Jordan to possess it; you shall not prolong *your* days upon it, but shall utterly be destroyed. [\[Deut 30:19\]](#);

27 And the YAHWEH shall scatter you among the nations, and you shall be left few in number among the heathen, whither the YAHWEH shall lead you. [Deut 28:62](#); [Deut 28:64](#); [\[Jer 16:13\]](#);

28 And there you shall serve gods, the work of men's hands, wood and stone, which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell. [Ps 115:4](#); [Ps 135:15](#); [\[Ps 115:5\]](#);

29 But if from thence you shall seek the YAHWEH thy Elohim, you shall find *him*, if you seek him with all thy heart and with all thy being. [\[2Chr 15:4\]](#);

30 When you are in tribulation, and all these things are come upon you, *even* in the latter days, if you turn to the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and shall be obedient unto his voice;

31 (For the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* a merciful Elohim;) he will not forsake you, neither destroy you, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which he swore unto them. [\[Lev 26:44\]](#);

32 For ask now of the days that are past, which were before you, since the day that Elohim created man upon the earth, and *ask* from the one side of heaven unto the other, whether there has been *any such thing* as this great thing *is*, or has been heard like it? [\[Job 8:8\]](#);

33 Did *ever* people hear the voice of Elohim speaking out of the midst of the fire, as you have heard, and live? [\[Deut 5:26\]](#);

34 Or has Elohim tried to go *and* take him a nation from the midst of *another* nation, by temptations, by signs, and by wonders, and by war, and by a mighty hand, and by a stretched out arm, and by great terrors, according to all that the YAHWEH your Elohim did for you in Egypt before your eyes? [\[Deut 7:19\]](#); [\[Deut 29:3\]](#);

35 Unto you it was showed, that you mightest know that the YAHWEH he *is* Elohim; *there is* none else beside him. [Deut 32:39](#); [Isa 45:5](#); [Isa 45:18](#); [Isa 45:22](#); [Mark 12:29](#); [Mark 12:32](#); [\[Deut 6:4\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:60\]](#); [\[1Chr 17:20\]](#); [\[Isa 44:8\]](#);

36 Out of heaven he made you to hear his voice, that he might instruct you: and upon earth he showed you his great fire; and you heardest his words out of the midst of the fire.

37 And because he loved thy fathers, therefore he chose their seed after them, and brought you out in his sight with his mighty power out of Egypt; [Exod 13:3](#); [Exod 13:9](#); [Exod 13:14](#);

38 To drive out nations from before you greater and mightier than you are, to bring you in, to give you their land *for* an inheritance, as *it is* this day.

39 Know therefore this day, and consider *it* in thine heart, that the YAHWEH he *is* Elohim in heaven above, and upon the earth beneath: *there is* none else. [\[Josh 2:11\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:60\]](#); [\[2Chr 6:14\]](#); [\[Isa 44:8\]](#); [\[Isa 45:5\]](#); [\[1Cor 8:4\]](#); [\[Eph 4:5\]](#);

40 You shall keep therefore his statutes, and his commandments, which I command you this day, that it may go well with you, and with thy children after you, and that you may prolong *thy* days upon the earth, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, for ever. [\[Ps 105:45\]](#);

Moses appoints the three cities of refuge on that side of Jordan

41 Then Moses severed three cities on this side Jordan toward the sunrising; [Num 35:6](#); [Num 35:14](#); [[Deut 19:4](#)];

42 That the slayer might flee thither, which should kill his neighbour unawares, and hated him not in times past; and that fleeing unto one of these cities he might live:

43 *Namely*, Bezer in the wilderness, in the plain country, of the Reubenites; and Ramoth in Gilead, of the Gadites; and Golan in Bashan, of the Manassites. [Josh 20:8](#);

Recapitulation

44 And this *is* the law which Moses set before the children of Israel:

45 These *are* the testimonies, and the statutes, and the judgments, which Moses spoke unto the children of Israel, after they came forth out of Egypt,

46 On this side Jordan, in the valley over against Bethpeor, in the land of Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt at Heshbon, whom Moses and the children of Israel smote, after they were come forth out of Egypt: [Num 21:24](#); [Deut 1:4](#);

47 And they possessed his land, and the land of Og king of Bashan, two kings of the Amorites, which *were* on this side Jordan toward the sunrising; [Num 21:33](#); [Deut 3:3](#);

48 From Aroer, which *is* by the bank of the river Arnon, even unto mount Sion, which *is* Hermon,

49 And all the plain on this side Jordan eastward, even unto the sea of the plain, under the springs of Pisgah.

The covenant in Horeb

- 1** And Moses called all Israel, and said unto them, Hear, O Israel, the statutes and judgments which I speak in your ears this day, that you may learn them, and keep, and do them. [Neh 10:31];
- 2** The YAHWEH our Elohim made a covenant with us in Horeb. Exod 19:5; [Exod 34:10];
- 3** The YAHWEH made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, *even* us, who *are* all of us here alive this day.
- 4** The YAHWEH talked with you face to face in the mount out of the midst of the fire,
- 5** (I stood between the YAHWEH and you at that time, to show you the word of the YAHWEH: for you were afraid by reason of the fire, and went not up into the mount;) saying, Exod 19:16; Exod 20:18; [Gal 3:19];

The ten commandments

- 6** I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which brought you out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage. Exod 20:2; Ps 81:10;
- 7** You shall have none other gods before me. [2Kgs 17:12];
- 8** You shall not make you *any* graven image, *or* any likeness *of any thing* that *is* in heaven above, or that *is* in the earth beneath, or that *is* in the waters beneath the earth: Lev 26:1;
- 9** You shall not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them: for I the YAHWEH thy Elohim *am* a jealous Elohim, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth *generation* of them that hate me, Exod 20:5; Exod 34:7; Exod 34:14; Jer 32:18; [Num 14:18]; [Deut 4:24]; [Deut 7:9];
- 10** And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments. [Exod 34:7]; [Neh 1:5]; [Ps 103:8];
- 11** You shall not take the name of the YAHWEH thy Elohim in vain: for the YAHWEH will not hold *him* guiltless that taketh his name in vain. Lev 19:12; Matt 5:33;
- 12** Keep the Sabbath day to sanctify it, as the YAHWEH thy Elohim has commanded you. Gen 2:2; Exod 23:12; Exod 35:2; Lev 23:3; Ezek 20:12; Heb 4:4; [Exod 31:14]; [Neh 10:31];
- 13** Six days you shall labour, and do all thy work: [Lev 23:3]; [Luke 13:14]; [John 5:10];
- 14** But the seventh day *is* the Sabbath of the YAHWEH thy Elohim: *in it* you shall not do any work, you, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thine ox, nor thine ass, nor any of thy cattle, nor thy stranger that *is* within thy gates; that thy manservant and thy maidservant may rest as well as you. [Gen 2:2];
- 15** And remember that you were a servant in the land of Egypt, and *that* the YAHWEH thy Elohim brought you out thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched out arm: therefore the YAHWEH thy Elohim commanded you to keep the Sabbath day.
- 16** Honour thy father and thy mother, as the YAHWEH thy Elohim has commanded you; that thy days may be prolonged, and that it may go well with you, in the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you. Lev 19:3; Matt 15:4; Luke 18:20; Eph 6:2-3; [Mark 7:10]; [Eph 6:2];
- 17** You shall not kill. Matt 5:21; Luke 18:20; Rom 13:9; [Matt 19:18]; [Mark 10:19];
- 18** Neither shall you commit adultery. Luke 18:20; [Matt 5:27];
- 19** Neither shall you steal.
- 20** Neither shall you bear false witness against thy neighbour.
- 21** Neither shall you desire thy neighbour's wife, neither shall you covet thy neighbour's house, his field, or his manservant, or his maidservant, his ox, or his ass, or any *thing* that *is* thy neighbour's. Rom 7:7;
- 22** These words the YAHWEH spoke unto all your assembly in the mount out of the midst of the fire, of the cloud, and of the thick darkness, with a great voice: and he added no more. And he wrote them in two tables of stone, and delivered them unto me. [1Kgs 8:12]; [Heb 12:18];

At the people's request Moses receives the law from Elohim

23 And it came to pass, when you heard the voice out of the midst of the darkness, (for the mountain did burn with fire,) that you came near unto me, *even* all the heads of your tribes, and your elders;

24 And you said, Behold, the YAHWEH our Elohim has showed us his glory and his greatness, and we have heard his voice out of the midst of the fire: we have seen this day that Elohim talks with man, and he liveth.

25 Now therefore why should we die? for this great fire will consume us: if we hear the voice of the YAHWEH our Elohim any more, then we shall die. [\[Exod 20:19\]](#); [\[Deut 18:16\]](#); [\[Heb 12:19\]](#);

26 For who *is there of* all flesh, that has heard the voice of the living Elohim speaking out of the midst of the fire, as we *have*, and lived? [Deut 4:33](#); [Judg 13:22](#);

27 Go you near, and hear all that the YAHWEH our Elohim shall say: and speak you unto us all that the YAHWEH our Elohim shall speak unto you; and we will hear *it*, and do *it*. [Exod 20:19](#); [Heb 12:19](#); [\[Exod 24:3\]](#);

28 And the YAHWEH heard the voice of your words, when you spoke unto me; and the YAHWEH said unto me, I have heard the voice of the words of this people, which they have spoken unto you: they have well said all that they have spoken.

29 O that there were such a heart in them, that they would fear me, and keep all my commandments always, that it might be well with them, and with their children for ever!

30 Go say to them, Get you into your tents again.

31 But as for you, stand you here by me, and I will speak unto you all the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which you shall teach them, that they may do *them* in the land which I give them to possess it.

32 You shall observe to do therefore as the YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you: you shall not turn aside to the right hand or to the left. [\[Josh 1:7\]](#); [\[Josh 23:6\]](#); [\[Prov 4:27\]](#);

33 You shall walk in all the ways which the YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you, that you may live, and *that it may be* well with you, and *that* you may prolong *your* days in the land which you shall possess.

The end of the law is obedience

1 Now these *are* the commandments, the statutes, and the judgments, which the YAHWEH your Elohim commanded to teach you, that you might do *them* in the land whither you go to possess it:

2 That you mightest fear the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to keep all his statutes and his commandments, which I command you, you, and thy son, and thy son's son, all the days of thy life; and that thy days may be prolonged. [Ecd 12:13];

An exhortation thereto

3 Hear therefore, O Israel, and observe to do *it*; that it may be well with you, and that you may increase mightily, as the YAHWEH Elohim of thy fathers has promised you, in the land that floweth with milk and honey. [Jer 7:23]; [Mal 4:4];

4 Hear, O Israel: The YAHWEH is our Elohim, the YAHWEH alone: Deut 4:35; Mark 12:29; John 17:3; 1Cor 8:4; 1Cor 8:6; [1Chr 17:20];

5 And you shall love the YAHWEH thy Elohim with all thine heart, and with all thy being, and with all thy might. Deut 10:12; Matt 22:37; Luke 10:27;

6 And these words, which I command you this day, shall be in thine heart: [Deut 11:18]; [Ps 1:2];

7 And you shall teach them diligently unto thy children, and shall talk of them when you sittest in thine house, and when you walkest by the way, and when you liest down, and when you risest up. Deut 4:9; Num 11:19; [Deut 11:19]; [Ps 78:5]; [Ps 145:4]; [Eph 6:4];

8 And you shall bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes. [Deut 11:18]; [Prov 3:3]; [Prov 7:3]; [Matt 23:5];

9 And you shall write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.

10 And it shall be, when the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall have brought you into the land which he swore unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give you great and goodly cities, which you builtst not, [Josh 24:13];

11 And houses full of all good *things*, which you filledst not, and wells digged, which you diggedst not, vineyards and olive trees, which you plantedst not; when you shall have eaten and be full; Deut 8:9-10; [Deut 8:10];

12 *Then* beware lest you forget the YAHWEH, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.

13 You shall fear the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and serve him, and shall swear by his name. Deut 10:20; Matt 4:10; Luke 4:8; [1Sam 7:3];

14 You shall not go after other gods, of the gods of the people which *are* round about you;

15 (For the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* a jealous Elohim among you) lest the anger of the YAHWEH thy Elohim be kindled against you, and destroy you from off the face of the earth. [Deut 4:24];

16 You shall not tempt the YAHWEH your Elohim, as you tempted *him* in Massah. Matt 4:7; Luke 4:12; Exod 17:2; Num 20:3; [Ps 95:8];

17 You shall diligently keep the commandments of the YAHWEH your Elohim, and his testimonies, and his statutes, which he has commanded you.

18 And you shall do *that which is* right and good in the sight of the YAHWEH: that it may be well with you, and that you may go in and possess the good land which the YAHWEH swore unto thy fathers,

19 To cast out all thine enemies from before you, as the YAHWEH has spoken. [Josh 23:5];

What they are to teach their children

20 *And* when thy son asketh you in time to come, saying, What *mean* the testimonies, and the statutes, and the judgments, which the YAHWEH our Elohim has commanded you? [Eph 6:4];

21 Then you shall say unto thy son, We were Pharaoh's bondmen in Egypt; and the YAHWEH brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand: [Ps 105:45];

22 And the YAHWEH showed signs and wonders, great and sore, upon Egypt, upon Pharaoh, and upon all his household, before our eyes:

23 And he brought us out from thence, that he might bring us in, to give us the land which he swore unto our fathers.

24 And the YAHWEH commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear the YAHWEH our Elohim, for our good always, that he might preserve us alive, as *it is* at this day.

25 And it shall be our righteousness, if we observe to do all these commandments before the YAHWEH our Elohim, as he has commanded us.

All communion with the nations is forbidden

1 When the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall bring you into the land whither you go to possess it, and has cast out many nations before you, the Hittites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, seven nations greater and mightier than you; [Deut 31:3](#); [\[Deut 20:16\]](#); [\[Deut 31:5\]](#); [\[Josh 9:24\]](#);

2 And when the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall deliver them before you; you shall smite them, *and* utterly destroy them; you shall make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them: [Num 33:52](#); [Josh 11:11](#); [Exod 23:32](#); [Exod 34:15](#); [\[Exod 34:12\]](#); [\[Josh 8:22\]](#); [\[Josh 10:40\]](#); [\[Josh 11:15\]](#); [\[Judg 2:2\]](#); [\[Acts 10:28\]](#); [\[Acts 11:3\]](#); [\[1Cor 5:9\]](#); [\[2Cor 6:14\]](#);

3 Neither shall you make marriages with them; thy daughter you shall not give unto his son, nor his daughter shall you take unto thy son. [Exod 34:16](#); [1Kgs 11:2](#); [\[Ezra 9:11\]](#); [\[Neh 10:30\]](#);

4 For they will turn away thy son from following me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of the YAHWEH be kindled against you, and destroy you suddenly.

for fear of idolatry

5 But thus shall you deal with them; you shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire. [Exod 23:24](#); [Exod 34:13](#); [Deut 12:2-3](#); [\[Deut 12:2\]](#); [\[2Kgs 23:14\]](#);

for the holiness of the people

6 For you are a holy people unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim: the YAHWEH thy Elohim has chosen you to be a special people unto himself, above all people that *are* upon the face of the earth. [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 4:20](#); [Deut 14:21](#); [Deut 26:18](#); [Deut 28:9](#); [1Pet 2:9](#); [\[Deut 14:2\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:53\]](#); [\[Ps 135:4\]](#); [\[Isa 41:8\]](#); [\[Rom 9:4\]](#); [\[Eph 1:14\]](#);

7 The YAHWEH did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because you were more in number than any people; for you *were* the fewest of all people: [\[Isa 63:9\]](#);

8 But because the YAHWEH loved you, and because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, has the YAHWEH brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. [Deut 10:15](#);

for the nature of Elohim in his mercy and justice

9 Know therefore that the YAHWEH thy Elohim, he *is* Elohim, the faithful Elohim, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations; [Exod 20:5](#); [Deut 5:9](#); [\[2Chr 6:14\]](#); [\[Ps 103:18\]](#); [\[Dan 9:4\]](#);

10 And repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them: he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face. [Nah 1:2](#);

11 You shall therefore keep the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which I command you this day, to do them.

12 Wherefore it shall come to pass, if you hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall keep unto you the covenant and the mercy which he swore unto thy fathers: [Lev 26:3](#); [Deut 28:1](#); [\[Jer 11:5\]](#);

13 And he will love you, and bless you, and multiply you: he will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which he swore unto thy fathers to give you.

14 You shall be blessed above all people: there shall not be male or female barren among you, or among your cattle. [Exod 23:26](#);

15 And the YAHWEH will take away from you all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which you knowest, upon you; but will lay them upon all *them* that hate you. [\[Exod 23:25\]](#);

16 And you shall consume all the people which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall deliver you; thine eye shall have no pity upon them: neither shall you serve their gods; for that *will be* a snare unto you. [\[Judg 2:3\]](#);

for the assuredness of victory which Elohim will give over them

- 17** If you shall say in thine heart, These nations *are* more than I; how can I dispossess them?
- 18** You shall not be afraid of them: *but* shall well remember what the YAHWEH thy Elohim did unto Pharaoh, and unto all Egypt; [Josh 8:1];
- 19** The great temptations which thine eyes saw, and the signs, and the wonders, and the mighty hand, and the stretched out arm, whereby the YAHWEH thy Elohim brought you out: so shall the YAHWEH thy Elohim do unto all the people of whom you are afraid. Deut 4:34; Deut 29:3;
- 20** Moreover the YAHWEH thy Elohim will send the hornet among them, until they that are left, and hide themselves from you, be destroyed. Exod 23:28; Josh 24:12;
- 21** You shall not be frightened at them: for the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* among you, a mighty Elohim and terrible.
- 22** And the YAHWEH thy Elohim will put out those nations before you by little and little: you may not consume them at once, lest the beasts of the field increase upon you.
- 23** But the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall deliver them unto you, and shall destroy them with a mighty destruction, until they be destroyed.
- 24** And he shall deliver their kings into thine hand, and you shall destroy their name from under heaven: there shall no man be able to stand before you, until you have destroyed them.
- 25** The graven images of their gods shall you burn with fire: you shall not desire the silver or gold *that is* on them, nor take *it* unto you, lest you be snared therein: for it *is* an abomination to the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [2Kgs 23:14];
- 26** Neither shall you bring an abomination into thine house, lest you be a cursed thing like it: *but* you shall utterly detest it, and you shall utterly abhor it; for it *is* a cursed thing.

An exhortation to obedience in regard of Elohim's mercy and goodness in his dealings with Israel

- 1** All the commandments which I command you this day shall you observe to do, that you may live, and multiply, and go in and possess the land which the YAHWEH swore unto your fathers. [\[Prov 3:2\];](#)
- 2** And you shall remember all the way which the YAHWEH thy Elohim led you these forty years in the wilderness, to humble you, *and* to prove you, to know what *was* in thine heart, whether you wouldst keep his commandments, or no.
- 3** And he humbled you, and suffered you to hunger, and fed you with manna, which you knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make you know that man does not live by bread only, but by every *word* that proceedeth out of the mouth of the YAHWEH does man live. [Exod 16:14-15; Matt 4:4; Luke 4:4;](#)
- 4** Thy raiment waxed not old upon you, neither did thy foot swell, these forty years. [Deut 29:5; Neh 9:21;](#)
- 5** You shall also consider in thine heart, that, as a man chasteneth his son, *so* the YAHWEH thy Elohim chasteneth you.
- 6** Therefore you shall keep the commandments of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to walk in his ways, and to fear him.
- 7** For the YAHWEH thy Elohim bringeth you into a good land, a land of brooks of water, of fountains and depths that spring out of valleys and hills;
- 8** A land of wheat, and barley, and vines, and fig trees, and pomegranates; a land of oil olive, and honey;
- 9** A land wherein you shall eat bread without scarceness, you shall not lack any *thing* in it; a land whose stones *are* iron, and out of whose hills you may dig brass. [\[Deut 6:11\];](#)
- 10** When you have eaten and are full, then you shall bless the YAHWEH thy Elohim for the good land which he has given you. [Deut 6:11-12;](#)
- 11** Beware that you forget not the YAHWEH thy Elohim, in not keeping his commandments, and his judgments, and his statutes, which I command you this day:
- 12** Lest *when* you have eaten and are full, and have built goodly houses, and dwelt *therein*;
- 13** And *when* thy herds and thy flocks multiply, and thy silver and thy gold is multiplied, and all that you have is multiplied;
- 14** Then thine heart be lifted up, and you forget the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage;
- 15** Who led you through that great and terrible wilderness, *wherein were* fiery serpents, and scorpions, and drought, where *there was* no water; who brought you forth water out of the rock of flint; [Exod 17:6; Num 20:11; Ps 78:15; Ps 114:8;](#)
- 16** Who fed you in the wilderness with manna, which thy fathers knew not, that he might humble you, and that he might prove you, to do you good at thy latter end; [Exod 16:14-15;](#)
- 17** And you say in thine heart, My power and the might of *mine* hand has gotten me this wealth.
- 18** But you shall remember the YAHWEH thy Elohim: for *it is* he that giveth you power to get wealth, that he may establish his covenant which he swore unto thy fathers, as *it is* this day.
- 19** And it shall be, if you do at all forget the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and walk after other gods, and serve them, and worship them, I testify against you this day that you shall surely perish. [\[Deut 11:16\];](#)
- 20** As the nations which the YAHWEH destroyeth before your face, so shall you perish; because you would not be obedient unto the voice of the YAHWEH your Elohim.

Moses dissuades them from the opinion of their own righteousness, by rehearsing their several rebellions

- 1** Hear, O Israel: you are to pass over Jordan this day, to go in to possess nations greater and mightier than thyself, cities great and fenced up to heaven,
- 2** A people great and tall, the children of the Anakims, whom you knowest, and *of whom* you have heard *say*, Who can stand before the children of Anak! [Num 13:32-33](#);
- 3** Understand therefore this day, that the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* he which goes over before you; *as* a consuming fire he shall destroy them, and he shall bring them down before thy face: so shall you drive them out, and destroy them quickly, as the YAHWEH has said unto you. [Deut 4:24](#); [Heb 12:29](#);
- 4** Speak not you in thine heart, after that the YAHWEH thy Elohim has cast them out from before you, saying, For my righteousness the YAHWEH has brought me in to possess this land: but for the wickedness of these nations the YAHWEH drives them out from before you. [\[Rom 11:6\]](#);
- 5** Not for thy righteousness, or for the uprightness of thine heart, dost you go to possess their land: but for the wickedness of these nations the YAHWEH thy Elohim drives them out from before you, and that he may perform the word which the YAHWEH swore unto thy fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:7](#); [Gen 17:8](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 28:13](#);
- 6** Understand therefore, that the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you not this good land to possess it for thy righteousness; for you are a stiffnecked people. [\[Exod 32:9\]](#); [\[Ps 78:8\]](#);
- 7** Remember, *and* forget not, how you provokedst the YAHWEH thy Elohim to wrath in the wilderness: from the day that you didst depart out of the land of Egypt, until you came unto this place, you have been rebellious against the YAHWEH. [Exod 14:11](#); [Exod 16:2](#); [Exod 17:2](#); [Num 11:4](#);
- 8** Also in Horeb you provoked the YAHWEH to wrath, so that the YAHWEH was angry with you to have destroyed you. [Exod 32:4](#); [Ps 106:19](#);
- 9** When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, *even* the tables of the covenant which the YAHWEH made with you, then I abode in the mount forty days and forty nights, I neither did eat bread nor drink water: [Exod 24:18](#); [Exod 34:28](#);
- 10** And the YAHWEH delivered unto me two tables of stone written with the finger of Elohim; and on them *was written* according to all the words, which the YAHWEH spoke with you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly. [Exod 31:18](#); [\[Exod 32:16\]](#);
- 11** And it came to pass at the end of forty days and forty nights, *that* the YAHWEH gave me the two tables of stone, *even* the tables of the covenant.
- 12** And the YAHWEH said unto me, Arise, get you down quickly from hence; for thy people which you have brought forth out of Egypt have corrupted *themselves*; they are quickly turned aside out of the way which I commanded them; they have made them a molten image.
- 13** Furthermore the YAHWEH spoke unto me, saying, I have seen this people, and, behold, it *is* a stiffnecked people: [Exod 32:9](#); [Exod 33:3](#); [Exod 34:9](#); [Deut 10:16](#); [Deut 31:27](#); [2Kgs 17:14](#); [\[Ps 78:8\]](#); [\[Ps 106:23\]](#);
- 14** Let me alone, that I may destroy them, and blot out their name from under heaven: and I will make of you a nation mightier and greater than they. [Exod 32:10](#); [Ps 106:23](#);
- 15** So I turned and came down from the mount, and the mount burned with fire: and the two tables of the covenant *were* in my two hands.
- 16** And I looked, and, behold, you had sinned against the YAHWEH your Elohim, *and* had made you a molten calf: you had turned aside quickly out of the way which the YAHWEH had commanded you.
- 17** And I took the two tables, and cast them out of my two hands, and brake them before your eyes. [\[Exod 32:19\]](#);
- 18** And I fell down before the YAHWEH, as at the first, forty days and forty nights: I did neither eat bread, nor drink water, because of all your sins which you sinned, in doing wickedly in the sight of the YAHWEH, to provoke him to anger. [\[Exod 34:28\]](#); [\[Deut 10:10\]](#);

19 For I was afraid of the anger and hot displeasure, wherewith the YAHWEH was wroth against you to destroy you. But the YAHWEH hearkened unto me at that time also. [\[Deut 10:10\];](#)

20 And the YAHWEH was very angry with Aaron to have destroyed him: and I prayed for Aaron also the same time.

21 And I took your sin, the calf which you had made, and burnt it with fire, and stamped it, *and* ground *it* very small, *even* until it was as small as dust: and I cast the dust thereof into the brook that descended out of the mount. [Exod 32:20;](#)

22 And at Taberah, and at Massah, and at Kibrothhattaavah, you provoked the YAHWEH to wrath. [Num 11:1; Exod 17:7; Num 11:4; Num 11:34;](#)

23 Likewise when the YAHWEH sent you from Kadeshbarnea, saying, Go up and possess the land which I have given you; then you rebelled against the commandment of the YAHWEH your Elohim, and you believed him not, nor hearkened to his voice. [Num 13:3; Num 14:1;](#)

24 *you* have been rebellious against the YAHWEH from the day that I knew you.

25 Thus I fell down before the YAHWEH forty days and forty nights, as I fell down *at the first*; because the YAHWEH had said he would destroy you.

26 I prayed therefore unto the YAHWEH, and said, O Lord GOD, destroy not thy people and thine inheritance, which you have redeemed through thy greatness, which you have brought forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand. [Exod 32:11; Num 14:13; \[1Kgs 8:53\];](#)

27 Remember thy servants, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; look not unto the stubbornness of this people, nor to their wickedness, nor to their sin:

28 Lest the land whence you broughtest us out say, Because the YAHWEH was not able to bring them into the land which he promised them, and because he hated them, he has brought them out to slay them in the wilderness. [Exod 32:12; Num 14:16;](#)

29 Yet they *are* thy people and thine inheritance, which you broughtest out by thy mighty power and by thy stretched out arm. [\[1Kgs 8:53\];](#)

Elohim's mercy in restoring the two tables

1 At that time the YAHWEH said unto me, Hew you two tables of stone like unto the first, and come up unto me into the mount, and make you an ark of wood. [Exod 34:1](#);

2 And I will write on the tables the words that were in the first tables which you brakest, and you shall put them in the ark. [\[2Cor 3:7\]](#);

3 And I made an ark *of* shittim wood, and hewed two tables of stone like unto the first, and went up into the mount, having the two tables in mine hand.

4 And he wrote on the tables, according to the first writing, the ten commandments, which the YAHWEH spoke unto you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly: and the YAHWEH gave them unto me.

5 And I turned myself and came down from the mount, and put the tables in the ark which I had made; and there they be, as the YAHWEH commanded me.

in continuing the priesthood

6 And the children of Israel took their journey from Beeroth of the children of Jaakan to Mosera: there Aaron died, and there he was buried; and Eleazar his son ministered in the priest's office in his stead. [Num 33:30](#); [Num 20:28](#); [Num 33:38](#);

7 From thence they journeyed unto Gudgodah; and from Gudgodah to Jotbath, a land of rivers of waters. [Num 33:32-33](#);

in separating the tribe of Levi

8 At that time the YAHWEH separated the tribe of Levi, to bear the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, to stand before the YAHWEH to minister unto him, and to bless in his name, unto this day.

9 Wherefore Levi has no part nor inheritance with his brethren; the YAHWEH *is* his inheritance, according as the YAHWEH thy Elohim promised him. [Num 18:20-21](#); [Deut 18:1](#); [Ezek 44:28](#); [\[Num 18:20\]](#); [\[Deut 12:12\]](#); [\[Deut 14:27\]](#); [\[Deut 18:2\]](#); [\[Josh 13:33\]](#);

in hearkening unto Moses' suit for his people

10 And I stayed in the mount, according to the first time, forty days and forty nights; and the YAHWEH hearkened unto me at that time also, *and* the YAHWEH would not destroy you. [Deut 9:18](#); [Deut 9:19](#); [\[Ps 106:23\]](#);

11 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Arise, take *thy* journey before the people, that they may go in and possess the land, which I swore unto their fathers to give unto them.

An exhortation to obedience

12 And now, Israel, what does the YAHWEH thy Elohim require of you, but to fear the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the YAHWEH thy Elohim with all thy heart and with all thy being, [Deut 6:5](#); [Matt 22:37](#); [Luke 10:27](#); [\[Josh 22:5\]](#); [\[Eccl 12:13\]](#); [\[Mic 6:8\]](#); [\[Mark 12:29\]](#);

13 To keep the commandments of the YAHWEH, and his statutes, which I command you this day for thy good?

14 Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens *is* the YAHWEH'S thy Elohim, the earth *also*, with all that therein *is*. [Gen 14:19](#); [Ps 24:1](#); [Ps 115:16](#); [\[Exod 19:5\]](#); [\[Job 41:11\]](#); [\[Ps 50:12\]](#);

15 Only the YAHWEH had a delight in thy fathers to love them, and he chose their seed after them, *even* you above all people, as *it is* this day. [\[Deut 7:8\]](#); [\[Isa 41:8\]](#);

16 Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your heart, and be no more stiffnecked. [Jer 4:4](#); [Exod 32:9](#); [Exod 33:3](#); [Exod 34:9](#); [Deut 9:13](#); [\[Rom 2:29\]](#); [\[Phil 3:3\]](#); [\[Col 2:11\]](#);

17 For the YAHWEH your Elohim *is* Elohim of gods, and Lord of lords, a great Elohim, a mighty, and a terrible, which regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward: [Rev 17:14](#); [2Chr 19:6-7](#); [Job 34:19](#); [Acts 10:34](#); [Rom 2:11](#); [Gal 2:6](#); [Eph 6:9](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#); [\[2Chr 19:7\]](#);

18 He executes the judgment of the fatherless and widow, and loveth the stranger, in giving him food and raiment.

19 Love you therefore the stranger: for you were strangers in the land of Egypt.

20 **you** shall fear the YAHWEH thy Elohim; him shall you serve, and to him shall you cleave, and swear by his name. [Deut 6:13](#); [Matt 4:10](#); [Luke 4:8](#); [Deut 13:4](#); [\[1Sam 7:3\]](#); [\[Isa 19:18\]](#);

21 He *is* thy praise, and he *is* thy Elohim, that has done for you these great and terrible things, which thine eyes have seen.

22 Thy fathers went down into Egypt with threescore and ten persons; and now the YAHWEH thy Elohim has made you as the stars of heaven for multitude. [Gen 46:27](#); [Exod 1:5](#); [Acts 7:14](#); [Gen 15:5](#); [\[Gen 13:16\]](#); [\[Gen 46:4\]](#); [\[Deut 28:62\]](#);

An exhortation to obedience

1 Therefore you shall love the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and keep his charge, and his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments, always.

by their own experience of Elohim's great works

2 And know you this day: for *I speak* not with your children which have not known, and which have not seen the chastisement of the YAHWEH your Elohim, his greatness, his mighty hand, and his stretched out arm,

3 And his miracles, and his acts, which he did in the midst of Egypt unto Pharaoh the king of Egypt, and unto all his land;

4 And what he did unto the army of Egypt, unto their horses, and to their chariots; how he made the water of the Red sea to overflow them as they pursued after you, and *how* the YAHWEH has destroyed them unto this day;

5 And what he did unto you in the wilderness, until you came into this place;

6 And what he did unto Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, the son of Reuben: how the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed them up, and their households, and their tents, and all the substance that *was* in their possession, in the midst of all Israel: [Num 16:31](#); [Num 27:3](#); [Ps 106:17](#); [[Num 16:32](#)];

7 But your eyes have seen all the great acts of the YAHWEH which he did.

by promise of Elohim's great blessings

8 Therefore shall you keep all the commandments which I command you this day, that you may be strong, and go in and possess the land, whither you go to possess it;

9 And that you may prolong *your* days in the land, which the YAHWEH swore unto your fathers to give unto them and to their seed, a land that floweth with milk and honey.

10 For the land, whither you go in to possess it, *is* not as the land of Egypt, from whence you came out, where you sowedst thy seed, and wateredst *it* with thy foot, as a garden of herbs:

11 But the land, whither you go to possess it, *is* a land of hills and valleys, *and* drinketh water of the rain of heaven:

12 A land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim careth for: the eyes of the YAHWEH thy Elohim *are* always upon it, from the beginning of the year even unto the end of the year.

13 And it shall come to pass, if you shall hearken diligently unto my commandments which I command you this day, to love the YAHWEH your Elohim, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your being,

14 That I will give *you* the rain of your land in its due season, the first rain and the latter rain, that you may gather in thy grain, and thy wine, and thine oil. [[Jer 5:24](#)];

15 And I will send grass in thy fields for thy cattle, that you may eat and be full.

and by threatenings

16 Take heed to yourselves, that your heart be not deceived, and you turn aside, and serve other gods, and worship them; [Deut 8:19](#);

17 And *then* the YAHWEH'S wrath be kindled against you, and he shut up the heaven, that there be no rain, and that the land yield not her fruit; and *lest* you perish quickly from off the good land which the YAHWEH giveth you.

A careful study is required in Elohim's words

18 Therefore shall you lay up these my words in your heart and in your being, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes. [Deut 6:6](#); [Deut 6:8](#); [[Prov 7:3](#)];

19 And you shall teach them your children, speaking of them when you sittest in thine house, and when you walkest by the way, when you liest down, and when you risest up. [Deut 4:9](#); [Deut 6:7](#);

20 And you shall write them upon the door posts of thine house, and upon thy gates:

21 That your days may be multiplied, and the days of your children, in the land which the YAHWEH swore unto your fathers to give them, as the days of heaven upon the earth.

22 For if you shall diligently keep all these commandments which I command you, to do them, to love the YAHWEH your Elohim, to walk in all his ways, and to cleave unto him; [[Josh 23:8](#)];

23 Then will the YAHWEH drive out all these nations from before you, and you shall possess greater nations and mightier than yourselves.

24 Every place whereon the soles of your feet shall tread shall be yours: from the wilderness and Lebanon, from the river, the river Euphrates, even unto the uttermost sea shall your coast be. [Josh 1:3](#); [Josh 14:9](#); [[Deut 12:20](#)];

25 There shall no man be able to stand before you: *for* the YAHWEH your Elohim shall lay the fear of you and the dread of you upon all the land that you shall tread upon, as he has said unto you. [Exod 23:27](#); [[Exod 15:16](#)];

The blessing and curse set before them

26 Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse;

27 A blessing, if you obey the commandments of the YAHWEH your Elohim, which I command you this day:

28 And a curse, if you will not obey the commandments of the YAHWEH your Elohim, but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods, which you have not known.

29 And it shall come to pass, when the YAHWEH thy Elohim has brought you in unto the land whither you go to possess it, that you shall put the blessing upon mount Gerizim, and the curse upon mount Ebal. [Deut 27:12](#); [Josh 8:33](#); [Deut 27:13](#);

30 *Are* they not on the other side Jordan, by the way where the sun goes down, in the land of the Canaanites, which dwell in the champaign over against Gilgal, beside the plains of Moreh?

31 For you shall pass over Jordan to go in to possess the land which the YAHWEH your Elohim giveth you, and you shall possess it, and dwell therein.

32 And you shall observe to do all the statutes and judgments which I set before you this day.

Monuments of idolatry are to be destroyed

1 These *are* the statutes and judgments, which you shall observe to do in the land, which the YAHWEH Elohim of thy fathers giveth you to possess it, all the days that you live upon the earth.

2 You shall utterly destroy all the places, wherein the nations which you shall possess served their gods, upon the high mountains, and upon the hills, and under every green tree: [Exod 34:12-13](#); [Deut 7:5](#);

3 And you shall overthrow their altars, and break their pillars, and burn their groves with fire; and you shall hew down the graven images of their gods, and destroy the names of them out of that place. [Judg 2:2](#); [\[2Kgs 23:14\]](#);

The place of Elohim's service to be kept

4 You shall not do so unto the YAHWEH your Elohim.

5 But unto the place which the YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose out of all your tribes to put his name there, *even* unto his habitation shall you seek, and thither you shall come: [2Chr 7:12](#); [\[1Kgs 3:2\]](#); [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#); [\[Ezra 3:2\]](#); [\[Song 1:7\]](#); [\[John 4:20\]](#);

6 And thither you shall bring your burnt offerings, and your sacrifices, and your tithes, and heave offerings of your hand, and your vows, and your freewill offerings, and the firstlings of your herds and of your flocks:

7 And there you shall eat before the YAHWEH your Elohim, and you shall rejoice in all that you put your hand unto, you and your households, wherein the YAHWEH thy Elohim has blessed you.

8 You shall not do after all *the things* that we do here this day, every man whatsoever *is* right in his own eyes.

9 For you are not as yet come to the rest and to the inheritance, which the YAHWEH your Elohim giveth you.

10 But *when* you go over Jordan, and dwell in the land which the YAHWEH your Elohim giveth you to inherit, and *when* he giveth you rest from all your enemies round about, so that you dwell in safety; [\[Ps 4:8\]](#);

11 Then there shall be a place which the YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose to cause his name to dwell there; thither shall you bring all that I command you; your burnt offerings, and your sacrifices, your tithes, and the heave offering of your hand, and all your choice vows which you vow unto the YAHWEH: [1Kgs 8:29](#); [\[1Kgs 9:3\]](#); [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#); [\[John 4:20\]](#);

12 And you shall rejoice before the YAHWEH your Elohim, you, and your sons, and your daughters, and your menservants, and your maidservants, and the Levite that *is* within your gates; forasmuch as he has no part nor inheritance with you. [Num 18:20](#); [Deut 10:9](#); [Deut 18:1](#); [\[Deut 14:27\]](#);

13 Take heed to thyself that you offer not thy burnt offerings in every place that you seest:

14 But in the place which the YAHWEH shall choose in one of thy tribes, there you shall offer thy burnt offerings, and there you shall do all that I command you.

Blood is forbidden

15 Notwithstanding you may kill and eat flesh in all thy gates, whatsoever thy being lusteth after, according to the blessing of the YAHWEH thy Elohim which he has given you: the unclean and the clean may eat thereof, as of the roebuck, and as of the hart.

Blood is forbidden

16 Only you shall not eat the blood; you shall pour it upon the earth as water. [Gen 9:4](#); [Lev 7:26](#); [Lev 17:10](#); [Deut 15:23](#);

Holy things must be eaten in the holy place

17 You may not eat within thy gates the tithe of thy corn, or of thy wine, or of thy oil, or the firstlings of thy herds or of thy flock, nor any of thy vows which you vowest, nor thy freewill offerings, or heave offering of thine hand: [\[Deut 14:23\]](#);

Holy things must be eaten in the holy place

18 But you must eat them before the YAHWEH thy Elohim in the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose, you, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite that *is* within thy gates: and you shall rejoice before the YAHWEH thy Elohim in all that you puttest thine hands unto.

The Levite is not to be forsaken

19 Take heed to thyself that you forsake not the Levite as long as you livest upon the earth.

Blood is forbidden

20 When the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall enlarge thy border, as he has promised you, and you shall say, I will eat flesh, because thy being longeth to eat flesh; you may eat flesh, whatsoever thy being lusteth after. [Gen 28:13](#); [Exod 23:31](#); [Deut 11:24](#); [Deut 19:8](#);

21 If the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has chosen to put his name there be too far from you, then you shall kill of thy herd and of thy flock, which the YAHWEH has given you, as I have commanded you, and you shall eat in thy gates whatsoever thy being lusteth after.

22 Even as the roebuck and the hart is eaten, so you shall eat them: the unclean and the clean shall eat *of* them alike.

23 Only be sure that you eat not the blood: for the blood *is* the life; and you may not eat the life with the flesh. [\[Gen 9:4\]](#); [\[Lev 17:10\]](#); [\[Deut 15:23\]](#);

24 You shall not eat it; you shall pour it upon the earth as water.

25 You shall not eat it; that it may go well with you, and with thy children after you, when you shall do *that which is* right in the sight of the YAHWEH.

Holy things must be eaten in the holy place

26 Only thy holy things which you hast, and thy vows, you shall take, and go unto the place which the YAHWEH shall choose:

27 And you shall offer thy burnt offerings, the flesh and the blood, upon the altar of the YAHWEH thy Elohim: and the blood of thy sacrifices shall be poured out upon the altar of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and you shall eat the flesh.

28 Observe and hear all these words which I command you, that it may go well with you, and with thy children after you for ever, when you do *that which is* good and right in the sight of the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

Idolatry is not to be enquired after

29 When the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall cut off the nations from before you, whither you go to possess them, and you succeedest them, and dwellest in their land;

30 Take heed to thyself that you be not snared by following them, after that they be destroyed from before you; and that you enquire not after their gods, saying, How did these nations serve their gods? even so will I do likewise.

31 You shall not do so unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim: for every abomination to the YAHWEH, which he hateth, have they done unto their gods; for even their sons and their daughters they have burnt in the fire to their gods. [\[Ps 106:37\]](#);

32 What thing soever I command you, observe to do it: you shall not add thereto, nor diminish from it. [Deut 4:2](#); [Prov 30:6](#); [Rev 22:18](#); [\[Rev 22:19\]](#);

Enticers to idolatry

1 If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth you a sign or a wonder, [[Matt 24:24](#)]; [[Mark 13:22](#)]; [[2Thess 2:9](#)]; [[2Pet 2:1](#)]; [[Rev 13:14](#)]; [[Rev 19:20](#)];

2 And the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spoke unto you, saying, Let us go after other gods, which you have not known, and let us serve them;

3 You shall not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams: for the YAHWEH your Elohim proveth you, to know whether you love the YAHWEH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your being. [[Matt 7:15](#)];

4 You shall walk after the YAHWEH your Elohim, and fear him, and keep his commandments, and obey his voice, and you shall serve him, and cleave unto him. [Deut 10:20](#);

5 And that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams, shall be put to death; because he has spoken to turn *you* away from the YAHWEH your Elohim, which brought you out of the land of Egypt, and redeemed you out of the house of bondage, to thrust you out of the way which the YAHWEH thy Elohim commanded you to walk in. So shall you put the evil away from the midst of you. [Deut 18:20](#); [Jer 14:15](#); [Jer 28:16](#); [[1Cor 5:13](#)];

how near soever unto you

6 If thy brother, the son of thy mother, or thy son, or thy daughter, or the wife of thy bosom, or thy friend, which *is* as thine own being, entice you secretly, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which you have not known, you, nor thy fathers; [Deut 17:2](#); [[Matt 18:8](#)]; [[Mark 9:43](#)]; [[Luke 14:26](#)];

7 *Namely*, of the gods of the people which *are* round about you, nigh unto you, or far off from you, from the *one* end of the earth even unto the *other* end of the earth;

8 You shall not consent unto him, nor hearken unto him; neither shall thine eye pity him, neither shall you spare, neither shall you conceal him:

are to be stoned to death

9 But you shall surely kill him; thine hand shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterwards the hand of all the people. [Deut 17:7](#); [[2Chr 15:13](#)]; [[2Chr 23:17](#)];

10 And you shall stone him with stones, that he die; because he has sought to thrust you away from the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which brought you out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.

11 And all Israel shall hear, and fear, and shall do no more any such wickedness as this is among you. [Deut 17:13](#);

Idolatrous cities are not to be spared

12 If you shall hear *say* in one of thy cities, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has given you to dwell there, saying,

13 *Certain* men, the children of Belial, are gone out from among you, and have withdrawn the inhabitants of their city, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which you have not known;

14 Then shall you enquire, and make search, and ask diligently; and, behold, *if it be* truth, *and* the thing certain, *that* such abomination is wrought among you;

15 You shall surely smite the inhabitants of that city with the edge of the sword, destroying it utterly, and all that *is* therein, and the cattle thereof, with the edge of the sword.

16 And you shall gather all the spoil of it into the midst of the street thereof, and shall burn with fire the city, and all the spoil thereof every whit, for the YAHWEH thy Elohim: and it shall be a heap for ever; it shall not be built again.

17 And there shall cleave nought of the cursed thing to thine hand: that the YAHWEH may turn from the fierceness of his anger, and show you mercy, and have compassion upon you, and multiply you, as he has sworn unto thy fathers;

18 When you shall hearken to the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to keep all his commandments which I command you this day, to do *that which is* right in the eyes of the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

Elohim's children are not to disfigure themselves in mourning

1 You *are* the children of the YAHWEH your Elohim: you shall not cut yourselves, nor make any baldness between your eyes for the dead. [Lev 19:27-28](#); [Lev 21:5](#); [\[Lev 19:28\]](#); [\[Jer 16:6\]](#); [\[Jer 47:5\]](#); [\[1Thess 4:13\]](#);

2 For you are a holy people unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and the YAHWEH has chosen you to be a peculiar people unto himself, above all the nations that *are* upon the earth. [Deut 7:6](#); [Deut 26:18](#); [\[Exod 19:5\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:53\]](#); [\[Isa 41:8\]](#); [\[Eph 1:14\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:9\]](#);

What may, and what may not be eaten

3 You shall not eat any abominable thing.

of beasts

4 These *are* the beasts which you shall eat: the ox, the sheep, and the goat, [Lev 11:2](#); [\[Lev 20:25\]](#);

5 The hart, and the roebuck, and the fallow deer, and the wild goat, and the pygarg, and the wild ox, and the chamois.

6 And every beast that parteth the hoof, and cleaveth the cleft into two claws, *and* cheweth the cud among the beasts, that you shall eat.

7 Nevertheless these you shall not eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that divide the cloven hoof; *as* the camel, and the hare, and the coney: for they chew the cud, but divide not the hoof; *therefore* they *are* unclean unto you. [\[Acts 10:14\]](#); [\[Acts 11:8\]](#);

8 And the swine, because it divideth the hoof, yet cheweth not the cud, it *is* unclean unto you: you shall not eat of their flesh, nor touch their dead carcase.

of fishes

9 These you shall eat of all that *are* in the waters: all that have fins and scales shall you eat:

10 And whatsoever has not fins and scales you may not eat; it *is* unclean unto you.

of fowls

11 *Of* all clean birds you shall eat.

12 But these *are they* of which you shall not eat: the eagle, and the vulture, and the osprey,

13 And the hawk, and the falcon, and the kite after its kind,

14 And every raven after its kind,

15 And the owl, and the night hawk, and the cuckow, and the hawk after its kind,

16 The little owl, and the great owl, and the swan,

17 And the pelican, and the gier eagle, and the cormorant,

18 And the stork, and the heron after its kind, and the lapwing, and the bat.

19 And every creeping thing that flies *is* unclean unto you: they shall not be eaten.

20 *But of* all clean fowls you may eat.

That which dieth of itself may not be eaten

21 You shall not eat *of* any thing that dieth of itself: you shall give it unto the stranger that *is* in thy gates, that he may eat it; or you may sell it unto an alien: for you are a holy people unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim. you shall not seethe a kid in his mother's milk. [Exod 23:19](#); [Exod 34:26](#); [\[Deut 7:6\]](#);

Tithes of divine service

22 You shall truly tithe all the increase of thy seed, that the field bringeth forth year by year.

Tithes and firstlings to be eaten before the Lord

23 And you shall eat before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, in the place which he shall choose to place his name there, the tithe of thy corn, of thy wine, and of thine oil, and the firstlings of thy herds and of thy flocks; that you may learn to fear the YAHWEH thy Elohim always. [Deut 12:17-18](#);

24 And if the way be too long for you, so that you are not able to carry it; *or* if the place be too far from you, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose to set his name there, when the YAHWEH thy Elohim has blessed you:

25 Then shall you turn *it* into money, and bind up the money in thine hand, and shall go unto the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose:

26 And you shall bestow that money for whatsoever thy being lusteth after, for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for strong drink, or for whatsoever thy being desireth: and you shall eat there before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and you shall rejoice, you, and thine household, [Matt 21:12](#);

27 And the Levite that *is* within thy gates; you shall not forsake him; for he has no part nor inheritance with you. [Num 18:20](#); [Num 18:24](#); [Deut 10:9](#); [Deut 12:12](#); [Deut 18:1-2](#); [Deut 26:12](#); [[Deut 26:13](#)];

The third year's tithe of alms and charity

28 At the end of three years you shall bring forth all the tithe of thine increase the same year, and shall lay *it* up within thy gates:

29 And the Levite, (because he has no part nor inheritance with you,) and the stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, which *are* within thy gates, shall come, and shall eat and be satisfied; that the YAHWEH thy Elohim may bless you in all the work of thine hand which you do.

The seventh year a year of release for the poor

- 1** At the end of *every* seven years you shall make a release. [Exod 21:2](#); [Jer 34:14](#);
- 2** And this *is* the manner of the release: Every creditor that lendeth *ought* unto his neighbour shall release *it*; he shall not exact *it* of his neighbour, or of his brother; because it is called the YAHWEH'S release.
- 3** Of a foreigner you may exact *it again*: but *that* which is thine with thy brother thine hand shall release;
- 4** Save when there shall be no poor among you; for the YAHWEH shall greatly bless you in the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you *for* an inheritance to possess it: [\[Acts 2:44\]](#);
- 5** Only if you carefully hearken unto the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to observe to do all these commandments which I command you this day.
- 6** For the YAHWEH thy Elohim blesseth you, as he promised you: and you shall lend unto many nations, but you shall not borrow; and you shall reign over many nations, but they shall not reign over you. [Deut 28:12](#);

It must be no let of lending or giving

- 7** If there be among you a poor man of one of thy brethren within any of thy gates in thy land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, you shall not harden thine heart, nor shut thine hand from thy poor brother: [\[Prov 28:27\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:7\]](#); [\[Luke 6:30\]](#); [\[Rom 12:8\]](#); [\[2Cor 9:7\]](#); [\[1John 3:17\]](#);
- 8** But you shall open thine hand wide unto him, and shall surely lend him sufficient for his need, *in that* which he wanteth. [\[Matt 5:42\]](#); [\[Luke 6:34\]](#);
- 9** Beware that there be not a thought in thy wicked heart, saying, The seventh year, the year of release, is at hand; and thine eye be evil against thy poor brother, and you givest him nought; and he cry unto the YAHWEH against you, and it be sin unto you.
- 10** You shall surely give him, and thine heart shall not be grieved when you givest unto him: because that for this thing the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall bless you in all thy works, and in all that you puttest thine hand unto. [\[Matt 5:42\]](#); [\[Luke 6:35\]](#); [\[Prov 28:27\]](#);
- 11** For the poor shall never cease out of the land: therefore I command you, saying, you shall open thine hand wide unto thy brother, to thy poor, and to thy needy, in thy land. [\[Matt 26:11\]](#); [\[John 12:8\]](#); [\[Mark 14:7\]](#);

An Hebrew servant, except he will not depart, must in the seventh year go forth free and well furnished

- 12** *And* if thy brother, an Hebrew man, or an Hebrew woman, be sold unto you, and serve you six years; then in the seventh year you shall let him go free from you. [Exod 21:2](#); [Jer 34:14](#); [\[Lev 25:39\]](#);
- 13** And when you sendest him out free from you, you shall not let him go away empty:
- 14** You shall furnish him liberally out of thy flock, and out of thy floor, and out of thy winepress: *of that* wherewith the YAHWEH thy Elohim has blessed you you shall give unto him.
- 15** And you shall remember that you were a bondman in the land of Egypt, and the YAHWEH thy Elohim redeemed you: therefore I command you this thing to day.
- 16** And it shall be, if he say unto you, I will not go away from you; because he loveth you and thine house, because he is well with you; [\[Exod 21:5\]](#);
- 17** Then you shall take an aul, and thrust *it* through his ear unto the door, and he shall be thy servant for ever. And also unto thy maidservant you shall do likewise. [Exod 21:6](#);
- 18** It shall not seem hard unto you, when you sendest him away free from you; for he has been worth a double hired servant *to you*, in serving you six years: and the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall bless you in all that you do.

All firstling males of the cattle are to be sanctified unto the Lord

19 All the firstling males that come of thy herd and of thy flock you shall sanctify unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim: you shall do no work with the firstling of thy bullock, nor shear the firstling of thy sheep. [Exod 13:2](#); [Exod 22:29](#); [Exod 34:19](#); [Lev 27:26](#); [Num 3:13](#);

20 You shall eat *it* before the YAHWEH thy Elohim year by year in the place which the YAHWEH shall choose, you and thy household.

21 And if there be *any* blemish therein, *as if it be* lame, or blind, *or have* any ill blemish, you shall not sacrifice it unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [Lev 22:20](#); [Deut 17:1](#); [[Lev 22:21](#)];

22 You shall eat it within thy gates: the unclean and the clean *person shall eat it* alike, as the roebuck, and as the hart.

23 Only you shall not eat the blood thereof; you shall pour it upon the ground as water. [Deut 12:16](#); [Deut 12:23](#);

The feast of the passover

- 1** Observe the month of Abib, and keep the passover unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim: for in the month of Abib the YAHWEH thy Elohim brought you forth out of Egypt by night. [Exod 12:2](#); [Lev 23:5](#); [Num 9:1](#); [Num 28:16](#); [\[Ezek 45:21\]](#); [\[Luke 2:41\]](#); [\[John 5:1\]](#); [\[John 6:4\]](#);
- 2** You shall therefore sacrifice the passover unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, of the flock and the herd, in the place which the YAHWEH shall choose to place his name there. [\[Num 9:2\]](#); [\[2Kgs 23:21\]](#); [\[Ezra 6:19\]](#);
- 3** You shall eat no leavened bread with it; seven days shall you eat unleavened bread therewith, *even* the bread of affliction; for you camest forth out of the land of Egypt in haste: that you may remember the day when you camest forth out of the land of Egypt all the days of thy life. [Exod 12:19](#); [Exod 34:18](#); [\[Exod 12:20\]](#); [\[1Cor 5:8\]](#);
- 4** And there shall be no leavened bread seen with you in all thy coast seven days; neither shall there *any thing* of the flesh, which you sacrificedst the first day at even, remain all night until the morning. [Exod 12:10](#);
- 5** You may not sacrifice the passover within any of thy gates, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you:
- 6** But at the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose to place his name in, there you shall sacrifice the passover at even, at the going down of the sun, at the time that you camest forth out of Egypt.
- 7** And you shall roast and eat *it* in the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose: and you shall turn in the morning, and go unto thy tents.
- 8** Six days you shall eat unleavened bread: and on the seventh day *shall be* a solemn assembly to the YAHWEH thy Elohim: you shall do no work *therein*.

of weeks

- 9** Seven weeks shall you number unto you: begin to number the seven weeks from *such time as* you beginnest *to put* the sickle to the corn. [Exod 23:16](#); [Lev 23:15](#); [Num 28:26](#); [\[Acts 2:1\]](#);
- 10** And you shall keep the feast of weeks unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim with a tribute of a freewill offering of thine hand, which you shall give *unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim*, according as the YAHWEH thy Elohim has blessed you:
- 11** And you shall rejoice before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, you, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite that *is* within thy gates, and the stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, that *are* among you, in the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has chosen to place his name there.
- 12** And you shall remember that you were a bondman in Egypt: and you shall observe and do these statutes.

of tabernacles

- 13** You shall observe the feast of tabernacles seven days, after that you have gathered in thy grain and thy wine: [Exod 23:16](#); [Lev 23:34](#); [\[Neh 8:14\]](#); [\[Ezek 45:25\]](#);
- 14** And you shall rejoice in thy feast, you, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite, the stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, that *are* within thy gates.
- 15** Seven days shall you keep a solemn feast unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim in the place which the YAHWEH shall choose: because the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall bless you in all thine increase, and in all the works of thine hands, therefore you shall surely rejoice. [\[Lev 23:34\]](#);

Every male must offer, as he is able, at these three feasts

- 16** Three times in a year shall all thy males appear before the YAHWEH thy Elohim in the place which he shall choose; in the feast of unleavened bread, and in the feast of weeks, and in the feast of tabernacles: and they shall not appear before the YAHWEH empty: [Exod 23:17](#); [Exod 34:23](#); [Exod 23:15](#); [\[Exod 34:20\]](#); [\[1Sam 1:3\]](#); [\[2Chr 8:13\]](#);

17 Every man *shall give* as he is able, according to the blessing of the YAHWEH thy Elohim which he has given you.

Of judges and justice

18 Judges and officers shall you make you in all thy gates, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, throughout thy tribes: and they shall judge the people with just judgment.

19 You shall not wrest judgment; you shall not respect persons, neither take a gift: for a gift blinds the eyes of the wise, and pervert the words of the righteous. [Lev 19:15](#); [Deut 1:17](#); [Exod 23:8](#); [\[1Sam 8:3\]](#); [\[Prov 18:5\]](#); [\[Prov 24:23\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:10\]](#); [\[Heb 13:5\]](#); [\[Jas 2:1\]](#);

20 That which is altogether just shall you follow, that you may live, and inherit the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you.

Groves and images are forbidden

21 You shall not plant you a grove of any trees near unto the altar of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which you shall make you.

22 Neither shall you set you up *any* image; which the YAHWEH thy Elohim hateth. [\[Lev 26:1\]](#);

The things sacrificed must be sound

1 **you** shall not sacrifice unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim *any* bullock, or sheep, wherein is blemish, *or* any evilfavouredness: for that *is* an abomination unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [Lev 22:20](#); [Deut 15:21](#); [[Lev 22:21](#)];

Idolaters must be slain

2 If there be found among you, within any of thy gates which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, man or woman, that has wrought wickedness in the sight of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, in transgressing his covenant, [Deut 13:6](#); [[Exod 22:20](#)];

3 And has gone and served other gods, and worshipped them, either the sun, or moon, or any of the host of heaven, which I have not commanded;

4 And it be told you, and you have heard *of it*, and enquired diligently, and, behold, *it be* true, *and* the thing certain, *that* such abomination is wrought in Israel: [[Acts 25:16](#)]; [[1Tim 5:21](#)];

5 Then shall you bring forth that man or that woman, which have committed that wicked thing, unto thy gates, *even* that man or that woman, and shall stone them with stones, till they die.

6 At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, shall he that is worthy of death be put to death; *but* at the mouth of one witness he shall not be put to death. [Num 35:30](#); [Deut 19:15](#); [Matt 18:16](#); [2Cor 13:1](#); [Heb 10:28](#); [[John 8:17](#)];

7 The hands of the witnesses shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterward the hands of all the people. So you shall put the evil away from among you. [Deut 13:9](#); [[John 8:7](#)];

Hard controversies are to be determined by the priests and judges

8 If there arise a matter too hard for you in judgment, between blood and blood, between plea and plea, and between stroke and stroke, *being* matters of controversy within thy gates: then shall you arise, and get you up into the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose; [2Chr 19:10](#); [Mal 2:7](#); [[John 7:51](#)];

9 And you shall come unto the priests the Levites, and unto the judge that shall be in those days, and enquire; and they shall show you the sentence of judgment: [[Acts 23:3](#)];

10 And you shall do according to the sentence, which they of that place which the YAHWEH shall choose shall show you; and you shall observe to do according to all that they inform you:

11 According to the sentence of the law which they shall teach you, and according to the judgment which they shall tell you, you shall do: you shall not decline from the sentence which they shall show you, *to* the right hand, nor *to* the left.

The contemner of that determination must die

12 And the man that will do presumptuously, and will not hearken unto the priest that standeth to minister there before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, or unto the judge, even that man shall die: and you shall put away the evil from Israel.

13 And all the people shall hear, and fear, and do no more presumptuously. [[Deut 13:11](#)];

The election

14 When you are come unto the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, and shall possess it, and shall dwell therein, and shall say, I will set a king over me, like as all the nations that *are* about me;

15 You shall in any wise set *him* king over you, whom the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose: *one* from among thy brethren shall you set king over you: you may not set a stranger over you, which *is* not thy brother.

and duty of a king

16 But he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he should multiply horses: forasmuch as the YAHWEH has said unto you, you shall henceforth return no more that way.

17 Neither shall he multiply wives to himself, that his heart turn not away: neither shall he greatly multiply to himself silver and gold. [\[1Kgs 11:1\]](#); [\[Prov 31:3\]](#);

18 And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this law in a book out of *that which is* before the priests the Levites: [\[1Kgs 2:3\]](#);

19 And it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life: that he may learn to fear the YAHWEH his Elohim, to keep all the words of this law and these statutes, to do them: [\[Ps 1:2\]](#); [\[Matt 23:3\]](#);

20 That his heart be not lifted up above his brethren, and that he turn not aside from the commandment, *to* the right hand, or *to* the left: to the end that he may prolong *his* days in his kingdom, he, and his children, in the midst of Israel.

The YAHWEH is the priests and Levites' inheritance

1 The priests the Levites, *and* all the tribe of Levi, shall have no part nor inheritance with Israel: they shall eat the offerings of the YAHWEH made by fire, and his inheritance. [Num 18:20](#); [Deut 10:9](#); [2Cor 9:13](#); [\[Deut 12:12\]](#); [\[Deut 14:27\]](#); [\[Ezek 44:28\]](#); [\[1Cor 9:13\]](#); [\[Heb 7:5\]](#);

2 Therefore shall they have no inheritance among their brethren: the YAHWEH *is* their inheritance, as he has said unto them. [Num 18:20](#); [Deut 10:9](#); [Ezek 44:28](#); [\[Josh 13:33\]](#);

The priests' due

3 And this shall be the priest's due from the people, from them that offer a sacrifice, whether *it be* ox or sheep; and they shall give unto the priest the shoulder, and the two cheeks, and the maw.

4 The firstfruit *also* of thy corn, of thy wine, and of thine oil, and the first of the fleece of thy sheep, shall you give him. [\[Neh 10:37\]](#);

5 For the YAHWEH thy Elohim has chosen him out of all thy tribes, to stand to minister in the name of the YAHWEH, him and his sons for ever.

The Levites' portion

6 And if a Levite come from any of thy gates out of all Israel, where he sojourned, and come with all the desire of his mind unto the place which the YAHWEH shall choose;

7 Then he shall minister in the name of the YAHWEH his Elohim, as all his brethren the Levites *do*, which stand there before the YAHWEH.

8 They shall have like portions to eat, beside that which cometh of the sale of his patrimony.

The abominations of the nations are to be avoided

9 When you are come into the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, you shall not learn to do after the abominations of those nations.

10 There shall not be found among you *any one* that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, *or* that useth divination, *or* an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, [Lev 18:21](#); [Lev 20:27](#); [1Sam 28:7](#); [Isa 8:19](#); [\[Exod 22:18\]](#); [\[2Kgs 17:17\]](#); [\[2Chr 28:3\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:6\]](#);

11 Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. [\[2Kgs 23:24\]](#); [\[Isa 8:19\]](#);

12 For all that do these things *are* an abomination unto the YAHWEH: and because of these abominations the YAHWEH thy Elohim drives them out from before you.

13 You shall be perfect with the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

14 For these nations, which you shall possess, hearkened unto observers of times, and unto diviners: but as for you, the YAHWEH thy Elohim has not suffered you so *to do*.

Yahushua the Prophet is to be heard

15 The YAHWEH thy Elohim will raise up unto you a Prophet from the midst of you, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him you shall hearken; [John 1:45](#); [Acts 3:22](#); [Acts 7:37](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#); [\[Heb 3:5\]](#);

16 According to all that you desiredst of the YAHWEH thy Elohim in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of the YAHWEH my Elohim, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not. [Exod 20:19](#); [Deut 5:25](#); [Heb 12:19](#);

17 And the YAHWEH said unto me, They have well *spoken that* which they have spoken.

18 I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto you, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him. [John 4:25](#); [\[John 1:21\]](#); [\[John 1:25\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[John 5:39\]](#); [\[John 5:46\]](#); [\[John 12:49\]](#); [\[Acts 3:22\]](#); [\[Acts 7:37\]](#); [\[Heb 3:5\]](#);

19 And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require *it* of him. [\[Matt 17:5\]](#); [\[Mark 9:7\]](#); [\[Luke 9:35\]](#);

The presumptuous prophet is to die

20 But the prophet, which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die. [Deut 13:5](#); [Jer 14:14](#); [\[Jer 23:30\]](#);

21 And if you say in thine heart, How shall we know the word which the YAHWEH has not spoken?

22 When a prophet speaketh in the name of the YAHWEH, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that *is* the thing which the YAHWEH has not spoken, *but* the prophet has spoken it presumptuously: you shall not be afraid of him.

The cities of refuge

- 1** When the YAHWEH thy Elohim has cut off the nations, whose land the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, and you succeedest them, and dwellest in their cities, and in their houses; [\[Josh 20:2\]](#);
- 2** You shall separate three cities for you in the midst of thy land, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you to possess it. [Exod 21:13](#); [Num 35:9](#); [Josh 20:2](#); [\[Num 35:10\]](#);
- 3** You shall prepare you a way, and divide the coasts of thy land, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you to inherit, into three parts, that every slayer may flee thither.

The privilege thereof for the manslayer

- 4** And this *is* the case of the slayer, which shall flee thither, that he may live: Whoso killeth his neighbour ignorantly, whom he hated not in time past; [Exod 21:13](#); [Deut 4:41-42](#); [\[Josh 20:4\]](#);
- 5** As when a man goes into the woods with his neighbour to hew wood, and his hand fetcheth a stroke with the axe to cut down the tree, and the head slippeth from the helve, and lighteth upon his neighbour, that he die; he shall flee unto one of those cities, and live: [\[2Cor 13:1\]](#);
- 6** Lest the avenger of the blood pursue the slayer, while his heart is hot, and overtake him, because the way is long, and slay him; whereas he *was* not worthy of death, inasmuch as he hated him not in time past.
- 7** Wherefore I command you, saying, you shall separate three cities for you.
- 8** And if the YAHWEH thy Elohim enlarge thy coast, as he has sworn unto thy fathers, and give you all the land which he promised to give unto thy fathers; [Gen 28:13](#); [Deut 12:20](#);
- 9** If you shall keep all these commandments to do them, which I command you this day, to love the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and to walk ever in his ways; then shall you add three cities more for you, beside these three: [Josh 20:7](#);
- 10** That innocent blood be not shed in thy land, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you *for* an inheritance, and *so* blood be upon you.
- 11** But if any man hate his neighbour, and lie in wait for him, and rise up against him, and smite him mortally that he die, and fleeth into one of these cities: [Gen 9:6](#); [Exod 21:12](#); [Exod 21:14](#); [Lev 24:17](#); [Num 35:16](#); [\[Num 35:20\]](#);
- 12** Then the elders of his city shall send and fetch him thence, and deliver him into the hand of the avenger of blood, that he may die.
- 13** Thine eye shall not pity him, but you shall put away *the guilt of* innocent blood from Israel, that it may go well with you.

The land-mark is not to be removed

- 14** You shall not remove thy neighbour's landmark, which they of old time have set in thine inheritance, which you shall inherit in the land that the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you to possess it. [Prov 22:28](#); [\[Job 24:2\]](#);

Two witnesses at the least are required

- 15** One witness shall not rise up against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin, in any sin that he sinneth: at the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, shall the matter be established. [Num 35:30](#); [Deut 17:6](#); [Matt 18:16](#); [John 8:17](#); [2Cor 13:1](#); [Heb 10:28](#); [\[John 7:51\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:19\]](#);

The punishment of a false witness

- 16** If a false witness rise up against any man to testify against him *that which is* wrong;
- 17** Then both the men, between whom the controversy *is*, shall stand before the YAHWEH, before the priests and the judges, which shall be in those days;

18 And the judges shall make diligent inquisition: and, behold, *if* the witness *be* a false witness, *and* has testified falsely against his brother; [[1Tim 5:21](#)];

19 Then shall you do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother: so shall you put the evil away from among you. [Prov 19:5](#);

20 And those which remain shall hear, and fear, and shall henceforth commit no more any such evil among you.

21 And thine eye shall not pity; *but* life *shall go* for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot. [Exod 21:23](#); [Lev 24:20](#); [Matt 5:38](#); [[Exod 21:24](#)];

The priest's exhortation to encourage the people to battle

1 When you go out to battle against thine enemies, and seest horses, and chariots, *and* a people more than you, be not afraid of them: for the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* with you, which brought you up out of the land of Egypt.

2 And it shall be, when you are come nigh unto the battle, that the priest shall approach and speak unto the people,

3 And shall say unto them, Hear, O Israel, you approach this day unto battle against your enemies: let not your hearts faint, fear not, and do not tremble, neither be you terrified because of them; [Num 14:9]; [Neh 4:14];

4 For the YAHWEH your Elohim *is* he that goes with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.

The officers' proclamation of who are to be dismissed from the war

5 And the officers shall speak unto the people, saying, What man *is there* that has built a new house, and has not dedicated it? let him go and return to his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man dedicate it.

6 And what man *is he* that has planted a vineyard, and has not yet eaten of it? let him *also* go and return unto his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man eat of it. [Lev 19:23-25];

7 And what man *is there* that has betrothed a wife, and has not taken her? let him go and return unto his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man take her. [Deut 24:5];

8 And the officers shall speak further unto the people, and they shall say, What man *is there that is* fearful and fainthearted? let him go and return unto his house, lest his brethren's heart faint as well as his heart. [Judg 7:3]; [Nah 2:10];

9 And it shall be, when the officers have made an end of speaking unto the people, that they shall make captains of the armies to lead the people.

How to use the cities that accept or refuse the proclamation of peace

10 When you come nigh unto a city to fight against it, then proclaim peace unto it.

11 And it shall be, if it make you answer of peace, and open unto you, then it shall be, *that* all the people *that is* found therein shall be tributaries unto you, and they shall serve you.

12 And if it will make no peace with you, but will make war against you, then you shall besiege it:

13 And when the YAHWEH thy Elohim has delivered it into thine hands, you shall smite every male thereof with the edge of the sword:

14 But the women, and the little ones, and the cattle, and all that is in the city, *even* all the spoil thereof, shall you take unto thyself; and you shall eat the spoil of thine enemies, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has given you. [Num 31:11]; [Num 31:53]; [Josh 8:2];

15 Thus shall you do unto all the cities *which are* very far off from you, which *are* not of the cities of these nations.

What cities must be devoted

16 But of the cities of these people, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim gives you *for* an inheritance, you shall save alive nothing that breatheth: [Num 33:52]; [Deut 7:1-2]; [Josh 10:40]; [Josh 11:12]; [Josh 11:15];

17 But you shall utterly destroy them; *namely*, the Hittites, and the Amorites, the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites; as the YAHWEH thy Elohim has commanded you:

18 That they teach you not to do after all their abominations, which they have done unto their gods; so should you sin against the YAHWEH your Elohim.

Trees of man's meat must not be destroyed in the siege

19 When you shall besiege a city a long time, in making war against it to take it, you shall not destroy the trees thereof by forcing an axe against them: for you may eat of them, and you shall not cut them down (for the tree of the field *is* man's *life*) to employ *them* in the siege:

20 Only the trees which you knowest that they *be* not trees for meat, you shall destroy and cut them down; and you shall build bulwarks against the city that maketh war with you, until it be subdued.

The expiation of an uncertain murder

- 1** If *one* be found slain in the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you to possess it, lying in the field, *and* it be not known who has slain him:
- 2** Then thy elders and thy judges shall come forth, and they shall measure unto the cities which *are* round about him that is slain:
- 3** And it shall be, *that* the city *which is* next unto the slain man, even the elders of that city shall take a heifer, which has not been wrought with, *and* which has not drawn in the yoke;
- 4** And the elders of that city shall bring down the heifer unto a rough valley, which is neither eared nor sown, and shall strike off the heifer's neck there in the valley:
- 5** And the priests the sons of Levi shall come near; for them the YAHWEH thy Elohim has chosen to minister unto him, and to bless in the name of the YAHWEH; and by their word shall every controversy and every stroke be *tried*:
- 6** And all the elders of that city, *that are* next unto the slain *man*, shall wash their hands over the heifer that is beheaded in the valley:
- 7** And they shall answer and say, Our hands have not shed this blood, neither have our eyes seen *it*.
- 8** Be merciful, O YAHWEH, unto thy people Israel, whom you have redeemed, and lay not innocent blood unto thy people of Israel's charge. And the blood shall be forgiven them.
- 9** So shall you put away the *guilt of* innocent blood from among you, when you shall do *that which is* right in the sight of the YAHWEH.

The usage of a captive taken to wife

- 10** When you go forth to war against thine enemies, and the YAHWEH thy Elohim has delivered them into thine hands, and you have taken them captive,
- 11** And seest among the captives a beautiful woman, and have a desire unto her, that you wouldest have her to thy wife; [[Hos 3:3](#)];
- 12** Then you shall bring her home to thine house; and she shall shave her head, and pare her nails;
- 13** And she shall put the raiment of her captivity from off her, and shall remain in thine house, and bewail her father and her mother a full month: and after that you shall go in unto her, and be her husband, and she shall be thy wife.
- 14** And it shall be, if you have no delight in her, then you shall let her go whither she will; but you shall not sell her at all for money, you shall not make merchandise of her, because you have humbled her.

The first-born is not to be disinherited upon private affection

- 15** If a man have two wives, one beloved, and another hated, and they have born him children, *both* the beloved and the hated; and *if* the firstborn son be hers that was hated:
- 16** Then it shall be, when he maketh his sons to inherit *that* which he has, *that* he may not make the son of the beloved firstborn before the son of the hated, *which is indeed* the firstborn:
- 17** But he shall acknowledge the son of the hated *for* the firstborn, by giving him a double portion of all that he has: for he *is* the beginning of his strength; the right of the firstborn *is* his. [1Chr 5:1](#); [Gen 49:3](#);

A rebellious son is to be stoned to death

- 18** If a man have a stubborn and rebellious son, which will not obey the voice of his father, or the voice of his mother, and *that*, when they have chastened him, will not hearken unto them:

19 Then shall his father and his mother lay hold on him, and bring him out unto the elders of his city, and unto the gate of his place;

20 And they shall say unto the elders of his city, This our son *is* stubborn and rebellious, he will not obey our voice; *he is* a glutton, and a drunkard.

21 And all the men of his city shall stone him with stones, that he die: so shall you put evil away from among you; and all Israel shall hear, and fear.

The malefactor must not hang all night on a tree

22 And if a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be to be put to death, and you hang him on a tree: [\[Josh 8:29\]](#);

23 His body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but you shall in any wise bury him that day; (for he that is hanged *is* accursed of Elohim;) that thy land be not defiled, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you *for* an inheritance. [Gal 3:13](#); [\[Josh 10:26\]](#); [\[Acts 5:30\]](#);

Of humanity towards brethren

- 1** You shall not see thy brother's ox or his sheep go astray, and hide thyself from them: you shall in any case bring them again unto thy brother. [Exod 23:4](#);
- 2** And if thy brother *be* not nigh unto you, or if you know him not, then you shall bring it unto thine own house, and it shall be with you until thy brother seek after it, and you shall restore it to him again.
- 3** In like manner shall you do with his ass; and so shall you do with his raiment; and with all lost thing of thy brother's, which he has lost, and you have found, shall you do likewise: you may not hide thyself.
- 4** You shall not see thy brother's ass or his ox fall down by the way, and hide thyself from them: you shall surely help him to lift *them* up again. [\[Exod 23:5\]](#); [\[Matt 12:11\]](#); [\[Luke 13:15\]](#); [\[Luke 14:5\]](#);

The sex is to be distinguished by apparel

- 5** The woman shall not wear that which pertaineth unto a man, neither shall a man put on a woman's garment: for all that do so *are* abomination unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [\[1Cor 11:6\]](#);

The dam is not to be taken with her young ones

- 6** If a bird's nest chance to be before you in the way in any tree, or on the ground, *whether they be* young ones, or eggs, and the dam sitting upon the young, or upon the eggs, you shall not take the dam with the young:
- 7** *But* you shall in any wise let the dam go, and take the young to you; that it may be well with you, and *that* you may prolong *thy* days.

The house must have battlements

- 8** When you buildest a new house, then you shall make a battlement for thy roof, that you bring not blood upon thine house, if any man fall from thence.

Confusion is to be avoided

- 9** You shall not sow thy vineyard with different seeds: lest the fruit of thy seed which you have sown, and the fruit of thy vineyard, be defiled. [Lev 19:19](#);
- 10** You shall not plow with an ox and an ass together.
- 11** You shall not wear a garment of different sorts, *as* of woollen and linen together.

Fringes upon the vesture

- 12** You shall make you fringes upon the four quarters of thy vesture, wherewith you coverest *thyself*. [Num 15:38](#); [Matt 23:5](#);

The punishment of him that slanders his wife

- 13** If any man take a wife, and go in unto her, and hate her,
- 14** And give occasions of speech against her, and bring up an evil name upon her, and say, I took this woman, and when I came to her, I found her not a maid:
- 15** Then shall the father of the damsel, and her mother, take and bring forth *the tokens of* the damsel's virginity unto the elders of the city in the gate:
- 16** And the damsel's father shall say unto the elders, I gave my daughter unto this man to wife, and he hateth her;
- 17** And, lo, he has given occasions of speech *against her*, saying, I found not thy daughter a maid; and yet these *are the tokens of* my daughter's virginity. And they shall spread the cloth before the elders of the city.

18 And the elders of that city shall take that man and chastise him;

19 And they shall fine him a hundred *shekels* of silver, and give *them* unto the father of the damsel, because he has brought up an evil name upon a virgin of Israel: and she shall be his wife; he may not put her away all his days.

20 But if this thing be true, *and the tokens of* virginity be not found for the damsel:

21 Then they shall bring out the damsel to the door of her father's house, and the men of her city shall stone her with stones that she die: because she has wrought folly in Israel, to play the whore in her father's house: so shall you put evil away from among you.

Of adultery

22 If a man be found lying with a woman married to a husband, then they shall both of them die, *both* the man that lay with the woman, and the woman: so shall you put away evil from Israel. [Lev 20:10](#); [[John 8:5](#)];

of rape

23 If a damsel *that is* a virgin be betrothed unto a husband, and a man find her in the city, and lie with her;

24 Then you shall bring them both out unto the gate of that city, and you shall stone them with stones that they die; the damsel, because she cried not, *being* in the city; and the man, because he has humbled his neighbour's wife: so you shall put away evil from among you.

25 But if a man find a betrothed damsel in the field, and the man force her, and lie with her: then the man only that lay with her shall die:

26 But unto the damsel you shall do nothing; *there is* in the damsel no sin *worthy* of death: for as when a man riseth against his neighbour, and slays him, even so *is* this matter:

27 For he found her in the field, *and* the betrothed damsel cried, and *there was* none to save her.

of fornication

28 If a man find a damsel *that is* a virgin, which is not betrothed, and lay hold on her, and lie with her, and they be found;

29 Then the man that lay with her shall give unto the damsel's father fifty *shekels* of silver, and she shall be his wife; because he has humbled her, he may not put her away all his days. [Exod 22:16](#);

of incest

30 A man shall not take his father's wife, nor discover his father's skirt.

Who may or may not enter into the congregation

- 1** He that is wounded in the stones, or has his privy member cut off, shall not enter into the congregation of the YAHWEH.
- 2** A bastard shall not enter into the congregation of the YAHWEH; even to his tenth generation shall he not enter into the congregation of the YAHWEH.
- 3** An Ammonite or Moabite shall not enter into the congregation of the YAHWEH; even to their tenth generation shall they not enter into the congregation of the YAHWEH for ever: [Neh 13:1](#);
- 4** Because they met you not with bread and with water in the way, when you came forth out of Egypt; and because they hired against you Balaam the son of Beor of Pethor of Mesopotamia, to curse you. [Lev 22:3-5](#); [\[Josh 24:9\]](#);
- 5** Nevertheless the YAHWEH thy Elohim would not hearken unto Balaam; but the YAHWEH thy Elohim turned the curse into a blessing unto you, because the YAHWEH thy Elohim loved you.
- 6** You shall not seek their peace nor their prosperity all thy days for ever.
- 7** You shall not abhor an Edomite; for he *is* thy brother: you shall not abhor an Egyptian; because you were a stranger in his land. [\[Num 20:14\]](#);
- 8** The children that are begotten of them shall enter into the congregation of the YAHWEH in their third generation.

Uncleanness is to be avoided in the host

- 9** When the host goes forth against thine enemies, then keep you from every wicked thing.
- 10** If there be among you any man, that is not clean by reason of uncleanness that chanceth him by night, then shall he go abroad out of the camp, he shall not come within the camp:
- 11** But it shall be, when evening cometh on, he shall wash *himself* with water: and when the sun is down, he shall come into the camp *again*.
- 12** You shall have a place also without the camp, whither you shall go forth abroad:
- 13** And you shall have a paddle upon thy weapon; and it shall be, when you will ease thyself abroad, you shall dig therewith, and shall turn back and cover that which cometh from you:
- 14** For the YAHWEH thy Elohim walketh in the midst of thy camp, to deliver you, and to give up thine enemies before you; therefore shall thy camp be holy: that he see no unclean thing in you, and turn away from you.

Of the fugitive servant

- 15** You shall not deliver unto his master the servant which is escaped from his master unto you:
- 16** He shall dwell with you, *even* among you, in that place which he shall choose in one of thy gates, where it liketh him best: you shall not oppress him.

Of filthiness

- 17** There shall be no whore of the daughters of Israel, nor a sodomite of the sons of Israel.

Of abominable sacrifices

- 18** You shall not bring the hire of a whore, or the price of a dog, into the house of the YAHWEH thy Elohim for any vow: for even both these *are* abomination unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

Of usury

- 19** You shall not lend upon usury to thy brother; usury of money, usury of victuals, usury of any thing that is lent upon usury: [Exod 22:25](#); [Lev 25:36](#); [Neh 5:2](#); [Luke 6:34-35](#);

20 Unto a stranger you may lend upon usury; but unto thy brother you shall not lend upon usury: that the YAHWEH thy Elohim may bless you in all that you settest thine hand to in the land whither you go to possess it.

Of vows

21 When you shall vow a vow unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, you shall not slack to pay it: for the YAHWEH thy Elohim will surely require it of you; and it would be sin in you. [Num 30:2](#); [\[Eccl 5:4\]](#); [\[Eccl 5:5\]](#);

22 But if you shall forbear to vow, it shall be no sin in you.

23 That which is gone out of thy lips you shall keep and perform; *even* a freewill offering, according as you have vowed unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which you have promised with thy mouth. [\[Ps 50:14\]](#);

Of trespasses

24 When you come into thy neighbour's vineyard, then you may eat grapes thy fill at thine own pleasure; but you shall not put *any* in thy vessel.

25 When you come into the standing grain of thy neighbour, then you may pluck the ears with thine hand; but you shall not move a sickle unto thy neighbour's standing corn. [Matt 12:1](#); [\[Mark 2:23\]](#); [\[Luke 6:1\]](#);

Of divorce

1 When a man has taken a wife, and married her, and it comes to pass that she finds no favor in his eyes, because he has found some uncleanness in her: then he may write her a bill of divorcement, and give *it* in her hand, and send her out of his house. [Matt 5:31](#); [Matt 19:7](#); [Mark 10:4](#);

2 And when she is departed out of his house, she may go and be another man's *wife*.

3 And *if* the latter husband hates her, and writes her a bill of divorcement, and gives *it* in her hand, and sends her out of his house; or if the latter husband dies, which took her *to be* his wife;

4 Her former husband, which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife, after that she is defiled; for that *is* abomination before the YAHWEH: and you shall not cause the land to sin, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim gives you *for* an inheritance.

A new married man goes not to war

5 When a man has taken a new wife, he shall not go out to war, neither shall he be charged with any business: *but* he shall be free at home one year, and shall cheer up his wife which he has taken. [Deut 20:7](#);

Of pledges

6 No man shall take the nether or the upper millstone to pledge: for he taketh *a man's* life to pledge. [\[Job 22:6\]](#);

7 If a man be found stealing any of his brethren of the children of Israel, and maketh merchandise of him, or selleth him; then that thief shall die; and you shall put evil away from among you. [Exod 21:16](#);

Of leprosy

8 Take heed in the plague of leprosy, that you observe diligently, and do according to all that the priests the Levites shall teach you: as I commanded them, *so* you shall observe to do. [Lev 13:2](#);

9 Remember what the YAHWEH thy Elohim did unto Miriam by the way, after that you were come forth out of Egypt. [Num 12:10](#);

Of pledges

10 When you dost lend thy brother any thing, you shall not go into his house to fetch his pledge. [\[Job 22:6\]](#);

11 You shall stand abroad, and the man to whom you dost lend shall bring out the pledge abroad unto you.

12 And if the man *be* poor, you shall not sleep with his pledge: [\[Exod 22:26\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:7\]](#);

13 In any case you shall deliver him the pledge again when the sun goes down, that he may sleep in his own raiment, and bless you: and it shall be righteousness unto you before the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [Exod 22:26](#);

The hire is to be given

14 You shall not oppress a hired servant *that is* poor and needy, *whether he be* of thy brethren, or of thy strangers that *are* in thy land within thy gates: [Lev 19:13](#); [Jas 5:4](#); [\[Jer 22:13\]](#); [\[Matt 10:10\]](#); [\[Luke 10:7\]](#); [\[1Cor 9:14\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:18\]](#);

15 At his day you shall give *him* his hire, neither shall the sun go down upon it; for he *is* poor, and setteth his heart upon it: lest he cry against you unto the YAHWEH, and it be sin unto you.

Of justice

16 The fathers shall not be put to death for the children, neither shall the children be put to death for the fathers: every man shall be put to death for his own sin. [2Kgs 14:6](#); [2Chr 25:4](#); [Jer 31:30](#); [Ezek 18:20](#); [\[Ezek 18:19\]](#);

17 You shall not pervert the judgment of the stranger, *nor* of the fatherless; nor take a widow's raiment to pledge: [Exod 22:21-22](#); [Prov 22:22](#); [Isa 1:23](#); [Jer 5:28](#); [Jer 22:3](#); [Ezek 22:29](#); [Zech 7:10](#); [[Exod 23:9](#)]; [[Mal 3:5](#)];

18 But you shall remember that you were a bondman in Egypt, and the YAHWEH thy Elohim redeemed you thence: therefore I command you to do this thing.

Of charity

19 When you cuttest down thine harvest in thy field, and have forgot a sheaf in the field, you shall not go again to fetch it: it shall be for the stranger, for the fatherless, and for the widow: that the YAHWEH thy Elohim may bless you in all the work of thine hands. [Lev 19:9](#); [Lev 23:22](#);

20 When you beat thine olive tree, you shall not go over the boughs again: it shall be for the stranger, for the fatherless, and for the widow.

21 When you gatherest the grapes of thy vineyard, you shall not glean *it* afterward: it shall be for the stranger, for the fatherless, and for the widow.

22 And you shall remember that you were a bondman in the land of Egypt: therefore I command you to do this thing.

Stripes must not exceed forty

1 If there be a controversy between men, and they come unto judgment, that *the judges* may judge them; then they shall justify the righteous, and condemn the wicked.

2 And it shall be, if the wicked man *be* worthy to be beaten, that the judge shall cause him to lie down, and to be beaten before his face, according to his fault, by a certain number.

3 Forty stripes he may give him, *and* not exceed: lest, *if* he should exceed, and beat him above these with many stripes, then thy brother should seem vile unto you. [2Cor 11:24](#);

The ox is not to be muzzled

4 You shall not muzzle the ox when he treadeth out *the corn*. [1Cor 9:9](#); [1Tim 5:18](#); [\[Job 24:11\]](#); [\[Prov 12:10\]](#); [\[Matt 10:10\]](#); [\[Luke 10:7\]](#); [\[1Cor 9:14\]](#);

Of raising seed unto a brother

5 If brethren dwell together, and one of them die, and have no child, the wife of the dead shall not marry without unto a stranger: her husband's brother shall go in unto her, and take her to him to wife, and perform the duty of a husband's brother unto her. [Matt 22:24](#); [Mark 12:19](#); [Luke 20:28](#);

6 And it shall be, *that* the firstborn which she beareth shall succeed in the name of his brother *which is* dead, that his name be not put out of Israel.

7 And if the man like not to take his brother's wife, then let his brother's wife go up to the gate unto the elders, and say, My husband's brother refuseth to raise up unto his brother a name in Israel, he will not perform the duty of my husband's brother. [Ruth 4:7](#);

8 Then the elders of his city shall call him, and speak unto him: and *if* he stand *to it*, and say, I like not to take her;

9 Then shall his brother's wife come unto him in the presence of the elders, and loose his shoe from off his foot, and spit in his face, and shall answer and say, So shall it be done unto that man that will not build up his brother's house.

10 And his name shall be called in Israel, The house of him that has his shoe loosed.

Of the immodest woman

11 When men strive together one with another, and the wife of the one draweth near for to deliver her husband out of the hand of him that smiteth him, and puts forth her hand, and taketh him by the secrets:

12 Then you shall cut off her hand, thine eye shall not pity *her*.

Of unjust weights and measures

13 You shall not have in thy bag different weights, a great and a small. [\[Prov 11:1\]](#); [\[Prov 16:11\]](#); [\[Prov 20:10\]](#);

14 You shall not have in thine house different measures, a great and a small.

15 *But* you shall have a perfect and just weight, a perfect and just measure shall you have: that thy days may be lengthened in the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you.

16 For all that do such things, *and* all that do unrighteously, *are* an abomination unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [Prov 11:1](#);

The memory of Amalek is to be blotted out

17 Remember what Amalek did unto you by the way, when you were come forth out of Egypt; [Exod 17:8](#); [\[Exod 17:14\]](#); [\[1Sam 15:2\]](#);

18 How he met you by the way, and smote the hindmost of you, *even* all *that were* feeble behind you, when you *were* faint and weary; and he feared not Elohim.

19 Therefore it shall be, when the YAHWEH thy Elohim has given you rest from all thine enemies round about, in the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you *for* an inheritance to possess it, *that* you shall blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven; you shall not forget *it*.

The confession of him that offers the basket of first-fruits

- 1** And it shall be, when you are come in unto the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you *for* an inheritance, and possessest it, and dwellest therein;
- 2** That you shall take of the first of all the fruit of the earth, which you shall bring of thy land that the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, and shall put *it* in a basket, and shall go unto the place which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall choose to place his name there. [Exod 23:19](#); [Exod 34:26](#); [Lev 2:14](#); [Lev 23:10](#); [Num 15:17](#); [\[Prov 3:9\]](#);
- 3** And you shall go unto the priest that shall be in those days, and say unto him, I profess this day unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, that I am come unto the country which the YAHWEH swore unto our fathers for to give us.
- 4** And the priest shall take the basket out of thine hand, and set it down before the altar of the YAHWEH thy Elohim.
- 5** And you shall speak and say before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, A Syrian ready to perish *was* my father, and he went down into Egypt, and sojourned there with a few, and became there a nation, great, mighty, and populous: [Gen 46:1](#); [\[Exod 1:7\]](#); [\[Josh 24:2\]](#);
- 6** And the Egyptians evil entreated us, and afflicted us, and laid upon us hard bondage:
- 7** And when we cried unto the YAHWEH Elohim of our fathers, the YAHWEH heard our voice, and looked on our affliction, and our labour, and our oppression: [Exod 2:23](#);
- 8** And the YAHWEH brought us forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand, and with an outstretched arm, and with great terribleness, and with signs, and with wonders:
- 9** And he has brought us into this place, and has given us this land, *even* a land that floweth with milk and honey.
- 10** And now, behold, I have brought the firstfruits of the land, which you, O YAHWEH, have given me. And you shall set it before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and worship before the YAHWEH thy Elohim:
- 11** And you shall rejoice in every good *thing* which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has given unto you, and unto thine house, you, and the Levite, and the stranger that *is* among you.

The prayer of him that gives his third year's tithes

- 12** When you have made an end of tithing all the tithes of thine increase the third year, *which is* the year of tithing, and have given *it* unto the Levite, the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, that they may eat within thy gates, and be filled; [Lev 27:30](#); [Num 18:24](#); [\[Deut 14:27\]](#);
- 13** Then you shall say before the YAHWEH thy Elohim, I have brought away the hallowed things out of *mine* house, and also have given them unto the Levite, and unto the stranger, to the fatherless, and to the widow, according to all thy commandments which you have commanded me: I have not transgressed thy commandments, neither have I forgotten *them*: [Deut 14:27](#);
- 14** I have not eaten thereof in my mourning, neither have I taken away *ought* thereof for *any* unclean *use*, nor given *ought* thereof for the dead: *but* I have hearkened to the voice of the YAHWEH my Elohim, *and* have done according to all that you have commanded me.
- 15** Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless thy people Israel, and the land which you have given us, as you swore unto our fathers, a land that floweth with milk and honey. [\[Isa 63:15\]](#);

The covenant between Elohim and his people

- 16** This day the YAHWEH thy Elohim has commanded you to do these statutes and judgments: you shall therefore keep and do them with all thine heart, and with all thy being.

17 You have avouched the YAHWEH this day to be thy Elohim, and to walk in his ways, and to keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his judgments, and to hearken unto his voice: [Gen 17:7](#);

18 And the YAHWEH has avouched you this day to be his peculiar people, as he has promised you, and that you should keep all his commandments; [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 7:6](#); [Deut 14:2](#); [\[Eph 1:14\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:9\]](#);

19 And to make you high above all nations which he has made, in praise, and in name, and in honour; and that you may be a holy people unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, as he has spoken. [Deut 4:7](#);

The people are commanded to write the law upon stones

1 And Moses with the elders of Israel commanded the people, saying, Keep all the commandments which I command you this day.

2 And it shall be on the day when you shall pass over Jordan unto the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, that you shall set you up great stones, and plaister them with plaister: [Josh 4:1](#);

3 And you shall write upon them all the words of this law, when you are passed over, that you may go in unto the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you, a land that floweth with milk and honey; as the YAHWEH Elohim of thy fathers has promised you. [\[Josh 8:32\]](#);

4 Therefore it shall be when you be gone over Jordan, *that* you shall set up these stones, which I command you this day, in mount Ebal, and you shall plaister them with plaister. [\[Josh 8:31\]](#);

and to build an altar of whole stones

5 And there shall you build an altar unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, an altar of stones: you shall not lift up *any* iron *tool* upon them. [Exod 20:25](#); [Josh 8:31](#);

6 You shall build the altar of the YAHWEH thy Elohim of whole stones: and you shall offer burnt offerings thereon unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim:

7 And you shall offer peace offerings, and shall eat there, and rejoice before the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

8 And you shall write upon the stones all the words of this law very plainly.

9 And Moses and the priests the Levites spoke unto all Israel, saying, Take heed, and hearken, O Israel; this day you are become the people of the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

10 You shall therefore obey the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and do his commandments and his statutes, which I command you this day.

The tribes to be divided on Gerizim and Ebal

11 And Moses charged the people the same day, saying,

12 These shall stand upon mount Gerizim to bless the people, when you are come over Jordan; Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Joseph, and Benjamin: [\[Deut 11:29\]](#);

13 And these shall stand upon mount Ebal to curse; Reuben, Gad, and Asher, and Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali. [\[Deut 11:29\]](#);

The curses to be pronounced on mount Ebal

14 And the Levites shall speak, and say unto all the men of Israel with a loud voice,

15 Cursed *be* the man that maketh *any* graven or molten image, an abomination unto the YAHWEH, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and puts *it* in *a* secret *place*. And all the people shall answer and say, Amen. [\[Dan 9:11\]](#);

16 Cursed *be* he that setteth light by his father or his mother. And all the people shall say, Amen. [\[Prov 20:20\]](#); [\[Mark 7:10\]](#); [\[Eph 6:2\]](#);

17 Cursed *be* he that removeth his neighbour's landmark. And all the people shall say, Amen. [\[Job 24:2\]](#); [\[Prov 22:28\]](#);

18 Cursed *be* he that maketh the blind to wander out of the way. And all the people shall say, Amen.

19 Cursed *be*he that perverteth the judgment of the stranger, fatherless, and widow. And all the people shall say, Amen. [\[Exod 23:6\]](#);

20 Cursed *be* he that lies with his father's wife; because he uncovereth his father's skirt. And all the people shall say, Amen. [\[1Cor 5:1\]](#);

21 Cursed *be*he that lies with any manner of beast. And all the people shall say, Amen.

22 Cursed *be*he that lies with his sister, the daughter of his father, or the daughter of his mother. And all the people shall say, Amen.

- 23** Cursed *be* he that lies with his mother in law. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 24** Cursed *be* he that smiteth his neighbour secretly. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 25** Cursed *be* he that taketh reward to slay an innocent person. And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 26** Cursed *be* he that confirmeth not *all* the words of this law to do them. And all the people shall say, Amen. [Gal 3:10](#); [Jer 11:3](#); [\[Heb 2:2\]](#); [\[Jas 2:10\]](#);

The blessings for obedience

- 1** And it shall come to pass, if you shall hearken diligently unto the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to observe *and* to do all his commandments which I command you this day, that the YAHWEH thy Elohim will set you on high above all nations of the earth: [Lev 26:3](#); [\[Deut 7:12\]](#); [\[Judg 2:15\]](#);
- 2** And all these blessings shall come on you, and overtake you, if you shall hearken unto the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [\[Num 18:20\]](#);
- 3** Blessed shall you *be* in the city, and blessed shall you *be* in the field.
- 4** Blessed *shall be* the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy ground, and the fruit of thy cattle, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep.
- 5** Blessed *shall be* thy basket and thy store.
- 6** Blessed shall you *be* when you come in, and blessed shall you *be* when you go out.
- 7** The YAHWEH shall cause thine enemies that rise up against you to be smitten before thy face: they shall come out against you one way, and flee before you seven ways. [\[Neh 4:20\]](#);
- 8** The YAHWEH shall command the blessing upon you in thy storehouses, and in all that you settest thine hand unto; and he shall bless you in the land which the YAHWEH thy Elohim giveth you. [\[Prov 3:10\]](#);
- 9** The YAHWEH shall establish you a holy people unto himself, as he has sworn unto you, if you shall keep the commandments of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and walk in his ways. [Deut 7:6](#);
- 10** And all people of the earth shall see that you are called by the name of the YAHWEH; and they shall be afraid of you.
- 11** And the YAHWEH shall make you plenteous in goods, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy ground, in the land which the YAHWEH swore unto thy fathers to give you. [Deut 30:9](#);
- 12** The YAHWEH shall open unto you his good treasure, the heaven to give the rain unto thy land in its season, and to bless all the work of thine hand: and you shall lend unto many nations, and you shall not borrow. [Deut 15:6](#);
- 13** And the YAHWEH shall make you the head, and not the tail; and you shall be above only, and you shall not be beneath; if that you hearken unto the commandments of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which I command you this day, to observe and to do *them*:
- 14** And you shall not go aside from any of the words which I command you this day, *to* the right hand, or *to* the left, to go after other gods to serve them. [\[Josh 1:7\]](#); [\[Josh 23:6\]](#); [\[Prov 4:27\]](#);

The curses for disobedience

- 15** But it shall come to pass, if you will not hearken unto the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to observe to do all his commandments and his statutes which I command you this day; that all these curses shall come upon you, and overtake you: [Lev 26:14](#); [Lam 2:17](#); [Dan 9:11](#); [Dan 9:13](#); [Mal 2:2](#); [\[Prov 3:33\]](#);
- 16** Cursed shall you *be* in the city, and cursed shall you *be* in the field.
- 17** Cursed *shall be* thy basket and thy store.
- 18** Cursed *shall be* the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy land, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep.
- 19** Cursed shall you *be* when you come in, and cursed shall you *be* when you go out.
- 20** The YAHWEH shall send upon you cursing, vexation, and rebuke, in all that you settest thine hand unto for to do, until you be destroyed, and until you perish quickly; because of the wickedness of thy doings, whereby you have forsaken me.
- 21** The YAHWEH shall make the pestilence cleave unto you, until he have consumed you from off the land, whither you go to possess it.

22 The YAHWEH shall smite you with a consumption, and with a fever, and with an inflammation, and with an extreme burning, and with the sword, and with blasting, and with mildew; and they shall pursue you until you perish. [Lev 26:16](#); [\[Amos 4:9\]](#);

23 And thy heaven that *is* over thy head shall be brass, and the earth that is under you *shall be* iron. [Lev 26:19](#); [\[Hag 1:10\]](#);

24 The YAHWEH shall make the rain of thy land powder and dust: from heaven shall it come down upon you, until you be destroyed.

25 The YAHWEH shall cause you to be smitten before thine enemies: you shall go out one way against them, and flee seven ways before them: and shall be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth. [\[Jer 15:4\]](#); [\[Jer 24:9\]](#); [\[Jer 29:18\]](#); [\[Jer 34:17\]](#);

26 And thy carcase shall be meat unto all fowls of the air, and unto the beasts of the earth, and no man shall fray *them* away. [\[Jer 7:33\]](#);

27 The YAHWEH will smite you with the botch of Egypt, and with the emerods, and with the scab, and with the itch, whereof you canst not be healed. [Exod 9:9](#);

28 The YAHWEH shall smite you with madness, and blindness, and astonishment of heart: [\[Prov 28:1\]](#); [\[Rom 1:21\]](#);

29 And you shall grope at noonday, as the blind gropeth in darkness, and you shall not prosper in thy ways: and you shall be only oppressed and spoiled evermore, and no man shall save you. [\[Job 5:14\]](#);

30 You shall betroth a wife, and another man shall lie with her: you shall build a house, and you shall not dwell therein: you shall plant a vineyard, and shall not gather the grapes thereof. [\[2Sam 12:11\]](#); [\[Jer 6:12\]](#);

31 Thine ox *shall be* slain before thine eyes, and you shall not eat thereof: thine ass *shall be* violently taken away from before thy face, and shall not be restored to you: thy sheep *shall be* given unto thine enemies, and you shall have none to rescue *them*. [\[Jer 5:17\]](#);

32 Thy sons and thy daughters *shall be* given unto another people, and thine eyes shall look, and fail *with longing* for them all the day long: and *there shall be* no might in thine hand.

33 The fruit of thy land, and all thy labours, shall a nation which you knowest not eat up; and you shall be only oppressed and crushed always: [\[Jer 5:17\]](#);

34 So that you shall be mad for the sight of thine eyes which you shall see.

35 The YAHWEH shall smite you in the knees, and in the legs, with a sore botch that cannot be healed, from the sole of thy foot unto the top of thy head.

36 The YAHWEH shall bring you, and thy king which you shall set over you, unto a nation which neither you nor thy fathers have known; and there shall you serve other gods, wood and stone. [\[2Chr 33:11\]](#);

37 And you shall become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword, among all nations whither the YAHWEH shall lead you. [\[1Kgs 9:7\]](#); [\[Jer 24:9\]](#); [\[Jer 29:18\]](#); [\[Ezek 5:15\]](#); [\[Ezek 14:8\]](#);

38 You shall carry much seed out into the field, and shall gather *but* little in; for the locust shall consume it. [\[Mic 6:15\]](#); [\[Hag 1:6\]](#); [\[Jer 12:13\]](#);

39 You shall plant vineyards, and dress *them*, but shall neither drink *of* the wine, nor gather *the grapes*; for the worms shall eat them.

40 You shall have olive trees throughout all thy coasts, but you shall not anoint *thyself* with the oil; for thine olive shall cast *his fruit*.

41 You shall beget sons and daughters, but you shall not enjoy them; for they shall go into captivity. [\[Job 27:14\]](#);

42 All thy trees and fruit of thy land shall the locust consume.

43 The stranger that *is* within you shall get up above you very high; and you shall come down very low.

44 He shall lend to you, and you shall not lend to him: he shall be the head, and you shall be the tail.

45 Moreover all these curses shall come upon you, and shall pursue you, and overtake you, till you be destroyed; because you hearkenedst not unto the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to keep his commandments and his statutes which he commanded you:

46 And they shall be upon you for a sign and for a wonder, and upon thy seed for ever.

47 Because you servedst not the YAHWEH thy Elohim with joyfulness, and with gladness of heart, for the abundance of all *things*;

48 Therefore shall you serve thine enemies which the YAHWEH shall send against you, in hunger, and in thirst, and in nakedness, and in want of all *things*: and he shall put a yoke of iron upon thy neck, until he have destroyed you. [\[Isa 14:3\]](#);

49 The YAHWEH shall bring a nation against you from far, from the end of the earth, *as swift* as the eagle flies; a nation whose tongue you shall not understand; [\[Jer 5:15\]](#); [\[Hos 8:1\]](#); [\[1Cor 14:21\]](#);

50 A nation of fierce countenance, which shall not regard the person of the old, nor show favor to the young:

51 And he shall eat the fruit of thy cattle, and the fruit of thy land, until you be destroyed: which *also* shall not leave you *either* corn, wine, or oil, *or* the increase of thy kine, or flocks of thy sheep, until he have destroyed you. [\[Isa 1:7\]](#);

52 And he shall besiege you in all thy gates, until thy high and fenced walls come down, wherein you trustedst, throughout all thy land: and he shall besiege you in all thy gates throughout all thy land, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has given you.

53 And you shall eat the fruit of thine own body, the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has given you, in the siege, and in the straitness, wherewith thine enemies shall distress you: [Lev 26:29](#); [2Kgs 6:29](#); [Lam 4:10](#); [\[Jer 19:9\]](#); [\[Ezek 5:10\]](#);

54 So that the man *that is* tender among you, and very delicate, his eye shall be evil toward his brother, and toward the wife of his bosom, and toward the remnant of his children which he shall leave:

55 So that he will not give to any of them of the flesh of his children whom he shall eat: because he has nothing left him in the siege, and in the straitness, wherewith thine enemies shall distress you in all thy gates.

56 The tender and delicate woman among you, which would not adventure to set the sole of her foot upon the ground for delicateness and tenderness, her eye shall be evil toward the husband of her bosom, and toward her son, and toward her daughter,

57 And toward her young one that cometh out from between her feet, and toward her children which she shall bear: for she shall eat them for want of all *things* secretly in the siege and straitness, wherewith thine enemy shall distress you in thy gates.

58 If you will not observe to do all the words of this law that are written in this book, that you may fear this glorious and fearful name, THE YAHWEH THY GOD;

59 Then the YAHWEH will make thy plagues wonderful, and the plagues of thy seed, *even* great plagues, and of long continuance, and sore sicknesses, and of long continuance.

60 Moreover he will bring upon you all the diseases of Egypt, which you were afraid of; and they shall cleave unto you.

61 Also every sickness, and every plague, which *is* not written in the book of this law, them will the YAHWEH bring upon you, until you be destroyed.

62 And you shall be left few in number, whereas you were as the stars of heaven for multitude; because you wouldst not obey the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [Deut 10:22](#); [\[Deut 4:27\]](#);

63 And it shall come to pass, *that* as the YAHWEH rejoiced over you to do you good, and to multiply you; so the YAHWEH will rejoice over you to destroy you, and to bring you to nought; and you shall be plucked from off the land whither you go to possess it. [Isa 1:24](#);

64 And the YAHWEH shall scatter you among all people, from the one end of the earth even unto the other; and there you shall serve other gods, which neither you nor thy fathers have known, *even* wood and stone. [Deut 4:27](#); [Neh 1:8](#); [\[Jer 16:13\]](#);

65 And among these nations shall you find no ease, neither shall the sole of thy foot have rest: but the YAHWEH shall give you there a trembling heart, and failing of eyes, and sorrow of mind:

66 And thy life shall hang in doubt before you; and you shall fear day and night, and shall have none assurance of thy life:

67 In the morning you shall say, Would Elohim it were even! and at even you shall say, Would Elohim it were morning! for the fear of thine heart wherewith you shall fear, and for the sight of thine eyes which you shall see.

68 And the YAHWEH shall bring you into Egypt again with ships, by the way whereof I spoke unto you, you shall see it no more again: and there you shall be sold unto your enemies for bondmen and bondwomen, and no man shall buy *you*. [\[Jer 17:4\];](#)

Moses exhorts them to obedience, by the memory of the works they had seen

- 1** These *are* the words of the covenant, which the YAHWEH commanded Moses to make with the children of Israel in the land of Moab, beside the covenant which he made with them in Horeb.
- 2** And Moses called unto all Israel, and said unto them, you have seen all that the YAHWEH did before your eyes in the land of Egypt unto Pharaoh, and unto all his servants, and unto all his land; [Exod 19:4](#);
- 3** The great temptations which thine eyes have seen, the signs, and those great miracles: [Deut 4:34](#); [Deut 7:19](#);
- 4** Yet the YAHWEH has not given you a heart to perceive, and eyes to see, and ears to hear, unto this day.
- 5** And I have led you forty years in the wilderness: your clothes are not waxen old upon you, and thy shoe is not waxen old upon thy foot. [\[Deut 8:4\]](#); [\[Neh 9:21\]](#);
- 6** You have not eaten bread, neither have you drunk wine or strong drink: that you might know that I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.
- 7** And when you came unto this place, Sihon the king of Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, came out against us unto battle, and we smote them: [Num 21:24](#); [Num 21:33](#); [Deut 2:32](#); [Deut 3:1](#); [\[Num 21:23\]](#); [\[Deut 2:33\]](#);
- 8** And we took their land, and gave it for an inheritance unto the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to the half tribe of Manasseh. [Num 32:33](#); [Deut 3:12](#); [Josh 13:8](#); [\[Josh 22:4\]](#);
- 9** Keep therefore the words of this covenant, and do them, that you may prosper in all that you do. [\[1Kgs 2:3\]](#);

All are presented before the Lord to enter into his covenant

- 10** You stand this day all of you before the YAHWEH your Elohim; your captains of your tribes, your elders, and your officers, *with* all the men of Israel,
- 11** Your little ones, your wives, and thy stranger that *is* in thy camp, from the hewer of thy wood unto the drawer of thy water:
- 12** That you should enter into covenant with the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and into his oath, which the YAHWEH thy Elohim maketh with you this day:
- 13** That he may establish you to day for a people unto himself, and *that* he may be unto you a Elohim, as he has said unto you, and as he has sworn unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. [Gen 17:7](#);
- 14** Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath; [\[Judg 2:1\]](#);
- 15** But with *him* that standeth here with us this day before the YAHWEH our Elohim, and also with *him* that *is* not here with us this day:
- 16** (For you know how we have dwelt in the land of Egypt; and how we came through the nations which you passed by;
- 17** And you have seen their abominations, and their idols, wood and stone, silver and gold, which *were* among them:)

The great wrath on him that flatters himself in his wickedness

- 18** Lest there should be among you man, or woman, or family, or tribe, whose heart turneth away this day from the YAHWEH our Elohim, to go *and* serve the gods of these nations; lest there should be among you a root that beareth gall and wormwood; [Acts 8:23](#); [Heb 12:15](#);
- 19** And it come to pass, when he heareth the words of this curse, that he bless himself in his heart, saying, I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of mine heart, to add drunkenness to thirst:
- 20** The YAHWEH will not spare him, but then the anger of the YAHWEH and his jealousy shall smoke against that man, and all the curses that are written in this book shall lie upon him, and the YAHWEH shall blot out his name from under heaven. [\[Dan 9:11\]](#);

21 And the YAHWEH shall separate him unto evil out of all the tribes of Israel, according to all the curses of the covenant that are written in this book of the law:

22 So that the generation to come of your children that shall rise up after you, and the stranger that shall come from a far land, shall say, when they see the plagues of that land, and the sicknesses which the YAHWEH has laid upon it;

23 *And that* the whole land thereof *is* brimstone, and salt, *and* burning, *that* it is not sown, nor beareth, nor any grass groweth therein, like the overthrow of Sodom, and Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboim, which the YAHWEH overthrew in his anger, and in his wrath: [\[Gen 19:24\]; \[Luke 17:29\]; \[2Pet 2:6\]; \[Jude 1:7\];](#)

24 Even all nations shall say, Wherefore has the YAHWEH done thus unto this land? what *meaneth* the heat of this great anger? [Jer 22:8; \[1Kgs 9:8\];](#)

25 Then men shall say, Because they have forsaken the covenant of the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, which he made with them when he brought them forth out of the land of Egypt:

26 For they went and served other gods, and worshipped them, gods whom they knew not, and *whom* he had not given unto them:

27 And the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against this land, to bring upon it all the curses that are written in this book:

28 And the YAHWEH rooted them out of their land in anger, and in wrath, and in great indignation, and cast them into another land, as *it is* this day.

Secret things belong unto Elohim

29 The secret *things belong* unto the YAHWEH our Elohim: but those *things which are* revealed *belong* unto us and to our children for ever, that *we* may do all the words of this law.

Great mercies promised unto the penitent

1 And it shall come to pass, when all these things are come upon you, the blessing and the curse, which I have set before you, and you shall call *them* to mind among all the nations, whither the YAHWEH thy Elohim has driven you,

2 And shall return unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and shall obey his voice according to all that I command you this day, you and thy children, with all thine heart, and with all thy being; [[Neh 1:8](#)]; [[Jer 31:19](#)];

3 That then the YAHWEH thy Elohim will turn thy captivity, and have compassion upon you, and will return and gather you from all the nations, whither the YAHWEH thy Elohim has scattered you. [[Neh 1:8](#)]; [[Ps 106:45](#)]; [[Jer 32:37](#)]; [[Jer 12:14](#)]; [[Mic 4:6](#)];

4 If *any* of thine be driven out unto the outmost *parts* of heaven, from thence will the YAHWEH thy Elohim gather you, and from thence will he fetch you: [[Neh 1:9](#)];

5 And the YAHWEH thy Elohim will bring you into the land which thy fathers possessed, and you shall possess it; and he will do you good, and multiply you above thy fathers.

6 And the YAHWEH thy Elohim will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the YAHWEH thy Elohim with all thine heart, and with all thy being, that you may live. [[Jer 32:39](#)]; [[Ezek 11:19](#)]; [[Ezek 36:26](#)]; [[Jer 4:4](#)]; [[Jer 24:7](#)]; [[Matt 22:37](#)]; [[Luke 10:27](#)]; [[Phil 3:3](#)];

7 And the YAHWEH thy Elohim will put all these curses upon thine enemies, and on them that hate you, which persecuted you.

8 And you shall return and obey the voice of the YAHWEH, and do all his commandments which I command you this day.

9 And the YAHWEH thy Elohim will make you plenteous in every work of thine hand, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy land, for good: for the YAHWEH will again rejoice over you for good, as he rejoiced over thy fathers: [[Deut 28:11](#)];

10 If you shall hearken unto the voice of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to keep his commandments and his statutes which are written in this book of the law, *and* if you turn unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim with all thine heart, and with all thy being.

The commandment is manifest

11 For this commandment which I command you this day, it *is* not hidden from you, neither *is* it far off. [[Isa 45:19](#)];

12 It *is* not in heaven, that you should say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it? [[Rom 10:6](#)];

13 Neither *is* it beyond the sea, that you should say, Who shall go over the sea for us, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it?

14 But the word *is* very nigh unto you, in thy mouth, and in thy heart, that you may do it.

Death and life are set before them

15 See, I have set before you this day life and good, and death and evil;

16 In that I command you this day to love the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to walk in his ways, and to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments, that you may live and multiply: and the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall bless you in the land whither you go to possess it.

17 But if thine heart turn away, so that you will not hear, but shall be drawn away, and worship other gods, and serve them; [[Dan 9:11](#)];

18 I denounce unto you this day, that you shall surely perish, *and that* you shall not prolong *your* days upon the land, whither you passest over Jordan to go to possess it.

19 I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, *that* I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both you and thy seed may live: [Deut 4:26](#);

20 That you may love the YAHWEH thy Elohim, *and* that you may obey his voice, and that you may cleave unto him: for he *is* thy life, and the length of thy days: that you may dwell in the land which the YAHWEH swore unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them. [\[Prov 3:2\]](#);

Moses encourages the people

- 1** And Moses went and spoke these words unto all Israel.
- 2** And he said unto them, I *am* a hundred and twenty years old this day; I can no more go out and come in: also the YAHWEH has said unto me, you shall not go over this Jordan. [Num 27:12](#); [Deut 3:26](#); [\[Deut 4:21\]](#); [\[Josh 14:11\]](#);
- 3** The YAHWEH thy Elohim, he will go over before you, *and* he will destroy these nations from before you, and you shall possess them: *and* Joshua, he shall go over before you, as the YAHWEH has said. [Num 27:18](#); [\[Deut 7:1\]](#);
- 4** And the YAHWEH shall do unto them as he did to Sihon and to Og, kings of the Amorites, and unto the land of them, whom he destroyed. [Num 21:24](#); [Num 21:33](#);
- 5** And the YAHWEH shall give them up before your face, that you may do unto them according unto all the commandments which I have commanded you. [Deut 7:1-2](#);
- 6** Be strong and of a good courage, fear not, nor be afraid of them: for the YAHWEH thy Elohim is the One who goes with you; he will not fail you, nor forsake you. [Josh 1:5](#); [Heb 13:5](#); [\[Jer 1:8\]](#);

He encourages Joshua

- 7** And Moses called unto Joshua, and said unto him in the sight of all Israel, Be strong and of a good courage: for you must go with this people unto the land which the YAHWEH has sworn unto their fathers to give them; and you shall cause them to inherit it. [\[1Chr 22:13\]](#); [\[1Chr 28:20\]](#);
- 8** And the YAHWEH is the One who goes before you; he will be with you, he will not fail you, neither forsake you: fear not, neither be dismayed. [Josh 1:9](#); [\[Josh 1:5\]](#); [\[Jer 1:8\]](#); [\[Heb 13:5\]](#);

He delivers the law unto the priests to be read in the seventh year to the people

- 9** And Moses wrote this law, and delivered it unto the priests the sons of Levi, which bore the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, and unto all the elders of Israel.
- 10** And Moses commanded them, saying, At the end of *every* seven years, in the solemnity of the year of release, in the feast of tabernacles,
- 11** When all Israel is come to appear before the YAHWEH thy Elohim in the place which he shall choose, you shall read this law before all Israel in their hearing. [\[Josh 8:35\]](#);
- 12** Gather the people together, men, and women, and children, and thy stranger that *is* within thy gates, that they may hear, and that they may learn, and fear the YAHWEH your Elohim, and observe to do all the words of this law:
- 13** And *that* their children, which have not known *any thing*, may hear, and learn to fear the YAHWEH your Elohim, as long as you live in the land whither you go over Jordan to possess it.

Elohim gives a charge to Joshua

- 14** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Behold, thy days approach that you must die: call Joshua, and present yourselves in the tabernacle of the congregation, that I may give him a charge. And Moses and Joshua went, and presented themselves in the tabernacle of the congregation.
- 15** And the YAHWEH appeared in the tabernacle in a pillar of a cloud: and the pillar of the cloud stood over the door of the tabernacle.
- 16** And the YAHWEH said unto Moses, Behold, you shall sleep with thy fathers; and this people will rise up, and go a whoring after the gods of the strangers of the land, whither they go *to be* among them, and will forsake me, and break my covenant which I have made with them.

17 Then my anger shall be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them, and I will hide my face from them, and they shall be devoured, and many evils and troubles shall befall them; so that they will say in that day, Are not these evils come upon us, because our Elohim *is* not among us? [\[Dan 9:11\]](#);

18 And I will surely hide my face in that day for all the evils which they shall have wrought, in that they are turned unto other gods.

and a song to testify against the people

19 Now therefore write you this song for you, and teach it the children of Israel: put it in their mouths, that this song may be a witness for me against the children of Israel.

20 For when I shall have brought them into the land which I swore unto their fathers, that floweth with milk and honey; and they shall have eaten and filled themselves, and waxen fat; then will they turn unto other gods, and serve them, and provoke me, and break my covenant.

21 And it shall come to pass, when many evils and troubles are befallen them, that this song shall testify against them as a witness; for it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed: for I know their imagination which they go about, even now, before I have brought them into the land which I swear.

22 Moses therefore wrote this song the same day, and taught it the children of Israel.

23 And he gave Joshua the son of Nun a charge, and said, Be strong and of a good courage: for you shall bring the children of Israel into the land which I swore unto them: and I will be with you. [Josh 1:6](#);

Moses delivers the book of the law to the Levites to keep

24 And it came to pass, when Moses had made an end of writing the words of this law in a book, until they were finished,

25 That Moses commanded the Levites, which bore the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, saying,

26 Take this book of the law, and put it in the side of the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH your Elohim, that it may be there for a witness against you. [2Kgs 22:8](#);

27 For I know thy rebellion, and thy stiff neck: behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, you have been rebellious against the YAHWEH; and how much more after my death? [\[Deut 9:13\]](#); [\[2Kgs 17:14\]](#); [\[Ps 78:8\]](#);

He makes a protestation

28 Gather unto me all the elders of your tribes, and your officers, that I may speak these words in their ears, and call heaven and earth to record against them.

29 For I know that after my death you will utterly corrupt *yourselves*, and turn aside from the way which I have commanded you; and evil will befall you in the latter days; because you will do evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, to provoke him to anger through the work of your hands.

30 And Moses spoke in the ears of all the congregation of Israel the words of this song, until they were ended.

Moses song, which sets forth Elohim's mercy and vengeance

- 1** Give ear, O you heavens, and I will speak; and hear, O earth, the words of my mouth. [\[Isa 1:2\]](#); [\[Jer 2:12\]](#); [\[Mic 1:2\]](#);
- 2** My doctrine shall drop as the rain, my speech shall distil as the dew, as the small rain upon the tender herb, and as the showers upon the grass:
- 3** Because I will publish the name of the YAHWEH: ascribe you greatness unto our Elohim.
- 4** *He is* the Rock, his work *is* perfect: for all his ways *are* judgment: a Elohim of truth and without iniquity, just and right *is* he. [\[Gen 1:31\]](#); [\[2Sam 22:31\]](#); [\[2Chr 19:7\]](#); [\[Neh 9:33\]](#); [\[Job 8:3\]](#); [\[Job 34:10\]](#); [\[Job 36:23\]](#); [\[Zeph 3:5\]](#); [\[Rom 9:14\]](#);
- 5** They have corrupted themselves, their spot *is* not *the spot* of his children: *they are* a perverse and crooked generation. [\[Exod 32:7\]](#);
- 6** Do you thus requite the YAHWEH, O foolish people and unwise? *is* not he thy father *that* has bought you? has he not made you, and established you?
- 7** Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations: ask thy father, and he will show you; thy elders, and they will tell you.
- 8** When the most High divided to the nations their inheritance, when he separated the sons of Adam, he set the bounds of the people according to the number of the children of Israel. [\[Gen 11:8\]](#); [\[Mic 2:5\]](#); [\[Acts 17:26\]](#);
- 9** For the YAHWEH'S portion *is* his people; Jacob *is* the lot of his inheritance.
- 10** He found him in a desert land, and in the waste howling wilderness; he led him about, he instructed him, he kept him as the apple of his eye.
- 11** As an eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young, spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, beareth them on her wings: [\[Exod 19:4\]](#); [\[Isa 31:5\]](#);
- 12** So the YAHWEH alone did lead him, and *there was* no strange god with him.
- 13** He made him ride on the high places of the earth, that he might eat the increase of the fields; and he made him to suck honey out of the rock, and oil out of the flinty rock; [\[Mic 1:3\]](#);
- 14** Butter of kine, and milk of sheep, with fat of lambs, and rams of the breed of Bashan, and goats, with the fat of kidneys of wheat; and you didst drink the pure blood of the grape.
- 15** But Jeshurun waxed fat, and kicked: you are waxen fat, you are grown thick, you are covered *with fatness*; then he forsook Elohim *which* made him, and lightly esteemed the Rock of his salvation. [\[Judg 10:13\]](#); [\[1Sam 2:29\]](#); [\[Jer 5:28\]](#); [\[Hos 13:6\]](#);
- 16** They provoked him to jealousy with strange *gods*, with abominations provoked they him to anger. [\[Ps 78:58\]](#);
- 17** They sacrificed unto demons, not to Elohim; to gods whom they knew not, to new *gods that* came newly up, whom your fathers feared not. [\[1Cor 10:20\]](#);
- 18** Of the Rock *that* begat you you are unmindful, and have forgotten Elohim that formed you.
- 19** And when the YAHWEH saw *it*, he abhorred *them*, because of the provoking of his sons, and of his daughters. [\[Dan 9:11\]](#);
- 20** And he said, I will hide my face from them, I will see what their end *shall be*: for they *are* a very froward generation, children in whom *is* no faith.
- 21** They have moved me to jealousy with *that which is* not Elohim; they have provoked me to anger with their vanities: and I will move them to jealousy with *those which are* not a people; I will provoke them to anger with a foolish nation. [Rom 10:19](#); [\[Ps 78:58\]](#);
- 22** For a fire is kindled in mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest hell, and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains. [Jer 15:14](#);
- 23** I will heap mischiefs upon them; I will spend mine arrows upon them.
- 24** *They shall be* burnt with hunger, and devoured with burning heat, and with bitter destruction: I will also send the teeth of beasts upon them, with the poison of serpents of the dust.

25 The sword without, and terror within, shall destroy both the young man and the virgin, the suckling *also* with the man of gray hairs.

26 I said, I would scatter them into corners, I would make the remembrance of them to cease from among men:

27 Were it not that I feared the wrath of the enemy, lest their adversaries should behave themselves strangely, *and* lest they should say, Our hand *is* high, and the YAHWEH has not done all this.

28 For they *are* a nation void of counsel, neither *is there any* understanding in them.

29 O that they were wise, *that* they understood this, *that* they would consider their latter end! [Isa 48:18]; [Lam 1:9];

30 How should one chase a thousand, and two put ten thousand to flight, except their Rock had sold them, and the YAHWEH had shut them up? [Josh 23:10];

31 For their rock *is* not as our Rock, even our enemies themselves *being* judges.

32 For their vine *is* of the vine of Sodom, and of the fields of Gomorrah: their grapes *are* grapes of gall, their clusters *are* bitter:

33 Their wine *is* the poison of dragons, and the cruel venom of asps.

34 *Is* not this laid up in store with me, *and* sealed up among my treasures?

35 To me *belongeth* vengeance, and recompence; their foot shall slide in *due* time: for the day of their calamity *is* at hand, and the things that shall come upon them make haste. Rom 12:19; Heb 10:30; 1Pet 2:23; [Prov 17:13]; [Prov 20:22];

36 For the YAHWEH shall judge his people, and repent himself for his servants, when he seeth that *their* power is gone, and *there is* none shut up, or left. [Ps 135:14]; [Heb 10:30];

37 And he shall say, Where *are* their gods, *their* rock in whom they trusted, [Isa 16:12];

38 Which did eat the fat of their sacrifices, *and* drank the wine of their drink offerings? let them rise up and help you, *and* be your protection.

39 See now that I, *even* I, *am* he, and *there is* no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither *is there any* that can deliver out of my hand. Deut 4:35; Isa 45:5; Isa 45:18; Isa 45:22; 1Sam 2:6; [2Sam 7:22]; [2Sam 22:32]; [2Kgs 5:7]; [Job 5:18]; [Isa 44:8]; [1Tim 6:13];

40 For I lift up my hand to heaven, and say, I live for ever.

41 If I whet my glittering sword, and mine hand take hold on judgment; I will render vengeance to mine enemies, and will reward them that hate me.

42 I will make mine arrows drunk with blood, and my sword shall devour flesh; *and that* with the blood of the slain and of the captives, from the beginning of revenges upon the enemy.

43 Rejoice, O you nations, *with* his people: for he will avenge the blood of his servants, and will render vengeance to his adversaries, and will be merciful unto his land, *and* to his people. Rom 15:10; [Rev 19:2];

44 And Moses came and spoke all the words of this song in the ears of the people, he, and Hoshea the son of Nun.

45 And Moses made an end of speaking all these words to all Israel:

He exhorts them to set their hearts upon it

46 And he said unto them, Set your hearts unto all the words which I testify among you this day, which you shall command your children to observe to do, all the words of this law.

47 For it *is* not a vain thing for you; because it *is* your life: and through this thing you shall prolong *your* days in the land, whither you go over Jordan to possess it.

Elohim sends him up to mount Nebo, to see the land, and to die

48 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Moses that selfsame day, saying, [Num 27:12];

49 Get you up into this mountain Abarim, *unto* mount Nebo, which *is* in the land of Moab, that *is* over against Jericho; and behold the land of Canaan, which I give unto the children of Israel for a possession: Num 27:12;

50 And die in the mount whither you go up, and be gathered unto thy people; as Aaron thy brother died in mount Hor, and was gathered unto his people: Num 27:13; Num 33:38; [Num 20:25]; [Num 20:28];

51 Because you trespassed against me among the children of Israel at the waters of Meribah-Kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin; because you sanctified me not in the midst of the children of Israel. [Num 20:12](#); [[Num 20:10](#)];

52 Yet you shall see the land before you; but you shall not go thither unto the land which I give the children of Israel.

The majesty of Elohim

1 And this *is* the blessing, wherewith Moses the man of Elohim blessed the children of Israel before his death.

2 And he said, The YAHWEH came from Sinai, and rose up from Seir unto them; he shined forth from mount Paran, and he came with ten thousands of saints: from his right hand *went* a fiery law for them. [\[Ps 94:1\];](#)

3 Yes, he loved the people; all his saints *are* in thy hand: and they sat down at thy feet; *every one* shall receive of thy words.

4 Moses commanded us a law, *even* the inheritance of the congregation of Jacob.

5 And he was king in Jeshurun, when the heads of the people *and* the tribes of Israel were gathered together.

The blessings of the twelve tribes

6 Let Reuben live, and not die; and let *not* his men be few.

7 And this *is the blessing* of Judah: and he said, Hear, YAHWEH, the voice of Judah, and bring him unto his people: let his hands be sufficient for him; and be you a help *to him* from his enemies.

8 And of Levi he said, *Let* thy Thummim and thy Urim *be* with thy holy one, whom you didst prove at Massah, *and with* whom you didst strive at the waters of Meribah;

9 Who said unto his father and to his mother, I have not seen him; neither did he acknowledge his brethren, nor knew his own children: for they have observed thy word, and kept thy covenant. [\[Matt 19:29\]; \[Luke 14:26\]; \[Luke 18:29\];](#)

10 They shall teach Jacob thy judgments, and Israel thy law: they shall put incense before you, and whole burnt sacrifice upon thine altar.

11 Bless, YAHWEH, his substance, and accept the work of his hands: smite through the loins of them that rise against him, and of them that hate him, that they rise not again.

12 *And* of Benjamin he said, The beloved of the YAHWEH shall dwell in safety by him; *and the YAHWEH* shall cover him all the day long, and he shall dwell between his shoulders.

13 And of Joseph he said, Blessed of the YAHWEH *be* his land, for the precious things of heaven, for the dew, and for the deep that coucheth beneath, [Gen 49:25;](#)

14 And for the precious fruits *brought forth* by the sun, and for the precious things put forth by the moon,

15 And for the chief things of the ancient mountains, and for the precious things of the lasting hills,

16 And for the precious things of the earth and fulness thereof, and *for* the good will of him that dwelt in the bush: let *the blessing* come upon the head of Joseph, and upon the top of the head of him *that was* separated from his brethren. [Gen 49:26;](#)

17 His glory *is like* the firstling of his bullock, and his horns *are like* the horns of unicorns: with them he shall push the people together to the ends of the earth: and they *are* the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they *are* the thousands of Manasseh.

18 And of Zebulun he said, Rejoice, Zebulun, in thy going out; and, Issachar, in thy tents.

19 They shall call the people unto the mountain; there they shall offer sacrifices of righteousness: for they shall suck *of* the abundance of the seas, and *of* treasures hid in the sand. [\[Ps 4:5\];](#)

20 And of Gad he said, Blessed *be* he that enlargeth Gad: he dwelleth as a lion, and teareth the arm with the crown of the head.

21 And he provided the first part for himself, because there, *in* a portion of the lawgiver, *was he* seated; and he came with the heads of the people, he executed the justice of the YAHWEH, and his judgments with Israel.

22 And of Dan he said, Dan *is* a lion's whelp: he shall leap from Bashan.

23 And of Naphtali he said, O Naphtali, satisfied with favor, and full with the blessing of the YAHWEH: possess you the west and the south.

24 And of Asher he said, *Let* Asher *be* blessed with children; let him be acceptable to his brethren, and let him dip his foot in oil.

25 Thy shoes *shall be* iron and brass; and as thy days, *so shall* thy strength *be*.

The excellency of Israel

26 *There is* none like unto the Elohim of Jeshurun, *who* rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in his excellency on the sky.

27 The eternal Elohim *is thy* refuge, and underneath *are* the everlasting arms: and he shall thrust out the enemy from before you; and shall say, Destroy *them*.

28 Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob *shall be* upon a land of grain and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew. [Jer 23:6](#); [Jer 33:16](#); [\[Num 23:9\]](#); [\[Ps 4:8\]](#);

29 Happy are you, O Israel: who *is* like unto you, O people saved by the YAHWEH, the shield of thy help, and who *is* the sword of thy excellency! and thine enemies shall be found liars unto you; and you shall tread upon their high places. [\[2Sam 7:23\]](#); [\[1Chr 17:21\]](#); [\[Mic 1:3\]](#);

Moses from mount Nebo views the land

1 And Moses went up from the plains of Moab unto the mountain of Nebo, to the top of Pisgah, that *is* over against Jericho. And the YAHWEH showed him all the land of Gilead, unto Dan, [Deut 3:27](#);

2 And all Naphtali, and the land of Ephraim, and Manasseh, and all the land of Judah, unto the utmost sea,

3 And the south, and the plain of the valley of Jericho, the city of palm trees, unto Zoar.

4 And the YAHWEH said unto him, This *is* the land which I swore unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, saying, I will give it unto thy seed: I have caused you to see *it* with thine eyes, but you shall not go over thither. [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 28:13](#); [[Gen 24:7](#)]; [[Gen 28:4](#)]; [[Exod 32:13](#)]; [[Deut 1:37](#)]; [[Deut 3:26](#)]; [[Deut 4:21](#)];

He dies there

5 So Moses the servant of the YAHWEH died there in the land of Moab, according to the word of the YAHWEH. [Josh 1:1](#);

His burial

6 And he buried him in a valley in the land of Moab, over against Bethpeor: but no man knoweth of his sepulcher unto this day. [Jude 1:9](#);

His age

7 And Moses *was* a hundred and twenty years old when he died: his eye was not dim, nor his natural force abated.

Thirty days' mourning for him

8 And the children of Israel wept for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days: so the days of weeping *and* mourning for Moses were ended.

Joshua succeeds him

9 And Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom; for Moses had laid his hands upon him: and the children of Israel hearkened unto him, and did as the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Num 27:18](#);

The praise of Moses

10 And there arose not a prophet since in Israel like unto Moses, whom the YAHWEH knew face to face, [\[Num 12:8\]](#);

11 In all the signs and the wonders, which the YAHWEH sent him to do in the land of Egypt to Pharaoh, and to all his servants, and to all his land,

12 And in all that mighty hand, and in all the great terror which Moses showed in the sight of all Israel.

Joshua

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#)

JOSHUA ONE

The Lord appoints Joshua to succeed Moses

1 Now after the death of Moses the servant of the YAHWEH it came to pass, that the YAHWEH spoke unto Joshua the son of Nun, Moses' minister, saying, [Deut 34:5](#); [Deut 1:38](#);

2 Moses my servant is dead; now therefore arise, go over this Jordan, you, and all this people, unto the land which I do give to them, *even* to the children of Israel. [\[Neh 9:24\]](#);

The borders of the promised land

3 Every place that the sole of your foot shall tread upon, that have I given unto you, as I said unto Moses. [Deut 11:24](#); [Josh 14:9](#);

4 From the wilderness and this Lebanon even unto the great river, the river Euphrates, all the land of the Hittites, and unto the great sea toward the going down of the sun, shall be your coast.

Elohim promises to assist Joshua

5 There shall not any man be able to stand before you all the days of thy life: as I was with Moses, *so* I will be with you: I will not fail you, nor forsake you. [Deut 31:6](#); [Deut 31:8](#); [Heb 13:5-6](#); [\[Exod 3:12\]](#); [\[Josh 3:7\]](#); [\[Jer 1:8\]](#); [\[Heb 13:5\]](#);

6 Be strong and of a good courage: for unto this people shall you divide for an inheritance the land, which I swore unto their fathers to give them. [Deut 31:23](#);

7 Only be you strong and very courageous, that you may observe to do according to all the law, which Moses my servant commanded you: turn not from it *to* the right hand or *to* the left, that you may prosper whithersoever you go. [Deut 5:32](#); [Deut 28:14](#); [\[1Kgs 2:3\]](#); [\[1Chr 22:13\]](#); [\[1Chr 28:20\]](#);

He gives him instructions

8 This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but you shall meditate therein day and night, that you may observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then you shall make thy way prosperous, and then you shall have good success. [Ps 1:2](#);

9 Have not I commanded you? Be strong and of a good courage; be not afraid, neither be you dismayed: for the YAHWEH thy Elohim *is* with you whithersoever you go. [\[Deut 31:8\]](#);

Joshua prepares the people to pass over Jordan

10 Then Joshua commanded the officers of the people, saying,

11 Pass through the host, and command the people, saying, Prepare you victuals; for within three days you shall pass over this Jordan, to go in to possess the land, which the YAHWEH your Elohim giveth you to possess it.

He puts the two tribes and half in mind of their promise to Moses

12 And to the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to half the tribe of Manasseh, spoke Joshua, saying,

13 Remember the word which Moses the servant of the YAHWEH commanded you, saying, The YAHWEH your Elohim has given you rest, and has given you this land. [\[Num 32:28\]](#);

14 Your wives, your little ones, and your cattle, shall remain in the land which Moses gave you on this side Jordan; but you shall pass before your brethren armed, all the mighty men of valour, and help them;

15 Until the YAHWEH have given your brethren rest, as *he has given* you, and they also have possessed the land which the YAHWEH your Elohim giveth them: then you shall return unto the land of your

possession, and enjoy it, which Moses the YAHWEH'S servant gave you on this side Jordan toward the sunrising.

They promise him fealty

16 And they answered Joshua, saying, All that you commandest us we will do, and whithersoever you sendest us, we will go.

17 According as we hearkened unto Moses in all things, so will we hearken unto you: only the YAHWEH thy Elohim be with you, as he was with Moses.

18 Whoever rebels against thy commandment, and will not hearken unto thy words in all that you commandest him, he shall be put to death: only be strong and of a good courage.

Rahab receives and conceals the two spies sent from Shittim

1 And Joshua the son of Nun sent out of Shittim two men to spy secretly, saying, Go view the land, even Jericho. And they went, and came into a harlot's house, named Rahab, and lodged there. [\[Num 33:49\]](#); [\[Heb 11:31\]](#); [\[Jas 2:25\]](#);

2 And it was told the king of Jericho, saying, Behold, there came men in hither to night of the children of Israel to search out the country.

3 And the king of Jericho sent unto Rahab, saying, Bring forth the men that are come to you, which are entered into thine house: for they be come to search out all the country.

4 And the woman took the two men, and hid them, and said thus, There came men unto me, but I wist not whence they *were*:

5 And it came to pass *about the time* of shutting of the gate, when it was dark, that the men went out: whither the men went I wot not: pursue after them quickly; for you shall overtake them.

6 But she had brought them up to the roof of the house, and hid them with the stalks of flax, which she had laid in order upon the roof.

7 And the men pursued after them the way to Jordan unto the fords: and as soon as they which pursued after them were gone out, they shut the gate.

The covenant between her and them

8 And before they were laid down, she came up unto them upon the roof;

9 And she said unto the men, I know that the YAHWEH has given you the land, and that your terror is fallen upon us, and that all the inhabitants of the land faint because of you. [\[Exod 15:16\]](#);

10 For we have heard how the YAHWEH dried up the water of the Red sea for you, when you came out of Egypt; and what you did unto the two kings of the Amorites, that *were* on the other side Jordan, Sihon and Og, whom you utterly destroyed. [Exod 14:21](#); [Josh 4:23](#); [Num 21:24](#); [Num 21:34](#);

11 And as soon as we had heard *these things*, our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more courage in any man, because of you: for the YAHWEH your Elohim, he *is* Elohim in heaven above, and in earth beneath. [Deut 4:39](#); [\[Nah 2:10\]](#);

12 Now therefore, I pray you, swear unto me by the YAHWEH, since I have showed you kindness, that you will also show kindness unto my father's house, and give me a true token:

13 And *that* you will save alive my father, and my mother, and my brethren, and my sisters, and all that they have, and deliver our lives from death.

14 And the men answered her, Our life for yours, if you utter not this our business. And it shall be, when the YAHWEH has given us the land, that we will deal kindly and truly with you. [\[Josh 6:22\]](#);

15 Then she let them down by a cord through the window: for her house *was* upon the town wall, and she dwelt upon the wall. [\[Acts 9:25\]](#);

16 And she said unto them, Get you to the mountain, lest the pursuers meet you; and hide yourselves there three days, until the pursuers be returned: and afterward may you go your way.

17 And the men said unto her, We *will be* blameless of this thine oath which you have made us swear.

18 Behold, *when* we come into the land, you shall bind this line of scarlet thread in the window which you didst let us down by: and you shall bring thy father, and thy mother, and thy brethren, and all thy father's household, home unto you.

19 And it shall be, *that* whosoever shall go out of the doors of thy house into the street, his blood *shall be* upon his head, and we *will be* guiltless: and whosoever shall be with you in the house, his blood *shall be* on our head, if *any* hand be upon him. [Matt 27:25](#);

20 And if you utter this our business, then we will be quit of thine oath which you have made us to swear.

21 And she said, According unto your words, so *be* it. And she sent them away, and they departed: and she bound the scarlet line in the window.

22 And they went, and came unto the mountain, and abode there three days, until the pursuers were returned: and the pursuers sought *them* throughout all the way, but found *them* not.

Their return and relation

23 So the two men returned, and descended from the mountain, and passed over, and came to Joshua the son of Nun, and told him all *things* that befell them:

24 And they said unto Joshua, Truly the YAHWEH has delivered into our hands all the land; for even all the inhabitants of the country do faint because of us.

Joshua comes to Jordan

1 And Joshua rose early in the morning; and they removed from Shittim, and came to Jordan, he and all the children of Israel, and lodged there before they passed over.

The officers instruct the people for their passage

2 And it came to pass after three days, that the officers went through the host;

3 And they commanded the people, saying, When you see the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH your Elohim, and the priests the Levites bearing it, then you shall remove from your place, and go after it.

4 Yet there shall be a space between you and it, about two thousand cubits by measure: come not near unto it, that you may know the way by which you must go: for you have not passed *this* way heretofore.

5 And Joshua said unto the people, Sanctify yourselves: for to morrow the YAHWEH will do wonders among you.

6 And Joshua spoke unto the priests, saying, Take up the ark of the covenant, and pass over before the people. And they took up the ark of the covenant, and went before the people.

The Lord encourages Joshua

7 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, This day will I begin to magnify you in the sight of all Israel, that they may know that, as I was with Moses, *so* I will be with you. [Josh 1:5](#); [\[Josh 4:14\]](#);

8 And you shall command the priests that bear the ark of the covenant, saying, When you are come to the brink of the water of Jordan, you shall stand still in Jordan.

Joshua encourages the people

9 And Joshua said unto the children of Israel, Come hither, and hear the words of the YAHWEH your Elohim.

10 And Joshua said, Hereby you shall know that the living Elohim *is* among you, and *that* he will without fail drive out from before you the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Hivites, and the Perizzites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Jebusites.

11 Behold, the ark of the covenant of the Lord of all the earth passeth over before you into Jordan.

12 Now therefore take you twelve men out of the tribes of Israel, out of every tribe a man. [\[Josh 4:1\]](#);

13 And it shall come to pass, as soon as the soles of the feet of the priests that bear the ark of the YAHWEH, the Lord of all the earth, shall rest in the waters of Jordan, *that* the waters of Jordan shall be cut off *from* the waters that come down from above; and they shall stand upon a heap. [Ps 114:3](#); [\[Josh 4:7\]](#); [\[Ps 74:15\]](#);

The water of Jordan are divided

14 And it came to pass, when the people removed from their tents, to pass over Jordan, and the priests bearing the ark of the covenant before the people; [Acts 7:45](#); [\[Josh 24:11\]](#); [\[Ps 66:6\]](#);

15 And as they that bore the ark were come unto Jordan, and the feet of the priests that bore the ark were dipped in the brim of the water, (for Jordan overfloweth all his banks all the time of harvest,) [1Chr 12:15](#);

16 That the waters which came down from above stood *and* rose up upon a heap very far from the city Adam, that *is* beside Zaretan: and those that came down toward the sea of the plain, *even* the salt sea, failed, *and* were cut off: and the people passed over right against Jericho.

17 And the priests that bore the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH stood firm on dry ground in the midst of Jordan, and all the Israelites passed over on dry ground, until all the people were passed clean over Jordan.

Twelve men are appointed to take twelve stones for a memorial out of Jordan

- 1** And it came to pass, when all the people were clean passed over Jordan, that the YAHWEH spoke unto Joshua, saying, [Josh 3:12](#); [\[Deut 27:2\]](#);
- 2** Take you twelve men out of the people, out of every tribe a man,
- 3** And command you them, saying, Take you hence out of the midst of Jordan, out of the place where the priests' feet stood firm, twelve stones, and you shall carry them over with you, and leave them in the lodging place, where you shall lodge this night.
- 4** Then Joshua called the twelve men, whom he had prepared of the children of Israel, out of every tribe a man:
- 5** And Joshua said unto them, Pass over before the ark of the YAHWEH your Elohim into the midst of Jordan, and take you up every man of you a stone upon his shoulder, according unto the number of the tribes of the children of Israel: [\[1Kgs 18:31\]](#);
- 6** That this may be a sign among you, *that* when your children ask *their fathers* in time to come, saying, What *mean* you by these stones? [\[Exod 12:26\]](#);
- 7** Then you shall answer them, That the waters of Jordan were cut off before the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH; when it passed over Jordan, the waters of Jordan were cut off: and these stones shall be for a memorial unto the children of Israel for ever. [Josh 3:13](#);
- 8** And the children of Israel did so as Joshua commanded, and took up twelve stones out of the midst of Jordan, as the YAHWEH spoke unto Joshua, according to the number of the tribes of the children of Israel, and carried them over with them unto the place where they lodged, and laid them down there.

Twelve other stones are set up in the midst of Jordan

- 9** And Joshua set up twelve stones in the midst of Jordan, in the place where the feet of the priests which bore the ark of the covenant stood: and they are there unto this day.

The people pass over

- 10** For the priests which bore the ark stood in the midst of Jordan, until every thing was finished that the YAHWEH commanded Joshua to speak unto the people, according to all that Moses commanded Joshua: and the people hasted and passed over.
- 11** And it came to pass, when all the people were clean passed over, that the ark of the YAHWEH passed over, and the priests, in the presence of the people.
- 12** And the children of Reuben, and the children of Gad, and half the tribe of Manasseh, passed over armed before the children of Israel, as Moses spoke unto them: [Num 32:20](#); [Num 32:29](#); [\[Num 32:28\]](#);
- 13** About forty thousand prepared for war passed over before the YAHWEH unto battle, to the plains of Jericho.

Elohim magnifies Joshua

- 14** On that day the YAHWEH magnified Joshua in the sight of all Israel; and they feared him, as they feared Moses, all the days of his life. [Josh 3:7](#);

The priests commanded to come out of Jordan

- 15** And the YAHWEH spoke unto Joshua, saying,
- 16** Command the priests that bear the ark of the testimony, that they come up out of Jordan.
- 17** Joshua therefore commanded the priests, saying, Come you up out of Jordan.

18 And it came to pass, when the priests that bore the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH were come up out of the midst of Jordan, *and* the soles of the priests' feet were lifted up unto the dry land, that the waters of Jordan returned unto their place, and flowed over all his banks, as *they did* before.

19 And the people came up out of Jordan on the tenth *day* of the first month, and encamped in Gilgal, in the east border of Jericho.

The twelve stones are pitched in Gilgal

20 And those twelve stones, which they took out of Jordan, did Joshua pitch in Gilgal. [\[1Kgs 18:31\];](#)

21 And he spoke unto the children of Israel, saying, When your children shall ask their fathers in time to come, saying, What *mean* these stones?

22 Then you shall let your children know, saying, Israel came over this Jordan on dry land.

23 For the YAHWEH your Elohim dried up the waters of Jordan from before you, until you were passed over, as the YAHWEH your Elohim did to the Red sea, which he dried up from before us, until we were gone over: [Exod 14:21; \[Josh 2:10\]; \[1Cor 10:1\];](#)

24 That all the people of the earth might know the hand of the YAHWEH, that it *is* mighty: that you might fear the YAHWEH your Elohim for ever.

The Canaanites are afraid

1 And it came to pass, when all the kings of the Amorites, which *were* on the side of Jordan westward, and all the kings of the Canaanites, which *were* by the sea, heard that the YAHWEH had dried up the waters of Jordan from before the children of Israel, until we were passed over, that their heart melted, neither was there spirit in them any more, because of the children of Israel. [\[Mic 6:5\]](#); [\[Nah 2:10\]](#);

Joshua renews circumcision

2 At that time the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, Make you sharp knives, and circumcise again the children of Israel the second time. [Exod 4:25](#);

3 And Joshua made him sharp knives, and circumcised the children of Israel at the hill of the foreskins.

4 And this *is* the cause why Joshua did circumcise: All the people that came out of Egypt, *that were* males, *even* all the men of war, died in the wilderness by the way, after they came out of Egypt.

5 Now all the people that came out were circumcised: but all the people *that were* born in the wilderness by the way as they came forth out of Egypt, *them* they had not circumcised.

6 For the children of Israel walked forty years in the wilderness, till all the people *that were* men of war, which came out of Egypt, were consumed, because they obeyed not the voice of the YAHWEH: unto whom the YAHWEH swore that he would not show them the land, which the YAHWEH swore unto their fathers that he would give us, a land that floweth with milk and honey. [Num 14:23](#);

7 And their children, *whom* he raised up in their stead, *them* Joshua circumcised: for they were uncircumcised, because they had not circumcised them by the way.

8 And it came to pass, when they had done circumcising all the people, that they abode in their places in the camp, till they were whole.

9 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, This day have I rolled away the reproach of Egypt from off you. Wherefore the name of the place is called Gilgal unto this day.

The passover is kept at Gilgal

10 And the children of Israel encamped in Gilgal, and kept the passover on the fourteenth day of the month at even in the plains of Jericho. [Exod 12:6](#);

11 And they did eat of the old grain of the land on the morrow after the passover, unleavened cakes, and parched grain in the selfsame day. [Exod 12:39](#); [Lev 2:14](#);

They eat the grain of the land and the manna ceases

12 And the manna ceased on the morrow after they had eaten of the old grain of the land; neither had the children of Israel manna any more; but they did eat of the fruit of the land of Canaan that year. [\[Neh 9:20\]](#);

An angel appears to Joshua

13 And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand: and Joshua went unto him, and said unto him, are you for us, or for our adversaries? [Exod 23:23](#);

14 And he said, Nay; but *as* captain of the host of the YAHWEH am I now come. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and did worship, and said unto him, What saith my lord unto his servant?

15 And the captain of the YAHWEH'S host said unto Joshua, Loose thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place whereon you standest *is* holy. And Joshua did so. [\[Exod 3:5\]](#); [\[Acts 7:33\]](#);

Jericho is shut up

1 Now Jericho was straitly shut up because of the children of Israel: none went out, and none came in. [Josh 24:11];

Elohim instructs Joshua how to beseige it

2 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, See, I have given into thine hand Jericho, and the king thereof, *and* the mighty men of valour.

3 And you shall compass the city, all you men of war, *and* go round about the city once. Thus shall you do six days.

4 And seven priests shall bear before the ark seven trumpets of rams' horns: and the seventh day you shall compass the city seven times, and the priests shall blow with the trumpets.

5 And it shall come to pass, that when they make a long *blast* with the ram's horn, *and* when you hear the sound of the trumpet, all the people shall shout with a great shout; and the wall of the city shall fall down flat, and the people shall ascend up every man straight before him.

6 And Joshua the son of Nun called the priests, and said unto them, Take up the ark of the covenant, and let seven priests bear seven trumpets of rams' horns before the ark of the YAHWEH.

7 And he said unto the people, Pass on, and compass the city, and let him that is armed pass on before the ark of the YAHWEH.

8 And it came to pass, when Joshua had spoken unto the people, that the seven priests bearing the seven trumpets of rams' horns passed on before the YAHWEH, and blew with the trumpets: and the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH followed them.

9 And the armed men went before the priests that blew with the trumpets, and the rereward came after the ark, *the priests* going on, and blowing with the trumpets.

10 And Joshua had commanded the people, saying, you shall not shout, nor make any noise with your voice, neither shall *any* word proceed out of your mouth, until the day I bid you shout; then shall you shout.

11 So the ark of the YAHWEH compassed the city, going about *it* once: and they came into the camp, and lodged in the camp.

The city is compassed

12 And Joshua rose early in the morning, and the priests took up the ark of the YAHWEH.

13 And seven priests bearing seven trumpets of rams' horns before the ark of the YAHWEH went on continually, and blew with the trumpets: and the armed men went before them; but the rereward came after the ark of the YAHWEH, *the priests* going on, and blowing with the trumpets.

14 And the second day they compassed the city once, and returned into the camp: so they did six days.

15 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that they rose early about the dawning of the day, and compassed the city after the same manner seven times: only on that day they compassed the city seven times. [Josh 10:1];

16 And it came to pass at the seventh time, when the priests blew with the trumpets, Joshua said unto the people, Shout; for the YAHWEH has given you the city.

It must be accursed

17 And the city shall be accursed, *even* it, and all that *are* therein, to the YAHWEH: only Rahab the harlot shall live, she and all that *are* with her in the house, because she hid the messengers that we sent.

18 And you, in any wise keep *yourselves* from the accursed thing, lest you make *yourselves* accursed, when you take of the accursed thing, and make the camp of Israel a curse, and trouble it. [Lev 27:28];

19 But all the silver, and gold, and vessels of brass and iron, *are* consecrated unto the YAHWEH: they shall come into the treasury of the YAHWEH. [Num 31:54](#);

The walls fall down

20 So the people shouted when *the priests* blew with the trumpets: and it came to pass, when the people heard the sound of the trumpet, and the people shouted with a great shout, that the wall fell down flat, so that the people went up into the city, every man straight before him, and they took the city. [Heb 11:30](#); [\[Josh 24:11\]](#);

21 And they utterly destroyed all that *was* in the city, both man and woman, young and old, and ox, and sheep, and ass, with the edge of the sword. [\[Josh 8:2\]](#);

Rahab is saved

22 But Joshua had said unto the two men that had spied out the country, Go into the harlot's house, and bring out thence the woman, and all that she has, as you swore unto her. [Josh 2:14](#); [Heb 11:31](#);

23 And the young men that were spies went in, and brought out Rahab, and her father, and her mother, and her brethren, and all that she had; and they brought out all her kindred, and left them without the camp of Israel. [\[Heb 11:31\]](#); [\[Jas 2:25\]](#);

24 And they burnt the city with fire, and all that *was* therein: only the silver, and the gold, and the vessels of brass and of iron, they put into the treasury of the house of the YAHWEH.

25 And Joshua saved Rahab the harlot alive, and her father's household, and all that she had; and she dwelleth in Israel *even* unto this day; because she hid the messengers, which Joshua sent to spy out Jericho.

The builder of Jericho is cursed

26 And Joshua adjured *them* at that time, saying, Cursed *be* the man before the YAHWEH, that riseth up and buildeth this city Jericho: he shall lay the foundation thereof in his firstborn, and in his youngest *son* shall he set up the gates of it. [\[1Kgs 16:34\]](#);

27 So the YAHWEH was with Joshua; and his fame was *noised* throughout all the country.

The Israelites are smitten at Ai

1 But the children of Israel committed a trespass in the accursed thing: for Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, took of the accursed thing: and the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against the children of Israel. [Josh 22:20](#); [1Chr 2:7](#);

2 And Joshua sent men from Jericho to Ai, which *is* beside Bethaven, on the east side of Bethel, and spoke unto them, saying, Go up and view the country. And the men went up and viewed Ai. [\[Josh 18:12\]](#);

3 And they returned to Joshua, and said unto him, Let not all the people go up; but let about two or three thousand men go up and smite Ai; *and* make not all the people to labour thither; for they *are but* few.

4 So there went up thither of the people about three thousand men: and they fled before the men of Ai.

5 And the men of Ai smote of them about thirty and six men: for they chased them *from* before the gate *even* unto Shebarim, and smote them in the going down: wherefore the hearts of the people melted, and became as water. [\[Nah 2:10\]](#);

Joshua's complaint

6 And Joshua rent his clothes, and fell to the earth upon his face before the ark of the YAHWEH until the eventide, he and the elders of Israel, and put dust upon their heads. [\[1Sam 4:12\]](#);

7 And Joshua said, Alas, O Lord GOD, wherefore have you at all brought this people over Jordan, to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites, to destroy us? would to Elohim we had been content, and dwelt on the other side Jordan!

8 O Lord, what shall I say, when Israel turneth their backs before their enemies!

9 For the Canaanites and all the inhabitants of the land shall hear *of it*, and shall environ us round, and cut off our name from the earth: and what will you do unto thy great name?

Elohim instructs him what to do

10 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, Get you up; wherefore liest you thus upon thy face?

11 Israel has sinned, and they have also transgressed my covenant which I commanded them: for they have even taken of the accursed thing, and have also stolen, and dissembled also, and they have put *it* even among their own stuff.

12 Therefore the children of Israel could not stand before their enemies, *but* turned *their* backs before their enemies, because they were accursed: neither will I be with you any more, except you destroy the accursed from among you.

13 Up, sanctify the people, and say, Sanctify yourselves against to morrow: for thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, *There is* an accursed thing in the midst of you, O Israel: you canst not stand before thine enemies, until you take away the accursed thing from among you. [\[Lev 27:28\]](#);

14 In the morning therefore you shall be brought according to your tribes: and it shall be, *that* the tribe which the YAHWEH taketh shall come according to the families *thereof*; and the family which the YAHWEH shall take shall come by households; and the household which the YAHWEH shall take shall come man by man. [\[1Sam 10:20\]](#);

15 And it shall be, *that* he that is taken with the accursed thing shall be burnt with fire, he and all that he has: because he has transgressed the covenant of the YAHWEH, and because he has wrought folly in Israel.

Achan is taken by the lot

16 So Joshua rose up early in the morning, and brought Israel by their tribes; and the tribe of Judah was taken:

17 And he brought the family of Judah; and he took the family of the Zarhites: and he brought the family of the Zarhites man by man; and Zabdi was taken:

18 And he brought his household man by man; and Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, was taken.

His confession

19 And Joshua said unto Achan, My son, give, I pray you, glory to the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, and make confession unto him; and tell me now what you have done; hide *it* not from me. [\[John 9:24\];](#)

20 And Achan answered Joshua, and said, Indeed I have sinned against the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, and thus and thus have I done:

21 When I saw among the spoils a goodly Babylonish garment, and two hundred shekels of silver, and a wedge of gold of fifty shekels weight, then I coveted them, and took them; and, behold, they *are* hid in the earth in the midst of my tent, and the silver under it.

22 So Joshua sent messengers, and they ran unto the tent; and, behold, *it was* hid in his tent, and the silver under it.

23 And they took them out of the midst of the tent, and brought them unto Joshua, and unto all the children of Israel, and laid them out before the YAHWEH.

He and all he had are destroyed in the valley of Achor

24 And Joshua, and all Israel with him, took Achan the son of Zerah, and the silver, and the garment, and the wedge of gold, and his sons, and his daughters, and his oxen, and his asses, and his sheep, and his tent, and all that he had: and they brought them unto the valley of Achor.

25 And Joshua said, Why have you troubled us? the YAHWEH shall trouble you this day. And all Israel stoned him with stones, and burned them with fire, after they had stoned them with stones. [\[1Chr 2:7\];](#) [\[Gal 5:12\];](#)

26 And they raised over him a great heap of stones unto this day. So the YAHWEH turned from the fierceness of his anger. Wherefore the name of that place was called, The valley of Achor, unto this day.

Elohim encourages Joshua

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, Fear not, neither be you dismayed: take all the people of war with you, and arise, go up to Ai: see, I have given into thy hand the king of Ai, and his people, and his city, and his land: [Deut 1:21](#); [Deut 7:18](#);

2 And you shall do to Ai and her king as you didst unto Jericho and her king: only the spoil thereof, and the cattle thereof, shall you take for a prey unto yourselves: lay you an ambush for the city behind it. [Josh 6:21](#); [Deut 20:14](#); [\[Josh 8:27\]](#); [\[Josh 10:40\]](#);

The stratagem whereby Ai was taken

3 So Joshua arose, and all the people of war, to go up against Ai: and Joshua chose out thirty thousand mighty men of valour, and sent them away by night.

4 And he commanded them, saying, Behold, you shall lie in wait against the city, *even* behind the city: go not very far from the city, but be you all ready: [\[Judg 20:29\]](#);

5 And I, and all the people that *are* with me, will approach unto the city: and it shall come to pass, when they come out against us, as at the first, that we will flee before them,

6 (For they will come out after us) till we have drawn them from the city; for they will say, They flee before us, as at the first: therefore we will flee before them.

7 Then you shall rise up from the ambush, and seize upon the city: for the YAHWEH your Elohim will deliver it into your hand.

8 And it shall be, when you have taken the city, *that* you shall set the city on fire: according to the commandment of the YAHWEH shall you do. See, I have commanded you.

9 Joshua therefore sent them forth: and they went to lie in ambush, and abode between Bethel and Ai, on the west side of Ai: but Joshua lodged that night among the people.

10 And Joshua rose up early in the morning, and numbered the people, and went up, he and the elders of Israel, before the people to Ai.

11 And all the people, *even the people* of war that *were* with him, went up, and drew nigh, and came before the city, and pitched on the north side of Ai: now *there was* a valley between them and Ai.

12 And he took about five thousand men, and set them to lie in ambush between Bethel and Ai, on the west side of the city.

13 And when they had set the people, *even* all the host that *was* on the north of the city, and their liers in wait on the west of the city, Joshua went that night into the midst of the valley.

14 And it came to pass, when the king of Ai saw *it*, that they hasted and rose up early, and the men of the city went out against Israel to battle, he and all his people, at a time appointed, before the plain; but he wist not that *there were* liers in ambush against him behind the city.

15 And Joshua and all Israel made as if they were beaten before them, and fled by the way of the wilderness.

16 And all the people that *were* in Ai were called together to pursue after them: and they pursued after Joshua, and were drawn away from the city.

17 And there was not a man left in Ai or Bethel, that went not out after Israel: and they left the city open, and pursued after Israel.

18 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, Stretch out the spear that *is* in thy hand toward Ai; for I will give it into thine hand. And Joshua stretched out the spear that *he had* in his hand toward the city.

19 And the ambush arose quickly out of their place, and they ran as soon as he had stretched out his hand: and they entered into the city, and took it, and hasted and set the city on fire.

20 And when the men of Ai looked behind them, they saw, and, behold, the smoke of the city ascended up to heaven, and they had no power to flee this way or that way: and the people that fled to the wilderness turned back upon the pursuers.

21 And when Joshua and all Israel saw that the ambush had taken the city, and that the smoke of the city ascended, then they turned again, and slew the men of Ai.

22 And the other issued out of the city against them; so they were in the midst of Israel, some on this side, and some on that side: and they smote them, so that they let none of them remain or escape. [Deut 7:2](#);

23 And the king of Ai they took alive, and brought him to Joshua.

24 And it came to pass, when Israel had made an end of slaying all the inhabitants of Ai in the field, in the wilderness wherein they chased them, and when they were all fallen on the edge of the sword, until they were consumed, that all the Israelites returned unto Ai, and smote it with the edge of the sword.

25 And *so* it was, *that* all that fell that day, both of men and women, *were* twelve thousand, *even* all the men of Ai.

26 For Joshua drew not his hand back, wherewith he stretched out the spear, until he had utterly destroyed all the inhabitants of Ai.

27 Only the cattle and the spoil of that city Israel took for a prey unto themselves, according unto the word of the YAHWEH which he commanded Joshua. [Num 31:22](#); [Num 31:26](#); [Josh 8:2](#);

28 And Joshua burnt Ai, and made it a heap for ever, *even* a desolation unto this day.

The king thereof is hanged

29 And the king of Ai he hanged on a tree until eventide: and as soon as the sun was down, Joshua commanded that they should take his carcase down from the tree, and cast it at the entering of the gate of the city, and raise thereon a great heap of stones, *that remaineth* unto this day. [Deut 21:22-23](#); [\[Josh 10:26\]](#);

Joshua builds an altar

30 Then Joshua built an altar unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel in mount Ebal, [\[Exod 20:25\]](#);

31 As Moses the servant of the YAHWEH commanded the children of Israel, as it is written in the book of the law of Moses, an altar of whole stones, over which no man has wielded *any* iron: and they offered thereon burnt offerings unto the YAHWEH, and sacrificed peace offerings. [Exod 20:25](#); [Deut 27:4](#); [\[Deut 27:5\]](#);

writes the law on stones

32 And he wrote there upon the stones a copy of the law of Moses, which he wrote in the presence of the children of Israel. [Deut 27:3](#);

and pronounces the blessings and curses

33 And all Israel, and their elders, and officers, and their judges, stood on this side the ark and on that side before the priests the Levites, which bore the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, as well the stranger, as he that was born among them; half of them over against mount Gerizim, and half of them over against mount Ebal; as Moses the servant of the YAHWEH had commanded before, that they should bless the people of Israel. [\[Deut 11:29\]](#);

34 And afterward he read all the words of the law, the blessings and cursings, according to all that is written in the book of the law.

35 There was not a word of all that Moses commanded, which Joshua read not before all the congregation of Israel, with the women, and the little ones, and the strangers that were conversant among them. [Deut 31:11](#);

The kings combine against Israel

1 And it came to pass, when all the kings which *were* on this side Jordan, in the hills, and in the valleys, and in all the coasts of the great sea over against Lebanon, the Hittite, and the Amorite, the Canaanite, the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite, heard *thereof*;

2 That they gathered themselves together, to fight with Joshua and with Israel, with one accord.

The Gibeonites by craft obtain a league

3 And when the inhabitants of Gibeon heard what Joshua had done unto Jericho and to Ai,

4 They did work wilily, and went and made as if they had been ambassadors, and took old sacks upon their asses, and wine bottles, old, and rent, and bound up;

5 And old shoes and clouted upon their feet, and old garments upon them; and all the bread of their provision was dry *and* mouldy.

6 And they went to Joshua unto the camp at Gilgal, and said unto him, and to the men of Israel, We be come from a far country: now therefore make you a league with us.

7 And the men of Israel said unto the Hivites, Suppose you dwell among us; and how shall we make a league with you?

8 And they said unto Joshua, We *are* thy servants. And Joshua said unto them, Who *are* you? and from whence come you?

9 And they said unto him, From a very far country thy servants are come because of the name of the YAHWEH thy Elohim: for we have heard the fame of him, and all that he did in Egypt,

10 And all that he did to the two kings of the Amorites, that *were* beyond Jordan, to Sihon king of Heshbon, and to Og king of Bashan, which *was* at Ashtaroth. [Num 21:24](#); [Num 21:33](#); [Deut 1:4](#);

11 Wherefore our elders and all the inhabitants of our country spoke to us, saying, Take victuals with you for the journey, and go to meet them, and say unto them, We *are* your servants: therefore now make you a league with us.

12 This our bread we took hot *for* our provision out of our houses on the day we came forth to go unto you; but now, behold, it is dry, and it is mouldy:

13 And these bottles of wine, which we filled, *were* new; and, behold, they be rent: and these our garments and our shoes are become old by reason of the very long journey.

14 And the men took of their victuals, and asked not *counsel* at the mouth of the YAHWEH.

15 And Joshua made peace with them, and made a league with them, to let them live: and the princes of the congregation swore unto them. [\[Josh 10:1\]](#);

16 And it came to pass at the end of three days after they had made a league with them, that they heard that they *were* their neighbours, and *that* they dwelt among them.

17 And the children of Israel journeyed, and came unto their cities on the third day. Now their cities *were* Gibeon, and Chephirah, and Beeroth, and Kirjathjearim.

18 And the children of Israel smote them not, because the princes of the congregation had sworn unto them by the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel. And all the congregation murmured against the princes.

19 But all the princes said unto all the congregation, We have sworn unto them by the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel: now therefore we may not touch them. [\[2Sam 21:2\]](#);

20 This we will do to them; we will even let them live, lest wrath be upon us, because of the oath which we swore unto them.

21 And the princes said unto them, Let them live; but let them be hewers of wood and drawers of water unto all the congregation; as the princes had promised them.

They are condemned to perpetual bondage

22 And Joshua called for them, and he spoke unto them, saying, Wherefore have you beguiled us, saying, We *are* very far from you; when you dwell among us?

23 Now therefore you *are* cursed, and there shall none of you be freed from being bondmen, and hewers of wood and drawers of water for the house of my Elohim.

24 And they answered Joshua, and said, Because it was certainly told thy servants, how that the YAHWEH thy Elohim commanded his servant Moses to give you all the land, and to destroy all the inhabitants of the land from before you, therefore we were sore afraid of our lives because of you, and have done this thing. [Deut 7:1-2](#);

25 And now, behold, we *are* in thine hand: as it seemeth good and right unto you to do unto us, do.

26 And so did he unto them, and delivered them out of the hand of the children of Israel, that they slew them not.

27 And Joshua made them that day hewers of wood and drawers of water for the congregation, and for the altar of the YAHWEH, even unto this day, in the place which he should choose.

Five kings war against Gibeon

1 Now it came to pass, when Adonizedek king of Jerusalem had heard how Joshua had taken Ai, and had utterly destroyed it; as he had done to Jericho and her king, so he had done to Ai and her king; and how the inhabitants of Gibeon had made peace with Israel, and were among them; [Josh 6:15](#); [Josh 9:15](#);

2 That they feared greatly, because Gibeon *was* a great city, as one of the royal cities, and because it *was* greater than Ai, and all the men thereof *were* mighty.

3 Wherefore Adonizedek king of Jerusalem sent unto Hoham king of Hebron, and unto Piram king of Jarmuth, and unto Japhia king of Lachish, and unto Debir king of Eglon, saying,

4 Come up unto me, and help me, that we may smite Gibeon: for it has made peace with Joshua and with the children of Israel.

5 Therefore the five kings of the Amorites, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, the king of Eglon, gathered themselves together, and went up, they and all their hosts, and encamped before Gibeon, and made war against it.

Joshua rescues it

6 And the men of Gibeon sent unto Joshua to the camp to Gilgal, saying, Slack not thy hand from thy servants; come up to us quickly, and save us, and help us: for all the kings of the Amorites that dwell in the mountains are gathered together against us.

7 So Joshua ascended from Gilgal, he, and all the people of war with him, and all the mighty men of valour.

8 And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, Fear them not: for I have delivered them into thine hand; there shall not a man of them stand before you. [\[Josh 24:11\]](#);

9 Joshua therefore came unto them suddenly, *and* went up from Gilgal all night.

Elohim fights against them with hailstones

10 And the YAHWEH discomfited them before Israel, and slew them with a great slaughter at Gibeon, and chased them along the way that goes up to Bethhoron, and smote them to Azekah, and unto Makkedah. [\[Exod 23:27\]](#); [\[1Sam 7:10\]](#);

11 And it came to pass, as they fled from before Israel, *and* were in the going down to Bethhoron, that the YAHWEH cast down great stones from heaven upon them unto Azekah, and they died: *they were* more which died with hailstones than *they* whom the children of Israel slew with the sword.

The sun and moon stand still at the word of Joshua

12 Then spoke Joshua to the YAHWEH in the day when the YAHWEH delivered up the Amorites before the children of Israel, and he said in the sight of Israel, Sun, stand you still upon Gibeon; and you, Moon, in the valley of Ajalon. [\[Exod 34:10\]](#);

13 And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies. *Is* not this written in the book of Jasher? So the sun stood still in the midst of heaven, and hasted not to go down about a whole day. [\[2Sam 1:18\]](#);

14 And there was no day like that before it or after it, that the YAHWEH hearkened unto the voice of a man: for the YAHWEH fought for Israel.

15 And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.

The five kings are mured in a cave

16 But these five kings fled, and hid themselves in a cave at Makkedah.

17 And it was told Joshua, saying, The five kings are found hid in a cave at Makkedah.

18 And Joshua said, Roll great stones upon the mouth of the cave, and set men by it for to keep them:

19 And stay you not, *but* pursue after your enemies, and smite the hindmost of them; suffer them not to enter into their cities: for the YAHWEH your Elohim has delivered them into your hand.

20 And it came to pass, when Joshua and the children of Israel had made an end of slaying them with a very great slaughter, till they were consumed, that the rest *which* remained of them entered into fenced cities.

21 And all the people returned to the camp to Joshua at Makkedah in peace: none moved his tongue against any of the children of Israel.

They are brought forth

22 Then said Joshua, Open the mouth of the cave, and bring out those five kings unto me out of the cave.

23 And they did so, and brought forth those five kings unto him out of the cave, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, *and* the king of Eglon.

scornfully used

24 And it came to pass, when they brought out those kings unto Joshua, that Joshua called for all the men of Israel, and said unto the captains of the men of war which went with him, Come near, put your feet upon the necks of these kings. And they came near, and put their feet upon the necks of them.

25 And Joshua said unto them, Fear not, nor be dismayed, be strong and of good courage: for thus shall the YAHWEH do to all your enemies against whom you fight.

and hanged

26 And afterward Joshua smote them, and slew them, and hanged them on five trees: and they were hanging upon the trees until the evening. [Deut 21:23](#); [Josh 8:29](#);

27 And it came to pass at the time of the going down of the sun, *that* Joshua commanded, and they took them down off the trees, and cast them into the cave wherein they had been hid, and laid great stones in the cave's mouth, *which remain* until this very day.

Seven kings more are conquered

28 And that day Joshua took Makkedah, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and the king thereof he utterly destroyed, them, and all the beings that *were* therein; he let none remain: and he did to the king of Makkedah as he did unto the king of Jericho.

29 Then Joshua passed from Makkedah, and all Israel with him, unto Libnah, and fought against Libnah:

30 And the YAHWEH delivered it also, and the king thereof, into the hand of Israel; and he smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the beings that *were* therein; he let none remain in it; but did unto the king thereof as he did unto the king of Jericho.

31 And Joshua passed from Libnah, and all Israel with him, unto Lachish, and encamped against it, and fought against it:

32 And the YAHWEH delivered Lachish into the hand of Israel, which took it on the second day, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the beings that *were* therein, according to all that he had done to Libnah.

33 Then Horam king of Gezer came up to help Lachish; and Joshua smote him and his people, until he had left him none remaining.

34 And from Lachish Joshua passed unto Eglon, and all Israel with him; and they encamped against it, and fought against it:

35 And they took it on that day, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the beings that *were* therein he utterly destroyed that day, according to all that he had done to Lachish.

36 And Joshua went up from Eglon, and all Israel with him, unto Hebron; and they fought against it: [\[Judg 1:9\]](#);

37 And they took it, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and the king thereof, and all the cities thereof, and all the beings that *were* therein; he left none remaining, according to all that he had done to Eglon; but destroyed it utterly, and all the beings that *were* therein.

38 And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, to Debir; and fought against it:

39 And he took it, and the king thereof, and all the cities thereof; and they smote them with the edge of the sword, and utterly destroyed all the beings that *were* therein; he left none remaining: as he had done to Hebron, so he did to Debir, and to the king thereof; as he had done also to Libnah, and to her king.

40 So Joshua smote all the country of the hills, and of the south, and of the vale, and of the springs, and all their kings: he left none remaining, but utterly destroyed all that breathed, as the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel commanded. [Deut 7:2](#); [Deut 20:16-17](#); [Josh 8:2](#); [\[Josh 11:12\]](#); [\[Josh 12:7\]](#);

41 And Joshua smote them from Kadeshbarnea even unto Gaza, and all the country of Goshen, even unto Gibeon.

42 And all these kings and their land did Joshua take at one time, because the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel fought for Israel.

Joshua returns to Gilgal

43 And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.

Different kings overcome at the waters of Merom

- 1** And it came to pass, when Jabin king of Hazor had heard *those things*, that he sent to Jobab king of Madon, and to the king of Shimron, and to the king of Achshaph,
- 2** And to the kings that *were* on the north of the mountains, and of the plains south of Chinneroth, and in the valley, and in the borders of Dor on the west,
- 3** *And to* the Canaanite on the east and on the west, and *to* the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Jebusite in the mountains, and *to* the Hivite under Hermon in the land of Mizpeh.
- 4** And they went out, they and all their hosts with them, much people, even as the sand that *is* upon the sea shore in multitude, with horses and chariots very many.
- 5** And when all these kings were met together, they came and pitched together at the waters of Merom, to fight against Israel.
- 6** And the YAHWEH said unto Joshua, Be not afraid because of them: for to morrow about this time will I deliver them up all slain before Israel: you shall hough their horses, and burn their chariots with fire.
- 7** So Joshua came, and all the people of war with him, against them by the waters of Merom suddenly; and they fell upon them.
- 8** And the YAHWEH delivered them into the hand of Israel, who smote them, and chased them unto great Zidon, and unto Misrephothmaim, and unto the valley of Mizpeh eastward; and they smote them, until they left them none remaining. [\[Josh 24:11\];](#)
- 9** And Joshua did unto them as the YAHWEH bade him: he houghed their horses, and burnt their chariots with fire.

Hazor is taken and burnt

- 10** And Joshua at that time turned back, and took Hazor, and smote the king thereof with the sword: for Hazor before was the head of all those kingdoms.
- 11** And they smote all the beings that *were* therein with the edge of the sword, utterly destroying *them*: there was not any left to breathe: and he burnt Hazor with fire. [\[Deut 7:2\];](#)
- 12** And all the cities of those kings, and all the kings of them, did Joshua take, and smote them with the edge of the sword, *and* he utterly destroyed them, as Moses the servant of the YAHWEH commanded. [Deut 20:16-17; Josh 10:40;](#)
- 13** But *as for* the cities that stood still in their strength, Israel burned none of them, save Hazor only; *that* did Joshua burn.
- 14** And all the spoil of these cities, and the cattle, the children of Israel took for a prey unto themselves; but every man they smote with the edge of the sword, until they had destroyed them, neither left they any to breathe.
- 15** As the YAHWEH commanded Moses his servant, so did Moses command Joshua, and so did Joshua; he left nothing undone of all that the YAHWEH commanded Moses. [Exod 23:32-33; Exod 34:12; Num 33:52; Deut 7:2; Deut 20:16;](#)

All the country taken by Joshua

- 16** So Joshua took all that land, the hills, and all the south country, and all the land of Goshen, and the valley, and the plain, and the mountain of Israel, and the valley of the same;
- 17** *Even* from the mount Halak, that goes up to Seir, even unto Baalgad in the valley of Lebanon under mount Hermon: and all their kings he took, and smote them, and slew them.
- 18** Joshua made war a long time with all those kings.
- 19** There was not a city that made peace with the children of Israel, save the Hivites the inhabitants of Gibeon: all *other* they took in battle.

20 For it was of the YAHWEH to harden their hearts, that they should come against Israel in battle, that he might destroy them utterly, *and* that they might have no favor, but that he might destroy them, as the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

The Anakims cut off

21 And at that time came Joshua, and cut off the Anakims from the mountains, from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab, and from all the mountains of Judah, and from all the mountains of Israel: Joshua destroyed them utterly with their cities. [\[Judg 1:9\];](#)

22 There was none of the Anakims left in the land of the children of Israel: only in Gaza, in Gath, and in Ashdod, there remained.

The land rest from war

23 So Joshua took the whole land, according to all that the YAHWEH said unto Moses; and Joshua gave it for an inheritance unto Israel according to their divisions by their tribes. And the land rested from war. [\[Num 26:55\];](#)

The two kings whose countries Moses took and disposed of

1 Now these *are* the kings of the land, which the children of Israel smote, and possessed their land on the other side Jordan toward the rising of the sun, from the river Arnon unto mount Hermon, and all the plain on the east: [Ps 135:10]; [Ps 136:17];

2 Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt in Heshbon, *and* ruled from Aroer, which *is* upon the bank of the river Arnon, and from the middle of the river, and from half Gilead, even unto the river Jabbok, *which is* the border of the children of Ammon; Deut 3:8; Deut 3:16; [Num 21:24];

3 And from the plain to the sea of Chinneroth on the east, and unto the sea of the plain, *even* the salt sea on the east, the way to Bethjeshimoth; and from the south, under Ashdodthpishgah:

4 And the coast of Og king of Bashan, *which was* of the remnant of the giants, that dwelt at Ashtaroth and at Edrei, Deut 1:4;

5 And reigned in mount Hermon, and in Salcah, and in all Bashan, unto the border of the Geshurites and the Maachasites, and half Gilead, the border of Sihon king of Heshbon.

6 Them did Moses the servant of the YAHWEH and the children of Israel smite: and Moses the servant of the YAHWEH gave it *for* a possession unto the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh. Num 21:24; Num 32:33; [Ps 136:21];

The one and thirty kings on the other side of Jordan which Joshua smote

7 And these *are* the kings of the country which Joshua and the children of Israel smote on this side Jordan on the west, from Baalgad in the valley of Lebanon even unto the mount Halak, that goes up to Seir; which Joshua gave unto the tribes of Israel *for* a possession according to their divisions; Josh 10:40;

8 In the mountains, and in the valleys, and in the plains, and in the springs, and in the wilderness, and in the south country; the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Canaanites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites:

9 The king of Jericho, one; the king of Ai, which *is* beside Bethel, one;

10 The king of Jerusalem, one; the king of Hebron, one;

11 The king of Jarmuth, one; the king of Lachish, one;

12 The king of Eglon, one; the king of Gezer, one;

13 The king of Debir, one; the king of Geder, one;

14 The king of Hormah, one; the king of Arad, one;

15 The king of Libnah, one; the king of Adullam, one;

16 The king of Makkedah, one; the king of Bethel, one;

17 The king of Tappuah, one; the king of Hepher, one;

18 The king of Aphek, one; the king of Lasharon, one;

19 The king of Madon, one; the king of Hazor, one;

20 The king of Shimronmeron, one; the king of Achshaph, one;

21 The king of Taanach, one; the king of Megiddo, one;

22 The king of Kedesh, one; the king of Jokneam of Carmel, one;

23 The king of Dor in the coast of Dor, one; the king of the nations of Gilgal, one;

24 The king of Tirzah, one: all the kings thirty and one.

The bounds of the land not yet conquered

1 Now Joshua was old *and* stricken in years; and the YAHWEH said unto him, you are old *and* stricken in years, and there remaineth yet very much land to be possessed.

2 This *is* the land that yet remaineth: all the borders of the Philistines, and all Geshuri,

3 From Sihor, which *is* before Egypt, even unto the borders of Ekron northward, *which* is counted to the Canaanite: five lords of the Philistines; the Gazathites, and the Ashdothites, the Eshkalonites, the Gittites, and the Ekronites; also the Avites:

4 From the south, all the land of the Canaanites, and Mearah that *is* beside the Sidonians, unto Aphek, to the borders of the Amorites:

5 And the land of the Giblites, and all Lebanon, toward the sunrising, from Baalgad under mount Hermon unto the entering into Hamath.

6 All the inhabitants of the hill country from Lebanon unto Misrephothmaim, *and* all the Sidonians, them will I drive out from before the children of Israel: only divide you it by lot unto the Israelites for an inheritance, as I have commanded you. [Josh 23:5];

7 Now therefore divide this land for an inheritance unto the nine tribes, and the half tribe of Manasseh, [Gen 48:22]; [Ps 78:55];

The inheritance of the two tribes and half

8 With whom the Reubenites and the Gadites have received their inheritance, which Moses gave them, beyond Jordan eastward, *even* as Moses the servant of the YAHWEH gave them; [Num 32:33]; [Deut 29:8]; [Josh 22:4];

9 From Aroer, that *is* upon the bank of the river Arnon, and the city that *is* in the midst of the river, and all the plain of Medeba unto Dibon;

10 And all the cities of Sihon king of the Amorites, which reigned in Heshbon, unto the border of the children of Ammon;

11 And Gilead, and the border of the Geshurites and Maachasites, and all mount Hermon, and all Bashan unto Salcah;

12 All the kingdom of Og in Bashan, which reigned in Ashtaroth and in Edrei, who remained of the remnant of the giants: for these did Moses smite, and cast them out.

13 Nevertheless the children of Israel expelled not the Geshurites, nor the Maachasites: but the Geshurites and the Maachasites dwell among the Israelites until this day.

The Lord and his sacrifices are the inheritance of Levi

14 Only unto the tribe of Levi he gave none inheritance; the sacrifices of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel made by fire *are* their inheritance, as he said unto them.

The bounds of the inheritance of Reuben

15 And Moses gave unto the tribe of the children of Reuben *inheritance* according to their families.

16 And their coast was from Aroer, that *is* on the bank of the river Arnon, and the city that *is* in the midst of the river, and all the plain by Medeba;

17 Heshbon, and all her cities that *are* in the plain; Dibon, and Bamothbaal, and Bethbaalmeon,

18 And Jahazah, and Kedemoth, and Mephaath,

19 And Kirjathaim, and Sibmah, and Zarethshahar in the mount of the valley,

20 And Bethpeor, and Ashdothpisgah, and Bethjeshimoth,

21 And all the cities of the plain, and all the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, which reigned in Heshbon, whom Moses smote with the princes of Midian, Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, *which were* dukes of Sihon, dwelling in the country. [Num 31:8];

Balaam slain

22 Balaam also the son of Beor, the soothsayer, did the children of Israel slay with the sword among them that were slain by them. [Num 31:8](#);

23 And the border of the children of Reuben was Jordan, and the border *thereof*. This *was* the inheritance of the children of Reuben after their families, the cities and the villages thereof. [Num 34:14-15](#);

The bounds of the inheritance of Gad

24 And Moses gave *inheritance* unto the tribe of Gad, *even* unto the children of Gad according to their families. [\[1Chr 5:11\]](#);

25 And their coast was Jazer, and all the cities of Gilead, and half the land of the children of Ammon, unto Aroer that *is* before Rabbah;

26 And from Heshbon unto Ramathmizpeh, and Betonim; and from Mahanaim unto the border of Debir;

27 And in the valley, Betharam, and Bethnimrah, and Succoth, and Zaphon, the rest of the kingdom of Sihon king of Heshbon, Jordan and *his* border, *even* unto the edge of the sea of Chinnereth on the other side Jordan eastward.

28 This *is* the inheritance of the children of Gad after their families, the cities, and their villages.

and of the half tribe of Manasseh

29 And Moses gave *inheritance* unto the half tribe of Manasseh: and *this was the possession* of the half tribe of the children of Manasseh by their families.

30 And their coast was from Mahanaim, all Bashan, all the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, and all the towns of Jair, which *are* in Bashan, threescore cities:

31 And half Gilead, and Ashtaroth, and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan, *were pertaining* unto the children of Machir the son of Manasseh, *even* to the one half of the children of Machir by their families.

32 These *are the countries* which Moses did distribute for inheritance in the plains of Moab, on the other side Jordan, by Jericho, eastward.

33 But unto the tribe of Levi Moses gave not *any* inheritance: the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel *was* their inheritance, as he said unto them. [Num 18:20](#); [Deut 10:9](#); [Deut 18:2](#);

The nine tribes and a half are to have their inheritance by lot

1 And these *are the countries* which the children of Israel inherited in the land of Canaan, which Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the children of Israel, distributed for inheritance to them. [Num 34:17](#);

2 By lot *was* their inheritance, as the YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses, for the nine tribes, and *for* the half tribe. [Num 26:55](#); [\[Acts 13:19\]](#);

3 For Moses had given the inheritance of two tribes and a half tribe on the other side Jordan: but unto the Levites he gave none inheritance among them.

4 For the children of Joseph were two tribes, Manasseh and Ephraim: therefore they gave no part unto the Levites in the land, save cities to dwell *in*, with their suburbs for their cattle and for their substance. [\[Heb 7:5\]](#);

5 As the YAHWEH commanded Moses, so the children of Israel did, and they divided the land.

Caleb by privilege obtains Hebron

6 Then the children of Judah came unto Joshua in Gilgal: and Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenezite said unto him, you knowest the thing that the YAHWEH said unto Moses the man of Elohim concerning me and you in Kadeshbarnea. [Num 14:24](#); [Deut 1:36](#); [\[Num 14:30\]](#);

7 Forty years old *was* I when Moses the servant of the YAHWEH sent me from Kadeshbarnea to espy out the land; and I brought him word again as *it was* in mine heart.

8 Nevertheless my brethren that went up with me made the heart of the people melt: but I wholly followed the YAHWEH my Elohim. [Num 14:24](#);

9 And Moses swore on that day, saying, Surely the land whereon thy feet have trodden shall be thine inheritance, and thy children's for ever, because you have wholly followed the YAHWEH my Elohim. [\[Deut 11:24\]](#); [\[Josh 1:3\]](#);

10 And now, behold, the YAHWEH has kept me alive, as he said, these forty and five years, even since the YAHWEH spoke this word unto Moses, while *the children of* Israel wandered in the wilderness: and now, lo, I *am* this day fourscore and five years old.

11 As yet I *am as* strong this day as *I was* in the day that Moses sent me: as my strength *was* then, even so *is* my strength now, for war, both to go out, and to come in. [Num 27:17](#); [Deut 31:2](#);

12 Now therefore give me this mountain, whereof the YAHWEH spoke in that day; for you heardest in that day how the Anakims *were* there, and *that* the cities *were* great *and* fenced: if so be the YAHWEH *will be* with me, then I shall be able to drive them out, as the YAHWEH said.

13 And Joshua blessed him, and gave unto Caleb the son of Jephunneh Hebron for an inheritance. [\[Judg 1:20\]](#);

14 Hebron therefore became the inheritance of Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenezite unto this day, because that he wholly followed the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.

15 And the name of Hebron before *was* Kirjatharba; *which Arba was* a great man among the Anakims. And the land had rest from war. [\[Josh 15:13\]](#);

The borders of the lot Judah

- 1** *This* then was the lot of the tribe of the children of Judah by their families; *even* to the border of Edom the wilderness of Zin southward *was* the uttermost part of the south coast. [Num 34:3];
- 2** And their south border was from the shore of the salt sea, from the bay that looketh southward: Num 34:4;
- 3** And it went out to the south side to Maalehacabbim, and passed along to Zin, and ascended up on the south side unto Kadeshbarnea, and passed along to Hezron, and went up to Adar, and fetched a compass to Karkaa:
- 4** *From thence* it passed toward Azmon, and went out unto the river of Egypt; and the goings out of that coast were at the sea: this shall be your south coast.
- 5** And the east border *was* the salt sea, *even* unto the end of Jordan. And *their* border in the north quarter *was* from the bay of the sea at the uttermost part of Jordan:
- 6** And the border went up to Bethhogla, and passed along by the north of Betharabah; and the border went up to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben: [Josh 18:17];
- 7** And the border went up toward Debir from the valley of Achor, and so northward, looking toward Gilgal, that *is* before the going up to Adummim, which *is* on the south side of the river: and the border passed toward the waters of Enshemesh, and the goings out thereof were at Enrogel: [Josh 18:16]; [1Kgs 1:9];
- 8** And the border went up by the valley of the son of Hinnom unto the south side of the Jebusite; the same *is* Jerusalem: and the border went up to the top of the mountain that *lies* before the valley of Hinnom westward, which *is* at the end of the valley of the giants northward: [Josh 18:16];
- 9** And the border was drawn from the top of the hill unto the fountain of the water of Nephtoah, and went out to the cities of mount Ephron; and the border was drawn to Baalah, which *is* Kirjathjearim:
- 10** And the border compassed from Baalah westward unto mount Seir, and passed along unto the side of mount Jearim, which *is* Chesalon, on the north side, and went down to Bethshemesh, and passed on to Timnah:
- 11** And the border went out unto the side of Ekron northward: and the border was drawn to Shicron, and passed along to mount Baalah, and went out unto Jabneel; and the goings out of the border were at the sea.
- 12** And the west border *was* to the great sea, and the coast *thereof*. This *is* the coast of the children of Judah round about according to their families. Num 34:6;

Caleb's portion and conquest

- 13** And unto Caleb the son of Jephunneh he gave a part among the children of Judah, according to the commandment of the YAHWEH to Joshua, *even* the city of Arba the father of Anak, which *city is* Hebron. Josh 14:15; Judg 1:20; [Judg 1:9];
- 14** And Caleb drove thence the three sons of Anak, Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmai, the children of Anak. Judg 1:10;
- 15** And he went up thence to the inhabitants of Debir: and the name of Debir before *was* Kirjathsepher. [Judg 1:11];

Othniel, for his valour, has Achsah, Caleb's daughter, to wife

- 16** And Caleb said, He that smiteth Kirjathsepher, and taketh it, to him will I give Achsah my daughter to wife.
- 17** And Othniel the son of Kenaz, the brother of Caleb, took it: and he gave him Achsah his daughter to wife. [1Chr 4:13];

She obtains a blessing of her father

18 And it came to pass, as she came *unto him*, that she moved him to ask of her father a field: and she lighted off *her* ass; and Caleb said unto her, What wouldest you?

19 Who answered, Give me a blessing; for you have given me a south land; give me also springs of water. And he gave her the upper springs, and the nether springs.

20 This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Judah according to their families.

The cities of Judah

21 And the uttermost cities of the tribe of the children of Judah toward the coast of Edom southward were Kabzeel, and Eder, and Jagur,

22 And Kinah, and Dimonah, and Adadah,

23 And Kedesh, and Hazor, and Ithnan,

24 Ziph, and Telem, and Bealoth,

25 And Hazor, Hadattah, and Kerioth, *and* Hezron, which *is* Hazor,

26 Amam, and Shema, and Moladah,

27 And Hazargaddah, and Heshmon, and Bethpalet,

28 And Hazarshual, and Beersheba, and Bizjothjah,

29 Baalah, and Iim, and Azem,

30 And Eltolad, and Chesil, and Hormah,

31 And Ziklag, and Madmannah, and Sansannah,

32 And Lebaoth, and Shilhim, and Ain, and Rimmon: all the cities *are* twenty and nine, with their villages:

33 *And* in the valley, Eshtaol, and Zoreah, and Ashnah,

34 And Zanoah, and Engannim, Tappuah, and Enam,

35 Jarmuth, and Adullam, Socoh, and Azekah,

36 And Sharaim, and Adithaim, and Gederah, and Gederothaim; fourteen cities with their villages:

37 Zenan, and Hadashah, and Migdalgad,

38 And Dilean, and Mizpeh, and Joktheel,

39 Lachish, and Bozkath, and Eglon,

40 And Cabbon, and Lahmam, and Kithlish,

41 And Gederoth, Bethdagon, and Naamah, and Makkedah; sixteen cities with their villages:

42 Libnah, and Ether, and Ashan,

43 And Jiphtah, and Ashnah, and Nezib,

44 And Keilah, and Achzib, and Mareshah; nine cities with their villages:

45 Ekron, with her towns and her villages:

46 From Ekron even unto the sea, all that *lay* near Ashdod, with their villages:

47 Ashdod with her towns and her villages, Gaza with her towns and her villages, unto the river of Egypt, and the great sea, and the border *thereof*:

48 And in the mountains, Shamir, and Jattir, and Socoh,

49 And Dannah, and Kirjathsannah, which *is* Debir,

50 And Anab, and Eshtemoah, and Anim,

51 And Goshen, and Holon, and Giloh; eleven cities with their villages:

52 Arab, and Dumah, and Eshean,

53 And Janum, and Bethtappuah, and Aphekah,

54 And Humtah, and Kirjatharba, which *is* Hebron, and Zior; nine cities with their villages:

55 Maon, Carmel, and Ziph, and Juttah,

56 And Jezreel, and Jokdeam, and Zanoah,

57 Cain, Gibeah, and Timnah; ten cities with their villages:

58 Halhul, Bethzur, and Gedor,

59 And Maarath, and Bethanoth, and Eltekon; six cities with their villages:

60 Kirjathbaal, which *is* Kirjathjearim, and Rabbah; two cities with their villages:

61 In the wilderness, Betharabah, Middin, and Secacah,

62 And Nibshan, and the city of Salt, and Engedi; six cities with their villages.

The Jebusites unconquered

63 As for the Jebusites the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the children of Judah could not drive them out: but the Jebusites dwell with the children of Judah at Jerusalem unto this day.

The general borders of the sons of Joseph

- 1** And the lot of the children of Joseph fell from Jordan by Jericho, unto the water of Jericho on the east, to the wilderness that goes up from Jericho throughout mount Bethel, [\[Gen 48:22\]](#); [\[1Chr 7:28\]](#);
- 2** And goes out from Bethel to Luz, and passeth along unto the borders of Archi to Ataroth,
- 3** And goes down westward to the coast of Japhleti, unto the coast of Bethhoron the nether, and to Gezer: and the goings out thereof are at the sea.
- 4** So the children of Joseph, Manasseh and Ephraim, took their inheritance.

The border of the inheritance of Ephraim

- 5** And the border of the children of Ephraim according to their families was *thus*: even the border of their inheritance on the east side was Atarothaddar, unto Bethhoron the upper;
- 6** And the border went out toward the sea to Michmethah on the north side; and the border went about eastward unto Taanathshiloh, and passed by it on the east to Janohah;
- 7** And it went down from Janohah to Ataroth, and to Naarath, and came to Jericho, and went out at Jordan.
- 8** The border went out from Tappuah westward unto the river Kanah; and the goings out thereof were at the sea. This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Ephraim by their families.
- 9** And the separate cities for the children of Ephraim *were* among the inheritance of the children of Manasseh, all the cities with their villages.

The Canaanites of Gezer not conquered

- 10** And they drave not out the Canaanites that dwelt in Gezer: but the Canaanites dwell among the Ephraimites unto this day, and serve under tribute. [\[Judg 1:29\]](#);

The lot of Manasseh

1 There was also a lot for the tribe of Manasseh; for he *was* the firstborn of Joseph; *to wit*, for Machir the firstborn of Manasseh, the father of Gilead: because he was a man of war, therefore he had Gilead and Bashan. [Gen 46:20](#); [\[Gen 48:22\]](#); [\[Num 26:29\]](#);

2 There was also *a lot* for the rest of the children of Manasseh by their families; for the children of Abiezer, and for the children of Helek, and for the children of Asriel, and for the children of Shechem, and for the children of Hephher, and for the children of Shemida: these *were* the male children of Manasseh the son of Joseph by their families.

3 But Zelophehad, the son of Hephher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, had no sons, but daughters: and these *are* the names of his daughters, Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. [Num 26:33](#); [Num 27:1](#); [\[Num 36:2\]](#);

4 And they came near before Eleazar the priest, and before Joshua the son of Nun, and before the princes, saying, The YAHWEH commanded Moses to give us an inheritance among our brethren. Therefore according to the commandment of the YAHWEH he gave them an inheritance among the brethren of their father. [Num 27:7](#); [Num 36:2](#);

5 And there fell ten portions to Manasseh, beside the land of Gilead and Bashan, which *were* on the other side Jordan;

6 Because the daughters of Manasseh had an inheritance among his sons: and the rest of Manasseh's sons had the land of Gilead.

His coast

7 And the coast of Manasseh was from Asher to Michmethah, that *lies* before Shechem; and the border went along on the right hand unto the inhabitants of Entappuah.

8 *Now* Manasseh had the land of Tappuah: but Tappuah on the border of Manasseh *belonged* to the children of Ephraim;

9 And the coast descended unto the river Kanah, southward of the river: these cities of Ephraim *are* among the cities of Manasseh: the coast of Manasseh also *was* on the north side of the river, and the outgoings of it were at the sea:

10 Southward *it was* Ephraim's, and northward *it was* Manasseh's, and the sea is his border; and they met together in Asher on the north, and in Issachar on the east.

11 And Manasseh had in Issachar and in Asher Bethshean and her towns, and Ibleam and her towns, and the inhabitants of Dor and her towns, and the inhabitants of Endor and her towns, and the inhabitants of Taanach and her towns, and the inhabitants of Megiddo and her towns, *even* three countries. [\[Judg 1:27\]](#);

The Canaanites not driven out

12 Yet the children of Manasseh could not drive out *the inhabitants of* those cities; but the Canaanites would dwell in that land. [Judg 1:27](#);

13 Yet it came to pass, when the children of Israel were waxen strong, that they put the Canaanites to tribute; but did not utterly drive them out.

The children of Joseph obtain another lot

14 And the children of Joseph spoke unto Joshua, saying, Why have you given me *but* one lot and one portion to inherit, seeing I *am* a great people, forasmuch as the YAHWEH has blessed me hitherto?

15 And Joshua answered them, If you *be* a great people, *then* get you up to the wood *country*, and cut down for thyself there in the land of the Perizzites and of the giants, if mount Ephraim be too narrow for you.

16 And the children of Joseph said, The hill is not enough for us: and all the Canaanites that dwell in the land of the valley have chariots of iron, *both they* who *are* of Bethshean and her towns, and *they* who *are* of the valley of Jezreel.

17 And Joshua spoke unto the house of Joseph, *even* to Ephraim and to Manasseh, saying, you are a great people, and have great power: you shall not have one lot *only*:

18 But the mountain shall be thine; for it *is* a wood, and you shall cut it down: and the outgoings of it shall be thine: for you shall drive out the Canaanites, though they have iron chariots, *and* though they *be* strong.

The tabernacle is set up at Shiloh

1 And the whole congregation of the children of Israel assembled together at Shiloh, and set up the tabernacle of the congregation there. And the land was subdued before them.

The remainder of the land is described, and divided into seven parts

2 And there remained among the children of Israel seven tribes, which had not yet received their inheritance.

3 And Joshua said unto the children of Israel, How long *are* you slack to go to possess the land, which the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers has given you?

4 Give out from among you three men for *each* tribe: and I will send them, and they shall rise, and go through the land, and describe it according to the inheritance of them; and they shall come *again* to me.

5 And they shall divide it into seven parts: Judah shall abide in their coast on the south, and the house of Joseph shall abide in their coasts on the north.

6 *you* shall therefore describe the land *into* seven parts, and bring *the description* hither to me, that I may cast lots for you here before the YAHWEH our Elohim.

7 But the Levites have no part among you; for the priesthood of the YAHWEH *is* their inheritance: and Gad, and Reuben, and half the tribe of Manasseh, have received their inheritance beyond Jordan on the east, which Moses the servant of the YAHWEH gave them. [\[Josh 22:10\];](#)

8 And the men arose, and went away: and Joshua charged them that went to describe the land, saying, Go and walk through the land, and describe it, and come again to me, that I may here cast lots for you before the YAHWEH in Shiloh.

9 And the men went and passed through the land, and described it by cities into seven parts in a book, and came *again* to Joshua to the host at Shiloh.

Joshua distributes it by lot

10 And Joshua cast lots for them in Shiloh before the YAHWEH: and there Joshua divided the land unto the children of Israel according to their divisions.

The lot and border of Benjamin

11 And the lot of the tribe of the children of Benjamin came up according to their families: and the coast of their lot came forth between the children of Judah and the children of Joseph.

12 And their border on the north side was from Jordan; and the border went up to the side of Jericho on the north side, and went up through the mountains westward; and the goings out thereof were at the wilderness of Bethaven. [Josh 7:2;](#)

13 And the border went over from thence toward Luz, to the side of Luz, which *is* Bethel, southward; and the border descended to Atarothadar, near the hill that *lies* on the south side of the nether Bethhoron.

14 And the border was drawn *thence*, and compassed the corner of the sea southward, from the hill that *lies* before Bethhoron southward; and the goings out thereof were at Kirjathbaal, which *is* Kirjathjearim, a city of the children of Judah: this *was* the west quarter.

15 And the south quarter *was* from the end of Kirjathjearim, and the border went out on the west, and went out to the well of waters of Nephtoah:

16 And the border came down to the end of the mountain that *lies* before the valley of the son of Hinnom, *and* which *is* in the valley of the giants on the north, and descended to the valley of Hinnom, to the side of Jebusi on the south, and descended to Enrogel, [Josh 15:8; Josh 15:7; \[1Kgs 1:9\];](#)

17 And was drawn from the north, and went forth to Enshemesh, and went forth toward Geliloth, which *is* over against the going up of Adummim, and descended to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben, [Josh 15:6](#);

18 And passed along toward the side over against Arabah northward, and went down unto Arabah:

19 And the border passed along to the side of Bethhoglah northward: and the outgoings of the border were at the north bay of the salt sea at the south end of Jordan: this *was* the south coast.

20 And Jordan was the border of it on the east side. This *was* the inheritance of the children of Benjamin, by the coasts thereof round about, according to their families.

Their cities

21 Now the cities of the tribe of the children of Benjamin according to their families were Jericho, and Bethhoglah, and the valley of Keziz,

22 And Betharabah, and Zemaraim, and Bethel,

23 And Avim, and Parah, and Ophrah,

24 And Chepharhaammonai, and Ophni, and Gaba; twelve cities with their villages:

25 Gibeon, and Ramah, and Beeroth,

26 And Mizpeh, and Chephirah, and Mozah,

27 And Rekem, and Irpeel, and Taralah,

28 And Zelah, Eleph, and Jebusi, which *is* Jerusalem, Gibeath, *and* Kirjath; fourteen cities with their villages. This *is* the inheritance of the children of Benjamin according to their families.

The lot of Simeon

- 1** And the second lot came forth to Simeon, *even* for the tribe of the children of Simeon according to their families: and their inheritance was within the inheritance of the children of Judah. [\[Gen 49:7\]](#);
- 2** And they had in their inheritance Beersheba, or Sheba, and Moladah,
- 3** And Hazarshual, and Balah, and Azem,
- 4** And Eltolad, and Bethul, and Hormah,
- 5** And Ziklag, and Bethmarcaboth, and Hazarsusah,
- 6** And Bethlebaoth, and Sharuhem; thirteen cities and their villages:
- 7** Ain, Remmon, and Ether, and Ashan; four cities and their villages:
- 8** And all the villages that *were* round about these cities to Baalathbeer, Ramath of the south. This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Simeon according to their families.
- 9** Out of the portion of the children of Judah *was* the inheritance of the children of Simeon: for the part of the children of Judah was too much for them: therefore the children of Simeon had their inheritance within the inheritance of them.

of Zebulun

- 10** And the third lot came up for the children of Zebulun according to their families: and the border of their inheritance was unto Sarid: [\[Gen 49:13\]](#);
- 11** And their border went up toward the sea, and Maralah, and reached to Dabbasheth, and reached to the river that *is* before Jokneam;
- 12** And turned from Sarid eastward toward the sunrising unto the border of Chislothtabor, and then goes out to Daberath, and goes up to Japhia,
- 13** And from thence passeth on along on the east to Gittahhepher, to Ittahkazin, and goes out to Remmonmethoar to Neah;
- 14** And the border compasses it on the north side to Hannathon: and the outgoings thereof are in the valley of Jipthahel:
- 15** And Kattath, and Nahallal, and Shimron, and Idalah, and Bethlehem: twelve cities with their villages.
- 16** This *is* the inheritance of the children of Zebulun according to their families, these cities with their villages.

of Issachar

- 17** *And* the fourth lot came out to Issachar, for the children of Issachar according to their families.
- 18** And their border was toward Jezreel, and Chesulloth, and Shunem,
- 19** And Hapharaim, and Shion, and Anaharath,
- 20** And Rabbith, and Kishion, and Abez,
- 21** And Remeth, and Engannim, and Enhaddah, and Bethpazzez;
- 22** And the coast reacheth to Tabor, and Shahazimah, and Bethshemesh; and the outgoings of their border were at Jordan: sixteen cities with their villages.
- 23** This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Issachar according to their families, the cities and their villages.

of Asher

- 24** And the fifth lot came out for the tribe of the children of Asher according to their families.

25 And their border was Helkath, and Hali, and Beten, and Achshaph,
26 And Alammelech, and Amad, and Misheal; and reacheth to Carmel westward, and to Shihorlibnath;
27 And turneth toward the sunrising to Bethdagon, and reacheth to Zebulun, and to the valley of Jiphthahel toward the north side of Bethemek, and Neiel, and goes out to Cabul on the left hand,
28 And Hebron, and Rehob, and Hammon, and Kanah, *even* unto great Zidon;
29 And *then* the coast turneth to Ramah, and to the strong city Tyre; and the coast turneth to Hosah; and the outgoings thereof are at the sea from the coast to Achzib:
30 Ummah also, and Aphek, and Rehob: twenty and two cities with their villages.
31 This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Asher according to their families, these cities with their villages.

of Naphtali

32 The sixth lot came out to the children of Naphtali, *even* for the children of Naphtali according to their families.
33 And their coast was from Heleph, from Allon to Zaanannim, and Adami, Nekeb, and Jabneel, unto Lakum; and the outgoings thereof were at Jordan:
34 And *then* the coast turneth westward to Aznothtabor, and goes out from thence to Hukkok, and reacheth to Zebulun on the south side, and reacheth to Asher on the west side, and to Judah upon Jordan toward the sunrising.
35 And the fenced cities *are* Ziddim, Zer, and Hammath, Rakkath, and Chinnereth,
36 And Adamah, and Ramah, and Hazor,
37 And Kedesh, and Edrei, and Enhazor,
38 And Iron, and Migdalel, Horem, and Bethanath, and Bethshemesh; nineteen cities with their villages.
39 This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Naphtali according to their families, the cities and their villages.

of Dan

40 *And* the seventh lot came out for the tribe of the children of Dan according to their families.
41 And the coast of their inheritance was Zorah, and Eshtaol, and Irshemesh,
42 And Shaalabbin, and Ajalon, and Jethlah,
43 And Elon, and Thimnathah, and Ekron,
44 And Eltekeh, and Gibbethon, and Baalath,
45 And Jehud, and Beneberak, and Gathrimmon,
46 And Mejarkon, and Rakkon, with the border before Japho.
47 And the coast of the children of Dan went out *too little* for them: therefore the children of Dan went up to fight against Leshem, and took it, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and possessed it, and dwelt therein, and called Leshem, Dan, after the name of Dan their father. [[Judg 18:29](#)];
48 This *is* the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Dan according to their families, these cities with their villages.

The children of Israel give an inheritance to Joshua

49 When they had made an end of dividing the land for inheritance by their coasts, the children of Israel gave an inheritance to Joshua the son of Nun among them:
50 According to the word of the YAHWEH they gave him the city which he asked, *even* Timnathserah in mount Ephraim: and he built the city, and dwelt therein. [[Josh 24:30](#)];

51 These *are* the inheritances, which Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the children of Israel, divided for an inheritance by lot in Shiloh before the YAHWEH, at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. So they made an end of dividing the country.

JOSHUA TWENTY

Elohim commands

- 1** The YAHWEH also spoke unto Joshua, saying,
- 2** Speak to the children of Israel, saying, Appoint out for you cities of refuge, whereof I spoke unto you by the hand of Moses: [Exod 21:13](#); [Num 35:6](#); [Deut 19:1-2](#); [[Num 35:10](#)]; [[Deut 19:2](#)];
- 3** That the slayer that killeth *any* person unawares *and* unwittingly may flee thither: and they shall be your refuge from the avenger of blood.
- 4** And when he flees unto one of those cities shall stand at the entering of the gate of the city, and shall declare his cause in the ears of the elders of that city, they shall take him into the city unto them, and give him a place, that he may dwell among them. [Num 35:22-23](#); [Deut 19:4-5](#);
- 5** And if the avenger of blood pursue after him, then they shall not deliver the slayer up into his hand; because he smote his neighbour unwittingly, and hated him not before.
- 6** And he shall dwell in that city, until he stand before the congregation for judgment, *and* until the death of the high priest that shall be in those days: then shall the slayer return, and come unto his own city, and unto his own house, unto the city from whence he fled.

and the children of Israel appoint the six cities of refuge

- 7** And they appointed Kedesh in Galilee in mount Naphtali, and Shechem in mount Ephraim, and Kirjatharba, which *is* Hebron, in the mountain of Judah. [[Deut 19:9](#)];
- 8** And on the other side Jordan by Jericho eastward, they assigned Bezer in the wilderness upon the plain out of the tribe of Reuben, and Ramoth in Gilead out of the tribe of Gad, and Golan in Bashan out of the tribe of Manasseh. [Deut 4:43](#); [[Num 35:14](#)];
- 9** These were the cities appointed for all the children of Israel, and for the stranger that sojourneth among them, that whosoever killeth *any* person at unawares might flee thither, and not die by the hand of the avenger of blood, until he stood before the congregation.

JOSHUA TWENTY-ONE

Eight and forty cities given by lot, out of the other tribes, unto the Levites

- 1** Then came near the heads of the fathers of the Levites unto Eleazar the priest, and unto Joshua the son of Nun, and unto the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the children of Israel; [1Chr 6:54](#);
- 2** And they spoke unto them at Shiloh in the land of Canaan, saying, The YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses to give us cities to dwell in, with the suburbs thereof for our cattle. [Num 35:2](#);
- 3** And the children of Israel gave unto the Levites out of their inheritance, at the commandment of the YAHWEH, these cities and their suburbs. [[Gen 49:7](#)];
- 4** And the lot came out for the families of the Kohasites: and the children of Aaron the priest, *which were* of the Levites, had by lot out of the tribe of Judah, and out of the tribe of Simeon, and out of the tribe of Benjamin, thirteen cities.

5 And the rest of the children of Kohas *had* by lot out of the families of the tribe of Ephraim, and out of the tribe of Dan, and out of the half tribe of Manasseh, ten cities.

6 And the children of Gershon *had* by lot out of the families of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the half tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.

7 The children of Merari by their families *had* out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.

8 And the children of Israel gave by lot unto the Levites these cities with their suburbs, as the YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses.

9 And they gave out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, these cities which are *here* mentioned by name, [2Chr 31:15];

10 Which the children of Aaron, *being* of the families of the Kohasites, *who were* of the children of Levi, had: for theirs was the first lot.

11 And they gave them the city of Arba the father of Anak, which *city is* Hebron, in the hill *country* of Judah, with the suburbs thereof round about it.

12 But the fields of the city, and the villages thereof, gave they to Caleb the son of Jephunneh for his possession. [1Chr 6:56];

13 Thus they gave to the children of Aaron the priest Hebron with her suburbs, *to be* a city of refuge for the slayer; and Libnah with her suburbs,

14 And Jattir with her suburbs, and Eshtemoa with her suburbs,

15 And Holon with her suburbs, and Debir with her suburbs,

16 And Ain with her suburbs, and Juttah with her suburbs, *and* Bethshemesh with her suburbs; nine cities out of those two tribes.

17 And out of the tribe of Benjamin, Gibeon with her suburbs, Geba with her suburbs,

18 Anathoth with her suburbs, and Almon with her suburbs; four cities.

19 All the cities of the children of Aaron, the priests, *were* thirteen cities with their suburbs.

20 And the families of the children of Kohas, the Levites which remained of the children of Kohas, even they had the cities of their lot out of the tribe of Ephraim.

21 For they gave them Shechem with her suburbs in mount Ephraim, *to be* a city of refuge for the slayer; and Gezer with her suburbs, [Num 35:6];

22 And Kibzaim with her suburbs, and Bethhoron with her suburbs; four cities.

23 And out of the tribe of Dan, Eltekeh with her suburbs, Gibbethon with her suburbs,

24 Aijalon with her suburbs, Gathrimmon with her suburbs; four cities.

25 And out of the half tribe of Manasseh, Tanach with her suburbs, and Gathrimmon with her suburbs; two cities.

26 All the cities *were* ten with their suburbs for the families of the children of Kohas that remained.

27 And unto the children of Gershon, of the families of the Levites, out of the *other* half tribe of Manasseh *they gave* Golan in Bashan with her suburbs, *to be* a city of refuge for the slayer; and Beeshterah with her suburbs; two cities.

28 And out of the tribe of Issachar, Kishon with her suburbs, Dabareh with her suburbs,

29 Jarmuth with her suburbs, Engannim with her suburbs; four cities.

30 And out of the tribe of Asher, Mishal with her suburbs, Abdon with her suburbs,

31 Helkath with her suburbs, and Rehob with her suburbs; four cities.

32 And out of the tribe of Naphtali, Kedesh in Galilee with her suburbs, *to be* a city of refuge for the slayer; and Hammothdor with her suburbs, and Kartan with her suburbs; three cities.

33 All the cities of the Gershonites according to their families *were* thirteen cities with their suburbs.

34 And unto the families of the children of Merari, the rest of the Levites, out of the tribe of Zebulun, Jokneam with her suburbs, and Kartah with her suburbs,

35 Dimnah with her suburbs, Nahalal with her suburbs; four cities.

36 And out of the tribe of Reuben, Bezer with her suburbs, and Jahazah with her suburbs,

37 Kedemoth with her suburbs, and Mephaath with her suburbs; four cities.

38 And out of the tribe of Gad, Ramoth in Gilead with her suburbs, *to be* a city of refuge for the slayer; and Mahanaim with her suburbs,

39 Heshbon with her suburbs, Jazer with her suburbs; four cities in all.

40 So all the cities for the children of Merari by their families, which were remaining of the families of the Levites, were *by* their lot twelve cities.

41 All the cities of the Levites within the possession of the children of Israel *were* forty and eight cities with their suburbs.

42 These cities were every one with their suburbs round about them: thus *were* all these cities.

Elohim gives the land, and rest unto the Israelites, according to his promise

43 And the YAHWEH gave unto Israel all the land which he swore to give unto their fathers; and they possessed it, and dwelt therein.

44 And the YAHWEH gave them rest round about, according to all that he swore unto their fathers: and there stood not a man of all their enemies before them; the YAHWEH delivered all their enemies into their hand.

45 There failed not ought of any good thing which the YAHWEH had spoken unto the house of Israel; all came to pass. [\[1Kgs 8:56\];](#)

The two tribes and a half with a blessing are sent home

- 1** Then Joshua called the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh,
2 And said unto them, you have kept all that Moses the servant of the YAHWEH commanded you, and have obeyed my voice in all that I commanded you: [Num 32:20; Deut 3:18;](#)
3 **you** have not left your brethren these many days unto this day, but have kept the charge of the commandment of the YAHWEH your Elohim.
4 And now the YAHWEH your Elohim has given rest unto your brethren, as he promised them: therefore now return you, and get you unto your tents, *and* unto the land of your possession, which Moses the servant of the YAHWEH gave you on the other side Jordan. [Num 32:33; Deut 3:13; Deut 29:8; Josh 13:8;](#)
5 But take diligent heed to do the commandment and the law, which Moses the servant of the YAHWEH charged you, to love the YAHWEH your Elohim, and to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments, and to cleave unto him, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your being. [Deut 10:12;](#)
6 So Joshua blessed them, and sent them away: and they went unto their tents.
7 Now to the *one* half of the tribe of Manasseh Moses had given *possession* in Bashan: but unto the *other* half thereof gave Joshua among their brethren on this side Jordan westward. And when Joshua sent them away also unto their tents, then he blessed them,
8 And he spoke unto them, saying, Return with much riches unto your tents, and with very much cattle, with silver, and with gold, and with brass, and with iron, and with very much raiment: divide the spoil of your enemies with your brethren.
9 And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh returned, and departed from the children of Israel out of Shiloh, which *is* in the land of Canaan, to go unto the country of Gilead, to the land of their possession, whereof they were possessed, according to the word of the YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

They build the altar of testimony in their journey

- 10** And when they came unto the borders of Jordan, that *are* in the land of Canaan, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh built there an altar by Jordan, a great altar to see to. [Josh 18:7;](#)

The Israelites are offended thereat

- 11** And the children of Israel heard say, Behold, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh have built an altar over against the land of Canaan, in the borders of Jordan, at the passage of the children of Israel.
12 And when the children of Israel heard *of it*, the whole congregation of the children of Israel gathered themselves together at Shiloh, to go up to war against them.
13 And the children of Israel sent unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, into the land of Gilead, Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest,
14 And with him ten princes, of each chief house a prince throughout all the tribes of Israel; and each one *was* a head of the house of their fathers among the thousands of Israel.
15 And they came unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, unto the land of Gilead, and they spoke with them, saying,
16 Thus saith the whole congregation of the YAHWEH, What trespass *is* this that you have committed against the Elohim of Israel, to turn away this day from following the YAHWEH, in that you have built you an altar, that you might rebel this day against the YAHWEH?
17 *Is* the iniquity of Peor too little for us, from which we are not cleansed until this day, although there was a plague in the congregation of the YAHWEH, [Num 25:3; Deut 4:3; \[Num 25:4\];](#)

18 But that you must turn away this day from following the YAHWEH? and it will be, *seeing* you rebel to day against the YAHWEH, that to morrow he will be wroth with the whole congregation of Israel.

19 Notwithstanding, if the land of your possession *be* unclean, *then* pass you over unto the land of the possession of the YAHWEH, wherein the YAHWEH'S tabernacle dwelleth, and take possession among us: but rebel not against the YAHWEH, nor rebel against us, in building you an altar beside the altar of the YAHWEH our Elohim.

20 Did not Achan the son of Zerah commit a trespass in the accursed thing, and wrath fell on all the congregation of Israel? and that man perished not alone in his iniquity. [Josh 7:1];

They vindicate their conduct, and give them good satisfaction

21 Then the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh answered, and said unto the heads of the thousands of Israel,

22 The YAHWEH Elohim of gods, the YAHWEH Elohim of gods, he knoweth, and Israel he shall know; if *it be* in rebellion, or if in transgression against the YAHWEH, (save us not this day,) Ps 50:1;

23 That we have built us an altar to turn from following the YAHWEH, or if to offer thereon burnt offering or meat offering, or if to offer peace offerings thereon, let the YAHWEH himself require *it*;

24 And if we have not *rather* done it for fear of *this* thing, saying, In time to come your children might speak unto our children, saying, What have you to do with the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel?

25 For the YAHWEH has made Jordan a border between us and you, you children of Reuben and children of Gad; you have no part in the YAHWEH: so shall your children make our children cease from fearing the YAHWEH.

26 Therefore we said, Let us now prepare to build us an altar, not for burnt offering, nor for sacrifice:

27 But *that* it *may be* a witness between us, and you, and our generations after us, that we might do the service of the YAHWEH before him with our burnt offerings, and with our sacrifices, and with our peace offerings; that your children may not say to our children in time to come, you have no part in the YAHWEH. Gen 31:48; Josh 24:27;

28 Therefore said we, that it shall be, when they should *so* say to us or to our generations in time to come, that we may say *again*, Behold the pattern of the altar of the YAHWEH, which our fathers made, not for burnt offerings, nor for sacrifices; but it *is* a witness between us and you.

29 Elohim forbid that we should rebel against the YAHWEH, and turn this day from following the YAHWEH, to build an altar for burnt offerings, for meat offerings, or for sacrifices, beside the altar of the YAHWEH our Elohim that *is* before his tabernacle.

30 And when Phinehas the priest, and the princes of the congregation and heads of the thousands of Israel which *were* with him, heard the words that the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the children of Manasseh spoke, it pleased them.

31 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest said unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the children of Manasseh, This day we perceive that the YAHWEH *is* among us, because you have not committed this trespass against the YAHWEH: now you have delivered the children of Israel out of the hand of the YAHWEH.

32 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, and the princes, returned from the children of Reuben, and from the children of Gad, out of the land of Gilead, unto the land of Canaan, to the children of Israel, and brought them word again.

33 And the thing pleased the children of Israel; and the children of Israel blessed Elohim, and did not intend to go up against them in battle, to destroy the land wherein the children of Reuben and Gad dwelt.

34 And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad called the altar *Ed*: for it *shall be* a witness between us that the YAHWEH *is* Elohim.

Joshua's exhortation before his death

1 And it came to pass a long time after that the YAHWEH had given rest unto Israel from all their enemies round about, that Joshua waxed old *and* stricken in age.

2 And Joshua called for all Israel, *and* for their elders, and for their heads, and for their judges, and for their officers, and said unto them, I am old *and* stricken in age:

by former benefits

3 And you have seen all that the YAHWEH your Elohim has done unto all these nations because of you; for the YAHWEH your Elohim *is* he that has fought for you.

4 Behold, I have divided unto you by lot these nations that remain, to be an inheritance for your tribes, from Jordan, with all the nations that I have cut off, even unto the great sea westward.

by promises

5 And the YAHWEH your Elohim, he shall expel them from before you, and drive them from out of your sight; and you shall possess their land, as the YAHWEH your Elohim has promised unto you. [Exod 14:14](#); [Exod 23:27](#); [Num 33:53](#); [Deut 6:19](#); [Josh 13:6](#);

6 Be you therefore very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the law of Moses, that you turn not aside therefrom *to* the right hand or *to* the left; [Deut 5:32](#); [Deut 28:14](#);

7 That you come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear *by them*, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them: [Exod 23:13](#); [Ps 16:4](#); [Jer 5:7](#); [Zeph 1:5](#); [Eph 5:3](#);

8 But cleave unto the YAHWEH your Elohim, as you have done unto this day. [Deut 11:22](#);

9 For the YAHWEH has driven out from before you great nations and strong: but *as for* you, no man has been able to stand before you unto this day.

10 One man of you shall chase a thousand: for the YAHWEH your Elohim, he *it is* that fighteth for you, as he has promised you. [Lev 26:8](#); [Deut 32:30](#);

and by threatenings

11 Take good heed therefore unto yourselves, that you love the YAHWEH your Elohim.

12 Else if you do in any wise go back, and cleave unto the remnant of these nations, *even* these that remain among you, and shall make marriages with them, and go in unto them, and they to you:

13 Know for a certainty that the YAHWEH your Elohim will no more drive out *any of* these nations from before you; but they shall be snares and traps unto you, and scourges in your sides, and thorns in your eyes, until you perish from off this good land which the YAHWEH your Elohim has given you. [\[Exod 23:33\]](#); [\[Num 33:55\]](#); [\[Judg 2:3\]](#); [\[Judg 2:21\]](#);

14 And, behold, this day I *am* going the way of all the earth: and you know in all your hearts and in all your beings, that not one thing has failed of all the good things which the YAHWEH your Elohim spoke concerning you; all are come to pass unto you, *and* not one thing has failed thereof.

15 Therefore it shall come to pass, *that* as all good things are come upon you, which the YAHWEH your Elohim promised you; so shall the YAHWEH bring upon you all evil things, until he have destroyed you from off this good land which the YAHWEH your Elohim has given you. [\[Josh 24:20\]](#);

16 When you have transgressed the covenant of the YAHWEH your Elohim, which he commanded you, and have gone and served other gods, and bowed yourselves to them; then shall the anger of the YAHWEH be kindled against you, and you shall perish quickly from off the good land which he has given unto you.

Joshua assembles the tribes at Shechem

1 And Joshua gathered all the tribes of Israel to Shechem, and called for the elders of Israel, and for their heads, and for their judges, and for their officers; and they presented themselves before Elohim.

A brief history of Elohim's benefits, from Terah

2 And Joshua said unto all the people, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Your fathers dwelt on the other side of the flood in old time, *even* Terah, the father of Abraham, and the father of Nachor: and they served other gods. [Deut 26:5](#); [Gen 11:26](#); [Gen 11:31](#); [[Gen 11:27](#)];

3 And I took your father Abraham from the other side of the flood, and led him throughout all the land of Canaan, and multiplied his seed, and gave him Isaac. [Gen 12:1](#); [Gen 21:2](#);

4 And I gave unto Isaac Jacob and Esau: and I gave unto Esau mount Seir, to possess it; but Jacob and his children went down into Egypt. [Gen 25:24](#); [Gen 36:8](#); [Gen 46:1](#); [[Gen 46:4](#)];

5 I sent Moses also and Aaron, and I plagued Egypt, according to that which I did among them: and afterward I brought you out. [Exod 3:10](#); [Exod 12:37](#);

6 And I brought your fathers out of Egypt: and you came unto the sea; and the Egyptians pursued after your fathers with chariots and horsemen unto the Red sea. [Exod 14:1](#); [[Exod 14:9](#)];

7 And when they cried unto the YAHWEH, he put darkness between you and the Egyptians, and brought the sea upon them, and covered them; and your eyes have seen what I have done in Egypt: and you dwelt in the wilderness a long time.

8 And I brought you into the land of the Amorites, which dwelt on the other side Jordan; and they fought with you: and I gave them into your hand, that you might possess their land; and I destroyed them from before you. [Num 21:21](#); [Num 21:33](#); [[Gen 48:22](#)]; [[Num 21:23](#)]; [[Num 21:24](#)]; [[Amos 2:9](#)];

9 Then Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab, arose and warred against Israel, and sent and called Balaam the son of Beor to curse you: [Num 22:5](#); [Deut 23:4](#); [Judg 11:25](#); [[Neh 13:2](#)];

10 But I would not hearken unto Balaam; therefore he blessed you still: so I delivered you out of his hand.

11 And you went over Jordan, and came unto Jericho: and the men of Jericho fought against you, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Girgashites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites; and I delivered them into your hand. [Josh 3:14](#); [Josh 6:1](#); [Josh 6:20](#); [Josh 10:8](#); [Josh 11:8](#);

12 And I sent the hornet before you, which drave them out from before you, *even* the two kings of the Amorites; *but* not with thy sword, nor with thy bow. [Exod 23:28](#); [Deut 7:20](#); [Ps 44:3](#);

13 And I have given you a land for which you did not labour, and cities which you built not, and you dwell in them; of the vineyards and oliveyards which you planted not do you eat. [Deut 6:10-12](#);

He renews the covenant between them and Elohim

14 Now therefore fear the YAHWEH, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve you the YAHWEH.

15 And if it seem evil unto you to serve the YAHWEH, choose you this day whom you will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that *were* on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land you dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the YAHWEH. [[1Kgs 18:21](#)]; [[2Chr 15:12](#)];

16 And the people answered and said, Elohim forbid that we should forsake the YAHWEH, to serve other gods;

17 For the YAHWEH our Elohim, he *it is* that brought us up and our fathers out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage, and which did those great signs in our sight, and preserved us in all the way wherein we went, and among all the people through whom we passed:

18 And the YAHWEH drave out from before us all the people, *even* the Amorites which dwelt in the land: *therefore* will we also serve the YAHWEH; for he *is* our Elohim.

19 And Joshua said unto the people, you cannot serve the YAHWEH: for he *is* a holy Elohim; he *is* a jealous Elohim; he will not forgive your transgressions nor your sins.

20 If you forsake the YAHWEH, and serve strange gods, then he will turn and do you hurt, and consume you, after that he has done you good. [Josh 23:15](#);

21 And the people said unto Joshua, Nay; but we will serve the YAHWEH.

22 And Joshua said unto the people, you *are* witnesses against yourselves that you have chosen you the YAHWEH, to serve him. And they said, *We are* witnesses.

23 Now therefore put away, *said he*, the strange gods which *are* among you, and incline your heart unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.

24 And the people said unto Joshua, The YAHWEH our Elohim will we serve, and his voice will we obey.

25 So Joshua made a covenant with the people that day, and set them a statute and an ordinance in Shechem. [Exod 15:25](#); [\[2Chr 34:31\]](#);

A stone the witness of the covenant

26 And Joshua wrote these words in the book of the law of Elohim, and took a great stone, and set it up there under an oak, that *was* by the sanctuary of the YAHWEH. [\[Judg 9:6\]](#);

27 And Joshua said unto all the people, Behold, this stone shall be a witness unto us; for it has heard all the words of the YAHWEH which he spoke unto us: it shall be therefore a witness unto you, lest you deny your Elohim. [\[Josh 22:27\]](#);

28 So Joshua let the people depart, every man unto his inheritance. [\[Judg 2:6\]](#);

Joshua's age, death, and burial

29 And it came to pass after these things, that Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of the YAHWEH, died, *being* a hundred and ten years old.

30 And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnathserah, which *is* in mount Ephraim, on the north side of the hill of Gaash. [Josh 19:50](#); [Judg 2:9](#);

31 And Israel served the YAHWEH all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders that overlived Joshua, and which had known all the works of the YAHWEH, that he had done for Israel.

Joseph's bones are buried

32 And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem, in a parcel of ground which Jacob bought of the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem for a hundred pieces of silver: and it became the inheritance of the children of Joseph. [Gen 50:25](#); [Exod 13:19](#); [\[Gen 33:18\]](#); [\[John 4:5\]](#); [\[Acts 7:16\]](#);

Eleazar dies

33 And Eleazar the son of Aaron died; and they buried him in a hill *that pertained to* Phinehas his son, which was given him in mount Ephraim.

Judges

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#)

JUDGES ONE

The acts of Judah and Simeon

1 Now after the death of Joshua it came to pass, that the children of Israel asked the YAHWEH, saying, Who shall go up for us against the Canaanites first, to fight against them? [Judg 20:18](#);

2 And the YAHWEH said, Judah shall go up: behold, I have delivered the land into his hand.

3 And Judah said unto Simeon his brother, Come up with me into my lot, that we may fight against the Canaanites; and I likewise will go with you into thy lot. So Simeon went with him.

Adonibezek justly requited

4 And Judah went up; and the YAHWEH delivered the Canaanites and the Perizzites into their hand: and they slew of them in Bezek ten thousand men.

5 And they found Adonibezek in Bezek: and they fought against him, and they slew the Canaanites and the Perizzites.

6 But Adonibezek fled; and they pursued after him, and caught him, and cut off his thumbs and his great toes.

7 And Adonibezek said, Threescore and ten kings, having their thumbs and their great toes cut off, gathered *their meat* under my table: as I have done, so Elohim has requited me. And they brought him to Jerusalem, and there he died.

Jerusalem taken

8 Now the children of Judah had fought against Jerusalem, and had taken it, and smitten it with the edge of the sword, and set the city on fire.

9 And afterward the children of Judah went down to fight against the Canaanites, that dwelt in the mountain, and in the south, and in the valley. [Josh 10:36](#); [Josh 11:21](#); [Josh 15:13](#);

Hebron taken

10 And Judah went against the Canaanites that dwelt in Hebron: (now the name of Hebron before *was* Kirjatharba:) and they slew Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmi. [Josh 15:14](#);

Othniel has Achsah to wife for taking of Debir

11 And from thence he went against the inhabitants of Debir: and the name of Debir before *was* Kirjathsepher: [Josh 15:15](#);

12 And Caleb said, He that smiteth Kirjathsepher, and taketh it, to him will I give Achsah my daughter to wife.

13 And Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother, took it: and he gave him Achsah his daughter to wife.

14 And it came to pass, when she came *to him*, that she moved him to ask of her father a field: and she lighted from off *her* ass; and Caleb said unto her, What will you?

15 And she said unto him, Give me a blessing: for you have given me a south land; give me also springs of water. And Caleb gave her the upper springs and the nether springs.

The Kenites dwell in Judah

16 And the children of the Kenite, Moses' father in law, went up out of the city of palm trees with the children of Judah into the wilderness of Judah, which *lies* in the south of Arad; and they went and dwelt among the people. [[1Sam 15:6](#)];

Hormah, Gaza, Askelon, and Ekron taken

17 And Judah went with Simeon his brother, and they slew the Canaanites that inhabited Zephias, and utterly destroyed it. And the name of the city was called Hormah.

18 Also Judah took Gaza with the coast thereof, and Askelon with the coast thereof, and Ekron with the coast thereof.

19 And the YAHWEH was with Judah; and he drove out *the inhabitants of* the mountain; but could not drive out the inhabitants of the valley, because they had chariots of iron.

20 And they gave Hebron unto Caleb, as Moses said: and he expelled thence the three sons of Anak.
[Num 14:24](#); [Josh 14:13](#); [[Josh 15:13](#)];

The acts of Benjamin

21 And the children of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites that inhabited Jerusalem; but the Jebusites dwell with the children of Benjamin in Jerusalem unto this day.

Of the house of Joseph, who take Beth-el

22 And the house of Joseph, they also went up against Bethel: and the YAHWEH *was* with them.

23 And the house of Joseph sent to descry Bethel. (Now the name of the city before *was* Luz.) [Gen 28:19](#);

24 And the spies saw a man come forth out of the city, and they said unto him, show us, we pray you, the entrance into the city, and we will show you mercy.

25 And when he showed them the entrance into the city, they smote the city with the edge of the sword; but they let go the man and all his family.

26 And the man went into the land of the Hittites, and built a city, and called the name thereof Luz: which *is* the name thereof unto this day.

27 Neither did Manasseh drive out *the inhabitants of* Bethshean and her towns, nor Taanach and her towns, nor the inhabitants of Dor and her towns, nor the inhabitants of Ibleam and her towns, nor the inhabitants of Megiddo and her towns: but the Canaanites would dwell in that land. [Josh 17:11-12](#); [[Josh 17:12](#)];

28 And it came to pass, when Israel was strong, that they put the Canaanites to tribute, and did not utterly drive them out.

29 Neither did Ephraim drive out the Canaanites that dwelt in Gezer; but the Canaanites dwelt in Gezer among them. [Josh 16:10](#);

Of Zebulun

30 Neither did Zebulun drive out the inhabitants of Kitron, nor the inhabitants of Nahalol; but the Canaanites dwelt among them, and became tributaries.

Of Asher

31 Neither did Asher drive out the inhabitants of Accho, nor the inhabitants of Zidon, nor of Ahlab, nor of Achzib, nor of Helbah, nor of Aphik, nor of Rehob:

32 But the Asherites dwelt among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land: for they did not drive them out.

Of Naphtali

33 Neither did Naphtali drive out the inhabitants of Bethshemesh, nor the inhabitants of Bethanath; but he dwelt among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land: nevertheless the inhabitants of Bethshemesh and of Bethanath became tributaries unto them.

Of Dan

34 And the Amorites forced the children of Dan into the mountain: for they would not suffer them to come down to the valley:

35 But the Amorites would dwell in mount Heres in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim: yet the hand of the house of Joseph prevailed, so that they became tributaries.

36 And the coast of the Amorites *was* from the going up to Akrabbim, from the rock, and upward.

JUDGES TWO

An angel rebukes the people at Bochim

1 And an angel of the YAHWEH came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you. [Gen 17:7](#); [Deut 29:14-15](#);

2 And you shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; you shall throw down their altars: but you have not obeyed my voice: why have you done this? [Deut 7:2](#); [Deut 12:3](#); [\[Ps 106:35\]](#);

3 Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be *as thorns* in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. [Josh 23:13](#); [Exod 23:33](#); [Exod 34:12](#); [Deut 7:16](#); [\[Num 33:55\]](#);

4 And it came to pass, when the angel of the YAHWEH spoke these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept.

5 And they called the name of that place Bochim: and they sacrificed there unto the YAHWEH.

The wickedness of the new generation after Joshua

6 And when Joshua had let the people go, the children of Israel went every man unto his inheritance to possess the land. [Josh 24:28](#);

7 And the people served the YAHWEH all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders that outlived Joshua, who had seen all the great works of the YAHWEH, that he did for Israel.

8 And Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of the YAHWEH, died, *being* a hundred and ten years old.

9 And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnathheres, in the mount of Ephraim, on the north side of the hill Gaash. [\[Josh 24:30\]](#);

10 And also all that generation were gathered unto their fathers: and there arose another generation after them, which knew not the YAHWEH, nor yet the works which he had done for Israel.

11 And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and served Baalim: [\[Judg 10:6\]](#); [\[Judg 13:1\]](#);

12 And they forsook the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, which brought them out of the land of Egypt, and followed other gods, of the gods of the people that *were* round about them, and bowed themselves unto them, and provoked the YAHWEH to anger.

13 And they forsook the YAHWEH, and served Baal and Ashtaroth. [\[1Kgs 11:5\]](#);

Elohim's anger and pity towards them

14 And the anger of the YAHWEH was hot against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of spoilers that spoiled them, and he sold them into the hands of their enemies round about, so that they could not any longer stand before their enemies. [Ps 44:12](#); [Isa 50:1](#); [\[Neh 9:27\]](#);

15 Whithersoever they went out, the hand of the YAHWEH was against them for evil, as the YAHWEH had said, and as the YAHWEH had sworn unto them: and they were greatly distressed. [Lev 26:1-46](#); [Deut 28:1-68](#);

16 Nevertheless the YAHWEH raised up judges, which delivered them out of the hand of those that spoiled them. [\[Acts 13:20\]](#);

17 And yet they would not hearken unto their judges, but they went a whoring after other gods, and bowed themselves unto them: they turned quickly out of the way which their fathers walked in, obeying the commandments of the YAHWEH; *but* they did not so.

18 And when the YAHWEH raised them up judges, then the YAHWEH was with the judge, and delivered them out of the hand of their enemies all the days of the judge: for it repented the YAHWEH because of their groanings by reason of them that oppressed them and vexed them.

19 And it came to pass, when the judge was dead, *that* they returned, and corrupted *themselves* more than their fathers, in following other gods to serve them, and to bow down unto them; they ceased not from their own doings, nor from their stubborn way. [Judg 3:12](#);

The Canaanites left to prove Israel

20 And the anger of the YAHWEH was hot against Israel; and he said, Because that this people has transgressed my covenant which I commanded their fathers, and have not hearkened unto my voice;

21 I also will not henceforth drive out any from before them of the nations which Joshua left when he died: [Josh 23:13](#);

22 That through them I may prove Israel, whether they will keep the way of the YAHWEH to walk therein, as their fathers did keep *it*, or not.

23 Therefore the YAHWEH left those nations, without driving them out hastily; neither delivered he them into the hand of Joshua.

JUDGES THREE

The nations which were left to prove Israel

1 Now these *are* the nations which the YAHWEH left, to prove Israel by them, *even* as many *of Israel* as had not known all the wars of Canaan;

2 Only that the generations of the children of Israel might know, to teach them war, at the least such as before knew nothing thereof;

3 *Namely*, five lords of the Philistines, and all the Canaanites, and the Sidonians, and the Hivites that dwelt in mount Lebanon, from mount Baalhermon unto the entering in of Hamath.

4 And they were to prove Israel by them, to know whether they would hearken unto the commandments of the YAHWEH, which he commanded their fathers by the hand of Moses.

By communion with them they commit idolatry

5 And the children of Israel dwelt among the Canaanites, Hittites, and Amorites, and Perizzites, and Hivites, and Jebusites: [\[Ps 106:35\]](#);

6 And they took their daughters to be their wives, and gave their daughters to their sons, and served their gods.

7 And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and forgat the YAHWEH their Elohim, and served Baalim and the groves. [\[Judg 10:6\]](#); [\[Judg 13:1\]](#); [\[Jer 23:27\]](#);

Othniel delivered them from Chushan-rishasaim

8 Therefore the anger of the YAHWEH was hot against Israel, and he sold them into the hand of Chushanrishasaim king of Mesopotamia: and the children of Israel served Chushanrishasaim eight years.

9 And when the children of Israel cried unto the YAHWEH, the YAHWEH raised up a deliverer to the children of Israel, who delivered them, *even* Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother. [\[Acts 13:20\]](#);

10 And the Spirit of the YAHWEH came upon him, and he judged Israel, and went out to war: and the YAHWEH delivered Chushanrishasaim king of Mesopotamia into his hand; and his hand prevailed against Chushanrishasaim.

11 And the land had rest forty years. And Othniel the son of Kenaz died.

Ehud from Eglon

12 And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the YAHWEH: and the YAHWEH strengthened Eglon the king of Moab against Israel, because they had done evil in the sight of the YAHWEH. [Judg 2:19]; [1Sam 12:9];

13 And he gathered unto him the children of Ammon and Amalek, and went and smote Israel, and possessed the city of palm trees.

14 So the children of Israel served Eglon the king of Moab eighteen years.

15 But when the children of Israel cried unto the YAHWEH, the YAHWEH raised them up a deliverer, Ehud the son of Gera, a Benjamite, a man lefthanded: and by him the children of Israel sent a present unto Eglon the king of Moab. [Judg 20:16];

16 But Ehud made him a dagger which had two edges, of a cubit length; and he did gird it under his raiment upon his right thigh.

17 And he brought the present unto Eglon king of Moab: and Eglon *was* a very fat man.

18 And when he had made an end to offer the present, he sent away the people that bore the present.

19 But he himself turned again from the quarries that *were* by Gilgal, and said, I have a secret errand unto you, O king: who said, Keep silence. And all that stood by him went out from him.

20 And Ehud came unto him; and he was sitting in a summer parlour, which he had for himself alone. And Ehud said, I have a message from Elohim unto you. And he arose out of *his* seat.

21 And Ehud put forth his left hand, and took the dagger from his right thigh, and thrust it into his belly:

22 And the haft also went in after the blade; and the fat closed upon the blade, so that he could not draw the dagger out of his belly; and the dirt came out.

23 Then Ehud went forth through the porch, and shut the doors of the parlour upon him, and locked them.

24 When he was gone out, his servants came; and when they saw that, behold, the doors of the parlour *were* locked, they said, Surely he covereth his feet in his summer chamber.

25 And they tarried till they were ashamed: and, behold, he opened not the doors of the parlour; therefore they took a key, and opened *them*: and, behold, their lord *was* fallen down dead on the earth.

26 And Ehud escaped while they tarried, and passed beyond the quarries, and escaped unto Seirath.

27 And it came to pass, when he was come, that he blew a trumpet in the mountain of Ephraim, and the children of Israel went down with him from the mount, and he before them.

28 And he said unto them, Follow after me: for the YAHWEH has delivered your enemies the Moabites into your hand. And they went down after him, and took the fords of Jordan toward Moab, and suffered not a man to pass over.

29 And they slew of Moab at that time about ten thousand men, all lusty, and all men of valour; and there escaped not a man.

30 So Moab was subdued that day under the hand of Israel. And the land had rest fourscore years.

and Shamgar from the Philistines

31 And after him was Shamgar the son of Anath, which slew of the Philistines six hundred men with an ox goad: and he also delivered Israel.

Deborah and Barak deliver them from Jabin and Sisera

1 And the children of Israel again did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, when Ehud was dead. [\[Judg 10:6\]; \[Judg 13:1\];](#)

2 And the YAHWEH sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan, that reigned in Hazor; the captain of whose host *was* Sisera, which dwelt in Harosheth of the Gentiles. [1Sam 12:9;](#)

3 And the children of Israel cried unto the YAHWEH: for he had nine hundred chariots of iron; and twenty years he mightily oppressed the children of Israel.

4 And Deborah, a prophetess, the wife of Lapidoth, she judged Israel at that time.

5 And she dwelt under the palm tree of Deborah between Ramah and Bethel in mount Ephraim: and the children of Israel came up to her for judgment.

6 And she sent and called Barak the son of Abinoam out of Kedeshnaphtali, and said unto him, Has not the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel commanded, *saying*, Go and draw toward mount Tabor, and take with you ten thousand men of the children of Naphtali and of the children of Zebulun? [Heb 11:32;](#)

7 And I will draw unto you to the river Kishon Sisera, the captain of Jabin's army, with his chariots and his multitude; and I will deliver him into thine hand. [Ps 83:9;](#)

8 And Barak said unto her, If you will go with me, then I will go: but if you will not go with me, *then* I will not go.

9 And she said, I will surely go with you: notwithstanding the journey that you takest shall not be for thine honour; for the YAHWEH shall sell Sisera into the hand of a woman. And Deborah arose, and went with Barak to Kedesh.

10 And Barak called Zebulun and Naphtali to Kedesh; and he went up with ten thousand men at his feet: and Deborah went up with him.

11 Now Heber the Kenite, *which was* of the children of Hobab the father in law of Moses, had severed himself from the Kenites, and pitched his tent unto the plain of Zaanaim, which *is* by Kedesh. [Num 10:29;](#)

12 And they showed Sisera that Barak the son of Abinoam was gone up to mount Tabor.

13 And Sisera gathered together all his chariots, *even* nine hundred chariots of iron, and all the people that *were* with him, from Harosheth of the Gentiles unto the river of Kishon.

14 And Deborah said unto Barak, Up; for this *is* the day in which the YAHWEH has delivered Sisera into thine hand: is not the YAHWEH gone out before you? So Barak went down from mount Tabor, and ten thousand men after him.

15 And the YAHWEH discomfited Sisera, and all *his* chariots, and all *his* host, with the edge of the sword before Barak; so that Sisera lighted down off *his* chariot, and fled away on his feet. [Ps 83:9;](#)

16 But Barak pursued after the chariots, and after the host, unto Harosheth of the Gentiles: and all the host of Sisera fell upon the edge of the sword; *and* there was not a man left.

Jael kills Sisera

17 Howbeit Sisera fled away on his feet to the tent of Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite: for *there was* peace between Jabin the king of Hazor and the house of Heber the Kenite.

18 And Jael went out to meet Sisera, and said unto him, Turn in, my lord, turn in to me; fear not. And when he had turned in unto her into the tent, she covered him with a mantle.

19 And he said unto her, Give me, I pray you, a little water to drink; for I am thirsty. And she opened a bottle of milk, and gave him drink, and covered him. [Judg 5:25;](#)

20 Again he said unto her, Stand in the door of the tent, and it shall be, when any man comes and inquires of you, and says, Is there any man here? that you shall say, No.

21 Then Jael Heber's wife took a nail of the tent, and took a hammer in her hand, and went softly unto him, and smote the nail into his temples, and fastened it into the ground: for he was fast asleep and weary. So he died.

22 And, behold, as Barak pursued Sisera, Jael came out to meet him, and said unto him, Come, and I will show you the man whom you seekest. And when he came into her *tent*, behold, Sisera lay dead, and the nail *was* in his temples.

23 So Elohim subdued on that day Jabin the king of Canaan before the children of Israel.

24 And the hand of the children of Israel prospered, and prevailed against Jabin the king of Canaan, until they had destroyed Jabin king of Canaan.

The Song of Deborah and Barak

- 1** Then sang Deborah and Barak the son of Abinoam on that day, saying,
- 2** Praise you the YAHWEH for the avenging of Israel, when the people willingly offered themselves.
- 3** Hear, O you kings; give ear, O you princes; I, *even* I, will sing unto the YAHWEH; I will sing *praise* to the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.
- 4** YAHWEH, when you wentest out of Seir, when you marchedst out of the field of Edom, the earth trembled, and the heavens dropped, the clouds also dropped water. [Ps 68:7-8](#); [\[Exod 19:18\]](#);
- 5** The mountains melted from before the YAHWEH, *even* that Sinai from before the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel. [Ps 68:14-16](#); [Ps 97:5](#); [Exod 19:18](#);
- 6** In the days of Shamgar the son of Anath, in the days of Jael, the highways were unoccupied, and the travellers walked through byways.
- 7** *The inhabitants* of the villages ceased, they ceased in Israel, until that I Deborah arose, that I arose a mother in Israel.
- 8** They chose new gods; then *was* war in the gates: was there a shield or spear seen among forty thousand in Israel? [\[1Sam 13:19\]](#);
- 9** My heart *is* toward the governors of Israel, that offered themselves willingly among the people. Bless you the YAHWEH.
- 10** Speak, you that ride on white asses, you that sit in judgment, and walk by the way.
- 11** *They that are delivered* from the noise of archers in the places of drawing water, there shall they rehearse the righteous acts of the YAHWEH, *even* the righteous acts *toward the inhabitants* of his villages in Israel: then shall the people of the YAHWEH go down to the gates.
- 12** Awake, awake, Deborah: awake, awake, utter a song: arise, Barak, and lead thy captivity captive, you son of Abinoam.
- 13** Then he made him that remaineth have dominion over the nobles among the people: the YAHWEH made me have dominion over the mighty.
- 14** Out of Ephraim *was there* a root of them against Amalek; after you, Benjamin, among thy people; out of Machir came down governors, and out of Zebulun they that handle the pen of the writer.
- 15** And the princes of Issachar *were* with Deborah; even Issachar, and also Barak: he was sent on foot into the valley. For the divisions of Reuben *there were* great thoughts of heart.
- 16** Why abodest you among the sheepfolds, to hear the bleatings of the flocks? For the divisions of Reuben *there were* great searchings of heart.
- 17** Gilead abode beyond Jordan: and why did Dan remain in ships? Asher continued on the sea shore, and abode in his breaches.
- 18** Zebulun and Naphtali *were* a people *that* jeopardated their lives unto the death in the high places of the field.
- 19** The kings came *and* fought, then fought the kings of Canaan in Taanach by the waters of Megiddo; they took no gain of money.
- 20** They fought from heaven; the stars in their courses fought against Sisera.
- 21** The river of Kishon swept them away, that ancient river, the river Kishon. O my being, you have trodden down strength.
- 22** Then were the horsehoofs broken by the means of the pransings, the pransings of their mighty ones.
- 23** Curse you Meroz, said the angel of the YAHWEH, curse you bitterly the inhabitants thereof; because they came not to the help of the YAHWEH, to the help of the YAHWEH against the mighty.
- 24** Blessed above women shall Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite be, blessed shall she be above women in the tent.
- 25** He asked water, *and* she gave *him* milk; she brought forth butter in a lordly dish. [\[Judg 4:19\]](#);

26 She put her hand to the nail, and her right hand to the workmen's hammer; and with the hammer she smote Sisera, she smote off his head, when she had pierced and stricken through his temples.

27 At her feet he bowed, he fell, he lay down: at her feet he bowed, he fell: where he bowed, there he fell down dead.

28 The mother of Sisera looked out at a window, and cried through the lattice, Why is his chariot *so* long in coming? why tarry the wheels of his chariots?

29 Her wise ladies answered her, yes, she returned answer to herself,

30 Have they not sped? have they *not* divided the prey; to every man a damsel *or* two; to Sisera a prey of different colours, a prey of different colours of needlework, of different colours of needlework on both sides, *meet* for the necks of *them that take* the spoil?

31 So let all thine enemies perish, O YAHWEH: but *let* them that love him *be* as the sun when he goes forth in his might. And the land had rest forty years.

JUDGES SIX

The Israelites for their sin are oppressed by Midian

1 And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH: and the YAHWEH delivered them into the hand of Midian seven years. [\[Judg 10:6\]; \[Judg 13:1\];](#)

2 And the hand of Midian prevailed against Israel: *and* because of the Midianites the children of Israel made them the dens which *are* in the mountains, and caves, and strong holds.

3 And *so* it was, when Israel had sown, that the Midianites came up, and the Amalekites, and the children of the east, even they came up against them; [\[Judg 7:12\];](#)

4 And they encamped against them, and destroyed the increase of the earth, till you come unto Gaza, and left no sustenance for Israel, neither sheep, nor ox, nor ass.

5 For they came up with their cattle and their tents, and they came as grasshoppers for multitude; *for* both they and their camels were without number: and they entered into the land to destroy it. [\[Judg 7:12\];](#)

6 And Israel was greatly impoverished because of the Midianites; and the children of Israel cried unto the YAHWEH.

7 And it came to pass, when the children of Israel cried unto the YAHWEH because of the Midianites,

A prophet rebukes them

8 That the YAHWEH sent a prophet unto the children of Israel, which said unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, I brought you up from Egypt, and brought you forth out of the house of bondage;

9 And I delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of all that oppressed you, and drave them out from before you, and gave you their land;

10 And I said unto you, I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim; fear not the gods of the Amorites, in whose land you dwell: but you have not obeyed my voice. [2Kgs 17:35; 2Kgs 17:38;](#)

An angel sends Gideon for their deliverance

11 And there came an angel of the YAHWEH, and sat under an oak which *was* in Ophrah, that *pertained* unto Joash the Abiezrite: and his son Gideon threshed wheat by the winepress, to hide *it* from the Midianites. [\[Heb 11:32\];](#)

12 And the angel of the YAHWEH appeared unto him, and said unto him, The YAHWEH *is* with you, you mighty man of valour.

13 And Gideon said unto him, Oh my Lord, if the YAHWEH be with us, why then is all this befallen us? and where *be* all his miracles which our fathers told us of, saying, Did not the YAHWEH bring us up from Egypt? but now the YAHWEH has forsaken us, and delivered us into the hands of the Midianites.

14 And the YAHWEH looked upon him, and said, Go in this thy might, and you shall save Israel from the hand of the Midianites: have not I sent you? [1Sam 12:11](#); [Heb 11:32](#);

15 And he said unto him, Oh my Lord, wherewith shall I save Israel? behold, my family *is* poor in Manasseh, and I *am* the least in my father's house.

16 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Surely I will be with you, and you shall smite the Midianites as one man.

Gideon's present is consumed with fire

17 And he said unto him, If now I have found grace in thy sight, then show me a sign that you talkest with me.

18 Depart not hence, I pray you, until I come unto you, and bring forth my present, and set *it* before you. And he said, I will tarry until you come again.

19 And Gideon went in, and made ready a kid, and unleavened cakes of an ephah of flour: the flesh he put in a basket, and he put the broth in a pot, and brought *it* out unto him under the oak, and presented *it*.

20 And the angel of Elohim said unto him, Take the flesh and the unleavened cakes, and lay *them* upon this rock, and pour out the broth. And he did so.

21 Then the angel of the YAHWEH put forth the end of the staff that *was* in his hand, and touched the flesh and the unleavened cakes; and there rose up fire out of the rock, and consumed the flesh and the unleavened cakes. Then the angel of the YAHWEH departed out of his sight.

22 And when Gideon perceived that he *was* an angel of the YAHWEH, Gideon said, Alas, O Lord GOD! for because I have seen an angel of the YAHWEH face to face. [\[Judg 13:22\]](#);

23 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Peace *be* unto you; fear not: you shall not die.

Gideon destroys Baal's altar, and offers a sacrifice upon the altar Jehovah-shalom

24 Then Gideon built an altar there unto the YAHWEH, and called it Jehovahshalom: unto this day it *is* yet in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

25 And it came to pass the same night, that the YAHWEH said unto him, Take thy father's young bullock, even the second bullock of seven years old, and throw down the altar of Baal that thy father has, and cut down the grove that *is* by it:

26 And build an altar unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim upon the top of this rock, in the ordered place, and take the second bullock, and offer a burnt sacrifice with the wood of the grove which you shall cut down.

27 Then Gideon took ten men of his servants, and did as the YAHWEH had said unto him: and *so* it was, because he feared his father's household, and the men of the city, that he could not do *it* by day, that he did *it* by night.

Joash defends his son, and calls shim Jerubbaal

28 And when the men of the city arose early in the morning, behold, the altar of Baal was cast down, and the grove was cut down that *was* by it, and the second bullock was offered upon the altar *that was* built.

29 And they said one to another, Who has done this thing? And when they enquired and asked, they said, Gideon the son of Joash has done this thing.

30 Then the men of the city said unto Joash, Bring out thy son, that he may die: because he has cast down the altar of Baal, and because he has cut down the grove that *was* by it.

31 And Joash said unto all that stood against him, Will you plead for Baal? will you save him? he that will plead for him, let him be put to death whilst *it is yet* morning: if he *be* a god, let him plead for himself, because *one* has cast down his altar.

32 Therefore on that day he called him Jerubbaal, saying, Let Baal plead against him, because he has thrown down his altar.

Gideon's army

33 Then all the Midianites and the Amalekites and the children of the east were gathered together, and went over, and pitched in the valley of Jezreel. [\[Judg 7:12\];](#)

34 But the Spirit of the YAHWEH came upon Gideon, and he blew a trumpet; and Abiezer was gathered after him.

35 And he sent messengers throughout all Manasseh; who also was gathered after him: and he sent messengers unto Asher, and unto Zebulun, and unto Naphtali; and they came up to meet them.

Gideon's signs

36 And Gideon said unto Elohim, If you will save Israel by mine hand, as you have said,

37 Behold, I will put a fleece of wool in the floor; *and* if the dew be on the fleece only, and *it be* dry upon all the earth *beside*, then shall I know that you will save Israel by mine hand, as you have said.

38 And it was so: for he rose up early on the morrow, and thrust the fleece together, and wringed the dew out of the fleece, a bowl full of water.

39 And Gideon said unto Elohim, Let not thine anger be hot against me, and I will speak but this once: let me prove, I pray you, but this once with the fleece; let it now be dry only upon the fleece, and upon all the ground let there be dew. [Gen 18:32;](#)

40 And Elohim did so that night: for it was dry upon the fleece only, and there was dew on all the ground.

JUDGES SEVEN

Gideon's army of two and thirty thousand is brought to three hundred

1 Then Jerubbaal, who *is* Gideon, and all the people that *were* with him, rose up early, and pitched beside the well of Harod: so that the host of the Midianites were on the north side of them, by the hill of Moreh, in the valley.

2 And the YAHWEH said unto Gideon, The people that *are* with you *are* too many for me to give the Midianites into their hands, lest Israel vaunt themselves against me, saying, Mine own hand has saved me.

3 Now therefore go to, proclaim in the ears of the people, saying, Whosoever *is* fearful and afraid, let him return and depart early from mount Gilead. And there returned of the people twenty and two thousand; and there remained ten thousand. [Deut 20:8;](#)

4 And the YAHWEH said unto Gideon, The people *are* yet *too* many; bring them down unto the water, and I will try them for you there: and it shall be, *that* of whom I say unto you, This shall go with you, the same shall go with you; and of whomsoever I say unto you, This shall not go with you, the same shall not go.

5 So he brought down the people unto the water: and the YAHWEH said unto Gideon, Every one that lapped of the water with his tongue, as a dog lapped, him shall you set by himself; likewise every one that boweth down upon his knees to drink.

6 And the number of them that lapped, *putting* their hand to their mouth, were three hundred men: but all the rest of the people bowed down upon their knees to drink water.

7 And the YAHWEH said unto Gideon, By the three hundred men that lapped will I save you, and deliver the Midianites into thine hand: and let all the *other* people go every man unto his place.

8 So the people took victuals in their hand, and their trumpets: and he sent all *the rest of* Israel every man unto his tent, and retained those three hundred men: and the host of Midian was beneath him in the valley.

He is encouraged by the dream and interpretation of the burley cake

9 And it came to pass the same night, that the YAHWEH said unto him, Arise, get you down unto the host; for I have delivered it into thine hand.

10 But if you fear to go down, go you with Phurah thy servant down to the host:

11 And you shall hear what they say; and afterward shall thine hands be strengthened to go down unto the host. Then went he down with Phurah his servant unto the outside of the armed men that *were* in the host.

12 And the Midianites and the Amalekites and all the children of the east lay along in the valley like grasshoppers for multitude; and their camels *were* without number, as the sand by the sea side for multitude. [Judg 6:3](#); [Judg 6:5](#); [Judg 6:33](#);

13 And when Gideon was come, behold, *there was* a man that told a dream unto his fellow, and said, Behold, I dreamed a dream, and, lo, a cake of barley bread tumbled into the host of Midian, and came unto a tent, and smote it that it fell, and overturned it, that the tent lay along.

14 And his fellow answered and said, This *is* nothing else save the sword of Gideon the son of Joash, a man of Israel: *for* into his hand has Elohim delivered Midian, and all the host.

15 And it was *so*, when Gideon heard the telling of the dream, and the interpretation thereof, that he worshipped, and returned into the host of Israel, and said, Arise; for the YAHWEH has delivered into your hand the host of Midian.

His stratagem of trumpets and lamps in pitchers

16 And he divided the three hundred men *into* three companies, and he put a trumpet in every man's hand, with empty pitchers, and lamps within the pitchers.

17 And he said unto them, Look on me, and do likewise: and, behold, when I come to the outside of the camp, it shall be *that*, as I do, so shall you do.

18 When I blow with a trumpet, I and all that *are* with me, then blow you the trumpets also on every side of all the camp, and say, *The sword* of the YAHWEH, and of Gideon.

19 So Gideon, and the hundred men that *were* with him, came unto the outside of the camp in the beginning of the middle watch; and they had but newly set the watch: and they blew the trumpets, and brake the pitchers that *were* in their hands.

20 And the three companies blew the trumpets, and brake the pitchers, and held the lamps in their left hands, and the trumpets in their right hands to blow *withal*: and they cried, The sword of the YAHWEH, and of Gideon.

21 And they stood every man in his place round about the camp: and all the host ran, and cried, and fled.

22 And the three hundred blew the trumpets, and the YAHWEH set every man's sword against his fellow, even throughout all the host: and the host fled to Bethshittah in Zererath, *and* to the border of Abelmeholah, unto Tabbath. [Ps 83:9](#); [\[2Chr 20:22\]](#); [\[Isa 9:4\]](#);

23 And the men of Israel gathered themselves together out of Naphtali, and out of Asher, and out of all Manasseh, and pursued after the Midianites.

The Ephraimites take Oreb and Zeeb

24 And Gideon sent messengers throughout all mount Ephraim, saying, Come down against the Midianites, and take before them the waters unto Bethbarah and Jordan. Then all the men of Ephraim gathered themselves together, and took the waters unto Bethbarah and Jordan.

25 And they took two princes of the Midianites, Oreb and Zeeb; and they slew Oreb upon the rock Oreb, and Zeeb they slew at the winepress of Zeeb, and pursued Midian, and brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon on the other side Jordan. [Ps 83:11](#); [Isa 10:26](#);

JUDGES EIGHT

Gideon pacifies the Ephraimites

1 And the men of Ephraim said unto him, Why have you served us thus, that you calledst us not, when you wentest to fight with the Midianites? And they did chide with him sharply. [Judg 12:1](#);

2 And he said unto them, What have I done now in comparison of you? *Is* not the gleaning of the grapes of Ephraim better than the vintage of Abiezer?

3 Elohim has delivered into your hands the princes of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb: and what was I able to do in comparison of you? Then their anger was abated toward him, when he had said that.

Succoth and Penuel refuse to deliver Gideon's army

4 And Gideon came to Jordan, *and* passed over, he, and the three hundred men that *were* with him, faint, yet pursuing *them*.

5 And he said unto the men of Succoth, Give, I pray you, loaves of bread unto the people that follow me; for they *be* faint, and I am pursuing after Zebah and Zalmunna, kings of Midian.

6 And the princes of Succoth said, *Are* the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in thine hand, that we should give bread unto thine army?

7 And Gideon said, Therefore when the YAHWEH has delivered Zebah and Zalmunna into mine hand, then I will tear your flesh with the thorns of the wilderness and with briers.

8 And he went up thence to Penuel, and spoke unto them likewise: and the men of Penuel answered him as the men of Succoth had answered *him*.

9 And he spoke also unto the men of Penuel, saying, When I come again in peace, I will break down this tower.

Zebah and Zalmunna are taken

10 Now Zebah and Zalmunna *were* in Karkor, and their hosts with them, about fifteen thousand *men*, all that were left of all the hosts of the children of the east: for there fell a hundred and twenty thousand men that drew sword.

11 And Gideon went up by the way of them that dwelt in tents on the east of Nobah and Jogbehah, and smote the host: for the host was secure.

12 And when Zebah and Zalmunna fled, he pursued after them, and took the two kings of Midian, Zebah and Zalmunna, and discomfited all the host. [Ps 83:11](#);

Succoth and Penuel are destroyed

13 And Gideon the son of Joash returned from battle before the sun *was up*,

14 And caught a young man of the men of Succoth, and enquired of him: and he described unto him the princes of Succoth, and the elders thereof, *even* threescore and seventeen men.

15 And he came unto the men of Succoth, and said, Behold Zebah and Zalmunna, with whom you did upbraid me, saying, *Are* the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in thine hand, that we should give bread unto thy men *that are* weary?

16 And he took the elders of the city, and thorns of the wilderness and briers, and with them he taught the men of Succoth.

Gideon revenges his brethren's death on Zebah and Zalmunna

17 And he beat down the tower of Penuel, and slew the men of the city.

18 Then said he unto Zebah and Zalmunna, What manner of men *were they* whom you slew at Tabor? And they answered, As you are, so *were* they; each one resembled the children of a king.

19 And he said, They *were* my brethren, *even* the sons of my mother: *as* the YAHWEH liveth, if you had saved them alive, I would not slay you.

20 And he said unto Jether his firstborn, Up, *and* slay them. But the youth drew not his sword: for he feared, because he *was* yet a youth.

21 Then Zebah and Zalmunna said, Rise you, and fall upon us: for as the man *is, so is* his strength. And Gideon arose, and slew Zebah and Zalmunna, and took away the ornaments that *were* on their camels' necks. [Ps 83:11](#);

He refuses government

22 Then the men of Israel said unto Gideon, Rule you over us, both you, and thy son, and thy son's son also: for you have delivered us from the hand of Midian.

23 And Gideon said unto them, I will not rule over you, neither shall my son rule over you: the YAHWEH shall rule over you.

His ephod the cause of idolatry

24 And Gideon said unto them, I would desire a request of you, that you would give me every man the earrings of his prey. (For they had golden earrings, because they *were* Ishmaelites.)

25 And they answered, We will willingly give *them*. And they spread a garment, and did cast therein every man the earrings of his prey.

26 And the weight of the golden earrings that he requested was a thousand and seven hundred *shekels* of gold; beside ornaments, and collars, and purple raiment that *was* on the kings of Midian, and beside the chains that *were* about their camels' necks.

27 And Gideon made an ephod thereof, and put it in his city, *even* in Ophrah: and all Israel went thither a whoring after it: which thing became a snare unto Gideon, and to his house.

Midian subdued

28 Thus was Midian subdued before the children of Israel, so that they lifted up their heads no more. And the country was in quietness forty years in the days of Gideon.

Gideon's children, and death

29 And Jerubbaal the son of Joash went and dwelt in his own house.

30 And Gideon had threescore and ten sons of his body begotten: for he had many wives.

31 And his concubine that *was* in Shechem, she also bore him a son, whose name he called Abimelech.

32 And Gideon the son of Joash died in a good old age, and was buried in the sepulcher of Joash his father, in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

The Israelites' idolatry and ingratitude

33 And it came to pass, as soon as Gideon was dead, that the children of Israel turned again, and went a whoring after Baalim, and made Baalberith their god. [\[Jer 23:27\]](#);

34 And the children of Israel remembered not the YAHWEH their Elohim, who had delivered them out of the hands of all their enemies on every side:

35 Neither showed they kindness to the house of Jerubbaal, *namely*, Gideon, according to all the goodness which he had showed unto Israel.

JUDGES NINE

Abimelech by conspiracy with the Shechemites, and murder of his brethren, is made king

1 And Abimelech the son of Jerubbaal went to Shechem unto his mother's brethren, and communed with them, and with all the family of the house of his mother's father, saying,

2 Speak, I pray you, in the ears of all the men of Shechem, Whether *is* better for you, either that all the sons of Jerubbaal, *which are* threescore and ten persons, reign over you, or that one reign over you? remember also that I *am* your bone and your flesh.

3 And his mother's brethren spoke of him in the ears of all the men of Shechem all these words: and their hearts inclined to follow Abimelech; for they said, He *is* our brother.

4 And they gave him threescore and ten *pieces* of silver out of the house of Baalberith, wherewith Abimelech hired vain and light persons, which followed him.

5 And he went unto his father's house at Ophrah, and slew his brethren the sons of Jerubbaal, *being* threescore and ten persons, upon one stone: notwithstanding yet Jotham the youngest son of Jerubbaal was left; for he hid himself.

6 And all the men of Shechem gathered together, and all the house of Millo, and went, and made Abimelech king, by the plain of the pillar that *was* in Shechem. [Josh 24:26](#);

Jotham by a parable rebukes them, and foretells their ruin

7 And when they told *it* to Jotham, he went and stood in the top of mount Gerizim, and lifted up his voice, and cried, and said unto them, Hearken unto me, you men of Shechem, that Elohim may hearken unto you.

8 The trees went forth *on a time* to anoint a king over them; and they said unto the olive tree, Reign you over us. [\[2Chr 25:18\]](#);

9 But the olive tree said unto them, Should I leave my fatness, wherewith by me they honour Elohim and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?

10 And the trees said to the fig tree, Come you, *and* reign over us.

11 But the fig tree said unto them, Should I forsake my sweetness, and my good fruit, and go to be promoted over the trees?

12 Then said the trees unto the vine, Come you, *and* reign over us.

13 And the vine said unto them, Should I leave my wine, which cheereth Elohim and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?

14 Then said all the trees unto the bramble, Come you, *and* reign over us.

15 And the bramble said unto the trees, If in truth you anoint me king over you, *then* come *and* put your trust in my shadow: and if not, let fire come out of the bramble, and devour the cedars of Lebanon. [\[Ps 92:12\]](#);

16 Now therefore, if you have done truly and sincerely, in that you have made Abimelech king, and if you have dealt well with Jerubbaal and his house, and have done unto him according to the deserving of his hands;

17 (For my father fought for you, and adventured his life far, and delivered you out of the hand of Midian:

18 And you are risen up against my father's house this day, and have slain his sons, threescore and ten persons, upon one stone, and have made Abimelech, the son of his maidservant, king over the men of Shechem, because he *is* your brother;)

19 If you then have dealt truly and sincerely with Jerubbaal and with his house this day, *then* rejoice you in Abimelech, and let him also rejoice in you:

20 But if not, let fire come out from Abimelech, and devour the men of Shechem, and the house of Millo; and let fire come out from the men of Shechem, and from the house of Millo, and devour Abimelech.

21 And Jotham ran away, and fled, and went to Beer, and dwelt there, for fear of Abimelech his brother.

Gaal conspires with the Shechemites against him

22 When Abimelech had reigned three years over Israel,

23 Then Elohim sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the men of Shechem; and the men of Shechem dealt treacherously with Abimelech:

24 That the cruelty *done* to the threescore and ten sons of Jerubbaal might come, and their blood be laid upon Abimelech their brother, which slew them; and upon the men of Shechem, which aided him in the killing of his brethren.

25 And the men of Shechem set liers in wait for him in the top of the mountains, and they robbed all that came along that way by them: and it was told Abimelech.

26 And Gaal the son of Ebed came with his brethren, and went over to Shechem: and the men of Shechem put their confidence in him.

27 And they went out into the fields, and gathered their vineyards, and trode *the grapes*, and made merry, and went into the house of their god, and did eat and drink, and cursed Abimelech.

28 And Gaal the son of Ebed said, Who *is* Abimelech, and who *is* Shechem, that we should serve him? *is* not *he* the son of Jerubbaal? and Zebul his officer? serve the men of Hamor the father of Shechem: for why should we serve him?

29 And would to Elohim this people were under my hand! then would I remove Abimelech. And he said to Abimelech, Increase thine army, and come out.

Zebul reveals it

30 And when Zebul the ruler of the city heard the words of Gaal the son of Ebed, his anger was kindled.

31 And he sent messengers unto Abimelech privily, saying, Behold, Gaal the son of Ebed and his brethren be come to Shechem; and, behold, they fortify the city against you.

32 Now therefore up by night, you and the people that *is* with you, and lie in wait in the field:

33 And it shall be, *that* in the morning, as soon as the sun is up, you shall rise early, and set upon the city: and, behold, *when* he and the people that *is* with him come out against you, then may you do to them as you shall find occasion.

Abimelech overcomes them, and sows the city with salt

34 And Abimelech rose up, and all the people that *were* with him, by night, and they laid wait against Shechem in four companies.

35 And Gaal the son of Ebed went out, and stood in the entering of the gate of the city: and Abimelech rose up, and the people that *were* with him, from lying in wait.

36 And when Gaal saw the people, he said to Zebul, Behold, there come people down from the top of the mountains. And Zebul said unto him, you seest the shadow of the mountains as *if they were* men.

37 And Gaal spoke again and said, See there come people down by the middle of the land, and another company come along by the plain of Meonenim.

38 Then said Zebul unto him, Where *is* now thy mouth, wherewith you saidst, Who *is* Abimelech, that we should serve him? *is* not this the people that you have despised? go out, I pray now, and fight with them.

39 And Gaal went out before the men of Shechem, and fought with Abimelech.

40 And Abimelech chased him, and he fled before him, and many were overthrown *and* wounded, *even* unto the entering of the gate.

41 And Abimelech dwelt at Arumah: and Zebul thrust out Gaal and his brethren, that they should not dwell in Shechem.

42 And it came to pass on the morrow, that the people went out into the field; and they told Abimelech.

43 And he took the people, and divided them into three companies, and laid wait in the field, and looked, and, behold, the people *were* come forth out of the city; and he rose up against them, and smote them.

44 And Abimelech, and the company that *was* with him, rushed forward, and stood in the entering of the gate of the city: and the two *other* companies ran upon all *the people* that *were* in the fields, and slew them.

45 And Abimelech fought against the city all that day; and he took the city, and slew the people that *was* therein, and beat down the city, and sowed it with salt.

He burns the hold of the god Berith

46 And when all the men of the tower of Shechem heard *that*, they entered into a hold of the house of the god Berith.

47 And it was told Abimelech, that all the men of the tower of Shechem were gathered together.

48 And Abimelech got him up to mount Zalmon, he and all the people that *were* with him; and Abimelech took an axe in his hand, and cut down a bough from the trees, and took it, and laid *it* on his shoulder, and said unto the people that *were* with him, What you have seen me do, make haste, *and* do as I *have done*.

49 And all the people likewise cut down every man his bough, and followed Abimelech, and put *them* to the hold, and set the hold on fire upon them; so that all the men of the tower of Shechem died also, about a thousand men and women.

At Thebez he is slain by a piece of a millstone

50 Then went Abimelech to Thebez, and encamped against Thebez, and took it.

51 But there was a strong tower within the city, and thither fled all the men and women, and all they of the city, and shut *it* to them, and got them up to the top of the tower.

52 And Abimelech came unto the tower, and fought against it, and went hard unto the door of the tower to burn it with fire. [2Sam 11:21];

53 And a certain woman cast a piece of a millstone upon Abimelech's head, and all to brake his skull. 2Sam 11:21;

54 Then he called hastily unto the young man his armourbearer, and said unto him, Draw thy sword, and slay me, that men say not of me, A woman slew him. And his young man thrust him through, and he died.

55 And when the men of Israel saw that Abimelech was dead, they departed every man unto his place.

Jotham's curse if fulfilled

56 Thus Elohim rendered the wickedness of Abimelech, which he did unto his father, in slaying his seventy brethren:

57 And all the evil of the men of Shechem did Elohim render upon their heads: and upon them came the curse of Jotham the son of Jerubbaal.

Tola judges Israel in Shamir

- 1** And after Abimelech there arose to defend Israel Tola the son of Puah, the son of Dodo, a man of Issachar; and he dwelt in Shamir in mount Ephraim.
- 2** And he judged Israel twenty and three years, and died, and was buried in Shamir.

Jair, whose thirty sons had thirty cities

- 3** And after him arose Jair, a Gileadite, and judged Israel twenty and two years. [\[1Sam 12:11\];](#)
- 4** And he had thirty sons that rode on thirty ass colts, and they had thirty cities, which are called Havothjair unto this day, which *are* in the land of Gilead. [\[Judg 12:14\];](#)
- 5** And Jair died, and was buried in Camon.

The Philistines and Ammonites oppress Israel

- 6** And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the YAHWEH, and served Baalim, and Ashtaroth, and the gods of Syria, and the gods of Zidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the children of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines, and forsook the YAHWEH, and served not him. [Judg 2:11; Judg 3:7; Judg 4:1; Judg 6:1; \[Judg 13:1\];](#)
- 7** And the anger of the YAHWEH was hot against Israel, and he sold them into the hands of the Philistines, and into the hands of the children of Ammon. [\[1Sam 12:9\];](#)
- 8** And that year they vexed and oppressed the children of Israel: eighteen years, all the children of Israel that *were* on the other side Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which *is* in Gilead.
- 9** Moreover the children of Ammon passed over Jordan to fight also against Judah, and against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim; so that Israel was sore distressed.

In their misery Elohim sends them to their false gods

- 10** And the children of Israel cried unto the YAHWEH, saying, We have sinned against you, both because we have forsaken our Elohim, and also served Baalim.
- 11** And the YAHWEH said unto the children of Israel, *Did* not *I deliver you* from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines?
- 12** The Zidonians also, and the Amalekites, and the Maonites, did oppress you; and you cried to me, and I delivered you out of their hand.
- 13** Yet you have forsaken me, and served other gods: wherefore I will deliver you no more. [Deut 32:15; Jer 2:13;](#)
- 14** Go and cry unto the gods which you have chosen; let them deliver you in the time of your tribulation.

Upon their repentance he pities them

- 15** And the children of Israel said unto the YAHWEH, We have sinned: do you unto us whatsoever seemeth good unto you; deliver us only, we pray you, this day.
- 16** And they put away the strange gods from among them, and served the YAHWEH: and his being was grieved for the misery of Israel.
- 17** Then the children of Ammon were gathered together, and encamped in Gilead. And the children of Israel assembled themselves together, and encamped in Mizpeh.
- 18** And the people *and* princes of Gilead said one to another, What man *is he* that will begin to fight against the children of Ammon? he shall be head over all the inhabitants of Gilead. [Judg 11:6; Judg 11:9-11;](#)
-

The covenant between Jephthah and the Gileadites, that he should be their head

- 1** Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty man of valour, and he *was* the son of a harlot: and Gilead begat Jephthah. [Heb 11:32](#);
- 2** And Gilead's wife bore him sons; and his wife's sons grew up, and they thrust out Jephthah, and said unto him, you shall not inherit in our father's house; for you are the son of a strange woman.
- 3** Then Jephthah fled from his brethren, and dwelt in the land of Tob: and there were gathered vain men to Jephthah, and went out with him.
- 4** And it came to pass in process of time, that the children of Ammon made war against Israel.
- 5** And it was so, that when the children of Ammon made war against Israel, the elders of Gilead went to fetch Jephthah out of the land of Tob:
- 6** And they said unto Jephthah, Come, and be our captain, that we may fight with the children of Ammon. [\[Judg 10:18\]](#);
- 7** And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead, Did not you hate me, and expel me out of my father's house? and why are you come unto me now when you are in distress?
- 8** And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah, Therefore we turn again to you now, that you may go with us, and fight against the children of Ammon, and be our head over all the inhabitants of Gilead.
- 9** And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead, If you bring me home again to fight against the children of Ammon, and the YAHWEH deliver them before me, shall I be your head? [\[Judg 10:18\]](#);
- 10** And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah, The YAHWEH be witness between us, if we do not so according to thy words.
- 11** Then Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people made him head and captain over them: and Jephthah uttered all his words before the YAHWEH in Mizpeh.

The treaty of peace between him and the Ammonites is in vain

- 12** And Jephthah sent messengers unto the king of the children of Ammon, saying, What have you to do with me, that you are come against me to fight in my land?
- 13** And the king of the children of Ammon answered unto the messengers of Jephthah, Because Israel took away my land, when they came up out of Egypt, from Arnon even unto Jabbok, and unto Jordan: now therefore restore those *lands* again peaceably.
- 14** And Jephthah sent messengers again unto the king of the children of Ammon:
- 15** And said unto him, Thus saith Jephthah, Israel took not away the land of Moab, nor the land of the children of Ammon: [Num 21:13](#); [Deut 2:9](#); [Deut 2:19](#); [\[1Sam 12:11\]](#);
- 16** But when Israel came up from Egypt, and walked through the wilderness unto the Red sea, and came to Kadesh;
- 17** Then Israel sent messengers unto the king of Edom, saying, Let me, I pray you, pass through thy land: but the king of Edom would not hearken *thereto*. And in like manner they sent unto the king of Moab: but he would not *consent*: and Israel abode in Kadesh. [Num 20:17](#);
- 18** Then they went along through the wilderness, and compassed the land of Edom, and the land of Moab, and came by the east side of the land of Moab, and pitched on the other side of Arnon, but came not within the border of Moab: for Arnon *was* the border of Moab. [\[Num 20:21\]](#); [\[Num 21:13\]](#);
- 19** And Israel sent messengers unto Sihon king of the Amorites, the king of Heshbon; and Israel said unto him, Let us pass, we pray you, through thy land into my place. [Deut 2:26](#); [Num 21:22](#); [\[Num 21:21\]](#);
- 20** But Sihon trusted not Israel to pass through his coast: but Sihon gathered all his people together, and pitched in Jahaz, and fought against Israel. [\[Num 21:23\]](#);

21 And the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel delivered Sihon and all his people into the hand of Israel, and they smote them: so Israel possessed all the land of the Amorites, the inhabitants of that country. [Num 21:24];

22 And they possessed all the coasts of the Amorites, from Arnon even unto Jabbok, and from the wilderness even unto Jordan. Deut 2:36;

23 So now the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel has dispossessed the Amorites from before his people Israel, and should you possess it?

24 **will** not you possess that which Chemosh thy god giveth you to possess? So whomsoever the YAHWEH our Elohim shall drive out from before us, them will we possess.

25 And now are you any thing better than Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab? did he ever strive against Israel, or did he ever fight against them, Num 22:2; [Josh 24:9];

26 While Israel dwelt in Heshbon and her towns, and in Aroer and her towns, and in all the cities that *be* along by the coasts of Arnon, three hundred years? why therefore did you not recover *them* within that time?

27 Wherefore I have not sinned against you, but you do me wrong to war against me: the YAHWEH the Judge be judge this day between the children of Israel and the children of Ammon.

28 Howbeit the king of the children of Ammon hearkened not unto the words of Jephthah which he sent him.

Jephthah's vow

29 Then the Spirit of the YAHWEH came upon Jephthah, and he passed over Gilead, and Manasseh, and passed over Mizpeh of Gilead, and from Mizpeh of Gilead he passed over *unto* the children of Ammon.

30 And Jephthah vowed a vow unto the YAHWEH, and said, If you shall without fail deliver the children of Ammon into mine hands, [Matt 14:7]; [Mark 6:23];

31 Then it shall be, that whatsoever cometh forth of the doors of my house to meet me, when I return in peace from the children of Ammon, shall surely be the YAHWEH'S, and I will offer it up for a burnt offering.

His conquest of the Ammonites

32 So Jephthah passed over unto the children of Ammon to fight against them; and the YAHWEH delivered them into his hands.

33 And he smote them from Aroer, even till you come to Minnith, *even* twenty cities, and unto the plain of the vineyards, with a very great slaughter. Thus the children of Ammon were subdued before the children of Israel.

He performs his vow on his daughter

34 And Jephthah came to Mizpeh unto his house, and, behold, his daughter came out to meet him with timbrels and with dances: and she *was his* only child; beside her he had neither son nor daughter.

35 And it came to pass, when he saw her, that he rent his clothes, and said, Alas, my daughter! you have brought me very low, and you are one of them that trouble me: for I have opened my mouth unto the YAHWEH, and I cannot go back.

36 And she said unto him, My father, *if* you have opened thy mouth unto the YAHWEH, do to me according to that which has proceeded out of thy mouth; forasmuch as the YAHWEH has taken vengeance for you of thine enemies, *even* of the children of Ammon.

37 And she said unto her father, Let this thing be done for me: let me alone two months, that I may go up and down upon the mountains, and bewail my virginity, I and my fellows.

38 And he said, Go. And he sent her away *for* two months: and she went with her companions, and bewailed her virginity upon the mountains.

39 And it came to pass at the end of two months, that she returned unto her father, who did with her *according* to his vow which he had vowed: and she knew no man. And it was a custom in Israel,

40 *That* the daughters of Israel went yearly to lament the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite four days in a year.

JUDGES TWELVE

The Ephraimites, quarrelling with Jephthah, and discerned by Shibboleth, are slain by the Gileadites

1 And the men of Ephraim gathered themselves together, and went northward, and said unto Jephthah, Wherefore passedst thou over to fight against the children of Ammon, and didst not call us to go with you? we will burn thine house upon you with fire. [Judg 8:1](#);

2 And Jephthah said unto them, I and my people were at great strife with the children of Ammon; and when I called you, you delivered me not out of their hands.

3 And when I saw that you delivered *me* not, I put my life in my hands, and passed over against the children of Ammon, and the YAHWEH delivered them into my hand: wherefore then are you come up unto me this day, to fight against me?

4 Then Jephthah gathered together all the men of Gilead, and fought with Ephraim: and the men of Gilead smote Ephraim, because they said, you Gileadites *are* fugitives of Ephraim among the Ephraimites, *and* among the Manassites.

5 And the Gileadites took the passages of Jordan before the Ephraimites: and it was *so*, that when those Ephraimites which were escaped said, Let me go over; that the men of Gilead said unto him, are you an Ephraimite? If he said, Nay;

6 Then said they unto him, Say now Shibboleth: and he said Sibboleth: for he could not frame to pronounce *it* right. Then they took him, and slew him at the passages of Jordan: and there fell at that time of the Ephraimites forty and two thousand.

Jephthah dies

7 And Jephthah judged Israel six years. Then died Jephthah the Gileadite, and was buried in *one of* the cities of Gilead. [\[Heb 11:32\]](#);

Ibzan, who had thirty sons, and thirty daughters

8 And after him Ibzan of Bethlehem judged Israel.

9 And he had thirty sons, and thirty daughters, *whom* he sent abroad, and took in thirty daughters from abroad for his sons. And he judged Israel seven years.

10 Then died Ibzan, and was buried at Bethlehem.

and Elon

11 And after him Elon, a Zebulonite, judged Israel; and he judged Israel ten years.

12 And Elon the Zebulonite died, and was buried in Aijalon in the country of Zebulun.

and Abdon, who had forty sons, and thirty nephews, judge Israel

13 And after him Abdon the son of Hillel, a Pirathonite, judged Israel.

14 And he had forty sons and thirty nephews, that rode on threescore and ten ass colts: and he judged Israel eight years. [Judg 10:4](#);

15 And Abdon the son of Hillel the Pirathonite died, and was buried in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim, in the mount of the Amalekites.

Israel is delivered into the hands of Philistines

1 And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the YAHWEH; and the YAHWEH delivered them into the hand of the Philistines forty years. [Judg 2:11](#); [Judg 3:7](#); [Judg 4:1](#); [Judg 6:1](#); [Judg 10:6](#); [[1Sam 4:9](#)];

An angel appears to Manoah's wife

2 And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name *was* Manoah; and his wife *was* barren, and bore not.

3 And the angel of the YAHWEH appeared unto the woman, and said unto her, Behold now, you are barren, and bearest not: but you shall conceive, and bear a son.

4 Now therefore beware, I pray you, and drink not wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean *thing*: [Num 6:2-3](#); [[Luke 1:15](#)];

5 For, lo, you shall conceive, and bear a son; and no razor shall come on his head: for the child shall be a Nazarite unto Elohim from the womb: and he shall begin to deliver Israel out of the hand of the Philistines. [Num 6:5](#); [1Sam 1:11](#);

6 Then the woman came and told her husband, saying, A man of Elohim came unto me, and his countenance *was* like the countenance of an angel of Elohim, very terrible: but I asked him not whence he *was*, neither told he me his name:

7 But he said unto me, Behold, you shall conceive, and bear a son; and now drink no wine nor strong drink, neither eat any unclean *thing*: for the child shall be a Nazarite to Elohim from the womb to the day of his death.

The angel appears to Manoah

8 Then Manoah intreated the YAHWEH, and said, O my Lord, let the man of Elohim which you didst send come again unto us, and teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born.

9 And Elohim hearkened to the voice of Manoah; and the angel of Elohim came again unto the woman as she sat in the field: but Manoah her husband *was* not with her.

10 And the woman made haste, and ran, and showed her husband, and said unto him, Behold, the man has appeared unto me, that came unto me the *other* day.

11 And Manoah arose, and went after his wife, and came to the man, and said unto him, are you the man that spakest unto the woman? And he said, I *am*.

12 And Manoah said, Now let thy words come to pass. How shall we order the child, and *how* shall we do unto him?

13 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto Manoah, Of all that I said unto the woman let her beware.

14 She may not eat of any *thing* that cometh of the vine, neither let her drink wine or strong drink, nor eat any unclean *thing*: all that I commanded her let her observe.

Manoah's sacrifices, whereby the angel is discovered

15 And Manoah said unto the angel of the YAHWEH, I pray you, let us detain you, until we shall have made ready a kid for you.

16 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto Manoah, though you detain me, I will not eat of thy bread: and if you will offer a burnt offering, you must offer it unto the YAHWEH. For Manoah knew not that he *was* an angel of the YAHWEH.

17 And Manoah said unto the angel of the YAHWEH, What *is* thy name, that when thy sayings come to pass we may do you honour?

18 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto him, Why askest you thus after my name, seeing it *is* secret?

19 So Manoah took a kid with a meat offering, and offered *it* upon a rock unto the YAHWEH: and *the angel* did wondrously; and Manoah and his wife looked on.

20 For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of the YAHWEH ascended in the flame of the altar. And Manoah and his wife looked on *it*, and fell on their faces to the ground.

21 But the angel of the YAHWEH did no more appear to Manoah and to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he *was* an angel of the YAHWEH.

22 And Manoah said unto his wife, We shall surely die, because we have seen Elohim. [Exod 33:20](#); [Deut 5:26](#); [Judg 6:22-23](#);

23 But his wife said unto him, If the YAHWEH were pleased to kill us, he would not have received a burnt offering and a meat offering at our hands, neither would he have showed us all these *things*, nor would as at this time have told us *such things* as these.

Samson is born

24 And the woman bore a son, and called his name Samson: and the child grew, and the YAHWEH blessed him. [Heb 11:32](#);

25 And the Spirit of the YAHWEH began to move him at times in the camp of Dan between Zorah and Eshtaol. [\[Judg 18:12\]](#);

JUDGES FOURTEEN

Samson desires a wife of the Philistines

1 And Samson went down to Timnath, and saw a woman in Timnath of the daughters of the Philistines.

2 And he came up, and told his father and his mother, and said, I have seen a woman in Timnath of the daughters of the Philistines: now therefore get her for me to wife.

3 Then his father and his mother said unto him, *Is there* never a woman among the daughters of thy brethren, or among all my people, that you go to take a wife of the uncircumcised Philistines? And Samson said unto his father, Get her for me; for she pleaseth me well.

4 But his father and his mother knew not that it *was* of the YAHWEH, that he sought an occasion against the Philistines: for at that time the Philistines had dominion over Israel.

5 Then went Samson down, and his father and his mother, to Timnath, and came to the vineyards of Timnath: and, behold, a young lion roared against him.

In his journey he kills a lion

6 And the Spirit of the YAHWEH came mightily upon him, and he rent him as he would have rent a kid, and *he had* nothing in his hand: but he told not his father or his mother what he had done. [\[Heb 11:33\]](#);

7 And he went down, and talked with the woman; and she pleased Samson well.

In a second journey he finds honey in the carcase

8 And after a time he returned to take her, and he turned aside to see the carcase of the lion: and, behold, *there was* a swarm of bees and honey in the carcase of the lion.

9 And he took thereof in his hands, and went on eating, and came to his father and mother, and he gave them, and they did eat: but he told not them that he had taken the honey out of the carcase of the lion.

Samson's marriage feast

10 So his father went down unto the woman: and Samson made there a feast; for so used the young men to do.

11 And it came to pass, when they saw him, that they brought thirty companions to be with him.

His riddle by his wife is made known

12 And Samson said unto them, I will now put forth a riddle unto you: if you can certainly declare it me within the seven days of the feast, and find *it* out, then I will give you thirty sheets and thirty change of garments:

13 But if you cannot declare *it* me, then shall you give me thirty sheets and thirty change of garments. And they said unto him, Put forth thy riddle, that we may hear it.

14 And he said unto them, Out of the eater came forth meat, and out of the strong came forth sweetness. And they could not in three days expound the riddle.

15 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that they said unto Samson's wife, Entice thy husband, that he may declare unto us the riddle, lest we burn you and thy father's house with fire: have you called us to take that we have? *is it* not *so*?

16 And Samson's wife wept before him, and said, you dost but hate me, and lovest me not: you have put forth a riddle unto the children of my people, and have not told *it* me. And he said unto her, Behold, I have not told *it* my father nor my mother, and shall I tell *it* you?

17 And she wept before him the seven days, while their feast lasted: and it came to pass on the seventh day, that he told her, because she lay sore upon him: and she told the riddle to the children of her people.

18 And the men of the city said unto him on the seventh day before the sun went down, What *is* sweeter than honey? and what *is* stronger than a lion? And he said unto them, If you had not plowed with my heifer, you had not found out my riddle.

He spoils thirty Philistines

19 And the Spirit of the YAHWEH came upon him, and he went down to Ashkelon, and slew thirty men of them, and took their spoil, and gave change of garments unto them which expounded the riddle. And his anger was kindled, and he went up to his father's house.

His wife is married to another

20 But Samson's wife was *given* to his companion, whom he had used as his friend.

JUDGES FIFTEEN

Samson is denied his wife

1 But it came to pass within a while after, in the time of wheat harvest, that Samson visited his wife with a kid; and he said, I will go in to my wife into the chamber. But her father would not suffer him to go in.

2 And her father said, I verily thought that you hadst utterly hated her; therefore I gave her to thy companion: *is* not her younger sister fairer than she? take her, I pray you, instead of her.

He burns the Philistines' grain with foxes and firebrands

3 And Samson said concerning them, Now shall I be more blameless than the Philistines, though I do them a displeasure.

4 And Samson went and caught three hundred foxes, and took firebrands, and turned tail to tail, and put a firebrand in the midst between two tails.

5 And when he had set the brands on fire, he let *them* go into the standing grain of the Philistines, and burnt up both the shocks, and also the standing corn, with the vineyards *and* olives.

His wife and her father are burnt by the Philistines

6 Then the Philistines said, Who has done this? And they answered, Samson, the son in law of the Timnite, because he had taken his wife, and given her to his companion. And the Philistines came up, and burnt her and her father with fire.

Samson smites them hip and thigh

7 And Samson said unto them, though you have done this, yet will I be avenged of you, and after that I will cease.

8 And he smote them hip and thigh with a great slaughter: and he went down and dwelt in the top of the rock Etam.

He is bound by the men of Judah, and delivered to the Philistines

9 Then the Philistines went up, and pitched in Judah, and spread themselves in Lehi.

10 And the men of Judah said, Why are you come up against us? And they answered, To bind Samson are we come up, to do to him as he has done to us.

11 Then three thousand men of Judah went to the top of the rock Etam, and said to Samson, Knowest you not that the Philistines *are* rulers over us? what *is* this *that* you have done unto us? And he said unto them, As they did unto me, so have I done unto them.

12 And they said unto him, We are come down to bind you, that we may deliver you into the hand of the Philistines. And Samson said unto them, Swear unto me, that you will not fall upon me yourselves.

13 And they spoke unto him, saying, No; but we will bind you fast, and deliver you into their hand: but surely we will not kill you. And they bound him with two new cords, and brought him up from the rock.

He kills them with a jawbone

14 *And* when he came unto Lehi, the Philistines shouted against him: and the Spirit of the YAHWEH came mightily upon him, and the cords that *were* upon his arms became as flax that was burnt with fire, and his bands loosed from off his hands.

15 And he found a new jawbone of an ass, and put forth his hand, and took it, and slew a thousand men therewith.

16 And Samson said, With the jawbone of an ass, heaps upon heaps, with the jaw of an ass have I slain a thousand men.

17 And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking, that he cast away the jawbone out of his hand, and called that place Ramathlehi.

Elohim makes the fountain En-hakkore for him in Lehi

18 And he was sore athirst, and called on the YAHWEH, and said, you have given this great deliverance into the hand of thy servant: and now shall I die for thirst, and fall into the hand of the uncircumcised? [1Sam 17:26](#); [1Sam 17:36](#); [2Sam 1:20](#);

19 But Elohim clave a hollow place that *was* in the jaw, and there came water thereout; and when he had drunk, his spirit came again, and he revived: wherefore he called the name thereof Enhakkore, which *is* in Lehi unto this day.

20 And he judged Israel in the days of the Philistines twenty years.

JUDGES SIXTEEN

Samson at Gaza escapes, and carries away the gates of the city

1 Then went Samson to Gaza, and saw there a harlot, and went in unto her.

2 And it *was told* the Gazites, saying, Samson is come hither. And they compassed *him* in, and laid wait for him all night in the gate of the city, and were quiet all the night, saying, In the morning, when it is day, we shall kill him.

3 And Samson lay till midnight, and arose at midnight, and took the doors of the gate of the city, and the two posts, and went away with them, bar and all, and put *them* upon his shoulders, and carried them up to the top of a hill that *is* before Hebron.

Delilah, corrupted by the Philistines, entices Samson

4 And it came to pass afterward, that he loved a woman in the valley of Sorek, whose name *was* Delilah.

5 And the lords of the Philistines came up unto her, and said unto her, Entice him, and see wherein his great strength *lies*, and by what *means* we may prevail against him, that we may bind him to afflict him: and we will give you every one of us eleven hundred *pieces* of silver.

Thrice she is deceived

6 And Delilah said to Samson, Tell me, I pray you, wherein thy great strength *lies*, and wherewith you mightest be bound to afflict you.

7 And Samson said unto her, If they bind me with seven green withs that were never dried, then shall I be weak, and be as another man.

8 Then the lords of the Philistines brought up to her seven green withs which had not been dried, and she bound him with them.

9 Now *there were* men lying in wait, abiding with her in the chamber. And she said unto him, The Philistines *be* upon you, Samson. And he brake the withs, as a thread of tow is broken when it toucheth the fire. So his strength was not known.

10 And Delilah said unto Samson, Behold, you have mocked me, and told me lies: now tell me, I pray you, wherewith you mightest be bound.

11 And he said unto her, If they bind me fast with new ropes that never were occupied, then shall I be weak, and be as another man.

12 Delilah therefore took new ropes, and bound him therewith, and said unto him, The Philistines *be* upon you, Samson. And *there were* liars in wait abiding in the chamber. And he brake them from off his arms like a thread.

13 And Delilah said unto Samson, Hitherto you have mocked me, and told me lies: tell me wherewith you mightest be bound. And he said unto her, If you weavest the seven locks of my head with the web.

14 And she fastened *it* with the pin, and said unto him, The Philistines *be* upon you, Samson. And he awaked out of his sleep, and went away with the pin of the beam, and with the web.

At last she overcomes him

15 And she said unto him, How canst you say, I love you, when thine heart *is* not with me? you have mocked me these three times, and have not told me wherein thy great strength *lies*.

16 And it came to pass, when she pressed him daily with her words, and urged him, *so* that his being was vexed unto death;

17 That he told her all his heart, and said unto her, There has not come a razor upon mine head; for I *have been* a Nazarite unto Elohim from my mother's womb: if I be shaven, then my strength will go from me, and I shall become weak, and be like any *other* man.

18 And when Delilah saw that he had told her all his heart, she sent and called for the lords of the Philistines, saying, Come up this once, for he has showed me all his heart. Then the lords of the Philistines came up unto her, and brought money in their hand.

19 And she made him sleep upon her knees; and she called for a man, and she caused him to shave off the seven locks of his head; and she began to afflict him, and his strength went from him.

20 And she said, The Philistines *be* upon you, Samson. And he awoke out of his sleep, and said, I will go out as at other times before, and shake myself. And he wist not that the YAHWEH was departed from him.

The Philistines take him, and put out his eyes

21 But the Philistines took him, and put out his eyes, and brought him down to Gaza, and bound him with fetters of brass; and he did grind in the prison house.

His strength renewing he pulls down the house upon the Philistines, and dies

22 Howbeit the hair of his head began to grow again after he was shaven.

23 Then the lords of the Philistines gathered them together for to offer a great sacrifice unto Dagon their god, and to rejoice: for they said, Our god has delivered Samson our enemy into our hand. [\[2Chr 28:23\]](#);

24 And when the people saw him, they praised their god: for they said, Our god has delivered into our hands our enemy, and the destroyer of our country, which slew many of us.

25 And it came to pass, when their hearts were merry, that they said, Call for Samson, that he may make us sport. And they called for Samson out of the prison house; and he made them sport: and they set him between the pillars.

26 And Samson said unto the lad that held him by the hand, Suffer me that I may feel the pillars whereupon the house standeth, that I may lean upon them.

27 Now the house was full of men and women; and all the lords of the Philistines *were* there; and *there were* upon the roof about three thousand men and women, that beheld while Samson made sport.

28 And Samson called unto the YAHWEH, and said, O Lord GOD, remember me, I pray you, and strengthen me, I pray you, only this once, O Elohim, that I may be at once avenged of the Philistines for my two eyes. [Heb 11:32](#);

29 And Samson took hold of the two middle pillars upon which the house stood, and on which it was borne up, of the one with his right hand, and of the other with his left.

30 And Samson said, Let me die with the Philistines. And he bowed himself with *all his* might; and the house fell upon the lords, and upon all the people that *were* therein. So the dead which he slew at his death were more than *they* which he slew in his life.

31 Then his brethren and all the house of his father came down, and took him, and brought *him* up, and buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol in the buryingplace of Manoah his father. And he judged Israel twenty years.

JUDGES SEVENTEEN

Of the money that Micah first stole, then restored, his mother makes images

1 And there was a man of mount Ephraim, whose name *was* Micah.

2 And he said unto his mother, The eleven hundred *shekels* of silver that were taken from you, about which you cursedst, and spakest of also in mine ears, behold, the silver *is* with me; I took it. And his mother said, Blessed *be you* of the YAHWEH, my son.

3 And when he had restored the eleven hundred *shekels* of silver to his mother, his mother said, I had wholly dedicated the silver unto the YAHWEH from my hand for my son, to make a graven image and a molten image: now therefore I will restore it unto you.

4 yet he restored the money unto his mother; and his mother took two hundred *shekels* of silver, and gave them to the founder, who made thereof a graven image and a molten image: and they were in the house of Micah.

and he ornaments for them

5 And the man Micah had a house of gods, and made an ephod, and teraphim, and consecrated one of his sons, who became his priest.

6 In those days *there was* no king in Israel, *but* every man did *that which was* right in his own eyes. [Judg 18:1](#); [Judg 21:25](#); [[Judg 19:1](#)];

He hires a Levite to be his priest

7 And there was a young man out of Bethlehemjudah of the family of Judah, who *was* a Levite, and he sojourned there.

8 And the man departed out of the city from Bethlehemjudah to sojourn where he could find *a place*: and he came to mount Ephraim to the house of Micah, as he journeyed.

9 And Micah said unto him, Whence come you? And he said unto him, I *am* a Levite of Bethlehemjudah, and I go to sojourn where I may find *a place*.

10 And Micah said unto him, Dwell with me, and be unto me a father and a priest, and I will give you ten *shekels* of silver by the year, and a suit of apparel, and thy victuals. So the Levite went in.

11 And the Levite was content to dwell with the man; and the young man was unto him as one of his sons.

12 And Micah consecrated the Levite; and the young man became his priest, and was in the house of Micah.

13 Then said Micah, Now know I that the YAHWEH will do me good, seeing I have a Levite to *my* priest.

JUDGES EIGHTEEN

The Danites send five men to seek out an inheritance

1 In those days *there was* no king in Israel: and in those days the tribe of the Danites sought them an inheritance to dwell in; for unto that day *all their* inheritance had not fallen unto them among the tribes of Israel. [Judg 17:6](#); [Judg 21:25](#); [[Judg 19:1](#)];

2 And the children of Dan sent of their family five men from their coasts, men of valour, from Zorah, and from Eshtaol, to spy out the land, and to search it; and they said unto them, Go, search the land: who when they came to mount Ephraim, to the house of Micah, they lodged there.

At the house of Micah they consult with Jonathan, and are encouraged on their way

3 When they *were* by the house of Micah, they knew the voice of the young man the Levite: and they turned in thither, and said unto him, Who brought you hither? and what makest you in this *place*? and what have you here?

4 And he said unto them, Thus and thus dealeth Micah with me, and has hired me, and I am his priest.

5 And they said unto him, Ask counsel, we pray you, of Elohim, that we may know whether our way which we go shall be prosperous.

6 And the priest said unto them, Go in peace: before the YAHWEH *is* your way wherein you go.

They search Laish, and bring back news of good hope

7 Then the five men departed, and came to Laish, and saw the people that *were* therein, how they dwelt careless, after the manner of the Zidonians, quiet and secure; and *there was* no magistrate in the land,

that might put *them* to shame in *any* thing; and they *were* far from the Zidonians, and had no business with *any* man.

8 And they came unto their brethren to Zorah and Eshtaol: and their brethren said unto them, What *say* you?

9 And they said, Arise, that we may go up against them: for we have seen the land, and, behold, it *is* very good: and *are* you still? be not slothful to go, *and* to enter to possess the land.

10 When you go, you shall come unto a people secure, and to a large land: for Elohim has given it into your hands; a place where *there is* no want of any thing that *is* in the earth.

Six hundred men are sent to surprise it

11 And there went from thence of the family of the Danites, out of Zorah and out of Eshtaol, six hundred men appointed with weapons of war.

12 And they went up, and pitched in Kirjathjearim, in Judah: wherefore they called that place Mahanehdan unto this day: behold, *it is* behind Kirjathjearim. [Judg 13:25](#);

13 And they passed thence unto mount Ephraim, and came unto the house of Micah.

In their way they rob Micah of his priest and his consecrated things

14 Then answered the five men that went to spy out the country of Laish, and said unto their brethren, Do you know that there is in these houses an ephod, and teraphim, and a graven image, and a molten image? now therefore consider what you have to do.

15 And they turned thitherward, and came to the house of the young man the Levite, *even* unto the house of Micah, and saluted him. [\[1Sam 10:4\]](#);

16 And the six hundred men appointed with their weapons of war, which *were* of the children of Dan, stood by the entering of the gate.

17 And the five men that went to spy out the land went up, *and* came in thither, *and* took the graven image, and the ephod, and the teraphim, and the molten image: and the priest stood in the entering of the gate with the six hundred men *that were* appointed with weapons of war.

18 And these went into Micah's house, and fetched the carved image, the ephod, and the teraphim, and the molten image. Then said the priest unto them, What do you?

19 And they said unto him, Hold thy peace, lay thine hand upon thy mouth, and go with us, and be to us a father and a priest: *is it* better for you to be a priest unto the house of one man, or that you be a priest unto a tribe and a family in Israel?

20 And the priest's heart was glad, and he took the ephod, and the teraphim, and the graven image, and went in the midst of the people.

21 So they turned and departed, and put the little ones and the cattle and the carriage before them.

22 *And* when they were a good way from the house of Micah, the men that *were* in the houses near to Micah's house were gathered together, and overtook the children of Dan.

23 And they cried unto the children of Dan. And they turned their faces, and said unto Micah, What aileth you, that you come with such a company?

24 And he said, you have taken away my gods which I made, and the priest, and you are gone away: and what have I more? and what *is* this *that* you say unto me, What aileth you?

25 And the children of Dan said unto him, Let not thy voice be heard among us, lest angry fellows run upon you, and you lose thy life, with the lives of thy household.

26 And the children of Dan went their way: and when Micah saw that they *were* too strong for him, he turned and went back unto his house.

They win Laish, and call it Dan

27 And they took *the things* which Micah had made, and the priest which he had, and came unto Laish, unto a people *that were* at quiet and secure: and they smote them with the edge of the sword, and burnt the city with fire.

28 And *there was* no deliverer, because it *was* far from Zidon, and they had no business with *any* man; and it was in the valley that *lies* by Bethrehob. And they built a city, and dwelt therein.

29 And they called the name of the city Dan, after the name of Dan their father, who was born unto Israel: howbeit the name of the city *was* Laish at the first. [Josh 19:47](#);

They set up idolatry, wherein Jonathan inherits the priesthood

30 And the children of Dan set up the graven image: and Jonathan, the son of Gershom, the son of Manasseh, he and his sons were priests to the tribe of Dan until the day of the captivity of the land.

31 And they set them up Micah's graven image, which he made, all the time that the house of Elohim was in Shiloh.

A Levite goes to Beth-lehem to fetch home his concubine

1 And it came to pass in those days, when *there was* no king in Israel, that there was a certain Levite sojourning on the side of mount Ephraim, who took to him a concubine out of Bethlehemjudah. [Judg 17:6;](#) [Judg 18:1;](#) [Judg 21:25;](#)

2 And his concubine played the whore against him, and went away from him unto her father's house to Bethlehemjudah, and was there four whole months.

3 And her husband arose, and went after her, to speak friendly unto her, *and* to bring her again, having his servant with him, and a couple of asses: and she brought him into her father's house: and when the father of the damsel saw him, he rejoiced to meet him.

4 And his father in law, the damsel's father, retained him; and he abode with him three days: so they did eat and drink, and lodged there.

5 And it came to pass on the fourth day, when they arose early in the morning, that he rose up to depart: and the damsel's father said unto his son in law, Comfort thine heart with a morsel of bread, and afterward go your way.

6 And they sat down, and did eat and drink both of them together: for the damsel's father had said unto the man, Be content, I pray you, and tarry all night, and let thine heart be merry.

7 And when the man rose up to depart, his father in law urged him: therefore he lodged there again.

8 And he arose early in the morning on the fifth day to depart: and the damsel's father said, Comfort thine heart, I pray you. And they tarried until the declining of the day, and they did eat both of them.

9 And when the man rose up to depart, he, and his concubine, and his servant, his father in law, the damsel's father, said unto him, Behold, now the day draweth toward evening, I pray you tarry all night: behold, the day groweth to an end, lodge here, that thine heart may be merry; and to morrow get you early on your way, that you may go home.

10 But the man would not tarry that night, but he rose up and departed, and came over against Jebus, which *is* Jerusalem; and *there were* with him two asses saddled, his concubine also *was* with him.

11 *And* when they *were* by Jebus, the day was far spent; and the servant said unto his master, Come, I pray you, and let us turn in into this city of the Jebusites, and lodge in it.

12 And his master said unto him, We will not turn aside hither into the city of a stranger, that *is* not of the children of Israel; we will pass over to Gibeah.

13 And he said unto his servant, Come, and let us draw near to one of these places to lodge all night, in Gibeah, or in Ramah.

14 And they passed on and went their way; and the sun went down upon them *when they were* by Gibeah, which *belongeth* to Benjamin.

15 And they turned aside thither, to go in *and* to lodge in Gibeah: and when he went in, he sat him down in a street of the city: for *there was* no man that took them into his house to lodging.

An old man entertains him at Gibeah

16 And, behold, there came an old man from his work out of the field at even, which *was* also of mount Ephraim; and he sojourned in Gibeah: but the men of the place *were* Benjamites.

17 And when he had lifted up his eyes, he saw a wayfaring man in the street of the city: and the old man said, Whither go you? and whence come you?

18 And he said unto him, We *are* passing from Bethlehemjudah toward the side of mount Ephraim; from thence *am* I: and I went to Bethlehemjudah, but I *am now* going to the house of the YAHWEH; and there *is* no man that receiveth me to house.

19 Yet there is both straw and provender for our asses; and there is bread and wine also for me, and for thy handmaid, and for the young man *which is* with thy servants: *there is* no want of any thing.

20 And the old man said, Peace *be* with you; howsoever *let* all thy wants *lie* upon me; only lodge not in the street.

21 So he brought him into his house, and gave provender unto the asses: and they washed their feet, and did eat and drink. [\[Acts 16:15\]](#);

The Gibeonites abuse his concubine to death

22 *Now* as they were making their hearts merry, behold, the men of the city, certain sons of Belial, beset the house round about, *and* beat at the door, and spoke to the master of the house, the old man, saying, Bring forth the man that came into thine house, that we may know him. [Gen 19:4](#); [Hos 9:9](#); [Hos 10:9](#); [\[Judg 20:13\]](#);

23 And the man, the master of the house, went out unto them, and said unto them, Nay, my brethren, *nay*, I pray you, do not *so* wickedly; seeing that this man is come into mine house, do not this folly.

24 Behold, *here is* my daughter a maiden, and his concubine; them I will bring out now, and humble you them, and do with them what seemeth good unto you: but unto this man do not so vile a thing.

25 But the men would not hearken to him: so the man took his concubine, and brought her forth unto them; and they knew her, and abused her all the night until the morning: and when the day began to spring, they let her go.

26 Then came the woman in the dawning of the day, and fell down at the door of the man's house where her lord *was*, till it was light. [\[Gen 18:12\]](#);

27 And her lord rose up in the morning, and opened the doors of the house, and went out to go his way: and, behold, the woman his concubine was fallen down *at* the door of the house, and her hands *were* upon the threshold.

28 And he said unto her, Up, and let us be going. But none answered. Then the man took her *up* upon an ass, and the man rose up, and got him unto his place.

He divides her into twelve pieces, and sends them to the twelve tribes

29 And when he was come into his house, he took a knife, and laid hold on his concubine, and divided her, *together* with her bones, into twelve pieces, and sent her into all the coasts of Israel.

30 And it was so, that all that saw it said, There was no such deed done nor seen from the day that the children of Israel came up out of the land of Egypt unto this day: consider of it, take advice, and speak *your minds*.

The Levite in a general assembly declares his wrong

- 1** Then all the children of Israel went out, and the congregation was gathered together as one man, from Dan even to Beersheba, with the land of Gilead, unto the YAHWEH in Mizpeh. [1Sam 11:7];
- 2** And the chief of all the people, *even* of all the tribes of Israel, presented themselves in the assembly of the people of Elohim, four hundred thousand footmen that drew sword. [1Sam 14:38];
- 3** (Now the children of Benjamin heard that the children of Israel were gone up to Mizpeh.) Then said the children of Israel, Tell *us*, how was this wickedness?
- 4** And the Levite, the husband of the woman that was slain, answered and said, I came into Gibeah that *belongeth* to Benjamin, I and my concubine, to lodge.
- 5** And the men of Gibeah rose against me, and beset the house round about upon me by night, *and* thought to have slain me: and my concubine have they forced, that she is dead.
- 6** And I took my concubine, and cut her in pieces, and sent her throughout all the country of the inheritance of Israel: for they have committed lewdness and folly in Israel.
- 7** Behold, you *are* all children of Israel; give here your advice and counsel.

The decree of the assembly

- 8** And all the people arose as one man, saying, We will not any *of us* go to his tent, neither will we any *of us* turn into his house.
- 9** But now this *shall be* the thing which we will do to Gibeah; *we will go up* by lot against it;
- 10** And we will take ten men of a hundred throughout all the tribes of Israel, and a hundred of a thousand, and a thousand out of ten thousand, to fetch victual for the people, that they may do, when they come to Gibeah of Benjamin, according to all the folly that they have wrought in Israel.
- 11** So all the men of Israel were gathered against the city, knit together as one man.

The Benjamites, being cited, make head against the Israelites

- 12** And the tribes of Israel sent men through all the tribe of Benjamin, saying, What wickedness *is* this that is done among you?
- 13** Now therefore deliver *us* the men, the children of Belial, which *are* in Gibeah, that we may put them to death, and put away evil from Israel. But the children of Benjamin would not hearken to the voice of their brethren the children of Israel: Judg 19:22; Hos 9:9; Hos 10:9;
- 14** But the children of Benjamin gathered themselves together out of the cities unto Gibeah, to go out to battle against the children of Israel.
- 15** And the children of Benjamin were numbered at that time out of the cities twenty and six thousand men that drew sword, beside the inhabitants of Gibeah, which were numbered seven hundred chosen men.
- 16** Among all this people *there were* seven hundred chosen men lefthanded; every one could sling stones at a hair *breadth*, and not miss. Judg 3:15;
- 17** And the men of Israel, beside Benjamin, were numbered four hundred thousand men that drew sword: all these *were* men of war.

The Israelites in two battles lose forty thousand

- 18** And the children of Israel arose, and went up to the house of Elohim, and asked counsel of Elohim, and said, Which of us shall go up first to the battle against the children of Benjamin? And the YAHWEH said, Judah *shall go up* first. [Judg 1:1];
- 19** And the children of Israel rose up in the morning, and encamped against Gibeah.

20 And the men of Israel went out to battle against Benjamin; and the men of Israel put themselves in array to fight against them at Gibeah.

21 And the children of Benjamin came forth out of Gibeah, and destroyed down to the ground of the Israelites that day twenty and two thousand men.

22 And the people the men of Israel encouraged themselves, and set their battle again in array in the place where they put themselves in array the first day.

23 (And the children of Israel went up and wept before the YAHWEH until even, and asked counsel of the YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go up again to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother? And the YAHWEH said, Go up against him.)

24 And the children of Israel came near against the children of Benjamin the second day.

25 And Benjamin went forth against them out of Gibeah the second day, and destroyed down to the ground of the children of Israel again eighteen thousand men; all these drew the sword.

They destroy by a stratagem all the Benjamites, except six hundred

26 Then all the children of Israel, and all the people, went up, and came unto the house of Elohim, and wept, and sat there before the YAHWEH, and fasted that day until even, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before the YAHWEH.

27 And the children of Israel enquired of the YAHWEH, (for the ark of the covenant of Elohim *was* there in those days,

28 And Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, stood before it in those days,) saying, Shall I yet again go out to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother, or shall I cease? And the YAHWEH said, Go up; for to morrow I will deliver them into thine hand.

29 And Israel set liers in wait round about Gibeah. [Josh 8:4;](#)

30 And the children of Israel went up against the children of Benjamin on the third day, and put themselves in array against Gibeah, as at other times.

31 And the children of Benjamin went out against the people, *and* were drawn away from the city; and they began to smite of the people, *and* kill, as at other times, in the highways, of which one goes up to the house of Elohim, and the other to Gibeah in the field, about thirty men of Israel.

32 And the children of Benjamin said, They *are* smitten down before us, as at the first. But the children of Israel said, Let us flee, and draw them from the city unto the highways.

33 And all the men of Israel rose up out of their place, and put themselves in array at Baaltamar: and the liers in wait of Israel came forth out of their places, *even* out of the meadows of Gibeah.

34 And there came against Gibeah ten thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and the battle was sore: but they knew not that evil *was* near them.

35 And the YAHWEH smote Benjamin before Israel: and the children of Israel destroyed of the Benjamites that day twenty and five thousand and a hundred men: all these drew the sword.

36 So the children of Benjamin saw that they were smitten: for the men of Israel gave place to the Benjamites, because they trusted unto the liers in wait which they had set beside Gibeah.

37 And the liers in wait hasted, and rushed upon Gibeah; and the liers in wait drew *themselves* along, and smote all the city with the edge of the sword.

38 Now there was an appointed sign between the men of Israel and the liers in wait, that they should make a great flame with smoke rise up out of the city.

39 And when the men of Israel retired in the battle, Benjamin began to smite *and* kill of the men of Israel about thirty persons: for they said, Surely they are smitten down before us, as *in* the first battle.

40 But when the flame began to arise up out of the city with a pillar of smoke, the Benjamites looked behind them, and, behold, the flame of the city ascended up to heaven.

41 And when the men of Israel turned again, the men of Benjamin were amazed: for they saw that evil was come upon them.

42 Therefore they turned *their backs* before the men of Israel unto the way of the wilderness; but the battle overtook them; and them which *came* out of the cities they destroyed in the midst of them.

43 *Thus* they inclosed the Benjamites round about, *and* chased them, *and* trode them down with ease over against Gibeah toward the sunrising.

44 And there fell of Benjamin eighteen thousand men; all these *were* men of valour.

45 And they turned and fled toward the wilderness unto the rock of Rimmon: and they gleaned of them in the highways five thousand men; and pursued hard after them unto Gidom, and slew two thousand men of them.

46 So that all which fell that day of Benjamin were twenty and five thousand men that drew the sword; all these *were* men of valour.

47 But six hundred men turned and fled to the wilderness unto the rock Rimmon, and abode in the rock Rimmon four months. [Judg 21:13](#);

48 And the men of Israel turned again upon the children of Benjamin, and smote them with the edge of the sword, as well the men of *every* city, as the beast, and all that came to hand: also they set on fire all the cities that they came to.

JUDGES TWENTY-ONE

The people bewail the desolation of Benjamin

1 Now the men of Israel had sworn in Mizpeh, saying, There shall not any of us give his daughter unto Benjamin to wife.

2 And the people came to the house of Elohim, and abode there till even before Elohim, and lifted up their voices, and wept sore;

3 And said, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, why is this come to pass in Israel, that there should be to day one tribe lacking in Israel?

4 And it came to pass on the morrow, that the people rose early, and built there an altar, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings.

5 And the children of Israel said, Who *is there* among all the tribes of Israel that came not up with the congregation unto the YAHWEH? For they had made a great oath concerning him that came not up to the YAHWEH to Mizpeh, saying, He shall surely be put to death.

6 And the children of Israel repented them for Benjamin their brother, and said, There is one tribe cut off from Israel this day.

7 How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing we have sworn by the YAHWEH that we will not give them of our daughters to wives?

By the destruction of Jabesh-gilead they provide them four hundred wives

8 And they said, What one *is there* of the tribes of Israel that came not up to Mizpeh to the YAHWEH? And, behold, there came none to the camp from Jabeshgilead to the assembly.

9 For the people were numbered, and, behold, *there were* none of the inhabitants of Jabeshgilead there.

10 And the congregation sent thither twelve thousand men of the valiantest, and commanded them, saying, Go and smite the inhabitants of Jabeshgilead with the edge of the sword, with the women and the children.

11 And this *is* the thing that you shall do, you shall utterly destroy every male, and every woman that has lain by man. [Num 31:17](#);

12 And they found among the inhabitants of Jabeshgilead four hundred young virgins, that had known no man by lying with any male: and they brought them unto the camp to Shiloh, which *is* in the land of Canaan.

13 And the whole congregation sent *some* to speak to the children of Benjamin that *were* in the rock Rimmon, and to call peaceably unto them. [Judg 20:47](#);

14 And Benjamin came again at that time; and they gave them wives which they had saved alive of the women of Jabeshgilead: and yet so they sufficed them not.

15 And the people repented them for Benjamin, because that the YAHWEH had made a breach in the tribes of Israel.

They advise the remainder to surprise the virgins that danced at Shiloh

16 Then the elders of the congregation said, How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing the women are destroyed out of Benjamin?

17 And they said, *There must be* an inheritance for them that be escaped of Benjamin, that a tribe be not destroyed out of Israel.

18 Howbeit we may not give them wives of our daughters: for the children of Israel have sworn, saying, Cursed *be* he that giveth a wife to Benjamin.

19 Then they said, Behold, *there is* a feast of the YAHWEH in Shiloh yearly *in a place* which *is* on the north side of Bethel, on the east side of the highway that goes up from Bethel to Shechem, and on the south of Lebonah.

20 Therefore they commanded the children of Benjamin, saying, Go and lie in wait in the vineyards;

21 And see, and, behold, if the daughters of Shiloh come out to dance in dances, then come you out of the vineyards, and catch you every man his wife of the daughters of Shiloh, and go to the land of Benjamin.

22 And it shall be, when their fathers or their brethren come unto us to complain, that we will say unto them, Be favorable unto them for our sakes: because we reserved not to each man his wife in the war: for you did not give unto them at this time, *that* you should be guilty.

23 And the children of Benjamin did so, and took *them* wives, according to their number, of them that danced, whom they caught: and they went and returned unto their inheritance, and repaired the cities, and dwelt in them.

24 And the children of Israel departed thence at that time, every man to his tribe and to his family, and they went out from thence every man to his inheritance.

25 In those days *there was* no king in Israel: every man did *that which was* right in his own eyes. [Judg 17:6](#); [Judg 18:1](#); [Judg 19:1](#);

Ruth

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#)

RUTH ONE

Elimelech, driven by famine into Moab, dies there

1 Now it came to pass in the days when the judges ruled, that there was a famine in the land. And a certain man of Bethlehemjudah went to sojourn in the country of Moab, he, and his wife, and his two sons.

2 And the name of the man *was* Elimelech, and the name of his wife Naomi, and the name of his two sons Mahlon and Chilion, Ephrathites of Bethlehemjudah. And they came into the country of Moab, and continued there.

3 And Elimelech Naomi's husband died; and she was left, and her two sons.

Mahlon and Chilion, having married wives of Moab, die also

4 And they took them wives of the women of Moab; the name of the one *was* Orpah, and the name of the other Ruth: and they dwelt there about ten years.

5 And Mahlon and Chilion died also both of them; and the woman was left of her two sons and her husband.

Naomi, returning homeward

6 Then she arose with her daughters in law, that she might return from the country of Moab: for she had heard in the country of Moab how that the YAHWEH had visited his people in giving them bread.

7 Wherefore she went forth out of the place where she was, and her two daughters in law with her; and they went on the way to return unto the land of Judah.

dissuades her two daughters-in-law from going with her

8 And Naomi said unto her two daughters in law, Go, return each to her mother's house: the YAHWEH deal kindly with you, as you have dealt with the dead, and with me.

9 The YAHWEH grant you that you may find rest, each *of you* in the house of her husband. Then she kissed them; and they lifted up their voice, and wept.

10 And they said unto her, Surely we will return with you unto thy people.

11 And Naomi said, Turn again, my daughters: why will you go with me? *are* there yet *any more* sons in my womb, that they may be your husbands?

12 Turn again, my daughters, go *your way*; for I am too old to have a husband. If I should say, I have hope, *if* I should have a husband also to night, and should also bear sons;

13 Would you tarry for them till they were grown? would you stay for them from having husbands? nay, my daughters; for it grieveth me much for your sakes that the hand of the YAHWEH is gone out against me.

Orpah leaves her, but Ruth with great constancy accompanies her

14 And they lifted up their voice, and wept again: and Orpah kissed her mother in law; but Ruth clave unto her.

15 And she said, Behold, thy sister in law is gone back unto her people, and unto her gods: return you after thy sister in law.

16 And Ruth said, Intreat me not to leave you, *or* to return from following after you: for whither you go, I will go; and where you lodge, I will lodge: thy people *shall be* my people, and thy Elohim my Elohim:

17 Where you diest, will I die, and there will I be buried: the YAHWEH do so to me, and more also, *if ought* but death part you and me.

18 When she saw that she was stedfastly minded to go with her, then she left speaking unto her.

They two come to Beth-lehem, where they are gladly received

19 So they two went until they came to Bethlehem. And it came to pass, when they were come to Bethlehem, that all the city was moved about them, and they said, *Is* this Naomi?

20 And she said unto them, Call me not Naomi, call me Mara: for the Almighty has dealt very bitterly with me.

21 I went out full, and the YAHWEH has brought me home again empty: why *then* call you me Naomi, seeing the YAHWEH has testified against me, and the Almighty has afflicted me?

22 So Naomi returned, and Ruth the Moabitess, her daughter in law, with her, which returned out of the country of Moab: and they came to Bethlehem in the beginning of barley harvest.

RUTH TWO

Ruth gleanes in the field of Boaz

1 And Naomi had a kinsman of her husband's, a mighty man of wealth, of the family of Elimelech; and his name *was* Boaz. [Matt 1:5](#);

2 And Ruth the Moabitess said unto Naomi, Let me now go to the field, and glean ears of grain after *him* in whose sight I shall find grace. And she said unto her, Go, my daughter.

3 And she went, and came, and gleaned in the field after the reapers: and her hap was to light on a part of the field *belonging* unto Boaz, who *was* of the kindred of Elimelech.

Boaz takes notice of her

4 And, behold, Boaz came from Bethlehem, and said unto the reapers, The YAHWEH *be* with you. And they answered him, The YAHWEH bless you.

5 Then said Boaz unto his servant that was set over the reapers, Whose damsel *is* this?

6 And the servant that was set over the reapers answered and said, It *is* the Moabitish damsel that came back with Naomi out of the country of Moab:

7 And she said, I pray you, let me glean and gather after the reapers among the sheaves: so she came, and has continued even from the morning until now, that she tarried a little in the house.

and shows her great favor

8 Then said Boaz unto Ruth, Hearest you not, my daughter? Go not to glean in another field, neither go from hence, but abide here fast by my maidens:

9 *Let* thine eyes *be* on the field that they do reap, and go you after them: have I not charged the young men that they shall not touch you? and when you are athirst, go unto the vessels, and drink of *that* which the young men have drawn.

10 Then she fell on her face, and bowed herself to the ground, and said unto him, Why have I found grace in thine eyes, that you should take knowledge of me, seeing I *am* a stranger?

11 And Boaz answered and said unto her, It has fully been showed me, all that you have done unto thy mother in law since the death of thine husband: and *how* you have left thy father and thy mother, and the land of thy nativity, and are come unto a people which you knewest not heretofore.

12 The YAHWEH recompense thy work, and a full reward be given you of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, under whose wings you are come to trust.

13 Then she said, Let me find favor in thy sight, my lord; for that you have comforted me, and for that you have spoken friendly unto thine handmaid, though I be not like unto one of thine handmaidens.

14 And Boaz said unto her, At mealtime come you hither, and eat of the bread, and dip thy morsel in the vinegar. And she sat beside the reapers: and he reached her parched *corn*, and she did eat, and was sufficed, and left.

15 And when she was risen up to glean, Boaz commanded his young men, saying, Let her glean even among the sheaves, and reproach her not:

16 And let fall also *some* of the handfuls of purpose for her, and leave *them*, that she may glean *them*, and rebuke her not.

17 So she gleaned in the field until even, and beat out that she had gleaned: and it was about an ephah of barley.

That which she got, she carries to Naomi

18 And she took *it* up, and went into the city: and her mother in law saw what she had gleaned: and she brought forth, and gave to her that she had reserved after she was sufficed.

19 And her mother in law said unto her, Where have you gleaned to day? and where wroughtest you? blessed be he that did take knowledge of you. And she showed her mother in law with whom she had wrought, and said, The man's name with whom I wrought to day *is* Boaz.

20 And Naomi said unto her daughter in law, Blessed *be* he of the YAHWEH, who has not left off his kindness to the living and to the dead. And Naomi said unto her, The man *is* near of kin unto us, one of our next kinsmen.

21 And Ruth the Moabitess said, He said unto me also, you shall keep fast by my young men, until they have ended all my harvest.

22 And Naomi said unto Ruth her daughter in law, *It is* good, my daughter, that you go out with his maidens, that they meet you not in any other field.

23 So she kept fast by the maidens of Boaz to glean unto the end of barley harvest and of wheat harvest; and dwelt with her mother in law.

RUTH THREE

By Naomi's instruction

1 Then Naomi her mother in law said unto her, My daughter, shall I not seek rest for you, that it may be well with you?

2 And now *is* not Boaz of our kindred, with whose maidens you wast? Behold, he winnoweth barley to night in the threshingfloor.

3 Wash thyself therefore, and anoint you, and put thy raiment upon you, and get you down to the floor: *but* make not thyself known unto the man, until he shall have done eating and drinking.

4 And it shall be, when he lies down, that you shall mark the place where he shall lie, and you shall go in, and uncover his feet, and lay you down; and he will tell you what you shall do.

Ruth lies at Boaz's feet

5 And she said unto her, All that you sayest unto me I will do.

6 And she went down unto the floor, and did according to all that her mother in law bade her.

7 And when Boaz had eaten and drunk, and his heart was merry, he went to lie down at the end of the heap of corn: and she came softly, and uncovered his feet, and laid her down.

Boaz acknowledges the right of a kinsman

8 And it came to pass at midnight, that the man was afraid, and turned himself: and, behold, a woman lay at his feet.

- 9** And he said, Who are you? And she answered, I *am* Ruth thine handmaid: spread therefore thy skirt over thine handmaid; for you are a near kinsman.
- 10** And he said, Blessed *be* you of the YAHWEH, my daughter: *for* you have showed more kindness in the latter end than at the beginning, inasmuch as you followedst not young men, whether poor or rich.
- 11** And now, my daughter, fear not; I will do to you all that you requirest: for all the people of my town know that you are a virtuous woman.
- 12** And now it is true that I *am thy* near kinsman: howbeit there is a kinsman nearer than I.
- 13** Tarry this night, and it shall be in the morning, *that* if he will perform unto you the part of a kinsman, well; let him do the kinsman's part: but if he will not do the part of a kinsman to you, then will I do the part of a kinsman to you, *as* the YAHWEH liveth: lie down until the morning.

He sends her away with six measures of barley

- 14** And she lay at his feet until the morning: and she rose up before one could know another. And he said, Let it not be known that a woman came into the floor.
- 15** Also he said, Bring the vail that you *have* upon you, and hold it. And when she held it, he measured six *measures* of barley, and laid *it* on her: and she went into the city.
- 16** And when she came to her mother in law, she said, Who are you, my daughter? And she told her all that the man had done to her.
- 17** And she said, These six *measures* of barley gave he me; for he said to me, Go not empty unto thy mother in law.
- 18** Then said she, Sit still, my daughter, until you know how the matter will fall: for the man will not be in rest, until he have finished the thing this day.

RUTH FOUR

Boaz calls into judgment the next kinsman

- 1** Then went Boaz up to the gate, and sat him down there: and, behold, the kinsman of whom Boaz spoke came by; unto whom he said, Ho, such a one! turn aside, sit down here. And he turned aside, and sat down.
- 2** And he took ten men of the elders of the city, and said, Sit you down here. And they sat down.
- 3** And he said unto the kinsman, Naomi, that is come again out of the country of Moab, selleth a parcel of land, which *was* our brother Elimelech's:
- 4** And I thought to warn you, saying, Buy *it* before the inhabitants, and before the elders of my people. If you will redeem *it*, redeem *it*: but if you will not redeem *it*, *then* tell me, that I may know: for *there is* none to redeem *it* beside you; and I *am* after you. And he said, I will redeem *it*.
- 5** Then said Boaz, What day you buyest the field of the hand of Naomi, you must buy *it* also of Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of the dead, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance.

He refuses the redemption according to the manner in Israel

- 6** And the kinsman said, I cannot redeem *it* for myself, lest I mar mine own inheritance: redeem you my right to thyself; for I cannot redeem *it*.
- 7** Now this *was the manner* in former time in Israel concerning redeeming and concerning changing, for to confirm all things; a man plucked off his shoe, and gave *it* to his neighbour: and this *was* a testimony in Israel. [Deut 25:7](#);
- 8** Therefore the kinsman said unto Boaz, Buy *it* for you. So he drew off his shoe.

Boaz buys the inheritance

9 And Boaz said unto the elders, and *unto* all the people, you *are* witnesses this day, that I have bought all that *was* Elimelech's, and all that *was* Chilion's and Mahlon's, of the hand of Naomi.

10 Moreover Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of Mahlon, have I purchased to be my wife, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance, that the name of the dead be not cut off from among his brethren, and from the gate of his place: you *are* witnesses this day.

He marries Ruth

11 And all the people that *were* in the gate, and the elders, said, *We are* witnesses. The YAHWEH make the woman that is come into thine house like Rachel and like Leah, which two did build the house of Israel: and do you worthily in Ephratah, and be famous in Bethlehem: [Gen 29:32](#); [Gen 30:24-25](#); [Gen 35:17-18](#); [\[Gen 48:19\]](#);

12 And let thy house be like the house of Pharez, whom Tamar bore unto Judah, of the seed which the YAHWEH shall give you of this young woman. [Gen 38:29](#); [1Chr 2:4](#); [Matt 1:3](#);

She bears Obed, the grandfather of David

13 So Boaz took Ruth, and she was his wife: and when he went in unto her, the YAHWEH gave her conception, and she bore a son.

14 And the women said unto Naomi, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH, which has not left you this day without a kinsman, that his name may be famous in Israel.

15 And he shall be unto you a restorer of *thy* life, and a nourisher of thine old age: for thy daughter in law, which loveth you, which is better to you than seven sons, has born him. [\[1Sam 1:8\]](#);

16 And Naomi took the child, and laid it in her bosom, and became nurse unto it.

17 And the women her neighbours gave it a name, saying, There is a son born to Naomi; and they called his name Obed: he *is* the father of Jesse, the father of David.

The generations of Pharez unto David

18 Now these *are* the generations of Pharez: Pharez begat Hezron, [1Chr 2:5](#); [Matt 1:3](#);

19 And Hezron begat Ram, and Ram begat Amminadab, [\[1Chr 2:10\]](#); [\[Matt 1:3\]](#);

20 And Amminadab begat Nahshon, and Nahshon begat Salmon,

21 And Salmon begat Boaz, and Boaz begat Obed,

22 And Obed begat Jesse, and Jesse begat David. [\[Matt 1:6\]](#);

First_Samuel

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)

FIRST SAMUEL ONE

Elkanah, a Levite, having two wives, worships yearly at Shiloh

1 Now there was a certain man of Ramathaimzophim, of mount Ephraim, and his name *was* Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Elihu, the son of Tohu, the son of Zuph, an Ephrathite: [1Chr 6:26-27](#);

2 And he had two wives; the name of the one *was* Hannah, and the name of the other Peninnah: and Peninnah had children, but Hannah had no children.

3 And this man went up out of his city yearly to worship and to sacrifice unto the YAHWEH of hosts in Shiloh. And the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, the priests of the YAHWEH, *were* there. [Exod 23:14](#); [Deut 16:16](#);

He cherishes Hannah, though barren, and provoked by Peninnah

4 And when the time was that Elkanah offered, he gave to Peninnah his wife, and to all her sons and her daughters, portions:

5 But unto Hannah he gave a worthy portion; for he loved Hannah: but the YAHWEH had shut up her womb.

6 And her adversary also provoked her sore, for to make her fret, because the YAHWEH had shut up her womb.

7 And *as* he did so year by year, when she went up to the house of the YAHWEH, so she provoked her; therefore she wept, and did not eat.

8 Then said Elkanah her husband to her, Hannah, why weepest you? and why eat you not? and why is thy heart grieved? *am* not I better to you than ten sons? [Ruth 4:15](#);

Hannah in grief prays for a child

9 So Hannah rose up after they had eaten in Shiloh, and after they had drunk. Now Eli the priest sat upon a seat by a post of the temple of the YAHWEH.

10 And she *was* in bitterness of being, and prayed unto the YAHWEH, and wept sore.

11 And she vowed a vow, and said, O YAHWEH of hosts, if you will indeed look on the affliction of thine handmaid, and remember me, and not forget thine handmaid, but will give unto thine handmaid a man child, then I will give him unto the YAHWEH all the days of his life, and there shall no razor come upon his head. [Judg 13:5](#); [\[Num 6:5\]](#);

Eli first rebuking her, afterwards blesses her

12 And it came to pass, as she continued praying before the YAHWEH, that Eli marked her mouth.

13 Now Hannah, she spoke in her heart; only her lips moved, but her voice was not heard: therefore Eli thought she had been drunken.

14 And Eli said unto her, How long will you be drunken? put away thy wine from you.

15 And Hannah answered and said, No, my lord, I *am* a woman of a sorrowful spirit: I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but have poured out my being before the YAHWEH. [Ps 62:8](#);

16 Count not thine handmaid for a daughter of Belial: for out of the abundance of my complaint and grief have I spoken hitherto.

17 Then Eli answered and said, Go in peace: and the Elohim of Israel grant you thy petition that you have asked of him.

18 And she said, Let thine handmaid find grace in thy sight. So the woman went her way, and did eat, and her countenance was no more *sad*.

Hannah, having born Samuel, stays at home till he is weaned

19 And they rose up in the morning early, and worshipped before the YAHWEH, and returned, and came to their house to Ramah: and Elkanah knew Hannah his wife; and the YAHWEH remembered her.

20 Wherefore it came to pass, when the time was come about after Hannah had conceived, that she bore a son, and called his name Samuel, *saying*, Because I have asked him of the YAHWEH.

21 And the man Elkanah, and all his house, went up to offer unto the YAHWEH the yearly sacrifice, and his vow.

22 But Hannah went not up; for she said unto her husband, *I will not go up* until the child be weaned, and *then* I will bring him, that he may appear before the YAHWEH, and there abide for ever. [\[Luke 2:37\];](#)

23 And Elkanah her husband said unto her, Do what seemeth you good; tarry until you have weaned him; only the YAHWEH establish his word. So the woman abode, and gave her son suck until she weaned him.

She presents him, according to her vow, to the Lord

24 And when she had weaned him, she took him up with her, with three bullocks, and one ephah of flour, and a bottle of wine, and brought him unto the house of the YAHWEH in Shiloh: and the child *was* young. [Luke 2:41;](#)

25 And they slew a bullock, and brought the child to Eli.

26 And she said, Oh my lord, *as* thy being liveth, my lord, I *am* the woman that stood by you here, praying unto the YAHWEH.

27 For this child I prayed; and the YAHWEH has given me my petition which I asked of him:

28 Therefore also I have lent him to the YAHWEH; as long as he liveth he shall be lent to the YAHWEH. And he worshipped the YAHWEH there.

Hannah's song in thankfulness

- 1** And Hannah prayed, and said, My heart rejoiceth in the YAHWEH, mine horn is exalted in the YAHWEH: my mouth is enlarged over mine enemies; because I rejoice in thy salvation. [Luke 1:46](#);
- 2** *There is* none holy as the YAHWEH: for *there is* none beside you: neither *is there* any rock like our Elohim. [Deut 3:24](#); [Ps 86:8](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#); [\[2Sam 22:32\]](#); [\[Isa 44:8\]](#);
- 3** Talk no more so exceeding proudly; let *not* arrogancy come out of your mouth: for the YAHWEH *is* a Elohim of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed.
- 4** The bows of the mighty men *are* broken, and they that stumbled are girded with strength.
- 5** *They that were* full have hired out themselves for bread; and *they that were* hungry ceased: so that the barren has born seven; and she that has many children is waxed feeble. [Ps 34:10](#); [Lam 5:6](#); [Luke 1:53](#);
- 6** The YAHWEH killeth, and maketh alive: he bringeth down to the grave, and bringeth up. [Deut 32:39](#); [Ezek 37:11-12](#); [\[2Kgs 5:7\]](#); [\[Job 5:18\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:13\]](#);
- 7** The YAHWEH maketh poor, and maketh rich: he bringeth low, and lifteth up. [\[Job 5:11\]](#);
- 8** He raiseth up the poor out of the dust, *and* lifteth up the beggar from the dunghill, to set *them* among princes, and to make them inherit the throne of glory: for the pillars of the earth *are* the YAHWEH'S, and he has set the world upon them. [Job 36:15](#); [Ps 113:7-8](#); [Luke 1:52](#); [Ps 24:2](#); [Ps 102:25](#); [Ps 104:5](#); [\[Ps 107:41\]](#); [\[Ps 113:7\]](#);
- 9** He will keep the feet of his saints, and the wicked shall be silent in darkness; for by strength shall no man prevail.
- 10** The adversaries of the YAHWEH shall be broken to pieces; out of heaven shall he thunder upon them: the YAHWEH shall judge the ends of the earth; and he shall give strength unto his king, and exalt the horn of his anointed. [1Sam 7:10](#); [Ps 2:6](#); [Ps 89:24](#);
- 11** And Elkanah went to Ramah to his house. And the child did minister unto the YAHWEH before Eli the priest.

The sin of Eli's sons

- 12** Now the sons of Eli *were* sons of Belial; they knew not the YAHWEH.
- 13** And the priests' custom with the people *was, that*, when any man offered sacrifice, the priest's servant came, while the flesh was in seething, with a fleshhook of three teeth in his hand;
- 14** And he struck *it* into the pan, or kettle, or caldron, or pot; all that the fleshhook brought up the priest took for himself. So they did in Shiloh unto all the Israelites that came thither.
- 15** Also before they burnt the fat, the priest's servant came, and said to the man that sacrificed, Give flesh to roast for the priest; for he will not have sodden flesh of you, but raw.
- 16** And *if* any man said unto him, Let them not fail to burn the fat presently, and *then* take *as much* as thy being desireth; then he would answer him, *Nay*; but you shall give *it me* now: and if not, I will take *it* by force.
- 17** Wherefore the sin of the young men was very great before the YAHWEH: for men abhorred the offering of the YAHWEH.

Samuel's ministry

- 18** But Samuel ministered before the YAHWEH, *being* a child, girded with a linen ephod.
- 19** Moreover his mother made him a little coat, and brought *it* to him from year to year, when she came up with her husband to offer the yearly sacrifice.

By Eli's blessing Hannah is more fruitful

- 20** And Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife, and said, The YAHWEH give you seed of this woman for the loan which is lent to the YAHWEH. And they went unto their own home.
- 21** And the YAHWEH visited Hannah, so that she conceived, and bore three sons and two daughters. And the child Samuel grew before the YAHWEH.

Eli reproves his sons

22 Now Eli was very old, and heard all that his sons did unto all Israel; and how they lay with the women that assembled *at* the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

23 And he said unto them, Why do you such things? for I hear of your evil dealings by all this people.

24 Nay, my sons; for *it is* no good report that I hear: you make the YAHWEH'S people to transgress.

25 If one man sin against another, the judge shall judge him: but if a man sin against the YAHWEH, who shall intreat for him? Notwithstanding they hearkened not unto the voice of their father, because the YAHWEH would slay them. [Matt 12:32]; [Mark 3:28]; [1John 5:16];

26 And the child Samuel grew on, and was in favor both with the YAHWEH, and also with men. Luke 2:52;

A prophecy against Eli's house

27 And there came a man of Elohim unto Eli, and said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Did I plainly appear unto the house of thy father, when they were in Egypt in Pharaoh's house? Acts 7:25;

28 And did I choose him out of all the tribes of Israel *to be* my priest, to offer upon mine altar, to burn incense, to wear an ephod before me? and did I give unto the house of thy father all the offerings made by fire of the children of Israel? Lev 10:14;

29 Wherefore kick you at my sacrifice and at mine offering, which I have commanded *in my* habitation; and honourest thy sons above me, to make yourselves fat with the chiefest of all the offerings of Israel my people? Deut 32:15;

30 Wherefore the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel saith, I said indeed *that* thy house, and the house of thy father, should walk before me for ever: but now the YAHWEH saith, Be it far from me; for them that honour me I will honour, and they that despise me shall be lightly esteemed. Exod 28:43; Exod 29:9; [Jas 2:5];

31 Behold, the days come, that I will cut off thine arm, and the arm of thy father's house, that there shall not be an old man in thine house. [1Sam 3:12]; [1Kgs 2:27];

32 And you shall see an enemy *in my* habitation, in all *the wealth* which Elohim shall give Israel: and there shall not be an old man in thine house for ever.

33 And the man of thine, *whom* I shall not cut off from mine altar, *shall be* to consume thine eyes, and to grieve thine heart: and all the increase of thine house shall die in the flower of their age.

34 And this *shall be* a sign unto you, that shall come upon thy two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas; in one day they shall die both of them. [1Sam 4:11];

35 And I will raise me up a faithful priest, *that* shall do according to *that* which *is* in mine heart and in my mind: and I will build him a sure house; and he shall walk before mine anointed for ever. [1Kgs 2:35];

36 And it shall come to pass, *that* every one that is left in thine house shall come *and* crouch to him for a piece of silver and a morsel of bread, and shall say, Put me, I pray you, into one of the priests' offices, that I may eat a piece of bread.

FIRST SAMUEL THREE

How the word of the Lord was first revealed to Samuel

1 And the child Samuel ministered unto the YAHWEH before Eli. And the word of the YAHWEH was precious in those days; *there was* no open vision.

2 And it came to pass at that time, when Eli *was* laid down in his place, and his eyes began to wax dim, *that* he could not see; 1Sam 4:15;

3 And ere the lamp of Elohim went out in the temple of the YAHWEH, where the ark of Elohim *was*, and Samuel was laid down *to sleep*; [Exod 30:7];

4 That the YAHWEH called Samuel: and he answered, Here *am* I.

5 And he ran unto Eli, and said, Here *am* I; for you calledst me. And he said, I called not; lie down again. And he went and lay down.

6 And the YAHWEH called yet again, Samuel. And Samuel arose and went to Eli, and said, Here *am* I; for you didst call me. And he answered, I called not, my son; lie down again.

7 Now Samuel did not yet know the YAHWEH, neither was the word of the YAHWEH yet revealed unto him.

8 And the YAHWEH called Samuel again the third time. And he arose and went to Eli, and said, Here *am* I; for you didst call me. And Eli perceived that the YAHWEH had called the child.

9 Therefore Eli said unto Samuel, Go, lie down: and it shall be, if he call you, that you shall say, Speak, YAHWEH; for thy servant heareth. So Samuel went and lay down in his place.

10 And the YAHWEH came, and stood, and called as at other times, Samuel, Samuel. Then Samuel answered, Speak; for thy servant heareth.

Elohim tells Samuel the destruction of Eli's house

11 And the YAHWEH said to Samuel, Behold, I will do a thing in Israel, at which both the ears of every one that heareth it shall tingle. [2Kgs 21:12](#); [Jer 19:3](#);

12 In that day I will perform against Eli all *things* which I have spoken concerning his house: when I begin, I will also make an end. [1Sam 2:31](#);

13 For I have told him that I will judge his house for ever for the iniquity which he knoweth; because his sons made themselves vile, and he restrained them not.

14 And therefore I have sworn unto the house of Eli, that the iniquity of Eli's house shall not be purged with sacrifice nor offering for ever.

Samuel, though loath, tells Eli the vision

15 And Samuel lay until the morning, and opened the doors of the house of the YAHWEH. And Samuel feared to show Eli the vision.

16 Then Eli called Samuel, and said, Samuel, my son. And he answered, Here *am* I.

17 And he said, What *is* the thing that *the* YAHWEH has said unto you? I pray you hide *it* not from me: Elohim do so to you, and more also, if you hide *any* thing from me of all the things that he said unto you.

18 And Samuel told him every whit, and hid nothing from him. And he said, It *is* the YAHWEH: let him do what seemeth him good.

Samuel grows in credit

19 And Samuel grew, and the YAHWEH was with him, and did let none of his words fall to the ground.

20 And all Israel from Dan even to Beersheba knew that Samuel *was* established *to be* a prophet of the YAHWEH.

21 And the YAHWEH appeared again in Shiloh: for the YAHWEH revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by the word of the YAHWEH.

FIRST SAMUEL FOUR

The Israelites are overcome by the Philistines at Ebenezer

1 And the word of Samuel came to all Israel. Now Israel went out against the Philistines to battle, and pitched beside Ebenezer: and the Philistines pitched in Aphek. [\[1Sam 7:12\]](#);

2 And the Philistines put themselves in array against Israel: and when they joined battle, Israel was smitten before the Philistines: and they slew of the army in the field about four thousand men.

They fetch the ark unto the terror of the Philistines

3 And when the people were come into the camp, the elders of Israel said, Wherefore has the YAHWEH smitten us to day before the Philistines? Let us fetch the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH out of Shiloh unto us, that, when it cometh among us, it may save us out of the hand of our enemies.

4 So the people sent to Shiloh, that they might bring from thence the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH of hosts, which dwelleth *between* the cherubims: and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, *were* there with the ark of the covenant of Elohim. [2Sam 6:2](#); [Ps 80:1](#); [Ps 99:1](#);

5 And when the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH came into the camp, all Israel shouted with a great shout, so that the earth rang again.

6 And when the Philistines heard the noise of the shout, they said, What *meaneth* the noise of this great shout in the camp of the Hebrews? And they understood that the ark of the YAHWEH was come into the camp.

7 And the Philistines were afraid, for they said, Elohim is come into the camp. And they said, Woe unto us! for there has not been such a thing heretofore.

8 Woe unto us! who shall deliver us out of the hand of these mighty Gods? these *are* the Gods that smote the Egyptians with all the plagues in the wilderness.

9 Be strong, and quit yourselves like men, O you Philistines, that you be not servants unto the Hebrews, as they have been to you: quit yourselves like men, and fight. [Judg 13:1](#);

They are smitten again, the ark taken, and Hophni and Phinehas are slain

10 And the Philistines fought, and Israel was smitten, and they fled every man into his tent: and there was a very great slaughter; for there fell of Israel thirty thousand footmen. [\[Ps 78:61\]](#);

11 And the ark of Elohim was taken; and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were slain. [1Sam 2:34](#); [Ps 78:61](#); [\[Ps 78:64\]](#); [\[Jer 7:12\]](#);

Eli at the news, falling backward, breaks his neck

12 And there ran a man of Benjamin out of the army, and came to Shiloh the same day with his clothes rent, and with earth upon his head. [Josh 7:6](#); [\[Jer 26:6\]](#);

13 And when he came, lo, Eli sat upon a seat by the wayside watching: for his heart trembled for the ark of Elohim. And when the man came into the city, and told *it*, all the city cried out.

14 And when Eli heard the noise of the crying, he said, What *meaneth* the noise of this tumult? And the man came in hastily, and told Eli.

15 Now Eli was ninety and eight years old; and his eyes were dim, that he could not see. [1Sam 3:2](#);

16 And the man said unto Eli, I *am* he that came out of the army, and I fled to day out of the army. And he said, What is there done, my son?

17 And the messenger answered and said, Israel is fled before the Philistines, and there has been also a great slaughter among the people, and thy two sons also, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead, and the ark of Elohim is taken.

18 And it came to pass, when he made mention of the ark of Elohim, that he fell from off the seat backward by the side of the gate, and his neck brake, and he died: for he was an old man, and heavy. And he had judged Israel forty years. [\[Ps 78:64\]](#);

Phinehas's wife, discouraged in her travail with I-chabod, dies

19 And his daughter in law, Phinehas' wife, was with child, *near* to be delivered: and when she heard the tidings that the ark of Elohim was taken, and that her father in law and her husband were dead, she bowed herself and travailed; for her pains came upon her. [Ps 78:64];

20 And about the time of her death the women that stood by her said unto her, Fear not; for you have born a son. But she answered not, neither did she regard *it*.

21 And she named the child Ichabod, saying, The glory is departed from Israel: because the ark of Elohim was taken, and because of her father in law and her husband.

22 And she said, The glory is departed from Israel: for the ark of Elohim is taken.

FIRST SAMUEL FIVE

The Philistines having brought the ark into Ashdod, set it in the house of Dagon

1 And the Philistines took the ark of Elohim, and brought it from Ebenezer unto Ashdod. [2Cor 6:14];

2 When the Philistines took the ark of Elohim, they brought it into the house of Dagon, and set it by Dagon.

Dagon is smitten down and cut in pieces, and they of Ashdod smitten with emerods

3 And when they of Ashdod arose early on the morrow, behold, Dagon *was* fallen upon his face to the earth before the ark of the YAHWEH. And they took Dagon, and set him in his place again.

4 And when they arose early on the morrow morning, behold, Dagon *was* fallen upon his face to the ground before the ark of the YAHWEH; and the head of Dagon and both the palms of his hands *were* cut off upon the threshold; only *the stump of* Dagon was left to him.

5 Therefore neither the priests of Dagon, nor any that come into Dagon's house, tread on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod unto this day. [2Sam 7:13];

6 But the hand of the YAHWEH was heavy upon them of Ashdod, and he destroyed them, and smote them with emerods, *even* Ashdod and the coasts thereof. Ps 78:66;

7 And when the men of Ashdod saw that *it was* so, they said, The ark of the Elohim of Israel shall not abide with us: for his hand is sore upon us, and upon Dagon our god.

So Elohim deals with them of Gath, when it was brought thither

8 They sent therefore and gathered all the lords of the Philistines unto them, and said, What shall we do with the ark of the Elohim of Israel? And they answered, Let the ark of the Elohim of Israel be carried about unto Gath. And they carried the ark of the Elohim of Israel about *thither*.

9 And it *was so*, that, after they had carried it about, the hand of the YAHWEH was against the city with a very great destruction: and he smote the men of the city, both small and great, and they had emerods in their secret parts.

and so with them of Ekron, when it was brought thither

10 Therefore they sent the ark of Elohim to Ekron. And it came to pass, as the ark of Elohim came to Ekron, that the Ekronites cried out, saying, They have brought about the ark of the Elohim of Israel to us, to slay us and our people.

11 So they sent and gathered together all the lords of the Philistines, and said, Send away the ark of the Elohim of Israel, and let it go again to his own place, that it slay us not, and our people: for there was a deadly destruction throughout all the city; the hand of Elohim was very heavy there.

12 And the men that died not were smitten with the emerods: and the cry of the city went up to heaven.

After seven months the Philistines take counsel how to send back the ark

- 1** And the ark of the YAHWEH was in the country of the Philistines seven months.
- 2** And the Philistines called for the priests and the diviners, saying, What shall we do to the ark of the YAHWEH? tell us wherewith we shall send it to his place.
- 3** And they said, If you send away the ark of the Elohim of Israel, send it not empty; but in any wise return him a trespass offering: then you shall be healed, and it shall be known to you why his hand is not removed from you.
- 4** Then said they, What *shall be* the trespass offering which we shall return to him? They answered, Five golden emerods, and five golden mice, *according to* the number of the lords of the Philistines: for one plague *was* on you all, and on your lords. [Ps 78:66];
- 5** Wherefore you shall make images of your emerods, and images of your mice that mar the land; and you shall give glory unto the Elohim of Israel: perhaps he will lighten his hand from off you, and from off your gods, and from off your land.
- 6** Wherefore then do you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts? when he had wrought wonderfully among them, did they not let the people go, and they departed? Exod 12:31;
- 7** Now therefore make a new cart, and take two milch kine, on which there has come no yoke, and tie the kine to the cart, and bring their calves home from them: [2Sam 6:3];
- 8** And take the ark of the YAHWEH, and lay it upon the cart; and put the jewels of gold, which you return him *for* a trespass offering, in a coffer by the side thereof; and send it away, that it may go.
- 9** And see, if it goes up by the way of his own coast to Bethshemesh, *then* he has done us this great evil: but if not, then we shall know that *it is* not his hand *that* smote us: it *was* a chance *that* happened to us.

They bring it on a new cart with an offering unto Beth-shemesh

- 10** And the men did so; and took two milch kine, and tied them to the cart, and shut up their calves at home:
- 11** And they laid the ark of the YAHWEH upon the cart, and the coffer with the mice of gold and the images of their emerods.
- 12** And the kine took the straight way to the way of Bethshemesh, *and* went along the highway, lowing as they went, and turned not aside *to* the right hand or *to* the left; and the lords of the Philistines went after them unto the border of Bethshemesh. [2Sam 7:13];
- 13** And *they of* Bethshemesh *were* reaping their wheat harvest in the valley: and they lifted up their eyes, and saw the ark, and rejoiced to see *it*.
- 14** And the cart came into the field of Joshua, a Bethshemite, and stood there, where *there was* a great stone: and they clave the wood of the cart, and offered the kine a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH.
- 15** And the Levites took down the ark of the YAHWEH, and the coffer that *was* with it, wherein the jewels of gold *were*, and put *them* on the great stone: and the men of Bethshemesh offered burnt offerings and sacrificed sacrifices the same day unto the YAHWEH.
- 16** And when the five lords of the Philistines had seen *it*, they returned to Ekron the same day.
- 17** And these *are* the golden emerods which the Philistines returned *for* a trespass offering unto the YAHWEH; for Ashdod one, for Gaza one, for Askelon one, for Gath one, for Ekron one;
- 18** And the golden mice, *according to* the number of all the cities of the Philistines *belonging* to the five lords, *both* of fenced cities, and of country villages, even unto the great *stone of* Abel, whereon they set down the ark of the YAHWEH: *which stone remaineth* unto this day in the field of Joshua, the Bethshemite.

The people are smitten for looking into the ark

19 And he smote the men of Bethshemesh, because they had looked into the ark of the YAHWEH, even he smote of the people fifty thousand and threescore and ten men: and the people lamented, because the YAHWEH had smitten *many* of the people with a great slaughter.

20 And the men of Bethshemesh said, Who is able to stand before this holy YAHWEH Elohim? and to whom shall he go up from us?

They send to them of Kirjath-jearim to fetch it

21 And they sent messengers to the inhabitants of Kirjathjearim, saying, The Philistines have brought again the ark of the YAHWEH; come you down, *and* fetch it up to you.

FIRST SAMUEL SEVEN

They of Kirjath-jearim bring the ark into the house of Abinadab, and sanctify Eleazar, his son to keep it

1 And the men of Kirjathjearim came, and fetched up the ark of the YAHWEH, and brought it into the house of Abinadab in the hill, and sanctified Eleazar his son to keep the ark of the YAHWEH. [2Sam 6:4](#); [\[2Sam 6:3\]](#);

After twenty years

2 And it came to pass, while the ark abode in Kirjathjearim, that the time was long; for it was twenty years: and all the house of Israel lamented after the YAHWEH.

the Israelites, by Samuel's means, solemnly repent at Mizpeh

3 And Samuel spoke unto all the house of Israel, saying, If you do return unto the YAHWEH with all your hearts, *then* put away the strange gods and Ashtaroth from among you, and prepare your hearts unto the YAHWEH, and serve him only: and he will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines. [Deut 6:13](#); [Deut 10:20](#); [Matt 4:10](#); [Luke 4:8](#);

4 Then the children of Israel did put away Baalim and Ashtaroth, and served the YAHWEH only.

5 And Samuel said, Gather all Israel to Mizpeh, and I will pray for you unto the YAHWEH.

6 And they gathered together to Mizpeh, and drew water, and poured *it* out before the YAHWEH, and fasted on that day, and said there, We have sinned against the YAHWEH. And Samuel judged the children of Israel in Mizpeh.

While Samuel prays and sacrifices, the Lord discomfits the Philistines by thunder at Eben-ezer

7 And when the Philistines heard that the children of Israel were gathered together to Mizpeh, the lords of the Philistines went up against Israel. And when the children of Israel heard *it*, they were afraid of the Philistines.

8 And the children of Israel said to Samuel, Cease not to cry unto the YAHWEH our Elohim for us, that he will save us out of the hand of the Philistines.

9 And Samuel took a sucking lamb, and offered *it for* a burnt offering wholly unto the YAHWEH: and Samuel cried unto the YAHWEH for Israel; and the YAHWEH heard him. [\[Jer 15:1\]](#);

10 And as Samuel was offering up the burnt offering, the Philistines drew near to battle against Israel: but the YAHWEH thundered with a great thunder on that day upon the Philistines, and discomfited them; and they were smitten before Israel. [Josh 10:10](#); [\[1Sam 2:10\]](#); [\[Ps 144:6\]](#);

11 And the men of Israel went out of Mizpeh, and pursued the Philistines, and smote them, until *they came* under Bethcar.

12 Then Samuel took a stone, and set *it* between Mizpeh and Shen, and called the name of it Ebenezer, saying, Hitherto has the YAHWEH helped us. [1Sam 4:1](#);

The Philistines are subdued

13 So the Philistines were subdued, and they came no more into the coast of Israel: and the hand of the YAHWEH was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel. [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#);

14 And the cities which the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron even unto Gath; and the coasts thereof did Israel deliver out of the hands of the Philistines. And there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.

Samuel judges Israel

15 And Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life.

16 And he went from year to year in circuit to Bethel, and Gilgal, and Mizpeh, and judged Israel in all those places.

17 And his return *was* to Ramah; for there *was* his house; and there he judged Israel; and there he built an altar unto the YAHWEH. [1Sam 8:4](#);

FIRST SAMUEL EIGHT

By occasion of the ill government of Samuel's sons, the Israelites ask a king

1 And it came to pass, when Samuel was old, that he made his sons judges over Israel.

2 Now the name of his firstborn was Joel; and the name of his second, Abiah: *they were* judges in Beersheba.

3 And his sons walked not in his ways, but turned aside after lucre, and took bribes, and perverted judgment. [Exod 18:21](#); [Deut 16:19](#); [\[Exod 23:8\]](#);

4 Then all the elders of Israel gathered themselves together, and came to Samuel unto Ramah, [\[1Sam 7:17\]](#);

5 And said unto him, Behold, you are old, and thy sons walk not in thy ways: now make us a king to judge us like all the nations. [Hos 13:10](#); [Acts 13:21](#); [\[1Sam 12:12\]](#); [\[Hos 13:11\]](#);

Samuel praying in grief, is comforted by Elohim

6 But the thing displeased Samuel, when they said, Give us a king to judge us. And Samuel prayed unto the YAHWEH. [1Sam 12:17](#);

7 And the YAHWEH said unto Samuel, Hearken unto the voice of the people in all that they say unto you: for they have not rejected you, but they have rejected me, that I should not reign over them. [\[1Sam 10:19\]](#);

8 According to all the works which they have done since the day that I brought them up out of Egypt even unto this day, wherewith they have forsaken me, and served other gods, so do they also unto you.

9 Now therefore hearken unto their voice: howbeit yet protest solemnly unto them, and show them the manner of the king that shall reign over them.

He tells the manner of a king

10 And Samuel told all the words of the YAHWEH unto the people that asked of him a king.

11 And he said, This will be the manner of the king that shall reign over you: He will take your sons, and appoint *them* for himself, for his chariots, and *to be* his horsemen; and *some* shall run before his chariots.

12 And he will appoint him captains over thousands, and captains over fifties; and *will set them* to ear his ground, and to reap his harvest, and to make his instruments of war, and instruments of his chariots.

13 And he will take your daughters *to be* confectionaries, and *to be* cooks, and *to be* bakers.

14 And he will take your fields, and your vineyards, and your oliveyards, *even* the best *of them*, and give *them* to his servants.

15 And he will take the tenth of your seed, and of your vineyards, and give to his officers, and to his servants.

16 And he will take your menservants, and your maidservants, and your goodliest young men, and your asses, and put *them* to his work.

17 He will take the tenth of your sheep: and you shall be his servants.

18 And you shall cry out in that day because of your king which you shall have chosen you; and the YAHWEH will not hear you in that day.

Elohim wills Samuel to yield unto the importunity of the people

19 Nevertheless the people refused to obey the voice of Samuel; and they said, Nay; but we will have a king over us; [1Sam 10:19]; [1Sam 12:12];

20 That we also may be like all the nations; and that our king may judge us, and go out before us, and fight our battles.

21 And Samuel heard all the words of the people, and he rehearsed them in the ears of the YAHWEH.

22 And the YAHWEH said to Samuel, Hearken unto their voice, and make them a king. And Samuel said unto the men of Israel, Go you every man unto his city.

FIRST SAMUEL NINE

Saul despairing to find his father's asses

1 Now there was a man of Benjamin, whose name *was* Kish, the son of Abiel, the son of Zeror, the son of Bechorath, the son of Aphiah, a Benjamite, a mighty man of power. [1Sam 14:51];

2 And he had a son, whose name *was* Saul, a choice young man, and a goodly: and *there was* not among the children of Israel a goodlier person than he: from his shoulders and upward *he was* higher than any of the people. [1Sam 10:23];

3 And the asses of Kish Saul's father were lost. And Kish said to Saul his son, Take now one of the servants with you, and arise, go seek the asses.

4 And he passed through mount Ephraim, and passed through the land of Shalisha, but they found *them* not: then they passed through the land of Shalim, and *there they were* not: and he passed through the land of the Benjamites, but they found *them* not.

5 *And* when they were come to the land of Zuph, Saul said to his servant that *was* with him, Come, and let us return; lest my father leave *caring* for the asses, and take thought for us.

by the counsel of his servant

6 And he said unto him, Behold now, *there is* in this city a man of Elohim, and *he is* a honourable man; all that he saith cometh surely to pass: now let us go thither; perhaps he can show us our way that we should go.

7 Then said Saul to his servant, But, behold, *if* we go, what shall we bring the man? for the bread is spent in our vessels, and *there is* not a present to bring to the man of Elohim: what have we?

8 And the servant answered Saul again, and said, Behold, I have here at hand the fourth part of a shekel of silver: *that* will I give to the man of Elohim, to tell us our way.

9 (Beforetime in Israel, when a man went to enquire of Elohim, thus he spoke, Come, and let us go to the seer: for *he that is* now *called* a Prophet was before called a Seer.) [Gen 25:22](#);

10 Then said Saul to his servant, Well said; come, let us go. So they went unto the city where the man of Elohim *was*.

and direction of young maidens

11 *And* as they went up the hill to the city, they found young maidens going out to draw water, and said unto them, Is the seer here?

12 And they answered them, and said, He is; behold, *he is* before you: make haste now, for he came to day to the city; for *there is* a sacrifice of the people to day in the high place:

13 As soon as you be come into the city, you shall immediately find him, before he go up to the high place to eat: for the people will not eat until he come, because he blesses the sacrifice; *and* afterwards they eat that be bidden. Now therefore get you up; for about this time you shall find him. [\[Matt 14:19\]](#); [\[Matt 15:36\]](#); [\[Mark 6:41\]](#); [\[Luke 9:16\]](#); [\[John 6:11\]](#); [\[Acts 27:35\]](#);

14 And they went up into the city: *and* when they were come into the city, behold, Samuel came out against them, for to go up to the high place.

according to Elohim's revelation

15 Now the YAHWEH had told Samuel in his ear a day before Saul came, saying, [1Sam 15:1](#); [\[Acts 13:21\]](#);

16 To morrow about this time I will send you a man out of the land of Benjamin, and you shall anoint him *to be* captain over my people Israel, that he may save my people out of the hand of the Philistines: for I have looked upon my people, because their cry is come unto me.

17 And when Samuel saw Saul, the YAHWEH said unto him, Behold the man whom I spoke to you of! this same shall reign over my people.

comes to Samuel

18 Then Saul drew near to Samuel in the gate, and said, Tell me, I pray you, where the seer's house *is*.

Samuel entertains Saul at the feast

19 And Samuel answered Saul, and said, I *am* the seer: go up before me unto the high place; for you shall eat with me to day, and to morrow I will let you go, and will tell you all that *is* in thine heart.

20 And as for thine asses that were lost three days ago, set not thy mind on them; for they are found. And on whom *is* all the desire of Israel? *Is it* not on you, and on all thy father's house?

21 And Saul answered and said, *Am* not I a Benjamite, of the smallest of the tribes of Israel? and my family the least of all the families of the tribe of Benjamin? wherefore then speakest you so to me?

22 And Samuel took Saul and his servant, and brought them into the parlour, and made them sit in the chiefest place among them that were bidden, which *were* about thirty persons.

23 And Samuel said unto the cook, Bring the portion which I gave you, of which I said unto you, Set it by you.

24 And the cook took up the shoulder, and *that* which *was* upon it, and set *it* before Saul. And *Samuel* said, Behold that which is left! set *it* before you, *and* eat: for unto this time has it been kept for you since I said, I have invited the people. So Saul did eat with Samuel that day.

Samuel, after secret communication, brings Saul on his way

25 And when they were come down from the high place into the city, *Samuel* communed with Saul upon the top of the house.

26 And they arose early: and it came to pass about the spring of the day, that Samuel called Saul to the top of the house, saying, Up, that I may send you away. And Saul arose, and they went out both of them, he and Samuel, abroad.

27 And as they were going down to the end of the city, Samuel said to Saul, Bid the servant pass on before us, (and he passed on,) but stand you still a while, that I may show you the word of Elohim.

FIRST SAMUEL TEN

Samuel anoints Saul

1 Then Samuel took a vial of oil, and poured *it* upon his head, and kissed him, and said, *Is it* not because the YAHWEH has anointed you *to be* captain over his inheritance? [Acts 13:21](#);

He confirms him by prediction of three signs

2 When you are departed from me to day, then you shall find two men by Rachel's sepulcher in the border of Benjamin at Zelzah; and they will say unto you, The asses which you wentest to seek are found: and, lo, thy father has left the care of the asses, and sorroweth for you, saying, What shall I do for my son?

3 Then shall you go on forward from thence, and you shall come to the plain of Tabor, and there shall meet you three men going up to Elohim to Bethel, one carrying three kids, and another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a bottle of wine:

4 And they will salute you, and give you two *loaves* of bread; which you shall receive of their hands. [Judg 18:15](#);

5 After that you shall come to the hill of Elohim, where *is* the garrison of the Philistines: and it shall come to pass, when you are come thither to the city, that you shall meet a company of prophets coming down from the high place with a psaltery, and a tabret, and a pipe, and a harp, before them; and they shall prophesy: [1Chr 16:39](#); [Num 11:25](#);

6 And the Spirit of the YAHWEH will come upon you, and you shall prophesy with them, and shall be turned into another man.

7 And let it be, when these signs are come unto you, *that* you do as occasion serve you; for Elohim *is* with you.

8 And you shall go down before me to Gilgal; and, behold, I will come down unto you, to offer burnt offerings, *and* to sacrifice sacrifices of peace offerings: seven days shall you tarry, till I come to you, and show you what you shall do. [1Sam 13:8](#);

Saul's heart is changed, and he prophesies

9 And it was *so*, that when he had turned his back to go from Samuel, Elohim gave him another heart: and all those signs came to pass that day.

10 And when they came thither to the hill, behold, a company of prophets met him; and the Spirit of Elohim came upon him, and he prophesied among them. [1Sam 19:18](#);

11 And it came to pass, when all that knew him before saw that, behold, he prophesied among the prophets, then the people said one to another, What *is* this *that* is come unto the son of Kish? *Is* Saul also among the prophets?

12 And one of the same place answered and said, But who *is* their father? Therefore it became a proverb, *Is* Saul also among the prophets? [Gal 1:24](#); [1Sam 19:24](#);

13 And when he had made an end of prophesying, he came to the high place.

He conceals the matter of the kingdom from his uncle

14 And Saul's uncle said unto him and to his servant, Whither went you? And he said, To seek the asses: and when we saw that *they were* no where, we came to Samuel.

15 And Saul's uncle said, Tell me, I pray you, what Samuel said unto you.

16 And Saul said unto his uncle, He told us plainly that the asses were found. But of the matter of the kingdom, whereof Samuel spoke, he told him not.

Saul is chosen at Mizpeh by lot

17 And Samuel called the people together unto the YAHWEH to Mizpeh;

18 And said unto the children of Israel, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, I brought up Israel out of Egypt, and delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of all kingdoms, *and* of them that oppressed you:

19 And you have this day rejected your Elohim, who himself saved you out of all your adversities and your tribulations; and you have said unto him, *Nay*, but set a king over us. Now therefore present yourselves before the YAHWEH by your tribes, and by your thousands. [1Sam 8:7](#); [1Sam 8:19](#); [1Sam 12:12](#); [\[1Sam 12:13\]](#);

20 And when Samuel had caused all the tribes of Israel to come near, the tribe of Benjamin was taken. [Josh 7:14](#);

21 When he had caused the tribe of Benjamin to come near by their families, the family of Matri was taken, and Saul the son of Kish was taken: and when they sought him, he could not be found.

22 Therefore they enquired of the YAHWEH further, if the man should yet come thither. And the YAHWEH answered, Behold, he has hid himself among the stuff.

23 And they ran and fetched him thence: and when he stood among the people, he was higher than any of the people from his shoulders and upward. [1Sam 9:2](#);

24 And Samuel said to all the people, See you him whom the YAHWEH has chosen, that *there is* none like him among all the people? And all the people shouted, and said, May the king live.

25 Then Samuel told the people the manner of the kingdom, and wrote *it* in a book, and laid *it* up before the YAHWEH. And Samuel sent all the people away, every man to his house.

The different affections of his subjects

26 And Saul also went home to Gibeah; and there went with him a band of men, whose hearts Elohim had touched. [1Sam 13:2](#);

27 But the children of Belial said, How shall this man save us? And they despised him, and brought him no presents. But he held his peace. [1Sam 11:12](#); [2Chr 17:5](#);

FIRST SAMUEL ELEVEN

Nahash offers them of Jabesh-gilead a reproachful condition

1 Then Nahash the Ammonite came up, and encamped against Jabeshgilead: and all the men of Jabesh said unto Nahash, Make a covenant with us, and we will serve you.

2 And Nahash the Ammonite answered them, On this *condition* will I make *a covenant* with you, that I may thrust out all your right eyes, and lay it *for* a reproach upon all Israel.

3 And the elders of Jabesh said unto him, Give us seven days' respite, that we may send messengers unto all the coasts of Israel: and then, if *there be* no man to save us, we will come out to you.

They send messengers, and are delivered by Saul

4 Then came the messengers to Gibeah of Saul, and told the tidings in the ears of the people: and all the people lifted up their voices, and wept.

5 And, behold, Saul came after the herd out of the field; and Saul said, What *aiileth* the people that they weep? And they told him the tidings of the men of Jabesh.

6 And the Spirit of Elohim came upon Saul when he heard those tidings, and his anger was kindled greatly.

7 And he took a yoke of oxen, and hewed them in pieces, and sent *them* throughout all the coasts of Israel by the hands of messengers, saying, Whosoever cometh not forth after Saul and after Samuel, so shall it be done unto his oxen. And the fear of the YAHWEH fell on the people, and they came out with one consent. [Judg 20:1](#);

8 And when he numbered them in Bezek, the children of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand.

9 And they said unto the messengers that came, Thus shall you say unto the men of Jabeshgilead, To morrow, by *that time* the sun be hot, you shall have help. And the messengers came and showed *it* to the men of Jabesh; and they were glad.

10 Therefore the men of Jabesh said, To morrow we will come out unto you, and you shall do with us all that seemeth good unto you.

11 And it was *so* on the morrow, that Saul put the people in three companies; and they came into the midst of the host in the morning watch, and slew the Ammonites until the heat of the day: and it came to pass, that they which remained were scattered, so that two of them were not left together.

Saul thereby is confirmed, and his kingdom renewed

12 And the people said unto Samuel, Who *is* he that said, Shall Saul reign over us? bring the men, that we may put them to death. [1Sam 10:27](#);

13 And Saul said, There shall not a man be put to death this day: for to day the YAHWEH has wrought salvation in Israel.

14 Then said Samuel to the people, Come, and let us go to Gilgal, and renew the kingdom there.

15 And all the people went to Gilgal; and there they made Saul king before the YAHWEH in Gilgal; and there they sacrificed sacrifices of peace offerings before the YAHWEH; and there Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.

FIRST SAMUEL TWELVE

Samuel testifies his integrity

1 And Samuel said unto all Israel, Behold, I have hearkened unto your voice in all that you said unto me, and have made a king over you.

2 And now, behold, the king walketh before you: and I am old and grayheaded; and, behold, my sons *are* with you: and I have walked before you from my childhood unto this day.

3 Behold, here I *am*: witness against me before the YAHWEH, and before his anointed: whose ox have I taken? or whose ass have I taken? or whom have I defrauded? whom have I oppressed? or of whose hand have I received *any* bribe to blind mine eyes therewith? and I will restore it you. [\[Num 16:15\]](#);

4 And they said, you have not defrauded us, nor oppressed us, neither have you taken ought of any man's hand.

5 And he said unto them, The YAHWEH *is* witness against you, and his anointed *is* witness this day, that you have not found ought in my hand. And they answered, *He is* witness.

He reproves the people of ingratitude

6 And Samuel said unto the people, *It is* the YAHWEH that advanced Moses and Aaron, and that brought your fathers up out of the land of Egypt.

7 Now therefore stand still, that I may reason with you before the YAHWEH of all the righteous acts of the YAHWEH, which he did to you and to your fathers.

8 When Jacob was come into Egypt, and your fathers cried unto the YAHWEH, then the YAHWEH sent Moses and Aaron, which brought forth your fathers out of Egypt, and made them dwell in this place. [Gen 46:5](#); [Exod 2:23](#); [Exod 3:10](#);

9 And when they forgot the YAHWEH their Elohim, he sold them into the hand of Sisera, captain of the host of Hazor, and into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab, and they fought against them. [Judg 4:2](#); [Judg 10:7](#); [Judg 3:12](#);

10 And they cried unto the YAHWEH, and said, We have sinned, because we have forsaken the YAHWEH, and have served Baalim and Ashtaroth: but now deliver us out of the hand of our enemies, and we will serve you.

11 And the YAHWEH sent Jerubbaal, and Bedan, and Jephthah, and Samuel, and delivered you out of the hand of your enemies on every side, and you dwelt safe. [Judg 6:14](#); [Judg 10:3](#); [Judg 11:15](#);

12 And when you saw that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon came against you, you said unto me, Nay; but a king shall reign over us: when the YAHWEH your Elohim *was* your king. [1Sam 8:5](#); [1Sam 8:19](#); [\[1Sam 10:19\]](#);

13 Now therefore behold the king whom you have chosen, *and* whom you have desired! and, behold, the YAHWEH has set a king over you. [1Sam 10:19](#);

14 If you will fear the YAHWEH, and serve him, and obey his voice, and not rebel against the commandment of the YAHWEH, then shall both you and also the king that reigneth over you continue following the YAHWEH your Elohim: [Deut 1:26](#);

15 But if you will not obey the voice of the YAHWEH, but rebel against the commandment of the YAHWEH, then shall the hand of the YAHWEH be against you, as *it was* against your fathers.

He terrifies them with thunder in harvest time

16 Now therefore stand and see this great thing, which the YAHWEH will do before your eyes.

17 *Is it* not wheat harvest to day? I will call unto the YAHWEH, and he shall send thunder and rain; that you may perceive and see that your wickedness *is* great, which you have done in the sight of the YAHWEH, in asking you a king. [\[1Sam 8:6\]](#);

18 So Samuel called unto the YAHWEH; and the YAHWEH sent thunder and rain that day: and all the people greatly feared the YAHWEH and Samuel. [\[Job 37:13\]](#);

19 And all the people said unto Samuel, Pray for thy servants unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, that we die not: for we have added unto all our sins *this* evil, to ask us a king.

he comforts them in Elohim's mercy

20 And Samuel said unto the people, Fear not: you have done all this wickedness: yet turn not aside from following the YAHWEH, but serve the YAHWEH with all your heart; [\[Heb 11:32\]](#);

21 And turn you not aside: for *then should you go* after vain *things*, which cannot profit nor deliver; for they *are* vain.

22 For the YAHWEH will not forsake his people for his great name's sake: because it has pleased the YAHWEH to make you his people. [\[Ps 94:14\]](#);

23 Moreover as for me, Elohim forbid that I should sin against the YAHWEH in ceasing to pray for you: but I will teach you the good and the right way:

24 Only fear the YAHWEH, and serve him in truth with all your heart: for consider how great *things* he has done for you.

25 But if you shall still do wickedly, you shall be consumed, both you and your king.

Saul's select band

1 Saul reigned one year; and when he had reigned two years over Israel,

2 Saul chose him three thousand *men* of Israel; *whereof* two thousand were with Saul in Michmash and in mount Bethel, and a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin: and the rest of the people he sent every man to his tent. [\[1Sam 10:26\];](#)

He calls the Hebrews to Gilgal against the Philistines, whose garrison Jonathan had smitten

3 And Jonathan smote the garrison of the Philistines that *was* in Geba, and the Philistines heard *of it*. And Saul blew the trumpet throughout all the land, saying, Let the Hebrews hear.

4 And all Israel heard say *that* Saul had smitten a garrison of the Philistines, and *that* Israel also was had in abomination with the Philistines. And the people were called together after Saul to Gilgal.

The Philistines' great host

5 And the Philistines gathered themselves together to fight with Israel, thirty thousand chariots, and six thousand horsemen, and people as the sand which *is* on the sea shore in multitude: and they came up, and pitched in Michmash, eastward from Bethaven.

The distress of the Israelites

6 When the men of Israel saw that they were in a strait, (for the people were distressed,) then the people did hide themselves in caves, and in thickets, and in rocks, and in high places, and in pits.

7 And *some of* the Hebrews went over Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead. As for Saul, he *was* yet in Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling.

Saul, weary of staying for Samuel, sacrifices

8 And he tarried seven days, according to the set time that Samuel *had appointed*: but Samuel came not to Gilgal; and the people were scattered from him. [\[1Sam 10:8\];](#)

9 And Saul said, Bring hither a burnt offering to me, and peace offerings. And he offered the burnt offering.

10 And it came to pass, that as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt offering, behold, Samuel came; and Saul went out to meet him, that he might salute him.

Samuel reproves him

11 And Samuel said, What have you done? And Saul said, Because I saw that the people were scattered from me, and *that* you camest not within the days appointed, and *that* the Philistines gathered themselves together at Michmash;

12 Therefore said I, The Philistines will come down now upon me to Gilgal, and I have not made supplication unto the YAHWEH: I forced myself therefore, and offered a burnt offering.

13 And Samuel said to Saul, you have done foolishly: you have not kept the commandment of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which he commanded you: for now would the YAHWEH have established thy kingdom upon Israel for ever.

14 But now thy kingdom shall not continue: the YAHWEH has sought him a man after his own heart, and the YAHWEH has commanded him *to be* captain over his people, because you have not kept *that* which the YAHWEH commanded you. [\[Acts 13:22\];](#)

15 And Samuel arose, and got him up from Gilgal unto Gibeah of Benjamin. And Saul numbered the people *that were* present with him, about six hundred men. [\[1Sam 14:2\];](#)

16 And Saul, and Jonathan his son, and the people *that were* present with them, abode in Gibeah of Benjamin: but the Philistines encamped in Michmash.

The three spoiling bands of the Philistines

17 And the spoilers came out of the camp of the Philistines in three companies: one company turned unto the way *that leadeth to* Ophrah, unto the land of Shual:

18 And another company turned the way *to* Bethhoron: and another company turned *to* the way of the border that looketh to the valley of Zeboim toward the wilderness.

The policy of the Philistines, to suffer no smith in Israel

19 Now there was no smith found throughout all the land of Israel: for the Philistines said, Lest the Hebrews make *them* swords or spears: [Judg 5:8](#);

20 But all the Israelites went down to the Philistines, to sharpen every man his share, and his coulter, and his axe, and his mattock.

21 Yet they had a file for the mattocks, and for the coulters, and for the forks, and for the axes, and to sharpen the goads.

22 So it came to pass in the day of battle, that there was neither sword nor spear found in the hand of any of the people that *were* with Saul and Jonathan: but with Saul and with Jonathan his son was there found.

23 And the garrison of the Philistines went out to the passage of Michmash.

FIRST SAMUEL FOURTEEN

Jonathan goes and miraculously smites the Philistine's garrison

1 Now it came to pass upon a day, that Jonathan the son of Saul said unto the young man that bore his armour, Come, and let us go over to the Philistines' garrison, that *is* on the other side. But he told not his father.

2 And Saul tarried in the uttermost part of Gibeah under a pomegranate tree which *is* in Migron: and the people that *were* with him *were* about six hundred men; [1Sam 13:15](#);

3 And Ahiah, the son of Ahitub, Ichabod's brother, the son of Phinehas, the son of Eli, the YAHWEH'S priest in Shiloh, wearing an ephod. And the people knew not that Jonathan was gone.

4 And between the passages, by which Jonathan sought to go over unto the Philistines' garrison, *there was* a sharp rock on the one side, and a sharp rock on the other side: and the name of the one *was* Bozez, and the name of the other Seneh.

5 The forefront of the one *was* situate northward over against Michmash, and the other southward over against Gibeah.

6 And Jonathan said to the young man that bore his armour, Come, and let us go over unto the garrison of these uncircumcised: it may be that the YAHWEH will work for us: for *there is* no restraint to the YAHWEH to save by many or by few. [\[2Chr 14:11\]](#);

7 And his armourbearer said unto him, Do all that *is* in thine heart: turn you; behold, I *am* with you according to thy heart.

8 Then said Jonathan, Behold, we will pass over unto *these* men, and we will discover ourselves unto them.

9 If they say thus unto us, Tarry until we come to you; then we will stand still in our place, and will not go up unto them.

10 But if they say thus, Come up unto us; then we will go up: for the YAHWEH has delivered them into our hand: and this *shall be* a sign unto us.

11 And both of them discovered themselves unto the garrison of the Philistines: and the Philistines said, Behold, the Hebrews come forth out of the holes where they had hid themselves.

12 And the men of the garrison answered Jonathan and his armourbearer, and said, Come up to us, and we will show you a thing. And Jonathan said unto his armourbearer, Come up after me: for the YAHWEH has delivered them into the hand of Israel.

13 And Jonathan climbed up upon his hands and upon his feet, and his armourbearer after him: and they fell before Jonathan; and his armourbearer slew after him.

14 And that first slaughter, which Jonathan and his armourbearer made, was about twenty men, within as it were a half acre of land, *which a yoke of oxen might plow*.

A divine terror makes them beat themselves

15 And there was trembling in the host, in the field, and among all the people: the garrison, and the spoilers, they also trembled, and the earth quaked: so it was a very great trembling.

16 And the watchmen of Saul in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; and, behold, the multitude melted away, and they went on beating down *one another*.

Saul, not staying the priest's answer, sets on them

17 Then said Saul unto the people that *were* with him, Number now, and see who is gone from us. And when they had numbered, behold, Jonathan and his armourbearer *were not there*.

18 And Saul said unto Ahiah, Bring hither the ark of Elohim. For the ark of Elohim was at that time with the children of Israel.

19 And it came to pass, while Saul talked unto the priest, that the noise that *was* in the host of the Philistines went on and increased: and Saul said unto the priest, Withdraw thine hand.

20 And Saul and all the people that *were* with him assembled themselves, and they came to the battle: and, behold, every man's sword was against his fellow, *and there was* a very great discomfiture. [\[2Chr 20:22\]](#);

The captivated Hebrews, and the hidden Israelites, join against them

21 Moreover the Hebrews *that* were with the Philistines before that time, which went up with them into the camp *from the country* round about, even they also *turned* to be with the Israelites that *were* with Saul and Jonathan.

22 Likewise all the men of Israel which had hid themselves in mount Ephraim, *when* they heard that the Philistines fled, even they also followed hard after them in the battle.

23 So the YAHWEH saved Israel that day: and the battle passed over unto Bethaven.

Saul's unadvised adjuration hinders the victory

24 And the men of Israel were distressed that day: for Saul had adjured the people, saying, Cursed *be* the man that eateth *any* food until evening, that I may be avenged on mine enemies. So none of the people tasted *any* food.

25 And all *they of* the land came to a wood; and there was honey upon the ground.

26 And when the people were come into the wood, behold, the honey dropped; but no man put his hand to his mouth: for the people feared the oath.

27 But Jonathan heard not when his father charged the people with the oath: wherefore he put forth the end of the rod that *was* in his hand, and dipped it in a honeycomb, and put his hand to his mouth; and his eyes were enlightened.

28 Then answered one of the people, and said, Thy father straitly charged the people with an oath, saying, Cursed *be* the man that eateth *any* food this day. And the people were faint.

29 Then said Jonathan, My father has troubled the land: see, I pray you, how mine eyes have been enlightened, because I tasted a little of this honey.

30 How much more, if haply the people had eaten freely to day of the spoil of their enemies which they found? for had there not been now a much greater slaughter among the Philistines?

He restrains the people from eating blood

31 And they smote the Philistines that day from Michmash to Aijalon: and the people were very faint.
32 And the people flew upon the spoil, and took sheep, and oxen, and calves, and slew *them* on the ground: and the people did eat *them* with the blood.
33 Then they told Saul, saying, Behold, the people sin against the YAHWEH, in that they eat with the blood. And he said, you have transgressed: roll a great stone unto me this day. [Lev 17:10];
34 And Saul said, Disperse yourselves among the people, and say unto them, Bring me hither every man his ox, and every man his sheep, and slay *them* here, and eat; and sin not against the YAHWEH in eating with the blood. And all the people brought every man his ox with him that night, and slew *them* there.

He builds an altar

35 And Saul built an altar unto the YAHWEH: the same was the first altar that he built unto the YAHWEH.
36 And Saul said, Let us go down after the Philistines by night, and spoil them until the morning light, and let us not leave a man of them. And they said, Do whatsoever seemeth good unto you. Then said the priest, Let us draw near hither unto Elohim.

Jonathan, taken by lot, is save by the people

37 And Saul asked counsel of Elohim, Shall I go down after the Philistines? will you deliver them into the hand of Israel? But he answered him not that day.
38 And Saul said, Draw you near hither, all the chief of the people: and know and see wherein this sin has been this day. Judg 20:2;
39 For, *as* the YAHWEH liveth, which saveth Israel, though it be in Jonathan my son, he shall surely die. But *there was* not a man among all the people *that* answered him.
40 Then said he unto all Israel, Be you on one side, and I and Jonathan my son will be on the other side. And the people said unto Saul, Do what seemeth good unto you.
41 Therefore Saul said unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Give a perfect *lot*. And Saul and Jonathan were taken: but the people escaped.
42 And Saul said, Cast *lots* between me and Jonathan my son. And Jonathan was taken.
43 Then Saul said to Jonathan, Tell me what you have done. And Jonathan told him, and said, I did but taste a little honey with the end of the rod that *was* in mine hand, *and*, lo, I must die.
44 And Saul answered, Elohim do so and more also: for you shall surely die, Jonathan.
45 And the people said unto Saul, Shall Jonathan die, who has wrought this great salvation in Israel? Elohim forbid: *as* the YAHWEH liveth, there shall not one hair of his head fall to the ground; for he has wrought with Elohim this day. So the people rescued Jonathan, that he died not. [Matt 10:30]; [Luke 12:7]; [Luke 21:18];
46 Then Saul went up from following the Philistines: and the Philistines went to their own place.

Saul's victories, strength, and family

47 So Saul took the kingdom over Israel, and fought against all his enemies on every side, against Moab, and against the children of Ammon, and against Edom, and against the kings of Zobah, and against the Philistines: and whithersoever he turned himself, he vexed *them*.
48 And he gathered a host, and smote the Amalekites, and delivered Israel out of the hands of them that spoiled them.
49 Now the sons of Saul were Jonathan, and Ishui, and Melchishua: and the names of his two daughters *were these*; the name of the firstborn Merab, and the name of the younger Michal:
50 And the name of Saul's wife *was* Ahinoam, the daughter of Ahimaaz: and the name of the captain of his host *was* Abner, the son of Ner, Saul's uncle.
51 And Kish *was* the father of Saul; and Ner the father of Abner *was* the son of Abiel. [1Sam 9:1];
52 And there was sore war against the Philistines all the days of Saul: and when Saul saw any strong man, or any valiant man, he took him unto him.

Samuel sends Saul to destroy Amalek

- 1** Samuel also said unto Saul, The YAHWEH sent me to anoint you *to be* king over his people, over Israel: now therefore hearken you unto the voice of the words of the YAHWEH. [\[1Sam 9:15\]](#);
- 2** Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, I remember *that* which Amalek did to Israel, how he laid *wait* for him in the way, when he came up from Egypt. [Exod 17:8](#); [Exod 17:14](#); [Deut 25:17](#); [\[Exod 17:16\]](#);
- 3** Now go and smite Amalek, and utterly destroy all that they have, and spare them not; but slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, ox and sheep, camel and ass.
- 4** And Saul gathered the people together, and numbered them in Telaim, two hundred thousand footmen, and ten thousand men of Judah.
- 5** And Saul came to a city of Amalek, and laid wait in the valley.

Saul favors the Kenites

- 6** And Saul said unto the Kenites, Go, depart, get you down from among the Amalekites, lest I destroy you with them: for you showed kindness to all the children of Israel, when they came up out of Egypt. So the Kenites departed from among the Amalekites. [Judg 1:16](#); [Exod 18:10](#); [Exod 18:19](#); [Num 10:29](#);

He spares Agag and the best of the spoil

- 7** And Saul smote the Amalekites from Havilah *until* you come to Shur, that *is* over against Egypt.
- 8** And he took Agag the king of the Amalekites alive, and utterly destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword. [Num 24:7](#);
- 9** But Saul and the people spared Agag, and the best of the sheep, and of the oxen, and of the fatlings, and the lambs, and all *that was* good, and would not utterly destroy them: but every thing *that was* vile and refuse, that they destroyed utterly.

Samuel denounces unto Saul Elohim's rejection of him for his disobedience

- 10** Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto Samuel, saying,
- 11** It repenteth me that I have set up Saul *to be* king: for he is turned back from following me, and has not performed my commandments. And it grieved Samuel; and he cried unto the YAHWEH all night.
- 12** And when Samuel rose early to meet Saul in the morning, it was told Samuel, saying, Saul came to Carmel, and, behold, he set him up a place, and is gone about, and passed on, and gone down to Gilgal.
- 13** And Samuel came to Saul: and Saul said unto him, Blessed *be* you of the YAHWEH: I have performed the commandment of the YAHWEH.
- 14** And Samuel said, What *meaneth* then this bleating of the sheep in mine ears, and the lowing of the oxen which I hear?
- 15** And Saul said, They have brought them from the Amalekites: for the people spared the best of the sheep and of the oxen, to sacrifice unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim; and the rest we have utterly destroyed.
- 16** Then Samuel said unto Saul, Stay, and I will tell you what the YAHWEH has said to me this night. And he said unto him, Say on.
- 17** And Samuel said, When you *were* little in thine own sight, *were* you not *made* the head of the tribes of Israel, and the YAHWEH anointed you king over Israel?
- 18** And the YAHWEH sent you on a journey, and said, Go and utterly destroy the sinners the Amalekites, and fight against them until they be consumed.
- 19** Wherefore then didst you not obey the voice of the YAHWEH, but didst fly upon the spoil, and didst evil in the sight of the YAHWEH?

20 And Saul said unto Samuel, yes, I have obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH, and have gone the way which the YAHWEH sent me, and have brought Agag the king of Amalek, and have utterly destroyed the Amalekites.

21 But the people took of the spoil, sheep and oxen, the chief of the things which should have been utterly destroyed, to sacrifice unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim in Gilgal.

22 And Samuel said, Has the YAHWEH *as great* delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the YAHWEH? Behold, to obey *is* better than sacrifice, *and* to hearken than the fat of rams. [Prov 4:17](#); [Hos 6:6](#); [Matt 9:13](#); [Matt 12:7](#); [\[Prov 21:3\]](#); [\[Matt 23:23\]](#); [\[Luke 11:42\]](#);

23 For rebellion *is as* the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness *is as* iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the YAHWEH, he has also rejected you from *being* king. [\[Hos 13:11\]](#);

Saul's humiliation

24 And Saul said unto Samuel, I have sinned: for I have transgressed the commandment of the YAHWEH, and thy words: because I feared the people, and obeyed their voice.

25 Now therefore, I pray you, pardon my sin, and turn again with me, that I may worship the YAHWEH.

26 And Samuel said unto Saul, I will not return with you: for you have rejected the word of the YAHWEH, and the YAHWEH has rejected you from being king over Israel.

27 And as Samuel turned about to go away, he laid hold upon the skirt of his mantle, and it rent.

28 And Samuel said unto him, The YAHWEH has rent the kingdom of Israel from you this day, and has given it to a neighbour of thine, *that is* better than you. [\[1Kgs 11:31\]](#);

29 And also the Strength of Israel will not lie nor repent: for he *is* not a man, that he should repent. [\[Num 23:19\]](#);

30 Then he said, I have sinned: yet honour me now, I pray you, before the elders of my people, and before Israel, and turn again with me, that I may worship the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

31 So Samuel turned again after Saul; and Saul worshipped the YAHWEH.

Samuel kills Agag

32 Then said Samuel, Bring you hither to me Agag the king of the Amalekites. And Agag came unto him delicately. And Agag said, Surely the bitterness of death is past.

33 And Samuel said, As thy sword has made women childless, so shall thy mother be childless among women. And Samuel hewed Agag in pieces before the YAHWEH in Gilgal.

Samuel and Saul part

34 Then Samuel went to Ramah; and Saul went up to his house to Gibeah of Saul.

35 And Samuel came no more to see Saul until the day of his death: nevertheless Samuel mourned for Saul: and the YAHWEH repented that he had made Saul king over Israel.

FIRST SAMUEL SIXTEEN

Samuel sent by Elohim, under pretence of a sacrifice, comes to Beth-lehem

1 And the YAHWEH said unto Samuel, How long will you mourn for Saul, seeing I have rejected him from reigning over Israel? fill thine horn with oil, and go, I will send you to Jesse the Bethlehemite: for I have provided me a king among his sons. [\[1Chr 11:3\]](#); [\[Ps 89:20\]](#); [\[Hos 13:11\]](#); [\[Matt 1:6\]](#); [\[Acts 7:46\]](#);

2 And Samuel said, How can I go? if Saul hear *it*, he will kill me. And the YAHWEH said, Take a heifer with you, and say, I am come to sacrifice to the YAHWEH.

3 And call Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show you what you shall do: and you shall anoint unto me *him* whom I name unto you.

4 And Samuel did that which the YAHWEH spoke, and came to Bethlehem. And the elders of the town trembled at his coming, and said, Come you peaceably? [Luke 2:4];

5 And he said, Peaceably: I am come to sacrifice unto the YAHWEH: sanctify yourselves, and come with me to the sacrifice. And he sanctified Jesse and his sons, and called them to the sacrifice.

His human judgment is reproved

6 And it came to pass, when they were come, that he looked on Eliab, and said, Surely the YAHWEH'S anointed *is* before him.

7 But the YAHWEH said unto Samuel, Look not on his countenance, or on the height of his stature; because I have refused him: for *the YAHWEH seeth* not as man seeth; for man looketh on the outward appearance, but the YAHWEH looketh on the heart. 1Chr 28:9; Ps 7:9; Jer 11:20; Jer 17:10; Jer 20:12; [Deut 1:17]; [Luke 16:15]; [John 2:25]; [Rev 2:23];

8 Then Jesse called Abinadab, and made him pass before Samuel. And he said, Neither has the YAHWEH chosen this.

9 Then Jesse made Shammah to pass by. And he said, Neither has the YAHWEH chosen this.

10 Again, Jesse made seven of his sons to pass before Samuel. And Samuel said unto Jesse, The YAHWEH has not chosen these.

He anoints David

11 And Samuel said unto Jesse, Are here all *thy* children? And he said, There remaineth yet the youngest, and, behold, he keepeth the sheep. And Samuel said unto Jesse, Send and fetch him: for we will not sit down till he come hither. 2Sam 7:8; Ps 78:70; [1Chr 17:7];

12 And he sent, and brought him in. Now he *was* ruddy, *and* withal of a beautiful countenance, and goodly to look to. And the YAHWEH said, Arise, anoint him: for this *is* he. [1Chr 28:4]; [Acts 13:22];

13 Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the Spirit of the YAHWEH came upon David from that day forward. So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah. Ps 89:20; Acts 7:46; Acts 13:22; [2Sam 12:7];

14 But the Spirit of the YAHWEH departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from the YAHWEH troubled him. [1Sam 19:9];

Saul sends for David to quiet his evil spirit

15 And Saul's servants said unto him, Behold now, an evil spirit from Elohim troubleth you.

16 Let our lord now command thy servants, *which are* before you, to seek out a man, *who is* a cunning player on a harp: and it shall come to pass, when the evil spirit from Elohim is upon you, that he shall play with his hand, and you shall be well.

17 And Saul said unto his servants, Provide me now a man that can play well, and bring *him* to me. [Acts 1:24];

18 Then answered one of the servants, and said, Behold, I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite, *that is* cunning in playing, and a mighty valiant man, and a man of war, and prudent in matters, and a comely person, and the YAHWEH *is* with him.

19 Wherefore Saul sent messengers unto Jesse, and said, Send me David thy son, which *is* with the sheep. [1Sam 17:15];

20 And Jesse took an ass *laden* with bread, and a bottle of wine, and a kid, and sent *them* by David his son unto Saul.

21 And David came to Saul, and stood before him: and he loved him greatly; and he became his armourbearer.

22 And Saul sent to Jesse, saying, Let David, I pray you, stand before me; for he has found favor in my sight.

23 And it came to pass, when the *evil* spirit from Elohim was upon Saul, that David took a harp, and played with his hand: so Saul was refreshed, and was well, and the evil spirit departed from him.

FIRST SAMUEL SEVENTEEN

The armies of the Israelites and Philistines being ready to battle

1 Now the Philistines gathered together their armies to battle, and were gathered together at Shochoh, which *belongeth* to Judah, and pitched between Shochoh and Azekah, in Ephesdammim.

2 And Saul and the men of Israel were gathered together, and pitched by the valley of Elah, and set the battle in array against the Philistines.

3 And the Philistines stood on a mountain on the one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side: and *there was* a valley between them.

Goliath challenges a combat

4 And there went out a champion out of the camp of the Philistines, named Goliath, of Gath, whose height *was* six cubits and a span.

5 And *he had* a helmet of brass upon his head, and he *was* armed with a coat of mail; and the weight of the coat *was* five thousand shekels of brass.

6 And *he had* greaves of brass upon his legs, and a target of brass between his shoulders.

7 And the staff of his spear *was* like a weaver's beam; and his spear's head *weighed* six hundred shekels of iron: and one bearing a shield went before him.

8 And he stood and cried unto the armies of Israel, and said unto them, Why are you come out to set *your* battle in array? *am* not I a Philistine, and you servants to Saul? choose you a man for you, and let him come down to me.

9 If he be able to fight with me, and to kill me, then will we be your servants: but if I prevail against him, and kill him, then shall you be our servants, and serve us.

10 And the Philistine said, I defy the armies of Israel this day; give me a man, that we may fight together.

11 When Saul and all Israel heard those words of the Philistine, they were dismayed, and greatly afraid.

David, sent by his father to visit his brethren, takes the challenge

12 Now David *was* the son of that Ephrathite of Bethlehemjudah, whose name *was* Jesse; and he had eight sons: and the man went among men *for* an old man in the days of Saul. [\[Matt 1:6\];](#)

13 And the three eldest sons of Jesse went *and* followed Saul to the battle: and the names of his three sons that went to the battle *were* Eliab the firstborn, and next unto him Abinadab, and the third Shammah.

14 And David *was* the youngest: and the three eldest followed Saul.

15 But David went and returned from Saul to feed his father's sheep at Bethlehem. [1Sam 16:19;](#)

16 And the Philistine drew near morning and evening, and presented himself forty days.

17 And Jesse said unto David his son, Take now for thy brethren an ephah of this parched *corn*, and these ten loaves, and run to the camp to thy brethren;

18 And carry these ten cheeses unto the captain of *their* thousand, and look how thy brethren fare, and take their pledge.

19 Now Saul, and they, and all the men of Israel, *were* in the valley of Elah, fighting with the Philistines.

20 And David rose up early in the morning, and left the sheep with a keeper, and took, and went, as Jesse had commanded him; and he came to the trench, as the host was going forth to the fight, and shouted for the battle. [1Sam 26:5](#);

21 For Israel and the Philistines had put the battle in array, army against army.

22 And David left his carriage in the hand of the keeper of the carriage, and ran into the army, and came and saluted his brethren.

23 And as he talked with them, behold, there came up the champion, the Philistine of Gath, Goliath by name, out of the armies of the Philistines, and spoke according to the same words: and David heard *them*.

24 And all the men of Israel, when they saw the man, fled from him, and were sore afraid.

25 And the men of Israel said, Have you seen this man that is come up? surely to defy Israel is he come up: and it shall be, *that* the man who killeth him, the king will enrich him with great riches, and will give him his daughter, and make his father's house free in Israel.

26 And David spoke to the men that stood by him, saying, What shall be done to the man that killeth this Philistine, and taketh away the reproach from Israel? for who *is* this uncircumcised Philistine, that he should defy the armies of the living Elohim? [\[Judg 15:18\]](#);

27 And the people answered him after this manner, saying, So shall it be done to the man that killeth him.

Eliab chides him

28 And Eliab his eldest brother heard when he spoke unto the men; and Eliab's anger was kindled against David, and he said, Why camest you down hither? and with whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know thy pride, and the naughtiness of thine heart; for you are come down that you mightest see the battle.

29 And David said, What have I now done? *Is there* not a cause?

He is brought to Saul

30 And he turned from him toward another, and spoke after the same manner: and the people answered him again after the former manner.

31 And when the words were heard which David spoke, they rehearsed *them* before Saul: and he sent for him.

shews the reason of his confidence

32 And David said to Saul, Let no man's heart fail because of him; thy servant will go and fight with this Philistine.

33 And Saul said to David, you are not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him: for you are *but* a youth, and he a man of war from his youth.

34 And David said unto Saul, Thy servant kept his father's sheep, and there came a lion, and a bear, and took a lamb out of the flock: [\[Heb 11:33\]](#);

35 And I went out after him, and smote him, and delivered *it* out of his mouth: and when he arose against me, I caught *him* by his beard, and smote him, and slew him.

36 Thy servant slew both the lion and the bear: and this uncircumcised Philistine shall be as one of them, seeing he has defied the armies of the living Elohim. [\[Judg 15:18\]](#);

37 David said moreover, The YAHWEH that delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, he will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine. And Saul said unto David, Go, and the YAHWEH be with you.

and slays the giant

38 And Saul armed David with his armour, and he put a helmet of brass upon his head; also he armed him with a coat of mail.

39 And David girded his sword upon his armour, and he tried to go; for he had not tested *it*. And David said unto Saul, I cannot go with these; for I have not tested *them*. And David put them off him.

40 And he took his staff in his hand, and chose him five smooth stones out of the brook, and put them in a shepherd's bag which he had, even in a scrip; and his sling *was* in his hand: and he drew near to the Philistine.

41 And the Philistine came on and drew near unto David; and the man that bore the shield *went* before him.

42 And when the Philistine looked about, and saw David, he disdained him: for he was *but* a youth, and ruddy, and of a fair countenance.

43 And the Philistine said unto David, *Am* I a dog, that you come to me with staves? And the Philistine cursed David by his gods.

44 And the Philistine said to David, Come to me, and I will give thy flesh unto the fowls of the air, and to the beasts of the field.

45 Then said David to the Philistine, you come to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but I come to you in the name of the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. [[Heb 11:32](#)];

46 This day will the YAHWEH deliver you into mine hand; and I will smite you, and take thine head from you; and I will give the carcases of the host of the Philistines this day unto the fowls of the air, and to the wild beasts of the earth; that all the earth may know that there is a Elohim in Israel.

47 And all this assembly shall know that the YAHWEH saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle *is* the YAHWEH'S, and he will give you into our hands.

48 And it came to pass, when the Philistine arose, and came and drew nigh to meet David, that David hasted, and ran toward the army to meet the Philistine.

49 And David put his hand in his bag, and took thence a stone, and slang *it*, and smote the Philistine in his forehead, that the stone sunk into his forehead; and he fell upon his face to the earth.

50 So David prevailed over the Philistine with a sling and with a stone, and smote the Philistine, and slew him; but *there was* no sword in the hand of David.

51 Therefore David ran, and stood upon the Philistine, and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof, and slew him, and cut off his head therewith. And when the Philistines saw their champion was dead, they fled.

52 And the men of Israel and of Judah arose, and shouted, and pursued the Philistines, until you come to the valley, and to the gates of Ekron. And the wounded of the Philistines fell down by the way to Shaaraim, even unto Gath, and unto Ekron.

53 And the children of Israel returned from chasing after the Philistines, and they spoiled their tents.

54 And David took the head of the Philistine, and brought it to Jerusalem; but he put his armour in his tent.

Saul takes notice of David

55 And when Saul saw David go forth against the Philistine, he said unto Abner, the captain of the host, Abner, whose son *is* this youth? And Abner said, *As* thy being liveth, O king, I cannot tell.

56 And the king said, Enquire you whose son the stripling *is*.

57 And as David returned from the slaughter of the Philistine, Abner took him, and brought him before Saul with the head of the Philistine in his hand.

58 And Saul said to him, Whose son are you, you young man? And David answered, I *am* the son of thy servant Jesse the Bethlehemite.

Jonathan loves David

1 And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking unto Saul, that the being of Jonathan was knit with the being of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own being.

2 And Saul took him that day, and would let him go no more home to his father's house.

3 Then Jonathan and David made a covenant, because he loved him as his own being. [1Sam 20:8]; [2Sam 21:7];

4 And Jonathan stripped himself of the robe that *was* upon him, and gave it to David, and his garments, even to his sword, and to his bow, and to his girdle.

Saul envies his praise

5 And David went out whithersoever Saul sent him, *and* behaved himself wisely: and Saul set him over the men of war, and he was accepted in the sight of all the people, and also in the sight of Saul's servants.

6 And it came to pass as they came, when David was returned from the slaughter of the Philistine, that the women came out of all cities of Israel, singing and dancing, to meet king Saul, with tabrets, with joy, and with instruments of musick. [Exod 15:20];

7 And the women answered *one another* as they played, and said, Saul has slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands. Exod 15:21; 1Sam 21:11; 1Sam 29:5;

8 And Saul was very wroth, and the saying displeased him; and he said, They have ascribed unto David ten thousands, and to me they have ascribed *but* thousands: and *what* can he have more but the kingdom?

9 And Saul eyed David from that day and forward.

seeks to kill him in his fury

10 And it came to pass on the morrow, that the evil spirit from Elohim came upon Saul, and he prophesied in the midst of the house: and David played with his hand, as at other times: and *there was* a javelin in Saul's hand. [1Sam 19:9];

11 And Saul cast the javelin; for he said, I will smite David even to the wall *with it*. And David avoided out of his presence twice.

fears him for his good success

12 And Saul was afraid of David, because the YAHWEH was with him, and was departed from Saul.

13 Therefore Saul removed him from him, and made him his captain over a thousand; and he went out and came in before the people.

14 And David behaved himself wisely in all his ways; and the YAHWEH *was* with him.

15 Wherefore when Saul saw that he behaved himself very wisely, he was afraid of him.

16 But all Israel and Judah loved David, because he went out and came in before them.

offers him his daughters for a snare

17 And Saul said to David, Behold my elder daughter Merab, her will I give you to wife: only be you valiant for me, and fight the YAHWEH'S battles. For Saul said, Let not mine hand be upon him, but let the hand of the Philistines be upon him.

18 And David said unto Saul, Who *am* I? and what *is* my life, *or* my father's family in Israel, that I should be son in law to the king?

19 But it came to pass at the time when Merab Saul's daughter should have been given to David, that she was given unto Adriel the Meholathite to wife.

20 And Michal Saul's daughter loved David: and they told Saul, and the thing pleased him.

21 And Saul said, I will give him her, that she may be a snare to him, and that the hand of the Philistines may be against him. Wherefore Saul said to David, you shall this day be my son in law in *the one of* the twain.

22 And Saul commanded his servants, *saying*, Commune with David secretly, and say, Behold, the king has delight in you, and all his servants love you: now therefore be the king's son in law.

David persuaded to be the king's son-in-law, gives two hundred foreskins of the Philistines for Michal's dowry

23 And Saul's servants spoke those words in the ears of David. And David said, Seemeth it to you *a* light *thing* to be a king's son in law, seeing that I *am* a poor man, and lightly esteemed?

24 And the servants of Saul told him, saying, On this manner spoke David.

25 And Saul said, Thus shall you say to David, The king desireth not any dowry, but a hundred foreskins of the Philistines, to be avenged of the king's enemies. But Saul thought to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines. [2Sam 3:14];

26 And when his servants told David these words, it pleased David well to be the king's son in law: and the days were not expired.

27 Wherefore David arose and went, he and his men, and slew of the Philistines two hundred men; and David brought their foreskins, and they gave them in full tale to the king, that he might be the king's son in law. And Saul gave him Michal his daughter to wife. 2Sam 3:14;

Saul's hatred and David's glory increase

28 And Saul saw and knew that the YAHWEH *was* with David, and *that* Michal Saul's daughter loved him.

29 And Saul was yet the more afraid of David; and Saul became David's enemy continually.

30 Then the princes of the Philistines went forth: and it came to pass, after they went forth, *that* David behaved himself more wisely than all the servants of Saul; so that his name was much set by.

FIRST SAMUEL NINETEEN

Jonathan discloses his father's purpose to kill David

1 And Saul spoke to Jonathan his son, and to all his servants, that they should kill David.

2 But Jonathan Saul's son delighted much in David: and Jonathan told David, saying, Saul my father seeketh to kill you: now therefore, I pray you, take heed to thyself until the morning, and abide in a secret *place*, and hide thyself:

3 And I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where you are, and I will commune with my father of you; and what I see, that I will tell you.

He persuades his father to reconciliation

4 And Jonathan spoke good of David unto Saul his father, and said unto him, Let not the king sin against his servant, against David; because he has not sinned against you, and because his works *have been* to you-ward very good:

5 For he did put his life in his hand, and slew the Philistine, and the YAHWEH wrought a great salvation for all Israel: you sawest *it*, and didst rejoice: wherefore then will you sin against innocent blood, to slay David without a cause?

6 And Saul hearkened unto the voice of Jonathan: and Saul sware, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, he shall not be slain.

7 And Jonathan called David, and Jonathan showed him all those things. And Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was in his presence, as in times past.

By reason of David's good success in a new war, Saul's malicious rage breaks out against him

8 And there was war again: and David went out, and fought with the Philistines, and slew them with a great slaughter; and they fled from him. [1Chr 11:2];

9 And the evil spirit from the YAHWEH was upon Saul, as he sat in his house with his javelin in his hand: and David played with *his* hand. 1Sam 16:14; 1Sam 18:10;

10 And Saul sought to smite David even to the wall with the javelin; but he slipped away out of Saul's presence, and he smote the javelin into the wall: and David fled, and escaped that night.

11 Saul also sent messengers unto David's house, to watch him, and to slay him in the morning: and Michal David's wife told him, saying, If you save not thy life to night, to morrow you shall be slain. [Ps 59:1];

Michal deceives her father with an image in David's bed

12 So Michal let David down through a window: and he went, and fled, and escaped. [Acts 9:25];

13 And Michal took an image, and laid *it* in the bed, and put a pillow of goats' *hair* for his bolster, and covered *it* with a cloth.

14 And when Saul sent messengers to take David, she said, He *is* sick.

15 And Saul sent the messengers *again* to see David, saying, Bring him up to me in the bed, that I may slay him.

16 And when the messengers were come in, behold, *there was* an image in the bed, with a pillow of goats' *hair* for his bolster.

17 And Saul said unto Michal, Why have you deceived me so, and sent away mine enemy, that he is escaped? And Michal answered Saul, He said unto me, Let me go; why should I kill you?

David comes to Samuel in Naioth

18 So David fled, and escaped, and came to Samuel to Ramah, and told him all that Saul had done to him. And he and Samuel went and dwelt in Naioth. [1Sam 10:10];

19 And it was told Saul, saying, Behold, David *is* at Naioth in Ramah.

Saul's messengers sent to take David

20 And Saul sent messengers to take David: and when they saw the company of the prophets prophesying, and Samuel standing *as* appointed over them, the Spirit of Elohim was upon the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied.

21 And when it was told Saul, he sent other messengers, and they prophesied likewise. And Saul sent messengers again the third time, and they prophesied also.

and Saul himself, prophesy

22 Then went he also to Ramah, and came to a great well that *is* in Sechu: and he asked and said, Where *are* Samuel and David? And *one* said, Behold, *they be* at Naioth in Ramah.

23 And he went thither to Naioth in Ramah: and the Spirit of Elohim was upon him also, and he went on, and prophesied, until he came to Naioth in Ramah.

24 And he stripped off his clothes also, and prophesied before Samuel in like manner, and lay down naked all that day and all that night. Wherefore they say, *Is* Saul also among the prophets? [1Sam 10:12];

David consults with Jonathan for his safety

- 1** And David fled from Naioth in Ramah, and came and said before Jonathan, What have I done? what *is* mine iniquity? and what *is* my sin before thy father, that he seeketh my life? [\[Heb 11:34\]](#);
- 2** And he said unto him, Elohim forbid; you shall not die: behold, my father will do nothing either great or small, but that he will show it me: and why should my father hide this thing from me? it *is* not *so*.
- 3** And David swore moreover, and said, Thy father certainly knoweth that I have found grace in thine eyes; and he saith, Let not Jonathan know this, lest he be grieved: but truly *as* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* thy being liveth, *there is* but a step between me and death.
- 4** Then said Jonathan unto David, Whatsoever thy being desireth, I will even do *it* for you.
- 5** And David said unto Jonathan, Behold, to morrow *is* the new moon, and I should not fail to sit with the king at meat: but let me go, that I may hide myself in the field unto the third *day* at even.
- 6** If thy father at all miss me, then say, David earnestly asked *leave* of me that he might run to Bethlehem his city: for *there is* a yearly sacrifice there for all the family.
- 7** If he say thus, *It is* well; thy servant shall have peace: but if he be very wroth, *then* be sure that evil is determined by him.
- 8** Therefore you shall deal kindly with thy servant; for you have brought thy servant into a covenant of the YAHWEH with you: notwithstanding, if there be in me iniquity, slay me thyself; for why should you bring me to thy father? [1Sam 18:3](#);
- 9** And Jonathan said, Far be it from you: for if I knew certainly that evil were determined by my father to come upon you, then would not I tell it you?
- 10** Then said David to Jonathan, Who shall tell me? or what *if* thy father answer you roughly?

Jonathan and David renew their covenant by oath

- 11** And Jonathan said unto David, Come, and let us go out into the field. And they went out both of them into the field.
- 12** And Jonathan said unto David, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, when I have sounded my father about to morrow any time, *or* the third *day*, and, behold, *if there be* good toward David, and I then send not unto you, and show it you;
- 13** The YAHWEH do so and much more to Jonathan: but if it please my father *to do* you evil, then I will show it you, and send you away, that you may go in peace: and the YAHWEH be with you, as he has been with my father.
- 14** And you shall not only while yet I live show me the kindness of the YAHWEH, that I die not:
- 15** But *also* you shall not cut off thy kindness from my house for ever: no, not when the YAHWEH has cut off the enemies of David every one from the face of the earth. [\[2Sam 21:7\]](#);
- 16** So Jonathan made *a covenant* with the house of David, *saying*, Let the YAHWEH even require *it* at the hand of David's enemies.
- 17** And Jonathan caused David to swear again, because he loved him: for he loved him as he loved his own being.

Jonathan's token to David

- 18** Then Jonathan said to David, To morrow *is* the new moon: and you shall be missed, because thy seat will be empty.
- 19** And *when* you have stayed three days, *then* you shall go down quickly, and come to the place where you didst hide thyself when the business was *in hand*, and shall remain by the stone Ezel.
- 20** And I will shoot three arrows on the side *thereof*, as though I shot at a mark.
- 21** And, behold, I will send a lad, *saying*, Go, find out the arrows. If I expressly say unto the lad, Behold, the arrows *are* on this side of you, take them; then come you: for *there is* peace to you, and no hurt; *as* the YAHWEH liveth.

22 But if I say thus unto the young man, Behold, the arrows *are* beyond you; go thy way: for the YAHWEH has sent you away.

23 And *as touching* the matter which you and I have spoken of, behold, the YAHWEH *be* between you and me for ever. [1Sam 20:42](#);

Saul, missing David, seeks to kill Jonathan

24 So David hid himself in the field: and when the new moon was come, the king sat him down to eat meat. [\[1Kgs 1:39\]](#);

25 And the king sat upon his seat, as at other times, *even* upon a seat by the wall: and Jonathan arose, and Abner sat by Saul's side, and David's place was empty.

26 Nevertheless Saul spoke not any thing that day: for he thought, Something has befallen him, he *is* not clean; surely he *is* not clean.

27 And it came to pass on the morrow, *which was* the second *day* of the month, that David's place was empty: and Saul said unto Jonathan his son, Wherefore cometh not the son of Jesse to meat, neither yosterday, nor to day?

28 And Jonathan answered Saul, David earnestly asked *leave* of me *to go* to Bethlehem:

29 And he said, Let me go, I pray you; for our family has a sacrifice in the city; and my brother, he has commanded me *to be there*: and now, if I have found favor in thine eyes, let me get away, I pray you, and see my brethren. Therefore he cometh not unto the king's table.

30 Then Saul's anger was kindled against Jonathan, and he said unto him, you son of the perverse rebellious *woman*, do not I know that you have chosen the son of Jesse to thine own confusion, and unto the confusion of thy mother's nakedness?

31 For as long as the son of Jesse liveth upon the ground, you shall not be established, nor thy kingdom. Wherefore now send and fetch him unto me, for he shall surely die.

32 And Jonathan answered Saul his father, and said unto him, Wherefore shall he be slain? what has he done?

33 And Saul cast a javelin at him to smite him: whereby Jonathan knew that it was determined of his father to slay David.

34 So Jonathan arose from the table in fierce anger, and did eat no meat the second day of the month: for he was grieved for David, because his father had done him shame.

Jonathan affectionately takes his leave of David

35 And it came to pass in the morning, that Jonathan went out into the field at the time appointed with David, and a little lad with him.

36 And he said unto his lad, Run, find out now the arrows which I shoot. *And* as the lad ran, he shot an arrow beyond him.

37 And when the lad was come to the place of the arrow which Jonathan had shot, Jonathan cried after the lad, and said, *Is* not the arrow beyond you?

38 And Jonathan cried after the lad, Make speed, haste, stay not. And Jonathan's lad gathered up the arrows, and came to his master.

39 But the lad knew not any thing: only Jonathan and David knew the matter.

40 And Jonathan gave his areillery unto his lad, and said unto him, Go, carry *them* to the city.

41 *And* as soon as the lad was gone, David arose out of *a place* toward the south, and fell on his face to the ground, and bowed himself three times: and they kissed one another, and wept one with another, until David exceeded.

42 And Jonathan said to David, Go in peace, forasmuch as we have sworn both of us in the name of the YAHWEH, saying, The YAHWEH be between me and you, and between my seed and thy seed for ever. And he arose and departed: and Jonathan went into the city. [\[1Sam 20:23\]](#); [\[2Sam 21:7\]](#);

FIRST SAMUEL TWENTY-ONE

David at Nob obtains of Ahimelech hallowed bread

- 1** Then came David to Nob to Ahimelech the priest: and Ahimelech was afraid at the meeting of David, and said unto him, Why are you alone, and no man with you?
- 2** And David said unto Ahimelech the priest, The king has commanded me a business, and has said unto me, Let no man know any thing of the business whereabout I send you, and what I have commanded you: and I have appointed *my* servants to such and such a place.
- 3** Now therefore what is under thine hand? give *me* five *loaves of* bread in mine hand, or what there is present.
- 4** And the priest answered David, and said, *There is* no common bread under mine hand, but there is hallowed bread; if the young men have kept themselves at least from women. [\[Exod 19:15\]](#);
- 5** And David answered the priest, and said unto him, Of a truth women *have been* kept from us about these three days, since I came out, and the vessels of the young men are holy, and *the bread is* in a manner common, yes, though it were sanctified this day in the vessel.
- 6** So the priest gave him hallowed *bread*: for there was no bread there but the showbread, that was taken from before the YAHWEH, to put hot bread in the day when it was taken away. [Matt 12:3](#); [Mark 2:25](#); [Luke 6:3](#); [\[Lev 24:9\]](#); [\[Matt 12:4\]](#);

Doeg is present

- 7** Now a certain man of the servants of Saul *was* there that day, detained before the YAHWEH; and his name *was* Doeg, an Edomite, the chiefest of the herdmen that *belonged* to Saul.

David takes Goliath's sword

- 8** And David said unto Ahimelech, And is there not here under thine hand spear or sword? for I have neither brought my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king's business required haste.
- 9** And the priest said, The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom you slewest in the valley of Elah, behold, it *is here* wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod: if you will take that, take *it*: for *there is* no other save that here. And David said, *There is* none like that; give it me.

David at Gath feigns himself mad

- 10** And David arose, and fled that day for fear of Saul, and went to Achish the king of Gath.
- 11** And the servants of Achish said unto him, *Is* not this David the king of the land? did they not sing one to another of him in dances, saying, Saul has slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands? [1Sam 18:7](#);
- 12** And David laid up these words in his heart, and was sore afraid of Achish the king of Gath. [\[Ps 56:1\]](#);
- 13** And he changed his behaviour before them, and feigned himself mad in their hands, and scrabbled on the doors of the gate, and let his spittle fall down upon his beard. [\[Ps 34:1\]](#);
- 14** Then said Achish unto his servants, Lo, you see the man is mad: wherefore *then* have you brought him to me?
- 15** Have I need of mad men, that you have brought this *fellow* to play the mad man in my presence? shall this *fellow* come into my house?

Companies resort unto David at Adullam

1 David therefore departed thence, and escaped to the cave Adullam: and when his brethren and all his father's house heard *it*, they went down thither to him. [Ps 57:1];

2 And every one *that was* in distress, and every one that *was* in debt, and every one *that was* discontented, gathered themselves unto him; and he became a captain over them: and there were with him about four hundred men.

At Mizpeh he commends his parents unto the king of Moab

3 And David went thence to Mizpeh of Moab: and he said unto the king of Moab, Let my father and my mother, I pray you, come forth, *and be* with you, till I know what Elohim will do for me.

4 And he brought them before the king of Moab: and they dwelt with him all the while that David was in the hold.

Admonished by Gad, he comes to Hareth

5 And the prophet Gad said unto David, Abide not in the hold; depart, and get you into the land of Judah. Then David departed, and came into the forest of Hareth. [Ps 63:1];

Saul going to pursue him, complains of his servants' unfaithfulness

6 When Saul heard that David was discovered, and the men that *were* with him, (now Saul abode in Gibeah under a tree in Ramah, having his spear in his hand, and all his servants *were* standing about him;)

7 Then Saul said unto his servants that stood about him, Hear now, you Benjamites; will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards, *and* make you all captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds;

8 That all of you have conspired against me, and *there is* none that sheweth me that my son has made a league with the son of Jesse, and *there is* none of you that is sorry for me, or sheweth unto me that my son has stirred up my servant against me, to lie in wait, as at this day?

Doeg accuses Ahimelech

9 Then answered Doeg the Edomite, which was set over the servants of Saul, and said, I saw the son of Jesse coming to Nob, to Ahimelech the son of Ahitub. [Ps 52:1];

10 And he enquired of the YAHWEH for him, and gave him victuals, and gave him the sword of Goliath the Philistine.

Saul commands to kill the priests

11 Then the king sent to call Ahimelech the priest, the son of Ahitub, and all his father's house, the priests that *were* in Nob: and they came all of them to the king.

12 And Saul said, Hear now, you son of Ahitub. And he answered, Here I *am*, my lord.

13 And Saul said unto him, Why have you conspired against me, you and the son of Jesse, in that you have given him bread, and a sword, and have enquired of Elohim for him, that he should rise against me, to lie in wait, as at this day?

14 Then Ahimelech answered the king, and said, And who *is so* faithful among all thy servants as David, which is the king's son in law, and goes at thy bidding, and is honourable in thine house?

15 Did I then begin to enquire of Elohim for him? be it far from me: let not the king impute *any* thing unto his servant, *nor* to all the house of my father: for thy servant knew nothing of all this, less or more.

16 And the king said, you shall surely die, Ahimelech, you, and all thy father's house.

The footmen refusing, Doeg executes it

17 And the king said unto the footmen that stood about him, Turn, and slay the priests of the YAHWEH; because their hand also *is* with David, and because they knew when he fled, and did not show it to me. But the servants of the king would not put forth their hand to fall upon the priests of the YAHWEH.

18 And the king said to Doeg, Turn you, and fall upon the priests. And Doeg the Edomite turned, and he fell upon the priests, and slew on that day fourscore and five persons that did wear a linen ephod.

19 And Nob, the city of the priests, smote he with the edge of the sword, both men and women, children and sucklings, and oxen, and asses, and sheep, with the edge of the sword.

Abiathar escaping, brings David the news

20 And one of the sons of Ahimelech the son of Ahitub, named Abiathar, escaped, and fled after David. [\[1Sam 23:6\]; \[1Kgs 2:26\];](#)

21 And Abiathar showed David that Saul had slain the YAHWEH'S priests.

22 And David said unto Abiathar, I knew *it* that day, when Doeg the Edomite *was* there, that he would surely tell Saul: I have occasioned *the death* of all the persons of thy father's house.

23 Abide you with me, fear not: for he that seeketh my life seeketh thy life: but with me you shall *be* in safeguard.

FIRST SAMUEL TWENTY-THREE

David, enquiring of the Lord by Abiathar, rescues Keilah

1 Then they told David, saying, Behold, the Philistines fight against Keilah, and they rob the threshingfloors.

2 Therefore David enquired of the YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go and smite these Philistines? And the YAHWEH said unto David, Go, and smite the Philistines, and save Keilah. [\[2Chr 18:4\];](#)

3 And David's men said unto him, Behold, we be afraid here in Judah: how much more then if we come to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?

4 Then David enquired of the YAHWEH yet again. And the YAHWEH answered him and said, Arise, go down to Keilah; for I will deliver the Philistines into thine hand.

5 So David and his men went to Keilah, and fought with the Philistines, and brought away their cattle, and smote them with a great slaughter. So David saved the inhabitants of Keilah.

6 And it came to pass, when Abiathar the son of Ahimelech fled to David to Keilah, *that* he came down *with* an ephod in his hand. [1Sam 22:20;](#)

Elohim showing him the coming of Saul, and the treachery of the Keilites, he escapes from Keilah

7 And it was told Saul that David was come to Keilah. And Saul said, Elohim has delivered him into mine hand; for he is shut in, by entering into a town that has gates and bars.

8 And Saul called all the people together to war, to go down to Keilah, to besiege David and his men.

9 And David knew that Saul secretly practised mischief against him; and he said to Abiathar the priest, Bring hither the ephod.

10 Then said David, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, thy servant has certainly heard that Saul seeketh to come to Keilah, to destroy the city for my sake.

11 Will the men of Keilah deliver me up into his hand? will Saul come down, as thy servant has heard? O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, I beseech you, tell thy servant. And the YAHWEH said, He will come down.

12 Then said David, Will the men of Keilah deliver me and my men into the hand of Saul? And the YAHWEH said, They will deliver you up.

13 Then David and his men, *which were* about six hundred, arose and departed out of Keilah, and went whithersoever they could go. And it was told Saul that David was escaped from Keilah; and he forbore to go forth.

In Ziph Jonathan comes and comforts him

14 And David abode in the wilderness in strong holds, and remained in a mountain in the wilderness of Ziph. And Saul sought him every day, but Elohim delivered him not into his hand. [Ps 63:1];

15 And David saw that Saul was come out to seek his life: and David *was* in the wilderness of Ziph in a wood.

16 And Jonathan Saul's son arose, and went to David into the wood, and strengthened his hand in Elohim.

17 And he said unto him, Fear not: for the hand of Saul my father shall not find you; and you shall be king over Israel, and I shall be next unto you; and that also Saul my father knoweth.

18 And they two made a covenant before the YAHWEH: and David abode in the wood, and Jonathan went to his house. [2Sam 21:7];

The Ziphites discover him to Saul

19 Then came up the Ziphites to Saul to Gibeah, saying, Does not David hide himself with us in strong holds in the wood, in the hill of Hachilah, which *is* on the south of Jeshimon? [Ps 54:1];

20 Now therefore, O king, come down according to all the desire of thy being to come down; and our part *shall be* to deliver him into the king's hand.

21 And Saul said, Blessed *be* you of the YAHWEH; for you have compassion on me.

22 Go, I pray you, prepare yet, and know and see his place where his haunt is, *and* who has seen him there: for it is told me *that* he dealeth very subtilly.

23 See therefore, and take knowledge of all the lurking places where he hides himself, and come you again to me with the certainty, and I will go with you: and it shall come to pass, if he be in the land, that I will search him out throughout all the thousands of Judah.

24 And they arose, and went to Ziph before Saul: but David and his men *were* in the wilderness of Maon, in the plain on the south of Jeshimon.

At Maon he is rescued from Saul by the invasion of the Philistines

25 Saul also and his men went to seek *him*. And they told David: wherefore he came down into a rock, and abode in the wilderness of Maon. And when Saul heard *that*, he pursued after David in the wilderness of Maon.

26 And Saul went on this side of the mountain, and David and his men on that side of the mountain: and David made haste to get away for fear of Saul; for Saul and his men compassed David and his men round about to take them.

27 But there came a messenger unto Saul, saying, Haste you, and come; for the Philistines have invaded the land.

28 Wherefore Saul returned from pursuing after David, and went against the Philistines: therefore they called that place Selahammahlekoth.

He dwells at En-gedi

29 And David went up from thence, and dwelt in strong holds at Engedi.

David, in a cave at En-gedi, having cut off Saul's skirt, spares his life

1 And it came to pass, when Saul was returned from following the Philistines, that it was told him, saying, Behold, David *is* in the wilderness of Engedi.

2 Then Saul took three thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and went to seek David and his men upon the rocks of the wild goats.

3 And he came to the sheepcotes by the way, where *was* a cave; and Saul went in to to relieve himself: and David and his men remained in the sides of the cave. [Ps 57:1];

4 And the men of David said unto him, Behold the day of which the YAHWEH said unto you, Behold, I will deliver thine enemy into thine hand, that you may do to him as it shall seem good unto you. Then David arose, and cut off the skirt of Saul's robe privily.

5 And it came to pass afterward, that David's heart smote him, because he had cut off Saul's skirt.

6 And he said unto his men, The YAHWEH forbid that I should do this thing unto my master, the YAHWEH'S anointed, to stretch forth mine hand against him, seeing he *is* the anointed of the YAHWEH.

7 So David stayed his servants with these words, and suffered them not to rise against Saul. But Saul rose up out of the cave, and went on *his* way.

He shows thereby his innocence

8 David also arose afterward, and went out of the cave, and cried after Saul, saying, My lord the king. And when Saul looked behind him, David stooped with his face to the earth, and bowed himself.

9 And David said to Saul, Wherefore hearest you men's words, saying, Behold, David seeketh thy hurt? [Ps 120:2];

10 Behold, this day thine eyes have seen how that the YAHWEH had delivered you to day into mine hand in the cave: and *some* bade *me* kill you: but *mine eye* spared you; and I said, I will not put forth mine hand against my lord; for he *is* the YAHWEH'S anointed.

11 Moreover, my father, see, yes, see the skirt of thy robe in my hand: for in that I cut off the skirt of thy robe, and killed you not, know you and see that *there is* neither evil nor transgression in mine hand, and I have not sinned against you; yet you huntest my being to take it.

12 The YAHWEH judge between me and you, and the YAHWEH avenge me of you: but mine hand shall not be upon you.

13 As saith the proverb of the elders, Wickedness proceedeth from the wicked: but mine hand shall not be upon you.

14 After whom is the king of Israel come out? after whom dost you pursue? after a dead dog, after a flea. [1Sam 26:20]; [2Sam 16:9];

15 The YAHWEH therefore be judge, and judge between me and you, and see, and plead my cause, and deliver me out of thine hand.

Saul, acknowledging his fault, takes an oath of David, and departs

16 And it came to pass, when David had made an end of speaking these words unto Saul, that Saul said, *Is* this thy voice, my son David? And Saul lifted up his voice, and wept.

17 And he said to David, you are more righteous than I: for you have rewarded me good, whereas I have rewarded you evil.

18 And you have showed this day how that you have dealt well with me: forasmuch as when the YAHWEH had delivered me into thine hand, you killedst me not.

19 For if a man find his enemy, will he let him go well away? wherefore the YAHWEH reward you good for that you have done unto me this day.

20 And now, behold, I know well that you shall surely be king, and that the kingdom of Israel shall be established in thine hand.

21 Swear now therefore unto me by the YAHWEH, that you will not cut off my seed after me, and that you will not destroy my name out of my father's house.

22 And David swore unto Saul. And Saul went home; but David and his men got them up unto the hold.

FIRST SAMUEL TWENTY-FIVE

Samuel dies

1 And Samuel died; and all the Israelites were gathered together, and lamented him, and buried him in his house at Ramah. And David arose, and went down to the wilderness of Paran. [1Sam 28:3](#);

David in Paran sends to Nabal

2 And *there was* a man in Maon, whose possessions *were* in Carmel; and the man *was* very great, and he had three thousand sheep, and a thousand goats: and he was shearing his sheep in Carmel.

3 Now the name of the man *was* Nabal; and the name of his wife Abigail: and *she was* a woman of good understanding, and of a beautiful countenance: but the man *was* churlish and evil in his doings; and he *was* of the house of Caleb.

4 And David heard in the wilderness that Nabal did shear his sheep.

5 And David sent out ten young men, and David said unto the young men, Get you up to Carmel, and go to Nabal, and greet him in my name:

6 And thus shall you say to him that liveth *in prosperity*, Peace *be* both to you, and peace *be* to thine house, and peace *be* unto all that you hast.

7 And now I have heard that you have shearers: now thy shepherds which were with us, we hurt them not, neither was there ought missing unto them, all the while they were in Carmel.

8 Ask thy young men, and they will show you. Wherefore let the young men find favor in thine eyes: for we come in a good day: give, I pray you, whatsoever cometh to thine hand unto thy servants, and to thy son David.

9 And when David's young men came, they spoke to Nabal according to all those words in the name of David, and ceased.

Provoked by Nabal's churlishness, he minds to destroy him

10 And Nabal answered David's servants, and said, Who *is* David? and who *is* the son of Jesse? there be many servants now a days that break away every man from his master.

11 Shall I then take my bread, and my water, and my flesh that I have killed for my shearers, and give *it* unto men, whom I know not whence they *be*?

12 So David's young men turned their way, and went again, and came and told him all those sayings.

13 And David said unto his men, Gird you on every man his sword. And they girded on every man his sword; and David also girded on his sword: and there went up after David about four hundred men; and two hundred abode by the stuff.

Abigail understanding thereof

14 But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife, saying, Behold, David sent messengers out of the wilderness to salute our master; and he railed on them.

15 But the men *were* very good unto us, and we were not hurt, neither missed we any thing, as long as we were conversant with them, when we were in the fields:

16 They were a wall unto us both by night and day, all the while we were with them keeping the sheep.

17 Now therefore know and consider what you will do; for evil is determined against our master, and against all his household: for he *is such* a son of Belial, that *a man* cannot speak to him.

takes a present

18 Then Abigail made haste, and took two hundred loaves, and two bottles of wine, and five sheep ready dressed, and five measures of parched *corn*, and a hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs, and laid *them* on asses.

19 And she said unto her servants, Go on before me; behold, I come after you. But she told not her husband Nabal.

20 And it was *so, as* she rode on the ass, that she came down by the covert of the hill, and, behold, David and his men came down against her; and she met them.

21 Now David had said, Surely in vain have I kept all that this *fellow* has in the wilderness, so that nothing was missed of all that *pertained* unto him: and he has requited me evil for good.

22 So and more also do Elohim unto the enemies of David, if I leave of all that *pertain* to him by the morning light any that pisseth against the wall. [1Kgs 14:10];

and by her wisdom

23 And when Abigail saw David, she hasted, and lighted off the ass, and fell before David on her face, and bowed herself to the ground,

24 And fell at his feet, and said, Upon me, my lord, *upon me let this* iniquity *be*: and let thine handmaid, I pray you, speak in thine audience, and hear the words of thine handmaid.

25 Let not my lord, I pray you, regard this man of Belial, *even* Nabal: for as his name *is*, so *is* he; Nabal *is* his name, and folly *is* with him: but I thine handmaid saw not the young men of my lord, whom you didst send.

26 Now therefore, my lord, *as* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* thy being liveth, seeing the YAHWEH has withholden you from coming to *shed* blood, and from avenging thyself with thine own hand, now let thine enemies, and they that seek evil to my lord, be as Nabal.

27 And now this blessing which thine handmaid has brought unto my lord, let it even be given unto the young men that follow my lord.

28 I pray you, forgive the trespass of thine handmaid: for the YAHWEH will certainly make my lord a sure house; because my lord fighteth the battles of the YAHWEH, and evil has not been found in you *all* thy days.

29 yet a man is risen to pursue you, and to seek thy being: but the being of my lord shall be bound in the bundle of life with the YAHWEH thy Elohim; and the beings of thine enemies, them shall he sling out, *as out* of the middle of a sling.

30 And it shall come to pass, when the YAHWEH shall have done to my lord according to all the good that he has spoken concerning you, and shall have appointed you ruler over Israel;

31 That this shall be no grief unto you, nor offence of heart unto my lord, either that you have shed blood causeless, or that my lord has avenged himself: but when the YAHWEH shall have dealt well with my lord, then remember thine handmaid.

pacifies David

32 And David said to Abigail, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, which sent you this day to meet me:

33 And blessed *be* thy advice, and blessed *be* you, which have kept me this day from coming to *shed* blood, and from avenging myself with mine own hand.

34 For in very deed, *as* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel liveth, which has kept me back from hurting you, except you hadst hasted and come to meet me, surely there had not been left unto Nabal by the morning light any that pisseth against the wall. [1Kgs 14:10];

35 So David received of her hand *that* which she had brought him, and said unto her, Go up in peace to thine house; see, I have hearkened to thy voice, and have accepted thy person.

Nabal hearing thereof, dies

36 And Abigail came to Nabal; and, behold, he held a feast in his house, like the feast of a king; and Nabal's heart *was* merry within him, for he *was* very drunken: wherefore she told him nothing, less or more, until the morning light.

37 But it came to pass in the morning, when the wine was gone out of Nabal, and his wife had told him these things, that his heart died within him, and he became *as* a stone.

38 And it came to pass about ten days *after*, that the YAHWEH smote Nabal, that he died.

David takes Abigail and Ahinoam to be his wives

39 And when David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH, that has pleaded the cause of my reproach from the hand of Nabal, and has kept his servant from evil: for the YAHWEH has returned the wickedness of Nabal upon his own head. And David sent and communed with Abigail, to take her to him to wife.

40 And when the servants of David were come to Abigail to Carmel, they spoke unto her, saying, David sent us unto you, to take you to him to wife.

41 And she arose, and bowed herself on *her* face to the earth, and said, Behold, *let* thine handmaid *be* a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my lord.

42 And Abigail hasted, and arose, and rode upon an ass, with five damsels of hers that went after her; and she went after the messengers of David, and became his wife.

43 David also took Ahinoam of Jezreel; and they were also both of them his wives.

Michal is given to Phalti

44 But Saul had given Michal his daughter, David's wife, to Phalti the son of Laish, which *was* of Gallim. [2Sam 3:15];

FIRST SAMUEL TWENTY-SIX

Saul, by the discovery of the Ziphites, comes to Hachilah against David

1 And the Ziphites came unto Saul to Gibeah, saying, Does not David hide himself in the hill of Hachilah, *which is* before Jeshimon? [Ps 54:1];

2 Then Saul arose, and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, having three thousand chosen men of Israel with him, to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph.

3 And Saul pitched in the hill of Hachilah, which *is* before Jeshimon, by the way. But David abode in the wilderness, and he saw that Saul came after him into the wilderness.

David coming into the trench stays Abishai from killing Saul, but takes his spear and cruse

4 David therefore sent out spies, and understood that Saul was come in very deed.

5 And David arose, and came to the place where Saul had pitched: and David beheld the place where Saul lay, and Abner the son of Ner, the captain of his host: and Saul lay in the trench, and the people pitched round about him. [1Sam 17:20];

6 Then answered David and said to Ahimelech the Hittite, and to Abishai the son of Zeruiah, brother to Joab, saying, Who will go down with me to Saul to the camp? And Abishai said, I will go down with you.

7 So David and Abishai came to the people by night: and, behold, Saul lay sleeping within the trench, and his spear stuck in the ground at his bolster: but Abner and the people lay round about him.

8 Then said Abishai to David, Elohim has delivered thine enemy into thine hand this day: now therefore let me smite him, I pray you, with the spear even to the earth at once, and I will not *smite* him the second time.

9 And David said to Abishai, Destroy him not: for who can stretch forth his hand against the YAHWEH'S anointed, and be guiltless?

10 David said furthermore, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, the YAHWEH shall smite him; or his day shall come to die; or he shall descend into battle, and perish.

11 The YAHWEH forbid that I should stretch forth mine hand against the YAHWEH'S anointed: but, I pray you, take you now the spear that *is* at his bolster, and the cruse of water, and let us go.

12 So David took the spear and the cruse of water from Saul's bolster; and they got them away, and no man saw *it*, nor knew *it*, neither awaked: for they *were* all asleep; because a deep sleep from the YAHWEH was fallen upon them.

David reproves Abner

13 Then David went over to the other side, and stood on the top of a hill afar off; a great space *being* between them:

14 And David cried to the people, and to Abner the son of Ner, saying, Answerest you not, Abner? Then Abner answered and said, Who are you *that* criest to the king?

15 And David said to Abner, are not you a *valiant* man? and who *is* like to you in Israel? wherefore then have you not kept thy lord the king? for there came one of the people in to destroy the king thy lord.

16 This thing *is* not good that you have done. *As* the YAHWEH liveth, you *are* worthy to die, because you have not kept your master, the YAHWEH'S anointed. And now see where the king's spear *is*, and the cruse of water that *was* at his bolster.

and exhorts Saul

17 And Saul knew David's voice, and said, *Is* this thy voice, my son David? And David said, *It is* my voice, my lord, O king.

18 And he said, Wherefore does my lord thus pursue after his servant? for what have I done? or what evil *is* in mine hand?

19 Now therefore, I pray you, let my lord the king hear the words of his servant. If the YAHWEH have stirred you up against me, let him accept an offering: but if *they be* the children of men, cursed *be* they before the YAHWEH; for they have driven me out this day from abiding in the inheritance of the YAHWEH, saying, Go, serve other gods. [\[Ps 120:2\];](#)

20 Now therefore, let not my blood fall to the earth before the face of the YAHWEH: for the king of Israel is come out to seek a flea, as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains. [1Sam 24:14;](#)

Saul acknowledges his sin

21 Then said Saul, I have sinned: return, my son David: for I will no more do you harm, because my being was precious in thine eyes this day: behold, I have played the fool, and have erred exceedingly.

22 And David answered and said, Behold the king's spear! and let one of the young men come over and fetch it.

23 The YAHWEH render to every man his righteousness and his faithfulness: for the YAHWEH delivered you into *my* hand to day, but I would not stretch forth mine hand against the YAHWEH'S anointed.

24 And, behold, as thy life was much set by this day in mine eyes, so let my life be much set by in the eyes of the YAHWEH, and let him deliver me out of all tribulation.

25 Then Saul said to David, Blessed *be* you, my son David: you shall both do great *things*, and also shall still prevail. So David went on his way, and Saul returned to his place.

FIRST SAMUEL TWENTY-SEVEN

Saul, hearing David to be in Gath, seeks no more for him

1 And David said in his heart, I shall now perish one day by the hand of Saul: *there is* nothing better for me than that I should speedily escape into the land of the Philistines; and Saul shall despair of me, to seek me any more in any coast of Israel: so shall I escape out of his hand.

2 And David arose, and he passed over with the six hundred men that *were* with him unto Achish, the son of Maoch, king of Gath.

3 And David dwelt with Achish at Gath, he and his men, every man with his household, *even* David with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the Carmelitess, Nabal's wife.

4 And it was told Saul that David was fled to Gath: and he sought no more again for him.

David begs Ziklag of Achish

5 And David said unto Achish, If I have now found grace in thine eyes, let them give me a place in some town in the country, that I may dwell there: for why should thy servant dwell in the royal city with you?

6 Then Achish gave him Ziklag that day: wherefore Ziklag pertaineth unto the kings of Judah unto this day.

7 And the time that David dwelt in the country of the Philistines was a full year and four months.

He, invading other countries, persuades Achish he fought against Judah

8 And David and his men went up, and invaded the Geshurites, and the Gezrites, and the Amalekites: for those *nations were* of old the inhabitants of the land, as you go to Shur, even unto the land of Egypt.

9 And David smote the land, and left neither man nor woman alive, and took away the sheep, and the oxen, and the asses, and the camels, and the apparel, and returned, and came to Achish.

10 And Achish said, Whither have you made a road to day? And David said, Against the south of Judah, and against the south of the Jerahmeelites, and against the south of the Kenites.

11 And David saved neither man nor woman alive, to bring *tidings* to Gath, saying, Lest they should tell on us, saying, So did David, and so *will be* his manner all the while he dwelleth in the country of the Philistines.

12 And Achish believed David, saying, He has made his people Israel utterly to abhor him; therefore he shall be my servant for ever.

Achish puts confidence in David

1 And it came to pass in those days, that the Philistines gathered their armies together for warfare, to fight with Israel. And Achish said unto David, Know you assuredly, that you shall go out with me to battle, you and thy men.

2 And David said to Achish, Surely you shall know what thy servant can do. And Achish said to David, Therefore will I make you keeper of mine head for ever.

Saul having destroyed the witches

3 Now Samuel was dead, and all Israel had lamented him, and buried him in Ramah, even in his own city. And Saul had put away those that had familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land. [1Sam 25:1](#);

and now in his fear forsaken of Elohim

4 And the Philistines gathered themselves together, and came and pitched in Shunem: and Saul gathered all Israel together, and they pitched in Gilboa.

5 And when Saul saw the host of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart greatly trembled.

6 And when Saul enquired of the YAHWEH, the YAHWEH answered him not, neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets.

has recourse to a witch

7 Then said Saul unto his servants, Seek me a woman that has a familiar spirit, that I may go to her, and enquire of her. And his servants said to him, Behold, *there is* a woman that has a familiar spirit at Endor. [\[Lev 20:27\]](#); [\[Deut 18:10\]](#); [\[Acts 16:16\]](#);

who, encouraged by Saul, raises up Samuel

8 And Saul disguised himself, and put on other raiment, and he went, and two men with him, and they came to the woman by night: and he said, I pray you, divine unto me by the familiar spirit, and bring me *him* up, whom I shall name unto you. [\[1Chr 10:13\]](#);

9 And the woman said unto him, Behold, you knowest what Saul has done, how he has cut off those that have familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land: wherefore then layest you a snare for my life, to cause me to die?

10 And Saul swore to her by the YAHWEH, saying, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, there shall no punishment happen to you for this thing.

11 Then said the woman, Whom shall I bring up unto you? And he said, Bring me up Samuel.

12 And when the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice: and the woman spoke to Saul, saying, Why have you deceived me? for you are Saul.

13 And the king said unto her, Be not afraid: for what sawest you? And the woman said unto Saul, I saw gods ascending out of the earth.

14 And he said unto her, What form *is* he of? And she said, An old man cometh up; and he *is* covered with a mantle. And Saul perceived that it *was* Samuel, and he stooped with *his* face to the ground, and bowed himself.

Saul hearing his ruin, faints

15 And Samuel said to Saul, Why have you disquieted me, to bring me up? And Saul answered, I am sore distressed; for the Philistines make war against me, and Elohim is departed from me, and answereth me no more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams: therefore I have called you, that you may make known unto me what I shall do.

16 Then said Samuel, Wherefore then dost you ask of me, seeing the YAHWEH is departed from you, and is become thine enemy?

17 And the YAHWEH has done to him, as he spoke by me: for the YAHWEH has rent the kingdom out of thine hand, and given it to thy neighbour, *even* to David:

18 Because you obeyedst not the voice of the YAHWEH, nor executedst his fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore has the YAHWEH done this thing unto you this day.

19 Moreover the YAHWEH will also deliver Israel with you into the hand of the Philistines: and to morrow shall you and thy sons *be* with me: the YAHWEH also shall deliver the host of Israel into the hand of the Philistines.

20 Then Saul fell immediately all along on the earth, and was sore afraid, because of the words of Samuel: and there was no strength in him; for he had eaten no bread all the day, nor all the night.

The woman and his servants refresh him with meat

21 And the woman came unto Saul, and saw that he was sore troubled, and said unto him, Behold, thine handmaid has obeyed thy voice, and I have put my life in my hand, and have hearkened unto thy words which you spakest unto me.

22 Now therefore, I pray you, hearken you also unto the voice of thine handmaid, and let me set a morsel of bread before you; and eat, that you may have strength, when you go on thy way.

23 But he refused, and said, I will not eat. But his servants, together with the woman, compelled him; and he hearkened unto their voice. So he arose from the earth, and sat upon the bed.

24 And the woman had a fat calf in the house; and she hasted, and killed it, and took flour, and kneaded *it*, and did bake unleavened bread thereof:

25 And she brought *it* before Saul, and before his servants; and they did eat. Then they rose up, and went away that night.

FIRST SAMUEL TWENTY-NINE

David marching with the Philistines

1 Now the Philistines gathered together all their armies to Aphek: and the Israelites pitched by a fountain which *is* in Jezreel. [\[1Chr 12:19\];](#)

2 And the lords of the Philistines passed on by hundreds, and by thousands: but David and his men passed on in the rereward with Achish.

is disallowed by their princes

3 Then said the princes of the Philistines, What *do* these Hebrews *here*? And Achish said unto the princes of the Philistines, *Is* not this David, the servant of Saul the king of Israel, which has been with me these days, or these years, and I have found no fault in him since he fell *unto me* unto this day?

4 And the princes of the Philistines were wroth with him; and the princes of the Philistines said unto him, Make this fellow return, that he may go again to his place which you have appointed him, and let him not go down with us to battle, lest in the battle he be an adversary to us: for wherewith should he reconcile himself unto his master? *should it* not *be* with the heads of these men? [1Chr 12:19;](#)

5 *Is* not this David, of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, Saul slew his thousands, and David his ten thousands? [1Sam 18:7;](#)

Achish dismisses him, with commendations of his fidelity

6 Then Achish called David, and said unto him, Surely, *as* the YAHWEH liveth, you have been upright, and thy going out and thy coming in with me in the host *is* good in my sight: for I have not found evil in you since the day of thy coming unto me unto this day: nevertheless the lords favor you not.

7 Wherefore now return, and go in peace, that you displease not the lords of the Philistines.

8 And David said unto Achish, But what have I done? and what have you found in thy servant so long as I have been with you unto this day, that I may not go fight against the enemies of my lord the king?

9 And Achish answered and said to David, I know that you are good in my sight, as an angel of Elohim: notwithstanding the princes of the Philistines have said, He shall not go up with us to the battle.

10 Wherefore now rise up early in the morning with thy master's servants that are come with you: and as soon as you be up early in the morning, and have light, depart.

11 So David and his men rose up early to depart in the morning, to return into the land of the Philistines. And the Philistines went up to Jezreel.

FIRST SAMUEL THIRTY

The Amalekites spoil Ziklag

1 And it came to pass, when David and his men were come to Ziklag on the third day, that the Amalekites had invaded the south, and Ziklag, and smitten Ziklag, and burned it with fire;

2 And had taken the women captives, that *were* therein: they slew not any, either great or small, but carried *them* away, and went on their way.

3 So David and his men came to the city, and, behold, *it was* burned with fire; and their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, were taken captives.

David asking counsel, is encouraged by Elohim to pursue them

4 Then David and the people that *were* with him lifted up their voice and wept, until they had no more power to weep.

5 And David's two wives were taken captives, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite.

6 And David was greatly distressed; for the people spoke of stoning him, because the being of all the people was grieved, every man for his sons and for his daughters: but David encouraged himself in the YAHWEH his Elohim.

7 And David said to Abiathar the priest, Ahimelech's son, I pray you, bring me hither the ephod. And Abiathar brought thither the ephod to David.

8 And David enquired at the YAHWEH, saying, Shall I pursue after this troop? shall I overtake them? And he answered him, Pursue: for you shall surely overtake *them*, and without fail recover *all*.

9 So David went, he and the six hundred men that *were* with him, and came to the brook Besor, where those that were left behind stayed.

10 But David pursued, he and four hundred men: for two hundred abode behind, which were so faint that they could not go over the brook Besor.

By the means of a revived Egyptian he is brought to the enemies, and recovers all the spoil

11 And they found an Egyptian in the field, and brought him to David, and gave him bread, and he did eat; and they made him drink water;

12 And they gave him a piece of a cake of figs, and two clusters of raisins: and when he had eaten, his spirit came again to him: for he had eaten no bread, nor drunk *any* water, three days and three nights.

13 And David said unto him, To whom *belongest* you? and whence are you? And he said, I *am* a young man of Egypt, servant to an Amalekite; and my master left me, because three days ago I fell sick.

14 We made an invasion *upon* the south of the Cherethites, and upon *the coast* which *belongeth* to Judah, and upon the south of Caleb; and we burned Ziklag with fire.

15 And David said to him, Canst you bring me down to this company? And he said, Swear unto me by Elohim, that you will neither kill me, nor deliver me into the hands of my master, and I will bring you down to this company.

16 And when he had brought him down, behold, *they were* spread abroad upon all the earth, eating and drinking, and dancing, because of all the great spoil that they had taken out of the land of the Philistines, and out of the land of Judah.

17 And David smote them from the twilight even unto the evening of the next day: and there escaped not a man of them, save four hundred young men, which rode upon camels, and fled. [2Sam 1:1];

18 And David recovered all that the Amalekites had carried away: and David rescued his two wives.

19 And there was nothing lacking to them, neither small nor great, neither sons nor daughters, neither spoil, nor any *thing* that they had taken to them: David recovered all.

20 And David took all the flocks and the herds, *which* they drave before those *other* cattle, and said, This *is* David's spoil.

21 And David came to the two hundred men, which were so faint that they could not follow David, whom they had made also to abide at the brook Besor: and they went forth to meet David, and to meet the people that *were* with him: and when David came near to the people, he saluted them.

David's law to divide the spoil equally between them that fight and them that keep the stuff

22 Then answered all the wicked men and *men* of Belial, of those that went with David, and said, Because they went not with us, we will not give them *ought* of the spoil that we have recovered, save to every man his wife and his children, that they may lead *them* away, and depart.

23 Then said David, you shall not do so, my brethren, with that which the YAHWEH has given us, who has preserved us, and delivered the company that came against us into our hand.

24 For who will hearken unto you in this matter? but as his part *is* that goes down to the battle, so *shall* his part *be* that tarrieth by the stuff: they shall part alike. [Num 31:27];

25 And it was *so* from that day forward, that he made it a statute and an ordinance for Israel unto this day.

He sends presents to his friends

26 And when David came to Ziklag, he sent of the spoil unto the elders of Judah, *even* to his friends, saying, Behold a present for you of the spoil of the enemies of the YAHWEH;

27 To *them* which *were* in Bethel, and to *them* which *were* in south Ramoth, and to *them* which *were* in Jattir,

28 And to *them* which *were* in Aroer, and to *them* which *were* in Siphmoth, and to *them* which *were* in Eshtemoa,

29 And to *them* which *were* in Rachal, and to *them* which *were* in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to *them* which *were* in the cities of the Kenites,

30 And to *them* which *were* in Hormah, and to *them* which *were* in Chorashan, and to *them* which *were* in Athach,

31 And to *them* which *were* in Hebron, and to all the places where David himself and his men were wont to haunt.

Saul, having lost his army, and his sons slain, he and his armour-bearer kill themselves

1 Now the Philistines fought against Israel: and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down slain in mount Gilboa.

2 And the Philistines followed hard upon Saul and upon his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchishua, Saul's sons.

3 And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers hit him; and he was sore wounded of the archers.

4 Then said Saul unto his armourbearer, Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith; lest these uncircumcised come and thrust me through, and abuse me. But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. Therefore Saul took a sword, and fell upon it.

5 And when his armourbearer saw that Saul was dead, he fell likewise upon his sword, and died with him.

6 So Saul died, and his three sons, and his armourbearer, and all his men, that same day together.

The Philistines possess the forsaken towns of the Israelites

7 And when the men of Israel that *were* on the other side of the valley, and *they* that *were* on the other side Jordan, saw that the men of Israel fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they forsook the cities, and fled; and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.

They triumph over the dead carcasses

8 And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his three sons fallen in mount Gilboa.

9 And they cut off his head, and stripped off his armour, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to publish *it in* the house of their idols, and among the people. [1Chr 10:9](#);

10 And they put his armour in the house of Ashtaroth: and they fastened his body to the wall of Bethshan. [\[2Sam 21:12\]](#); [\[1Chr 10:10\]](#);

They of Jabesh-gilead recovering the dead bodies by night, burn them at Jabesh, and mournfully bury their bones

11 And when the inhabitants of Jabeshgilead heard of that which the Philistines had done to Saul;

12 All the valiant men arose, and went all night, and took the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Bethshan, and came to Jabesh, and burnt them there.

13 And they took their bones, and buried *them* under a tree at Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

Second_Samuel

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#)

SECOND SAMUEL ONE

The Amalekite, who brought tidings of the overthrow, and accused himself of Saul's death, is slain

- 1** Now it came to pass after the death of Saul, when David was returned from the slaughter of the Amalekites, and David had abode two days in Ziklag; [1Sam 30:17](#);
- 2** It came even to pass on the third day, that, behold, a man came out of the camp from Saul with his clothes rent, and earth upon his head: and *so* it was, when he came to David, that he fell to the earth, and did obeisance.
- 3** And David said unto him, From whence come you? And he said unto him, Out of the camp of Israel am I escaped.
- 4** And David said unto him, How went the matter? I pray you, tell me. And he answered, That the people are fled from the battle, and many of the people also are fallen and dead; and Saul and Jonathan his son are dead also.
- 5** And David said unto the young man that told him, How knowest you that Saul and Jonathan his son be dead?
- 6** And the young man that told him said, As I happened by chance upon mount Gilboa, behold, Saul leaned upon his spear; and, lo, the chariots and horsemen followed hard after him.
- 7** And when he looked behind him, he saw me, and called unto me. And I answered, Here *am* I.
- 8** And he said unto me, Who are you? And I answered him, I *am* an Amalekite.
- 9** He said unto me again, Stand, I pray you, upon me, and slay me: for anguish is come upon me, because my life *is* yet whole in me.
- 10** So I stood upon him, and slew him, because I was sure that he could not live after that he was fallen: and I took the crown that *was* upon his head, and the bracelet that *was* on his arm, and have brought them hither unto my lord.
- 11** Then David took hold on his clothes, and rent them; and likewise all the men that *were* with him: [2Sam 3:31](#); [2Sam 13:31](#);
- 12** And they mourned, and wept, and fasted until even, for Saul, and for Jonathan his son, and for the people of the YAHWEH, and for the house of Israel; because they were fallen by the sword.
- 13** And David said unto the young man that told him, Whence are you? And he answered, I *am* the son of a stranger, an Amalekite.
- 14** And David said unto him, How were you not afraid to stretch forth thine hand to destroy the YAHWEH'S anointed?
- 15** And David called one of the young men, and said, Go near, *and* fall upon him. And he smote him that he died. [\[2Sam 4:10\]](#);
- 16** And David said unto him, Thy blood *be* upon thy head; for thy mouth has testified against you, saying, I have slain the YAHWEH'S anointed. [\[Matt 12:37\]](#); [\[Luke 19:22\]](#);

David laments Saul and Jonathan with a song

- 17** And David lamented with this lamentation over Saul and over Jonathan his son:
- 18** (Also he bade them teach the children of Judah *the use of* the bow: behold, *it is* written in the book of Jasher.) [Josh 10:13](#);
- 19** The beauty of Israel is slain upon thy high places: how are the mighty fallen!

20 Tell *it* not in Gath, publish *it* not in the streets of Askelon; lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice, lest the daughters of the uncircumcised triumph. [Mic 1:10](#); [\[Judg 15:18\]](#);

21 *you* mountains of Gilboa, *let there be* no dew, neither *let there be* rain, upon you, nor fields of offerings: for there the shield of the mighty is vilely cast away, the shield of Saul, *as though he had* not *been* anointed with oil.

22 From the blood of the slain, from the fat of the mighty, the bow of Jonathan turned not back, and the sword of Saul returned not empty.

23 Saul and Jonathan *were* lovely and pleasant in their lives, and in their death they were not divided: they were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.

24 *you* daughters of Israel, weep over Saul, who clothed you in scarlet, with *other* delights, who put on ornaments of gold upon your apparel.

25 How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! O Jonathan, you *were* slain in thine high places.

26 I am distressed for you, my brother Jonathan: very pleasant have you been unto me: thy love to me was wonderful, passing the love of women.

27 How are the mighty fallen, and the weapons of war perished!

SECOND SAMUEL TWO

David, by Elohim's direction, with his company goes up to Hebron, where he is made king of Judah

1 And it came to pass after this, that David enquired of the YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go up into any of the cities of Judah? And the YAHWEH said unto him, Go up. And David said, Whither shall I go up? And he said, Unto Hebron. [\[2Chr 18:4\]](#);

2 So David went up thither, and his two wives also, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail Nabal's wife the Carmelite.

3 And his men that *were* with him did David bring up, every man with his household: and they dwelt in the cities of Hebron.

4 And the men of Judah came, and there they anointed David king over the house of Judah. And they told David, saying, *That* the men of Jabeshgilead *were they* that buried Saul.

He commends them of Jabesh-gilead for their kindness to Saul

5 And David sent messengers unto the men of Jabeshgilead, and said unto them, Blessed *be* you of the YAHWEH, that you have showed this kindness unto your lord, *even* unto Saul, and have buried him.

6 And now the YAHWEH show kindness and truth unto you: and I also will requite you this kindness, because you have done this thing.

7 Therefore now let your hands be strengthened, and be you valiant: for your master Saul is dead, and also the house of Judah have anointed me king over them.

Abner makes Ishbosheth king of Israel

8 But Abner the son of Ner, captain of Saul's host, took Ishbosheth the son of Saul, and brought him over to Mahanaim;

9 And made him king over Gilead, and over the Ashurites, and over Jezreel, and over Ephraim, and over Benjamin, and over all Israel.

10 Ishbosheth Saul's son *was* forty years old when he began to reign over Israel, and reigned two years. But the house of Judah followed David.

11 And the time that David was king in Hebron over the house of Judah was seven years and six months. [2Sam 5:5](#); [1Kgs 2:11](#);

A mortal skirmish between twelve of Abner's and twelve of Joab's men

12 And Abner the son of Ner, and the servants of Ishbosheth the son of Saul, went out from Mahanaim to Gibeon.

13 And Joab the son of Zeruiah, and the servants of David, went out, and met together by the pool of Gibeon: and they sat down, the one on the one side of the pool, and the other on the other side of the pool.

14 And Abner said to Joab, Let the young men now arise, and play before us. And Joab said, Let them arise.

15 Then there arose and went over by number twelve of Benjamin, which *pertained* to Ishbosheth the son of Saul, and twelve of the servants of David.

16 And they caught every one his fellow by the head, and *thrust* his sword in his fellow's side; so they fell down together: wherefore that place was called Helkathhazzurim, which *is* in Gibeon.

17 And there was a very sore battle that day; and Abner was beaten, and the men of Israel, before the servants of David.

Asahel is slain

18 And there were three sons of Zeruiah there, Joab, and Abishai, and Asahel: and Asahel *was as* light of foot as a wild roe.

19 And Asahel pursued after Abner; and in going he turned not to the right hand nor to the left from following Abner.

20 Then Abner looked behind him, and said, are you Asahel? And he answered, I *am*.

21 And Abner said to him, Turn you aside to thy right hand or to thy left, and lay you hold on one of the young men, and take you his armour. But Asahel would not turn aside from following of him.

22 And Abner said again to Asahel, Turn you aside from following me: wherefore should I smite you to the ground? how then should I hold up my face to Joab thy brother?

23 Howbeit he refused to turn aside: wherefore Abner with the hinder end of the spear smote him under the fifth *rib*, that the spear came out behind him; and he fell down there, and died in the same place: and it came to pass, *that* as many as came to the place where Asahel fell down and died stood still. [2Sam 3:27];

24 Joab also and Abishai pursued after Abner: and the sun went down when they were come to the hill of Ammah, that *lies* before Giah by the way of the wilderness of Gibeon.

At Abner's motion, Joab sounds a retreat

25 And the children of Benjamin gathered themselves together after Abner, and became one troop, and stood on the top of a hill.

26 Then Abner called to Joab, and said, Shall the sword devour for ever? knowest you not that it will be bitterness in the latter end? how long shall it be then, ere you bid the people return from following their brethren?

27 And Joab said, *As* Elohim liveth, unless you hadst spoken, surely then in the morning the people had gone up every one from following his brother.

28 So Joab blew a trumpet, and all the people stood still, and pursued after Israel no more, neither fought they any more.

29 And Abner and his men walked all that night through the plain, and passed over Jordan, and went through all Bithron, and they came to Mahanaim.

30 And Joab returned from following Abner: and when he had gathered all the people together, there lacked of David's servants nineteen men and Asahel.

31 But the servants of David had smitten of Benjamin, and of Abner's men, *so that* three hundred and threescore men died.

Asahel's burial

32 And they took up Asahel, and buried him in the sepulcher of his father, which *was in* Bethlehem. And Joab and his men went all night, and they came to Hebron at break of day.

SECOND SAMUEL THREE

During the war David still waxes stronger

1 Now there was long war between the house of Saul and the house of David: but David waxed stronger and stronger, and the house of Saul waxed weaker and weaker.

Six sons are born to him in Hebron

2 And unto David were sons born in Hebron: and his firstborn was Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess; [1Chr 3:1](#);

3 And his second, Chileab, of Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite; and the third, Absalom the son of Maacah the daughter of Talmai king of Geshur;

4 And the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith; and the fifth, Shephatiah the son of Abital;

5 And the sixth, Ithream, by Eglah David's wife. These were born to David in Hebron.

Abner, displeased with Ish-bosheth

6 And it came to pass, while there was war between the house of Saul and the house of David, that Abner made himself strong for the house of Saul.

revolts to David

7 And Saul had a concubine, whose name *was* Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah: and *Ishbosheth* said to Abner, Wherefore have you gone in unto my father's concubine? [2Sam 21:8](#); [2Sam 21:10-11](#);

8 Then was Abner very wroth for the words of Ishbosheth, and said, *Am* I a dog's head, which against Judah do show kindness this day unto the house of Saul thy father, to his brethren, and to his friends, and have not delivered you into the hand of David, that you chargest me to day with a fault concerning this woman?

9 So do Elohim to Abner, and more also, except, as the YAHWEH has sworn to David, even so I do to him;

10 To translate the kingdom from the house of Saul, and to set up the throne of David over Israel and over Judah, from Dan even to Beersheba.

11 And he could not answer Abner a word again, because he feared him.

12 And Abner sent messengers to David on his behalf, saying, Whose *is* the land? saying *also*, Make thy league with me, and, behold, my hand *shall be* with you, to bring about all Israel unto you.

David requires as a condition to bring him his wife Michal

13 And he said, Well; I will make a league with you: but one thing I require of you, that is, you shall not see my face, except you first bring Michal Saul's daughter, when you come to see my face.

14 And David sent messengers to Ishbosheth Saul's son, saying, Deliver *me* my wife Michal, which I espoused to me for a hundred foreskins of the Philistines. [1Sam 18:25](#); [1Sam 18:27](#);

15 And Ishbosheth sent, and took her from *her* husband, *even* from Phaltiel the son of Laish. [1Sam 25:44](#);

16 And her husband went with her along weeping behind her to Bahurim. Then said Abner unto him, Go, return. And he returned.

Abner, having communed with the Israelites, is feasted by David, and dismissed

17 And Abner had communication with the elders of Israel, saying, you sought for David in times past *to be* king over you:

18 Now then do *it*: for the YAHWEH has spoken of David, saying, By the hand of my servant David I will save my people Israel out of the hand of the Philistines, and out of the hand of all their enemies.

19 And Abner also spoke in the ears of Benjamin: and Abner went also to speak in the ears of David in Hebron all that seemed good to Israel, and that seemed good to the whole house of Benjamin.

20 So Abner came to David to Hebron, and twenty men with him. And David made Abner and the men that *were* with him a feast.

21 And Abner said unto David, I will arise and go, and will gather all Israel unto my lord the king, that they may make a league with you, and that you may reign over all that thine heart desireth. And David sent Abner away; and he went in peace.

Joab returning from battle, is displeased with the king, and kills Abner

22 And, behold, the servants of David and Joab came from *pursuing* a troop, and brought in a great spoil with them: but Abner *was* not with David in Hebron; for he had sent him away, and he was gone in peace.

23 When Joab and all the host that *was* with him were come, they told Joab, saying, Abner the son of Ner came to the king, and he has sent him away, and he is gone in peace.

24 Then Joab came to the king, and said, What have you done? behold, Abner came unto you; why *is* it *that* you have sent him away, and he is quite gone?

25 *you* knowest Abner the son of Ner, that he came to deceive you, and to know thy going out and thy coming in, and to know all that you do.

26 And when Joab was come out from David, he sent messengers after Abner, which brought him again from the well of Sirah: but David knew *it* not.

27 And when Abner was returned to Hebron, Joab took him aside in the gate to speak with him quietly, and smote him there under the fifth *rib*, that he died, for the blood of Asahel his brother. [1Kgs 2:5](#); [2Sam 2:23](#);

David curses Joab

28 And afterward when David heard *it*, he said, I and my kingdom *are* guiltless before the YAHWEH for ever from the blood of Abner the son of Ner:

29 Let it rest on the head of Joab, and on all his father's house; and let there not fail from the house of Joab one that has an issue, or that is a leper, or that leaneth on a staff, or that falleth on the sword, or that lacketh bread.

30 So Joab and Abishai his brother slew Abner, because he had slain their brother Asahel at Gibeon in the battle.

and mourns for Abner

31 And David said to Joab, and to all the people that *were* with him, Rend your clothes, and gird you with sackcloth, and mourn before Abner. And king David *himself* followed the bier. [\[2Sam 1:11\]](#); [\[Acts 8:2\]](#);

32 And they buried Abner in Hebron: and the king lifted up his voice, and wept at the grave of Abner; and all the people wept. [\[2Sam 4:12\]](#);

33 And the king lamented over Abner, and said, Died Abner as a fool dieth?

34 Thy hands *were* not bound, nor thy feet put into fetters: as a man falleth before wicked men, *so* fellest you. And all the people wept again over him.

35 And when all the people came to cause David to eat meat while it was yet day, David sware, saying, So do Elohim to me, and more also, if I taste bread, or ought else, till the sun be down.

36 And all the people took notice *of it*, and it pleased them: as whatsoever the king did pleased all the people.

37 For all the people and all Israel understood that day that it was not of the king to slay Abner the son of Ner.

38 And the king said unto his servants, Know you not that there is a prince and a great man fallen this day in Israel?

39 And I *am* this day weak, though anointed king; and these men the sons of Zeruiah *be* too hard for me: the YAHWEH shall reward the doer of evil according to his wickedness.

SECOND SAMUEL FOUR

The Israelites being troubled at the death of Abner

1 And when Saul's son heard that Abner was dead in Hebron, his hands were feeble, and all the Israelites were troubled.

Baanah and Rechab slay Ish-bosheth, and bring his head to Hebron

2 And Saul's son had two men *that were* captains of bands: the name of the one *was* Baanah, and the name of the other Rechab, the sons of Rimmon a Beerothite, of the children of Benjamin: (for Beeroth also was reckoned to Benjamin:

3 And the Beerothites fled to Gittaim, and were sojourners there until this day.)

4 And Jonathan, Saul's son, had a son *that was* lame of *his* feet. He was five years old when the tidings came of Saul and Jonathan out of Jezreel, and his nurse took him up, and fled: and it came to pass, as she made haste to flee, that he fell, and became lame. And his name *was* Mephibosheth. [2Sam 9:3](#);

5 And the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, Rechab and Baanah, went, and came about the heat of the day to the house of Ishbosheth, who lay on a bed at noon.

6 And they came thither into the midst of the house, *as though* they would have fetched wheat; and they smote him under the fifth *rib*: and Rechab and Baanah his brother escaped.

7 For when they came into the house, he lay on his bed in his bedchamber, and they smote him, and slew him, and beheaded him, and took his head, and got them away through the plain all night.

8 And they brought the head of Ishbosheth unto David to Hebron, and said to the king, Behold the head of Ishbosheth the son of Saul thine enemy, which sought thy life; and the YAHWEH has avenged my lord the king this day of Saul, and of his seed.

David causes them to be slain, and Ish-bosheth's head to be buried

9 And David answered Rechab and Baanah his brother, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, and said unto them, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, who has redeemed my being out of all adversity,

10 When one told me, saying, Behold, Saul is dead, thinking to have brought good tidings, I took hold of him, and slew him in Ziklag, who thought *t* that I would have given him a reward for his tidings: [2Sam 1:15](#);

11 How much more, when wicked men have slain a righteous person in his own house upon his bed? shall I not therefore now require his blood of your hand, and take you away from the earth?

12 And David commanded his young men, and they slew them, and cut off their hands and their feet, and hanged *them* up over the pool in Hebron. But they took the head of Ishbosheth, and buried *it* in the sepulcher of Abner in Hebron. [2Sam 3:32](#);

The tribes come to Hebron and anoint David over Israel

1 Then came all the tribes of Israel to David unto Hebron, and spoke, saying, Behold, we *are* thy bone and thy flesh. [1Chr 11:1](#);

2 Also in time past, when Saul was king over us, you were he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the YAHWEH said to you, you shall feed my people Israel, and you shall be a captain over Israel. [2Sam 7:7](#); [Ps 78:71](#);

3 So all the elders of Israel came to the king to Hebron; and king David made a league with them in Hebron before the YAHWEH: and they anointed David king over Israel.

David's age

4 David *was* thirty years old when he began to reign, *and* he reigned forty years.

5 In Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months: and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years over all Israel and Judah. [2Sam 2:11](#); [1Kgs 2:11](#); [1Chr 3:4](#); [[1Chr 29:27](#)];

He taking Zion from the Jebusites, dwells in it

6 And the king and his men went to Jerusalem unto the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land: which spoke unto David, saying, Except you take away the blind and the lame, you shall not come in hither: thinking, David cannot come in hither. [[1Chr 11:4](#)];

7 Nevertheless David took the strong hold of Zion: the same *is* the city of David.

8 And David said on that day, Whosoever getteth up to the gutter, and smiteth the Jebusites, and the lame and the blind, *that are* hated of David's being, *he shall be chief and captain*. Wherefore they said, The blind and the lame shall not come into the house. [1Chr 11:6](#);

9 So David dwelt in the fort, and called it the city of David. And David built round about from Millo and inward. [[1Kgs 8:1](#)];

10 And David went on, and grew great, and the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts *was* with him.

Hiram sends to David

11 And Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, and carpenters, and masons: and they built David a house. [1Chr 14:1](#); [[1Kgs 5:1](#)];

12 And David perceived that the YAHWEH had established him king over Israel, and that he had exalted his kingdom for his people Israel's sake.

Eleven sons are born to him in Jerusalem

13 And David took *him* more concubines and wives out of Jerusalem, after he was come from Hebron: and there were yet sons and daughters born to David. [1Chr 3:9](#); [1Chr 14:3](#);

14 And these *be* the names of those that were born unto him in Jerusalem; Shammua, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon, [1Chr 3:5](#); [1Chr 14:4](#);

15 Ibhar also, and Elishua, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

16 And Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphalet.

David, directed by Elohim, smites the Philistines at Baal-perazim

17 But when the Philistines heard that they had anointed David king over Israel, all the Philistines came up to seek David; and David heard *of it*, and went down to the hold. [1Chr 14:8](#); [[1Chr 11:13](#)];

18 The Philistines also came and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.

19 And David enquired of the YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go up to the Philistines? will you deliver them into mine hand? And the YAHWEH said unto David, Go up: for I will doubtless deliver the Philistines into thine hand.

20 And David came to Baalperazim, and David smote them there, and said, The YAHWEH has broken forth upon mine enemies before me, as the breach of waters. Therefore he called the name of that place Baalperazim. [Isa 28:21](#);

21 And there they left their images, and David and his men burned them. [1Chr 14:12](#);

and again at the mulberry trees

22 And the Philistines came up yet again, and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.

23 And when David enquired of the YAHWEH, he said, you shall not go up; *but* fetch a compass behind them, and come upon them over against the mulberry trees.

24 And let it be, when you hearest the sound of a going in the tops of the mulberry trees, that then you shall bestir thyself: for then shall the YAHWEH go out before you, to smite the host of the Philistines.

25 And David did so, as the YAHWEH had commanded him; and smote the Philistines from Geba until you come to Gazer.

SECOND SAMUEL SIX

David fetches the ark from Kirjath-jearim on a new cart

1 Again, David gathered together all *the* chosen *men* of Israel, thirty thousand. [1Chr 13:5](#);

2 And David arose, and went with all the people that *were* with him from Baale of Judah, to bring up from thence the ark of Elohim, whose name is called by the name of the YAHWEH of hosts that dwelleth *between* the cherubims. [\[1Sam 4:4\]](#); [\[2Chr 1:4\]](#);

3 And they set the ark of Elohim upon a new cart, and brought it out of the house of Abinadab that *was* in Gibeah: and Uzzah and Ahio, the sons of Abinadab, drave the new cart. [1Sam 6:7-8](#); [1Sam 7:1](#);

4 And they brought it out of the house of Abinadab which *was* at Gibeah, accompanying the ark of Elohim: and Ahio went before the ark. [\[1Sam 7:1\]](#);

5 And David and all the house of Israel played before the YAHWEH on all manner of *instruments made of* fir wood, even on harps, and on psalteries, and on timbrels, and on cornets, and on cymbals.

Uzzah is smitten at Perez-uzzah

6 And when they came to Nachon's threshingfloor, Uzzah put forth *his hand* to the ark of Elohim, and took hold of it; for the oxen shook *it*. [1Chr 13:9](#);

7 And the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Uzzah; and Elohim smote him there for *his* error; and there he died by the ark of Elohim.

8 And David was displeased, because the YAHWEH had made a breach upon Uzzah: and he called the name of the place Perezuzzah to this day.

Elohim blesses Obed-edom for the ark

9 And David was afraid of the YAHWEH that day, and said, How shall the ark of the YAHWEH come to me?

10 So David would not remove the ark of the YAHWEH unto him into the city of David: but David carried it aside into the house of Obededom the Gittite. [\[1Chr 13:13\]](#);

11 And the ark of the YAHWEH continued in the house of Obededom the Gittite three months: and the YAHWEH blessed Obededom, and all his household. [1Chr 13:14](#);

David brings the ark into Zion with sacrifices, and dances before it; for which Michal despises him

12 And it was told king David, saying, The YAHWEH has blessed the house of Obedom, and all that *pertaineth* unto him, because of the ark of Elohim. So David went and brought up the ark of Elohim from the house of Obedom into the city of David with gladness. [1Kgs 8:1];

13 And it was *so*, that when they that bore the ark of the YAHWEH had gone six paces, he sacrificed oxen and fatlings.

14 And David danced before the YAHWEH with all *his* might; and David *was* girded with a linen ephod.

15 So David and all the house of Israel brought up the ark of the YAHWEH with shouting, and with the sound of the trumpet.

16 And as the ark of the YAHWEH came into the city of David, Michal Saul's daughter looked through a window, and saw king David leaping and dancing before the YAHWEH; and she despised him in her heart. [1Chr 15:29];

He places it in a tabernacle with great joy and feasting

17 And they brought in the ark of the YAHWEH, and set it in his place, in the midst of the tabernacle that David had pitched for it: and David offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before the YAHWEH. [1Chr 15:1; 1Chr 16:1; [1Kgs 8:1]; [2Chr 1:4];

18 And as soon as David had made an end of offering burnt offerings and peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of the YAHWEH of hosts. [1Chr 16:2];

19 And he dealt among all the people, *even* among the whole multitude of Israel, as well to the women as men, to every one a cake of bread, and a date cake, and a raisin cake. So all the people departed every one to his house. [1Chr 16:3];

Michal, reproving David for his religious joy, is childless to her death

20 Then David returned to bless his household. And Michal the daughter of Saul came out to meet David, and said, How glorious was the king of Israel to day, who uncovered himself to day in the eyes of the handmaids of his servants, as one of the vain fellows shamelessly uncovereth himself!

21 And David said unto Michal, *It was* before the YAHWEH, which chose me before thy father, and before all his house, to appoint me ruler over the people of the YAHWEH, over Israel: therefore will I play before the YAHWEH.

22 And I will yet be more vile than thus, and will be base in mine own sight: and of the maidservants which you have spoken of, of them shall I be had in honour.

23 Therefore Michal the daughter of Saul had no child unto the day of her death.

SECOND SAMUEL SEVEN

Nathan, first approving the purpose of David to build Elohim a house

1 And it came to pass, when the king sat in his house, and the YAHWEH had given him rest round about from all his enemies; [1Chr 17:1-27];

2 That the king said unto Nathan the prophet, See now, I dwell in a house of cedar, but the ark of Elohim dwelleth within curtains. [1Kgs 8:17]; [2Chr 6:7]; [Acts 7:46];

3 And Nathan said to the king, Go, do all that *is* in thine heart; for the YAHWEH *is* with you.

after by the word of Elohim forbids him

- 4** And it came to pass that night, that the word of the YAHWEH came unto Nathan, saying,
- 5** Go and tell my servant David, Thus saith the YAHWEH, shall you build me a house for me to dwell in? [1Chr 28:3];
- 6** Whereas I have not dwelt in *any* house since the time that I brought up the children of Israel out of Egypt, even to this day, but have walked in a tent and in a tabernacle. 1Kgs 8:16;
- 7** In all *the places* wherein I have walked with all the children of Israel spoke I a word with any of the tribes of Israel, whom I commanded to feed my people Israel, saying, Why build you not me a house of cedar? [2Sam 5:2];
- 8** Now therefore so shall you say unto my servant David, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, I took you from the sheepcote, from following the sheep, to be ruler over my people, over Israel: 1Sam 16:11-12; Ps 78:70; [1Sam 16:11];
- 9** And I was with you whithersoever you wentest, and have cut off all thine enemies out of thy sight, and have made you a great name, like unto the name of the great *men* that *are* in the earth. 2Sam 8:6; 2Sam 8:14;
- 10** Moreover I will appoint a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, that they may dwell in a place of their own, and move no more; neither shall the children of wickedness afflict them any more, as before, [2Kgs 21:7]; [Ps 89:22];
- 11** And as since the time that I commanded judges *to be* over my people Israel, and have caused you to rest from all thine enemies. Also the YAHWEH telleth you that he will make you a house.

Elohim promises him benefits and blessings in his seed

- 12** And when thy days be fulfilled, and you shall sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after you, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom. 1Kgs 8:20; [1Kgs 2:4]; [1Kgs 2:24]; [1Kgs 8:25]; [1Kgs 9:5]; [2Chr 6:16]; [2Chr 21:7]; [Ps 132:11]; [Luke 1:32]; [John 1:45]; [Acts 2:30]; [Acts 13:32]; [Acts 26:6]; [Acts 28:23]; [Rom 1:2]; [2Tim 2:8];
- 13** He shall build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom for ever. 1Sam 5:5; 1Sam 6:12; 1Chr 22:10; [1Kgs 5:5]; [1Kgs 6:12]; [2Kgs 8:19]; [1Chr 28:6]; [2Chr 23:3]; [2Chr 33:4];
- 14** I will be his father, and he shall be my son. If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men: Ps 89:26; Heb 1:5; Ps 89:30; [1Kgs 9:6]; [1Chr 28:6];
- 15** But my mercy shall not depart away from him, as I took *it* from Saul, whom I put away before you. [Ps 89:49];
- 16** And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before you: thy throne shall be established for ever. [1Kgs 8:25]; [1Kgs 9:5]; [John 12:34];
- 17** According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David.

David's prayer and thanksgiving

- 18** Then went king David in, and sat before the YAHWEH, and he said, Who *am* I, O Lord GOD? and what *is* my house, that you have brought me hitherto?
- 19** And this was yet a small thing in thy sight, O Lord GOD; but you have spoken also of thy servant's house for a great while to come. And *is* this the manner of man, O Lord GOD?
- 20** And what can David say more unto you? for you, Lord GOD, knowest thy servant.
- 21** For thy word's sake, and according to thine own heart, have you done all these great things, to make thy servant know *them*.
- 22** Wherefore you are great, O YAHWEH Elohim: for *there is* none like you, neither *is there any* Elohim beside you, according to all that we have heard with our ears. Deut 3:24; Deut 4:35; Deut 32:39; 1Sam 2:2; Ps 86:8; Isa 45:5; Isa 45:18; Isa 45:22; Mark 12:29; Mark 12:32;
- 23** And what one nation in the earth *is* like thy people, *even* like Israel, whom Elohim went to redeem for a people to himself, and to make him a name, and to do for you great things and terrible, for thy land, before thy people, which you redeemedst to you from Egypt, *from* the nations and their gods? Deut 4:7; Deut 33:29; Ps 147:20; [Jer 32:21];

24 For you have confirmed to thyself thy people Israel *to be* a people unto you for ever: and you, YAHWEH, are become their Elohim.

25 And now, O YAHWEH Elohim, the word that you have spoken concerning thy servant, and concerning his house, establish *it* for ever, and do as you have said.

26 And let thy name be magnified for ever, saying, The YAHWEH of hosts *is* the Elohim over Israel: and let the house of thy servant David be established before you.

27 For you, O YAHWEH of hosts, Elohim of Israel, have revealed to thy servant, saying, I will build you a house: therefore has thy servant found in his heart to pray this prayer unto you.

28 And now, O Lord GOD, you are that Elohim, and thy words be true, and you have promised this goodness unto thy servant: [John 17:17](#);

29 Therefore now let it please you to bless the house of thy servant, that it may continue for ever before you: for you, O Lord GOD, have spoken *it*: and with thy blessing let the house of thy servant be blessed for ever.

SECOND SAMUEL EIGHT

David subdues the Philistines and the Moabites

1 And after this it came to pass, that David smote the Philistines, and subdued them: and David took Methegammah out of the hand of the Philistines. [1Chr 18:1](#);

2 And he smote Moab, and measured them with a line, casting them down to the ground; even with two lines measured he to put to death, and with one full line to keep alive. And *so* the Moabites became David's servants, *and* brought gifts.

He smites Hadadezer, and the Syrians

3 David smote also Hadadezer, the son of Rehob, king of Zobah, as he went to recover his border at the river Euphrates. [\[1Kgs 11:23\]](#); [\[1Kgs 11:24\]](#); [\[Ps 60:1\]](#);

4 And David took from him a thousand *chariots*, and seven hundred horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen: and David houghed all the chariot *horses*, but reserved of them *for* a hundred chariots. [1Chr 18:4](#);

5 And when the Syrians of Damascus came to succour Hadadezer king of Zobah, David slew of the Syrians two and twenty thousand men.

6 Then David put garrisons in Syria of Damascus: and the Syrians became servants to David, *and* brought gifts. And the YAHWEH preserved David whithersoever he went. [\[2Sam 7:9\]](#);

7 And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadadezer, and brought them to Jerusalem. [\[1Kgs 7:51\]](#);

8 And from Betah, and from Berothai, cities of Hadadezer, king David took exceeding much brass.

Toi sends Joram with presents to bless him

9 When Toi king of Hamath heard that David had smitten all the host of Hadadezer,

10 Then Toi sent Joram his son unto king David, to salute him, and to bless him, because he had fought against Hadadezer, and smitten him: for Hadadezer had wars with Toi. And *Joram* brought with him vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and vessels of brass:

The presents and the spoil David dedicates to Elohim

11 Which also king David did dedicate unto the YAHWEH, with the silver and gold that he had dedicated of all nations which he subdued; [\[1Kgs 7:51\]](#);

12 Of Syria, and of Moab, and of the children of Ammon, and of the Philistines, and of Amalek, and of the spoil of Hadadezer, son of Rehob, king of Zobah.

13 And David got *him* a name when he returned from smiting of the Syrians in the valley of salt, *being* eighteen thousand *men*. [Ps 60:1](#);

He puts garrisons in Edom

14 And he put garrisons in Edom; throughout all Edom put he garrisons, and all they of Edom became David's servants. And the YAHWEH preserved David whithersoever he went. [\[Gen 25:23\]](#); [\[Num 24:19\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:9\]](#); [\[1Kgs 11:15\]](#);

15 And David reigned over all Israel; and David executed judgment and justice unto all his people.

David's officers

16 And Joab the son of Zeruiah *was* over the host; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud *was* recorder; [1Chr 18:15](#); [\[2Sam 20:23\]](#);

17 And Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, *were* the priests; and Seraiah *was* the scribe; [\[1Chr 6:8\]](#);

18 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada *was over* both the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and David's sons were chief rulers. [\[2Sam 15:18\]](#);

SECOND SAMUEL NINE

David by Ziba sends for Mephibosheth

1 And David said, Is there yet any that is left of the house of Saul, that I may show him kindness for Jonathan's sake?

2 And *there was* of the house of Saul a servant whose name *was* Ziba. And when they had called him unto David, the king said unto him, are you Ziba? And he said, Thy servant *is he*. [2Sam 16:1](#); [2Sam 19:17](#);

3 And the king said, *Is* there not yet any of the house of Saul, that I may show the kindness of Elohim unto him? And Ziba said unto the king, Jonathan has yet a son, *which is* lame on *his* feet. [2Sam 4:4](#);

4 And the king said unto him, Where *is* he? And Ziba said unto the king, Behold, he *is* in the house of Machir, the son of Ammiel, in Lodebar.

5 Then king David sent, and fetched him out of the house of Machir, the son of Ammiel, from Lodebar.

6 Now when Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan, the son of Saul, was come unto David, he fell on his face, and did reverence. And David said, Mephibosheth. And he answered, Behold thy servant!

For Jonathan's sake he entertains him at his table, and restores him all that was Saul's

7 And David said unto him, Fear not: for I will surely show you kindness for Jonathan thy father's sake, and will restore you all the land of Saul thy father; and you shall eat bread at my table continually.

8 And he bowed himself, and said, What *is* thy servant, that you should look upon such a dead dog as I *am*? [\[2Sam 16:9\]](#);

He makes Ziba his farmer

9 Then the king called to Ziba, Saul's servant, and said unto him, I have given unto thy master's son all that pertained to Saul and to all his house.

10 **you** therefore, and thy sons, and thy servants, shall till the land for him, and you shall bring in *the fruits*, that thy master's son may have food to eat: but Mephibosheth thy master's son shall eat bread always at my table. Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants.

11 Then said Ziba unto the king, According to all that my lord the king has commanded his servant, so shall thy servant do. As for Mephibosheth, *said the king*, he shall eat at my table, as one of the king's sons.

12 And Mephibosheth had a young son, whose name *was* Micha. And all that dwelt in the house of Ziba *were* servants unto Mephibosheth. [1Chr 8:34];

13 So Mephibosheth dwelt in Jerusalem: for he did eat continually at the king's table; and was lame on both his feet.

SECOND SAMUEL TEN

David's messengers, sent to comfort Hanun the son of Nahash, are villanously treated

1 And it came to pass after this, that the king of the children of Ammon died, and Hanun his son reigned in his stead. 1Chr 19:1;

2 Then said David, I will show kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, as his father showed kindness unto me. And David sent to comfort him by the hand of his servants for his father. And David's servants came into the land of the children of Ammon.

3 And the princes of the children of Ammon said unto Hanun their lord, Do you think that David honors thy father, that he has sent comforters unto you? has not David *rather* sent his servants unto you, to search the city, and to spy it out, and to overthrow it?

4 Wherefore Hanun took David's servants, and shaved off the one half of their beards, and cut off their garments in the middle, *even* to their buttocks, and sent them away.

5 When they told *it* unto David, he sent to meet them, because the men were greatly ashamed: and the king said, Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and *then* return.

The Ammonites, strengthened by the Syrians, are overcome by Joab and Abishai

6 And when the children of Ammon saw that they stank before David, the children of Ammon sent and hired the Syrians of Bethrehob, and the Syrians of Zoba, twenty thousand footmen, and of king Maacah a thousand men, and of Ishtob twelve thousand men.

7 And when David heard of *it*, he sent Joab, and all the host of the mighty men.

8 And the children of Ammon came out, and put the battle in array at the entering in of the gate: and the Syrians of Zoba, and of Rehob, and Ishtob, and Maacah, *were* by themselves in the field.

9 When Joab saw that the front of the battle was against him before and behind, he chose of all the choice *men* of Israel, and put *them* in array against the Syrians:

10 And the rest of the people he delivered into the hand of Abishai his brother, that he might put *them* in array against the children of Ammon.

11 And he said, If the Syrians be too strong for me, then you shall help me: but if the children of Ammon be too strong for you, then I will come and help you.

12 Be of good courage, and let us play the men for our people, and for the cities of our Elohim: and the YAHWEH do that which seemeth him good.

13 And Joab drew nigh, and the people that *were* with him, unto the battle against the Syrians: and they fled before him.

14 And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, then fled they also before Abishai, and entered into the city. So Joab returned from the children of Ammon, and came to Jerusalem.

Shobach, making a new supply of the Syrians at Helam, is slain by David

15 And when the Syrians saw that they were smitten before Israel, they gathered themselves together.

16 And Hadarezer sent, and brought out the Syrians that *were* beyond the river: and they came to Helam; and Shobach the captain of the host of Hadarezer *went* before them.

17 And when it was told David, he gathered all Israel together, and passed over Jordan, and came to Helam. And the Syrians set themselves in array against David, and fought with him.

18 And the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew *the men of* seven hundred chariots of the Syrians, and forty thousand horsemen, and smote Shobach the captain of their host, who died there. [1Kgs 11:23];

19 And when all the kings *that were* servants to Hadarezer saw that they were smitten before Israel, they made peace with Israel, and served them. So the Syrians feared to help the children of Ammon any more.

SECOND SAMUEL ELEVEN

While Joab besieges Rabbah, David commits adultery with Bath-sheba

1 And it came to pass, after the year was expired, at the time when kings go forth *to battle*, that David sent Joab, and his servants with him, and all Israel; and they destroyed the children of Ammon, and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried still at Jerusalem. 1Chr 20:1;

2 And it came to pass in an eveningtide, that David arose from off his bed, and walked upon the roof of the king's house: and from the roof he saw a woman washing herself; and the woman *was* very beautiful to look upon.

3 And David sent and enquired after the woman. And *one* said, *Is* not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Uriah the Hittite?

4 And David sent messengers, and took her; and she came in unto him, and he lay with her; for she was purified from her uncleanness: and she returned unto her house. Lev 15:19; Lev 18:19; [1Kgs 15:5]; [Ps 51:1];

5 And the woman conceived, and sent and told David, and said, I *am* with child.

Uriah, sent for by David to cover the adultery, would not go home

6 And David sent to Joab, *saying*, Send me Uriah the Hittite. And Joab sent Uriah to David.

7 And when Uriah was come unto him, David demanded *of him* how Joab did, and how the people did, and how the war prospered.

8 And David said to Uriah, Go down to thy house, and wash thy feet. And Uriah departed out of the king's house, and there followed him a mess *of meat* from the king.

9 But Uriah slept at the door of the king's house with all the servants of his lord, and went not down to his house.

10 And when they had told David, saying, Uriah went not down unto his house, David said unto Uriah, Camest you not from *thy* journey? why *then* didst you not go down unto thine house?

11 And Uriah said unto David, The ark, and Israel, and Judah, abide in tents; and my lord Joab, and the servants of my lord, are encamped in the open fields; shall I then go into mine house, to eat and to drink, and to lie with my wife? *as* you livest, and *as* thy being liveth, I will not do this thing.

12 And David said to Uriah, Tarry here to day also, and to morrow I will let you depart. So Uriah abode in Jerusalem that day, and the morrow.

13 And when David had called him, he did eat and drink before him; and he made him drunk: and at even he went out to lie on his bed with the servants of his lord, but went not down to his house.

He carries to Joab the letter of his death

14 And it came to pass in the morning, that David wrote a letter to Joab, and sent *it* by the hand of Uriah.

15 And he wrote in the letter, saying, Set you Uriah in the forefront of the hottest battle, and retire you from him, that he may be smitten, and die. [\[1Kgs 15:5\]](#);

16 And it came to pass, when Joab observed the city, that he assigned Uriah unto a place where he knew that valiant men *were*.

17 And the men of the city went out, and fought with Joab: and there fell *some* of the people of the servants of David; and Uriah the Hittite died also.

Joab sends the news thereof to David

18 Then Joab sent and told David all the things concerning the war;

19 And charged the messenger, saying, When you have made an end of telling the matters of the war unto the king,

20 And if so be that the king's wrath arise, and he say unto you, Wherefore approached you so nigh unto the city when you did fight? knew you not that they would shoot from the wall?

21 Who smote Abimelech the son of Jerubbesheth? did not a woman cast a piece of a millstone upon him from the wall, that he died in Thebez? why went you nigh the wall? then say you, Thy servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also. [Judg 9:52-53](#); [\[Judg 9:53\]](#);

22 So the messenger went, and came and showed David all that Joab had sent him for.

23 And the messenger said unto David, Surely the men prevailed against us, and came out unto us into the field, and we were upon them even unto the entering of the gate.

24 And the shooters shot from off the wall upon thy servants; and *some* of the king's servants be dead, and thy servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also.

25 Then David said unto the messenger, Thus shall you say unto Joab, Let not this thing displease you, for the sword devoureth one as well as another: make thy battle more strong against the city, and overthrow it: and encourage you him.

David takes Bath-sheba to wife

26 And when the wife of Uriah heard that Uriah her husband was dead, she mourned for her husband.

27 And when the mourning was past, David sent and fetched her to his house, and she became his wife, and bore him a son. But the thing that David had done displeased the YAHWEH.

SECOND SAMUEL TWELVE

Nathan's parable of the ewe lamb causes David to be his own judge

1 And the YAHWEH sent Nathan unto David. And he came unto him, and said unto him, There were two men in one city; the one rich, and the other poor. [\[Ps 51:1\]](#);

2 The rich *man* had exceeding many flocks and herds:

3 But the poor *man* had nothing, save one little ewe lamb, which he had bought and nourished up: and it grew up together with him, and with his children; it did eat of his own meat, and drank of his own cup, and lay in his bosom, and was unto him as a daughter.

4 And there came a traveller unto the rich man, and he spared to take of his own flock and of his own herd, to dress for the wayfaring man that was come unto him; but took the poor man's lamb, and dressed it for the man that was come to him.

5 And David's anger was greatly kindled against the man; and he said to Nathan, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, the man that has done this *thing* shall surely die: [Rom 2:1];

6 And he shall restore the lamb fourfold, because he did this thing, and because he had no pity. [Exod 22:1];

David, reproved by Nathan, confesses his sin, and is pardoned

7 And Nathan said to David, you are the man. Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, I anointed you king over Israel, and I delivered you out of the hand of Saul; [1Sam 16:13];

8 And I gave you thy master's house, and thy master's wives into thy bosom, and gave you the house of Israel and of Judah; and if *that had been* too little, I would moreover have given unto you such and such things.

9 Wherefore have you despised the commandment of the YAHWEH, to do evil in his sight? you have killed Uriah the Hittite with the sword, and have taken his wife *to be* thy wife, and have slain him with the sword of the children of Ammon. [1Kgs 15:5];

10 Now therefore the sword shall never depart from thine house; because you have despised me, and have taken the wife of Uriah the Hittite to be thy wife.

11 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will raise up evil against you out of thine own house, and I will take thy wives before thine eyes, and give *them* unto thy neighbour, and he shall lie with thy wives in the sight of this sun. [Deut 28:30; 2Sam 16:22];

12 For you didst *it* secretly: but I will do this thing before all Israel, and before the sun.

13 And David said unto Nathan, I have sinned against the YAHWEH. And Nathan said unto David, The YAHWEH also has put away thy sin; you shall not die. [2Cor 7:10];

14 Howbeit, because by this deed you have given great occasion to the enemies of the YAHWEH to blaspheme, the child also *that is* born unto you shall surely die.

David mourns and prays for the child while it lives

15 And Nathan departed unto his house. And the YAHWEH struck the child that Uriah's wife bore unto David, and it was very sick.

16 David therefore besought Elohim for the child; and David fasted, and went in, and lay all night upon the earth.

17 And the elders of his house arose, *and went* to him, to raise him up from the earth: but he would not, neither did he eat bread with them.

18 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that the child died. And the servants of David feared to tell him that the child was dead: for they said, Behold, while the child was yet alive, we spoke unto him, and he would not hearken unto our voice: how will he then vex himself, if we tell him that the child is dead?

19 But when David saw that his servants whispered, David perceived that the child was dead: therefore David said unto his servants, Is the child dead? And they said, He is dead.

20 Then David arose from the earth, and washed, and anointed *himself*, and changed his apparel, and came into the house of the YAHWEH, and worshipped: then he came to his own house; and when he required, they set bread before him, and he did eat. [1Thess 4:13];

21 Then said his servants unto him, What thing *is* this that you have done? you didst fast and weep for the child, *while it was* alive; but when the child was dead, you didst rise and eat bread.

22 And he said, While the child was yet alive, I fasted and wept: for I said, Who can tell *whether* GOD will be gracious to me, that the child may live?

23 But now he is dead, wherefore should I fast? can I bring him back again? I shall go to him, but he shall not return to me.

Solomon is born, and named Jedidiah

24 And David comforted Bathsheba his wife, and went in unto her, and lay with her: and she bore a son, and he called his name Solomon: and the YAHWEH loved him. [Matt 1:6; 1Chr 22:9;](#)

25 And he sent by the hand of Nathan the prophet; and he called his name Jedidiah, because of the YAHWEH.

David takes Rabbah, and tortures the people thereof

26 And Joab fought against Rabbah of the children of Ammon, and took the royal city. [1Chr 20:1;](#)

27 And Joab sent messengers to David, and said, I have fought against Rabbah, and have taken the city of waters.

28 Now therefore gather the rest of the people together, and encamp against the city, and take it: lest I take the city, and it be called after my name.

29 And David gathered all the people together, and went to Rabbah, and fought against it, and took it.

30 And he took their king's crown from off his head, the weight whereof *was* a talent of gold with the precious stones: and it was *set* on David's head. And he brought forth the spoil of the city in great abundance. [1Chr 20:2;](#)

31 And he brought forth the people that *were* therein, and put *them* under saws, and under harrows of iron, and under axes of iron, and made them pass through the brickkiln: and thus did he unto all the cities of the children of Ammon. So David and all the people returned unto Jerusalem. [1Chr 20:3;](#)

SECOND SAMUEL THIRTEEN

Amnon loving Tamar, by Jonadab's counsel feigning himself sick, ravishes her

1 And it came to pass after this, that Absalom the son of David had a fair sister, whose name *was* Tamar; and Amnon the son of David loved her.

2 And Amnon was so vexed, that he fell sick for his sister Tamar; for she *was* a virgin; and Amnon thought it hard for him to do any thing to her.

3 But Amnon had a friend, whose name *was* Jonadab, the son of Shimeah David's brother: and Jonadab *was* a very cunning man.

4 And he said unto him, Why are you, *being* the king's son, lean from day to day? will you not tell me? And Amnon said unto him, I love Tamar, my brother Absalom's sister.

5 And Jonadab said unto him, Lay you down on thy bed, and make thyself sick: and when thy father cometh to see you, say unto him, I pray you, let my sister Tamar come, and give me meat, and dress the meat in my sight, that I may see *it*, and eat *it* at her hand.

6 So Amnon lay down, and made himself sick: and when the king was come to see him, Amnon said unto the king, I pray you, let Tamar my sister come, and make me a couple of cakes in my sight, that I may eat at her hand. [\[Luke 6:10\];](#)

7 Then David sent home to Tamar, saying, Go now to thy brother Amnon's house, and dress him meat.

8 So Tamar went to her brother Amnon's house; and he was laid down. And she took flour, and kneaded *it*, and made cakes in his sight, and did bake the cakes.

9 And she took a pan, and poured *them* out before him; but he refused to eat. And Amnon said, Have out all men from me. And they went out every man from him.

10 And Amnon said unto Tamar, Bring the meat into the chamber, that I may eat of thine hand. And Tamar took the cakes which she had made, and brought *them* into the chamber to Amnon her brother.

11 And when she had brought *them* unto him to eat, he took hold of her, and said unto her, Come lie with me, my sister.

12 And she answered him, Nay, my brother, do not force me; for no such thing ought to be done in Israel: do not you this folly.

13 And I, whither shall I cause my shame to go? and as for you, you shall be as one of the fools in Israel. Now therefore, I pray you, speak unto the king; for he will not withhold me from you.

14 Howbeit he would not hearken unto her voice: but, being stronger than she, forced her, and lay with her.

He hates her, and shamefully turns her away

15 Then Amnon hated her exceedingly; so that the hatred wherewith he hated her *was* greater than the love wherewith he had loved her. And Amnon said unto her, Arise, be gone.

16 And she said unto him, *There is* no cause: this evil in sending me away *is* greater than the other that you didst unto me. But he would not hearken unto her.

17 Then he called his servant that ministered unto him, and said, Put now this *woman* out from me, and bolt the door after her.

18 And *she had* a garment of different colours upon her: for with such robes were the king's daughters *that were* virgins apparelled. Then his servant brought her out, and bolted the door after her.

Absalom entertains her, and conceals his purpose

19 And Tamar put ashes on her head, and rent her garment of different colours that *was* on her, and laid her hand on her head, and went on crying. [Matt 11:21];

20 And Absalom her brother said unto her, Has Amnon thy brother been with you? but hold now thy peace, my sister: he *is* thy brother; regard not this thing. So Tamar remained desolate in her brother Absalom's house.

21 But when king David heard of all these things, he was very wroth.

22 And Absalom spoke unto his brother Amnon neither good nor bad: for Absalom hated Amnon, because he had forced his sister Tamar.

At a sheep-shearing among all the king's sons, he kills Amnon

23 And it came to pass after two full years, that Absalom had sheepshearers in Baalhazor, which *is* beside Ephraim: and Absalom invited all the king's sons.

24 And Absalom came to the king, and said, Behold now, thy servant has sheepshearers; let the king, I beseech you, and his servants go with thy servant.

25 And the king said to Absalom, Nay, my son, let us not all now go, lest we be chargeable unto you. And he pressed him: howbeit he would not go, but blessed him.

26 Then said Absalom, If not, I pray you, let my brother Amnon go with us. And the king said unto him, Why should he go with you?

27 But Absalom pressed him, that he let Amnon and all the king's sons go with him.

28 Now Absalom had commanded his servants, saying, Mark you now when Amnon's heart is merry with wine, and when I say unto you, Smite Amnon; then kill him, fear not: have not I commanded you? be courageous, and be valiant.

29 And the servants of Absalom did unto Amnon as Absalom had commanded. Then all the king's sons arose, and every man got him up upon his mule, and fled.

30 And it came to pass, while they were in the way, that tidings came to David, saying, Absalom has slain all the king's sons, and there is not one of them left.

David grieving at the news, is comforted by Jonadab

31 Then the king arose, and tare his garments, and lay on the earth; and all his servants stood by with their clothes rent. 2Sam 1:11;

32 And Jonadab, the son of Shimeah David's brother, answered and said, Let not my lord suppose *that* they have slain all the young men the king's sons; for Amnon only is dead: for by the appointment of Absalom this has been determined from the day that he forced his sister Tamar.

33 Now therefore let not my lord the king take the thing to his heart, to think that all the king's sons are dead: for Amnon only is dead.

34 But Absalom fled. And the young man that kept the watch lifted up his eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came much people by the way of the hill side behind him.

35 And Jonadab said unto the king, Behold, the king's sons come: as thy servant said, so it is.

36 And it came to pass, as soon as he had made an end of speaking, that, behold, the king's sons came, and lifted up their voice and wept: and the king also and all his servants wept very sore.

Absalom flies to Talmi at Geshur

37 But Absalom fled, and went to Talmi, the son of Ammihud, king of Geshur. And *David* mourned for his son every day.

38 So Absalom fled, and went to Geshur, and was there three years.

39 And king David longed to go forth unto Absalom: for he was comforted concerning Amnon, seeing he was dead.

SECOND SAMUEL FOURTEEN

Joab, suborning a widow of Tekoah by a parable to incline the king's heart to fetch home Absalom, brings him to Jerusalem

1 Now Joab the son of Zeruiah perceived that the king's heart *was* toward Absalom.

2 And Joab sent to Tekoah, and fetched thence a wise woman, and said unto her, I pray you, feign thyself to be a mourner, and put on now mourning apparel, and anoint not thyself with oil, but be as a woman that had a long time mourned for the dead:

3 And come to the king, and speak on this manner unto him. So Joab put the words in her mouth.

4 And when the woman of Tekoah spoke to the king, she fell on her face to the ground, and did obeisance, and said, Help, O king.

5 And the king said unto her, What aileth you? And she answered, I *am* indeed a widow woman, and mine husband is dead.

6 And thy handmaid had two sons, and they two strove together in the field, and *there was* none to part them, but the one smote the other, and slew him.

7 And, behold, the whole family is risen against thine handmaid, and they said, Deliver him that smote his brother, that we may kill him, for the life of his brother whom he slew; and we will destroy the heir also: and so they shall quench my coal which is left, and shall not leave to my husband *neither* name nor remainder upon the earth.

8 And the king said unto the woman, Go to thine house, and I will give charge concerning you.

9 And the woman of Tekoah said unto the king, My lord, O king, the iniquity *be* on me, and on my father's house: and the king and his throne *be* guiltless.

10 And the king said, Whosoever saith *ought* unto you, bring him to me, and he shall not touch you any more.

11 Then said she, I pray you, let the king remember the YAHWEH thy Elohim, that you wouldest not suffer the revengers of blood to destroy any more, lest they destroy my son. And he said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, there shall not one hair of thy son fall to the earth. [\[Luke 12:7\]; \[Luke 21:18\];](#)

12 Then the woman said, Let thine handmaid, I pray you, speak *one* word unto my lord the king. And he said, Say on.

13 And the woman said, Wherefore then have you thought such a thing against the people of Elohim? for the king speaks this thing as one which is faulty, in that the king does not fetch home again his banished.

14 For we must needs die, and *are* as water spilt on the ground, which cannot be gathered up again; neither does Elohim respect *any* person: yet he devises means, that his banished be not expelled from him.

15 Now therefore that I am come to speak of this thing unto my lord the king, *it is* because the people have made me afraid: and thy handmaid said, I will now speak unto the king; it may be that the king will perform the request of his handmaid.

16 For the king will hear, to deliver his handmaid out of the hand of the man *that would* destroy me and my son together out of the inheritance of Elohim.

17 Then thine handmaid said, The word of my lord the king shall now be comfortable: for as an angel of Elohim, so *is* my lord the king to discern good and bad: therefore the YAHWEH thy Elohim will be with you.

18 Then the king answered and said unto the woman, Hide not from me, I pray you, the thing that I shall ask you. And the woman said, Let my lord the king now speak.

19 And the king said, *Is not* the hand of Joab with you in all this? And the woman answered and said, *As* thy being liveth, my lord the king, none can turn to the right hand or to the left from ought that my lord the king has spoken: for thy servant Joab, he bade me, and he put all these words in the mouth of thine handmaid:

20 To fetch about this form of speech has thy servant Joab done this thing: and my lord *is* wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of Elohim, to know all *things* that *are* in the earth.

21 And the king said unto Joab, Behold now, I have done this thing: go therefore, bring the young man Absalom again.

22 And Joab fell to the ground on his face, and bowed himself, and thanked the king: and Joab said, To day thy servant knoweth that I have found grace in thy sight, my lord, O king, in that the king has fulfilled the request of his servant.

23 So Joab arose and went to Geshur, and brought Absalom to Jerusalem.

24 And the king said, Let him turn to his own house, and let him not see my face. So Absalom returned to his own house, and saw not the king's face.

Absalom's beauty, hair, and children

25 But in all Israel there was none to be so much praised as Absalom for his beauty: from the sole of his foot even to the crown of his head there was no blemish in him.

26 And when he polled his head, (for it was at every year's end that he polled *it*: because *the hair* was heavy on him, therefore he polled it:) he weighed the hair of his head at two hundred shekels after the king's weight.

27 And unto Absalom there were born three sons, and one daughter, whose name *was* Tamar: she was a woman of a fair countenance.

After two years, Absalom is brought into the king's presence by Joab

28 So Absalom dwelt two full years in Jerusalem, and saw not the king's face.

29 Therefore Absalom sent for Joab, to have sent him to the king; but he would not come to him: and when he sent again the second time, he would not come.

30 Therefore he said unto his servants, See, Joab's field is near mine, and he has barley there; go and set it on fire. And Absalom's servants set the field on fire.

31 Then Joab arose, and came to Absalom unto *his* house, and said unto him, Wherefore have thy servants set my field on fire?

32 And Absalom answered Joab, Behold, I sent unto you, saying, Come hither, that I may send you to the king, to say, Wherefore am I come from Geshur? *it had been* good for me *to have been* there still: now therefore let me see the king's face; and if there be *any* iniquity in me, let him kill me.

33 So Joab came to the king, and told him: and when he had called for Absalom, he came to the king, and bowed himself on his face to the ground before the king: and the king kissed Absalom.

SECOND SAMUEL FIFTEEN

Absalom, by fair speeches and courtesies, steals the hearts of Israel

1 And it came to pass after this, that Absalom prepared him chariots and horses, and fifty men to run before him. [1Kgs 1:5]; [Ps 3:1];

2 And Absalom rose up early, and stood beside the way of the gate: and it was *so*, that when any man that had a controversy came to the king for judgment, then Absalom called unto him, and said, Of what city are you? And he said, Thy servant *is* of one of the tribes of Israel.

3 And Absalom said unto him, See, thy matters *are* good and right; but *there is* no man *deputed* of the king to hear you.

4 Absalom said moreover, Oh that I were made judge in the land, that every man which has any suit or cause might come unto me, and I would do him justice!

5 And it was *so*, that when any man came nigh *to him* to do him obeisance, he put forth his hand, and took him, and kissed him.

6 And on this manner did Absalom to all Israel that came to the king for judgment: so Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel.

Under pretence of a vow, he obtains leave to go to Hebron

7 And it came to pass after forty years, that Absalom said unto the king, I pray you, let me go and pay my vow, which I have vowed unto the YAHWEH, in Hebron.

8 For thy servant vowed a vow while I abode at Geshur in Syria, saying, If the YAHWEH shall bring me again indeed to Jerusalem, then I will serve the YAHWEH.

9 And the king said unto him, Go in peace. So he arose, and went to Hebron.

He makes there a great conspiracy

10 But Absalom sent spies throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, As soon as you hear the sound of the trumpet, then you shall say, Absalom reigneth in Hebron.

11 And with Absalom went two hundred men out of Jerusalem, *that were* called; and they went in their simplicity, and they knew not any thing.

12 And Absalom sent for Ahithophel the Gilonite, David's counsellor, from his city, *even* from Giloh, while he offered sacrifices. And the conspiracy was strong; for the people increased continually with Absalom.

David upon the news flees from Jerusalem

13 And there came a messenger to David, saying, The hearts of the men of Israel are after Absalom.

14 And David said unto all his servants that *were* with him at Jerusalem, Arise, and let us flee; for we shall not *else* escape from Absalom: make speed to depart, lest he overtake us suddenly, and bring evil upon us, and smite the city with the edge of the sword.

15 And the king's servants said unto the king, Behold, thy servants *are ready to do* whatsoever my lord the king shall appoint.

16 And the king went forth, and all his household after him. And the king left ten women, *which were* concubines, to keep the house.

17 And the king went forth, and all the people after him, and tarried in a place that was far off.

18 And all his servants passed on beside him; and all the Cherethites, and all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites, six hundred men which came after him from Gath, passed on before the king. [2Sam 8:18](#); [1Kgs 1:38](#); [1Chr 18:17](#);

Ittai will not leave him

19 Then said the king to Ittai the Gittite, Wherefore go you also with us? return to thy place, and abide with the king: for you are a stranger, and also an exile.

20 Whereas you camest *but* yosterday, should I this day make you go up and down with us? seeing I go whither I may, return you, and take back thy brethren: mercy and truth *be* with you.

21 And Ittai answered the king, and said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* my lord the king liveth, surely in what place my lord the king shall be, whether in death or life, even there also will thy servant be.

22 And David said to Ittai, Go and pass over. And Ittai the Gittite passed over, and all his men, and all the little ones that *were* with him.

23 And all the country wept with a loud voice, and all the people passed over: the king also himself passed over the brook Kidron, and all the people passed over, toward the way of the wilderness. [John 18:1](#);

Zadok and Abiathar are sent back with the ark

24 And lo Zadok also, and all the Levites *were* with him, bearing the ark of the covenant of Elohim: and they set down the ark of Elohim; and Abiathar went up, until all the people had done passing out of the city. [\[1Kgs 2:26\]](#);

25 And the king said unto Zadok, Carry back the ark of Elohim into the city: if I shall find favor in the eyes of the YAHWEH, he will bring me again, and show me *both* it, and his habitation:

26 But if he thus say, I have no delight in you; behold, *here am* I, let him do to me as seemeth good unto him.

27 The king said also unto Zadok the priest, are *not* you a seer? return into the city in peace, and your two sons with you, Ahimaaz thy son, and Jonathan the son of Abiathar. [\[1Chr 6:8\]](#);

28 See, I will tarry in the plain of the wilderness, until there come word from you to certify me.

29 Zadok therefore and Abiathar carried the ark of Elohim again to Jerusalem: and they tarried there.

David and his company go up mount Olivet weeping

30 And David went up by the ascent of *mount* Olivet, and wept as he went up, and had his head covered, and he went barefoot: and all the people that *was* with him covered every man his head, and they went up, weeping as they went up.

He curses Ahithophel's counsel

31 And *one* told David, saying, Ahithophel *is* among the conspirators with Absalom. And David said, O YAHWEH, I pray you, turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness. [\[Job 12:17\]](#);

Hushai is sent back with instructions

32 And it came to pass, that *when* David was come to the top *of the mount*, where he worshipped Elohim, behold, Hushai the Archite came to meet him with his coat rent, and earth upon his head:

33 Unto whom David said, If you passest on with me, then you shall be a burden unto me:

34 But if you return to the city, and say unto Absalom, I will be thy servant, O king; *as* I *have been* thy father's servant hitherto, so *will* I now also *be* thy servant: then may you for me defeat the counsel of Ahithophel.

35 And have *you* not there with you Zadok and Abiathar the priests? therefore it shall be, *that* what thing soever you shall hear out of the king's house, you shall tell *it* to Zadok and Abiathar the priests.

36 Behold, *they have* there with them their two sons, Ahimaaz Zadok's *son*, and Jonathan Abiathar's *son*; and by them you shall send unto me every thing that you can hear.

37 So Hushai David's friend came into the city, and Absalom came into Jerusalem.

SECOND SAMUEL SIXTEEN

Ziba, by presents and false suggestions, obtains his master's inheritance

1 And when David was a little past the top *of the hill*, behold, Ziba the servant of Mephibosheth met him, with a couple of asses saddled, and upon them two hundred *loaves* of bread, and a hundred bunches of raisins, and a hundred of summer fruits, and a bottle of wine. [\[2Sam 9:2\]](#); [\[1Chr 11:10\]](#); [\[Ps 3:1\]](#);

2 And the king said unto Ziba, What meanest you by these? And Ziba said, The asses *be* for the king's household to ride on; and the bread and summer fruit for the young men to eat; and the wine, that such as be faint in the wilderness may drink.

3 And the king said, And where *is* thy master's son? And Ziba said unto the king, Behold, he abideth at Jerusalem: for he said, To day shall the house of Israel restore me the kingdom of my father. [2Sam 19:27](#);

4 Then said the king to Ziba, Behold, thine *are* all that *pertained* unto Mephibosheth. And Ziba said, I humbly beseech you *that* I may find grace in thy sight, my lord, O king.

At Bahurim Shimei curse David

5 And when king David came to Bahurim, behold, thence came out a man of the family of the house of Saul, whose name *was* Shimei, the son of Gera: he came forth, and cursed still as he came. [1Kgs 2:8](#); [\[2Sam 19:16\]](#); [\[1Kgs 2:44\]](#);

6 And he cast stones at David, and at all the servants of king David: and all the people and all the mighty men *were* on his right hand and on his left.

7 And thus said Shimei when he cursed, Come out, come out, you bloody man, and you man of Belial:

8 The YAHWEH has returned upon you all the blood of the house of Saul, in whose stead you have reigned; and the YAHWEH has delivered the kingdom into the hand of Absalom thy son: and, behold, you are *taken* in thy mischief, because you are a bloody man.

David with patience abstains, and restrains others, from revenge

9 Then said Abishai the son of Zeruiah unto the king, Why should this dead dog curse my lord the king? let me go over, I pray you, and take off his head. [1Sam 24:14](#); [2Sam 9:8](#);

10 And the king said, What have I to do with you, you sons of Zeruiah? so let him curse, because the YAHWEH has said unto him, Curse David. Who shall then say, Wherefore have you done so?

11 And David said to Abishai, and to all his servants, Behold, my son, which came forth of my bowels, seeketh my life: how much more now *may this* Benjamite *do it*? let him alone, and let him curse; for the YAHWEH has bidden him.

12 It may be that the YAHWEH will look on mine affliction, and that the YAHWEH will requite me good for his cursing this day. [\[1Chr 11:10\]](#);

13 And as David and his men went by the way, Shimei went along on the hill's side over against him, and cursed as he went, and threw stones at him, and cast dust.

14 And the king, and all the people that *were* with him, came weary, and refreshed themselves there.

Hushai insinuates himself into Absalom's counsel

15 And Absalom, and all the people the men of Israel, came to Jerusalem, and Ahithophel with him.

16 And it came to pass, when Hushai the Archite, David's friend, was come unto Absalom, that Hushai said unto Absalom, Let the king live, Let the king live.

17 And Absalom said to Hushai, *Is* this thy kindness to thy friend? why wentest thou not with thy friend?

18 And Hushai said unto Absalom, Nay; but whom the YAHWEH, and this people, and all the men of Israel, choose, his will I be, and with him will I abide.

19 And again, whom should I serve? *should I* not *serve* in the presence of his son? as I have served in thy father's presence, so will I be in thy presence.

Ahithophel's counsel

20 Then said Absalom to Ahithophel, Give counsel among you what we shall do.

21 And Ahithophel said unto Absalom, Go in unto thy father's concubines, which he has left to keep the house; and all Israel shall hear that you are abhorred of thy father: then shall the hands of all that *are* with you be strong.

22 So they spread Absalom a tent upon the top of the house; and Absalom went in unto his father's concubines in the sight of all Israel. [2Sam 12:11];

23 And the counsel of Ahithophel, which he counselled in those days, *was* as if a man had enquired at the oracle of Elohim: so *was* all the counsel of Ahithophel both with David and with Absalom.

SECOND SAMUEL SEVENTEEN

Ahithophel's counsel is overthrown by Hushai's, according to Elohim's appointment

1 Moreover Ahithophel said unto Absalom, Let me now choose out twelve thousand men, and I will arise and pursue after David this night: [Ps 3:1];

2 And I will come upon him while he *is* weary and weak handed, and will make him afraid: and all the people that *are* with him shall flee; and I will smite the king only:

3 And I will bring back all the people unto you: the man whom you seekest *is* as if all returned: *so* all the people shall be in peace.

4 And the saying pleased Absalom well, and all the elders of Israel.

5 Then said Absalom, Call now Hushai the Archite also, and let us hear likewise what he saith.

6 And when Hushai was come to Absalom, Absalom spoke unto him, saying, Ahithophel has spoken after this manner: shall we do *after* his saying? if not; speak you.

7 And Hushai said unto Absalom, The counsel that Ahithophel has given *is* not good at this time.

8 For, said Hushai, you knowest thy father and his men, that they *be* mighty men, and they *be* chafed in their minds, as a bear robbed of her whelps in the field: and thy father *is* a man of war, and will not lodge with the people.

9 Behold, he is hid now in some pit, or in some *other* place: and it will come to pass, when some of them be overthrown at the first, that whosoever heareth it will say, There is a slaughter among the people that follow Absalom.

10 And he also *that is* valiant, whose heart *is* as the heart of a lion, shall utterly melt: for all Israel knoweth that thy father *is* a mighty man, and *they* which *be* with him *are* valiant men.

11 Therefore I counsel that all Israel be generally gathered unto you, from Dan even to Beersheba, as the sand that *is* by the sea for multitude; and that you go to battle in thine own person.

12 So shall we come upon him in some place where he shall be found, and we will light upon him as the dew falleth on the ground: and of him and of all the men that *are* with him there shall not be left so much as one.

13 Moreover, if he be gotten into a city, then shall all Israel bring ropes to that city, and we will draw it into the river, until there be not one small stone found there.

14 And Absalom and all the men of Israel said, The counsel of Hushai the Archite *is* better than the counsel of Ahithophel. For the YAHWEH had appointed to defeat the good counsel of Ahithophel, to the intent that the YAHWEH might bring evil upon Absalom. [Job 12:17];

Secret intelligence is sent unto David

15 Then said Hushai unto Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, Thus and thus did Ahithophel counsel Absalom and the elders of Israel; and thus and thus have I counselled.

16 Now therefore send quickly, and tell David, saying, Lodge not this night in the plains of the wilderness, but speedily pass over; lest the king be swallowed up, and all the people that *are* with him.

17 Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz stayed by Enrogel; for they might not be seen to come into the city: and a wench went and told them; and they went and told king David.

18 Nevertheless a lad saw them, and told Absalom: but they went both of them away quickly, and came to a man's house in Bahurim, which had a well in his court; whither they went down.

19 And the woman took and spread a covering over the well's mouth, and spread ground grain thereon; and the thing was not known.

20 And when Absalom's servants came to the woman to the house, they said, Where *is* Ahimaaz and Jonathan? And the woman said unto them, They be gone over the brook of water. And when they had sought and could not find *them*, they returned to Jerusalem.

21 And it came to pass, after they were departed, that they came up out of the well, and went and told king David, and said unto David, Arise, and pass quickly over the water: for thus has Ahithophel counselled against you.

22 Then David arose, and all the people that *were* with him, and they passed over Jordan: by the morning light there lacked not one of them that was not gone over Jordan.

Ahithophel hangs himself

23 And when Ahithophel saw that his counsel was not followed, he saddled *his* ass, and arose, and got him home to his house, to his city, and put his household in order, and hanged himself, and died, and was buried in the sepulcher of his father. [Job 12:17]; [Matt 27:5]; [Acts 1:18];

24 Then David came to Mahanaim. And Absalom passed over Jordan, he and all the men of Israel with him.

Amasa is made captain

25 And Absalom made Amasa captain of the host instead of Joab: which Amasa *was* a man's son, whose name *was* Ithra an Israelite, that went in to Abigail the daughter of Nahash, sister to Zeruiah Joab's mother. [2Sam 19:13];

26 So Israel and Absalom pitched in the land of Gilead.

David at Mahanaim is furnished with provisions

27 And it came to pass, when David was come to Mahanaim, that Shobi the son of Nahash of Rabbah of the children of Ammon, and Machir the son of Ammiel of Lodebar, and Barzillai the Gileadite of Rogelim, 2Sam 19:31-32; 1Kgs 2:7; [2Sam 19:32];

28 Brought beds, and basins, and earthen vessels, and wheat, and barley, and flour, and parched *corn*, and beans, and lentiles, and parched *pulse*,

29 And honey, and butter, and sheep, and cheese of kine, for David, and for the people that *were* with him, to eat: for they said, The people are hungry, and weary, and thirsty, in the wilderness.

David viewing the armies in their march gives them charge of Absalom

1 And David numbered the people that *were* with him, and set captains of thousands and captains of hundreds over them. [Ps 3:1];

2 And David sent forth a third part of the people under the hand of Joab, and a third part under the hand of Abishai the son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, and a third part under the hand of Ittai the Gittite. And the king said unto the people, I will surely go forth with you myself also.

3 But the people answered, you shall not go forth: for if we flee away, they will not care for us; neither if half of us die, will they care for us: but now you *are* worth ten thousand of us: therefore now *it is* better that you succour us out of the city.

4 And the king said unto them, What seemeth you best I will do. And the king stood by the gate side, and all the people came out by hundreds and by thousands.

5 And the king commanded Joab and Abishai and Ittai, saying, *Deal* gently for my sake with the young man, *even* with Absalom. And all the people heard when the king gave all the captains charge concerning Absalom.

The Israelites are sorely smitten in the wood of Ephraim

6 So the people went out into the field against Israel: and the battle was in the wood of Ephraim;

7 Where the people of Israel were slain before the servants of David, and there was there a great slaughter that day of twenty thousand *men*.

8 For the battle was there scattered over the face of all the country: and the wood devoured more people that day than the sword devoured.

Absalom, hanging in an oak is slain by Joab, and cast into a pit

9 And Absalom met the servants of David. And Absalom rode upon a mule, and the mule went under the thick boughs of a great oak, and his head caught hold of the oak, and he was taken up between the heaven and the earth; and the mule that *was* under him went away.

10 And a certain man saw *it*, and told Joab, and said, Behold, I saw Absalom hanged in an oak.

11 And Joab said unto the man that told him, And, behold, you sawest *him*, and why didst you not smite him there to the ground? and I would have given you ten *shekels* of silver, and a girdle.

12 And the man said unto Joab, though I should receive a thousand *shekels* of silver in mine hand, yet would I not put forth mine hand against the king's son: for in our hearing the king charged you and Abishai and Ittai, saying, Beware that none *touch* the young man Absalom.

13 Otherwise I should have wrought falsehood against mine own life: for there is no matter hid from the king, and you thyself wouldest have set thyself against *me*.

14 Then said Joab, I may not tarry thus with you. And he took three darts in his hand, and thrust them through the heart of Absalom, while he *was* yet alive in the midst of the oak.

15 And ten young men that bore Joab's armour compassed about and smote Absalom, and slew him.

16 And Joab blew the trumpet, and the people returned from pursuing after Israel: for Joab held back the people.

17 And they took Absalom, and cast him into a great pit in the wood, and laid a very great heap of stones upon him: and all Israel fled every one to his tent.

Absalom's place

18 Now Absalom in his lifetime had taken and reared up for himself a pillar, which *is* in the king's dale: for he said, I have no son to keep my name in remembrance: and he called the pillar after his own name: and it is called unto this day, Absalom's place.

Ahimaaz and Cushi bring tidings to David

19 Then said Ahimaaz the son of Zadok, Let me now run, and bear the king tidings, how that the YAHWEH has avenged him of his enemies.

20 And Joab said unto him, you shall not bear tidings this day, but you shall bear tidings another day: but this day you shall bear no tidings, because the king's son is dead.

21 Then said Joab to Cushi, Go tell the king what you have seen. And Cushi bowed himself unto Joab, and ran.

22 Then said Ahimaaz the son of Zadok yet again to Joab, But howsoever, let me, I pray you, also run after Cushi. And Joab said, Wherefore will you run, my son, seeing that you have no tidings ready?

23 But howsoever, *said he*, let me run. And he said unto him, Run. Then Ahimaaz ran by the way of the plain, and overran Cushi.

24 And David sat between the two gates: and the watchman went up to the roof over the gate unto the wall, and lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold a man running alone.

25 And the watchman cried, and told the king. And the king said, If he *be* alone, *there is* tidings in his mouth. And he came quickly, and drew near.

26 And the watchman saw another man running: and the watchman called unto the porter, and said, Behold *another* man running alone. And the king said, He also bringeth tidings.

27 And the watchman said, Me thinketh the running of the foremost is like the running of Ahimaaz the son of Zadok. And the king said, He *is* a good man, and cometh with good tidings.

28 And Ahimaaz called, and said unto the king, All is well. And he fell down to the earth upon his face before the king, and said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which has delivered up the men that lifted up their hand against my lord the king.

29 And the king said, Is the young man Absalom safe? And Ahimaaz answered, When Joab sent the king's servant, and *me* thy servant, I saw a great tumult, but I knew not what *it was*.

30 And the king said *unto him*, Turn aside, *and* stand here. And he turned aside, and stood still.

31 And, behold, Cushi came; and Cushi said, Tidings, my lord the king: for the YAHWEH has avenged you this day of all them that rose up against you.

32 And the king said unto Cushi, Is the young man Absalom safe? And Cushi answered, The enemies of my lord the king, and all that rise against you to do you hurt, be as *that* young man *is*.

David mourns for Absalom

33 And the king was much moved, and went up to the chamber over the gate, and wept: and as he went, thus he said, O my son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! would Elohim I had died for you, O Absalom, my son, my son!

SECOND SAMUEL NINETEEN

Joab causes the king to cease his mourning

1 And it was told Joab, Behold, the king weepeth and mourneth for Absalom.

2 And the victory that day was *turned* into mourning unto all the people: for the people heard say that day how the king was grieved for his son.

3 And the people got them by stealth that day into the city, as people being ashamed steal away when they flee in battle.

4 But the king covered his face, and the king cried with a loud voice, O my son Absalom, O Absalom, my son, my son!

5 And Joab came into the house to the king, and said, you have shamed this day the faces of all thy servants, which this day have saved thy life, and the lives of thy sons and of thy daughters, and the lives of thy wives, and the lives of thy concubines;

6 In that you lovest thine enemies, and hatest thy friends. For you have declared this day, that you regardest neither princes nor servants: for this day I perceive, that if Absalom had lived, and all we had died this day, then it had pleased you well.

7 Now therefore arise, go forth, and speak comfortably unto thy servants: for I swear by the YAHWEH, if you go not forth, there will not tarry one with you this night: and that will be worse unto you than all the evil that befell you from thy youth until now.

8 Then the king arose, and sat in the gate. And they told unto all the people, saying, Behold, the king sits in the gate. And all the people came before the king: for Israel had fled every man to his tent.

The Israelites are earnest to bring the king back

9 And all the people were at strife throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, The king saved us out of the hand of our enemies, and he delivered us out of the hand of the Philistines; and now he is fled out of the land for Absalom.

10 And Absalom, whom we anointed over us, is dead in battle. Now therefore why speak you not a word of bringing the king back?

David sends to the priests to incite them of Judah

11 And king David sent to Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, saying, Speak unto the elders of Judah, saying, Why are you the last to bring the king back to his house? seeing the speech of all Israel is come to the king, *even* to his house.

12 You *are* my brethren, you *are* my bones and my flesh: wherefore then are you the last to bring back the king?

13 And say you to Amasa, are you not of my bone, and of my flesh? Elohim do so to me, and more also, if you be not captain of the host before me continually in the room of Joab. [2Sam 17:25](#);

14 And he bowed the heart of all the men of Judah, even as *the heart of* one man; so that they sent *this word* unto the king, Return you, and all thy servants.

15 So the king returned, and came to Jordan. And Judah came to Gilgal, to go to meet the king, to conduct the king over Jordan.

16 And Shimei the son of Gera, a Benjamite, which *was* of Bahurim, hasted and came down with the men of Judah to meet king David. [2Sam 16:5](#); [1Kgs 2:8](#);

17 And *there were* a thousand men of Benjamin with him, and Ziba the servant of the house of Saul, and his fifteen sons and his twenty servants with him; and they went over Jordan before the king. [\[2Sam 9:2\]](#);

Shimei is pardoned

18 And there went over a ferry boat to carry over the king's household, and to do what he thought good. And Shimei the son of Gera fell down before the king, as he was come over Jordan;

19 And said unto the king, Let not my lord impute iniquity unto me, neither do you remember that which thy servant did perversely the day that my lord the king went out of Jerusalem, that the king should take it to his heart. [\[1Kgs 2:8\]](#);

20 For thy servant knows that I have sinned: therefore, behold, I am come the first this day of all the house of Joseph to go down to meet my lord the king.

21 But Abishai the son of Zeruiah answered and said, Shall not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed the YAHWEH'S anointed?

22 And David said, What have I to do with you, you sons of Zeruiah, that you should this day be adversaries unto me? shall there any man be put to death this day in Israel? for do not I know that I *am* this day king over Israel? [\[Matt 16:23\]](#); [\[Mark 8:33\]](#);

23 Therefore the king said unto Shimei, you shall not die. And the king swore unto him.

Mephibosheth excused

24 And Mephibosheth the son of Saul came down to meet the king, and had neither dressed his feet, nor trimmed his beard, nor washed his clothes, from the day the king departed until the day he came *again* in peace.

25 And it came to pass, when he was come to Jerusalem to meet the king, that the king said unto him, Wherefore wentest not you with me, Mephibosheth?

26 And he answered, My lord, O king, my servant deceived me: for thy servant said, I will saddle me an ass, that I may ride thereon, and go to the king; because thy servant *is* lame.

27 And he has slandered thy servant unto my lord the king; but my lord the king *is* as an angel of Elohim: do therefore *what is* good in thine eyes. [2Sam 16:3](#);

28 For all *of* my father's house were but dead men before my lord the king: yet didst you set thy servant among them that did eat at thine own table. What right therefore have I yet to cry any more unto the king?

29 And the king said unto him, Why speakest you any more of thy matters? I have said, you and Ziba divide the land.

30 And Mephibosheth said unto the king, yes, let him take all, forasmuch as my lord the king is come again in peace unto his own house.

31 And Barzillai the Gileadite came down from Rogelim, and went over Jordan with the king, to conduct him over Jordan. [\[2Sam 17:27\]](#); [\[1Kgs 2:7\]](#);

Barzillai dismissed, and Chimham his son taken into the king's family

32 Now Barzillai was a very aged man, *even* fourscore years old: and he had provided the king of sustenance while he lay at Mahanaim; for he *was* a very great man. [2Sam 17:27](#); [1Kgs 2:7](#);

33 And the king said unto Barzillai, Come you over with me, and I will feed you with me in Jerusalem.

34 And Barzillai said unto the king, How long have I to live, that I should go up with the king unto Jerusalem?

35 I *am* this day fourscore years old: *and* can I discern between good and evil? can thy servant taste what I eat or what I drink? can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women? wherefore then should thy servant be yet a burden unto my lord the king?

36 Thy servant will go a little way over Jordan with the king: and why should the king recompense it me with such a reward?

37 Let thy servant, I pray you, turn back again, that I may die in mine own city, *and be buried* by the grave of my father and of my mother. But behold thy servant Chimham; let him go over with my lord the king; and do to him what shall seem good unto you.

38 And the king answered, Chimham shall go over with me, and I will do to him that which shall seem good unto you: and whatsoever you shall require of me, *that* will I do for you.

39 And all the people went over Jordan. And when the king was come over, the king kissed Barzillai, and blessed him; and he returned unto his own place.

40 Then the king went on to Gilgal, and Chimham went on with him: and all the people of Judah conducted the king, and also half the people of Israel.

The Israelites expostulate with Judah for bringing home the king without them

41 And, behold, all the men of Israel came to the king, and said unto the king, Why have our brethren the men of Judah stolen you away, and have brought the king, and his household, and all David's men with him, over Jordan?

42 And all the men of Judah answered the men of Israel, Because the king *is* near of kin to us: wherefore then be you angry for this matter? have we eaten at all of the king's *cost*? or has he given us any gift?

43 And the men of Israel answered the men of Judah, and said, We have ten parts in the king, and we have also more *right* in David than you: why then did you despise us, that our advice should not be first

had in bringing back our king? And the words of the men of Judah were fiercer than the words of the men of Israel.

SECOND SAMUEL TWENTY

By occasion of the quarrel, Sheba makes a party in Israel

1 And there happened to be there a man of Belial, whose name *was* Sheba, the son of Bichri, a Benjamite: and he blew a trumpet, and said, We have no part in David, neither have we inheritance in the son of Jesse: every man to his tents, O Israel. [\[1Kgs 12:16\];](#)

2 So every man of Israel went up from after David, *and* followed Sheba the son of Bichri: but the men of Judah clave unto their king, from Jordan even to Jerusalem.

David's ten concubines are put in confinement for life

3 And David came to his house at Jerusalem; and the king took the ten women *his* concubines, whom he had left to keep the house, and put them in ward, and fed them, but went not in unto them. So they were shut up unto the day of their death, living in widowhood.

Amasa, made captain over Judah, is slain by Joab

4 Then said the king to Amasa, Assemble me the men of Judah within three days, and be you here present.

5 So Amasa went to assemble *the men of* Judah: but he tarried longer than the set time which he had appointed him.

6 And David said to Abishai, Now shall Sheba the son of Bichri do us more harm than *did* Absalom: take you thy lord's servants, and pursue after him, lest he get him fenced cities, and escape us.

7 And there went out after him Joab's men, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, and all the mighty men: and they went out of Jerusalem, to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.

8 When they *were* at the great stone which *is* in Gibeon, Amasa went before them. And Joab's garment that he had put on was girded unto him, and upon it a girdle *with* a sword fastened upon his loins in the sheath thereof; and as he went forth it fell out.

9 And Joab said to Amasa, are you in health, my brother? And Joab took Amasa by the beard with the right hand to kiss him. [\[Matt 26:49\]; \[Mark 14:45\];](#)

10 But Amasa took no heed to the sword that *was* in Joab's hand: so he smote him therewith in the fifth *rib*, and shed out his bowels to the ground, and struck him not again; and he died. So Joab and Abishai his brother pursued after Sheba the son of Bichri. [1Kgs 2:5;](#)

11 And one of Joab's men stood by him, and said, He that favoreth Joab, and he that *is* for David, *let him go* after Joab.

12 And Amasa wallowed in blood in the midst of the highway. And when the man saw that all the people stood still, he removed Amasa out of the highway into the field, and cast a cloth upon him, when he saw that every one that came by him stood still.

13 When he was removed out of the highway, all the people went on after Joab, to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.

Joab pursues Sheba unto Abel

14 And he went through all the tribes of Israel unto Abel, and to Bethmaachah, and all the Berites: and they were gathered together, and went also after him.

15 And they came and besieged him in Abel of Bethmaachah, and they cast up a bank against the city, and it stood in the trench: and all the people that *were* with Joab battered the wall, to throw it down.

A wise woman saves the city by Sheba's head

16 Then cried a wise woman out of the city, Hear, hear; say, I pray you, unto Joab, Come near hither, that I may speak with you.

17 And when he was come near unto her, the woman said, are you Joab? And he answered, I *am he*. Then she said unto him, Hear the words of thine handmaid. And he answered, I do hear.

18 Then she spoke, saying, They were wont to speak in old time, saying, They shall surely ask *counsel* at Abel: and so they ended *the matter*.

19 I *am one of them that are* peaceable *and* faithful in Israel: you seekest to destroy a city and a mother in Israel: why will you swallow up the inheritance of the YAHWEH?

20 And Joab answered and said, Far be it, far be it from me, that I should swallow up or destroy.

21 The matter *is* not so: but a man of mount Ephraim, Sheba the son of Bichri by name, has lifted up his hand against the king, *even* against David: deliver him only, and I will depart from the city. And the woman said unto Joab, Behold, his head shall be thrown to you over the wall.

22 Then the woman went unto all the people in her wisdom. And they cut off the head of Sheba the son of Bichri, and cast *it* out to Joab. And he blew a trumpet, and they retired from the city, every man to his tent. And Joab returned to Jerusalem unto the king.

David's officers

23 Now Joab *was* over all the host of Israel: and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada *was* over the Cherethites and over the Pelethites: [2Sam 8:16](#);

24 And Adoram *was* over the tribute: and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud *was* recorder:

25 And Sheva *was* scribe: and Zadok and Abiathar *were* the priests:

26 And Ira also the Jairite was a chief ruler about David.

SECOND SAMUEL TWENTY-ONE

The three years' famine for the Gibeonites ceases, by hanging seven of Saul's sons

1 Then there was a famine in the days of David three years, year after year; and David enquired of the YAHWEH. And the YAHWEH answered, *It is* for Saul, and for *his* bloody house, because he slew the Gibeonites.

2 And the king called the Gibeonites, and said unto them; (now the Gibeonites *were* not of the children of Israel, but of the remnant of the Amorites; and the children of Israel had sworn unto them: and Saul sought to slay them in his zeal to the children of Israel and Judah.) [Josh 9:19](#);

3 Wherefore David said unto the Gibeonites, What shall I do for you? and wherewith shall I make the atonement, that you may bless the inheritance of the YAHWEH?

4 And the Gibeonites said unto him, We will have no silver nor gold of Saul, nor of his house; neither for us shall you kill any man in Israel. And he said, What you shall say, *that* will I do for you.

5 And they answered the king, The man that consumed us, and that devised against us *that* we should be destroyed from remaining in any of the coasts of Israel,

6 Let seven men of his sons be delivered unto us, and we will hang them up unto the YAHWEH in Gibeah of Saul, *whom* the YAHWEH did choose. And the king said, I will give *them*.

7 But the king spared Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan the son of Saul, because of the YAHWEH'S oath that *was* between them, between David and Jonathan the son of Saul. [1Sam 18:3](#); [1Sam 20:15](#); [1Sam 20:42](#); [1Sam 23:18](#);

8 But the king took the two sons of Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, whom she bore unto Saul, Armoni and Mephibosheth; and the five sons of Michal the daughter of Saul, whom she brought up for Adriel the son of Barzillai the Meholathite: [\[2Sam 3:7\]](#);

9 And he delivered them into the hands of the Gibeonites, and they hanged them in the hill before the YAHWEH: and they fell *all* seven together, and were put to death in the days of harvest, in the first *days*, in the beginning of barley harvest.

Rizpah's kindness unto the dead

10 And Rizpah the daughter of Aiah took sackcloth, and spread it for her upon the rock, from the beginning of harvest until water dropped upon them out of heaven, and suffered neither the birds of the air to rest on them by day, nor the beasts of the field by night. [\[2Sam 3:7\]](#);

11 And it was told David what Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, the concubine of Saul, had done.

David buries the bones of Saul and Jonathan in his father's sepulcher

12 And David went and took the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son from the men of Jabeshgilead, which had stolen them from the street of Bethshan, where the Philistines had hanged them, when the Philistines had slain Saul in Gilboa: [1Sam 31:10](#);

13 And he brought up from thence the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son; and they gathered the bones of them that were hanged.

14 And the bones of Saul and Jonathan his son buried they in the country of Benjamin in Zelah, in the sepulcher of Kish his father: and they performed all that the king commanded. And after that Elohim was intreated for the land.

Four battles against the Philistines, wherein four valiants of David slay four giants

15 Moreover the Philistines had yet war again with Israel; and David went down, and his servants with him, and fought against the Philistines: and David waxed faint.

16 And Ishbubenob, which *was* of the sons of the giant, the weight of whose spear *weighed* three hundred *shekels* of brass in weight, he being girded with a new *sword*, thought to have slain David.

17 But Abishai the son of Zeruiah succoured him, and smote the Philistine, and killed him. Then the men of David swore unto him, saying, you shall go no more out with us to battle, that you quench not the light of Israel.

18 And it came to pass after this, that there was again a battle with the Philistines at Gob: then Sibbechai the Hushasite slew Saph, which *was* of the sons of the giant. [1Chr 20:4](#);

19 And there was again a battle in Gob with the Philistines, where Elhanan the son of Jaareoregim, a Bethlehemite, slew *the brother* of Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear *was* like a weaver's beam.

20 And there was yet a battle in Gath, where was a man of *great* stature, that had on every hand six fingers, and on every foot six toes, four and twenty in number; and he also was born to the giant.

21 And when he defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimea the brother of David slew him.

22 These four were born to the giant in Gath, and fell by the hand of David, and by the hand of his servants.

David's psalm of thanksgiving for Elohim's powerful deliverance, and manifold blessings

- 1** And David spoke unto the YAHWEH the words of this song in the day *that* the YAHWEH had delivered him out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul:
- 2** And he said, The YAHWEH *is* my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; [Ps 18:1](#);
- 3** The Elohim of my rock; in him will I trust: *he is* my shield, and the horn of my salvation, my high tower, and my refuge, my saviour; you savest me from violence. [Heb 2:13](#);
- 4** I will call on the YAHWEH, *who is* worthy to be praised: so shall I be saved from mine enemies.
- 5** When the waves of death compassed me, the floods of ungodly men made me afraid; [\[Ps 116:3\]](#);
- 6** The sorrows of hell compassed me about; the snares of death prevented me;
- 7** In my distress I called upon the YAHWEH, and cried to my Elohim: and he did hear my voice out of his temple, and my cry *did enter* into his ears.
- 8** Then the earth shook and trembled; the foundations of heaven moved and shook, because he was wroth. [\[Ps 144:6\]](#);
- 9** There went up a smoke out of his nostrils, and fire out of his mouth devoured: coals were kindled by it.
- 10** He bowed the heavens also, and came down; and darkness *was* under his feet.
- 11** And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: and he was seen upon the wings of the wind.
- 12** And he made darkness pavilions round about him, dark waters, *and* thick clouds of the skies.
- 13** Through the brightness before him were coals of fire kindled.
- 14** The YAHWEH thundered from heaven, and the most High uttered his voice.
- 15** And he sent out arrows, and scattered them; lightning, and discomfited them.
- 16** And the channels of the sea appeared, the foundations of the world were discovered, at the rebuking of the YAHWEH, at the blast of the breath of his nostrils.
- 17** He sent from above, he took me; he drew me out of many waters;
- 18** He delivered me from my strong enemy, *and* from them that hated me: for they were too strong for me.
- 19** They prevented me in the day of my calamity: but the YAHWEH was my stay.
- 20** He brought me forth also into a large place: he delivered me, because he delighted in me.
- 21** The YAHWEH rewarded me according to my righteousness: according to the cleanness of my hands has he recompensed me.
- 22** For I have kept the ways of the YAHWEH, and have not wickedly departed from my Elohim.
- 23** For all his judgments *were* before me: and *as for* his statutes, I did not depart from them.
- 24** I was also upright before him, and have kept myself from mine iniquity.
- 25** Therefore the YAHWEH has recompensed me according to my righteousness; according to my cleanness in his eye sight.
- 26** With the merciful you will show thyself merciful, *and* with the upright man you will show thyself upright.
- 27** With the pure you will show thyself pure; and with the froward you will show thyself unsavoury. [\[Lev 26:24\]](#);
- 28** And the afflicted people you will save: but thine eyes *are* upon the haughty, *that* you may bring *them* down.
- 29** For you are my lamp, O YAHWEH: and the YAHWEH will lighten my darkness.
- 30** For by you I have run through a troop: by my Elohim have I leaped over a wall.
- 31** *As for* Elohim, his way *is* perfect; the word of the YAHWEH *is* tried: he *is* a buckler to all them that trust in him. [Deut 32:4](#); [Dan 4:37](#); [Rev 15:3](#); [Ps 12:6](#); [Ps 119:140](#); [Prov 30:5](#); [\[Ps 19:7\]](#);
- 32** For who *is* Elohim, save the YAHWEH? and who *is* a rock, save our Elohim? [Deut 32:39](#); [1Sam 2:2](#); [Ps 86:8](#); [Isa 45:5](#); [\[Hos 13:4\]](#);

33 Elohim *is* my strength *and* power: and he maketh my way perfect.
34 He maketh my feet like hinds' *feet*: and setteth me upon my high places.
35 He teacheth my hands to war; so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms. [Ps 144:1];
36 *you* have also given me the shield of thy salvation: and thy gentleness has made me great.
37 *you* have enlarged my steps under me; so that my feet did not slip.
38 I have pursued mine enemies, and destroyed them; and turned not again until I had consumed them.
39 And I have consumed them, and wounded them, that they could not arise: yes, they are fallen under my feet.
40 For you have girded me with strength to battle: them that rose up against me have you subdued under me.
41 *you* have also given me the necks of mine enemies, that I might destroy them that hate me.
42 They looked, but *there was* none to save; *even* unto the YAHWEH, but he answered them not.
43 Then did I beat them as small as the dust of the earth, I did stamp them as the mire of the street, *and* did spread them abroad.
44 *you* also have delivered me from the strivings of my people, you have kept me *to be* head of the heathen: a people *which* I knew not shall serve me.
45 Strangers shall submit themselves unto me: as soon as they hear, they shall be obedient unto me.
46 Strangers shall fade away, and they shall be afraid out of their close places.
47 The YAHWEH liveth; and blessed *be* my rock; and exalted be the Elohim of the rock of my salvation.
48 It *is* Elohim that avengeth me, and that bringeth down the people under me, [Ps 144:2];
49 And that bringeth me forth from mine enemies: you also have lifted me up on high above them that rose up against me: you have delivered me from the violent man.
50 Therefore I will give thanks unto you, O YAHWEH, among the heathen, and I will sing praises unto thy name. Rom 15:9;
51 *He is* the tower of salvation for his king: and sheweth mercy to his anointed, unto David, and to his seed for evermore. [Prov 18:10];

SECOND SAMUEL TWENTY-THREE

David, in his last words, professes his faith in Elohim's promises to be beyond sense or experience

1 Now these *be* the last words of David. David the son of Jesse said, and the man *who was* raised up on high, the anointed of the Elohim of Jacob, and the sweet psalmist of Israel, said,
2 The Spirit of the YAHWEH spoke by me, and his word *was* in my tongue.
3 The Elohim of Israel said, the Rock of Israel spoke to me, He that ruleth over men *must be* just, ruling in the fear of Elohim.
4 And *he shall be* as the light of the morning, *when* the sun riseth, *even* a morning without clouds; *as* the tender grass *springing* out of the earth by clear shining after rain. [Ps 72:6];
5 Although my house *be* not so with Elohim; yet he has made with me an everlasting covenant, ordered in all *things*, and sure: for *this is* all my salvation, and all *my* desire, although he make *it* not to grow.

The different state of the wicked

6 But *the sons* of Belial *shall be* all of them as thorns thrust away, because they cannot be taken with hands:
7 But the man *that* shall touch them must be fenced with iron and the staff of a spear; and they shall be utterly burned with fire in the *same* place.

A catalogue of David's mighty men

8 These *be* the names of the mighty men whom David had: The Tachmonite that sat in the seat, chief among the captains; the same *was* Adino the Eznite: *he lift up his spear* against eight hundred, whom he slew at one time. [1Chr 11:11](#); [\[1Chr 11:10\]](#);

9 And after him *was* Eleazar the son of Dodo the Ahohite, *one* of the three mighty men with David, when they defied the Philistines *that* were there gathered together to battle, and the men of Israel were gone away:

10 He arose, and smote the Philistines until his hand was weary, and his hand clave unto the sword: and the YAHWEH wrought a great victory that day; and the people returned after him only to spoil.

11 And after him *was* Shammah the son of Agee the Hararite. And the Philistines were gathered together into a troop, where was a piece of ground full of lentiles: and the people fled from the Philistines. [\[1Chr 11:13\]](#);

12 But he stood in the midst of the ground, and defended it, and slew the Philistines: and the YAHWEH wrought a great victory.

13 And three of the thirty chief went down, and came to David in the harvest time unto the cave of Adullam: and the troop of the Philistines pitched in the valley of Rephaim. [\[1Chr 11:15\]](#);

14 And David *was* then in a hold, and the garrison of the Philistines *was* then *in* Bethlehem.

15 And David longed, and said, Oh that one would give me drink of the water of the well of Bethlehem, which *is* by the gate!

16 And the three mighty men brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, that *was* by the gate, and took *it*, and brought *it* to David: nevertheless he would not drink thereof, but poured it out unto the YAHWEH.

17 And he said, Be it far from me, O YAHWEH, that I should do this: *is not this* the blood of the men that went in jeopardy of their lives? therefore he would not drink it. These things did these three mighty men.

18 And Abishai, the brother of Joab, the son of Zeruiah, was chief among three. And he lifted up his spear against three hundred, *and* slew *them*, and had the name among three.

19 Was he not most honourable of three? therefore he was their captain: howbeit he attained not unto the *first* three.

20 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a valiant man, of Kabzeel, who had done many acts, he slew two lionlike men of Moab: he went down also and slew a lion in the midst of a pit in time of snow:

21 And he slew an Egyptian, a goodly man: and the Egyptian had a spear in his hand; but he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear.

22 These *things* did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had the name among three mighty men.

23 He was more honourable than the thirty, but he attained not to the *first* three. And David set him over his guard.

24 Asahel the brother of Joab *was* one of the thirty; Elhanan the son of Dodo of Bethlehem, [\[1Chr 11:26\]](#);

25 Shammah the Harodite, Elikah the Harodite,

26 Helez the Paltite, Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,

27 Abiezer the Anethothite, Mebunnai the Hushasite,

28 Zalmon the Ahohite, Maharai the Netophasite,

29 Heleb the son of Baanah, a Netophasite, Ittai the son of Ribai out of Gibeath of the children of Benjamin,

30 Benaiah the Pirathonite, Hiddai of the brooks of Gaash,

31 Abialbon the Arbathite, Azmaveth the Barhumite,

32 Eliahba the Shaalbonite, of the sons of Jashen, Jonathan,

33 Shammah the Hararite, Ahiam the son of Sharar the Hararite,

34 Eliphelet the son of Ahasbai, the son of the Maachasite, Eliam the son of Ahithophel the Gilonite,

35 Hezrai the Carmelite, Paarai the Arbite,

- 36** Igal the son of Nathan of Zobah, Bani the Gadite,
37 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Beerothite, armourbearer to Joab the son of Zeruiah,
38 Ira an Ithrite, Gareb an Ithrite,
39 Uriah the Hittite: thirty and seven in all.

SECOND SAMUEL TWENTY-FOUR

David, tempted by Satan, forces Joab to number the people

- 1** And again the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Israel, and he moved David against them to say, Go, number Israel and Judah. [1Chr 21:1](#);
2 For the king said to Joab the captain of the host, which *was* with him, Go now through all the tribes of Israel, from Dan even to Beersheba, and number you the people, that I may know the number of the people.
3 And Joab said unto the king, Now the YAHWEH thy Elohim add unto the people, how many soever they be, a hundredfold, and that the eyes of my lord the king may see *it*: but why does my lord the king delight in this thing?
4 Notwithstanding the king's word prevailed against Joab, and against the captains of the host. And Joab and the captains of the host went out from the presence of the king, to number the people of Israel.

The captains, in nine months and twenty days, bring the muster of thirteen hundred thousand fighting men

- 5** And they passed over Jordan, and pitched in Aroer, on the right side of the city that *lies* in the midst of the river of Gad, and toward Jazer:
6 Then they came to Gilead, and to the land of Tahtimhodshi; and they came to Danjaan, and about to Zidon,
7 And came to the strong hold of Tyre, and to all the cities of the Hivites, and of the Canaanites: and they went out to the south of Judah, *even* to Beersheba.
8 So when they had gone through all the land, they came to Jerusalem at the end of nine months and twenty days.
9 And Joab gave up the sum of the number of the people unto the king: and there were in Israel eight hundred thousand valiant men that drew the sword; and the men of Judah *were* five hundred thousand men.

David repents, and having three plagues propounded by Elohim, chooses the three days' pestilence

- 10** And David's heart smote him after that he had numbered the people. And David said unto the YAHWEH, I have sinned greatly in that I have done: and now, I beseech you, O YAHWEH, take away the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly.
11 For when David was up in the morning, the word of the YAHWEH came unto the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,
12 Go and say unto David, Thus saith the YAHWEH, I offer you three *things*; choose you one of them, that I may *do it* unto you.
13 So Gad came to David, and told him, and said unto him, Shall seven years of famine come unto you in thy land? or will you flee three months before thine enemies, while they pursue you? or that there be three days' pestilence in thy land? now advise, and see what answer I shall return to him that sent me.

14 And David said unto Gad, I am in a great strait: let us fall now into the hand of the YAHWEH; for his mercies *are* great: and let me not fall into the hand of man. [Ps 130:4];

After the death of three score and ten thousand, David by prayer prevents the destruction of Jerusalem

15 So the YAHWEH sent a pestilence upon Israel from the morning even to the time appointed: and there died of the people from Dan even to Beersheba seventy thousand men.

16 And when the angel stretched out his hand upon Jerusalem to destroy it, the YAHWEH repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed the people, It is enough: stay now thine hand. And the angel of the YAHWEH was by the threshingplace of Araunah the Jebusite.

17 And David spoke unto the YAHWEH when he saw the angel that smote the people, and said, Lo, I have sinned, and I have done wickedly: but these sheep, what have they done? let thine hand, I pray you, be against me, and against my father's house.

David, by Elohim's direction, purchases Araunah's threshing floor; where having sacrificed, the plague stays

18 And Gad came that day to David, and said unto him, Go up, rear an altar unto the YAHWEH in the threshingfloor of Araunah the Jebusite.

19 And David, according to the saying of Gad, went up as the YAHWEH commanded.

20 And Araunah looked, and saw the king and his servants coming on toward him: and Araunah went out, and bowed himself before the king on his face upon the ground.

21 And Araunah said, Wherefore is my lord the king come to his servant? And David said, To buy the threshingfloor of you, to build an altar unto the YAHWEH, that the plague may be stayed from the people.

22 And Araunah said unto David, Let my lord the king take and offer up what *seemeth* good unto him: behold, *here be* oxen for burnt sacrifice, and threshing instruments and *other* instruments of the oxen for wood.

23 All these *things* did Araunah, *as* a king, give unto the king. And Araunah said unto the king, The YAHWEH thy Elohim accept you.

24 And the king said unto Araunah, Nay; but I will surely buy *it* of you at a price: neither will I offer burnt offerings unto the YAHWEH my Elohim of that which costs me nothing. So David bought the threshingfloor and the oxen for fifty shekels of silver.

25 And David built there an altar unto the YAHWEH, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. So the YAHWEH was intreated for the land, and the plague was stayed from Israel.

First_Kings

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#)

FIRST KINGS ONE

Abishag cherishes David in his extreme age

- 1** Now king David was old *and* stricken in years; and they covered him with clothes, but he got no heat.
- 2** Wherefore his servants said unto him, Let there be sought for my lord the king a young virgin: and let her stand before the king, and let her cherish him, and let her lie in thy bosom, that my lord the king may get heat.
- 3** So they sought for a fair damsel throughout all the coasts of Israel, and found Abishag a Shunammite, and brought her to the king.
- 4** And the damsel *was* very fair, and cherished the king, and ministered to him: but the king knew her not.

Adonijah, David's darling, usurps the kingdom

- 5** Then Adonijah the son of Haggith exalted himself, saying, I will be king: and he prepared him chariots and horsemen, and fifty men to run before him. [2Sam 15:1](#);
- 6** And his father had not displeased him at any time in saying, Why have you done so? and he also *was a* very goodly *man*; and *his mother* bore him after Absalom. [1Chr 3:2](#);
- 7** And he conferred with Joab the son of Zeruiah, and with Abiathar the priest: and they following Adonijah helped *him*. [1Kgs 2:22](#); [1Kgs 2:28](#);
- 8** But Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and Nathan the prophet, and Shimei, and Rei, and the mighty men which *belonged* to David, were not with Adonijah.
- 9** And Adonijah slew sheep and oxen and fat cattle by the stone of Zoheleth, which *is* by Enrogel, and called all his brethren the king's sons, and all the men of Judah the king's servants: [Josh 15:7](#); [Josh 18:16](#);
- 10** But Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah, and the mighty men, and Solomon his brother, he called not.

By the council of Nathan

- 11** Wherefore Nathan spoke unto Bathsheba the mother of Solomon, saying, have you not heard that Adonijah the son of Haggith reigns, and David our lord knoweth *it* not?
- 12** Now therefore come, let me, I pray you, give you counsel, that you may save thine own life, and the life of thy son Solomon.
- 13** Go and get you in unto king David, and say unto him, Didst not you, my lord, O king, swear unto thine handmaid, saying, Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne? why then does Adonijah reign?
- 14** Behold, while you yet talkest there with the king, I also will come in after you, and confirm thy words.

Bath-sheba moves the king

- 15** And Bathsheba went in unto the king into the chamber: and the king was very old; and Abishag the Shunammite ministered unto the king.
- 16** And Bathsheba bowed, and did obeisance unto the king. And the king said, What wouldest you?
- 17** And she said unto him, My lord, you swore by the YAHWEH thy Elohim unto thine handmaid, *saying*, Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne.
- 18** And now, behold, Adonijah reigneth; and now, my lord the king, you knowest *it* not:

19 And he has slain oxen and fat cattle and sheep in abundance, and has called all the sons of the king, and Abiathar the priest, and Joab the captain of the host: but Solomon thy servant has he not called.

20 And you, my lord, O king, the eyes of all Israel *are* upon you, that you should tell them who shall sit on the throne of my lord the king after him.

21 Otherwise it shall come to pass, when my lord the king shall sleep with his fathers, that I and my son Solomon shall be counted offenders.

and Nathan seconds her

22 And, lo, while she yet talked with the king, Nathan the prophet also came in.

23 And they told the king, saying, Behold Nathan the prophet. And when he was come in before the king, he bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground.

24 And Nathan said, My lord, O king, have you said, Adonijah shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne?

25 For he is gone down this day, and has slain oxen and fat cattle and sheep in abundance, and has called all the king's sons, and the captains of the host, and Abiathar the priest; and, behold, they eat and drink before him, and say, Let King Adonijah live.

26 But me, *even* me thy servant, and Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and thy servant Solomon, has he not called.

27 Is this thing done by my lord the king, and you have not showed *it* unto thy servant, who should sit on the throne of my lord the king after him?

David renews his oath to Bath-sheba

28 Then king David answered and said, Call me Bathsheba. And she came into the king's presence, and stood before the king.

29 And the king sware, and said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, that has redeemed my being out of all distress,

30 Even as I swore unto you by the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, saying, Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne in my stead; even so will I certainly do this day.

31 Then Bathsheba bowed with *her* face to the earth, and did reverence to the king, and said, Let my lord king David live for ever.

Solomon, by David's appointment, being anointed king by Zadok and Nathan, the people triumph

32 And king David said, Call me Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada. And they came before the king.

33 The king also said unto them, Take with you the servants of your lord, and cause Solomon my son to ride upon mine own mule, and bring him down to Gihon:

34 And let Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet anoint him there king over Israel: and blow you with the trumpet, and say, Elohim save king Solomon.

35 Then you shall come up after him, that he may come and sit upon my throne; for he shall be king in my stead: and I have appointed him to be ruler over Israel and over Judah.

36 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada answered the king, and said, Amen: the YAHWEH Elohim of my lord the king say so *too*.

37 As the YAHWEH has been with my lord the king, even so be he with Solomon, and make his throne greater than the throne of my lord king David.

38 So Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, went down, and caused Solomon to ride upon king David's mule, and brought him to Gihon. [2Sam 15:18];

39 And Zadok the priest took a horn of oil out of the tabernacle, and anointed Solomon. And they blew the trumpet; and all the people said, Elohim save king Solomon. 1Sam 20:24;

40 And all the people came up after him, and the people piped with pipes, and rejoiced with great joy, so that the earth rent with the sound of them.

Jonathan bringing the news, Adonijah's guests fly

41 And Adonijah and all the guests that *were* with him heard *it* as they had made an end of eating. And when Joab heard the sound of the trumpet, he said, Wherefore *is this* noise of the city being in an uproar?

42 And while he yet spoke, behold, Jonathan the son of Abiathar the priest came: and Adonijah said unto him, Come in; for you are a valiant man, and bringest good tidings.

43 And Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, Verily our lord king David has made Solomon king.

44 And the king has sent with him Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, and they have caused him to ride upon the king's mule:

45 And Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet have anointed him king in Gihon: and they are come up from thence rejoicing, so that the city rang again. This *is* the noise that you have heard.

46 And also Solomon sitteth on the throne of the kingdom.

47 And moreover the king's servants came to bless our lord king David, saying, Elohim make the name of Solomon better than thy name, and make his throne greater than thy throne. And the king bowed himself upon the bed.

48 And also thus said the king, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, which has given *one* to sit on my throne this day, mine eyes even seeing *it*.

49 And all the guests that *were* with Adonijah were afraid, and rose up, and went every man his way.

Adonijah, flying to the horns of the altar, upon his good behaviour, is dismissed by Solomon

50 And Adonijah feared because of Solomon, and arose, and went, and caught hold on the horns of the altar. [\[1Kgs 2:28\];](#)

51 And it was told Solomon, saying, Behold, Adonijah feareth king Solomon: for, lo, he has caught hold on the horns of the altar, saying, Let king Solomon swear unto me to day that he will not slay his servant with the sword.

52 And Solomon said, If he will show himself a worthy man, there shall not a hair of him fall to the earth: but if wickedness shall be found in him, he shall die. [\[Luke 12:7\]; \[Luke 21:18\];](#)

53 So king Solomon sent, and they brought him down from the altar. And he came and bowed himself to king Solomon: and Solomon said unto him, Go to thine house.

David, having given a charge to Solomon

1 Now the days of David drew nigh that he should die; and he charged Solomon his son, saying,

2 I go the way of all the earth: be you strong therefore, and show thyself a man;

of religiousness

3 And keep the charge of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, to walk in his ways, to keep his statutes, and his commandments, and his judgments, and his testimonies, as it is written in the law of Moses, that you may prosper in all that you do, and whithersoever you turnest thyself: [Deut 17:18](#); [Deut 29:9](#); [Josh 1:7](#);

4 That the YAHWEH may continue his word which he spoke concerning me, saying, If thy children take heed to their way, to walk before me in truth with all their heart and with all their being, there shall not fail you (said he) a man on the throne of Israel. [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:12](#); [\[1Kgs 6:12\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:25\]](#); [\[1Kgs 9:5\]](#); [\[2Chr 6:14\]](#);

of Joab

5 Moreover you knowest also what Joab the son of Zeruiah did to me, *and* what he did to the two captains of the hosts of Israel, unto Abner the son of Ner, and unto Amasa the son of Jether, whom he slew, and shed the blood of war in peace, and put the blood of war upon his girdle that *was* about his loins, and in his shoes that *were* on his feet. [2Sam 3:27](#); [2Sam 20:10](#);

6 Do therefore according to thy wisdom, and let not his hoar head go down to the grave in peace.

of Barzillai

7 But show kindness unto the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them be of those that eat at thy table: for so they came to me when I fled because of Absalom thy brother. [2Sam 17:27](#); [2Sam 19:31](#); [\[2Sam 19:32\]](#);

of Shimei

8 And, behold, you *have* with you Shimei the son of Gera, a Benjamite of Bahurim, which cursed me with a grievous curse in the day when I went to Mahanaim: but he came down to meet me at Jordan, and I swore to him by the YAHWEH, saying, I will not put you to death with the sword. [2Sam 16:5](#); [2Sam 19:19](#); [\[2Sam 19:16\]](#);

9 Now therefore hold him not guiltless: for you are a wise man, and knowest what you oughtest to do unto him; but his hoar head bring you down to the grave with blood.

David dies

10 So David slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David. [Acts 2:29](#); [Acts 13:36](#);

11 And the days that David reigned over Israel *were* forty years: seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem. [1Chr 29:27](#); [\[2Sam 2:11\]](#); [\[2Sam 5:5\]](#);

Solomon succeeds

12 Then sat Solomon upon the throne of David his father; and his kingdom was established greatly. [1Chr 29:23](#); [2Chr 1:1](#);

Adonijah, moving Bath-sheba to sue unto Solomon for Abishag, is put to death

13 And Adonijah the son of Haggith came to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon. And she said, Come you peaceably? And he said, Peaceably.

14 He said moreover, I have somewhat to say unto you. And she said, Say on.

15 And he said, you knowest that the kingdom was mine, and *that* all Israel set their faces on me, that I should reign: howbeit the kingdom is turned about, and is become my brother's: for it was his from the YAHWEH. [1Chr 22:9](#); [1Chr 28:5](#);

16 And now I ask one petition of you, deny me not. And she said unto him, Say on.

17 And he said, Speak, I pray you, unto Solomon the king, (for he will not say you nay,) that he give me Abishag the Shunammite to wife.

18 And Bathsheba said, Well; I will speak for you unto the king.

19 Bathsheba therefore went unto king Solomon, to speak unto him for Adonijah. And the king rose up to meet her, and bowed himself unto her, and sat down on his throne, and caused a seat to be set for the king's mother; and she sat on his right hand.

20 Then she said, I desire one small petition of you; *I pray you*, say me not nay. And the king said unto her, Ask on, my mother: for I will not say you nay.

21 And she said, Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah thy brother to wife.

22 And king Solomon answered and said unto his mother, And why dost you ask Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah? ask for him the kingdom also; for he *is* mine elder brother; even for him, and for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab the son of Zeruiah. [\[1Kgs 1:7\]](#);

23 Then king Solomon swore by the YAHWEH, saying, Elohim do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah have not spoken this word against his own life.

24 Now therefore, *as* the YAHWEH liveth, which has established me, and set me on the throne of David my father, and who has made me a house, as he promised, Adonijah shall be put to death this day. [2Sam 7:12-13](#);

25 And king Solomon sent by the hand of Benaiah the son of Jehoiada; and he fell upon him that he died.

Abiathar, having his life given him, is deprived of the priesthood

26 And unto Abiathar the priest said the king, Get you to Anathoth, unto thine own fields; for you are worthy of death: but I will not at this time put you to death, because you barest the ark of the Lord GOD before David my father, and because you have been afflicted in all wherein my father was afflicted. [1Sam 22:20](#); [2Sam 15:24](#);

27 So Solomon thrust out Abiathar from being priest unto the YAHWEH; that he might fulfil the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke concerning the house of Eli in Shiloh. [1Sam 2:31](#);

Joab fleeing to the horns of the altar, is there slain

28 Then tidings came to Joab: for Joab had turned after Adonijah, though he turned not after Absalom. And Joab fled unto the tabernacle of the YAHWEH, and caught hold on the horns of the altar. [1Kgs 1:50](#); [\[1Kgs 1:7\]](#);

29 And it was told king Solomon that Joab was fled unto the tabernacle of the YAHWEH; and, behold, *he is* by the altar. Then Solomon sent Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, saying, Go, fall upon him.

30 And Benaiah came to the tabernacle of the YAHWEH, and said unto him, Thus saith the king, Come forth. And he said, Nay; but I will die here. And Benaiah brought the king word again, saying, Thus said Joab, and thus he answered me.

31 And the king said unto him, Do as he has said, and fall upon him, and bury him; that you may take away the innocent blood, which Joab shed, from me, and from the house of my father.

32 And the YAHWEH shall return his blood upon his own head, who fell upon two men more righteous and better than he, and slew them with the sword, my father David not knowing *thereof, to wit*, Abner the son of Ner, captain of the host of Israel, and Amasa the son of Jether, captain of the host of Judah.

33 Their blood shall therefore return upon the head of Joab, and upon the head of his seed for ever: but upon David, and upon his seed, and upon his house, and upon his throne, shall there be peace for ever from the YAHWEH.

34 So Benaiah the son of Jehoiada went up, and fell upon him, and slew him: and he was buried in his own house in the wilderness.

Benaiah is put in Joab's room, and Zadok in Abiathar's

35 And the king put Benaiah the son of Jehoiada in his room over the host: and Zadok the priest did the king put in the room of Abiathar. [1Sam 2:35](#);

Shimei, confined to Jerusalem, by occasion of going thence to Gath, is put to death

36 And the king sent and called for Shimei, and said unto him, Build you a house in Jerusalem, and dwell there, and go not forth thence any whither.

37 For it shall be, *that* on the day you go out, and passest over the brook Kidron, you shall know for certain that you shall surely die: thy blood shall be upon thine own head.

38 And Shimei said unto the king, The saying *is* good: as my lord the king has said, so will thy servant do. And Shimei dwelt in Jerusalem many days.

39 And it came to pass at the end of three years, that two of the servants of Shimei ran away unto Achish son of Maachah king of Gath. And they told Shimei, saying, Behold, thy servants *be* in Gath.

40 And Shimei arose, and saddled his ass, and went to Gath to Achish to seek his servants: and Shimei went, and brought his servants from Gath.

41 And it was told Solomon that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath, and was come again.

42 And the king sent and called for Shimei, and said unto him, Did I not make you to swear by the YAHWEH, and protested unto you, saying, Know for a certain, on the day you go out, and walkest abroad any whither, that you shall surely die? and you saidst unto me, The word *that* I have heard *is* good.

43 Why then have you not kept the oath of the YAHWEH, and the commandment that I have charged you with?

44 The king said moreover to Shimei, you knowest all the wickedness which thine heart is privy to, that you didst to David my father: therefore the YAHWEH shall return thy wickedness upon thine own head; [2Sam 16:5-7](#);

45 And king Solomon *shall be* blessed, and the throne of David shall be established before the YAHWEH for ever.

46 So the king commanded Benaiah the son of Jehoiada; which went out, and fell upon him, that he died. And the kingdom was established in the hand of Solomon. [2Chr 1:1](#);

FIRST KINGS THREE

Solomon marries Pharaoh's daughter

1 And Solomon made a treaty by marriage with Pharaoh king of Egypt, and took Pharaoh's daughter, and brought her into the city of David, until he had completed building his own house, and the house of the YAHWEH, and the wall of Jerusalem round about. [1Kgs 7:8](#); [\[2Chr 8:11\]](#);

High places being in use, Solomon sacrifices at Gibeon

2 Only the people sacrificed in high places, because there was no house built unto the name of the YAHWEH, until those days. [Deut 12:5](#);

3 And Solomon loved the YAHWEH, walking in the statutes of David his father: only he sacrificed and burnt incense in high places.

4 And the king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there; for that *was* the great high place: a thousand burnt offerings did Solomon offer upon that altar. [2Chr 1:3](#);

Solomon at Gibeon, in the choice which Elohim gave him, preferring wisdom, obtains wisdom, riches, and honour

5 In Gibeon the YAHWEH appeared to Solomon in a dream by night: and Elohim said, Ask what I shall give you. [1Kgs 9:2](#); [\[1Kgs 11:9\]](#);

6 And Solomon said, you have showed unto thy servant David my father great mercy, according as he walked before you in truth, and in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart with you; and you have kept for him this great kindness, that you have given him a son to sit on his throne, as *it is* this day.

7 And now, O YAHWEH my Elohim, you have made thy servant king instead of David my father: and I *am but* a little child: I know not *how* to go out or come in. [2Chr 2:8](#); [\[2Chr 1:9\]](#);

8 And thy servant *is* in the midst of thy people which you have chosen, a great people, that cannot be numbered nor counted for multitude. [2Chr 1:9](#);

9 Give therefore thy servant an understanding heart to judge thy people, that I may discern between good and bad: for who is able to judge this thy so great a people? [\[2Chr 1:10\]](#); [\[Prov 2:6\]](#);

10 And the speech pleased the Lord, that Solomon had asked this thing.

11 And Elohim said unto him, Because you have asked this thing, and have not asked for thyself long life; neither have asked riches for thyself, nor have asked the life of thine enemies; but have asked for thyself understanding to discern judgment; [2Chr 1:11](#); [\[2Chr 1:10\]](#);

12 Behold, I have done according to thy words: lo, I have given you a wise and an understanding heart; so that there was none like you before you, neither after you shall any arise like unto you. [Ecd 1:16](#); [\[1Kgs 5:12\]](#); [\[1Kgs 10:23\]](#); [\[Prov 2:6\]](#);

13 And I have also given you that which you have not asked, both riches, and honour: so that there shall not be any among the kings like unto you all thy days. [Matt 6:33](#); [Eph 3:20](#); [\[2Chr 1:12\]](#); [\[Neh 13:26\]](#);

14 And if you will walk in my ways, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days.

15 And Solomon awoke; and, behold, *it was* a dream. And he came to Jerusalem, and stood before the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, and offered up burnt offerings, and offered peace offerings, and made a feast to all his servants.

Solomon's judgment makes him renowned

16 Then came there two women, *that were* harlots, unto the king, and stood before him.

17 And the one woman said, O my lord, I and this woman dwell in one house; and I was delivered of a child with her in the house.

18 And it came to pass the third day after that I was delivered, that this woman was delivered also: and we *were* together; *there was* no stranger with us in the house, save we two in the house.

19 And this woman's child died in the night; because she overlaid it.

20 And she arose at midnight, and took my son from beside me, while thine handmaid slept, and laid it in her bosom, and laid her dead child in my bosom.

21 And when I rose in the morning to give my child suck, behold, it was dead: but when I had considered it in the morning, behold, it was not my son, which I did bear.

22 And the other woman said, Nay; but the living *is* my son, and the dead *is* thy son. And this said, No; but the dead *is* thy son, and the living *is* my son. Thus they spoke before the king.

23 Then said the king, The one saith, This *is* my son that liveth, and thy son *is* the dead: and the other saith, Nay; but thy son *is* the dead, and my son *is* the living.

24 And the king said, Bring me a sword. And they brought a sword before the king.

- 25** And the king said, Divide the living child in two, and give half to the one, and half to the other.
- 26** Then spoke the woman whose the living child *was* unto the king, for her bowels yearned upon her son, and she said, O my lord, give her the living child, and in no wise slay it. But the other said, Let it be neither mine nor thine, *but* divide *it*.
- 27** Then the king answered and said, Give her the living child, and in no wise slay it: she *is* the mother thereof.
- 28** And all Israel heard of the judgment which the king had judged; and they feared the king: for they saw that the wisdom of Elohim *was* in him, to do judgment.

FIRST KINGS FOUR

Solomon's princes

- 1** So king Solomon was king over all Israel.
- 2** And these *were* the princes which he had; Azariah the son of Zadok the priest,
- 3** Elihoreph and Ahiah, the sons of Shisha, scribes; Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud, the recorder.
- 4** And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada *was* over the host: and Zadok and Abiathar *were* the priests:
- 5** And Azariah the son of Nathan *was* over the officers: and Zabud the son of Nathan *was* principal officer, *and* the king's friend:
- 6** And Ahishar *was* over the household: and Adoniram the son of Abda *was* over the tribute. [1Kgs 5:14](#); [1Kgs 12:18](#);

His twelve officers for provision

- 7** And Solomon had twelve officers over all Israel, which provided victuals for the king and his household: each man his month in a year made provision.
- 8** And these *are* their names: The son of Hur, in mount Ephraim:
- 9** The son of Dekar, in Makaz, and in Shaalbim, and Bethshemesh, and Elonbethhanan:
- 10** The son of Hesei, in Aruboth; to him *pertained* Sochoh, and all the land of Hephher:
- 11** The son of Abinadab, in all the region of Dor; which had Taphas the daughter of Solomon to wife:
- 12** Baana the son of Ahilud; *to him pertained* Taanach and Megiddo, and all Bethshean, which *is* by Zartanah beneath Jezreel, from Bethshean to Abelmeholah, *even* unto *the place that is* beyond Jokneam:
- 13** The son of Geber, in Ramothgilead; to him *pertained* the towns of Jair the son of Manasseh, which *are* in Gilead; to him *also pertained* the region of Argob, which *is* in Bashan, threescore great cities with walls and brasen bars:
- 14** Ahinadab the son of Iddo *had* Mahanaim:
- 15** Ahimaaz *was* in Naphtali; he also took Basmath the daughter of Solomon to wife:
- 16** Baanah the son of Hushai *was* in Asher and in Aloth:
- 17** Jehoshaphat the son of Paruah, in Issachar:
- 18** Shimei the son of Elah, in Benjamin:
- 19** Geber the son of Uri *was* in the country of Gilead, *in* the country of Sihon king of the Amorites, and of Og king of Bashan; and *he was* the only officer which *was* in the land.

The peace and largeness of his kingdom

- 20** Judah and Israel *were* many, as the sand which *is* by the sea in multitude, eating and drinking, and making merry.
- 21** And Solomon reigned over all kingdoms from the river unto the land of the Philistines, and unto the border of Egypt: they brought presents, and served Solomon all the days of his life.

His daily provision

22 And Solomon's provision for one day was thirty measures of fine flour, and threescore measures of meal,

23 Ten fat oxen, and twenty oxen out of the pastures, and a hundred sheep, beside harts, and roebucks, and fallowdeer, and fatted fowl.

24 For he had dominion over all *the region* on this side the river, from Tiphsah even to Azzah, over all the kings on this side the river: and he had peace on all sides round about him.

25 And Judah and Israel dwelt safely, every man under his vine and under his fig tree, from Dan even to Beersheba, all the days of Solomon. [Lev 26:5](#); [\[Mic 4:4\]](#);

His stables

26 And Solomon had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen. [1Kgs 10:26](#); [2Chr 1:14](#); [2Chr 9:25](#);

27 And those officers provided victual for king Solomon, and for all that came unto king Solomon's table, every man in his month: they lacked nothing.

28 Barley also and straw for the horses and dromedaries brought they unto the place where *the officers* were, every man according to his charge.

His wisdom

29 And Elohim gave Solomon wisdom and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that *is* on the sea shore.

30 And Solomon's wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east country, and all the wisdom of Egypt.

31 For he was wiser than all men; than Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Chalcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol: and his fame was in all nations round about.

32 And he spoke three thousand proverbs: and his songs were a thousand and five. [\[Eccl 12:9\]](#);

33 And he spoke of trees, from the cedar tree that *is* in Lebanon even unto the hyssop that springeth out of the wall: he spoke also of beasts, and of fowl, and of creeping things, and of fishes.

34 And there came of all people to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from all kings of the earth, which had heard of his wisdom.

FIRST KINGS FIVE

Hiram, sending to congratulate Solomon, is desired to furnish him with timber to build the temple

1 And Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants unto Solomon; for he had heard that they had anointed him king in the room of his father: for Hiram was ever a lover of David. [2Sam 5:11](#); [1Chr 14:1](#);

2 And Solomon sent to Hiram, saying, [\[2Chr 2:3\]](#);

3 You knowest how that David my father could not build a house unto the name of the YAHWEH his Elohim for the wars which were about him on every side, until the YAHWEH put them under the soles of his feet. [1Chr 28:3](#);

4 But now the YAHWEH my Elohim has given me rest on every side, *so that there is* neither adversary nor evil occurrent.

5 And, behold, I purpose to build a house unto the name of the YAHWEH my Elohim, as the YAHWEH spoke unto David my father, saying, Thy son, whom I will set upon thy throne in thy room, he shall build a house unto my name. [2Chr 2:1](#); [2Sam 7:13](#); [1Chr 22:10](#); [\[1Chr 17:12\]](#);

6 Now therefore command you that they hew me cedar trees out of Lebanon; and my servants shall be with thy servants: and unto you will I give hire for thy servants according to all that you shall appoint: for you knowest that *there is* not among us any that can skill to hew timber like unto the Sidonians.

Hiram, blessing Elohim for Solomon, and requesting food for his family, furnishes him with trees

7 And it came to pass, when Hiram heard the words of Solomon, that he rejoiced greatly, and said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH this day, which has given unto David a wise son over this great people.

8 And Hiram sent to Solomon, saying, I have considered the things which you sentest to me for: *and* I will do all thy desire concerning timber of cedar, and concerning timber of fir.

9 My servants shall bring *them* down from Lebanon unto the sea: and I will convey them by sea in floats unto the place that you shall appoint me, and will cause them to be discharged there, and you shall receive *them*: and you shall accomplish my desire, in giving food for my household.

10 So Hiram gave Solomon cedar trees and fir trees *according to* all his desire.

11 And Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand measures of wheat *for* food to his household, and twenty measures of pure oil: thus gave Solomon to Hiram year by year.

12 And the YAHWEH gave Solomon wisdom, as he promised him: and there was peace between Hiram and Solomon; and they two made a league together. [1Kgs 3:12](#);

The number of Solomon's workmen and labourers

13 And king Solomon raised a levy out of all Israel; and the levy was thirty thousand men.

14 And he sent them to Lebanon, ten thousand a month by courses: a month they were in Lebanon, *and* two months at home: and Adoniram *was* over the levy. [\[1Kgs 4:6\]](#); [\[1Kgs 12:18\]](#);

15 And Solomon had threescore and ten thousand that bore burdens, and fourscore thousand hewers in the mountains; [\[2Chr 2:17\]](#);

16 Beside the chief of Solomon's officers which *were* over the work, three thousand and three hundred, which ruled over the people that wrought in the work. [\[2Chr 2:2\]](#);

17 And the king commanded, and they brought great stones, costly stones, *and* hewed stones, to lay the foundation of the house.

18 And Solomon's builders and Hiram's builders did hew *them*, and the stonesquarers: so they prepared timber and stones to build the house.

FIRST KINGS SIX

The building of Solomon's temple

1 And it came to pass in the four hundred and eightieth year after the children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month Zif, which *is* the second month, that he began to build the house of the YAHWEH. [2Chr 3:2](#); [Acts 7:47](#);

2 And the house which king Solomon built for the YAHWEH, the length thereof *was* threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty *cubits*, and the height thereof thirty cubits.

3 And the porch before the temple of the house, twenty cubits *was* the length thereof, according to the breadth of the house; *and* ten cubits *was* the breadth thereof before the house. [John 10:23](#); [Acts 3:11](#); [Acts 5:12](#);

4 And for the house he made windows of narrow lights.

The chambers thereof

5 And against the wall of the house he built chambers round about, *against* the walls of the house round about, *both* of the temple and of the oracle: and he made chambers round about:

6 The nethermost chamber *was* five cubits broad, and the middle *was* six cubits broad, and the third *was* seven cubits broad: for without *in the wall* of the house he made narrowed rests round about, that *the beams* should not be fastened in the walls of the house.

7 And the house, when it was in building, was built of stone made ready before it was brought thither: so that there was neither hammer nor axe *nor* any tool of iron heard in the house, while it was in building.

8 The door for the middle chamber *was* in the right side of the house: and they went up with winding stairs into the middle *chamber*, and out of the middle into the third.

9 So he built the house, and finished it; and covered the house with beams and boards of cedar.

10 And *then* he built chambers against all the house, five cubits high: and they rested on the house *with* timber of cedar.

Elohim's promise unto it

11 And the word of the YAHWEH came to Solomon, saying,

12 *Concerning* this house which you are in building, if you will walk in my statutes, and execute my judgments, and keep all my commandments to walk in them; then will I perform my word with you, which I spoke unto David thy father: [1Kgs 2:4](#); [1Kgs 9:4](#); [2Sam 7:13](#); [1Chr 22:10](#); [1Chr 22:19](#); [[1Kgs 9:5](#)]; [[1Kgs 11:10](#)]; [[1Chr 17:12](#)];

13 And I will dwell among the children of Israel, and will not forsake my people Israel.

14 So Solomon built the house, and finished it.

The ceiling and adorning of it

15 And he built the walls of the house within with boards of cedar, both the floor of the house, and the walls of the ceiling: *and* he covered *them* on the inside with wood, and covered the floor of the house with planks of fir.

16 And he built twenty cubits on the sides of the house, both the floor and the walls with boards of cedar: he even built *them* for it within, *even* for the oracle, *even* for the most holy *place*.

17 And the house, that *is*, the temple before it, was forty cubits *long*.

18 And the cedar of the house within *was* carved with knops and open flowers: all *was* cedar; there was no stone seen.

19 And the oracle he prepared in the house within, to set there the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH.

20 And the oracle in the forepart *was* twenty cubits in length, and twenty cubits in breadth, and twenty cubits in the height thereof: and he overlaid it with pure gold; and *so* covered the altar *which was of* cedar.

21 So Solomon overlaid the house within with pure gold: and he made a partition by the chains of gold before the oracle; and he overlaid it with gold.

22 And the whole house he overlaid with gold, until he had finished all the house: also the whole altar that *was* by the oracle he overlaid with gold.

The cherubims

23 And within the oracle he made two cherubims *of* olive tree, *each* ten cubits high. [Exod 25:18](#);

24 And five cubits *was* the one wing of the cherub, and five cubits the other wing of the cherub: from the uttermost part of the one wing unto the uttermost part of the other *were* ten cubits.

25 And the other cherub *was* ten cubits: both the cherubims *were* of one measure and one size.

26 The height of the one cherub *was* ten cubits, and so *was it* of the other cherub.

27 And he set the cherubims within the inner house: and they stretched forth the wings of the cherubims, so that the wing of the one touched the *one* wall, and the wing of the other cherub touched the other wall; and their wings touched one another in the midst of the house. [Exod 25:20](#);

28 And he overlaid the cherubims with gold.

29 And he carved all the walls of the house round about with carved figures of cherubims and palm trees and open flowers, within and without.

30 And the floor of the house he overlaid with gold, within and without.

The doors

31 And for the entering of the oracle he made doors *of* olive tree: the lintel *and* side posts *were* a fifth part *of the wall*.

32 The two doors also *were of* olive tree; and he carved upon them carvings of cherubims and palm trees and open flowers, and overlaid *them* with gold, and spread gold upon the cherubims, and upon the palm trees.

33 So also made he for the door of the temple posts *of* olive tree, a fourth part *of the wall*.

34 And the two doors *were of* fir tree: the two leaves of the one door *were* folding, and the two leaves of the other door *were* folding.

35 And he carved *thereon* cherubims and palm trees and open flowers: and covered *them* with gold fitted upon the carved work.

The court

36 And he built the inner court with three rows of hewed stone, and a row of cedar beams.

The time of building it

37 In the fourth year was the foundation of the house of the YAHWEH laid, in the month Zif:

38 And in the eleventh year, in the month Bul, which *is* the eighth month, was the house finished throughout all the parts thereof, and according to all the fashion of it. So was he seven years in building it.

FIRST KINGS SEVEN

The building of Solomon's house

1 But Solomon was building his own house thirteen years, and he finished all his house. [1Kgs 9:10](#);

Of the house of Lebanon

2 He built also the house of the forest of Lebanon; the length thereof *was* a hundred cubits, and the breadth thereof fifty cubits, and the height thereof thirty cubits, upon four rows of cedar pillars, with cedar beams upon the pillars. [\[1Kgs 10:17\]](#);

3 And *it was* covered with cedar above upon the beams, that *lay* on forty five pillars, fifteen *in* a row.

4 And *there were* windows *in* three rows, and light *was* against light *in* three ranks.

5 And all the doors and posts *were* square, with the windows: and light *was* against light *in* three ranks.

Of the porch of pillars

6 And he made a porch of pillars; the length thereof *was* fifty cubits, and the breadth thereof thirty cubits: and the porch *was* before them: and the *other* pillars and the thick beam *were* before them.

Of the porch of judgment

7 Then he made a porch for the throne where he might judge, *even* the porch of judgment: and *it was* covered with cedar from one side of the floor to the other.

Of the house for Pharaoh's daughter

8 And his house where he dwelt *had* another court within the porch, *which* was of the like work. Solomon made also a house for Pharaoh's daughter, whom he had taken *to wife*, like unto this porch. [1Kgs 3:1](#); [\[2Chr 8:11\]](#);

9 All these *were of* costly stones, according to the measures of hewed stones, sawed with saws, within and without, even from the foundation unto the coping, and *so* on the outside toward the great court.

10 And the foundation *was of* costly stones, even great stones, stones of ten cubits, and stones of eight cubits.

11 And above *were* costly stones, after the measures of hewed stones, and cedars.

12 And the great court round about *was* with three rows of hewed stones, and a row of cedar beams, both for the inner court of the house of the YAHWEH, and for the porch of the house.

Hiram's work of the two pillars

13 And king Solomon sent and fetched Hiram out of Tyre. [2Chr 2:13](#);

14 He *was* a widow's son of the tribe of Naphtali, and his father *was* a man of Tyre, a worker in brass: and he was filled with wisdom, and understanding, and cunning to work all works in brass. And he came to king Solomon, and wrought all his work. [Exod 31:3](#);

15 For he cast two pillars of brass, of eighteen cubits high apiece: and a line of twelve cubits did compass either of them about. [2Kgs 25:16-17](#); [Jer 52:21](#); [\[2Kgs 25:17\]](#); [\[2Chr 3:15\]](#);

16 And he made two chapiters *of* molten brass, to set upon the tops of the pillars: the height of the one chapter *was* five cubits, and the height of the other chapter *was* five cubits:

17 *And* nets of checker work, and wreaths of chain work, for the chapiters which *were* upon the top of the pillars; seven for the one chapter, and seven for the other chapter.

18 And he made the pillars, and two rows round about upon the one network, to cover the chapiters that *were* upon the top, with pomegranates: and so did he for the other chapter.

19 And the chapiters that *were* upon the top of the pillars *were* of lily work in the porch, four cubits.

20 And the chapiters upon the two pillars *had pomegranates* also above, over against the belly which *was* by the network: and the pomegranates *were* two hundred in rows round about upon the other chapter.

21 And he set up the pillars in the porch of the temple: and he set up the right pillar, and called the name thereof Jachin: and he set up the left pillar, and called the name thereof Boaz. [\[Rev 3:12\]](#);

22 And upon the top of the pillars *was* lily work: so was the work of the pillars finished.

Of the molten sea

23 And he made a molten sea, ten cubits from the one brim to the other: *it was* round all about, and his height *was* five cubits: and a line of thirty cubits did compass it round about. [2Chr 4:2](#); [Jer 52:20](#); [\[2Kgs 16:17\]](#);

24 And under the brim of it round about *there were* knops compassing it, ten in a cubit, compassing the sea round about: the knops *were* cast in two rows, when it was cast. [2Chr 4:3](#);

25 It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east: and the sea *was set* above upon them, and all their hinder parts *were* inward.

26 And it *was* a hand breadth thick, and the brim thereof was wrought like the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies: it contained two thousand baths.

Of the ten bases

27 And he made ten bases of brass; four cubits *was* the length of one base, and four cubits the breadth thereof, and three cubits the height of it.

28 And the work of the bases *was* on this *manner*: they had borders, and the borders *were* between the ledges:

29 And on the borders that *were* between the ledges *were* lions, oxen, and cherubims: and upon the ledges *there was* a base above: and beneath the lions and oxen *were* certain additions made of thin work.

30 And every base had four brasen wheels, and plates of brass: and the four corners thereof had undersetters: under the laver *were* undersetters molten, at the side of every addition.

31 And the mouth of it within the chapter and above *was* a cubit: but the mouth thereof *was* round *after* the work of the base, a cubit and a half: and also upon the mouth of it *were* gravings with their borders, foursquare, not round.

32 And under the borders *were* four wheels; and the axletrees of the wheels *were joined* to the base: and the height of a wheel *was* a cubit and half a cubit.

33 And the work of the wheels *was* like the work of a chariot wheel: their axletrees, and their naves, and their felloes, and their spokes, *were* all molten.

34 And *there were* four undersetters to the four corners of one base: *and* the undersetters *were* of the very base itself.

35 And in the top of the base *was there* a round compass of half a cubit high: and on the top of the base the ledges thereof and the borders thereof *were* of the same.

36 For on the plates of the ledges thereof, and on the borders thereof, he graved cherubims, lions, and palm trees, according to the proportion of every one, and additions round about.

37 After this *manner* he made the ten bases: all of them had one casting, one measure, *and* one size.

Of the ten lavers

38 Then made he ten lavers of brass: one laver contained forty baths: *and* every laver was four cubits: *and* upon every one of the ten bases one laver. [2Chr 4:6](#);

39 And he put five bases on the right side of the house, and five on the left side of the house: and he set the sea on the right side of the house eastward over against the south.

and all the vessels

40 And Hiram made the lavers, and the shovels, and the basins. So Hiram made an end of doing all the work that he made king Solomon for the house of the YAHWEH:

41 The two pillars, and the *two* bowls of the chapters that *were* on the top of the two pillars; and the two networks, to cover the two bowls of the chapters which *were* upon the top of the pillars;

42 And four hundred pomegranates for the two networks, *even* two rows of pomegranates for one network, to cover the two bowls of the chapters that *were* upon the pillars;

43 And the ten bases, and ten lavers on the bases;

44 And one sea, and twelve oxen under the sea;

45 And the pots, and the shovels, and the basins: and all these vessels, which Hiram made to king Solomon for the house of the YAHWEH, *were of* bright brass.

46 In the plain of Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarthan.

47 And Solomon left all the vessels *unweighed*, because they were exceeding many: neither was the weight of the brass found out.

48 And Solomon made all the vessels that *pertained* unto the house of the YAHWEH: the altar of gold, and the table of gold, whereupon the showbread *was*, [Exod 30:1](#); [Exod 25:23](#); [\[2Chr 4:7\]](#); [\[2Chr 4:19\]](#);

49 And the candlesticks of pure gold, five on the right *side*, and five on the left, before the oracle, with the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs *of* gold,

50 And the bowls, and the snuffers, and the basins, and the spoons, and the censers *of* pure gold; and the hinges *of* gold, *both* for the doors of the inner house, the most holy *place*, *and* for the doors of the house, *to wit*, of the temple.

51 So was ended all the work that king Solomon made for the house of the YAHWEH. And Solomon brought in the things which David his father had dedicated; *even* the silver, and the gold, and the vessels, did he put among the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH. [2Sam 8:7](#); [2Sam 8:11](#); [2Chr 5:1](#);

The feast of the dedication of the temple

- 1** Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the chief of the fathers of the children of Israel, unto king Solomon in Jerusalem, that they might bring up the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH out of the city of David, which *is* Zion. [2Chr 5:2](#); [2Sam 5:9](#); [2Sam 6:12](#); [2Sam 6:17](#);
- 2** And all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto king Solomon at the feast in the month Ethanim, which *is* the seventh month.
- 3** And all the elders of Israel came, and the priests took up the ark.
- 4** And they brought up the ark of the YAHWEH, and the tabernacle of the congregation, and all the holy vessels that *were* in the tabernacle, even those did the priests and the Levites bring up.
- 5** And king Solomon, and all the congregation of Israel, that were assembled unto him, *were* with him before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen, that could not be told nor numbered for multitude.
- 6** And the priests brought in the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH unto his place, into the oracle of the house, to the most holy *place*, *even* under the wings of the cherubims.
- 7** For the cherubims spread forth *their* two wings over the place of the ark, and the cherubims covered the ark and the staves thereof above.
- 8** And they drew out the staves, that the ends of the staves were seen out in the holy *place* before the oracle, and they were not seen without: and there they are unto this day. [\[Exod 25:15\]](#);
- 9** *There was* nothing in the ark save the two tables of stone, which Moses put there at Horeb, when the YAHWEH made *a covenant* with the children of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt. [Exod 34:27](#); [\[Heb 9:4\]](#);
- 10** And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the holy *place*, that the cloud filled the house of the YAHWEH, [\[Exod 40:34\]](#); [\[2Chr 7:1\]](#); [\[Rev 15:8\]](#);
- 11** So that the priests could not stand to minister because of the cloud: for the glory of the YAHWEH had filled the house of the YAHWEH. [Exod 40:34-35](#); [2Chr 7:2](#);

Solomon's blessing

- 12** Then spoke Solomon, The YAHWEH said that he would dwell in the thick darkness. [Exod 20:21](#); [Lev 16:2](#); [Deut 4:11](#); [Deut 5:22](#); [2Chr 6:1](#);
- 13** I have surely built you a house to dwell in, a settled place for you to abide in for ever. [\[Matt 23:21\]](#);
- 14** And the king turned his face about, and blessed all the congregation of Israel: (and all the congregation of Israel stood;) [\[2Chr 6:3\]](#);
- 15** And he said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, which spoke with his mouth unto David my father, and has with his hand fulfilled *it*, saying,
- 16** Since the day that I brought forth my people Israel out of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel to build a house, that my name might be therein; but I chose David to be over my people Israel. [2Sam 7:6](#); [2Chr 6:5](#); [\[2Kgs 21:7\]](#);
- 17** And it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel. [2Sam 7:2](#); [1Chr 17:1](#); [2Chr 6:7](#);
- 18** And the YAHWEH said unto David my father, Whereas it was in thine heart to build a house unto my name, you didst well that it was in thine heart.
- 19** Nevertheless you shall not build the house; but thy son that shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the house unto my name.
- 20** And the YAHWEH has performed his word that he spoke, and I am risen up in the room of David my father, and sit on the throne of Israel, as the YAHWEH promised, and have built a house for the name of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel. [\[2Sam 7:12\]](#);
- 21** And I have set there a place for the ark, wherein *is* the covenant of the YAHWEH, which he made with our fathers, when he brought them out of the land of Egypt. [\[2Cor 6:14\]](#);

Solomon's prayer

22 And Solomon stood before the altar of the YAHWEH in the presence of all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven: [2Chr 6:12](#);

23 And he said, YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, *there is* no Elohim like you, in heaven above, or on earth beneath, who keepest covenant and mercy with thy servants that walk before you with all their heart: [\[1Chr 17:20\]](#);

24 Who have kept with thy servant David my father that you promisedst him: you spokest also with thy mouth, and have fulfilled *it* with thine hand, as *it is* this day.

25 Therefore now, YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that you promisedst him, saying, There shall not fail you a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel; so that thy children take heed to their way, that they walk before me as you have walked before me. [2Sam 7:12](#); [2Sam 7:16](#); [1Kgs 2:4](#); [Ps 132:12](#); [\[Ps 132:11\]](#);

26 And now, O Elohim of Israel, let thy word, I pray you, be verified, which you spokest unto thy servant David my father.

27 But will Elohim indeed dwell on the earth? behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain you; how much less this house that I have built? [2Chr 2:6](#); [Isa 66:1](#); [Jer 23:24](#); [Acts 7:49](#); [\[2Chr 6:18\]](#); [\[Acts 7:48\]](#);

28 *yet* have you respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O YAHWEH my Elohim, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer, which thy servant prayeth before you to day:

29 That thine eyes may be open toward this house night and day, *even* toward the place of which you have said, My name shall be there: that you may hearken unto the prayer which thy servant shall make toward this place. [Deut 12:11](#); [\[1Kgs 9:3\]](#); [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#); [\[2Kgs 21:7\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#); [\[Matt 21:13\]](#); [\[Mark 11:17\]](#); [\[Luke 19:46\]](#);

30 And hearken you to the supplication of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place: and hear you in heaven thy dwelling place: and when you hearest, forgive.

31 If any man trespass against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and the oath come before thine altar in this house: [\[2Chr 6:22\]](#);

32 Then hear you in heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, condemning the wicked, to bring his way upon his head; and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness.

33 When thy people Israel be smitten down before the enemy, because they have sinned against you, and shall turn again to you, and confess thy name, and pray, and make supplication unto you in this house: [\[2Chr 6:24\]](#); [\[2Chr 20:9\]](#);

34 Then hear you in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which you gave unto their fathers.

35 When heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against you; if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, when you afflictest them: [\[2Chr 6:26\]](#);

36 Then hear you in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, that you teach them the good way wherein they should walk, and give rain upon thy land, which you have given to thy people for an inheritance.

37 If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, blasting, mildew, locust, *or* if there be caterpillar; if their enemy besiege them in the land of their cities; whatsoever plague, whatsoever sickness *there be*;

38 What prayer and supplication soever be *made* by any man, *or* by all thy people Israel, which shall know every man the plague of his own heart, and spread forth his hands toward this house: [\[2Chr 6:29\]](#);

39 Then hear you in heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man according to his ways, whose heart you knowest; (for you, *even* you only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;)

40 That they may fear you all the days that they live in the land which you gave unto our fathers.

41 Moreover concerning a stranger, that *is* not of thy people Israel, but cometh out of a far country for thy name's sake; [\[2Chr 6:32\]](#);

42 (For they shall hear of thy great name, and of thy strong hand, and of thy stretched out arm;) when he shall come and pray toward this house;

43 Hear you in heaven thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to you for: that all people of the earth may know thy name, to fear you, as *do* thy people Israel; and that they may know that this house, which I have built, is called by thy name.

44 If thy people go out to battle against their enemy, whithersoever you shall send them, and shall pray unto the YAHWEH toward the city which you have chosen, and *toward* the house that I have built for thy name: [2Chr 6:34]; [Dan 6:10];

45 Then hear you in heaven their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their cause.

46 If they sin against you, (for *there is* no man that sinneth not,) and you be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so that they carry them away captives unto the land of the enemy, far or near; 2Chr 6:36; Prov 20:9; Eccl 7:20; 1John 1:8; 1John 1:10; [Job 15:14];

47 Yet if they shall come to their senses in the land whither they were carried captives, and repent, and make supplication unto you in the land of them that carried them captives, saying, We have sinned, and have done perversely, we have committed wickedness;

48 And *so* return unto you with all their heart, and with all their being, in the land of their enemies, which led them away captive, and pray unto you toward their land, which you gave unto their fathers, the city which you have chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name:

49 Then hear you their prayer and their supplication in heaven thy dwelling place, and maintain their cause,

50 And forgive thy people that have sinned against you, and all their transgressions wherein they have transgressed against you, and give them compassion before them who carried them captive, that they may have compassion on them:

51 For they *be* thy people, and thine inheritance, which you broughtest forth out of Egypt, from the midst of the furnace of iron:

52 That thine eyes may be open unto the supplication of thy servant, and unto the supplication of thy people Israel, to hearken unto them in all that they call for unto you.

53 For you didst separate them from among all the people of the earth, *to be* thine inheritance, as you spoked by the hand of Moses thy servant, when you broughtest our fathers out of Egypt, O Lord GOD. Exod 19:5; Deut 4:20; Deut 7:6; Deut 9:26; Deut 9:29; Deut 14:2;

Solomon's blessing

54 And it was *so*, that when Solomon had made an end of praying all this prayer and supplication unto the YAHWEH, he arose from before the altar of the YAHWEH, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread up to heaven.

55 And he stood, and blessed all the congregation of Israel with a loud voice, saying,

56 Blessed *be* the YAHWEH, that has given rest unto his people Israel, according to all that he promised: there has not failed one word of all his good promise, which he promised by the hand of Moses his servant. Josh 21:45;

57 The YAHWEH our Elohim be with us, as he was with our fathers: let him not leave us, nor forsake us:

58 That he may incline our hearts unto him, to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments, and his statutes, and his judgments, which he commanded our fathers.

59 And let these my words, wherewith I have made supplication before the YAHWEH, be nigh unto the YAHWEH our Elohim day and night, that he maintain the cause of his servant, and the cause of his people Israel at all times, as the matter shall require:

60 That all the people of the earth may know that the YAHWEH *is* Elohim, *and that there is* none else. Deut 4:35; Deut 4:39; [1Chr 17:20];

61 Let your heart therefore be perfect with the YAHWEH our Elohim, to walk in his statutes, and to keep his commandments, as at this day.

His sacrifice of peace offerings

62 And the king, and all Israel with him, offered sacrifice before the YAHWEH.

63 And Solomon offered a sacrifice of peace offerings, which he offered unto the YAHWEH, two and twenty thousand oxen, and a hundred and twenty thousand sheep. So the king and all the children of Israel dedicated the house of the YAHWEH. [2Chr 7:5](#);

64 The same day did the king hallow the middle of the court that *was* before the house of the YAHWEH: for there he offered burnt offerings, and meat offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings: because the brasen altar that *was* before the YAHWEH *was* too little to receive the burnt offerings, and meat offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings. [2Chr 7:7](#);

65 And at that time Solomon held a feast, and all Israel with him, a great congregation, from the entering in of Hamath unto the river of Egypt, before the YAHWEH our Elohim, seven days and seven days, *even* fourteen days. [\[2Chr 7:9\]](#);

66 On the eighth day he sent the people away: and they blessed the king, and went unto their tents joyful and glad of heart for all the goodness that the YAHWEH had done for David his servant, and for Israel his people. [\[2Chr 7:10\]](#);

FIRST KINGS NINE

Elohim's covenant in a vision with Solomon

1 And it came to pass, when Solomon had finished the building of the house of the YAHWEH, and the king's house, and all Solomon's desire which he was pleased to do, [2Chr 7:11](#); [\[2Chr 8:6\]](#);

2 That the YAHWEH appeared to Solomon the second time, as he had appeared unto him at Gibeon. [1Kgs 3:5](#); [\[1Kgs 11:9\]](#);

3 And the YAHWEH said unto him, I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication, that you have made before me: I have hallowed this house, which you have built, to put my name there for ever; and mine eyes and mine heart shall be there perpetually. [Deut 12:11](#); [1Kgs 8:29](#); [\[2Kgs 21:7\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#); [\[John 4:20\]](#);

4 And if you will walk before me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart, and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded you, *and* will keep my statutes and my judgments: [\[1Kgs 6:12\]](#);

5 Then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom upon Israel for ever, as I promised to David thy father, saying, There shall not fail you a man upon the throne of Israel. [2Sam 7:12](#); [2Sam 7:16](#); [1Kgs 6:12](#); [1Chr 22:10](#); [Ps 132:12](#); [1Kgs 2:4](#);

6 *But* if you shall at all turn from following me, you or your children, and will not keep my commandments *and* my statutes which I have set before you, but go and serve other gods, and worship them: [2Sam 7:14](#); [Ps 89:29-30](#);

7 Then will I cut off Israel out of the land which I have given them; and this house, which I have hallowed for my name, will I cast out of my sight; and Israel shall be a proverb and a byword among all people: [Jer 7:15](#); [Deut 28:37](#); [\[Jer 24:9\]](#); [\[Matt 24:2\]](#); [\[Mark 13:2\]](#); [\[Luke 19:44\]](#); [\[Luke 21:6\]](#);

8 And at this house, *which* is high, every one that passeth by it shall be astonished, and shall hiss; and they shall say, Why has the YAHWEH done thus unto this land, and to this house? [2Chr 7:21](#); [Deut 29:24](#); [Jer 22:8](#);

9 And they shall answer, Because they forsook the YAHWEH their Elohim, who brought forth their fathers out of the land of Egypt, and have taken hold upon other gods, and have worshipped them, and served them: therefore has the YAHWEH brought upon them all this evil.

The mutual presents of Solomon and Hiram

10 And it came to pass at the end of twenty years, when Solomon had built the two houses, the house of the YAHWEH, and the king's house, [2Chr 8:1](#); [\[1Kgs 7:1\]](#);

11 (*Now* Hiram the king of Tyre had furnished Solomon with cedar trees and fir trees, and with gold, according to all his desire,) that then king Solomon gave Hiram twenty cities in the land of Galilee.

12 And Hiram came out from Tyre to see the cities which Solomon had given him; and they pleased him not.

13 And he said, What cities *are* these which you have given me, my brother? And he called them the land of Cabul unto this day.

14 And Hiram sent to the king sixscore talents of gold.

In Solomon's works the Gentiles were his bondmen, the Israelites honourable servants

15 And this *is* the reason of the levy which king Solomon raised; for to build the house of the YAHWEH, and his own house, and Millo, and the wall of Jerusalem, and Hazor, and Megiddo, and Gezer.

16 *For* Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up, and taken Gezer, and burnt it with fire, and slain the Canaanites that dwelt in the city, and given it *for* a present unto his daughter, Solomon's wife.

17 And Solomon built Gezer, and Bethhoron the nether,

18 And Baalath, and Tadmor in the wilderness, in the land, [2Chr 8:6](#);

19 And all the cities of store that Solomon had, and cities for his chariots, and cities for his horsemen, and that which Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his dominion.

20 *And* all the people *that were* left of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites, which *were* not of the children of Israel,

21 Their children that were left after them in the land, whom the children of Israel also were not able utterly to destroy, upon those did Solomon levy a tribute of bondservice unto this day.

22 But of the children of Israel did Solomon make no bondmen: but they *were* men of war, and his servants, and his princes, and his captains, and rulers of his chariots, and his horsemen. [Lev 25:39](#); [\[2Chr 8:9\]](#);

23 These *were* the chief of the officers that *were* over Solomon's work, five hundred and fifty, which bore rule over the people that wrought in the work.

Pharaoh's daughter removes to her house

24 But Pharaoh's daughter came up out of the city of David unto her house which *Solomon* had built for her: then did he build Millo. [2Chr 8:11](#);

Solomon's yearly solemn sacrifices

25 And three times in a year did Solomon offer burnt offerings and peace offerings upon the altar which he built unto the YAHWEH, and he burnt incense upon the altar that *was* before the YAHWEH. So he finished the house.

His navy fetches gold from Ophir

26 And king Solomon made a navy of ships in Eziongeber, which *is* beside Eloth, on the shore of the Red sea, in the land of Edom.

27 And Hiram sent in the navy his servants, shipmen that had knowledge of the sea, with the servants of Solomon.

28 And they came to Ophir, and fetched from thence gold, four hundred and twenty talents, and brought *it* to king Solomon.

The queen of Sheba admires the wisdom of Solomon

1 And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon concerning the name of the YAHWEH, she came to prove him with hard questions. [\[2Chr 9:1\]; \[Matt 12:42\]; \[Luke 11:31\];](#)

2 And she came to Jerusalem with a very great train, with camels that bore spices, and very much gold, and precious stones: and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart. [2Chr 9:1; Matt 12:42; Luke 11:31;](#)

3 And Solomon told her all her questions: there was not *any* thing hid from the king, which he told her not.

4 And when the queen of Sheba had seen all Solomon's wisdom, and the house that he had built,

5 And the meat of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the attendance of his ministers, and their apparel, and his cupbearers, and his ascent by which he went up unto the house of the YAHWEH; there was no more spirit in her.

6 And she said to the king, It was a true report that I heard in mine own land of thy acts and of thy wisdom.

7 Howbeit I believed not the words, until I came, and mine eyes had seen *it*: and, behold, the half was not told me: thy wisdom and prosperity exceedeth the fame which I heard.

8 Happy *are* thy men, happy *are* these thy servants, which stand continually before you, *and* that hear thy wisdom.

9 Blessed be the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which delighted in you, to set you on the throne of Israel: because the YAHWEH loved Israel for ever, therefore made he you king, to do judgment and justice.

10 And she gave the king a hundred and twenty talents of gold, and of spices very great store, and precious stones: there came no more such abundance of spices as these which the queen of Sheba gave to king Solomon. [\[Ps 68:29\];](#)

11 And the navy also of Hiram, that brought gold from Ophir, brought in from Ophir great plenty of almug trees, and precious stones.

12 And the king made of the almug trees pillars for the house of the YAHWEH, and for the king's house, harps also and psalteries for singers: there came no such almug trees, nor were seen unto this day. [2Chr 9:11;](#)

13 And king Solomon gave unto the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, beside *that* which Solomon gave her of his royal bounty. So she turned and went to her own country, she and her servants.

Solomon's gold

14 Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred threescore and six talents of gold,

15 Beside *that he had* of the merchantmen, and of the traffick of the spice merchants, and of all the kings of Arabia, and of the governors of the country.

His targets

16 And king Solomon made two hundred targets *of* beaten gold: six hundred *shekels* of gold went to one target. [1Kgs 14:26; \[2Chr 12:9\];](#)

17 And *he made* three hundred shields *of* beaten gold; three pound of gold went to one shield: and the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon. [1Kgs 7:2;](#)

The throne of ivory

18 Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with the best gold. [2Chr 9:17;](#)

19 The throne had six steps, and the top of the throne *was* round behind: and *there were* stays on either side on the place of the seat, and two lions stood beside the stays.

20 And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps: there was not the like made in any kingdom.

His vessels

21 And all king Solomon's drinking vessels *were of* gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon *were of* pure gold; none *were of* silver: it was nothing accounted of in the days of Solomon.

22 For the king had at sea a navy of Tharshish with the navy of Hiram: once in three years came the navy of Tharshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.

23 So king Solomon exceeded all the kings of the earth for riches and for wisdom. [1Kgs 3:12-13](#);

His presents

24 And all the earth sought to Solomon, to hear his wisdom, which Elohim had put in his heart. [\[Ps 68:29\]](#);

25 And they brought every man his present, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and garments, and armour, and spices, horses, and mules, a rate year by year.

His chariots and horse

26 And Solomon gathered together chariots and horsemen: and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, whom he bestowed in the cities for chariots, and with the king at Jerusalem. [1Kgs 4:26](#); [2Chr 1:14](#); [2Chr 9:25](#);

27 And the king made silver *to be* in Jerusalem as stones, and cedars made he *to be* as the sycomore trees that *are* in the vale, for abundance. [2Chr 1:15](#); [2Chr 9:27](#);

His tribute

28 And Solomon had horses brought out of Egypt, and linen yarn: the king's merchants received the linen yarn at a price. [2Chr 9:28](#); [2Chr 1:16](#);

29 And a chariot came up and went out of Egypt for six hundred *shekels* of silver, and a horse for a hundred and fifty: and so for all the kings of the Hittites, and for the kings of Syria, did they bring *them* out by their means.

FIRST KINGS ELEVEN

Solomon's wives and concubines

1 But king Solomon loved many strange women, together with the daughter of Pharaoh, women of the Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Zidonians, *and* Hittites; [Deut 17:17](#);

2 Of the nations *concerning* which the YAHWEH said unto the children of Israel, you shall not go in to them, neither shall they come in unto you: *for* surely they will turn away your heart after their gods: Solomon clave unto these in love. [Exod 34:16](#); [Deut 7:3](#);

3 And he had seven hundred wives, princesses, and three hundred concubines: and his wives turned away his heart.

In his old age they draw him to idolatry

4 For it came to pass, when Solomon was old, *that* his wives turned away his heart after other gods: and his heart was not perfect with the YAHWEH his Elohim, as *was* the heart of David his father. [\[Neh 13:26\]](#);

5 For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, and after Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites. [Judg 2:13](#); [2Kgs 23:13](#);

6 And Solomon did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and went not fully after the YAHWEH, as *did* David his father.

7 Then did Solomon build a high place for Chemosh, the abomination of Moab, in the hill that *is* before Jerusalem, and for Molech, the abomination of the children of Ammon. [2Kgs 23:13](#); [\[Num 21:29\]](#);

8 And likewise did he for all his strange wives, which burnt incense and sacrificed unto their gods.

Elohim threatens him

9 And the YAHWEH was angry with Solomon, because his heart was turned from the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, which had appeared unto him twice, [1Kgs 3:5](#); [1Kgs 9:2](#);

10 And had commanded him concerning this thing, that he should not go after other gods: but he kept not that which the YAHWEH commanded. [1Kgs 6:12](#);

11 Wherefore the YAHWEH said unto Solomon, Forasmuch as this is done of you, and you have not kept my covenant and my statutes, which I have commanded you, I will surely rend the kingdom from you, and will give it to thy servant. [1Kgs 12:15](#);

12 Notwithstanding in thy days I will not do it for David thy father's sake: *but* I will rend it out of the hand of thy son.

13 Howbeit I will not rend away all the kingdom; *but* will give one tribe to thy son for David my servant's sake, and for Jerusalem's sake which I have chosen.

Solomon's adversaries were Hadad, who was entertained in Egypt

14 And the YAHWEH stirred up an adversary unto Solomon, Hadad the Edomite: he *was* of the king's seed in Edom.

15 For it came to pass, when David was in Edom, and Joab the captain of the host was gone up to bury the slain, after he had smitten every male in Edom; [2Sam 8:14](#); [1Chr 18:12-13](#);

16 (For six months did Joab remain there with all Israel, until he had cut off every male in Edom:)

17 That Hadad fled, he and certain Edomites of his father's servants with him, to go into Egypt; Hadad *being* yet a little child.

18 And they arose out of Midian, and came to Paran: and they took men with them out of Paran, and they came to Egypt, unto Pharaoh king of Egypt; which gave him a house, and appointed him victuals, and gave him land.

19 And Hadad found great favor in the sight of Pharaoh, so that he gave him to wife the sister of his own wife, the sister of Tahpenes the queen.

20 And the sister of Tahpenes bore him Genubath his son, whom Tahpenes weaned in Pharaoh's house: and Genubath was in Pharaoh's household among the sons of Pharaoh.

21 And when Hadad heard in Egypt that David slept with his fathers, and that Joab the captain of the host was dead, Hadad said to Pharaoh, Let me depart, that I may go to mine own country.

22 Then Pharaoh said unto him, But what have you lacked with me, that, behold, you seekest to go to thine own country? And he answered, Nothing: howbeit let me go in any wise.

Rezon, who reigned in Damascus

23 And Elohim stirred him up *another* adversary, Rezon the son of Eliadah, which fled from his lord Hadadezer king of Zobah: [2Sam 8:3](#); [2Sam 10:18](#);

24 And he gathered men unto him, and became captain over a band, when David slew them *of Zobah*: and they went to Damascus, and dwelt therein, and reigned in Damascus. [2Sam 8:3](#);

25 And he was an adversary to Israel all the days of Solomon, beside the mischief that Hadad *did*: and he abhorred Israel, and reigned over Syria.

and Jeroboam, to whom Ahijah prophesied

26 And Jeroboam the son of Nebat, an Ephrathite of Zereda, Solomon's servant, whose mother's name *was* Zeruah, a widow woman, even he lifted up *his* hand against the king. [2Chr 13:6](#);

27 And this *was* the cause that he lifted up *his* hand against the king: Solomon built Millo, *and* repaired the breaches of the city of David his father.

28 And the man Jeroboam *was* a mighty man of valour: and Solomon seeing the young man that he was industrious, he made him ruler over all the charge of the house of Joseph.

29 And it came to pass at that time when Jeroboam went out of Jerusalem, that the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite found him in the way; and he had clad himself with a new garment; and they two *were* alone in the field:

30 And Ahijah caught the new garment that *was* on him, and rent it *in* twelve pieces:

31 And he said to Jeroboam, Take you ten pieces: for thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, Behold, I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give ten tribes to you: [1Sam 15:28](#); [\[1Kgs 12:15\]](#); [\[1Kgs 14:2\]](#); [\[2Chr 10:15\]](#);

32 (But he shall have one tribe for my servant David's sake, and for Jerusalem's sake, the city which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel:)

33 Because that they have forsaken me, and have worshipped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, Chemosh the god of the Moabites, and Milcom the god of the children of Ammon, and have not walked in my ways, to do *that which is* right in mine eyes, and *to keep* my statutes and my judgments, as *did* David his father. [\[Num 21:29\]](#);

34 Howbeit I will not take the whole kingdom out of his hand: but I will make him prince all the days of his life for David my servant's sake, whom I chose, because he kept my commandments and my statutes:

35 But I will take the kingdom out of his son's hand, and will give it unto you, *even* ten tribes.

36 And unto his son will I give one tribe, that David my servant may have a light always before me in Jerusalem, the city which I have chosen me to put my name there. [1Kgs 15:4](#); [Ps 132:17](#); [\[2Kgs 8:19\]](#); [\[2Chr 21:7\]](#);

37 And I will take you, and you shall reign according to all that thy being desireth, and shall be king over Israel.

38 And it shall be, if you will hearken unto all that I command you, and will walk in my ways, and do *that is* right in my sight, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as David my servant did; that I will be with you, and build you a sure house, as I built for David, and will give Israel unto you.

39 And I will for this afflict the seed of David, but not for ever.

40 Solomon sought therefore to kill Jeroboam. And Jeroboam arose, and fled into Egypt, unto Shishak king of Egypt, and was in Egypt until the death of Solomon. [\[1Kgs 12:2\]](#); [\[2Chr 10:2\]](#);

Solomon's acts, reign, and death. Rehoboam succeeds him

41 And the rest of the acts of Solomon, and all that he did, and his wisdom, *are* they not written in the book of the acts of Solomon? [2Chr 9:29](#);

42 And the time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel *was* forty years. [2Chr 9:30](#);

43 And Solomon slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David his father: and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:10\]](#); [\[Matt 1:7\]](#);

The Israelites, assembled at Shechem to crown Rehoboam, by Jeroboam make a suit of relaxation unto him

1 And Rehoboam went to Shechem: for all Israel were come to Shechem to make him king. [2Chr 10:1](#); [[Prov 11:14](#)];

2 And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who was yet in Egypt, heard *of it*, (for he was fled from the presence of king Solomon, and Jeroboam dwelt in Egypt;) [1Kgs 11:40](#);

3 That they sent and called him. And Jeroboam and all the congregation of Israel came, and spoke unto Rehoboam, saying,

4 Thy father made our yoke grievous: now therefore make you the grievous service of thy father, and his heavy yoke which he put upon us, lighter, and we will serve you. [2Chr 10:4](#);

5 And he said unto them, Depart yet *for* three days, then come again to me. And the people departed.

Rehoboam, refusing the old men's counsel, answers them roughly

6 And king Rehoboam consulted with the old men, that stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, and said, How do you advise that I may answer this people?

7 And they spoke unto him, saying, If you will be a servant unto this people this day, and will serve them, and answer them, and speak good words to them, then they will be thy servants for ever.

8 But he forsook the counsel of the old men, which they had given him, and consulted with the young men that were grown up with him, *and* which stood before him:

9 And he said unto them, What counsel give you that we may answer this people, who have spoken to me, saying, Make the yoke which thy father did put upon us lighter?

10 And the young men that were grown up with him spoke unto him, saying, Thus shall you speak unto this people that spoke unto you, saying, Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make you *it* lighter unto us; thus shall you say unto them, My little *finger* shall be thicker than my father's loins.

11 And now whereas my father did lade you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke: my father has chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.

12 So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam the third day, as the king had appointed, saying, Come to me again the third day.

13 And the king answered the people roughly, and forsook the old men's counsel that they gave him;

14 And spoke to them after the counsel of the young men, saying, My father made your yoke heavy, and I will add to your yoke: my father *also* chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.

15 Wherefore the king hearkened not unto the people; for the cause was from the YAHWEH, that he might perform his saying, which the YAHWEH spoke by Ahijah the Shilonite unto Jeroboam the son of Nebat. [1Kgs 11:11](#); [1Kgs 11:31](#); [[1Kgs 14:7](#)];

Ten tribes revolting, kill Adoram, and make Rehoboam flee

16 So when all Israel saw that the king hearkened not unto them, the people answered the king, saying, What portion have we in David? neither *have we* inheritance in the son of Jesse: to your tents, O Israel: now see to thine own house, David. So Israel departed unto their tents. [2Sam 20:1](#); [[2Kgs 17:21](#)];

17 But *as for* the children of Israel which dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.

18 Then king Rehoboam sent Adoram, who *was* over the tribute; and all Israel stoned him with stones, that he died. Therefore king Rehoboam made speed to get him up to his chariot, to flee to Jerusalem. [1Kgs 4:6](#); [1Kgs 5:14](#);

19 So Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day. [2Kgs 17:21](#);

20 And it came to pass, when all Israel heard that Jeroboam was come again, that they sent and called him unto the congregation, and made him king over all Israel: there was none that followed the house of David, but the tribe of Judah only.

Rehoboam, raising an army, is forbidden by Shemaiah

21 And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he assembled all the house of Judah, with the tribe of Benjamin, a hundred and fourscore thousand chosen men, which were warriors, to fight against the house of Israel, to bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam the son of Solomon. [2Chr 11:1](#);

22 But the word of Elohim came unto Shemaiah the man of Elohim, saying, [2Chr 11:2](#);

23 Speak unto Rehoboam, the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and unto all the house of Judah and Benjamin, and to the remnant of the people, saying,

24 Thus saith the YAHWEH, you shall not go up, nor fight against your brethren the children of Israel: return every man to his house; for this thing is from me. They hearkened therefore to the word of the YAHWEH, and returned to depart, according to the word of the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 11:4\]](#);

Jeroboam strengthens himself by cities

25 Then Jeroboam built Shechem in mount Ephraim, and dwelt therein; and went out from thence, and built Penuel. [Exod 32:30](#);

and by the idolatry of the two calves

26 And Jeroboam said in his heart, Now shall the kingdom return to the house of David: [\[2Kgs 17:21\]](#);

27 If this people go up to do sacrifice in the house of the YAHWEH at Jerusalem, then shall the heart of this people turn again unto their lord, *even* unto Rehoboam king of Judah, and they shall kill me, and go again to Rehoboam king of Judah.

28 Whereupon the king took counsel, and made two calves *of* gold, and said unto them, It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem: behold thy gods, O Israel, which brought you up out of the land of Egypt. [2Kgs 17:16](#); [Exod 32:8](#); [\[2Kgs 10:29\]](#); [\[2Chr 13:8\]](#);

29 And he set the one in Bethel, and the other put he in Dan. [\[Jer 48:13\]](#);

30 And this thing became a sin: for the people went *to worship* before the one, *even* unto Dan.

31 And he made a house of high places, and made priests of the lowest of the people, which were not of the sons of Levi. [Num 3:10](#); [1Kgs 13:33](#); [2Kgs 17:32](#); [2Chr 11:15](#); [\[2Chr 13:9\]](#);

32 And Jeroboam ordained a feast in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month, like unto the feast that *is* in Judah, and he offered upon the altar. So did he in Bethel, sacrificing unto the calves that he had made: and he placed in Bethel the priests of the high places which he had made. [\[2Kgs 23:15\]](#);

33 So he offered upon the altar which he had made in Bethel the fifteenth day of the eighth month, *even* in the month which he had devised of his own heart; and ordained a feast unto the children of Israel: and he offered upon the altar, and burnt incense.

FIRST KINGS THIRTEEN

Jeroboam's hand withers

1 And, behold, there came a man of Elohim out of Judah by the word of the YAHWEH unto Bethel: and Jeroboam stood by the altar to burn incense.

2 And he cried against the altar in the word of the YAHWEH, and said, O altar, altar, thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, a child shall be born unto the house of David, Josiah by name; and upon you shall he offer the priests of the high places that burn incense upon you, and men's bones shall be burnt upon you. [2Kgs 23:15-17](#); [\[2Kgs 23:16\]](#); [\[2Chr 34:3\]](#);

3 And he gave a sign the same day, saying, This *is* the sign which the YAHWEH has spoken; Behold, the altar shall be rent, and the ashes that *are* upon it shall be poured out.

4 And it came to pass, when king Jeroboam heard the saying of the man of Elohim, which had cried against the altar in Bethel, that he put forth his hand from the altar, saying, Lay hold on him. And his hand, which he put forth against him, dried up, so that he could not pull it in again to him.

5 The altar also was rent, and the ashes poured out from the altar, according to the sign which the man of Elohim had given by the word of the YAHWEH.

and at the prayer of the prophet is restored

6 And the king answered and said unto the man of Elohim, Intreat now the face of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and pray for me, that my hand may be restored me again. And the man of Elohim besought the YAHWEH, and the king's hand was restored him again, and became as *it was* before. [Exod 8:8](#); [Exod 9:28](#); [Exod 10:17](#); [Num 21:7](#); [Acts 8:24](#); [[Mark 3:5](#)];

The prophet departs from Beth-el

7 And the king said unto the man of Elohim, Come home with me, and refresh thyself, and I will give you a reward.

8 And the man of Elohim said unto the king, If you will give me half thine house, I will not go in with you, neither will I eat bread nor drink water in this place: [Num 22:18](#);

9 For so was it charged me by the word of the YAHWEH, saying, Eat no bread, nor drink water, nor turn again by the same way that you camest.

10 So he went another way, and returned not by the way that he came to Bethel.

An old prophet brings him back

11 Now there dwelt an old prophet in Bethel; and his sons came and told him all the works that the man of Elohim had done that day in Bethel: the words which he had spoken unto the king, them they told also to their father.

12 And their father said unto them, What way went he? For his sons had seen what way the man of Elohim went, which came from Judah.

13 And he said unto his sons, Saddle me the ass. So they saddled him the ass: and he rode thereon,

14 And went after the man of Elohim, and found him sitting under an oak: and he said unto him, are you the man of Elohim that camest from Judah? And he said, I *am*.

15 Then he said unto him, Come home with me, and eat bread.

16 And he said, I may not return with you, nor go in with you: neither will I eat bread nor drink water with you in this place:

17 For it was said to me by the word of the YAHWEH, you shall eat no bread nor drink water there, nor turn again to go by the way that you camest.

18 He said unto him, I *am* a prophet also as you are; and an angel spoke unto me by the word of the YAHWEH, saying, Bring him back with you into thine house, that he may eat bread and drink water. *But* he lied unto him. [Gal 1:8](#);

19 So he went back with him, and did eat bread in his house, and drank water.

He is reproved by Elohim

20 And it came to pass, as they sat at the table, that the word of the YAHWEH came unto the prophet that brought him back:

21 And he cried unto the man of Elohim that came from Judah, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Forasmuch as you have disobeyed the mouth of the YAHWEH, and have not kept the commandment which the YAHWEH thy Elohim commanded you,

22 But camest back, and have eaten bread and drunk water in the place, of the which *the YAHWEH* did say to you, Eat no bread, and drink no water; thy carcase shall not come unto the sepulcher of thy fathers.

slain by a lion

23 And it came to pass, after he had eaten bread, and after he had drunk, that he saddled for him the ass, *to wit*, for the prophet whom he had brought back.

24 And when he was gone, a lion met him by the way, and slew him: and his carcase was cast in the way, and the ass stood by it, the lion also stood by the carcase. [1Kgs 20:36](#);

25 And, behold, men passed by, and saw the carcase cast in the way, and the lion standing by the carcase: and they came and told *it* in the city where the old prophet dwelt.

buried by the old prophet

26 And when the prophet that brought him back from the way heard *thereof*, he said, It *is* the man of Elohim, who was disobedient unto the word of the YAHWEH: therefore the YAHWEH has delivered him unto the lion, which has torn him, and slain him, according to the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke unto him.

27 And he spoke to his sons, saying, Saddle me the ass. And they saddled *him*.

28 And he went and found his carcase cast in the way, and the ass and the lion standing by the carcase: the lion had not eaten the carcase, nor torn the ass.

29 And the prophet took up the carcase of the man of Elohim, and laid it upon the ass, and brought it back: and the old prophet came to the city, to mourn and to bury him.

30 And he laid his carcase in his own grave; and they mourned over him, *saying*, Alas, my brother!

who confirms his prophecy

31 And it came to pass, after he had buried him, that he spoke to his sons, saying, When I am dead, then bury me in the sepulcher wherein the man of Elohim *is* buried; lay my bones beside his bones:

32 For the saying which he cried by the word of the YAHWEH against the altar in Bethel, and against all the houses of the high places which *are* in the cities of Samaria, shall surely come to pass. [2Kgs 23:16](#);

Jeroboam's obstinacy

33 After this thing Jeroboam returned not from his evil way, but made again of the lowest of the people priests of the high places: whosoever would, he consecrated him, and he became *one* of the priests of the high places. [1Kgs 12:31-32](#); [[1Kgs 12:31](#)];

34 And this thing became sin unto the house of Jeroboam, even to cut *it* off, and to destroy *it* from off the face of the earth.

Abijah being sick, Jeroboam sends his wife, disguised, with presents to the prophet Ahijah at Shiloh

1 At that time Abijah the son of Jeroboam fell sick.

2 And Jeroboam said to his wife, Arise, I pray you, and disguise thyself, that you be not known to be the wife of Jeroboam; and get you to Shiloh: behold, there *is* Ahijah the prophet, which told me that *I should be* king over this people. [1Kgs 11:31](#); [\[2Kgs 8:8\]](#);

3 And take with you ten loaves, and cracknels, and a cruse of honey, and go to him: he shall tell you what shall become of the child.

4 And Jeroboam's wife did so, and arose, and went to Shiloh, and came to the house of Ahijah. But Ahijah could not see; for his eyes were set by reason of his age.

Ahijah, forewarned by Elohim, denounces Elohim's judgment

5 And the YAHWEH said unto Ahijah, Behold, the wife of Jeroboam cometh to ask a thing of you for her son; for he *is* sick: thus and thus shall you say unto her: for it shall be, when she cometh in, that she shall feign herself *to be* another *woman*.

6 And it was *so*, when Ahijah heard the sound of her feet, as she came in at the door, that he said, Come in, you wife of Jeroboam; why feignest you thyself *to be* another? for I *am* sent to you *with* heavy *tidings*.

7 Go, tell Jeroboam, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Forasmuch as I exalted you from among the people, and made you prince over my people Israel, [1Kgs 12:15](#); [\[1Kgs 16:2\]](#);

8 And rent the kingdom away from the house of David, and gave it you: and yet you have not been as my servant David, who kept my commandments, and who followed me with all his heart, to do *that* only *which was* right in mine eyes;

9 But have done evil above all that were before you: for you have gone and made you other gods, and molten images, to provoke me to anger, and have cast me behind thy back:

10 Therefore, behold, I will bring evil upon the house of Jeroboam, and will cut off from Jeroboam him that pisseth against the wall, *and* him that is shut up and left in Israel, and will take away the remnant of the house of Jeroboam, as a man taketh away dung, till it be all gone. [1Kgs 15:29](#); [1Sam 25:22](#); [1Sam 25:34](#); [1Kgs 16:11](#); [1Kgs 21:21](#); [2Kgs 9:8](#); [\[2Kgs 9:9\]](#);

11 Him that dieth of Jeroboam in the city shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat: for the YAHWEH has spoken *it*. [\[1Kgs 16:4\]](#);

12 Arise you therefore, get you to thine own house: *and* when thy feet enter into the city, the child shall die.

13 And all Israel shall mourn for him, and bury him: for he only of Jeroboam shall come to the grave, because in him there is found *some* good thing toward the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel in the house of Jeroboam.

14 Moreover the YAHWEH shall raise him up a king over Israel, who shall cut off the house of Jeroboam that day: but what? even now. [1Kgs 15:28-29](#); [\[1Kgs 15:29\]](#);

15 For the YAHWEH shall smite Israel, as a reed is shaken in the water, and he shall root up Israel out of this good land, which he gave to their fathers, and shall scatter them beyond the river, because they have made their groves, provoking the YAHWEH to anger. [2Kgs 17:18](#);

16 And he shall give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam, who did sin, and who made Israel to sin.

Abijah dies, and is buried

17 And Jeroboam's wife arose, and departed, and came to Tirzah: *and* when she came to the threshold of the door, the child died;

18 And they buried him; and all Israel mourned for him, according to the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by the hand of his servant Ahijah the prophet.

Nadab succeeds Jeroboam

19 And the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, how he warred, and how he reigned, behold, they *are* written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

20 And the days which Jeroboam reigned *were* two and twenty years: and he slept with his fathers, and Nadab his son reigned in his stead.

Rehoboam's wicked reign

21 And Rehoboam the son of Solomon reigned in Judah. Rehoboam *was* forty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which the YAHWEH did choose out of all the tribes of Israel, to put his name there. And his mother's name *was* Naamah an Ammonitess.

[2Chr 12:13](#);

22 And Judah did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and they provoked him to jealousy with their sins which they had committed, above all that their fathers had done. [\[2Chr 12:1\]](#);

23 For they also built them high places, and images, and groves, on every high hill, and under every green tree.

24 And there were also sodomites in the land: *and* they did according to all the abominations of the nations which the YAHWEH cast out before the children of Israel.

Shishak spoils Jerusalem

25 And it came to pass in the fifth year of king Rehoboam, *that* Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem: [2Chr 12:2](#);

26 And he took away the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king's house; he even took away all: and he took away all the shields of gold which Solomon had made. [1Kgs 10:16-17](#); [2Chr 9:15](#); [\[1Kgs 10:16\]](#);

27 And king Rehoboam made in their stead brasen shields, and committed *them* unto the hands of the chief of the guard, which kept the door of the king's house.

28 And it *was so*, when the king went into the house of the YAHWEH, that the guard bore them, and brought them back into the guard chamber.

Abijam succeeds Rehoboam

29 Now the rest of the acts of Rehoboam, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

30 And there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all *their* days.

31 And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And his mother's name *was* Naamah an Ammonitess. And Abijam his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:10\]](#);

Abijam's wicked reign

- 1** Now in the eighteenth year of king Jeroboam the son of Nebat reigned Abijam over Judah. [2Chr 13:1](#);
2 Three years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Maachah, the daughter of Abishalom. [2Chr 13:2](#); [\[2Chr 11:20\]](#);
3 And he walked in all the sins of his father, which he had done before him: and his heart was not perfect with the YAHWEH his Elohim, as the heart of David his father.
4 Nevertheless for David's sake did the YAHWEH his Elohim give him a lamp in Jerusalem, to set up his son after him, and to establish Jerusalem: [1Kgs 11:36](#); [\[2Kgs 8:19\]](#);
5 Because David did *that which was* right in the eyes of the YAHWEH, and turned not aside from any *thing* that he commanded him all the days of his life, save only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite. [2Sam 11:4](#); [2Sam 11:15](#); [2Sam 12:9](#);
6 And there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of his life.

Asa succeeds him

- 7** Now the rest of the acts of Abijam, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And there was war between Abijam and Jeroboam.
8 And Abijam slept with his fathers; and they buried him in the city of David: and Asa his son reigned in his stead. [2Chr 14:1](#); [\[1Chr 3:10\]](#);

Asa's good reign

- 9** And in the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel reigned Asa over Judah.
10 And forty and one years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Maachah, the daughter of Abishalom.
11 And Asa did *that which was* right in the eyes of the YAHWEH, as *did* David his father.
12 And he took away the sodomites out of the land, and removed all the idols that his fathers had made. [1Kgs 22:46](#);
13 And also Maachah his mother, even her he removed from *being* queen, because she had made an idol in a grove; and Asa destroyed her idol, and burnt *it* by the brook Kidron. [2Chr 15:16](#); [\[2Chr 14:3\]](#);
14 But the high places were not removed: nevertheless Asa's heart was perfect with the YAHWEH all his days.
15 And he brought in the things which his father had dedicated, and the things which himself had dedicated, into the house of the YAHWEH, silver, and gold, and vessels. [Lev 5:15](#);

The war between Baasha and him causes him to make a league with Bed-hadad

- 16** And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.
17 And Baasha king of Israel went up against Judah, and built Ramah, that he might not suffer any to go out or come in to Asa king of Judah. [2Chr 16:1](#);
18 Then Asa took all the silver and the gold *that were* left in the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king's house, and delivered them into the hand of his servants: and king Asa sent them to Benhadad, the son of Tabrimon, the son of Hezion, king of Syria, that dwelt at Damascus, saying, [1Kgs 20:1](#); [2Chr 16:2](#);
19 *There is* a league between me and you, *and* between my father and thy father: behold, I have sent unto you a present of silver and gold; come and break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me.

20 So Benhadad hearkened unto king Asa, and sent the captains of the hosts which he had against the cities of Israel, and smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abelbethmaachah, and all Cinneroth, with all the land of Naphtali.

21 And it came to pass, when Baasha heard *thereof*, that he left off building of Ramah, and dwelt in Tirzah.

22 Then king Asa made a proclamation throughout all Judah; none *was* exempted: and they took away the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof, wherewith Baasha had built; and king Asa built with them Geba of Benjamin, and Mizpah.

Jehoshaphat succeeds Asa

23 The rest of all the acts of Asa, and all his might, and all that he did, and the cities which he built, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? Nevertheless in the time of his old age he was diseased in his feet.

24 And Asa slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his father: and Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead. [2Chr 16:13](#); [2Chr 17:1](#); [\[1Chr 3:10\]](#);

Nadab's wicked reign

25 And Nadab the son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa king of Judah, and reigned over Israel two years.

26 And he did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and walked in the way of his father, and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin.

Baasha conspiring against him, executes Ahijah's prophecy

27 And Baasha the son of Ahijah, of the house of Issachar, conspired against him; and Baasha smote him at Gibbethon, which *belonged* to the Philistines; for Nadab and all Israel laid siege to Gibbethon.

28 Even in the third year of Asa king of Judah did Baasha slay him, and reigned in his stead. [\[1Kgs 14:14\]](#);

29 And it came to pass, when he reigned, *that* he smote all the house of Jeroboam; he left not to Jeroboam any that breathed, until he had destroyed him, according unto the saying of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite: [1Kgs 14:10](#); [1Kgs 14:14](#); [\[1Kgs 16:3\]](#); [\[1Kgs 16:4\]](#); [\[1Kgs 16:7\]](#); [\[1Kgs 21:22\]](#); [\[2Kgs 9:9\]](#);

30 Because of the sins of Jeroboam which he sinned, and which he made Israel sin, by his provocation wherewith he provoked the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel to anger.

Nadab's acts and death

31 Now the rest of the acts of Nadab, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

32 And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.

Baasha's wicked reign

33 In the third year of Asa king of Judah began Baasha the son of Ahijah to reign over all Israel in Tirzah, twenty and four years.

34 And he did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and walked in the way of Jeroboam, and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin.

Jehu's prophecy against Baasha

- 1** Then the word of the YAHWEH came to Jehu the son of Hanani against Baasha, saying, [1Kgs 16:12];
2 Forasmuch as I exalted you out of the dust, and made you prince over my people Israel; and you have walked in the way of Jeroboam, and have made my people Israel to sin, to provoke me to anger with their sins; 1Kgs 14:7;
3 Behold, I will take away the posterity of Baasha, and the posterity of his house; and will make thy house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat. 1Kgs 15:29; [1Kgs 21:22]; [2Kgs 9:9];
4 Him that dieth of Baasha in the city shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth of his in the fields shall the fowls of the air eat. 1Kgs 14:11; 1Kgs 15:29; 1Kgs 16:12;

Elah succeeds him

- 5** Now the rest of the acts of Baasha, and what he did, and his might, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
6 So Baasha slept with his fathers, and was buried in Tirzah: and Elah his son reigned in his stead.
7 And also by the hand of the prophet Jehu the son of Hanani came the word of the YAHWEH against Baasha, and against his house, even for all the evil that he did in the sight of the YAHWEH, in provoking him to anger with the work of his hands, in being like the house of Jeroboam; and because he killed him. 1Kgs 15:29;

Zimri, conspiring against Elah, succeeds him

- 8** In the twenty and sixth year of Asa king of Judah began Elah the son of Baasha to reign over Israel in Tirzah, two years.
9 And his servant Zimri, captain of half *his* chariots, conspired against him, as he was in Tirzah, drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza steward of *his* house in Tirzah.
10 And Zimri went in and smote him, and killed him, in the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah, and reigned in his stead. 2Kgs 9:31;

Zimri executes Jehu's prophecy

- 11** And it came to pass, when he began to reign, as soon as he sat on his throne, *that* he slew all the house of Baasha: he left him not one that pisseth against a wall, neither of his kinsfolks, nor of his friends. [1Kgs 14:10]; [1Kgs 21:22]; [2Kgs 9:9];
12 Thus did Zimri destroy all the house of Baasha, according to the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke against Baasha by Jehu the prophet, 1Kgs 16:1-2; [1Kgs 16:4];
13 For all the sins of Baasha, and the sins of Elah his son, by which they sinned, and by which they made Israel to sin, in provoking the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel to anger with their vanities.
14 Now the rest of the acts of Elah, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

Omri, made king by the soldiers, forces Zimri desperately to burn himself

- 15** In the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah did Zimri reign seven days in Tirzah. And the people *were* encamped against Gibbethon, which *belonged* to the Philistines.
16 And the people *that were* encamped heard say, Zimri has conspired, and has also slain the king: wherefore all Israel made Omri, the captain of the host, king over Israel that day in the camp.
17 And Omri went up from Gibbethon, and all Israel with him, and they besieged Tirzah.
18 And it came to pass, when Zimri saw that the city was taken, that he went into the palace of the king's house, and burnt the king's house over him with fire, and died, [2Kgs 9:31];
19 For his sins which he sinned in doing evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, in walking in the way of Jeroboam, and in his sin which he did, to make Israel to sin.

20 Now the rest of the acts of Zimri, and his treason that he wrought, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

The kingdom being divided, Omri prevails against Tibni

21 Then were the people of Israel divided into two parts: half of the people followed Tibni the son of Ginath, to make him king; and half followed Omri.

22 But the people that followed Omri prevailed against the people that followed Tibni the son of Ginath: so Tibni died, and Omri reigned.

Omri builds Samaria

23 In the thirty and first year of Asa king of Judah began Omri to reign over Israel, twelve years: six years reigned he in Tirzah.

24 And he bought the hill Samaria of Shemer for two talents of silver, and built on the hill, and called the name of the city which he built, after the name of Shemer, owner of the hill, Samaria.

His wicked reign

25 But Omri wrought evil in the eyes of the YAHWEH, and did worse than all that *were* before him. [\[Mic 6:16\];](#)

26 For he walked in all the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin, to provoke the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel to anger with their vanities.

Ahab succeeds him

27 Now the rest of the acts of Omri which he did, and his might that he showed, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

28 So Omri slept with his fathers, and was buried in Samaria: and Ahab his son reigned in his stead.

Ahab's most wicked reign

29 And in the thirty and eighth year of Asa king of Judah began Ahab the son of Omri to reign over Israel: and Ahab the son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty and two years.

30 And Ahab the son of Omri did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH above all that *were* before him. [\[Mic 6:16\];](#)

31 And it came to pass, as if it had been a light thing for him to walk in the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, that he took to wife Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal king of the Zidonians, and went and served Baal, and worshipped him. [\[2Kgs 9:34\]; \[2Kgs 21:3\]; \[Rev 2:20\];](#)

32 And he reared up an altar for Baal in the house of Baal, which he had built in Samaria. [\[2Kgs 3:2\];](#)

33 And Ahab made a grove; and Ahab did more to provoke the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel to anger than all the kings of Israel that were before him. [\[1Kgs 21:25\];](#)

Joshua's curse upon Hiel the builder of Jericho

34 In his days did Hiel the Bethelite build Jericho: he laid the foundation thereof in Abiram his firstborn, and set up the gates thereof in his youngest *son* Segub, according to the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by Joshua the son of Nun. [Josh 6:26;](#)

Elijah, having prophesied against Ahab, is sent to Cherith where the ravens feed him

- 1** And Elijah the Tishbite, *who was* of the inhabitants of Gilead, said unto Ahab, *As* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word. [Jas 5:17](#); [\[2Kgs 3:14\]](#); [\[Rev 11:6\]](#);
- 2** And the word of the YAHWEH came unto him, saying,
- 3** Get you hence, and turn you eastward, and hide thyself by the brook Cherith, that *is* before Jordan.
- 4** And it shall be, *that* you shall drink of the brook; and I have commanded the ravens to feed you there.
- 5** So he went and did according unto the word of the YAHWEH: for he went and dwelt by the brook Cherith, that *is* before Jordan.
- 6** And the ravens brought him bread and flesh in the morning, and bread and flesh in the evening; and he drank of the brook.
- 7** And it came to pass after a while, that the brook dried up, because there had been no rain in the land. [\[Luke 4:25\]](#);

He is sent to the widow of Zarephas

- 8** And the word of the YAHWEH came unto him, saying,
- 9** Arise, get you to Zarephas, which *belongeth* to Zidon, and dwell there: behold, I have commanded a widow woman there to sustain you. [Luke 4:25-26](#);
- 10** So he arose and went to Zarephas. And when he came to the gate of the city, behold, the widow woman *was* there gathering of sticks: and he called to her, and said, Fetch me, I pray you, a little water in a vessel, that I may drink. [\[Matt 10:41\]](#);
- 11** And as she was going to fetch *it*, he called to her, and said, Bring me, I pray you, a morsel of bread in thine hand.
- 12** And she said, *As* the YAHWEH thy Elohim liveth, I have not a cake, but a handful of meal in a barrel, and a little oil in a cruse: and, behold, I *am* gathering two sticks, that I may go in and dress it for me and my son, that we may eat it, and die.
- 13** And Elijah said unto her, Fear not; go *and* do as you have said: but make me thereof a little cake first, and bring *it* unto me, and after make for you and for thy son.
- 14** For thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, The barrel of meal shall not waste, neither shall the cruse of oil fail, until the day *that* the YAHWEH sendeth rain upon the earth.
- 15** And she went and did according to the saying of Elijah: and she, and he, and her house, did eat *many* days.
- 16** *And* the barrel of meal wasted not, neither did the cruse of oil fail, according to the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by Elijah.

He raises the widow's son

- 17** And it came to pass after these things, *that* the son of the woman, the mistress of the house, fell sick; and his sickness was so sore, that there was no breath left in him.
- 18** And she said unto Elijah, What have I to do with you, O you man of Elohim? are you come unto me to call my sin to remembrance, and to slay my son?
- 19** And he said unto her, Give me thy son. And he took him out of her bosom, and carried him up into a loft, where he abode, and laid him upon his own bed.
- 20** And he cried unto the YAHWEH, and said, O YAHWEH my Elohim, have you also brought evil upon the widow with whom I sojourn, by slaying her son?

21 And he stretched himself upon the child three times, and cried unto the YAHWEH, and said, O YAHWEH my Elohim, I pray you, let this child's being come into him again. [2Kgs 4:35]; [Acts 20:10];
22 And the YAHWEH heard the voice of Elijah; and the being of the child came into him again, and he revived.
23 And Elijah took the child, and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother: and Elijah said, See, thy son liveth. [Heb 11:35];

The woman believes him

24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now by this I know that you are a man of Elohim, *and* that the word of the YAHWEH in thy mouth *is* truth.

FIRST KINGS EIGHTEEN

In the extremity of famine Elijah, sent to Ahab, meets good Obadiah

1 And it came to pass *after* many days, that the word of the YAHWEH came to Elijah in the third year, saying, Go, show thyself unto Ahab; and I will send rain upon the earth.
2 And Elijah went to show himself unto Ahab. And *there was* a sore famine in Samaria.
3 And Ahab called Obadiah, which *was* the governor of *his* house. (Now Obadiah feared the YAHWEH greatly:
4 For it was *so*, when Jezebel cut off the prophets of the YAHWEH, that Obadiah took a hundred prophets, and hid them by fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water.) [Neh 9:26]; [Matt 10:41];
5 And Ahab said unto Obadiah, Go into the land, unto all fountains of water, and unto all brooks: perhaps we may find grass to save the horses and mules alive, that we lose not all the beasts.
6 So they divided the land between them to pass throughout it: Ahab went one way by himself, and Obadiah went another way by himself.
7 And as Obadiah was in the way, behold, Elijah met him: and he knew him, and fell on his face, and said, are you that my lord Elijah?
8 And he answered him, I *am*: go, tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah *is here*.

Obadiah brings Ahab to Elijah

9 And he said, What have I sinned, that you wouldst deliver thy servant into the hand of Ahab, to slay me?
10 *As* the YAHWEH thy Elohim liveth, there is no nation or kingdom, whither my lord has not sent to seek you: and when they said, *He is not there*; he took an oath of the kingdom and nation, that they found you not.
11 And now you sayest, Go, tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah *is here*.
12 And it shall come to pass, *as soon as* I am gone from you, that the Spirit of the YAHWEH shall carry you whither I know not; and *so* when I come and tell Ahab, and he cannot find you, he shall slay me: but I thy servant fear the YAHWEH from my youth.
13 Was it not told my lord what I did when Jezebel slew the prophets of the YAHWEH, how I hid a hundred men of the YAHWEH'S prophets by fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water?
14 And now you sayest, Go, tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah *is here*: and he shall slay me.
15 And Elijah said, *As* the YAHWEH of hosts liveth, before whom I stand, I will surely show myself unto him to day.
16 So Obadiah went to meet Ahab, and told him: and Ahab went to meet Elijah.

Elijah, reproving Ahab, by fire from heaven convicts Baal's prophets

17 And it came to pass, when Ahab saw Elijah, that Ahab said unto him, are you he that troubleth Israel?
[Amos 7:10](#); [\[Acts 16:20\]](#);

18 And he answered, I have not troubled Israel; but you, and thy father's house, in that you have forsaken the commandments of the YAHWEH, and you have followed Baalim.

19 Now therefore send, *and* gather to me all Israel unto mount Carmel, and the prophets of Baal four hundred and fifty, and the prophets of the groves four hundred, which eat at Jezebel's table. [\[2Kgs 3:13\]](#);

20 So Ahab sent unto all the children of Israel, and gathered the prophets together unto mount Carmel.

21 And Elijah came unto all the people, and said, How long halt you between two opinions? if the YAHWEH *be* Elohim, follow him: but if Baal, *then* follow him. And the people answered him not a word.
[Josh 24:15](#);

22 Then said Elijah unto the people, I, *even* I only, remain a prophet of the YAHWEH; but Baal's prophets *are* four hundred and fifty men.

23 Let them therefore give us two bullocks; and let them choose one bullock for themselves, and cut it in pieces, and lay *it* on wood, and put no fire *under*: and I will dress the other bullock, and lay *it* on wood, and put no fire *under*:

24 And call you on the name of your gods, and I will call on the name of the YAHWEH: and the Elohim that answereth by fire, let him be Elohim. And all the people answered and said, It is well spoken.

25 And Elijah said unto the prophets of Baal, Choose you one bullock for yourselves, and dress *it* first; for you *are* many; and call on the name of your gods, but put no fire *under*.

26 And they took the bullock which was given them, and they dressed *it*, and called on the name of Baal from morning even until noon, saying, O Baal, hear us. But *there was* no voice, nor any that answered. And they leaped upon the altar which was made.

27 And it came to pass at noon, that Elijah mocked them, and said, Cry aloud: for he *is* a god; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in a journey, *or* perhaps he sleepeth, and must be awaked.

28 And they cried aloud, and cut themselves after their manner with knives and lancets, till the blood gushed out upon them. [\[Matt 6:7\]](#);

29 And it came to pass, when midday was past, and they prophesied until the *time* of the offering of the *evening* sacrifice, that *there was* neither voice, nor any to answer, nor any that regarded.

30 And Elijah said unto all the people, Come near unto me. And all the people came near unto him. And he repaired the altar of the YAHWEH *that was* broken down.

31 And Elijah took twelve stones, according to the number of the tribes of the sons of Jacob, unto whom the word of the YAHWEH came, saying, Israel shall be thy name: [Josh 4:5](#); [Josh 4:20](#); [Gen 32:28](#); [2Kgs 17:34](#);

32 And with the stones he built an altar in the name of the YAHWEH: and he made a trench about the altar, as great as would contain two measures of seed.

33 And he put the wood in order, and cut the bullock in pieces, and laid *him* on the wood, and said, Fill four barrels with water, and pour *it* on the burnt sacrifice, and on the wood.

34 And he said, Do *it* the second time. And they did *it* the second time. And he said, Do *it* the third time. And they did *it* the third time.

35 And the water ran round about the altar; and he filled the trench also with water.

36 And it came to pass at *the time of* the offering of the sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said, YAHWEH Elohim of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that you are Elohim in Israel, and *that I am* thy servant, and *that* I have done all these things at thy word. [Exod 3:6](#); [Matt 22:32](#); [Mark 12:26](#); [Luke 20:37](#); [Acts 7:32](#);

37 Hear me, O YAHWEH, hear me, that this people may know that you are the YAHWEH Elohim, and *that* you have turned their heart back again.

38 Then the fire of the YAHWEH fell, and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that *was* in the trench. [\[Lev 9:24\]](#);

39 And when all the people saw *it*, they fell on their faces: and they said, The YAHWEH, he *is* the Elohim; the YAHWEH, he *is* the Elohim.

40 And Elijah said unto them, Take the prophets of Baal; let not one of them escape. And they took them: and Elijah brought them down to the brook Kishon, and slew them there.

Elijah, by prayer obtaining rain, follows Ahab to Jezreel

41 And Elijah said unto Ahab, Get you up, eat and drink; for *there is* a sound of abundance of rain.

42 So Ahab went up to eat and to drink. And Elijah went up to the top of Carmel; and he cast himself down upon the earth, and put his face between his knees,

43 And said to his servant, Go up now, look toward the sea. And he went up, and looked, and said, *There is* nothing. And he said, Go again seven times.

44 And it came to pass at the seventh time, that he said, Behold, there ariseth a little cloud out of the sea, like a man's hand. And he said, Go up, say unto Ahab, Prepare *thy chariot*, and get you down, that the rain stop you not.

45 And it came to pass in the mean while, that the heaven was black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain. And Ahab rode, and went to Jezreel. [[Jas 5:18](#)];

46 And the hand of the YAHWEH was on Elijah; and he girded up his loins, and ran before Ahab to the entrance of Jezreel.

FIRST KINGS NINETEEN

Elijah, threatened by Jezebel, flees to Beer-sheba

1 And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done, and withal how he had slain all the prophets with the sword.

2 Then Jezebel sent a messenger unto Elijah, saying, So let the gods do *to me*, and more also, if I make not thy life as the life of one of them by to morrow about this time. [[2Kgs 6:31](#)];

3 And when he saw *that*, he arose, and went for his life, and came to Beersheba, which *belongeth* to Judah, and left his servant there. [[Heb 11:34](#)];

In the wilderness, being weary of his life, he is comforted by an angel

4 But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a juniper tree: and he requested for himself that he might die; and said, It is enough; now, O YAHWEH, take away my life; for I *am* not better than my fathers.

5 And as he lay and slept under a juniper tree, behold, then an angel touched him, and said unto him, Arise *and* eat.

6 And he looked, and, behold, *there was* a cake baked on the coals, and a cruse of water at his head. And he did eat and drink, and laid him down again.

7 And the angel of the YAHWEH came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise *and* eat; because the journey *is* too great for you.

8 And he arose, and did eat and drink, and went in the strength of that meat forty days and forty nights unto Horeb the mount of Elohim. [[Exod 34:28](#); [Matt 4:2](#); [Luke 4:2](#)];

At Horeb Elohim appears unto him, sending him to anoint Hazael, Jehu, and Elisha

9 And he came thither unto a cave, and lodged there; and, behold, the word of the YAHWEH *came* to him, and he said unto him, What do you do here, Elijah?

10 And he said, I have been very jealous for the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts: for the children of Israel have forsaken thy covenant, thrown down thine altars, and slain thy prophets with the sword; and I, *even* I only, am left; and they seek my life, to take it away. [[Rom 11:3](#); [Neh 9:26](#)];

11 And he said, Go forth, and stand upon the mount before the YAHWEH. And, behold, the YAHWEH passed by, and a great and strong wind rent the mountains, and brake in pieces the rocks before the YAHWEH; *but* the YAHWEH *was* not in the wind: and after the wind an earthquake; *but* the YAHWEH *was* not in the earthquake:

12 And after the earthquake a fire; *but* the YAHWEH *was* not in the fire: and after the fire a still small voice.

13 And it was *so*, when Elijah heard *it*; that he wrapped his face in his mantle, and went out, and stood in the entering in of the cave. And, behold, *there came* a voice unto him, and said, What do you do here, Elijah?

14 And he said, I have been very jealous for the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts: because the children of Israel have forsaken thy covenant, thrown down thine altars, and slain thy prophets with the sword; and I, *even* I only, am left; and they seek my life, to take it away.

15 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Go, return on thy way to the wilderness of Damascus: and when you come, anoint Hazael *to be* king over Syria:

16 And Jehu the son of Nimshi shall you anoint *to be* king over Israel: and Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abelmeholah shall you anoint *to be* prophet in thy room. [2Kgs 9:1];

17 And it shall come to pass, *that* him that escapeth the sword of Hazael shall Jehu slay: and him that escapeth from the sword of Jehu shall Elisha slay. 2Kgs 9:14-15;

18 yet I have left *me* seven thousand in Israel, all the knees which have not bowed unto Baal, and every mouth which has not kissed him. Rom 11:4;

Elisha, taking leave of his friends, follows Elijah

19 So he departed thence, and found Elisha the son of Shaphat, who *was* plowing *with* twelve yoke of oxen before him, and he with the twelfth: and Elijah passed by him, and cast his mantle upon him.

20 And he left the oxen, and ran after Elijah, and said, Let me, I pray you, kiss my father and my mother, and *then* I will follow you. And he said unto him, Go back again: for what have I done to you? [Luke 9:61];

21 And he returned back from him, and took a yoke of oxen, and slew them, and boiled their flesh with the instruments of the oxen, and gave unto the people, and they did eat. Then he arose, and went after Elijah, and ministered unto him.

FIRST KINGS TWENTY

Ben-hadad, not content with Ahab's homage, besieges Samaria

1 And Benhadad the king of Syria gathered all his host together: and *there were* thirty and two kings with him, and horses, and chariots: and he went up and besieged Samaria, and warred against it. [1Kgs 15:18];

2 And he sent messengers to Ahab king of Israel into the city, and said unto him, Thus saith Benhadad,

3 Thy silver and thy gold *is* mine; thy wives also and thy children, *even* the goodliest, *are* mine.

4 And the king of Israel answered and said, My lord, O king, according to thy saying, I *am* thine, and all that I have.

5 And the messengers came again, and said, Thus speaketh Benhadad, saying, Although I have sent unto you, saying, you shall deliver me thy silver, and thy gold, and thy wives, and thy children;

6 Yet I will send my servants unto you to morrow about this time, and they shall search thine house, and the houses of thy servants; and it shall be, *that* whatsoever is pleasant in thine eyes, they shall put *it* in their hand, and take *it* away.

7 Then the king of Israel called all the elders of the land, and said, Mark, I pray you, and see how this *man* seeketh mischief: for he sent unto me for my wives, and for my children, and for my silver, and for my gold; and I denied him not.

8 And all the elders and all the people said unto him, Hearken not *unto him*, nor consent.

9 Wherefore he said unto the messengers of Benhadad, Tell my lord the king, All that you didst send for to thy servant at the first I will do: but this thing I may not do. And the messengers departed, and brought him word again.

10 And Benhadad sent unto him, and said, The gods do so unto me, and more also, if the dust of Samaria shall suffice for handfuls for all the people that follow me.

11 And the king of Israel answered and said, Tell *him*, Let not him that girdeth on *his harness* boast himself as he that puts it off.

12 And it came to pass, when *Benhadad* heard this message, as he *was* drinking, he and the kings in the pavilions, that he said unto his servants, Set *yourselves in array*. And they set *themselves in array* against the city.

By the direction of a prophet, the Syrians are slain

13 And, behold, there came a prophet unto Ahab king of Israel, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH, have you seen all this great multitude? behold, I will deliver it into thine hand this day; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

14 And Ahab said, By whom? And he said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, *Even* by the young men of the princes of the provinces. Then he said, Who shall order the battle? And he answered, you.

15 Then he numbered the young men of the princes of the provinces, and they were two hundred and thirty two: and after them he numbered all the people, *even* all the children of Israel, *being* seven thousand.

16 And they went out at noon. But Benhadad *was* drinking himself drunk in the pavilions, he and the kings, the thirty and two kings that helped him.

17 And the young men of the princes of the provinces went out first; and Benhadad sent out, and they told him, saying, There are men come out of Samaria.

18 And he said, Whether they be come out for peace, take them alive; or whether they be come out for war, take them alive.

19 So these young men of the princes of the provinces came out of the city, and the army which followed them.

20 And they slew every one his man: and the Syrians fled; and Israel pursued them: and Benhadad the king of Syria escaped on a horse with the horsemen.

21 And the king of Israel went out, and smote the horses and chariots, and slew the Syrians with a great slaughter.

As the prophet forewarned Ahab, the Syrians, trusting in the valleys, come against him in Aphek

22 And the prophet came to the king of Israel, and said unto him, Go, strengthen thyself, and mark, and see what you do: for at the return of the year the king of Syria will come up against you.

23 And the servants of the king of Syria said unto him, Their gods *are* gods of the hills; therefore they were stronger than we; but let us fight against them in the plain, and surely we shall be stronger than they.

24 And do this thing, Take the kings away, every man out of his place, and put captains in their rooms:

25 And number you an army, like the army that you have lost, horse for horse, and chariot for chariot: and we will fight against them in the plain, *and* surely we shall be stronger than they. And he hearkened unto their voice, and did so.

26 And it came to pass at the return of the year, that Benhadad numbered the Syrians, and went up to Aphek, to fight against Israel.

27 And the children of Israel were numbered, and were all present, and went against them: and the children of Israel pitched before them like two little flocks of kids; but the Syrians filled the country.

By the word of the prophet, and Elohim's judgment, the Syrians are smitten again

28 And there came a man of Elohim, and spoke unto the king of Israel, and said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Because the Syrians have said, The YAHWEH *is* Elohim of the hills, but he *is* not Elohim of the valleys, therefore will I deliver all this great multitude into thine hand, and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

29 And they pitched one over against the other seven days. And *so* it was, that in the seventh day the battle was joined: and the children of Israel slew of the Syrians a hundred thousand footmen in one day.

30 But the rest fled to Aphek, into the city; and *there* a wall fell upon twenty and seven thousand of the men *that were* left. And Benhadad fled, and came into the city, into an inner chamber. [\[2Kgs 13:17\];](#)

The Syrians submitting themselves, Ahab sends Ben-hadad away with a covenant

31 And his servants said unto him, Behold now, we have heard that the kings of the house of Israel *are* merciful kings: let us, I pray you, put sackcloth on our loins, and ropes upon our heads, and go out to the king of Israel: perhaps he will save thy life.

32 So they girded sackcloth on their loins, and *put* ropes on their heads, and came to the king of Israel, and said, Thy servant Benhadad saith, I pray you, let me live. And he said, *Is* he yet alive? he *is* my brother.

33 Now the men did diligently observe whether *any thing would come* from him, and did hastily catch *it*: and they said, Thy brother Benhadad. Then he said, Go you, bring him. Then Benhadad came forth to him; and he caused him to come up into the chariot.

34 And *Benhadad* said unto him, The cities, which my father took from thy father, I will restore; and you shall make streets for you in Damascus, as my father made in Samaria. Then *said Ahab*, I will send you away with this covenant. So he made a covenant with him, and sent him away.

The prophet, under the parable of a prisoner, making Ahab judge himself, denounces Elohim's judgment against him

35 And a certain man of the sons of the prophets said unto his neighbour in the word of the YAHWEH, Smite me, I pray you. And the man refused to smite him.

36 Then said he unto him, Because you have not obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH, behold, as soon as you are departed from me, a lion shall slay you. And as soon as he was departed from him, a lion found him, and slew him. [\[1Kgs 13:24\];](#)

37 Then he found another man, and said, Smite me, I pray you. And the man smote him, so that in smiting he wounded *him*.

38 So the prophet departed, and waited for the king by the way, and disguised himself with a bandage over his eyes.

39 And as the king passed by, he cried unto the king: and he said, Thy servant went out into the midst of the battle; and, behold, a man turned aside, and brought a man unto me, and said, Keep this man: if by any means he be missing, then shall thy life be for his life, or else you shall pay a talent of silver.

40 And as thy servant was busy here and there, he was gone. And the king of Israel said unto him, So *shall* thy judgment *be*; thyself have decided *it*.

41 And he hasted, and took the ashes away from his face; and the king of Israel discerned him that he *was* of the prophets.

42 And he said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Because you have let go out of *thy* hand a man whom I appointed to utter destruction, therefore thy life shall go for his life, and thy people for his people. [1Kgs 22:37-38](#);

43 And the king of Israel went to his house heavy and displeased, and came to Samaria.

FIRST KINGS TWENTY-ONE

Ahab being denied Naboth's vineyard, is grieved

1 And it came to pass after these things, *that* Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard, which *was* in Jezreel, hard by the palace of Ahab king of Samaria.

2 And Ahab spoke unto Naboth, saying, Give me thy vineyard, that I may have it for a garden of herbs, because it *is* near unto my house: and I will give you for it a better vineyard than it; *or*, if it seem good to you, I will give you the worth of it in money.

3 And Naboth said to Ahab, The YAHWEH forbid it me, that I should give the inheritance of my fathers unto you.

4 And Ahab came into his house heavy and displeased because of the word which Naboth the Jezreelite had spoken to him: for he had said, I will not give you the inheritance of my fathers. And he laid him down upon his bed, and turned away his face, and would eat no bread.

Jezebel writing letters against Naboth, he is condemned of blasphemy

5 But Jezebel his wife came to him, and said unto him, Why is thy spirit so sad, that you eat no bread?

6 And he said unto her, Because I spoke unto Naboth the Jezreelite, and said unto him, Give me thy vineyard for money; or else, if it please you, I will give you *another* vineyard for it: and he answered, I will not give you my vineyard.

7 And Jezebel his wife said unto him, Dost you now govern the kingdom of Israel? arise, *and* eat bread, and let thine heart be merry: I will give you the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite.

8 So she wrote letters in Ahab's name, and sealed *them* with his seal, and sent the letters unto the elders and to the nobles that *were* in his city, dwelling with Naboth.

9 And she wrote in the letters, saying, Proclaim a fast, and set Naboth on high among the people:

10 And set two men, sons of Belial, before him, to bear witness against him, saying, you didst blaspheme Elohim and the king. And *then* carry him out, and stone him, that he may die.

11 And the men of his city, *even* the elders and the nobles who were the inhabitants in his city, did as Jezebel had sent unto them, *and* as it *was* written in the letters which she had sent unto them.

12 They proclaimed a fast, and set Naboth on high among the people.

13 And there came in two men, children of Belial, and sat before him: and the men of Belial witnessed against him, *even* against Naboth, in the presence of the people, saying, Naboth did blaspheme Elohim and the king. Then they carried him forth out of the city, and stoned him with stones, that he died. [\[Acts 7:58\]; \[Heb 11:37\]](#);

14 Then they sent to Jezebel, saying, Naboth is stoned, and is dead.

Ahab take possession of the vineyard

15 And it came to pass, when Jezebel heard that Naboth was stoned, and was dead, that Jezebel said to Ahab, Arise, take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, which he refused to give you for money: for Naboth is not alive, but dead.

16 And it came to pass, when Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, that Ahab rose up to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, to take possession of it.

Elijah denounces judgments against Ahab and Jezebel

17 And the word of the YAHWEH came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

18 Arise, go down to meet Ahab king of Israel, which *is* in Samaria: behold, *he is* in the vineyard of Naboth, whither he is gone down to possess it.

19 And you shall speak unto him, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH, have you killed, and also taken possession? And you shall speak unto him, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH, In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth shall dogs lick thy blood, even thine. [\[2Kgs 9:26\]](#); [\[2Kgs 10:10\]](#);

20 And Ahab said to Elijah, have you found me, O mine enemy? And he answered, I have found you: because you have sold thyself to work evil in the sight of the YAHWEH.

21 Behold, I will bring evil upon you, and will take away thy posterity, and will cut off from Ahab him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel, [2Kgs 9:7-9](#); [\[1Kgs 14:10\]](#); [\[2Kgs 9:8\]](#); [\[2Kgs 10:10\]](#);

22 And will make thine house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah, for the provocation wherewith you have provoked *me* to anger, and made Israel to sin. [1Kgs 15:29](#); [1Kgs 16:3](#); [1Kgs 16:11](#);

23 And of Jezebel also spoke the YAHWEH, saying, The dogs shall eat Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel. [2Kgs 9:35-37](#); [\[2Kgs 9:10\]](#); [\[2Kgs 9:36\]](#);

24 Him that dieth of Ahab in the city the dogs shall eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat.

Wicked Ahab repenting, Elohim defers the judgment

25 But there was none like unto Ahab, which did sell himself to work wickedness in the sight of the YAHWEH, whom Jezebel his wife stirred up. [1Kgs 16:33](#);

26 And he did very abominably in following idols, according to all *things* as did the Amorites, whom the YAHWEH cast out before the children of Israel.

27 And it came to pass, when Ahab heard those words, that he rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his flesh, and fasted, and lay in sackcloth, and went softly.

28 And the word of the YAHWEH came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

29 Seest you how Ahab humbleth himself before me? because he humbleth himself before me, I will not bring the evil in his days: *but* in his son's days will I bring the evil upon his house. [\[2Kgs 10:10\]](#);

FIRST KINGS TWENTY-TWO

Ahab, seduced by false prophets, according to the word of Micaiah, is slain at Ramoth-gilead

1 And they continued three years without war between Syria and Israel.

2 And it came to pass in the third year, that Jehoshaphat the king of Judah came down to the king of Israel. [2Chr 18:1-2](#); [\[2Chr 18:2\]](#);

3 And the king of Israel said unto his servants, Know you that Ramoth in Gilead *is* ours, and we *be* still, *and* take it not out of the hand of the king of Syria?

4 And he said unto Jehoshaphat, will you go with me to battle to Ramothgilead? And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, I *am* as you are, my people as thy people, my horses as thy horses. [\[2Kgs 3:7\]](#); [\[2Chr 18:3\]](#);

5 And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, Enquire, I pray you, at the word of the YAHWEH to day.

6 Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, about four hundred men, and said unto them, Shall I go against Ramothgilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up; for the Lord shall deliver *it* into the hand of the king.

7 And Jehoshaphat said, *Is there* not here a prophet of the YAHWEH besides, that we might enquire of him? [2Kgs 3:11];

8 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, *There is* yet one man, Micaiah the son of Imlah, by whom we may enquire of the YAHWEH: but I hate him; for he does not prophesy good concerning me, but evil. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.

9 Then the king of Israel called an officer, and said, Hasten *hither* Micaiah the son of Imlah.

10 And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah sat each on his throne, having put on their robes, in a void place in the entrance of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets prophesied before them. 2Chr 18:9;

11 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah made him horns of iron: and he said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, With these shall you push the Syrians, until you have consumed them.

12 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, Go up to Ramothgilead, and prosper: for the YAHWEH shall deliver *it* into the king's hand.

13 And the messenger that was gone to call Micaiah spoke unto him, saying, Behold now, the words of the prophets *declare* good unto the king with one mouth: let thy word, I pray you, be like the word of one of them, and speak *that which is* good.

14 And Micaiah said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, what the YAHWEH saith unto me, that will I speak.

15 So he came to the king. And the king said unto him, Micaiah, shall we go against Ramothgilead to battle, or shall we forbear? And he answered him, Go, and prosper: for the YAHWEH shall deliver *it* into the hand of the king.

16 And the king said unto him, How many times shall I adjure you that you tell me nothing but *that which is* true in the name of the YAHWEH?

17 And he said, I saw all Israel scattered upon the hills, as sheep that have not a shepherd: and the YAHWEH said, These have no master: let them return every man to his house in peace. [Num 27:17];

18 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, Did I not tell you that he would prophesy no good concerning me, but evil?

19 And he said, Hear you therefore the word of the YAHWEH: I saw the YAHWEH sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven standing by him on his right hand and on his left. 2Chr 18:18; Job 1:6; Job 2:1; [Ps 103:21];

20 And the YAHWEH said, Who shall persuade Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramothgilead? And one said on this manner, and another said on that manner.

21 And there came forth a spirit, and stood before the YAHWEH, and said, I will persuade him.

22 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, you shall persuade *him*, and prevail also: go forth, and do so.

23 Now therefore, behold, the YAHWEH has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets, and the YAHWEH has spoken evil concerning you.

24 But Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah went near, and smote Micaiah on the cheek, and said, Which way went the Spirit of the YAHWEH from me to speak unto you? [Acts 23:2];

25 And Micaiah said, Behold, you shall see in that day, when you shall go into an inner chamber to hide thyself.

26 And the king of Israel said, Take Micaiah, and carry him back unto Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son;

27 And say, Thus saith the king, Put this *fellow* in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I come in peace.

28 And Micaiah said, If you return at all in peace, the YAHWEH has not spoken by me. And he said, Harken, O people, every one of you.

29 So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramothgilead.

30 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself, and enter into the battle; but put you on thy robes. And the king of Israel disguised himself, and went into the battle.

31 But the king of Syria commanded his thirty and two captains that had rule over his chariots, saying, Fight neither with small nor great, save only with the king of Israel.

32 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said, Surely it *is* the king of Israel. And they turned aside to fight against him: and Jehoshaphat cried out.

33 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots perceived that it *was* not the king of Israel, that they turned back from pursuing him.

34 And a *certain* man drew a bow at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between the joints of the harness: wherefore he said unto the driver of his chariot, Turn thine hand, and carry me out of the host; for I am wounded.

35 And the battle increased that day: and the king was stayed up in his chariot against the Syrians, and died at even: and the blood ran out of the wound into the midst of the chariot.

36 And there went a proclamation throughout the host about the going down of the sun, saying, Every man to his city, and every man to his own country.

The dogs lick up his blood, and Ahaziah succeeds him

37 So the king died, and was brought to Samaria; and they buried the king in Samaria. [1Kgs 20:42];

38 And *one* washed the chariot in the pool of Samaria; and the dogs licked up his blood; and they washed his armour; according unto the word of the YAHWEH which he spoke.

39 Now the rest of the acts of Ahab, and all that he did, and the ivory house which he made, and all the cities that he built, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

40 So Ahab slept with his fathers; and Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead.

Jehoshaphat's good reign

41 And Jehoshaphat the son of Asa began to reign over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel. [2Chr 20:31];

42 Jehoshaphat *was* thirty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Azubah the daughter of Shilhi. [2Chr 20:31];

43 And he walked in all the ways of Asa his father; he turned not aside from it, doing *that which was* right in the eyes of the YAHWEH: nevertheless the high places were not taken away; *for* the people offered and burnt incense yet in the high places.

44 And Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.

His acts

45 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, and his might that he showed, and how he warred, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

Jehoram succeeds him

46 And the remnant of the sodomites, which remained in the days of his father Asa, he took out of the land. [1Kgs 15:12];

47 *There was* then no king in Edom: a deputy *was* king.

48 Jehoshaphat made ships of Tharshish to go to Ophir for gold: but they went not; for the ships were broken at Eziongeber. [2Chr 20:36];

49 Then said Ahaziah the son of Ahab unto Jehoshaphat, Let my servants go with thy servants in the ships. But Jehoshaphat would not.

50 And Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his father: and Jehoram his son reigned in his stead. [2Chr 21:1];

Ahaziah's evil reign

51 Ahaziah the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and reigned two years over Israel.

52 And he did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and walked in the way of his father, and in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin:

53 For he served Baal, and worshipped him, and provoked to anger the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, according to all that his father had done.

Second_Kings

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#)

SECOND KINGS ONE

Moab rebels

1 Then Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab. [2Kgs 3:5](#);

Ahaziah, sending to Baal-zebub, has his judgment by Elijah

2 And Ahaziah fell down through a lattice in his upper chamber that *was* in Samaria, and was sick: and he sent messengers, and said unto them, Go, enquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron whether I shall recover of this disease. [\[2Kgs 8:8\]](#);

3 But the angel of the YAHWEH said to Elijah the Tishbite, Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and say unto them, *Is it* not because *there is* not a Elohim in Israel, *that* you go to enquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron?

4 Now therefore thus saith the YAHWEH, you shall not come down from that bed on which you are gone up, but shall surely die. And Elijah departed.

Elijah twice brings fire from heaven upon them whom Ahaziah sent to apprehend him

5 And when the messengers turned back unto him, he said unto them, Why are you now turned back?

6 And they said unto him, There came a man up to meet us, and said unto us, Go, turn again unto the king that sent you, and say unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, *Is it* not because *there is* not a Elohim in Israel, *that* you sendest to enquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron? therefore you shall not come down from that bed on which you are gone up, but shall surely die.

7 And he said unto them, What manner of man *was he* which came up to meet you, and told you these words?

8 And they answered him, *He was* a hairy man, and girt with a girdle of leather about his loins. And he said, It *is* Elijah the Tishbite. [\[Mark 1:6\]](#); [\[Heb 11:37\]](#);

9 Then the king sent unto him a captain of fifty with his fifty. And he went up to him: and, behold, he sat on the top of a hill. And he spoke unto him, you man of Elohim, the king has said, Come down.

10 And Elijah answered and said to the captain of fifty, If I *be* a man of Elohim, then let fire come down from heaven, and consume you and thy fifty. And there came down fire from heaven, and consumed him and his fifty. [Luke 9:54](#);

11 Again also he sent unto him another captain of fifty with his fifty. And he answered and said unto him, O man of Elohim, thus has the king said, Come down quickly.

12 And Elijah answered and said unto them, If I *be* a man of Elohim, let fire come down from heaven, and consume you and thy fifty. And the fire of Elohim came down from heaven, and consumed him and his fifty. [\[Luke 9:54\]](#);

He pities the third captain, and, encouraged by an angel, tells the king of his death

13 And he sent again a captain of the third fifty with his fifty. And the third captain of fifty went up, and came and fell on his knees before Elijah, and besought him, and said unto him, O man of Elohim, I pray you, let my life, and the life of these fifty thy servants, be precious in thy sight.

14 Behold, there came fire down from heaven, and burnt up the two captains of the former fifties with their fifties: therefore let my life now be precious in thy sight.

15 And the angel of the YAHWEH said unto Elijah, Go down with him: be not afraid of him. And he arose, and went down with him unto the king.

16 And he said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Forasmuch as you have sent messengers to enquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron, *is it* not because *there is* no Elohim in Israel to enquire of his word? therefore you shall not come down off that bed on which you are gone up, but shall surely die.

Jehoram succeeds Ahaziah

17 So he died according to the word of the YAHWEH which Elijah had spoken. And Jehoram reigned in his stead in the second year of Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah; because he had no son.

18 Now the rest of the acts of Ahaziah which he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

SECOND KINGS TWO

Elijah, taking his leave of Elisha, with his mantle divides Jordan

1 And it came to pass, when the YAHWEH would take up Elijah into heaven by a whirlwind, that Elijah went with Elisha from Gilgal.

2 And Elijah said unto Elisha, Tarry here, I pray you; for the YAHWEH has sent me to Bethel. And Elisha said *unto him*, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* thy being liveth, I will not leave you. So they went down to Bethel.

3 And the sons of the prophets that *were* at Bethel came forth to Elisha, and said unto him, Knowest you that the YAHWEH will take away thy master from thy head to day? And he said, yes, I know *it*; hold you your peace.

4 And Elijah said unto him, Elisha, tarry here, I pray you; for the YAHWEH has sent me to Jericho. And he said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* thy being liveth, I will not leave you. So they came to Jericho.

5 And the sons of the prophets that *were* at Jericho came to Elisha, and said unto him, Knowest you that the YAHWEH will take away thy master from thy head to day? And he answered, yes, I know *it*; hold you your peace.

6 And Elijah said unto him, Tarry, I pray you, here; for the YAHWEH has sent me to Jordan. And he said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* thy being liveth, I will not leave you. And they two went on.

7 And fifty men of the sons of the prophets went, and stood to view afar off: and they two stood by Jordan.

8 And Elijah took his mantle, and wrapped *it* together, and smote the waters, and they were divided hither and thither, so that they two went over on dry ground.

and, granting Elisha his request, is taken up by a fiery chariot into heaven

9 And it came to pass, when they were gone over, that Elijah said unto Elisha, Ask what I shall do for you, before I be taken away from you. And Elisha said, I pray you, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me.

10 And he said, you have asked a hard thing: *nevertheless*, if you see me *when I am* taken from you, it shall be so unto you; but if not, it shall not be *so*.

11 And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, *there appeared* a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven. [\[Gen 5:24\]](#);

Elisha, dividing Jordan with Elijah's mantle, is acknowledged his successor

12 And Elisha saw *it*, and he cried, My father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof. And he saw him no more: and he took hold of his own clothes, and rent them in two pieces. [2Kgs 13:14](#);

13 He took up also the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and went back, and stood by the bank of Jordan;

14 And he took the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and smote the waters, and said, Where *is* the YAHWEH Elohim of Elijah? and when he also had smitten the waters, they parted hither and thither: and Elisha went over.

15 And when the sons of the prophets which *were* to view at Jericho saw him, they said, The spirit of Elijah rests on Elisha. And they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him.

The young prophets, hardly obtaining leave to seek Elijah, cannot find him

16 And they said unto him, Behold now, there be with thy servants fifty strong men; let them go, we pray you, and seek thy master: lest the Spirit of the YAHWEH has taken him up, and cast him upon some mountain, or into some valley. And he said, you shall not send.

17 And when they urged him till he was ashamed, he said, Send. They sent therefore fifty men; and they sought three days, but found him not.

18 And when they came again to him, (for he tarried at Jericho,) he said unto them, Did I not say unto you, Go not?

Elisha with salt heals the unwholesome waters

19 And the men of the city said unto Elisha, Behold, I pray you, the situation of this city *is* pleasant, as my lord seeth: but the water *is* naught, and the ground barren.

20 And he said, Bring me a new cruse, and put salt therein. And they brought *it* to him.

21 And he went forth unto the spring of the waters, and cast the salt in there, and said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, I have healed these waters; there shall not be from thence any more death or barren *land*.

22 So the waters were healed unto this day, according to the saying of Elisha which he spoke.

Bears destroy the children that mocked Elisha

23 And he went up from there to Bethel: and as he was going up by the way, there came forth some boys out of the city, and mocked him, and said unto him, Go up, you bald head; go up, you bald head.

24 And he turned back, and looked on them, and cursed them in the name of the YAHWEH. And there came forth two female bears out of the woods, and mauled forty-two of the youths.

25 And he went from there to mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.

SECOND KINGS THREE

Jehoram's reign

1 Now Jehoram the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and reigned twelve years.

2 And he wrought evil in the sight of the YAHWEH; but not like his father, and like his mother: for he put away the image of Baal that his father had made. [1Kgs 16:32](#);

3 Nevertheless he cleaved unto the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, which made Israel to sin; he departed not therefrom.

Mesha rebels

4 And Mesha king of Moab was a sheepmaster, and rendered unto the king of Israel a hundred thousand lambs, and a hundred thousand rams, with the wool.

5 But it came to pass, when Ahab was dead, that the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel. [2Kgs 1:1](#);

Jehoram, with Jehoshaphat, and the king of Edom, being distressed for want of water, by Elisha obtains water, and promise of victory

6 And king Jehoram went out of Samaria the same time, and numbered all Israel.

7 And he went and sent to Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, saying, The king of Moab has rebelled against me: will you go with me against Moab to battle? And he said, I will go up: I *am* as you are, my people as thy people, *and* my horses as thy horses. [1Kgs 22:4](#);

8 And he said, Which way shall we go up? And he answered, The way through the wilderness of Edom.

9 So the king of Israel went, and the king of Judah, and the king of Edom: and they fetched a compass of seven days' journey: and there was no water for the host, and for the cattle that followed them.

10 And the king of Israel said, Alas! that the YAHWEH has called these three kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab!

11 But Jehoshaphat said, *Is there* not here a prophet of the YAHWEH, that we may enquire of the YAHWEH by him? And one of the king of Israel's servants answered and said, Here *is* Elisha the son of Shaphat, which poured water on the hands of Elijah. [1Kgs 22:7](#);

12 And Jehoshaphat said, The word of the YAHWEH is with him. So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat and the king of Edom went down to him.

13 And Elisha said unto the king of Israel, What have I to do with you? get you to the prophets of thy father, and to the prophets of thy mother. And the king of Israel said unto him, Nay: for the YAHWEH has called these three kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab. [1Kgs 18:19](#);

14 And Elisha said, *As* the YAHWEH of hosts liveth, before whom I stand, surely, were it not that I regard the presence of Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, I would not look toward you, nor see you. [1Kgs 17:1](#);

15 But now bring me a minstrel. And it came to pass, when the minstrel played, that the hand of the YAHWEH came upon him.

16 And he said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Make this valley full of ditches.

17 For thus saith the YAHWEH, you shall not see wind, neither shall you see rain; yet that valley shall be filled with water, that you may drink, both you, and your cattle, and your beasts.

18 And this is *but* a light thing in the sight of the YAHWEH: he will deliver the Moabites also into your hand.

19 And you shall smite every fenced city, and every choice city, and shall fell every good tree, and stop all wells of water, and mar every good piece of land with stones.

20 And it came to pass in the morning, when the meat offering was offered, that, behold, there came water by the way of Edom, and the country was filled with water.

The Moabites, deceived by the colour of the water, coming to spoil, are overcome

21 And when all the Moabites heard that the kings were come up to fight against them, they gathered all that were able to put on armour, and upward, and stood in the border.

22 And they rose up early in the morning, and the sun shone upon the water, and the Moabites saw the water on the other side *as* red as blood:

23 And they said, This *is* blood: the kings are surely slain, and they have smitten one another: now therefore, Moab, to the spoil.

24 And when they came to the camp of Israel, the Israelites rose up and smote the Moabites, so that they fled before them: but they went forward smiting the Moabites, even in *their* country.

25 And they beat down the cities, and on every good piece of land cast every man his stone, and filled it; and they stopped all the wells of water, and felled all the good trees: only in Kirharaseth left they the stones thereof; howbeit the slingers went about *it*, and smote it.

The king of Moab, failing in his attempt to break through to the king of Edom, sacrifices his son, and raises the siege

26 And when the king of Moab saw that the battle was too sore for him, he took with him seven hundred men that drew swords, to break through *even* unto the king of Edom: but they could not.

27 Then he took his eldest son that should have reigned in his stead, and offered him *for* a burnt offering upon the wall. And there was great indignation against Israel: and they departed from him, and returned to *their own* land.

SECOND KINGS FOUR

Elisha multiplies the widow's oil

1 Now there cried a certain woman of the wives of the sons of the prophets unto Elisha, saying, Thy servant my husband is dead; and you knowest that thy servant did fear the YAHWEH: and the creditor is come to take unto him my two sons to be bondmen. [Lev 25:39](#);

2 And Elisha said unto her, What shall I do for you? tell me, what have you in the house? And she said, Thine handmaid has not any thing in the house, save a pot of oil.

3 Then he said, Go, borrow you vessels abroad of all thy neighbours, *even* empty vessels; borrow not a few.

4 And when you are come in, you shall shut the door upon you and upon thy sons, and shall pour out into all those vessels, and you shall set aside that which is full.

5 So she went from him, and shut the door upon her and upon her sons, who brought *the vessels* to her; and she poured out.

6 And it came to pass, when the vessels were full, that she said unto her son, Bring me yet a vessel. And he said unto her, *There is* not a vessel more. And the oil stayed.

7 Then she came and told the man of Elohim. And he said, Go, sell the oil, and pay thy debt, and live you and thy children of the rest.

He obtains a son for the good Shunammite

8 And it fell on a day, that Elisha passed to Shunem, where *was* a great woman; and she compelled him to eat bread. And *so* it was, *that* as oft as he passed by, he turned in thither to eat bread. [\[Matt 10:41\]](#);

9 And she said unto her husband, Behold now, I perceive that this *is* a holy man of Elohim, which passeth by us continually.

10 Let us make a little chamber, I pray you, on the wall; and let us set for him there a bed, and a table, and a stool, and a candlestick: and it shall be, when he cometh to us, that he shall turn in thither.

11 And it fell on a day, that he came thither, and he turned into the chamber, and lay there.

12 And he said to Gehazi his servant, Call this Shunammite. And when he had called her, she stood before him.

13 And he said unto him, Say now unto her, Behold, you have been careful for us with all this care; what *is* to be done for you? wouldest you be spoken for to the king, or to the captain of the host? And she answered, I dwell among mine own people.

14 And he said, What then *is* to be done for her? And Gehazi answered, Verily she has no child, and her husband is old.

15 And he said, Call her. And when he had called her, she stood in the door.

16 And he said, About this time next year, according to the time of life, you shall embrace a son. And she said, Nay, my lord, you man of Elohim, do not lie unto thine handmaid. [Gen 18:10](#); [Gen 18:14](#); [\[2Kgs 4:28\]](#);

17 And the woman conceived, and bore a son at that time that Elisha had said unto her, according to the time of life.

He restores her son when dead

- 18** And when the child was grown, it fell on a day, that he went out to his father to the reapers.
- 19** And he said unto his father, My head, my head. And he said to a lad, Carry him to his mother.
- 20** And when he had taken him, and brought him to his mother, he sat on her knees till noon, and *then* died.
- 21** And she went up, and laid him on the bed of the man of Elohim, and shut *the door* upon him, and went out.
- 22** And she called unto her husband, and said, Send me, I pray you, one of the young men, and one of the asses, that I may run to the man of Elohim, and come again.
- 23** And he said, Wherefore will you go to him to day? *it is* neither new moon, nor Sabbath. And she said, *It shall be* well.
- 24** Then she saddled an ass, and said to her servant, Drive, and go forward; slack not *thy* riding for me, except I bid you.
- 25** So she went and came unto the man of Elohim to mount Carmel. And it came to pass, when the man of Elohim saw her afar off, that he said to Gehazi his servant, Behold, *yonder is* that Shunammite:
- 26** Run now, I pray you, to meet her, and say unto her, *Is it* well with you? *is it* well with thy husband? *is it* well with the child? And she answered, *It is* well.
- 27** And when she came to the man of Elohim to the hill, she caught him by the feet: but Gehazi came near to thrust her away. And the man of Elohim said, Let her alone; for her being *is* vexed within her: and the YAHWEH has hid *it* from me, and has not told me.
- 28** Then she said, Did I desire a son of my lord? did I not say, Do not deceive me? [2Kgs 4:16](#);
- 29** Then he said to Gehazi, Gird up thy loins, and take my staff in thine hand, and go thy way: if you meet any man, salute him not; and if any salute you, answer him not again: and lay my staff upon the face of the child. [Luke 10:4](#);
- 30** And the mother of the child said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, and *as* thy being liveth, I will not leave you. And he arose, and followed her.
- 31** And Gehazi passed on before them, and laid the staff upon the face of the child; but *there was* neither voice, nor hearing. Wherefore he went again to meet him, and told him, saying, The child is not awaked.
- 32** And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead, *and* laid upon his bed.
- 33** He went in therefore, and shut the door upon them twain, and prayed unto the YAHWEH. [Matt 6:6](#); [\[Acts 10:9\]](#);
- 34** And he went up, and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands: and he stretched himself upon the child; and the flesh of the child waxed warm. [\[2Kgs 8:1\]](#); [\[Acts 20:10\]](#);
- 35** Then he returned, and walked in the house to and fro; and went up, and stretched himself upon him: and the child sneezed seven times, and the child opened his eyes. [1Kgs 17:21](#); [2Kgs 8:1](#); [Acts 20:10](#);
- 36** And he called Gehazi, and said, Call this Shunammite. So he called her. And when she was come in unto him, he said, Take up thy son. [\[Heb 11:35\]](#);
- 37** Then she went in, and fell at his feet, and bowed herself to the ground, and took up her son, and went out.

At Gilgal he heals the deadly pottage

- 38** And Elisha came again to Gilgal: and *there was* a dearth in the land; and the sons of the prophets *were* sitting before him: and he said unto his servant, Set on the great pot, and seethe pottage for the sons of the prophets.
- 39** And one went out into the field to gather herbs, and found a wild vine, and gathered thereof wild gourds his lap full, and came and shred *them* into the pot of pottage: for they knew *them* not.

40 So they poured out for the men to eat. And it came to pass, as they were eating of the pottage, that they cried out, and said, O you man of Elohim, *there is* death in the pot. And they could not eat *thereof*.
41 But he said, Then bring meal. And he cast *it* into the pot; and he said, Pour out for the people, that they may eat. And there was no harm in the pot. [Exod 15:25](#);

He satisfies a hundred men with twenty loaves

42 And there came a man from Baalshalisha, and brought the man of Elohim bread of the firstfruits, twenty loaves of barley, and full ears of grain in the husk thereof. And he said, Give unto the people, that they may eat.

43 And his servitor said, What, should I set this before a hundred men? He said again, Give the people, that they may eat: for thus saith the YAHWEH, They shall eat, and shall leave *thereof*. [John 6:9](#); [John 6:11](#);

44 So he set *it* before them, and they did eat, and left *thereof*, according to the word of the YAHWEH.

SECOND KINGS FIVE

Naaman, by the report of a captive maid, is sent to Samaria to be cured of his leprosy

1 Now Naaman, captain of the host of the king of Syria, was a great man with his master, and honourable, because by him the YAHWEH had given deliverance unto Syria: he was also a mighty man in valour, *but he was* a leper.

2 And the Syrians had gone out by companies, and had brought away captive out of the land of Israel a little maid; and she waited on Naaman's wife.

3 And she said unto her mistress, Would Elohim my lord *were* with the prophet that *is* in Samaria! for he would recover him of his leprosy.

4 And *one* went in, and told his lord, saying, Thus and thus said the maid that *is* of the land of Israel.

5 And the king of Syria said, Go to, go, and I will send a letter unto the king of Israel. And he departed, and took with him ten talents of silver, and six thousand *pieces* of gold, and ten changes of raiment.

6 And he brought the letter to the king of Israel, saying, Now when this letter is come unto you, behold, I have *therewith* sent Naaman my servant to you, that you may recover him of his leprosy.

7 And it came to pass, when the king of Israel had read the letter, that he rent his clothes, and said, *Am* I Elohim, to kill and to make alive, that this man sends unto me to recover a man of his leprosy? wherefore consider, I pray you, and see how he seeketh a quarrel against me. [Deut 32:39](#); [1Sam 2:6](#);

Elisha, sending him to Jordan cures him

8 And it was *so*, when Elisha the man of Elohim had heard that the king of Israel had rent his clothes, that he sent to the king, saying, Wherefore have you rent thy clothes? let him come now to me, and he shall know that there is a prophet in Israel.

9 So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariot, and stood at the door of the house of Elisha.

10 And Elisha sent a messenger unto him, saying, Go and wash in Jordan seven times, and thy flesh shall come again to you, and you shall be clean.

11 But Naaman was wroth, and went away, and said, Behold, I thought, He will surely come out to me, and stand, and call on the name of the YAHWEH his Elohim, and strike his hand over the place, and recover the leper.

12 *Are* not Abana and Pharpar, rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? may I not wash in them, and be clean? So he turned and went away in a rage.

13 And his servants came near, and spoke unto him, and said, My father, *if* the prophet had bid you *do* *some* great thing, wouldest you not have done *it*? how much rather then, when he saith to you, Wash, and be clean?

14 Then went he down, and dipped himself seven times in Jordan, according to the saying of the man of Elohim: and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean. [Luke 4:27;](#)

He refusing Naaman's gifts grants him some of the earth

15 And he returned to the man of Elohim, he and all his company, and came, and stood before him: and he said, Behold, now I know that *there is* no Elohim in all the earth, but in Israel: now therefore, I pray you, take a blessing of thy servant.

16 But he said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, before whom I stand, I will receive none. And he urged him to take *it*; but he refused.

17 And Naaman said, Shall there not then, I pray you, be given to thy servant two mules' burden of earth? for thy servant will henceforth offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice unto other gods, but unto the YAHWEH.

18 In this thing the YAHWEH pardon thy servant, *that* when my master goes into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leaneth on my hand, and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon: when I bow down myself in the house of Rimmon, the YAHWEH pardon thy servant in this thing.

19 And he said unto him, Go in peace. So he departed from him a little way.

Gehazi, abusing his master's name unto Naaman, is smitten with leprosy

20 But Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of Elohim, said, Behold, my master has spared Naaman this Syrian, in not receiving at his hands that which he brought: but, *as* the YAHWEH liveth, I will run after him, and take somewhat of him.

21 So Gehazi followed after Naaman. And when Naaman saw *him* running after him, he lighted down from the chariot to meet him, and said, *Is* all well?

22 And he said, All *is* well. My master has sent me, saying, Behold, even now there be come to me from mount Ephraim two young men of the sons of the prophets: give them, I pray you, a talent of silver, and two changes of garments.

23 And Naaman said, Be content, take two talents. And he urged him, and bound two talents of silver in two bags, with two changes of garments, and laid *them* upon two of his servants; and they bore *them* before him.

24 And when he came to the tower, he took *them* from their hand, and bestowed *them* in the house: and he let the men go, and they departed.

25 But he went in, and stood before his master. And Elisha said unto him, Whence come *you*, Gehazi? And he said, Thy servant went no whither.

26 And he said unto him, Went not mine heart *with you*, when the man turned again from his chariot to meet you? *Is it* a time to receive money, and to receive garments, and oliveyards, and vineyards, and sheep, and oxen, and menservants, and maidservants?

27 The leprosy therefore of Naaman shall cleave unto you, and unto thy seed for ever. And he went out from his presence a leper *as white* as snow. [Num 12:10; 2Chr 26:19-20;](#)

SECOND KINGS SIX

Elisha, giving leave to the young prophets to enlarge their dwellings, causes iron to swim

1 And the sons of the prophets said unto Elisha, Behold now, the place where we dwell with you is too strait for us.

- 2** Let us go, we pray you, unto Jordan, and take thence every man a beam, and let us make us a place there, where we may dwell. And he answered, Go you.
- 3** And one said, Be content, I pray you, and go with thy servants. And he answered, I will go.
- 4** So he went with them. And when they came to Jordan, they cut down wood.
- 5** But as one was felling a beam, the axe head fell into the water: and he cried, and said, Alas, master! for it was borrowed.
- 6** And the man of Elohim said, Where fell it? And he showed him the place. And he cut down a stick, and cast *it* in thither; and the iron did swim.
- 7** Therefore said he, Take *it* up to you. And he put out his hand, and took it.

He discloses the king of Syria's counsel

- 8** Then the king of Syria warred against Israel, and took counsel with his servants, saying, In such and such a place *shall be* my camp.
- 9** And the man of Elohim sent unto the king of Israel, saying, Beware that you pass not such a place; for thither the Syrians are come down.
- 10** And the king of Israel sent to the place which the man of Elohim told him and warned him of, and saved himself there, not once nor twice.
- 11** Therefore the heart of the king of Syria was sore troubled for this thing; and he called his servants, and said unto them, Will you not show me which of us *is* for the king of Israel?
- 12** And one of his servants said, None, my lord, O king: but Elisha, the prophet that *is* in Israel, telleth the king of Israel the words that you speakest in thy bedchamber.

The army which was sent to Dothan to apprehend Elisha, is smitten with blindness

- 13** And he said, Go and spy where he *is*, that I may send and fetch him. And it was told him, saying, Behold, *he is* in Dothan.
- 14** Therefore sent he thither horses, and chariots, and a great host: and they came by night, and compassed the city about.
- 15** And when the servant of the man of Elohim was risen early, and gone forth, behold, a host compassed the city both with horses and chariots. And his servant said unto him, Alas, my master! how shall we do?
- 16** And he answered, Fear not: for they that *be* with us *are* more than they that *be* with them. [\[2Chr 32:7\]; \[Heb 11:34\];](#)
- 17** And Elisha prayed, and said, YAHWEH, I pray you, open his eyes, that he may see. And the YAHWEH opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain *was* full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.
- 18** And when they came down to him, Elisha prayed unto the YAHWEH, and said, Smite this people, I pray you, with blindness. And he smote them with blindness according to the word of Elisha. [Gen 19:11;](#)

Being brought into Samaria, they are dismissed in peace

- 19** And Elisha said unto them, This *is* not the way, neither *is* this the city: follow me, and I will bring you to the man whom you seek. But he led them to Samaria.
- 20** And it came to pass, when they were come into Samaria, that Elisha said, YAHWEH, open the eyes of these *men*, that they may see. And the YAHWEH opened their eyes, and they saw; and, behold, *they were* in the midst of Samaria.
- 21** And the king of Israel said unto Elisha, when he saw them, My father, shall I smite *them*? shall I smite *them*?

22 And he answered, you shall not smite *them*: wouldest you smite those whom you have taken captive with thy sword and with thy bow? set bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink, and go to their master.

23 And he prepared great provision for them: and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away, and they went to their master. So the bands of Syria came no more into the land of Israel.

The famine in Samaria causes women to eat their own children

24 And it came to pass after this, that Benhadad king of Syria gathered all his host, and went up, and besieged Samaria.

25 And there was a great famine in Samaria: and, behold, they besieged it, until an ass's head was *sold* for fourscore *pieces* of silver, and the fourth part of a cab of dove's dung for five *pieces* of silver. [Ezek 5:16];

26 And as the king of Israel was passing by upon the wall, there cried a woman unto him, saying, Help, my lord, O king.

27 And he said, If the YAHWEH do not help you, whence shall I help you? out of the barnfloor, or out of the winepress?

28 And the king said unto her, What aileth you? And she answered, This woman said unto me, Give thy son, that we may eat him to day, and we will eat my son to morrow. [Lev 26:29];

29 So we boiled my son, and did eat him: and I said unto her on the next day, Give thy son, that we may eat him: and she has hid her son. Deut 28:53; [Ezek 5:10];

The king sends to slay Elisha

30 And it came to pass, when the king heard the words of the woman, that he rent his clothes; and he passed by upon the wall, and the people looked, and, behold, *he had* sackcloth within upon his flesh. [Matt 11:21];

31 Then he said, Elohim do so and more also to me, if the head of Elisha the son of Shaphat shall stand on him this day. 1Kgs 19:2;

32 But Elisha sat in his house, and the elders sat with him; and *the king* sent a man from before him: but ere the messenger came to him, he said to the elders, See you how this son of a murderer has sent to take away mine head? look, when the messenger cometh, shut the door, and hold him fast at the door: *is* not the sound of his master's feet behind him?

33 And while he yet talked with them, behold, the messenger came down unto him: and he said, Behold, this evil *is* of the YAHWEH; what should I wait for the YAHWEH any longer?

SECOND KINGS SEVEN

Elisha prophesies incredible plenty in Samaria

1 Then Elisha said, Hear you the word of the YAHWEH; Thus saith the YAHWEH, To morrow about this time *shall* a measure of fine flour *be sold* for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria.

2 Then a lord on whose hand the king leaned answered the man of Elohim, and said, Behold, *if* the YAHWEH would make windows in heaven, might this thing be? And he said, Behold, you shall see *it* with thine eyes, but shall not eat thereof.

Four lepers, venturing on the host of the Syrians, bring tidings of their flight

- 3** And there were four leprous men at the entering in of the gate: and they said one to another, Why sit we here until we die? [Lev 13:46](#);
- 4** If we say, We will enter into the city, then the famine *is* in the city, and we shall die there: and if we sit still here, we die also. Now therefore come, and let us fall unto the host of the Syrians: if they save us alive, we shall live; and if they kill us, we shall but die.
- 5** And they rose up in the twilight, to go unto the camp of the Syrians: and when they were come to the uttermost part of the camp of Syria, behold, *there was* no man there.
- 6** For the Lord had made the host of the Syrians to hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses, *even* the noise of a great host: and they said one to another, Lo, the king of Israel has hired against us the kings of the Hittites, and the kings of the Egyptians, to come upon us. [Isa 13:4](#);
- 7** Wherefore they arose and fled in the twilight, and left their tents, and their horses, and their asses, even the camp as it *was*, and fled for their life.
- 8** And when these lepers came to the uttermost part of the camp, they went into one tent, and did eat and drink, and carried thence silver, and gold, and raiment, and went and hid *it*; and came again, and entered into another tent, and carried thence *also*, and went and hid *it*.
- 9** Then they said one to another, We do not well: this day *is* a day of good tidings, and we hold our peace: if we tarry till the morning light, some mischief will come upon us: now therefore come, that we may go and tell the king's household.
- 10** So they came and called unto the porter of the city: and they told them, saying, We came to the camp of the Syrians, and, behold, *there was* no man there, neither voice of man, but horses tied, and asses tied, and the tents as they *were*.
- 11** And he called the porters; and they told *it* to the king's house within.

The king, finding by spies the news to be true, spoils the tents of the Syrians

- 12** And the king arose in the night, and said unto his servants, I will now show you what the Syrians have done to us. They know that we *be* hungry; therefore are they gone out of the camp to hide themselves in the field, saying, When they come out of the city, we shall catch them alive, and get into the city.
- 13** And one of his servants answered and said, Let *some* take, I pray you, five of the horses that remain, which are left in the city, (behold, they *are* as all the multitude of Israel that are left in it: behold, *I say*, they *are* even as all the multitude of the Israelites that are consumed:) and let us send and see.
- 14** They took therefore two chariot horses; and the king sent after the host of the Syrians, saying, Go and see.
- 15** And they went after them unto Jordan: and, lo, all the way *was* full of garments and vessels, which the Syrians had cast away in their haste. And the messengers returned, and told the king.
- 16** And the people went out, and spoiled the tents of the Syrians. So a measure of fine flour was *sold* for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, according to the word of the YAHWEH.

The lord who would not believe the prophecy of plenty, having the charge of the gate, is trodden to death in the press

- 17** And the king appointed the lord on whose hand he leaned to have the charge of the gate: and the people trode upon him in the gate, and he died, as the man of Elohim had said, who spoke when the king came down to him.
- 18** And it came to pass as the man of Elohim had spoken to the king, saying, Two measures of barley for a shekel, and a measure of fine flour for a shekel, shall be to morrow about this time in the gate of Samaria:
- 19** And that lord answered the man of Elohim, and said, Now, behold, *if* the YAHWEH should make windows in heaven, might such a thing be? And he said, Behold, you shall see it with thine eyes, but shall not eat thereof.
- 20** And so it fell out unto him: for the people trode upon him in the gate, and he died.

The Shunammite, having left her country seven years, to avoid the forewarned famine, for Elisha's miracle's sake has her land restored by the king

1 Then spoke Elisha unto the woman, whose son he had restored to life, saying, Arise, and go you and thine household, and sojourn wheresoever you canst sojourn: for the YAHWEH has called for a famine; and it shall also come upon the land seven years. [2Kgs 4:34](#); [\[2Kgs 4:35\]](#);

2 And the woman arose, and did after the saying of the man of Elohim: and she went with her household, and sojourned in the land of the Philistines seven years.

3 And it came to pass at the seven years' end, that the woman returned out of the land of the Philistines: and she went forth to cry unto the king for her house and for her land.

4 And the king talked with Gehazi the servant of the man of Elohim, saying, Tell me, I pray you, all the great things that Elisha has done.

5 And it came to pass, as he was telling the king how he had restored a dead body to life, that, behold, the woman, whose son he had restored to life, cried to the king for her house and for her land. And Gehazi said, My lord, O king, this *is* the woman, and this *is* her son, whom Elisha restored to life.

6 And when the king asked the woman, she told him. So the king appointed unto her a certain officer, saying, Restore all that *was* hers, and all the fruits of the field since the day that she left the land, even until now.

Hazael, being sent with a present by Ben-hadad to Elisha at Damascus, after he had heard the prophecy, kills his master, and succeeds him

7 And Elisha came to Damascus; and Benhadad the king of Syria was sick; and it was told him, saying, The man of Elohim is come hither.

8 And the king said unto Hazael, Take a present in thine hand, and go, meet the man of Elohim, and enquire of the YAHWEH by him, saying, Shall I recover of this disease? [1Kgs 14:2-3](#); [2Kgs 1:2](#);

9 So Hazael went to meet him, and took a present with him, even of every good thing of Damascus, forty camels' burden, and came and stood before him, and said, Thy son Benhadad king of Syria has sent me to you, saying, Shall I recover of this disease?

10 And Elisha said unto him, Go, say unto him, you may certainly recover: howbeit the YAHWEH has showed me that he shall surely die.

11 And he settled his countenance stedfastly, until he was ashamed: and the man of Elohim wept.

12 And Hazael said, Why weepeth my lord? And he answered, Because I know the evil that you will do unto the children of Israel: their strong holds will you set on fire, and their young men will you slay with the sword, and will dash their children, and rip up their women with child. [2Kgs 10:32](#); [2Kgs 12:17](#); [2Kgs 13:7](#);

13 And Hazael said, But what, *is* thy servant a dog, that he should do this great thing? And Elisha answered, The YAHWEH has showed me that you shall *be* king over Syria.

14 So he departed from Elisha, and came to his master; who said to him, What said Elisha to you? And he answered, He told me *that* you should surely recover.

15 And it came to pass on the morrow, that he took a thick cloth, and dipped *it* in water, and spread *it* on his face, so that he died: and Hazael reigned in his stead.

Jehoram's wicked reign in Judah

16 And in the fifth year of Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel, Jehoshaphat *being* then king of Judah, Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah began to reign. [2Chr 21:4-5](#); [\[1Chr 3:11\]](#); [\[2Chr 21:1\]](#);

17 Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. [\[2Chr 21:5\];](#)

18 And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, as did the house of Ahab: for the daughter of Ahab was his wife: and he did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH.

19 Yet the YAHWEH would not destroy Judah for David his servant's sake, as he promised him to give him always a light, *and* to his children. [2Sam 7:13; 1Kgs 11:36; 1Kgs 15:4; Ps 132:17;](#)

Edom and Libnah revolt

20 In his days Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and made a king over themselves. [Gen 27:40; 2Chr 21:8;](#)

21 So Joram went over to Zair, and all the chariots with him: and he rose by night, and smote the Edomites which compassed him about, and the captains of the chariots: and the people fled into their tents. [\[2Chr 21:9\];](#)

22 Yet Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day. Then Libnah revolted at the same time. [\[2Chr 21:10\];](#)

Ahaziah succeeds Jehoram

23 And the rest of the acts of Joram, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

24 And Joram slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David: and Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead. [2Chr 21:19; \[2Chr 22:1\];](#)

Ahaziah's wicked reign

25 In the twelfth year of Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel did Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah begin to reign. [2Chr 22:1; \[1Chr 3:11\];](#)

26 Two and twenty years old *was* Ahaziah when he began to reign; and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Athaliah, the daughter of Omri king of Israel. [2Chr 22:2;](#)

27 And he walked in the way of the house of Ahab, and did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, as *did* the house of Ahab: for he *was* the son in law of the house of Ahab.

He visits Joram, being wounded, at Jezreel

28 And he went with Joram the son of Ahab to the war against Hazael king of Syria in Ramothgilead; and the Syrians wounded Joram. [\[2Chr 22:5\];](#)

29 And king Joram went back to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds which the Syrians had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael king of Syria. And Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Joram the son of Ahab in Jezreel, because he was sick. [2Kgs 9:15; 2Chr 22:6-7;](#)

Elisha sends a young prophet with instructions to anoint Jehu at Ramoth-gilead

1 And Elisha the prophet called one of the children of the prophets, and said unto him, Gird up thy loins, and take this box of oil in thine hand, and go to Ramothgilead: [1Kgs 19:16](#);

2 And when you come thither, look out there Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi, and go in, and make him arise up from among his brethren, and carry him to an inner chamber;

3 Then take the box of oil, and pour *it* on his head, and say, Thus saith the YAHWEH, I have anointed you king over Israel. Then open the door, and flee, and tarry not. [2Chr 22:7](#);

The prophet having done his message, flees

4 So the young man, *even* the young man the prophet, went to Ramothgilead.

5 And when he came, behold, the captains of the host *were* sitting; and he said, I have an errand to you, O captain. And Jehu said, Unto which of all us? And he said, To you, O captain.

6 And he arose, and went into the house; and he poured the oil on his head, and said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, I have anointed you king over the people of the YAHWEH, *even* over Israel.

7 And you shall smite the house of Ahab thy master, that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of the YAHWEH, at the hand of Jezebel. [\[1Kgs 21:21\]](#); [\[Rev 2:20\]](#);

8 For the whole house of Ahab shall perish: and I will cut off from Ahab him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel: [1Kgs 21:21](#); [\[1Kgs 14:10\]](#);

9 And I will make the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah: [1Kgs 14:10](#); [1Kgs 15:29](#); [1Kgs 16:3](#); [1Kgs 16:11](#);

10 And the dogs shall eat Jezebel in the portion of Jezreel, and *there shall be* none to bury *her*. And he opened the door, and fled. [1Kgs 21:23](#);

Jehu, being made king by the soldiers, kills Joram in the field of Naboth

11 Then Jehu came forth to the servants of his lord: and *one* said unto him, *Is* all well? wherefore came this mad *fellow* to you? And he said unto them, you know the man, and his communication.

12 And they said, *It is* false; tell us now. And he said, Thus and thus spoke he to me, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH, I have anointed you king over Israel.

13 Then they hasted, and took every man his garment, and put *it* under him on the top of the stairs, and blew with trumpets, saying, Jehu is king. [\[Matt 21:7\]](#); [\[Mark 11:7\]](#); [\[Luke 19:35\]](#);

14 So Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. (Now Joram had kept Ramothgilead, he and all Israel, because of Hazael king of Syria. [\[1Kgs 19:17\]](#);

15 But king Joram was returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds which the Syrians had given him, when he fought with Hazael king of Syria.) And Jehu said, If it be your minds, *then* let none go forth *nor* escape out of the city to go to tell *it* in Jezreel. [2Kgs 8:29](#);

16 So Jehu rode in a chariot, and went to Jezreel; for Joram lay there. And Ahaziah king of Judah was come down to see Joram.

17 And there stood a watchman on the tower in Jezreel, and he spied the company of Jehu as he came, and said, I see a company. And Joram said, Take a horseman, and send to meet them, and let him say, *Is it* peace?

18 So there went one on horseback to meet him, and said, Thus saith the king, *Is it* peace? And Jehu said, What have you to do with peace? turn you behind me. And the watchman told, saying, The messenger came to them, but he cometh not again.

19 Then he sent out a second on horseback, which came to them, and said, Thus saith the king, *Is it* peace? And Jehu answered, What have you to do with peace? turn you behind me.

20 And the watchman told, saying, He came even unto them, and cometh not again: and the driving *is* like the driving of Jehu the son of Nimshi; for he driveth furiously.

21 And Joram said, Make ready. And his chariot was made ready. And Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah king of Judah went out, each in his chariot, and they went out against Jehu, and met him in the portion of Naboth the Jezreelite.

22 And it came to pass, when Joram saw Jehu, that he said, *Is it* peace, Jehu? And he answered, What peace, so long as the whoredoms of thy mother Jezebel and her witchcrafts *are so* many?

23 And Joram turned his hands, and fled, and said to Ahaziah, *There is* treachery, O Ahaziah.

24 And Jehu drew a bow with his full strength, and smote Jehoram between his arms, and the arrow went out at his heart, and he sunk down in his chariot.

25 Then said *Jehu* to Bidkar his captain, Take up, *and* cast him in the portion of the field of Naboth the Jezreelite: for remember how that, when I and you rode together after Ahab his father, the YAHWEH laid this burden upon him;

26 Surely I have seen yosterday the blood of Naboth, and the blood of his sons, saith the YAHWEH; and I will requite you in this plat, saith the YAHWEH. Now therefore take *and* cast him into the plat *of* ground, according to the word of the YAHWEH. [1Kgs 21:19](#);

Ahaziah is slain at Gur, and buried at Jerusalem

27 But when Ahaziah the king of Judah saw *this*, he fled by the way of the garden house. And Jehu followed after him, and said, Smite him also in the chariot. *And they did so* at the going up to Gur, which *is* by Ibleam. And he fled to Megiddo, and died there. [\[2Chr 22:9\]](#);

28 And his servants carried him in a chariot to Jerusalem, and buried him in his sepulcher with his fathers in the city of David.

29 And in the eleventh year of Joram the son of Ahab began Ahaziah to reign over Judah.

Proud Jezebel is thrown down out of a window, and eaten by dogs

30 And when Jehu was come to Jezreel, Jezebel heard *of it*; and she painted her face, and tired her head, and looked out at a window.

31 And as Jehu entered in at the gate, she said, *Had* Zimri peace, who slew his master? [1Kgs 16:18](#); [\[1Kgs 16:10\]](#);

32 And he lifted up his face to the window, and said, Who *is* on my side? who? And there looked out to him two *or* three eunuchs.

33 And he said, Throw her down. So they threw her down: and *some* of her blood was sprinkled on the wall, and on the horses: and he trode her under foot.

34 And when he was come in, he did eat and drink, and said, Go, see now this cursed *woman*, and bury her: for she *is* a king's daughter. [1Kgs 16:31](#);

35 And they went to bury her: but they found no more of her than the skull, and the feet, and the palms of *her* hands. [\[1Kgs 21:23\]](#);

36 Wherefore they came again, and told him. And he said, This *is* the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, In the portion of Jezreel shall dogs eat the flesh of Jezebel: [1Kgs 21:23](#);

37 And the carcase of Jezebel shall be as dung upon the face of the field in the portion of Jezreel; *so* that they shall not say, This *is* Jezebel.

Jehu, by his letters, causes seventy of Ahab's children to be beheaded

1 And Ahab had seventy sons in Samaria. And Jehu wrote letters, and sent to Samaria, unto the rulers of Jezreel, to the elders, and to them that brought up Ahab's *children*, saying,

2 Now as soon as this letter cometh to you, seeing your master's sons *are* with you, and *there are* with you chariots and horses, a fenced city also, and armour;

3 Look even out the best and meetest of your master's sons, and set *him* on his father's throne, and fight for your master's house.

4 But they were exceedingly afraid, and said, Behold, two kings stood not before him: how then shall we stand?

5 And he that *was* over the house, and he that *was* over the city, the elders also, and the bringers up *of the children*, sent to Jehu, saying, We *are* thy servants, and will do all that you shall bid us; we will not make any king: do you *that which is* good in thine eyes.

6 Then he wrote a letter the second time to them, saying, If you *be* mine, and *if* you will hearken unto my voice, take you the heads of the men your master's sons, and come to me to Jezreel by to morrow this time. Now the king's sons, *being* seventy persons, *were* with the great men of the city, which brought them up.

7 And it came to pass, when the letter came to them, that they took the king's sons, and slew seventy persons, and put their heads in baskets, and sent him *them* to Jezreel.

He excuses the fact by the prophecy of Elijah

8 And there came a messenger, and told him, saying, They have brought the heads of the king's sons. And he said, Lay you them in two heaps at the entering in of the gate until the morning.

9 And it came to pass in the morning, that he went out, and stood, and said to all the people, you *be* righteous: behold, I conspired against my master, and slew him: but who slew all these?

10 Know now that there shall fall unto the earth nothing of the word of the YAHWEH, which the YAHWEH spoke concerning the house of Ahab: for the YAHWEH has done *that* which he spoke by his servant Elijah. [1Kgs 21:19](#); [1Kgs 21:21](#); [1Kgs 21:29](#);

11 So Jehu slew all that remained of the house of Ahab in Jezreel, and all his great men, and his kinsfolks, and his priests, until he left him none remaining.

At the shearing house he slays two and forty of Ahaziah's brethren

12 And he arose and departed, and came to Samaria. *And* as he *was* at the shearing house in the way,

13 Jehu met with the brethren of Ahaziah king of Judah, and said, Who *are* you? And they answered, We *are* the brethren of Ahaziah; and we go down to salute the children of the king and the children of the queen. [2Chr 22:8](#);

14 And he said, Take them alive. And they took them alive, and slew them at the pit of the shearing house, *even* two and forty men; neither left he any of them. [\[2Chr 22:8\]](#);

He takes Jehonadab into his company

15 And when he was departed thence, he lighted on Jehonadab the son of Rechab *coming* to meet him: and he saluted him, and said to him, Is thine heart right, as my heart *is* with thy heart? And Jehonadab answered, It is. If it be, give *me* thine hand. And he gave *him* his hand; and he took him up to him into the chariot.

16 And he said, Come with me, and see my zeal for the YAHWEH. So they made him ride in his chariot.

17 And when he came to Samaria, he slew all that remained unto Ahab in Samaria, till he had destroyed him, according to the saying of the YAHWEH, which he spoke to Elijah. [2Chr 22:8](#);

By subtilty he destroys all the worshippers of Baal

18 And Jehu gathered all the people together, and said unto them, Ahab served Baal a little; *but* Jehu shall serve him much.

19 Now therefore call unto me all the prophets of Baal, all his servants, and all his priests; let none be wanting: for I have a great sacrifice *to do* to Baal; whosoever shall be wanting, he shall not live. But Jehu did *it* in subtilty, to the intent that he might destroy the worshippers of Baal.

20 And Jehu said, Proclaim a solemn assembly for Baal. And they proclaimed *it*.

21 And Jehu sent through all Israel: and all the worshippers of Baal came, so that there was not a man left that came not. And they came into the house of Baal; and the house of Baal was full from one end to another.

22 And he said unto him that *was* over the vestry, Bring forth vestments for all the worshippers of Baal. And he brought them forth vestments.

23 And Jehu went, and Jehonadab the son of Rechab, into the house of Baal, and said unto the worshippers of Baal, Search, and look that there be here with you none of the servants of the YAHWEH, but the worshippers of Baal only.

24 And when they went in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings, Jehu appointed fourscore men without, and said, *If* any of the men whom I have brought into your hands escape, *he that letteth him go*, his life *shall be* for the life of him.

25 And it came to pass, as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt offering, that Jehu said to the guard and to the captains, Go in, *and* slay them; let none come forth. And they smote them with the edge of the sword; and the guard and the captains cast *them* out, and went to the city of the house of Baal.

26 And they brought forth the images out of the house of Baal, and burned them.

27 And they brake down the image of Baal, and brake down the house of Baal, and made it a draught house unto this day.

28 Thus Jehu destroyed Baal out of Israel.

Jehu follows Jeroboam's sins

29 Howbeit *from* the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin, Jehu departed not from after them, *to wit*, the golden calves that *were* in Bethel, and that *were* in Dan. [1Kgs 12:28](#);

30 And the YAHWEH said unto Jehu, Because you have done well in executing *that which is* right in mine eyes, *and* have done unto the house of Ahab according to all that *was* in mine heart, thy children of the fourth *generation* shall sit on the throne of Israel. [2Kgs 15:12](#);

31 But Jehu took no heed to walk in the law of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel with all his heart: for he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam, which made Israel to sin.

Hazael oppresses Israel

32 In those days the YAHWEH began to cut Israel short: and Hazael smote them in all the coasts of Israel; [\[2Kgs 8:12\]](#);

33 From Jordan eastward, all the land of Gilead, the Gadites, and the Reubenites, and the Manassites, from Aroer, which *is* by the river Arnon, even Gilead and Bashan.

Jehoahaz succeeds Jehu

34 Now the rest of the acts of Jehu, and all that he did, and all his might, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

35 And Jehu slept with his fathers: and they buried him in Samaria. And Jehoahaz his son reigned in his stead.

36 And the time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria *was* twenty and eight years.

Jehoash, being saved by Jehosheba his aunt from Athaliah's massacre of the seed royal, is hid six years in the house of Elohim

- 1** And when Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the seed royal. [2Chr 22:10](#);
- 2** But Jehosheba, the daughter of king Joram, sister of Ahaziah, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him from among the king's sons *which were* slain; and they hid him, *even* him and his nurse, in the bedchamber from Athaliah, so that he was not slain. [\[1Chr 3:11\]](#);
- 3** And he was with her hid in the house of the YAHWEH six years. And Athaliah did reign over the land.

Jehoiada, giving order to the captains, in the seventh year anoints him king

- 4** And the seventh year Jehoiada sent and fetched the rulers over hundreds, with the captains and the guard, and brought them to him into the house of the YAHWEH, and made a covenant with them, and took an oath of them in the house of the YAHWEH, and showed them the king's son. [2Chr 23:1](#);
- 5** And he commanded them, saying, This *is* the thing that you shall do; A third part of you that enter in on the Sabbath shall even be keepers of the watch of the king's house;
- 6** And a third part *shall be* at the gate of Sur; and a third part at the gate behind the guard: so shall you keep the watch of the house, that it be not broken down.
- 7** And two parts of all you that go forth on the Sabbath, even they shall keep the watch of the house of the YAHWEH about the king.
- 8** And you shall compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand: and he that cometh within the ranges, let him be slain: and be you with the king as he goes out and as he cometh in.
- 9** And the captains over the hundreds did according to all *things* that Jehoiada the priest commanded: and they took every man his men that were to come in on the Sabbath, with them that should go out on the Sabbath, and came to Jehoiada the priest. [2Chr 23:8](#);
- 10** And to the captains over hundreds did the priest give king David's spears and shields, that *were* in the temple of the YAHWEH.
- 11** And the guard stood, every man with his weapons in his hand, round about the king, from the right corner of the temple to the left corner of the temple, *along* by the altar and the temple.
- 12** And he brought forth the king's son, and put the crown upon him, and *gave him* the testimony; and they made him king, and anointed him; and they clapped their hands, and said, Elohim save the king.

Athaliah is slain

- 13** And when Athaliah heard the noise of the guard *and* of the people, she came to the people into the temple of the YAHWEH.
- 14** And when she looked, behold, the king stood by a pillar, as the manner *was*, and the princes and the trumpeters by the king, and all the people of the land rejoiced, and blew with trumpets: and Athaliah rent her clothes, and cried, Treason, Treason.
- 15** But Jehoiada the priest commanded the captains of the hundreds, the officers of the host, and said unto them, Have her forth without the ranges: and him that followeth her kill with the sword. For the priest had said, Let her not be slain in the house of the YAHWEH.
- 16** And they laid hands on her; and she went by the way by the which the horses came into the king's house: and there was she slain.

Jehoiada restores the worship of Elohim

17 And Jehoiada made a covenant between the YAHWEH and the king and the people, that they should be the YAHWEH'S people; between the king also and the people. [2Chr 23:16](#);

18 And all the people of the land went into the house of Baal, and brake it down; his altars and his images brake they in pieces thoroughly, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. And the priest appointed officers over the house of the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 23:17\]](#);

19 And he took the rulers over hundreds, and the captains, and the guard, and all the people of the land; and they brought down the king from the house of the YAHWEH, and came by the way of the gate of the guard to the king's house. And he sat on the throne of the kings.

20 And all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was in quiet: and they slew Athaliah with the sword *beside* the king's house.

21 Seven years old *was* Jehoash when he began to reign.

SECOND KINGS TWELVE

Jehoash reigns well all the days of Jehoiada

1 In the seventh year of Jehu Jehoash began to reign; and forty years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Zibiah of Beersheba. [2Chr 24:1](#);

2 And Jehoash did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH all his days wherein Jehoiada the priest instructed him.

3 But the high places were not taken away: the people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.

He gives order for the repair of the temple

4 And Jehoash said to the priests, All the money of the dedicated things that is brought into the house of the YAHWEH, *even* the money of every one that passeth *the account*, the money that every man is set at, *and* all the money that cometh into any man's heart to bring into the house of the YAHWEH, [2Chr 22:3](#);

5 Let the priests take *it* to them, every man of his acquaintance: and let them repair the breaches of the house, wheresoever any breach shall be found.

6 But it was *so, that* in the three and twentieth year of king Jehoash the priests had not repaired the breaches of the house.

7 Then king Jehoash called for Jehoiada the priest, and the *other* priests, and said unto them, Why repair you not the breaches of the house? now therefore receive no *more* money of your acquaintance, but deliver it for the breaches of the house.

8 And the priests consented to receive no *more* money of the people, neither to repair the breaches of the house.

9 But Jehoiada the priest took a chest, and bored a hole in the lid of it, and set it beside the altar, on the right side as one cometh into the house of the YAHWEH: and the priests that kept the door put therein all the money *that was* brought into the house of the YAHWEH. [\[Mark 12:41\]](#); [\[Luke 21:1\]](#);

10 And it was *so*, when they saw that *there was* much money in the chest, that the king's scribe and the high priest came up, and they put up in bags, and told the money that was found in the house of the YAHWEH.

11 And they gave the money, being told, into the hands of them that did the work, that had the oversight of the house of the YAHWEH: and they laid it out to the carpenters and builders, that wrought upon the house of the YAHWEH,

12 And to masons, and hewers of stone, and to buy timber and hewed stone to repair the breaches of the house of the YAHWEH, and for all that was laid out for the house to repair *it*.

13 Howbeit there were not made for the house of the YAHWEH bowls of silver, snuffers, basins, trumpets, any vessels of gold, or vessels of silver, of the money *that was* brought into the house of the YAHWEH:

14 But they gave that to the workmen, and repaired therewith the house of the YAHWEH.

15 Moreover they reckoned not with the men, into whose hand they delivered the money to be bestowed on workmen: for they dealt faithfully.

16 The trespass money and sin money was not brought into the house of the YAHWEH: it was the priests'.

Hazael is diverted from Jerusalem by a present of the hallowed treasures

17 Then Hazael king of Syria went up, and fought against Gath, and took it: and Hazael set his face to go up to Jerusalem. [2Kgs 13:25](#); [2Kgs 8:12](#); [2Chr 24:23](#);

18 And Jehoash king of Judah took all the hallowed things that Jehoshaphat, and Jehoram, and Ahaziah, his fathers, kings of Judah, had dedicated, and his own hallowed things, and all the gold *that was* found in the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH, and in the king's house, and sent *it* to Hazael king of Syria: and he went away from Jerusalem. [2Kgs 18:15](#);

Jehoash being slain, Amaziah succeeds him

19 And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

20 And his servants arose, and made a conspiracy, and slew Joash in the house of Millo, which goes down to Silla. [2Kgs 14:5](#);

21 For Jozachar the son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad the son of Shomer, his servants, smote him, and he died; and they buried him with his fathers in the city of David: and Amaziah his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:12\]](#); [\[2Chr 24:26\]](#);

SECOND KINGS THIRTEEN

Jehoahaz's wicked reign

1 In the three and twentieth year of Joash the son of Ahaziah king of Judah Jehoahaz the son of Jehu began to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* seventeen years.

2 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, and followed the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, which made Israel to sin; he departed not therefrom.

Jehoahaz, oppressed by Hazael, is relieved by prayer

3 And the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Israel, and he delivered them into the hand of Hazael king of Syria, and into the hand of Benhadad the son of Hazael, all *their* days.

4 And Jehoahaz besought the YAHWEH, and the YAHWEH hearkened unto him: for he saw the oppression of Israel, because the king of Syria oppressed them.

5 (And the YAHWEH gave Israel a saviour, so that they went out from under the hand of the Syrians: and the children of Israel dwelt in their tents, as before.

6 Nevertheless they departed not from the sins of the house of Jeroboam, who made Israel sin, *but* walked therein: and there remained the grove also in Samaria.)

7 Neither did he leave of the people to Jehoahaz but fifty horsemen, and ten chariots, and ten thousand footmen; for the king of Syria had destroyed them, and had made them like the dust by threshing. [\[2Kgs 8:12\]](#);

Joash succeeds him

8 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoahaz, and all that he did, and his might, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

9 And Jehoahaz slept with his fathers; and they buried him in Samaria: and Joash his son reigned in his stead.

His wicked reign

10 In the thirty and seventh year of Joash king of Judah began Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* sixteen years.

11 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH; he departed not from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel sin: *but* he walked therein.

Jeroboam succeeds him

12 And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, and his might wherewith he fought against Amaziah king of Judah, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

13 And Joash slept with his fathers; and Jeroboam sat upon his throne: and Joash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.

Elisha dying, prophecies to Joash three victories over the Syrians

14 Now Elisha was fallen sick of his sickness whereof he died. And Joash the king of Israel came down unto him, and wept over his face, and said, O my father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof. [2Kgs 2:12](#);

15 And Elisha said unto him, Take bow and arrows. And he took unto him bow and arrows.

16 And he said to the king of Israel, Put thine hand upon the bow. And he put his hand *upon it*: and Elisha put his hands upon the king's hands.

17 And he said, Open the window eastward. And he opened *it*. Then Elisha said, Shoot. And he shot. And he said, The arrow of the YAHWEH'S deliverance, and the arrow of deliverance from Syria: for you shall smite the Syrians in Aphek, till you have consumed *them*. [1Kgs 20:30](#);

18 And he said, Take the arrows. And he took *them*. And he said unto the king of Israel, Smite upon the ground. And he smote thrice, and stayed.

19 And the man of Elohim was wroth with him, and said, you should have smitten five or six times; then hadst you smitten Syria till you hadst consumed *it*: whereas now you shall smite Syria *but* thrice.

The Moabites invading the land, Elisha's bones raise a dead man

20 And Elisha died, and they buried him. And the bands of the Moabites invaded the land at the coming in of the year.

21 And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band *of men*; and they cast the man into the sepulcher of Elisha: and when the man was let down, and touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood up on his feet.

Joash gets three victories over Ben-hadad

22 But Hazael king of Syria oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.

23 And the YAHWEH was gracious unto them, and had compassion on them, and had respect unto them, because of his covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and would not destroy them, neither cast he them from his presence as yet.

24 So Hazael king of Syria died; and Benhadad his son reigned in his stead.

25 And Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz took again out of the hand of Benhadad the son of Hazael the cities, which he had taken out of the hand of Jehoahaz his father by war. Three times did Joash beat him, and recovered the cities of Israel. [\[2Kgs 12:17\]](#);

Amaziah's good reign

1 In the second year of Joash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel reigned Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah. [2Chr 25:1];

2 He was twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Jehoaddan of Jerusalem. 2Chr 25:1;

3 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, yet not like David his father: he did according to all things as Joash his father did.

4 Howbeit the high places were not taken away: as yet the people did sacrifice and burnt incense on the high places.

His justice on the murderers of his father

5 And it came to pass, as soon as the kingdom was confirmed in his hand, that he slew his servants which had slain the king his father. [2Kgs 12:20];

6 But the children of the murderers he slew not: according unto that which is written in the book of the law of Moses, wherein the YAHWEH commanded, saying, The fathers shall not be put to death for the children, nor the children be put to death for the fathers; but every man shall be put to death for his own sin. Deut 24:16; Ezek 18:20; [2Chr 25:4]; [Ezek 18:19];

His victory over Edom

7 He slew of Edom in the valley of salt ten thousand, and took Selah by war, and called the name of it Joktheel unto this day.

Amaziah, provoking Jehoash, is overcome and spoiled

8 Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash, the son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, Come, let us look one another in the face. [2Chr 25:17];

9 And Jehoash the king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, The thistle that *was* in Lebanon sent to the cedar that *was* in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to wife: and there passed by a wild beast that *was* in Lebanon, and trode down the thistle.

10 *you* have indeed smitten Edom, and thine heart has lifted you up: glory *of this*, and tarry at home: for why should you meddle to *thy* hurt, that you should fall, *even* you, and Judah with you?

11 But Amaziah would not hear. Therefore Jehoash king of Israel went up; and he and Amaziah king of Judah looked one another in the face at Bethshemesh, which *belongeth* to Judah.

12 And Judah was put to the worse before Israel; and they fled every man to their tents.

13 And Jehoash king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah, the son of Jehoash the son of Ahaziah, at Bethshemesh, and came to Jerusalem, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim unto the corner gate, four hundred cubits.

14 And he took all the gold and silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of the YAHWEH, and in the treasures of the king's house, and hostages, and returned to Samaria.

Jeroboam succeeds Jehoash

15 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoash which he did, and his might, and how he fought with Amaziah king of Judah, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

16 And Jehoash slept with his fathers, and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel; and Jeroboam his son reigned in his stead.

Amaziah slain by a conspiracy

17 And Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah lived after the death of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel fifteen years.

18 And the rest of the acts of Amaziah, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? [2Chr 25:26];

19 Now they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem: and he fled to Lachish; but they sent after him to Lachish, and slew him there. 2Chr 25:27;

20 And they brought him on horses: and he was buried at Jerusalem with his fathers in the city of David.

Azariah succeeds him

21 And all the people of Judah took Azariah, which *was* sixteen years old, and made him king instead of his father Amaziah. 2Chr 26:1; [2Kgs 15:1]; [1Chr 3:12];

22 He built Elath, and restored it to Judah, after that the king slept with his fathers. [2Chr 26:2];

Jeroboam's wicked reign

23 In the fifteenth year of Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah Jeroboam the son of Joash king of Israel began to reign in Samaria, *and reigned* forty and one years.

24 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH: he departed not from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin.

25 He restored the coast of Israel from the entering of Hamath unto the sea of the plain, according to the word of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, which he spoke by the hand of his servant Jonah, the son of Amittai, the prophet, which *was* of Gathhepher. Jonah 1:1; Matt 12:39-40;

26 For the YAHWEH saw the affliction of Israel, *that it was* very bitter: for *there was* not any shut up, nor any left, nor any helper for Israel.

27 And the YAHWEH said not that he would blot out the name of Israel from under heaven: but he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam the son of Joash.

Zachariah succeeds him

28 Now the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, and all that he did, and his might, how he warred, and how he recovered Damascus, and Hamath, *which belonged* to Judah, for Israel, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

29 And Jeroboam slept with his fathers, *even* with the kings of Israel; and Zachariah his son reigned in his stead.

Azariah's good reign

1 In the twenty and seventh year of Jeroboam king of Israel began Azariah son of Amaziah king of Judah to reign. [2Kgs 14:21](#); [2Chr 26:1](#);

2 Sixteen years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned two and fifty years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Jecholiah of Jerusalem. [2Chr 26:3](#);

3 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that his father Amaziah had done;

4 Save that the high places were not removed: the people sacrificed and burnt incense still on the high places.

He dying a leper, Jotham succeeds

5 And the YAHWEH smote the king, so that he was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a several house. And Jotham the king's son *was* over the house, judging the people of the land. [\[2Chr 26:21\]](#);

6 And the rest of the acts of Azariah, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

7 So Azariah slept with his fathers; and they buried him with his fathers in the city of David: and Jotham his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:12\]](#); [\[Isa 6:1\]](#);

Zachariah the last of Jehu's generation, reigning ill, is slain by Shallum

8 In the thirty and eighth year of Azariah king of Judah did Zachariah the son of Jeroboam reign over Israel in Samaria six months.

9 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, as his fathers had done: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin.

10 And Shallum the son of Jabesh conspired against him, and smote him before the people, and slew him, and reigned in his stead.

11 And the rest of the acts of Zachariah, behold, they *are* written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

12 This *was* the word of the YAHWEH which he spoke unto Jehu, saying, Thy sons shall sit on the throne of Israel unto the fourth *generation*. And so it came to pass. [2Kgs 10:30](#);

Shallum, reigning a month, is slain by Menahem

13 Shallum the son of Jabesh began to reign in the nine and thirtieth year of Uzziah king of Judah; and he reigned a full month in Samaria.

14 For Menahem the son of Gadi went up from Tirzah, and came to Samaria, and smote Shallum the son of Jabesh in Samaria, and slew him, and reigned in his stead.

15 And the rest of the acts of Shallum, and his conspiracy which he made, behold, they *are* written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

Menahem strengthens himself by Pul

16 Then Menahem smote Tiphseh, and all that *were* therein, and the coasts thereof from Tirzah: because they opened not *to him*, therefore he smote *it*; *and* all the women therein that were with child he ripped up.

17 In the nine and thirtieth year of Azariah king of Judah began Menahem the son of Gadi to reign over Israel, *and reigned* ten years in Samaria.

18 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH: he departed not all his days from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin.

19 *And* Pul the king of Assyria came against the land: and Menahem gave Pul a thousand talents of silver, that his hand might be with him to confirm the kingdom in his hand. [1Chr 5:26](#);

20 And Menahem exacted the money of Israel, *even* of all the mighty men of wealth, of each man fifty shekels of silver, to give to the king of Assyria. So the king of Assyria turned back, and stayed not there in the land.

Pekahiah succeeds him

21 And the rest of the acts of Menahem, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

22 And Menahem slept with his fathers; and Pekahiah his son reigned in his stead.

Pekahiah is slain by Pekah

23 In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah Pekahiah the son of Menahem began to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* two years.

24 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin.

25 But Pekah the son of Remaliah, a captain of his, conspired against him, and smote him in Samaria, in the palace of the king's house, with Argob and Arieah, and with him fifty men of the Gileadites: and he killed him, and reigned in his room.

26 And the rest of the acts of Pekahiah, and all that he did, behold, they *are* written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

Pekah is oppressed by Tiglath-pileser, and slain by Hoshea

27 In the two and fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah Pekah the son of Remaliah began to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* twenty years.

28 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin.

29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abelbethmaachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and carried them captive to Assyria. [Isa 9:1](#);

30 And Hoshea the son of Elah made a conspiracy against Pekah the son of Remaliah, and smote him, and slew him, and reigned in his stead, in the twentieth year of Jotham the son of Uzziah.

31 And the rest of the acts of Pekah, and all that he did, behold, they *are* written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

Jotham's good reign

32 In the second year of Pekah the son of Remaliah king of Israel began Jotham the son of Uzziah king of Judah to reign.

33 Five and twenty years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Jerusha, the daughter of Zadok. [2Chr 27:1](#);

34 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH: he did according to all that his father Uzziah had done.

35 Howbeit the high places were not removed: the people sacrificed and burned incense still in the high places. He built the higher gate of the house of the YAHWEH.

Ahaz succeeds him

36 Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

37 In those days the YAHWEH began to send against Judah Rezin the king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah. [2Chr 16:5](#); [Isa 7:1](#);

38 And Jotham slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his father: and Ahaz his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:13\]](#);

Ahaz's wicked reign

1 In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah Ahaz the son of Jotham king of Judah began to reign. [2Chr 28:1](#);

2 Twenty years old *was* Ahaz when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem, and did not *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH his Elohim, like David his father. [\[2Chr 28:1\]](#);

3 But he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, yes, and made his son to pass through the fire, according to the abominations of the heathen, whom the YAHWEH cast out from before the children of Israel. [Lev 18:21](#); [Lev 20:2-3](#); [2Kgs 17:31](#); [\[2Kgs 17:17\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:6\]](#); [\[Ps 106:37\]](#);

4 And he sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree.

Ahaz, assailed by Rezin and Pekah, hires Tiglath-pileser against them

5 Then Rezin king of Syria and Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel came up to Jerusalem to war: and they besieged Ahaz, but could not overcome *him*. [Isa 7:1](#);

6 At that time Rezin king of Syria recovered Elath to Syria, and drave the Jews from Elath: and the Syrians came to Elath, and dwelt there unto this day.

7 So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, saying, I *am* thy servant and thy son: come up, and save me out of the hand of the king of Syria, and out of the hand of the king of Israel, which rise up against me. [\[Ezek 23:12\]](#);

8 And Ahaz took the silver and gold that was found in the house of the YAHWEH, and in the treasures of the king's house, and sent *it for* a present to the king of Assyria. [2Chr 28:21](#);

9 And the king of Assyria hearkened unto him: for the king of Assyria went up against Damascus, and took it, and carried *the people of* it captive to Kir, and slew Rezin. [\[Amos 1:5\]](#);

Ahaz, sending a pattern of an altar from Damascus to Urijah, diverts the brazen altar to his own devotions

10 And king Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and saw an altar that *was* at Damascus: and king Ahaz sent to Urijah the priest the fashion of the altar, and the pattern of it, according to all the workmanship thereof.

11 And Urijah the priest built an altar according to all that king Ahaz had sent from Damascus: so Urijah the priest made *it* before king Ahaz came from Damascus.

12 And when the king was come from Damascus, the king saw the altar: and the king approached to the altar, and offered thereon.

13 And he burnt his burnt offering and his meat offering, and poured his drink offering, and sprinkled the blood of his peace offerings, upon the altar.

14 And he brought also the brasen altar, which *was* before the YAHWEH, from the forefront of the house, from between the altar and the house of the YAHWEH, and put it on the north side of the altar.

15 And king Ahaz commanded Urijah the priest, saying, Upon the great altar burn the morning burnt offering, and the evening meat offering, and the king's burnt sacrifice, and his meat offering, with the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their meat offering, and their drink offerings; and sprinkle upon it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice: and the brasen altar shall be for me to enquire *by*.

16 Thus did Urijah the priest, according to all that king Ahaz commanded.

He spoils the temple

17 And king Ahaz cut off the borders of the bases, and removed the laver from off them; and took down the sea from off the brasen oxen that *were* under it, and put it upon a pavement of stones. [1Kgs 7:23](#);

18 And the covert for the Sabbath that they had built in the house, and the king's entry without, turned he from the house of the YAHWEH for the king of Assyria.

Hezekiah succeeds him

19 Now the rest of the acts of Ahaz which he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

20 And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:13\]](#); [\[Isa 14:28\]](#);

SECOND KINGS SEVENTEEN

Hoshea's wicked reign

1 In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah began Hoshea the son of Elah to reign in Samaria over Israel nine years.

2 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, but not as the kings of Israel that were before him.

Being subdued by Shalmaneser, he conspires against him with So, king of Egypt

3 Against him came up Shalmaneser king of Assyria; and Hoshea became his servant, and gave him presents. [\[2Kgs 18:9\]](#);

4 And the king of Assyria found conspiracy in Hoshea: for he had sent messengers to So king of Egypt, and brought no present to the king of Assyria, as *he had done* year by year: therefore the king of Assyria shut him up, and bound him in prison.

Samaria for sinning is led into captivity

5 Then the king of Assyria came up throughout all the land, and went up to Samaria, and besieged it three years. [2Kgs 18:9](#);

6 In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor *by* the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes. [2Kgs 18:10](#); [Isa 8:4](#);

7 For *so* it was, that the children of Israel had sinned against the YAHWEH their Elohim, which had brought them up out of the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and had feared other gods,

8 And walked in the statutes of the heathen, whom the YAHWEH cast out from before the children of Israel, and of the kings of Israel, which they had made. [Lev 18:3](#);

9 And the children of Israel did secretly *those* things that *were* not right against the YAHWEH their Elohim, and they built them high places in all their cities, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city.

10 And they set them up images and groves in every high hill, and under every green tree:

11 And there they burnt incense in all the high places, as *did* the heathen whom the YAHWEH carried away before them; and wrought wicked things to provoke the YAHWEH to anger:

12 For they served idols, whereof the YAHWEH had said unto them, you shall not do this thing. [Exod 20:3-5](#); [Deut 5:7-9](#);

13 yet the YAHWEH testified against Israel, and against Judah, by all the prophets, *and by* all the seers, saying, Turn you from your evil ways, and keep my commandments *and* my statutes, according to all the

law which I commanded your fathers, and which I sent to you by my servants the prophets. [Jer 18:11](#); [Jer 25:5](#); [Jer 35:15](#); [\[Neh 9:30\]](#);

14 Notwithstanding they would not hear, but hardened their necks, like to the neck of their fathers, that did not believe in the YAHWEH their Elohim. [Deut 31:27](#); [Mal 3:7](#); [\[Deut 9:13\]](#);

15 And they rejected his statutes, and his covenant that he made with their fathers, and his testimonies which he testified against them; and they followed vanity, and became vain, and went after the heathen that *were* round about them, *concerning* whom the YAHWEH had charged them, that they should not do like them.

16 And they left all the commandments of the YAHWEH their Elohim, and made them molten images, *even* two calves, and made a grove, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served Baal. [Exod 32:8](#); [1Kgs 12:28](#);

17 And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, to provoke him to anger. [Lev 20:3-4](#); [Deut 18:10](#); [2Kgs 16:3](#); [\[Lev 18:21\]](#); [\[Ps 106:37\]](#);

18 Therefore the YAHWEH was very angry with Israel, and removed them out of his sight: there was none left but the tribe of Judah only. [Hos 1:6](#); [\[1Kgs 14:15\]](#); [\[2Kgs 23:27\]](#); [\[Ezek 23:9\]](#);

19 Also Judah kept not the commandments of the YAHWEH their Elohim, but walked in the statutes of Israel which they made. [Lev 18:3](#);

20 And the YAHWEH rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers, until he had cast them out of his sight. [\[2Kgs 23:27\]](#);

21 For he rent Israel from the house of David; and they made Jeroboam the son of Nebat king: and Jeroboam drave Israel from following the YAHWEH, and made them sin a great sin. [1Kgs 12:16-17](#); [1Kgs 12:26](#); [\[1Kgs 12:19\]](#);

22 For the children of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam which he did; they departed not from them;

23 Until the YAHWEH removed Israel out of his sight, as he had said by all his servants the prophets. So was Israel carried away out of their own land to Assyria unto this day.

The strange nations which were transplanted into Samaria, being plagued with lions, make a mixture of religions

24 And the king of Assyria brought *men* from Babylon, and from Cuthah, and from Ava, and from Hamath, and from Sepharvaim, and placed *them* in the cities of Samaria instead of the children of Israel: and they possessed Samaria, and dwelt in the cities thereof.

25 And *so* it was at the beginning of their dwelling there, *that* they feared not the YAHWEH: therefore the YAHWEH sent lions among them, which slew *some* of them.

26 Wherefore they spoke to the king of Assyria, saying, The nations which you have removed, and placed in the cities of Samaria, know not the manner of the Elohim of the land: therefore he has sent lions among them, and, behold, they slay them, because they know not the manner of the Elohim of the land.

27 Then the king of Assyria commanded, saying, Carry thither one of the priests whom you brought from thence; and let them go and dwell there, and let him teach them the manner of the Elohim of the land.

28 Then one of the priests whom they had carried away from Samaria came and dwelt in Bethel, and taught them how they should fear the YAHWEH.

29 Howbeit every nation made gods of their own, and put *them* in the houses of the high places which the Samaritans had made, every nation in their cities wherein they dwelt. [\[Ezra 4:2\]](#); [\[John 4:22\]](#); [\[Rom 1:23\]](#);

30 And the men of Babylon made Succothbenoth, and the men of Cuth made Nergal, and the men of Hamath made Ashima,

31 And the Avites made Nibhaz and Tartak, and the Sepharvites burnt their children in fire to Adrammelech and Anammelech, the gods of Sepharvaim. [\[2Kgs 16:3\]](#);

- 32** So they feared the YAHWEH, and made unto themselves of the lowest of them priests of the high places, which sacrificed for them in the houses of the high places. [1Kgs 12:31](#);
- 33** They feared the YAHWEH, and served their own gods, after the manner of the nations whom they carried away from thence. [Zeph 1:5](#);
- 34** Unto this day they do after the former manners: they fear not the YAHWEH, neither do they after their statutes, or after their ordinances, or after the law and commandment which the YAHWEH commanded the children of Jacob, whom he named Israel; [Gen 32:28](#); [Gen 35:10](#); [1Kgs 18:31](#);
- 35** With whom the YAHWEH had made a covenant, and charged them, saying, you shall not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor serve them, nor sacrifice to them: [Judg 6:10](#);
- 36** But the YAHWEH, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt with great power and a stretched out arm, him shall you fear, and him shall you worship, and to him shall you do sacrifice.
- 37** And the statutes, and the ordinances, and the law, and the commandment, which he wrote for you, you shall observe to do for evermore; and you shall not fear other gods.
- 38** And the covenant that I have made with you you shall not forget; neither shall you fear other gods. [\[Judg 6:10\]](#);
- 39** But the YAHWEH your Elohim you shall fear; and he shall deliver you out of the hand of all your enemies.
- 40** Howbeit they did not hearken, but they did after their former manner.
- 41** So these nations feared the YAHWEH, and served their graven images, both their children, and their children's children: as did their fathers, so do they unto this day.

Hezekiah's good reign

1 Now it came to pass in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, *that* Hezekiah the son of Ahaz king of Judah began to reign. [2Chr 28:27](#); [2Chr 29:1](#);

2 Twenty and five years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Abi, the daughter of Zachariah.

3 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that David his father did.

He destroys idolatry, and prospers

4 He removed the high places, and brake the images, and cut down the groves, and brake in pieces the brasen serpent that Moses had made: for unto those days the children of Israel did burn incense to it: and he called it Nehushtan. [2Chr 31:1](#); [\[Num 21:9\]](#); [\[2Kgs 21:3\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:3\]](#); [\[John 3:14\]](#); [\[John 8:28\]](#); [\[John 12:32\]](#);

5 He trusted in the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel; so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor *any* that were before him.

6 For he clave to the YAHWEH, *and* departed not from following him, but kept his commandments, which the YAHWEH commanded Moses.

7 And the YAHWEH was with him; *and* he prospered whithersoever he went forth: and he rebelled against the king of Assyria, and served him not.

8 He smote the Philistines, *even* unto Gaza, and the borders thereof, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city. [Isa 14:30](#);

The inhabitants of Samaria are carried captive for their sins

9 And it came to pass in the fourth year of king Hezekiah, which *was* the seventh year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, *that* Shalmaneser king of Assyria came up against Samaria, and besieged it. [2Kgs 17:3](#); [\[2Kgs 17:5\]](#);

10 And at the end of three years they took it: *even* in the sixth year of Hezekiah, that *is* the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel, Samaria was taken. [2Kgs 17:6](#);

11 And the king of Assyria did carry away Israel unto Assyria, and put them in Halah and in Habor *by* the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes:

12 Because they obeyed not the voice of the YAHWEH their Elohim, but transgressed his covenant, *and* all that Moses the servant of the YAHWEH commanded, and would not hear *them*, nor do *them*.

Sennacherib invading Judah, is pacified by a tribute

13 Now in the fourteenth year of king Hezekiah did Sennacherib king of Assyria come up against all the fenced cities of Judah, and took them. [2Chr 32:1](#); [Isa 36:1](#);

14 And Hezekiah king of Judah sent to the king of Assyria to Lachish, saying, I have offended; return from me: that which you putteth on me will I bear. And the king of Assyria appointed unto Hezekiah king of Judah three hundred talents of silver and thirty talents of gold.

15 And Hezekiah gave *him* all the silver that was found in the house of the YAHWEH, and in the treasures of the king's house. [\[2Kgs 12:18\]](#);

16 At that time did Hezekiah cut off *the gold from* the doors of the temple of the YAHWEH, and *from* the pillars which Hezekiah king of Judah had overlaid, and gave it to the king of Assyria.

Rab-shakeh, by blasphemous persuasions, solicits the people to revolt

17 And the king of Assyria sent Tartan and Rabsaris and Rabshakeh from Lachish to king Hezekiah with a great host against Jerusalem. And they went up and came to Jerusalem. And when they were come up,

they came and stood by the conduit of the upper pool, which *is* in the highway of the fuller's field. [2Chr 32:9];

18 And when they had called to the king, there came out to them Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, which *was* over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder. [Isa 22:20];

19 And Rabshakeh said unto them, Speak you now to Hezekiah, Thus saith the great king, the king of Assyria, What confidence *is* this wherein you trustest?

20 *you* sayest, (but *they are but* vain words,) *I have* counsel and strength for the war. Now on whom dost you trust, that you rebellest against me?

21 Now, behold, you trustest upon the staff of this bruised reed, *even* upon Egypt, on which if a man lean, it will go into his hand, and pierce it: so *is* Pharaoh king of Egypt unto all that trust on him. [Ezek 29:6];

22 But if you say unto me, We trust in the YAHWEH our Elohim: *is* not that he, whose high places and whose altars Hezekiah has taken away, and has said to Judah and Jerusalem, you shall worship before this altar in Jerusalem? [2Chr 32:12];

23 Now therefore, I pray you, give pledges to my lord the king of Assyria, and I will deliver you two thousand horses, if you be able on thy part to set riders upon them.

24 How then will you turn away the face of one captain of the least of my master's servants, and put thy trust on Egypt for chariots and for horsemen?

25 Am I now come up without the YAHWEH against this place to destroy it? The YAHWEH said to me, Go up against this land, and destroy it.

26 Then said Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, and Shebna, and Joah, unto Rabshakeh, Speak, I pray you, to thy servants in the Syrian language; for we understand *it*: and talk not with us in the Jews' language in the ears of the people that *are* on the wall. [2Chr 32:18]; [Isa 22:20];

27 But Rabshakeh said unto them, Has my master sent me to thy master, and to you, to speak these words? *has he* not *sent me* to the men which sit on the wall, that they may eat their own dung, and drink their own piss with you?

28 Then Rabshakeh stood and cried with a loud voice in the Jews' language, and spoke, saying, Hear the word of the great king, the king of Assyria: [2Chr 32:18];

29 Thus saith the king, Let not Hezekiah deceive you: for he shall not be able to deliver you out of his hand:

30 Neither let Hezekiah make you trust in the YAHWEH, saying, The YAHWEH will surely deliver us, and this city shall not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria. [2Chr 32:11]; [2Chr 32:15];

31 Harken not to Hezekiah: for thus saith the king of Assyria, Make *an agreement* with me by a present, and come out to me, and *then* eat you every man of his own vine, and every one of his fig tree, and drink you every one the waters of his cistern:

32 Until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of grain and wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of oil olive and of honey, that you may live, and not die: and hearken not unto Hezekiah, when he persuadeth you, saying, The YAHWEH will deliver us.

33 Has any of the gods of the nations delivered at all his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria?

34 Where *are* the gods of Hamath, and of Arpad? where *are* the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah? have they delivered Samaria out of mine hand?

35 Who *are* they among all the gods of the countries, that have delivered their country out of mine hand, that the YAHWEH should deliver Jerusalem out of mine hand?

36 But the people held their peace, and answered him not a word: for the king's commandment was, saying, Answer him not.

37 Then came Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, which *was* over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder, to Hezekiah with *their* clothes rent, and told him the words of Rabshakeh. [Isa 22:20];

Hezekiah mourning, sends to Isaiah to pray for them

- 1** And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard *it*, that he rent his clothes, and covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of the YAHWEH. [Isa 37:1](#); [\[Matt 11:21\]](#);
- 2** And he sent Eliakim, which *was* over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz. [Isa 1:1](#);
- 3** And they said unto him, Thus saith Hezekiah, This day *is* a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and blasphemy: for the children are come to the birth, and *there is* not strength to bring forth.
- 4** It may be the YAHWEH thy Elohim will hear all the words of Rabshakeh, whom the king of Assyria his master has sent to reproach the living Elohim; and will reprove the words which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has heard: wherefore lift up *thy* prayer for the remnant that are left.
- 5** So the servants of king Hezekiah came to Isaiah.

Isaiah comforts them

- 6** And Isaiah said unto them, Thus shall you say to your master, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Be not afraid of the words which you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me.
- 7** Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a rumour, and shall return to his own land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.

Sennacherib, going to encounter Tirhakah, sends a blasphemous letter to Hezekiah

- 8** So Rabshakeh returned, and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah: for he had heard that he was departed from Lachish.
- 9** And when he heard say of Tirhakah king of Ethiopia, Behold, he is come out to fight against you: he sent messengers again unto Hezekiah, saying,
- 10** Thus shall you speak to Hezekiah king of Judah, saying, Let not thy Elohim in whom you trustest deceive you, saying, Jerusalem shall not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria. [\[2Chr 32:16\]](#);
- 11** Behold, you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands, by destroying them utterly: and shall you be delivered?
- 12** Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed; *as* Gozan, and Haran, and Rezeph, and the children of Eden which *were* in Thelasar?
- 13** Where *is* the king of Hamath, and the king of Arpad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivah?

Hezekiah's prayer

- 14** And Hezekiah received the letter of the hand of the messengers, and read it: and Hezekiah went up into the house of the YAHWEH, and spread it before the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 32:17\]](#);
- 15** And Hezekiah prayed before the YAHWEH, and said, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, which dwellest *between* the cherubims, you are the Elohim, *even* you alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth; you have made heaven and earth. [\[2Chr 32:20\]](#);
- 16** YAHWEH, bow down thine ear, and hear: open, YAHWEH, thine eyes, and see: and hear the words of Sennacherib, which has sent him to reproach the living Elohim. [\[2Chr 32:17\]](#);
- 17** Of a truth, YAHWEH, the kings of Assyria have destroyed the nations and their lands,
- 18** And have cast their gods into the fire: for they *were* no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them.
- 19** Now therefore, O YAHWEH our Elohim, I beseech you, save you us out of his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that you are the YAHWEH Elohim, *even* you only.

Isaiah's prophecy of the pride and destruction of Sennacherib, and the good of Zion

20 Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent to Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, *That* which you have prayed to me against Sennacherib king of Assyria I have heard.

21 This *is* the word that the YAHWEH has spoken concerning him; The virgin the daughter of Zion has despised you, *and* laughed you to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem has shaken her head at you.

22 Whom have you reproached and blasphemed? and against whom have you exalted *thy* voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? *even* against the Holy *One* of Israel.

23 By thy messengers you have reproached the Lord, and have said, With the multitude of my chariots I am come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon, and will cut down the tall cedar trees thereof, *and* the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the lodgings of his borders, *and into* the forest of his Carmel.

24 I have digged and drunk strange waters, and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of besieged places.

25 *have* you not heard long ago *how* I have done it, *and* of ancient times that I have formed it? now have I brought it to pass, that you should be to lay waste fenced cities *into* ruinous heaps.

26 Therefore their inhabitants were of small power, they were dismayed and confounded; they were *as* the grass of the field, and *as* the green herb, *as* the grass on the housetops, and *as* grain blasted before it be grown up.

27 But I know thy abode, and thy going out, and thy coming in, and thy rage against me.

28 Because thy rage against me and thy tumult is come up into mine ears, therefore I will put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn you back by the way by which you camest.

29 And this *shall be* a sign unto you, you shall eat this year such things as grow of themselves, and in the second year that which springeth of the same; and in the third year sow you, and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat the fruits thereof.

30 And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall yet again take root downward, and bear fruit upward.

31 For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the YAHWEH *of hosts* shall do this. [\[Isa 9:7\]](#); [\[Isa 37:32\]](#);

32 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shield, nor cast a bank against it.

33 By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the YAHWEH.

34 For I will defend this city, to save it, for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake. [2Kgs 20:6](#);

An angel slays the Assyrians

35 And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the YAHWEH went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they *were* all dead corpses. [Isa 37:36](#); [\[2Chr 32:21\]](#); [\[Jer 50:18\]](#);

Sennacherib is slain by his own sons

36 So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh. [\[Isa 31:9\]](#);

37 And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword: and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead. [2Chr 32:21](#); [Isa 37:38](#); [\[Jer 50:18\]](#);

Hezekiah, having received a message of death, by prayer has his life lengthened

1 In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz came to him, and said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Set thine house in order; for you shall die, and not live. [2Chr 32:24](#); [Isa 38:1](#);

2 Then he turned his face to the wall, and prayed unto the YAHWEH, saying,

3 I beseech you, O YAHWEH, remember now how I have walked before you in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done *that which is* good in thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore.

4 And it came to pass, before Isaiah was gone out into the middle court, that the word of the YAHWEH came to him, saying,

5 Turn again, and tell Hezekiah the captain of my people, Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will heal you: on the third day you shall go up unto the house of the YAHWEH.

6 And I will add unto thy days fifteen years; and I will deliver you and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria; and I will defend this city for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake. [\[2Kgs 19:34\]](#); [\[Isa 37:35\]](#);

7 And Isaiah said, Take a lump of figs. And they took and laid *it* on the boil, and he recovered. [\[Isa 38:21\]](#);

The sun goes ten degrees backward for a sign of that promise

8 And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, What *shall be* the sign that the YAHWEH will heal me, and that I shall go up into the house of the YAHWEH the third day?

9 And Isaiah said, This sign shall you have of the YAHWEH, that the YAHWEH will do the thing that he has spoken: shall the shadow go forward ten degrees, or go back ten degrees?

10 And Hezekiah answered, It is a light thing for the shadow to go down ten degrees: nay, but let the shadow return backward ten degrees.

11 And Isaiah the prophet cried unto the YAHWEH: and he brought the shadow ten degrees backward, by which it had gone down in the dial of Ahaz.

Berodach-baladan sending to visit Hezekiah, because of the wonder, has notice of his treasures

12 At that time Berodachbaladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present unto Hezekiah: for he had heard that Hezekiah had been sick.

13 And Hezekiah hearkened unto them, and showed them all the house of his precious things, the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the precious ointment, and *all* the house of his armour, and all that was found in his treasures: there was nothing in his house, nor in all his dominion, that Hezekiah showed them not.

Isaiah understanding thereof, foretells the Babylonian captivity

14 Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him, What said these men? and from whence came they unto you? And Hezekiah said, They are come from a far country, *even* from Babylon.

15 And he said, What have they seen in thine house? And Hezekiah answered, All *the things that are* in mine house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not showed them.

16 And Isaiah said unto Hezekiah, Hear the word of the YAHWEH.

17 Behold, the days come, that all that *is* in thine house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store unto this day, shall be carried into Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the YAHWEH. [\[2Kgs 24:2\]](#); [\[2Kgs 25:13\]](#);

18 And of thy sons that shall issue from you, which you shall beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.

19 Then said Hezekiah unto Isaiah, Good *is* the word of the YAHWEH which you have spoken. And he said, *Is it* not *good*, if peace and truth be in my days? [2Chr 32:26];

Manasseh succeeds Hezekiah

20 And the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made a pool, and a conduit, and brought water into the city, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

21 And Hezekiah slept with his fathers: and Manasseh his son reigned in his stead. [1Chr 3:13]; [2Chr 32:33];

SECOND KINGS TWENTY-ONE

Manasseh's reign

1 Manasseh *was* twelve years old when he began to reign, and reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Hephzibah. 2Chr 33:1;

2 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, after the abominations of the heathen, whom the YAHWEH cast out before the children of Israel.

His great idolatry

3 For he built up again the high places which Hezekiah his father had destroyed; and he reared up altars for Baal, and made a grove, as did Ahab king of Israel; and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them. 2Kgs 18:4; 1Kgs 16:31-33;

4 And he built altars in the house of the YAHWEH, of which the YAHWEH said, In Jerusalem will I put my name. Jer 32:34; Deut 12:5; Deut 12:11; 1Sam 7:13; 1Kgs 8:29; 2Chr 7:12; Ps 132:13-14; [2Chr 33:4]; [Ezek 23:39];

5 And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of the YAHWEH.

6 And he made his son pass through the fire, and observed times, and used enchantments, and dealt with familiar spirits and wizards: he wrought much wickedness in the sight of the YAHWEH, to provoke *him* to anger. [2Chr 28:3]; [Ps 106:37];

7 And he set a graven image of the grove that he had made in the house, of which the YAHWEH said to David, and to Solomon his son, In this house, and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all tribes of Israel, will I put my name for ever: 2Sam 7:10; 1Kgs 8:16; 1Kgs 8:29; 1Kgs 9:3; 2Kgs 23:27;

8 Neither will I make the feet of Israel move any more out of the land which I gave their fathers; only if they will observe to do according to all that I have commanded them, and according to all the law that my servant Moses commanded them.

9 But they hearkened not: and Manasseh seduced them to do more evil than did the nations whom the YAHWEH destroyed before the children of Israel.

His wickedness causes prophecies against Judah

10 And the YAHWEH spoke by his servants the prophets, saying,

11 Because Manasseh king of Judah has done these abominations, *and* has done wickedly above all that the Amorites did, which *were* before him, and has made Judah also to sin with his idols: Jer 15:4;

12 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Behold, I *am* bringing *such* evil upon Jerusalem and Judah, that whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle. [1Sam 3:11]; [Jer 19:3];

13 And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the house of Ahab: and I will wipe Jerusalem as *a man* wipeth a dish, wiping *it*, and turning *it* upside down.

14 And I will forsake the remnant of mine inheritance, and deliver them into the hand of their enemies; and they shall become a prey and a spoil to all their enemies;

15 Because they have done *that which was* evil in my sight, and have provoked me to anger, since the day their fathers came forth out of Egypt, even unto this day.

16 Moreover Manasseh shed innocent blood very much, till he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another; beside his sin wherewith he made Judah to sin, in doing *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH. [\[Ezek 22:4\];](#)

Amon succeeds him

17 Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and all that he did, and his sin that he sinned, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

18 And Manasseh slept with his fathers, and was buried in the garden of his own house, in the garden of Uzza: and Amon his son reigned in his stead. [2Chr 33:20; \[1Chr 3:14\];](#)

Amon's wicked reign

19 Amon *was* twenty and two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned two years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Meshullemeth, the daughter of Haruz of Jotbah. [\[2Chr 33:21\];](#)

20 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, as his father Manasseh did.

21 And he walked in all the way that his father walked in, and served the idols that his father served, and worshipped them:

22 And he forsook the YAHWEH Elohim of his fathers, and walked not in the way of the YAHWEH.

He being slain by his servants, and those murderers slain by the people, Josiah is made king

23 And the servants of Amon conspired against him, and slew the king in his own house.

24 And the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead.

25 Now the rest of the acts of Amon which he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

26 And he was buried in his sepulcher in the garden of Uzza: and Josiah his son reigned in his stead. [Matt 1:10; \[1Chr 3:14\]; \[Jer 1:2\];](#)

Josiah's good reign

1 Josiah *was* eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned thirty and one years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Jedidah, the daughter of Adaiah of Boscath. [2Chr 34:1](#); [\[Jer 1:2\]](#);

2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, and walked in all the way of David his father, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left.

He takes care for the repair of the temple

3 And it came to pass in the eighteenth year of king Josiah, *that* the king sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, the son of Meshullam, the scribe, to the house of the YAHWEH, saying, [\[2Chr 34:8\]](#);

4 Go up to Hilkiah the high priest, that he may sum the silver which is brought into the house of the YAHWEH, which the keepers of the door have gathered of the people:

5 And let them deliver it into the hand of the doers of the work, that have the oversight of the house of the YAHWEH: and let them give it to the doers of the work which *is* in the house of the YAHWEH, to repair the breaches of the house,

6 Unto carpenters, and builders, and masons, and to buy timber and hewn stone to repair the house. [\[2Chr 34:11\]](#);

7 Howbeit there was no reckoning made with them of the money that was delivered into their hand, because they dealt faithfully.

Hilkiah having found a book of the law, Josiah sends to Huldah to enquire of the Lord

8 And Hilkiah the high priest said unto Shaphan the scribe, I have found the book of the law in the house of the YAHWEH. And Hilkiah gave the book to Shaphan, and he read it. [\[Deut 31:26\]](#);

9 And Shaphan the scribe came to the king, and brought the king word again, and said, Thy servants have gathered the money that was found in the house, and have delivered it into the hand of them that do the work, that have the oversight of the house of the YAHWEH.

10 And Shaphan the scribe showed the king, saying, Hilkiah the priest has delivered me a book. And Shaphan read it before the king.

11 And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the book of the law, that he rent his clothes.

12 And the king commanded Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Achbor the son of Michaiah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asahiah a servant of the king's, saying,

13 Go you, enquire of the YAHWEH for me, and for the people, and for all Judah, concerning the words of this book that is found: for great *is* the wrath of the YAHWEH that is kindled against us, because our fathers have not hearkened unto the words of this book, to do according unto all that which is written concerning us.

14 So Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam, and Achbor, and Shaphan, and Asahiah, went unto Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvah, the son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe; (now she dwelt in Jerusalem in the Mishneh district;) and they communed with her.

Huldah prophesies the destruction of Jerusalem, but respite thereof in Josiah's time

15 And she said unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Tell the man that sent you to me,

16 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, *even* all the words of the book which the king of Judah has read:

17 Because they have forsaken me, and have burned incense unto other gods, that they might provoke me to anger with all the works of their hands; therefore my wrath shall be kindled against this place, and shall not be quenched.

18 But to the king of Judah which sent you to enquire of the YAHWEH, thus shall you say to him, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, *As touching* the words which you have heard;

19 Because thine heart was tender, and you have humbled thyself before the YAHWEH, when you heardest what I spoke against this place, and against the inhabitants thereof, that they should become a desolation and a curse, and have rent thy clothes, and wept before me; I also have heard you, saith the YAHWEH.

20 Behold therefore, I will gather you unto thy fathers, and you shall be gathered into thy grave in peace; and thine eyes shall not see all the evil which I will bring upon this place. And they brought the king word again.

SECOND KINGS TWENTY-THREE

Josiah causes the book to be read in a solemn assembly

1 And the king sent, and they gathered unto him all the elders of Judah and of Jerusalem. [2Chr 34:29](#);

2 And the king went up into the house of the YAHWEH, and all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people, both small and great: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant which was found in the house of the YAHWEH. [2Chr 22:8](#);

He renews the covenant of the Lord

3 And the king stood by a pillar, and made a covenant before the YAHWEH, to walk after the YAHWEH, and to keep his commandments and his testimonies and his statutes with all *their* heart and all *their* being, to perform the words of this covenant that were written in this book. And all the people stood to the covenant.

He destroys idolatry

4 And the king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, and the priests of the second order, and the keepers of the door, to bring forth out of the temple of the YAHWEH all the vessels that were made for Baal, and for the grove, and for all the host of heaven: and he burned them without Jerusalem in the fields of Kidron, and carried the ashes of them unto Bethel.

5 And he put down the idolatrous priests, whom the kings of Judah had ordained to burn incense in the high places in the cities of Judah, and in the places round about Jerusalem; them also that burned incense unto Baal, to the sun, and to the moon, and to the planets, and to all the host of heaven.

6 And he brought out the grove from the house of the YAHWEH, without Jerusalem, unto the brook Kidron, and burned it at the brook Kidron, and stamped *it* small to powder, and cast the powder thereof upon the graves of the children of the people.

7 And he brake down the houses of the sodomites, that *were* by the house of the YAHWEH, where the women wove hangings for the grove.

8 And he brought all the priests out of the cities of Judah, and defiled the high places where the priests had burned incense, from Geba to Beersheba, and brake down the high places of the gates that *were* in the entering in of the gate of Joshua the governor of the city, which *were* on a man's left hand at the gate of the city.

9 Nevertheless the priests of the high places came not up to the altar of the YAHWEH in Jerusalem, but they did eat of the unleavened bread among their brethren.

10 And he defiled Topheth, which *is* in the valley of the children of Hinnom, that no man might make his son or his daughter to pass through the fire to Molech. [\[Lev 18:21\]](#); [\[Jer 7:31\]](#);

11 And he took away the horses that the kings of Judah had given to the sun, at the entering in of the house of the YAHWEH, by the chamber of Nathanmelech the chamberlain, which *was* in the suburbs, and burned the chariots of the sun with fire.

12 And the altars that *were* on the top of the upper chamber of Ahaz, which the kings of Judah had made, and the altars which Manasseh had made in the two courts of the house of the YAHWEH, did the king beat down, and brake *them* down from thence, and cast the dust of them into the brook Kidron. [2Chr 21:5](#);

13 And the high places that *were* before Jerusalem, which *were* on the right hand of the mount of corruption, which Solomon the king of Israel had built for Ashtoreth the abomination of the Zidonians, and for Chemosh the abomination of the Moabites, and for Milcom the abomination of the children of Ammon, did the king defile. [\[1Kgs 11:5\]](#); [\[1Kgs 11:7\]](#);

14 And he brake in pieces the images, and cut down the groves, and filled their places with the bones of men. [Exod 23:24](#); [Exod 34:13](#); [Num 33:52](#); [Deut 7:5](#); [Deut 7:25](#); [Deut 12:3](#);

He burns dead men's bones upon the altar of Beth-el, as was fore- prophesied

15 Moreover the altar that *was* at Bethel, *and* the high place which Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin, had made, both that altar and the high place he brake down, and burned the high place, *and* stamped *it* small to powder, and burned the grove. [1Kgs 12:32-33](#); [\[1Kgs 13:2\]](#);

16 And as Josiah turned himself, he spied the sepulchers that *were* there in the mount, and sent, and took the bones out of the sepulchers, and burned *them* upon the altar, and polluted it, according to the word of the YAHWEH which the man of Elohim proclaimed, who proclaimed these words. [1Kgs 13:2](#); [\[1Kgs 13:32\]](#);

17 Then he said, What title *is* that that I see? And the men of the city told him, *It is* the sepulcher of the man of Elohim, which came from Judah, and proclaimed these things that you have done against the altar of Bethel.

18 And he said, Let him alone; let no man move his bones. So they let his bones alone, with the bones of the prophet that came out of Samaria.

19 And all the houses also of the high places that *were* in the cities of Samaria, which the kings of Israel had made to provoke *the YAHWEH* to anger, Josiah took away, and did to them according to all the acts that he had done in Bethel. [2Chr 34:6](#);

20 And he slew all the priests of the high places that *were* there upon the altars, and burned men's bones upon them, and returned to Jerusalem.

He keeps a most solemn passover

21 And the king commanded all the people, saying, Keep the passover unto the YAHWEH your Elohim, as *it is* written in the book of this covenant. [2Chr 35:1](#); [Exod 12:3](#); [Deut 16:2](#);

22 Surely there was not holden such a passover from the days of the judges that judged Israel, nor in all the days of the kings of Israel, nor of the kings of Judah;

23 But in the eighteenth year of king Josiah, *wherein* this passover was holden to the YAHWEH in Jerusalem. [\[2Chr 35:19\]](#);

He puts away witches and all abomination

24 Moreover the *workers with* familiar spirits, and the wizards, and the images, and the idols, and all the abominations that were spied in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, did Josiah put away, that he might perform the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest found in the house of the YAHWEH. [Lev 19:31](#); [Lev 20:27](#); [Deut 18:11](#); [Isa 8:19](#);

25 And like unto him was there no king before him, that turned to the YAHWEH with all his heart, and with all his being, and with all his might, according to all the law of Moses; neither after him arose there *any* like him.

Elohim's final wrath against Judah

26 Notwithstanding the YAHWEH turned not from the fierceness of his great wrath, wherewith his anger was kindled against Judah, because of all the provocations that Manasseh had provoked him withal.

27 And the YAHWEH said, I will remove Judah also out of my sight, as I have removed Israel, and will cast off this city Jerusalem which I have chosen, and the house of which I said, My name shall be there. [2Kgs 17:18](#); [2Kgs 17:20](#); [2Kgs 24:3](#); [\[2Kgs 21:7\]](#); [\[2Kgs 24:2\]](#);

28 Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

Josiah, provoking Pharaoh-nechoh, is slain at Megiddo

29 In his days Pharaohnechoh king of Egypt went up against the king of Assyria to the river Euphrates: and king Josiah went against him; and he slew him at Megiddo, when he had seen him. [\[2Chr 35:20\]](#); [\[Zech 12:11\]](#);

30 And his servants carried him in a chariot dead from Megiddo, and brought him to Jerusalem, and buried him in his own sepulcher. And the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah, and anointed him, and made him king in his father's stead. [2Chr 36:1](#); [\[1Chr 3:15\]](#);

Jehoahaz, succeeding him, is imprisoned by Pharaoh-nechoh, who makes Jehoiakim king

31 Jehoahaz *was* twenty and three years old when he began to reign; and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.

32 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that his fathers had done.

33 And Pharaohnechoh put him in bands at Riblah in the land of Hamath, that he might not reign in Jerusalem; and put the land to a tribute of a hundred talents of silver, and a talent of gold. [\[Ezek 19:4\]](#);

34 And Pharaohnechoh made Eliakim the son of Josiah king in the room of Josiah his father, and turned his name to Jehoiakim, and took Jehoahaz away: and he came to Egypt, and died there. [Matt 1:11](#); [\[1Chr 3:15\]](#); [\[Jer 1:3\]](#);

35 And Jehoiakim gave the silver and the gold to Pharaoh; but he taxed the land to give the money according to the commandment of Pharaoh: he exacted the silver and the gold of the people of the land, of every one according to his taxation, to give *it* unto Pharaohnechoh.

Jehoiakim's wicked reign

36 Jehoiakim *was* twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Zebudah, the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah.

37 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that his fathers had done.

Jehoiakim, first subdued by Nebuchadnezzar, then rebelling against him, procures his own ruin

1 In his days Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim became his servant three years: then he turned and rebelled against him. [2Chr 36:6](#);

2 And the YAHWEH sent against him bands of the Chaldees, and bands of the Syrians, and bands of the Moabites, and bands of the children of Ammon, and sent them against Judah to destroy it, according to the word of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by his servants the prophets. [2Kgs 20:17](#); [2Kgs 23:27](#); [\[Dan 1:1\]](#);

3 Surely at the commandment of the YAHWEH came *this* upon Judah, to remove *them* out of his sight, for the sins of Manasseh, according to all that he did; [\[2Kgs 23:27\]](#);

4 And also for the innocent blood that he shed: for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood; which the YAHWEH would not pardon.

Jehoiachin succeeds him

5 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and all that he did, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

6 So Jehoiakim slept with his fathers: and Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead. [\[1Chr 3:16\]](#);

The king of Egypt is vanquished by the king of Babylon

7 And the king of Egypt came not again any more out of his land: for the king of Babylon had taken from the river of Egypt unto the river Euphrates all that pertained to the king of Egypt.

Jehoiachin's evil reign

8 Jehoiachin *was* eighteen years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem three months. And his mother's name *was* Nehushta, the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem. [\[2Chr 36:9\]](#);

9 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that his father had done.

Jerusalem is taken and carried captive into Babylon

10 At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against Jerusalem, and the city was besieged. [Dan 1:1](#);

11 And Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against the city, and his servants did besiege it.

12 And Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his officers: and the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign. [\[Jer 29:2\]](#);

13 And he carried out thence all the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king's house, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold which Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of the YAHWEH, as the YAHWEH had said. [2Chr 20:17](#); [Isa 39:6](#); [\[Ezra 1:7\]](#);

14 And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valour, *even* ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and smiths: none remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land. [\[Esth 2:6\]](#); [\[Jer 27:20\]](#);

15 And he carried away Jehoiachin to Babylon, and the king's mother, and the king's wives, and his officers, and the mighty of the land, *those* carried he into captivity from Jerusalem to Babylon. [2Chr 36:10](#); [Esth 2:6](#); [\[Jer 24:1\]](#);

16 And all the men of might, *even* seven thousand, and craftsmen and smiths a thousand, all *that were* strong *and* apt for war, even them the king of Babylon brought captive to Babylon. [Jer 52:28](#);

Zedekiah is made king, and reigns ill, unto the utter destruction of Judah

17 And the king of Babylon made Mattaniah his father's brother king in his stead, and changed his name to Zedekiah. [Jer 37:1](#); [Jer 52:1](#); [\[1Chr 3:16\]](#); [\[2Chr 36:10\]](#); [\[Jer 1:3\]](#);

18 Zedekiah *was* twenty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. [\[Jer 52:1\]](#);
19 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that Jehoiakim had done.
20 For through the anger of the YAHWEH it came to pass in Jerusalem and Judah, until he had cast them out from his presence, that Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

SECOND KINGS TWENTY-FIVE

Jerusalem is besieged

1 And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth *day* of the month, *that* Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came, he, and all his host, against Jerusalem, and pitched against it; and they built forts against it round about. [2Chr 36:17](#); [Jer 32:2](#); [Jer 39:1](#); [Jer 52:4](#); [\[Jer 34:1\]](#); [\[Ezek 4:2\]](#); [\[Ezek 17:17\]](#); [\[Ezek 33:21\]](#);
2 And the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king Zedekiah.
3 And on the ninth *day* of the *fourth* month the famine prevailed in the city, and there was no bread for the people of the land. [Jer 52:6](#);

Zedekiah taken, his sons slain, his eyes put out

4 And the city was broken up, and all the men of war *fled* by night by the way of the gate between two walls, which *is* by the king's garden: (now the Chaldees *were* against the city round about:) and *the king* went the way toward the plain. [\[Ezek 12:12\]](#);
5 And the army of the Chaldees pursued after the king, and overtook him in the plains of Jericho: and all his army were scattered from him.
6 So they took the king, and brought him up to the king of Babylon to Riblah; and they gave judgment upon him.
7 And they slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah, and bound him with fetters of brass, and carried him to Babylon.

Nebuzar-adan defaces the city, carries the remnant, except a few poor labourers, into captivity

8 And in the fifth month, on the seventh *day* of the month, which *is* the nineteenth year of king Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, came Nebuzaradan, captain of the guard, a servant of the king of Babylon, unto Jerusalem: [\[Jer 1:3\]](#);
9 And he burnt the house of the YAHWEH, and the king's house, and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great *man's* house burnt he with fire. [\[Ps 74:7\]](#); [\[Ezek 16:41\]](#);
10 And all the army of the Chaldees, that *were with* the captain of the guard, brake down the walls of Jerusalem round about.
11 Now the rest of the people *that were* left in the city, and the fugitives that fell away to the king of Babylon, with the remnant of the multitude, did Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard carry away.
12 But the captain of the guard left of the poor of the land *to be* vinedressers and husbandmen.

and spoils and carries away the treasures

13 And the pillars of brass that *were* in the house of the YAHWEH, and the bases, and the brasen sea that *was* in the house of the YAHWEH, did the Chaldees break in pieces, and carried the brass of them to Babylon. [2Kgs 20:17](#); [Jer 20:5](#); [Jer 27:19](#); [\[Jer 27:22\]](#);
14 And the pots, and the shovels, and the snuffers, and the spoons, and all the vessels of brass wherewith they ministered, took they away.

15 And the firepans, and the bowls, *and* such things as *were* of gold, *in* gold, and of silver, *in* silver, the captain of the guard took away.

16 The two pillars, one sea, and the bases which Solomon had made for the house of the YAHWEH; the brass of all these vessels was without weight. [\[1Kgs 7:15\]](#);

17 The height of the one pillar *was* eighteen cubits, and the chapter upon it *was* brass: and the height of the chapter three cubits; and the wreathen work, and pomegranates upon the chapter round about, all of brass: and like unto these had the second pillar with wreathen work. [1Kgs 7:15](#); [2Chr 3:15](#); [Jer 52:21](#);

The nobles are slain at Riblah

18 And the captain of the guard took Seraiah the chief priest, and Zephaniah the second priest, and the three keepers of the door:

19 And out of the city he took an officer that was set over the men of war, and five men of them that were in the king's presence, which were found in the city, and the principal scribe of the host, which mustered the people of the land, and threescore men of the people of the land *that were* found in the city:

20 And Nebuzaradan captain of the guard took these, and brought them to the king of Babylon to Riblah:

21 And the king of Babylon smote them, and slew them at Riblah in the land of Hamath. So Judah was carried away out of their land.

Gedaliah, who was over them that remained, being slain, the rest flee into Egypt

22 And *as for* the people that remained in the land of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left, even over them he made Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, ruler. [Jer 40:5](#); [Jer 40:9](#);

23 And when all the captains of the armies, they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah governor, there came to Gedaliah to Mizpah, even Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and Johanan the son of Careah, and Seraiah the son of Tanhumeth the Netophasite, and Jaazaniah the son of a Maachasite, they and their men. [Jer 40:7](#);

24 And Gedaliah swore to them, and to their men, and said unto them, Fear not to be the servants of the Chaldees: dwell in the land, and serve the king of Babylon; and it shall be well with you.

25 But it came to pass in the seventh month, that Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, of the seed royal, came, and ten men with him, and smote Gedaliah, that he died, and the Jews and the Chaldees that were with him at Mizpah. [Jer 41:2](#); [\[Jer 41:1\]](#);

26 And all the people, both small and great, and the captains of the armies, arose, and came to Egypt: for they were afraid of the Chaldees.

Evil-merodach advances Jehoiachin in his court

27 And it came to pass in the seven and thirtieth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the seven and twentieth *day* of the month, *that* Evilmerodach king of Babylon in the year that he began to reign did lift up the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah out of prison; [\[Jer 52:31\]](#);

28 And he spoke kindly to him, and set his throne above the throne of the kings that *were* with him in Babylon;

29 And changed his prison garments: and he did eat bread continually before him all the days of his life.

30 And his allowance *was* a continual allowance given him of the king, a daily rate for every day, all the days of his life.

First_Chronicles

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#)

FIRST CHRONICLES ONE

Adam's line to Noah

- 1** Adam, Sheth, Enosh, [Gen 5:3-4](#); [\[Gen 5:4\]](#);
- 2** Kenan, Mahalaleel, Jered, [\[Gen 5:9\]](#);
- 3** Henoah, Methuselah, Lamech, [\[Gen 5:18\]](#);
- 4** Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. [\[Gen 10:1\]](#);

The sons of Japheth

- 5** The sons of Japheth; Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras. [Gen 10:2](#);
- 6** And the sons of Gomer; Ashchenaz, and Riphaz, and Togarmah.
- 7** And the sons of Javan; Elishah, and Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

The sons of Ham

- 8** The sons of Ham; Cush, and Mizraim, Put, and Canaan. [Gen 10:6](#);
- 9** And the sons of Cush; Seba, and Havilah, and Sabta, and Raamah, and Sabtecha. And the sons of Raamah; Sheba, and Dedan.
- 10** And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be mighty upon the earth. [\[Gen 10:8\]](#);
- 11** And Mizraim begat Ludim, and Anamim, and Lehabim, and Naphtuhim,
- 12** And Pathrusim, and Casluhim, (of whom came the Philistines,) and Caphthorim. [Gen 10:14](#);
- 13** And Canaan begat Zidon his firstborn, and Heth,
- 14** The Jebusite also, and the Amorite, and the Girgashite,
- 15** And the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite,
- 16** And the Arvadite, and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite.

The sons of Shem

- 17** The sons of Shem; Elam, and Asshur, and Arphaxad, and Lud, and Aram, and Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Meshech. [Gen 10:22](#); [\[Gen 11:10\]](#);
- 18** And Arphaxad begat Shelah, and Shelah begat Eber. [\[Gen 10:24\]](#);
- 19** And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of the one *was* Peleg; because in his days the earth was divided: and his brother's name *was* Joktan.
- 20** And Joktan begat Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,
- 21** Hadoram also, and Uzal, and Diklah,
- 22** And Ebal, and Abimael, and Sheba,
- 23** And Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab. All these *were* the sons of Joktan.

Shem's line to Abraham

- 24** Shem, Arphaxad, Shelah, [Gen 11:10](#); [Luke 3:36](#);
- 25** Eber, Peleg, Reu, [\[Gen 11:18\]](#);
- 26** Serug, Nahor, Terah, [\[Gen 11:27\]](#);
- 27** Abram; the same *is* Abraham.
- 28** The sons of Abraham; Isaac, and Ishmael. [Gen 16:15](#); [Gen 21:2](#);

Ishmael's sons

- 29** These *are* their generations: The firstborn of Ishmael, Nebaioth; then Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam, [Gen 25:13](#);

30 Mishma, and Dumah, Massa, Hadad, and Tema,
31 Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These are the sons of Ishmael.

The sons of Keturah

32 Now the sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine: she bore Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah. And the sons of Jokshan; Sheba, and Dedan. [Gen 25:2](#);
33 And the sons of Midian; Ephah, and Epher, and Henoah, and Abida, and Eldaah. All these *are* the sons of Keturah.

The posterity of Abraham by Esau

34 And Abraham begat Isaac. The sons of Isaac; Esau and Israel. [Gen 25:21](#); [Gen 25:24](#);
35 The sons of Esau; Eliphaz, Reuel, and Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah. [Gen 36:10](#); [[Gen 36:1](#)];
36 The sons of Eliphaz; Teman, and Omar, Zephi, and Gatam, Kenaz, and Timna, and Amalek.
37 The sons of Reuel; Nahas, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

The sons of Seir

38 And the sons of Seir; Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah, and Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan. [[Gen 36:20](#)];
39 And the sons of Lotan; Hori, and Homam: and Timna *was* Lotan's sister.
40 The sons of Shobal; Alian, and Manahas, and Ebal, Shephi, and Onam. And the sons of Zibeon; Aiah, and Anah.
41 The sons of Anah; Dishon. And the sons of Dishon; Amram, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Cheran.
42 The sons of Ezer; Bilhan, and Zavan, *and* Jakan. The sons of Dishan; Uz, and Aran.

The kings of Edom

43 Now these *are* the kings that reigned in the land of Edom before *any* king reigned over the children of Israel; Bela the son of Beor: and the name of his city *was* Dinhabah. [[Gen 36:31](#)];
44 And when Bela was dead, Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his stead.
45 And when Jobab was dead, Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his stead.
46 And when Husham was dead, Hadad the son of Bedad, which smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his stead: and the name of his city *was* Avith.
47 And when Hadad was dead, Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his stead.
48 And when Samlah was dead, Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his stead.
49 And when Shaul was dead, Baalhanan the son of Achbor reigned in his stead.
50 And when Baalhanan was dead, Hadad reigned in his stead: and the name of his city *was* Pai; and his wife's name *was* Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab.

The dukes of Edom

51 Hadad died also. And the dukes of Edom were; duke Timnah, duke Aliah, duke Jetheth, [[Gen 36:40](#)];
52 Duke Aholibamah, duke Elah, duke Pinon,
53 Duke Kenaz, duke Teman, duke Mibzar,
54 Duke Magdiel, duke Iram. These *are* the dukes of Edom.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWO

The sons of Israel

1 These *are* the sons of Israel; Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, [Gen 29:32](#); [Gen 30:5](#); [Gen 35:18](#); [Gen 35:22](#); [Gen 46:8](#);
2 Dan, Joseph, and Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

The posterity of Judah by Tamar

3 The sons of Judah; Er, and Onan, and Shelah: *which* three were born unto him of the daughter of Shua the Canaanitess. And Er, the firstborn of Judah, was evil in the sight of the YAHWEH; and he slew him. [Gen 38:3](#); [Gen 46:12](#); [Num 26:19](#); [\[Gen 38:2\]](#);

4 And Tamar his daughter in law bore him Pharez and Zerah. All the sons of Judah *were* five. [Gen 38:28-29](#); [Matt 1:3](#); [\[Gen 38:27\]](#); [\[Ruth 4:12\]](#); [\[1Chr 4:1\]](#);

5 The sons of Pharez; Hezron, and Hamul. [Gen 46:12](#); [\[Ruth 4:18\]](#); [\[Matt 1:3\]](#);

6 And the sons of Zerah; Zimri, and Ethan, and Heman, and Calcol, and Dara: five of them in all.

7 And the sons of Carmi; Achar, the troubler of Israel, who transgressed in the thing accursed. [Josh 7:25](#); [\[Josh 7:1\]](#);

8 And the sons of Ethan; Azariah.

9 The sons also of Hezron, that were born unto him; Jerahmeel, and Ram, and Chelubai. [\[Matt 1:3\]](#);

10 And Ram begat Amminadab; and Amminadab begat Nahshon, prince of the children of Judah; [Ruth 4:19](#); [Matt 1:3-4](#); [Num 1:7](#); [Num 2:3](#);

11 And Nahshon begat Salma, and Salma begat Boaz,

12 And Boaz begat Obed, and Obed begat Jesse,

The children of Jesse

13 And Jesse begat his firstborn Eliab, and Abinadab the second, and Shimma the third,

14 Nethaneel the fourth, Raddai the fifth,

15 Ozem the sixth, David the seventh: [\[Matt 1:6\]](#);

16 Whose sisters *were* Zeruiah, and Abigail. And the sons of Zeruiah; Abishai, and Joab, and Asahel, three.

17 And Abigail bore Amasa: and the father of Amasa *was* Jether the Ishmeelite.

The posterity of Caleb the son of Hezron

18 And Caleb the son of Hezron begat *children* of Azubah *his* wife, and of Jerioth: her sons *are* these; Jeshar, and Shobab, and Ardon.

19 And when Azubah was dead, Caleb took unto him Ephrath, which bore him Hur.

20 And Hur begat Uri, and Uri begat Bezaleel. [Exod 31:2](#);

Hezron's posterity by the daughter of Machir

21 And afterward Hezron went in to the daughter of Machir the father of Gilead, whom he married when he *was* threescore years old; and she bore him Segub.

22 And Segub begat Jair, who had three and twenty cities in the land of Gilead.

23 And he took Geshur, and Aram, with the towns of Jair, from them, with Kenath, and the towns thereof, *even* threescore cities. All these *belonged to* the sons of Machir the father of Gilead.

24 And after that Hezron was dead in Calebephratah, then Abiah Hezron's wife bore him Ashur the father of Tekoa.

Jerahmeel's posterity

25 And the sons of Jerahmeel the firstborn of Hezron were, Ram the firstborn, and Bunah, and Oren, and Ozem, *and* Ahijah.

26 Jerahmeel had also another wife, whose name *was* Atarah; she *was* the mother of Onam.

27 And the sons of Ram the firstborn of Jerahmeel were, Maaz, and Jamin, and Eker.

28 And the sons of Onam were, Shammai, and Jada. And the sons of Shammai; Nadab, and Abishur.

29 And the name of the wife of Abishur *was* Abihail, and she bore him Ahban, and Molid.

30 And the sons of Nadab; Seled, and Appaim: but Seled died without children.

31 And the sons of Appaim; Ishi. And the sons of Ishi; Sheshan. And the children of Sheshan; Ahlai.

- 32** And the sons of Jada the brother of Shammai; Jether, and Jonathan: and Jether died without children.
33 And the sons of Jonathan; Peleth, and Zaza. These were the sons of Jerahmeel.

Sheshan's posterity

- 34** Now Sheshan had no sons, but daughters. And Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian, whose name *was* Jarha.
35 And Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha his servant to wife; and she bore him Attai.
36 And Attai begat Nathan, and Nathan begat Zabad,
37 And Zabad begat Ephlal, and Ephlal begat Obed,
38 And Obed begat Jehu, and Jehu begat Azariah,
39 And Azariah begat Helez, and Helez begat Eleasah,
40 And Eleasah begat Sisamai, and Sisamai begat Shallum,
41 And Shallum begat Jekamiah, and Jekamiah begat Elishama.

Another branch of Caleb's posterity

- 42** Now the sons of Caleb the brother of Jerahmeel *were*, Mesha his firstborn, which was the father of Ziph; and the sons of Mareshah the father of Hebron.
43 And the sons of Hebron; Korah, and Tappuah, and Rekem, and Shema.
44 And Shema begat Raham, the father of Jorkoam: and Rekem begat Shammai.
45 And the son of Shammai *was* Maon: and Maon *was* the father of Bethzur.
46 And Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bore Haran, and Moza, and Gazez: and Haran begat Gazez.
47 And the sons of Jahdai; Regem, and Jotham, and Geshan, and Pelet, and Ephah, and Shaaph.
48 Maachah, Caleb's concubine, bore Sheber, and Tirhanah.
49 She bore also Shaaph the father of Madmannah, Sheva the father of Machbenah, and the father of Gibeaz: and the daughter of Caleb *was* Achsah.

The posterity of Caleb the son of Hur

- 50** These were the sons of Caleb the son of Hur, the firstborn of Ephratah; Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim,
51 Salma the father of Bethlehem, Hareph the father of Bethgader.
52 And Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim had sons; Haroeh, *and* half of the Manahethites.
53 And the families of Kirjathjearim; the Ithrites, and the Puhites, and the Shumathites, and the Mishraites; of them came the Zareathites, and the Eshtaulites.
54 The sons of Salma; Bethlehem, and the Netophasites, Ataroth, the house of Joab, and half of the Manahethites, the Zorites.
55 And the families of the scribes which dwelt at Jabez; the Tirathites, the Shimeathites, *and* Suchasites. These *are* the Kenites that came of Hemath, the father of the house of Rechab.

FIRST CHRONICLES THREE

The sons of David

- 1** Now these were the sons of David, which were born unto him in Hebron; the firstborn Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess; the second Daniel, of Abigail the Carmelitess: [2Sam 3:2](#);
2 The third, Absalom the son of Maachah the daughter of Talmai king of Geshur: the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith: [\[1Kgs 1:6\]](#);
3 The fifth, Shephatiah of Abital: the sixth, Ithream by Eglah his wife.
4 *These* six were born unto him in Hebron; and there he reigned seven years and six months: and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years. [\[2Sam 5:5\]](#);

5 And these were born unto him in Jerusalem; Shimea, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon, four, of Bathshua the daughter of Ammiel: [2Sam 5:14](#); [\[1Chr 14:4\]](#);
6 Ibhar also, and Elishama, and Eliphelet,
7 And Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,
8 And Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphelet, nine.
9 *These were* all the sons of David, beside the sons of the concubines, and Tamar their sister. [\[2Sam 5:13\]](#);

His line to Zedekiah

10 And Solomon's son *was* Rehoboam, Abia his son, Asa his son, Jehoshaphat his son, [1Kgs 11:43](#); [1Kgs 14:31](#); [1Kgs 15:8](#); [1Kgs 15:24](#); [\[Matt 1:7\]](#);
11 Joram his son, Ahaziah his son, Joash his son, [2Kgs 8:16](#); [2Kgs 8:25](#); [2Kgs 11:2](#);
12 Amaziah his son, Azariah his son, Jotham his son, [2Kgs 12:21](#); [2Kgs 14:21](#); [2Kgs 15:7](#);
13 Ahaz his son, Hezekiah his son, Manasseh his son, [2Kgs 15:38](#); [2Kgs 16:20](#); [2Kgs 20:21](#); [\[Luke 12:31\]](#);
14 Amon his son, Josiah his son. [2Kgs 21:18](#); [2Kgs 21:26](#);
15 And the sons of Josiah *were*, the firstborn Johanan, the second Jehoiakim, the third Zedekiah, the fourth Shallum. [2Kgs 23:30](#); [2Kgs 23:34](#);
16 And the sons of Jehoiakim: Jeconiah his son, Zedekiah his son. [2Kgs 24:6](#); [2Kgs 24:17](#); [\[Matt 1:11\]](#);

The successors of Jeconiah

17 And the sons of Jeconiah; Assir, Salathiel his son, [Matt 1:11-12](#); [\[Matt 1:12\]](#);
18 Malchiram also, and Pedaiah, and Shenazar, Jecamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.
19 And the sons of Pedaiah *were*, Zerubbabel, and Shimei: and the sons of Zerubbabel; Meshullam, and Hananiah, and Shelomith their sister:
20 And Hashubah, and Ohel, and Berechiah, and Hasadiah, Jushabhesed, five.
21 And the sons of Hananiah; Pelatiah, and Jesaiah: the sons of Rephaiah, the sons of Arnan, the sons of Obadiah, the sons of Shechaniah.
22 And the sons of Shechaniah; Shemaiah: and the sons of Shemaiah; Hattush, and Igeal, and Bariah, and Neariah, and Shaphat, six.
23 And the sons of Neariah; Elioenai, and Hezekiah, and Azrikam, three.
24 And the sons of Elioenai *were*, Hodaiah, and Eliashib, and Pelaiah, and Akkub, and Johanan, and Dalaiah, and Anani, seven.

The posterity of Judah by Caleb, the son of Hur

- 1** The sons of Judah; Pharez, Hezron, and Carmi, and Hur, and Shobal. [Gen 38:29](#); [Gen 46:12](#); [1Chr 2:4](#);
2 And Reaiah the son of Shobal begat Jahas; and Jahas begat Ahumai, and Lahad. These *are* the families of the Zorathites.
3 And these *were of* the father of Etam; Jezreel, and Ishma, and Idbash: and the name of their sister *was* Hazelelponi:
4 And Penuel the father of Gedor, and Ezer the father of Hushah. These *are* the sons of Hur, the firstborn of Ephratah, the father of Bethlehem.

Of Ashur, the posthumous son Hezron

- 5** And Ashur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah.
6 And Naarah bore him Ahuzam, and Hepher, and Temeni, and Haahashtari. These *were* the sons of Naarah.
7 And the sons of Helah *were*, Zereth, and Jezoar, and Ethnan.
8 And Coz begat Anub, and Zobebah, and the families of Aharhel the son of Harum.

Of Jabez, and his prayer

- 9** And Jabez was more honourable than his brethren: and his mother called his name Jabez, saying, Because I bore him with sorrow.
10 And Jabez called on the Elohim of Israel, saying, Oh that you wouldest bless me indeed, and enlarge my coast, and that thine hand might be with me, and that you wouldest keep *me* from evil, that it may not grieve me! And Elohim granted him that which he requested.

The other families of the same stock

- 11** And Chelub the brother of Shuah begat Mehir, which *was* the father of Eshton.
12 And Eshton begat Bethrapha, and Paseah, and Tehinnah the father of Irnash. These *are* the men of Rechah.
13 And the sons of Kenaz; Othniel, and Seraiah: and the sons of Othniel; Hasath. [Josh 15:17](#);
14 And Meonothai begat Ophrah: and Seraiah begat Joab, the father of the valley of Charashim; for they were craftsmen.
15 And the sons of Caleb the son of Jephunneh; Iru, Elah, and Naam: and the sons of Elah, even Kenaz.
16 And the sons of Jehaleleel; Ziph, and Ziphah, Tiria, and Asareel.
17 And the sons of Ezra *were*, Jether, and Mered, and Ephraim, and Jalon: and she bore Miriam, and Shammai, and Ishbah the father of Eshtemoa.
18 And his wife Jehudijah bore Jered the father of Gedor, and Heber the father of Socho, and Jekuthiel the father of Zanoah. And these *are* the sons of Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh, which Mered took.
19 And the sons of *his* wife Hodiah the sister of Naham, the father of Keilah the Garmite, and Eshtemoa the Maachasite.
20 And the sons of Shimon *were*, Amnon, and Rinnah, Benhanan, and Tilon. And the sons of Ishi *were*, Zoheth, and Benzoheth.

The sons of Shelah

- 21** The sons of Shelah the son of Judah *were*, Er the father of Lecah, and Laadah the father of Mareshah, and the families of the house of them that wrought fine linen, of the house of Ashbea, [Gen 38:5](#);
22 And Jokim, and the men of Chozeba, and Joash, and Saraph, who had the dominion in Moab, and Jashubilehem. And *these are* ancient things.

23 These *were* the potters, and those that dwelt among plants and hedges: there they dwelt with the king for his work.

The posterity and cities of Simeon

24 The sons of Simeon *were*, Nemuel, and Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, *and* Shaul: [\[Gen 46:10\]](#); [\[Exod 6:15\]](#);

25 Shallum his son, Mibsam his son, Mishma his son.

26 And the sons of Mishma; Hamuel his son, Zacchur his son, Shimei his son.

27 And Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters; but his brethren had not many children, neither did all their family multiply, like to the children of Judah.

28 And they dwelt at Beersheba, and Moladah, and Hazarshual,

29 And at Bilhah, and at Ezem, and at Tolad,

30 And at Bethuel, and at Hormah, and at Ziklag,

31 And at Bethmarcaboth, and Hazarsusim, and at Bethbirei, and at Shaaraim. These *were* their cities unto the reign of David.

32 And their villages *were*, Etam, and Ain, Rimmon, and Tochen, and Ashan, five cities:

33 And all their villages that *were* round about the same cities, unto Baal. These *were* their habitations, and their genealogy.

34 And Meshobab, and Jamlech, and Joshah the son of Amaziah,

35 And Joel, and Jehu the son of Josibiah, the son of Seraiah, the son of Asiel,

36 And Elioenai, and Jaakobah, and Jeshohaiah, and Asaiah, and Adiel, and Jesimiel, and Benaiah,

37 And Ziza the son of Shiphi, the son of Allon, the son of Jedaiah, the son of Shimri, the son of Shemaiah;

38 These mentioned by *their* names *were* princes in their families: and the house of their fathers increased greatly.

Their conquest of Gedor, and of the Amalekites in mount Seir

39 And they went to the entrance of Gedor, *even* unto the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their flocks.

40 And they found fat pasture and good, and the land *was* wide, and quiet, and peaceable; for *they* of Ham had dwelt there of old.

41 And these written by name came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah, and smote their tents, and the habitations that were found there, and destroyed them utterly unto this day, and dwelt in their rooms: because *there was* pasture there for their flocks.

42 And *some* of them, *even* of the sons of Simeon, five hundred men, went to mount Seir, having for their captains Pelatiah, and Neariah, and Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the sons of Ishi.

43 And they smote the rest of the Amalekites that were escaped, and dwelt there unto this day.

Judah and Joseph preferred before Reuben, who forfeited his birthright

1 Now the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel, (for he *was* the firstborn; but, forasmuch as he defiled his father's bed, his birthright was given unto the sons of Joseph the son of Israel: and the genealogy is not to be reckoned after the birthright. [\[Gen 46:8\]](#); [\[Gen 49:4\]](#); [\[Gen 49:22\]](#); [\[Num 26:5\]](#); [\[Deut 21:17\]](#);

2 For Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him *came* the chief ruler; but the birthright *was* Joseph's:)

Ruben's descendants; some of whom vanquish the Hagarites

3 The sons, *I say*, of Reuben the firstborn of Israel *were*, Hanoch, and Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. [Gen 46:9](#); [Exod 6:14](#); [Num 26:5](#);

4 The sons of Joel; Shemaiah his son, Gog his son, Shimei his son,

5 Micah his son, Reaia his son, Baal his son,

6 Beerah his son, whom Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria carried away *captive*: he *was* prince of the Reubenites.

7 And his brethren by their families, when the genealogy of their generations was reckoned, *were* the chief, Jeiel, and Zechariah,

8 And Bela the son of Azaz, the son of Shema, the son of Joel, who dwelt in Aroer, even unto Nebo and Baalmeon:

9 And eastward he inhabited unto the entering in of the wilderness from the river Euphrates: because their cattle were multiplied in the land of Gilead.

10 And in the days of Saul they made war with the Hagarites, who fell by their hand: and they dwelt in their tents throughout all the east *land* of Gilead.

The chief men of Gad, and their habitations

11 And the children of Gad dwelt over against them, in the land of Bashan unto Salchah: [Josh 13:24](#); [\[Gen 46:16\]](#);

12 Joel the chief, and Shapham the next, and Jaanai, and Shaphat in Bashan.

13 And their brethren of the house of their fathers *were*, Michael, and Meshullam, and Sheba, and Jorai, and Jachan, and Zia, and Heber, seven.

14 These *are* the children of Abihail the son of Huri, the son of Jaroah, the son of Gilead, the son of Michael, the son of Jeshishai, the son of Jahdo, the son of Buz;

15 Ahi the son of Abdiel, the son of Guni, chief of the house of their fathers.

16 And they dwelt in Gilead in Bashan, and in her towns, and in all the suburbs of Sharon, upon their borders.

17 All these were reckoned by genealogies in the days of Jotham king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam king of Israel.

Ruben, Gad, and half of Manasseh, obtain a victory over the Hagarites

18 The sons of Reuben, and the Gadites, and half the tribe of Manasseh, of valiant men, men able to bear buckler and sword, and to shoot with bow, and skilful in war, *were* four and forty thousand seven hundred and threescore, that went out to the war.

19 And they made war with the Hagarites, with Jetur, and Nephish, and Nodab.

20 And they were helped against them, and the Hagarites were delivered into their hand, and all that *were* with them: for they cried to Elohim in the battle, and he was intreated of them; because they put their trust in him.

21 And they took away their cattle; of their camels fifty thousand, and of sheep two hundred and fifty thousand, and of asses two thousand, and of men a hundred thousand.

22 For there fell down many slain, because the war *was* of Elohim. And they dwelt in their steads until the captivity.

The habitations and chief men of that half of Manasseh

23 And the children of the half tribe of Manasseh dwelt in the land: they increased from Bashan unto Baalhermon and Senir, and unto mount Hermon.

24 And these *were* the heads of the house of their fathers, even Ephraim, and Ishi, and Eliel, and Azriel, and Jeremiah, and Hodaviah, and Jahdiel, mighty men of valour, famous men, *and* heads of the house of their fathers.

The captivity of the two tribes and half, for their sins

25 And they transgressed against the Elohim of their fathers, and went a whoring after the gods of the people of the land, whom Elohim destroyed before them.

26 And the Elohim of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria, and the spirit of Tilgathpileser king of Assyria, and he carried them away, even the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, and brought them unto Halah, and Habor, and Hara, and to the river Gozan, unto this day. [2Kgs 15:19];

FIRST CHRONICLES SIX

The sons of Levi

1 The sons of Levi; Gershon, Kohas, and Merari. Gen 46:11; Exod 6:16; Num 26:57; 1Chr 23:6; [Gen 46:8]; [Num 3:17]; [1Chr 15:4];

2 And the sons of Kohas; Amram, Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.

3 And the children of Amram; Aaron, and Moses, and Miriam. The sons also of Aaron; Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. [Exod 6:23];

The line of Eleazar unto the captivity

4 Eleazar begat Phinehas, Phinehas begat Abishua,

5 And Abishua begat Bukki, and Bukki begat Uzzi,

6 And Uzzi begat Zerahiah, and Zerahiah begat Meraioth,

7 Meraioth begat Amariah, and Amariah begat Ahitub,

8 And Ahitub begat Zadok, and Zadok begat Ahimaaz, 2Sam 8:17; 2Sam 15:27;

9 And Ahimaaz begat Azariah, and Azariah begat Johanan,

10 And Johanan begat Azariah, (he *it is* that executed the priest's office in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem:)

11 And Azariah begat Amariah, and Amariah begat Ahitub,

12 And Ahitub begat Zadok, and Zadok begat Shallum,

13 And Shallum begat Hilkiah, and Hilkiah begat Azariah,

14 And Azariah begat Seraiah, and Seraiah begat Jehozadak,

15 And Jehozadak went *into captivity*, when the YAHWEH carried away Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.

The families of Gershom, Kohas, and Merari

16 The sons of Levi; Gershom, Kohas, and Merari. Exod 6:17-18; [Exod 6:16];

17 And these *be* the names of the sons of Gershom; Libni, and Shimei. [Exod 6:17];

18 And the sons of Kohas *were*, Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel. [Exod 6:18];

19 The sons of Merari; Mahli, and Mushi. And these *are* the families of the Levites according to their fathers. [Exod 6:19];

20 Of Gershom; Libni his son, Jahas his son, Zimmah his son,
21 Joah his son, Iddo his son, Zerah his son, Jeaterai his son.
22 The sons of Kohas; Amminadab his son, Korah his son, Assir his son, [Exod 6:24](#);
23 Elkanah his son, and Ebiasaph his son, and Assir his son,
24 Tahas his son, Uriel his son, Uziah his son, and Shaul his son.
25 And the sons of Elkanah; Amasai, and Ahimoth.
26 *As for* Elkanah: the sons of Elkanah; Zophai his son, and Nahas his son, [\[1Sam 1:1\]](#);
27 Eliab his son, Jeroham his son, Elkanah his son.
28 And the sons of Samuel; the firstborn Vashni, and Abiah.
29 The sons of Merari; Mahli, Libni his son, Shimei his son, Uzza his son,
30 Shimea his son, Haggiah his son, Asaiah his son.
31 And these *are they* whom David set over the service of song in the house of the YAHWEH, after that the ark had rest. [\[2Chr 29:25\]](#);
32 And they ministered before the dwelling place of the tabernacle of the congregation with singing, until Solomon had built the house of the YAHWEH in Jerusalem: and *then* they waited on their office according to their order.
33 And these *are they* that waited with their children. Of the sons of the Kohasites: Heman a singer, the son of Joel, the son of Shemuel, [\[1Chr 15:17\]](#);
34 The son of Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Eliel, the son of Toah,
35 The son of Zuph, the son of Elkanah, the son of Mahas, the son of Amasai,
36 The son of Elkanah, the son of Joel, the son of Azariah, the son of Zephaniah,
37 The son of Tahas, the son of Assir, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah,
38 The son of Izhar, the son of Kohas, the son of Levi, the son of Israel.
39 And his brother Asaph, who stood on his right hand, *even* Asaph the son of Berachiah, the son of Shimea, [\[1Chr 15:17\]](#);
40 The son of Michael, the son of Baaseiah, the son of Malchiah,
41 The son of Ethni, the son of Zerah, the son of Adaiah,
42 The son of Ethan, the son of Zimmah, the son of Shimei,
43 The son of Jahas, the son of Gershom, the son of Levi.
44 And their brethren the sons of Merari *stood* on the left hand: Ethan the son of Kishi, the son of Abdi, the son of Malluch, [\[1Chr 15:17\]](#);
45 The son of Hashabiah, the son of Amaziah, the son of Hilkiah,
46 The son of Amzi, the son of Bani, the son of Shamer,
47 The son of Mahli, the son of Mushi, the son of Merari, the son of Levi.
48 Their brethren also the Levites *were* appointed unto all manner of service of the tabernacle of the house of Elohim.

The office of Aaron, and his line unto Ahimaaz

49 But Aaron and his sons offered upon the altar of the burnt offering, and on the altar of incense, *and were appointed* for all the work of the *place* most holy, and to make an atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of Elohim had commanded. [Exod 30:7-8](#); [Exod 30:10](#); [Num 4:16](#); [Num 7:10](#); [Num 18:1](#);
50 And these *are* the sons of Aaron; Eleazar his son, Phinehas his son, Abishua his son,
51 Bukki his son, Uzzi his son, Zerahiah his son,
52 Meraioth his son, Amariah his son, Ahitub his son,
53 Zadok his son, Ahimaaz his son.

The cities of the priests and Levites

- 54** Now these *are* their dwelling places throughout their castles in their coasts, of the sons of Aaron, of the families of the Kohasites: for theirs was the lot. [Josh 21:1];
- 55** And they gave them Hebron in the land of Judah, and the suburbs thereof round about it.
- 56** But the fields of the city, and the villages thereof, they gave to Caleb the son of Jephunneh. Josh 21:12;
- 57** And to the sons of Aaron they gave the cities of Judah, *namely*, Hebron, *the city* of refuge, and Libnah with her suburbs, and Jattir, and Eshtemoa, with their suburbs,
- 58** And Hilen with her suburbs, Debir with her suburbs,
- 59** And Ashan with her suburbs, and Bethshemesh with her suburbs:
- 60** And out of the tribe of Benjamin; Geba with her suburbs, and Alemeth with her suburbs, and Anathoth with her suburbs. All their cities throughout their families *were* thirteen cities.
- 61** And unto the sons of Kohas, *which were* left of the family of that tribe, *were cities given* out of the half tribe, *namely, out of* the half *tribe* of Manasseh, by lot, ten cities.
- 62** And to the sons of Gershom throughout their families out of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.
- 63** Unto the sons of Merari *were given* by lot, throughout their families, out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.
- 64** And the children of Israel gave to the Levites *these* cities with their suburbs.
- 65** And they gave by lot out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, and out of the tribe of the children of Benjamin, these cities, which are called by *their* names.
- 66** And *the residue* of the families of the sons of Kohas had cities of their coasts out of the tribe of Ephraim.
- 67** And they gave unto them, *of* the cities of refuge, Shechem in mount Ephraim with her suburbs; *they gave* also Gezer with her suburbs,
- 68** And Jokmeam with her suburbs, and Bethhoron with her suburbs,
- 69** And Aijalon with her suburbs, and Gathrimmon with her suburbs:
- 70** And out of the half tribe of Manasseh; Aner with her suburbs, and Bileam with her suburbs, for the family of the remnant of the sons of Kohas.
- 71** Unto the sons of Gershom *were given* out of the family of the half tribe of Manasseh, Golan in Bashan with her suburbs, and Ashtaroth with her suburbs:
- 72** And out of the tribe of Issachar; Kedesh with her suburbs, Daberath with her suburbs,
- 73** And Ramoth with her suburbs, and Anem with her suburbs:
- 74** And out of the tribe of Asher; Mashal with her suburbs, and Abdon with her suburbs,
- 75** And Hukok with her suburbs, and Rehob with her suburbs:
- 76** And out of the tribe of Naphtali; Kedesh in Galilee with her suburbs, and Hammon with her suburbs, and Kirjathaim with her suburbs.
- 77** Unto the rest of the children of Merari *were given* out of the tribe of Zebulun, Rimmon with her suburbs, Tabor with her suburbs:
- 78** And on the other side Jordan by Jericho, on the east side of Jordan, *were given them* out of the tribe of Reuben, Bezer in the wilderness with her suburbs, and Jahzah with her suburbs,
- 79** Kedemoth also with her suburbs, and Mephaath with her suburbs:
- 80** And out of the tribe of Gad; Ramoth in Gilead with her suburbs, and Mahanaim with her suburbs,
- 81** And Heshbon with her suburbs, and Jazer with her suburbs.

The sons of Issachar

1 Now the sons of Issachar *were*, Tola, and Puah, Jashub, and Shimron, four. [Gen 46:13](#); [Num 26:23](#); [[Gen 46:8](#)];

2 And the sons of Tola; Uzzi, and Rephaiah, and Jeriel, and Jahmai, and Jibsam, and Shemuel, heads of their father's house, *to wit*, of Tola: *they were* valiant men of might in their generations; whose number *was* in the days of David two and twenty thousand and six hundred.

3 And the sons of Uzzi; Izrahiah: and the sons of Izrahiah; Michael, and Obadiah, and Joel, Ishiah, five: all of them chief men.

4 And with them, by their generations, after the house of their fathers, *were* bands of soldiers for war, six and thirty thousand *men*: for they had many wives and sons.

5 And their brethren among all the families of Issachar *were* valiant men of might, reckoned in all by their genealogies fourscore and seven thousand.

of Benjamin

6 *The sons* of Benjamin; Bela, and Becher, and Jediael, three. [Gen 46:21](#); [Num 26:38](#); [1Chr 8:1](#);

7 And the sons of Bela; Ezbon, and Uzzi, and Uzziel, and Jerimoth, and Iri, five; heads of the house of *their* fathers, mighty men of valour; and were reckoned by their genealogies twenty and two thousand and thirty and four.

8 And the sons of Becher; Zemira, and Joash, and Eliezer, and Elioenai, and Omri, and Jerimoth, and Abiah, and Anathoth, and Alameth. All these *are* the sons of Becher.

9 And the number of them, after their genealogy by their generations, heads of the house of their fathers, mighty men of valour, *was* twenty thousand and two hundred.

10 The sons also of Jediael; Bilhan: and the sons of Bilhan; Jeush, and Benjamin, and Ehud, and Chenaanah, and Zethan, and Tharshish, and Ahishahar.

11 All these the sons of Jediael, by the heads of their fathers, mighty men of valour, *were* seventeen thousand and two hundred *soldiers*, fit to go out for war *and* battle.

12 Shuppim also, and Huppim, the children of Ir, *and* Hushim, the sons of Aher.

of Naphtali

13 The sons of Naphtali; Jahziel, and Guni, and Jezer, and Shallum, the sons of Bilhah. [[Gen 46:24](#)];

of Manasseh

14 The sons of Manasseh; Ashriel, whom she bare: (*but* his concubine the Aramitess bore Machir the father of Gilead:

and of Ephraim

15 And Machir took to wife *the sister* of Huppim and Shuppim, whose sister's name *was* Maachah;) and the name of the second *was* Zelophehad: and Zelophehad had daughters.

16 And Maachah the wife of Machir bore a son, and she called his name Peresh; and the name of his brother *was* Sheresh; and his sons *were* Ulam and Rakem.

17 And the sons of Ulam; Bedan. These *were* the sons of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh.

18 And his sister Hammoleketh bore Ishod, and Abiezer, and Mahalah.

19 And the sons of Shemida were, Ahian, and Shechem, and Likhi, and Aniam.

20 And the sons of Ephraim; Shuthelah, and Bered his son, and Tahas his son, and Eladah his son, and Tahas his son, [Num 26:35](#);

The calamity of Ephraim by the men of Gath

21 And Zabad his son, and Shuthelah his son, and Ezer, and Elead, whom the men of Gath *that were* born in *that* land slew, because they came down to take away their cattle.

22 And Ephraim their father mourned many days, and his brethren came to comfort him.

His posterity by Beriah

23 And when he went in to his wife, she conceived, and bore a son, and he called his name Beriah, because it went evil with his house.

24 (And his daughter *was* Sherah, who built Bethhoron the nether, and the upper, and Uzzen-sherah.)

25 And Rephah *was* his son, also Resheph, and Telah his son, and Tahan his son,

26 Laadan his son, Ammihud his son, Elishama his son,

27 Non his son, Jehoshua his son.

Their habitations

28 And their possessions and habitations *were*, Bethel and the towns thereof, and eastward Naaran, and westward Gezer, with the towns thereof; Shechem also and the towns thereof, unto Gaza and the towns thereof: [Josh 16:1](#);

29 And by the borders of the children of Manasseh, Bethshean and her towns, Taanach and her towns, Megiddo and her towns, Dor and her towns. In these dwelt the children of Joseph the son of Israel.

The sons of Asher

30 The sons of Asher; Imnah, and Isuah, and Ishuai, and Beriah, and Serah their sister. [Gen 46:17](#); [Num 26:44](#);

31 And the sons of Beriah; Heber, and Malchiel, who *is* the father of Birzavith.

32 And Heber begat Japhlet, and Shomer, and Hotham, and Shua their sister.

33 And the sons of Japhlet; Pasach, and Bimhal, and Ashvath. These *are* the children of Japhlet.

34 And the sons of Shamer; Ahi, and Rohgah, Jehubbah, and Aram.

35 And the sons of his brother Helem; Zophah, and Imna, and Shelesh, and Amal.

36 The sons of Zophah; Suah, and Harnepher, and Shual, and Beri, and Imrah,

37 Bezer, and Hod, and Shamma, and Shilshah, and Ithran, and Beera.

38 And the sons of Jether; Jephunneh, and Pispah, and Ara.

39 And the sons of Ulla; Arah, and Haniel, and Rezia.

40 All these *were* the children of Asher, heads of *their* father's house, choice *and* mighty men of valour, chief of the princes. And the number throughout the genealogy of them that were apt to the war *and* to battle *was* twenty and six thousand men.

FIRST CHRONICLES EIGHT

The sons and chief men of Benjamin

1 Now Benjamin begat Bela his firstborn, Ashbel the second, and Aharah the third, [\[Gen 46:8\]](#); [\[Gen 46:21\]](#); [\[1Chr 7:6\]](#);

2 Nohah the fourth, and Rapha the fifth.

3 And the sons of Bela were, Addar, and Gera, and Abihud,

4 And Abishua, and Naaman, and Ahoah,

5 And Gera, and Shephuphan, and Hiram.

6 And these *are* the sons of Ehud: these are the heads of the fathers of the inhabitants of Geba, and they removed them to Manahas:

7 And Naaman, and Ahiah, and Gera, he removed them, and begat Uzza, and Ahihud.

8 And Shaharaim begat *children* in the country of Moab, after he had sent them away; Hushim and Baara *were* his wives.

9 And he begat of Hodesh his wife, Jobab, and Zibia, and Mesha, and Malcham,

10 And Jeuz, and Shachia, and Mirma. These *were* his sons, heads of the fathers.

11 And of Hushim he begat Abitub, and Elpaal.
12 The sons of Elpaal; Eber, and Misham, and Shamed, who built Ono, and Lod, with the towns thereof:
13 Beriah also, and Shema, who *were* heads of the fathers of the inhabitants of Aijalon, who drove away the inhabitants of Gath:
14 And Ahio, Shashak, and Jeremoth,
15 And Zebadiah, and Arad, and Ader,
16 And Michael, and Ispah, and Joha, the sons of Beriah;
17 And Zebadiah, and Meshullam, and Hezeki, and Heber,
18 Ishmerai also, and Jeziah, and Jobab, the sons of Elpaal;
19 And Jakim, and Zichri, and Zabdi,
20 And Elienai, and Zilthai, and Eliel,
21 And Adaiah, and Beraiah, and Shimrath, the sons of Shimhi;
22 And Ishpan, and Heber, and Eliel,
23 And Abdon, and Zichri, and Hanan,
24 And Hananiah, and Elam, and Antothijah,
25 And Iphedeiah, and Penuel, the sons of Shashak;
26 And Shamsherai, and Shehariah, and Athaliah,
27 And Jaresiah, and Eliah, and Zichri, the sons of Jeroham.
28 These *were* heads of the fathers, by their generations, chief *men*. These dwelt in Jerusalem.
29 And at Gibeon dwelt the father of Gibeon; whose wife's name *was* Maachah:
30 And his firstborn son Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Nadab,
31 And Gedor, and Ahio, and Zacher.
32 And Mikloth begat Shimeah. And these also dwelt with their brethren in Jerusalem, over against them.

The stock of Saul and Jonathan

33 And Ner begat Kish, and Kish begat Saul, and Saul begat Jonathan, and Malchishua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal.
34 And the son of Jonathan *was* Meribbaal; and Meribbaal begat Micah. [2Sam 9:12](#);
35 And the sons of Micah *were*, Pithon, and Melech, and Tarea, and Ahaz.
36 And Ahaz begat Jehoadah; and Jehoadah begat Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri begat Moza,
37 And Moza begat Binea: Rapha *was* his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son:
38 And Azel had six sons, whose names *are* these, Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan. All these *were* the sons of Azel.
39 And the sons of Eshek his brother *were*, Ulam his firstborn, Jehush the second, and Eliphelet the third.
40 And the sons of Ulam were mighty men of valour, archers, and had many sons, and sons' sons, a hundred and fifty. All these *are* of the sons of Benjamin.

FIRST CHRONICLES NINE

The original of Israel and Judah's genealogies

1 So all Israel were reckoned by genealogies; and, behold, they *were* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah, *who* were carried away to Babylon for their transgression.

The Israelites

2 Now the first inhabitants that *dwelt* in their possessions in their cities *were*, the Israelites, the priests, Levites, and the Nethinims.

3 And in Jerusalem dwelt of the children of Judah, and of the children of Benjamin, and of the children of Ephraim, and Manasseh;

4 Uthai the son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, of the children of Pharez the son of Judah.

5 And of the Shilonites; Asaiah the firstborn, and his sons.

6 And of the sons of Zerah; Jeuel, and their brethren, six hundred and ninety.

7 And of the sons of Benjamin; Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Hodaviah, the son of Hasenuah,

8 And Ibneiah the son of Jeroham, and Elah the son of Uzzi, the son of Michri, and Meshullam the son of Shephasiah, the son of Reuel, the son of Ibnijah;

9 And their brethren, according to their generations, nine hundred and fifty and six. All these men *were* chief of the fathers in the house of their fathers.

the priests

10 And of the priests; Jedaiah, and Jehoiarib, and Jachin, [\[Neh 12:23\]](#);

11 And Azariah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the ruler of the house of Elohim;

12 And Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchijah, and Maasiai the son of Adiel, the son of Jahzerah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer;

13 And their brethren, heads of the house of their fathers, a thousand and seven hundred and threescore; very able men for the work of the service of the house of Elohim.

and the Levites, with Nethinims, which dwelt in Jerusalem

14 And of the Levites; Shemaiah the son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, of the sons of Merari;

15 And Bakbakkar, Heresh, and Galal, and Mattaniah the son of Micah, the son of Zichri, the son of Asaph;

16 And Obadiah the son of Shemaiah, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun, and Berechiah the son of Asa, the son of Elkanah, that dwelt in the villages of the Netophasites.

17 And the porters *were*, Shallum, and Akkub, and Talmon, and Ahiman, and their brethren: Shallum *was* the chief; [\[2Chr 8:14\]](#);

18 Who hitherto *waited* in the king's gate eastward: they *were* porters in the companies of the children of Levi.

19 And Shallum the son of Kore, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, and his brethren, of the house of his father, the Korahites, *were* over the work of the service, keepers of the gates of the tabernacle: and their fathers, *being* over the host of the YAHWEH, *were* keepers of the entry.

20 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar was the ruler over them in time past, *and* the YAHWEH *was* with him.

21 *And* Zechariah the son of Meshelemiah *was* porter of the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

22 All these *which were* chosen to be porters in the gates *were* two hundred and twelve. These were reckoned by their genealogy in their villages, whom David and Samuel the seer did ordain in their set office.

23 So they and their children *had* the oversight of the gates of the house of the YAHWEH, *namely*, the house of the tabernacle, by wards.

24 In four quarters were the porters, toward the east, west, north, and south.

25 And their brethren, *which were* in their villages, *were* to come after seven days from time to time with them.

26 For these Levites, the four chief porters, were in *their* set office, and were over the chambers and treasuries of the house of Elohim.

The charge of certain Levites

27 And they lodged round about the house of Elohim, because the charge *was* upon them, and the opening thereof every morning *pertained* to them.

28 And *certain* of them had the charge of the ministering vessels, that they should bring them in and out by tale.

29 *Some* of them also *were* appointed to oversee the vessels, and all the instruments of the sanctuary, and the fine flour, and the wine, and the oil, and the frankincense, and the spices.

30 And *some* of the sons of the priests made the ointment of the spices.

31 And Mattithiah, *one* of the Levites, who *was* the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, had the set office over the things that were made in the pans.

32 And *other* of their brethren, of the sons of the Kohasites, *were* over the showbread, to prepare *it* every Sabbath.

33 And these *are* the singers, chief of the fathers of the Levites, *who remaining* in the chambers *were* free: for they were employed in *that* work day and night.

34 These chief fathers of the Levites *were* chief throughout their generations; these dwelt at Jerusalem.

The stock of Saul and Jonathan

35 And in Gibeon dwelt the father of Gibeon, Jehiel, whose wife's name *was* Maachah:

36 And his firstborn son Abdon, then Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Ner, and Nadab,

37 And Gedor, and Ahio, and Zechariah, and Mikloth.

38 And Mikloth begat Shimeam. And they also dwelt with their brethren at Jerusalem, over against their brethren.

39 And Ner begat Kish; and Kish begat Saul; and Saul begat Jonathan, and Malchishua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal.

40 And the son of Jonathan *was* Meribbaal: and Meribbaal begat Micah.

41 And the sons of Micah *were*, Pithon, and Melech, and Tahrea, *and Ahaz*.

42 And Ahaz begat Jarah; and Jarah begat Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri begat Moza;

43 And Moza begat Binea; and Rephaiah his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son.

44 And Azel had six sons, whose names *are* these, Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan: these *were* the sons of Azel.

FIRST CHRONICLES TEN

Saul's overthrow and death

1 Now the Philistines fought against Israel; and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down slain in mount Gilboa.

2 And the Philistines followed hard after Saul, and after his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchishua, the sons of Saul.

3 And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers hit him, and he was wounded of the archers.

4 Then said Saul to his armourbearer, Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith; lest these uncircumcised come and abuse me. But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. So Saul took a sword, and fell upon it.

5 And when his armourbearer saw that Saul was dead, he fell likewise on the sword, and died.

6 So Saul died, and his three sons, and all his house died together.

7 And when all the men of Israel that *were* in the valley saw that they fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, then they forsook their cities, and fled: and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.

The Philistines triumph over Saul

8 And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his sons fallen in mount Gilboa.

9 And when they had stripped him, they took his head, and his armour, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to carry tidings unto their idols, and to the people. [1Sam 31:9];

10 And they put his armour in the house of their gods, and fastened his head in the temple of Dagon. 1Sam 31:10;

The kindness of Jabesh-gilead towards Saul and his sons

11 And when all Jabeshgilead heard all that the Philistines had done to Saul,

12 They arose, all the valiant men, and took away the body of Saul, and the bodies of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh, and buried their bones under the oak in Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

Saul's sin, for which the kingdom was translated from him to David

13 So Saul died for his transgression which he committed against the YAHWEH, *even* against the word of the YAHWEH, which he kept not, and also for asking *counsel* of *one that had* a familiar spirit, to enquire *of it*; 1Sam 28:8;

14 And enquired not of the YAHWEH: therefore he slew him, and turned the kingdom unto David the son of Jesse.

FIRST CHRONICLES ELEVEN

David by general consent is made king at Hebron

1 Then all Israel gathered themselves to David unto Hebron, saying, Behold, we *are* thy bone and thy flesh. 2Sam 5:1;

2 And moreover in time past, even when Saul was king, you *were* he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the YAHWEH thy Elohim said unto you, you shall feed my people Israel, and you shall be ruler over my people Israel. 1Sam 19:8; [Ps 78:71];

3 Therefore came all the elders of Israel to the king to Hebron; and David made a covenant with them in Hebron before the YAHWEH; and they anointed David king over Israel, according to the word of the YAHWEH by Samuel. 1Sam 16:1-23;

He wins the castle of Zion from the Jebusites by Joab's valour

4 And David and all Israel went to Jerusalem, which *is* Jebus; where the Jebusites *were*, the inhabitants of the land. 2Sam 5:6;

5 And the inhabitants of Jebus said to David, you shall not come hither. Nevertheless David took the castle of Zion, which *is* the city of David.

6 And David said, Whosoever smiteth the Jebusites first shall be chief and captain. So Joab the son of Zeruiah went first up, and was chief. [2Sam 5:8];

7 And David dwelt in the castle; therefore they called it the city of David.

8 And he built the city round about, even from Millo round about: and Joab repaired the rest of the city.

9 So David waxed greater and greater: for the YAHWEH of hosts *was* with him.

A catalogue of David's mighty men

10 These also *are* the chief of the mighty men whom David had, who strengthened themselves with him in his kingdom, *and* with all Israel, to make him king, according to the word of the YAHWEH concerning Israel. [2Sam 23:8](#); [2Sam 16:1](#); [2Sam 16:12](#);

11 And this *is* the number of the mighty men whom David had; Jashobeam, an Hachmonite, the chief of the captains: he lifted up his spear against three hundred slain *by him* at one time. [\[2Sam 23:8\]](#);

12 And after him *was* Eleazar the son of Dodo, the Ahohite, who *was one* of the three mighties.

13 He was with David at Pasdammim, and there the Philistines were gathered together to battle, where was a parcel of ground full of barley; and the people fled from before the Philistines. [2Sam 5:17](#); [2Sam 23:11](#);

14 And they set themselves in the midst of *that* parcel, and delivered it, and slew the Philistines; and the YAHWEH saved *them* by a great deliverance.

15 Now three of the thirty captains went down to the rock to David, into the cave of Adullam; and the host of the Philistines encamped in the valley of Rephaim. [2Sam 23:13](#);

16 And David *was* then in the hold, and the Philistines' garrison *was* then at Bethlehem.

17 And David longed, and said, Oh that one would give me drink of the water of the well of Bethlehem, that *is* at the gate!

18 And the three brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, that *was* by the gate, and took *it*, and brought *it* to David: but David would not drink *of* it, but poured it out to the YAHWEH,

19 And said, My Elohim forbid it me, that I should do this thing: shall I drink the blood of these men that have put their lives in jeopardy? for with *the jeopardy of* their lives they brought it. Therefore he would not drink it. These things did these three mightiest.

20 And Abishai the brother of Joab, he was chief of the three: for lifting up his spear against three hundred, he slew *them*, and had a name among the three.

21 Of the three, he was more honourable than the two; for he was their captain: howbeit he attained not to the *first* three.

22 Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a valiant man of Kabzeel, who had done many acts; he slew two lionlike men of Moab: also he went down and slew a lion in a pit in a snowy day.

23 And he slew an Egyptian, a man of *great* stature, five cubits high; and in the Egyptian's hand *was* a spear like a weaver's beam; and he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear.

24 These *things* did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had the name among the three mighties.

25 Behold, he was honourable among the thirty, but attained not to the *first* three: and David set him over his guard.

26 Also the valiant men of the armies *were*, Asahel the brother of Joab, Elhanan the son of Dodo of Bethlehem, [2Sam 23:24](#);

27 Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the Pelonite,

28 Ira the son of Ikkes the Tekoite, Abiezer the Antothite,

29 Sibbecai the Hushasite, Ilai the Ahohite,

30 Maharai the Netophasite, Heled the son of Baanah the Netophasite,

31 Ithai the son of Ribai of Gibeah, *that pertained* to the children of Benjamin, Benaiah the Pirathonite,

32 Hurai of the brooks of Gaash, Abiel the Arbathite,

33 Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite,

34 The sons of Hashem the Gizonite, Jonathan the son of Shage the Hararite,

35 Ahiam the son of Sacar the Hararite, Eliphal the son of Ur,

36 Hopher the Mecherathite, Ahijah the Pelonite,

37 Hezro the Carmelite, Naarai the son of Ezbai,

38 Joel the brother of Nathan, Mibhar the son of Haggeri,

39 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Berothite, the armourbearer of Joab the son of Zeruiah,

- 40 Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,
- 41 Uriah the Hittite, Zabab the son of Ahlai,
- 42 Adina the son of Shiza the Reubenite, a captain of the Reubenites, and thirty with him,
- 43 Hanan the son of Maachah, and Joshaphat the Mithnite,
- 44 Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shama and Jehiel the sons of Hothan the Aroerite,
- 45 Jediel the son of Shimri, and Joha his brother, the Tizite,
- 46 Eliel the Mahavite, and Jeribai, and Joshaviah, the sons of Elnaam, and Ithmah the Moabite,
- 47 Eliel, and Obed, and Jasiel the Mesobaite.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWELVE

The companies that came to David at Ziklag

- 1 Now these *are* they that came to David to Ziklag, while he yet kept himself close because of Saul the son of Kish: and they *were* among the mighty men, helpers of the war.
- 2 *They were* armed with bows, and could use both the right hand and the left in *hurling* stones and *shooting* arrows out of a bow, *even* of Saul's brethren of Benjamin.
- 3 The chief *was* Ahiezer, then Joash, the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite; and Jeziel, and Pelet, the sons of Azmaveth; and Berachah, and Jehu the Antothite,
- 4 And Ismaiah the Gibeonite, a mighty man among the thirty, and over the thirty; and Jeremiah, and Jahaziel, and Johanan, and Josabad the Gederathite,
- 5 Eluzai, and Jerimoth, and Bealiah, and Shemariah, and Shephatiah the Haruphite,
- 6 Elkanah, and Jesiah, and Azareel, and Joezer, and Jashobeam, the Korhites,
- 7 And Joelah, and Zebadiah, the sons of Jeroham of Gedor.
- 8 And of the Gadites there separated themselves unto David into the hold to the wilderness men of might, *and* men of war *fit* for the battle, that could handle shield and buckler, whose faces *were like* the faces of lions, and *were* as swift as the roes upon the mountains;
- 9 Ezer the first, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third,
- 10 Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth,
- 11 Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh,
- 12 Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth,
- 13 Jeremiah the tenth, Machbanai the eleventh.
- 14 These *were* of the sons of Gad, captains of the host: one of the least *was* over a hundred, and the greatest over a thousand.
- 15 These *are* they that went over Jordan in the first month, when it had overflowed all his banks; and they put to flight all *them* of the valleys, *both* toward the east, and toward the west. [\[Josh 3:15\];](#)
- 16 And there came of the children of Benjamin and Judah to the hold unto David.
- 17 And David went out to meet them, and answered and said unto them, If you be come peaceably unto me to help me, mine heart shall be knit unto you: but if you *be come* to betray me to mine enemies, seeing *there is* no wrong in mine hands, the Elohim of our fathers look *thereon*, and rebuke *it*.
- 18 Then the spirit came upon Amasai, *who was* chief of the captains, *and he said*, Thine *are we*, David, and on thy side, you son of Jesse: peace, peace *be* unto you, and peace *be* to thine helpers; for thy Elohim helpeth you. Then David received them, and made them captains of the band. [\[Matt 1:6\];](#)
- 19 And there fell *some* of Manasseh to David, when he came with the Philistines against Saul to battle: but they helped them not: for the lords of the Philistines upon advisement sent him away, saying, He will fall to his master Saul to *the jeopardy of* our heads. [1Sam 29:1; \[1Sam 29:4\];](#)

20 As he went to Ziklag, there fell to him of Manasseh, Adnah, and Jozabad, and Jediahel, and Michael, and Jozabad, and Elihu, and Zilthai, captains of the thousands that *were* of Manasseh.

21 And they helped David against the band *of the rovers*: for they *were* all mighty men of valour, and were captains in the host.

22 For at *that* time day by day there came to David to help him, until *it was* a great host, like the host of Elohim.

The armies that came to him at Hebron

23 And these *are* the numbers of the bands *that were* ready armed to the war, *and* came to David to Hebron, to turn the kingdom of Saul to him, according to the word of the YAHWEH.

24 The children of Judah that bore shield and spear *were* six thousand and eight hundred, ready armed to the war.

25 Of the children of Simeon, mighty men of valour for the war, seven thousand and one hundred.

26 Of the children of Levi four thousand and six hundred.

27 And Jehoiada *was* the leader of the Aaronites, and with him *were* three thousand and seven hundred;

28 And Zadok, a young man mighty of valour, and of his father's house twenty and two captains.

29 And of the children of Benjamin, the kindred of Saul, three thousand: for hitherto the greatest part of them had kept the ward of the house of Saul.

30 And of the children of Ephraim twenty thousand and eight hundred, mighty men of valour, famous throughout the house of their fathers.

31 And of the half tribe of Manasseh eighteen thousand, which were expressed by name, to come and make David king.

32 And of the children of Issachar, *which were men* that had understanding of the times, to know what Israel ought to do; the heads of them *were* two hundred; and all their brethren *were* at their commandment.

33 Of Zebulun, such as went forth to battle, expert in war, with all instruments of war, fifty thousand, which could keep rank: *they were* not of double heart.

34 And of Naphtali a thousand captains, and with them with shield and spear thirty and seven thousand.

35 And of the Danites expert in war twenty and eight thousand and six hundred.

36 And of Asher, such as went forth to battle, expert in war, forty thousand.

37 And on the other side of Jordan, of the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and of the half tribe of Manasseh, with all manner of instruments of war for the battle, a hundred and twenty thousand.

38 All these men of war, that could keep rank, came with a perfect heart to Hebron, to make David king over all Israel: and all the rest also of Israel *were* of one heart to make David king.

39 And there they were with David three days, eating and drinking: for their brethren had prepared for them.

40 Moreover they that were nigh them, *even* unto Issachar and Zebulun and Naphtali, brought bread on asses, and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen, *and* meat, meal, cakes of figs, and bunches of raisins, and wine, and oil, and oxen, and sheep abundantly: for *there was* joy in Israel.

FIRST CHRONICLES THIRTEEN

David fetches the ark with great solemnity from Kirjath- jearim

1 And David consulted with the captains of thousands and hundreds, *and* with every leader.

2 And David said unto all the congregation of Israel, If *it seem* good unto you, and *that it be* of the YAHWEH our Elohim, let us send abroad unto our brethren every where, *that are* left in all the land of

Israel, and with them *also* to the priests and Levites *which are* in their cities *and* suburbs, that they may gather themselves unto us:

3 And let us bring again the ark of our Elohim to us: for we enquired not at it in the days of Saul.

4 And all the congregation said that they would do so: for the thing was right in the eyes of all the people.

5 So David gathered all Israel together, from Shihor of Egypt even unto the entering of Hemath, to bring the ark of Elohim from Kirjathjearim. [2Sam 6:1](#);

6 And David went up, and all Israel, to Baalah, *that is*, to Kirjathjearim, which *belonged* to Judah, to bring up thence the ark of Elohim the YAHWEH, that dwelleth *between* the cherubims, whose name is called *on it*.

7 And they carried the ark of Elohim in a new cart out of the house of Abinadab: and Uzza and Ahio drave the cart.

8 And David and all Israel played before Elohim with all *their* might, and with singing, and with harps, and with psalteries, and with timbrels, and with cymbals, and with trumpets.

Uzza being smitten, the ark is left at the house of Obed- edom

9 And when they came unto the threshingfloor of Chidon, Uzza put forth his hand to hold the ark; for the oxen stumbled. [\[2Sam 6:6\]](#);

10 And the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Uzza, and he smote him, because he put his hand to the ark: and there he died before Elohim.

11 And David was displeased, because the YAHWEH had made a breach upon Uzza: wherefore that place is called Perezuzza to this day.

12 And David was afraid of Elohim that day, saying, How shall I bring the ark of Elohim *home* to me?

13 So David brought not the ark *home* to himself to the city of David, but carried it aside into the house of Obededom the Gittite. [2Sam 6:10](#);

14 And the ark of Elohim remained with the family of Obededom in his house three months. And the YAHWEH blessed the house of Obededom, and all that he had. [\[2Sam 6:11\]](#);

Hiram's kindness to David

1 Now Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and timber of cedars, with masons and carpenters, to build him a house. [2Sam 5:11](#); [\[1Kgs 5:1\]](#);

David's felicity in people, wives, and children

2 And David perceived that the YAHWEH had confirmed him king over Israel, for his kingdom was lifted up on high, because of his people Israel.

3 And David took more wives at Jerusalem: and David begat more sons and daughters. [\[2Sam 5:13\]](#);

4 Now these *are* the names of *his* children which he had in Jerusalem; Shammua, and Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon, [1Chr 3:5](#); [\[2Sam 5:14\]](#);

5 And Ibhar, and Elishua, and Elpalet,

6 And Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

7 And Elishama, and Beeliada, and Eliphalet.

His two victories against the Philistines

8 And when the Philistines heard that David was anointed king over all Israel, all the Philistines went up to seek David. And David heard *of it*, and went out against them. [\[2Sam 5:17\]](#);

9 And the Philistines came and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.

10 And David enquired of Elohim, saying, Shall I go up against the Philistines? and will you deliver them into mine hand? And the YAHWEH said unto him, Go up; for I will deliver them into thine hand.

11 So they came up to Baalperazim; and David smote them there. Then David said, Elohim has broken in upon mine enemies by mine hand like the breaking forth of waters: therefore they called the name of that place Baalperazim.

12 And when they had left their gods there, David gave a commandment, and they were burned with fire. [\[2Sam 5:21\]](#);

13 And the Philistines yet again spread themselves abroad in the valley.

14 Therefore David enquired again of Elohim; and Elohim said unto him, Go not up after them; turn away from them, and come upon them over against the mulberry trees.

15 And it shall be, when you shall hear a sound of going in the tops of the mulberry trees, *that* then you shall go out to battle: for Elohim is gone forth before you to smite the host of the Philistines.

16 David therefore did as Elohim commanded him: and they smote the host of the Philistines from Gibeon even to Gazer.

17 And the fame of David went out into all lands; and the YAHWEH brought the fear of him upon all nations.

David having prepared a place for the ark, the priests and Levites bring it from Obed-edom

1 And *David* made him houses in the city of David, and prepared a place for the ark of Elohim, and pitched for it a tent. [\[2Sam 6:17\]](#); [\[Ps 132:3\]](#);

2 Then David said, None ought to carry the ark of Elohim but the Levites: for them has the YAHWEH chosen to carry the ark of Elohim, and to minister unto him for ever. [Num 4:15](#);

3 And David gathered all Israel together to Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the YAHWEH unto his place, which he had prepared for it.
4 And David assembled the children of Aaron, and the Levites: [1Chr 6:1-2](#);
5 Of the sons of Kohas; Uriel the chief, and his brethren a hundred and twenty:
6 Of the sons of Merari; Asaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred and twenty:
7 Of the sons of Gershon; Joel the chief, and his brethren a hundred and thirty:
8 Of the sons of Elizaphan; Shemaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred:
9 Of the sons of Hebron; Eliel the chief, and his brethren fourscore:
10 Of the sons of Uzziel; Amminadab the chief, and his brethren a hundred and twelve.
11 And David called for Zadok and Abiathar the priests, and for the Levites, for Uriel, Asaiah, and Joel, Shemaiah, and Eliel, and Amminadab,
12 And said unto them, you *are* the chief of the fathers of the Levites: sanctify yourselves, *both* you and your brethren, that you may bring up the ark of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel unto *the place that* I have prepared for it.
13 For because you *did it* not at the first, the YAHWEH our Elohim made a breach upon us, for that we sought him not after the due order.
14 So the priests and the Levites sanctified themselves to bring up the ark of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.
15 And the children of the Levites bore the ark of Elohim upon their shoulders with the staves thereon, as Moses commanded according to the word of the YAHWEH. [Exod 25:14](#); [Num 4:15](#); [Num 7:9](#);
16 And David spoke to the chief of the Levites to appoint their brethren *to be* the singers with instruments of musick, psalteries and harps and cymbals, sounding, by lifting up the voice with joy.
17 So the Levites appointed Heman the son of Joel; and of his brethren, Asaph the son of Berechiah; and of the sons of Merari their brethren, Ethan the son of Kushaiah; [1Chr 6:33](#); [1Chr 6:39](#); [1Chr 6:44](#);
18 And with them their brethren of the second *degree*, Zechariah, Ben, and Jaaziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, Eliab, and Benaiah, and Maaseiah, and Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obedom, and Jeiel, the porters.
19 So the singers, Heman, Asaph, and Ethan, *were appointed* to sound with cymbals of brass;
20 And Zechariah, and Aziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, and Eliab, and Maaseiah, and Benaiah, with psalteries on Alamoth;
21 And Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obedom, and Jeiel, and Azaziah, with harps on the Sheminith to excel.
22 And Chenaniah, chief of the Levites, *was* for song: he instructed about the song, because he *was* skilful.
23 And Berechiah and Elkanah *were* doorkeepers for the ark.
24 And Shebaniah, and Jehoshaphat, and Nethaneel, and Amasai, and Zechariah, and Benaiah, and Eliezer, the priests, did blow with the trumpets before the ark of Elohim: and Obedom and Jehiah *were* doorkeepers for the ark.

He performs the solemnity thereof with great joy

25 So David, and the elders of Israel, and the captains over thousands, went to bring up the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH out of the house of Obedom with joy.
26 And it came to pass, when Elohim helped the Levites that bore the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, that they offered seven bullocks and seven rams.
27 And David *was* clothed with a robe of fine linen, and all the Levites that bore the ark, and the singers, and Chenaniah the master of the song with the singers: David also *had* upon him an ephod of linen.
28 Thus all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH with shouting, and with sound of the cornet, and with trumpets, and with cymbals, making a noise with psalteries and harps.

Michal despises him

29 And it came to pass, *as* the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH came to the city of David, that Michal the daughter of Saul looking out at a window saw king David dancing and playing: and she despised him in her heart. [2Sam 6:16](#);

FIRST CHRONICLES SIXTEEN

David's festival sacrifice

1 So they brought the ark of Elohim, and set it in the midst of the tent that David had pitched for it: and they offered burnt sacrifices and peace offerings before Elohim. [2Sam 6:17](#); [\[2Chr 1:4\]](#);

2 And when David had made an end of offering the burnt offerings and the peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of the YAHWEH. [\[2Sam 6:18\]](#);

3 And he dealt to every one of Israel, both man and woman, to every one a loaf of bread, and a date cake, and a raisin cake. [2Sam 6:19](#);

He orders a choir to sing thanksgiving

4 And he appointed *certain* of the Levites to minister before the ark of the YAHWEH, and to record, and to thank and praise the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel: [\[2Chr 29:25\]](#);

5 Asaph the chief, and next to him Zechariah, Jeiel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Mattithiah, and Eliab, and Benaiah, and Obededom: and Jeiel with psalteries and with harps; but Asaph made a sound with cymbals;

6 Benaiah also and Jahaziel the priests with trumpets continually before the ark of the covenant of Elohim.

The psalm of thanksgiving

7 Then on that day David delivered first *this psalm* to thank the YAHWEH into the hand of Asaph and his brethren.

8 Give thanks unto the YAHWEH, call upon his name, make known his deeds among the people.

9 Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him, talk you of all his wondrous works.

10 Glory you in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the YAHWEH.

11 Seek the YAHWEH and his strength, seek his face continually.

12 Remember his marvellous works that he has done, his wonders, and the judgments of his mouth;

13 O you seed of Israel his servant, you children of Jacob, his chosen ones.

14 He *is* the YAHWEH our Elohim; his judgments *are* in all the earth.

15 Be you mindful always of his covenant; the word *which* he commanded to a thousand generations; [Gen 17:9](#);

16 *Even of the covenant* which he made with Abraham, and of his oath unto Isaac; [Gen 26:3](#);

17 And has confirmed the same to Jacob for a law, *and* to Israel *for* an everlasting covenant, [Gen 28:13](#); [Gen 35:11](#); [\[Ps 105:10\]](#);

18 Saying, Unto you will I give the land of Canaan, the lot of your inheritance;

19 When you were but few, even a few, and strangers in it. [\[Ps 105:12\]](#);

20 And *when* they went from nation to nation, and from *one* kingdom to another people;

21 He suffered no man to do them wrong: yes, he reproveth kings for their sakes, [Gen 12:20](#); [Exod 7:1-25](#); [Exod 8:1-32](#); [Exod 9:1-35](#); [Exod 10:1-29](#); [Exod 11:1-10](#);

22 *Saying*, Touch not mine anointed, and do my prophets no harm.

23 Sing unto the YAHWEH, all the earth; show forth from day to day his salvation.

- 24** Declare his glory among the heathen; his marvellous works among all nations.
- 25** For great *is* the YAHWEH, and greatly to be praised: he also *is* to be feared above all gods.
- 26** For all the gods of the people *are* idols: but the YAHWEH made the heavens.
- 27** Glory and honour *are* in his presence; strength and gladness *are* in his place.
- 28** Give unto the YAHWEH, you kindreds of the people, give unto the YAHWEH glory and strength.
- 29** Give unto the YAHWEH the glory *due* unto his name: bring an offering, and come before him: worship the YAHWEH in the beauty of holiness.
- 30** Fear before him, all the earth: the world also shall be stable, that it be not moved.
- 31** Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice: and let *men* say among the nations, The YAHWEH reigneth.
- 32** Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof: let the fields rejoice, and all that *is* therein.
- 33** Then shall the trees of the wood sing out at the presence of the YAHWEH, because he cometh to judge the earth. [Isa 55:12];
- 34** O give thanks unto the YAHWEH; for *he is* good; for his mercy *endureth* for ever. Ps 107:1; Ps 118:1; Ps 136:1;
- 35** And say you, Save us, O Elohim of our salvation, and gather us together, and deliver us from the heathen, that we may give thanks to thy holy name, *and* glory in thy praise. [Ps 106:47];
- 36** Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel for ever and ever. And all the people said, Amen, and praised the YAHWEH. [Ps 106:48];

He appoints ministers, porters, priests, and musicians, to attend continually on the ark

- 37** So he left there before the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH Asaph and his brethren, to minister before the ark continually, as every day's work required:
- 38** And Obededom with their brethren, threescore and eight; Obededom also the son of Jeduthun and Hosah *to be* porters:
- 39** And Zadok the priest, and his brethren the priests, before the tabernacle of the YAHWEH in the high place that *was* at Gibeon, [1Sam 10:5]; [2Chr 1:3];
- 40** To offer burnt offerings unto the YAHWEH upon the altar of the burnt offering continually morning and between the evenings, and *to do* according to all that is written in the law of the YAHWEH, which he commanded Israel;
- 41** And with them Heman and Jeduthun, and the rest that were chosen, who were expressed by name, to give thanks to the YAHWEH, because his mercy *endureth* for ever;
- 42** And with them Heman and Jeduthun with trumpets and cymbals for those that should make a sound, and with musical instruments of Elohim. And the sons of Jeduthun *were* porters.
- 43** And all the people departed every man to his house: and David returned to bless his house.

FIRST CHRONICLES SEVENTEEN

Nathan first approving the purpose of David, to build Elohim a house

- 1** Now it came to pass, as David sat in his house, that David said to Nathan the prophet, Lo, I dwell in a house of cedars, but the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH *remaineth* under curtains. [2Sam 7:1]; [1Kgs 8:17]; [2Chr 6:7]; [Acts 7:46];
- 2** Then Nathan said unto David, Do all that *is* in thine heart; for Elohim *is* with you.

after by the word of Elohim forbids him

- 3** And it came to pass the same night, that the word of Elohim came to Nathan, saying,
- 4** Go and tell David my servant, Thus saith the YAHWEH, you shall not build me a house to dwell in:
- 5** For I have not dwelt in a house since the day that I brought up Israel unto this day; but have gone from tent to tent, and from *one* tabernacle *to another*.
- 6** Whersoever I have walked with all Israel, spoke I a word to any of the judges of Israel, whom I commanded to feed my people, saying, Why have you not built me a house of cedars?
- 7** Now therefore thus shall you say unto my servant David, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, I took you from the sheepcote, *even* from following the sheep, that you should be ruler over my people Israel: [1Sam 16:11](#); [Ps 78:70](#);
- 8** And I have been with you whithersoever you have walked, and have cut off all thine enemies from before you, and have made you a name like the name of the great men that *are* in the earth.
- 9** Also I will ordain a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, and they shall dwell in their place, and shall be moved no more; neither shall the children of wickedness waste them any more, as at the beginning,
- 10** And since the time that I commanded judges *to be* over my people Israel. Moreover I will subdue all thine enemies. Furthermore I tell you that the YAHWEH will build you a house.

He promises him blessings and benefits in his seed

- 11** And it shall come to pass, when thy days be expired that you must go *to be* with thy fathers, that I will raise up thy seed after you, which shall be of thy sons; and I will establish his kingdom.
- 12** He shall build me a house, and I will establish his throne for ever. [1Kgs 5:5](#); [1Kgs 6:12](#); [\[Acts 7:47\]](#);
- 13** I will be his father, and he shall be my son: and I will not take my mercy away from him, as I took *it* from *him* that was before you: [Ps 89:26](#); [Ps 89:28](#); [Heb 1:5-6](#);
- 14** But I will settle him in mine house and in my kingdom for ever: and his throne shall be established for evermore. [Luke 1:33](#);
- 15** According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David.

David's prayer and thanksgiving

- 16** And David the king came and sat before the YAHWEH, and said, Who *am* I, O YAHWEH Elohim, and what *is* mine house, that you have brought me hitherto?
- 17** And yet this was a small thing in thine eyes, O Elohim; for you have *also* spoken of thy servant's house for a great while to come, and have regarded me according to the estate of a man of high degree, O YAHWEH Elohim.
- 18** What can David *speak* more to you for the honour of thy servant? for you knowest thy servant.
- 19** O YAHWEH, for thy servant's sake, and according to thine own heart, have you done all this greatness, in making known all *these* great things.
- 20** O YAHWEH, *there is* none like you, neither *is there any* Elohim beside you, according to all that we have heard with our ears. [Deut 3:24](#); [Deut 4:35](#); [Deut 6:4](#); [1Kgs 8:23](#); [1Kgs 8:60](#); [Ps 86:8](#); [Isa 37:16](#); [Isa 37:20](#); [Dan 3:29](#); [Hos 13:4](#);
- 21** And what one nation in the earth *is* like thy people Israel, whom Elohim went to redeem *to be* his own people, to make you a name of greatness and terribleness, by driving out nations from before thy people, whom you have redeemed out of Egypt? [Deut 4:7](#); [Deut 33:29](#); [Ps 147:20](#); [\[Jer 32:21\]](#);
- 22** For thy people Israel didst you make thine own people for ever; and you, YAHWEH, becamest their Elohim.
- 23** Therefore now, YAHWEH, let the thing that you have spoken concerning thy servant and concerning his house be established for ever, and do as you have said.
- 24** Let it even be established, that thy name may be magnified for ever, saying, The YAHWEH of hosts *is* the Elohim of Israel, *even* a Elohim to Israel: and *let* the house of David thy servant *be* established before you.

25 For you, O my Elohim, have told thy servant that you will build him a house: therefore thy servant has found *in his heart* to pray before you.

26 And now, YAHWEH, you are Elohim, and have promised this goodness unto thy servant:

27 Now therefore let it please you to bless the house of thy servant, that it may be before you for ever: for you blessest, O YAHWEH, and *it shall be* blessed for ever.

FIRST CHRONICLES EIGHTEEN

David subdues the Philistines and the Moabites

1 Now after this it came to pass, that David smote the Philistines, and subdued them, and took Gath and her towns out of the hand of the Philistines. [\[2Sam 8:1\];](#)

2 And he smote Moab; and the Moabites became David's servants, *and* brought gifts.

He smites Hadarezer and the Syrians

3 And David smote Hadarezer king of Zobah unto Hamath, as he went to establish his dominion by the river Euphrates. [\[Ps 60:1\];](#)

4 And David took from him a thousand chariots, and seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen: David also houghed all the chariot *horses*, but reserved of them a hundred chariots. [\[2Sam 8:4\];](#)

5 And when the Syrians of Damascus came to help Hadarezer king of Zobah, David slew of the Syrians two and twenty thousand men.

6 Then David put *garrisons* in Syriadamascus; and the Syrians became David's servants, *and* brought gifts. Thus the YAHWEH preserved David whithersoever he went.

7 And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadarezer, and brought them to Jerusalem.

8 Likewise from Tibhas, and from Chun, cities of Hadarezer, brought David very much brass, wherewith Solomon made the brasen sea, and the pillars, and the vessels of brass.

Tou sends Hadoram with presents to bless David

9 Now when Tou king of Hamath heard how David had smitten all the host of Hadarezer king of Zobah;

10 He sent Hadoram his son to king David, to enquire of his welfare, and to congratulate him, because he had fought against Hadarezer, and smitten him; (for Hadarezer had war with Tou;) and *with him* all manner of vessels of gold and silver and brass.

The presents and the spoil David dedicates to Elohim

11 Them also king David dedicated unto the YAHWEH, with the silver and the gold that he brought from all *these* nations; from Edom, and from Moab, and from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines, and from Amalek.

12 Moreover Abishai the son of Zeruiah slew of the Edomites in the valley of salt eighteen thousand. [\[1Kgs 11:15\]; \[Ps 60:1\];](#)

He puts garrisons in Edom

13 And he put garrisons in Edom; and all the Edomites became David's servants. Thus the YAHWEH preserved David whithersoever he went.

David's officers

14 So David reigned over all Israel, and executed judgment and justice among all his people.

15 And Joab the son of Zeruiah *was* over the host; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud, recorder. [\[2Sam 8:16\];](#)

16 And Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Abimelech the son of Abiathar, *were* the priests; and Shavsha was scribe;

17 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada *was* over the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and the sons of David *were* chief about the king. [2Sam 15:18];

FIRST CHRONICLES NINETEEN

David's messengers, sent to comfort Hanun, the son of Nahash, are villainously treated

1 Now it came to pass after this, that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon died, and his son reigned in his stead. [2Sam 10:1];

2 And David said, I will show kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, because his father showed kindness to me. And David sent messengers to comfort him concerning his father. So the servants of David came into the land of the children of Ammon to Hanun, to comfort him.

3 But the princes of the children of Ammon said to Hanun, Do you think that David honors thy father, that he has sent comforters unto you? are not his servants come unto you for to search, and to overthrow, and to spy out the land?

4 Wherefore Hanun took David's servants, and shaved them, and cut off their garments in the midst hard by their buttocks, and sent them away.

5 Then there went *certain*, and told David how the men were served. And he sent to meet them: for the men were greatly ashamed. And the king said, Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and *then* return.

The Ammonites, strengthened by the Syrians, are overcome by Joab and Abishai

6 And when the children of Ammon saw that they had made themselves odious to David, Hanun and the children of Ammon sent a thousand talents of silver to hire them chariots and horsemen out of Mesopotamia, and out of Syriamaachah, and out of Zobah.

7 So they hired thirty and two thousand chariots, and the king of Maachah and his people; who came and pitched before Medeba. And the children of Ammon gathered themselves together from their cities, and came to battle.

8 And when David heard *of it*, he sent Joab, and all the host of the mighty men.

9 And the children of Ammon came out, and put the battle in array before the gate of the city: and the kings that were come *were* by themselves in the field.

10 Now when Joab saw that the battle was set against him before and behind, he chose out of all the choice of Israel, and put *them* in array against the Syrians.

11 And the rest of the people he delivered unto the hand of Abishai his brother, and they set *themselves* in array against the children of Ammon.

12 And he said, If the Syrians be too strong for me, then you shall help me: but if the children of Ammon be too strong for you, then I will help you.

13 Be of good courage, and let us behave ourselves valiantly for our people, and for the cities of our Elohim: and let the YAHWEH do *that which is* good in his sight.

14 So Joab and the people that *were* with him drew nigh before the Syrians unto the battle; and they fled before him.

15 And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, they likewise fled before Abishai his brother, and entered into the city. Then Joab came to Jerusalem.

Shophach, making a new supply of the Syrians, is slain by David

16 And when the Syrians saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they sent messengers, and drew forth the Syrians that *were* beyond the river: and Shophach the captain of the host of Hadarezer *went* before them.

17 And it was told David; and he gathered all Israel, and passed over Jordan, and came upon them, and set *the battle* in array against them. So when David had put the battle in array against the Syrians, they fought with him.

18 But the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew of the Syrians seven thousand *men which fought in* chariots, and forty thousand footmen, and killed Shophach the captain of the host.

19 And when the servants of Hadarezer saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they made peace with David, and became his servants: neither would the Syrians help the children of Ammon any more.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY

Rabbah is besieged by Joab, spoiled by David, and the people thereof tortured

1 And it came to pass, that after the year was expired, at the time that kings go out *to battle*, Joab led forth the power of the army, and wasted the country of the children of Ammon, and came and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried at Jerusalem. And Joab smote Rabbah, and destroyed it. [\[2Sam 11:1\]](#); [\[2Sam 12:26\]](#);

2 And David took the crown of their king from off his head, and found it to weigh a talent of gold, and *there were* precious stones in it; and it was set upon David's head: and he brought also exceeding much spoil out of the city. [\[2Sam 12:30\]](#);

3 And he brought out the people that *were* in it, and cut *them* with saws, and with harrows of iron, and with axes. Even so dealt David with all the cities of the children of Ammon. And David and all the people returned to Jerusalem. [2Sam 12:31](#);

Three giants are slain in three several overthrows of the Philistines

4 And it came to pass after this, that *there* arose war at Gezer with the Philistines; at which time Sibbechai the Hushasite slew Sippai, *that was* of the children of the giant: and they were subdued. [\[2Sam 21:18\]](#);

5 And there was war again with the Philistines; and Elhanan the son of Jair slew Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, whose spear staff *was* like a weaver's beam.

6 And yet again there was war at Gath, where was a man of *great* stature, whose fingers and toes *were* four and twenty, six *on each hand*, and six *on each foot*: and he also was the son of the giant.

7 But when he defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimea David's brother slew him.

8 These were born unto the giant in Gath; and they fell by the hand of David, and by the hand of his servants.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-ONE

David, tempted by Satan, forces Joab to number the people

1 And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel. [\[2Sam 24:1\]](#);

2 And David said to Joab and to the rulers of the people, Go, number Israel from Beersheba even to Dan; and bring the number of them to me, that I may know *it*.

3 And Joab answered, The YAHWEH make his people a hundred times so many more as they *be*: but, my lord the king, *are* they not all my lord's servants? why then does my lord require this thing? why will he be a cause of trespass to Israel?

4 Nevertheless the king's word prevailed against Joab. Wherefore Joab departed, and went throughout all Israel, and came to Jerusalem.

The number of the people being brought, David repents of it

5 And Joab gave the sum of the number of the people unto David. And all *they of* Israel were a thousand thousand and a hundred thousand men that drew sword: and Judah *was* four hundred threescore and ten thousand men that drew sword.

6 But Levi and Benjamin counted he not among them: for the king's word was abominable to Joab.

7 And Elohim was displeased with this thing; therefore he smote Israel.

8 And David said unto Elohim, I have sinned greatly, because I have done this thing: but now, I beseech you, do away the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly.

David having three plagues propounded by Elohim, chooses the pestilence

9 And the YAHWEH spoke unto Gad, David's seer, saying,

10 Go and tell David, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH, I offer you three *things*: choose you one of them, that I may do *it* unto you.

11 So Gad came to David, and said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Choose you

12 Either three years' famine; or three months to be destroyed before thy foes, while that the sword of thine enemies overtaketh you; or else three days the sword of the YAHWEH, even the pestilence, in the land, and the angel of the YAHWEH destroying throughout all the coasts of Israel. Now therefore advise thyself what word I shall bring again to him that sent me.

13 And David said unto Gad, I am in a great strait: let me fall now into the hand of the YAHWEH; for very great *are* his mercies: but let me not fall into the hand of man.

After the death of seventy thousand, David by repentance prevents the destruction of Jerusalem

14 So the YAHWEH sent pestilence upon Israel: and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men.

15 And Elohim sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it: and as he was destroying, the YAHWEH beheld, and he repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed, It is enough, stay now thine hand. And the angel of the YAHWEH stood by the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite.

16 And David lifted up his eyes, and saw the angel of the YAHWEH stand between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders *of Israel, who were* clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces.

17 And David said unto Elohim, *Is it* not I *that* commanded the people to be numbered? even I it is that have sinned and done evil indeed; but *as for* these sheep, what have they done? let thine hand, I pray you, O YAHWEH my Elohim, be on me, and on my father's house; but not on thy people, that they should be plagued.

David, by Gad's direction, purchases Ornan's threshing- floor; where having built an altar, Elohim gives a sign of his favor by fire, and stays the plague

18 Then the angel of the YAHWEH commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up, and set up an altar unto the YAHWEH in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite.

19 And David went up at the saying of Gad, which he spoke in the name of the YAHWEH.

20 And Ornan turned back, and saw the angel; and his four sons with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat.

21 And as David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David, and went out of the threshingfloor, and bowed himself to David with *his* face to the ground.

22 Then David said to Ornan, Grant me the place of *this* threshingfloor, that I may build an altar therein unto the YAHWEH: you shall grant it me for the full price: that the plague may be stayed from the people.

23 And Ornan said unto David, Take *it* to you, and let my lord the king do *that which is* good in his eyes: lo, I give you the oxen *also* for burnt offerings, and the threshing instruments for wood, and the wheat for the meat offering; I give it all.

24 And king David said to Ornan, Nay; but I will verily buy it for the full price: for I will not take *that* which *is* thine for the YAHWEH, nor offer burnt offerings without cost. [\[2Chr 3:1\];](#)

25 So David gave to Ornan for the place six hundred shekels of gold by weight.

26 And David built there an altar unto the YAHWEH, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings, and called upon the YAHWEH; and he answered him from heaven by fire upon the altar of burnt offering. [\[2Chr 3:1\];](#)

27 And the YAHWEH commanded the angel; and he put up his sword again into the sheath thereof.

David sacrifices there, being restrained from Gibeon by fear of the angel

28 At that time when David saw that the YAHWEH had answered him in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite, then he sacrificed there.

29 For the tabernacle of the YAHWEH, which Moses made in the wilderness, and the altar of the burnt offering, *were* at that season in the high place at Gibeon. [\[2Chr 1:3\];](#)

30 But David could not go before it to enquire of Elohim: for he was afraid because of the sword of the angel of the YAHWEH.

David, foreknowing the place of the temple, prepares abundance for the building of it

1 Then David said, This *is* the house of the YAHWEH Elohim, and this *is* the altar of the burnt offering for Israel.

2 And David commanded to gather together the strangers that *were* in the land of Israel; and he set masons to hew wrought stones to build the house of Elohim. [\[2Chr 2:17\]](#);

3 And David prepared iron in abundance for the nails for the doors of the gates, and for the joinings; and brass in abundance without weight;

4 Also cedar trees in abundance: for the Zidonians and they of Tyre brought much cedar wood to David.

5 And David said, Solomon my son *is* young and tender, and the house *that is* to be built for the YAHWEH *must be* exceeding magnifical, of fame and of glory throughout all countries: I will *therefore* now make preparation for it. So David prepared abundantly before his death.

He instructs Solomon in Elohim's promises, and his duty in building the temple

6 Then he called for Solomon his son, and charged him to build a house for the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.

7 And David said to Solomon, My son, as for me, it was in my mind to build a house unto the name of the YAHWEH my Elohim:

8 But the word of the YAHWEH came to me, saying, you have shed blood abundantly, and have made great wars: you shall not build a house unto my name, because you have shed much blood upon the earth in my sight. [1Chr 28:3](#);

9 Behold, a son shall be born to you, who shall be a man of rest; and I will give him rest from all his enemies round about: for his name shall be Solomon, and I will give peace and quietness unto Israel in his days. [\[2Sam 12:24\]](#); [\[1Kgs 2:15\]](#); [\[2Chr 6:15\]](#);

10 He shall build a house for my name; and he shall be my son, and I *will be* his father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever. [2Sam 7:13](#); [1Kgs 5:5](#); [\[1Kgs 6:12\]](#); [\[1Kgs 9:5\]](#); [\[Luke 1:33\]](#); [\[John 12:34\]](#); [\[Heb 1:5\]](#);

11 Now, my son, the YAHWEH be with you; and prosper you, and build the house of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, as he has said of you.

12 Only the YAHWEH give you wisdom and understanding, and give you charge concerning Israel, that you may keep the law of the YAHWEH thy Elohim.

13 Then shall you prosper, if you takest heed to fulfil the statutes and judgments which the YAHWEH charged Moses with concerning Israel: be strong, and of good courage; dread not, nor be dismayed. [Deut 31:7-8](#); [Josh 1:7](#);

14 Now, behold, in my trouble I have prepared for the house of the YAHWEH a hundred thousand talents of gold, and a thousand thousand talents of silver; and of brass and iron without weight; for it is in abundance: timber also and stone have I prepared; and you may add thereto.

15 Moreover *there are* workmen with you in abundance, hewers and workers of stone and timber, and all manner of cunning men for every manner of work.

16 Of the gold, the silver, and the brass, and the iron, *there is* no number. Arise *therefore*, and be doing, and the YAHWEH be with you.

He charges the princes to assist his son

17 David also commanded all the princes of Israel to help Solomon his son, *saying*,

18 *Is* not the YAHWEH your Elohim with you? and has he *not* given you rest on every side? for he has given the inhabitants of the land into mine hand; and the land is subdued before the YAHWEH, and before his people.

19 Now set your heart and your being to seek the YAHWEH your Elohim; arise therefore, and build you the sanctuary of the YAHWEH Elohim, to bring the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, and the holy vessels of Elohim, into the house that is to be built to the name of the YAHWEH. [\[1Kgs 6:12\]](#);

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-THREE

David in his old age makes Solomon king

1 So when David was old and full of days, he made Solomon his son king over Israel. [\[2Chr 23:18\]](#); [\[2Chr 35:4\]](#);

The number and distribution of the Levites

2 And he gathered together all the princes of Israel, with the priests and the Levites.

3 Now the Levites were numbered from the age of thirty years and upward: and their number by their polls, man by man, was thirty and eight thousand.

4 Of which, twenty and four thousand *were* to set forward the work of the house of the YAHWEH; and six thousand *were* officers and judges:

5 Moreover four thousand *were* porters; and four thousand praised the YAHWEH with the instruments which I made, *said David*, to praise *therewith*. [\[2Chr 29:25\]](#);

6 And David divided them into courses among the sons of Levi, *namely*, Gershon, Kohas, and Merari. [\[Exod 6:16\]](#); [\[Num 3:17\]](#); [\[1Chr 6:1\]](#);

The families of the Gershonites

7 Of the Gershonites *were*, Laadan, and Shimei. [\[Exod 6:17\]](#);

8 The sons of Laadan; the chief *was* Jehiel, and Zetham, and Joel, three.

9 The sons of Shimei; Shelomith, and Haziël, and Haran, three. These *were* the chief of the fathers of Laadan.

10 And the sons of Shimei *were*, Jahas, Zina, and Jeush, and Beriah. These four *were* the sons of Shimei.

11 And Jahas was the chief, and Zizah the second: but Jeush and Beriah had not many sons; therefore they were in one reckoning, according to *their* father's house.

The sons of Kohas

12 The sons of Kohas; Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel, four. [\[Exod 6:18\]](#);

13 The sons of Amram; Aaron and Moses: and Aaron was separated, that he should sanctify the most holy things, he and his sons for ever, to burn incense before the YAHWEH, to minister unto him, and to bless in his name for ever. [Exod 6:20](#); [Exod 28:1](#); [Heb 5:4](#); [\[Exod 2:2\]](#); [\[Acts 7:20\]](#);

14 Now *concerning* Moses the man of Elohim, his sons were named of the tribe of Levi.

15 The sons of Moses *were*, Gershom, and Eliezer. [Exod 2:22](#); [Exod 18:3](#);

16 Of the sons of Gershom, Shebuel *was* the chief.

17 And the sons of Eliezer *were*, Rehabiah the chief. And Eliezer had none other sons; but the sons of Rehabiah were very many.

18 Of the sons of Izhar; Shelomith the chief.

19 Of the sons of Hebron; Jeriah the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.

20 Of the sons of Uzziel; Michah the first, and Jesiah the second.

The sons of Merari

- 21** The sons of Merari; Mahli, and Mushi. The sons of Mahli; Eleazar, and Kish. [Exod 6:19];
22 And Eleazar died, and had no sons, but daughters: and their brethren the sons of Kish took them.
23 The sons of Mushi; Mahli, and Eder, and Jeremoth, three.

The office of the Levites

- 24** These *were* the sons of Levi after the house of their fathers; *even* the chief of the fathers, as they were counted by number of names by their polls, that did the work for the service of the house of the YAHWEH, from the age of twenty years and upward.
25 For David said, The YAHWEH Elohim of Israel has given rest unto his people, that they may dwell in Jerusalem for ever:
26 And also unto the Levites; they shall no *more* carry the tabernacle, nor any vessels of it for the service thereof.
27 For by the last words of David the Levites *were* numbered from twenty years old and above: [2Chr 31:17];
28 Because their office *was* to wait on the sons of Aaron for the service of the house of the YAHWEH, in the courts, and in the chambers, and in the purifying of all holy things, and the work of the service of the house of Elohim;
29 Both for the showbread, and for the fine flour for meat offering, and for the unleavened cakes, and for *that which is baked in* the pan, and for that which is fried, and for all manner of measure and size;
30 And to stand every morning to thank and praise the YAHWEH, and likewise at even;
31 And to offer all burnt sacrifices unto the YAHWEH in the Sabbaths, in the new moons, and on the set feasts, by number, according to the order commanded unto them, continually before the YAHWEH:
32 And that they should keep the charge of the tabernacle of the congregation, and the charge of the holy *place*, and the charge of the sons of Aaron their brethren, in the service of the house of the YAHWEH.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-FOUR

The division of the sons of Aaron by lot into four and twenty orders

- 1** Now *these are* the divisions of the sons of Aaron. The sons of Aaron; Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. Lev 10:1-20; [Exod 6:23]; [2Chr 23:18]; [2Chr 35:4]; [Ezra 6:18];
2 But Nadab and Abihu died before their father, and had no children: therefore Eleazar and Ithamar executed the priest's office. Lev 10:2; Num 3:4; Num 26:61;
3 And David distributed them, both Zadok of the sons of Eleazar, and Ahimelech of the sons of Ithamar, according to their offices in their service.
4 And there were more chief men found of the sons of Eleazar than of the sons of Ithamar; and *thus* were they divided. Among the sons of Eleazar *there were* sixteen chief men of the house of *their* fathers, and eight among the sons of Ithamar according to the house of their fathers.
5 Thus were they divided by lot, one sort with another; for the governors of the sanctuary, and governors *of the house* of Elohim, were of the sons of Eleazar, and of the sons of Ithamar.
6 And Shemaiah the son of Nethaneel the scribe, *one* of the Levites, wrote them before the king, and the princes, and Zadok the priest, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, and *before* the chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites: one principal household being taken for Eleazar, and *one* taken for Ithamar.
7 Now the first lot came forth to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah,
8 The third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,
9 The fifth to Malchijah, the sixth to Mijamin,

- 10** The seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth to Abijah, [Luke 1:5];
11 The ninth to Jeshua, the tenth to Shecaniah,
12 The eleventh to Eliashib, the twelfth to Jakim,
13 The thirteenth to Huppah, the fourteenth to Jeshebeab,
14 The fifteenth to Bilgah, the sixteenth to Immer,
15 The seventeenth to Hezir, the eighteenth to Aphses,
16 The nineteenth to Pethahiah, the twentieth to Jehezkel,
17 The one and twentieth to Jachin, the two and twentieth to Gamul,
18 The three and twentieth to Delaiah, the four and twentieth to Maaziah.
19 These *were* the orderings of them in their service to come into the house of the YAHWEH, according to their manner, under Aaron their father, as the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel had commanded him.

The Kohasites

- 20** And the rest of the sons of Levi *were these*: Of the sons of Amram; Shubael: of the sons of Shubael; Jehdeiah.
21 Concerning Rehabiah: of the sons of Rehabiah, the first *was* Isshiah.
22 Of the Izharites; Shelomoth: of the sons of Shelomoth; Jahas.
23 And the sons *of Hebron*; Jeriah *the first*, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, Jekameam the fourth.
24 *Of* the sons of Uzziel; Michah: of the sons of Michah; Shamir.
25 The brother of Michah *was* Isshiah: of the sons of Isshiah; Zechariah.

and the Merarites, divided by lot

- 26** The sons of Merari *were* Mahli and Mushi: the sons of Jaaziah; Beno.
27 The sons of Merari by Jaaziah; Beno, and Shoham, and Zaccur, and Ibri.
28 Of Mahli *came* Eleazar, who had no sons.
29 Concerning Kish: the son of Kish *was* Jerahmeel.
30 The sons also of Mushi; Mahli, and Eder, and Jerimoth. These *were* the sons of the Levites after the house of their fathers.
31 These likewise cast lots over against their brethren the sons of Aaron in the presence of David the king, and Zadok, and Ahimelech, and the chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites, even the principal fathers over against their younger brethren.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-FIVE

The number and offices of the singers

- 1** Moreover David and the captains of the host separated to the service of the sons of Asaph, and of Heman, and of Jeduthun, who should prophesy with harps, with psalteries, and with cymbals: and the number of the workmen according to their service was: [2Chr 23:18]; [2Chr 29:25]; [2Chr 35:4]; [Neh 12:45];
2 Of the sons of Asaph; Zaccur, and Joseph, and Nethaniah, and Asarelah, the sons of Asaph under the hands of Asaph, which prophesied according to the order of the king.
3 Of Jeduthun: the sons of Jeduthun; Gedaliah, and Zeri, and Jeshaiiah, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah, six, under the hands of their father Jeduthun, who prophesied with a harp, to give thanks and to praise the YAHWEH.
4 Of Heman: the sons of Heman; Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shebuel, and Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, and Romamtiezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, *and* Mahazioth:

5 All these *were* the sons of Heman the king's seer in the words of Elohim, to lift up the horn. And Elohim gave to Heman fourteen sons and three daughters.

6 All these *were* under the hands of their father for song *in* the house of the YAHWEH, with cymbals, psalteries, and harps, for the service of the house of Elohim, according to the king's order to Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman. [2Chr 29:25];

7 So the number of them, with their brethren that were instructed in the songs of the YAHWEH, *even* all that were cunning, was two hundred fourscore and eight.

Their division by lot into four and twenty orders

8 And they cast lots, ward against *ward*, as well the small as the great, the teacher as the scholar.

9 Now the first lot came forth for Asaph to Joseph: the second to Gedaliah, who with his brethren and sons *were* twelve:

10 The third to Zaccur, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

11 The fourth to Izri, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

12 The fifth to Nethaniah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

13 The sixth to Bukkiah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

14 The seventh to Jesharelah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

15 The eighth to Jeshaiiah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

16 The ninth to Mattaniah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

17 The tenth to Shimei, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

18 The eleventh to Azareel, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

19 The twelfth to Hashabiah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

20 The thirteenth to Shubael, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

21 The fourteenth to Mattithiah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

22 The fifteenth to Jeremoth, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

23 The sixteenth to Hananiah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

24 The seventeenth to Joshbekashah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

25 The eighteenth to Hanani, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

26 The nineteenth to Mallothi, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

27 The twentieth to Eliathah, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

28 The one and twentieth to Hothir, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

29 The two and twentieth to Giddalti, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

30 The three and twentieth to Mahazioth, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve:

31 The four and twentieth to Romamtiezer, *he*, his sons, and his brethren, *were* twelve.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-SIX

The divisions of the porters

1 Concerning the divisions of the porters: Of the Korhites *was* Meshelemiah the son of Kore, of the sons of Asaph. [2Chr 23:18]; [2Chr 35:4];

2 And the sons of Meshelemiah *were*, Zechariah the firstborn, Jediael the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth,

3 Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Elioenai the seventh.

4 Moreover the sons of Obededom *were*, Shemaiah the firstborn, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sacar the fourth, and Nethaneel the fifth,

- 5** Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peulthai the eighth: for Elohim blessed him.
- 6** Also unto Shemaiah his son were sons born, that ruled throughout the house of their father: for they *were* mighty men of valour.
- 7** The sons of Shemaiah; Othni, and Rephael, and Obed, Elzabad, whose brethren *were* strong men, Elihu, and Semachiah.
- 8** All these of the sons of Obedom: they and their sons and their brethren, able men for strength for the service, *were* threescore and two of Obedom.
- 9** And Meshelemiah had sons and brethren, strong men, eighteen.
- 10** Also Hosah, of the children of Merari, had sons; Simri the chief, (for though he was not the firstborn, yet his father made him the chief;)
- 11** Hilkiah the second, Tebaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth: all the sons and brethren of Hosah *were* thirteen.
- 12** Among these *were* the divisions of the porters, *even* among the chief men, *having* wards one against another, to minister in the house of the YAHWEH.

The gates assigned by lot

- 13** And they cast lots, as well the small as the great, according to the house of their fathers, for every gate.
- 14** And the lot eastward fell to Shelemiah. Then for Zechariah his son, a wise counsellor, they cast lots; and his lot came out northward.
- 15** To Obedom southward; and to his sons the house of Asuppim.
- 16** To Shuppim and Hosah *the lot came forth* westward, with the gate Shallecheth, by the causeway of the going up, ward against ward.
- 17** Eastward *were* six Levites, northward four a day, southward four a day, and toward Asuppim two *and* two.
- 18** At Parbar westward, four at the causeway, *and* two at Parbar.
- 19** These *are* the divisions of the porters among the sons of Kore, and among the sons of Merari.

The Levites that had charge of the treasures

- 20** And of the Levites, Ahijah *was* over the treasures of the house of Elohim, and over the treasures of the dedicated things.
- 21** *As concerning* the sons of Laadan; the sons of the Gershonite Laadan, chief fathers, *even* of Laadan the Gershonite, *were* Jehieli.
- 22** The sons of Jehieli; Zetham, and Joel his brother, *which were* over the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH.
- 23** Of the Amramites, *and* the Izharites, the Hebronites, *and* the Uzzielites:
- 24** And Shebuel the son of Gershom, the son of Moses, *was* ruler of the treasures.
- 25** And his brethren by Eliezer; Rehabiah his son, and Jeshaiiah his son, and Joram his son, and Zichri his son, and Shelomith his son.
- 26** Which Shelomith and his brethren *were* over all the treasures of the dedicated things, which David the king, and the chief fathers, the captains over thousands and hundreds, and the captains of the host, had dedicated.
- 27** Out of the spoils won in battles did they dedicate to maintain the house of the YAHWEH.
- 28** And all that Samuel the seer, and Saul the son of Kish, and Abner the son of Ner, and Joab the son of Zeruiah, had dedicated; *and* whosoever had dedicated *any thing, it was* under the hand of Shelomith, and of his brethren.

Officers and judges

29 Of the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons *were* for the outward business over Israel, for officers and judges.

30 *And* of the Hebronites, Hashabiah and his brethren, men of valour, a thousand and seven hundred, *were* officers among them of Israel on this side Jordan westward in all the business of the YAHWEH, and in the service of the king.

31 Among the Hebronites *was* Jerijah the chief, *even* among the Hebronites, according to the generations of his fathers. In the fortieth year of the reign of David they were sought for, and there were found among them mighty men of valour at Jazer of Gilead.

32 And his brethren, men of valour, *were* two thousand and seven hundred chief fathers, whom king David made rulers over the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, for every matter pertaining to Elohim, and affairs of the king.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-SEVEN

The twelve captains for every several month

1 Now the children of Israel after their number, *to wit*, the chief fathers and captains of thousands and hundreds, and their officers that served the king in any matter of the courses, which came in and went out month by month throughout all the months of the year, of every course *were* twenty and four thousand.

2 Over the first course for the first month *was* Jashobeam the son of Zabdiel: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

3 Of the children of Perez *was* the chief of all the captains of the host for the first month.

4 And over the course of the second month *was* Dodai an Ahohite, and of his course *was* Mikloth also the ruler: in his course likewise *were* twenty and four thousand.

5 The third captain of the host for the third month *was* Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, a chief priest: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

6 This *is that* Benaiah, *who was* mighty *among* the thirty, and above the thirty: and in his course *was* Ammizabad his son.

7 The fourth *captain* for the fourth month *was* Asahel the brother of Joab, and Zebadiah his son after him: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

8 The fifth captain for the fifth month *was* Shamhuth the Izrahite: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

9 The sixth *captain* for the sixth month *was* Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

10 The seventh *captain* for the seventh month *was* Helez the Pelonite, of the children of Ephraim: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

11 The eighth *captain* for the eighth month *was* Sibbecai the Hushasite, of the Zarhites: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

12 The ninth *captain* for the ninth month *was* Abiezer the Anetothite, of the Benjamites: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

13 The tenth *captain* for the tenth month *was* Maharai the Netophasite, of the Zarhites: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

14 The eleventh *captain* for the eleventh month *was* Benaiah the Pirathonite, of the children of Ephraim: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

15 The twelfth *captain* for the twelfth month *was* Heldai the Netophasite, of Othniel: and in his course *were* twenty and four thousand.

The princes of the twelve tribes

16 Furthermore over the tribes of Israel: the ruler of the Reubenites *was* Eliezer the son of Zichri: of the Simeonites, Shephatiah the son of Maachah:

17 Of the Levites, Hashabiah the son of Kemuel: of the Aaronites, Zadok:

18 Of Judah, Elihu, *one* of the brethren of David: of Issachar, Omri the son of Michael:

19 Of Zebulun, Ishmaiah the son of Obadiah: of Naphtali, Jerimoth the son of Azriel:

20 Of the children of Ephraim, Hoshea the son of Azaziah: of the half tribe of Manasseh, Joel the son of Pedaiah:

21 Of the half *tribe* of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo the son of Zechariah: of Benjamin, Jaasiel the son of Abner:

22 Of Dan, Azareel the son of Jeroham. These *were* the princes of the tribes of Israel.

The numbering of the people is hindered

23 But David took not the number of them from twenty years old and under: because the YAHWEH had said he would increase Israel like to the stars of the heavens.

24 Joab the son of Zeruiah began to number, but he finished not, because there fell wrath for it against Israel; neither was the number put in the account of the chronicles of king David.

David's several officers

25 And over the king's treasures *was* Azmaveth the son of Adiel: and over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the castles, *was* Jehonathan the son of Uziah:

26 And over them that did the work of the field for tillage of the ground *was* Ezri the son of Chelub:

27 And over the vineyards *was* Shimei the Ramathite: over the increase of the vineyards for the wine cellars *was* Zabdi the Shiphmite:

28 And over the olive trees and the sycomore trees that *were* in the low plains *was* Baalhanan the Gederite: and over the cellars of oil *was* Joash:

29 And over the herds that fed in Sharon *was* Shitrai the Sharonite: and over the herds *that were* in the valleys *was* Shaphat the son of Adlai:

30 Over the camels also *was* Obil the Ishmaelite: and over the asses *was* Jehdeiah the Meronothite:

31 And over the flocks *was* Jaziz the Hagerite. All these *were* the rulers of the substance which *was* king David's.

32 Also Jonathan David's uncle was a counsellor, a wise man, and a scribe: and Jehiel the son of Hachmoni *was* with the king's sons:

33 And Ahithophel *was* the king's counsellor: and Hushai the Archite *was* the king's companion:

34 And after Ahithophel *was* Jehoiada the son of Benaiah, and Abiathar: and the general of the king's army *was* Joab.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-EIGHT

David in a solemn assembly having declared Elohim's favor to him, and promise to his son Solomon, exhorts them to fear Elohim

1 And David assembled all the princes of Israel, the princes of the tribes, and the captains of the companies that ministered to the king by course, and the captains over the thousands, and captains over the hundreds, and the stewards over all the substance and possession of the king, and of his sons, with the officers, and with the mighty men, and with all the valiant men, unto Jerusalem.

2 Then David the king stood up upon his feet, and said, Hear me, my brethren, and my people: *As for me*, I *had* in mine heart to build a house of rest for the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH, and for the footstool of our Elohim, and had made ready for the building: [2Chr 6:7];

3 But Elohim said unto me, you shall not build a house for my name, because you have *been* a man of war, and have shed blood. 2Sam 7:5; 1Kgs 5:3; 1Chr 22:8;

4 Howbeit the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel chose me before all the house of my father to be king over Israel for ever: for he has chosen Judah *to be* the ruler; and of the house of Judah, the house of my father; and among the sons of my father he liked me to make *me* king over all Israel: 1Sam 16:12;

5 And of all my sons, (for the YAHWEH has given me many sons,) he has chosen Solomon my son to sit upon the throne of the kingdom of the YAHWEH over Israel. [1Kgs 2:15]; [2Chr 1:8];

6 And he said unto me, Solomon thy son, he shall build my house and my courts: for I have chosen him *to be* my son, and I will be his father. 2Sam 7:13; 2Chr 1:9; 2Sam 7:14;

7 Moreover I will establish his kingdom for ever, if he be constant to do my commandments and my judgments, as at this day.

8 Now therefore in the sight of all Israel the congregation of the YAHWEH, and in the audience of our Elohim, keep and seek for all the commandments of the YAHWEH your Elohim: that you may possess this good land, and leave *it* for an inheritance for your children after you for ever.

He encourages Solomon to build the temple

9 And you, Solomon my son, know you the Elohim of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the YAHWEH searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if you seek him, he will be found of you; but if you forsake him, he will cast you off for ever. 1Sam 16:7; 1Chr 29:17; Ps 7:9; Jer 11:20; Jer 17:10; Jer 20:12; Rev 2:23; [2Chr 15:2]; [Prov 3:6]; [Prov 4:4]; [John 2:25]; [Acts 1:24]; [Acts 15:8];

10 Take heed now; for the YAHWEH has chosen you to build a house for the sanctuary: be strong, and do *it*.

He gives him patterns, gold and silver, etc

11 Then David gave to Solomon his son the pattern of the porch, and of the houses thereof, and of the treasuries thereof, and of the upper chambers thereof, and of the inner parlours thereof, and of the place of the mercy seat,

12 And the pattern of all that he had by the spirit, of the courts of the house of the YAHWEH, and of all the chambers round about, of the treasuries of the house of Elohim, and of the treasuries of the dedicated things:

13 Also for the courses of the priests and the Levites, and for all the work of the service of the house of the YAHWEH, and for all the vessels of service in the house of the YAHWEH.

14 *He gave* of gold by weight for *things* of gold, for all instruments of all manner of service; *silver also* for all instruments of silver by weight, for all instruments of every kind of service:

15 Even the weight for the candlesticks of gold, and for their lamps of gold, by weight for every candlestick, and for the lamps thereof: and for the candlesticks of silver by weight, *both* for the candlestick, and *also* for the lamps thereof, according to the use of every candlestick.

16 And by weight *he gave* gold for the tables of showbread, for every table; and *likewise* silver for the tables of silver:

17 Also pure gold for the fleshhooks, and the bowls, and the cups: and for the golden basins *he gave gold* by weight for every basin; and *likewise silver* by weight for every basin of silver:

18 And for the altar of incense refined gold by weight; and gold for the pattern of the chariot of the cherubims, that spread out *their wings*, and covered the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH.

19 All *this*, *said David*, the YAHWEH made me understand in writing by *his* hand upon me, *even* all the works of this pattern.

20 And David said to Solomon his son, Be strong and of good courage, and do *it*: fear not, nor be dismayed: for the YAHWEH Elohim, *even* my Elohim, *will be* with you; he will not fail you, nor forsake you, until you have finished all the work for the service of the house of the YAHWEH. [Deut 31:7-8](#); [Josh 1:7](#); [\[Heb 13:5\]](#);

21 And, behold, the courses of the priests and the Levites, *even they shall be with you* for all the service of the house of Elohim: and *there shall be* with you for all manner of workmanship every willing skilful man, for any manner of service: also the princes and all the people *will be* wholly at thy commandment.

FIRST CHRONICLES TWENTY-NINE

David, by his example and entreaty

1 Furthermore David the king said unto all the congregation, Solomon my son, whom alone Elohim has chosen, *is yet* young and tender, and the work *is* great: for the palace *is* not for man, but for the YAHWEH Elohim. [\[Prov 4:3\]](#);

2 Now I have prepared with all my might for the house of my Elohim the gold for *things to be made* of gold, and the silver for *things* of silver, and the brass for *things* of brass, the iron for *things* of iron, and wood for *things* of wood; onyx stones, and *stones* to be set, glistening stones, and of different colours, and all manner of precious stones, and marble stones in abundance.

3 Moreover, because I have set my affection to the house of my Elohim, I have of mine own proper good, of gold and silver, *which* I have given to the house of my Elohim, over and above all that I have prepared for the holy house, [\[Exod 25:2\]](#);

4 *Even* three thousand talents of gold, of the gold of Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, to overlay the walls of the houses *withal*:

5 The gold for *things* of gold, and the silver for *things* of silver, and for all manner of work *to be made* by the hands of craftsmen. And who *then* is willing to consecrate his service this day unto the YAHWEH? [\[Exod 25:2\]](#);

causes the princes and people to offer willingly

6 Then the chief of the fathers and princes of the tribes of Israel, and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, with the rulers of the king's work, offered willingly,

7 And gave for the service of the house of Elohim of gold five thousand talents and ten thousand drams, and of silver ten thousand talents, and of brass eighteen thousand talents, and one hundred thousand talents of iron.

8 And they with whom *precious* stones were found gave *them* to the treasure of the house of the YAHWEH, by the hand of Jehiel the Gershonite.

9 Then the people rejoiced, for that they offered willingly, because with perfect heart they offered willingly to the YAHWEH: and David the king also rejoiced with great joy. [\[Exod 25:2\]](#);

David's thanksgiving and prayer

10 Wherefore David blessed the YAHWEH before all the congregation: and David said, Blessed *be* you, YAHWEH Elohim of Israel our father, for ever and ever.

11 Thine, O YAHWEH, *is* the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all *that is* in the heaven and in the earth *is thine*; thine *is* the kingdom, O YAHWEH, and you are exalted as head above all. [Matt 6:13](#); [1Tim 1:17](#); [Rev 5:13](#);

12 Both riches and honour *come* of you, and you reignest over all; and in thine hand *is* power and might; and in thine hand *it is* to make great, and to give strength unto all. [\[2Chr 20:6\]](#);

13 Now therefore, our Elohim, we thank you, and praise thy glorious name.

14 But who *am* I, and what *is* my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly after this sort? for all things *come* of you, and of thine own have we given you. [\[Exod 25:2\]](#);

15 For we *are* strangers before you, and sojourners, as *were* all our fathers: our days on the earth *are* as a shadow, and *there is* none abiding. [Ps 90:9](#); [Ps 102:11](#); [\[Job 8:9\]](#); [\[Ps 39:12\]](#); [\[Ps 119:19\]](#);

16 O YAHWEH our Elohim, all this store that we have prepared to build you a house for thine holy name *cometh* of thine hand, and *is* all thine own.

17 I know also, my Elohim, that you triest the heart, and have pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of mine heart I have willingly offered all these things: and now have I seen with joy thy people, which are present here, to offer willingly unto you. [1Chr 28:9](#); [\[Acts 1:24\]](#); [\[Acts 15:8\]](#); [\[Rev 2:23\]](#);

18 O YAHWEH Elohim of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, our fathers, keep this for ever in the imagination of the thoughts of the heart of thy people, and prepare their heart unto you:

19 And give unto Solomon my son a perfect heart, to keep thy commandments, thy testimonies, and thy statutes, and to do all *these things*, and to build the palace, *for* the which I have made provision.

The people, having blessed Elohim, and sacrificed, make Solomon king

20 And David said to all the congregation, Now bless the YAHWEH your Elohim. And all the congregation blessed the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, and bowed down their heads, and worshipped the YAHWEH, and the king.

21 And they sacrificed sacrifices unto the YAHWEH, and offered burnt offerings unto the YAHWEH, on the morrow after that day, *even* a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams, *and* a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings, and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel:

22 And did eat and drink before the YAHWEH on that day with great gladness. And they made Solomon the son of David king the second time, and anointed *him* unto the YAHWEH *to be* the chief governor, and Zadok *to be* priest.

23 Then Solomon sat on the throne of the YAHWEH as king instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him. [\[1Kgs 2:12\]](#);

24 And all the princes, and the mighty men, and all the sons likewise of king David, submitted themselves unto Solomon the king.

25 And the YAHWEH magnified Solomon exceedingly in the sight of all Israel, and bestowed upon him *such* royal majesty as had not been on any king before him in Israel. [\[2Chr 1:12\]](#);

David's reign and death

26 Thus David the son of Jesse reigned over all Israel.

27 And the time that he reigned over Israel *was* forty years; seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem. [1Kgs 2:11](#); [2Sam 5:5](#);

28 And he died in a good old age, full of days, riches, and honour: and Solomon his son reigned in his stead.

29 Now the acts of David the king, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of Samuel the seer, and in the book of Nathan the prophet, and in the book of Gad the seer,

30 With all his reign and his might, and the times that went over him, and over Israel, and over all the kingdoms of the countries.

Second_Chronicles

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#)

SECOND CHRONICLES ONE

The solemn offering of Solomon at Gibeon

1 And Solomon the son of David was strengthened in his kingdom, and the YAHWEH his Elohim *was* with him, and magnified him exceedingly. [1Kgs 2:46](#); [\[1Kgs 2:12\]](#);

2 Then Solomon spoke unto all Israel, to the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every governor in all Israel, the chief of the fathers.

3 So Solomon, and all the congregation with him, went to the high place that *was* at Gibeon; for there was the tabernacle of the congregation of Elohim, which Moses the servant of the YAHWEH had made in the wilderness. [1Kgs 3:4](#); [1Chr 16:39](#); [1Chr 21:29](#);

4 But the ark of Elohim had David brought up from Kirjathjearim to *the place which* David had prepared for it: for he had pitched a tent for it at Jerusalem. [2Sam 6:2](#); [2Sam 6:17](#); [1Chr 16:1](#);

5 Moreover the brasen altar, that Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, had made, he put before the tabernacle of the YAHWEH: and Solomon and the congregation sought unto it. [Exod 38:1](#);

6 And Solomon went up thither to the brasen altar before the YAHWEH, which *was* at the tabernacle of the congregation, and offered a thousand burnt offerings upon it.

Solomon's choice of wisdom is blessed by Elohim

7 In that night did Elohim appear unto Solomon, and said unto him, Ask what I shall give you.

8 And Solomon said unto Elohim, you have showed great mercy unto David my father, and have made me to reign in his stead. [1Chr 28:5](#);

9 Now, O YAHWEH Elohim, let thy promise unto David my father be established: for you have made me king over a people like the dust of the earth in multitude. [1Kgs 3:7](#); [\[1Kgs 3:8\]](#); [\[1Chr 28:6\]](#);

10 Give me now wisdom and knowledge, that I may go out and come in before this people: for who can judge this thy people, *that is so* great? [1Kgs 3:9](#); [1Kgs 3:11-12](#);

11 And Elohim said to Solomon, Because this was in thine heart, and you have not asked riches, wealth, or honour, nor the life of thine enemies, neither yet have asked long life; but have asked wisdom and knowledge for thyself, that you may judge my people, over whom I have made you king: [\[1Kgs 3:11\]](#);

12 Wisdom and knowledge *is* granted unto you; and I will give you riches, and wealth, and honour, such as none of the kings have had that *have been* before you, neither shall there any after you have the like. [1Kgs 3:13](#); [1Chr 29:25](#); [2Chr 9:22](#); [\[Neh 13:26\]](#);

Solomon's forces and wealth

13 Then Solomon came *from his journey* to the high place that *was* at Gibeon to Jerusalem, from before the tabernacle of the congregation, and reigned over Israel.

14 And Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen: and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, which he placed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem. [1Kgs 4:26](#); [1Kgs 10:26](#); [2Chr 9:25](#);

15 And the king made silver and gold at Jerusalem *as plenteous* as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycomore trees that *are* in the vale for abundance. [\[1Kgs 10:27\]](#); [\[2Chr 9:27\]](#);

16 And Solomon had horses brought out of Egypt, and linen yarn: the king's merchants received the linen yarn at a price. [1Kgs 10:28](#); [2Chr 9:28](#);

17 And they fetched up, and brought forth out of Egypt a chariot for six hundred *shekels* of silver, and a horse for a hundred and fifty: and so brought they out *horses* for all the kings of the Hittites, and for the kings of Syria, by their means.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWO

Solomon's labourers for the building of the temple

1 And Solomon determined to build a house for the name of the YAHWEH, and a house for his kingdom. [1Kgs 5:5];

2 And Solomon told out threescore and ten thousand men to bear burdens, and fourscore thousand to hew in the mountain, and three thousand and six hundred to oversee them. 1Kgs 5:16;

His embassy to Hiram for workmen and provision of stuff

3 And Solomon sent to Hiram the king of Tyre, saying, As you didst deal with David my father, and didst send him cedars to build him a house to dwell therein, *even so deal with me*. 1Kgs 5:2;

4 Behold, I build a house to the name of the YAHWEH my Elohim, to dedicate *it* to him, *and* to burn before him sweet incense, and for the continual showbread, and for the burnt offerings morning and between the evenings, on the Sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the solemn feasts of the YAHWEH our Elohim. This *is an ordinance* for ever to Israel. Num 28:9-11; [2Chr 13:11];

5 And the house which I build *is* great: for great *is* our Elohim above all gods.

6 But who is able to build him a house, seeing the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain him? who *am* I then, that I should build him a house, save only to burn sacrifice before him? 1Kgs 8:27; 2Chr 6:18; Job 11:7-9; Isa 66:1; Jer 23:24; Matt 5:34-35; Acts 7:49; Acts 17:24;

7 Send me now therefore a man cunning to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in iron, and in purple, and crimson, and blue, and that can skill to grave with the cunning men that *are* with me in Judah and in Jerusalem, whom David my father did provide.

8 Send me also cedar trees, fir trees, and algum trees, out of Lebanon: for I know that thy servants can skill to cut timber in Lebanon; and, behold, my servants *shall be* with thy servants, [1Kgs 3:7];

9 Even to prepare me timber in abundance: for the house which I am about to build *shall be* wonderful great.

10 And, behold, I will give to thy servants, the hewers that cut timber, twenty thousand measures of beaten wheat, and twenty thousand measures of barley, and twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil. [2Chr 2:15];

Hiram sends him a kind answer

11 Then Hiram the king of Tyre answered in writing, which he sent to Solomon, Because the YAHWEH has loved his people, he has made you king over them.

12 Hiram said moreover, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, that made heaven and earth, who has given to David the king a wise son, endued with prudence and understanding, that might build a house for the YAHWEH, and a house for his kingdom. Gen 1:2; Exod 20:11; Ps 33:6; Ps 96:5; Ps 102:25; Ps 124:8; Ps 136:5-6; Acts 4:24; Acts 14:15; Rev 10:6;

13 And now I have sent a cunning man, endued with understanding, of Hiram my father's, [1Kgs 7:13];

14 The son of a woman of the daughters of Dan, and his father *was* a man of Tyre, skilful to work in gold, and in silver, in brass, in iron, in stone, and in timber, in purple, in blue, and in fine linen, and in crimson; also to grave any manner of graving, and to find out every device which shall be put to him, with thy cunning men, and with the cunning men of my lord David thy father.

15 Now therefore the wheat, and the barley, the oil, and the wine, which my lord has spoken of, let him send unto his servants: 2Chr 2:10;

16 And we will cut wood out of Lebanon, as much as you shall need: and we will bring it to you in floats by sea to Joppa; and you shall carry it up to Jerusalem.

Solomon employs strangers, as labourers, and overseers

17 And Solomon numbered all the strangers that *were* in the land of Israel, after the numbering wherewith David his father had numbered them; and they were found a hundred and fifty thousand and three thousand and six hundred. [1Kgs 5:15](#); [1Chr 22:2](#);

18 And he set threescore and ten thousand of them *to be* bearers of burdens, and fourscore thousand *to be* hewers in the mountain, and three thousand and six hundred overseers to set the people a work.

SECOND CHRONICLES THREE

The place and time of building the temple

1 Then Solomon began to build the house of the YAHWEH at Jerusalem in mount Moriah, where *the YAHWEH* appeared unto David his father, in the place that David had prepared in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. [1Chr 21:24](#); [1Chr 21:26](#);

2 And he began to build in the second *day* of the second month, in the fourth year of his reign. [1Kgs 6:1](#);

The measure and ornaments of the house

3 Now these *are the things wherein* Solomon was instructed for the building of the house of Elohim. The length by cubits after the first measure *was* threescore cubits, and the breadth twenty cubits.

4 And the porch that *was* in the front *of the house*, the length *of it was* according to the breadth of the house, twenty cubits, and the height *was* a hundred and twenty: and he overlaid it within with pure gold.

5 And the greater house he cieled with fir tree, which he overlaid with fine gold, and set thereon palm trees and chains.

6 And he garnished the house with precious stones for beauty: and the gold *was* gold of Parvaim.

7 He overlaid also the house, the beams, the posts, and the walls thereof, and the doors thereof, with gold; and graved cherubims on the walls.

8 And he made the most holy house, the length whereof *was* according to the breadth of the house, twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty cubits: and he overlaid it with fine gold, *amounting* to six hundred talents.

9 And the weight of the nails *was* fifty shekels of gold. And he overlaid the upper chambers with gold.

10 And in the most holy house he made two cherubims of image work, and overlaid them with gold.

The cherubims

11 And the wings of the cherubims *were* twenty cubits long: one wing *of the one cherub was* five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house: and the other wing *was likewise* five cubits, reaching to the wing of the other cherub.

12 And *one* wing of the other cherub *was* five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house: and the other wing *was* five cubits *also*, joining to the wing of the other cherub.

13 The wings of these cherubims spread themselves forth twenty cubits: and they stood on their feet, and their faces *were* inward.

The vail and pillars

14 And he made the vail *of* blue, and purple, and crimson, and fine linen, and wrought cherubims thereon. [Matt 27:51](#); [\[Mark 15:38\]](#);

15 Also he made before the house two pillars of thirty and five cubits high, and the chapter that *was* on the top of each of them *was* five cubits. [1Kgs 7:15](#); [Jer 52:21](#); [\[2Kgs 25:17\]](#);

16 And he made chains, *as* in the oracle, and put *them* on the heads of the pillars; and made a hundred pomegranates, and put *them* on the chains.

17 And he reared up the pillars before the temple, one on the right hand, and the other on the left; and called the name of that on the right hand Jachin, and the name of that on the left Boaz.

SECOND CHRONICLES FOUR

The altar of brass

1 Moreover he made an altar of brass, twenty cubits the length thereof, and twenty cubits the breadth thereof, and ten cubits the height thereof.

The molten sea upon twelve oxen

2 Also he made a molten sea of ten cubits from brim to brim, round in compass, and five cubits the height thereof; and a line of thirty cubits did compass it round about. [1Kgs 7:23];

3 And under it *was* the similitude of oxen, which did compass it round about: ten in a cubit, compassing the sea round about. Two rows of oxen *were* cast, when it was cast. [1Kgs 7:24];

4 It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east: and the sea *was set* above upon them, and all their hinder parts *were* inward.

5 And the thickness of it *was* a handbreadth, and the brim of it like the work of the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies; *and* it received and held three thousand baths.

The ten lavers, candlesticks, and tables

6 He made also ten lavers, and put five on the right hand, and five on the left, to wash in them: such things as they offered for the burnt offering they washed in them; but the sea *was* for the priests to wash in. [1Kgs 7:38];

7 And he made ten candlesticks of gold according to their form, and set *them* in the temple, five on the right hand, and five on the left. 1Kgs 7:48-49;

8 He made also ten tables, and placed *them* in the temple, five on the right side, and five on the left. And he made a hundred basins of gold.

The courts, and the instruments of brass

9 Furthermore he made the court of the priests, and the great court, and doors for the court, and overlaid the doors of them with brass.

10 And he set the sea on the right side of the east end, over against the south.

11 And Hiram made the pots, and the shovels, and the basins. And Hiram finished the work that he was to make for king Solomon for the house of Elohim;

12 *To wit*, the two pillars, and the pommels, and the chapters *which were* on the top of the two pillars, and the two wreaths to cover the two pommels of the chapters which *were* on the top of the pillars;

13 And four hundred pomegranates on the two wreaths; two rows of pomegranates on each wreath, to cover the two pommels of the chapters which *were* upon the pillars.

14 He made also bases, and lavers made he upon the bases;

15 One sea, and twelve oxen under it.

16 The pots also, and the shovels, and the fleshhooks, and all their instruments, did Hiram his father make to king Solomon for the house of the YAHWEH of bright brass.

17 In the plain of Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zeredathah.

18 Thus Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance: for the weight of the brass could not be found out.

The instruments of gold

19 And Solomon made all the vessels that *were for* the house of Elohim, the golden altar also, and the tables whereon the showbread *was set*; [1Kgs 7:48](#);

20 Moreover the candlesticks with their lamps, that they should burn after the manner before the oracle, of pure gold;

21 And the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs, *made he of* gold, *and* that perfect gold;

22 And the snuffers, and the basins, and the spoons, and the censers, *of* pure gold: and the entry of the house, the inner doors thereof for the most holy *place*, and the doors of the house of the temple, *were of* gold.

SECOND CHRONICLES FIVE

The dedicated treasures

1 Thus all the work that Solomon made for the house of the YAHWEH was finished: and Solomon brought in *all* the things that David his father had dedicated; and the silver, and the gold, and all the instruments, put he among the treasures of the house of Elohim. [\[1Kgs 7:51\]](#);

The solemn induction of the ark into the oracle

2 Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the chief of the fathers of the children of Israel, unto Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH out of the city of David, which *is* Zion. [\[1Kgs 8:1\]](#);

3 Wherefore all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto the king in the feast which *was* in the seventh month.

4 And all the elders of Israel came; and the Levites took up the ark.

5 And they brought up the ark, and the tabernacle of the congregation, and all the holy vessels that *were* in the tabernacle, these did the priests *and* the Levites bring up.

6 Also king Solomon, and all the congregation of Israel that were assembled unto him before the ark, sacrificed sheep and oxen, which could not be told nor numbered for multitude.

7 And the priests brought in the ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH unto his place, to the oracle of the house, into the most holy *place*, *even* under the wings of the cherubims:

8 For the cherubims spread forth *their* wings over the place of the ark, and the cherubims covered the ark and the staves thereof above.

9 And they drew out the staves *of the ark*, that the ends of the staves were seen from the ark before the oracle; but they were not seen without. And there it is unto this day.

10 *There was* nothing in the ark save the two tables which Moses put *therein* at Horeb, when the YAHWEH made *a covenant* with the children of Israel, when they came out of Egypt. [\[Heb 9:4\]](#);

Elohim being praised, gives a visible sign of his favor

11 And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the holy *place*: (for all the priests *that were* present were sanctified, *and* did not *then* wait by course:

12 Also the Levites *which were* the singers, all of them of Asaph, of Heman, of Jeduthun, with their sons and their brethren, *being* arrayed in white linen, having cymbals and psalteries and harps, stood at the east end of the altar, and with them a hundred and twenty priests sounding with trumpets:)

13 It came even to pass, as the trumpeters and singers *were* as one, to make one sound to be heard in praising and thanking the YAHWEH; and when they lifted up *their* voice with the trumpets and cymbals

and instruments of musick, and praised the YAHWEH, *saying*, For *he is* good; for his mercy *endureth* for ever: that *then* the house was filled with a cloud, *even* the house of the YAHWEH; [2Chr 7:1];
14 So that the priests could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud: for the glory of the YAHWEH had filled the house of Elohim.

SECOND CHRONICLES SIX

Solomon, having blessed the people, blesses Elohim

- 1** Then said Solomon, The YAHWEH has said that he would dwell in the thick darkness. [1Kgs 8:12]; [Matt 23:21];
2 But I have built a house of habitation for you, and a place for thy dwelling for ever.
3 And the king turned his face, and blessed the whole congregation of Israel: and all the congregation of Israel stood. [1Kgs 8:14-15];
4 And he said, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, who has with his hands fulfilled *that* which he spoke with his mouth to my father David, saying,
5 Since the day that I brought forth my people out of the land of Egypt I chose no city among all the tribes of Israel to build a house in, that my name might be there; neither chose I any man to be a ruler over my people Israel: [1Kgs 8:16];
6 But I have chosen Jerusalem, that my name might be there; and have chosen David to be over my people Israel. [2Chr 12:13];
7 Now it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel. [2Sam 7:2; 1Kgs 8:17; 1Chr 17:1; 1Chr 28:2];
8 But the YAHWEH said to David my father, Forasmuch as it was in thine heart to build a house for my name, you didst well in that it was in thine heart:
9 Notwithstanding you shall not build the house; but thy son which shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the house for my name.
10 The YAHWEH therefore has performed his word that he has spoken: for I am risen up in the room of David my father, and am set on the throne of Israel, as the YAHWEH promised, and have built the house for the name of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.
11 And in it have I put the ark, wherein *is* the covenant of the YAHWEH, that he made with the children of Israel.

Solomon's prayer in the consecration of the temple, upon the brasen scaffold, etc

- 12** And he stood before the altar of the YAHWEH in the presence of all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands: [1Kgs 8:22];
13 For Solomon had made a brasen scaffold, of five cubits long, and five cubits broad, and three cubits high, and had set it in the midst of the court: and upon it he stood, and kneeled down upon his knees before all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven,
14 And said, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, *there is* no Elohim like you in the heaven, nor in the earth; which keepest covenant, and show *est* mercy unto thy servants, that walk before you with all their hearts: [Exod 15:11; Deut 4:39; Deut 7:9; 1Kgs 2:4];
15 You which have kept with thy servant David my father that which you have promised him; and spakest with thy mouth, and have fulfilled *it* with thine hand, as *it is* this day. [1Chr 22:9];
16 Now therefore, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that which you have promised him, saying, There shall not fail you a man in my sight to sit upon the throne of Israel;

yet so that thy children take heed to their way to walk in my law, as you have walked before me. [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:12](#); [[Ps 132:11](#)];

17 Now then, O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, let thy word be verified, which you have spoken unto thy servant David.

18 But will Elohim in very deed dwell with men on the earth? behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain you; how much less this house which I have built! [1Kgs 8:27](#); [2Chr 2:6](#); [Isa 66:1](#); [Acts 7:49](#); [[Matt 12:6](#)];

19 Have respect therefore to the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O YAHWEH my Elohim, to hearken unto the cry and the prayer which thy servant prayeth before you:

20 That thine eyes may be open upon this house day and night, upon the place whereof you have said that you wouldest put thy name there; to hearken unto the prayer which thy servant prayeth toward this place.

21 Hearken therefore unto the supplications of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, which they shall make toward this place: hear you from thy dwelling place, *even* from heaven; and when you hearest, forgive.

22 If a man sin against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to make him swear, and the oath come before thine altar in this house; [1Kgs 8:31](#);

23 Then hear you from heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, by requiting the wicked, by recompensing his way upon his own head; and by justifying the righteous, by giving him according to his righteousness.

24 And if thy people Israel be put to the worse before the enemy, because they have sinned against you; and shall return and confess thy name, and pray and make supplication before you in this house; [1Kgs 8:33](#);

25 Then hear you from the heavens, and forgive the sin of thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which you gave to them and to their fathers.

26 When the heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against you; yet if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, when you dost afflict them; [1Kgs 8:35](#);

27 Then hear you from heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, when you have taught them the good way, wherein they should walk; and send rain upon thy land, which you have given unto thy people for an inheritance.

28 If there be dearth in the land, if there be pestilence, if there be blasting, or mildew, locusts, or caterpillars; if their enemies besiege them in the cities of their land; whatsoever sore or whatsoever sickness *there be*: [2Chr 20:9](#);

29 *Then* what prayer *or* what supplication soever shall be made of any man, or of all thy people Israel, when every one shall know his own sore and his own grief, and shall spread forth his hands in this house: [1Kgs 8:38](#);

30 Then hear you from heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and render unto every man according unto all his ways, whose heart you knowest; (for you only knowest the hearts of the children of men:) [[Prov 15:11](#)]; [[Acts 17:24](#)];

31 That they may fear you, to walk in thy ways, so long as they live in the land which you gave unto our fathers.

32 Moreover concerning the stranger, which is not of thy people Israel, but is come from a far country for thy great name's sake, and thy mighty hand, and thy stretched out arm; if they come and pray in this house; [1Kgs 8:41](#);

33 Then hear you from the heavens, *even* from thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to you for; that all people of the earth may know thy name, and fear you, as thy people Israel, and may know that this house which I have built is called by thy name. [[Matt 23:22](#)]; [[Acts 7:49](#)];

34 If thy people go out to war against their enemies by the way that you shall send them, and they pray unto you toward this city which you have chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name; [1Kgs 8:44](#);

35 Then hear you from the heavens their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their cause.

36 If they sin against you, (for *there is* no man which sinneth not,) and you be angry with them, and deliver them over before *their* enemies, and they carry them away captives unto a land far off or near; [1Kgs 8:46](#); [Prov 20:9](#); [Eccl 7:20](#); [Jas 3:2](#); [1John 1:8](#); [\[Job 15:14\]](#);

37 yet *if* they come to their senses in the land whither they are carried captive, and turn and pray unto you in the land of their captivity, saying, We have sinned, we have done amiss, and have dealt wickedly;

38 If they return to you with all their heart and with all their being in the land of their captivity, whither they have carried them captives, and pray toward their land, which you gave unto their fathers, and *toward* the city which you have chosen, and toward the house which I have built for thy name:

39 Then hear you from the heavens, *even* from thy dwelling place, their prayer and their supplications, and maintain their cause, and forgive thy people which have sinned against you.

40 Now, my Elohim, let, I beseech you, thine eyes be open, and *let* thine ears *be* attentive unto the prayer *that is made* in this place. [\[2Chr 7:15\]](#);

41 Now therefore arise, O YAHWEH Elohim, into thy resting place, you, and the ark of thy strength: let thy priests, O YAHWEH Elohim, be clothed with salvation, and let thy saints rejoice in goodness. [\[Ps 132:16\]](#);

42 O YAHWEH Elohim, turn not away the face of thine anointed: remember the mercies of David thy servant.

SECOND CHRONICLES SEVEN

Elohim having given testimony to Solomon's prayer by fire from heaven, and glory in the temple, the people worship him

1 Now when Solomon had made an end of praying, the fire came down from heaven, and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices; and the glory of the YAHWEH filled the house. [1Kgs 8:10-11](#); [2Chr 5:13-14](#); [\[Lev 9:24\]](#);

2 And the priests could not enter into the house of the YAHWEH, because the glory of the YAHWEH had filled the YAHWEH'S house. [\[1Kgs 8:11\]](#);

3 And when all the children of Israel saw how the fire came down, and the glory of the YAHWEH upon the house, they bowed themselves with their faces to the ground upon the pavement, and worshipped, and praised the YAHWEH, *saying*, For *he is* good; for his mercy *endureth* for ever.

Solomon's solemn sacrifice

4 Then the king and all the people offered sacrifices before the YAHWEH.

5 And king Solomon offered a sacrifice of twenty and two thousand oxen, and a hundred and twenty thousand sheep: so the king and all the people dedicated the house of Elohim. [\[1Kgs 8:63\]](#);

6 And the priests waited on their offices: the Levites also with instruments of musick of the YAHWEH, which David the king had made to praise the YAHWEH, because his mercy *endureth* for ever, when David praised by their ministry; and the priests sounded trumpets before them, and all Israel stood.

7 Moreover Solomon hallowed the middle of the court that *was* before the house of the YAHWEH: for there he offered burnt offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings, because the brasen altar which Solomon had made was not able to receive the burnt offerings, and the meat offerings, and the fat. [\[1Kgs 8:64\]](#);

Solomon having kept the feast of tabernacles, and the feast of dedication of the altar, dismisses the people

8 Also at the same time Solomon kept the feast seven days, and all Israel with him, a very great congregation, from the entering in of Hamath unto the river of Egypt.

9 And in the eighth day they made a solemn assembly: for they kept the dedication of the altar seven days, and the feast seven days. [1Kgs 8:65](#);

10 And on the three and twentieth day of the seventh month he sent the people away into their tents, glad and merry in heart for the goodness that the YAHWEH had showed unto David, and to Solomon, and to Israel his people. [1Kgs 8:66](#);

11 Thus Solomon finished the house of the YAHWEH, and the king's house: and all that came into Solomon's heart to make in the house of the YAHWEH, and in his own house, he prosperously effected. [1Kgs 9:1](#);

Elohim appearing to Solomon, gives him promises upon condition

12 And the YAHWEH appeared to Solomon by night, and said unto him, I have heard thy prayer, and have chosen this place to myself for a house of sacrifice. [\[Deut 12:5\]](#); [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#); [\[John 4:20\]](#);

13 If I shut up heaven that there be no rain, or if I command the locusts to devour the land, or if I send pestilence among my people; [\[2Chr 20:9\]](#);

14 If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.

15 Now mine eyes shall be open, and mine ears attentive unto the prayer *that is made* in this place. [2Chr 6:40](#);

16 For now have I chosen and sanctified this house, that my name may be there for ever: and mine eyes and mine heart shall be there perpetually. [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#);

17 And as for you, if you will walk before me, as David thy father walked, and do according to all that I have commanded you, and shall observe my statutes and my judgments;

18 Then will I establish the throne of thy kingdom, according as I have covenanted with David thy father, saying, There shall not fail you a man *to be* ruler in Israel.

19 But if you turn away, and forsake my statutes and my commandments, which I have set before you, and shall go and serve other gods, and worship them;

20 Then will I pluck them up by the roots out of my land which I have given them; and this house, which I have sanctified for my name, will I cast out of my sight, and will make it *to be* a proverb and a byword among all nations. [\[Jer 24:9\]](#);

21 And this house, which is high, shall be an astonishment to every one that passeth by it; so that he shall say, Why has the YAHWEH done thus unto this land, and unto this house? [\[1Kgs 9:8\]](#);

22 And it shall be answered, Because they forsook the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, which brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, and laid hold on other gods, and worshipped them, and served them: therefore has he brought all this evil upon them.

SECOND CHRONICLES EIGHT

Solomon's buildings

1 And it came to pass at the end of twenty years, wherein Solomon had built the house of the YAHWEH, and his own house, [1Kgs 9:10](#);

2 That the cities which Hiram had restored to Solomon, Solomon built them, and caused the children of Israel to dwell there.

3 And Solomon went to Hamathzobah, and prevailed against it.

4 And he built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store cities, which he built in Hamath.

5 Also he built Bethhoron the upper, and Bethhoron the nether, fenced cities, with walls, gates, and bars;

6 And Baalath, and all the store cities that Solomon had, and all the chariot cities, and the cities of the horsemen, and all that Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and throughout all the land of his dominion. [1Kgs 9:1](#); [\[1Kgs 9:18\]](#);

The Canaanites which were left, Solomon makes tributaries, but the Israelites rulers

7 *As for* all the people *that were* left of the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, which *were* not of Israel,

8 *But* of their children, who were left after them in the land, whom the children of Israel consumed not, them did Solomon make to pay tribute until this day.

9 But of the children of Israel did Solomon make no servants for his work; but they *were* men of war, and chief of his captains, and captains of his chariots and horsemen. [1Kgs 9:22](#);

10 And these *were* the chief of king Solomon's officers, *even* two hundred and fifty, that bore rule over the people.

Pharaoh's daughter removes to her house

11 And Solomon brought up the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David unto the house that he had built for her: for he said, My wife shall not dwell in the house of David king of Israel, because *the places* *are* holy, whereunto the ark of the YAHWEH has come. [1Kgs 3:1](#); [1Kgs 7:8](#); [1Kgs 9:24](#);

Solomon's yearly solemn sacrifices

12 Then Solomon offered burnt offerings unto the YAHWEH on the altar of the YAHWEH, which he had built before the porch,

13 Even after a certain rate every day, offering according to the commandment of Moses, on the Sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the solemn feasts, three times in the year, *even* in the feast of unleavened bread, and in the feast of weeks, and in the feast of tabernacles. [Exod 23:14-15](#); [Deut 16:16](#);

He appoints the priests and Levites to their places

14 And he appointed, according to the order of David his father, the courses of the priests to their service, and the Levites to their charges, to praise and minister before the priests, as the duty of every day required: the porters also by their courses at every gate: for so had David the man of Elohim commanded. [1Chr 9:17](#); [\[2Chr 29:25\]](#);

15 And they departed not from the commandment of the king unto the priests and Levites concerning any matter, or concerning the treasures.

16 Now all the work of Solomon was prepared unto the day of the foundation of the house of the YAHWEH, and until it was finished. *So* the house of the YAHWEH was perfected.

The navy fetches gold from Ophir

17 Then went Solomon to Eziongeber, and to Eloth, at the sea side in the land of Edom.

18 And Hiram sent him by the hands of his servants ships, and servants that had knowledge of the sea; and they went with the servants of Solomon to Ophir, and took thence four hundred and fifty talents of gold, and brought *them* to king Solomon.

SECOND CHRONICLES NINE

The queen of Sheba admires the wisdom of Solomon

1 And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon, she came to prove Solomon with hard questions at Jerusalem, with a very great company, and camels that bore spices, and gold in abundance, and precious stones: and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart. [1Kgs 10:1](#); [Matt 12:42](#); [Luke 11:31](#); [\[1Kgs 10:2\]](#);

2 And Solomon told her all her questions: and there was nothing hid from Solomon which he told her not.

3 And when the queen of Sheba had seen the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he had built,

4 And the meat of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the attendance of his ministers, and their apparel; his cupbearers also, and their apparel; and his ascent by which he went up into the house of the YAHWEH; there was no more spirit in her.

5 And she said to the king, *It was* a true report which I heard in mine own land of thine acts, and of thy wisdom:

6 Howbeit I believed not their words, until I came, and mine eyes had seen *it*: and, behold, the one half of the greatness of thy wisdom was not told me: *for* you exceedest the fame that I heard.

7 Happy *are* thy men, and happy *are* these thy servants, which stand continually before you, and hear thy wisdom.

8 Blessed be the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which delighted in you to set you on his throne, *to be* king for the YAHWEH thy Elohim: because thy Elohim loved Israel, to establish them for ever, therefore made he you king over them, to do judgment and justice.

9 And she gave the king a hundred and twenty talents of gold, and of spices great abundance, and precious stones: neither was there any such spice as the queen of Sheba gave king Solomon.

10 And the servants also of Hiram, and the servants of Solomon, which brought gold from Ophir, brought alnum trees and precious stones.

11 And the king made *of* the alnum trees terraces to the house of the YAHWEH, and to the king's palace, and harps and psalteries for singers: and there were none such seen before in the land of Judah. [1Kgs 10:12](#);

12 And king Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, beside *that* which she had brought unto the king. So she turned, and went away to her own land, she and her servants.

Solomon's revenue in gold

13 Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred and threescore and six talents of gold;

14 Beside *that which* chapmen and merchants brought. And all the kings of Arabia and governors of the country brought gold and silver to Solomon.

His targets and shields

15 And king Solomon made two hundred targets *of* beaten gold: six hundred *shekels* of beaten gold went to one target. [\[1Kgs 14:26\]; \[2Chr 12:9\]](#);

16 And three hundred shields *made he of* beaten gold: three hundred *shekels* of gold went to one shield. And the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon.

The throne of ivory

17 Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with pure gold. [\[1Kgs 10:18\]](#);

18 And *there were* six steps to the throne, with a footstool of gold, *which were* fastened to the throne, and stays on each side of the sitting place, and two lions standing by the stays:

19 And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps. There was not the like made in any kingdom.

His vessels

20 And all the drinking vessels of king Solomon *were of* gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon *were of* pure gold: none *were of* silver; it was *not* any thing accounted of in the days of Solomon.

21 For the king's ships went to Tarshish with the servants of Hiram: every three years once came the ships of Tarshish bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.

22 And king Solomon passed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom. [\[2Chr 1:12\];](#)

His presents

23 And all the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom, that Elohim had put in his heart.

24 And they brought every man his present, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and raiment, harness, and spices, horses, and mules, a rate year by year.

His chariots and horse

25 And Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; whom he bestowed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem. [1Kgs 4:26; 1Kgs 10:26; 2Chr 1:14;](#)

His tributes

26 And he reigned over all the kings from the river even unto the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.

27 And the king made silver in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycomore trees that *are* in the low plains in abundance. [2Chr 1:15; \[1Kgs 10:27\];](#)

28 And they brought unto Solomon horses out of Egypt, and out of all lands. [\[1Kgs 10:28\]; \[2Chr 1:16\];](#)

His reign and death

29 Now the rest of the acts of Solomon, first and last, *are* they not written in the book of Nathan the prophet, and in the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in the visions of Iddo the seer against Jeroboam the son of Nebat? [1Kgs 11:41;](#)

30 And Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel forty years. [\[1Kgs 11:42\];](#)

31 And Solomon slept with his fathers, and he was buried in the city of David his father: and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

The Israelites, assembled at Shechem to crown Rehoboam, by Jeroboam make a suit of relaxation unto him

- 1** And Rehoboam went to Shechem: for to Shechem were all Israel come to make him king. [1Kgs 12:1](#);
2 And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who *was* in Egypt, whither he had fled from the presence of Solomon the king, heard *it*; that Jeroboam returned out of Egypt. [1Kgs 11:40](#);
3 And they sent and called him. So Jeroboam and all Israel came and spoke to Rehoboam, saying,
4 Thy father made our yoke grievous: now therefore ease you somewhat the grievous servitude of thy father, and his heavy yoke that he put upon us, and we will serve you. [\[1Kgs 12:4\]](#);
5 And he said unto them, Come again unto me after three days. And the people departed.

Rehoboam, refusing the old mens' counsel, by the advice of young men answers them roughly

- 6** And king Rehoboam took counsel with the old men that had stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, saying, What counsel give you *me* to return answer to this people?
7 And they spoke unto him, saying, If you be kind to this people, and please them, and speak good words to them, they will be thy servants for ever.
8 But he forsook the counsel which the old men gave him, and took counsel with the young men that were brought up with him, that stood before him.
9 And he said unto them, What advice give you that we may return answer to this people, which have spoken to me, saying, Ease somewhat the yoke that thy father did put upon us?
10 And the young men that were brought up with him spoke unto him, saying, Thus shall you answer the people that spoke unto you, saying, Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make you *it* somewhat lighter for us; thus shall you say unto them, My little *finger* shall be thicker than my father's loins.
11 For whereas my father put a heavy yoke upon you, I will put more to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I *will chastise you* with scorpions.
12 So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king bade, saying, Come again to me on the third day.
13 And the king answered them roughly; and king Rehoboam forsook the counsel of the old men,
14 And answered them after the advice of the young men, saying, My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add thereto: my father chastised you with whips, but I *will chastise you* with scorpions.
15 So the king hearkened not unto the people: for the cause was of Elohim, that the YAHWEH might perform his word, which he spoke by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat. [1Kgs 11:31](#);

Ten tribes revolting, kill Hadoram, and make Rehoboam flee

- 16** And when all Israel *saw* that the king would not hearken unto them, the people answered the king, saying, What portion have we in David? and *we have* none inheritance in the son of Jesse: every man to your tents, O Israel: *and* now, David, see to thine own house. So all Israel went to their tents.
17 But *as for* the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.
18 Then king Rehoboam sent Hadoram that *was* over the tribute; and the children of Israel stoned him with stones, that he died. But king Rehoboam made speed to get him up to *his* chariot, to flee to Jerusalem.
19 And Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day.

Rehoboam raising an army to subdue Israel, is forbidden by Shemaiah

1 And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he gathered of the house of Judah and Benjamin a hundred and fourscore thousand chosen *men*, which were warriors, to fight against Israel, that he might bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam. [1Kgs 12:21](#);

2 But the word of the YAHWEH came to Shemaiah the man of Elohim, saying, [\[1Kgs 12:22\]](#);

3 Speak unto Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, saying,

4 Thus saith the YAHWEH, you shall not go up, nor fight against your brethren: return every man to his house: for this thing is done of me. And they obeyed the words of the YAHWEH, and returned from going against Jeroboam. [1Kgs 12:24](#);

He strengthens his kingdom with forts and provisions

5 And Rehoboam dwelt in Jerusalem, and built cities for defence in Judah. [\[2Chr 23:4\]](#);

6 He built even Bethlehem, and Etam, and Tekoa,

7 And Bethzur, and Shoco, and Adullam,

8 And Gath, and Mareshah, and Ziph,

9 And Adoraim, and Lachish, and Azekah,

10 And Zorah, and Aijalon, and Hebron, which *are* in Judah and in Benjamin fenced cities.

11 And he fortified the strong holds, and put captains in them, and store of victual, and of oil and wine.

12 And in every several city *he put* shields and spears, and made them exceeding strong, having Judah and Benjamin on his side.

The priests and Levites, and such as feared Elohim, forsaken by Jeroboam, strengthen the kingdom of Judah

13 And the priests and the Levites that *were* in all Israel resorted to him out of all their coasts.

14 For the Levites left their suburbs and their possession, and came to Judah and Jerusalem: for Jeroboam and his sons had cast them off from executing the priest's office unto the YAHWEH: [2Chr 13:9](#);

15 And he ordained him priests for the high places, and for the demons, and for the calves which he had made. [1Kgs 12:31](#);

16 And after them out of all the tribes of Israel such as set their hearts to seek the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel came to Jerusalem, to sacrifice unto the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers.

17 So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah, and made Rehoboam the son of Solomon strong, three years: for three years they walked in the way of David and Solomon.

The wives and children of Rehoboam

18 And Rehoboam took him Mahalath the daughter of Jerimoth the son of David to wife, *and* Abihail the daughter of Eliab the son of Jesse;

19 Which bore him children; Jeush, and Shamariah, and Zaham.

20 And after her he took Maachah the daughter of Absalom; which bore him Abijah, and Attai, and Ziza, and Shelomith. [1Kgs 15:2](#);

21 And Rehoboam loved Maachah the daughter of Absalom above all his wives and his concubines: (for he took eighteen wives, and threescore concubines; and begat twenty and eight sons, and threescore daughters.)

22 And Rehoboam made Abijah the son of Maachah the chief, *to be* ruler among his brethren: for *he thought* to make him king.

23 And he dealt wisely, and dispersed of all his children throughout all the countries of Judah and Benjamin, unto every fenced city: and he gave them victual in abundance. And he desired many wives.

Rehoboam, forsaking the Lord, is punished by Shishak

1 And it came to pass, when Rehoboam had established the kingdom, and had strengthened himself, he forsook the law of the YAHWEH, and all Israel with him. [1Kgs 14:22](#);

2 And it came to pass, *that* in the fifth year of king Rehoboam Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, because they had transgressed against the YAHWEH, [1Kgs 14:25](#);

3 With twelve hundred chariots, and threescore thousand horsemen: and the people *were* without number that came with him out of Egypt; the Lubims, the Sukkiims, and the Ethiopians.

4 And he took the fenced cities which *pertained* to Judah, and came to Jerusalem.

He and the princes, repenting at the preaching of Shemaiah, are delivered from destruction, but not from spoil

5 Then came Shemaiah the prophet to Rehoboam, and *to* the princes of Judah, that were gathered together to Jerusalem because of Shishak, and said unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH, you have forsaken me, and therefore have I also left you in the hand of Shishak.

6 Whereupon the princes of Israel and the king humbled themselves; and they said, The YAHWEH *is* righteous.

7 And when the YAHWEH saw that they humbled themselves, the word of the YAHWEH came to Shemaiah, saying, They have humbled themselves; *therefore* I will not destroy them, but I will grant them some deliverance; and my wrath shall not be poured out upon Jerusalem by the hand of Shishak.

8 Nevertheless they shall be his servants; that they may know my service, and the service of the kingdoms of the countries.

9 So Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, and took away the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king's house; he took all: he carried away also the shields of gold which Solomon had made. [1Kgs 10:16](#); [2Chr 9:15](#);

10 Instead of which king Rehoboam made shields of brass, and committed *them* to the hands of the chief of the guard, that kept the entrance of the king's house.

11 And when the king entered into the house of the YAHWEH, the guard came and fetched them, and brought them again into the guard chamber.

12 And when he humbled himself, the wrath of the YAHWEH turned from him, that he would not destroy *him* altogether: and also in Judah things went well.

The reign and death of Rehoboam

13 So king Rehoboam strengthened himself in Jerusalem, and reigned: for Rehoboam *was* one and forty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which the YAHWEH had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, to put his name there. And his mother's name *was* Naamah an Ammonitess. [1Kgs 14:21](#); [2Chr 6:6](#);

14 And he did evil, because he prepared not his heart to seek the YAHWEH.

15 Now the acts of Rehoboam, first and last, *are* they not written in the book of Shemaiah the prophet, and of Iddo the seer concerning genealogies? And *there were* wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam continually.

16 And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David: and Abijah his son reigned in his stead.

Abijah succeeding makes war against Jeroboam

- 1** Now in the eighteenth year of king Jeroboam began Abijah to reign over Judah. [1Kgs 15:1](#);
- 2** He reigned three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Michaiah the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. And there was war between Abijah and Jeroboam. [\[1Kgs 15:2\]](#);
- 3** And Abijah set the battle in array with an army of valiant men of war, *even* four hundred thousand chosen men: Jeroboam also set the battle in array against him with eight hundred thousand chosen men, *being* mighty men of valour.

He declares the right of his cause

- 4** And Abijah stood up upon mount Zemaraim, which *is* in mount Ephraim, and said, Hear me, you Jeroboam, and all Israel;
- 5** Ought you not to know that the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel gave the kingdom over Israel to David for ever, *even* to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt?
- 6** Yet Jeroboam the son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon the son of David, is risen up, and has rebelled against his lord. [1Kgs 11:26](#);
- 7** And there are gathered unto him vain men, the children of Belial, and have strengthened themselves against Rehoboam the son of Solomon, when Rehoboam was young and tenderhearted, and could not withstand them.
- 8** And now you think to withstand the kingdom of the YAHWEH in the hand of the sons of David; and you *be* a great multitude, and *there are* with you golden calves, which Jeroboam made you for gods. [1Kgs 12:28](#);
- 9** Have you not cast out the priests of the YAHWEH, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites, and have made you priests after the manner of the nations of *other* lands? so that whosoever cometh to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams, *the same* may be a priest of *them that are* no gods. [1Kgs 12:31](#); [2Chr 11:14-15](#); [\[2Chr 11:14\]](#);
- 10** But as for us, the YAHWEH *is* our Elohim, and we have not forsaken him; and the priests, which minister unto the YAHWEH, *are* the sons of Aaron, and the Levites *wait* upon *their* business:
- 11** And they burn unto the YAHWEH every morning and every evening burnt sacrifices and sweet incense: the showbread also *set they in order* upon the pure table; and the candlestick of gold with the lamps thereof, to burn every evening: for we keep the charge of the YAHWEH our Elohim; but you have forsaken him. [2Chr 2:4](#);
- 12** And, behold, Elohim himself *is* with us for *our* captain, and his priests with sounding trumpets to cry alarm against you. O children of Israel, fight you not against the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers; for you shall not prosper.

Trusting in Elohim, he overcomes Jeroboam

- 13** But Jeroboam caused an ambush to come about behind them: so they were before Judah, and the ambush *was* behind them.
- 14** And when Judah looked back, behold, the battle *was* before and behind: and they cried unto the YAHWEH, and the priests sounded with the trumpets.
- 15** Then the men of Judah gave a shout: and as the men of Judah shouted, it came to pass, that Elohim smote Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah.
- 16** And the children of Israel fled before Judah: and Elohim delivered them into their hand.
- 17** And Abijah and his people slew them with a great slaughter: so there fell down slain of Israel five hundred thousand chosen men.
- 18** Thus the children of Israel were brought under at that time, and the children of Judah prevailed, because they relied upon the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers.

19 And Abijah pursued after Jeroboam, and took cities from him, Bethel with the towns thereof, and Jeshanah with the towns thereof, and Ephraim with the towns thereof.

20 Neither did Jeroboam recover strength again in the days of Abijah: and the YAHWEH struck him, and he died.

The wives and children of Abijah

21 But Abijah waxed mighty, and married fourteen wives, and begat twenty and two sons, and sixteen daughters.

22 And the rest of the acts of Abijah, and his ways, and his sayings, *are* written in the story of the prophet Iddo.

SECOND CHRONICLES FOURTEEN

Asa succeeding, destroys idolatry

1 So Abijah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David: and Asa his son reigned in his stead. In his days the land was quiet ten years. [1Kgs 15:8](#);

2 And Asa did *that which was* good and right in the eyes of the YAHWEH his Elohim:

3 For he took away the altars of the strange *gods*, and the high places, and brake down the images, and cut down the groves: [1Kgs 15:13](#);

4 And commanded Judah to seek the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, and to do the law and the commandment.

5 Also he took away out of all the cities of Judah the high places and the images: and the kingdom was quiet before him.

Having peace, he strengthens his kingdom with forts and armies

6 And he built fenced cities in Judah: for the land had rest, and he had no war in those years; because the YAHWEH had given him rest.

7 Therefore he said unto Judah, Let us build these cities, and make about *them* walls, and towers, gates, and bars, *while* the land *is* yet before us; because we have sought the YAHWEH our Elohim, we have sought *him*, and he has given us rest on every side. So they built and prospered.

8 And Asa had an army *of men* that bore targets and spears, out of Judah three hundred thousand; and out of Benjamin, that bore shields and drew bows, two hundred and fourscore thousand: all these *were* mighty men of valour.

Calling on Elohim, he overthrows Zerah, and spoils the Ethiopians

9 And there came out against them Zerah the Ethiopian with a host of a thousand thousand, and three hundred chariots; and came unto Mareshah. [2Chr 16:8](#);

10 Then Asa went out against him, and they set the battle in array in the valley of Zephasah at Mareshah.

11 And Asa cried unto the YAHWEH his Elohim, and said, YAHWEH, *it is* nothing with you to help, whether with many, or with them that have no power: help us, O YAHWEH our Elohim; for we rest on you, and in thy name we go against this multitude. O YAHWEH, you are our Elohim; let not man prevail against you. [1Sam 14:6](#);

12 So the YAHWEH smote the Ethiopians before Asa, and before Judah; and the Ethiopians fled.

13 And Asa and the people that *were* with him pursued them unto Gerar: and the Ethiopians were overthrown, that they could not recover themselves; for they were destroyed before the YAHWEH, and before his host; and they carried away very much spoil.

14 And they smote all the cities round about Gerar; for the fear of the YAHWEH came upon them: and they spoiled all the cities; for there was exceeding much spoil in them.
15 They smote also the tents of cattle, and carried away sheep and camels in abundance, and returned to Jerusalem.

SECOND CHRONICLES FIFTEEN

Asa, with Judah and many of Israel, moved by the prophecy of Azariah the son of Oded, make a solemn covenant with Elohim

1 And the Spirit of Elohim came upon Azariah the son of Oded:
2 And he went out to meet Asa, and said unto him, Hear you me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin; The YAHWEH *is* with you, while you be with him; and if you seek him, he will be found of you; but if you forsake him, he will forsake you. [1Chr 28:9](#); [2Chr 33:12](#); [Matt 7:7](#); [2Chr 24:20](#);
3 Now for a long season Israel *has been* without the true Elohim, and without a teaching priest, and without law. [Hos 3:4](#);
4 But when they in their trouble did turn unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, and sought him, he was found of them. [Deut 4:29](#);
5 And in those times *there was* no peace to him that went out, nor to him that came in, but great vexations *were* upon all the inhabitants of the countries.
6 And nation was destroyed of nation, and city of city: for Elohim did vex them with all adversity.
7 Be you strong therefore, and let not your hands be weak: for your work shall be rewarded.
8 And when Asa heard these words, and the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage, and put away the abominable idols out of all the land of Judah and Benjamin, and out of the cities which he had taken from mount Ephraim, and renewed the altar of the YAHWEH, that *was* before the porch of the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 17:2\]](#);
9 And he gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and the strangers with them out of Ephraim and Manasseh, and out of Simeon: for they fell to him out of Israel in abundance, when they saw that the YAHWEH his Elohim *was* with him.
10 So they gathered themselves together at Jerusalem in the third month, in the fifteenth year of the reign of Asa.
11 And they offered unto the YAHWEH the same time, of the spoil *which* they had brought, seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep.
12 And they entered into a covenant to seek the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers with all their heart and with all their being; [Josh 24:15](#); [Neh 10:29](#);
13 That whosoever would not seek the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman. [Deut 13:9](#);
14 And they swore unto the YAHWEH with a loud voice, and with shouting, and with trumpets, and with cornets.
15 And all Judah rejoiced at the oath: for they had sworn with all their heart, and sought him with their whole desire; and he was found of them: and the YAHWEH gave them rest round about.

He puts down Maachah his mother for her idolatry

16 And also *concerning* Maachah the mother of Asa the king, he removed her from *being* queen, because she had made an idol in a grove: and Asa cut down her idol, and stamped *it*, and burnt *it* at the brook Kidron. [1Kgs 15:13](#);
17 But the high places were not taken away out of Israel: nevertheless the heart of Asa was perfect all his days.

He brings dedicated things into the house of Elohim, and enjoys a long peace

18 And he brought into the house of Elohim the things that his father had dedicated, and that he himself had dedicated, silver, and gold, and vessels.

19 And there was no *more* war unto the five and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa.

SECOND CHRONICLES SIXTEEN

Asa, by the aid of the Syrians, diverts Baasha from building Ramah

1 In the six and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa Baasha king of Israel came up against Judah, and built Ramah, to the intent that he might let none go out or come in to Asa king of Judah. [1Kgs 15:17](#);

2 Then Asa brought out silver and gold out of the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH and of the king's house, and sent to Benhadad king of Syria, that dwelt at Damascus, saying, [\[1Kgs 15:18\]](#);

3 *There is* a league between me and you, as *there was* between my father and thy father: behold, I have sent you silver and gold; go, break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me.

4 And Benhadad hearkened unto king Asa, and sent the captains of his armies against the cities of Israel; and they smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abelmaim, and all the store cities of Naphtali.

5 And it came to pass, when Baasha heard *it*, that he left off building of Ramah, and let his work cease. [\[2Kgs 15:37\]](#);

6 Then Asa the king took all Judah; and they carried away the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof, wherewith Baasha was building; and he built therewith Geba and Mizpah.

Being reprov'd thereof by Hanani, he puts him in prison

7 And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa king of Judah, and said unto him, Because you have relied on the king of Syria, and not relied on the YAHWEH thy Elohim, therefore is the host of the king of Syria escaped out of thine hand.

8 Were not the Ethiopians and the Lubims a huge host, with very many chariots and horsemen? yet, because you didst rely on the YAHWEH, he delivered them into thine hand. [\[2Chr 14:9\]](#);

9 For the eyes of the YAHWEH run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show himself strong in the behalf of *them* whose heart *is* perfect toward him. Herein you have done foolishly: therefore from henceforth you shall have wars. [Job 34:21](#); [Prov 5:21](#); [Prov 15:3](#); [Jer 16:17](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [\[Job 31:4\]](#); [\[Ps 66:7\]](#);

10 Then Asa was wroth with the seer, and put him in a prison house; for *he was* in a rage with him because of this *thing*. And Asa oppressed *some* of the people the same time.

Among his other acts in his disease he seeks not to Elohim, but to the physicians

11 And, behold, the acts of Asa, first and last, lo, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

12 And Asa in the thirty and ninth year of his reign was diseased in his feet, until his disease *was* exceeding *great*: yet in his disease he sought not to the YAHWEH, but to the physicians.

His death and burial

13 And Asa slept with his fathers, and died in the one and fortieth year of his reign. [\[1Kgs 15:24\]](#);

14 And they buried him in his own sepulchers, which he had made for himself in the city of David, and laid him in the bed which was filled with sweet odours and different kinds *of spices* prepared by the apothecaries' are: and they made a very great burning for him.

Jehoshaphat, succeeding Asa, reigns well, and prospers

- 1** And Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead, and strengthened himself against Israel. [1Kgs 15:24](#);
- 2** And he placed forces in all the fenced cities of Judah, and set garrisons in the land of Judah, and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had taken. [2Chr 15:8](#);
- 3** And the YAHWEH was with Jehoshaphat, because he walked in the first ways of his father David, and sought not unto Baalim;
- 4** But sought to the *YAHWEH* Elohim of his father, and walked in his commandments, and not after the doings of Israel. [\[2Chr 19:3\]](#);
- 5** Therefore the YAHWEH established the kingdom in his hand; and all Judah brought to Jehoshaphat presents; and he had riches and honour in abundance. [\[1Sam 10:27\]](#);
- 6** And his heart was lifted up in the ways of the YAHWEH: moreover he took away the high places and groves out of Judah. [\[2Chr 19:3\]](#);

He sends Levites with the princes to teach Judah

- 7** Also in the third year of his reign he sent to his princes, *even* to Benhail, and to Obadiah, and to Zechariah, and to Nethaneel, and to Michaiah, to teach in the cities of Judah.
- 8** And with them *he sent* Levites, *even* Shemaiah, and Nethaniah, and Zebadiah, and Asahel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehonathan, and Adonijah, and Tobijah, and Tobadonijah, Levites; and with them Elishama and Jehoram, priests.
- 9** And they taught in Judah, and *had* the book of the law of the YAHWEH with them, and went about throughout all the cities of Judah, and taught the people.

His enemies being terrified by Elohim, some of them bring him presents and tribute

- 10** And the fear of the YAHWEH fell upon all the kingdoms of the lands that *were* round about Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat.
- 11** Also *some* of the Philistines brought Jehoshaphat presents, and tribute silver; and the Arabians brought him flocks, seven thousand and seven hundred rams, and seven thousand and seven hundred he goats.

His greatness, captains, and armies

- 12** And Jehoshaphat waxed great exceedingly; and he built in Judah castles, and cities of store.
- 13** And he had much business in the cities of Judah: and the men of war, mighty men of valour, *were* in Jerusalem.
- 14** And these *are* the numbers of them according to the house of their fathers: Of Judah, the captains of thousands; Adnah the chief, and with him mighty men of valour three hundred thousand.
- 15** And next to him *was* Jehohanan the captain, and with him two hundred and fourscore thousand.
- 16** And next him *was* Amasiah the son of Zichri, who willingly offered himself unto the YAHWEH; and with him two hundred thousand mighty men of valour.
- 17** And of Benjamin; Eliada a mighty man of valour, and with him armed men with bow and shield two hundred thousand.
- 18** And next him *was* Jehozabad, and with him a hundred and fourscore thousand ready prepared for the war.
- 19** These waited on the king, beside *those* whom the king put in the fenced cities throughout all Judah.

Jehoshaphat, joined in affinity with Ahab, is persuaded to go with him against Ramoth-gilead

1 Now Jehoshaphat had riches and honour in abundance, and by marriage allied himself with Ahab. [1Kgs 22:2];

2 And after *certain* years he went down to Ahab to Samaria. And Ahab killed sheep and oxen for him in abundance, and for the people that *he had* with him, and persuaded him to go up *with him* to Ramothgilead. [1Kgs 22:2];

3 And Ahab king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat king of Judah, will you go with me to Ramothgilead? And he answered him, I *am* as you are, and my people as thy people; and *we will be* with you in the war. [1Kgs 22:4];

Ahab, seduced by false prophets, according to the word of Micaiah, is slain there

4 And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, Enquire, I pray you, at the word of the YAHWEH to day. [1Sam 23:2; 2Sam 2:1];

5 Therefore the king of Israel gathered together of prophets four hundred men, and said unto them, Shall we go to Ramothgilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up; for Elohim will deliver *it* into the king's hand.

6 But Jehoshaphat said, *Is there* not here a prophet of the YAHWEH besides, that we might enquire of him?

7 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, *There is* yet one man, by whom we may enquire of the YAHWEH: but I hate him; for he never prophesied good unto me, but always evil: the same *is* Micaiah the son of Imla. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.

8 And the king of Israel called for one *of his* officers, and said, Fetch quickly Micaiah the son of Imla.

9 And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah sat either of them on his throne, clothed in *their* robes, and they sat in a void place at the entering in of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets prophesied before them. [1Kgs 22:10];

10 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah had made him horns of iron, and said, Thus saith the YAHWEH, With these you shall push Syria until they be consumed.

11 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, Go up to Ramothgilead, and prosper: for the YAHWEH shall deliver *it* into the hand of the king.

12 And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, Behold, the words of the prophets *declare* good to the king with one assent; let thy word therefore, I pray you, be like one of theirs, and speak you good.

13 And Micaiah said, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, even what my Elohim saith, that will I speak.

14 And when he was come to the king, the king said unto him, Micaiah, shall we go to Ramothgilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And he said, Go you up, and prosper, and they shall be delivered into your hand.

15 And the king said to him, How many times shall I adjure you that you say nothing but the truth to me in the name of the YAHWEH?

16 Then he said, I did see all Israel scattered upon the mountains, as sheep that have no shepherd: and the YAHWEH said, These have no master; let them return *therefore* every man to his house in peace.

17 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, Did I not tell you *that* he would not prophesy good unto me, but evil?

18 Again he said, Therefore hear the word of the YAHWEH; I saw the YAHWEH sitting upon his throne, and all the host of heaven standing on his right hand and *on* his left. [1Kgs 22:19];

19 And the YAHWEH said, Who shall entice Ahab king of Israel, that he may go up and fall at Ramothgilead? And one spoke saying after this manner, and another saying after that manner.

20 Then there came out a spirit, and stood before the YAHWEH, and said, I will entice him. And the YAHWEH said unto him, Wherewith? [Job 1:6](#);

21 And he said, I will go out, and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And *the* YAHWEH said, you shall entice *him*, and you shall also prevail: go out, and do *even* so.

22 Now therefore, behold, the YAHWEH has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these thy prophets, and the YAHWEH has spoken evil against you. [Job 12:16](#); [Job 12:20](#); [Isa 19:14](#); [Ezek 14:9](#);

23 Then Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near, and smote Micaiah upon the cheek, and said, Which way went the Spirit of the YAHWEH from me to speak unto you? [Jer 20:2](#); [Mark 14:65](#); [Acts 23:2](#);

24 And Micaiah said, Behold, you shall see on that day when you shall go into an inner chamber to hide thyself.

25 Then the king of Israel said, Take you Micaiah, and carry him back to Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son;

26 And say, Thus saith the king, Put this *fellow* in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I return in peace.

27 And Micaiah said, If you certainly return in peace, *then* has not the YAHWEH spoken by me. And he said, Hearken, all you people.

28 So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramothgilead.

29 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself, and will go to the battle; but put you on thy robes. So the king of Israel disguised himself; and they went to the battle.

30 Now the king of Syria had commanded the captains of the chariots that *were* with him, saying, Fight you not with small or great, save only with the king of Israel.

31 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said, It *is* the king of Israel. Therefore they compassed about him to fight: but Jehoshaphat cried out, and the YAHWEH helped him; and Elohim moved them *to depart* from him.

32 For it came to pass, that, when the captains of the chariots perceived that it was not the king of Israel, they turned back again from pursuing him.

33 And a *certain* man drew a bow at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between the joints of the harness: therefore he said to his chariot man, Turn thine hand, that you may carry me out of the host; for I am wounded.

34 And the battle increased that day: howbeit the king of Israel stayed *himself* up in *his* chariot against the Syrians until the even: and about the time of the sun going down he died.

SECOND CHRONICLES NINETEEN

Jehoshaphat, reproved by Jehu, visits his kingdom

1 And Jehoshaphat the king of Judah returned to his house in peace to Jerusalem.

2 And Jehu the son of Hanani the seer went out to meet him, and said to king Jehoshaphat, should you help the ungodly, and love them that hate the YAHWEH? therefore *is* wrath upon you from before the YAHWEH.

3 Nevertheless there are good things found in you, in that you have taken away the groves out of the land, and have prepared thine heart to seek Elohim. [2Chr 17:4](#); [2Chr 17:6](#);

4 And Jehoshaphat dwelt at Jerusalem: and he went out again through the people from Beersheba to mount Ephraim, and brought them back unto the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers.

His instructions to the judges

5 And he set judges in the land throughout all the fenced cities of Judah, city by city,

6 And said to the judges, Take heed what you do: for you judge not for man, but for the YAHWEH, who *is* with you in the judgment. [Deut 10:17];

7 Wherefore now let the fear of the YAHWEH be upon you; take heed and do *it*: for *there is* no iniquity with the YAHWEH our Elohim, nor respect of persons, nor taking of gifts. Deut 32:4; Rom 9:14; Deut 10:17; Job 34:19; Acts 10:34; Rom 2:11; Gal 2:6; Eph 6:9; Col 3:25; 1Pet 1:17; [Job 8:3]; [Job 34:10]; [Job 36:23];

to the priests and Levites

8 Moreover in Jerusalem did Jehoshaphat set of the Levites, and *of* the priests, and of the chief of the fathers of Israel, for the judgment of the YAHWEH, and for controversies, when they returned to Jerusalem.

9 And he charged them, saying, Thus shall you do in the fear of the YAHWEH, faithfully, and with a perfect heart.

10 And what cause soever shall come to you of your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and judgments, you shall even warn them that they trespass not against the YAHWEH, and *so* wrath come upon you, and upon your brethren: this do, and you shall not trespass. [Deut 17:8];

11 And, behold, Amariah the chief priest *is* over you in all matters of the YAHWEH; and Zebadiah the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the house of Judah, for all the king's matters: also the Levites *shall be* officers before you. Deal courageously, and the YAHWEH shall be with the good.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY

Jehoshaphat, invaded by Moab, proclaims a fast

1 It came to pass after this also, *that* the children of Moab, and the children of Ammon, and with them *other* beside the Ammonites, came against Jehoshaphat to battle.

2 Then there came some that told Jehoshaphat, saying, There cometh a great multitude against you from beyond the sea on this side Syria; and, behold, they *be* in Hazazontamar, which *is* Engedi.

3 And Jehoshaphat feared, and set himself to seek the YAHWEH, and proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah.

4 And Judah gathered themselves together, to ask *help* of the YAHWEH: even out of all the cities of Judah they came to seek the YAHWEH.

His prayer

5 And Jehoshaphat stood in the congregation of Judah and Jerusalem, in the house of the YAHWEH, before the new court,

6 And said, O YAHWEH Elohim of our fathers, are not you Elohim in heaven? and rulest *not* you over all the kingdoms of the heathen? and in thine hand *is there not* power and might, so that none is able to withstand you? 1Chr 29:12; Matt 6:13; [Isa 14:27];

7 Are not you our Elohim, *who* didst drive out the inhabitants of this land before thy people Israel, and gave it to the seed of Abraham thy friend for ever? [Isa 41:8];

8 And they dwelt therein, and have built you a sanctuary therein for thy name, saying,

9 If, *when* evil cometh upon us, *as* the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine, we stand before this house, and in thy presence, (for thy name *is* in this house,) and cry unto you in our affliction, then you will hear and help. 1Kgs 8:33-35; 2Chr 6:28; 2Chr 7:13;

10 And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir, whom you wouldst not let Israel invade, when they came out of the land of Egypt, but they turned from them, and destroyed them not;

11 Behold, *I say, how* they reward us, to come to cast us out of thy possession, which you have given us to inherit.

12 O our Elohim, will you not judge them? for we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes *are* upon you.

13 And all Judah stood before the YAHWEH, with their little ones, their wives, and their children.

The prophecy of Jahaziel

14 Then upon Jahaziel the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, a Levite of the sons of Asaph, came the Spirit of the YAHWEH in the midst of the congregation;

15 And he said, Harken you, all Judah, and you inhabitants of Jerusalem, and you king Jehoshaphat, Thus saith the YAHWEH unto you, Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude; for the battle *is* not yours, but Elohim's. [Exod 14:13](#);

16 To morrow go you down against them: behold, they come up by the cliff of Ziz; and you shall find them at the end of the brook, before the wilderness of Jeruel.

17 You shall not *need* to fight in this *battle*: set yourselves, stand you *still*, and see the salvation of the YAHWEH with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them: for the YAHWEH *will be* with you. [\[2Kgs 24:13\]](#);

18 And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with *his* face to the ground: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell before the YAHWEH, worshipping the YAHWEH.

19 And the Levites, of the children of the Kohasites, and of the children of the Korhites, stood up to praise the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel with a loud voice on high.

Jehoshaphat exhorts the people, and sets singers to praise the Lord

20 And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and you inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the YAHWEH your Elohim, so shall you be established; believe his prophets, so shall you prosper.

21 And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed singers unto the YAHWEH, and that should praise the beauty of holiness, as they went out before the army, and to say, Praise the YAHWEH; for his mercy *endureth* for ever.

The great overthrow of his enemies

22 And when they began to sing and to praise, the YAHWEH set ambushes against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten. [Judg 7:22](#); [1Sam 14:20](#);

23 For the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of mount Seir, utterly to slay and destroy *them*: and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, every one helped to destroy another.

24 And when Judah came toward the watch tower in the wilderness, they looked unto the multitude, and, behold, they *were* dead bodies fallen to the earth, and none escaped.

25 And when Jehoshaphat and his people came to take away the spoil of them, they found among them in abundance both riches with the dead bodies, and precious jewels, which they stripped off for themselves, more than they could carry away: and they were three days in gathering of the spoil, it was so much.

The people, having blessed Elohim at Berachah, return in triumph

26 And on the fourth day they assembled themselves in the valley of Berachah; for there they blessed the YAHWEH: therefore the name of the same place was called, The valley of Berachah, unto this day.

27 Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in the forefront of them, to go again to Jerusalem with joy; for the YAHWEH had made them to rejoice over their enemies.

- 28** And they came to Jerusalem with psalteries and harps and trumpets unto the house of the YAHWEH.
- 29** And the fear of Elohim was on all the kingdoms of *those* countries, when they had heard that the YAHWEH fought against the enemies of Israel.
- 30** So the realm of Jehoshaphat was quiet: for his Elohim gave him rest round about.

Jehoshaphat's reign

- 31** And Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah: *he was* thirty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Azubah the daughter of Shilhi. [1Kgs 22:42](#); [\[1Kgs 22:41\]](#);
- 32** And he walked in the way of Asa his father, and departed not from it, doing *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH.
- 33** Howbeit the high places were not taken away: for as yet the people had not prepared their hearts unto the Elohim of their fathers.
- 34** Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of Jehu the son of Hanani, who *is* mentioned in the book of the kings of Israel.

His convoy of ships, according to the prophecy of Eliezer, unhappily perish

- 35** And after this did Jehoshaphat king of Judah join himself with Ahaziah king of Israel, who did very wickedly:
- 36** And he joined himself with him to make ships to go to Tarshish: and they made the ships in Eziongeber. [1Kgs 22:48](#);
- 37** Then Eliezer the son of Dodavah of Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat, saying, Because you have joined thyself with Ahaziah, the YAHWEH has broken thy works. And the ships were broken, that they were not able to go to Tarshish.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-ONE

Jehoram, succeeding Jehoshaphat, slays his brethren

- 1** Now Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And Jehoram his son reigned in his stead. [1Kgs 22:50](#); [2Kgs 8:16](#);
- 2** And he had brethren the sons of Jehoshaphat, Azariah, and Jehiel, and Zechariah, and Azariah, and Michael, and Shephatiah: all these *were* the sons of Jehoshaphat king of Israel.
- 3** And their father gave them great gifts of silver, and of gold, and of precious things, with fenced cities in Judah: but the kingdom gave he to Jehoram; because he *was* the firstborn.
- 4** Now when Jehoram was risen up to the kingdom of his father, he strengthened himself, and slew all his brethren with the sword, and *different* also of the princes of Israel. [\[2Kgs 8:16\]](#);

His wicked reign

- 5** Jehoram *was* thirty and two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. [2Kgs 8:17](#); [\[2Kgs 23:12\]](#);
- 6** And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, like as did the house of Ahab: for he had the daughter of Ahab to wife: and he wrought *that which was* evil in the eyes of the YAHWEH.
- 7** Howbeit the YAHWEH would not destroy the house of David, because of the covenant that he had made with David, and as he promised to give a light to him and to his sons for ever. [2Sam 7:12](#); [1Kgs 11:36](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Ps 132:17](#); [\[2Chr 23:3\]](#);

Edom and Libnah revolt

8 In his days the Edomites revolted from under the dominion of Judah, and made themselves a king. [2Kgs 8:20](#);

9 Then Jehoram went forth with his princes, and all his chariots with him: and he rose up by night, and smote the Edomites which compassed him in, and the captains of the chariots. [2Kgs 8:21](#);

10 So the Edomites revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day. The same time *also* did Libnah revolt from under his hand; because he had forsaken the YAHWEH Elohim of his fathers. [2Kgs 8:22](#);

11 Moreover he made high places in the mountains of Judah, and caused the inhabitants of Jerusalem to commit fornication, and compelled Judah *thereto*.

The prophecy of Elijah against him in writing

12 And there came a writing to him from Elijah the prophet, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of David thy father, Because you have not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat thy father, nor in the ways of Asa king of Judah,

13 But have walked in the way of the kings of Israel, and have made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to go a whoring, like to the whoredoms of the house of Ahab, and also have slain thy brethren of thy father's house, *which were* better than thyself:

14 Behold, with a great plague will the YAHWEH smite thy people, and thy children, and thy wives, and all thy goods:

15 And you shall *have* great sickness by disease of thy bowels, until thy bowels fall out by reason of the sickness day by day.

Philistines and Arabians oppress him

16 Moreover the YAHWEH stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines, and of the Arabians, that *were* near the Ethiopians: [\[Amos 1:6\]](#);

17 And they came up into Judah, and brake into it, and carried away all the substance that was found in the king's house, and his sons also, and his wives; so that there was never a son left him, save Jehoahaz, the youngest of his sons.

His incurable disease, infamous death, and burial

18 And after all this the YAHWEH smote him in his bowels with an incurable disease.

19 And it came to pass, that in process of time, after the end of two years, his bowels fell out by reason of his sickness: so he died of sore diseases. And his people made no burning for him, like the burning of his fathers. [\[2Kgs 8:24\]](#);

20 Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years, and departed without being desired. Howbeit they buried him in the city of David, but not in the sepulchers of the kings.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-TWO

Ahaziah succeeding, reigns wickedly

1 And the inhabitants of Jerusalem made Ahaziah his youngest son king in his stead: for the band of men that came with the Arabians to the camp had slain all the eldest. So Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah reigned. [2Kgs 8:24-25](#); [\[2Kgs 8:25\]](#);

2 Forty and two years old *was* Ahaziah when he began to reign, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Athaliah the daughter of Omri. [\[2Kgs 8:26\]](#);

3 He also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab: for his mother was his counsellor to do wickedly. [2Kgs 12:4];

4 Wherefore he did evil in the sight of the YAHWEH like the house of Ahab: for they were his counsellors after the death of his father to his destruction.

In his confederacy with Joram, the son of Ahab, he is slain by Jehu

5 He walked also after their counsel, and went with Jehoram the son of Ahab king of Israel to war against Hazael king of Syria at Ramothgilead: and the Syrians smote Joram. [2Kgs 8:28];

6 And he returned to be healed in Jezreel because of the wounds which were given him at Ramah, when he fought with Hazael king of Syria. And Azariah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Jehoram the son of Ahab at Jezreel, because he was sick. [2Kgs 8:29];

7 And the destruction of Ahaziah was of Elohim by coming to Joram: for when he was come, he went out with Jehoram against Jehu the son of Nimshi, whom the YAHWEH had anointed to cut off the house of Ahab. [2Kgs 9:3];

8 And it came to pass, that, when Jehu was executing judgment upon the house of Ahab, and found the princes of Judah, and the sons of the brethren of Ahaziah, that ministered to Ahaziah, he slew them. [2Kgs 10:14; [2Kgs 10:13]; [2Kgs 10:17]; [2Kgs 23:2];

9 And he sought Ahaziah: and they caught him, (for he was hid in Samaria,) and brought him to Jehu: and when they had slain him, they buried him: Because, said they, he *is* the son of Jehoshaphat, who sought the YAHWEH with all his heart. So the house of Ahaziah had no power to keep still the kingdom. [2Kgs 9:27];

Athaliah, destroying all the seed royal, save Joash, whom Jehoshabeath his aunt hid, usurps the kingdom

10 But when Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the seed royal of the house of Judah. [2Kgs 11:1];

11 But Jehoshabeath, the daughter of the king, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him from among the king's sons that were slain, and put him and his nurse in a bedchamber. So Jehoshabeath, the daughter of king Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest, (for she was the sister of Ahaziah,) hid him from Athaliah, so that she slew him not.

12 And he was with them hid in the house of Elohim six years: and Athaliah reigned over the land.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-THREE

Jehoiada, having set things in order, makes Joash king

1 And in the seventh year Jehoiada strengthened himself, and took the captains of hundreds, Azariah the son of Jeroham, and Ishmael the son of Jehohanan, and Azariah the son of Obed, and Maaseiah the son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat the son of Zichri, into covenant with him. [2Kgs 11:4];

2 And they went about in Judah, and gathered the Levites out of all the cities of Judah, and the chief of the fathers of Israel, and they came to Jerusalem.

3 And all the congregation made a covenant with the king in the house of Elohim. And he said unto them, Behold, the king's son shall reign, as the YAHWEH has said of the sons of David. [2Sam 7:13; 2Chr 21:7];

4 This *is* the thing that you shall do; A third part of you entering on the Sabbath, of the priests and of the Levites, *shall be* porters of the doors; [2Chr 11:5];

5 And a third part *shall be* at the king's house; and a third part at the gate of the foundation: and all the people *shall be* in the courts of the house of the YAHWEH.

6 But let none come into the house of the YAHWEH, save the priests, and they that minister of the Levites; they shall go in, for they *are* holy: but all the people shall keep the watch of the YAHWEH.

7 And the Levites shall compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand; and whosoever *else* cometh into the house, he shall be put to death: but be you with the king when he cometh in, and when he goes out.

8 So the Levites and all Judah did according to all things that Jehoiada the priest had commanded, and took every man his men that were to come in on the Sabbath, with them that were to go *out* on the Sabbath: for Jehoiada the priest dismissed not the courses. [2Kgs 11:9];

9 Moreover Jehoiada the priest delivered to the captains of hundreds spears, and bucklers, and shields, that *had been* king David's, which *were* in the house of Elohim.

10 And he set all the people, every man having his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the temple to the left side of the temple, along by the altar and the temple, by the king round about.

11 Then they brought out the king's son, and put upon him the crown, and *gave him* the testimony, and made him king. And Jehoiada and his sons anointed him, and said, Elohim save the king.

Athaliah is slain

12 Now when Athaliah heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people into the house of the YAHWEH:

13 And she looked, and, behold, the king stood at his pillar at the entering in, and the princes and the trumpets by the king: and all the people of the land rejoiced, and sounded with trumpets, also the singers with instruments of musick, and such as taught to sing praise. Then Athaliah rent her clothes, and said, Treason, Treason.

14 Then Jehoiada the priest brought out the captains of hundreds that were set over the host, and said unto them, Have her forth of the ranges: and whoso followeth her, let him be slain with the sword. For the priest said, Slay her not in the house of the YAHWEH.

15 So they laid hands on her; and when she was come to the entering of the horse gate by the king's house, they slew her there.

Jehoiada restores the worship of Elohim

16 And Jehoiada made a covenant between him, and between all the people, and between the king, that they should be the YAHWEH'S people. [2Kgs 11:17];

17 Then all the people went to the house of Baal, and brake it down, and brake his altars and his images in pieces, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. 2Kgs 11:18; Deut 13:9;

18 Also Jehoiada appointed the offices of the house of the YAHWEH by the hand of the priests the Levites, whom David had distributed in the house of the YAHWEH, to offer the burnt offerings of the YAHWEH, as *it is* written in the law of Moses, with rejoicing and with singing, *as it was ordained* by David. 1Chr 23:1-32; 1Chr 24:1-31; 1Chr 25:1-31; 1Chr 26:1-32; Lev 1:3;

19 And he set the porters at the gates of the house of the YAHWEH, that none *which was* unclean in any thing should enter in.

20 And he took the captains of hundreds, and the nobles, and the governors of the people, and all the people of the land, and brought down the king from the house of the YAHWEH: and they came through the high gate into the king's house, and set the king upon the throne of the kingdom.

21 And all the people of the land rejoiced: and the city was quiet, after that they had slain Athaliah with the sword.

Joash reigns well all the days of Jehoiada

1 Joash *was* seven years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Zibiah of Beersheba. [2Kgs 12:1](#);

2 And Joash did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH all the days of Jehoiada the priest.

3 And Jehoiada took for him two wives; and he begat sons and daughters.

He gives order for the repair of the temple

4 And it came to pass after this, *that* Joash was minded to repair the house of the YAHWEH.

5 And he gathered together the priests and the Levites, and said to them, Go out unto the cities of Judah, and gather of all Israel money to repair the house of your Elohim from year to year, and see that you hasten the matter. Howbeit the Levites hastened *it* not.

6 And the king called for Jehoiada the chief, and said unto him, Why have you not required of the Levites to bring in out of Judah and out of Jerusalem the collection, *according to the commandment* of Moses the servant of the YAHWEH, and of the congregation of Israel, for the tabernacle of witness? [Exod 30:11-13](#);

7 For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken up the house of Elohim; and also all the dedicated things of the house of the YAHWEH did they bestow upon Baalim.

8 And at the king's commandment they made a chest, and set it without at the gate of the house of the YAHWEH.

9 And they made a proclamation through Judah and Jerusalem, to bring in to the YAHWEH the collection *that* Moses the servant of Elohim *laid* upon Israel in the wilderness.

10 And all the princes and all the people rejoiced, and brought in, and cast into the chest, until they had made an end.

11 Now it came to pass, that at what time the chest was brought unto the king's office by the hand of the Levites, and when they saw that *there was* much money, the king's scribe and the high priest's officer came and emptied the chest, and took it, and carried it to his place again. Thus they did day by day, and gathered money in abundance.

12 And the king and Jehoiada gave it to such as did the work of the service of the house of the YAHWEH, and hired masons and carpenters to repair the house of the YAHWEH, and also such as wrought iron and brass to mend the house of the YAHWEH.

13 So the workmen wrought, and the work was perfected by them, and they set the house of Elohim in his state, and strengthened it.

14 And when they had finished *it*, they brought the rest of the money before the king and Jehoiada, whereof were made vessels for the house of the YAHWEH, *even* vessels to minister, and to offer *withal*, and spoons, and vessels of gold and silver. And they offered burnt offerings in the house of the YAHWEH continually all the days of Jehoiada.

Jehoiada's death and honourable burial

15 But Jehoiada waxed old, and was full of days when he died; a hundred and thirty years old *was he* when he died.

16 And they buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, both toward Elohim, and toward his house.

Joash, falling into idolatry, slays Zechariah the son of Jehoiada

17 Now after the death of Jehoiada came the princes of Judah, and made obeisance to the king. Then the king hearkened unto them.

18 And they left the house of the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, and served groves and idols: and wrath came upon Judah and Jerusalem for this their trespass.

19 Yet he sent prophets to them, to bring them again unto the YAHWEH; and they testified against them: but they would not give ear.

20 And the Spirit of Elohim came upon Zechariah the son of Jehoiada the priest, which stood above the people, and said unto them, Thus saith Elohim, Why transgress you the commandments of the YAHWEH, that you cannot prosper? because you have forsaken the YAHWEH, he has also forsaken you. [2Chr 15:2](#); [\[Neh 9:26\]](#);

21 And they conspired against him, and stoned him with stones at the commandment of the king in the court of the house of the YAHWEH. [Matt 23:35](#); [\[Matt 21:35\]](#); [\[Luke 11:51\]](#);

22 Thus Joash the king remembered not the kindness which Jehoiada his father had done to him, but slew his son. And when he died, he said, The YAHWEH look upon *it*, and require *it*.

Joash is spoiled by the Syrians, and slain by Zabad and Jehozabad

23 And it came to pass at the end of the year, *that* the host of Syria came up against him: and they came to Judah and Jerusalem, and destroyed all the princes of the people from among the people, and sent all the spoil of them unto the king of Damascus. [\[2Kgs 12:17\]](#);

24 For the army of the Syrians came with a small company of men, and the YAHWEH delivered a very great host into their hand, because they had forsaken the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers. So they executed judgment against Joash.

25 And when they were departed from him, (for they left him in great diseases,) his own servants conspired against him for the blood of the sons of Jehoiada the priest, and slew him on his bed, and he died: and they buried him in the city of David, but they buried him not in the sepulchers of the kings.

26 And these are they that conspired against him; Zabad the son of Shimeath an Ammonitess, and Jehozabad the son of Shimrith a Moabitess. [2Kgs 12:21](#);

Amaziah succeeds him

27 Now *concerning* his sons, and the greatness of the burdens *laid* upon him, and the repairing of the house of Elohim, behold, they *are* written in the story of the book of the kings. And Amaziah his son reigned in his stead.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-FIVE

Amaziah begins to reign well

1 Amaziah *was* twenty and five years old *when* he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Jehoaddan of Jerusalem. [2Kgs 14:1](#); [\[2Kgs 14:2\]](#);

2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, but not with a perfect heart.

He executes justice on the traitors

3 Now it came to pass, when the kingdom was established to him, that he slew his servants that had killed the king his father.

4 But he slew not their children, but *did as it is* written in the law in the book of Moses, where the YAHWEH commanded, saying, The fathers shall not die for the children, neither shall the children die for the fathers, but every man shall die for his own sin. [Deut 24:16](#); [2Kgs 14:6](#); [Jer 31:30](#); [Ezek 18:20](#); [\[Ezek 18:19\]](#);

Having hired an army of Israelites against the Edomites, at the word of a prophet dismisses them

5 Moreover Amaziah gathered Judah together, and made them captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, according to the houses of *their* fathers, throughout all Judah and Benjamin: and he

numbered them from twenty years old and above, and found them three hundred thousand choice *men, able* to go forth to war, that could handle spear and shield.

6 He hired also a hundred thousand mighty men of valour out of Israel for a hundred talents of silver.

7 But there came a man of Elohim to him, saying, O king, let not the army of Israel go with you; for the YAHWEH *is* not with Israel, *to wit, with* all the children of Ephraim.

8 But if you will go, do *it*, be strong for the battle: Elohim shall make you fall before the enemy: for Elohim has power to help, and to cast down.

9 And Amaziah said to the man of Elohim, But what shall we do for the hundred talents which I have given to the army of Israel? And the man of Elohim answered, The YAHWEH is able to give you much more than this.

10 Then Amaziah separated them, *to wit,* the army that was come to him out of Ephraim, to go home again: wherefore their anger was greatly kindled against Judah, and they returned home in great anger.

He overthrows the Edomites

11 And Amaziah strengthened himself, and led forth his people, and went to the valley of salt, and smote of the children of Seir ten thousand.

12 And *other* ten thousand *left* alive did the children of Judah carry away captive, and brought them unto the top of the rock, and cast them down from the top of the rock, that they all were broken in pieces.

The Israelites, discontented with their dismissal, spoil as they return home

13 But the soldiers of the army which Amaziah sent back, that they should not go with him to battle, fell upon the cities of Judah, from Samaria even unto Bethhoron, and smote three thousand of them, and took much spoil.

Amaziah, proud of his victory, serves the gods of Edom, and despises the admonitions of the prophet

14 Now it came to pass, after that Amaziah was come from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the children of Seir, and set them up *to be* his gods, and bowed down himself before them, and burned incense unto them.

15 Wherefore the anger of the YAHWEH was kindled against Amaziah, and he sent unto him a prophet, which said unto him, Why have you sought after the gods of the people, which could not deliver their own people out of thine hand?

16 And it came to pass, as he talked with him, that *the king* said unto him, are you made of the king's counsel? forbear; why should you be smitten? Then the prophet forbore, and said, I know that Elohim has determined to destroy you, because you have done this, and have not hearkened unto my counsel.

He provokes Joash to his overthrow

17 Then Amaziah king of Judah took advice, and sent to Joash, the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, Come, let us see one another in the face. [2Kgs 14:8](#);

18 And Joash king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, The thistle that *was* in Lebanon sent to the cedar that *was* in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to wife: and there passed by a wild beast that *was* in Lebanon, and trode down the thistle. [Judg 9:8](#);

19 You sayest, Lo, you have smitten the Edomites; and thine heart lifteth you up to boast: abide now at home; why should you meddle to *thine* hurt, that you should fall, *even* you, and Judah with you?

20 But Amaziah would not hear; for it *came* of Elohim, that he might deliver them into the hand *of their enemies*, because they sought after the gods of Edom.

21 So Joash the king of Israel went up; and they saw one another in the face, *both* he and Amaziah king of Judah, at Bethshemesh, which *belongeth* to Judah.

22 And Judah was put to the worse before Israel, and they fled every man to his tent.

23 And Joash the king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah, the son of Joash, the son of Jehoahaz, at Bethshemesh, and brought him to Jerusalem, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim to the corner gate, four hundred cubits. [2Chr 32:5](#);

24 And *he took* all the gold and the silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of Elohim with Obededom, and the treasures of the king's house, the hostages also, and returned to Samaria.

His reign

25 And Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah lived after the death of Joash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel fifteen years.

26 Now the rest of the acts of Amaziah, first and last, behold, *are* they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel? [2Kgs 14:18](#);

He is slain by conspiracy

27 Now after the time that Amaziah did turn away from following the YAHWEH they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem; and he fled to Lachish: but they sent to Lachish after him, and slew him there. [\[2Kgs 14:19\]](#);

28 And they brought him upon horses, and buried him with his fathers in the city of Judah.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-SIX

Uzziah succeeding, and reigning well in the days of Zechariah, prospers

1 Then all the people of Judah took Uzziah, who *was* sixteen years old, and made him king in the room of his father Amaziah. [2Kgs 14:21](#); [\[2Kgs 15:1\]](#);

2 He built Eloth, and restored it to Judah, after that the king slept with his fathers. [2Kgs 14:22](#);

3 Sixteen years old *was* Uzziah when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Jecoliah of Jerusalem. [2Kgs 15:2](#);

4 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that his father Amaziah did.

5 And he sought Elohim in the days of Zechariah, who had understanding in the visions of Elohim: and as long as he sought the YAHWEH, Elohim made him to prosper.

6 And he went forth and warred against the Philistines, and brake down the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of Ashdod, and built cities about Ashdod, and among the Philistines.

7 And Elohim helped him against the Philistines, and against the Arabians that dwelt in Gurbaal, and the Mehunims.

8 And the Ammonites gave gifts to Uzziah: and his name spread abroad *even* to the entering in of Egypt; for he strengthened *himself* exceedingly.

9 Moreover Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the corner gate, and at the valley gate, and at the turning *of the wall*, and fortified them.

10 Also he built towers in the desert, and digged many wells: for he had much cattle, both in the low country, and in the plains: husbandmen *also*, and vine dressers in the mountains, and in Carmel: for he loved husbandry.

11 Moreover Uzziah had a host of fighting men, that went out to war by bands, according to the number of their account by the hand of Jeiel the scribe and Maaseiah the ruler, under the hand of Hananiah, *one* of the king's captains.

12 The whole number of the chief of the fathers of the mighty men of valour *were* two thousand and six hundred.

13 And under their hand *was* an army, three hundred thousand and seven thousand and five hundred, that made war with mighty power, to help the king against the enemy.

14 And Uzziah prepared for them throughout all the host shields, and spears, and helmets, and habergeons, and bows, and slings *to cast* stones.

15 And he made in Jerusalem engines, invented by cunning men, to be on the towers and upon the bulwarks, to shoot arrows and great stones withal. And his name spread far abroad; for he was marvellously helped, till he was strong.

Waxing proud, he invades the priest's office, and is smitten with leprosy

16 But when he was strong, his heart was lifted up to *his* destruction: for he transgressed against the YAHWEH his Elohim, and went into the temple of the YAHWEH to burn incense upon the altar of incense. [\[Heb 5:4\];](#)

17 And Azariah the priest went in after him, and with him fourscore priests of the YAHWEH, *that were* valiant men:

18 And they withstood Uzziah the king, and said unto him, *It belongs* not unto you, Uzziah, to burn incense unto the YAHWEH, but to the priests the sons of Aaron, that are consecrated to burn incense: go out of the sanctuary; for you have trespassed; neither *shall it be* for thine honour from the YAHWEH Elohim.

19 Then Uzziah was wroth, and *had* a censer in his hand to burn incense: and while he was wroth with the priests, the leprosy even rose up in his forehead before the priests in the house of the YAHWEH, from beside the incense altar. [\[2Kgs 5:27\];](#)

20 And Azariah the chief priest, and all the priests, looked upon him, and, behold, he *was* leprous in his forehead, and they thrust him out from thence; yes, himself hasted also to go out, because the YAHWEH had smitten him.

21 And Uzziah the king was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a several house, *being* a leper; for he was cut off from the house of the YAHWEH: and Jotham his son *was* over the king's house, judging the people of the land. [2Kgs 15:5;](#)

He dies, and Jotham succeeds him

22 Now the rest of the acts of Uzziah, first and last, did Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, write.

23 So Uzziah slept with his fathers, and they buried him with his fathers in the field of the burial which *belonged* to the kings; for they said, He *is* a leper: and Jotham his son reigned in his stead.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-SEVEN

Jotham reigning well, prospers

1 Jotham *was* twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Jerushah, the daughter of Zadok. [2Kgs 15:33;](#)

2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that his father Uzziah did: howbeit he entered not into the temple of the YAHWEH. And the people did yet corruptly.

3 He built the high gate of the house of the YAHWEH, and on the wall of Ophel he built much.

4 Moreover he built cities in the mountains of Judah, and in the forests he built castles and towers.

He subdues the Ammonites

5 He fought also with the king of the Ammonites, and prevailed against them. And the children of Ammon gave him the same year a hundred talents of silver, and ten thousand measures of wheat, and ten thousand of barley. So much did the children of Ammon pay unto him, both the second year, and the third.

6 So Jotham became mighty, because he prepared his ways before the YAHWEH his Elohim.

His reign and death; Ahaz succeeds him

7 Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all his wars, and his ways, lo, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

8 He was five and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem.

9 And Jotham slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David: and Ahaz his son reigned in his stead.

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-EIGHT

Ahaz reigning very wickedly, is greatly afflicted by the Syrians

1 Ahaz *was* twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: but he did not *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, like David his father: [2Kgs 16:2](#); [\[2Kgs 16:1\]](#);

2 For he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and made also molten images for Baalim.

3 Moreover he burnt incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire, after the abominations of the heathen whom the YAHWEH had cast out before the children of Israel. [Deut 18:10](#); [2Kgs 21:6](#); [Jer 7:31](#); [Jer 19:5](#); [\[2Chr 33:6\]](#); [\[Ps 106:37\]](#);

4 He sacrificed also and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree.

5 Wherefore the YAHWEH his Elohim delivered him into the hand of the king of Syria; and they smote him, and carried away a great multitude of them captives, and brought *them* to Damascus. And he was also delivered into the hand of the king of Israel, who smote him with a great slaughter. [Isa 7:1](#);

Judah being captivated by the Israelites, is sent home by the counsel of Oded the prophet

6 For Pekah the son of Remaliah slew in Judah a hundred and twenty thousand in one day, *which were* all valiant men; because they had forsaken the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers. [\[2Chr 29:9\]](#);

7 And Zichri, a mighty man of Ephraim, slew Maaseiah the king's son, and Azrikam the governor of the house, and Elkanah *that was* next to the king.

8 And the children of Israel carried away captive of their brethren two hundred thousand, women, sons, and daughters, and took also away much spoil from them, and brought the spoil to Samaria.

9 But a prophet of the YAHWEH was there, whose name *was* Oded: and he went out before the host that came to Samaria, and said unto them, Behold, because the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers was wroth with Judah, he has delivered them into your hand, and you have slain them in a rage *that reacheth* up unto heaven.

10 And now you purpose to keep under the children of Judah and Jerusalem for bondmen and bondwomen unto you: *but are there* not with you, even with you, sins against the YAHWEH your Elohim?

11 Now hear me therefore, and deliver the captives again, which you have taken captive of your brethren: for the fierce wrath of the YAHWEH *is* upon you.

12 Then certain of the heads of the children of Ephraim, Azariah the son of Johanan, Berechiah the son of Meshillemoth, and Jehizkiah the son of Shallum, and Amasa the son of Hadlai, stood up against them that came from the war,

13 And said unto them, you shall not bring in the captives hither: for whereas we have offended against the YAHWEH *already*, you intend to add *more* to our sins and to our trespass: for our trespass is great, and *there is* fierce wrath against Israel.

14 So the armed men left the captives and the spoil before the princes and all the congregation.

15 And the men which were expressed by name rose up, and took the captives, and with the spoil clothed all that were naked among them, and arrayed them, and shod them, and gave them to eat and

to drink, and anointed them, and carried all the feeble of them upon asses, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palm trees, to their brethren: then they returned to Samaria.

Ahaz sending for aid to Assyria, is not helped thereby

16 At that time did king Ahaz send unto the kings of Assyria to help him.

17 For again the Edomites had come and smitten Judah, and carried away captives.

18 The Philistines also had invaded the cities of the low country, and of the south of Judah, and had taken Bethshemesh, and Ajalon, and Gederoth, and Shochu with the villages thereof, and Timnah with the villages thereof, Gimzo also and the villages thereof: and they dwelt there. [\[Ezek 16:27\]; \[Amos 1:6\];](#)

19 For the YAHWEH brought Judah low because of Ahaz king of Israel; for he made Judah naked, and transgressed sore against the YAHWEH.

20 And Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria came unto him, and distressed him, but strengthened him not.

21 For Ahaz took away a portion *out* of the house of the YAHWEH, and *out* of the house of the king, and of the princes, and gave *it* unto the king of Assyria: but he helped him not. [\[2Kgs 16:8\];](#)

In his distress he grows more idolatrous

22 And in the time of his distress did he trespass yet more against the YAHWEH: this *is that* king Ahaz. [\[Isa 1:5\];](#)

23 For he sacrificed unto the gods of Damascus, which smote him: and he said, Because the gods of the kings of Syria help them, *therefore* will I sacrifice to them, that they may help me. But they were the ruin of him, and of all Israel. [Judg 16:23; Hab 1:11;](#)

24 And Ahaz gathered together the vessels of the house of Elohim, and cut in pieces the vessels of the house of Elohim, and shut up the doors of the house of the YAHWEH, and he made him altars in every corner of Jerusalem. [\[2Chr 29:3\];](#)

25 And in every several city of Judah he made high places to burn incense unto other gods, and provoked to anger the YAHWEH Elohim of his fathers.

He dying, Hezekiah succeeds him

26 Now the rest of his acts and of all his ways, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

27 And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city, *even* in Jerusalem: but they brought him not into the sepulchers of the kings of Israel: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead. [\[2Kgs 18:1\];](#)

SECOND CHRONICLES TWENTY-NINE

Hezekiah's good reign

1 Hezekiah began to reign *when he was* five and twenty years old, and he reigned nine and twenty years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. [2Kgs 18:1;](#)

2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, according to all that David his father had done.

He restores religion

3 He in the first year of his reign, in the first month, opened the doors of the house of the YAHWEH, and repaired them. [2Chr 28:24;](#)

4 And he brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the east street,

He exhorts the Levites

5 And said unto them, Hear me, you Levites, sanctify now yourselves, and sanctify the house of the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers, and carry forth the filthiness out of the holy *place*.
6 For our fathers have trespassed, and done *that which was* evil in the eyes of the YAHWEH our Elohim, and have forsaken him, and have turned away their faces from the habitation of the YAHWEH, and turned *their* backs.
7 Also they have shut up the doors of the porch, and put out the lamps, and have not burned incense nor offered burnt offerings in the holy *place* unto the Elohim of Israel.
8 Wherefore the wrath of the YAHWEH was upon Judah and Jerusalem, and he has delivered them to trouble, to astonishment, and to hissing, as you see with your eyes.
9 For, lo, our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons and our daughters and our wives *are* in captivity for this. [2Chr 28:6](#);
10 Now *it is* in mine heart to make a covenant with the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, that his fierce wrath may turn away from us.
11 My sons, be not now negligent: for the YAHWEH has chosen you to stand before him, to serve him, and that you should minister unto him, and burn incense. [Exod 28:1](#); [Num 3:6](#); [Num 8:14](#); [Num 18:2](#);

They sanctify themselves, and cleanse the house of Elohim

12 Then the Levites arose, Mahas the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah, of the sons of the Kohasites: and of the sons of Merari, Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehalelel: and of the Gershonites; Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah:
13 And of the sons of Elizaphan; Shimri, and Jeiel: and of the sons of Asaph; Zechariah, and Mattaniah:
14 And of the sons of Heman; Jehiel, and Shimei: and of the sons of Jeduthun; Shemaiah, and Uzziel.
15 And they gathered their brethren, and sanctified themselves, and came, according to the commandment of the king, by the words of the YAHWEH, to cleanse the house of the YAHWEH.
16 And the priests went into the inner part of the house of the YAHWEH, to cleanse *it*, and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the temple of the YAHWEH into the court of the house of the YAHWEH. And the Levites took *it*, to carry *it* out abroad into the brook Kidron.
17 Now they began on the first *day* of the first month to sanctify, and on the eighth day of the month came they to the porch of the YAHWEH: so they sanctified the house of the YAHWEH in eight days; and in the sixteenth day of the first month they made an end.
18 Then they went in to Hezekiah the king, and said, We have cleansed all the house of the YAHWEH, and the altar of burnt offering, with all the vessels thereof, and the showbread table, with all the vessels thereof.
19 Moreover all the vessels, which king Ahaz in his reign did cast away in his transgression, have we prepared and sanctified, and, behold, they *are* before the altar of the YAHWEH.

Hezekiah offers solemn sacrifices, wherein the Levites are more forward than the priests

20 Then Hezekiah the king rose early, and gathered the rulers of the city, and went up to the house of the YAHWEH.
21 And they brought seven bullocks, and seven rams, and seven lambs, and seven he goats, for a sin offering for the kingdom, and for the sanctuary, and for Judah. And he commanded the priests the sons of Aaron to offer *them* on the altar of the YAHWEH. [Lev 4:14](#);
22 So they killed the bullocks, and the priests received the blood, and sprinkled *it* on the altar: likewise, when they had killed the rams, they sprinkled the blood upon the altar: they killed also the lambs, and they sprinkled the blood upon the altar. [Lev 8:14-15](#); [Heb 9:21](#);

23 And they brought forth the he goats *for* the sin offering before the king and the congregation; and they laid their hands upon them: [Lev 4:15](#);

24 And the priests killed them, and they made reconciliation with their blood upon the altar, to make an atonement for all Israel: for the king commanded *that* the burnt offering and the sin offering *should be made* for all Israel.

25 And he set the Levites in the house of the YAHWEH with cymbals, with psalteries, and with harps, according to the commandment of David, and of Gad the king's seer, and Nathan the prophet: for *so was* the commandment of the YAHWEH by his prophets. [1Chr 16:4](#); [1Chr 25:6](#); [1Chr 6:31](#); [1Chr 23:5](#); [1Chr 25:1](#); [2Chr 8:14](#);

26 And the Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets.

27 And Hezekiah commanded to offer the burnt offering upon the altar. And when the burnt offering began, the song of the YAHWEH began *also* with the trumpets, and with the instruments *ordained* by David king of Israel.

28 And all the congregation worshipped, and the singers sang, and the trumpeters sounded: *and all this continued* until the burnt offering was finished.

29 And when they had made an end of offering, the king and all that were present with him bowed themselves, and worshipped.

30 Moreover Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praise unto the YAHWEH with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.

31 Then Hezekiah answered and said, Now you have consecrated yourselves unto the YAHWEH, come near and bring sacrifices and thank offerings into the house of the YAHWEH. And the congregation brought in sacrifices and thank offerings; and as many as were of a free heart burnt offerings.

32 And the number of the burnt offerings, which the congregation brought, was threescore and ten bullocks, a hundred rams, *and* two hundred lambs: all these *were* for a burnt offering to the YAHWEH.

33 And the consecrated things *were* six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep.

34 But the priests were too few, so that they could not flay all the burnt offerings: wherefore their brethren the Levites did help them, till the work was ended, and until the *other* priests had sanctified themselves: for the Levites *were* more upright in heart to sanctify themselves than the priests.

35 And also the burnt offerings *were* in abundance, with the fat of the peace offerings, and the drink offerings for *every* burnt offering. So the service of the house of the YAHWEH was set in order.

36 And Hezekiah rejoiced, and all the people, that Elohim had prepared the people: for the thing was *done* suddenly.

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY

Hezekiah proclaims a solemn passover on the second month for Judah and Israel

1 And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and wrote letters also to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of the YAHWEH at Jerusalem, to keep the passover unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.

2 For the king had taken counsel, and his princes, and all the congregation in Jerusalem, to keep the passover in the second month. [Num 9:10](#);

3 For they could not keep it at that time, because the priests had not sanctified themselves sufficiently, neither had the people gathered themselves together to Jerusalem.

4 And the thing pleased the king and all the congregation.

5 So they established a decree to make proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beersheba even to Dan, that they should come to keep the passover unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel at Jerusalem: for they had not done *it* of a long *time in such sort* as it was written.

6 So the posts went with the letters from the king and his princes throughout all Israel and Judah, and according to the commandment of the king, saying, you children of Israel, turn again unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, and he will return to the remnant of you, that are escaped out of the hand of the kings of Assyria.

7 And be not you like your fathers, and like your brethren, which trespassed against the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers, *who* therefore gave them up to desolation, as you see.

8 Now be you not stiffnecked, as your fathers *were, but* yield yourselves unto the YAHWEH, and enter into his sanctuary, which he has sanctified for ever: and serve the YAHWEH your Elohim, that the fierceness of his wrath may turn away from you.

9 For if you turn again unto the YAHWEH, your brethren and your children *shall find* compassion before them that lead them captive, so that they shall come again into this land: for the YAHWEH your Elohim *is* gracious and merciful, and will not turn away *his* face from you, if you return unto him. [Exod 34:6](#);

10 So the posts passed from city to city through the country of Ephraim and Manasseh even unto Zebulun: but they laughed them to scorn, and mocked them.

11 Nevertheless various men of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves, and came to Jerusalem.

12 Also in Judah the hand of Elohim was to give them one heart to do the commandment of the king and of the princes, by the word of the YAHWEH.

The assembly, having destroyed the altars of idolatry, keep the feast fourteen days

13 And there assembled at Jerusalem much people to keep the feast of unleavened bread in the second month, a very great congregation.

14 And they arose and took away the altars that *were* in Jerusalem, and all the altars for incense took they away, and cast *them* into the brook Kidron.

15 Then they killed the passover on the fourteenth *day* of the second month: and the priests and the Levites were ashamed, and sanctified themselves, and brought in the burnt offerings into the house of the YAHWEH.

16 And they stood in their place after their manner, according to the law of Moses the man of Elohim: the priests sprinkled the blood, *which they received* of the hand of the Levites.

17 For *there were* many in the congregation that were not sanctified: therefore the Levites had the charge of the killing of the passovers for every one *that was* not clean, to sanctify *them* unto the YAHWEH.

18 For a multitude of the people, *even* many of Ephraim, and Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun, had not cleansed themselves, yet did they eat the passover otherwise than it was written. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying, The good YAHWEH pardon every one

19 *That* prepareth his heart to seek Elohim, the YAHWEH Elohim of his fathers, though *he be not cleansed* according to the purification of the sanctuary.

20 And the YAHWEH hearkened to Hezekiah, and healed the people.

21 And the children of Israel that were present at Jerusalem kept the feast of unleavened bread seven days with great gladness: and the Levites and the priests praised the YAHWEH day by day, *singing* with loud instruments unto the YAHWEH.

22 And Hezekiah spoke comfortably unto all the Levites that taught the good knowledge of the YAHWEH: and they did eat throughout the feast seven days, offering peace offerings, and making confession to the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers.

23 And the whole assembly took counsel to keep other seven days: and they kept *other* seven days with gladness.

24 For Hezekiah king of Judah did give to the congregation a thousand bullocks and seven thousand sheep; and the princes gave to the congregation a thousand bullocks and ten thousand sheep: and a great number of priests sanctified themselves. [2Chr 35:7](#);

25 And all the congregation of Judah, with the priests and the Levites, and all the congregation that came out of Israel, and the strangers that came out of the land of Israel, and that dwelt in Judah, rejoiced.

26 So there was great joy in Jerusalem: for since the time of Solomon the son of David king of Israel *there was* not the like in Jerusalem.

The priests and Levites bless the people

27 Then the priests the Levites arose and blessed the people: and their voice was heard, and their prayer came *up* to his holy dwelling place, *even* unto heaven.

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY-ONE

The people are forward in destroying idolatry

1 Now when all this was finished, all Israel that were present went out to the cities of Judah, and brake the images in pieces, and cut down the groves, and threw down the high places and the altars out of all Judah and Benjamin, in Ephraim also and Manasseh, until they had utterly destroyed them all. Then all the children of Israel returned, every man to his possession, into their own cities. [2Kgs 18:4](#); [\[2Chr 33:3\]](#);

Hezekiah orders the courses of the priests and Levites, and provides for their work and maintenance

2 And Hezekiah appointed the courses of the priests and the Levites after their courses, every man according to his service, the priests and Levites for burnt offerings and for peace offerings, to minister, and to give thanks, and to praise in the gates of the tents of the YAHWEH.

3 *He appointed* also the king's portion of his substance for the burnt offerings, *to wit*, for the morning and between the evenings burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the Sabbaths, and for the new moons, and for the set feasts, as *it is* written in the law of the YAHWEH. [Num 28:1-31](#); [Num 29:1-40](#);

4 Moreover he commanded the people that dwelt in Jerusalem to give the portion of the priests and the Levites, that they might be encouraged in the law of the YAHWEH.

The people's forwardness in offerings and tithes

5 And as soon as the commandment came abroad, the children of Israel brought in abundance the firstfruits of corn, wine, and oil, and honey, and of all the increase of the field; and the tithe of all *things* brought they in abundantly. [\[Heb 7:5\]](#);

6 And *concerning* the children of Israel and Judah, that dwelt in the cities of Judah, they also brought in the tithe of oxen and sheep, and the tithe of holy things which were consecrated unto the YAHWEH their Elohim, and laid *them* by heaps.

7 In the third month they began to lay the foundation of the heaps, and finished *them* in the seventh month.

8 And when Hezekiah and the princes came and saw the heaps, they blessed the YAHWEH, and his people Israel.

9 Then Hezekiah questioned with the priests and the Levites concerning the heaps.

10 And Azariah the chief priest of the house of Zadok answered him, and said, Since *the people* began to bring the offerings into the house of the YAHWEH, we have had enough to eat, and have left plenty: for the YAHWEH has blessed his people; and that which is left *is* this great store.

Hezekiah appoints officers to dispose of the tithes

11 Then Hezekiah commanded to prepare chambers in the house of the YAHWEH; and they prepared *them*,

12 And brought in the offerings and the tithes and the dedicated *things* faithfully: over which Cononiah the Levite *was* ruler, and Shimei his brother *was* the next.

13 And Jehiel, and Azaziah, and Nahas, and Asahel, and Jerimoth, and Jozabad, and Eliel, and Ismachiah, and Mahas, and Benaiah, *were* overseers under the hand of Cononiah and Shimei his brother, at the commandment of Hezekiah the king, and Azariah the ruler of the house of Elohim.

14 And Kore the son of Imnah the Levite, the porter toward the east, *was* over the freewill offerings of Elohim, to distribute the oblations of the YAHWEH, and the most holy things.

15 And next him *were* Eden, and Miniamin, and Jeshua, and Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests, in *their* set office, to give to their brethren by courses, as well to the great as to the small: [Josh 21:9](#);

16 Beside their genealogy of males, from three years old and upward, *even* unto every one that entereth into the house of the YAHWEH, his daily portion for their service in their charges according to their courses;

17 Both to the genealogy of the priests by the house of their fathers, and the Levites from twenty years old and upward, in their charges by their courses; [1Chr 23:27](#);

18 And to the genealogy of all their little ones, their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, through all the congregation: for in their set office they sanctified themselves in holiness:

19 Also of the sons of Aaron the priests, *which were* in the fields of the suburbs of their cities, in every several city, the men that were expressed by name, to give portions to all the males among the priests, and to all that were reckoned by genealogies among the Levites.

The sincerity of Hezekiah

20 And thus did Hezekiah throughout all Judah, and wrought *that which was* good and right and truth before the YAHWEH his Elohim.

21 And in every work that he began in the service of the house of Elohim, and in the law, and in the commandments, to seek his Elohim, he did *it* with all his heart, and prospered.

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY-TWO

Sennacherib invading Judah, Hezekiah fortifies himself, and encourages his people

1 After these things, and the establishment thereof, Sennacherib king of Assyria came, and entered into Judah, and encamped against the fenced cities, and thought to win them for himself. [2Kgs 18:13](#); [Isa 36:1](#);

2 And when Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib was come, and that he was purposed to fight against Jerusalem,

3 He took counsel with his princes and his mighty men to stop the waters of the fountains which *were* without the city: and they did help him.

4 So there was gathered much people together, who stopped all the fountains, and the brook that ran through the midst of the land, saying, Why should the kings of Assyria come, and find much water?

5 Also he strengthened himself, and built up all the wall that was broken, and raised *it* up to the towers, and another wall without, and repaired Millo *in* the city of David, and made darts and shields in abundance. [\[2Chr 25:23\]](#);

6 And he set captains of war over the people, and gathered them together to him in the street of the gate of the city, and spoke comfortably to them, saying,
7 Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that *is* with him: for *there be* more with us than with him: [2Kgs 6:16](#);
8 With him *is* an arm of flesh; but with us *is* the YAHWEH our Elohim to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. [Jer 17:5](#); [1John 4:4](#);

Against the blasphemies of Sennacherib, Hezekiah and Isaiah pray

9 After this did Sennacherib king of Assyria send his servants to Jerusalem, (but he *himself laid siege* against Lachish, and all his power with him,) unto Hezekiah king of Judah, and unto all Judah that *were* at Jerusalem, saying, [2Kgs 18:17](#);

10 Thus saith Sennacherib king of Assyria, Whereon do you trust, that you abide in the siege in Jerusalem?

11 Does not Hezekiah persuade you to give over yourselves to die by famine and by thirst, saying, The YAHWEH our Elohim shall deliver us out of the hand of the king of Assyria? [2Kgs 18:30](#);

12 Has not the same Hezekiah taken away his high places and his altars, and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, you shall worship before one altar, and burn incense upon it? [2Kgs 18:22](#); [\[2Chr 33:3\]](#);

13 Know you not what I and my fathers have done unto all the people of *other* lands? were the gods of the nations of those lands any ways able to deliver their lands out of mine hand?

14 Who *was there* among all the gods of those nations that my fathers utterly destroyed, that could deliver his people out of mine hand, that your Elohim should be able to deliver you out of mine hand?

15 Now therefore let not Hezekiah deceive you, nor persuade you on this manner, neither yet believe him: for no god of any nation or kingdom was able to deliver his people out of mine hand, and out of the hand of my fathers: how much less shall your Elohim deliver you out of mine hand? [2Kgs 18:30](#);

16 And his servants spoke yet *more* against the YAHWEH Elohim, and against his servant Hezekiah. [2Kgs 19:10](#);

17 He wrote also letters to rail on the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, and to speak against him, saying, As the gods of the nations of *other* lands have not delivered their people out of mine hand, so shall not the Elohim of Hezekiah deliver his people out of mine hand. [2Kgs 19:14](#); [2Kgs 19:16](#);

18 Then they cried with a loud voice in the Jews' speech unto the people of Jerusalem that *were* on the wall, to frighten them, and to trouble them; that they might take the city. [2Kgs 18:26](#); [2Kgs 18:28](#);

19 And they spoke against the Elohim of Jerusalem, as against the gods of the people of the earth, *which were* the work of the hands of man.

20 And for this *cause* Hezekiah the king, and the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz, prayed and cried to heaven. [2Kgs 19:15](#);

An angel destroys the host of the Assyrians

21 And the YAHWEH sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. [2Kgs 19:35](#); [2Kgs 19:37](#);

22 Thus the YAHWEH saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all *other*, and guided them on every side.

23 And many brought gifts unto the YAHWEH to Jerusalem, and presents to Hezekiah king of Judah: so that he was magnified in the sight of all nations from thenceforth. [\[Ps 68:29\]](#);

Hezekiah praying in his sickness, Elohim gives him a sign of recovery

24 In those days Hezekiah was sick to the death, and prayed unto the YAHWEH: and he spoke unto him, and he gave him a sign. [2Kgs 20:1](#); [Isa 38:1](#);

He waxing proud, is humbled by Elohim

25 But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit *done* unto him; for his heart was lifted up: therefore there was wrath upon him, and upon Judah and Jerusalem. [\[Ps 131:1\]](#);

26 Notwithstanding Hezekiah humbled himself for the pride of his heart, *both* he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of the YAHWEH came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah. [2Kgs 20:19](#);

His wealth and works

27 And Hezekiah had exceeding much riches and honour: and he made himself treasuries for silver, and for gold, and for precious stones, and for spices, and for shields, and for all manner of pleasant jewels;

28 Storehouses also for the increase of corn, and wine, and oil; and stalls for all manner of beasts, and cotes for flocks.

29 Moreover he provided him cities, and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance: for Elohim had given him substance very much.

30 This same Hezekiah also stopped the upper watercourse of Gihon, and brought it straight down to the west side of the city of David. And Hezekiah prospered in all his works.

His error in the ambassador of Babylon

31 Howbeit in *the business* of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent unto him to enquire of the wonder that was *done* in the land, Elohim left him, to try him, that he might know all *that was* in his heart.

He dying, Manasseh succeeds him

32 Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his goodness, behold, they *are* written in the vision of Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, *and* in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

33 And Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the chiefest of the sepulchres of the sons of David: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem did him honour at his death. And Manasseh his son reigned in his stead. [2Kgs 20:21](#);

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY-THREE

Manasseh's wicked reign

1 Manasseh *was* twelve years old when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem: [\[2Kgs 21:1\]](#);

2 But did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, like unto the abominations of the heathen, whom the YAHWEH had cast out before the children of Israel.

He sets up idolatry, and will not be admonished

3 For he built again the high places which Hezekiah his father had broken down, and he reared up altars for Baalim, and made groves, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them. [2Kgs 18:4](#); [2Chr 31:1](#); [2Chr 32:12](#);

4 Also he built altars in the house of the YAHWEH, whereof the YAHWEH had said, In Jerusalem shall my name be for ever. [2Kgs 21:4](#); [Deut 12:5](#); [Deut 12:11](#); [2Sam 7:13](#); [1Kgs 8:29](#); [1Kgs 9:3](#); [2Chr 7:16](#); [Ps 132:13-14](#); [Jer 32:34](#);

5 And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of the YAHWEH.

6 And he caused his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom: also he observed times, and used enchantments, and used witchcraft, and dealt with a familiar spirit, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, to provoke him to anger. [Lev 18:21](#); [Deut 18:10](#); [2Kgs 16:3](#); [2Chr 28:3](#); [\[Ps 106:37\]](#);

7 And he set a carved image, the idol which he had made, in the house of Elohim, of which Elohim had said to David and to Solomon his son, In this house, and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen before all the tribes of Israel, will I put my name for ever:

8 Neither will I any more remove the foot of Israel from out of the land which I have appointed for your fathers; so that they will take heed to do all that I have commanded them, according to the whole law and the statutes and the ordinances by the hand of Moses.

9 So Manasseh made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to err, *and* to do worse than the heathen, whom the YAHWEH had destroyed before the children of Israel.

10 And the YAHWEH spoke to Manasseh, and to his people: but they would not hearken.

He is carried into Babylon

11 Wherefore the YAHWEH brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon. [Deut 28:36](#); [Job 36:8](#);

Upon his prayer to Elohim he is released and puts down idolatry

12 And when he was in affliction, he besought the YAHWEH his Elohim, and humbled himself greatly before the Elohim of his fathers, [\[2Chr 15:2\]](#);

13 And prayed unto him: and he was intreated of him, and heard his supplication, and brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that the YAHWEH he *was* Elohim.

14 Now after this he built a wall without the city of David, on the west side of Gihon, in the valley, even to the entering in at the fish gate, and compassed about Ophel, and raised it up a very great height, and put captains of war in all the fenced cities of Judah.

15 And he took away the strange gods, and the idol out of the house of the YAHWEH, and all the altars that he had built in the mount of the house of the YAHWEH, and in Jerusalem, and cast *them* out of the city.

16 And he repaired the altar of the YAHWEH, and sacrificed thereon peace offerings and thank offerings, and commanded Judah to serve the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.

17 Nevertheless the people did sacrifice still in the high places, yet unto the YAHWEH their Elohim only.

His acts

18 Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and his prayer unto his Elohim, and the words of the seers that spoke to him in the name of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, behold, they *are written* in the book of the kings of Israel.

19 His prayer also, and *how Elohim* was intreated of him, and all his sin, and his trespass, and the places wherein he built high places, and set up groves and graven images, before he was humbled: behold, they *are written* among the sayings of the seers.

He dying, Amon succeeds him

20 So Manasseh slept with his fathers, and they buried him in his own house: and Amon his son reigned in his stead. [\[2Kgs 21:18\]](#);

who is slain by his servants

21 Amon *was* two and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned two years in Jerusalem. [2Kgs 21:19](#);

22 But he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH, as did Manasseh his father: for Amon sacrificed unto all the carved images which Manasseh his father had made, and served them;

23 And humbled not himself before the YAHWEH, as Manasseh his father had humbled himself; but Amon trespassed more and more.

24 And his servants conspired against him, and slew him in his own house.

The murderers being slain, Josiah succeeds him

25 But the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead.

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY-FOUR

Josiah's good reign

1 Josiah *was* eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem one and thirty years. [2Kgs 22:1]; [Jer 1:2];

2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the YAHWEH, and walked in the ways of David his father, and declined *neither* to the right hand, nor to the left.

He destroys idolatry

3 For in the eighth year of his reign, while he was yet young, he began to seek after the Elohim of David his father: and in the twelfth year he began to purge Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images. 1Kgs 13:2;

4 And they brake down the altars of Baalim in his presence; and the images, that *were* on high above them, he cut down; and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images, he brake in pieces, and made dust *of them*, and strowed *it* upon the graves of them that had sacrificed unto them.

5 And he burnt the bones of the priests upon their altars, and cleansed Judah and Jerusalem.

6 And *so did he* in the cities of Manasseh, and Ephraim, and Simeon, even unto Naphtali, with their mattocks round about. [2Kgs 23:19];

7 And when he had broken down the altars and the groves, and had beaten the graven images into powder, and cut down all the idols throughout all the land of Israel, he returned to Jerusalem. [Lev 26:30];

He takes order for the repair of the temple

8 Now in the eighteenth year of his reign, when he had purged the land, and the house, he sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, and Maaseiah the governor of the city, and Joah the son of Joahaz the recorder, to repair the house of the YAHWEH his Elohim. 2Kgs 22:3;

9 And when they came to Hilkiah the high priest, they delivered the money that was brought into the house of Elohim, which the Levites that kept the doors had gathered of the hand of Manasseh and Ephraim, and of all the remnant of Israel, and of all Judah and Benjamin; and they returned to Jerusalem.

10 And they put *it* in the hand of the workmen that had the oversight of the house of the YAHWEH, and they gave it to the workmen that wrought in the house of the YAHWEH, to repair and amend the house:

11 Even to the craftsmen and builders gave they *it*, to buy hewn stone, and timber for couplings, and to floor the houses which the kings of Judah had destroyed. 2Kgs 22:6;

12 And the men did the work faithfully: and the overseers of them *were* Jahas and Obadiah, the Levites, of the sons of Merari; and Zechariah and Meshullam, of the sons of the Kohasites, to set *it* forward; and *other of* the Levites, all that could skill of instruments of musick.

13 Also *they were* over the bearers of burdens, and *were* overseers of all that wrought the work in any manner of service: and of the Levites *there were* scribes, and officers, and porters.

Hilkiah, having found a book of the law, Josiah sends to Huldah to enquire of the Lord

14 And when they brought out the money that was brought into the house of the YAHWEH, Hilkiah the priest found a book of the law of the YAHWEH *given* by Moses.

15 And Hilkiah answered and said to Shaphan the scribe, I have found the book of the law in the house of the YAHWEH. And Hilkiah delivered the book to Shaphan.

16 And Shaphan carried the book to the king, and brought the king word back again, saying, All that was committed to thy servants, they do *it*.

17 And they have gathered together the money that was found in the house of the YAHWEH, and have delivered it into the hand of the overseers, and to the hand of the workmen.

18 Then Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, Hilkiah the priest has given me a book. And Shaphan read it before the king.

19 And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the law, that he rent his clothes.

20 And the king commanded Hilkiah, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Abdon the son of Micah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah a servant of the king's, saying,

21 Go, enquire of the YAHWEH for me, and for them that are left in Israel and in Judah, concerning the words of the book that is found: for great *is* the wrath of the YAHWEH that is poured out upon us, because our fathers have not kept the word of the YAHWEH, to do after all that is written in this book.

22 And Hilkiah, and *they* that the king *had appointed*, went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvath, the son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe; (now she dwelt in Jerusalem in the Mishneh district) and they spoke to her to that *effect*.

Huldah prophesies the destruction of Jerusalem, but respite thereof in Josiah's time

23 And she answered them, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Tell you the man that sent you to me,

24 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, *even* all the curses that are written in the book which they have read before the king of Judah:

25 Because they have forsaken me, and have burned incense unto other gods, that they might provoke me to anger with all the works of their hands; therefore my wrath shall be poured out upon this place, and shall not be quenched.

26 And as for the king of Judah, who sent you to enquire of the YAHWEH, so shall you say unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel *concerning* the words which you have heard;

27 Because thine heart was tender, and you didst humble thyself before Elohim, when you hearest his words against this place, and against the inhabitants thereof, and humbledst thyself before me, and didst rend thy clothes, and weep before me; I have even heard you also, saith the YAHWEH.

28 Behold, I will gather you to thy fathers, and you shall be gathered to thy grave in peace, neither shall thine eyes see all the evil that I will bring upon this place, and upon the inhabitants of the same. So they brought the king word again.

Josiah, causing it to be read in a solemn assembly, renews the covenant with Elohim

29 Then the king sent and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. [2Kgs 23:1](#);

30 And the king went up into the house of the YAHWEH, and all the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, and the Levites, and all the people, great and small: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant that was found in the house of the YAHWEH.

31 And the king stood in his place, and made a covenant before the YAHWEH, to walk after the YAHWEH, and to keep his commandments, and his testimonies, and his statutes, with all his heart, and with all his being, to perform the words of the covenant which are written in this book. [Josh 24:25](#);

32 And he caused all that were present in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand *to it*. And the inhabitants of Jerusalem did according to the covenant of Elohim, the Elohim of their fathers.

33 And Josiah took away all the abominations out of all the countries that *pertained* to the children of Israel, and made all that were present in Israel to serve, *even* to serve the YAHWEH their Elohim. *And* all his days they departed not from following the YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers.

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY-FIVE

Josiah keeps a most solemn passover

1 Moreover Josiah kept a passover unto the YAHWEH in Jerusalem: and they killed the passover on the fourteenth *day* of the first month. [2Kgs 23:21](#);

2 And he set the priests in their charges, and encouraged them to the service of the house of the YAHWEH,

3 And said unto the Levites that taught all Israel, which were holy unto the YAHWEH, Put the holy ark in the house which Solomon the son of David king of Israel did build; *it shall* not *be* a burden upon *your* shoulders: serve now the YAHWEH your Elohim, and his people Israel,

4 And prepare *yourselves* by the houses of your fathers, after your courses, according to the writing of David king of Israel, and according to the writing of Solomon his son. [1Chr 23:1-32](#); [1Chr 24:1-31](#); [1Chr 25:1-31](#); [1Chr 26:1-32](#);

5 And stand in the holy *place* according to the divisions of the families of the fathers of your brethren the people, and *after* the division of the families of the Levites.

6 So kill the passover, and sanctify yourselves, and prepare your brethren, that *they* may do according to the word of the YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

7 And Josiah gave to the people, of the flock, lambs and kids, all for the passover offerings, for all that were present, to the number of thirty thousand, and three thousand bullocks: these *were* of the king's substance. [2Chr 30:24](#);

8 And his princes gave willingly unto the people, to the priests, and to the Levites: Hilkiah and Zechariah and Jehiel, rulers of the house of Elohim, gave unto the priests for the passover offerings two thousand and six hundred *small cattle*, and three hundred oxen.

9 Conaniah also, and Shemaiah and Nethaneel, his brethren, and Hashabiah and Jeiel and Jozabad, chief of the Levites, gave unto the Levites for passover offerings five thousand *small cattle*, and five hundred oxen.

10 So the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their place, and the Levites in their courses, according to the king's commandment.

11 And they killed the passover, and the priests sprinkled *the blood* from their hands, and the Levites flayed *them*.

12 And they removed the burnt offerings, that they might give according to the divisions of the families of the people, to offer unto the YAHWEH, as *it is* written in the book of Moses. And so *did they* with the oxen.

13 And they roasted the passover with fire according to the ordinance: but the *other* holy *offerings* sod they in pots, and in caldrons, and in pans, and divided *them* speedily among all the people. [Exod 12:8-9](#);

14 And afterward they made ready for themselves, and for the priests: because the priests the sons of Aaron *were busied* in offering of burnt offerings and the fat until night; therefore the Levites prepared for themselves, and for the priests the sons of Aaron.

15 And the singers the sons of Asaph *were* in their place, according to the commandment of David, and Asaph, and Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer; and the porters *waited* at every gate; they might not depart from their service; for their brethren the Levites prepared for them.

16 So all the service of the YAHWEH was prepared the same day, to keep the passover, and to offer burnt offerings upon the altar of the YAHWEH, according to the commandment of king Josiah.

17 And the children of Israel that were present kept the passover at that time, and the feast of unleavened bread seven days.

18 And there was no passover like to that kept in Israel from the days of Samuel the prophet; neither did all the kings of Israel keep such a passover as Josiah kept, and the priests, and the Levites, and all Judah and Israel that were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

19 In the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah was this passover kept. [2Kgs 23:23](#);

He provoking Pharaoh-necho, is slain at Megiddo

20 After all this, when Josiah had prepared the temple, Necho king of Egypt came up to fight against Carchemish by Euphrates: and Josiah went out against him. [2Kgs 23:29](#);

21 But he sent ambassadors to him, saying, What have I to do with you, you king of Judah? *I come* not against you this day, but against the house wherewith I have war: for Elohim commanded me to make haste: forbear you from *meddling with* Elohim, who *is* with me, that he destroy you not.

22 Nevertheless Josiah would not turn his face from him, but disguised himself, that he might fight with him, and hearkened not unto the words of Necho from the mouth of Elohim, and came to fight in the valley of Megiddo. [\[Zech 12:11\]](#);

23 And the archers shot at king Josiah; and the king said to his servants, Have me away; for I am sore wounded.

24 His servants therefore took him out of that chariot, and put him in the second chariot that he had; and they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died, and was buried in *one of* the sepulchers of his fathers. And all Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah. [\[Zech 12:11\]](#);

Lamentations for Josiah

25 And Jeremiah lamented for Josiah: and all the singing men and the singing women spoke of Josiah in their lamentations to this day, and made them an ordinance in Israel: and, behold, they *are* written in the lamentations.

26 Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and his goodness, according to *that which was* written in the law of the YAHWEH,

27 And his deeds, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

SECOND CHRONICLES THIRTY-SIX

Jehoahaz succeeding, is deposed by Pharaoh, and carried into Egypt

1 Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah, and made him king in his father's stead in Jerusalem. [2Kgs 23:30](#);

2 Jehoahaz *was* twenty and three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem.

3 And the king of Egypt put him down at Jerusalem, and condemned the land in a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold.

4 And the king of Egypt made Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem, and turned his name to Jehoiakim. And Necho took Jehoahaz his brother, and carried him to Egypt. [\[Jer 1:3\]](#);

Jehoiakim reigning ill, is carried bound into Babylon

5 Jehoiakim *was* twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem: and he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH his Elohim.

6 Against him came up Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and bound him in fetters, to carry him to Babylon. [2Kgs 24:1](#); [\[Ezek 19:9\]](#); [\[Dan 1:1\]](#);

7 Nebuchadnezzar also carried of the vessels of the house of the YAHWEH to Babylon, and put them in his temple at Babylon. [\[Ezra 1:7\]](#);

8 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and his abominations which he did, and that which was found in him, behold, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah: and Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead.

Jehoiachin succeeding, reigns ill, and is brought into Babylon

9 Eight years *of Nebuchadnezzar's reign*, Jehoiachin became king, and he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem: and he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH. [2Kgs 24:8](#);

10 And when the year was expired, king Nebuchadnezzar sent, and brought him to Babylon, with the goodly vessels of the house of the YAHWEH, and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem. [Dan 1:1-2](#); [2Kgs 24:17](#); [Jer 37:1](#); [\[2Kgs 24:15\]](#); [\[Jer 1:3\]](#); [\[Jer 24:1\]](#);

Zedekiah succeeding, reigns ill, despises the prophets, and rebels against Nebuchadnezzar

11 Zedekiah *was* one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem.

12 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the YAHWEH his Elohim, *and* humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet *speaking* from the mouth of the YAHWEH. [Jer 52:2-3](#);

13 And he also rebelled against king Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by Elohim: but he stiffened his neck, and hardened his heart from turning unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.

Jerusalem, for the sins of the priests and the people, is wholly destroyed

14 Moreover all the chief of the priests, and the people, transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the house of the YAHWEH which he had hallowed in Jerusalem.

15 And the YAHWEH Elohim of their fathers sent *warnings* to them by his messengers, rising up early, and sending *them*; because he had compassion on his people, and on his dwelling place: [\[Neh 9:30\]](#); [\[Jer 7:13\]](#);

16 But they mocked the messengers of Elohim, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the YAHWEH arose against his people, till *there was* no remedy. [\[Ezra 5:12\]](#);

17 Therefore he brought upon them the king of the Chaldees, who slew their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary, and had no compassion upon young man or maiden, old man, or him that stooped for age: he gave *them* all into his hand. [\[2Kgs 25:1\]](#);

18 And all the vessels of the house of Elohim, great and small, and the treasures of the house of the YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes; all *these* he brought to Babylon. [\[Jer 27:22\]](#);

19 And they burnt the house of Elohim, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.

20 And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia:

21 To fulfil the word of the YAHWEH by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed her Sabbaths: *for* as long as she lay desolate she kept Sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years. [Jer 25:12](#); [Jer 29:10](#);

The proclamation of Cyrus

22 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the YAHWEH *spoken* by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the YAHWEH stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made

a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and *put it* also in writing, saying, [Ezra 1:1](#); [Jer 25:12](#); [Jer 29:10](#); [\[Ezra 5:13\]](#); [\[Isa 45:13\]](#); [\[Jer 27:22\]](#);

23 Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth has the YAHWEH Elohim of heaven given me; and he has charged me to build him a house in Jerusalem, which *is* in Judah. Who *is there* among you of all his people? The YAHWEH his Elohim *be* with him, and let him go up.

Ezra

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#)

EZRA ONE

The proclamation of Cyrus for the building of the temple

1 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the YAHWEH by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the YAHWEH stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and *put it* also in writing, saying, [2Chr 36:22](#); [Jer 25:12](#); [Jer 29:10](#); [\[Ezra 4:3\]](#); [\[Ezra 5:13\]](#); [\[Isa 45:13\]](#);

2 Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The YAHWEH Elohim of heaven has given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and he has charged me to build him a house at Jerusalem, which *is* in Judah.

3 Who *is there* among you of all his people? his Elohim be with him, and let him go up to Jerusalem, which *is* in Judah, and build the house of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, (he *is* the Elohim,) which *is* in Jerusalem.

4 And whosoever remaineth in any place where he sojourneth, let the men of his place help him with silver, and with gold, and with goods, and with beasts, beside the freewill offering for the house of Elohim that *is* in Jerusalem.

The people provide for their return

5 Then rose up the chief of the fathers of Judah and Benjamin, and the priests, and the Levites, with all *them* whose spirit Elohim had raised, to go up to build the house of the YAHWEH which *is* in Jerusalem.

6 And all they that *were* about them strengthened their hands with vessels of silver, with gold, with goods, and with beasts, and with precious things, beside all *that* was willingly offered.

Cyrus restores the vessels of the temple to Sheshbazzar

7 Also Cyrus the king brought forth the vessels of the house of the YAHWEH, which Nebuchadnezzar had brought forth out of Jerusalem, and had put them in the house of his gods; [2Kgs 24:13](#); [2Chr 36:7](#);

8 Even those did Cyrus king of Persia bring forth by the hand of Mithredath the treasurer, and numbered them unto Sheshbazzar, the prince of Judah. [Ezra 5:14](#);

9 And this *is* the number of them: thirty chargers of gold, a thousand chargers of silver, nine and twenty knives,

10 Thirty basins of gold, silver basins of a second *sort* four hundred and ten, *and* other vessels a thousand.

11 All the vessels of gold and of silver *were* five thousand and four hundred. All *these* did Sheshbazzar bring up with *them of* the captivity that were brought up from Babylon unto Jerusalem.

The number that return of the people

1 Now these *are* the children of the province that went up out of the captivity, of those which had been carried away, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had carried away unto Babylon, and came again unto Jerusalem and Judah, every one unto his city; [\[Neh 7:6\]](#);

2 Which came with Zerubbabel: Jeshua, Nehemiah, Seraiah, Reelaiah, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai, Rehum, Baanah. The number of the men of the people of Israel:

3 The children of Parosh, two thousand a hundred seventy and two.

4 The children of Shephatiah, three hundred seventy and two.

5 The children of Arah, seven hundred seventy and five.

6 The children of Pahasmob, of the children of Jeshua *and* Joab, two thousand eight hundred and twelve.

7 The children of Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.

8 The children of Zattu, nine hundred forty and five.

9 The children of Zaccai, seven hundred and threescore.

10 The children of Bani, six hundred forty and two.

11 The children of Bebai, six hundred twenty and three.

12 The children of Azgad, a thousand two hundred twenty and two.

13 The children of Adonikam, six hundred sixty and six.

14 The children of Bigvai, two thousand fifty and six.

15 The children of Adin, four hundred fifty and four.

16 The children of Ater of Hezekiah, ninety and eight.

17 The children of Bezai, three hundred twenty and three.

18 The children of Jorah, a hundred and twelve.

19 The children of Hashum, two hundred twenty and three.

20 The children of Gibbar, ninety and five.

21 The children of Bethlehem, a hundred twenty and three.

22 The men of Netophah, fifty and six.

23 The men of Anathoth, a hundred twenty and eight.

24 The children of Azmaveth, forty and two.

25 The children of Kirjatharim, Chephirah, and Beeroth, seven hundred and forty and three.

26 The children of Ramah and Gaba, six hundred twenty and one.

27 The men of Michmas, a hundred twenty and two.

28 The men of Bethel and Ai, two hundred twenty and three.

29 The children of Nebo, fifty and two.

30 The children of Magbish, a hundred fifty and six.

31 The children of the other Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.

32 The children of Harim, three hundred and twenty.

33 The children of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, seven hundred twenty and five.

34 The children of Jericho, three hundred forty and five.

35 The children of Senaah, three thousand and six hundred and thirty.

of the priests

36 The priests: the children of Jedaiah, of the house of Jeshua, nine hundred seventy and three.

37 The children of Immer, a thousand fifty and two.

38 The children of Pashur, a thousand two hundred forty and seven.

39 The children of Harim, a thousand and seventeen.

of the Levites

40 The Levites: the children of Jeshua and Kadmiel, of the children of Hodaviah, seventy and four.

41 The singers: the children of Asaph, a hundred twenty and eight.

42 The children of the porters: the children of Shallum, the children of Ater, the children of Talmon, the children of Akkub, the children of Hatita, the children of Shobai, *in* all a hundred thirty and nine.

of the Nethinims

43 The Nethinims: the children of Ziha, the children of Hasupha, the children of Tabbaoth,

44 The children of Keros, the children of Siaha, the children of Padon,

45 The children of Lebanah, the children of Hagabah, the children of Akkub,

46 The children of Hagab, the children of Shalmal, the children of Hanan,

47 The children of Giddel, the children of Gahar, the children of Reaiah,

48 The children of Rezin, the children of Nekoda, the children of Gazzam,

49 The children of Uzza, the children of Paseah, the children of Besai,

50 The children of Asnah, the children of Mehunim, the children of Nephusim,

51 The children of Bakbuk, the children of Hakupha, the children of Harhur,

52 The children of Bazluth, the children of Mehida, the children of Harsha,

53 The children of Barkos, the children of Sisera, the children of Thamah,

54 The children of Nezhiah, the children of Hatipha.

of Solomon's servants

55 The children of Solomon's servants: the children of Sotai, the children of Sophereth, the children of Peruda,

56 The children of Jaalah, the children of Darkon, the children of Giddel,

57 The children of Shephatiah, the children of Hattil, the children of Pochereth of Zebaim, the children of Ami.

58 All the Nethinims, and the children of Solomon's servants, *were* three hundred ninety and two.

59 And these *were* they which went up from Telmelah, Telharsa, Cherub, Addan, *and* Immer: but they could not show their father's house, and their seed, whether they *were* of Israel:

60 The children of Delaiah, the children of Tobiah, the children of Nekoda, six hundred fifty and two.

of the priests who could not show their pedigree

61 And of the children of the priests: the children of Habaiah, the children of Koz, the children of Barzillai; which took a wife of the daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite, and was called after their name:

62 These sought their register *among* those that were reckoned by genealogy, but they were not found: therefore were they, as polluted, put from the priesthood.

63 And the Tirshasa said unto them, that they should not eat of the most holy things, till there stood up a priest with Urim and with Thummim.

The whole number of them, with their substance

64 The whole congregation together *was* forty and two thousand three hundred *and* threescore,

65 Beside their servants and their maids, of whom *there were* seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven: and *there were* among them two hundred singing men and singing women.

66 Their horses *were* seven hundred thirty and six; their mules, two hundred forty and five;

67 Their camels, four hundred thirty and five; *their* asses, six thousand seven hundred and twenty.

Their oblations

68 And *some* of the chief of the fathers, when they came to the house of the YAHWEH which *is* at Jerusalem, offered freely for the house of Elohim to set it up in his place: [\[Exod 25:2\]](#);

69 They gave after their ability unto the treasure of the work threescore and one thousand drams of gold, and five thousand pound of silver, and one hundred priests' garments.

70 So the priests, and the Levites, and *some* of the people, and the singers, and the porters, and the Nethinims, dwelt in their cities, and all Israel in their cities.

EZRA THREE

The altar is set up

1 And when the seventh month was come, and the children of Israel *were* in the cities, the people gathered themselves together as one man to Jerusalem.

2 Then stood up Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and his brethren the priests, and Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and his brethren, and built the altar of the Elohim of Israel, to offer burnt offerings thereon, as *it is* written in the law of Moses the man of Elohim. [Deut 12:5-6](#); [\[Matt 1:12\]](#);

3 And they set the altar upon his bases; for fear *was* upon them because of the people of those countries: and they offered burnt offerings thereon unto the YAHWEH, *even* burnt offerings morning and between the evenings. [Num 28:3](#);

Offerings renewed

4 They kept also the feast of tabernacles, as *it is* written, and *offered* the daily burnt offerings by number, according to the custom, as the duty of every day required; [Lev 23:34](#); [Num 29:12](#);

5 And afterward *offered* the continual burnt offering, both of the new moons, and of all the set feasts of the YAHWEH that were consecrated, and of every one that willingly offered a freewill offering unto the YAHWEH. [Num 28:11](#); [Neh 10:33](#); [\[Exod 25:2\]](#);

6 From the first day of the seventh month began they to offer burnt offerings unto the YAHWEH. But the foundation of the temple of the YAHWEH was not yet laid.

Workmen employed in preparing materials

7 They gave money also unto the masons, and to the carpenters; and meat, and drink, and oil, unto them of Zidon, and to them of Tyre, to bring cedar trees from Lebanon to the sea of Joppa, according to the grant that they had of Cyrus king of Persia.

The foundations of the temple are laid in great joy and mourning

8 Now in the second year of their coming unto the house of Elohim at Jerusalem, in the second month, began Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and the remnant of their brethren the priests and the Levites, and all they that were come out of the captivity unto Jerusalem; and appointed the Levites, from twenty years old and upward, to set forward the work of the house of the YAHWEH.

9 Then stood Jeshua *with* his sons and his brethren, Kadmiel and his sons, the sons of Judah, together, to set forward the workmen in the house of Elohim: the sons of Henadad, *with* their sons and their brethren the Levites.

10 And when the builders laid the foundation of the temple of the YAHWEH, they set the priests in their apparel with trumpets, and the Levites the sons of Asaph with cymbals, to praise the YAHWEH, after the ordinance of David king of Israel.

11 And they sang together by course in praising and giving thanks unto the YAHWEH; because *he is* good, for his mercy *endureth* for ever toward Israel. And all the people shouted with a great shout, when they praised the YAHWEH, because the foundation of the house of the YAHWEH was laid.

12 But many of the priests and Levites and chief of the fathers, *who were* old men, that had seen the first house, when the foundation of this house was laid before their eyes, wept with a loud voice; and many shouted aloud for joy:

13 So that the people could not discern the noise of the shout of joy from the noise of the weeping of the people: for the people shouted with a loud shout, and the noise was heard afar off.

EZRA FOUR

The adversaries, being not accepted in the building of the temple with the Jews, endeavour to hinder it

1 Now when the adversaries of Judah and Benjamin heard that the children of the captivity built the temple unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel;

2 Then they came to Zerubbabel, and to the chief of the fathers, and said unto them, Let us build with you: for we seek your Elohim, as you *do*; and we do sacrifice unto him since the days of Esarhaddon king of Assur, which brought us up hither. [2Kgs 17:29](#);

3 But Zerubbabel, and Jeshua, and the rest of the chief of the fathers of Israel, said unto them, you have nothing to do with us to build a house unto our Elohim; but we ourselves together will build unto the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, as king Cyrus the king of Persia has commanded us. [Ezra 1:1-3](#);

4 Then the people of the land weakened the hands of the people of Judah, and troubled them in building,

5 And hired counsellors against them, to frustrate their purpose, all the days of Cyrus king of Persia, even until the reign of Darius king of Persia.

6 And in the reign of Ahasuerus, in the beginning of his reign, wrote they *unto him* an accusation against the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem.

Their letter to areaxerxes

7 And in the days of areaxerxes wrote Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions, unto areaxerxes king of Persia; and the writing of the letter *was* written in the Syrian tongue, and interpreted in the Syrian tongue.

8 Rehum the chancellor and Shimshai the scribe wrote a letter against Jerusalem to areaxerxes the king in this sort:

9 Then *wrote* Rehum the chancellor, and Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of their companions; the Dinaites, the Apharsathchites, the Tarpelites, the Apharsites, the Archevites, the Babylonians, the Susanchites, the Dehavites, *and* the Elamites,

10 And the rest of the nations whom the great and noble Asnappar brought over, and set in the cities of Samaria, and the rest *that are* on this side the river, and at such a time.

11 This *is* the copy of the letter that they sent unto him, *even* unto areaxerxes the king; Thy servants the men on this side the river, and at such a time.

12 Be it known unto the king, that the Jews which came up from you to us are come unto Jerusalem, building the rebellious and the bad city, and have set up the walls *thereof*, and joined the foundations.

13 Be it known now unto the king, that, if this city be built, and the walls set up *again*, *then* will they not pay toll, tribute, and custom, and *so* you shall endamage the revenue of the kings.

14 Now because we have maintenance from *the king's* palace, and it was not meet for us to see the king's dishonour, therefore have we sent and certified the king;

15 That search may be made in the book of the records of thy fathers: so shall you find in the book of the records, and know that this city *is* a rebellious city, and hurtful unto kings and provinces, and that they have moved sedition within the same of old time: for which cause was this city destroyed.

16 We certify the king that, if this city be built *again*, and the walls thereof set up, by this means you shall have no portion on this side the river.

The answer and decree of areaxerxes

17 *Then* sent the king an answer unto Rehum the chancellor, and *to* Shimshai the scribe, and *to* the rest of their companions that dwell in Samaria, and *unto* the rest beyond the river, Peace, and at such a time.

18 The letter which you sent unto us has been plainly read before me.

19 And I commanded, and search has been made, and it is found that this city of old time has made insurrection against kings, and *that* rebellion and sedition have been made therein.

20 There have been mighty kings also over Jerusalem, which have ruled over all *countries* beyond the river; and toll, tribute, and custom, was paid unto them.

21 Give you now commandment to cause these men to cease, and that this city be not built, until *another* commandment shall be given from me.

22 Take heed now that you fail not to do this: why should damage grow to the hurt of the kings?

The building is hindered

23 Now when the copy of king areaxerxes' letter *was* read before Rehum, and Shimshai the scribe, and their companions, they went up in haste to Jerusalem unto the Jews, and made them to cease by force and power.

24 Then ceased the work of the house of Elohim which *is* at Jerusalem. So it ceased unto the second year of the reign of Darius king of Persia.

EZRA FIVE

Zerubbabel and Jeshua, incited by Haggai and Zechariah, set forward the building of the temple

1 Then the prophets, Haggai the prophet, and Zechariah the son of Iddo, prophesied unto the Jews that *were* in Judah and Jerusalem in the name of the Elohim of Israel, *even* unto them. [Hag 1:1; Zech 1:1](#);

2 Then rose up Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and began to build the house of Elohim which *is* at Jerusalem: and with them *were* the prophets of Elohim helping them.

Tatnai and Shethar-boznai are not able to hinder the Jews

3 At the same time came to them Tatnai, governor on this side the river, and Shetharboznai, and their companions, and said thus unto them, Who has commanded you to build this house, and to make up this wall?

4 Then said we unto them after this manner, What are the names of the men that make this building?

5 But the eye of their Elohim was upon the elders of the Jews, that they could not cause them to cease, till the matter came to Darius: and then they returned answer by letter concerning this *matter*.

Their letter to Darius against the Jews

6 The copy of the letter that Tatnai, governor on this side the river, and Shetharboznai, and his companions the Apharsachites, which *were* on this side the river, sent unto Darius the king:

7 They sent a letter unto him, wherein was written thus; Unto Darius the king, all peace.

8 Be it known unto the king, that we went into the province of Judea, to the house of the great Elohim, which is built with great stones, and timber is laid in the walls, and this work goes fast on, and prospereth in their hands.

9 Then asked we those elders, *and* said unto them thus, Who commanded you to build this house, and to make up these walls?

10 We asked their names also, to certify you, that we might write the names of the men that *were* the chief of them.

11 And thus they returned us answer, saying, We are the servants of the Elohim of heaven and earth, and build the house that was built these many years ago, which a great king of Israel built and set up.

12 But after that our fathers had provoked the Elohim of heaven unto wrath, he gave them into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, the Chaldean, who destroyed this house, and carried the people away into Babylon. [2Chr 36:16-17](#);

13 But in the first year of Cyrus the king of Babylon *the same* king Cyrus made a decree to build this house of Elohim. [2Chr 36:22](#); [Ezra 1:1-11](#);

14 And the vessels also of gold and silver of the house of Elohim, which Nebuchadnezzar took out of the temple that *was* in Jerusalem, and brought them into the temple of Babylon, those did Cyrus the king take out of the temple of Babylon, and they were delivered unto *one*, whose name *was* Sheshbazzar, whom he had made governor; [Ezra 1:8](#);

15 And said unto him, Take these vessels, go, carry them into the temple that *is* in Jerusalem, and let the house of Elohim be built in his place.

16 Then came the same Sheshbazzar, *and* laid the foundation of the house of Elohim which *is* in Jerusalem: and since that time even until now has it been in building, and yet it is not finished.

17 Now therefore, if *it seem* good to the king, let there be search made in the king's treasure house, which *is* there at Babylon, whether it be *so*, that a decree was made of Cyrus the king to build this house of Elohim at Jerusalem, and let the king send his pleasure to us concerning this matter.

EZRA SIX

Darius, finding the decree of Cyrus, makes a new decree for the advancement of the building

1 Then Darius the king made a decree, and search was made in the house of the rolls, where the treasures were laid up in Babylon.

2 And there was found at Achmetha, in the palace that *is* in the province of the Medes, a roll, and therein *was* a record thus written:

3 In the first year of Cyrus the king *the same* Cyrus the king made a decree *concerning* the house of Elohim at Jerusalem, Let the house be built, the place where they offered sacrifices, and let the foundations thereof be strongly laid; the height thereof threescore cubits, *and* the breadth thereof threescore cubits;

4 *With* three rows of great stones, and a row of new timber: and let the expenses be given out of the king's house:

5 And also let the golden and silver vessels of the house of Elohim, which Nebuchadnezzar took forth out of the temple which *is* at Jerusalem, and brought unto Babylon, be restored, and brought again unto the temple which *is* at Jerusalem, *every one* to his place, and place *them* in the house of Elohim.

6 Now *therefore*, Tatnai, governor beyond the river, Shetharboznai, and your companions the Apharsachites, which *are* beyond the river, be you far from thence:

7 Let the work of this house of Elohim alone; let the governor of the Jews and the elders of the Jews build this house of Elohim in his place.

8 Moreover I make a decree what you shall do to the elders of these Jews for the building of this house of Elohim: that of the king's goods, *even* of the tribute beyond the river, forthwith expenses be given unto these men, that they be not hindered.

9 And that which they have need of, both young bullocks, and rams, and lambs, for the burnt offerings of the Elohim of heaven, wheat, salt, wine, and oil, according to the appointment of the priests which *are* at Jerusalem, let it be given them day by day without fail:

10 That they may offer sacrifices of sweet savours unto the Elohim of heaven, and pray for the life of the king, and of his sons.

11 Also I have made a decree, that whosoever shall alter this word, let timber be pulled down from his house, and being set up, let him be hanged thereon; and let his house be made a dunghill for this.

12 And the Elohim that has caused his name to dwell there destroy all kings and people, that shall put to their hand to alter *and* to destroy this house of Elohim which *is* at Jerusalem. I Darius have made a decree; let it be done with speed.

By the help of Tatnai and Shethar-boznai, according to the decree, the temple is finished

13 Then Tatnai, governor on this side the river, Shetharboznai, and their companions, according to that which Darius the king had sent, so they did speedily.

14 And the elders of the Jews built, and they prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah the son of Iddo. And they built, and finished *it*, according to the commandment of the Elohim of Israel, and according to the commandment of Cyrus, and Darius, and areaxerxes king of Persia.

15 And this house was finished on the third day of the month Adar, which was in the sixth year of the reign of Darius the king.

The feast of the dedication is kept

16 And the children of Israel, the priests, and the Levites, and the rest of the children of the captivity, kept the dedication of this house of Elohim with joy,

17 And offered at the dedication of this house of Elohim a hundred bullocks, two hundred rams, four hundred lambs; and for a sin offering for all Israel, twelve he goats, according to the number of the tribes of Israel.

18 And they set the priests in their divisions, and the Levites in their courses, for the service of Elohim, which *is* at Jerusalem; as it is written in the book of Moses. [Num 3:6](#); [Num 3:32](#); [Num 8:11](#); [1Chr 24:1](#);

and the passover

19 And the children of the captivity kept the passover upon the fourteenth *day* of the first month. [Exod 12:1](#); [Lev 23:5](#); [Num 28:16](#); [Deut 16:2](#);

20 For the priests and the Levites were purified together, all of them *were* pure, and killed the passover for all the children of the captivity, and for their brethren the priests, and for themselves.

21 And the children of Israel, which were come again out of captivity, and all such as had separated themselves unto them from the filthiness of the heathen of the land, to seek the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, did eat,

22 And kept the feast of unleavened bread seven days with joy: for the YAHWEH had made them joyful, and turned the heart of the king of Assyria unto them, to strengthen their hands in the work of the house of Elohim, the Elohim of Israel.

Ezra goes up to Jerusalem

- 1** Now after these things, in the reign of areaxerxes king of Persia, Ezra the son of Seraiah, the son of Azariah, the son of Hilkiah,
2 The son of Shallum, the son of Zadok, the son of Ahitub,
3 The son of Amariah, the son of Azariah, the son of Meraioth,
4 The son of Zerahiah, the son of Uzzi, the son of Bukki,
5 The son of Abishua, the son of Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the chief priest:
6 This Ezra went up from Babylon; and he *was* a ready scribe in the law of Moses, which the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel had given: and the king granted him all his request, according to the hand of the YAHWEH his Elohim upon him.
7 And there went up *some* of the children of Israel, and of the priests, and the Levites, and the singers, and the porters, and the Nethinims, unto Jerusalem, in the seventh year of areaxerxes the king.
8 And he came to Jerusalem in the fifth month, which *was* in the seventh year of the king.
9 For upon the first *day* of the first month began he to go up from Babylon, and on the first *day* of the fifth month came he to Jerusalem, according to the good hand of his Elohim upon him.
10 For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the law of the YAHWEH, and to do *it*, and to teach in Israel statutes and judgments.

The gracious commission of areaxerxes to Ezra

- 11** Now this *is* the copy of the letter that the king areaxerxes gave unto Ezra the priest, the scribe, *even* a scribe of the words of the commandments of the YAHWEH, and of his statutes to Israel.
12 Artaxerxes, king of kings, unto Ezra the priest, a scribe of the law of the Elohim of heaven, perfect *peace*, and at such a time.
13 I make a decree, that all they of the people of Israel, and *of* his priests and Levites, in my realm, which are minded of their own freewill to go up to Jerusalem, go with you.
14 Forasmuch as you are sent of the king, and of his seven counsellors, to enquire concerning Judah and Jerusalem, according to the law of thy Elohim which *is* in thine hand; [Ezra 8:25];
15 And to carry the silver and gold, which the king and his counsellors have freely offered unto the Elohim of Israel, whose habitation *is* in Jerusalem, Ezra 8:25;
16 And all the silver and gold that you canst find in all the province of Babylon, with the freewill offering of the people, and of the priests, offering willingly for the house of their Elohim which *is* in Jerusalem:
17 That you may buy speedily with this money bullocks, rams, lambs, with their meat offerings and their drink offerings, and offer them upon the altar of the house of your Elohim which *is* in Jerusalem.
18 And whatsoever shall seem good to you, and to thy brethren, to do with the rest of the silver and the gold, that do after the will of your Elohim.
19 The vessels also that are given you for the service of the house of thy Elohim, *those* deliver you before the Elohim of Jerusalem.
20 And whatsoever more shall be needful for the house of thy Elohim, which you shall have occasion to bestow, bestow *it* out of the king's treasure house.
21 And I, *even* I areaxerxes the king, do make a decree to all the treasurers which *are* beyond the river, that whatsoever Ezra the priest, the scribe of the law of the Elohim of heaven, shall require of you, it be done speedily,
22 Unto a hundred talents of silver, and to a hundred measures of wheat, and to a hundred baths of wine, and to a hundred baths of oil, and salt without prescribing *how much*.
23 Whatsoever is commanded by the Elohim of heaven, let it be diligently done for the house of the Elohim of heaven: for why should there be wrath against the realm of the king and his sons?

24 Also we certify you, that touching any of the priests and Levites, singers, porters, Nethinims, or ministers of this house of Elohim, it shall not be lawful to impose toll, tribute, or custom, upon them.

25 And you, Ezra, after the wisdom of thy Elohim, that *is* in thine hand, set magistrates and judges, which may judge all the people that *are* beyond the river, all such as know the laws of thy Elohim; and teach you them that know *them* not.

26 And whosoever will not do the law of thy Elohim, and the law of the king, let judgment be executed speedily upon him, whether *it be* unto death, or to banishment, or to confiscation of goods, or to imprisonment.

Ezra blesses Elohim for this favor

27 Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of our fathers, which has put *such a thing* as this in the king's heart, to beautify the house of the YAHWEH which *is* in Jerusalem:

28 And has extended mercy unto me before the king, and his counsellors, and before all the king's mighty princes. And I was strengthened as the hand of the YAHWEH my Elohim *was* upon me, and I gathered together out of Israel chief men to go up with me.

EZRA EIGHT

The companions of Ezra, who returned from Babylon

1 These *are* now the chief of their fathers, and *this is* the genealogy of them that went up with me from Babylon, in the reign of areaxerxes the king.

2 Of the sons of Phinehas; Gershom: of the sons of Ithamar; Daniel: of the sons of David; Hattush.

3 Of the sons of Shechaniah, of the sons of Pharosh; Zechariah: and with him were reckoned by genealogy of the males a hundred and fifty.

4 Of the sons of Pahasmoab; Elihoenai the son of Zerariah, and with him two hundred males.

5 Of the sons of Shechaniah; the son of Jahaziel, and with him three hundred males.

6 Of the sons also of Adin; Ebed the son of Jonathan, and with him fifty males.

7 And of the sons of Elam; Jeshaiiah the son of Athaliah, and with him seventy males.

8 And of the sons of Shephatiah; Zebadiah the son of Michael, and with him fourscore males.

9 Of the sons of Joab; Obadiah the son of Jehiel, and with him two hundred and eighteen males.

10 And of the sons of Shelomith; the son of Josiphiah, and with him a hundred and threescore males.

11 And of the sons of Bebai; Zechariah the son of Bebai, and with him twenty and eight males.

12 And of the sons of Azgad; Johanan the son of Hakkatan, and with him a hundred and ten males.

13 And of the last sons of Adonikam, whose names *are* these, Eliphelet, Jeiel, and Shemaiah, and with them threescore males.

14 Of the sons also of Bigvai; Uthai, and Zabbud, and with them seventy males.

He sends to Iddo for ministers for the temple

15 And I gathered them together to the river that ran to Ahava; and there abode we in tents three days: and I viewed the people, and the priests, and found there none of the sons of Levi.

16 Then sent I for Eliezer, for Ariel, for Shemaiah, and for Elnathan, and for Jarib, and for Elnathan, and for Nathan, and for Zechariah, and for Meshullam, chief men; also for Joarib, and for Elnathan, men of understanding.

17 And I sent them with commandment unto Iddo the chief at the place Casiphia, and I told them what they should say unto Iddo, *and* to his brethren the Nethinims, at the place Casiphia, that they should bring unto us ministers for the house of our Elohim.

18 And by the good hand of our Elohim upon us they brought us a man of understanding, of the sons of Mahli, the son of Levi, the son of Israel; and Sherebiah, with his sons and his brethren, eighteen;
19 And Hashabiah, and with him Jeshaiiah of the sons of Merari, his brethren and their sons, twenty;
20 Also of the Nethinims, whom David and the princes had appointed for the service of the Levites, two hundred and twenty Nethinims: all of them were expressed by name.

He keeps a fast

21 Then I proclaimed a fast there, at the river of Ahava, that we might afflict ourselves before our Elohim, to seek of him a right way for us, and for our little ones, and for all our substance.
22 For I was ashamed to require of the king a band of soldiers and horsemen to help us against the enemy in the way: because we had spoken unto the king, saying, The hand of our Elohim *is* upon all them for good that seek him; but his power and his wrath *is* against all them that forsake him.
23 So we fasted and besought our Elohim for this: and he was intreated of us.

He commits the treasures to the custody of the priests

24 Then I separated twelve of the chief of the priests, Sherebiah, Hashabiah, and ten of their brethren with them,
25 And weighed unto them the silver, and the gold, and the vessels, *even* the offering of the house of our Elohim, which the king, and his counsellors, and his lords, and all Israel *there* present, had offered: [Ezra 7:14-15](#); [\[Ezra 7:15\]](#);
26 I even weighed unto their hand six hundred and fifty talents of silver, and silver vessels a hundred talents, *and* of gold a hundred talents;
27 Also twenty basins of gold, of a thousand drams; and two vessels of fine copper, precious as gold.
28 And I said unto them, you *are* holy unto the YAHWEH; the vessels *are* holy also; and the silver and the gold *are* a freewill offering unto the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers.
29 Watch you, and keep *them*, until you weigh *them* before the chief of the priests and the Levites, and chief of the fathers of Israel, at Jerusalem, in the chambers of the house of the YAHWEH.
30 So took the priests and the Levites the weight of the silver, and the gold, and the vessels, to bring *them* to Jerusalem unto the house of our Elohim.

From Ahava they come to Jerusalem

31 Then we departed from the river of Ahava on the twelfth *day* of the first month, to go unto Jerusalem: and the hand of our Elohim was upon us, and he delivered us from the hand of the enemy, and of such as lay in wait by the way.
32 And we came to Jerusalem, and abode there three days.

The treasure is weighed in the temple

33 Now on the fourth day was the silver and the gold and the vessels weighed in the house of our Elohim by the hand of Meremoth the son of Uriah the priest; and with him *was* Eleazar the son of Phinehas; and with them *was* Jozabad the son of Jeshua, and Noadiah the son of Binnui, Levites;
34 By number *and* by weight of every one: and all the weight was written at that time.
35 *Also* the children of those that had been carried away, which were come out of the captivity, offered burnt offerings unto the Elohim of Israel, twelve bullocks for all Israel, ninety and six rams, seventy and seven lambs, twelve he goats *for* a sin offering: all *this was* a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH.

The commission is delivered

36 And they delivered the king's commissions unto the king's lieutenants, and to the governors on this side the river: and they furthered the people, and the house of Elohim.

EZRA NINE

Ezra mourns for the affinity of the people with strangers

1 Now when these things were done, the princes came to me, saying, The people of Israel, and the priests, and the Levites, have not separated themselves from the people of the lands, *doing* according to their abominations, *even* of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, the Ammonites, the Moabites, the Egyptians, and the Amorites.

2 For they have taken of their daughters for themselves, and for their sons: so that the holy seed have mingled themselves with the people of *those* lands: yes, the hand of the princes and rulers has been chief in this trespass.

3 And when I heard this thing, I rent my garment and my mantle, and plucked off the hair of my head and of my beard, and sat down astonished.

4 Then were assembled unto me every one that trembled at the words of the Elohim of Israel, because of the transgression of those that had been carried away; and I sat astonished until between the evenings sacrifice.

He prays unto Elohim, with confession of sins

5 And at the evening sacrifice I arose up from my heaviness; and having rent my garment and my mantle, I fell upon my knees, and spread out my hands unto the YAHWEH my Elohim,

6 And said, O my Elohim, I am ashamed and blush to lift up my face to you, my Elohim: for our iniquities are increased over *our* head, and our trespass is grown up unto the heavens. [Ps 38:4](#);

7 Since the days of our fathers *have we been* in a great trespass unto this day; and for our iniquities have we, our kings, *and* our priests, been delivered into the hand of the kings of the lands, to the sword, to captivity, and to a spoil, and to confusion of face, as *it is* this day.

8 And now for a little space grace has been show^{ed} from the YAHWEH our Elohim, to leave us a remnant to escape, and to give us a nail in his holy place, that our Elohim may lighten our eyes, and give us a little reviving in our bondage.

9 For we *were* bondmen; yet our Elohim has not forsaken us in our bondage, but has extended mercy unto us in the sight of the kings of Persia, to give us a reviving, to set up the house of our Elohim, and to repair the desolations thereof, and to give us a wall in Judah and in Jerusalem.

10 And now, O our Elohim, what shall we say after this? for we have forsaken thy commandments,

11 Which you have commanded by thy servants the prophets, saying, The land, unto which you go to possess it, is an unclean land with the filthiness of the people of the lands, with their abominations, which have filled it from one end to another with their uncleanness. [Lev 18:25](#); [Lev 18:27](#); [Deut 7:3](#);

12 Now therefore give not your daughters unto their sons, neither take their daughters unto your sons, nor seek their peace or their wealth for ever: that you may be strong, and eat the good of the land, and leave *it* for an inheritance to your children for ever.

13 And after all that is come upon us for our evil deeds, and for our great trespass, seeing that you our Elohim have punished us less than our iniquities *deserve*, and have given us *such* deliverance as this;

14 Should we again break thy commandments, and join in marriage with the people of these abominations? wouldest not you be angry with us till you hadst consumed *us*, so that *there should be* no remnant nor escaping?

15 O YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, you are righteous: for we remain yet escaped, as *it is* this day: behold, we *are* before you in our trespasses: for we cannot stand before you because of this.

Ezra encouraged to reform the strange marriages

1 Now when Ezra had prayed, and when he had confessed, weeping and casting himself down before the house of Elohim, there assembled unto him out of Israel a very great congregation of men and women and children: for the people wept very sore.

2 And Shechaniah the son of Jehiel, *one* of the sons of Elam, answered and said unto Ezra, We have trespassed against our Elohim, and have taken strange wives of the people of the land: yet now there is hope in Israel concerning this thing.

3 Now therefore let us make a covenant with our Elohim to put away all the wives, and such as are born of them, according to the counsel of my lord, and of those that tremble at the commandment of our Elohim; and let it be done according to the law.

4 Arise; for *this* matter *belongeth* unto you: we also *will be* with you: be of good courage, and do *it*.

5 Then arose Ezra, and made the chief priests, the Levites, and all Israel, to swear that they should do according to this word. And they sware.

Ezra assembles the people

6 Then Ezra rose up from before the house of Elohim, and went into the chamber of Johanan the son of Eliashib: and *when* he came thither, he did eat no bread, nor drink water: for he mourned because of the transgression of them that had been carried away.

7 And they made proclamation throughout Judah and Jerusalem unto all the children of the captivity, that they should gather themselves together unto Jerusalem;

8 And that whosoever would not come within three days, according to the counsel of the princes and the elders, all his substance should be forfeited, and himself separated from the congregation of those that had been carried away.

The people repent, and promise amendment

9 Then all the men of Judah and Benjamin gathered themselves together unto Jerusalem within three days. It *was* the ninth month, on the twentieth *day* of the month; and all the people sat in the street of the house of Elohim, trembling because of *this* matter, and for the great rain. [[Job 37:13](#)];

10 And Ezra the priest stood up, and said unto them, you have transgressed, and have taken strange wives, to increase the trespass of Israel.

11 Now therefore make confession unto the YAHWEH Elohim of your fathers, and do his pleasure: and separate yourselves from the people of the land, and from the strange wives.

12 Then all the congregation answered and said with a loud voice, As you have said, so must we do.

13 But the people *are* many, and *it is* a time of much rain, and we are not able to stand without, neither *is this* a work of one day or two: for we are many that have transgressed in this thing.

14 Let now our rulers of all the congregation stand, and let all them which have taken strange wives in our cities come at appointed times, and with them the elders of every city, and the judges thereof, until the fierce wrath of our Elohim for this matter be turned from us.

The care to perform it

15 Only Jonathan the son of Asahel and Jahaziah the son of Tikvah were employed about this *matter*: and Meshullam and Shabbethai the Levite helped them.

16 And the children of the captivity did so. And Ezra the priest, *with* certain chief of the fathers, after the house of their fathers, and all of them by *their* names, were separated, and sat down in the first day of the tenth month to examine the matter.

17 And they made an end with all the men that had taken strange wives by the first day of the first month.

The names of them which had married strange wives

18 And among the sons of the priests there were found that had taken strange wives: *namely*, of the sons of Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and his brethren; Maaseiah, and Eliezer, and Jarib, and Gedaliah.

19 And they gave their hands that they would put away their wives; and *being* guilty, *they offered* a ram of the flock for their trespass.

20 And of the sons of Immer; Hanani, and Zebadiah.

21 And of the sons of Harim; Maaseiah, and Elijah, and Shemaiah, and Jehiel, and Uziah.

22 And of the sons of Pashur; Elioenai, Maaseiah, Ishmael, Nethaneel, Jozabad, and Elasa.

23 Also of the Levites; Jozabad, and Shimei, and Kelaiah, (the same *is* Kelita,) Pethahiah, Judah, and Eliezer.

24 Of the singers also; Eliashib: and of the porters; Shallum, and Telem, and Uri.

25 Moreover of Israel: of the sons of Parosh; Ramiah, and Jeziah, and Malchiah, and Miamin, and Eleazar, and Malchijah, and Benaiah.

26 And of the sons of Elam; Mattaniah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, and Abdi, and Jeremoth, and Eliah.

27 And of the sons of Zattu; Elioenai, Eliashib, Mattaniah, and Jeremoth, and Zabad, and Aziza.

28 Of the sons also of Bebai; Jehohanan, Hananiah, Zabbai, *and* Athlai.

29 And of the sons of Bani; Meshullam, Malluch, and Adaiah, Jashub, and Sheal, and Ramoth.

30 And of the sons of Pahasmob; Adna, and Chelal, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattaniah, Bezaleel, and Binnui, and Manasseh.

31 And *of* the sons of Harim; Eliezer, Ishijah, Malchiah, Shemaiah, Shimeon,

32 Benjamin, Malluch, *and* Shemariah.

33 Of the sons of Hashum; Mattenai, Mattathah, Zabad, Eliphelet, Jeremai, Manasseh, *and* Shimei.

34 Of the sons of Bani; Maadai, Amram, and Uel,

35 Benaiah, Bedeiah, Chelluh,

36 Vaniah, Meremoth, Eliashib,

37 Mattaniah, Mattenai, and Jaasau,

38 And Bani, and Binnui, Shimei,

39 And Shelemiah, and Nathan, and Adaiah,

40 Machnadebai, Shashai, Sharai,

41 Azareel, and Shelemiah, Shemariah,

42 Shallum, Amariah, *and* Joseph.

43 Of the sons of Nebo; Jeiel, Mattithiah, Zabad, Zebina, Jadau, and Joel, Benaiah.

44 All these had taken strange wives: and *some* of them had wives by whom they had children.

Nehemiah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#)

NEHEMIAH ONE

Nehemiah, understanding by Hanani the misery of Jerusalem, mourns, fasts, and prays

- 1** The words of Nehemiah the son of Hachaliah. And it came to pass in the month Chisleu, in the twentieth year, as I was in Shushan the palace,
- 2** That Hanani, one of my brethren, came, he and *certain* men of Judah; and I asked them concerning the Jews that had escaped, which were left of the captivity, and concerning Jerusalem.
- 3** And they said unto me, The remnant that are left of the captivity there in the province *are* in great affliction and reproach: the wall of Jerusalem also *is* broken down, and the gates thereof are burned with fire.
- 4** And it came to pass, when I heard these words, that I sat down and wept, and mourned *certain* days, and fasted, and prayed before the Elohim of heaven,

His prayer

- 5** And said, I beseech you, O YAHWEH Elohim of heaven, the great and terrible Elohim, that keepeth covenant and mercy for them that love him and observe his commandments: [Dan 9:4](#); [Exod 20:6](#); [Exod 34:7](#); [Num 14:18](#); [Deut 5:10](#); [Ps 86:15](#); [Ps 103:8](#); [Ps 145:8](#);
- 6** Let thine ear now be attentive, and thine eyes open, that you may hear the prayer of thy servant, which I pray before you now, day and night, for the children of Israel thy servants, and confess the sins of the children of Israel, which we have sinned against you: both I and my father's house have sinned.
- 7** We have dealt very corruptly against you, and have not kept the commandments, nor the statutes, nor the judgments, which you commandedst thy servant Moses.
- 8** Remember, I beseech you, the word that you commandedst thy servant Moses, saying, *If* you transgress, I will scatter you abroad among the nations: [Deut 4:25-27](#); [Deut 30:2-4](#); [\[Deut 28:64\]](#); [\[Deut 30:3\]](#);
- 9** But *if* you turn unto me, and keep my commandments, and do them; though there were of you cast out unto the uttermost part of the heaven, yet will I gather them from thence, and will bring them unto the place that I have chosen to set my name there. [\[Deut 30:4\]](#);
- 10** Now these *are* thy servants and thy people, whom you have redeemed by thy great power, and by thy strong hand.
- 11** O Lord, I beseech you, let now thine ear be attentive to the prayer of thy servant, and to the prayer of thy servants, who desire to fear thy name: and prosper, I pray you, thy servant this day, and grant him mercy in the sight of this man. For I was the king's cupbearer.

NEHEMIAH TWO

Artaxerxes, understanding the cause of Nehemiah's sadness, sends him with letters and commission to Jerusalem

- 1** And it came to pass in the month Nisan, in the twentieth year of areaxerxes the king, *that* wine *was* before him: and I took up the wine, and gave *it* unto the king. Now I had not been before sad in his presence.

2 Wherefore the king said unto me, Why *is* thy countenance sad, seeing you are not sick? this *is* nothing *else* but sorrow of heart. Then I was very sore afraid,
3 And said unto the king, Let the king live for ever: why should not my countenance be sad, when the city, the place of my fathers' sepulchers, *lies* waste, and the gates thereof are consumed with fire?
4 Then the king said unto me, For what dost you make request? So I prayed to the Elohim of heaven.
5 And I said unto the king, If it please the king, and if thy servant have found favor in thy sight, that you wouldest send me unto Judah, unto the city of my fathers' sepulchers, that I may build it.
6 And the king said unto me, (the queen also sitting by him,) For how long shall thy journey be? and when will you return? So it pleased the king to send me; and I set him a time.
7 Moreover I said unto the king, If it please the king, let letters be given me to the governors beyond the river, that they may convey me over till I come into Judah;
8 And a letter unto Asaph the keeper of the king's forest, that he may give me timber to make beams for the gates of the palace which *appertained* to the house, and for the wall of the city, and for the house that I shall enter into. And the king granted me, according to the good hand of my Elohim upon me.

Nehemiah, to the grief of the enemies, comes to Jerusalem

9 Then I came to the governors beyond the river, and gave them the king's letters. Now the king had sent captains of the army and horsemen with me.
10 When Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the servant, the Ammonite, heard *of it*, it grieved them exceedingly that there was come a man to seek the welfare of the children of Israel. [[Ps 122:9](#)];
11 So I came to Jerusalem, and was there three days.

He views secretly the ruins of the walls

12 And I arose in the night, I and some few men with me; neither told I *any* man what my Elohim had put in my heart to do at Jerusalem: neither *was there any* beast with me, save the beast that I rode upon.
13 And I went out by night by the gate of the valley, even before the dragon well, and to the dung port, and viewed the walls of Jerusalem, which were broken down, and the gates thereof were consumed with fire.
14 Then I went on to the gate of the fountain, and to the king's pool: but *there was* no place for the beast *that was* under me to pass.
15 Then went I up in the night by the brook, and viewed the wall, and turned back, and entered by the gate of the valley, and *so* returned.
16 And the rulers knew not whither I went, or what I did; neither had I as yet told *it* to the Jews, nor to the priests, nor to the nobles, nor to the rulers, nor to the rest that did the work.

He incites the Jews to build

17 Then said I unto them, you see the distress that we *are* in, how Jerusalem *lies* waste, and the gates thereof are burned with fire: come, and let us build up the wall of Jerusalem, that we be no more a reproach.
18 Then I told them of the hand of my Elohim which was good upon me; as also the king's words that he had spoken unto me. And they said, Let us rise up and build. So they strengthened their hands for *this* good *work*.
19 But when Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the servant, the Ammonite, and Geshem the Arabian, heard *it*, they laughed us to scorn, and despised us, and said, What *is* this thing that you do? will you rebel against the king?
20 Then answered I them, and said unto them, The Elohim of heaven, he will prosper us; therefore we his servants will arise and build: but you have no portion, nor right, nor memorial, in Jerusalem.

The names and order of them that built the wall

- 1** Then Eliashib the high priest rose up with his brethren the priests, and they built the sheep gate; they sanctified it, and set up the doors of it; even unto the tower of Meah they sanctified it, unto the tower of Hananeel.
- 2** And next unto him built the men of Jericho. And next to them built Zaccur the son of Imri.
- 3** But the fish gate did the sons of Hassenaah build, who *also* laid the beams thereof, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.
- 4** And next unto them repaired Meremoth the son of Urijah, the son of Koz. And next unto them repaired Meshullam the son of Berechiah, the son of Meshezabeel. And next unto them repaired Zadok the son of Baana.
- 5** And next unto them the Tekoites repaired; but their nobles put not their necks to the work of their Lord.
- 6** Moreover the old gate repaired Jehoiada the son of Paseah, and Meshullam the son of Besodeiah; they laid the beams thereof, and set up the doors thereof, and the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.
- 7** And next unto them repaired Melatiah the Gibeonite, and Jadon the Meronothite, the men of Gibeon, and of Mizpah, unto the throne of the governor on this side the river.
- 8** Next unto him repaired Uzziel the son of Harhaiah, of the goldsmiths. Next unto him also repaired Hananiah the son of *one of* the apothecaries, and they fortified Jerusalem unto the broad wall.
- 9** And next unto them repaired Rephaiah the son of Hur, the ruler of the half part of Jerusalem.
- 10** And next unto them repaired Jedaiah the son of Harumaph, even over against his house. And next unto him repaired Hattush the son of Hashabniah.
- 11** Malchijah the son of Harim, and Hashub the son of Pahasmoab, repaired the other piece, and the tower of the furnaces.
- 12** And next unto him repaired Shallum the son of Halohesh, the ruler of the half part of Jerusalem, he and his daughters.
- 13** The valley gate repaired Hanun, and the inhabitants of Zanoah; they built it, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof, and a thousand cubits on the wall unto the dung gate.
- 14** But the dung gate repaired Malchiah the son of Rechab, the ruler of part of Bethhaccerem; he built it, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.
- 15** But the gate of the fountain repaired Shallun the son of Colhozeh, the ruler of part of Mizpah; he built it, and covered it, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof, and the wall of the pool of Siloah by the king's garden, and unto the stairs that go down from the city of David.
- 16** After him repaired Nehemiah the son of Azbuk, the ruler of the half part of Bethzur, unto *the place* over against the sepulchers of David, and to the pool that was made, and unto the house of the mighty.
- 17** After him repaired the Levites, Rehum the son of Bani. Next unto him repaired Hashabiah, the ruler of the half part of Keilah, in his part.
- 18** After him repaired their brethren, Bavai the son of Henadad, the ruler of the half part of Keilah.
- 19** And next to him repaired Ezer the son of Jeshua, the ruler of Mizpah, another piece over against the going up to the armoury at the turning *of the wall*.
- 20** After him Baruch the son of Zabbai earnestly repaired the other piece, from the turning *of the wall* unto the door of the house of Eliashib the high priest.
- 21** After him repaired Meremoth the son of Urijah the son of Koz another piece, from the door of the house of Eliashib even to the end of the house of Eliashib.
- 22** And after him repaired the priests, the men of the plain.
- 23** After him repaired Benjamin and Hashub over against their house. After him repaired Azariah the son of Maaseiah the son of Ananiah by his house.
- 24** After him repaired Binnui the son of Henadad another piece, from the house of Azariah unto the turning *of the wall*, even unto the corner.

25 Palal the son of Uzai, over against the turning *of the wall*, and the tower which lies out from the king's high house, that *was* by the court of the prison. After him Pedaiah the son of Parosh.

26 Moreover the Nethinims dwelt in Ophel, unto *the place* over against the water gate toward the east, and the tower that lies out.

27 After them the Tekoites repaired another piece, over against the great tower that lies out, even unto the wall of Ophel.

28 From above the horse gate repaired the priests, every one over against his house.

29 After them repaired Zadok the son of Immer over against his house. After him repaired also Shemaiah the son of Shechaniah, the keeper of the east gate.

30 After him repaired Hananiah the son of Shelemiah, and Hanun the sixth son of Zalaph, another piece. After him repaired Meshullam the son of Berechiah over against his chamber.

31 After him repaired Malchiah the goldsmith's son unto the place of the Nethinims, and of the merchants, over against the gate Miphkad, and to the going up of the corner.

32 And between the going up of the corner unto the sheep gate repaired the goldsmiths and the merchants.

NEHEMIAH FOUR

While the enemies scoff, Nehemiah prays and continues the work

1 But it came to pass, that when Sanballat heard that we built the wall, he was wroth, and took great indignation, and mocked the Jews.

2 And he spoke before his brethren and the army of Samaria, and said, What do these feeble Jews? will they fortify themselves? will they sacrifice? will they make an end in a day? will they revive the stones out of the heaps of the rubbish which are burned?

3 Now Tobiah the Ammonite *was* by him, and he said, Even that which they build, if a fox go up, he shall even break down their stone wall.

4 Hear, O our Elohim; for we are despised: and turn their reproach upon their own head, and give them for a prey in the land of captivity:

5 And cover not their iniquity, and let not their sin be blotted out from before you: for they have provoked you to anger before the builders.

6 So built we the wall; and all the wall was joined together unto the half thereof: for the people had a mind to work.

Understanding the wrath and secrets of the enemy, he sets a watch

7 But it came to pass, *that* when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and the Arabians, and the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites, heard that the walls of Jerusalem were made up, *and* that the breaches began to be stopped, then they were very wroth,

8 And conspired all of them together to come *and* to fight against Jerusalem, and to hinder it.

9 Nevertheless we made our prayer unto our Elohim, and set a watch against them day and night, because of them.

10 And Judah said, The strength of the bearers of burdens is decayed, and *there is* much rubbish; so that we are not able to build the wall.

11 And our adversaries said, They shall not know, neither see, till we come in the midst among them, and slay them, and cause the work to cease.

12 And it came to pass, that when the Jews which dwelt by them came, they said unto us ten times, From all places whence you shall return unto us *they will be upon you*.

He arms the labourers

13 Therefore set I in the lower places behind the wall, *and* on the higher places, I even set the people after their families with their swords, their spears, and their bows.

14 And I looked, and rose up, and said unto the nobles, and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, Be not you afraid of them: remember the Lord, *which is* great and terrible, and fight for your brethren, your sons, and your daughters, your wives, and your houses. [Num 14:9](#); [Deut 1:21](#); [Deut 20:3](#);

15 And it came to pass, when our enemies heard that it was known unto us, and Elohim had brought their counsel to nought, that we returned all of us to the wall, every one unto his work. [\[Job 5:12\]](#);

16 And it came to pass from that time forth, *that* the half of my servants wrought in the work, and the other half of them held both the spears, the shields, and the bows, and the habergeons; and the rulers *were* behind all the house of Judah.

17 They which built on the wall, and they that bore burdens, with those that laded, *every one* with one of his hands wrought in the work, and with the other *hand* held a weapon.

18 For the builders, every one had his sword girded by his side, and *so* built. And he that sounded the trumpet *was* by me.

and gives military precepts

19 And I said unto the nobles, and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, The work *is* great and large, and we are separated upon the wall, one far from another.

20 In what place *therefore* you hear the sound of the trumpet, resort you thither unto us: our Elohim shall fight for us. [Exod 14:25](#); [Deut 1:30](#); [Deut 28:7](#);

21 So we laboured in the work: and half of them held the spears from the rising of the morning till the stars appeared.

22 Likewise at the same time said I unto the people, Let every one with his servant lodge within Jerusalem, that in the night they may be a guard to us, and labour on the day.

23 So neither I, nor my brethren, nor my servants, nor the men of the guard which followed me, none of us put off our clothes, *saving that* every one put them off for washing.

NEHEMIAH FIVE

The Jews complain of their debt, mortgage, and bondage

1 And there was a great cry of the people and of their wives against their brethren the Jews.

2 For there were that said, We, our sons, and our daughters, *are* many: therefore we take up grain *for them*, that we may eat, and live. [\[Deut 23:19\]](#);

3 *Some* also there were that said, We have mortgaged our lands, vineyards, and houses, that we might buy corn, because of the dearth.

4 There were also that said, We have borrowed money for the king's tribute, *and that upon* our lands and vineyards.

5 Yet now our flesh *is* as the flesh of our brethren, our children as their children: and, lo, we bring into bondage our sons and our daughters to be servants, and *some* of our daughters are brought unto bondage *already*: neither *is it* in our power *to redeem them*; for other men have our lands and vineyards.

Nehemiah rebukes the usurers, and causes them to make a covenant of restitution

6 And I was very angry when I heard their cry and these words.

7 Then I consulted with myself, and I rebuked the nobles, and the rulers, and said unto them, you exact usury, every one of his brother. And I set a great assembly against them.

8 And I said unto them, We after our ability have redeemed our brethren the Jews, which were sold unto the heathen; and will you even sell your brethren? or shall they be sold unto us? Then held they their peace, and found nothing *to answer*.

9 Also I said, It *is* not good that you do: ought you not to walk in the fear of our Elohim because of the reproach of the heathen our enemies?

10 I likewise, *and* my brethren, and my servants, might exact of them money and corn: I pray you, let us leave off this usury.

11 Restore, I pray you, to them, even this day, their lands, their vineyards, their oliveyards, and their houses, also the hundredth *part* of the money, and of the corn, the wine, and the oil, that you exact of them.

12 Then said they, We will restore *them*, and will require nothing of them; so will we do as you sayest. Then I called the priests, and took an oath of them, that they should do according to this promise.

13 Also I shook my lap, and said, So Elohim shake out every man from his house, and from his labour, that performeth not this promise, even thus be he shaken out, and emptied. And all the congregation said, Amen, and praised the YAHWEH. And the people did according to this promise.

He forbears his own allowance, and keeps hospitality

14 Moreover from the time that I was appointed to be their governor in the land of Judah, from the twentieth year even unto the two and thirtieth year of areaxerxes the king, *that is*, twelve years, I and my brethren have not eaten the bread of the governor.

15 But the former governors that *had been* before me were chargeable unto the people, and had taken of them bread and wine, beside forty shekels of silver; yes, even their servants bore rule over the people: but so did not I, because of the fear of Elohim.

16 Yes, also I continued in the work of this wall, neither bought we any land: and all my servants *were* gathered thither unto the work.

17 Moreover *there were* at my table a hundred and fifty of the Jews and rulers, beside those that came unto us from among the heathen that *are* about us.

18 Now *that* which was prepared *for me* daily *was* one ox *and* six choice sheep; also fowls were prepared for me, and once in ten days store of all sorts of wine: yet for all this required not I the bread of the governor, because the bondage was heavy upon this people.

19 Think upon me, my Elohim, for good, *according* to all that I have done for this people. [Neh 13:22](#);

NEHEMIAH SIX

Sanballat practises by craft, by rumours, and by hired prophecies, to terrify Nehemiah

1 Now it came to pass, when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and Geshem the Arabian, and the rest of our enemies, heard that I had built the wall, and *that* there was no breach left therein; (though at that time I had not set up the doors upon the gates;)

2 That Sanballat and Geshem sent unto me, saying, Come, let us meet together in *some one of* the villages in the plain of Ono. But they thought to do me mischief.

3 And I sent messengers unto them, saying, I *am* doing a great work, so that I cannot come down: why should the work cease, whilst I leave it, and come down to you?

4 Yet they sent unto me four times after this sort; and I answered them after the same manner.

5 Then sent Sanballat his servant unto me in like manner the fifth time with an open letter in his hand;
6 Wherein *was* written, It is reported among the heathen, and Gashmu saith *it, that* you and the Jews think to rebel: for which cause you buildest the wall, that you may be their king, according to these words.
7 And you have also appointed prophets to preach of you at Jerusalem, saying, *There is* a king in Judah: and now shall it be reported to the king according to these words. Come now therefore, and let us take counsel together.
8 Then I sent unto him, saying, There are no such things done as you sayest, but you feignest them out of thine own heart.
9 For they all made us afraid, saying, Their hands shall be weakened from the work, that it be not done. Now therefore, *O Elohim*, strengthen my hands.
10 Afterward I came unto the house of Shemaiah the son of Delaiah the son of Mehetabeel, who *was* shut up; and he said, Let us meet together in the house of Elohim, within the temple, and let us shut the doors of the temple: for they will come to slay you; yes, in the night will they come to slay you.
11 And I said, Should such a man as I flee? and who *is there*, that, *being* as I *am*, would go into the temple to save his life? I will not go in.
12 And, lo, I perceived that Elohim had not sent him; but that he pronounced this prophecy against me: for Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him.
13 Therefore *was* he hired, that I should be afraid, and do so, and sin, and *that* they might have *matter* for an evil report, that they might reproach me.
14 My Elohim, think you upon Tobiah and Sanballat according to these their works, and on the prophetess Noadiah, and the rest of the prophets, that would have put me in fear.

The work is finished, to the terror of the enemies

15 So the wall was finished in the twenty and fifth *day* of *the month* Elul, in fifty and two days.
16 And it came to pass, that when all our enemies heard *thereof*, and all the heathen that *were* about us saw *these things*, they were much cast down in their own eyes: for they perceived that this work was wrought of our Elohim.

Secret intelligence passes between the enemies and the nobles of Judah

17 Moreover in those days the nobles of Judah sent many letters unto Tobiah, and *the letters* of Tobiah came unto them.
18 For *there were* many in Judah sworn unto him, because he *was* the son in law of Shechaniah the son of Arah; and his son Johanan had taken the daughter of Meshullam the son of Berechiah.
19 Also they reported his good deeds before me, and uttered my words to him. *And* Tobiah sent letters to put me in fear.

NEHEMIAH SEVEN

Nehemiah commits the charge of Jerusalem to Hanani and Hananiah

1 Now it came to pass, when the wall was built, and I had set up the doors, and the porters and the singers and the Levites were appointed,
2 That I gave my brother Hanani, and Hananiah the ruler of the palace, charge over Jerusalem: for he *was* a faithful man, and feared Elohim above many.
3 And I said unto them, Let not the gates of Jerusalem be opened until the sun be hot; and while they stand by, let them shut the doors, and bar *them*: and appoint watches of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, every one in his watch, and every one *to be* over against his house.

4 Now the city *was* large and great: but the people *were* few therein, and the houses *were* not built.

A register of the genealogy of them which came at the first out of Babylon

5 And my Elohim put into mine heart to gather together the nobles, and the rulers, and the people, that they might be reckoned by genealogy. And I found a register of the genealogy of them which came up at the first, and found written therein,

6 These *are* the children of the province, that went up out of the captivity, of those that had been carried away, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had carried away, and came again to Jerusalem and to Judah, every one unto his city; [Ezra 2:1](#);

7 Who came with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah. The number, *I say*, of the men of the people of Israel *was this*;

8 The children of Parosh, two thousand a hundred seventy and two.

of the people

9 The children of Shephatiah, three hundred seventy and two.

10 The children of Arah, six hundred fifty and two.

11 The children of Pahasmoab, of the children of Jeshua and Joab, two thousand and eight hundred *and* eighteen.

12 The children of Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.

13 The children of Zattu, eight hundred forty and five.

14 The children of Zaccai, seven hundred and threescore.

15 The children of Binnui, six hundred forty and eight.

16 The children of Bebai, six hundred twenty and eight.

17 The children of Azgad, two thousand three hundred twenty and two.

18 The children of Adonikam, six hundred threescore and seven.

19 The children of Bigvai, two thousand threescore and seven.

20 The children of Adin, six hundred fifty and five.

21 The children of Ater of Hezekiah, ninety and eight.

22 The children of Hashum, three hundred twenty and eight.

23 The children of Bezai, three hundred twenty and four.

24 The children of Hariph, a hundred and twelve.

25 The children of Gibeon, ninety and five.

26 The men of Bethlehem and Netophah, a hundred fourscore and eight.

27 The men of Anathoth, a hundred twenty and eight.

28 The men of Bethazmaveth, forty and two.

29 The men of Kirjathjearim, Chephirah, and Beeroth, seven hundred forty and three.

30 The men of Ramah and Geba, six hundred twenty and one.

31 The men of Michmas, a hundred and twenty and two.

32 The men of Bethel and Ai, a hundred twenty and three.

33 The men of the other Nebo, fifty and two.

34 The children of the other Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.

35 The children of Harim, three hundred and twenty.

36 The children of Jericho, three hundred forty and five.

37 The children of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, seven hundred twenty and one.

38 The children of Senaah, three thousand nine hundred and thirty.

of the priests

39 The priests: the children of Jedaiah, of the house of Jeshua, nine hundred seventy and three.

- 40** The children of Immer, a thousand fifty and two.
41 The children of Pashur, a thousand two hundred forty and seven.
42 The children of Harim, a thousand and seventeen.

of the Levites

- 43** The Levites: the children of Jeshua, of Kadmiel, *and* of the children of Hodevah, seventy and four.
44 The singers: the children of Asaph, a hundred forty and eight.
45 The porters: the children of Shallum, the children of Ater, the children of Talmon, the children of Akkub, the children of Hatita, the children of Shobai, a hundred thirty and eight.

of the Nethinims

- 46** The Nethinims: the children of Ziha, the children of Hashupha, the children of Tabbaoth,
47 The children of Keros, the children of Sia, the children of Padon,
48 The children of Lebana, the children of Hagaba, the children of Shalmal,
49 The children of Hanan, the children of Giddel, the children of Gahar,
50 The children of Reaiah, the children of Rezin, the children of Nekoda,
51 The children of Gazzam, the children of Uzza, the children of Phaseah,
52 The children of Besai, the children of Meunim, the children of Nephishesim,
53 The children of Bakbuk, the children of Hakupha, the children of Harhur,
54 The children of Bazlith, the children of Mehida, the children of Harsha,
55 The children of Barkos, the children of Sisera, the children of Tamah,
56 The children of Nezhiah, the children of Hatipha.

of Solomon's servants

- 57** The children of Solomon's servants: the children of Sotai, the children of Sophereth, the children of Perida,
58 The children of Jaala, the children of Darkon, the children of Giddel,
59 The children of Shephatiah, the children of Hattil, the children of Pochereth of Zebaim, the children of Amon.
60 All the Nethinims, and the children of Solomon's servants, *were* three hundred ninety and two.
61 And these *were* they which went up *also* from Telmelah, Telharsa, Cherub, Addon, and Immer: but they could not show their father's house, nor their seed, whether they *were* of Israel.
62 The children of Delaiah, the children of Tobiah, the children of Nekoda, six hundred forty and two.

and of the priests which could not find their pedigree

- 63** And of the priests: the children of Habaiah, the children of Koz, the children of Barzillai, which took *one* of the daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite to wife, and was called after their name.
64 These sought their register *among* those that were reckoned by genealogy, but it was not found: therefore were they, as polluted, put from the priesthood.
65 And the Tirshasa said unto them, that they should not eat of the most holy things, till there stood *up* a priest with Urim and Thummim.

The whole number of them, with their substance

- 66** The whole congregation together *was* forty and two thousand three hundred and threescore,
67 Beside their manservants and their maidservants, of whom *there were* seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven: and they had two hundred forty and five singing men and singing women.
68 Their horses, seven hundred thirty and six: their mules, two hundred forty and five:
69 *Their* camels, four hundred thirty and five: six thousand seven hundred and twenty asses.

Their oblations

70 And some of the chief of the fathers gave unto the work. The Tirshasa gave to the treasure a thousand drams of gold, fifty basins, five hundred and thirty priests' garments.

71 And *some* of the chief of the fathers gave to the treasure of the work twenty thousand drams of gold, and two thousand and two hundred pound of silver.

72 And *that* which the rest of the people gave *was* twenty thousand drams of gold, and two thousand pound of silver, and threescore and seven priests' garments.

73 So the priests, and the Levites, and the porters, and the singers, and *some* of the people, and the Nethinims, and all Israel, dwelt in their cities; and when the seventh month came, the children of Israel *were* in their cities.

NEHEMIAH EIGHT

The religious manner of reading and hearing the law

1 And all the people gathered themselves together as one man into the street that *was* before the water gate; and they spoke unto Ezra the scribe to bring the book of the law of Moses, which the YAHWEH had commanded to Israel.

2 And Ezra the priest brought the law before the congregation both of men and women, and all that could hear with understanding, upon the first day of the seventh month.

3 And he read therein before the street that *was* before the water gate from the morning until midday, before the men and the women, and those that could understand; and the ears of all the people *were attentive* unto the book of the law.

4 And Ezra the scribe stood upon a pulpit of wood, which they had made for the purpose; and beside him stood Mattithiah, and Shema, and Anaiah, and Urijah, and Hilkiah, and Maaseiah, on his right hand; and on his left hand, Pedaiah, and Mishael, and Malchiah, and Hashum, and Hashbadana, Zechariah, *and* Meshullam. [\[Matt 23:2\]; \[Luke 4:16\];](#)

5 And Ezra opened the book in the sight of all the people; (for he was above all the people;) and when he opened it, all the people stood up:

6 And Ezra blessed the YAHWEH, the great Elohim. And all the people answered, Amen, Amen, with lifting up their hands: and they bowed their heads, and worshipped the YAHWEH with *their* faces to the ground.

7 Also Jeshua, and Bani, and Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodijah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah, and the Levites, caused the people to understand the law: and the people *stood* in their place.

8 So they read in the book in the law of Elohim distinctly, and gave the sense, and caused *them* to understand the reading.

They comfort the people

9 And Nehemiah, which *is* the Tirshasa, and Ezra the priest the scribe, and the Levites that taught the people, said unto all the people, This day *is* holy unto the YAHWEH your Elohim; mourn not, nor weep. For all the people wept, when they heard the words of the law.

10 Then he said unto them, Go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared: for *this* day *is* holy unto our Lord: neither be you sorry; for the joy of the YAHWEH is your strength. [\[Luke 14:12\];](#)

11 So the Levites stilled all the people, saying, Hold your peace, for the day *is* holy; neither be you grieved.

12 And all the people went their way to eat, and to drink, and to send portions, and to make great mirth, because they had understood the words that were declared unto them.

The forwardness of them to hear and be instructed

13 And on the second day were gathered together the chief of the fathers of all the people, the priests, and the Levites, unto Ezra the scribe, even to understand the words of the law.

14 And they found written in the law which the YAHWEH had commanded by Moses, that the children of Israel should dwell in booths in the feast of the seventh month: [Exod 23:16](#); [Lev 23:34](#); [Num 29:12](#); [Deut 16:13-15](#);

15 And that they should publish and proclaim in all their cities, and in Jerusalem, saying, Go forth unto the mount, and fetch olive branches, and pine branches, and myrtle branches, and palm branches, and branches of thick trees, to make booths, as *it is* written.

They keep the feast of tabernacles

16 So the people went forth, and brought *them*, and made themselves booths, every one upon the roof of his house, and in their courts, and in the courts of the house of Elohim, and in the street of the water gate, and in the street of the gate of Ephraim.

17 And all the congregation of them that were come again out of the captivity made booths, and sat under the booths: for since the days of Jeshua the son of Nun unto that day had not the children of Israel done so. And there was very great gladness.

18 Also day by day, from the first day unto the last day, he read in the book of the law of Elohim. And they kept the feast seven days; and on the eighth day *was* a solemn assembly, according unto the manner.

A solemn fast, and repentance of the people

1 Now in the twenty and fourth day of this month the children of Israel were assembled with fasting, and with sackclothes, and earth upon them.

2 And the seed of Israel separated themselves from all strangers, and stood and confessed their sins, and the iniquities of their fathers.

3 And they stood up in their place, and read in the book of the law of the YAHWEH their Elohim *one* fourth part of the day; and *another* fourth part they confessed, and worshipped the YAHWEH their Elohim.

The Levites make a religious confession of Elohim's goodness, and their wickedness

4 Then stood up upon the stairs, of the Levites, Jeshua, and Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, *and* Chenani, and cried with a loud voice unto the YAHWEH their Elohim.

5 Then the Levites, Jeshua, and Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabniah, Sherebiah, Hodijah, Shebaniah, *and* Pethahiah, said, Stand up *and* bless the YAHWEH your Elohim for ever and ever: and blessed be thy glorious name, which is exalted above all blessing and praise.

6 You, *even* you, are YAHWEH alone; you have made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all *things* that *are* therein, the seas, and all that *is* therein, and you preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth you. [Gen 1:1](#); [Ps 146:6](#); [Acts 14:15](#); [Acts 17:24](#); [Rev 14:7](#);

7 You are the YAHWEH the Elohim, who didst choose Abram, and broughtest him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees, and gave him the name of Abraham; [Gen 11:31-32](#); [Gen 12:1](#); [Gen 17:5](#); [[Gen 11:31](#)];

8 And foundest his heart faithful before you, and madest a covenant with him to give the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Jebusites, and the Girgashites, to give *it, I say*, to his seed, and have performed thy words; for you are righteous: [Gen 15:6](#); [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [Gen 17:8](#); [Gen 26:4](#);

9 And didst see the affliction of our fathers in Egypt, and heardest their cry by the Red sea; [Exod 3:7](#); [Exod 14:10](#);

10 And showedst signs and wonders upon Pharaoh, and on all his servants, and on all the people of his land: for you knewest that they dealt proudly against them. So didst you get you a name, as *it is* this day. [Exod 7:1-25](#); [Exod 8:1-32](#); [Exod 9:1-35](#); [Exod 10:1-29](#); [Exod 11:1-10](#); [Exod 12:1-51](#); [Exod 14:1-31](#);

11 And you didst divide the sea before them, so that they went through the midst of the sea on the dry land; and their persecutors you threwest into the deeps, as a stone into the mighty waters. [Exod 14:22](#); [[Exod 15:5](#)];

12 Moreover you leddest them in the day by a cloudy pillar; and in the night by a pillar of fire, to give them light in the way wherein they should go. [Exod 13:21](#); [Exod 14:19](#); [Exod 40:38](#); [Ps 105:39](#); [[1Cor 10:1](#)];

13 You camest down also upon mount Sinai, and spakest with them from heaven, and gave them right judgments, and true laws, good statutes and commandments: [Exod 19:20](#); [Exod 20:1](#);

14 And madest known unto them thy holy Sabbath, and commandedst them precepts, statutes, and laws, by the hand of Moses thy servant:

15 And gave them bread from heaven for their hunger, and broughtest forth water for them out of the rock for their thirst, and promisedst them that they should go in to possess the land which you hadst sworn to give them. [Exod 16:14](#); [Exod 17:6](#); [Num 20:9](#); [[Exod 16:35](#)]; [[Num 20:8](#)];

16 But they and our fathers dealt proudly, and hardened their necks, and hearkened not to thy commandments, [[Acts 7:51](#)];

17 And refused to obey, neither were mindful of thy wonders that you didst among them; but hardened their necks, and in their rebellion appointed a captain to return to their bondage: but you are a Elohim

ready to pardon, gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and forsookest them not. [Num 14:4](#); [Exod 34:7](#); [Num 14:18](#); [Ps 86:5](#); [\[Ps 86:15\]](#); [\[Ps 103:8\]](#); [\[Jer 7:26\]](#);

18 Yes, when they had made them a molten calf, and said, This *is* thy Elohim that brought you up out of Egypt, and had wrought great provocations; [Exod 32:1](#);

19 Yet you in thy manifold mercies forsookest them not in the wilderness: the pillar of the cloud departed not from them by day, to lead them in the way; neither the pillar of fire by night, to show them light, and the way wherein they should go. [Exod 13:22](#); [Exod 40:38](#); [\[Exod 13:21\]](#); [\[1Cor 10:1\]](#);

20 You gave also thy good spirit to instruct them, and withheldest not thy manna from their mouth, and gave them water for their thirst. [Num 11:17](#); [Josh 5:12](#);

21 Yes, forty years didst you sustain them in the wilderness, *so that* they lacked nothing; their clothes waxed not old, and their feet swelled not. [Deut 2:7](#); [Deut 8:4](#); [Deut 29:5](#);

22 Moreover you gave them kingdoms and nations, and didst divide them into corners: so they possessed the land of Sihon, and the land of the king of Heshbon, and the land of Og king of Bashan. [Num 21:21](#); [Num 21:33](#);

23 Their children also multipliedst you as the stars of heaven, and broughtest them into the land, concerning which you hadst promised to their fathers, that they should go in to possess *it*. [Gen 22:17](#);

24 So the children went in and possessed the land, and you subduedst before them the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, and gave them into their hands, with their kings, and the people of the land, that they might do with them as they would. [Josh 1:2-3](#);

25 And they took strong cities, and a fat land, and possessed houses full of all goods, wells digged, vineyards, and oliveyards, and fruit trees in abundance: so they did eat, and were filled, and became fat, and delighted themselves in thy great goodness.

26 Nevertheless they were disobedient, and rebelled against you, and cast thy law behind their backs, and slew thy prophets which testified against them to turn them to you, and they wrought great provocations. [1Kgs 18:4](#); [1Kgs 19:10](#); [2Chr 24:20-21](#);

27 Therefore you deliveredst them into the hand of their enemies, who vexed them: and in the time of their trouble, when they cried unto you, you hearest *them* from heaven; and according to thy manifold mercies you gave them saviours, who saved them out of the hand of their enemies. [Judg 2:14](#);

28 But after they had rest, they did evil again before you: therefore leftest you them in the hand of their enemies, so that they had the dominion over them: yet when they returned, and cried unto you, you hearest *them* from heaven; and many times didst you deliver them according to thy mercies;

29 And testifiedst against them, that you mightest bring them again unto thy law: yet they dealt proudly, and hearkened not unto thy commandments, but sinned against thy judgments, (which if a man do, he shall live in them;) and withdrew the shoulder, and hardened their neck, and would not hear. [Lev 18:5](#); [Ezek 20:11](#); [Rom 10:5](#); [Gal 3:12](#); [\[Jer 7:26\]](#);

30 Yet many years didst you forbear them, and testifiedst against them by thy spirit in thy prophets: yet would they not give ear: therefore gave you them into the hand of the people of the lands. [2Kgs 17:13](#); [2Chr 36:15](#);

31 Nevertheless for thy great mercies' sake you didst not utterly consume them, nor forsake them; for you are a gracious and merciful Elohim.

32 Now therefore, our Elohim, the great, the mighty, and the terrible Elohim, who keepest covenant and mercy, let not all the trouble seem little before you, that has come upon us, on our kings, on our princes, and on our priests, and on our prophets, and on our fathers, and on all thy people, since the time of the kings of Assyria unto this day.

33 Howbeit you are just in all that is brought upon us; for you have done right, but we have done wickedly: [Deut 32:4](#); [Dan 9:14](#);

34 Neither have our kings, our princes, our priests, nor our fathers, kept thy law, nor hearkened unto thy commandments and thy testimonies, wherewith you didst testify against them.

35 For they have not served you in their kingdom, and in thy great goodness that you gave them, and in the large and fat land which you gave before them, neither turned they from their wicked works.

36 Behold, we *are* servants this day, and *for* the land that you gave unto our fathers to eat the fruit thereof and the good thereof, behold, we *are* servants in it:

37 And it yieldeth much increase unto the kings whom you have set over us because of our sins: also they have dominion over our bodies, and over our cattle, at their pleasure, and we *are* in great distress.
38 And because of all this we make a sure *covenant*, and write *it*; and our princes, Levites, *and* priests, seal *unto it*.

NEHEMIAH TEN

The names of them that sealed the covenant

1 Now those that sealed *were*, Nehemiah, the Tirshasa, the son of Hachaliah, and Zidkijah,
2 Seraiah, Azariah, Jeremiah,
3 Pashur, Amariah, Malchijah,
4 Hattush, Shebaniah, Malluch,
5 Harim, Meremoth, Obadiah,
6 Daniel, Ginnethon, Baruch,
7 Meshullam, Abijah, Mijamin,
8 Maaziah, Bilgai, Shemaiah: these *were* the priests.
9 And the Levites: both Jeshua the son of Azaniah, Binnui of the sons of Henadad, Kadmiel;
10 And their brethren, Shebaniah, Hodijah, Kelita, Pelaiah, Hanan,
11 Micha, Rehob, Hashabiah,
12 Zaccur, Sherebiah, Shebaniah,
13 Hodijah, Bani, Beninu.
14 The chief of the people; Parosh, Pahasmoab, Elam, Zattu, Bani,
15 Bunni, Azgad, Bebai,
16 Adonijah, Bigvai, Adin,
17 Ater, Hizkijah, Azzur,
18 Hodijah, Hashum, Bezai,
19 Hariph, Anathoth, Nebai,
20 Magpiash, Meshullam, Hezir,
21 Meshezabeel, Zadok, Jaddua,
22 Pelatiah, Hanan, Anaiah,
23 Hoshea, Hananiah, Hashub,
24 Hallohesh, Pileha, Shobek,
25 Rehum, Hashabnah, Maaseiah,
26 And Ahijah, Hanan, Anan,
27 Malluch, Harim, Baanah.
28 And the rest of the people, the priests, the Levites, the porters, the singers, the Nethinims, and all they that had separated themselves from the people of the lands unto the law of Elohim, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, every one having knowledge, and having understanding;

The points of the covenant

29 They clave to their brethren, their nobles, and entered into a curse, and into an oath, to walk in Elohim's law, which was given by Moses the servant of Elohim, and to observe and do all the commandments of the YAHWEH our Lord, and his judgments and his statutes; [\[2Chr 15:12\]](#); [\[Ps 119:106\]](#);
30 And that we would not give our daughters unto the people of the land, nor take their daughters for our sons: [Exod 34:16](#); [Deut 7:3](#);

31 And *if* the people of the land bring ware or any victuals on the Sabbath day to sell, *that* we would not buy it of them on the Sabbath, or on the holy day: and *that* we would leave the seventh year, and the exaction of every debt. [Exod 20:10](#); [Exod 34:21](#); [Lev 23:2](#); [Deut 5:12-14](#); [Exod 23:10](#); [Lev 25:2](#); [Deut 5:1](#);

32 Also we made ordinances for us, to charge ourselves yearly with the third part of a shekel for the service of the house of our Elohim;

33 For the showbread, and for the continual meat offering, and for the continual burnt offering, of the Sabbaths, of the new moons, for the set feasts, and for the holy *things*, and for the sin offerings to make an atonement for Israel, and *for* all the work of the house of our Elohim. [Num 28:29](#); [\[Ezra 3:5\]](#);

34 And we cast the lots among the priests, the Levites, and the people, for the wood offering, to bring *it* into the house of our Elohim, after the houses of our fathers, at times appointed year by year, to burn upon the altar of the YAHWEH our Elohim, as *it is* written in the law:

35 And to bring the firstfruits of our ground, and the firstfruits of all fruit of all trees, year by year, unto the house of the YAHWEH: [Exod 23:19](#); [Lev 19:23](#);

36 Also the firstborn of our sons, and of our cattle, as *it is* written in the law, and the firstlings of our herds and of our flocks, to bring to the house of our Elohim, unto the priests that minister in the house of our Elohim: [Exod 13:2](#); [Num 3:13](#); [Num 8:17](#);

37 And *that* we should bring the firstfruits of our dough, and our offerings, and the fruit of all manner of trees, of wine and of oil, unto the priests, to the chambers of the house of our Elohim; and the tithes of our ground unto the Levites, that the same Levites might have the tithes in all the cities of our tillage. [Lev 23:17](#); [Num 15:19](#); [Num 18:12](#); [Deut 18:4](#); [Num 18:24-25](#);

38 And the priest the son of Aaron shall be with the Levites, when the Levites take tithes: and the Levites shall bring up the tithe of the tithes unto the house of our Elohim, to the chambers, into the treasure house. [Num 18:26](#);

39 For the children of Israel and the children of Levi shall bring the offering of the corn, of the new wine, and the oil, unto the chambers, where *are* the vessels of the sanctuary, and the priests that minister, and the porters, and the singers: and we will not forsake the house of our Elohim.

The rulers, voluntary men, and the tenth man chosen by lot, dwell at Jerusalem

1 And the rulers of the people dwelt at Jerusalem: the rest of the people also cast lots, to bring one of ten to dwell in Jerusalem the holy city, and nine parts *to dwell* in *other* cities.

2 And the people blessed all the men, that willingly offered themselves to dwell at Jerusalem. [Exod 25:2];

A catalogue of their names

3 Now these *are* the chief of the province that dwelt in Jerusalem: but in the cities of Judah dwelt every one in his possession in their cities, *to wit*, Israel, the priests, and the Levites, and the Nethinims, and the children of Solomon's servants.

4 And at Jerusalem dwelt *certain* of the children of Judah, and of the children of Benjamin. Of the children of Judah; Athaiah the son of Uzziah, the son of Zechariah, the son of Amariah, the son of Shephatiah, the son of Mahalaleel, of the children of Perez;

5 And Maaseiah the son of Baruch, the son of Colhozeh, the son of Hazaiah, the son of Adaiah, the son of Joiarib, the son of Zechariah, the son of Shiloni.

6 All the sons of Perez that dwelt at Jerusalem *were* four hundred threescore and eight valiant men.

7 And these *are* the sons of Benjamin; Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Joed, the son of Pedaiah, the son of Kolaiah, the son of Maaseiah, the son of Ithiel, the son of Jesaiah.

8 And after him Gabbai, Sallai, nine hundred twenty and eight.

9 And Joel the son of Zichri *was* their overseer: and Judah the son of Senuah *was* second over the city.

10 Of the priests: Jedaiah the son of Joiarib, Jachin.

11 Seraiah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, *was* the ruler of the house of Elohim.

12 And their brethren that did the work of the house *were* eight hundred twenty and two: and Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pelaliah, the son of Amzi, the son of Zechariah, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchiah,

13 And his brethren, chief of the fathers, two hundred forty and two: and Amashai the son of Azareel, the son of Ahasai, the son of Meshillemoth, the son of Immer,

14 And their brethren, mighty men of valour, a hundred twenty and eight: and their overseer *was* Zabdiel, the son of *one of* the great men.

15 Also of the Levites: Shemaiah the son of Hashub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Bunni;

16 And Shabbethai and Jozabad, of the chief of the Levites, *had* the oversight of the outward business of the house of Elohim.

17 And Mattaniah the son of Micha, the son of Zabdi, the son of Asaph, *was* the principal to begin the thanksgiving in prayer: and Bakbukiah the second among his brethren, and Abda the son of Shammua, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun.

18 All the Levites in the holy city *were* two hundred fourscore and four.

19 Moreover the porters, Akkub, Talmon, and their brethren that kept the gates, *were* a hundred seventy and two.

The residue dwell in other cities

20 And the residue of Israel, of the priests, *and* the Levites, *were* in all the cities of Judah, every one in his inheritance.

21 But the Nethinims dwelt in Ophel: and Ziha and Gispa *were* over the Nethinims.

22 The overseer also of the Levites at Jerusalem *was* Uzzi the son of Bani, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Micha. Of the sons of Asaph, the singers *were* over the business of the house of Elohim.

23 For *it was* the king's commandment concerning them, that a certain portion should be for the singers, due for every day.

24 And Pethahiah the son of Meshezabeel, of the children of Zerah the son of Judah, *was* at the king's hand in all matters concerning the people.

25 And for the villages, with their fields, *some* of the children of Judah dwelt at Kirjatharba, and *in* the villages thereof, and at Dibon, and *in* the villages thereof, and at Jekabzeel, and *in* the villages thereof,

26 And at Jeshua, and at Moladah, and at Bethpheet,

27 And at Hazarshual, and at Beersheba, and *in* the villages thereof,

28 And at Ziklag, and at Mekonah, and in the villages thereof,

29 And at Enrimmon, and at Zareah, and at Jarmuth,

30 Zanoah, Adullam, and *in* their villages, at Lachish, and the fields thereof, at Azekah, and *in* the villages thereof. And they dwelt from Beersheba unto the valley of Hinnom.

31 The children also of Benjamin from Geba *dwelt* at Michmash, and Aija, and Bethel, and *in* their villages,

32 *And* at Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah,

33 Hazor, Ramah, Gittaim,

34 Hadid, Zeboim, Neballat,

35 Lod, and Ono, the valley of craftsmen.

36 And of the Levites *were* divisions *in* Judah, *and* in Benjamin.

NEHEMIAH TWELVE

The priests and the Levites which came up with Zerubbabel

1 Now these *are* the priests and the Levites that went up with Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua: Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra,

2 Amariah, Malluch, Hattush,

3 Shechaniah, Rehum, Meremoth,

4 Iddo, Ginnetho, Abijah,

5 Miamin, Maadiah, Bilgah,

6 Shemaiah, and Joiarib, Jedaiah,

7 Sallu, Amok, Hilkiyah, Jedaiah. These *were* the chief of the priests and of their brethren in the days of Jeshua.

8 Moreover the Levites: Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, *and* Mattaniah, *which was* over the thanksgiving, he and his brethren.

9 Also Bakbukiah and Unni, their brethren, *were* over against them in the watches.

The succession of high priests

10 And Jeshua begat Joiakim, Joiakim also begat Eliashib, and Eliashib begat Joiada,

11 And Joiada begat Jonathan, and Jonathan begat Jaddua.

12 And in the days of Joiakim were priests, the chief of the fathers: of Seraiah, Meraiah; of Jeremiah, Hananiah;

13 Of Ezra, Meshullam; of Amariah, Jehohanan;

14 Of Melicu, Jonathan; of Shebaniah, Joseph;

15 Of Harim, Adna; of Meraioth, Helkai;

- 16 Of Iddo, Zechariah; of Ginnethon, Meshullam;
17 Of Abijah, Zichri; of Miniamin, of Moadiah, Piltai;
18 Of Bilgah, Shammua; of Shemaiah, Jehonathan;
19 And of Joarib, Mattenai; of Jedaiah, Uzzi;
20 Of Sallai, Kallai; of Amok, Eber;
21 Of Hilkiah, Hashabiah; of Jedaiah, Nethaneel.

Certain chief Levites

- 22 The Levites in the days of Eliashib, Joiada, and Johanan, and Jaddua, *were* recorded chief of the fathers: also the priests, to the reign of Darius the Persian.
23 The sons of Levi, the chief of the fathers, *were* written in the book of the chronicles, even until the days of Johanan the son of Eliashib. [1Chr 9:10](#);
24 And the chief of the Levites: Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and Jeshua the son of Kadmiel, with their brethren over against them, to praise *and* to give thanks, according to the commandment of David the man of Elohim, ward over against ward.
25 Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, Akkub, *were* porters keeping the ward at the thresholds of the gates.
26 These *were* in the days of Joiakim the son of Jeshua, the son of Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the governor, and of Ezra the priest, the scribe.

The solemnity of the dedication of the walls

- 27 And at the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem they sought the Levites out of all their places, to bring them to Jerusalem, to keep the dedication with gladness, both with thanksgivings, and with singing, *with* cymbals, psalteries, and with harps.
28 And the sons of the singers gathered themselves together, both out of the plain country round about Jerusalem, and from the villages of Netophasi;
29 Also from the house of Gilgal, and out of the fields of Geba and Azmaveth: for the singers had built them villages round about Jerusalem.
30 And the priests and the Levites purified themselves, and purified the people, and the gates, and the wall.
31 Then I brought up the princes of Judah upon the wall, and appointed two great *companies of them that gave* thanks, *whereof one* went on the right hand upon the wall toward the dung gate:
32 And after them went Hoshai, and half of the princes of Judah,
33 And Azariah, Ezra, and Meshullam,
34 Judah, and Benjamin, and Shemaiah, and Jeremiah,
35 And *certain* of the priests' sons with trumpets; *namely*, Zechariah the son of Jonathan, the son of Shemaiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Michaiah, the son of Zaccur, the son of Asaph:
36 And his brethren, Shemaiah, and Azarael, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethaneel, and Judah, Hanani, with the musical instruments of David the man of Elohim, and Ezra the scribe before them.
37 And at the fountain gate, which was over against them, they went up by the stairs of the city of David, at the going up of the wall, above the house of David, even unto the water gate eastward.
38 And the other *company of them that gave* thanks went over against *them*, and I after them, and the half of the people upon the wall, from beyond the tower of the furnaces even unto the broad wall;
39 And from above the gate of Ephraim, and above the old gate, and above the fish gate, and the tower of Hananeel, and the tower of Meah, even unto the sheep gate: and they stood still in the prison gate.
40 So stood the two *companies of them that gave* thanks in the house of Elohim, and I, and the half of the rulers with me:
41 And the priests; Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Michaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, *and* Hananiah, with trumpets;

42 And Maaseiah, and Shemaiah, and Eleazar, and Uzzi, and Jehohanan, and Malchijah, and Elam, and Ezer. And the singers sang loud, with Jezrahiah *their* overseer.

43 Also that day they offered great sacrifices, and rejoiced: for Elohim had made them rejoice with great joy: the wives also and the children rejoiced: so that the joy of Jerusalem was heard even afar off.

The offices of priests and Levites appointed in the temple

44 And at that time were some appointed over the chambers for the treasures, for the offerings, for the firstfruits, and for the tithes, to gather into them out of the fields of the cities the portions of the law for the priests and Levites: for Judah rejoiced for the priests and for the Levites that waited.

45 And both the singers and the porters kept the ward of their Elohim, and the ward of the purification, according to the commandment of David, *and* of Solomon his son. [1Chr 25:1-31](#);

46 For in the days of David and Asaph of old *there were* chief of the singers, and songs of praise and thanksgiving unto Elohim.

47 And all Israel in the days of Zerubbabel, and in the days of Nehemiah, gave the portions of the singers and the porters, every day his portion: and they sanctified *holy things* unto the Levites; and the Levites sanctified *them* unto the children of Aaron.

NEHEMIAH THIRTEEN

Upon the reading of the law, separation is made from the mixed multitude

1 On that day they read in the book of Moses in the audience of the people; and therein was found written, that the Ammonite and the Moabite should not come into the congregation of Elohim for ever; [Deut 23:3-5](#); [\[Deut 23:3\]](#);

2 Because they met not the children of Israel with bread and with water, but hired Balaam against them, that he should curse them: howbeit our Elohim turned the curse into a blessing. [Num 22:5](#); [Josh 24:9](#);

3 Now it came to pass, when they had heard the law, that they separated from Israel all the mixed multitude.

Nehemiah, at his return, causes the chambers to be cleansed

4 And before this, Eliashib the priest, having the oversight of the chamber of the house of our Elohim, *was* allied unto Tobiah:

5 And he had prepared for him a great chamber, where before they laid the meat offerings, the frankincense, and the vessels, and the tithes of the corn, the new wine, and the oil, which was commanded *to be given* to the Levites, and the singers, and the porters; and the offerings of the priests.

6 But in all this *time* was not I at Jerusalem: for in the two and thirtieth year of areaxerxes king of Babylon came I unto the king, and after certain days obtained I leave of the king:

7 And I came to Jerusalem, and understood of the evil that Eliashib did for Tobiah, in preparing him a chamber in the courts of the house of Elohim.

8 And it grieved me sore: therefore I cast forth all the household stuff of Tobiah out of the chamber.

9 Then I commanded, and they cleansed the chambers: and thither brought I again the vessels of the house of Elohim, with the meat offering and the frankincense.

He reforms the offices in the house of Elohim

10 And I perceived that the portions of the Levites had not been given *them*: for the Levites and the singers, that did the work, were fled every one to his field.

11 Then contended I with the rulers, and said, Why is the house of Elohim forsaken? And I gathered them together, and set them in their place.

12 Then brought all Judah the tithe of the grain and the new wine and the oil unto the treasuries.

13 And I made treasurers over the treasuries, Shelemiah the priest, and Zadok the scribe, and of the Levites, Pedaiah: and next to them *was* Hanan the son of Zaccur, the son of Mattaniah: for they were counted faithful, and their office *was* to distribute unto their brethren.

14 Remember me, O my Elohim, concerning this, and wipe not out my good deeds that I have done for the house of my Elohim, and for the offices thereof.

the violation of the Sabbath

15 In those days saw I in Judah *some* treading wine presses on the Sabbath, and bringing in sheaves, and lading asses; as also wine, grapes, and figs, and all *manner of* burdens, which they brought into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day: and I testified *against them* in the day wherein they sold victuals.

16 There dwelt men of Tyre also therein, which brought fish, and all manner of ware, and sold on the Sabbath unto the children of Judah, and in Jerusalem.

17 Then I contended with the nobles of Judah, and said unto them, What evil thing *is* this that you do, and profane the Sabbath day? [Exod 20:8](#); [Lev 19:30](#);

18 Did not your fathers thus, and did not our Elohim bring all this evil upon us, and upon this city? yet you bring more wrath upon Israel by profaning the Sabbath.

19 And it came to pass, that when the gates of Jerusalem began to be dark before the Sabbath, I commanded that the gates should be shut, and charged that they should not be opened till after the Sabbath: and *some* of my servants set I at the gates, *that* there should no burden be brought in on the Sabbath day. [\[Jer 17:21\]](#);

20 So the merchants and sellers of all kind of ware lodged without Jerusalem once or twice.

21 Then I testified against them, and said unto them, Why lodge you about the wall? if you do *so* again, I will lay hands on you. From that time forth came they no *more* on the Sabbath.

22 And I commanded the Levites that they should cleanse themselves, and *that* they should come *and* keep the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day. Remember me, O my Elohim, *concerning* this also, and spare me according to the greatness of thy mercy. [\[Neh 5:19\]](#);

and the marriages with the strange wives

23 In those days also saw I Jews *that* had married wives of Ashdod, of Ammon, *and* of Moab:

24 And their children spoke half in the speech of Ashdod, and could not speak in the Jews' language, but according to the language of each people.

25 And I contended with them, and cursed them, and smote certain of them, and plucked off their hair, and made them swear by Elohim, *saying*, you shall not give your daughters unto their sons, nor take their daughters unto your sons, or for yourselves.

26 Did not Solomon king of Israel sin by these things? yet among many nations was there no king like him, who was beloved of his Elohim, and Elohim made him king over all Israel: nevertheless even him did outlandish women cause to sin. [1Kgs 11:4](#); [1Kgs 3:13](#); [2Chr 1:12](#);

27 Shall we then hearken unto you to do all this great evil, to transgress against our Elohim in marrying strange wives?

28 And *one* of the sons of Joiada, the son of Eliashib the high priest, *was* son in law to Sanballat the Horonite: therefore I chased him from me.

29 Remember them, O my Elohim, because they have defiled the priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood, and of the Levites.

30 Thus cleansed I them from all strangers, and appointed the wards of the priests and the Levites, every one in his business;

31 And for the wood offering, at times appointed, and for the firstfruits. Remember me, O my Elohim, for good.

Esther

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#)

ESTHER ONE

Ahasuerus makes royal feasts

1 Now it came to pass in the days of Ahasuerus, (this *is* Ahasuerus which reigned, from India even unto Ethiopia, *over* a hundred and seven and twenty provinces:)

2 *That* in those days, when the king Ahasuerus sat on the throne of his kingdom, which *was* in Shushan the palace,

3 In the third year of his reign, he made a feast unto all his princes and his servants; the power of Persia and Media, the nobles and princes of the provinces, *being* before him:

4 When he showed the riches of his glorious kingdom and the honour of his excellent majesty many days, *even* a hundred and fourscore days.

5 And when these days were expired, the king made a feast unto all the people that were present in Shushan the palace, both unto great and small, seven days, in the court of the garden of the king's palace;

6 *Where were* white, green, and blue, *hangings*, fastened with cords of fine linen and purple to silver rings and pillars of marble: the beds *were of* gold and silver, upon a pavement of red, and blue, and white, and black, marble.

7 And they gave *them* drink in vessels of gold, (the vessels being diverse one from another,) and royal wine in abundance, according to the state of the king.

8 And the drinking *was* according to the law; none did compel: for so the king had appointed to all the officers of his house, that they should do according to every man's pleasure.

9 Also Vashti the queen made a feast for the women *in* the royal house which *belonged* to king Ahasuerus. [[Dan 6:8](#)];

Vashti, sent for, refuses to come

10 On the seventh day, when the heart of the king was merry with wine, he commanded Mehuman, Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, and Abagtha, Zethar, and Carcas, the seven chamberlains that served in the presence of Ahasuerus the king, [[Esth 7:9](#)];

11 To bring Vashti the queen before the king with the crown royal, to show the people and the princes her beauty: for she *was* fair to look on.

12 But the queen Vashti refused to come at the king's commandment by *his* chamberlains: therefore was the king very wroth, and his anger burned in him.

Ahasuerus, by the counsel of Memucan, puts away Vashti, and makes the decree of men's sovereignty

13 Then the king said to the wise men, which knew the times, (for so *was* the king's manner toward all that knew law and judgment:

14 And the next unto him *was* Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, *and* Memucan, the seven princes of Persia and Media, which saw the king's face, *and* which sat the first in the kingdom;)

15 What shall we do unto the queen Vashti according to law, because she has not performed the commandment of the king Ahasuerus by the chamberlains?

16 And Memucan answered before the king and the princes, Vashti the queen has not done wrong to the king only, but also to all the princes, and to all the people that *are* in all the provinces of the king Ahasuerus.

17 For *this* deed of the queen shall come abroad unto all women, so that they shall despise their husbands in their eyes, when it shall be reported, The king Ahasuerus commanded Vashti the queen to be brought in before him, but she came not.

18 *Likewise* shall the ladies of Persia and Media say this day unto all the king's princes, which have heard of the deed of the queen. Thus *shall there arise* too much contempt and wrath.

19 If it please the king, let there go a royal commandment from him, and let it be written among the laws of the Persians and the Medes, that it be not altered, That Vashti come no more before king Ahasuerus; and let the king give her royal estate unto another that is better than she.

20 And when the king's decree which he shall make shall be published throughout all his empire, (for it is great,) all the wives shall give to their husbands honour, both to great and small.

21 And the saying pleased the king and the princes; and the king did according to the word of Memucan:

22 For he sent letters into all the king's provinces, into every province according to the writing thereof, and to every people after their language, that every man should bear rule in his own house, and that *it* should be published according to the language of every people.

ESTHER TWO

Out of the choice of virgins a queen is to be chosen

1 After these things, when the wrath of king Ahasuerus was appeased, he remembered Vashti, and what she had done, and what was decreed against her.

2 Then said the king's servants that ministered unto him, Let there be fair young virgins sought for the king:

3 And let the king appoint officers in all the provinces of his kingdom, that they may gather together all the fair young virgins unto Shushan the palace, to the house of the women, unto the custody of Hege the king's chamberlain, keeper of the women; and let their things for purification be given *them*:

4 And let the maiden which pleaseth the king be queen instead of Vashti. And the thing pleased the king; and he did so.

Mordecai the nursing father of Esther

5 *Now* in Shushan the palace there was a certain Jew, whose name *was* Mordecai, the son of Jair, the son of Shimei, the son of Kish, a Benjamite;

6 Who had been carried away from Jerusalem with the captivity which had been carried away with Jeconiah king of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had carried away. [2Kgs 24:14](#); [\[2Kgs 24:15\]](#);

7 And he brought up Hadassah, that *is*, Esther, his uncle's daughter: for she had neither father nor mother, and the maid *was* fair and beautiful; whom Mordecai, when her father and mother were dead, took for his own daughter.

Esther preferred before the rest

8 So it came to pass, when the king's commandment and his decree was heard, and when many maidens were gathered together unto Shushan the palace, to the custody of Hegai, that Esther was brought also unto the king's house, to the custody of Hegai, keeper of the women.

9 And the maiden pleased him, and she obtained kindness of him; and he speedily gave her her things for purification, with such things as belonged to her, and seven maidens, *which were* meet to be given her, out of the king's house: and he preferred her and her maids unto the best *place* of the house of the women.

10 Esther had not showed her people nor her kindred: for Mordecai had charged her that she should not show *it*.

11 And Mordecai walked every day before the court of the women's house, to know how Esther did, and what should become of her.

The manner of purification, and going in to the king

12 Now when every maid's turn was come to go in to king Ahasuerus, after that she had been twelve months, according to the manner of the women, (for so were the days of their purifications accomplished, *to wit*, six months with oil of myrrh, and six months with sweet odours, and with *other* things for the purifying of the women;)

13 Then thus came *every* maiden unto the king; whatsoever she desired was given her to go with her out of the house of the women unto the king's house.

14 In the evening she went, and on the morrow she returned into the second house of the women, to the custody of Shaashgaz, the king's chamberlain, which kept the concubines: she came in unto the king no more, except the king delighted in her, and that she were called by name.

Esther best pleasing the king, is made queen

15 Now when the turn of Esther, the daughter of Abihail the uncle of Mordecai, who had taken her for his daughter, was come to go in unto the king, she required nothing but what Hegai the king's chamberlain, the keeper of the women, appointed. And Esther obtained favor in the sight of all them that looked upon her.

16 So Esther was taken unto king Ahasuerus into his house royal in the tenth month, which *is* the month Tebeth, in the seventh year of his reign.

17 And the king loved Esther above all the women, and she obtained grace and favor in his sight more than all the virgins; so that he set the royal crown upon her head, and made her queen instead of Vashti.

18 Then the king made a great feast unto all his princes and his servants, *even* Esther's feast; and he made a release to the provinces, and gave gifts, according to the state of the king.

19 And when the virgins were gathered together the second time, then Mordecai sat in the king's gate.

20 Esther had not yet showed her kindred nor her people; as Mordecai had charged her: for Esther did the commandment of Mordecai, like as when she was brought up with him.

Mordecai discovering a treason, is recorded in the chronicles

21 In those days, while Mordecai sat in the king's gate, two of the king's chamberlains, Bigthan and Teresh, of those which kept the door, were wroth, and sought to lay hand on the king Ahasuerus.

22 And the thing was known to Mordecai, who told *it* unto Esther the queen; and Esther certified the king *thereof* in Mordecai's name.

23 And when inquisition was made of the matter, it was found out; therefore they were both hanged on a tree: and it was written in the book of the chronicles before the king.

ESTHER THREE

Haman, advanced by the king, and despised by Mordecai, seeks revenge upon all the Jews

1 After these things did king Ahasuerus promote Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, and advanced him, and set his seat above all the princes that *were* with him.

2 And all the king's servants, that *were* in the king's gate, bowed, and revered Haman: for the king had so commanded concerning him. But Mordecai bowed not, nor did *him* reverence.

3 Then the king's servants, which *were* in the king's gate, said unto Mordecai, Why transgressest you the king's commandment?

4 Now it came to pass, when they spoke daily unto him, and he hearkened not unto them, that they told Haman, to see whether Mordecai's matters would stand: for he had told them that he *was* a Jew.

5 And when Haman saw that Mordecai bowed not, nor did him reverence, then was Haman full of wrath.

6 And he thought scorn to lay hands on Mordecai alone; for they had showed him the people of Mordecai: wherefore Haman sought to destroy all the Jews that *were* throughout the whole kingdom of Ahasuerus, *even* the people of Mordecai.

He casts lots

7 In the first month, that *is*, the month Nisan, in the twelfth year of king Ahasuerus, they cast Pur, that *is*, the lot, before Haman from day to day, and from month to month, *to* the twelfth *month*, that *is*, the month Adar.

He obtains by calumny a decree of the king to put the Jews to death

8 And Haman said unto king Ahasuerus, There is a certain people scattered abroad and dispersed among the people in all the provinces of thy kingdom; and their laws *are* diverse from all people; neither keep they the king's laws: therefore it *is* not for the king's profit to suffer them.

9 If it please the king, let it be written that they may be destroyed: and I will pay ten thousand talents of silver to the hands of those that have the charge of the business, to bring *it* into the king's treasures.

10 And the king took his ring from his hand, and gave it unto Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the Jews' enemy.

11 And the king said unto Haman, The silver *is* given to you, the people also, to do with them as it seemeth good to you.

12 Then were the king's scribes called on the thirteenth day of the first month, and there was written according to all that Haman had commanded unto the king's lieutenants, and to the governors that *were* over every province, and to the rulers of every people of every province according to the writing thereof, and *to* every people after their language; in the name of king Ahasuerus was it written, and sealed with the king's ring.

13 And the letters were sent by posts into all the king's provinces, to destroy, to kill, and to cause to perish, all Jews, both young and old, little children and women, in one day, *even* upon the thirteenth *day* of the twelfth month, which is the month Adar, and *to take* the spoil of them for a prey.

14 The copy of the writing for a commandment to be given in every province was published unto all people, that they should be ready against that day.

15 The posts went out, being hastened by the king's commandment, and the decree was given in Shushan the palace. And the king and Haman sat down to drink; but the city Shushan was perplexed.

The great mourning of Mordecai and the Jews

1 When Mordecai perceived all that was done, Mordecai rent his clothes, and put on sackcloth with ashes, and went out into the midst of the city, and cried with a loud and a bitter cry;

2 And came even before the king's gate: for none *might* enter into the king's gate clothed with sackcloth.

3 And in every province, whithersoever the king's commandment and his decree came, *there was* great mourning among the Jews, and fasting, and weeping, and wailing; and many lay in sackcloth and ashes.

Esther, understanding it, sends to Mordecai, who shows the cause, and advises her to undertake the suit

4 So Esther's maids and her chamberlains came and told *it* her. Then was the queen exceedingly grieved; and she sent raiment to clothe Mordecai, and to take away his sackcloth from him: but he received *it* not.

5 Then called Esther for Hatach, *one* of the king's chamberlains, whom he had appointed to attend upon her, and gave him a commandment to Mordecai, to know what it *was*, and why it *was*.

6 So Hatach went forth to Mordecai unto the street of the city, which *was* before the king's gate.

7 And Mordecai told him of all that had happened unto him, and of the sum of the money that Haman had promised to pay to the king's treasuries for the Jews, to destroy them.

8 Also he gave him the copy of the writing of the decree that was given at Shushan to destroy them, to show *it* unto Esther, and to declare *it* unto her, and to charge her that she should go in unto the king, to make supplication unto him, and to make request before him for her people.

9 And Hatach came and told Esther the words of Mordecai.

She excusing herself, is threatened by Mordecai

10 Again Esther spoke unto Hatach, and gave him commandment unto Mordecai;

11 All the king's servants, and the people of the king's provinces, do know, that whosoever, whether man or woman, shall come unto the king into the inner court, who is not called, *there is* one law of his to put *him* to death, except such to whom the king shall hold out the golden sceptre, that he may live: but I have not been called to come in unto the king these thirty days.

12 And they told to Mordecai Esther's words.

13 Then Mordecai commanded to answer Esther, Think not with thyself that you shall escape in the king's house, more than all the Jews.

14 For if you altogether holdest thy peace at this time, *then* shall there enlargement and deliverance arise to the Jews from another place; but you and thy father's house shall be destroyed: and who knoweth whether you are come to the kingdom for *such* a time as this?

She appointing a fast, undertakes the suit

15 Then Esther bade *them* return Mordecai *this answer*,

16 Go, gather together all the Jews that are present in Shushan, and fast you for me, and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day: I also and my maidens will fast likewise; and so will I go in unto the king, which *is* not according to the law: and if I perish, I perish.

17 So Mordecai went his way, and did according to all that Esther had commanded him.

Esther, adventuring on the king's favor, obtains the grace of the golden sceptre, and invites the king and Haman to a banquet

1 Now it came to pass on the third day, that Esther put on *her* royal *apparel*, and stood in the inner court of the king's house, over against the king's house: and the king sat upon his royal throne in the royal house, over against the gate of the house.

2 And it was so, when the king saw Esther the queen standing in the court, *that* she obtained favor in his sight: and the king held out to Esther the golden sceptre that *was* in his hand. So Esther drew near, and touched the top of the sceptre.

3 Then said the king unto her, What will you, queen Esther? and what *is* thy request? it shall be even given you to the half of the kingdom.

4 And Esther answered, If *it seem* good unto the king, let the king and Haman come this day unto the banquet that I have prepared for him.

5 Then the king said, Cause Haman to make haste, that he may do as Esther has said. So the king and Haman came to the banquet that Esther had prepared.

She, being encouraged by the king in her suit, invites them to another banquet the next day

6 And the king said unto Esther at the banquet of wine, What *is* thy petition? and it shall be granted you: and what *is* thy request? even to the half of the kingdom it shall be performed.

7 Then answered Esther, and said, My petition and my request *is*;

8 If I have found favor in the sight of the king, and if it please the king to grant my petition, and to perform my request, let the king and Haman come to the banquet that I shall prepare for them, and I will do to morrow as the king has said.

Haman, proud of his advancement, repines at the contempt of Mordecai

9 Then went Haman forth that day joyful and with a glad heart: but when Haman saw Mordecai in the king's gate, that he stood not up, nor moved for him, he was full of indignation against Mordecai.

10 Nevertheless Haman refrained himself: and when he came home, he sent and called for his friends, and Zeresh his wife.

11 And Haman told them of the glory of his riches, and the multitude of his children, and all *the things* wherein the king had promoted him, and how he had advanced him above the princes and servants of the king.

12 Haman said moreover, yes, Esther the queen did let no man come in with the king unto the banquet that she had prepared but myself; and to morrow am I invited unto her also with the king.

13 yet all this availeth me nothing, so long as I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the king's gate.

By the counsel of Zeresh he prepares for him a gallows

14 Then said Zeresh his wife and all his friends unto him, Let a gallows be made of fifty cubits high, and to morrow speak you unto the king that Mordecai may be hanged thereon: then go you in merrily with the king unto the banquet. And the thing pleased Haman; and he caused the gallows to be made.

Ahasuerus, reading in the chronicles of the good service done by Mordecai, takes care for his reward

- 1** On that night could not the king sleep, and he commanded to bring the book of records of the chronicles; and they were read before the king.
- 2** And it was found written, that Mordecai had told of Bigthana and Teresh, two of the king's chamberlains, the keepers of the door, who sought to lay hand on the king Ahasuerus.
- 3** And the king said, What honour and dignity has been done to Mordecai for this? Then said the king's servants that ministered unto him, There is nothing done for him.

Haman, coming to sue that Mordecai might be hanged, gives counsel that he might do him honour

- 4** And the king said, Who *is* in the court? Now Haman was come into the outward court of the king's house, to speak unto the king to hang Mordecai on the gallows that he had prepared for him.
- 5** And the king's servants said unto him, Behold, Haman standeth in the court. And the king said, Let him come in.
- 6** So Haman came in. And the king said unto him, What shall be done unto the man whom the king delighteth to honour? Now Haman thought in his heart, To whom would the king delight to do honour more than to myself?
- 7** And Haman answered the king, For the man whom the king delighteth to honour,
- 8** Let the royal apparel be brought which the king *useth* to wear, and the horse that the king rideth upon, and the crown royal which is set upon his head:
- 9** And let this apparel and horse be delivered to the hand of one of the king's most noble princes, that they may array the man *withal* whom the king delighteth to honour, and bring him on horseback through the street of the city, and proclaim before him, Thus shall it be done to the man whom the king delighteth to honour.
- 10** Then the king said to Haman, Make haste, *and* take the apparel and the horse, as you have said, and do even so to Mordecai the Jew, that sitteth at the king's gate: let nothing fail of all that you have spoken.
- 11** Then took Haman the apparel and the horse, and arrayed Mordecai, and brought him on horseback through the street of the city, and proclaimed before him, Thus shall it be done unto the man whom the king delighteth to honour.

Complaining of this, his friends tell him of his final destiny

- 12** And Mordecai came again to the king's gate. But Haman hasted to his house mourning, and having his head covered.
- 13** And Haman told Zeresh his wife and all his friends every *thing* that had befallen him. Then said his wise men and Zeresh his wife unto him, If Mordecai *be* of the seed of the Jews, before whom you have begun to fall, you shall not prevail against him, but shall surely fall before him.
- 14** And while they *were* yet talking with him, came the king's chamberlains, and hasted to bring Haman unto the banquet that Esther had prepared.

Esther, entertaining the king and Haman, makes suit for her own life, and her people's

1 So the king and Haman came to banquet with Esther the queen.

2 And the king said again unto Esther on the second day at the banquet of wine, What *is* thy petition, queen Esther? and it shall be granted you: and what *is* thy request? and it shall be performed, *even* to the half of the kingdom.

3 Then Esther the queen answered and said, If I have found favor in thy sight, O king, and if it please the king, let my life be given me at my petition, and my people at my request:

4 For we are sold, I and my people, to be destroyed, to be slain, and to perish. But if we had been sold for bondmen and bondwomen, I had held my tongue, although the enemy could not countervail the king's damage.

She accuses Haman

5 Then the king Ahasuerus answered and said unto Esther the queen, Who is he, and where is he, that dared presume in his heart to do so?

6 And Esther said, The adversary and enemy *is* this wicked Haman. Then Haman was afraid before the king and the queen.

The king in his anger, understanding of the gallows which Haman had made for Mordecai, causes him to be hanged thereon

7 And the king arising from the banquet of wine in his wrath *went* into the palace garden: and Haman stood up to make request for his life to Esther the queen; for he saw that there was evil determined against him by the king.

8 Then the king returned out of the palace garden into the place of the banquet of wine; and Haman was fallen upon the bed whereon Esther *was*. Then said the king, Will he force the queen also before me in the house? As the word went out of the king's mouth, they covered Haman's face.

9 And Harbonah, one of the chamberlains, said before the king, Behold also, the gallows fifty cubits high, which Haman had made for Mordecai, who had spoken good for the king, standeth in the house of Haman. Then the king said, Hang him thereon. [Esth 1:10](#);

10 So they hanged Haman on the gallows that he had prepared for Mordecai. Then was the king's wrath pacified.

Mordecai is advanced

1 On that day did the king Ahasuerus give the house of Haman the Jews' enemy unto Esther the queen. And Mordecai came before the king; for Esther had told what he *was* unto her.

2 And the king took off his ring, which he had taken from Haman, and gave it unto Mordecai. And Esther set Mordecai over the house of Haman.

Esther makes suit to reverse Haman's letters

3 And Esther spoke yet again before the king, and fell down at his feet, and besought him with tears to put away the mischief of Haman the Agagite, and his device that he had devised against the Jews.

4 Then the king held out the golden sceptre toward Esther. So Esther arose, and stood before the king,
5 And said, If it please the king, and if I have found favor in his sight, and the thing *seem* right before the king, and I *be* pleasing in his eyes, let it be written to reverse the letters devised by Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, which he wrote to destroy the Jews which *are* in all the king's provinces:
6 For how can I endure to see the evil that shall come unto my people? or how can I endure to see the destruction of my kindred?

Ahasuerus grants to the Jews to defend themselves

7 Then the king Ahasuerus said unto Esther the queen and to Mordecai the Jew, Behold, I have given Esther the house of Haman, and him they have hanged upon the gallows, because he laid his hand upon the Jews.

8 Write you also for the Jews, as it liketh you, in the king's name, and seal *it* with the king's ring: for the writing which is written in the king's name, and sealed with the king's ring, may no man reverse. [[Esth 9:25](#)]; [[Dan 6:8](#)];

9 Then were the king's scribes called at that time in the third month, that *is*, the month Sivan, on the three and twentieth *day* thereof; and it was written according to all that Mordecai commanded unto the Jews, and to the lieutenants, and the deputies and rulers of the provinces which *are* from India unto Ethiopia, a hundred twenty and seven provinces, unto every province according to the writing thereof, and unto every people after their language, and to the Jews according to their writing, and according to their language.

10 And he wrote in the king Ahasuerus' name, and sealed *it* with the king's ring, and sent letters by posts on horseback, *and* riders on mules, camels, *and* young dromedaries:

11 Wherein the king granted the Jews which *were* in every city to gather themselves together, and to stand for their life, to destroy, to slay, and to cause to perish, all the power of the people and province that would assault them, *both* little ones and women, and *to take* the spoil of them for a prey,

12 Upon one day in all the provinces of king Ahasuerus, *namely*, upon the thirteenth *day* of the twelfth month, which *is* the month Adar.

13 The copy of the writing for a commandment to be given in every province *was* published unto all people, and that the Jews should be ready against that day to avenge themselves on their enemies.

14 *So* the posts that rode upon mules *and* camels went out, being hastened and pressed on by the king's commandment. And the decree was given at Shushan the palace.

Mordecai's honour, and the Jews' joy

15 And Mordecai went out from the presence of the king in royal apparel of blue and white, and with a great crown of gold, and with a garment of fine linen and purple: and the city of Shushan rejoiced and was glad.

16 The Jews had light, and gladness, and joy, and honour.

17 And in every province, and in every city, whithersoever the king's commandment and his decree came, the Jews had joy and gladness, a feast and a good day. And many of the people of the land became Jews; for the fear of the Jews fell upon them.

ESTHER NINE

The Jews slay their enemies, with the ten sons of Haman

1 Now in the twelfth month, that *is*, the month Adar, on the thirteenth day of the same, when the king's commandment and his decree drew near to be put in execution, in the day that the enemies of the Jews

hoped to have power over them, (though it was turned to the contrary, that the Jews had rule over them that hated them;)

2 The Jews gathered themselves together in their cities throughout all the provinces of the king Ahasuerus, to lay hand on such as sought their hurt: and no man could withstand them; for the fear of them fell upon all people.

3 And all the rulers of the provinces, and the lieutenants, and the deputies, and officers of the king, helped the Jews; because the fear of Mordecai fell upon them.

4 For Mordecai *was* great in the king's house, and his fame went out throughout all the provinces: for this man Mordecai waxed greater and greater.

5 Thus the Jews smote all their enemies with the stroke of the sword, and slaughter, and destruction, and did what they would unto those that hated them.

6 And in Shushan the palace the Jews slew and destroyed five hundred men.

7 And Parshandatha, and Dalphon, and Aspatha,

8 And Poratha, and Adalia, and Aridatha,

9 And Parmashta, and Arisai, and Aridai, and Vajezatha,

10 The ten sons of Haman the son of Hammedatha, the enemy of the Jews, slew they; but on the spoil laid they not their hand.

11 On that day the number of those that were slain in Shushan the palace was brought before the king.

Ahasuerus, at the request of Esther, grants another day of slaughter, and Haman's sons to be hanged

12 And the king said unto Esther the queen, The Jews have slain and destroyed five hundred men in Shushan the palace, and the ten sons of Haman; what have they done in the rest of the king's provinces? now what *is* thy petition? and it shall be granted you: or what *is* thy request further? and it shall be done.

13 Then said Esther, If it please the king, let it be granted to the Jews which *are* in Shushan to do to morrow also according unto this day's decree, and let Haman's ten sons be hanged upon the gallows.

14 And the king commanded it so to be done: and the decree was given at Shushan; and they hanged Haman's ten sons.

15 For the Jews that *were* in Shushan gathered themselves together on the fourteenth day also of the month Adar, and slew three hundred men at Shushan; but on the prey they laid not their hand.

16 But the other Jews that *were* in the king's provinces gathered themselves together, and stood for their lives, and had rest from their enemies, and slew of their foes seventy and five thousand, but they laid not their hands on the prey,

17 On the thirteenth day of the month Adar; and on the fourteenth day of the same rested they, and made it a day of feasting and gladness.

18 But the Jews that *were* at Shushan assembled together on the thirteenth *day* thereof, and on the fourteenth thereof; and on the fifteenth *day* of the same they rested, and made it a day of feasting and gladness.

19 Therefore the Jews of the villages, that dwelt in the unwalled towns, made the fourteenth day of the month Adar *a day of* gladness and feasting, and a good day, and of sending portions one to another.

The two days of Purim are made festival

20 And Mordecai wrote these things, and sent letters unto all the Jews that *were* in all the provinces of the king Ahasuerus, *both* nigh and far,

21 To establish *this* among them, that they should keep the fourteenth day of the month Adar, and the fifteenth day of the same, yearly,

22 As the days wherein the Jews rested from their enemies, and the month which was turned unto them from sorrow to joy, and from mourning into a good day: that they should make them days of feasting and joy, and of sending portions one to another, and gifts to the poor.

23 And the Jews undertook to do as they had begun, and as Mordecai had written unto them;

24 Because Haman the son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, the enemy of all the Jews, had devised against the Jews to destroy them, and had cast Pur, that *is*, the lot, to consume them, and to destroy them;

25 But when *Esther* came before the king, he commanded by letters that his wicked device, which he devised against the Jews, should return upon his own head, and that he and his sons should be hanged on the gallows. [Esth 8:8](#);

26 Wherefore they called these days Purim after the name of Pur. Therefore for all the words of this letter, and *of that* which they had seen concerning this matter, and which had come unto them,

27 The Jews ordained, and took upon them, and upon their seed, and upon all such as joined themselves unto them, so as it should not fail, that they would keep these two days according to their writing, and according to their *appointed* time every year;

28 And *that* these days *should be* remembered and kept throughout every generation, every family, every province, and every city; and *that* these days of Purim should not fail from among the Jews, nor the memorial of them perish from their seed.

29 Then Esther the queen, the daughter of Abihail, and Mordecai the Jew, wrote with all authority, to confirm this second letter of Purim.

30 And he sent the letters unto all the Jews, to the hundred twenty and seven provinces of the kingdom of Ahasuerus, *with* words of peace and truth,

31 To confirm these days of Purim in their times *appointed*, according as Mordecai the Jew and Esther the queen had enjoined them, and as they had decreed for themselves and for their seed, the matters of the fastings and their cry.

32 And the decree of Esther confirmed these matters of Purim; and it was written in the book.

ESTHER TEN

Ahasuerus' greatness

1 And the king Ahasuerus laid a tribute upon the land, and *upon* the isles of the sea.

2 And all the acts of his power and of his might, and the declaration of the greatness of Mordecai, whereunto the king advanced him, *are* they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Media and Persia?

Mordecai's advancement

3 For Mordecai the Jew *was* next unto king Ahasuerus, and great among the Jews, and accepted of the multitude of his brethren, seeking the wealth of his people, and speaking peace to all his seed.

Job

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#) [41](#) [42](#)

JOB ONE

The holiness, riches, and religious care of Job for his children

- 1** There was a man in the land of Uz, whose name *was* Job; and that man was perfect and upright, and one that feared Elohim, and eschewed evil. [Job 2:3](#);
- 2** And there were born unto him seven sons and three daughters.
- 3** His substance also was seven thousand sheep, and three thousand camels, and five hundred yoke of oxen, and five hundred she asses, and a very great household; so that this man was the greatest of all the men of the east.
- 4** And his sons went and feasted *in their* houses, every one his day; and sent and called for their three sisters to eat and to drink with them.
- 5** And it was so, when the days of *their* feasting were gone about, that Job sent and sanctified them, and rose up early in the morning, and offered burnt offerings *according* to the number of them all: for Job said, It may be that my sons have sinned, and cursed Elohim in their hearts. Thus did Job continually.

Satan, appearing before Elohim, by calumniation obtains leave to afflict Job

- 6** Now there was a day when the sons of Elohim came to present themselves before the YAHWEH, and Satan came also among them. [\[1Kgs 22:19\]](#); [\[2Chr 18:20\]](#);
- 7** And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, Whence come you? Then Satan answered the YAHWEH, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. [1Pet 5:8](#);
- 8** And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, have you considered my servant Job, that *there is* none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth Elohim, and escheweth evil?
- 9** Then Satan answered the YAHWEH, and said, Does Job fear Elohim for nought?
- 10** **have** not you made a hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he has on every side? you have blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land.
- 11** But put forth thine hand now, and touch all that he has, and he will curse you to thy face.
- 12** And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, Behold, all that he has *is* in thy power; only upon himself put not forth thine hand. So Satan went forth from the presence of the YAHWEH.

Understanding of the loss of his children and goods, in his mourning he blesses Elohim

- 13** And there was a day when his sons and his daughters *were* eating and drinking wine in their eldest brother's house:
- 14** And there came a messenger unto Job, and said, The oxen were plowing, and the asses feeding beside them:
- 15** And the Sabeans fell *upon them*, and took them away; yes, they have slain the servants with the edge of the sword; and I only am escaped alone to tell you.
- 16** While he *was* yet speaking, there came also another, and said, The fire of Elohim is fallen from heaven, and has burned up the sheep, and the servants, and consumed them; and I only am escaped alone to tell you.

17 While he *was* yet speaking, there came also another, and said, The Chaldeans made out three bands, and fell upon the camels, and have carried them away, yes, and slain the servants with the edge of the sword; and I only am escaped alone to tell you.

18 While he *was* yet speaking, there came also another, and said, Thy sons and thy daughters *were* eating and drinking wine in their eldest brother's house:

19 And, behold, there came a great wind from the wilderness, and smote the four corners of the house, and it fell upon the young people, and they are dead; and I only am escaped alone to tell you.

20 Then Job arose, and rent his mantle, and shaved his head, and fell down upon the ground, and worshipped, [[Jer 7:29](#)];

21 And said, Naked came I out of my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither: the YAHWEH gave, and the YAHWEH has taken away; blessed be the name of the YAHWEH. [Eccl 5:15](#); [1Tim 6:7](#); [[Jas 5:11](#)]; [[1Pet 3:15](#)];

22 In all this Job sinned not, nor charged Elohim foolishly.

JOB TWO

Satan appearing again before Elohim, obtains further leave to tempt Job

1 Again there was a day when the sons of Elohim came to present themselves before the YAHWEH, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the YAHWEH. [[1Kgs 22:19](#)];

2 And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, From whence come you? And Satan answered the YAHWEH, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

3 And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, have you considered my servant Job, that *there is* none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth Elohim, and escheweth evil? and still he holdeth fast his integrity, although you movedst me against him, to destroy him without cause. [[Job 1:1](#)];

4 And Satan answered the YAHWEH, and said, Skin for skin, yes, all that a man has will he give for his life.

5 But put forth thine hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse you to thy face.

6 And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, Behold, he *is* in thine hand; but save his life. [[2Cor 12:7](#)];

He smites him with sore boils

7 So went Satan forth from the presence of the YAHWEH, and smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his foot unto his crown.

8 And he took him a potsherd to scrape himself withal; and he sat down among the ashes.

Job reproves his wife, who moved him to curse Elohim

9 Then said his wife unto him, Dost you still retain thine integrity? curse Elohim, and die.

10 But he said unto her, you speakest as one of the foolish women speaketh. What? shall we receive good at the hand of Elohim, and shall we not receive evil? In all this did not Job sin with his lips.

His three friends console with him in silence

11 Now when Job's three friends heard of all this evil that was come upon him, they came every one from his own place; Eliphaz the Temanite, and Bildad the Shuhite, and Zophar the Naamathite: for they had made an appointment together to come to mourn with him and to comfort him.

12 And when they lifted up their eyes afar off, and knew him not, they lifted up their voice, and wept; and they rent every one his mantle, and sprinkled dust upon their heads toward heaven.

13 So they sat down with him upon the ground seven days and seven nights, and none spoke a word unto him: for they saw that *his* grief was very great. [Ezek 3:15];

JOB THREE

Job curses the day and services of his birth

1 After this opened Job his mouth, and cursed his day. [Jer 15:10; Jer 20:14];

2 And Job spoke, and said,

3 Let the day perish wherein I was born, and the night *in which* it was said, There is a man child conceived. [Jer 20:15];

4 Let that day be darkness; let not Elohim regard it from above, neither let the light shine upon it.

5 Let darkness and the shadow of death stain it; let a cloud dwell upon it; let the blackness of the day terrify it.

6 As *for* that night, let darkness seize upon it; let it not be joined unto the days of the year, let it not come into the number of the months.

7 Lo, let that night be solitary, let no joyful voice come therein.

8 Let them curse it that curse the day, who are ready to raise up their mourning.

9 Let the stars of the twilight thereof be dark; let it look for light, but *have* none; neither let it see the dawning of the day:

10 Because it shut not up the doors of my *mother's* womb, nor hid sorrow from mine eyes.

11 Why died I not from the womb? *why* did I *not* give up the ghost when I came out of the belly? [Job 10:18];

12 Why did the knees prevent me? or why the breasts that I should suck?

The ease of death

13 For now should I have lain still and been quiet, I should have slept: then had I been at rest,

14 With kings and counsellors of the earth, which built desolate places for themselves;

15 Or with princes that had gold, who filled their houses with silver:

16 Or as a hidden untimely birth I had not been; as infants *which* never saw light. [Eccl 6:5];

17 There the wicked cease *from* troubling; and there the weary be at rest. [Job 17:16];

18 *There* the prisoners rest together; they hear not the voice of the oppressor.

19 The small and great are there; and the servant *is* free from his master.

He complains of life, because of his anguish

20 Wherefore is light given to him that is in misery, and life unto the bitter *in* being; [Jer 20:18];

21 Which long for death, but it *cometh* not; and dig for it more than for hid treasures;

22 Which rejoice exceedingly, *and* are glad, when they can find the grave?

23 *Why is light given* to a man whose way is hid, and whom Elohim has hedged in? [Job 19:8];

24 For my sighing cometh before I eat, and my roarings are poured out like the waters.

25 For the thing which I greatly feared is come upon me, and that which I was afraid of is come unto me.

26 I was not in safety, neither had I rest, neither was I quiet; yet trouble came.

JOB FOUR

Eliphaz reproves Job for want of religion

- 1** Then Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said,
- 2** *If* we try to commune with you, will you be grieved? but who can withhold himself from speaking?
- 3** Behold, you have instructed many, and you have strengthened the weak hands.
- 4** Thy words have upholden him that was falling, and you have strengthened the feeble knees.
- 5** But now it is come upon you, and you faintest; it toucheth you, and you are troubled.
- 6** *Is* not *this* thy fear, thy confidence, thy hope, and the uprightness of thy ways?

He teaches Elohim's judgments to be not for the righteous, but for the wicked

- 7** Remember, I pray you, who *ever* perished, being innocent? or where were the righteous cut off?
- 8** Even as I have seen, they that plow iniquity, and sow wickedness, reap the same. [Job 15:35](#); [Ps 7:14](#); [Prov 22:8](#); [Isa 59:4](#); [Hos 10:13](#); [Gal 6:7-8](#); [[Ps 7:15](#)];
- 9** By the blast of Elohim they perish, and by the breath of his nostrils are they consumed. [Isa 11:4](#); [[Job 15:30](#)]; [[2Thess 2:8](#)];
- 10** The roaring of the lion, and the voice of the fierce lion, and the teeth of the young lions, are broken.
- 11** The old lion perisheth for lack of prey, and the stout lion's whelps are scattered abroad. [[Ps 34:10](#)];

His fearful vision to humble the excellency of creatures before Elohim

- 12** Now a thing was secretly brought to me, and mine ear received a little thereof.
- 13** In thoughts from the visions of the night, when deep sleep falleth on men,
- 14** Fear came upon me, and trembling, which made all my bones to shake.
- 15** Then a spirit passed before my face; the hair of my flesh stood up:
- 16** It stood still, but I could not discern the form thereof: an image *was* before mine eyes, *there was* silence, and I heard a voice, *saying*,
- 17** Shall mortal man be more just than Elohim? shall a man be more pure than his maker? [[Job 25:4](#)];
- 18** Behold, he put no trust in his servants; and his angels he charged with folly: [Job 15:15](#); [2Pet 2:4](#);
- 19** How much less *in* them that dwell in houses of clay, whose foundation *is* in the dust, *which* are crushed before the moth? [[Job 25:6](#)];
- 20** They are destroyed from morning to evening: they perish for ever without any regarding *it*.
- 21** Does not their excellency *which is* in them go away? they die, even without wisdom.

Eliphaz shows that the end of the wicked is misery

- 1** Call now, if there be any that will answer you; and to which of the saints will you turn?
2 For wrath killeth the foolish man, and envy slays the silly one.
3 I have seen the foolish taking root: but suddenly I cursed his habitation. [Ps 37:36](#);
4 His children are far from safety, and they are crushed in the gate, neither *is there* any to deliver *them*.
5 Whose harvest the hungry eateth up, and taketh it even out of the thorns, and the robber swalloweth up their substance. [\[Job 18:9\]](#);

that man is born to trouble

- 6** Although affliction cometh not forth of the dust, neither does trouble spring out of the ground;
7 Yet man is born unto trouble, as the sparks fly upward.

that Elohim is to be regarded in affliction

- 8** I would seek unto Elohim, and unto Elohim would I commit my cause: [\[Job 11:12\]](#);
9 Which doeth great things and unsearchable; marvellous things without number: [Job 9:10](#); [Ps 72:18](#); [Rom 11:33](#); [\[Job 37:5\]](#); [\[Ps 145:3\]](#);
10 Who giveth rain upon the earth, and sendeth waters upon the fields:
11 To set up on high those that be low; that those which mourn may be exalted to safety. [1Sam 2:7](#); [Ps 113:7-8](#);
12 He disappointeth the devices of the crafty, so that their hands cannot perform *their* enterprise. [Neh 4:15](#); [Ps 33:10](#); [Isa 8:10](#); [\[Matt 11:25\]](#); [\[Luke 10:21\]](#); [\[1Cor 1:19\]](#);
13 He taketh the wise in their own craftiness: and the counsel of the froward is carried headlong. [1Cor 3:19](#);
14 They meet with darkness in the daytime, and grope in the noonday as in the night. [Deut 28:29](#);
15 But he saveth the poor from the sword, from their mouth, and from the hand of the mighty.
16 So the poor has hope, and iniquity stoppeth her mouth. [Ps 107:42](#);

the happy end of Elohim's correction

- 17** Behold, happy *is* the man whom Elohim correcteth: therefore despise not you the chastening of the Almighty: [Prov 3:11-12](#); [Heb 12:5](#); [Jas 1:12](#); [Rev 3:19](#); [\[Prov 3:11\]](#);
18 For he maketh sore, and bindeth up: he woundeth, and his hands make whole. [Deut 32:39](#); [1Sam 2:6](#); [Hos 6:1](#); [\[Job 34:17\]](#); [\[Ps 147:3\]](#);
19 He shall deliver you in six troubles: yes, in seven there shall no evil touch you. [Ps 91:3](#); [\[Ps 91:5\]](#); [\[Prov 24:16\]](#);
20 In famine he shall redeem you from death: and in war from the power of the sword.
21 You shall be hid from the scourge of the tongue: neither shall you be afraid of destruction when it cometh.
22 At destruction and famine you shall laugh: neither shall you be afraid of the beasts of the earth. [\[Ps 91:13\]](#);
23 For you shall be in league with the stones of the field: and the beasts of the field shall be at peace with you. [Hos 2:18](#);
24 And you shall know that thy tabernacle *shall be* in peace; and you shall visit thy habitation, and shall not sin.
25 You shall know also that thy seed *shall be* great, and thine offspring as the grass of the earth.
26 You shall come to *thy* grave in a full age, like as a shock of grain cometh in in its season.

27 Lo this, we have searched it, so it *is*; hear it, and know you *it* for thy good.

JOB SIX

Job shows that his complaints are not causeless

- 1 But Job answered and said,
2 Oh that my grief were thoroughly weighed, and my calamity laid in the balances together!
3 For now it would be heavier than the sand of the sea: therefore my words are swallowed up. [Prov 27:3](#);
4 For the arrows of the Almighty *are* within me, the poison whereof drinketh up my spirit: the terrors of Elohim do set themselves in array against me. [Ps 38:1-2](#); [\[Job 34:6\]](#);
5 Does the wild ass bray when he has grass? or loweth the ox over his fodder?
6 Can that which is unsavoury be eaten without salt? or is there *any* taste in the white of an egg?
7 The things *that* my being refused to touch *are* as my sorrowful meat.

He wishes for death, wherein he is assured of comfort

- 8 Oh that I might have my request; and that Elohim would grant *me* the thing that I long for!
9 Even that it would please Elohim to destroy me; that he would let loose his hand, and cut me off!
10 Then should I yet have comfort; yes, I would harden myself in sorrow: let him not spare; for I have not concealed the words of the Holy One.
11 What *is* my strength, that I should hope? and what *is* mine end, that I should prolong my life?
12 *Is* my strength the strength of stones? or *is* my flesh of brass?
13 *Is* not my help in me? and is wisdom driven quite from me?

He reproves his friends of unkindness

- 14 To him that is afflicted pity *should be showed* from his friend; but he forsaketh the fear of the Almighty.
15 My brethren have dealt deceitfully as a brook, *and* as the stream of brooks they pass away; [\[Jer 15:18\]](#);
16 Which are blackish by reason of the ice, *and* wherein the snow is hid:
17 What time they wax warm, they vanish: when it is hot, they are consumed out of their place.
18 The paths of their way are turned aside; they go to nothing, and perish.
19 The troops of Tema looked, the companies of Sheba waited for them.
20 They were confounded because they had hoped; they came thither, and were ashamed.
21 For now you are nothing; you see *my* casting down, and are afraid.
22 Did I say, Bring unto me? or, Give a reward for me of your substance?
23 Or, Deliver me from the enemy's hand? or, Redeem me from the hand of the mighty?
24 Teach me, and I will hold my tongue: and cause me to understand wherein I have erred.
25 How forcible are right words! but what does your arguing reprove?
26 Do you imagine to reprove words, and the speeches of one that is desperate, *which are* as wind?
27 Yes, you overwhelm the fatherless, and you dig *a pit* for your friend.
28 Now therefore be content, look upon me; for *it is* evident unto you if I lie.
29 Return, I pray you, let it not be iniquity; yes, return again, my righteousness *is* in it. [\[Job 17:10\]](#);
30 Is there iniquity in my tongue? cannot my taste discern perverse things? [\[Job 12:11\]](#);

JOB SEVEN

Job excuses his desire of death

- 1** *Is there* not an appointed time to man upon earth? *are not* his days also like the days of a hireling? [Job 14:5]; [Job 14:6];
- 2** As a servant earnestly desireth the shadow, and as a hireling looketh for *the reward of* his work:
- 3** So am I made to possess months of vanity, and wearisome nights are appointed to me. [Isa 21:4];
- 4** When I lie down, I say, When shall I arise, and the night be gone? and I am full of tossings to and fro unto the dawning of the day.
- 5** My flesh is clothed with worms and clods of dust; my skin is broken, and become loathsome. [Job 8:9];
- 6** My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle, and are spent without hope. [Job 9:25]; [Job 17:11];
- 7** O remember that my life *is* wind: mine eye shall no more see good. Job 8:9; Job 14:1-3; Job 16:22; Ps 90:5-6; Ps 90:9; Ps 102:11; Ps 103:15; Ps 144:4; Isa 40:6; Jas 4:14; 1Pet 1:24;
- 8** The eye of him that has seen me shall see me no *more*: thine eyes *are* upon me, and I *am* not.
- 9** *As* the cloud is consumed and vanisheth away: so he that goes down to the grave shall come up no *more*.
- 10** He shall return no more to his house, neither shall his place know him any more.
- 11** Therefore I will not refrain my mouth; I will speak in the anguish of my spirit; I will complain in the bitterness of my being.

He complains of his own restlessness, and expostulates with Elohim

- 12** *Am* I a sea, or a whale, that you settest a watch over me?
- 13** When I say, My bed shall comfort me, my couch shall ease my complaint;
- 14** Then you scarest me with dreams, and terrifiest me through visions:
- 15** So that my being chooseth strangling, *and* death rather than my life.
- 16** I loathe *it*; I would not live always: let me alone; for my days *are* vanity. Ps 62:9; Ps 144:4; [Job 14:6];
- 17** What *is* man, that you should magnify him? and that you should set thine heart upon him? Ps 8:4; Ps 144:3; Heb 2:6; [Job 14:3];
- 18** And *that* you should visit him every morning, *and* try him every moment?
- 19** How long will you not depart from me, nor let me alone till I swallow down my spittle? [Job 14:6];
- 20** I have sinned; what shall I do unto you, O you preserver of men? why have you set me as a mark against you, so that I am a burden to myself? [Job 16:12];
- 21** And why dost you not pardon my transgression, and take away mine iniquity? for now shall I sleep in the dust; and you shall seek me in the morning, but I *shall* not *be*.

JOB EIGHT

Bildad shows Elohim's justice in dealing with men according to their works

- 1** Then answered Bildad the Shuhite, and said,
- 2** How long will you speak these *things*? and *how long shall* the words of thy mouth *be like* a strong wind?
- 3** Does Elohim pervert judgment? or does the Almighty pervert justice? Deut 32:4; 2Chr 19:7; Dan 9:14; [Job 34:10]; [Job 34:17]; [Job 36:23];
- 4** If thy children have sinned against him, and he have cast them away for their transgression;
- 5** If you wouldest seek unto Elohim earnestly, and make thy supplication to the Almighty; Job 22:23;
- 6** If you *were* pure and upright; surely now he would awake for you, and make the habitation of thy righteousness prosperous.

7 Though thy beginning was small, yet thy latter end should greatly increase.

He alleges antiquity to prove the certain destruction of the hypocrite

8 For enquire, I pray you, of the former age, and prepare thyself to the search of their fathers: [Deut 4:32](#);

9 (For we *are but of* yester day, and know nothing, because our days upon earth *are* a shadow:) [Gen 47:9](#); [1Chr 29:15](#); [Job 7:5-7](#); [Ps 39:12](#); [Ps 144:4](#); [Ps 102:11](#); [\[Job 7:7\]](#); [\[Job 14:2\]](#);

10 Shall not they teach you, *and* tell you, and utter words out of their heart?

11 Can the rush grow up without mire? can the flag grow without water?

12 Whilst it *is* yet in his greenness, *and* not cut down, it withereth before any *other* herb. [Ps 129:6](#); [Jer 17:6](#);

13 So *are* the paths of all that forget Elohim; and the hypocrite's hope shall perish: [Job 11:20](#); [Job 18:14](#); [Ps 112:10](#); [Prov 10:28](#);

14 Whose hope shall be cut off, and whose trust *shall be* a spider's web. [\[Isa 59:6\]](#);

15 He shall lean upon his house, but it shall not stand: he shall hold it fast, but it shall not endure.

16 He *is* green before the sun, and his branch shooteth forth in his garden.

17 His roots are wrapped about the heap, *and* seeth the place of stones.

18 If he destroy him from his place, then *it* shall deny him, *saying*, I have not seen you.

19 Behold, this *is* the joy of his way, and out of the earth shall others grow.

He applies Elohim's just dealing to Job

20 Behold, Elohim will not cast away a perfect *man*, neither will he help the evil doers:

21 Till he fill thy mouth with laughing, and thy lips with rejoicing. [\[Ps 126:2\]](#);

22 They that hate you shall be clothed with shame; and the dwelling place of the wicked shall come to nought.

JOB NINE

Job acknowledges Elohim's justice

1 Then Job answered and said,

2 I know this to be the truth: but how should man be just before the Almighty? [Ps 143:2](#); [\[1Cor 4:4\]](#); [\[1John 1:8\]](#);

3 If he will contend with him, he cannot answer him one of a thousand.

4 *He is* wise in heart, and mighty in strength: who has hardened *himself* against him, and has prospered? [\[Job 36:5\]](#); [\[Job 37:23\]](#);

5 Which removeth the mountains, and they know not: which overturneth them in his anger.

6 Which shaketh the earth out of her place, and the pillars thereof tremble.

7 Which commandeth the sun, and it riseth not; and seaeth up the stars.

8 Which alone spreadeth out the heavens, and treadeth upon the waves of the sea. [Gen 1:6](#); [\[Job 26:9\]](#); [\[Isa 40:22\]](#); [\[Isa 44:24\]](#); [\[Isa 51:13\]](#); [\[Jer 10:12\]](#); [\[Jer 51:15\]](#);

9 Which maketh Arcturus, Orion, and Pleiades, and the constellations of the southern sky. [\[Job 38:31\]](#); [\[Amos 5:8\]](#);

10 Which doeth great things past finding out; yes, and wonders without number. [Job 5:9](#); [Ps 72:18](#); [Ps 77:14](#); [Ps 86:10](#); [Rom 11:33](#); [\[Job 37:5\]](#);

11 Lo, he goes by me, and I see *him* not: he passeth on also, but I perceive him not.

12 Behold, he taketh away, who can hinder him? who will say unto him, What do you do? [\[Job 12:14\]](#); [\[Isa 14:27\]](#);

- 13 *If* Elohim will not withdraw his anger, the proud helpers do stoop under him.
- 14 How much less shall I answer him, *and* choose out my words *to reason* with him?
- 15 Whom, though I were righteous, yet would I not answer, *but* I would make supplication to my judge.
- 16 If I had called, and he had answered me; yet would I not believe that he had hearkened unto my voice.
- 17 For he breaketh me with a tempest, and multiplies my wounds without cause.
- 18 He will not suffer me to take my breath, but filleth me with bitterness.
- 19 If *I speak* of strength, lo, *he is* strong: and if of judgment, who shall set me a time *to plead*?
- 20 If I justify myself, mine own mouth shall condemn me: *if I say*, I *am* perfect, it shall also prove me perverse.
- 21 *Though* I *were* perfect, yet would I not know my being: I would despise my life.

Man's innocence is not to be condemned by afflictions

- 22 This *is* one *thing*, therefore I said *it*, He destroyeth the perfect and the wicked. [Eccl 9:2-3](#); [Mal 3:14](#);
- 23 If the scourge slay suddenly, he will laugh at the trial of the innocent.
- 24 The earth is given into the hand of the wicked: he covereth the faces of the judges thereof; if not, where, *and* who *is* he?
- 25 Now my days are swifter than a post: they flee away, they see no good. [Job 7:6-7](#); [\[Job 17:11\]](#);
- 26 They are passed away as the swift ships: as the eagle *that* hasteth to the prey.
- 27 If I say, I will forget my complaint, I will leave off my heaviness, and comfort *myself*:
- 28 I am afraid of all my sorrows, I know that you will not hold me innocent.
- 29 *If* I be wicked, why then labour I in vain?
- 30 If I wash myself with snow water, and make my hands never so clean; [Jer 2:22](#);
- 31 **yet** shall you plunge me in the ditch, and mine own clothes shall abhor me.
- 32 For *he is* not a man, as I *am*, *that* I should answer him, *and* we should come together in judgment. [Eccl 6:10](#); [Jer 49:19](#);
- 33 Neither is there any daysman between us, *that* might lay his hand upon us both.
- 34 Let him take his rod away from me, and let not his fear terrify me: [Job 13:20](#); [Job 33:7](#);
- 35 *Then* would I speak, and not fear him; but *it is* not so with me. [\[Job 33:6\]](#);

JOB TEN

Job, taking liberty of complaint, expostulates with Elohim about his afflictions

- 1 My being is weary of my life; I will leave my complaint upon myself; I will speak in the bitterness of my being.
- 2 I will say unto Elohim, Do not condemn me; show me wherefore you contendest with me.
- 3 *Is it* good unto you that you should oppress, that you should despise the work of thine hands, and shine upon the counsel of the wicked?
- 4 **have** you eyes of flesh? or seest you as man seeth?
- 5 *Are* thy days as the days of man? *are* thy years as man's days,
- 6 That you enquirest after mine iniquity, and searchest after my sin?
- 7 You knowest that I am not wicked; and *there is* none that can deliver out of thine hand. [\[Job 33:8\]](#);
- 8 Thine hands have made me and fashioned me together round about; yet you dost destroy me. [\[Ps 139:15\]](#);

9 Remember, I beseech you, that you have made me as the clay; and will you bring me into dust again?
[Gen 2:7](#); [Gen 3:19](#); [\[Ps 119:73\]](#);

10 **have** you not poured me out as milk, and curdled me like cheese? [Ps 139:15-16](#); [\[Ps 139:15\]](#);

11 You have clothed me with skin and flesh, and have fenced me with bones and sinews.

12 You have granted me life and favor, and thy visitation has preserved my spirit.

13 And these *things* have you hid in thine heart: I know that this *is* with you.

14 If I sin, then you markest me, and you will not acquit me from mine iniquity.

15 If I be wicked, woe unto me; and *if* I be righteous, yet will I not lift up my head. *I am* full of confusion; therefore see you mine affliction;

16 For it increaseth. you huntest me as a fierce lion: and again you showest thyself marvellous upon me.
[Isa 38:13](#); [Lam 3:10](#); [\[Job 16:9\]](#);

17 You renewest thy witnesses against me, and increasest thine indignation upon me; changes and war *are* against me.

He complains of life, and craves a little ease before death

18 Wherefore then have you brought me forth out of the womb? Oh that I had given up the ghost, and no eye had seen me! [Job 3:11](#);

19 I should have been as though I had not been; I should have been carried from the womb to the grave.

20 *Are* not my days few? cease *then, and* let me alone, that I may take comfort a little, [\[Job 14:3\]](#); [\[Job 14:6\]](#);

21 Before I go *whence* I shall not return, *even* to the land of darkness and the shadow of death;

22 A land of darkness, as darkness *itself*; *and* of the shadow of death, without any order, and *where* the light *is* as darkness.

JOB ELEVEN

Zophar reproves Job for justifying himself

1 Then answered Zophar the Naamathite, and said,

2 Should not the multitude of words be answered? and should a man full of talk be justified?

3 Should thy lies make men hold their peace? and when you mockest, shall no man make you ashamed?

4 For you have said, My doctrine *is* pure, and I am clean in thine eyes.

Elohim's wisdom is unsearchable

5 But oh that Elohim would speak, and open his lips against you;

6 And that he would show you the secrets of wisdom, that *they are* double to that which is! Know therefore that Elohim exacteth of you *less* than thine iniquity *deserveth*. [\[Job 35:15\]](#);

7 Canst you by searching find out Elohim? canst you find out the Almighty unto perfection? [\[2Chr 2:6\]](#);

8 *It is* as high as heaven; what canst you do? deeper than hell; what canst you know?

9 The measure thereof *is* longer than the earth, and broader than the sea.

10 If he cut off, and shut up, or gather together, then who can hinder him? [\[Job 12:14\]](#);

11 For he knoweth vain men: he seeth wickedness also; will he not then consider *it*? [Ps 10:11](#); [Ps 10:14](#); [Ps 35:22](#);

12 For vain man would be wise, though man be born *like* a wild ass's colt. [Job 5:8](#); [Job 22:21](#); [Eccl 3:18](#);

The assured blessing of repentance

13 If you prepare thine heart, and stretch out thine hands toward him;

- 14** If iniquity *be* in thine hand, put it far away, and let not wickedness dwell in thy tabernacles.
- 15** For then shall you lift up thy face without spot; yes, you shall be steadfast, and shall not fear:
- 16** Because you shall forget *thy* misery, *and* remember *it* as waters *that* pass away:
- 17** And *thine* age shall be clearer than the noonday; you shall shine forth, you shall be as the morning. [Ps 37:6](#); [Ps 112:4](#);
- 18** And you shall be secure, because there is hope; yes, you shall dig *about you*, *and* you shall take thy rest in safety. [Lev 26:5](#); [\[Lev 26:6\]](#);
- 19** Also you shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid; yes, many shall make suit unto you. [Lev 26:6](#); [Ps 3:5](#); [Ps 4:8](#); [Prov 3:24](#);
- 20** But the eyes of the wicked shall fail, and they shall not escape, and their hope *shall be as* the giving up of the ghost. [Job 8:13-14](#); [Job 18:14](#); [\[Job 8:13\]](#); [\[Prov 10:28\]](#);

JOB TWELVE

Job maintains himself against his friends that reprove him

- 1** And Job answered and said,
- 2** No doubt but you *are* the people, and wisdom shall die with you.
- 3** But I have understanding as well as you; I *am* not inferior to you: yes, who knoweth not such things as these?
- 4** I am *as* one mocked of his neighbour, who calleth upon Elohim, and he answereth him: the just upright *man is* laughed to scorn. [Job 16:10](#); [Job 17:2](#); [Job 21:3](#); [Job 30:1](#); [Prov 14:2](#);
- 5** He that is ready to slip with *his* feet *is as* a lamp despised in the thought of him that is at ease.
- 6** The tabernacles of robbers prosper, and they that provoke Elohim are secure; into whose hand Elohim bringeth *abundantly*. [Job 21:7](#); [Ps 73:11-12](#); [Jer 12:1](#); [Hab 1:3-4](#);

He acknowledges the general doctrine of Elohim's omnipotence

- 7** But ask now the beasts, and they shall teach you; and the fowls of the air, and they shall tell you:
- 8** Or speak to the earth, and it shall teach you: and the fishes of the sea shall declare unto you.
- 9** Who knoweth not in all these that the hand of the YAHWEH has wrought this?
- 10** In whose hand *is* the being of every living thing, and the breath of all mankind.
- 11** Does not the ear try words? and the mouth taste his meat? [Job 6:30](#); [Job 34:3](#);
- 12** With the elder *is* wisdom; and in length of days understanding. [\[Job 32:9\]](#);
- 13** With him *is* wisdom and strength, he has counsel and understanding. [\[Job 32:8\]](#); [\[Job 36:5\]](#); [\[Job 37:23\]](#);
- 14** Behold, he breaketh down, and it cannot be built again: he shutteth up a man, and there can be no opening. [Job 9:12](#); [Job 11:10](#); [Rev 3:7](#); [\[Rev 1:18\]](#);
- 15** Behold, he withholdeth the waters, and they dry up: also he sendeth them out, and they overturn the earth.
- 16** With him *is* strength and wisdom: the deceived and the deceiver *are* his. [\[2Chr 18:22\]](#); [\[Job 36:5\]](#); [\[Job 37:23\]](#);
- 17** He leadeth counsellors away spoiled, and maketh the judges fools. [2Sam 15:31](#); [2Sam 17:14](#); [2Sam 17:23](#); [Isa 19:12](#); [Isa 29:14](#); [1Cor 1:19](#);
- 18** He looseth the bond of kings, and girdeth their loins with a girdle.
- 19** He leadeth princes away spoiled, and overthroweth the mighty.
- 20** He removeth away the speech of the trusty, and taketh away the understanding of the aged. [Job 32:9](#); [Isa 3:2-3](#); [\[2Chr 18:22\]](#);
- 21** He poureth contempt upon princes, and weakeneth the strength of the mighty. [Ps 107:40](#); [\[Isa 40:23\]](#);
- 22** He discovereth deep things out of darkness, and bringeth out to light the shadow of death. [Matt 10:26](#); [1Cor 4:5](#); [\[Mark 4:22\]](#); [\[Luke 8:17\]](#); [\[Luke 12:2\]](#);

- 23** He increaseth the nations, and destroyeth them: he enlargeth the nations, and straiteneth them again. [Ps 107:38](#);
- 24** He taketh away the heart of the chief of the people of the earth, and causeth them to wander in a wilderness *where there is* no way. [Ps 107:4](#); [Ps 107:40](#);
- 25** They grope in the dark without light, and he maketh them to stagger like *a* drunken *man*.

JOB THIRTEEN

Job reproves his friends for partiality

- 1** Lo, mine eye has seen all *this*, mine ear has heard and understood it.
- 2** What you know, *the same* do I know also: I *am* not inferior unto you.
- 3** Surely I would speak to the Almighty, and I desire to reason with Elohim.
- 4** But you *are* forgers of lies, you *are* all physicians of no value. [Job 16:2](#);
- 5** O that you would altogether hold your peace! and it should be your wisdom. [Prov 17:28](#);
- 6** Hear now my reasoning, and hearken to the pleadings of my lips.
- 7** Will you speak wickedly for Elohim? and talk deceitfully for him? [Job 17:5](#); [Job 32:21](#); [Job 36:4](#);
- 8** Will you accept his person? will you contend for Elohim?
- 9** Is it good that he should search you out? or as one man mocketh another, do you *so* mock him?
- 10** He will surely reprove you, if you do secretly accept persons.
- 11** Shall not his excellency make you afraid? and his dread fall upon you?
- 12** Your remembrances *are* like unto ashes, your bodies to bodies of clay.
- 13** Hold your peace, let me alone, that I may speak, and let come on me what *will*.

He professes his confidence in Elohim; and entreats to know his own sins, and Elohim's purpose in afflicting him

- 14** Wherefore do I take my flesh in my teeth, and put my life in mine hand? [\[Job 18:4\]](#);
- 15** Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him: but I will maintain mine own ways before him. [Ps 23:4](#); [Prov 14:32](#);
- 16** He also *shall be* my salvation: for a hypocrite shall not come before him.
- 17** Hear diligently my speech, and my declaration with your ears.
- 18** Behold now, I have ordered *my* cause; I know that I shall be justified.
- 19** Who *is* he *that* will plead with me? for now, if I hold my tongue, I shall give up the ghost.
- 20** Only do not two *things* unto me: then will I not hide myself from you. [Job 9:34](#); [Job 33:7](#);
- 21** Withdraw thine hand far from me: and let not thy dread make me afraid.
- 22** Then call you, and I will answer: or let me speak, and answer you me.
- 23** How many *are* mine iniquities and sins? make me to know my transgression and my sin.
- 24** Wherefore hidest you thy face, and holdest me for thine enemy? [Job 16:9](#); [Job 19:11](#); [Job 33:10](#); [Lam 2:5](#);
- 25** *will* you break a leaf driven to and fro? and will you pursue the dry stubble?
- 26** For you writest bitter things against me, and makest me to possess the iniquities of my youth. [Ps 25:7](#);
- 27** You putttest my feet also in the stocks, and lookest narrowly unto all my paths; you setttest a print upon the heels of my feet. [Job 33:11](#);
- 28** And he, as a rotten thing, consumeth, as a garment that is moth eaten.

Job entreats Elohim for favor, by the shortness of life, and certainty of death

- 1** Man *that is* born of a woman *is* of few days, and full of trouble. [Ps 90:5-6](#); [Ps 90:9](#); [Ps 102:11](#); [Ps 103:15](#); [Ps 144:4](#); [Jas 4:14](#); [\[Job 7:7\]](#);
- 2** He cometh forth like a flower, and is cut down: he fleeth also as a shadow, and continueth not. [Ps 103:15](#); [Isa 40:6](#); [1Pet 1:24](#); [Job 8:9](#); [Ps 90:6](#); [Ps 90:10](#); [Ps 102:11](#); [Ps 144:4](#);
- 3** And dost you open thine eyes upon such an one, and bringest me into judgment with you? [Job 7:17-18](#); [Job 10:20](#);
- 4** Who can bring a clean *thing* out of an unclean? not one. [Gen 5:3](#); [Ps 51:5](#); [John 3:6](#); [Rom 5:12](#); [Eph 2:3](#); [\[Job 15:14\]](#); [\[Prov 20:9\]](#);
- 5** Seeing his days *are* determined, the number of his months *are* with you, you have appointed his bounds that he cannot pass; [Job 7:1](#); [\[Ps 148:6\]](#); [\[Eccl 8:8\]](#);
- 6** Turn from him, that he may rest, till he shall accomplish, as a hireling, his day. [Job 7:16](#); [Job 7:19](#); [Job 10:20](#); [Job 7:1-2](#);

He waits for his change

- 7** For there is hope of a tree, if it be cut down, that it will sprout again, and that the tender branch thereof will not cease.
- 8** **though** the root thereof wax old in the earth, and the stock thereof die in the ground;
- 9** Yet through the scent of water it will bud, and bring forth boughs like a plant.
- 10** But man dieth, and wasteth away: yes, man giveth up the ghost, and where *is* he?
- 11** *As* the waters fail from the sea, and the flood decayeth and drieth up:
- 12** So man lies down, and riseth not: till the heavens *be* no more, they shall not awake, nor be raised out of their sleep.
- 13** O that you wouldest hide me in the grave, that you wouldest keep me secret, until thy wrath be past, that you wouldest appoint me a set time, and remember me! [\[Ps 148:6\]](#);
- 14** If a man die, shall he live *again*? all the days of my appointed time will I wait, till my change come.
- 15** You shall call, and I will answer you: you will have a desire to the work of thine hands.

By sin the creature is subject to corruption

- 16** For now you numberest my steps: dost you not watch over my sin? [Job 31:4](#); [Job 34:21](#); [Ps 56:8](#); [Ps 139:2-4](#); [Prov 5:21](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [\[Job 33:11\]](#);
- 17** My transgression *is* sealed up in a bag, and you sewest up mine iniquity.
- 18** And surely the mountain falling cometh to nought, and the rock is removed out of his place.
- 19** The waters wear the stones: you wastest away the things which grow *out* of the dust of the earth; and you destroyest the hope of man.
- 20** You prevailest for ever against him, and he passeth: you changest his countenance, and sendest him away.
- 21** His sons come to honour, and he knoweth *it* not; and they are brought low, but he perceiveth *it* not of them.
- 22** But his flesh upon him shall have pain, and his being within him shall mourn.

Eliphaz reproves Job for impiety in justifying himself

- 1 Then answered Eliphaz the Temanite, and said,
- 2 Should a wise man utter vain knowledge, and fill his belly with the east wind?
- 3 Should he reason with unprofitable talk? or with speeches wherewith he can do no good?
- 4 Yes, you castest off fear, and restrainest prayer before Elohim.
- 5 For thy mouth uttereth thine iniquity, and you choosest the tongue of the crafty.
- 6 Thine own mouth condemneth you, and not I: yes, thine own lips testify against you.
- 7 Are you the first man *that* was born? or were you made before the hills?
- 8 **have** you heard the secret of Elohim? and dost you restrain wisdom to thyself? [Rom 11:34](#);
- 9 What knowest you, that we know not? *what* understandest you, which *is* not in us?
- 10 With us *are* both the grayheaded and very aged men, much elder than thy father. [Job 32:7](#); [\[Job 32:6\]](#);
- 11 *Are* the consolations of Elohim small with you? is there any secret thing with you?
- 12 Why does thine heart carry you away? and what do thy eyes wink at,
- 13 That you turnest thy spirit against Elohim, and lettest *such* words go out of thy mouth?
- 14 What *is* man, that he should be clean? and *he which is* born of a woman, that he should be righteous? [1Kgs 8:46](#); [2Chr 6:36](#); [Job 14:4](#); [Ps 14:3](#); [Prov 20:9](#); [Eccl 7:20](#); [1John 1:8](#); [1John 1:10](#); [\[Job 25:4\]](#);
- 15 Behold, he puts no trust in his saints; yes, the heavens are not clean in his sight. [Job 4:18](#); [Job 25:5](#);
- 16 How much more abominable and filthy *is* man, which drinketh iniquity like water? [\[Gen 6:5\]](#);

He proves by tradition the unquietness of wicked men

- 17 I will show you, hear me; and that *which* I have seen I will declare;
- 18 Which wise men have told from their fathers, and have not hid *it*:
- 19 Unto whom alone the earth was given, and no stranger passed among them.
- 20 The wicked man travaileth with pain all *his* days, and the number of years is hidden to the oppressor. [\[Gen 4:14\]](#);
- 21 A dreadful sound *is* in his ears: in prosperity the destroyer shall come upon him. [1Thess 5:3](#); [\[Job 18:11\]](#); [\[Job 27:20\]](#);
- 22 He believeth not that he shall return out of darkness, and he is waited for of the sword.
- 23 He wandereth abroad for bread, *saying*, Where *is it*? he knoweth that the day of darkness is ready at his hand. [Job 18:12](#); [Ps 109:10](#);
- 24 Trouble and anguish shall make him afraid; they shall prevail against him, as a king ready to the battle.
- 25 For he stretcheth out his hand against Elohim, and strengtheneth himself against the Almighty.
- 26 He ran upon him, *even* on *his* neck, upon the thick bosses of his bucklers:
- 27 Because he covereth his face with his fatness, and maketh collops of fat on *his* flanks.
- 28 And he dwelleth in desolate cities, *and* in houses which no man inhabiteth, which are ready to become heaps.
- 29 He shall not be rich, neither shall his substance continue, neither shall he prolong the perfection thereof upon the earth. [\[Prov 13:22\]](#);
- 30 He shall not depart out of darkness; the flame shall dry up his branches, and by the breath of his mouth shall he go away. [Job 4:9](#);
- 31 Let not him that is deceived trust in vanity: for vanity shall be his recompence.
- 32 It shall be accomplished before his time, and his branch shall not be green. [Job 22:16](#); [Ps 55:23](#);
- 33 He shall shake off his unripe grape as the vine, and shall cast off his flower as the olive.

34 For the congregation of hypocrites *shall be* desolate, and fire shall consume the tabernacles of bribery.

35 They conceive mischief, and bring forth vanity, and their belly prepareth deceit. [Ps 7:14](#); [Isa 59:4](#); [Hos 10:13](#); [\[Job 4:8\]](#);

JOB SIXTEEN

Job reproves his friends for unmercifulness

1 Then Job answered and said,

2 I have heard many such things: miserable comforters *are* you all. [Job 13:4](#);

3 Shall vain words have an end? or what emboldeneth you that you answerest?

4 I also could speak as you *do*: if your being were in my being's stead, I could heap up words against you, and shake mine head at you.

5 *But* I would strengthen you with my mouth, and the moving of my lips should relieve *your grief*.

6 Though I speak, my grief is not relieved: and Though I forbear, what am I eased?

7 But now he has made me weary: you have made desolate all my company.

8 And you have filled me with wrinkles, *which* is a witness *against me*: and my leanness rising up in me beareth witness to my face.

9 He teareth *me* in his wrath, who hateth me: he gnasheth upon me with his teeth; mine enemy sharpeneth his eyes upon me. [Job 10:16-17](#); [Job 13:24](#); [\[Job 19:11\]](#); [\[Job 33:10\]](#);

10 They have gaped upon me with their mouth; they have smitten me upon the cheek reproachfully; they have gathered themselves together against me. [\[Job 12:4\]](#); [\[Matt 26:67\]](#); [\[Mark 14:65\]](#); [\[Luke 22:63\]](#);

11 Elohim has delivered me to the ungodly, and turned me over into the hands of the wicked.

12 I was at ease, but he has broken me asunder: he has also taken *me* by my neck, and shaken me to pieces, and set me up for his mark. [Job 7:20](#); [Lam 3:12](#);

13 His archers compass me round about, he cleaveth my reins asunder, and does not spare; he poureth out my gall upon the ground.

14 He breaketh me with breach upon breach, he ran upon me like a giant.

15 I have sewed sackcloth upon my skin, and defiled my horn in the dust. [Job 30:19](#);

16 My face is foul with weeping, and on my eyelids *is* the shadow of death;

He maintains his innocence

17 Not for *any* injustice in mine hands: also my prayer *is* pure. [\[Job 33:8\]](#);

18 O earth, cover not you my blood, and let my cry have no place.

19 Also now, behold, my witness *is* in heaven, and my record *is* on high.

20 My friends scorn me: *but* mine eye poureth out *tears* unto Elohim.

21 O that one might plead for a man with Elohim, as a man *pleadeth* for his neighbour! [Job 31:35](#); [Eccl 6:10](#); [Isa 45:9](#); [Rom 9:20](#);

22 When a few years are come, then I shall go the way *whence* I shall not return. [\[Job 7:7\]](#);

Job appeals from men to Elohim

- 1** My breath is corrupt, my days are extinct, the graves *are ready* for me.
- 2** *Are there* not mockers with me? and does not mine eye continue in their provocation? [Job 12:4];
- 3** Lay down now, put me in a surety with you; who *is* he *that* will strike hands with me?
- 4** For you have hid their heart from understanding: therefore shall you not exalt *them*.
- 5** He that speaketh flattery to *his* friends, even the eyes of his children shall fail. [Job 13:7];

The unmerciful dealing of men with the afflicted may astonish, but not discourage the righteous

- 6** He has made me also a byword of the people; and before I was as a tabret. Job 30:9;
- 7** Mine eye also is dim by reason of sorrow, and all my members *are* as a shadow.
- 8** Upright *men* shall be astonished at this, and the innocent shall stir up himself against the hypocrite.
- 9** The righteous also shall hold on his way, and he that has clean hands shall be stronger and stronger.
- 10** But as for you all, do you return, and come now: for I cannot find *one* wise *man* among you. Job 6:29;

His hope is not in life, but in death

- 11** My days are past, my purposes are broken off, *even* the thoughts of my heart. Job 7:6; Job 9:25;
- 12** They change the night into day: the light *is* short because of darkness.
- 13** If I wait, the grave *is* mine house: I have made my bed in the darkness.
- 14** I have said to corruption, you are my father: to the worm, you *are* my mother, and my sister. [Job 21:26];
- 15** And where *is* now my hope? as for my hope, who shall see it?
- 16** They shall go down to the bars of the pit, when *our* rest together *is* in the dust. Job 3:17-19; Job 30:23-24;

JOB EIGHTEEN

Bildad reproves Job for presumption and impatience

- 1 Then answered Bildad the Shuhite, and said,
- 2 How long *will it be ere* you make an end of words? mark, and afterwards we will speak.
- 3 Wherefore are we counted as beasts, *and* reputed vile in your sight?
- 4 He teareth himself in his anger: shall the earth be forsaken for you? and shall the rock be removed out of his place? [Job 13:14](#);

The calamities of the wicked

- 5 **yes**, the light of the wicked shall be put out, and the spark of his fire shall not shine. [\[Prov 13:9\]](#); [\[Prov 24:20\]](#);
- 6 The light shall be dark in his tabernacle, and his candle shall be put out with him.
- 7 The steps of his strength shall be straitened, and his own counsel shall cast him down.
- 8 For he is cast into a net by his own feet, and he walketh upon a snare.
- 9 The gin shall take *him* by the heel, *and* the robber shall prevail against him. [Job 5:5](#);
- 10 The snare *is* laid for him in the ground, and a trap for him in the way.
- 11 Terrors shall make him afraid on every side, and shall drive him to his feet. [Job 15:21](#); [Jer 6:25](#); [Jer 46:5](#); [Jer 49:29](#); [\[Job 27:20\]](#);
- 12 His strength shall be hungerbitten, and destruction *shall be* ready at his side. [Job 15:23](#);
- 13 It shall devour the strength of his skin: *even* the firstborn of death shall devour his strength.
- 14 His confidence shall be rooted out of his tabernacle, and it shall bring him to the king of terrors. [Job 8:13-14](#); [Job 11:20](#); [Prov 10:28](#); [\[Job 8:13\]](#);
- 15 It shall dwell in his tabernacle, because *it is* none of his: brimstone shall be scattered upon his habitation.
- 16 His roots shall be dried up beneath, and above shall his branch be cut off.
- 17 His remembrance shall perish from the earth, and he shall have no name in the street. [Ps 109:13](#); [Prov 10:7](#); [\[Ps 109:15\]](#); [\[Prov 2:22\]](#);
- 18 He shall be driven from light into darkness, and chased out of the world.
- 19 He shall neither have son nor nephew among his people, nor any remaining in his dwellings. [Isa 14:22](#); [Jer 22:30](#); [\[Isa 14:20\]](#);
- 20 They that come after *him* shall be astonished at his day, as they that went before were frightened.
- 21 Surely such *are* the dwellings of the wicked, and this *is* the place *of him that* knoweth not Elohim.

JOB NINETEEN

Job, complaining of his friends' cruelty, shows there is misery enough in him to feed their cruelty

- 1 Then Job answered and said,
- 2 How long will you vex my being, and break me in pieces with words?
- 3 These ten times have you reproached me: you are not ashamed *that* you make yourselves strange to me.
- 4 And be it indeed *that* I have erred, mine error remaineth with myself.
- 5 If indeed you will magnify *yourselves* against me, and plead against me my reproach:

6 Know now that Elohim has overthrown me, and has compassed me with his net.
7 Behold, I cry out of wrong, but I am not heard: I cry aloud, but *there is* no judgment.
8 He has fenced up my way that I cannot pass, and he has set darkness in my paths. [Job 3:23];
9 He has stripped me of my glory, and taken the crown *from* my head.
10 He has destroyed me on every side, and I am gone: and mine hope has he removed like a tree.
11 He has also kindled his wrath against me, and he counteth me unto him as *one of* his enemies. Job 13:24; Job 16:9; Job 33:10; Lam 2:5;
12 His troops come together, and raise up their way against me, and encamp round about my tabernacle.
13 He has put my brethren far from me, and mine acquaintance are verily estranged from me. Ps 31:11; Ps 38:11; Ps 69:8; Ps 88:8; [Matt 26:56]; [Mark 14:50];
14 My kinsfolk have failed, and my familiar friends have forgotten me.
15 They that dwell in mine house, and my maids, count me for a stranger: I am an alien in their sight.
16 I called my servant, and he gave *me* no answer; I intreated him with my mouth.
17 My breath is strange to my wife, though I intreated for the children's *sake* of mine own body.
18 *yes*, young children despised me; I arose, and they spoke against me. Job 30:1;
19 All my inward friends abhorred me: and they whom I loved are turned against me. Ps 41:9; Ps 55:13-14; [Job 30:10];
20 My bone cleaveth to my skin and to my flesh, and I am escaped with the skin of my teeth. Job 30:30; Ps 102:5; Lam 4:8;

He craves pity

21 Have pity upon me, have pity upon me, O you my friends; for the hand of Elohim has touched me.
22 Why do you persecute me as Elohim, and are not satisfied with my flesh?

He believes the resurrection

23 Oh that my words were now written! oh that they were printed in a book!
24 That they were graven with an iron pen and lead in the rock for ever!
25 For I know *that* my redeemer liveth, and *that* he shall stand at the latter *day* upon the earth:
26 And though after my skin *worms* destroy this *body*, yet in my flesh shall I see Elohim:
27 Whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me.
28 But you should say, Why persecute we him, seeing the root of the matter is found in me?
29 Be you afraid of the sword: for wrath *bringeth* the punishments of the sword, that you may know *there is* a judgment.

JOB TWENTY

Zophar shows the state and portion of the wicked

1 Then answered Zophar the Naamathite, and said,
2 Therefore do my thoughts cause me to answer, and for *this* I make haste.
3 I have heard the check of my reproach, and the spirit of my understanding causeth me to answer.
4 Knowest you *not* this of old, since man was placed upon earth,
5 That the triumphing of the wicked *is* short, and the joy of the hypocrite *but* for a moment? Ps 37:35-36;
6 Though his excellency mount up to the heavens, and his head reach unto the clouds;
7 Yet he shall perish for ever like his own dung: they which have seen him shall say, Where *is* he?

8 He shall fly away as a dream, and shall not be found: yes, he shall be chased away as a vision of the night.
9 The eye also *which* saw him shall *see him* no more; neither shall his place any more behold him.
10 His children shall seek to please the poor, and his hands shall restore their goods.
11 His bones are full *of the sin* of his youth, which shall lie down with him in the dust.
12 Though wickedness be sweet in his mouth, though he hide it under his tongue;
13 *Though* he spare it, and forsake it not; but keep it still within his mouth:
14 Yet his meat in his bowels is turned, *it is* the gall of asps within him.
15 He has swallowed down riches, and he shall vomit them up again: Elohim shall cast them out of his belly.
16 He shall suck the poison of asps: the viper's tongue shall slay him.
17 He shall not see the rivers, the floods, the brooks of honey and butter.
18 That which he laboured for shall he restore, and shall not swallow *it* down: according to *his* substance *shall* the restitution *be*, and he shall not rejoice *therein*.
19 Because he has oppressed *and* has forsaken the poor; *because* he has violently taken away a house which he built not; [Eccl 5:13](#);
20 Surely he shall not feel quietness in his belly, he shall not save of that which he desired.
21 There shall none of his meat be left; therefore shall no man look for his goods.
22 In the fulness of his sufficiency he shall be in straits: every hand of the wicked shall come upon him.
23 *When* he is about to fill his belly, *Elohim* shall cast the fury of his wrath upon him, and shall rain *it* upon him while he is eating.
24 He shall flee from the iron weapon, *and* the bow of steel shall strike him through.
25 It is drawn, and cometh out of the body; yes, the glittering sword cometh out of his gall: terrors *are* upon him.
26 All darkness *shall be* hid in his secret places: a fire not blown shall consume him; it shall go ill with him that is left in his tabernacle.
27 The heaven shall reveal his iniquity; and the earth shall rise up against him.
28 The increase of his house shall depart, *and his goods* shall flow away in the day of his wrath.
29 This *is* the portion of a wicked man from Elohim, and the heritage appointed unto him by Elohim. [\[Job 21:17\]](#); [\[Job 27:13\]](#);

JOB TWENTY-ONE

Job shows that even in the judgment of man he has reason to be grieved

1 But Job answered and said,
2 Hear diligently my speech, and let this be your consolations.
3 Suffer me that I may speak; and after that I have spoken, mock on. [\[Job 12:4\]](#);
4 As for me, *is* my complaint to man? and if *it were so*, why should not my spirit be troubled?
5 Mark me, and be astonished, and lay *your* hand upon *your* mouth. [\[Prov 30:32\]](#);
6 Even when I remember I am afraid, and trembling taketh hold on my flesh.

Sometimes the wicked prosper, though they despise Elohim

7 Wherefore do the wicked live, become old, yes, are mighty in power? [Ps 17:10](#); [Ps 73:12](#); [Jer 12:1](#); [Hab 1:16](#); [\[Job 12:6\]](#); [\[Ps 73:3\]](#);
8 Their seed is established in their sight with them, and their offspring before their eyes.

- 9 Their houses *are* safe from fear, neither *is* the rod of Elohim upon them.
- 10 Their bull gendereth, and faileth not; their cow calveth, and casteth not her calf.
- 11 They send forth their little ones like a flock, and their children dance.
- 12 They take the timbrel and harp, and rejoice at the sound of the organ.
- 13 They spend their days in wealth, and in a moment go down to the grave. [Luke 16:25]; [Jas 5:5];
- 14 Therefore they say unto Elohim, Depart from us; for we desire not the knowledge of thy ways. Job 22:17; [Mal 3:13];
- 15 What *is* the Almighty, that we should serve him? and what profit should we have, if we pray unto him? Exod 5:2; Mal 3:14;

Sometimes their destruction is manifest

- 16 Lo, their good *is* not in their hand: the counsel of the wicked is far from me. Job 22:18;
- 17 How oft is the candle of the wicked put out! and *how oft* cometh their destruction upon them! Elohim distributeth sorrows in his anger. Job 20:29; Ps 11:6-7; [Prov 13:9];
- 18 They are as stubble before the wind, and as chaff that the storm carrieth away. [Ps 1:4]; [Ps 35:5]; [Isa 17:13]; [Isa 29:5];
- 19 Elohim layeth up his iniquity for his children: he rewardeth him, and he shall know *it*.
- 20 His eyes shall see his destruction, and he shall drink of the wrath of the Almighty.

The happy and unhappy are alike in death

- 21 For what pleasure *has* he in his house after him, when the number of his months is cut off in the midst?
- 22 Shall *any* teach Elohim knowledge? seeing he judgeth those that are high. Isa 40:13; Rom 11:34; 1Cor 2:16; [Job 34:17];
- 23 One dieth in his full strength, being wholly at ease and quiet.
- 24 His breasts are full of milk, and his bones are moistened with marrow.
- 25 And another dieth in the bitterness of his being, and never eateth with pleasure.
- 26 They shall lie down alike in the dust, and the worms shall cover them. Job 17:14;

The judgment of the wicked is in another world

- 27 Behold, I know your thoughts, and the devices *which* you wrongfully imagine against me.
- 28 For you say, Where *is* the house of the prince? and where *are* the dwelling places of the wicked?
- 29 Have you not asked them that go by the way? and do you not know their tokens,
- 30 That the wicked is reserved to the day of destruction? they shall be brought forth to the day of wrath. Prov 16:4;
- 31 Who shall declare his way to his face? and who shall repay him *what* he has done?
- 32 **yet** shall he be brought to the grave, and shall remain in the tomb.
- 33 The clods of the valley shall be sweet unto him, and every man shall draw after him, as *there are* innumerable before him.
- 34 How then comfort you me in vain, seeing in your answers there remaineth falsehood?

JOB TWENTY-TWO

Eliphaz shows that man's goodness profits not Elohim

- 1 Then Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said,
- 2 Can a man be profitable unto Elohim, as he that is wise may be profitable unto himself? [Job 35:7]; [Ps 16:2];

3 *Is it* any pleasure to the Almighty, that you are righteous? or *is it* gain *to him*, that you makest thy ways perfect?

4 Will he reprove you for fear of you? will he enter with you into judgment?

He accuses Job of different sins

5 *Is* not thy wickedness great? and thine iniquities infinite?

6 For you have taken a pledge from thy brother for nought, and stripped the naked of their clothing. [Exod 22:26-27](#); [Deut 24:6](#); [Deut 24:10](#);

7 You have not given water to the weary to drink, and you have withholden bread from the hungry.

8 But *as for* the mighty man, he had the earth; and the honourable man dwelt in it.

9 You have sent widows away empty, and the arms of the fatherless have been broken.

10 Therefore snares *are* round about you, and sudden fear troubleth you;

11 Or darkness, *that* you canst not see; and abundance of waters cover you.

12 *Is* not Elohim in the height of heaven? and behold the height of the stars, how high they are!

13 And you sayest, How does Elohim know? can he judge through the dark cloud?

14 Thick clouds *are* a covering to him, that he seeth not; and he walketh in the circuit of heaven.

15 *have* you marked the old way which wicked men have trodden?

16 Which were cut down out of time, whose foundation was overflown with a flood: [\[Job 15:32\]](#); [\[Job 36:14\]](#);

17 Which said unto Elohim, Depart from us: and what can the Almighty do for them? [Job 21:14](#);

18 Yet he filled their houses with good *things*: but the counsel of the wicked is far from me. [Job 21:16](#);

19 The righteous see *it*, and are glad: and the innocent laugh them to scorn. [Ps 107:42](#);

20 Whereas our substance is not cut down, but the remnant of them the fire consumeth.

He exhorts him to repentance, with promises of mercy

21 Acquaint now thyself with him, and be at peace: thereby good shall come unto you. [\[Job 11:12\]](#);

22 Receive, I pray you, the law from his mouth, and lay up his words in thine heart.

23 If you return to the Almighty, you shall be built up, you shall put away iniquity far from thy tabernacles. [Job 8:5-6](#); [\[Job 8:5\]](#);

24 Then shall you lay up gold as dust, and the *gold* of Ophir as the stones of the brooks.

25 Yes, the Almighty shall be thy defence, and you shall have plenty of silver.

26 For then shall you have thy delight in the Almighty, and shall lift up thy face unto Elohim.

27 You shall make thy prayer unto him, and he shall hear you, and you shall pay thy vows. [\[Ps 50:14\]](#);

28 You shall also decree a thing, and it shall be established unto you: and the light shall shine upon thy ways.

29 When *men* are cast down, then you shall say, *There is* lifting up; and he shall save the humble person. [Prov 29:23](#); [\[Matt 23:12\]](#); [\[Luke 14:11\]](#); [\[Luke 18:14\]](#); [\[Jas 4:10\]](#); [\[1Pet 5:6\]](#);

30 He shall deliver the island of the innocent: and it is delivered by the pureness of thine hands.

JOB TWENTY-THREE

Job longs to appear before Elohim

1 Then Job answered and said,

2 Even to day *is* my complaint bitter: my stroke is heavier than my groaning.

- 3 Oh that I knew where I might find him! *that* I might come *even* to his seat!
4 I would order *my* cause before him, and fill my mouth with arguments.
5 I would know the words *which* he would answer me, and understand what he would say unto me.

in confidence of his mercy

- 6 Will he plead against me with *his* great power? No; but he would put *strength* in me.
7 There the righteous might dispute with him; so should I be delivered for ever from my judge.

Elohim, who is invisible, observes our ways

- 8 Behold, I go forward, but he *is* not *there*; and backward, but I cannot perceive him:
9 On the left hand, where he works, but I cannot behold *him*: he hides himself on the right hand, that I cannot see *him*:
10 But he knoweth the way that I take: *when* he has tried me, I shall come forth as gold. [Job 33:6]; [Job 33:8];

Job's innocence

- 11 My foot has held his steps, his way have I kept, and not declined. Job 31:4;
12 Neither have I gone back from the commandment of his lips; I have esteemed the words of his mouth more than my necessary *food*.

Elohim's decree is immutable

- 13 But he *is* in one *mind*, and who can turn him? and *what* his being desireth, even *that* he doeth. Ps 115:3; [Prov 19:21];
14 For he performeth *the thing that is* appointed for me: and many such *things are* with him.
15 Therefore am I troubled at his presence: when I consider, I am afraid of him.
16 For Elohim maketh my heart soft, and the Almighty troubleth me:
17 Because I was not cut off before the darkness, *neither* has he covered the darkness from my face.

Wickedness often goes unpunished

- 1** Why, seeing times are not hidden from the Almighty, do they that know him not see his days?
- 2** *Some* remove the landmarks; they violently take away flocks, and feed *thereof*. [Deut 19:14](#); [Deut 27:17](#); [Prov 22:28](#); [Prov 23:10](#);
- 3** They drive away the ass of the fatherless, they take the widow's ox for a pledge.
- 4** They turn the needy out of the way: the poor of the earth hide themselves together. [Prov 28:28](#);
- 5** Behold, *as* wild asses in the desert, go they forth to their work; rising early for a prey: the wilderness *yieldeth* food for them *and* for *their* children. [\[Job 39:6\]](#);
- 6** They reap *every one* his grain in the field: and they gather the vintage of the wicked.
- 7** They cause the naked to lodge without clothing, that *they have* no covering in the cold.
- 8** They are wet with the showers of the mountains, and embrace the rock for want of a shelter.
- 9** They pluck the fatherless from the breast, and take a pledge of the poor.
- 10** They cause *him* to go naked without clothing, and they take away the sheaf *from* the hungry; [Lev 19:13](#);
- 11** *Which* make oil within their walls, *and* tread *their* winepresses, and suffer thirst. [Deut 25:4](#); [Jas 5:4](#);
- 12** Men groan from out of the city, and the being of the wounded cries out: yet Elohim layeth not folly *to them*.
- 13** They are of those that rebel against the light; they know not the ways thereof, nor abide in the paths thereof.
- 14** The murderer rising with the light killeth the poor and needy, and in the night is as a thief. [Ps 10:8-9](#);
- 15** The eye also of the adulterer waiteth for the twilight, saying, No eye shall see me: and disguiseth *his* face. [Prov 7:8-9](#); [Ps 10:11](#); [\[Job 31:9\]](#);
- 16** In the dark they dig through houses, *which* they had marked for themselves in the daytime: they know not the light. [Job 38:15](#); [John 3:20](#);

There is a secret judgment for the wicked

- 17** For the morning *is* to them even as the shadow of death: if *one* know *them*, *they are in* the terrors of the shadow of death.
- 18** He *is* swift as the waters; their portion is cursed in the earth: he beholdeth not the way of the vineyards.
- 19** Drought and heat consume the snow waters: *so does* the grave *those which* have sinned.
- 20** The womb shall forget him; the worm shall feed sweetly on him; he shall be no more remembered; and wickedness shall be broken as a tree.
- 21** He evil entreateth the barren *that* beareth not: and doeth not good to the widow.
- 22** He draweth also the mighty with his power: he riseth up, and no *man* is sure of life.
- 23** *Though* it be given him *to be* in safety, whereon he resteth; yet his eyes *are* upon their ways.
- 24** They are exalted for a little while, but are gone and brought low; they are taken out of the way as all *other*, and cut off as the tops of the ears of corn.
- 25** And if *it be* not *so* now, who will make me a liar, and make my speech nothing worth?

JOB TWENTY-FIVE

Bildad shows that man cannot be justified before Elohim

- 1** Then answered Bildad the Shuhite, and said,
- 2** Dominion and fear *are* with him, he maketh peace in his high places.
- 3** Is there any number of his armies? and upon whom does not his light arise?
- 4** How then can man be justified with Elohim? or how can he be clean *that is* born of a woman? [Job 4:17-19](#); [Job 15:14-16](#); [Job 15:14](#);
- 5** Behold even to the moon, and it shineth not; yes, the stars are not pure in his sight. [Job 15:15](#);
- 6** How much less man, *that is* a worm? and the son of man, *which is* a worm? [Job 4:19](#); [Ps 22:6](#);

JOB TWENTY-SIX

Job, reproving the uncharitable spirit of Bildad

- 1** But Job answered and said,
- 2** How have you helped *him that is* without power? *how* savest you the arm *that has* no strength?
- 3** How have you counselled *him that has* no wisdom? and *how* have you plentifully declared the thing as it is?
- 4** To whom have you uttered words? and whose spirit came from you?

acknowledges the power of Elohim to be infinite and unsearchable

- 5** Dead *things* are formed from under the waters, and the inhabitants thereof.
- 6** Hell *is* naked before him, and destruction has no covering. [Ps 139:8](#); [Ps 139:11](#); [Prov 15:11](#); [Heb 4:13](#); [[Ps 95:4](#)];
- 7** He stretcheth out the north over the empty place, *and* hangeth the earth upon nothing. [Ps 104:2](#); [[Ps 104:5](#)];
- 8** He bindeth up the waters in his thick clouds; and the cloud is not rent under them.
- 9** He holdeth back the face of his throne, *and* spreadeth his cloud upon it. [Job 9:8](#); [Ps 104:2-3](#);
- 10** He has compassed the waters with bounds, until the day and night come to an end. [Job 38:8](#); [Ps 33:7](#); [Ps 104:9](#); [Jer 5:22](#); [Gen 1:9](#); [Prov 8:29](#); [[Ps 148:6](#)]; [[Prov 8:27](#)];
- 11** The pillars of heaven tremble and are astonished at his reproof.
- 12** He divideth the sea with his power, and by his understanding he smiteth through the proud. [Isa 51:15](#); [[Matt 8:26](#)]; [[Mark 4:39](#)]; [[Luke 8:25](#)];
- 13** By his spirit he has garnished the heavens; his hand has formed the crooked serpent. [Ps 33:6](#);
- 14** Lo, these *are* parts of his ways: but how little a portion is heard of him? but the thunder of his power who can understand?

Job protests his sincerity

- 1** Moreover Job continued his parable, and said,
2 *As* Elohim liveth, *who* has taken away my judgment; and the Almighty, *who* has vexed my being; [Job 34:5];
3 All the while my breath *is* in me, and the spirit of Elohim *is* in my nostrils;
4 My lips shall not speak wickedness, nor my tongue utter deceit.
5 Elohim forbid that I should justify you: till I die I will not remove mine integrity from me. [Job 33:8];
6 My righteousness I hold fast, and will not let it go: my heart shall not reproach *me* so long as I live.
7 Let mine enemy be as the wicked, and he that riseth up against me as the unrighteous.

The hypocrite is without hope

- 8** For what *is* the hope of the hypocrite, though he has gained, when Elohim taketh away his being? Matt 16:26; Luke 12:20;
9 Will Elohim hear his cry when trouble cometh upon him? Job 35:12; Ps 18:41; Ps 109:7; Prov 1:28; Prov 28:9; Isa 1:15; Jer 14:12; Ezek 8:18; Mic 3:4; John 9:31; Jas 4:3; [Prov 1:27];
10 Will he delight himself in the Almighty? will he always call upon Elohim?

The blessings which the wicked have are turned into curses

- 11** I will teach you by the hand of Elohim: *that* which *is* with the Almighty will I not conceal.
12 Behold, all you yourselves have seen *it*; why then are you thus altogether vain?
13 This *is* the portion of a wicked man with Elohim, and the heritage of oppressors, *which* they shall receive of the Almighty. Job 20:29;
14 If his children be multiplied, *it is* for the sword: and his offspring shall not be satisfied with bread. Deut 28:41; Hos 9:13;
15 Those that remain of him shall be buried in death: and his widows shall not weep. Ps 78:64;
16 Though he heap up silver as the dust, and prepare raiment as the clay; [Eccl 2:26];
17 He may prepare *it*, but the just shall put *it* on, and the innocent shall divide the silver. Prov 28:8; Eccl 2:26; [Prov 13:22];
18 He buildeth his house as a moth, and as a booth *that* the keeper maketh. [Isa 24:20];
19 The rich man shall lie down, but he shall not be gathered: he openeth his eyes, and he *is* not. Ps 49:17; [1Tim 6:7];
20 Terrors take hold on him as waters, a tempest stealeth him away in the night. Job 15:21; Job 18:11;
21 The east wind carrieth him away, and he departeth: and as a storm hurleth him out of his place.
22 For *Elohim* shall cast upon him, and not spare: he would fain flee out of his hand.
23 *Men* shall clap their hands at him, and shall hiss him out of his place.

There is a knowledge of natural things

- 1** Surely there is a vein for the silver, and a place for gold *where* they fine *it*.
- 2** Iron is taken out of the earth, and brass *is* molten *out of* the stone.
- 3** He setteth an end to darkness, and searcheth out all perfection: the stones of darkness, and the shadow of death.
- 4** The flood breaketh out from the inhabitant; *even the waters* forgotten of the foot: they are dried up, they are gone away from men.
- 5** *As for* the earth, out of it cometh bread: and under it is turned up as it were fire.
- 6** The stones of it *are* the place of sapphires: and it has dust of gold.
- 7** *There is* a path which no fowl knoweth, and which the vulture's eye has not seen:
- 8** The lion's whelps have not trodden it, nor the fierce lion passed by it.
- 9** He puts forth his hand upon the rock; he overturneth the mountains by the roots.
- 10** He cutteth out rivers among the rocks; and his eye seeth every precious thing.
- 11** He bindeth the floods from overflowing; and *the thing that is* hid bringeth he forth to light.

But wisdom is an excellent gift of Elohim

- 12** But where shall wisdom be found? and where *is* the place of understanding? [\[Job 28:20\];](#)
- 13** Man knoweth not the price thereof; neither is it found in the land of the living.
- 14** The depth saith, It *is* not in me: and the sea saith, *It is* not with me. [Job 28:22;](#)
- 15** It cannot be gotten for gold, neither shall silver be weighed *for* the price thereof. [Prov 3:14; Prov 8:11; Prov 8:19; Prov 16:16;](#)
- 16** It cannot be valued with the gold of Ophir, with the precious onyx, or the sapphire.
- 17** The gold and the crystal cannot equal it: and the exchange of it *shall not be for* jewels of fine gold.
- 18** No mention shall be made of coral, or of pearls: for the price of wisdom *is* above rubies.
- 19** The topaz of Ethiopia shall not equal it, neither shall it be valued with pure gold.
- 20** Whence then cometh wisdom? and where *is* the place of understanding? [Job 28:12;](#)
- 21** Seeing it is hid from the eyes of all living, and kept close from the fowls of the air. [\[1Cor 2:6\];](#)
- 22** Destruction and death say, We have heard the fame thereof with our ears. [Job 28:14;](#)
- 23** Elohim understandeth the way thereof, and he knoweth the place thereof.
- 24** For he looketh to the ends of the earth, *and* seeth under the whole heaven; [\[Ps 66:7\];](#)
- 25** To make the weight for the winds; and he weigheth the waters by measure. [Prov 8:29;](#)
- 26** When he made a decree for the rain, and a way for the lightning of the thunder:
- 27** Then did he see it, and declare it; he prepared it, yes, and searched it out.
- 28** And unto man he said, Behold, the fear of the Lord, that *is* wisdom; and to depart from evil *is* understanding. [Ps 111:10; Prov 1:7; Prov 9:10;](#)

Job bemoans his former prosperity

- 1 Moreover Job continued his parable, and said,
- 2 Oh that I were as *in* months past, as *in* the days *when* Elohim preserved me;
- 3 When his candle shined upon my head, *and when* by his light I walked *through* darkness;
- 4 As I was in the days of my youth, when the secret of Elohim *was* upon my tabernacle;
- 5 When the Almighty *was* yet with me, *when* my children *were* about me;
- 6 When I washed my steps with butter, and the rock poured me out rivers of oil;
- 7 When I went out to the gate through the city, *when* I prepared my seat in the street!
- 8 The young men saw me, and hid themselves: and the aged arose, *and* stood up.
- 9 The princes refrained talking, and laid *their* hand on their mouth.
- 10 The nobles held their peace, and their tongue cleaved to the roof of their mouth.
- 11 When the ear heard *me*, then it blessed me; and when the eye saw *me*, it gave witness to me:
- 12 Because I delivered the poor that cried, and the fatherless, and *him that had* none to help him. [Ps 72:12](#); [Prov 21:13](#);
- 13 The blessing of him that was ready to perish came upon me: and I caused the widow's heart to sing for joy.
- 14 I put on righteousness, and it clothed me: my judgment *was* as a robe and a diadem. [Isa 59:17](#); [Eph 6:14](#); [1Thess 5:8](#);
- 15 I was eyes to the blind, and feet *was* I to the lame.
- 16 I *was* a father to the poor: and the cause *which* I knew not I searched out. [\[Prov 29:7\]](#);
- 17 And I brake the jaws of the wicked, and plucked the spoil out of his teeth.
- 18 Then I said, I shall die in my nest, and I shall multiply *my* days as the sand.
- 19 My root *was* spread out by the waters, and the dew lay all night upon my branch.
- 20 My glory *was* fresh in me, and my bow was renewed in my hand.
- 21 Unto me *men* gave ear, and waited, and kept silence at my counsel.
- 22 After my words they spoke not again; and my speech dropped upon them.
- 23 And they waited for me as for the rain; and they opened their mouth wide *as* for the latter rain.
- 24 *If* I laughed on them, they believed *it* not; and the light of my countenance they cast not down.
- 25 I chose out their way, and sat chief, and dwelt as a king in the army, as one *that* comforteth the mourners.

Job's honour is turned into extreme contempt

- 1 But now *they that are* younger than I have me in derision, whose fathers I would have disdained to have set with the dogs of my flock. [\[Job 12:4\]](#); [\[Job 19:18\]](#);
- 2 Yes, whereto *might* the strength of their hands *profit* me, in whom old age was perished?
- 3 For want and famine *they were* solitary; fleeing into the wilderness in former time desolate and waste.
- 4 Who cut up mallows by the bushes, and juniper roots *for* their meat.
- 5 They were driven forth from among *men*, (they cried after them as *after* a thief;)
- 6 To dwell in the cliffs of the valleys, *in* caves of the earth, and *in* the rocks.
- 7 Among the bushes they brayed; under the nettles they were gathered together.
- 8 *They were* children of fools, yes, children of base men: they were viler than the earth.

9 And now am I their song, yes, I am their byword. [Job 17:6](#); [Ps 69:12](#); [Lam 3:14](#); [Lam 3:63](#);
10 They abhor me, they flee far from me, and spare not to spit in my face. [Job 19:19](#);
11 Because he has loosed my cord, and afflicted me, they have also let loose the bridle before me.
12 Upon *my* right *hand* rise the youth; they push away my feet, and they raise up against me the ways of their destruction.
13 They mar my path, they set forward my calamity, they have no helper.
14 They came *upon me* as a wide breaking in *of waters*: in the desolation they rolled themselves *upon me*.

and his prosperity into calamity

15 Terrors are turned upon me: they pursue my being as the wind: and my welfare passeth away as a cloud.
16 And now my being is poured out upon me; the days of affliction have taken hold upon me.
17 My bones are pierced in me at night: and my sinews take no rest.
18 By the great force *of my disease* is my garment changed: it bindeth me about as the collar of my coat.
19 He has cast me into the mire, and I am become like dust and ashes. [\[Job 16:15\]](#);
20 I cry unto you, and you dost not hear me: I stand up, and you regardest me *not*.
21 You are become cruel to me: with thy strong hand you opposest thyself against me.
22 You liftest me up to the wind; you causest me to ride *upon it*, and dissolvest my substance.
23 For I know *that* you will bring me *to* death, and *to* the house appointed for all living. [Heb 9:27](#); [\[Job 17:16\]](#);
24 Howbeit he will not stretch out *his* hand to the grave, though they cry in his destruction.
25 Did not I weep for him that was in trouble? was *not* my being grieved for the poor? [Ps 35:13-14](#); [Rom 12:15](#);
26 When I looked for good, then evil came *unto me*: and when I waited for light, there came darkness.
27 My bowels boiled, and rested not: the days of affliction prevented me.
28 I went mourning without the sun: I stood up, *and* I cried in the congregation.
29 I am a brother to dragons, and a companion to owls. [Ps 102:6](#); [\[Mic 1:8\]](#);
30 My skin is black upon me, and my bones are burned with heat. [Ps 119:83](#); [Lam 4:8](#); [Lam 5:10](#); [\[Job 19:20\]](#);
31 My harp also is *turned* to mourning, and my organ into the voice of them that weep.

Job makes a solemn protestation of his integrity in several duties

- 1** I made a covenant with mine eyes; why then should I think upon a maid? [\[Matt 5:28\];](#)
- 2** For what portion of Elohim *is there* from above? and *what* inheritance of the Almighty from on high?
- 3** *Is* not destruction to the wicked? and a strange *punishment* to the workers of iniquity? [\[Isa 1:28\];](#)
- 4** Does not he see my ways, and count all my steps? [2Chr 16:9; Job 34:21; Prov 5:21; Prov 15:3; Jer 32:19; \[Job 14:16\]; \[Job 23:11\]; \[Prov 20:24\];](#)
- 5** If I have walked with vanity, or if my foot has hastened to deceit; [\[Ps 26:4\];](#)
- 6** Let me be weighed in an even balance, that Elohim may know mine integrity. [\[Ps 139:23\];](#)
- 7** If my step has turned out of the way, and mine heart walked after mine eyes, and if any blot has cleaved to mine hands;
- 8** *Then* let me sow, and let another eat; yes, let my offspring be rooted out.
- 9** If mine heart have been deceived by a woman, or *if* I have laid wait at my neighbour's door; [Job 24:15; Prov 7:25;](#)
- 10** *Then* let my wife grind unto another, and let others bow down upon her.
- 11** For this *is* a heinous crime; yes, it *is* an iniquity *to be punished by* the judges.
- 12** For it *is* a fire *that* consumeth to destruction, and would root out all mine increase.
- 13** If I did despise the cause of my manservant or of my maidservant, when they contended with me; [\[Prov 22:22\];](#)
- 14** What then shall I do when Elohim riseth up? and when he visiteth, what shall I answer him? [Ps 44:21;](#)
- 15** Did not he that made me in the womb make him? and did not one fashion us in the womb? [Job 34:19; Prov 14:31; Prov 17:5;](#)
- 16** If I have withheld the poor from *their* desire, or have caused the eyes of the widow to fail;
- 17** Or have eaten my morsel myself alone, and the fatherless has not eaten thereof;
- 18** (For from my youth he was brought up with me, as *with* a father, and I have guided her from my mother's womb;)
- 19** If I have seen any perish for want of clothing, or any poor without covering;
- 20** If his loins have not blessed me, and *if* he were *not* warmed with the fleece of my sheep;
- 21** If I have lifted up my hand against the fatherless, when I saw my help in the gate:
- 22** *Then* let mine arm fall from my shoulder blade, and mine arm be broken from the bone.
- 23** For destruction *from* Elohim *was* a terror to me, and by reason of his highness I could not endure.
- 24** If I have made gold my hope, or have said to the fine gold, you *are* my confidence; [Mark 10:24; 1Tim 6:17;](#)
- 25** If I rejoiced because my wealth *was* great, and because mine hand had gotten much; [Ps 62:10;](#)
- 26** If I beheld the sun when it shined, or the moon walking *in* brightness; [Deut 4:19;](#)
- 27** And my heart has been secretly enticed, or my mouth has kissed my hand:
- 28** This also *were* an iniquity *to be punished by* the judge: for I should have denied the Elohim *that is* above.
- 29** If I rejoiced at the destruction of him that hated me, or lifted up myself when evil found him: [Prov 17:5; \[Prov 24:17\];](#)
- 30** Neither have I suffered my mouth to sin by wishing a curse to his being. [Matt 5:44; Rom 12:14;](#)
- 31** If the men of my tabernacle said not, Oh that we had of his flesh! we cannot be satisfied.
- 32** The stranger did not lodge in the street: *but* I opened my doors to the traveller. [Heb 13:2; 1Pet 4:9;](#)
- 33** If I covered my transgressions as Adam, by hiding mine iniquity in my bosom:
- 34** Did I fear a great multitude, or did the contempt of families terrify me, that I kept silence, *and* went not out of the door?

- 35** Oh that one would hear me! behold, my desire *is, that* the Almighty would answer me, and *that* mine adversary had written a book. [\[Job 16:21\];](#)
- 36** Surely I would take it upon my shoulder, *and* bind it *as* a crown to me.
- 37** I would declare unto him the number of my steps; as a prince would I go near unto him.
- 38** If my land cry against me, or that the furrows likewise thereof complain;
- 39** If I have eaten the fruits thereof without money, or have caused the owners thereof to lose their life:
- 40** Let thistles grow instead of wheat, and cockle instead of barley. The words of Job are ended.

JOB THIRTY-TWO

Elihu is angry with Job and his three friends

- 1** So these three men ceased to answer Job, because he *was* righteous in his own eyes.
- 2** Then was kindled the wrath of Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite, of the kindred of Ram: against Job was his wrath kindled, because he justified himself rather than Elohim.
- 3** Also against his three friends was his wrath kindled, because they had found no answer, and yet had condemned Job.
- 4** Now Elihu had waited till Job had spoken, because they *were* elder than he. [\[Job 32:6\];](#)
- 5** When Elihu saw that *there was* no answer in the mouth of *these* three men, then his wrath was kindled.

Because wisdom comes not from age, he excuses the boldness of his youth

- 6** And Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite answered and said, I *am* young, and you *are* very old; wherefore I was afraid, and dared not show you mine opinion. [Job 32:4; Job 32:7; Job 15:10;](#)
- 7** I said, Days should speak, and multitude of years should teach wisdom. [\[Job 15:10\]; \[Job 32:6\];](#)
- 8** But *there is* a spirit in man: and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding. [Job 12:13; Job 38:36; Prov 2:6; Eccl 2:26; Dan 1:17; Dan 2:21; \[Dan 2:22\];](#)
- 9** Great men are not *always* wise: neither do the aged understand judgment. [Job 12:12; \[Job 12:20\];](#)
- 10** Therefore I said, Hearken to me; I also will show mine opinion.

He reproves them for not satisfying Job

- 11** Behold, I waited for your words; I gave ear to your reasons, whilst you searched out what to say.
- 12** Yes, I attended unto you, and, behold, *there was* none of you that convinced Job, *or* that answered his words:
- 13** Lest you should say, We have found out wisdom: Elohim thrusteth him down, not man.
- 14** Now he has not directed *his* words against me: neither will I answer him with your speeches.
- 15** They were amazed, they answered no more: they left off speaking.

His zeal to speak

- 16** When I had waited, (for they spoke not, but stood still, *and* answered no more;)
- 17** *I said*, I will answer also my part, I also will show mine opinion.
- 18** For I am full of matter, the spirit within me constraineth me.
- 19** Behold, my belly *is* as wine *which* has no vent; it is ready to burst like new bottles.
- 20** I will speak, that I may be refreshed: I will open my lips and answer.
- 21** Let me not, I pray you, accept any man's person, neither let me give flattering titles unto man. [\[Job 13:7\];](#)
- 22** For I know not to give flattering titles; *in so doing* my maker would soon take me away.

Elihu offers himself instead of Elohim to reason with Job

- 1** Wherefore, Job, I pray you, hear my speeches, and hearken to all my words.
- 2** Behold, now I have opened my mouth, my tongue has spoken in my mouth.
- 3** My words *shall be of* the uprightness of my heart: and my lips shall utter knowledge clearly.
- 4** The Spirit of Elohim has made me, and the breath of the Almighty has given me life.
- 5** If you canst answer me, set *thy words* in order before me, stand up.
- 6** Behold, I *am* according to thy wish in Elohim's stead: I also am formed out of the clay. [Job 9:35](#); [Job 23:10](#);
- 7** Behold, my terror shall not make you afraid, neither shall my hand be heavy upon you. [\[Job 9:34\]](#); [\[Job 13:20\]](#);

He excuses Elohim from giving man an account of his ways, by his greatness

- 8** Surely you have spoken in mine hearing, and I have heard the voice of *thy words*, *saying*, [Job 10:7](#); [Job 16:17](#); [Job 23:10-11](#); [Job 27:5](#);
- 9** I am clean without transgression, I *am* innocent; neither *is there* iniquity in me.
- 10** Behold, he finds occasions against me, he counteth me for his enemy, [Job 13:24](#); [Job 16:9](#); [Job 19:11](#);
- 11** He puts my feet in the stocks, he marketh all my paths. [Job 13:27](#); [Job 14:16](#);
- 12** Behold, *in* this you are not just: I will answer you, that Elohim is greater than man.
- 13** Why dost you strive against him? for he giveth not account of any of his matters.

Elohim calls man to repentance by visions, by afflictions, and by his ministry

- 14** For Elohim speaketh once, yes twice, yet *man* perceiveth it not.
- 15** In a dream, in a vision of the night, when deep sleep falleth upon men, in slumberings upon the bed;
- 16** Then he openeth the ears of men, and sealeth their instruction,
- 17** That he may withdraw man *from his* purpose, and hide pride from man.
- 18** He keepeth back his being from the pit, and his life from perishing by the sword.
- 19** He is chastened also with pain upon his bed, and the multitude of his bones with strong *pain*:
- 20** So that his life abhorreth bread, and his being dainty meat. [Ps 107:18](#);
- 21** His flesh is consumed away, that it cannot be seen; and his bones *that* were not seen stick out.
- 22** Yes, his being draweth near unto the grave, and his life to the destroyers.
- 23** If there be a messenger with him, an interpreter, one among a thousand, to show unto man his uprightness:
- 24** Then he is gracious unto him, and saith, Deliver him from going down to the pit: I have found a ransom.
- 25** His flesh shall be fresher than a child's: he shall return to the days of his youth:
- 26** He shall pray unto Elohim, and he will be favorable unto him: and he shall see his face with joy: for he will render unto man his righteousness. [Ps 50:15](#); [Isa 58:9](#);
- 27** He looketh upon men, and *if any* say, I have sinned, and perverted *that which was* right, and it profited me not;
- 28** He will deliver his being from going into the pit, and his life shall see the light.
- 29** Lo, all these *things* worketh Elohim oftentimes with man,
- 30** To bring back his being from the pit, to be enlightened with the light of the living. [Ps 56:13](#);

He incites Job to attention

- 31** Mark well, O Job, hearken unto me: hold thy peace, and I will speak.
32 If you have any thing to say, answer me: speak, for I desire to justify you.
33 If not, hearken unto me: hold thy peace, and I shall teach you wisdom.

JOB THIRTY-FOUR

Elihu accuses Job for charging Elohim with injustice

- 1** Furthermore Elihu answered and said,
2 Hear my words, O you wise *men*; and give ear unto me, you that have knowledge.
3 For the ear trieth words, as the mouth tasteth meat. [Job 12:11](#);
4 Let us choose to us judgment: let us know among ourselves what *is* good.
5 For Job has said, I am righteous: and Elohim has taken away my judgment. [Job 27:2](#);
6 Should I lie against my right? my wound *is* incurable without transgression. [Job 6:4](#);
7 What man *is* like Job, *who* drinketh up scorning like water?
8 Which goes in company with the workers of iniquity, and walketh with wicked men.
9 For he has said, It profiteth a man nothing that he should delight himself with Elohim. [\[Job 35:3\]](#);

Elohim omnipotent cannot be unjust

- 10** Therefore hearken unto me, you men of understanding: far be it from Elohim, *that he should do* wickedness; and *from* the Almighty, *that he should commit* iniquity. [Deut 32:4](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 8:3](#); [Job 36:23](#); [Ps 92:15](#); [Rom 9:14](#);
11 For the work of a man shall he render unto him, and cause every man to find according to *his* ways. [Ps 62:12](#); [Prov 24:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Ezek 7:27](#); [Ezek 33:20](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [1Cor 3:8](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Eph 6:8](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#); [Rev 22:12](#);
12 Yes, surely Elohim will not do wickedly, neither will the Almighty pervert judgment.
13 Who has given him a charge over the earth? or who has disposed the whole world? [\[Job 36:23\]](#);
14 If he set his heart upon man, *if* he gather unto himself his spirit and his breath; [Ps 104:29](#); [Eccl 12:7](#);
15 All flesh shall perish together, and man shall turn again unto dust. [Gen 3:19](#); [Eccl 12:7](#);
16 If now you *have* understanding, hear this: hearken to the voice of my words.
17 Shall even he that hateth right govern? and will you condemn him that is most just? [Gen 18:25](#); [Job 8:3](#); [Job 21:22](#); [Rom 3:5](#); [Job 5:18](#);
18 *Is it fit* to say to a king, you *are* wicked? *and* to princes, you *are* ungodly?
19 *How much less to him* that accepteth not the persons of princes, nor regardeth the rich more than the poor? for they all *are* the work of his hands. [Deut 10:17](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 37:24](#); [Acts 10:34](#); [Rom 2:11](#); [Gal 2:6](#); [Eph 6:9](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#); [\[Job 31:15\]](#);
20 In a moment shall they die, and the people shall be troubled at midnight, and pass away: and the mighty shall be taken away without hand.
21 For his eyes *are* upon the ways of man, and he seeth all his goings. [2Chr 16:9](#); [Job 31:4](#); [Ps 34:15](#); [Prov 5:21](#); [Prov 15:3](#); [Jer 16:17](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [\[Job 14:16\]](#);
22 *There is* no darkness, nor shadow of death, where the workers of iniquity may hide themselves. [Ps 139:12](#); [Amos 9:2-3](#); [Heb 4:13](#);
23 For he will not lay upon man more *than right*; that he should enter into judgment with Elohim.
24 He shall break in pieces mighty men without number, and set others in their stead.
25 Therefore he knoweth their works, and he overturneth *them* in the night, so that they are destroyed.
26 He striketh them as wicked men in the open sight of others;

- 27 Because they turned back from him, and would not consider any of his ways: [Ps 28:5](#); [Isa 5:12](#);
28 So that they cause the cry of the poor to come unto him, and he heareth the cry of the afflicted.
29 When he giveth quietness, who then can make trouble? and when he hides *his* face, who then can behold him? whether *it be done* against a nation, or against a man only:
30 That the hypocrite reign not, lest the people be ensnared.

Man must humble himself unto Elohim

- 31 Surely it is meet to be said unto Elohim, I have borne *chastisement*; I will not offend *any more*:
32 *That which* I see not teach you me: if I have done iniquity, I will do no more.
33 *Should it be* according to thy mind? he will recompense it, whether you refuse, or whether you choose; and not I: therefore speak what you knowest.

Elihu reproves Job

- 34 Let men of understanding tell me, and let a wise man hearken unto me.
35 Job has spoken without knowledge, and his words *were* without wisdom.
36 My desire *is that* Job may be tried unto the end because of *his* answers for wicked men.
37 For he addeth rebellion unto his sin, he clappeth *his hands* among us, and multiplies his words against Elohim.

JOB THIRTY-FIVE

Comparison is not to be made with Elohim, because our good or evil cannot extend unto him

- 1 Elihu spoke moreover, and said,
2 Thinkest you this to be right, *that* you saidst, My righteousness *is* more than Elohim's?
3 For you saidst, What advantage will it be unto you? *and*, What profit shall I have, *if I be cleansed* from my sin? [Job 34:9](#);
4 I will answer you, and thy companions with you.
5 Look unto the heavens, and see; and behold the clouds *which* are higher than you.
6 If you sinnest, what do you do against him? or *if* thy transgressions be multiplied, what do you do unto him?
7 If you be righteous, what givest you him? or what receiveth he of thine hand? [Job 22:2](#); [Ps 16:2](#); [Rom 11:35](#);
8 Thy wickedness *may hurt* a man as you are; and thy righteousness *may profit* the son of man.

Many cry in their afflictions, but are not heard for want of faith

- 9 By reason of the multitude of oppressions they make *the oppressed* to cry: they cry out by reason of the arm of the mighty.
10 But none saith, Where *is* Elohim my maker, who giveth songs in the night;
11 Who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wiser than the fowls of heaven?
12 There they cry, but none giveth answer, because of the pride of evil men. [Job 27:9](#); [Prov 1:28](#); [Prov 15:29](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Jer 11:11](#); [John 9:31](#); [[Prov 1:27](#)];
13 Surely Elohim will not hear vanity, neither will the Almighty regard it.
14 Although you sayest you shall not see him, yet judgment *is* before him; therefore trust you in him.

- 15** But now, because *it is* not *so*, he has visited in his anger; yet he knoweth *it* not in great extremity: [Job 11:6](#);
- 16** Therefore Job opens his mouth in vain; he multiplies words without knowledge.

JOB THIRTY-SIX

Elihu shows how Elohim is just in his ways

- 1** Elihu also proceeded, and said,
- 2** Suffer me a little, and I will show you that *I have* yet to speak on Elohim's behalf.
- 3** I will fetch my knowledge from afar, and will ascribe righteousness to my Maker.
- 4** For truly my words *shall* not *be* false: he that is perfect in knowledge *is* with you. [\[Job 13:7\]](#);
- 5** Behold, Elohim *is* mighty, and despiseth not *any*: *he is* mighty in strength *and* wisdom. [Job 9:4](#); [Job 12:13](#); [Job 12:16](#); [Job 37:23](#); [Job 38:23](#);
- 6** He preserveth not the life of the wicked: but giveth right to the poor.
- 7** He withdraweth not his eyes from the righteous: but with kings *are they* on the throne; yes, he establishes them for ever, and they are exalted. [Ps 33:18](#); [Ps 34:15](#); [Ps 113:8](#);
- 8** And if *they be* bound in fetters, *and* be holden in cords of affliction; [\[2Chr 33:11\]](#);
- 9** Then he sheweth them their work, and their transgressions that they have exceeded.
- 10** He openeth also their ear to discipline, and commandeth that they return from iniquity.
- 11** If they obey and serve *him*, they shall spend their days in prosperity, and their years in pleasures.
- 12** But if they obey not, they shall perish by the sword, and they shall die without knowledge.
- 13** But the hypocrites in heart heap up wrath: they cry not when he bindeth them.
- 14** They die in youth, and their life *is* among the unclean. [Job 22:16](#);
- 15** He delivereth the poor in his affliction, and openeth their ears in oppression. [\[1Sam 2:8\]](#);

How Job's sins hinder Elohim's blessings

- 16** Even so would he have removed you out of the strait *into* a broad place, where *there is* no straitness; and that which should be set on thy table *should be* full of fatness. [Ps 23:5](#);
- 17** But you have fulfilled the judgment of the wicked: judgment and justice take hold *on you*.
- 18** Because *there is* wrath, *beware* lest he take you away with *his* stroke: then a great ransom cannot deliver you.
- 19** Will he esteem thy riches? *no*, not gold, nor all the forces of strength.
- 20** Desire not the night, when people are cut off in their place.
- 21** Take heed, regard not iniquity: for this have you chosen rather than affliction.
- 22** Behold, Elohim exalteth by his power: who teacheth like him?
- 23** Who has enjoined him his way? or who can say, you have wrought iniquity? [Job 34:13](#); [Deut 32:4](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 8:3](#); [Job 34:10](#); [Rom 9:14](#);

Elohim's works are to be magnified

- 24** Remember that you magnify his work, which men behold.
- 25** Every man may see it; man may behold *it* afar off.
- 26** Behold, Elohim *is* great, and we know *him* not, neither can the number of his years be searched out. [Ps 90:2](#); [Ps 92:8](#); [Ps 93:2](#); [Ps 102:12](#); [Isa 63:16](#); [Lam 5:19](#); [Dan 6:26](#); [Heb 1:12](#); [\[Job 37:5\]](#);
- 27** For he maketh small the drops of water: they pour down rain according to the vapour thereof:
- 28** Which the clouds do drop *and* distil upon man abundantly.
- 29** Also can *any* understand the spreadings of the clouds, *or* the noise of his tabernacle?

- 30 Behold, he spreadeth his light upon it, and covereth the bottom of the sea.
31 For by them judgeth he the people; he giveth meat in abundance. [Job 37:13](#);
32 With clouds he covereth the light; and commandeth it *not to shine* by *the cloud* that cometh between.
33 The noise thereof sheweth concerning it, the cattle also concerning the vapour.

JOB THIRTY-SEVEN

Elohim is to be feared because of his great works

- 1 At this also my heart trembleth, and is moved out of his place.
2 Hear attentively the noise of his voice, and the sound *that* goes out of his mouth. [Ps 29:3](#);
3 He directeth it under the whole heaven, and his lightning unto the ends of the earth.
4 After it a voice roareth: he thundereth with the voice of his excellency; and he will not stay them when his voice is heard.
5 Elohim thundereth marvellously with his voice; great things doeth he, which we cannot comprehend. [Job 5:9](#); [Job 9:10](#); [Job 36:26](#);
6 For he saith to the snow, Be you *on* the earth; likewise to the small rain, and to the great rain of his strength. [Ps 147:16](#);
7 He sealeth up the hand of every man; that all men may know his work.
8 Then the beasts go into dens, and remain in their places.
9 Out of the south cometh the whirlwind: and cold out of the north.
10 By the breath of Elohim frost is given: and the breadth of the waters is straitened. [Job 38:29-30](#); [Ps 147:17-18](#);
11 Also by watering he wearieth the thick cloud: he scattereth his bright cloud:
12 And it is turned round about by his counsels: that they may do whatsoever he commandeth them upon the face of the world in the earth.
13 He causeth it to come, whether for correction, or for his land, or for mercy. [Exod 9:18](#); [Exod 9:23](#); [1Sam 12:18](#); [Ezra 10:9](#); [Job 36:31](#);
14 Hearken unto this, O Job: stand still, and consider the wondrous works of Elohim.

His wisdom is unsearchable in them

- 15 Dost you know when Elohim disposed them, and caused the light of his cloud to shine?
16 Dost you know the balancings of the clouds, the wondrous works of him which is perfect in knowledge?
17 How thy garments *are* warm, when he quieteth the earth by the south *wind*?
18 **have** you with him spread out the sky, *which is* strong, *and* as a molten looking glass? [Gen 1:6](#);
19 Teach us what we shall say unto him; *for* we cannot order *our speech* by reason of darkness.
20 Shall it be told him that I speak? if a man speak, surely he shall be swallowed up.
21 And now *men* see not the bright light which *is* in the clouds: but the wind passeth, and cleanseth them.
22 Fair weather cometh out of the north: with Elohim *is* terrible majesty.
23 *Touching* the Almighty, we cannot find him out: *he is* excellent in power, and in judgment, and in plenty of justice: he will not afflict. [Job 9:4](#); [Job 12:13](#); [Job 12:16](#); [Job 36:5](#); [Ps 99:4](#);
24 Men do therefore fear him: he respecteth not any *that are* wise of heart. [[Job 34:19](#)];

Elohim challenges Job to answer

- 1 Then the YAHWEH answered Job out of the whirlwind, and said,
- 2 Who *is* this that darkeneth counsel by words without knowledge? [Job 42:3](#);
- 3 Gird up now thy loins like a man; for I will demand of you, and answer you me.

Elohim, by his mighty works, convicts Job of ignorance

- 4 Where were you when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if you have understanding. [Prov 8:29](#); [\[Gen 1:1\]](#); [\[Ps 104:5\]](#); [\[Prov 30:4\]](#);
- 5 Who has laid the measures thereof, if you knowest? or who has stretched the line upon it?
- 6 Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? or who laid the corner stone thereof;
- 7 When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of Elohim shouted for joy?
- 8 Or *who* shut up the sea with doors, when it brake forth, *as if* it had issued out of the womb? [Gen 1:9](#); [Job 26:10](#); [Ps 33:7](#); [Ps 104:9](#); [Prov 8:29](#); [Jer 5:22](#); [\[Eccl 1:7\]](#);
- 9 When I made the cloud the garment thereof, and thick darkness a swaddlingband for it,
- 10 And brake up for it my decreed *place*, and set bars and doors, [\[Prov 8:29\]](#); [\[Jer 5:22\]](#);
- 11 And said, Hitherto shall you come, but no further: and here shall thy proud waves be stayed?
- 12 **have** you commanded the morning since thy days; *and* caused the dayspring to know his place;
- 13 That it might take hold of the ends of the earth, that the wicked might be shaken out of it?
- 14 It is turned as clay *to* the seal; and they stand as a garment.
- 15 And from the wicked their light is withholden, and the high arm shall be broken. [\[Job 24:16\]](#);
- 16 **have** you entered into the springs of the sea? or have you walked in the search of the depth?
- 17 Have the gates of death been opened unto you? or have you seen the doors of the shadow of death?
- 18 **have** you perceived the breadth of the earth? declare if you knowest it all.
- 19 Where *is* the way *where* light dwelleth? and *as for* darkness, where *is* the place thereof,
- 20 That you should take it to the bound thereof, and that you should know the paths *to* the house thereof?
- 21 Knowest you *it*, because you were then born? or *because* the number of thy days *is* great?
- 22 **have** you entered into the treasures of the snow? or have you seen the treasures of the hail,
- 23 Which I have reserved against the time of trouble, against the day of battle and war? [\[Job 36:5\]](#);
- 24 By what way is the light parted, *which* scattereth the east wind upon the earth?
- 25 Who has divided a watercourse for the overflowing of waters, or a way for the lightning of thunder;
- 26 To cause it to rain on the earth, *where* no man *is*; *on* the wilderness, wherein *there is* no man; [\[Ps 147:8\]](#);
- 27 To satisfy the desolate and waste *ground*; and to cause the bud of the tender herb to spring forth? [Ps 107:35](#);
- 28 Has the rain a father? or who has begotten the drops of dew?
- 29 Out of whose womb came the ice? and the hoary frost of heaven, who has gendered it? [\[Job 37:10\]](#);
- 30 The waters are hid as *with* a stone, and the face of the deep is frozen.

and of imbecility

- 31 Canst you bind the sweet influences of Pleiades, or loose the bands of Orion? [Job 9:9](#); [Amos 5:8](#);
- 32 Canst you bring forth Mazzaroth in its season? or canst you guide Arcturus with his sons?
- 33 Knowest you the ordinances of heaven? canst you set the dominion thereof in the earth? [Jer 31:35](#); [\[Ps 148:6\]](#);
- 34 Canst you lift up thy voice to the clouds, that abundance of waters may cover you?
- 35 Canst you send lightnings, that they may go, and say unto you, Here we *are*?

- 36** Who has put wisdom in the inward parts? or who has given understanding to the heart? [Job 32:8](#); [Ecc1 2:26](#); [Dan 1:17](#);
- 37** Who can number the clouds in wisdom? or who can stay the bottles of heaven,
- 38** When the dust groweth into hardness, and the clods cleave fast together?
- 39** **will** you hunt the prey for the lion? or fill the appetite of the young lions, [Ps 104:21](#);
- 40** When they couch in *their* dens, *and* abide in the covert to lie in wait?
- 41** Who provideth for the raven his food? when his young ones cry unto Elohim, they wander for lack of meat. [Ps 147:9](#); [Matt 6:26](#); [[Luke 12:24](#)];

JOB THIRTY-NINE

Of the wild goats and hinds

- 1** Knowest you the time when the wild goats of the rock bring forth? *or* canst you mark when the hinds do calve? [Ps 29:9](#);
- 2** Canst you number the months *that* they fulfil? or knowest you the time when they bring forth?
- 3** They bow themselves, they bring forth their young ones, they cast out their sorrows.
- 4** Their young ones are in good liking, they grow up with corn; they go forth, and return not unto them.

Of the wild ass

- 5** Who has sent out the wild ass free? or who has loosed the bands of the wild ass?
- 6** Whose house I have made the wilderness, and the barren land his dwellings. [Job 24:5](#); [Jer 2:24](#);
- 7** He scorneth the multitude of the city, neither regardeth he the crying of the driver.
- 8** The range of the mountains *is* his pasture, and he searcheth after every green thing.

The unicorn

- 9** Will the unicorn be willing to serve you, or abide by thy crib?
- 10** Canst you bind the unicorn with his band in the furrow? or will he harrow the valleys after you?
- 11** **will** you trust him, because his strength *is* great? or will you leave thy labour to him?
- 12** **will** you believe him, that he will bring home thy seed, and gather *it into* thy barn?

The peacock, stork, and ostrich

- 13** **gave** *you* the goodly wings unto the peacocks? or wings and feathers unto the ostrich?
- 14** Which leaveth her eggs in the earth, and warmeth them in dust,
- 15** And forgetteth that the foot may crush them, or that the wild beast may break them.
- 16** She is hardened against her young ones, as though *they were* not hers: her labour is in vain without fear;
- 17** Because Elohim has deprived her of wisdom, neither has he imparted to her understanding.
- 18** What time she lifteth up herself on high, she scorneth the horse and his rider.

The horse

- 19** **have** you given the horse strength? have you clothed his neck with thunder? [[Prov 30:31](#)];
- 20** Canst you make him afraid as a grasshopper? the glory of his nostrils *is* terrible.
- 21** He paweth in the valley, and rejoiceth in *his* strength: he goes on to meet the armed men.
- 22** He mocketh at fear, and is not frightened; neither turneth he back from the sword.

- 23** The quiver rattleth against him, the glittering spear and the shield.
24 He swalloweth the ground with fierceness and rage: neither believeth he that *it is* the sound of the trumpet.
25 He saith among the trumpets, Ha, ha; and he smelleth the battle afar off, the thunder of the captains, and the shouting.

The hawk

- 26** Does the hawk fly by thy wisdom, *and* stretch her wings toward the south?

The eagle

- 27** Does the eagle mount up at thy command, and make her nest on high? [Jer 49:16](#); [Obad 1:4](#);
28 She dwelleth and abideth on the rock, upon the crag of the rock, and the strong place.
29 From thence she seeketh the prey, *and* her eyes behold afar off.
30 Her young ones also suck up blood: and where the slain *are*, there *is* she. [Matt 24:28](#); [Luke 17:37](#);

JOB FORTY

Job humbles himself to Elohim

- 1** Moreover the YAHWEH answered Job, and said,
2 Shall he that contendeth with the Almighty instruct *him*? he that reproveth Elohim, let him answer it.
3 Then Job answered the YAHWEH, and said,
4 Behold, I am vile; what shall I answer you? I will lay mine hand upon my mouth. [Ps 39:9](#);
5 Once have I spoken; but I will not answer: yes, twice; but I will proceed no further.

Elohim stirs him up to show his righteousness, power, and wisdom

- 6** Then answered the YAHWEH unto Job out of the whirlwind, and said,
7 Gird up thy loins now like a man: I will demand of you, and declare you unto me.
8 *will* you also disannul my judgment? will you condemn me, that you may be righteous? [Ps 51:4](#); [Rom 3:4](#);
9 *have* you an arm like Elohim? or canst you thunder with a voice like him?
10 Deck thyself now *with* majesty and excellency; and array thyself with glory and beauty.
11 Cast abroad the rage of thy wrath: and behold every one *that is* proud, and humble him.
12 Look on every one *that is* proud, *and* bring him low; and tread down the wicked in their place.
13 Hide them in the dust together; *and* bind their faces in secret.
14 Then will I also confess unto you that thine own right hand can save you.
15 Behold now behemoth, which I made with you; he eateth grass as an ox. [\[Ps 129:6\]](#);

Of the behemoth

- 16** Lo now, his strength *is* in his loins, and his force *is* in the navel of his belly.
17 He moves his tail like a cedar: the sinews of his stones are wrapped together.
18 His bones *are as* strong pieces of brass; his bones *are* like bars of iron.
19 He *is* the chief of the ways of Elohim: he that made him can make his sword to approach *unto him*.
20 Surely the mountains bring him forth food, where all the beasts of the field play.
21 He lies under the shady trees, in the covert of the reed, and fens.
22 The shady trees cover him *with* their shadow; the willows of the brook compass him about.

23 Behold, he drinketh up a river, *and* hasteth not: he trusteth that he can draw up Jordan into his mouth.

24 He taketh it with his eyes: *his* nose pierceth through snares.

JOB FORTY-ONE

Of Elohim's great power in the leviathan

1 Canst you draw out leviathan with a hook? or his tongue with a cord *which* you lettest down?

2 Canst you put a hook into his nose? or bore his jaw through with a thorn?

3 Will he make many supplications unto you? will he speak soft *words* unto you?

4 Will he make a covenant with you? will you take him for a servant for ever?

5 *will* you play with him as *with* a bird? or will you bind him for thy maidens?

6 Shall the companions make a banquet of him? shall they part him among the merchants?

7 Canst you fill his skin with barbed irons? or his head with fish spears?

8 Lay thine hand upon him, remember the battle, do no more.

9 Behold, the hope of him is in vain: shall not *one* be cast down even at the sight of him?

10 None *is so* fierce that dare stir him up: who then is able to stand before me? [[Jer 49:19](#)]; [[Jer 50:44](#)];

11 Who has prevented me, that I should repay *him? whatsoever is* under the whole heaven is mine. [Rom 11:35](#); [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 10:14](#); [Ps 24:1](#); [Ps 50:12](#); [1Cor 10:26](#); [1Cor 10:28](#);

12 I will not conceal his parts, nor his power, nor his comely proportion.

13 Who can discover the face of his garment? *or* who can come *to him* with his double bridle?

14 Who can open the doors of his face? his teeth *are* terrible round about.

15 *His scales are his* pride, shut up together *as with* a close seal.

16 One is so near to another, that no air can come between them.

17 They are joined one to another, they stick together, that they cannot be sundered.

18 By his neesings a light shines, and his eyes *are* like the eyelids of the morning.

19 Out of his mouth go burning lamps, *and* sparks of fire leap out.

20 Out of his nostrils goes smoke, as *out* of a seething pot or caldron.

21 His breath kindleth coals, and a flame goes out of his mouth.

22 In his neck remaineth strength, and sorrow is turned into joy before him.

23 The flakes of his flesh are joined together: they are firm in themselves; they cannot be moved.

24 His heart is as firm as a stone; yes, as hard as a piece of the nether *millstone*.

25 When he raiseth up himself, the mighty are afraid: by reason of breakings they purify themselves.

26 The sword of him that layeth at him cannot hold: the spear, the dart, nor the habergeon.

27 He esteemeth iron as straw, *and* brass as rotten wood.

28 The arrow cannot make him flee: slingstones are turned with him into stubble.

29 Darts are counted as stubble: he laugheth at the shaking of a spear.

30 Sharp stones *are* under him: he spreadeth sharp pointed things upon the mire.

31 He maketh the deep to boil like a pot: he maketh the sea like a pot of ointment.

32 He maketh a path to shine after him; *one* would think the deep *to be* hoary.

33 Upon earth there is not his like, who is made without fear.

34 He beholdeth all high *things*: he *is* a king over all the children of pride.

Job submits himself unto Elohim

- 1** Then Job answered the YAHWEH, and said,
- 2** I know that you canst do every *thing*, and *that* no thought can be withholden from you. [\[Matt 19:26\];](#) [\[Mark 10:27\];](#) [\[Luke 1:37\];](#) [\[Luke 18:27\];](#)
- 3** Who *is* he that hides counsel without knowledge? therefore have I uttered that I understood not; things too wonderful for me, which I knew not. [Job 38:2;](#) [Ps 40:5;](#) [Ps 131:1;](#) [Ps 139:6;](#)
- 4** Hear, I beseech you, and I will speak: I will demand of you, and declare you unto me.
- 5** I have heard of you by the hearing of the ear: but now mine eye seeth you.
- 6** Wherefore I abhor *myself*, and repent in dust and ashes.

Elohim, preferring Job's cause, makes his friends submit themselves, and accepts him

- 7** And it was *so*, that after the YAHWEH had spoken these words unto Job, the YAHWEH said to Eliphaz the Temanite, My wrath is kindled against you, and against thy two friends: for you have not spoken of me *the thing that is* right, as my servant Job *has*.
- 8** Therefore take unto you now seven bullocks and seven rams, and go to my servant Job, and offer up for yourselves a burnt offering; and my servant Job shall pray for you: for him will I accept: lest I deal with you *after your* folly, in that you have not spoken of me *the thing which is* right, like my servant Job.
- 9** So Eliphaz the Temanite and Bildad the Shuhite *and* Zophar the Naamathite went, and did according as the YAHWEH commanded them: the YAHWEH also accepted Job.

He magnifies and blesses Job

- 10** And the YAHWEH turned the captivity of Job, when he prayed for his friends: also the YAHWEH gave Job twice as much as he had before.
- 11** Then came there unto him all his brethren, and all his sisters, and all they that had been of his acquaintance before, and did eat bread with him in his house: and they bemoaned him, and comforted him over all the evil that the YAHWEH had brought upon him: every man also gave him a piece of money, and every one an earring of gold.
- 12** So the YAHWEH blessed the latter end of Job more than his beginning: for he had fourteen thousand sheep, and six thousand camels, and a thousand yoke of oxen, and a thousand she asses. [\[Matt 19:29\];](#) [\[Luke 18:30\];](#)
- 13** He had also seven sons and three daughters.
- 14** And he called the name of the first, Jemima; and the name of the second, Kezia; and the name of the third, Kerenhappuch.
- 15** And in all the land were no women found *so* fair as the daughters of Job: and their father gave them inheritance among their brethren.

Job's age and death

- 16** After this lived Job a hundred and forty years, and saw his sons, and his sons' sons, *even* four generations.
- 17** So Job died, *being* old and full of days.

The_Book_of_the_Psalms

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#) [41](#) [42](#) [43](#) [44](#) [45](#) [46](#) [47](#) [48](#) [49](#) [50](#) [51](#) [52](#) [53](#) [54](#) [55](#) [56](#) [57](#) [58](#) [59](#)
[60](#) [61](#) [62](#) [63](#) [64](#) [65](#) [66](#) [67](#) [68](#) [69](#) [70](#) [71](#) [72](#) [73](#) [74](#) [75](#) [76](#) [77](#) [78](#) [79](#) [80](#) [81](#) [82](#) [83](#) [84](#) [85](#) [86](#) [87](#)
[88](#) [89](#) [90](#) [91](#) [92](#) [93](#) [94](#) [95](#) [96](#) [97](#) [98](#) [99](#) [100](#) [101](#) [102](#) [103](#) [104](#) [105](#) [106](#) [107](#) [108](#) [109](#) [110](#) [111](#)
[112](#) [113](#) [114](#) [115](#) [116](#) [117](#) [118](#) [119](#) [120](#) [121](#) [122](#) [123](#) [124](#) [125](#) [126](#) [127](#) [128](#) [129](#) [130](#) [131](#) [132](#)
[133](#) [134](#) [135](#) [136](#) [137](#) [138](#) [139](#) [140](#) [141](#) [142](#) [143](#) [144](#) [145](#) [146](#) [147](#) [148](#) [149](#) [150](#)

BOOK ONE
(PSALMS 1-41)

PSALM ONE

The happiness of the godly

1 Blessed *is* the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. [Ps 26:4](#); [Prov 1:10](#); [Prov 1:15](#); [Prov 4:14-15](#); [1Cor 15:33](#); [Eph 5:11](#); [[Ps 112:1](#)]; [[Ps 119:1](#)]; [[Prov 4:14](#)]; [[Jer 15:17](#)];

2 But his delight *is* in the law of the YAHWEH; and in his law he meditates day and night. [Deut 6:6](#); [Deut 17:19](#); [Josh 1:8](#); [Ps 119:1](#);

3 And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in its season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper. [Jer 17:8](#); [[Prov 11:28](#)];

The unhappiness of the ungodly

4 The ungodly *are* not so: but *are* like the chaff which the wind driveth away. [Job 21:18](#); [Ps 35:5](#); [Isa 17:13](#); [Isa 29:5](#); [Hos 13:3](#);

5 Therefore the ungodly shall not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the congregation of the righteous.

6 For the YAHWEH knoweth the way of the righteous: but the way of the ungodly shall perish. [[Isa 1:28](#)];

PSALM TWO

The kingdom of the Messiah

- 1** Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing? [Acts 4:25](#); [\[Matt 21:38\]](#); [\[Luke 20:14\]](#);
- 2** The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the YAHWEH, and against his anointed, *saying*, [\[Matt 26:3\]](#); [\[Matt 27:1\]](#); [\[Mark 15:1\]](#); [\[Luke 22:2\]](#); [\[Luke 22:66\]](#); [\[John 11:47\]](#);
- 3** Let us break their bands asunder, and cast away their cords from us.
- 4** He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh: the Lord shall have them in derision. [\[Ps 59:8\]](#);
- 5** Then shall he speak unto them in his wrath, and vex them in his sore displeasure.
- 6** Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Zion. [\[1Sam 2:10\]](#);

- 7** I will declare the decree: the YAHWEH has said unto me, you are my Son; this day have I begotten you. [Acts 13:33](#); [Heb 1:5](#); [Heb 5:5](#); [\[Mark 1:11\]](#);
- 8** Ask of me, and I shall give you the heathen *for* thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth *for* thy possession. [Ps 22:27](#); [Ps 72:8](#); [\[Ps 82:8\]](#); [\[Matt 21:38\]](#); [\[Mark 12:7\]](#); [\[Luke 20:14\]](#); [\[Rev 2:26\]](#);
- 9** You shall break them with a rod of iron; you shall dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel. [Rev 2:27](#); [Rev 19:15](#); [\[Rev 12:5\]](#);

Kings are exhorted to accept it

- 10** Be wise now therefore, O you kings: be instructed, you judges of the earth.
- 11** Serve the YAHWEH with fear, and rejoice with trembling.
- 12** Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and you perish *from* the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed *are* all they that put their trust in him. [Ps 34:8](#); [Prov 16:20](#); [Isa 30:18](#); [Jer 17:7](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [Rom 10:11](#); [1Pet 2:6](#); [\[Ps 84:12\]](#);

PSALM THREE

*A Psalm of David, when he fled
from his son Absalom.*

The security of Elohim's protection

1 A Psalm of David, when he fled from Absalom his son. YAHWEH, how are they increased that trouble me! many *are* they that rise up against me. [2Sam 15:1-37](#); [2Sam 16:1-23](#); [2Sam 17:1-29](#); [2Sam 18:1-33](#);

2 Many *there be* which say of my being, *There is* no help for him in Elohim. Selah.

3 But you, O YAHWEH, are a shield for me; my glory, and the lifter up of mine head.

4 I cried unto the YAHWEH with my voice, and he heard me out of his holy hill. Selah.

5 I laid me down and slept; I awaked; for the YAHWEH sustained me. [Ps 4:8](#); [\[Job 11:19\]](#); [\[Ps 23:4\]](#); [\[Prov 3:24\]](#);

6 I will not be afraid of ten thousands of people, that have set *themselves* against me round about. [Ps 27:3](#);

7 Arise, O YAHWEH; save me, O my Elohim: for you have smitten all mine enemies *upon* the cheek bone; you have broken the teeth of the ungodly.

8 Salvation *belongeth* unto the YAHWEH: thy blessing *is* upon thy people. Selah. [Prov 21:31](#); [Isa 43:11](#); [Jer 3:23](#); [Hos 13:4](#); [Rev 7:10](#); [Rev 19:1](#); [\[Jonah 2:9\]](#);

PSALM FOUR

To the Chief Musician, for stringed instruments. A Psalm of David.

David prays for audience

1 To the chief Musician on Neginoth, A Psalm of David. Hear me when I call, O Elohim of my righteousness: you have enlarged me *when I was* in distress; have mercy upon me, and hear my prayer.

He reproves and exhorts his enemies

2 O you sons of men, how long *will you turn* my glory into shame? *how long* will you love vanity, *and* seek after leasing? Selah.

3 But know that the YAHWEH has set apart him that is godly for himself: the YAHWEH will hear when I call unto him.

4 Stand in awe, and sin not: commune with your own heart upon your bed, and be still. Selah. [Eph 4:26](#);

5 Offer the sacrifices of righteousness, and put your trust in the YAHWEH. [Deut 33:19](#); [Ps 51:19](#);

Man's happiness is in Elohim's favor

6 *There be* many that say, Who will show us *any* good? YAHWEH, lift you up the light of thy countenance upon us. [\[Ps 67:1\]](#); [\[Ps 80:3\]](#); [\[Ps 119:135\]](#);

7 You have put gladness in my heart, more than in the time *that* their grain and their wine increased.

8 I will both lay me down in peace, and sleep: for you, YAHWEH, only makest me dwell in safety. [Ps 3:5](#); [Lev 26:5](#); [Deut 12:10](#); [Deut 33:28](#); [\[Job 11:19\]](#); [\[Prov 3:24\]](#);

PSALM FIVE

*To the Chief Musician, for flutes.
A Psalm of David.*

David prays, and professes his study in prayer

1 To the chief Musician upon Nehiloth, A Psalm of David. Give ear to my words, O YAHWEH, consider my meditation.

2 Hearken unto the voice of my cry, my King, and my Elohim: for unto you will I pray.

3 My voice shall you hear in the morning, O YAHWEH; in the morning will I direct *my prayer* unto you, and will look up. [\[Ps 119:147\]](#); [\[Ps 130:6\]](#);

Elohim favors not the wicked

4 For you are not a Elohim that has pleasure in wickedness: neither shall evil dwell with you.

5 The foolish shall not stand in thy sight: you hatest all workers of iniquity. [\[Isa 1:28\]](#);

6 You shall destroy them that speak leasing: the YAHWEH will abhor the bloody and deceitful man.

David, professing his faith, prays to Elohim to guide him

7 But as for me, I will come *into* thy house in the multitude of thy mercy: *and* in thy fear will I worship toward thy holy temple.

8 Lead me, O YAHWEH, in thy righteousness because of mine enemies; make thy way straight before my face.

9 For *there is* no faithfulness in their mouth; their inward part *is* very wickedness; their throat *is* an open sepulcher; they flatter with their tongue. [Ps 34:16](#); [Ps 94:20](#); [Rom 3:13](#);

to destroy his enemies

10 Destroy you them, O Elohim; let them fall by their own counsels; cast them out in the multitude of their transgressions; for they have rebelled against you.

and to preserve the godly

11 But let all those that put their trust in you rejoice: let them ever shout for joy, because you defendest them: let them also that love thy name be joyful in you.

12 For you, YAHWEH, will bless the righteous; with favor will you compass him as *with* a shield.

PSALM SIX

*To the Chief Musician, for
eight-stringed instruments.
A Psalm of David.*

David's complaint in his sickness

- 1** To the chief Musician on Neginoth upon Sheminith, A Psalm of David. O YAHWEH, rebuke me not in thine anger, neither chasten me in thy hot displeasure. [Ps 38:1](#); [\[Jer 10:24\]](#);
- 2** Have mercy upon me, O YAHWEH; for I *am* weak: O YAHWEH, heal me; for my bones are vexed.
- 3** My being is also sore vexed: but you, O YAHWEH, how long?
- 4** Return, O YAHWEH, deliver my being: oh save me for thy mercies' sake.
- 5** For in death *there is* no remembrance of you: in the grave who shall give you thanks?
- 6** I am weary with my groaning; all the night make I my bed to swim; I water my couch with my tears. [\[Lam 1:2\]](#);
- 7** Mine eye is consumed because of grief; it waxeth old because of all mine enemies.

He triumphs over his enemies

- 8** Depart from me, all you workers of iniquity; for the YAHWEH has heard the voice of my weeping. [Matt 7:23](#); [Matt 25:41](#); [Luke 13:27](#); [\[Heb 11:34\]](#);
- 9** The YAHWEH has heard my supplication; the YAHWEH will receive my prayer.
- 10** Let all mine enemies be ashamed and sore vexed: let them return *and* be ashamed suddenly.

PSALM SEVEN

*A song of David, which he sang
to the YAHWEH, concerning the
words of Cush, the Benjamite.*

David prays against the malice of his enemies, professing his innocence

- 1** Shiggaion of David, which he sang unto the YAHWEH, concerning the words of Cush the Benjamite. O YAHWEH my Elohim, in you do I put my trust: save me from all them that persecute me, and deliver me:
- 2** Lest he tear my being like a lion, rending *it* in pieces, while *there is* none to deliver.
- 3** O YAHWEH my Elohim, if I have done this; if there be iniquity in my hands;
- 4** If I have rewarded evil unto him that was at peace with me; (yea, I have delivered him that without cause is mine enemy:)
- 5** Let the enemy persecute my being, and take *it*; yes, let him tread down my life upon the earth, and lay mine honour in the dust. Selah.
- 6** Arise, O YAHWEH, in thine anger, lift up thyself because of the rage of mine enemies: and awake for me *to* the judgment *that* you have commanded.
- 7** So shall the congregation of the people compass you about: for their sakes therefore return you on high.
- 8** The YAHWEH shall judge the people: judge me, O YAHWEH, according to my righteousness, and according to mine integrity *that is* in me. [Ps 26:1];
- 9** Oh let the wickedness of the wicked come to an end; but establish the just: for the righteous Elohim trieth the hearts and reins. 1Chr 28:9; Jer 11:20; Jer 17:10; Jer 20:12; Rev 2:23; [1Sam 16:7]; [Prov 15:11]; [Luke 16:15]; [John 2:25]; [Acts 1:24]; [Acts 15:8];

By faith he sees his defence, and the destruction of his enemies

- 10** My defence *is* of Elohim, which saveth the upright in heart.
- 11** Elohim judgeth the righteous, and Elohim is angry *with the wicked* every day.
- 12** If he turn not, he will whet his sword; he has bent his bow, and made it ready.
- 13** He has also prepared for him the instruments of death; he ordaineth his arrows against the persecutors.
- 14** Behold, he travaileth with iniquity, and has conceived mischief, and brought forth falsehood. Job 15:35; Isa 59:4; [Job 4:8];
- 15** He made a pit, and digged it, and is fallen into the ditch *which* he made. Job 4:8; Ps 9:15; Ps 10:2; Prov 5:22; Prov 26:27; Eccl 10:8; [Ps 57:6];
- 16** His mischief shall return upon his own head, and his violent dealing shall come down upon his own pate. [Prov 11:27];
- 17** I will praise the YAHWEH according to his righteousness: and will sing praise to the name of the YAHWEH most high.

PSALM EIGHT

*To the Chief Musician, on the harp.
A Psalm of David.*

Elohim's glory is magnified by his works, and by his love to man

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Gittith, A Psalm of David. O YAHWEH our Lord, how excellent *is* thy name in all the earth! who have set thy glory above the heavens.
- 2** Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings have you ordained strength because of thine enemies, that you mightest still the enemy and the avenger. [Matt 21:16](#);
- 3** When I consider thy heavens, the work of thy fingers, the moon and the stars, which you have ordained;
- 4** What is man, that you are mindful of him? and the son of man, that you visitest him? [Job 7:17](#); [Ps 144:3](#); [Heb 2:6](#);
- 5** For you have made him a little lower than the angels, and have crowned him with glory and honour. [\[Phil 2:7\]](#);
- 6** **you** madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; you have put all *things* under his feet: [1Cor 15:27](#); [\[Luke 10:22\]](#); [\[John 17:2\]](#); [\[Eph 1:22\]](#); [\[Heb 2:8\]](#);
- 7** All sheep and oxen, yes, and the beasts of the field; [\[Matt 28:18\]](#);
- 8** The fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea, *and whatsoever* passeth through the paths of the seas.
- 9** O YAHWEH our Lord, how excellent *is* thy name in all the earth!

PSALM NINE

To the Chief Musician. "To die for the Son." A Psalm of David.

David praises Elohim for executing judgment

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Muthlabben, A Psalm of David. I will praise you, O YAHWEH, with my whole heart; I will show forth all thy marvellous works.
- 2** I will be glad and rejoice in you: I will sing praise to thy name, O you most High.
- 3** When mine enemies are turned back, they shall fall and perish at thy presence.
- 4** For you have maintained my right and my cause; you satest in the throne judging right.
- 5** **you** have rebuked the heathen, you have destroyed the wicked, you have put out their name for ever and ever.
- 6** O you enemy, destructions are come to a perpetual end: and you have destroyed cities; their memorial is perished with them.
- 7** But the YAHWEH shall endure for ever: he has prepared his throne for judgment.
- 8** And he shall judge the world in righteousness, he shall minister judgment to the people in uprightness.
[Ps 96:13](#); [Ps 98:9](#);
- 9** The YAHWEH also will be a refuge for the oppressed, a refuge in times of trouble. [Ps 37:39](#); [Ps 46:1](#); [Ps 91:2](#);
- 10** And they that know thy name will put their trust in you: for you, YAHWEH, have not forsaken them that seek you.

He incites others to praise him

- 11** Sing praises to the YAHWEH, which dwelleth in Zion: declare among the people his doings.
- 12** When he maketh inquisition for blood, he remembereth them: he forgetteth not the cry of the humble.

He prays that he may have cause to praise him

- 13** Have mercy upon me, O YAHWEH; consider my trouble *which I suffer* of them that hate me, you that liftest me up from the gates of death:
- 14** That I may show forth all thy praise in the gates of the daughter of Zion: I will rejoice in thy salvation.
- 15** The heathen are sunk down in the pit *that* they made: in the net which they hid is their own foot taken. [Ps 7:15](#); [\[Ps 10:2\]](#); [\[Ps 57:6\]](#); [\[Prov 11:27\]](#); [\[Prov 26:27\]](#);
- 16** The YAHWEH is known *by* the judgment *which* he executeth: the wicked is snared in the work of his own hands. Higgsion. Selah.
- 17** The wicked shall be turned into hell, *and* all the nations that forget Elohim.
- 18** For the needy shall not always be forgotten: the expectation of the poor shall *not* perish for ever.
- 19** Arise, O YAHWEH; let not man prevail: let the heathen be judged in thy sight.
- 20** Put them in fear, O YAHWEH: *that* the nations may know themselves *to be but* men. Selah.

PSALM TEN

David complains of the wicked

- 1** Why standest you afar off, O YAHWEH? *why* hidest you *thyself* in times of trouble?
- 2** The wicked arrogantly persecute the poor: let them be caught in the schemes that they have devised. [Ps 7:15](#); [Ps 9:15](#); [Prov 5:22](#); [\[Prov 11:27\]](#); [\[Prov 26:27\]](#);
- 3** For the wicked boasteth of his heart's desire, and blesseth the covetous, *whom* the YAHWEH abhorreth.
- 4** The wicked, through the pride of his countenance, will not seek *after Elohim*: Elohim *is* not in all his thoughts. [Ps 14:1](#); [Ps 53:1](#);
- 5** His ways are always grievous; thy judgments *are* far above out of his sight: *as for* all his enemies, he puffeth at them.
- 6** He has said in his heart, I shall not be moved: for *I shall* never *be* in adversity.
- 7** His mouth is full of cursing and deceit and fraud: under his tongue *is* mischief and vanity. [Rom 3:14](#); [\[Prov 24:2\]](#);
- 8** He sitteth in the lurking places of the villages: in the secret places he murders the innocent: his eyes are privily set against the poor. [\[Job 24:14\]](#);
- 9** He lies in wait secretly as a lion in his den: he lies in wait to catch the poor: he catches the poor, when he draweth him into his net.
- 10** He croucheth, *and* humbleth himself, that the poor may fall by his strong ones.
- 11** He has said in his heart, Elohim has forgotten: he hides his face; he will never see *it*. [Ps 94:7](#); [\[Job 11:11\]](#); [\[Job 24:15\]](#); [\[Ps 59:7\]](#);

He prays for remedy

- 12** Arise, O YAHWEH; O Elohim, lift up thine hand: forget not the humble.
- 13** Wherefore does the wicked condemn Elohim? he has said in his heart, you will not require *it*. [\[Ps 94:7\]](#);
- 14** You have seen *it*; for you beholdest mischief and spite, to requite *it* with thy hand: the poor committeth himself unto you; you are the helper of the fatherless. [\[Job 11:11\]](#);
- 15** Break you the arm of the wicked and the evil *man*: seek out his wickedness *till* you find none.

He professes his confidence

- 16** The YAHWEH *is* King for ever and ever: the heathen are perished out of his land. [Ps 29:10](#); [Ps 145:13](#); [Ps 146:10](#); [Jer 10:10](#); [Lam 5:19](#); [Dan 4:3](#); [Dan 6:26](#); [1Tim 1:17](#);
- 17** YAHWEH, you have heard the desire of the humble: you will prepare their heart, you will cause thine ear to hear: [\[Prov 15:29\]](#);
- 18** To judge the fatherless and the oppressed, that the man of the earth may no more oppress. [\[Prov 22:23\]](#);

PSALM ELEVEN

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David encourages himself in Elohim against his enemies

- 1** To the chief Musician, *A Psalm* of David. In the YAHWEH put I my trust: how say you to my being, Flee *as* a bird to your mountain?
- 2** For, lo, the wicked bend *their* bow, they make ready their arrow upon the string, that they may privily shoot at the upright in heart. [[Ps 64:4](#)]; [[Ps 120:4](#)]; [[Prov 25:18](#)];
- 3** If the foundations be destroyed, what can the righteous do?

The providence and justice of Elohim

- 4** The YAHWEH *is* in his holy temple, the YAHWEH'S throne *is* in heaven: his eyes behold, his eyelids try, the children of men.
- 5** The YAHWEH trieth the righteous: but the wicked and him that loveth violence his being hateth.
- 6** Upon the wicked he shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, and a horrible tempest: *this shall be* the portion of their cup. [[Job 21:17](#)];
- 7** For the righteous YAHWEH loveth righteousness; his countenance beholds the upright.

PSALM TWELVE

*To the Chief Musician.
On an eight-stringed harp.
A Psalm of David.*

David, destitute of human comfort, craves help of Elohim

1 To the chief Musician upon Sheminith, A Psalm of David. Help, YAHWEH; for the godly man ceaseth; for the faithful fail from among the children of men. [Isa 57:1](#); [\[Mic 7:2\]](#);

2 They speak vanity every one with his neighbour: *with* flattering lips *and* with a double heart do they speak. [\[Ps 28:3\]](#); [\[Jer 9:8\]](#);

He comforts himself with Elohim's promises, and his judgments on the wicked

3 The YAHWEH shall cut off all flattering lips, *and* the tongue that speaketh proud things:

4 Who have said, With our tongue will we prevail; our lips *are* our own: who *is* lord over us?

5 For the oppression of the poor, for the sighing of the needy, now will I arise, saith the YAHWEH; I will set *him* in safety *from him that* puffeth at him.

6 The words of the YAHWEH *are* pure words: *as* silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times. [2Sam 22:31](#); [Ps 18:30](#); [Ps 119:140](#); [Prov 30:5](#);

7 You shall keep them, O YAHWEH, you shall preserve them from this generation for ever.

8 The wicked walk on every side, when the vilest men are exalted.

PSALM THIRTEEN

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David complains of delay

1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. How long will you forget me, O YAHWEH? for ever? how long will you hide thy face from me?

2 How long shall I take counsel in my being, *having* sorrow in my heart daily? how long shall mine enemy be exalted over me?

He prays for preventing grace

3 Consider *and* hear me, O YAHWEH my Elohim: lighten mine eyes, lest I sleep the *sleep of* death;

4 Lest mine enemy say, I have prevailed against him; *and* those that trouble me rejoice when I am moved. [Ps 25:2](#);

He boasts of divine mercy

5 But I have trusted in thy mercy; my heart shall rejoice in thy salvation.

6 I will sing unto the YAHWEH, because he has dealt bountifully with me. [\[Ps 116:7\]](#);

PSALM FOURTEEN

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David describes a natural man

1 To the chief Musician, *A Psalm* of David. The fool has said in his heart, *There is* no Elohim. They are corrupt, they have done abominable works, *there is* none that doeth good. [Ps 10:4](#); [Ps 53:1](#); [Rom 3:10](#);

2 The YAHWEH looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were any that did understand, *and* seek Elohim.

3 They are all gone aside, they are *all* together become filthy: *there is* none that doeth good, no, not one. [\[Job 15:14\]](#); [\[Rom 3:10\]](#);

He convicts the wicked by the light of their conscience

4 Have all the workers of iniquity no knowledge? who eat up my people *as* they eat bread, and call not upon the YAHWEH.

5 There were they in great fear: for Elohim *is* in the generation of the righteous.

6 You have shamed the counsel of the poor, because the YAHWEH *is* his refuge.

He glories in the salvation of Elohim

7 Oh that the salvation of Israel *were come* out of Zion! when the YAHWEH bringeth back the captivity of his people, Jacob shall rejoice, *and* Israel shall be glad. [\[Rom 11:26\]](#);

PSALM FIFTEEN

A Psalm of David.

David describes a citizen of Zion

1 A Psalm of David. YAHWEH, who shall abide in thy tabernacle? who shall dwell in thy holy hill? [\[Ps 24:3\];](#)

2 He that walketh uprightly, and worketh righteousness, and speaketh the truth in his heart. [Ps 24:4; Isa 33:15; \[Matt 5:8\];](#)

3 *He that* backbiteth not with his tongue, nor doeth evil to his neighbour, nor taketh up a reproach against his neighbour.

4 In whose eyes a vile person is contemned; but he honoureth them that fear the YAHWEH. *He that* sweareth to *his own* hurt, and changeth not.

5 *He that* puts not out his money to usury, nor taketh reward against the innocent. He that doeth these *things* shall never be moved. [\[Exod 22:25\];](#)

PSALM SIXTEEN

A Secret Treasure of David.

David, in distrust of merits, and hatred of idolatry, flees to Elohim for preservation

1 Michtam of David. Preserve me, O Elohim: for in you do I put my trust.

2 *O my being*, you have said unto the YAHWEH, you are my Lord: my goodness *extendeth* not to you; [Job 22:2](#); [Job 35:7](#); [Ps 50:9](#); [Rom 11:35](#);

3 *But* to the saints that *are* in the earth, and *to* the excellent, in whom *is* all my delight.

4 Their sorrows shall be multiplied *that* hasten *after* another *god*: their drink offerings of blood will I not offer, nor take up their names into my lips. [\[Exod 23:13\]](#); [\[Josh 23:7\]](#);

He shows the hope of his calling, of the resurrection, and life everlasting

5 The YAHWEH *is* the portion of mine inheritance and of my cup: you maintainest my lot. [Lam 3:24](#); [\[Ps 142:5\]](#);

6 The lines are fallen unto me in pleasant *places*; yes, I have a goodly heritage. [\[Gen 15:1\]](#);

7 I will bless the YAHWEH, who has given me counsel: my reins also instruct me in the night seasons. [\[Ps 119:55\]](#);

8 I have set the YAHWEH always before me: because *he is* at my right hand, I shall not be moved. [Acts 2:25](#);

9 Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope.

10 For you will not leave my being in hell; neither will you suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. [Acts 2:31](#); [Acts 13:35](#); [\[John 20:9\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:4\]](#);

11 You will show me the path of life: in thy presence *is* fulness of joy; at thy right hand *there are* pleasures for evermore.

PSALM SEVENTEEN

A Prayer of David.

David, in confidence of his integrity, craves defence of Elohim against his enemies

- 1** A Prayer of David. Hear the right, O YAHWEH, attend unto my cry, give ear unto my prayer, *that goes* not out of feigned lips.
- 2** Let my sentence come forth from thy presence; let thine eyes behold the things that are equal.
- 3** You have proved mine heart; you have visited *me* in the night; you have tried me, *and* shall find nothing; I am purposed *that* my mouth shall not transgress. [[Jer 12:3](#)];
- 4** Concerning the works of men, by the word of thy lips I have kept *me from* the paths of the destroyer.
- 5** Hold up my goings in thy paths, *that* my footsteps slip not.
- 6** I have called upon you, for you will hear me, O Elohim: incline thine ear unto me, *and hear* my speech.
- 7** Show thy marvellous lovingkindness, O you that savest by thy right hand them which put their trust *in you* from those that rise up *against them*.
- 8** Keep me as the apple of the eye, hide me under the shadow of thy wings, [[Matt 23:37](#)]; [[Luke 13:34](#)];
- 9** From the wicked that oppress me, *from* my deadly enemies, *who* compass me about.

He shows their pride, craft, and eagerness

- 10** They are inclosed in their own fat: with their mouth they speak proudly. [[Job 21:7](#)];
- 11** They have now compassed us in our steps: they have set their eyes bowing down to the earth;
- 12** Like as a lion *that* is greedy of his prey, and as it were a young lion lurking in secret places.

He prays against them in confidence of his hope

- 13** Arise, O YAHWEH, disappoint him, cast him down: deliver my being from the wicked, *which is* thy sword:
- 14** From men *which are* thy hand, O YAHWEH, from men of the world, *which have* their portion in *this* life, and whose belly you fillest with thy hid *treasure*: they are full of children, and leave the rest of their *substance* to their babes.
- 15** As for me, I will behold thy face in righteousness: I shall be satisfied, when I awake, with thy likeness.

PSALM EIGHTEEN

*To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David,
the servant of the YAHWEH, who spoke to
the YAHWEH the words of this song in
the day that the YAHWEH delivered him from
the hand of all his enemies, and from
the hand of Saul; and he said:*

David praises Elohim for his manifold and marvellous blessings

- 1** To the chief Musician, *A Psalm* of David, the servant of the YAHWEH, who spoke unto the YAHWEH the words of this song in the day *that* the YAHWEH delivered him from the hand of all his enemies, and from the hand of Saul: And he said, I will love you, O YAHWEH, my strength. [Exod 15:2]; [2Sam 22:2];
- 2** The YAHWEH *is* my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my Elohim, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, *and* my high tower. [Gen 15:1]; [Prov 18:10]; [Heb 2:13];
- 3** I will call upon the YAHWEH, *who is worthy* to be praised: so shall I be saved from mine enemies. [Ps 145:3];
- 4** The sorrows of death compassed me, and the floods of ungodly men made me afraid.
- 5** The sorrows of hell compassed me about: the snares of death prevented me.
- 6** In my distress I called upon the YAHWEH, and cried unto my Elohim: he heard my voice out of his temple, and my cry came before him, *even* into his ears.
- 7** Then the earth shook and trembled; the foundations also of the hills moved and were shaken, because he was wroth. [Ps 144:5]; [Nah 1:5];
- 8** There went up a smoke out of his nostrils, and fire out of his mouth devoured: coals were kindled by it.
- 9** He bowed the heavens also, and came down: and darkness *was* under his feet. [Ps 144:5];
- 10** And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly: yes, he did fly upon the wings of the wind. [Ps 104:3];
- 11** He made darkness his secret place; his pavilion round about him *were* dark waters *and* thick clouds of the skies.
- 12** At the brightness *that was* before him his thick clouds passed, hail *stones* and coals of fire.
- 13** The YAHWEH also thundered in the heavens, and the Highest gave his voice; hail *stones* and coals of fire.
- 14** Yes, he sent out his arrows, and scattered them; and he shot out lightnings, and discomfited them. [Ps 144:6];
- 15** Then the channels of waters were seen, and the foundations of the world were discovered at thy rebuke, O YAHWEH, at the blast of the breath of thy nostrils.
- 16** He sent from above, he took me, he drew me out of many waters.
- 17** He delivered me from my strong enemy, and from them which hated me: for they were too strong for me.
- 18** They prevented me in the day of my calamity: but the YAHWEH was my stay.
- 19** He brought me forth also into a large place; he delivered me, because he delighted in me.
- 20** The YAHWEH rewarded me according to my righteousness; according to the cleanness of my hands has he recompensed me.
- 21** For I have kept the ways of the YAHWEH, and have not wickedly departed from my Elohim.
- 22** For all his judgments *were* before me, and I did not put away his statutes from me.
- 23** I was also upright before him, and I kept myself from mine iniquity.
- 24** Therefore has the YAHWEH recompensed me according to my righteousness, according to the cleanness of my hands in his eyesight.
- 25** With the merciful you will show thyself merciful; with an upright man you will show thyself upright;

26 With the pure you will show thyself pure; and with the froward you will show thyself froward. [\[Lev 26:24\]](#);

27 For you will save the afflicted people; but will bring down high looks.

28 For you will light my candle: the YAHWEH my Elohim will enlighten my darkness.

29 For by you I have run through a troop; and by my Elohim have I leaped over a wall.

30 *As for* Elohim, his way *is* perfect: the word of the YAHWEH is tried: he *is* a buckler to all those that trust in him. [\[Ps 12:6\]](#); [\[Ps 19:7\]](#); [\[Ps 119:140\]](#); [\[Prov 30:5\]](#);

31 For who *is* Elohim save the YAHWEH? or who *is* a rock save our Elohim? [\[Hos 13:4\]](#);

32 *It is* Elohim that girdeth me with strength, and maketh my way perfect.

33 He maketh my feet like hinds' *feet*, and setteth me upon my high places.

34 He teacheth my hands to war, so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms. [\[Ps 144:1\]](#);

35 You have also given me the shield of thy salvation: and thy right hand has holden me up, and thy gentleness has made me great.

36 You have enlarged my steps under me, that my feet did not slip.

37 I have pursued mine enemies, and overtaken them: neither did I turn again till they were consumed.

38 I have wounded them that they were not able to rise: they are fallen under my feet.

39 For you have girded me with strength unto the battle: you have subdued under me those that rose up against me.

40 You have also given me the necks of mine enemies; that I might destroy them that hate me.

41 They cried, but *there was* none to save *them*: *even* unto the YAHWEH, but he answered them not. [\[Job 27:9\]](#);

42 Then did I beat them small as the dust before the wind: I did cast them out as the dirt in the streets.

43 You have delivered me from the strivings of the people; *and* you have made me the head of the heathen: a people *whom* I have not known shall serve me.

44 As soon as they hear of me, they shall obey me: the strangers shall submit themselves unto me.

45 The strangers shall fade away, and be afraid out of their close places.

46 The YAHWEH liveth; and blessed *be* my rock; and let the Elohim of my salvation be exalted.

47 *It is* Elohim that avengeth me, and subdueth the people under me. [\[Ps 144:2\]](#);

48 He delivereth me from mine enemies: yes, you liftest me up above those that rise up against me: you have delivered me from the violent man.

49 Therefore will I give thanks unto you, O YAHWEH, among the heathen, and sing praises unto thy name. [\[Rom 15:9\]](#);

50 Great deliverance giveth he to his king; and showeth mercy to his anointed, to David, and to his seed for evermore.

PSALM NINETEEN

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

The creatures show Elohim's glory

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. The heavens declare the glory of Elohim; and the sky displays his handiwork. [Ps 89:5]; [Ps 97:6]; [Rom 1:20];
- 2** Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night showeth knowledge.
- 3** *There is* no speech nor language, *where* their voice is not heard.
- 4** Their line is gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world. In them has he set a tabernacle for the sun, Rom 10:18;
- 5** Which *is* as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, *and* rejoiceth as a strong man to run a race. Eccl 1:5;
- 6** His going forth *is* from the end of the heaven, and his circuit unto the ends of it: and there is nothing hid from the heat thereof.

The excellency of the divine law

- 7** The law of the YAHWEH *is* perfect, converting the being: the testimony of the YAHWEH *is* sure, making wise the simple. 2Sam 22:31; Ps 18:30;
- 8** The statutes of the YAHWEH *are* right, rejoicing the heart: the commandment of the YAHWEH *is* pure, enlightening the eyes. [Ps 119:130]; [Prov 6:23]; [Prov 30:5];
- 9** The fear of the YAHWEH *is* clean, enduring for ever: the judgments of the YAHWEH *are* true *and* righteous altogether.
- 10** More to be desired *are they* than gold, yes, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb. Ps 119:72; Ps 119:127; Prov 8:11; Ps 119:103; [Prov 3:14]; [Prov 16:16]; [Prov 24:14]; [Ezek 3:3];
- 11** Moreover by them is thy servant warned: *and* in keeping of them *there is* great reward. [Gen 15:1];

David prays for grace

- 12** Who can understand *his* errors? cleanse you me from secret *faults*.
- 13** Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous *sins*; let them not have dominion over me: then shall I be upright, and I shall be innocent from the great transgression.
- 14** Let the words of my mouth, and the meditation of my heart, be acceptable in thy sight, O YAHWEH, my strength, and my redeemer.

PSALM TWENTY

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

The church blesses the king in his exploits

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. The YAHWEH hear you in the day of trouble; the name of the Elohim of Jacob defend you;
- 2** Send you help from the sanctuary, and strengthen you out of Zion;
- 3** Remember all thy offerings, and accept thy burnt sacrifice; Selah.
- 4** Grant you according to thine own heart, and fulfil all thy counsel.
- 5** We will rejoice in thy salvation, and in the name of our Elohim we will set up *our* banners: the YAHWEH fulfil all thy petitions.
- 6** Now know I that the YAHWEH saveth his anointed; he will hear him from his holy heaven with the saving strength of his right hand.

and expresses her confidence in Elohim's succour

- 7** Some *trust* in chariots, and some in horses: but we will remember the name of the YAHWEH our Elohim. [\[Isa 31:1\]](#);
- 8** They are brought down and fallen: but we are risen, and stand upright.
- 9** Save, YAHWEH: let the king hear us when we call.

PSALM TWENTY-ONE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

A thanksgiving for victory

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. The king shall joy in thy strength, O YAHWEH; and in thy salvation how greatly shall he rejoice!
- 2** **you** have given him his heart's desire, and have not withholden the request of his lips. Selah.
- 3** For you preventest him with the blessings of goodness: you settest a crown of pure gold on his head.
- 4** He asked life of you, *and* you gave *it* him, *even* length of days for ever and ever.
- 5** His glory *is* great in thy salvation: honour and majesty have you laid upon him.
- 6** For you have made him most blessed for ever: you have made him exceeding glad with thy countenance.

with confidence of further success

- 7** For the king trusteth in the YAHWEH, and through the mercy of the most High he shall not be moved.
- 8** Thine hand shall find out all thine enemies: thy right hand shall find out those that hate you.
- 9** You shall make them as a fiery oven in the time of thine anger: the YAHWEH shall swallow them up in his wrath, and the fire shall devour them.
- 10** Their fruit shall you destroy from the earth, and their seed from among the children of men. [\[Isa 14:20\]; \[Isa 14:22\];](#)
- 11** For they intended evil against you: they imagined a mischievous device, *which* they are not able *to perform*.
- 12** Therefore shall you make them turn their back, *when* you shall make ready *thine arrows* upon thy strings against the face of them.
- 13** Be you exalted, YAHWEH, in thine own strength: *so* will we sing and praise thy power.

PSALM TWENTY-TWO

To the Chief Musician, “on the deer of the dawn.” A Psalm of David.

David complains in great discouragement

1 To the chief Musician upon Aijeleth Shahar, A Psalm of David. My Elohim, my Elohim, why have you forsaken me? *why are you so* far from helping me, *and from* the words of my roaring? [Matt 27:46](#); [Mark 15:34](#);

2 O my Elohim, I cry in the daytime, but you hearest not; and in the night season, and am not silent.

3 But you are holy, *O you* that inhabitest the praises of Israel.

4 Our fathers trusted in you: they trusted, and you didst deliver them.

5 They cried unto you, and were delivered: they trusted in you, and were not confounded. [Ps 25:3](#); [Ps 31:1](#); [Isa 49:23](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [\[Ps 25:2\]](#); [\[Ps 71:1\]](#);

6 But I *am* a worm, and no man; a reproach of men, and despised of the people. [\[Job 25:6\]](#); [\[Isa 53:3\]](#); [\[Matt 26:54\]](#); [\[Mark 9:12\]](#); [\[Mark 14:49\]](#); [\[Luke 18:31\]](#); [\[Luke 24:46\]](#); [\[Acts 17:3\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:11\]](#);

7 All they that see me laugh me to scorn: they shoot out the lip, they shake the head, *saying*, [Matt 27:39](#); [\[Mark 15:29\]](#);

8 He trusted on the YAHWEH *that* he would deliver him: let him deliver him, seeing he delighted in him. [Matt 27:43](#); [\[Ps 37:5\]](#);

He prays in great distress

9 But you are he that took me out of the womb: you didst make me hope *when I was* upon my mother's breasts.

10 I was cast upon you from the womb: you are my Elohim from my mother's belly.

11 Be not far from me; for trouble *is* near; for *there is* none to help.

12 Many bulls have compassed me: strong *bulls* of Bashan have beset me round.

13 They gaped upon me *with* their mouths, *as* a ravening and a roaring lion.

14 I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint: my heart is like wax; it is melted in the midst of my bowels.

15 My strength is dried up like a potsherd; and my tongue cleaveth to my jaws; and you have brought me into the dust of death.

16 For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have inclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet. [Matt 27:35](#); [Mark 15:24](#); [Luke 23:33](#); [John 19:23](#); [John 19:37](#); [John 20:25](#);

17 I may tell all my bones: they look *and* stare upon me.

18 They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture. [Luke 23:34](#); [John 19:24](#); [\[Matt 27:35\]](#); [\[Mark 15:24\]](#);

19 But be not you far from me, O YAHWEH: O my strength, haste you to help me.

20 Deliver my being from the sword; my darling from the power of the dog.

21 Save me from the lion's mouth: for you have heard me from the horns of the unicorns.

22 I will declare thy name unto my brethren: in the midst of the congregation will I praise you. [Heb 2:12](#); [\[John 20:17\]](#);

He praises Elohim

23 *you* that fear the YAHWEH, praise him; all you the seed of Jacob, glorify him; and fear him, all you the seed of Israel.

24 For he has not despised nor abhorred the affliction of the afflicted; neither has he hid his face from him; but when he cried unto him, he heard.

25 My praise *shall be* of you in the great congregation: I will pay my vows before them that fear him.

26 The meek shall eat and be satisfied: they shall praise the YAHWEH that seek him: your heart shall live for ever.

27 All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the YAHWEH: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before you. [Ps 2:8](#); [Ps 72:11](#); [Ps 86:9](#);

28 For the kingdom *is* the YAHWEH'S: and he *is* the governor among the nations.

29 All *they that be* fat upon earth shall eat and worship: all they that go down to the dust shall bow before him: and none can keep alive his own being.

30 A seed shall serve him; it shall be accounted to the Lord for a generation.

31 They shall come, and shall declare his righteousness unto a people that shall be born, that he has done *this*. [Ps 52:9](#);

PSALM TWENTY-THREE

A Psalm of David.

David's confidence in Elohim's grace

1 A Psalm of David. The YAHWEH *is* my shepherd; I shall not want. [Isa 40:11](#); [Jer 23:4](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [John 10:11](#); [1Pet 2:25](#); [Rev 7:17](#);

2 He maketh me to lie down in green pastures: he leadeth me beside the still waters.

3 He restoreth my being: he leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for his name's sake.

4 Yes, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for you are with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me. [Ps 3:5](#); [Ps 118:6](#); [\[Job 13:15\]](#);

5 You preparest a table before me in the presence of mine enemies: you anointest my head with oil; my cup runs over. [\[Job 36:16\]](#);

6 Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life: and I will dwell in the house of the YAHWEH for ever.

PSALM TWENTY-FOUR

A Psalm of David.

Elohim's lordship in the world

1 A Psalm of David. The earth *is* the YAHWEH'S, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein. [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 10:14](#); [Job 41:11](#); [Ps 50:12](#); [1Cor 10:26](#); [1Cor 10:28](#); [\[Ps 89:11\]](#);

2 For he has founded it upon the seas, and established it upon the floods. [\[Gen 1:9\]](#); [\[1Sam 2:8\]](#); [\[Ps 104:5\]](#); [\[Ps 136:6\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:5\]](#);

The citizens of his spiritual kingdom

3 Who shall ascend into the hill of the YAHWEH? or who shall stand in his holy place? [Ps 15:1](#); [Isa 33:14-15](#); [\[Isa 33:15\]](#);

4 He that has clean hands, and a pure heart; who has not lifted up his being unto vanity, nor sworn deceitfully. [\[Ps 15:2\]](#); [\[Matt 5:8\]](#);

5 He shall receive the blessing from the YAHWEH, and righteousness from the Elohim of his salvation.

6 This *is* the generation of them that seek him, that seek thy face, O Jacob. Selah.

An exhortation to receive him

7 Lift up your heads, O you gates; and be you lift up, you everlasting doors; and the King of glory shall come in.

8 Who *is* this King of glory? The YAHWEH strong and mighty, the YAHWEH mighty in battle.

9 Lift up your heads, O you gates; even lift *them* up, you everlasting doors; and the King of glory shall come in.

10 Who is this King of glory? The YAHWEH of hosts, he *is* the King of glory. Selah.

PSALM TWENTY-FIVE

A Psalm of David.

David's confidence in prayer

- 1** *A Psalm* of David. Unto you, O YAHWEH, do I lift up my being. [Ps 143:8];
2 O my Elohim, I trust in you: let me not be ashamed, let not mine enemies triumph over me. Ps 22:5; Ps 31:1; Ps 34:5; [Ps 13:4]; [Ps 71:1];
3 Yes, let none that wait on you be ashamed: let them be ashamed which transgress without cause. Isa 28:16; Rom 10:11; [Ps 22:5];
4 Show me thy ways, O YAHWEH; teach me thy paths. Ps 27:11; Ps 86:11; Ps 119:1; [Ps 119:26];
5 Lead me in thy truth, and teach me: for you are the Elohim of my salvation; on you do I wait all the day.
6 Remember, O YAHWEH, thy tender mercies and thy lovingkindnesses; for they *have been* ever of old. Ps 103:17; Ps 106:1; Ps 107:1; Ps 117:2; Ps 136:1; Jer 33:11;

He prays for remission of sins

- 7** Remember not the sins of my youth, nor my transgressions: according to thy mercy remember you me for thy goodness' sake, O YAHWEH. [Job 13:26];
8 Good and upright *is* the YAHWEH: therefore will he teach sinners in the way.
9 The meek will he guide in judgment: and the meek will he teach his way.
10 All the paths of the YAHWEH *are* mercy and truth unto such as keep his covenant and his testimonies.
11 For thy name's sake, O YAHWEH, pardon mine iniquity; for it *is* great.
12 What man *is* he that feareth the YAHWEH? him shall he teach in the way *that* he shall choose.
13 His being shall dwell at ease; and his seed shall inherit the earth.
14 The secret of the YAHWEH *is* with them that fear him; and he will show them his covenant. [Prov 3:32];
15 Mine eyes *are* ever toward the YAHWEH; for he shall pluck my feet out of the net.

and for help in affliction

- 16** Turn you unto me, and have mercy upon me; for I *am* desolate and afflicted.
17 The troubles of my heart are enlarged: *O* bring you me out of my distresses.
18 Look upon mine affliction and my pain; and forgive all my sins.
19 Consider mine enemies; for they are many; and they hate me with cruel hatred.
20 O keep my being, and deliver me: let me not be ashamed; for I put my trust in you.
21 Let integrity and uprightness preserve me; for I wait on you.
22 Redeem Israel, O Elohim, out of all his troubles.

PSALM TWENTY-SIX

A Psalm of David.

David resorts to Elohim in confidence of his integrity

- 1** *A Psalm* of David. Judge me, O YAHWEH; for I have walked in mine integrity: I have trusted also in the YAHWEH; *therefore* I shall not slide. [Ps 7:8](#);
- 2** Examine me, O YAHWEH, and prove me; try my reins and my heart. [\[Ps 139:23\]](#); [\[Jer 11:20\]](#);
- 3** For thy lovingkindness *is* before mine eyes: and I have walked in thy truth.
- 4** I have not sat with vain persons, neither will I go in with dissemblers. [Job 31:5](#); [Ps 1:1](#);
- 5** I have hated the congregation of evil doers; and will not sit with the wicked.
- 6** I will wash mine hands in innocence: so will I compass thine altar, O YAHWEH:
- 7** That I may publish with the voice of thanksgiving, and tell of all thy wondrous works.
- 8** YAHWEH, I have loved the habitation of thy house, and the place where thine honour dwelleth.
- 9** Gather not my being with sinners, nor my life with bloody men:
- 10** In whose hands *is* mischief, and their right hand is full of bribes.
- 11** But as for me, I will walk in mine integrity: redeem me, and be merciful unto me.
- 12** My foot standeth in an even place: in the congregations will I bless the YAHWEH.

PSALM TWENTY-SEVEN

A Psalm of David.

David sustains his faith by prayer

1 *A Psalm* of David. The YAHWEH *is* my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear? the YAHWEH *is* the strength of my life; of whom shall I be afraid? [Isa 10:17](#); [Isa 60:19-20](#); [Mic 7:8](#); [Luke 1:79](#); [John 1:4](#); [John 8:12](#); [Rev 21:23](#); [Ps 118:6](#);

2 When the wicked, *even* mine enemies and my foes, came upon me to eat up my flesh, they stumbled and fell.

3 Though a host should encamp against me, my heart shall not fear: though war should rise against me, in this *will* I *be* confident. [\[Ps 3:6\]](#);

4 One *thing* have I desired of the YAHWEH, that will I seek after; that I may dwell in the house of the YAHWEH all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the YAHWEH, and to enquire in his temple. [\[Luke 10:42\]](#);

5 For in the time of trouble he shall hide me in his pavilion: in the secret of his tabernacle shall he hide me; he shall set me up upon a rock. [\[Ps 32:7\]](#);

6 And now shall mine head be lifted up above mine enemies round about me: therefore will I offer in his tabernacle sacrifices of joy; I will sing, yes, I will sing praises unto the YAHWEH.

7 Hear, O YAHWEH, *when* I cry with my voice: have mercy also upon me, and answer me.

8 *When you saidst*, Seek you my face; my heart said unto you, Thy face, YAHWEH, will I seek.

9 Hide not thy face *far* from me; put not thy servant away in anger: you have been my help; leave me not, neither forsake me, O Elohim of my salvation.

10 When my father and my mother forsake me, then the YAHWEH will take me up.

11 Teach me thy way, O YAHWEH, and lead me in a plain path, because of mine enemies. [Ps 25:4](#); [Ps 86:11](#); [Ps 119:1](#); [\[Ps 119:26\]](#);

12 Deliver me not over unto the will of mine enemies: for false witnesses are risen up against me, and such as breathe out cruelty.

13 *I had fainted*, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the YAHWEH in the land of the living.

14 Wait on the YAHWEH: be of good courage, and he shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the YAHWEH. [Isa 25:9](#); [Isa 33:2](#); [Hab 2:3](#); [\[Ps 31:24\]](#); [\[Ps 130:5\]](#);

PSALM TWENTY-EIGHT

A Psalm of David.

David prays earnestly against his enemies

- 1** *A Psalm* of David. Unto you will I cry, O YAHWEH my rock; be not silent to me: lest, *if* you be silent to me, I become like them that go down into the pit. [Ps 143:7](#); [Ps 30:3](#);
- 2** Hear the voice of my supplications, when I cry unto you, when I lift up my hands toward thy holy oracle.
- 3** Draw me not away with the wicked, and with the workers of iniquity, which speak peace to their neighbours, but mischief *is* in their hearts. [Ps 12:2](#); [Jer 9:8](#);
- 4** Give them according to their deeds, and according to the wickedness of their endeavours: give them after the work of their hands; render to them their desert.
- 5** Because they regard not the works of the YAHWEH, nor the operation of his hands, he shall destroy them, and not build them up. [\[Job 34:27\]](#);

and for the people

- 6** Blessed *be* the YAHWEH, because he has heard the voice of my supplications.
- 7** The YAHWEH *is* my strength and my shield; my heart trusted in him, and I am helped: therefore my heart greatly rejoiceth; and with my song will I praise him.
- 8** The YAHWEH *is* their strength, and he *is* the saving strength of his anointed.
- 9** Save thy people, and bless thine inheritance: feed them also, and lift them up for ever. [\[Exod 34:9\]](#);

PSALM TWENTY-NINE

A Psalm of David.

David exhorts princes to give glory to Elohim

1 A Psalm of David. Give unto the YAHWEH, O you mighty, give unto the YAHWEH glory and strength. [Ps 96:7-8](#);

2 Give unto the YAHWEH the glory due unto his name; worship the YAHWEH in the beauty of holiness. [\[Ps 96:9\]](#);

by reason of his power

3 The voice of the YAHWEH *is* upon the waters: the Elohim of glory thundereth: the YAHWEH *is* upon many waters. [Exod 9:23](#); [\[Job 37:2\]](#);

4 The voice of the YAHWEH *is* powerful; the voice of the YAHWEH *is* full of majesty.

5 The voice of the YAHWEH breaketh the cedars; yes, the YAHWEH breaketh the cedars of Lebanon. [\[Nah 1:5\]](#);

6 He maketh them also to skip like a calf; Lebanon and Sirion like a young unicorn.

7 The voice of the YAHWEH divideth the flames of fire.

8 The voice of the YAHWEH shaketh the wilderness; the YAHWEH shaketh the wilderness of Kadesh.

9 The voice of the YAHWEH maketh the strong leaders turn, and strips the forests bare: and in his temple every one cries, "Glory!" [\[Job 39:1\]](#);

10 The YAHWEH sitteth upon the flood; yes, the YAHWEH sitteth King for ever. [Ps 10:16](#);

and protection of his people

11 The YAHWEH will give strength unto his people; the YAHWEH will bless his people with peace.

PSALM THIRTY

*A Psalm and Song at the
dedication of the House of David.*

David praises Elohim for his deliverance

1 A Psalm *and* Song *at* the dedication of the house of David. I will extol you, O YAHWEH; for you have lifted me up, and have not made my foes to rejoice over me.

2 O YAHWEH my Elohim, I cried unto you, and you have healed me.

3 O YAHWEH, you have brought up my being from the grave: you have kept me alive, that I should not go down to the pit. [\[Ps 28:1\];](#)

He exhorts others to praise him by example of Elohim's dealings with him

4 Sing unto the YAHWEH, O you saints of his, and give thanks at the remembrance of his holiness. [Ps 97:12;](#)

5 For his anger *endureth but* a moment; in his favor *is* life: weeping may endure for a night, but joy *cometh* in the morning. [\[Lam 3:23\]; \[2Cor 4:17\];](#)

6 And in my prosperity I said, I shall never be moved.

7 YAHWEH, by thy favor you have made my mountain to stand strong: you didst hide thy face, *and* I was troubled. [\[Ps 104:29\];](#)

8 I cried to you, O YAHWEH; and unto the YAHWEH I made supplication.

9 What profit *is there* in my blood, when I go down to the pit? Shall the dust praise you? shall it declare thy truth?

10 Hear, O YAHWEH, and have mercy upon me: YAHWEH, be you my helper.

11 You have turned for me my mourning into dancing: you have put off my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness;

12 To the end that *my* glory may sing praise to you, and not be silent. O YAHWEH my Elohim, I will give thanks unto you for ever.

PSALM THIRTY-ONE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David, showing his confidence in Elohim, craves his help

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. In you, O YAHWEH, do I put my trust; let me never be ashamed: deliver me in thy righteousness. [Ps 22:5](#); [Ps 25:2-3](#); [Ps 71:1-2](#); [Isa 49:23](#); [\[Ps 25:2\]](#); [\[Ps 71:1\]](#);
- 2** Bow down thine ear to me; deliver me speedily: be you my strong rock, for a house of defence to save me.
- 3** For you are my rock and my fortress; therefore for thy name's sake lead me, and guide me.
- 4** Pull me out of the net that they have laid privily for me: for you are my strength.
- 5** Into thine hand I commit my spirit: you have redeemed me, O YAHWEH Elohim of truth. [Luke 23:46](#); [\[Acts 7:59\]](#);
- 6** I have hated them that regard lying vanities: but I trust in the YAHWEH.

He rejoices in his mercy

- 7** I will be glad and rejoice in thy mercy: for you have considered my trouble; you have known my being in adversities; [\[Ps 144:3\]](#);
- 8** And have not shut me up into the hand of the enemy: you have set my feet in a large room.

He prays in his calamity

- 9** Have mercy upon me, O YAHWEH, for I am in trouble: mine eye is consumed with grief, yes, my being and my belly.
- 10** For my life is spent with grief, and my years with sighing: my strength faileth because of mine iniquity, and my bones are consumed.
- 11** I was a reproach among all mine enemies, but especially among my neighbours, and a fear to mine acquaintance: they that did see me without fled from me. [Job 19:13](#); [Ps 38:11](#);
- 12** I am forgotten as a dead man out of mind: I am like a broken vessel.
- 13** For I have heard the slander of many: fear *was* on every side: while they took counsel together against me, they devised to take away my life.
- 14** But I trusted in you, O YAHWEH: I said, you are my Elohim.
- 15** My times *are* in thy hand: deliver me from the hand of mine enemies, and from them that persecute me.
- 16** Make thy face to shine upon thy servant: save me for thy mercies' sake. [\[Ps 80:3\]](#);
- 17** Let me not be ashamed, O YAHWEH; for I have called upon you: let the wicked be ashamed, *and* let them be silent in the grave.
- 18** Let the lying lips be put to silence; which speak grievous things proudly and contemptuously against the righteous. [\[Isa 64:4\]](#);

He praises Elohim for his goodness

- 19** *Oh* how great *is* thy goodness, which you have laid up for them that fear you; *which* you have wrought for them that trust in you before the sons of men! [Isa 64:4](#); [1Cor 2:9](#);
- 20** You shall hide them in the secret of thy presence from the pride of man: you shall keep them secretly in a pavilion from the strife of tongues. [\[Ps 32:7\]](#);
- 21** Blessed *be* the YAHWEH: for he has showed me his marvellous kindness in a strong city.

22 For I said in my haste, I am cut off from before thine eyes: nevertheless you heardest the voice of my supplications when I cried unto you.

23 O love the YAHWEH, all you his saints: *for* the YAHWEH preserveth the faithful, and plentifully rewardeth the proud doer.

24 Be of good courage, and he shall strengthen your heart, all you that hope in the YAHWEH. [Ps 27:14;](#)

PSALM THIRTY-TWO

A Psalm of David. A Contemplation.

Blessedness consists in remission of sins

1 *A Psalm* of David, Maschil. Blessed *is he whose* transgression *is* forgiven, *whose* sin *is* covered. [Rom 4:6-7](#); [\[Num 23:21\]](#); [\[Rom 4:7\]](#);

2 Blessed *is* the man unto whom the YAHWEH imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit *there is* no guile.

Confession of sins gives ease to the conscience

3 When I kept silence, my bones waxed old through my roaring all the day long. [\[Prov 28:13\]](#);

4 For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me: my moisture is turned into the drought of summer. Selah.

5 I acknowledged my sin unto you, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the YAHWEH; and you forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah. [Prov 28:13](#); [1John 1:9](#); [\[Ps 38:18\]](#); [\[Matt 9:3\]](#); [\[Mark 2:7\]](#); [\[Luke 5:21\]](#); [\[1Cor 11:31\]](#);

6 For this shall every one that is godly pray unto you in a time when you may be found: surely in the floods of great waters they shall not come nigh unto him.

7 You are my hiding place; you shall preserve me from trouble; you shall compass me about with songs of deliverance. Selah. [Ps 27:5](#); [Ps 31:20](#);

Elohim's promises bring joy

8 I will instruct you and teach you in the way which you shall go: I will guide you with mine eye.

9 Be you not as the horse, *or* as the mule, *which* have no understanding: whose mouth must be held in with bit and bridle, lest they come near unto you. [Prov 26:3](#); [Jas 3:3](#);

10 Many sorrows *shall be* to the wicked: but he that trusteth in the YAHWEH, mercy shall compass him about.

11 Be glad in the YAHWEH, and rejoice, you righteous: and shout for joy, all you *that are* upright in heart.

PSALM THIRTY-THREE

Elohim is to be praised for his goodness

- 1** Rejoice in the YAHWEH, O you righteous: *for* praise is comely for the upright. [Ps 147:1](#);
- 2** Praise the YAHWEH with harp: sing unto him with the psaltery *and* an instrument of ten strings.
- 3** Sing unto him a new song; play skilfully with a loud noise. [Ps 40:3](#); [Ps 96:1](#); [Ps 98:1](#); [Ps 144:9](#); [Isa 42:10](#); [Rev 5:9](#); [Rev 14:3](#);
- 4** For the word of the YAHWEH *is* right; and all his works *are done* in truth.
- 5** He loveth righteousness and judgment: the earth is full of the goodness of the YAHWEH. [Ps 45:7](#); [Heb 1:9](#); [Ps 119:64](#);

for his power

- 6** By the word of the YAHWEH were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. [Gen 1:6-7](#); [\[Gen 1:1\]](#); [\[Gen 1:6\]](#); [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#); [\[Job 26:13\]](#); [\[Ps 148:5\]](#); [\[John 1:3\]](#); [\[Acts 14:15\]](#); [\[Acts 17:24\]](#); [\[Eph 3:9\]](#); [\[Col 1:16\]](#); [\[Heb 1:2\]](#); [\[Heb 11:3\]](#); [\[Rev 14:7\]](#);
- 7** He gathereth the waters of the sea together as a heap: he layeth up the depth in storehouses. [\[Gen 1:7\]](#); [\[Job 26:10\]](#); [\[Job 38:8\]](#); [\[Jer 5:22\]](#);
- 8** Let all the earth fear the YAHWEH: let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of him.
- 9** For he spoke, and it was *done*; he commanded, and it stood fast. [\[Ps 147:15\]](#); [\[Ps 148:5\]](#); [\[Lam 3:37\]](#);
- 10** The YAHWEH bringeth the counsel of the heathen to nought: he maketh the devices of the people of none effect. [Isa 19:3](#); [\[Job 5:12\]](#); [\[Luke 1:51\]](#);
- 11** The counsel of the YAHWEH standeth for ever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations. [Prov 19:21](#); [Prov 21:30](#); [Isa 46:10](#); [\[Mal 3:6\]](#);

and for his providence

- 12** Blessed *is* the nation whose Elohim *is* the YAHWEH; *and* the people *whom* he has chosen for his own inheritance. [Ps 65:4](#); [Ps 144:15](#); [\[Exod 34:9\]](#);
- 13** The YAHWEH looketh from heaven; he beholdeth all the sons of men. [\[Ps 66:7\]](#); [\[Heb 4:13\]](#);
- 14** From the place of his habitation he looketh upon all the inhabitants of the earth.
- 15** He fashioneth their hearts alike; he considereth all their works.
- 16** There is no king saved by the multitude of a host: a mighty man is not delivered by much strength.
- 17** A horse *is* a vain thing for safety: neither shall he deliver *any* by his great strength. [\[Prov 21:31\]](#);
- 18** Behold, the eye of the YAHWEH *is* upon them that fear him, upon them that hope in his mercy; [Job 36:7](#); [Ps 34:15](#); [1Pet 3:12](#);
- 19** To deliver their being from death, and to keep them alive in famine.

Confidence is to be placed in Elohim

- 20** Our being waiteth for the YAHWEH: he *is* our help and our shield.
- 21** For our heart shall rejoice in him, because we have trusted in his holy name.
- 22** Let thy mercy, O YAHWEH, be upon us, according as we hope in you.

PSALM THIRTY-FOUR

*A Psalm of David, when he feigned
madness before Abimelech, who
drove him away, and he departed.*

David praises Elohim, and exhorts others thereto by his experience

- 1** *A Psalm* of David, when he changed his behaviour before Abimelech; who drove him away, and he departed. I will bless the YAHWEH at all times: his praise *shall* continually *be* in my mouth. [1Sam 21:13](#);
2 My being shall make her boast in the YAHWEH: the humble shall hear *thereof*, and be glad. [\[Ps 105:3\]](#);
3 O magnify the YAHWEH with me, and let us exalt his name together. [\[Ps 71:13\]](#);
4 I sought the YAHWEH, and he heard me, and delivered me from all my fears.
5 They looked unto him, and were lightened: and their faces were not ashamed. [\[Ps 25:2\]](#);
6 This poor man cried, and the YAHWEH heard *him*, and saved him out of all his troubles.
7 The angel of the YAHWEH encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them. [\[Ps 91:11\]](#);
[\[Matt 18:10\]](#);

They are blessed that trust in Elohim

- 8** O taste and see that the YAHWEH *is* good: blessed *is* the man *that* trusteth in him. [\[Ps 2:12\]](#); [\[Ps 84:12\]](#);
[\[Prov 16:20\]](#); [\[Isa 30:18\]](#); [\[Isa 57:13\]](#); [\[Jer 17:7\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:3\]](#);
9 O fear the YAHWEH, you his saints: for *there is* no want to them that fear him. [\[Prov 19:23\]](#);
10 The young lions do lack, and suffer hunger: but they that seek the YAHWEH shall not want any good *thing*. [Job 4:11](#); [\[1Sam 2:5\]](#); [\[Prov 13:25\]](#); [\[Luke 1:53\]](#);

He exhorts to the fear of Elohim

- 11** Come, you children, hearken unto me: I will teach you the fear of the YAHWEH.
12 What man *is he that* desireth life, *and* loveth *many* days, that he may see good? [1Pet 3:10](#);
13 Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile. [\[Jas 1:26\]](#); [\[Jas 3:2\]](#);
14 Depart from evil, and do good; seek peace, and pursue it. [Heb 12:14](#); [\[Isa 1:16\]](#); [\[Amos 5:15\]](#);

The privileges of the righteous

- 15** The eyes of the YAHWEH *are* upon the righteous, and his ears *are open* unto their cry. [Job 36:7](#); [Ps 33:18](#); [1Pet 3:12](#); [\[Job 34:21\]](#);
16 The face of the YAHWEH *is* against them that do evil, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth. [\[Ps 5:9\]](#); [\[Ps 109:15\]](#);
17 *The righteous* cry, and the YAHWEH heareth, and delivereth them out of all their troubles.
18 The YAHWEH *is* nigh unto them that are of a broken heart; and saveth such as be of a contrite spirit. [2Tim 3:11](#); [\[Prov 15:29\]](#);
19 Many *are* the afflictions of the righteous: but the YAHWEH delivereth him out of them all. [2Tim 3:12](#); [\[Prov 11:8\]](#); [\[Prov 24:16\]](#); [\[2Cor 1:5\]](#); [\[2Tim 3:11\]](#);
20 He keepeth all his bones: not one of them is broken. [John 19:36](#);
21 Evil shall slay the wicked: and they that hate the righteous shall be desolate.
22 The YAHWEH redeemeth the being of his servants: and none of them that trust in him shall be desolate.

PSALM THIRTY-FIVE

A Psalm of David.

David prays for his own safety, and his enemies confusion

- 1** *A Psalm* of David. Plead *my cause*, O YAHWEH, with them that strive with me: fight against them that fight against me.
- 2** Take hold of shield and buckler, and stand up for mine help.
- 3** Draw out also the spear, and stop *the way* against them that persecute me: say unto my being, I *am* thy salvation.
- 4** Let them be confounded and put to shame that seek after my being: let them be turned back and brought to confusion that devise my hurt. [Ps 40:14](#); [Ps 70:2](#); [\[Jer 17:18\]](#);
- 5** Let them be as chaff before the wind: and let the angel of the YAHWEH chase *them*. [Job 21:18](#); [Ps 1:4](#); [Isa 29:5](#); [Hos 13:3](#); [\[Isa 17:13\]](#);
- 6** Let their way be dark and slippery: and let the angel of the YAHWEH persecute them. [\[Jer 23:12\]](#);
- 7** For without cause have they hid for me their net *in* a pit, *which* without cause they have digged for my being.
- 8** Let destruction come upon him at unawares; and let his net that he has hid catch himself: into that very destruction let him fall.
- 9** And my being shall be joyful in the YAHWEH: it shall rejoice in his salvation.
- 10** All my bones shall say, YAHWEH, who *is* like unto you, which deliverest the poor from him that is too strong for him, yes, the poor and the needy from him that spoileth him?

He complains of their wrongful dealing

- 11** False witnesses did rise up; they laid to my charge *things* that I knew not.
- 12** They rewarded me evil for good *to* the spoiling of my being.
- 13** But as for me, when they were sick, my clothing *was* sackcloth: I humbled my being with fasting; and my prayer returned into mine own bosom. [\[Job 30:25\]](#);
- 14** I behaved myself as though *he had been* my friend *or* brother: I bowed down heavily, as one that mourneth *for his* mother. [\[Ps 42:9\]](#); [\[Ps 43:2\]](#);
- 15** But in mine adversity they rejoiced, and gathered themselves together: yes, the outcasts gathered themselves together against me, and I knew *it* not; they did tear *me*, and ceased not:
- 16** With hypocritical mockers in feasts, they gnashed upon me with their teeth.
- 17** Lord, how long will you look on? rescue my being from their destructions, my darling from the lions.
- 18** I will give you thanks in the great congregation: I will praise you among much people. [Ps 40:9-10](#); [Ps 111:1](#); [\[Ps 40:9\]](#);
- 19** Let not them that are mine enemies wrongfully rejoice over me: *neither* let them wink with the eye that hate me without a cause. [John 15:25](#);
- 20** For they speak not peace: but they devise deceitful matters against *them that are* quiet in the land.
- 21** Yes, they opened their mouth wide against me, *and* said, Aha, aha, our eye has seen *it*.

Thereby he incites Elohim against them

- 22** *This* you have seen, O YAHWEH: keep not silence: O Lord, be not far from me. [\[Job 11:11\]](#);
- 23** Stir up thyself, and awake to my judgment, *even* unto my cause, my Elohim and my Lord.
- 24** Judge me, O YAHWEH my Elohim, according to thy righteousness; and let them not rejoice over me.
- 25** Let them not say in their hearts, Ah, so would we have it: let them not say, We have swallowed him up.

26 Let them be ashamed and brought to confusion together that rejoice at mine hurt: let them be clothed with shame and dishonour that magnify *themselves* against me. [\[Ps 40:14\]](#); [\[Ps 70:2\]](#);

27 Let them shout for joy, and be glad, that favor my righteous cause: yes, let them say continually, Let the YAHWEH be magnified, which has pleasure in the prosperity of his servant.

28 And my tongue shall speak of thy righteousness *and* of thy praise all the day long.

PSALM THIRTY-SIX

*To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David,
the servant of the YAHWEH.*

The grievous estate of the wicked

- 1** To the chief Musician, *A Psalm* of David the servant of the YAHWEH. The transgression of the wicked saith within my heart, *that there is* no fear of Elohim before his eyes. [\[Rom 3:18\]](#);
2 For he flattereth himself in his own eyes, until his iniquity be found to be hateful.
3 The words of his mouth *are* iniquity and deceit: he has left off to be wise, *and* to do good.
4 He deviseth mischief upon his bed; he setteth himself in a way *that is* not good; he abhorreth not evil.

5 Thy mercy, O YAHWEH, *is* in the heavens; *and* thy faithfulness *reacheth* unto the clouds. [Ps 57:10](#); [Ps 108:4](#);

6 Thy righteousness *is* like the great mountains; thy judgments *are* a great deep: O YAHWEH, you preservest man and beast. [\[Rom 11:33\]](#);

7 How excellent *is* thy lovingkindness, O Elohim! therefore the children of men put their trust under the shadow of thy wings.

The excellency of Elohim's mercy

- 8** They shall be abundantly satisfied with the fatness of thy house; and you shall make them drink of the river of thy pleasures.
9 For with you *is* the fountain of life: in thy light shall we see light.

David prays for favor to Elohim's children

- 10** O continue thy lovingkindness unto them that know you; and thy righteousness to the upright in heart.
11 Let not the foot of pride come against me, and let not the hand of the wicked remove me.
12 There are the workers of iniquity fallen: they are cast down, and shall not be able to rise.

PSALM THIRTY-SEVEN

A Psalm of David.

David persuades to patience and confidence in Elohim, by the different estate of the godly and the wicked

- 1** *A Psalm* of David. Fret not thyself because of evildoers, neither be you envious against the workers of iniquity. [Prov 23:17](#); [Prov 24:1](#); [[Ps 73:3](#)]; [[Prov 3:31](#)]; [[Prov 24:19](#)];
- 2** For they shall soon be cut down like the grass, and wither as the green herb.
- 3** Trust in the YAHWEH, and do good; *so* shall you dwell in the land, and verily you shall be fed. [[Prov 13:25](#)];
- 4** Delight thyself also in the YAHWEH; and he shall give you the desires of thine heart.
- 5** Commit thy way unto the YAHWEH; trust also in him; and he shall bring *it* to pass. [Ps 22:8](#); [Ps 55:22](#); [Prov 16:3](#); [Matt 6:25](#); [Luke 12:22](#); [1Pet 5:7](#);
- 6** And he shall bring forth thy righteousness as the light, and thy judgment as the noonday. [[Job 11:17](#)];
- 7** Rest in the YAHWEH, and wait patiently for him: fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass.
- 8** Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil.
- 9** For evildoers shall be cut off: but those that wait upon the YAHWEH, they shall inherit the earth. [[Eccl 8:12](#)];
- 10** For yet a little while, and the wicked *shall* not *be*: yes, you shall diligently consider his place, and it *shall* not *be*.
- 11** But the meek shall inherit the earth; and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace. [Matt 5:5](#);
- 12** The wicked plotteth against the just, and gnasheth upon him with his teeth.
- 13** The Lord shall laugh at him: for he seeth that his day is coming.
- 14** The wicked have drawn out the sword, and have bent their bow, to cast down the poor and needy, *and* to slay such as be of upright conduct.
- 15** Their sword shall enter into their own heart, and their bows shall be broken.
- 16** A little that a righteous man has *is* better than the riches of many wicked. [[Prov 15:16](#)]; [[Prov 16:8](#)];
- 17** For the arms of the wicked shall be broken: but the YAHWEH upholdeth the righteous.
- 18** The YAHWEH knoweth the days of the upright: and their inheritance shall be for ever. [[Eccl 8:12](#)];
- 19** They shall not be ashamed in the evil time: and in the days of famine they shall be satisfied.
- 20** But the wicked shall perish, and the enemies of the YAHWEH *shall be* as the fat of lambs: they shall consume; into smoke shall they consume away. [[Ps 102:3](#)];
- 21** The wicked borroweth, and payeth not again: but the righteous showeth mercy, and giveth.
- 22** For *such as be* blessed of him shall inherit the earth; and *they that be* cursed of him shall be cut off.
- 23** The steps of a *good* man are ordered by the YAHWEH: and he delighteth in his way. [[Prov 20:24](#)];
- 24** Though he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down: for the YAHWEH upholdeth *him with* his hand. [[Prov 3:23](#)];
- 25** I have been young, and *now* am old; yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken, nor his seed begging bread. [[Matt 6:33](#)]; [[Luke 12:31](#)];
- 26** *He is* ever merciful, and lendeth; and his seed *is* blessed. [[Prov 21:26](#)];
- 27** Depart from evil, and do good; and dwell for evermore. [[Isa 1:16](#)]; [[1Pet 3:11](#)]; [[3John 1:11](#)];
- 28** For the YAHWEH loveth judgment, and forsaketh not his saints; they are preserved for ever: but the seed of the wicked shall be cut off. [[Isa 14:20](#)]; [[Isa 14:22](#)];
- 29** The righteous shall inherit the land, and dwell therein for ever. [[Prov 2:21](#)];
- 30** The mouth of the righteous speaketh wisdom, and his tongue talketh of judgment.
- 31** The law of his Elohim *is* in his heart; none of his steps shall slide. [Ps 40:8](#); [Isa 51:7](#);

- 32** The wicked watcheth the righteous, and seeketh to slay him.
- 33** The YAHWEH will not leave him in his hand, nor condemn him when he is judged.
- 34** Wait on the YAHWEH, and keep his way, and he shall exalt you to inherit the land: when the wicked are cut off, you shall see *it*.
- 35** I have seen the wicked in great power, and spreading himself like a green bay tree. [\[Job 20:5\];](#)
- 36** Yet he passed away, and, lo, he *was* not: yes, I sought him, but he could not be found. [\[Job 5:3\]; \[Prov 12:7\]; \[Prov 29:16\];](#)
- 37** Mark the perfect *man*, and behold the upright: for the end of *that* man *is* peace.
- 38** But the transgressors shall be destroyed together: the end of the wicked shall be cut off.
- 39** But the salvation of the righteous *is* of the YAHWEH: *he is* their strength in the time of trouble. [\[Ps 9:9\];](#)
- 40** And the YAHWEH shall help them, and deliver them: he shall deliver them from the wicked, and save them, because they trust in him.

PSALM THIRTY-EIGHT

*A Psalm of David,
to bring to remembrance.*

David moves Elohim to take compassion on his pitiful case

- 1** A Psalm of David, to bring to remembrance. O YAHWEH, rebuke me not in thy wrath: neither chasten me in thy hot displeasure. [Ps 6:1](#); [\[Job 6:4\]](#); [\[Jer 10:24\]](#);
- 2** For thine arrows stick fast in me, and thy hand presseth me sore.
- 3** *There is* no soundness in my flesh because of thine anger; neither *is there any* rest in my bones because of my sin.
- 4** For mine iniquities are gone over mine head: as a heavy burden they are too heavy for me. [\[Ezra 9:6\]](#);
- 5** My wounds stink *and* are corrupt because of my foolishness.
- 6** I am troubled; I am bowed down greatly; I go mourning all the day long. [Ps 42:9](#); [Ps 43:2](#);
- 7** For my loins are filled with a loathsome *disease*: and *there is* no soundness in my flesh.
- 8** I am feeble and sore broken: I have roared by reason of the disquietness of my heart.
- 9** Lord, all my desire *is* before you; and my groaning is not hid from you.
- 10** My heart panteth, my strength faileth me: as for the light of mine eyes, it also is gone from me.
- 11** My lovers and my friends stand aloof from my sore; and my kinsmen stand afar off. [\[Job 19:13\]](#); [\[Ps 31:11\]](#); [\[Matt 27:55\]](#); [\[Mark 15:40\]](#);
- 12** They also that seek after my life lay snares *for me*: and they that seek my hurt speak mischievous things, and imagine deceits all the day long.
- 13** But I, as a deaf *man*, heard not; and *I was* as a dumb man *that* openeth not his mouth.
- 14** Thus I was as a man that heareth not, and in whose mouth *are* no reproofs.
- 15** For in you, O YAHWEH, do I hope: you will hear, O Lord my Elohim.
- 16** For I said, *Hear me*, lest *otherwise* they should rejoice over me: when my foot slippeth, they magnify *themselves* against me.
- 17** For I *am* ready to halt, and my sorrow *is* continually before me.
- 18** For I will declare mine iniquity; I will be sorry for my sin. [Ps 32:5](#);
- 19** But mine enemies *are* lively, *and* they are strong: and they that hate me wrongfully are multiplied.
- 20** They also that render evil for good are mine adversaries; because I follow *the thing that* good *is*.
- 21** Forsake me not, O YAHWEH: O my Elohim, be not far from me.
- 22** Make haste to help me, O Lord my salvation.

PSALM THIRTY-NINE

*To the Chief Musician, to Jeduthun.
A Psalm of David.*

David's care of this thought

1 To the chief Musician, *even* to Jeduthun, A Psalm of David. I said, I will take heed to my ways, that I sin not with my tongue: I will keep my mouth with a bridle, while the wicked is before me.

2 I was dumb with silence, I held my peace, *even* from good; and my sorrow was stirred.

3 My heart was hot within me, while I was musing the fire burned: *then* spoke I with my tongue,

The consideration of the brevity and vanity of life

4 YAHWEH, make me to know mine end, and the measure of my days, what it *is*; *that* I may know how frail I *am*.

5 Behold, you have made my days *as* a handbreadth; and mine age *is* as nothing before you: verily every man at his best state *is* altogether vanity. Selah. [Ps 62:9](#); [Ps 144:4](#); [\[Ecd 8:8\]](#);

6 Surely every man walketh in a vain show: surely they are disquieted in vain: he heapeth up *riches*, and knoweth not who shall gather them. [\[Luke 12:20\]](#);

the reverence of Elohim's judgments

7 And now, Lord, what wait I for? my hope *is* in you.

8 Deliver me from all my transgressions: make me not the reproach of the foolish.

9 I was dumb, I opened not my mouth; because you didst *it*. [\[Job 40:4\]](#);

and prayer, are his bridles of impatience

10 Remove thy stroke away from me: I am consumed by the blow of thine hand.

11 When you with rebukes dost correct man for iniquity, you makest his beauty to consume away like a moth: surely every man *is* vanity. Selah.

12 Hear my prayer, O YAHWEH, and give ear unto my cry; hold not thy peace at my tears: for I *am* a stranger with you, *and* a sojourner, as all my fathers *were*. [Lev 25:23](#); [1Chr 29:15](#); [Ps 119:19](#); [Heb 11:13](#); [1Pet 2:11](#); [\[Job 8:9\]](#);

13 O spare me, that I may recover strength, before I go hence, and be no more.

PSALM FORTY

To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David.

The benefit of confidence in Elohim

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. I waited patiently for the YAHWEH; and he inclined unto me, and heard my cry. [\[Ps 130:5\];](#)
- 2** He brought me up also out of a horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, *and* established my goings.
- 3** And he has put a new song in my mouth, *even* praise unto our Elohim: many shall see *it*, and fear, and shall trust in the YAHWEH. [\[Ps 33:3\];](#)
- 4** Blessed *is* that man that maketh the YAHWEH his trust, and respecteth not the proud, nor such as turn aside to lies.
- 5** Many, O YAHWEH my Elohim, *are* thy wonderful works *which* you have done, and thy thoughts *which are* to us-ward: they cannot be reckoned up in order unto you: *if* I would declare and speak *of them*, they are more than can be numbered. [\[Job 42:3\];](#)

Obedience is the best sacrifice

- 6** Sacrifice and offering you didst not desire; mine ears have you opened: burnt offering and sin offering have you not required. [Heb 10:5;](#)
- 7** Then said I, Lo, I come: in the volume of the book *it is* written of me,
- 8** I delight to do thy will, O my Elohim: yes, thy law *is* within my heart. [Ps 37:31; Isa 51:7;](#)
- 9** I have preached righteousness in the great congregation: lo, I have not refrained my lips, O YAHWEH, you knowest. [Ps 35:18; Ps 111:1; \[Rom 1:16\];](#)
- 10** I have not hid thy righteousness within my heart; I have declared thy faithfulness and thy salvation: I have not concealed thy lovingkindness and thy truth from the great congregation. [\[Matt 12:34\];](#)

The sense of David's evils inflames his prayer

- 11** Withhold not you thy tender mercies from me, O YAHWEH: let thy lovingkindness and thy truth continually preserve me.
- 12** For innumerable evils have compassed me about: mine iniquities have taken hold upon me, so that I am not able to look up; they are more than the hairs of mine head: therefore my heart faileth me.
- 13** Be pleased, O YAHWEH, to deliver me: O YAHWEH, make haste to help me. [\[Ps 70:1\];](#)
- 14** Let them be ashamed and confounded together that seek after my being to destroy it; let them be driven backward and put to shame that wish me evil. [Ps 35:4; Ps 35:26; Ps 70:2; Ps 71:13; \[Jer 17:18\];](#)
- 15** Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame that say unto me, Aha, aha.
- 16** Let all those that seek you rejoice and be glad in you: let such as love thy salvation say continually, The YAHWEH be magnified.
- 17** But I *am* poor and needy; yet the Lord thinketh upon me: you are my help and my deliverer; make no tarrying, O my Elohim.

PSALM FORTY-ONE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

The recompence of the charitable

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. Blessed *is* he that considereth the poor: the YAHWEH will deliver him in time of trouble. [\[Ps 142:6\];](#)
- 2** The YAHWEH will preserve him, and keep him alive; *and* he shall be blessed upon the earth: and you will not deliver him unto the will of his enemies.
- 3** The YAHWEH will strengthen him upon the bed of languishing: you will make all his bed in his sickness.

David complains of his enemies' treachery

- 4** I said, YAHWEH, be merciful unto me: heal my being; for I have sinned against you.
- 5** Mine enemies speak evil of me, When shall he die, and his name perish?
- 6** And if he come to see *me*, he speaketh vanity: his heart gathereth iniquity to itself; *when* he goes abroad, he telleth *it*.
- 7** All that hate me whisper together against me: against me do they devise my hurt.
- 8** An evil disease, *say they*, cleaveth fast unto him: and *now* that he lies he shall rise up no more.
- 9** Yes, mine own familiar friend, in whom I trusted, which did eat of my bread, has lifted up *his* heel against me. [John 13:18;](#) [\[Job 19:19\];](#) [\[Matt 10:36\];](#) [\[Matt 26:23\];](#) [\[Mark 14:18\];](#) [\[Luke 22:22\];](#) [\[Acts 1:16\];](#) [\[Acts 20:30\];](#) [\[1John 2:19\];](#)

He flees to Elohim for succour

- 10** But you, O YAHWEH, be merciful unto me, and raise me up, that I may requite them.
- 11** By this I know that you favorest me, because mine enemy does not triumph over me.
- 12** And as for me, you upholdest me in mine integrity, and settest me before thy face for ever.
- 13** Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel from everlasting, and to everlasting. Amen, and Amen.

*To the Chief Musician.
A contemplation for the sons of Korah.*

David's zeal to serve Elohim in the temple

1 To the chief Musician, Maschil, for the sons of Korah. As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my being after you, O Elohim. [\[Ps 84:2\];](#)

2 My being thirsteth for Elohim, for the living Elohim: when shall I come and appear before Elohim? [Ps 63:1;](#)

3 My tears have been my meat day and night, while they continually say unto me, Where *is* thy Elohim? [Ps 80:5;](#)

4 When I remember these *things*, I pour out my being in me: for I had gone with the multitude, I went with them to the house of Elohim, with the voice of joy and praise, with a multitude that kept holyday.

He encourages his being to trust in Elohim

5 Why are you cast down, O my being? and *why* are you disquieted in me? hope you in Elohim: for I shall yet praise him *for* the help of his countenance. [Ps 43:5;](#)

6 O my Elohim, my being is cast down within me: therefore will I remember you from the land of Jordan, and of the Hermonites, from the hill Mizar.

7 Deep calleth unto deep at the noise of thy waterspouts: all thy waves and thy billows are gone over me. [\[Jonah 2:3\];](#)

8 Yet the YAHWEH will command his lovingkindness in the daytime, and in the night his song *shall be* with me, *and* my prayer unto the Elohim of my life. [\[Ps 119:55\];](#)

9 I will say unto Elohim my rock, Why have you forgotten me? why go I mourning because of the oppression of the enemy? [Ps 35:14; Ps 38:6; Ps 43:2; \[Heb 11:34\];](#)

10 *As* with a sword in my bones, mine enemies reproach me; while they say daily unto me, Where *is* thy Elohim? [\[Joel 2:17\];](#)

11 Why are you cast down, O my being? and why are you disquieted within me? hope you in Elohim: for I shall yet praise him, *who is* the health of my countenance, and my Elohim. [\[Ps 43:5\];](#)

PSALM FORTY-THREE

David, praying to be restored to the temple, promises to serve Elohim joyfully

1 Judge me, O Elohim, and plead my cause against an ungodly nation: O deliver me from the deceitful and unjust man.

2 For you are the Elohim of my strength: why dost you cast me off? why go I mourning because of the oppression of the enemy? [Ps 35:14](#); [Ps 38:6](#); [Ps 42:9](#);

3 O send out thy light and thy truth: let them lead me; let them bring me unto thy holy hill, and to thy tabernacles.

4 Then will I go unto the altar of Elohim, unto Elohim my exceeding joy: yes, upon the harp will I praise you, O Elohim my Elohim. [\[Ps 119:24\]](#);

He encourages his being to trust in Elohim

5 Why are you cast down, O my being? and why are you disquieted within me? hope in Elohim: for I shall yet praise him, *who is* the health of my countenance, and my Elohim. [Ps 42:5](#); [Ps 42:11](#);

PSALM FORTY-FOUR

*To the Chief Musician.
A contemplation for the sons of Korah.*

The church, in memory of former favors

1 To the chief Musician for the sons of Korah, Maschil. We have heard with our ears, O Elohim, our fathers have told us, *what* work you didst in their days, in the times of old.

2 *How* you didst drive out the heathen with thy hand, and plantedst them; *how* you didst afflict the people, and cast them out. [Exod 15:17](#); [Ps 80:8](#); [\[Jer 2:21\]](#);

3 For they got not the land in possession by their own sword, neither did their own arm save them: but thy right hand, and thine arm, and the light of thy countenance, because you hadst a favor unto them. [\[Josh 24:12\]](#);

4 You are my King, O Elohim: command deliverances for Jacob.

5 Through you will we push down our enemies: through thy name will we tread them under that rise up against us.

6 For I will not trust in my bow, neither shall my sword save me.

complains of her present evils

7 But you have saved us from our enemies, and have put them to shame that hated us.

8 In Elohim we boast all the day long, and praise thy name for ever. Selah.

9 But you have cast off, and put us to shame; and go not forth with our armies. [Ps 60:1](#); [Ps 74:1](#); [Ps 89:38](#); [Ps 108:11](#);

10 You makest us to turn back from the enemy: and they which hate us spoil for themselves.

11 You have given us like sheep *appointed* for meat; and have scattered us among the heathen. [\[Ps 106:27\]](#);

12 You sellest thy people for nought, and dost not increase *thy wealth* by their price. [\[Judg 2:14\]](#);

13 You makest us a reproach to our neighbours, a scorn and a derision to them that are round about us. [Ps 79:4](#); [Ps 80:6](#); [Jer 24:9](#);

14 You makest us a byword among the heathen, a shaking of the head among the people.

15 My confusion *is* continually before me, and the shame of my face has covered me,

16 For the voice of him that reproacheth and blasphemeth; by reason of the enemy and avenger.

Professing her integrity

17 All this is come upon us; yet have we not forgotten you, neither have we dealt falsely in thy covenant.

18 Our heart is not turned back, neither have our steps declined from thy way;

19 Though you have sore broken us in the place of dragons, and covered us with the shadow of death. [\[Jer 13:16\]](#);

20 If we have forgotten the name of our Elohim, or stretched out our hands to a strange god;

21 Shall not Elohim search this out? for he knoweth the secrets of the heart. [\[Job 31:14\]](#); [\[Prov 15:11\]](#);

22 Yes, for thy sake are we killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter. [Rom 8:36](#); [\[1Cor 4:9\]](#); [\[2Cor 4:11\]](#);

23 Awake, why sleepest you, O Lord? arise, cast *us* not off for ever.

she fervently prays for succour

24 Wherefore hidest you thy face, *and* forgettest our affliction and our oppression?

25 For our being is bowed down to the dust: our belly cleaveth unto the earth.

26 Arise for our help, and redeem us for thy mercies' sake.

PSALM FORTY-FIVE

To the Chief Musician. "Concerning the Lilies." A contemplation for the sons of Korah. A Song of Loves.

The majesty and grace of the Messiah's kingdom

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Shoshannim, for the sons of Korah, Maschil, A Song of loves. My heart is inditing a good matter: I speak of the things which I have made touching the king: my tongue *is* the pen of a ready writer.
- 2** You are fairer than the children of men: grace is poured into thy lips: therefore Elohim has blessed you for ever.
- 3** Gird thy sword upon *thy* thigh, O *most* mighty, with thy glory and thy majesty.
- 4** And in thy majesty ride prosperously because of truth and meekness *and* righteousness; and thy right hand shall teach you terrible things. [Matt 11:29];
- 5** Thine arrows *are* sharp in the heart of the king's enemies; *whereby* the people fall under you.
- 6** Thy throne, O Elohim, *is* for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom *is* a right sceptre. Heb 1:8; [Isa 32:1]; [Luke 1:33]; [John 12:34];
- 7** You lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness: therefore Elohim, thy Elohim, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. [Ps 33:5]; [Acts 10:38]; [1John 2:20];
- 8** All thy garments *smell* of myrrh, and aloes, *and* cassia, out of the ivory palaces, whereby they have made you glad.
- 9** Kings' daughters *were* among thy honourable women: upon thy right hand did stand the queen in gold of Ophir.

The duty of the church, and the benefits thereof

- 10** Hearken, O daughter, and consider, and incline thine ear; forget also thine own people, and thy father's house;
- 11** So shall the king greatly desire thy beauty: for he *is* thy Lord; and worship you him. [Song 6:4]; [Song 7:6];
- 12** And the daughter of Tyre *shall be there* with a gift; *even* the rich among the people shall intreat thy favor. Ps 72:10;
- 13** The king's daughter *is* all glorious within: her clothing *is* of wrought gold.
- 14** She shall be brought unto the king in raiment of needlework: the virgins her companions that follow her shall be brought unto you.
- 15** With gladness and rejoicing shall they be brought: they shall enter into the king's palace.
- 16** Instead of thy fathers shall be thy children, whom you may make princes in all the earth.
- 17** I will make thy name to be remembered in all generations: therefore shall the people praise you for ever and ever.

PSALM FORTY-SIX

*To the Chief Musician.
A Song for the sons of Korah.*

The confidence which the church has in Elohim

- 1** To the chief Musician for the sons of Korah, A Song upon Alamoth. Elohim *is* our refuge and strength, a very present help in trouble. [\[Ps 9:9\]](#);
- 2** Therefore will not we fear, though the earth be removed, and though the mountains be carried into the midst of the sea;
- 3** *Though* the waters thereof roar *and* be troubled, though the mountains shake with the swelling thereof. Selah.
- 4** *There is* a river, the streams whereof shall make glad the city of Elohim, the holy *place* of the tabernacles of the most High.
- 5** Elohim *is* in the midst of her; she shall not be moved: Elohim shall help her, *and that* right early. [\[Isa 26:1\]](#); [\[Isa 33:20\]](#);
- 6** The heathen raged, the kingdoms were moved: he uttered his voice, the earth melted.
- 7** The YAHWEH of hosts *is* with us; the Elohim of Jacob *is* our refuge. Selah.

An exhortation to behold it

- 8** Come, behold the works of the YAHWEH, what desolations he has made in the earth.
- 9** He maketh wars to cease unto the end of the earth; he breaketh the bow, and cutteth the spear in sunder; he burneth the chariot in the fire.
- 10** Be still, and know that I *am* Elohim: I will be exalted among the heathen, I will be exalted in the earth.
- 11** The YAHWEH of hosts *is* with us; the Elohim of Jacob *is* our refuge. Selah.

PSALM FORTY-SEVEN

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm for the sons of Korah.*

The nations are exhorted cheerfully to entertain the kingdom of the Messiah

1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm for the sons of Korah. O clap your hands, all you people; shout unto Elohim with the voice of triumph.

2 For the YAHWEH most high *is* terrible; *he is* a great King over all the earth.

3 He shall subdue the people under us, and the nations under our feet.

4 He shall choose our inheritance for us, the excellency of Jacob whom he loved. Selah.

5 Elohim is gone up with a shout, the YAHWEH with the sound of a trumpet.

6 Sing praises to Elohim, sing praises: sing praises unto our King, sing praises.

7 For Elohim *is* the King of all the earth: sing you praises with understanding.

8 Elohim reigneth over the heathen: Elohim sitteth upon the throne of his holiness.

9 The princes of the people are gathered together, *even* the people of the Elohim of Abraham: for the shields of the earth *belong* unto Elohim: he is greatly exalted.

PSALM FORTY-EIGHT

A Song and Psalm for the sons of Korah.

The ornaments and privileges of the church

- 1** A Song *and* Psalm for the sons of Korah. Great *is* the YAHWEH, and greatly to be praised in the city of our Elohim, *in* the mountain of his holiness.
- 2** Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, *is* mount Zion, *on* the sides of the north, the city of the great King. [Matt 5:35](#); [\[Isa 14:13\]](#);
- 3** Elohim is known in her palaces for a refuge.
- 4** For, lo, the kings were assembled, they passed by together.
- 5** They saw *it*, *and* so they marvelled; they were troubled, *and* hasted away.
- 6** Fear took hold upon them there, *and* pain, as of a woman in travail.
- 7** You breakest the ships of Tarshish with an east wind.
- 8** As we have heard, so have we seen in the city of the YAHWEH of hosts, in the city of our Elohim: Elohim will establish it for ever. Selah.
- 9** We have thought of thy lovingkindness, O Elohim, in the midst of thy temple.
- 10** According to thy name, O Elohim, so *is* thy praise unto the ends of the earth: thy right hand is full of righteousness.
- 11** Let mount Zion rejoice, let the daughters of Judah be glad, because of thy judgments.
- 12** Walk about Zion, and go round about her: tell the towers thereof.
- 13** Mark you well her bulwarks, consider her palaces; that you may tell *it* to the generation following.
- 14** For this Elohim *is* our Elohim for ever and ever: he will be our guide *even* unto death.

PSALM FORTY-NINE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm for the sons of Korah.*

An earnest persuasion to build the faith of resurrection, not on worldly power, but on Elohim

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm for the sons of Korah. Hear this, all you people; give ear, all you inhabitants of the world:
- 2** Both low and high, rich and poor, together.
- 3** My mouth shall speak of wisdom; and the meditation of my heart *shall be* of understanding.
- 4** I will incline mine ear to a parable: I will open my dark saying upon the harp. [Ps 78:2](#); [Matt 13:35](#);
- 5** Wherefore should I fear in the days of evil, *when* the iniquity of my heels shall compass me about?
- 6** They that trust in their wealth, and boast themselves in the multitude of their riches;
- 7** None *of them* can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to Elohim a ransom for him:
- 8** (For the redemption of their being *is* precious, and it ceaseth for ever:) [\[Matt 16:26\]](#); [\[Mark 8:37\]](#);
- 9** That he should still live for ever, *and* not see corruption. [\[Ps 89:48\]](#);
- 10** For he seeth *that* wise men die, likewise the fool and the brutish person perish, and leave their wealth to others.
- 11** Their inward thought *is, that* their houses *shall continue* for ever, *and* their dwelling places to all generations; they call *their* lands after their own names.
- 12** Nevertheless man *being* in honour abideth not: he is like the beasts *that* perish.
- 13** This their way *is* their folly: yet their posterity approve their sayings. Selah.
- 14** Like sheep they are laid in the grave; death shall feed on them; and the upright shall have dominion over them in the morning; and their beauty shall consume in the grave from their dwelling.
- 15** But Elohim will redeem my being from the power of the grave: for he shall receive me. Selah. [\[Ps 89:48\]](#);

Worldly prosperity is not to be admired

- 16** Be not you afraid when one is made rich, when the glory of his house is increased;
- 17** For when he dieth he shall carry nothing away: his glory shall not descend after him. [\[Job 27:19\]](#); [\[Eccl 5:15\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:7\]](#);
- 18** Though while he lived he blessed his being: and *men* will praise you, when you do well to thyself.
- 19** He shall go to the generation of his fathers; they shall never see light.
- 20** Man *that is* in honour, and understandeth not, is like the beasts *that* perish.

PSALM FIFTY

A Psalm of Asaph.

The majesty of Elohim in the church

- 1** A Psalm of Asaph. The mighty Elohim, *even* the YAHWEH, has spoken, and called the earth from the rising of the sun unto the going down thereof. [Josh 22:22];
- 2** Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, Elohim has shined. [Ps 94:1];
- 3** Our Elohim shall come, and shall not keep silence: a fire shall devour before him, and it shall be very tempestuous round about him. [2Pet 3:12];
- 4** He shall call to the heavens from above, and to the earth, that he may judge his people.

His order to gather his saints

- 5** Gather my saints together unto me; those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice.
- 6** And the heavens shall declare his righteousness: for Elohim *is* judge himself. Selah. [Ps 97:6];

The pleasure of Elohim is not in ceremonies

- 7** Hear, O my people, and I will speak; O Israel, and I will testify against you: I *am* Elohim, *even* thy Elohim.
- 8** I will not reprove you for thy sacrifices or thy burnt offerings, *to have been* continually before me. [Prov 21:3]; [Isa 1:11];
- 9** I will take no bullock out of thy house, *nor* he goats out of thy folds. [Ps 16:2];
- 10** For every beast of the forest *is* mine, *and* the cattle upon a thousand hills.
- 11** I know all the fowls of the mountains: and the wild beasts of the field *are* mine.
- 12** If I were hungry, I would not tell you: for the world *is* mine, and the fulness thereof. Exod 19:5; Deut 10:14; Job 41:11; Ps 24:1; 1Cor 10:26; 1Cor 10:28;
- 13** Will I eat the flesh of bulls, or drink the blood of goats?

but in sincerity of obedience

- 14** Offer unto Elohim thanksgiving; and pay thy vows unto the most High: Deut 23:23; Job 22:27; Ps 76:11; Eccl 5:4-6; [Ps 107:22]; [Prov 21:3]; [Jonah 2:9];
- 15** And call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver you, and you shall glorify me. [Job 33:26]; [Ps 86:7]; [Zech 13:9];
- 16** But unto the wicked Elohim saith, What have you to do to declare my statutes, or *that* you should take my covenant in thy mouth?
- 17** Seeing you hatest instruction, and castest my words behind you.
- 18** When you sawest a thief, then you consentedst with him, and have been partaker with adulterers.
- 19** *you* givest thy mouth to evil, and thy tongue frameth deceit.
- 20** *you* sittest *and* speakest against thy brother; you slanderest thine own mother's son.
- 21** These *things* have you done, and I kept silence; you thoughtest that I was altogether *such an one* as thyself: *but* I will reprove you, and set *them* in order before thine eyes.
- 22** Now consider this, you that forget Elohim, lest I tear *you* in pieces, and *there be* none to deliver.
- 23** Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me: and to him that ordereth *his* conduct *aright* will I show the salvation of Elohim. [Jonah 2:9];

PSALM FIFTY-ONE

*To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David,
when Nathan the prophet came to him,
after he had gone in to Bathsheba.*

David prays for remission of sins, whereof he makes a deep confession

1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David, when Nathan the prophet came unto him, after he had gone in to Bathsheba. Have mercy upon me, O Elohim, according to thy lovingkindness: according unto the multitude of thy tender mercies blot out my transgressions. [2Sam 12:1](#); [2Sam 11:4](#); [\[Mark 2:7\]](#);

2 Wash me thoroughly from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin.

3 For I acknowledge my transgressions: and my sin *is* ever before me.

4 Against you, you only, have I sinned, and done *this* evil in thy sight: that you mightest be justified when you speakest, *and* be clear when you judgest. [Rom 3:4](#); [\[Job 40:8\]](#);

5 Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me. [\[Job 14:4\]](#); [\[Prov 20:9\]](#);

He prays for sanctification

6 Behold, you desirest truth in the inward parts: and in the hidden *part* you shall make me to know wisdom.

7 Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean: wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow. [Lev 14:4](#); [Lev 14:6](#); [Num 19:6](#); [Num 19:18](#); [\[Isa 1:18\]](#);

8 Make me to hear joy and gladness; *that* the bones *which* you have broken may rejoice.

9 Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities. [\[Num 23:21\]](#);

10 Create in me a clean heart, O Elohim; and renew a right spirit within me.

11 Cast me not away from thy presence; and take not thy holy spirit from me.

12 Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me *with thy* free spirit.

13 *Then* will I teach transgressors thy ways; and sinners shall be converted unto you.

14 Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O Elohim, you Elohim of my salvation: *and* my tongue shall sing aloud of thy righteousness.

15 O Lord, open you my lips; and my mouth shall show forth thy praise.

Elohim delights not in sacrifice, but in sincerity

16 For you desirest not sacrifice; else would I give *it*: you delightest not in burnt offering.

17 The sacrifices of Elohim *are* a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O Elohim, you will not despise.

He prays for the church

18 Do good in thy good pleasure unto Zion: build you the walls of Jerusalem.

19 Then shall you be pleased with the sacrifices of righteousness, with burnt offering and whole burnt offering: then shall they offer bullocks upon thine altar. [\[Ps 4:5\]](#);

PSALM FIFTY-TWO

*To the Chief Musician. A contemplation.
A Psalm of David, when Doeg the Edomite came and told Saul, and said to him, "David has come to the house of Ahimelech."*

David, condemning the spitefulness of Doeg, prophesies his destruction

1 To the chief Musician, Maschil, *A Psalm* of David, when Doeg the Edomite came and told Saul, and said unto him, David is come to the house of Ahimelech. Why boastest thou thyself in mischief, O mighty man? the goodness of Elohim *endureth* continually. [1Sam 22:9](#);

2 Thy tongue deviseth mischiefs; like a sharp razor, working deceitfully.

3 You lovest evil more than good; *and* lying rather than to speak righteousness. Selah.

4 You lovest all devouring words, O you deceitful tongue.

5 Elohim shall likewise destroy you for ever, he shall take you away, and pluck you out of *thy* dwelling place, and root you out of the land of the living. Selah. [\[Luke 12:20\]](#);

The righteous shall rejoice at it

6 The righteous also shall see, and fear, and shall laugh at him:

7 Lo, *this is* the man *that* made not Elohim his strength; but trusted in the abundance of his riches, *and* strengthened himself in his wickedness.

David, upon his confidence in Elohim's mercy, gives thanks

8 But I *am* like a green olive tree in the house of Elohim: I trust in the mercy of Elohim for ever and ever.

9 I will praise you for ever, because you have done *it*: and I will wait on thy name; for *it is* good before thy saints. [Ps 22:31](#); [\[Ps 54:6\]](#);

PSALM FIFTY-THREE

*To the Chief Musician on Mahalath.
A contemplation. A Psalm of David.*

David describes the corruption of a natural man

1 To the chief Musician upon Mahalath, Maschil, *A Psalm* of David. The fool has said in his heart, *There is* no Elohim. Corrupt are they, and have done abominable iniquity: *there is* none that doeth good. [Ps 10:4](#); [Ps 14:1](#); [Rom 3:12](#);

2 Elohim looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were *any* that did understand, that did seek Elohim. [Rom 3:11](#);

3 Every one of them is gone back: they are altogether become filthy; *there is* none that doeth good, no, not one. [\[Rom 3:10\]](#);

He convicts the wicked by the light of their own conscience

4 Have the workers of iniquity no knowledge? who eat up my people *as* they eat bread: they have not called upon Elohim.

5 There were they in great fear, *where* no fear was: for Elohim has scattered the bones of him that encampeth *against* you: you have put *them* to shame, because Elohim has despised them.

He glories in the salvation of Elohim

6 Oh that the salvation of Israel *were come* out of Zion! When Elohim bringeth back the captivity of his people, Jacob shall rejoice, *and* Israel shall be glad.

PSALM FIFTY-FOUR

*To the Chief Musician, on stringed
instruments. A contemplation.
A Psalm of David, when the Ziphites came and said to Saul, "Does not David
hide himself among us?"*

David, complaining of the Ziphims, prays for salvation

1 To the chief Musician on Neginoth, Maschil, *A Psalm* of David, when the Ziphims came and said to Saul, Does not David hide himself with us? Save me, O Elohim, by thy name, and judge me by thy strength. [1Sam 23:19](#); [1Sam 26:1](#);

2 Hear my prayer, O Elohim; give ear to the words of my mouth.

3 For strangers are risen up against me, and oppressors seek after my being: they have not set Elohim before them. Selah. [Ps 86:14](#);

Upon his confidence in Elohim's help he promises sacrifice

4 Behold, Elohim *is* mine helper: the Lord *is* with them that uphold my being.

5 He shall reward evil unto mine enemies: cut them off in thy truth.

6 I will freely sacrifice unto you: I will praise thy name, O YAHWEH; for *it is* good. [Ps 52:9](#);

7 For he has delivered me out of all trouble: and mine eye has seen *his desire* upon mine enemies.

PSALM FIFTY-FIVE

*To the Chief Musician.
For stringed instruments.
A contemplation. A Psalm of David.*

David in his prayer complains of his fearful case

- 1** To the chief Musician on Neginoth, Maschil, *A Psalm* of David. Give ear to my prayer, O Elohim; and hide not thyself from my supplication.
- 2** Attend unto me, and hear me: I mourn in my complaint, and make a noise;
- 3** Because of the voice of the enemy, because of the oppression of the wicked: for they cast iniquity upon me, and in wrath they hate me.
- 4** My heart is sore pained within me: and the terrors of death are fallen upon me.
- 5** Fearfulness and trembling are come upon me, and horror has overwhelmed me.
- 6** And I said, Oh that I had wings like a dove! *for then* would I fly away, and be at rest.
- 7** Lo, *then* would I wander far off, *and* remain in the wilderness. Selah.
- 8** I would hasten my escape from the windy storm *and* tempest.

He prays against his enemies, of whose wickedness and treachery he complains

- 9** Destroy, O Lord, *and* divide their tongues: for I have seen violence and strife in the city.
- 10** Day and night they go about it upon the walls thereof: mischief also and sorrow *are* in the midst of it.
- 11** Wickedness *is* in the midst thereof: deceit and guile depart not from her streets.
- 12** For *it was* not an enemy *that* reproached me; then I could have borne *it*: neither *was it* he that hated me *that* did magnify *himself* against me; then I would have hid myself from him: [Matt 10:36];
- 13** But *it was* you, a man mine equal, my guide, and mine acquaintance. [Job 19:19];
- 14** We took sweet counsel together, *and* walked unto the house of Elohim in company.
- 15** Let death seize upon them, *and* let them go down quick into hell: for wickedness *is* in their dwellings, *and* among them.

He comforts himself in Elohim's preservation of him, and confusion of his enemies

- 16** As for me, I will call upon Elohim; and the YAHWEH shall save me.
- 17** Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray, and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice. [Dan 6:10];
- 18** He has delivered my being in peace from the battle *that was* against me: for there were many with me.
- 19** Elohim shall hear, and afflict them, even he that abideth of old. Selah. Because they have no changes, therefore they fear not Elohim.
- 20** He has put forth his hands against such as be at peace with him: he has broken his covenant.
- 21** *The words* of his mouth were smoother than butter, but war *was* in his heart: his words were softer than oil, yet *were* they drawn swords. [Ps 59:7];
- 22** Cast thy burden upon the YAHWEH, and he shall sustain you: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved. [Ps 37:5]; [Prov 16:3]; [Matt 6:25]; [Matt 6:33]; [Luke 12:22]; [Phil 4:6]; [1Tim 6:8]; [1Pet 5:7];
- 23** But you, O Elohim, shall bring them down into the pit of destruction: bloody and deceitful men shall not live out half their days; but I will trust in you. [Job 15:32];

PSALM FIFTY-SIX

*To the Chief Musician. "Concerning
the silent dove—those far off."
Of David, a secret treasure—
when the Philistines took him in Gath.*

David, praying to Elohim in confidence of his word, complains of his enemies

1 To the chief Musician upon Jonathelemrechokim, Michtam of David, when the Philistines took him in Gath. Be merciful unto me, O Elohim: for man would swallow me up; he fighting daily oppresseth me. [1Sam 21:12-14](#);

2 Mine enemies would daily swallow *me* up: for *they be* many that fight against me, O you most High.

3 What time I am afraid, I will trust in you.

4 In Elohim I will praise his word, in Elohim I have put my trust; I will not fear what flesh can do unto me. [\[Heb 13:6\]](#);

5 Every day they wrest my words: all their thoughts *are* against me for evil.

6 They gather themselves together, they hide themselves, they mark my steps, when they wait for my being.

7 Shall they escape by iniquity? in *thine* anger cast down the people, O Elohim.

8 You tellest my wanderings: put you my tears into thy bottle: *are they* not in thy book? [\[Job 14:16\]](#);

He professes his confidence in Elohim's word, and promises to praise him

9 When I cry *unto you*, then shall mine enemies turn back: this I know; for Elohim *is* for me.

10 In Elohim will I praise *his* word: in the YAHWEH will I praise *his* word.

11 In Elohim have I put my trust: I will not be afraid what man can do unto me. [Ps 118:6](#);

12 Thy vows *are* upon me, O Elohim: I will render praises unto you.

13 For you have delivered my being from death: will not you *deliver* my feet from falling, that I may walk before Elohim in the light of the living? [\[Job 33:30\]](#);

PSALM FIFTY-SEVEN

*To the Chief Musician. "Do not destroy."
A secret treasure of David
when he fled from Saul in the cave.*

David in prayer fleeing unto Elohim, complains of his dangerous case

1 To the chief Musician, Altaschith, Michtam of David, when he fled from Saul in the cave. Be merciful unto me, O Elohim, be merciful unto me: for my being trusteth in you: yes, in the shadow of thy wings will I make my refuge, until *these* calamities be overpast. [1Sam 22:1](#); [1Sam 24:3](#); [\[Ps 91:4\]](#);

2 I will cry unto Elohim most high; unto Elohim that performeth *all things* for me.

3 He shall send from heaven, and save me *from* the reproach of him that would swallow me up. Selah. Elohim shall send forth his mercy and his truth.

4 My being *is* among lions: *and* I lie *even among* them that are set on fire, *even* the sons of men, whose teeth *are* spears and arrows, and their tongue a sharp sword. [\[Ps 59:7\]](#); [\[Prov 12:18\]](#); [\[Prov 25:18\]](#);

5 Be you exalted, O Elohim, above the heavens; *let* thy glory *be* above all the earth. [Ps 108:5](#);

6 They have prepared a net for my steps; my being is bowed down: they have digged a pit before me, into the midst whereof they are fallen *themselves*. Selah. [Ps 7:15](#); [Ps 9:15](#); [\[Prov 11:27\]](#); [\[Prov 26:27\]](#);

He encourages himself to praise Elohim

7 My heart is fixed, O Elohim, my heart is fixed: I will sing and give praise. [Ps 108:1](#);

8 Awake up, my glory; awake, psaltery and harp: I *myself* will awake early.

9 I will praise you, O Lord, among the people: I will sing unto you among the nations. [Ps 108:3](#);

10 For thy mercy *is* great unto the heavens, and thy truth unto the clouds. [Ps 36:5](#); [Ps 108:4](#);

11 Be you exalted, O Elohim, above the heavens: *let* thy glory *be* above all the earth.

PSALM FIFTY-EIGHT

*To the Chief Musician. "Do not destroy."
A secret treasure of David.*

David reproves wicked judges

1 To the chief Musician, Altaschith, Michtam of David. Do you indeed speak righteousness, O congregation? do you judge uprightly, O you sons of men?

2 Yes, in heart you work wickedness; you weigh the violence of your hands in the earth.

describes the nature of the wicked

3 The wicked are estranged from the womb: they go astray as soon as they be born, speaking lies.

4 Their poison *is* like the poison of a serpent: *they are* like the deaf adder *that* stoppeth her ear; [Ps 140:3](#); [\[Jer 8:17\]](#);

5 Which will not hearken to the voice of charmers, charming never so wisely.

devotes them to Elohim's judgments

6 Break their teeth, O Elohim, in their mouth: break out the great teeth of the young lions, O YAHWEH.

7 Let them melt away as waters *which* run continually: *when* he bendeth *his bow to shoot* his arrows, let them be as cut in pieces.

8 As a snail *which* melteth, let *every one of them* pass away: *like* the untimely birth of a woman, *that* they may not see the sun. [\[Ecc 6:5\]](#);

9 Before your pots can feel the thorns, he shall take them away as with a whirlwind, both living, and in *his* wrath. [\[Ecc 7:6\]](#);

whereat the righteous shall rejoice

10 The righteous shall rejoice when he seeth the vengeance: he shall wash his feet in the blood of the wicked. [\[Prov 29:16\]](#);

11 So that a man shall say, Verily *there is* a reward for the righteous: verily he is a Elohim that judgeth in the earth.

PSALM FIFTY-NINE

*To the Chief Musician. "Do not destroy."
A secret treasure of David, when Saul sent, and they watched the house to kill him.*

David prays to be delivered from his enemies

1 To the chief Musician, Altaschith, Michtam of David; when Saul sent, and they watched the house to kill him. Deliver me from mine enemies, O my Elohim: defend me from them that rise up against me. [1Sam 19:11](#);

2 Deliver me from the workers of iniquity, and save me from bloody men.

3 For, lo, they lie in wait for my being: the mighty are gathered against me; not *for* my transgression, nor *for* my sin, O YAHWEH.

4 They run and prepare themselves without *my* fault: awake to help me, and behold.

5 *you* therefore, O YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, awake to visit all the heathen: be not merciful to any wicked transgressors. Selah.

He complains of their cruelty

6 They return at evening: they make a noise like a dog, and go round about the city.

7 Behold, they belch out with their mouth: swords *are* in their lips: for who, *say they*, hears? [Ps 55:21](#); [Ps 57:4](#); [Ps 10:11](#); [Ps 94:7](#); [[Ps 120:4](#)]; [[Prov 12:18](#)]; [[Prov 25:18](#)];

He trusts in Elohim

8 But you, O YAHWEH, shall laugh at them; you shall have all the heathen in derision. [Ps 2:4](#);

9 *Because of* his strength will I wait upon you: for Elohim *is* my defence.

10 The Elohim of my mercy shall prevent me: Elohim shall let me see *my desire* upon mine enemies.

He prays against them

11 Slay them not, lest my people forget: scatter them by thy power; and bring them down, O Lord our shield.

12 *For* the sin of their mouth *and* the words of their lips let them even be taken in their pride: and for cursing and lying *which* they speak.

13 Consume *them* in wrath, consume *them*, that they *may* not *be*: and let them know that Elohim ruleth in Jacob unto the ends of the earth. Selah.

14 And at evening let them return; *and* let them make a noise like a dog, and go round about the city.

15 Let them wander up and down for meat, and grudge if they be not satisfied.

He praises Elohim

16 But I will sing of thy power; yes, I will sing aloud of thy mercy in the morning: for you have been my defence and refuge in the day of my trouble.

17 Unto you, O my strength, will I sing: for Elohim *is* my defence, *and* the Elohim of my mercy.

PSALM SIXTY

To the Chief Musician. "On the Lily of Testimony." A secret treasure of David, for teaching. When he struggled with Aram-Naharaim and with Aram of Zobah, when Joab returned and struck twelve thousand of Edom in the Valley of Salt.

David, complaining to Elohim of former judgment

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Shushaneduth, Michtam of David, to teach; when he strove with Aramnaharaim and with Aramzobah, when Joab returned, and smote of Edom in the valley of salt twelve thousand. O Elohim, you have cast us off, you have scattered us, you have been displeased; O turn thyself to us again. [2Sam 8:3](#); [2Sam 8:13](#); [1Chr 18:3](#); [1Chr 18:12](#); [Ps 144:10](#); [[Ps 44:9](#)]; [[Ps 108:11](#)];
- 2** You have made the earth to tremble; you have broken it: heal the breaches thereof; for it shaketh.
- 3** You have showed thy people hard things: you have made us to drink the wine of astonishment.

now upon better hope, prays for deliverance

- 4** You have given a banner to them that fear you, that it may be displayed because of the truth. Selah.
- 5** That thy beloved may be delivered; save *with* thy right hand, and hear me. [Ps 108:6](#);

Comforting himself in Elohim's promises, he craves that help whereon he trusts

- 6** Elohim has spoken in his holiness; I will rejoice, I will divide Shechem, and mete out the valley of Succoth.
- 7** Gilead *is* mine, and Manasseh *is* mine; Ephraim also *is* the strength of mine head; Judah *is* my lawgiver;
- 8** Moab *is* my washpot; over Edom will I cast out my shoe: Philistia, triumph you because of me.
- 9** Who will bring me *into* the strong city? who will lead me into Edom?
- 10 will** not you, O Elohim, *which* hadst cast us off? and you, O Elohim, *which* didst not go out with our armies?
- 11** Give us help from trouble: for vain *is* the help of man.
- 12** Through Elohim we shall do valiantly: for he *it is that* shall tread down our enemies.

PSALM SIXTY-ONE

To the Chief Musician. On stringed instruments. A Psalm of David.

David flees to Elohim upon his former experience

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Neginah, *A Psalm* of David. Hear my cry, O Elohim; attend unto my prayer.
2 From the end of the earth will I cry unto you, when my heart is overwhelmed: lead me to the rock *that* is higher than I.
3 For you have been a shelter for me, *and* a strong tower from the enemy. [[Prov 18:10](#)];

He vows perpetual service unto him, because of his promises

- 4** I will abide in thy tabernacle for ever: I will trust in the covert of thy wings. Selah.

5 For you, O Elohim, have heard my vows: you have given *me* the heritage of those that fear thy name.
6 You will prolong the king's life: *and* his years as many generations.
7 He shall abide before Elohim for ever: O prepare mercy and truth, *which* may preserve him.
8 So will I sing praise unto thy name for ever, that I may daily perform my vows.

PSALM SIXTY-TWO

*To the Chief Musician. To Jeduthun.
A Psalm of David.*

David, professing his confidence in Elohim, discourages his enemies

- 1** To the chief Musician, to Jeduthun, A Psalm of David. Truly my being waiteth upon Elohim: from him *cometh* my salvation.
- 2** He only *is* my rock and my salvation; *he is* my defence; I shall not be greatly moved.
- 3** How long will you imagine mischief against a man? you shall be slain all of you: as a bowing wall *shall you be, and as* a tottering fence.
- 4** They only consult to cast *him* down from his excellency: they delight in lies: they bless with their mouth, but they curse inwardly. Selah.

In the same confidence he encourages the godly

- 5** My being, wait you only upon Elohim; for my expectation *is* from him.
- 6** He only *is* my rock and my salvation: *he is* my defence; I shall not be moved.
- 7** In Elohim *is* my salvation and my glory: the rock of my strength, *and* my refuge, *is* in Elohim.
- 8** Trust in him at all times; you people, pour out your heart before him: Elohim *is* a refuge for us. Selah.
[\[1Sam 1:15\]](#); [\[Ps 118:8\]](#);

No trust is to be put in worldly things

- 9** Surely men of low degree *are* vanity, *and* men of high degree *are* a lie: to be laid in the balance, they *are* altogether *lighter* than vanity. [\[Job 7:16\]](#); [\[Ps 39:5\]](#); [\[Ps 144:4\]](#); [\[Eccl 1:2\]](#); [\[Eccl 12:8\]](#);
- 10** Trust not in oppression, and become not vain in robbery: if riches increase, set not your heart *upon them*. [\[Job 31:25\]](#);

Power and mercy belong to Elohim

- 11** Elohim has spoken once; twice have I heard this; that power *belongeth* unto Elohim.
- 12** Also unto you, O Lord, *belongeth* mercy: for you renderest to every man according to his work. [Job 34:11](#); [Prov 24:12](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Ezek 7:27](#); [Ezek 33:20](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Eph 6:8](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#); [Rev 22:12](#); [\[Rom 14:12\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:8\]](#); [\[Gal 6:5\]](#); [\[Rev 2:23\]](#); [\[Rev 20:12\]](#);

PSALM SIXTY-THREE

*A Psalm of David, when he was in
the wilderness of Judah.*

David's thirst for Elohim

1 A Psalm of David, when he was in the wilderness of Judah. O Elohim, you are my Elohim; early will I seek you: my being thirsteth for you, my flesh longeth for you in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is; [1Sam 22:5](#); [1Sam 23:14-15](#); [\[Ps 42:2\]](#); [\[Ps 84:2\]](#); [\[Ps 119:148\]](#);

2 To see thy power and thy glory, so *as* I have seen you in the sanctuary.

3 Because thy lovingkindness *is* better than life, my lips shall praise you.

His manner of blessing Elohim

4 Thus will I bless you while I live: I will lift up my hands in thy name. [\[Ps 104:33\]](#);

5 My being shall be satisfied as *with* marrow and fatness; and my mouth shall praise you with joyful lips:

6 When I remember you upon my bed, *and* meditate on you in the *night* watches. [\[Ps 119:148\]](#);

7 Because you have been my help, therefore in the shadow of thy wings will I rejoice.

8 My being followeth hard after you: thy right hand upholdeth me.

His confidence of his enemies' destruction, and his own safety

9 But those *that* seek my being, to destroy *it*; shall go into the lower parts of the earth.

10 They shall fall by the sword: they shall be a portion for foxes.

11 But the king shall rejoice in Elohim; every one that sweareth by him shall glory: but the mouth of them that speak lies shall be stopped.

PSALM SIXTY-FOUR

To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David.

David prays for deliverance, complaining of his enemies

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. Hear my voice, O Elohim, in my prayer: preserve my life from fear of the enemy.
- 2** Hide me from the secret counsel of the wicked; from the insurrection of the workers of iniquity:
- 3** Who whet their tongue like a sword, *and* bend *their bows to shoot* their arrows, *even* bitter words:
- 4** That they may shoot in secret at the perfect: suddenly do they shoot at him, and fear not. [Ps 11:2](#);
- 5** They encourage themselves *in* an evil matter: they commune of laying snares privily; they say, Who shall see them?
- 6** They search out iniquities; they accomplish a diligent search: both the inward thought *t* of every one *of* *them*, and the heart, *is* deep.

He promises himself to see such an evident destruction of his enemies, as the righteous shall rejoice at it

- 7** But Elohim shall shoot at them *with* an arrow; suddenly shall they be wounded.
- 8** So they shall make their own tongue to fall upon themselves: all that see them shall flee away.
- 9** And all men shall fear, and shall declare the work of Elohim; for they shall wisely consider of his doing.
- 10** The righteous shall be glad in the YAHWEH, and shall trust in him; and all the upright in heart shall glory.

PSALM SIXTY-FIVE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm and Song of David.*

David praises Elohim for his grace

1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm *and* Song of David. Praise waiteth for you, O Elohim, in Sion: and unto you shall the vow be performed.

2 O you that hearest prayer, unto you shall all flesh come.

3 Iniquities prevail against me: *as for* our transgressions, you shall purge them away.

The blessedness of Elohim's chosen by reason of benefits

4 Blessed *is the man whom* you choosest, and causest to approach *unto you, that* he may dwell in thy courts: we shall be satisfied with the goodness of thy house, *even* of thy holy temple. [\[Ps 33:12\]](#);

5 *By* terrible things in righteousness will you answer us, O Elohim of our salvation; *who are* the confidence of all the ends of the earth, and of them that are afar off *upon* the sea:

6 Which by his strength setteth fast the mountains; *being* girded with power:

7 Which stilleth the noise of the seas, the noise of their waves, and the tumult of the people.

8 They also that dwell in the uttermost parts are afraid at thy tokens: you makest the outgoings of the morning and evening to rejoice.

9 You visitest the earth, and waterest it: you greatly enrichest it with the river of Elohim, *which* is full of water: you preparest them corn, when you have so provided for it.

10 You waterest the ridges thereof abundantly: you settlest the furrows thereof: you makest it soft with showers: you blessest the springing thereof.

11 You crownest the year with thy goodness; and thy paths drop fatness.

12 They drop *upon* the pastures of the wilderness: and the little hills rejoice on every side.

13 The pastures are clothed with flocks; the valleys also are covered over with corn; they shout for joy, they also sing.

PSALM SIXTY-SIX

To the Chief Musician. A Song. A Psalm.

David exhorts to praise Elohim

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Song *or* Psalm. Make a joyful noise unto Elohim, all you lands:
2 Sing forth the honour of his name: make his praise glorious.
3 Say unto Elohim, How terrible are *you in* thy works! through the greatness of thy power shall thine enemies submit themselves unto you.
4 All the earth shall worship you, and shall sing unto you; they shall sing *to* thy name. Selah.

to observe his great works

- 5** Come and see the works of Elohim: *he is* terrible *in his* doing toward the children of men.
6 He turned the sea into dry *land*: they went through the flood on foot: there did we rejoice in him. [Exod 14:21](#); [Josh 3:14](#);
7 He ruleth by his power for ever; his eyes behold the nations: let not the rebellious exalt themselves. Selah. [2Chr 16:9](#); [Job 28:24](#); [Ps 33:13](#);

to bless him for his gracious benefits

- 8** O bless our Elohim, you people, and make the voice of his praise to be heard:
9 Which holdeth our being in life, and suffereth not our feet to be moved.
10 For you, O Elohim, have proved us: you have tried us, as silver is tried.
11 You broughtest us into the net; you laidst affliction upon our loins.

He vows for himself religious service to Elohim

- 12** You have caused men to ride over our heads; we went through fire and through water: but you broughtest us out into a wealthy *place*. [\[Isa 43:2\]](#);

- 13** I will go into thy house with burnt offerings: I will pay you my vows,
14 Which my lips have uttered, and my mouth has spoken, when I was in trouble.
15 I will offer unto you burnt sacrifices of fatlings, with the incense of rams; I will offer bullocks with goats. Selah.

He declares Elohim's special goodness to himself

- 16** Come *and* hear, all you that fear Elohim, and I will declare what he has done for my being.
17 I cried unto him with my mouth, and he was extolled with my tongue.
18 If I regard iniquity in my heart, the Lord will not hear *me*:
19 *But* verily Elohim has heard *me*; he has attended to the voice of my prayer.
20 Blessed *be* Elohim, which has not turned away my prayer, nor his mercy from me.

PSALM SIXTY-SEVEN

*To the Chief Musician. On stringed
instruments. A Psalm. A Song.*

A prayer for the enlargement of Elohim's kingdom

1 To the chief Musician on Neginoth, A Psalm *or* Song. Elohim be merciful unto us, and bless us; *and* cause his face to shine upon us; Selah. [Num 6:25](#); [Ps 4:6](#); [[Ps 80:3](#)];

2 That thy way may be known upon earth, thy saving health among all nations.

to the joy of the people

3 Let the people praise you, O Elohim; let all the people praise you.

4 O let the nations be glad and sing for joy: for you shall judge the people righteously, and govern the nations upon earth. Selah.

5 Let the people praise you, O Elohim; let all the people praise you.

and the increase of Elohim's blessings

6 *Then* shall the earth yield her increase; *and* Elohim, *even* our own Elohim, shall bless us. [[Ps 85:12](#)];

7 Elohim shall bless us; and all the ends of the earth shall fear him.

PSALM SIXTY-EIGHT

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David. A Song.*

A prayer at the removing of the ark

1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm *or* Song of David. Let Elohim arise, let his enemies be scattered: let them also that hate him flee before him. [Num 10:35](#);

2 As smoke is driven away, *so* drive *them* away: as wax melteth before the fire, *so* let the wicked perish at the presence of Elohim.

3 But let the righteous be glad; let them rejoice before Elohim: yes, let them exceedingly rejoice.

An exhortation to praise Elohim for his mercies

4 Sing unto Elohim, sing praises to his name: extol him that rideth upon the heavens by his name JAH, and rejoice before him.

5 A father of the fatherless, and a judge of the widows, *is* Elohim in his holy habitation.

6 Elohim setteth the solitary in families: he bringeth out those which are bound with chains: but the rebellious dwell in a dry *land*.

for his care of the church

7 O Elohim, when you wentest forth before thy people, when you didst march through the wilderness; Selah: [\[Judg 5:4\]](#);

8 The earth shook, the heavens also dropped at the presence of Elohim: *even* Sinai itself *was moved* at the presence of Elohim, the Elohim of Israel. [Exod 19:1-25](#); [\[Exod 19:18\]](#);

9 You, O Elohim, didst send a plentiful rain, whereby you didst confirm thine inheritance, when it was weary.

10 Thy congregation has dwelt therein: you, O Elohim, have prepared of thy goodness for the poor.

11 The Lord gave the word: great *was* the company of those that published *it*.

12 Kings of armies did flee quickly: and she that tarried at home divided the spoil.

13 Though you have lien among the pots, yet *shall you be as* the wings of a dove covered with silver, and her feathers with yallow gold.

14 When the Almighty scattered kings in it, it was *white* as snow in Salmon. [\[Judg 5:5\]](#);

15 The hill of Elohim *is as* the hill of Bashan; a high hill *as* the hill of Bashan.

16 Why leap you, you high hills? *this is* the hill *which* Elohim desireth to dwell in; yes, the YAHWEH will dwell *in it* for ever. [Ps 87:1-2](#); [Ps 132:13](#); [\[Ps 132:14\]](#);

17 The chariots of Elohim *are* twenty thousand, *even* thousands of angels: the Lord *is* among them, *as in* Sinai, in the holy *place*.

18 You have ascended on high, you have led captivity captive: you have received gifts for men; yes, *for* the rebellious also, that the YAHWEH Elohim might dwell *among them*. [Eph 4:8](#);

for his great works

19 Blessed *be* the Lord, *who* daily loadeth us *with benefits*, *even* the Elohim of our salvation. Selah.

20 *He that is* our Elohim *is* the Elohim of salvation; and unto GOD the Lord *belong* the issues from death.

21 But Elohim shall wound the head of his enemies, *and* the hairy scalp of such an one as goes on still in his trespasses.

22 The Lord said, I will bring again from Bashan, I will bring *my people* again from the depths of the sea: [Num 21:33](#); [Exod 14:29](#);

23 That thy foot may be dipped in the blood of *thine* enemies, *and* the tongue of thy dogs in the same.

24 They have seen thy goings, O Elohim; *even* the goings of my Elohim, my King, in the sanctuary.

- 25** The singers went before, the players on instruments *followed* after; among *them were* the damsels playing with timbrels.
- 26** Bless you Elohim in the congregations, *even* the Lord, from the fountain of Israel.
- 27** There *is* little Benjamin *with* their ruler, the princes of Judah *and* their council, the princes of Zebulun, *and* the princes of Naphtali.
- 28** Thy Elohim has commanded thy strength: strengthen, O Elohim, that which you have wrought for us.
- 29** Because of thy temple at Jerusalem shall kings bring presents unto you. [1Kgs 10:10](#); [1Kgs 10:24-25](#); [2Chr 32:23](#); [Ps 72:10](#); [Ps 76:11](#);
- 30** Rebuke the company of spearmen, the multitude of the bulls, with the calves of the people, *till every one* submit himself with pieces of silver: scatter you the people *that* delight in war.
- 31** Princes shall come out of Egypt; Ethiopia shall soon stretch out her hands unto Elohim.
- 32** Sing unto Elohim, you kingdoms of the earth; O sing praises unto the Lord; Selah:
- 33** To him that rideth upon the heavens of heavens, *which were* of old; lo, he sends out his voice, *and that* a mighty voice.
- 34** Ascribe you strength unto Elohim: his excellency *is* over Israel, and his strength *is* in the clouds.
- 35** O Elohim, you *are* terrible out of thy holy places: the Elohim of Israel *is* he that giveth strength and power unto *his* people. Blessed *be* Elohim.

PSALM SIXTY-NINE

To the Chief Musician. "Concerning the Lilies." A Psalm of David.

David complains of his affliction

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Shoshannim, *A Psalm* of David. Save me, O Elohim; for the waters are come in unto *my* being. [Matt 26:54];
- 2** I sink in deep mire, where *there is* no standing: I am come into deep waters, where the floods overflow me.
- 3** I am weary of my crying: my throat is dried: mine eyes fail while I wait for my Elohim.
- 4** They that hate me without a cause are more than the hairs of mine head: they that would destroy me, *being* mine enemies wrongfully, are mighty: then I restored *that* which I took not away. [Ps 109:3]; [John 15:25];
- 5** O Elohim, you knowest my foolishness; and my sins are not hid from you.
- 6** Let not them that wait on you, O Lord GOD of hosts, be ashamed for my sake: let not those that seek you be confounded for my sake, O Elohim of Israel.
- 7** Because for thy sake I have borne reproach; shame has covered my face.
- 8** I am become a stranger unto my brethren, and an alien unto my mother's children. [Job 19:13];
- 9** For the zeal of thine house devours me; and the insults of those who insult you fall upon me. John 2:17; Rom 15:3; [Matt 26:54]; [Mark 14:49];
- 10** When I wept, *and chastened* my being with fasting, that was to my reproach. [John 2:17];
- 11** I made sackcloth also my garment; and I became a proverb to them.
- 12** They that sit in the gate speak against me; and I *was* the song of the drunkards. [Job 30:9];

He prays for deliverance

- 13** But as for me, my prayer *is* unto you, O YAHWEH, *in* an acceptable time: O Elohim, in the multitude of thy mercy hear me, in the truth of thy salvation.
- 14** Deliver me out of the mire, and let me not sink: let me be delivered from them that hate me, and out of the deep waters.
- 15** Let not the waterflood overflow me, neither let the deep swallow me up, and let not the pit shut her mouth upon me.
- 16** Hear me, O YAHWEH; for thy lovingkindness *is* good: turn unto me according to the multitude of thy tender mercies.
- 17** And hide not thy face from thy servant; for I am in trouble: hear me speedily.
- 18** Draw nigh unto my being, *and* redeem it: deliver me because of mine enemies.
- 19** You have known my reproach, and my shame, and my dishonour: mine adversaries *are* all before you.
- 20** Reproach has broken my heart; and I am full of heaviness: and I looked *for some* to take pity, but *there was* none; and for comforters, but I found none. [Matt 27:39]; [Mark 15:29];
- 21** They gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink. Matt 27:34; Matt 27:48; Mark 15:23; John 19:28-29; [Matt 27:33]; [Mark 15:36]; [John 19:28];

He devotes his enemies to destruction

- 22** Let their table become a snare before them: and *that which should have been* for *their* welfare, *let it become* a trap. Rom 11:9;
- 23** Let their eyes be darkened, that they see not; and make their loins continually to shake. Isa 6:9; Isa 29:10; Isa 44:18; Rom 11:10;

- 24** Pour out thine indignation upon them, and let thy wrathful anger take hold of them.
- 25** Let their habitation be desolate; *and* let none dwell in their tents. [Acts 1:20](#); [\[Matt 23:38\]](#); [\[Luke 13:35\]](#);
- 26** For they persecute *him* whom you have smitten; and they talk to the grief of those whom you have wounded.
- 27** Add iniquity unto their iniquity: and let them not come into thy righteousness.
- 28** Let them be blotted out of the book of the living, and not be written with the righteous. [\[Phil 4:3\]](#); [\[Rev 3:5\]](#); [\[Rev 20:12\]](#); [\[Rev 21:27\]](#);
- 29** But I *am* poor and sorrowful: let thy salvation, O Elohim, set me up on high.

He praises Elohim with thanksgiving

- 30** I will praise the name of Elohim with a song, and will magnify him with thanksgiving.
- 31** *This* also shall please the YAHWEH better than an ox *or* bullock that has horns and hoofs.
- 32** The humble shall see *this, and* be glad: and your heart shall live that seek Elohim.
- 33** For the YAHWEH heareth the poor, and despiseth not his prisoners.
- 34** Let the heaven and earth praise him, the seas, and every thing that moves therein.
- 35** For Elohim will save Zion, and will build the cities of Judah: that they may dwell there, and have it in possession.
- 36** The seed also of his servants shall inherit it: and they that love his name shall dwell therein.

PSALM SEVENTY

*To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of David,
to bring to remembrance.*

**David solicits Elohim to the speedy destruction of the wicked, and
preservation of the godly**

1 To the chief Musician, *A Psalm* of David, to bring to remembrance. *Make haste*, O Elohim, to deliver me; make haste to help me, O YAHWEH. [Ps 40:13](#);

2 Let them be ashamed and confounded that seek after my being: let them be turned backward, and put to confusion, that desire my hurt. [Ps 35:4](#); [Ps 35:26](#); [Ps 71:13](#); [[Ps 40:14](#)];

3 Let them be turned back for a reward of their shame that say, Aha, aha.

4 Let all those that seek you rejoice and be glad in you: and let such as love thy salvation say continually, Let Elohim be magnified.

5 But I *am* poor and needy: make haste unto me, O Elohim: you are my help and my deliverer; O YAHWEH, make no tarrying.

David, in confidence of faith, and experience of Elohim's favor, prays both for himself, and against the enemies of his being

1 In you, O YAHWEH, do I put my trust: let me never be put to confusion. [Ps 22:5](#); [Ps 25:2-3](#); [Ps 31:1-2](#); [Isa 49:23](#); [\[Ps 31:1\]](#);

2 Deliver me in thy righteousness, and cause me to escape: incline thine ear unto me, and save me.

3 Be you my strong habitation, whereunto I may continually resort: you have given commandment to save me; for you are my rock and my fortress.

4 Deliver me, O my Elohim, out of the hand of the wicked, out of the hand of the unrighteous and cruel man.

5 For you are my hope, O Lord GOD: you *are* my trust from my youth.

6 By you have I been holden up from the womb: you are he that took me out of my mother's bowels: my praise *shall be* continually of you.

7 I am as a wonder unto many; but you are my strong refuge.

8 Let my mouth be filled *with* thy praise *and with* thy honour all the day.

9 Cast me not off in the time of old age; forsake me not when my strength faileth.

10 For mine enemies speak against me; and they that lay wait for my being take counsel together,

11 Saying, Elohim has forsaken him: persecute and take him; for *there is* none to deliver *him*.

12 O Elohim, be not far from me: O my Elohim, make haste for my help.

13 Let them be confounded *and* consumed that are adversaries to my being; let them be covered *with* reproach and dishonour that seek my hurt. [Ps 34:3](#); [Ps 40:14](#); [Ps 70:2](#);

He promises constancy

14 But I will hope continually, and will yet praise you more and more.

15 My mouth shall show forth thy righteousness *and* thy salvation all the day; for I know not the numbers *thereof*.

16 I will go in the strength of the Lord GOD: I will make mention of thy righteousness, *even* of thine only.

He prays for perseverance

17 O Elohim, you have taught me from my youth: and hitherto have I declared thy wondrous works.

18 Now also when I am old and grayheaded, O Elohim, forsake me not; until I have showed thy strength unto *this* generation, *and* thy power to every one *that* is to come.

He praises Elohim, and promises to do it cheerfully

19 Thy righteousness also, O Elohim, *is* very high, who have done great things: O Elohim, who *is* like unto you!

20 You, which have showed me great and sore troubles, shall quicken me again, and shall bring me up again from the depths of the earth. [\[Ps 85:6\]](#);

21 You shall increase my greatness, and comfort me on every side.

22 I will also praise you with the psaltery, *even* thy truth, O my Elohim: unto you will I sing with the harp, O you Holy One of Israel.

23 My lips shall greatly rejoice when I sing unto you; and my being, which you have redeemed.

24 My tongue also shall talk of thy righteousness all the day long: for they are confounded, for they are brought unto shame, that seek my hurt.

PSALM SEVENTY-TWO

A Psalm of Solomon.

David, praying for Solomon, shows the goodness and glory of his kingdom, and in type of the Messiah's kingdom

1 *A Psalm* for Solomon. Give the king thy judgments, O Elohim, and thy righteousness unto the king's son.

2 He shall judge thy people with righteousness, and thy poor with judgment.

3 The mountains shall bring peace to the people, and the little hills, by righteousness.

4 He shall judge the poor of the people, he shall save the children of the needy, and shall break in pieces the oppressor.

5 They shall fear you as long as the sun and moon endure, throughout all generations. [Ps 89:36-37](#);

6 He shall come down like rain upon the mown grass: as showers *that* water the earth. [2Sam 23:4](#);

7 In his days shall the righteous flourish; and abundance of peace so long as the moon endureth.

8 He shall have dominion also from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth. [\[Ps 2:8\]](#);

9 They that dwell in the wilderness shall bow before him; and his enemies shall lick the dust. [\[Mic 7:17\]](#);

10 The kings of Tarshish and of the isles shall bring presents: the kings of Sheba and Seba shall offer gifts. [\[Ps 45:12\]](#); [\[Ps 68:29\]](#);

11 Yes, all kings shall fall down before him: all nations shall serve him. [\[Ps 22:27\]](#);

12 For he shall deliver the needy when he cries; the poor also, and *him* that has no helper. [Job 29:12](#); [\[Luke 1:70\]](#);

13 He shall spare the poor and needy, and shall save the beings of the needy.

14 He shall redeem their being from deceit and violence: and precious shall their blood be in his sight.

15 And he shall live, and to him shall be given of the gold of Sheba: prayer also shall be made for him continually; *and* daily shall he be praised.

16 There shall be a handful of grain in the earth upon the top of the mountains; the fruit thereof shall shake like Lebanon: and *they* of the city shall flourish like grass of the earth. [\[Isa 27:6\]](#);

17 His name shall endure for ever: his name shall be continued as long as the sun: and *men* shall be blessed in him: all nations shall call him blessed.

He blesses Elohim

18 Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim, the Elohim of Israel, who only doeth wondrous things. [\[Job 5:9\]](#); [\[Job 9:10\]](#);

19 And blessed *be* his glorious name for ever: and let the whole earth be filled *with* his glory; Amen, and Amen.

20 The prayers of David the son of Jesse are ended.

A Psalm of Asaph.

The prophet, prevailing in a temptation

1 A Psalm of Asaph. Truly Elohim *is* good to Israel, *even* to such as are of a clean heart.

shews the occasion thereof, the prosperity of the wicked

2 But as for me, my feet were almost gone; my steps had well nigh slipped.

3 For I was envious at the foolish, *when* I saw the prosperity of the wicked. [Job 21:7](#); [Ps 37:1](#); [Jer 12:1-2](#); [\[Prov 3:31\]](#); [\[Prov 23:17\]](#); [\[Prov 24:19\]](#);

4 For *there are* no bands in their death: but their strength *is* firm.

5 They *are* not in trouble *as other* men; neither are they plagued like *other* men.

6 Therefore pride compasses them about as a chain; violence covereth them *as* a garment.

7 Their eyes stand out with fatness: they have more than heart could wish.

8 They are corrupt, and speak wickedly *concerning* oppression: they speak loftily.

9 They set their mouth against the heavens, and their tongue walketh through the earth.

10 Therefore his people return hither: and waters of a full *cup* are wrung out to them.

11 And they say, How does Elohim know? and is there knowledge in the most High? [\[Job 12:6\]](#); [\[Jer 12:1\]](#);

12 Behold, these *are* the ungodly, who prosper in the world; they increase *in* riches. [\[Job 21:7\]](#); [\[Eccl 9:2\]](#);

the wound given thereby, diffidence

13 Verily I have cleansed my heart *in* vain, and washed my hands in innocence.

14 For all the day long have I been plagued, and chastened every morning.

the victory over it, knowledge of Elohim's purpose, in destroying the wicked, and sustaining the righteous

15 If I say, I will speak thus; behold, I should offend *against* the generation of thy children.

16 When I thought to know this, it *was* too painful for me;

17 Until I went into the sanctuary of Elohim; *then* understood I their end.

18 Surely you didst set them in slippery places: you castedst them down into destruction. [\[Jer 23:12\]](#);

19 How are they *brought* into desolation, as in a moment! they are utterly consumed with terrors.

20 As a dream when *one* awaketh; *so*, O Lord, when you awake, you shall despise their image.

21 Thus my heart was grieved, and I was pricked in my reins.

22 So foolish *was* I, and ignorant: I was *as* a beast before you.

23 Nevertheless I *am* continually with you: you have holden *me* by my right hand.

24 *you* shall guide me with thy counsel, and afterward receive me *to* glory.

25 Whom have I in heaven *but you?* and *there is* none upon earth *that* I desire beside you.

26 My flesh and my heart faileth: *but* Elohim *is* the strength of my heart, and my portion for ever.

27 For, lo, they that are far from you shall perish: you have destroyed all them that go a whoring from you. [\[Isa 1:28\]](#); [\[Jer 17:13\]](#);

28 But *it is* good for me to draw near to Elohim: I have put my trust in the Lord GOD, that I may declare all thy works.

PSALM SEVENTY-FOUR

An Instruction of Asaph.

The prophet complains of the desolation of the sanctuary

- 1** Maschil of Asaph. O Elohim, why have you cast *us* off for ever? *why* does thine anger smoke against the sheep of thy pasture? [Ps 44:9];
- 2** Remember thy congregation, *which* you have purchased of old; the rod of thine inheritance, *which* you have redeemed; this mount Zion, wherein you have dwelt. [Jer 10:16];
- 3** Lift up thy feet unto the perpetual desolations; *even* all *that* the enemy has done wickedly in the sanctuary.
- 4** Thine enemies roar in the midst of thy congregations; they set up their ensigns *for* signs.
- 5** *A man* was famous according as he had lifted up axes upon the thick trees.
- 6** But now they break down the carved work thereof at once with axes and hammers.
- 7** They have cast fire into thy sanctuary, they have defiled *by casting down* the dwelling place of thy name to the ground. 2Kgs 25:9; [Isa 63:18];
- 8** They said in their hearts, Let us destroy them together: they have burned up all the synagogues of Elohim in the land.
- 9** We see not our signs: *there is* no more any prophet: neither *is there* among us any that knoweth how long.

He moves Elohim to help in consideration of his power

- 10** O Elohim, how long shall the adversary reproach? shall the enemy blaspheme thy name for ever?
- 11** Why withdrawest you thy hand, even thy right hand? pluck *it* out of thy bosom.
- 12** For Elohim *is* my King of old, working salvation in the midst of the earth.
- 13** You didst divide the sea by thy strength: you brakest the heads of the dragons in the waters. Exod 14:21; [Exod 15:10]; [Ezek 29:3];
- 14** You brakest the heads of leviathan in pieces, *and* gave him *to be* meat to the people inhabiting the wilderness.
- 15** You didst cleave the fountain and the flood: you driedst up mighty rivers. Exod 17:5-6; Num 20:11; Ps 105:41; Isa 48:21; Josh 3:13;
- 16** The day *is* thine, the night also *is* thine: you have prepared the light and the sun. Gen 1:14;
- 17** You have set all the borders of the earth: you have made summer and winter.

of his reproachful enemies, of his children, and of his covenant

- 18** Remember this, *that* the enemy has reproached, O YAHWEH, and *that* the foolish people have blasphemed thy name.
- 19** O deliver not the being of thy turtledove unto the multitude *of the wicked*: forget not the congregation of thy poor for ever.
- 20** Have respect unto the covenant: for the dark places of the earth are full of the habitations of cruelty.
- 21** O let not the oppressed return ashamed: let the poor and needy praise thy name.
- 22** Arise, O Elohim, plead thine own cause: remember how the foolish man reproacheth you daily.
- 23** Forget not the voice of thine enemies: the tumult of those that rise up against you increaseth continually.

PSALM SEVENTY-FIVE

*To the Chief Musician. "Do not
destroy." A Psalm of Asaph. A Song.*

The prophet praises Elohim

1 To the chief Musician, Altaschith, A Psalm *or* Song of Asaph. Unto you, O Elohim, do we give thanks, *unto you* do we give thanks: for *that* thy name is near thy wondrous works declare.

He promises to judge uprightly

2 When I shall receive the congregation I will judge uprightly.

3 The earth and all the inhabitants thereof are dissolved: I bear up the pillars of it. Selah.

He rebukes the proud by consideration of Elohim's providence

4 I said unto the fools, Deal not foolishly: and to the wicked, Lift not up the horn:

5 Lift not up your horn on high: speak *not with* a stiff neck.

6 For promotion *cometh* neither from the east, nor from the west, nor from the south.

7 But Elohim *is* the judge: he puts down one, and setteth up another.

8 For in the hand of the YAHWEH *there is* a cup, and the wine is red; it is full of mixture; and he poureth out of the same: but the dregs thereof, all the wicked of the earth shall wring *them* out, *and* drink *them*.

He praises Elohim, and promises to execute justice

9 But I will declare for ever; I will sing praises to the Elohim of Jacob.

10 All the horns of the wicked also will I cut off; *but* the horns of the righteous shall be exalted.

PSALM SEVENTY-SIX

*To the Chief Musician.
For stringed instruments.
A Psalm of Asaph. A Song.*

A declaration of Elohim's majesty in the church

- 1** To the chief Musician on Neginoth, A Psalm *or* Song of Asaph. In Judah *is* Elohim known: his name *is* great in Israel.
- 2** In Salem also is his tabernacle, and his dwelling place in Zion.
- 3** There brake he the arrows of the bow, the shield, and the sword, and the battle. Selah.
- 4** You are more glorious *and* excellent than the mountains of prey.
- 5** The stouthearted are spoiled, they have slept their sleep: and none of the men of might have found their hands.
- 6** At thy rebuke, O Elohim of Jacob, both the chariot and horse are cast into a dead sleep.
- 7** You, *even* you, are to be feared: and who may stand in thy sight when once you are angry?
- 8** You didst cause judgment to be heard from heaven; the earth feared, and was still,
- 9** When Elohim arose to judgment, to save all the meek of the earth. Selah.
- 10** Surely the wrath of man shall praise you: the remainder of wrath shall you restrain.

An exhortation to serve him reverently

- 11** Vow, and pay unto the YAHWEH your Elohim: let all that be round about him bring presents unto him that ought to be feared. [Ps 50:14]; [Ps 68:29];
- 12** He shall cut off the spirit of princes: *he is* terrible to the kings of the earth.

PSALM SEVENTY-SEVEN

*To the Chief Musician. To Jeduthun.
A Psalm of Asaph.*

The psalmist shows what fierce combat he had with diffidence

- 1** To the chief Musician, to Jeduthun, A Psalm of Asaph. I cried unto Elohim with my voice, *even* unto Elohim with my voice; and he gave ear unto me.
- 2** In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my being refused to be comforted.
- 3** I remembered Elohim, and was troubled: I complained, and my spirit was overwhelmed. Selah. [Ps 142:3];
- 4** You holdest mine eyes waking: I am so troubled that I cannot speak.
- 5** I have considered the days of old, the years of ancient times. [Ps 143:5];
- 6** I call to remembrance my song in the night: I commune with mine own heart: and my spirit made diligent search.
- 7** Will the Lord cast off for ever? and will he be favorable no more?
- 8** Is his mercy clean gone for ever? does *his* promise fail for evermore?
- 9** Has Elohim forgotten to be gracious? has he in anger shut up his tender mercies? Selah.

The victory which he had by consideration of Elohim's great and gracious works

- 10** And I said, This *is* my infirmity: *but I will remember* the years of the right hand of the most High. [Ps 143:5];
- 11** I will remember the works of the YAHWEH: surely I will remember thy wonders of old.
- 12** I will meditate also of all thy work, and talk of thy doings.
- 13** Thy way, O Elohim, *is* in the sanctuary: who *is so* great a Elohim as *our* Elohim?
- 14** You are the Elohim that does wonders: you have declared thy strength among the people. Exod 15:11; [Job 9:10];
- 15** You have with *thine* arm redeemed thy people, the sons of Jacob and Joseph. Selah.
- 16** The waters saw you, O Elohim, the waters saw you; they were afraid: the depths also were troubled. Exod 14:21; [Ps 97:4];
- 17** The clouds poured out water: the skies sent out a sound: thine arrows also went abroad. Exod 14:24;
- 18** The voice of thy thunder *was* in the heaven: the lightnings lightened the world: the earth trembled and shook.
- 19** Thy way *is* in the sea, and thy path in the great waters, and thy footsteps are not known. [Exod 14:29];
- 20** You leddest thy people like a flock by the hand of Moses and Aaron. Ps 78:52; Ps 80:1; [Exod 15:13];

PSALM SEVENTY-EIGHT

An instruction of Asaph.

An exhortation both to learn and to preach, the law of Elohim

- 1** Maschil of Asaph. Give ear, O my people, *to* my law: incline your ears to the words of my mouth.
- 2** I will open my mouth in a parable: I will utter dark sayings of old: [Ps 49:4](#); [Matt 13:35](#);
- 3** Which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told us.
- 4** We will not hide *them* from their children, showing to the generation to come the praises of the YAHWEH, and his strength, and his wonderful works that he has done. [\[Eph 6:4\]](#);
- 5** For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known to their children: [Deut 4:9](#); [Deut 6:7](#);
- 6** That the generation to come might know *them*, *even* the children *which* should be born; *who* should arise and declare *them* to their children:
- 7** That they might set their hope in Elohim, and not forget the works of Elohim, but keep his commandments:
- 8** And might not be as their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation; a generation *that* set not their heart aright, and whose spirit was not stedfast with Elohim. [Exod 32:9](#); [Exod 33:3](#); [Exod 33:5](#); [Exod 34:9](#); [Deut 9:6](#); [Deut 9:13](#); [Deut 31:27](#); [\[Isa 1:4\]](#);

The story of Elohim's wrath against the incredulous and disobedient

- 9** The children of Ephraim, *being* armed, *and* carrying bows, turned back in the day of battle.
- 10** They kept not the covenant of Elohim, and refused to walk in his law;
- 11** And forgot his works, and his wonders that he had showed them.
- 12** Marvellous things did he in the sight of their fathers, in the land of Egypt, *in* the field of Zoan.
- 13** He divided the sea, and caused them to pass through; and he made the waters to stand as a heap. [Exod 14:21](#); [\[Ps 136:13\]](#); [\[1Cor 10:1\]](#);
- 14** In the daytime also he led them with a cloud, and all the night with a light of fire. [Exod 13:21](#); [Ps 105:39](#); [\[Exod 40:38\]](#); [\[1Cor 10:1\]](#);
- 15** He clave the rocks in the wilderness, and gave *them* drink as *out of* the great depths. [Exod 17:6](#); [Num 20:11](#); [Ps 105:41](#); [1Cor 10:4](#); [\[Num 20:8\]](#); [\[Deut 8:15\]](#);
- 16** He brought streams also out of the rock, and caused waters to run down like rivers.
- 17** And they sinned yet more against him by provoking the most High in the wilderness.
- 18** And they tempted Elohim in their heart by asking meat for their lust. [\[Ps 106:14\]](#);
- 19** *yes*, they spoke against Elohim; they said, Can Elohim furnish a table in the wilderness? [Num 11:1](#); [Num 11:4](#);
- 20** Behold, he smote the rock, that the waters gushed out, and the streams overflowed; can he give bread also? can he provide flesh for his people? [Exod 17:6](#); [Num 20:11](#);
- 21** Therefore the YAHWEH heard *this*, and was wroth: so a fire was kindled against Jacob, and anger also came up against Israel; [Num 11:1](#);
- 22** Because they believed not in Elohim, and trusted not in his salvation:
- 23** Though he had commanded the clouds from above, and opened the doors of heaven,
- 24** And had rained down manna upon them to eat, and had given them of the grain of heaven. [Exod 16:14](#); [\[Exod 16:4\]](#); [\[Num 11:7\]](#); [\[John 6:31\]](#); [\[John 6:49\]](#);
- 25** Man did eat angels' food: he sent them meat to the full. [John 6:31](#); [1Cor 10:3](#);
- 26** He caused an east wind to blow in the heaven: and by his power he brought in the south wind. [Num 11:31](#);
- 27** He rained flesh also upon them as dust, and feathered fowls like as the sand of the sea:

28 And he let *it* fall in the midst of their camp, round about their habitations.
29 So they did eat, and were well filled: for he gave them their own desire;
30 They were not estranged from their lust. But while their meat *was* yet in their mouths, [\[Num 11:33\]](#); [\[Ps 106:15\]](#);
31 The wrath of Elohim came upon them, and slew the fattest of them, and smote down the chosen *men* of Israel. [Num 11:33](#); [1Cor 10:5](#);
32 For all this they sinned still, and believed not for his wondrous works.
33 Therefore their days did he consume in vanity, and their years in trouble.
34 When he slew them, then they sought him: and they returned and enquired early after Elohim.
35 And they remembered that Elohim *was* their rock, and the high Elohim their redeemer.
36 Nevertheless they did flatter him with their mouth, and they lied unto him with their tongues.
37 For their heart was not right with him, neither were they stedfast in his covenant.
38 But he, *being* full of compassion, forgave *their* iniquity, and destroyed *them* not: yes, many a time turned he his anger away, and did not stir up all his wrath.
39 For he remembered that they *were but* flesh; a wind that passeth away, and cometh not again.
40 How oft did they provoke him in the wilderness, *and* grieve him in the desert!
41 Yes, they turned back and tempted Elohim, and limited the Holy One of Israel.
42 They remembered not his hand, *nor* the day when he delivered them from the enemy.
43 How he had wrought his signs in Egypt, and his wonders in the field of Zoan: [\[Ps 136:10\]](#);
44 And had turned their rivers into blood; and their floods, that they could not drink. [Exod 7:20](#);
45 He sent different sorts of flies among them, which devoured them; and frogs, which destroyed them. [Exod 8:24](#); [Exod 8:6](#);
46 He gave also their increase unto the caterpillar, and their labour unto the locust. [Exod 10:13](#);
47 He destroyed their vines with hail, and their sycomore trees with frost. [Exod 9:23](#);
48 He gave up their cattle also to the hail, and their flocks to hot thunderbolts.
49 He cast upon them the fierceness of his anger, wrath, and indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels *among them*.
50 He made a way to his anger; he spared not their being from death, but gave their life over to the pestilence; [Exod 9:6](#);
51 And smote all the firstborn in Egypt; the chief of *their* strength in the tabernacles of Ham: [Exod 12:29](#); [\[Ps 135:8\]](#); [\[Ps 136:10\]](#);
52 But made his own people to go forth like sheep, and guided them in the wilderness like a flock. [\[Ps 77:20\]](#);
53 And he led them on safely, so that they feared not: but the sea overwhelmed their enemies. [Exod 14:27-28](#); [Exod 15:10](#); [\[Exod 14:28\]](#); [\[Ps 136:16\]](#);
54 And he brought them to the border of his sanctuary, *even to* this mountain, *which* his right hand had purchased.
55 He cast out the heathen also before them, and divided them an inheritance by line, and made the tribes of Israel to dwell in their tents. [Josh 13:7](#); [Ps 136:21-22](#); [\[Ps 135:12\]](#);
56 Yet they tempted and provoked the most high Elohim, and kept not his testimonies:
57 But turned back, and dealt unfaithfully like their fathers: they were turned aside like a deceitful bow. [\[Isa 63:10\]](#); [\[Hos 7:16\]](#);
58 For they provoked him to anger with their high places, and moved him to jealousy with their graven images. [Deut 32:16](#); [Deut 32:21](#);
59 When Elohim heard *this*, he was wroth, and greatly abhorred Israel:
60 So that he forsook the tabernacle of Shiloh, the tent *which* he placed among men; [\[Exod 29:45\]](#); [\[Jer 7:12\]](#); [\[Jer 26:6\]](#);
61 And delivered his strength into captivity, and his glory into the enemy's hand. [1Sam 4:10-11](#); [\[1Sam 4:11\]](#);
62 He gave his people over also unto the sword; and was wroth with his inheritance.
63 The fire consumed their young men; and their maidens were not given to marriage.

64 Their priests fell by the sword; and their widows made no lamentation. [1Sam 4:11](#); [1Sam 4:18](#); [1Sam 4:19](#); [\[Job 27:15\]](#);

65 Then the Lord awaked as one out of sleep, *and* like a mighty man that shouteth by reason of wine.

66 And he smote his enemies in the hinder parts: he put them to a perpetual reproach. [1Sam 5:6](#); [1Sam 6:4](#);

The Israelites being rejected, Elohim chose Judah, Zion, and David

67 Moreover he refused the tabernacle of Joseph, and chose not the tribe of Ephraim:

68 But chose the tribe of Judah, the mount Zion which he loved.

69 And he built his sanctuary like high *palaces*, like the earth which he has established for ever. [\[Ps 104:5\]](#);

70 He chose David also his servant, and took him from the sheepfolds: [1Sam 16:11](#); [2Sam 7:8](#); [\[1Chr 17:7\]](#);

71 From following the ewes great with young he brought him to feed Jacob his people, and Israel his inheritance. [2Sam 5:2](#); [1Chr 11:2](#);

72 So he fed them according to the integrity of his heart; and guided them by the skilfulness of his hands.

PSALM SEVENTY-NINE

A Psalm of Asaph.

The psalmist complains of the desolation of Jerusalem

- 1** A Psalm of Asaph. O Elohim, the heathen are come into thine inheritance; thy holy temple have they defiled; they have laid Jerusalem on heaps. [\[Ps 137:3\];](#)
- 2** The dead bodies of thy servants have they given *to be* meat unto the fowls of the heaven, the flesh of thy saints unto the beasts of the earth.
- 3** Their blood have they shed like water round about Jerusalem; and *there was* none to bury *them*.
- 4** We are become a reproach to our neighbours, a scorn and derision to them that are round about us. [Ps 44:13; Ps 80:6;](#)
- 5** How long, YAHWEH? will you be angry for ever? shall thy jealousy burn like fire? [Ps 89:46;](#)
- 6** Pour out thy wrath upon the heathen that have not known you, and upon the kingdoms that have not called upon thy name. [Jer 10:25;](#)
- 7** For they have devoured Jacob, and laid waste his dwelling place.

He prays for deliverance

- 8** O remember not against us former iniquities: let thy tender mercies speedily prevent us: for we are brought very low. [Isa 64:9; \[Ps 142:6\];](#)
- 9** Help us, O Elohim of our salvation, for the glory of thy name: and deliver us, and purge away our sins, for thy name's sake.
- 10** Wherefore should the heathen say, Where *is* their Elohim? let him be known among the heathen in our sight *by* the revenging of the blood of thy servants *which is* shed. [\[Joel 2:17\]; \[Mic 7:10\];](#)
- 11** Let the sighing of the prisoner come before you; according to the greatness of thy power preserve you those that are appointed to die;
- 12** And render unto our neighbours sevenfold into their bosom their reproach, wherewith they have reproached you, O Lord.

and promises thankfulness

- 13** So we thy people and sheep of thy pasture will give you thanks for ever: we will show forth thy praise to all generations.

PSALM EIGHTY

*To the Chief Musician.
“A Testimony Concerning the Lilies.”
A Psalm of Asaph.*

The psalmist in his prayer complains of the miseries of the church

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Shoshannimeduth, A Psalm of Asaph. Give ear, O Shepherd of Israel, you that leadest Joseph like a flock; you that dwellest *between* the cherubims, shine forth. [1Sam 4:4]; [Ps 77:20]; [Ps 94:1];
- 2** Before Ephraim and Benjamin and Manasseh stir up thy strength, and come *and* save us.
- 3** Turn us again, O Elohim, and cause thy face to shine; and we shall be saved. Ps 4:6; Ps 31:16; Ps 67:1; Dan 9:17;
- 4** O YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, how long will you be angry against the prayer of thy people?
- 5** You feedest them with the bread of tears; and givest them tears to drink in great measure. [Ps 42:3];
- 6** You makest us a strife unto our neighbours: and our enemies laugh among themselves. Ps 44:13; Ps 79:4;
- 7** Turn us again, O Elohim of hosts, and cause thy face to shine; and we shall be saved.

Elohim's former favors are turned into judgments

- 8** You have brought a vine out of Egypt: you have cast out the heathen, and planted it. [Ps 44:2]; [Isa 5:7]; [Jer 2:21]; [Matt 21:33]; [Mark 12:1]; [Luke 20:9];
- 9** You preparedst *room* before it, and didst cause it to take deep root, and it filled the land.
- 10** The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and the boughs thereof *were like* the goodly cedars.
- 11** She sent out her boughs unto the sea, and her branches unto the river.
- 12** Why have you *then* broken down her hedges, so that all they which pass by the way do pluck her? [Ps 89:41]; [Isa 5:5]; [Hos 2:12]; [Nah 2:2];
- 13** The boar out of the wood wastes it, and the wild beast of the field devours it.

He prays for deliverance

- 14** Return, we beseech you, O Elohim of hosts: look down from heaven, and behold, and visit this vine;
- 15** And the vineyard which thy right hand has planted, and the branch *that* you madest strong for thyself.
- 16** *It is* burned with fire, *it is* cut down: they perish at the rebuke of thy countenance.
- 17** Let thy hand be upon the man of thy right hand, upon the son of man *whom* you madest strong for thyself.
- 18** So will not we go back from you: quicken us, and we will call upon thy name.
- 19** Turn us again, O YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, cause thy face to shine; and we shall be saved.

PSALM EIGHTY-ONE

*To the Chief Musician. On Gittith.
A Psalm of Asaph.*

An exhortation to a solemn praising of Elohim

1 To the chief Musician upon Gittith, *A Psalm* of Asaph. Sing aloud unto Elohim our strength: make a joyful noise unto the Elohim of Jacob.

2 Take a psalm, and bring hither the timbrel, the pleasant harp with the psaltery. [Ps 149:3];

3 Blow up the trumpet in the new moon, on the covered moon, on our solemn feast day.

Elohim challenges that duty by reason of his benefits

4 For this *is* a statute for Israel, *and* a law of the Elohim of Jacob.

5 This he ordained in Joseph *for* a testimony, when he went out through the land of Egypt: *where* I heard a language *that* I understood not.

6 I removed his shoulder from the burden: his hands were delivered from the pots.

7 You calledst in trouble, and I delivered you; I answered you in the secret place of thunder: I proved you at the waters of Meribah. Selah.

Elohim, exhorting to obedience, complains of their disobedience, which proves their own hurt

8 Hear, O my people, and I will testify unto you: O Israel, if you will hearken unto me;

9 There shall no strange god be in you; neither shall you worship any strange god.

10 I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim, which brought you out of the land of Egypt: open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it. [Exod 20:2]; [Deut 5:6];

11 But my people would not hearken to my voice; and Israel would none of me.

12 So I gave them up unto their own hearts' lust: *and* they walked in their own counsels. [Acts 14:16];

13 Oh that my people had hearkened unto me, *and* Israel had walked in my ways! [Isa 48:18];

14 I should soon have subdued their enemies, and turned my hand against their adversaries.

15 The haters of the YAHWEH should have submitted themselves unto him: but their time should have endured for ever.

16 He should have fed them also with the finest of the wheat: and with honey out of the rock should I have satisfied you.

PSALM EIGHTY-TWO

A Psalm of Asaph.

The psalmist, having exhorted the judges

- 1** A Psalm of Asaph. Elohim standeth in the congregation of the mighty; he judgeth among the gods.
- 2** How long will you judge unjustly, and accept the persons of the wicked? Selah.
- 3** Defend the poor and fatherless: do justice to the afflicted and needy. [[Prov 22:22](#)];
- 4** Deliver the poor and needy: rid *them* out of the hand of the wicked. [Prov 24:11](#);

and reproved their negligence

- 5** They know not, neither will they understand; they walk on in darkness: all the foundations of the earth are out of course.
- 6** I have said, you *are* gods; and all of you *are* children of the most High. [[John 10:34](#)];
- 7** But you shall die like men, and fall like one of the princes.

prays Elohim to judge

- 8** Arise, O Elohim, judge the earth: for you shall inherit all nations. [Ps 2:8](#); [Heb 1:2](#);

PSALM EIGHTY-THREE

A Song. A Psalm of Asaph.

A complaint to Elohim of the enemies' conspiracies

- 1** A Song *or* Psalm of Asaph. Keep not you silence, O Elohim: hold not thy peace, and be not still, O Elohim.
- 2** For, lo, thine enemies make a tumult: and they that hate you have lifted up the head.
- 3** They have taken crafty counsel against thy people, and consulted against thy hidden ones.
- 4** They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from *being* a nation; that the name of Israel may be no more in remembrance.
- 5** For they have consulted together with one consent: they are confederate against you:
- 6** The tabernacles of Edom, and the Ishmaelites; of Moab, and the Hagarenes;
- 7** Gebal, and Ammon, and Amalek; the Philistines with the inhabitants of Tyre;
- 8** Assur also is joined with them: they have holpen the children of Lot. Selah.

A prayer against them that oppress the Church

- 9** Do unto them as *unto* the Midianites; as *to* Sisera, as *to* Jabin, at the brook of Kison: [\[Judg 4:7\]](#); [\[Judg 4:15\]](#); [\[Judg 7:22\]](#);
- 10** *Which* perished at Endor: they became *as* dung for the earth.
- 11** Make their nobles like Oreb, and like Zeeb: yes, all their princes as Zebah, and as Zalmunna: [\[Judg 7:25\]](#); [\[Judg 8:12\]](#); [\[Judg 8:21\]](#);
- 12** Who said, Let us take to ourselves the houses of Elohim in possession. [\[Ezek 35:10\]](#);
- 13** O my Elohim, make them like a wheel; as the stubble before the wind. [\[Isa 17:13\]](#);
- 14** As the fire burneth a wood, and as the flame setteth the mountains on fire;
- 15** So persecute them with thy tempest, and make them afraid with thy storm.
- 16** Fill their faces with shame; that they may seek thy name, O YAHWEH.
- 17** Let them be confounded and troubled for ever; yes, let them be put to shame, and perish:
- 18** That *men* may know that you, whose name alone *is* JEHOVAH, are the most high over all the earth.

PSALM EIGHTY-FOUR

*To the Chief Musician. On Gittith.
A Psalm for the sons of Korah.*

The prophet, longing for the communion of the sanctuary

- 1** To the chief Musician upon Gittith, A Psalm for the sons of Korah. How amiable *are* thy tabernacles, O YAHWEH of hosts!
- 2** My being longeth, yes, even fainteth for the courts of the YAHWEH: my heart and my flesh cries out for the living Elohim. [Ps 42:1](#); [Ps 63:1](#);
- 3** Yes, the sparrow has found a house, and the swallow a nest for herself, where she may lay her young, *even* thine altars, O YAHWEH of hosts, my King, and my Elohim.

shews how blessed they are that dwell therein

- 4** Blessed *are* they that dwell in thy house: they will be still praising you. Selah.
- 5** Blessed *is* the man whose strength *is* in you; in whose heart *are* the ways *of them*.
- 6** *Who* passing through the valley of Baca make it a well; the rain also filleth the pools.
- 7** They go from strength to strength, *every one of them* in Zion appeareth before Elohim.

He prays to be restored unto it

- 8** O YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, hear my prayer: give ear, O Elohim of Jacob. Selah.
- 9** Behold, O Elohim our shield, and look upon the face of thine anointed.
- 10** For a day in thy courts *is* better than a thousand. I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my Elohim, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness. [\[Heb 11:25\]](#);
- 11** For the YAHWEH Elohim *is* a sun and shield: the YAHWEH will give grace and glory: no good *thing* will he withhold from them that walk uprightly.
- 12** O YAHWEH of hosts, blessed *is* the man that trusteth in you. [Ps 2:12](#); [Ps 34:8](#);

PSALM EIGHTY-FIVE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm for the sons of Korah.*

The Psalmist, out of the experience of former mercies, prays for the continuance thereof

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm for the sons of Korah. YAHWEH, you have been favorable unto thy land: you have brought back the captivity of Jacob.
- 2** You have forgiven the iniquity of thy people, you have covered all their sin. Selah.
- 3** You have taken away all thy wrath: you have turned *thyself* from the fierceness of thine anger.
- 4** Turn us, O Elohim of our salvation, and cause thine anger toward us to cease.
- 5 will** you be angry with us for ever? will you draw out thine anger to all generations?
- 6 will** you not revive us again: that thy people may rejoice in you? [Ps 71:20](#);
- 7** Show us thy mercy, O YAHWEH, and grant us thy salvation.

He promises to wait thereon, out of confidence of Elohim's goodness

- 8** I will hear what Elohim the YAHWEH will speak: for he will speak peace unto his people, and to his saints: but let them not turn again to folly.
- 9** Surely his salvation *is* nigh them that fear him; that glory may dwell in our land.
- 10** Mercy and truth are met together; righteousness and peace have kissed *each other*. [Heb 7:2](#);
- 11** Truth shall spring out of the earth; and righteousness shall look down from heaven.
- 12** Yes, the YAHWEH shall give *that which is* good; and our land shall yield her increase. [Ps 67:6](#);
- 13** Righteousness shall go before him; and shall set *us* in the way of his steps. [\[Ps 89:14\]](#);

PSALM EIGHTY-SIX

A Prayer of David.

David strengthens his prayer by the consciousness of his religion

- 1** A Prayer of David. Bow down thine ear, O YAHWEH, hear me: for I *am* poor and needy.
2 Preserve my being; for I *am* holy: O you my Elohim, save thy servant that trusteth in you.
3 Be merciful unto me, O Lord: for I cry unto you daily.
4 Rejoice the being of thy servant: for unto you, O Lord, do I lift up my being.

by the goodness and power of Elohim

- 5** For you, Lord, are good, and ready to forgive; and plenteous in mercy unto all them that call upon you. [\[Neh 9:17\]; \[Jonah 4:2\];](#)
6 Give ear, O YAHWEH, unto my prayer; and attend to the voice of my supplications.
7 In the day of my trouble I will call upon you: for you will answer me. [Ps 50:15;](#)
8 Among the gods *there is* none like unto you, O Lord; neither *are there any works* like unto thy works. [Deut 3:24; Ps 136:4; \[1Sam 2:2\]; \[2Sam 7:22\]; \[2Sam 22:32\]; \[1Chr 17:20\]; \[Jer 10:6\];](#)
9 All nations whom you have made shall come and worship before you, O Lord; and shall glorify thy name. [\[Ps 22:27\];](#)
10 For you are great, and do wondrous things: you are Elohim alone. [\[Job 9:10\]; \[Jer 10:6\];](#)

He desires the continuance of former grace

- 11** Teach me thy way, O YAHWEH; I will walk in thy truth: unite my heart to fear thy name. [Ps 25:4; Ps 27:11; Ps 119:33; \[Ps 119:26\];](#)
12 I will praise you, O Lord my Elohim, with all my heart: and I will glorify thy name for evermore.
13 For great *is* thy mercy toward me: and you have delivered my being from the lowest hell.

Complaining of the proud, he craves some token of Elohim's goodness

- 14** O Elohim, the proud are risen against me, and the assemblies of violent *men* have sought after my being; and have not set you before them. [Ps 54:3;](#)
15 But you, O Lord, are a Elohim full of compassion, and gracious, longsuffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth. [Exod 34:6; Num 14:18; Neh 9:17; Ps 103:8; Ps 145:8; Joel 2:13; \[Exod 34:7\]; \[Neh 1:5\]; \[Jer 3:12\];](#)
16 O turn unto me, and have mercy upon me; give thy strength unto thy servant, and save the son of thine handmaid. [\[Ps 143:12\];](#)
17 Show me a token for good; that they which hate me may see *it*, and be ashamed: because you, YAHWEH, have holpen me, and comforted me.

PSALM EIGHTY-SEVEN

A Psalm for the sons of Korah. A Song.

The nature and glory of the church

- 1** A Psalm *or* Song for the sons of Korah. His foundation *is* in the holy mountains. [Ps 68:16];
- 2** The YAHWEH loveth the gates of Zion more than all the dwellings of Jacob.
- 3** Glorious things are spoken of you, O city of Elohim. Selah.

The increase, honour, and comfort of the members thereof

- 4** I will make mention of Rahab and Babylon to them that know me: behold Philistia, and Tyre, with Ethiopia; this *man* was born there.
- 5** And of Zion it shall be said, This and that man was born in her: and the highest himself shall establish her.
- 6** The YAHWEH shall count, when he writeth up the people, *that* this *man* was born there. Selah.
- 7** As well the singers as the players on instruments *shall be there*: all my springs *are* in you.

PSALM EIGHTY-EIGHT

A Song. A Psalm for the sons of Korah. To the Chief Musician. "On Mahalath, to make humble." A Poem of Heman the Ezrahite.

A prayer containing a grievous complaint

- 1** A Song *or* Psalm for the sons of Korah, to the chief Musician upon Mahalath Leannoth, Maschil of Heman the Ezrahite. O YAHWEH Elohim of my salvation, I have cried day *and* night before you:
- 2** Let my prayer come before you: incline thine ear unto my cry;
- 3** For my being is full of troubles: and my life draweth nigh unto the grave.
- 4** I am counted with them that go down into the pit: I am as a man *that has* no strength:
- 5** Free among the dead, like the slain that lie in the grave, whom you rememberest no more: and they are cut off from thy hand.
- 6** You have laid me in the lowest pit, in darkness, in the deeps.
- 7** Thy wrath lies hard upon me, and you have afflicted *me* with all thy waves. Selah.
- 8** You have put away mine acquaintance far from me; you have made me an abomination unto them: *I am* shut up, and I cannot come forth. [Job 19:13]; [Mark 14:50];
- 9** Mine eye mourneth by reason of affliction: YAHWEH, I have called daily upon you, I have stretched out my hands unto you. [Matt 26:56];
- 10 will** you show wonders to the dead? shall the dead arise *and* praise you? Selah.
- 11** Shall thy lovingkindness be declared in the grave? *or* thy faithfulness in destruction?
- 12** Shall thy wonders be known in the dark? and thy righteousness in the land of forgetfulness?
- 13** But unto you have I cried, O YAHWEH; and in the morning shall my prayer prevent you. [Ps 119:147];
- 14** YAHWEH, why castest you off my being? *why* hidest you thy face from me?
- 15** I *am* afflicted and ready to die from *my* youth up: *while* I suffer thy terrors I am distracted.
- 16** Thy fierce wrath goes over me; thy terrors have cut me off.
- 17** They came round about me daily like water; they compassed me about together.
- 18** Lover and friend have you put far from me, *and* mine acquaintance into darkness.

PSALM EIGHTY-NINE

A Poem of Ethan the Ezrahite.

The psalmist praises Elohim for his covenant

1 Maschil of Ethan the Ezrahite. I will sing of the mercies of the YAHWEH for ever: with my mouth will I make known thy faithfulness to all generations.

2 For I have said, Mercy shall be built up for ever: thy faithfulness shall you establish in the very heavens.

3 I have made a covenant with my chosen, I have sworn unto David my servant, [\[Ezek 37:26\]](#);

4 Thy seed will I establish for ever, and build up thy throne to all generations. Selah.

for his wonderful power

5 And the heavens shall praise thy wonders, O YAHWEH: thy faithfulness also in the congregation of the saints. [Ps 19:1](#);

6 For who in the heaven can be compared unto the YAHWEH? *who* among the sons of the mighty can be likened unto the YAHWEH? [\[Deut 3:24\]](#);

7 Elohim is greatly to be feared in the assembly of the saints, and to be had in reverence of all *them that are* about him.

8 O YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, who *is* a strong YAHWEH like unto you? or to thy faithfulness round about you?

9 You rulest the raging of the sea: when the waves thereof arise, you stillest them.

10 You have broken Rahab in pieces, as one that is slain; you have scattered thine enemies with thy strong arm.

11 The heavens *are* thine, the earth also *is* thine: *as for* the world and the fulness thereof, you have founded them. [Ps 24:1-2](#); [\[Gen 1:1\]](#);

12 The north and the south you have created them: Tabor and Hermon shall rejoice in thy name.

13 You have a mighty arm: strong is thy hand, *and* high is thy right hand.

14 Justice and judgment *are* the habitation of thy throne: mercy and truth shall go before thy face. [Ps 97:2](#); [Ps 85:13](#);

for the care of his church

15 Blessed *is* the people that know the joyful sound: they shall walk, O YAHWEH, in the light of thy countenance.

16 In thy name shall they rejoice all the day: and in thy righteousness shall they be exalted.

17 For you are the glory of their strength: and in thy favor our horn shall be exalted.

18 For the YAHWEH *is* our defence; and the Holy One of Israel *is* our king.

for his favor to the kingdom of David

19 Then you spokest in vision to thy holy one, and saidst, I have laid help upon *one that is* mighty; I have exalted *one* chosen out of the people.

20 I have found David my servant; with my holy oil have I anointed him: [1Sam 16:1](#); [1Sam 16:13](#); [\[Acts 7:46\]](#); [\[Acts 13:22\]](#);

21 With whom my hand shall be established: mine arm also shall strengthen him.

22 The enemy shall not exact upon him; nor the son of wickedness afflict him. [2Sam 7:10](#);

23 And I will beat down his foes before his face, and plague them that hate him.
24 But my faithfulness and my mercy *shall be* with him: and in my name shall his horn be exalted. [1Sam 2:10];
25 I will set his hand also in the sea, and his right hand in the rivers.
26 He shall cry unto me, you are my father, my Elohim, and the rock of my salvation. 2Sam 7:14; Heb 1:4-5; [1Chr 17:13];
27 Also I will make him *my* firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth.
28 My mercy will I keep for him for evermore, and my covenant shall stand fast with him. [1Chr 17:13];
29 His seed also will I make *to endure* for ever, and his throne as the days of heaven. [1Kgs 9:6];
30 If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments; 2Sam 7:14;
31 If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments;
32 Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes.
33 Nevertheless my lovingkindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail.
34 My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips.
35 Once have I sworn by my holiness that I will not lie unto David. Heb 6:13; Heb 6:17-18;
36 His seed shall endure for ever, and his throne as the sun before me. [Ps 72:5]; [Luke 1:33]; [John 12:34];
37 It shall be established for ever as the moon, and *as* a faithful witness in heaven. Selah.

Then complaining of contrary events

38 But you have cast off and abhorred, you have been wroth with thine anointed. [Ps 44:9];
39 You have made void the covenant of thy servant: you have profaned his crown *by casting it* to the ground.
40 You have broken down all his hedges; you have brought his strong holds to ruin.
41 All that pass by the way spoil him: he is a reproach to his neighbours. Ps 80:12;
42 You have set up the right hand of his adversaries; you have made all his enemies to rejoice.
43 You have also turned the edge of his sword, and have not made him to stand in the battle.
44 You have made his glory to cease, and cast his throne down to the ground.
45 The days of his youth have you shortened: you have covered him with shame. Selah.

he expostulates, prays, and blesses Elohim

46 How long, YAHWEH? will you hide thyself for ever? shall thy wrath burn like fire? [Ps 79:5];
47 Remember how short my time is: wherefore have you made all men in vain?
48 What man *is he that* liveth, and shall not see death? shall he deliver his being from the hand of the grave? Selah. Ps 49:9; Ps 49:15;
49 Lord, where *are* thy former lovingkindnesses, *which* you swore unto David in thy truth? 2Sam 7:15;
50 Remember, Lord, the reproach of thy servants; *how* I do bear in my bosom *the reproach of* all the mighty people;
51 Wherewith thine enemies have reproached, O YAHWEH; wherewith they have reproached the footsteps of thine anointed.
52 Blessed *be* the YAHWEH for evermore. Amen, and Amen.

A Prayer of Moses, the man of Elohim.

Moses, setting forth Elohim's providence

- 1** A Prayer of Moses the man of Elohim. Lord, you have been our dwelling place in all generations.
2 Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever you hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, you are Elohim. [Job 36:26];

complains of human fragility

- 3** You turnest man to destruction; and sayest, Return, you children of men.
4 For a thousand years in thy sight *are but* as yosterday when it is past, and *as* a watch in the night. [Ps 119:148]; [2Pet 3:8];
5 You carriest them away as with a flood; they are *as* a sleep: in the morning *they are* like grass *which* groweth up. [Job 7:7]; [Job 14:1]; [Ps 103:15]; [Isa 40:6]; [Isa 64:6];
6 In the morning it flourisheth, and groweth up; in the evening it is cut down, and withereth. [Job 14:2];

divine chastisements

- 7** For we are consumed by thine anger, and by thy wrath are we troubled.
8 You have set our iniquities before you, our secret *sins* in the light of thy countenance.
9 For all our days are passed away in thy wrath: we spend our years as a tale *that is told*. [1Chr 29:15]; [Job 7:7]; [Job 14:1];

and brevity of life

- 10** The days of our years *are* threescore years and ten; and if by reason of strength *they be* fourscore years, yet *is* their strength labour and sorrow; for it is soon cut off, and we fly away. [Job 14:2]; [1John 2:17];
11 Who knoweth the power of thine anger? even according to thy fear, *so is* thy wrath.

He prays for the knowledge and sensible experience of Elohim's good providence

- 12** So teach *us* to number our days, that we may apply *our* hearts unto wisdom.
13 Return, O YAHWEH, how long? and let it repent you concerning thy servants.
14 O satisfy us early with thy mercy; that we may rejoice and be glad all our days.
15 Make us glad according to the days *wherein* you have afflicted us, *and* the years *wherein* we have seen evil.
16 Let thy work appear unto thy servants, and thy glory unto their children.
17 And let the beauty of the YAHWEH our Elohim be upon us: and establish you the work of our hands upon us; yes, the work of our hands establish you it.

PSALM NINETY-ONE

The state of the godly

1 He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty.

2 I will say of the YAHWEH, *He is* my refuge and my fortress: my Elohim; in him will I trust. [Ps 9:9];

Their safety

3 Surely he shall deliver you from the snare of the fowler, *and* from the noisome pestilence. Ps 124:7; [Job 5:19];

4 He shall cover you with his feathers, and under his wings shall you trust: his truth *shall be thy* shield and buckler. Ps 57:1; [Matt 23:37]; [Luke 13:34];

5 You shall not be afraid for the terror by night; *nor* for the arrow *that* flies by day; Job 5:19-20; Prov 3:25; Song 3:8; [Prov 3:24];

6 *Nor* for the pestilence *that* walketh in darkness; *nor* for the destruction *that* wasteth at noonday.

7 A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand; *but* it shall not come nigh you.

8 Only with thine eyes shall you behold and see the reward of the wicked. [Prov 29:16];

Their habitation

9 Because you have made the YAHWEH, *which is* my refuge, *even* the most High, thy habitation;

10 There shall no evil befall you, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling.

Their servants

11 For he shall give his angels charge over you, to keep you in all thy ways. Ps 34:7; Matt 4:6; Luke 4:10; [Prov 3:23]; [Prov 4:12];

12 They shall bear you up in *their* hands, lest you dash thy foot against a stone. Luke 4:11;

13 You shall tread upon the lion and adder: the young lion and the dragon shall you trample under feet. Job 5:22-23;

Their friend; with the effects of them all

14 Because he has set his love upon me, therefore will I deliver him: I will set him on high, because he has known my name.

15 He shall call upon me, and I will answer him: I *will be* with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honour him. [Zech 13:9];

16 With long life will I satisfy him, and show him my salvation.

PSALM NINETY-TWO

A Psalm or Song for the Sabbath Day.

The prophet exhorts to praise Elohim

1 A Psalm *or* Song for the Sabbath day. *It is a good thing* to give thanks unto the YAHWEH, and to sing praises unto thy name, O most High:

2 To show forth thy lovingkindness in the morning, and thy faithfulness every night,

3 Upon an instrument of ten strings, and upon the psaltery; upon the harp with a solemn sound.

for his great works

4 For you, YAHWEH, have made me glad through thy work: I will triumph in the works of thy hands.

5 O YAHWEH, how great are thy works! *and* thy thoughts are very deep.

for his judgments on the wicked

6 A brutish man knoweth not; neither does a fool understand this. [Ps 94:8];

7 When the wicked spring as the grass, and when all the workers of iniquity do flourish; *it is* that they shall be destroyed for ever:

8 But you, YAHWEH, are *most* high for evermore. [Job 36:26];

9 For, lo, thine enemies, O YAHWEH, for, lo, thine enemies shall perish; all the workers of iniquity shall be scattered. [Isa 1:28];

and for his goodness to the godly

10 But my horn shall you exalt like *the horn of* an unicorn: I shall be anointed with fresh oil.

11 Mine eye also shall see *my desire* on mine enemies, *and* mine ears shall hear *my desire* of the wicked that rise up against me.

12 The righteous shall flourish like the palm tree: he shall grow like a cedar in Lebanon. Hos 14:5; Judg 9:15; [Prov 11:28];

13 Those that be planted in the house of the YAHWEH shall flourish in the courts of our Elohim.

14 They shall still bring forth fruit in old age; they shall be fat and flourishing;

15 To show that the YAHWEH *is* upright: *he is* my rock, and *there is* no unrighteousness in him. [Job 34:10];

PSALM NINETY-THREE

The majesty, stability, power, and holiness of the Messiah's kingdom

1 The YAHWEH reigneth, he is clothed with majesty; the YAHWEH is clothed with strength, *wherewith* he has girded himself: the world also is established, that it cannot be moved. [\[Ps 97:1\]](#); [\[Dan 4:3\]](#);

2 Thy throne *is* established of old: you are from everlasting. [\[Job 36:26\]](#);

3 The floods have lifted up, O YAHWEH, the floods have lifted up their voice; the floods lift up their waves.

4 The YAHWEH on high *is* mightier than the noise of many waters, yes, *than* the mighty waves of the sea.

5 Thy testimonies are very sure: holiness becometh thine house, O YAHWEH, for ever.

PSALM NINETY-FOUR

The prophet, calling for justice, complains of tyranny and impiety

1 O YAHWEH Elohim, to whom vengeance belongeth; O Elohim, to whom vengeance belongeth, show thyself. [Deut 33:2](#); [Ps 50:2](#); [Ps 80:1](#);

2 Lift up thyself, you judge of the earth: render a reward to the proud.

3 YAHWEH, how long shall the wicked, how long shall the wicked triumph?

4 *How long* shall they utter *and* speak hard things? *and* all the workers of iniquity boast themselves?

5 They break in pieces thy people, O YAHWEH, and afflict thine heritage.

6 They slay the widow and the stranger, and murder the fatherless.

7 Yet they say, The YAHWEH shall not see, neither shall the Elohim of Jacob regard *it*. [Ps 10:11](#); [Ps 10:13](#); [Ps 59:7](#); [\[Isa 29:15\]](#);

He teaches Elohim's providence

8 Understand, you brutish among the people: and you fools, when will you be wise? [Ps 92:6](#);

9 He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see? [Exod 4:11](#); [\[Prov 20:12\]](#); [\[John 10:21\]](#);

10 He that chastiseth the heathen, shall not he correct? he that teacheth man knowledge, *shall not he know?*

11 The YAHWEH knoweth the thoughts of man, that they *are* vanity. [1Cor 3:20](#);

He shows the blessedness of affliction

12 Blessed *is* the man whom you chastenest, O YAHWEH, and teachest him out of thy law;

13 That you may give him rest from the days of adversity, until the pit be digged for the wicked.

14 For the YAHWEH will not cast off his people, neither will he forsake his inheritance. [1Sam 12:22](#); [Rom 11:1-2](#);

15 But judgment shall return unto righteousness: and all the upright in heart shall follow it.

Elohim is the defender of the afflicted

16 Who will rise up for me against the evildoers? *or* who will stand up for me against the workers of iniquity?

17 Unless the YAHWEH *had been* my help, my being had almost dwelt in silence.

18 When I said, My foot slippeth; thy mercy, O YAHWEH, held me up.

19 In the multitude of my thoughts within me thy comforts delight my being. [\[2Cor 1:5\]](#);

20 Shall the throne of iniquity have fellowship with you, which frameth mischief by a law? [\[Ps 5:9\]](#);

21 They gather themselves together against the being of the righteous, and condemn the innocent blood.

22 But the YAHWEH is my defence; and my Elohim *is* the rock of my refuge.

23 And he shall bring upon them their own iniquity, and shall cut them off in their own wickedness; yes, the YAHWEH our Elohim shall cut them off.

PSALM NINETY-FIVE

An exhortation to praise Elohim

- 1** O come, let us sing unto the YAHWEH: let us make a joyful noise to the rock of our salvation.
2 Let us come before his presence with thanksgiving, and make a joyful noise unto him with psalms.

for his greatness

- 3** For the YAHWEH *is* a great Elohim, and a great King above all gods.
4 In his hand *are* the deep places of the earth: the strength of the hills *is* his also. [Job 26:6](#);
5 The sea *is* his, and he made it: and his hands formed the dry *land*.

and for his goodness

- 6** O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the YAHWEH our maker.
7 For he *is* our Elohim; and we *are* the people of his pasture, and the sheep of his hand. To day if you will hear his voice, [Ps 100:3](#); [Heb 3:7](#); [[Heb 4:7](#)];

and not to tempt him

- 8** Harden not your heart, as in the provocation, *and* as *in* the day of temptation in the wilderness: [Exod 17:7](#); [Num 20:1](#); [Num 20:3](#); [Num 20:13](#); [Deut 6:16](#); [[Ps 106:32](#)];
9 When your fathers tempted me, proved me, and saw my work. [Heb 3:9](#); [[Isa 63:10](#)];
10 Forty years long was I grieved with *this* generation, and said, It *is* a people that do err in their heart, and they have not known my ways: [Heb 3:17](#); [[Num 14:34](#)]; [[Acts 13:18](#)];
11 Unto whom I swore in my wrath that they should not enter into my rest. [[Deut 1:35](#)]; [[Heb 4:3](#)];

PSALM NINETY-SIX

An exhortation to praise Elohim

- 1** O sing unto the YAHWEH a new song: sing unto the YAHWEH, all the earth. [\[Ps 33:3\];](#)
- 2** Sing unto the YAHWEH, bless his name; show forth his salvation from day to day.
- 3** Declare his glory among the heathen, his wonders among all people.

for his greatness

- 4** For the YAHWEH *is* great, and greatly to be praised: he *is* to be feared above all gods.
- 5** For all the gods of the nations *are* idols: but the YAHWEH made the heavens. [\[2Chr 2:12\];](#)
- 6** Honour and majesty *are* before him: strength and beauty *are* in his sanctuary.
- 7** Give unto the YAHWEH, O you kindreds of the people, give unto the YAHWEH glory and strength. [\[Ps 29:1\];](#)

for his kingdom

- 8** Give unto the YAHWEH the glory *due unto* his name: bring an offering, and come into his courts.
- 9** O worship the YAHWEH in the beauty of holiness: fear before him, all the earth. [Ps 29:2;](#)
- 10** Say among the heathen *that* the YAHWEH reigneth: the world also shall be established that it shall not be moved: he shall judge the people righteously. [\[Ps 97:1\];](#)

for his general judgment

- 11** Let the heavens rejoice, and let the earth be glad; let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof. [\[Rev 12:12\];](#)
- 12** Let the field be joyful, and all that *is* therein: then shall all the trees of the wood rejoice
- 13** Before the YAHWEH: for he cometh, for he cometh to judge the earth: he shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth. [Ps 98:9; Rev 19:11; \[Ps 9:8\];](#)

PSALM NINETY-SEVEN

The majesty of Elohim's kingdom

- 1** The YAHWEH reigneth; let the earth rejoice; let the multitude of isles be glad *thereof*. [Ps 93:1](#); [Ps 96:10](#);
- 2** Clouds and darkness *are* round about him: righteousness and judgment *are* the habitation of his throne. [\[Ps 89:14\]](#);
- 3** A fire goes before him, and burneth up his enemies round about.
- 4** His lightnings enlightened the world: the earth saw, and trembled. [Rev 4:5](#); [Ps 77:16](#); [\[Nah 1:5\]](#);
- 5** The hills melted like wax at the presence of the YAHWEH, at the presence of the Lord of the whole earth. [\[Judg 5:5\]](#); [\[Mic 1:4\]](#);
- 6** The heavens declare his righteousness, and all the people see his glory. [Ps 19:1](#); [Ps 50:6](#);

The church rejoices at Elohim's judgments upon idolaters

- 7** Confounded be all they that serve graven images, that boast themselves of idols: worship him, all you gods. [\[Exod 20:4\]](#); [\[Lev 26:1\]](#); [\[Isa 42:17\]](#); [\[Isa 44:11\]](#); [\[Heb 1:6\]](#);
- 8** Zion heard, and was glad; and the daughters of Judah rejoiced because of thy judgments, O YAHWEH.
- 9** For you, YAHWEH, are high above all the earth: you are exalted far above all gods.

An exhortation to godliness and gladness

- 10** You that love the YAHWEH, hate evil: he preserveth the beings of his saints; he delivereth them out of the hand of the wicked. [Amos 5:15](#); [Rom 12:9](#);
- 11** Light is sown for the righteous, and gladness for the upright in heart.
- 12** Rejoice in the YAHWEH, you righteous; and give thanks at the remembrance of his holiness. [\[Ps 30:4\]](#);

PSALM NINETY-EIGHT

A Psalm.

The psalmist exhorts the Jews

- 1** A Psalm. O sing unto the YAHWEH a new song; for he has done marvellous things: his right hand, and his holy arm, has gotten him the victory. [\[Ps 33:3\];](#)
- 2** The YAHWEH has made known his salvation: his righteousness has he openly showed in the sight of the heathen. [\[Isa 52:10\]; \[Luke 2:30\]; \[Luke 3:6\];](#)
- 3** He has remembered his mercy and his truth toward the house of Israel: all the ends of the earth have seen the salvation of our Elohim.

the Gentiles

- 4** Make a joyful noise unto the YAHWEH, all the earth: make a loud noise, and rejoice, and sing praise.
- 5** Sing unto the YAHWEH with the harp; with the harp, and the voice of a psalm.
- 6** With trumpets and sound of cornet make a joyful noise before the YAHWEH, the King.

and all the creatures, to praise Elohim

- 7** Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein.
- 8** Let the floods clap *their* hands: let the hills be joyful together
- 9** Before the YAHWEH; for he cometh to judge the earth: with righteousness shall he judge the world, and the people with equity. [\[Ps 9:8\]; \[Ps 96:13\];](#)

PSALM NINETY-NINE

The prophet, setting forth the kingdom of Elohim in Zion

- 1** The YAHWEH reigneth; let the people tremble: he sitteth *between* the cherubims; let the earth be moved. [1Sam 4:4];
- 2** The YAHWEH *is* great in Zion; and he *is* high above all the people.
- 3** Let them praise thy great and terrible name; *for* it *is* holy.
- 4** The king's strength also loveth judgment; you dost establish equity, you executest judgment and righteousness in Jacob. [Job 37:23];

exhorts all, by the example of their forefathers, to worship Elohim at his holy hill

- 5** Exalt you the YAHWEH our Elohim, and worship at his footstool; *for* he *is* holy.
- 6** Moses and Aaron among his priests, and Samuel among them that call upon his name; they called upon the YAHWEH, and he answered them.
- 7** He spoke unto them in the cloudy pillar: they kept his testimonies, and the ordinance *that* he gave them.
- 8 you** answeredst them, O YAHWEH our Elohim: you were a Elohim that forgavest them, though you tookest vengeance of their inventions.
- 9** Exalt the YAHWEH our Elohim, and worship at his holy hill; for the YAHWEH our Elohim *is* holy.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED

A Psalm of Thanksgiving.

An exhortation to praise Elohim, cheerfully

1 A Psalm of praise. Make a joyful noise unto the YAHWEH, all you lands.

2 Serve the YAHWEH with gladness: come before his presence with singing.

for his greatness

3 Know you that the YAHWEH he *is* Elohim: *it is* he *that* has made us, and not we ourselves; *we are* his people, and the sheep of his pasture. [Ps 95:7](#); [Ezek 34:30-31](#); [[Ps 149:2](#)];

and for his power

4 Enter into his gates with thanksgiving, *and* into his courts with praise: be thankful unto him, *and* bless his name.

5 For the YAHWEH *is* good; his mercy *is* everlasting; and his truth *endureth* to all generations.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-ONE

A Psalm of David.

David makes a vow and profession of godliness

1 A Psalm of David. I will sing of mercy and judgment: unto you, O YAHWEH, will I sing.

2 I will behave myself wisely in a perfect way. O when will you come unto me? I will walk within my house with a perfect heart.

3 I will set no wicked thing before mine eyes: I hate the work of them that turn aside; *it* shall not cleave to me.

4 A froward heart shall depart from me: I will not know a wicked *person*.

5 Whoso privily slandereth his neighbour, him will I cut off: him that has a high look and a proud heart will not I suffer. [\[Ps 131:1\];](#)

6 Mine eyes *shall be* upon the faithful of the land, that they may dwell with me: he that walketh in a perfect way, he shall serve me. [\[Prov 22:11\];](#)

7 He that worketh deceit shall not dwell within my house: he that telleth lies shall not tarry in my sight.

8 I will early destroy all the wicked of the land; that I may cut off all wicked doers from the city of the YAHWEH.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-TWO

*A prayer of the afflicted, when he is
overwhelmed and pours out his
complaint before the YAHWEH.*

The prophet in his prayer makes a grievous complaint

- 1** A Prayer of the afflicted, when he is overwhelmed, and poureth out his complaint before the YAHWEH. Hear my prayer, O YAHWEH, and let my cry come unto you.
- 2** Hide not thy face from me in the day *when* I am in trouble; incline thine ear unto me: in the day *when* I call answer me speedily.
- 3** For my days are consumed like smoke, and my bones are burned as a hearth. [Ps 37:20](#);
- 4** My heart is smitten, and withered like grass; so that I forget to eat my bread.
- 5** By reason of the voice of my groaning my bones cleave to my skin. [\[Job 19:20\]](#);
- 6** I am like a pelican of the wilderness: I am like an owl of the desert. [\[Job 30:29\]](#);
- 7** I watch, and am as a sparrow alone upon the house top.
- 8** Mine enemies reproach me all the day; *and* they that are mad against me are sworn against me.
- 9** For I have eaten ashes like bread, and mingled my drink with weeping,
- 10** Because of thine indignation and thy wrath: for you have lifted me up, and cast me down.
- 11** My days *are* like a shadow that declineth; and I am withered like grass. [\[1Chr 29:15\]](#); [\[Job 7:7\]](#); [\[Job 8:9\]](#); [\[Job 14:1\]](#); [\[Job 14:2\]](#); [\[Ps 144:4\]](#); [\[Isa 40:6\]](#);

He takes comfort in the eternity, and mercy of Elohim

- 12** But you, O YAHWEH, shall endure for ever; and thy remembrance unto all generations. [\[Job 36:26\]](#); [\[Ps 135:13\]](#);
- 13** You shall arise, *and* have mercy upon Zion: for the time to favor her, yes, the set time, is come.
- 14** For thy servants take pleasure in her stones, and favor the dust thereof.
- 15** So the heathen shall fear the name of the YAHWEH, and all the kings of the earth thy glory.
- 16** When the YAHWEH shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory.
- 17** He will regard the prayer of the destitute, and not despise their prayer.

The mercies of Elohim are to be recorded

- 18** This shall be written for the generation to come: and the people which shall be created shall praise the YAHWEH.
- 19** For he has looked down from the height of his sanctuary; from heaven did the YAHWEH behold the earth;
- 20** To hear the groaning of the prisoner; to loose those that are appointed to death;
- 21** To declare the name of the YAHWEH in Zion, and his praise in Jerusalem;
- 22** When the people are gathered together, and the kingdoms, to serve the YAHWEH.

He sustains his weakness by the unchangeableness of Elohim

- 23** He weakened my strength in the way; he shortened my days.
- 24** I said, O my Elohim, take me not away in the midst of my days: thy years *are* throughout all generations.
- 25** Of old have you laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens *are* the work of thy hands. [\[1Sam 2:8\]](#); [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#); [\[Heb 1:10\]](#);

26 They shall perish, but you shall endure: yes, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shall you change them, and they shall be changed: [Heb 1:12](#); [\[Matt 24:35\]](#); [\[Mark 13:31\]](#); [\[Luke 16:17\]](#); [\[Luke 21:33\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:7\]](#);

27 But you are the same, and thy years shall have no end.

28 The children of thy servants shall continue, and their seed shall be established before you.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-THREE

A Psalm of David.

An exhortation to bless Elohim for his mercy

- 1** *A Psalm* of David. Bless the YAHWEH, O my being: and all that is within me, *ble*ss his holy name. [Ps 104:1];
- 2** Bless the YAHWEH, O my being, and forget not all his benefits: [Ps 119:17];
- 3** Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases;
- 4** Who redeemeth thy life from destruction; who crowneth you with lovingkindness and tender mercies;
- 5** Who satisfieth thy mouth with good *things*; *so that* thy youth is renewed like the eagle's.
- 6** The YAHWEH executeth righteousness and judgment for all that are oppressed.
- 7** He made known his ways unto Moses, his acts unto the children of Israel.
- 8** The YAHWEH *is* merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and plenteous in mercy. Exod 34:6; Num 14:18; Deut 5:10; Neh 9:17; Ps 86:15; Ps 145:8; Jer 32:18; [Exod 34:7]; [Neh 1:5]; [Jer 3:12]; [Jas 5:11];
- 9** He will not always chide: neither will he keep *his anger* for ever. Isa 57:16; Jer 3:5;
- 10** He has not dealt with us after our sins; nor rewarded us according to our iniquities.
- 11** For as the heaven is high above the earth, *so* great is his mercy toward them that fear him.
- 12** As far as the east is from the west, *so* far has he removed our transgressions from us.
- 13** Like as a father pitieth *his* children, *so* the YAHWEH pitieth them that fear him.
- 14** For he knoweth our frame; he remembereth that we *are* dust. [John 2:25];

and for the constancy thereof

- 15** *As for* man, his days *are* as grass: as a flower of the field, so he flourisheth. Ps 90:5; Job 14:1-2; Ps 90:5-6; Jas 1:10-11; 1Pet 1:24; [Job 7:7]; [Job 14:1]; [Job 14:2]; [Isa 40:6];
- 16** For the wind passeth over it, and it is gone; and the place thereof shall know it no more.
- 17** But the mercy of the YAHWEH *is* from everlasting to everlasting upon them that fear him, and his righteousness unto children's children; [Ps 25:6];
- 18** To such as keep his covenant, and to those that remember his commandments to do them. Deut 7:9;
- 19** The YAHWEH has prepared his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom ruleth over all.
- 20** Bless the YAHWEH, you his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.
- 21** Bless you the YAHWEH, all you his hosts; you ministers of his, that do his pleasure. Gen 32:2; 1Kgs 22:19; Eph 3:10; Col 1:16;
- 22** Bless the YAHWEH, all his works in all places of his dominion: bless the YAHWEH, O my being.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-FOUR

A meditation upon the mighty power

- 1** Bless the YAHWEH, O my being. O YAHWEH my Elohim, you are very great; you are clothed with honour and majesty. [Ps 103:1](#); [Ps 146:1](#);
- 2** Who coverest *thyself* with light as *with* a garment: who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain: [Gen 1:6](#); [Job 26:7](#); [\[Job 26:9\]](#); [\[Isa 40:22\]](#); [\[Isa 44:24\]](#); [\[Isa 51:13\]](#); [\[Jer 10:12\]](#); [\[Jer 51:15\]](#);
- 3** Who layeth the beams of his chambers in the waters: who maketh the clouds his chariot: who walketh upon the wings of the wind: [Ps 18:10](#); [Isa 19:1](#); [Rev 14:14](#); [\[Prov 30:4\]](#); [\[Amos 9:6\]](#);
- 4** Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire: [Heb 1:7](#);
- 5** *Who* laid the foundations of the earth, *that* it should not be removed for ever. [Job 26:7](#); [Job 38:4-6](#); [Ps 24:2](#); [Ps 78:69](#); [\[1Sam 2:8\]](#); [\[Ps 148:6\]](#); [\[Eccl 1:4\]](#);
- 6** You coveredst it with the deep as *with* a garment: the waters stood above the mountains.

and wonderful providence of Elohim

- 7** At thy rebuke they fled; at the voice of thy thunder they hasted away.
- 8** They go up by the mountains; they go down by the valleys unto the place which you have founded for them.
- 9** You have set a bound that they may not pass over; that they turn not again to cover the earth. [\[Job 26:10\]](#); [\[Job 38:8\]](#); [\[Prov 8:29\]](#); [\[Eccl 1:7\]](#); [\[Jer 5:22\]](#);
- 10** He sendeth the springs into the valleys, *which* run among the hills.
- 11** They give drink to every beast of the field: the wild asses quench their thirst.
- 12** By them shall the fowls of the heaven have their habitation, *which* sing among the branches.
- 13** He watereth the hills from his chambers: the earth is satisfied with the fruit of thy works. [\[Amos 9:6\]](#);
- 14** He causeth the grass to grow for the cattle, and herb for the service of man: that he may bring forth food out of the earth; [\[Gen 1:29\]](#); [\[Gen 1:30\]](#); [\[Ps 147:8\]](#);
- 15** And wine *that* maketh glad the heart of man, *and* oil to make *his* face to shine, and bread *which* strengtheneth man's heart. [\[1Tim 5:23\]](#);
- 16** The trees of the YAHWEH are full *of sap*; the cedars of Lebanon, which he has planted;
- 17** Where the birds make their nests: *as for* the stork, the fir trees *are* her house.
- 18** The high hills *are* a refuge for the wild goats; *and* the rocks for the conies.
- 19** He made the moon to mark the appointed times: the sun knoweth its going down.
- 20** You makest darkness, and it is night: wherein all the beasts of the forest do creep *forth*.
- 21** The young lions roar after their prey, and seek their meat from Elohim. [Job 38:39-40](#); [Isa 31:4](#); [\[Job 38:39\]](#);
- 22** The sun ariseth, they gather themselves together, and lay them down in their dens.
- 23** Man goes forth unto his work and to his labour until the evening.
- 24** O YAHWEH, how manifold are thy works! in wisdom have you made them all: the earth is full of thy riches.
- 25** *So is* this great and wide sea, wherein *are* things creeping innumerable, both small and great beasts.
- 26** There go the ships: *there is* that leviathan, *whom* you have made to play therein.
- 27** These wait all upon you; that you may give *them* their meat in due season. [Ps 145:15](#);
- 28** *That* you givest them they gather: you openest thine hand, they are filled with good.
- 29** You hidest thy face, they are troubled: you takest away their breath, they die, and return to their dust. [Ps 30:7](#); [\[Job 34:14\]](#);
- 30** You sendest forth thy spirit, they are created: and you renewest the face of the earth.

Elohim's glory is eternal

31 The glory of the YAHWEH shall endure for ever: the YAHWEH shall rejoice in his works.

32 He looketh on the earth, and it trembleth: he toucheth the hills, and they smoke. [\[Ps 144:5\];](#)

The prophet vows perpetually to praise Elohim

33 I will sing unto the YAHWEH as long as I live: I will sing praise to my Elohim while I have my being. [Ps 63:4; Ps 146:2;](#)

34 My meditation of him shall be sweet: I will be glad in the YAHWEH.

35 Let the sinners be consumed out of the earth, and let the wicked be no more. Bless you the YAHWEH, O my being. Praise you the YAHWEH. [\[Prov 2:22\]; \[Isa 1:28\];](#)

An exhortation to praise Elohim, and to seek out his works

- 1** O give thanks unto the YAHWEH; call upon his name: make known his deeds among the people.
- 2** Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him: talk you of all his wondrous works.
- 3** Glory you in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the YAHWEH. [Ps 34:2](#);
- 4** Seek the YAHWEH, and his strength: seek his face evermore.
- 5** Remember his marvellous works that he has done; his wonders, and the judgments of his mouth;
- 6** O you seed of Abraham his servant, you children of Jacob his chosen.

The story of Elohim's providence over Abraham

- 7** He *is* the YAHWEH our Elohim: his judgments *are* in all the earth. [\[Dan 9:15\]](#);
- 8** He has remembered his covenant for ever, the word *which* he commanded to a thousand generations. [\[Exod 12:30\]](#);
- 9** Which *covenant* he made with Abraham, and his oath unto Isaac; [\[Luke 1:73\]](#); [\[Heb 6:14\]](#);
- 10** And confirmed the same unto Jacob for a law, *and* to Israel *for* an everlasting covenant: [1Chr 16:17](#); [Gen 28:13](#); [Gen 35:11](#);
- 11** Saying, Unto you will I give the land of Canaan, the lot of your inheritance: [Gen 13:15](#); [Gen 15:18](#); [\[Gen 15:7\]](#);
- 12** When they were *but* a few men in number; yes, very few, and strangers in it. [1Chr 16:19](#);
- 13** When they went from one nation to another, from *one* kingdom to another people;
- 14** He suffered no man to do them wrong: yes, he reprov'd kings for their sakes; [Gen 35:5](#); [\[Gen 12:17\]](#);
- 15** *Saying*, Touch not mine anointed, and do my prophets no harm.

over Joseph

- 16** Moreover he called for a famine upon the land: he brake the whole staff of bread. [\[Gen 41:54\]](#); [\[Acts 7:11\]](#);
- 17** He sent a man before them, *even* Joseph, *who* was sold for a servant: [Gen 37:28](#); [Gen 37:36](#); [Gen 45:5](#); [\[Gen 39:1\]](#); [\[Gen 45:4\]](#); [\[Acts 7:9\]](#);
- 18** Whose feet they hurt with fetters: he was laid in iron: [\[Gen 39:20\]](#);
- 19** Until the time that his word came: the word of the YAHWEH tried him.
- 20** The king sent and loosed him; *even* the ruler of the people, and let him go free. [\[Gen 41:14\]](#);
- 21** He made him lord of his house, and ruler of all his substance: [Gen 41:40](#);
- 22** To bind his princes at his pleasure; and teach his senators wisdom. [\[Gen 41:38\]](#);

over Jacob in Egypt

- 23** Israel also came into Egypt; and Jacob sojourned in the land of Ham. [\[Gen 46:4\]](#);
- 24** And he increased his people greatly; and made them stronger than their enemies. [Exod 1:7](#); [Exod 1:9](#); [\[Exod 1:12\]](#); [\[Acts 7:17\]](#);
- 25** He turned their heart to hate his people, to deal subtilly with his servants. [Exod 1:9-10](#); [Exod 1:12](#);

over Moses delivering the Israelites

- 26** He sent Moses his servant; *and* Aaron whom he had chosen. [Exod 3:10](#); [Exod 4:12](#);
- 27** They showed his signs among them, and wonders in the land of Ham. [Exod 7:9](#); [\[Exod 10:22\]](#);
- 28** He sent darkness, and made it dark; and they rebelled not against his word.
- 29** He turned their waters into blood, and slew their fish. [\[Exod 7:20\]](#);
- 30** Their land brought forth frogs in abundance, in the chambers of their kings.
- 31** He spoke, and there came different sorts of flies, *and* lice in all their coasts. [\[Exod 8:17\]](#); [\[Exod 8:24\]](#);
- 32** He gave them hail for rain, *and* flaming fire in their land.
- 33** He smote their vines also and their fig trees; and brake the trees of their coasts.

34 He spoke, and the locusts came, and caterpillars, and that without number, [\[Exod 10:13\]](#);

35 And did eat up all the herbs in their land, and devoured the fruit of their ground.

36 He smote also all the firstborn in their land, the chief of all their strength. [\[Exod 12:29\]](#);

over the Israelites brought out of Egypt, fed in the wilderness, and planted in Canaan

37 He brought them forth also with silver and gold: and *there was* not one feeble *person* among their tribes. [\[Exod 12:35\]](#); [\[Isa 63:13\]](#);

38 Egypt was glad when they departed: for the fear of them fell upon them. [Exod 12:33](#);

39 He spread a cloud for a covering; and fire to give light in the night. [\[Exod 13:21\]](#); [\[Exod 40:38\]](#); [\[Neh 9:12\]](#); [\[Ps 78:14\]](#); [\[1Cor 10:1\]](#);

40 *The people* asked, and he brought quails, and satisfied them with the bread of heaven. [\[Exod 16:4\]](#); [\[Exod 16:13\]](#); [\[Exod 16:14\]](#);

41 He opened the rock, and the waters gushed out; they ran in the dry places *like* a river. [\[Num 20:8\]](#); [\[Num 20:11\]](#); [\[Ps 74:15\]](#); [\[Ps 78:15\]](#);

42 For he remembered his holy promise, *and* Abraham his servant. [Gen 15:14](#);

43 And he brought forth his people with joy, *and* his chosen with gladness: [Exod 14:8](#); [Num 33:3](#);

44 And gave them the lands of the heathen: and they inherited the labour of the people;

45 That they might observe his statutes, and keep his laws. Praise you the YAHWEH. [Exod 19:4-6](#); [Deut 4:1](#); [Deut 4:40](#); [Deut 6:21-25](#);

The psalmist exhorts to praise Elohim

1 Praise you the YAHWEH. O give thanks unto the YAHWEH; for *he is* good: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [Ps 107:1](#); [Ps 118:1](#); [Ps 136:1](#); [[Ps 25:6](#)];

2 Who can utter the mighty acts of the YAHWEH? *who* can show forth all his praise?

3 Blessed *are* they that keep judgment, *and* he that doeth righteousness at all times.

He prays for pardon of sin, as Elohim pardoned the fathers

4 Remember me, O YAHWEH, with the favor *that you bearest unto* thy people: O visit me with thy salvation;

5 That I may see the good of thy chosen, that I may rejoice in the gladness of thy nation, that I may glory with thine inheritance.

6 We have sinned with our fathers, we have committed iniquity, we have done wickedly. [Lev 26:40](#); [Jer 3:25](#); [Dan 9:5](#); [[Jer 14:20](#)];

The story of the people's rebellion, and Elohim's mercy

7 Our fathers understood not thy wonders in Egypt; they remembered not the multitude of thy mercies; but provoked *him* at the sea, *even* at the Red sea. [Exod 14:11-12](#);

8 Nevertheless he saved them for his name's sake, that he might make his mighty power to be known. [Exod 9:16](#);

9 He rebuked the Red sea also, and it was dried up: so he led them through the depths, as through the wilderness. [Exod 14:21-22](#); [Exod 14:29](#); [[Exod 14:21](#)];

10 And he saved them from the hand of him that hated *them*, and redeemed them from the hand of the enemy.

11 And the waters covered their enemies: there was not one of them left. [Exod 14:27](#); [Exod 15:5](#); [[Exod 14:28](#)]; [[Exod 15:10](#)];

12 Then believed they his words; they sang his praise. [Exod 14:31](#); [Exod 15:1](#);

13 They soon forgot his works; they waited not for his counsel:

14 But lusted exceedingly in the wilderness, and tempted Elohim in the desert. [Exod 16:3](#); [Num 11:4](#); [Num 11:6](#); [Num 11:33](#); [Ps 78:18](#); [1Cor 10:6](#); [[1Cor 10:9](#)];

15 And he gave them their request; but sent leanness into their being. [Num 11:20](#); [Num 11:33](#); [Ps 78:30-31](#); [Isa 10:16](#);

16 They envied Moses also in the camp, *and* Aaron the saint of the YAHWEH. [Num 16:2](#);

17 The earth opened and swallowed up Dathan, and covered the company of Abiram. [Num 16:31-33](#); [Deut 11:6](#); [[Num 16:32](#)];

18 And a fire was kindled in their company; the flame burned up the wicked. [Num 16:35](#); [Num 16:46](#);

19 They made a calf in Horeb, and worshipped the molten image. [Exod 32:4](#); [[Deut 9:8](#)];

20 Thus they changed their glory into the similitude of an ox that eateth grass. [[Jer 2:11](#)];

21 They forgot Elohim their saviour, which had done great things in Egypt; [[Exod 32:11](#)];

22 Wondrous works in the land of Ham, *and* terrible things by the Red sea.

23 Therefore he said that he would destroy them, had not Moses his chosen stood before him in the breach, to turn away his wrath, lest he should destroy *them*. [Exod 32:11](#); [Exod 32:32](#); [Deut 9:13-14](#); [Deut 10:10](#); [[Deut 9:14](#)]; [[Ezek 22:30](#)];

24 Yes, they despised the pleasant land, they believed not his word: [Num 14:1-2](#);

25 But murmured in their tents, *and* hearkened not unto the voice of the YAHWEH. [[1Cor 10:10](#)];

26 Therefore he lifted up his hand against them, to overthrow them in the wilderness: [Num 14:28](#); [[Num 14:27](#)]; [[Heb 3:17](#)]; [[Jude 1:5](#)];

27 To overthrow their seed also among the nations, and to scatter them in the lands. [Ps 44:11](#); [Ezek 20:23](#);

28 They joined themselves also unto Baalpeor, and ate the sacrifices of the dead. [Num 25:3](#); [Num 31:16](#); [Rev 2:14](#); [[Num 25:2](#)]; [[Hos 9:10](#)];

29 Thus they provoked *him* to anger with their inventions: and the plague brake in upon them. [Num 25:3; [1Cor 10:8];
30 Then stood up Phinehas, and executed judgment: and *so* the plague was stayed. [Num 25:7];
31 And that was counted unto him for righteousness unto all generations for evermore. [Num 25:12];
32 They angered *him* also at the waters of strife, so that it went ill with Moses for their sakes: Num 20:12; Ps 95:8; [Num 20:10];
33 Because they provoked his spirit, so that he spoke unadvisedly with his lips.
34 They did not destroy the nations, concerning whom the YAHWEH commanded them:
35 But were mingled among the heathen, and learned their works. Judg 2:2; Judg 3:5-6; [Hos 7:8];
36 And they served their idols: which were a snare unto them.
37 Yes, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters unto demons, Lev 18:21; Deut 12:31; 2Kgs 16:3; 2Kgs 17:17; 2Kgs 21:6; 2Chr 28:3; 2Chr 33:6;
38 And shed innocent blood, *even* the blood of their sons and of their daughters, whom they sacrificed unto the idols of Canaan: and the land was polluted with blood. Num 35:33;
39 Thus were they defiled with their own works, and went a whoring with their own inventions.
40 Therefore was the wrath of the YAHWEH kindled against his people, insomuch that he abhorred his own inheritance.
41 And he gave them into the hand of the heathen; and they that hated them ruled over them.
42 Their enemies also oppressed them, and they were brought into subjection under their hand.
43 Many times did he deliver them; but they provoked *him* with their counsel, and were brought low for their iniquity.
44 Nevertheless he regarded their affliction, when he heard their cry:
45 And he remembered for them his covenant, and repented according to the multitude of his mercies. [Deut 30:3];
46 He made them also to be pitied of all those that carried them captives.

He concludes with prayer and praise

47 Save us, O YAHWEH our Elohim, and gather us from among the heathen, to give thanks unto thy holy name, *and* to triumph in thy praise. 1Chr 16:35; [Dan 9:15];
48 Blessed *be* the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel from everlasting to everlasting: and let all the people say, Amen. Praise you the YAHWEH. 1Chr 16:36;

The psalmist exhorts the redeemed, in praising Elohim, to observe his manifold providence

1 O give thanks unto the YAHWEH, for *he is* good: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [1Chr 16:34]; [Ps 25:6]; [Ps 106:1];

2 Let the redeemed of the YAHWEH say *so*, whom he has redeemed from the hand of the enemy;

3 And gathered them out of the lands, from the east, and from the west, from the north, and from the south.

over travellers

4 They wandered in the wilderness in a solitary way; they found no city to dwell in. [Job 12:24];

5 Hungry and thirsty, their being fainted in them.

6 Then they cried unto the YAHWEH in their trouble, *and* he delivered them out of their distresses.

7 And he led them forth by the right way, that they might go to a city of habitation.

8 Oh that *men* would praise the YAHWEH *for* his goodness, and *for* his wonderful works to the children of men!

9 For he satisfieth the longing being, and filleth the hungry being with goodness.

over captives

10 Such as sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, *being* bound in affliction and iron;

11 Because they rebelled against the words of Elohim, and contemned the counsel of the most High:

12 Therefore he brought down their heart with labour; they fell down, and *there was* none to help.

13 Then they cried unto the YAHWEH in their trouble, *and* he saved them out of their distresses.

14 He brought them out of darkness and the shadow of death, and brake their bands in sunder.

15 Oh that *men* would praise the YAHWEH *for* his goodness, and *for* his wonderful works to the children of men!

16 For he has broken the gates of brass, and cut the bars of iron in sunder.

over sick men

17 Fools because of their transgression, and because of their iniquities, are afflicted.

18 Their being abhorreth all manner of meat; and they draw near unto the gates of death. [Job 33:20];

19 Then they cry unto the YAHWEH in their trouble, *and* he saveth them out of their distresses.

20 He sent his word, and healed them, and delivered *them* from their destructions. [Matt 8:8];

21 Oh that *men* would praise the YAHWEH *for* his goodness, and *for* his wonderful works to the children of men!

22 And let them sacrifice the sacrifices of thanksgiving, and declare his works with rejoicing. Lev 7:12; Ps 50:14;

over seamen

23 They that go down to the sea in ships, that do business in great waters; Rev 18:17;

24 These see the works of the YAHWEH, and his wonders in the deep.

25 For he commandeth, and raiseth the stormy wind, which lifteth up the waves thereof. [\[Luke 8:25\];](#)
26 They mount up to the heaven, they go down again to the depths: their being is melted because of trouble.
27 They reel to and fro, and stagger like a drunken man, and are at their wits' end.
28 Then they cry unto the YAHWEH in their trouble, and he bringeth them out of their distresses.
29 He maketh the storm a calm, so that the waves thereof are still. [\[Matt 8:26\]; \[Mark 4:39\];](#)
30 Then are they glad because they be quiet; so he bringeth them unto their desired haven.
31 Oh that *men* would praise the YAHWEH *for* his goodness, and *for* his wonderful works to the children of men!
32 Let them exalt him also in the congregation of the people, and praise him in the assembly of the elders.

and in different varieties of life

33 He turneth rivers into a wilderness, and the watersprings into dry ground;
34 A fruitful land into barrenness, for the wickedness of them that dwell therein.
35 He turneth the wilderness into a standing water, and dry ground into watersprings. [Isa 41:18; \[Job 38:27\];](#)
36 And there he maketh the hungry to dwell, that they may prepare a city for habitation;
37 And sow the fields, and plant vineyards, which may yield fruits of increase.
38 He blesseth them also, so that they are multiplied greatly; and suffereth not their cattle to decrease. [\[Job 12:23\];](#)
39 Again, they are minished and brought low through oppression, affliction, and sorrow.
40 He poureth contempt upon princes, and causeth them to wander in the wilderness, *where there is* no way. [\[Job 12:21\]; \[Job 12:24\]; \[Isa 40:23\];](#)
41 Yet setteth he the poor on high from affliction, and maketh *him* families like a flock. [1Sam 2:8; Ps 113:7-8; \[Ps 113:7\];](#)
42 The righteous shall see *it*, and rejoice: and all iniquity shall stop her mouth. [Job 22:19; Job 5:16;](#)
43 Whoso *is* wise, and will observe these *things*, even they shall understand the lovingkindness of the YAHWEH.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-EIGHT

A Song. A Psalm of David.

David encourages himself to praise Elohim

- 1** A Song *or* Psalm of David. O Elohim, my heart is fixed; I will sing and give praise, even with my glory. [\[Ps 57:7\];](#)
2 Awake, psaltery and harp: I *myself* will awake early.
3 I will praise you, O YAHWEH, among the people: and I will sing praises unto you among the nations. [\[Ps 57:9\];](#)
4 For thy mercy *is* great above the heavens: and thy truth *reacheth* unto the clouds. [Ps 36:5; Ps 57:10;](#)

He prays for Elohim's assistance according to his promise

- 5** Be you exalted, O Elohim, above the heavens: and thy glory above all the earth; [\[Ps 57:5\];](#)
6 That thy beloved may be delivered: save *with* thy right hand, and answer me. [\[Ps 60:5\];](#)
7 Elohim has spoken in his holiness; I will rejoice, I will divide Shechem, and mete out the valley of Succoth.
8 Gilead *is* mine; Manasseh *is* mine; Ephraim also *is* the strength of mine head; Judah *is* my lawgiver;
9 Moab *is* my washpot; over Edom will I cast out my shoe; over Philistia will I triumph.
10 Who will bring me into the strong city? who will lead me into Edom?

His confidence in Elohim's help

- 11** **will** not you, O Elohim, *who* have cast us off? and will not you, O Elohim, go forth with our hosts? [Ps 60:1; \[Ps 44:9\];](#)
12 Give us help from trouble: for vain *is* the help of man.
13 Through Elohim we shall do valiantly: for he *it is that* shall tread down our enemies.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-NINE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David, complaining of his slanderous enemies, under the person of Judas devotes them

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. Hold not thy peace, O Elohim of my praise;
2 For the mouth of the wicked and the mouth of the deceitful are opened against me: they have spoken against me with a lying tongue.
3 They compassed me about also with words of hatred; and fought against me without a cause. [Ps 69:4](#);
4 For my love they are my adversaries: but I *give myself unto* prayer.
5 And they have rewarded me evil for good, and hatred for my love.
6 Set you a wicked man over him: and let Satan stand at his right hand.
7 When he shall be judged, let him be condemned: and let his prayer become sin. [Prov 15:8](#); [Prov 28:9](#); [\[Job 27:9\]](#);
8 Let his days be few; *and* let another take his office. [\[John 17:12\]](#); [\[Acts 1:20\]](#);
9 Let his children be fatherless, and his wife a widow.
10 Let his children be continually vagabonds, and beg: let them seek *their bread* also out of their desolate places. [\[Job 15:23\]](#); [\[Jer 18:21\]](#);
11 Let the extortioner catch all that he has; and let the strangers spoil his labour.
12 Let there be none to extend mercy unto him: neither let there be any to favor his fatherless children.
13 Let his posterity be cut off; *and* in the generation following let their name be blotted out. [\[Job 18:17\]](#); [\[Isa 14:20\]](#);
14 Let the iniquity of his fathers be remembered with the YAHWEH; and let not the sin of his mother be blotted out.
15 Let them be before the YAHWEH continually, that he may cut off the memory of them from the earth. [Job 18:17](#); [Ps 34:16](#);

He shows their sin

- 16** Because that he remembered not to show mercy, but persecuted the poor and needy man, that he might even slay the broken in heart.
17 As he loved cursing, so let it come unto him: as he delighted not in blessing, so let it be far from him.
18 As he clothed himself with cursing like as with his garment, so let it come into his bowels like water, and like oil into his bones.
19 Let it be unto him as the garment *which* covereth him, and for a girdle wherewith he is girded continually.
20 *Let* this *be* the reward of mine adversaries from the YAHWEH, and of them that speak evil against my being.

Complaining of his own misery, he prays for help

- 21** But do you for me, O GOD the Lord, for thy name's sake: because thy mercy *is* good, deliver you me.
22 For I *am* poor and needy, and my heart is wounded within me.
23 I am gone like the shadow when it declineth: I am tossed up and down as the locust.
24 My knees are weak through fasting; and my flesh faileth of fatness.
25 I became also a reproach unto them: *when* they looked upon me they shook their heads. [\[Mark 15:29\]](#);
26 Help me, O YAHWEH my Elohim: O save me according to thy mercy:
27 That they may know that this *is* thy hand; *that* you, YAHWEH, have done it.

28 Let them curse, but bless you: when they arise, let them be ashamed; but let thy servant rejoice.

He promises thankfulness

29 Let mine adversaries be clothed with shame, and let them cover themselves with their own confusion, as with a mantle.

30 I will greatly praise the YAHWEH with my mouth; yes, I will praise him among the multitude.

31 For he shall stand at the right hand of the poor, to save *him* from those that condemn his being.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-TEN

A Psalm of David.

The kingdom

1 A Psalm of David. The YAHWEH said unto my Lord, Sit you at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool. [[Matt 22:44](#)]; [[Matt 26:64](#)]; [[Mark 12:36](#)]; [[Luke 20:42](#)]; [[Acts 2:34](#)]; [[1Cor 15:25](#)]; [[Eph 1:20](#)]; [[Heb 1:13](#)]; [[Heb 10:12](#)];

2 The YAHWEH shall send the rod of thy strength out of Zion: rule you in the midst of thine enemies. [[Isa 2:3](#)];

3 Thy people *shall be* willing in the day of thy power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: you have the dew of thy youth. [[Song 6:12](#)];

the priesthood

4 The YAHWEH has sworn, and will not repent, you are a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek. [[Heb 5:6](#)]; [[Heb 6:20](#)]; [[Heb 7:17](#)]; [[John 12:34](#)]; [[Heb 7:21](#)];

the conquest

5 The Lord at thy right hand shall strike through kings in the day of his wrath.

6 He shall judge among the heathen, he shall fill *the places* with the dead bodies; he shall wound the heads over many countries. [[Rev 14:14](#)]; [[Rev 16:14](#)]; [[Rev 20:8](#)];

and the passion of the Messiah

7 He shall drink of the brook in the way: therefore shall he lift up the head.

The psalmist by his example incites others to praise Elohim for his glorious

The psalmist by his example incites others to praise Elohim for his glorious

- 1** Praise you the YAHWEH. I will praise the YAHWEH with *my* whole heart, in the assembly of the upright, and *in* the congregation. [Ps 35:18]; [Ps 40:9];
- 2** The works of the YAHWEH *are* great, sought out of all them that have pleasure therein. [Rev 15:3];
- 3** His work *is* honourable and glorious: and his righteousness endureth for ever.
- 4** He has made his wonderful works to be remembered: the YAHWEH *is* gracious and full of compassion.

and gracious works

- 5** He has given meat unto them that fear him: he will ever be mindful of his covenant.
- 6** He has showed his people the power of his works, that he may give them the heritage of the heathen.
- 7** The works of his hands *are* verity and judgment; all his commandments *are* sure.
- 8** They stand fast for ever and ever, *and are* done in truth and uprightness.
- 9** He sent redemption unto his people: he has commanded his covenant for ever: holy and reverend *is* his name.

The fear of Elohim breeds true wisdom

- 10** The fear of the YAHWEH *is* the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do *his commandments*: his praise endureth for ever. [Job 28:28]; [Prov 1:7]; [Prov 9:10];

Godliness has the promises of this life

1 Praise you the YAHWEH. Blessed *is* the man *that* feareth the YAHWEH, *that* delighteth greatly in his commandments. [Ps 1:1-2](#);

2 His seed shall be mighty upon earth: the generation of the upright shall be blessed.

3 Wealth and riches *shall be* in his house: and his righteousness endureth for ever.

and of the life to come

4 Unto the upright there ariseth light in the darkness: *he is* gracious, and full of compassion, and righteous. [\[Job 11:17\]](#);

5 A good man showeth favor, and lendeth: he will guide his affairs with discretion.

6 Surely he shall not be moved for ever: the righteous shall be in everlasting remembrance.

7 He shall not be afraid of evil tidings: his heart is fixed, trusting in the YAHWEH.

8 His heart *is* established, he shall not be afraid, until he see *his desire* upon his enemies.

9 He has dispersed, he has given to the poor; his righteousness endureth for ever; his horn shall be exalted with honour. [\[Prov 11:25\]](#); [\[2Cor 9:9\]](#);

The prosperity of the godly shall be an eyesore to the wicked

10 The wicked shall see *it*; and be grieved; he shall gnash with his teeth, and melt away: the desire of the wicked shall perish. [\[Job 8:13\]](#); [\[Prov 10:28\]](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-THIRTEEN

An exhortation to praise Elohim for his excellency

1 Praise you the YAHWEH. Praise, O you servants of the YAHWEH, praise the name of the YAHWEH.

2 Blessed be the name of the YAHWEH from this time forth and for evermore. [Dan 2:20](#);

3 From the rising of the sun unto the going down of the same the YAHWEH'S name *is* to be praised. [Mal 1:11](#);

4 The YAHWEH *is* high above all nations, *and* his glory above the heavens.

5 Who *is* like unto the YAHWEH our Elohim, who dwelleth on high,

for his mercy

6 Who humbleth *himself* to behold *the things that are* in heaven, and in the earth! [\[Ps 138:6\]](#); [\[Luke 1:52\]](#);

7 He raiseth up the poor out of the dust, *and* lifteth the needy out of the dunghill; [1Sam 2:8](#); [Ps 107:41](#); [\[Job 5:11\]](#);

8 That he may set *him* with princes, *even* with the princes of his people. [\[Job 36:7\]](#);

9 He maketh the barren woman to keep house, *and to be* a joyful mother of children. Praise you the YAHWEH.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-FOURTEEN

**The miracles wrought by Elohim, when he brought his people out of Egypt,
are a just ground of fearing him**

- 1** When Israel went out of Egypt, the house of Jacob from a people of strange language; [Exod 13:3](#);
- 2** Judah was his sanctuary, *and* Israel his dominion.
- 3** The sea saw *it*, and fled: Jordan was driven back. [\[Exod 14:21\]](#); [\[Josh 3:13\]](#);
- 4** The mountains skipped like rams, *and* the little hills like lambs. [\[Exod 19:18\]](#); [\[Nah 1:5\]](#);
- 5** What *ailed* you, O you sea, that you fleddest? you Jordan, *that* you were driven back?
- 6** You mountains, *that* you skipped like rams; *and* you little hills, like lambs?
- 7** Tremble, you earth, at the presence of the Lord, at the presence of the Elohim of Jacob;
- 8** Which turned the rock *into* a standing water, the flint into a fountain of waters. [\[Exod 17:6\]](#); [\[Num 20:8\]](#);
[\[Deut 8:15\]](#);

Because Elohim is truly glorious

1 Not unto us, O YAHWEH, not unto us, but unto thy name give glory, for thy mercy, *and* for thy truth's sake.

2 Wherefore should the heathen say, Where *is* now their Elohim? [Joel 2:17]; [Mic 7:10];

3 But our Elohim *is* in the heavens: he has done whatsoever he has pleased. [Job 23:13]; [Ps 123:1]; [Prov 19:21]; [Mic 1:3]; [Rom 4:21];

and idols are vanity

4 Their idols *are* silver and gold, the work of men's hands. [Deut 4:28]; [Ps 135:15]; [Acts 19:26]; [Rev 9:20];

5 They have mouths, but they speak not: eyes have they, but they see not: Deut 4:28; Jer 10:3-5; Jer 10:9; [Jer 10:5];

6 They have ears, but they hear not: noses have they, but they smell not:

7 They have hands, but they handle not: feet have they, but they walk not: neither speak they through their throat.

8 They that make them are like unto them; *so is* every one that trusteth in them.

he exhorts to confidence in Elohim

9 O Israel, trust you in the YAHWEH: he *is* their help and their shield.

10 O house of Aaron, trust in the YAHWEH: he *is* their help and their shield.

11 You that fear the YAHWEH, trust in the YAHWEH: he *is* their help and their shield.

Elohim is to be blessed for his blessings

12 The YAHWEH has been mindful of us: he will bless *us*; he will bless the house of Israel; he will bless the house of Aaron.

13 He will bless them that fear the YAHWEH, *both* small and great.

14 The YAHWEH shall increase you more and more, you and your children.

15 You *are* blessed of the YAHWEH which made heaven and earth.

16 The heaven, *even* the heavens, *are* the YAHWEH'S: but the earth has he given to the children of men. [Deut 10:14];

17 The dead praise not the YAHWEH, neither any that go down into silence.

18 But we will bless the YAHWEH from this time forth and for evermore. Praise the YAHWEH.

The psalmist professes his love and duty to Elohim for his deliverance

- 1** I love the YAHWEH, because he has heard my voice *and* my supplications.
- 2** Because he has inclined his ear unto me, therefore will I call upon *him* as long as I live.
- 3** The sorrows of death compassed me, and the pains of hell got hold upon me: I found trouble and sorrow. [2Sam 22:5-6](#);
- 4** Then called I upon the name of the YAHWEH; O YAHWEH, I beseech you, deliver my being.
- 5** Gracious *is* the YAHWEH, and righteous; yes, our Elohim *is* merciful.
- 6** The YAHWEH preserveth the simple: I was brought low, and he helped me. [\[Ps 142:6\]](#);
- 7** Return unto thy rest, O my being; for the YAHWEH has dealt bountifully with you. [Ps 13:6](#); [\[Ps 119:17\]](#);
- 8** For you have delivered my being from death, mine eyes from tears, *and* my feet from falling.
- 9** I will walk before the YAHWEH in the land of the living.
- 10** I believed, therefore have I spoken: I was greatly afflicted: [2Cor 4:13](#);
- 11** I said in my haste, All men *are* liars. [Rom 3:4](#);

He studies to be thankful

- 12** What shall I render unto the YAHWEH *for* all his benefits toward me?
- 13** I will take the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of the YAHWEH.
- 14** I will pay my vows unto the YAHWEH now in the presence of all his people.
- 15** Precious in the sight of the YAHWEH *is* the death of his saints.
- 16** O YAHWEH, truly I *am* thy servant; I *am* thy servant, *and* the son of thine handmaid: you have loosed my bonds. [\[Ps 143:12\]](#);
- 17** I will offer to you the sacrifice of thanksgiving, and will call upon the name of the YAHWEH. [\[Lev 7:12\]](#); [\[Jonah 2:9\]](#);
- 18** I will pay my vows unto the YAHWEH now in the presence of all his people,
- 19** In the courts of the YAHWEH'S house, in the midst of you, O Jerusalem. Praise you the YAHWEH.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED-SEVENTEEN

An exhortation to praise Elohim for his mercy and truth

1 O praise the YAHWEH, all you nations: praise him, all you people. [Rom 15:11](#);

2 For his merciful kindness is great toward us: and the truth of the YAHWEH *endureth* for ever. Praise you the YAHWEH. [\[Ps 25:6\]](#);

An exhortation to praise Elohim for his mercy

- 1** O give thanks unto the YAHWEH; for *he is* good: because his mercy *endureth* for ever. [1Chr 16:34]; [Ps 106:1];
- 2** Let Israel now say, that his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 3** Let the house of Aaron now say, that his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 4** Let them now that fear the YAHWEH say, that his mercy *endureth* for ever.

The psalmist by his experience shows how good it is to trust in Elohim

- 5** I called upon the YAHWEH in distress: the YAHWEH answered me, *and set me* in a large place.
- 6** The YAHWEH *is* on my side; I will not fear: what can man do unto me? Rom 8:31; [Ps 23:4]; [Ps 27:1]; [Ps 56:11]; [Isa 51:7]; [Isa 51:12]; [Heb 13:6];
- 7** The YAHWEH taketh my part with them that help me: therefore shall I see *my desire* upon them that hate me.
- 8** *It is* better to trust in the YAHWEH than to put confidence in man. Ps 62:8-9; Ps 146:3; Jer 17:5; Jer 17:7;
- 9** *It is* better to trust in the YAHWEH than to put confidence in princes.
- 10** All nations compassed me about: but in the name of the YAHWEH will I destroy them.
- 11** They compassed me about; yes, they compassed me about: but in the name of the YAHWEH I will destroy them.
- 12** They compassed me about like bees; they are quenched as the fire of thorns: for in the name of the YAHWEH I will destroy them.
- 13** You have thrust sore at me that I might fall: but the YAHWEH helped me.
- 14** The YAHWEH *is* my strength and song, and is become my salvation. [Exod 15:2];
- 15** The voice of rejoicing and salvation *is* in the tabernacles of the righteous: the right hand of the YAHWEH doeth valiantly. [Exod 15:6];
- 16** The right hand of the YAHWEH is exalted: the right hand of the YAHWEH doeth valiantly. Luke 1:51;
- 17** I shall not die, but live, and declare the works of the YAHWEH.
- 18** The YAHWEH has chastened me sore: but he has not given me over unto death. [2Cor 6:9];

Under the type of the psalmist the coming of the Messiah in his kingdom is expressed

- 19** Open to me the gates of righteousness: I will go into them, *and* I will praise the YAHWEH:
- 20** This gate of the YAHWEH, into which the righteous shall enter.
- 21** I will praise you: for you have heard me, and are become my salvation.
- 22** The stone *which* the builders refused is become the head *stone* of the corner. Isa 8:14; Isa 28:16; Matt 21:42; Mark 12:10; Luke 20:17; Acts 4:11; Rom 9:33; Eph 2:20; 1Pet 2:4; 1Pet 2:7; [Matt 16:18];
- 23** This is the YAHWEH'S doing; it *is* marvellous in our eyes.
- 24** This *is* the day *which* the YAHWEH has made; we will rejoice and be glad in it.
- 25** Save now, I beseech you, O YAHWEH: O YAHWEH, I beseech you, send now prosperity. [Matt 21:9];
- 26** Blessed *be* he that cometh in the name of the YAHWEH: we have blessed you out of the house of the YAHWEH. [Matt 23:39]; [Mark 11:9]; [Luke 13:35]; [Luke 19:38]; [John 12:13];
- 27** Elohim *is* the YAHWEH, which has showed us light: bind the sacrifice with cords, *even* unto the horns of the altar.
- 28** You are my Elohim, and I will praise you: you *are* my Elohim, I will exalt you.
- 29** O give thanks unto the YAHWEH; for *he is* good: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.

This psalm contains sundry prayers, praises, and professions of obedience

Ⲛ ALEPH

- 1 Blessed *are* the undefiled in the way, who walk in the law of the YAHWEH. [Ps 1:1](#); [\[Ps 1:2\]](#); [\[Ps 25:4\]](#); [\[Ps 27:11\]](#); [\[Prov 8:32\]](#);
2 Blessed *are* they that keep his testimonies, *and that* seek him with the whole heart.
3 They also do no iniquity: they walk in his ways.
4 You have commanded *us* to keep thy precepts diligently.
5 O that my ways were directed to keep thy statutes!
6 Then shall I not be ashamed, when I have respect unto all thy commandments.
7 I will praise you with uprightness of heart, when I shall have learned thy righteous judgments.
8 I will keep thy statutes: O forsake me not utterly.

ⲓ BETH

- 9 Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? by taking heed *thereto* according to thy word.
10 With my whole heart have I sought you: O let me not wander from thy commandments.
11 Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against you.
12 Blessed are you, O YAHWEH: teach me thy statutes.
13 With my lips have I declared all the judgments of thy mouth.
14 I have rejoiced in the way of thy testimonies, as *much as* in all riches.
15 I will meditate in thy precepts, and have respect unto thy ways.
16 I will delight myself in thy statutes: I will not forget thy word.

ⲓ GIMEL

- 17 Deal bountifully with thy servant, *that* I may live, and keep thy word. [Ps 103:2](#); [Ps 116:7](#);
18 Open you mine eyes, that I may behold wondrous things out of thy law.
19 I *am* a stranger in the earth: hide not thy commandments from me. [Gen 47:9](#); [1Chr 29:15](#); [Ps 39:12](#); [Heb 11:13](#);
20 My being breaketh for the longing *that it has* unto thy judgments at all times.
21 You have rebuked the proud *that are* cursed, which do err from thy commandments.
22 Remove from me reproach and contempt; for I have kept thy testimonies.
23 Princes also did sit *and* speak against me: *but* thy servant did meditate in thy statutes.
24 Thy testimonies also *are* my delight *and* my counsellors. [Ps 43:4](#);

ⲓ DALETH

- 25 My being cleaveth unto the dust: quicken you me according to thy word.
26 I have declared my ways, and you hearest me: teach me thy statutes. [Ps 25:4](#); [Ps 27:11](#); [Ps 86:11](#);
27 Make me to understand the way of thy precepts: so shall I talk of thy wondrous works.
28 My being melteth for heaviness: strengthen you me according unto thy word.
29 Remove from me the way of lying: and grant me thy law graciously.
30 I have chosen the way of truth: thy judgments have I laid *before me*.
31 I have stuck unto thy testimonies: O YAHWEH, put me not to shame.
32 I will run the way of thy commandments, when you shall enlarge my heart.

ⲓ HE

- 33 Teach me, O YAHWEH, the way of thy statutes; and I shall keep it *unto* the end. [\[Ps 86:11\]](#);

- 34 Give me understanding, and I shall keep thy law; yes, I shall observe it with *my* whole heart.
35 Make me to go in the path of thy commandments; for therein do I delight.
36 Incline my heart unto thy testimonies, and not to covetousness.
37 Turn away mine eyes from beholding vanity; *and* quicken you me in thy way. [Matt 5:28];
38 Establish thy word unto thy servant, who *is devoted* to thy fear.
39 Turn away my reproach which I fear: for thy judgments *are* good.
40 Behold, I have longed after thy precepts: quicken me in thy righteousness.

י WAW

- 41 Let thy mercies come also unto me, O YAHWEH, *even* thy salvation, according to thy word.
42 So shall I have wherewith to answer him that reproacheth me: for I trust in thy word.
43 And take not the word of truth utterly out of my mouth; for I have hoped in thy judgments.
44 So shall I keep thy law continually for ever and ever.
45 And I will walk at liberty: for I seek thy precepts.
46 I will speak of thy testimonies also before kings, and will not be ashamed. [1Pet 3:15];
47 And I will delight myself in thy commandments, which I have loved.
48 My hands also will I lift up unto thy commandments, which I have loved; and I will meditate in thy statutes.

ז ZAYIN

- 49 Remember the word unto thy servant, upon which you have caused me to hope.
50 This *is* my comfort in my affliction: for thy word has quickened me.
51 The proud have had me greatly in derision: yet have I not declined from thy law.
52 I remembered thy judgments of old, O YAHWEH; and have comforted myself.
53 Horror has taken hold upon me because of the wicked that forsake thy law.
54 Thy statutes have been my songs in the house of my pilgrimage.
55 I have remembered thy name, O YAHWEH, in the night, and have kept thy law. Ps 16:7; Ps 42:8;
56 This I had, because I kept thy precepts.

ח CHETH

- 57 you *are* my portion, O YAHWEH: I have said that I would keep thy words.
58 I intreated thy favor with *my* whole heart: be merciful unto me according to thy word.
59 I thought on my ways, and turned my feet unto thy testimonies.
60 I made haste, and delayed not to keep thy commandments.
61 The bands of the wicked have robbed me: *but* I have not forgotten thy law.
62 At midnight I will rise to give thanks unto you because of thy righteous judgments.
63 I *am* a companion of all *them* that fear you, and of them that keep thy precepts.
64 The earth, O YAHWEH, is full of thy mercy: teach me thy statutes. [Ps 33:5];

ט TETH

- 65 you have dealt well with thy servant, O YAHWEH, according unto thy word.
66 Teach me good judgment and knowledge: for I have believed thy commandments.
67 Before I was afflicted I went astray: but now have I kept thy word.
68 You are good, and do good; teach me thy statutes.
69 The proud have forged a lie against me: *but* I will keep thy precepts with *my* whole heart.
70 Their heart is as fat as grease; *but* I delight in thy law.
71 *It is* good for me that I have been afflicted; that I might learn thy statutes.
72 The law of thy mouth *is* better unto me than thousands of gold and silver. Ps 19:10; [Prov 16:16];

י YOD

- 73** Thy hands have made me and fashioned me: give me understanding, that I may learn thy commandments. [Job 10:9; Ps 139:13;](#)
74 They that fear you will be glad when they see me; because I have hoped in thy word.
75 I know, O YAHWEH, that thy judgments *are* right, and *that* you in faithfulness have afflicted me.
76 Let, I pray you, thy merciful kindness be for my comfort, according to thy word unto thy servant.
77 Let thy tender mercies come unto me, that I may live: for thy law *is* my delight.
78 Let the proud be ashamed; for they dealt perversely with me without a cause: *but* I will meditate in thy precepts.
79 Let those that fear you turn unto me, and those that have known thy testimonies.
80 Let my heart be sound in thy statutes; that I be not ashamed.

כ KAPH

- 81** My being fainteth for thy salvation: *but* I hope in thy word.
82 Mine eyes fail for thy word, saying, When will you comfort me?
83 For I am become like a bottle in the smoke; yet do I not forget thy statutes. [\[Job 30:30\];](#)
84 How many *are* the days of thy servant? when will you execute judgment on them that persecute me?
85 The proud have digged pits for me, which *are* not after thy law.
86 All thy commandments *are* faithful: they persecute me wrongfully; help you me.
87 They had almost consumed me upon earth; but I forsook not thy precepts.
88 Quicken me after thy lovingkindness; so shall I keep the testimony of thy mouth.

ל LAMED

- 89** For ever, O YAHWEH, thy word is settled in heaven.
90 Thy faithfulness *is* unto all generations: you have established the earth, and it abideth. [Eccl 1:4;](#)
91 They continue this day according to thine ordinances: for all *are* thy servants. [\[Ps 148:6\];](#)
92 Unless thy law *had been* my delights, I should then have perished in mine affliction.
93 I will never forget thy precepts: for with them you have quickened me.
94 I *am* thine, save me; for I have sought thy precepts.
95 The wicked have waited for me to destroy me: *but* I will consider thy testimonies.
96 I have seen an end of all perfection: *but* thy commandment *is* exceeding broad.

מ MEM

- 97** O how love I thy law! it *is* my meditation all the day.
98 You through thy commandments have made me wiser than mine enemies: for they *are* ever with me.
99 I have more understanding than all my teachers: for thy testimonies *are* my meditation.
100 I understand more than the elders, because I keep thy precepts.
101 I have refrained my feet from every evil way, that I might keep thy word.
102 I have not departed from thy judgments: for you have taught me.
103 How sweet are thy words unto my taste! yes, *sweeter* than honey to my mouth! [Ps 19:10; Prov 8:11; \[Prov 24:14\]; \[Ezek 3:3\];](#)
104 Through thy precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false way.

נ NUN

- 105** Thy word *is* a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path. [\[Prov 6:23\];](#)
106 I have sworn, and I will perform *it*, that I will keep thy righteous judgments. [Neh 10:29;](#)
107 I am afflicted very much: quicken me, O YAHWEH, according unto thy word.
108 Accept, I beseech you, the freewill offerings of my mouth, O YAHWEH, and teach me thy judgments.

- 109 My being *is* continually in my hand: yet do I not forget thy law.
 110 The wicked have laid a snare for me: yet I erred not from thy precepts.
 111 Thy testimonies have I taken as a heritage for ever: for they *are* the rejoicing of my heart.
 112 I have inclined mine heart to perform thy statutes always, *even unto* the end.

ס SAMECH

- 113 I hate *vain* thoughts: but thy law do I love.
 114 You are my hiding place and my shield: I hope in thy word.
 115 Depart from me, you evildoers: for I will keep the commandments of my Elohim.
 116 Uphold me according unto thy word, that I may live: and let me not be ashamed of my hope.
 117 Hold you me up, and I shall be safe: and I will have respect unto thy statutes continually.
 118 You have trodden down all them that err from thy statutes: for their deceit *is* falsehood.
 119 You puttest away all the wicked of the earth *like* dross: therefore I love thy testimonies.
 120 My flesh trembleth for fear of you; and I am afraid of thy judgments.

ע AYIN

- 121 I have done judgment and justice: leave me not to mine oppressors.
 122 Be surety for thy servant for good: let not the proud oppress me.
 123 Mine eyes fail for thy salvation, and for the word of thy righteousness.
 124 Deal with thy servant according unto thy mercy, and teach me thy statutes.
 125 I *am* thy servant; give me understanding, that I may know thy testimonies.
 126 *It is* time for you, YAHWEH, to work: *for* they have made void thy law.
 127 Therefore I love thy commandments above gold; yes, above fine gold. [Ps 19:10];
 128 Therefore I esteem all *thy* precepts *concerning* all *things to be* right; *and* I hate every false way.

פ PE

- 129 Thy testimonies *are* wonderful: therefore my being keeps them.
 130 The entrance of thy words giveth light; it giveth understanding unto the simple. Ps 19:8;
 131 I opened my mouth, and panted: for I longed for thy commandments.
 132 Look you upon me, and be merciful unto me, as you usest to do unto those that love thy name.
 133 Order my steps in thy word: and let not any iniquity have dominion over me.
 134 Deliver me from the oppression of man: so will I keep thy precepts.
 135 Make thy face to shine upon thy servant; and teach me thy statutes. Ps 4:6;
 136 Rivers of waters run down mine eyes, because they keep not thy law.

צ TZADDI

- 137 Righteous are you, O YAHWEH, and upright *are* thy judgments.
 138 Thy testimonies *that* you have commanded *are* righteous and very faithful.
 139 My zeal has consumed me, because mine enemies have forgotten thy words.
 140 Thy word *is* very pure: therefore thy servant loveth it. 2Sam 22:31; Ps 12:6; Ps 18:30; Prov 30:5;
 141 I *am* small and despised: yet do not I forget thy precepts.
 142 Thy righteousness *is* an everlasting righteousness, and thy law *is* the truth.
 143 Trouble and anguish have taken hold on me: yet thy commandments *are* my delights.
 144 The righteousness of thy testimonies *is* everlasting: give me understanding, and I shall live.

ק QOPH

- 145** I cried with *my* whole heart; hear me, O YAHWEH: I will keep thy statutes.
- 146** I cried unto you; save me, and I shall keep thy testimonies.
- 147** I prevented the dawning of the morning, and cried: I hoped in thy word. [Ps 5:3](#); [Ps 88:13](#); [Ps 130:6](#);
- 148** Mine eyes prevent the *night* watches, that I might meditate in thy word. [Ps 63:1](#); [Ps 63:6](#); [Ps 90:4](#);
- 149** Hear my voice according unto thy lovingkindness: O YAHWEH, quicken me according to thy judgment.
- 150** They draw nigh that follow after mischief: they are far from thy law.
- 151** You are near, O YAHWEH; and all thy commandments *are* truth.
- 152** Concerning thy testimonies, I have known of old that you have founded them for ever.

𐤓 RESH

- 153** Consider mine affliction, and deliver me: for I do not forget thy law.
- 154** Plead my cause, and deliver me: quicken me according to thy word.
- 155** Salvation *is* far from the wicked: for they seek not thy statutes.
- 156** Great *are* thy tender mercies, O YAHWEH: quicken me according to thy judgments.
- 157** Many *are* my persecutors and mine enemies; yet do I not decline from thy testimonies.
- 158** I beheld the transgressors, and was grieved; because they kept not thy word. [\[2Pet 2:8\]](#);
- 159** Consider how I love thy precepts: quicken me, O YAHWEH, according to thy lovingkindness.
- 160** Thy word *is* true *from* the beginning: and every one of thy righteous judgments *endureth* for ever.

𐤔 SHIN

- 161** Princes have persecuted me without a cause: but my heart standeth in awe of thy word.
- 162** I rejoice at thy word, as one that finds great spoil.
- 163** I hate and abhor lying: *but* thy law do I love.
- 164** Seven times a day do I praise you because of thy righteous judgments.
- 165** Great peace have they which love thy law: and nothing shall offend them.
- 166** YAHWEH, I have hoped for thy salvation, and done thy commandments.
- 167** My being has kept thy testimonies; and I love them exceedingly.
- 168** I have kept thy precepts and thy testimonies: for all my ways *are* before you.

𐤕 TAU

- 169** Let my cry come near before you, O YAHWEH: give me understanding according to thy word.
- 170** Let my supplication come before you: deliver me according to thy word.
- 171** My lips shall utter praise, when you have taught me thy statutes. [\[Ps 145:7\]](#);
- 172** My tongue shall speak of thy word: for all thy commandments *are* righteousness.
- 173** Let thine hand help me; for I have chosen thy precepts.
- 174** I have longed for thy salvation, O YAHWEH; and thy law *is* my delight.
- 175** Let my being live, and it shall praise you; and let thy judgments help me.
- 176** I have gone astray like a lost sheep; seek thy servant; for I do not forget thy commandments. [Isa 53:6](#); [Luke 15:4](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY

A Song of degrees.

David prays against Doeg

1 A Song of degrees. In my distress I cried unto the YAHWEH, and he heard me. [\[Jonah 2:2\];](#)

2 Deliver my being, O YAHWEH, from lying lips, *and* from a deceitful tongue. [1Sam 24:9; 1Sam 26:19;](#)

reproves his tongue

3 What shall be given unto you? or what shall be done unto you, you false tongue?

4 Sharp arrows of the mighty, with coals of juniper. [Ps 11:2; Ps 59:7; \[Prov 25:18\]; \[Jer 9:8\];](#)

complains of his necessary conduct with the wicked

5 Woe is me, that I sojourn in Mesech, *that* I dwell in the tents of Kedar!

6 My being has long dwelt with him that hateth peace.

7 I *am for* peace: but when I speak, they *are* for war.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-ONE

A Song of degrees.

The great safety of the godly, who put their trust in Elohim's protection

- 1** A Song of degrees. I will lift up mine eyes unto the hills, from whence cometh my help. [\[Jer 3:23\];](#)
- 2** My help *cometh* from the YAHWEH, which made heaven and earth. [\[Ps 124:8\];](#)
- 3** He will not suffer thy foot to be moved: he that keepeth you will not slumber.
- 4** Behold, he that keepeth Israel shall neither slumber nor sleep.
- 5** The YAHWEH *is* thy keeper: the YAHWEH *is* thy shade upon thy right hand.
- 6** The sun shall not smite you by day, nor the moon by night. [\[Rev 7:16\];](#)
- 7** The YAHWEH shall preserve you from all evil: he shall preserve thy being.
- 8** The YAHWEH shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in from this time forth, and even for evermore.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-TWO

A Song of degrees; of David.

David professes his joy for the church

- 1** A Song of degrees of David. I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the YAHWEH.
- 2** Our feet shall stand within thy gates, O Jerusalem.
- 3** Jerusalem is built as a city that is compact together:
- 4** Whither the tribes go up, the tribes of the YAHWEH, unto the testimony of Israel, to give thanks unto the name of the YAHWEH.
- 5** For there are set thrones of judgment, the thrones of the house of David.

and prays for the peace thereof

- 6** Pray for the peace of Jerusalem: they shall prosper that love you.
- 7** Peace be within thy walls, *and* prosperity within thy palaces.
- 8** For my brethren and companions' sakes, I will now say, Peace *be* within you.
- 9** Because of the house of the YAHWEH our Elohim I will seek thy good. [Neh 2:10](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-THREE

A Song of degrees.

The godly profess their confidence in Elohim

1 A Song of degrees. Unto you lift I up mine eyes, O you that dwellest in the heavens. [Ps 115:3](#); [\[Ps 130:6\]](#);

2 Behold, as the eyes of servants *look* unto the hand of their masters, *and* as the eyes of a maiden unto the hand of her mistress; so our eyes *wait* upon the YAHWEH our Elohim, until that he have mercy upon us.

and pray to be delivered from contempt

3 Have mercy upon us, O YAHWEH, have mercy upon us: for we are exceedingly filled with contempt.

4 Our being is exceedingly filled with the scorning of those that are at ease, *and* with the contempt of the proud.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-FOUR

A Song of degrees; of David.

The church blesses Elohim for a miraculous deliverance

- 1** A Song of degrees of David. If *it had not been* the YAHWEH who was on our side, now may Israel say;
- 2** If *it had not been* the YAHWEH who was on our side, when men rose up against us:
- 3** Then they had swallowed us up quick, when their wrath was kindled against us:
- 4** Then the waters had overwhelmed us, the stream had gone over our being:
- 5** Then the proud waters had gone over our being.
- 6** Blessed *be* the YAHWEH, who has not given us *as* a prey to their teeth.
- 7** Our being is escaped as a bird out of the snare of the fowlers: the snare is broken, and we are escaped. [Prov 6:5](#); [\[Ps 91:3\]](#);
- 8** Our help *is* in the name of the YAHWEH, who made heaven and earth. [Ps 121:2](#); [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#); [\[Acts 14:15\]](#); [\[Acts 17:24\]](#); [\[Rev 14:7\]](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-FIVE

A Song of degrees.

The safety of such as trust in Elohim

1 A Song of degrees. They that trust in the YAHWEH *shall be* as mount Zion, *which* cannot be removed, *but* abideth for ever. [[Prov 16:20](#)]; [[Isa 26:1](#)]; [[Isa 33:20](#)];

2 As the mountains *are* round about Jerusalem, so the YAHWEH *is* round about his people from henceforth even for ever.

3 For the rod of the wicked shall not rest upon the lot of the righteous; lest the righteous put forth their hands unto iniquity.

A prayer for the godly, and against the wicked

4 Do good, O YAHWEH, unto *those that be* good, and *to them that are* upright in their hearts.

5 As for such as turn aside unto their crooked ways, the YAHWEH shall lead them forth with the workers of iniquity: *but* peace *shall be* upon Israel. [[Gal 6:16](#)];

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-SIX

A Song of degrees.

The church, celebrating her incredible return out of captivity

1 A Song of degrees. When the YAHWEH turned again the captivity of Zion, we were like them that dream.

2 Then was our mouth filled with laughter, and our tongue with singing: then said they among the heathen, The YAHWEH has done great things for them. [Job 8:21](#);

3 The YAHWEH has done great things for us; *whereof* we are glad.

prays for, and prophesies the good success thereof

4 Turn again our captivity, O YAHWEH, as the streams in the south.

5 They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.

6 He that goes forth and weepeth, bearing precious seed, shall doubtless come again with rejoicing, bringing his sheaves *with him*.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-SEVEN

A Song of degrees for Solomon.

The virtue of Elohim's blessing

1 A Song of degrees for Solomon. Except the YAHWEH build the house, they labour in vain that build it: except the YAHWEH keep the city, the watchman waketh *but* in vain.

2 *It is* vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late, to eat the bread of sorrows: *for* so he giveth his beloved sleep.

Good children are his gift

3 Lo, children *are* a heritage of the YAHWEH: *and* the fruit of the womb *is his* reward.

4 As arrows *are* in the hand of a mighty man; so *are* children of the youth.

5 Happy *is* the man that has his quiver full of them: they shall not be ashamed, but they shall speak with the enemies in the gate.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-EIGHT

A Song of degrees.

The sundry blessings which follow them that fear Elohim

- 1** A Song of degrees. Blessed *is* every one that feareth the YAHWEH; that walketh in his ways. [\[Prov 8:32\]](#);
- 2** For you shall eat the labour of thine hands: happy shall you *be*, and *it shall be* well with you.
- 3** Thy wife *shall be* as a fruitful vine by the sides of thine house: thy children like olive plants round about thy table.
- 4** Behold, that thus shall the man be blessed that feareth the YAHWEH.
- 5** The YAHWEH shall bless you out of Zion: and you shall see the good of Jerusalem all the days of thy life.
- 6** *yes*, you shall see thy children's children, *and* peace upon Israel.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED TWENTY-NINE

A Song of degrees.

An exhortation to praise Elohim for saving Israel in their great afflictions

1 A Song of degrees. Many a time have they afflicted me from my youth, may Israel now say:

2 Many a time have they afflicted me from my youth: yet they have not prevailed against me.

3 The plowers plowed upon my back: they made long their furrows.

4 The YAHWEH *is* righteous: he has cut asunder the cords of the wicked.

The haters of the church are cursed

5 Let them all be confounded and turned back that hate Zion.

6 Let them be as the grass *upon* the housetops, which withereth before it groweth up: [Job 8:12](#); [Job 40:15](#);

7 Wherewith the mower filleth not his hand; nor he that bindeth sheaves his bosom.

8 Neither do they which go by say, The blessing of the YAHWEH *be* upon you: we bless you in the name of the YAHWEH.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY

A Song of degrees.

The psalmist professes his hope in prayer

- 1** A Song of degrees. Out of the depths have I cried unto you, O YAHWEH.
- 2** Lord, hear my voice: let thine ears be attentive to the voice of my supplications.
- 3** If you, YAHWEH, should mark iniquities, O Lord, who shall stand? [Ps 143:2](#); [\[Dan 9:9\]](#);
- 4** But *there is* forgiveness with you, that you may be feared. [2Sam 24:14](#);

and his patience in hope

- 5** I wait for the YAHWEH, my being waits, and in his word do I hope. [Ps 27:14](#); [Hab 2:3](#); [Ps 40:1](#);
- 6** My being *waits* for the Lord more than they that watch for the morning: *I say, more than* they that watch for the morning. [Ps 5:3](#); [Ps 119:147](#); [Ps 123:1-2](#);

He exhorts Israel to trust in Elohim

- 7** Let Israel hope in the YAHWEH: for with the YAHWEH *there is* mercy, and with him *is* plenteous redemption. [\[Dan 9:9\]](#);
- 8** And he shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-ONE

A Song of degrees; of David.

David, professing his humility

1 A Song of degrees of David. YAHWEH, my heart is not haughty, nor mine eyes lofty: neither do I exercise myself in great matters, or in things too high for me. [2Chr 32:25](#); [Prov 16:5](#); [Ps 101:5](#); [Prov 6:17](#); [[Job 42:3](#)];

2 Surely I have behaved and quieted myself, as a child that is weaned of his mother: my being *is* even as a weaned child.

exhorts Israel to trust in Elohim

3 Let Israel hope in the YAHWEH from henceforth and for ever.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-TWO

A Song of degrees.

David in his prayer commends unto Elohim the religious care he had for the ark

- 1** A Song of degrees. YAHWEH, remember David, *and* all his afflictions:
- 2** How he swore unto the YAHWEH, *and* vowed unto the mighty *Elohim* of Jacob;
- 3** Surely I will not come into the tabernacle of my house, nor go up into my bed; [1Chr 15:1](#);
- 4** I will not give sleep to mine eyes, *or* slumber to mine eyelids,
- 5** Until I find out a place for the YAHWEH, a habitation for the mighty *Elohim* of Jacob. [\[Acts 7:46\]](#);
- 6** Lo, we heard of it at Ephratah: we found it in the fields of the wood.
- 7** We will go into his tabernacles: we will worship at his footstool.

His prayer at the removing of the ark

- 8** Arise, O YAHWEH, into thy rest; you, and the ark of thy strength. [\[Ps 132:14\]](#);
- 9** Let thy priests be clothed with righteousness; and let thy saints shout for joy.
- 10** For thy servant David's sake turn not away the face of thine anointed.

with a repetition of Elohim's promises

- 11** The YAHWEH has sworn *in* truth unto David; he will not turn from it; Of the fruit of thy body will I set upon thy throne. [2Sam 7:12](#); [1Kgs 8:25](#); [2Chr 6:16](#); [Luke 1:69](#); [\[2Chr 21:7\]](#); [\[Luke 1:32\]](#); [\[Luke 1:55\]](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 7:42\]](#); [\[Acts 2:30\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:8\]](#);
- 12** If thy children will keep my covenant and my testimony that I shall teach them, their children shall also sit upon thy throne for evermore. [\[1Kgs 2:4\]](#); [\[1Kgs 8:25\]](#); [\[1Kgs 9:5\]](#); [\[2Chr 6:16\]](#);
- 13** For the YAHWEH has chosen Zion; he has desired *it* for his habitation. [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#); [\[Ps 68:16\]](#);
- 14** This *is* my rest for ever: here will I dwell; for I have desired it. [Ps 132:8](#); [Ps 68:16](#);
- 15** I will abundantly bless her provision: I will satisfy her poor with bread.
- 16** I will also clothe her priests with salvation: and her saints shall shout aloud for joy. [2Chr 6:41](#);
- 17** There will I make the horn of David to bud: I have ordained a lamp for mine anointed. [Luke 1:69](#); [\[1Kgs 11:36\]](#); [\[2Kgs 8:19\]](#); [\[2Chr 21:7\]](#); [\[Ps 148:14\]](#);
- 18** His enemies will I clothe with shame: but upon himself shall his crown flourish.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-THREE

A Song of degrees; of David.

The blessedness of unity among brethren

1 A Song of degrees of David. Behold, how good and how pleasant *it is* for brethren to dwell together in unity!

2 *It is* like the precious ointment upon the head, that ran down upon the beard, *even* Aaron's beard: that went down to the skirts of his garments; [\[Lev 8:12\]](#); [\[1John 2:20\]](#);

3 As the dew of Hermon, *and as the dew* that descended upon the mountains of Zion: for there the YAHWEH commanded the blessing, *even* life for evermore.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-FOUR

A Song of degrees.

An exhortation to bless Elohim

1 A Song of degrees. Behold, bless you the YAHWEH, all you servants of the YAHWEH, which by night stand in the house of the YAHWEH.

2 Lift up your hands *in* the sanctuary, and bless the YAHWEH. [[1Tim 2:8](#)];

3 The YAHWEH that made heaven and earth bless you out of Zion.

An exhortation to praise Elohim for his mercy

- 1** Praise you the YAHWEH. Praise you the name of the YAHWEH; praise *him*, O you servants of the YAHWEH.
- 2** You that stand in the house of the YAHWEH, in the courts of the house of our Elohim,
- 3** Praise the YAHWEH; for the YAHWEH *is* good: sing praises unto his name; for *it is* pleasant.
- 4** For the YAHWEH has chosen Jacob unto himself, *and* Israel for his peculiar treasure. [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 7:6](#); [Titus 2:14](#); [1Pet 2:9](#); [[Isa 41:8](#)];

for his power

- 5** For I know that the YAHWEH *is* great, and *that* our Lord *is* above all gods.
- 6** Whatsoever the YAHWEH pleased, *that* did he in heaven, and in earth, in the seas, and all deep places.
- 7** He causeth the vapours to ascend from the ends of the earth; he maketh lightnings for the rain; he bringeth the wind out of his treasures. [Jer 10:13](#); [Jer 51:16](#); [[Jer 14:22](#)];

for his judgments

- 8** Who smote the firstborn of Egypt, both of man and beast. [Exod 12:12](#); [Exod 12:29](#); [Ps 78:51](#);
- 9** *Who* sent tokens and wonders into the midst of you, O Egypt, upon Pharaoh, and upon all his servants. [Exod 7:1-25](#); [Exod 8:1-32](#); [Exod 9:1-35](#); [Exod 10:1-29](#); [Exod 14:1-31](#);
- 10** Who smote great nations, and slew mighty kings; [Josh 12:1-24](#); [[Ps 136:17](#)];
- 11** Sihon king of the Amorites, and Og king of Bashan, and all the kingdoms of Canaan: [[Num 21:24](#)];
- 12** And gave their land *for* a heritage, a heritage unto Israel his people. [Ps 78:55](#);
- 13** Thy name, O YAHWEH, *endureth* for ever; *and* thy memorial, O YAHWEH, throughout all generations. [Ps 102:12](#);
- 14** For the YAHWEH will judge his people, and he will repent himself concerning his servants. [Deut 32:36](#);

The vanity of idols

- 15** The idols of the heathen *are* silver and gold, the work of men's hands. [Ps 115:4](#); [[Deut 4:28](#)]; [[Rev 9:20](#)];
- 16** They have mouths, but they speak not; eyes have they, but they see not;
- 17** They have ears, but they hear not; neither is there *any* breath in their mouths.
- 18** They that make them are like unto them: *so is* every one that trusteth in them.

An exhortation to bless Elohim

- 19** Bless the YAHWEH, O house of Israel: bless the YAHWEH, O house of Aaron:
- 20** Bless the YAHWEH, O house of Levi: you that fear the YAHWEH, bless the YAHWEH.
- 21** Blessed be the YAHWEH out of Zion, which dwelleth at Jerusalem. Praise you the YAHWEH.

An exhortation to give thanks to Elohim for particular mercies

- 1** O give thanks unto the YAHWEH; for *he is* good: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [\[1Chr 16:34\]; \[Ps 25:6\]; \[Ps 106:1\];](#)
- 2** O give thanks unto the Elohim of gods: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 3** O give thanks to the Lord of lords: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 4** To him who alone doeth great wonders: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [\[Ps 86:8\];](#)
- 5** To him that by wisdom made the heavens: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [Gen 1:1; \[Gen 1:6\]; \[2Chr 2:12\];](#)
- 6** To him that stretched out the earth above the waters: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [Ps 24:2; \[Gen 1:7\]; \[Gen 1:9\];](#)
- 7** To him that made great lights: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Gen 1:14;](#)
- 8** The sun to rule by day: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Gen 1:16;](#)
- 9** The moon and stars to rule by night: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 10** To him that smote Egypt in their firstborn: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Exod 12:29; Ps 78:43; Ps 78:51;](#)
- 11** And brought out Israel from among them: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Exod 12:31; Exod 12:51; Exod 13:3; Exod 13:17;](#)
- 12** With a strong hand, and with a stretched out arm: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [Exod 6:4;](#)
- 13** To him which divided the Red sea into parts: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Exod 14:21-22; Ps 78:13;](#)
- 14** And made Israel to pass through the midst of it: for his mercy *endureth* for ever:
- 15** But overthrew Pharaoh and his host in the Red sea: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [Exod 14:24;](#)
- 16** To him which led his people through the wilderness: for his mercy *endureth* for ever. [Exod 15:1-27; Exod 16:1-36; Exod 17:1-16; Exod 19:1-25; Ps 78:53;](#)
- 17** To him which smote great kings: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Num 21:24-25; Num 21:34-35; Josh 12:1; Ps 135:10-11;](#)
- 18** And slew famous kings: for his mercy *endureth* for ever:
- 19** Sihon king of the Amorites: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [\[Num 21:24\];](#)
- 20** And Og the king of Bashan: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Deut 3:1; \[Num 21:34\]; \[Num 21:35\];](#)
- 21** And gave their land for a heritage: for his mercy *endureth* for ever: [Josh 12:6; \[Ps 78:55\];](#)
- 22** *Even* a heritage unto Israel his servant: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 23** Who remembered us in our low estate: for his mercy *endureth* for ever:
- 24** And has redeemed us from our enemies: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 25** Who giveth food to all flesh: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.
- 26** O give thanks unto the Elohim of heaven: for his mercy *endureth* for ever.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-SEVEN

The constancy of the Jews in captivity

- 1** By the rivers of Babylon, there we sat down, yes, we wept, when we remembered Zion. [\[Ezek 1:1\];](#)
- 2** We hanged our harps upon the willows in the midst thereof.
- 3** For there they that carried us away captive required of us a song; and they that wasted us *required of us* mirth, *saying*, Sing us *one* of the songs of Zion. [Ps 79:1;](#)
- 4** How shall we sing the YAHWEH'S song in a strange land?
- 5** If I forget you, O Jerusalem, let my right hand forget *her cunning*.
- 6** If I do not remember you, let my tongue cleave to the roof of my mouth; if I prefer not Jerusalem above my chief joy.

The prophet curses Edom and Babel

- 7** Remember, O YAHWEH, the children of Edom in the day of Jerusalem; who said, Rase *it*, rase *it*, *even* to the foundation thereof. [Jer 49:7; Ezek 25:12; \[Obad 1:11\];](#)
- 8** O daughter of Babylon, who are to be destroyed; happy *shall he be*, that rewardeth you as you have served us. [Jer 50:15; Jer 50:29; Rev 18:6;](#)
- 9** Happy *shall he be*, that taketh and dasheth thy little ones against the stones.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-EIGHT

A Psalm of David.

David praises Elohim for the truth of his word

1 *A Psalm* of David. I will praise you with my whole heart: before the gods will I sing praise unto you.

2 I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for you have magnified thy word above all thy name.

3 In the day when I cried you answeredst me, *and* strengthenedst me *with* strength in my being.

He prophesies that the kings of the earth shall praise Elohim

4 All the kings of the earth shall praise you, O YAHWEH, when they hear the words of thy mouth.

5 Yes, they shall sing in the ways of the YAHWEH: for great *is* the glory of the YAHWEH.

6 Though the YAHWEH *be* high, yet has he respect unto the lowly: but the proud he knoweth afar off. [Ps 113:6-7](#);

He professes his confidence in Elohim

7 Though I walk in the midst of trouble, you will revive me: you shall stretch forth thine hand against the wrath of mine enemies, and thy right hand shall save me.

8 The YAHWEH will perfect *that which* concerneth me: thy mercy, O YAHWEH, *endureth* for ever: forsake not the works of thine own hands. [\[Amos 9:2\]](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED THIRTY-NINE

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David praises Elohim for his all-seeing providence

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. O YAHWEH, you have searched me, and known *me*. [Jer 12:3];
2 You knowest my downsitting and mine uprising, you understandest my thought afar off. [Job 14:16]; [Prov 20:24];
3 You compassed my path and my lying down, and are acquainted *with* all my ways.
4 For *there is* not a word in my tongue, *but*, lo, O YAHWEH, you knowest it altogether.
5 You have beset me behind and before, and laid thine hand upon me.
6 *Such* knowledge *is* too wonderful for me; it is high, I cannot *attain* unto it. [Job 42:3];
7 Whither shall I go from thy spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence? [Jer 23:24];
8 If I ascend up into heaven, you are there: if I make my bed in hell, behold, you are *there*. Job 26:6; Amos 9:2-4; Heb 4:13;
9 *If* I take the wings of the morning, *and* dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea;
10 Even there shall thy hand lead me, and thy right hand shall hold me.
11 If I say, Surely the darkness shall cover me; even the night shall be light about me. [Job 26:6];
12 Yes, the darkness hides not from you; but the night shineth as the day: the darkness and the light *are* both alike *to you*. [Job 34:22];
13 For you have possessed my reins: you have covered me in my mother's womb. [Ps 119:73];
14 I will praise you; for I am fearfully *and* wonderfully made: marvellous *are* thy works; and *that* my being knoweth right well. [Rev 15:3];
15 My substance was not hid from you, when I was made in secret, *and* curiously wrought in the lowest parts of the earth. Job 10:8; Job 10:10; Eccl 11:5;
16 Thine eyes did see my substance, yet being unperfect; and in thy book all *my members* were written, *which* in continuance were fashioned, when *as yet there was* none of them.

and for his infinite mercies

- 17** How precious also are thy thoughts unto me, O Elohim! how great is the sum of them!
18 *If* I should count them, they are more in number than the sand: when I awake, I am still with you.

He defies the wicked

- 19** Surely you will slay the wicked, O Elohim: depart from me therefore, you bloody men.
20 For they speak against you wickedly, *and* thine enemies take *thy name* in vain.
21 Do not I hate them, O YAHWEH, that hate you? and am not I grieved with those that rise up against you?
22 I hate them with perfect hatred: I count them mine enemies.

He prays for sincerity

- 23** Search me, O Elohim, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts: Job 31:6; Ps 26:2;
24 And see if *there be any* wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY

*To the Chief Musician.
A Psalm of David.*

David prays to be delivered from Saul and Doeg

- 1** To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. Deliver me, O YAHWEH, from the evil man: preserve me from the violent man;
- 2** Which imagine mischiefs in *their* heart; continually are they gathered together *for* war.
- 3** They have sharpened their tongues like a serpent; adders' poison *is* under their lips. Selah. [Ps 58:4](#); [Rom 3:13](#);
- 4** Keep me, O YAHWEH, from the hands of the wicked; preserve me from the violent man; who have purposed to overthrow my goings.
- 5** The proud have hid a snare for me, and cords; they have spread a net by the wayside; they have set gins for me. Selah. [Jer 18:22](#);
- 6** I said unto the YAHWEH, you are my Elohim: hear the voice of my supplications, O YAHWEH.
- 7** O GOD the Lord, the strength of my salvation, you have covered my head in the day of battle.

He prays against them

- 8** Grant not, O YAHWEH, the desires of the wicked: further not his wicked device; *lest* they exalt themselves. Selah.
- 9** *As for* the head of those that compass me about, let the mischief of their own lips cover them.
- 10** Let burning coals fall upon them: let them be cast into the fire; into deep pits, that they rise not up again.
- 11** Let not an evil speaker be established in the earth: evil shall hunt the violent man to overthrow *him*.

He comforts himself by confidence in Elohim

- 12** I know that the YAHWEH will maintain the cause of the afflicted, *and* the right of the poor.
- 13** Surely the righteous shall give thanks unto thy name: the upright shall dwell in thy presence.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY-ONE

A Psalm of David.

David prays that his suit may be acceptable

1 A Psalm of David. YAHWEH, I cry unto you: make haste unto me; give ear unto my voice, when I cry unto you.

2 Let my prayer be set forth before you *as* incense; *and* the lifting up of my hands *as* the evening sacrifice. [Exod 29:30](#); [Rev 5:8](#); [Rev 8:3](#); [[Rev 8:4](#)];

his conscience sincere

3 Set a watch, O YAHWEH, before my mouth; keep the door of my lips.

4 Incline not my heart to *any* evil thing, to practise wicked works with men that work iniquity: and let me not eat of their dainties.

5 Let the righteous smite me; *it shall be* a kindness: and let him reprove me; *it shall be* an excellent oil, *which* shall not break my head: for yet my prayer also *shall be* in their calamities.

6 When their judges are overthrown in stony places, they shall hear my words; for they are sweet.

and his life free from snares

7 Our bones are scattered at the grave's mouth, as when one cutteth and cleaveth *wood* upon the earth. [Ezek 37:1](#); [Ezek 37:11-12](#);

8 But mine eyes *are* unto you, O GOD the Lord: in you is my trust; leave not my being destitute.

9 Keep me from the snares *which* they have laid for me, and the gins of the workers of iniquity.

10 Let the wicked fall into their own nets, whilst that I withal escape.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY-TWO

*An Instruction of David.
A Prayer when he was in the cave.*

David shows that in his trouble all his comfort was in prayer unto Elohim

1 Maschil of David; A Prayer when he was in the cave. I cried unto the YAHWEH with my voice; with my voice unto the YAHWEH did I make my supplication.

2 I poured out my complaint before him; I showed before him my trouble.

3 When my spirit was overwhelmed within me, then you knewest my path. In the way wherein I walked have they privily laid a snare for me. [Ps 77:3](#);

4 I looked on *my* right hand, and beheld, but *there was* no man that would know me: refuge failed me; no man cared for my being.

5 I cried unto you, O YAHWEH: I said, you are my refuge *and* my portion in the land of the living. [Ps 16:5](#);

6 Attend unto my cry; for I am brought very low: deliver me from my persecutors; for they are stronger than I. [Ps 41:1](#); [Ps 79:8](#); [Ps 116:6](#);

7 Bring my being out of prison, that I may praise thy name: the righteous shall compass me about; for you shall deal bountifully with me.

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY-THREE

A Psalm of David.

David prays for favor in judgment

1 A Psalm of David. Hear my prayer, O YAHWEH, give ear to my supplications: in thy faithfulness answer me, *and* in thy righteousness.

2 And enter not into judgment with thy servant: for in thy sight shall no man living be justified. [Rom 3:4](#); [Gal 3:4](#); [\[Job 9:2\]](#); [\[Ps 130:3\]](#); [\[1Cor 4:4\]](#); [\[1John 1:8\]](#);

He complains of his griefs

3 For the enemy has persecuted my being; he has smitten my life down to the ground; he has made me to dwell in darkness, as those that have been long dead.

4 Therefore is my spirit overwhelmed within me; my heart within me is desolate.

He strengthens his faith by meditation and prayer

5 I remember the days of old; I meditate on all thy works; I muse on the work of thy hands. [Ps 77:5](#); [Ps 77:10](#);

6 I stretch forth my hands unto you: my being *thirsteth* after you, as a thirsty land. Selah.

He prays for grace

7 Hear me speedily, O YAHWEH: my spirit faileth: hide not thy face from me, lest I be like unto them that go down into the pit. [\[Ps 28:1\]](#);

8 Cause me to hear thy lovingkindness in the morning; for in you do I trust: cause me to know the way wherein I should walk; for I lift up my being unto you. [Ps 25:1](#);

for deliverance

9 Deliver me, O YAHWEH, from mine enemies: I flee unto you to hide me.

for sanctification

10 Teach me to do thy will; for you are my Elohim: thy spirit *is* good; lead me into the land of uprightness.

11 Quicken me, O YAHWEH, for thy name's sake: for thy righteousness' sake bring my being out of trouble.

for destruction of his enemies

12 And of thy mercy cut off mine enemies, and destroy all them that afflict my being: for I *am* thy servant. [Ps 86:16](#); [Ps 116:16](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY-FOUR

A Psalm of David.

David blesses Elohim for his mercy both to him and to man

1 *A Psalm* of David. Blessed *be* the YAHWEH my strength, which teacheth my hands to war, *and* my fingers to fight: [2Sam 22:35](#); [Ps 18:34](#);

2 My goodness, and my fortress; my high tower, and my deliverer; my shield, and *he* in whom I trust; who subdueth my people under me. [2Sam 22:48](#); [Ps 18:47](#);

3 YAHWEH, what *is* man, that you takest knowledge of him! *or* the son of man, that you makest account of him! [Job 7:17](#); [Ps 8:4](#); [Ps 31:7](#); [Heb 2:6](#);

4 Man is like to vanity: his days *are* as a shadow that passeth away. [Ps 39:5](#); [Ps 62:9](#); [Job 8:9](#); [Job 14:2-3](#); [Ps 102:11](#); [\[Job 7:7\]](#); [\[Job 7:16\]](#); [\[Job 14:1\]](#); [\[Job 14:2\]](#); [\[Eccl 1:2\]](#); [\[Eccl 6:12\]](#); [\[Eccl 12:8\]](#);

He prays that Elohim would powerfully deliver him from his enemies

5 Bow thy heavens, O YAHWEH, and come down: touch the mountains, and they shall smoke. [Ps 18:9](#); [Ps 18:7](#); [Ps 104:32](#);

6 Cast forth lightning, and scatter them: shoot out thine arrows, and destroy them. [2Sam 22:8](#); [Ps 18:14](#); [1Sam 7:10](#);

7 Send thine hand from above; rid me, and deliver me out of great waters, from the hand of strange children;

8 Whose mouth speaketh vanity, and their right hand *is* a right hand of falsehood.

He promises to praise Elohim

9 I will sing a new song unto you, O Elohim: upon a psaltery *and* an instrument of ten strings will I sing praises unto you. [\[Ps 33:3\]](#);

10 *It is he* that giveth salvation unto kings: who delivereth David his servant from the hurtful sword. [\[Ps 60:1\]](#);

He prays for the happy state of the kingdom

11 Rid me, and deliver me from the hand of strange children, whose mouth speaketh vanity, and their right hand *is* a right hand of falsehood:

12 That our sons *may be* as plants grown up in their youth; *that* our daughters *may be* as corner stones, polished *after* the similitude of a palace:

13 *That* our garners *may be* full, providing all manner of store: *that* our sheep may bring forth thousands and ten thousands in our streets:

14 *That* our oxen *may be* strong to labour; *that there be* no breaking in, nor going out; that *there be* no complaining in our streets.

15 Happy *is that* people, that is in such a case: yes, happy *is that* people, whose Elohim *is* the YAHWEH. [\[Ps 33:12\]](#); [\[Zech 13:9\]](#);

A Praise of David.

David praises Elohim for his fame

- 1** David's *Psalms* of praise. I will extol you, my Elohim, O king; and I will bless thy name for ever and ever.
- 2** Every day will I bless you; and I will praise thy name for ever and ever.
- 3** Great *is* the YAHWEH, and greatly to be praised; and his greatness *is* unsearchable. [Ps 18:3](#); [Ps 150:2](#); [Job 5:9](#);
- 4** One generation shall praise thy works to another, and shall declare thy mighty acts. [Deut 4:9](#); [Deut 6:7](#);
- 5** I will speak of the glorious honour of thy majesty, and of thy wondrous works.
- 6** And *men* shall speak of the might of thy terrible acts: and I will declare thy greatness.
- 7** They shall abundantly utter the memory of thy great goodness, and shall sing of thy righteousness. [Ps 119:171](#);

for his goodness

- 8** The YAHWEH *is* gracious, and full of compassion; slow to anger, and of great mercy. [Exod 34:6-7](#); [Num 14:18](#); [Ps 86:15](#); [Ps 103:8](#); [\[Exod 34:7\]](#); [\[Neh 1:5\]](#);
- 9** The YAHWEH *is* good to all: and his tender mercies *are* over all his works.
- 10** All thy works shall praise you, O YAHWEH; and thy saints shall bless you.

for his kingdom

- 11** They shall speak of the glory of thy kingdom, and talk of thy power;
- 12** To make known to the sons of men his mighty acts, and the glorious majesty of his kingdom.
- 13** Thy kingdom *is* an everlasting kingdom, and thy dominion *endureth* throughout all generations. [\[Ps 10:16\]](#); [\[Ps 146:10\]](#);

for his providence

- 14** The YAHWEH upholdeth all that fall, and raiseth up all *those that be* bowed down. [\[Ps 146:8\]](#);
- 15** The eyes of all wait upon you; and you givest them their meat in due season. [Ps 104:27](#);
- 16** You openest thine hand, and satisfiest the desire of every living thing.

for his justice, holiness, and saving mercy

- 17** The YAHWEH *is* righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works. [\[Jer 3:12\]](#); [\[Rev 15:3\]](#);
- 18** The YAHWEH *is* nigh unto all them that call upon him, to all that call upon him in truth. [\[Prov 15:29\]](#);
- 19** He will fulfil the desire of them that fear him: he also will hear their cry, and will save them.
- 20** The YAHWEH preserveth all them that love him: but all the wicked will he destroy.
- 21** My mouth shall speak the praise of the YAHWEH: and let all flesh bless his holy name for ever and ever.

The Psalmist vows perpetual praises to Elohim

- 1** Praise you the YAHWEH. Praise the YAHWEH, O my being. [\[Ps 104:1\]](#);
2 While I live will I praise the YAHWEH: I will sing praises unto my Elohim while I have any being. [\[Ps 104:33\]](#);

He exhorts not to trust in man

- 3** Put not your trust in princes, *nor* in the son of man, in whom *there is* no help. [Ps 118:8-9](#); [\[Ps 118:8\]](#);
4 His breath goes forth, he returneth to his earth; in that very day his thoughts perish.

Elohim, for his power, justice, mercy, and kingdom, is only worthy to be trusted

- 5** Happy *is he* that *has* the Elohim of Jacob for his help, whose hope *is* in the YAHWEH his Elohim:
6 Which made heaven, and earth, the sea, and all that therein *is*: which keepeth truth for ever: [\[Neh 9:6\]](#);
[\[Acts 14:15\]](#); [\[Acts 17:24\]](#); [\[Rev 14:7\]](#);
7 Which executeth judgment for the oppressed: which giveth food to the hungry. The YAHWEH looseth the prisoners:
8 The YAHWEH openeth *the eyes of* the blind: the YAHWEH raiseth them that are bowed down: the YAHWEH loveth the righteous: [Matt 9:30](#); [John 9:7](#); [John 9:32](#); [Ps 145:14](#); [Ps 147:3](#); [Luke 13:13](#); [\[John 10:21\]](#);
9 The YAHWEH preserveth the strangers; he relieveth the fatherless and widow: but the way of the wicked he turneth upside down.
10 The YAHWEH shall reign for ever, *even* thy Elohim, O Zion, unto all generations. Praise you the YAHWEH. [Exod 15:18](#); [Ps 145:13](#); [\[Ps 10:16\]](#);

The prophet exhorts to praise Elohim for his care of the church

1 Praise you the YAHWEH: for *it is* good to sing praises unto our Elohim; for *it is* pleasant; *and* praise is comely. [Ps 33:1](#); [\[Song 4:3\]](#);

2 The YAHWEH builds up Jerusalem: he gathereth together the outcasts of Israel.

3 He healeth the broken in heart, and bindeth up their wounds. [Exod 15:26](#); [Job 5:18](#); [\[Ps 146:8\]](#);

his power and wisdom

4 He telleth the number of the stars; he calleth them all by *their* names. [Isa 40:26](#);

5 Great *is* our Lord, and of great power: his understanding *is* infinite. [\[Isa 40:28\]](#);

his mercy

6 The YAHWEH lifteth up the meek: he casteth the wicked down to the ground.

his providence

7 Sing unto the YAHWEH with thanksgiving; sing praise upon the harp unto our Elohim:

8 Who covereth the heaven with clouds, who prepareth rain for the earth, who maketh grass to grow upon the mountains. [Hos 2:21-22](#); [Job 38:26-27](#); [Ps 104:14](#); [\[Jer 14:22\]](#);

9 He giveth to the beast his food, *and* to the young ravens which cry. [\[Job 38:41\]](#); [\[Matt 6:26\]](#); [\[Luke 12:24\]](#);

10 He delighteth not in the strength of the horse: he taketh not pleasure in the legs of a man.

11 The YAHWEH taketh pleasure in them that fear him, in those that hope in his mercy.

to praise him for his blessings upon the kingdom

12 Praise the YAHWEH, O Jerusalem; praise thy Elohim, O Zion.

13 For he has strengthened the bars of thy gates; he has blessed thy children within you.

14 He maketh peace *in* thy borders, *and* filleth you with the finest of the wheat.

for his power over the elements

15 He sendeth forth his commandment *upon* earth: his word runs very swiftly. [Ps 33:9](#);

16 He giveth snow like wool: he scattereth the hoarfrost like ashes. [\[Job 37:6\]](#);

17 He casteth forth his ice like morsels: who can stand before his cold? [\[Job 37:10\]](#);

18 He sendeth out his word, and melteth them: he causeth his wind to blow, *and* the waters flow.

and for his ordinances in the church

19 He sheweth his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments unto Israel. [\[Rom 3:2\]](#);

20 He has not dealt so with any nation: and *as for his* judgments, they have not known them. Praise you the YAHWEH. [Acts 14:16](#); [\[2Sam 7:23\]](#); [\[1Chr 17:21\]](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY-EIGHT

The psalmist exhorts the celestial

- 1** Praise you the YAHWEH. Praise you the YAHWEH from the heavens: praise him in the heights. [Rev 5:13](#); [Luke 2:14](#);
- 2** Praise you him, all his angels: praise you him, all his hosts.
- 3** Praise you him, sun and moon: praise him, all you stars of light.
- 4** Praise him, you heavens of heavens, and you waters that *be* above the heavens. [\[Gen 1:7\]](#);
- 5** Let them praise the name of the YAHWEH: for he commanded, and they were created. [Gen 1:6-8](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Ps 33:9](#);
- 6** He has also established them for ever and ever: he has made a decree which shall not pass. [Ps 104:5](#); [Ps 119:91](#); [Job 14:5](#); [Job 14:13](#); [Job 26:10](#); [Job 38:33](#); [Jer 31:35](#); [Jer 33:25](#);

the terrestrial

- 7** Praise the YAHWEH from the earth, you dragons, and all deeps:
- 8** Fire, and hail; snow, and vapour; stormy wind fulfilling his word:
- 9** Mountains, and all hills; fruitful trees, and all cedars:
- 10** Beasts, and all cattle; creeping things, and flying fowl:

and the rational creatures to praise Elohim

- 11** Kings of the earth, and all people; princes, and all judges of the earth:
- 12** Both young men, and maidens; old men, and children:
- 13** Let them praise the name of the YAHWEH: for his name alone is excellent; his glory *is* above the earth and heaven. [Prov 18:10](#); [Isa 12:4](#);
- 14** He also exalteth the horn of his people, the praise of all his saints; *even* of the children of Israel, a people near unto him. Praise you the YAHWEH. [Ps 132:17](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FORTY-NINE

The prophet exhorts to praise Elohim for his love to the church

- 1** Praise you the YAHWEH. Sing unto the YAHWEH a new song, *and* his praise in the congregation of saints.
- 2** Let Israel rejoice in him that made him: let the children of Zion be joyful in their King. [Ps 100:3](#);
- 3** Let them praise his name in the dance: let them sing praises unto him with the timbrel and harp. [Ps 81:2-3](#);
- 4** For the YAHWEH taketh pleasure in his people: he will beautify the meek with salvation.

and for that power which he has given to the church

- 5** Let the saints be joyful in glory: let them sing aloud upon their beds.
- 6** *Let* the high *praises* of Elohim *be* in their mouth, and a twoedged sword in their hand; [2Thess 2:8](#); [Heb 4:12](#); [Rev 1:16](#);
- 7** To execute vengeance upon the heathen, *and* punishments upon the people;
- 8** To bind their kings with chains, and their nobles with fetters of iron; [Matt 18:18](#);
- 9** To execute upon them the judgment written: this honour have all his saints. Praise you the YAHWEH. [Deut 4:6](#);

PSALM ONE HUNDRED FIFTY

An exhortation to praise Elohim

1 Praise you the YAHWEH. Praise Elohim in his sanctuary: praise him in the firmament of his power. [Isa 6:3](#);

2 Praise him for his mighty acts: praise him according to his excellent greatness. [\[Ps 145:3\]](#);

with all kinds of instruments

3 Praise him with the sound of the trumpet: praise him with the psaltery and harp.

4 Praise him with the timbrel and dance: praise him with stringed instruments and organs.

5 Praise him upon the loud cymbals: praise him upon the high sounding cymbals.

6 Let every thing that has breath praise the YAHWEH. Praise you the YAHWEH.

Proverbs

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)

PROVERBS ONE

The use of the proverbs

- 1** The proverbs of Solomon the son of David, king of Israel;
- 2** To know wisdom and instruction; to perceive the words of understanding;
- 3** To receive the instruction of wisdom, justice, and judgment, and equity;
- 4** To give subtilty to the simple, to the young man knowledge and discretion.
- 5** A wise *man* will hear, and will increase learning; and a man of understanding shall attain unto wise counsels:
- 6** To understand a proverb, and the interpretation; the words of the wise, and their dark sayings.

An exhortation to fear Elohim, and believe his word

- 7** The fear of the YAHWEH *is* the beginning of knowledge: *but* fools despise wisdom and instruction. [Job 28:28](#); [Ps 111:10](#); [Prov 9:10](#); [Ecd 12:13](#); [\[Prov 15:33\]](#);
- 8** My son, hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother: [\[Prov 6:20\]](#); [\[Prov 23:22\]](#);
- 9** For they *shall be* an ornament of grace unto thy head, and chains about thy neck.

to avoid the enticings of sinners

- 10** My son, if sinners entice you, consent you not. [Prov 4:14](#); [\[Ps 1:1\]](#);
- 11** If they say, Come with us, let us lay wait for blood, let us lurk privily for the innocent without cause: [\[Prov 12:6\]](#);
- 12** Let us swallow them up alive as the grave; and whole, as those that go down into the pit:
- 13** We shall find all precious substance, we shall fill our houses with spoil:
- 14** Cast in thy lot among us; let us all have one purse:
- 15** My son, walk not you in the way with them; refrain thy foot from their path: [\[Ps 1:1\]](#); [\[Prov 4:14\]](#);
- 16** For their feet run to evil, and make haste to shed blood. [Isa 59:7](#); [Rom 3:15](#);
- 17** Surely in vain the net is spread in the sight of any bird. [\[Prov 7:23\]](#);
- 18** And they lay wait for their *own* blood; they lurk privily for their *own* lives. [\[Prov 12:6\]](#);
- 19** So *are* the ways of every one that is greedy of gain; *which* taketh away the life of the owners thereof. [\[Prov 4:9\]](#); [\[Prov 15:27\]](#);

Wisdom complains of her contempt

- 20** Wisdom cries without; she uttereth her voice in the streets: [\[Prov 8:1\]](#);
- 21** She cries in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she uttereth her words, *saying*,
- 22** How long, you simple ones, will you love simplicity? and the scorers delight in their scorning, and fools hate knowledge?
- 23** Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

She threatens her contemners

24 Because I have called, and you refused; I have stretched out my hand, and no man regarded; [Isa 65:12](#); [Isa 66:4](#); [Jer 13:10](#); [\[Jer 7:13\]](#);
25 But you have set at nought all my counsel, and would none of my reproof:
26 I also will laugh at your calamity; I will mock when your fear cometh;
27 When your fear cometh as desolation, and your destruction cometh as a whirlwind; when distress and anguish cometh upon you. [Job 27:9](#); [Job 35:12](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Jer 11:11](#); [Jer 14:12](#); [Ezek 8:18](#); [Mic 3:4](#);
28 Then shall they call upon me, but I will not answer; they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me: [\[Job 27:9\]](#); [\[Job 35:12\]](#); [\[Isa 1:15\]](#); [\[Jer 11:11\]](#); [\[Jer 14:12\]](#); [\[Ezek 8:18\]](#); [\[Zech 7:13\]](#);
29 For that they hated knowledge, and did not choose the fear of the YAHWEH:
30 They would none of my counsel: they despised all my reproof.
31 Therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way, and be filled with their own devices. [\[Prov 14:14\]](#);
32 For the turning away of the simple shall slay them, and the prosperity of fools shall destroy them.
33 But whoso hearkeneth unto me shall dwell safely, and shall be quiet from fear of evil. [\[Ecc 8:12\]](#);

PROVERBS TWO

Wisdom promises godliness to her children

1 My son, if you will receive my words, and hide my commandments with you;
2 So that you incline thine ear unto wisdom, *and* apply thine heart to understanding;
3 **yes**, if you criest after knowledge, *and* liftest up thy voice for understanding; [\[Jas 1:5\]](#);
4 If you seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as *for* hid treasures; [Matt 13:44](#);
5 Then shall you understand the fear of the YAHWEH, and find the knowledge of Elohim.
6 For the YAHWEH giveth wisdom: out of his mouth *cometh* knowledge and understanding. [1Kgs 3:9](#); [1Kgs 3:12](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [\[Job 32:8\]](#); [\[Jas 1:17\]](#);
7 He layeth up sound wisdom for the righteous: *he is* a buckler to them that walk uprightly.
8 He keepeth the paths of judgment, and preserveth the way of his saints.
9 Then shall you understand righteousness, and judgment, and equity; yes, every good path.

and safety from evil company

10 When wisdom entereth into thine heart, and knowledge is pleasant unto thy being;
11 Discretion shall preserve you, understanding shall keep you:
12 To deliver you from the way of the evil *man*, from the man that speaketh froward things;
13 Who leave the paths of uprightness, to walk in the ways of darkness;
14 Who rejoice to do evil, *and* delight in the frowardness of the wicked;
15 Whose ways *are* crooked, and *they* froward in their paths:
16 To deliver you from the strange woman, *even* from the stranger *which* flattereth with her words; [Prov 5:3](#); [Prov 6:24](#); [Prov 7:5](#); [\[Prov 22:14\]](#);
17 Which forsaketh the guide of her youth, and forgetteth the covenant of her Elohim.
18 For her house inclineth unto death, and her paths unto the dead. [\[Prov 7:27\]](#); [\[Prov 9:18\]](#);
19 None that go unto her return again, neither take they hold of the paths of life.

and direction in good ways

20 That you may walk in the way of good *men*, and keep the paths of the righteous.
21 For the upright shall dwell in the land, and the perfect shall remain in it. [Ps 37:29](#); [\[Prov 15:25\]](#);
22 But the wicked shall be cut off from the earth, and the transgressors shall be rooted out of it. [Job 18:17](#); [Ps 104:35](#);

PROVERBS THREE

Sundry exhortations

- 1** My son, forget not my law; but let thine heart keep my commandments:
- 2** For length of days, and long life, and peace, shall they add to you. [Deut 8:1](#); [Deut 30:20](#);
- 3** Let not mercy and truth forsake you: bind them about thy neck; write them upon the table of thine heart: [Exod 13:9](#); [Deut 6:8](#); [[Prov 6:21](#)];
- 4** So shall you find favor and good understanding in the sight of Elohim and man.
- 5** Trust in the YAHWEH with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding.
- 6** In all thy ways acknowledge him, and he shall direct thy paths. [1Chr 28:9](#);
- 7** Be not wise in thine own eyes: fear the YAHWEH, and depart from evil. [Rom 12:16](#); [[Prov 12:15](#)]; [[Eccl 12:13](#)]; [[Isa 5:21](#)]; [[1Cor 3:18](#)]; [[1Cor 4:6](#)];
- 8** It shall be health to thy navel, and marrow to thy bones.
- 9** Honour the YAHWEH with thy substance, and with the firstfruits of all thine increase: [Exod 23:19](#); [Exod 34:26](#); [Deut 26:2](#); [Mal 3:10](#); [Luke 14:13](#);
- 10** So shall thy barns be filled with plenty, and thy presses shall burst out with new wine. [Deut 28:8](#);
- 11** My son, despise not the chastening of the YAHWEH; neither be weary of his correction: [Job 5:17](#); [Heb 12:5](#);
- 12** For whom the YAHWEH loveth he correcteth; even as a father the son *in whom* he delighteth. [Rev 3:19](#);

The gain of wisdom

- 13** Happy *is* the man *that* finds wisdom, and the man *that* getteth understanding.
- 14** For the merchandise of it *is* better than the merchandise of silver, and the gain thereof than fine gold. [Job 28:15](#); [Ps 19:10](#); [Prov 8:11](#); [Prov 8:19](#); [Prov 16:16](#); [[Prov 20:15](#)];
- 15** She *is* more precious than rubies: and all the things you canst desire are not to be compared unto her. [Prov 8:11](#);
- 16** Length of days *is* in her right hand; *and* in her left hand riches and honour. [[Prov 8:18](#)];
- 17** Her ways *are* ways of pleasantness, and all her paths *are* peace.
- 18** She *is* a tree of life to them that lay hold upon her: and happy *is every one* that retaineth her.
- 19** The YAHWEH by wisdom has founded the earth; by understanding has he established the heavens.
- 20** By his knowledge the depths are broken up, and the clouds drop down the dew. [Gen 1:9-10](#);
- 21** My son, let not them depart from thine eyes: keep sound wisdom and discretion: [[Prov 19:16](#)];
- 22** So shall they be life unto thy being, and grace to thy neck.
- 23** Then shall you walk in thy way safely, and thy foot shall not stumble. [Ps 37:24](#); [Ps 91:11-12](#); [[Prov 6:22](#)];
- 24** When you liest down, you shall not be afraid: yes, you shall lie down, and thy sleep shall be sweet. [Lev 6:26](#); [Job 11:19](#); [Ps 3:5](#); [Ps 4:8](#); [Ps 91:5-6](#);
- 25** Be not afraid of sudden fear, neither of the desolation of the wicked, when it cometh. [[Ps 91:5](#)];
- 26** For the YAHWEH shall be thy confidence, and shall keep thy foot from being taken.

Exhortation to beneficence, etc

- 27** Withhold not good from them to whom it is due, when it is in the power of thine hand to do *it*.
- 28** Say not unto thy neighbour, Go, and come again, and to morrow I will give; when you have it by you. [[Luke 14:12](#)]; [[2Cor 8:12](#)]; [[1Pet 4:10](#)];
- 29** Devise not evil against thy neighbour, seeing he dwelleth securely by you.
- 30** Strive not with a man without cause, if he have done you no harm.

31 Envy you not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways. [Ps 37:1](#); [Ps 73:3](#); [Prov 23:17](#); [[Prov 24:1](#)]; [[Prov 24:19](#)];

32 For the froward *is* abomination to the YAHWEH: but his secret *is* with the righteous. [Ps 25:14](#);

The different state of the wicked and upright

33 The curse of the YAHWEH *is* in the house of the wicked: but he blesseth the habitation of the just. [Lev 26:14](#); [Deut 28:15](#); [Mal 2:2](#);

34 Surely he scorneth the scorers: but he giveth grace unto the lowly. [Jas 4:6](#); [1Pet 5:5](#);

35 The wise shall inherit glory: but shame shall be the promotion of fools.

PROVERBS FOUR

Solomon persuades to wisdom

1 Hear, you children, the instruction of a father, and attend to know understanding.

2 For I give you good doctrine, forsake you not my law.

3 For I was my father's son, tender and only *beloved* in the sight of my mother. [1Chr 29:1](#);

4 He taught me also, and said unto me, Let thine heart retain my words: keep my commandments, and live. [1Chr 28:9](#); [[Prov 7:2](#)];

5 Get wisdom, get understanding: forget *it* not; neither decline from the words of my mouth.

6 Forsake her not, and she shall preserve you: love her, and she shall keep you.

7 Wisdom *is* the principal thing; *therefore* get wisdom: and with all thy getting get understanding. [Prov 23:23](#);

8 Exalt her, and she shall promote you: she shall bring you to honour, when you dost embrace her.

9 She shall give to thine head an ornament of grace: a crown of glory shall she deliver to you. [Prov 1:19](#);

10 Hear, O my son, and receive my sayings; and the years of thy life shall be many.

11 I have taught you in the way of wisdom; I have led you in right paths.

12 When you go, thy steps shall not be straitened; and when you runnest, you shall not stumble. [Ps 91:11](#);

13 Take fast hold of instruction; let *her* not go: keep her; for she *is* thy life. [[Prov 4:22](#)];

and to shun wickedness

14 Enter not into the path of the wicked, and go not in the way of evil *men*. [Ps 1:1](#); [Prov 1:10](#); [Prov 1:15](#);

15 Avoid it, pass not by it, turn from it, and pass away.

16 For they sleep not, except they have done mischief; and their sleep is taken away, unless they cause *some* to fall.

17 For they eat the bread of wickedness, and drink the wine of violence. [[1Sam 15:22](#)];

18 But the path of the just *is* as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day. [[Prov 13:9](#)]; [[Phil 2:15](#)];

19 The way of the wicked *is* as darkness: they know not at what they stumble.

He exhorts to sanctification

20 My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto my sayings.

21 Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart.

22 For they *are* life unto those that find them, and health to all their flesh. [Prov 4:13](#);

23 Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it *are* the issues of life.

- 24 Put away from you a froward mouth, and perverse lips put far from you.
25 Let thine eyes look right on, and let thine eyelids look straight before you.
26 Ponder the path of thy feet, and let all thy ways be established.
27 Turn not to the right hand nor to the left: remove thy foot from evil. [Deut 5:32](#); [Deut 28:14](#);

PROVERBS FIVE

Solomon exhorts to wisdom

- 1 My son, attend unto my wisdom, *and* bow thine ear to my understanding:
2 That you may regard discretion, and *that* thy lips may keep knowledge.

He shows the mischief of whoredom and riot

- 3 For the lips of a strange woman drop *as* a honeycomb, and her mouth *is* smoother than oil: [Prov 2:16](#);
[Prov 6:24](#); [[Prov 7:5](#)]; [[Prov 22:14](#)]; [[Eccl 7:26](#)];
4 But her end is bitter as wormwood, sharp as a twoedged sword. [[Prov 14:13](#)];
5 Her feet go down to death; her steps take hold on hell. [Prov 7:27](#);
6 Lest you should ponder the path of life, her ways are moveable, *that* you canst not know *them*.
7 Hear me now therefore, O you children, and depart not from the words of my mouth.
8 Remove thy way far from her, and come not nigh the door of her house:
9 Lest you give thine honour unto others, and thy years unto the cruel: [Prov 6:34-35](#);
10 Lest strangers be filled with thy wealth; and thy labours *be* in the house of a stranger;
11 And you mourn at the last, when thy flesh and thy body are consumed,
12 And say, How have I hated instruction, and my heart despised reproof;
13 And have not obeyed the voice of my teachers, nor inclined mine ear to them that instructed me!
14 I was almost in all evil in the midst of the congregation and assembly.

He exhorts to contentedness, liberality, and chastity

- 15 Drink waters out of thine own cistern, and running waters out of thine own well.
16 Let thy fountains be dispersed abroad, *and* rivers of waters in the streets.
17 Let them be only thine own, and not strangers' with you.
18 Let thy fountain be blessed: and rejoice with the wife of thy youth.
19 *Let her be as* the loving hind and pleasant roe; let her breasts satisfy you at all times; and be you ravished always with her love.
20 And why will you, my son, be ravished with a strange woman, and embrace the bosom of a stranger?
21 For the ways of man *are* before the eyes of the YAHWEH, and he pondereth all his goings. [2Chr 16:9](#);
[Job 31:4](#); [Job 34:21](#); [Prov 15:3](#); [Jer 16:17](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [[Job 14:16](#)];

The wicked are overtaken with their own sins

- 22 His own iniquities shall take the wicked himself, and he shall be holden with the cords of his sins. [[Ps 7:15](#)]; [[Ps 10:2](#)];
23 He shall die without instruction; and in the greatness of his folly he shall go astray.

PROVERBS SIX

Against suretyship

- 1** My son, if you be surety for thy friend, *if* you have stricken thy hand with a stranger, [Prov 22:26]; [Prov 27:13];
2 You are snared with the words of thy mouth, you are taken with the words of thy mouth.
3 Do this now, my son, and deliver thyself, when you are come into the hand of thy friend; go, humble thyself, and make sure thy friend.
4 Give not sleep to thine eyes, nor slumber to thine eyelids.
5 Deliver thyself as a roe from the hand *of the hunter*, and as a bird from the hand of the fowler. [Ps 124:7];

idleness

- 6** Go to the ant, you sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise:
7 Which having no guide, overseer, or ruler,
8 Provideth her meat in the summer, *and* gathereth her food in the harvest. [Prov 30:25];
9 How long will you sleep, O sluggard? when will you arise out of thy sleep? [Prov 13:4; Prov 20:4; Prov 24:33-34; [Prov 19:15];
10 Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: [Prov 24:33]; [Eccl 4:5];
11 So shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth, and thy want as an armed man.

and mischievousness

- 12** A naughty person, a wicked man, walketh with a froward mouth.
13 He winketh with his eyes, he speaketh with his feet, he teacheth with his fingers; [Prov 16:30];
14 Frowardness *is* in his heart, he deviseth mischief continually; he soweth discord. [Gen 6:5]; [Matt 15:19]; [Mark 7:21];
15 Therefore shall his calamity come suddenly; suddenly shall he be broken without remedy.

Seven things hateful to Elohim

- 16** These six *things* the YAHWEH hates: yes, seven *are* an abomination unto him:
17 A proud look, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood, [Prov 30:13; [Ps 131:1]; [Prov 16:5];
18 A heart that deviseth wicked imaginations, feet that be swift in running to mischief, [Rom 3:15; [Prov 15:26];
19 A false witness *that* speaketh lies, and he that soweth discord among brethren.

The blessings of obedience

- 20** My son, keep thy father's commandment, and forsake not the law of thy mother: [Prov 1:8];
21 Bind them continually upon thine heart, *and* tie them about thy neck. [Prov 3:3];
22 When you go, it shall lead you; when you sleepest, it shall keep you; and *when* you awakest, it shall talk with you. [Prov 3:23-24];
23 For the commandment *is* a lamp; and the law *is* light; and reproofs of instruction *are* the way of life: [Ps 19:8; Ps 119:105];
24 To keep you from the evil woman, from the flattery of the tongue of a strange woman. [Prov 2:16; Prov 5:3; Prov 7:5; [Eccl 7:26];

The mischiefs of whoredom

- 25** Lust not after her beauty in thine heart; neither let her take you with her eyelids.

- 26 For by means of a whorish woman *a man is brought* to a piece of bread: and the adulteress will hunt for the precious life. [Ecd 7:26];
- 27 Can a man take fire in his bosom, and his clothes not be burned?
- 28 Can one go upon hot coals, and his feet not be burned?
- 29 So he that goes in to his neighbour's wife; whosoever toucheth her shall not be innocent.
- 30 *Men* do not despise a thief, if he steal to satisfy his being when he is hungry;
- 31 But *if* he be found, he shall restore sevenfold; he shall give all the substance of his house. Exod 22:1; Exod 22:4;
- 32 *But* whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding: he *that* doeth it destroyeth his own being.
- 33 A wound and dishonour shall he get; and his reproach shall not be wiped away.
- 34 For jealousy *is* the rage of a man: therefore he will not spare in the day of vengeance. [Prov 5:9];
- 35 He will not regard any ransom; neither will he rest content, though you givest many gifts.

PROVERBS SEVEN

Solomon persuades to a sincere and kind familiarity with wisdom

- 1 My son, keep my words, and lay up my commandments with you.
- 2 Keep my commandments, and live; and my law as the apple of thine eye. Lev 18:5; Prov 4:4;
- 3 Bind them upon thy fingers, write them upon the table of thine heart. Deut 6:8; Deut 11:18;
- 4 Say unto wisdom, you are my sister; and call understanding *thy* kinswoman:
- 5 That they may keep you from the strange woman, from the stranger *which* flattereth with her words. Prov 5:3; [Prov 2:16]; [Prov 6:24]; [Prov 22:14];

In an example of his own experience, he shows

- 6 For at the window of my house I looked through my casement, [Ecd 7:26];
- 7 And beheld among the simple ones, I discerned among the youths, a young man void of understanding,
- 8 Passing through the street near her corner; and he went the way to her house, [Job 24:15];
- 9 In the twilight, in the evening, in the black and dark night:

the cunning of a harlot

- 10 And, behold, there met him a woman *with* the attire of a harlot, and cunning of heart.
- 11 (She *is* loud and stubborn; her feet abide not in her house: Prov 9:13;
- 12 Now *is she* without, now in the streets, and lies in wait at every corner.)
- 13 So she caught him, and kissed him, *and* with an impudent face said unto him, [Gen 39:7];
- 14 *I have* peace offerings with me; this day have I payed my vows.
- 15 Therefore came I forth to meet you, diligently to seek thy face, and I have found you.
- 16 I have decked my bed with coverings of tapestry, with carved *works*, with fine linen of Egypt.
- 17 I have perfumed my bed with myrrh, aloes, and cinnamon. [Ezek 23:41];
- 18 Come, let us take our fill of love until the morning: let us solace ourselves with loves.
- 19 For the goodman *is* not at home, he is gone a long journey:
- 20 He has taken a bag of money with him, *and* will come home at the day appointed.
- 21 With her much fair speech she caused him to yield, with the flattering of her lips she forced him.

and the desperate simplicity of a young wanton

22 He goes after her immediately, as an ox goes to the slaughter, or as a fool to the correction of the stocks;

23 Till a dart strike through his liver; as a bird hasteth to the snare, and knoweth not that it *is* for his life. [Prov 1:17](#); [\[Eccl 7:26\]](#);

He dehorteth from such wickedness

24 Harken unto me now therefore, O you children, and attend to the words of my mouth.

25 Let not thine heart decline to her ways, go not astray in her paths. [\[Job 31:9\]](#);

26 For she has cast down many wounded: yes, many strong *men* have been slain by her.

27 Her house *is* the way to hell, going down to the chambers of death. [Prov 2:18](#); [Prov 5:5](#);

PROVERBS EIGHT

The fame

1 Does not wisdom cry? and understanding put forth her voice? [Prov 1:20-21](#);

2 She standeth in the top of high places, by the way in the places of the paths. [\[Prov 9:3\]](#);

3 She cries at the gates, at the entry of the city, at the coming in at the doors.

4 Unto you, O men, I call; and my voice *is* to the sons of man.

5 O you simple, understand wisdom: and, you fools, be you of an understanding heart.

and evidence of wisdom

6 Hear; for I will speak of excellent things; and the opening of my lips *shall be* right things.

7 For my mouth shall speak truth; and wickedness *is* an abomination to my lips.

8 All the words of my mouth *are* in righteousness; *there is* nothing froward or perverse in them.

9 They *are* all plain to him that understandeth, and right to them that find knowledge.

The excellency

10 Receive my instruction, and not silver; and knowledge rather than choice gold.

11 For wisdom *is* better than rubies; and all the things that may be desired are not to be compared to it. [Job 28:15](#); [Ps 19:10](#); [Prov 3:14-15](#); [Prov 16:16](#); [\[Ps 119:103\]](#); [\[Prov 3:14\]](#); [\[Prov 3:15\]](#);

the nature

12 I wisdom dwell with prudence, and find out knowledge of witty inventions.

13 The fear of the YAHWEH *is* to hate evil: pride, and arrogancy, and the evil way, and the froward mouth, do I hate. [\[Prov 16:5\]](#);

14 Counsel *is* mine, and sound wisdom: I *am* understanding; I have strength.

the power

15 By me kings reign, and princes decree justice. [\[Rom 13:1\]](#);

16 By me princes rule, and nobles, *even* all the judges of the earth.

17 I love them that love me; and those that seek me early shall find me. [\[Matt 7:8\]](#); [\[Jas 2:5\]](#);

the riches

18 Riches and honour *are* with me; yes, durable riches and righteousness. [Prov 3:16](#);

19 My fruit *is* better than gold, yes, than fine gold; and my revenue than choice silver. [Prov 3:14](#); [\[Job 28:15\]](#); [\[Prov 16:16\]](#);

- 20 I lead in the way of righteousness, in the midst of the paths of judgment:
21 That I may cause those that love me to inherit substance; and I will fill their treasures.

and the eternity of wisdom

- 22 The YAHWEH possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old. [\[John 1:1\];](#)
23 I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was. [John 1:1;](#)
24 When *there were* no depths, I was brought forth; when *there were* no fountains abounding with water. [\[Gen 1:7\];](#)
25 Before the mountains were settled, before the hills was I brought forth:
26 While as yet he had not made the earth, nor the fields, nor the highest part of the dust of the world.
27 When he prepared the heavens, I *was* there: when he set a compass upon the face of the depth: [Job 26:10;](#)
28 When he established the clouds above: when he strengthened the fountains of the deep: [Gen 7:11; \[Gen 1:6\];](#)
29 When he gave to the sea his decree, that the waters should not pass his commandment: when he appointed the foundations of the earth: [Gen 1:9-10; Job 38:10-11; Ps 104:9; \[Job 26:10\]; \[Job 28:25\]; \[Job 38:4\]; \[Job 38:8\];](#)
30 Then I was by him, *as* one brought up *with him*: and I was daily *his* delight, rejoicing always before him; [John 5:17;](#)
31 Rejoicing in the habitable part of his earth; and my delights *were* with the sons of men.

Wisdom is to be desired for the blessedness it brings

- 32 Now therefore hearken unto me, O you children: for blessed *are they that* keep my ways. [Ps 119:1-2; Ps 128:1; Luke 11:28;](#)
33 Hear instruction, and be wise, and refuse it not.
34 Blessed *is* the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors.
35 For whoso finds me finds life, and shall obtain favor of the YAHWEH. [Prov 12:2;](#)
36 But he that sinneth against me wrongeth his own being: all they that hate me love death.

PROVERBS NINE

The discipline

- 1** Wisdom has built her house, she has hewn out her seven pillars:
- 2** She has killed her beasts; she has mingled her wine; she has also furnished her table.
- 3** She has sent forth her maidens: she cries upon the highest places of the city, [Prov 8:2](#);

and doctrine of wisdom

- 4** Whoso *is* simple, let him turn in hither: *as for* him that wanteth understanding, she saith to him,
- 5** Come, eat of my bread, and drink of the wine *which* I have mingled.
- 6** Forsake the foolish, and live; and go in the way of understanding.
- 7** He that reproveth a scorner getteth to himself shame: and he that rebuketh a wicked *man getteth* himself a blot.
- 8** Reprove not a scorner, lest he hate you: rebuke a wise man, and he will love you. [Matt 7:6](#); [[Prov 23:9](#)];
- 9** Give *instruction* to a wise *man*, and he will be yet wiser: teach a just *man*, and he will increase in learning.
- 10** The fear of the YAHWEH *is* the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the holy *is* understanding. [Job 28:28](#); [Ps 111:10](#); [Prov 1:7](#); [[Prov 15:33](#)];
- 11** For by me thy days shall be multiplied, and the years of thy life shall be increased. [Prov 10:27](#);
- 12** If you be wise, you shall be wise for thyself: but *if* you scornest, you alone shall bear *it*.

The custom

- 13** A foolish woman *is* clamorous: *she is* simple, and knoweth nothing. [Prov 7:11](#);
- 14** For she sitteth at the door of her house, on a seat in the high places of the city,
- 15** To call passengers who go right on their ways:

and error of folly

- 16** Whoso *is* simple, let him turn in hither: and *as for* him that wanteth understanding, she saith to him,
- 17** Stolen waters are sweet, and bread *eaten* in secret is pleasant. [Prov 20:17](#);
- 18** But he knoweth not that the dead *are* there; *and that* her guests *are* in the depths of hell. [Prov 2:18](#);

From this chapter to the five and twentieth are sundry observations of moral virtues, and their contrary vices

- 1** The proverbs of Solomon. A wise son maketh a glad father: but a foolish son *is* the heaviness of his mother. [Prov 15:20](#); [\[Prov 17:25\]](#); [\[Prov 19:13\]](#); [\[Prov 23:24\]](#); [\[Prov 29:3\]](#); [\[Prov 29:15\]](#);
- 2** Treasures of wickedness profit nothing: but righteousness delivereth from death. [Prov 11:4](#); [\[Prov 13:11\]](#); [\[Prov 21:6\]](#);
- 3** The YAHWEH will not suffer the being of the righteous to famish: but he casteth away the substance of the wicked.
- 4** He becometh poor that dealeth *with* a slack hand: but the hand of the diligent maketh rich. [Prov 12:24](#); [\[Prov 19:15\]](#); [\[Prov 21:5\]](#); [\[Prov 21:6\]](#);
- 5** He that gathereth in summer *is* a wise son: *but* he that sleepeth in harvest *is* a son that causeth shame.
- 6** Blessings *are* upon the head of the just: but violence covereth the mouth of the wicked.
- 7** The memory of the just *is* blessed: but the name of the wicked shall rot. [\[Job 18:17\]](#);
- 8** The wise in heart will receive commandments: but a prating fool shall fall. [Prov 10:10](#);
- 9** He that walketh uprightly walketh surely: but he that perverteth his ways shall be known.
- 10** He that winketh with the eye causeth sorrow: but a prating fool shall fall. [\[Prov 10:8\]](#);
- 11** The mouth of a righteous *man is* a well of life: but violence covereth the mouth of the wicked. [Prov 13:14](#); [\[Prov 14:27\]](#);
- 12** Hatred stirreth up strifes: but love covereth all sins. [1Cor 13:7](#); [1Pet 4:8](#); [\[1Cor 13:4\]](#); [\[Jas 5:20\]](#);
- 13** In the lips of him that has understanding wisdom is found: but a rod *is* for the back of him that is void of understanding. [Prov 20:30](#); [\[Prov 26:3\]](#);
- 14** Wise *men* lay up knowledge: but the mouth of the foolish *is* near destruction. [\[Prov 12:13\]](#); [\[Prov 14:33\]](#); [\[Prov 18:7\]](#);
- 15** The rich man's wealth *is* his strong city: the destruction of the poor *is* their poverty. [\[Prov 18:11\]](#);
- 16** The labour of the righteous *tendeth* to life: the fruit of the wicked to sin.
- 17** He *is in* the way of life that keepeth instruction: but he that refuseth reproof erreth.
- 18** He that hides hatred *with* lying lips, and he that uttereth a slander, *is* a fool.
- 19** In the multitude of words there wanteth not sin: but he that refraineth his lips *is* wise. [\[Ecc 5:7\]](#);
- 20** The tongue of the just *is as* choice silver: the heart of the wicked *is* little worth.
- 21** The lips of the righteous feed many: but fools die for want of wisdom.
- 22** The blessing of the YAHWEH, it maketh rich, and he addeth no sorrow with it. [\[Luke 6:38\]](#);
- 23** *It is* as sport to a fool to do mischief: but a man of understanding has wisdom. [Prov 14:9](#); [\[Prov 15:21\]](#);
- 24** The fear of the wicked, it shall come upon him: but the desire of the righteous shall be granted.
- 25** As the whirlwind passeth, so *is* the wicked no *more*: but the righteous *is* an everlasting foundation. [\[Prov 12:3\]](#);
- 26** As vinegar to the teeth, and as smoke to the eyes, so *is* the sluggard to them that send him.
- 27** The fear of the YAHWEH prolongeth days: but the years of the wicked shall be shortened. [Prov 9:11](#);
- 28** The hope of the righteous *shall be* gladness: but the expectation of the wicked shall perish. [Job 8:13-14](#); [Job 11:20](#); [Ps 112:10](#); [\[Job 8:13\]](#); [\[Job 18:14\]](#);
- 29** The way of the YAHWEH *is* strength to the upright: but destruction *shall be* to the workers of iniquity. [Prov 13:6](#);
- 30** The righteous shall never be removed: but the wicked shall not inhabit the earth.
- 31** The mouth of the just bringeth forth wisdom: but the froward tongue shall be cut out.
- 32** The lips of the righteous know what is acceptable: but the mouth of the wicked *speaketh* frowardness.

PROVERBS ELEVEN

- 1** A false balance *is* abomination to the YAHWEH: but a just weight *is* his delight. [Lev 19:36](#); [Deut 25:13](#); [Prov 16:11](#); [Prov 20:10](#); [Prov 20:23](#); [\[Deut 25:16\]](#);
- 2** *When* pride cometh, then cometh shame: but with the lowly *is* wisdom. [Prov 16:18](#); [Prov 18:12](#); [Prov 15:33](#);
- 3** The integrity of the upright shall guide them: but the perverseness of transgressors shall destroy them. [Prov 13:6](#);
- 4** Riches profit not in the day of wrath: but righteousness delivereth from death. [Prov 10:2](#); [Ezek 7:19](#); [Zeph 1:18](#);
- 5** The righteousness of the perfect shall direct his way: but the wicked shall fall by his own wickedness. [\[Prov 13:6\]](#);
- 6** The righteousness of the upright shall deliver them: but transgressors shall be taken in *their own* naughtiness.
- 7** When a wicked man dieth, *his* expectation shall perish: and the hope of unjust *men* perisheth.
- 8** The righteous is delivered out of trouble, and the wicked cometh in his stead. [Ps 34:19](#); [Prov 21:18](#);
- 9** A hypocrite with *his* mouth destroyeth his neighbour: but through knowledge shall the just be delivered. [\[Prov 12:6\]](#);
- 10** When it goes well with the righteous, the city rejoiceth: and when the wicked perish, *there is* shouting. [\[Prov 28:12\]](#); [\[Prov 29:2\]](#);
- 11** By the blessing of the upright the city is exalted: but it is overthrown by the mouth of the wicked.
- 12** He that is void of wisdom despiseth his neighbour: but a man of understanding holdeth his peace.
- 13** A talebearer revealeth secrets: but he that is of a faithful spirit concealeth the matter. [\[Prov 20:19\]](#);
- 14** Where no counsel *is*, the people fall: but in the multitude of counsellors *there is* safety. [1Kgs 12:1](#); [\[Prov 15:22\]](#); [\[Prov 24:6\]](#);
- 15** He that is surety for a stranger shall smart *for it*: and he that hateth suretiship is sure. [\[Prov 20:16\]](#); [\[Prov 22:26\]](#); [\[Prov 27:13\]](#);
- 16** A gracious woman retaineth honour: and strong *men* retain riches.
- 17** The merciful man doeth good to his own being: but *he that is* cruel troubleth his own flesh.
- 18** The wicked worketh a deceitful work: but to him that soweth righteousness *shall be* a sure reward.
- 19** As righteousness *tendeth* to life: so he that pursueth evil *pursueth it* to his own death.
- 20** They that are of a froward heart *are* abomination to the YAHWEH: but *such as are* upright in *their* way *are* his delight.
- 21** Though hand *join* in hand, the wicked shall not be unpunished: but the seed of the righteous shall be delivered. [Prov 16:5](#); [\[Prov 12:7\]](#);
- 22** *As* a jewel of gold in a swine's snout, *so is* a fair woman which is without discretion.
- 23** The desire of the righteous *is* only good: *but* the expectation of the wicked *is* wrath.
- 24** There is that scattereth, and yet increaseth; and *there is* that withholdeth more than is meet, but *it tendeth* to poverty. [\[2Cor 9:6\]](#);
- 25** The liberal being shall be made fat: and he that watereth shall be watered also himself. [Ps 112:9](#); [2Cor 9:9](#);
- 26** He that withholdeth corn, the people shall curse him: but blessing *shall be* upon the head of him that selleth *it*.
- 27** He that diligently seeketh good procureth favor: but he that seeketh mischief, it shall come unto him. [Ps 7:16](#); [Ps 9:15](#); [Ps 10:2](#); [Ps 57:6](#);
- 28** He that trusteth in his riches shall fall: but the righteous shall flourish as a branch. [Ps 1:3-4](#); [Ps 92:12](#); [\[Matt 19:23\]](#); [\[Mark 10:23\]](#); [\[Luke 18:24\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:9\]](#); [\[Jas 5:1\]](#);
- 29** He that troubleth his own house shall inherit the wind: and the fool *shall be* servant to the wise of heart.
- 30** The fruit of the righteous *is* a tree of life; and he that winneth beings *is* wise.

31 Behold, the righteous shall be recompensed in the earth: much more the wicked and the sinner. [1Pet 4:17-18](#); [\[1Pet 4:18\]](#);

PROVERBS TWELVE

- 1** Whoso loveth instruction loveth knowledge: but he that hateth reproof *is* brutish.
- 2** A good *man* obtaineth favor of the YAHWEH: but a man of wicked devices will he condemn. [\[Prov 8:35\]](#);
- 3** A man shall not be established by wickedness: but the root of the righteous shall not be moved. [Prov 10:25](#);
- 4** A virtuous woman *is* a crown to her husband: but she that maketh ashamed *is* as rottenness in his bones. [1Cor 11:7](#); [\[Prov 31:10\]](#);
- 5** The thoughts of the righteous *are* right: *but* the counsels of the wicked *are* deceit.
- 6** The words of the wicked *are* to lie in wait for blood: but the mouth of the upright shall deliver them. [Prov 1:11](#); [Prov 1:18](#); [Prov 11:9](#);
- 7** The wicked are overthrown, and *are* not: but the house of the righteous shall stand. [Ps 37:36](#); [Prov 11:21](#); [\[Prov 15:25\]](#);
- 8** A man shall be commended according to his wisdom: but he that is of a perverse heart shall be despised.
- 9** *He that is* despised, and has a servant, *is* better than he that honoureth himself, and lacketh bread. [Prov 13:7](#);
- 10** A righteous *man* regardeth the life of his beast: but the tender mercies of the wicked *are* cruel. [Deut 25:4](#);
- 11** He that tilleth his land shall be satisfied with bread: but he that followeth vain *persons is* void of understanding. [Prov 28:19](#); [\[Prov 13:23\]](#);
- 12** The wicked desireth the net of evil *men*: but the root of the righteous yieldeth *fruit*.
- 13** The wicked is snared by the transgression of *his* lips: but the just shall come out of trouble. [Prov 10:14](#); [Prov 18:7](#);
- 14** A man shall be satisfied with good by the fruit of *his* mouth: and the recompence of a man's hands shall be rendered unto him. [Prov 13:2](#); [\[Prov 18:20\]](#);
- 15** The way of a fool *is* right in his own eyes: but he that hearkeneth unto counsel *is* wise. [Prov 3:7](#);
- 16** A fool's wrath is presently known: but a prudent *man* covereth shame.
- 17** *He that* speaketh truth sheweth forth righteousness: but a false witness deceit. [Prov 14:5](#);
- 18** There is that speaketh like the piercings of a sword: but the tongue of the wise *is* health. [Ps 57:4](#); [Ps 59:7](#); [Prov 16:27](#); [\[Prov 15:4\]](#); [\[Prov 25:18\]](#); [\[Prov 30:14\]](#); [\[Jas 3:5\]](#);
- 19** The lip of truth shall be established for ever: but a lying tongue *is* but for a moment.
- 20** Deceit *is* in the heart of them that imagine evil: but to the counsellors of peace *is* joy.
- 21** There shall no evil happen to the just: but the wicked shall be filled with mischief.
- 22** Lying lips *are* abomination to the YAHWEH: but they that deal truly *are* his delight.
- 23** A prudent man concealeth knowledge: but the heart of fools proclaimeth foolishness. [Prov 13:16](#); [Prov 15:2](#); [\[Prov 14:33\]](#);
- 24** The hand of the diligent shall bear rule: but the slothful shall be under tribute. [Prov 10:4](#);
- 25** Heaviness in the heart of man maketh it stoop: but a good word maketh it glad. [Prov 15:13](#);
- 26** The righteous *is* more excellent than his neighbour: but the way of the wicked seduceth them.
- 27** The slothful *man* roasteth not that which he took in hunting: but the substance of a diligent man *is* precious.
- 28** In the way of righteousness *is* life; and *in* the pathway *thereof there is* no death.

PROVERBS THIRTEEN

- 1** A wise son *heareth* his father's instruction: but a scorner heareth not rebuke.
- 2** A man shall eat good by the fruit of *his* mouth: but the being of the transgressors *shall eat* violence. [Prov 12:14](#); [\[Prov 18:20\]](#);
- 3** He that keepeth his mouth keepeth his life: *but* he that openeth wide his lips shall have destruction. [\[Prov 18:7\]](#);
- 4** The being of the sluggard desireth, and *has* nothing: but the being of the diligent shall be made fat. [\[Prov 6:9\]](#); [\[Prov 21:5\]](#);
- 5** A righteous *man* hateth lying: but a wicked *man* is loathsome, and cometh to shame.
- 6** Righteousness keepeth *him that is* upright in the way: but wickedness overthroweth the sinner. [Prov 10:29](#); [Prov 11:3](#); [Prov 11:5-6](#);
- 7** There is that maketh himself rich, yet *has* nothing: *there is* that maketh himself poor, yet *has* great riches. [Prov 12:9](#);
- 8** The ransom of a man's life *are* his riches: but the poor heareth not rebuke.
- 9** The light of the righteous rejoiceth: but the lamp of the wicked shall be put out. [Prov 4:18](#); [Job 18:5-6](#); [Job 21:17](#); [\[Prov 24:20\]](#);
- 10** Only by pride cometh contention: but with the well advised *is* wisdom. [\[Prov 28:25\]](#);
- 11** Wealth *gotten* by vanity shall be diminished: but he that gathereth by labour shall increase. [Prov 10:2](#); [Prov 20:21](#); [\[Prov 21:6\]](#); [\[Prov 28:20\]](#);
- 12** Hope deferred maketh the heart sick: but *when* the desire cometh, *it is* a tree of life. [Prov 13:19](#);
- 13** Whoso despiseth the word shall be destroyed: but he that feareth the commandment shall be rewarded.
- 14** The law of the wise *is* a fountain of life, to depart from the snares of death. [Prov 10:11](#); [Prov 14:27](#); [\[Prov 15:4\]](#); [\[Prov 16:22\]](#);
- 15** Good understanding giveth favor: but the way of transgressors *is* hard.
- 16** Every prudent *man* dealeth with knowledge: but a fool layeth open *his* folly. [Prov 12:23](#); [Prov 15:2](#); [\[Prov 14:33\]](#);
- 17** A wicked messenger falleth into mischief: but a faithful ambassador *is* health. [\[Prov 25:13\]](#);
- 18** Poverty and shame *shall be to* him that refuseth instruction: but he that regardeth reproof shall be honoured. [\[Eccl 7:5\]](#);
- 19** The desire accomplished is sweet to the being: but *it is* abomination to fools to depart from evil. [\[Prov 13:12\]](#);
- 20** He that walketh with wise *men* shall be wise: but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.
- 21** Evil pursueth sinners: but to the righteous good shall be repayed.
- 22** A good *man* leaveth an inheritance to his children's children: and the wealth of the sinner *is* laid up for the just. [Job 15:29](#); [Job 27:17](#);
- 23** Much food *is in* the tillage of the poor: but there is *that is* destroyed for want of judgment. [Prov 12:11](#); [Prov 18:9](#);
- 24** He that spareth his rod hateth his son: but he that loveth him chasteneth him promptly. [Prov 23:13](#); [\[Prov 19:18\]](#); [\[Prov 22:15\]](#); [\[Prov 29:15\]](#); [\[Prov 29:17\]](#);
- 25** The righteous eateth to the satisfying of his being: but the belly of the wicked shall want. [Ps 34:10](#); [Ps 37:3](#);

PROVERBS FOURTEEN

- 1 Every wise woman buildeth her house: but the foolish plucketh it down with her hands.
- 2 He that walketh in his uprightness feareth the YAHWEH: but *he that is* perverse in his ways despiseth him. [Job 12:4](#);
- 3 In the mouth of the foolish *is* a rod of pride: but the lips of the wise shall preserve them.
- 4 Where no oxen *are*, the crib *is* clean: but much increase *is* by the strength of the ox.
- 5 A faithful witness will not lie: but a false witness will utter lies. [Exod 23:1](#); [Prov 12:17](#);
- 6 A scorner seeketh wisdom, and *finds it* not: but knowledge *is* easy unto him that understandeth. [[Prov 24:7](#)];
- 7 Go from the presence of a foolish man, when you perceivest not *in him* the lips of knowledge.
- 8 The wisdom of the prudent *is* to understand his way: but the folly of fools *is* deceit.
- 9 Fools make a mock at sin: but among the righteous *there is* favor. [[Prov 10:23](#)]; [[Prov 15:21](#)];
- 10 The heart knoweth his own bitterness; and a stranger does not intermeddle with his joy.
- 11 The house of the wicked shall be overthrown: but the tabernacle of the upright shall flourish. [[Prov 15:25](#)];
- 12 There is a way which seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof *are* the ways of death. [Prov 16:25](#);
- 13 Even in laughter the heart is sorrowful; and the end of that mirth *is* heaviness. [Prov 5:4](#);
- 14 The backslider in heart shall be filled with his own ways: and a good man *shall be satisfied* from himself. [Prov 1:31](#);
- 15 The simple believeth every word: but the prudent *man* looketh well to his going.
- 16 A wise *man* feareth, and departeth from evil: but the fool rageth, and is confident.
- 17 *He that is* soon angry dealeth foolishly: and a man of wicked devices is hated.
- 18 The simple inherit folly: but the prudent are crowned with knowledge.
- 19 The evil bow before the good; and the wicked at the gates of the righteous.
- 20 The poor is hated even of his own neighbour: but the rich *has* many friends. [Prov 19:4](#); [Prov 19:7](#);
- 21 He that despiseth his neighbour sinneth: but he that has mercy on the poor, happy *is* he. [[Prov 14:31](#)];
- 22 Do they not err that devise evil? but mercy and truth *shall be* to them that devise good. [Luke 6:38](#);
- 23 In all labour there is profit: but the talk of the lips *tendeth* only to penury.
- 24 The crown of the wise *is* their riches: *but* the foolishness of fools *is* folly.
- 25 A true witness delivereth beings: but a deceitful *witness* speaketh lies.
- 26 In the fear of the YAHWEH *is* strong confidence: and his children shall have a place of refuge.
- 27 The fear of the YAHWEH *is* a fountain of life, to depart from the snares of death. [Prov 10:11](#); [Prov 13:14](#);
- 28 In the multitude of people *is* the king's honour: but in the want of people *is* the destruction of the prince.
- 29 *He that is* slow to wrath *is* of great understanding: but *he that is* hasty of spirit exalteth folly.
- 30 A sound heart *is* the life of the flesh: but envy the rottenness of the bones.
- 31 He that oppresseth the poor reproacheth his Maker: but he that honoureth him has mercy on the poor. [Prov 17:5](#); [Prov 14:21](#); [[Job 31:15](#)]; [[Prov 22:16](#)]; [[Matt 25:45](#)]; [[Heb 6:10](#)];
- 32 The wicked is driven away in his wickedness: but the righteous has hope in his death. [[Job 13:15](#)];
- 33 Wisdom resteth in the heart of him that has understanding: but *that which is* in the midst of fools is made known. [Prov 10:14](#); [Prov 12:23](#); [Prov 13:16](#); [[Prov 29:11](#)];
- 34 Righteousness exalteth a nation: but sin *is* a reproach to any people.
- 35 The king's favor *is* toward a wise servant: but his wrath is *against* him that causeth shame.

PROVERBS FIFTEEN

- 1** A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous words stir up anger. [Prov 25:15](#);
- 2** The tongue of the wise useth knowledge aright: but the mouth of fools poureth out foolishness. [Prov 12:23](#); [Prov 13:16](#); [Prov 15:28](#); [\[Jas 3:5\]](#);
- 3** The eyes of the YAHWEH *are* in every place, beholding the evil and the good. [Job 34:21](#); [Prov 5:21](#); [Jer 16:17](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [\[2Chr 16:9\]](#); [\[Job 31:4\]](#);
- 4** A wholesome tongue *is* a tree of life: but perverseness therein *is* a breach in the spirit. [Prov 12:18](#); [Prov 13:14](#);
- 5** A fool despiseth his father's instruction: but he that regardeth reproof is prudent.
- 6** In the house of the righteous *is* much treasure: but in the revenues of the wicked is trouble.
- 7** The lips of the wise disperse knowledge: but the heart of the foolish *doeth* not so.
- 8** The sacrifice of the wicked *is* an abomination to the YAHWEH: but the prayer of the upright *is* his delight. [Prov 21:27](#); [Isa 1:11](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Amos 5:21](#); [\[Ps 109:7\]](#);
- 9** The way of the wicked *is* an abomination unto the YAHWEH: but he loveth him that followeth after righteousness.
- 10** Correction *is* grievous unto him that forsaketh the way: *and* he that hateth reproof shall die.
- 11** Hell and destruction *are* before the YAHWEH: how much more then the hearts of the children of men? [Job 26:6](#); [2Chr 6:30](#); [Ps 7:9](#); [Ps 44:21](#); [Jer 17:9-10](#); [John 2:24-25](#); [John 21:17](#); [Acts 1:24](#);
- 12** A scorner loveth not one that reproveth him: neither will he go unto the wise.
- 13** A merry heart maketh a cheerful countenance: but by sorrow of the heart the spirit is broken. [Prov 17:22](#); [Prov 18:14](#); [\[Prov 12:25\]](#);
- 14** The heart of him that has understanding seeketh knowledge: but the mouth of fools feedeth on foolishness.
- 15** All the days of the afflicted *are* evil: but he that is of a merry heart *has* a continual feast.
- 16** Better *is* little with the fear of the YAHWEH than great treasure and trouble therewith. [Ps 37:16](#); [Prov 16:8](#); [\[1Tim 6:6\]](#); [\[1Tim 6:10\]](#); [\[Heb 13:5\]](#);
- 17** Better *is* a dinner of herbs where love is, than a stalled ox and hatred therewith. [Prov 17:1](#);
- 18** A wrathful man stirreth up strife: but *he that is* slow to anger appeaseth strife. [Prov 28:25](#); [Prov 29:22](#); [\[Prov 16:28\]](#); [\[Prov 26:21\]](#);
- 19** The way of the slothful *man is* as a hedge of thorns: but the way of the righteous *is* made plain.
- 20** A wise son maketh a glad father: but a foolish man despiseth his mother. [Prov 10:1](#); [\[Prov 17:25\]](#); [\[Prov 19:13\]](#); [\[Prov 23:24\]](#); [\[Prov 29:3\]](#);
- 21** Folly *is* joy to *him that is* destitute of wisdom: but a man of understanding walketh uprightly. [Prov 10:23](#); [Prov 14:9](#);
- 22** Without counsel purposes are disappointed: but in the multitude of counsellors they are established. [Prov 11:14](#); [\[Prov 24:6\]](#);
- 23** A man has joy by the answer of his mouth: and a word *spoken* in due season, how good *is it!*
- 24** The way of life *is* above to the wise, that he may depart from hell beneath.
- 25** The YAHWEH will destroy the house of the proud: but he will establish the border of the widow. [Prov 2:21-22](#); [Prov 12:7](#); [Prov 14:11](#);
- 26** The thoughts of the wicked *are* an abomination to the YAHWEH: but *the words* of the pure *are* pleasant words. [Prov 6:18](#);
- 27** He that is greedy of gain troubleth his own house; but he that hateth gifts shall live. [Prov 1:19](#);
- 28** The heart of the righteous studieth to answer: but the mouth of the wicked poureth out evil things. [\[Prov 15:2\]](#);
- 29** The YAHWEH *is* far from the wicked: but he heareth the prayer of the righteous. [Ps 10:17](#); [Ps 34:18](#); [Ps 145:18-19](#); [\[Job 35:12\]](#); [\[John 9:31\]](#);
- 30** The light of the eyes rejoiceth the heart: *and* a good report maketh the bones fat. [Prov 25:25](#);
- 31** The ear that heareth the reproof of life abideth among the wise. [\[Eccl 7:5\]](#);
- 32** He that refuseth instruction despiseth his own being: but he that heareth reproof getteth understanding.

33 The fear of the YAHWEH *is* the instruction of wisdom; and before honour *is* humility. [Prov 1:7](#); [Prov 9:10](#); [Prov 18:12](#); [[Prov 11:2](#)]; [[Prov 29:23](#)];

PROVERBS SIXTEEN

- 1** The preparations of the heart in man, and the answer of the tongue, *is* from the YAHWEH. [Prov 16:9](#); [Prov 19:21](#); [Prov 20:24](#); [Jer 10:23](#);
- 2** All the ways of a man *are* clean in his own eyes; but the YAHWEH weigheth the spirits. [Prov 21:2](#);
- 3** Commit thy works unto the YAHWEH, and thy thoughts shall be established. [Ps 37:5](#); [Ps 55:22](#); [Matt 6:25](#); [Luke 12:22](#); [1Pet 5:7](#);
- 4** The YAHWEH has made all *things* for himself: yes, even the wicked for the day of evil. [Job 21:30](#); [[Rom 11:36](#)];
- 5** Every one *that is* proud in heart *is* an abomination to the YAHWEH: though hand *join* in hand, he shall not be unpunished. [Prov 6:17](#); [Prov 8:13](#); [Prov 11:21](#); [[Ps 131:1](#)];
- 6** By mercy and truth iniquity is purged: and by the fear of the YAHWEH *men* depart from evil.
- 7** When a man's ways please the YAHWEH, he maketh even his enemies to be at peace with him.
- 8** Better *is* a little with righteousness than great revenues without right. [Ps 37:16](#); [Prov 15:16](#);
- 9** A man's heart deviseth his way: but the YAHWEH directeth his steps. [[Prov 16:1](#)];
- 10** A divine sentence *is* in the lips of the king: his mouth transgresseth not in judgment.
- 11** A just weight and balance *are* the YAHWEH'S: all the weights of the bag *are* his work. [Lev 19:36](#); [Deut 25:13](#); [Prov 11:1](#); [Prov 20:10](#); [Prov 20:23](#);
- 12** *It is* an abomination to kings to commit wickedness: for the throne is established by righteousness.
- 13** Righteous lips *are* the delight of kings; and they love him that speaketh right.
- 14** The wrath of a king *is as* messengers of death: but a wise man will pacify it. [Prov 19:12](#); [Prov 20:2](#); [[Prov 25:15](#)];
- 15** In the light of the king's countenance *is* life; and his favor *is* as a cloud of the latter rain. [Prov 19:12](#);
- 16** How much better *is it* to get wisdom than gold! and to get understanding rather to be chosen than silver! [Job 28:15](#); [Ps 19:10](#); [Ps 119:72](#); [Prov 3:14-15](#); [Prov 8:11](#); [Prov 8:19](#); [[Prov 3:14](#)];
- 17** The highway of the upright *is* to depart from evil: he that keepeth his way preserveth his being.
- 18** Pride *goes* before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall. [Prov 11:2](#); [Prov 17:19](#); [[Prov 18:12](#)];
- 19** Better *it is to be* of a humble spirit with the lowly, than to divide the spoil with the proud.
- 20** He that handleth a matter wisely shall find good: and whoso trusteth in the YAHWEH, happy *is* he. [Ps 2:12](#); [Ps 34:8](#); [Ps 125:1](#); [Isa 30:18](#); [Jer 17:7](#); [[Rom 9:33](#)];
- 21** The wise in heart shall be called prudent: and the sweetness of the lips increaseth learning.
- 22** Understanding *is* a wellspring of life unto him that has it: but the instruction of fools *is* folly. [Prov 13:14](#);
- 23** The heart of the wise teacheth his mouth, and addeth learning to his lips.
- 24** Pleasant words *are as* a honeycomb, sweet to the being, and health to the bones.
- 25** There is a way that seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof *are* the ways of death. [Prov 14:12](#);
- 26** He that laboreth laboreth for himself; for his mouth craveth it of him.
- 27** An ungodly man diggeth up evil: and in his lips *there is* as a burning fire. [Prov 12:18](#);
- 28** A froward man soweth strife: and a whisperer separateth chief friends. [Prov 15:18](#); [Prov 26:21](#); [Prov 29:22](#);
- 29** A violent man enticeth his neighbour, and leadeth him into the way *that is* not good.
- 30** He shutteth his eyes to devise froward things: moving his lips he bringeth evil to pass. [Prov 6:13-14](#);
- 31** The hoary head *is* a crown of glory, *if it* be found in the way of righteousness. [[Prov 20:29](#)];
- 32** *He that is* slow to anger *is* better than the mighty; and he that ruleth his spirit than he that taketh a city. [[Prov 25:28](#)];
- 33** The lot is cast into the lap; but the whole disposing thereof *is* of the YAHWEH.

PROVERBS SEVENTEEN

- 1** Better *is* a dry morsel, and quietness therewith, than a house full of sacrifices *with* strife. [Prov 15:17](#);
- 2** A wise servant shall have rule over a son that causeth shame, and shall have part of the inheritance among the brethren.
- 3** The fining pot *is* for silver, and the furnace for gold: but the YAHWEH trieth the hearts. [Prov 27:21](#); [Jer 17:10](#);
- 4** A wicked doer giveth heed to false lips; *and* a liar giveth ear to a naughty tongue.
- 5** Whoso mocketh the poor reproacheth his Maker: *and* he that is glad at calamities shall not be unpunished. [Prov 14:31](#); [\[Job 31:15\]](#); [\[Job 31:29\]](#); [\[Prov 22:16\]](#); [\[Prov 24:17\]](#); [\[Matt 25:45\]](#);
- 6** Children's children *are* the crown of old men; and the glory of children *are* their fathers.
- 7** Excellent speech becometh not a fool: much less do lying lips a prince.
- 8** A gift *is as* a precious stone in the eyes of him that has it: whithersoever it turneth, it prospereth. [\[Prov 21:14\]](#);
- 9** He that covereth a transgression seeketh love; but he that repeateth a matter separateth *very* friends.
- 10** A reproof entereth more into a wise man than a hundred stripes into a fool. [\[Matt 18:15\]](#); [\[Luke 17:3\]](#);
- 11** An evil *man* seeketh only rebellion: therefore a cruel messenger shall be sent against him.
- 12** Let a bear robbed of her whelps meet a man, rather than a fool in his folly.
- 13** Whoso rewardeth evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house. [Deut 32:35](#); [Prov 20:22](#); [Prov 24:29](#); [Rom 12:17](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [1Pet 3:9](#);
- 14** The beginning of strife *is as* when one letteth out water: therefore leave off contention, before it be meddled with. [Prov 20:3](#);
- 15** He that justifieth the wicked, and he that condemneth the just, even they both *are* abomination to the YAHWEH. [Exod 23:7](#); [Prov 24:24](#); [Isa 5:23](#);
- 16** Wherefore *is there* a price in the hand of a fool to get wisdom, seeing *he has* no heart *to it*?
- 17** A friend loveth at all times, and a brother is born for adversity. [\[Prov 18:24\]](#); [\[Prov 27:10\]](#);
- 18** A man void of understanding striketh hands, *and* becometh surety in the presence of his friend. [\[Prov 27:13\]](#);
- 19** He loveth transgression that loveth strife: *and* he that exalteth his gate seeketh destruction. [Prov 16:18](#);
- 20** He that has a froward heart finds no good: and he that has a perverse tongue falleth into mischief.
- 21** He that begetteth a fool *doeth it* to his sorrow: and the father of a fool has no joy. [\[Prov 29:15\]](#);
- 22** A merry heart doeth good *like* a medicine: but a broken spirit drieth the bones. [Prov 15:13](#);
- 23** A wicked *man* taketh a gift out of the bosom to pervert the ways of judgment.
- 24** Wisdom *is* before him that has understanding; but the eyes of a fool *are* in the ends of the earth. [Eccl 2:14](#); [Eccl 8:1](#);
- 25** A foolish son *is* a grief to his father, and bitterness to her that bore him. [Prov 10:1](#); [Prov 15:20](#); [Prov 19:13](#); [\[Prov 29:15\]](#);
- 26** Also to punish the just *is* not good, *nor* to strike princes for equity.
- 27** He that has knowledge spareth his words: *and* a man of understanding is of an excellent spirit. [\[Jas 1:19\]](#);
- 28** Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise: *and* he that shutteth his lips *is esteemed* a man of understanding. [\[Job 13:5\]](#);

PROVERBS EIGHTEEN

- 1** Through desire a man, having separated himself, seeketh *and* intermeddleth with all wisdom.
- 2** A fool has no delight in understanding, but that his heart may discover itself.
- 3** When the wicked cometh, *then* cometh also contempt, and with ignominy reproach.

- 4** The words of a man's mouth *are as* deep waters, *and* the wellspring of wisdom *as* a flowing brook. [\[Prov 20:5\];](#)
- 5** *It is* not good to accept the person of the wicked, to overthrow the righteous in judgment. [Lev 19:15;](#) [Deut 1:17;](#) [Deut 16:19;](#) [Prov 24:23;](#) [\[Prov 28:21\];](#)
- 6** A fool's lips enter into contention, and his mouth calleth for strokes.
- 7** A fool's mouth *is* his destruction, and his lips *are* the snare of his being. [Prov 10:14;](#) [Prov 13:3;](#) [Prov 12:13;](#)
- 8** The words of a talebearer *are* as wounds, and they go down into the innermost parts of the belly. [Prov 26:22;](#)
- 9** He also that is slothful in his work is brother to him that is a great waster. [\[Prov 13:23\];](#)
- 10** The name of the YAHWEH *is* a strong tower: the righteous runs into it, and is safe. [2Sam 22:51;](#) [Ps 18:2;](#) [Ps 61:3;](#) [Prov 29:25;](#) [\[Ps 148:13\];](#) [\[Isa 26:1\];](#)
- 11** The rich man's wealth *is* his strong city, and as a high wall in his own conceit. [Prov 10:15;](#)
- 12** Before destruction the heart of man is haughty, and before honour *is* humility. [Prov 11:2;](#) [Prov 16:18;](#) [Prov 15:33;](#) [\[Prov 29:23\];](#)
- 13** He that answereth a matter before he heareth *it*, it *is* folly and shame unto him.
- 14** The spirit of a man will sustain his infirmity; but a wounded spirit who can bear? [\[Prov 15:13\];](#)
- 15** The heart of the prudent getteth knowledge; and the ear of the wise seeketh knowledge.
- 16** A man's gift maketh room for him, and bringeth him before great men. [\[Prov 21:14\];](#)
- 17** *He that is* first in his own cause *seemeth* just; but his neighbour cometh and searcheth him. [Prov 25:8;](#) [\[Matt 7:5\];](#) [\[Luke 6:42\];](#) [\[1Cor 11:31\];](#)
- 18** The lot causeth contentions to cease, and parteth between the mighty.
- 19** A brother offended *is harder to be won* than a strong city: and *their* contentions *are* like the bars of a castle.
- 20** A man's belly shall be satisfied with the fruit of his mouth; *and* with the increase of his lips shall he be filled. [Prov 12:14;](#) [Prov 13:2;](#)
- 21** Death and life *are* in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof. [Prov 21:23;](#) [Jas 3:2;](#)
- 22** *Whoso* finds a wife finds a good *thing*, and obtaineth favor of the YAHWEH. [Prov 19:14;](#)
- 23** The poor useth intreaties; but the rich answereth roughly.
- 24** A man *that has* friends must show himself friendly: and there is a friend *that* sticketh closer than a brother. [Prov 17:17;](#) [\[Prov 27:10\];](#)

PROVERBS NINETEEN

- 1** Better *is* the poor that walketh in his integrity, than *he that is* perverse in his lips, and is a fool. [Prov 28:6](#);
- 2** Also, *that* the being *be* without knowledge, *it is* not good; and he that hasteth with *his* feet sinneth.
- 3** The foolishness of man perverteth his way: and his heart fretteth against the YAHWEH. [Jas 1:13-15](#);
- 4** Wealth maketh many friends; but the poor is separated from his neighbour. [Prov 14:20](#);
- 5** A false witness shall not be unpunished, and *he that* speaketh lies shall not escape. [Deut 19:19](#); [Prov 21:28](#); [[Prov 19:9](#)];
- 6** Many will intreat the favor of the prince: and every man *is* a friend to him that giveth gifts. [[Exod 23:8](#)]; [[Prov 29:26](#)];
- 7** All the brethren of the poor do hate him: how much more do his friends go far from him? he pursueth *them with* words, yet they *are* wanting *to him*. [Prov 14:20](#); [[Prov 28:27](#)];
- 8** He that getteth wisdom loveth his own being: he that keepeth understanding shall find good. [[Eph 6:4](#)];
- 9** A false witness shall not be unpunished, and *he that* speaketh lies shall perish. [Prov 19:5](#); [[Prov 21:28](#)];
- 10** Delight is not seemly for a fool; much less for a servant to have rule over princes. [Prov 30:22](#);
- 11** The discretion of a man deferreth his anger; and *it is* his glory to pass over a transgression.
- 12** The king's wrath *is* as the roaring of a lion; but his favor *is* as dew upon the grass. [Prov 16:14](#); [Prov 20:2](#); [Prov 16:15](#);
- 13** A foolish son *is* the calamity of his father: and the contentions of a wife *are* a continual dropping. [Prov 10:1](#); [Prov 15:20](#); [Prov 17:25](#); [Prov 21:19](#); [Prov 27:15](#);
- 14** House and riches *are* the inheritance of fathers: and a prudent wife *is* from the YAHWEH. [Prov 18:22](#);
- 15** Slothfulness casteth into a deep sleep; and an idle being shall suffer hunger. [Prov 6:9](#); [Prov 20:13](#); [Prov 10:4](#);
- 16** He that keepeth the commandment keepeth his own being; *but* he that despiseth his ways shall die. [Prov 3:21-22](#); [Luke 11:28](#);
- 17** He that has pity upon the poor lendeth unto the YAHWEH; and that which he has given will he pay him again. [[Matt 25:40](#)]; [[Luke 6:38](#)];
- 18** Chasten thy son while there is hope, and let not thy being spare for his crying. [Prov 13:24](#); [Prov 23:13](#); [Eph 6:4](#); [[Prov 22:15](#)];
- 19** A man of great wrath shall suffer punishment: for if you deliver *him*, yet you must do it again.
- 20** Hear counsel, and receive instruction, that you may be wise in thy latter end.
- 21** *There are* many devices in a man's heart; nevertheless the counsel of the YAHWEH, that shall stand. [Job 23:13](#); [Ps 33:11](#); [Ps 115:3](#); [Isa 46:10](#); [[Prov 16:1](#)]; [[Mal 3:6](#)];
- 22** The desire of a man *is* his kindness: and a poor man *is* better than a liar.
- 23** The fear of the YAHWEH *tendeth* to life: and *he that has it* shall abide satisfied; he shall not be visited with evil. [Ps 34:9](#);
- 24** A slothful *man* hides his hand in *his* bosom, and will not so much as bring it to his mouth again. [Prov 26:15](#);
- 25** Smite a scorner, and the simple will beware: and reprove one that has understanding, *and* he will understand knowledge. [Prov 21:11](#);
- 26** He that wasteth *his* father, *and* chaseth away *his* mother, *is* a son that causeth shame, and bringeth reproach.
- 27** Cease, my son, to hear the instruction *that causeth* to err from the words of knowledge.
- 28** An ungodly witness scorneth judgment: and the mouth of the wicked devoureth iniquity.
- 29** Judgments are prepared for scorners, and stripes for the back of fools.

PROVERBS TWENTY

- 1** Wine *is* a mocker, strong drink *is* raging; and whosoever is deceived thereby is not wise.
- 2** The fear of a king *is* as the roaring of a lion: *whoso* provoketh him to anger sinneth *against* his own being. [Prov 16:14](#); [Prov 19:12](#);
- 3** *It is* a honour for a man to cease from strife: but every fool will be meddling. [Prov 17:14](#);
- 4** The sluggard will not plow by reason of the cold; *therefore* shall he beg in harvest, and *have* nothing. [\[Prov 6:9\]](#);
- 5** Counsel in the heart of man *is like* deep water; but a man of understanding will draw it out. [Prov 18:4](#);
- 6** Most men will proclaim every one his own goodness: but a faithful man who can find?
- 7** The just *man* walketh in his integrity: his children *are* blessed after him.
- 8** A king that sitteth in the throne of judgment scattereth away all evil with his eyes. [Prov 20:26](#); [\[Prov 25:5\]](#);
- 9** Who can say, I have made my heart clean, I am pure from my sin? [1Kgs 8:46](#); [Job 14:4](#); [Ps 51:5](#); [Eccl 7:20](#); [1John 1:8](#); [\[2Chr 6:36\]](#); [\[Job 15:14\]](#);
- 10** Different weights, *and* different measures, both of them *are* alike abomination to the YAHWEH. [Prov 20:23](#); [Deut 25:13](#); [Prov 11:1](#); [\[Lev 19:36\]](#); [\[Prov 16:11\]](#);
- 11** Even a child is known by his doings, whether his work *be* pure, and whether *it be* right.
- 12** The hearing ear, and the seeing eye, the YAHWEH has made even both of them. [Exod 4:11](#); [Ps 94:9](#);
- 13** Love not sleep, lest you come to poverty; open thine eyes, *and* you shall be satisfied with bread. [Prov 19:15](#);
- 14** *It is* naught, *it is* naught, saith the buyer: but when he is gone his way, then he boasteth.
- 15** There is gold, and a multitude of rubies: but the lips of knowledge *are* a precious jewel. [Prov 3:14-15](#);
- 16** Take his garment that is surety *for* a stranger: and take a pledge of him for a strange woman. [Prov 11:15](#); [Prov 27:13](#); [\[Prov 22:27\]](#);
- 17** Bread of deceit *is* sweet to a man; but afterwards his mouth shall be filled with gravel. [Prov 9:17](#);
- 18** *Every* purpose is established by counsel: and with good advice make war. [\[Prov 24:6\]](#);
- 19** He that goes about *as* a talebearer revealeth secrets: therefore meddle not with him that flattereth with his lips. [Prov 11:13](#);
- 20** Whoso curses his father or his mother, his lamp shall be put out in obscure darkness. [Exod 21:17](#); [Lev 20:9](#); [Deut 27:16](#); [Matt 15:4](#); [\[Prov 24:20\]](#); [\[Mark 7:10\]](#);
- 21** An inheritance *may be* gotten hastily at the beginning; but the end thereof shall not be blessed. [Prov 13:11](#); [Prov 28:20](#);
- 22** Say not you, I will recompense evil; *but* wait on the YAHWEH, and he shall save you. [Deut 32:35](#); [Prov 17:13](#); [Prov 24:29](#); [Rom 12:17](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [1Pet 3:9](#); [\[1Cor 6:7\]](#);
- 23** Different weights *are* an abomination unto the YAHWEH; and a false balance *is* not good. [Prov 20:10](#); [\[Prov 11:1\]](#); [\[Prov 16:11\]](#);
- 24** Man's goings *are* of the YAHWEH; how can a man then understand his own way? [Job 31:4](#); [Ps 37:23](#); [Ps 139:2-3](#); [Jer 10:23](#); [\[Prov 16:1\]](#);
- 25** *It is* a snare to the man *who* devoureth *that which is* holy, and after vows to make enquiry.
- 26** A wise king scattereth the wicked, and bringeth the wheel over them. [\[Prov 20:8\]](#);
- 27** The spirit of man *is* the candle of the YAHWEH, searching all the inward parts of the belly.
- 28** Mercy and truth preserve the king: and his throne is upholden by mercy. [\[Prov 25:5\]](#); [\[Prov 29:14\]](#);
- 29** The glory of young men *is* their strength: and the beauty of old men *is* the gray head. [Prov 16:31](#);
- 30** The blueness of a wound cleanseth away evil: so *do* stripes the inward parts of the belly. [Prov 10:13](#);

PROVERBS TWENTY-ONE

- 1** The king's heart *is* in the hand of the YAHWEH, *as* the rivers of water: he turneth it whithersoever he will.
- 2** Every way of a man *is* right in his own eyes: but the YAHWEH pondereth the hearts. [Prov 16:2](#);
- 3** To do justice and judgment *is* more acceptable to the YAHWEH than sacrifice. [1Sam 15:22](#); [Ps 50:8](#); [Ps 50:14](#); [Isa 1:11](#); [Isa 1:16](#); [Hos 6:6](#);
- 4** A high look, and a proud heart, *and* the plowing of the wicked, *is* sin.
- 5** The thoughts of the diligent *tend* only to plenteousness; but of every one *that is* hasty only to want. [Prov 10:4](#); [Prov 13:4](#);
- 6** The getting of treasures by a lying tongue *is* a vanity tossed to and fro of them that seek death. [Prov 10:2](#); [Prov 10:4](#); [Prov 13:11](#);
- 7** The robbery of the wicked shall destroy them; because they refuse to do judgment.
- 8** The way of man *is* froward and strange: but *as for* the pure, his work *is* right.
- 9** *It is* better to dwell in a corner of the housetop, than with a brawling woman in a wide house. [Prov 21:19](#); [Prov 25:24](#); [Prov 27:15](#);
- 10** The being of the wicked desireth evil: his neighbour finds no favor in his eyes.
- 11** When the scorner is punished, the simple is made wise: and when the wise is instructed, he receiveth knowledge. [Prov 19:25](#);
- 12** The righteous *man* wisely considereth the house of the wicked: *but Elohim* overthroweth the wicked for *their* wickedness.
- 13** Whoso stoppeth his ears at the cry of the poor, he also shall cry himself, but shall not be heard. [\[Job 29:12\]](#);
- 14** A gift in secret pacifieth anger: and a reward in the bosom strong wrath. [Prov 17:8](#); [Prov 18:16](#);
- 15** *It is* joy to the just to do judgment: but destruction *shall be* to the workers of iniquity.
- 16** The man that wandereth out of the way of understanding shall remain in the congregation of the dead.
- 17** He that loveth pleasure *shall be* a poor man: he that loveth wine and oil shall not be rich.
- 18** The wicked *shall be* a ransom for the righteous, and the transgressor for the upright. [Prov 11:8](#);
- 19** *It is* better to dwell in the wilderness, than with a contentious and an angry woman. [Prov 21:9](#); [Prov 25:24](#); [\[Prov 19:13\]](#);
- 20** *There is* treasure to be desired and oil in the dwelling of the wise; but a foolish man spendeth it up.
- 21** He that followeth after righteousness and mercy finds life, righteousness, and honour.
- 22** A wise *man* scaleth the city of the mighty, and casteth down the strength of the confidence thereof. [\[Prov 24:5\]](#); [\[Eccl 9:16\]](#);
- 23** Whoso keepeth his mouth and his tongue keepeth his being from troubles. [Prov 18:21](#);
- 24** Proud *and* haughty scorner *is* his name, who dealeth in proud wrath.
- 25** The desire of the slothful killeth him; for his hands refuse to labour.
- 26** He coveteth greedily all the day long: but the righteous giveth and spareth not. [Ps 37:26](#);
- 27** The sacrifice of the wicked *is* abomination: how much more, *when* he bringeth it with a wicked mind? [Prov 15:8](#); [Isa 1:13](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Amos 5:21](#); [\[Isa 1:11\]](#);
- 28** A false witness shall perish: but the man that heareth speaketh constantly. [Prov 19:5](#); [Prov 19:9](#);
- 29** A wicked man hardeneth his face: but *as for* the upright, he directeth his way.
- 30** *There is* no wisdom nor understanding nor counsel against the YAHWEH. [\[Ps 33:11\]](#); [\[Isa 14:27\]](#); [\[Isa 46:10\]](#); [\[Acts 5:38\]](#);
- 31** The horse *is* prepared against the day of battle: but safety *is* of the YAHWEH. [Ps 33:17](#); [\[Ps 3:8\]](#);

PROVERBS TWENTY-TWO

- 1** A *good* name *is* rather to be chosen than great riches, *and* loving favor rather than silver and gold. [Ecd 7:1](#);
- 2** The rich and poor meet together: the YAHWEH *is* the maker of them all. [Prov 29:13](#);
- 3** A prudent *man* foreseeth the evil, and hides himself: but the simple pass on, and are punished. [Prov 27:12](#);
- 4** By humility *and* the fear of the YAHWEH *are* riches, and honour, and life.
- 5** Thorns *and* snares *are* in the way of the froward: he who keeps his being shall be far from them.
- 6** Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it.
- 7** The rich ruleth over the poor, and the borrower *is* servant to the lender.
- 8** He that soweth iniquity shall reap vanity: and the rod of his anger shall fail. [Job 4:8](#); [Hos 10:13](#);
- 9** He that has a bountiful eye shall be blessed; for he giveth of his bread to the poor. [2Cor 9:6](#); [\[Prov 28:27\]](#);
- 10** Cast out the scorner, and contention shall go out; yes, strife and reproach shall cease. [\[Prov 26:20\]](#);
- 11** He that loveth pureness of heart, *for* the grace of his lips the king *shall be* his friend. [Ps 101:6](#);
- 12** The eyes of the YAHWEH preserve knowledge, and he overthroweth the words of the transgressor.
- 13** The slothful *man* saith, *There is* a lion without, I shall be slain in the streets. [Prov 26:13](#);
- 14** The mouth of strange women *is* a deep pit: he that is abhorred of the YAHWEH shall fall therein. [Prov 2:16](#); [Prov 5:3](#); [Prov 7:5](#); [Prov 23:27](#); [\[Ecd 7:26\]](#);
- 15** Foolishness *is* bound in the heart of a child; *but* the rod of correction shall drive it far from him. [Prov 13:24](#); [Prov 19:18](#); [Prov 23:14](#); [Prov 29:15](#); [Prov 29:17](#); [\[Gen 8:21\]](#); [\[Prov 23:13\]](#);
- 16** He that oppresseth the poor to increase his *riches*, *and* he that giveth to the rich, *shall* surely *come* to want. [Prov 14:31](#); [Prov 17:5](#);
- 17** Bow down thine ear, and hear the words of the wise, and apply thine heart unto my knowledge.
- 18** For *it is* a pleasant thing if you keep them within you; they shall withal be fitted in thy lips.
- 19** That thy trust may be in the YAHWEH, I have made known to you this day, even to you.
- 20** Have not I written to you excellent things in counsels and knowledge,
- 21** That I might make you know the certainty of the words of truth; that you mightest answer the words of truth to them that send unto you?
- 22** Rob not the poor, because he *is* poor: neither oppress the afflicted in the gate: [Zech 7:10](#); [Exod 23:6](#); [Job 31:13](#); [Ps 82:3-4](#); [\[Deut 24:17\]](#);
- 23** For the YAHWEH will plead their cause, and spoil the being of those that spoiled them. [Exod 22:22-23](#); [Ps 10:18](#);
- 24** Make no friendship with an angry man; and with a furious man you shall not go:
- 25** Lest you learn his ways, and get a snare to thy being.
- 26** Be not you *one* of them that strike hands, *or* of them that are sureties for debts. [Prov 6:1](#); [Prov 11:15](#);
- 27** If you have nothing to pay, why should he take away thy bed from under you? [Prov 20:16](#);
- 28** Remove not the ancient landmark, which thy fathers have set. [Deut 19:14](#); [Deut 27:17](#); [Prov 23:10](#); [\[Job 24:2\]](#);
- 29** Seest you a man diligent in his business? he shall stand before kings; he shall not stand before mean *men*.

PROVERBS TWENTY-THREE

- 1** When you sittest to eat with a ruler, consider diligently what *is* before you:
- 2** And put a knife to thy throat, if you *be* a man given to appetite.
- 3** Be not desirous of his dainties: for they *are* deceitful meat.
- 4** Labour not to be rich: cease from thine own wisdom. [\[Prov 28:20\]](#); [\[Matt 6:19\]](#);
- 5** *will* you set thine eyes upon that which is not? for *riches* certainly make themselves wings; they fly away as an eagle toward heaven.

6 Eat you not the bread of *him that has* an evil eye, neither desire you his dainty meats:
7 For as he thinketh in his heart, so *is* he: Eat and drink, saith he to you; but his heart *is* not with you.
8 The morsel *which* you have eaten shall you vomit up, and lose thy sweet words.
9 Speak not in the ears of a fool: for he will despise the wisdom of thy words. [Prov 9:8](#); [Matt 7:6](#);
10 Remove not the old landmark; and enter not into the fields of the fatherless: [Prov 22:28](#); [\[Job 24:2\]](#);
11 For their redeemer *is* mighty; he shall plead their cause with you.
12 Apply thine heart unto instruction, and thine ears to the words of knowledge.
13 Withhold not correction from the child: for *if* you beat him with the rod, he shall not die. [Prov 13:24](#); [Prov 19:18](#); [Prov 22:15](#); [Prov 29:15](#); [Prov 29:17](#);
14 *you* shall beat him with the rod, and shall deliver his being from hell. [\[Prov 22:15\]](#);
15 My son, if thine heart be wise, my heart shall rejoice, even mine.
16 *yes*, my reins shall rejoice, when thy lips speak right things.
17 Let not thine heart envy sinners: but *be you* in the fear of the YAHWEH all the day long. [Ps 37:1](#); [Ps 73:3](#);
[Prov 24:1](#); [\[Prov 3:31\]](#); [\[Prov 24:19\]](#);
18 For surely there is an end; and thine expectation shall not be cut off. [Prov 24:14](#);
19 Hear you, my son, and be wise, and guide thine heart in the way.
20 Be not among winebibbers; among riotous eaters of flesh: [Isa 5:22](#); [Luke 21:34](#); [Rom 13:13](#); [Eph 5:18](#);
21 For the drunkard and the glutton shall come to poverty: and drowsiness shall clothe *a man* with rags.
22 Harken unto thy father that begat you, and despise not thy mother when she is old. [Prov 1:8](#);
23 Buy the truth, and sell *it* not; *also* wisdom, and instruction, and understanding. [Prov 4:7](#);
24 The father of the righteous shall greatly rejoice: and he that begetteth a wise *child* shall have joy of him. [Prov 10:1](#); [Prov 15:20](#);
25 Thy father and thy mother shall be glad, and she that bore you shall rejoice.
26 My son, give me thine heart, and let thine eyes observe my ways.
27 For a whore *is* a deep ditch; and a strange woman *is* a narrow pit. [Prov 22:14](#);
28 She also lies in wait as *for* a prey, and increaseth the transgressors among men.
29 Who has woe? who has sorrow? who has contentions? who has babbling? who has wounds without cause? who has redness of eyes? [\[Isa 5:11\]](#); [\[Eph 5:18\]](#);
30 They that tarry long at the wine; they that go to seek mixed wine. [Isa 5:11](#); [Isa 5:22](#);
31 Look not you upon the wine when it is red, when it giveth his colour in the cup, *when* it moves itself aright.
32 At the last it biteth like a serpent, and stingeth like an adder.
33 Thine eyes shall behold strange women, and thine heart shall utter perverse things.
34 *yes*, you shall be as he that lies down in the midst of the sea, or as he that lies upon the top of a mast.
35 They have stricken me, shall *you say*, *and* I was not sick; they have beaten me, *and* I felt *it* not: when shall I awake? I will seek it yet again.

PROVERBS TWENTY-FOUR

1 Be not you envious against evil men, neither desire to be with them. [Ps 37:1](#); [Prov 3:31](#); [Prov 23:17](#); [\[Prov 24:19\]](#);
2 For their heart studieth destruction, and their lips talk of mischief. [Ps 10:7](#);
3 Through wisdom is a house built; and by understanding it is established:
4 And by knowledge shall the chambers be filled with all precious and pleasant riches.
5 A wise man *is* strong; yes, a man of knowledge increaseth strength. [Prov 21:22](#); [\[Eccl 9:16\]](#);
6 For by wise counsel you shall make thy war: and in multitude of counsellors *there is* safety. [Prov 11:14](#);
[Prov 15:22](#); [Prov 20:18](#);
7 Wisdom *is* too high for a fool: he openeth not his mouth in the gate. [Prov 14:6](#);

- 8** He that deviseth to do evil shall be called a mischievous person.
- 9** The thought of foolishness *is* sin: and the scorner *is* an abomination to men.
- 10** *If* you faint in the day of adversity, thy strength *is* small.
- 11** If you forbear to deliver *them that are* drawn unto death, and *those that are* ready to be slain; [Ps 82:4](#);
- 12** If you sayest, Behold, we knew it not; does not he that pondereth the heart consider *it*? and he that keepeth thy being, does *not* he know *it*? and shall *not* he render to *every* man according to his works? [Job 34:11](#); [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rev 22:12](#);
- 13** My son, eat you honey, because *it is* good; and the honeycomb, *which is* sweet to thy taste:
- 14** So *shall* the knowledge of wisdom *be* unto thy being: when you have found *it*, then there shall be a reward, and thy expectation shall not be cut off. [Ps 19:10](#); [Ps 119:103](#); [Prov 23:18](#);
- 15** Lay not wait, O wicked *man*, against the dwelling of the righteous; spoil not his resting place:
- 16** For a just *man* falleth seven times, and riseth up again: but the wicked shall fall into mischief. [Job 5:19](#); [Ps 34:19](#); [Amos 5:2](#); [Amos 8:14](#);
- 17** Rejoice not when thine enemy falleth, and let not thine heart be glad when he stumbleth: [Job 31:29](#); [Prov 17:5](#);
- 18** Lest the YAHWEH see *it*, and it displease him, and he turn away his wrath from him.
- 19** Fret not thyself because of evil *men*, neither be you envious at the wicked; [Prov 24:1](#); [Ps 37:1](#); [Ps 73:3](#); [Prov 3:31](#); [Prov 23:17](#);
- 20** For there shall be no reward to the evil *man*; the candle of the wicked shall be put out. [Job 18:5-6](#); [Prov 13:9](#); [Prov 20:20](#);
- 21** My son, fear you the YAHWEH and the king: *and* meddle not with them that are given to change: [\[Ecd 8:2\]](#);
- 22** For their calamity shall rise suddenly; and who knoweth the ruin of them both?
- 23** These *things* also *belong* to the wise. *It is* not good to have respect of persons in judgment. [Exod 23:3](#); [Exod 23:6](#); [Lev 19:15](#); [Deut 1:17](#); [Deut 16:19](#); [Prov 18:5](#); [Prov 28:21](#); [John 7:24](#); [Jas 2:1](#);
- 24** He that saith unto the wicked, you are righteous; him shall the people curse, nations shall abhor him: [Prov 17:15](#); [Isa 5:23](#);
- 25** But to them that rebuke *him* shall be delight, and a good blessing shall come upon them.
- 26** *Every man* shall kiss *his* lips that giveth a right answer.
- 27** Prepare thy work without, and make it fit for thyself in the field; and afterwards build thine house.
- 28** Be not a witness against thy neighbour without cause; and deceive *not* with thy lips.
- 29** Say not, I will do so to him as he has done to me: I will render to the man according to his work. [Rom 12:17](#); [Rom 12:19](#); [\[Prov 17:13\]](#); [\[Prov 20:22\]](#); [\[Matt 5:39\]](#); [\[1Thess 5:15\]](#); [\[1Pet 3:9\]](#);
- 30** I went by the field of the slothful, and by the vineyard of the man void of understanding;
- 31** And, lo, it was all grown over with thorns, *and* nettles had covered the face thereof, and the stone wall thereof was broken down.
- 32** Then I saw, *and* considered *it* well: I looked upon *it*, *and* received instruction.
- 33** Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: [Prov 6:10-11](#); [\[Prov 6:9\]](#); [\[Ecd 4:5\]](#);
- 34** So shall thy poverty come *as* one that travelleth; and thy want as an armed man.

PROVERBS TWENTY-FIVE

Observations about kings

- 1** These *are* also proverbs of Solomon, which the men of Hezekiah king of Judah copied out.
- 2** *It is* the glory of Elohim to conceal a thing: but the honour of kings *is* to search out a matter. [Rom 11:33](#);
- 3** The heaven for height, and the earth for depth, and the heart of kings *is* unsearchable.
- 4** Take away the dross from the silver, and there shall come forth a vessel for the finer.

- 5** Take away the wicked *from* before the king, and his throne shall be established in righteousness. [Prov 20:8](#); [Prov 20:28](#); [\[Prov 29:14\]](#);
- 6** Put not forth thyself in the presence of the king, and stand not in the place of great *men*: [\[Luke 14:10\]](#);
- 7** For better *it is* that it be said unto you, Come up hither; than that you should be put lower in the presence of the prince whom thine eyes have seen. [Luke 14:7-9](#);

and about avoiding causes of quarrels, and sundry causes thereof

- 8** Go not forth hastily to strive, lest you *know not* what to do in the end thereof, when thy neighbour has put you to shame. [Prov 18:17](#); [\[Luke 12:58\]](#);
- 9** Debate thy cause with thy neighbour *himself*; and discover not a secret to another:
- 10** Lest he that heareth *it* put you to shame, and thine infamy turn not away.
- 11** A word fitly spoken *is like* apples of gold in pictures of silver.
- 12** *As* an earring of gold, and an ornament of fine gold, *so is* a wise reprover upon an obedient ear.
- 13** *As* the cold of snow in the time of harvest, *so is* a faithful messenger to them that send him: for he refresheth the being of his masters. [Prov 13:17](#);
- 14** Whoso boasteth himself of a false gift *is like* clouds and wind without rain.
- 15** By long forbearing is a prince persuaded, and a soft tongue breaketh the bone. [Prov 15:1](#); [Prov 16:14](#);
- 16** **have** you found honey? eat so much as is sufficient for you, lest you be filled therewith, and vomit it.
- 17** Withdraw thy foot from thy neighbour's house; lest he be weary of you, and *so* hate you.
- 18** A man that beareth false witness against his neighbour *is* a maul, and a sword, and a sharp arrow. [Ps 11:2](#); [Ps 57:4](#); [Ps 59:7](#); [Ps 120:4](#); [Prov 12:18](#);
- 19** Confidence in an unfaithful man in time of trouble *is like* a broken tooth, and a foot out of joint.
- 20** *As* he that taketh away a garment in cold weather, *and as* vinegar upon nitre, *so is* he that singeth songs to a heavy heart. [Rom 12:15](#);
- 21** If thine enemy be hungry, give him bread to eat; and if he be thirsty, give him water to drink: [Rom 12:20](#); [Exod 23:4-5](#); [\[Luke 6:27\]](#);
- 22** For you shall heap coals of fire upon his head, and the YAHWEH shall reward you.
- 23** The north wind driveth away rain: *so does* an angry countenance a backbiting tongue.
- 24** *It is* better to dwell in the corner of the housetop, than with a brawling woman and in a wide house. [Prov 21:9](#); [Prov 21:19](#);
- 25** *As* cold waters to a thirsty being, *so is* good news from a far country. [\[Prov 15:30\]](#);
- 26** A righteous man falling down before the wicked *is as* a troubled fountain, and a corrupt spring.
- 27** *It is* not good to eat much honey: *so for men* to search their own glory *is not* glory.
- 28** He that *has* no rule over his own spirit *is like* a city *that is* broken down, *and* without walls. [Prov 16:32](#);

PROVERBS TWENTY-SIX

Observations about fools

- 1** As snow in summer, and as rain in harvest, so honour is not seemly for a fool.
- 2** As the bird by wandering, as the swallow by flying, so the curse causeless shall not come.
- 3** A whip for the horse, a bridle for the ass, and a rod for the fool's back. [Ps 32:9-10](#); [Prov 10:13](#); [\[Ps 32:9\]](#);
- 4** Answer not a fool according to his folly, lest you also be like unto him.
- 5** Answer a fool according to his folly, lest he be wise in his own conceit.
- 6** He that sendeth a message by the hand of a fool cutteth off the feet, *and* drinketh damage.
- 7** The legs of the lame are not equal: *so is* a parable in the mouth of fools.

- 8 As he that bindeth a stone in a sling, so *is* he that giveth honour to a fool.
- 9 *As* a thorn goes up into the hand of a drunkard, so *is* a parable in the mouth of fools.
- 10 The great *Elohim* that formed all *things* both rewardeth the fool, and rewardeth transgressors.
- 11 As a dog returneth to his vomit, *so* a fool returneth to his folly. [2Pet 2:22](#); [\[Luke 9:62\]](#);
- 12 Seest you a man wise in his own conceit? *there is* more hope of a fool than of him. [Prov 29:20](#);

about sluggards

- 13 The slothful *man* saith, *There is* a lion in the way; a lion *is* in the streets. [Prov 22:13](#);
- 14 *As* the door turneth upon his hinges, so *does* the slothful upon his bed.
- 15 The slothful hides his hand in *his* bosom; it grieveth him to bring it again to his mouth. [Prov 19:24](#);
- 16 The sluggard *is* wiser in his own conceit than seven men that can render a reason.

and about contentious busy-bodies

- 17 He that passeth by, *and* meddleth with strife *belonging* not to him, *is like* one that taketh a dog by the ears.
- 18 As a mad *man* who casteth firebrands, arrows, and death,
- 19 So *is* the man *that* deceiveth his neighbour, and saith, Am not I in sport?
- 20 Where no wood is, *there* the fire goes out: so where *there is* no talebearer, the strife ceaseth. [Prov 22:10](#);
- 21 *As* coals *are* to burning coals, and wood to fire; so *is* a contentious man to kindle strife. [Prov 15:18](#); [Prov 29:22](#); [\[Prov 16:28\]](#);
- 22 The words of a talebearer *are* as wounds, and they go down into the innermost parts of the belly. [Prov 18:8](#);
- 23 Burning lips and a wicked heart *are like* a potsherd covered with silver dross.
- 24 He that hateth dissembleth with his lips, and layeth up deceit within him;
- 25 When he speaketh fair, believe him not: for *there are* seven abominations in his heart. [\[Jer 12:6\]](#);
- 26 *Whose* hatred is covered by deceit, his wickedness shall be showed before the *whole* congregation.
- 27 Whoso diggeth a pit shall fall therein: and he that rolleth a stone, it will return upon him. [Ps 7:15](#); [Ps 9:15](#); [Ps 10:2](#); [Ps 57:6](#); [Ecc 10:8](#); [\[Prov 28:10\]](#);
- 28 A lying tongue hateth *those that are* afflicted by it; and a flattering mouth worketh ruin.

PROVERBS TWENTY-SEVEN

Observations of self love

- 1 Boast not thyself of to morrow; for you knowest not what a day may bring forth. [Jas 4:13-14](#);
- 2 Let another man praise you, and not thine own mouth; a stranger, and not thine own lips. [\[2Cor 10:18\]](#);
- 3 A stone *is* heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath *is* heavier than them both. [\[Job 6:3\]](#);
- 4 Wrath *is* cruel, and anger *is* outrageous; but who *is* able to stand before envy?

of true love

- 5 Open rebuke *is* better than secret love.
- 6 Faithful *are* the wounds of a friend; but the kisses of an enemy *are* deceitful.
- 7 The full being loatheth a honeycomb; but to the hungry being every bitter thing is sweet.
- 8 As a bird that wandereth from her nest, so *is* a man that wandereth from his place.

9 Ointment and perfume rejoice the heart: so *does* the sweetness of a man's friend by hearty counsel.
10 Thine own friend, and thy father's friend, forsake not; neither go into thy brother's house in the day of thy calamity: *for* better *is* a neighbour *that is* near than a brother far off. [Prov 17:17](#); [Prov 18:24](#);

of care to avoid offenses

11 My son, be wise, and make my heart glad, that I may answer him that reproacheth me.
12 A prudent *man* foreseeth the evil, *and* hides himself; *but* the simple pass on, *and* are punished. [Prov 22:3](#);
13 Take his garment that is surety for a stranger, and take a pledge of him for a strange woman. [Prov 6:1-2](#); [Prov 11:15](#); [Prov 17:18](#); [Prov 20:16](#);
14 He that blesseth his friend with a loud voice, rising early in the morning, it shall be counted a curse to him.
15 A continual dropping in a very rainy day and a contentious woman are alike. [Prov 19:13](#); [\[Prov 21:9\]](#);
16 Whosoever hides her hides the wind, or grasps oil in his right hand.
17 Iron sharpeneth iron; so a man sharpeneth the countenance of his friend.
18 Whoso keepeth the fig tree shall eat the fruit thereof: so he that waiteth on his master shall be honoured.
19 As in water face *answereth* to face, so the heart of man to man. [\[1Cor 2:11\]](#);
20 Hell and destruction are never full; so the eyes of man are never satisfied. [Eccl 1:8](#);
21 *As* the fining pot for silver, and the furnace for gold; so *is* a man to his praise. [\[Prov 17:3\]](#);
22 Though you should bray a fool in a mortar among wheat with a pestle, yet will not his foolishness depart from him.

and of the household care

23 Be you diligent to know the state of thy flocks, *and* look well to thy herds.
24 For riches *are* not for ever: and does the crown *endure* to every generation?
25 The hay appeareth, and the tender grass showeth itself, and herbs of the mountains are gathered.
26 The lambs *are* for thy clothing, and the goats *are* the price of the field. [1Tim 6:8](#);
27 And you *shall have* goats' milk enough for thy food, for the food of thy household, and *for* the maintenance for thy maidens.

PROVERBS TWENTY-EIGHT

General observations of impiety and religious integrity

1 The wicked flee when no man pursueth: but the righteous are bold as a lion. [Lev 26:36](#); [Deut 28:28](#); [Isa 57:21](#); [\[Lev 26:17\]](#);
2 For the transgression of a land many *are* the princes thereof: but by a man of understanding *and* knowledge the state *thereof* shall be prolonged.
3 A poor man that oppresseth the poor *is like* a sweeping rain which leaveth no food.
4 They that forsake the law praise the wicked: but such as keep the law contend with them.
5 Evil men understand not judgment: but they that seek the YAHWEH understand all *things*. [\[1Cor 2:15\]](#);
6 Better *is* the poor that walketh in his uprightness, than *he that is* perverse *in his* ways, though he *be* rich. [Prov 19:1](#);
7 Whoso keepeth the law *is* a wise son: but he that is a companion of riotous *men* shameth his father. [Prov 29:3](#);

- 8** He that by usury and unjust gain increaseth his substance, he shall gather it for him that will pity the poor. [\[Exod 22:25\]; \[Lev 25:36\]; \[Job 27:17\]; \[Eccl 2:26\];](#)
- 9** He that turneth away his ear from hearing the law, even his prayer *shall be* abomination. [\[Job 27:9\]; \[Ps 109:7\]; \[John 9:31\];](#)
- 10** Whoso causeth the righteous to go astray in an evil way, he shall fall himself into his own pit: but the upright shall have good *things* in possession. [Prov 26:27;](#)
- 11** The rich man *is* wise in his own conceit; but the poor that has understanding searcheth him out.
- 12** When righteous *men* do rejoice, *there is* great glory: but when the wicked rise, a man is hidden. [Prov 11:10-11; Prov 28:28; \[Prov 29:2\];](#)
- 13** He that covereth his sins shall not prosper: but whoso confesseth and forsaketh *them* shall have mercy. [Ps 32:3; Ps 32:5; 1John 1:9-10; \[1John 1:9\];](#)
- 14** Happy *is* the man that feareth always: but he that hardeneth his heart shall fall into mischief.
- 15** *As* a roaring lion, and a ranging bear; *so is* a wicked ruler over the poor people. [\[Zeph 3:3\];](#)
- 16** The prince that wanteth understanding *is* also a great oppressor: *but* he that hateth covetousness shall prolong *his* days.
- 17** A man that doeth violence to the blood of *any* person shall flee to the pit; let no man stay him. [\[Gen 4:12\];](#)
- 18** Whoso walketh uprightly shall be saved: but *he that is* perverse *in his* ways shall fall at once.
- 19** He that tilleth his land shall have plenty of bread: but he that followeth after vain *persons* shall have poverty enough. [\[Prov 12:11\];](#)
- 20** A faithful man shall abound with blessings: but he that maketh haste to be rich shall not be innocent. [Prov 13:11; Prov 20:21; Prov 23:4;](#)
- 21** To have respect of persons *is* not good: for for a piece of bread *that* man will transgress. [Prov 18:5; Prov 24:23;](#)
- 22** He that hasteth to be rich *has* an evil eye, and considereth not that poverty shall come upon him.
- 23** He that rebuketh a man afterwards shall find more favor than he that flattereth with the tongue.
- 24** Whoso robbeth his father or his mother, and saith, *It is* no transgression; the same *is* the companion of a destroyer.
- 25** He that is of a proud heart stirreth up strife: but he that puts his trust in the YAHWEH shall be made fat. [Prov 13:10; Prov 15:18; Prov 29:22;](#)
- 26** He that trusteth in his own heart is a fool: but whoso walketh wisely, he shall be delivered.
- 27** He that giveth unto the poor shall not lack: but he that hides his eyes shall have many a curse. [Deut 15:7-8; Deut 15:10; Prov 19:7; Prov 22:9;](#)
- 28** When the wicked rise, men hide themselves: but when they perish, the righteous increase. [Prov 28:12; \[Job 24:4\]; \[Prov 29:2\];](#)

Observations of public government

- 1** He, that being often reprov'd hardeneth *his* neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy.
- 2** When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice: but when the wicked beareth rule, the people mourn. [Prov 11:10](#); [Prov 28:12](#); [Prov 28:28](#);
- 3** Whoso loveth wisdom rejoiceth his father: but he that keepeth company with harlots spendeth *his* substance. [Prov 10:1](#); [Prov 15:20](#); [Prov 28:7](#); [Luke 15:13](#);
- 4** The king by judgment establisheth the land: but he that receiveth gifts overthroweth it.
- 5** A man that flattereth his neighbour spreadeth a net for his feet.
- 6** In the transgression of an evil man *there is* a snare: but the righteous sings and rejoices.
- 7** The righteous considereth the cause of the poor: *but* the wicked regardeth not to know *it*. [Job 29:16](#);
- 8** Scornful men bring a city into a snare: but wise *men* turn away wrath.
- 9** *If* a wise man contendeth with a foolish man, whether he rage or laugh, *there is* no rest.
- 10** The bloodthirsty hate the upright: but the just seek his being.
- 11** A fool uttereth all his mind: but a wise *man* keepeth it in till afterwards. [Prov 14:33](#);
- 12** If a ruler hearken to lies, all his servants *are* wicked.
- 13** The poor and the deceitful man meet together: the YAHWEH lighteneth both their eyes. [Prov 22:2](#);
- 14** The king that faithfully judgeth the poor, his throne shall be established for ever. [Prov 20:28](#); [Prov 25:5](#);

and of private

- 15** The rod and reproof give wisdom: but a child left *to himself* bringeth his mother to shame. [Prov 13:24](#); [Prov 22:15](#); [Prov 23:13](#); [Prov 10:1](#); [Prov 17:21](#); [Prov 17:25](#);
- 16** When the wicked are multiplied, transgression increaseth: but the righteous shall see their fall. [Ps 37:36](#); [Ps 58:10](#); [Ps 91:8](#);
- 17** Correct thy son, and he shall give you rest; yes, he shall give delight unto thy being. [Prov 13:24](#); [Prov 22:15](#); [Prov 23:13-14](#); [[Prov 23:13](#)]; [[Eph 6:4](#)];
- 18** Where *there is* no vision, the people perish: but he that keepeth the law, happy *is* he.
- 19** A servant will not be corrected by words: for though he understand he will not answer.
- 20** Seest you a man *that is* hasty in his words? *there is* more hope of a fool than of him. [Prov 26:12](#);
- 21** He that delicately bringeth up his servant from a child shall have him become *his* son at the length.

Of anger, pride, thievery, cowardice, and corruption

- 22** An angry man stirreth up strife, and a furious man aboundeth in transgression. [Prov 15:18](#); [Prov 26:21](#); [[Prov 16:28](#)]; [[Prov 28:25](#)];
- 23** A man's pride shall bring him low: but honour shall uphold the humble in spirit. [Job 22:29](#); [Prov 15:33](#); [Prov 18:12](#); [Isa 66:2](#); [Matt 23:12](#); [Luke 14:11](#); [Luke 18:14](#); [Jas 4:6](#); [Jas 4:10](#); [1Pet 5:5](#); [[1Pet 5:6](#)];
- 24** Whoso is partner with a thief hateth his own being: he heareth cursing, and discloses nothing. [Lev 5:1](#);
- 25** The fear of man bringeth a snare: but whoso puts his trust in the YAHWEH shall be safe. [[Prov 18:10](#)];
- 26** Many seek the ruler's favor; but *every* man's judgment *cometh* from the YAHWEH. [Prov 19:6](#);
- 27** An unjust man *is* an abomination to the just: and *he that is* upright in the way *is* abomination to the wicked.

PROVERBS THIRTY

Agur's confession of his faith

- 1** The words of Agur the son of Jakeh, *even* the prophecy: the man spoke unto Ithiel, even unto Ithiel and Ucal,
- 2** Surely I *am* more brutish than *any* man, and have not the understanding of a man.
- 3** I neither learned wisdom, nor have the knowledge of the holy.
- 4** Who has ascended up into heaven, or descended? who has gathered the wind in his fists? who has bound the waters in a garment? who has established all the ends of the earth? what *is* his name, and what *is* his son's name, if you canst tell? [Job 38:4](#); [Ps 104:3](#); [Isa 40:12](#);
- 5** Every word of Elohim *is* pure: he *is* a shield unto them that put their trust in him. [Ps 12:6](#); [Ps 18:30](#); [Ps 19:8](#); [Ps 119:140](#); [\[2Sam 22:31\]](#);
- 6** Add you not unto his words, lest he reprove you, and you be found a liar. [Deut 4:2](#); [Deut 12:32](#); [Rev 22:18](#); [\[Rev 22:19\]](#);

The two points of his prayer

- 7** Two *things* have I required of you; deny me *them* not before I die:
- 8** Remove far from me vanity and lies: give me neither poverty nor riches; feed me with food convenient for me:
- 9** Lest I be full, and deny you, and say, Who *is* the YAHWEH? or lest I be poor, and steal, and take the name of my Elohim *in vain*.

The meanest are not to be wronged

- 10** Accuse not a servant unto his master, lest he curse you, and you be found guilty.

Four wicked generations

- 11** *There is* a generation *that* curses their father, and does not bless their mother.
- 12** *There is* a generation *that are* pure in their own eyes, and yet is not washed from their filthiness.
- 13** *There is* a generation, O how lofty are their eyes! and their eyelids are lifted up. [Prov 6:17](#);
- 14** *There is* a generation, whose teeth *are as* swords, and their jaw teeth *as* knives, to devour the poor from off the earth, and the needy from *among* men. [Prov 12:18](#); [\[Jer 9:8\]](#);

Four things insatiable

- 15** The horseleach has two daughters, *crying*, Give, give. There are three *things that* are never satisfied, yes, four *things* say not, *It is* enough:
- 16** The grave; and the barren womb; the earth *that* is not filled with water; and the fire *that* saith not, *It is* enough.

Parents are not to be despised

- 17** The eye *that* mocketh at *his* father, and despiseth to obey *his* mother, the ravens of the valley shall pick it out, and the young eagles shall eat it.

Four things hard to be known

- 18** There be three *things which* are too wonderful for me, yes, four which I know not:

19 The way of an eagle in the air; the way of a serpent upon a rock; the way of a ship in the midst of the sea; and the way of a man with a maid.

20 Such *is* the way of an adulterous woman; she eateth, and wipeth her mouth, and saith, I have done no wickedness.

Four things intolerable

21 For three *things* the earth is disquieted, and for four *which* it cannot bear:

22 For a servant when he reigneth; and a fool when he is filled with meat; [[Prov 19:10](#)];

23 For an odious *woman* when she is married; and a handmaid that is heir to her mistress.

Four things exceeding wise

24 There be four *things which are* little upon the earth, but they *are* exceeding wise:

25 The ants *are* a people not strong, yet they prepare their meat in the summer; [[Prov 6:8](#)];

26 The conies *are but* a feeble folk, yet make they their houses in the rocks;

27 The locusts have no king, yet go they forth all of them by bands;

28 The spider taketh hold with her hands, and is in kings' palaces.

Four things stately

29 There be three *things* which go well, yes, four are comely in going:

30 A lion *which is* strongest among beasts, and turneth not away for any;

31 A greyhound; a he goat also; and a king, against whom *there is* no rising up. [[Job 39:19](#)];

Wrath is to be prevented

32 If you have done foolishly in lifting up thyself, or if you have thought evil, *lay* thine hand upon thy mouth. [[Job 21:5](#)];

33 Surely the churning of milk bringeth forth butter, and the wringing of the nose bringeth forth blood: so the forcing of wrath bringeth forth strife.

PROVERBS THIRTY-ONE

Lemuel's lesson of chastity and temperance

1 The words of king Lemuel, the prophecy that his mother taught him.

2 What, my son? and what, the son of my womb? and what, the son of my vows?

3 Give not thy strength unto women, nor thy ways to that which destroyeth kings. [[Deut 17:17](#)];

4 *It is* not for kings, O Lemuel, *it is* not for kings to drink wine; nor for princes strong drink:

5 Lest they drink, and forget the law, and pervert the judgment of any of the afflicted.

The afflicted are to be comforted and defended

6 Give strong drink unto him that is ready to perish, and wine unto those that be of heavy hearts.

7 Let him drink, and forget his poverty, and remember his misery no more.

8 Open thy mouth for the dumb in the cause of all such as are appointed to destruction.

9 Open thy mouth, judge righteously, and plead the cause of the poor and needy. [[Lev 19:15](#); [Deut 1:16](#)];

The praise and properties of a good wife

- 10 Who can find a virtuous woman? for her price *is* far above rubies. [Prov 12:4](#);
- 11 The heart of her husband safely trusts in her, so that he shall have no need of spoil.
- 12 She will do him good and not evil all the days of her life.
- 13 She seeketh wool, and flax, and worketh willingly with her hands.
- 14 She is like the merchants' ships; she bringeth her food from afar.
- 15 She riseth also while it is yet night, and giveth meat to her household, and a portion to her maidens.
- 16 She considereth a field, and buyeth it: with the fruit of her hands she planteth a vineyard.
- 17 She girdeth her loins with strength, and strengtheneth her arms.
- 18 She perceiveth that her merchandise *is* good: her candle goes not out by night.
- 19 She layeth her hands to the spindle, and her hands hold the distaff. [\[Exod 35:25\]](#);
- 20 She stretcheth out her hand to the poor; yes, she reacheth forth her hands to the needy.
- 21 She is not afraid of the snow for her household: for all her household *are* clothed with scarlet.
- 22 She maketh herself coverings of tapestry; her clothing *is* silk and purple.
- 23 Her husband is known in the gates, when he sitteth among the elders of the land.
- 24 She maketh fine linen, and selleth *it*; and delivereth girdles unto the merchant.
- 25 Strength and honour *are* her clothing; and she shall rejoice in time to come.
- 26 She openeth her mouth with wisdom; and in her tongue *is* the law of kindness.
- 27 She looketh well to the ways of her household, and eateth not the bread of idleness.
- 28 Her children arise up, and call her blessed; her husband *also*, and he praiseth her.
- 29 Many daughters have done virtuously, but you excellest them all.
- 30 Favor *is* deceitful, and beauty *is* vain: *but* a woman *that* feareth the YAHWEH, she shall be praised.
- 31 Give her of the fruit of her hands; and let her own works praise her in the gates.

Ecclesiastes

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#)

ECCLESIASTES ONE

The preacher shows that all human courses are vain

- 1** The words of the Preacher, the son of David, king in Jerusalem.
2 Vanity of vanities, saith the Preacher, vanity of vanities; all *is* vanity. [Ps 62:9](#); [Ps 144:4](#); [\[Ecd 12:8\]](#);
3 What profit has a man of all his labour which he taketh under the sun? [Ecd 2:22](#); [Ecd 3:9](#);

because the creatures are restless in their courses

- 4** *One* generation passeth away, and *another* generation cometh: but the earth abideth for ever. [Ps 104:5](#); [\[Ps 119:90\]](#);
5 The sun also ariseth, and the sun goes down, and hasteth to his place where he arose. [\[Ps 19:5\]](#);
6 The wind goes toward the south, and turneth about unto the north; it whirleth about continually, and the wind returneth again according to his circuits.
7 All the rivers run into the sea; yet the sea *is* not full; unto the place from whence the rivers come, thither they return again. [Job 38:8-10](#); [Ps 104:9-10](#);
8 All things *are* full of labour; man cannot utter *it*: the eye is not satisfied with seeing, nor the ear filled with hearing. [\[Prov 27:20\]](#);

they bring forth nothing new, and all old things are forgotten

- 9** The thing that has been, it *is that* which shall be; and that which is done *is* that which shall be done: and *there is* no new *thing* under the sun. [Ecd 3:15](#);
10 Is there *any* thing whereof it may be said, See, this *is* new? it has been already of old time, which was before us.
11 *There is* no remembrance of former *things*; neither shall there be *any* remembrance of *things* that are to come with *those* that shall come after.

and because he has found it so in the studies of wisdom

- 12** I the Preacher was king over Israel in Jerusalem.
13 And I gave my heart to seek and search out by wisdom concerning all *things* that are done under heaven: this sore travail has Elohim given to the sons of man to be exercised therewith.
14 I have seen all the works that are done under the sun; and, behold, all *is* vanity and vexation of spirit.
15 *That which is* crooked cannot be made straight: and that which is wanting cannot be numbered.
16 I communed with mine own heart, saying, Lo, I am come to great estate, and have gotten more wisdom than all *they* that have been before me in Jerusalem: yes, my heart had great experience of wisdom and knowledge. [\[1Kgs 3:12\]](#);
17 And I gave my heart to know wisdom, and to know madness and folly: I perceived that this also is vexation of spirit. [\[Ecd 2:12\]](#); [\[Ecd 7:25\]](#);
18 For in much wisdom *is* much grief: and he that increaseth knowledge increaseth sorrow.

The vanity of human courses in the works of pleasure

1 I said in mine heart, Go to now, I will prove you with mirth, therefore enjoy pleasure: and, behold, this also *is* vanity. [Luke 12:19](#);

2 I said of laughter, *It is* mad: and of mirth, What doeth it?

3 I sought in mine heart to give myself unto wine, yet acquainting mine heart with wisdom; and to lay hold on folly, till I might see what *was* that good for the sons of men, which they should do under the heaven all the days of their life.

4 I made me great works; I built me houses; I planted me vineyards:

5 I made me gardens and orchards, and I planted trees in them of all *kind of* fruits:

6 I made me pools of water, to water therewith the wood that bringeth forth trees:

7 I got *me* servants and maidens, and had servants born in my house; also I had great possessions of great and small cattle above all that were in Jerusalem before me:

8 I gathered me also silver and gold, and the peculiar treasure of kings and of the provinces: I got me men singers and women singers, and the delights of the sons of men, *as* musical instruments, and that of all sorts.

9 So I was great, and increased more than all that were before me in Jerusalem: also my wisdom remained with me.

10 And whatsoever mine eyes desired I kept not from them, I withheld not my heart from any joy; for my heart rejoiced in all my labour: and this was my portion of all my labour. [\[Ecc 5:18\]](#);

11 Then I looked on all the works that my hands had wrought, and on the labour that I had laboured to do: and, behold, all *was* vanity and vexation of spirit, and *there was* no profit under the sun.

Though the wise be better than the fool, yet both have one event

12 And I turned myself to behold wisdom, and madness, and folly: for what *can* the man *do* that cometh after the king? *even* that which has been already done. [Ecc 1:17](#); [Ecc 7:23](#); [\[Ecc 7:25\]](#);

13 Then I saw that wisdom excelleth folly, as far as light excelleth darkness.

14 The wise man's eyes *are* in his head; but the fool walketh in darkness: and I myself perceived also that one event happeneth to them all. [\[Prov 17:24\]](#);

15 Then said I in my heart, As it happeneth to the fool, so it happeneth even to me; and why was I then more wise? Then I said in my heart, that this also *is* vanity.

16 For *there is* no remembrance of the wise more than of the fool for ever; seeing that which now *is* in the days to come shall all be forgotten. And how dieth the wise *man*? as the fool.

17 Therefore I hated life; because the work that is wrought under the sun *is* grievous unto me: for all *is* vanity and vexation of spirit.

The vanity of human labour, in leaving it they know not to whom

18 *yes*, I hated all my labour which I had taken under the sun: because I should leave it unto the man that shall be after me.

19 And who knoweth whether he shall be a wise *man* or a fool? yet shall he have rule over all my labour wherein I have laboured, and wherein I have showed myself wise under the sun. This *is* also vanity.

20 Therefore I went about to cause my heart to despair of all the labour which I took under the sun.

21 For there is a man whose labour *is* in wisdom, and in knowledge, and in equity; yet to a man that has not laboured therein shall he leave it *for* his portion. This also *is* vanity and a great evil.

22 For what has man of all his labour, and of the vexation of his heart, wherein he has laboured under the sun? [Ecc 1:3](#); [Ecc 3:9](#);

23 For all his days *are* sorrows, and his travail grief; yes, his heart taketh not rest in the night. This is also vanity.

Nothing better than joy in our labour; but that is Elohim's gift

24 *There is* nothing better for a man, *than* that he should eat and drink, and *that* he should make his being enjoy good in his labour. This also I saw, that it *was* from the hand of Elohim. [Eccl 3:12](#); [Eccl 3:22](#); [Eccl 5:19](#); [Eccl 8:15](#); [\[Eccl 5:18\]](#);

25 For who can eat, or who else can hasten *hereunto*, more than I?

26 For *Elohim* giveth to a man that *is* good in his sight wisdom, and knowledge, and joy: but to the sinner he giveth travail, to gather and to heap up, that he may give to *him that is* good before Elohim. This also *is* vanity and vexation of spirit. [Job 27:16-17](#); [Prov 28:8](#); [Eccl 3:13](#); [\[Job 27:17\]](#); [\[Job 32:8\]](#); [\[Job 38:36\]](#);

ECCLESIASTES THREE

By the necessary change of times, vanity is added to human travail

1 To every *thing there is* a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven:

2 A time to be born, and a time to die; a time to plant, and a time to pluck up *that which is* planted;

3 A time to kill, and a time to heal; a time to break down, and a time to build up;

4 A time to weep, and a time to laugh; a time to mourn, and a time to dance;

5 A time to cast away stones, and a time to gather stones together; a time to embrace, and a time to refrain from embracing; [1Cor 7:5](#);

6 A time to get, and a time to lose; a time to keep, and a time to cast away;

7 A time to rend, and a time to sew; a time to keep silence, and a time to speak;

8 A time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war, and a time of peace.

9 What profit has he that worketh in that wherein he laboureth? [Eccl 1:3](#); [\[Eccl 2:22\]](#);

10 I have seen the travail, which Elohim has given to the sons of men to be exercised in it.

There is an excellency in Elohim's works

11 He has made every *thing* beautiful in his time: also he has set the world in their heart, so that no man can find out the work that Elohim maketh from the beginning to the end.

12 I know that *there is* no good in them, but for *a man* to rejoice, and to do good in his life. [\[Eccl 2:24\]](#); [\[Eccl 5:18\]](#); [\[Eccl 8:15\]](#);

13 And also that every man should eat and drink, and enjoy the good of all his labour, it *is* the gift of Elohim. [\[Eccl 2:26\]](#);

14 I know that, whatsoever Elohim doeth, it shall be for ever: nothing can be put to it, nor any thing taken from it: and Elohim doeth *it*, that *men* should fear before him.

15 That which has been is now; and that which is to be has already been; and Elohim requireth that which is past. [\[Eccl 1:9\]](#);

But as for man, Elohim shall judge his works hereafter, though here he be like a beast

16 And moreover I saw under the sun the place of judgment, *that* wickedness *was* there; and the place of righteousness, *that* iniquity *was* there.

17 I said in mine heart, Elohim shall judge the righteous and the wicked: for *there is* a time there for every purpose and for every work.

- 18** I said in mine heart concerning the estate of the sons of men, that Elohim might manifest them, and that they might see that they themselves are beasts. [\[Job 11:12\];](#)
- 19** For that which befalleth the sons of men befalleth beasts; even one thing befalleth them: as the one dieth, so dieth the other; yes, they have all one breath; so that a man has no preeminence above a beast: for all *is* vanity.
- 20** All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again. [Gen 3:19;](#)
- 21** Who knoweth the spirit of man that goes upward, and the spirit of the beast that goes downward to the earth?
- 22** Wherefore I perceive that *there is* nothing better, than that a man should rejoice in his own works; for that *is* his portion: for who shall bring him to see what shall be after him? [\[Ecd 2:24\];](#) [\[Ecd 5:18\];](#) [\[Ecd 8:15\];](#)

ECCLESIASTES FOUR

Vanity is increased unto men by oppression

- 1** So I returned, and considered all the oppressions that are done under the sun: and behold the tears of *such as were* oppressed, and they had no comforter; and on the side of their oppressors *there was* power; but they had no comforter.
- 2** Wherefore I praised the dead which are already dead more than the living which are yet alive.
- 3** **yes**, better *is he* than both they, which has not yet been, who has not seen the evil work that is done under the sun.

by envy

- 4** Again, I considered all travail, and every right work, that for this a man is envied of his neighbour. This *is* also vanity and vexation of spirit.

by idleness

- 5** The fool foldeth his hands together, and eateth his own flesh. [Prov 6:10;](#) [Prov 24:33;](#)
- 6** Better *is* a handful *with* quietness, than both the hands full *with* travail and vexation of spirit.

by covetousness

- 7** Then I returned, and I saw vanity under the sun.
- 8** There is one *alone*, and *there is* not a second; yes, he has neither child nor brother: yet *is there* no end of all his labour; neither is his eye satisfied with riches; neither *saith he*, For whom do I labour, and deprive myself pleasure? This *is* also vanity, yes, it *is* an unhappy business.

by solitariness

- 9** Two *are* better than one; because they have a good reward for their labour.
- 10** For if they fall, the one will lift up his fellow: but woe to him *that is* alone when he falleth; for *he has* not another to help him up.
- 11** Again, if two lie together, then they have heat: but how can one be warm *alone*?
- 12** And if one prevail against him, two shall withstand him; and a threefold cord is not quickly broken.

by wilfulness

- 13** Better *is* a poor and a wise child than an old and foolish king, who will no more be admonished.

- 14** For out of prison he cometh to reign; whereas also *he that is* born in his kingdom becometh poor.
- 15** I considered all the living which walk under the sun, with the second child that shall stand up in his stead.
- 16** *There is* no end of all the people, *even* of all that have been before them: they also that come after shall not rejoice in him. Surely this also *is* vanity and vexation of spirit.

ECCLESIASTES FIVE

Vanities in divine service

- 1** Keep thy foot when you go to the house of Elohim, and be more ready to hear, than to give the sacrifice of fools: for they consider not that they do evil.
- 2** Be not rash with thy mouth, and let not thine heart be hasty to utter *any* thing before Elohim: for Elohim *is* in heaven, and you upon earth: therefore let thy words be few. [Jas 1:19];
- 3** For a dream cometh through the multitude of business; and a fool's voice *is known* by multitude of words.
- 4** When you vowest a vow unto Elohim, defer not to pay it; for *he has* no pleasure in fools: pay that which you have vowed. Num 30:2; Deut 23:21; [Ps 50:14];
- 5** Better *is it* that you should not vow, than that you should vow and not pay. Deut 23:21-22;
- 6** Suffer not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin; neither say you before the angel, that it *was* an error: wherefore should Elohim be angry at thy voice, and destroy the work of thine hands?
- 7** For in the multitude of dreams and many words *there are* also *different* vanities: but fear you Elohim. Prov 10:19; [Zech 10:2];

in murmuring against oppression

- 8** If you seest the oppression of the poor, and violent perverting of judgment and justice in a province, marvel not at the matter: for *he that is* higher than the highest regardeth; and *there be* higher than they.

and in riches

- 9** Moreover the profit of the earth is for all: the king *himself* is served by the field.
- 10** He that loveth silver shall not be satisfied with silver; nor he that loveth abundance with increase: this *is* also vanity.
- 11** When goods increase, they are increased that eat them: and what good *is there* to the owners thereof, saving the beholding *of them* with their eyes?
- 12** The sleep of a labouring man *is* sweet, whether he eat little or much: but the abundance of the rich will not suffer him to sleep.
- 13** There is a sore evil *which* I have seen under the sun, *namely*, riches kept for the owners thereof to their hurt. [Job 20:19];
- 14** But those riches perish by evil travail: and he begetteth a son, and *there is* nothing in his hand.
- 15** As he came forth of his mother's womb, naked shall he return to go as he came, and shall take nothing of his labour, which he may carry away in his hand. Ps 49:17; [Job 1:21];
- 16** And this also *is* a sore evil, *that* in all points as he came, so shall he go: and what profit has he that has laboured for the wind?
- 17** All his days also he eateth in darkness, and *he has* much sorrow and wrath with his sickness.

Joy in riches is the gift of Elohim

18 Behold *that* which I have seen: *it is* good and comely *for one* to eat and to drink, and to enjoy the good of all his labour that he taketh under the sun all the days of his life, which Elohim giveth him: for it *is* his portion. [Eccl 2:24](#); [Eccl 3:12](#); [Eccl 3:22](#); [Eccl 9:7](#); [Eccl 11:9](#); [Eccl 2:10](#);

19 Every man also to whom Elohim has given riches and wealth, and has given him power to eat thereof, and to take his portion, and to rejoice in his labour; this *is* the gift of Elohim. [\[Eccl 2:24\]](#); [\[Eccl 8:15\]](#);

20 For he shall not much remember the days of his life; because Elohim answereth *him* in the joy of his heart.

ECCLESIASTES SIX

The vanity of riches without use

1 There is an evil which I have seen under the sun, and it *is* common among men:

2 A man to whom Elohim has given riches, wealth, and honour, so that he wanteth nothing for his being of all that he desireth, yet Elohim giveth him not power to eat thereof, but a stranger eateth it: this *is* vanity, and it *is* an evil disease.

though a man have many children and a long life

3 If a man beget a hundred *children*, and live many years, so that the days of his years be many, and his being be not filled with good, and also *that* he have no burial; I say, *that* an untimely birth *is* better than he.

4 For he cometh in with vanity, and departeth in darkness, and his name shall be covered with darkness.

5 Moreover he has not seen the sun, nor known *any thing*: this has more rest than the other. [Job 3:16](#); [Ps 58:8](#);

6 Yes, though he live a thousand years twice *told*, yet has he seen no good: do not all go to one place?

The vanity of sight and wandering desires

7 All the labour of man *is* for his mouth, and yet the appetite is not filled.

8 For what has the wise more than the fool? what has the poor, that knoweth to walk before the living?

9 Better *is* the sight of the eyes than the wandering of the desire: this *is* also vanity and vexation of spirit.

The conclusion of vanities

10 That which has been is named already, and it is known that it *is* man: neither may he contend with him that is mightier than he. [\[Job 9:32\]](#); [\[Job 16:21\]](#);

11 Seeing there be many things that increase vanity, what *is* man the better?

12 For who knoweth what *is* good for man in *this* life, all the days of his vain life which he spendeth as a shadow? for who can tell a man what shall be after him under the sun? [Ps 144:4](#); [Jas 4:13-14](#); [Eccl 8:7](#);

Remedies against vanity are, a good name

1 A good name *is* better than precious ointment; and the day of death than the day of one's birth. [Prov 22:1](#);

mortification

2 *It is* better to go to the house of mourning, than to go to the house of feasting: for that *is* the end of all men; and the living will lay *it* to his heart.

3 Sorrow *is* better than laughter: for by the sadness of the countenance the heart is made better.

4 The heart of the wise *is* in the house of mourning; but the heart of fools *is* in the house of mirth.

5 *It is* better to hear the rebuke of the wise, than for a man to hear the song of fools. [Prov 13:18](#); [Prov 15:31-32](#);

6 For as the crackling of thorns under a pot, so *is* the laughter of the fool: this also *is* vanity. [Ps 58:9](#);

patience

7 Surely oppression maketh a wise man mad; and a gift destroyeth the heart. [\[Exod 23:8\]](#);

8 Better *is* the end of a thing than the beginning thereof: *and* the patient in spirit *is* better than the proud in spirit.

9 Be not hasty in thy spirit to be angry: for anger resteth in the bosom of fools.

10 Say not you, What is *the cause* that the former days were better than these? for you dost not enquire wisely concerning this.

wisdom

11 Wisdom *is* good with an inheritance: and *by it there is* profit to them that see the sun.

12 For wisdom *is* a defence, *and* money *is* a defence: but the excellency of knowledge *is, that* wisdom giveth life to them that have it.

13 Consider the work of Elohim: for who can make *that* straight, which he has made crooked?

14 In the day of prosperity be joyful, but in the day of adversity consider: Elohim also has set the one over against the other, to the end that man should find nothing after him.

15 All *things* have I seen in the days of my vanity: there is a just *man* that perisheth in his righteousness, and there is a wicked *man* that prolongeth *his life* in his wickedness.

16 Be not righteous over much; neither make thyself over wise: why should you destroy thyself?

17 Be not over much wicked, neither be you foolish: why should you die before thy time?

18 *It is* good that you should take hold of this; yes, also from this withdraw not thine hand: for he that feareth Elohim shall come forth of them all.

19 Wisdom strengtheneth the wise more than ten mighty *men* which are in the city. [\[Eccl 9:16\]](#);

20 For *there is* not a just man upon earth, that doeth good, and sinneth not. [1Kgs 8:46-47](#); [2Chr 6:36](#); [Prov 20:9](#); [1John 1:8](#); [\[1Kgs 8:46\]](#); [\[Job 15:14\]](#);

21 Also take no heed unto all words that are spoken; lest you hear thy servant curse you:

22 For oftentimes also thine own heart knoweth that you thyself likewise have cursed others.

The difficulty of wisdom

23 All this have I proved by wisdom: I said, I will be wise; but it *was* far from me. [\[Eccl 2:12\]](#);

24 That which is far off, and exceeding deep, who can find it out?

25 I applied mine heart to know, and to search, and to seek out wisdom, and the reason *of things*, and to know the wickedness of folly, even of foolishness *and* madness: [Eccl 1:17](#); [Eccl 2:12](#);

26 And I find more bitter than death the woman, whose heart *is* snares and nets, *and* her hands *as* bands: whoso pleaseth Elohim shall escape from her; but the sinner shall be taken by her. [Prov 5:3](#); [Prov 6:24](#); [Prov 7:6](#); [Prov 6:26](#); [Prov 7:23](#); [Prov 22:14](#);

27 Behold, this have I found, saith the preacher, *counting* one by one, to find out the account:

28 Which yet my being seeketh, but I find not: one man among a thousand have I found; but a woman among all those have I not found.

29 Lo, this only have I found, that Elohim has made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions.

ECCLESIASTES EIGHT

True wisdom is modest

1 Who *is* as the wise *man*? and who knoweth the interpretation of a thing? a man's wisdom maketh his face to shine, and the boldness of his face shall be changed. [[Prov 17:24](#)];

Kings are to be respected

2 I *counsel you* to keep the king's commandment, and *that* in regard of the oath of Elohim. [Prov 24:21](#);

3 Be not hasty to go out of his sight: stand not in an evil thing; for he doeth whatsoever pleaseth him.

4 Where the word of a king *is*, *there is* power: and who may say unto him, What do you do?

5 Whoso keepeth the commandment shall feel no evil thing: and a wise man's heart discerneth both time and judgment. [Rom 13:3](#);

Divine providence is to be observed

6 Because to every purpose there is time and judgment, therefore the misery of man *is* great upon him.

7 For he knoweth not that which shall be: for who can tell him when it shall be? [Eccl 6:12](#);

8 *There is* no man that has power over the spirit to retain the spirit; neither *has he* power in the day of death: and *there is* no discharge in *that* war; neither shall wickedness deliver those that are given to it. [Job 14:5](#); [Ps 39:5](#);

9 All this have I seen, and applied my heart unto every work that is done under the sun: *there is* a time wherein one man ruleth over another to his own hurt.

10 And so I saw the wicked buried, who had come and gone from the place of the holy, and they were forgotten in the city where they had so done: this *is* also vanity.

11 Because sentence against an evil work is not executed speedily, therefore the heart of the sons of men is fully set in them to do evil.

It is better with the godly in adversity, than with the wicked in prosperity

12 Though wicked, neither shall he prolong *his* days, *which are* as a shadow; because he feareth not before Elohim.

14 There is a vanity which is done upon the earth; that there be just *men*, unto whom it happeneth according to the work of the wicked; again, there be wicked *men*, to whom it happeneth according to the work of the righteous: I said that this also *is* vanity.

15 Then I commended mirth, because a man has no better thing under the sun, than to eat, and to drink, and to be merry: for that shall abide with him of his labour the days of his life, which Elohim giveth him under the sun. [Eccl 2:24](#); [Eccl 3:12](#); [Eccl 3:22](#); [Eccl 5:19](#); [Eccl 9:7](#);

The work of Elohim is unsearchable

16 When I applied mine heart to know wisdom, and to see the business that is done upon the earth: (for also *there is that* neither day nor night seeth sleep with his eyes:)

17 Then I beheld all the work of Elohim, that a man cannot find out the work that is done under the sun: because though a man labour to seek *it* out, yet he shall not find *it*; yes further; though a wise *man* think to know *it*, yet shall he not be able to find *it*.

ECCLESIASTES NINE

Like things happen to good and bad

1 For all this I considered in my heart even to declare all this, that the righteous, and the wise, and their works, *are* in the hand of Elohim: no man knoweth either love or hatred *by* all *that is* before them.

2 All *things come* alike to all: *there is* one event to the righteous, and to the wicked; to the good and to the clean, and to the unclean; to him that sacrificeth, and to him that sacrificeth not: as *is* the good, so *is* the sinner; *and* he that sweareth, as *he* that feareth an oath. [Ps 73:12-13](#); [\[Job 9:22\]](#);

3 This *is* an evil among all *things* that are done under the sun, that *there is* one event unto all: yes, also the heart of the sons of men is full of evil, and madness *is* in their heart while they live, and after that *they go* to the dead.

There is a necessity of death unto men

4 For to him that is joined to all the living there is hope: for a living dog is better than a dead lion.

5 For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not any thing, neither have they any more a reward; for the memory of them is forgotten.

6 Also their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished; neither have they any more a portion for ever in any *thing* that is done under the sun.

Comfort is all their portion in this life

7 Go thy way, eat thy bread with joy, and drink thy wine with a merry heart; for Elohim now accepteth thy works. [\[Ecd 5:18\]](#); [\[Ecd 8:15\]](#);

8 Let thy garments be always white; and let thy head lack no ointment.

9 Live joyfully with the wife whom you lovest all the days of the life of thy vanity, which he has given you under the sun, all the days of thy vanity: for that *is* thy portion in *this* life, and in thy labour which you takest under the sun.

10 Whatsoever thy hand finds to do, do *it* with thy might; for *there is* no work, nor device, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in the grave, whither you go.

Elohim's providence rules over all

11 I returned, and saw under the sun, that the race *is* not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, neither yet bread to the wise, nor yet riches to men of understanding, nor yet favor to men of skill; but time and chance happeneth to them all.

12 For man also knoweth not his time: as the fishes that are taken in an evil net, and as the birds that are caught in the snare; so *are* the sons of men snared in an evil time, when it falleth suddenly upon them.

Wisdom is better than strength

- 13** This wisdom have I seen also under the sun, and it *seemed* great unto me:
- 14** *There was* a little city, and few men within it; and there came a great king against it, and besieged it, and built great bulwarks against it:
- 15** Now there was found in it a poor wise man, and he by his wisdom delivered the city; yet no man remembered that same poor man.
- 16** Then said I, Wisdom *is* better than strength: nevertheless the poor man's wisdom *is* despised, and his words are not heard. [Prov 21:22](#); [Prov 24:5](#); [Eccl 7:19](#);
- 17** The words of wise *men are* heard in quiet more than the cry of him that ruleth among fools.
- 18** Wisdom *is* better than weapons of war: but one sinner destroyeth much good.

ECCLESIASTES TEN

Observations of wisdom and folly

- 1** Dead flies cause the ointment of the perfumer to send forth a stinking savour: *so does* a little folly him that is in reputation for wisdom *and* honour.
- 2** A wise man's heart *is* at his right hand; but a fool's heart at his left.
- 3** Yes also, when he that is a fool walketh by the way, his wisdom faileth *him*, and he saith to every one *that* he *is* a fool.
- 4** If the spirit of the ruler rise up against you, leave not thy place; for yielding pacifieth great offences.
- 5** There is an evil *which* I have seen under the sun, as an error *which* proceedeth from the ruler:
- 6** Folly is set in great dignity, and the rich sit in low place.
- 7** I have seen servants upon horses, and princes walking as servants upon the earth.
- 8** He that diggeth a pit shall fall into it; and whoso breaketh a hedge, a serpent shall bite him. [Prov 26:27](#); [\[Ps 7:15\]](#);
- 9** Whoso removeth stones shall be hurt therewith; *and* he that cleaveth wood shall be endangered thereby.
- 10** If the iron be blunt, and he do not whet the edge, then must he put to more strength: but wisdom *is* profitable to direct.
- 11** Surely the serpent will bite without enchantment; and a babbler is no better.
- 12** The words of a wise man's mouth *are* gracious; but the lips of a fool will swallow up himself.
- 13** The beginning of the words of his mouth *is* foolishness: and the end of his talk *is* mischievous madness.
- 14** A fool also is full of words: a man cannot tell what shall be; and what shall be after him, who can tell him?
- 15** The labour of the foolish weareth every one of them, because he knoweth not how to go to the city.

of riot

- 16** Woe to you, O land, when thy king *is* a child, and thy princes eat in the morning! [Isa 3:4](#); [Isa 3:12](#); [Hos 13:11](#); [Isa 5:11](#); [Amos 6:4](#);
- 17** Blessed are you, O land, when thy king *is* the son of nobles, and thy princes eat in due season, for strength, and not for drunkenness!

slothfulness

- 18** By much slothfulness the building decayeth; and through idleness of the hands the house droppeth through.

and money

19 A feast is made for laughter, and wine maketh merry: but money answereth all *things*.

Men's thoughts of kings ought to be reverent

20 Curse not the king, no not in thy thought; and curse not the rich in thy bedchamber: for a bird of the air shall carry the voice, and that which has wings shall tell the matter. [Exod 22:28](#);

ECCLESIASTES ELEVEN

Directions for charity

1 Cast thy bread upon the waters: for you shall find it after many days.

2 Give a portion to seven, and also to eight; for you knowest not what evil shall be upon the earth. [2Cor 9:10](#);

3 If the clouds be full of rain, they empty *themselves* upon the earth: and if the tree fall toward the south, or toward the north, in the place where the tree falleth, there it shall be.

4 He that observeth the wind shall not sow; and he that regardeth the clouds shall not reap.

5 As you knowest not what *is* the way of the spirit, *nor* how the bones *do grow* in the womb of her that is with child: even so you knowest not the works of Elohim who maketh all. [John 3:8](#); [Ps 139:15-16](#); [[Ps 139:15](#)];

6 In the morning sow thy seed, and in the evening withhold not thine hand: for you knowest not whether shall prosper, either this or that, or whether they both *shall be* alike good.

Death in life

7 Truly the light *is* sweet, and a pleasant *thing it is* for the eyes to behold the sun:

8 But if a man live many years, *and* rejoice in them all; yet let him remember the days of darkness; for they shall be many. All that cometh *is* vanity.

and the day of judgment in the days of youth, are to be thought on

9 Rejoice, O young man, in thy youth; and let thy heart cheer you in the days of thy youth, and walk in the ways of thine heart, and in the sight of thine eyes: but know you, that for all these *things* Elohim will bring you into judgment. [[Ecd 5:18](#)]; [[Luke 12:19](#)];

10 Therefore remove sorrow from thy heart, and put away evil from thy flesh: for childhood and youth *are* vanity.

ECCLESIASTES TWELVE

The Creator is to be remembered in due time

1 Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth, while the evil days come not, nor the years draw nigh, when you shall say, I have no pleasure in them;

2 While the sun, or the light, or the moon, or the stars, be not darkened, nor the clouds return after the rain:

3 In the day when the keepers of the house shall tremble, and the strong men shall bow themselves, and the grinders cease because they are few, and those that look out of the windows be darkened,

4 And the doors shall be shut in the streets, when the sound of the grinding is low, and he shall rise up at the voice of the bird, and all the daughters of musick shall be brought low;

5 Also *when* they shall be afraid of *that which is* high, and fears *shall be* in the way, and the almond tree shall flourish, and the grasshopper shall be a burden, and desire shall fail: because man goes to his long home, and the mourners go about the streets:

6 Or ever the silver cord be loosed, or the golden bowl be broken, or the pitcher be broken at the fountain, or the wheel broken at the cistern.

7 Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was: and the spirit shall return unto Elohim who gave it.

Gen 3:19; Gen 2:7; Num 16:22; [Job 34:14]; [Job 34:15];

The preacher's care to edify

8 Vanity of vanities, saith the preacher; all *is* vanity. Ps 62:9; Ps 144:4; Eccl 1:2;

9 And moreover, because the preacher was wise, he still taught the people knowledge; yes, he gave good heed, and sought out, *and* set in order many proverbs. 1Kgs 4:32;

10 The preacher sought to find out acceptable words: and *that which was* written *was* upright, *even* words of truth.

11 The words of the wise *are* as goads, and as nails fastened *by* the masters of assemblies, *which* are given from one shepherd. [Heb 4:12];

12 And further, by these, my son, be admonished: of making many books *there is* no end; and much study *is* a weariness of the flesh.

The fear of Elohim is the chief antidote of vanity

13 Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: Fear Elohim, and keep his commandments: for this *is* the whole *duty* of man. Deut 6:2; Deut 10:12; Prov 3:7; [Prov 1:7];

14 For Elohim shall bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether *it be* good, or whether *it be* evil. 1Cor 4:5; 2Cor 5:10; [Matt 12:36];

Song_of_Solomon

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#)

SONG OF SOLOMON ONE

The church's love unto the Messiah

- 1** The song of songs, which *is* Solomon's.
2 Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth: for thy love *is* better than wine. [Song 4:10](#);
3 Because of the savour of thy good ointments thy name *is as* ointment poured forth, therefore do the virgins love you.
4 Draw me, we will run after you: the king has brought me into his chambers: we will be glad and rejoice in you, we will remember thy love more than wine: the upright love you. [1Pet 1:8](#); [\[John 6:44\]](#);

She confesses her deformity

- 5** I *am* black, but comely, O you daughters of Jerusalem, as the tents of Kedar, as the curtains of Solomon.
6 Look not upon me, because I *am* black, because the sun has looked upon me: my mother's children were angry with me; they made me the keeper of the vineyards; *but* mine own vineyard have I not kept.

and prays to be directed to his flock

- 7** Tell me, O you whom my being loveth, where you feedest, where you makest *thy flock* to rest at noon: for why should I be as one that turneth aside by the flocks of thy companions? [Deut 12:5](#); [Song 3:1-3](#);

the Messiah directs her to the shepherd's tents

- 8** If you know not, O you fairest among women, go thy way forth by the footsteps of the flock, and feed thy kids beside the shepherds' tents. [Song 5:9](#); [Song 6:1](#);

and showing his love to her

- 9** I have compared you, O my love, to a company of horses in Pharaoh's chariots. [Song 2:2](#); [Song 2:10](#); [Song 2:13](#); [Song 4:1](#); [Song 4:7](#); [Song 5:2](#); [Song 6:4](#); [John 15:14-15](#);
10 Thy cheeks are comely with rows *of jewels*, thy neck with chains *of gold*. [Ezek 16:11-13](#);

gives her gracious promises

- 11** We will make you borders of gold with studs of silver.

The church and the Messiah congratulate one another

- 12** While the king *sitteth* at his table, my spikenard sendeth forth the smell thereof.
13 A bundle of myrrh *is* my wellbeloved unto me; he shall lie all night between my breasts.
14 My beloved *is* unto me *as* a cluster of camphire in the vineyards of Engedi.
15 Behold, you are fair, my love; behold, you are fair; you have doves' eyes. [\[Song 5:12\]](#); [\[Song 6:4\]](#); [\[Song 7:6\]](#);
16 Behold, you are fair, my beloved, yes, pleasant: also our bed *is* green. [Song 4:1](#); [Song 5:12](#);
17 The beams of our house *are* cedar, *and* our rafters of fir.

The mutual love of the Messiah and his church

- 1** I *am* the rose of Sharon, *and* the lily of the valleys.
- 2** As the lily among thorns, so *is* my love among the daughters. [\[Song 1:9\];](#)
- 3** As the apple tree among the trees of the wood, so *is* my beloved among the sons. I sat down under his shadow with great delight, and his fruit *was* sweet to my taste.
- 4** He brought me to the banqueting house, and his banner over me *was* love.
- 5** Sustain me with raisin cakes, refresh me with apples: for I *am* sick of love.
- 6** His left hand *is* under my head, and his right hand embraces me. [Song 8:3;](#)
- 7** I charge you, O you daughters of Jerusalem, by the roes, and by the hinds of the field, that you stir not up, nor awake *my* love, till he please. [\[Song 8:4\];](#)

The hope

- 8** The voice of my beloved! behold, he cometh leaping upon the mountains, skipping upon the hills.
- 9** My beloved is like a roe or a young hart: behold, he standeth behind our wall, he looketh forth at the windows, showing himself through the lattice.

and calling of the church

- 10** My beloved spoke, and said unto me, Rise up, my love, my fair one, and come away. [\[Song 1:9\];](#)
- 11** For, lo, the winter is past, the rain is over *and* gone;
- 12** The flowers appear on the earth; the time of the singing *of birds* is come, and the voice of the turtle is heard in our land;
- 13** The fig tree puts forth her green figs, and the vines *with* the tender grape give a *good* smell. Arise, my love, my fair one, and come away. [\[Song 1:9\];](#)

the Messiah's care of the church

- 14** O my dove, *that are* in the clefts of the rock, in the secret *places* of the stairs, let me see thy countenance, let me hear thy voice; for sweet *is* thy voice, and thy countenance *is* comely. [Song 5:13; Song 5:16;](#)
- 15** Take us the foxes, the little foxes, that spoil the vines: for our vines *have* tender grapes. [Ezek 13:4; Luke 13:32;](#)

The profession of the church, her faith, and hope

- 16** My beloved *is* mine, and I *am* his: he feedeth among the lilies. [\[Song 7:10\];](#)
- 17** Until the day break, and the shadows flee away, turn, my beloved, and be you like a roe or a young hart upon the mountains of Bether. [Song 4:6;](#)

SONG OF SOLOMON THREE

The church's fight and victory in temptation

1 By night on my bed I sought him whom my being loveth: I sought him, but I found him not. [\[Song 1:7\]; \[Song 5:6\];](#)

2 I will rise now, and go about the city in the streets, and in the broad ways I will seek him whom my being loveth: I sought him, but I found him not.

3 The watchmen that go about the city found me: *to whom I said*, Saw you him whom my being loveth?

4 *It was* but a little that I passed from them, but I found him whom my being loveth: I held him, and would not let him go, until I had brought him into my mother's house, and into the chamber of her that conceived me.

5 I charge you, O you daughters of Jerusalem, by the roes, and by the hinds of the field, that you stir not up, nor awake *my* love, till he please. [\[Song 5:8\]; \[Song 8:4\];](#)

The church glories in the Messiah

6 Who *is* this that cometh out of the wilderness like pillars of smoke, perfumed with myrrh and frankincense, with all powders of the merchant? [Song 8:5;](#)

7 Behold his bed, which *is* Solomon's; threescore valiant men *are* about it, of the valiant of Israel.

8 They all hold swords, *being* expert in war: every man *has* his sword upon his thigh because of fear in the night. [\[Ps 91:5\];](#)

9 King Solomon made himself a chariot of the wood of Lebanon. [Song 6:12;](#)

10 He made the pillars thereof *of* silver, the bottom thereof *of* gold, the covering of it *of* purple, the midst thereof being paved *with* love, for the daughters of Jerusalem.

11 Go forth, O you daughters of Zion, and behold king Solomon with the crown wherewith his mother crowned him in the day of his espousals, and in the day of the gladness of his heart.

SONG OF SOLOMON FOUR

the Messiah sets forth the graces of the church

1 Behold, you are fair, my love; behold, you are fair; you have doves' eyes within thy locks: thy hair *is* as a flock of goats, that appear from mount Gilead. [Song 4:3](#); [Song 6:7](#); [Song 6:5](#); [\[Song 1:9\]](#); [\[Song 1:16\]](#); [\[Song 5:12\]](#); [\[Song 6:4\]](#); [\[Song 7:6\]](#);

2 Thy teeth *are* like a flock *of sheep that are even* shorn, which came up from the washing; whereof every one bear twins, and none *is* barren among them.

3 Thy lips *are* like a thread of scarlet, and thy speech *is* comely: thy temples *are* like a piece of a pomegranate within thy locks. [Ps 147:1](#); [Col 4:6](#); [\[Song 4:1\]](#);

4 Thy neck *is* like the tower of David built for an armoury, whereon there hang a thousand bucklers, all shields of mighty men. [Song 7:4](#);

5 Thy two breasts *are* like two young roes that are twins, which feed among the lilies. [Song 7:3](#);

6 Until the day break, and the shadows flee away, I will get me to the mountain of myrrh, and to the hill of frankincense. [\[Song 2:17\]](#);

7 You are all fair, my love; *there is* no spot in you. [\[Song 1:9\]](#);

He shows his love to her

8 Come with me from Lebanon, *my* spouse, with me from Lebanon: look from the top of Amana, from the top of Shenir and Hermon, from the lions' dens, from the mountains of the leopards.

9 You have ravished my heart, my sister, *my* spouse; you have ravished my heart with one of thine eyes, with one chain of thy neck.

10 How fair is thy love, my sister, *my* spouse! how much better is thy love than wine! and the smell of thine ointments than all spices! [\[Song 1:2\]](#);

11 Thy lips, O *my* spouse, drop *as* the honeycomb: honey and milk *are* under thy tongue; and the smell of thy garments *is* like the smell of Lebanon.

12 A garden inclosed *is* my sister, *my* spouse; a spring shut up, a fountain sealed.

13 Thy plants *are* an orchard of pomegranates, with pleasant fruits; camphire, with spikenard,

14 Spikenard and saffron; calamus and cinnamon, with all trees of frankincense; myrrh and aloes, with all the chief spices:

15 A fountain of gardens, a well of living waters, and streams from Lebanon. [\[Jer 2:13\]](#);

The church prays to be made fit for his presence

16 Awake, O north wind; and come, you south; blow upon my garden, *that* the spices thereof may flow out. Let my beloved come into his garden, and eat his pleasant fruits.

SONG OF SOLOMON FIVE

the Messiah awakes the church with his calling

1 I am come into my garden, my sister, *my* spouse: I have gathered my myrrh with my spice; I have eaten my honeycomb with my honey; I have drunk my wine with my milk: eat, O friends; drink, yes, drink abundantly, O beloved. [Isa 41:8](#); [Jas 2:23](#);

The church having a taste of the Messiah's love, is sick of love

2 I sleep, but my heart waketh: *it is* the voice of my beloved that knocketh, *saying*, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, *and* my locks with the drops of the night. [\[Song 1:9\];](#)

3 I have put off my coat; how shall I put it on? I have washed my feet; how shall I defile them?

4 My beloved put in his hand by the hole *of the door*, and my bowels were moved for him.

5 I rose up to open to my beloved; and my hands dropped *with* myrrh, and my fingers *with* sweet smelling myrrh, upon the handles of the lock.

6 I opened to my beloved; but my beloved had withdrawn himself, *and* was gone: my being failed when he spoke: I sought him, but I could not find him; I called him, but he gave me no answer. [Song 3:1;](#)

7 The watchmen that went about the city found me, they smote me, they wounded me; the keepers of the walls took away my veil from me.

8 I charge you, O daughters of Jerusalem, if you find my beloved, that you tell him, that I *am* sick of love. [Song 3:5;](#)

A description of the Messiah by his graces

9 What *is* thy beloved more than *another* beloved, O you fairest among women? what *is* thy beloved more than *another* beloved, that you dost so charge us? [\[Song 1:8\];](#)

10 My beloved *is* white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand.

11 His head *is as* the most fine gold, his locks *are* bushy, *and* black as a raven.

12 His eyes *are as* *the eyes* of doves by the rivers of waters, washed with milk, *and* fitly set. [Song 1:15;](#)
[Song 4:1;](#) [\[Song 1:16\];](#)

13 His cheeks *are as* a bed of spices, *as* sweet flowers: his lips *like* lilies, dropping sweet smelling myrrh. [\[Song 2:14\];](#)

14 His hands *are as* gold rings set with the beryl: his belly *is as* bright ivory overlaid *with* sapphires.

15 His legs *are as* pillars of marble, set upon sockets of fine gold: his countenance *is as* Lebanon, excellent as the cedars.

16 His mouth *is* most sweet: yes, he *is* altogether lovely. This *is* my beloved, and this *is* my friend, O daughters of Jerusalem. [\[Song 2:14\];](#)

SONG OF SOLOMON SIX

The church professes her faith in the Messiah

1 Whither is thy beloved gone, O you fairest among women? whither is thy beloved turned aside? that we may seek him with you. [\[Song 1:8\];](#)

2 My beloved is gone down into his garden, to the beds of spices, to feed in the gardens, and to gather lilies.

3 I *am* my beloved's, and my beloved *is* mine: he feedeth among the lilies. [\[Song 7:10\];](#)

the Messiah shows the graces of the church

4 You are beautiful, O my love, as Tirzah, comely as Jerusalem, terrible as *an army* with banners. [Ps 45:11;](#)
[Song 1:15;](#) [Song 4:1;](#) [\[Song 1:9\];](#)

5 Turn away thine eyes from me, for they have overcome me: thy hair *is as* a flock of goats that appear from Gilead. [\[Song 4:1\];](#)

6 Thy teeth *are as* a flock of sheep which go up from the washing, whereof every one beareth twins, and *there is* not one barren among them.

7 As a piece of a pomegranate *are* thy temples within thy locks. [\[Song 4:1\]](#);
8 There are threescore queens, and fourscore concubines, and virgins without number.
9 My dove, my undefiled is *but* one; she *is* the *only* one of her mother, she *is* the choice *one* of her that bore her. The daughters saw her, and blessed her; yes, the queens and the concubines, and they praised her.

and his love towards her

10 Who *is* she *that* looketh forth as the morning, fair as the moon, clear as the sun, *and* terrible as *an* army with banners?
11 I went down into the garden of nuts to see the fruits of the valley, *and* to see whether the vine flourished, *and* the pomegranates budded.
12 Or ever I was aware, my being made me *like* the chariots of Amminadib. [Ps 110:3](#); [\[Song 3:9\]](#);
13 Return, return, O Shulamite; return, return, that we may look upon you. What will you see in the Shulamite? As it were the company of two armies.

SONG OF SOLOMON SEVEN

A further description of the church's graces

1 How beautiful are thy feet with shoes, O prince's daughter! the joints of thy thighs *are* like jewels, the work of the hands of a cunning workman.
2 Thy navel *is like* a round goblet, *which* wanteth not liquor: thy belly *is like* a heap of wheat set about with lilies.
3 Thy two breasts *are* like two young roes *that are* twins. [Song 4:5](#);
4 Thy neck *is* as a tower of ivory; thine eyes *like* the fishpools in Heshbon, by the gate of Bathrabbim: thy nose *is* as the tower of Lebanon which looketh toward Damascus. [\[Song 4:4\]](#);
5 Thine head upon you *is* like Carmel, and the hair of thine head like purple; the king *is* held in the galleries.
6 How fair and how pleasant are you, O love, for delights! [Ps 45:11](#); [Song 1:15](#); [Song 4:1](#);
7 This thy stature is like to a palm tree, and thy breasts to clusters *of grapes*.
8 I said, I will go up to the palm tree, I will take hold of the boughs thereof: now also thy breasts shall be as clusters of the vine, and the smell of thy nose like apples;
9 And the roof of thy mouth like the best wine for my beloved, that goes *down* sweetly, causing the lips of those that are asleep to speak.

The church professes her faith and desire

10 I *am* my beloved's, and his desire *is* toward me. [Song 2:16](#); [Song 6:3](#);
11 Come, my beloved, let us go forth into the field; let us lodge in the villages.
12 Let us get up early to the vineyards; let us see if the vine flourish, *whether* the tender grape appear, *and* the pomegranates bud forth: there will I give you my loves.
13 The mandrakes give a smell, and at our gates *are* all manner of pleasant *fruits*, new and old, *which* I have laid up for you, O my beloved.

SONG OF SOLOMON EIGHT

The love of the church to the Messiah

1 O that you *were* as my brother, that sucked the breasts of my mother! *when* I should find you without, I would kiss you; yes, I should not be despised.

2 I would lead you, *and* bring you into my mother's house, *who* would instruct me: I would cause you to drink of spiced wine of the juice of my pomegranate.

3 His left hand *should be* under my head, and his right hand should embrace me. [Song 2:6;](#)

4 I charge you, O daughters of Jerusalem, that you stir not up, nor awake *my* love, until he please. [Song 2:7; Song 3:5;](#)

5 Who *is* this that cometh up from the wilderness, leaning upon her beloved? I raised you up under the apple tree: there thy mother brought you forth: there she brought you forth *that* bore you. [\[Song 3:6\];](#)

The vehemency of love

6 Set me as a seal upon thine heart, as a seal upon thine arm: for love *is* strong as death; jealousy *is* cruel as the grave: the coals thereof *are* coals of fire, *which has a* most vehement flame.

7 Many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it: if *a* man would give all the substance of his house for love, it would utterly be contemned. [Rom 8:28;](#)

The calling of the Gentiles

8 We have a little sister, and she has no breasts: what shall we do for our sister in the day when she shall be spoken for?

9 If she *be* a wall, we will build upon her a palace of silver: and if she *be* a door, we will inclose her with boards of cedar.

10 I *am* a wall, and my breasts like towers: then was I in his eyes as one that found favor.

11 Solomon had a vineyard at Baalhamon; he let out the vineyard unto keepers; every one for the fruit thereof was to bring a thousand *pieces* of silver.

12 My vineyard, which *is* mine, *is* before me: you, O Solomon, *must have* a thousand, and those that keep the fruit thereof two hundred.

13 *you* that dwellest in the gardens, the companions hearken to thy voice: cause me to hear *it*.

The church prays for the Messiah's coming

14 Make haste, my beloved, and be you like to a roe or to a young hart upon the mountains of spices. [Rev 22:17; Rev 22:20;](#)

Isaiah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#) [41](#) [42](#) [43](#) [44](#) [45](#) [46](#) [47](#) [48](#) [49](#) [50](#) [51](#) [52](#) [53](#) [54](#) [55](#) [56](#) [57](#) [58](#) [59](#)
[60](#) [61](#) [62](#) [63](#) [64](#) [65](#) [66](#)

ISAIAH ONE

Isaiah complains of Judah for her rebellion

- 1** The vision of Isaiah the son of Amoz, which he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, *and* Hezekiah, kings of Judah. [\[2Kgs 19:2\]](#);
- 2** Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth: for the YAHWEH has spoken, I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me. [Deut 32:1](#); [\[Jer 2:12\]](#); [\[Mic 1:2\]](#);
- 3** The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib: *but* Israel does not know, my people do not consider.
- 4** Ah sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a seed of evildoers, children that are corrupters: they have forsaken the YAHWEH, they have provoked the Holy One of Israel unto anger, they are gone away backward. [Ps 78:8](#); [Isa 57:3](#); [\[Zeph 1:6\]](#);

He laments her judgments

- 5** Why should you be stricken any more? you will revolt more and more: the whole head is sick, and the whole heart faint. [2Chr 28:22](#); [Jer 2:30](#); [\[Jer 5:3\]](#); [\[Ezek 21:13\]](#);
- 6** From the sole of the foot even unto the head *there is* no soundness in it; *but* wounds, and bruises, and putrifying sores: they have not been closed, neither bound up, neither mollified with ointment.
- 7** Your country *is* desolate, your cities *are* burned with fire: your land, strangers devour it in your presence, and *it is* desolate, as overthrown by strangers. [Deut 28:51-52](#); [Isa 5:5](#); [\[Matt 23:38\]](#); [\[Luke 13:35\]](#);
- 8** And the daughter of Zion is left as a cottage in a vineyard, as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers, as a besieged city. [\[Isa 24:20\]](#);
- 9** Except the YAHWEH of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, *and* we should have been like unto Gomorrah. [Isa 17:6](#); [Isa 24:6](#); [Isa 30:17](#); [Rom 9:29](#); [Gen 19:24](#); [\[Isa 13:19\]](#); [\[Jer 23:14\]](#); [\[Lam 3:22\]](#);

He upbraids their whole service

- 10** Hear the word of the YAHWEH, you rulers of Sodom; give ear unto the law of our Elohim, you people of Gomorrah.
- 11** To what purpose *is* the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the YAHWEH: I am full of the burnt offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of lambs, or of he goats. [Ps 50:8-9](#); [Prov 15:8](#); [Prov 21:27](#); [Isa 66:3](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Amos 5:22](#); [\[Prov 21:3\]](#); [\[Jer 7:21\]](#); [\[Amos 5:21\]](#); [\[Mal 1:10\]](#); [\[Heb 10:5\]](#);
- 12** When you come to appear before me, who has required this at your hand, to tread my courts?
- 13** Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me; the new moons and Sabbaths, the calling of assemblies, I cannot endure; *it is* iniquity, even the solemn meeting. [\[Prov 21:27\]](#);
- 14** Your new moons and your appointed feasts my being hateth: they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear *them*.
- 15** And when you spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you: yes, when you make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood. [Prov 1:28](#); [\[Job 27:9\]](#); [\[Job 35:12\]](#); [\[Prov 1:27\]](#); [\[Jer 11:11\]](#); [\[Jer 14:12\]](#); [\[Ezek 8:18\]](#); [\[Zech 7:13\]](#); [\[Matt 6:7\]](#); [\[Luke 18:11\]](#); [\[John 9:31\]](#); [\[Jas 4:8\]](#);

He exhorts to repentance, with promises and threatenings

16 Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil; [Ps 34:14](#); [Ps 37:27](#); [Amos 5:15](#); [Rom 12:9](#); [\[Prov 21:3\]](#); [\[Jer 4:14\]](#); [\[1Pet 3:11\]](#); [\[3John 1:11\]](#);

17 Learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.

18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the YAHWEH: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool. [Ps 51:7](#); [\[Isa 43:26\]](#);

19 If you be willing and obedient, you shall eat the good of the land:

20 But if you refuse and rebel, you shall be devoured with the sword: for the mouth of the YAHWEH has spoken *it*.

Bewailing their wickedness, he denounces Elohim's judgments

21 How is the faithful city become a harlot! it was full of judgment; righteousness lodged in it; but now murderers.

22 Thy silver is become dross, thy wine mixed with water: [Ezek 22:18-19](#); [Hos 4:18](#); [\[Jer 6:30\]](#); [\[Ezek 22:18\]](#);

23 Thy princes *are* rebellious, and companions of thieves: every one loveth gifts, and followeth after rewards: they judge not the fatherless, neither does the cause of the widow come unto them. [Jer 5:28](#); [Zech 7:10](#); [\[Deut 24:17\]](#); [\[Hos 9:15\]](#);

24 Therefore saith the Lord, the YAHWEH of hosts, the mighty One of Israel, Ah, I will ease me of mine adversaries, and avenge me of mine enemies: [Deut 28:63](#);

He promises grace

25 And I will turn my hand upon you, and purely purge away thy dross, and take away all thy tin: [Jer 6:29](#); [Mal 3:3](#);

26 And I will restore thy judges as at the first, and thy counsellors as at the beginning: afterward you shall be called, The city of righteousness, the faithful city.

27 Zion shall be redeemed with judgment, and her converts with righteousness.

and threatens destruction to the wicked

28 And the destruction of the transgressors and of the sinners *shall be* together, and they that forsake the YAHWEH shall be consumed. [Job 31:3](#); [Ps 1:6](#); [Ps 5:5](#); [Ps 73:27](#); [Ps 92:9](#); [Ps 104:35](#); [\[Jer 17:13\]](#);

29 For they shall be ashamed of the oaks which you have desired, and you shall be confounded for the gardens that you have chosen. [\[Isa 42:17\]](#); [\[Isa 44:11\]](#); [\[Hos 4:13\]](#);

30 For you shall be as an oak whose leaf fadeth, and as a garden that has no water.

31 And the strong shall be as tow, and the maker of it as a spark, and they shall both burn together, and none shall quench *them*.

ISAIAH TWO

Isaiah prophesies the coming of the Messiah's kingdom

1 The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem.

2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, *that* the mountain of the YAHWEH'S house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it. [Mic 4:1](#); [\[Jer 31:6\]](#); [\[Hos 3:5\]](#); [\[Luke 13:29\]](#);

3 And many people shall go and say, Come you, and let us go up to the mountain of the YAHWEH, to the house of the Elohim of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the YAHWEH from Jerusalem. [Ps 110:2](#); [\[Acts 1:8\]](#);

4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. [Joel 3:10](#);

5 O house of Jacob, come you, and let us walk in the light of the YAHWEH.

Wickedness is the cause of Elohim's forsaking

6 Therefore you have forsaken thy people the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and *are* soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

7 Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither *is there any* end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither *is there any* end of their chariots:

8 Their land also is full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made: [\[Jer 2:28\]](#);

9 And the mean man boweth down, and the great man humbleth himself: therefore forgive them not.

He exhorts to fear, because of the powerful effects of Elohim's majesty

10 Enter into the rock, and hide you in the dust, for fear of the YAHWEH, and for the glory of his majesty.

11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the YAHWEH alone shall be exalted in that day. [Isa 5:15](#);

12 For the day of the YAHWEH of hosts *shall be* upon every *one that is* proud and lofty, and upon every *one that is* lifted up; and he shall be brought low:

13 And upon all the cedars of Lebanon, *that are* high and lifted up, and upon all the oaks of Bashan, [\[Ezek 27:6\]](#);

14 And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills *that are* lifted up,

15 And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall,

16 And upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

17 And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low: and the YAHWEH alone shall be exalted in that day.

18 And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the YAHWEH, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth. [\[Hos 10:8\]](#); [\[Luke 23:30\]](#); [\[2Thess 1:9\]](#); [\[Rev 6:16\]](#); [\[Rev 9:6\]](#);

20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which they made *each one* for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats; [\[Isa 31:7\]](#);

21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for fear of the YAHWEH, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

22 Cease you from man, whose breath *is* in his nostrils: for wherein is he to be accounted of?

The great calamities which come by sin

- 1** For, behold, the Lord, the YAHWEH of hosts, takes away from Jerusalem and from Judah the stay and the staff, the whole stay of bread, and the whole stay of water, [Ezek 4:16]; [Ezek 5:16];
- 2** The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the elder, [Job 12:20];
- 3** The captain of fifty, and the honourable man, and the counsellor, and the cunning craftsman, and the eloquent orator.
- 4** And I will give children *to be* their princes, and babes shall rule over them. [Ecc 10:16];
- 5** And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbour: the child shall behave himself proudly against the elder, and the base against the honourable.
- 6** When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, *saying*, you have clothing, be you our ruler, and *let* this ruin *be* under thy hand:
- 7** In that day shall he swear, saying, I will not be a healer; for in my house *is* neither bread nor clothing: make me not a ruler of the people.
- 8** For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen: because their tongue and their doings *are* against the YAHWEH, to provoke the eyes of his glory.
- 9** The show of their countenance witnesses against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide *it* not. Woe unto their being! for they have rewarded evil unto themselves. [Jer 2:19];

The different reward of the righteous and wicked

- 10** Say you to the righteous, that *it shall be* well *with him*: for they shall eat the fruit of their doings. [Ecc 8:12];
- 11** Woe unto the wicked! *it shall be* ill *with him*: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.

The oppression and covetousness of the rulers

- 12** *As for* my people, children *are* their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they which lead you cause you to err, and destroy the way of thy paths. [Ecc 10:16];
- 13** The YAHWEH standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.
- 14** The YAHWEH will enter into judgment with the elders of his people, and the princes thereof: for you have eaten up the vineyard; the spoil of the poor *is* in your houses.
- 15** What mean you *that* you beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor? saith the Lord GOD of hosts.

The judgments which shall be for the pride of the women

- 16** Moreover the YAHWEH saith, Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing *as* they go, and making a tinkling with their feet:
- 17** Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the YAHWEH will discover their secret parts. [Isa 47:3];
- 18** In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of *their* tinkling ornaments *about their feet*, and *their* cauls, and *their* round tires like the moon,
- 19** The chains, and the bracelets, and the mufflers,
- 20** The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the earrings,
- 21** The rings, and nose jewels,
- 22** The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping pins,
- 23** The glasses, and the fine linen, and the hoods, and the vails.

24 And it shall come to pass, *that* instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle a rent; and instead of well set hair baldness; and instead of a stomacher a girding of sackcloth; *and* burning instead of beauty.

The general desolation

25 Thy men shall fall by the sword, and thy mighty in the war.

26 And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she *being* desolate shall sit upon the ground.

ISAIAH FOUR

In the extremity of evils, the Messiah's kingdom shall be a sanctuary

1 And in that day seven women shall take hold of one man, saying, We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel: only let us be called by thy name, to take away our reproach. [\[Luke 1:25\];](#)

2 In that day shall the branch of the YAHWEH be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth *shall be* excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel. [\[Isa 11:1\]; \[Jer 23:5\]; \[Zech 3:8\]; \[John 1:45\]; \[Acts 10:43\]; \[Acts 13:32\]; \[Acts 26:6\]; \[Acts 28:23\]; \[Rom 1:2\];](#)

3 And it shall come to pass, *that he that is* left in Zion, and *he that* remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, *even* every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem: [\[Luke 10:20\];](#)

4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.

5 And the YAHWEH will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night: for upon all the glory *shall be* a defence.

6 And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and for a covert from storm and from rain.

ISAIAH FIVE

Under the parable of a vineyard, Elohim excuses his severe judgment

1 Now will I sing to my wellbeloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard. My wellbeloved has a vineyard in a very fruitful hill: [\[Jer 8:13\]; \[Matt 21:33\]; \[Mark 12:1\]; \[Luke 20:9\];](#)

2 And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a winepress therein: and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

3 And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, between me and my vineyard.

4 What could have been done more to my vineyard, that I have not done in it? wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes, brought it forth wild grapes? [Jer 2:5; Mic 6:3; Mic 6:8;](#)

5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard: I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; *and* break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down: [Ps 80:12; \[Isa 1:7\]; \[Hos 2:12\];](#)

6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

7 For the vineyard of the YAHWEH of hosts *is* the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant: and he looked for judgment, but behold oppression; for righteousness, but behold a cry. [Ps 80:8;](#)

His judgments upon covetousness

8 Woe unto them that join house to house, *that* lay field to field, till *there be* no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth! [Mic 2:2](#);

9 In mine ears *said* the YAHWEH of hosts, Of a truth many houses shall be desolate, *even* great and fair, without inhabitant.

10 Yes, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

upon lasciviousness

11 Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, *that* they may follow strong drink; that continue until night, *till* wine inflame them! [Prov 23:29-30](#); [\[Prov 23:30\]](#); [\[Eccl 10:16\]](#); [\[Isa 28:7\]](#); [\[Amos 6:6\]](#); [\[Eph 5:18\]](#);

12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the YAHWEH, neither consider the operation of his hands. [\[Job 34:27\]](#); [\[Amos 6:5\]](#); [\[Amos 6:6\]](#);

upon impiety

13 Therefore my people are gone into captivity, because *they have* no knowledge: and their honourable men *are* famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst. [Amos 6:7](#);

14 Therefore hell has enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

15 And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled: [\[Isa 2:11\]](#);

16 But the YAHWEH of hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and Elohim that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

17 Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat. [Isa 14:30](#);

18 Woe unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope:

19 That say, Let him make speed, *and* hasten his work, that we may see *it*: and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know *it*! [\[Isa 66:5\]](#); [\[Jer 17:15\]](#); [\[Amos 5:18\]](#);

and upon injustice

20 Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

21 Woe unto *them that are* wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own sight! [Prov 3:7](#); [Rom 12:16](#); [\[1Cor 3:18\]](#);

22 Woe unto *them that are* mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink: [\[Prov 23:20\]](#); [\[Prov 23:30\]](#); [\[Eph 5:18\]](#);

23 Which justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him! [Prov 17:15](#); [Prov 24:24](#);

24 Therefore as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, *so* their root shall be as rottenness, and their blossom shall go up as dust: because they have cast away the law of the YAHWEH of hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel. [Exod 15:7](#); [Isa 9:19](#); [\[Isa 9:18\]](#);

25 Therefore is the anger of the YAHWEH kindled against his people, and he has stretched forth his hand against them, and has smitten them: and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses *were* torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand *is* stretched out still. [Isa 10:6](#); [Isa 9:12](#); [Isa 9:17](#); [Isa 9:21](#); [Isa 10:4](#);

The executioners of Elohim's judgments

26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly:

27 None shall be weary nor stumble among them; none shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken:

28 Whose arrows *are* sharp, and all their bows bent, their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind: [Jer 47:3]; [Ezek 26:11];
29 Their roaring *shall be* like a lion, they shall roar like young lions: yes, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry *it* away safe, and none shall deliver *it*. [Jer 2:15]; [Jer 4:7];
30 And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea: and if *one* look unto the land, behold darkness *and* sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof. Isa 8:22;

ISAIAH SIX

Isaiah, in a vision of the Lord in his glory

1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. 2Kgs 15:7; [John 12:41];
2 Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. Rev 4:8;
3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, *is* the YAHWEH of hosts: the whole earth *is* full of his glory. Rev 4:8; [Ps 150:1];
4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. [Rev 15:8];

being terrified, has apprehensions removed

5 Then said I, Woe *is* me! for I am undone; because I *am* a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the YAHWEH of hosts.
6 Then flew one of the seraphims unto me, having a live coal in his hand, *which* he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: [Jer 1:9];
7 And he laid *it* upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. Jer 1:9; Dan 10:16;

He offers himself, and is sent to show the obstinacy of the people unto their desolation

8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here *am* I; send me.
9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear you indeed, but understand not; and see you indeed, but perceive not. Matt 13:14; Mark 4:12; Luke 8:10; John 12:40; Acts 28:26; Rom 11:8; [Ps 69:23]; [Jer 5:21]; [Ezek 12:2];
10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed. Jer 5:21; [2Cor 3:14]; [2Cor 4:4];
11 Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate,
12 And the YAHWEH have removed men far away, and *there be* a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

A remnant shall be saved

13 But yet in it *shall be* a tenth, and *it* shall return, and shall be eaten: as a teil tree, and as an oak, whose substance *is* in them, when they cast *their leaves*: *so* the holy seed *shall be* the substance thereof.

Ahaz, being troubled with fear of Rezin and Pekah, is comforted by Isaiah

1 And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, *that* Rezin the king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it. [2Kgs 16:5](#); [2Chr 28:5](#); [\[2Kgs 15:37\]](#);

2 And it was told the house of David, saying, Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

3 Then said the YAHWEH unto Isaiah, Go forth now to meet Ahaz, you, and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

4 And say unto him, Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be fainthearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

5 Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against you, saying,

6 Let us go up against Judah, and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, *even* the son of Tabeal:

7 Thus saith the Lord GOD, It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

8 For the head of Syria *is* Damascus, and the head of Damascus *is* Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken, that it be not a people.

9 And the head of Ephraim *is* Samaria, and the head of Samaria *is* Remaliah's son. If you will not believe, surely you shall not be established.

Ahaz, having liberty to choose a sign, and refusing it, has for a sign, the Messiah promised

10 Moreover the YAHWEH spoke again unto Ahaz, saying,

11 Ask you a sign of the YAHWEH thy Elohim; ask it either in the depth, or in the height above.

12 But Ahaz said, I will not ask, neither will I tempt the YAHWEH.

13 And he said, Hear you now, O house of David; *Is it* a small thing for you to weary men, but will you weary my Elohim also?

14 Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel. [Matt 1:23](#); [Luke 1:31](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:14\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#);

15 Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.

16 For before the child shall know to refuse the evil, and choose the good, the land that you abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

His judgment is prophesied to come by Assyria

17 The YAHWEH shall bring upon you, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come, from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah; *even* the king of Assyria.

18 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the YAHWEH shall hiss for the fly that *is* in the uttermost part of the rivers of Egypt, and for the bee that *is* in the land of Assyria.

19 And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

20 In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, *namely*, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet: and it shall also consume the beard.

21 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* a man shall nourish a young cow, and two sheep;

22 And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk *that* they shall give he shall eat butter: for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

23 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, it shall *even* be for briers and thorns. [Lev 26:22](#);

24 With arrows and with bows shall *men* come thither; because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

25 And *on* all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns: but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and for the treading of lesser cattle.

ISAIAH EIGHT

In Maher-shalal-hash-baz, he prophesies that Syria and Israel shall be subdued by Assyria

1 Moreover the YAHWEH said unto me, Take you a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen concerning Mahershalalhashbaz. [\[Jer 36:2\]](#);

2 And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

3 And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived, and bore a son. Then said the YAHWEH to me, Call his name Mahershalalhashbaz.

4 For before the child shall have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria. [\[2Kgs 17:6\]](#);

Judah likewise for their infidelity

5 The YAHWEH spoke also unto me again, saying,

6 Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

7 Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, *even* the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks: [\[Rev 17:15\]](#);

8 And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach *even* to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel. [\[Isa 30:28\]](#);

Elohim's judgments shall be irresistible

9 Associate yourselves, O you people, and you shall be broken in pieces; and give ear, all you of far countries: gird yourselves, and you shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and you shall be broken in pieces.

10 Take counsel together, and it shall come to nought; speak the word, and it shall not stand: for Elohim *is* with us. [\[Job 5:12\]](#); [\[Acts 5:38\]](#);

Comfort shall be to them that fear Elohim

11 For the YAHWEH spoke thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying,

12 Say you not, A confederacy, to all *them* to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear you their fear, nor be afraid. [\[Matt 10:26\]](#); [\[1Pet 3:14\]](#);

13 Sanctify the YAHWEH of hosts himself; and *let* him *be* your fear, and *let* him *be* your dread.

14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem. [Isa 28:16](#); [Luke 2:34](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [1Pet 2:7](#); [\[Ps 118:22\]](#); [\[Matt 21:42\]](#); [\[Luke 20:17\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:8\]](#);

15 And many among them shall stumble, and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken. [Matt 21:44](#); [Luke 20:18](#);

16 Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

17 And I will wait upon the YAHWEH, that hides his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

18 Behold, I and the children whom the YAHWEH has given me *are* for signs and for wonders in Israel from the YAHWEH of hosts, which dwelleth in mount Zion. [Heb 2:13](#); [\[John 17:12\]](#);

Great afflictions to idolaters

19 And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep, and that mutter: should not a people seek unto their Elohim? for the living to the dead? [Deut 18:11](#); [\[Deut 18:10\]](#); [\[2Kgs 23:24\]](#); [\[Isa 29:4\]](#);

20 To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, *it is* because *there is* no light in them. [\[Luke 16:29\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:13\]](#);

21 And they shall pass through it, hard pressed and hungry: and it shall come to pass, that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their Elohim, and look upward.

22 And they shall look unto the earth; and behold trouble and darkness, dimness of anguish; and *they shall be* driven to darkness. [Isa 5:30](#);

ISAIAH NINE

What joy shall be in the midst of afflictions, by the birth and kingdom of Yahushua

1 Nevertheless the dimness *shall* not *be* such as *was* in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict *her by* the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations. [Matt 4:15](#); [\[2Kgs 15:29\]](#); [\[Acts 10:37\]](#);

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them has the light shined. [Matt 4:15-16](#); [Eph 5:14](#); [\[Luke 1:79\]](#); [\[Acts 10:37\]](#);

3 You have multiplied the nation, *and* not increased the joy: they joy before you according to the joy in harvest, *and as men* rejoice when they divide the spoil.

4 For you have broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor, as in the day of Midian. [Judg 7:22](#); [Isa 10:26](#); [\[Gal 5:1\]](#);

5 For every battle of the warrior *is* with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but *this* shall be with burning *and* fuel of fire. [\[Luke 24:27\]](#);

6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty Elohim, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace. [Isa 22:22](#); [Luke 2:10-11](#); [John 4:10](#); [Isa 11:2](#); [Jer 23:6](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[John 12:34\]](#); [\[John 16:33\]](#); [\[Acts 10:36\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#); [\[Rom 1:4\]](#); [\[Eph 2:14\]](#); [\[1John 5:20\]](#);

7 Of the increase of *his* government and peace *there shall be* no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the YAHWEH of hosts will perform this. [2Kgs 19:31](#); [Isa 37:32](#); [\[Isa 16:5\]](#); [\[Luke 1:32\]](#); [\[Col 1:20\]](#);

The judgments upon Israel for their pride

8 The Lord sent a word into Jacob, and it has lighted upon Israel.

9 And all the people shall know, *even* Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart,

10 The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones: the sycomores are cut down, but we will change *them into* cedars.

11 Therefore the YAHWEH shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

12 The Syrians before, and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand *is* stretched out still. [Isa 5:25](#); [Isa 10:4](#);

for their hypocrisy

13 For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Jer 5:3\]](#);

14 Therefore the YAHWEH will cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush, in one day. [\[Isa 19:15\]](#);

15 The elder and honourable, he *is* the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he *is* the tail.

16 For the leaders of this people cause *them* to err; and *they that are* led of them *are* destroyed.

17 Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows: for every one *is* a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand *is* stretched out still. [Isa 10:6](#); [\[Isa 5:25\]](#);

and for their impenitency

18 For wickedness burneth as the fire: it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forest, and they shall mount up *like* the lifting up of smoke. [Isa 5:24](#); [Isa 24:6](#);

19 Through the wrath of the YAHWEH of hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire: no man shall spare his brother. [\[Isa 5:24\]](#); [\[Isa 24:6\]](#);

20 And he shall snatch on the right hand, and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand, and they shall not be satisfied: they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm:

21 Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh: *and* they together *shall be* against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand *is* stretched out still. [\[Isa 5:25\]](#);

ISAIAH TEN

The woe of tyrants

1 Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness *which* they have prescribed; [\[Jer 7:6\]](#); [\[Matt 23:4\]](#); [\[Luke 11:46\]](#);

2 To turn aside the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and *that* they may rob the fatherless!

3 And what will you do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation *which* shall come from far? to whom will you flee for help? and where will you leave your glory? [\[Isa 44:12\]](#);

4 Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand *is* stretched out still. [\[Isa 5:25\]](#); [\[Isa 9:12\]](#);

Assyria, the rod of hypocrites, for his pride shall be broken

5 O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation. [Isa 36:1](#); [Jer 25:9](#); [Ezek 21:9](#);

6 I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets. [Isa 5:25](#); [\[Isa 9:17\]](#);

7 Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither does his heart think so; but *it is* in his heart to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

8 For he saith, *Are* not my princes altogether kings?

9 *Is* not Calno as Carchemish? *is* not Hamath as Arpad? *is* not Samaria as Damascus?

- 10** As my hand has found the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;
- 11** Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and her idols?
- 12** Wherefore it shall come to pass, *that* when the Lord has performed his whole work upon mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks. [\[Nah 2:2\];](#)
- 13** For he saith, By the strength of my hand I have done *it*, and by my wisdom; for I am prudent: and I have removed the bounds of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant *man*:
- 14** And my hand has found as a nest the riches of the people: and as one gathereth eggs *that are* left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.
- 15** Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? *or* shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? as if the rod should shake *itself* against them that lift it up, *or* as if the staff should lift up *itself*, *as if it were* no wood.
- 16** Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of hosts, send among his fat ones leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire. [Isa 24:6; \[Ps 106:15\];](#)
- 17** And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame: and it shall burn and devour his thorns and his briers in one day; [\[Ps 27:1\];](#)
- 18** And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both being and body: and they shall be as when a standardbearer fainteth.
- 19** And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

A remnant of Israel shall be saved

- 20** And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the YAHWEH, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.
- 21** The remnant shall return, *even* the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty Elohim. [\[Isa 59:20\];](#)
- 22** For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness. [Rom 9:27-28; \[Rom 9:27\];](#)
- 23** For the Lord GOD of hosts shall make a consumption, even determined, in the midst of all the land. [Isa 28:22;](#)

Judah is comforted with promise of deliverance from Assyria

- 24** Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD of hosts, O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian: he shall smite you with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against you, after the manner of Egypt.
- 25** For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.
- 26** And the YAHWEH of hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb: and *as* his rod *was* upon the sea, so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt. [Exod 14:1-31; \[Judg 7:25\]; \[Isa 9:4\];](#)
- 27** And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.
- 28** He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he has laid up his carriages:
- 29** They are gone over the passage: they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramah is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.
- 30** Lift up thy voice, O daughter of Gallim: cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.
- 31** Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

32 As yet shall he remain at Nob that day: he shall shake his hand *against* the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

33 Behold, the Lord, the YAHWEH of hosts, shall lop the bough with terror: and the high ones of stature *shall be* hewn down, and the haughty shall be humbled.

34 And he shall cut down the thickets of the forest with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

ISAIAH ELEVEN

The peaceable kingdom of the Branch out of the root of Jesse

1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots: [Isa 4:2](#); [Acts 13:22-23](#); [Zech 3:8](#); [\[Matt 2:23\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:8\]](#); [\[Heb 7:14\]](#);

2 And the spirit of the YAHWEH shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the YAHWEH; [Isa 9:6](#); [\[Isa 42:1\]](#); [\[Matt 3:16\]](#);

3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the YAHWEH: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:

4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. [\[Job 4:9\]](#); [\[2Thess 2:8\]](#);

5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. [Isa 65:25](#); [Hos 2:18](#);

7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.

9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the YAHWEH, as the waters cover the sea.

The victorious restoration of Israel, and vocation of the Gentiles

10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious. [Rom 15:12](#); [\[Rev 5:5\]](#); [\[Rev 22:16\]](#);

11 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

13 The envy also of Ephraim shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off: Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim. [\[Hos 1:11\]](#);

14 But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines toward the west; they shall spoil them of the east together: they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

15 And the YAHWEH shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind shall he shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make *men* go over dryshod.

16 And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt. [Exod 14:29](#);

ISAIAH TWELVE

A joyful thanksgiving of the faithful for the mercies of Elohim

- 1** And in that day you shall say, O YAHWEH, I will praise you: though you were angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and you comfortedst me.
- 2** Behold, Elohim *is* my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the YAHWEH JEHOVAH *is* my strength and *my* song; he also is become my salvation. [\[Exod 15:2\]](#);
- 3** Therefore with joy shall you draw water out of the wells of salvation. [John 7:37-38](#); [\[John 7:38\]](#);
- 4** And in that day shall you say, Praise the YAHWEH, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted. [John 17:1](#); [John 17:4](#); [John 17:6](#); [John 17:26](#); [\[Ps 148:13\]](#);
- 5** Sing unto the YAHWEH; for he has done excellent things: this *is* known in all the earth.
- 6** Cry out and shout, you inhabitant of Zion: for great *is* the Holy One of Israel in the midst of you.

ISAIAH THIRTEEN

Elohim musters the armies of his wrath

- 1** The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.
- 2** Lift you up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.
- 3** I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger, *even* them that rejoice in my highness.
- 4** The noise of a multitude in the mountains, like as of a great people; a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together: the YAHWEH of hosts mustereth the host of the battle. [\[2Kgs 7:6\]](#);
- 5** They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, *even* the YAHWEH, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

He threatens to destroy Babylon by the Medes

- 6** Howl you; for the day of the YAHWEH *is* at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty. [\[Joel 1:15\]](#);
- 7** Therefore shall all hands be faint, and every man's heart shall melt: [\[Ezek 7:17\]](#); [\[Nah 2:10\]](#);
- 8** And they shall be afraid: pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be in pain as a woman that travaileth: they shall be amazed one at another; their faces *shall be as* flames. [\[Nah 2:10\]](#);
- 9** Behold, the day of the YAHWEH cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.
- 10** For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. [Ezek 32:7](#); [Joel 2:31](#); [Joel 3:15](#); [Matt 24:29](#); [Mark 13:24](#); [Luke 21:5](#); [\[Isa 24:23\]](#); [\[Joel 2:10\]](#); [\[Luke 21:25\]](#);
- 11** And I will punish the world for *their* evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible.
- 12** I will make a man more precious than fine gold; *even* a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.
- 13** Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the YAHWEH of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.
- 14** And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up: they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

15 Every one that is found shall be thrust through; and every one that is joined *unto them* shall fall by the sword.

16 Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled, and their wives ravished. [\[Zech 14:2\]](#);

17 Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver; and *as for* gold, they shall not delight in it.

18 *Their* bows also shall dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eye shall not spare children.

The desolation of Babylon

19 And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when Elohim overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. [Gen 19:25](#); [Isa 1:9](#); [Jer 49:18](#); [Jer 50:40](#); [\[Gen 19:24\]](#); [\[Jer 51:41\]](#); [\[Luke 17:29\]](#); [\[Rom 9:29\]](#); [\[2Pet 2:6\]](#); [\[Jude 1:7\]](#);

20 It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

21 But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there. [\[Isa 34:11\]](#); [\[Rev 18:2\]](#);

22 And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in *their* pleasant palaces: and her time *is* near to come, and her days shall not be prolonged.

ISAIAH FOURTEEN

Elohim's merciful restoration of Israel

1 For the YAHWEH will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land: and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

2 And the people shall take them, and bring them to their place: and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the YAHWEH for servants and handmaids: and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

Their triumphant exultation over Babel

3 And it shall come to pass in the day that the YAHWEH shall give you rest from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein you were made to serve, [Deut 28:48](#);

4 That you shall take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say, How has the oppressor ceased! the golden city ceased!

5 The YAHWEH has broken the staff of the wicked, *and* the sceptre of the rulers.

6 He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, *and* none hindereth.

7 The whole earth is at rest, *and* is quiet: they break forth into singing.

8 Yes, the fir trees rejoice at you, *and* the cedars of Lebanon, *saying*, Since you are laid down, no feller is come up against us.

9 Hell from beneath is moved for you to meet you at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for you, *even* all the chief ones of the earth; it has raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations. [\[Ezek 31:16\]](#);

10 All they shall speak and say unto you, are you also become weak as we? are you become like unto us?

11 Thy pomp is brought down to the grave, *and* the noise of thy viols: the worm is spread under you, and the worms cover you.

- 12** How are you fallen from heaven, O shining star, son of the morning! *how* are you cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!
- 13** For you have said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of Elohim: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: [Ps 48:2](#);
- 14** I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.
- 15** Yet you shall be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
- 16** They that see you shall narrowly look upon you, *and* consider you, *saying*, *Is* this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;
- 17** *That* made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof; *that* opened not the house of his prisoners?
- 18** All the kings of the nations, *even* all of them, lie in glory, every one in his own house.
- 19** But you are cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, *and as* the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcase trodden under feet.
- 20** You shall not be joined with them in burial, because you have destroyed thy land, *and* slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned. [Job 18:19](#); [Ps 21:10](#); [Ps 37:28](#); [Ps 109:13](#);
- 21** Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities. [Exod 20:5](#); [Matt 23:25](#);
- 22** For I will rise up against them, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the YAHWEH. [Job 18:19](#); [Ps 21:10](#); [Ps 37:28](#);
- 23** I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water: and I will sweep it with the broom of destruction, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [Isa 34:11](#); [Zeph 2:14](#);

Elohim's purpose against Assyria

- 24** The YAHWEH of hosts has sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, *so* shall it stand:
- 25** That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.
- 26** This *is* the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this *is* the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations. [\[Mal 3:6\]](#);
- 27** For the YAHWEH of hosts has purposed, and who shall disannul *it*? and his hand *is* stretched out, and who shall turn it back? [2Chr 20:6](#); [Job 9:12](#); [Prov 21:30](#); [Dan 4:35](#); [\[Isa 43:13\]](#); [\[Jas 1:17\]](#);
- 28** In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden. [2Kgs 16:20](#);

Palestina is threatened

- 29** Rejoice not you, whole Philistia, because the rod of him that smote you is broken: for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit *shall be* a fiery flying serpent.
- 30** And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety: and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant. [\[2Kgs 18:8\]](#); [\[Isa 5:17\]](#);
- 31** Howl, O gate; cry, O city; you, whole Philistia, are dissolved: for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none *shall be* alone in his appointed times.
- 32** What shall *one* then answer the messengers of the nation? That the YAHWEH has founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

ISAIAH FIFTEEN

The lamentable state of Moab

- 1** The burden of Moab. Because in the night Ar of Moab is laid waste, *and* brought to silence; because in the night Kir of Moab is laid waste, *and* brought to silence; [Jer 48:1](#); [Ezek 25:9](#); [Amos 2:1](#);
- 2** He is gone up to Bajith, and to Dibon, the high places, to weep: Moab shall howl over Nebo, and over Medeba: on all their heads *shall be* baldness, *and* every beard cut off. [Jer 48:37](#); [Ezek 7:18](#); [[Jer 7:29](#)];
- 3** In their streets they shall gird themselves with sackcloth: on the tops of their houses, and in their streets, every one shall howl, weeping abundantly.
- 4** And Heshbon shall cry, and Elealeh: their voice shall be heard *even* unto Jahaz: therefore the armed soldiers of Moab shall cry out; his life shall be grievous unto him.
- 5** My heart shall cry out for Moab; his fugitives *shall flee* unto Zoar, a heifer of three years old: for by the mounting up of Luhith with weeping shall they go it up; for in the way of Horonaim they shall raise up a cry of destruction. [[Jer 48:5](#)]; [[Jer 48:34](#)];
- 6** For the waters of Nimrim shall be desolate: for the hay is withered away, the grass faileth, there is no green thing.
- 7** Therefore the abundance they have gotten, and that which they have laid up, shall they carry away to the brook of the willows.
- 8** For the cry is gone round about the borders of Moab; the howling thereof unto Eglaim, and the howling thereof unto Beerelim.
- 9** For the waters of Dimon shall be full of blood: for I will bring more upon Dimon, lions upon him that escapeth of Moab, and upon the remnant of the land.

ISAIAH SIXTEEN

Moab is exhorted to yield obedience to the throne of David

- 1** Send you the lamb to the ruler of the land from Sela to the wilderness, unto the mount of the daughter of Zion.
- 2** For it shall be, *that*, as a wandering bird cast out of the nest, *so* the daughters of Moab shall be at the fords of Arnon.
- 3** Take counsel, execute judgment; make thy shadow as the night in the midst of the noonday; hide the outcasts; do not uncover the fugitive.
- 4** Let mine outcasts dwell with you, Moab; be you a covert to them from the face of the spoiler: for the extortioner is at an end, the spoiler ceaseth, the oppressors are consumed out of the land.
- 5** And in mercy shall the throne be established: and he shall sit upon it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging, and seeking judgment, and hasting righteousness. [Isa 9:7](#); [Dan 7:14](#); [Dan 7:27](#); [Mic 4:7](#); [Luke 1:33](#);

Moab is threatened for her pride

- 6** We have heard of the pride of Moab; *he is* very proud: *even* of his haughtiness, and his pride, and his wrath: *but* his lies *shall* not *be* so. [Jer 48:29-30](#); [[Isa 25:11](#)]; [[Jer 48:29](#)];
- 7** Therefore shall Moab howl for Moab, every one shall howl: for the foundations of Kirhareseth shall you mourn; surely *they are* stricken. [Jer 48:20](#);
- 8** For the fields of Heshbon languish, *and* the vine of Sibmah: the lords of the heathen have broken down the principal plants thereof, they are come *even* unto Jazer, they wandered *through* the wilderness: her branches are stretched out, they are gone over the sea. [Jer 48:32-33](#);

The prophet bewails her

9 Therefore I will bewail with the weeping of Jazer the vine of Sibmah: I will water you with my tears, O Heshbon, and Elealeh: for the shouting for thy summer fruits and for thy harvest is fallen.

10 And gladness is taken away, and joy out of the plentiful field; and in the vineyards there shall be no singing, neither shall there be shouting: the treaders shall tread out no wine in *their* presses; I have made *their vintage* shouting to cease. [Isa 24:9]; [Jer 48:33];

11 Wherefore my bowels shall sound like a harp for Moab, and mine inward parts for Kirharesh. [Lam 1:20];

The judgment of Moab

12 And it shall come to pass, when it is seen that Moab is weary on the high place, that he shall come to his sanctuary to pray; but he shall not prevail. Deut 32:37-39;

13 This *is* the word that the YAHWEH has spoken concerning Moab since that time.

14 But now the YAHWEH has spoken, saying, Within three years, as the years of a hireling, and the glory of Moab shall be contemned, with all that great multitude; and the remnant *shall be* very small *and* feeble.

ISAIAH SEVENTEEN

Syria and Israel are threatened

1 The burden of Damascus. Behold, Damascus is taken away from *being* a city, and it shall be a ruinous heap. [Jer 49:23];

2 The cities of Aroer *are* forsaken: they shall be for flocks, which shall lie down, and none shall make *them* afraid.

3 The fortress also shall cease from Ephraim, and the kingdom from Damascus, and the remnant of Syria: they shall be as the glory of the children of Israel, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

4 And in that day it shall come to pass, *that* the glory of Jacob shall be made thin, and the fatness of his flesh shall wax lean.

5 And it shall be as when the harvestman gathereth the corn, and reapeth the ears with his arm; and it shall be as he that gathereth ears in the valley of Rephaim. [Isa 27:12];

A remnant shall forsake idolatry

6 *yet* gleanings shall be left in it, as the shaking of an olive tree, two *or* three berries in the top of the uppermost bough, four *or* five in the outmost fruitful branches thereof, saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel. [Isa 1:9]; [Isa 24:13]; [Isa 30:17];

7 At that day shall a man look to his Maker, and his eyes shall have respect to the Holy One of Israel.

8 And he shall not look to the altars, the work of his hands, neither shall respect *that* which his fingers have made, either the groves, or the images.

The rest shall be plagued for their impiety

9 In that day shall his strong cities be as a forsaken bough, and an uppermost branch, which they left because of the children of Israel: and there shall be desolation.

10 Because you have forgotten the Elohim of thy salvation, and have not been mindful of the rock of thy strength, therefore shall you plant pleasant plants, and shall set it with strange slips:

11 In the day shall you make thy plant to grow, and in the morning shall you make thy seed to flourish: *but* the harvest *shall be* a heap in the day of grief and of desperate sorrow.

The woe of Israel's enemies

12 Woe to the multitude of many people, *which* make a noise like the noise of the seas; and to the rushing of nations, *that* make a rushing like the rushing of mighty waters!

13 The nations shall rush like the rushing of many waters: but *Elohim* shall rebuke them, and they shall flee far off, and shall be chased as the chaff of the mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before the whirlwind. [Job 21:18](#); [Ps 1:4](#); [Ps 35:5](#); [Ps 83:13](#); [Hos 13:3](#); [\[Isa 29:5\]](#); [\[Isa 41:15\]](#);

14 And behold at eveningtide trouble; *and* before the morning he *is* not. This *is* the portion of them that spoil us, and the lot of them that rob us.

ISAIAH EIGHTEEN

Elohim, in care of his people, will destroy the Ethiopians

1 Woe to the land shadowing with wings, which *is* beyond the rivers of Ethiopia:

2 That sendeth ambassadors by the sea, even in vessels of bulrushes upon the waters, *saying*, Go, you swift messengers, to a nation scattered and peeled, to a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden down, whose land the rivers have spoiled!

3 All you inhabitants of the world, and dwellers on the earth, see you, when he lifteth up an ensign on the mountains; and when he bloweth a trumpet, hear you.

4 For so the YAHWEH said unto me, I will take my rest, and I will consider in my dwelling place like a clear heat upon herbs, *and* like a cloud of dew in the heat of harvest.

5 For before the harvest, when the bud is perfect, and the sour grape is ripening in the flower, he shall both cut off the sprigs with pruning hooks, and take away *and* cut down the branches.

6 They shall be left together unto the fowls of the mountains, and to the beasts of the earth: and the fowls shall summer upon them, and all the beasts of the earth shall winter upon them.

An accession thereby shall be made to the church

7 In that time shall the present be brought unto the YAHWEH of hosts of a people scattered and peeled, and from a people terrible from their beginning hitherto; a nation meted out and trodden under foot, whose land the rivers have spoiled, to the place of the name of the YAHWEH of hosts, the mount Zion.

ISAIAH NINETEEN

The confusion of Egypt

1 The burden of Egypt. Behold, the YAHWEH rideth upon a swift cloud, and shall come into Egypt: and the idols of Egypt shall be moved at his presence, and the heart of Egypt shall melt in the midst of it. [\[Ps 104:3\]](#);

2 And I will set the Egyptians against the Egyptians: and they shall fight every one against his brother, and every one against his neighbour; city against city, *and* kingdom against kingdom. [\[Matt 24:7\]](#); [\[Mark 13:8\]](#); [\[Luke 21:10\]](#);

3 And the spirit of Egypt shall fail in the midst thereof; and I will destroy the counsel thereof: and they shall seek to the idols, and to the charmers, and to them that have familiar spirits, and to the wizards. [\[Ps 33:10\]](#);

- 4** And the Egyptians will I give over into the hand of a cruel lord; and a fierce king shall rule over them, saith the Lord, the YAHWEH of hosts.
- 5** And the waters shall fail from the sea, and the river shall be wasted and dried up.
- 6** And they shall turn the rivers far away; *and* the brooks of defence shall be emptied and dried up: the reeds and flags shall wither.
- 7** The paper reeds by the brooks, by the mouth of the brooks, and every thing sown by the brooks, shall wither, be driven away, and be no *more*.
- 8** The fishers also shall mourn, and all they that cast hooks into the brooks shall lament, and they that spread nets upon the waters shall languish.
- 9** Moreover they that work in fine flax, and they that weave networks, shall be confounded.
- 10** And they shall be broken in the purposes thereof, all that make sluices *and* ponds for fish.

The foolishness of their princes

- 11** Surely the princes of Zoan *are* fools, the counsel of the wise counsellors of Pharaoh is become brutish: how say you unto Pharaoh, I *am* the son of the wise, the son of ancient kings?
- 12** Where *are* they? where *are* thy wise *men*? and let them tell you now, and let them know what the YAHWEH of hosts has purposed upon Egypt. [Job 12:17];
- 13** The princes of Zoan are become fools, the princes of Noph are deceived; they have also seduced Egypt, *even they that are* the stay of the tribes thereof.
- 14** The YAHWEH has mingled a perverse spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken *man* staggereth in his vomit. [2Chr 18:22]; [Isa 24:20];
- 15** Neither shall there be *any* work for Egypt, which the head or tail, branch or rush, may do. Isa 9:14;
- 16** In that day shall Egypt be like unto women: and it shall be afraid and fear because of the shaking of the hand of the YAHWEH of hosts, which he shaketh over it.
- 17** And the land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt, every one that maketh mention thereof shall be afraid in himself, because of the counsel of the YAHWEH of hosts, which he has determined against it.

The calling of Egypt into the church

- 18** In that day shall five cities in the land of Egypt speak the language of Canaan, and swear to the YAHWEH of hosts; one shall be called, The city of destruction. Deut 10:20; Jer 12:16;
- 19** In that day shall there be an altar to the YAHWEH in the midst of the land of Egypt, and a pillar at the border thereof to the YAHWEH.
- 20** And it shall be for a sign and for a witness unto the YAHWEH of hosts in the land of Egypt: for they shall cry unto the YAHWEH because of the oppressors, and he shall send them a saviour, and a great one, and he shall deliver them.
- 21** And the YAHWEH shall be known to Egypt, and the Egyptians shall know the YAHWEH in that day, and shall do sacrifice and oblation; yes, they shall vow a vow unto the YAHWEH, and perform *it*. Mal 1:11;
- 22** And the YAHWEH shall smite Egypt: he shall smite and heal *it*: and they shall return *even* to the YAHWEH, and he shall be intreated of them, and shall heal them.

The covenant of Egypt, Assyria, and Israel

- 23** In that day shall there be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria, and the Assyrian shall come into Egypt, and the Egyptian into Assyria, and the Egyptians shall serve with the Assyrians.
- 24** In that day shall Israel be the third with Egypt and with Assyria, *even* a blessing in the midst of the land:
- 25** Whom the YAHWEH of hosts shall bless, saying, Blessed *be* Egypt my people, and Assyria the work of my hands, and Israel mine inheritance.

A type prefiguring the shameful captivity of Egypt and Ethiopia

1 In the year that Tartan came unto Ashdod, (when Sargon the king of Assyria sent him,) and fought against Ashdod, and took it;

2 At the same time spoke the YAHWEH by Isaiah the son of Amoz, saying, Go and loose the sackcloth from off thy loins, and put off thy shoe from thy foot. And he did so, walking naked and barefoot.

3 And the YAHWEH said, Like as my servant Isaiah has walked naked and barefoot three years *for* a sign and wonder upon Egypt and upon Ethiopia;

4 So shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with *their* buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt.

5 And they shall be afraid and ashamed of Ethiopia their expectation, and of Egypt their glory.

6 And the inhabitant of this isle shall say in that day, Behold, such *is* our expectation, whither we flee for help to be delivered from the king of Assyria: and how shall we escape?

The prophet, bewailing the captivity of his people, sees in a vision the fall of Babylon by the Medes and Persians

1 The burden of the desert of the sea. As whirlwinds in the south pass through; *so* it cometh from the desert, from a terrible land.

2 A grievous vision is declared unto me; the treacherous dealer dealeth treacherously, and the spoiler spoileth. Go up, O Elam: besiege, O Media; all the sighing thereof have I made to cease.

3 Therefore are my loins filled with pain: pangs have taken hold upon me, as the pangs of a woman that travaileth: I was bowed down at the hearing *of it*; I was dismayed at the seeing *of it*. [[Nah 2:10](#)];

4 My heart panted, fearfulness frightened me: the night of my pleasure has he turned into fear unto me. [[Job 7:3](#); [Jer 4:19](#)];

5 Prepare the table, watch in the watchtower, eat, drink: arise, you princes, *and* anoint the shield.

6 For thus has the Lord said unto me, Go, set a watchman, let him declare what he seeth.

7 And he saw a chariot *with* a couple of horsemen, a chariot of asses, *and* a chariot of camels; and he hearkened diligently with much heed:

8 And he cried, A lion: My lord, I stand continually upon the watchtower in the daytime, and I am set in my ward whole nights: [[Hab 2:1](#)];

9 And, behold, here cometh a chariot of men, *with* a couple of horsemen. And he answered and said, Babylon is fallen, is fallen; and all the graven images of her gods he has broken unto the ground. [[Jer 25:12](#); [Jer 51:8](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [Rev 18:2](#); [[Isa 25:2](#)]; [[Rev 18:10](#)];

10 O my threshing, and the grain of my floor: that which I have heard of the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, have I declared unto you.

Edom, scorning the prophet, is moved to repentance

11 The burden of Dumah. He calleth to me out of Seir, Watchman, what of the night? Watchman, what of the night?

12 The watchman said, The morning cometh, and also the night: if you will enquire, enquire you: return, come.

The set time of Arabia's calamity

13 The burden upon Arabia. In the forest in Arabia shall you lodge, O you travelling companies of Dedanim.

14 The inhabitants of the land of Tema brought water to him that was thirsty, they prevented with their bread him that fled.

15 For they fled from the swords, from the drawn sword, and from the bent bow, and from the grievousness of war.

16 For thus has the Lord said unto me, Within a year, according to the years of a hireling, and all the glory of Kedar shall fail:

17 And the residue of the number of archers, the mighty men of the children of Kedar, shall be diminished: for the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel has spoken *it*.

ISAIAH TWENTY-TWO

The prophet laments the invasion of Jewry

1 The burden of the valley of vision. What aileth you now, that you are wholly gone up to the housetops?

2 You that are full of stirs, a tumultuous city, a joyous city: thy slain *men are* not slain with the sword, nor dead in battle.

3 All thy rulers are fled together, they are bound by the archers: all that are found in you are bound together, *which* have fled from far.

4 Therefore said I, Look away from me; I will weep bitterly, labour not to comfort me, because of the spoiling of the daughter of my people. [Jer 9:1](#);

5 For *it is* a day of trouble, and of treading down, and of perplexity by the Lord GOD of hosts in the valley of vision, breaking down the walls, and of crying to the mountains.

6 And Elam bore the quiver with chariots of men *and* horsemen, and Kir uncovered the shield.

7 And it shall come to pass, *that* thy choicest valleys shall be full of chariots, and the horsemen shall set themselves in array at the gate.

He reproves their human wisdom and worldly joy

8 And he discovered the covering of Judah, and you didst look in that day to the armour of the house of the forest.

9 You have seen also the breaches of the city of David, that they are many: and you gathered together the waters of the lower pool.

10 And you have numbered the houses of Jerusalem, and the houses have you broken down to fortify the wall.

11 You made also a ditch between the two walls for the water of the old pool: but you have not looked unto the maker thereof, neither had respect unto him that fashioned it long ago.

12 And in that day did the Lord GOD of hosts call to weeping, and to mourning, and to baldness, and to girding with sackcloth:

13 And behold joy and gladness, slaying oxen, and killing sheep, eating flesh, and drinking wine: let us eat and drink; for to morrow we shall die. [Isa 56:12](#); [1Cor 15:32](#); [\[Gen 25:32\]](#);

14 And it was revealed in mine ears by the YAHWEH of hosts, Surely this iniquity shall not be purged from you till you die, saith the Lord GOD of hosts.

He prophesies Shebna's deprivation

15 Thus saith the Lord GOD of hosts, Go, get you unto this treasurer, *even* unto Shebna, which *is* over the house, *and say*,

16 What have you here? and whom have you here, that you have hewed you out a sepulcher here, *as* he that heweth him out a sepulcher on high, *and* that graveth a habitation for himself in a rock?

17 Behold, the YAHWEH will carry you away with a mighty captivity, and will surely cover you.

18 He will surely violently turn and toss you *like* a ball into a large country: there shall you die, and there the chariots of thy glory *shall be* the shame of thy lord's house.

19 And I will drive you from thy station, and from thy state shall he pull you down.

and the substitution of Eliakim, prefiguring the kingdom of the Messiah

20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that I will call my servant Eliakim the son of Hilkiah: [2Kgs 18:18](#); [2Kgs 18:26](#); [2Kgs 18:37](#);

21 And I will clothe him with thy robe, and strengthen him with thy girdle, and I will commit thy government into his hand: and he shall be a father to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and to the house of Judah.

22 And the key of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open. [\[Isa 9:6\]](#); [\[Rev 1:18\]](#); [\[Rev 3:7\]](#);

23 And I will fasten him *as* a nail in a sure place; and he shall be for a glorious throne to his father's house.

24 And they shall hang upon him all the glory of his father's house, the offspring and the issue, all vessels of small quantity, from the vessels of cups, even to all the vessels of flagons.

25 In that day, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, shall the nail that is fastened in the sure place be removed, and be cut down, and fall; and the burden that *was* upon it shall be cut off: for the YAHWEH has spoken *it*.

ISAIAH TWENTY-THREE

The miserable overthrow of Tyre

1 The burden of Tyre. Howl, you ships of Tarshish; for it is laid waste, so that there is no house, no entering in: from the land of Chittim it is revealed to them. [Jer 47:4](#); [Ezek 26:1-21](#); [Ezek 27:1-36](#); [Ezek 28:1-26](#); [Zech 9:3-4](#);

2 Be still, you inhabitants of the isle; you whom the merchants of Zidon, that pass over the sea, have replenished.

3 And by great waters the seed of Sihor, the harvest of the river, *is* her revenue; and she is a mart of nations.

4 Be you ashamed, O Zidon: for the sea has spoken, *even* the strength of the sea, saying, I travail not, nor bring forth children, neither do I nourish up young men, *nor* bring up virgins.

5 As at the report concerning Egypt, *so* shall they be sorely pained at the report of Tyre.

6 Pass you over to Tarshish; howl, you inhabitants of the isle.

7 *Is* this your joyous *city*, whose antiquity *is* of ancient days? her own feet shall carry her afar off to sojourn.

8 Who has taken this counsel against Tyre, the crowning *city*, whose merchants *are* princes, whose traffickers *are* the honourable of the earth?

9 The YAHWEH of hosts has purposed it, to stain the pride of all glory, *and* to bring into contempt all the honourable of the earth.

10 Pass through thy land as a river, O daughter of Tarshish: *there is* no more strength.

- 11** He stretched out his hand over the sea, he shook the kingdoms: the YAHWEH has given a commandment against the merchant *city*, to destroy the strong holds thereof.
- 12** And he said, you shall no more rejoice, O you oppressed virgin, daughter of Zidon: arise, pass over to Chittim; there also shall you have no rest.
- 13** Behold the land of the Chaldeans; this people was not, *till* the Assyrian founded it for them that dwell in the wilderness: they set up the towers thereof, they raised up the palaces thereof; *and* he brought it to ruin. [\[Isa 25:2\]](#);
- 14** Howl, you ships of Tarshish: for your strength is laid waste.

Her restoration and whoredoms

- 15** And it shall come to pass in that day, that Tyre shall be forgotten seventy years, according to the days of one king: after the end of seventy years shall Tyre sing as a harlot.
- 16** Take a harp, go about the city, you harlot that have been forgotten; make sweet melody, sing many songs, that you may be remembered.
- 17** And it shall come to pass after the end of seventy years, that the YAHWEH will visit Tyre, and she shall turn to her hire, and shall commit fornication with all the kingdoms of the world upon the face of the earth.
- 18** And her merchandise and her hire shall be holiness to the YAHWEH: it shall not be treasured nor laid up; for her merchandise shall be for them that dwell before the YAHWEH, to eat sufficiently, and for durable clothing.

ISAIAH TWENTY-FOUR

The doleful judgments of Elohim upon the land

- 1** Behold, the YAHWEH maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof.
- 2** And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury, so with the giver of usury to him. [Ezek 7:12-13](#); [\[Hos 4:9\]](#);
- 3** The land shall be utterly emptied, and utterly spoiled: for the YAHWEH has spoken this word.
- 4** The earth mourneth *and* fadeth away, the world languisheth *and* fadeth away, the haughty people of the earth do languish.
- 5** The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant.
- 6** Therefore has the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are desolate: therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left. [Isa 9:19](#); [Isa 10:16](#); [\[Isa 1:9\]](#); [\[Isa 9:18\]](#); [\[Isa 30:17\]](#);
- 7** The new wine mourneth, the vine languisheth, all the merryhearted do sigh. [\[Jer 7:34\]](#); [\[Jer 16:9\]](#); [\[Jer 25:10\]](#); [\[Ezek 26:13\]](#);
- 8** The mirth of tabrets ceaseth, the noise of them that rejoice endeth, the joy of the harp ceaseth. [Jer 7:34](#); [Jer 16:9](#); [Jer 25:10](#); [Ezek 26:13](#); [Hos 2:11](#);
- 9** They shall not drink wine with a song; strong drink shall be bitter to them that drink it. [Isa 16:10](#);
- 10** The city of confusion is broken down: every house is shut up, that no man may come in.
- 11** *There is* a crying for wine in the streets; all joy is darkened, the mirth of the land is gone.
- 12** In the city is left desolation, and the gate is smitten with destruction.

A remnant shall joyfully praise him

13 When thus it shall be in the midst of the land among the people, *there shall be* as the shaking of an olive tree, *and* as the gleaning grapes when the vintage is done. [Isa 17:6](#); [\[Isa 30:17\]](#); [\[Jer 6:9\]](#);

14 They shall lift up their voice, they shall sing for the majesty of the YAHWEH, they shall cry aloud from the sea.

15 Wherefore glorify you the YAHWEH in the fires, *even* the name of the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel in the isles of the sea.

Elohim in his judgments shall advance his kingdom

16 From the uttermost part of the earth have we heard songs, *even* glory to the righteous. But I said, My leanness, my leanness, woe unto me! the treacherous dealers have dealt treacherously; yes, the treacherous dealers have dealt very treacherously.

17 Fear, and the pit, and the snare, *are* upon you, O inhabitant of the earth. [Jer 48:43](#);

18 And it shall come to pass, *that* he who fleeth from the noise of the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that cometh up out of the midst of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for the windows from on high are open, and the foundations of the earth do shake. [Jer 48:44](#); [Amos 5:19](#);

19 The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly.

20 The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage; and the transgression thereof shall be heavy upon it; and it shall fall, and not rise again. [Isa 19:14](#); [Job 27:18](#); [Isa 1:8](#);

21 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the YAHWEH shall punish the host of the high ones *that are* on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth.

22 And they shall be gathered together, *as* prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited.

23 Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the YAHWEH of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his elders gloriously. [Isa 13:10](#); [Ezek 32:7](#); [Joel 2:31](#); [Joel 3:15](#);

ISAIAH TWENTY-FIVE

1 O YAHWEH, you are my Elohim; I will exalt you, I will praise thy name; for you have done wonderful things; *thy* counsels of old *are* faithfulness *and* truth.

2 For you have made of a city a heap; *of* a defenced city a ruin: a palace of strangers to be no city; it shall never be built. [Isa 21:9](#); [Isa 23:13](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [Rev 18:2](#);

3 Therefore shall the strong people glorify you, the city of the terrible nations shall fear you.

4 For you have been a strength to the poor, a strength to the needy in his distress, a refuge from the storm, a shadow from the heat, when the blast of the terrible ones *is* as a storm *against* the wall.

5 You shall bring down the noise of strangers, as the heat in a dry place; *even* the heat with the shadow of a cloud: the branch of the terrible ones shall be brought low.

6 And in this mountain shall the YAHWEH of hosts make unto all people a feast of fat things, a feast of wines on the lees, of fat things full of marrow, of wines on the lees well refined. [\[Luke 14:16\]](#);

7 And he will destroy in this mountain the face of the covering cast over all people, and the vail that is spread over all nations.

8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord GOD will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the YAHWEH has spoken *it*. [1Cor 15:54](#); [\[Hos 13:14\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:10\]](#); [\[Heb 2:14\]](#); [\[Rev 7:17\]](#); [\[Rev 21:4\]](#);

9 And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this *is* our Elohim; we have waited for him, and he will save us: this *is* the YAHWEH; we have waited for him, we will be glad and rejoice in his salvation. [\[Ps 27:14\]](#); [\[Mal 3:6\]](#);

- 10** For in this mountain shall the hand of the YAHWEH rest, and Moab shall be trodden down under him, even as straw is trodden down for the dunghill.
- 11** And he shall spread forth his hands in the midst of them, as he that swimmeth spreadeth forth *his hands* to swim: and he shall bring down their pride together with the spoils of their hands. [Isa 16:6](#);
- 12** And the fortress of the high fort of thy walls shall he bring down, lay low, *and* bring to the ground, *even* to the dust.

ISAIAH TWENTY-SIX

- 1** In that day shall this song be sung in the land of Judah; We have a strong city; salvation will *Elohim* appoint *for* walls and bulwarks. [Ps 46:5](#); [Ps 125:1](#); [Prov 18:10](#);
- 2** Open you the gates, that the righteous nation which keepeth the truth may enter in.
- 3** You will keep *him* in perfect peace, *whose* mind *is* stayed *on you*: because he trusteth in you.
- 4** Trust you in the YAHWEH for ever: for in the YAHWEH JEHOVAH *is* everlasting strength:
- 5** For he bringeth down them that dwell on high; the lofty city, he layeth it low; he layeth it low, *even* to the ground; he bringeth it *even* to the dust. [\[Isa 47:1\]](#);
- 6** The foot shall tread it down, *even* the feet of the poor, *and* the steps of the needy.
- 7** The way of the just *is* uprightness: you, most upright, dost weigh the path of the just.
- 8** *yes*, in the way of thy judgments, O YAHWEH, have we waited for you; the desire of *our* being *is* to thy name, and to the remembrance of you.
- 9** With my being have I desired you in the night; yes, with my spirit within me will I seek you early: for when thy judgments *are* in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness.
- 10** Let favor be showed to the wicked, yet will he not learn righteousness: in the land of uprightness will he deal unjustly, and will not behold the majesty of the YAHWEH.
- 11** YAHWEH, *when* thy hand is lifted up, they will not see: *but* they shall see, and be ashamed for *their* envy at the people; yes, the fire of thine enemies shall devour them.
- 12** YAHWEH, you will ordain peace for us: for you also have wrought all our works in us.
- 13** O YAHWEH our Elohim, *other* lords beside you have had dominion over us: *but* by you only will we make mention of thy name.
- 14** *They are* dead, they shall not live; *they are* deceased, they shall not rise: therefore have you visited and destroyed them, and made all their memory to perish.
- 15** You have increased the nation, O YAHWEH, you have increased the nation: you are glorified: you hadst removed *it* far *unto* all the ends of the earth.
- 16** YAHWEH, in trouble have they visited you, they poured out a prayer *when* thy chastening *was* upon them.
- 17** Like as a woman with child, *that* draweth near the time of her delivery, is in pain, *and* cries out in her pangs; so have we been in thy sight, O YAHWEH. [John 16:21](#);
- 18** We have been with child, we have been in pain, we have as it were brought forth wind; we have not wrought any deliverance in the earth; neither have the inhabitants of the world fallen.
- 19** Thy dead *men* shall live, *together with* my dead body shall they arise. Awake and sing, you that dwell in dust: for thy dew *is as* the dew of herbs, and the earth shall cast out the dead. [\[2Cor 6:9\]](#);
- 20** Come, my people, enter you into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about you: hide thyself as it were for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast. [2Cor 4:17](#);
- 21** For, behold, the YAHWEH cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain. [\[Mic 1:3\]](#);

ISAIAH TWENTY-SEVEN

- 1** In that day the YAHWEH with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that *is* in the sea. [Ezek 29:3];
- 2** In that day sing you unto her, A vineyard of red wine.
- 3** I the YAHWEH do keep it; I will water it every moment: lest *any* hurt it, I will keep it night and day.
- 4** Fury *is* not in me: who would set the briers *and* thorns against me in battle? I would go through them, I would burn them together.
- 5** Or let him take hold of my strength, *that* he may make peace with me; *and* he shall make peace with me.
- 6** He shall cause them that come of Jacob to take root: Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the world with fruit. Ps 72:16;
- 7** Has he smitten him, as he smote those that smote him? *or* is he slain according to the slaughter of them that are slain by him?
- 8** In measure, when it shooteth forth, you will debate with it: he stayeth his rough wind in the day of the east wind. Jer 30:11; Jer 46:28; [Jer 18:17];
- 9** By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this *is* all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up. [Rom 11:26];
- 10** *yet* the defenced city *shall be* desolate, *and* the habitation forsaken, and left like a wilderness: there shall the calf feed, and there shall he lie down, and consume the branches thereof.
- 11** When the boughs thereof are withered, they shall be broken off: the women come, *and* set them on fire: for it *is* a people of no understanding: therefore he that made them will not have mercy on them, and he that formed them will show them no favor.
- 12** And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the YAHWEH shall beat off from the channel of the river unto the stream of Egypt, and you shall be gathered one by one, O you children of Israel. Isa 17:5;
- 13** And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the great trumpet shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt, and shall worship the YAHWEH in the holy mount at Jerusalem.

ISAIAH TWENTY-EIGHT

The prophet threatens Ephraim for their pride and drunkenness

- 1** Woe to the crown of pride, to the drunkards of Ephraim, whose glorious beauty *is* a fading flower, which *are* on the head of the fat valleys of them that are overcome with wine!
- 2** Behold, the Lord has a mighty and strong one, *which* as a tempest of hail *and* a destroying storm, as a flood of mighty waters overflowing, shall cast down to the earth with the hand.
- 3** The crown of pride, the drunkards of Ephraim, shall be trodden under feet:
- 4** And the glorious beauty, which *is* on the head of the fat valley, shall be a fading flower, *and* as the hasty fruit before the summer; which *when* he that looketh upon it seeth, while it is yet in his hand he eateth it up.

The residue shall be advanced in the kingdom of the Messiah

- 5** In that day shall the YAHWEH of hosts be for a crown of glory, and for a diadem of beauty, unto the residue of his people,
- 6** And for a spirit of judgment to him that sitteth in judgment, and for strength to them that turn the battle to the gate.

He rebukes their error

7 But they also have erred through wine, and through strong drink are out of the way; the priest and the prophet have erred through strong drink, they are swallowed up of wine, they are out of the way through strong drink; they err in vision, they stumble *in* judgment. [Isa 5:11](#);

8 For all tables are full of vomit *and* filthiness, *so that there is* no place *clean*.

their untowardness to learn

9 Whom shall he teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? *them that are* weaned from the milk, *and* drawn from the breasts.

10 For precept *must be* upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, *and* there a little:

11 For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people. [1Cor 14:21](#);

12 To whom he said, This *is* the rest *wherewith* you may cause the weary to rest; and this *is* the refreshing: yet they would not hear.

13 But the word of the YAHWEH was unto them precept upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, *and* there a little; that they might go, and fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken. [2Cor 2:16](#);

and their security

14 Wherefore hear the word of the YAHWEH, you scornful men, that rule this people which *is* in Jerusalem. [\[Acts 13:41\]](#);

15 Because you have said, We have made a covenant with death, and with hell are we at agreement; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come unto us: for we have made lies our refuge, and under falsehood have we hid ourselves: [\[Jer 5:12\]](#);

the Messiah the sure foundation is promised

16 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation a stone, a tried stone, a precious corner *stone*, a sure foundation: he that believeth shall not make haste. [Ps 118:22](#); [Matt 21:42](#); [Acts 4:11](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [Rom 10:11](#); [Eph 2:20](#); [1Pet 2:6-8](#); [\[Ps 25:3\]](#); [\[Isa 8:14\]](#); [\[Matt 16:18\]](#); [\[Mark 12:10\]](#); [\[Luke 20:17\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:11\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:6\]](#);

Their security shall be tried

17 Judgment also will I lay to the line, and righteousness to the plummet: and the hail shall sweep away the refuge of lies, and the waters shall overflow the hiding place.

18 And your covenant with death shall be disannulled, and your agreement with hell shall not stand; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, then you shall be trodden down by it.

19 From the time that it goes forth it shall take you: for morning by morning shall it pass over, by day and by night: and it shall be a vexation only *to* understand the report.

20 For the bed is shorter than that *a man* can stretch himself *on it*: and the covering narrower than that he can wrap himself *in it*.

21 For the YAHWEH shall rise up as *in* mount Perazim, he shall be wroth as *in* the valley of Gibeon, that he may do his work, his strange work; and bring to pass his act, his strange act. [\[2Sam 5:20\]](#);

22 Now therefore be you not mockers, lest your bands be made strong: for I have heard from the Lord GOD of hosts a consumption, even determined upon the whole earth. [\[Isa 10:23\]](#);

They are incited to the consideration of Elohim's discreet providence

23 Give you ear, and hear my voice; hearken, and hear my speech.

- 24** Does the plowman plow all day to sow? Does he open and break the clods of his ground?
- 25** When he has made plain the face thereof, does he not cast abroad the fitches, and scatter the cummin, and cast in the principal wheat and the appointed barley and the rie in their place?
- 26** For his Elohim instructs him to discretion, *and* teaches him.
- 27** For the fitches are not threshed with a threshing instrument, neither is a cart wheel turned about upon the cummin; but the fitches are beaten out with a staff, and the cummin with a rod.
- 28** Bread grain is bruised; because he will not ever be threshing it, nor break *it with* the wheel of his cart, nor bruise it *with* his horsemen.
- 29** This also cometh forth from the YAHWEH of hosts, *which* is wonderful in counsel, *and* excellent in working. [Jer 32:19](#);

ISAIAH TWENTY-NINE

Elohim's heavy judgment upon Jerusalem

- 1** Woe to Ariel, to Ariel, the city *where* David dwelt! add you year to year; let them kill sacrifices.
- 2** Yet I will distress Ariel, and there shall be heaviness and sorrow: and it shall be unto me as Ariel.
- 3** And I will camp against you round about, and will lay siege against you with a mount, and I will raise forts against you. [Jer 6:3](#); [Ezek 17:17](#);
- 4** And you shall be brought down, *and* shall speak out of the ground, and thy speech shall be low out of the dust, and thy voice shall be, as of one that has a familiar spirit, out of the ground, and thy speech shall whisper out of the dust. [Isa 8:19](#);
- 5** Moreover the multitude of thy strangers shall be like small dust, and the multitude of the terrible ones *shall be* as chaff that passeth away: yes, it shall be at an instant suddenly. [Job 21:18](#); [Ps 1:4](#); [Ps 35:5](#); [Isa 17:13](#); [Isa 30:13](#); [[Isa 41:15](#)];
- 6** You shall be visited of the YAHWEH of hosts with thunder, and with earthquake, and great noise, with storm and tempest, and the flame of devouring fire. [[Jer 18:17](#)];

The unsatiableness of her enemies

- 7** And the multitude of all the nations that fight against Ariel, even all that fight against her and her munition, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision.
- 8** It shall even be as when a hungry *man* dreameth, and, behold, he eateth; but he awaketh, and his being is empty: or as when a thirsty man dreameth, and, behold, he drinketh; but he awaketh, and, behold, *he is* faint, and his being has appetite: so shall the multitude of all the nations be, that fight against mount Zion.

The senselessness

- 9** Stay yourselves, and wonder; cry you out, and cry: they are drunken, but not with wine; they stagger, but not with strong drink.
- 10** For the YAHWEH has poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and has closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers has he covered. [Rom 11:8](#); [[Ps 69:23](#)];
- 11** And the vision of all is become unto you as the words of a book that is sealed, which *men* deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this, I pray you: and he saith, I cannot; for it *is* sealed:
- 12** And the book is delivered to him that is not learned, saying, Read this, I pray you: and he saith, I am not learned.

and deep hypocrisy of the Jews

13 Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near *me* with their mouth, and with their lips do honour me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men: [Matt 15:8](#); [Mark 7:6](#); [\[Jer 12:2\]](#); [\[Col 2:22\]](#); [\[Titus 1:14\]](#);

14 Therefore, behold, I will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, *even* a marvellous work and a wonder: for the wisdom of their wise *men* shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent *men* shall be hid. [Jer 49:7](#); [Obad 1:8](#); [Matt 11:25](#); [1Cor 1:19](#); [\[Job 12:17\]](#); [\[Luke 10:21\]](#);

15 Woe unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the YAHWEH, and their works are in the dark, and they say, Who seeth us? and who knoweth us? [Ps 94:7](#);

16 Surely your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay: for shall the work say of him that made it, He made me not? or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, He had no understanding? [Isa 45:9](#);

A promise of sanctification to the godly

17 *Is* it not yet a very little while, and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field, and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest? [\[Isa 32:15\]](#);

18 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity, and out of darkness. [Matt 11:5](#); [\[Isa 32:3\]](#); [\[Matt 15:30\]](#); [\[Luke 7:22\]](#);

19 The meek also shall increase *their* joy in the YAHWEH, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

20 For the terrible one is brought to nought, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off:

21 That make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of nought.

22 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob, Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

23 But when he seeth his children, the work of mine hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the Elohim of Israel. [\[Isa 60:21\]](#);

24 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.

ISAIAH THIRTY

The prophet threatens the people for their confidence in Egypt

1 Woe to the rebellious children, saith the YAHWEH, that take counsel, but not of me; and that cover with a covering, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin:

2 That walk to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to trust in the shadow of Egypt!

3 Therefore shall the strength of Pharaoh be your shame, and the trust in the shadow of Egypt *your* confusion.

4 For his princes were at Zoan, and his ambassadors came to Hanes.

5 They were all ashamed of a people *that* could not profit them, nor be a help nor profit, but a shame, and also a reproach. [Jer 2:36](#);

6 The burden of the beasts of the south: into the land of trouble and anguish, from whence *come* the young and old lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent, they will carry their riches upon the shoulders of young asses, and their treasures upon the bunches of camels, to a people *that* shall not profit *them*.

7 For the Egyptians shall help in vain, and to no purpose: therefore have I cried concerning this, Their strength *is* to sit still.

and contempt of Elohim's word

8 Now go, write it before them in a table, and note it in a book, that it may be for the time to come for ever and ever: [\[Hab 2:2\]](#);

9 That this *is* a rebellious people, lying children, children *that* will not hear the law of the YAHWEH: [\[Ezek 34:23\]](#);

10 Which say to the seers, See not; and to the prophets, Prophecy not unto us right things, speak unto us smooth things, prophesy deceits: [\[Mic 2:6\]](#);

11 Get you out of the way, turn aside out of the path, cause the Holy One of Israel to cease from before us.

12 Wherefore thus saith the Holy One of Israel, Because you despise this word, and trust in oppression and perverseness, and stay thereon:

13 Therefore this iniquity shall be to you as a breach ready to fall, swelling out in a high wall, whose breaking cometh suddenly at an instant. [Isa 29:5](#);

14 And he shall break it as the breaking of the potters' vessel that is broken in pieces; he shall not spare: so that there shall not be found in the bursting of it a sherd to take fire from the hearth, or to take water *withal* out of the pit. [Jer 19:11](#);

15 For thus saith the Lord GOD, the Holy One of Israel; In returning and rest shall you be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and you would not.

16 But you said, No; for we will flee upon horses; therefore shall you flee: and, We will ride upon the swift; therefore shall they that pursue you be swift.

17 One thousand *shall flee* at the rebuke of one; at the rebuke of five shall you flee: till you be left as a beacon upon the top of a mountain, and as an ensign on a hill. [Isa 17:6](#); [Isa 24:6](#); [Isa 24:13](#); [\[Isa 1:9\]](#);

Elohim's mercies towards his church

18 And therefore will the YAHWEH wait, that he may be gracious unto you, and therefore will he be exalted, that he may have mercy upon you: for the YAHWEH *is* a Elohim of judgment: blessed *are* all they that wait for him. [Ps 2:12](#); [Ps 34:8](#); [Prov 16:20](#); [Jer 17:7](#); [\[Luke 1:54\]](#); [\[Rom 2:4\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);

19 For the people shall dwell in Zion at Jerusalem: you shall weep no more: he will be very gracious unto you at the voice of thy cry; when he shall hear it, he will answer you.

20 And though the Lord give you the bread of adversity, and the water of affliction, yet shall not thy teachers be removed into a corner any more, but thine eyes shall see thy teachers:

21 And thine ears shall hear a word behind you, saying, This *is* the way, walk you in it, when you turn to the right hand, and when you turn to the left. [\[Isa 32:3\]](#);

22 You shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: you shall cast them away as a menstruous cloth; you shall say unto it, Get you hence.

23 Then shall he give the rain of thy seed, that you shall sow the ground *withal*; and bread of the increase of the earth, and it shall be fat and plenteous: in that day shall thy cattle feed in large pastures. [\[Jer 14:22\]](#);

24 The oxen likewise and the young asses that ear the ground shall eat clean provender, which has been winnowed with the shovel and with the fan.

25 And there shall be upon every high mountain, and upon every high hill, rivers *and* streams of waters in the day of the great slaughter, when the towers fall.

26 Moreover the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun, and the light of the sun shall be sevenfold, as the light of seven days, in the day that the YAHWEH bindeth up the breach of his people, and healeth the stroke of their wound.

Elohim's wrath and the people's joy, in the destruction of Assyria

27 Behold, the name of the YAHWEH cometh from far, burning *with* his anger, and the burden *thereof is* heavy: his lips are full of indignation, and his tongue as a devouring fire:

28 And his breath, as an overflowing stream, shall reach to the midst of the neck, to sift the nations with the sieve of vanity: and *there shall be* a bridle in the jaws of the people, causing *them* to err. [Isa 8:8](#);

29 You shall have a song, as in the night *when* a holy solemnity is kept; and gladness of heart, as when one goes with a pipe to come into the mountain of the YAHWEH, to the mighty One of Israel.

30 And the YAHWEH shall cause his glorious voice to be heard, and shall show the lighting down of his arm, with the indignation of *his* anger, and *with* the flame of a devouring fire, *with* scattering, and tempest, and hailstones.

31 For through the voice of the YAHWEH shall the Assyrian be beaten down, *which* smote with a rod.

32 And *in* every place where the grounded staff shall pass, which the YAHWEH shall lay upon him, *it* shall be with tabrets and harps: and in battles of shaking will he fight with it.

33 For Tophet *is* ordained of old; yes, for the king it is prepared; he has made *it* deep *and* large: the pile thereof *is* fire and much wood; the breath of the YAHWEH, like a stream of brimstone, kindles it. [\[Matt 25:41\]](#);

ISAIAH THIRTY-ONE

The prophet shows the folly and danger of trusting to Egypt, and forsaking Elohim

1 Woe to them that go down to Egypt for help; and stay on horses, and trust in chariots, because *they are* many; and in horsemen, because they are very strong; but they look not unto the Holy One of Israel, neither seek the YAHWEH! [Ps 20:7](#); [Jer 17:5](#); [\[Jer 2:18\]](#); [\[Jer 2:36\]](#);

2 *yet* he also *is* wise, and will bring evil, and will not call back his words: but will arise against the house of the evildoers, and against the help of them that work iniquity.

3 Now the Egyptians *are* men, and not Elohim; and their horses flesh, and not spirit. When the YAHWEH shall stretch out his hand, both he that helpeth shall fall, and he that is holpen shall fall down, and they all shall fail together. [\[Ezek 28:2\]](#);

4 For thus has the YAHWEH spoken unto me, Like as the lion and the young lion roaring on his prey, when a multitude of shepherds is called forth against him, *he* will not be afraid of their voice, nor fret himself for the noise of them: so shall the YAHWEH of hosts come down to fight for mount Zion, and for the hill thereof. [\[Ps 104:21\]](#);

5 As birds flying, so will the YAHWEH of hosts defend Jerusalem; defending also he will deliver *it*; *and* passing over he will preserve it. [Deut 32:11](#);

He exhorts to conversion

6 Turn you unto *him from* whom the children of Israel have deeply revolted. [\[Zech 1:4\]](#);

7 For in that day every man shall cast away his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which your own hands have made unto you *for* a sin. [Isa 2:20](#);

He shows the fall of Assyria

8 Then shall the Assyrian fall with the sword, not of a mighty man; and the sword, not of a mean man, shall devour him: but he shall flee from the sword, and his young men shall be discomfited.

9 And he shall pass over to his strong hold for fear, and his princes shall be afraid of the ensign, saith the YAHWEH, whose fire *is* in Zion, and his furnace in Jerusalem. [2Kgs 19:36-37](#);

ISAIAH THIRTY-TWO

The blessings of the Messiah's kingdom

1 Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment. [Ps 45:6](#); [Zech 9:9](#);

2 And a man shall be as a hiding place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest; as rivers of water in a dry place, as the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.

3 And the eyes of them that see shall not be dim, and the ears of them that hear shall hearken. [Isa 29:18](#); [Isa 30:21](#);

4 The heart also of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly.

5 The vile person shall be no more called liberal, nor the churl said *to be* bountiful.

6 For the vile person will speak villany, and his heart will work iniquity, to practise hypocrisy, and to utter error against the YAHWEH, to make empty the being of the hungry, and he will cause the drink of the thirsty to fail.

7 The instruments also of the churl *are* evil: he deviseth wicked devices to destroy the poor with lying words, even when the needy speaketh right.

8 But the liberal deviseth liberal things; and by liberal things shall he stand.

Desolation is foreshewn

9 Rise up, you women that are at ease; hear my voice, you careless daughters; give ear unto my speech.

10 Many days and years shall you be troubled, you careless women: for the vintage shall fail, the gathering shall not come.

11 Tremble, you women that are at ease; be troubled, you careless ones: strip you, and make you bare, and gird *sackcloth* upon *your* loins.

12 They shall lament for the teats, for the pleasant fields, for the fruitful vine. [\[Jer 4:8\]](#); [\[Jer 49:3\]](#);

13 Upon the land of my people shall come up thorns *and* briers; yes, upon all the houses of joy *in* the joyous city:

14 Because the palaces shall be forsaken; the multitude of the city shall be left; the forts and towers shall be for dens for ever, a joy of wild asses, a pasture of flocks;

Restoration is promised to succeed

15 Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest. [Joel 2:28](#); [John 7:37-38](#); [Acts 2:17-18](#); [Isa 29:17](#);

16 Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field.

17 And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever. [\[Rom 5:1\]](#);

18 And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places; [Jer 33:16](#);

19 When it shall hail, coming down on the forest; and the city shall be low in a low place.

20 Blessed *are* you that sow beside all waters, that send forth *thither* the feet of the ox and the ass.

Elohim's judgments against the enemies of the church

- 1** Woe to you that spoilest, and you *were* not spoiled; and dealest treacherously, and they dealt not treacherously with you! when you shall cease to spoil, you shall be spoiled; *and* when you shall make an end to deal treacherously, they shall deal treacherously with you.
- 2** O YAHWEH, be gracious unto us; we have waited for you: be you their arm every morning, our salvation also in the time of trouble. [Ps 27:14];
- 3** At the noise of the tumult the people fled; at the lifting up of thyself the nations were scattered.
- 4** And your spoil shall be gathered *like* the gathering of the caterpillar: as the running to and fro of locusts shall he run upon them.
- 5** The YAHWEH is exalted; for he dwelleth on high: he has filled Zion with judgment and righteousness.
- 6** And he shall be the stability of thy times, *and* abundance of salvation, wisdom and knowledge: the fear of the YAHWEH *is* his treasure.
- 7** Behold, their valiant ones shall cry without: the ambassadors of peace shall weep bitterly.
- 8** The highways lie waste, the wayfaring man ceaseth: he has broken the covenant, he has despised the cities, he regardeth no man.
- 9** The earth mourneth *and* languisheth: Lebanon is ashamed *and* hewn down: Sharon is like a wilderness; and Bashan and Carmel shake off *their* fruits.
- 10** Now will I rise, saith the YAHWEH; now will I be exalted; now will I lift up myself.
- 11** You shall conceive chaff, you shall bring forth stubble: your breath, *as* fire, shall devour you.
- 12** And the people shall be *as* the burnings of lime: *as* thorns cut up shall they be burned in the fire.

The consternation of sinners, and privileges of the godly

- 13** Hear, you *that are* far off, what I have done; and, you *that are* near, acknowledge my might.
- 14** The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness has surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings? [Ps 24:3];
- 15** He that walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil; [Ps 15:2; Ps 24:3];
- 16** He shall dwell on high: his place of defence *shall be* the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters *shall be* sure.
- 17** Thine eyes shall see the king in his beauty: they shall behold the land that is very far off.
- 18** Thine heart shall meditate terror. Where *is* the scribe? where *is* the receiver? where *is* he that counted the towers? [John 7:48]; [1Cor 1:20];
- 19** You shall not see a fierce people, a people of a deeper speech than you canst perceive; of a stammering tongue, *that you canst* not understand.
- 20** Look upon Zion, the city of our solemnities: thine eyes shall see Jerusalem a quiet habitation, a tabernacle *that* shall not be taken down; not one of the stakes thereof shall ever be removed, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken. [Ps 46:5; Ps 125:1-2; [Matt 16:18];
- 21** But there the glorious YAHWEH *will be* unto us a place of broad rivers *and* streams; wherein shall go no galley with oars, neither shall gallant ship pass thereby.
- 22** For the YAHWEH *is* our judge, the YAHWEH *is* our lawgiver, the YAHWEH *is* our king; he will save us.
- 23** Thy tacklings are loosed; they could not well strengthen their mast, they could not spread the sail: then is the prey of a great spoil divided; the lame take the prey.
- 24** And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein *shall be* forgiven *their* iniquity.

The judgments wherewith Elohim revenges his church

- 1** Come near, you nations, to hear; and hearken, you people: let the earth hear, and all that is therein; the world, and all things that come forth of it.
- 2** For the indignation of the YAHWEH *is* upon all nations, and *his* fury upon all their armies: he has utterly destroyed them, he has delivered them to the slaughter.
- 3** Their slain also shall be cast out, and their stink shall come up out of their carcases, and the mountains shall be melted with their blood.
- 4** And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling *fig* from the fig tree. [Rev 6:13-14](#);
- 5** For my sword shall be bathed in heaven: behold, it shall come down upon Idumea, and upon the people of my curse, to judgment.
- 6** The sword of the YAHWEH is filled with blood, it is made fat with fatness, *and* with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of rams: for the YAHWEH has a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Idumea. [Isa 63:1-2](#);
- 7** And the unicorns shall come down with them, and the bullocks with the bulls; and their land shall be soaked with blood, and their dust made fat with fatness.
- 8** For *it is* the day of the YAHWEH'S vengeance, *and* the year of recompences for the controversy of Zion.
- 9** And the streams thereof shall be turned into pitch, and the dust thereof into brimstone, and the land thereof shall become burning pitch.
- 10** It shall not be quenched night nor day; the smoke thereof shall go up for ever: from generation to generation it shall lie waste; none shall pass through it for ever and ever. [Rev 14:11](#); [Rev 19:3](#); [[Rev 18:18](#)];

The desolation of her enemies

- 11** But the cormorant and the bittern shall possess it; the owl also and the raven shall dwell in it: and he shall stretch out upon it the line of confusion, and the stones of emptiness. [Isa 13:21-22](#); [Zeph 2:14](#); [Rev 18:2](#); [[Isa 14:23](#)];
- 12** They shall call the nobles thereof to the kingdom, but none *shall be* there, and all her princes shall be nothing.
- 13** And thorns shall come up in her palaces, nettles and brambles in the fortresses thereof: and it shall be a habitation of dragons, *and* a court for owls.
- 14** The wild beasts of the desert shall also meet with the wild beasts of the island, and the satyr shall cry to his fellow; the screech owl also shall rest there, and find for herself a place of rest. [[Rev 18:2](#)];
- 15** There shall the great owl make her nest, and lay, and hatch, and gather under her shadow: there shall the vultures also be gathered, every one with her mate.

The certainty of the prophecy

- 16** Seek you out of the book of the YAHWEH, and read: no one of these shall fail, none shall want her mate: for my mouth it has commanded, and his spirit it has gathered them. [[Luke 16:29](#)]; [[John 5:39](#)]; [[Acts 17:11](#)];
- 17** And he has cast the lot for them, and his hand has divided it unto them by line: they shall possess it for ever, from generation to generation shall they dwell therein.

The joyful flourishing of the Messiah's kingdom

- 1** The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose.
- 2** It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing: the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and Sharon, they shall see the glory of the YAHWEH, *and* the excellency of our Elohim.

The weak are encouraged by the virtues and privileges of the Gospel

- 3** Strengthen you the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees. [Heb 12:12](#);
- 4** Say to them *that are* of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your Elohim will come *with* vengeance, *even* Elohim *with* a recompence; he will come and save you.
- 5** Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. [Matt 9:27](#); [Matt 11:5](#); [Matt 12:22](#); [Matt 20:30](#); [Matt 21:14](#); [John 9:6](#); [Mark 7:32](#); [[Matt 15:30](#)]; [[Luke 7:22](#)];
- 6** Then shall the lame *man* leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. [Matt 11:5](#); [Matt 15:30](#); [Matt 21:14](#); [John 5:8-9](#); [Acts 3:2](#); [Acts 8:7](#); [Acts 14:8](#); [Matt 9:32](#); [Matt 12:22](#); [John 7:38-39](#); [[Acts 14:10](#)];
- 7** And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, *shall be* grass with reeds and rushes. [[Isa 41:18](#)]; [[Isa 44:3](#)];
- 8** And a highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it *shall be* for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err *therein*. [[Zech 14:21](#)];
- 9** No lion shall be there, nor *any* ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk *there*:
- 10** And the ransomed of the YAHWEH shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away. [Rev 21:4](#);

Sennacherib invades Judah

- 1** Now it came to pass in the fourteenth year of king Hezekiah, *that* Sennacherib king of Assyria came up against all the defenced cities of Judah, and took them. [[2Kgs 18:13](#)]; [[2Chr 32:1](#)]; [[Isa 10:5](#)];

Rabshakeh, sent by Sennacherib, by blasphemous persuasions solicits the people to revolt

- 2** And the king of Assyria sent Rabshakeh from Lachish to Jerusalem unto king Hezekiah with a great army. And he stood by the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field.
- 3** Then came forth unto him Eliakim, Hilkiah's son, which was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah, Asaph's son, the recorder.
- 4** And Rabshakeh said unto them, Say you now to Hezekiah, Thus saith the great king, the king of Assyria, What confidence *is* this wherein you trustest?
- 5** I say, *sayest you*, (but *they are but* vain words) *I have* counsel and strength for war: now on whom dost you trust, that you rebellest against me?
- 6** Lo, you trustest in the staff of this broken reed, on Egypt; whereon if a man lean, it will go into his hand, and pierce it: so *is* Pharaoh king of Egypt to all that trust in him. [Ezek 29:6-7](#); [[Ezek 29:6](#)];
- 7** But if you say to me, We trust in the YAHWEH our Elohim: *is it* not he, whose high places and whose altars Hezekiah has taken away, and said to Judah and to Jerusalem, you shall worship before this altar?

- 8** Now therefore give pledges, I pray you, to my master the king of Assyria, and I will give you two thousand horses, if you be able on thy part to set riders upon them.
- 9** How then will you turn away the face of one captain of the least of my master's servants, and put thy trust on Egypt for chariots and for horsemen?
- 10** And am I now come up without the YAHWEH against this land to destroy it? the YAHWEH said unto me, Go up against this land, and destroy it.
- 11** Then said Eliakim and Shebna and Joah unto Rabshakeh, Speak, I pray you, unto thy servants in the Syrian language; for we understand *it*: and speak not to us in the Jews' language, in the ears of the people that *are* on the wall.
- 12** But Rabshakeh said, Has my master sent me to thy master and to you to speak these words? *has he* not *sent me* to the men that sit upon the wall, that they may eat their own dung, and drink their own piss with you?
- 13** Then Rabshakeh stood, and cried with a loud voice in the Jews' language, and said, Hear you the words of the great king, the king of Assyria.
- 14** Thus saith the king, Let not Hezekiah deceive you: for he shall not be able to deliver you.
- 15** Neither let Hezekiah make you trust in the YAHWEH, saying, The YAHWEH will surely deliver us: this city shall not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria.
- 16** Hearken not to Hezekiah: for thus saith the king of Assyria, Make *an agreement* with me *by* a present, and come out to me: and eat you every one of his vine, and every one of his fig tree, and drink you every one the waters of his own cistern;
- 17** Until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of grain and wine, a land of bread and vineyards.
- 18** *Beware* lest Hezekiah persuade you, saying, The YAHWEH will deliver us. Has any of the gods of the nations delivered his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria?
- 19** Where *are* the gods of Hamath and Arphad? where *are* the gods of Sepharvaim? and have they delivered Samaria out of my hand?
- 20** Who *are they* among all the gods of these lands, that have delivered their land out of my hand, that the YAHWEH should deliver Jerusalem out of my hand?
- 21** But they held their peace, and answered him not a word: for the king's commandment was, saying, Answer him not.

His words are told to Hezekiah

22 Then came Eliakim, the son of Hilkiah, that *was* over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah, the son of Asaph, the recorder, to Hezekiah with *their* clothes rent, and told him the words of Rabshakeh.

ISAIAH THIRTY-SEVEN

Hezekiah mourning, sends to Isaiah to pray for them

- 1** And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard *it*, that he rent his clothes, and covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of the YAHWEH. [2Kgs 19:1];
- 2** And he sent Eliakim, who *was* over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests covered with sackcloth, unto Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz.
- 3** And they said unto him, Thus saith Hezekiah, This day *is* a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and of blasphemy: for the children are come to the birth, and *there is* not strength to bring forth.
- 4** It may be the YAHWEH thy Elohim will hear the words of Rabshakeh, whom the king of Assyria his master has sent to reproach the living Elohim, and will reprove the words which the YAHWEH thy Elohim has heard: wherefore lift up *thy* prayer for the remnant that is left.

5 So the servants of king Hezekiah came to Isaiah.

Isaiah comforts them

6 And Isaiah said unto them, Thus shall you say unto your master, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Be not afraid of the words that you have heard, wherewith the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me.

7 Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a rumour, and return to his own land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.

Sennacherib, going to encounter Tirhakah, sends a blasphemous letter to Hezekiah

8 So Rabshakeh returned, and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah: for he had heard that he was departed from Lachish.

9 And he heard say concerning Tirhakah king of Ethiopia, He is come forth to make war with you. And when he heard *it*, he sent messengers to Hezekiah, saying,

10 Thus shall you speak to Hezekiah king of Judah, saying, Let not thy Elohim, in whom you trustest, deceive you, saying, Jerusalem shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.

11 Behold, you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands by destroying them utterly; and shall you be delivered?

12 Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed, *as* Gozan, and Haran, and Rezech, and the children of Eden which *were* in Telassar?

13 Where *is* the king of Hamath, and the king of Arphad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah?

Hezekiah's prayer

14 And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers, and read it: and Hezekiah went up unto the house of the YAHWEH, and spread it before the YAHWEH.

15 And Hezekiah prayed unto the YAHWEH, saying,

16 O YAHWEH of hosts, Elohim of Israel, that dwellest *between* the cherubims, you are the Elohim, *even* you alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: you have made heaven and earth. [1Chr 17:20];

17 Incline thine ear, O YAHWEH, and hear; open thine eyes, O YAHWEH, and see: and hear all the words of Sennacherib, which has sent to reproach the living Elohim.

18 Of a truth, YAHWEH, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all the nations, and their countries,

19 And have cast their gods into the fire: for they *were* no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them.

20 Now therefore, O YAHWEH our Elohim, save us from his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that you are the YAHWEH, *even* you only. [1Chr 17:20];

Isaiah's prophecy of the pride and destruction of Sennacherib, and the good of Zion

21 Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent unto Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Whereas you have prayed to me against Sennacherib king of Assyria:

22 This *is* the word which the YAHWEH has spoken concerning him; The virgin, the daughter of Zion, has despised you, *and* laughed you to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem has shaken her head at you.

23 Whom have you reproached and blasphemed? and against whom have you exalted *thy* voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? *even* against the Holy One of Israel.

24 By thy servants have you reproached the Lord, and have said, By the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars

thereof, *and* the choice fir trees thereof: and I will enter into the height of his border, *and* the forest of his Carmel.

25 I have digged, and drunk water; and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of the besieged places.

26 *have* you not heard long ago, *how* I have done it; *and* of ancient times, that I have formed it? now have I brought it to pass, that you should be to lay waste defenced cities *into* ruinous heaps.

27 Therefore their inhabitants *were* of small power, they were dismayed and confounded: they were *as* the grass of the field, and *as* the green herb, *as* the grass on the housetops, and *as* grain blasted before it be grown up.

28 But I know thy abode, and thy going out, and thy coming in, and thy rage against me.

29 Because thy rage against me, and thy tumult, is come up into mine ears, therefore will I put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn you back by the way by which you camest.

30 And this *shall be* a sign unto you, you shall eat *this* year such as groweth of itself; and the second year that which springeth of the same: and in the third year sow you, and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat the fruit thereof.

31 And the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward:

32 For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of mount Zion: the zeal of the YAHWEH of hosts shall do this. [2Kgs 19:31](#); [Isa 9:7](#);

33 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shields, nor cast a bank against it.

34 By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city, saith the YAHWEH.

35 For I will defend this city to save it for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake. [2Kgs 20:6](#);

An angel slays the Assyrians

36 Then the angel of the YAHWEH went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred and fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they *were* all dead corpses. [2Kgs 19:35](#); [\[Jer 50:18\]](#);

Sennacherib is slain at Nineveh by his own sons

37 So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh.

38 And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword; and they escaped into the land of Armenia: and Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead. [\[2Kgs 19:37\]](#); [\[Jer 50:18\]](#);

Hezekiah, having received a message of death, by prayer has his life lengthened

1 In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz came unto him, and said unto him, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Set thine house in order: for you shall die, and not live. [2Kgs 20:1]; [2Chr 32:24];

2 Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall, and prayed unto the YAHWEH,

3 And said, Remember now, O YAHWEH, I beseech you, how I have walked before you in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done *that which is* good in thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore.

4 Then came the word of the YAHWEH to Isaiah, saying,

5 Go, and say to Hezekiah, Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will add unto thy days fifteen years.

6 And I will deliver you and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria: and I will defend this city.

7 And this *shall be* a sign unto you from the YAHWEH, that the YAHWEH will do this thing that he has spoken;

The sun goes ten degrees backward, for a sign of that promise

8 Behold, I will bring again the shadow of the degrees, which is gone down in the sun dial of Ahaz, ten degrees backward. So the sun returned ten degrees, by which degrees it was gone down.

His song of thanksgiving

9 The writing of Hezekiah king of Judah, when he had been sick, and was recovered of his sickness:

10 I said in the cutting off of my days, I shall go to the gates of the grave: I am deprived of the residue of my years.

11 I said, I shall not see the YAHWEH, *even* the YAHWEH, in the land of the living: I shall behold man no more with the inhabitants of the world.

12 Mine age is departed, and is removed from me as a shepherd's tent: I have cut off like a weaver my life: he will cut me off with pining sickness: from day *even* to night will you make an end of me.

13 I reckoned till morning, *that*, as a lion, so will he break all my bones: from day *even* to night will you make an end of me. [Job 10:16];

14 Like a crane *or* a swallow, so did I chatter: I did mourn as a dove: mine eyes fail *with looking* upward: O YAHWEH, I am oppressed; undertake for me. Isa 59:11;

15 What shall I say? he has both spoken unto me, and himself has done *it*: I shall go softly all my years in the bitterness of my being.

16 O Lord, by these *things men* live, and in all these *things is* the life of my spirit: so will you recover me, and make me to live.

17 Behold, for peace I had great bitterness: but you have in love to my being *delivered it* from the pit of corruption: for you have cast all my sins behind thy back.

18 For the grave cannot praise you, death can *not* celebrate you: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth.

19 The living, the living, he shall praise you, as I *do* this day: the father to the children shall make known thy truth.

20 The YAHWEH *was ready* to save me: therefore we will sing my songs to the stringed instruments all the days of our life in the house of the YAHWEH.

21 For Isaiah had said, Let them take a lump of figs, and lay *it* for a plaister upon the boil, and he shall recover. 2Kgs 20:7; [Heb 11:34];

22 Hezekiah also had said, What *is* the sign that I shall go up to the house of the YAHWEH?

Merodach-baladan, sending to visit Hezekiah because of the wonder, has notice of his treasures

1 At that time Merodachbaladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present to Hezekiah: for he had heard that he had been sick, and was recovered.

2 And Hezekiah was glad of them, and showed them the house of his precious things, the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the precious ointment, and all the house of his armour, and all that was found in his treasures: there was nothing in his house, nor in all his dominion, that Hezekiah showed them not.

Isaiah, understanding thereof, foretells the Babylonian captivity

3 Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him, What said these men? and from whence came they unto you? And Hezekiah said, They are come from a far country unto me, *even* from Babylon.

4 Then said he, What have they seen in thine house? And Hezekiah answered, All that *is* in mine house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not showed them.

5 Then said Isaiah to Hezekiah, Hear the word of the YAHWEH of hosts:

6 Behold, the days come, that all that *is* in thine house, and *that* which thy fathers have laid up in store until this day, shall be carried to Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the YAHWEH. [2Kgs 24:13];

7 And of thy sons that shall issue from you, which you shall beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.

8 Then said Hezekiah to Isaiah, Good *is* the word of the YAHWEH which you have spoken. He said moreover, For there shall be peace and truth in my days.

The promulgation of the Gospel

1 Comfort you, comfort you my people, saith your Elohim.

2 Speak you comfortably to Jerusalem, and cry unto her, that her warfare is accomplished, that her iniquity is pardoned: for she has received of the YAHWEH'S hand double for all her sins.

The preaching of John Baptist

3 The voice of him that cries in the wilderness, Prepare you the way of the YAHWEH, make straight in the desert a highway for our Elohim. Matt 3:3; Mark 1:3; Luke 3:4; John 1:23; [Isa 42:16]; [Isa 62:10];

4 Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low: and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain:

5 And the glory of the YAHWEH shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see *it* together: for the mouth of the YAHWEH has spoken *it*. John 1:14;

6 The voice said, Cry. And he said, What shall I cry? All flesh *is* grass, and all the goodness thereof *is* as the flower of the field: Job 14:2; Ps 90:5-6; Ps 102:11; Ps 103:15; Jas 1:10; 1Pet 1:24; [Job 7:7]; [1Cor 7:31]; [Jas 1:11]; [Jas 4:14]; [1John 2:17];

7 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: because the spirit of the YAHWEH bloweth upon it: surely the people are grass.

8 The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our Elohim shall stand for ever. 1Pet 1:25; [Mark 13:31]; [Luke 16:17];

The preaching of the apostles

9 O Zion, that bringest good tidings, get you up into the high mountain; O Jerusalem, that bringest good tidings, lift up thy voice with strength; lift *it* up, be not afraid; say unto the cities of Judah, Behold your Elohim!

10 Behold, the Lord GOD will come with strong *hand*, and his arm shall rule for him: behold, his reward *is* with him, and his work before him. [Isa 62:11](#); [\[Jer 31:11\]](#); [\[Luke 1:70\]](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#);

11 He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry *them* in his bosom, *and* shall gently lead those that are with young. [Ezek 34:23-24](#); [Mic 7:14](#); [John 10:11](#); [Isa 49:10](#); [\[Ps 23:1\]](#); [\[Jer 23:5\]](#); [\[Ezek 34:23\]](#); [\[Ezek 37:24\]](#); [\[Heb 13:20\]](#); [\[1Pet 5:4\]](#);

The prophet, by the omnipotency of Elohim

12 Who has measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance? [\[Prov 30:4\]](#);

13 Who has directed the Spirit of the YAHWEH, or *being* his counsellor has taught him? [Rom 11:34](#); [1Cor 2:16](#); [\[Job 21:22\]](#);

14 With whom took he counsel, and *who* instructed him, and taught him in the path of judgment, and taught him knowledge, and showed to him the way of understanding?

15 Behold, the nations *are* as a drop of a bucket, and are counted as the small dust of the balance: behold, he taketh up the isles as a very little thing.

16 And Lebanon *is* not sufficient to burn, nor the beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt offering.

17 All nations before him *are* as nothing; and they are counted to him less than nothing, and vanity. [Dan 4:35](#);

and his incomparableness

18 To whom then will you liken Elohim? or what likeness will you compare unto him? [Isa 46:5](#); [Acts 17:29](#);

19 The workman melteth a graven image, and the goldsmith spreadeth it over with gold, and casteth silver chains.

20 He that *is* so impoverished that he has no oblation chooseth a tree *that* will not rot; he seeketh unto him a cunning workman to prepare a graven image, *that* shall not be moved.

21 Have you not known? have you not heard? has it not been told you from the beginning? have you not understood from the foundations of the earth?

22 *It is* he that sitteth upon the circle of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof *are* as grasshoppers; that stretcheth out the heavens as a curtain, and spreadeth them out as a tent to dwell in: [Job 9:8](#); [Ps 104:2](#); [Isa 44:24](#); [\[Isa 51:13\]](#); [\[Jer 10:12\]](#); [\[Jer 51:15\]](#);

23 That bringeth the princes to nothing; he maketh the judges of the earth as vanity. [Job 12:21](#); [Ps 107:40](#);

24 *yes*, they shall not be planted; *yes*, they shall not be sown: *yes*, their stock shall not take root in the earth: and he shall also blow upon them, and they shall wither, and the whirlwind shall take them away as stubble.

25 To whom then will you liken me, or shall I be equal? saith the Holy One. [\[Isa 46:5\]](#);

comforts the people

26 Lift up your eyes on high, and behold who has created these *things*, that bringeth out their host by number: he calleth them all by names by the greatness of his might, for that *he is* strong in power; not one faileth. [\[Ps 147:4\]](#);

27 Why sayest you, O Jacob, and speakest, O Israel, My way is hid from the YAHWEH, and my judgment is passed over from my Elohim?

28 **have** you not known? have you not heard, *that* the everlasting Elohim, the YAHWEH, the Creator of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary? *there is* no searching of his understanding. [Ps 147:5](#);
29 He giveth power to the faint; and to *them that have* no might he increaseth strength.
30 Even the youths shall faint and be weary, and the young men shall utterly fall:
31 But they that wait upon the YAHWEH shall renew *their* strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; *and* they shall walk, and not faint.

ISAIAH FORTY-ONE

Elohim expostulates with his people, about his mercies to the church

1 Keep silence before me, O islands; and let the people renew *their* strength: let them come near; then let them speak: let us come near together to judgment.
2 Who raised up the righteous *man* from the east, called him to his foot, gave the nations before him, and made *him* rule over kings? he gave *them* as the dust to his sword, *and* as driven stubble to his bow.
3 He pursued them, *and* passed safely; *even* by the way *that* he had not gone with his feet.
4 Who has wrought and done *it*, calling the generations from the beginning? I the YAHWEH, the first, and with the last; I *am* he. [Isa 43:10](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Isa 48:12](#); [Rev 1:17](#); [Rev 22:13](#); [\[Rev 1:8\]](#); [\[Rev 2:8\]](#); [\[Rev 21:6\]](#);
5 The isles saw *it*, and feared; the ends of the earth were afraid, drew near, and came.
6 They helped every one his neighbour; and *every one* said to his brother, Be of good courage.
7 So the carpenter encouraged the goldsmith, *and* he that smootheth *with* the hammer him that smote the anvil, saying, It *is* ready for the soldering; and he fastened it with nails, *that* it should not be moved. [\[Jer 10:4\]](#);
8 But you, Israel, are my servant, Jacob whom I have chosen, the seed of Abraham my friend. [Deut 7:6](#); [Deut 10:15](#); [Deut 14:2](#); [Ps 135:4](#); [Isa 43:1](#); [Isa 44:1](#); [2Chr 20:7](#); [Jas 2:23](#); [\[Exod 19:5\]](#); [\[Song 5:1\]](#);
9 You whom I have taken from the ends of the earth, and called you from the chief men thereof, and said unto you, you are my servant; I have chosen you, and not cast you away. [\[Luke 1:54\]](#);

about his promises

10 Fear you not; for I *am* with you: be not dismayed; for I *am* thy Elohim: I will strengthen you; yes, I will help you; yes, I will uphold you with the right hand of my righteousness.
11 Behold, all they that were incensed against you shall be ashamed and confounded: they shall be as nothing; and they that strive with you shall perish. [Exod 23:22](#); [Isa 60:12](#); [Zech 12:3](#); [\[Isa 45:24\]](#); [\[Jer 30:16\]](#);
12 You shall seek them, and shall not find them, *even* them that contended with you: they that war against you shall be as nothing, and as a thing of nought.
13 For I the YAHWEH thy Elohim will hold thy right hand, saying unto you, Fear not; I will help you. [\[Jer 30:10\]](#); [\[Jer 46:27\]](#);
14 Fear not, you worm Jacob, *and* you men of Israel; I will help you, saith the YAHWEH, and thy redeemer, the Holy One of Israel.
15 Behold, I will make you a new sharp threshing instrument having teeth: you shall thresh the mountains, and beat *them* small, and shall make the hills as chaff. [Isa 17:13](#); [Isa 29:5](#);
16 You shall fan them, and the wind shall carry them away, and the whirlwind shall scatter them: and you shall rejoice in the YAHWEH, *and* shall glory in the Holy One of Israel.
17 *When* the poor and needy seek water, and *there is* none, *and* their tongue faileth for thirst, I the YAHWEH will hear them, I the Elohim of Israel will not forsake them. [Matt 5:6](#);
18 I will open rivers in high places, and fountains in the midst of the valleys: I will make the wilderness a pool of water, and the dry land springs of water. [Isa 35:7](#); [Isa 44:3](#); [Ps 107:35](#);

19 I will plant in the wilderness the cedar, the shittah tree, and the myrtle, and the oil tree; I will set in the desert the fir tree, *and* the pine, and the box tree together:

20 That they may see, and know, and consider, and understand together, that the hand of the YAHWEH has done this, and the Holy One of Israel has created it.

and about the vanity of idols

21 Produce your cause, saith the YAHWEH; bring forth your strong *reasons*, saith the King of Jacob.

22 Let them bring *them* forth, and show us what shall happen: let them show the former things, what they *be*, that we may consider them, and know the latter end of them; or declare us things for to come. [Isa 45:21]; [Isa 48:14];

23 Show the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that you *are* gods: yes, do good, or do evil, that we may be dismayed, and behold *it* together. [Jer 10:5];

24 Behold, you *are* of nothing, and your work of nought: an abomination *is he that* chooseth you.

25 I have raised up *one* from the north, and he shall come: from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name: and he shall come upon princes as *upon* mortar, and as the potter treadeth clay.

26 Who has declared from the beginning, that we may know? and before, that we may say, *He is* righteous? yes, *there is* none that showeth, yes, *there is* none that declareth, yes, *there is* none that heareth your words. [Isa 45:21];

27 The first *shall say* to Zion, Behold, behold them: and I will give to Jerusalem one that bringeth good tidings.

28 For I beheld, and *there was* no man; even among them, and *there was* no counsellor, that, when I asked of them, could answer a word.

29 Behold, they *are* all vanity; their works *are* nothing: their molten images *are* wind and confusion. [Jer 10:8];

ISAIAH FORTY-TWO

The office of the Messiah, graced with meekness and constancy

1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, *in whom* my being delighteth; I have put my spirit upon him: he shall bring forth judgment to the Gentiles. Matt 3:17; Matt 17:5; Eph 1:6; Isa 11:2; John 3:34; [Ezek 34:23]; [Matt 3:16]; [Matt 12:18]; [Mark 1:11]; [Mark 9:7]; [Luke 3:22]; [Luke 9:35]; [John 5:32];

2 He shall not cry, nor lift up, nor cause his voice to be heard in the street.

3 A bruised reed shall he not break, and the smoking flax shall he not quench: he shall bring forth judgment unto truth.

4 He shall not fail nor be discouraged, till he have set judgment in the earth: and the isles shall wait for his law.

Elohim's promise unto him

5 Thus saith Elohim the YAHWEH, he that created the heavens, and stretched them out; he that spread forth the earth, and that which cometh out of it; he that giveth breath unto the people upon it, and spirit to them that walk therein: [Gen 1:6]; [Isa 44:24]; [Isa 45:18]; [Isa 51:13];

6 I the YAHWEH have called you in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep you, and give you for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles; [Luke 2:32]; [John 9:5]; [John 12:46]; [Acts 13:47];

7 To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, *and* them that sit in darkness out of the prison house. [Luke 1:79]; [Luke 4:18];

8 I *am* the YAHWEH: that *is* my name: and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images. [Isa 48:11](#);

9 Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them.

An exhortation to praise Elohim for his Gospel

10 Sing unto the YAHWEH a new song, *and* his praise from the end of the earth, you that go down to the sea, and all that is therein; the isles, and the inhabitants thereof. [Ps 33:3](#);

11 Let the wilderness and the cities thereof lift up *their voice*, the villages *that* Kedar inhabits: let the inhabitants of the rock sing, let them shout from the top of the mountains.

12 Let them give glory unto the YAHWEH, and declare his praise in the islands.

Elohim will manifest himself, and check idolatry

13 The YAHWEH shall go forth as a mighty man, he shall stir up jealousy like a man of war: he shall cry, yes, roar; he shall prevail against his enemies. [\[Zech 14:3\]](#);

14 I have long time holden my peace; I have been still, *and* refrained myself: *now* will I cry like a travailing woman; I will destroy and devour at once.

15 I will make waste mountains and hills, and dry up all their herbs; and I will make the rivers islands, and I will dry up the pools.

16 And I will bring the blind by a way *that* they knew not; I will lead them in paths *that* they have not known: I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight. These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them. [Isa 40:3-4](#); [\[John 8:12\]](#);

17 They shall be turned back, they shall be greatly ashamed, that trust in graven images, that say to the molten images, you *are* our gods. [Ps 97:7](#); [Isa 1:29](#); [Isa 44:11](#); [Isa 45:16](#);

He reproves the people of incredulity

18 Hear, you deaf; and look, you blind, that you may see.

19 Who *is* blind, but my servant? or deaf, as my messenger *that* I sent? who *is* blind as *he that is* perfect, and blind as the YAHWEH'S servant? [\[Matt 15:14\]](#); [\[Luke 6:39\]](#);

20 Seeing many things, but you observest not; opening the ears, but he heareth not. [Rom 2:2](#);

21 The YAHWEH is well pleased for his righteousness' sake; he will magnify the law, and make *it* honourable.

22 But this *is* a people robbed and spoiled; *they are* all of them snared in holes, and they are hid in prison houses: they are for a prey, and none delivereth; for a spoil, and none saith, Restore.

23 Who among you will give ear to this? *who* will hearken and hear for the time to come?

24 Who gave Jacob for a spoil, and Israel to the robbers? did not the YAHWEH, he against whom we have sinned? for they would not walk in his ways, neither were they obedient unto his law.

25 Therefore he has poured upon him the fury of his anger, and the strength of battle: and it has set him on fire round about, yet he knew not; and it burned him, yet he laid *it* not to heart.

ISAIAH FORTY-THREE

The Lord comforts the church with his promises

1 But now thus saith the YAHWEH that created you, O Jacob, and he that formed you, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed you, I have called you by thy name; you are mine. [\[Isa 41:8\]](#);

2 When you passest through the waters, I *will be* with you; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow you: when you walkest through the fire, you shall not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon you. [Ps 66:12](#);

3 For I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim, the Holy One of Israel, thy Saviour: I gave Egypt *for* thy ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for you. [\[Isa 60:16\]](#);

4 Since you were precious in my sight, you have been honourable, and I have loved you: therefore will I give men for you, and people for thy life.

5 Fear not: for I *am* with you: I will bring thy seed from the east, and gather you from the west; [Isa 44:2](#); [Jer 30:10](#); [Jer 46:27](#); [\[Isa 44:1\]](#);

6 I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth;

7 *Even* every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yes, I have made him.

He appeals to the people for witness of his omnipotency

8 Bring forth the blind people that have eyes, and the deaf that have ears. [\[Luke 1:79\]](#);

9 Let all the nations be gathered together, and let the people be assembled: who among them can declare this, and show us former things? let them bring forth their witnesses, that they may be justified: or let them hear, and say, *It is* truth. [\[Isa 45:21\]](#);

10 You *are* my witnesses, saith the YAHWEH, and my servant whom I have chosen: that you may know and believe me, and understand that I *am* he: before me there was no Elohim formed, neither shall there be after me. [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 44:8](#); [Isa 45:21](#); [Hos 13:4](#);

11 I, *even* I, *am* the YAHWEH; and beside me *there is* no saviour. [\[Ps 3:8\]](#); [\[Hos 12:9\]](#); [\[Hos 13:4\]](#);

12 I have declared, and have saved, and I have showed, when *there was* no strange *god* among you: therefore you *are* my witnesses, saith the YAHWEH, that I *am* Elohim.

13 Yes, before the day *was* I *am* he; and *there is* none that can deliver out of my hand: I will work, and who shall let it? [Isa 14:27](#);

He foretells them the destruction of Babylon

14 Thus saith the YAHWEH, your redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; For your sake I have sent to Babylon, and have brought down all their nobles, and the Chaldeans, whose cry *is* in the ships.

15 I *am* the YAHWEH, your Holy One, the creator of Israel, your King.

16 Thus saith the YAHWEH, which maketh a way in the sea, and a path in the mighty waters; [\[Isa 51:10\]](#);

17 Which bringeth forth the chariot and horse, the army and the power; they shall lie down together, they shall not rise: they are extinct, they are quenched as tow.

and his wonderful deliverance of his people

18 Remember you not the former things, neither consider the things of old. [\[2Cor 5:17\]](#);

19 Behold, I will do a new thing; now it shall spring forth; shall you not know it? I will even make a way in the wilderness, *and* rivers in the desert. [Rev 21:5](#);

20 The beast of the field shall honour me, the dragons and the owls: because I give waters in the wilderness, *and* rivers in the desert, to give drink to my people, my chosen. [\[Num 20:11\]](#);

21 This people have I formed for myself; they shall show forth my praise. [Luke 1:74-75](#); [\[Isa 48:9\]](#);

He reproves the people as inexcusable

22 But you have not called upon me, O Jacob; but you have been weary of me, O Israel.

23 You have not brought me the small cattle of thy burnt offerings; neither have you honoured me with thy sacrifices. I have not caused you to serve with an offering, nor wearied you with incense.

24 You have bought me no sweet cane with money, neither have you filled me with the fat of thy sacrifices: but you have made me to serve with thy sins, you have wearied me with thine iniquities.

25 I, *even* I, *am* he that blotteth out thy transgressions for mine own sake, and will not remember thy sins. [Ezek 36:22](#); [\[Isa 48:9\]](#); [\[Matt 9:3\]](#); [\[Mark 2:7\]](#); [\[Luke 5:21\]](#);

26 Put me in remembrance: let us plead together: declare you, that you may be justified. [Isa 1:18](#);

27 Thy first father has sinned, and thy teachers have transgressed against me.

28 Therefore I have profaned the princes of the sanctuary, and have given Jacob to the curse, and Israel to reproaches.

ISAIAH FORTY-FOUR

Elohim comforts the church with his promises

1 **yet** now hear, O Jacob my servant; and Israel, whom I have chosen: [Isa 41:8](#); [Isa 43:5](#); [Jer 30:10](#); [Jer 46:27](#);

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH that made you, and formed you from the womb, *which* will help you; Fear not, O Jacob, my servant; and you, Jesurun, whom I have chosen. [\[Isa 43:5\]](#);

3 For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and floods upon the dry ground: I will pour my spirit upon thy seed, and my blessing upon thine offspring: [Isa 35:7](#); [Joel 2:28](#); [John 7:38](#); [Acts 2:18](#); [\[Isa 41:18\]](#); [\[Mark 1:8\]](#); [\[Luke 3:16\]](#); [\[John 7:39\]](#); [\[Acts 1:5\]](#); [\[Acts 2:17\]](#); [\[Acts 11:16\]](#);

4 And they shall spring up *as* among the grass, as willows by the water courses.

5 One shall say, I *am* the YAHWEH'S; and another shall call *himself* by the name of Jacob; and another shall subscribe *with* his hand unto the YAHWEH, and surname *himself* by the name of Israel.

6 Thus saith the YAHWEH the King of Israel, and his redeemer the YAHWEH of hosts; I *am* the first, and I *am* the last; and beside me *there is* no Elohim. [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 48:12](#); [Rev 1:8](#); [Rev 1:17](#); [Rev 22:13](#); [\[Rom 1:4\]](#); [\[1John 5:20\]](#); [\[Rev 2:8\]](#); [\[Rev 21:6\]](#);

The vanity of idols

7 And who, as I, shall call, and shall declare it, and set it in order for me, since I appointed the ancient people? and the things that are coming, and shall come, let them show unto them.

8 Fear you not, neither be afraid: have not I told you from that time, and have declared *it*? you *are* even my witnesses. Is there a Elohim beside me? yes, *there is* no Elohim; I know not *any*. [Deut 4:35](#); [Deut 4:39](#); [Deut 32:39](#); [1Sam 2:2](#); [Isa 45:21](#); [\[Isa 43:10\]](#); [\[Isa 45:5\]](#);

and folly of idol makers

9 They that make a graven image *are* all of them vanity; and their delectable things shall not profit; and they *are* their own witnesses; they see not, nor know; that they may be ashamed.

10 Who has formed a god, or molten a graven image *that* is profitable for nothing?

11 Behold, all his fellows shall be ashamed: and the workmen, they *are* of men: let them all be gathered together, let them stand up; yet they shall fear, *and* they shall be ashamed together. [Ps 97:7](#); [Isa 1:29](#); [Isa 42:17](#); [Isa 45:16](#);

12 The smith with the tongs both worketh in the coals, and fashioneth it with hammers, and worketh it with the strength of his arms: yes, he is hungry, and his strength faileth: he drinketh no water, and is faint. [Isa 10:3](#);

13 The carpenter stretcheth out *his* rule; he marketh it out with a line; he fitteth it with planes, and he marketh it out with the compass, and maketh it after the figure of a man, according to the beauty of a man; that it may remain in the house.

14 He heweth him down cedars, and taketh the cypress and the oak, which he strengtheneth for himself among the trees of the forest: he planteth an ash, and the rain nourishes *it*. [\[Jer 10:3\]](#);

15 Then shall it be for a man to burn: for he will take thereof, and warm himself; yes, he kindleth *it*, and baketh bread; yes, he maketh a god, and worshippeth *it*; he maketh it a graven image, and falleth down thereto.

16 He burneth part thereof in the fire; with part thereof he eateth flesh; he roasteth roast, and is satisfied: yes, he warmeth *himself*, and saith, Aha, I am warm, I have seen the fire:

17 And the residue thereof he maketh a god, *even* his graven image: he falleth down unto it, and worshippeth *it*, and prayeth unto it, and saith, Deliver me; for you are my god.

18 They have not known nor understood: for he has shut their eyes, that they cannot see; *and* their hearts, that they cannot understand. [\[Ps 69:23\]](#); [\[Isa 45:20\]](#);

19 And none considereth in his heart, neither *is there* knowledge nor understanding to say, I have burned part of it in the fire; yes, also I have baked bread upon the coals thereof; I have roasted flesh, and eaten *it*: and shall I make the residue thereof an abomination? shall I fall down to the stock of a tree?

20 He feedeth on ashes: a deceived heart has turned him aside, that he cannot deliver his being, nor say, *Is there* not a lie in my right hand?

He exhorts to praise Elohim for his redemption and omnipotency

21 Remember these, O Jacob and Israel; for you are my servant: I have formed you; you are my servant: O Israel, you shall not be forgotten of me.

22 I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and, as a cloud, thy sins: return unto me; for I have redeemed you.

23 Sing, O you heavens; for the YAHWEH has done *it*: shout, you lower parts of the earth: break forth into singing, you mountains, O forest, and every tree therein: for the YAHWEH has redeemed Jacob, and glorified himself in Israel.

24 Thus saith the YAHWEH, thy redeemer, and he that formed you from the womb, I *am* the YAHWEH that maketh all *things*; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself; [Job 9:8](#); [Ps 104:2](#); [Isa 40:22](#); [Isa 42:5](#); [Isa 45:12](#); [\[Isa 51:13\]](#); [\[Jer 10:12\]](#); [\[Jer 51:15\]](#);

25 That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise *men* backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish;

26 That confirmeth the word of his servant, and performeth the counsel of his messengers; that saith to Jerusalem, you shall be inhabited; and to the cities of Judah, you shall be built, and I will raise up the decayed places thereof:

27 That saith to the deep, Be dry, and I will dry up thy rivers:

28 That saith of Cyrus, *He is* my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, you shall be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid. [\[Isa 45:13\]](#);

Elohim calls Cyrus for his church's sake

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut;

2 I will go before you, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron:

3 And I will give you the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that you may know that I, the YAHWEH, which call you by thy name, *am* the Elohim of Israel.

4 For Jacob my servant's sake, and Israel mine elect, I have even called you by thy name: I have surnamed you, though you have not known me.

By his omnipotency he challenges obedience

5 I *am* the YAHWEH, and *there is* none else, *there is* no Elohim beside me: I girded you, though you have not known me: [Deut 4:35](#); [Deut 4:39](#); [Deut 32:39](#); [Isa 44:8](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#); [\[2Sam 22:32\]](#); [\[Isa 45:14\]](#); [\[Isa 45:18\]](#); [\[Isa 45:21\]](#); [\[Isa 46:9\]](#);

6 That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that *there is* none beside me. I *am* the YAHWEH, and *there is* none else.

7 I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create calamity: I the YAHWEH do all these *things*. [Lam 3:38](#); [Amos 3:6](#);

8 Drop down, you heavens, from above, and let the skies pour down righteousness: let the earth open, and let them bring forth salvation, and let righteousness spring up together; I the YAHWEH have created it.

9 Woe unto him that striveth with his Maker! *Let* the potsherd *strive* with the potsherd of the earth. Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest you? or thy work, He has no hands? [Jer 18:6](#); [Rom 9:20](#); [\[Job 16:21\]](#); [\[Isa 29:16\]](#);

10 Woe unto him that saith unto *his* father, What begetteth you? or to the woman, What have you brought forth?

11 Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Holy One of Israel, and his Maker, Ask me of things to come concerning my sons, and concerning the work of my hands command you me. [\[Isa 60:21\]](#);

12 I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, *even* my hands, have stretched out the heavens, and all their host have I commanded. [\[Isa 44:24\]](#);

13 I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [2Chr 36:22](#); [Ezra 1:1](#); [Isa 44:28](#);

14 Thus saith the YAHWEH, The labour of Egypt, and merchandise of Ethiopia and of the Sabeans, men of stature, shall come over unto you, and they shall be thine: they shall come after you; in chains they shall come over, and they shall fall down unto you, they shall make supplication unto you, *saying*, Surely Elohim *is* in you; and *there is* none else, *there is* no Elohim. [Isa 45:5](#); [\[Isa 45:18\]](#); [\[Isa 45:21\]](#); [\[Isa 46:9\]](#);

15 Verily you are a Elohim that hidest thyself, O Elohim of Israel, the Saviour.

16 They shall be ashamed, and also confounded, all of them: they shall go to confusion together *that are* makers of idols. [Isa 44:11](#); [\[Isa 42:17\]](#);

17 *But* Israel shall be saved in the YAHWEH with an everlasting salvation: you shall not be ashamed nor confounded world without end.

18 For thus saith the YAHWEH that created the heavens; Elohim himself that formed the earth and made it; he has established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I *am* the YAHWEH; and *there is* none else. [Isa 42:5](#); [Isa 45:5](#); [Isa 45:14](#); [\[Deut 4:35\]](#); [\[Deut 32:39\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#); [\[Isa 45:21\]](#); [\[Isa 46:9\]](#);

19 I have not spoken in secret, in a dark place of the earth: I said not unto the seed of Jacob, Seek you me in vain: I the YAHWEH speak righteousness, I declare things that are right. [Deut 30:11](#);

He convicts the idols of vanity by his saving power

20 Assemble yourselves and come; draw near together, you *that are* escaped of the nations: they have no knowledge that set up the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god *that* cannot save. [Isa 44:18-19](#); [\[Isa 46:7\]](#);

21 Tell you, and bring *them* near; yes, let them take counsel together: who has declared this from ancient time? *who* has told it from that time? *have* not I the YAHWEH? and *there is* no Elohim else beside me; a just Elohim and a Saviour; *there is* none beside me. [Isa 41:22](#); [Isa 41:26-27](#); [Isa 43:9-10](#); [Isa 45:5](#); [Isa 45:14](#); [Isa 45:18](#); [\[Isa 43:10\]](#); [\[Isa 44:8\]](#); [\[Isa 46:9\]](#);

22 Look unto me, and be you saved, all the ends of the earth: for I *am* Elohim, and *there is* none else. [\[Deut 4:35\]](#); [\[Deut 32:39\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#);

23 I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth *in* righteousness, and shall not return, That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear. [Rom 4:11](#); [Phil 2:10](#); [\[Rom 14:11\]](#);

24 Surely, shall *one* say, in the YAHWEH have I righteousness and strength: *even* to him shall *men* come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed. [Isa 41:11](#);

25 In the YAHWEH shall all the seed of Israel be justified, and shall glory.

ISAIAH FORTY-SIX

The idols of Babylon could not save themselves

1 Bel boweth down, Nebo stoopeth, their idols were upon the beasts, and upon the cattle: your carriages *were* heavy loaden; *they are* a burden to the weary *beast*. [\[Jer 10:5\]](#); [\[Jer 50:2\]](#);

2 They stoop, they bow down together; they could not deliver the burden, but themselves are gone into captivity.

Elohim saves his people to the end

3 Harken unto me, O house of Jacob, and all the remnant of the house of Israel, which are borne *by me* from the belly, which are carried from the womb:

4 And *even* to *your* old age I *am* he; and *even* to hoar hairs will I carry *you*: I have made, and I will bear; even I will carry, and will deliver *you*.

Idols are not comparable to Elohim for power

5 To whom will you liken me, and make *me* equal, and compare me, that we may be like? [Isa 40:18](#); [Isa 40:25](#);

6 They lavish gold out of the bag, and weigh silver in the balance, *and* hire a goldsmith; and he maketh it a god: they fall down, yes, they worship.

7 They bear him upon the shoulder, they carry him, and set him in his place, and he standeth; from his place shall he not remove: yes, *one* shall cry unto him, yet can he not answer, nor save him out of his trouble. [Isa 45:20](#); [\[Jer 10:5\]](#);

8 Remember this, and show yourselves men: bring *it* again to mind, O you transgressors.

9 Remember the former things of old: for I *am* Elohim, and *there is* none else; *I am* Elohim, and *there is* none like me, [Isa 45:5](#); [Isa 45:14](#); [Isa 45:18](#); [Isa 45:21-22](#); [Isa 48:12](#);

10 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times *the things* that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure: [Ps 33:11](#); [Prov 19:21](#); [Prov 21:30](#); [Heb 6:17](#); [[Mal 3:6](#)]; [[Jas 1:17](#)];

11 Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yes, I have spoken *it*; I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed *it*; I will also do it.

or present salvation

12 Hearken unto me, you stouthearted, that *are* far from righteousness:

13 I bring near my righteousness; it shall not be far off, and my salvation shall not tarry: and I will place salvation in Zion for Israel my glory.

ISAIAH FORTY-SEVEN

Elohim's judgment upon Babylon and Chaldea

1 Come down, and sit in the dust, O virgin daughter of Babylon, sit on the ground: *there is* no throne, O daughter of the Chaldeans: for you shall no more be called tender and delicate. [Isa 26:5](#);

2 Take the millstones, and grind meal: uncover thy locks, make bare the leg, uncover the thigh, pass over the rivers. [[Jer 13:22](#)];

3 Thy nakedness shall be uncovered, yes, thy shame shall be seen: I will take vengeance, and I will not meet you *as* a man. [Isa 3:17](#); [Nah 3:5](#); [[Lam 1:8](#)]; [[Mic 1:11](#)];

4 *As for* our redeemer, the YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name, the Holy One of Israel.

5 Sit you silent, and get you into darkness, O daughter of the Chaldeans: for you shall no more be called, The lady of kingdoms.

for their unmercifulness

6 I was wroth with my people, I have polluted mine inheritance, and given them into thine hand: you didst show them no mercy; upon the elder have you very heavily laid thy yoke.

pride

7 And you saidst, I shall be a lady for ever: *so* that you didst not lay these *things* to thy heart, neither didst remember the latter end of it. [Rev 18:7](#);

8 Therefore hear now this, you *that are* given to pleasures, that dwellest carelessly, that sayest in thine heart, I *am*, and none else beside me; I shall not sit *as* a widow, neither shall I know the loss of children: [[Rev 18:7](#)];

9 But these two *things* shall come to you in a moment in one day, the loss of children, and widowhood: they shall come upon you in their perfection for the multitude of thy sorceries, *and* for the great abundance of thine enchantments. [Isa 51:19](#);

and overboldness

10 For you have trusted in thy wickedness: you have said, None seeth me. Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it has perverted you; and you have said in thine heart, I *am*, and none else beside me.

shall be irresistible

11 Therefore shall evil come upon you; you shall not know from whence it riseth: and mischief shall fall upon you; you shall not be able to put it off: and desolation shall come upon you suddenly, *which* you shall not know.

12 Stand now with thine enchantments, and with the multitude of thy sorceries, wherein you have laboured from thy youth; if so be you shall be able to profit, if so be you may prevail.

13 You are wearied in the multitude of thy counsels. Let now the astrologers, the stargazers, the monthly prognosticators, stand up, and save you from *these things* that shall come upon you.

14 Behold, they shall be as stubble; the fire shall burn them; they shall not deliver themselves from the power of the flame: *there shall* not *be* a coal to warm at, *nor* fire to sit before it.

15 Thus shall they be unto you with whom you have laboured, *even* thy merchants, from thy youth: they shall wander every one to his quarter; none shall save you.

ISAIAH FORTY-EIGHT

Elohim, to convict the people of their foreknown obstinacy, revealed his prophecies

1 Hear you this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the YAHWEH, and make mention of the Elohim of Israel, *but* not in truth, nor in righteousness. [Jer 4:2];

2 For they call themselves of the holy city, and stay themselves upon the Elohim of Israel; The YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name.

3 I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them; I did *them* suddenly, and they came to pass.

4 Because I knew that you are obstinate, and thy neck *is* an iron sinew, and thy brow brass; [Exod 32:9];

5 I have even from the beginning declared *it* to you; before it came to pass I showed *it* you: lest you should say, Mine idol has done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, has commanded them.

6 You have heard, see all this; and will not you declare *it*? I have showed you new things from this time, even hidden things, and you didst not know them.

7 They are created now, and not from the beginning; even before the day when you hearest them not; lest you should say, Behold, I knew them.

8 Yes, you hearest not; yes, you knewest not; yes, from that time *that* thine ear was not opened: for I knew that you wouldest deal very treacherously, and were called a transgressor from the womb.

He saves them for his own sake

9 For my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain for you, that I cut you not off. Isa 43:21; Isa 43:25;

10 Behold, I have refined you, but not with silver; I have chosen you in the furnace of affliction. [1Cor 3:13]; [1Pet 1:7];

11 For mine own sake, *even* for mine own sake, will I do *it*: for how should *my name* be polluted? and I will not give my glory unto another. Isa 42:8;

He exhorts them to obedience, because of his power and providence

12 Harken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I *am* he; I *am* the first, I also *am* the last. Isa 41:4; Isa 44:6; Rev 1:17; Rev 22:13; [Isa 46:9];

13 Mine hand also has laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand has spanned the heavens: *when* I call unto them, they stand up together.

14 All you, assemble yourselves, and hear; which among them has declared these *things*? The YAHWEH has loved him: he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm *shall be on* the Chaldeans. Isa 41:22-23;

15 I, *even* I, have spoken; yes, I have called him: I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

He laments their backwardness

16 Come you near unto me, hear you this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there *am* I: and now the Lord GOD, and his Spirit, has sent me.

17 Thus saith the YAHWEH, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim which teacheth you to profit, which leadeth you by the way *that* you should go.

18 O that you hadst hearkened to my commandments! then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea: [Deut 32:29](#); [Ps 81:13](#);

19 Thy seed also had been as the sand, and the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

He powerfully delivers his people out of Babylon

20 Go you forth of Babylon, flee you from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare you, tell this, utter it *even* to the end of the earth; say you, The YAHWEH has redeemed his servant Jacob. [Isa 52:11](#); [Jer 50:8](#); [Jer 51:6](#); [Jer 51:45](#); [Rev 18:4](#);

21 And they thirsted not *when* he led them through the deserts: he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them: he clave the rock also, and the waters gushed out. [\[Num 20:11\]](#); [\[Ps 74:15\]](#);

22 *There is* no peace, saith the YAHWEH, unto the wicked. [Isa 57:21](#);

ISAIAH FORTY-NINE

the Messiah being sent to the Jews, complains of them

1 Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, you people, from far; The YAHWEH has called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother has he made mention of my name.

2 And he has made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand has he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver has he hid me; [\[Heb 4:12\]](#); [\[Rev 1:16\]](#); [\[Rev 2:16\]](#);

3 And said unto me, you are my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

4 Then I said, I have laboured in vain, I have spent my strength for nought, and in vain: yet surely my judgment *is* with the YAHWEH, and my work with my Elohim.

He is sent to the Gentiles with gracious promises

5 And now, saith the YAHWEH that formed me from the womb *to be* his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the YAHWEH, and my Elohim shall be my strength.

6 And he said, It is a light thing that you should be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give you for a light to the Gentiles, that you may be my salvation unto the end of the earth. [\[Luke 2:32\]](#); [\[John 12:46\]](#); [\[Acts 13:47\]](#);

7 Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Redeemer of Israel, *and* his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the YAHWEH that is faithful, *and* the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose you. [\[Isa 53:3\]](#);

8 Thus saith the YAHWEH, In an acceptable time have I heard you, and in a day of salvation have I helped you: and I will preserve you, and give you for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages; [2Cor 6:2](#);

9 That you may say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that *are* in darkness, show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures *shall be* in all high places. [\[Luke 1:79\]](#);

10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that has mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them. [Rev 7:16](#); [\[Isa 40:11\]](#);

11 And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

12 Behold, these shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Elohim's love is perpetual to his church

13 Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into singing, O mountains: for the YAHWEH has comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted. [\[Rev 12:12\];](#)

14 But Zion said, The YAHWEH has forsaken me, and my Lord has forgotten me.

15 Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? yes, they may forget, yet will I not forget you.

16 Behold, I have graven you upon the palms of *my* hands; thy walls *are* continually before me.

17 Thy children shall make haste; thy destroyers and they that made you waste shall go forth of you.

The ample restoration of the church

18 Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these gather themselves together, *and* come to you. *As* I live, saith the YAHWEH, you shall surely clothe you with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them *on you*, as a bride *doeth*. [Isa 60:4;](#)

19 For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed you up shall be far away. [\[Isa 60:15\];](#)

20 The children which you shall have, after you have lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place *is* too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell.

21 Then shall you say in thine heart, Who has begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? and who has brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where *had* they *been*?

22 Thus saith the Lord GOD, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in *their* arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon *their* shoulders. [\[Isa 66:12\];](#)

23 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to you with *their* face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me. [\[Ps 22:5\]; \[Ps 31:1\]; \[Ps 71:1\]; \[Isa 60:10\];](#)

The powerful deliverance out of captivity

24 Shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered? [Matt 12:29; \[Jer 31:11\];](#)

25 But thus saith the YAHWEH, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with you, and I will save thy children.

26 And I will feed them that oppress you with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood, as with sweet wine: and all flesh shall know that I the YAHWEH *am* thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob. [Rev 16:6;](#)

the Messiah shows that the dereliction of the Jews is not to be imputed to him, by his ability to save

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Where *is* the bill of your mother's divorcement, whom I have put away? or which of my creditors *is it* to whom I have sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have you sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away. [\[Judg 2:14\];](#)

2 Wherefore, when I came, *was there* no man? when I called, *was there* none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or have I no power to deliver? behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because *there is* no water, and dieth for thirst. [Num 11:23; Isa 59:1;](#)

3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

4 The Lord GOD has given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season to *him that is* weary: he wakeneth morning by morning, he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the learned. [\[Luke 4:22\];](#)

by his obedience in that work

5 The Lord GOD has opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back. [John 14:31; Phil 2:8; Heb 10:5;](#)

6 I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting. [\[Matt 26:67\]; \[Mark 14:65\]; \[Luke 22:63\]; \[Luke 24:26\]; \[Acts 3:18\];](#)

and by his confidence in that assistance

7 For the Lord GOD will help me; therefore shall I not be confounded: therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

8 *He is* near that justifieth me; who will contend with me? let us stand together: who *is* mine adversary? let him come near to me. [Rom 8:32-33; \[Rom 8:33\];](#)

9 Behold, the Lord GOD will help me; who *is* he *that* shall condemn me? lo, they all shall wax old as a garment; the moth shall eat them up. [\[Isa 51:8\];](#)

An exhortation to trust in Elohim, and not in ourselves

10 Who *is* among you that feareth the YAHWEH, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh *in* darkness, and has no light? let him trust in the name of the YAHWEH, and stay upon his Elohim. [\[Ezek 34:23\];](#)

11 Behold, all you that kindle a fire, that compass *yourselves* about with sparks: walk in the light of your fire, and in the sparks *that* you have kindled. This shall you have of mine hand; you shall lie down in sorrow.

An exhortation, after the pattern of Abraham, to trust in the Messiah

1 Harken to me, you that follow after righteousness, you that seek the YAHWEH: look unto the rock *whence* you are hewn, and to the hole of the pit *whence* you are digged.

2 Look unto Abraham your father, and unto Sarah *that* bore you: for I called him alone, and blessed him, and increased him. [\[Rom 4:1\]; \[Rom 4:16\];](#)

by reason of his comfortable promises

3 For the YAHWEH shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the YAHWEH; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody. [\[Ezek 36:35\]](#);

of his righteous salvation

4 Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation: for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light of the people.

5 My righteousness *is* near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arms shall judge the people; the isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished. [\[Matt 24:35\]](#); [\[Mark 13:31\]](#); [\[Luke 16:17\]](#); [\[Luke 21:33\]](#); [\[Heb 1:11\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:7\]](#);

and man's mortality

7 Hearken unto me, you that know righteousness, the people in whose heart *is* my law; fear you not the reproach of men, neither be you afraid of their revilings. [Ps 37:31](#); [Isa 51:12](#); [Ps 118:6](#); [\[Ps 40:8\]](#); [\[Luke 12:4\]](#);

8 For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my righteousness shall be for ever, and my salvation from generation to generation. [Isa 50:9](#);

the Messiah by his sanctified arm defends his from the fear of man

9 Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the YAHWEH; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. are you not it that has cut Rahab, *and* wounded the dragon? [\[Ezek 29:3\]](#); [\[Luke 1:51\]](#);

10 Are you not it which has dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that has made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over? [Isa 43:16](#); [\[Matt 8:26\]](#); [\[Mark 4:39\]](#);

11 Therefore the redeemed of the YAHWEH shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy *shall be* upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; *and* sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

12 I, *even* I, *am* he that comforteth you: who are you, that you should be afraid of a man *that* shall die, and of the son of man *which* shall be made *as* grass; [Isa 51:7](#); [Ps 118:6](#);

13 And forgettest the YAHWEH thy maker, that has stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth; and have feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? and where *is* the fury of the oppressor? [Job 9:8](#); [Ps 104:2](#); [Isa 40:22](#); [Isa 42:5](#); [Isa 44:24](#); [\[Jer 10:12\]](#); [\[Jer 51:15\]](#);

14 The captive exile hasteneth that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

15 But I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim, that divided the sea, whose waves roared: The YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name. [\[Job 26:12\]](#); [\[Jer 31:35\]](#);

16 And I have put my words in thy mouth, and I have covered you in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens, and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion, you are my people.

He bewails the afflictions of Jerusalem

17 Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which have drunk at the hand of the YAHWEH the cup of his fury; you have drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling, *and* wrung *them* out. [Isa 52:1](#);

18 *There is* none to guide her among all the sons *whom* she has brought forth; neither *is there any* that taketh her by the hand of all the sons *that* she has brought up.

19 These two *things* are come unto you; who shall be sorry for you? desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort you? [Isa 47:9](#); [\[Jer 15:5\]](#);

20 Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the YAHWEH, the rebuke of thy Elohim. [Lam 2:11-12](#);

and promises deliverance

21 Therefore hear now this, you afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine:

22 Thus saith thy Lord the YAHWEH, and thy Elohim *that* pleadeth the cause of his people, Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, *even* the dregs of the cup of my fury; you shall no more drink it again:

23 But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict you; which have said to thy being, Bow down, that we may go over: and you have laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.

ISAIAH FIFTY-TWO

the Messiah persuades the church to believe his free redemption

1 Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into you the uncircumcised and the unclean. [\[Isa 51:17\]](#);

2 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, *and* sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

3 For thus saith the YAHWEH, you have sold yourselves for nought; and you shall be redeemed without money. [\[Rom 7:14\]](#);

4 For thus saith the Lord GOD, My people went down before into Egypt to sojourn there; and the Assyrian oppressed them without cause. [Gen 46:6](#); [\[Gen 46:4\]](#);

5 Now therefore, what have I here, saith the YAHWEH, that my people are taken away for nought? they that rule over them make them to howl, saith the YAHWEH; and my name continually every day *is* blasphemed. [Ezek 36:20](#); [Ezek 36:23](#); [Rom 2:24](#);

6 Therefore my people shall know my name: therefore *they shall know* in that day that I *am* he who speaks: behold, *it is* I.

to receive the ministers thereof

7 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy Elohim reigneth! [Nah 1:15](#); [Rom 10:15](#); [\[Acts 10:36\]](#);

8 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing: for they shall see eye to eye, when the YAHWEH shall bring again Zion.

to joy in the power thereof

9 Break forth into joy, sing together, you waste places of Jerusalem: for the YAHWEH has comforted his people, he has redeemed Jerusalem.

10 The YAHWEH has made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our Elohim. [Ps 98:2](#); [Luke 3:6](#); [\[Luke 1:51\]](#); [\[Luke 2:30\]](#);

and to free themselves from bondage

11 Depart you, depart you, go you out from thence, touch no unclean *thing*; go you out of the midst of her; be you clean, that bear the vessels of the YAHWEH. [2Cor 6:17](#); [Rev 18:4](#); [\[Isa 48:20\]](#);

12 For you shall not go out with haste, nor go by flight: for the YAHWEH will go before you; and the Elohim of Israel *will be* your rereward.

the Messiah's kingdom shall be exalted

13 Behold, my servant shall deal prudently, he shall be exalted and extolled, and be very high. [Ezek 34:23];

14 As many were astonished at you; his visage was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men: Isa 53:3;

15 So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him: for *that* which had not been told them shall they see; and *that* which they had not heard shall they consider. Rom 15:21;

ISAIAH FIFTY-THREE

The prophet, complaining of incredulity, excuses the scandal of the stake

1 Who has believed our report? and to whom is the arm of the YAHWEH revealed? John 12:38; Rom 10:16; [John 1:45];

2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground: he has no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, *there is* no beauty that we should desire him.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were *our* faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not. Ps 22:6-7; Isa 49:7; Isa 52:14; Mark 9:12; [1Pet 1:11];

by the benefit of his passion

4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of Elohim, and afflicted. Matt 8:17; [Mark 9:12]; [Rom 15:3]; [1Pet 2:24];

5 But he *was* wounded for our transgressions, *he was* bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace *was* upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. Rom 4:25; 1Cor 15:3; 1Pet 2:24; [Luke 24:26]; [John 1:29]; [Acts 3:18]; [Rom 3:24]; [Rom 8:32];

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the YAHWEH has laid on him the iniquity of us all. [Ps 119:176]; [1Pet 2:25];

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth. Matt 26:63; Matt 27:12; Matt 27:14; Mark 14:61; Mark 15:5; Acts 8:32; [Luke 18:31]; [John 1:29]; [John 1:36]; [1Cor 5:7]; [1Cor 15:3];

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken. [1Cor 15:4];

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither *was any* deceit in his mouth. 1Pet 2:22; 1John 3:5; [1Cor 15:4]; [2Cor 5:21]; [Heb 4:15];

and the good success thereof

10 Yet it pleased the YAHWEH to bruise him; he has put *him* to grief: when you shall make his being an offering for sin, he shall see *his* seed, he shall prolong *his* days, and the pleasure of the YAHWEH shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the travail of his being, *and* shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities. [Ezek 34:23]; [John 17:3]; [Phil 3:8]; [Col 2:2];

12 Therefore will I divide him *a portion* with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he has poured out his being unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors. [Mark 15:28](#); [Luke 22:37](#); [Luke 23:34](#); [\[Matt 27:38\]](#); [\[John 10:17\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:21\]](#); [\[1John 3:5\]](#);

ISAIAH FIFTY-FOUR

The prophet, for the comfort of the Gentiles, prophesies the amplitude of their church

1 Sing, O barren, you *that* didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, you *that* didst not travail with child: for more *are* the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the YAHWEH. [Gal 4:27](#); [\[Isa 60:15\]](#);

2 Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thine habitations: spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes;

3 For you shall break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

their safety

4 Fear not; for you shall not be ashamed: neither be you confounded; for you shall not be put to shame: for you shall forget the shame of thy youth, and shall not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

5 For thy Maker *is* thine husband; the YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The Elohim of the whole earth shall he be called. [\[Luke 1:32\]](#); [\[Luke 1:54\]](#); [\[John 5:19\]](#); [\[John 10:30\]](#); [\[Rom 1:4\]](#); [\[1John 5:20\]](#);

their certain deliverance out of affliction

6 For the YAHWEH has called you as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when you were refused, saith thy Elohim. [\[Isa 60:15\]](#);

7 For a small moment have I forsaken you; but with great mercies will I gather you.

8 In a little wrath I hid my face from you for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on you, saith the YAHWEH thy Redeemer.

9 For this *is as* the waters of Noah unto me: for *as* I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with you, nor rebuke you. [Gen 9:11](#); [\[Gen 9:9\]](#);

10 For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from you, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the YAHWEH that has mercy on you.

their fair edification

11 O you afflicted, tossed with tempest, *and* not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

12 And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

13 And all thy children *shall be* taught of the YAHWEH; and great *shall be* the peace of thy children. [John 6:45](#); [\[Jer 31:34\]](#);

14 In righteousness shall you be established: you shall be far from oppression; for you shall not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near you.

and their sure preservation

15 Behold, they shall surely gather together, *but* not by me: whosoever shall gather together against you shall fall for thy sake.

16 Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

17 No weapon that is formed against you shall prosper; and every tongue *that* shall rise against you in judgment you shall condemn. This *is* the heritage of the servants of the YAHWEH, and their righteousness *is* of me, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Luke 21:15\]](#); [\[Acts 6:10\]](#);

ISAIAH FIFTY-FIVE

The prophet, with the promises of the Messiah, calls to faith

1 Ho, every one that thirsteth, come you to the waters, and he that has no money; come you, buy, and eat; yes, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. [John 7:37-38](#); [\[Matt 5:6\]](#); [\[John 6:35\]](#); [\[John 7:37\]](#); [\[Rev 21:6\]](#); [\[Rev 22:17\]](#);

2 Wherefore do you spend money for *that which is* not bread? and your labour for *that which* satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat you *that which is* good, and let your being delight itself in fatness.

3 Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your being shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, *even* the sure mercies of David. [Acts 13:34](#);

4 Behold, I have given him *for* a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people. [\[Ezek 34:24\]](#); [\[Rev 1:5\]](#);

5 Behold, you shall call a nation *that* you knowest not, and nations *that* knew not you shall run unto you because of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he has glorified you. [\[Matt 21:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:46\]](#);

and to repentance

6 Seek you the YAHWEH while he may be found, call you upon him while he is near:

7 Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the YAHWEH, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our Elohim, for he will abundantly pardon.

The happy success of them that believe

8 For my thoughts *are* not your thoughts, neither *are* your ways my ways, saith the YAHWEH.

9 For *as* the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.

10 For as the rain cometh down, and the snow from heaven, and returneth not thither, but watereth the earth, and maketh it bring forth and bud, that it may give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater:

11 So shall my word be that goes forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper *in the thing* whereto I sent it. [\[Acts 12:24\]](#); [\[Acts 19:20\]](#);

12 For you shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap *their* hands. [1Chr 16:33](#);

13 Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the YAHWEH for a name, for an everlasting sign *that* shall not be cut off.

The prophet exhorts to sanctification

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Keep you judgment, and do justice: for my salvation *is* near to come, and my righteousness to be revealed. [\[Mark 1:15\];](#)

2 Blessed *is* the man *that* doeth this, and the son of man *that* layeth hold on it; that keepeth the Sabbath from polluting it, and keepeth his hand from doing any evil.

He promises it shall be general, without respect of persons

3 Neither let the son of the stranger, that has joined himself to the YAHWEH, speak, saying, The YAHWEH has utterly separated me from his people: neither let the eunuch say, Behold, I *am* a dry tree.

4 For thus saith the YAHWEH unto the eunuchs that keep my Sabbaths, and choose *the things* that please me, and take hold of my covenant;

5 Even unto them will I give in mine house and within my walls a place and a name better than of sons and of daughters: I will give them an everlasting name, that shall not be cut off. [\[John 1:12\]; \[Rom 8:15\]; \[Gal 3:26\]; \[2Pet 1:4\]; \[1John 3:2\];](#)

6 Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the YAHWEH, to serve him, and to love the name of the YAHWEH, to be his servants, every one that keepeth the Sabbath from polluting it, and taketh hold of my covenant; [\[Acts 10:35\];](#)

7 Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices *shall be* accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called a house of prayer for all people. [Matt 21:13; Mark 11:17; Luke 19:46;](#)

8 The Lord GOD which gathereth the outcasts of Israel saith, yet will I gather *others* to him, beside those that are gathered unto him.

He inveighs against blind watchmen

9 All you beasts of the field, come to devour, yes, all you beasts in the forest.

10 His watchmen *are* blind: they are all ignorant, they *are* all dumb dogs, they cannot bark; sleeping, lying down, loving to slumber. [\[Phil 3:2\];](#)

11 Yes, *they are* greedy dogs *which* can never have enough, and they *are* shepherds *that* cannot understand: they all look to their own way, every one for his gain, from his quarter. [\[Jer 6:13\]; \[Jer 8:10\];](#)

12 Come you, *say they*, I will fetch wine, and we will fill ourselves with strong drink; and to morrow shall be as this day, *and* much more abundant. [\[Isa 22:13\]; \[1Cor 15:32\];](#)

The blessed death of the righteous

1 The righteous perisheth, and no man layeth *it* to heart: and merciful men *are* taken away, none considering that the righteous is taken away from the evil *to come*. [Ps 12:1; Mic 7:2;](#)

2 He shall enter into peace: they shall rest in their beds, *each one* walking *in* his uprightness.

Elohim reproves the Jews for their whorish idolatry

3 But draw near hither, you sons of the sorceress, the seed of the adulterer and the whore. [\[Isa 1:4\];](#)

- 4** Against whom do you sport yourselves? against whom make you a wide mouth, *and* draw out the tongue? *are* you not children of transgression, a seed of falsehood, [Jer 20:8];
- 5** Enflaming yourselves with idols under every green tree, slaying the children in the valleys under the cliffs of the rocks? [Ezek 16:21];
- 6** Among the smooth *stones* of the stream *is* thy portion; they, they *are* thy lot: even to them have you poured a drink offering, you have offered a meat offering. Should I receive comfort in these?
- 7** Upon a lofty and high mountain have you set thy bed: even thither wentest you up to offer sacrifice. [Ezek 18:6]; [Hos 4:13];
- 8** Behind the doors also and the posts have you set up thy remembrance: for you have discovered *thyself* to *another* than me, and are gone up; you have enlarged thy bed, and made you *a covenant* with them; you lovedst their bed where you sawest *it*.
- 9** And you wentest to the king with ointment, and didst increase thy perfumes, and didst send thy messengers far off, and didst debase *thyself even* unto hell.
- 10** You are wearied in the greatness of thy way; yet you did not say, There is no hope: you have found the life of thine hand; therefore you were not grieved.
- 11** And of whom have you been afraid or feared, that you have lied, and have not remembered me, nor laid *it* to thy heart? have not I held my peace even of old, and you fearest me not?
- 12** I will declare thy righteousness, and thy works; for they shall not profit you.

He gives promises of mercy to the penitent

- 13** When you criest, let thy companies deliver you; but the wind shall carry them all away; vanity shall take *them*: but he that puts his trust in me shall possess the land, and shall inherit my holy mountain; Ps 34:8;
- 14** And shall say, Cast you up, cast you up, prepare the way, take up the stumblingblock out of the way of my people. [Isa 62:10];
- 15** For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name *is* Holy; I dwell in the high and holy *place*, with him also *that is* of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.
- 16** For I will not contend for ever, neither will I be always wroth: for the spirit should fail before me, and the beings *which* I have made. Ps 103:9; Heb 12:9; [Jer 38:16];
- 17** For the iniquity of his covetousness was I wroth, and smote him: I hid me, and was wroth, and he went on frowardly in the way of his heart.
- 18** I have seen his ways, and will heal him: I will lead him also, and restore comforts unto him and to his mourners.
- 19** I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to *him that is* far off, and to *him that is* near, saith the YAHWEH; and I will heal him. [Luke 2:14]; [Eph 2:17];
- 20** But the wicked *are* like the troubled sea, when it cannot rest, whose waters cast up mire and dirt. [Jude 1:13];
- 21** *There is* no peace, saith my Elohim, to the wicked. Isa 48:22; [Prov 28:1];

The prophet, being sent to reprove hypocrisy, shows the difference between a counterfeit fast and a true

1 Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and show my people their transgression, and the house of Jacob their sins.

2 Yet they seek me daily, and delight to know my ways, as a nation that did righteousness, and forsook not the ordinance of their Elohim: they ask of me the ordinances of justice; they take delight in approaching to Elohim. [\[Luke 18:11\];](#)

3 Wherefore have we fasted, *say they*, and you seest not? *wherefore* have we afflicted our being, and you takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast you find pleasure, and exact all your labours. [\[Matt 6:16\];](#)

4 Behold, you fast for strife and debate, and to smite with the fist of wickedness: you shall not fast as you *do this* day, to make your voice to be heard on high.

5 Is it such a fast that I have chosen? a day for a man to afflict his being? *is it* to bow down his head as a bulrush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes *under him*? will you call this a fast, and an acceptable day to the YAHWEH? [Zech 7:5;](#)

6 *Is* not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that you break every yoke?

7 *Is it* not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that you bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when you seest the naked, that you cover him; and that you hide not thyself from thine own flesh? [Ezek 18:7; Ezek 18:16; Matt 25:35; \[Matt 25:36\]; \[Luke 11:41\]; \[Acts 2:45\]; \[Acts 4:35\];](#)

He declares what promises are due unto godliness

8 Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thine health shall spring forth speedily: and thy righteousness shall go before you; the glory of the YAHWEH shall be thy rereward.

9 Then shall you call, and the YAHWEH shall answer; you shall cry, and he shall say, Here I *am*. If you take away from the midst of you the yoke, the putting forth of the finger, and speaking vanity; [\[Job 33:26\];](#)

10 And *if* you draw out thy being to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted being; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness *be* as the noonday:

11 And the YAHWEH shall guide you continually, and satisfy thy being in drought, and make fat thy bones: and you shall be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.

12 And *they that shall be* of you shall build the old waste places: you shall raise up the foundations of many generations; and you shall be called, The repairer of the breach, The restorer of paths to dwell in. [\[Isa 61:4\];](#)

and to the keeping of the Sabbath

13 If you turn away thy foot from the Sabbath, *from* doing thy pleasure on my holy day; and call the Sabbath a delight, the holy of the YAHWEH, honourable; and shall honour him, not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking *thine own* words:

14 Then shall you delight thyself in the YAHWEH; and I will cause you to ride upon the high places of the earth, and feed you with the heritage of Jacob thy father: for the mouth of the YAHWEH has spoken *it*.

The calamities of the Jews not owing to want of saving power in Elohim, but to their own enormous sins

- 1** Behold, the YAHWEH'S hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear: [Num 11:23](#); [Isa 50:2](#);
- 2** But your iniquities have separated between you and your Elohim, and your sins have hid *his* face from you, that he will not hear.
- 3** For your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity; your lips have spoken lies, your tongue has muttered perverseness.
- 4** None calleth for justice, nor *any* pleadeth for truth: they trust in vanity, and speak lies; they conceive mischief, and bring forth iniquity. [Job 15:35](#); [Ps 7:14](#); [\[Job 4:8\]](#); [\[Jer 9:3\]](#);
- 5** They hatch cockatrice' eggs, and weave the spider's web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper.
- 6** Their webs shall not become garments, neither shall they cover themselves with their works: their works *are* works of iniquity, and the act of violence *is* in their hands. [Job 8:14-15](#);
- 7** Their feet run to evil, and they make haste to shed innocent blood: their thoughts *are* thoughts of iniquity; wasting and destruction *are* in their paths. [Prov 1:16](#); [Rom 3:15](#); [\[Jer 7:6\]](#);
- 8** The way of peace they know not; and *there is* no judgment in their goings: they have made them crooked paths: whosoever goes therein shall not know peace.
- 9** Therefore is judgment far from us, neither does justice overtake us: we wait for light, but behold obscurity; for brightness, *but* we walk in darkness. [\[Jer 13:16\]](#);
- 10** We grope for the wall like the blind, and we grope as if *we had* no eyes: we stumble at noonday as in the night; *we are* in desolate places as dead *men*. [\[2Pet 1:9\]](#);
- 11** We roar all like bears, and mourn sore like doves: we look for judgment, but *there is* none; for salvation, *but* it is far off from us. [\[Isa 38:14\]](#);
- 12** For our transgressions are multiplied before you, and our sins testify against us: for our transgressions *are* with us; and *as for* our iniquities, we know them;
- 13** In transgressing and lying against the YAHWEH, and departing away from our Elohim, speaking oppression and revolt, conceiving and uttering from the heart words of falsehood. [\[Jer 9:3\]](#); [\[Zeph 1:6\]](#);
- 14** And judgment is turned away backward, and justice standeth afar off: for truth is fallen in the street, and equity cannot enter.
- 15** Yes, truth faileth; and he *that* departeth from evil maketh himself a prey: and the YAHWEH saw *it*, and it displeased him that *there was* no judgment. [\[Jer 9:3\]](#);

Salvation is only of Elohim

- 16** And he saw that *there was* no man, and wondered that *there was* no intercessor: therefore his arm brought salvation unto him; and his righteousness, it sustained him. [Isa 63:5](#);
- 17** For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and a helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance *for* clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloke. [Eph 6:17](#); [1Thess 5:8](#); [\[Job 29:14\]](#); [\[Eph 6:14\]](#);
- 18** According to *their* deeds, accordingly he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompence to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompence.
- 19** So shall they fear the name of the YAHWEH from the west, and his glory from the rising of the sun. When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the YAHWEH shall lift up a standard against him.

The covenant of the Redeemer

20 And the Redeemer shall come to Zion, and unto them that turn from transgression in Jacob, saith the YAHWEH. [Rom 11:26](#); [Isa 10:21-22](#);

21 As for me, this *is* my covenant with them, saith the YAHWEH; My spirit that *is* upon you, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the YAHWEH, from henceforth and for ever.

ISAIAH SIXTY

The glory of the church in the abundant access of the Gentiles

1 Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the YAHWEH is risen upon you. [\[Luke 1:79\]](#); [\[Acts 26:18\]](#);

2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the YAHWEH shall arise upon you, and his glory shall be seen upon you.

3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising. [\[Rev 21:24\]](#);

4 Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to you: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at *thy* side. [\[Isa 49:18\]](#); [\[Isa 66:12\]](#);

5 Then you shall see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged; because the abundance of the sea shall be converted unto you, the forces of the Gentiles shall come unto you.

6 The multitude of camels shall cover you, the dromedaries of Midian and Ephah; all they from Sheba shall come: they shall bring gold and incense; and they shall show forth the praises of the YAHWEH.

7 All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered together unto you, the rams of Nebaioth shall minister unto you: they shall come up with acceptance on mine altar, and I will glorify the house of my glory.

8 Who *are* these *that* fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows?

9 Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and to the Holy One of Israel, because he has glorified you.

10 And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto you: for in my wrath I smote you, but in my favor have I had mercy on you. [Isa 49:23](#);

11 Therefore thy gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that *men* may bring unto you the forces of the Gentiles, and *that* their kings *may be* brought. [\[Rev 21:25\]](#);

12 For the nation and kingdom that will not serve you shall perish; yes, *those* nations shall be utterly wasted. [\[Isa 41:11\]](#); [\[Jer 12:17\]](#);

13 The glory of Lebanon shall come unto you, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary; and I will make the place of my feet glorious.

14 The sons also of them that afflicted you shall come bending unto you; and all they that despised you shall bow themselves down at the soles of thy feet; and they shall call you, The city of the YAHWEH, The Zion of the Holy One of Israel.

and the great blessings after a short affliction

15 Whereas you have been forsaken and hated, so that no man went through you, I will make you an eternal excellency, a joy of many generations. [Isa 49:19](#); [Isa 54:1](#); [Isa 54:6-7](#);

16 You shall also suck the milk of the Gentiles, and shall suck the breast of kings: and you shall know that I the YAHWEH *am* thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob. [Isa 43:3](#);

17 For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness.

18 Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but you shall call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise.

19 The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto you: but the YAHWEH shall be unto you an everlasting light, and thy Elohim thy glory. [Ps 27:1]; [Rev 21:23]; [Rev 22:5];

20 Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the YAHWEH shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended.

21 Thy people also *shall be* all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified. Matt 15:13; Isa 29:23; Isa 45:11; [Matt 2:23];

22 A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation: I the YAHWEH will hasten it in his time.

ISAIAH SIXTY-ONE

The office of the Messiah

1 The Spirit of the Lord GOD *is* upon me; because the YAHWEH has anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to *them that are* bound; Luke 4:17-20; [Matt 11:5]; [Mark 1:38]; [Luke 4:18]; [Luke 7:22]; [John 20:21]; [Acts 10:38];

2 To proclaim the acceptable year of the YAHWEH, and the day of vengeance of our Elohim; to comfort all that mourn; [Isa 63:4];

3 To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the YAHWEH, that he might be glorified. [Luke 6:21];

The forwardness

4 And they shall build the old wastes, they shall raise up the former desolations, and they shall repair the waste cities, the desolations of many generations. Isa 58:12;

5 And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of the alien *shall be* your plowmen and your vinedressers.

6 But you shall be named the Priests of the YAHWEH: *men* shall call you the Ministers of our Elohim: you shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall you boast yourselves. 1Pet 2:5; 1Pet 2:9; Rev 1:6; Rev 5:10; [Rev 20:6];

and blessing of the faithful

7 For your shame you *shall have* double; and *for* confusion they shall rejoice in their portion: therefore in their land they shall possess the double: everlasting joy shall be unto them.

8 For I the YAHWEH love judgment, I hate robbery for burnt offering; and I will direct their work in truth, and I will make an everlasting covenant with them.

9 And their seed shall be known among the Gentiles, and their offspring among the people: all that see them shall acknowledge them, that they *are* the seed *which* the YAHWEH has blessed.

10 I will greatly rejoice in the YAHWEH, my being shall be joyful in my Elohim; for he has clothed me with the garments of salvation, he has covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh *himself* with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth *herself* with her jewels.

11 For as the earth bringeth forth her bud, and as the garden causeth the things that are sown in it to spring forth; so the Lord GOD will cause righteousness and praise to spring forth before all the nations. [Jer 31:12];

The fervent desire of the prophet to confirm the church in Elohim's promises

1 For Zion's sake will I not hold my peace, and for Jerusalem's sake I will not rest, until the righteousness thereof go forth as brightness, and the salvation thereof as a lamp *that* burneth.

2 And the Gentiles shall see thy righteousness, and all kings thy glory: and you shall be called by a new name, which the mouth of the YAHWEH shall name. [Isa 65:15](#);

3 You shall also be a crown of glory in the hand of the YAHWEH, and a royal diadem in the hand of thy Elohim.

4 You shall no more be termed Forsaken; neither shall thy land any more be termed Desolate: but you shall be called Hephzibah, and thy land Beulah: for the YAHWEH delighteth in you, and thy land shall be married.

5 For *as* a young man marrieth a virgin, *so* shall thy sons marry you: and *as* the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride, *so* shall thy Elohim rejoice over you. [\[Mark 2:19\]](#); [\[Luke 5:34\]](#);

The office of the ministers (unto which they are incited) in preaching the Gospel

6 I have set watchmen upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, *which* shall never hold their peace day nor night: you that make mention of the YAHWEH, keep not silence, [\[Ezek 3:17\]](#);

7 And give him no rest, till he establish, and till he make Jerusalem a praise in the earth.

8 The YAHWEH has sworn by his right hand, and by the arm of his strength, Surely I will no more give thy grain *to be* meat for thine enemies; and the sons of the stranger shall not drink thy wine, for the which you have laboured:

9 But they that have gathered it shall eat it, and praise the YAHWEH; and they that have brought it together shall drink it in the courts of my holiness.

and preparing the people thereto

10 Go through, go through the gates; prepare you the way of the people; cast up, cast up the highway; gather out the stones; lift up a standard for the people. [Isa 40:3](#); [Isa 57:14](#);

11 Behold, the YAHWEH has proclaimed unto the end of the world, Say you to the daughter of Zion, Behold, thy salvation cometh; behold, his reward *is* with him, and his work before him. [\[Isa 40:10\]](#); [\[Matt 21:5\]](#); [\[John 12:15\]](#);

12 And they shall call them, The holy people, The redeemed of the YAHWEH: and you shall be called, Sought out, A city not forsaken.

the Messiah shows who he is

1 Who *is* this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? this *that is* glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save. [\[Isa 34:6\]](#); [\[Rev 19:13\]](#);

what his victory over his enemies

2 Wherefore are *you* red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat? [Rev 19:13](#);

3 I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people *there was* none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment. [\[Rev 14:20\]](#); [\[Rev 19:15\]](#);

4 For the day of vengeance *is* in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come. [Isa 61:2](#);

5 And I looked, and *there was* none to help; and I wondered that *there was* none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me. [Isa 59:16](#);

6 And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.

and what his mercy toward his church

7 I will mention the lovingkindnesses of the YAHWEH, *and* the praises of the YAHWEH, according to all that the YAHWEH has bestowed on us, and the great goodness toward the house of Israel, which he has bestowed on them according to his mercies, and according to the multitude of his lovingkindnesses.

8 For he said, Surely they *are* my people, children *that* will not lie: so he was their Saviour.

9 In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bore them, and carried them all the days of old. [Deut 7:7-9](#);

In his just wrath he remembers his free mercy

10 But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, *and* he fought against them. [Num 14:11](#); [Ps 78:57](#); [Ps 95:9](#);

11 Then he remembered the days of old, Moses, *and* his people, *saying*, Where *is* he that brought them up out of the sea with the shepherd of his flock? where *is* he that put his holy Spirit within him?

12 That led *them* by the right hand of Moses with his glorious arm, dividing the water before them, to make himself an everlasting name? [\[Exod 15:8\]](#);

13 That led them through the deep, as a horse in the wilderness, *that* they should not stumble? [Ps 105:37](#);

14 As a beast goes down into the valley, the Spirit of the YAHWEH caused him to rest: so didst you lead thy people, to make thyself a glorious name.

The church, in her prayer

15 Look down from heaven, and behold from the habitation of thy holiness and of thy glory: where *is* thy zeal and thy strength, the sounding of thy bowels and of thy mercies toward me? are they restrained? [Deut 26:15](#);

16 Doubtless you are our father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not: you, O YAHWEH, are our father, our redeemer; thy name *is* from everlasting. [\[Job 36:26\]](#);

and complaint, professes her faith

17 O YAHWEH, why have you made us to err from thy ways, *and* hardened our heart from thy fear? Return for thy servants' sake, the tribes of thine inheritance.

18 The people of thy holiness have possessed *it* but a little while: our adversaries have trodden down thy sanctuary. [Ps 74:7](#);

19 We are *thine*: you never barest rule over them; they were not called by thy name.

The church prays for the illustration of Elohim's power

1 Oh that you wouldst rend the heavens, that you wouldst come down, that the mountains might flow down at thy presence,

2 As *when* the melting fire burneth, the fire causeth the waters to boil, to make thy name known to thine adversaries, *that* the nations may tremble at thy presence!

3 When you didst terrible things *which* we looked not for, you camest down, the mountains flowed down at thy presence.

Celebrating Elohim's mercy, it makes confession of their natural corruptions

4 For since the beginning of the world *men* have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither has the eye seen, O Elohim, beside you, *what* he has prepared for him that waiteth for him. [Ps 31:18-19](#); [1Cor 2:9](#); [[Ps 31:19](#)];

5 You meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, *those that* remember you in thy ways: behold, you are wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved. [[Dan 9:5](#)];

6 But we are all as an unclean *thing*, and all our righteousnesses *are* as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away. [Ps 90:5-6](#);

7 And *there is* none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of you: for you have hid thy face from us, and have consumed us, because of our iniquities.

8 But now, O YAHWEH, you are our father; we *are* the clay, and you our potter; and we all *are* the work of thy hand. [[Jer 18:6](#)];

It complains of their afflictions

9 Be not wroth very sore, O YAHWEH, neither remember iniquity for ever: behold, see, we beseech you, we *are* all thy people. [Ps 79:8](#);

10 Thy holy cities are a wilderness, Zion is a wilderness, Jerusalem a desolation.

11 Our holy and our beautiful house, where our fathers praised you, is burned up with fire: and all our pleasant things are laid waste.

12 will you refrain thyself for these *things*, O YAHWEH? will you hold thy peace, and afflict us very sore?

The calling of the Gentiles, and the rejection of the Jews, for their incredulity, idolatry, and hypocrisy

1 I am sought of *them that* asked not *for me*; I am found of *them that* sought me not: I said, Behold me, behold me, unto a nation *that* was not called by my name. [Rom 10:20];

2 I have spread out my hands all the day unto a rebellious people, which walketh in a way *that was* not good, after their own thoughts; [Rom 10:21];

3 A people that provoketh me to anger continually to my face; that sacrificeth in gardens, and burneth incense upon altars of brick;

4 Which remain among the graves, and lodge in the monuments, which eat swine's flesh, and broth of abominable *things is in* their vessels;

5 Which say, Stand by thyself, come not near to me; for I am holier than you. These *are* a smoke in my nose, a fire that burneth all the day. [Jer 4:4];

6 Behold, *it is* written before me: I will not keep silence, but will recompense, even recompense into their bosom,

7 Your iniquities, and the iniquities of your fathers together, saith the YAHWEH, which have burned incense upon the mountains, and blasphemed me upon the hills: therefore will I measure their former work into their bosom. [Ezek 18:6];

A remnant shall be saved

8 Thus saith the YAHWEH, As the new wine is found in the cluster, and *one* saith, Destroy it not; for a blessing *is* in it: so will I do for my servants' sakes, that I may not destroy them all.

9 And I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Judah an inheritor of my mountains: and mine elect shall inherit it, and my servants shall dwell there.

10 And Sharon shall be a fold of flocks, and the valley of Achor a place for the herds to lie down in, for my people that have sought me.

Judgments on the wicked, and blessings on the godly

11 But you *are* they that forsake the YAHWEH, that forget my holy mountain, that prepare a table for that troop, and that furnish the drink offering unto that number. [Jer 7:18]; [Jer 19:4];

12 Therefore will I number you to the sword, and you shall all bow down to the slaughter: because when I called, you did not answer; when I spoke, you did not hear; but did evil before mine eyes, and did choose *that* wherein I delighted not. [Prov 1:24]; [Isa 66:4]; [Jer 7:13]; [Jer 25:34];

13 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, my servants shall eat, but you shall be hungry: behold, my servants shall drink, but you shall be thirsty: behold, my servants shall rejoice, but you shall be ashamed: [Jer 7:19]; [Luke 6:21]; [Luke 6:25];

14 Behold, my servants shall sing for joy of heart, but you shall cry for sorrow of heart, and shall howl for vexation of spirit.

15 And you shall leave your name for a curse unto my chosen: for the Lord GOD shall slay you, and call his servants by another name: [Isa 62:2]; [Jer 42:18];

16 That he who blesseth himself in the earth shall bless himself in the Elohim of truth; and he that sweareth in the earth shall swear by the Elohim of truth; because the former troubles are forgotten, and because they are hid from mine eyes. [1Cor 1:31]; [2Cor 10:17];

The blessed state of the new Jerusalem

17 For, behold, I am about to create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind. [Isa 66:22]; [2Pet 3:13]; [Rev 21:1];

18 But be you glad and rejoice for ever *in that* which I create: for, behold, I create Jerusalem a rejoicing, and her people a joy.

19 And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people: and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her, nor the voice of crying.

20 There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that has not filled his days: he who dies a hundred years old will be thought young; but he who dies less than a hundred years old must be accursed.

21 And they shall build houses, and inhabit *them*; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them. [[Jer 31:5](#)];

22 They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree *are* the days of my people, and mine elect shall long enjoy the work of their hands.

23 They shall not labour in vain, nor bring forth for trouble; for they *are* the seed of the blessed of the YAHWEH, and their offspring with them.

24 And it shall come to pass, that before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear.

25 The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust *shall be* the serpent's meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the YAHWEH. [[Isa 11:6](#)];

The glorious Elohim will be served in humble sincerity

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH, The heaven *is* my throne, and the earth *is* my footstool: where *is* the house that you build unto me? and where *is* the place of my rest? [1Kgs 8:27](#); [2Chr 6:18](#); [Acts 7:48-49](#); [Acts 17:24](#); [\[2Chr 2:6\]](#); [\[Matt 5:35\]](#); [\[Matt 23:22\]](#); [\[Acts 7:49\]](#);

2 For all those *things* has mine hand made, and all those *things* have been, saith the YAHWEH: but to this *man* will I look, *even* to *him that is* poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at my word. [\[Prov 29:23\]](#);

3 He that killeth an ox *is as if* he slew a man; he that sacrificeth a lamb, *as if* he cut off a dog's neck; he that offereth an oblation, *as if he offered* swine's blood; he that burneth incense, *as if* he blessed an idol. yes, they have chosen their own ways, and their being delighteth in their abominations. [\[Isa 1:11\]](#); [\[Jer 6:20\]](#);

4 I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spoke, they did not hear: but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose *that* in which I delighted not. [Prov 1:24](#); [Jer 7:13](#); [Isa 65:12](#);

He comforts the humble by showing the confusion of their enemies

5 Hear the word of the YAHWEH, you that tremble at his word; Your brethren that hated you, that cast you out for my name's sake, said, Let the YAHWEH be glorified: but he shall appear to your joy, and they shall be ashamed. [Isa 5:19](#);

6 A voice of noise from the city, a voice from the temple, a voice of the YAHWEH that rendereth recompence to his enemies.

with the marvellous growth

7 Before she travailed, she brought forth; before her pain came, she was delivered of a man child.

8 Who has heard such a thing? who has seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? *or* shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children.

9 Shall I bring to the birth, and not cause to bring forth? saith the YAHWEH: shall I cause to bring forth, and shut *the womb*? saith thy Elohim.

and the gracious benefits of the church

10 Rejoice you with Jerusalem, and be glad with her, all you that love her: rejoice for joy with her, all you that mourn for her: [\[Luke 6:21\]](#);

11 That you may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that you may milk out, and be delighted with the abundance of her glory.

12 For thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will extend peace to her like a river, and the glory of the Gentiles like a flowing stream: then shall you suck, you shall be borne upon *her* sides, and be dandled upon *her* knees. [Isa 49:22](#); [Isa 60:4](#);

13 As one whom his mother comforteth, so will I comfort you; and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem.

14 And when you see *this*, your heart shall rejoice, and your bones shall flourish like a herb: and the hand of the YAHWEH shall be known toward his servants, and *his* indignation toward his enemies.

Elohim's severe judgments against the wicked

15 For, behold, the YAHWEH will come with fire, and with his chariots like a whirlwind, to render his anger with fury, and his rebuke with flames of fire.

16 For by fire and by his sword will the YAHWEH plead with all flesh: and the slain of the YAHWEH shall be many.

17 They that sanctify themselves, and purify themselves in the gardens behind one *tree* in the midst, eating swine's flesh, and the abomination, and the mouse, shall be consumed together, saith the YAHWEH.

The Gentiles shall have a holy church

18 For I *know* their works and their thoughts: it shall come, that I will gather all nations and tongues; and they shall come, and see my glory.

19 And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those that escape of them unto the nations, *to* Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow, *to* Tubal, and Javan, *to* the isles afar off, that have not heard my fame, neither have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles. [[Jer 46:9](#)];

20 And they shall bring all your brethren *for* an offering unto the YAHWEH out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon mules, and upon swift beasts, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, saith the YAHWEH, as the children of Israel bring an offering in a clean vessel into the house of the YAHWEH.

21 And I will also take of them for priests *and* for Levites, saith the YAHWEH.

22 For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the YAHWEH, so shall your seed and your name remain. [[Isa 65:17](#); [2Pet 3:13](#); [Rev 21:1](#)];

23 And it shall come to pass, *that* from one new moon to another, and from one Sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the YAHWEH. [[Zech 14:16](#)];

and see the damnation of the wicked

24 And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh. [[Mark 9:44](#)]; [[Luke 16:24](#)];

Jeremiah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#) [41](#) [42](#) [43](#) [44](#) [45](#) [46](#) [47](#) [48](#) [49](#) [50](#) [51](#) [52](#)

JEREMIAH ONE

The time

1 The words of Jeremiah the son of Hilkiah, of the priests that *were* in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin:

2 To whom the word of the YAHWEH came in the days of Josiah the son of Amon king of Judah, in the thirteenth year of his reign. [2Kgs 21:26](#); [2Kgs 22:1](#); [2Chr 34:1](#);

3 It came also in the days of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, unto the end of the eleventh year of Zedekiah the son of Josiah king of Judah, unto the carrying away of Jerusalem captive in the fifth month. [2Kgs 23:34](#); [2Chr 36:4](#); [2Kgs 24:17](#); [2Chr 36:10](#); [Jer 52:1](#); [2Kgs 25:8](#);

and the calling of Jeremiah

4 Then the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

5 Before I formed you in the belly I knew you; and before you camest forth out of the womb I sanctified you, *and* I ordained you a prophet unto the nations. [Gal 1:15](#);

6 Then said I, Ah, Lord GOD! behold, I cannot speak: for I *am* a child. [Exod 3:1-22](#); [Exod 4:1-31](#); [Exod 6:12](#); [Exod 6:30](#);

7 But the YAHWEH said unto me, Say not, I *am* a child: for you shall go to all that I shall send you, and whatsoever I command you you shall speak.

8 Be not afraid of their faces: for I *am* with you to deliver you, saith the YAHWEH. [Ezek 3:9](#); [Deut 31:6](#); [Deut 31:8](#); [Josh 1:5](#); [\[Jer 20:11\]](#); [\[Ezek 2:6\]](#); [\[Matt 10:26\]](#); [\[Matt 10:28\]](#); [\[Luke 12:4\]](#); [\[1Pet 3:14\]](#);

9 Then the YAHWEH put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the YAHWEH said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth. [Isa 6:6-7](#); [Jer 5:14](#); [\[Isa 6:7\]](#);

10 See, I have this day set you over the nations and over the kingdoms, to root out, and to pull down, and to destroy, and to throw down, to build, and to plant. [Jer 18:7](#); [2Cor 10:4-5](#); [\[2Cor 10:4\]](#);

His prophetic visions of an almond rod and a seething pot

11 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying, Jeremiah, what seest you? And I said, I see a rod of an almond tree.

12 Then said the YAHWEH unto me, you have well seen: for I will hasten my word to perform it.

13 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me the second time, saying, What seest you? And I said, I see a seething pot; and the face thereof *is* toward the north. [\[Jer 6:1\]](#); [\[Ezek 24:3\]](#);

14 Then the YAHWEH said unto me, Out of the north an evil shall break forth upon all the inhabitants of the land. [Jer 4:6](#); [\[Jer 10:22\]](#);

His heavy message against Judah

15 For, lo, I will call all the families of the kingdoms of the north, saith the YAHWEH; and they shall come, and they shall set every one his throne at the entering of the gates of Jerusalem, and against all the walls thereof round about, and against all the cities of Judah. [Jer 5:15](#); [Jer 6:22](#); [Jer 10:22](#); [Jer 52:4-5](#);

16 And I will utter my judgments against them touching all their wickedness, who have forsaken me, and have burned incense unto other gods, and worshipped the works of their own hands.

Elohim encourages him with his promise of assistance

17 You therefore gird up thy loins, and arise, and speak unto them all that I command you: be not dismayed at their faces, lest I confound you before them. [Ezek 2:6]; [Ezek 3:4]; [Ezek 3:9];
18 For, behold, I have made you this day a defenced city, and an iron pillar, and brasen walls against the whole land, against the kings of Judah, against the princes thereof, against the priests thereof, and against the people of the land. Jer 6:27; Jer 15:20; [Ezek 3:8];
19 And they shall fight against you; but they shall not prevail against you; for I *am* with you, saith the YAHWEH, to deliver you. [Jer 20:11];

JEREMIAH TWO

Elohim having showed his former kindness, expostulates with the Jews on their causeless and unexampled revolt

1 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came to me, saying,
2 Go and cry in the ears of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH; I remember you, the kindness of thy youth, the love of thine espousals, when you wentest after me in the wilderness, in a land *that was* not sown.
3 Israel *was* holiness unto the YAHWEH, *and* the firstfruits of his increase: all that devour him shall offend; evil shall come upon them, saith the YAHWEH. [Amos 6:1];
4 Hear you the word of the YAHWEH, O house of Jacob, and all the families of the house of Israel:
5 Thus saith the YAHWEH, What iniquity have your fathers found in me, that they are gone far from me, and have walked after vanity, and are become vain? Mic 6:3-4; [Isa 5:4];
6 Neither said they, Where *is* the YAHWEH that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, that led us through the wilderness, through a land of deserts and of pits, through a land of drought, and of the shadow of death, through a land that no man passed through, and where no man dwelt?
7 And I brought you into a plentiful country, to eat the fruit thereof and the goodness thereof; but when you entered, you defiled my land, and made mine heritage an abomination.
8 The priests said not, Where *is* the YAHWEH? and they that handle the law knew me not: the pastors also transgressed against me, and the prophets prophesied by Baal, and walked after *things that* do not profit. Rom 2:20; [Ezek 3:1];
9 Wherefore I will yet plead with you, saith the YAHWEH, and with your children's children will I plead.
10 For pass over the isles of Chittim, and see; and send unto Kedar, and consider diligently, and see if there be such a thing. [Jer 18:13];
11 Has a nation changed *their* gods, which *are* yet no gods? but my people have changed their glory for *that which* does not profit. Ps 106:20;
12 Be astonished, O you heavens, at this, and be horribly afraid, be you very desolate, saith the YAHWEH. Deut 32:1; Isa 1:2;
13 For my people have committed two evils; they have forsaken me the fountain of living waters, *and* hewed them out cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water. Song 4:15; Jer 17:13; [Judg 10:13]; [Jer 19:4]; [John 4:11];

They are the causes of their own calamities

14 *Is* Israel a servant? *is* he a homeborn *slave*? why is he spoiled?
15 The young lions roared upon him, *and* youlled, and they made his land waste: his cities are burned without inhabitant. Isa 5:29; Jer 4:7;
16 Also the children of Noph and Tahapanes have broken the crown of thy head.

17 **have** you not procured this unto thyself, in that you have forsaken the YAHWEH thy Elohim, when he led you by the way? [\[Jer 19:4\]](#);

The sins and idolatries of Judah

18 And now what have you to do in the way of Egypt, to drink the waters of Sihor? or what have you to do in the way of Assyria, to drink the waters of the river? [Isa 31:1](#);

19 Thine own wickedness shall correct you, and thy backslidings shall reprove you: know therefore and see that *it is* an evil *thing* and bitter, that you have forsaken the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and that my fear *is* not in you, saith the Lord GOD of hosts. [Isa 3:9](#); [Hos 5:5](#); [\[Jer 19:4\]](#);

20 For of old time I have broken thy yoke, *and* burst thy bands; and you saidst, I will not transgress; when upon every high hill and under every green tree you wanderest, playing the harlot. [\[Jer 3:6\]](#); [\[Jer 17:2\]](#); [\[Ezek 16:59\]](#);

21 Yet I had planted you a noble vine, wholly a right seed: how then are you turned into the degenerate plant of a strange vine unto me? [Exod 15:17](#); [Ps 44:2](#); [Ps 80:8](#); [\[Jer 11:17\]](#); [\[Matt 21:33\]](#); [\[Mark 12:1\]](#); [\[Luke 20:9\]](#);

22 For though you wash you with nitre, and take you much soap, yet thine iniquity is marked before me, saith the Lord GOD. [Job 9:30](#);

23 How canst you say, I am not polluted, I have not gone after Baalim? see thy way in the valley, know what you have done: you *are* a swift dromedary traversing her ways; [\[Jer 7:31\]](#);

24 A wild ass used to the wilderness, *that* snuffeth up the wind at her pleasure; in her occasion who can turn her away? all they that seek her will not weary themselves; in her month they shall find her. [\[Job 39:6\]](#);

25 Withhold thy foot from being unshod, and thy throat from thirst: but you saidst, There is no hope: no; for I have loved strangers, and after them will I go. [\[Jer 18:12\]](#);

26 As the thief is ashamed when he is found, so is the house of Israel ashamed; they, their kings, their princes, and their priests, and their prophets,

27 Saying to a stock, you are my father; and to a stone, you have brought me forth: for they have turned *their* back unto me, and not *their* face: but in the time of their trouble they will say, Arise, and save us. [\[Jer 7:24\]](#); [\[Jer 32:33\]](#);

28 But where *are* thy gods that you have made you? let them arise, if they can save you in the time of thy trouble: for *according to* the number of thy cities are thy gods, O Judah. [Isa 2:8](#); [Jer 11:13](#);

29 Wherefore will you plead with me? you all have transgressed against me, saith the YAHWEH.

30 In vain have I smitten your children; they received no correction: your own sword has devoured your prophets, like a destroying lion. [Isa 1:5](#); [Jer 5:3](#);

31 O generation, see you the word of the YAHWEH. Have I been a wilderness unto Israel? a land of darkness? wherefore say my people, We are lords; we will come no more unto you? [Matt 23:26](#);

32 Can a maid forget her ornaments, *or* a bride her attire? yet my people have forgotten me days without number. [Jer 3:21](#); [\[Jer 18:15\]](#); [\[Ezek 23:35\]](#);

33 Why trimmest you thy way to seek love? therefore have you also taught the wicked ones thy ways.

34 Also in thy skirts is found the blood of the beings of the poor innocents: I have not found it by secret search, but upon all these.

Her confidence is rejected

35 Yet you sayest, Because I am innocent, surely his anger shall turn from me. Behold, I will plead with you, because you sayest, I have not sinned.

36 Why gaddest you about so much to change thy way? you also shall be ashamed of Egypt, as you were ashamed of Assyria. [Isa 31:1](#); [\[Isa 30:5\]](#);

37 Yes, you shall go forth from him, and thine hands upon thine head: for the YAHWEH has rejected thy confidences, and you shall not prosper in them.

Elohim's great mercy in Judah's vile whoredom

1 They say, If a man put away his wife, and she go from him, and become another man's, shall he return unto her again? shall not that land be greatly polluted? but you have played the harlot with many lovers; yet return again to me, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Matt 19:7\]; \[Mark 10:4\];](#)

2 Lift up thine eyes unto the high places, and see where you have not been lien with. In the ways have you sat for them, as the Arabian in the wilderness; and you have polluted the land with thy whoredoms and with thy wickedness. [\[Jer 16:18\];](#)

3 Therefore the showers have been withholden, and there has been no latter rain; and you hadst a whore's forehead, you refusedst to be ashamed.

4 will you not from this time cry unto me, My father, you are the guide of my youth?

5 Will he reserve *his anger* for ever? will he keep *it* to the end? Behold, you have spoken and done evil things as you couldst. [\[Ps 103:9\];](#)

Judah is worse than Israel

6 The YAHWEH said also unto me in the days of Josiah the king, have you seen *that* which backsliding Israel has done? she is gone up upon every high mountain and under every green tree, and there has played the harlot. [Jer 2:20;](#)

7 And I said after she had done all these *things*, Turn you unto me. But she returned not. And her treacherous sister Judah saw *it*.

8 And I saw, when for all the causes whereby backsliding Israel committed adultery I had put her away, and given her a bill of divorce; yet her treacherous sister Judah feared not, but went and played the harlot also.

9 And it came to pass through the lightness of her whoredom, that she defiled the land, and committed adultery with stones and with stocks.

10 And yet for all this her treacherous sister Judah has not turned unto me with her whole heart, but feignedly, saith the YAHWEH.

11 And the YAHWEH said unto me, The backsliding Israel has justified herself more than treacherous Judah.

The promises of the gospel to the penitent

12 Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say, Return, you backsliding Israel, saith the YAHWEH; *and* I will not cause mine anger to fall upon you: for I *am* merciful, saith the YAHWEH, *and* I will not keep *anger* for ever. [Ps 86:15; Ps 103:8-9; Ps 145:17; \[Zech 1:4\];](#)

13 Only acknowledge thine iniquity, that you have transgressed against the YAHWEH thy Elohim, and have scattered thy ways to the strangers under every green tree, and you have not obeyed my voice, saith the YAHWEH.

14 Turn, O backsliding children, saith the YAHWEH; for I am married unto you: and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion:

15 And I will give you pastors according to mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding. [Jer 23:4; Ezek 34:23; Eph 4:11;](#)

16 And it shall come to pass, when you be multiplied and increased in the land, in those days, saith the YAHWEH, they shall say no more, The ark of the covenant of the YAHWEH: neither shall it come to mind: neither shall they remember it; neither shall they visit *it*; neither shall *that* be done any more.

17 At that time they shall call Jerusalem the throne of the YAHWEH; and all the nations shall be gathered unto it, to the name of the YAHWEH, to Jerusalem: neither shall they walk any more after the imagination of their evil heart. [\[Jer 7:24\]; \[Jer 11:8\]; \[Jer 16:12\];](#)

18 In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel, and they shall come together out of the land of the north to the land that I have given for an inheritance unto your fathers. [\[Jer 31:8\]; \[Hos 1:11\];](#)

19 But I said, How shall I put you among the children, and give you a pleasant land, a goodly heritage of the hosts of nations? and I said, you shall call me, My father; and shall not turn away from me.

Israel reprov'd, and called by Elohim, makes a solemn confession of their sins

20 Surely *as* a wife treacherously departeth from her husband, so have you dealt treacherously with me, O house of Israel, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Jer 5:11\];](#)

21 A voice was heard upon the high places, weeping *and* supplications of the children of Israel: for they have perverted their way, *and* they have forgotten the YAHWEH their Elohim. [Jer 2:32; \[Jer 18:15\]; \[Ezek 23:35\];](#)

22 Return, you backsliding children, *and* I will heal your backslidings. Behold, we come unto you; for you are the YAHWEH our Elohim.

23 Truly in vain *is salvation hoped for* from the hills, *and from* the multitude of mountains: truly in the YAHWEH our Elohim *is* the salvation of Israel. [Ps 121:1; \[Ps 3:8\];](#)

24 For shame has devoured the labour of our fathers from our youth; their flocks and their herds, their sons and their daughters.

25 We lie down in our shame, and our confusion covereth us: for we have sinned against the YAHWEH our Elohim, we and our fathers, from our youth even unto this day, and have not obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH our Elohim. [\[Ps 106:6\]; \[Ezek 2:3\];](#)

JEREMIAH FOUR

Elohim calls Israel by his promise

1 If you will return, O Israel, saith the YAHWEH, return unto me: and if you will put away thine abominations out of my sight, then shall you not remove. [\[Joel 2:12\];](#)

2 And you shall swear, The YAHWEH liveth, in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness; and the nations shall bless themselves in him, and in him shall they glory. [Isa 48:1; Gen 22:18;](#)

He exhorts Judah to repentance by fearful judgments

3 For thus saith the YAHWEH to the men of Judah and Jerusalem, Break up your fallow ground, and sow not among thorns. [\[Hos 10:12\];](#)

4 Circumcise yourselves to the YAHWEH, and take away the foreskins of your heart, you men of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem: lest my fury come forth like fire, and burn that none can quench *it*, because of the evil of your doings. [Deut 10:16; Deut 30:6; Isa 65:5; \[Rom 2:29\]; \[Phil 3:3\]; \[Col 2:11\];](#)

5 Declare you in Judah, and publish in Jerusalem; and say, Blow you the trumpet in the land: cry, gather together, and say, Assemble yourselves, and let us go into the defenced cities. [\[Jer 8:14\];](#)

6 Set up the standard toward Zion: retire, stay not: for I will bring evil from the north, and a great destruction. [\[Jer 1:14\]; \[Jer 10:22\];](#)

7 The lion is come up from his thicket, and the destroyer of the Gentiles is on his way; he is gone forth from his place to make thy land desolate; *and* thy cities shall be laid waste, without an inhabitant. [Isa 5:29; Jer 2:15; Jer 5:6;](#)

8 For this gird you with sackcloth, lament and howl: for the fierce anger of the YAHWEH is not turned back from us. [Isa 32:12; \[Jer 6:26\]; \[Jer 25:34\]; \[Jer 49:3\];](#)

9 And it shall come to pass at that day, saith the YAHWEH, *that* the heart of the king shall perish, and the heart of the princes; and the priests shall be astonished, and the prophets shall wonder.

10 Then said I, Ah, Lord GOD! surely you have greatly deceived this people and Jerusalem, saying, you shall have peace; whereas the sword reacheth unto the being.

11 At that time shall it be said to this people and to Jerusalem, A dry wind of the high places in the wilderness toward the daughter of my people, not to fan, nor to cleanse, [\[Jer 15:7\]; \[Jer 18:17\]; \[Jer 51:1\]; \[Jer 51:2\];](#)

12 *Even* a full wind from those *places* shall come unto me: now also will I give sentence against them. [\[Ezek 17:20\];](#)

13 Behold, he shall come up as clouds, and his chariots *shall be* as a whirlwind: his horses are swifter than eagles. Woe unto us! for we are spoiled. [\[Jer 47:3\]; \[Jer 48:40\];](#)

14 O Jerusalem, wash thine heart from wickedness, that you may be saved. How long shall thy vain thoughts lodge within you? [Isa 1:16;](#)

15 For a voice declareth from Dan, and publisheth affliction from mount Ephraim. [\[Jer 8:16\];](#)

16 Make you mention to the nations; behold, publish against Jerusalem, *that* watchers come from a far country, and give out their voice against the cities of Judah.

17 As keepers of a field, are they against her round about; because she has been rebellious against me, saith the YAHWEH.

18 Thy way and thy doings have procured these *things* unto you; this *is* thy wickedness, because it is bitter, because it reacheth unto thine heart.

A grievous lamentation for Judah

19 My bowels, my bowels! I am pained at my very heart; my heart maketh a noise in me; I cannot hold my peace, because you have heard, O my being, the sound of the trumpet, the alarm of war. [Isa 21:4; Jer 9:1;](#)

20 Destruction upon destruction is cried; for the whole land is spoiled: suddenly are my tents spoiled, *and* my curtains in a moment.

21 How long shall I see the standard, *and* hear the sound of the trumpet? [\[Jer 14:12\];](#)

22 For my people are foolish, they have not known me; they *are* sottish children, and they have none understanding: they *are* wise to do evil, but to do good they have no knowledge.

23 I beheld the earth, and, lo, *it was* without form, and void; and the heavens, and they *had* no light.

24 I beheld the mountains, and, lo, they trembled, and all the hills moved lightly.

25 I beheld, and, lo, *there was* no man, and all the birds of the heavens were fled. [\[Jer 12:4\];](#)

26 I beheld, and, lo, the fruitful place *was* a wilderness, and all the cities thereof were broken down at the presence of the YAHWEH, *and* by his fierce anger.

27 For thus has the YAHWEH said, The whole land shall be desolate; yet will I not make a full end. [Jer 5:10; Jer 5:18; Jer 30:11; Jer 46:28;](#)

28 For this shall the earth mourn, and the heavens above be black: because I have spoken *it*, I have purposed *it*, and will not repent, neither will I turn back from it.

29 The whole city shall flee for the noise of the horsemen and bowmen; they shall go into thickets, and climb up upon the rocks: every city *shall be* forsaken, and not a man dwell therein.

30 And *when* you are spoiled, what will you do? though you clothest thyself with crimson, though you deckest you with ornaments of gold, though you rentest thy face with painting, in vain shall you make thyself fair; *thy* lovers will despise you, they will seek thy life.

31 For I have heard a voice as of a woman in travail, *and* the anguish as of her that bringeth forth her first child, the voice of the daughter of Zion, *that* bewaileth herself, *that* spreadeth her hands, *saying*, Woe *is* me now! for my being is wearied because of murderers. [\[Jer 6:24\]; \[Jer 30:6\]; \[Jer 49:24\];](#)

JEREMIAH FIVE

The judgments of Elohim upon the Jews, for their perverseness

1 Run you to and fro through the streets of Jerusalem, and see now, and know, and seek in the broad places thereof, if you can find a man, if there be *any* that executeth judgment, that seeketh the truth; and I will pardon it. [\[Jer 7:28\];](#)

2 And though they say, The YAHWEH liveth; surely they swear falsely.

3 O YAHWEH, *are* not thine eyes upon the truth? you have stricken them, but they have not grieved; you have consumed them, *but* they have refused to receive correction: they have made their faces harder than a rock; they have refused to return. [Isa 1:5; Isa 9:13; Jer 2:30; \[Exod 32:9\]; \[Jer 7:28\]; \[Ezek 3:9\];](#)

4 Therefore I said, Surely these *are* poor; they are foolish: for they know not the way of the YAHWEH, *nor* the judgment of their Elohim. [\[Jer 8:7\];](#)

5 I will get me unto the great men, and will speak unto them; for they have known the way of the YAHWEH, *and* the judgment of their Elohim: but these have altogether broken the yoke, *and* burst the bonds.

6 Wherefore a lion out of the forest shall slay them, *and* a wolf of the evenings shall spoil them, a leopard shall watch over their cities: every one that goes out thence shall be torn in pieces: because their transgressions are many, *and* their backslidings are increased. [Jer 4:7; \[Jer 30:15\];](#)

for their adultery

7 How shall I pardon you for this? thy children have forsaken me, and sworn by *them that are* no gods: when I had fed them to the full, they then committed adultery, and assembled themselves by troops in the harlots' houses. [\[Josh 23:7\]; \[Jer 9:2\]; \[Jer 15:6\]; \[Jer 19:4\]; \[Jer 23:10\];](#)

8 They were *as* fed horses in the morning: every one neighed after his neighbour's wife. [Ezek 22:11;](#)

9 Shall I not visit for these *things*? saith the YAHWEH: and shall not my being be avenged on such a nation as this? [Jer 5:29; Jer 9:9;](#)

for their impiety

10 Go you up upon her walls, and destroy; but make not a full end: take away her battlements; for they *are* not the YAHWEH'S. [Jer 4:27; \[Jer 30:11\];](#)

11 For the house of Israel and the house of Judah have dealt very treacherously against me, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 3:20;](#)

12 They have belied the YAHWEH, and said, *It is* not he; neither shall evil come upon us; neither shall we see sword nor famine: [Isa 28:15;](#)

13 And the prophets shall become wind, and the word *is* not in them: thus shall it be done unto them.

14 Wherefore thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, Because you speak this word, behold, I will make my words in thy mouth fire, and this people wood, and it shall devour them. [Jer 1:9;](#)

for their worship of idols

15 Lo, I will bring a nation upon you from far, O house of Israel, saith the YAHWEH: it *is* a mighty nation, it *is* an ancient nation, a nation whose language you knowest not, neither understandest what they say. [Deut 28:49](#); [Jer 1:15](#); [Jer 6:22](#);

16 Their quiver *is* as an open sepulcher, they *are* all mighty men.

17 And they shall eat up thine harvest, and thy bread, *which* thy sons and thy daughters should eat: they shall eat up thy flocks and thine herds: they shall eat up thy vines and thy fig trees: they shall impoverish thy fenced cities, wherein you trustedst, with the sword. [Lev 26:16](#); [Deut 28:31](#); [Deut 28:33](#);

18 Nevertheless in those days, saith the YAHWEH, I will not make a full end with you. [Jer 4:27](#); [Jer 30:11](#);

for their contempt of Elohim

19 And it shall come to pass, when you shall say, Wherefore doeth the YAHWEH our Elohim all these *things* unto us? then shall you answer them, Like as you have forsaken me, and served strange gods in your land, so shall you serve strangers in a land *that is* not yours. [Jer 16:10](#); [Jer 13:22](#); [Jer 19:4](#);

20 Declare this in the house of Jacob, and publish it in Judah, saying,

21 Hear now this, O foolish people, and without understanding; which have eyes, and see not; which have ears, and hear not: [Isa 6:9](#); [Isa 6:10](#); [Ezek 12:2](#);

22 Fear you not me? saith the YAHWEH: will you not tremble at my presence, which have placed the sand *for* the bound of the sea by a perpetual decree, that it cannot pass it: and though the waves thereof toss themselves, yet can they not prevail; though they roar, yet can they not pass over it? [Job 38:10-11](#); [Ps 33:7](#); [Ps 104:9](#); [Job 26:10](#); [Job 38:8](#);

23 But this people has a revolting and a rebellious heart; they are revolted and gone. [Jer 22:21](#);

24 Neither say they in their heart, Let us now fear the YAHWEH our Elohim, that giveth rain, both the former and the latter, in its season: he reserveth unto us the appointed weeks of the harvest. [Deut 11:14](#); [Jer 14:22](#);

and for their great corruption in the civil state

25 Your iniquities have turned away these *things*, and your sins have withholden good *things* from you.

26 For among my people are found wicked *men*: they lay wait, as he that setteth snares; they set a trap, they catch men.

27 As a cage is full of birds, so *are* their houses full of deceit: therefore they are become great, and waxen rich.

28 They are waxen fat, they shine: yes, they overpass the deeds of the wicked: they judge not the cause, the cause of the fatherless, yet they prosper; and the right of the needy do they not judge. [Deut 32:15](#); [Isa 1:23](#); [Zech 7:10](#); [Deut 24:17](#); [Jer 7:5](#);

29 Shall I not visit for these *things*? saith the YAHWEH: shall not my being be avenged on such a nation as this? [Jer 5:9](#); [Jer 9:9](#);

and ecclesiastical

30 A wonderful and horrible thing is committed in the land;

31 The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love *to have it* so: and what will you do in the end thereof? [Jer 14:18](#); [Jer 23:25-26](#); [Ezek 13:6](#);

The enemies sent against Judah

1 O you children of Benjamin, gather yourselves to flee out of the midst of Jerusalem, and blow the trumpet in Tekoa, and set up a sign of fire in Bethhaccerem: for evil appeareth out of the north, and great destruction. [Jer 1:13-14](#);

2 I have likened the daughter of Zion to a comely and delicate *woman*.

3 The shepherds with their flocks shall come unto her; they shall pitch *their* tents against her round about; they shall feed every one in his place. [\[Isa 29:3\]](#); [\[Jer 12:10\]](#);

encourage themselves

4 Prepare you war against her; arise, and let us go up at noon. Woe unto us! for the day goes away, for the shadows of the evening are stretched out.

5 Arise, and let us go by night, and let us destroy her palaces.

Elohim sets them on work because of their sins

6 For thus has the YAHWEH of hosts said, Hew you down trees, and cast a mount against Jerusalem: this *is* the city to be visited; she *is* wholly oppression in the midst of her.

7 As a fountain casteth out her waters, so she casteth out her wickedness: violence and spoil is heard in her; before me continually *is* grief and wounds. [\[Jer 9:3\]](#);

8 Be you instructed, O Jerusalem, lest my being depart from you; lest I make you desolate, a land not inhabited. [\[Jer 7:34\]](#);

The prophet laments the judgments of Elohim because of their sins

9 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, They shall thoroughly glean the remnant of Israel as a vine: turn back thine hand as a grapegatherer into the baskets. [Isa 24:13](#);

10 To whom shall I speak, and give warning, that they may hear? behold, their ear *is* uncircumcised, and they cannot hearken: behold, the word of the YAHWEH is unto them a reproach; they have no delight in it. [Jer 7:26](#); [\[Acts 7:51\]](#);

11 Therefore I am full of the fury of the YAHWEH; I am weary with holding in: I will pour it out upon the children abroad, and upon the assembly of young men together: for even the husband with the wife shall be taken, the aged with *him that is* full of days.

12 And their houses shall be turned unto others, *with their* fields and wives together: for I will stretch out my hand upon the inhabitants of the land, saith the YAHWEH. [Deut 28:30](#); [\[Jer 8:10\]](#);

13 For from the least of them even unto the greatest of them every one *is* given to covetousness; and from the prophet even unto the priest every one dealeth falsely. [Isa 56:11](#); [Jer 8:10](#); [\[Jer 23:11\]](#);

14 They have healed also the hurt *of the daughter* of my people slightly, saying, Peace, peace; when *there is* no peace. [Jer 8:11](#); [Ezek 13:10](#); [\[Jer 23:17\]](#);

15 Were they ashamed when they had committed abomination? nay, they were not at all ashamed, neither could they blush: therefore they shall fall among them that fall: at the time *that* I visit them they shall be cast down, saith the YAHWEH.

16 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Stand you in the ways, and see, and ask for the old paths, where *is* the good way, and walk therein, and you shall find rest for your beings. But they said, We will not walk *therein*. [Matt 11:29](#); [\[Jer 18:15\]](#);

17 Also I set watchmen over you, *saying*, Hearken to the sound of the trumpet. But they said, We will not hearken.

He proclaims Elohim's wrath

18 Therefore hear, you nations, and know, O congregation, what *is* among them.

19 Hear, O earth: behold, I will bring evil upon this people, *even* the fruit of their thoughts, because they have not hearkened unto my words, nor to my law, but rejected it.

20 To what purpose cometh there to me incense from Sheba, and the sweet cane from a far country? your burnt offerings *are* not acceptable, nor your sacrifices sweet unto me. [Isa 1:11](#); [Isa 66:3](#); [Amos 5:21](#); [Mic 6:6](#); [\[Prov 15:8\]](#); [\[Prov 21:27\]](#); [\[Jer 7:21\]](#); [\[Jer 14:12\]](#); [\[Mal 1:10\]](#); [\[Heb 10:5\]](#);

21 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will lay stumblingblocks before this people, and the fathers and the sons together shall fall upon them; the neighbour and his friend shall perish.

22 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, a people cometh from the north country, and a great nation shall be raised from the sides of the earth. [Jer 50:41-43](#); [\[Jer 1:15\]](#); [\[Jer 5:15\]](#); [\[Jer 50:41\]](#);

23 They shall lay hold on bow and spear; they *are* cruel, and have no mercy; their voice roareth like the sea; and they ride upon horses, set in array as men for war against you, O daughter of Zion. [\[Jer 47:3\]](#); [\[Ezek 28:7\]](#);

24 We have heard the fame thereof: our hands wax feeble: anguish has taken hold of us, *and* pain, as of a woman in travail. [Jer 4:31](#); [Jer 49:24](#); [Jer 50:43](#); [\[Jer 10:18\]](#); [\[Jer 13:21\]](#); [\[Jer 30:6\]](#); [\[Ezek 7:17\]](#); [\[Ezek 21:7\]](#);

25 Go not forth into the field, nor walk by the way; for the sword of the enemy *and* fear *is* on every side. [\[Job 18:11\]](#);

He calls the people to mourn for the judgment on their sins

26 O daughter of my people, gird you with sackcloth, and wallow thyself in ashes: make you mourning, *as for* an only son, most bitter lamentation: for the spoiler shall suddenly come upon us. [Jer 4:8](#); [\[Jer 25:34\]](#); [\[Jer 49:3\]](#); [\[Mic 1:10\]](#);

27 I have set you *for* a tower *and* a fortress among my people, that you may know and try their way. [\[Jer 1:18\]](#);

28 They *are* all grievous revolvers, walking with slanders: *they are* brass and iron; they *are* all corrupters. [Ezek 22:18](#); [\[Jer 9:4\]](#); [\[Jer 15:12\]](#); [\[Ezek 21:13\]](#);

29 The bellows are burned, the lead is consumed of the fire; the founder melteth in vain: for the wicked are not plucked away. [\[Isa 1:25\]](#);

30 Reprobate silver shall *men* call them, because the YAHWEH has rejected them. [Isa 1:22](#);

JEREMIAH SEVEN

Jeremiah is sent to call to true repentance, to prevent the Jews' captivity

1 The word that came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,

2 Stand in the gate of the YAHWEH'S house, and proclaim there this word, and say, Hear the word of the YAHWEH, all you *of* Judah, that enter in at these gates to worship the YAHWEH.

3 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, Amend your ways and your doings, and I will cause you to dwell in this place. [Jer 7:5](#); [Jer 18:11](#); [Jer 26:13](#);

4 Trust you not in lying words, saying, The temple of the YAHWEH, The temple of the YAHWEH, The temple of the YAHWEH, *are* these.

5 For if you thoroughly amend your ways and your doings; if you thoroughly execute judgment between a man and his neighbour; [Jer 5:28](#); [\[Jer 7:3\]](#);

6 *If* you oppress not the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, and shed not innocent blood in this place, neither walk after other gods to your hurt: [Isa 10:1-2](#); [Isa 59:7](#); [\[Jer 19:4\]](#); [\[Jer 22:3\]](#);

7 Then will I cause you to dwell in this place, in the land that I gave to your fathers, for ever and ever.

He rejects their vain confidence

8 Behold, you trust in lying words, that cannot profit.

9 Will you steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense unto Baal, and walk after other gods whom you know not;

10 And come and stand before me in this house, which is called by my name, and say, We are delivered to do all these abominations?

11 Is this house, which is called by my name, become a den of robbers in your eyes? Behold, even I have seen *it*, saith the YAHWEH. [Matt 21:13](#); [Mark 11:17](#); [Luke 19:46](#);

by the example of Shiloh

12 But go you now unto my place which *was* in Shiloh, where I set my name at the first, and see what I did to it for the wickedness of my people Israel. [1Sam 4:11](#); [Ps 78:60](#); [\[Jer 26:6\]](#);

13 And now, because you have done all these works, saith the YAHWEH, and I spoke unto you, rising up early and speaking, but you heard not; and I called you, but you answered not; [Jer 7:25](#); [2Chr 36:15](#); [Prov 1:24](#); [Isa 65:12](#); [Isa 66:4](#); [\[Jer 11:7\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#); [\[Jer 26:5\]](#); [\[Jer 32:33\]](#);

14 Therefore will I do unto *this* house, which is called by my name, wherein you trust, and unto the place which I gave to you and to your fathers, as I have done to Shiloh. [\[Jer 26:6\]](#);

15 And I will cast you out of my sight, as I have cast out all your brethren, *even* the whole seed of Ephraim. [\[1Kgs 9:7\]](#);

16 Therefore pray not you for this people, neither lift up cry nor prayer for them, neither make intercession to me: for I will not hear you. [Exod 32:10](#); [Jer 11:14](#); [Jer 14:11](#);

He threatens them for their idolatry

17 Seest you not what they do in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem?

18 The children gather wood, and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead *their* dough, to make cakes to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings unto other gods, that they may provoke me to anger. [Jer 44:19](#); [Isa 65:11](#); [Jer 8:2](#); [Jer 19:13](#); [\[Jer 44:17\]](#);

19 Do they provoke me to anger? saith the YAHWEH: *do they not provoke* themselves to the confusion of their own faces? [Isa 65:13](#);

20 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, mine anger and my fury shall be poured out upon this place, upon man, and upon beast, and upon the trees of the field, and upon the fruit of the ground; and it shall burn, and shall not be quenched. [\[Jer 12:4\]](#); [\[Jer 42:18\]](#); [\[Jer 44:6\]](#);

He rejects the sacrifices of the disobedient

21 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Put your burnt offerings unto your sacrifices, and eat flesh. [Isa 1:11](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Amos 5:21](#);

22 For I spoke not unto your fathers, nor commanded them in the day that I brought them out of the land of Egypt, concerning burnt offerings or sacrifices:

23 But this thing commanded I them, saying, Obey my voice, and I will be your Elohim, and you shall be my people: and walk you in all the ways that I have commanded you, that it may be well unto you. [Deut 6:3](#); [Exod 19:5](#); [Lev 26:12](#); [\[Jer 22:21\]](#); [\[Jer 42:6\]](#);

24 But they hearkened not, nor inclined their ear, but walked in the counsels *and* in the imagination of their evil heart, and went backward, and not forward. [Jer 3:17](#); [Jer 16:12](#); [Jer 2:27](#); [Jer 32:33](#); [\[Jer 11:8\]](#);

25 Since the day that your fathers came forth out of the land of Egypt unto this day I have even sent unto you all my servants the prophets, daily rising up early and sending *them*: [\[Jer 7:13\]](#); [\[Jer 11:7\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#); [\[Jer 26:5\]](#); [\[Jer 32:33\]](#);

26 Yet they hearkened not unto me, nor inclined their ear, but hardened their neck: they did worse than their fathers. [Neh 9:17](#); [Neh 9:29](#); [Jer 17:23](#); [Jer 19:15](#); [\[Jer 6:10\]](#); [\[Jer 11:8\]](#); [\[Jer 16:12\]](#);

27 Therefore you shall speak all these words unto them; but they will not hearken to you: you shall also call unto them; but they will not answer you.

28 But you shall say unto them, This *is* a nation that obeyeth not the voice of the YAHWEH their Elohim, nor receiveth correction: truth is perished, and is cut off from their mouth. [Jer 5:3](#); [Jer 5:1](#);

He exhorts to mourn for their abominations in Tophet

29 Cut off thine hair, *O Jerusalem*, and cast *it* away, and take up a lamentation on high places; for the YAHWEH has rejected and forsaken the generation of his wrath. [Job 1:20](#); [Isa 15:2](#); [Jer 16:6](#);

30 For the children of Judah have done evil in my sight, saith the YAHWEH: they have set their abominations in the house which is called by my name, to pollute it.

31 And they have built the high places of Tophet, which *is* in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire; which I commanded *them* not, neither came it into my heart. [2Kgs 23:10](#); [Jer 2:23](#); [Jer 19:5-6](#); [\[2Chr 28:3\]](#);

and the judgments for the same

32 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that it shall no more be called Tophet, nor the valley of the son of Hinnom, but the valley of slaughter: for they shall bury in Tophet, till there be no place. [\[Jer 19:6\]](#); [\[Jer 19:11\]](#);

33 And the carcases of this people shall be meat for the fowls of the heaven, and for the beasts of the earth; and none shall fray *them* away. [Deut 28:26](#); [Jer 34:20](#); [\[Jer 9:22\]](#); [\[Jer 12:9\]](#); [\[Jer 15:3\]](#); [\[Jer 16:4\]](#);

34 Then will I cause to cease from the cities of Judah, and from the streets of Jerusalem, the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride: for the land shall be desolate. [Isa 24:7](#); [Jer 16:9](#); [Jer 25:10](#); [Ezek 26:13](#); [Hos 2:11](#); [Jer 6:8](#); [\[Isa 24:8\]](#); [\[Jer 33:11\]](#); [\[Matt 23:38\]](#); [\[Luke 13:35\]](#); [\[Rev 18:23\]](#);

JEREMIAH EIGHT

The calamity of the Jews, both dead and alive

1 At that time, saith the YAHWEH, they shall bring out the bones of the kings of Judah, and the bones of his princes, and the bones of the priests, and the bones of the prophets, and the bones of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, out of their graves:

2 And they shall spread them before the sun, and the moon, and all the host of heaven, whom they have loved, and whom they have served, and after whom they have walked, and whom they have sought, and whom they have worshipped: they shall not be gathered, nor be buried; they shall be for dung upon the face of the earth. [Jer 7:18](#); [Jer 19:13](#);

3 And death shall be chosen rather than life by all the residue of them that remain of this evil family, which remain in all the places whither I have driven them, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Rev 9:6\]](#);

He upbraids their foolish and shameless impenitency

4 Moreover you shall say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Shall they fall, and not arise? shall he turn away, and not return?

5 Why *then* is this people of Jerusalem slidden back by a perpetual backsliding? they hold fast deceit, they refuse to return.

6 I hearkened and heard, *but* they spoke not aright: no man repented him of his wickedness, saying, What have I done? every one turned to his course, as the horse rusheth into the battle.

7 Yes, the stork in the heaven knoweth her appointed times; and the turtle and the crane and the swallow observe the time of their coming; but my people know not the judgment of the YAHWEH. [Jer 5:4-5](#);

8 How do you say, We *are* wise, and the law of the YAHWEH *is* with us? Lo, certainly in vain made he *it*; the pen of the scribes *is* in vain.

9 The wise *men* are ashamed, they are dismayed and taken: lo, they have rejected the word of the YAHWEH; and what wisdom *is* in them?

10 Therefore will I give their wives unto others, *and* their fields to them that shall inherit *them*: for every one from the least even unto the greatest is given to covetousness, from the prophet even unto the priest every one dealeth falsely. [Jer 6:12](#); [Jer 6:13-15](#); [Isa 56:11](#); [\[Jer 6:13\]](#); [\[Jer 23:11\]](#);

11 For they have healed the hurt of the daughter of my people slightly, saying, Peace, peace; when *there is* no peace. [\[Jer 6:14\]](#); [\[Jer 23:17\]](#);

12 Were they ashamed when they had committed abomination? nay, they were not at all ashamed, neither could they blush: therefore shall they fall among them that fall: in the time of their visitation they shall be cast down, saith the YAHWEH.

He shows their grievous judgment

13 I will surely consume them, saith the YAHWEH: *there shall be* no grapes on the vine, nor figs on the fig tree, and the leaf shall fade; and *the things that* I have given them shall pass away from them. [Isa 5:1](#); [Matt 21:19](#); [Luke 13:6](#);

14 Why do we sit still? assemble yourselves, and let us enter into the defenced cities, and let us be silent there: for the YAHWEH our Elohim has put us to silence, and given us water of gall to drink, because we have sinned against the YAHWEH. [Jer 4:5](#); [Jer 9:15](#); [Jer 23:15](#);

15 We looked for peace, but no good *came*; *and* for a time of health, and behold trouble! [Jer 14:19](#);

16 The snorting of his horses was heard from Dan: the whole land trembled at the sound of the neighing of his strong ones; for they are come, and have devoured the land, and all that is in it; the city, and those that dwell therein. [Jer 4:15](#); [\[Jer 10:25\]](#);

17 For, behold, I will send serpents, cockatrices, among you, which *will* not *be* charmed, and they shall bite you, saith the YAHWEH. [Ps 58:4-5](#);

and bewails their desperate estate

18 *When* I would comfort myself against sorrow, my heart *is* faint in me.

19 Behold the voice of the cry of the daughter of my people because of them that dwell in a far country: *Is* not the YAHWEH in Zion? *is* not her king in her? Why have they provoked me to anger with their graven images, *and* with strange vanities? [\[Mic 4:9\]](#);

20 The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and we are not saved.

21 For the hurt of the daughter of my people am I hurt; I am black; astonishment has taken hold on me.

22 *Is there* no balm in Gilead; *is there* no physician there? why then is not the health of the daughter of my people recovered? [Gen 37:25](#); [Jer 46:11](#); [Jer 51:8](#);

Jeremiah laments the Jews for their manifold sins

- 1** Oh that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people! [Isa 22:4](#); [Jer 4:19](#);
- 2** Oh that I had in the wilderness a lodging place of wayfaring men; that I might leave my people, and go from them! for they *be* all adulterers, an assembly of treacherous men. [Jer 5:7-8](#); [\[Jer 23:10\]](#);
- 3** And they bend their tongues *like* their bow *for* lies: but they are not valiant for the truth upon the earth; for they proceed from evil to evil, and they know not me, saith the YAHWEH. [Isa 59:4](#); [Isa 59:13](#); [Isa 59:15](#); [Jer 6:7](#);
- 4** Take you heed every one of his neighbour, and trust you not in any brother: for every brother will utterly supplant, and every neighbour will walk with slanders. [Jer 6:28](#);
- 5** And they will deceive every one his neighbour, and will not speak the truth: they have taught their tongue to speak lies, *and* weary themselves to commit iniquity.
- 6** Thine habitation *is* in the midst of deceit; through deceit they refuse to know me, saith the YAHWEH.
- 7** Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, Behold, I will melt them, and try them; for how shall I do for the daughter of my people?
- 8** Their tongue *is as* an arrow shot out; it speaketh deceit: *one* speaketh peaceably to his neighbour with his mouth, but in heart he layeth his wait. [Ps 120:4](#); [Prov 30:14](#); [Ps 12:2](#); [Ps 28:3](#); [\[Jer 18:18\]](#); [\[Mic 6:12\]](#);

and for their judgment

- 9** Shall I not visit them for these *things*? saith the YAHWEH: shall not my being be avenged on such a nation as this? [Jer 5:9](#); [Jer 5:29](#);
- 10** For the mountains will I take up a weeping and wailing, and for the habitations of the wilderness a lamentation, because they are burned up, so that none can pass through *them*; neither can *men* hear the voice of the cattle; both the fowl of the heavens and the beast are fled; they are gone. [\[Jer 12:4\]](#);
- 11** And I will make Jerusalem heaps, *and* a den of dragons; and I will make the cities of Judah desolate, without an inhabitant. [Jer 10:22](#); [\[Jer 49:33\]](#);

Disobedience is the cause of their bitter calamity

- 12** Who *is* the wise man, that may understand this? and *who is he* to whom the mouth of the YAHWEH has spoken, that he may declare it, for what the land perisheth *and* is burned up like a wilderness, that none passeth through?
- 13** And the YAHWEH saith, Because they have forsaken my law which I set before them, and have not obeyed my voice, neither walked therein;
- 14** But have walked after the imagination of their own heart, and after Baalim, which their fathers taught them: [\[Jer 11:8\]](#); [\[Jer 16:12\]](#);
- 15** Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will feed them, *even* this people, with wormwood, and give them water of gall to drink. [Jer 23:15](#); [Jer 8:14](#);
- 16** I will scatter them also among the heathen, whom neither they nor their fathers have known: and I will send a sword after them, till I have consumed them. [Lev 26:33](#); [\[Jer 10:25\]](#); [\[Jer 14:12\]](#); [\[Jer 25:34\]](#);

He exhorts to mourn for their destruction

- 17** Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, Consider you, and call for the mourning women, that they may come; and send for cunning *women*, that they may come:
- 18** And let them make haste, and take up a wailing for us, that our eyes may run down with tears, and our eyelids gush out with waters.
- 19** For a voice of wailing is heard out of Zion, How are we spoiled! we are greatly confounded, because we have forsaken the land, because our dwellings have cast *us* out.

20 Yet hear the word of the YAHWEH, O you women, and let your ear receive the word of his mouth, and teach your daughters wailing, and every one her neighbour lamentation.

21 For death is come up into our windows, *and* is entered into our palaces, to cut off the children from without, *and* the young men from the streets.

22 Speak, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Even the carcases of men shall fall as dung upon the open field, and as the handful after the harvestman, and none shall gather *them*. [Jer 7:33](#); [\[Jer 16:4\]](#);

and to trust not in themselves, but in Elohim

23 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Let not the wise *man* glory in his wisdom, neither let the mighty *man* glory in his might, let not the rich *man* glory in his riches: [1Cor 1:31](#); [2Cor 10:17](#); [\[John 17:3\]](#); [\[Phil 3:8\]](#); [\[Col 2:2\]](#);

24 But let him that glorieth glory in this, that he understandeth and knoweth me, that I *am* the YAHWEH which exercise lovingkindness, judgment, and righteousness, in the earth: for in these *things* I delight, saith the YAHWEH.

He threatens both Jews and Gentiles

25 Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will punish all *them which are* circumcised with the uncircumcised;

26 Egypt, and Judah, and Edom, and the children of Ammon, and Moab, and all *that are* in the utmost corners, that dwell in the wilderness: for all *these nations are* uncircumcised, and all the house of Israel *are* uncircumcised in the heart. [Lev 26:41](#); [Rom 2:28-29](#); [\[Jer 25:23\]](#); [\[Jer 49:32\]](#);

JEREMIAH TEN

The unequal comparison of Elohim and idols

1 Hear you the word which the YAHWEH speaketh unto you, O house of Israel:

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Learn not the way of the heathen, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; for the heathen are dismayed at them.

3 For the customs of the people *are* vain: for *one* cutteth a tree out of the forest, the work of the hands of the workman, with the axe. [Isa 44:14](#); [\[Ps 115:5\]](#); [\[Acts 19:26\]](#);

4 They deck it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers, that it move not. [Isa 41:7](#);

5 They *are* upright as the palm tree, but speak not: they must needs be borne, because they cannot go. Be not afraid of them; for they cannot do evil, neither also *is it* in them to do good. [Ps 115:5](#); [Isa 46:1](#); [Isa 46:7](#); [Isa 41:23](#);

6 Forasmuch as *there is* none like unto you, O YAHWEH; you are great, and thy name *is* great in might. [Ps 86:8](#); [Ps 86:10](#);

7 Who would not revere you, O King of nations? for you deserve it: forasmuch as among all the wise *men* of the nations, and in all their kingdoms, *there is* none like unto you. [Rev 15:4](#);

8 But they are altogether brutish and foolish: the stock *is* a doctrine of vanities. [Isa 41:29](#); [Hab 2:18](#); [Zech 10:2](#);

9 Silver spread into plates is brought from Tarshish, and gold from Uphaz, the work of the workman, and of the hands of the founder: blue and purple *is* their clothing: they *are* all the work of cunning *men*. [\[Ps 115:5\]](#);

10 But the YAHWEH *is* the true Elohim, he *is* the living Elohim, and an everlasting king: at his wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to abide his indignation. [\[Ps 10:16\]](#);

11 Thus shall you say unto them, The gods that have not made the heavens and the earth, *even* they shall perish from the earth, and from under these heavens.

12 He has made the earth by his power, he has established the world by his wisdom, and has stretched out the heavens by his discretion. [Gen 1:1](#); [Jer 51:15](#); [Job 9:8](#); [Ps 104:2](#); [Isa 40:22](#); [Isa 44:24](#); [Isa 51:13](#); [\[Gen 1:6\]](#);
13 When he uttereth his voice, *there is* a multitude of waters in the heavens, and he causeth the vapours to ascend from the ends of the earth; he maketh lightnings with rain, and bringeth forth the wind out of his treasures. [Ps 135:7](#); [\[Jer 14:22\]](#);
14 Every man is brutish in *his* knowledge: every founder is confounded by the graven image: for his molten image *is* falsehood, and *there is* no breath in them. [Jer 51:17-18](#);
15 They *are* vanity, *and* the work of errors: in the time of their visitation they shall perish.
16 The portion of Jacob *is* not like them: for he *is* the former of all *things*; and Israel *is* the rod of his inheritance: The YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name. [Jer 51:19](#); [Ps 74:2](#);

The prophet exhorts to flee from the calamity to come

17 Gather up thy wares out of the land, O inhabitant of the fortress.
18 For thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will sling out the inhabitants of the land at this once, and will distress them, that they may find *it so*. [Jer 6:24](#);

He laments the spoil of the tabernacle by foolish pastors

19 Woe is me for my hurt! my wound is grievous: but I said, Truly this *is* a grief, and I must bear it. [\[Jer 30:12\]](#);
20 My tabernacle is spoiled, and all my cords are broken: my children are gone forth of me, and they *are* not: *there is* none to stretch forth my tent any more, and to set up my curtains.
21 For the pastors are become brutish, and have not sought the YAHWEH: therefore they shall not prosper, and all their flocks shall be scattered.
22 Behold, the noise of the report is come, and a great commotion out of the north country, to make the cities of Judah desolate, *and* a den of dragons. [Jer 1:14](#); [Jer 4:6](#); [Jer 9:11](#); [\[Jer 1:15\]](#); [\[Jer 49:33\]](#);

He makes a humble supplication

23 O YAHWEH, I know that the way of man *is* not in himself: *it is* not in man that walketh to direct his steps. [Prov 16:1](#); [Prov 20:24](#);
24 O YAHWEH, correct me, but with judgment; not in thine anger, lest you bring me to nothing. [Ps 6:1](#); [Ps 38:1](#); [Jer 30:11](#); [Jer 46:28](#);
25 Pour out thy fury upon the heathen that know you not, and upon the families that call not on thy name: for they have eaten up Jacob, and devoured him, and consumed him, and have made his habitation desolate. [Ps 79:6](#); [Jer 8:16](#); [Jer 9:16](#); [\[Jer 30:16\]](#);

JEREMIAH ELEVEN

Jeremiah proclaims Elohim's covenant

1 The word that came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,
2 Hear you the words of this covenant, and speak unto the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem;
3 And say you unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel; Cursed *be* the man that obeyeth not the words of this covenant, [Deut 27:26](#); [Gal 3:10](#);
4 Which I commanded your fathers in the day *that* I brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, from the iron furnace, saying, Obey my voice, and do them, according to all which I command you: so shall you be my people, and I will be your Elohim: [Deut 4:20](#); [Lev 26:3](#); [Lev 26:12](#);

5 That I may perform the oath which I have sworn unto your fathers, to give them a land flowing with milk and honey, as *it is* this day. Then answered I, and said, So be it, O YAHWEH. [Deut 7:12](#);

6 Then the YAHWEH said unto me, Proclaim all these words in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem, saying, Hear you the words of this covenant, and do them.

7 For I earnestly protested unto your fathers in the day *that* I brought them up out of the land of Egypt, *even* unto this day, rising early and protesting, saying, Obey my voice. [Jer 7:13](#); [Jer 7:25](#); [\[Jer 22:21\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#); [\[Jer 26:5\]](#); [\[Jer 35:14\]](#);

rebukes the Jews' disobeying thereof

8 Yet they obeyed not, nor inclined their ear, but walked every one in the imagination of their evil heart: therefore I will bring upon them all the words of this covenant, which I commanded *them* to do; but they did *them* not. [Jer 7:26](#); [Jer 3:17](#); [Jer 7:24](#); [Jer 9:14](#);

9 And the YAHWEH said unto me, A conspiracy is found among the men of Judah, and among the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

10 They are turned back to the iniquities of their forefathers, which refused to hear my words; and they went after other gods to serve them: the house of Israel and the house of Judah have broken my covenant which I made with their fathers. [\[Jer 16:12\]](#); [\[Jer 17:23\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#);

prophesies evils to come upon them

11 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will bring evil upon them, which they shall not be able to escape; and though they shall cry unto me, I will not hearken unto them. [Prov 1:28](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Jer 14:12](#); [Ezek 8:18](#); [Mic 3:4](#); [\[Job 35:12\]](#); [\[Prov 1:27\]](#); [\[Zech 7:13\]](#);

12 Then shall the cities of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem go, and cry unto the gods unto whom they offer incense: but they shall not save them at all in the time of their trouble.

13 For *according to* the number of thy cities were thy gods, O Judah; and *according to* the number of the streets of Jerusalem have you set up altars to *that* shameful thing, *even* altars to burn incense unto Baal. [Jer 2:28](#); [\[Jer 17:1\]](#);

14 Therefore pray not you for this people, neither lift up a cry or prayer for them: for I will not hear *them* in the time that they cry unto me for their trouble. [Jer 7:16](#); [Jer 14:11](#);

15 What has my beloved to do in mine house, *seeing* she has wrought lewdness with many, and the holy flesh is passed from you? when you do evil, then you rejoice.

16 The YAHWEH called thy name, A green olive tree, fair, *and* of goodly fruit: with the noise of a great tumult he has kindled fire upon it, and the branches of it are broken. [\[Rom 11:17\]](#);

17 For the YAHWEH of hosts, that planted you, has pronounced evil against you, for the evil of the house of Israel and of the house of Judah, which they have done against themselves to provoke me to anger in offering incense unto Baal. [Jer 2:21](#);

and upon the men of Anathoth, for conspiring to kill him

18 And the YAHWEH has given me knowledge *of it*, and I know *it*: then you showedst me their doings.

19 But I *was* like a lamb *or* an ox *that* is brought to the slaughter; and I knew not that they had devised devices against me, *saying*, Let us destroy the tree with the fruit thereof, and let us cut him off from the land of the living, that his name may be no more remembered.

20 But, O YAHWEH of hosts, that judgest righteously, that triest the reins and the heart, let me see thy vengeance on them: for unto you have I revealed my cause. [1Sam 16:7](#); [1Chr 28:9](#); [Ps 7:9](#); [Ps 26:2](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [\[Jer 12:3\]](#); [\[Jer 15:15\]](#); [\[Jer 20:12\]](#); [\[John 2:25\]](#); [\[Acts 1:24\]](#); [\[Acts 15:8\]](#);

21 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of the men of Anathoth, that seek thy life, saying, Prophecy not in the name of the YAHWEH, that you die not by our hand:

22 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, Behold, I will punish them: the young men shall die by the sword; their sons and their daughters shall die by famine:

23 And there shall be no remnant of them: for I will bring evil upon the men of Anathoth, *even* the year of their visitation.

JEREMIAH TWELVE

Jeremiah, complaining of the wicked's prosperity, by faith sees their ruin

1 Righteous are you, O YAHWEH, when I plead with you: yet let me talk with you of *thy* judgments: Wherefore doth the way of the wicked prosper? *wherefore* are all they happy that deal very treacherously? [Job 21:7](#); [Ps 73:11-12](#); [Hab 1:3](#); [\[Job 12:6\]](#); [\[Ps 73:3\]](#);

2 You have planted them, yes, they have taken root: they grow, yes, they bring forth fruit: you are near in their mouth, and far from their reins. [Isa 29:13](#);

3 But you, O YAHWEH, knowest me: you have seen me, and tried mine heart toward you: pull them out like sheep for the slaughter, and prepare them for the day of slaughter. [Ps 17:3](#); [Ps 139:1](#); [Jer 11:20](#); [\[Jer 20:12\]](#); [\[Jer 25:34\]](#); [\[2Pet 2:12\]](#);

4 How long shall the land mourn, and the herbs of every field wither, for the wickedness of them that dwell therein? the beasts are consumed, and the birds; because they said, He shall not see our last end. [Jer 4:25](#); [Jer 7:20](#); [Jer 9:10](#); [\[Jer 14:6\]](#);

Elohim admonishes him of his brethren's treachery against him

5 If you have run with the footmen, and they have wearied you, then how canst you contend with horses? and *if* in the land of peace, *wherein* you trustedst, *they wearied you*, then how will you do in the swelling of Jordan? [\[Jer 49:19\]](#);

6 For even thy brethren, and the house of thy father, even they have dealt treacherously with you; yes, they have called a multitude after you: believe them not, though they speak fair words unto you. [Prov 26:25](#);

and laments his heritage

7 I have forsaken mine house, I have left mine heritage; I have given the dearly beloved of my being into the hand of her enemies.

8 Mine heritage is unto me as a lion in the forest; it cries out against me: therefore have I hated it.

9 Mine heritage *is* unto me *as* a speckled bird, the birds round about *are* against her; come you, assemble all the beasts of the field, come to devour. [Jer 7:33](#); [\[Rev 19:17\]](#);

10 Many pastors have destroyed my vineyard, they have trodden my portion under foot, they have made my pleasant portion a desolate wilderness. [Jer 6:3](#); [\[Matt 21:33\]](#); [\[Mark 12:1\]](#); [\[Luke 20:9\]](#);

11 They have made it desolate, *and being* desolate it mourneth unto me; the whole land is made desolate, because no man layeth *it* to heart. [\[Jer 18:16\]](#);

12 The spoilers are come upon all high places through the wilderness: for the sword of the YAHWEH shall devour from the *one* end of the land even to the *other* end of the land: no flesh shall have peace.

13 They have sown wheat, but shall reap thorns: they have put themselves to pain, *but* shall not profit: and they shall be ashamed of your revenues because of the fierce anger of the YAHWEH. [Lev 26:16](#); [Deut 28:38](#);

He promises to the penitent return from captivity

14 Thus saith the YAHWEH against all mine evil neighbours, that touch the inheritance which I have caused my people Israel to inherit; Behold, I will pluck them out of their land, and pluck out the house of Judah from among them. [Deut 30:3](#); [Jer 32:37](#);

15 And it shall come to pass, after that I have plucked them out I will return, and have compassion on them, and will bring them again, every man to his heritage, and every man to his land.

16 And it shall come to pass, if they will diligently learn the ways of my people, to swear by my name, The YAHWEH liveth; as they taught my people to swear by Baal; then shall they be built in the midst of my people. [\[Isa 19:18\];](#)

17 But if they will not obey, I will utterly pluck up and destroy that nation, saith the YAHWEH. [Isa 60:12;](#)

JEREMIAH THIRTEEN

By the type of a linen girdle, hidden at Euphrates, Elohim prefigures the destruction of his people

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH unto me, Go and get you a linen girdle, and put it upon thy loins, and put it not in water.

2 So I got a girdle according to the word of the YAHWEH, and put *it* on my loins.

3 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me the second time, saying,

4 Take the girdle that you have got, which *is* upon thy loins, and arise, go to Euphrates, and hide it there in a hole of the rock.

5 So I went, and hid it by Euphrates, as the YAHWEH commanded me.

6 And it came to pass after many days, that the YAHWEH said unto me, Arise, go to Euphrates, and take the girdle from thence, which I commanded you to hide there.

7 Then I went to Euphrates, and digged, and took the girdle from the place where I had hid it: and, behold, the girdle was marred, it was profitable for nothing.

8 Then the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

9 Thus saith the YAHWEH, After this manner will I mar the pride of Judah, and the great pride of Jerusalem.

10 This evil people, which refuse to hear my words, which walk in the imagination of their heart, and walk after other gods, to serve them, and to worship them, shall even be as this girdle, which is good for nothing. [\[Prov 1:24\]; \[Jer 16:12\]; \[Jer 17:23\]; \[Jer 22:21\]; \[Jer 25:4\];](#)

11 For as the girdle cleaveth to the loins of a man, so have I caused to cleave unto me the whole house of Israel and the whole house of Judah, saith the YAHWEH; that they might be unto me for a people, and for a name, and for a praise, and for a glory: but they would not hear.

Under the parable of the bottles filled with wine he foretells their drunkenness in misery

12 Therefore you shall speak unto them this word; Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, Every bottle shall be filled with wine: and they shall say unto you, Do we not certainly know that every bottle shall be filled with wine? [\[Jer 25:15\];](#)

13 Then shall you say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will fill all the inhabitants of this land, even the kings that sit upon David's throne, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, with drunkenness.

14 And I will dash them one against another, even the fathers and the sons together, saith the YAHWEH: I will not pity, nor spare, nor have mercy, but destroy them. [\[Jer 25:34\];](#)

He exhorts to prevent their future judgments

15 Hear you, and give ear; be not proud: for the YAHWEH has spoken.

16 Give glory to the YAHWEH your Elohim, before he cause darkness, and before your feet stumble upon the dark mountains, and, while you look for light, he turn it into the shadow of death, *and* make *it* gross darkness. [Isa 59:9](#); [Ps 44:19](#); [\[Jer 23:12\]](#); [\[John 12:35\]](#);

17 But if you will not hear it, my being shall weep in secret places for *your* pride; and mine eye shall weep sore, and run down with tears, because the YAHWEH'S flock is carried away captive. [Lam 1:2](#); [Lam 1:16](#); [\[Jer 14:17\]](#); [\[Jer 30:15\]](#);

18 Say unto the king and to the queen, Humble yourselves, sit down: for your principalities shall come down, *even* the crown of your glory.

19 The cities of the south shall be shut up, and none shall open *them*: Judah shall be carried away captive all of it, it shall be wholly carried away captive.

20 Lift up your eyes, and behold them that come from the north: where *is* the flock *that* was given you, thy beautiful flock?

21 What will you say when he shall punish you? for you have taught them *to be* captains, *and* as chief over you: shall not sorrows take you, as a woman in travail? [Jer 6:24](#);

He shows their abominations are the cause thereof

22 And if you say in thine heart, Wherefore come these things upon me? For the greatness of thine iniquity are thy skirts discovered, *and* thy heels made bare. [Jer 5:19](#); [Jer 16:10](#); [Isa 47:2-3](#);

23 Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots? *then* may you also do good, that are accustomed to do evil.

24 Therefore will I scatter them as the stubble that passeth away by the wind of the wilderness. [\[Jer 18:17\]](#); [\[Jer 25:34\]](#);

25 This *is* thy lot, the portion of thy measures from me, saith the YAHWEH; because you have forgotten me, and trusted in falsehood. [\[Jer 18:15\]](#); [\[Ezek 23:35\]](#);

26 Therefore will I discover thy skirts upon thy face, that thy shame may appear.

27 I have seen thine adulteries, and thy neighings, the lewdness of thy whoredom, *and* thine abominations on the hills in the fields. Woe unto you, O Jerusalem! will you not be made clean? when *shall it* once *be*?

JEREMIAH FOURTEEN

The grievous famine

1 The word of the YAHWEH that came to Jeremiah concerning the dearth.

2 Judah mourneth, and the gates thereof languish; they are black unto the ground; and the cry of Jerusalem is gone up.

3 And their nobles have sent their little ones to the waters: they came to the pits, *and* found no water; they returned with their vessels empty; they were ashamed and confounded, and covered their heads.

4 Because the ground is chapt, for there was no rain in the earth, the plowmen were ashamed, they covered their heads.

5 Yes, the hind also calved in the field, and forsook *it*, because there was no grass.

6 And the wild asses did stand in the high places, they snuffed up the wind like dragons; their eyes did fail, because *there was* no grass. [Jer 12:4](#);

causes Jeremiah to pray

7 O YAHWEH, though our iniquities testify against us, do you *it* for thy name's sake: for our backslidings are many; we have sinned against you.

8 O the hope of Israel, the saviour thereof in time of trouble, why should you be as a stranger in the land, and as a wayfaring man *that* turneth aside to tarry for a night?

9 Why should you be as a man astonished, as a mighty man *that* cannot save? yet you, O YAHWEH, are in the midst of us, and we are called by thy name; leave us not.

The Lord will not be intreated for the people

10 Thus saith the YAHWEH unto this people, Thus have they loved to wander, they have not refrained their feet, therefore the YAHWEH does not accept them; he will now remember their iniquity, and visit their sins. [Hos 8:13](#); [Hos 9:9](#);

11 Then said the YAHWEH unto me, Pray not for this people for *their* good. [Exod 32:10](#); [Jer 7:16](#); [Jer 11:14](#);

12 When they fast, I will not hear their cry; and when they offer burnt offering and an oblation, I will not accept them: but I will consume them by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence. [Prov 1:28](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Jer 11:11](#); [Ezek 8:18](#); [Mic 3:4](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Jer 4:21-22](#); [Jer 9:16](#); [\[Job 27:9\]](#); [\[Prov 1:27\]](#); [\[Zech 7:13\]](#);

Lying prophets are no excuse for them

13 Then said I, Ah, Lord GOD! behold, the prophets say unto them, you shall not see the sword, neither shall you have famine; but I will give you assured peace in this place.

14 Then the YAHWEH said unto me, The prophets prophesy lies in my name: I sent them not, neither have I commanded them, neither spoke unto them: they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination, and a thing of nought, and the deceit of their heart. [Jer 23:21](#); [Jer 27:15](#); [Jer 29:8-9](#); [\[Deut 18:20\]](#); [\[Jer 23:30\]](#); [\[Jer 27:14\]](#); [\[Jer 29:8\]](#); [\[Matt 7:22\]](#); [\[Matt 24:5\]](#); [\[Mark 13:6\]](#); [\[Luke 21:8\]](#);

15 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH concerning the prophets that prophesy in my name, and I sent them not, yet they say, Sword and famine shall not be in this land; By sword and famine shall those prophets be consumed. [\[Deut 13:5\]](#);

16 And the people to whom they prophesy shall be cast out in the streets of Jerusalem because of the famine and the sword; and they shall have none to bury them, them, their wives, nor their sons, nor their daughters: for I will pour their wickedness upon them. [\[Jer 16:4\]](#);

Jeremiah is moved to complain for them

17 Therefore you shall say this word unto them; Let mine eyes run down with tears night and day, and let them not cease: for the virgin daughter of my people is broken with a great breach, with a very grievous blow. [Jer 13:17](#); [Lam 1:16](#); [Lam 2:18](#);

18 If I go forth into the field, then behold the slain with the sword! and if I enter into the city, then behold them that are sick with famine! yes, both the prophet and the priest go about into a land that they know not. [\[Jer 5:31\]](#); [\[Jer 23:11\]](#);

19 **have** you utterly rejected Judah? has thy being lothed Zion? why have you smitten us, and *there is* no healing for us? we looked for peace, and *there is* no good; and for the time of healing, and behold trouble! [Jer 8:15](#);

20 We acknowledge, O YAHWEH, our wickedness, *and* the iniquity of our fathers: for we have sinned against you. [Ps 106:6](#); [Dan 9:8](#);

21 Do not abhor *us*, for thy name's sake, do not disgrace the throne of thy glory: remember, break not thy covenant with us.

22 Are there *any* among the vanities of the Gentiles that can cause rain? or can the heavens give showers? are not you he, O YAHWEH our Elohim? therefore we will wait upon you: for you have made all these *things*. [Ps 135:7](#); [Ps 147:8](#); [Isa 30:23](#); [Jer 5:24](#); [Jer 10:13](#);

The utter rejection and manifold judgments of the Jews

- 1** Then said the YAHWEH unto me, though Moses and Samuel stood before me, yet my mind *could* not *be* toward this people: cast *them* out of my sight, and let them go forth. [Ezek 14:14](#); [Exod 32:14](#); [1Sam 7:9](#);
- 2** And it shall come to pass, if they say unto you, Whither shall we go forth? then you shall tell them, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Such as *are* for death, to death; and such as *are* for the sword, to the sword; and such as *are* for the famine, to the famine; and such as *are* for the captivity, to the captivity. [Zech 11:9](#); [\[Jer 16:4\]](#); [\[Jer 43:11\]](#); [\[Ezek 5:12\]](#);
- 3** And I will appoint over them four kinds, saith the YAHWEH: the sword to slay, and the dogs to tear, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the earth, to devour and destroy. [Lev 26:16](#); [Jer 7:33](#); [\[Jer 16:4\]](#); [\[Jer 19:7\]](#); [\[Jer 22:19\]](#);
- 4** And I will cause them to be removed into all kingdoms of the earth, because of Manasseh the son of Hezekiah king of Judah, for *that* which he did in Jerusalem. [Deut 28:25](#); [\[2Kgs 21:11\]](#); [\[Jer 24:9\]](#); [\[Jer 29:18\]](#); [\[Jer 34:17\]](#);
- 5** For who shall have pity upon you, O Jerusalem? or who shall bemoan you? or who shall go aside to ask how you do? [Isa 51:19](#);
- 6** You have forsaken me, saith the YAHWEH, you are gone backward: therefore will I stretch out my hand against you, and destroy you; I am weary with repenting. [Jer 5:7](#); [\[Jer 19:4\]](#); [\[Jer 22:7\]](#); [\[Zeph 1:6\]](#);
- 7** And I will fan them with a fan in the gates of the land; I will rob *them* of children, I will destroy my people, *since* they return not from their ways. [Jer 4:11](#); [\[Jer 51:2\]](#);
- 8** Their widows are increased to me above the sand of the seas: I have brought upon them against the mother of the young men a spoiler at noonday: I have caused *him* to fall upon it suddenly, and terrors upon the city.
- 9** She that has borne seven languisheth: she has given up the ghost; her sun is gone down while *it was* yet day: she has been ashamed and confounded: and the residue of them will I deliver to the sword before their enemies, saith the YAHWEH. [Amos 8:9](#); [\[Mic 3:6\]](#);

Jeremiah, complaining of their spite, receives a promise for himself

- 10** Woe is me, my mother, that you have borne me a man of strife and a man of contention to the whole earth! I have neither lent on usury, nor men have lent to me on usury; yet every one of them curses me. [Job 3:1](#); [Jer 20:14](#);
- 11** The YAHWEH said, Verily it shall be well with thy remnant; verily I will cause the enemy to entreat you *well* in the time of evil and in the time of affliction.

and a threatening for them

- 12** Shall iron break the northern iron and the steel? [Jer 6:28](#);
- 13** Thy substance and thy treasures will I give to the spoil without price, and *that* for all thy sins, even in all thy borders. [Jer 17:3](#); [\[Jer 20:5\]](#);
- 14** And I will make you to pass with thine enemies into a land *which* you knowest not: for a fire is kindled in mine anger, *which* shall burn upon you. [Deut 32:22](#); [\[Jer 17:4\]](#);

He prays

- 15** O YAHWEH, you knowest: remember me, and visit me, and revenge me of my persecutors; take me not away in thy longsuffering: know that for thy sake I have suffered rebuke. [Jer 11:20](#); [\[Jer 17:18\]](#); [\[Jer 20:12\]](#);
- 16** Thy words were found, and I did eat them; and thy word was unto me the joy and rejoicing of mine heart: for I am called by thy name, O YAHWEH Elohim of hosts. [\[Ezek 3:1\]](#);

17 I sat not in the assembly of the mockers, nor rejoiced; I sat alone because of thy hand: for you have filled me with indignation. [Ps 1:1](#);

18 Why is my pain perpetual, and my wound incurable, *which* refuseth to be healed? will you be altogether unto me as a liar, *and as waters that* fail? [Jer 30:15](#); [Job 6:15](#); [\[Jer 30:12\]](#);

and receives a gracious promise

19 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH, If you return, then will I bring you again, *and* you shall stand before me: and if you take forth the precious from the vile, you shall be as my mouth: let them return unto you; but return not you unto them.

20 And I will make you unto this people a fenced brasen wall: and they shall fight against you, but they shall not prevail against you: for I *am* with you to save you and to deliver you, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 1:18](#); [\[Jer 20:11\]](#);

21 And I will deliver you out of the hand of the wicked, and I will redeem you out of the hand of the terrible.

JEREMIAH SIXTEEN

The prophet, under the types of abstaining from marriage, from houses of mourning and feasting, foreshews the utter ruin of the Jews

1 The word of the YAHWEH came also unto me, saying,

2 You shall not take you a wife, neither shall you have sons or daughters in this place.

3 For thus saith the YAHWEH concerning the sons and concerning the daughters that are born in this place, and concerning their mothers that bore them, and concerning their fathers that begat them in this land;

4 They shall die of grievous deaths; they shall not be lamented; neither shall they be buried; *but* they shall be as dung upon the face of the earth: and they shall be consumed by the sword, and by famine; and their carcases shall be meat for the fowls of heaven, and for the beasts of the earth. [Jer 15:2](#); [Jer 25:33](#); [Jer 14:16](#); [Jer 9:22](#); [Jer 7:33](#); [Jer 15:3](#); [Jer 34:20](#); [\[Jer 19:7\]](#); [\[Jer 22:18\]](#);

5 For thus saith the YAHWEH, Enter not into the house of mourning, neither go to lament nor bemoan them: for I have taken away my peace from this people, saith the YAHWEH, *even* lovingkindness and mercies.

6 Both the great and the small shall die in this land: they shall not be buried, neither shall *men* lament for them, nor cut themselves, nor make themselves bald for them: [Lev 19:28](#); [Deut 14:1](#); [\[Jer 7:29\]](#); [\[Jer 47:5\]](#);

7 Neither shall *men* tear *themselves* for them in mourning, to comfort them for the dead; neither shall *men* give them the cup of consolation to drink for their father or for their mother.

8 You shall not also go into the house of feasting, to sit with them to eat and to drink.

9 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will cause to cease out of this place in your eyes, and in your days, the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride. [Isa 24:7-8](#); [Jer 7:34](#); [Jer 25:10](#); [Ezek 26:13](#); [\[Isa 24:8\]](#); [\[Rev 18:23\]](#);

because they were worse than their fathers

10 And it shall come to pass, when you shall show this people all these words, and they shall say unto you, Wherefore has the YAHWEH pronounced all this great evil against us? or what *is* our iniquity? or what *is* our sin that we have committed against the YAHWEH our Elohim? [Jer 5:19](#); [\[Jer 13:22\]](#);

11 Then shall you say unto them, Because your fathers have forsaken me, saith the YAHWEH, and have walked after other gods, and have served them, and have worshipped them, and have forsaken me, and have not kept my law;

12 And you have done worse than your fathers; for, behold, you walk every one after the imagination of his evil heart, that they may not hearken unto me: [Jer 7:26](#); [Jer 3:17](#); [Jer 9:14](#); [Jer 13:10](#); [Jer 11:10](#); [Jer 17:23](#); [\[Jer 7:24\]](#); [\[Jer 22:21\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#);

13 Therefore will I cast you out of this land into a land that you know not, *neither* you nor your fathers; and there shall you serve other gods day and night; where I will not show you favor. [Deut 4:27](#); [Deut 28:64-65](#); [\[Jer 17:4\]](#);

Their return from captivity shall be stranger than their deliverance out of Egypt

14 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that it shall no more be said, The YAHWEH liveth, that brought up the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt; [Jer 23:7-8](#); [\[Jer 23:7\]](#);

15 But, The YAHWEH liveth, that brought up the children of Israel from the land of the north, and from all the lands whither he had driven them: and I will bring them again into their land that I gave unto their fathers. [\[Jer 24:6\]](#);

Elohim will doubly recompense their idolatry

16 Behold, I will send for many fishers, saith the YAHWEH, and they shall fish them; and after will I send for many hunters, and they shall hunt them from every mountain, and from every hill, and out of the holes of the rocks. [\[Mark 1:17\]](#); [\[Luke 5:10\]](#);

17 For mine eyes *are* upon all their ways: they are not hid from my face, neither is their iniquity hid from mine eyes. [Job 34:21](#); [Prov 5:21](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [\[2Chr 16:9\]](#); [\[Prov 15:3\]](#);

18 And first I will recompense their iniquity and their sin double; because they have defiled my land, they have filled mine inheritance with the carcasses of their detestable and abominable things. [Jer 3:2](#); [Ezek 43:7](#);

19 O YAHWEH, my strength, and my fortress, and my refuge in the day of affliction, the Gentiles shall come unto you from the ends of the earth, and shall say, Surely our fathers have inherited lies, vanity, and *things* wherein *there is* no profit. [\[Jer 17:17\]](#);

20 Shall a man make gods unto himself, and they *are* no gods?

21 Therefore, behold, I will this once cause them to know, I will cause them to know mine hand and my might; and they shall know that my name *is* The YAHWEH. [Jer 33:2](#);

JEREMIAH SEVENTEEN

The captivity of Judah for her sin

1 The sin of Judah *is* written with a pen of iron, *and* with the point of a diamond: *it is* graven upon the table of their heart, and upon the horns of your altars; [Jer 11:13](#); [\[Amos 1:5\]](#);

2 Whilst their children remember their altars and their groves by the green trees upon the high hills. [Jer 2:20](#);

3 O my mountain in the field, I will give thy substance *and* all thy treasures to the spoil, *and* thy high places for sin, throughout all thy borders. [Jer 15:13](#); [\[Jer 20:5\]](#);

4 And you, even thyself, shall discontinue from thine heritage that I gave you; and I will cause you to serve thine enemies in the land which you knowest not: for you have kindled a fire in mine anger, *which* shall burn for ever. [Deut 28:68](#); [Jer 16:13](#); [Jer 15:14](#);

Trust in man is cursed

5 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Cursed *be* the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm, and whose heart departeth from the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 32:8\]](#); [\[Ps 118:8\]](#); [\[Isa 31:1\]](#); [\[2Cor 1:9\]](#);

6 For he shall be like the heath in the desert, and shall not see when good cometh; but shall inhabit the parched places in the wilderness, *in* a salt land and not inhabited. [Job 8:12]; [Jer 48:6];

in Elohim is blessed

7 Blessed *is* the man that trusteth in the YAHWEH, and whose hope the YAHWEH is. Ps 2:12; Ps 34:8; Prov 16:20; Isa 30:18; [Ps 118:8]; [Rom 9:33]; [2Cor 1:9];

8 For he shall be as a tree planted by the waters, and *that* spreadeth out her roots by the river, and shall not see when heat cometh, but her leaf shall be green; and shall not be careful in the year of drought, neither shall cease from yielding fruit. Ps 1:3; [Matt 7:24];

The deceitful heart cannot deceive Elohim

9 The heart *is* deceitful above all *things*, and desperately wicked: who can know it? [Gen 6:5]; [Prov 15:11]; [Matt 15:19]; [Mark 7:21]; [1Cor 2:11];

10 I the YAHWEH search the heart, *I* try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, *and* according to the fruit of his doings. 1Sam 16:7; Ps 7:9; [1Chr 28:9]; [Job 34:11]; [Prov 17:3]; [Jer 32:19]; [John 2:25]; [Acts 1:24]; [Acts 15:8]; [Rom 2:6]; [Rom 14:12]; [1Cor 3:8]; [2Cor 5:10]; [Gal 6:5]; [Rev 2:23]; [Rev 20:12]; [Rev 22:12];

11 *As* the partridge sitteth *on eggs*, and hatcheth *them* not; *so* he that getteth riches, and not by right, shall leave them in the midst of his days, and at his end shall be a fool. [Luke 12:20];

The salvation of Elohim

12 A glorious high throne from the beginning *is* the place of our sanctuary.

13 O YAHWEH, the hope of Israel, all that forsake you shall be ashamed, *and* they that depart from me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken the YAHWEH, the fountain of living waters. Ps 73:27; Isa 1:28; Jer 2:13; [Jer 19:4];

14 Heal me, O YAHWEH, and I shall be healed; save me, and I shall be saved: for you are my praise.

The prophet complains of the mockers of his prophecy

15 Behold, they say unto me, Where *is* the word of the YAHWEH? let it come now. Isa 5:19; 2Pet 3:4;

16 As for me, I have not hastened from *being* a pastor to follow you: neither have I desired the woeful day; you knowest: that which came out of my lips was *right* before you.

17 Be not a terror unto me: you are my hope in the day of evil. Jer 16:19;

18 Let them be confounded that persecute me, but let not me be confounded: let them be dismayed, but let not me be dismayed: bring upon them the day of evil, and destroy them with double destruction. Ps 35:4; Ps 40:14; Jer 15:15; [Jer 20:11];

He is sent to renew the covenant in hallowing the Sabbath

19 Thus said the YAHWEH unto me; Go and stand in the gate of the children of the people, whereby the kings of Judah come in, and by the which they go out, and in all the gates of Jerusalem;

20 And say unto them, Hear you the word of the YAHWEH, you kings of Judah, and all Judah, and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, that enter in by these gates:

21 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Take heed to yourselves, and bear no burden on the Sabbath day, nor bring *it* in by the gates of Jerusalem; Neh 13:19; [John 5:10];

22 Neither carry forth a burden out of your houses on the Sabbath day, neither do you any work, but hallow you the Sabbath day, as I commanded your fathers. Exod 20:8; Exod 23:12; Exod 31:13; Ezek 20:12;

23 But they obeyed not, neither inclined their ear, but made their neck stiff, that they might not hear, nor receive instruction. Jer 11:10; Jer 13:10; Jer 16:12; [Jer 7:26]; [Jer 19:15]; [Jer 22:21]; [Jer 25:4];

24 And it shall come to pass, if you diligently hearken unto me, saith the YAHWEH, to bring in no burden through the gates of this city on the Sabbath day, but hallow the Sabbath day, to do no work therein;

25 Then shall there enter into the gates of this city kings and princes sitting upon the throne of David, riding in chariots and on horses, they, and their princes, the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem: and this city shall remain for ever. [Jer 22:4](#);

26 And they shall come from the cities of Judah, and from the places about Jerusalem, and from the land of Benjamin, and from the plain, and from the mountains, and from the south, bringing burnt offerings, and sacrifices, and meat offerings, and incense, and bringing sacrifices of praise, unto the house of the YAHWEH.

27 But if you will not hearken unto me to hallow the Sabbath day, and not to bear a burden, even entering in at the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day; then will I kindle a fire in the gates thereof, and it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem, and it shall not be quenched. [\[Jer 21:14\]](#);

JEREMIAH EIGHTEEN

Under the type of a potter is shown Elohim's absolute power in disposing of nations

1 The word which came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,

2 Arise, and go down to the potter's house, and there I will cause you to hear my words.

3 Then I went down to the potter's house, and, behold, he wrought a work on the wheels.

4 And the vessel that he made of clay was marred in the hand of the potter: so he made it again another vessel, as seemed good to the potter to make *it*.

5 Then the word of the YAHWEH came to me, saying,

6 O house of Israel, cannot I do with you as this potter? saith the YAHWEH. Behold, as the clay *is* in the potter's hand, so *are* you in mine hand, O house of Israel. [Isa 45:9](#); [Rom 9:20](#); [Isa 64:8](#);

7 *At what* instant I shall speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to pluck up, and to pull down, and to destroy *it*; [Jer 1:10](#);

8 If that nation, against whom I have pronounced, turn from their evil, I will repent of the evil that I thought to do unto them. [\[Jer 26:3\]](#);

9 And *at what* instant I shall speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to build and to plant *it*;

10 If it do evil in my sight, that it obey not my voice, then I will repent of the good, wherewith I said I would benefit them.

Judgments threatened to Judah for her strange revolt

11 Now therefore go to, speak to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I frame evil against you, and devise a device against you: return you now every one from his evil way, and make your ways and your doings good. [2Kgs 17:13](#); [Jer 7:3](#); [Jer 25:5](#); [Jer 26:13](#); [Jer 35:15](#); [\[Zech 1:4\]](#);

12 And they said, There is no hope: but we will walk after our own devices, and we will every one do the imagination of his evil heart. [Jer 2:25](#); [\[Jer 22:21\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#);

13 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Ask you now among the heathen, who has heard such things: the virgin of Israel has done a very horrible thing. [Jer 2:10](#);

14 Will *a man* leave the snow of Lebanon *which cometh* from the rock of the field? *or* shall the cold flowing waters that come from another place be forsaken?

15 Because my people has forgotten me, they have burned incense to vanity, and they have caused them to stumble in their ways *from* the ancient paths, to walk in paths, *in* a way not cast up; [Jer 2:32](#); [Jer 3:21](#); [Jer 13:25](#); [Jer 6:16](#); [\[Ezek 23:35\]](#);

16 To make their land desolate, *and* a perpetual hissing; every one that passeth thereby shall be astonished, and wag his head. [Jer 12:11](#); [Jer 19:8](#); [Jer 49:13](#); [Jer 50:13](#); [[Jer 42:18](#)];

17 I will scatter them as with an east wind before the enemy; I will show them the back, and not the face, in the day of their calamity. [Isa 27:8](#); [Isa 29:6](#); [Jer 4:11-13](#); [Jer 13:24](#); [[Jer 25:34](#)];

Jeremiah prays against his conspirators

18 Then said they, Come, and let us devise devices against Jeremiah; for the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, and let us smite him with the tongue, and let us not give heed to any of his words. [Mal 2:7](#); [Jer 9:8](#);

19 Give heed to me, O YAHWEH, and hearken to the voice of them that contend with me. [[Jer 20:12](#)];

20 Shall evil be recompensed for good? for they have digged a pit for my being. Remember that I stood before you to speak good for them, *and* to turn away thy wrath from them.

21 Therefore deliver up their children to the famine, and pour out their *blood* by the force of the sword; and let their wives be bereaved of their children, and *be* widows; and let their men be put to death; *let* their young men *be* slain by the sword in battle. [Ps 109:10](#);

22 Let a cry be heard from their houses, when you shall bring a troop suddenly upon them: for they have digged a pit to take me, and hid snares for my feet. [[Ps 140:5](#)];

23 Yet, YAHWEH, you knowest all their counsel against me to slay *me*: forgive not their iniquity, neither blot out their sin from thy sight, but let them be overthrown before you; deal *thus* with them in the time of thine anger.

JEREMIAH NINETEEN

Under the type of breaking a potter's vessel, is foreshewn the desolation of the Jews for their sins

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Go and get a potter's earthen bottle, and *take* of the elders of the people, and of the elders of the priests;

2 And go forth unto the valley of the son of Hinnom, which *is* by the entry of the east gate, and proclaim there the words that I shall tell you,

3 And say, Hear you the word of the YAHWEH, O kings of Judah, and inhabitants of Jerusalem; Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, the which whosoever heareth, his ears shall tingle. [1Sam 3:11](#); [2Kgs 21:12](#);

4 Because they have forsaken me, and have estranged this place, and have burned incense in it unto other gods, whom neither they nor their fathers have known, nor the kings of Judah, and have filled this place with the blood of innocents; [Isa 65:11](#); [Jer 2:13](#); [Jer 2:17](#); [Jer 2:19](#); [Jer 5:7](#); [Jer 5:19](#); [Jer 15:6](#); [Jer 17:13](#); [Jer 7:6](#);

5 They have built also the high places of Baal, to burn their sons with fire *for* burnt offerings unto Baal, which I commanded not, nor spoke *it*, neither came *it* into my mind: [[2Chr 28:3](#)]; [[Jer 7:31](#)]; [[Jer 32:35](#)];

6 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that this place shall no more be called Tophet, nor The valley of the son of Hinnom, but The valley of slaughter. [Jer 7:32](#);

7 And I will make void the counsel of Judah and Jerusalem in this place; and I will cause them to fall by the sword before their enemies, and by the hands of them that seek their lives: and their carcasses will I give to be meat for the fowls of the heaven, and for the beasts of the earth. [Jer 15:3](#); [Jer 16:4](#); [[Jer 34:20](#)];

8 And I will make this city desolate, and a hissing; every one that passeth thereby shall be astonished and hiss because of all the plagues thereof. [[Jer 18:16](#)]; [[Jer 25:9](#)]; [[Jer 42:18](#)];

9 And I will cause them to eat the flesh of their sons and the flesh of their daughters, and they shall eat every one the flesh of his friend in the siege and straitness, wherewith their enemies, and they that seek their lives, shall straiten them. [Lev 26:29](#); [Deut 28:53](#); [Lam 4:10](#);

10 Then shall you break the bottle in the sight of the men that go with you,

11 And shall say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Even so will I break this people and this city, as *one* breaketh a potter's vessel, that cannot be made whole again: and they shall bury *them* in Tophet, till *there be* no place to bury. [Jer 7:32](#); [\[Isa 30:14\]](#);

12 Thus will I do unto this place, saith the YAHWEH, and to the inhabitants thereof, and *even* make this city as Tophet:

13 And the houses of Jerusalem, and the houses of the kings of Judah, shall be defiled as the place of Tophet, because of all the houses upon whose roofs they have burned incense unto all the host of heaven, and have poured out drink offerings unto other gods. [Jer 7:18](#); [\[Jer 8:2\]](#);

14 Then came Jeremiah from Tophet, whither the YAHWEH had sent him to prophesy; and he stood in the court of the YAHWEH'S house; and said to all the people,

15 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will bring upon this city and upon all her towns all the evil that I have pronounced against it, because they have hardened their necks, that they might not hear my words. [Jer 7:26](#); [Jer 17:23](#); [\[Jer 22:21\]](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#);

JEREMIAH TWENTY

Pashur, smiting Jeremiah, receives a new name, and a fearful doom

1 Now Pashur the son of Immer the priest, who *was* also chief governor in the house of the YAHWEH, heard that Jeremiah prophesied these things. [\[Jer 29:26\]](#);

2 Then Pashur smote Jeremiah the prophet, and put him in the stocks that *were* in the high gate of Benjamin, which *was* by the house of the YAHWEH. [\[2Chr 18:23\]](#); [\[John 18:22\]](#); [\[Acts 23:2\]](#); [\[Heb 11:36\]](#);

3 And it came to pass on the morrow, that Pashur brought forth Jeremiah out of the stocks. Then said Jeremiah unto him, The YAHWEH has not called thy name Pashur, but Magormissabib.

4 For thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will make you a terror to thyself, and to all thy friends: and they shall fall by the sword of their enemies, and thine eyes shall behold *it*: and I will give all Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall carry them captive into Babylon, and shall slay them with the sword.

5 Moreover I will deliver all the strength of this city, and all the labours thereof, and all the precious things thereof, and all the treasures of the kings of Judah will I give into the hand of their enemies, which shall spoil them, and take them, and carry them to Babylon. [Jer 15:13](#); [Jer 17:3](#); [\[2Kgs 25:13\]](#);

6 And you, Pashur, and all that dwell in thine house shall go into captivity: and you shall come to Babylon, and there you shall die, and shall be buried there, you, and all thy friends, to whom you have prophesied lies.

Jeremiah complains of contempt

7 O YAHWEH, you have deceived me, and I was deceived: you are stronger than I, and have prevailed: I am in derision daily, every one mocketh me.

8 For since I spoke, I cried out, I cried violence and spoil; because the word of the YAHWEH was made a reproach unto me, and a derision, daily. [Isa 57:4](#);

9 Then I said, I will not make mention of him, nor speak any more in his name. But *his word* was in mine heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was weary with forbearing, and I could not *stay*.

of treachery

10 For I heard the defaming of many, fear on every side. Report, *say they*, and we will report it. All my familiars watched for my halting, *saying*, Perhaps he will be enticed, and we shall prevail against him, and we shall take our revenge on him.

11 But the YAHWEH *is* with me as a mighty terrible one: therefore my persecutors shall stumble, and they shall not prevail: they shall be greatly ashamed; for they shall not prosper: *their* everlasting confusion shall never be forgotten. [Jer 1:8](#); [Jer 1:19](#); [Jer 15:20](#); [Jer 17:18](#); [Jer 23:40](#);

12 But, O YAHWEH of hosts, that triest the righteous, *and* seest the reins and the heart, let me see thy vengeance on them: for unto you have I opened my cause. [Jer 11:20](#); [Jer 12:3](#); [Jer 15:15](#); [Jer 18:19](#); [\[1Sam 16:7\]](#); [\[1Chr 28:9\]](#); [\[Ps 7:9\]](#); [\[John 2:25\]](#); [\[Acts 1:24\]](#); [\[Acts 15:8\]](#);

13 Sing unto the YAHWEH, praise you the YAHWEH: for he has delivered the being of the poor from the hand of evildoers.

and of his birth

14 Cursed *be* the day wherein I was born: let not the day wherein my mother bore me be blessed. [Jer 15:10](#); [\[Job 3:1\]](#);

15 Cursed *be* the man who brought tidings to my father, saying, A man child is born unto you; making him very glad. [Job 3:3](#);

16 And let that man be as the cities which the YAHWEH overthrew, and repented not: and let him hear the cry in the morning, and the shouting at noontide; [Gen 19:1-38](#); [\[Gen 19:24\]](#);

17 Because he slew me not from the womb; or that my mother might have been my grave, and her womb *to be* always great *with me*.

18 Wherefore came I forth out of the womb to see labour and sorrow, that my days should be consumed with shame? [Job 3:20](#);

JEREMIAH TWENTY-ONE

Zedekiah sends to Jeremiah to enquire the event of Nebuchadnezzar's war

1 The word which came unto Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, when king Zedekiah sent unto him Pashur the son of Melchiah, and Zephaniah the son of Maaseiah the priest, saying,

2 Enquire, I pray you, of the YAHWEH for us; for Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon maketh war against us; if so be that the YAHWEH will deal with us according to all his wondrous works, that he may go up from us.

Jeremiah foretells a hard seige and miserable captivity

3 Then said Jeremiah unto them, Thus shall you say to Zedekiah:

4 Thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will turn back the weapons of war that *are* in your hands, wherewith you fight against the king of Babylon, and *against* the Chaldeans, which besiege you without the walls, and I will assemble them into the midst of this city.

5 And I myself will fight against you with an outstretched hand and with a strong arm, even in anger, and in fury, and in great wrath.

6 And I will smite the inhabitants of this city, both man and beast: they shall die of a great pestilence.

7 And afterward, saith the YAHWEH, I will deliver Zedekiah king of Judah, and his servants, and the people, and such as are left in this city from the pestilence, from the sword, and from the famine, into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of those that seek their life: and he shall smite them with the edge of the sword; he shall not spare them, neither have pity, nor have mercy.

He counsels the people to fall to the Chaldeans

8 And unto this people you shall say, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I set before you the way of life, and the way of death.

9 He that abideth in this city shall die by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence: but he that goes out, and falleth to the Chaldeans that besiege you, he shall live, and his life shall be unto him for a prey. [Jer 38:2](#); [Jer 45:5](#);

10 For I have set my face against this city for evil, and not for good, saith the YAHWEH: it shall be given into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall burn it with fire. [Jer 32:29](#); [Jer 34:2](#); [Jer 44:11](#);

and upbraids the King's house

11 And touching the house of the king of Judah, *say*, Hear you the word of the YAHWEH;

12 O house of David, thus saith the YAHWEH; Execute judgment in the morning, and deliver *him that is* spoiled out of the hand of the oppressor, lest my fury go out like fire, and burn that none can quench *it*, because of the evil of your doings. [Jer 22:3](#);

13 Behold, I *am* against you, O inhabitant of the valley, *and* rock of the plain, saith the YAHWEH; which say, Who shall come down against us? or who shall enter into our habitations? [Jer 49:4](#);

14 But I will punish you according to the fruit of your doings, saith the YAHWEH: and I will kindle a fire in the forest thereof, and it shall devour all things round about it. [Jer 17:27](#); [Mic 7:13](#);

JEREMIAH TWENTY-TWO

He exhorts to repentance, with promises and threats

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Go down to the house of the king of Judah, and speak there this word,

2 And say, Hear the word of the YAHWEH, O king of Judah, that sitteth upon the throne of David, you, and thy servants, and thy people that enter in by these gates:

3 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Execute you judgment and righteousness, and deliver the spoiled out of the hand of the oppressor: and do no wrong, do no violence to the stranger, the fatherless, nor the widow, neither shed innocent blood in this place. [Jer 21:12](#); [Jer 7:6](#); [Deut 24:17](#);

4 For if you do this thing indeed, then shall there enter in by the gates of this house kings sitting upon the throne of David, riding in chariots and on horses, he, and his servants, and his people. [Jer 17:25](#);

5 But if you will not hear these words, I swear by myself, saith the YAHWEH, that this house shall become a desolation.

6 For thus saith the YAHWEH unto the king's house of Judah; you are Gilead unto me, *and* the head of Lebanon: yet surely I will make you a wilderness, *and* cities *which* are not inhabited.

7 And I will prepare destroyers against you, every one with his weapons: and they shall cut down thy choice cedars, and cast *them* into the fire. [Jer 15:6](#);

8 And many nations shall pass by this city, and they shall say every man to his neighbour, Wherefore has the YAHWEH done thus unto this great city? [Deut 29:24](#); [1Kgs 9:8](#);

9 Then they shall answer, Because they have forsaken the covenant of the YAHWEH their Elohim, and worshipped other gods, and served them.

The judgment of Shallum

10 Weep you not for the dead, neither bemoan him: *but* weep sore for him that goes away: for he shall return no more, nor see his native country.

11 For thus saith the YAHWEH touching Shallum the son of Josiah king of Judah, which reigned instead of Josiah his father, which went forth out of this place; He shall not return thither any more: [Ezek 19:4](#);

12 But he shall die in the place whither they have led him captive, and shall see this land no more.

of Jehoiakim

13 Woe unto him that buildeth his house by unrighteousness, and his chambers by wrong; *that* useth his neighbour's service without wages, and giveth him not for his work; [Lev 19:13](#); [Deut 24:14-15](#); [Hab 2:9](#);

14 That saith, I will build me a wide house and large chambers, and cutteth him out windows; and *it is* cieled with cedar, and painted with vermillion.

15 *shall* you reign, because you closest *thyself* in cedar? did not thy father eat and drink, and do judgment and justice, *and* then *it was* well with him?

16 He judged the cause of the poor and needy; then *it was* well *with him*: *was* not this to know me? saith the YAHWEH.

17 But thine eyes and thine heart *are* not but for thy covetousness, and for to shed innocent blood, and for oppression, and for violence, to do *it*.

18 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH concerning Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah; They shall not lament for him, *saying*, Ah my brother! or, Ah sister! they shall not lament for him, *saying*, Ah lord! or, Ah his glory! [Jer 16:4-6](#);

19 He shall be buried with the burial of an ass, drawn and cast forth beyond the gates of Jerusalem. [Jer 15:3](#); [Jer 36:30](#);

and of Coniah

20 Go up to Lebanon, and cry; and lift up thy voice in Bashan, and cry from the passages: for all thy lovers are destroyed. [\[Jer 30:14\]](#);

21 I spoke unto you in thy prosperity; *but* you saidst, I will not hear. This *has been* thy manner from thy youth, that you obeyedst not my voice. [Jer 5:23](#); [Jer 7:23-28](#); [Jer 11:7-8](#); [Jer 13:10-11](#); [Jer 16:12](#); [Jer 17:23](#); [Jer 18:12](#); [Jer 19:15](#); [\[Jer 25:4\]](#);

22 The wind shall eat up all thy pastors, and thy lovers shall go into captivity: surely then shall you be ashamed and confounded for all thy wickedness.

23 O inhabitant of Lebanon, that makest thy nest in the cedars, how gracious shall you be when pangs come upon you, the pain as of a woman in travail!

24 *As* I live, saith the YAHWEH, though Coniah the son of Jehoiakim king of Judah were the signet upon my right hand, yet would I pluck you thence;

25 And I will give you into the hand of them that seek thy life, and into the hand *of them* whose face you fearest, even into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of the Chaldeans.

26 And I will cast you out, and thy mother that bore you, into another country, where you were not born; and there shall you die.

27 But to the land whereunto they desire to return, thither shall they not return.

28 *Is* this man Coniah a despised broken idol? *is he* a vessel wherein *is* no pleasure? wherefore are they cast out, he and his seed, and are cast into a land which they know not?

29 O earth, earth, earth, hear the word of the YAHWEH.

30 Thus saith the YAHWEH, Write you this man childless, a man *that* shall not prosper in his days: for no man of his seed shall prosper, sitting upon the throne of David, and ruling any more in Judah. [\[Job 18:19\]](#);

JEREMIAH TWENTY-THREE

He prophesies a restoration of the scattered flock

1 Woe be unto the pastors that destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture! saith the YAHWEH. [Ezek 34:2](#); [\[Zech 11:17\]](#); [\[Matt 9:36\]](#); [\[Mark 6:34\]](#);

2 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel against the pastors that feed my people; you have scattered my flock, and driven them away, and have not visited them: behold, I will visit upon you the evil of your doings, saith the YAHWEH.

3 And I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries whither I have driven them, and will bring them again to their folds; and they shall be fruitful and increase. [\[Jer 29:14\]; \[Jer 32:37\];](#)

4 And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the YAHWEH. [Ezek 34:11-12; \[Ps 23:1\]; \[Jer 3:15\];](#)

the Messiah shall rule and save them

5 Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth. [Isa 4:2; Isa 40:11; Jer 33:14-15; Dan 9:24; Luke 1:32-33; \[Jer 33:15\]; \[Zech 3:8\]; \[Luke 1:33\]; \[Luke 24:27\]; \[John 1:45\]; \[Acts 10:43\]; \[Acts 13:32\]; \[Acts 26:6\]; \[Acts 28:23\]; \[Rom 1:2\]; \[1Cor 1:30\];](#)

6 In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this *is* his name whereby he shall be called, THE YAHWEH OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS. [Deut 33:28; \[Isa 9:6\]; \[Luke 1:70\]; \[John 12:34\]; \[Rom 9:5\];](#)

7 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that they shall no more say, The YAHWEH liveth, which brought up the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt; [Jer 16:14-15; \[Jer 16:14\];](#)

8 But, The YAHWEH liveth, which brought up and which led the seed of the house of Israel out of the north country, and from all countries whither I had driven them; and they shall dwell in their own land.

Against false prophets

9 Mine heart within me is broken because of the prophets; all my bones shake; I am like a drunken man, and like a man whom wine has overcome, because of the YAHWEH, and because of the words of his holiness.

10 For the land is full of adulterers; for because of swearing the land mourneth; the pleasant places of the wilderness are dried up, and their course is evil, and their force *is* not right. [Jer 5:7-8; Jer 9:2;](#)

11 For both prophet and priest are profane; yes, in my house have I found their wickedness, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 6:13; Jer 8:10; Jer 14:18; \[Zeph 3:4\];](#)

12 Wherefore their way shall be unto them as slippery *ways* in the darkness: they shall be driven on, and fall therein: for I will bring evil upon them, *even* the year of their visitation, saith the YAHWEH. [Ps 35:6; Ps 73:18; Jer 13:16;](#)

13 And I have seen folly in the prophets of Samaria; they prophesied in Baal, and caused my people Israel to err.

14 I have seen also in the prophets of Jerusalem a horrible thing: they commit adultery, and walk in lies: they strengthen also the hands of evildoers, that none returns from his wickedness: they are all of them unto me as Sodom, and the inhabitants thereof as Gomorrah. [Isa 1:9;](#)

15 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts concerning the prophets; Behold, I will feed them with wormwood, and make them drink the water of gall: for from the prophets of Jerusalem is profaneness gone forth into all the land. [Jer 9:15; Jer 8:14;](#)

16 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, Hearken not unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you: they make you vain: they speak a vision of their own heart, *and* not out of the mouth of the YAHWEH. [\[Matt 7:15\];](#)

17 They say still unto them that despise me, The YAHWEH has said, you shall have peace; and they say unto every one that walketh after the imagination of his own heart, No evil shall come upon you. [Jer 6:14; Jer 8:11; Ezek 13:10; Zech 10:2;](#)

18 For who has stood in the counsel of the YAHWEH, and has perceived and heard his word? who has marked his word, and heard *it*?

19 Behold, a whirlwind of the YAHWEH is gone forth in fury, even a grievous whirlwind: it shall fall grievously upon the head of the wicked. [Jer 30:23-24; \[Jer 30:23\];](#)

20 The anger of the YAHWEH shall not return, until he have executed, and till he have performed the thoughts of his heart: in the latter days you shall consider it perfectly.

21 I have not sent these prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied. [Jer 14:14](#); [\[Jer 27:14\]](#); [\[Mark 13:6\]](#); [\[Luke 21:8\]](#);

22 But if they had stood in my counsel, and had caused my people to hear my words, then they should have turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings. [\[1Pet 4:11\]](#);

23 *Am* I a Elohim at hand, saith the YAHWEH, and not a Elohim afar off?

24 Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the YAHWEH. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the YAHWEH. [Ps 139:7](#); [Amos 9:2-3](#); [\[1Kgs 8:27\]](#); [\[2Chr 2:6\]](#);

25 I have heard what the prophets said, that prophesy lies in my name, saying, I have dreamed, I have dreamed. [\[Jer 5:31\]](#); [\[Matt 24:5\]](#);

26 How long shall *this* be in the heart of the prophets that prophesy lies? yes, *they are* prophets of the deceit of their own heart;

27 Which think to cause my people to forget my name by their dreams which they tell every man to his neighbour, as their fathers have forgotten my name for Baal. [Judg 3:7](#); [Judg 8:33-34](#);

28 The prophet that has a dream, let him tell a dream; and he that has my word, let him speak my word faithfully. What *is* the chaff to the wheat? saith the YAHWEH.

29 *Is* not my word like as a fire? saith the YAHWEH; and like a hammer *that* breaketh the rock in pieces? [\[1Cor 3:13\]](#);

30 Therefore, behold, I *am* against the prophets, saith the YAHWEH, that steal my words every one from his neighbour. [Deut 18:20](#); [Jer 14:14-15](#);

31 Behold, I *am* against the prophets, saith the YAHWEH, that use their tongues, and say, He saith. [\[Jer 29:8\]](#);

32 Behold, I *am* against them that prophesy false dreams, saith the YAHWEH, and do tell them, and cause my people to err by their lies, and by their lightness; yet I sent them not, nor commanded them: therefore they shall not profit this people at all, saith the YAHWEH. [Zeph 3:4](#);

and mockers of the true prophets

33 And when this people, or the prophet, or a priest, shall ask you, saying, What *is* the burden of the YAHWEH? you shall then say unto them, What burden? I will even forsake you, saith the YAHWEH.

34 And *as for* the prophet, and the priest, and the people, that shall say, The burden of the YAHWEH, I will even punish that man and his house.

35 Thus shall you say every one to his neighbour, and every one to his brother, What has the YAHWEH answered? and, What has the YAHWEH spoken?

36 And the burden of the YAHWEH shall you mention no more: for every man's word shall be his burden; for you have perverted the words of the living Elohim, of the YAHWEH of hosts our Elohim.

37 Thus shall you say to the prophet, What has the YAHWEH answered you? and, What has the YAHWEH spoken?

38 But since you say, The burden of the YAHWEH; therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Because you say this word, The burden of the YAHWEH, and I have sent unto you, saying, you shall not say, The burden of the YAHWEH;

39 Therefore, behold, I, even I, will utterly forget you, and I will forsake you, and the city that I gave you and your fathers, *and cast you* out of my presence:

40 And I will bring an everlasting reproach upon you, and a perpetual shame, which shall not be forgotten. [Jer 20:11](#);

Under the type of good and bad figs

1 The YAHWEH showed me, and, behold, two baskets of figs *were* set before the temple of the YAHWEH, after that Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon had carried away captive Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim king of Judah, and the princes of Judah, with the carpenters and smiths, from Jerusalem, and had brought them to Babylon. [2Kgs 24:15](#); [2Chr 36:10](#);

2 One basket *had* very good figs, *even* like the figs *that are* first ripe: and the other basket *had* very naughty figs, which could not be eaten, they were so bad.

3 Then said the YAHWEH unto me, What seest you, Jeremiah? And I said, Figs; the good figs, very good; and the evil, very evil, that cannot be eaten, they are so evil.

he foreshews the restoration of them that were in captivity

4 Again the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

5 Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel; Like these good figs, so will I acknowledge them that are carried away captive of Judah, whom I have sent out of this place into the land of the Chaldeans for *their* good.

6 For I will set mine eyes upon them for good, and I will bring them again to this land: and I will build them, and not pull *them* down; and I will plant them, and not pluck *them* up. [Jer 16:15](#); [\[Jer 32:41\]](#); [\[Jer 33:7\]](#); [\[Jer 42:10\]](#);

7 And I will give them a heart to know me, that I *am* the YAHWEH: and they shall be my people, and I will be their Elohim: for they shall return unto me with their whole heart. [Deut 30:6](#); [Jer 32:39](#); [Ezek 11:19](#); [Ezek 36:26-27](#); [Jer 30:22](#); [Jer 31:33](#); [Jer 32:38](#); [\[Ezek 11:20\]](#);

and the desolation of Zedekiah and the rest

8 And as the evil figs, which cannot be eaten, they are so evil; surely thus saith the YAHWEH, So will I give Zedekiah the king of Judah, and his princes, and the residue of Jerusalem, that remain in this land, and them that dwell in the land of Egypt: [Jer 29:17](#);

9 And I will deliver them to be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth for *their* hurt, *to be* a reproach and a proverb, a taunt and a curse, in all places whither I shall drive them. [Deut 28:25](#); [Deut 28:37](#); [1Kgs 9:7](#); [2Chr 7:20](#); [Jer 15:4](#); [Jer 29:18](#); [Jer 34:17](#); [Jer 42:18](#); [\[Ps 44:13\]](#);

10 And I will send the sword, the famine, and the pestilence, among them, till they be consumed from off the land that I gave unto them and to their fathers. [\[Jer 29:17\]](#);

Jeremiah, reproving the Jews' disobedience to the prophets

1 The word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the people of Judah in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, that *was* the first year of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon;

2 The which Jeremiah the prophet spoke unto all the people of Judah, and to all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, saying,

3 From the thirteenth year of Josiah the son of Amon king of Judah, even unto this day, that *is* the three and twentieth year, the word of the YAHWEH has come unto me, and I have spoken unto you, rising early and speaking; but you have not hearkened. [\[Jer 26:5\]](#); [\[Jer 32:33\]](#); [\[Jer 35:14\]](#);

4 And the YAHWEH has sent unto you all his servants the prophets, rising early and sending *them*; but you have not hearkened, nor inclined your ear to hear. [Jer 7:13](#); [Jer 7:25](#); [Jer 11:7](#); [Jer 11:7-8](#); [Jer 11:10](#); [Jer 13:10-11](#); [Jer 16:12](#); [Jer 17:23](#); [Jer 18:12](#); [Jer 19:15](#); [Jer 22:21](#);

5 They said, Turn you again now every one from his evil way, and from the evil of your doings, and dwell in the land that the YAHWEH has given unto you and to your fathers for ever and ever: [2Kgs 17:13](#); [Jer 18:11](#); [Jer 35:15](#); [Jonah 3:8](#);

6 And go not after other gods to serve them, and to worship them, and provoke me not to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no hurt.

7 Yet you have not hearkened unto me, saith the YAHWEH; that you might provoke me to anger with the works of your hands to your own hurt.

foretells the seventy years' captivity

8 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Because you have not heard my words,

9 Behold, I will send and take all the families of the north, saith the YAHWEH, and Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will bring them against this land, and against the inhabitants thereof, and against all these nations round about, and will utterly destroy them, and make them an astonishment, and a hissing, and perpetual desolations. [Jer 19:8](#); [\[Isa 10:5\]](#); [\[Jer 27:6\]](#); [\[Jer 42:18\]](#); [\[Jer 43:10\]](#);

10 Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the candle. [Isa 24:7](#); [Jer 7:34](#); [Jer 16:9](#); [Ezek 26:13](#); [\[Isa 24:8\]](#); [\[Rev 18:22\]](#); [\[Rev 18:23\]](#);

11 And this whole land shall be a desolation, *and* an astonishment; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years.

and after that, the destruction of Babylon

12 And it shall come to pass, when seventy years are accomplished, *that* I will punish the king of Babylon, and that nation, saith the YAHWEH, for their iniquity, and the land of the Chaldeans, and will make it perpetual desolations. [2Chr 36:22](#); [Ezra 1:1](#); [Jer 29:10](#); [Dan 9:2](#); [\[2Chr 36:21\]](#); [\[Isa 21:9\]](#);

13 And I will bring upon that land all my words which I have pronounced against it, *even* all that is written in this book, which Jeremiah has prophesied against all the nations.

14 For many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of them also: and I will recompense them according to their deeds, and according to the works of their own hands. [Jer 27:7](#);

Under the type of a cup of wine he foreshews the destruction of all nations

15 For thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel unto me; Take the wine cup of this fury at my hand, and cause all the nations, to whom I send you, to drink it. [Jer 13:12](#); [\[Rev 16:19\]](#);

16 And they shall drink, and be moved, and be mad, because of the sword that I will send among them.

17 Then took I the cup at the YAHWEH'S hand, and made all the nations to drink, unto whom the YAHWEH had sent me:

18 *To wit*, Jerusalem, and the cities of Judah, and the kings thereof, and the princes thereof, to make them a desolation, an astonishment, a hissing, and a curse; as *it is* this day; [\[Jer 42:18\]](#);

19 Pharaoh king of Egypt, and his servants, and his princes, and all his people; [Jer 46:1-28](#);

20 And all the mingled people, and all the kings of the land of Uz, and all the kings of the land of the Philistines, and Ashkelon, and Azzah, and Ekron, and the remnant of Ashdod, [Jer 47:4-7](#); [\[Jer 47:5\]](#);

21 Edom, and Moab, and the children of Ammon, [Jer 49:7-22](#); [Jer 48:1-47](#); [Jer 49:1-6](#); [\[Jer 48:1\]](#);

22 And all the kings of Tyrus, and all the kings of Zidon, and the kings of the isles which *are* beyond the sea, [Jer 47:4](#);

23 Dedan, and Tema, and Buz, and all *that are* in the utmost corners, [Jer 49:8](#); [Jer 9:26](#); [\[Jer 49:32\]](#);

24 And all the kings of Arabia, and all the kings of the mingled people that dwell in the desert, [Jer 49:31](#);

25 And all the kings of Zimri, and all the kings of Elam, and all the kings of the Medes, [Jer 49:34](#);

26 And all the kings of the north, far and near, one with another, and all the kingdoms of the world, which *are* upon the face of the earth: and the king of Sheshach shall drink after them. [\[Jer 51:41\]](#);

27 Therefore you shall say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Drink you, and be drunken, and spue, and fall, and rise no more, because of the sword which I will send among you.

28 And it shall be, if they refuse to take the cup at thine hand to drink, then shall you say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; you shall certainly drink.

29 For, lo, I begin to bring evil on the city which is called by my name, and should you be utterly unpunished? you shall not be unpunished: for I will call for a sword upon all the inhabitants of the earth, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [1Pet 4:17](#); [\[Luke 23:31\]](#);

30 Therefore prophesy you against them all these words, and say unto them, The YAHWEH shall roar from on high, and utter his voice from his holy habitation; he shall mightily roar upon his habitation; he shall give a shout, as they that tread *the grapes*, against all the inhabitants of the earth. [Joel 3:16](#); [Amos 1:2](#);

31 A noise shall come *even* to the ends of the earth; for the YAHWEH has a controversy with the nations, he will plead with all flesh; he will give them *that are* wicked to the sword, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Ezek 17:20\]](#);

32 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, Behold, evil shall go forth from nation to nation, and a great whirlwind shall be raised up from the coasts of the earth. [\[Jer 30:23\]](#);

33 And the slain of the YAHWEH shall be at that day from *one* end of the earth even unto the *other* end of the earth: they shall not be lamented, neither gathered, nor buried; they shall be dung upon the ground. [Jer 16:4](#);

The howling of the shepherds

34 Howl, you shepherds, and cry; and wallow yourselves *in the ashes*, you principal of the flock: for the days of your slaughter and of your dispersions are accomplished; and you shall fall like a pleasant vessel. [Jer 4:8](#); [Jer 6:26](#); [Isa 65:12](#); [Jer 12:3](#); [Jer 9:16](#); [Jer 13:14](#); [Jer 13:24](#); [Jer 18:17](#);

35 And the shepherds shall have no way to flee, nor the principal of the flock to escape. [\[Ezek 18:7\]](#);

36 A voice of the cry of the shepherds, and a howling of the principal of the flock, *shall be heard*: for the YAHWEH has spoiled their pasture.

37 And the peaceable habitations are cut down because of the fierce anger of the YAHWEH.

38 He has forsaken his covert, as the lion: for their land is desolate because of the fierceness of the oppressor, and because of his fierce anger.

JEREMIAH TWENTY-SIX

Jeremiah by promises and threatenings exhorts to repentance

1 In the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah came this word from the YAHWEH, saying,

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Stand in the court of the YAHWEH'S house, and speak unto all the cities of Judah, which come to worship in the YAHWEH'S house, all the words that I command you to speak unto them; diminish not a word:

3 If so be they will hearken, and turn every man from his evil way, that I may repent me of the evil, which I purpose to do unto them because of the evil of their doings. [Jer 18:8](#);

4 And you shall say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH; If you will not hearken to me, to walk in my law, which I have set before you,

5 To hearken to the words of my servants the prophets, whom I sent unto you, both rising up early, and sending *them*, but you have not hearkened; [Jer 7:13](#); [Jer 7:25](#); [Jer 11:7](#); [Jer 25:3](#); [\[Jer 32:33\]](#); [\[Jer 35:14\]](#);

6 Then will I make this house like Shiloh, and will make this city a curse to all the nations of the earth. [1Sam 4:12](#); [Ps 78:60](#); [Jer 7:12](#); [Jer 7:14](#); [\[Jer 42:18\]](#);

7 So the priests and the prophets and all the people heard Jeremiah speaking these words in the house of the YAHWEH.

He is therefore apprehended

8 Now it came to pass, when Jeremiah had made an end of speaking all that the YAHWEH had commanded *him* to speak unto all the people, that the priests and the prophets and all the people took him, saying, you shall surely die.

9 Why have you prophesied in the name of the YAHWEH, saying, This house shall be like Shiloh, and this city shall be desolate without an inhabitant? And all the people were gathered against Jeremiah in the house of the YAHWEH.

and arraigned

10 When the princes of Judah heard these things, then they came up from the king's house unto the house of the YAHWEH, and sat down in the entry of the new gate of the YAHWEH'S *house*.

11 Then spoke the priests and the prophets unto the princes and to all the people, saying, This man *is* worthy to die; for he has prophesied against this city, as you have heard with your ears.

His apology

12 Then spoke Jeremiah unto all the princes and to all the people, saying, The YAHWEH sent me to prophesy against this house and against this city all the words that you have heard.

13 Therefore now amend your ways and your doings, and obey the voice of the YAHWEH your Elohim; and the YAHWEH will repent him of the evil that he has pronounced against you. [Jer 7:3](#); [\[Jer 18:11\]](#);

14 As for me, behold, I *am* in your hand: do with me as seemeth good and meet unto you.

15 But know you for certain, that if you put me to death, you shall surely bring innocent blood upon yourselves, and upon this city, and upon the inhabitants thereof: for of a truth the YAHWEH has sent me unto you to speak all these words in your ears.

He is quit in judgment, by the example of Micah

16 Then said the princes and all the people unto the priests and to the prophets; This man *is* not worthy to die: for he has spoken to us in the name of the YAHWEH our Elohim.

17 Then rose up certain of the elders of the land, and spoke to all the assembly of the people, saying,

18 Micah the Morasthite prophesied in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah, and spoke to all the people of Judah, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Zion shall be plowed *like* a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house as the high places of a forest. [Mic 1:1](#); [Mic 3:12](#);

19 Did Hezekiah king of Judah and all Judah put him at all to death? did he not fear the YAHWEH, and besought the YAHWEH, and the YAHWEH repented him of the evil which he had pronounced against them? Thus might we procure great evil against our beings.

and of Urijah

20 And there was also a man that prophesied in the name of the YAHWEH, Urijah the son of Shemaiah of Kirjathjearim, who prophesied against this city and against this land according to all the words of Jeremiah:

21 And when Jehoiakim the king, with all his mighty men, and all the princes, heard his words, the king sought to put him to death: but when Urijah heard it, he was afraid, and fled, and went into Egypt;

22 And Jehoiakim the king sent men into Egypt, *namely*, Elnathan the son of Achbor, and *certain* men with him into Egypt.

23 And they fetched forth Urijah out of Egypt, and brought him unto Jehoiakim the king; who slew him with the sword, and cast his dead body into the graves of the common people.

and by the care of Ahikam

24 Nevertheless the hand of Ahikam the son of Shaphan was with Jeremiah, that they should not give him into the hand of the people to put him to death.

JEREMIAH TWENTY-SEVEN

Under the type of bonds and yokes he prophesies the subduing of the neighbour kings unto Nebuchadnezzar

1 In the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah came this word unto Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH to me; Make you bonds and yokes, and put them upon thy neck, [Jer 28:10](#);

3 And send them to the king of Edom, and to the king of Moab, and to the king of the Ammonites, and to the king of Tyrus, and to the king of Zidon, by the hand of the messengers which come to Jerusalem unto Zedekiah king of Judah; [\[Jer 48:1\]](#);

4 And command them to say unto their masters, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Thus shall you say unto your masters;

5 I have made the earth, the man and the beast that *are* upon the ground, by my great power and by my outstretched arm, and have given it unto whom it seemed meet unto me. [Dan 4:17](#); [Dan 4:25](#);

6 And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field have I given him also to serve him. [Jer 25:9](#); [\[Jer 28:14\]](#); [\[Jer 43:10\]](#);

7 And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son's son, until the very time of his land come: and then many nations and great kings shall serve themselves of him. [\[Jer 25:14\]](#);

He exhorts them to yield, and not to believe the false prophets

8 And it shall come to pass, *that* the nation and kingdom which will not serve the same Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, and that will not put their neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon, that nation will I punish, saith the YAHWEH, with the sword, and with the famine, and with the pestilence, until I have consumed them by his hand.

9 Therefore hearken not you to your prophets, nor to your diviners, nor to your dreamers, nor to your enchanters, nor to your sorcerers, which speak unto you, saying, you shall not serve the king of Babylon:

10 For they prophesy a lie unto you, to remove you far from your land; and that I should drive you out, and you should perish.

11 But the nations that bring their neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon, and serve him, those will I let remain still in their own land, saith the YAHWEH; and they shall till it, and dwell therein.

The like he does to Zedekiah

12 I spoke also to Zedekiah king of Judah according to all these words, saying, Bring your necks under the yoke of the king of Babylon, and serve him and his people, and live.

13 Why will you die, you and thy people, by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence, as the YAHWEH has spoken against the nation that will not serve the king of Babylon?

14 Therefore hearken not unto the words of the prophets that speak unto you, saying, you shall not serve the king of Babylon: for they prophesy a lie unto you. [Jer 14:14](#); [Jer 23:21](#); [Jer 29:8](#);

15 For I have not sent them, saith the YAHWEH, yet they prophesy a lie in my name; that I might drive you out, and that you might perish, you, and the prophets that prophesy unto you. [\[Jer 14:14\]](#); [\[Jer 29:8\]](#); [\[Matt 7:22\]](#);

16 Also I spoke to the priests and to all this people, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Harken not to the words of your prophets that prophesy unto you, saying, Behold, the vessels of the YAHWEH'S house shall now shortly be brought again from Babylon: for they prophesy a lie unto you. [Jer 28:3](#);

17 Harken not unto them; serve the king of Babylon, and live: wherefore should this city be laid waste?

18 But if they *be* prophets, and if the word of the YAHWEH be with them, let them now make intercession to the YAHWEH of hosts, that the vessels which are left in the house of the YAHWEH, and *in* the house of the king of Judah, and at Jerusalem, go not to Babylon.

He foretells the remnant of the vessels shall be carried to Babylon, and there continue until the day of visitation

19 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts concerning the pillars, and concerning the sea, and concerning the bases, and concerning the residue of the vessels that remain in this city, [\[2Kgs 25:13\]](#); [\[Jer 52:17\]](#);

20 Which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon took not, when he carried away captive Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim king of Judah from Jerusalem to Babylon, and all the nobles of Judah and Jerusalem; [2Kgs 24:14-15](#);

21 Yes, thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, concerning the vessels that remain *in* the house of the YAHWEH, and *in* the house of the king of Judah and of Jerusalem;

22 They shall be carried to Babylon, and there shall they be until the day that I visit them, saith the YAHWEH; then will I bring them up, and restore them to this place. [2Kgs 25:13](#); [2Chr 36:18](#); [2Chr 36:22](#); [Jer 29:10](#);

JEREMIAH TWENTY-EIGHT

Hananiah prophesies falsely the return of the vessels, and of Jeconiah

1 And it came to pass the same year, in the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the fourth year, *and* in the fifth month, *that* Hananiah the son of Azur the prophet, which *was* of Gibeon, spoke unto me in the house of the YAHWEH, in the presence of the priests and of all the people, saying,

2 Thus speaketh the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saying, I have broken the yoke of the king of Babylon.

3 Within two full years will I bring again into this place all the vessels of the YAHWEH'S house, that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon took away from this place, and carried them to Babylon: [Jer 27:16](#);

4 And I will bring again to this place Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim king of Judah, with all the captives of Judah, that went into Babylon, saith the YAHWEH: for I will break the yoke of the king of Babylon.

Jeremiah, wishing it to be true, shows that the event will declare the true prophets

5 Then the prophet Jeremiah said unto the prophet Hananiah in the presence of the priests, and in the presence of all the people that stood in the house of the YAHWEH,

6 Even the prophet Jeremiah said, Amen: the YAHWEH do so: the YAHWEH perform thy words which you have prophesied, to bring again the vessels of the YAHWEH'S house, and all that is carried away captive, from Babylon into this place.

7 Nevertheless hear you now this word that I speak in thine ears, and in the ears of all the people;

8 The prophets that have been before me and before you of old prophesied both against many countries, and against great kingdoms, of war, and of evil, and of pestilence.

9 The prophet which prophesieth of peace, when the word of the prophet shall come to pass, *then* shall the prophet be known, that the YAHWEH has truly sent him.

Hananiah breaks Jeremiah's yoke

10 Then Hananiah the prophet took the yoke from off the prophet Jeremiah's neck, and brake it. [[Jer 27:2](#)];

11 And Hananiah spoke in the presence of all the people, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Even so will I break the yoke of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon from the neck of all nations within the space of two full years. And the prophet Jeremiah went his way.

Jeremiah tells of an iron yoke

12 Then the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jeremiah *the prophet*, after that Hananiah the prophet had broken the yoke from off the neck of the prophet Jeremiah, saying,

13 Go and tell Hananiah, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH; you have broken the yokes of wood; but you shall make for them yokes of iron.

14 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; I have put a yoke of iron upon the neck of all these nations, that they may serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon; and they shall serve him: and I have given him the beasts of the field also. [[Jer 27:6](#)];

and foretells Hananiah's death

15 Then said the prophet Jeremiah unto Hananiah the prophet, Hear now, Hananiah; The YAHWEH has not sent you; but you makest this people to trust in a lie. [[Jer 29:31](#)];

16 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will cast you from off the face of the earth: this year you shall die, because you have taught rebellion against the YAHWEH. [[Deut 13:5](#); [Jer 29:32](#)];

17 So Hananiah the prophet died the same year in the seventh month.

Jeremiah sends a letter to the captives in Babylon to be quiet there

1 Now these *are* the words of the letter that Jeremiah the prophet sent from Jerusalem unto the residue of the elders which were carried away captives, and to the priests, and to the prophets, and to all the people whom Nebuchadnezzar had carried away captive from Jerusalem to Babylon;

2 (After that Jeconiah the king, and the queen, and the eunuchs, the princes of Judah and Jerusalem, and the carpenters, and the smiths, were departed from Jerusalem;) [2Kgs 24:12](#);

3 By the hand of Elasah the son of Shaphan, and Gemariah the son of Hilkiah, (whom Zedekiah king of Judah sent unto Babylon to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon) saying,

4 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, unto all that are carried away captives, whom I have caused to be carried away from Jerusalem unto Babylon; [\[Eph 5:6\]](#);

5 Build you houses, and dwell *in them*; and plant gardens, and eat the fruit of them;

6 Take you wives, and beget sons and daughters; and take wives for your sons, and give your daughters to husbands, that they may bear sons and daughters; that you may be increased there, and not diminished.

7 And seek the peace of the city whither I have caused you to be carried away captives, and pray unto the YAHWEH for it: for in the peace thereof shall you have peace. [\[1Tim 2:2\]](#);

and not to believe the dreams of their prophets

8 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Let not your prophets and your diviners, that *be* in the midst of you, deceive you, neither hearken to your dreams which you cause to be dreamed. [Jer 14:14](#); [Jer 23:31](#); [Jer 27:15](#); [\[Jer 27:14\]](#); [\[Matt 24:4\]](#); [\[Mark 13:5\]](#); [\[Luke 21:8\]](#); [\[Col 2:18\]](#); [\[2Thess 2:2\]](#); [\[Heb 13:9\]](#); [\[1John 4:1\]](#);

9 For they prophesy falsely unto you in my name: I have not sent them, saith the YAHWEH.

and that they shall return with grace after seventy years

10 For thus saith the YAHWEH, That after seventy years be accomplished at Babylon I will visit you, and perform my good word toward you, in causing you to return to this place. [\[2Chr 36:21\]](#); [\[2Chr 36:22\]](#); [\[Ezra 1:1\]](#); [\[Jer 25:12\]](#); [\[Jer 27:22\]](#); [\[Jer 33:14\]](#);

11 For I know the thoughts that I think toward you, saith the YAHWEH, thoughts of peace, and not of evil, to give you an expected end.

12 Then shall you call upon me, and you shall go and pray unto me, and I will hearken unto you. [Dan 9:1-27](#); [\[Matt 7:8\]](#); [\[Mark 11:24\]](#); [\[John 14:13\]](#); [\[John 15:7\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#); [\[Jas 1:5\]](#); [\[1John 3:22\]](#); [\[1John 5:14\]](#);

13 And you shall seek me, and find *me*, when you shall search for me with all your heart.

14 And I will be found of you, saith the YAHWEH: and I will turn away your captivity, and I will gather you from all the nations, and from all the places whither I have driven you, saith the YAHWEH; and I will bring you again into the place whence I caused you to be carried away captive. [Jer 23:3](#); [\[Jer 32:37\]](#); [\[Obad 1:8\]](#);

He foretells the destruction of the rest for their disobedience

15 Because you have said, The YAHWEH has raised us up prophets in Babylon;

16 *Know* that thus saith the YAHWEH of the king that sitteth upon the throne of David, and of all the people that dwelleth in this city, *and* of your brethren that are not gone forth with you into captivity;

17 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Behold, I will send upon them the sword, the famine, and the pestilence, and will make them like vile figs, that cannot be eaten, they are so evil. [Jer 24:8](#); [Jer 24:10](#);

18 And I will persecute them with the sword, with the famine, and with the pestilence, and will deliver them to be removed to all the kingdoms of the earth, to be a curse, and an astonishment, and a hissing,

and a reproach, among all the nations whither I have driven them: [Deut 28:25](#); [Deut 28:37](#); [Jer 15:4](#); [Jer 24:9](#); [\[Jer 42:18\]](#);

19 Because they have not hearkened to my words, saith the YAHWEH, which I sent unto them by my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending *them*; but you would not hear, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Jer 32:33\]](#); [\[Jer 35:14\]](#);

He shows the fearful end of Ahab and Zedekiah, two lying prophets

20 Hear you therefore the word of the YAHWEH, all you of the captivity, whom I have sent from Jerusalem to Babylon:

21 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, of Ahab the son of Kolaiah, and of Zedekiah the son of Maaseiah, which prophesy a lie unto you in my name; Behold, I will deliver them into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon; and he shall slay them before your eyes;

22 And of them shall be taken up a curse by all the captivity of Judah which *are* in Babylon, saying, The YAHWEH make you like Zedekiah and like Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in the fire;

23 Because they have committed villany in Israel, and have committed adultery with their neighbours' wives, and have spoken lying words in my name, which I have not commanded them; even I know, and *am* a witness, saith the YAHWEH.

Shemaiah writes a letter against Jeremiah

24 *Thus* shall you also speak to Shemaiah the Nehelamite, saying,

25 Thus speaketh the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saying, Because you have sent letters in thy name unto all the people that *are* at Jerusalem, and to Zephaniah the son of Maaseiah the priest, and to all the priests, saying,

26 The YAHWEH has made you priest in the stead of Jehoiada the priest, that you should be officers in the house of the YAHWEH, for every man *that is* mad, and maketh himself a prophet, that you should put him in prison, and in the stocks. [Jer 20:1-3](#);

27 Now therefore why have you not reprov'd Jeremiah of Anathoth, which maketh himself a prophet to you?

28 For therefore he sent unto us *in* Babylon, saying, This *captivity is* long: build you houses, and dwell *in them*; and plant gardens, and eat the fruit of them.

29 And Zephaniah the priest read this letter in the ears of Jeremiah the prophet.

Jeremiah foretells his doom

30 Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto Jeremiah, saying,

31 Send to all them of the captivity, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH concerning Shemaiah the Nehelamite; Because that Shemaiah has prophesied unto you, and I sent him not, and he caused you to trust in a lie: [Jer 28:15](#);

32 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will punish Shemaiah the Nehelamite, and his seed: he shall not have a man to dwell among this people; neither shall he behold the good that I will do for my people, saith the YAHWEH; because he has taught rebellion against the YAHWEH. [Jer 28:16](#);

JEREMIAH THIRTY

Elohim shows Jeremiah the return of the Jews

1 The word that came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,

2 Thus speaketh the YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, saying, Write you all the words that I have spoken unto you in a book. [\[Jer 36:2\]](#);

3 For, lo, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will bring again the captivity of my people Israel and Judah, saith the YAHWEH: and I will cause them to return to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it.

After their trouble they shall have deliverance

4 And these *are* the words that the YAHWEH spoke concerning Israel and concerning Judah.

5 For thus saith the YAHWEH; We have heard a voice of trembling, of fear, and not of peace.

6 Ask you now, and see whether a man travails with child? wherefore do I see every man with his hands on his loins, as a woman in travail, and all faces are turned into paleness? [Jer 4:31](#); [Jer 6:24](#); [[Jer 49:24](#)];

7 Alas! for that day *is* great, so that none *is* like it: it *is* even the time of Jacob's trouble; but he shall be saved out of it. [Joel 2:11](#); [Zeph 1:15](#); [[Amos 5:18](#)];

8 For it shall come to pass in that day, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, *that* I will break his yoke from off thy neck, and will burst thy bonds, and strangers shall no more serve themselves of him:

9 But they shall serve the YAHWEH their Elohim, and David their king, whom I will raise up unto them. [Ezek 34:23-24](#); [Ezek 37:24](#); [Hos 3:5](#);

He comforts Jacob

10 Therefore fear you not, O my servant Jacob, saith the YAHWEH; neither be dismayed, O Israel: for, lo, I will save you from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make *him* afraid. [Isa 41:13](#); [Isa 43:5](#); [Isa 44:1](#); [Jer 46:28](#); [[Jer 46:27](#)]; [[Luke 1:70](#)];

11 For I *am* with you, saith the YAHWEH, to save you: though I make a full end of all nations whither I have scattered you, yet will I not make a full end of you: but I will correct you in measure, and will not leave you altogether unpunished. [Jer 4:27](#); [Jer 5:10](#); [Jer 5:18](#); [Jer 46:28](#); [Isa 27:8](#); [Jer 10:24](#);

12 For thus saith the YAHWEH, Thy bruise *is* incurable, *and* thy wound *is* grievous. [Jer 10:19](#); [Jer 15:18](#);

13 *There is* none to plead thy cause, that you may be bound up: you have no healing medicines.

14 All thy lovers have forgotten you; they seek you not; for I have wounded you with the wound of an enemy, with the chastisement of a cruel one, for the multitude of thine iniquity; *because* thy sins were increased. [Jer 22:20](#); [[Lam 1:19](#)];

15 Why criest you for thine affliction? thy sorrow *is* incurable for the multitude of thine iniquity: *because* thy sins were increased, I have done these things unto you. [Jer 13:17](#); [Jer 5:6](#); [[Jer 15:18](#)];

16 Therefore all they that devour you shall be devoured; and all thine adversaries, every one of them, shall go into captivity; and they that spoil you shall be a spoil, and all that prey upon you will I give for a prey. [Exod 23:22](#); [Isa 41:11](#); [Jer 10:25](#);

17 For I will restore health unto you, and I will heal you of thy wounds, saith the YAHWEH; because they called you an Outcast, *saying*, This *is* Zion, whom no man seeketh after.

Their return shall be gracious

18 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will bring again the captivity of Jacob's tents, and have mercy on his dwellingplaces; and the city shall be built upon her own heap, and the palace shall remain after the manner thereof.

19 And out of them shall proceed thanksgiving and the voice of them that make merry: and I will multiply them, and they shall not be few; I will also glorify them, and they shall not be small. [Jer 31:4](#);

20 Their children also shall be as before, and their congregation shall be established before me, and I will punish all that oppress them.

21 And their nobles shall be of themselves, and their governor shall proceed from the midst of them; and I will cause him to draw near, and he shall approach unto me: for who *is* this that engaged his heart to approach unto me? saith the YAHWEH.

22 And you shall be my people, and I will be your Elohim. [Jer 24:7](#); [Jer 31:1](#); [Jer 31:33](#); [Jer 32:38](#); [\[Ezek 11:20\]](#);

Wrath shall fall on the wicked

23 Behold, the whirlwind of the YAHWEH goes forth with fury, a continuing whirlwind: it shall fall with pain upon the head of the wicked. [Jer 23:19](#); [Jer 25:32](#);

24 The fierce anger of the YAHWEH shall not return, until he have done *it*, and until he have performed the intents of his heart: in the latter days you shall consider it.

JEREMIAH THIRTY-ONE

The restoration of Israel

1 At the same time, saith the YAHWEH, will I be the Elohim of all the families of Israel, and they shall be my people. [\[Jer 30:22\]](#); [\[Jer 31:33\]](#); [\[Jer 32:38\]](#); [\[Ezek 11:20\]](#); [\[2Cor 6:18\]](#);

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH, The people *which were* left of the sword found grace in the wilderness; *even* Israel, when I went to cause him to rest. [\[Luke 1:54\]](#);

3 The YAHWEH has appeared of old unto me, *saying*, yes, I have loved you with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn you.

4 Again I will build you, and you shall be built, O virgin of Israel: you shall again be adorned with thy tabrets, and shall go forth in the dances of them that make merry. [Jer 30:19](#); [\[Jer 33:7\]](#); [\[Jer 42:10\]](#);

5 You shall yet plant vines upon the mountains of Samaria: the planters shall plant, and shall eat *them* as common things. [Isa 65:21](#); [\[Ezek 28:26\]](#);

6 For there shall be a day, *that* the watchmen upon the mount Ephraim shall cry, Arise you, and let us go up to Zion unto the YAHWEH our Elohim. [Isa 2:2-3](#); [Mic 4:2](#);

7 For thus saith the YAHWEH; Sing with gladness for Jacob, and shout among the chief of the nations: publish you, praise you, and say, O YAHWEH, save thy people, the remnant of Israel.

8 Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather them from the coasts of the earth, *and* with them the blind and the lame, the woman with child and her that travaileth with child together: a great company shall return thither. [Jer 3:18](#);

9 They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim *is* my firstborn. [Exod 4:22](#);

The publication thereof

10 Hear the word of the YAHWEH, O you nations, and declare *it* in the isles afar off, and say, He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him, as a shepherd *does* his flock. [\[Jer 32:37\]](#);

11 For the YAHWEH has redeemed Jacob, and ransomed him from the hand of *him that was* stronger than he. [Isa 40:10](#); [Isa 49:24-25](#);

12 Therefore they shall come and sing in the height of Zion, and shall flow together to the goodness of the YAHWEH, for wheat, and for wine, and for oil, and for the young of the flock and of the herd: and their being shall be as a watered garden; and they shall not sorrow any more at all. [Isa 61:11](#);

13 Then shall the virgin rejoice in the dance, both young men and old together: for I will turn their mourning into joy, and will comfort them, and make them rejoice from their sorrow.

14 And I will satiate the being of the priests with fatness, and my people shall be satisfied with my goodness, saith the YAHWEH.

Rahel mourning is comforted

15 Thus saith the YAHWEH; A voice was heard in Ramah, lamentation, *and* bitter weeping; Rahel weeping for her children refused to be comforted for her children, because they *were* not. [Matt 2:17-18](#); [\[Matt 2:18\]](#);

16 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Refrain thy voice from weeping, and thine eyes from tears: for thy work shall be rewarded, saith the YAHWEH; and they shall come again from the land of the enemy.

17 And there is hope in thine end, saith the YAHWEH, that thy children shall come again to their own border.

Ephraim repenting is brought home again

18 I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself *thus*; you have chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed *to the yoke*: turn you me, and I shall be turned; for you are the YAHWEH my Elohim. [Lam 5:21](#);

19 Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I smote upon *my* thigh: I was ashamed, yes, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth. [Deut 30:2](#);

20 *Is* Ephraim my dear son? *is he* a pleasant child? for since I spoke against him, I do earnestly remember him still: therefore my bowels are troubled for him; I will surely have mercy upon him, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Gen 48:20\]](#); [\[Jer 33:26\]](#); [\[Luke 1:54\]](#);

21 Set you up waymarks, make you high heaps: set thine heart toward the highway, *even* the way *which* you wentest: turn again, O virgin of Israel, turn again to these thy cities.

the Messiah is promised

22 How long will you go about, O you backsliding daughter? for the YAHWEH has created a new thing in the earth, A woman shall compass a man.

23 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; As yet they shall use this speech in the land of Judah and in the cities thereof, when I shall bring again their captivity; The YAHWEH bless you, O habitation of justice, *and* mountain of holiness. [Jer 50:7](#);

24 And there shall dwell in Judah itself, and in all the cities thereof together, husbandmen, and they *that* go forth with flocks.

25 For I have satiated the weary being, and I have replenished every sorrowful being.

26 Upon this I awaked, and beheld; and my sleep was sweet unto me.

His care over the church

27 Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of man, and with the seed of beast.

28 And it shall come to pass, *that* like as I have watched over them, to pluck up, and to break down, and to throw down, and to destroy, and to afflict; so will I watch over them, to build, and to plant, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Jer 44:27\]](#);

29 In those days they shall say no more, The fathers have eaten a sour grape, and the children's teeth are set on edge. [Ezek 18:2](#);

30 But every one shall die for his own iniquity: every man that eateth the sour grape, his teeth shall be set on edge. [\[Deut 24:16\]](#); [\[2Chr 25:4\]](#);

His new covenant

31 Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: [Heb 8:8](#); [\[Rom 11:26\]](#); [\[Heb 10:16\]](#);

32 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day *that* I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was a husband unto them, saith the YAHWEH:

33 But this *shall be* the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the YAHWEH, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their Elohim, and they shall be my people. [Jer 31:1](#); [Jer 24:7](#); [Jer 30:22](#); [[Jer 32:38](#)]; [[Hos 2:20](#)]; [[Luke 1:73](#)]; [[John 6:45](#)]; [[2Cor 3:3](#)]; [[Heb 8:10](#)];

34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the YAHWEH: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the YAHWEH: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more. [Isa 54:13](#); [John 6:45](#); [Jer 33:8](#); [Mic 7:18](#); [Acts 10:43](#); [[1John 2:27](#)];

The stability

35 Thus saith the YAHWEH, which giveth the sun for a light by day, *and* the ordinances of the moon and of the stars for a light by night, which divideth the sea when the waves thereof roar; The YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name: [Gen 1:16](#); [Isa 51:15](#); [[Gen 1:15](#)]; [[Job 38:33](#)]; [[Ps 148:6](#)];

36 If those ordinances depart from before me, saith the YAHWEH, *then* the seed of Israel also shall cease from being a nation before me for ever.

37 Thus saith the YAHWEH; If heaven above can be measured, and the foundations of the earth searched out beneath, I will also cast off all the seed of Israel for all that they have done, saith the YAHWEH. [[Rom 11:1](#)];

and amplitude of the church

38 Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that the city shall be built to the YAHWEH from the tower of Hananeel unto the gate of the corner.

39 And the measuring line shall yet go forth over against it upon the hill Gareb, and shall compass about to Goath.

40 And the whole valley of the dead bodies, and of the ashes, and all the fields unto the brook of Kidron, unto the corner of the horse gate toward the east, *shall be* holy unto the YAHWEH; it shall not be plucked up, nor thrown down any more for ever.

JEREMIAH THIRTY-TWO

Jeremiah, being imprisoned by Zedekiah for his prophecy

1 The word that came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH in the tenth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, which *was* the eighteenth year of Nebuchadrezzar.

2 For then the king of Babylon's army besieged Jerusalem: and Jeremiah the prophet was shut up in the court of the prison, which *was* in the king of Judah's house. [[2Kgs 25:1](#)]; [[Jer 37:21](#)];

3 For Zedekiah king of Judah had shut him up, saying, Wherefore dost you prophesy, and say, Thus saith the YAHWEH, Behold, I will give this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall take it;

4 And Zedekiah king of Judah shall not escape out of the hand of the Chaldeans, but shall surely be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon, and shall speak with him mouth to mouth, and his eyes shall behold his eyes; [Jer 34:3](#);

5 And he shall lead Zedekiah to Babylon, and there shall he be until I visit him, saith the YAHWEH: though you fight with the Chaldeans, you shall not prosper.

buys Hanameel's field

6 And Jeremiah said, The word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

7 Behold, Hanameel the son of Shallum thine uncle shall come unto you, saying, Buy you my field that *is* in Anathoth: for the right of redemption *is* thine to buy *it*.

8 So Hanameel mine uncle's son came to me in the court of the prison according to the word of the YAHWEH, and said unto me, Buy my field, I pray you, that *is* in Anathoth, which *is* in the country of Benjamin: for the right of inheritance *is* thine, and the redemption *is* thine; buy *it* for thyself. Then I knew that this *was* the word of the YAHWEH.

9 And I bought the field of Hanameel my uncle's son, that *was* in Anathoth, and weighed him the money, *even* seventeen shekels of silver.

10 And I subscribed the evidence, and sealed *it*; and took witnesses, and weighed *him* the money in the balances.

11 So I took the evidence of the purchase, *both* that which was sealed *according* to the law and custom, and that which was open:

12 And I gave the evidence of the purchase unto Baruch the son of Neriah, the son of Maaseiah, in the sight of Hanameel mine uncle's *son*, and in the presence of the witnesses that subscribed the book of the purchase, before all the Jews that sat in the court of the prison.

Baruch must preserve the evidences, as tokens of the people's return

13 And I charged Baruch before them, saying,

14 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Take these evidences, this evidence of the purchase, both which is sealed, and this evidence which is open; and put them in an earthen vessel, that they may continue many days.

15 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Houses and fields and vineyards shall be possessed again in this land.

Jeremiah in his prayer complains to Elohim

16 Now when I had delivered the evidence of the purchase unto Baruch the son of Neriah, I prayed unto the YAHWEH, saying,

17 Ah Lord GOD! behold, you have made the heaven and the earth by thy great power and stretched out arm, *and* there is nothing too hard for you: [\[Matt 19:26\]](#); [\[Mark 10:27\]](#); [\[Luke 1:37\]](#); [\[Luke 18:27\]](#);

18 You showest lovingkindness unto thousands, and recompensest the iniquity of the fathers into the bosom of their children after them: the Great, the Mighty Elohim, the YAHWEH of hosts, *is* his name, [Exod 34:7](#); [\[Deut 5:9\]](#); [\[Ps 103:8\]](#);

19 Great in counsel, and mighty in work: for thine eyes *are* open upon all the ways of the sons of men: to give every one according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings: [Isa 28:29](#); [Job 34:21](#); [Prov 5:21](#); [Jer 16:17](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [\[2Chr 16:9\]](#); [\[Job 14:16\]](#); [\[Job 31:4\]](#); [\[Job 34:11\]](#); [\[Ps 62:12\]](#); [\[Prov 15:3\]](#); [\[Prov 24:12\]](#); [\[Rom 2:6\]](#); [\[Rom 14:12\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:8\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:10\]](#); [\[Gal 6:5\]](#); [\[Rev 2:23\]](#); [\[Rev 20:12\]](#); [\[Rev 22:12\]](#);

20 Which have set signs and wonders in the land of Egypt, *even* unto this day, and in Israel, and among *other* men; and have made you a name, as at this day;

21 And have brought forth thy people Israel out of the land of Egypt with signs, and with wonders, and with a strong hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with great terror; [Exod 6:7](#); [2Sam 7:23](#); [1Chr 17:21](#);

22 And have given them this land, which you didst swear to their fathers to give them, a land flowing with milk and honey;

23 And they came in, and possessed it; but they obeyed not thy voice, neither walked in thy law; they have done nothing of all that you commandedst them to do: therefore you have caused all this evil to come upon them:

24 Behold the mounts, they are come unto the city to take it; and the city is given into the hand of the Chaldeans, that fight against it, because of the sword, and of the famine, and of the pestilence: and what you have spoken is come to pass; and, behold, you seest *it*.

25 And you have said unto me, O Lord GOD, Buy you the field for money, and take witnesses; for the city is given into the hand of the Chaldeans.

Elohim confirms the captivity for their sins

26 Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto Jeremiah, saying,

27 Behold, I *am* the YAHWEH, the Elohim of all flesh: is there any thing too hard for me? [Num 16:22](#);

28 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will give this city into the hand of the Chaldeans, and into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and he shall take it:

29 And the Chaldeans, that fight against this city, shall come and set fire on this city, and burn it with the houses, upon whose roofs they have offered incense unto Baal, and poured out drink offerings unto other gods, to provoke me to anger. [Jer 21:10](#); [Jer 34:2](#);

30 For the children of Israel and the children of Judah have only done evil before me from their youth: for the children of Israel have only provoked me to anger with the work of their hands, saith the YAHWEH.

31 For this city has been to me *as* a provocation of mine anger and of my fury from the day that they built it even unto this day; that I should remove it from before my face,

32 Because of all the evil of the children of Israel and of the children of Judah, which they have done to provoke me to anger, they, their kings, their princes, their priests, and their prophets, and the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

33 And they have turned unto me the back, and not the face: though I taught them, rising up early and teaching *them*, yet they have not hearkened to receive instruction. [Jer 2:27](#); [Jer 7:24](#); [Jer 7:13](#); [Jer 7:25](#); [Jer 25:3](#); [Jer 26:5](#); [Jer 29:19](#); [Jer 35:14](#);

34 But they set their abominations in the house, which is called by my name, to defile it. [\[2Kgs 21:4\]](#); [\[2Chr 33:4\]](#);

35 And they built the high places of Baal, which *are* in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to cause their sons and their daughters to pass through *the fire* unto Molech; which I commanded them not, neither came it into my mind, that they should do this abomination, to cause Judah to sin. [Jer 19:5](#);

and promises a gracious return

36 And now therefore thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, concerning this city, whereof you say, It shall be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence;

37 Behold, I will gather them out of all countries, whither I have driven them in mine anger, and in my fury, and in great wrath; and I will bring them again unto this place, and I will cause them to dwell safely: [Jer 23:3](#); [Jer 29:14](#); [Jer 31:10](#); [\[Deut 30:3\]](#); [Jer 12:14](#);

38 And they shall be my people, and I will be their Elohim: [Jer 24:7](#); [Jer 30:22](#); [Jer 31:1](#); [Jer 31:33](#); [\[Ezek 11:20\]](#);

39 And I will give them one heart, and one way, that they may fear me for ever, for the good of them, and of their children after them: [\[Deut 30:6\]](#); [Jer 24:7](#); [\[Ezek 11:19\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:31\]](#); [\[Ezek 36:26\]](#);

40 And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me. [\[1Cor 1:9\]](#);

41 Yes, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with my whole heart and with my whole being. [Jer 24:6](#); [Amos 9:15](#);

42 For thus saith the YAHWEH; Like as I have brought all this great evil upon this people, so will I bring upon them all the good that I have promised them.

43 And fields shall be bought in this land, whereof you say, *It is* desolate without man or beast; it is given into the hand of the Chaldeans.

44 Men shall buy fields for money, and subscribe evidences, and seal *them*, and take witnesses in the land of Benjamin, and in the places about Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, and in the cities of the mountains, and in the cities of the valley, and in the cities of the south: for I will cause their captivity to return, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Jer 33:7\]](#);

Elohim promises to the captivity a gracious return

- 1** Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jeremiah the second time, while he was yet shut up in the court of the prison, saying,
- 2** Thus saith the YAHWEH the maker thereof, the YAHWEH that formed it, to establish it; the YAHWEH *is* his name; [\[Jer 16:21\]](#);
- 3** Call unto me, and I will answer you, and show you great and mighty things, which you knowest not.
- 4** For thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, concerning the houses of this city, and concerning the houses of the kings of Judah, which are thrown down by the mounts, and by the sword;
- 5** They come to fight with the Chaldeans, but *it is* to fill them with the dead bodies of men, whom I have slain in mine anger and in my fury, and for all whose wickedness I have hid my face from this city.
- 6** Behold, I will bring it health and cure, and I will cure them, and will reveal unto them the abundance of peace and truth.
- 7** And I will cause the captivity of Judah and the captivity of Israel to return, and will build them, as at the first. [Jer 32:44](#); [Jer 24:6](#); [Jer 31:4](#); [\[Jer 42:10\]](#);
- 8** And I will cleanse them from all their iniquity, whereby they have sinned against me; and I will pardon all their iniquities, whereby they have sinned, and whereby they have transgressed against me. [Jer 31:34](#);

a joyful state

- 9** And it shall be to me a name of joy, a praise and a honour before all the nations of the earth, which shall hear all the good that I do unto them: and they shall fear and tremble for all the goodness and for all the prosperity that I procure unto it.
- 10** Thus saith the YAHWEH; Again there shall be heard in this place, which you say *shall be* desolate without man and without beast, *even* in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem, that are desolate, without man, and without inhabitant, and without beast,
- 11** The voice of joy, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the voice of them that shall say, Praise the YAHWEH of hosts: for the YAHWEH *is* good; for his mercy *endureth* for ever: *and* of them that shall bring the sacrifice of praise into the house of the YAHWEH. For I will cause to return the captivity of the land, as at the first, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 7:34](#); [\[Ps 25:6\]](#);

a settled government

- 12** Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Again in this place, which is desolate without man and without beast, and in all the cities thereof, shall be a habitation of shepherds causing *their* flocks to lie down.
- 13** In the cities of the mountains, in the cities of the vale, and in the cities of the south, and in the land of Benjamin, and in the places about Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, shall the flocks pass again under the hands of him that telleth *them*, saith the YAHWEH.
- 14** Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will perform that good thing which I have promised unto the house of Israel and to the house of Judah. [Jer 29:10](#); [\[Jer 23:5\]](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#);

the Messiah the branch of righteousness

- 15** In those days, and at that time, will I cause the Branch of righteousness to grow up unto David; and he shall execute judgment and righteousness in the land. [Jer 23:5](#); [\[Zech 3:8\]](#);
- 16** In those days shall Judah be saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell safely: and this *is the name* wherewith she shall be called, The YAHWEH our righteousness. [\[Deut 33:28\]](#); [\[Isa 32:18\]](#);

a continuance of kingdom and priesthood

- 17** For thus saith the YAHWEH; David shall never want a man to sit upon the throne of the house of Israel;

18 Neither shall the priests the Levites want a man before me to offer burnt offerings, and to kindle meat offerings, and to do sacrifice continually.

and a stability of a blessed seed

19 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jeremiah, saying,

20 Thus saith the YAHWEH; If you can break my covenant of the day, and my covenant of the night, and that there should not be day and night in their season; [\[Gen 8:22\];](#)

21 *Then* may also my covenant be broken with David my servant, that he should not have a son to reign upon his throne; and with the Levites the priests, my ministers.

22 As the host of heaven cannot be numbered, neither the sand of the sea measured: so will I multiply the seed of David my servant, and the Levites that minister unto me. [\[Gen 13:16\];](#)

23 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came to Jeremiah, saying,

24 Considerest you not what this people have spoken, saying, The two families which the YAHWEH has chosen, he has even cast them off? thus they have despised my people, that they should be no more a nation before them.

25 Thus saith the YAHWEH; If my covenant *be* not with day and night, *and if* I have not appointed the ordinances of heaven and earth; [\[Gen 8:22\]; \[Ps 148:6\];](#)

26 Then will I cast away the seed of Jacob, and David my servant, *so* that I will not take *any* of his seed *to be* rulers over the seed of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob: for I will cause their captivity to return, and have mercy on them. [Jer 31:20;](#)

JEREMIAH THIRTY-FOUR

Jeremiah prophesies the captivity of Zedekiah and the city

1 The word which came unto Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and all his army, and all the kingdoms of the earth of his dominion, and all the people, fought against Jerusalem, and against all the cities thereof, saying, [2Kgs 25:1; Jer 52:1-34;](#)

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel; Go and speak to Zedekiah king of Judah, and tell him, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will give this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall burn it with fire: [Jer 21:10; Jer 32:29;](#)

3 And you shall not escape out of his hand, but shall surely be taken, and delivered into his hand; and thine eyes shall behold the eyes of the king of Babylon, and he shall speak with you mouth to mouth, and you shall go to Babylon. [Jer 32:4;](#)

4 Yet hear the word of the YAHWEH, O Zedekiah king of Judah; Thus saith the YAHWEH of you, you shall not die by the sword:

5 *But* you shall die in peace: and with the burnings of thy fathers, the former kings which were before you, so shall they burn *odours* for you; and they will lament you, *saying*, Ah lord! for I have pronounced the word, saith the YAHWEH.

6 Then Jeremiah the prophet spoke all these words unto Zedekiah king of Judah in Jerusalem,

7 When the king of Babylon's army fought against Jerusalem, and against all the cities of Judah that were left, against Lachish, and against Azekah: for these defenced cities remained of the cities of Judah.

The princes and the people having dismissed their bond-servants, contrary to the covenant of Elohim, re-assume them

8 *This is* the word that came unto Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, after that the king Zedekiah had made a covenant with all the people which *were* at Jerusalem, to proclaim liberty unto them; [Exod 21:2;](#)

9 That every man should let his manservant, and every man his maidservant, *being* an Hebrew or an Hebrewess, go free; that none should serve himself of them, *to wit*, of a Jew his brother.

10 Now when all the princes, and all the people, which had entered into the covenant, heard that every one should let his manservant, and every one his maidservant, go free, that none should serve themselves of them any more, then they obeyed, and let *them* go.

11 But afterward they turned, and caused the servants and the handmaids, whom they had let go free, to return, and brought them into subjection for servants and for handmaids.

Jeremiah, for their disobedience, gives them and Zedekiah into the hands of their enemies

12 Therefore the word of the YAHWEH came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,

13 Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel; I made a covenant with your fathers in the day that I brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondmen, saying,

14 At the end of seven years let you go every man his brother an Hebrew, which has been sold unto you; and when he has served you six years, you shall let him go free from you: but your fathers hearkened not unto me, neither inclined their ear. [Exod 21:2](#); [Deut 15:12](#); [[Lev 25:39](#)]; [[Deut 15:1](#)];

15 And you were now turned, and had done right in my sight, in proclaiming liberty every man to his neighbour; and you had made a covenant before me in the house which is called by my name:

16 But you turned and polluted my name, and caused every man his servant, and every man his handmaid, whom you had set at liberty at their pleasure, to return, and brought them into subjection, to be unto you for servants and for handmaids.

17 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; you have not hearkened unto me, in proclaiming liberty, every one to his brother, and every man to his neighbour: behold, I proclaim a liberty for you, saith the YAHWEH, to the sword, to the pestilence, and to the famine; and I will make you to be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth. [Deut 28:25](#); [Jer 15:4](#); [Jer 24:9](#);

18 And I will give the men that have transgressed my covenant, which have not performed the words of the covenant which they had made before me, when they cut the calf in twain, and passed between the parts thereof, [[Ezek 17:13](#)];

19 The princes of Judah, and the princes of Jerusalem, the eunuchs, and the priests, and all the people of the land, which passed between the parts of the calf;

20 I will even give them into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of them that seek their life: and their dead bodies shall be for meat unto the fowls of the heaven, and to the beasts of the earth. [Jer 7:33](#); [Jer 16:4](#); [Jer 19:7](#);

21 And Zedekiah king of Judah and his princes will I give into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of them that seek their life, and into the hand of the king of Babylon's army, which are gone up from you. [Jer 37:11](#); [[Jer 37:5](#)];

22 Behold, I will command, saith the YAHWEH, and cause them to return to this city; and they shall fight against it, and take it, and burn it with fire: and I will make the cities of Judah a desolation without an inhabitant.

By the obedience of the Rechabites

- 1** The word which came unto Jeremiah from the YAHWEH in the days of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, saying,
- 2** Go unto the house of the Rechabites, and speak unto them, and bring them into the house of the YAHWEH, into one of the chambers, and give them wine to drink.
- 3** Then I took Jaazaniah the son of Jeremiah, the son of Habaziniyah, and his brethren, and all his sons, and the whole house of the Rechabites;
- 4** And I brought them into the house of the YAHWEH, into the chamber of the sons of Hanan, the son of Igdaliah, a man of Elohim, which *was* by the chamber of the princes, which *was* above the chamber of Maaseiah the son of Shallum, the keeper of the door:
- 5** And I set before the sons of the house of the Rechabites pots full of wine, and cups, and I said unto them, Drink you wine.
- 6** But they said, We will drink no wine: for Jonadab the son of Rechab our father commanded us, saying, you shall drink no wine, *neither you*, nor your sons for ever:
- 7** Neither shall you build house, nor sow seed, nor plant vineyard, nor have *any*: but all your days you shall dwell in tents; that you may live many days in the land where you *be* strangers.
- 8** Thus have we obeyed the voice of Jonadab the son of Rechab our father in all that he has charged us, to drink no wine all our days, we, our wives, our sons, nor our daughters;
- 9** Nor to build houses for us to dwell in: neither have we vineyard, nor field, nor seed:
- 10** But we have dwelt in tents, and have obeyed, and done according to all that Jonadab our father commanded us.
- 11** But it came to pass, when Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon came up into the land, that we said, Come, and let us go to Jerusalem for fear of the army of the Chaldeans, and for fear of the army of the Syrians: so we dwell at Jerusalem.

Jeremiah condemns the disobedience of the Jews

- 12** Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto Jeremiah, saying,
- 13** Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Go and tell the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, Will you not receive instruction to hearken to my words? saith the YAHWEH.
- 14** The words of Jonadab the son of Rechab, that he commanded his sons not to drink wine, are performed; for unto this day they drink none, but obey their father's commandment: notwithstanding I have spoken unto you, rising early and speaking; but you hearkened not unto me. [Jer 11:7](#); [Jer 25:3](#); [Jer 26:5](#); [Jer 29:19](#); [Jer 32:33](#);
- 15** I have sent also unto you all my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending *them*, saying, Return you now every man from his evil way, and amend your doings, and go not after other gods to serve them, and you shall dwell in the land which I have given to you and to your fathers: but you have not inclined your ear, nor hearkened unto me. [Jer 18:11](#); [Jer 25:5](#); [\[2Kgs 17:13\]](#);
- 16** Because the sons of Jonadab the son of Rechab have performed the commandment of their father, which he commanded them; but this people has not hearkened unto me:
- 17** Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will bring upon Judah and upon all the inhabitants of Jerusalem all the evil that I have pronounced against them: because I have spoken unto them, but they have not heard; and I have called unto them, but they have not answered.

Elohim blesses the Rechabites for their obedience

18 And Jeremiah said unto the house of the Rechabites, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Because you have obeyed the commandment of Jonadab your father, and kept all his precepts, and done according unto all that he has commanded you:

19 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Jonadab the son of Rechab shall not want a man to stand before me for ever.

JEREMIAH THIRTY-SIX

Jeremiah causes Baruch to write his prophesy

1 And it came to pass in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, *that* this word came unto Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, saying,

2 Take you a roll of a book, and write therein all the words that I have spoken unto you against Israel, and against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I spoke unto you, from the days of Josiah, even unto this day. [Isa 8:1](#); [Jer 30:2](#);

3 It may be that the house of Judah will hear all the evil which I purpose to do unto them; that they may return every man from his evil way; that I may forgive their iniquity and their sin.

4 Then Jeremiah called Baruch the son of Neriah: and Baruch wrote from the mouth of Jeremiah all the words of the YAHWEH, which he had spoken unto him, upon a roll of a book.

and publicly to read it

5 And Jeremiah commanded Baruch, saying, I *am* shut up; I cannot go into the house of the YAHWEH:

6 Therefore go you, and read in the roll, which you have written from my mouth, the words of the YAHWEH in the ears of the people in the YAHWEH'S house upon the fasting day: and also you shall read them in the ears of all Judah that come out of their cities.

7 It may be they will present their supplication before the YAHWEH, and will return every one from his evil way: for great *is* the anger and the fury that the YAHWEH has pronounced against this people.

8 And Baruch the son of Neriah did according to all that Jeremiah the prophet commanded him, reading in the book the words of the YAHWEH in the YAHWEH'S house.

9 And it came to pass in the fifth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, in the ninth month, *that* they proclaimed a fast before the YAHWEH to all the people in Jerusalem, and to all the people that came from the cities of Judah unto Jerusalem.

10 Then read Baruch in the book the words of Jeremiah in the house of the YAHWEH, in the chamber of Gemariah the son of Shaphan the scribe, in the higher court, at the entry of the new gate of the YAHWEH'S house, in the ears of all the people.

The princes, having intelligence thereof by Michaiah, send Jehudi to fetch the roll and read it

11 When Michaiah the son of Gemariah, the son of Shaphan, had heard out of the book all the words of the YAHWEH,

12 Then he went down into the king's house, into the scribe's chamber: and, lo, all the princes sat there, *even* Elishama the scribe, and Delaiah the son of Shemaiah, and Elnathan the son of Achbor, and Gemariah the son of Shaphan, and Zedekiah the son of Hananiah, and all the princes.

13 Then Michaiah declared unto them all the words that he had heard, when Baruch read the book in the ears of the people.

14 Therefore all the princes sent Jehudi the son of Nethaniah, the son of Shelemiah, the son of Cushi, unto Baruch, saying, Take in thine hand the roll wherein you have read in the ears of the people, and come. So Baruch the son of Neriah took the roll in his hand, and came unto them.

15 And they said unto him, Sit down now, and read it in our ears. So Baruch read *it* in their ears.

16 Now it came to pass, when they had heard all the words, they were afraid both one and other, and said unto Baruch, We will surely tell the king of all these words.

17 And they asked Baruch, saying, Tell us now, How didst you write all these words at his mouth?

18 Then Baruch answered them, He pronounced all these words unto me with his mouth, and I wrote *them* with ink in the book.

They will Baruch to hide himself and Jeremiah

19 Then said the princes unto Baruch, Go, hide you, you and Jeremiah; and let no man know where you be.

The king, Jehoiakim, being certified thereof, hears part of it, and burns the roll

20 And they went in to the king into the court, but they laid up the roll in the chamber of Elishama the scribe, and told all the words in the ears of the king.

21 So the king sent Jehudi to fetch the roll: and he took it out of Elishama the scribe's chamber. And Jehudi read it in the ears of the king, and in the ears of all the princes which stood beside the king.

22 Now the king sat in the winterhouse in the ninth month: and *there was a fire* on the hearth burning before him.

23 And it came to pass, *that* when Jehudi had read three or four leaves, he cut it with the penknife, and cast *it* into the fire that *was* on the hearth, until all the roll was consumed in the fire that *was* on the hearth.

24 *yet* they were not afraid, nor rent their garments, *neither* the king, nor any of his servants that heard all these words.

25 Nevertheless Elnathan and Delaiah and Gemariah had made intercession to the king that he would not burn the roll: but he would not hear them.

26 But the king commanded Jerahmeel the son of Hammelech, and Seraiah the son of Azriel, and Shelemiah the son of Abdeel, to take Baruch the scribe and Jeremiah the prophet: but the YAHWEH hid them.

Jeremiah denounces his judgment

27 Then the word of the YAHWEH came to Jeremiah, after that the king had burned the roll, and the words which Baruch wrote at the mouth of Jeremiah, saying,

28 Take you again another roll, and write in it all the former words that were in the first roll, which Jehoiakim the king of Judah has burned.

29 And you shall say to Jehoiakim king of Judah, Thus saith the YAHWEH; you have burned this roll, saying, Why have you written therein, saying, The king of Babylon shall certainly come and destroy this land, and shall cause to cease from thence man and beast?

30 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of Jehoiakim king of Judah; He shall have none to sit upon the throne of David: and his dead body shall be cast out in the day to the heat, and in the night to the frost. [Jer 22:19;](#)

31 And I will punish him and his seed and his servants for their iniquity; and I will bring upon them, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and upon the men of Judah, all the evil that I have pronounced against them; but they hearkened not.

Baruch writes a new copy

32 Then took Jeremiah another roll, and gave it to Baruch the scribe, the son of Neriah; who wrote therein from the mouth of Jeremiah all the words of the book which Jehoiakim king of Judah had burned in the fire: and there were added besides unto them many like words.

The Egyptians having raised the seige of the Chaldeans, king Zedekiah sends to Jeremiah to pray for the people

- 1** And king Zedekiah the son of Josiah reigned instead of Coniah the son of Jehoiakim, whom Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon made king in the land of Judah. [2Kgs 24:17]; [2Chr 36:10];
- 2** But neither he, nor his servants, nor the people of the land, did hearken unto the words of the YAHWEH, which he spoke by the prophet Jeremiah.
- 3** And Zedekiah the king sent Jehucal the son of Shelemiah and Zephaniah the son of Maaseiah the priest to the prophet Jeremiah, saying, Pray now unto the YAHWEH our Elohim for us.
- 4** Now Jeremiah came in and went out among the people: for they had not put him into prison.
- 5** Then Pharaoh's army was come forth out of Egypt: and when the Chaldeans that besieged Jerusalem heard tidings of them, they departed from Jerusalem. Jer 34:21; [Ezek 17:15];

Jeremiah prophesies the Chaldeans' certain return and victory

- 6** Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto the prophet Jeremiah, saying,
- 7** Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel; Thus shall you say to the king of Judah, that sent you unto me to enquire of me; Behold, Pharaoh's army, which is come forth to help you, shall return to Egypt into their own land. [Ezek 17:17];
- 8** And the Chaldeans shall come again, and fight against this city, and take it, and burn it with fire.
- 9** Thus saith the YAHWEH; Deceive not yourselves, saying, The Chaldeans shall surely depart from us: for they shall not depart.
- 10** For though you had smitten the whole army of the Chaldeans that fight against you, and there remained *but* wounded men among them, yet should they rise up every man in his tent, and burn this city with fire.

He is taken for a fugitive, beaten, and put in prison

- 11** And it came to pass, that when the army of the Chaldeans was broken up from Jerusalem for fear of Pharaoh's army, [Jer 34:21];
- 12** Then Jeremiah went forth out of Jerusalem to go into the land of Benjamin, to separate himself thence in the midst of the people.
- 13** And when he was in the gate of Benjamin, a captain of the ward *was* there, whose name *was* Irijah, the son of Shelemiah, the son of Hananiah; and he took Jeremiah the prophet, saying, you fallest away to the Chaldeans.
- 14** Then said Jeremiah, *It is* false; I fall not away to the Chaldeans. But he hearkened not to him: so Irijah took Jeremiah, and brought him to the princes.
- 15** Wherefore the princes were wroth with Jeremiah, and smote him, and put him in prison in the house of Jonathan the scribe: for they had made that the prison.

He assures Zedekiah of the captivity

- 16** When Jeremiah was entered into the dungeon, and into the cabins, and Jeremiah had remained there many days;
- 17** Then Zedekiah the king sent, and took him out: and the king asked him secretly in his house, and said, Is there *any* word from the YAHWEH? And Jeremiah said, There is: for, said he, you shall be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon.

Intreating for his liberty, he obtains some favor

18 Moreover Jeremiah said unto king Zedekiah, What have I offended against you, or against thy servants, or against this people, that you have put me in prison?

19 Where *are* now your prophets which prophesied unto you, saying, The king of Babylon shall not come against you, nor against this land?

20 Therefore hear now, I pray you, O my lord the king: let my supplication, I pray you, be accepted before you; that you cause me not to return to the house of Jonathan the scribe, lest I die there.

21 Then Zedekiah the king commanded that they should commit Jeremiah into the court of the prison, and that they should give him daily a piece of bread out of the bakers' street, until all the bread in the city were spent. Thus Jeremiah remained in the court of the prison. [Jer 32:2;](#)

JEREMIAH THIRTY-EIGHT

Jeremiah, by a false suggestion, is put into the dungeon of Malchiah

1 Then Shephatiah the son of Mattan, and Gedaliah the son of Pashur, and Jucal the son of Shelemiah, and Pashur the son of Malchiah, heard the words that Jeremiah had spoken unto all the people, saying,

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH, He that remaineth in this city shall die by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence: but he that goes forth to the Chaldeans shall live; for he shall have his life for a prey, and shall live. [Jer 21:9;](#) [[Jer 45:5](#)];

3 Thus saith the YAHWEH, This city shall surely be given into the hand of the king of Babylon's army, which shall take it.

4 Therefore the princes said unto the king, We beseech you, let this man be put to death: for thus he weakeneth the hands of the men of war that remain in this city, and the hands of all the people, in speaking such words unto them: for this man seeketh not the welfare of this people, but the hurt.

5 Then Zedekiah the king said, Behold, he *is* in your hand: for the king *is* not *he that* can do *any* thing against you.

6 Then took they Jeremiah, and cast him into the dungeon of Malchiah the son of Hammelech, that *was* in the court of the prison: and they let down Jeremiah with cords. And in the dungeon *there was* no water, but mire: so Jeremiah sunk in the mire.

Edeb-melech, by suit, gets him some enlargement

7 Now when Ebedmelech the Ethiopian, one of the eunuchs which was in the king's house, heard that they had put Jeremiah in the dungeon; the king then sitting in the gate of Benjamin;

8 Ebedmelech went forth out of the king's house, and spoke to the king, saying,

9 My lord the king, these men have done evil in all that they have done to Jeremiah the prophet, whom they have cast into the dungeon; and he is like to die for hunger in the place where he is: for *there is* no more bread in the city.

10 Then the king commanded Ebedmelech the Ethiopian, saying, Take from hence thirty men with you, and take up Jeremiah the prophet out of the dungeon, before he die.

11 So Ebedmelech took the men with him, and went into the house of the king under the treasury, and took thence old cast clouts and old rotten rags, and let them down by cords into the dungeon to Jeremiah.

12 And Ebedmelech the Ethiopian said unto Jeremiah, Put now *these* old cast clouts and rotten rags under thine armpits under the cords. And Jeremiah did so.

13 So they drew up Jeremiah with cords, and took him up out of the dungeon: and Jeremiah remained in the court of the prison.

Upon secret conference, he counsels the king by yielding to save his life

14 Then Zedekiah the king sent, and took Jeremiah the prophet unto him into the third entry that *is* in the house of the YAHWEH: and the king said unto Jeremiah, I will ask you a thing; hide nothing from me.

15 Then Jeremiah said unto Zedekiah, If I declare *it* unto you, will you not surely put me to death? and if I give you counsel, will you not hearken unto me?

16 So Zedekiah the king swore secretly unto Jeremiah, saying, *As* the YAHWEH liveth, that made us this being, I will not put you to death, neither will I give you into the hand of these men that seek thy life. [Isa 57:16](#);

17 Then said Jeremiah unto Zedekiah, Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; If you will assuredly go forth unto the king of Babylon's princes, then thy being shall live, and this city shall not be burned with fire; and you shall live, and thine house:

18 But if you will not go forth to the king of Babylon's princes, then shall this city be given into the hand of the Chaldeans, and they shall burn it with fire, and you shall not escape out of their hand.

19 And Zedekiah the king said unto Jeremiah, I am afraid of the Jews that are fallen to the Chaldeans, lest they deliver me into their hand, and they mock me.

20 But Jeremiah said, They shall not deliver you. Obey, I beseech you, the voice of the YAHWEH, which I speak unto you: so it shall be well unto you, and thy being shall live.

21 But if you refuse to go forth, this *is* the word that the YAHWEH has showed me:

22 And, behold, all the women that are left in the king of Judah's house *shall be* brought forth to the king of Babylon's princes, and those *women* shall say, Thy friends have set you on, and have prevailed against you: thy feet are sunk in the mire, *and* they are turned away back.

23 So they shall bring out all thy wives and thy children to the Chaldeans: and you shall not escape out of their hand, but shall be taken by the hand of the king of Babylon: and you shall cause this city to be burned with fire.

By the king's instructions he conceals the conference from the princes

24 Then said Zedekiah unto Jeremiah, Let no man know of these words, and you shall not die.

25 But if the princes hear that I have talked with you, and they come unto you, and say unto you, Declare unto us now what you have said unto the king, hide it not from us, and we will not put you to death; also what the king said unto you:

26 Then you shall say unto them, I presented my supplication before the king, that he would not cause me to return to Jonathan's house, to die there.

27 Then came all the princes unto Jeremiah, and asked him: and he told them according to all these words that the king had commanded. So they left off speaking with him; for the matter was not perceived.

28 So Jeremiah abode in the court of the prison until the day that Jerusalem was taken: and he was *there* when Jerusalem was taken.

Jerusalem is taken

1 In the ninth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the tenth month, came Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon and all his army against Jerusalem, and they besieged it. [2Kgs 25:1](#); [Jer 52:4](#);

2 *And* in the eleventh year of Zedekiah, in the fourth month, the ninth *day* of the month, the city was broken up.

3 And all the princes of the king of Babylon came in, and sat in the middle gate, *even* Nergalsharezer, Samgarnebo, Sarsechim, Rabsaris, Nergalsharezer, Rabmag, with all the residue of the princes of the king of Babylon.

Zedekiah is made blind and sent to Babylon

4 And it came to pass, *that* when Zedekiah the king of Judah saw them, and all the men of war, then they fled, and went forth out of the city by night, by the way of the king's garden, by the gate between the two walls: and he went out the way of the plain.

5 But the Chaldeans' army pursued after them, and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho: and when they had taken him, they brought him up to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon to Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he gave judgment upon him.

6 Then the king of Babylon slew the sons of Zedekiah in Riblah before his eyes: also the king of Babylon slew all the nobles of Judah.

7 Moreover he put out Zedekiah's eyes, and bound him with chains, to carry him to Babylon.

The city laid in ruins

8 And the Chaldeans burned the king's house, and the houses of the people, with fire, and brake down the walls of Jerusalem.

and the people captivated

9 Then Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard carried away captive into Babylon the remnant of the people that remained in the city, and those that fell away, that fell to him, with the rest of the people that remained.

10 But Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard left of the poor of the people, which had nothing, in the land of Judah, and gave them vineyards and fields at the same time.

Nebuchadrezzar's charge for the good usage of Jeremiah

11 Now Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon gave charge concerning Jeremiah to Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard, saying,

12 Take him, and look well to him, and do him no harm; but do unto him even as he shall say unto you.

13 So Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard sent, and Nebushasban, Rabsaris, and Nergalsharezer, Rabmag, and all the king of Babylon's princes;

14 Even they sent, and took Jeremiah out of the court of the prison, and committed him unto Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan, that he should carry him home: so he dwelt among the people.

Elohim's promise to Ebed-melech

15 Now the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jeremiah, while he was shut up in the court of the prison, saying,

16 Go and speak to Ebedmelech the Ethiopian, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will bring my words upon this city for evil, and not for good; and they shall be *accomplished* in that day before you.

17 But I will deliver you in that day, saith the YAHWEH: and you shall not be given into the hand of the men of whom you are afraid.

18 For I will surely deliver you, and you shall not fall by the sword, but thy life shall be for a prey unto you: because you have put thy trust in me, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Jer 45:5\]](#);

JEREMIAH FORTY

Jeremiah, being set free by Nebuzar-adan, goes to Gedaliah

1 The word that came to Jeremiah from the YAHWEH, after that Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard had let him go from Ramah, when he had taken him being bound in chains among all that were carried away captive of Jerusalem and Judah, which were carried away captive unto Babylon.

2 And the captain of the guard took Jeremiah, and said unto him, The YAHWEH thy Elohim has pronounced this evil upon this place.

3 Now the YAHWEH has brought *it*, and done according as he has said: because you have sinned against the YAHWEH, and have not obeyed his voice, therefore this thing is come upon you.

4 And now, behold, I loose you this day from the chains which *were* upon thine hand. If it seem good unto you to come with me into Babylon, come; and I will look well unto you: but if it seem ill unto you to come with me into Babylon, forbear: behold, all the land *is* before you: whither it seemeth good and convenient for you to go, thither go.

5 Now while he was not yet gone back, *he said*, Go back also to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan, whom the king of Babylon has made governor over the cities of Judah, and dwell with him among the people: or go wheresoever it seemeth convenient unto you to go. So the captain of the guard gave him victuals and a reward, and let him go. [\[2Kgs 25:22\]](#);

6 Then went Jeremiah unto Gedaliah the son of Ahikam to Mizpah; and dwelt with him among the people that were left in the land.

The dispersed Jews repair unto him

7 Now when all the captains of the forces which *were* in the fields, *even* they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah the son of Ahikam governor in the land, and had committed unto him men, and women, and children, and of the poor of the land, of them that were not carried away captive to Babylon; [\[2Kgs 25:23\]](#);

8 Then they came to Gedaliah to Mizpah, even Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and Johanan and Jonathan the sons of Kareah, and Seraiah the son of Tanhumeth, and the sons of Ephai the Netophasite, and Jezaniah the son of a Maachasite, they and their men.

9 And Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan swore unto them and to their men, saying, Fear not to serve the Chaldeans: dwell in the land, and serve the king of Babylon, and it shall be well with you. [\[2Kgs 25:22\]](#);

10 As for me, behold, I will dwell at Mizpah to serve the Chaldeans, which will come unto us: but you, gather you wine, and summer fruits, and oil, and put *them* in your vessels, and dwell in your cities that you have taken.

11 Likewise when all the Jews that *were* in Moab, and among the Ammonites, and in Edom, and that *were* in all the countries, heard that the king of Babylon had left a remnant of Judah, and that he had set over them Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan;

12 Even all the Jews returned out of all places whither they were driven, and came to the land of Judah, to Gedaliah, unto Mizpah, and gathered wine and summer fruits very much.

Johanan revealing Ishmael's conspiracy is not believed

13 Moreover Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces that *were* in the fields, came to Gedaliah to Mizpah,

14 And said unto him, Dost you certainly know that Baalis the king of the Ammonites has sent Ishmael the son of Nethaniah to slay you? But Gedaliah the son of Ahikam believed them not.

15 Then Johanan the son of Kareah spoke to Gedaliah in Mizpah secretly, saying, Let me go, I pray you, and I will slay Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and no man shall know *it*: wherefore should he slay you, that all the Jews which are gathered unto you should be scattered, and the remnant in Judah perish?

16 But Gedaliah the son of Ahikam said unto Johanan the son of Kareah, you shall not do this thing: for you speakest falsely of Ishmael.

JEREMIAH FORTY-ONE

Ishmael, treacherously killing Gedaliah and others, purposes with the residue to flee unto the Ammonites

1 Now it came to pass in the seventh month, *that* Ishmael the son of Nethaniah the son of Elishama, of the seed royal, and the princes of the king, even ten men with him, came unto Gedaliah the son of Ahikam to Mizpah; and there they did eat bread together in Mizpah. [2Kgs 25:25](#);

2 Then arose Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and the ten men that were with him, and smote Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan with the sword, and slew him, whom the king of Babylon had made governor over the land. [\[2Kgs 25:25\]](#);

3 Ishmael also slew all the Jews that were with him, *even* with Gedaliah, at Mizpah, and the Chaldeans that were found there, *and* the men of war.

4 And it came to pass the second day after he had slain Gedaliah, and no man knew *it*;

5 That there came certain from Shechem, from Shiloh, and from Samaria, *even* fourscore men, having their beards shaven, and their clothes rent, and having cut themselves, with offerings and incense in their hand, to bring *them* to the house of the YAHWEH.

6 And Ishmael the son of Nethaniah went forth from Mizpah to meet them, weeping all along as he went: and it came to pass, as he met them, he said unto them, Come to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam.

7 And it was *so*, when they came into the midst of the city, that Ishmael the son of Nethaniah slew them, *and cast them* into the midst of the pit, he, and the men that *were* with him.

8 But ten men were found among them that said unto Ishmael, Slay us not: for we have treasures in the field, of wheat, and of barley, and of oil, and of honey. So he forbore, and slew them not among their brethren.

9 Now the pit wherein Ishmael had cast all the dead bodies of the men, whom he had slain because of Gedaliah, *was* it which Asa the king had made for fear of Baasha king of Israel: *and* Ishmael the son of Nethaniah filled it with *them that were* slain.

10 Then Ishmael carried away captive all the residue of the people that *were* in Mizpah, *even* the king's daughters, and all the people that remained in Mizpah, whom Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard had committed to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam: and Ishmael the son of Nethaniah carried them away captive, and departed to go over to the Ammonites.

Johanan recovers the captives, and is minded to flee into Egypt

11 But when Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces that *were* with him, heard of all the evil that Ishmael the son of Nethaniah had done,

12 Then they took all the men, and went to fight with Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and found him by the great waters that *are* in Gibeon.

13 Now it came to pass, *that* when all the people which *were* with Ishmael saw Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces that *were* with him, then they were glad.

14 So all the people that Ishmael had carried away captive from Mizpah cast about and returned, and went unto Johanan the son of Kareah.

15 But Ishmael the son of Nethaniah escaped from Johanan with eight men, and went to the Ammonites.

16 Then took Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces that *were* with him, all the remnant of the people whom he had recovered from Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, from Mizpah, after *that* he had slain Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, *even* mighty men of war, and the women, and the children, and the eunuchs, whom he had brought again from Gibeon:

17 And they departed, and dwelt in the habitation of Chimham, which is by Bethlehem, to go to enter into Egypt,

18 Because of the Chaldeans: for they were afraid of them, because Ishmael the son of Nethaniah had slain Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, whom the king of Babylon made governor in the land.

JEREMIAH FORTY-TWO

Johanan desires Jeremiah to enquire of Elohim, promising obedience to his will

1 Then all the captains of the forces, and Johanan the son of Kareah, and Jezaniah the son of Hoshaiah, and all the people from the least even unto the greatest, came near,

2 And said unto Jeremiah the prophet, Let, we beseech you, our supplication be accepted before you, and pray for us unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim, *even* for all this remnant; (for we are left *but* a few of many, as thine eyes do behold us:)

3 That the YAHWEH thy Elohim may show us the way wherein we may walk, and the thing that we may do.

4 Then Jeremiah the prophet said unto them, I have heard *you*; behold, I will pray unto the YAHWEH your Elohim according to your words; and it shall come to pass, *that* whatsoever thing the YAHWEH shall answer you, I will declare *it* unto you; I will keep nothing back from you.

5 Then they said to Jeremiah, The YAHWEH be a true and faithful witness between us, if we do not even according to all things for the which the YAHWEH thy Elohim shall send you to us.

6 Whether *it be* good, or whether *it be* evil, we will obey the voice of the YAHWEH our Elohim, to whom we send you; that it may be well with us, when we obey the voice of the YAHWEH our Elohim. [Jer 7:23;](#)

Jeremiah assures him of safety in Judea

7 And it came to pass after ten days, that the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jeremiah.

8 Then called he Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces which *were* with him, and all the people from the least even to the greatest,

9 And said unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, unto whom you sent me to present your supplication before him;

10 If you will still abide in this land, then will I build you, and not pull *you* down, and I will plant you, and not pluck *you* up: for I repent me of the evil that I have done unto you. [Jer 24:6;](#) [Jer 31:4;](#) [Jer 33:7;](#)

11 Be not afraid of the king of Babylon, of whom you are afraid; be not afraid of him, saith the YAHWEH: for I *am* with you to save you, and to deliver you from his hand.

12 And I will show mercies unto you, that he may have mercy upon you, and cause you to return to your own land.

and destruction in Egypt

13 But if you say, We will not dwell in this land, neither obey the voice of the YAHWEH your Elohim,

14 Saying, No; but we will go into the land of Egypt, where we shall see no war, nor hear the sound of the trumpet, nor have hunger of bread; and there will we dwell:

15 And now therefore hear the word of the YAHWEH, you remnant of Judah; Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; If you wholly set your faces to enter into Egypt, and go to sojourn there; [[Jer 44:12](#)];

16 Then it shall come to pass, *that* the sword, which you feared, shall overtake you there in the land of Egypt, and the famine, whereof you were afraid, shall follow close after you there in Egypt; and there you shall die.

17 So shall it be with all the men that set their faces to go into Egypt to sojourn there; they shall die by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence: and none of them shall remain or escape from the evil that I will bring upon them.

18 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; As mine anger and my fury has been poured forth upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem; so shall my fury be poured forth upon you, when you shall enter into Egypt: and you shall be an execration, and an astonishment, and a curse, and a reproach; and you shall see this place no more. [[Jer 7:20](#); [Isa 65:15](#); [Jer 18:16](#); [Jer 19:8](#); [Jer 25:9](#); [Jer 29:18](#); [Jer 24:9](#); [Jer 25:18](#); [Jer 26:6](#); [[Jer 44:6](#)];

He reproves their hypocrisy, in enquiring of the Lord that which they mean not to follow

19 The YAHWEH has said concerning you, O you remnant of Judah; Go you not into Egypt: know certainly that I have admonished you this day.

20 For you dissembled in your hearts, when you sent me unto the YAHWEH your Elohim, saying, Pray for us unto the YAHWEH our Elohim; and according unto all that the YAHWEH our Elohim shall say, so declare unto us, and we will do *it*.

21 And *now* I have this day declared *it* to you; but you have not obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH your Elohim, nor any *thing* for the which he has sent me unto you.

22 Now therefore know certainly that you shall die by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence, in the place whither you desire to go *and* to sojourn. [[Jer 44:12](#)];

JEREMIAH FORTY-THREE

Johanan, discrediting Jeremiah's prophecy, carries him and the rest into Egypt

1 And it came to pass, *that* when Jeremiah had made an end of speaking unto all the people all the words of the YAHWEH their Elohim, for which the YAHWEH their Elohim had sent him to them, *even* all these words,

2 Then spoke Azariah the son of Hoshaiiah, and Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the proud men, saying unto Jeremiah, you speakest falsely: the YAHWEH our Elohim has not sent you to say, Go not into Egypt to sojourn there:

3 But Baruch the son of Neriah setteth you on against us, for to deliver us into the hand of the Chaldeans, that they might put us to death, and carry us away captives into Babylon.

4 So Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces, and all the people, obeyed not the voice of the YAHWEH, to dwell in the land of Judah.

5 But Johanan the son of Kareah, and all the captains of the forces, took all the remnant of Judah, that were returned from all nations, whither they had been driven, to dwell in the land of Judah;

6 *Even* men, and women, and children, and the king's daughters, and every person that Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard had left with Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Jeremiah the prophet, and Baruch the son of Neriah.

7 So they came into the land of Egypt: for they obeyed not the voice of the YAHWEH: thus came they *even* to Tahpanhes.

Jeremiah prophesies by a type the conquest of Egypt by the Babylonians

8 Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto Jeremiah in Tahpanhes, saying,

9 Take great stones in thine hand, and hide them in the clay in the brickkiln, which *is* at the entry of Pharaoh's house in Tahpanhes, in the sight of the men of Judah;

10 And say unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will send and take Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon, my servant, and will set his throne upon these stones that I have hid; and he shall spread his royal pavilion over them. [Jer 25:9](#); [Jer 27:6](#);

11 And when he cometh, he shall smite the land of Egypt, *and deliver* such *as are* for death to death; and such *as are* for captivity to captivity; and such *as are* for the sword to the sword. [Jer 15:2](#); [Zech 11:9](#);

12 And I will kindle a fire in the houses of the gods of Egypt; and he shall burn them, and carry them away captives: and he shall array himself with the land of Egypt, as a shepherd puts on his garment; and he shall go forth from thence in peace.

13 He shall break also the images of Bethshemesh, that *is* in the land of Egypt; and the houses of the gods of the Egyptians shall he burn with fire.

JEREMIAH FORTY-FOUR

Jeremiah expresses the desolation of Judah for their idolatry

1 The word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the Jews which dwell in the land of Egypt, which dwell at Migdol, and at Tahpanhes, and at Noph, and in the country of Pathros, saying,

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; you have seen all the evil that I have brought upon Jerusalem, and upon all the cities of Judah; and, behold, this day they *are* a desolation, and no man dwelleth therein,

3 Because of their wickedness which they have committed to provoke me to anger, in that they went to burn incense, *and* to serve other gods, whom they knew not, *neither* they, you, nor your fathers.

4 Howbeit I sent unto you all my servants the prophets, rising early and sending *them*, saying, Oh, do not this abominable thing that I hate.

5 But they hearkened not, nor inclined their ear to turn from their wickedness, to burn no incense unto other gods.

6 Wherefore my fury and mine anger was poured forth, and was kindled in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem; and they are wasted *and* desolate, as at this day. [Jer 7:20](#); [Jer 42:18](#);

7 Therefore now thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Wherefore commit you *this* great evil against your beings, to cut off from you man and woman, child and suckling, out of Judah, to leave you none to remain;

8 In that you provoke me unto wrath with the works of your hands, burning incense unto other gods in the land of Egypt, whither you be gone to dwell, that you might cut yourselves off, and that you might be a curse and a reproach among all the nations of the earth?

9 Have you forgotten the wickedness of your fathers, and the wickedness of the kings of Judah, and the wickedness of their wives, and your own wickedness, and the wickedness of your wives, which they have committed in the land of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem?

10 They are not humbled *even* unto this day, neither have they feared, nor walked in my law, nor in my statutes, that I set before you and before your fathers.

He prophesies their destruction, who commit idolatry in Egypt

11 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will set my face against you for evil, and to cut off all Judah. [Jer 21:10](#); [Amos 9:4](#);

12 And I will take the remnant of Judah, that have set their faces to go into the land of Egypt to sojourn there, and they shall all be consumed, *and* fall in the land of Egypt; they shall *even* be consumed by the sword *and* by the famine: they shall die, from the least even unto the greatest, by the sword and by the famine: and they shall be an execration, *and* an astonishment, and a curse, and a reproach. [Jer 42:15-17](#); [Jer 42:22](#);

13 For I will punish them that dwell in the land of Egypt, as I have punished Jerusalem, by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence:

14 So that none of the remnant of Judah, which are gone into the land of Egypt to sojourn there, shall escape or remain, that they should return into the land of Judah, to the which they have a desire to return to dwell there: for none shall return but such as shall escape.

The obstinacy of the Jews

15 Then all the men which knew that their wives had burned incense unto other gods, and all the women that stood by, a great multitude, even all the people that dwelt in the land of Egypt, in Pathros, answered Jeremiah, saying,

16 *As for* the word that you have spoken unto us in the name of the YAHWEH, we will not hearken unto you.

17 But we will certainly do whatsoever thing goes forth out of our own mouth, to burn incense unto the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings unto her, as we have done, we, and our fathers, our kings, and our princes, in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem: for *then* had we plenty of victuals, and were well, and saw no evil. [Jer 7:18](#);

18 But since we left off to burn incense to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings unto her, we have wanted all *things*, and have been consumed by the sword and by the famine.

19 And when we burned incense to the queen of heaven, and poured out drink offerings unto her, did we make her cakes to worship her, and pour out drink offerings unto her, without our men? [\[Jer 7:18\]](#);

for which Jeremiah threatens them

20 Then Jeremiah said unto all the people, to the men, and to the women, and to all the people which had given him *that* answer, saying,

21 The incense that you burned in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem, you, and your fathers, your kings, and your princes, and the people of the land, did not the YAHWEH remember them, and came it *not* into his mind?

22 So that the YAHWEH could no longer bear, because of the evil of your doings, *and* because of the abominations which you have committed; therefore is your land a desolation, and an astonishment, and a curse, without an inhabitant, as at this day.

23 Because you have burned incense, and because you have sinned against the YAHWEH, and have not obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH, nor walked in his law, nor in his statutes, nor in his testimonies; therefore this evil is happened unto you, as at this day.

24 Moreover Jeremiah said unto all the people, and to all the women, Hear the word of the YAHWEH, all Judah that *are* in the land of Egypt:

25 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saying; you and your wives have both spoken with your mouths, and fulfilled with your hand, saying, We will surely perform our vows that we have vowed, to burn incense to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings unto her: you will surely accomplish your vows, and surely perform your vows.

26 Therefore hear you the word of the YAHWEH, all Judah that dwell in the land of Egypt; Behold, I have sworn by my great name, saith the YAHWEH, that my name shall no more be named in the mouth of any man of Judah in all the land of Egypt, saying, The Lord GOD liveth.

27 Behold, I will watch over them for evil, and not for good: and all the men of Judah that *are* in the land of Egypt shall be consumed by the sword and by the famine, until there be an end of them. [Jer 31:28](#);

28 Yet a small number that escape the sword shall return out of the land of Egypt into the land of Judah, and all the remnant of Judah, that are gone into the land of Egypt to sojourn there, shall know whose words shall stand, mine, or theirs.

and for a sign prophesies the destruction of Egypt

29 And this *shall be* a sign unto you, saith the YAHWEH, that I will punish you in this place, that you may know that my words shall surely stand against you for evil:

30 Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will give Pharaohhophra king of Egypt into the hand of his enemies, and into the hand of them that seek his life; as I gave Zedekiah king of Judah into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, his enemy, and that sought his life.

JEREMIAH FORTY-FIVE

Baruch being dismayed

1 The word that Jeremiah the prophet spoke unto Baruch the son of Neriah, when he had written these words in a book at the mouth of Jeremiah, in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, saying,

2 Thus saith the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, unto you, O Baruch;

3 You didst say, Woe is me now! for the YAHWEH has added grief to my sorrow; I fainted in my sighing, and I find no rest.

Jeremiah instructs and comforts him

4 Thus shall you say unto him, The YAHWEH saith thus; Behold, *that* which I have built will I break down, and that which I have planted I will pluck up, even this whole land.

5 And seekest you great things for thyself? seek *them* not: for, behold, I will bring evil upon all flesh, saith the YAHWEH: but thy life will I give unto you for a prey in all places whither you go. [Jer 21:9](#); [Jer 38:2](#); [Jer 39:18](#);

JEREMIAH FORTY-SIX

Jeremiah prophesies the overthrow of Pharaoh's army at Euphrates

1 The word of the YAHWEH which came to Jeremiah the prophet against the Gentiles; [Jer 25:19](#);

2 Against Egypt, against the army of Pharaohnecho king of Egypt, which was by the river Euphrates in Carchemish, which Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon smote in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah.

3 Order you the buckler and shield, and draw near to battle.

4 Harness the horses; and get up, you horsemen, and stand forth with *your* helmets; furbish the spears, *and* put on the brigandines. [Jer 51:11](#);

5 Wherefore have I seen them dismayed *and* turned away back? and their mighty ones are beaten down, and are fled quickly, and look not back: *for* fear *was* round about, saith the YAHWEH. [Job 18:11](#);

6 Let not the swift flee away, nor the mighty man escape; they shall stumble, and fall toward the north by the river Euphrates.

7 Who *is* this *that* cometh up as a flood, whose waters are moved as the rivers?

8 Egypt riseth up like a flood, and *his* waters are moved like the rivers; and he saith, I will go up, *and* will cover the earth; I will destroy the city and the inhabitants thereof.

9 Come up, you horses; and rage, you chariots; and let the mighty men come forth; the Ethiopians and the Libyans, that handle the shield; and the Lydians, that handle *and* bend the bow. [Isa 66:19](#);

10 For this *is* the day of the Lord GOD of hosts, a day of vengeance, that he may avenge him of his adversaries: and the sword shall devour, and it shall be satiate and made drunk with their blood: for the Lord GOD of hosts has a sacrifice in the north country by the river Euphrates.

11 Go up into Gilead, and take balm, O virgin, the daughter of Egypt: in vain shall you use many medicines; *for* you shall not be cured. [Jer 8:22](#); [\[Jer 51:9\]](#);

12 The nations have heard of thy shame, and thy cry has filled the land: for the mighty man has stumbled against the mighty, *and* they are fallen both together.

and the conquest of Egypt by Nebuchadrezzar

13 The word that the YAHWEH spoke to Jeremiah the prophet, how Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon should come *and* smite the land of Egypt.

14 Declare you in Egypt, and publish in Migdol, and publish in Noph and in Tahpanhes: say you, Stand fast, and prepare you; for the sword shall devour round about you.

15 Why are thy valiant *men* swept away? they stood not, because the YAHWEH did drive them.

16 He made many to fall, yes, one fell upon another: and they said, Arise, and let us go again to our own people, and to the land of our nativity, from the oppressing sword.

17 They did cry there, Pharaoh king of Egypt *is* *but* a noise; he has passed the time appointed.

18 *As* I live, saith the King, whose name *is* the YAHWEH of hosts, Surely as Tabor *is* among the mountains, and as Carmel by the sea, *so* shall he come.

19 O you daughter dwelling in Egypt, furnish thyself to go into captivity: for Noph shall be waste and desolate without an inhabitant.

20 Egypt *is* *like* a very fair heifer, *but* destruction cometh; it cometh out of the north.

21 Also her hired men *are* in the midst of her like fatted bullocks; for they also are turned back, *and* are fled away together: they did not stand, because the day of their calamity was come upon them, *and* the time of their visitation.

22 The voice thereof shall go like a serpent; for they shall march with an army, and come against her with axes, as hewers of wood.

23 They shall cut down her forest, saith the YAHWEH, though it cannot be searched; because they are more than the grasshoppers, and *are* innumerable.

24 The daughter of Egypt shall be confounded; she shall be delivered into the hand of the people of the north.

25 The YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saith; Behold, I will punish the multitude of No, and Pharaoh, and Egypt, with their gods, and their kings; even Pharaoh, and *all* them that trust in him:

26 And I will deliver them into the hand of those that seek their lives, and into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of his servants: and afterward it shall be inhabited, as in the days of old, saith the YAHWEH.

He comforts Jacob in his chastisement

27 But fear not you, O my servant Jacob, and be not dismayed, O Israel: for, behold, I will save you from afar off, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and be in rest and at ease, and none shall make *him* afraid. [Isa 41:13](#); [Isa 43:5](#); [Isa 44:1](#); [Jer 30:10](#);

28 Fear you not, O Jacob my servant, saith the YAHWEH: for I *am* with you; for I will make a full end of all the nations whither I have driven you: but I will not make a full end of you, but correct you in measure; yet will I not leave you wholly unpunished. [Jer 10:24](#); [Jer 30:11](#); [\[Isa 27:8\]](#); [\[Jer 4:27\]](#); [\[Jer 30:10\]](#);

The destruction of the Philistines

- 1** The word of the YAHWEH that came to Jeremiah the prophet against the Philistines, before that Pharaoh smote Gaza.
- 2** Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, waters rise up out of the north, and shall be an overflowing flood, and shall overflow the land, and all that is therein; the city, and them that dwell therein: then the men shall cry, and all the inhabitants of the land shall howl.
- 3** At the noise of the stamping of the hoofs of his strong *horses*, at the rushing of his chariots, *and at* the rumbling of his wheels, the fathers shall not look back to *their* children for feebleness of hands; [Jer 4:13](#); [Jer 6:23](#); [Isa 5:28](#); [\[Ezek 26:11\]](#);
- 4** Because of the day that cometh to spoil all the Philistines, *and* to cut off from Tyrus and Zidon every helper that remaineth: for the YAHWEH will spoil the Philistines, the remnant of the country of Caphtor. [Jer 25:22](#); [\[Isa 23:1\]](#); [\[Jer 25:20\]](#);
- 5** Baldness is come upon Gaza; Ashkelon is cut off *with* the remnant of their valley: how long will you cut thyself? [Jer 25:20](#); [Deut 14:1](#); [Jer 16:6](#); [\[Jer 48:37\]](#);
- 6** O you sword of the YAHWEH, how long *will it be* ere you be quiet? put up thyself into thy scabbard, rest, and be still.
- 7** How can it be quiet, seeing the YAHWEH has given it a charge against Ashkelon, and against the sea shore? there has he appointed it.

The judgment of Moab

- 1** Against Moab thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Woe unto Nebo! for it is spoiled: Kiriathaim is confounded *and* taken: Misgab is confounded and dismayed. [Jer 25:21](#); [Jer 27:3](#); [\[Isa 15:1\]](#); [\[Ezek 25:8\]](#);
- 2** *There shall be* no more praise of Moab: in Heshbon they have devised evil against it; come, and let us cut it off from *being* a nation. Also you shall be cut down, O Madmen; the sword shall pursue you.
- 3** A voice of crying *shall be* from Horonaim, spoiling and great destruction.
- 4** Moab is destroyed; her little ones have caused a cry to be heard.
- 5** For in the going up of Luhith continual weeping shall go up; for in the going down of Horonaim the enemies have heard a cry of destruction. [Isa 15:5](#);
- 6** Flee, save your lives, and be like the heath in the wilderness. [Jer 17:6](#);

for their pride

- 7** For because you have trusted in thy works and in thy treasures, you shall also be taken: and Chemosh shall go forth into captivity *with* his priests and his princes together. [Jer 49:3](#); [\[Jer 49:4\]](#);
- 8** And the spoiler shall come upon every city, and no city shall escape: the valley also shall perish, and the plain shall be destroyed, as the YAHWEH has spoken.
- 9** Give wings unto Moab, that it may flee and get away: for the cities thereof shall be desolate, without any to dwell therein.
- 10** Cursed *be* he that doeth the work of the YAHWEH deceitfully, and cursed *be* he that keepeth back his sword from blood. [\[1Pet 4:12\]](#);

for their security

- 11** Moab has been at ease from his youth, and he has settled on his lees, and has not been emptied from vessel to vessel, neither has he gone into captivity: therefore his taste remained in him, and his scent is not changed. [Zeph 1:12](#);

12 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will send unto him wanderers, that shall cause him to wander, and shall empty his vessels, and break their bottles.

13 And Moab shall be ashamed of Chemosh, as the house of Israel was ashamed of Bethel their confidence. [1Kgs 12:29](#);

for their carnal confidence

14 How say you, We *are* mighty and strong men for the war?

15 Moab is spoiled, and gone up *out of* her cities, and his chosen young men are gone down to the slaughter, saith the King, whose name *is* the YAHWEH of hosts.

16 The calamity of Moab *is* near to come, and his affliction hasteth fast.

17 All you that are about him, bemoan him; and all you that know his name, say, How is the strong staff broken, *and* the beautiful rod!

18 O daughter that dost inhabit Dibon, come down from *thy* glory, and sit in thirst; for the spoiler of Moab shall come upon you, *and* he shall destroy thy strong holds.

19 O inhabitant of Aroer, stand by the way, and espy; ask him that fleeth, and her that escapeth, *and* say, What is done?

20 Moab is confounded; for it is broken down: howl and cry; tell you it in Arnon, that Moab is spoiled, [Isa 16:7](#);

21 And judgment is come upon the plain country; upon Holon, and upon Jahazah, and upon Mephaath,

22 And upon Dibon, and upon Nebo, and upon Bethdiblathaim,

23 And upon Kiriathaim, and upon Bethgamul, and upon Bethmeon,

24 And upon Keriath, and upon Bozrah, and upon all the cities of the land of Moab, far or near.

25 The horn of Moab is cut off, and his arm is broken, saith the YAHWEH.

and for their contempt of Elohim and his people

26 Make you him drunken: for he magnified *himself* against the YAHWEH: Moab also shall wallow in his vomit, and he also shall be in derision.

27 For was not Israel a derision unto you? was he found among thieves? for since you spokest of him, you skippedst for joy.

28 O you that dwell in Moab, leave the cities, and dwell in the rock, and be like the dove *that* maketh her nest in the sides of the hole's mouth.

29 We have heard the pride of Moab, (he is exceeding proud) his loftiness, and his arrogancy, and his pride, and the haughtiness of his heart. [Isa 16:6](#); [\[Jer 49:16\]](#);

30 I know his wrath, saith the YAHWEH; but *it shall* not *be* so; his lies shall not so effect *it*.

31 Therefore will I howl for Moab, and I will cry out for all Moab; *mine heart* shall mourn for the men of Kirheres.

32 O vine of Sibmah, I will weep for you with the weeping of Jazer: thy plants are gone over the sea, they reach *even* to the sea of Jazer: the spoiler is fallen upon thy summer fruits and upon thy vintage. [\[Isa 16:8\]](#);

33 And joy and gladness is taken from the plentiful field, and from the land of Moab; and I have caused wine to fail from the winepresses: none shall tread with shouting; *their* shouting *shall be* no shouting. [Isa 16:10](#);

34 From the cry of Heshbon *even* unto Elealeh, *and even* unto Jahaz, have they uttered their voice, from Zoar *even* unto Horonaim, *as* a heifer of three years old: for the waters also of Nimrim shall be desolate. [Isa 15:5-6](#);

35 Moreover I will cause to cease in Moab, saith the YAHWEH, him that offereth in the high places, and him that burneth incense to his gods.

36 Therefore mine heart shall sound for Moab like pipes, and mine heart shall sound like pipes for the men of Kirheres: because the riches *that* he has gotten are perished. [\[Lam 1:20\]](#);

37 For every head *shall be* bald, and every beard clipped: upon all the hands *shall be* cuttings, and upon the loins sackcloth. [Isa 15:2-3](#); [Jer 47:5](#); [\[Isa 15:2\]](#); [\[Ezek 7:18\]](#); [\[Ezek 27:31\]](#);

38 *There shall be* lamentation generally upon all the housetops of Moab, and in the streets thereof: for I have broken Moab like a vessel wherein *is* no pleasure, saith the YAHWEH.

39 They shall howl, *saying*, How is it broken down! how has Moab turned the back with shame! so shall Moab be a derision and a dismaying to all them about him.

40 For thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, he shall fly as an eagle, and shall spread his wings over Moab. [Jer 4:13](#); [\[Jer 49:22\]](#);

41 Keriath is taken, and the strong holds are surprised, and the mighty men's hearts in Moab at that day shall be as the heart of a woman in her pangs. [\[Jer 49:22\]](#);

42 And Moab shall be destroyed from *being* a people, because he has magnified *himself* against the YAHWEH.

43 Fear, and the pit, and the snare, *shall be* upon you, O inhabitant of Moab, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Isa 24:17\]](#);

44 He that fleeth from the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that getteth up out of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for I will bring upon it, *even* upon Moab, the year of their visitation, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Isa 24:18\]](#);

45 They that fled stood under the shadow of Heshbon because of the force: but a fire shall come forth out of Heshbon, and a flame from the midst of Sihon, and shall devour the corner of Moab, and the crown of the head of the tumultuous ones. [Num 21:28](#);

46 Woe be unto you, O Moab! the people of Chemosh perisheth: for thy sons are taken captives, and thy daughters captives.

The restoration of Moab

47 Yet will I bring again the captivity of Moab in the latter days, saith the YAHWEH. Thus far *is* the judgment of Moab. [\[Jer 49:39\]](#);

JEREMIAH FORTY-NINE

The judgment of the Ammonites

1 Concerning the Ammonites, thus saith the YAHWEH; Has Israel no sons? has he no heir? why *then* does their king inherit Gad, and his people dwell in his cities? [Amos 1:13](#); [\[Jer 25:21\]](#); [\[Ezek 25:2\]](#);

2 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will cause an alarm of war to be heard in Rabbah of the Ammonites; and it shall be a desolate heap, and her daughters shall be burned with fire: then shall Israel be heir unto them that were his heirs, saith the YAHWEH. [Amos 1:14](#);

3 Howl, O Heshbon, for Ai is spoiled: cry, you daughters of Rabbah, gird you with sackcloth; lament, and run to and fro by the hedges; for their king shall go into captivity, *and* his priests and his princes together. [Isa 32:12](#); [Jer 4:8](#); [Jer 6:26](#); [Jer 48:7](#);

4 Wherefore gloriest you in the valleys, thy flowing valley, O backsliding daughter? that trusted in her treasures, *saying*, Who shall come unto me? [Jer 48:7](#); [Jer 21:13](#);

5 Behold, I will bring a fear upon you, saith the Lord GOD of hosts, from all those that be about you; and you shall be driven out every man right forth; and none shall gather up him that wandereth.

Their restoration

6 And afterward I will bring again the captivity of the children of Ammon, saith the YAHWEH.

The judgment of Edom

7 Concerning Edom, thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; *Is* wisdom no more in Teman? is counsel perished from the prudent? is their wisdom vanished? [Obad 1:8](#); [\[Ps 137:7\]](#); [\[Isa 29:14\]](#); [\[Jer 25:21\]](#);

8 Flee you, turn back, dwell deep, O inhabitants of Dedan; for I will bring the calamity of Esau upon him, the time *that* I will visit him. [Jer 25:23](#);

9 If grapegatherers come to you, would they not leave *some* gleaning grapes? if thieves by night, they will destroy till they have enough. [Obad 1:5](#);

10 But I have made Esau bare, I have uncovered his secret places, and he shall not be able to hide himself: his seed is spoiled, and his brethren, and his neighbours, and he *is* not.

11 Leave thy fatherless children, I will preserve *them* alive; and let thy widows trust in me.

12 For thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, they whose judgment *was* not to drink of the cup have assuredly drunken; and are you he *that* shall altogether go unpunished? you shall not go unpunished, but you shall surely drink *of it*.

13 For I have sworn by myself, saith the YAHWEH, that Bozrah shall become a desolation, a reproach, a waste, and a curse; and all the cities thereof shall be perpetual wastes. [\[Jer 18:16\]](#);

14 I have heard a rumour from the YAHWEH, and an ambassador is sent unto the heathen, *saying*, Gather you together, and come against her, and rise up to the battle. [Obad 1:1](#);

15 For, lo, I will make you small among the heathen, *and* despised among men.

16 Thy terribleness has deceived you, *and* the pride of thine heart, O you that dwellest in the clefts of the rock, that holdest the height of the hill: though you should make thy nest as high as the eagle, I will bring you down from thence, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 48:29](#); [Obad 1:4](#); [\[Job 39:27\]](#);

17 Also Edom shall be a desolation: every one that goes by it shall be astonished, and shall hiss at all the plagues thereof. [Jer 50:13](#);

18 As in the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah and the neighbour *cities* thereof, saith the YAHWEH, no man shall abide there, neither shall a son of man dwell in it. [Gen 19:25](#); [Jer 50:40](#); [Amos 4:11](#); [\[Isa 13:19\]](#);

19 Behold, he shall come up like a lion from the swelling of Jordan against the habitation of the strong: but I will suddenly make him run away from her: and who *is* a chosen *man*, *that* I may appoint over her? for who *is* like me? and who will appoint me the time? and who *is* that shepherd that will stand before me? [Jer 50:44](#); [Jer 12:5](#); [Job 41:10](#); [Jer 50:44-45](#); [\[Job 9:32\]](#);

20 Therefore hear the counsel of the YAHWEH, that he has taken against Edom; and his purposes, that he has purposed against the inhabitants of Teman: Surely the least of the flock shall draw them out: surely he shall make their habitations desolate with them. [\[Jer 50:45\]](#);

21 The earth is moved at the noise of their fall, at the cry the noise thereof was heard in the Red sea. [\[Jer 50:46\]](#);

22 Behold, he shall come up and fly as the eagle, and spread his wings over Bozrah: and at that day shall the heart of the mighty men of Edom be as the heart of a woman in her pangs. [Jer 48:40](#); [Jer 48:41](#);

of Damascus

23 Concerning Damascus. Hamath is confounded, and Arpad: for they have heard evil tidings: they are fainthearted; *there is* sorrow on the sea; it cannot be quiet. [Isa 17:1](#); [\[Ezek 21:7\]](#); [\[Amos 1:5\]](#);

24 Damascus is waxed feeble, *and* turneth herself to flee, and fear has seized on *her*: anguish and sorrows have taken her, as a woman in travail. [Jer 4:31](#); [Jer 6:24](#); [Jer 30:6](#); [\[Jer 50:43\]](#);

25 How is the city of praise not left, the city of my joy!

26 Therefore her young men shall fall in her streets, and all the men of war shall be cut off in that day, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Jer 50:30\]](#); [\[Jer 51:4\]](#);

27 And I will kindle a fire in the wall of Damascus, and it shall consume the palaces of Benhadad. [Amos 1:4](#); [Amos 1:14](#);

of Kedar

28 Concerning Kedar, and concerning the kingdoms of Hazor, which Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon shall smite, thus saith the YAHWEH; Arise you, go up to Kedar, and spoil the men of the east.

29 Their tents and their flocks shall they take away: they shall take to themselves their curtains, and all their vessels, and their camels; and they shall cry unto them, Fear *is* on every side. [Job 18:11];

of Hazor

30 Flee, get you far off, dwell deep, O you inhabitants of Hazor, saith the YAHWEH; for Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon has taken counsel against you, and has conceived a purpose against you.

31 Arise, get you up unto the wealthy nation, that dwelleth without care, saith the YAHWEH, which have neither gates nor bars, *which* dwell alone. [Jer 25:24];

32 And their camels shall be a booty, and the multitude of their cattle a spoil: and I will scatter into all winds them *that are* in the utmost corners; and I will bring their calamity from all sides thereof, saith the YAHWEH. Jer 9:26; Jer 25:23; [Ezek 5:10];

33 And Hazor shall be a dwelling for dragons, *and* a desolation for ever: there shall no man abide there, nor *any* son of man dwell in it. Jer 9:11; Jer 10:22;

and of Elam

34 The word of the YAHWEH that came to Jeremiah the prophet against Elam in the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah, saying, [Jer 25:25];

35 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Behold, I will break the bow of Elam, the chief of their might.

36 And upon Elam will I bring the four winds from the four quarters of heaven, and will scatter them toward all those winds; and there shall be no nation whither the outcasts of Elam shall not come. [Ezek 5:10];

37 For I will cause Elam to be dismayed before their enemies, and before them that seek their life: and I will bring evil upon them, *even* my fierce anger, saith the YAHWEH; and I will send the sword after them, till I have consumed them:

38 And I will set my throne in Elam, and will destroy from thence the king and the princes, saith the YAHWEH.

The restoration of Elam

39 But it shall come to pass in the latter days, *that* I will bring again the captivity of Elam, saith the YAHWEH. Jer 48:47;

JEREMIAH FIFTY

The judgment of Babylon and the redemption of Israel

1 The word that the YAHWEH spoke against Babylon *and* against the land of the Chaldeans by Jeremiah the prophet.

2 Declare you among the nations, and publish, and set up a standard; publish, *and* conceal not: say, Babylon is taken, Bel is confounded, Merodach is broken in pieces; her idols are confounded, her images are broken in pieces. Isa 46:1; Jer 51:44;

3 For out of the north there cometh up a nation against her, which shall make her land desolate, and none shall dwell therein: they shall remove, they shall depart, both man and beast.

4 In those days, and in that time, saith the YAHWEH, the children of Israel shall come, they and the children of Judah together, going and weeping: they shall go, and seek the YAHWEH their Elohim.

5 They shall ask the way to Zion with their faces thitherward, *saying*, Come, and let us join ourselves to the YAHWEH in a perpetual covenant *that* shall not be forgotten.

6 My people has been lost sheep: their shepherds have caused them to go astray, they have turned them away *on* the mountains: they have gone from mountain to hill, they have forgotten their restingplace.

7 All that found them have devoured them: and their adversaries said, We offend not, because they have sinned against the YAHWEH, the habitation of justice, even the YAHWEH, the hope of their fathers. [Jer 31:23](#);

8 Remove out of the midst of Babylon, and go forth out of the land of the Chaldeans, and be as the he goats before the flocks. [Isa 48:20](#); [Jer 51:6](#); [Rev 18:4](#);

9 For, lo, I will raise and cause to come up against Babylon an assembly of great nations from the north country: and they shall set themselves in array against her; from thence she shall be taken: their arrows *shall be* as of a mighty expert man; none shall return in vain.

10 And Chaldea shall be a spoil: all that spoil her shall be satisfied, saith the YAHWEH.

11 Because you were glad, because you rejoiced, O you destroyers of mine heritage, because you are grown fat as the heifer at grass, and bellow as bulls;

12 Your mother shall be sore confounded; she that bore you shall be ashamed: behold, the hindermost of the nations *shall be* a wilderness, a dry land, and a desert.

13 Because of the wrath of the YAHWEH it shall not be inhabited, but it shall be wholly desolate: every one that goes by Babylon shall be astonished, and hiss at all her plagues. [Jer 49:17](#); [Jer 18:16](#);

14 Put yourselves in array against Babylon round about: all you that bend the bow, shoot at her, spare no arrows: for she has sinned against the YAHWEH.

15 Shout against her round about: she has given her hand: her foundations are fallen, her walls are thrown down: for it *is* the vengeance of the YAHWEH: take vengeance upon her; as she has done, do unto her. [\[Ps 137:8\]](#); [\[Jer 51:6\]](#);

16 Cut off the sower from Babylon, and him that handleth the sickle in the time of harvest: for fear of the oppressing sword they shall turn every one to his people, and they shall flee every one to his own land.

17 Israel *is* a scattered sheep; the lions have driven *him* away: first the king of Assyria has devoured him; and last this Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon has broken his bones.

18 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; Behold, I will punish the king of Babylon and his land, as I have punished the king of Assyria. [2Kgs 19:35](#); [2Kgs 19:37](#); [Isa 37:36](#); [Isa 37:38](#);

19 And I will bring Israel again to his habitation, and he shall feed on Carmel and Bashan, and his being shall be satisfied upon mount Ephraim and Gilead.

20 In those days, and in that time, saith the YAHWEH, the iniquity of Israel shall be sought for, and *there shall be* none; and the sins of Judah, and they shall not be found: for I will pardon them whom I reserve. [\[Num 23:21\]](#);

21 Go up against the land of Merathaim, *even* against it, and against the inhabitants of Pekod: waste and utterly destroy after them, saith the YAHWEH, and do according to all that I have commanded you.

22 A sound of battle *is* in the land, and of great destruction.

23 How is the hammer of the whole earth cut asunder and broken! how is Babylon become a desolation among the nations! [\[Jer 51:20\]](#);

24 I have laid a snare for you, and you are also taken, O Babylon, and you were not aware: you are found, and also caught, because you have striven against the YAHWEH.

25 The YAHWEH has opened his armoury, and has brought forth the weapons of his indignation: for this *is* the work of the Lord GOD of hosts in the land of the Chaldeans.

26 Come against her from the utmost border, open her storehouses: cast her up as heaps, and destroy her utterly: let nothing of her be left.

27 Slay all her bullocks; let them go down to the slaughter: woe unto them! for their day is come, the time of their visitation.

28 The voice of them that flee and escape out of the land of Babylon, to declare in Zion the vengeance of the YAHWEH our Elohim, the vengeance of his temple. [\[Jer 51:6\]](#); [\[Jer 51:11\]](#);

29 Call together the archers against Babylon: all you that bend the bow, camp against it round about; let none thereof escape: recompense her according to her work; according to all that she has done, do unto her: for she has been proud against the YAHWEH, against the Holy One of Israel. [\[Ps 137:8\];](#)

30 Therefore shall her young men fall in the streets, and all her men of war shall be cut off in that day, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 49:26;](#)

31 Behold, I *am* against you, *O you* most proud, saith the Lord GOD of hosts: for thy day is come, the time *that* I will visit you.

32 And the most proud shall stumble and fall, and none shall raise him up: and I will kindle a fire in his cities, and it shall devour all round about him.

33 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; The children of Israel and the children of Judah *were* oppressed together: and all that took them captives held them fast; they refused to let them go.

34 Their Redeemer *is* strong; the YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name: he shall thoroughly plead their cause, that he may give rest to the land, and disquiet the inhabitants of Babylon. [\[Mic 7:9\];](#)

35 A sword *is* upon the Chaldeans, saith the YAHWEH, and upon the inhabitants of Babylon, and upon her princes, and upon her wise *men*.

36 A sword *is* upon the liars; and they shall dote: a sword *is* upon her mighty men; and they shall be dismayed.

37 A sword *is* upon their horses, and upon their chariots, and upon all the mingled people that *are* in the midst of her; and they shall become as women: a sword *is* upon her treasures; and they shall be robbed. [\[Jer 51:30\];](#)

38 A drought *is* upon her waters; and they shall be dried up: for it *is* the land of graven images, and they are mad upon *their* idols. [\[Jer 51:36\];](#)

39 Therefore the wild beasts of the desert with the wild beasts of the islands shall dwell *there*, and the owls shall dwell therein: and it shall be no more inhabited for ever; neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation. [\[Rev 18:2\];](#)

40 As Elohim overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah and the neighbour *cities* thereof, saith the YAHWEH; *so* shall no man abide there, neither shall any son of man dwell therein. [Gen 19:25;](#) [Jer 49:18;](#) [\[Gen 19:24\];](#) [\[Isa 13:19\];](#) [\[Luke 17:29\];](#) [\[Rom 9:29\];](#) [\[2Pet 2:6\];](#) [\[Jude 1:7\];](#)

41 Behold, a people shall come from the north, and a great nation, and many kings shall be raised up from the coasts of the earth. [Jer 6:22;](#)

42 They shall hold the bow and the lance: they *are* cruel, and will not show mercy: their voice shall roar like the sea, and they shall ride upon horses, *every one* put in array, like a man to the battle, against you, O daughter of Babylon.

43 The king of Babylon has heard the report of them, and his hands waxed feeble: anguish took hold of him, *and* pangs as of a woman in travail. [Jer 49:24;](#) [\[Jer 6:24\];](#)

44 Behold, he shall come up like a lion from the swelling of Jordan unto the habitation of the strong: but I will make them suddenly run away from her: and who *is* a chosen *man*, *that* I may appoint over her? for who *is* like me? and who will appoint me the time? and who *is* that shepherd that will stand before me? [Jer 49:19;](#) [Job 41:10;](#)

45 Therefore hear you the counsel of the YAHWEH, that he has taken against Babylon; and his purposes, that he has purposed against the land of the Chaldeans: Surely the least of the flock shall draw them out: surely he shall make *their* habitation desolate with them. [Jer 49:20;](#)

46 At the noise of the taking of Babylon the earth is moved, and the cry is heard among the nations. [Jer 49:21;](#)

The severe judgment of Elohim against Babylon, in revenge of Israel

- 1** Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will raise up against Babylon, and against them that dwell in the midst of them that rise up against me, a destroying wind; [Jer 4:11](#); [\[Rev 18:10\]](#);
- 2** And will send unto Babylon fanners, that shall fan her, and shall empty her land: for in the day of trouble they shall be against her round about. [Jer 4:11](#); [Jer 15:7](#);
- 3** Against *him that* bendeth let the archer bend his bow, and against *him that* lifteth himself up in his brigandine: and spare you not her young men; destroy you utterly all her host.
- 4** Thus the slain shall fall in the land of the Chaldeans, and *they that are* thrust through in her streets. [Jer 49:26](#);
- 5** For Israel *has not been* forsaken, nor Judah of his Elohim, of the YAHWEH of hosts; though their land was filled with sin against the Holy One of Israel.
- 6** Flee out of the midst of Babylon, and deliver every man his being: be not cut off in her iniquity; for this *is* the time of the YAHWEH'S vengeance; he will render unto her a recompence. [Jer 50:8](#); [Rev 18:4](#); [Jer 50:15](#); [Jer 50:28](#); [\[Isa 48:20\]](#);
- 7** Babylon *has been* a golden cup in the YAHWEH'S hand, that made all the earth drunken: the nations have drunken of her wine; therefore the nations are mad.
- 8** Babylon is suddenly fallen and destroyed: howl for her; take balm for her pain, if so be she may be healed. [Isa 21:9](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [Rev 18:2](#); [Jer 8:22](#);
- 9** We would have healed Babylon, but she is not healed: forsake her, and let us go every one into his own country: for her judgment reacheth unto heaven, and is lifted up *even* to the skies. [Jer 46:11](#);
- 10** The YAHWEH has brought forth our righteousness: come, and let us declare in Zion the work of the YAHWEH our Elohim.
- 11** Make bright the arrows; gather the shields: the YAHWEH has raised up the spirit of the kings of the Medes: for his device *is* against Babylon, to destroy it; because it *is* the vengeance of the YAHWEH, the vengeance of his temple. [Jer 46:4](#); [Jer 50:28](#);
- 12** Set up the standard upon the walls of Babylon, make the watch strong, set up the watchmen, prepare the ambushes: for the YAHWEH has both devised and done that which he spoke against the inhabitants of Babylon.
- 13** O you that dwellest upon many waters, abundant in treasures, thine end is come, *and* the measure of thy covetousness.
- 14** The YAHWEH of hosts has sworn by himself, *saying*, Surely I will fill you with men, as with caterpillers; and they shall lift up a shout against you. [Amos 6:8](#);
- 15** He has made the earth by his power, he has established the world by his wisdom, and has stretched out the heaven by his understanding. [Gen 1:1](#); [Jer 10:12](#); [Job 9:8](#); [Ps 104:2](#); [Isa 40:22](#); [Isa 44:24](#); [Isa 51:13](#); [\[Gen 1:6\]](#);
- 16** When he uttereth *his* voice, *there is* a multitude of waters in the heavens; and he causeth the vapours to ascend from the ends of the earth: he maketh lightnings with rain, and bringeth forth the wind out of his treasures. [\[Ps 135:7\]](#);
- 17** Every man is brutish by *his* knowledge; every founder is confounded by the graven image: for his molten image *is* falsehood, and *there is* no breath in them. [\[Jer 10:14\]](#);
- 18** They *are* vanity, the work of errors: in the time of their visitation they shall perish.
- 19** The portion of Jacob *is* not like them; for he *is* the former of all things: and *Israel is* the rod of his inheritance: the YAHWEH of hosts *is* his name. [Jer 10:16](#);
- 20** You are my battle axe *and* weapons of war: for with you will I break in pieces the nations, and with you will I destroy kingdoms; [Jer 50:23](#);
- 21** And with you will I break in pieces the horse and his rider; and with you will I break in pieces the chariot and his rider;
- 22** With you also will I break in pieces man and woman; and with you will I break in pieces old and young; and with you will I break in pieces the young man and the maid;

23 I will also break in pieces with you the shepherd and his flock; and with you will I break in pieces the husbandman and his yoke of oxen; and with you will I break in pieces captains and rulers.

24 And I will render unto Babylon and to all the inhabitants of Chaldea all their evil that they have done in Zion in your sight, saith the YAHWEH.

25 Behold, I *am* against you, O destroying mountain, saith the YAHWEH, which destroyest all the earth: and I will stretch out mine hand upon you, and roll you down from the rocks, and will make you a burnt mountain.

26 And they shall not take of you a stone for a corner, nor a stone for foundations; but you shall be desolate for ever, saith the YAHWEH.

27 Set you up a standard in the land, blow the trumpet among the nations, prepare the nations against her, call together against her the kingdoms of Ararat, Minni, and Ashchenaz; appoint a captain against her; cause the horses to come up as the rough caterpillers.

28 Prepare against her the nations with the kings of the Medes, the captains thereof, and all the rulers thereof, and all the land of his dominion.

29 And the land shall tremble and sorrow: for every purpose of the YAHWEH shall be performed against Babylon, to make the land of Babylon a desolation without an inhabitant.

30 The mighty men of Babylon have forborn to fight, they have remained in *their* holds: their might has failed; they became as women: they have burned her dwellingplaces; her bars are broken. [Jer 50:37](#);

31 One post shall run to meet another, and one messenger to meet another, to show the king of Babylon that his city is taken at *one* end,

32 And that the passages are stopped, and the reeds they have burned with fire, and the men of war are frightened.

33 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel; The daughter of Babylon *is* like a threshingfloor, *it is* time to thresh her: yet a little while, and the time of her harvest shall come. [\[Mic 4:12\]](#);

34 Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon has devoured me, he has crushed me, he has made me an empty vessel, he has swallowed me up like a dragon, he has filled his belly with my delicates, he has cast me out.

35 The violence done to me and to my flesh *be* upon Babylon, shall the inhabitant of Zion say; and my blood upon the inhabitants of Chaldea, shall Jerusalem say.

36 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I will plead thy cause, and take vengeance for you; and I will dry up her sea, and make her springs dry. [Jer 50:38](#);

37 And Babylon shall become heaps, a dwellingplace for dragons, an astonishment, and a hissing, without an inhabitant.

38 They shall roar together like lions: they shall yell as lions' whelps.

39 In their heat I will make their feasts, and I will make them drunken, that they may rejoice, and sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the YAHWEH.

40 I will bring them down like lambs to the slaughter, like rams with he goats.

41 How is Sheshach taken! and how is the praise of the whole earth surprised! how is Babylon become an astonishment among the nations! [Jer 25:26](#); [Isa 13:19](#);

42 The sea is come up upon Babylon: she is covered with the multitude of the waves thereof.

43 Her cities are a desolation, a dry land, and a wilderness, a land wherein no man dwelleth, neither does *any* son of man pass thereby.

44 And I will punish Bel in Babylon, and I will bring forth out of his mouth that which he has swallowed up: and the nations shall not flow together any more unto him: yes, the wall of Babylon shall fall. [\[Jer 50:2\]](#);

45 My people, go you out of the midst of her, and deliver you every man his being from the fierce anger of the YAHWEH. [\[Isa 48:20\]](#); [\[Rev 18:4\]](#);

46 And lest your heart faint, and you fear for the rumour that shall be heard in the land; a rumour shall both come *one* year, and after that in *another* year *shall come* a rumour, and violence in the land, ruler against ruler.

47 Therefore, behold, the days come, that I will do judgment upon the graven images of Babylon: and her whole land shall be confounded, and all her slain shall fall in the midst of her.

48 Then the heaven and the earth, and all that *is* therein, shall sing for Babylon: for the spoilers shall come unto her from the north, saith the YAHWEH.

49 As Babylon *has caused* the slain of Israel to fall, so at Babylon shall fall the slain of all the earth.

50 You that have escaped the sword, go away, stand not still: remember the YAHWEH afar off, and let Jerusalem come into your mind.

51 We are confounded, because we have heard reproach: shame has covered our faces: for strangers are come into the sanctuaries of the YAHWEH'S house.

52 Wherefore, behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that I will do judgment upon her graven images: and through all her land the wounded shall groan.

53 Though Babylon should mount up to heaven, and though she should fortify the height of her strength, yet from me shall spoilers come unto her, saith the YAHWEH.

54 A sound of a cry *cometh* from Babylon, and great destruction from the land of the Chaldeans:

55 Because the YAHWEH has spoiled Babylon, and destroyed out of her the great voice; when her waves do roar like great waters, a noise of their voice is uttered:

56 Because the spoiler is come upon her, *even* upon Babylon, and her mighty men are taken, every one of their bows is broken: for the YAHWEH Elohim of recompences shall surely requite.

57 And I will make drunk her princes, and her wise *men*, her captains, and her rulers, and her mighty men: and they shall sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the King, whose name *is* the YAHWEH of hosts.

58 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; The broad walls of Babylon shall be utterly broken, and her high gates shall be burned with fire; and the people shall labour in vain, and the folk in the fire, and they shall be weary.

Jeremiah delivers the book of this prophecy to Seraiah, to be cast into Euphrates, in token of the perpetual sinking of Babylon

59 The word which Jeremiah the prophet commanded Seraiah the son of Neriah, the son of Maaseiah, when he went with Zedekiah the king of Judah into Babylon in the fourth year of his reign. And *this* Seraiah *was* a quiet prince.

60 So Jeremiah wrote in a book all the evil that should come upon Babylon, *even* all these words that are written against Babylon.

61 And Jeremiah said to Seraiah, When you come to Babylon, and shall see, and shall read all these words;

62 Then shall you say, O YAHWEH, you have spoken against this place, to cut it off, that none shall remain in it, neither man nor beast, but that it shall be desolate for ever.

63 And it shall be, when you have made an end of reading this book, *that* you shall bind a stone to it, and cast it into the midst of Euphrates:

64 And you shall say, Thus shall Babylon sink, and shall not rise from the evil that I will bring upon her: and they shall be weary. Thus far *are* the words of Jeremiah. [\[Rev 18:21\];](#)

Zedekiah rebels

1 Zedekiah *was* one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Hamutal the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. [2Kgs 24:18](#); [\[2Kgs 24:17\]](#); [\[Jer 1:3\]](#); [\[Jer 34:1\]](#);

2 And he did *that which was* evil in the eyes of the YAHWEH, according to all that Jehoiakim had done. [\[2Chr 36:12\]](#);

3 For through the anger of the YAHWEH it came to pass in Jerusalem and Judah, till he had cast them out from his presence, that Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

Jerusalem is besieged and taken

4 And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth *day* of the month, *that* Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon came, he and all his army, against Jerusalem, and pitched against it, and built forts against it round about. [2Kgs 25:1](#); [Jer 39:1](#); [\[Jer 1:15\]](#);

5 So the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king Zedekiah.

6 And in the fourth month, in the ninth *day* of the month, the famine was sore in the city, so that there was no bread for the people of the land. [\[2Kgs 25:3\]](#); [\[Lam 1:11\]](#);

7 Then the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled, and went forth out of the city by night by the way of the gate between the two walls, which *was* by the king's garden; (now the Chaldeans *were* by the city round about:) and they went by the way of the plain.

Zedekiah's sons killed, and his own eyes put out

8 But the army of the Chaldeans pursued after the king, and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho; and all his army was scattered from him.

9 Then they took the king, and carried him up unto the king of Babylon to Riblah in the land of Hamath; where he gave judgment upon him.

10 And the king of Babylon slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes: he slew also all the princes of Judah in Riblah.

11 Then he put out the eyes of Zedekiah; and the king of Babylon bound him in chains, and carried him to Babylon, and put him in prison till the day of his death.

Nebuzar-adan burns and spoils the city

12 Now in the fifth month, in the tenth *day* of the month, which *was* the nineteenth year of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, came Nebuzaradan, captain of the guard, *which* served the king of Babylon, into Jerusalem,

13 And burned the house of the YAHWEH, and the king's house; and all the houses of Jerusalem, and all the houses of the great *men*, burned he with fire: [\[Ezek 16:41\]](#);

14 And all the army of the Chaldeans, that *were* with the captain of the guard, brake down all the walls of Jerusalem round about.

15 Then Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard carried away captive *certain* of the poor of the people, and the residue of the people that remained in the city, and those that fell away, that fell to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the multitude.

16 But Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard left *certain* of the poor of the land for vinedressers and for husbandmen.

17 Also the pillars of brass that *were* in the house of the YAHWEH, and the bases, and the brasen sea that *was* in the house of the YAHWEH, the Chaldeans brake, and carried all the brass of them to Babylon. [Jer 27:19](#);

18 The caldrons also, and the shovels, and the snuffers, and the bowls, and the spoons, and all the vessels of brass wherewith they ministered, took they away.

19 And the basins, and the firepans, and the bowls, and the caldrons, and the candlesticks, and the spoons, and the cups; *that* which *was* of gold *in* gold, and *that* which *was* of silver *in* silver, took the captain of the guard away.

20 The two pillars, one sea, and twelve brassen bulls that *were* under the bases, which king Solomon had made in the house of the YAHWEH: the brass of all these vessels was without weight. [1Kgs 7:23];

21 And *concerning* the pillars, the height of one pillar *was* eighteen cubits; and a fillet of twelve cubits did compass it; and the thickness thereof *was* four fingers: *it was* hollow. 1Kgs 7:15; 2Kgs 25:17; 2Chr 3:15;

22 And a chapter of brass *was* upon it; and the height of one chapter *was* five cubits, with network and pomegranates upon the chapters round about, all *of* brass. The second pillar also and the pomegranates *were* like unto these.

23 And there were ninety and six pomegranates on a side; *and* all the pomegranates upon the network *were* a hundred round about.

He carries away the captives

24 And the captain of the guard took Seraiah the chief priest, and Zephaniah the second priest, and the three keepers of the door:

25 He took also out of the city an eunuch, which had the charge of the men of war; and seven men of them that were near the king's person, which were found in the city; and the principal scribe of the host, who mustered the people of the land; and threescore men of the people of the land, that were found in the midst of the city.

26 So Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard took them, and brought them to the king of Babylon to Riblah.

27 And the king of Babylon smote them, and put them to death in Riblah in the land of Hamath. Thus Judah was carried away captive out of his own land.

The number of Jews carried captive

28 This *is* the people whom Nebuchadrezzar carried away captive: in the seventh year three thousand Jews and three and twenty: [2Kgs 24:16];

29 In the eighteenth year of Nebuchadrezzar he carried away captive from Jerusalem eight hundred thirty and two persons:

30 In the three and twentieth year of Nebuchadrezzar Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard carried away captive of the Jews seven hundred forty and five persons: all the persons *were* four thousand and six hundred.

Evil-merodach advances Jehoiachin

31 And it came to pass in the seven and thirtieth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, in the five and twentieth *day* of the month, *that* Evilmerodach king of Babylon in the *first* year of his reign lifted up the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah, and brought him forth out of prison, 2Kgs 25:27;

32 And spoke kindly unto him, and set his throne above the throne of the kings that *were* with him in Babylon,

33 And changed his prison garments: and he did continually eat bread before him all the days of his life.

34 And *for* his diet, there was a continual diet given him of the king of Babylon, every day a portion until the day of his death, all the days of his life.

Lamentations

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#)

LAMENTATIONS ONE

The miseries of Jerusalem and of the Jews pathetically lamented, with confessions of their sins

1 How does the city sit solitary, *that was* full of people! *how* is she become as a widow! she *that was* great among the nations, *and* princess among the provinces, *how* is she become tributary!

2 She weepeth sore in the night, and her tears *are* on her cheeks: among all her lovers she has none to comfort *her*: all her friends have dealt treacherously with her, they are become her enemies. [Ps 6:6](#); [[Jer 13:17](#)];

3 Judah is gone into captivity because of affliction, and because of great servitude: she dwelleth among the heathen, she finds no rest: all her persecutors overtook her between the straits.

4 The ways of Zion do mourn, because none come to the solemn feasts: all her gates are desolate: her priests sigh, her virgins are afflicted, and she *is* in bitterness.

5 Her adversaries are the chief, her enemies prosper; for the YAHWEH has afflicted her for the multitude of her transgressions: her children are gone into captivity before the enemy.

6 And from the daughter of Zion all her beauty is departed: her princes are become like harts *that* find no pasture, and they are gone without strength before the pursuer.

7 Jerusalem remembered in the days of her affliction and of her miseries all her pleasant things that she had in the days of old, when her people fell into the hand of the enemy, and none did help her: the adversaries saw her, *and* did mock at her Sabbaths.

8 Jerusalem has grievously sinned; therefore she is removed: all that honoured her despise her, because they have seen her nakedness: yes, she sigheth, and turneth backward. [Isa 47:3](#);

9 Her filthiness *is* in her skirts; she remembereth not her last end; therefore she came down wonderfully: she had no comforter. O YAHWEH, behold my affliction: for the enemy has magnified *himself*. [Deut 32:29](#);

10 The adversary has spread out his hand upon all her pleasant things: for she has seen *that* the heathen entered into her sanctuary, whom you didst command *that* they should not enter into thy congregation.

11 All her people sigh, they seek bread; they have given their pleasant things for meat to relieve the being: see, O YAHWEH, and consider; for I am become vile. [Jer 52:6](#);

The attention and compassion of beholders demanded to this unprecedented case

12 *Is it* nothing to you, all you that pass by? behold, and see if there be any sorrow like unto my sorrow, which is done unto me, wherewith the YAHWEH has afflicted *me* in the day of his fierce anger.

13 From above has he sent fire into my bones, and it prevaieth against them: he has spread a net for my feet, he has turned me back: he has made me desolate *and* faint all the day.

14 The yoke of my transgressions is bound by his hand: they are wreathed, *and* come up upon my neck: he has made my strength to fall, the Lord has delivered me into *their* hands, *from whom* I am not able to rise up.

15 The Lord has trodden under foot all my mighty *men* in the midst of me: he has called an assembly against me to crush my young men: the Lord has trodden the virgin, the daughter of Judah, *as* in a winepress.

16 For these *things* I weep; mine eye, mine eye runs down with water, because the comforter that should relieve my being is far from me: my children are desolate, because the enemy prevailed. [Jer 13:17](#); [[Jer 14:17](#)]; [[Lam 2:18](#)];

17 Zion spreadeth forth her hands, *and there is* none to comfort her: the YAHWEH has commanded concerning Jacob, *that* his adversaries *should be* round about him: Jerusalem is as a menstruous woman among them.

The justice of Elohim acknowledged, and his mercy supplicated, with prayers against insulting foes

18 The YAHWEH is righteous; for I have rebelled against his commandment: hear, I pray you, all people, and behold my sorrow: my virgins and my young men are gone into captivity. [[Zech 1:6](#)];

19 I called for my lovers, *but* they deceived me: my priests and mine elders gave up the ghost in the city, while they sought their meat to relieve their beings. [Jer 30:14](#);

20 Behold, O YAHWEH; for I *am* in distress: my bowels are troubled; mine heart is turned within me; for I have grievously rebelled: abroad the sword bereaveth, at home *there is* as death. [Isa 16:11](#); [Jer 48:36](#);

21 They have heard that I sigh: *there is* none to comfort me: all mine enemies have heard of my trouble; they are glad that you have done *it*: you will bring the day *that* you have called, and they shall be like unto me.

22 Let all their wickedness come before you; and do unto them, as you have done unto me for all my transgressions: for my sighs *are* many, and my heart *is* faint.

LAMENTATIONS TWO

Jeremiah laments the misery of Jerusalem

- 1** How has the Lord covered the daughter of Zion with a cloud in his anger, *and* cast down from heaven unto the earth the beauty of Israel, and remembered not his footstool in the day of his anger!
- 2** The Lord has swallowed up all the habitations of Jacob, and has not pitied: he has thrown down in his wrath the strong holds of the daughter of Judah; he has brought *them* down to the ground: he has polluted the kingdom and the princes thereof.
- 3** He has cut off in *his* fierce anger all the horn of Israel: he has drawn back his right hand from before the enemy, and he burned against Jacob like a flaming fire, *which* devoureth round about.
- 4** He has bent his bow like an enemy: he stood with his right hand as an adversary, and slew all *that were* pleasant to the eye in the tabernacle of the daughter of Zion: he poured out his fury like fire.
- 5** The Lord was as an enemy: he has swallowed up Israel, he has swallowed up all her palaces: he has destroyed his strong holds, and has increased in the daughter of Judah mourning and lamentation. [[Job 13:24](#)]; [[Job 19:11](#)];
- 6** And he has violently taken away his tabernacle, as *if it were* of a garden: he has destroyed his places of the assembly: the YAHWEH has caused the solemn feasts and Sabbaths to be forgotten in Zion, and has despised in the indignation of his anger the king and the priest.
- 7** The Lord has cast off his altar, he has abhorred his sanctuary, he has given up into the hand of the enemy the walls of her palaces; they have made a noise in the house of the YAHWEH, as in the day of a solemn feast.
- 8** The YAHWEH has purposed to destroy the wall of the daughter of Zion: he has stretched out a line, he has not withdrawn his hand from destroying: therefore he made the rampart and the wall to lament; they languished together.
- 9** Her gates are sunk into the ground; he has destroyed and broken her bars: her king and her princes *are* among the Gentiles: the law *is* no *more*; her prophets also find no vision from the YAHWEH.
- 10** The elders of the daughter of Zion sit upon the ground, *and* keep silence: they have cast up dust upon their heads; they have girded themselves with sackcloth: the virgins of Jerusalem hang down their heads to the ground.
- 11** Mine eyes do fail with tears, my bowels are troubled, my liver is poured upon the earth, for the destruction of the daughter of my people; because the children and the sucklings swoon in the streets of the city. [[Isa 51:20](#)];
- 12** They say to their mothers, Where *is* grain and wine? when they swooned as the wounded in the streets of the city, when their being was poured out into their mothers' bosom.
- 13** What thing shall I take to witness for you? what thing shall I liken to you, O daughter of Jerusalem? what shall I equal to you, that I may comfort you, O virgin daughter of Zion? for thy breach *is* great like the sea: who can heal you?
- 14** Thy prophets have seen vain and foolish things for you: and they have not discovered thine iniquity, to turn away thy captivity; but have seen for you false burdens and causes of banishment.
- 15** All that pass by clap *their* hands at you; they hiss and wag their head at the daughter of Jerusalem, *saying*, *Is* this the city that *men* call The perfection of beauty, The joy of the whole earth?
- 16** All thine enemies have opened their mouth against you: they hiss and gnash the teeth: they say, We have swallowed *her* up: certainly this *is* the day that we looked for; we have found, we have seen *it*.
- 17** The YAHWEH has done *that* which he had devised; he has fulfilled his word that he had commanded in the days of old: he has thrown down, and has not pitied: and he has caused *thine* enemy to rejoice over you, he has set up the horn of thine adversaries. [[Lev 26:14](#)]; [[Deut 28:15](#)]; [[Dan 9:11](#)];
- 18** Their heart cried unto the Lord, O wall of the daughter of Zion, let tears run down like a river day and night: give thyself no rest; let not the apple of thine eye cease. [Jer 14:17](#); [Lam 1:16](#);

19 Arise, cry out in the night: in the beginning of the watches pour out thine heart like water before the face of the Lord: lift up thy hands toward him for the life of thy young children, that faint for hunger in the top of every street.

He complains thereof to Elohim

20 Behold, O YAHWEH, and consider to whom you have done this. Shall the women eat their fruit, *and* children of a span long? shall the priest and the prophet be slain in the sanctuary of the Lord? [Lam 4:10](#);

21 The young and the old lie on the ground in the streets: my virgins and my young men are fallen by the sword; you have slain *them* in the day of thine anger; you have killed, *and* not pitied.

22 You have called as in a solemn day my terrors round about, so that in the day of the YAHWEH'S anger none escaped nor remained: those that I have swaddled and brought up has mine enemy consumed.

LAMENTATIONS THREE

The prophet bewails his own calamities

1 I *am* the man *that* has seen affliction by the rod of his wrath.

2 He has led me, and brought *me into* darkness, but not *into* light.

3 Surely against me is he turned; he turneth his hand *against me* all the day.

4 My flesh and my skin has he made old; he has broken my bones.

5 He has built against me, and compassed *me* with gall and travail.

6 He has set me in dark places, as *they that be* dead of old.

7 He has hedged me about, that I cannot get out: he has made my chain heavy.

8 Also when I cry and shout, he shutteth out my prayer.

9 He has inclosed my ways with hewn stone, he has made my paths crooked.

10 He *was* unto me *as* a bear lying in wait, *and as* a lion in secret places. [\[Job 10:16\]](#);

11 He has turned aside my ways, and pulled me in pieces: he has made me desolate.

12 He has bent his bow, and set me as a mark for the arrow. [\[Job 16:12\]](#);

13 He has caused the arrows of his quiver to enter into my reins.

14 I was a derision to all my people; *and* their song all the day. [\[Job 30:9\]](#);

15 He has filled me with bitterness, he has made me drunken with wormwood.

16 He has also broken my teeth with gravel stones, he has covered me with ashes.

17 And you have removed my being far off from peace: I forgot prosperity.

18 And I said, My strength and my hope is perished from the YAHWEH:

19 Remembering mine affliction and my misery, the wormwood and the gall.

20 My being has *them* still in remembrance, and is humbled in me.

21 This I recall to my mind, therefore have I hope.

By the mercies of Elohim, he nourishes his hope

22 *It is of* the YAHWEH'S mercies that we are not consumed, because his compassions fail not. [Isa 1:9](#); [Hab 3:13](#); [\[Dan 9:9\]](#);

23 *They are* new every morning: great *is* thy faithfulness. [Ps 30:5](#);

24 The YAHWEH *is* my portion, saith my being; therefore will I hope in him. [Hab 2:3](#); [\[Ps 16:5\]](#);

25 The YAHWEH *is* good unto them that wait for him, to the being *that* seeketh him.

26 *It is* good that *a man* should both hope and quietly wait for the salvation of the YAHWEH.

27 *It is* good for a man that he bear the yoke in his youth.

28 He sitteth alone and keepeth silence, because he has borne *it* upon him.

29 He puts his mouth in the dust; if so be there may be hope. [Acts 8:22](#);

- 30 He giveth *his* cheek to him that smiteth him: he is filled full with reproach.
31 For the Lord will not cast off for ever:
32 But though he cause grief, yet will he have compassion according to the multitude of his mercies.
33 For he does not afflict willingly nor grieve the children of men.
34 To crush under his feet all the prisoners of the earth,
35 To turn aside the right of a man before the face of the most High,
36 To subvert a man in his cause, the Lord approveth not.

He acknowledges Elohim's justice

- 37 Who *is* he *that* saith, and it cometh to pass, *when* the Lord commandeth *it* not? [Ps 33:9](#); [\[Amos 3:6\]](#);
38 Out of the mouth of the most High proceedeth not evil and good? [Isa 45:7](#); [Amos 3:6](#);
39 Wherefore does a living man complain, a man for the punishment of his sins?
40 Let us search and try our ways, and turn again to the YAHWEH.
41 Let us lift up our heart with *our* hands unto Elohim in the heavens.
42 We have transgressed and have rebelled: you have not pardoned.
43 **you** have covered with anger, and persecuted us: you have slain, you have not pitied.
44 **you** have covered thyself with a cloud, that *our* prayer should not pass through.
45 **you** have made us *as* the offscouring and refuse in the midst of the people.
46 All our enemies have opened their mouths against us.
47 Fear and a snare is come upon us, desolation and destruction.
48 Mine eye runs down with rivers of water for the destruction of the daughter of my people.
49 Mine eye trickleth down, and ceaseth not, without any intermission,
50 Till the YAHWEH look down, and behold from heaven.
51 Mine eye affecteth mine heart because of all the daughters of my city.
52 Mine enemies chased me sore, like a bird, without cause.
53 They have cut off my life in the dungeon, and cast a stone upon me.
54 Waters flowed over mine head; *then* I said, I am cut off.

He prays for deliverance

- 55 I called upon thy name, O YAHWEH, out of the low dungeon.
56 You have heard my voice: hide not thine ear at my breathing, at my cry.
57 You drewest near in the day *that* I called upon you: you saidst, Fear not.
58 O Lord, you have pleaded the causes of my being; you have redeemed my life.
59 O YAHWEH, you have seen my wrong: judge you my cause.
60 You have seen all their vengeance *and* all their imaginations against me.
61 You have heard their reproach, O YAHWEH, *and* all their imaginations against me;
62 The lips of those that rose up against me, and their device against me all the day.
63 Behold their sitting down, and their rising up; I *am* their musick. [\[Job 30:9\]](#);

and vengeance on his enemies

- 64 Render unto them a recompence, O YAHWEH, according to the work of their hands.
65 Give them sorrow of heart, thy curse unto them.
66 Persecute and destroy them in anger from under the heavens of the YAHWEH.

Zion bewails her pitiful estate

- 1** How is the gold become dim! *how* is the most fine gold changed! the stones of the sanctuary are poured out in the top of every street.
- 2** The precious sons of Zion, comparable to fine gold, how are they esteemed as earthen pitchers, the work of the hands of the potter!
- 3** Even the sea monsters draw out the breast, they give suck to their young ones: the daughter of my people *is become* cruel, like the ostriches in the wilderness.
- 4** The tongue of the sucking child cleaveth to the roof of his mouth for thirst: the young children ask bread, *and* no man breaketh *it* unto them.
- 5** They that did feed delicately are desolate in the streets: they that were brought up in scarlet embrace dunghills.
- 6** For the punishment of the iniquity of the daughter of my people is greater than the punishment of the sin of Sodom, that was overthrown as in a moment, and no hands stayed on her. [\[Gen 19:24\];](#)
- 7** Her Nazarites were purer than snow, they were whiter than milk, they were more ruddy in body than rubies, their polishing *was* of sapphire:
- 8** Their visage is blacker than a coal; they are not known in the streets: their skin cleaveth to their bones; it is withered, it is become like a stick. [\[Job 19:20\]; \[Job 30:30\];](#)
- 9** *They that be* slain with the sword are better than *they that be* slain with hunger: for these pine away, stricken through for *want of* the fruits of the field.
- 10** The hands of the pitiful women have sodden their own children: they were their meat in the destruction of the daughter of my people. [\[Lev 26:29\]; \[Deut 28:53\]; \[Jer 19:9\]; \[Lam 2:20\]; \[Ezek 5:10\];](#)
- 11** The YAHWEH has accomplished his fury; he has poured out his fierce anger, and has kindled a fire in Zion, and it has devoured the foundations thereof.
- 12** The kings of the earth, and all the inhabitants of the world, would not have believed that the adversary and the enemy should have entered into the gates of Jerusalem.

She confesses her sins

- 13** For the sins of her prophets, *and* the iniquities of her priests, that have shed the blood of the just in the midst of her, [\[Gen 9:6\];](#)
- 14** They have wandered *as* blind *men* in the streets, they have polluted themselves with blood, so that men could not touch their garments.
- 15** They cried unto them, Depart you; *it is* unclean; depart, depart, touch not: when they fled away and wandered, they said among the heathen, They shall no more sojourn *there*. [\[Lev 13:45\];](#)
- 16** The anger of the YAHWEH has divided them; he will no more regard them: they respected not the persons of the priests, they favored not the elders.
- 17** As for us, our eyes as yet failed for our vain help: in our watching we have watched for a nation *that* could not save *us*. [Ezek 29:16;](#)
- 18** They hunt our steps, that we cannot go in our streets: our end is near, our days are fulfilled; for our end is come.
- 19** Our persecutors are swifter than the eagles of the heaven: they pursued us upon the mountains, they laid wait for us in the wilderness.
- 20** The breath of our nostrils, the anointed of the YAHWEH, was taken in their pits, of whom we said, Under his shadow we shall live among the heathen.

Edom is threatened and Zion comforted

21 Rejoice and be glad, O daughter of Edom, that dwellest in the land of Uz; the cup also shall pass through unto you: you shall be drunken, and shall make thyself naked.

22 The punishment of thine iniquity is accomplished, O daughter of Zion; he will no more carry you away into captivity: he will visit thine iniquity, O daughter of Edom; he will discover thy sins.

LAMENTATIONS FIVE

A pitiful complaint of Zion in prayer unto Elohim

1 Remember, O YAHWEH, what is come upon us: consider, and behold our reproach.

2 Our inheritance is turned to strangers, our houses to aliens.

3 We are orphans and fatherless, our mothers *are* as widows.

4 We have drunken our water for money; our wood is sold unto us.

5 Our necks *are* under persecution: we labour, *and* have no rest.

6 We have given the hand *to* the Egyptians, *and to* the Assyrians, to be satisfied with bread. [[1Sam 2:5](#)];

7 Our fathers have sinned, *and are* not; and we have borne their iniquities.

8 Servants have ruled over us: *there is* none that delivers *us* out of their hand.

9 We got our bread with *the peril of* our lives because of the sword of the wilderness.

10 Our skin was black like an oven because of the terrible famine. [[Job 30:30](#)];

11 They ravished the women in Zion, *and* the maids in the cities of Judah.

12 Princes are hanged up by their hand: the faces of elders were not honoured.

13 They took the young men to grind, and the children fell under the wood.

14 The elders have ceased from the gate, the young men from their musick.

15 The joy of our heart is ceased; our dance is turned into mourning.

16 The crown is fallen *from* our head: woe unto us, that we have sinned!

17 For this our heart is faint; for these *things* our eyes are dim.

18 Because of the mountain of Zion, which is desolate, the foxes walk upon it.

19 You, O YAHWEH, remainest for ever; thy throne from generation to generation. [[Job 36:26](#)]; [[Ps 10:16](#)];

20 Wherefore dost you forget us for ever, *and* forsake us so long time?

21 Turn you us unto you, O YAHWEH, and we shall be turned; renew our days as of old. [[Jer 31:18](#)];

22 But you have utterly rejected us; you are very wroth against us.

Ezekiel

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#) [29](#) [30](#) [31](#)
[32](#) [33](#) [34](#) [35](#) [36](#) [37](#) [38](#) [39](#) [40](#) [41](#) [42](#) [43](#) [44](#) [45](#) [46](#) [47](#) [48](#)

EZEKIEL ONE

The time of Ezekiel's prophecy at Chebar

1 Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year, in the fourth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month, as I *was* among the captives by the river of Chebar, *that* the heavens were opened, and I saw visions of Elohim. [Ps 137:1](#);

2 In the fifth *day* of the month, which *was* the fifth year of king Jehoiachin's captivity,

3 The word of the YAHWEH came expressly unto Ezekiel the priest, the son of Buzi, in the land of the Chaldeans by the river Chebar; and the hand of the YAHWEH was there upon him. [\[Ezek 3:23\]](#); [\[Ezek 10:20\]](#);

His vision of four cherubims

4 And I looked, and, behold, a whirlwind came out of the north, a great cloud, and a fire infolding itself, and a brightness *was* about it, and out of the midst thereof as the colour of amber, out of the midst of the fire. [\[Ezek 43:3\]](#);

5 Also out of the midst thereof *came* the likeness of four living creatures. And this *was* their appearance; they had the likeness of a man.

6 And every one had four faces, and every one had four wings. [Ezek 10:14](#); [\[Ezek 10:21\]](#);

7 And their feet *were* straight feet; and the sole of their feet *was* like the sole of a calf's foot: and they sparkled like the colour of burnished brass.

8 And *they had* the hands of a man under their wings on their four sides; and they four had their faces and their wings. [Ezek 10:8](#); [\[Ezek 10:21\]](#);

9 Their wings *were* joined one to another; they turned not when they went; they went every one straight forward.

10 As for the likeness of their faces, they four had the face of a man, and the face of a lion, on the right side: and they four had the face of an ox on the left side; they four also had the face of an eagle. [Ezek 10:14](#); [Rev 4:7](#);

11 Thus *were* their faces: and their wings *were* stretched upward; two *wings* of every one *were* joined one to another, and two covered their bodies.

12 And they went every one straight forward: whither the spirit was to go, they went; *and* they turned not when they went.

13 As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance *was* like burning coals of fire, *and* like the appearance of lamps: it went up and down among the living creatures; and the fire was bright, and out of the fire went forth lightning.

14 And the living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a flash of lightning.

of the four wheels

15 Now as I beheld the living creatures, behold one wheel upon the earth by the living creatures, with his four faces.

16 The appearance of the wheels and their work *was* like unto the colour of a beryl: and they four had one likeness: and their appearance and their work *was* as it were a wheel in the middle of a wheel. [Ezek 10:9-10](#); [\[Ezek 10:9\]](#);

17 When they went, they went upon their four sides: *and* they turned not when they went.

18 As for their rings, they were so high that they were dreadful; and their rings *were* full of eyes round about them four. [Ezek 10:12](#);

19 And when the living creatures went, the wheels went by them: and when the living creatures were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up. [Ezek 10:16](#);

20 Whithersoever the spirit was to go, they went, thither *was their* spirit to go; and the wheels were lifted up over against them: for the spirit of the living creature *was* in the wheels. [\[Ezek 10:17\]](#);

21 When those went, *these* went; and when those stood, *these* stood; and when those were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up over against them: for the spirit of the living creature *was* in the wheels.

22 And the likeness of the firmament upon the heads of the living creature *was* as the colour of the terrible crystal, stretched forth over their heads above.

23 And under the firmament *were* their wings straight, the one toward the other: every one had two, which covered on this side, and every one had two, which covered on that side, their bodies.

24 And when they went, I heard the noise of their wings, like the noise of great waters, as the voice of the Almighty, the voice of speech, as the noise of a host: when they stood, they let down their wings. [\[Ezek 43:2\]](#);

25 And there was a voice from the firmament that *was* over their heads, when they stood, *and* had let down their wings.

and of the glory of Elohim

26 And above the firmament that *was* over their heads *was* the likeness of a throne, as the appearance of a sapphire stone: and upon the likeness of the throne *was* the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it. [\[Rev 1:13\]](#); [\[Rev 14:14\]](#);

27 And I saw as the colour of amber, as the appearance of fire round about within it, from the appearance of his loins even upward, and from the appearance of his loins even downward, I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and it had brightness round about.

28 As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain, so *was* the appearance of the brightness round about. This *was* the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the YAHWEH. And when I saw *it*, I fell upon my face, and I heard a voice of one that spoke. [Dan 10:9](#);

EZEKIEL TWO

Ezekiel's commission

1 And he said unto me, Son of man, stand upon thy feet, and I will speak unto you.

2 And the spirit entered into me when he spoke unto me, and set me upon my feet, that I heard him that spoke unto me. [Ezek 3:24](#); [Dan 10:10](#);

3 And he said unto me, Son of man, I send you to the children of Israel, to a rebellious nation that has rebelled against me: they and their fathers have transgressed against me, *even* unto this very day. [Jer 3:25](#); [\[Ezek 12:2\]](#);

4 For *they are* impudent children and stiffhearted. I do send you unto them; and you shall say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD.

5 And they, whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear, (for they *are* a rebellious house,) yet shall know that there has been a prophet among them. [Ezek 33:33](#); [\[Ezek 3:11\]](#); [\[Ezek 3:26\]](#); [\[Ezek 3:27\]](#);

His instruction

6 And you, son of man, be not afraid of them, neither be afraid of their words, though briers and thorns *be* with you, and you dost dwell among scorpions: be not afraid of their words, nor be dismayed at their looks, though they *be* a rebellious house. [Jer 1:8](#); [Jer 1:17](#); [Luke 12:4](#); [Ezek 3:9](#); [1Pet 3:14](#);

7 And you shall speak my words unto them, whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear: for they *are* most rebellious. [\[Ezek 3:11\]](#); [\[Ezek 3:27\]](#);

8 But you, son of man, hear what I say unto you; Be not you rebellious like that rebellious house: open thy mouth, and eat that I give you. [Rev 10:9](#);

The roll of his heavy prophecy

9 And when I looked, behold, a hand *was* sent unto me; and, lo, a roll of a book *was* therein;

10 And he spread it before me; and it *was* written within and without: and *there was* written therein lamentations, and mourning, and woe. [\[Rev 5:1\]](#);

EZEKIEL THREE

Ezekiel eats the roll

1 Moreover he said unto me, Son of man, eat that you findest; eat this roll, and go speak unto the house of Israel. [Jer 15:16](#); [Jer 2:8](#); [Rev 10:9](#);

2 So I opened my mouth, and he caused me to eat that roll.

3 And he said unto me, Son of man, cause thy belly to eat, and fill thy bowels with this roll that I give you. Then did I eat *it*; and it was in my mouth as honey for sweetness. [Ps 19:10](#); [Ps 119:103](#); [Rev 10:10](#);

Elohim encourages him

4 And he said unto me, Son of man, go, get you unto the house of Israel, and speak with my words unto them. [Jer 1:17](#);

5 For you are not sent to a people of a strange speech and of a hard language, *but* to the house of Israel;

6 Not to many people of a strange speech and of a hard language, whose words you canst not understand. Surely, had I sent you to them, they would have hearkened unto you.

7 But the house of Israel will not hearken unto you; for they will not hearken unto me: for all the house of Israel *are* impudent and hardhearted.

8 Behold, I have made thy face strong against their faces, and thy forehead strong against their foreheads. [Jer 1:18](#); [Mic 3:8](#);

9 As an adamant harder than flint have I made thy forehead: fear them not, neither be dismayed at their looks, though they *be* a rebellious house. [Jer 5:3](#); [Jer 1:8](#); [Jer 1:17](#); [Ezek 2:6](#); [1Pet 3:14](#);

10 Moreover he said unto me, Son of man, all my words that I shall speak unto you receive in thine heart, and hear with thine ears.

11 And go, get you to them of the captivity, unto the children of thy people, and speak unto them, and tell them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear. [Ezek 2:5](#); [Ezek 2:7](#);

12 Then the spirit took me up, and I heard behind me a voice of a great rushing, *saying*, Blessed *be* the glory of the YAHWEH from his place. [Ezek 8:3](#);

13 *I heard* also the noise of the wings of the living creatures that touched one another, and the noise of the wheels over against them, and a noise of a great rushing.

14 So the spirit lifted me up, and took me away, and I went in bitterness, in the heat of my spirit; but the hand of the YAHWEH was strong upon me.

Elohim shows him the rule of prophecy

15 Then I came to them of the captivity at Telabib, that dwelt by the river of Chebar, and I sat where they sat, and remained there astonished among them seven days. [Job 2:13](#);

16 And it came to pass at the end of seven days, that the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

17 Son of man, I have made you a watchman unto the house of Israel: therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me. [Isa 62:6](#); [Ezek 33:7](#); [1Tim 3:1](#);

18 When I say unto the wicked, you shall surely die; and you givest him not warning, nor speakest to warn the wicked from his wicked way, to save his life; the same wicked *man* shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thine hand. [Ezek 33:8](#); [[Heb 13:17](#)];

19 Yet if you warn the wicked, and he turn not from his wickedness, nor from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but you have delivered thy being.

20 Again, When a righteous *man* turns from his righteousness, and commit iniquity, and I lay a stumblingblock before him, he shall die: because you have not given him warning, he shall die in his sin, and his righteousness which he has done shall not be remembered; but his blood will I require at thine hand. [Ezek 18:24](#); [Ezek 33:12-13](#);

21 Nevertheless if you warn the righteous *man*, that the righteous sin not, and he does not sin, he shall surely live, because he is warned; also you have delivered thy being.

Elohim shuts and opens the prophet's mouth

22 And the hand of the YAHWEH was there upon me; and he said unto me, Arise, go forth into the plain, and I will there talk with you.

23 Then I arose, and went forth into the plain: and, behold, the glory of the YAHWEH stood there, as the glory which I saw by the river of Chebar: and I fell on my face. [Ezek 1:3](#); [[Ezek 8:4](#)];

24 Then the spirit entered into me, and set me upon my feet, and spoke with me, and said unto me, Go, shut thyself within thine house. [Ezek 2:2](#);

25 But you, O son of man, behold, they shall put bands upon you, and shall bind you with them, and you shall not go out among them:

26 And I will make thy tongue cleave to the roof of thy mouth, that you shall be dumb, and shall not be to them a reprover: for they *are* a rebellious house. [Ezek 2:5](#); [[Ezek 12:2](#)];

27 But when I speak with you, I will open thy mouth, and you shall say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; He that heareth, let him hear; and he that forbeareth, let him forbear: for they *are* a rebellious house. [Ezek 2:5](#); [Ezek 2:7](#);

EZEKIEL FOUR

Under the type of a siege is shown the time from the defection of Jeroboam to the captivity

1 You also, son of man, take you a tile, and lay it before you, and pourtray upon it the city, *even* Jerusalem:

2 And lay siege against it, and build a fort against it, and cast a mount against it; set the camp also against it, and set *battering* rams against it round about. [2Kgs 25:1](#); [[Ezek 17:17](#)]; [[Ezek 21:22](#)];

3 Moreover take you unto you an iron pan, and set it *for* a wall of iron between you and the city: and set thy face against it, and it shall be besieged, and you shall lay siege against it. This *shall be* a sign to the house of Israel.

4 Lie you also upon thy left side, and lay the iniquity of the house of Israel upon it: *according* to the number of the days that you shall lie upon it you shall bear their iniquity.

- 5** For I have laid upon you the years of their iniquity, according to the number of the days, three hundred and ninety days: so shall you bear the iniquity of the house of Israel. [Num 14:34](#);
- 6** And when you have accomplished them, lie again on thy right side, and you shall bear the iniquity of the house of Judah forty days: I have appointed you each day for a year.
- 7** Therefore you shall set thy face toward the siege of Jerusalem, and thine arm *shall be* uncovered, and you shall prophesy against it.
- 8** And, behold, I will lay bands upon you, and you shall not turn you from one side to another, till you have ended the days of thy siege.

By the provision of the siege, is shown the hardness of the famine

- 9** Take you also unto you wheat, and barley, and beans, and lentiles, and millet, and fitches, and put them in one vessel, and make you bread thereof, *according* to the number of the days that you shall lie upon thy side, three hundred and ninety days shall you eat thereof.
- 10** And thy meat which you shall eat *shall be* by weight, twenty shekels a day: from time to time shall you eat it.
- 11** You shall drink also water by measure, the sixth part of a hin: from time to time shall you drink.
- 12** And you shall eat it *as* barley cakes, and you shall bake it with dung that cometh out of man, in their sight.
- 13** And the YAHWEH said, Even thus shall the children of Israel eat their defiled bread among the Gentiles, whither I will drive them. [Hos 9:3](#);
- 14** Then said I, Ah Lord GOD! behold, my being has not been polluted: for from my youth up even till now have I not eaten of that which dieth of itself, or is torn in pieces; neither came there abominable flesh into my mouth.
- 15** Then he said unto me, Lo, I have given you cow's dung for man's dung, and you shall prepare thy bread therewith.
- 16** Moreover he said unto me, Son of man, behold, I will break the staff of bread in Jerusalem: and they shall eat bread by weight, and with care; and they shall drink water by measure, and with astonishment: [Lev 26:26](#); [Isa 3:1](#); [Ezek 5:16](#); [Ezek 14:13](#); [\[Ezek 12:19\]](#);
- 17** That they may want bread and water, and be astonished one with another, and consume away for their iniquity. [\[Ezek 21:7\]](#); [\[Ezek 24:23\]](#);

EZEKIEL FIVE

Under the type of hair

- 1** And you, son of man, take you a sharp knife, take you a barber's razor, and cause *it* to pass upon thine head and upon thy beard: then take you balances to weigh, and divide the *hair*.
- 2** You shall burn with fire a third part in the midst of the city, when the days of the siege are fulfilled: and you shall take a third part, *and* smite about it with a knife: and a third part you shall scatter in the wind; and I will draw out a sword after them.
- 3** You shall also take thereof a few in number, and bind them in thy skirts.
- 4** Then take of them again, and cast them into the midst of the fire, and burn them in the fire; *for* thereof shall a fire come forth into all the house of Israel.

is shown the judgment of Jerusalem for their rebellion

5 Thus saith the Lord GOD; This *is* Jerusalem: I have set it in the midst of the nations and countries *that are* round about her.

6 And she has changed my judgments into wickedness more than the nations, and my statutes more than the countries that *are* round about her: for they have refused my judgments and my statutes, they have not walked in them.

7 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you multiplied more than the nations that *are* round about you, *and* have not walked in my statutes, neither have kept my judgments, neither have done according to the judgments of the nations that *are* round about you; [Lev 18:24](#); [Lev 18:28](#);

8 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I, even I, *am* against you, and will execute judgments in the midst of you in the sight of the nations.

9 And I will do in you that which I have not done, and whereunto I will not do any more the like, because of all thine abominations.

10 Therefore the fathers shall eat the sons in the midst of you, and the sons shall eat their fathers; and I will execute judgments in you, and the whole remnant of you will I scatter into all the winds. [Lev 26:29](#); [Deut 28:53](#); [2Kgs 6:29](#); [Lam 4:10](#); [Jer 49:32](#); [Jer 49:36](#); [\[Ezek 12:14\]](#); [\[Ezek 17:21\]](#);

11 Wherefore, *as* I live, saith the Lord GOD; Surely, because you have defiled my sanctuary with all thy detestable things, and with all thine abominations, therefore will I also diminish you; neither shall mine eye spare, neither will I have any pity. [Ezek 7:4](#); [\[Ezek 8:18\]](#); [\[Ezek 9:10\]](#); [\[Ezek 24:14\]](#);

by famine, sword, and dispersion

12 A third part of you shall die with the pestilence, and with famine shall they be consumed in the midst of you: and a third part shall fall by the sword round about you; and I will scatter a third part into all the winds, and I will draw out a sword after them. [Jer 15:2](#); [\[Ezek 12:14\]](#); [\[Ezek 17:21\]](#);

13 Thus shall mine anger be accomplished, and I will cause my fury to rest upon them, and I will be comforted: and they shall know that I the YAHWEH have spoken *it* in my zeal, when I have accomplished my fury in them.

14 Moreover I will make you waste, and a reproach among the nations that *are* round about you, in the sight of all that pass by. [\[Ezek 22:4\]](#);

15 So it shall be a reproach and a taunt, an instruction and an astonishment unto the nations that *are* round about you, when I shall execute judgments in you in anger and in fury and in furious rebukes. I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*. [Deut 28:37](#); [\[Ezek 14:8\]](#);

16 When I shall send upon them the evil arrows of famine, which shall be for *their* destruction, *and* which I will send to destroy you: and I will increase the famine upon you, and will break your staff of bread: [2Kgs 6:25](#); [Isa 3:1](#); [Ezek 4:16](#); [Ezek 14:13](#); [Lev 26:26](#);

17 So will I send upon you famine and evil beasts, and they shall rob you; and pestilence and blood shall pass through you; and I will bring the sword upon you. I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*. [Lev 26:22](#);

EZEKIEL SIX

The judgment of Israel for their idolatry

1 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, set thy face toward the mountains of Israel, and prophesy against them, [Ezek 36:1](#);

3 And say, you mountains of Israel, hear the word of the Lord GOD; Thus saith the Lord GOD to the mountains, and to the hills, to the rivers, and to the valleys; Behold, I, *even* I, will bring a sword upon you, and I will destroy your high places.

4 And your altars shall be desolate, and your images shall be broken: and I will cast down your slain *men* before your idols.

5 And I will lay the dead carcasses of the children of Israel before their idols; and I will scatter your bones round about your altars.

6 In all your dwellingplaces the cities shall be laid waste, and the high places shall be desolate; that your altars may be laid waste and made desolate, and your idols may be broken and cease, and your images may be cut down, and your works may be abolished.

7 And the slain shall fall in the midst of you, and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

A remnant shall be blessed

8 Yet will I leave a remnant, that you may have *some* that shall escape the sword among the nations, when you shall be scattered through the countries.

9 And they that escape of you shall remember me among the nations whither they shall be carried captives, because I am broken with their whorish heart, which has departed from me, and with their eyes, which go a whoring after their idols: and they shall lothe themselves for the evils which they have committed in all their abominations. [\[Ezek 36:31\]](#);

10 And they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, *and that* I have not said in vain that I would do this evil unto them.

The faithful are exhorted to lament their abominations and calamities

11 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Smite with thine hand, and stamp with thy foot, and say, Alas for all the evil abominations of the house of Israel! for they shall fall by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence. [Ezek 21:17](#); [\[Ezek 21:12\]](#);

12 He that is far off shall die of the pestilence; and he that is near shall fall by the sword; and he that remaineth and is besieged shall die by the famine: thus will I accomplish my fury upon them.

13 Then shall you know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when their slain *men* shall be among their idols round about their altars, upon every high hill, in all the tops of the mountains, and under every green tree, and under every thick oak, the place where they did offer sweet savour to all their idols.

14 So will I stretch out my hand upon them, and make the land desolate, yes, more desolate than the wilderness toward Diblath, in all their habitations: and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

EZEKIEL SEVEN

The final desolation of Israel

1 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Also, you son of man, thus saith the Lord GOD unto the land of Israel; An end, the end is come upon the four corners of the land.

3 Now *is* the end *come* upon you, and I will send mine anger upon you, and will judge you according to thy ways, and will recompense upon you all thine abominations.

4 And mine eye shall not spare you, neither will I have pity: but I will recompense thy ways upon you, and thine abominations shall be in the midst of you: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH. [Ezek 5:11](#); [Ezek 8:18](#); [\[Ezek 9:10\]](#);

5 Thus saith the Lord GOD; An evil, an only evil, behold, is come.

6 An end is come, the end is come: it watcheth for you; behold, it is come.

7 The morning is come unto you, O you that dwellest in the land: the time is come, the day of trouble *is* near, and not the sounding again of the mountains.

8 Now will I shortly pour out my fury upon you, and accomplish mine anger upon you: and I will judge you according to thy ways, and will recompense you for all thine abominations.

9 And mine eye shall not spare, neither will I have pity: I will recompense you according to thy ways and thine abominations *that* are in the midst of you; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH that smiteth.

10 Behold the day, behold, it is come: the morning is gone forth; the rod has blossomed, pride has budded.

11 Violence is risen up into a rod of wickedness: none of them *shall remain*, nor of their multitude, nor of any of theirs: neither *shall there be* wailing for them.

12 The time is come, the day draweth near: let not the buyer rejoice, nor the seller mourn: for wrath *is* upon all the multitude thereof. [\[Isa 24:2\];](#)

13 For the seller shall not return to that which is sold, although they were yet alive: for the vision *is* touching the whole multitude thereof, *which* shall not return; neither shall any strengthen himself in the iniquity of his life.

14 They have blown the trumpet, even to make all ready; but none goes to the battle: for my wrath *is* upon all the multitude thereof.

15 The sword *is* without, and the pestilence and the famine within: he that *is* in the field shall die with the sword; and he that *is* in the city, famine and pestilence shall devour him.

The mournful repentance of them that escape

16 But they that escape of them shall escape, and shall be on the mountains like doves of the valleys, all of them mourning, every one for his iniquity.

17 All hands shall be feeble, and all knees shall be weak *as* water. [Isa 13:7; Jer 6:24; \[Ezek 21:7\];](#)

18 They shall also gird *themselves* with sackcloth, and horror shall cover them; and shame *shall be* upon all faces, and baldness upon all their heads. [Isa 15:2-3; Jer 48:37; \[Isa 15:2\];](#)

19 They shall cast their silver in the streets, and their gold shall be removed: their silver and their gold shall not be able to deliver them in the day of the wrath of the YAHWEH: they shall not satisfy their beings, neither fill their bowels: because it is the stumblingblock of their iniquity. [Prov 11:4; Zeph 1:18;](#)

The enemies defile the sanctuary because of the Israelites' abominations

20 As for the beauty of his ornament, he set it in majesty: but they made the images of their abominations *and* of their detestable things therein: therefore have I set it far from them.

21 And I will give it into the hands of the strangers for a prey, and to the wicked of the earth for a spoil; and they shall pollute it.

22 My face will I turn also from them, and they shall pollute my secret *place*: for the robbers shall enter into it, and defile it.

Under the type of a chain is shown the miserable captivity of all orders of men

23 Make a chain: for the land is full of bloody crimes, and the city is full of violence.

24 Wherefore I will bring the worst of the heathen, and they shall possess their houses: I will also make the pomp of the strong to cease; and their holy places shall be defiled.

25 Destruction cometh; and they shall seek peace, and *there shall be* none.

26 Mischief shall come upon mischief, and rumour shall be upon rumour; then shall they seek a vision of the prophet; but the law shall perish from the priest, and counsel from the elders.

27 The king shall mourn, and the prince shall be clothed with desolation, and the hands of the people of the land shall be troubled: I will do unto them after their way, and according to their deserts will I judge them; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH. [\[Job 34:11\]; \[Ps 62:12\]; \[Ezek 21:12\];](#)

Ezekiel, in a vision of Elohim at Jerusalem

1 And it came to pass in the sixth year, in the sixth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month, *as* I sat in mine house, and the elders of Judah sat before me, that the hand of the Lord GOD fell there upon me.

2 Then I beheld, and lo a likeness as the appearance of fire: from the appearance of his loins even downward, fire; and from his loins even upward, as the appearance of brightness, as the colour of amber.

3 And he put forth the form of a hand, and took me by a lock of mine head; and the spirit lifted me up between the earth and the heaven, and brought me in the visions of Elohim to Jerusalem, to the door of the inner gate that looketh toward the north; where *was* the seat of the image of jealousy, which provoketh to jealousy. [Dan 5:5](#); [\[Ezek 3:12\]](#);

4 And, behold, the glory of the Elohim of Israel *was* there, according to the vision that I saw in the plain. [Ezek 3:23](#); [\[Ezek 43:3\]](#);

is shown the image of jealousy

5 Then said he unto me, Son of man, lift up thine eyes now the way toward the north. So I lifted up mine eyes the way toward the north, and behold northward at the gate of the altar this image of jealousy in the entry.

6 He said furthermore unto me, Son of man, seest you what they do? *even* the great abominations that the house of Israel committeth here, that I should go far off from my sanctuary? but turn you yet again, *and* you shall see greater abominations.

the chambers of imagery

7 And he brought me to the door of the court; and when I looked, behold a hole in the wall.

8 Then said he unto me, Son of man, dig now in the wall: and when I had digged in the wall, behold a door.

9 And he said unto me, Go in, and behold the wicked abominations that they do here.

10 So I went in and saw; and behold every form of creeping things, and abominable beasts, and all the idols of the house of Israel, pourtrayed upon the wall round about.

11 And there stood before them seventy men of the elders of the house of Israel, and in the midst of them stood Jaazaniah the son of Shaphan, with every man his censer in his hand; and a thick cloud of incense went up.

12 Then said he unto me, Son of man, have you seen what the elders of the house of Israel do in the dark, every man in the chambers of his imagery? for they say, The YAHWEH seeth us not; the YAHWEH has forsaken the earth. [Ezek 9:9](#);

the mourners for Tammuz

13 He said also unto me, Turn you yet again, *and* you shall see greater abominations that they do.

14 Then he brought me to the door of the gate of the YAHWEH'S house which *was* toward the north; and, behold, there sat women weeping for Tammuz.

15 Then said he unto me, have you seen *this*, O son of man? turn you yet again, *and* you shall see greater abominations than these.

the worshippers toward the sun

16 And he brought me into the inner court of the YAHWEH'S house, and, behold, at the door of the temple of the YAHWEH, between the porch and the altar, *were* about five and twenty men, with their

backs toward the temple of the YAHWEH, and their faces toward the east; and they worshipped the sun toward the east.

Elohim's wrath for their idolatry

17 Then he said unto me, have you seen *this*, O son of man? Is it a light thing to the house of Judah that they commit the abominations which they commit here? for they have filled the land with violence, and have returned to provoke me to anger: and, lo, they put the branch to their nose.

18 Therefore will I also deal in fury: mine eye shall not spare, neither will I have pity: and though they cry in mine ears with a loud voice, yet will I not hear them. [Ezek 5:11](#); [Ezek 7:4](#); [Prov 1:28](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Jer 11:11](#); [\[Job 27:9\]](#); [\[Prov 1:27\]](#); [\[Jer 14:12\]](#); [\[Ezek 9:10\]](#);

EZEKIEL NINE

A vision, whereby is shown the preservation of some

1 He cried also in mine ears with a loud voice, saying, Cause them that have charge over the city to draw near, even every man *with* his destroying weapon in his hand.

2 And, behold, six men came from the way of the higher gate, which lies toward the north, and every man a slaughter weapon in his hand; and one man among them *was* clothed with linen, with a writer's inkhorn by his side: and they went in, and stood beside the brasen altar.

3 And the glory of the Elohim of Israel was gone up from the cherub, whereupon he was, to the threshold of the house. And he called to the man clothed with linen, which *had* the writer's inkhorn by his side;

4 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Go through the midst of the city, through the midst of Jerusalem, and set a mark upon the foreheads of the men that sigh and that cry for all the abominations that be done in the midst thereof. [\[Rev 7:3\]](#); [\[Rev 9:4\]](#);

and the destruction of the rest

5 And to the others he said in mine hearing, Go you after him through the city, and smite: let not your eye spare, neither have you pity:

6 Slay utterly old *and* young, both maids, and little children, and women: but come not near any man upon whom *is* the mark; and begin at my sanctuary. Then they began at the old men which *were* before the house.

7 And he said unto them, Defile the house, and fill the courts with the slain: go you forth. And they went forth, and slew in the city.

Elohim cannot be intreated for them

8 And it came to pass, while they were slaying them, and I was left, that I fell upon my face, and cried, and said, Ah Lord GOD! will you destroy all the residue of Israel in thy pouring out of thy fury upon Jerusalem?

9 Then said he unto me, The iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah *is* exceeding great, and the land is full of blood, and the city full of perverseness: for they say, The YAHWEH has forsaken the earth, and the YAHWEH seeth not. [\[Ezek 8:12\]](#);

10 And as for me also, mine eye shall not spare, neither will I have pity, *but* I will recompense their way upon their head. [Ezek 5:11](#); [Ezek 7:4](#); [Ezek 8:18](#); [\[Ezek 11:21\]](#); [\[Ezek 16:43\]](#); [\[Ezek 22:31\]](#);

11 And, behold, the man clothed with linen, which *had* the inkhorn by his side, reported the matter, saying, I have done as you have commanded me.

The vision of the coals of fire, to be scattered over the city

- 1** Then I looked, and, behold, in the firmament that was above the head of the cherubims there appeared over them as it were a sapphire stone, as the appearance of the likeness of a throne.
- 2** And he spoke unto the man clothed with linen, and said, Go in between the wheels, *even* under the cherub, and fill thine hand with coals of fire from between the cherubims, and scatter *them* over the city. And he went in in my sight.
- 3** Now the cherubims stood on the right side of the house, when the man went in; and the cloud filled the inner court.
- 4** Then the glory of the YAHWEH went up from the cherub, *and stood* over the threshold of the house; and the house was filled with the cloud, and the court was full of the brightness of the YAHWEH'S glory.
- 5** And the sound of the cherubims' wings was heard *even* to the outer court, as the voice of the Almighty Elohim when he speaketh.
- 6** And it came to pass, *that* when he had commanded the man clothed with linen, saying, Take fire from between the wheels, from between the cherubims; then he went in, and stood beside the wheels.
- 7** And *one* cherub stretched forth his hand from between the cherubims unto the fire that *was* between the cherubims, and took *thereof*, and put *it* into the hands of *him that was* clothed with linen: who took *it*, and went out.

The vision of the cherubims

- 8** And there appeared in the cherubims the form of a man's hand under their wings. [\[Ezek 1:8\]; \[Ezek 10:21\];](#)
- 9** And when I looked, behold the four wheels by the cherubims, one wheel by one cherub, and another wheel by another cherub: and the appearance of the wheels *was* as the colour of a beryl stone. [Ezek 1:16;](#)
- 10** And *as for* their appearances, they four had one likeness, as if a wheel had been in the midst of a wheel.
- 11** When they went, they went upon their four sides; they turned not as they went, but to the place whither the head looked they followed it; they turned not as they went.
- 12** And their whole body, and their backs, and their hands, and their wings, and the wheels, *were* full of eyes round about, *even* the wheels that they four had. [\[Ezek 1:18\];](#)
- 13** As for the wheels, it was cried unto them in my hearing, O wheel.
- 14** And every one had four faces: the first face *was* the face of a cherub, and the second face *was* the face of a man, and the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle. [\[Ezek 1:6\]; \[Ezek 1:10\]; \[Ezek 10:21\];](#)
- 15** And the cherubims were lifted up. This *is* the living creature that I saw by the river of Chebar.
- 16** And when the cherubims went, the wheels went by them: and when the cherubims lifted up their wings to mount up from the earth, the same wheels also turned not from beside them. [Ezek 1:19;](#)
- 17** When they stood, *these* stood; and when they were lifted up, *these* lifted up themselves *also*: for the spirit of the living creature *was* in them. [Ezek 1:20;](#)
- 18** Then the glory of the YAHWEH departed from off the threshold of the house, and stood over the cherubims.
- 19** And the cherubims lifted up their wings, and mounted up from the earth in my sight: when they went out, the wheels also *were* beside them, and *every one* stood at the door of the east gate of the YAHWEH'S house; and the glory of the Elohim of Israel *was* over them above.
- 20** This *is* the living creature that I saw under the Elohim of Israel by the river of Chebar; and I knew that they *were* the cherubims. [Ezek 1:3;](#)
- 21** Every one had four faces apiece, and every one four wings; and the likeness of the hands of a man *was* under their wings. [Ezek 1:6; Ezek 1:8; Ezek 10:8; Ezek 10:14;](#)

22 And the likeness of their faces *was* the same faces which I saw by the river of Chebar, their appearances and themselves: they went every one straight forward.

EZEKIEL ELEVEN

The presumption of the princes

1 Moreover the spirit lifted me up, and brought me unto the east gate of the YAHWEH'S house, which looketh eastward: and behold at the door of the gate five and twenty men; among whom I saw Jaazaniah the son of Azur, and Pelatiah the son of Benaiah, princes of the people.

2 Then said he unto me, Son of man, these *are* the men that devise mischief, and give wicked counsel in this city:

3 Which say, *It is* not near; let us build houses: this *city is* the caldron, and we *be* the flesh.

Their sin and judgment

4 Therefore prophesy against them, prophesy, O son of man.

5 And the Spirit of the YAHWEH fell upon me, and said unto me, Speak; Thus saith the YAHWEH; Thus have you said, O house of Israel: for I know the things that come into your mind, *every one of* them.

6 You have multiplied your slain in this city, and you have filled the streets thereof with the slain.

7 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Your slain whom you have laid in the midst of it, they *are* the flesh, and this *city is* the caldron: but I will bring you forth out of the midst of it.

8 You have feared the sword; and I will bring a sword upon you, saith the Lord GOD.

9 And I will bring you out of the midst thereof, and deliver you into the hands of strangers, and will execute judgments among you.

10 You shall fall by the sword; I will judge you in the border of Israel; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

11 This *city* shall not be your caldron, neither shall you be the flesh in the midst thereof; *but* I will judge you in the border of Israel:

12 And you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH: for you have not walked in my statutes, neither executed my judgments, but have done after the manners of the heathen that *are* round about you.

Ezekiel complaining, Elohim shows him his purpose in saving a remnant

13 And it came to pass, when I prophesied, that Pelatiah the son of Benaiah died. Then fell I down upon my face, and cried with a loud voice, and said, Ah Lord GOD! will you make a full end of the remnant of Israel?

14 Again the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

15 Son of man, thy brethren, *even* thy brethren, the men of thy kindred, and all the house of Israel wholly, *are* they unto whom the inhabitants of Jerusalem have said, Get you far from the YAHWEH: unto us is this land given in possession.

16 Therefore say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Although I have cast them far off among the heathen, and although I have scattered them among the countries, yet will I be to them as a little sanctuary in the countries where they shall come.

17 Therefore say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will even gather you from the people, and assemble you out of the countries where you have been scattered, and I will give you the land of Israel.

18 And they shall come thither, and they shall take away all the detestable things thereof and all the abominations thereof from thence.

19 And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them a heart of flesh: [Jer 32:39](#); [Ezek 36:26](#); [\[Deut 30:6\]](#); [\[Jer 24:7\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:31\]](#); [\[Acts 2:17\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:3\]](#);

20 That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their Elohim. [Jer 24:7](#); [Jer 30:22](#); [Jer 31:1](#); [Jer 32:38](#); [\[Ezek 37:27\]](#);

and punishing the wicked

21 But *as for them* whose heart walketh after the heart of their detestable things and their abominations, I will recompense their way upon their own heads, saith the Lord GOD. [Ezek 9:10](#); [\[Ezek 16:43\]](#); [\[Ezek 22:31\]](#);

The glory of Elohim leaves the city

22 Then did the cherubims lift up their wings, and the wheels beside them; and the glory of the Elohim of Israel *was* over them above.

23 And the glory of the YAHWEH went up from the midst of the city, and stood upon the mountain which *is* on the east side of the city.

Ezekiel is returned to the captivity

24 Afterwards the spirit took me up, and brought me in a vision by the Spirit of Elohim into Chaldea, to them of the captivity. So the vision that I had seen went up from me.

25 Then I spoke unto them of the captivity all the things that the YAHWEH had showed me.

EZEKIEL TWELVE

Under the type of Ezekiels's removing

1 The word of the YAHWEH also came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, you dwellest in the midst of a rebellious house, which have eyes to see, and see not; they have ears to hear, and hear not: for they *are* a rebellious house. [Ezek 2:3-8](#); [Ezek 3:26-27](#); [Isa 6:9](#); [Jer 5:21](#); [\[Luke 8:10\]](#); [\[John 12:40\]](#); [\[Acts 28:26\]](#); [\[Rom 11:8\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:14\]](#);

3 Therefore, you son of man, prepare you stuff for removing, and remove by day in their sight; and you shall remove from thy place to another place in their sight: it may be they will consider, though they *be* a rebellious house.

4 Then shall you bring forth thy stuff by day in their sight, as stuff for removing: and you shall go forth at even in their sight, as they that go forth into captivity.

5 Dig you through the wall in their sight, and carry out thereby.

6 In their sight shall you bear *it* upon *thy* shoulders, *and* carry *it* forth in the twilight: you shall cover thy face, that you see not the ground: for I have set you *for* a sign unto the house of Israel. [\[Ezek 24:24\]](#);

7 And I did so as I was commanded: I brought forth my stuff by day, as stuff for captivity, and in the even I digged through the wall with mine hand; I brought *it* forth in the twilight, *and* I bore *it* upon *my* shoulder in their sight.

is shown the captivity of Zedekiah

8 And in the morning came the word of the YAHWEH unto me, saying,

9 Son of man, has not the house of Israel, the rebellious house, said unto you, What do you do?

10 Say you unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; This burden *concerneth* the prince in Jerusalem, and all the house of Israel that *are* among them.

11 Say, I *am* your sign: like as I have done, so shall it be done unto them: they shall remove *and* go into captivity.

12 And the prince that *is* among them shall bear upon *his* shoulder in the twilight, and shall go forth: they shall dig through the wall to carry out thereby: he shall cover his face, that he see not the ground with *his* eyes. [2Kgs 25:4](#);

13 My net also will I spread upon him, and he shall be taken in my snare: and I will bring him to Babylon *to* the land of the Chaldeans; yet shall he not see it, though he shall die there. [Ezek 17:20](#); [\[Ezek 32:3\]](#);
14 And I will scatter toward every wind all that *are* about him to help him, and all his bands; and I will draw out the sword after them. [Ezek 5:10](#); [Ezek 5:12](#); [\[Ezek 17:21\]](#); [\[Ezek 22:15\]](#);
15 And they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I shall scatter them among the nations, and disperse them in the countries.
16 But I will leave a few men of them from the sword, from the famine, and from the pestilence; that they may declare all their abominations among the heathen whither they come; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

Ezekiel's trembling shows the Jews' desolation

17 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came to me, saying,
18 Son of man, eat thy bread with quaking, and drink thy water with trembling and with carefulness;
19 And say unto the people of the land, Thus saith the Lord GOD of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, *and* of the land of Israel; They shall eat their bread with carefulness, and drink their water with astonishment, that her land may be desolate from all that is therein, because of the violence of all them that dwell therein. [Ezek 4:16](#);
20 And the cities that are inhabited shall be laid waste, and the land shall be desolate; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

The Jews' presumptuous proverb is reproved

21 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
22 Son of man, what *is* that proverb *that* you have in the land of Israel, saying, The days are prolonged, and every vision faileth? [\[2Pet 3:4\]](#);
23 Tell them therefore, Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will make this proverb to cease, and they shall no more use it as a proverb in Israel; but say unto them, The days are at hand, and the effect of every vision.
24 For there shall be no more any vain vision nor flattering divination within the house of Israel.
25 For I *am* the YAHWEH: I will speak, and the word that I shall speak shall come to pass; it shall be no more prolonged: for in your days, O rebellious house, will I say the word, and will perform it, saith the Lord GOD.

The speediness of the vision

26 Again the word of the YAHWEH came to me, saying,
27 Son of man, behold, *they of* the house of Israel say, The vision that he seeth *is* for many days *to come*, and he prophesieth of the times *that are* far off. [\[Amos 6:3\]](#);
28 Therefore say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; There shall none of my words be prolonged any more, but the word which I have spoken shall be done, saith the Lord GOD.

EZEKIEL THIRTEEN

The reproof of lying prophets

1 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying, [\[Ezek 14:9\]](#);
2 Son of man, prophesy against the prophets of Israel that prophesy, and say you unto them that prophesy out of their own hearts, Hear you the word of the YAHWEH;

3 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Woe unto the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit, and have seen nothing!

4 O Israel, thy prophets are like the foxes in the deserts. [\[Song 2:15\];](#)

5 You have not gone up into the gaps, neither made up the hedge for the house of Israel to stand in the battle in the day of the YAHWEH.

6 They have seen vanity and lying divination, saying, The YAHWEH saith: and the YAHWEH has not sent them: and they have made *others* to hope that they would confirm the word. [\[Jer 5:31\];](#)

7 Have you not seen a vain vision, and have you not spoken a lying divination, whereas you say, The YAHWEH saith *it*; albeit I have not spoken?

8 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you have spoken vanity, and seen lies, therefore, behold, I *am* against you, saith the Lord GOD.

9 And mine hand shall be upon the prophets that see vanity, and that divine lies: they shall not be in the assembly of my people, neither shall they be written in the writing of the house of Israel, neither shall they enter into the land of Israel; and you shall know that I *am* the Lord GOD. [\[Ezek 14:9\];](#)

and their untempered mortar

10 Because, even because they have seduced my people, saying, Peace; and *there was* no peace; and one built up a wall, and, lo, others daubed it with untempered mortar: [\[Jer 6:14\]; \[Jer 23:17\]; \[Ezek 22:28\];](#)

11 Say unto them which daub *it* with untempered mortar, that it shall fall: there shall be an overflowing shower; and you, O great hailstones, shall fall; and a stormy wind shall rend *it*. [\[Matt 7:26\];](#)

12 Lo, when the wall is fallen, shall it not be said unto you, Where *is* the daubing wherewith you have daubed *it*?

13 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; I will even rend *it* with a stormy wind in my fury; and there shall be an overflowing shower in mine anger, and great hailstones in *my* fury to consume *it*.

14 So will I break down the wall that you have daubed with untempered mortar, and bring it down to the ground, so that the foundation thereof shall be discovered, and it shall fall, and you shall be consumed in the midst thereof: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

15 Thus will I accomplish my wrath upon the wall, and upon them that have daubed it with untempered mortar, and will say unto you, The wall *is* no *more*, neither they that daubed it;

16 *To wit*, the prophets of Israel which prophesy concerning Jerusalem, and which see visions of peace for her, and *there is* no peace, saith the Lord GOD.

Of prophetesses and their pillows

17 Likewise, you son of man, set thy face against the daughters of thy people, which prophesy out of their own heart; and prophesy you against them,

18 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Woe to those who sew cushions for all joints of the hand, and make veils upon the head of every stature to hunt beings! Will you hunt the beings of my people, and will you save the beings alive *that come* unto you? [\[Rom 16:18\];](#)

19 And will you pollute me among my people for handfuls of barley and for pieces of bread, to slay the beings that should not die, and to save the beings alive that should not live, by your lying to my people that hear *your* lies? [Mic 3:5;](#)

20 Wherefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against your pillows, wherewith you there hunt the beings to make *them* fly, and I will tear them from your arms, and will let the beings go, *even* the beings that you hunt to make *them* fly.

21 Your kerchiefs also will I tear, and deliver my people out of your hand, and they shall be no more in your hand to be hunted; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

22 Because with lies you have made the heart of the righteous sad, whom I have not made sad; and strengthened the hands of the wicked, that he should not return from his wicked way, by promising him life:

23 Therefore you shall see no more vanity, nor divine divinations: for I will deliver my people out of your hand: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

EZEKIEL FOURTEEN

Elohim answers idolaters according to their own heart

1 Then came certain of the elders of Israel unto me, and sat before me. [Ezek 20:1](#); [\[Ezek 33:31\]](#);

2 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

3 Son of man, these men have set up their idols in their heart, and put the stumblingblock of their iniquity before their face: should I be enquired of at all by them? [\[Ezek 20:1\]](#);

4 Therefore speak unto them, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Every man of the house of Israel that setteth up his idols in his heart, and puts the stumblingblock of his iniquity before his face, and cometh to the prophet; I the YAHWEH will answer him that cometh according to the multitude of his idols;

5 That I may take the house of Israel in their own heart, because they are all estranged from me through their idols.

They are exhorted to repent, for fear of judgments, by means of seduced prophets

6 Therefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Repent, and turn *yourselves* from your idols; and turn away your faces from all your abominations.

7 For every one of the house of Israel, or of the stranger that sojourneth in Israel, which separateth himself from me, and setteth up his idols in his heart, and puts the stumblingblock of his iniquity before his face, and cometh to a prophet to enquire of him concerning me; I the YAHWEH will answer him by myself:

8 And I will set my face against that man, and will make him a sign and a proverb, and I will cut him off from the midst of my people; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH. [Deut 28:37](#); [Ezek 5:15](#);

9 And if the prophet be deceived when he has spoken a thing, I the YAHWEH have deceived that prophet, and I will stretch out my hand upon him, and will destroy him from the midst of my people Israel. [Ezek 13:1-2](#); [Ezek 13:9](#); [\[2Chr 18:22\]](#);

10 And they shall bear the punishment of their iniquity: the punishment of the prophet shall be even as the punishment of him that seeketh *unto him*;

11 That the house of Israel may go no more astray from me, neither be polluted any more with all their transgressions; but that they may be my people, and I may be their Elohim, saith the Lord GOD.

Elohim's irrevocable sentence of famine

12 The word of the YAHWEH came again to me, saying,

13 Son of man, when the land sinneth against me by trespassing grievously, then will I stretch out mine hand upon it, and will break the staff of the bread thereof, and will send famine upon it, and will cut off man and beast from it: [Lev 26:26](#); [Ezek 4:16](#); [Ezek 5:16](#);

14 Though these three men, Noah, Daniel, and Job, were in it, they should deliver *but* their own beings by their righteousness, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Jer 15:1\]](#);

of noisome beasts

15 If I cause noisome beasts to pass through the land, and they spoil it, so that it be desolate, that no man may pass through because of the beasts:

16 Though these three men *were* in it, *as* I live, saith the Lord GOD, they shall deliver neither sons nor daughters; they only shall be delivered, but the land shall be desolate.

of the sword

17 Or *if* I bring a sword upon that land, and say, Sword, go through the land; so that I cut off man and beast from it:

18 Though these three men *were* in it, *as* I live, saith the Lord GOD, they shall deliver neither sons nor daughters, but they only shall be delivered themselves.

and of pestilence

19 Or *if* I send a pestilence into that land, and pour out my fury upon it in blood, to cut off from it man and beast:

20 Though Noah, Daniel, and Job, *were* in it, *as* I live, saith the Lord GOD, they shall deliver neither son nor daughter; they shall *but* deliver their own beings by their righteousness.

21 For thus saith the Lord GOD; How much more when I send my four sore judgments upon Jerusalem, the sword, and the famine, and the noisome beast, and the pestilence, to cut off from it man and beast? [\[Hos 2:18\];](#)

A remnant shall be reserved for example of others

22 Yet, behold, therein shall be left a remnant that shall be brought forth, *both* sons and daughters: behold, they shall come forth unto you, and you shall see their way and their doings: and you shall be comforted concerning the evil that I have brought upon Jerusalem, *even* concerning all that I have brought upon it.

23 And they shall comfort you, when you see their ways and their doings: and you shall know that I have not done without cause all that I have done in it, saith the Lord GOD.

EZEKIEL FIFTEEN

By the unfitness of the vine branch for any work

- 1 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
- 2 Son of man, What is the vine tree more than any tree, *or than* a branch which is among the trees of the forest? [John 15:6];
- 3 Shall wood be taken thereof to do any work? or will *men* take a pin of it to hang any vessel thereon?
- 4 Behold, it is cast into the fire for fuel; the fire devoureth both the ends of it, and the midst of it is burned. Is it meet for *any* work?
- 5 Behold, when it was whole, it was meet for no work: how much less shall it be meet yet for *any* work, when the fire has devoured it, and it is burned?

is shown the rejection of Jerusalem

- 6 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; As the vine tree among the trees of the forest, which I have given to the fire for fuel, so will I give the inhabitants of Jerusalem.
- 7 And I will set my face against them; they shall go out from *one* fire, and *another* fire shall devour them; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I set my face against them.
- 8 And I will make the land desolate, because they have committed a trespass, saith the Lord GOD.

EZEKIEL SIXTEEN

Under the similitude of a wretched infant is shown the natural state of Jerusalem

- 1 Again the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
- 2 Son of man, cause Jerusalem to know her abominations,
- 3 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD unto Jerusalem; Thy birth and thy nativity *is* of the land of Canaan; thy father *was* an Amorite, and thy mother an Hittite.
- 4 And *as for* thy nativity, in the day you were born thy navel was not cut, neither were you washed in water to supple you; you were not salted at all, nor swaddled at all.
- 5 None eye pitied you, to do any of these unto you, to have compassion upon you; but you were cast out in the open field, to the lothing of thy person, in the day that you were born.

Elohim's extraordinary love towards her

- 6 And when I passed by you, and saw you polluted in thine own blood, I said unto you *when you were* in thy blood, Live; yes, I said unto you *when you were* in thy blood, Live.
- 7 I have caused you to multiply as the bud of the field, and you have increased and waxen great, and you are come to excellent ornaments: *thy* breasts are fashioned, and thine hair is grown, whereas you *were* naked and bare.
- 8 Now when I passed by you, and looked upon you, behold, thy time *was* the time of love; and I spread my skirt over you, and covered thy nakedness: yes, I swore unto you, and entered into a covenant with you, saith the Lord GOD, and you becamest mine. [Gen 22:16; Gen 24:7; [Ezek 16:59];
- 9 Then washed I you with water; yes, I thoroughly washed away thy blood from you, and I anointed you with oil.
- 10 I clothed you also with broidered work, and shod you with badgers' skin, and I girded you about with fine linen, and I covered you with silk.

11 I decked you also with ornaments, and I put bracelets upon thy hands, and a chain on thy neck. [\[Song 1:10\]](#);

12 And I put a jewel on thy forehead, and earrings in thine ears, and a beautiful crown upon thine head.

13 Thus were you decked with gold and silver; and thy raiment *was of* fine linen, and silk, and brodered work; you didst eat fine flour, and honey, and oil: and you were exceeding beautiful, and you didst prosper into a kingdom.

14 And thy renown went forth among the heathen for thy beauty: for it *was* perfect through my comeliness, which I had put upon you, saith the Lord GOD.

Her monstrous whoredom

15 But you didst trust in thine own beauty, and playedst the harlot because of thy renown, and pouredst out thy fornications on every one that passed by; his it was.

16 And of thy garments you didst take, and deckedst thy high places with different colours, and playedst the harlot thereupon: *the like things* shall not come, neither shall it be *so*.

17 You have also taken thy fair jewels of my gold and of my silver, which I had given you, and madest to thyself images of men, and didst commit whoredom with them,

18 And tookest thy brodered garments, and coveredst them: and you have set mine oil and mine incense before them.

19 My meat also which I gave you, fine flour, and oil, and honey, *wherewith* I fed you, you have even set it before them for a sweet savour: and *thus* it was, saith the Lord GOD.

20 Moreover you have taken thy sons and thy daughters, whom you have borne unto me, and these have you sacrificed unto them to be devoured. *Is this* of thy whoredoms a small matter,

21 That you have slain my children, and delivered them to cause them to pass through *the fire* for them? [Isa 57:5](#); [\[Ezek 20:26\]](#); [\[Ezek 23:37\]](#); [\[Ezek 23:39\]](#);

22 And in all thine abominations and thy whoredoms you have not remembered the days of thy youth, when you were naked and bare, *and* were polluted in thy blood.

23 And it came to pass after all thy wickedness, (woe, woe unto you! saith the Lord GOD;)

24 *That* you have also built unto you an eminent place, and have made you a high place in every street.

25 You have built thy high place at every head of the way, and have made thy beauty to be abhorred, and have opened thy feet to every one that passed by, and multiplied thy whoredoms.

26 You have also committed fornication with the Egyptians thy neighbours, great of flesh; and have increased thy whoredoms, to provoke me to anger.

27 Behold, therefore I have stretched out my hand over you, and have diminished thine ordinary *food*, and delivered you unto the will of them that hate you, the daughters of the Philistines, which are ashamed of thy lewd way. [2Chr 28:18](#);

28 You have played the whore also with the Assyrians, because you were unsatiable; yes, you have played the harlot with them, and yet couldest not be satisfied.

29 You have moreover multiplied thy fornication in the land of Canaan unto Chaldea; and yet you were not satisfied herewith.

30 How weak is thine heart, saith the Lord GOD, seeing you do all these *things*, the work of an imperious whorish woman;

31 In that you buildest thine eminent place in the head of every way, and makest thine high place in every street; and have not been as a harlot, in that you scornest hire;

32 *But as* a wife that committeth adultery, *which* taketh strangers instead of her husband!

33 They give gifts to all whores: but you givest thy gifts to all thy lovers, and hirest them, that they may come unto you on every side for thy whoredom.

34 And the contrary is in you from *other* women in thy whoredoms, whereas none followeth you to commit whoredoms: and in that you givest a reward, and no reward is given unto you, therefore you are contrary.

Her grievous judgment

35 Wherefore, O harlot, hear the word of the YAHWEH:

36 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thy filthiness was poured out, and thy nakedness discovered through thy whoredoms with thy lovers, and with all the idols of thy abominations, and by the blood of thy children, which you didst give unto them;

37 Behold, therefore I will gather all thy lovers, with whom you have taken pleasure, and all *them* that you have loved, with all *them* that you have hated; I will even gather them round about against you, and will discover thy nakedness unto them, that they may see all thy nakedness.

38 And I will judge you, as women that break wedlock and shed blood are judged; and I will give you blood in fury and jealousy. [Ezek 23:45]; [Ezek 23:47];

39 And I will also give you into their hand, and they shall throw down thine eminent place, and shall break down thy high places: they shall strip you also of thy clothes, and shall take thy fair jewels, and leave you naked and bare. [Ezek 23:26]; [Ezek 23:29];

40 They shall also bring up a company against you, and they shall stone you with stones, and thrust you through with their swords. [Ezek 17:21]; [Ezek 23:47];

41 And they shall burn thine houses with fire, and execute judgments upon you in the sight of many women: and I will cause you to cease from playing the harlot, and you also shall give no hire any more. 2Kgs 25:9; Jer 52:13; [Ezek 23:47];

42 So will I make my fury toward you to rest, and my jealousy shall depart from you, and I will be quiet, and will be no more angry.

43 Because you have not remembered the days of thy youth, but have fretted me in all these *things*; behold, therefore I also will recompense thy way upon *thine* head, saith the Lord GOD: and you shall not commit this lewdness above all thine abominations. Ezek 9:10; Ezek 11:21; [Ezek 22:31];

Her sin, equal to her mother, and exceeding her sisters, Sodom and Samaria, calls for judgments

44 Behold, every one that useth proverbs shall use *this* proverb against you, saying, As *is* the mother, *so is* her daughter.

45 You are thy mother's daughter, that lotheth her husband and her children; and you are the sister of thy sisters, which lothed their husbands and their children: your mother *was* an Hittite, and your father an Amorite.

46 And thine elder sister *is* Samaria, she and her daughters that dwell at thy left hand: and thy younger sister, that dwelleth at thy right hand, *is* Sodom and her daughters. [Rom 9:29];

47 Yet have you not walked after their ways, nor done after their abominations: but, as *if that were* a very little *thing*, you were corrupted more than they in all thy ways.

48 *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, Sodom thy sister has not done, she nor her daughters, as you have done, you and thy daughters.

49 Behold, this was the iniquity of thy sister Sodom, pride, fulness of bread, and abundance of idleness was in her and in her daughters, neither did she strengthen the hand of the poor and needy. [Gen 13:13]; [2Pet 2:6]; [Jude 1:7];

50 And they were haughty, and committed abomination before me: therefore I took them away as I saw *good*. Gen 19:24;

51 Neither has Samaria committed half of thy sins; but you have multiplied thine abominations more than they, and have justified thy sisters in all thine abominations which you have done.

52 You also, which have judged thy sisters, bear thine own shame for thy sins that you have committed more abominable than they: they are more righteous than you: yes, be you confounded also, and bear thy shame, in that you have justified thy sisters.

53 When I shall bring again their captivity, the captivity of Sodom and her daughters, and the captivity of Samaria and her daughters, then *will I bring again* the captivity of thy captives in the midst of them:

54 That you may bear thine own shame, and may be confounded in all that you have done, in that you are a comfort unto them.

55 When thy sisters, Sodom and her daughters, shall return to their former estate, and Samaria and her daughters shall return to their former estate, then you and thy daughters shall return to your former estate.

56 For thy sister Sodom was not mentioned by thy mouth in the day of thy pride,

57 Before thy wickedness was discovered, as at the time of *thy* reproach of the daughters of Syria, and all *that are* round about her, the daughters of the Philistines, which despise you round about.

58 You have borne thy lewdness and thine abominations, saith the YAHWEH.

59 For thus saith the Lord GOD; I will even deal with you as you have done, which have despised the oath in breaking the covenant. [Jer 2:20](#); [Ezek 16:8](#);

Mercy is promised her in the end

60 Nevertheless I will remember my covenant with you in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto you an everlasting covenant.

61 Then you shall remember thy ways, and be ashamed, when you shall receive thy sisters, thine elder and thy younger: and I will give them unto you for daughters, but not by thy covenant. [Gen 4:26](#); [\[Ezek 36:31\]](#);

62 And I will establish my covenant with you; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH:

63 That you may remember, and be confounded, and never open thy mouth any more because of thy shame, when I am pacified toward you for all that you have done, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Ezek 36:31\]](#);

EZEKIEL SEVENTEEN

Under the parable of two eagles and a vine

1 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, put forth a riddle, and speak a parable unto the house of Israel;

3 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; A great eagle with great wings, longwinged, full of feathers, which had different colours, came unto Lebanon, and took the highest branch of the cedar:

4 He cropped off the top of his young twigs, and carried it into a land of traffick; he set it in a city of merchants.

5 He took also of the seed of the land, and planted it in a fruitful field; he placed *it* by great waters, *and* set it *as* a willow tree.

6 And it grew, and became a spreading vine of low stature, whose branches turned toward him, and the roots thereof were under him: so it became a vine, and brought forth branches, and shot forth sprigs.

7 There was also another great eagle with great wings and many feathers: and, behold, this vine did bend her roots toward him, and shot forth her branches toward him, that he might water it by the furrows of her plantation.

8 It was planted in a good soil by great waters, that it might bring forth branches, and that it might bear fruit, that it might be a goodly vine.

9 Say you, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Shall it prosper? shall he not pull up the roots thereof, and cut off the fruit thereof, that it wither? it shall wither in all the leaves of her spring, even without great power or many people to pluck it up by the roots thereof.

10 Yes, behold, *being* planted, shall it prosper? shall it not utterly wither, when the east wind toucheth it? it shall wither in the furrows where it grew. [\[Ezek 27:26\]](#);

is shown Elohim's judgment upon Jerusalem for revolting from Babylon to Egypt

11 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

12 Say now to the rebellious house, Know you not what these *things mean*? tell *them*, Behold, the king of Babylon is come to Jerusalem, and has taken the king thereof, and the princes thereof, and led them with him to Babylon;

13 And has taken of the king's seed, and made a covenant with him, and has taken an oath of him: he has also taken the mighty of the land: [Jer 34:18](#);

14 That the kingdom might be base, that it might not lift itself up, *but* that by keeping of his covenant it might stand.

15 But he rebelled against him in sending his ambassadors into Egypt, that they might give him horses and much people. Shall he prosper? shall he escape that doeth such *things*? or shall he break the covenant, and be delivered? [Jer 37:5](#);

16 *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, surely in the place *where* the king *dwelleth* that made him king, whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he brake, *even* with him in the midst of Babylon he shall die.

17 Neither shall Pharaoh with *his* mighty army and great company make for him in the war, by casting up mounts, and building forts, to cut off many persons: [Jer 37:7](#); [Ezek 4:2](#); [2Kgs 25:1](#); [Isa 29:3](#); [\[Ezek 21:22\]](#);

18 Seeing he despised the oath by breaking the covenant, when, lo, he had given his hand, and has done all these *things*, he shall not escape.

19 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; *As* I live, surely mine oath that he has despised, and my covenant that he has broken, even it will I recompense upon his own head.

20 And I will spread my net upon him, and he shall be taken in my snare, and I will bring him to Babylon, and will plead with him there for his trespass that he has trespassed against me. [Ezek 12:13](#); [Ezek 32:3](#); [Jer 4:12](#); [Jer 25:31](#);

21 And all his fugitives with all his bands shall fall by the sword, and they that remain shall be scattered toward all winds: and you shall know that I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*. [Ezek 16:40](#); [Ezek 5:10](#); [Ezek 5:12](#); [Ezek 12:14](#);

Elohim promises to plant the cedar of the Gospel

22 Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar, and will set *it*; I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant *it* upon a high mountain and eminent:

23 In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it: and it shall bring forth boughs, and bear fruit, and be a goodly cedar: and under it shall dwell all fowl of every wing; in the shadow of the branches thereof shall they dwell.

24 And all the trees of the field shall know that I the YAHWEH have brought down the high tree, have exalted the low tree, have dried up the green tree, and have made the dry tree to flourish: I the YAHWEH have spoken and have done *it*. [\[Ezek 22:14\]](#); [\[Ezek 36:36\]](#);

Elohim defends his justice

- 1** The word of the YAHWEH came unto me again, saying,
- 2** What mean you, that you use this proverb concerning the land of Israel, saying, The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge? [Jer 31:29](#);
- 3** *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, you shall not have *occasion* any more to use this proverb in Israel.
- 4** Behold, all beings are mine; as the being of the father, so also the being of the son is mine: the being that sinneth, it shall die.
- 5** But if a man be just, and do that which is lawful and right,
- 6** *And* has not eaten upon the mountains, neither has lifted up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, neither has defiled his neighbour's wife, neither has come near to a menstruous woman, [Isa 57:7](#); [Isa 65:7](#); [Lev 18:20](#); [Lev 18:19](#); [\[Ezek 22:9\]](#); [\[Ezek 22:10\]](#);
- 7** And has not oppressed any, *but* has restored to the debtor his pledge, has spoiled none by violence, has given his bread to the hungry, and has covered the naked with a garment; [Exod 22:21](#); [Lev 19:13](#); [Lev 25:14](#); [Exod 22:26](#); [Deut 24:12](#); [Deut 15:7](#); [Isa 58:7](#); [Jer 25:35](#); [\[Matt 25:35\]](#);
- 8** He *that* has not given forth upon usury, neither has taken any increase, *that* has withdrawn his hand from iniquity, has executed true judgment between man and man, [Exod 22:25](#); [Lev 25:35-36](#); [\[Lev 25:36\]](#);
- 9** Has walked in my statutes, and has kept my judgments, to deal truly; he *is* just, he shall surely live, saith the Lord GOD.
- 10** If he beget a son *that is* a robber, a shedder of blood, and *that* doeth the like to *any* one of these things,
- 11** And that doeth not any of those *duties*, but even has eaten upon the mountains, and defiled his neighbour's wife, [\[Ezek 22:9\]](#);
- 12** Has oppressed the poor and needy, has spoiled by violence, has not restored the pledge, and has lifted up his eyes to the idols, has committed abomination,
- 13** Has given forth upon usury, and has taken increase: shall he then live? he shall not live: he has done all these abominations; he shall surely die; his blood shall be upon him.
- 14** Now, lo, *if* he beget a son, that seeth all his father's sins which he has done, and considereth, and doeth not such like,
- 15** *That* has not eaten upon the mountains, neither has lifted up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, has not defiled his neighbour's wife,
- 16** Neither has oppressed any, has not withholden the pledge, neither has spoiled by violence, *but* has given his bread to the hungry, and has covered the naked with a garment, [\[Isa 58:7\]](#);
- 17** *That* has taken off his hand from the poor, *that* has not received usury nor increase, has executed my judgments, has walked in my statutes; he shall not die for the iniquity of his father, he shall surely live.
- 18** *As for* his father, because he cruelly oppressed, spoiled his brother by violence, and did *that* which *is* not good among his people, lo, even he shall die in his iniquity.
- 19** Yet say you, Why? does not the son bear the iniquity of the father? When the son has done that which is lawful and right, *and* has kept all my statutes, and has done them, he shall surely live. [Deut 24:16](#); [2Kgs 14:6](#); [2Chr 25:4](#);
- 20** The being that sinneth, it shall die. The son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, neither shall the father bear the iniquity of the son: the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him. [\[Deut 24:16\]](#); [\[2Kgs 14:6\]](#); [\[2Chr 25:4\]](#);
- 21** But if the wicked will turn from all his sins that he has committed, and keep all my statutes, and do that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live, he shall not die.
- 22** All his transgressions that he has committed, they shall not be mentioned unto him: in his righteousness that he has done he shall live.
- 23** Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord GOD: *and* not that he should return from his ways, and live? [Ezek 33:11](#); [\[1Tim 2:4\]](#);

24 But when the righteous turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, *and* doeth according to all the abominations that the wicked *man* doeth, shall he live? All his righteousness that he has done shall not be mentioned: in his trespass that he has trespassed, and in his sin that he has sinned, in them shall he die. [\[Ezek 3:20\]](#); [\[Ezek 33:12\]](#);

25 Yet you say, The way of the Lord is not equal. Hear now, O house of Israel; Is not my way equal? are not your ways unequal? [Ezek 33:17](#); [Ezek 33:20](#);

26 When a righteous *man* turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, and dieth in them; for his iniquity that he has done shall he die.

27 Again, when the wicked *man* turneth away from his wickedness that he has committed, and doeth that which is lawful and right, he shall save his being alive.

28 Because he considereth, and turneth away from all his transgressions that he has committed, he shall surely live, he shall not die.

29 Yet saith the house of Israel, The way of the Lord is not equal. O house of Israel, are not my ways equal? are not your ways unequal? [\[Ezek 33:17\]](#);

30 Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according to his ways, saith the Lord GOD. Repent, and turn *yourselves* from all your transgressions; so iniquity shall not be your ruin. [Matt 3:2](#); [\[Zech 1:4\]](#);

and exhorts to repentance

31 Cast away from you all your transgressions, whereby you have transgressed; and make you a new heart and a new spirit: for why will you die, O house of Israel? [Jer 32:39](#); [Ezek 11:19](#); [Ezek 36:26](#);

32 For I have no pleasure in the death of him that dieth, saith the Lord GOD: wherefore turn *yourselves*, and live you. [Ezek 33:11](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);

EZEKIEL NINETEEN

A lamentation for the princes of Israel, under the parable of lion's whelps taken in a pit

1 Moreover take you up a lamentation for the princes of Israel,

2 And say, What *is* thy mother? A lioness: she lay down among lions, she nourished her whelps among young lions.

3 And she brought up one of her whelps: it became a young lion, and it learned to catch the prey; it devoured men.

4 The nations also heard of him; he was taken in their pit, and they brought him with chains unto the land of Egypt. [2Kgs 23:33](#); [Jer 22:11](#);

5 Now when she saw that she had waited, *and* her hope was lost, then she took another of her whelps, *and* made him a young lion.

6 And he went up and down among the lions, he became a young lion, and learned to catch the prey, *and* devoured men.

7 And he knew their desolate palaces, and he laid waste their cities; and the land was desolate, and the fulness thereof, by the noise of his roaring.

8 Then the nations set against him on every side from the provinces, and spread their net over him: he was taken in their pit.

9 And they put him in ward in chains, and brought him to the king of Babylon: they brought him into holds, that his voice should no more be heard upon the mountains of Israel. [2Chr 36:6](#);

and for Jerusalem, under the parable of a wasted vine

10 Thy mother *is* like a vine in thy blood, planted by the waters: she was fruitful and full of branches by reason of many waters.

11 And she had strong rods for the sceptres of them that bore rule, and her stature was exalted among the thick branches, and she appeared in her height with the multitude of her branches.

12 But she was plucked up in fury, she was cast down to the ground, and the east wind dried up her fruit: her strong rods were broken and withered; the fire consumed them.

13 And now she *is* planted in the wilderness, in a dry and thirsty ground.

14 And fire is gone out of a rod of her branches, *which* has devoured her fruit, so that she has no strong rod *to be* a sceptre to rule. This *is* a lamentation, and shall be for a lamentation.

EZEKIEL TWENTY

Elohim refuses to be consulted by the elders of Israel

1 And it came to pass in the seventh year, in the fifth *month*, the tenth *day* of the month, *that* certain of the elders of Israel came to enquire of the YAHWEH, and sat before me. [Ezek 14:3](#); [\[Ezek 14:1\]](#); [\[Ezek 33:31\]](#);

2 Then came the word of the YAHWEH unto me, saying,

3 Son of man, speak unto the elders of Israel, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Are you come to enquire of me? *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, I will not be enquired of by you.

He shows the story of their rebellions in Egypt

4 *will* you judge them, son of man, will you judge *them*? cause them to know the abominations of their fathers: [Ezek 22:2](#); [Ezek 23:26](#); [\[Ezek 23:36\]](#);

5 And say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; In the day when I chose Israel, and lifted up mine hand unto the seed of the house of Jacob, and made myself known unto them in the land of Egypt, when I lifted up mine hand unto them, saying, I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim; [Exod 6:8](#); [Exod 3:8](#); [Exod 4:31](#);

6 In the day *that* I lifted up mine hand unto them, to bring them forth of the land of Egypt into a land that I had espied for them, flowing with milk and honey, which *is* the glory of all lands:

7 Then said I unto them, Cast you away every man the abominations of his eyes, and defile not yourselves with the idols of Egypt: I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

8 But they rebelled against me, and would not hearken unto me: they did not every man cast away the abominations of their eyes, neither did they forsake the idols of Egypt: then I said, I will pour out my fury upon them, to accomplish my anger against them in the midst of the land of Egypt. [\[Ezek 23:3\]](#);

9 But I wrought for my name's sake, that it should not be polluted before the heathen, among whom they *were*, in whose sight I made myself known unto them, in bringing them forth out of the land of Egypt.

in the wilderness

10 Wherefore I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt, and brought them into the wilderness. [Exod 13:18](#);

11 And I gave them my statutes, and showed them my judgments, which *if* a man do, he shall even live in them. [Lev 18:5](#); [Rom 10:5](#); [Gal 3:12](#); [\[Neh 9:29\]](#);

12 Moreover also I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I *am* the YAHWEH that sanctify them. [Exod 20:8](#); [Exod 31:13](#); [Exod 35:2](#); [\[Exod 31:14\]](#); [\[Deut 5:12\]](#); [\[Jer 17:22\]](#); [\[Luke 13:14\]](#);

13 But the house of Israel rebelled against me in the wilderness: they walked not in my statutes, and they despised my judgments, which *if* a man do, he shall even live in them; and my Sabbaths they

greatly polluted: then I said, I would pour out my fury upon them in the wilderness, to consume them. [Exod 16:28](#); [\[Lev 18:5\]](#);

14 But I wrought for my name's sake, that it should not be polluted before the heathen, in whose sight I brought them out.

15 **yet** also I lifted up my hand unto them in the wilderness, that I would not bring them into the land which I had given *them*, flowing with milk and honey, which *is* the glory of all lands;

16 Because they despised my judgments, and walked not in my statutes, but polluted my Sabbaths: for their heart went after their idols.

17 Nevertheless mine eye spared them from destroying them, neither did I make an end of them in the wilderness.

18 But I said unto their children in the wilderness, Walk you not in the statutes of your fathers, neither observe their judgments, nor defile yourselves with their idols:

19 I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim; walk in my statutes, and keep my judgments, and do them;

20 And hallow my Sabbaths; and they shall be a sign between me and you, that you may know that I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim.

21 Notwithstanding the children rebelled against me: they walked not in my statutes, neither kept my judgments to do them, which *if* a man do, he shall even live in them; they polluted my Sabbaths: then I said, I would pour out my fury upon them, to accomplish my anger against them in the wilderness.

22 Nevertheless I withdrew mine hand, and wrought for my name's sake, that it should not be polluted in the sight of the heathen, in whose sight I brought them forth.

23 I lifted up mine hand unto them also in the wilderness, that I would scatter them among the heathen, and disperse them through the countries; [\[Ps 106:27\]](#);

24 Because they had not executed my judgments, but had despised my statutes, and had polluted my Sabbaths, and their eyes were after their fathers' idols.

25 Therefore I gave them over also to their own false statutes *that were* not good, and their own regulations whereby they could not live;

26 And I polluted them in their own gifts, in that they caused to pass through *the fire* all their firstborn, that I might make them desolate, to the end that they might know that I *am* the YAHWEH. [Ezek 16:21](#); [\[Ezek 23:37\]](#);

and in the land

27 Therefore, son of man, speak unto the house of Israel, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; yet in this your fathers have blasphemed me, in that they have committed a trespass against me.

28 *For* when I had brought them into the land, *for* the which I lifted up mine hand to give it to them, then they saw every high hill, and all the thick trees, and they offered there their sacrifices, and there they presented the provocation of their offering: there also they made their sweet savour, and poured out there their drink offerings. [\[Hos 4:13\]](#);

29 Then I said unto them, What *is* the high place whereunto you go? And the name thereof is called Bamah unto this day.

30 Wherefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Are you polluted after the manner of your fathers? and commit you whoredom after their abominations? [\[Ezek 22:4\]](#);

31 For when you offer your gifts, when you make your sons to pass through the fire, you pollute yourselves with all your idols, even unto this day: and shall I be enquired of by you, O house of Israel? *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, I will not be enquired of by you. [\[Ezek 23:37\]](#);

32 And that which cometh into your mind shall not be at all, that you say, We will be as the heathen, as the families of the countries, to serve wood and stone.

He promises to gather them by the Gospel

33 *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, surely with a mighty hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with fury poured out, will I rule over you:

34 And I will bring you out from the people, and will gather you out of the countries wherein you are scattered, with a mighty hand, and with a stretched out arm, and with fury poured out.

35 And I will bring you into the wilderness of the people, and there will I plead with you face to face.

36 Like as I pleaded with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so will I plead with you, saith the Lord GOD.

37 And I will cause you to pass under the rod, and I will bring you into the bond of the covenant:

38 And I will purge out from among you the rebels, and them that transgress against me: I will bring them forth out of the country where they sojourn, and they shall not enter into the land of Israel: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

39 As for you, O house of Israel, thus saith the Lord GOD; Go you, serve you every one his idols, and hereafter *also*, if you will not hearken unto me: but pollute you my holy name no more with your gifts, and with your idols.

40 For in mine holy mountain, in the mountain of the height of Israel, saith the Lord GOD, there shall all the house of Israel, all of them in the land, serve me: there will I accept them, and there will I require your offerings, and the firstfruits of your oblations, with all your holy things.

41 I will accept you with your sweet savour, when I bring you out from the people, and gather you out of the countries wherein you have been scattered; and I will be sanctified in you before the heathen.

42 And you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I shall bring you into the land of Israel, into the country *for* the which I lifted up mine hand to give it to your fathers.

43 And there shall you remember your ways, and all your doings, wherein you have been defiled; and you shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for all your evils that you have committed. [\[Ezek 36:31\];](#)

44 And you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I have wrought with you for my name's sake, not according to your wicked ways, nor according to your corrupt doings, O you house of Israel, saith the Lord GOD.

Under the name of a forest he shows the destruction of Jerusalem

45 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

46 Son of man, set thy face toward the south, and drop *thy word* toward the south, and prophesy against the forest of the south field;

47 And say to the forest of the south, Hear the word of the YAHWEH; Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will kindle a fire in you, and it shall devour every green tree in you, and every dry tree: the flaming flame shall not be quenched, and all faces from the south to the north shall be burned therein. [Luke 23:31;](#)

48 And all flesh shall see that I the YAHWEH have kindled it: it shall not be quenched.

49 Then said I, Ah Lord GOD! they say of me, Does he not speak parables?

Ezekiel prophesies against Jerusalem with a sign of sighing

- 1** And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
2 Son of man, set thy face toward Jerusalem, and drop *thy word* toward the holy places, and prophesy against the land of Israel, [\[Amos 7:16\]](#);
3 And say to the land of Israel, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, I *am* against you, and will draw forth my sword out of his sheath, and will cut off from you the righteous and the wicked.
4 Seeing then that I will cut off from you the righteous and the wicked, therefore shall my sword go forth out of his sheath against all flesh from the south to the north:
5 That all flesh may know that I the YAHWEH have drawn forth my sword out of his sheath: it shall not return any more.
6 Sigh therefore, you son of man, with the breaking of *thy* loins; and with bitterness sigh before their eyes.
7 And it shall be, when they say unto you, Wherefore sighest you? that you shall answer, For the tidings; because it cometh: and every heart shall melt, and all hands shall be feeble, and every spirit shall faint, and all knees shall be weak *as* water: behold, it cometh, and shall be brought to pass, saith the Lord GOD. [Jer 49:23](#); [Jer 6:24](#); [Ezek 7:17](#); [Ezek 4:17](#); [\[Nah 2:10\]](#);

The sharp and bright sword

- 8** Again the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
9 Son of man, prophesy, and say, Thus saith the YAHWEH; Say, A sword, a sword is sharpened, and also furbished: [\[Isa 10:5\]](#);
10 It is sharpened to make a sore slaughter; it is furbished that it may glitter: should we then make mirth? it contemneth the rod of my son, *as* every tree.
11 And he has given it to be furbished, that it may be handled: this sword is sharpened, and it is furbished, to give it into the hand of the slayer.
12 Cry and howl, son of man: for it shall be upon my people, it *shall be* upon all the princes of Israel: terrors by reason of the sword shall be upon my people: smite therefore upon *thy* thigh. [Ezek 7:27](#); [Ezek 6:11](#);
13 Because *it is* a trial, and what if *the sword* condemn even the rod? it shall be no *more*, saith the Lord GOD. [Isa 1:5](#); [Jer 6:28](#);
14 You therefore, son of man, prophesy, and smite *thine* hands together, and let the sword be doubled the third time, the sword of the slain: it *is* the sword of the great *men that are* slain, which entereth into their privy chambers.
15 I have set the point of the sword against all their gates, that *their* heart may faint, and *their* ruins be multiplied: ah! *it is* made bright, *it is* wrapped up for the slaughter. [Ezek 21:28](#);
16 Go you one way or other, *either* on the right hand, *or* on the left, whithersoever thy face *is* set.
17 I will also smite mine hands together, and I will cause my fury to rest: I the YAHWEH have said *it*. [\[Ezek 6:11\]](#); [\[Ezek 22:13\]](#);

against Jerusalem

- 18** The word of the YAHWEH came unto me again, saying,
19 Also, you son of man, appoint you two ways, that the sword of the king of Babylon may come: both twain shall come forth out of one land: and choose you a place, choose *it* at the head of the way to the city.

20 Appoint a way, that the sword may come to Rabbath of the Ammonites, and to Judah in Jerusalem the defenced.

21 For the king of Babylon stood at the parting of the way, at the head of the two ways, to use divination: he made *his* arrows bright, he consulted with images, he looked in the liver.

22 At his right hand was the divination for Jerusalem, to appoint captains, to open the mouth in the slaughter, to lift up the voice with shouting, to appoint *battering* rams against the gates, to cast a mount, *and* to build a fort. [Ezek 4:2](#); [Ezek 17:17](#);

23 And it shall be unto them as a false divination in their sight, to them that have sworn oaths: but he will call to remembrance the iniquity, that they may be taken.

24 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you have made your iniquity to be remembered, in that your transgressions are discovered, so that in all your doings your sins do appear; because, *I say*, that you are come to remembrance, you shall be taken with the hand.

against the kingdom

25 And you, profane wicked prince of Israel, whose day is come, when iniquity *shall have* an end,

26 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Remove the diadem, and take off the crown: this *shall not be* the same: exalt *him that is* low, and humble *him that is* high.

27 I will overturn, overturn, overturn, it: and it shall be no *more*, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it *him*.

and against the Ammonites

28 And you, son of man, prophesy and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD concerning the Ammonites, and concerning their reproach; even say you, The sword, the sword *is* drawn: for the slaughter *it is* furbished, to consume because of the glittering: [\[Ezek 21:15\]](#);

29 Whiles they see vanity unto you, whiles they divine a lie unto you, to bring you upon the necks of *them that are* slain, of the wicked, whose day is come, when their iniquity *shall have* an end. [\[Ezek 22:28\]](#);

30 Shall I cause *it* to return into his sheath? I will judge you in the place where you were created, in the land of thy nativity.

31 And I will pour out mine indignation upon you, I will blow against you in the fire of my wrath, and deliver you into the hand of brutish men, *and* skilful to destroy.

32 You shall be for fuel to the fire; thy blood shall be in the midst of the land; you shall be no *more* remembered: for I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*. [\[Ezek 25:10\]](#);

EZEKIEL TWENTY-TWO

A catalogue of sins in Jerusalem, and the dispersion of the Jews in consequence

1 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Now, you son of man, will you judge, will you judge the bloody city? yes, you shall show her all her abominations. [Ezek 20:4](#); [Ezek 23:36](#); [\[Ezek 24:6\]](#);

3 Then say you, Thus saith the Lord GOD, The city sheddeth blood in the midst of it, that her time may come, and maketh idols against herself to defile herself.

4 You are become guilty in thy blood that you have shed; and have defiled thyself in thine idols which you have made; and you have caused thy days to draw near, and are come *even* unto thy years: therefore have I made you a reproach unto the heathen, and a mocking to all countries. [2Kgs 21:16](#); [Ezek 20:30-31](#); [Ezek 5:14](#);

5 *Those that be* near, and *those that be* far from you, shall mock you, *which are* infamous *and* much vexed.

6 Behold, the princes of Israel, every one were in you to their power to shed blood.

7 In you have they set light by father and mother: in the midst of you have they dealt by oppression with the stranger: in you have they vexed the fatherless and the widow. [\[Mic 7:6\];](#)

8 You have despised mine holy things, and have profaned my Sabbaths. [\[Ezek 23:38\];](#)

9 In you are men that carry tales to shed blood: and in you they eat upon the mountains: in the midst of you they commit lewdness. [Ezek 18:6; Ezek 18:11;](#)

10 In you have they discovered their fathers' nakedness: in you have they humbled her that was set apart for pollution. [Lev 18:8; Lev 18:19; Ezek 18:6;](#)

11 And one has committed abomination with his neighbour's wife; and another has lewdly defiled his daughter in law; and another in you has humbled his sister, his father's daughter. [Lev 18:20; Jer 5:8; Lev 18:15; Lev 18:9; \[Lev 18:14\];](#)

12 In you have they taken gifts to shed blood; you have taken usury and increase, and you have greedily gained of thy neighbours by extortion, and have forgotten me, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Lev 25:36\]; \[Ezek 23:35\];](#)

13 Behold, therefore I have smitten mine hand at thy dishonest gain which you have made, and at thy blood which has been in the midst of you. [Ezek 21:17;](#)

14 Can thine heart endure, or can thine hands be strong, in the days that I shall deal with you? I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*, and will do *it*. [Ezek 17:24; \[Ezek 36:36\];](#)

15 And I will scatter you among the heathen, and disperse you in the countries, and will consume thy filthiness out of you. [Ezek 12:14-15;](#)

16 And you shall take thine inheritance in thyself in the sight of the heathen, and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

Elohim will burn them as dross in his furnace

17 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

18 Son of man, the house of Israel is to me become dross: all they *are* brass, and tin, and iron, and lead, in the midst of the furnace; they are *even* the dross of silver. [Isa 1:22; \[Jer 6:28\];](#)

19 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you are all become dross, behold, therefore I will gather you into the midst of Jerusalem.

20 *As* they gather silver, and brass, and iron, and lead, and tin, into the midst of the furnace, to blow the fire upon it, to melt *it*; so will I gather *you* in mine anger and in my fury, and I will leave *you there*, and melt you.

21 Yes, I will gather you, and blow upon you in the fire of my wrath, and you shall be melted in the midst thereof.

22 As silver is melted in the midst of the furnace, so shall you be melted in the midst thereof; and you shall know that I the YAHWEH have poured out my fury upon you.

The general corruption of prophets, priests, princes, and people

23 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

24 Son of man, say unto her, you are the land that is not cleansed, nor rained upon in the day of indignation.

25 *There is* a conspiracy of her prophets in the midst thereof, like a roaring lion ravening the prey; they have devoured beings; they have taken the treasure and precious things; they have made her many widows in the midst thereof. [Matt 23:13;](#)

26 Her priests have violated my law, and have profaned mine holy things: they have put no difference between the holy and profane, neither have they showed *difference* between the unclean and the clean, and have hid their eyes from my Sabbaths, and I am profaned among them. [Lev 10:10](#); [Ezek 44:23](#);

27 Her princes in the midst thereof *are* like wolves ravening the prey, to shed blood, *and* to destroy beings, to get dishonest gain. [Mic 3:11](#); [Zeph 3:3](#); [[Mic 3:10](#)];

28 And her prophets have daubed them with untempered mortar, seeing vanity, and divining lies unto them, saying, Thus saith the Lord GOD, when the YAHWEH has not spoken. [Ezek 13:10](#); [Ezek 21:29](#);

29 The people of the land have used oppression, and exercised robbery, and have vexed the poor and needy: yes, they have oppressed the stranger wrongfully. [[Deut 24:17](#)];

30 And I sought for a man among them, that should make up the hedge, and stand in the gap before me for the land, that I should not destroy it: but I found none. [Ps 106:23](#);

31 Therefore have I poured out mine indignation upon them; I have consumed them with the fire of my wrath: their own way have I recompensed upon their heads, saith the Lord GOD. [Ezek 9:10](#); [Ezek 11:21](#); [Ezek 16:43](#);

EZEKIEL TWENTY-THREE

The whoredoms of Aholah and Aholibah

1 The word of the YAHWEH came again unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, there were two women, the daughters of one mother:

3 And they committed whoredoms in Egypt; they committed whoredoms in their youth: there were their breasts pressed, and there they bruised the teats of their virginity. [Ezek 20:8](#);

4 And the names of them *were* Aholah the elder, and Aholibah her sister: and they were mine, and they bore sons and daughters. Thus *were* their names; Samaria *is* Aholah, and Jerusalem Aholibah.

5 And Aholah played the harlot when she was mine; and she doted on her lovers, on the Assyrians *her* neighbours,

6 *Which were* clothed with blue, captains and rulers, all of them desirable young men, horsemen riding upon horses.

7 Thus she committed her whoredoms with them, with all them *that were* the chosen men of Assyria, and with all on whom she doted: with all their idols she defiled herself.

8 Neither left she her whoredoms *brought* from Egypt: for in her youth they lay with her, and they bruised the breasts of her virginity, and poured their whoredom upon her.

9 Wherefore I have delivered her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians, upon whom she doted. [2Kgs 17:18](#);

10 These discovered her nakedness: they took her sons and her daughters, and slew her with the sword: and she became famous among women; for they had executed judgment upon her.

11 And when her sister Aholibah saw *this*, she was more corrupt in her inordinate love than she, and in her whoredoms more than her sister in *her* whoredoms.

12 She doted upon the Assyrians *her* neighbours, captains and rulers clothed most gorgeously, horsemen riding upon horses, all of them desirable young men. [2Kgs 16:7](#);

13 Then I saw that she was defiled, *that* they *took* both one way,

14 And *that* she increased her whoredoms: for when she saw men pourtrayed upon the wall, the images of the Chaldeans pourtrayed with vermilion,

15 Girded with girdles upon their loins, exceeding in dyed attire upon their heads, all of them princes to look to, after the manner of the Babylonians of Chaldea, the land of their nativity:

16 And as soon as she saw them with her eyes, she doted upon them, and sent messengers unto them into Chaldea.

17 And the Babylonians came to her into the bed of love, and they defiled her with their whoredom, and she was polluted with them, and her mind was alienated from them.

18 So she discovered her whoredoms, and discovered her nakedness: then my mind was alienated from her, like as my mind was alienated from her sister.

19 Yet she multiplied her whoredoms, in calling to remembrance the days of her youth, wherein she had played the harlot in the land of Egypt.

20 For she doted upon their paramours, whose flesh *is as* the flesh of asses, and whose issue *is like* the issue of horses.

21 Thus you calledst to remembrance the lewdness of thy youth, in bruising thy teats by the Egyptians for the paps of thy youth.

22 Therefore, O Aholibah, thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will raise up thy lovers against you, from whom thy mind is alienated, and I will bring them against you on every side;

Aholibah is to be plagued by her lovers

23 The Babylonians, and all the Chaldeans, Pekod, and Shoa, and Koa, *and* all the Assyrians with them: all of them desirable young men, captains and rulers, great lords and renowned, all of them riding upon horses.

24 And they shall come against you with chariots, wagons, and wheels, and with an assembly of people, *which* shall set against you buckler and shield and helmet round about: and I will set judgment before them, and they shall judge you according to their judgments. [\[Ezek 24:14\];](#)

25 And I will set my jealousy against you, and they shall deal furiously with you: they shall take away thy nose and thine ears; and thy remnant shall fall by the sword: they shall take thy sons and thy daughters; and thy residue shall be devoured by the fire.

26 They shall also strip you out of thy clothes, and take away thy fair jewels. [Ezek 16:39; \[Ezek 20:4\];](#)

27 Thus will I make thy lewdness to cease from you, and thy whoredom *brought* from the land of Egypt: so that you shall not lift up thine eyes unto them, nor remember Egypt any more.

28 For thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will deliver you into the hand *of them* whom you hatest, into the hand *of them* from whom thy mind is alienated:

29 And they shall deal with you hatefully, and shall take away all thy labour, and shall leave you naked and bare: and the nakedness of thy whoredoms shall be discovered, both thy lewdness and thy whoredoms. [Ezek 16:39;](#)

30 I will do these *things* unto you, because you have gone a whoring after the heathen, *and* because you are polluted with their idols.

31 You have walked in the way of thy sister; therefore will I give her cup into thine hand.

32 Thus saith the Lord GOD; you shall drink of thy sister's cup deep and large: you shall be laughed to scorn and had in derision; it containeth much.

33 You shall be filled with drunkenness and sorrow, with the cup of astonishment and desolation, with the cup of thy sister Samaria.

34 You shall even drink it and suck *it* out, and you shall break the sherds thereof, and pluck off thine own breasts: for I have spoken *it*, saith the Lord GOD.

35 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you have forgotten me, and cast me behind thy back, therefore bear you also thy lewdness and thy whoredoms. [Jer 2:32; Jer 3:21; Jer 13:25; Jer 18:15; Ezek 22:12;](#)

The prophet reproves the adulteries of them both

36 The YAHWEH said moreover unto me; Son of man, will you judge Aholah and Aholibah? yes, declare unto them their abominations; [Ezek 20:4; Ezek 22:2;](#)

37 That they have committed adultery, and blood *is* in their hands, and with their idols have they committed adultery, and have also caused their sons, whom they bore unto me, to pass for them through *the fire*, to devour *them*. [Ezek 16:21; Ezek 20:26; Ezek 20:31;](#)

38 Moreover this they have done unto me: they have defiled my sanctuary in the same day, and have profaned my Sabbaths. [Ezek 22:8](#);

39 For when they had slain their children to their idols, then they came the same day into my sanctuary to profane it; and, lo, thus have they done in the midst of mine house. [Ezek 16:21](#); [2Kgs 21:4](#);

40 And furthermore, that you have sent for men to come from far, unto whom a messenger *was* sent; and, lo, they came: for whom you didst wash thyself, paintedst thy eyes, and deckedst thyself with ornaments,

41 And satest upon a stately bed, and a table prepared before it, whereupon you have set mine incense and mine oil. [Prov 7:17](#);

42 And a voice of a multitude being at ease *was* with her: and with the men of the common sort *were* brought Sabeans from the wilderness, which put bracelets upon their hands, and beautiful crowns upon their heads.

43 Then said I unto *her that was* old in adulteries, Will they now commit whoredoms with her, and she *with them?*

44 Yet they went in unto her, as they go in unto a woman that playeth the harlot: so went they in unto Aholah and unto Aholibah, the lewd women.

and shows their judgments

45 And the righteous men, they shall judge them after the manner of adulteresses, and after the manner of women that shed blood; because they *are* adulteresses, and blood *is* in their hands. [Ezek 16:38](#);

46 For thus saith the Lord GOD; I will bring up a company upon them, and will give them to be removed and spoiled.

47 And the company shall stone them with stones, and dispatch them with their swords; they shall slay their sons and their daughters, and burn up their houses with fire. [Ezek 16:38](#); [Ezek 16:40](#); [Ezek 16:41](#);

48 Thus will I cause lewdness to cease out of the land, that all women may be taught not to do after your lewdness.

49 And they shall recompense your lewdness upon you, and you shall bear the sins of your idols: and you shall know that I *am* the Lord GOD.

EZEKIEL TWENTY-FOUR

Under the parable of a boiling pot

1 Again in the ninth year, in the tenth month, in the tenth *day* of the month, the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, write you the name of the day, *even* of this same day: the king of Babylon set himself against Jerusalem this same day.

3 And utter a parable unto the rebellious house, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Set on a pot, set *it* on, and also pour water into it: [Jer 1:13](#);

4 Gather the pieces thereof into it, *even* every good piece, the thigh, and the shoulder; fill *it* with the choice bones.

5 Take the choice of the flock, and burn also the bones under it, *and* make it boil well, and let them seethe the bones of it therein.

is shown the irrevocable destruction of Jerusalem

6 Wherefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Woe to the bloody city, to the pot whose scum *is* therein, and whose scum is not gone out of it! bring it out piece by piece; let no lot fall upon it. [Ezek 22:2](#);

7 For her blood is in the midst of her; she set it upon the top of a rock; she poured it not upon the ground, to cover it with dust;

8 That it might cause fury to come up to take vengeance; I have set her blood upon the top of a rock, that it should not be covered.

9 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Woe to the bloody city! I will even make the pile for fire great. [Nah 3:1](#); [Hab 2:12](#);

10 Heap on wood, kindle the fire, consume the flesh, and spice it well, and let the bones be burned.

11 Then set it empty upon the coals thereof, that the brass of it may be hot, and may burn, and *that* the filthiness of it may be molten in it, *that* the scum of it may be consumed. [\[Ezek 37:27\]](#);

12 She has wearied *herself* with lies, and her great scum went not forth out of her: her scum *shall be* in the fire.

13 In thy filthiness *is* lewdness: because I have purged you, and you were not purged, you shall not be purged from thy filthiness any more, till I have caused my fury to rest upon you.

14 I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*: it shall come to pass, and I will do *it*; I will not go back, neither will I spare, neither will I repent; according to thy ways, and according to thy doings, shall they judge you, saith the Lord GOD. [Ezek 5:11](#); [Ezek 23:24](#);

By the sign of Ezekiel not mourning for the death of his wife

15 Also the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

16 Son of man, behold, I take away from you the desire of thine eyes with a stroke: yet neither shall you mourn nor weep, neither shall thy tears run down.

17 Forbear to cry, make no mourning for the dead, bind the tire of thine head upon you, and put on thy shoes upon thy feet, and cover not *thy* lips, and eat not the bread of men.

18 So I spoke unto the people in the morning: and at even my wife died; and I did in the morning as I was commanded.

is shown the calamity of the Jews to be beyond all sorrow

19 And the people said unto me, will you not tell us what these *things are* to us, that you do *so*?

20 Then I answered them, The word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

21 Speak unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will profane my sanctuary, the excellency of your strength, the desire of your eyes, and that which your being pitieth; and your sons and your daughters whom you have left shall fall by the sword.

22 And you shall do as I have done: you shall not cover *your* lips, nor eat the bread of men.

23 And your tires *shall be* upon your heads, and your shoes upon your feet: you shall not mourn nor weep; but you shall pine away for your iniquities, and mourn one toward another. [Ezek 4:17](#); [\[Ezek 33:10\]](#);

24 Thus Ezekiel is unto you a sign: according to all that he has done shall you do: and when this cometh, you shall know that I *am* the Lord GOD. [Ezek 12:6](#);

25 Also, you son of man, *shall it* not *be* in the day when I take from them their strength, the joy of their glory, the desire of their eyes, and that whereupon they set their minds, their sons and their daughters,

26 *That* he that escapeth in that day shall come unto you, to cause you to hear *it* with *thine* ears? [\[Ezek 33:21\]](#);

27 In that day shall thy mouth be opened to him which is escaped, and you shall speak, and be no more dumb: and you shall be a sign unto them; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

Elohim's vengeance, for their insolency against the Jews, upon the Ammonites

- 1** The word of the YAHWEH came again unto me, saying,
2 Son of man, set thy face against the Ammonites, and prophesy against them; [Jer 49:1](#);
3 And say unto the Ammonites, Hear the word of the Lord GOD; Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you saidst, Aha, against my sanctuary, when it was profaned; and against the land of Israel, when it was desolate; and against the house of Judah, when they went into captivity;
4 Behold, therefore I will deliver you to the men of the east for a possession, and they shall set their palaces in you, and make their dwellings in you: they shall eat thy fruit, and they shall drink thy milk.
5 And I will make Rabbah a stable for camels, and the Ammonites a couchingplace for flocks: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.
6 For thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you have clapped *thine* hands, and stamped with the feet, and rejoiced in heart with all thy despite against the land of Israel;
7 Behold, therefore I will stretch out mine hand upon you, and will deliver you for a spoil to the heathen; and I will cut you off from the people, and I will cause you to perish out of the countries: I will destroy you; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

upon Moab and Seir

- 8** Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because that Moab and Seir do say, Behold, the house of Judah *is* like unto all the heathen; [Jer 48:1](#);
9 Therefore, behold, I will open the side of Moab from the cities, from his cities *which are* on his frontiers, the glory of the country, Bethjeshimoth, Baalmeon, and Kiriathaim, [\[Isa 15:1\]](#);
10 Unto the men of the east with the Ammonites, and will give them in possession, that the Ammonites may not be remembered among the nations. [Ezek 21:32](#);
11 And I will execute judgments upon Moab; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

upon Edom

- 12** Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because that Edom has dealt against the house of Judah by taking vengeance, and has greatly offended, and revenged himself upon them; [\[Ps 137:7\]](#);
13 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also stretch out mine hand upon Edom, and will cut off man and beast from it; and I will make it desolate from Teman; and they of Dedan shall fall by the sword.
14 And I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel: and they shall do in Edom according to mine anger and according to my fury; and they shall know my vengeance, saith the Lord GOD.

and upon the Philistines

- 15** Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because the Philistines have dealt by revenge, and have taken vengeance with a despiteful heart, to destroy *it* for the old hatred; [\[Ezek 35:5\]](#);
16 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will stretch out mine hand upon the Philistines, and I will cut off the Cherethims, and destroy the remnant of the sea coast.
17 And I will execute great vengeance upon them with furious rebukes; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I shall lay my vengeance upon them.

Tyrus, for insulting against Jerusalem, is threatened with destruction

1 And it came to pass in the eleventh year, in the first *day* of the month, *that* the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying, [Isa 23:1];

2 Son of man, because that Tyrus has said against Jerusalem, Aha, she is broken *that was* the gates of the people: she is turned unto me: I shall be replenished, *now* she is laid waste:

3 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against you, O Tyrus, and will cause many nations to come up against you, as the sea causeth his waves to come up.

4 And they shall destroy the walls of Tyrus, and break down her towers: I will also scrape her dust from her, and make her like the top of a rock.

5 It shall be *a place* for the spreading of nets in the midst of the sea: for I have spoken *it*; saith the Lord GOD: and it shall become a spoil to the nations.

6 And her daughters which *are* in the field shall be slain by the sword; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

The power of Nebuchadnezzar against her

7 For thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will bring upon Tyrus Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon, a king of kings, from the north, with horses, and with chariots, and with horsemen, and companies, and much people.

8 He shall slay with the sword thy daughters in the field: and he shall make a fort against you, and cast a mount against you, and lift up the buckler against you.

9 And he shall set engines of war against thy walls, and with his axes he shall break down thy towers.

10 By reason of the abundance of his horses their dust shall cover you: thy walls shall shake at the noise of the horsemen, and of the wheels, and of the chariots, when he shall enter into thy gates, as men enter into a city wherein is made a breach. [Ezek 27:28];

11 With the hoofs of his horses shall he tread down all thy streets: he shall slay thy people by the sword, and thy strong garrisons shall go down to the ground. Isa 5:28; Jer 47:3;

12 And they shall make a spoil of thy riches, and make a prey of thy merchandise: and they shall break down thy walls, and destroy thy pleasant houses: and they shall lay thy stones and thy timber and thy dust in the midst of the water.

13 And I will cause the noise of thy songs to cease; and the sound of thy harps shall be no more heard. Isa 24:7-8; Jer 7:34; Jer 16:9; [Isa 24:8]; [Jer 25:10]; [Rev 18:22];

14 And I will make you like the top of a rock: you shall be *a place* to spread nets upon; you shall be built no more: for I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*; saith the Lord GOD.

The mourning and astonishment of the sea at her fall

15 Thus saith the Lord GOD to Tyrus; Shall not the isles shake at the sound of thy fall, when the wounded cry, when the slaughter is made in the midst of you? [Ezek 27:28];

16 Then all the princes of the sea shall come down from their thrones, and lay away their robes, and put off their broidered garments: they shall clothe themselves with trembling; they shall sit upon the ground, and shall tremble at *every* moment, and be astonished at you.

17 And they shall take up a lamentation for you, and say to you, How are you destroyed, *that were* inhabited of seafaring men, the renowned city, which were strong in the sea, she and her inhabitants, which cause their terror *to be* on all that haunt it! Rev 18:9;

18 Now shall the isles tremble in the day of thy fall; yes, the isles that *are* in the sea shall be troubled at thy departure.

19 For thus saith the Lord GOD; When I shall make you a desolate city, like the cities that are not inhabited; when I shall bring up the deep upon you, and great waters shall cover you;

20 When I shall bring you down with them that descend into the pit, with the people of old time, and shall set you in the low parts of the earth, in places desolate of old, with them that go down to the pit, that you be not inhabited; and I shall set glory in the land of the living;

21 I will make you a terror, and you shall *be* no *more*: though you be sought for, yet shall you never be found again, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Ezek 27:36\];](#)

EZEKIEL TWENTY-SEVEN

The riches and commerce of Tyrus

1 The word of the YAHWEH came again unto me, saying, [\[Isa 23:1\];](#)

2 Now, you son of man, take up a lamentation for Tyrus;

3 And say unto Tyrus, O you that are situate at the entry of the sea, *which are* a merchant of the people for many isles, Thus saith the Lord GOD; O Tyrus, you have said, I *am* of perfect beauty. [Ezek 28:12;](#)

4 Thy borders *are* in the midst of the seas, thy builders have perfected thy beauty.

5 They have made all thy *ship* boards of fir trees of Senir: they have taken cedars from Lebanon to make masts for you.

6 *Of* the oaks of Bashan have they made thine oars; the company of the Ashurites have made thy benches *of* ivory, *brought* out of the isles of Chittim. [Isa 2:13;](#)

7 Fine linen with brodered work from Egypt was that which you spreadest forth to be thy sail; blue and purple from the isles of Elishah was that which covered you.

8 The inhabitants of Zidon and Arvad were thy mariners: thy wise *men*, O Tyrus, *that* were in you, were thy pilots.

9 The elders of Gebal and the wise *men* thereof were in you thy calkers: all the ships of the sea with their mariners were in you to occupy thy merchandise.

10 They of Persia and of Lud and of Phut were in thine army, thy men of war: they hanged the shield and helmet in you; they set forth thy comeliness.

11 The men of Arvad with thine army *were* upon thy walls round about, and the Gammadims were in thy towers: they hanged their shields upon thy walls round about; they have made thy beauty perfect.

12 Tarshish *was* thy merchant by reason of the multitude of all *kind of* riches; with silver, iron, tin, and lead, they traded in thy fairs.

13 Javan, Tubal, and Meshech, they *were* thy merchants: they traded the persons of men and vessels of brass in thy market. [\[Rev 18:13\];](#)

14 They of the house of Togarmah traded in thy fairs with horses and horsemen and mules.

15 The men of Dedan *were* thy merchants; many isles *were* the merchandise of thine hand: they brought you *for* a present horns of ivory and ebony.

16 Syria *was* thy merchant by reason of the multitude of the wares of thy making: they occupied in thy fairs with emeralds, purple, and brodered work, and fine linen, and coral, and agate.

17 Judah, and the land of Israel, they *were* thy merchants: they traded in thy market wheat of Minnith, and Pannag, and honey, and oil, and balm.

18 Damascus *was* thy merchant in the multitude of the wares of thy making, for the multitude of all riches; in the wine of Helbon, and white wool.

19 Dan also and Javan going to and fro occupied in thy fairs: bright iron, cassia, and calamus, were in thy market.

20 Dedan *was* thy merchant in precious clothes for chariots.

21 Arabia, and all the princes of Kedar, they occupied with you in lambs, and rams, and goats: in these *were they* thy merchants.

22 The merchants of Sheba and Raamah, they *were* thy merchants: they occupied in thy fairs with chief of all spices, and with all precious stones, and gold.

23 Haran, and Canneh, and Eden, the merchants of Sheba, Asshur, *and* Chilmad, *were* thy merchants.

24 These *were* thy merchants in all sorts *of things*, in blue clothes, and brodered work, and in chests of rich apparel, bound with cords, and made of cedar, among thy merchandise.

25 The ships of Tarshish did sing of you in thy market: and you were replenished, and made very glorious in the midst of the seas.

The great and irrecoverable fall thereof

26 Thy rowers have brought you into great waters: the east wind has broken you in the midst of the seas. [Ezek 17:10](#);

27 Thy riches, and thy fairs, thy merchandise, thy mariners, and thy pilots, thy calkers, and the occupiers of thy merchandise, and all thy men of war, that *are* in you, and in all thy company which *is* in the midst of you, shall fall into the midst of the seas in the day of thy ruin. [Rev 18:9](#);

28 The suburbs shall shake at the sound of the cry of thy pilots. [Ezek 26:10](#); [Ezek 26:15](#);

29 And all that handle the oar, the mariners, *and* all the pilots of the sea, shall come down from their ships, they shall stand upon the land;

30 And shall cause their voice to be heard against you, and shall cry bitterly, and shall cast up dust upon their heads, they shall wallow themselves in the ashes:

31 And they shall make themselves utterly bald for you, and gird them with sackcloth, and they shall weep for you with bitterness of heart *and* bitter wailing. [Jer 48:37](#);

32 And in their wailing they shall take up a lamentation for you, and lament over you, *saying*, What *city is* like Tyrus, like the destroyed in the midst of the sea?

33 When thy wares went forth out of the seas, you filledst many people; you didst enrich the kings of the earth with the multitude of thy riches and of thy merchandise.

34 In the time *when* you shall be broken by the seas in the depths of the waters thy merchandise and all thy company in the midst of you shall fall.

35 All the inhabitants of the isles shall be astonished at you, and their kings shall be sore afraid, they shall be troubled in *their* countenance.

36 The merchants among the people shall hiss at you; you shall be a terror, and never shall *be* any more. [Ezek 26:21](#);

Elohim's judgment upon the prince of Tyrus for his sacrilegious pride

- 1** The word of the YAHWEH came again unto me, saying, [\[Isa 23:1\]](#);
- 2** Son of man, say unto the prince of Tyrus, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because thine heart *is* lifted up, and you have said, I *am* a Elohim, I sit *in* the seat of Elohim, in the midst of the seas; yet you are a man, and not Elohim, though you set thine heart as the heart of Elohim: [Isa 31:3](#);
- 3** Behold, you are wiser than Daniel; there is no secret that they can hide from you:
- 4** With thy wisdom and with thine understanding you have gotten you riches, and have gotten gold and silver into thy treasures:
- 5** By thy great wisdom *and* by thy traffick have you increased thy riches, and thine heart is lifted up because of thy riches:
- 6** Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you have set thine heart as the heart of Elohim;
- 7** Behold, therefore I will bring strangers upon you, the terrible of the nations: and they shall draw their swords against the beauty of thy wisdom, and they shall defile thy brightness. [Jer 6:23](#); [\[Ezek 30:11\]](#); [\[Ezek 31:12\]](#); [\[Ezek 32:12\]](#);
- 8** They shall bring you down to the pit, and you shall die the deaths of *them that are* slain in the midst of the seas.
- 9** *will* you yet say before him that slays you, I *am* Elohim? but you shall *be* a man, and no Elohim, in the hand of him that slays you.
- 10** *you* shall die the deaths of the uncircumcised by the hand of strangers: for I have spoken *it*, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Ezek 31:18\]](#);

A lamentation of his great glory corrupted by sin

- 11** Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
- 12** Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; you sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. [Ezek 27:3](#);
- 13** You have been in Eden the garden of Elohim; every precious stone *was* thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in you in the day that you were created. [\[Ezek 36:35\]](#);
- 14** You are the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set you *so*: you were upon the holy mountain of Elohim; you have walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire.
- 15** You *were* perfect in thy ways from the day that you were created, till iniquity was found in you.
- 16** By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of you with violence, and you have sinned: therefore I will cast you as profane out of the mountain of Elohim: and I will destroy you, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire.
- 17** Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, you have corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast you to the ground, I will lay you before kings, that they may behold you.
- 18** You have defiled thy sanctuaries by the multitude of thine iniquities, by the iniquity of thy traffick; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of you, it shall devour you, and I will bring you to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold you.
- 19** All they that know you among the people shall be astonished at you: you shall be a terror, and never shall you *be* any more.

The judgment of Zidon

- 20** Again the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

21 Son of man, set thy face against Zidon, and prophesy against it,
22 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against you, O Zidon; and I will be glorified in the midst of you: and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I shall have executed judgments in her, and shall be sanctified in her.
23 For I will send into her pestilence, and blood into her streets; and the wounded shall be judged in the midst of her by the sword upon her on every side; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

The restoration of Israel

24 And there shall be no more a pricking brier unto the house of Israel, nor *any* grieving thorn of all *that are* round about them, that despised them; and they shall know that I *am* the Lord GOD.
25 Thus saith the Lord GOD; When I shall have gathered the house of Israel from the people among whom they are scattered, and shall be sanctified in them in the sight of the heathen, then shall they dwell in their land that I have given to my servant Jacob. [Ezek 34:13];
26 And they shall dwell safely therein, and shall build houses, and plant vineyards; yes, they shall dwell with confidence, when I have executed judgments upon all those that despise them round about them; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim. Jer 31:5;

EZEKIEL TWENTY-NINE

The judgment of Pharaoh for his treachery to Israel

1 In the tenth year, in the tenth *month*, in the twelfth *day* of the month, the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
2 Son of man, set thy face against Pharaoh king of Egypt, and prophesy against him, and against all Egypt:
3 Speak, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against you, Pharaoh king of Egypt, the great dragon that lies in the midst of his rivers, which has said, My river *is* mine own, and I have made *it* for myself. Ps 74:13-14; Isa 27:1; Isa 51:9; [Ezek 32:2];
4 But I will put hooks in thy jaws, and I will cause the fish of thy rivers to stick unto thy scales, and I will bring you up out of the midst of thy rivers, and all the fish of thy rivers shall stick unto thy scales. [Ezek 38:4];
5 And I will leave you *thrown* into the wilderness, you and all the fish of thy rivers: you shall fall upon the open fields; you shall not be brought together, nor gathered: I have given you for meat to the beasts of the field and to the fowls of the heaven.
6 And all the inhabitants of Egypt shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, because they have been a staff of reed to the house of Israel. 2Kgs 18:21; Isa 36:6;
7 When they took hold of you by thy hand, you didst break, and rend all their shoulder: and when they leaned upon you, you brakest, and madest all their loins to be at a stand.

The desolation of Egypt

8 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will bring a sword upon you, and cut off man and beast out of you.
9 And the land of Egypt shall be desolate and waste; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH: because he has said, The river *is* mine, and I have made *it*.
10 Behold, therefore I *am* against you, and against thy rivers, and I will make the land of Egypt utterly waste *and* desolate, from the tower of Syene even unto the border of Ethiopia.
11 No foot of man shall pass through it, nor foot of beast shall pass through it, neither shall it be inhabited forty years.

12 And I will make the land of Egypt desolate in the midst of the countries *that are* desolate, and her cities among the cities *that are* laid waste shall be desolate forty years: and I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations, and will disperse them through the countries.

The restoration thereof after 40 years

13 Yet thus saith the Lord GOD; At the end of forty years will I gather the Egyptians from the people whither they were scattered:

14 And I will bring again the captivity of Egypt, and will cause them to return *into* the land of Pathros, into the land of their habitation; and they shall be there a base kingdom.

15 It shall be the basest of the kingdoms; neither shall it exalt itself any more above the nations: for I will diminish them, that they shall no more rule over the nations.

16 And it shall be no more the confidence of the house of Israel, which bringeth *their* iniquity to remembrance, when they shall look after them: but they shall know that I *am* the Lord GOD. [Lam 4:17](#);

Egypt the reward of Nebuchadnezzar

17 And it came to pass in the seven and twentieth year, in the first *month*, in the first *day* of the month, the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

18 Son of man, Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon caused his army to serve a great service against Tyrus: every head *was* made bald, and every shoulder *was* peeled: yet had he no wages, nor his army, for Tyrus, for the service that he had served against it:

19 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will give the land of Egypt unto Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon; and he shall take her multitude, and take her spoil, and take her prey; and it shall be the wages for his army.

20 I have given him the land of Egypt *for* his labour wherewith he served against it, because they wrought for me, saith the Lord GOD.

Israel shall be restored

21 In that day will I cause the horn of the house of Israel to bud forth, and I will give you the opening of the mouth in the midst of them; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

The desolation of Egypt and her helpers

- 1** The word of the YAHWEH came again unto me, saying,
2 Son of man, prophesy and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Howl you, Woe worth the day!
3 For the day *is* near, even the day of the YAHWEH *is* near, a cloudy day; it shall be the time of the heathen.
4 And the sword shall come upon Egypt, and great pain shall be in Ethiopia, when the slain shall fall in Egypt, and they shall take away her multitude, and her foundations shall be broken down.
5 Ethiopia, and Libya, and Lydia, and all the mingled people, and Chub, and the men of the land that is in league, shall fall with them by the sword.
6 Thus saith the YAHWEH; They also that uphold Egypt shall fall; and the pride of her power shall come down: from the tower of Syene shall they fall in it by the sword, saith the Lord GOD.
7 And they shall be desolate in the midst of the countries *that are* desolate, and her cities shall be in the midst of the cities *that are* wasted.
8 And they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I have set a fire in Egypt, and *when* all her helpers shall be destroyed.
9 In that day shall messengers go forth from me in ships to make the careless Ethiopians afraid, and great pain shall come upon them, as in the day of Egypt: for, lo, it cometh.
10 Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also make the multitude of Egypt to cease by the hand of Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon.
11 He and his people with him, the terrible of the nations, shall be brought to destroy the land: and they shall draw their swords against Egypt, and fill the land with the slain. [Ezek 28:7](#); [\[Ezek 31:12\]](#);
12 And I will make the rivers dry, and sell the land into the hand of the wicked: and I will make the land waste, and all that is therein, by the hand of strangers: I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*.
13 Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will also destroy the idols, and I will cause *their* images to cease out of Noph; and there shall be no more a prince of the land of Egypt: and I will put a fear in the land of Egypt.
14 And I will make Pathros desolate, and will set fire in Zoan, and will execute judgments in No.
15 And I will pour my fury upon Sin, the strength of Egypt; and I will cut off the multitude of No.
16 And I will set fire in Egypt: Sin shall have great pain, and No shall be rent asunder, and Noph *shall have* distresses daily.
17 The young men of Aven and of Pibeseth shall fall by the sword: and these *cities* shall go into captivity.
18 At Tehaphnehes also the day shall be darkened, when I shall break there the yokes of Egypt: and the pomp of her strength shall cease in her: as for her, a cloud shall cover her, and her daughters shall go into captivity. [\[Ezek 38:9\]](#);
19 Thus will I execute judgments in Egypt: and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

The arm of Babylon shall be strengthened to break the arm of Egypt

- 20** And it came to pass in the eleventh year, in the first *month*, in the seventh *day* of the month, *that* the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
21 Son of man, I have broken the arm of Pharaoh king of Egypt; and, lo, it shall not be bound up to be healed, to put a roller to bind it, to make it strong to hold the sword.
22 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against Pharaoh king of Egypt, and will break his arms, the strong, and that which was broken; and I will cause the sword to fall out of his hand.
23 And I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations, and will disperse them through the countries.
24 And I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon, and put my sword in his hand: but I will break Pharaoh's arms, and he shall groan before him with the groanings of a deadly wounded *man*.

25 But I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon, and the arms of Pharaoh shall fall down; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I shall put my sword into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall stretch it out upon the land of Egypt.

26 And I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations, and disperse them among the countries; and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

EZEKIEL THIRTY-ONE

A relation unto Pharaoh

1 And it came to pass in the eleventh year, in the third *month*, in the first *day* of the month, *that* the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, speak unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, and to his multitude; Whom are you like in thy greatness? [\[Ezek 32:12\]](#);

of the glory of Assyria

3 Behold, the Assyrian *was* a cedar in Lebanon with fair branches, and with a shadowing shroud, and of a high stature; and his top was among the thick boughs. [Dan 4:10](#);

4 The waters made him great, the deep set him up on high with her rivers running round about his plants, and sent out her little rivers unto all the trees of the field.

5 Therefore his height was exalted above all the trees of the field, and his boughs were multiplied, and his branches became long because of the multitude of waters, when he shot forth.

6 All the fowls of heaven made their nests in his boughs, and under his branches did all the beasts of the field bring forth their young, and under his shadow dwelt all great nations. [Dan 4:12](#);

7 Thus was he fair in his greatness, in the length of his branches: for his root was by great waters.

8 The cedars in the garden of Elohim could not hide him: the fir trees were not like his boughs, and the chesnut trees were not like his branches; nor any tree in the garden of Elohim was like unto him in his beauty. [Gen 2:8](#);

9 I have made him fair by the multitude of his branches: so that all the trees of Eden, that *were* in the garden of Elohim, envied him.

and the fall thereof for pride

10 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Because you have lifted up thyself in height, and he has shot up his top among the thick boughs, and his heart is lifted up in his height;

11 I have therefore delivered him into the hand of the mighty one of the heathen; he shall surely deal with him: I have driven him out for his wickedness.

12 And strangers, the terrible of the nations, have cut him off, and have left him: upon the mountains and in all the valleys his branches are fallen, and his boughs are broken by all the rivers of the land; and all the people of the earth are gone down from his shadow, and have left him. [Ezek 28:7](#); [Ezek 30:11](#); [\[Ezek 32:12\]](#);

13 Upon his ruin shall all the fowls of the heaven remain, and all the beasts of the field shall be upon his branches:

14 To the end that none of all the trees by the waters exalt themselves for their height, neither shoot up their top among the thick boughs, neither their trees stand up in their height, all that drink water: for they are all delivered unto death, to the nether parts of the earth, in the midst of the children of men, with them that go down to the pit.

15 Thus saith the Lord GOD; In the day when he went down to the grave I caused a mourning: I covered the deep for him, and I restrained the floods thereof, and the great waters were stayed: and I caused Lebanon to mourn for him, and all the trees of the field fainted for him.

16 I made the nations to shake at the sound of his fall, when I cast him down to hell with them that descend into the pit: and all the trees of Eden, the choice and best of Lebanon, all that drink water, shall be comforted in the nether parts of the earth. [Isa 14:9](#);

17 They also went down into hell with him unto *them that be* slain with the sword; and *they that were* his arm, *that* dwelt under his shadow in the midst of the heathen.

The like destruction of Egypt

18 To whom are you thus like in glory and in greatness among the trees of Eden? yet shall you be brought down with the trees of Eden unto the nether parts of the earth: you shall lie in the midst of the uncircumcised with *them that be* slain by the sword. This *is* Pharaoh and all his multitude, saith the Lord GOD. [Ezek 28:10](#); [\[Ezek 32:12\]](#);

EZEKIEL THIRTY-TWO

A lamentation for the fearful fall of Egypt

1 And it came to pass in the twelfth year, in the twelfth month, in the first *day* of the month, *that* the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, take up a lamentation for Pharaoh king of Egypt, and say unto him, you are like a young lion of the nations, and you are as a whale in the seas: and you camest forth with thy rivers, and troubledst the waters with thy feet, and fouledst their rivers. [Ezek 29:3](#);

3 Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will therefore spread out my net over you with a company of many people; and they shall bring you up in my net. [Ezek 12:13](#); [Ezek 17:20](#);

4 Then will I leave you upon the land, I will cast you forth upon the open field, and will cause all the fowls of the heaven to remain upon you, and I will fill the beasts of the whole earth with you.

5 And I will lay thy flesh upon the mountains, and fill the valleys with thy height.

6 I will also water with thy blood the land wherein you swimdest, *even* to the mountains; and the rivers shall be full of you.

7 And when I shall put you out, I will cover the heaven, and make the stars thereof dark; I will cover the sun with a cloud, and the moon shall not give her light. [Isa 13:10](#); [Joel 2:31](#); [\[Isa 24:23\]](#); [\[Joel 2:10\]](#); [\[Matt 24:29\]](#); [\[Mark 13:24\]](#); [\[Luke 21:25\]](#);

8 All the bright lights of heaven will I make dark over you, and set darkness upon thy land, saith the Lord GOD.

9 I will also vex the hearts of many people, when I shall bring thy destruction among the nations, into the countries which you have not known.

10 Yes, I will make many people amazed at you, and their kings shall be horribly afraid for you, when I shall brandish my sword before them; and they shall tremble at *every* moment, every man for his own life, in the day of thy fall.

The sword of Babylon shall destroy it

11 For thus saith the Lord GOD; The sword of the king of Babylon shall come upon you.

12 By the swords of the mighty will I cause thy multitude to fall, the terrible of the nations, all of them: and they shall spoil the pomp of Egypt, and all the multitude thereof shall be destroyed. [Ezek 28:7](#); [Ezek 31:12](#); [Ezek 32:16](#); [Ezek 31:2](#); [Ezek 31:18](#);

13 I will destroy also all the beasts thereof from beside the great waters; neither shall the foot of man trouble them any more, nor the hoofs of beasts trouble them.

14 Then will I make their waters deep, and cause their rivers to run like oil, saith the Lord GOD.

15 When I shall make the land of Egypt desolate, and the country shall be destitute of that whereof it was full, when I shall smite all them that dwell therein, then shall they know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

16 This *is* the lamentation wherewith they shall lament her: the daughters of the nations shall lament her: they shall lament for her, *even* for Egypt, and for all her multitude, saith the Lord GOD. [Ezek 32:12];

It shall be brought down to hell, among all the uncircumcised nations

17 It came to pass also in the twelfth year, in the fifteenth *day* of the month, *that* the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

18 Son of man, wail for the multitude of Egypt, and cast them down, *even* her, and the daughters of the famous nations, unto the nether parts of the earth, with them that go down into the pit.

19 Whom dost you pass in beauty? go down, and be you laid with the uncircumcised.

20 They shall fall in the midst of *them that are* slain by the sword: she is delivered to the sword: draw her and all her multitudes.

21 The strong among the mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of hell with them that help him: they are gone down, they lie uncircumcised, slain by the sword.

22 Asshur *is* there and all her company: his graves *are* about him: all of them slain, fallen by the sword:

23 Whose graves are set in the sides of the pit, and her company is round about her grave: all of them slain, fallen by the sword, which caused terror in the land of the living.

24 There *is* Elam and all her multitude round about her grave, all of them slain, fallen by the sword, which are gone down uncircumcised into the nether parts of the earth, which caused their terror in the land of the living; yet have they borne their shame with them that go down to the pit.

25 They have set her a bed in the midst of the slain with all her multitude: her graves *are* round about him: all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword: though their terror was caused in the land of the living, yet have they borne their shame with them that go down to the pit: he is put in the midst of *them that be* slain.

26 There *is* Meshech, Tubal, and all her multitude: her graves *are* round about him: all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword, though they caused their terror in the land of the living.

27 And they shall not lie with the mighty *that are* fallen of the uncircumcised, which are gone down to hell with their weapons of war: and they have laid their swords under their heads, but their iniquities shall be upon their bones, though *they were* the terror of the mighty in the land of the living.

28 Yes, you shall be broken in the midst of the uncircumcised, and shall lie with *them that are* slain with the sword.

29 There *is* Edom, her kings, and all her princes, which with their might are laid by *them that were* slain by the sword: they shall lie with the uncircumcised, and with them that go down to the pit.

30 There *be* the princes of the north, all of them, and all the Zidonians, which are gone down with the slain; with their terror they are ashamed of their might; and they lie uncircumcised with *them that be* slain by the sword, and bear their shame with them that go down to the pit.

31 Pharaoh shall see them, and shall be comforted over all his multitude, *even* Pharaoh and all his army slain by the sword, saith the Lord GOD.

32 For I have caused my terror in the land of the living: and he shall be laid in the midst of the uncircumcised with *them that are* slain with the sword, *even* Pharaoh and all his multitude, saith the Lord GOD.

According to the duty of a watchman in warning the people

- 1** Again the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
2 Son of man, speak to the children of thy people, and say unto them, When I bring the sword upon a land, if the people of the land take a man of their coasts, and set him for their watchman:
3 If when he seeth the sword come upon the land, he blow the trumpet, and warn the people;
4 Then whosoever heareth the sound of the trumpet, and taketh not warning; if the sword come, and take him away, his blood shall be upon his own head.
5 He heard the sound of the trumpet, and took not warning; his blood shall be upon him. But he that taketh warning shall deliver his being.
6 But if the watchman see the sword come, and blow not the trumpet, and the people be not warned; if the sword come, and take *any* person from among them, he is taken away in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at the watchman's hand.

Ezekiel is admonished of his duty

- 7** So you, O son of man, I have set you a watchman unto the house of Israel; therefore you shall hear the word at my mouth, and warn them from me. [Ezek 3:17](#);
8 When I say unto the wicked, O wicked *man*, you shall surely die; if you dost not speak to warn the wicked from his way, that wicked *man* shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thine hand. [\[Ezek 3:18\]](#); [\[Heb 13:17\]](#);
9 Nevertheless, if you warn the wicked of his way to turn from it; if he do not turn from his way, he shall die in his iniquity; but you have delivered thy being.

Elohim shows the justice of his ways towards the penitent and towards revolvers

- 10** Therefore, O you son of man, speak unto the house of Israel; Thus you speak, saying, If our transgressions and our sins *be* upon us, and we pine away in them, how should we then live? [Ezek 24:23](#);
11 Say unto them, *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn you, turn you from your evil ways; for why will you die, O house of Israel? [Ezek 18:23](#); [Ezek 18:32](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);
12 Therefore, you son of man, say unto the children of thy people, The righteousness of the righteous shall not deliver him in the day of his transgression: as for the wickedness of the wicked, he shall not fall thereby in the day that he turneth from his wickedness; neither shall the righteous be able to live for his *righteousness* in the day that he sinneth. [Ezek 18:24](#); [\[Ezek 3:20\]](#);
13 When I shall say to the righteous, *that* he shall surely live; if he trust to his own righteousness, and commit iniquity, all his righteousnesses shall not be remembered; but for his iniquity that he has committed, he shall die for it.
14 Again, when I say unto the wicked, you shall surely die; if he turn from his sin, and do that which is lawful and right;
15 *If* the wicked restore the pledge, give again that he had robbed, walk in the statutes of life, without committing iniquity; he shall surely live, he shall not die.
16 None of his sins that he has committed shall be mentioned unto him: he has done that which is lawful and right; he shall surely live.

He maintains his justice

- 17** Yet the children of thy people say, The way of the Lord is not equal: but as for them, their way is not equal. [Ezek 33:20](#); [Ezek 18:25](#); [Ezek 18:29](#);

18 When the righteous turneth from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, he shall even die thereby.

19 But if the wicked turn from his wickedness, and do that which is lawful and right, he shall live thereby.

20 Yet you say, The way of the Lord is not equal. O you house of Israel, I will judge you every one after his ways. [\[Job 34:11\]](#); [\[Ps 62:12\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:25\]](#); [\[Ezek 33:17\]](#);

Upon the news of the taking of Jerusalem he prophecies the desolation of the land

21 And it came to pass in the twelfth year of our captivity, in the tenth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month, *that* one that had escaped out of Jerusalem came unto me, saying, The city is smitten. [Ezek 24:26](#); [2Kgs 25:1-30](#); [\[Ezek 40:1\]](#);

22 Now the hand of the YAHWEH was upon me in the evening, before he that was escaped came; and had opened my mouth, until he came to me in the morning; and my mouth was opened, and I was no more dumb.

23 Then the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

24 Son of man, they that inhabit those wastes of the land of Israel speak, saying, Abraham was one, and he inherited the land: but we *are* many; the land is given us for inheritance.

25 Wherefore say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; you eat with the blood, and lift up your eyes toward your idols, and shed blood: and shall you possess the land? [Gen 9:4](#); [Lev 3:17](#);

26 You stand upon your sword, you work abomination, and you defile every one his neighbour's wife: and shall you possess the land?

27 Say you thus unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; *As* I live, surely they that *are* in the wastes shall fall by the sword, and him that *is* in the open field will I give to the beasts to be devoured, and they that *be* in the forts and in the caves shall die of the pestilence. [\[Ezek 39:4\]](#);

28 For I will lay the land most desolate, and the pomp of her strength shall cease; and the mountains of Israel shall be desolate, that none shall pass through.

29 Then shall they know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I have laid the land most desolate because of all their abominations which they have committed.

Elohim's judgment upon the mockers of the prophets

30 Also, you son of man, the children of thy people still are talking against you by the walls and in the doors of the houses, and speak one to another, every one to his brother, saying, Come, I pray you, and hear what is the word that cometh forth from the YAHWEH.

31 And they come unto you as the people cometh, and they sit before you *as* my people, and they hear thy words, but they will not do them: for with their mouth they show much love, *but* their heart goes after their covetousness. [Ezek 14:1](#); [Ezek 20:1](#); [\[Matt 15:8\]](#); [\[Matt 21:30\]](#); [\[Mark 7:6\]](#);

32 And, lo, you are unto them as a very lovely song of one that has a pleasant voice, and can play well on an instrument: for they hear thy words, but they do them not.

33 And when this cometh to pass, (lo, it will come,) then shall they know that a prophet has been among them. [\[Ezek 2:5\]](#);

A reproof of the shepherds

- 1** And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
- 2** Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel, prophesy, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD unto the shepherds; Woe *be* to the shepherds of Israel that do feed themselves! should not the shepherds feed the flocks? [Jer 23:1](#); [\[Zech 11:17\]](#); [\[Matt 9:36\]](#); [\[Mark 6:34\]](#);
- 3** You eat the fat, and you clothe you with the wool, you kill them that are fed: *but* you feed not the flock.
- 4** The diseased have you not strengthened, neither have you healed that which was sick, neither have you bound up *that which was* broken, neither have you brought again that which was driven away, neither have you sought that which was lost; but with force and with cruelty have you ruled them. [1Pet 5:3](#);
- 5** And they were scattered, because *there is* no shepherd: and they became meat to all the beasts of the field, when they were scattered.
- 6** My sheep wandered through all the mountains, and upon every high hill: yes, my flock was scattered upon all the face of the earth, and none did search or seek *after them*. [\[1Pet 2:25\]](#);

Elohim's judgment against them

- 7** Therefore, you shepherds, hear the word of the YAHWEH;
- 8** *As* I live, saith the Lord GOD, surely because my flock became a prey, and my flock became meat to every beast of the field, because *there was* no shepherd, neither did my shepherds search for my flock, but the shepherds fed themselves, and fed not my flock;
- 9** Therefore, O you shepherds, hear the word of the YAHWEH;
- 10** Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against the shepherds; and I will require my flock at their hand, and cause them to cease from feeding the flock; neither shall the shepherds feed themselves any more; for I will deliver my flock from their mouth, that they may not be meat for them.

His providence over his flock

- 11** For thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I, *even* I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out. [\[Jer 23:4\]](#);
- 12** As a shepherd seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep *that are* scattered; so will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day.
- 13** And I will bring them out from the people, and gather them from the countries, and will bring them to their own land, and feed them upon the mountains of Israel by the rivers, and in all the inhabited places of the country. [Ezek 28:25](#);
- 14** I will feed them in a good pasture, and upon the high mountains of Israel shall their fold be: there shall they lie in a good fold, and *in* a fat pasture shall they feed upon the mountains of Israel.
- 15** I will feed my flock, and I will cause them to lie down, saith the Lord GOD.
- 16** I will seek that which was lost, and bring again that which was driven away, and will bind up *that which was* broken, and will strengthen that which was sick: but I will destroy the fat and the strong; I will feed them with judgment.
- 17** And *as for* you, O my flock, thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I judge between cattle and cattle, between the rams and the he goats. [\[Matt 25:32\]](#);
- 18** *Seemeth it* a small thing unto you to have eaten up the good pasture, but you must tread down with your feet the residue of your pastures? and to have drunk of the deep waters, but you must foul the residue with your feet?

19 And *as for* my flock, they eat that which you have trodden with your feet; and they drink that which you have fouled with your feet.

The kingdom of the Messiah

20 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD unto them; Behold, I, *even* I, will judge between the fat cattle and between the lean cattle. [\[Matt 25:32\]](#);

21 Because you have thrust with side and with shoulder, and pushed all the diseased with your horns, till you have scattered them abroad;

22 Therefore will I save my flock, and they shall no more be a prey; and I will judge between cattle and cattle.

23 And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, *even* my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. [Isa 40:11](#); [John 10:11](#); [Isa 42:1](#); [Isa 50:10](#); [Isa 52:13](#); [Isa 53:11](#); [Isa 30:9](#); [\[Ps 23:1\]](#); [\[Jer 3:15\]](#); [\[Jer 30:9\]](#); [\[Ezek 37:24\]](#); [\[Hos 3:5\]](#); [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[John 1:45\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#); [\[Heb 13:20\]](#); [\[1Pet 5:4\]](#);

24 And I the YAHWEH will be their Elohim, and my servant David a prince among them; I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*. [Isa 55:4](#);

25 And I will make with them a covenant of peace, and will cause the evil beasts to cease out of the land: and they shall dwell safely in the wilderness, and sleep in the woods. [\[Ezek 37:26\]](#); [\[Hos 2:18\]](#);

26 And I will make them and the places round about my hill a blessing; and I will cause the shower to come down in its season; there shall be showers of blessing.

27 And the tree of the field shall yield her fruit, and the earth shall yield her increase, and they shall be safe in their land, and shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I have broken the bands of their yoke, and delivered them out of the hand of those that served themselves of them.

28 And they shall no more be a prey to the heathen, neither shall the beast of the land devour them; but they shall dwell safely, and none shall make *them* afraid.

29 And I will raise up for them a plant of renown, and they shall be no more consumed with hunger in the land, neither bear the shame of the heathen any more. [Ezek 36:6](#); [\[Ezek 36:29\]](#);

30 Thus shall they know that I the YAHWEH their Elohim *am* with them, and *that* they, *even* the house of Israel, *are* my people, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Ps 100:3\]](#);

31 And you my flock, the flock of my pasture, *are* men, *and* I *am* your Elohim, saith the Lord GOD. [John 10:11](#);

EZEKIEL THIRTY-FIVE

The judgment of mount Seir for their hatred of Israel, and insulting over their distress

1 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

2 Son of man, set thy face against mount Seir, and prophesy against it,

3 And say unto it, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, O mount Seir, I *am* against you, and I will stretch out mine hand against you, and I will make you most desolate.

4 I will lay thy cities waste, and you shall be desolate, and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

5 Because you have had a perpetual hatred, and have shed *the blood of* the children of Israel by the force of the sword in the time of their calamity, in the time *that their* iniquity *had* an end: [Ezek 25:15](#); [\[Obad 1:10\]](#);

6 Therefore, *as* I live, saith the Lord GOD, I will prepare you unto blood, and blood shall pursue you: sith you have not hated blood, even blood shall pursue you.

7 Thus will I make mount Seir most desolate, and cut off from it him that passeth out and him that returneth.

8 And I will fill his mountains with his slain *men*: in thy hills, and in thy valleys, and in all thy rivers, shall they fall that are slain with the sword.

9 I will make you perpetual desolations, and thy cities shall not return: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

10 Because you have said, These two nations and these two countries shall be mine, and we will possess it; whereas the YAHWEH was there: [Ps 83:12](#); [\[Ezek 36:2\]](#);

11 Therefore, *as* I live, saith the Lord GOD, I will even do according to thine anger, and according to thine envy which you have used out of thy hatred against them; and I will make myself known among them, when I have judged you.

12 And you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, *and that* I have heard all thy blasphemies which you have spoken against the mountains of Israel, saying, They are laid desolate, they are given us to consume.

13 Thus with your mouth you have boasted against me, and have multiplied your words against me: I have heard *them*.

14 Thus saith the Lord GOD; When the whole earth rejoiceth, I will make you desolate.

15 As you didst rejoice at the inheritance of the house of Israel, because it was desolate, so will I do unto you: you shall be desolate, O mount Seir, and all Idumea, *even* all of it: and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH. [\[Obad 1:15\]](#);

EZEKIEL THIRTY-SIX

The land of Israel is comforted, both by destruction of the heathen, who spitefully used it

1 Also, you son of man, prophesy unto the mountains of Israel, and say, you mountains of Israel, hear the word of the YAHWEH: [Ezek 6:2](#);

2 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because the enemy has said against you, Aha, even the ancient high places are ours in possession: [Ezek 35:10](#);

3 Therefore prophesy and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because they have made *you* desolate, and swallowed you up on every side, that you might be a possession unto the residue of the heathen, and you are taken up in the lips of talkers, and *are* an infamy of the people:

4 Therefore, you mountains of Israel, hear the word of the Lord GOD; Thus saith the Lord GOD to the mountains, and to the hills, to the rivers, and to the valleys, to the desolate wastes, and to the cities that are forsaken, which became a prey and derision to the residue of the heathen that *are* round about;

5 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Surely in the fire of my jealousy have I spoken against the residue of the heathen, and against all Idumea, which have appointed my land into their possession with the joy of all *their* heart, with despiteful minds, to cast it out for a prey. [\[Ezek 38:19\]](#);

6 Prophesy therefore concerning the land of Israel, and say unto the mountains, and to the hills, to the rivers, and to the valleys, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I have spoken in my jealousy and in my fury, because you have borne the shame of the heathen: [Ezek 34:29](#);

7 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; I have lifted up mine hand, Surely the heathen that *are* about you, they shall bear their shame.

and by the blessings of Elohim promised unto it

8 But you, O mountains of Israel, you shall shoot forth your branches, and yield your fruit to my people of Israel; for they are at hand to come.

9 For, behold, I *am* for you, and I will turn unto you, and you shall be tilled and sown:

10 And I will multiply men upon you, all the house of Israel, *even* all of it: and the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be built:

11 And I will multiply upon you man and beast; and they shall increase and bring fruit: and I will settle you after your old estates, and will do better *unto you* than at your beginnings: and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

12 *yes*, I will cause men to walk upon you, *even* my people Israel; and they shall possess you, and you shall be their inheritance, and you shall no more henceforth deprive them *of children*.

13 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Because they say unto you, you *land* devourest up men, and have bereaved thy nations;

14 Therefore you shall devour men no more, neither make thy nations fall any more, saith the Lord GOD.

15 Neither will I cause *men* to hear in you the shame of the heathen any more, neither shall you bear the reproach of the people any more, neither shall you cause thy nations to fall any more, saith the Lord GOD.

Israel was rejected for their sin

16 Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

17 Son of man, when the house of Israel dwelt in their own land, they defiled it by their own way and by their doings: their way was before me as the uncleanness of a removed woman.

18 Wherefore I poured my fury upon them for the blood that they had shed upon the land, and for their idols *wherewith* they had polluted it:

19 And I scattered them among the heathen, and they were dispersed through the countries: according to their way and according to their doings I judged them.

20 And when they entered unto the heathen, whither they went, they profaned my holy name, when they said to them, These *are* the people of the YAHWEH, and are gone forth out of his land. [Isa 52:5](#); [Rom 2:24](#);

and shall be restored without their desert

21 But I had pity for mine holy name, which the house of Israel had profaned among the heathen, whither they went.

22 Therefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; I do not *this* for your sakes, O house of Israel, but for mine holy name's sake, which you have profaned among the heathen, whither you went. [\[Isa 43:25\]](#);

23 And I will sanctify my great name, which was profaned among the heathen, which you have profaned in the midst of them; and the heathen shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, saith the Lord GOD, when I shall be sanctified in you before their eyes. [\[Isa 52:5\]](#); [\[Rom 2:24\]](#);

24 For I will take you from among the heathen, and gather you out of all countries, and will bring you into your own land.

The blessings of the Messiah's kingdom

25 Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and you shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you. [\[Titus 3:6\]](#); [\[Heb 10:22\]](#);

26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you a heart of flesh. [Jer 32:39](#); [Ezek 11:19](#); [\[Deut 30:6\]](#); [\[Jer 24:7\]](#); [\[Ezek 18:31\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:3\]](#);

27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and you shall keep my judgments, and do *them*. [\[Acts 2:17\]](#);

28 And you shall dwell in the land that I gave to your fathers; and you shall be my people, and I will be your Elohim.

29 I will also save you from all your uncleannesses: and I will call for the corn, and will increase it, and lay no famine upon you. [Ezek 34:29](#);

30 And I will multiply the fruit of the tree, and the increase of the field, that you shall receive no more reproach of famine among the heathen.

31 Then shall you remember your own evil ways, and your doings that *were* not good, and shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for your iniquities and for your abominations. [Ezek 16:61](#); [Ezek 16:63](#); [Ezek 6:9](#); [Ezek 20:43](#);

32 Not for your sakes do I *this*, saith the Lord GOD, be it known unto you: be ashamed and confounded for your own ways, O house of Israel.

33 Thus saith the Lord GOD; In the day that I shall have cleansed you from all your iniquities I will also cause *you* to dwell in the cities, and the wastes shall be built.

34 And the desolate land shall be tilled, whereas it lay desolate in the sight of all that passed by.

35 And they shall say, This land that was desolate is become like the garden of Eden; and the waste and desolate and ruined cities *are become* fenced, *and* are inhabited. [Isa 51:3](#); [Ezek 28:13](#);

36 Then the heathen that are left round about you shall know that I the YAHWEH build the ruined *places*, *and* plant that that was desolate: I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*, and I will do *it*. [Ezek 17:24](#); [Ezek 22:14](#); [Ezek 37:14](#);

37 Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will yet *for* this be enquired of by the house of Israel, to do *it* for them; I will increase them with men like a flock.

38 As the holy flock, as the flock of Jerusalem in her solemn feasts; so shall the waste cities be filled with flocks of men: and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

EZEKIEL THIRTY-SEVEN

By the resurrection of dry bones

1 The hand of the YAHWEH was upon me, and carried me out in the spirit of the YAHWEH, and set me down in the midst of the valley which *was* full of bones, [\[Ps 141:7\]](#);

2 And caused me to pass by them round about: and, behold, *there were* very many in the open valley; and, lo, *they were* very dry.

3 And he said unto me, Son of man, can these bones live? And I answered, O Lord GOD, you knowest. [\[1Cor 15:35\]](#);

4 Again he said unto me, Prophesy upon these bones, and say unto them, O you dry bones, hear the word of the YAHWEH.

5 Thus saith the Lord GOD unto these bones; Behold, I will cause breath to enter into you, and you shall live:

6 And I will lay sinews upon you, and will bring up flesh upon you, and cover you with skin, and put breath in you, and you shall live; and you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

7 So I prophesied as I was commanded: and as I prophesied, there was a noise, and behold a shaking, and the bones came together, bone to his bone.

8 And when I beheld, lo, the sinews and the flesh came up upon them, and the skin covered them above: but *there was* no breath in them.

9 Then said he unto me, Prophesy unto the wind, prophesy, son of man, and say to the wind, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Come from the four winds, O breath, and breathe upon these slain, that they may live.

10 So I prophesied as he commanded me, and the breath came into them, and they lived, and stood up upon their feet, an exceeding great army.

the dead hope of Israel is revived

11 Then he said unto me, Son of man, these bones are the whole house of Israel: behold, they say, Our bones are dried, and our hope is lost: we are cut off for our parts. [\[1Sam 2:6\]](#); [\[Ps 141:7\]](#);

12 Therefore prophesy and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, O my people, I will open your graves, and cause you to come up out of your graves, and bring you into the land of Israel.

13 And you shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, when I have opened your graves, O my people, and brought you up out of your graves,

14 And shall put my spirit in you, and you shall live, and I shall place you in your own land: then shall you know that I the YAHWEH have spoken *it*, and performed *it*, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Ezek 36:36\]](#);

By the uniting of two sticks

15 The word of the YAHWEH came again unto me, saying,

16 Moreover, you son of man, take you one stick, and write upon it, For Judah, and for the children of Israel his companions: then take another stick, and write upon it, For Joseph, the stick of Ephraim, and *for* all the house of Israel his companions: [\[Hos 1:11\]](#);

17 And join them one to another into one stick; and they shall become one in thine hand.

is shown the incorporation of Israel into Judah

18 And when the children of thy people shall speak unto you, saying, will you not show us what you *meanest* by these?

19 Say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which *is* in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, *even* with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in mine hand.

20 And the sticks whereon you writest shall be in thine hand before their eyes.

The promises of the Messiah's kingdom

21 And say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, whither they be gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land:

22 And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all: and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all: [John 10:16](#); [\[Hos 1:11\]](#); [\[Hos 3:5\]](#);

23 Neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with their detestable things, nor with any of their transgressions: but I will save them out of all their dwellingplaces, wherein they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their Elohim.

24 And David my servant *shall be* king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them. [Isa 40:11](#); [Jer 30:9](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 13:32\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#);

25 And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, *even* they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David *shall be* their prince for ever. [\[Luke 24:27\]](#);

26 Moreover I will make a covenant of peace with them; it shall be an everlasting covenant with them: and I will place them, and multiply them, and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore. [Ps 89:3](#); [Ezek 34:25](#); [2Cor 6:16](#); [\[Lev 26:11\]](#); [\[John 12:34\]](#);

27 My tabernacle also shall be with them: yes, I will be their Elohim, and they shall be my people. [Ezek 11:20](#); [Ezek 24:11](#); [\[Zech 2:10\]](#);

28 And the heathen shall know that I the YAHWEH do sanctify Israel, when my sanctuary shall be in the midst of them for evermore.

The army

- 1** And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
2 Son of man, set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, and prophesy against him, [Rev 20:8](#);
3 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against you, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal:
4 And I will turn you back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring you forth, and all thine army, horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts *of armour, even* a great company *with* bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords: [Ezek 29:4](#); [Ezek 39:2](#);
5 Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them; all of them with shield and helmet:
6 Gomer, and all his bands; the house of Togarmah of the north quarters, and all his bands: *and* many people with you.
7 Be you prepared, and prepare for thyself, you, and all thy company that are assembled unto you, and be you a guard unto them.

and malice of Gog

- 8** After many days you shall be visited: in the latter years you shall come into the land *that is* brought back from the sword, *and is* gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have been always waste: but it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them.
9 You shall ascend and come like a storm, you shall be like a cloud to cover the land, you, and all thy bands, and many people with you. [Ezek 30:18](#);
10 Thus saith the Lord GOD; It shall also come to pass, *that* at the same time shall things come into thy mind, and you shall think an evil thought:
11 And you shall say, I will go up to the land of unwallied villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates,
12 To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places *that are now* inhabited, and upon the people *that are* gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land.
13 Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof, shall say unto you, are you come to take a spoil? have you gathered thy company to take a prey? to carry away silver and gold, to take away cattle and goods, to take a great spoil?

Elohim's judgment against him

- 14** Therefore, son of man, prophesy and say unto Gog, Thus saith the Lord GOD; In that day when my people of Israel dwelleth safely, shall you not know *it*?
15 And you shall come from thy place out of the north parts, you, and many people with you, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army:
16 And you shall come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring you against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in you, O Gog, before their eyes.
17 Thus saith the Lord GOD; are you he of whom I have spoken in old time by my servants the prophets of Israel, which prophesied in those days *many* years that I would bring you against them?
18 And it shall come to pass at the same time when Gog shall come against the land of Israel, saith the Lord GOD, *that* my fury shall come up in my face.
19 For in my jealousy *and* in the fire of my wrath have I spoken, Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel; [Ezek 36:5-6](#);

20 So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that *are* upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground.

21 And I will call for a sword against him throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord GOD: every man's sword shall be against his brother. [\[Mark 13:12\];](#)

22 And I will plead against him with pestilence and with blood; and I will rain upon him, and upon his bands, and upon the many people that *are* with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones, fire, and brimstone.

23 Thus will I magnify myself, and sanctify myself; and I will be known in the eyes of many nations, and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

EZEKIEL THIRTY-NINE

Elohim's judgment upon Gog

1 Therefore, you son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I *am* against you, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: [\[Rev 20:8\];](#)

2 And I will turn you back, and leave but the sixth part of you, and will cause you to come up from the north parts, and will bring you upon the mountains of Israel: [Ezek 38:4;](#)

3 And I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand.

4 You shall fall upon the mountains of Israel, you, and all thy bands, and the people that *is* with you: I will give you unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and *to* the beasts of the field to be devoured. [Ezek 33:27;](#)

5 You shall fall upon the open field: for I have spoken *it*, saith the Lord GOD.

6 And I will send a fire on Magog, and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles: and they shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH.

7 So will I make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel; and I will not *let them* pollute my holy name any more: and the heathen shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH, the Holy One in Israel.

Israel's victory

8 Behold, it is come, and it is done, saith the Lord GOD; this *is* the day whereof I have spoken.

9 And they that dwell in the cities of Israel shall go forth, and shall set on fire and burn the weapons, both the shields and the bucklers, the bows and the arrows, and the handstaves, and the spears, and they shall burn them with fire seven years:

10 So that they shall take no wood out of the field, neither cut down *any* out of the forests; for they shall burn the weapons with fire: and they shall spoil those that spoiled them, and rob those that robbed them, saith the Lord GOD. [\[Exod 3:22\];](#)

Gog's burial in Hamon-gog

11 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* I will give unto Gog a place there of graves in Israel, the valley of the passengers on the east of the sea: and it shall stop the *noses* of the passengers: and there shall they bury Gog and all his multitude: and they shall call *it* The valley of Hamongog.

12 And seven months shall the house of Israel be burying of them, that they may cleanse the land.

13 Yes, all the people of the land shall bury *them*; and it shall be to them a renown the day that I shall be glorified, saith the Lord GOD.

14 And they shall sever out men of continual employment, passing through the land to bury with the passengers those that remain upon the face of the earth, to cleanse it: after the end of seven months shall they search.

15 And the passengers *that* pass through the land, when *any* seeth a man's bone, then shall he set up a sign by it, till the buriers have buried it in the valley of Hamongog.

16 And also the name of the city *shall be* Hamonah. Thus shall they cleanse the land.

The feast of the fowls

17 And, you son of man, thus saith the Lord GOD; Speak unto every feathered fowl, and to every beast of the field, Assemble yourselves, and come; gather yourselves on every side to my sacrifice that I do sacrifice for you, *even* a great sacrifice upon the mountains of Israel, that you may eat flesh, and drink blood. [\[Rev 19:17\];](#)

18 You shall eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth, of rams, of lambs, and of goats, of bullocks, all of them fatlings of Bashan.

19 And you shall eat fat till you be full, and drink blood till you be drunken, of my sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you.

20 Thus you shall be filled at my table with horses and chariots, with mighty men, and with all men of war, saith the Lord GOD.

Israel having been plagued for their sins

21 And I will set my glory among the heathen, and all the heathen shall see my judgment that I have executed, and my hand that I have laid upon them.

22 So the house of Israel shall know that I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim from that day and forward.

23 And the heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity: because they trespassed against me, therefore hid I my face from them, and gave them into the hand of their enemies: so fell they all by the sword.

24 According to their uncleanness and according to their transgressions have I done unto them, and hid my face from them.

shall be gathered again with eternal favor

25 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; Now will I bring again the captivity of Jacob, and have mercy upon the whole house of Israel, and will be jealous for my holy name;

26 After that they have borne their shame, and all their trespasses whereby they have trespassed against me, when they dwelt safely in their land, and none made *them* afraid.

27 When I have brought them again from the people, and gathered them out of their enemies' lands, and am sanctified in them in the sight of many nations;

28 Then shall they know that I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim, which caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen: but I have gathered them unto their own land, and have left none of them any more there.

29 Neither will I hide my face any more from them: for I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord GOD. [Joel 2:28; Acts 2:17; \[Zech 12:10\];](#)

EZEKIEL FORTY

The time, manner, and end of the vision of the city and temple

1 In the five and twentieth year of our captivity, in the beginning of the year, in the tenth *day* of the month, in the fourteenth year after that the city was smitten, in the selfsame day the hand of the YAHWEH was upon me, and brought me thither. [Ezek 33:21;](#)

2 In the visions of Elohim brought he me into the land of Israel, and set me upon a very high mountain, by which *was* as the frame of a city on the south.

3 And he brought me thither, and, behold, *there was* a man, whose appearance *was* like the appearance of brass, with a line of flax in his hand, and a measuring reed; and he stood in the gate. [Rev 11:1]; [Rev 21:15];

4 And the man said unto me, Son of man, behold with thine eyes, and hear with thine ears, and set thine heart upon all that I shall show you; for to the intent that I might show *them* unto you are you brought hither: declare all that you seest to the house of Israel.

5 And behold a wall on the outside of the house round about, and in the man's hand a measuring reed of six cubits *long* by the cubit and a hand breadth: so he measured the breadth of the building, one reed; and the height, one reed.

The description of the east gate of the outer court

6 Then came he unto the gate which looketh toward the east, and went up the stairs thereof, and measured the threshold of the gate, *which was* one reed broad; and the other threshold *of the gate, which was* one reed broad.

7 And *every* little chamber *was* one reed long, and one reed broad; and between the little chambers *were* five cubits; and the threshold of the gate by the porch of the gate within *was* one reed.

8 He measured also the porch of the gate within, one reed.

9 Then measured he the porch of the gate, eight cubits; and the posts thereof, two cubits; and the porch of the gate *was* inward.

10 And the little chambers of the gate eastward *were* three on this side, and three on that side; they three *were* of one measure: and the posts had one measure on this side and on that side.

11 And he measured the breadth of the entry of the gate, ten cubits; *and* the length of the gate, thirteen cubits.

12 The space also before the little chambers *was* one cubit *on this side*, and the space *was* one cubit on that side: and the little chambers *were* six cubits on this side, and six cubits on that side.

13 He measured then the gate from the roof of *one* little chamber to the roof of another: the breadth *was* five and twenty cubits, door against door.

14 He made also posts of threescore cubits, even unto the post of the court round about the gate.

15 And from the face of the gate of the entrance unto the face of the porch of the inner gate *were* fifty cubits.

16 And *there were* narrow windows to the little chambers, and to their posts within the gate round about, and likewise to the arches: and windows *were* round about inward: and upon *each* post *were* palm trees.

17 Then brought he me into the outward court, and, lo, *there were* chambers, and a pavement made for the court round about: thirty chambers *were* upon the pavement.

18 And the pavement by the side of the gates over against the length of the gates *was* the lower pavement.

19 Then he measured the breadth from the forefront of the lower gate unto the forefront of the inner court without, a hundred cubits eastward and northward.

of the north gate

20 And the gate of the outward court that looked toward the north, he measured the length thereof, and the breadth thereof.

21 And the little chambers thereof *were* three on this side and three on that side; and the posts thereof and the arches thereof were after the measure of the first gate: the length thereof *was* fifty cubits, and the breadth five and twenty cubits.

22 And their windows, and their arches, and their palm trees, *were* after the measure of the gate that looketh toward the east; and they went up unto it by seven steps; and the arches thereof *were* before them.

23 And the gate of the inner court *was* over against the gate toward the north, and toward the east; and he measured from gate to gate a hundred cubits.

of the south gate

24 After that he brought me toward the south, and behold a gate toward the south: and he measured the posts thereof and the arches thereof according to these measures.

25 And *there were* windows in it and in the arches thereof round about, like those windows: the length *was* fifty cubits, and the breadth five and twenty cubits.

26 And *there were* seven steps to go up to it, and the arches thereof *were* before them: and it had palm trees, one on this side, and another on that side, upon the posts thereof.

of the south gate of the inner court

27 And *there was* a gate in the inner court toward the south: and he measured from gate to gate toward the south a hundred cubits.

28 And he brought me to the inner court by the south gate: and he measured the south gate according to these measures;

29 And the little chambers thereof, and the posts thereof, and the arches thereof, according to these measures: and *there were* windows in it and in the arches thereof round about: *it was* fifty cubits long, and five and twenty cubits broad.

30 And the arches round about *were* five and twenty cubits long, and five cubits broad.

31 And the arches thereof *were* toward the utter court; and palm trees *were* upon the posts thereof: and the going up to it *had* eight steps.

of the east gate

32 And he brought me into the inner court toward the east: and he measured the gate according to these measures.

33 And the little chambers thereof, and the posts thereof, and the arches thereof, *were* according to these measures: and *there were* windows therein and in the arches thereof round about: *it was* fifty cubits long, and five and twenty cubits broad.

34 And the arches thereof *were* toward the outward court; and palm trees *were* upon the posts thereof, on this side, and on that side: and the going up to it *had* eight steps.

and of the north gate

35 And he brought me to the north gate, and measured *it* according to these measures;

36 The little chambers thereof, the posts thereof, and the arches thereof, and the windows to it round about: the length *was* fifty cubits, and the breadth five and twenty cubits.

37 And the posts thereof *were* toward the utter court; and palm trees *were* upon the posts thereof, on this side, and on that side: and the going up to it *had* eight steps.

38 And the chambers and the entries thereof *were* by the posts of the gates, where they washed the burnt offering.

Eight tables

39 And in the porch of the gate *were* two tables on this side, and two tables on that side, to slay thereon the burnt offering and the sin offering and the trespass offering.

40 And at the side without, as one goes up to the entry of the north gate, *were* two tables; and on the other side, which *was* at the porch of the gate, *were* two tables.

41 Four tables *were* on this side, and four tables on that side, by the side of the gate; eight tables, whereupon they slew *their sacrifices*.

42 And the four tables *were* of hewn stone for the burnt offering, of a cubit and a half long, and a cubit and a half broad, and one cubit high: whereupon also they laid the instruments wherewith they slew the burnt offering and the sacrifice.

43 And within *were* hooks, a hand broad, fastened round about: and upon the tables *was* the flesh of the offering.

The chambers

44 And without the inner gate *were* the chambers of the singers in the inner court, which *was* at the side of the north gate; and their prospect *was* toward the south: one at the side of the east gate *having* the prospect toward the north.

45 And he said unto me, This chamber, whose prospect *is* toward the south, *is* for the priests, the keepers of the charge of the house.

46 And the chamber whose prospect *is* toward the north *is* for the priests, the keepers of the charge of the altar: these *are* the sons of Zadok among the sons of Levi, which come near to the YAHWEH to minister unto him.

47 So he measured the court, a hundred cubits long, and a hundred cubits broad, foursquare; and the altar *that was* before the house.

The porch of the house

48 And he brought me to the porch of the house, and measured *each* post of the porch, five cubits on this side, and five cubits on that side: and the breadth of the gate *was* three cubits on this side, and three cubits on that side.

49 The length of the porch *was* twenty cubits, and the breadth eleven cubits; and *he brought me* by the steps whereby they went up to it: and *there were* pillars by the posts, one on this side, and another on that side.

The measures, parts, chambers, and ornaments of the temple

1 Afterward he brought me to the temple, and measured the posts, six cubits broad on the one side, and six cubits broad on the other side, *which was* the breadth of the tabernacle. [Rev 11:1];

2 And the breadth of the door *was* ten cubits; and the sides of the door *were* five cubits on the one side, and five cubits on the other side: and he measured the length thereof, forty cubits: and the breadth, twenty cubits.

3 Then went he inward, and measured the post of the door, two cubits; and the door, six cubits; and the breadth of the door, seven cubits.

4 So he measured the length thereof, twenty cubits; and the breadth, twenty cubits, before the temple: and he said unto me, This *is* the most holy *place*.

5 After he measured the wall of the house, six cubits; and the breadth of *every* side chamber, four cubits, round about the house on every side.

6 And the side chambers *were* three, one over another, and thirty in order; and they entered into the wall which *was* of the house for the side chambers round about, that they might have hold, but they had not hold in the wall of the house.

7 And *there was* an enlarging, and a winding about still upward to the side chambers: for the winding about of the house went still upward round about the house: therefore the breadth of the house *was still* upward, and so increased *from* the lowest *chamber* to the highest by the midst.

8 I saw also the height of the house round about: the foundations of the side chambers *were* a full reed of six great cubits.

9 The thickness of the wall, which *was* for the side chamber without, *was* five cubits: and *that* which *was* left *was* the place of the side chambers that *were* within.

10 And between the chambers *was* the wideness of twenty cubits round about the house on every side.

11 And the doors of the side chambers *were* toward *the place that was* left, one door toward the north, and another door toward the south: and the breadth of the place that was left *was* five cubits round about.

12 Now the building that *was* before the separate place at the end toward the west *was* seventy cubits broad; and the wall of the building *was* five cubits thick round about, and the length thereof ninety cubits.

13 So he measured the house, a hundred cubits long; and the separate place, and the building, with the walls thereof, a hundred cubits long;

14 Also the breadth of the face of the house, and of the separate place toward the east, a hundred cubits.

15 And he measured the length of the building over against the separate place which *was* behind it, and the galleries thereof on the one side and on the other side, a hundred cubits, with the inner temple, and the porches of the court;

16 The door posts, and the narrow windows, and the galleries round about on their three stories, over against the door, cieled with wood round about, and from the ground up to the windows, and the windows *were* covered;

17 To that above the door, even unto the inner house, and without, and by all the wall round about within and without, by measure.

18 And *it was* made with cherubims and palm trees, so that a palm tree *was* between a cherub and a cherub; and *every* cherub had two faces;

19 So that the face of a man *was* toward the palm tree on the one side, and the face of a young lion toward the palm tree on the other side: *it was* made through all the house round about.

20 From the ground unto above the door *were* cherubims and palm trees made, and *on* the wall of the temple.

21 The posts of the temple *were* squared, *and* the face of the sanctuary; the appearance *of the one* as the appearance *of the other*.

22 The altar of wood *was* three cubits high, and the length thereof two cubits; and the corners thereof, and the length thereof, and the walls thereof, *were* of wood: and he said unto me, This *is* the table that *is* before the YAHWEH.

23 And the temple and the sanctuary had two doors.

24 And the doors had two leaves *apiece*, two turning leaves; two *leaves* for the one door, and two leaves for the other *door*.

25 And *there were* made on them, on the doors of the temple, cherubims and palm trees, like as *were* made upon the walls; and *there were* thick planks upon the face of the porch without.

26 And *there were* narrow windows and palm trees on the one side and on the other side, on the sides of the porch, and *upon* the side chambers of the house, and thick planks.

EZEKIEL FORTY-TWO

The chambers for the priests

1 Then he brought me forth into the utter court, the way toward the north: and he brought me into the chamber that *was* over against the separate place, and which *was* before the building toward the north. [\[Rev 11:1\];](#)

2 Before the length of a hundred cubits *was* the north door, and the breadth *was* fifty cubits.

3 Over against the twenty *cubits* which *were* for the inner court, and over against the pavement which *was* for the utter court, *was* gallery against gallery in three *stories*.

4 And before the chambers *was* a walk of ten cubits breadth inward, a way of one cubit; and their doors toward the north.

5 Now the upper chambers *were* shorter: for the galleries were higher than these, than the lower, and than the middlemost of the building.

6 For they *were* in three *stories*, but had not pillars as the pillars of the courts: therefore *the building* was straitened more than the lowest and the middlemost from the ground.

7 And the wall that *was* without over against the chambers, toward the utter court on the forepart of the chambers, the length thereof *was* fifty cubits.

8 For the length of the chambers that *were* in the utter court *was* fifty cubits: and, lo, before the temple *were* a hundred cubits.

9 And from under these chambers *was* the entry on the east side, as one goes into them from the utter court.

10 The chambers *were* in the thickness of the wall of the court toward the east, over against the separate place, and over against the building.

11 And the way before them *was* like the appearance of the chambers which *were* toward the north, as long as they, *and* as broad as they: and all their goings out *were* both according to their fashions, and according to their doors.

12 And according to the doors of the chambers that *were* toward the south *was* a door in the head of the way, *even* the way directly before the wall toward the east, as one entereth into them.

The use thereof

13 Then said he unto me, The north chambers *and* the south chambers, which *are* before the separate place, they *be* holy chambers, where the priests that approach unto the YAHWEH shall eat the most holy things: there shall they lay the most holy things, and the meat offering, and the sin offering, and the trespass offering; for the place *is* holy.

14 When the priests enter therein, then shall they not go out of the holy *place* into the utter court, but there they shall lay their garments wherein they minister; for they *are* holy; and shall put on other garments, and shall approach to *those things* which *are* for the people.

The measures of the outward court

15 Now when he had made an end of measuring the inner house, he brought me forth toward the gate whose prospect *is* toward the east, and measured it round about.

16 He measured the east side with the measuring reed, five hundred reeds, with the measuring reed round about.

17 He measured the north side, five hundred reeds, with the measuring reed round about.

18 He measured the south side, five hundred reeds, with the measuring reed.

19 He turned about to the west side, *and* measured five hundred reeds with the measuring reed.

20 He measured it by the four sides: it had a wall round about, five hundred *reeds* long, and five hundred broad, to make a separation between the sanctuary and the profane place.

The returning of the glory of Elohim into the temple

- 1** Afterward he brought me to the gate, *even* the gate that looketh toward the east: [Rev 11:1];
- 2** And, behold, the glory of the Elohim of Israel came from the way of the east: and his voice *was* like a noise of many waters: and the earth shined with his glory. Ezek 1:24;
- 3** And *it was* according to the appearance of the vision which I saw, *even* according to the vision that I saw when I came to destroy the city: and the visions *were* like the vision that I saw by the river Chebar; and I fell upon my face. Ezek 1:4; Ezek 8:4;
- 4** And the glory of the YAHWEH came into the house by the way of the gate whose prospect *is* toward the east.
- 5** So the spirit took me up, and brought me into the inner court; and, behold, the glory of the YAHWEH filled the house.
- 6** And I heard *him* speaking unto me out of the house; and the man stood by me.

The sin of Israel hindered Elohim's presence

- 7** And he said unto me, Son of man, the place of my throne, and the place of the soles of my feet, where I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel for ever, and my holy name, shall the house of Israel no more defile, *neither* they, nor their kings, by their whoredom, nor by the carcasses of their kings in their high places. Jer 16:18; [Rev 21:3];
- 8** In their setting of their threshold by my thresholds, and their post by my posts, and the wall between me and them, they have even defiled my holy name by their abominations that they have committed: wherefore I have consumed them in mine anger.
- 9** Now let them put away their whoredom, and the carcasses of their kings, far from me, and I will dwell in the midst of them for ever.

The prophet exhorts them to repentance, and observation of the law of the house

- 10** You son of man, show the house to the house of Israel, that they may be ashamed of their iniquities: and let them measure the pattern.
- 11** And if they be ashamed of all that they have done, show them the form of the house, and the fashion thereof, and the goings out thereof, and the comings in thereof, and all the forms thereof, and all the ordinances thereof, and all the forms thereof, and all the laws thereof: and write *it* in their sight, that they may keep the whole form thereof, and all the ordinances thereof, and do them.
- 12** This *is* the law of the house; Upon the top of the mountain the whole limit thereof round about *shall be* most holy. Behold, this *is* the law of the house.

The measures

- 13** And these *are* the measures of the altar after the cubits: The cubit *is* a cubit and a hand breadth; even the bottom *shall be* a cubit, and the breadth a cubit, and the border thereof by the edge thereof round about *shall be* a span: and this *shall be* the higher place of the altar.
- 14** And from the bottom *upon* the ground *even* to the lower settle *shall be* two cubits, and the breadth one cubit; and from the lesser settle *even* to the greater settle *shall be* four cubits, and the breadth *one* cubit.
- 15** So the altar *shall be* four cubits; and from the altar and upward *shall be* four horns.
- 16** And the altar *shall be* twelve *cubits* long, twelve broad, square in the four squares thereof.

17 And the settle *shall be* fourteen *cubits* long and fourteen broad in the four squares thereof; and the border about it *shall be* half a cubit; and the bottom thereof *shall be* a cubit about; and his stairs shall look toward the east.

and the ordinances of the altar

18 And he said unto me, Son of man, thus saith the Lord GOD; These *are* the ordinances of the altar in the day when they shall make it, to offer burnt offerings thereon, and to sprinkle blood thereon.

19 And you shall give to the priests the Levites that be of the seed of Zadok, which approach unto me, to minister unto me, saith the Lord GOD, a young bullock for a sin offering.

20 And you shall take of the blood thereof, and put *it* on the four horns of it, and on the four corners of the settle, and upon the border round about: thus shall you cleanse and purge it.

21 You shall take the bullock also of the sin offering, and he shall burn it in the appointed place of the house, without the sanctuary.

22 And on the second day you shall offer a kid of the goats without blemish for a sin offering; and they shall cleanse the altar, as they did cleanse *it* with the bullock.

23 When you have made an end of cleansing *it*, you shall offer a young bullock without blemish, and a ram out of the flock without blemish.

24 And you shall offer them before the YAHWEH, and the priests shall cast salt upon them, and they shall offer them up *for* a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH.

25 Seven days shall you prepare every day a goat *for* a sin offering: they shall also prepare a young bullock, and a ram out of the flock, without blemish.

26 Seven days shall they purge the altar and purify it; and they shall consecrate themselves.

27 And when these days are expired, it shall be, *that* upon the eighth day, and *so* forward, the priests shall make your burnt offerings upon the altar, and your peace offerings; and I will accept you, saith the Lord GOD.

The east gate assigned only to the prince

1 Then he brought me back the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looketh toward the east; and it *was* shut.

2 Then said the YAHWEH unto me; This gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter in by it; because the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, has entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut.

3 *It is* for the prince; the prince, he shall sit in it to eat bread before the YAHWEH; he shall enter by the way of the porch of *that* gate, and shall go out by the way of the same.

The priests reproved for polluting the sanctuary

4 Then brought he me the way of the north gate before the house: and I looked, and, behold, the glory of the YAHWEH filled the house of the YAHWEH: and I fell upon my face.

5 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Son of man, mark well, and behold with thine eyes, and hear with thine ears all that I say unto you concerning all the ordinances of the house of the YAHWEH, and all the laws thereof; and mark well the entering in of the house, with every going forth of the sanctuary.

6 And you shall say to the rebellious, *even* to the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; O you house of Israel, let it suffice you of all your abominations,

7 In that you have brought *into my sanctuary* strangers, uncircumcised in heart, and uncircumcised in flesh, to be in my sanctuary, to pollute it, *even* my house, when you offer my bread, the fat and the blood, and they have broken my covenant because of all your abominations. [\[Lev 3:11\];](#)

8 And you have not kept the charge of mine holy things: but you have set keepers of my charge in my sanctuary for yourselves.

Idolaters incapable of the priests office

9 Thus saith the Lord GOD; No stranger, uncircumcised in heart, nor uncircumcised in flesh, shall enter into my sanctuary, of any stranger that *is* among the children of Israel.

10 And the Levites that are gone away far from me, when Israel went astray, which went astray away from me after their idols; they shall even bear their iniquity.

11 Yet they shall be ministers in my sanctuary, *having* charge at the gates of the house, and ministering to the house: they shall slay the burnt offering and the sacrifice for the people, and they shall stand before them to minister unto them.

12 Because they ministered unto them before their idols, and caused the house of Israel to fall into iniquity; therefore have I lifted up mine hand against them, saith the Lord GOD, and they shall bear their iniquity.

13 And they shall not come near unto me, to do the office of a priest unto me, nor to come near to any of my holy things, in the most holy *place*: but they shall bear their shame, and their abominations which they have committed.

14 But I will make them keepers of the charge of the house, for all the service thereof, and for all that shall be done therein.

The sons of Zadok are accepted thereto

15 But the priests the Levites, the sons of Zadok, that kept the charge of my sanctuary when the children of Israel went astray from me, they shall come near to me to minister unto me, and they shall stand before me to offer unto me the fat and the blood, saith the Lord GOD:

16 They shall enter into my sanctuary, and they shall come near to my table, to minister unto me, and they shall keep my charge.

Ordinances for the priests

17 And it shall come to pass, *that* when they enter in at the gates of the inner court, they shall be clothed with linen garments; and no wool shall come upon them, whiles they minister in the gates of the inner court, and within.

18 They shall have linen bonnets upon their heads, and shall have linen breeches upon their loins; they shall not gird *themselves* with any thing that causeth sweat. [\[Exod 39:28\];](#)

19 And when they go forth into the utter court, *even* into the utter court to the people, they shall put off their garments wherein they ministered, and lay them in the holy chambers, and they shall put on other garments; and they shall not sanctify the people with their garments.

20 Neither shall they shave their heads, nor suffer their locks to grow long; they shall only poll their heads.

21 Neither shall any priest drink wine, when they enter into the inner court.

22 Neither shall they take for their wives a widow, nor her that is put away: but they shall take maidens of the seed of the house of Israel, or a widow that had a priest before. [Lev 21:13-14;](#)

23 And they shall teach my people *the difference* between the holy and profane, and cause them to discern between the unclean and the clean. [\[Ezek 22:26\];](#)

24 And in controversy they shall stand in judgment; *and* they shall judge it according to my judgments: and they shall keep my laws and my statutes in all mine assemblies; and they shall hallow my Sabbaths.

25 And they shall not come near a dead person to defile themselves: but for father, or for mother, or for son, or for daughter, for brother, or for sister that has had no husband, they may defile themselves.

26 And after he is cleansed, they shall reckon unto him seven days.

27 And in the day that he goes into the sanctuary, unto the inner court, to minister in the sanctuary, he shall offer his sin offering, saith the Lord GOD.

28 And it shall be unto them for an inheritance: I *am* their inheritance: and you shall give them no possession in Israel: I *am* their possession. [Num 18:20; Deut 18:1; \[Deut 10:9\]; \[Deut 18:2\];](#)

29 They shall eat the meat offering, and the sin offering, and the trespass offering; and every dedicated thing in Israel shall be theirs.

30 And the first of all the firstfruits of all *things*, and every oblation of all, of every *sort* of your oblations, shall be the priest's: you shall also give unto the priest the first of your dough, that he may cause the blessing to rest in thine house. [Exod 13:2; Exod 22:29-30; Num 18:11; \[Exod 13:12\]; \[Exod 22:30\]; \[Exod 34:19\];](#)

31 The priests shall not eat of any thing that is dead of itself, or torn, whether it be fowl or beast. [Lev 22:8; \[Exod 22:31\]; \[Lev 17:15\];](#)

The portion of land for the sanctuary

1 Moreover, when you shall divide by lot the land for inheritance, you shall offer an oblation unto the YAHWEH, a holy portion of the land: the length *shall be* the length of five and twenty thousand *reeds*, and the breadth *shall be* ten thousand. This *shall be* holy in all the borders thereof round about.

2 Of this there shall be for the sanctuary five hundred *in length*, with five hundred *in breadth*, square round about; and fifty cubits round about for the suburbs thereof.

3 And of this measure shall you measure the length of five and twenty thousand, and the breadth of ten thousand: and in it shall be the sanctuary *and* the most holy *place*.

4 The holy *portion* of the land shall be for the priests the ministers of the sanctuary, which shall come near to minister unto the YAHWEH: and it shall be a place for their houses, and a holy place for the sanctuary.

5 And the five and twenty thousand of length, and the ten thousand of breadth, shall also the Levites, the ministers of the house, have for themselves, for a possession for twenty chambers.

for the city

6 And you shall appoint the possession of the city five thousand broad, and five and twenty thousand long, over against the oblation of the holy *portion*: it shall be for the whole house of Israel.

and for the prince

7 And a *portion shall be* for the prince on the one side and on the other side of the oblation of the holy *portion*, and of the possession of the city, before the oblation of the holy *portion*, and before the possession of the city, from the west side westward, and from the east side eastward: and the length *shall be* over against one of the portions, from the west border unto the east border.

8 In the land shall be his possession in Israel: and my princes shall no more oppress my people; and *the rest of* the land shall they give to the house of Israel according to their tribes.

Ordinances for the prince

9 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Let it suffice you, O princes of Israel: remove violence and spoil, and execute judgment and justice, take away your exactions from my people, saith the Lord GOD.

10 You shall have just balances, and a just ephah, and a just bath. [Lev 19:35-36](#);

11 The ephah and the bath shall be of one measure, that the bath may contain the tenth part of a homer, and the ephah the tenth part of a homer: the measure thereof shall be after the homer.

12 And the shekel *shall be* twenty gerahs: twenty shekels, five and twenty shekels, fifteen shekels, shall be your maneh. [Exod 30:13](#); [Lev 27:25](#); [Num 3:47](#); [[Num 18:16](#)];

13 This *is* the oblation that you shall offer; the sixth part of an ephah of a homer of wheat, and you shall give the sixth part of an ephah of a homer of barley:

14 Concerning the ordinance of oil, the bath of oil, you *shall offer* the tenth part of a bath out of the cor, *which is* a homer of ten baths; for ten baths *are* a homer:

15 And one lamb out of the flock, out of two hundred, out of the fat pastures of Israel; for a meat offering, and for a burnt offering, and for peace offerings, to make reconciliation for them, saith the Lord GOD.

16 All the people of the land shall give this oblation for the prince in Israel.

17 And it shall be the prince's part *to give* burnt offerings, and meat offerings, and drink offerings, in the feasts, and in the new moons, and in the Sabbaths, in all solemnities of the house of Israel: he shall prepare the sin offering, and the meat offering, and the burnt offering, and the peace offerings, to make reconciliation for the house of Israel.

18 Thus saith the Lord GOD; In the first *month*, in the first *day* of the month, you shall take a young bullock without blemish, and cleanse the sanctuary:

19 And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin offering, and put *it* upon the posts of the house, and upon the four corners of the settle of the altar, and upon the posts of the gate of the inner court.

20 And so you shall do the seventh *day* of the month for every one that erreth, and for *him that is* simple: so shall you reconcile the house.

21 In the first *month*, in the fourteenth day of the month, you shall have the passover, a feast of seven days; unleavened bread shall be eaten. [Exod 12:3](#); [Exod 23:15](#); [Lev 23:5](#); [Num 9:3](#); [Num 28:16-17](#); [Deut 16:1](#);

22 And upon that day shall the prince prepare for himself and for all the people of the land a bullock *for* a sin offering.

23 And seven days of the feast he shall prepare a burnt offering to the YAHWEH, seven bullocks and seven rams without blemish daily the seven days; and a kid of the goats daily *for* a sin offering.

24 And he shall prepare a meat offering of an ephah for a bullock, and an ephah for a ram, and a hin of oil for an ephah.

25 In the seventh *month*, in the fifteenth day of the month, shall he do the like in the feast of the seven days, according to the sin offering, according to the burnt offering, and according to the meat offering, and according to the oil. [Lev 23:33](#); [Num 29:12](#); [Deut 16:13](#);

EZEKIEL FORTY-SIX

Ordinances for the prince in his worship

1 Thus saith the Lord GOD; The gate of the inner court that looketh toward the east shall be shut the six working days; but on the Sabbath it shall be opened, and in the day of the new moon it shall be opened.

2 And the prince shall enter by the way of the porch of *that* gate without, and shall stand by the post of the gate, and the priests shall prepare his burnt offering and his peace offerings, and he shall worship at the threshold of the gate: then he shall go forth; but the gate shall not be shut until the evening.

3 Likewise the people of the land shall worship at the door of this gate before the YAHWEH in the Sabbaths and in the new moons.

4 And the burnt offering that the prince shall offer unto the YAHWEH in the Sabbath day *shall be* six lambs without blemish, and a ram without blemish.

5 And the meat offering *shall be* an ephah for a ram, and the meat offering for the lambs as he shall be able to give, and a hin of oil to an ephah.

6 And in the day of the new moon *it shall be* a young bullock without blemish, and six lambs, and a ram: they shall be without blemish.

7 And he shall prepare a meat offering, an ephah for a bullock, and an ephah for a ram, and for the lambs according as his hand shall attain unto, and a hin of oil to an ephah.

8 And when the prince shall enter, he shall go in by the way of the porch of *that* gate, and he shall go forth by the way thereof.

and for the people

9 But when the people of the land shall come before the YAHWEH in the solemn feasts, he that entereth in by the way of the north gate to worship shall go out by the way of the south gate; and he that entereth by the way of the south gate shall go forth by the way of the north gate: he shall not return by the way of the gate whereby he came in, but shall go forth over against it.

10 And the prince in the midst of them, when they go in, shall go in; and when they go forth, shall go forth.

11 And in the feasts and in the solemnities the meat offering shall be an ephah to a bullock, and an ephah to a ram, and to the lambs as he is able to give, and a hin of oil to an ephah.

12 Now when the prince shall prepare a voluntary burnt offering or peace offerings voluntarily unto the YAHWEH, *one* shall then open him the gate that looketh toward the east, and he shall prepare his burnt offering and his peace offerings, as he did on the Sabbath day: then he shall go forth; and after his going forth *one* shall shut the gate.

13 You shall daily prepare a burnt offering unto the YAHWEH *of* a lamb of the first year without blemish: you shall prepare it every morning.

14 And you shall prepare a meat offering for it every morning, the sixth part of an ephah, and the third part of a hin of oil, to temper with the fine flour; a meat offering continually by a perpetual ordinance unto the YAHWEH.

15 Thus shall they prepare the lamb, and the meat offering, and the oil, every morning *for* a continual burnt offering.

An order for the prince's inheritance

16 Thus saith the Lord GOD; If the prince give a gift unto any of his sons, the inheritance thereof shall be his sons'; it *shall be* their possession by inheritance.

17 But if he give a gift of his inheritance to one of his servants, then it shall be his to the year of liberty; after it shall return to the prince: but his inheritance shall be his sons' for them.

18 Moreover the prince shall not take of the people's inheritance by oppression, to thrust them out of their possession; *but* he shall give his sons inheritance out of his own possession: that my people be not scattered every man from his possession.

The courts for boiling and baking

19 After he brought me through the entry, which *was* at the side of the gate, into the holy chambers of the priests, which looked toward the north: and, behold, there *was* a place on the two sides westward.

20 Then said he unto me, This *is* the place where the priests shall boil the trespass offering and the sin offering, where they shall bake the meat offering; that they bear *them* not out into the utter court, to sanctify the people.

21 Then he brought me forth into the utter court, and caused me to pass by the four corners of the court; and, behold, in every corner of the court *there was* a court.

22 In the four corners of the court *there were* courts joined of forty *cubits* long and thirty broad: these four corners *were* of one measure.

23 And *there was* a row *of building* round about in them, round about them four, and *it was* made with boiling places under the rows round about.

24 Then said he unto me, These *are* the places of them that boil, where the ministers of the house shall boil the sacrifice of the people.

The vision of the holy waters

- 1** Afterward he brought me again unto the door of the house; and, behold, waters issued out from under the threshold of the house eastward: for the forefront of the house *stood toward* the east, and the waters came down from under from the right side of the house, at the south *side* of the altar. [Zech 14:8; Rev 22:1];
- 2** Then brought he me out of the way of the gate northward, and led me about the way without unto the utter gate by the way that looketh eastward; and, behold, there ran out waters on the right side.
- 3** And when the man that had the line in his hand went forth eastward, he measured a thousand cubits, and he brought me through the waters; the waters *were* to the ankles.
- 4** Again he measured a thousand, and brought me through the waters; the waters *were* to the knees. Again he measured a thousand, and brought me through; the waters *were* to the loins.
- 5** Afterward he measured a thousand; *and it was* a river that I could not pass over: for the waters were risen, waters to swim in, a river that could not be passed over.

The virtue of them

- 6** And he said unto me, Son of man, have you seen *this*? Then he brought me, and caused me to return to the brink of the river.
- 7** Now when I had returned, behold, at the bank of the river *were* very many trees on the one side and on the other. Rev 22:2;
- 8** Then said he unto me, These waters issue out toward the east country, and go down into the desert, and go into the sea: *which being* brought forth into the sea, the waters shall be healed.
- 9** And it shall come to pass, *that* every thing that liveth, which moves, whithersoever the rivers shall come, shall live: and there shall be a very great multitude of fish, because these waters shall come thither: for they shall be healed; and every thing shall live whither the river cometh. [Luke 5:10];
- 10** And it shall come to pass, *that* the fishers shall stand upon it from Engedi even unto Eneglaim; they shall be a *place* to spread forth nets; their fish shall be according to their kinds, as the fish of the great sea, exceeding many. [Mark 1:17];
- 11** But the miry places thereof and the marishes thereof shall not be healed; they shall be given to salt.
- 12** And by the river upon the bank thereof, on this side and on that side, shall grow all trees for meat, whose leaf shall not fade, neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed: it shall bring forth new fruit according to his months, because their waters they issued out of the sanctuary: and the fruit thereof shall be for meat, and the leaf thereof for medicine. Rev 22:2;

The borders of the land

- 13** Thus saith the Lord GOD; This *shall be* the border, whereby you shall inherit the land according to the twelve tribes of Israel: Joseph *shall have two* portions.
- 14** And you shall inherit it, one as well as another: *concerning* the which I lifted up mine hand to give it unto your fathers: and this land shall fall unto you for inheritance. Gen 12:7; Gen 17:8; Gen 26:3; Gen 28:13;
- 15** And this *shall be* the border of the land toward the north side, from the great sea, the way of Hethlon, as men go to Zedad;
- 16** Hamath, Berothah, Sibram, which *is* between the border of Damascus and the border of Hamath; Hazarhatticon, which *is* by the coast of Hauran.
- 17** And the border from the sea shall be Hazarenan, the border of Damascus, and the north northward, and the border of Hamath. And *this is* the north side.
- 18** And the east side you shall measure from Hauran, and from Damascus, and from Gilead, and from the land of Israel *by* Jordan, from the border unto the east sea. And *this is* the east side.

19 And the south side southward, from Tamar *even* to the waters of strife *in* Kadesh, the river to the great sea. And *this is* the south side southward.

20 The west side also *shall be* the great sea from the border, till a man come over against Hamath. This *is* the west side.

21 So shall you divide this land unto you according to the tribes of Israel.

The division of it by lot

22 And it shall come to pass, *that* you shall divide it by lot for an inheritance unto you, and to the strangers that sojourn among you, which shall beget children among you: and they shall be unto you as born in the country among the children of Israel; they shall have inheritance with you among the tribes of Israel.

23 And it shall come to pass, *that* in what tribe the stranger sojourneth, there shall you give *him* his inheritance, saith the Lord GOD.

EZEKIEL FORTY-EIGHT

The portions of the twelve tribes

1 Now these *are* the names of the tribes. From the north end to the coast of the way of Hethlon, as one goes to Hamath, Hazarenan, the border of Damascus northward, to the coast of Hamath; for these are his sides east *and* west; a *portion for* Dan.

2 And by the border of Dan, from the east side unto the west side, a *portion for* Asher.

3 And by the border of Asher, from the east side even unto the west side, a *portion for* Naphtali.

4 And by the border of Naphtali, from the east side unto the west side, a *portion for* Manasseh.

5 And by the border of Manasseh, from the east side unto the west side, a *portion for* Ephraim.

6 And by the border of Ephraim, from the east side even unto the west side, a *portion for* Reuben.

7 And by the border of Reuben, from the east side unto the west side, a *portion for* Judah.

of the sanctuary

8 And by the border of Judah, from the east side unto the west side, shall be the offering which you shall offer of five and twenty thousand *reeds in* breadth, and *in* length as one of the *other* parts, from the east side unto the west side: and the sanctuary shall be in the midst of it.

9 The oblation that you shall offer unto the YAHWEH *shall be* of five and twenty thousand in length, and of ten thousand in breadth.

10 And for them, *even* for the priests, shall be *this* holy oblation; toward the north five and twenty thousand *in length*, and toward the west ten thousand in breadth, and toward the east ten thousand in breadth, and toward the south five and twenty thousand in length: and the sanctuary of the YAHWEH shall be in the midst thereof.

11 *It shall be* for the priests that are sanctified of the sons of Zadok; which have kept my charge, which went not astray when the children of Israel went astray, as the Levites went astray.

12 And *this* oblation of the land that is offered shall be unto them a thing most holy by the border of the Levites.

13 And over against the border of the priests the Levites *shall have* five and twenty thousand in length, and ten thousand in breadth: all the length *shall be* five and twenty thousand, and the breadth ten thousand.

14 And they shall not sell of it, neither exchange, nor alienate the firstfruits of the land: for *it is* holy unto the YAHWEH.

of the city and suburbs

15 And the five thousand, that are left in the breadth over against the five and twenty thousand, shall be a profane *place* for the city, for dwelling, and for suburbs: and the city shall be in the midst thereof.

16 And these *shall be* the measures thereof; the north side four thousand and five hundred, and the south side four thousand and five hundred, and on the east side four thousand and five hundred, and the west side four thousand and five hundred.

17 And the suburbs of the city shall be toward the north two hundred and fifty, and toward the south two hundred and fifty, and toward the east two hundred and fifty, and toward the west two hundred and fifty.

18 And the residue in length over against the oblation of the holy *portion shall be* ten thousand eastward, and ten thousand westward: and it shall be over against the oblation of the holy *portion*; and the increase thereof shall be for food unto them that serve the city.

19 And they that serve the city shall serve it out of all the tribes of Israel.

20 All the oblation *shall be* five and twenty thousand by five and twenty thousand: you shall offer the holy oblation foursquare, with the possession of the city.

and of the prince

21 And the residue *shall be* for the prince, on the one side and on the other of the holy oblation, and of the possession of the city, over against the five and twenty thousand of the oblation toward the east border, and westward over against the five and twenty thousand toward the west border, over against the portions for the prince: and it shall be the holy oblation; and the sanctuary of the house *shall be* in the midst thereof.

22 Moreover from the possession of the Levites, and from the possession of the city, *being* in the midst *of that* which is the prince's, between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin, shall be for the prince.

The portions of the twelve tribes

23 As for the rest of the tribes, from the east side unto the west side, Benjamin *shall have a portion*.

24 And by the border of Benjamin, from the east side unto the west side, Simeon *shall have a portion*.

25 And by the border of Simeon, from the east side unto the west side, Issachar a *portion*.

26 And by the border of Issachar, from the east side unto the west side, Zebulun a *portion*.

27 And by the border of Zebulun, from the east side unto the west side, Gad a *portion*.

28 And by the border of Gad, at the south side southward, the border shall be even from Tamar *unto* the waters of strife *in* Kadesh, *and* to the river toward the great sea.

29 This *is* the land which you shall divide by lot unto the tribes of Israel for inheritance, and these *are* their portions, saith the Lord GOD.

The dimensions and gates of the city

30 And these *are* the goings out of the city on the north side, four thousand and five hundred measures.

31 And the gates of the city *shall be* after the names of the tribes of Israel: three gates northward; one gate of Reuben, one gate of Judah, one gate of Levi.

32 And at the east side four thousand and five hundred: and three gates; and one gate of Joseph, one gate of Benjamin, one gate of Dan.

33 And at the south side four thousand and five hundred measures: and three gates; one gate of Simeon, one gate of Issachar, one gate of Zebulun.

34 At the west side four thousand and five hundred, *with* their three gates; one gate of Gad, one gate of Asher, one gate of Naphtali.

35 *It was* round about eighteen thousand *measures*: and the name of the city from *that day shall be*, The YAHWEH *is* there.

Daniel

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#)

DANIEL ONE

Jehoiakim's captivity

1 In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah came Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon unto Jerusalem, and besieged it. [2Kgs 24:2-3](#); [2Chr 36:6](#); [\[2Kgs 24:10\]](#); [\[2Chr 36:10\]](#);

2 And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, with part of the vessels of the house of Elohim: which he carried into the land of Shinar to the house of his god; and he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god.

Ashpenaz takes Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah

3 And the king spoke unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring *certain* of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes;

4 Children in whom *was* no blemish, but well favored, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as *had* ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans.

5 And the king appointed them a daily provision of the king's meat, and of the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king.

6 Now among these were of the children of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah:

7 Unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names: for he gave unto Daniel *the name* of Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach; and to Mishael, of Meshach; and to Azariah, of Abednego.

They refusing the king's portion do prosper with pulse and water

8 But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself.

9 Now Elohim had brought Daniel into favor and tender love with the prince of the eunuchs.

10 And the prince of the eunuchs said unto Daniel, I fear my lord the king, who has appointed your meat and your drink: for why should he see your faces worse liking than the children which *are* of your sort? then shall you make *me* endanger my head to the king.

11 Then said Daniel to Melzar, whom the prince of the eunuchs had set over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah,

12 Prove thy servants, I beseech you, ten days; and let them give us pulse to eat, and water to drink.

13 Then let our countenances be looked upon before you, and the countenance of the children that eat of the portion of the king's meat: and as you seest, deal with thy servants.

14 So he consented to them in this matter, and proved them ten days.

15 And at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter in flesh than all the children which did eat the portion of the king's meat.

16 Thus Melzar took away the portion of their meat, and the wine that they should drink; and gave them pulse.

Their proficiency in wisdom

- 17** As for these four children, Elohim gave them knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams. [\[Job 32:8\]; \[Job 38:36\];](#)
- 18** Now at the end of the days that the king had said he should bring them in, then the prince of the eunuchs brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar.
- 19** And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore stood they before the king.
- 20** And in all matters of wisdom *and* understanding, that the king enquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians *and* astrologers that *were* in all his realm.
- 21** And Daniel continued *even* unto the first year of king Cyrus.

DANIEL TWO

Nebuchadnezzar, forgetting his dream, requires it of the Chaldeans, by promises and threatenings

- 1** And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams, wherewith his spirit was troubled, and his sleep brake from him.
- 2** Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to show the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. [\[Gen 41:11\];](#)
- 3** And the king said unto them, I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream.
- 4** Then spoke the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack, O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will show the interpretation.
- 5** The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The thing is gone from me: if you will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof, you shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill. [Dan 3:29;](#)
- 6** But if you show the dream, and the interpretation thereof, you shall receive of me gifts and rewards and great honour: therefore show me the dream, and the interpretation thereof.
- 7** They answered again and said, Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will show the interpretation of it.
- 8** The king answered and said, I know of certainty that you would gain the time, because you see the thing is gone from me.
- 9** But if you will not make known unto me the dream, *there is but* one decree for you: for you have prepared lying and corrupt words to speak before me, till the time be changed: therefore tell me the dream, and I shall know that you can show me the interpretation thereof.

They acknowledging their inability are judged to die

- 10** The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said, There is not a man upon the earth that can show the king's matter: therefore *there is* no king, lord, nor ruler, *that* asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean.
- 11** And *it is* a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can show it before the king, except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh.
- 12** For this cause the king was angry and very furious, and commanded to destroy all the wise *men* of Babylon.
- 13** And the decree went forth that the wise *men* should be slain; and they sought Daniel and his fellows to be slain.

Daniel obtaining some respite finds the dream

14 Then Daniel answered with counsel and wisdom to Arioch the captain of the king's guard, which was gone forth to slay the wise *men* of Babylon:

15 He answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, Why *is* the decree *so* hasty from the king? Then Arioch made the thing known to Daniel.

16 Then Daniel went in, and desired of the king that he would give him time, and that he would show the king the interpretation.

17 Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions:

18 That they would desire mercies of the Elohim of heaven concerning this secret; that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise *men* of Babylon.

He blesses Elohim

19 Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel in a night vision. Then Daniel blessed the Elohim of heaven.

20 Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of Elohim for ever and ever: for wisdom and might are his: [\[Ps 113:2\]](#);

21 And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings, and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding: [\[Job 32:8\]](#);

22 He revealeth the deep and secret things: he knoweth what *is* in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him. [Job 32:8](#);

23 I thank you, and praise you, O you Elohim of my fathers, who have given me wisdom and might, and have made known unto me now what we desired of you: for you have *now* made known unto us the king's matter.

He staying the decree is brought to the king

24 Therefore Daniel went in unto Arioch, whom the king had ordained to destroy the wise *men* of Babylon: he went and said thus unto him; Destroy not the wise *men* of Babylon: bring me in before the king, and I will show unto the king the interpretation.

25 Then Arioch brought in Daniel before the king in haste, and said thus unto him, I have found a man of the captives of Judah, that will make known unto the king the interpretation. [\[Gen 41:14\]](#);

26 The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name *was* Belteshazzar, are you able to make known unto me the dream which I have seen, and the interpretation thereof?

27 Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said, The secret which the king has demanded cannot the wise *men*, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers, show unto the king;

28 But there is a Elohim in heaven that revealeth secrets, and maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days. Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these;

29 As for you, O king, thy thoughts came *into thy mind* upon thy bed, what should come to pass hereafter: and he that revealeth secrets maketh known to you what shall come to pass.

30 But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for *any* wisdom that I have more than any living, but for *their* sakes that shall make known the interpretation to the king, and that you mightest know the thoughts of thy heart.

The dream

31 *you*, O king, sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness *was* excellent, stood before you; and the form thereof *was* terrible.

32 This image's head *was* of fine gold, his breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his thighs of brass,

33 His legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay.

34 You sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet *that were* of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. [Matt 21:44]; [Luke 20:18];

35 Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth. [Rev 12:8];

The interpretation

36 This *is* the dream; and we will tell the interpretation thereof before the king.

37 You, O king, are a king of kings: for the Elohim of heaven has given you a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory.

38 And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven has he given into thine hand, and has made you ruler over them all. you are this head of gold.

39 And after you shall arise another kingdom inferior to you, and another third kingdom of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth.

40 And the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all *things*: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise.

41 And whereas you sawest the feet and toes, part of potters' clay, and part of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as you sawest the iron mixed with miry clay.

42 And *as* the toes of the feet *were* part of iron, and part of clay, *so* the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken.

43 And whereas you sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.

44 And in the days of these kings shall the Elohim of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, *but* it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever. Dan 4:3; Dan 4:34; Dan 6:26; Dan 7:14; Dan 7:27; Mic 4:7; Luke 1:33; [John 12:34]; [1Pet 1:10];

45 Forasmuch as you sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great Elohim has made known to the king what shall come to pass hereafter: and the dream *is* certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.

Daniel's advancement

46 Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an oblation and sweet odours unto him.

47 The king answered unto Daniel, and said, Of a truth *it is*, that your Elohim *is* a Elohim of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing you couldest reveal this secret. [Dan 5:11];

48 Then the king made Daniel a great man, and gave him many great gifts, and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise *men* of Babylon.

49 Then Daniel requested of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel *sat* in the gate of the king.

DANIEL THREE

Nebuchadnezzar dedicates a golden image in Dura

1 Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height *was* threescore cubits, *and* the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon.

2 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather together the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, to come to the dedication of the image which Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

3 Then the princes, the governors, and captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, were gathered together unto the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up; and they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up.

4 Then a herald cried aloud, To you it is commanded, O people, nations, and languages,

5 *That* at what time you hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, you fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king has set up:

6 And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.

7 Therefore at that time, when all the people heard the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and all kinds of musick, all the people, the nations, and the languages, fell down *and* worshipped the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are accused for not worshipping the image

8 Wherefore at that time certain Chaldeans came near, and accused the Jews.

9 They spoke and said to the king Nebuchadnezzar, O king, live for ever.

10 You, O king, have made a decree, that every man that shall hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, shall fall down and worship the golden image:

11 And whoso falleth not down and worshippeth, *that* he should be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.

12 There are certain Jews whom you have set over the affairs of the province of Babylon, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego; these men, O king, have not regarded you: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which you have set up.

They being threatened, make a good confession

13 Then Nebuchadnezzar in *his* rage and fury commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. Then they brought these men before the king.

14 Nebuchadnezzar spoke and said unto them, *Is it* true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, do not you serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up?

15 Now if you be ready that at what time you hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, you fall down and worship the image which I have made; *well*: but if you worship not, you shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace; and who *is* that Elohim that shall deliver you out of my hands?

16 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we *are* not careful to answer you in this matter.

17 If it be *so*, our Elohim whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver *us* out of thine hand, O king.

18 But if not, be it known unto you, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which you have set up.

They are cast into the furnace

19 Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of fury, and the form of his visage was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego: *therefore* he spoke, and commanded that they should heat the furnace one seven times more than it was wont to be heated.

20 And he commanded the most mighty men that *were* in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, *and* to cast *them* into the burning fiery furnace.

21 Then these men were bound in their coats, their hosen, and their hats, and their *other* garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.

22 Therefore because the king's commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the flame of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.

23 And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.

from which Elohim delivers them

24 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, *and* spoke, and said unto his counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king.

25 He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, walking in the midst of the fire, and they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like a son of Elohim. [\[Heb 11:34\];](#)

26 Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the mouth of the burning fiery furnace, *and* spoke, and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, you servants of the most high Elohim, come forth, and come *hither*. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, came forth of the midst of the fire.

27 And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was a hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.

Nebuchadnezzar seeing the miracle blesses Elohim, and advances them

28 *Then* Nebuchadnezzar spoke, and said, Blessed *be* the Elohim of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who has sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own Elohim.

29 Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak any thing amiss against the Elohim of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, shall be cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dunghill: because there is no other Elohim that can deliver after this sort. [Dan 2:5; \[1Chr 17:20\];](#)

30 Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, in the province of Babylon.

Nebuchadnezzar confesses Elohim's kingdom

1 Nebuchadnezzar the king, unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you.

2 I thought it good to show the signs and wonders that the high Elohim has wrought toward me.

3 How great *are* his signs! and how mighty *are* his wonders! his kingdom *is* an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion *is* from generation to generation. [Ps 93:1-2](#); [Dan 6:26](#); [\[Ps 10:16\]](#); [\[Dan 2:44\]](#);

makes relation of his dreams, which the magicians could not interpret

4 I Nebuchadnezzar was at rest in mine house, and flourishing in my palace:

5 I saw a dream which made me afraid, and the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head troubled me.

6 Therefore made I a decree to bring in all the wise *men* of Babylon before me, that they might make known unto me the interpretation of the dream.

7 Then came in the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers: and I told the dream before them; but they did not make known unto me the interpretation thereof.

Daniel hears the dream

8 But at the last Daniel came in before me, whose name *was* Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, and in whom *is* the spirit of the holy gods: and before him I told the dream, *saying*,

9 O Belteshazzar, master of the magicians, because I know that the spirit of the holy gods *is* in you, and no secret troubleth you, tell me the visions of my dream that I have seen, and the interpretation thereof.

10 Thus *were* the visions of mine head in my bed; I saw, and behold a tree in the midst of the earth, and the height thereof *was* great. [\[Ezek 31:3\]](#);

11 The tree grew, and was strong, and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth:

12 The leaves thereof *were* fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it *was* meat for all: the beasts of the field had shadow under it, and the fowls of the heaven dwelt in the boughs thereof, and all flesh was fed of it. [\[Ezek 31:6\]](#);

13 I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, a watcher and a holy one came down from heaven;

14 He cried aloud, and said thus, Hew down the tree, and cut off his branches, shake off his leaves, and scatter his fruit: let the beasts get away from under it, and the fowls from his branches:

15 Nevertheless leave the stump of his roots in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and *let* his portion *be* with the beasts in the grass of the earth:

16 Let his heart be changed from man's, and let a beast's heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him.

17 This matter *is* by the decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones: to the intent that the living may know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will, and setteth up over it the basest of men. [\[Jer 27:5\]](#);

18 This dream I king Nebuchadnezzar have seen. Now you, O Belteshazzar, declare the interpretation thereof, forasmuch as all the wise *men* of my kingdom are not able to make known unto me the interpretation: but you are able; for the spirit of the holy gods *is* in you.

He interprets it

19 Then Daniel, whose name *was* Belteshazzar, was astonished for one hour, and his thoughts troubled him. The king spoke, and said, Belteshazzar, let not the dream, or the interpretation thereof, trouble you. Belteshazzar answered and said, My lord, the dream *be* to them that hate you, and the interpretation thereof to thine enemies.

20 The tree that you sawest, which grew, and was strong, whose height reached unto the heaven, and the sight thereof to all the earth;

21 Whose leaves *were* fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it *was* meat for all; under which the beasts of the field dwelt, and upon whose branches the fowls of the heaven had their habitation:

22 It *is* you, O king, that are grown and become strong: for thy greatness is grown, and reacheth unto heaven, and thy dominion to the end of the earth.

23 And whereas the king saw a watcher and a holy one coming down from heaven, and saying, Hew the tree down, and destroy it; yet leave the stump of the roots thereof in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and *let* his portion *be* with the beasts of the field, till seven times pass over him;

24 This *is* the interpretation, O king, and this *is* the decree of the most High, which is come upon my lord the king:

25 That they shall drive you from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field, and they shall make you to eat grass as oxen, and they shall wet you with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass over you, till you know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will. [\[Dan 5:20\]](#); [\[Jer 27:5\]](#); [\[Dan 5:21\]](#);

26 And whereas they commanded to leave the stump of the tree roots; thy kingdom shall be sure unto you, after that you shall have known that the heavens do rule.

27 Wherefore, O king, let my counsel be acceptable unto you, and break off thy sins by righteousness, and thine iniquities by showing mercy to the poor; if it may be a lengthening of thy tranquillity. [\[Luke 11:41\]](#);

The dream fulfilled

28 All this came upon the king Nebuchadnezzar.

29 At the end of twelve months he walked in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon.

30 The king spoke, and said, Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty?

31 While the word *was* in the king's mouth, there fell a voice from heaven, *saying*, O king Nebuchadnezzar, to you it is spoken; The kingdom is departed from you.

32 And they shall drive you from men, and thy dwelling *shall be* with the beasts of the field: they shall make you to eat grass as oxen, and seven times shall pass over you, until you know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will. [\[Rom 13:1\]](#);

33 The same hour was the thing fulfilled upon Nebuchadnezzar: and he was driven from men, and did eat grass as oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven, till his hairs were grown like eagles' *feathers*, and his nails like birds' *claws*.

34 And at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up mine eyes unto heaven, and mine understanding returned unto me, and I blessed the most High, and I praised and honoured him that liveth for ever, whose dominion *is* an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom *is* from generation to generation: [\[Dan 2:44\]](#);

35 And all the inhabitants of the earth *are* reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and *among* the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What do you do? [\[Isa 14:27\]](#); [\[Isa 40:17\]](#);

36 At the same time my reason returned unto me; and for the glory of my kingdom, mine honour and brightness returned unto me; and my counsellors and my lords sought unto me; and I was established in my kingdom, and excellent majesty was added unto me.

37 Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour the King of heaven, all whose works *are* truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to humble. [\[2Sam 22:31\];](#)

DANIEL FIVE

Belshazzar's impious feast

1 Belshazzar the king made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand.

2 Belshazzar, while he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels which his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple which *was* in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein.

3 Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of Elohim which *was* at Jerusalem; and the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, drank in them.

4 They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone.

A hand-writing unknown to the magicians, troubles the king

5 In the same hour came forth fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the king's palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote. [\[Ezek 8:3\];](#)

6 Then the king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another.

7 The king cried aloud to bring in the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers. *And* the king spoke, and said to the wise *men* of Babylon, Whosoever shall read this writing, and show me the interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with scarlet, and *have* a chain of gold about his neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom.

8 Then came in all the king's wise *men*: but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof.

9 Then was king Belshazzar greatly troubled, and his countenance was changed in him, and his lords were astonished.

At the commendation of the queen Daniel is brought

10 *Now* the queen, by reason of the words of the king and his lords, came into the banquet house: *and* the queen spoke and said, O king, live for ever: let not thy thoughts trouble you, nor let thy countenance be changed:

11 There is a man in thy kingdom, in whom *is* the spirit of the holy gods; and in the days of thy father light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, was found in him; whom the king Nebuchadnezzar thy father, the king, *I say*, thy father, made master of the magicians, astrologers, Chaldeans, *and* soothsayers; [Dan 2:47-48;](#)

12 Forasmuch as an excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, interpreting of dreams, and showing of hard sentences, and dissolving of doubts, were found in the same Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar: now let Daniel be called, and he will show the interpretation.

13 Then was Daniel brought in before the king. *And* the king spoke and said unto Daniel, are you that Daniel, which are of the children of the captivity of Judah, whom the king my father brought out of Jewry?

14 I have even heard of you, that the spirit of the gods *is* in you, and *that* light and understanding and excellent wisdom is found in you.

15 And now the wise *men*, the astrologers, have been brought in before me, that they should read this writing, and make known unto me the interpretation thereof: but they could not show the interpretation of the thing:

16 And I have heard of you, that you canst make interpretations, and dissolve doubts: now if you canst read the writing, and make known to me the interpretation thereof, you shall be clothed with scarlet, and *have* a chain of gold about thy neck, and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom.

He, reproving the king of pride and idolatry

17 Then Daniel answered and said before the king, Let thy gifts be to thyself, and give thy rewards to another; yet I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation.

18 O you king, the most high Elohim gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour:

19 And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down.

20 But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: [\[Dan 4:25\]](#);

21 And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling *was* with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high Elohim ruled in the kingdom of men, and *that* he appointeth over it whomsoever he will. [Dan 4:25](#);

22 And you his son, O Belshazzar, have not humbled thine heart, though you knewest all this;

23 But have lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before you, and you, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and you have praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the Elohim in whose hand thy breath *is*, and whose *are* all thy ways, have you not glorified:

24 Then was the part of the hand sent from him; and this writing was written.

reads and interprets the writing

25 And this *is* the writing that was written, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN.

26 This *is* the interpretation of the thing: MENE; Elohim has numbered thy kingdom, and finished it.

27 TEKEL; you are weighed in the balances, and are found wanting.

28 PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the Medes and Persians.

29 Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet, and *put* a chain of gold about his neck, and made a proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.

The monarchy is translated to the Medes

30 In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain.

31 And Darius the Median took the kingdom, *being* about threescore and two years old.

DANIEL SIX

Daniel is made chief of the presidents

1 It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom a hundred and twenty princes, which should be over the whole kingdom;

2 And over these three presidents; of whom Daniel *was* first: that the princes might give accounts unto them, and the king should have no damage.

3 Then this Daniel was preferred above the presidents and princes, because an excellent spirit *was* in him; and the king thought to set him over the whole realm.

They, conspiring against him, obtain an idolatrous decree

4 Then the presidents and princes sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom; but they could find none occasion nor fault; forasmuch as he *was* faithful, neither was there any error or fault found in him.

5 Then said these men, We shall not find any occasion against this Daniel, except we find *it* against him concerning the law of his Elohim.

6 Then these presidents and princes assembled together to the king, and said thus unto him, King Darius, live for ever.

7 All the presidents of the kingdom, the governors, and the princes, the counsellors, and the captains, have consulted together to establish a royal statute, and to make a firm decree, that whosoever shall ask a petition of any Elohim or man for thirty days, save of you, O king, he shall be cast into the den of lions.

8 Now, O king, establish the decree, and sign the writing, that it be not changed, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. [Esth 1:9](#); [Esth 8:8](#);

9 Wherefore king Darius signed the writing and the decree.

Daniel, accused of the breach thereof, is cast into the lion's den

10 Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his Elohim, as he did before. [1Kgs 8:44](#); [Ps 55:17](#);

11 Then these men assembled, and found Daniel praying and making supplication before his Elohim.

12 Then they came near, and spoke before the king concerning the king's decree; have you not signed a decree, that every man that shall ask *a petition* of any Elohim or man within thirty days, save of you, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions? The king answered and said, The thing *is* true, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not.

13 Then answered they and said before the king, That Daniel, which *is* of the children of the captivity of Judah, regardeth not you, O king, nor the decree that you have signed, but maketh his petition three times a day.

14 Then the king, when he heard *these* words, was sore displeased with himself, and set *his* heart on Daniel to deliver him: and he laboured till the going down of the sun to deliver him.

15 Then these men assembled unto the king, and said unto the king, Know, O king, that the law of the Medes and Persians *is*, That no decree nor statute which the king establisheth may be changed.

16 Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast *him* into the den of lions. *Now* the king spoke and said unto Daniel, Thy Elohim whom you servest continually, he will deliver you.

17 And a stone was brought, and laid upon the mouth of the den; and the king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords; that the purpose might not be changed concerning Daniel.

Daniel is saved

18 Then the king went to his palace, and passed the night fasting: neither were instruments of musick brought before him: and his sleep went from him.

19 Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions.

20 And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: *and* the king spoke and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living Elohim, is thy Elohim, whom you servest continually, able to deliver you from the lions?

21 Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever.

22 My Elohim has sent his angel, and has shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me: forasmuch as before him innocence was found in me; and also before you, O king, have I done no hurt. [\[Acts 12:11\]](#); [\[Heb 11:33\]](#);

23 Then was the king exceeding glad for him, and commanded that they should take Daniel up out of the den. So Daniel was taken up out of the den, and no manner of hurt was found upon him, because he believed in his Elohim.

his adversaries devoured

24 And the king commanded, and they brought those men which had accused Daniel, and they cast *them* into the den of lions, *them*, their children, and their wives; and the lions had the mastery of them, and brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den.

and Elohim magnified by a decree

25 Then king Darius wrote unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you.

26 I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the Elohim of Daniel: for he *is* the living Elohim, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom *that* which shall not be destroyed, and his dominion *shall be even* unto the end. [Dan 2:44](#); [Dan 4:3](#); [Dan 7:14](#); [Dan 7:27](#); [Luke 1:33](#); [[Job 36:26](#)]; [[Ps 10:16](#)];

27 He delivereth and rescueth, and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who has delivered Daniel from the power of the lions.

28 So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.

Daniel's vision of the four beasts

1 In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, *and* told the sum of the matters.

2 Daniel spoke and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of the heaven strove upon the great sea.

3 And four great beasts came up from the sea, diverse one from another.

4 The first *was* like a lion, and had eagle's wings: I beheld till the wings thereof were plucked, and it was lifted up from the earth, and made stand upon the feet as a man, and a man's heart was given to it.

5 And behold another beast, a second, like to a bear, and it raised up itself on one side, and *it had* three ribs in the mouth of it between the teeth of it: and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh.

6 After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also four heads; and dominion was given to it.

7 After this I saw in the night visions, and behold a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly; and it had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it: and it *was* diverse from all the beasts that *were* before it; and it had ten horns.

8 I considered the horns, and, behold, there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn *were* eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things.

and of Elohim's kingdom

9 I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment *was* white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne *was like* the fiery flame, *and* his wheels *as* burning fire. [\[Matt 28:3\]; \[Luke 22:69\]; \[Rev 1:14\];](#)

10 A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened. [Rev 5:11; Rev 20:12; \[Matt 24:30\]; \[Mark 13:26\]; \[Luke 2:13\]; \[Luke 21:27\]; \[1Cor 4:5\]; \[Jude 1:14\];](#)

11 I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spoke: I beheld *even* till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame. [\[Rev 19:20\]; \[Rev 20:10\];](#)

12 As concerning the rest of the beasts, they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time.

13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, *one* like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. [\[Matt 26:64\]; \[Mark 14:62\]; \[Acts 1:11\]; \[Rev 1:7\]; \[Rev 1:13\]; \[Rev 14:14\];](#)

14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion *is* an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom *that* which shall not be destroyed. [Dan 2:44; Luke 1:33; \[Isa 16:5\]; \[Dan 6:26\]; \[Mic 4:7\]; \[John 12:34\];](#)

The interpretation thereof

15 I Daniel was grieved in my spirit in the midst of *my* body, and the visions of my head troubled me.

16 I came near unto one of them that stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things.

17 These great beasts, which are four, *are* four kings, *which* shall arise out of the earth.

18 But the saints of the most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever.

19 Then I would know the truth of the fourth beast, which was diverse from all the others, exceeding dreadful, whose teeth *were of* iron, and his nails *of* brass; *which* devoured, brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with his feet;

20 And of the ten horns that *were* in his head, and *of* the other which came up, and before whom three fell; even *of* that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spoke very great things, whose look *was* more stout than his fellows. [\[Rev 13:1\]; \[Rev 17:12\];](#)

21 I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them; [\[Rev 11:7\]; \[Rev 13:7\];](#)

22 Until the Ancient of days came, and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.

23 Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.

24 And the ten horns out of this kingdom *are* ten kings *that* shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings.

25 And he shall speak *great* words against the most High, and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time. [Dan 11:36;](#)

26 But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy *it* unto the end.

27 And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom *is* an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him. [\[Isa 16:5\]; \[Dan 2:44\]; \[Dan 6:26\]; \[Luke 1:33\]; \[John 12:34\];](#)

28 Hitherto *is* the end of the matter. As for me Daniel, my cogitations much troubled me, and my countenance changed in me: but I kept the matter in my heart. [\[Dan 10:8\];](#)

DANIEL EIGHT

Daniel's vision of the ram and he goat

1 In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, *even unto* me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first.

2 And I saw in a vision; and it came to pass, when I saw, that I *was* at Shushan *in* the palace, which *is* in the province of Elam; and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai.

3 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had *two* horns: and the *two* horns *were* high; but one *was* higher than the other, and the higher came up last.

4 I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward; so that no beasts might stand before him, neither *was there any* that could deliver out of his hand; but he did according to his will, and became great.

5 And as I was considering, behold, a he goat came from the west on the face of the whole earth, and touched not the ground: and the goat *had* a notable horn between his eyes.

6 And he came to the ram that had *two* horns, which I had seen standing before the river, and ran unto him in the fury of his power.

7 And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he was moved with choler against him, and smote the ram, and brake his two horns: and there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he cast him down to the ground, and stamped upon him: and there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand.

8 Therefore the he goat waxed very great: and when he was strong, the great horn was broken; and for it came up four notable ones toward the four winds of heaven.

9 And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant *land*.

10 And it waxed great, *even* to the host of heaven; and it cast down *some* of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them.

11 Yes, he magnified *himself* even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily *sacrifice* was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down.

12 And a host was given *him* against the daily *sacrifice* by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practised, and prospered.

The two thousand three hundred days of the suspension of the daily sacrifice

13 Then I heard one saint speaking, and another saint said unto that certain *saint* which spoke, How long *shall be* the vision *concerning* the daily *sacrifice*, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot?

14 And he said to me, For two thousand and three hundred evenings and mornings; then shall the sanctuary be cleansed.

Gabriel comforts Daniel, and interprets the vision

15 And it came to pass, when I, *even* I Daniel, had seen the vision, and sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me as the appearance of a man.

16 And I heard a man's voice between *the banks of* Ulai, which called, and said, Gabriel, make this *man* to understand the vision. [Dan 9:21](#); [Luke 1:26](#);

17 So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and fell upon my face: but he said unto me, Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end *shall be* the vision.

18 Now as he was speaking with me, I was in a deep sleep on my face toward the ground: but he touched me, and set me upright.

19 And he said, Behold, I will make you know what shall be in the last end of the indignation: for at the time appointed the end *shall be*.

20 The ram which you sawest having *two* horns *are* the kings of Media and Persia.

21 And the rough goat *is* the king of Grecia: and the great horn that *is* between his eyes *is* the first king.

22 Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power.

23 And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors are come to the full, a king of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up.

24 And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, and shall prosper, and practise, and shall destroy the mighty and the holy people.

25 And through his policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; and he shall magnify *himself* in his heart, and by peace shall destroy many: he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be broken without hand.

26 And the vision of the evening and the morning which was told *is* true: wherefore shut you up the vision; for it *shall be* for many days. [\[Rev 10:4\]](#); [\[Rev 22:10\]](#);

27 And I Daniel fainted, and was sick *certain* days; afterward I rose up, and did the king's business; and I was astonished at the vision, but none understood *it*.

DANIEL NINE

Daniel, considering the time of the captivity

1 In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans; [\[Jer 29:12\]](#);

2 In the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the YAHWEH came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem. [\[Jer 25:12\];](#)

makes confession of sins

3 And I set my face unto the Lord Elohim, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes:

4 And I prayed unto the YAHWEH my Elohim, and made my confession, and said, O Lord, the great and dreadful Elohim, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments; [Deut 7:9; \[Neh 1:5\];](#)

5 We have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments: [Ps 106:6; Isa 64:5-7;](#)

6 Neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spoke in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land.

7 O Lord, righteousness *belongeth* unto you, but unto us confusion of faces, as at this day; to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and unto all Israel, *that are* near, and *that are* far off, through all the countries whither you have driven them, because of their trespass that they have trespassed against you.

8 O Lord, to us *belongeth* confusion of face, to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against you. [\[Jer 14:20\];](#)

9 To the Lord our Elohim *belong* mercies and forgivenesses, though we have rebelled against him; [Ps 130:3; Ps 130:7; Lam 3:22;](#)

10 Neither have we obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH our Elohim, to walk in his laws, which he set before us by his servants the prophets.

11 Yes, all Israel have transgressed thy law, even by departing, that they might not obey thy voice; therefore the curse is poured upon us, and the oath that *is* written in the law of Moses the servant of Elohim, because we have sinned against him. [Lev 26:14; Deut 27:15; Deut 28:15; Deut 29:20; Deut 30:17; Deut 31:17; Deut 32:19; Lam 2:17;](#)

12 And he has confirmed his words, which he spoke against us, and against our judges that judged us, by bringing upon us a great evil: for under the whole heaven has not been done as has been done upon Jerusalem.

13 As *it is* written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: yet made we not our prayer before the YAHWEH our Elohim, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand thy truth. [\[Deut 28:15\];](#)

14 Therefore has the YAHWEH watched upon the evil, and brought it upon us: for the YAHWEH our Elohim *is* righteous in all his works which he doeth: for we obeyed not his voice. [\[Neh 9:33\]; \[Job 8:3\];](#)

15 And now, O Lord our Elohim, that have brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and have gotten you renown, as at this day; we have sinned, we have done wickedly. [Ps 105:7; Ps 106:47; Exod 32:11;](#)

and prays for the restoration of Jerusalem

16 O Lord, according to all thy righteousness, I beseech you, let thine anger and thy fury be turned away from thy city Jerusalem, thy holy mountain: because for our sins, and for the iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and thy people *are become* a reproach to all *that are* about us.

17 Now therefore, O our Elohim, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications, and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary that is desolate, for the Lord's sake. [\[Ps 80:3\];](#)

18 O my Elohim, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before you for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies.

19 O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord, hearken and do; defer not, for thine own sake, O my Elohim: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name.

Gabriel informs him of the seventy weeks

20 And whiles I *was* speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the YAHWEH my Elohim for the holy mountain of my Elohim;

21 Yes, whiles I *was* speaking in prayer, even the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly swiftly, touched me about the time of between the evenings sacrifice. [\[Dan 8:16\];](#)

22 And he informed *me*, and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I am now come forth to give you skill and understanding.

23 At the beginning of thy supplications the commandment came forth, and I am come to show you; for you are greatly beloved: therefore understand the matter, and consider the vision.

24 Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. [\[Jer 23:5\]; \[Luke 24:27\]; \[John 1:45\]; \[Acts 10:43\]; \[Acts 13:32\]; \[Acts 26:6\]; \[Acts 28:23\]; \[Rom 1:2\]; \[1Cor 15:3\]; \[Gal 4:4\]; \[Eph 1:10\]; \[1Pet 1:11\];](#)

25 Know therefore and understand, *that* from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince *shall be* seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.

26 And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof *shall be* with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined. [\[Mark 9:12\]; \[Luke 21:22\]; \[1Cor 15:3\];](#)

27 And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make *it* desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate. [Matt 24:15; Mark 13:14; Luke 21:20; \[Luke 1:70\];](#)

DANIEL TEN

Daniel, having humbled himself, sees a vision

1 In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar; and the thing *was* true, but the time appointed *was* long: and he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision.

2 In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks.

3 I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.

4 And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which *is* Hiddekel; [Gen 2:14;](#)

5 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins *were* girded with fine gold of Uphaz: [Rev 1:13-15; \[Dan 12:6\];](#)

6 His body also *was* like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.

7 And I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves. [\[Acts 9:7\]; \[Acts 22:9\];](#)

8 Therefore I was left alone, and saw this great vision, and there remained no strength in me: for my comeliness was turned in me into corruption, and I retained no strength. [Dan 7:28;](#)

9 Yet heard I the voice of his words: and when I heard the voice of his words, then was I in a deep sleep on my face, and my face toward the ground. [\[Ezek 1:28\];](#)

Being troubled with fear, he is comforted by the angel

10 And, behold, a hand touched me, which set me upon my knees and *upon* the palms of my hands. [Ezek 2:2];

11 And he said unto me, O Daniel, a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto you, and stand upright: for unto you am I now sent. And when he had spoken this word unto me, I stood trembling.

12 Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that you didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy Elohim, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.

13 But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia. [Jude 1:9];

14 Now I am come to make you understand what shall befall thy people in the latter days: for yet the vision *is* for *many* days.

15 And when he had spoken such words unto me, I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb.

16 And, behold, *one* like the similitude of the sons of men touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spoke, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength. [Isa 6:7];

17 For how can the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? for as for me, immediately there remained no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me.

18 Then there came again and touched me *one* like the appearance of a man, and he strengthened me,

19 And said, O man greatly beloved, fear not: peace *be* unto you, be strong, yes, be strong. And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for you have strengthened me.

20 Then said he, Knowest you wherefore I come unto you? and now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come.

21 But I will show you that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and *there is* none that holdeth with me in these things, but Michael your prince.

DANIEL ELEVEN

The overthrow of Persia by the king of Grecia

1 Also I in the first year of Darius the Mede, *even* I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him.

2 And now will I show you the truth. Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than *they* all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.

3 And a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will.

4 And when he shall stand up, his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven; and not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those.

Leagues and conflicts between the kings of the south and of the north

5 And the king of the south shall be strong, and *one* of his princes; and he shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion *shall be* a great dominion.

6 And in the end of years they shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm;

neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in *these* times.

7 But out of a branch of her roots shall *one* stand up in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail:

8 And shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, *and* with their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue *more* years than the king of the north.

9 So the king of the south shall come into *his* kingdom, and shall return into his own land.

10 But his sons shall be stirred up, and shall assemble a multitude of great forces: and *one* shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, *even* to his fortress.

11 And the king of the south shall be moved with choler, and shall come forth and fight with him, *even* with the king of the north: and he shall set forth a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into his hand.

12 *And* when he has taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he shall cast down *many* ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened *by it*.

13 For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come after certain years with a great army and with much riches.

14 And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall.

15 So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither his chosen people, neither *shall there be any* strength to withstand.

16 But he that cometh against him shall do according to his own will, and none shall stand before him: and he shall stand in the glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed.

17 He shall also set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom, and upright ones with him; thus shall he do: and he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her: but she shall not stand *on his side*, neither be for him.

18 After this shall he turn his face unto the isles, and shall take many: but a prince for his own behalf shall cause the reproach offered by him to cease; without his own reproach he shall cause *it* to turn upon him.

19 Then he shall turn his face toward the fort of his own land: but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.

20 Then shall stand up in his estate a raiser of taxes *in* the glory of the kingdom: but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle.

21 And in his estate shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries.

22 And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflown from before him, and shall be broken; yes, also the prince of the covenant.

23 And after the league *made* with him he shall work deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people.

24 He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do *that* which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: yes, and he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time.

25 And he shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the south with a great army; and the king of the south shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand: for they shall forecast devices against him.

26 Yes, they that feed of the portion of his meat shall destroy him, and his army shall overflow: and many shall fall down slain.

27 And both these kings' hearts *shall be* to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for yet the end *shall be* at the time appointed.

28 Then shall he return into his land with great riches; and his heart *shall be* against the holy covenant; and he shall do *exploits*, and return to his own land.

29 At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter.

The invasion and tyranny of the Romans

30 For the ships of Chittim shall come against him: therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation against the holy covenant: so shall he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant.

31 And arms shall stand on his part, and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily *sacrifice*, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate.

32 And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their Elohim shall be strong, and do *exploits*.

33 And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, *many* days.

34 Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries.

35 And *some* of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make *them* white, *even* to the time of the end: because *it is* yet for a time appointed.

36 And the king shall do according to his will; and he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the Elohim of gods, and shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done. [Dan 7:25](#); [\[2Thess 2:4\]](#);

37 Neither shall he regard the gods of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all.

38 But in his estate shall he honour the Elohim of forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things.

39 Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge *and* increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for gain.

40 And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over.

41 He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many *countries* shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, *even* Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.

42 He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape.

43 But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians *shall be* at his steps.

44 But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many.

45 And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.

Michael shall deliver Israel from their troubles

1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation *even* to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. [[Matt 24:21](#)]; [[Luke 10:20](#)]; [[Jude 1:9](#)];

2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame *and* everlasting contempt. [Matt 25:46](#); [John 5:29](#); [[John 11:24](#)];

3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever. [Matt 13:43](#); [[1Cor 15:42](#)];

4 But you, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, *even* to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased. [[Rev 10:4](#)]; [[Rev 22:10](#)];

Daniel is informed of the times

5 Then I Daniel looked, and, behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river.

6 And *one* said to the man clothed in linen, which *was* upon the waters of the river, How long *shall it be* to the end of these wonders? [Dan 10:5](#);

7 And I heard the man clothed in linen, which *was* upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that *it shall be* for a time, times, and a half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these *things* shall be finished. [Rev 10:5-6](#); [[Rev 10:5](#)];

8 And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what *shall be* the end of these *things*?

9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words *are* closed up and sealed till the time of the end.

10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.

11 And from the time *that* the daily *sacrifice* shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, *there shall be* a thousand two hundred and ninety days.

12 Blessed *is* he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days.

13 But go you thy way till the end *be*: for you shall rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.

Hosea

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#)

HOSEA ONE

Hosea, to show Elohim's judgment for spiritual whoredom, takes Gomer

1 The word of the YAHWEH that came unto Hosea, the son of Beeri, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, *and* Hezekiah, kings of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam the son of Joash, king of Israel.

2 The beginning of the word of the YAHWEH by Hosea. And the YAHWEH said to Hosea, Go, take unto you a wife of whoredoms and children of whoredoms: for the land has committed great whoredom, *departing* from the YAHWEH.

3 So he went and took Gomer the daughter of Diblaim; which conceived, and bore him a son.

and has by her Jezreel

4 And the YAHWEH said unto him, Call his name Jezreel; for yet a little *while*, and I will avenge the blood of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu, and will cause to cease the kingdom of the house of Israel.

5 And it shall come to pass at that day, that I will break the bow of Israel in the valley of Jezreel.

Loruhamah

6 And she conceived again, and bore a daughter. And *Elohim* said unto him, Call her name Loruhamah: for I will no more have mercy upon the house of Israel; but I will utterly take them away. [\[2Kgs 17:18\]](#);

7 But I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the YAHWEH their Elohim, and will not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by battle, by horses, nor by horsemen.

and Lo-ammi

8 Now when she had weaned Loruhamah, she conceived, and bore a son.

9 Then said *Elohim*, Call his name Loammi: for you *are* not my people, and I will not be your *Elohim*.

The restoration of Judah and Israel under one head

10 Yet the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured nor numbered; and it shall come to pass, *that* in the place where it was said unto them, you *are* not my people, *there* it shall be said unto them, you *are* the sons of the living Elohim. [Gen 32:12](#); [Rom 9:25-26](#); [\[Hos 2:23\]](#); [\[Rom 9:26\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:10\]](#);

11 Then shall the children of Judah and the children of Israel be gathered together, and appoint themselves one head, and they shall come up out of the land: for great *shall be* the day of Jezreel. [Isa 11:13](#); [Jer 3:18](#); [Ezek 37:16](#); [Ezek 37:22](#); [Eph 2:14-16](#);

The idolatry of the people

- 1** Say you unto your brethren, Ammi; and to your sisters, Ruhamah.
2 Plead with your mother, plead: for she *is* not my wife, neither *am* I her husband: let her therefore put away her whoredoms out of her sight, and her adulteries from between her breasts;
3 Lest I strip her naked, and set her as in the day that she was born, and make her as a wilderness, and set her like a dry land, and slay her with thirst.
4 And I will not have mercy upon her children; for they *be* the children of whoredoms.
5 For their mother has played the harlot: she that conceived them has done shamefully: for she said, I will go after my lovers, that give *me* my bread and my water, my wool and my flax, mine oil and my drink.

Elohim's judgments against them

- 6** Therefore, behold, I will hedge up thy way with thorns, and make a wall, that she shall not find her paths.
7 And she shall follow after her lovers, but she shall not overtake them; and she shall seek them, but shall not find *them*: then shall she say, I will go and return to my first husband; for then *was it* better with me than now.
8 For she did not know that I gave her corn, and wine, and oil, and multiplied her silver and gold, *which* they prepared for Baal.
9 Therefore will I return, and take away my grain in the time thereof, and my wine in the season thereof, and will recover my wool and my flax *given* to cover her nakedness.
10 And now will I discover her lewdness in the sight of her lovers, and none shall deliver her out of mine hand. [Hos 5:14](#);
11 I will also cause all her mirth to cease, her feast days, her new moons, and her Sabbaths, and all her solemn feasts. [\[Isa 24:8\]](#); [\[Jer 7:34\]](#);
12 And I will destroy her vines and her fig trees, whereof she has said, These *are* my rewards that my lovers have given me: and I will make them a forest, and the beasts of the field shall eat them. [Ps 80:12](#); [Isa 5:5](#);
13 And I will visit upon her the days of Baalim, wherein she burned incense to them, and she decked herself with her earrings and her jewels, and she went after her lovers, and forgot me, saith the YAHWEH.

His promises of reconciliation with them

- 14** Therefore, behold, I will allure her, and bring her into the wilderness, and speak comfortably unto her.
15 And I will give her her vineyards from thence, and the valley of Achor for a door of hope: and she shall sing there, as in the days of her youth, and as in the day when she came up out of the land of Egypt.
16 And it shall be at that day, saith the YAHWEH, *that* you shall call me Ishi; and shall call me no more Baali.
17 For I will take away the names of Baalim out of her mouth, and they shall no more be remembered by their name. [\[Exod 23:13\]](#);
18 And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and *with* the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely. [Job 5:23](#); [Isa 11:6](#); [Ezek 14:21](#); [Ezek 34:25](#);

19 And I will betroth you unto me for ever; yes, I will betroth you unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.

20 I will even betroth you unto me in faithfulness: and you shall know the YAHWEH. [Jer 31:33-34](#);

21 And it shall come to pass in that day, I will hear, saith the YAHWEH, I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth; [\[Ps 147:8\]](#);

22 And the earth shall hear the corn, and the wine, and the oil; and they shall hear Jezreel.

23 And I will sow her unto me in the earth; and I will have mercy upon her that had not obtained mercy; and I will say to *them which were* not my people, you are my people; and they shall say, you *are* my Elohim. [Hos 1:10](#); [Rom 9:26](#); [1Pet 2:10](#); [\[Rom 9:25\]](#);

HOSEA THREE

The Lord's intended future kindness to Israel, notwithstanding their wickedness, illustrated by the emblem of Hosea's conduct towards his adulterous wife

1 Then said the YAHWEH unto me, Go yet, love a woman beloved of *her* friend, yet an adulteress, according to the love of the YAHWEH toward the children of Israel, who look to other gods, and love to offer raisin cakes to idols.

2 So I bought her to me for fifteen *pieces* of silver, and *for* a homer of barley, and a half homer of barley:

3 And I said unto her, you shall abide for me many days; you shall not play the harlot, and you shall not be for *another* man: so *will* I also *be* for you. [Deut 21:11](#);

The desolation of Israel before their restoration

4 For the children of Israel shall abide many days without a king, and without a prince, and without a sacrifice, and without an image, and without an ephod, and *without* teraphim: [Hos 10:3](#); [\[2Chr 15:3\]](#);

5 Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the YAHWEH their Elohim, and David their king; and shall fear the YAHWEH and his goodness in the latter days. [Jer 30:9](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Ezek 37:22](#); [Isa 2:2](#); [Mic 4:1](#);

HOSEA FOUR

Elohim denounces judgments on Israel, for their aggravated impieties and iniquities

1 Hear the word of the YAHWEH, you children of Israel: for the YAHWEH has a controversy with the inhabitants of the land, because *there is* no truth, nor mercy, nor knowledge of Elohim in the land. [Mic 6:2](#); [\[Mic 7:2\]](#);

2 By swearing, and lying, and killing, and stealing, and committing adultery, they break out, and blood toucheth blood.

3 Therefore shall the land mourn, and every one that dwelleth therein shall languish, with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven; yes, the fishes of the sea also shall be taken away.

4 Yet let no man strive, nor reprove another: for thy people *are* as they that strive with the priest.

5 Therefore shall you fall in the day, and the prophet also shall fall with you in the night, and I will destroy thy mother.

6 My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because you have rejected knowledge, I will also reject you, that you shall be no priest to me: seeing you have forgotten the law of thy Elohim, I will also forget thy children.

7 As they were increased, so they sinned against me: *therefore* will I change their glory into shame.

8 They eat up the sin of my people, and they set their heart on their iniquity. [[Lev 6:26](#)];

9 And there shall be, like people, like priest: and I will punish them for their ways, and reward them their doings. [Isa 24:2](#);

10 For they shall eat, and not have enough: they shall commit whoredom, and shall not increase: because they have left off to take heed to the YAHWEH. [Mic 6:14](#);

11 Whoredom and wine and new wine take away the heart.

He exposes the ignorance and wickedness of the priests, and profligacy of the people, he will leave their wives and daughters to commit lewdness, without present punishment

12 My people ask counsel at their stocks, and their staff declareth unto them: for the spirit of whoredoms has caused *them* to err, and they have gone a whoring from under their Elohim. [Hos 5:4](#);

13 They sacrifice upon the tops of the mountains, and burn incense upon the hills, under oaks and poplars and elms, because the shadow thereof *is* good: therefore your daughters shall commit whoredom, and your spouses shall commit adultery. [Isa 57:7](#); [Ezek 20:28](#); [Isa 1:29](#);

14 I will not punish your daughters when they commit whoredom, nor your spouses when they commit adultery: for themselves are separated with whores, and they sacrifice with harlots: therefore the people *that* does not understand shall fall.

He warns Judah, not to imitate Israel's crimes, which are still further reproved

15 Though you, Israel, play the harlot, yet let not Judah offend; and come not you unto Gilgal, neither go you up to Bethaven, nor swear, The YAHWEH liveth. [[Hos 9:15](#)]; [[Hos 12:11](#)];

16 For Israel slideth back as a backsliding heifer: now the YAHWEH will feed them as a lamb in a large place. [[Exod 32:9](#)];

17 Ephraim *is* joined to idols: let him alone.

18 Their drink is sour: they have committed whoredom continually: her rulers *with* shame do love, Give you. [[Isa 1:22](#)];

19 The wind has bound her up in her wings, and they shall be ashamed because of their sacrifices.

The judgments of Elohim are denounced against the priests, people, and princes, both of Israel and Judah, for their manifold sins

1 Hear you this, O priests; and hearken, you house of Israel; and give you ear, O house of the king; for judgment *is* toward you, because you have been a snare on Mizpah, and a net spread upon Tabor.

2 And the revolvers are profound to make slaughter, though I *have been* a rebuker of them all.

3 I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hid from me: for now, O Ephraim, you committest whoredom, *and* Israel is defiled.

4 They will not frame their doings to turn unto their Elohim: for the spirit of whoredoms *is* in the midst of them, and they have not known the YAHWEH. [Hos 4:12](#);

5 And the pride of Israel testifies to his face: therefore shall Israel and Ephraim fall in their iniquity; Judah also shall fall with them. [Hos 7:10](#); [\[Jer 2:19\]](#);

6 They shall go with their flocks and with their herds to seek the YAHWEH; but they shall not find *him*; he has withdrawn himself from them.

7 They have dealt treacherously against the YAHWEH: for they have begotten strange children: now shall a month devour them with their portions.

8 Blow you the cornet in Gibeah, *and* the trumpet in Ramah: cry aloud *at* Bethaven, after you, O Benjamin.

9 Ephraim shall be desolate in the day of rebuke: among the tribes of Israel have I made known that which shall surely be.

10 The princes of Judah were like them that remove the bound: *therefore* I will pour out my wrath upon them like water.

11 Ephraim *is* oppressed *and* broken in judgment, because he willingly walked after the commandment.

12 Therefore *will* I *be* unto Ephraim as a moth, and to the house of Judah as rottenness.

13 When Ephraim saw his sickness, and Judah *saw* his wound, then went Ephraim to the Assyrian, and sent to king Jareb: yet could he not heal you, nor cure you of your wound.

14 For I *will be* unto Ephraim as a lion, and as a young lion to the house of Judah: I, *even* I, will tear and go away; I will take away, and none shall rescue *him*. [Hos 2:10](#);

An intimation is given of mercy on their repentance

15 I will go *and* return to my place, till they acknowledge their offence, and seek my face: in their affliction they will seek me early.

HOSEA SIX

Exhortations to repent and hope in Elohim

- 1** Come, and let us return unto the YAHWEH: for he has torn, and he will heal us; he has smitten, and he will bind us up. [\[Job 5:18\];](#)
- 2** After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.
- 3** Then shall we know, *if* we follow on to know the YAHWEH: his going forth is prepared as the morning; and he shall come unto us as the rain, as the latter *and* former rain unto the earth.

A lamentation over those who had sinned after conviction

- 4** O Ephraim, what shall I do unto you? O Judah, what shall I do unto you? for your goodness *is* as a morning cloud, and as the early dew it goes away.

Reproofs of obstinate sinners, and threatenings against them

- 5** Therefore have I hewed *them* by the prophets; I have slain them by the words of my mouth: and thy judgments *are as* the light *that* goes forth.
- 6** For I desired mercy, and not sacrifice; and the knowledge of Elohim more than burnt offerings. [Matt 9:13; Matt 12:7; \[1Sam 15:22\]; \[Prov 21:3\]; \[Matt 23:23\]; \[Luke 11:42\];](#)
- 7** But they like men have transgressed the covenant: there have they dealt treacherously against me. [Hos 8:1;](#)
- 8** Gilead *is* a city of them that work iniquity, *and is* polluted with blood. [\[Hos 12:11\];](#)
- 9** And as troops of robbers wait for a man, *so* the company of priests murder in the way by consent: for they commit lewdness.
- 10** I have seen a horrible thing in the house of Israel: there *is* the whoredom of Ephraim, Israel is defiled.
- 11** Also, O Judah, he has set a harvest for you, when I returned the captivity of my people.

HOSEA SEVEN

A reproof of manifold sins

- 1** When I would have healed Israel, then the iniquity of Ephraim was discovered, and the wickedness of Samaria: for they commit falsehood; and the thief cometh in, *and* the troop of robbers spoileth without.
- 2** And they consider not in their hearts *that* I remember all their wickedness: now their own doings have beset them about; they are before my face.
- 3** They make the king glad with their wickedness, and the princes with their lies. [\[Rom 1:32\];](#)
- 4** They *are* all adulterers, as an oven heated by the baker, *who* ceaseth from raising after he has kneaded the dough, until it be leavened.
- 5** In the day of our king the princes have made *him* sick with bottles of wine; he stretched out his hand with scorners.
- 6** For they have made ready their heart like an oven, whiles they lie in wait: their baker sleepeth all the night; in the morning it burneth as a flaming fire.
- 7** They are all hot as an oven, and have devoured their judges; all their kings are fallen: *there is* none among them that calleth unto me.
- 8** Ephraim, he has mixed himself among the people; Ephraim is a cake not turned. [Ps 106:35;](#)
- 9** Strangers have devoured his strength, and he knoweth *it* not: yes, gray hairs are here and there upon him, yet he knoweth not.

10 And the pride of Israel testifieth to his face: and they do not return to the YAHWEH their Elohim, nor seek him for all this. [Hos 5:5](#);

Elohim's wrath against them for their hypocrisy

11 Ephraim also is like a silly dove without heart: they call to Egypt, they go to Assyria.

12 When they shall go, I will spread my net upon them; I will bring them down as the fowls of the heaven; I will chastise them, as their congregation has heard.

13 Woe unto them! for they have fled from me: destruction unto them! because they have transgressed against me: though I have redeemed them, yet they have spoken lies against me.

14 And they have not cried unto me with their heart, when they howled upon their beds: they assemble themselves for grain and wine, *and* they rebel against me.

15 Though I have bound *and* strengthened their arms, yet do they imagine mischief against me.

16 They return, *but* not to the most High: they are like a deceitful bow: their princes shall fall by the sword for the rage of their tongue: this *shall be* their derision in the land of Egypt. [Ps 78:57](#);

HOSEA EIGHT

Destruction is threatened both to Israel and Judah for their impiety and idolatry

1 Set the trumpet to thy mouth. *He shall come* as an eagle against the house of the YAHWEH, because they have transgressed my covenant, and trespassed against my law. [Deut 28:49](#); [Hos 6:7](#);

2 Israel shall cry unto me, My Elohim, we know you.

3 Israel has cast off *the thing that is* good: the enemy shall pursue him.

4 They have set up kings, but not by me: they have made princes, and I knew *it* not: of their silver and their gold have they made them idols, that they may be cut off.

5 Thy calf, O Samaria, has cast you off; mine anger is kindled against them: how long *will it be* ere they attain to innocence?

6 For from Israel *was* it also: the workman made it; therefore it *is* not Elohim: but the calf of Samaria shall be broken in pieces. [\[Hos 13:2\]](#);

7 For they have sown the wind, and they shall reap the whirlwind: it has no stalk: the bud shall yield no meal: if so be it yield, the strangers shall swallow it up.

8 Israel is swallowed up: now shall they be among the Gentiles as a vessel wherein *is* no pleasure.

9 For they are gone up to Assyria, a wild ass alone by himself: Ephraim has hired lovers.

10 Yes, though they have hired among the nations, now will I gather them, and they shall sorrow a little for the burden of the king of princes.

11 Because Ephraim has made many altars to sin, altars shall be unto him to sin. [\[Hos 10:1\]](#);

12 I have written to him the great things of my law, *but* they were counted as a strange thing.

13 They sacrifice flesh *for* the sacrifices of mine offerings, and eat *it*; *but* the YAHWEH accepteth them not; now will he remember their iniquity, and visit their sins: they shall return to Egypt. [\[Jer 14:10\]](#);

14 For Israel has forgotten his Maker, and buildeth temples; and Judah has multiplied fenced cities: but I will send a fire upon his cities, and it shall devour the palaces thereof. [\[Hos 13:6\]](#);

The distress and captivity of Israel for their sins

1 Rejoice not, O Israel, for joy, as *other* people: for you have gone a whoring from thy Elohim, you have loved a reward upon every cornfloor.

2 The floor and the winepress shall not feed them, and the new wine shall fail in her.

3 They shall not dwell in the YAHWEH'S land; but Ephraim shall return to Egypt, and they shall eat unclean *things* in Assyria. [\[Ezek 4:13\];](#)

4 They shall not offer wine *offerings* to the YAHWEH, neither shall they be pleasing unto him: their sacrifices *shall be* unto them as the bread of mourners; all that eat thereof shall be polluted: for their bread for their being shall not come into the house of the YAHWEH.

5 What will you do in the solemn day, and in the day of the feast of the YAHWEH?

6 For, lo, they are gone because of destruction: Egypt shall gather them up, Memphis shall bury them: the pleasant *places* for their silver, nettles shall possess them: thorns *shall be* in their tabernacles.

7 The days of visitation are come, the days of recompence are come; Israel shall know *it*: the prophet *is* a fool, the spiritual man *is* mad, for the multitude of thine iniquity, and the great hatred. [\[Zeph 3:4\];](#)

8 The watchman of Ephraim *was* with my Elohim: *but* the prophet *is* a snare of a fowler in all his ways, *and* hatred in the house of his Elohim.

9 They have deeply corrupted *themselves*, as in the days of Gibeah: *therefore* he will remember their iniquity, he will visit their sins. [\[Judg 19:22\]; \[Judg 20:13\]; \[Jer 14:10\]; \[Hos 10:9\];](#)

10 I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness; I saw your fathers as the firstripe in the fig tree at her first time: *but* they went to Baalpeor, and separated themselves unto *that* shame; and *their* abominations were according as they loved. [Num 25:3; Ps 106:28; \[Num 25:2\];](#)

11 *As for* Ephraim, their glory shall fly away like a bird, from the birth, and from the womb, and from the conception.

12 Though they bring up their children, yet will I bereave them, *that there shall not be* a man *left*: yes, woe also to them when I depart from them!

13 Ephraim, as I saw Tyrus, *is* planted in a pleasant place: but Ephraim shall bring forth his children to the murderer. [\[Job 27:14\];](#)

14 Give them, O YAHWEH: what will you give? give them a miscarrying womb and dry breasts. [Luke 23:29;](#)

15 All their wickedness *is* in Gilgal: for there I hated them: for the wickedness of their doings I will drive them out of mine house, I will love them no more: all their princes *are* revolvers. [Hos 4:15; Hos 12:11; Isa 1:23;](#)

16 Ephraim is smitten, their root is dried up, they shall bear no fruit: yes, though they bring forth, yet will I slay *even* the beloved *fruit* of their womb.

17 My Elohim will cast them away, because they did not hearken unto him: and they shall be wanderers among the nations.

Israel is reproved and threatened for their impiety and idolatry, and exhorted to repentance

1 Israel *is* an empty vine, he bringeth forth fruit unto himself: according to the multitude of his fruit he has increased the altars; according to the goodness of his land they have made goodly images. [Hos 8:11;](#)

- 2** Their heart is divided; now shall they be found faulty: he shall break down their altars, he shall spoil their images.
- 3** For now they shall say, We have no king, because we feared not the YAHWEH; what then should a king do to us? [Hos 3:4](#);
- 4** They have spoken words, swearing falsely in making a covenant: thus judgment springeth up as hemlock in the furrows of the field.
- 5** The inhabitants of Samaria shall fear because of the calves of Bethaven: for the people thereof shall mourn over it, and the priests thereof *that* rejoiced on it, for the glory thereof, because it is departed from it.
- 6** It shall be also carried unto Assyria *for* a present to king Jareb: Ephraim shall receive shame, and Israel shall be ashamed of his own counsel.
- 7** *As for* Samaria, her king is cut off as the foam upon the water.
- 8** The high places also of Aven, the sin of Israel, shall be destroyed: the thorn and the thistle shall come up on their altars; and they shall say to the mountains, Cover us; and to the hills, Fall on us. [Isa 2:19](#); [Luke 23:30](#); [Rev 6:16](#); [Rev 9:6](#);
- 9** O Israel, you have sinned from the days of Gibeah: there they stood: the battle in Gibeah against the children of iniquity did not overtake them. [Hos 9:9](#); [\[Judg 19:22\]](#); [\[Judg 20:13\]](#);
- 10** *It is* in my desire that I should chastise them; and the people shall be gathered against them, when they shall bind themselves in their two furrows.
- 11** And Ephraim *is as* a heifer *that is* taught, *and* loveth to tread out *the corn*; but I passed over upon her fair neck: I will make Ephraim to ride; Judah shall plow, *and* Jacob shall break his clods.
- 12** Sow to yourselves in righteousness, reap in mercy; break up your fallow ground: for *it is* time to seek the YAHWEH, till he come and rain righteousness upon you. [Jer 4:3](#);
- 13** You have plowed wickedness, you have reaped iniquity; you have eaten the fruit of lies: because you didst trust in thy way, in the multitude of thy mighty men. [\[Job 4:8\]](#); [\[Job 15:35\]](#); [\[Prov 22:8\]](#);
- 14** Therefore shall a tumult arise among thy people, and all thy fortresses shall be spoiled, as Shalman spoiled Betharbel in the day of battle: the mother was dashed in pieces upon *her* children. [\[Hos 13:16\]](#);
- 15** So shall Bethel do unto you because of your great wickedness: in a morning shall the king of Israel utterly be cut off.

HOSEA ELEVEN

The ingratitude of Israel unto Elohim for his benefits

- 1** When Israel *was* a child, then I loved him, and called my son out of Egypt. [Matt 2:15](#); [\[Gen 46:4\]](#);
- 2** *As* they called them, so they went from them: they sacrificed unto Baalim, and burned incense to graven images.
- 3** I taught Ephraim also to go, taking them by their arms; but they knew not that I healed them.
- 4** I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love: and I was to them as they that take off the yoke on their jaws, and I laid meat unto them.

His judgment

- 5** He shall not return into the land of Egypt, but the Assyrian shall be his king, because they refused to return.
- 6** And the sword shall abide on his cities, and shall consume his branches, and devour *them*, because of their own counsels.

7 And my people are bent to backsliding from me: though they called them to the most High, none at all would exalt *him*.

Elohim's mercy toward them

8 How shall I give you up, Ephraim? *how* shall I deliver you, Israel? how shall I make you as Admah? *how* shall I set you as Zeboim? mine heart is turned within me, my repentings are kindled together. [Gen 19:24](#); [\[Luke 17:29\]](#); [\[2Pet 2:6\]](#); [\[Jude 1:7\]](#);

9 I will not execute the fierceness of mine anger, I will not return to destroy Ephraim: for I *am* Elohim, and not man; the Holy One in the midst of you: and I will not enter into the city.

10 They shall walk after the YAHWEH: he shall roar like a lion: when he shall roar, then the children shall tremble from the west.

11 They shall tremble as a bird out of Egypt, and as a dove out of the land of Assyria: and I will place them in their houses, saith the YAHWEH.

Israel's falsehood and Judah's fidelity

12 Ephraim compasses me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit: but Judah yet ruleth with Elohim, and is faithful with the saints.

HOSEA TWELVE

A reproof of Ephraim, Judah, and Jacob

1 Ephraim feedeth on wind, and followeth after the east wind: he daily increaseth lies and desolation; and they do make a covenant with the Assyrians, and oil is carried into Egypt.

2 The YAHWEH has also a controversy with Judah, and will punish Jacob according to his ways; according to his doings will he recompense him.

By former favors he exhorts to repentance

3 He took his brother by the heel in the womb, and by his strength he had power with Elohim: [Gen 25:26](#); [Gen 35:9-10](#); [\[Gen 32:26\]](#);

4 Yes, he had power over the angel, and prevailed: he wept, and made supplication unto him: he found him *in* Bethel, and there he spoke with us; [Gen 28:12](#); [Gen 28:19](#); [Gen 35:7](#); [Gen 35:14-15](#); [\[Gen 35:9\]](#);

5 Even the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts; the YAHWEH *is* his memorial.

6 Therefore turn you to thy Elohim: keep mercy and judgment, and wait on thy Elohim continually. [\[Hos 14:1\]](#);

Ephraim's sins provoke Elohim

7 *He is* a merchant, the balances of deceit *are* in his hand: he loveth to oppress. [\[Amos 8:5\]](#); [\[Mic 6:11\]](#);

8 And Ephraim said, yet I am become rich, I have found me out substance: *in* all my labours they shall find none iniquity in me that *were* sin.

9 And I *that am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim from the land of Egypt will yet make you to dwell in tabernacles, as in the days of the solemn feast. [Isa 43:11](#); [\[Hos 13:4\]](#);

10 I have also spoken by the prophets, and I have multiplied visions, and used similitudes, by the ministry of the prophets.

11 *Is there* iniquity *in* Gilead? surely they are vanity: they sacrifice bullocks in Gilgal; yes, their altars *are* as heaps in the furrows of the fields. [Hos 6:8](#); [Hos 4:15](#); [Hos 9:15](#); [\[Amos 4:4\]](#);

12 And Jacob fled into the country of Syria, and Israel served for a wife, and for a wife he kept *sheep*.
Gen 28:5; Gen 29:20; Gen 29:28; [Gen 28:2]; [Gen 29:18];

13 And by a prophet the YAHWEH brought Israel out of Egypt, and by a prophet was he preserved. [Exod 3:10];

14 Ephraim provoked *him* to anger most bitterly: therefore shall he leave his blood upon him, and his reproach shall his Lord return unto him.

HOSEA THIRTEEN

Ephraim's glory vanishes

1 When Ephraim spoke trembling, he exalted himself in Israel; but when he offended in Baal, he died.

2 And now they sin more and more, and have made them molten images of their silver, *and* idols according to their own understanding, all of it the work of the craftsmen: they say of them, Let the men that sacrifice kiss the calves. Hos 8:6;

3 Therefore they shall be as the morning cloud, and as the early dew that passeth away, as the chaff *that* is driven with the whirlwind out of the floor, and as the smoke out of the chimney. [Ps 1:4]; [Ps 35:5]; [Isa 17:13];

Elohim's anger

4 Yet I *am* the YAHWEH thy Elohim from the land of Egypt, and you shall know no god but me: for *there* *is* no saviour beside me. Isa 43:11; Hos 12:9; 2Sam 22:32; Ps 18:31; [1Chr 17:20]; [Ps 3:8]; [Isa 43:10];

5 I did know you in the wilderness, in the land of great drought.

6 According to their pasture, so were they filled; they were filled, and their heart was exalted; therefore have they forgotten me. Deut 32:15; Hos 8:14;

7 Therefore I will be unto them as a lion: as a leopard by the way will I observe *them*:

8 I will meet them as a bear *that is* bereaved *of her whelps*, and will rend the caul of their heart, and there will I devour them like a lion: the wild beast shall tear them.

Elohim's mercy

9 O Israel, you have destroyed thyself; but in me *is* thine help.

10 I will be thy king: where *is any other* that may save you in all thy cities? and thy judges of whom you saidst, Give me a king and princes? [1Sam 8:5];

11 I gave you a king in mine anger, and took *him* away in my wrath. 1Sam 8:5; 1Sam 15:23; 1Sam 16:1; [Ecd 10:16]; [Acts 13:21];

12 The iniquity of Ephraim *is* bound up; his sin *is* hid.

13 The sorrows of a travailing woman shall come upon him: he *is* an unwise son; for he should not stay long in *the place of* the breaking forth of children.

14 I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death: O death, I will be thy plagues; O grave, I will be thy destruction: repentance shall be hid from mine eyes. Isa 25:8; 1Cor 15:55; [1Cor 15:54]; [Heb 2:14];

The judgment of Samaria

15 Though he be fruitful among *his* brethren, an east wind shall come, the wind of the YAHWEH shall come up from the wilderness, and his spring shall become dry, and his fountain shall be dried up: he shall spoil the treasure of all pleasant vessels.

16 Samaria shall become desolate; for she has rebelled against her Elohim: they shall fall by the sword: their infants shall be dashed in pieces, and their women with child shall be ripped up. Hos 10:14;

An exhortation to repentance

- 1** O Israel, return unto the YAHWEH thy Elohim; for you have fallen by thine iniquity. [Hos 12:6](#); [\[Zech 1:4\]](#);
2 Take with you words, and turn to the YAHWEH: say unto him, Take away all iniquity, and receive *us* graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips. [Heb 13:15](#); [\[Jonah 2:9\]](#);
3 Asshur shall not save us; we will not ride upon horses: neither will we say any more to the work of our hands, you *are* our gods: for in you the fatherless finds mercy. [\[Mic 5:10\]](#);

A promise of Elohim's blessing

- 4** I will heal their backsliding, I will love them freely: for mine anger is turned away from him.
5 I will be as the dew unto Israel: he shall grow as the lily, and cast forth his roots as Lebanon. [\[Ps 92:12\]](#);
6 His branches shall spread, and his beauty shall be as the olive tree, and his smell as Lebanon.
7 They that dwell under his shadow shall return; they shall revive *as* the corn, and grow as the vine: the scent thereof *shall be* as the wine of Lebanon.

8 Ephraim *shall say*, What have I to do any more with idols? I have heard *him*, and observed him: I *am* like a green fir tree. From me is thy fruit found.
9 Who *is* wise, and he shall understand these *things*? prudent, and he shall know them? for the ways of the YAHWEH *are* right, and the just shall walk in them: but the transgressors shall fall therein.

Joel

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

JOEL ONE

Joel, declaring sundry judgments of Elohim, exhorts to observe them

- 1** The word of the YAHWEH that came to Joel the son of Pethuel.
- 2** Hear this, you old men, and give ear, all you inhabitants of the land. Has this been in your days, or even in the days of your fathers?
- 3** Tell you your children of it, and *let* your children *tell* their children, and their children another generation.
- 4** That which the palmerworm has left has the locust eaten; and that which the locust has left has the cankerworm eaten; and that which the cankerworm has left has the caterpillar eaten. [\[Joel 2:25\]](#); [\[Amos 4:9\]](#);
- 5** Awake, you drunkards, and weep; and howl, all you drinkers of wine, because of the new wine; for it is cut off from your mouth.
- 6** For a nation is come up upon my land, strong, and without number, whose teeth *are* the teeth of a lion, and he has the cheek teeth of a great lion.
- 7** He has laid my vine waste, and barked my fig tree: he has made it clean bare, and cast *it* away; the branches thereof are made white.

and to mourn

- 8** Lament like a virgin girded with sackcloth for the husband of her youth.
- 9** The meat offering and the drink offering is cut off from the house of the YAHWEH; the priests, the YAHWEH'S ministers, mourn.
- 10** The field is wasted, the land mourneth; for the grain is wasted: the new wine is dried up, the oil languisheth.
- 11** Be you ashamed, O you husbandmen; howl, O you vinedressers, for the wheat and for the barley; because the harvest of the field is perished.
- 12** The vine is dried up, and the fig tree languisheth; the pomegranate tree, the palm tree also, and the apple tree, *even* all the trees of the field, are withered: because joy is withered away from the sons of men.
- 13** Gird yourselves, and lament, you priests: howl, you ministers of the altar: come, lie all night in sackcloth, you ministers of my Elohim: for the meat offering and the drink offering is withholden from the house of your Elohim.

He prescribes a solemn fast to deprecate those judgments

- 14** Sanctify you a fast, call a solemn assembly, gather the elders *and* all the inhabitants of the land *into* the house of the YAHWEH your Elohim, and cry unto the YAHWEH, [Joel 2:15](#);
- 15** Alas for the day! for the day of the YAHWEH *is* at hand, and as a destruction from the Almighty shall it come. [Isa 13:6](#); [\[Joel 2:1\]](#);
- 16** Is not the meat cut off before our eyes, yes, joy and gladness from the house of our Elohim?
- 17** The seed is rotten under their clods, the garners are laid desolate, the barns are broken down; for the grain is withered.
- 18** How do the beasts groan! the herds of cattle are perplexed, because they have no pasture; yes, the flocks of sheep are made desolate.

19 O YAHWEH, to you will I cry: for the fire has devoured the pastures of the wilderness, and the flame has burned all the trees of the field.

20 The beasts of the field cry also unto you: for the rivers of waters are dried up, and the fire has devoured the pastures of the wilderness.

JOEL TWO

He shows unto Zion the terribleness of Elohim's judgment

1 Blow you the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: for the day of the YAHWEH cometh, for *it is* nigh at hand; [Joel 1:15](#); [Zeph 1:14-15](#); [[Zeph 1:15](#)];

2 A day of darkness and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick darkness, as the morning spread upon the mountains: a great people and a strong; there has not been ever the like, neither shall be any more after it, *even* to the years of many generations. [[Amos 5:18](#)];

3 A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land *is* as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yes, and nothing shall escape them.

4 The appearance of them *is* as the appearance of horses; and as horsemen, so shall they run.

5 Like the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap, like the noise of a flame of fire that devoureth the stubble, as a strong people set in battle array.

6 Before their face the people shall be much pained: all faces shall gather blackness.

7 They shall run like mighty men; they shall climb the wall like men of war; and they shall march every one on his ways, and they shall not break their ranks:

8 Neither shall one thrust another; they shall walk every one in his path: and *when* they fall upon the sword, they shall not be wounded.

9 They shall run to and fro in the city; they shall run upon the wall, they shall climb up upon the houses; they shall enter in at the windows like a thief.

10 The earth shall quake before them; the heavens shall tremble: the sun and the moon shall be dark, and the stars shall withdraw their shining: [Isa 13:10](#); [Ezek 32:7](#); [[Joel 3:15](#)]; [[Mic 3:6](#)];

11 And the YAHWEH shall utter his voice before his army: for his camp *is* very great: for *he is* strong that executeth his word: for the day of the YAHWEH *is* great and very terrible; and who can abide it? [Jer 30:7](#); [Amos 5:18](#); [Zeph 1:15](#);

He exhorts to repentance

12 Therefore also now, saith the YAHWEH, turn you *even* to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning: [Jer 4:1](#);

13 And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the YAHWEH your Elohim: for he *is* gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil. [Exod 34:6](#); [Ps 86:15](#); [Jonah 4:2](#);

14 Who knoweth *if* he will return and repent, and leave a blessing behind him; *even* a meat offering and a drink offering unto the YAHWEH your Elohim? [Jonah 3:9](#);

prescribes a fast

15 Blow the trumpet in Zion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly: [Joel 1:14](#);

16 Gather the people, sanctify the congregation, assemble the elders, gather the children, and those that suck the breasts: let the bridegroom go forth of his chamber, and the bride out of her closet. [[1Cor 7:5](#)];

17 Let the priests, the ministers of the YAHWEH, weep between the porch and the altar, and let them say, Spare thy people, O YAHWEH, and give not thine heritage to reproach, that the heathen should rule

over them: wherefore should they say among the people, Where *is* their Elohim? [Ps 42:10](#); [Ps 79:10](#); [Ps 115:2](#); [[Mic 7:10](#)];

promises a blessing thereon

18 Then will the YAHWEH be jealous for his land, and pity his people.

19 Yes, the YAHWEH will answer and say unto his people, Behold, I will send you corn, and wine, and oil, and you shall be satisfied therewith: and I will no more make you a reproach among the heathen:

20 But I will remove far off from you the northern *army*, and will drive him into a land barren and desolate, with his face toward the east sea, and his hinder part toward the utmost sea, and his stink shall come up, and his ill savour shall come up, because he has done great things.

He comforts Zion with present

21 Fear not, O land; be glad and rejoice: for the YAHWEH will do great things.

22 Be not afraid, you beasts of the field: for the pastures of the wilderness do spring, for the tree beareth her fruit, the fig tree and the vine do yield their strength.

23 Be glad then, you children of Zion, and rejoice in the YAHWEH your Elohim: for he has given you the former rain moderately, and he will cause to come down for you the rain, the former rain, and the latter rain in the first *month*.

24 And the floors shall be full of wheat, and the fats shall overflow with wine and oil.

25 And I will restore to you the years that the locust has eaten, the cankerworm, and the caterpillar, and the palmerworm, my great army which I sent among you. [Joel 1:4](#); [[Amos 4:9](#)];

26 And you shall eat in plenty, and be satisfied, and praise the name of the YAHWEH your Elohim, that has dealt wondrously with you: and my people shall never be ashamed. [[Mic 7:15](#)];

27 And you shall know that I *am* in the midst of Israel, and *that* I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim, and none else: and my people shall never be ashamed.

and future blessings

28 And it shall come to pass afterward, *that* I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: [Isa 44:3](#); [Ezek 39:29](#); [Acts 2:17](#); [[Isa 32:15](#)]; [[Zech 12:10](#)]; [[Mark 1:8](#)]; [[Luke 3:16](#)]; [[John 7:39](#)]; [[Acts 1:5](#)]; [[Acts 2:39](#)]; [[Acts 11:16](#)]; [[Acts 21:9](#)];

29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.

30 And I will show wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke. [[Mic 7:15](#)];

31 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and the terrible day of the YAHWEH come. [Joel 3:15](#); [[Isa 13:10](#)]; [[Isa 24:23](#)]; [[Ezek 32:7](#)]; [[Matt 24:29](#)]; [[Mark 13:24](#)]; [[Luke 21:25](#)];

32 And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever shall call on the name of the YAHWEH shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the YAHWEH has said, and in the remnant whom the YAHWEH shall call. [Rom 10:13](#); [Obad 1:17](#); [[Acts 2:21](#)];

JOEL THREE

Elohim's judgments against the enemies of his people

1 For, behold, in those days, and in that time, when I shall bring again the captivity of Judah and Jerusalem,

2 I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat, and will plead with them there for my people and *for* my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land.

3 And they have cast lots for my people; and have given a boy for a harlot, and sold a girl for wine, that they might drink.

4 Yes, and what have you to do with me, O Tyre, and Zidon, and all the coasts of Philistia? will you render me a recompence? and if you recompense me, swiftly *and* speedily will I return your recompence upon your own head;

5 Because you have taken my silver and my gold, and have carried into your temples my goodly pleasant things:

6 The children also of Judah and the children of Jerusalem have you sold unto the Grecians, that you might remove them far from their border.

7 Behold, I will raise them out of the place whither you have sold them, and will return your recompence upon your own head:

8 And I will sell your sons and your daughters into the hand of the children of Judah, and they shall sell them to the Sabeans, to a people far off: for the YAHWEH has spoken *it*.

Elohim will be known in his judgment

9 Proclaim you this among the Gentiles; Prepare war, wake up the mighty men, let all the men of war draw near; let them come up:

10 Beat your plowshares into swords, and your pruninghooks into spears: let the weak say, I *am* strong. [\[Isa 2:4\];](#)

11 Assemble yourselves, and come, all you heathen, and gather yourselves together round about: thither cause thy mighty ones to come down, O YAHWEH.

12 Let the heathen be wakened, and come up to the valley of Jehoshaphat: for there will I sit to judge all the heathen round about.

13 Put you in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe: come, get you down; for the press is full, the fats overflow; for their wickedness *is* great. [Rev 14:15; \[Matt 13:39\];](#)

14 Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision: for the day of the YAHWEH *is* near in the valley of decision.

15 The sun and the moon shall be darkened, and the stars shall withdraw their shining. [Joel 2:10; Joel 2:31; \[Isa 13:10\]; \[Isa 24:23\]; \[Matt 24:29\]; \[Mark 13:24\]; \[Luke 21:25\];](#)

16 The YAHWEH also shall roar out of Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake: but the YAHWEH *will be* the hope of his people, and the strength of the children of Israel. [\[Jer 25:30\]; \[Amos 1:2\]; \[Nah 1:7\];](#)

17 So shall you know that I *am* the YAHWEH your Elohim dwelling in Zion, my holy mountain: then shall Jerusalem be holy, and there shall no strangers pass through her any more. [Rev 21:27; \[Zech 14:21\];](#)

His blessing upon the church

18 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the mountains shall drop down new wine, and the hills shall flow with milk, and all the rivers of Judah shall flow with waters, and a fountain shall come forth of the house of the YAHWEH, and shall water the valley of Shittim. [Amos 9:13; \[Zech 14:8\];](#)

19 Egypt shall be a desolation, and Edom shall be a desolate wilderness, for the violence *against* the children of Judah, because they have shed innocent blood in their land.

20 But Judah shall dwell for ever, and Jerusalem from generation to generation.

21 For I will cleanse their blood *that* I have not cleansed: for the YAHWEH dwelleth in Zion.

Amos

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#)

AMOS ONE

The time when Amos prophesied

1 The words of Amos, who was among the herdmen of Tekoa, which he saw concerning Israel in the days of Uzziah king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam the son of Joash king of Israel, two years before the earthquake. [Zech 14:5](#);

2 And he said, The YAHWEH will roar from Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem; and the habitations of the shepherds shall mourn, and the top of Carmel shall wither. [Jer 25:30](#); [Joel 3:16](#);

He shows Elohim's judgment upon Syria

3 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Damascus, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because they have threshed Gilead with threshing instruments of iron:

4 But I will send a fire into the house of Hazael, which shall devour the palaces of Benhadad. [\[Jer 49:27\]](#);

5 I will break also the bar of Damascus, and cut off the inhabitant from the plain of Aven, and him that holdeth the sceptre from the house of Eden: and the people of Syria shall go into captivity unto Kir, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 17:1](#); [Jer 49:23](#); [2Kgs 16:9](#);

upon the Philistines

6 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Gaza, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because they carried away captive the whole captivity, to deliver *them* up to Edom: [2Chr 21:16-17](#); [2Chr 28:18](#);

7 But I will send a fire on the wall of Gaza, which shall devour the palaces thereof:

8 And I will cut off the inhabitant from Ashdod, and him that holdeth the sceptre from Ashkelon, and I will turn mine hand against Ekron: and the remnant of the Philistines shall perish, saith the Lord GOD.

upon Tyrus

9 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Tyrus, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because they delivered up the whole captivity to Edom, and remembered not the brotherly covenant:

10 But I will send a fire on the wall of Tyrus, which shall devour the palaces thereof.

upon Edom

11 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Edom, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because he did pursue his brother with the sword, and did cast off all pity, and his anger did tear perpetually, and he kept his wrath for ever: [\[Obad 1:10\]](#);

12 But I will send a fire upon Teman, which shall devour the palaces of Bozrah.

upon Ammon

13 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of the children of Ammon, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because they have ripped up the women with child of Gilead, that they might enlarge their border: [\[Jer 49:1\]](#);

14 But I will kindle a fire in the wall of Rabbah, and it shall devour the palaces thereof, with shouting in the day of battle, with a tempest in the day of the whirlwind: [\[Jer 49:2\]](#); [\[Jer 49:27\]](#);

15 And their king shall go into captivity, he and his princes together, saith the YAHWEH.

AMOS TWO

Elohim's judgments upon Moab

1 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Moab, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because he burned the bones of the king of Edom into lime: [\[Isa 15:1\]](#);

2 But I will send a fire upon Moab, and it shall devour the palaces of Kerioth: and Moab shall die with tumult, with shouting, *and* with the sound of the trumpet:

3 And I will cut off the judge from the midst thereof, and will slay all the princes thereof with him, saith the YAHWEH.

upon Judah

4 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Judah, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because they have despised the law of the YAHWEH, and have not kept his commandments, and their lies caused them to err, after the which their fathers have walked:

5 But I will send a fire upon Judah, and it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem.

and upon Israel

6 Thus saith the YAHWEH; For three transgressions of Israel, and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof; because they sold the righteous for silver, and the poor for a pair of shoes; [Amos 8:6](#);

7 That pant after the dust of the earth on the head of the poor, and turn aside the way of the meek: and a man and his father will go in unto the *same* maid, to profane my holy name: [\[Mal 3:5\]](#);

8 And they lay *themselves* down upon clothes laid to pledge by every altar, and they drink the wine of the condemned *in* the house of their god.

Elohim complains of their ingratitude

9 Yet destroyed I the Amorite before them, whose height *was* like the height of the cedars, and he *was* strong as the oaks; yet I destroyed his fruit from above, and his roots from beneath. [Num 21:24](#); [Deut 2:31](#); [Josh 24:8](#);

10 Also I brought you up from the land of Egypt, and led you forty years through the wilderness, to possess the land of the Amorite. [Exod 12:51](#);

11 And I raised up of your sons for prophets, and of your young men for Nazarites. *Is it* not even thus, O you children of Israel? saith the YAHWEH.

12 But you gave the Nazarites wine to drink; and commanded the prophets, saying, Prophecy not. [Amos 7:12-13](#);

13 Behold, I am pressed under you, as a cart is pressed *that is* full of sheaves.

14 Therefore the flight shall perish from the swift, and the strong shall not strengthen his force, neither shall the mighty deliver himself: [\[Obad 1:9\]](#);

15 Neither shall he stand that handleth the bow; and *he that is* swift of foot shall not deliver *himself*: neither shall he that rideth the horse deliver himself.

16 And *he that is* courageous among the mighty shall flee away naked in that day, saith the YAHWEH. [\[Obad 1:9\]](#);

AMOS THREE

The necessity of Elohim's judgment against Israel

1 Hear this word that the YAHWEH has spoken against you, O children of Israel, against the whole family which I brought up from the land of Egypt, saying,

- 2** You only have I known of all the families of the earth: therefore I will punish you for all your iniquities.
- 3** Can two walk together, except they be agreed?
- 4** Will a lion roar in the forest, when he has no prey? will a young lion cry out of his den, if he have taken nothing?
- 5** Can a bird fall in a snare upon the earth, where no gin *is* for him? shall *one* take up a snare from the earth, and have taken nothing at all?
- 6** Shall a trumpet be blown in the city, and the people not be afraid? shall there be evil in a city, and the YAHWEH has not done *it*? [Isa 45:7](#); [Lam 3:37-38](#); [[Lam 3:38](#)]; [[Mic 1:12](#)];
- 7** Surely the Lord GOD will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets. [[Gen 18:17](#)];
- 8** The lion has roared, who will not fear? the Lord GOD has spoken, who can but prophesy?

The publication of it, with the causes thereof

- 9** Publish in the palaces at Ashdod, and in the palaces in the land of Egypt, and say, Assemble yourselves upon the mountains of Samaria, and behold the great tumults in the midst thereof, and the oppressed in the midst thereof.
- 10** For they know not to do right, saith the YAHWEH, who store up violence and robbery in their palaces.
- 11** Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD; An adversary *there shall be* even round about the land; and he shall bring down thy strength from you, and thy palaces shall be spoiled.
- 12** Thus saith the YAHWEH; As the shepherd taketh out of the mouth of the lion two legs, or a piece of an ear; so shall the children of Israel be taken out that dwell in Samaria in the corner of a bed, and in Damascus *in* a couch.
- 13** Hear you, and testify in the house of Jacob, saith the Lord GOD, the Elohim of hosts,
- 14** That in the day that I shall visit the transgressions of Israel upon him I will also visit the altars of Bethel: and the horns of the altar shall be cut off, and fall to the ground.
- 15** And I will smite the winter house with the summer house; and the houses of ivory shall perish, and the great houses shall have an end, saith the YAHWEH.

AMOS FOUR

He reproves Israel for oppression

1 Hear this word, you kine of Bashan, that *are* in the mountain of Samaria, which oppress the poor, which crush the needy, which say to their masters, Bring, and let us drink.

2 The Lord GOD has sworn by his holiness, that, lo, the days shall come upon you, that he will take you away with hooks, and your posterity with fishhooks.

3 And you shall go out at the breaches, every *cow at that which is* before her; and you shall cast *them* into the palace, saith the YAHWEH.

for idolatry

4 Come to Bethel, and transgress; at Gilgal multiply transgression; and bring your sacrifices every morning, *and* your tithes after three years: [Hos 12:11](#); [\[Amos 5:5\]](#);

5 And offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving with leaven, and proclaim *and* publish the free offerings: for this liketh you, O you children of Israel, saith the Lord GOD. [Lev 2:1](#); [Lev 2:15](#); [Lev 7:13](#);

and for their incorrigibleness

6 And I also have given you cleanness of teeth in all your cities, and want of bread in all your places: yet have you not returned unto me, saith the YAHWEH.

7 And also I have withholden the rain from you, when *there were* yet three months to the harvest: and I caused it to rain upon one city, and caused it not to rain upon another city: one piece was rained upon, and the piece whereupon it rained not withered.

8 So two *or* three cities wandered unto one city, to drink water; but they were not satisfied: yet have you not returned unto me, saith the YAHWEH.

9 I have smitten you with blasting and mildew: when your gardens and your vineyards and your fig trees and your olive trees increased, the palmerworm devoured *them*: yet have you not returned unto me, saith the YAHWEH. [Deut 28:22](#); [Joel 1:4](#); [Joel 2:25](#);

10 I have sent among you the pestilence after the manner of Egypt: your young men have I slain with the sword, and have taken away your horses; and I have made the stink of your camps to come up unto your nostrils: yet have you not returned unto me, saith the YAHWEH.

11 I have overthrown *some* of you, as Elohim overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah, and you were as a firebrand plucked out of the burning: yet have you not returned unto me, saith the YAHWEH. [Gen 19:24](#); [\[Jer 49:18\]](#); [\[Luke 17:29\]](#); [\[2Pet 2:6\]](#); [\[Jude 1:7\]](#);

12 Therefore thus will I do unto you, O Israel: *and* because I will do this unto you, prepare to meet thy Elohim, O Israel.

13 For, lo, he that formeth the mountains, and createth the wind, and declareth unto man what *is* his thought, that maketh the morning darkness, and treadeth upon the high places of the earth, The YAHWEH, The Elohim of hosts, *is* his name. [Nah 1:3](#);

AMOS FIVE

A lamentation for Israel

1 Hear you this word which I take up against you, *even* a lamentation, O house of Israel.

2 The virgin of Israel is fallen; she shall no more rise: she is forsaken upon her land; *there is* none to raise her up. [\[Prov 24:16\]](#);

3 For thus saith the Lord GOD; The city that went out *by* a thousand shall leave a hundred, and that which went forth *by* a hundred shall leave ten, to the house of Israel.

An exhortation to repentance

4 For thus saith the YAHWEH unto the house of Israel, Seek you me, and you shall live:

5 But seek not Bethel, nor enter into Gilgal, and pass not to Beersheba: for Gilgal shall surely go into captivity, and Bethel shall come to nought. [Amos 4:4](#); [\[Amos 8:14\]](#);

6 Seek the YAHWEH, and you shall live; lest he break out like fire in the house of Joseph, and devour *it*, and *there be* none to quench *it* in Bethel.

7 You who turn judgment to wormwood, and leave off righteousness in the earth, [\[Amos 6:12\]](#); [\[Mic 3:9\]](#);

8 *Seek him* that maketh the seven stars and Orion, and turneth the shadow of death into the morning, and maketh the day dark with night: that calleth for the waters of the sea, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth: The YAHWEH *is* his name: [Job 9:9](#); [Job 38:31](#); [Amos 9:6](#);

9 That strengtheneth the spoiled against the strong, so that the spoiled shall come against the fortress.

10 They hate him that rebuketh in the gate, and they abhor him that speaketh uprightly.

11 Forasmuch therefore as your treading *is* upon the poor, and you take from him burdens of wheat: you have built houses of hewn stone, but you shall not dwell in them; you have planted pleasant vineyards, but you shall not drink wine of them. [Zeph 1:13](#);

12 For I know your manifold transgressions and your mighty sins: they afflict the just, they take a bribe, and they turn aside the poor in the gate *from their right*.

13 Therefore the prudent shall keep silence in that time; for it *is* an evil time. [\[Mic 2:3\]](#);

14 Seek good, and not evil, that you may live: and so the YAHWEH, the Elohim of hosts, shall be with you, as you have spoken.

15 Hate the evil, and love the good, and establish judgment in the gate: it may be that the YAHWEH Elohim of hosts will be gracious unto the remnant of Joseph. [Ps 34:14](#); [Ps 97:10](#); [Rom 12:9](#); [\[Isa 1:16\]](#);

16 Therefore the YAHWEH, the Elohim of hosts, the Lord, saith thus; Wailing *shall be* in all streets; and they shall say in all the highways, Alas! alas! and they shall call the husbandman to mourning, and such as are skilful of lamentation to wailing.

17 And in all vineyards *shall be* wailing: for I will pass through you, saith the YAHWEH.

18 Woe unto you that desire the day of the YAHWEH! to what end *is* it for you? the day of the YAHWEH *is* darkness, and not light. [Isa 5:19](#); [Jer 30:7](#); [Joel 2:2](#); [Zeph 1:15](#); [\[Joel 2:11\]](#); [\[Amos 6:3\]](#);

19 As if a man did flee from a lion, and a bear met him; or went into the house, and leaned his hand on the wall, and a serpent bit him. [\[Isa 24:18\]](#);

20 *Shall* not the day of the YAHWEH *be* darkness, and not light? even very dark, and no brightness in it?

Elohim rejects their hypocritical service

21 I hate, I despise your feast days, and I will not smell in your solemn assemblies. [Isa 1:11](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [\[Prov 15:8\]](#); [\[Prov 21:27\]](#); [\[Jer 7:21\]](#); [\[Mal 1:10\]](#); [\[Heb 10:5\]](#);

22 Though you offer me burnt offerings and your meat offerings, I will not accept *them*: neither will I regard the peace offerings of your fat beasts. [\[Isa 1:11\]](#);

23 Take you away from me the noise of thy songs; for I will not hear the melody of thy viols.

24 But let judgment run down as waters, and righteousness as a mighty stream.

25 Have you offered unto me sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years, O house of Israel? [Acts 7:42](#);

26 But you have borne the tabernacle of your Moloch and Chiun your images, the star of your god, which you made to yourselves. [\[Acts 7:43\]](#);

27 Therefore will I cause you to go into captivity beyond Damascus, saith the YAHWEH, whose name *is* The Elohim of hosts.

AMOS SIX

The wantonness of Israel

- 1** Woe to them *that are* at ease in Zion, and trust in the mountain of Samaria, *which are* named chief of the nations, to whom the house of Israel came! [Exod 19:5](#); [Jer 2:3](#); [\[Luke 6:24\]](#); [\[Jas 5:1\]](#);
- 2** Pass you unto Calneh, and see; and from thence go you to Hamath the great: then go down to Gath of the Philistines: *be they* better than these kingdoms? or their border greater than your border?
- 3** You that put far away the evil day, and cause the seat of violence to come near; [Amos 5:18](#); [Ezek 12:27](#);
- 4** That lie upon beds of ivory, and stretch themselves upon their couches, and eat the lambs out of the flock, and the calves out of the midst of the stall; [\[Ecc 10:16\]](#);
- 5** That chant to the sound of the viol, *and* invent to themselves instruments of musick, like David; [Isa 5:12](#);
- 6** That drink wine in bowls, and anoint themselves with the chief ointments: but they are not grieved for the affliction of Joseph. [Isa 5:11](#); [Isa 5:12](#);

shall be plagued with desolation

- 7** Therefore now shall they go captive with the first that go captive, and the banquet of them that stretched themselves shall be removed. [Isa 5:13](#);
- 8** The Lord GOD has sworn by himself, saith the YAHWEH the Elohim of hosts, I abhor the excellency of Jacob, and hate his palaces: therefore will I deliver up the city with all that is therein. [\[Jer 51:14\]](#); [\[Luke 6:24\]](#);
- 9** And it shall come to pass, if there remain ten men in one house, that they shall die.
- 10** And a man's uncle shall take him up, and he that burneth him, to bring out the bones out of the house, and shall say unto him that *is* by the sides of the house, *Is there* yet *any* with you? and he shall say, No. Then shall he say, Hold thy tongue: for we may not make mention of the name of the YAHWEH.
- 11** For, behold, the YAHWEH commandeth, and he will smite the great house with breaches, and the little house with clefts.

and their incorrigibleness shall end in affliction

- 12** Shall horses run upon the rock? will *one* plow *there* with oxen? for you have turned judgment into gall, and the fruit of righteousness into hemlock: [Amos 5:7](#); [\[Mic 3:9\]](#);
- 13** You which rejoice in a thing of nought, which say, Have we not taken to us horns by our own strength?
- 14** But, behold, I will raise up against you a nation, O house of Israel, saith the YAHWEH the Elohim of hosts; and they shall afflict you from the entering in of Hemath unto the river of the wilderness.

AMOS SEVEN

The judgments of the grasshoppers

- 1** Thus has the Lord GOD showed unto me; and, behold, he formed grasshoppers in the beginning of the shooting up of the latter growth; and, lo, *it was* the latter growth after the king's mowings.
- 2** And it came to pass, *that* when they had made an end of eating the grass of the land, then I said, O Lord GOD, forgive, I beseech you: by whom shall Jacob arise? for he *is* small.
- 3** The YAHWEH repented for this: It shall not be, saith the YAHWEH.

and of the fire are diverted by the prayer of Amos

4 Thus has the Lord GOD showed unto me: and, behold, the Lord GOD called to contend by fire, and it devoured the great deep, and did eat up a part.

5 Then said I, O Lord GOD, cease, I beseech you: by whom shall Jacob arise? for he *is* small.

6 The YAHWEH repented for this: This also shall not be, saith the Lord GOD.

By the wall of a plumbline is signified the rejection of Israel

7 Thus he showed me: and, behold, the Lord stood upon a wall *made* by a plumbline, with a plumbline in his hand.

8 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Amos, what seest you? And I said, A plumbline. Then said the Lord, Behold, I will set a plumbline in the midst of my people Israel: I will not again pass by them any more:

9 And the high places of Isaac shall be desolate, and the sanctuaries of Israel shall be laid waste; and I will rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword.

Amaziah complains of Amos

10 Then Amaziah the priest of Bethel sent to Jeroboam king of Israel, saying, Amos has conspired against you in the midst of the house of Israel: the land is not able to bear all his words. [\[1Kgs 18:17\];](#)

11 For thus Amos saith, Jeroboam shall die by the sword, and Israel shall surely be led away captive out of their own land.

12 Also Amaziah said unto Amos, O you seer, go, flee you away into the land of Judah, and there eat bread, and prophesy there: [\[Amos 2:12\];](#)

13 But prophesy not again any more at Bethel: for it *is* the king's chapel, and it *is* the king's court.

Amos shows his calling

14 Then answered Amos, and said to Amaziah, I *was* no prophet, neither *was* I a prophet's son; but I *was* a herdman, and a gatherer of sycomore fruit:

15 And the YAHWEH took me as I followed the flock, and the YAHWEH said unto me, Go, prophesy unto my people Israel.

and Amaziah's judgment

16 Now therefore hear you the word of the YAHWEH: you sayest, Prophesy not against Israel, and drop not *thy word* against the house of Isaac. [Ezek 21:2; \[Mic 2:6\];](#)

17 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Thy wife shall be a harlot in the city, and thy sons and thy daughters shall fall by the sword, and thy land shall be divided by line; and you shall die in a polluted land: and Israel shall surely go into captivity forth of his land.

AMOS EIGHT

By a basket of summer fruit is shown the approach of Israel's end

1 Thus has the Lord GOD showed unto me: and behold a basket of summer fruit.

2 And he said, Amos, what seest you? And I said, A basket of summer fruit. Then said the YAHWEH unto me, The end is come upon my people of Israel; I will not again pass by them any more.

3 And the songs of the temple shall be howlings in that day, saith the Lord GOD: *there shall be* many dead bodies in every place; they shall cast *them* forth with silence.

Oppression is reproved

- 4** Hear this, O you that swallow up the needy, even to make the poor of the land to fail,
- 5** Saying, When will the new moon be gone, that we may sell corn? and the Sabbath, that we may set forth wheat, making the ephah small, and the shekel great, and falsifying the balances by deceit? [Hos 12:7](#);
- 6** That we may buy the poor for silver, and the needy for a pair of shoes; yes, and sell the refuse of the wheat? [Amos 2:6](#);
- 7** The YAHWEH has sworn by the excellency of Jacob, Surely I will never forget any of their works.
- 8** Shall not the land tremble for this, and every one mourn that dwelleth therein? and it shall rise up wholly as a flood; and it shall be cast out and drowned, as *by* the flood of Egypt.
- 9** And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord GOD, that I will cause the sun to go down at noon, and I will darken the earth in the clear day: [\[Jer 15:9\]](#); [\[Mic 3:6\]](#);
- 10** And I will turn your feasts into mourning, and all your songs into lamentation; and I will bring up sackcloth upon all loins, and baldness upon every head; and I will make it as the mourning of an only *son*, and the end thereof as a bitter day.

A famine of the word of Elohim threatened

- 11** Behold, the days come, saith the Lord GOD, that I will send a famine in the land, not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of the YAHWEH:
- 12** And they shall wander from sea to sea, and from the north even to the east, they shall run to and fro to seek the word of the YAHWEH, and shall not find *it*.
- 13** In that day shall the fair virgins and young men faint for thirst.
- 14** They that swear by the sin of Samaria, and say, Thy god, O Dan, liveth; and, The manner of Beersheba liveth; even they shall fall, and never rise up again. [Amos 5:5](#); [\[Prov 24:16\]](#);

The certainty of the desolation

1 I saw the Lord standing upon the altar: and he said, Smite the lintel of the door, that the posts may shake: and cut them in the head, all of them; and I will slay the last of them with the sword: he that fleeth of them shall not flee away, and he that escapeth of them shall not be delivered.

2 Though they dig into hell, thence shall mine hand take them; though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down: [Ps 138:8](#); [\[Job 34:22\]](#); [\[Ps 139:8\]](#); [\[Jer 23:24\]](#);

3 And though they hide themselves in the top of Carmel, I will search and take them out thence; and though they be hid from my sight in the bottom of the sea, thence will I command the serpent, and he shall bite them:

4 And though they go into captivity before their enemies, thence will I command the sword, and it shall slay them: and I will set mine eyes upon them for evil, and not for good. [Jer 44:11](#);

5 And the Lord GOD of hosts *is* he that toucheth the land, and it shall melt, and all that dwell therein shall mourn: and it shall rise up wholly like a flood; and shall be drowned, as *by* the flood of Egypt. [\[Mic 1:4\]](#);

6 *It is* he that buildeth his stories in the heaven, and has founded his troop in the earth; he that calleth for the waters of the sea, and poureth them out upon the face of the earth: The YAHWEH *is* his name. [Ps 104:3](#); [Ps 104:13](#); [Amos 5:8](#);

7 *Are* you not as children of the Ethiopians unto me, O children of Israel? saith the YAHWEH. Have not I brought up Israel out of the land of Egypt? and the Philistines from Caphtor, and the Syrians from Kir?

8 Behold, the eyes of the Lord GOD *are* upon the sinful kingdom, and I will destroy it from off the face of the earth; saving that I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob, saith the YAHWEH.

9 For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as grain is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth.

10 All the sinners of my people shall die by the sword, which say, The evil shall not overtake nor prevent us.

The restoring of the tabernacle of David

11 In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen, and close up the breaches thereof; and I will raise up his ruins, and I will build it as in the days of old: [Acts 15:16](#); [\[Mic 7:11\]](#);

12 That they may possess the remnant of Edom, and of all the heathen, which are called by my name, saith the YAHWEH that doeth this.

13 Behold, the days come, saith the YAHWEH, that the plowman shall overtake the reaper, and the treader of grapes him that soweth seed; and the mountains shall drop sweet wine, and all the hills shall melt. [Joel 3:18](#);

14 And I will bring again the captivity of my people of Israel, and they shall build the waste cities, and inhabit *them*; and they shall plant vineyards, and drink the wine thereof; they shall also make gardens, and eat the fruit of them.

15 And I will plant them upon their land, and they shall no more be pulled up out of their land which I have given them, saith the YAHWEH thy Elohim. [Jer 32:41](#);

Obadiah

OBADIAH ONE

The destruction of Edom

1 The vision of Obadiah. Thus saith the Lord GOD concerning Edom; We have heard a rumour from the YAHWEH, and an ambassador is sent among the heathen, Arise you, and let us rise up against her in battle. [Jer 49:14](#);

2 Behold, I have made you small among the heathen: you are greatly despised.

for their pride

3 The pride of thine heart has deceived you, you that dwellest in the clefts of the rock, whose habitation *is* high; that saith in his heart, Who shall bring me down to the ground?

4 Though you exalt *thyself* as the eagle, and though you set thy nest among the stars, thence will I bring you down, saith the YAHWEH. [Jer 49:16](#); [\[Job 39:27\]](#);

5 If thieves came to you, if robbers by night, (how are you cut off!) would they not have stolen till they had enough? if the grapegatherers came to you, would they not leave *some* grapes? [Jer 49:9](#);

6 How are *the things* of Esau searched out! *how* are his hidden things sought up!

7 All the men of thy confederacy have brought you *even* to the border: the men that were at peace with you have deceived you, *and* prevailed against you; *they that eat* thy bread have laid a wound under you: *there is* none understanding in him.

8 Shall I not in that day, saith the YAHWEH, even destroy the wise *men* out of Edom, and understanding out of the mount of Esau? [Jer 29:14](#); [Jer 49:7](#); [\[Isa 29:14\]](#);

9 And thy mighty *men*, O Teman, shall be dismayed, to the end that every one of the mount of Esau may be cut off by slaughter. [Amos 2:14](#); [Amos 2:16](#);

and for their wrong unto Jacob

10 For *thy* violence against thy brother Jacob shame shall cover you, and you shall be cut off for ever. [Gen 27:41](#); [Ezek 35:5](#); [Amos 1:11](#); [\[Num 20:14\]](#);

11 In the day that you stoodest on the other side, in the day that the strangers carried away captive his forces, and foreigners entered into his gates, and cast lots upon Jerusalem, even you *were* as one of them. [Ps 137:7](#);

12 But you should not have looked on the day of thy brother in the day that he became a stranger; neither should you have rejoiced over the children of Judah in the day of their destruction; neither should you have spoken proudly in the day of distress. [\[Num 20:14\]](#);

13 You should not have entered into the gate of my people in the day of their calamity; yes, you should not have looked on their affliction in the day of their calamity, nor have laid *hands* on their substance in the day of their calamity;

14 Neither should you have stood in the crossway, to cut off those of his that did escape; neither should you have delivered up those of his that did remain in the day of distress.

15 For the day of the YAHWEH *is* near upon all the heathen: as you have done, it shall be done unto you: thy reward shall return upon thine own head. [Ezek 35:15](#);

16 For as you have drunk upon my holy mountain, *so* shall all the heathen drink continually, yes, they shall drink, and they shall swallow down, and they shall be as though they had not been.

The salvation and victory of Jacob

17 But upon mount Zion shall be deliverance, and there shall be holiness; and the house of Jacob shall possess their possessions. [\[Joel 2:32\];](#)

18 And the house of Jacob shall be a fire, and the house of Joseph a flame, and the house of Esau for stubble, and they shall kindle in them, and devour them; and there shall not be *any* remaining of the house of Esau; for the YAHWEH has spoken *it*. [\[Mal 4:1\];](#)

19 And *they of* the south shall possess the mount of Esau; and *they of* the plain the Philistines: and they shall possess the fields of Ephraim, and the fields of Samaria: and Benjamin *shall possess* Gilead.

20 And the captivity of this host of the children of Israel *shall possess* that of the Canaanites, *even* unto Zarephas; and the captivity of Jerusalem, which *is* in Sepharad, shall possess the cities of the south.

21 And saviours shall come up on mount Zion to judge the mount of Esau; and the kingdom shall be the YAHWEH'S.

Jonah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#)

JONAH ONE

Jonah, sent to Nineveh, flees to Tarshish

1 Now the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jonah the son of Amittai, saying, [\[2Kgs 14:25\]](#);

2 Arise, go to Nineveh, that great city, and cry against it; for their wickedness is come up before me. [Gen 10:11-12](#); [Jonah 3:3](#);

3 But Jonah rose up to flee unto Tarshish from the presence of the YAHWEH, and went down to Joppa; and he found a ship going to Tarshish: so he paid the fare thereof, and went down into it, to go with them unto Tarshish from the presence of the YAHWEH.

He is exposed by a tempest

4 But the YAHWEH sent out a great wind into the sea, and there was a mighty tempest in the sea, so that the ship was like to be broken.

5 Then the mariners were afraid, and cried every man unto his god, and cast forth the wares that *were* in the ship into the sea, to lighten *it* of them. But Jonah was gone down into the sides of the ship; and he lay, and was fast asleep.

6 So the shipmaster came to him, and said unto him, What meanest you, O sleeper? arise, call upon thy Elohim, if so be that Elohim will think upon us, that we perish not.

7 And they said every one to his fellow, Come, and let us cast lots, that we may know for whose cause this evil *is* upon us. So they cast lots, and the lot fell upon Jonah.

8 Then said they unto him, Tell us, we pray you, for whose cause this evil *is* upon us; What *is* thine occupation? and whence come you? what *is* thy country? and of what people are you?

9 And he said unto them, I *am* an Hebrew; and I fear the YAHWEH, the Elohim of heaven, which has made the sea and the dry *land*.

10 Then were the men exceedingly afraid, and said unto him, Why have you done this? For the men knew that he fled from the presence of the YAHWEH, because he had told them.

thrown into the sea

11 Then said they unto him, What shall we do unto you, that the sea may be calm unto us? for the sea wrought, and was tempestuous.

12 And he said unto them, Take me up, and cast me forth into the sea; so shall the sea be calm unto you: for I know that for my sake this great tempest *is* upon you.

13 Nevertheless the men rowed hard to bring *it* to the land; but they could not: for the sea wrought, and was tempestuous against them.

14 Wherefore they cried unto the YAHWEH, and said, We beseech you, O YAHWEH, we beseech you, let us not perish for this man's life, and lay not upon us innocent blood: for you, O YAHWEH, have done as it pleased you.

15 So they took up Jonah, and cast him forth into the sea: and the sea ceased from her raging.

16 Then the men feared the YAHWEH exceedingly, and offered a sacrifice unto the YAHWEH, and made vows.

and swallowed by a fish

17 Now the YAHWEH had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah. And Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights. [Matt 12:40](#); [Matt 16:4](#); [Luke 11:30](#); [\[Luke 11:29\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:4\]](#);

JONAH TWO

The prayer of Jonah

- 1** Then Jonah prayed unto the YAHWEH his Elohim out of the fish's belly,
- 2** And said, I cried by reason of mine affliction unto the YAHWEH, and he heard me; out of the belly of hell cried I, *and* you heardest my voice. [Ps 120:1](#);
- 3** For you hadst cast me into the deep, in the midst of the seas; and the floods compassed me about: all thy billows and thy waves passed over me. [Ps 42:7](#);
- 4** Then I said, I am cast out of thy sight; yet I will look again toward thy holy temple.
- 5** The waters compassed me about, *even* to the being: the depth closed me round about, the weeds were wrapped about my head.
- 6** I went down to the bottoms of the mountains; the earth with her bars *was* about me for ever: yet have you brought up my life from corruption, O YAHWEH my Elohim.
- 7** When my being fainted within me I remembered the YAHWEH: and my prayer came in unto you, into thine holy temple.
- 8** They that observe lying vanities forsake their own mercy.
- 9** But I will sacrifice unto you with the voice of thanksgiving; I will pay *that* that I have vowed. Salvation *is* of the YAHWEH. [Ps 50:14](#); [Ps 50:23](#); [Ps 116:17](#); [Hos 14:2](#); [Heb 13:15](#); [Ps 3:8](#);

He is delivered out of the belly of the fish

- 10** And the YAHWEH spoke unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry *land*. [\[Matt 12:40\]](#); [\[Luke 11:29\]](#);

Jonah, sent again, preaches to the Ninevites

- 1** And the word of the YAHWEH came unto Jonah the second time, saying,
2 Arise, go unto Nineveh, that great city, and preach unto it the preaching that I bid you.
3 So Jonah arose, and went unto Nineveh, according to the word of the YAHWEH. Now Nineveh was an exceeding great city of three days' journey. [\[Jonah 1:2\];](#)
4 And Jonah began to enter into the city a day's journey, and he cried, and said, yet forty days, and Nineveh shall be overthrown.

Upon their repentance

- 5** So the people of Nineveh believed Elohim, and proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them. [Matt 12:41; Luke 11:32;](#)
6 For word came unto the king of Nineveh, and he arose from his throne, and he laid his robe from him, and covered *him* with sackcloth, and sat in ashes.
7 And he caused *it* to be proclaimed and published through Nineveh by the decree of the king and his nobles, saying, Let neither man nor beast, herd nor flock, taste any thing: let them not feed, nor drink water:
8 But let man and beast be covered with sackcloth, and cry mightily unto Elohim: yes, let them turn every one from his evil way, and from the violence that *is* in their hands. [\[Jer 25:5\];](#)
9 Who can tell *if* Elohim will turn and repent, and turn away from his fierce anger, that we perish not? [Joel 2:14;](#)

Elohim repents

- 10** And Elohim saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and Elohim relented of the evil, that he had said that he would do unto them; and he did *it* not.

Jonah repining at Elohim's mercy

1 But it displeased Jonah exceedingly, and he was very angry.

2 And he prayed unto the YAHWEH, and said, I pray you, O YAHWEH, *was* not this my saying, when I was yet in my country? Therefore I fled before unto Tarshish: for I knew that you are a gracious Elohim, and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repentest you of the evil. [Exod 34:6](#); [Ps 86:5](#); [Joel 2:13](#); [\[Num 14:18\]](#);

3 Therefore now, O YAHWEH, take, I beseech you, my life from me; for *it is* better for me to die than to live.

is reproved by the type of a gourd

4 Then said the YAHWEH, Is it right for you to be angry?

5 So Jonah went out of the city, and sat on the east side of the city, and there made him a booth, and sat under it in the shadow, till he might see what would become of the city.

6 And the YAHWEH Elohim prepared a gourd, and made *it* to come up over Jonah, that it might be a shadow over his head, to deliver him from his grief. So Jonah was exceeding glad of the gourd.

7 But Elohim prepared a worm when the morning rose the next day, and it smote the gourd that it withered.

8 And it came to pass, when the sun did arise, that Elohim prepared a vehement east wind; and the sun beat upon the head of Jonah, that he fainted, and wished in himself to die, and said, *It is* better for me to die than to live.

9 And Elohim said to Jonah, Is it right for you to be angry about the gourd? And he said, I do well to be angry, *even* unto death.

10 Then said the YAHWEH, you have had pity on the gourd, for the which you have not laboured, neither madest it grow; which came up in a night, and perished in a night:

11 And should not I spare Nineveh, that great city, wherein are more than sixscore thousand persons that cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand; and *also* much cattle?

Micah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#)

MICAH ONE

The time when Micah prophesied

1 The word of the YAHWEH that came to Micah the Morasthite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, *and* Hezekiah, kings of Judah, which he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem. [[Jer 26:18](#)];

He shows the wrath of Elohim against Jacob for idolatry

2 Hear, all you people; hearken, O earth, and all that therein is: and let the Lord GOD be witness against you, the Lord from his holy temple. [Deut 32:1](#); [Isa 1:2](#);

3 For, behold, the YAHWEH cometh forth out of his place, and will come down, and tread upon the high places of the earth. [Isa 26:21](#); [Ps 115:3](#); [Deut 32:13](#); [Deut 33:29](#);

4 And the mountains shall be molten under him, and the valleys shall be cleft, as wax before the fire, *and* as the waters *that are* poured down a steep place. [Ps 97:5](#); [Amos 9:5](#);

5 For the transgression of Jacob *is* all this, and for the sins of the house of Israel. What *is* the transgression of Jacob? *is it* not Samaria? and what *are* the high places of Judah? *are they* not Jerusalem?

6 Therefore I will make Samaria as a heap of the field, *and* as plantings of a vineyard: and I will pour down the stones thereof into the valley, and I will discover the foundations thereof.

7 And all the graven images thereof shall be beaten to pieces, and all the hires thereof shall be burned with the fire, and all the idols thereof will I lay desolate: for she gathered *it* of the hire of a harlot, and they shall return to the hire of a harlot.

8 Therefore I will wail and howl, I will go stripped and naked: I will make a wailing like the dragons, and mourning as the owls. [Job 30:29](#);

9 For her wound *is* incurable; for it is come unto Judah; he is come unto the gate of my people, *even* to Jerusalem.

He exhorts to mourning

10 Declare you *it* not at Gath, weep you not at all: in the house of Aphrah roll thyself in the dust. [2Sam 1:20](#); [Jer 6:26](#);

11 Pass you away, you inhabitant of Saphir, having thy shame naked: the inhabitant of Zaanan came not forth in the mourning of Bethazel; he shall receive of you his standing. [Isa 47:3](#);

12 For the inhabitant of Maroth waited carefully for good: but evil came down from the YAHWEH unto the gate of Jerusalem. [Amos 3:6](#);

13 O you inhabitant of Lachish, bind the chariot to the swift beast: she *is* the beginning of the sin to the daughter of Zion: for the transgressions of Israel were found in you.

14 Therefore shall you give presents to Moreshethgath: the houses of Achzib *shall be* a lie to the kings of Israel.

15 Yet will I bring a heir unto you, O inhabitant of Mareshah: he shall come unto Adullam the glory of Israel.

16 Make you bald, and poll you for thy delicate children; enlarge thy baldness as the eagle; for they are gone into captivity from you.

MICAH TWO

Against oppression

- 1** Woe to them that devise iniquity, and work evil upon their beds! when the morning is light, they practise it, because it is in the power of their hand. [Mic 7:3];
- 2** And they covet fields, and take *them* by violence; and houses, and take *them* away: so they oppress a man and his house, even a man and his heritage. Isa 5:8;
- 3** Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; Behold, against this family do I devise an evil, from which you shall not remove your necks; neither shall you go haughtily: for this time *is* evil. Amos 5:13;

A lamentation

- 4** In that day shall *one* take up a parable against you, and lament with a doleful lamentation, *and* say, We be utterly spoiled: he has changed the portion of my people: how has he removed *it* from me! turning away he has divided our fields.
- 5** Therefore you shall have none that shall cast a cord by lot in the congregation of the YAHWEH. Deut 32:8-9;
- 6** Prophecy you not, *say they to them that* prophecy: they shall not prophecy to them, *that* they shall not take shame. Isa 30:10; Amos 7:16;

A reproof of injustice and idolatry

- 7** O you *that are* named the house of Jacob, is the spirit of the YAHWEH straitened? *are* these his doings? do not my words do good to him that walketh uprightly?
- 8** Even of late my people are risen up as an enemy: you pull off the robe with the garment from them that pass by securely as men averse from war.
- 9** The women of my people have you cast out from their pleasant houses; from their children have you taken away my glory for ever.
- 10** Arise you, and depart; for this *is* not *your* rest: because it is polluted, it shall destroy *you*, even with a sore destruction.
- 11** If a man walking in the spirit and falsehood do lie, *saying*, I will prophecy unto you of wine and of strong drink; he shall even be the prophet of this people. [Mic 3:5];

A promise of restoring Jacob

- 12** I will surely assemble, O Jacob, all of you; I will surely gather the remnant of Israel; I will put them together as the sheep of Bozrah, as the flock in the midst of their fold: they shall make great noise by reason of *the multitude of* men.
- 13** The breaker is come up before them: they have broken up, and have passed through the gate, and are gone out by it: and their king shall pass before them, and the YAHWEH on the head of them.

MICAH THREE

The cruelty of the princes

- 1** And I said, Hear, I pray you, O heads of Jacob, and you princes of the house of Israel; *Is it* not for you to know judgment?
- 2** Who hate the good, and love the evil; who pluck off their skin from off them, and their flesh from off their bones;
- 3** Who also eat the flesh of my people, and flay their skin from off them; and they break their bones, and chop them in pieces, as for the pot, and as flesh within the caldron.

4 Then shall they cry unto the YAHWEH, but he will not hear them: he will even hide his face from them at that time, as they have behaved themselves ill in their doings. [Job 27:9]; [Prov 1:27]; [Jer 11:11]; [Jer 14:12]; [John 9:31];

The falsehood of the prophets

5 Thus saith the YAHWEH concerning the prophets that make my people err, that bite with their teeth, and cry, Peace; and he that puts not into their mouths, they even prepare war against him. Mic 2:11; [Ezek 13:19];

6 Therefore night *shall be* unto you, that you shall not have a vision; and it shall be dark unto you, that you shall not divine; and the sun shall go down over the prophets, and the day shall be dark over them. Jer 15:9; Amos 8:9; Joel 2:10;

7 Then shall the seers be ashamed, and the diviners confounded: yes, they shall all cover their lips; for *there is* no answer of Elohim.

The ill-grounded security of them both

8 But truly I am full of power by the spirit of the YAHWEH, and of judgment, and of might, to declare unto Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin. [Ezek 3:8];

9 Hear this, I pray you, you heads of the house of Jacob, and princes of the house of Israel, that abhor judgment, and pervert all equity. Amos 5:7; Amos 6:12;

10 They build up Zion with blood, and Jerusalem with iniquity. Ezek 22:27; Zeph 3:3;

11 The heads thereof judge for reward, and the priests thereof teach for hire, and the prophets thereof divine for money: yet will they lean upon the YAHWEH, and say, *Is* not the YAHWEH among us? none evil can come upon us. [Ezek 22:27]; [Mic 7:3];

12 Therefore shall Zion for your sake be plowed *as* a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house as the high places of the forest. [Jer 26:18]; [Matt 23:38]; [Matt 24:2]; [Mark 13:2]; [Luke 13:35]; [Luke 19:44]; [Luke 21:6];

MICAH FOUR

The glory

1 But in the last days it shall come to pass, *that* the mountain of the house of the YAHWEH shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it. Isa 2:2; [Hos 3:5];

2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the YAHWEH, and to the house of the Elohim of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the YAHWEH from Jerusalem. [Jer 31:6];

3 And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

4 But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make *them* afraid: for the mouth of the YAHWEH of hosts has spoken *it*. 1Kgs 4:25;

and the peace of the Messiah's kingdom

5 For all people will walk every one in the name of his god, and we will walk in the name of the YAHWEH our Elohim for ever and ever.

The restoration

6 In that day, saith the YAHWEH, will I assemble her that halteth, and I will gather her that is driven out, and her that I have afflicted; [Deut 30:3-5](#);

7 And I will make her that halted a remnant, and her that was cast far off a strong nation: and the YAHWEH shall reign over them in mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever. [Zeph 3:19](#); [Dan 7:14](#); [Luke 1:33](#); [\[Isa 16:5\]](#); [\[Dan 2:44\]](#); [\[John 12:34\]](#);

8 And you, O tower of the flock, the strong hold of the daughter of Zion, unto you shall it come, even the first dominion; the kingdom shall come to the daughter of Jerusalem.

9 Now why dost you cry out aloud? *is there* no king in you? is thy counsellor perished? for pangs have taken you as a woman in travail. [Jer 8:19](#);

10 Be in pain, and labour to bring forth, O daughter of Zion, like a woman in travail: for now shall you go forth out of the city, and you shall dwell in the field, and you shall go *even* to Babylon; there shall you be delivered; there the YAHWEH shall redeem you from the hand of thine enemies.

and victory of the church

11 Now also many nations are gathered against you, that say, Let her be defiled, and let our eye look upon Zion.

12 But they know not the thoughts of the YAHWEH, neither understand they his counsel: for he shall gather them as the sheaves into the floor. [Jer 51:33](#);

13 Arise and thresh, O daughter of Zion: for I will make thine horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass: and you shall beat in pieces many people: and I will consecrate their gain unto the YAHWEH, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. [Zech 4:14](#); [Zech 6:5](#);

MICAH FIVE

The birth of the Messiah

1 Now gather thyself in troops, O daughter of troops: he has laid siege against us: they shall smite the judge of Israel with a rod upon the cheek.

2 But you, Bethlehem Ephratah, though you be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of you shall he come forth unto me *that is* to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth *have been* from of old, from everlasting. [Matt 2:6](#); [John 7:42](#); [\[Luke 2:4\]](#);

3 Therefore will he give them up, until the time *that* she which travaileth has brought forth: then the remnant of his brethren shall return unto the children of Israel.

His kingdom

4 And he shall stand and feed in the strength of the YAHWEH, in the majesty of the name of the YAHWEH his Elohim; and they shall abide: for now shall he be great unto the ends of the earth. [\[Mic 7:14\]](#);

5 And this *man* shall be the peace, when the Assyrian shall come into our land: and when he shall tread in our palaces, then shall we raise against him seven shepherds, and eight principal men. [\[Eph 2:14\]](#);

6 And they shall waste the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod in the entrances thereof: thus shall he deliver *us* from the Assyrian, when he cometh into our land, and when he treadeth within our borders.

7 And the remnant of Jacob shall be in the midst of many people as a dew from the YAHWEH, as the showers upon the grass, that tarrieth not for man, nor waiteth for the sons of men.

His conquest

8 And the remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles in the midst of many people as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep: who, if he go through, both treadeth down, and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver. [\[Gen 49:9\];](#)

9 Thine hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

10 And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the YAHWEH, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of you, and I will destroy thy chariots: [Hos 14:3;](#)

11 And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strong holds:

12 And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thine hand; and you shall have no *more* soothsayers:

13 Thy graven images also will I cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of you; and you shall no more worship the work of thine hands.

14 And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of you: so will I destroy thy cities.

15 And I will execute vengeance in anger and fury upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

Elohim's controversy for ingratitude

1 Hear you now what the YAHWEH saith; Arise, contend you before the mountains, and let the hills hear thy voice.

2 Hear you, O mountains, the YAHWEH'S controversy, and you strong foundations of the earth: for the YAHWEH has a controversy with his people, and he will plead with Israel. [Hos 4:1](#);

3 O my people, what have I done unto you? and wherein have I wearied you? testify against me. [\[Isa 5:4\]](#); [\[Jer 2:5\]](#);

4 For I brought you up out of the land of Egypt, and redeemed you out of the house of servants; and I sent before you Moses, Aaron, and Miriam. [Exod 12:51](#); [Exod 14:30](#); [\[Exod 3:10\]](#);

5 O my people, remember now what Balak king of Moab consulted, and what Balaam the son of Beor answered him from Shittim unto Gilgal; that you may know the righteousness of the YAHWEH. [Num 22:5](#); [Num 23:7](#); [Num 25:1-18](#); [Josh 5:1-15](#);

for ignorance

6 Wherewith shall I come before the YAHWEH, *and* bow myself before the high Elohim? shall I come before him with burnt offerings, with calves of a year old? [\[Jer 6:20\]](#);

7 Will the YAHWEH be pleased with thousands of rams, *or* with ten thousands of rivers of oil? shall I give my firstborn *for* my transgression, the fruit of my body *for* the sin of my being?

8 He has showed you, O man, what *is* good; and what does the YAHWEH require of you, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy Elohim? [Deut 10:12](#); [\[Isa 5:4\]](#); [\[Matt 9:13\]](#); [\[Matt 12:7\]](#); [\[Matt 23:23\]](#); [\[Luke 11:42\]](#);

9 The YAHWEH'S voice cries unto the city, and *the man of* wisdom shall see thy name: hear you the rod, and who has appointed it.

for injustice

10 Are there yet the treasures of wickedness in the house of the wicked, and the scant measure *that is* abominable?

11 Shall I count *them* pure with the wicked balances, and with the bag of deceitful weights? [Hos 12:7](#);

12 For the rich men thereof are full of violence, and the inhabitants thereof have spoken lies, and their tongue *is* deceitful in their mouth. [Jer 9:8](#);

13 Therefore also will I make you sick in smiting you, in making you desolate because of thy sins.

14 You shall eat, but not be satisfied; and thy casting down *shall be* in the midst of you; and you shall take hold, but shall not deliver; and *that* which you deliverest will I give up to the sword. [Hos 4:10](#); [\[Hag 1:6\]](#);

15 You shall sow, but you shall not reap; you shall tread the olives, but you shall not anoint you with oil; and sweet wine, but shall not drink wine. [Deut 28:38](#); [Hag 1:6](#);

and for idolatry

16 For the statutes of Omri are kept, and all the works of the house of Ahab, and you walk in their counsels; that I should make you a desolation, and the inhabitants thereof a hissing: therefore you shall bear the reproach of my people. [1Kgs 16:25-26](#); [1Kgs 16:30](#);

The church, complaining of her small number

1 Woe is me! for I am as when they have gathered the summer fruits, as the grape gleanings of the vintage: *there is* no cluster to eat: my being desired the firstripe fruit.

2 The good *man* is perished out of the earth: and *there is* none upright among men: they all lie in wait for blood; they hunt every man his brother with a net. [Ps 12:1](#); [Hos 4:1](#); [\[Isa 57:1\]](#); [\[Matt 10:21\]](#);

and the general corruption

3 That they may do evil with both hands earnestly, the prince asketh, and the judge *asketh* for a reward; and the great *man*, he uttereth his mischievous desire: so they wrap it up. [Mic 3:11](#); [Mic 2:1](#);

4 The best of them *is* as a brier: the most upright *is sharper* than a thorn hedge: the day of thy watchmen *and* thy visitation cometh; now shall be their perplexity.

puts her confidence not in man, but in Elohim

5 Trust you not in a friend, put you not confidence in a guide: keep the doors of thy mouth from her that lies in thy bosom. [\[Matt 10:21\]](#);

6 For the son dishonoureth the father, the daughter riseth up against her mother, the daughter in law against her mother in law; a man's enemies *are* the men of his own house. [Ezek 22:7](#); [Matt 10:21](#); [Matt 10:35-36](#); [Luke 12:53](#); [\[Matt 10:35\]](#); [\[Mark 13:12\]](#); [\[Luke 12:51\]](#); [\[Luke 21:16\]](#);

7 Therefore I will look unto the YAHWEH; I will wait for the Elohim of my salvation: my Elohim will hear me.

She triumphs over her enemies

8 Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the YAHWEH *shall be* a light unto me. [\[Ps 27:1\]](#);

9 I will bear the indignation of the YAHWEH, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, *and* I shall behold his righteousness. [Jer 50:34](#);

10 Then *she that is* mine enemy shall see *it*, and shame shall cover her which said unto me, Where is the YAHWEH thy Elohim? mine eyes shall behold her: now shall she be trodden down as the mire of the streets. [Ps 79:10](#); [Ps 115:2](#); [Joel 2:17](#);

11 *In* the day that thy walls are to be built, *in* that day shall the decree be far removed. [Amos 9:11](#);

12 *In* that day *also* he shall come even to you from Assyria, and *from* the fortified cities, and from the fortress even to the river, and from sea to sea, and *from* mountain to mountain.

13 Notwithstanding the land shall be desolate because of them that dwell therein, for the fruit of their doings. [Jer 21:14](#);

She prays to Elohim

14 Feed thy people with thy rod, the flock of thine heritage, which dwell solitarily *in* the wood, in the midst of Carmel: let them feed *in* Bashan and Gilead, as in the days of old. [Mic 5:4](#); [\[Isa 40:11\]](#);

Elohim comforts her by promises of confusion to her enemies

15 According to the days of thy coming out of the land of Egypt will I show unto him marvellous *things*. [Joel 2:26](#); [Joel 2:30](#);

16 The nations shall see and be confounded at all their might: they shall lay *their* hand upon *their* mouth, their ears shall be deaf.

17 They shall lick the dust like a serpent, they shall move out of their holes like worms of the earth: they shall be afraid of the YAHWEH our Elohim, and shall fear because of you. [Ps 72:9](#);

and by his mercies

18 Who *is* a Elohim like unto you, that pardoneth iniquity, and passeth by the transgression of the remnant of his heritage? he retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth *in* mercy. [Exod 34:6-7](#); [\[Jer 31:34\]](#); [\[Zech 3:4\]](#);

19 He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and you will cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.

20 You will perform the truth to Jacob, *and* the mercy to Abraham, which you have sworn unto our fathers from the days of old. [\[Luke 24:27\]](#); [\[Acts 10:43\]](#); [\[Acts 26:6\]](#); [\[Acts 28:23\]](#); [\[Rom 1:2\]](#);

Nahum

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

NAHUM ONE

The majesty of Elohim in goodness to his people, and severity against his enemies

1 The burden of Nineveh. The book of the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite.

2 Elohim *is* jealous, and the YAHWEH revengeth; the YAHWEH revengeth, and *is* furious; the YAHWEH will take vengeance on his adversaries, and he reserveth *wrath* for his enemies. [Exod 20:5](#); [\[Deut 7:10\]](#);

3 The YAHWEH *is* slow to anger, and great in power, and will not at all acquit *the wicked*: the YAHWEH has his way in the whirlwind and in the storm, and the clouds *are* the dust of his feet. [\[Amos 4:13\]](#);

4 He rebuketh the sea, and maketh it dry, and drieth up all the rivers: Bashan languisheth, and Carmel, and the flower of Lebanon languisheth.

5 The mountains quake at him, and the hills melt, and the earth is burned at his presence, yes, the world, and all that dwell therein. [Exod 19:18](#); [Ps 18:7](#); [Ps 29:5-6](#); [Ps 97:4-5](#); [Ps 114:4](#);

6 Who can stand before his indignation? and who can abide in the fierceness of his anger? his fury is poured out like fire, and the rocks are thrown down by him.

7 The YAHWEH *is* good, a strong hold in the day of trouble; and he knoweth them that trust in him. [Joel 3:16](#);

8 But with an overrunning flood he will make an utter end of the place thereof, and darkness shall pursue his enemies.

9 What do you imagine against the YAHWEH? he will make an utter end: affliction shall not rise up the second time.

10 For while *they be* folden together *as* thorns, and while they are drunken *as* drunkards, they shall be devoured as stubble fully dry.

11 There is *one* come out of you, that imagineth evil against the YAHWEH, a wicked counsellor.

12 Thus saith the YAHWEH; though *they be* quiet, and likewise many, yet thus shall they be cut down, when he shall pass through. though I have afflicted you, I will afflict you no more.

13 For now will I break his yoke from off you, and will burst thy bonds in sunder.

14 And the YAHWEH has given a commandment concerning you, *that* no more of thy name be sown: out of the house of thy gods will I cut off the graven image and the molten image: I will make thy grave; for you are vile.

15 Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through you; he is utterly cut off. [Isa 52:7](#); [Rom 10:15](#);

NAHUM TWO

The fearful and victorious armies of Elohim against Nineveh

1 He that dasheth in pieces is come up before thy face: keep the munition, watch the way, make *thy* loins strong, fortify *thy* power mightily.

2 For the YAHWEH has turned away the excellency of Jacob, as the excellency of Israel: for the emptiers have emptied them out, and marred their vine branches. [Ps 80:12](#); [Isa 10:12](#);

3 The shield of his mighty men is made red, the valiant men *are* in scarlet: the chariots *shall be* with flaming torches in the day of his preparation, and the fir trees shall be terribly shaken.

4 The chariots shall rage in the streets, they shall jostle one against another in the broad ways: they shall seem like torches, they shall run like the lightnings. [Zech 9:14];

5 He shall recount his worthies: they shall stumble in their walk; they shall make haste to the wall thereof, and the defence shall be prepared.

6 The gates of the rivers shall be opened, and the palace shall be dissolved.

7 And Huzzab shall be led away captive, she shall be brought up, and her maids shall lead *her* as with the voice of doves, tabering upon their breasts.

8 But Nineveh *is* of old like a pool of water: yet they shall flee away. Stand, stand, *shall they cry*; but none shall look back.

9 Take you the spoil of silver, take the spoil of gold: for *there is* none end of the store *and* glory out of all the pleasant furniture.

10 She is empty, and void, and waste: and the heart melteth, and the knees smite together, and much pain *is* in all loins, and the faces of them all gather blackness. Deut 1:28; Deut 20:8; Josh 2:11; Josh 5:1; Josh 7:5; Isa 13:7; Ezek 21:7; Isa 13:8; Isa 21:3;

11 Where *is* the dwelling of the lions, and the feedingplace of the young lions, where the lion, *even* the old lion, walked, *and* the lion's whelp, and none made *them* afraid?

12 The lion did tear in pieces enough for his whelps, and strangled for his lionesses, and filled his holes with prey, and his dens with ravin.

13 Behold, I *am* against you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and I will burn her chariots in the smoke, and the sword shall devour thy young lions: and I will cut off thy prey from the earth, and the voice of thy messengers shall no more be heard.

NAHUM THREE

The miserable ruin of Nineveh

1 Woe to the bloody city! it *is* all full of lies *and* robbery; the prey departeth not; [Ezek 24:9];

2 The noise of a whip, and the noise of the rattling of the wheels, and of the prancing horses, and of the jumping chariots.

3 The horseman lifteth up both the bright sword and the glittering spear: and *there is* a multitude of slain, and a great number of carcases; and *there is* none end of *their* corpses; they stumble upon their corpses:

4 Because of the multitude of the whoredoms of the wellfavoured harlot, the mistress of witchcrafts, that selleth nations through her whoredoms, and families through her witchcrafts.

5 Behold, I *am* against you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts; and I will discover thy skirts upon thy face, and I will show the nations thy nakedness, and the kingdoms thy shame. [Isa 47:3];

6 And I will cast abominable filth upon you, and make you vile, and will set you as a gazingstock.

7 And it shall come to pass, *that* all they that look upon you shall flee from you, and say, Nineveh is laid waste: who will bemoan her? whence shall I seek comforters for you?

8 Are you better than populous No, that was situate among the rivers, *that had* the waters round about it, whose rampart *was* the sea, *and* her wall *was* from the sea?

9 Ethiopia and Egypt *were* her strength, and *it was* infinite; Put and Lubim were thy helpers.

10 Yet *was* she carried away, she went into captivity: her young children also were dashed in pieces at the top of all the streets: and they cast lots for her honourable men, and all her great men were bound in chains.

11 You also shall be drunken: you shall be hid, you also shall seek strength because of the enemy.

12 All thy strong holds *shall be like* fig trees with the firstripe figs: if they be shaken, they shall even fall into the mouth of the eater.

13 Behold, thy people in the midst of you *are* women: the gates of thy land shall be set wide open unto thine enemies: the fire shall devour thy bars.

14 Draw you waters for the siege, fortify thy strong holds: go into clay, and tread the mortar, make strong the brickkiln.

15 There shall the fire devour you; the sword shall cut you off, it shall eat you up like the cankerworm: make thyself many as the cankerworm, make thyself many as the locusts.

16 You have multiplied thy merchants above the stars of heaven: the cankerworm spoileth, and flies away.

17 Thy crowned *are* as the locusts, and thy captains as the great grasshoppers, which camp in the hedges in the cold day, *but* when the sun ariseth they flee away, and their place is not known where they *are*.

18 Thy shepherds slumber, O king of Assyria: thy nobles shall dwell *in the dust*: thy people are scattered upon the mountains, and no man gathereth *them*.

19 *There is* no healing of thy bruise; thy wound is grievous: all that hear the news of you shall clap the hands over you: for upon whom has not thy wickedness passed continually?

Habakkuk

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

HABAKKUK ONE

Unto Habakkuk, complaining of the iniquity of the land

- 1** The burden which Habakkuk the prophet did see.
- 2** O YAHWEH, how long shall I cry, and you will not hear! *even* cry out unto you *of* violence, and you will not save!
- 3** Why dost you show me iniquity, and cause *me* to behold grievance? for spoiling and violence *are* before me: and there are *that* raise up strife and contention. [[Job 12:6](#)]; [[Jer 12:1](#)];
- 4** Therefore the law is slacked, and judgment does never go forth: for the wicked surround the righteous; therefore wrong judgment proceedeth.

is shown the fearful vengeance by the Chaldeans

- 5** Behold you among the heathen, and regard, and wonder marvellously: for *I* will work a work in your days, *which* you will not believe, though it be told *you*. [[Acts 13:41](#)];
- 6** For, lo, I raise up the Chaldeans, *that* bitter and hasty nation, which shall march through the breadth of the land, to possess the dwellingplaces *that are* not theirs.
- 7** They *are* terrible and dreadful: their judgment and their dignity shall proceed of themselves.
- 8** Their horses also are swifter than the leopards, and are more fierce than the evening wolves: and their horsemen shall spread themselves, and their horsemen shall come from far; they shall fly as the eagle *that* hasteth to eat.
- 9** They shall come all for violence: their faces shall sup up *as* the east wind, and they shall gather the captivity as the sand.
- 10** And they shall scoff at the kings, and the princes shall be a scorn unto them: they shall deride every strong hold; for they shall heap dust, and take it.
- 11** Then shall *his* mind change, and he shall pass over, and offend, *imputing* this his power unto his god. [[2Chr 28:23](#)];

He complains that vengeance should be executed by them who are far worse

- 12** Are you not from everlasting, O YAHWEH my Elohim, mine Holy One? we shall not die. O YAHWEH, you have ordained them for judgment; and, O mighty Elohim, you have established them for correction.
- 13** You *are* of purer eyes than to behold evil, and canst not look on iniquity: wherefore lookest you upon them that deal treacherously, *and* holdest thy tongue when the wicked devoureth *the man that is* more righteous than he?
- 14** And makest men as the fishes of the sea, as the creeping things, *that have* no ruler over them?
- 15** They take up all of them with the hook, they catch them in their net, and gather them in their drag: therefore they rejoice and are glad.
- 16** Therefore they sacrifice unto their net, and burn incense unto their drag; because by them their portion *is* fat, and their meat plenteous. [[Job 21:7](#)];
- 17** Shall they therefore empty their net, and not spare continually to slay the nations?

HABAKKUK TWO

Unto Habakkuk, waiting for an answer, is shown that he must wait by faith

1 I will stand upon my watch, and set me upon the tower, and will watch to see what he will say unto me, and what I shall answer when I am reproved. [Isa 21:8](#);

2 And the YAHWEH answered me, and said, Write the vision, and make *it* plain upon tables, that he may run that readeth it. [Isa 30:8](#);

3 For the vision *is* yet for an appointed time, but at the end it shall speak, and not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not tarry. [\[Ps 27:14\]](#); [\[Ps 130:5\]](#); [\[Lam 3:24\]](#); [\[Heb 10:37\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);

4 Behold, his being *which* is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith. [\[Rom 1:17\]](#); [\[Gal 3:11\]](#); [\[Heb 10:38\]](#);

The judgment upon the Chaldean for unsatiableness

5 Yes also, because he transgresseth by wine, *he is* a proud man, neither keepeth at home, who enlargeth his desire as hell, and *is* as death, and cannot be satisfied, but gathereth unto him all nations, and heapeth unto him all people:

6 Shall not all these take up a parable against him, and a taunting proverb against him, and say, Woe to him that increaseth *that which is* not his! how long? and to him that ladeth himself with thick clay!

7 Shall they not rise up suddenly that shall bite you, and awake that shall vex you, and you shall be for booties unto them?

8 Because you have spoiled many nations, all the remnant of the people shall spoil you; because of men's blood, and *for* the violence of the land, of the city, and of all that dwell therein.

for covetousness

9 Woe to him that coveteth an evil covetousness to his house, that he may set his nest on high, that he may be delivered from the power of evil! [\[Jer 22:13\]](#);

10 You have consulted shame to thy house by cutting off many people, and have sinned *against* thy being.

11 For the stone shall cry out of the wall, and the beam out of the timber shall answer it. [\[Luke 19:40\]](#);

for cruelty

12 Woe to him that buildeth a town with blood, and establisheth a city by iniquity! [\[Ezek 24:9\]](#);

13 Behold, *is it* not of the YAHWEH of hosts that the people shall labour in the very fire, and the people shall weary themselves for very vanity?

14 For the earth shall be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the YAHWEH, as the waters cover the sea.

for drunkenness

15 Woe unto him that giveth his neighbour drink, that puttest thy bottle to *him*, and makest *him* drunken also, that you may look on their nakedness!

16 You are filled with shame for glory: drink you also, and let thy foreskin be uncovered: the cup of the YAHWEH'S right hand shall be turned unto you, and shameful spewing *shall be* on thy glory.

17 For the violence of Lebanon shall cover you, and the spoil of beasts, *which* made them afraid, because of men's blood, and for the violence of the land, of the city, and of all that dwell therein.

and for idolatry

18 What profiteth the graven image that the maker thereof has graven it; the molten image, and a teacher of lies, that the maker of his work trusteth therein, to make dumb idols? [\[Jer 10:8\]](#);

19 Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake; to the dumb stone, Arise, it shall teach! Behold, it *is* laid over with gold and silver, and *there is* no breath at all in the midst of it.

20 But the YAHWEH *is* in his holy temple: let all the earth keep silence before him.

HABAKKUK THREE

Habakkuk, in his prayer, trembles at Elohim's majesty

1 A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet upon Shigionoth.

2 O YAHWEH, I have heard thy speech, *and* was afraid: O YAHWEH, revive thy work in the midst of the years, in the midst of the years make known; in wrath remember mercy.

3 Elohim came from Teman, and the Holy One from mount Paran. Selah. His glory covered the heavens, and the earth was full of his praise.

4 And *his* brightness was as the light; he had horns *coming* out of his hand: and there *was* the hiding of his power.

5 Before him went the pestilence, and burning coals went forth at his feet.

6 He stood, and measured the earth: he beheld, and drove asunder the nations; and the everlasting mountains were scattered, the perpetual hills did bow: his ways *are* everlasting.

7 I saw the tents of Cushan in affliction: *and* the curtains of the land of Midian did tremble.

8 Was the YAHWEH displeased against the rivers? *was* thine anger against the rivers? *was* thy wrath against the sea, that you didst ride upon thine horses *and* thy chariots of salvation?

9 Thy bow was made quite naked, *according* to the oaths of the tribes, *even thy* word. Selah. you didst cleave the earth with rivers.

10 The mountains saw you, *and* they trembled: the overflowing of the water passed by: the deep uttered his voice, *and* lifted up his hands on high. [Exod 15:8]; [Exod 19:18];

11 The sun *and* moon stood still in their habitation: at the light of thine arrows they went, *and* at the shining of thy glittering spear.

12 You didst march through the land in indignation, you didst thresh the heathen in anger.

13 You wentest forth for the salvation of thy people, *even* for salvation with thine anointed; you woundedst the head out of the house of the wicked, by discovering the foundation unto the neck. Selah. [Lam 3:22];

14 You didst strike through with his staves the head of his villages: they came out as a whirlwind to scatter me: their rejoicing *was* as to devour the poor secretly.

15 You didst walk through the sea with thine horses, *through* the heap of great waters.

16 When I heard, my belly trembled; my lips quivered at the voice: rottenness entered into my bones, and I trembled in myself, that I might rest in the day of trouble: when he cometh up unto the people, he will invade them with his troops.

The confidence of his faith

17 Although the fig tree shall not blossom, neither *shall* fruit *be* in the vines; the labour of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and *there shall be* no herd in the stalls:

18 Yet I will rejoice in the YAHWEH, I will joy in the Elohim of my salvation.

19 The YAHWEH Elohim *is* my strength, and he will make my feet like hinds' *feet*, and he will make me to walk upon mine high places. To the chief singer on my stringed instruments.

Zephaniah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

ZEPHANIAH ONE

The time when Zephaniah prophesied

1 The word of the YAHWEH which came unto Zephaniah the son of Cushi, the son of Gedaliah, the son of Amariah, the son of Hizkiah, in the days of Josiah the son of Amon, king of Judah.

Elohim's severe judgments against Judah

2 I will utterly consume all *things* from off the land, saith the YAHWEH.

3 I will consume man and beast; I will consume the fowls of the heaven, and the fishes of the sea, and the stumblingblocks with the wicked; and I will cut off man from off the land, saith the YAHWEH.

4 I will also stretch out mine hand upon Judah, and upon all the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and I will cut off the remnant of Baal from this place, *and* the name of the Chemarims with the priests;

5 And them that worship the host of heaven upon the housetops; and them that worship *and* that swear by the YAHWEH, and that swear by Malcham; [[Josh 23:7](#)]; [[2Kgs 17:33](#)];

6 And them that are turned back from the YAHWEH; and *those* that have not sought the YAHWEH, nor enquired for him. [[Isa 1:4](#); [Isa 59:13](#); [Jer 15:6](#)];

7 Hold thy peace at the presence of the Lord GOD: for the day of the YAHWEH *is* at hand: for the YAHWEH has prepared a sacrifice, he has bid his guests.

8 And it shall come to pass in the day of the YAHWEH'S sacrifice, that I will punish the princes, and the king's children, and all such as are clothed with strange apparel.

9 In the same day also will I punish all those that leap on the threshold, which fill their masters' houses with violence and deceit.

10 And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the YAHWEH, *that there shall be* the noise of a cry from the fish gate, and a howling from the second, and a great crashing from the hills.

11 Howl, you inhabitants of Maktesh, for all the merchant people are cut down; all they that bear silver are cut off.

12 And it shall come to pass at that time, *that* I will search Jerusalem with candles, and punish the men that are settled on their lees: that say in their heart, The YAHWEH will not do good, neither will he do evil. [[Jer 48:11](#)];

13 Therefore their goods shall become a booty, and their houses a desolation: they shall also build houses, but not inhabit *them*; and they shall plant vineyards, but not drink the wine thereof. [[Amos 5:11](#)];

14 The great day of the YAHWEH *is* near, *it is* near, and hasteth greatly, *even* the voice of the day of the YAHWEH: the mighty man shall cry there bitterly. [[Joel 2:1](#)]; [[Zeph 1:18](#)];

15 That day *is* a day of wrath, a day of trouble and distress, a day of wasteness and desolation, a day of darkness and gloominess, a day of clouds and thick darkness, [[Joel 2:1-2](#)]; [[Jer 30:7](#)]; [[Joel 2:11](#)]; [[Amos 5:18](#)];

16 A day of the trumpet and alarm against the fenced cities, and against the high towers.

17 And I will bring distress upon men, that they shall walk like blind men, because they have sinned against the YAHWEH: and their blood shall be poured out as dust, and their flesh as the dung. [[2Pet 1:9](#)];

18 Neither their silver nor their gold shall be able to deliver them in the day of the YAHWEH'S wrath; but the whole land shall be devoured by the fire of his jealousy: for he shall make even a speedy riddance of all them that dwell in the land. [[Prov 11:4](#); [Ezek 7:19](#); [Zeph 1:14-16](#)];

An exhortation to repentance

- 1** Gather yourselves together, yes, gather together, O nation not desired;
2 Before the decree bring forth, *before* the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of the YAHWEH come upon you, before the day of the YAHWEH'S anger come upon you.
3 Seek you the YAHWEH, all you meek of the earth, which have wrought his judgment; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be you shall be hid in the day of the YAHWEH'S anger.

The judgment of the Philistines

- 4** For Gaza shall be forsaken, and Ashkelon a desolation: they shall drive out Ashdod at the noon day, and Ekron shall be rooted up.
5 Woe unto the inhabitants of the sea coast, the nation of the Cherethites! the word of the YAHWEH *is* against you; O Canaan, the land of the Philistines, I will even destroy you, that there shall be no inhabitant.
6 And the sea coast shall be dwellings *and* cottages for shepherds, and folds for flocks.
7 And the coast shall be for the remnant of the house of Judah; they shall feed thereupon: in the houses of Ashkelon shall they lie down in the evening: for the YAHWEH their Elohim shall visit them, and turn away their captivity.

of Moab and Ammon

- 8** I have heard the reproach of Moab, and the revilings of the children of Ammon, whereby they have reproached my people, and magnified *themselves* against their border.
9 Therefore *as* I live, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, Surely Moab shall be as Sodom, and the children of Ammon as Gomorrah, *even* the breeding of nettles, and saltpits, and a perpetual desolation: the residue of my people shall spoil them, and the remnant of my people shall possess them. [\[Gen 19:24\];](#)
10 This shall they have for their pride, because they have reproached and magnified *themselves* against the people of the YAHWEH of hosts.
11 The YAHWEH *will be* terrible unto them: for he will famish all the gods of the earth; and *men* shall worship him, every one from his place, *even* all the isles of the heathen.

of Ethiopia

- 12** You Ethiopians also, you *shall be* slain by my sword.

and of Assyria

- 13** And he will stretch out his hand against the north, and destroy Assyria; and will make Nineveh a desolation, *and* dry like a wilderness.
14 And flocks shall lie down in the midst of her, all the beasts of the nations: both the cormorant and the bittern shall lodge in the upper lintels of it; *their* voice shall sing in the windows; desolation *shall be* in the thresholds: for he shall uncover the cedar work. [\[Isa 14:23\]; \[Isa 34:11\];](#)
15 This *is* the rejoicing city that dwelt carelessly, that said in her heart, I *am*, and *there is* none beside me: how is she become a desolation, a place for beasts to lie down in! every one that passeth by her shall hiss, *and* wag his hand.

A sharp reproof of Jerusalem for different sins

- 1** Woe to her that is filthy and polluted, to the oppressing city!
- 2** She obeyed not the voice; she received not correction; she trusted not in the YAHWEH; she drew not near to her Elohim.
- 3** Her princes within her *are* roaring lions; her judges *are* evening wolves; they gnaw not the bones till the morrow. [Prov 28:15](#); [Ezek 22:27](#); [[Mic 3:10](#)];
- 4** Her prophets *are* light *and* treacherous persons: her priests have polluted the sanctuary, they have done violence to the law. [Jer 23:11](#); [Jer 23:32](#); [Hos 9:7](#);
- 5** The just YAHWEH *is* in the midst thereof; he will not do iniquity: every morning he brings his judgment to light, he faileth not; but the unjust knoweth no shame. [Deut 32:4](#);
- 6** I have cut off the nations: their towers are desolate; I made their streets waste, that none passeth by: their cities are destroyed, so that there is no man, that there is none inhabitant.
- 7** I said, Surely you will fear me, you will receive instruction; so their dwelling should not be cut off, howsoever I punished them: but they rose early, *and* corrupted all their doings.

An exhortation to wait for the restoration of Israel

- 8** Therefore wait you upon me, saith the YAHWEH, until the day that I rise up to the prey: for my determination *is* to gather the nations, that I may assemble the kingdoms, to pour upon them mine indignation, *even* all my fierce anger: for all the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy.
- 9** For then will I turn to the people a pure language, that they may all call upon the name of the YAHWEH, to serve him with one consent.
- 10** From beyond the rivers of Ethiopia my suppliants, *even* the daughter of my dispersed, shall bring mine offering.
- 11** In that day shall you not be ashamed for all thy doings, wherein you have transgressed against me: for then I will take away out of the midst of you them that rejoice in thy pride, and you shall no more be haughty because of my holy mountain.
- 12** I will also leave in the midst of you an afflicted and poor people, and they shall trust in the name of the YAHWEH.
- 13** The remnant of Israel shall not do iniquity, nor speak lies; neither shall a deceitful tongue be found in their mouth: for they shall feed and lie down, and none shall make *them* afraid. [\[Rev 14:5\]](#);

and to rejoice for their salvation by Elohim

- 14** Sing, O daughter of Zion; shout, O Israel; be glad and rejoice with all the heart, O daughter of Jerusalem. [Zech 9:9](#);
- 15** The YAHWEH has taken away thy judgments, he has cast out thine enemy: the king of Israel, *even* the YAHWEH, *is* in the midst of you: you shall not see evil any more.
- 16** In that day it shall be said to Jerusalem, Fear you not: *and to* Zion, Let not thine hands be slack.
- 17** The YAHWEH thy Elohim in the midst of you *is* mighty; he will save, he will rejoice over you with joy; he will rest in his love, he will joy over you with singing.
- 18** I will gather *them that are* sorrowful for the solemn assembly, *who* are of you, *to whom* the reproach of it *was* a burden.
- 19** Behold, at that time I will undo all that afflict you: and I will save her that halteth, and gather her that was driven out; and I will get them praise and fame in every land where they have been put to shame. [\[Mic 4:7\]](#);

20 At that time will I bring you *again*, even in the time that I gather you: for I will make you a name and a praise among all people of the earth, when I turn back your captivity before your eyes, saith the YAHWEH.

Haggai

[1](#) [2](#)

HAGGAI ONE

The time when Haggai prophesied

1 In the second year of Darius the king, in the sixth month, in the first day of the month, came the word of the YAHWEH by Haggai the prophet unto Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, saying, [\[Ezra 5:1\]](#);

He reproves the people for neglecting the building of the house

2 Thus speaketh the YAHWEH of hosts, saying, This people say, The time is not come, the time that the YAHWEH'S house should be built.

3 Then came the word of the YAHWEH by Haggai the prophet, saying,

4 *Is it* time for you, O you, to dwell in your cieled houses, and this house *lie* waste?

5 Now therefore thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Consider your ways.

6 You have sown much, and bring in little; you eat, but you have not enough; you drink, but you are not filled with drink; you clothe you, but there is none warm; and he that earneth wages earneth wages *to put it* into a bag with holes. [Deut 28:38](#); [Mic 6:14-15](#); [\[Mic 6:15\]](#);

He incites them to the building

7 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Consider your ways.

8 Go up to the mountain, and bring wood, and build the house; and I will take pleasure in it, and I will be glorified, saith the YAHWEH.

9 You looked for much, and, lo, *it came* to little; and when you brought *it* home, I did blow upon it. Why? saith the YAHWEH of hosts. Because of mine house that *is* waste, and you run every man unto his own house.

10 Therefore the heaven over you is stayed from dew, and the earth is stayed *from* her fruit. [Deut 28:23](#);

11 And I called for a drought upon the land, and upon the mountains, and upon the corn, and upon the new wine, and upon the oil, and upon *that* which the ground bringeth forth, and upon men, and upon cattle, and upon all the labour of the hands. [\[Hag 2:17\]](#);

He promises them, being forward, Elohim's assistance

12 Then Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, with all the remnant of the people, obeyed the voice of the YAHWEH their Elohim, and the words of Haggai the prophet, as the YAHWEH their Elohim had sent him, and the people did fear before the YAHWEH.

13 Then spoke Haggai the YAHWEH'S messenger in the YAHWEH'S message unto the people, saying, I *am* with you, saith the YAHWEH.

14 And the YAHWEH stirred up the spirit of Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and the spirit of Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, and the spirit of all the remnant of the people; and they came and did work in the house of the YAHWEH of hosts, their Elohim,

15 In the four and twentieth day of the sixth month, in the second year of Darius the king.

He encourages the people to the work, by promise of greater glory to the second temple than was in the first

- 1** In the seventh *month*, in the one and twentieth *day* of the month, came the word of the YAHWEH by the prophet Haggai, saying,
- 2** Speak now to Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, and to the residue of the people, saying,
- 3** Who *is* left among you that saw this house in her first glory? and how do you see it now? *is it* not in your eyes in comparison of it as nothing?
- 4** Yet now be strong, O Zerubbabel, saith the YAHWEH; and be strong, O Joshua, son of Josedech, the high priest; and be strong, all you people of the land, saith the YAHWEH, and work: for I *am* with you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts:
- 5** *According to* the word that I covenanted with you when you came out of Egypt, so my spirit remaineth among you: fear you not.
- 6** For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; yet once, it *is* a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry *land*; [[Heb 10:37](#)]; [[Heb 12:26](#)];
- 7** And I will shake all nations, and the desire of all nations shall come: and I will fill this house with glory, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [[1Pet 1:10](#)];
- 8** The silver *is* mine, and the gold *is* mine, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.
- 9** The glory of this latter house shall be greater than of the former, saith the YAHWEH of hosts: and in this place will I give peace, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

In the type of holy things and unclean he shows their sins hindered the work

- 10** In the four and twentieth *day* of the ninth *month*, in the second year of Darius, came the word of the YAHWEH by Haggai the prophet, saying,
- 11** Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Ask now the priests *concerning* the law, saying,
- 12** If one bear holy flesh in the skirt of his garment, and with his skirt do touch bread, or pottage, or wine, or oil, or any meat, shall it be holy? And the priests answered and said, No.
- 13** Then said Haggai, If *one that is* unclean by a dead body touch any of these, shall it be unclean? And the priests answered and said, It shall be unclean. [[Lev 5:2](#)]; [[Num 19:11](#)];
- 14** Then answered Haggai, and said, So *is* this people, and so *is* this nation before me, saith the YAHWEH; and so *is* every work of their hands; and that which they offer there *is* unclean.
- 15** And now, I pray you, consider from this day and upward, from before a stone was laid upon a stone in the temple of the YAHWEH:
- 16** Since those *days* were, when *one* came to a heap of twenty *measures*, there were *but* ten: when *one* came to the pressfat for to draw out fifty *vessels* out of the press, there were *but* twenty.
- 17** I smote you with blasting and with mildew and with hail in all the labours of your hands; yet you *turned* not to me, saith the YAHWEH. [Hag 1:11](#);
- 18** Consider now from this day and upward, from the four and twentieth day of the ninth *month*, *even* from the day that the foundation of the YAHWEH'S temple was laid, consider *it*.
- 19** Is the seed yet in the barn? yes, as yet the vine, and the fig tree, and the pomegranate, and the olive tree, has not brought forth: from this day will I bless *you*.

Elohim's promise to Zerubbabel

- 20** And again the word of the YAHWEH came unto Haggai in the four and twentieth *day* of the month, saying,

21 Speak to Zerubbabel, governor of Judah, saying, I will shake the heavens and the earth;

22 And I will overthrow the throne of kingdoms, and I will destroy the strength of the kingdoms of the heathen; and I will overthrow the chariots, and those that ride in them; and the horses and their riders shall come down, every one by the sword of his brother.

23 In that day, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, will I take you, O Zerubbabel, my servant, the son of Shealtiel, saith the YAHWEH, and will make you as a signet: for I have chosen you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

Zechariah

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#)

ZECHARIAH ONE

Zechariah exhorts to repentance

1 In the eighth month, in the second year of Darius, came the word of the YAHWEH unto Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying, [[Ezra 5:1](#)];

2 The YAHWEH has been sore displeased with your fathers.

3 Therefore say you unto them, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Turn you unto me, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and I will turn unto you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [[Mal 3:7](#)];

4 Be you not as your fathers, unto whom the former prophets have cried, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Turn you now from your evil ways, and *from* your evil doings: but they did not hear, nor hearken unto me, saith the YAHWEH. [Isa 31:6](#); [Jer 3:12](#); [Jer 18:11](#); [Ezek 18:30](#); [Hos 14:1](#);

5 Your fathers, where *are* they? and the prophets, do they live for ever?

6 But my words and my statutes, which I commanded my servants the prophets, did they not take hold of your fathers? and they returned and said, Like as the YAHWEH of hosts thought to do unto us, according to our ways, and according to our doings, so has he dealt with us. [Lam 1:18](#);

The vision of the horses

7 Upon the four and twentieth day of the eleventh month, which *is* the month Sebat, in the second year of Darius, came the word of the YAHWEH unto Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying,

8 I saw by night, and behold a man riding upon a red horse, and he stood among the myrtle trees that *were* in the bottom; and behind him *were there* red horses, speckled, and white.

9 Then said I, O my lord, what *are* these? And the angel that talked with me said unto me, I will show you what these *be*.

10 And the man that stood among the myrtle trees answered and said, These *are they* whom the YAHWEH has sent to walk to and fro through the earth.

11 And they answered the angel of the YAHWEH that stood among the myrtle trees, and said, We have walked to and fro through the earth, and, behold, all the earth sitteth still, and is at rest.

At the prayer of the angel comfortable promises are made to Jerusalem

12 Then the angel of the YAHWEH answered and said, O YAHWEH of hosts, how long will you not have mercy on Jerusalem and on the cities of Judah, against which you have had indignation these threescore and ten years?

13 And the YAHWEH answered the angel that talked with me *with* good words *and* comfortable words.

14 So the angel that communed with me said unto me, Cry you, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a great jealousy. [[Zech 8:2](#)];

15 And I am very sore displeased with the heathen *that are* at ease: for I was but a little displeased, and they helped forward the affliction.

16 Therefore thus saith the YAHWEH; I am returned to Jerusalem with mercies: my house shall be built in it, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and a line shall be stretched forth upon Jerusalem.

17 Cry yet, saying, Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; My cities through prosperity shall yet be spread abroad; and the YAHWEH shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem.

The vision of the four horns and the four carpenters

18 Then lifted I up mine eyes, and saw, and behold four horns.

19 And I said unto the angel that talked with me, What *be* these? And he answered me, These *are* the horns which have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem.

20 And the YAHWEH showed me four carpenters.

21 Then said I, What come these to do? And he spoke, saying, These *are* the horns which have scattered Judah, so that no man did lift up his head: but these are come to fray them, to cast out the horns of the Gentiles, which lifted up *their* horn over the land of Judah to scatter it.

ZECHARIAH TWO

Elohim, in the care of Jerusalem, sends to measure it

1 I lifted up mine eyes again, and looked, and behold a man with a measuring line in his hand. [\[Rev 21:15\]](#);

2 Then said I, Whither go you? And he said unto me, To measure Jerusalem, to see what *is* the breadth thereof, and what *is* the length thereof.

3 And, behold, the angel that talked with me went forth, and another angel went out to meet him,

4 And said unto him, Run, speak to this young man, saying, Jerusalem shall be inhabited *as* towns without walls for the multitude of men and cattle therein:

5 For I, saith the YAHWEH, will be unto her a wall of fire round about, and will be the glory in the midst of her.

The redemption of Zion

6 Ho, ho, *come forth*, and flee from the land of the north, saith the YAHWEH: for I have spread you abroad as the four winds of the heaven, saith the YAHWEH.

7 Deliver thyself, O Zion, that dwellest *with* the daughter of Babylon.

8 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; After the glory has he sent me unto the nations which spoiled you: for he that toucheth you toucheth the apple of his eye. [\[Matt 25:45\]](#); [\[2Thess 1:6\]](#);

9 For, behold, I will shake mine hand upon them, and they shall be a spoil to their servants: and you shall know that the YAHWEH of hosts has sent me.

The promise of Elohim's presence

10 Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion: for, lo, I come, and I will dwell in the midst of you, saith the YAHWEH. [Lev 26:12](#); [Ezek 37:27](#); [2Cor 6:16](#); [\[Exod 29:45\]](#);

11 And many nations shall be joined to the YAHWEH in that day, and shall be my people: and I will dwell in the midst of you, and you shall know that the YAHWEH of hosts has sent me unto you.

12 And the YAHWEH shall inherit Judah his portion in the holy land, and shall choose Jerusalem again. [\[Exod 34:9\]](#);

13 Be silent, O all flesh, before the YAHWEH: for he is raised up out of his holy habitation.

Under the type of Joshua, the high priest, receiving clean garments

1 And he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the YAHWEH, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him.

2 And the YAHWEH said unto Satan, The YAHWEH rebuke you, O Satan; even the YAHWEH that has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you: *is* not this a brand plucked out of the fire? [Jude 1:9](#);

3 Now Joshua was clothed with filthy garments, and stood before the angel.

4 And he answered and spoke unto those that stood before him, saying, Take away the filthy garments from him. And unto him he said, Behold, I have caused thine iniquity to pass from you, and I will clothe you with change of raiment. [Mic 7:18](#);

5 And I said, Let them set a fair mitre upon his head. So they set a fair mitre upon his head, and clothed him with garments. And the angel of the YAHWEH stood by.

and a covenant of promise

6 And the angel of the YAHWEH protested unto Joshua, saying,

7 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; If you will walk in my ways, and if you will keep my charge, then you shall also judge my house, and shall also keep my courts, and I will give you places to walk among these that stand by.

the Messiah the Branch and Corner Stone is promised

8 Hear now, O Joshua the high priest, you, and thy fellows that sit before you: for they *are* men wondered at: for, behold, I will bring forth my servant the BRANCH. [Isa 4:2](#); [Isa 11:1](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Jer 33:15](#); [Zech 6:12](#);

9 For behold the stone that I have laid before Joshua; upon one stone *shall be* seven eyes: behold, I will engrave the graving thereof, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and I will remove the iniquity of that land in one day. [\[Rev 5:6\]](#);

10 In that day, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, shall you call every man his neighbour under the vine and under the fig tree.

ZECHARIAH FOUR

By the golden candlestick is foreshewn the good success of Zerubbabel's foundation

- 1** And the angel that talked with me came again, and waked me, as a man that is wakened out of his sleep,
- 2** And said unto me, What seest you? And I said, I have looked, and behold a candlestick all *of* gold, with a bowl upon the top of it, and his seven lamps thereon, and seven pipes to the seven lamps, which *are* upon the top thereof:
- 3** And two olive trees by it, one upon the right *side* of the bowl, and the other upon the left *side* thereof. [\[Rev 11:4\];](#)
- 4** So I answered and spoke to the angel that talked with me, saying, What *are* these, my lord?
- 5** Then the angel that talked with me answered and said unto me, Knowest you not what these be? And I said, No, my lord.
- 6** Then he answered and spoke unto me, saying, This *is* the word of the YAHWEH unto Zerubbabel, saying, Not by might, nor by power, but by my spirit, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.
- 7** Who are you, O great mountain? before Zerubbabel you *shall become* a plain: and he shall bring forth the headstone *thereof with* shoutings, *crying*, Grace, grace unto it.
- 8** Moreover the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,
- 9** The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it; and you shall know that the YAHWEH of hosts has sent me unto you.
- 10** For who has despised the day of small things? for they shall rejoice, and shall see the plummet in the hand of Zerubbabel *with* those seven; they *are* the eyes of the YAHWEH, which run to and fro through the whole earth. [\[Rev 5:6\];](#)

by the two olive trees the two anointed ones

- 11** Then answered I, and said unto him, What *are* these two olive trees upon the right *side* of the candlestick and upon the left *side* thereof?
- 12** And I answered again, and said unto him, What *be these* two olive branches which through the two golden pipes empty the golden *oil* out of themselves?
- 13** And he answered me and said, Knowest you not what these *be*? And I said, No, my lord.
- 14** Then said he, These *are* the two anointed ones, that stand by the Lord of the whole earth. [\[Mic 4:13\];](#) [\[Rev 11:4\];](#)

ZECHARIAH FIVE

By the flying roll is shown the curse of thieves and swearers

- 1** Then I turned, and lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a flying roll.
- 2** And he said unto me, What seest you? And I answered, I see a flying roll; the length thereof *is* twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof ten cubits.
- 3** Then said he unto me, This *is* the curse that goes forth over the face of the whole earth: for every one that stealeth shall be cut off *as* on this side according to it; and every one that sweareth shall be cut off *as* on that side according to it. [\[Zech 8:17\];](#)
- 4** I will bring it forth, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and it shall enter into the house of the thief, and into the house of him that sweareth falsely by my name: and it shall remain in the midst of his house, and shall consume it with the timber thereof and the stones thereof.

and by a woman pressed in an ephah the final judgment of wickedness

5 Then the angel that talked with me went forth, and said unto me, Lift up now thine eyes, and see what *is* this that goes forth.

6 And I said, What *is* it? And he said, This *is* an ephah that goes forth. He said moreover, This *is* their resemblance through all the earth.

7 And, behold, there was lifted up a talent of lead: and this *is* a woman that sitteth in the midst of the ephah.

8 And he said, This *is* wickedness. And he cast it into the midst of the ephah; and he cast the weight of lead upon the mouth thereof.

9 Then lifted I up mine eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came out two women, and the wind *was* in their wings; for they had wings like the wings of a stork: and they lifted up the ephah between the earth and the heaven.

10 Then said I to the angel that talked with me, Whither do these bear the ephah?

11 And he said unto me, To build it a house in the land of Shinar: and it shall be established, and set there upon her own base.

ZECHARIAH SIX

The vision of the four chariots

1 And I turned, and lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came four chariots out from between two mountains; and the mountains *were* mountains of brass.

2 In the first chariot *were* red horses; and in the second chariot black horses;

3 And in the third chariot white horses; and in the fourth chariot grisled and bay horses.

4 Then I answered and said unto the angel that talked with me, What *are* these, my lord?

5 And the angel answered and said unto me, These *are* the four spirits of the heavens, which go forth from standing before the Lord of all the earth. [\[Mic 4:13\];](#)

6 The black horses which *are* therein go forth into the north country; and the white go forth after them; and the grisled go forth toward the south country.

7 And the bay went forth, and sought to go that they might walk to and fro through the earth: and he said, Get you hence, walk to and fro through the earth. So they walked to and fro through the earth.

8 Then cried he upon me, and spoke unto me, saying, Behold, these that go toward the north country have quieted my spirit in the north country.

By the crowns of Joshua are shown the temple and kingdom of the Messiah the Branch

9 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto me, saying,

10 Take of *them* of the captivity, *even* of Heldai, of Tobijah, and of Jedaiah, which are come from Babylon, and come you the same day, and go into the house of Josiah the son of Zephaniah;

11 Then take silver and gold, and make crowns, and set *them* upon the head of Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest;

12 And speak unto him, saying, Thus speaketh the YAHWEH of hosts, saying, Behold the man whose name *is* The BRANCH; and he shall grow up out of his place, and he shall build the temple of the YAHWEH: [\[Zech 3:8\]; \[Matt 2:23\]; \[John 1:45\]; \[1Pet 1:10\];](#)

13 Even he shall build the temple of the YAHWEH; and he shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon his throne; and he shall be a priest upon his throne: and the counsel of peace shall be between them both.

14 And the crowns shall be to Helem, and to Tobijah, and to Jedaiah, and to Hen the son of Zephaniah, for a memorial in the temple of the YAHWEH.

15 And they *that are* far off shall come and build in the temple of the YAHWEH, and you shall know that the YAHWEH of hosts has sent me unto you. And *this* shall come to pass, if you will diligently obey the voice of the YAHWEH your Elohim.

ZECHARIAH SEVEN

The captives enquire concerning the set fasts

1 And it came to pass in the fourth year of king Darius, *that* the word of the YAHWEH came unto Zechariah in the fourth *day* of the ninth month, *even* in Chisleu;

2 When they had sent unto the house of Elohim Sherezzer and Regemmelech, and their men, to pray before the YAHWEH,

3 *And* to speak unto the priests which *were* in the house of the YAHWEH of hosts, and to the prophets, saying, Should I weep in the fifth month, separating myself, as I have done these so many years?

Zechariah reproves the hypocrisy of their fasting

4 Then came the word of the YAHWEH of hosts unto me, saying,

5 Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When you fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh *month*, even those seventy years, did you at all fast unto me, *even* to me? [\[Isa 58:5\]](#);

6 And when you did eat, and when you did drink, did not you eat *for yourselves*, and drink *for yourselves*?

7 *Should you* not *hear* the words which the YAHWEH has cried by the former prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited and in prosperity, and the cities thereof round about her, when *men* inhabited the south and the plain?

Sin the cause of their captivity

8 And the word of the YAHWEH came unto Zechariah, saying,

9 Thus speaketh the YAHWEH of hosts, saying, Execute true judgment, and show mercy and compassions every man to his brother:

10 And oppress not the widow, nor the fatherless, the stranger, nor the poor; and let none of you imagine evil against his brother in your heart. [Exod 22:22](#); [\[Deut 24:17\]](#); [\[Prov 22:22\]](#); [\[Isa 1:23\]](#); [\[Jer 5:28\]](#); [\[Zech 8:17\]](#);

11 But they refused to hearken, and pulled away the shoulder, and stopped their ears, that they should not hear.

12 Yes, they made their hearts *as* an adamant stone, lest they should hear the law, and the words which the YAHWEH of hosts has sent in his spirit by the former prophets: therefore came a great wrath from the YAHWEH of hosts.

13 Therefore it is come to pass, *that* as he cried, and they would not hear; so they cried, and I would not hear, saith the YAHWEH of hosts: [Prov 1:28](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Jer 11:11](#); [Jer 14:12](#);

14 But I scattered them with a whirlwind among all the nations whom they knew not. Thus the land was desolate after them, that no man passed through nor returned: for they laid the pleasant land desolate.

The restoration of Jerusalem

- 1** Again the word of the YAHWEH of hosts came *to me*, saying,
2 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; I was jealous for Zion with great jealousy, and I was jealous for her with great fury. [Zech 1:14](#);
3 Thus saith the YAHWEH; I am returned unto Zion, and will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: and Jerusalem shall be called a city of truth; and the mountain of the YAHWEH of hosts the holy mountain.
4 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; There shall yet old men and old women dwell in the streets of Jerusalem, and every man with his staff in his hand for very age.
5 And the streets of the city shall be full of boys and girls playing in the streets thereof.
6 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; If it be marvellous in the eyes of the remnant of this people in these days, should it also be marvellous in mine eyes? saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Matt 19:26\]](#); [\[Mark 10:27\]](#); [\[Luke 1:37\]](#); [\[Luke 18:27\]](#);
7 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Behold, I will save my people from the east country, and from the west country;
8 And I will bring them, and they shall dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: and they shall be my people, and I will be their Elohim, in truth and in righteousness. [\[Heb 8:10\]](#); [\[Rev 21:7\]](#);

They are encouraged to build the temple by Elohim's favor to them

- 9** Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; Let your hands be strong, you that hear in these days these words by the mouth of the prophets, which *were* in the day *that* the foundation of the house of the YAHWEH of hosts was laid, that the temple might be built.
10 For before these days there was no hire for man, nor any hire for beast; neither *was there any* peace to him that went out or came in because of the affliction: for I set all men every one against his neighbour.
11 But now I *will* not *be* unto the residue of this people as in the former days, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.
12 For the seed *shall be* prosperous; the vine shall give her fruit, and the ground shall give her increase, and the heavens shall give their dew; and I will cause the remnant of this people to possess all these *things*.
13 And it shall come to pass, *that* as you were a curse among the heathen, O house of Judah, and house of Israel; so will I save you, and you shall be a blessing: fear not, *but* let your hands be strong.
14 For thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; As I thought to punish you, when your fathers provoked me to wrath, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and I repented not:
15 So again have I thought in these days to do well unto Jerusalem and to the house of Judah: fear you not.

Good works are required of them

- 16** These *are* the things that you shall do; Speak you every man the truth to his neighbour; execute the judgment of truth and peace in your gates: [Eph 4:25](#);
17 And let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his neighbour; and love no false oath: for all these *are things* that I hate, saith the YAHWEH. [Zech 7:10](#); [Zech 5:3-4](#);

Joy and enlargement are promised

- 18** And the word of the YAHWEH of hosts came unto me, saying,

19 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; The fast of the fourth *month*, and the fast of the fifth, and the fast of the seventh, and the fast of the tenth, shall be to the house of Judah joy and gladness, and cheerful feasts; therefore love the truth and peace.

20 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; *It shall yet come to pass*, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities:

21 And the inhabitants of one *city* shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to pray before the YAHWEH, and to seek the YAHWEH of hosts: I will go also.

22 Yes, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the YAHWEH of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the YAHWEH.

23 Thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts; In those days *it shall come to pass*, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard *that Elohim is* with you.

ZECHARIAH NINE

Elohim defends his church

1 The burden of the word of the YAHWEH in the land of Hadrach, and Damascus *shall be* the rest thereof: when the eyes of man, as of all the tribes of Israel, *shall be* toward the YAHWEH.

2 And Hamath also shall border thereby; Tyrus, and Zidon, though it be very wise.

3 And Tyrus did build herself a strong hold, and heaped up silver as the dust, and fine gold as the mire of the streets. [\[Isa 23:1\];](#)

4 Behold, the Lord will cast her out, and he will smite her power in the sea; and she shall be devoured with fire.

5 Ashkelon shall see *it*, and fear; Gaza also *shall see it*, and be very sorrowful, and Ekron; for her expectation shall be ashamed; and the king shall perish from Gaza, and Ashkelon shall not be inhabited.

6 And a bastard shall dwell in Ashdod, and I will cut off the pride of the Philistines.

7 And I will take away his blood out of his mouth, and his abominations from between his teeth: but he that remaineth, even he, *shall be* for our Elohim, and he shall be as a governor in Judah, and Ekron as a Jebusite.

8 And I will encamp about mine house because of the army, because of him that passeth by, and because of him that returneth: and no oppressor shall pass through them any more: for now have I seen with mine eyes.

Zion is exhorted to rejoice for the coming of the Messiah, and his peaceable kingdom

9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto you: he *is* just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass. [\[Isa 32:1\]; \[Zeph 3:14\]; \[Matt 21:5\]; \[John 1:45\]; \[John 12:15\];](#)

10 And I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim, and the horse from Jerusalem, and the battle bow shall be cut off: and he shall speak peace unto the heathen: and his dominion *shall be* from sea *even* to sea, and from the river *even* to the ends of the earth.

11 As for you also, by the blood of thy covenant I have sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit wherein *is* no water. [Matt 26:28; 1Cor 11:25; Heb 9:19-21;](#)

Elohim's promises of victory and defence

12 Turn you to the strong hold, you prisoners of hope: even to day do I declare *that* I will render double unto you;

13 When I have bent Judah for me, filled the bow with Ephraim, and raised up thy sons, O Zion, against thy sons, O Greece, and made you as the sword of a mighty man.

14 And the YAHWEH shall be seen over them, and his arrow shall go forth as the lightning: and the Lord GOD shall blow the trumpet, and shall go with whirlwinds of the south. [Nah 2:4](#);

15 The YAHWEH of hosts shall defend them; and they shall devour, and subdue with sling stones; and they shall drink, *and* make a noise as through wine; and they shall be filled like bowls, *and* as the corners of the altar.

16 And the YAHWEH their Elohim shall save them in that day as the flock of his people: for they *shall be as* the stones of a crown, lifted up as an ensign upon his land.

17 For how great *is* his goodness, and how great *is* his beauty! grain shall make the young men cheerful, and new wine the maids.

ZECHARIAH TEN

Elohim is to be sought unto, and not idols

1 Ask you of the YAHWEH rain in the time of the latter rain; *so* the YAHWEH shall make bright clouds, and give them showers of rain, to every one grass in the field.

2 For the idols have spoken vanity, and the diviners have seen a lie, and have told false dreams; they comfort in vain: therefore they went their way as a flock, they were troubled, because *there was* no shepherd. [Ecd 5:7](#); [\[Jer 10:8\]](#); [\[Jer 23:17\]](#);

As he visited his flock for sin, so he will save and restore them

3 Mine anger was kindled against the shepherds, and I punished the goats: for the YAHWEH of hosts has visited his flock the house of Judah, and has made them as his goodly horse in the battle.

4 Out of him came forth the corner, out of him the nail, out of him the battle bow, out of him every oppressor together.

5 And they shall be as mighty *men*, which tread down *their enemies* in the mire of the streets in the battle: and they shall fight, because the YAHWEH *is* with them, and the riders on horses shall be confounded.

6 And I will strengthen the house of Judah, and I will save the house of Joseph, and I will bring them again to place them; for I have mercy upon them: and they shall be as though I had not cast them off: for I *am* the YAHWEH their Elohim, and will hear them.

7 And *they of* Ephraim shall be like a mighty *man*, and their heart shall rejoice as through wine: yes, their children shall see *it*, and be glad; their heart shall rejoice in the YAHWEH.

8 I will hiss for them, and gather them; for I have redeemed them: and they shall increase as they have increased.

9 And I will sow them among the people: and they shall remember me in far countries; and they shall live with their children, and turn again.

10 I will bring them again also out of the land of Egypt, and gather them out of Assyria; and I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon; and *place* shall not be found for them.

11 And he shall pass through the sea with affliction, and shall smite the waves in the sea, and all the deeps of the river shall dry up: and the pride of Assyria shall be brought down, and the sceptre of Egypt shall depart away.

12 And I will strengthen them in the YAHWEH; and they shall walk up and down in his name, saith the YAHWEH.

The destruction of Jerusalem

1 Open thy doors, O Lebanon, that the fire may devour thy cedars.

2 Howl, fir tree; for the cedar is fallen; because the mighty are spoiled: howl, O you oaks of Bashan; for the forest of the vintage is come down.

The elect being cared for, the rest are rejected

3 *There is* a voice of the howling of the shepherds; for their glory is spoiled: a voice of the roaring of young lions; for the pride of Jordan is spoiled.

4 Thus saith the YAHWEH my Elohim; Feed the flock of the slaughter;

5 Whose possessors slay them, and hold themselves not guilty: and they that sell them say, Blessed *be* the YAHWEH; for I am rich: and their own shepherds pity them not.

6 For I will no more pity the inhabitants of the land, saith the YAHWEH: but, lo, I will deliver the men every one into his neighbour's hand, and into the hand of his king: and they shall smite the land, and out of their hand I will not deliver *them*.

7 And I will feed the flock of slaughter, *even* you, O poor of the flock. And I took unto me two staves; the one I called Beauty, and the other I called Bands; and I fed the flock.

8 Three shepherds also I cut off in one month; and my being lothed them, and their being also abhorred me.

9 Then said I, I will not feed you: that that dieth, let it die; and that that is to be cut off, let it be cut off; and let the rest eat every one the flesh of another. [[Jer 15:2](#)]; [[Jer 43:11](#)];

The staves of Beauty and Bands broken by the rejection of the Messiah

10 And I took my staff, *even* Beauty, and cut it asunder, that I might break my covenant which I had made with all the people.

11 And it was broken in that day: and so the poor of the flock that waited upon me knew that it *was* the word of the YAHWEH.

12 And I said unto them, If you think good, give *me* my price; and if not, forbear. So they weighed for my price thirty *pieces* of silver. [[Matt 26:15](#)]; [[Matt 27:9](#)];

13 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was prised at of them. And I took the thirty *pieces* of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the YAHWEH.

14 Then I cut asunder mine other staff, *even* Bands, that I might break the brotherhood between Judah and Israel.

The type and curse of a foolish shepherd

15 And the YAHWEH said unto me, Take unto you yet the instruments of a foolish shepherd.

16 For, lo, I will raise up a shepherd in the land, *which* shall not visit those that be cut off, neither shall seek the young one, nor heal that that is broken, nor feed that that standeth still: but he shall eat the flesh of the fat, and tear their claws in pieces. [[John 10:12](#)];

17 Woe to the idol shepherd that leaveth the flock! the sword *shall be* upon his arm, and upon his right eye: his arm shall be clean dried up, and his right eye shall be utterly darkened. [[Jer 23:1](#)]; [[Ezek 34:2](#)]; [[John 10:12](#)];

Jerusalem a cup of trembling to herself

1 The burden of the word of the YAHWEH for Israel, saith the YAHWEH, which stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him.

2 Behold, I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling unto all the people round about, when they shall be in the siege both against Judah *and* against Jerusalem.

and a burdensome stone to her adversaries

3 And in that day will I make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people: all that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces, though all the people of the earth be gathered together against it. [\[Isa 41:11\]](#); [\[Matt 21:44\]](#); [\[Luke 20:18\]](#);

4 In that day, saith the YAHWEH, I will smite every horse with astonishment, and his rider with madness: and I will open mine eyes upon the house of Judah, and will smite every horse of the people with blindness.

5 And the governors of Judah shall say in their heart, The inhabitants of Jerusalem *shall be* my strength in the YAHWEH of hosts their Elohim.

The victorious restoring of Judah

6 In that day will I make the governors of Judah like a hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire in a sheaf; and they shall devour all the people round about, on the right hand and on the left: and Jerusalem shall be inhabited again in her own place, *even* in Jerusalem.

7 The YAHWEH also shall save the tents of Judah first, that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem do not magnify *themselves* against Judah.

8 In that day shall the YAHWEH defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and he that is feeble among them at that day shall be as David; and the house of David *shall be* as Elohim, as the angel of the YAHWEH before them.

9 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.

The repentance of Jerusalem

10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for *his* only *son*, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for *his* firstborn. [Ezek 39:29](#); [Joel 2:28](#); [John 19:37](#); [Rev 1:17](#); [\[Acts 2:17\]](#); [\[Acts 2:37\]](#); [\[Rev 1:7\]](#);

11 In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon. [2Kgs 23:29](#); [2Chr 35:22](#); [2Chr 35:24](#);

12 And the land shall mourn, every family apart; the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of Nathan apart, and their wives apart;

13 The family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart; the family of Shimei apart, and their wives apart;

14 All the families that remain, every family apart, and their wives apart.

The fountain of purgation for Jerusalem

1 In that day there shall be a fountain opened to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem for sin and for uncleanness.

from idolatry, and false prophecy

2 And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, *that* I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they shall no more be remembered: and also I will cause the prophets and the unclean spirit to pass out of the land. [\[Exod 23:13\];](#)

3 And it shall come to pass, *that* when any shall yet prophesy, then his father and his mother that begat him shall say unto him, you shall not live; for you speakest lies in the name of the YAHWEH: and his father and his mother that begat him shall thrust him through when he prophesieth.

4 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the prophets shall be ashamed every one of his vision, when he has prophesied; neither shall they wear a rough garment to deceive:

5 But he shall say, I *am* no prophet, I *am* a husbandman; for man taught me to keep cattle from my youth.

6 And *one* shall say unto him, What *are* these wounds in thine hands? Then he shall answer, *Those* with which I was wounded *in* the house of my friends.

The death of the Messiah, and the trial of a third part

7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man *that is* my fellow, saith the YAHWEH of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones. [Matt 26:31; Mark 14:27; \[John 16:32\];](#)

8 And it shall come to pass, *that* in all the land, saith the YAHWEH, two parts therein shall be cut off *and* die; but the third shall be left therein.

9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It *is* my people: and they shall say, The YAHWEH *is* my Elohim. [1Pet 1:6-7; Ps 50:15; Ps 91:15; Ps 144:15; John 20:28;](#)

ZECHARIAH FOURTEEN

The destroyers of Jerusalem destroyed

1 Behold, the day of the YAHWEH cometh, and thy spoil shall be divided in the midst of you.

2 For I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle; and the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished; and half of the city shall go forth into captivity, and the residue of the people shall not be cut off from the city. [Isa 13:16;](#)

The coming of the Messiah, and the graces of his kingdom

3 Then shall the YAHWEH go forth, and fight against those nations, as when he fought in the day of battle. [Isa 42:13;](#)

4 And his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives, which *is* before Jerusalem on the east, and the mount of Olives shall cleave in the midst thereof toward the east and toward the west, *and there shall be* a very great valley; and half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it toward the south.

5 And you shall flee *to* the valley of the mountains; for the valley of the mountains shall reach unto Azal: yes, you shall flee, like as you fled from before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah: and the YAHWEH my Elohim shall come, *and* all the saints with you. [Amos 1:1;](#)

6 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the light shall not be clear, *nor* dark:

7 But it shall be one day which shall be known to the YAHWEH, not day, nor night: but it shall come to pass, *that* at evening time it shall be light. [Rev 21:25; \[Rev 21:23\]; \[Rev 22:5\];](#)

8 And it shall be in that day, *that* living waters shall go out from Jerusalem; half of them toward the former sea, and half of them toward the hinder sea: in summer and in winter shall it be. [Ezek 47:1](#); [Joel 3:18](#); [Rev 22:1](#);

9 And the YAHWEH shall be king over all the earth: in that day shall there be one YAHWEH, and his name one.

10 All the land shall be turned as a plain from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem: and it shall be lifted up, and inhabited in her place, from Benjamin's gate unto the place of the first gate, unto the corner gate, and *from* the tower of Hananeel unto the king's winepresses.

11 And *men* shall dwell in it, and there shall be no more utter destruction; but Jerusalem shall be safely inhabited.

The plague of Jerusalem's enemies

12 And this shall be the plague wherewith the YAHWEH will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth.

13 And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* a great tumult from the YAHWEH shall be among them; and they shall lay hold every one on the hand of his neighbour, and his hand shall rise up against the hand of his neighbour.

14 And Judah also shall fight at Jerusalem; and the wealth of all the heathen round about shall be gathered together, gold, and silver, and apparel, in great abundance.

15 And so shall be the plague of the horse, of the mule, of the camel, and of the ass, and of all the beasts that shall be in these tents, as this plague.

The remnant shall turn to the Lord

16 And it shall come to pass, *that* every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the YAHWEH of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles. [Isa 66:23](#);

17 And it shall be, *that* whoso will not come up of *all* the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the YAHWEH of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain.

18 And if the family of Egypt go not up, and come not, that *have* no *rain*; there shall be the plague, wherewith the YAHWEH will smite the heathen that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles.

19 This shall be the punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles.

and their spoils shall be holy

20 In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, HOLINESS UNTO THE YAHWEH; and the pots in the YAHWEH'S house shall be like the bowls before the altar.

21 Yes, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah shall be holiness unto the YAHWEH of hosts: and all they that sacrifice shall come and take of them, and seethe therein: and in that day there shall be no more the Canaanite in the house of the YAHWEH of hosts. [Isa 35:8](#); [Joel 3:17](#); [Rev 21:27](#); [Rev 22:15](#);

Malachi

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#)

MALACHI ONE

Malachi complains of Israel's unkindness

1 The burden of the word of the YAHWEH to Israel by Malachi.

of their irreligiousness and profaneness

2 I have loved you, saith the YAHWEH. yet you say, Wherein have you loved us? *Was* not Esau Jacob's brother? saith the YAHWEH: yet I loved Jacob, [Rom 9:13](#);

3 And I hated Esau, and laid his mountains and his heritage waste for the dragons of the wilderness.

4 Whereas Edom saith, We are impoverished, but we will return and build the desolate places; thus saith the YAHWEH of hosts, They shall build, but I will throw down; and they shall call them, The border of wickedness, and, The people against whom the YAHWEH has indignation for ever.

5 And your eyes shall see, and you shall say, The YAHWEH will be magnified from the border of Israel.

6 A son honoureth *his* father, and a servant his master: if then I *be* a father, where *is* mine honour? and if I *be* a master, where *is* my fear? saith the YAHWEH of hosts unto you, O priests, that despise my name. And you say, Wherein have we despised thy name? [\[Matt 23:9\]](#); [\[Luke 6:46\]](#);

7 You offer polluted bread upon mine altar; and you say, Wherein have we polluted you? In that you say, The table of the YAHWEH *is* contemptible.

8 And if you offer the blind for sacrifice, *is it* not evil? and if you offer the lame and sick, *is it* not evil? offer it now unto thy governor; will he be pleased with you, or accept thy person? saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Exod 12:5\]](#);

9 And now, I pray you, beseech Elohim that he will be gracious unto us: this has been by your means: will he regard your persons? saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

10 Who *is there* even among you that would shut the doors *for nought*? neither do you kindle *fire* on mine altar for nought. I have no pleasure in you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, neither will I accept an offering at your hand. [Isa 1:11](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Amos 5:21-22](#);

11 For from the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name *shall be* great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense *shall be* offered unto my name, and a pure offering: for my name *shall be* great among the heathen, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Ps 113:3\]](#); [\[Isa 19:21\]](#); [\[Luke 13:29\]](#);

12 But you have profaned it, in that you say, The table of the YAHWEH *is* polluted; and the fruit thereof, *even* his meat, *is* contemptible. [\[Lev 3:11\]](#);

13 You said also, Behold, what a weariness *is it!* and you have snuffed at it, saith the YAHWEH of hosts; and you brought *that which was* torn, and the lame, and the sick; thus you brought an offering: should I accept this of your hand? saith the YAHWEH.

14 But cursed *be* the deceiver, which has in his flock a male, and voweth, and sacrificeth unto the Lord a corrupt thing: for I *am* a great King, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, and my name *is* dreadful among the heathen.

MALACHI TWO

He sharply reproves the priests for neglecting their covenant

1 And now, O you priests, this commandment *is* for you.

2 If you will not hear, and if you will not lay *it* to heart, to give glory unto my name, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, I will even send a curse upon you, and I will curse your blessings: yes, I have cursed them already, because you do not lay *it* to heart. [Lev 26:14](#); [Deut 28:15](#); [\[Prov 3:33\]](#);

3 Behold, I will corrupt your seed, and spread dung upon your faces, *even* the dung of your solemn feasts; and *one* shall take you away with it.

4 And you shall know that I have sent this commandment unto you, that my covenant might be with Levi, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

5 My covenant was with him of life and peace; and I gave them to him *for* the fear wherewith he feared me, and was afraid before my name.

6 The law of truth was in his mouth, and iniquity was not found in his lips: he walked with me in peace and equity, and did turn many away from iniquity. [\[Matt 23:3\]](#);

7 For the priest's lips should keep knowledge, and they should seek the law at his mouth: for he *is* the messenger of the YAHWEH of hosts. [\[Deut 17:8\]](#); [\[Jer 18:18\]](#); [\[Gal 4:14\]](#); [\[Rev 1:20\]](#);

8 But you are departed out of the way; you have caused many to stumble at the law; you have corrupted the covenant of Levi, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

9 Therefore have I also made you contemptible and base before all the people, according as you have not kept my ways, but have been partial in the law.

and the people for marrying strange wives

10 Have we not all one father? has not one Elohim created us? why do we deal treacherously every man against his brother, by profaning the covenant of our fathers? [\[1Cor 8:6\]](#); [\[Eph 4:5\]](#);

11 Judah has dealt treacherously, and an abomination is committed in Israel and in Jerusalem; for Judah has profaned the holiness of the YAHWEH which he loved, and has married the daughter of a strange god.

12 The YAHWEH will cut off the man that doeth this, the master and the scholar, out of the tabernacles of Jacob, and him that offereth an offering unto the YAHWEH of hosts.

and for putting away their former ones

13 And this have you done again, covering the altar of the YAHWEH with tears, with weeping, and with crying out, insomuch that he regardeth not the offering any more, or receiveth *it* with good will at your hand.

14 Yet you say, Wherefore? Because the YAHWEH has been witness between you and the wife of thy youth, against whom you have dealt treacherously: yet *is* she thy companion, and the wife of thy covenant. [\[Gen 2:23\]](#); [\[1Cor 7:10\]](#);

15 And did not he make one? yet had he the residue of the spirit. And wherefore one? That he might seek a godly seed. Therefore take heed to your spirit, and let none deal treacherously against the wife of his youth.

16 For the YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, saith that he hateth putting away: for *one* covereth violence with his garment, saith the YAHWEH of hosts: therefore take heed to your spirit, that you deal not treacherously.

and for infidelity

17 You have wearied the YAHWEH with your words. yet you say, Wherein have we wearied *him*? When you say, Every one that doeth evil *is* good in the sight of the YAHWEH, and he delighteth in them; or, Where *is* the Elohim of judgment?

Of the messenger, majesty, and grace of the Messiah

1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom you seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom you delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [Matt 11:10](#); [Mark 1:2](#); [Luke 1:76](#); [Luke 7:27](#); [\[John 1:6\]](#); [\[John 3:28\]](#);

2 But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeareth? for he *is* like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap:

3 And he shall sit *as* a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the YAHWEH an offering in righteousness. [\[Isa 1:25\]](#);

4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the YAHWEH, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in *his* wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger *from his right*, and fear not me, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. [Exod 20:7](#); [Exod 22:22](#); [Deut 24:17](#); [Amos 2:7](#);

6 For I *am* the YAHWEH, I change not; therefore you sons of Jacob are not consumed. [Ps 33:11](#); [Prov 19:21](#); [Isa 14:26-27](#); [Isa 25:9](#); [Isa 46:10](#); [\[Jas 1:17\]](#);

Of the rebellion

7 Even from the days of your fathers you are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept *them*. Return unto me, and I will return unto you, saith the YAHWEH of hosts. But you said, Wherein shall we return? [Zech 1:3](#); [\[2Kgs 17:14\]](#);

sacrilege

8 Will a man rob Elohim? yet you have robbed me. But you say, Wherein have we robbed you? In tithes and offerings.

9 You *are* cursed with a curse: for you have robbed me, *even* this whole nation.

10 Bring you all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house, and prove me now herewith, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that *there shall not be room enough to receive it*. [\[Prov 3:9\]](#);

11 And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

12 And all nations shall call you blessed: for you shall be a delightsome land, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

and infidelity of the people

13 Your words have been stout against me, saith the YAHWEH. yet you say, What have we spoken *so much* against you? [Job 21:14-15](#);

14 You have said, It *is* vain to serve Elohim: and what profit *is it* that we have kept his ordinance, and that we have walked mournfully before the YAHWEH of hosts? [\[Job 9:22\]](#); [\[Job 21:15\]](#);

15 And now we call the proud happy; yes, they that work wickedness are set up; yes, *they that* tempt Elohim are even delivered.

The promise of blessing to them that fear Elohim

16 Then they that feared the YAHWEH spoke often one to another: and the YAHWEH hearkened, and heard *it*, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the YAHWEH, and that thought upon his name.

17 And they shall be mine, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

18 Then shall you return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth Elohim and him that serveth him not.

MALACHI FOUR

Elohim's judgment on the wicked

1 For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yes, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the YAHWEH of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. [Obad 1:18](#);

and his blessing on the good

2 But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and you shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. [\[Luke 1:78\]](#);

3 And you shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do *this*, saith the YAHWEH of hosts.

He exhorts to the study of the law

4 Remember you the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, *with* the statutes and judgments. [Deut 6:3](#);

and tells of Elijah's coming and office

5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the YAHWEH: [Matt 11:14](#); [Matt 17:11-13](#); [Mark 9:11-13](#); [Luke 1:7](#); [\[Matt 17:10\]](#); [\[Mark 9:11\]](#); [\[Mark 9:13\]](#); [\[Luke 1:76\]](#);

6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with complete destruction. [\[Luke 1:16\]](#); [\[Luke 1:17\]](#);

Matthew

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#)

MATTHEW ONE

The genealogy of Yahushua from Abraham to Joseph

- 1** *The book of the generation of Yahushua the Messiah, the son of David, the son of Abraham.* [Luke 1:31-32](#); [\[Luke 2:4\]](#); [\[Rom 1:3\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:8\]](#);
- 2** Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac begat Jacob; and Jacob begat Judah and his brethren; [Gen 21:2](#); [Gen 25:26](#); [Gen 29:35](#);
- 3** And Judah begat Phares and Zara of Thamar; and Phares begat Esrom; and Esrom begat Aram; [Gen 38:27](#); [Gen 38:29](#); [Ruth 4:18](#); [1Chr 2:5](#); [Ruth 4:19](#); [1Chr 2:9](#); [\[Ruth 4:12\]](#); [\[1Chr 2:4\]](#); [\[1Chr 2:10\]](#); [\[Heb 7:14\]](#);
- 4** And Aram begat Aminadab; and Aminadab begat Naasson; and Naasson begat Salmon;
- 5** And Salmon begat Boaz of Rachab; and Boaz begat Obed of Ruth; and Obed begat Jesse; [\[Ruth 2:1\]](#);
- 6** And Jesse begat David the king; and David the king begat Solomon of her *that had been the wife* of Uriah; [Ruth 4:22](#); [1Sam 16:1](#); [1Sam 17:12](#); [1Chr 2:15](#); [1Chr 12:18](#); [\[Gen 17:6\]](#); [\[Gen 35:11\]](#); [\[2Sam 12:24\]](#);
- 7** And Solomon begat Roboam; and Roboam begat Abia; and Abia begat Asa; [1Kgs 11:43](#); [1Chr 3:10](#);
- 8** And Asa begat Josaphat; and Josaphat begat Joram; and Joram begat Uzziah;
- 9** And Uzziah begat Joatham; and Joatham begat Ahaz; and Ahaz begat Hezekiah;
- 10** And Hezekiah begat Manasseh; and Manasseh begat Amon; and Amon begat Josiah; [\[2Kgs 21:26\]](#);
- 11** And Josiah begat Jeconiah and his brethren, about the time they were carried away to Babylon: [1Chr 3:16](#); [\[2Kgs 23:34\]](#); [\[1Chr 3:17\]](#);
- 12** And after they were brought to Babylon, Jeconiah begat Salathiel; and Salathiel begat Zorobabel; [1Chr 3:17](#); [Ezra 3:2](#);
- 13** And Zorobabel begat Abiud; and Abiud begat Abner; and Abner begat Eliakim; and Eliakim begat Azor;
- 14** And Azor begat Sadoc; and Sadoc begat Achim; and Achim begat Eliud;
- 15** And Eliud begat Eleazar; and Eleazar begat Matthan; and Matthan begat Jacob;
- 16** And Jacob begat Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom was born Yahushua, who is called the Messiah. [\[John 1:14\]](#);
- 17** So all the generations from Abraham to David *are* fourteen generations; and from David until the carrying away into Babylon *are* fourteen generations; and from the carrying away into Babylon unto the Messiah *are* fourteen generations.

He is miraculously conceived of the Holy Spirit by the Virgin Mary, when she was espoused to Joseph

- 18** Now the birth of Yahushua the Messiah happened this way: While his mother Mary was betrothed to Joseph, before they came together, she was found pregnant through the power of the Holy Spirit. [Luke 1:27](#); [Luke 1:34](#);

The angel satisfies the doubts of Joseph, and declares the name and office of the Messiah: Yahushua is born

- 19** Then Joseph her husband to be, being a just *man*, and not willing to expose her, intended to release her privately.
- 20** But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, you son of David, fear not to take unto you Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit.

21 And she shall bring forth a son, and you shall call his name Yahushua: for he shall save his people from their sins. [Luke 1:31](#); [Acts 4:12](#); [[Luke 2:21](#)];

22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by YAHWEH through the prophet, saying,

23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which means "Elohim with us." [Isa 7:14](#);

24 Then Joseph being raised from sleep did as the angel of the Lord had commanded him, and took unto him his wife:

25 And did not have marital relations with her till she had brought forth her firstborn son: and he called his name Yahushua. [Luke 2:21](#); [[Luke 2:7](#)];

The wise men from the east enquire after the Messiah

1 After the birth of Yahushua in Bethlehem of Judaea in the days of Herod the king, behold, there came wise men from the east to Jerusalem, [Luke 2:4](#);

2 Saying, Where is he that is born King of the Jews? for we have seen his star in the east, and have come to worship him.

at which Herod is alarmed

3 When Herod the king had heard *these things*, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him.

4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he inquired of them where the Messiah should be born.

5 And they said unto him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet,

6 **And you Bethlehem, *in* the land of Juda, are not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of you shall come a Ruler, who shall shepherd my people Israel.** [Mic 5:2](#); [John 7:42](#); [[Gen 49:10](#)];

7 Then Herod, when he had privately called the wise men, inquired of them diligently what time the star appeared.

8 And he sent them to Bethlehem, and said, Go and search diligently for the young child; and when you have found *him*, bring me word again, that I may come and worship him also.

They are directed by a star to Bethlehem, worship him, and offer their presents

9 When they had heard the king, they departed; and, lo, the star, which they saw in the east, went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was.

10 When they saw the star, they rejoiced with exceeding great joy.

11 And when they had come into the house, they saw the young child with Mary his mother, and fell down, and worshipped him: and when they had opened their treasures, they presented unto him gifts; gold, and frankincense, and myrrh.

12 And being warned of Elohim in a dream that they should not return to Herod, they departed into their own country another way.

Joseph flees into Egypt with Yahushua and his mother

13 And when they had departed, behold, the angel of the Lord appeareth to Joseph in a dream, saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and flee into Egypt, and be you there until I bring you word: for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him. [[Matt 10:23](#)];

14 When he arose, he took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt:

15 And was there until the death of Herod: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, **Out of Egypt have I called my son.** [Hos 11:1](#);

Herod slays the children

16 Then Herod, when he saw that he was tricked of the wise men, was exceedingly enraged, and sent forth, and slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all its districts, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently inquired of the wise men.

17 Then was fulfilled that which was spoken by Jeremiah the prophet, saying, [[Jer 31:15](#)];

18 **In Rama was there a voice heard, lamentation, and weeping, and great mourning, Rachel weeping *for* her children, and would not be comforted, because they are not.** [Jer 31:15](#);

19 But when Herod was dead, behold, an angel of the Lord appeareth in a dream to Joseph in Egypt,

himself dies

20 Saying, Arise, and take the young child and his mother, and go into the land of Israel: for they are dead which sought the young child's life.

21 And he arose, and took the young child and his mother, and came into the land of Israel.

22 But when he heard that Archelaus did reign in Judaea in the room of his father Herod, he was afraid to go thither: notwithstanding, being warned of Elohim in a dream, he turned aside into the parts of Galilee:

Yahushua is brought back again into Galilee to Nazareth

23 And he came and dwelt in a city called Nazareth: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, He shall be called a Nazarene. [Isa 11:1](#); [Isa 60:21](#); [Zech 6:12](#);

MATTHEW THREE

John preaches: his office, life, and baptism

- 1** In those days came John the Baptist, preaching in the wilderness of Judaea, [Mark 1:4](#); [Luke 3:3](#); [[Matt 21:32](#)]; [[John 1:6](#)]; [[Acts 13:24](#)];
- 2** And saying, Repent you: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. [[Ezek 18:30](#)]; [[Luke 1:17](#)]; [[Acts 20:21](#)];
- 3** For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, **The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare you the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.** [Isa 40:3](#); [Mark 1:3](#); [Luke 3:4](#); [John 1:23](#);
- 4** And the same John had his raiment of camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins; and his meat was locusts and wild honey. [Mark 1:6](#); [[Matt 11:18](#)]; [[Luke 7:33](#)]; [[Heb 11:37](#)];
- 5** Then went out to him Jerusalem, and all Judaea, and all the region round about Jordan, [[Mark 1:5](#)];
- 6** And were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins. [Mark 1:5](#); [[John 3:23](#)]; [[Acts 19:18](#)];

He reprehends the Pharisees

- 7** But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who has warned you to flee from the wrath to come? [Luke 3:7](#); [Matt 12:34](#); [Matt 23:33](#);
- 8** Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance: [Luke 3:8](#);
- 9** And think not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham to *our* father: for I say unto you, that Elohim is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham. [John 8:39](#); [[Luke 3:8](#)]; [[John 8:33](#)];
- 10** And behold, the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is cut down, and cast into the fire. [Matt 7:19](#); [John 15:6](#); [[Matt 7:17](#)]; [[Luke 3:9](#)];
- 11** I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit, and *with* fire: [Mark 1:7](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [John 1:15](#); [John 1:26](#); [Acts 1:5](#); [Acts 11:16](#); [Acts 19:4](#); [[Mark 1:8](#)]; [[John 1:33](#)]; [[John 3:26](#)]; [[Acts 2:4](#)]; [[Acts 13:25](#)];
- 12** Whose fan *is* in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner; but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire. [[Matt 13:30](#)]; [[Luke 3:17](#)];

and baptizes Yahushua in Jordan

- 13** Then cometh Yahushua from Galilee to Jordan unto John, to be baptized of him. [Mark 1:9](#); [Luke 3:21](#);
- 14** But John forbad him, saying, I have need to be baptized of you, and you come to me? [[John 13:7](#)];
- 15** And Yahushua answering said unto him, **Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness.** Then he suffered him.
- 16** And Yahushua, when he was baptized, went up immediately out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of Elohim descending like a dove, and lighting upon him: [Isa 11:2](#); [Isa 42:1](#); [John 1:32](#); [[Mark 1:10](#)];
- 17** And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 12:18](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [[Mark 1:11](#)]; [[Mark 9:7](#)]; [[John 5:32](#)]; [[John 5:37](#)]; [[John 6:27](#)]; [[John 8:18](#)]; [[Eph 1:6](#)];

MATTHEW FOUR

Yahushua, fasting forty days, is tempted of the devil and ministered unto by angels

- 1** Then was Yahushua led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. [Mark 1:12](#); [Luke 4:1](#); [\[Gen 3:15\]](#);
- 2** And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward a hungered. [\[1Kgs 19:8\]](#);
- 3** And when the tempter came to him, he said, If you be the Son of Elohim, command that these stones be made bread.
- 4** But he answered and said, **It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of Elohim.** [Deut 8:3](#); [\[Luke 4:4\]](#);
- 5** Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple,
- 6** And saith unto him, If you be the Son of Elohim, cast thyself down: for it is written, **He shall give his angels charge concerning you: and in *their* hands they shall bear you up, lest at any time you dash thy foot against a stone.** [Ps 91:11-12](#); [\[Ps 91:11\]](#);
- 7** Yahushua said unto him, **It is written again, you shall not tempt the Lord thy Elohim.** [Deut 6:16](#);
- 8** Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them;
- 9** And saith unto him, All these things will I give you, if you will fall down and worship me.
- 10** Then saith Yahushua unto him, **Get you hence, Satan: for it is written, you shall worship the Lord thy Elohim, and him only shall you serve.** [Deut 6:13](#); [Deut 10:20](#); [\[1Sam 7:3\]](#);
- 11** Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

He dwells in Capernaum

- 12** Now when Yahushua had heard that John was arrested, he departed into Galilee; [Mark 1:14](#); [Luke 4:14](#); [Luke 4:16](#); [Luke 4:31](#); [John 4:43](#); [\[Matt 10:23\]](#); [\[Acts 10:37\]](#);
- 13** And leaving Nazareth, he came and dwelt in Capernaum, which is upon the sea coast, in the borders of Zabulon and Nephthalim: [\[Mark 1:21\]](#); [\[Luke 4:23\]](#); [\[Luke 4:31\]](#);
- 14** That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,
- 15 The land of Zabulon, and the land of Nephthalim, *by* the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles;** [Isa 9:1-2](#); [\[Isa 9:1\]](#); [\[Isa 9:2\]](#);
- 16 The people which sat in darkness saw great light; and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up.**

begins to preach

- 17** From that time Yahushua began to preach, and to say, **Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.** [Mark 1:15](#); [\[Heb 2:3\]](#);

calls Peter and Andrew

- 18** And Yahushua, walking by the sea of Galilee, saw two brethren, Simon called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers. [Mark 1:16](#);
- 19** And he saith unto them, **Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.** [\[Luke 5:10\]](#);
- 20** And they immediately left *their* nets, and followed him. [\[Matt 19:27\]](#); [\[Mark 10:28\]](#); [\[Luke 5:11\]](#); [\[Luke 18:28\]](#);

James and John

- 21** And going on from thence, he saw other two brethren, James *the son* of Zebedee, and John his brother, in a boat with Zebedee their father, mending their nets; and he called them. [\[Mark 1:19\]](#); [\[John 21:2\]](#); [\[Acts 12:2\]](#);

22 And they immediately left the boat and their father, and followed him.

teaches and heals all the diseased

23 And Yahushua went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people. [\[Matt 13:19\];](#)

24 And his fame went throughout all Syria: and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with various diseases and torments, and those which were possessed with demons, and those which were lunatick, and those that had the palsy; and he healed them.

25 And there followed him great multitudes of people from Galilee, and *from* Decapolis, and *from* Jerusalem, and *from* Judaea, and *from* beyond Jordan. [\[Mark 3:7\];](#) [\[Luke 6:17\];](#)

MATTHEW FIVE

Yahushua's sermon on the mount

1 And seeing the multitudes, he went up into a mountain: and when he was set, his disciples came unto him:

2 And he opened his mouth, and taught them, saying, [\[Luke 6:20\]](#);

Who are blessed

3 Blessed *are* the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. [Luke 6:20](#); [\[Jas 2:5\]](#);

4 Blessed *are* they that mourn: for they shall be comforted. [Luke 6:21](#); [\[Jas 4:9\]](#);

5 Blessed *are* the meek: for they shall inherit the earth. [Ps 37:11](#);

6 Blessed *are* they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled. [Isa 55:1](#); [\[Isa 41:17\]](#);

7 Blessed *are* the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy.

8 Blessed *are* the pure in heart: for they shall see Elohim. [Ps 15:2](#); [Ps 24:4](#); [Heb 12:14](#);

9 Blessed *are* the peacemakers: for they shall be called the children of Elohim.

10 Blessed *are* they which are persecuted for righteousness' sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. [2Cor 4:10](#); [2Tim 2:12](#); [1Pet 3:14](#); [\[1Pet 2:19\]](#); [\[1Pet 4:14\]](#);

11 Blessed are you, when *men* shall revile you, and persecute *you*, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake. [1Pet 4:14](#); [\[Luke 6:22\]](#); [\[2Cor 4:11\]](#); [\[Jas 1:2\]](#); [\[Jas 5:11\]](#);

12 Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great *is* your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you. [Luke 6:23](#); [\[Acts 5:41\]](#); [\[Rom 8:18\]](#); [\[2Cor 4:17\]](#); [\[2Cor 7:4\]](#); [\[1Thess 5:16\]](#); [\[Heb 10:34\]](#); [\[1John 3:2\]](#);

the salt of the earth

13 You are the salt of the earth: but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be salted? it is thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of men. [Mark 9:50](#); [Luke 14:34](#);

the light of the world

14 You are the light of the world. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid. [\[Phil 2:15\]](#);

15 Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house. [Mark 4:21](#); [Luke 8:16](#); [Luke 11:33](#);

16 Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven. [1Pet 2:12](#);

He came to fulfil the law

17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil. [\[Rom 10:4\]](#); [\[Gal 3:24\]](#); [\[Gal 4:4\]](#);

18 For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled. [Luke 16:17](#);

19 Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach *them*, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven. [Jas 2:10](#); [\[Jas 1:25\]](#);

20 For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, you shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

What it is to kill

21 *you* have heard that it was said by them of old time, you shall not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment: [Exod 20:13](#); [Deut 5:17](#); [\[1John 3:15\]](#);

22 But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother 'I spit on you', shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say 'You are a coward', shall be in danger of hell fire.

23 Therefore if you bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother has ought against you;

24 Leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way; first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift.

25 Agree with thine adversary quickly, whiles you are in the way with him; lest at any time the adversary deliver you to the judge, and the judge deliver you to the officer, and you be cast into prison. [Luke 12:58](#); [Eph 4:26](#); [[Matt 18:25](#)];

26 Verily I say unto you, you shall by no means come out thence, till you have paid the uttermost farthing.

to commit adultery

27 You have heard that it was said, you shall not commit adultery: [Exod 20:14](#); [Deut 5:18](#); [[Jas 2:11](#)];

28 But I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her has committed adultery with her already in his heart. [Job 31:1](#); [Ps 119:37](#);

29 And if thy right eye offend you, pluck it out, and cast *it* from you: for it is profitable for you that one of thy members should perish, and not *that* thy whole body should be cast into hell. [Matt 18:8](#); [Mark 9:43](#);

30 And if thy right hand offend you, cut it off, and cast *it* from you: for it is profitable for you that one of thy members should perish, and not *that* thy whole body should be cast into hell. [[Mark 9:43](#)];

31 It has been said, Whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement: [Deut 24:1](#); [[Mark 10:4](#)];

32 But I say unto you, That whosoever shall put away his wife, even for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery: and whosoever shall marry her that is divorced committeth adultery. [Matt 19:7](#); [Mark 10:4](#); [Mark 10:11](#); [Luke 16:18](#); [1Cor 7:10](#); [[Matt 19:9](#)]; [[Rom 7:3](#)];

to swear

33 Again, you have heard that it has been said by them of old time, you shall not forswear thyself, but shall perform unto the Lord thine oaths: [Exod 20:7](#); [Lev 19:12](#); [Deut 5:11](#);

34 But I say unto you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven; for it is Elohim's throne: [Jas 5:12](#); [[2Chr 2:6](#)]; [[Matt 23:22](#)]; [[Acts 7:49](#)];

35 Nor by the earth; for it is his footstool: neither by Jerusalem; for it is the city of the great King. [Isa 66:1](#); [Ps 48:2](#);

36 Neither shall you swear by thy head, because you canst not make one hair white or black.

37 But let your communication be, yes, yes; Nay, nay: for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil. [[2Cor 1:18](#)];

He exhorts to suffer wrong

38 You have heard that it has been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: [Exod 21:24](#); [Lev 24:20](#); [Deut 19:21](#);

39 But I say unto you, That you resist not evildoer: but whosoever shall smite you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also. [Prov 24:29](#); [Luke 6:29](#); [Rom 12:17](#); [1Cor 6:7](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [1Pet 3:9](#); [[Lev 19:18](#)]; [[Rom 12:19](#)];

40 And if any man will sue you at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have *thy* cloke also.

41 And whosoever compels you to go a mile, go with him twain.

42 Give to him that asketh you, and from him that would borrow of you turn not you away. [Deut 15:8](#); [Luke 6:35](#); [[Deut 15:10](#)]; [[Luke 6:30](#)]; [[Luke 6:34](#)];

to love our enemies

43 You have heard that it has been said, you shall love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. [Lev 19:18](#);

44 But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; [Luke 6:27](#); [Rom 12:20](#); [Luke 23:34](#); [Acts 7:60](#); [1Cor 4:13](#); [1Pet 2:23](#); [[Lev 19:18](#)]; [[Job 31:30](#)]; [[Rom 12:14](#)]; [[1Cor 4:12](#)];

45 That you may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. [\[Luke 6:35\];](#)

46 For if you love them which love you, what reward have you? do not even the publicans the same? [Luke 6:32;](#)

47 And if you salute your brethren only, what do you more *than others?* do not even the publicans so?

and to labour after perfection

48 Become you therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.

Yahushua continues his sermon on the mount, exhorting not to be careful for worldly things

- 1** Take heed that you do not your alms before men, to be seen of them: otherwise you have no reward of your Father which is in heaven. [\[Rom 12:8\];](#)
- 2** Therefore when you do *thine* alms, do not sound a trumpet before you, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. [Rom 12:8;](#)
- 3** But when you do alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth:
- 4** That thine alms may be in secret: and thy Father which seeth in secret himself shall reward you openly. [Luke 14:14;](#)
- 5** And when you prayest, you shall not be as the hypocrites *are*: for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. [\[Matt 23:5\];](#)
- 6** But you, when you prayest, enter into thy closet, and when you have shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward you openly. [2Kgs 4:33; Acts 10:4; \[Acts 10:9\];](#)
- 7** But when you pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen *do*: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. [1Kgs 18:28; Isa 1:15;](#)
- 8** Be not you therefore like unto them: for your Father knoweth what things you have need of, before you ask him.
- 9** After this manner therefore pray you: Our Father which are in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. [Luke 11:2;](#)
- 10** Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as *it is* in heaven. [\[Acts 21:14\];](#)
- 11** Give us this day our daily bread.
- 12** And forgive us our sins, as we forgive those who sin against us.
- 13** And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen. [Matt 13:19; \[1Chr 29:11\]; \[2Chr 20:6\];](#)
- 14** For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you: [Mark 11:25; Col 3:13; \[Matt 18:22\]; \[Matt 18:35\]; \[Eph 4:32\];](#)
- 15** But if you forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses. [Matt 18:35; Jas 2:13;](#)
- 16** Moreover when you fast, be not, as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance: for they disfigure their faces, that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. [Isa 58:3; Matt 9:14; Mark 2:18; Luke 5:33;](#)
- 17** But you, when you fastest, anoint thine head, and wash thy face;
- 18** That you appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father which is in secret: and thy Father, which seeth in secret, shall reward you.
- 19** Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break through and steal: [Prov 23:4; Heb 13:5; Jas 5:1; \[Matt 19:21\]; \[Mark 10:21\]; \[Luke 16:9\]; \[Luke 18:22\]; \[Jas 5:3\];](#)
- 20** But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break through nor steal: [Luke 12:33; 1Tim 6:19;](#)
- 21** For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.
- 22** The light of the body is the eye: if therefore thine eye is pure, thy whole body shall be full of light. [Luke 11:34;](#)
- 23** But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in you be darkness, how great *is* that darkness!
- 24** No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. you cannot serve Elohim and mammon. [Luke 16:13;](#)

25 Therefore I say unto you, Take no thought for your life, what you shall eat, or what you shall drink; nor yet for your body, what you shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment? [Ps 37:5](#); [Ps 55:22](#); [Luke 12:22](#); [Phil 4:6](#); [1Tim 6:8](#); [1Pet 5:7](#); [[Prov 16:3](#)];

26 Behold the fowls of the air: for they sow not, neither do they reap, nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are you not much better than they? [Job 38:41](#); [Ps 147:9](#);

27 Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature? [[Luke 12:25](#)];

28 And why take you thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin:

29 And yet I say unto you, That even Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.

30 Wherefore, if Elohim so clothe the grass of the field, which to day is, and to morrow is cast into the oven, *shall he* not much more *clothe* you, O you of little faith?

31 Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

32 (For after all these things do the Gentiles seek:) for your heavenly Father knoweth that you have need of all these things.

but to seek Elohim's kingdom

33 But seek you first the kingdom of Elohim, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you. [1Kgs 3:13](#); [Ps 37:25](#); [Ps 55:22](#);

34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day *is* the evil thereof.

MATTHEW SEVEN

Yahushua, continuing his sermon on the mount, reproves rash judgment, etc

- 1** Judge not, that you be not judged. [Luke 6:37](#); [Rom 2:1](#); [1Cor 4:3](#); [1Cor 4:5](#); [\[Jas 3:1\]](#);
- 2** For with what judgment you judge, you shall be judged: and with what measure you mete, it shall be measured to you. [Mark 4:24](#); [Luke 6:38](#);
- 3** And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye? [Luke 6:41-42](#); [\[Luke 6:41\]](#);
- 4** Or how wilt thou say to thy brother, Let me pull out the mote out of thine eye; and, behold, a beam *is* in thine own eye?
- 5** Thou hypocrite, first cast out the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast out the mote out of thy brother's eye. [Prov 18:17](#);
- 6** Do not hang earrings on dogs, neither cast your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you. [Prov 9:8](#); [Prov 23:9](#);
- 7** Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and you shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5-6](#); [1John 3:22](#); [1John 5:14](#); [\[2Chr 15:2\]](#); [\[John 15:7\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#); [\[Jas 1:5\]](#);
- 8** For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh finds; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. [Prov 8:17](#); [Jer 29:12](#); [\[1John 3:22\]](#); [\[1John 5:14\]](#);
- 9** Or what man is there of you, whom if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? [\[Luke 11:11\]](#);
- 10** Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?
- 11** If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him? [Gen 6:5](#); [Gen 8:21](#);
- 12** Therefore all things whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets. [Luke 6:31](#);
- 13** Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide *is* the gate, and broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: [Luke 13:24](#);
- 14** Because strait *is* the gate, and narrow *is* the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it. [Acts 14:22](#);
- 15** Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. [Deut 13:3](#); [Jer 23:16](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Rom 16:17](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [Col 2:8](#); [1John 4:1](#);
- 16** You shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? [\[Luke 6:44\]](#);
- 17** Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. [Matt 3:10](#); [Matt 12:33](#); [Mark 11:13](#); [Luke 8:8](#); [\[Luke 6:43\]](#);
- 18** A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither *can* a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. [\[Matt 12:33\]](#);
- 19** Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. [\[Matt 3:10\]](#); [\[Luke 3:9\]](#); [\[John 15:6\]](#);
- 20** Wherefore by their fruits you shall know them.
- 21** Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. [Matt 25:11](#); [Luke 6:46](#); [Luke 13:25](#); [Acts 19:13](#); [Rom 2:13](#); [Jas 1:22](#); [\[Luke 11:28\]](#);
- 22** Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out demons? and in thy name done many wonderful works? [Jer 14:14](#); [Jer 27:15](#); [Luke 13:26](#); [\[1Cor 13:2\]](#);
- 23** And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, you that work iniquity. [Ps 6:8](#); [Matt 25:12](#); [Luke 13:25](#); [Luke 13:27](#); [Matt 25:41](#);
- 24** Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock: [Jer 17:8](#); [Luke 6:47](#); [Rom 2:13](#); [Jas 1:25](#);
- 25** And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.

26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand: [Ezek 13:11](#); [Rom 2:13](#); [Jas 1:23](#); [\[Jas 2:14\]](#);

27 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell: and great was the fall of it.

Yahushua ends his sermon, and the people are astonished

28 And it came to pass, when Yahushua had ended these sayings, the people were astonished at his doctrine: [\[Matt 22:33\]](#); [\[Mark 1:22\]](#); [\[Luke 2:47\]](#);

29 For he taught them as *one* having authority, and not as the scribes. [Mark 1:22](#); [Mark 6:2](#); [Luke 4:32](#);

Yahushua cleanses the leper

- 1** When he was come down from the mountain, great multitudes followed him.
- 2** And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying, Lord, if you wilt, you canst make me clean. [Mark 1:40](#); [Luke 5:12](#);
- 3** And Yahushua put forth *his* hand, and touched him, saying, **I will; be you clean.** And immediately his leprosy was cleansed.
- 4** And Yahushua saith unto him, **See you tell no man; but go thy way, show thyself to the priest, and offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them.** [Luke 5:14](#); [Lev 13:2](#); [Lev 14:2](#); [[Luke 17:14](#)];

heals the centurion's servant

- 5** And when Yahushua was entered into Capernaum, there came unto him a centurion, beseeching him, [Luke 7:1](#);
- 6** And saying, Lord, my servant lies at home sick of the palsy, grievously tormented.
- 7** And Yahushua saith unto him, **I will come and heal him.**
- 8** The centurion answered and said, Lord, I am not worthy that you should come under my roof: but speak the word only, and my servant shall be healed. [Ps 107:20](#);
- 9** For I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me: and I say to this *man*, Go, and he goes; and to another, Come, and he cometh; and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth *it*.
- 10** When Yahushua heard *it*, he marvelled, and said to them that followed, **Verily I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel.**
- 11** **And I say unto you, That many shall come from the east and west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven.** [Luke 13:29](#); [[Luke 13:28](#)];
- 12** **But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.** [Matt 21:43](#); [Matt 13:42](#); [Matt 22:13](#); [Matt 24:51](#); [Luke 13:28](#); [[Matt 25:30](#)]; [[Acts 13:46](#)];
- 13** And Yahushua said unto the centurion, **Go thy way; and as you have believed, so be it done unto you.** And his servant was healed in the selfsame hour.

Peter's mother in law

- 14** And when Yahushua was come into Peter's house, he saw his wife's mother laid, and sick of a fever. [Mark 1:29](#); [Luke 4:38](#); [[Acts 28:8](#)]; [[1Cor 9:5](#)];
- 15** And he touched her hand, and the fever left her: and she arose, and ministered unto them.

and many other diseased

- 16** When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with demons: and he cast out the spirits with *his* word, and healed all that were sick: [[Mark 1:32](#)]; [[Luke 4:40](#)];
- 17** That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, **Himself took our infirmities, and bore *our* sicknesses.** [Isa 53:4](#); [1Pet 2:24](#);

shows how he is to be followed

- 18** Now when Yahushua saw great multitudes about him, he gave commandment to depart unto the other side.
- 19** And a certain scribe came, and said unto him, Master, I will follow you whithersoever you go. [Luke 9:57](#);
- 20** And Yahushua saith unto him, **The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air *have* nests; but the Son of man has not where to lay *his* head.**

21 And another of his disciples said unto him, Lord, suffer me first to go and bury my father. [\[Luke 9:59\];](#)

22 But Yahushua said unto him, **Follow me; and let the dead bury their dead.** [1Tim 5:6; \[Luke 9:60\];](#)

stills the tempest on the sea

23 And when he was entered into a boat, his disciples followed him. [Mark 4:35; Luke 8:22;](#)

24 And, behold, there arose a great tempest in the sea, insomuch that the boat was covered with the waves: but he was asleep.

25 And his disciples came to *him*, and awoke him, saying, Lord, save us: we perish.

26 And he saith unto them, **Why are you fearful, O you of little faith?** Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm. [Job 26:12; Ps 107:29; Isa 51:10;](#)

27 But the men marvelled, saying, What manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him!

drives the demons out of two men possessed

28 And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with demons, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way. [Mark 5:1; Luke 8:26;](#)

29 And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with you, Yahushua, you Son of Elohim? are you come hither to torment us before the time?

30 And there was a good way off from them a herd of many swine feeding.

and suffers them to go into the swine

31 So the demons besought him, saying, If you cast us out, suffer us to go away into the herd of swine.

32 And he said unto them, **Go.** And when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran violently down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters.

33 And they that kept them fled, and went their ways into the city, and told every thing, and what was befallen to the possessed of the demons.

34 And, behold, the whole city came out to meet Yahushua: and when they saw him, they besought *him* that he would depart out of their coasts. [Acts 16:39;](#)

Yahushua cures one sick of the palsy

- 1** And he entered into a boat, and passed over, and came into his own city. [Mark 2:1]; [Mark 2:3]; [Luke 5:18];
- 2** And, behold, they brought to him a man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed: and Yahushua seeing their faith said unto the sick of the palsy; **Son, be of good cheer; thy sins be forgiven you.** Mark 2:3; Luke 5:18; Acts 9:33; [Luke 7:48];
- 3** And, behold, certain of the scribes said within themselves, This *man* blasphemeth. Ps 32:5; Isa 43:25; [Luke 7:49];
- 4** And Yahushua knowing their thoughts said, **Wherefore think you evil in your hearts?**
- 5** **For whether is easier, to say, *Thy sins be forgiven you*; or to say, Arise, and walk?**
- 6** **But that you may know that the Son of man has power on earth to forgive sins** - then saith he to the sick of the palsy - **Arise, take up thy bed, and go unto thine house.** [John 5:8];
- 7** And he arose, and departed to his house.
- 8** But when the multitudes saw *it*, they marvelled, and glorified Elohim, which had given such power unto men.

calls Matthew from the receipt of custom

- 9** And as Yahushua passed forth from thence, he saw a man, named Matthew, sitting at the receipt of custom: and he saith unto him, **Follow me.** And he arose, and followed him. Mark 2:14; Luke 5:27; [Mark 2:13];

eats with publicans and sinners

- 10** And it came to pass, as Yahushua sat at meat in the house, behold, many publicans and sinners came and sat down with him and his disciples. [Luke 5:29]; [Luke 15:1];
- 11** And when the Pharisees saw *it*, they said unto his disciples, Why eateth your Master with publicans and sinners?
- 12** But when Yahushua heard *that*, he said unto them, **They that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick.**
- 13** **But go you and learn what *that* meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice:** for I am not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance. Hos 6:6; Mic 6:8; Matt 12:7; Mark 2:17; Luke 5:32; Luke 19:10; 1Tim 1:15; [1Sam 15:22]; [Matt 23:23]; [Luke 11:42];

defends his disciples for not fasting

- 14** Then came to him the disciples of John, saying, Why do we and the Pharisees fast oft, but thy disciples fast not? Mark 2:18; Luke 5:33; [Matt 6:16];
- 15** And Yahushua said unto them, **Can the children of the bridechamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken from them, and then shall they fast.** 2Cor 11:2;
- 16** **No man puts a piece of new cloth unto an old garment, for that which is put in to fill it up taketh from the garment, and the rent is made worse.**
- 17** **Neither do men put new wine into old bottles: else the bottles break, and the wine runs out, and the bottles perish: but they put new wine into new bottles, and both are preserved.** Mark 2:22; [Luke 5:37];
- 18** While he spoke these things unto them, behold, there came a certain ruler, and worshipped him, saying, My daughter is even now dead: but come and lay thy hand upon her, and she shall live. Mark 5:22; Luke 8:41;
- 19** And Yahushua arose, and followed him, and *so did* his disciples.

cures the bloody issue

20 And, behold, a woman, which was diseased with an issue of blood twelve years, came behind *him*, and touched the hem of his garment: [Lev 15:25](#); [Mark 5:25](#); [Luke 8:43](#);

21 For she said within herself, If I may but touch his garment, I shall be whole.

22 But Yahushua turned him about, and when he saw her, he said, **Daughter, be of good comfort; thy faith has made you whole.** And the woman was made whole from that hour. [Mark 5:34](#); [Luke 8:48](#); [[Mark 10:52](#)];

raises from death Jairus' daughter

23 And when Yahushua came into the ruler's house, and saw the minstrels and the people making a noise, [Mark 5:38](#); [Luke 8:51](#);

24 He said unto them, **Give place: for the maid is not dead, but sleepeth.** And they laughed him to scorn. [John 11:11](#);

25 But when the people were put forth, he went in, and took her by the hand, and the maid arose.

26 And the fame hereof went abroad into all that land.

gives sight to two blind men

27 And when Yahushua departed thence, two blind men followed him, crying, and saying, you Son of David, have mercy on us. [[Isa 35:5](#)];

28 And when he was come into the house, the blind men came to him: and Yahushua saith unto them, **Believe you that I am able to do this?** They said unto him, yes, Lord.

29 Then touched he their eyes, saying, **According to your faith be it unto you.**

30 And their eyes were opened; and Yahushua straitly charged them, saying, **See that no man know it.** [Matt 12:16](#); [Luke 5:14](#); [[Ps 146:8](#)];

31 But they, when they were departed, spread abroad his fame in all that country. [Mark 7:36](#);

heals a dumb man possessed of a devil

32 As they went out, behold, they brought to him a dumb man possessed with a devil. [Matt 12:22](#); [Luke 11:14](#); [[Isa 35:6](#)]; [[Mark 7:32](#)];

33 And when the devil was cast out, the dumb spoke: and the multitudes marvelled, saying, It was never so seen in Israel.

34 But the Pharisees said, He casteth out demons through the prince of the demons. [Matt 12:24](#); [Mark 3:22](#); [Luke 11:15](#); [[Matt 10:25](#)];

35 And Yahushua went about all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every disease among the people. [Mark 6:6](#); [Luke 13:22](#);

and has compassion on the multitude

36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them, because they fainted, and were scattered abroad, as sheep having no shepherd. [Mark 6:34](#); [Jer 23:1](#); [Ezek 34:2](#); [[Num 27:17](#)]; [[Matt 14:14](#)];

37 Then saith he unto his disciples, **The harvest truly is plenteous, but the labourers are few;** [Luke 10:2](#); [John 4:35](#);

38 **Pray you therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers into his harvest.** [2Thess 3:1](#); [[Acts 13:2](#)];

Yahushua sends out his twelve apostles, enabling them with power to do miracles

- 1** And when he had called unto *him* his twelve disciples, he gave them power *against* unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease. [Mark 3:13](#); [Luke 6:13](#); [Luke 9:1](#); [\[Mark 6:7\]](#);
- 2** Now the names of the twelve apostles are these; The first, Simon, who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother; James *the son* of Zebedee, and John his brother;
- 3** Philip, and Bartholomew; Thomas, and Matthew the publican; James *the son* of Alphaeus, and Lebbaeus, whose surname was Thaddaeus;
- 4** Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed him. [\[Acts 1:17\]](#);

giving them their charge, teaches them

- 5** These twelve Yahushua sent forth, and commanded them, saying, **Go not into the way of the Gentiles, and into *any* city of the Samaritans enter you not:**
- 6** **But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.** [Acts 3:26](#); [Acts 13:26](#); [Acts 13:46](#); [\[Matt 15:24\]](#); [\[Luke 19:10\]](#);
- 7** **And as you go, preach, saying, The kingdom of heaven is at hand.** [Luke 9:2](#);
- 8** **Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, cast out demons: freely you have received, freely give.** [Luke 10:9](#); [Acts 8:18](#); [Acts 8:20](#);
- 9** **Provide neither gold, nor silver, nor brass in your purses,** [Mark 6:8](#); [Luke 9:3](#); [Luke 22:35](#); [\[Luke 10:4\]](#);
- 10** **Nor scrip for *your* journey, neither two coats, neither shoes, nor yet staves: for the workman is worthy of his meat.** [Lev 19:13](#); [Deut 24:14](#); [Deut 25:4](#); [Luke 10:7](#); [1Cor 9:4](#); [1Cor 9:14](#); [1Tim 5:18](#);
- 11** **And into whatsoever city or town you shall enter, enquire who in it is worthy; and there abide till you go thence.** [Mark 6:10](#); [Luke 9:4](#); [Luke 10:8](#);
- 12** **And when you come into a house, salute it.** [\[Luke 10:5\]](#);
- 13** **And if the house be worthy, let your peace come upon it: but if it be not worthy, let your peace return to you.**
- 14** **And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when you depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet.** [Mark 6:11](#); [Luke 9:5](#); [Acts 13:51](#); [Acts 18:6](#); [\[Luke 10:10\]](#); [\[Acts 22:18\]](#);
- 15** **Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgment, than for that city.** [Mark 6:11](#); [Luke 10:12](#); [\[Matt 11:22\]](#); [\[Matt 11:24\]](#);

comforts them against persecutions

- 16** **Behold, I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves: be you therefore wise as serpents, and harmless as doves.** [Luke 10:3](#); [\[Matt 23:34\]](#); [\[Luke 11:49\]](#); [\[Rom 16:19\]](#);
- 17** **But beware of men: for they will deliver you up to the councils, and they will scourge you in their synagogues;** [Matt 24:9](#); [Luke 21:12](#); [John 15:20](#); [John 16:2](#); [Rev 2:10](#); [\[Matt 19:16\]](#); [\[Matt 23:34\]](#); [\[Mark 13:9\]](#);
- 18** **And you shall be brought before governors and kings for my sake, for a testimony against them and the Gentiles.** [Acts 24:1](#); [Acts 25:4](#);
- 19** **But when they deliver you up, take no thought how or what you shall speak: for it shall be given you in that same hour what you shall speak.** [Mark 13:11](#); [Luke 12:11](#); [Luke 21:14](#); [\[Exod 4:12\]](#); [\[Luke 21:15\]](#);
- 20** **For it is not you that speak, but the Spirit of your Father which speaketh in you.**
- 21** **And the brother shall deliver up the brother to death, and the father the child: and the children shall rise up against *their* parents, and cause them to be put to death.** [Mic 7:2](#); [Mic 7:5](#); [Luke 21:6](#); [\[Mic 7:6\]](#);

22 And you shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved. Matt 24:13; Mark 13:13; Luke 21:19; Rev 2:10; Rev 3:10; [Luke 21:17]; [John 15:21]; [Jas 1:12];

23 But when they persecute you in this city, flee you into another: for verily I say unto you, you shall not have gone over the cities of Israel, till the Son of man be come. Matt 2:13; Matt 4:12; Matt 12:15; Acts 8:1; Acts 9:25; Acts 14:6; [Acts 8:4];

24 The disciple is not above *his* master, nor the servant above his lord. Luke 6:40; John 13:16; John 15:20;

25 It is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more *shall they call* them of his household? Matt 9:34; Matt 12:24; Mark 3:22; Luke 11:15; John 8:48;

26 Fear them not therefore: for there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; and hid, that shall not be known. Isa 8:12; Jer 1:8; Job 12:22; Mark 4:22; Luke 8:17; Luke 12:2;

27 What I tell you in darkness, *that* speak you in light: and what you hear in the ear, *that* preach you upon the housetops.

28 And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the being: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both being and body in hell. Jer 1:8; Luke 12:4;

29 Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father. [Luke 12:6];

30 But the very hairs of your head are all numbered. 1Sam 14:45; [Luke 21:18]; [Acts 27:34];

31 Fear you not therefore, you are of more value than many sparrows.

32 Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven. Mark 8:38; Luke 9:26; Luke 12:8; 2Tim 2:12; [Rev 3:5];

33 But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven. [Mark 9:30]; [Luke 9:26]; [Luke 12:9]; [2Tim 2:12];

34 Think not that I am come to send peace on earth: I came not to send peace, but a sword. Luke 12:51;

35 **For I am come to set a man at variance against his father, and the daughter against her mother, and the daughter in law against her mother in law.** Mic 7:6;

36 **And a man's foes *shall be* they of his own household.** Ps 41:9; Ps 55:12; John 13:18;

37 He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. Luke 14:26;

38 And he that taketh not his stake, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me. Matt 16:24; Mark 8:34; Luke 9:23; Luke 14:27; [Acts 14:22];

39 He that finds his life shall lose it: and he that loseth his life for my sake shall find it. Matt 16:25; Mark 8:35; Luke 9:24; Luke 17:33; John 12:25;

and promises a blessing to those that receive them

40 He that receiveth you receiveth me, and he that receiveth me receiveth him that sent me. Luke 10:16; John 13:20; [Gal 4:14];

41 He that receiveth a prophet in the name of a prophet shall receive a prophet's reward; and he that receiveth a righteous man in the name of a righteous man shall receive a righteous man's reward. 1Kgs 17:10; 1Kgs 18:4; 2Kgs 4:8;

42 And whosoever shall give to drink unto one of these little ones a cup of cold *water* only in the name of a disciple, verily I say unto you, he shall in no wise lose his reward. Matt 25:40; Mark 9:41; Heb 6:10;

John sends his disciples to Yahushua

- 1** And it came to pass, when Yahushua had made an end of commanding his twelve disciples, he departed thence to teach and to preach in their cities.
- 2** Now when John had heard in the prison the works of the Messiah, he sent two of his disciples, [Luke 7:18](#);
- 3** And said unto him, are you he that should come, or do we look for another?
- 4** Yahushua answered and said unto them, **Go and show John again those things which you do hear and see:**
- 5** The blind receive their sight, and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached to them. [Isa 29:18](#); [Isa 35:5](#); [Isa 61:1](#); [Luke 4:18](#); [[Isa 35:6](#)]; [[Matt 15:30](#)];
- 6** And blessed is *he*, whosoever shall not be offended in me. [[1Cor 1:23](#)];

Yahushua's testimony concerning John

- 7** And as they departed, Yahushua began to say unto the multitudes concerning John, **What went you out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken with the wind?** [Luke 7:24](#); [[Eph 4:14](#)];
- 8** But what went you out for to see? A man clothed in soft raiment? behold, they that wear soft *clothing* are among kings.
- 9** But what went you out for to see? A prophet? yes, I say unto you, and more than a prophet.
- 10** For this is *he*, of whom it is written, **Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before you.** [Mal 3:1](#); [Mark 1:2](#); [Luke 7:27](#); [[John 3:28](#)];
- 11** Verily I say unto you, Among them that are born of women there has not risen a greater than John the Baptist: notwithstanding he that is least in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he.
- 12** And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and the violent take it by force. [Luke 16:16](#);
- 13** For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John.
- 14** And if you will receive *it*, this is Elias, which was for to come. [Mal 4:5](#); [Luke 1:17](#); [[Matt 17:10](#)]; [[Mark 9:11](#)]; [[Luke 1:16](#)];
- 15** He that has ears to hear, let him hear.

The perverse judgment of the people

- 16** But whereunto shall I liken this generation? It is like unto children sitting in the markets, and calling unto their fellows, [Luke 7:31](#);
- 17** And saying, We have piped unto you, and you have not danced; we have mourned unto you, and you have not lamented.
- 18** For John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, He has a devil. [Matt 3:4](#); [Mark 1:6](#);
- 19** The Son of man came eating and drinking, and they say, Behold a man gluttonous, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners. But wisdom is justified of her children.

Yahushua upbraids Chorazin, Bethsaida, and Capernaum

- 20** Then began he to upbraid the cities wherein most of his mighty works were done, because they repented not: [Luke 10:13](#);
- 21** Woe unto you, Chorazin! woe unto you, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works, which were done in you, had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. [2Sam 13:19](#); [2Kgs 6:30](#); [2Kgs 19:1](#);
- 22** But I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment, than for you. [Matt 10:15](#);
- 23** And you, Capernaum, which are exalted unto heaven, shall be brought down to hell: for if the mighty works, which have been done in you, had been done in Sodom, it would have remained until this day.

24 But I say unto you, That it shall be more tolerable for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment, than for you. [Matt 10:15](#);

and praising his Father's wisdom in revealing the Gospel to the simple

25 At that time Yahushua answered and said, I thank you, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you have hid these things from the wise and prudent, and have revealed them unto babes. [Luke 10:21](#); [Job 5:12](#); [Isa 29:14](#); [1Cor 1:19](#); [1Cor 2:7-8](#); [[Matt 13:11](#)]; [[Matt 16:17](#)]; [[Mark 4:11](#)]; [[Luke 8:10](#)]; [[1Cor 1:21](#)]; [[1Cor 2:8](#)];

26 Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.

27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and *he* to whomsoever the Son will reveal *him*. [Matt 28:18](#); [Luke 10:22](#); [John 3:35](#); [John 1:18](#); [John 6:46](#); [[John 5:22](#)]; [[John 10:15](#)]; [[John 13:3](#)]; [[John 17:2](#)]; [[1Cor 15:27](#)];

he calls to him all such as feel the burden of their sins

28 Come unto me, all you that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

29 Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and you shall find rest unto your beings. [Ps 45:4](#); [Jer 6:16](#); [[Gal 6:2](#)]; [[Phil 2:5](#)]; [[1John 5:3](#)];

30 For my yoke *is* easy, and my burden is light. [1John 5:3](#);

Yahushua reproves the blindness of the Pharisees concerning the breach of the Sabbath

1 At that time Yahushua went on the Sabbath day through the corn; and his disciples were a hungered, and began to pluck the ears of corn, and to eat. [Deut 23:25](#); [Mark 2:23](#); [Luke 6:1](#); [[John 9:14](#)];

2 But when the Pharisees saw *it*, they said unto him, Behold, thy disciples do that which is not lawful to do upon the Sabbath day. [Exod 20:10](#); [[John 5:10](#)];

by scripture

3 But he said unto them, **Have you not read what David did, when he was a hungered, and they that were with him;** [[1Sam 21:6](#)];

4 **How he entered into the house of Elohim, and did eat the showbread, which was not lawful for him to eat, neither for them which were with him, but only for the priests?** [1Sam 21:6](#); [Exod 29:33](#); [Lev 24:9](#);

5 **Or have you not read in the law, how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless?** [Num 28:9](#);

6 **But I say unto you, That in this place is *one* greater than the temple.** [2Chr 6:18](#);

7 **But if you had known what *this* meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice, you would not have condemned the guiltless.** [Hos 6:6](#); [Mic 6:8](#); [Matt 9:13](#); [Matt 23:23](#); [[1Sam 15:22](#)]; [[Luke 11:42](#)];

8 **For the Son of man is Lord of the Sabbath.** [Mark 2:28](#); [Luke 6:5](#);

by reason

9 And when he was departed thence, he went into their synagogue: [Mark 3:1](#); [Luke 6:6](#);

10 And, behold, there was a man which had *his* hand withered. And they asked him, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath days? that they might accuse him. [Luke 14:3](#);

11 And he said unto them, **What man shall there be among you, that shall have one sheep, and if it fall into a pit on the Sabbath day, will he not lay hold on it, and lift *it* out?** [Exod 23:4](#); [Deut 22:4](#);

12 **How much then is a man better than a sheep? Wherefore it is lawful to do well on the Sabbath days.** [Gen 1:27](#);

and by a miracle

13 Then saith he to the man, **Stretch forth thine hand.** And he stretched *it* forth; and it was restored whole, like as the other.

14 Then the Pharisees went out, and held a council against him, how they might destroy him. [Mark 3:6](#); [John 5:18](#); [John 10:39](#); [John 11:53](#); [[John 7:19](#)];

15 But when Yahushua knew *it*, he withdrew himself from thence: and great multitudes followed him, and he healed them all; [Matt 10:23](#); [[Matt 14:13](#)];

16 And charged them that they should not make him known: [Matt 9:30](#); [Luke 5:14](#);

17 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying,

18 Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom my being is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall show judgment to the Gentiles. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 1:11](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#);

19 He shall not strive, nor cry; neither shall any man hear his voice in the streets.

20 A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory.

21 And his name shall the nations trust.

He heals a man possessed that was blind and dumb

22 Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and dumb both spoke and saw. [Matt 9:32](#); [Luke 11:14](#); [[Isa 35:5](#)]; [[Isa 35:6](#)];

23 And all the people were amazed, and said, Is not this the son of David? [John 4:29](#);

and confuting the absurd charge of casting out demons by Beelzebub, he shows that blasphemy against the Holy Spirit shall never be forgiven

24 But when the Pharisees heard *it*, they said, This *fellow* does not cast out demons, but by Beelzebub the prince of the demons. [Matt 9:34](#); [Mark 3:22](#); [Luke 11:15](#); [[Matt 10:25](#)];

25 And Yahushua knew their thoughts, and said unto them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and every city or house divided against itself shall not stand: [[Mark 3:23](#)]; [[Luke 11:17](#)];

26 And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand?

27 And if I by Beelzebub cast out demons, by whom do your children cast *them* out? therefore they shall be your judges.

28 But if I cast out demons by the Spirit of Elohim, then the kingdom of Elohim is come unto you.

29 Or else how can one enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he first bind the strong man? and then he will spoil his house. [[Isa 49:24](#)]; [[Mark 3:27](#)]; [[Col 2:15](#)];

30 He that is not with me is against me; and he that gathereth not with me scattereth abroad. [[Luke 9:50](#)]; [[Luke 11:23](#)];

31 Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy *against* the *Holy* Spirit shall not be forgiven unto men. [Mark 3:28](#); [Luke 12:10](#); [1John 5:16](#); [[Heb 6:4](#)]; [[Heb 10:26](#)];

32 And whosoever speaketh a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him: but whosoever speaketh against the Holy Spirit, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this age, neither in the *age* to come. [1Sam 2:25](#); [Num 15:30](#); [1John 5:16](#);

33 Either make the tree good, and his fruit good; or else make the tree corrupt, and his fruit corrupt: for the tree is known by *his* fruit. [Matt 7:18](#); [[Matt 7:17](#)]; [[Luke 6:43](#)];

34 O generation of vipers, how can you, being evil, speak good things? for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh. [Matt 3:7](#); [Ps 40:10](#); [Luke 6:45](#);

35 A good person out of the good heart bringeth forth good things: and an evil person out of the evil heart bringeth forth evil things. [[Luke 6:45](#)];

Account shall be made of idle words

36 But I say unto you, That every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment. [Eph 5:4](#); [Eccl 12:14](#); [[Eph 4:29](#)]; [[Jude 1:15](#)];

37 For by thy words you shall be justified, and by thy words you shall be condemned. [2Sam 1:16](#); [Luke 19:22](#);

He rebukes the unfaithful, who seek after a sign

38 Then certain of the scribes and of the Pharisees answered, saying, Master, we would see a sign from you. [Matt 16:1](#); [Mark 8:11](#); [Luke 11:29](#); [1Cor 1:22](#); [[John 2:18](#)]; [[John 6:30](#)];

39 But he answered and said unto them, An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given to it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas: [[2Kgs 14:25](#)]; [[Matt 16:4](#)];

40 For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth. [Jonah 1:17](#); [Jonah 2:10](#); [[Mark 15:46](#)]; [[Luke 23:53](#)]; [[1Cor 15:4](#)];

41 The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: because they repented at the preaching of Jonas; and, behold, a greater than Jonas *is* here. [Luke 11:32](#); [Jonah 3:5](#);

42 The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: for she came from the uttermost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon *is* here. [1Kgs 10:1](#); [2Chr 9:1](#); [Luke 11:31](#); [[1Kgs 10:2](#)];

43 When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and finds none. [Luke 11:24](#); [[2Cor 8:12](#)];

44 Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he finds *it* empty, swept, and garnished.

45 Then goes he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last *state* of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation. [Heb 6:4-5](#); [Heb 10:26](#); [2Pet 2:20](#); [[John 5:14](#)];

and shows who is his brother, sister, and mother

46 While he yet talked to the people, behold, *his* mother and his brethren stood without, desiring to speak with him. [Mark 3:31](#); [Luke 8:20](#); [[Luke 8:19](#)];

47 Then one said unto him, Behold, thy mother and thy brethren stand without, desiring to speak with you.

48 But he answered and said unto him that told him, *Who is my mother? and who are my brethren?*

49 And he stretched forth his hand toward his disciples, and said, *Behold my mother and my brethren!*

50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father which is in heaven, the same is my brother, and sister, and mother. [2Cor 5:16](#); [Gal 5:6](#); [Gal 6:15](#); [Col 3:11](#); [[John 15:14](#)];

The parable of the sower and the seed

- 1** The same day went Yahushua out of the house, and sat by the sea side. [Mark 4:1](#); [Luke 8:4-5](#);
- 2** And great multitudes were gathered together unto him, so that he went into a boat, and sat; and the whole multitude stood on the shore. [Luke 5:3](#); [\[Luke 5:1\]](#);
- 3** And he spoke many things unto them in parables, saying, **Behold, a sower went forth to sow**; [\[Luke 8:4\]](#);
- 4** **And when he sowed, some *seeds* fell by the way side, and the fowls came and devoured them up:**
- 5** **Some fell upon stony places, where they had not much earth: and forthwith they sprung up, because they had no deepness of earth:**
- 6** **And when the sun was up, they were scorched; and because they had no root, they withered away.**
- 7** **And some fell among thorns; and the thorns sprung up, and choked them:**
- 8** **But other fell into good ground, and brought forth fruit, some a hundredfold, some sixtyfold, some thirtyfold.**
- 9** **He who has ears, let him hear.** [\[Rev 2:11\]](#);
- 10** And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest you unto them in parables? [Mark 4:10](#); [Luke 8:9](#);
- 11** He answered and said unto them, **Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.** [2Cor 3:14](#); [Matt 11:25](#); [\[1Cor 2:10\]](#); [\[2Cor 3:16\]](#); [\[Col 1:26\]](#);
- 12** **For whosoever has, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever has not, from him shall be taken away even that he has.** [Matt 25:29](#); [Mark 4:24-25](#); [Luke 8:18](#); [Luke 19:26](#); [\[Mark 4:25\]](#);
- 13** **Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.** [\[John 9:39\]](#);
- 14** **And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, **By hearing you shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing you shall see, and shall not perceive:**** [Isa 6:9](#); [Mark 4:12](#); [Luke 8:10](#); [John 12:40](#); [Acts 28:26](#); [Rom 11:8](#);
- 15** **For this people's heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.**
- 16** But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear. [Luke 10:23](#); [John 20:29](#); [1Pet 1:8](#);
- 17** For verily I say unto you, That many prophets and righteous *men* have desired to see *those things* which you see, and have not seen *them*; and to hear *those things* which you hear, and have not heard *them*. [1Pet 1:10](#);

the exposition of it

- 18** Hear you therefore the parable of the sower. [Mark 4:13](#); [Luke 8:11](#);
- 19** When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth *it* not, then cometh the wicked *one*, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side. [Matt 4:23](#); [\[Matt 6:13\]](#); [\[Mark 4:14\]](#);
- 20** But he that received the seed into stony places, the same is he that heareth the word, and immediately with joy receiveth it; [\[Luke 8:13\]](#);
- 21** Yet has he not root in himself, but endures only for a while: for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, by and by he is offended.
- 22** He also that received seed among the thorns is he that heareth the word; and the care of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, choke the word, and he becometh unfruitful. [Matt 19:23](#); [Mark 10:23](#); [Luke 18:24](#); [1Tim 6:9](#);
- 23** But he that received seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word, and understandeth *it*; which also beareth fruit, and bringeth forth, some a hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.

The parable of the tares

24 Another parable put he forth unto them, saying, The kingdom of heaven is likened unto a man which sowed good seed in his field:

25 But while men slept, his enemy came and sowed tares among the wheat, and went his way.

26 But when the blade was sprung up, and brought forth fruit, then appeared the tares also.

27 So the servants of the householder came and said unto him, Sir, didst not you sow good seed in thy field? from whence then has it tares?

28 He said unto them, An enemy has done this. The servants said unto him, will you then that we go and gather them up?

29 But he said, Nay; lest while you gather up the tares, you root up also the wheat with them.

30 Let both grow together until the harvest: and in the time of harvest I will say to the reapers, Gather you together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn.
[Matt 3:12;](#)

of the mustard seed

31 Another parable put he forth unto them, saying, The kingdom of heaven is like to a grain of mustard seed, which a man took, and sowed in his field: [Mark 4:30; Luke 13:18;](#)

32 Which indeed is the least of all seeds: but when it is grown, it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree, so that the birds of the air come and lodge in the branches thereof.

of the leaven

33 Another parable spoke he unto them; The kingdom of heaven is like unto leaven, which a woman took, and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened. [Luke 13:20-21; \[Luke 13:20\];](#)

34 All these things spoke Yahushua unto the multitude in parables; and without a parable spoke he not unto them: [Mark 4:33;](#)

35 That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying, **I will open my mouth in parables; I will utter things which have been kept secret from the foundation of the world.** [Ps 78:2; \[Ps 49:4\];](#)

exposition of the parable of the tares

36 Then Yahushua sent the multitude away, and went into the house: and his disciples came unto him, saying, Declare unto us the parable of the tares of the field.

37 He answered and said unto them, He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man;

38 The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked *one*;

39 The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. [Joel 3:13; Rev 14:15;](#)

40 As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world.

41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;

42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. [Matt 8:12; Matt 22:13; Matt 24:51; Matt 25:30; Luke 13:28; \[Matt 13:50\];](#)

43 Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who has ears to hear, let him hear. [Dan 12:3; 1Cor 15:42;](#)

The parable of the hidden treasure

44 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field; the which when a man has found, he hides, and for joy thereof goes and selleth all that he has, and buyeth that field. [Phil 3:7; \[Prov 2:4\];](#)

of the pearl

45 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a merchant man, seeking goodly pearls:

46 Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.

of the drag net cast into the sea

47 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind:

48 Which, when it was full, they drew to shore, and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad away.

49 So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just, [Matt 25:32];

50 And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. Matt 13:42;

51 Yahushua saith unto them, Have you understood all these things? They say unto him, yes, Lord.

52 Then said he unto them, Therefore every scribe *which is* instructed unto the kingdom of heaven is like unto a man *that is* a householder, which bringeth forth out of his treasure *things* new and old.

Yahushua is scorned by his own countrymen

53 And it came to pass, *that* when Yahushua had finished these parables, he departed thence. Mark 6:1; Luke 4:16;

54 And when he was come into his own country, he taught them in their synagogue, insomuch that they were astonished, and said, Whence has this *man* this wisdom, and *these* mighty works? Mark 6:2; [Luke 4:16]; [Luke 4:22];

55 Is not this the carpenter's son? is not his mother called Mary? and his brethren, James, and Joses, and Simon, and Judas? John 6:42; [Luke 3:23]; [Luke 8:19]; [John 7:27]; [Acts 1:14];

56 And his sisters, are they not all with us? Whence then has this *man* all these things?

57 And they were offended in him. But Yahushua said unto them, **A prophet is not without honour, save in his own country, and in his own house.** Mark 6:4; Luke 4:24; John 4:44;

58 And he did not many mighty works there because of their unbelief. [Mark 6:5];

Herod's opinion of Yahushua

- 1** At that time Herod the tetrarch heard of the fame of Yahushua, [Mark 6:14](#); [Luke 9:7](#);
2 And said unto his servants, This is John the Baptist; he is risen from the dead; and therefore mighty works do show forth themselves in him. [\[Matt 16:14\]](#); [\[Mark 8:28\]](#); [\[Luke 9:19\]](#);

Wherefore John Baptist was beheaded

- 3** For Herod had laid hold on John, and bound him, and put *him* in prison for Herodias' sake, his brother Philip's wife. [Mark 6:17](#); [Luke 3:19](#); [\[John 3:24\]](#);
4 For John said unto him, It is not lawful for you to have her. [Lev 18:16](#); [\[Mark 6:34\]](#);
5 And when he would have put him to death, he feared the multitude, because they counted him as a prophet. [Matt 21:26](#); [\[Mark 6:20\]](#); [\[Mark 11:32\]](#);
6 But when Herod's birthday was kept, the daughter of Herodias danced before them, and pleased Herod. [Gen 40:20](#); [Mark 6:21](#);
7 Whereupon he promised with an oath to give her whatsoever she would ask. [Judg 11:30](#);
8 And she, being before instructed of her mother, said, Give me here John Baptist's head in a charger.
9 And the king was sorry: nevertheless for the oath's sake, and them which sat with him at meat, he commanded *it* to be given *her*.
10 And he sent, and beheaded John in the prison. [\[Mark 6:28\]](#);
11 And his head was brought in a charger, and given to the damsel: and she brought *it* to her mother.
12 And his disciples came, and took up the body, and buried it, and went and told Yahushua.

Yahushua departs into a desert place

- 13** When Yahushua heard *of it*, he departed thence by boat into a desert place apart: and when the people had heard *thereof*, they followed him on foot out of the cities. [Matt 12:15](#); [Mark 6:31](#); [Luke 9:10](#); [\[Mark 6:32\]](#);
14 And Yahushua went forth, and saw a great multitude, and was moved with compassion toward them, and he healed their sick. [John 6:5](#); [Matt 9:36](#);

where he feeds five thousand men with five loaves and two fishes

- 15** And when it was evening, his disciples came to him, saying, This is a desert place, and the time is now past; send the multitude away, that they may go into the villages, and buy themselves victuals. [Mark 6:35](#); [Luke 9:12](#);
16 But Yahushua said unto them, **They need not depart; give you them to eat.** [\[Luke 9:13\]](#);
17 And they say unto him, We have here but five loaves, and two fishes. [\[Matt 16:9\]](#); [\[Mark 6:38\]](#); [\[Mark 8:19\]](#);
18 He said, **Bring them hither to me.**
19 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the grass, and took the five loaves, and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed, and brake, and gave the loaves to *his* disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. [1Sam 9:13](#);
20 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the fragments that remained twelve baskets full. [\[Mark 8:19\]](#);
21 And they that had eaten were about five thousand men, beside women and children.

He walks on the sea to his disciples

- 22** And immediately Yahushua compelled his disciples to get into the boat, and to go before him unto the other side, while he sent the multitudes away. [Mark 6:45](#); [John 6:17](#);
23 And when he had sent the multitudes away, he went up into a mountain apart to pray: and when the evening was come, he was there alone. [Mark 6:46](#); [John 6:15](#); [\[Mark 1:35\]](#); [\[Mark 6:47\]](#); [\[Luke 6:12\]](#); [\[John 6:16\]](#);
24 But the boat was now in the midst of the sea, tossed with waves: for the wind was contrary.
25 And in the fourth watch of the night Yahushua went unto them, walking on the sea.

26 And when the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were troubled, saying, It is a spirit; and they cried out for fear.

27 But immediately Yahushua spoke unto them, saying, **Be of good cheer; it is I; be not afraid.**

28 And Peter answered him and said, Lord, if it be you, bid me come unto you on the water.

29 And he said, **Come.** And when Peter was come down out of the boat, he walked on the water, to go to Yahushua.

30 But when he saw the wind boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, Lord, save me.

31 And immediately Yahushua stretched forth *his* hand, and caught him, and said unto him, **O you of little faith, wherefore didst you doubt?**

32 And when they were come into the boat, the wind ceased.

33 Then they that were in the boat came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth you are the Son of Elohim.

and landing at Gennesaret, heals the sick by the touch of the hem of his garment

34 And when they were gone over, they came into the land of Gennesaret. [Mark 6:53;](#)

35 And when the men of that place had knowledge of him, they sent out into all that country round about, and brought unto him all that were diseased;

36 And besought him that they might only touch the hem of his garment: and as many as touched were made perfectly whole.

Yahushua reproves the Scribes and Pharisees for transgressing Elohim's commandments through their own traditions

- 1** Then came to Yahushua scribes and Pharisees, which were of Jerusalem, saying, [Mark 7:1](#);
- 2** Why do thy disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? for they wash not their hands when they eat bread.
- 3** But he answered and said unto them, **Why do you also transgress the commandment of Elohim by your tradition?**
- 4** For Elohim commanded, saying, **Honour thy father and mother:** and, **He that curses father or mother, let him die the death.** [Exod 20:12](#); [Deut 5:16](#); [Eph 6:2](#); [Exod 21:17](#); [Lev 20:9](#); [Prov 20:20](#); [\[Exod 21:15\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:4\]](#);
- 5** But you say, Whosoever shall say to *his* father or *his* mother, Whatever help you might receive from me *is a gift to the temple*; and not required to honor his father or his mother.
- 6** Thus have you made the commandment of Elohim of none effect by your tradition. [Mark 7:13](#); [1Tim 4:3](#); [2Tim 3:2](#);
- 7** You hypocrites, well did Esaias prophesy of you, saying,
- 8** **This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with *their lips*; but their heart is far from me.** [Isa 29:13](#); [Ezek 33:31](#); [Mark 7:6](#);
- 9** **But in vain they do worship me, teaching *for doctrines the commandments of men.*** [Mark 7:6-7](#); [Col 2:18](#); [Col 2:20](#); [Col 2:22](#); [\[Mark 7:7\]](#); [\[Titus 1:14\]](#);

teaches how that which goes into the mouth does not defile a man

- 10** And he called the multitude, and said unto them, **Hear, and understand:** [Mark 7:14](#);
- 11** Not that which goes into the mouth defileth a man; but that which cometh out of the mouth, this defileth a man. [Acts 10:15](#); [Rom 14:17](#); [Rom 14:20](#); [Titus 1:15](#); [\[Rom 14:14\]](#);
- 12** Then came his disciples, and said unto him, Knowest you that the Pharisees were offended, after they heard this saying?
- 13** But he answered and said, **Every plant, which my heavenly Father has not planted, shall be rooted up.** [John 15:2](#); [\[Isa 60:21\]](#); [\[Acts 5:38\]](#);
- 14** **Let them alone: they be blind leaders of the blind. And if the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.** [Isa 42:19](#); [Luke 6:39](#);
- 15** Then answered Peter and said unto him, Declare unto us this parable. [Mark 7:17](#);
- 16** And Yahushua said, **Are you also yet without understanding?**
- 17** Do not you yet understand, that whatsoever entereth in at the mouth goes into the belly, and is cast out into the draught?
- 18** But those things which proceed out of the mouth come forth from the heart; and they defile the man.
- 19** For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies: [Gen 6:5](#); [Gen 8:21](#); [Prov 6:14](#); [Jer 17:9](#);
- 20** These are *the things* which defile a man: but to eat with unwashen hands defileth not a man.

He heals the daughter of the woman of Canaan

- 21** Then Yahushua went thence, and departed into the coasts of Tyre and Sidon. [Mark 7:24](#);
- 22** And, behold, a woman of Canaan came out of the same coasts, and cried unto him, saying, Have mercy on me, O Lord, you Son of David; my daughter is grievously vexed with a devil.
- 23** But he answered her not a word. And his disciples came and besought him, saying, Send her away; for she cries after us.
- 24** But he answered and said, **I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel.** [Matt 10:6](#); [Acts 13:46](#); [\[Luke 19:10\]](#);
- 25** Then came she and worshipped him, saying, Lord, help me.
- 26** But he answered and said, **It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast *it* to dogs.**

27 And she said, Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table.

28 Then Yahushua answered and said unto her, *O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto you even as you wilt.* And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.

and other great multitudes

29 And Yahushua departed from thence, and came nigh unto the sea of Galilee; and went up into a mountain, and sat down there. [Mark 7:31](#);

30 And great multitudes came unto him, having with them *those that were* lame, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others, and cast them down at Yahushua's feet; and he healed them: [Isa 29:18](#); [Isa 35:5](#); [Matt 11:5](#); [Luke 7:22](#); [\[Isa 35:6\]](#);

31 Insomuch that the multitude wondered, when they saw the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk, and the blind to see: and they glorified the Elohim of Israel.

and with seven loaves and a few little fishes feeds four thousand men, beside women and children

32 Then Yahushua called his disciples *unto him*, and said, *I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days, and have nothing to eat: and I will not send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way.* [Mark 8:1](#);

33 And his disciples say unto him, Whence should we have so much bread in the wilderness, as to fill so great a multitude?

34 And Yahushua saith unto them, *How many loaves have you?* And they said, Seven, and a few little fishes. [\[Matt 16:10\]](#);

35 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground.

36 And he took the seven loaves and the fishes, and gave thanks, and brake *them*, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. [1Sam 9:13](#); [\[Mark 8:20\]](#);

37 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken *meat* that was left seven baskets full.

38 And they that did eat were four thousand men, beside women and children.

39 And he sent away the multitude, and took boat, and came into the coasts of Magdala. [\[Mark 8:10\]](#);

MATTHEW SIXTEEN

The Pharisees require a sign

1 The Pharisees also with the Sadducees came, and tempting desired him that he would show them a sign from heaven. [Matt 12:38](#); [Mark 8:11](#); [Luke 11:29](#); [Luke 12:54](#); [John 6:30](#); [[Luke 11:16](#)]; [[John 2:18](#)]; [[1Cor 1:22](#)];

2 He answered and said unto them, *When it is evening, you say, It will be fair weather: for the sky is red.* [Luke 12:54](#);

3 And in the morning, *It will be foul weather to day: for the sky is red and lowring.* O you hypocrites, you can discern the face of the sky; but can you not *discern* the signs of the times?

4 A wicked and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and there shall no sign be given unto it, but the sign of the prophet Jonas. And he left them, and departed. [Matt 12:39](#); [Luke 11:29](#); [Jonah 1:17](#); [[Mark 8:12](#)];

Yahushua warns his disciples of the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees

5 And when his disciples were come to the other side, they had forgotten to take bread.

6 Then Yahushua said unto them, *Take heed and beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees.* [Mark 8:15](#); [Luke 12:1](#);

7 And they reasoned among themselves, saying, *It is* because we have taken no bread.

8 *Which* when Yahushua perceived, he said unto them, *O you of little faith, why reason you among yourselves, because you have brought no bread?*

9 Do you not yet understand, neither remember the five loaves of the five thousand, and how many baskets you took up? [Matt 14:17](#); [Mark 6:38](#); [Luke 9:13](#); [John 6:9](#);

10 Neither the seven loaves of the four thousand, and how many baskets you took up? [Matt 15:34](#);

11 How is it that you do not understand that I spoke *it* not to you concerning bread, that you should beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees?

12 Then understood they how that he bade *them* not beware of the leaven of bread, but of the doctrine of the Pharisees and of the Sadducees.

The people's opinion of Yahushua

13 When Yahushua came into the coasts of Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, *Whom do men say that I the Son of man am?* [Mark 8:27](#); [Luke 9:18](#);

14 And they said, Some *say that you are* John the Baptist: some, Elias; and others, Jeremias, or one of the prophets. [Matt 14:2](#);

15 He saith unto them, *But whom say you that I am?*

and Peter's confession of him

16 And Simon Peter answered and said, you are the Messiah, the Son of the living Elohim. [John 6:69](#); [[Mark 8:29](#)]; [[Luke 12:1](#)]; [[John 11:27](#)];

17 And Yahushua answered and said unto him, *Blessed are you, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood has not revealed it unto you, but my Father which is in heaven.* [Matt 11:25](#); [[Gal 1:16](#)]; [[Eph 2:8](#)];

18 And I say also unto you, That you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. [Ps 118:22](#); [John 1:42](#); [Isa 28:16](#); [1Cor 3:11](#); [Isa 33:20](#); [[Eph 2:20](#)];

19 And I will give unto you the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever you shall prohibit on earth shall be prohibited in heaven: and whatsoever you shall permit on earth shall be permitted in heaven. [Matt 18:18](#); [John 20:22](#); [[John 20:23](#)];

20 Then charged he his disciples that they should tell no man that he was Yahushua the Messiah.

Yahushua foretells his death

21 From that time forth began Yahushua to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day. [Matt 17:22](#); [Matt 20:18](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 9:31](#); [Mark 10:33](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [Luke 24:7](#); [[Matt 27:63](#)]; [[Matt 28:6](#)]; [[Mark 9:30](#)]; [[Mark 10:32](#)]; [[Luke 17:25](#)]; [[Luke 24:6](#)]; [[Luke 24:44](#)]; [[Acts 17:3](#)]; [[Acts 20:30](#)];

22 Then Peter took him, and began to rebuke him, saying, Be it far from you, Lord: this shall not be unto you.

reproves Peter for dissuading him from it

23 But he turned, and said unto Peter, **Get you behind me, Satan: you are an offence unto me: for you savourest not the things that be of Elohim, but those that be of men.** [2Sam 19:22](#);

and admonishes those that will follow him, to bear the stake

24 Then said Yahushua unto his disciples, **If any *man* will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his stake, and follow me.** [Matt 10:38](#); [Mark 8:34](#); [Luke 9:23](#); [Luke 14:27](#); [\[Acts 14:22\]](#); [\[2Tim 3:12\]](#);

25 **For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it.** [Matt 10:39](#); [Mark 8:35](#); [Luke 9:24](#); [Luke 17:33](#); [John 12:25](#);

26 **For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own being? or what shall a man give in exchange for his being?** [Luke 9:25](#); [Ps 49:8](#); [Mark 8:37](#); [\[Job 27:8\]](#);

27 **For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.** [Matt 24:30](#); [Matt 25:31](#); [Matt 26:64](#); [Job 34:11](#); [Ps 62:12](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [\[Mark 13:26\]](#); [\[Mark 14:62\]](#); [\[Luke 21:27\]](#); [\[Luke 22:69\]](#); [\[Rom 14:12\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:8\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:10\]](#); [\[Gal 6:5\]](#); [\[Rev 2:23\]](#); [\[Rev 20:12\]](#); [\[Rev 22:12\]](#);

28 **Verily I say unto you, There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom.** [Mark 9:1](#); [Luke 9:27](#);

The transfiguration of Yahushua

- 1** And after six days Yahushua taketh Peter, James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into a high mountain apart, [Mark 9:2](#); [Luke 9:28](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [\[2Pet 1:16\]](#);
- 2** And was transfigured before them: and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light. [\[John 1:14\]](#); [\[Rev 10:1\]](#);
- 3** And, behold, there appeared unto them Moses and Elias talking with him.
- 4** Then answered Peter, and said unto Yahushua, Lord, it is good for us to be here: if you wilt, let us make here three tabernacles; one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.
- 5** While he was still speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; heed him. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Mark 1:11](#); [Mark 9:7](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [Deut 18:19](#); [Acts 3:22](#); [\[Matt 12:18\]](#); [\[John 5:32\]](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[John 6:27\]](#); [\[John 8:18\]](#); [\[Acts 7:37\]](#);
- 6** And when the disciples heard *it*, they fell on their face, and were sore afraid.
- 7** And Yahushua came and touched them, and said, **Arise, and be not afraid.**
- 8** And when they had lifted up their eyes, they saw no man, save Yahushua only.
- 9** And as they came down from the mountain, Yahushua charged them, saying, **Tell the vision to no man, until the Son of man be risen again from the dead.** [Mark 9:9](#); [Luke 9:36](#);
- 10** And his disciples asked him, saying, Why then say the scribes that Elias must first come? [Mark 9:11](#); [Mal 4:5](#); [Matt 11:14](#);
- 11** And Yahushua answered and said unto them, **Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things.** [\[Mal 4:5\]](#);
- 12** **But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed. Likewise shall also the Son of man suffer of them.**
- 13** Then the disciples understood that he spoke unto them of John the Baptist.

He heals the lunatic

- 14** And when they were come to the multitude, there came to him a *certain* man, kneeling down to him, [Mark 9:16](#); [Luke 9:37](#); [\[Mark 9:17\]](#);
- 15** And saying, Lord, have mercy on my son: for he is lunatick, and sore vexed: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water.
- 16** And I brought him to thy disciples, and they could not cure him.
- 17** Then Yahushua answered and said, **O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him hither to me.**
- 18** And Yahushua rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him: and the child was cured from that very hour.
- 19** Then came the disciples to Yahushua apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? [Mark 9:28](#);
- 20** And Yahushua said unto them, **Because of your unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If you have faith as a grain of mustard seed, you shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you.** [Matt 21:21](#); [Luke 17:6](#); [\[Mark 11:23\]](#); [\[1Cor 13:2\]](#);
- 21** **Howbeit this kind goes not out but by prayer and fasting.**

foretells his own passion

- 22** And while they abode in Galilee, Yahushua said unto them, **The Son of man shall be betrayed into the hands of men:** [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 20:18](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 9:31](#); [Mark 10:33](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 9:44](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [\[Mark 9:30\]](#); [\[Mark 10:32\]](#); [\[Luke 17:25\]](#); [\[Luke 24:6\]](#); [\[Luke 24:44\]](#);
- 23** **And they shall kill him, and the third day he shall be raised again.** And they were exceeding sorry. [\[Matt 27:63\]](#); [\[Matt 28:6\]](#);

and pays tribute

24 And when they were come to Capernaum, they that received tribute *money* came to Peter, and said, Does not your master pay tribute?

25 He saith, yous. And when he was come into the house, Yahushua prevented him, saying, **What thinkest you, Simon? of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers?** [Matt 22:21](#); [Rom 13:7](#); [\[Mark 12:17\]](#); [\[Luke 20:25\]](#); [\[Luke 23:2\]](#);

26 Peter saith unto him, Of strangers. Yahushua saith unto him, **Then are the children free.**

27 Notwithstanding, lest we should offend them, go you to the sea, and cast a hook, and take up the fish that first cometh up; and when you have opened his mouth, you shall find a piece of money: that take, and give unto them for me and you.

MATTHEW EIGHTEEN

Yahushua warns his disciples to be humble and harmless

1 At the same time came the disciples unto Yahushua, saying, Who is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven? [Mark 9:34](#); [Luke 9:46](#); [Luke 22:24](#); [[Mark 9:33](#)];

2 And Yahushua called a little child unto him, and set him in the midst of them,

3 And said, Verily I say unto you, Except you be converted, and become as little children, you shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven. [Matt 19:14](#); [1Cor 14:20](#); [1Pet 2:2](#); [[Mark 10:14](#)]; [[Luke 18:16](#)]; [[1Pet 2:1](#)];

4 Whosoever therefore shall humble himself as this little child, the same is greatest in the kingdom of heaven. [1Pet 5:6](#);

5 And whoso shall receive one such little child in my name receiveth me. [Mark 9:37](#); [Luke 9:48](#); [John 13:20](#);

6 But whoso shall offend one of these little ones which believe in me, it were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and *that* he were drowned in the depth of the sea. [Mark 9:42](#); [Luke 17:2](#);

to avoid offences

7 Woe unto the world because of offences! for it must needs be that offences come; but woe to that man by whom the offence cometh! [1Cor 11:19](#); [Matt 26:24](#); [Acts 2:23](#); [Acts 4:27-28](#); [[Luke 17:1](#)];

8 Wherefore if thy hand or thy foot offend you, cut them off, and cast *them* from you: it is better for you to enter into life halt or maimed, rather than having two hands or two feet to be cast into everlasting fire. [Deut 13:6](#); [Matt 5:29-30](#); [Mark 9:43](#); [[Matt 5:29](#)];

9 And if thine eye offend you, pluck it out, and cast *it* from you: it is better for you to enter into life with one eye, rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire.

and not to despise the little ones

10 Take heed that you despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven. [Ps 34:7](#);

11 For the Son of man is come to save that which was lost. [Luke 19:10](#);

12 How think you? if a man have a hundred sheep, and one of them be gone astray, does he not leave the ninety and nine, and goes into the mountains, and seeketh that which is gone astray? [Luke 15:4](#);

13 And if so be that he find it, verily I say unto you, he rejoiceth more of that *sheep*, than of the ninety and nine which went not astray.

14 Even so it is not the will of your Father which is in heaven, that one of these little ones should perish.

teaches how we are to deal with our brethren when they offend us

15 Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against you, go and tell him his fault between you and him alone: if he shall hear you, you have gained thy brother. [Lev 19:17](#); [Prov 17:10](#); [Luke 17:3](#); [Jas 5:19](#);

16 But if he will not hear you, *then* take with you one or two more, **that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established.** [Num 35:30](#); [Deut 17:6](#); [Deut 19:15](#); [John 8:17](#); [2Cor 13:1](#); [Heb 10:28](#);

17 And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell *it* unto the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be unto you as a heathen man and a publican. [2Thess 3:14](#); [1Cor 5:9](#); [[Rom 16:17](#)]; [[1Cor 5:11](#)]; [[Eph 5:11](#)]; [[2Tim 3:5](#)]; [[Titus 3:10](#)];

18 Verily I say unto you, Whatsoever you shall prohibit on earth shall be prohibited in heaven: and whatsoever you shall permit on earth shall be permitted in heaven. [Matt 16:19](#); [John 20:23](#); [[Ps 149:8](#)];

19 Again I truly say unto you, That if two of you shall agree on earth as touching any thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven.

20 For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them. [Luke 24:15](#); [Luke 24:36](#);

and how oft to forgive them

21 Then came Peter to him, and said, Lord, how oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? till seven times? [Luke 17:4](#);

22 Yahushua saith unto him, I say not unto you, Until seven times: but, Until seventy times seven. [Matt 6:14](#); [Mark 11:25](#); [Col 3:13](#);

which he sets forth by a parable of the king that took account of his servants

23 Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants.

24 And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents.

25 But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made. [Matt 5:25](#);

26 The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay you all.

27 Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt.

28 But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellowservants, which owed him a hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took *him* by the throat, saying, Pay me that you owest.

29 And his fellowservant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay you all.

30 And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt.

31 So when his fellowservants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done.

and punished him who showed no mercy to his fellow

32 Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, O you wicked servant, I forgave you all that debt, because you desiredst me:

33 **should** not you also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on you?

34 And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him.

35 So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if you from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses. [Matt 6:14](#); [Mark 11:26](#); [Jas 2:13](#); [[Matt 6:15](#)];

Yahushua heals the sick

1 And it came to pass, *that* when Yahushua had finished these sayings, he departed from Galilee, and came into the coasts of Judaea beyond Jordan; [Mark 10:1](#);

2 And great multitudes followed him; and he healed them there.

answers the Pharisees concerning divorcement

3 The Pharisees also came unto him, tempting him, and saying unto him, Is it lawful for a man to put away his wife for every cause? [Mark 10:2](#);

4 And he answered and said unto them, *Have you not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female,* [Gen 1:27](#); [\[Gen 5:2\]](#); [\[Mark 10:6\]](#);

5 And said, **For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh?** [Gen 2:24](#); [Eph 5:31](#); [1Cor 6:16](#);

6 Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore Elohim has joined together, let not man put asunder. [1Cor 7:10](#);

7 They say unto him, Why did Moses then command to give a writing of divorcement, and to put her away? [Deut 24:1](#); [Jer 3:1](#); [\[Matt 5:32\]](#);

8 He saith unto them, *Moses because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so.*

9 And I say unto you, Whosoever shall put away his wife, even *it be* for fornication, and shall marry another, committeth adultery: and whoso marrieth her which is put away commits adultery. [Matt 5:32](#); [Mark 10:11](#); [Luke 16:18](#); [1Cor 7:10](#);

shows when marriage is necessary

10 His disciples say unto him, If the case of the man be so with *his* wife, it is not good to marry.

11 But he said unto them, *All men cannot receive this saying, save they to whom it is given.* [1Cor 7:7](#); [1Cor 7:17](#);

12 For there are some eunuchs, which were so born from *their* mother's womb: and there are some eunuchs, which were made eunuchs of men: and there be eunuchs, which have made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake. He that is able to receive *it*, let him receive *it*. [\[1Cor 7:7\]](#);

receives little children

13 Then were there brought unto him little children, that he should put *his* hands on them, and pray: and the disciples rebuked them. [Mark 10:13](#); [Luke 18:15](#);

14 But Yahushua said, *Suffer little children, and forbid them not, to come unto me: for of such is the kingdom of heaven.* [Matt 18:3](#); [1Cor 14:20](#); [1Pet 2:2](#); [\[Mark 10:14\]](#); [\[Luke 18:16\]](#);

15 And he laid *his* hands on them, and departed thence. [\[Mark 10:16\]](#);

instructs the young man how to attain eternal life

16 And, behold, one came and said unto him, Good Master, what good thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life? [Matt 10:17](#); [Luke 18:18](#); [\[Mark 10:17\]](#);

17 And he said unto him, *Why callest you me good? there is none good but one, that is, Elohim: but if you will enter into life, keep the commandments.*

18 He saith unto him, Which? Yahushua said, *you shall do no murder, you shall not commit adultery, you shall not steal, you shall not bear false witness,* [Exod 20:12](#); [Deut 5:17](#); [Rom 13:9](#);

19 Honour thy father and *thy* mother: and, you shall love thy neighbour as thyself. [Lev 19:17](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [Mark 12:31](#); [Gal 5:14](#); [Jas 2:8](#);

and how to be perfect

20 The young man saith unto him, All these things have I kept from my youth up: what lack I yet?

21 Yahushua said unto him, *If you will be perfect, go **and** sell that you hast, and give to the poor, and you shall have treasure in heaven: and come **and** follow me.* [Luke 12:33](#); [Luke 16:9](#); [Matt 6:19](#); [1Tim 6:19](#); [[Luke 18:22](#)];

22 But when the young man heard that saying, he went away sorrowful: for he had great possessions.

tells his disciples how hard it is for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of Elohim

23 Then said Yahushua unto his disciples, *Verily I say unto you, That a rich man shall hardly enter into the kingdom of heaven.* [Prov 11:28](#); [Mark 10:23](#); [Luke 18:24](#); [[Matt 13:22](#)]; [[Mark 4:19](#)]; [[Luke 8:14](#)];

24 And again I say unto you, *It is easier for a rope to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of Elohim.*

25 When his disciples heard *it*, they were exceedingly amazed, saying, Who then can be saved?

26 But Yahushua beheld *them*, and said unto them, *With men this is impossible; but with Elohim all things are possible.* [Job 42:2](#); [Jer 32:17](#); [Zech 8:6](#); [Luke 1:37](#); [Luke 18:27](#); [[Gen 18:14](#)];

and promises reward to those that forsake any thing to follow him

27 Then answered Peter and said unto him, Behold, we have forsaken all, and followed you; what shall we have therefore? [Matt 4:20](#); [Mark 10:28](#); [Luke 5:11](#); [Luke 18:28](#); [[Mark 1:18](#)];

28 And Yahushua said unto them, *Verily I say unto you, That you which have followed me, in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit in the throne of his glory, you also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.* [Luke 22:30](#); [[Matt 25:31](#)]; [[1Cor 6:2](#)]; [[Jas 1:12](#)]; [[Rev 3:21](#)];

29 And every one that has forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake, shall receive a hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life. [Deut 33:9](#); [Job 42:12](#);

30 But many *that are* first shall be last; and the last *shall be* first. [Mark 10:31](#); [Luke 13:30](#); [[Matt 20:16](#)];

Yahushua, by the similitude of the labourers in the vineyard, shows that Elohim is debtor unto no man

1 For the kingdom of heaven is like unto a man *that is* a householder, which went out early in the morning to hire labourers into his vineyard.

2 And when he had agreed with the labourers for a penny a day, he sent them into his vineyard.

3 And he went out about the third hour, and saw others standing idle in the marketplace,

4 And said unto them; Go you also into the vineyard, and whatsoever is right I will give you. And they went their way.

5 Again he went out about the sixth and ninth hour, and did likewise.

6 And about the eleventh hour he went out, and found others standing idle, and saith unto them, Why stand you here all the day idle?

7 They say unto him, Because no man has hired us. He saith unto them, Go you also into the vineyard; and whatsoever is right, *that* shall you receive.

8 So when even was come, the lord of the vineyard saith unto his steward, Call the labourers, and give them *their* hire, beginning from the last unto the first.

9 And when they came that *were hired* about the eleventh hour, they received every man a penny.

10 But when the first came, they supposed that they should have received more; and they likewise received every man a penny.

11 And when they had received *it*, they murmured against the goodman of the house,

12 Saying, These last have wrought *but* one hour, and you have made them equal unto us, which have borne the burden and heat of the day.

13 But he answered one of them, and said, Friend, I do you no wrong: didst not you agree with me for a penny?

14 Take *that* thine *is*, and go thy way: I will give unto this last, even as unto you.

15 Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with mine own? Is thine eye evil, because I am good? [Rom 9:21](#);

16 So the last shall be first, and the first last: for many be called, but few chosen. [Matt 19:30](#); [Mark 10:31](#); [Luke 13:30](#); [Matt 22:14](#);

foretells his passion

17 And Yahushua going up to Jerusalem took the twelve disciples apart in the way, and said unto them, [Mark 10:32](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [Luke 24:7](#);

18 Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes, and they shall condemn him to death, [[Matt 16:21](#)]; [[Matt 17:22](#)]; [[Mark 8:31](#)]; [[Mark 9:30](#)]; [[Mark 10:32](#)]; [[Luke 17:25](#)]; [[Luke 24:6](#)]; [[Luke 24:44](#)];

19 And shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify *him*: and the third day he shall rise again. [Matt 27:2](#); [Luke 23:1](#); [John 18:28](#); [John 18:31](#); [Acts 3:23](#); [[Matt 27:63](#)]; [[Matt 28:6](#)]; [[John 18:32](#)];

by answering the mother of Zebedee's children, teaches his disciples to be lowly

20 Then came to him the mother of Zebedee's children with her sons, worshipping *him*, and desiring a certain thing of him. [Mark 10:35](#);

21 And he said unto her, **What will you?** She saith unto him, Grant that these my two sons may sit, the one on thy right hand, and the other on the left, in thy kingdom.

22 But Yahushua answered and said, you **know not what you ask. Are you able to drink of the cup that I shall drink of, and to be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with?** They say unto him, We are able. [Rom 8:26](#); [Luke 12:50](#); [[Matt 26:39](#)]; [[Mark 10:38](#)]; [[John 18:11](#)]; [[Jas 4:3](#)];

23 And he saith unto them, you shall drink indeed of my cup, and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with: but to sit on my right hand, and on my left, is not mine to give, but *it shall be given to them* for whom it is prepared of my Father. [Matt 25:34](#);

24 And when the ten heard *it*, they were moved with indignation against the two brethren. [\[Mark 10:41\]](#);

25 But Yahushua called them *unto him*, and said, you know that the princes of the Gentiles exercise dominion over them, and they that are great exercise authority upon them. [Mark 10:42](#); [Luke 22:25](#);

26 But it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, let him be your minister; [1Pet 5:3](#); [\[Matt 23:11\]](#);

27 And whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant: [Matt 23:11](#); [Mark 9:35](#); [Mark 10:43](#);

28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many. [Luke 22:27](#); [John 13:14](#); [Phil 2:7](#); [Eph 1:7](#); [1Tim 2:6](#); [1Pet 1:19](#); [\[Gal 1:4\]](#);

and gives two blind men their sight

29 And as they departed from Jericho, a great multitude followed him. [Mark 10:46](#); [Luke 18:35](#);

30 And, behold, two blind men sitting by the way side, when they heard that Yahushua passed by, cried out, saying, Have mercy on us, O Lord, you Son of David. [\[Isa 35:5\]](#);

31 And the multitude rebuked them, because they should hold their peace: but they cried the more, saying, Have mercy on us, O Lord, you Son of David.

32 And Yahushua stood still, and called them, and said, **What will you that I shall do unto you?**

33 They say unto him, Lord, that our eyes may be opened.

34 So Yahushua had compassion *on them*, and touched their eyes: and immediately their eyes received sight, and they followed him.

Yahushua rides into Jerusalem upon an ass

- 1** And when they drew nigh unto Jerusalem, and were come to Bethphage, unto the mount of Olives, then sent Yahushua two disciples, [Mark 11:1](#); [Luke 19:29](#);
- 2** Saying unto them, **Go into the village over against you, and immediately you shall find an ass tied, and a colt with her: loose *them*, and bring *them* unto me.**
- 3** And if any *man* say ought unto you, you shall say, The Lord has need of them; and immediately he will send them.
- 4** All this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying,
- 5 Tell you the daughter of Sion, Behold, thy King cometh unto you, meek, and sitting upon an ass, and a colt the foal of an ass.** [Isa 62:11](#); [Zech 9:9](#); [John 12:15](#);
- 6** And the disciples went, and did as Yahushua commanded them,
- 7** And brought the ass, and the colt, and put on them their clothes, and they set *him* thereon. [2Kgs 9:13](#); [John 12:14](#);
- 8** And a very great multitude spread their garments in the way; others cut down branches from the trees, and strawed *them* in the way. [\[John 12:12\]](#);
- 9** And the multitudes that went before, and that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna to the Son of David: **Blessed *is* he that cometh in the name of the Lord;** Hosanna in the highest. [Ps 118:25-26](#);
- 10** And when he was come into Jerusalem, all the city was moved, saying, Who is this?
- 11** And the multitude said, This is Yahushua the prophet of Nazareth of Galilee.

drives the buyers and sellers out of the temple

- 12** And Yahushua went into the temple of Elohim, and cast out all them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves, [Deut 14:26](#); [Mark 11:15](#); [Luke 19:45](#); [John 2:14](#); [\[Mark 11:11\]](#);
- 13** And said unto them, **It is written, My house shall be called the house of prayer; but you have made it a den of thieves.** [1Kgs 8:29](#); [Isa 56:7](#); [Jer 7:11](#); [Luke 19:46](#); [\[Mark 11:17\]](#);
- 14** And the blind and the lame came to him in the temple; and he healed them. [\[Isa 35:5\]](#); [\[Isa 35:6\]](#); [\[Mark 11:11\]](#);
- 15** And when the chief priests and scribes saw the wonderful things that he did, and the children crying in the temple, and saying, Hosanna to the Son of David; they were sore displeased, [Mark 11:27](#);
- 16** And said unto him, Hearest you what these say? And Yahushua saith unto them, yes; **have you never read, Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings you have perfected praise?** [Ps 8:2](#);

curses the fig-tree

- 17** And he left them, and went out of the city into Bethany; and he lodged there.
- 18** Now in the morning as he returned into the city, he hungered. [Mark 11:12](#); [Mark 11:20](#);
- 19** And when he saw a fig tree in the way, he came to it, and found nothing thereon, but leaves only, and said unto it, **Let no fruit grow on you henceforward for ever.** And presently the fig tree withered away. [\[Jer 8:13\]](#);
- 20** And when the disciples saw *it*, they marvelled, saying, How soon is the fig tree withered away!
- 21** Yahushua answered and said unto them, **Verily I say unto you, If you have faith, and doubt not, you shall not only do this *which is done* to the fig tree, but also if you shall say unto this mountain, Be you removed, and be you cast into the sea; it shall be done.** [Matt 17:20](#); [Luke 17:6](#); [\[Mark 11:23\]](#); [\[John 14:12\]](#); [\[1Cor 13:2\]](#);
- 22** And all things, whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, you shall receive. [Matt 7:7](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [1John 3:22](#); [\[John 15:7\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#); [\[1John 5:14\]](#);

puts to silence the priests and elders

23 And when he was come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came unto him as he was teaching, and said, By what authority do you these things? and who gave you this authority? [Mark 11:27](#); [Luke 20:1](#); [Exod 2:14](#); [Acts 4:7](#); [Acts 7:27](#);

24 And Yahushua answered and said unto them, **I also will ask you one thing, which if you tell me, I in like wise will tell you by what authority I do these things.**

25 **The baptism of John, whence was it? from heaven, or of men?** And they reasoned with themselves, saying, If we shall say, From heaven; he will say unto us, Why did you not then believe him?

26 But if we shall say, Of men; we fear the people; for all hold John as a prophet. [Matt 14:5](#); [Mark 6:20](#); [[Acts 5:26](#)];

27 And they answered Yahushua, and said, We cannot tell. And he said unto them, **Neither tell I you by what authority I do these things.**

and rebukes them by the similitude of the two sons

28 But what think you? A *certain* man had two sons; and he came to the first, and said, Son, go work to day in my vineyard.

29 He answered and said, I will not: but afterward he repented, and went.

30 And he came to the second, and said likewise. And he answered and said, I *go*, sir: and went not. [Ezek 33:31](#);

31 Whether of them twain did the will of *his* father? They say unto him, The first. Yahushua saith unto them, Verily I say unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of Elohim before you. [[Mark 2:17](#)];

32 For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and you believed him not: but the publicans and the harlots believed him: and you, when you had seen *it*, repented not afterward, that you might believe him. [Matt 3:1](#);

and the husbandmen who slew such as were sent to them

33 Hear another parable: There was a certain householder, which planted a vineyard, and hedged it round about, and digged a winepress in it, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country: [Ps 80:8](#); [Isa 5:1](#); [Jer 2:21](#); [Jer 12:10](#); [Mark 12:1](#); [Luke 20:9](#);

34 And when the time of the fruit drew near, he sent his servants to the husbandmen, that they might receive the fruits of it.

35 And the husbandmen took his servants, and beat one, and killed another, and stoned another. [2Chr 24:21](#); [[Matt 23:37](#)];

36 Again, he sent other servants more than the first: and they did unto them likewise.

37 But last of all he sent unto them his son, saying, They will reverence my son.

38 But when the husbandmen saw the son, they said among themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance. [Ps 2:8](#); [Heb 1:2](#); [Gen 37:18](#); [Ps 2:1](#); [Matt 26:3](#); [Matt 27:1](#); [John 11:53](#);

39 And they caught him, and cast *him* out of the vineyard, and slew *him*.

40 When the lord therefore of the vineyard cometh, what will he do unto those husbandmen?

41 They say unto him, He will miserably destroy those wicked men, and will let out *his* vineyard unto other husbandmen, which shall render him the fruits in their seasons.

42 Yahushua saith unto them, Did you never read in the scriptures, **The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?** [Ps 118:22](#); [Isa 8:14](#); [Isa 28:16](#); [Mark 12:10](#); [Luke 20:17](#); [Acts 4:11](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [1Pet 2:6](#); [[1Pet 2:7](#)];

43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of Elohim shall be taken from you, and given to a people bringing forth the fruits thereof. [Exod 32:10](#); [Matt 8:12](#); [Isa 55:5](#); [[Acts 13:46](#)];

44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder. [Isa 8:15](#); [Zech 12:3](#); [Luke 20:18](#); [Dan 2:34](#);

45 And when the chief priests and Pharisees had heard his parables, they perceived that he spoke of them. [Luke 20:19](#);

46 But when they sought to lay hands on him, they feared the multitude, because they took him for a prophet. [Luke 7:16](#); [John 7:40](#); [[John 7:12](#)];

The parable of the marriage of the king's son

- 1** And Yahushua answered and spoke unto them again by parables, and said,
2 The kingdom of heaven is like unto a certain king, which made a marriage for his son, [Luke 14:6](#); [Rev 19:7](#); [\[Luke 14:16\]](#);
3 And sent forth his servants to call them that were invited to the wedding: and they would not come.
4 Again, he sent forth other servants, saying, Tell them which are invited, Behold, I have prepared my dinner: my oxen and *my* fatlings *are* killed, and all things *are* ready: come unto the marriage.
5 But they made light of *it*, and went their ways, one to his farm, another to his merchandise:
6 And the remnant took his servants, and entreated *them* spitefully, and slew *them*.
7 But when the king heard *thereof*, he was wroth: and he sent forth his armies, and destroyed those murderers, and burned up their city.
8 Then saith he to his servants, The wedding is ready, but they which were invited were not worthy.

The vocation of the Gentiles

- 9** Go you therefore into the highways, and as many as you shall find, bid to the marriage.
10 So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all as many as they found, both bad and good: and the wedding was furnished with guests.
11 And when the king came in to see the guests, he saw there a man which had not on a wedding garment:

The punishment of him that wanted the wedding garment

- 12** And he saith unto him, Friend, how camest you in hither not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless.
13 Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast *him* into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. [Matt 8:12](#); [Matt 13:42](#); [Matt 24:51](#); [Matt 25:30](#); [Luke 13:28](#);
14 For many are called, but few *are* chosen. [Matt 20:16](#);

Tribute ought to be paid to Caesar

- 15** Then went the Pharisees, and took counsel how they might entangle him in *his* talk. [Mark 12:13](#); [Luke 20:20](#);
16 And they sent out unto him their disciples with the Herodians, saying, Master, we know that you are true, and teachest the way of Elohim in truth, neither carest you for any *man*: for you regardest not the person of men. [\[Luke 20:20\]](#); [\[Jas 2:1\]](#);
17 Tell us therefore, What thinkest you? Is it lawful to give tribute unto Caesar, or not?
18 But Yahushua perceived their wickedness, and said, **Why tempt you me, you hypocrites?**
19 **Show me the tribute money.** And they brought unto him a penny.
20 And he saith unto them, **Whose is this image and superscription?**
21 They say unto him, Caesar's. Then saith he unto them, **Render therefore unto Caesar the things which are Caesar's; and unto Elohim the things that are Elohim's.** [Matt 17:25](#); [Rom 13:7](#); [\[Mark 12:17\]](#); [\[Luke 20:25\]](#); [\[Luke 23:2\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:17\]](#);
22 When they had heard *these words*, they marvelled, and left him, and went their way.

Yahushua confutes the Sadducees for the resurrection

- 23** The same day came to him the Sadducees, which say that there is no resurrection, and asked him, [Mark 12:18](#); [Luke 20:27](#); [Acts 23:8](#);
24 Saying, Master, Moses said, **If a man die, having no children, his brother shall marry his wife, and raise up seed unto his brother.** [Deut 25:5](#);
25 Now there were with us seven brethren: and the first, when he had married a wife, deceased, and, having no issue, left his wife unto his brother:

26 Likewise the second also, and the third, unto the seventh.

27 And last of all the woman died also.

28 Therefore in the resurrection whose wife shall she be of the seven? for they all had her.

29 Yahushua answered and said unto them, you **do err, not knowing the scriptures, nor the power of Elohim.**

30 For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of Elohim in heaven. [1John 3:2](#); [\[Mark 12:25\]](#);

31 But as touching the resurrection of the dead, have you not read that which was spoken unto you by Elohim, saying, [\[Mark 12:26\]](#);

32 **I am the Elohim of Abraham, and the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob?** Elohim is not the Elohim of the dead, but of the living. [Exod 3:6](#); [\[1Kgs 18:36\]](#); [\[Acts 7:32\]](#); [\[Heb 11:16\]](#);

33 And when the multitude heard *this*, they were astonished at his doctrine. [Matt 7:28](#);

answers the lawyer, which is the first and great commandment

34 But when the Pharisees had heard that he had put the Sadducees to silence, they were gathered together. [Mark 12:28](#);

35 Then one of them, *which was* a lawyer, asked *him a question*, tempting him, and saying, [Luke 10:25](#);

36 Master, which *is* the great commandment in the law?

37 Yahushua said unto him, you **shall love the Lord thy Elohim with all thy heart, and with all thy being, and with all thy mind.** [Deut 6:5](#); [Deut 10:12](#); [Deut 30:6](#); [Luke 10:27](#);

38 This is the first and great commandment.

39 And the second *is* like unto it, you **shall love thy neighbour as thyself.** [Lev 19:18](#); [Mark 12:31](#); [Rom 13:9](#); [Gal 5:14](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [Jas 2:8](#); [\[Matt 19:19\]](#); [\[John 13:34\]](#); [\[John 15:12\]](#); [\[1John 3:23\]](#); [\[1John 4:21\]](#);

40 On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.

Puzzles the Pharisees by a question about the Messiah

41 While the Pharisees were gathered together, Yahushua asked them, [Mark 12:35](#); [Luke 20:41](#);

42 Saying, **What think you of the Messiah? Whose son is he?** They say unto him, *The Son* of David. [\[Luke 20:41\]](#);

43 He saith unto them, **How then does David in spirit call him Lord, saying,**

44 **The YAHWEH said unto my Lord, Sit you on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool?** [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Heb 1:13](#); [Heb 10:13](#);

45 **If David then call him Lord, how is he his son?**

46 And no man was able to answer him a word, neither dared any *man* from that day forth ask him any more *questions*.

Yahushua admonishes the people to follow the good doctrine, not the evil examples, of the Scribes and Pharisees

- 1** Then spoke Yahushua to the multitude, and to his disciples,
2 Saying, *The scribes and the Pharisees sit in Moses' seat:* [Neh 8:4](#);
3 All therefore whatsoever they bid you observe, *that* observe and do; but do not you after their works: for they say, and do not. [Deut 17:19](#); [Mal 2:6](#); [Rom 2:19](#);
4 For they bind heavy burdens and grievous to be borne, and lay *them* on men's shoulders; but they *themselves* will not move them with one of their fingers. [Isa 10:1](#); [Luke 11:46](#); [Acts 15:10](#);

His disciples must beware of their ambition

- 5** But all their works they do for to be seen of men: they make broad their phylacteries, and enlarge the borders of their garments, [Matt 6:5](#); [Deut 6:8](#); [Deut 22:12](#); [[Num 15:38](#)]; [[Mark 12:38](#)]; [[Luke 20:46](#)];
6 And love the uppermost rooms at feasts, and the chief seats in the synagogues, [Mark 12:38-39](#); [Luke 11:43](#); [Luke 20:46](#);
7 And greetings in the markets, and to be called of men, great one, great one. [Jas 3:1](#);
8 But do not be called great one: for one is your Great One, the Messiah, and all you are brethren. [[John 13:13](#)]; [[Jas 3:1](#)];
9 And call no *man* your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven. [Mal 1:6](#);
10 Neither be you called masters: for one is your Master, the Messiah. [[John 13:13](#)];
11 But he that is greatest among you shall be your servant. [Matt 20:26](#); [[Matt 20:27](#)]; [[Luke 9:48](#)];
12 And whosoever shall exalt himself shall be humbled; and he that shall humble himself shall be exalted. [Job 22:29](#); [Prov 29:23](#); [Luke 14:11](#); [Luke 18:14](#); [Jas 4:6](#); [Jas 4:10](#); [1Pet 5:5](#); [[1Pet 5:6](#)];

He denounces eight woes against their hypocrisy and blindness

- 13** Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you devour widows' houses, and for a pretence make long prayer: therefore you shall receive the greater damnation. [Mark 12:40](#); [Luke 20:47](#); [2Tim 3:6](#); [Titus 1:11](#); [[Ezek 22:25](#)]; [[Luke 16:14](#)];
14 But woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you shut up the kingdom of heaven against men: for you neither go in *yourselves*, neither suffer you them that are entering to go in. [Luke 11:52](#);
15 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you compass sea and land to make one proselyte, and when he is made, you make him twofold more the child of hell than yourselves.
16 Woe unto you, you blind guides, which say, Whosoever shall swear by the temple, it is nothing; but whosoever shall swear by the gold of the temple, he is a debtor!
17 You fools and blind: for whether is greater, the gold, or the temple that sanctifieth the gold?
18 And, Whosoever shall swear by the altar, it is nothing; but whosoever sweareth by the gift that is upon it, he is guilty.
19 You fools and blind: for whether *is* greater, the gift, or the altar that sanctifieth the gift? [Exod 29:37](#);
20 Whoso therefore shall swear by the altar, sweareth by it, and by all things thereon.
21 And whoso shall swear by the temple, sweareth by it, and by him that dwelleth therein. [1Kgs 8:13](#); [2Chr 6:1-2](#);
22 And he that shall swear by heaven, sweareth by the throne of Elohim, and by him that sitteth thereon. [2Chr 6:33](#); [Isa 66:1](#); [Matt 5:34](#); [Acts 7:49](#);
23 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you pay tithe of mint and anise and cummin, and have omitted the weightier *matters* of the law, judgment, mercy, and faith: these ought you to have done, and not to leave the other undone. [Luke 11:42](#); [1Sam 15:22](#); [Hos 6:6](#); [Mic 6:8](#); [Matt 9:13](#); [Matt 12:7](#);
24 You blind guides, which strain at a gnat, and swallow a camel.
25 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you make clean the outside of the cup and of the platter, but within they are full of extortion and excess. [Luke 11:39](#); [[Isa 14:21](#)];

26 You blind Pharisee, cleanse first that *which is* within the cup and platter, that the outside of them may be clean also. [Titus 1:15](#); [\[Jer 2:31\]](#);

27 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you are like unto whited sepulchers, which indeed appear beautiful outward, but are within full of dead *men's* bones, and of all uncleanness. [Acts 23:3](#); [\[Luke 11:44\]](#);

28 Even so you also outwardly appear righteous unto men, but within you are full of hypocrisy and iniquity.

29 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you build the tombs of the prophets, and garnish the sepulchers of the righteous, [Luke 11:47](#);

30 And say, If we had been in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partakers with them in the blood of the prophets.

31 Wherefore you be witnesses unto yourselves, that you are the children of them which killed the prophets. [Acts 7:51](#); [1Thess 2:15](#);

32 Fill you up then the measure of your fathers.

33 You serpents, you generation of vipers, how can you escape the damnation of hell? [Matt 3:7](#); [\[Luke 3:7\]](#);

and prophecies of the destruction of Jerusalem

34 Wherefore, behold, I send unto you prophets, and wise men, and scribes: and *some* of them you shall kill and crucify; and *some* of them shall you scourge in your synagogues, and persecute *them* from city to city: [Luke 11:49](#); [Matt 10:16](#); [Luke 10:3](#); [John 16:2](#); [Acts 7:52](#); [Matt 10:17](#); [Acts 5:40](#); [\[Rev 16:6\]](#);

35 That upon you may come all the righteous blood shed upon the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel unto the blood of Zacharias son of Barachias, whom you slew between the temple and the altar. [Gen 4:8](#); [Heb 11:4](#); [2Chr 24:21](#); [\[Titus 1:15\]](#);

36 Verily I say unto you, All these things shall come upon this generation.

37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto you, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under *her* wings, and you would not! [Luke 13:34](#); [Matt 21:35-36](#); [Ps 17:8](#); [Ps 91:4](#); [\[1Thess 2:15\]](#);

38 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate. [Ps 69:25](#); [Isa 1:7](#); [Jer 7:34](#); [Mic 3:12](#); [Acts 1:20](#); [\[Luke 13:35\]](#);

39 For I say unto you, you shall not see me henceforth, till you shall say, Blessed *is* he that cometh in the name of the Lord. [Ps 118:26](#);

Yahushua foretells the destruction of the temple

1 And Yahushua went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to *him* for to show him the buildings of the temple. [Mark 13:1](#); [Luke 21:5](#); [[Luke 19:44](#)];

2 And Yahushua said unto them, *See you not all these things? verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.* [1Kgs 9:7-8](#); [Mic 3:12](#); [Luke 19:44](#);

what and how great calamities shall be before it

3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? and what *shall be* the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world? [Mark 13:1](#); [Mark 13:3](#); [Luke 21:7](#); [Acts 1:6](#);

4 And Yahushua answered and said unto them, *Take heed that no man deceive you.* [Jer 29:8](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [Col 2:18](#); [1Thess 2:3](#); [1John 4:1](#); [[Matt 7:15](#)]; [[Luke 21:8](#)]; [[2Thess 2:2](#)]; [[Heb 13:9](#)];

5 *For many shall come in my name, saying, I am the Messiah; and shall deceive many.* [Jer 14:14](#); [Jer 23:25](#); [John 5:43](#); [[1John 2:18](#)]; [[1John 4:1](#)]; [[2John 1:7](#)];

6 And you shall hear of wars and rumours of wars: see that you be not troubled: for all *these things* must come to pass, but the end is not yet.

7 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in various places. [Isa 19:2](#);

8 All these *are* the beginning of sorrows.

9 Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and you shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake. [Matt 10:17](#); [Luke 21:11-12](#); [John 15:20](#); [John 16:2](#); [Rev 2:10](#); [[Mark 13:9](#)]; [[Luke 21:12](#)];

10 And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another.

11 And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many. [2Pet 2:1](#);

12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. [2Tim 3:1](#);

13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. [Matt 10:22](#); [Mark 13:13](#); [Luke 21:19](#); [Rev 2:7](#); [Rev 2:10](#); [Rev 3:10](#);

14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.

15 When you therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:) [Mark 13:14](#); [Luke 21:20](#); [Dan 9:27](#); [[Luke 21:22](#)];

16 Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains:

17 Let him which is on the housetop not come down to take any thing out of his house:

18 Neither let him which is in the field return back to take his clothes.

19 And woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck in those days!

20 But pray you that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the Sabbath day: [Acts 1:12](#);

21 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. [Dan 12:1](#);

22 And except those days should be shortened, no flesh would survive: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.

23 Then if any man shall say to you, Lo, here *is* the Messiah, or there; believe *it* not. [Mark 13:21](#); [Luke 21:8](#); [[Luke 17:21](#)]; [[Luke 17:23](#)]; [[2Thess 2:3](#)]; [[1Tim 4:1](#)];

24 For there shall arise false messiahs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if possible, they shall deceive the very elect. [Deut 13:1](#); [2Thess 2:11](#); [[1John 4:1](#)]; [[2John 1:7](#)]; [[Rev 13:14](#)]; [[Rev 19:20](#)];

25 Behold, I have told you before.

26 Therefore if they shall say to you, Behold, he is in the desert; do not go out: behold, *he is* in the secret chambers; do not believe *it*. [Luke 17:23](#);

27 For as the lightning comes from the east, and flashes as far as the west; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

28 For whereever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together. Job 39:30; Luke 17:37;

the signs of his coming to judgment

29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: Isa 13:10; Ezek 32:7; Joel 2:31; Joel 3:15; Mark 13:24; Luke 21:15; [Luke 21:25];

30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. Dan 7:10; Matt 16:27; Matt 25:31; Matt 26:64; Mark 13:26; Mark 14:62; Luke 21:27; Acts 1:11; 2Thess 1:10; Rev 1:7; [Luke 22:69];

31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other. 1Cor 15:52; 1Thess 4:16;

32 Now learn a parable of the fig tree; When his branch is yet tender, and puts forth leaves, you know that summer *is* nigh: Mark 13:28; Luke 21:29;

33 So likewise you, when you shall see all these things, know that it is near, *even* at the doors.

34 Verily I say unto you, This tribe shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled.

35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away. Ps 102:26; Isa 51:6; Mark 13:31; Heb 1:11; [Luke 21:33];

And because that day and hour are unknown

36 But of that day and hour knoweth no *man*, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only. Mark 13:32; Acts 1:7;

37 But as the days of Noe *were*, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. Gen 6:2; Luke 17:26; 1Pet 3:20; 2Pet 2:5;

38 For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, Gen 7:7;

39 And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

40 Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Luke 17:34; 1Thess 4:17;

41 Two *women shall be* grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

we ought to watch like good servants, expecting every moment our Master's coming

42 Watch therefore: for you know not what hour your Lord comes. Matt 25:13; Mark 13:33; Luke 12:40; Luke 21:36; [Luke 12:38];

43 But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up. Luke 12:39; 1Thess 5:2; 2Pet 3:10; Rev 3:3; Rev 16:15;

44 Therefore be you also ready: for in such a hour as you think not the Son of man cometh. [Luke 12:40];

45 Who then is a faithful and wise servant, whom his lord has made ruler over his household, to give them meat in due season? Matt 25:21; Luke 12:42; [1Cor 4:1]; [Titus 1:7];

46 Blessed *is* that servant, whom his lord when he cometh shall find so doing.

47 Verily I say unto you, That he shall make him ruler over all his goods.

48 But if that evil servant shall say in his heart, My lord delayeth his coming;

49 And shall begin to smite *his* fellowservants, and to eat and drink with the drunken;

50 The lord of that servant shall come in a day when he looketh not for *him*, and in a hour that he is not aware of,

51 And shall cut him asunder, and appoint *him* his portion with the hypocrites: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. Matt 8:12; Matt 13:42; Matt 22:13; Matt 25:30; Luke 13:28;

The parable of the ten virgins

- 1 Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom.
- 2 And five of them were wise, and five *were* foolish.
- 3 They that *were* foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them:
- 4 But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps.
- 5 While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.
- 6 And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.
- 7 Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps.
- 8 And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out.
- 9 But the wise answered, saying, *Not so*; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves.
- 10 And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut.
- 11 Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. [\[Matt 7:21\]; \[Luke 6:46\]; \[Luke 13:25\];](#)
- 12 But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. [Matt 7:23; Luke 13:25; \[Luke 13:27\];](#)
- 13 Watch therefore, for you know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh. [Matt 24:42; Mark 13:33; Mark 13:35; \[Luke 12:40\]; \[Luke 21:36\];](#)

and of the talents

- 14 For *the kingdom of heaven is* as a man travelling into a far country, *who* called his own servants, and delivered unto them his goods. [Luke 19:12;](#)
- 15 And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to every man according to his several ability; and immediately took his journey.
- 16 Then he that had received the five talents went and traded with the same, and made *them* other five talents.
- 17 And likewise he that *had received* two, he also gained other two.
- 18 But he that had received one went and digged in the earth, and hid his lord's money.
- 19 After a long time the lord of those servants cometh, and reckoneth with them.
- 20 And so he that had received five talents came and brought other five talents, saying, Lord, you deliveredst unto me five talents: behold, I have gained beside them five talents more.
- 21 His lord said unto him, Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord. [Matt 24:45; Luke 12:42; \[1Tim 3:13\];](#)
- 22 He also that had received two talents came and said, Lord, you deliveredst unto me two talents: behold, I have gained two other talents beside them.
- 23 His lord said unto him, Well done, good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.
- 24 Then he which had received the one talent came and said, Lord, I knew you that you are a hard man, reaping where you have not sown, and gathering where you have not sowed:
- 25 And I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth: lo, *there* you have *that is* thine.
- 26 His lord answered and said unto him, thou wicked and slothful servant, thou knewest that I reap where I sowed not, and gather where I have not sowed:
- 27 You oughtest therefore to have put my money to the exchangers, and *then* at my coming I should have received mine own with usury.
- 28 Take therefore the talent from him, and give *it* unto him which has ten talents.
- 29 For unto every one that has shall be given, and he shall have abundance: but from him that has not shall be taken away even that which he has. [Matt 13:12; Mark 4:25; Luke 8:18; Luke 19:26;](#)

30 And cast you the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. [Matt 8:12](#); [Matt 13:42](#); [Matt 22:13](#); [Matt 24:51](#); [Luke 13:28](#);

Also the description of the last judgment

31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory: [Matt 16:27](#); [Matt 26:64](#); [Mark 14:62](#); [Luke 21:27](#); [Acts 1:11](#); [1Thess 4:16](#); [2Thess 1:10](#); [Rev 1:7](#); [Matt 19:28](#); [[Matt 24:30](#)]; [[Luke 22:69](#)]; [[Rom 2:16](#)]; [[Rom 14:10](#)];

32 And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth *his* sheep from the goats: [Ezek 34:17](#); [Ezek 34:20](#); [Matt 13:49](#); [[2Cor 5:10](#)];

33 And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left.

34 Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, you blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: [Matt 20:23](#); [Mark 10:40](#); [[John 5:29](#)]; [[1Pet 3:9](#)];

35 For I was a hungered, and you gave me meat: I was thirsty, and you gave me drink: I was a stranger, and you took me in: [Isa 58:7](#); [Ezek 18:7](#); [Heb 13:2](#);

36 Naked, and you clothed me: I was sick, and you visited me: I was in prison, and you came unto me. [Isa 58:7](#); [Jas 2:15-16](#); [2Tim 1:16](#); [[Heb 13:3](#)];

37 Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we you a hungered, and fed you? or thirsty, and gave you drink?

38 When saw we you a stranger, and took you in? or naked, and clothed you?

39 Or when saw we you sick, or in prison, and came unto you?

40 And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as you have done *it* unto one of the least of these my brethren, you have done *it* unto me. [Prov 19:17](#); [Matt 10:42](#); [Mark 9:41](#); [John 13:20](#); [2Cor 9:6](#); [[Heb 6:10](#)];

41 Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels: [Ps 6:8](#); [Matt 7:23](#); [Luke 13:25](#); [Luke 13:27](#); [Isa 30:33](#); [Rev 19:20](#);

42 For I was a hungered, and you gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and you gave me no drink:

43 I was a stranger, and you took me not in: naked, and you clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and you visited me not.

44 Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we you a hungered, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto you?

45 Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as you did *it* not to one of the least of these, you did *it* not to me. [Prov 14:31](#); [Prov 17:5](#); [Zech 2:8](#);

46 And these shall go away into eternal punishment: but the righteous into life eternal. [Dan 12:2](#); [John 5:29](#);

Yahushua foretells his own death

- 1** And it came to pass, when Yahushua had finished all these sayings, he said unto his disciples,
2 You know that after two days is the passover, and the Son of man is betrayed to be crucified. [Mark 14:1;](#)
[Luke 22:1;](#) [John 13:1;](#)

The rulers conspire against him

- 3** Then assembled together the chief priests, and the scribes, and the elders of the people, unto the palace of the high priest, who was called Caiaphas, [Ps 2:2;](#) [John 11:47;](#) [Acts 4:27;](#) [\[Matt 21:38\];](#) [\[Mark 12:7\];](#) [\[Luke 20:14\];](#)
4 And consulted that they might take Yahushua by subtilty, and kill *him*.
5 But they said, Not on the feast *day*, lest there be an uproar among the people.

The woman anoints his feet

- 6** Now when Yahushua was in Bethany, in the house of Simon the jar maker, [\[Mark 14:3\];](#) [\[Luke 7:36\];](#) [\[John 11:2\];](#) [\[John 12:1\];](#)
7 There came unto him a woman having an alabaster box of very precious ointment, and poured it on his head, as he reclined. [Mark 14:3;](#) [Luke 7:37;](#) [John 11:2;](#) [John 12:3;](#)
8 But when his disciples saw *it*, they had indignation, saying, To what purpose *is* this waste?
9 For this ointment might have been sold for much, and given to the poor.
10 When Yahushua understood *it*, he said unto them, **Why trouble you the woman? for she has wrought a good work upon me.**
11 For you have the poor always with you; but me you have not always. [Deut 15:11;](#) [Mark 14:7;](#) [John 12:8;](#)
12 For in that she has poured this ointment on my body, she did *it* for my burial. [\[Mark 15:46\];](#) [\[Luke 23:53\];](#)
13 Verily I say unto you, Wheresoever this gospel shall be preached in the whole world, *there* shall also this, that this woman has done, be told for a memorial of her.

Judas bargains to betray him

- 14** Then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot, went unto the chief priests, [Mark 14:10;](#) [Luke 22:4;](#) [\[Luke 22:3\];](#)
15 And said *unto them*, What will you give me, and I will deliver him unto you? And they covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver. [Zech 11:12;](#)
16 And from that time he sought opportunity to betray him.

Yahushua eats the passover

- 17** Now before the *feast of* unleavened bread the disciples came to Yahushua, saying unto him, Where will you that we prepare for you to eat the passover? [Mark 14:12;](#) [Luke 22:7;](#) [Exod 12:17;](#)
18 And he said, **Go into the city to such a man, and say unto him, The Master saith, My time is at hand; I will keep the passover at thy house with my disciples.**
19 And the disciples did as Yahushua had appointed them; and they made ready the passover.
20 Now when the even was come, he sat down with the twelve. [Mark 14:17;](#) [Luke 22:14;](#) [John 13:21;](#)
21 And as they did eat, he said, **Verily I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me.** [Acts 1:17;](#) [\[John 13:21\];](#)
22 And they were exceeding sorrowful, and began every one of them to say unto him, Lord, is it I?
23 And he answered and said, **He that dippeth *his* hand with me in the dish, the same shall betray me.** [Ps 41:9;](#) [Luke 22:21;](#) [John 13:18;](#) [\[Acts 1:16\];](#)
24 **The Son of man goes as it is written of him: but woe unto that man by whom the Son of man is betrayed! it had been good for that man if he had not been born.** [\[Matt 18:7\];](#)
25 Then Judas, which betrayed him, answered and said, Master, is it I? He said unto him, you **have said.**

institutes his holy supper

26 And as they were eating, Yahushua took bread, and blessed *it*, and brake *it*, and gave *it* to the disciples, and said, **Take, eat; this is my body.** [Mark 14:22](#); [Luke 22:19](#); [1Cor 11:23](#);
27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave *it* to them, saying, **Drink you all of it;**
28 **For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.** [Exod 24:8](#);
[\[Zech 9:11\]](#); [\[Heb 9:20\]](#);
29 **But I say unto you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.**

foretells the desertion of his disciples, and Peter's denial

30 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives. [Mark 14:26](#); [Luke 22:39](#); [John 18:1](#);
31 Then saith Yahushua unto them, **All you shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written, I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad.** [Zech 13:7](#); [John 16:32](#); [\[Mark 14:27\]](#);
32 **But after I am risen again, I will go before you into Galilee.** [Mark 14:28](#); [Mark 16:7](#); [\[Matt 28:7\]](#); [\[Matt 28:16\]](#);
33 Peter answered and said unto him, though all *men* shall be offended because of you, yet will I never be offended. [Luke 22:33](#); [\[John 13:37\]](#);
34 Yahushua said unto him, **Verily I say unto you, That this night, before the cock crow, you shall deny me thrice.** [John 13:38](#); [\[Matt 26:75\]](#); [\[Mark 14:30\]](#); [\[Mark 14:72\]](#); [\[Luke 22:34\]](#); [\[Luke 22:61\]](#);
35 Peter said unto him, though I should die with you, yet will I not deny you. Likewise also said all the disciples.

prays in the garden

36 Then cometh Yahushua with them unto a place called Gethsemane, and saith unto the disciples, **Sit you here, while I go and pray yonder.** [Mark 14:32](#); [Luke 22:39](#); [John 18:1](#);
37 And he took with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be sorrowful and very heavy. [\[John 12:27\]](#);
38 Then saith he unto them, **My being is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death: tarry you here, and watch with me.** [John 12:27](#);
39 And he went a little further, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, **O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as you wilt.** [Luke 22:41](#); [Matt 20:22-23](#); [John 6:38](#); [\[John 18:11\]](#); [\[Heb 5:7\]](#);
40 And he cometh unto the disciples, and finds them asleep, and saith unto Peter, **What, could you not watch with me one hour?** [\[Mark 14:37\]](#);
41 **Watch and pray, that you enter not into temptation: the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.** [Gal 5:17](#);
42 He went away again the second time, and prayed, saying, **O my Father, if this cup may not pass away from me, except I drink it, thy will be done.**
43 And he came and found them asleep again: for their eyes were heavy.
44 And he left them, and went away again, and prayed the third time, saying the same words.
45 Then cometh he to his disciples, and saith unto them, **Sleep on now, and take your rest: behold, the hour is at hand, and the Son of man is betrayed into the hands of sinners.**
46 **Rise, let us be going: behold, he is at hand that betrays me.**

and being betrayed by a kiss

47 And while he yet spoke, lo, Judas, one of the twelve, came, and with him a great multitude with swords and staves, from the chief priests and elders of the people. [Mark 14:43](#); [Luke 22:47](#); [John 18:3](#); [\[Acts 1:16\]](#);
48 Now he that betrayed him gave them a sign, saying, Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he: hold him fast.
49 And forthwith he came to Yahushua, and said, Hail, master; and kissed him. [2Sam 20:9](#);
50 And Yahushua said unto him, **Friend, wherefore are you come?** Then came they, and laid hands on Yahushua, and took him.

51 And, behold, one of them which were with Yahushua stretched out *his* hand, and drew his sword, and struck a servant of the high priest's, and smote off his ear. [Luke 22:50]; [John 18:10];

52 Then said Yahushua unto him, **Put up again thy sword into his place: for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword.** Gen 9:6; Rev 13:10;

53 **Thinkest you that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels?**

54 **But how then shall the scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?** Ps 22:6; Ps 69:1; Ps 69:9; Luke 24:25;

55 In that same hour said Yahushua to the multitudes, **Are you come out as against a thief with swords and staves for to take me? I sat daily with you teaching in the temple, and you laid no hold on me.** [Luke 22:52];

56 **But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled.** Then all the disciples forsook him, and fled. Job 19:13; Ps 88:9;

is carried to Caiaphas

57 And they that had laid hold on Yahushua led *him* away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders were assembled. Mark 14:53; Luke 22:54; John 18:12; [John 18:13]; [John 18:24];

58 But Peter followed him afar off unto the high priest's palace, and went in, and sat with the servants, to see the end. [Mark 14:66]; [John 18:15];

59 Now the chief priests, and elders, and all the council, sought false witness against Yahushua, to put him to death; Mark 14:55; Acts 6:13; [Acts 6:11];

60 But found none: yes, though many false witnesses came, yet found they none.

61 At the last came two false witnesses, and said, This *fellow* said, I am able to destroy the temple of Elohim, and to build it in three days. John 2:19; [Matt 27:40];

62 And the high priest arose, and said unto him, Answerest thou nothing? what *is it which* these witness against you? Mark 14:60; [Matt 27:13];

63 But Yahushua held his peace. And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure you by the living Elohim, that you tell us whether you be the Messiah, the Son of Elohim. Isa 53:7; Matt 27:12; Matt 27:14;

64 Yahushua saith unto him, you **have said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall you see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.** Ps 110:1; Dan 7:13; Matt 16:27; Matt 24:30; Mark 14:62; Luke 22:69; Acts 1:11; Rom 14:10; 1Thess 4:16; Rev 1:7; [Matt 25:31]; [Luke 21:27];

65 Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, He has spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? behold, now you have heard his blasphemy.

66 What think you? They answered and said, He is guilty of death. Lev 24:16;

67 Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him; and others smote *him* with the palms of their hands, Isa 50:6; Job 16:10; John 19:3; [Luke 22:63];

68 Saying, Prophecy unto us, you Messiah, Who is he that smote you? Luke 22:64;

and denied of Peter

69 Now Peter sat without in the palace: and a damsel came unto him, saying, you also were with Yahushua of Galilee. Mark 14:66; Luke 22:55; John 18:16; John 18:25; [John 18:18];

70 But he denied before *them* all, saying, I know not what you sayest.

71 And when he was gone out into the porch, another *maid* saw him, and said unto them that were there, This *fellow* was also with Yahushua of Nazareth. [Mark 14:69]; [John 18:25];

72 And again he denied with an oath, I do not know the man.

73 And after a while came unto *him* they that stood by, and said to Peter, Surely you also are *one* of them; for thy speech betrays you.

74 Then began he to curse and to swear, *saying*, I know not the man. And immediately the cock crew.

75 And Peter remembered the word of Yahushua, which said unto him, **Before the cock crow, you shall deny me thrice.** And he went out, and wept bitterly. Matt 26:34; Mark 14:30; Luke 22:61; John 13:38; [2Cor 7:10];

Yahushua is delivered bound to Pilate

1 When the morning was come, all the chief priests and elders of the people took counsel against Yahushua to put him to death: [Ps 2:2](#); [Mark 15:1](#); [Luke 22:66](#); [Luke 23:2](#); [John 18:28](#); [[Matt 21:38](#)]; [[Luke 20:14](#)];

2 And when they had bound him, they led *him* away, and delivered him to Pontius Pilate the governor. [Acts 3:13](#); [[Matt 20:19](#)]; [[Luke 18:32](#)]; [[Luke 23:1](#)];

Judas hangs himself

3 Then Judas, which had betrayed him, when he saw that he was condemned, repented himself, and brought again the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders,

4 Saying, I have sinned in that I have betrayed the innocent blood. And they said, What *is that* to us? see you *to that*.

5 And he cast down the pieces of silver in the temple, and departed, and went and hanged himself. [2Sam 17:23](#); [Acts 1:18](#);

6 And the chief priests took the silver pieces, and said, It is not lawful for to put them into the treasury, because it is the price of blood.

7 And they took counsel, and bought with them the potter's field, to bury strangers in. [Acts 1:19](#);

8 Wherefore that field was called, The field of blood, unto this day. [[Acts 1:19](#)];

9 Then was fulfilled that which was spoken by the prophet, saying, **And they took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of him that was valued, whom they of the children of Israel did value;** [Zech 11:12](#);

10 And gave them for the potter's field, as the Lord appointed me.

11 And Yahushua stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, are you the King of the Jews? And Yahushua said unto him, you **sayest**. [Mark 15:2](#); [Luke 23:3](#); [John 18:33](#); [[1Tim 6:13](#)];

12 And when he was accused of the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing. [[Isa 53:7](#)]; [[Matt 26:63](#)];

13 Then said Pilate unto him, Hearest you not how many things they witness against you? [Matt 26:62](#); [[Mark 15:4](#)];

14 And he answered him to never a word; insomuch that the governor marvelled greatly. [Isa 53:7](#); [Acts 8:32](#); [[Matt 26:63](#)];

15 Now at *that* feast the governor was wont to release unto the people a prisoner, whom they would. [Mark 15:6](#); [Luke 23:17](#); [John 18:39](#);

16 And they had then a notable prisoner, called Barabbas. [Mark 15:7](#); [Luke 23:19](#); [John 18:40](#);

17 Therefore when they were gathered together, Pilate said unto them, Whom will you that I release unto you? Barabbas, or Yahushua which is called the Messiah?

18 For he knew that for envy they had delivered him.

Pilate, admonished of his wife

19 When he was set down on the judgment seat, his wife sent unto him, saying, Have you nothing to do with that just man: for I have suffered many things this day in a dream because of him.

and being urged by the multitude, washes his hands, and looses Barabbas

20 But the chief priests and elders persuaded the multitude that they should ask Barabbas, and destroy Yahushua. [Mark 15:11](#); [Luke 23:18](#); [John 18:40](#); [Acts 3:14](#); [[Acts 3:13](#)]; [[Acts 13:28](#)];

21 The governor answered and said unto them, Whether of the twain will you that I release unto you? They said, Barabbas.

22 Pilate saith unto them, What shall I do then with Yahushua which is called the Messiah? *They* all say unto him, Let him be crucified.

23 And the governor said, Why, what evil has he done? But they cried out the more, saying, Let him be crucified. [[Luke 23:13](#)];

24 When Pilate saw that he could prevail nothing, but *that* rather a tumult was made, he took water, and washed *his* hands before the multitude, saying, I am innocent of the blood of this just person: see you *to it*. [John 18:38];

25 Then answered all the people, and said, His blood *be* on us, and on our children. Acts 5:28; [Josh 2:19];

26 Then released he Barabbas unto them: and when he had scourged Yahushua, he delivered *him* to be crucified. [Mark 15:15]; [Luke 23:24]; [John 19:1]; [John 19:16];

Yahushua is mocked and crowned with thorns

27 Then the soldiers of the governor took Yahushua into the common hall, and gathered unto him the whole band *of soldiers*. Mark 15:16; John 19:2;

28 And they stripped him, and put on him a scarlet robe.

29 And when they had platted a crown of thorns, they put *it* upon his head, and a reed in his right hand: and they bowed the knee before him, and mocked him, saying, Hail, King of the Jews!

30 And they spit upon him, and took the reed, and smote him on the head.

31 And after that they had mocked him, they took the robe off from him, and put his own raiment on him, and led him away to crucify *him*. [John 19:17];

32 And as they came out, they found a man of Cyrene, Simon by name: him they compelled to bear his stake. Mark 15:21; Luke 23:26;

crucified

33 And when they were come unto a place called Golgotha, that is to say, a place of a skull, Ps 69:21; Mark 15:22; Luke 23:33; John 19:17;

34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall: and when he had tasted *thereof*, he would not drink. [Ps 69:21];

35 And they crucified him, and parted his garments, casting lots. Mark 15:24; John 19:23; Ps 22:18; [Ps 22:16]; [Luke 23:34];

36 And sitting down they watched him there;

37 And set up over his head his accusation written, THIS IS YAHUSHUA THE KING OF THE JEWS. Mark 15:26; Luke 23:38; John 19:19;

38 Then were there two thieves crucified with him, one on the right hand, and another on the left. Isa 53:12; [Luke 23:33];

reviled

39 And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads, Ps 22:7; Ps 69:20; Mark 15:29; Luke 23:35; [1Pet 2:23];

40 And saying, you that destroyest the temple, and buildest *it* in three days, save thyself. If you be the Son of Elohim, come down from the stake. Matt 26:61; John 2:19;

41 Likewise also the chief priests mocking *him*, with the scribes and elders, said,

42 He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the King of Israel, let him now come down from the stake, and we will believe him.

43 He trusted in Elohim; let him deliver him now, if he will have him: for he said, I am the Son of Elohim. Ps 22:8;

44 The thieves also, which were crucified with him, cast the same in his teeth.

45 Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour. Mark 15:33; Luke 23:44;

46 And about the ninth hour Yahushua cried with a loud voice, saying, **Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?** that is to say, **My Elohim, my Elohim, why have you forsaken me?** Ps 22:1; Heb 5:7; [Mark 15:34];

47 Some of them that stood there, when they heard *that*, said, This *man* calls for Elias.

48 And immediately one of them ran, and took a sponge, and filled *it* with vinegar, and put *it* on a reed, and gave Him to drink. Ps 69:21; John 19:29;

49 The rest said, Leave Him alone, let us see whether Elias will come to save Him. Then another took a spear and pierced His side, and out came water and blood.

dies, and is buried

- 50** Yahushua, when He had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up His spirit. [Luke 23:46](#); [\[Heb 5:7\]](#);
- 51** And, behold, the veil of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks were split; [2Chr 3:14](#); [Mark 15:38](#); [Luke 23:45](#);
- 52** And the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints which slept arose,
- 53** And came out of the graves after His resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared to many.
- 54** Now when the centurion, and they that were with him, watching Yahushua, saw the earthquake, and those things that were done, they feared greatly, saying, Truly this was the Son of Elohim. [Mark 15:39](#); [Luke 23:47](#);
- 55** And many women were there watching from afar off, who followed Yahushua from Galilee, ministering to Him: [Mark 15:40](#); [Luke 23:49](#); [Ps 38:11](#); [Luke 8:2](#); [\[John 19:25\]](#);
- 56** Among whom was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James and Joses, and the mother of Zebedee's children.
- 57** It was late afternoon and came a rich man of Arimathea, named Joseph, who also himself was Yahushua's disciple: [Mark 15:42](#); [Luke 23:50](#); [John 19:38](#);
- 58** He went to Pilate, and begged the body of Yahushua. Then Pilate commanded the body to be delivered.
- 59** And when Joseph had taken the body, he wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, [\[Luke 23:53\]](#);
- 60** And laid it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock: and he rolled a great stone to the door of the sepulcher, and departed. [Mark 15:46](#); [Luke 23:53](#);
- 61** And there was Mary Magdalene, and the other Mary, sitting over against the sepulcher.

sepulcher is sealed and watched

- 62** Now the next day, that followed the day of the preparation, the chief priests and Pharisees came together unto Pilate,
- 63** Saying, Sir, we remember that that deceiver said, while he was yet alive, **After three days I will rise again.** [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 17:23](#); [Matt 20:19](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 10:34](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 18:33](#); [Luke 24:6](#);
- 64** Command therefore that the sepulcher be made sure until the third day, lest his disciples come by night, and steal him away, and say unto the people, He is risen from the dead: so the last error shall be worse than the first.
- 65** Pilate said unto them, you have a watch: go your way, make *it* as sure as you can.
- 66** So they went, and made the sepulcher sure, sealing the stone, and setting a watch.

Yahushua's resurrection is declared by an angel to the women

1 After the Sabbath, on the first of the weeks at dawn, came Mary Magdalene and the other Mary to see the sepulcher. [Mark 16:1](#); [Luke 24:1](#); [John 20:1](#); [[John 20:11](#)];

2 And, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. [[Mark 16:5](#)];

3 His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow: [Dan 7:9](#); [Acts 1:10](#); [[Acts 10:30](#)]; [[Rev 19:14](#)];

4 And for fear of him the keepers did shake, and became as dead *men*.

5 And the angel answered and said unto the women, Fear not you: for I know that you seek Yahushua, which was crucified. [Mark 16:6](#); [Luke 24:4](#);

6 He is not here: for he is risen, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay. [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 17:23](#); [Matt 20:19](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 9:31](#); [Mark 10:34](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 18:33](#); [Luke 24:6](#); [[Acts 13:30](#)];

7 And go quickly, and tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead; and, behold, he goes before you into Galilee; there shall you see him: lo, I have told you. [Matt 26:32](#); [Mark 16:7](#);

8 And they departed quickly from the sepulcher with fear and great joy; and did run to bring his disciples word. [Mark 16:8](#); [John 20:18](#); [[Luke 24:9](#)]; [[Luke 24:22](#)];

He himself appears unto them

9 And as they went to tell his disciples, behold, Yahushua met them, saying, **All hail**. And they came and held him by the feet, and worshipped him. [Mark 16:9](#); [John 20:14](#);

10 Then said Yahushua unto them, **Be not afraid: go tell my brethren that they go into Galilee, and there shall they see me**. [Acts 1:3](#); [Acts 13:31](#); [1Cor 15:5](#); [[Mark 14:28](#)]; [[Mark 16:7](#)]; [[John 20:17](#)];

The chief priests give the soldiers money to say that he was stolen out of his sepulcher

11 Now when they were going, behold, some of the watch came into the city, and showed unto the chief priests all the things that were done.

12 And when they were assembled with the elders, and had taken counsel, they gave large money unto the soldiers,

13 Saying, Say you, His disciples came by night, and stole him *away* while we slept.

14 And if this come to the governor's ears, we will persuade him, and secure you.

15 So they took the money, and did as they were taught: and this saying is commonly reported among the Jews until this day.

Yahushua appears to his disciples

16 Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, into a mountain where Yahushua had appointed them. [Matt 26:32](#); [Mark 14:28](#);

17 And when they saw him, they worshipped him: but some doubted.

and sends them to baptize and teach all nations

18 And Yahushua came and spoke unto them, saying, **All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth**. [Ps 8:7](#); [Matt 11:27](#); [Luke 10:22](#); [John 3:35](#); [John 17:2](#); [1Cor 15:27](#); [Eph 1:22](#); [Heb 2:8](#);

19 **Go you therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit:** [Mark 16:15](#); [John 15:16](#); [[John 20:21](#)]; [[Acts 10:42](#)];

20 **Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.** [John 14:18](#);

Mark

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#)

MARK ONE

The office of John the Baptist

- 1** The beginning of the gospel of Yahushua the Messiah, the Son of Elohim;
- 2** As it is written in the prophets, **Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before you.** [Mal 3:1](#); [Matt 11:10](#); [Luke 7:27](#); [\[John 1:6\]](#); [\[John 3:28\]](#); [\[Acts 13:24\]](#);
- 3** **The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare you the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.** [Isa 40:3](#); [Matt 3:3](#); [Luke 3:4](#); [John 1:23](#);
- 4** John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins. [Matt 3:1](#); [Luke 3:3](#); [John 3:23](#); [\[John 1:6\]](#); [\[Acts 19:4\]](#);
- 5** And there went out unto him all the land of Judaea, and they of Jerusalem, and were all baptized of him in the river of Jordan, confessing their sins. [Matt 3:5](#); [Luke 3:7](#); [\[Matt 3:6\]](#); [\[John 3:23\]](#);
- 6** And John was clothed with camel's hair, and with a girdle of a skin about his loins; and he did eat locusts and wild honey; [2Kgs 1:8](#); [Matt 3:4](#); [Lev 11:22](#); [\[Matt 11:18\]](#); [\[Luke 7:33\]](#);
- 7** And preached, saying, There cometh one mightier than I after me, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and unloose. [Matt 3:11](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [John 1:27](#); [\[John 1:15\]](#); [\[John 1:26\]](#); [\[John 3:26\]](#);
- 8** I indeed have baptized you with water: but he shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit. [Matt 3:11](#); [Acts 1:5](#); [Acts 11:16](#); [Acts 19:4](#); [Isa 44:3](#); [Joel 2:28](#); [Acts 2:4](#); [Acts 11:15](#); [\[Luke 3:16\]](#);

Yahushua is baptized

- 9** And it came to pass in those days, that Yahushua came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized of John in Jordan. [\[Matt 3:13\]](#); [\[Luke 3:21\]](#);
- 10** And immediately coming up out of the water, he saw the heavens opened, and the Spirit like a dove descending upon him: [Matt 3:16](#); [Luke 3:21](#); [John 1:32](#);
- 11** And there came a voice from heaven, *saying*, you are my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. [Ps 2:7](#); [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 9:7](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [\[Matt 12:18\]](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[John 6:27\]](#); [\[John 8:18\]](#);

tempted

- 12** And immediately the Spirit driveth him into the wilderness. [Matt 4:1](#); [Luke 4:1](#);
- 13** And he was there in the wilderness forty days, tempted of Satan; and was with the wild beasts; and the angels ministered unto him.

he preaches

- 14** Now after that John was put in prison, Yahushua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of Elohim, [Matt 4:12](#); [Luke 4:14](#); [John 4:43](#); [\[Acts 10:37\]](#); [\[Heb 2:3\]](#);
- 15** And saying, **The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of Elohim is at hand: repent you, and believe the gospel.** [Isa 56:1](#); [\[Matt 4:17\]](#); [\[Acts 20:21\]](#);

calls Peter, Andrew, James, and John

- 16** Now as he walked by the sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and Andrew, Simon's brother, casting a net into the sea: for they were fishermen. [Matt 4:18](#);
- 17** And Yahushua said unto them, **Come you after me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.** [Jer 16:16](#); [Ezek 47:10](#); [\[Luke 5:10\]](#);

18 And immediately they forsook their nets, and followed him. [Matt 19:27](#); [Mark 10:28](#); [Luke 5:11](#); [Luke 18:28](#);
19 And when he had gone a little further thence, he saw James the *son* of Zebedee, and John his brother, who also were in the boat mending their nets. [Matt 4:21](#); [\[John 21:2\]](#);
20 And immediately he called them: and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, and went after him.
21 And they went into Capernaum; and immediately on the Sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and taught. [Matt 4:13](#); [Luke 4:31](#);
22 And they were astonished at his doctrine: for he taught them as one that had authority, and not as the scribes. [Matt 7:28](#); [Luke 4:32](#); [\[Matt 7:29\]](#); [\[Luke 2:47\]](#);

heals one that had a devil

23 And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, [Luke 4:33](#);
24 Saying, Let *us* alone; what have we to do with you, you Yahushua of Nazareth? are you come to destroy us? I know you who you are, the Holy One of Elohim. [\[Jas 2:19\]](#);
25 And Yahushua rebuked him, saying, **Hold thy peace, and come out of him.**
26 And when the unclean spirit had torn him, and cried with a loud voice, he came out of him. [\[Mark 9:20\]](#);
27 And they were all amazed, insomuch that they questioned among themselves, saying, What thing is this? what new doctrine *is* this? for with authority commandeth he even the unclean spirits, and they do obey him.
28 And immediately his fame spread abroad throughout all the region round about Galilee.

Peter's mother in law

29 And forthwith, when they were come out of the synagogue, they entered into the house of Simon and Andrew, with James and John. [Matt 8:14](#); [Luke 4:38](#);
30 But Simon's wife's mother lay sick of a fever, and immediately they tell him of her.
31 And he came and took her by the hand, and lifted her up; and immediately the fever left her, and she ministered unto them.

many diseased persons

32 And at even, when the sun did set, they brought unto him all that were diseased, and them that were possessed with demons. [Matt 8:16](#); [Luke 4:40](#);
33 And all the city was gathered together at the door.
34 And he healed many that were sick of various diseases, and cast out many demons; and suffered not the demons to speak, because they knew him. [\[Luke 4:41\]](#);
35 And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed. [Luke 4:42](#); [Matt 14:23](#);
36 And Simon and they that were with him followed after him.
37 And when they had found him, they said unto him, All *men* seek for you.
38 And he said unto them, **Let us go into the next towns, that I may preach there also: for therefore came I forth.** [Luke 4:43](#); [Isa 61:1](#); [Luke 4:18](#); [\[Acts 10:37\]](#);
39 And he preached in their synagogues throughout all Galilee, and cast out demons.

and cleanses the leper

40 And there came a leper to him, beseeching him, and kneeling down to him, and saying unto him, If you wilt, you canst make me clean. [Matt 8:2](#); [Luke 5:12](#);

41 And Yahushua, moved with compassion, put forth *his* hand, and touched him, and saith unto him, **I will; be you clean.**

42 And as soon as he had spoken, immediately the leprosy departed from him, and he was cleansed.

43 And he straitly charged him, and forthwith sent him away;

44 And saith unto him, **See you say nothing to any man: but go thy way, show thyself to the priest, and offer for thy cleansing those things which Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them.** [Lev 13:2](#); [Lev 14:1](#); [[Lev 14:2](#)];

45 But he went out, and began to publish *it* much, and to blaze abroad the matter, insomuch that Yahushua could no more openly enter into the city, but was without in desert places: and they came to him from every quarter.

Yahushua followed by multitudes

1 And again he entered into Capernaum after *some* days; and it was noised that he was in the house. [Matt 9:1](#); [Luke 5:17](#);

2 And immediately many were gathered together, insomuch that there was no room to receive *them*, no, not so much as about the door: and he preached the word unto them.

heals one sick of the palsy

3 And they come unto him, bringing one sick of the palsy, which was borne of four. [Matt 9:1](#); [Luke 5:18](#); [[Matt 9:2](#)];

4 And when they could not come nigh unto him for the press, they uncovered the roof where he was: and when they had broken *it* up, they let down the bed wherein the sick of the palsy lay.

5 When Yahushua saw their faith, he said unto the sick of the palsy, **Son, thy sins be forgiven you.**

6 But there were certain of the scribes sitting there, and reasoning in their hearts,

7 Why does this *man* thus speak blasphemies? who can forgive sins but Elohim only? [Ps 32:5](#); [Ps 51:1](#); [Isa 43:25](#);

8 And immediately when Yahushua perceived in his spirit that they so reasoned within themselves, he said unto them, **Why reason you these things in your hearts?**

9 Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, *Thy sins be forgiven you*; or to say, **Arise, and take up thy bed, and walk?**

10 **But that you may know that the Son of man has power on earth to forgive sins**, - he saith to the sick of the palsy -

11 **I say unto you, Arise, and take up thy bed, and go thy way into thine house.** [[John 5:8](#)];

12 And immediately he arose, took up the bed, and went forth before them all; insomuch that they were all amazed, and glorified Elohim, saying, We never saw it on this fashion.

calls Matthew from the receipt of custom

13 And he went forth again by the sea side; and all the multitude resorted unto him, and he taught them. [Matt 9:9](#); [Luke 5:27](#);

14 And as he passed by, he saw Levi the *son* of Alphaeus sitting at the receipt of custom, and said unto him, **Follow me.** And he arose and followed him. [[Matt 9:9](#)]; [[Luke 5:27](#)];

eats with Publicans and sinners

15 And it came to pass, that, as Yahushua sat at meat in his house, many publicans and sinners sat also together with Yahushua and his disciples: for there were many, and they followed him. [[Luke 5:29](#)]; [[Luke 15:1](#)];

16 And when the scribes and Pharisees saw him eat with publicans and sinners, they said unto his disciples, How is it that he eateth and drinketh with publicans and sinners?

17 When Yahushua heard *it*, he saith unto them, **They that are whole have no need of the physician, but they that are sick: I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.** [Matt 9:13](#); [Matt 21:31](#); [Luke 5:32](#); [Luke 19:10](#); [1Tim 1:15](#);

excuses his disciples for not fasting

18 And the disciples of John and of the Pharisees used to fast: and they come and say unto him, Why do the disciples of John and of the Pharisees fast, but thy disciples fast not? [Matt 9:14](#); [Luke 5:33](#); [[Matt 6:16](#)];

19 And Yahushua said unto them, **Can the children of the bridechamber fast, while the bridegroom is with them? as long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast.** [Isa 62:5](#); [2Cor 11:2](#);

20 But the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then shall they fast in those days.

21 No man also seweth a piece of new cloth on an old garment: else the new piece that filled it up taketh away from the old, and the rent is made worse.

22 And no man puts new wine into old bottles: else the new wine bursts the bottles, and the wine is spilled, and the bottles will be marred: but new wine must be put into new bottles. [Matt 9:17](#); [[Luke 5:37](#)];

and for plucking the grains on the Sabbath day

23 And it came to pass, that he went through the grain fields on the Sabbaths; and his disciples began, as they went, to pluck the grain. [Deut 23:25](#); [Matt 12:1](#); [Luke 6:1](#); [[John 9:14](#)];

24 And the Pharisees said unto him, Behold, why do they on the Sabbath day that which is not lawful? [Exod 20:10](#); [[John 5:10](#)];

25 And he said unto them, Have you never read what David did, when he had need, and was a hungered, he, and they that were with him? [1Sam 21:6](#);

26 How he went into the house of Elohim in the days of Abiathar the high priest, and did eat the showbread, which is not lawful to eat but for the priests, and gave also to them which were with him? [Lev 24:9](#);

27 And he said unto them, The Sabbath was made for man, and not man for the Sabbath:

28 Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the Sabbath. [Matt 12:8](#); [Luke 6:5](#);

MARK THREE

Yahushua heals the withered hand

- 1** And he entered again into the synagogue; and there was a man there which had a withered hand. [Matt 12:9; Luke 6:6;](#)
- 2** And they watched him, whether he would heal him on the Sabbath day; that they might accuse him.
- 3** And he saith unto the man which had the withered hand, **Stand forth.**
- 4** And he saith unto them, **Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath days, or to do evil? to save life, or to kill?** But they held their peace.
- 5** And when he had looked round about on them with anger, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, he saith unto the man, **Stretch forth thine hand.** And he stretched *it* out: and his hand was restored whole as the other. [1Kgs 13:6;](#)
- 6** And the Pharisees went forth, and immediately took counsel with the Herodians against him, how they might destroy him. [Matt 12:14; John 10:39; John 11:53; \[John 7:19\];](#)
- 7** But Yahushua withdrew himself with his disciples to the sea: and a great multitude from Galilee followed him, and from Judaea, [Matt 4:25; Luke 6:17;](#)
- 8** And from Jerusalem, and from Idumaea, and *from* beyond Jordan; and they about Tyre and Sidon, a great multitude, when they had heard what great things he did, came unto him.
- 9** And he spoke to his disciples, that a small boat should wait on him because of the multitude, lest they should throng him.

and many other infirmities

- 10** For he had healed many; insomuch that they pressed upon him for to touch him, as many as had plagues.

rebukes the unclean spirit

- 11** And unclean spirits, when they saw him, fell down before him, and cried, saying, you are the Son of Elohim. [\[Luke 4:41\];](#)
- 12** And he straitly charged them that they should not make him known.

chooses his twelve apostles

- 13** And he goes up into a mountain, and calleth *unto him* whom he would: and they came unto him. [Matt 10:1; Mark 6:7; Luke 6:13; Luke 9:1;](#)
- 14** And he ordained twelve, that they should be with him, and that he might send them forth to preach,
- 15** And to have power to heal sicknesses, and to cast out demons:
- 16** And Simon he surnamed Peter;
- 17** And James the *son* of Zebedee, and John the brother of James; and he surnamed them Boanerges, which is, The sons of thunder:
- 18** And Andrew, and Philip, and Bartholomew, and Matthew, and Thomas, and James the *son* of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus, and Simon the Canaanite,
- 19** And Judas Iscariot, which also betrayed him: and they went into a house. [\[Acts 1:17\];](#)
- 20** And the multitude cometh together again, so that they could not so much as eat bread. [Mark 6:31;](#)
- 21** And when his friends heard *of it*, they went out to lay hold on him: for they said, He is beside himself. [\[John 7:5\];](#)

convicts the blasphemy of casting out demons by Beelzebub

- 22** And the scribes which came down from Jerusalem said, He has Beelzebub, and by the prince of the demons casteth he out demons. [Matt 9:34; Matt 12:24; Luke 11:15; John 8:48; \[Matt 10:25\];](#)

23 And he called them *unto him*, and said unto them in parables, **How can Satan cast out Satan?** [Matt 12:25](#);

24 And if a kingdom be divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand. [\[Luke 11:17\]](#);

25 And if a house be divided against itself, that house cannot stand.

26 And if Satan rise up against himself, and be divided, he cannot stand, but has an end.

27 No man can enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he will first bind the strong man; and then he will spoil his house. [Matt 12:29](#); [Col 2:15](#);

28 Verily I say unto you, All sins shall be forgiven unto the sons of men, and blasphemies wherewith soever they shall blaspheme: [1Sam 2:25](#); [Matt 12:31](#); [Luke 12:10](#); [1John 5:16](#);

29 But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Spirit has never forgiveness, but is in danger of eternal damnation: [1John 5:16](#);

30 Because they said, He has an unclean spirit.

and shows who are his brother, sister, and mother

31 There came then his brethren and his mother, and, standing without, sent unto him, calling him. [Matt 12:46](#); [Luke 8:19](#);

32 And the multitude sat about him, and they said unto him, Behold, thy mother and thy brothers and your sisters without seek for you.

33 And he answered them, saying, **Who is my mother, or my brethren?**

34 And he looked round about on them which sat about him, and said, **Behold my mother and my brethren!**

35 For whosoever shall do the will of Elohim, the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother. [John 15:14](#); [2Cor 5:16-17](#);

MARK FOUR

The parable of the sower

1 And he began again to teach by the sea side: and there was gathered unto him a great multitude, so that he entered into a boat, and sat in the sea; and the whole multitude was by the sea on the land. [Matt 13:1](#); [Luke 8:4](#); [[Luke 5:1](#)];

2 And he taught them many things by parables, and said unto them in his doctrine, [[Luke 8:4](#)];

3 Hearken; Behold, there went out a sower to sow:

4 And it came to pass, as he sowed, some fell by the way side, and the fowls came and devoured it up.

5 And some fell on stony ground, where it had not much earth; and immediately it sprang up, because it had no depth of earth:

6 But when the sun was up, it was scorched; and because it had no root, it withered away.

7 And some fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up, and choked it, and it yielded no fruit.

8 And other fell on good ground, and did yield fruit that sprang up and increased; and brought forth, some thirty, and some sixty, and some a hundred. [[Col 1:6](#)];

9 And he said unto them, He that has ears to hear, let him hear.

10 And when he was alone, they that were about him with the twelve asked of him the parable. [Matt 13:10](#); [Luke 8:9](#);

11 And he said unto them, Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of Elohim: but unto them that are without, all *these* things are done in parables: [Matt 11:25](#); [2Cor 2:14](#); [2Cor 3:14](#);

12 **That seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and *their* sins should be forgiven them.** [Isa 6:9](#); [Matt 13:14](#); [Luke 8:10](#); [John 12:40](#); [Acts 28:26](#); [Rom 11:8](#);

13 And he said unto them, Know you not this parable? and how then will you know all parables? [[Matt 13:18](#)]; [[Luke 8:11](#)];

and the meaning thereof

14 The sower soweth the word. [Matt 13:19](#); [Luke 8:11](#);

15 And these are they by the way side, where the word is sown; but when they have heard, Satan cometh immediately, and taketh away the word that was sown in their hearts.

16 And these are they likewise which are sown on stony ground; who, when they have heard the word, immediately receive it with gladness; [[Luke 8:13](#)];

17 And have no root in themselves, and so endure but for a time: afterward, when affliction or persecution ariseth for the word's sake, immediately they are offended.

18 And these are they which are sown among thorns; such as hear the word, [[1Tim 6:17](#)];

19 And the cares of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, and the lusts of other things entering in, choke the word, and it becometh unfruitful. [Matt 19:23](#); [Mark 10:23](#); [Luke 18:24](#); [1Tim 6:9](#);

20 And these are they which are sown on good ground; such as hear the word, and receive *it*, and bring forth fruit, some thirtyfold, some sixty, and some a hundred.

We must share the light of our knowledge with others

21 And he said unto them, Is a candle brought to be put under a bushel, or under a bed? and not to be set on a candlestick? [Matt 5:15](#); [Luke 8:16](#); [Luke 11:33](#);

22 For there is nothing hid, which shall not be manifested; neither was any thing kept secret, but that it should come abroad. [Job 12:22](#); [Matt 10:26](#); [Luke 8:17](#); [Luke 12:2](#);

23 If any man have ears to hear, let him hear.

24 And he said unto them, Take heed what you hear: with what measure you mete, it shall be measured to you: and unto you that hear shall more be given. [Matt 7:2](#); [Luke 6:38](#); [[Matt 13:12](#)]; [[Luke 11:33](#)];

25 For he that has, to him shall be given: and he that has not, from him shall be taken even that which he has. [Matt 13:12](#); [Matt 25:29](#); [Luke 8:18](#); [Luke 19:26](#);

The parable of the seed growing secretly

26 And he said, So is the kingdom of Elohim, as if a man should cast seed into the ground;

27 And should sleep, and rise night and day, and the seed should spring and grow up, he knoweth not how.

28 For the earth bringeth forth fruit of herself; first the blade, then the ear, after that the full grain in the ear.

29 But when the fruit is brought forth, immediately he puts in the sickle, because the harvest is come.

and of the mustard seed

30 And he said, Whereunto shall we liken the kingdom of Elohim? or with what comparison shall we compare it? [Matt 13:31](#); [Luke 13:18](#);

31 *It is* like a grain of mustard seed, which, when it is sown in the earth, is less than all the seeds that be in the earth:

32 But when it is sown, it groweth up, and becometh greater than all herbs, and shooteth out great branches; so that the fowls of the air may lodge under the shadow of it.

33 And with many such parables spoke he the word unto them, as they were able to hear *it*. [Matt 13:34](#);

34 But without a parable spoke he not unto them: and when they were alone, he expounded all things to his disciples.

Yahushua stilleth the tempest on the sea

35 And the same day, when the even was come, he saith unto them, **Let us pass over unto the other side.** [Matt 8:23](#); [Luke 8:22](#);

36 And when they had sent away the multitude, they took him even as he was in the boat. And there were also with him other little boats.

37 And there arose a great storm of wind, and the waves beat into the boat, so that it was now full.

38 And he was in the hinder part of the boat, asleep on a pillow: and they awake him, and say unto him, Master, carest you not that we perish?

39 And he arose, and rebuked the wind, and said unto the sea, **Peace, be still.** And the wind ceased, and there was a great calm. [Job 26:12](#); [Ps 107:29](#); [Isa 51:10](#);

40 And he said unto them, **Why are you so fearful? how is it that you have no faith?**

41 And they feared exceedingly, and said one to another, What manner of man is this, that even the wind and the sea obey him?

Yahushua delivering the possessed of the legion of demons

1 And they came over unto the other side of the sea, into the country of the Gadarenes. [Matt 8:28; Luke 8:26;](#)

2 And when he was come out of the boat, immediately there met him out of the tombs a man with an unclean spirit,

3 Who had *his* dwelling among the tombs; and no man could bind him, no, not with chains:

4 Because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the fetters broken in pieces: neither could any *man* tame him.

5 And always, night and day, he was in the mountains, and in the tombs, crying, and cutting himself with stones.

6 But when he saw Yahushua afar off, he ran and worshipped him,

7 And cried with a loud voice, and said, What have I to do with you, Yahushua, you Son of the most high Elohim? I adjure you by Elohim, that you torment me not.

8 For he said unto him, **Come out of the man, you unclean spirit.**

9 And he asked him, **What is thy name?** And he answered, saying, My name *is* Legion: for we are many.

10 And he besought him much that he would not send them away out of the country.

11 Now there was there nigh unto the mountain a great herd of swine feeding.

12 And all the demons besought him, saying, Send us into the swine, that we may enter into them.

they enter into the swine

13 And forthwith Yahushua gave them leave. And the unclean spirits went out, and entered into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the sea, (they were about two thousand;) and were choked in the sea.

14 And they that fed the swine fled, and told *it* in the city, and in the country. And they went out to see what it was that was done.

15 And they come to Yahushua, and see him that was possessed with the devil, and had the legion, sitting, and clothed, and in his right mind: and they were afraid.

16 And they that saw *it* told them how it befell to him that was possessed with the devil, and *also* concerning the swine.

17 And they began to pray him to depart out of their coasts. [Acts 16:39;](#)

18 And when he was come into the boat, he that had been possessed with the devil prayed him that he might be with him. [Luke 8:38;](#)

19 Howbeit Yahushua suffered him not, but saith unto him, **Go home to thy friends, and tell them how great things the Lord has done for you, and has had compassion on you.**

20 And he departed, and began to publish in Decapolis how great things Yahushua had done for him: and all *men* did marvel.

21 And when Yahushua was passed over again by boat unto the other side, much people gathered unto him: and he was nigh unto the sea. [Luke 8:40;](#)

He is entreated by Jairus to go and heal his daughter

22 And, behold, there cometh one of the rulers of the synagogue, Jairus by name; and when he saw him, he fell at his feet, [Matt 9:18; Luke 8:41;](#)

23 And besought him greatly, saying, My little daughter lies at the point of death: *I pray you*, come and lay thy hands on her, that she may be healed; and she shall live.

24 And *Yahushua* went with him; and much people followed him, and thronged him. [\[John 5:8\];](#)

He heals the woman of the bloody issue

25 And a certain woman, which had an issue of blood twelve years, [Lev 15:25; Matt 9:20; Luke 8:43;](#)

26 And had suffered many things of many physicians, and had spent all that she had, and was nothing bettered, but rather grew worse,
27 When she had heard of Yahushua, came in the press behind, and touched his garment.
28 For she said, If I may touch but his clothes, I shall be whole.
29 And immediately the fountain of her blood was dried up; and she felt in *her* body that she was healed of that plague.
30 And Yahushua, immediately knowing in himself that virtue had gone out of him, turned him about in the press, and said, **Who touched my clothes?** [Luke 6:19](#);
31 And his disciples said unto him, you seest the multitude thronging you, and sayest you, **Who touched me?**
32 And he looked round about to see her that had done this thing.
33 But the woman fearing and trembling, knowing what was done in her, came and fell down before him, and told him all the truth.
34 And he said unto her, **Daughter, thy faith has made you whole; go in peace, and be whole of thy plague.** [Matt 9:22](#); [Mark 10:52](#);

and raises from death Jairus' daughter

35 While he yet spoke, there came from the ruler of the synagogue's *house certain* which said, Thy daughter is dead: why troublest you the Master any further? [Luke 8:49](#);
36 As soon as Yahushua heard the word that was spoken, he saith unto the ruler of the synagogue, **Be not afraid, only believe.**
37 And he suffered no man to follow him, save Peter, and James, and John the brother of James.
38 And he cometh to the house of the ruler of the synagogue, and seeth the tumult, and them that wept and wailed greatly. [\[Matt 9:23\]](#);
39 And when he was come in, he saith unto them, **Why make you this ado, and weep? the damsel is not dead, but sleepeth.** [John 11:11](#);
40 And they laughed him to scorn. But when he had put them all out, he taketh the father and the mother of the damsel, and them that were with him, and entereth in where the damsel was lying.
41 And he took the damsel by the hand, and said unto her, **Talitha cumi;** which is, being interpreted, **Damsel, I say unto you, arise.**
42 And immediately the damsel arose, and walked; for she was *of the age* of twelve years. And they were astonished with a great astonishment.
43 And he charged them straitly that no man should know it; and commanded that something should be given her to eat.

Yahushua is scorned by his countrymen

1 And he went out from thence, and came into his own country; and his disciples follow him. [Matt 13:53;](#) [Luke 4:16;](#)

2 And when the Sabbath day was come, he began to teach in the synagogue: and many hearing *him* were astonished, saying, From whence has this *man* these things? and what wisdom *is* this which is given unto him, that even such mighty works are wrought by his hands? [\[Matt 7:29\]; \[Matt 13:54\]; \[Luke 4:22\];](#)

3 Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary, the brother of James, and Joses, and of Juda, and Simon? and are not his sisters here with us? And they were offended at him. [John 6:42; \[John 7:27\];](#)

4 But Yahushua said unto them, **A prophet is not without honour, but in his own country, and among his own kin, and in his own house.** [Matt 13:57; Luke 4:24; John 4:44;](#)

5 And he could there do no mighty work, save that he laid his hands upon a few sick folk, and healed *them*. [Matt 13:58;](#)

6 And he marvelled because of their unbelief. And he went round about the villages, teaching. [Matt 9:35;](#) [Luke 13:22;](#)

He gives the twelve power over unclean spirits

7 And he called *unto him* the twelve, and began to send them forth by two and two; and gave them power over unclean spirits; [Matt 10:1; Luke 6:13; Luke 9:1; \[Mark 3:13\];](#)

8 And commanded them that they should take nothing for *their* journey, save a staff only; no scrip, no bread, no money in *their* purse: [\[Matt 10:9\]; \[Luke 9:3\]; \[Luke 10:4\]; \[Luke 22:35\];](#)

9 But *be* shod with sandals; and not put on two coats. [Acts 12:8;](#)

10 And he said unto them, **In what place soever you enter into a house, there abide till you depart from that place.** [\[Matt 10:11\]; \[Luke 10:5\];](#)

11 And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear you, when you depart thence, shake off the dust under your feet for a testimony against them. Verily I say unto you, **It shall be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgment, than for that city.** [Matt 10:14; Luke 9:5; Acts 13:51; Acts 18:6; Matt 10:15; Luke 10:12; \[Luke 10:10\];](#)

12 And they went out, and preached that men should repent.

13 And they cast out many demons, and anointed with oil many that were sick, and healed *them*. [Jas 5:14;](#)

Various opinions of Yahushua

14 And king Herod heard *of him*; (for his name was spread abroad:) and he said, That John the Baptist was risen from the dead, and therefore mighty works do show forth themselves in him. [Matt 14:1; Luke 9:7;](#)

15 Others said, That it is Elias. And others said, That it is a prophet, as one of the prophets.

John the Baptist is imprisoned, beheaded, and buried

16 But when Herod heard *thereof*, he said, It is John, whom I beheaded: he is risen from the dead.

17 For Herod himself had sent forth and laid hold upon John, and bound him in prison for Herodias' sake, his brother Philip's wife: for he had married her. [Matt 14:3; Luke 3:19; Luke 9:9;](#)

18 For John had said unto Herod, It is not lawful for you to have thy brother's wife. [Lev 18:16; Lev 20:21; \[Luke 3:19\];](#)

19 Therefore Herodias had a quarrel against him, and would have killed him; but she could not:

20 For Herod feared John, knowing that he was a just man and a holy, and observed him; and when he heard him, he did many things, and heard him gladly. [Matt 14:5; Matt 21:26; \[Mark 11:32\];](#)

21 And when a convenient day was come, that Herod on his birthday made a supper to his lords, high captains, and chief *estates* of Galilee; [Gen 40:20](#); [Matt 14:6](#);

22 And when the daughter of the said Herodias came in, and danced, and pleased Herod and them that sat with him, the king said unto the damsel, Ask of me whatsoever you wilt, and I will give *it* you.

23 And he swore unto her, Whatsoever you shall ask of me, I will give *it* you, unto the half of my kingdom. [Judg 11:30](#);

24 And she went forth, and said unto her mother, What shall I ask? And she said, The head of John the Baptist.

25 And she came in immediately with haste unto the king, and asked, saying, I will that you give me by and by in a charger the head of John the Baptist.

26 And the king was exceeding sorry; yet for his oath's sake, and for their sakes which sat with him, he would not reject her.

27 And immediately the king sent an executioner, and commanded his head to be brought.

28 And he went *and* beheaded him in the prison, and brought his head on a platter, and gave it to the damsel: and the damsel gave it to her mother. [Matt 14:10](#);

29 And when his disciples heard *of it*, they came and took up his corpse, and laid it in a tomb.

The apostles return from preaching

30 And the apostles gathered themselves together unto Yahushua, and told him all things, both what they had done, and what they had taught. [Luke 9:10](#);

31 And he said unto them, **Come you yourselves apart into a desert place, and rest a while:** for there were many coming and going, and they had no leisure so much as to eat. [Mark 3:20](#); [[Matt 14:13](#)]; [[Luke 9:10](#)];

32 And they departed into a desert place by boat privately. [Matt 14:13](#); [Luke 9:10](#); [John 6:1](#);

33 And the people saw them departing, and many recognized them, and ran on foot together out of all towns, and got there first, and came together unto him.

The miracle of five loaves and two fishes

34 And Yahushua, when he came out, saw much people, and was moved with compassion toward them, because they were as sheep not having a shepherd: and he began to teach them many things. [Matt 9:36](#); [Matt 14:4](#); [Jer 23:1](#); [Ezek 34:2](#); [Luke 9:11](#); [[Num 27:17](#)]; [[John 6:5](#)];

35 And when the day was now far spent, his disciples came unto him, and said, This is a desert place, and now the time *is* far passed: [Matt 14:15](#); [Luke 9:12](#); [John 6:5](#);

36 Send them away, that they may go into the country round about, and into the villages, and buy themselves bread: for they have nothing to eat.

37 He answered and said unto them, **Give you them to eat.** And they say unto him, Shall we go and buy two hundred pennyworth of bread, and give them to eat? [[Luke 9:13](#)];

38 He saith unto them, **How many loaves have you? go and see.** And when they knew, they say, Five, and two fishes. [Matt 14:17](#); [Luke 9:13](#); [John 6:9](#); [[Matt 16:9](#)]; [[Mark 8:19](#)];

39 And he commanded them to make all sit down by companies upon the green grass.

40 And they sat down in ranks, by hundreds, and by fifties.

41 And when he had taken the five loaves and the two fishes, he looked up to heaven, and blessed, and brake the loaves, and gave *them* to his disciples to set before them; and the two fishes divided he among them all. [John 17:1](#); [1Sam 9:13](#);

42 And they did all eat, and were filled.

43 And they took up twelve baskets full of the fragments, and of the fishes.

44 And they that did eat of the loaves were about five thousand men.

Yahushua walks on the sea

45 And immediately he compelled his disciples to get into the boat, and to go to the other side before unto Bethsaida, while he sent away the people. [Matt 14:22](#); [John 6:17](#);

46 And when he had sent them away, he departed into a mountain to pray. [Matt 14:23](#); [Luke 6:12](#);

47 And when even was come, the boat was in the midst of the sea, and he alone on the land. [Matt 14:23](#); [John 6:16](#);

48 And he saw them toiling in rowing; for the wind was contrary unto them: and about the fourth watch of the night he cometh unto them, walking upon the sea, and would have passed by them.

49 But when they saw him walking upon the sea, they supposed it had been a spirit, and cried out:

50 For they all saw him, and were troubled. And immediately he talked with them, and saith unto them, **Be of good cheer: it is I; be not afraid.**

51 And he went up unto them into the boat; and the wind ceased: and they were sore amazed in themselves beyond measure, and wondered.

52 For they considered not *the miracle* of the loaves: for their heart was hardened. [\[Mark 8:17\]](#);

and heals all that touch him

53 And when they had passed over, they came into the land of Gennesaret, and drew to the shore. [Matt 14:34](#);

54 And when they were come out of the boat, immediately they knew him,

55 And ran through that whole region round about, and began to carry about in beds those that were sick, where they heard he was.

56 And whithersoever he entered, into villages, or cities, or country, they laid the sick in the streets, and besought him that they might touch if it were but the border of his garment: and as many as touched him were made whole.

The Pharisees find fault with the disciples for eating with unwashed hands

1 Then came together unto him the Pharisees, and certain of the scribes, which came from Jerusalem. [Matt 15:1](#);

2 And when they saw some of his disciples eat bread with defiled, that is to say, with unwashen, hands, they found fault.

3 For the Pharisees, and all the Jews, except they wash *their* hands oft, eat not, holding the tradition of the elders. [\[Luke 11:38\]](#); [\[John 2:6\]](#);

4 And *when they come* from the market, except they wash, they eat not. And many other things there be, which they have received to hold, *as* the washing of cups, and pots, brasen vessels, and of tables.

5 Then the Pharisees and scribes asked him, Why walk not thy disciples according to the tradition of the elders, but eat bread with unwashen hands?

6 He answered and said unto them, *Well has Esaias prophesied of you hypocrites, as it is written, **This people honoureth me with *their* lips, but their heart is far from me.*** [Isa 29:13](#); [Ezek 33:31](#); [\[Matt 15:8\]](#); [\[Matt 15:9\]](#);

7 *Howbeit in vain do they worship me, teaching **for doctrines the commandments of men.*** [Matt 15:9](#); [Col 2:18](#); [Col 2:20](#); [Titus 1:14](#);

They break the commandment of Elohim by the traditions of men

8 For laying aside the commandment of Elohim, you hold the tradition of men, *as* the washing of pots and cups: and many other such like things you do.

9 And he said unto them, Full well you reject the commandment of Elohim, that you may keep your own tradition.

10 For Moses said, **Honour thy father and thy mother**; and, **Whoso curses father or mother, let him die the death**: [Exod 20:12](#); [Deut 5:16](#); [Eph 6:2](#); [Exod 21:17](#); [Lev 20:9](#); [Deut 27:16](#); [Prov 20:20](#); [\[1Tim 5:4\]](#);

11 But you say, If a man shall say to his father or mother, *It is Corban*, that is to say, a gift, by whatsoever you mightest be profited by me; *he shall be free*.

12 And you suffer him no more to do ought for his father or his mother;

13 Making the word of Elohim of none effect through your tradition, which you have delivered: and many such like things do you. [Matt 15:6](#); [1Tim 4:3](#); [2Tim 3:2](#);

Meat defiles not the man

14 And when he had called all the people *unto him*, he said unto them, **Hearken unto me every one of you, and understand**: [Matt 15:10](#);

15 There is nothing from without a man, that entering into him can defile him: but the things which come out of him, those are they that defile the man. [Acts 10:15](#); [Rom 14:17](#); [Rom 14:20](#); [Titus 1:15](#);

16 If any man have ears to hear, let him hear.

17 And when he was entered into the house from the people, his disciples asked him concerning the parable. [Matt 15:15](#);

18 And he saith unto them, Are you so without understanding also? Do you not perceive, that whatsoever thing from without entereth into the man, *it* cannot defile him;

19 Because it entereth not into his heart, but into the belly, and goes out into the draught, purging all meats?

20 And he said, That which cometh out of the man, that defileth the man.

21 For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders, [Gen 6:5](#); [Gen 8:21](#); [Prov 6:14](#); [Jer 17:9](#); [\[Eph 5:3\]](#);

22 Thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness:

23 All these evil things come from within, and defile the man.

He heals the Syrophenician woman's daughter of an unclean spirit

24 And from thence he arose, and went into the borders of Tyre and Sidon, and entered into a house, and would have no man know *it*: but he could not be hid. [Matt 15:21](#);

25 For a *certain* woman, whose young daughter had an unclean spirit, heard of him, and came and fell at his feet:

26 The woman was a Greek, a Syrophenician by nation; and she besought him that he would cast forth the devil out of her daughter.

27 But Yahushua said unto her, **Let the children first be filled: for it is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast *it* unto the dogs.**

28 And she answered and said unto him, *yous*, Lord: yet the dogs under the table eat of the children's crumbs.

29 And he said unto her, **For this saying go thy way; the devil is gone out of thy daughter.**

30 And when she was come to her house, she found the devil gone out, and her daughter laid upon the bed.

and one that was deaf, and stammered in his speech

31 And again, departing from the coasts of Tyre and Sidon, he came unto the sea of Galilee, through the midst of the coasts of Decapolis. [Matt 15:29](#);

32 And they bring unto him one that was deaf, and had an impediment in his speech; and they beseech him to put his hand upon him. [Matt 9:32](#); [Luke 11:14](#); [\[Isa 35:5\]](#); [\[Mark 8:23\]](#); [\[Luke 4:40\]](#);

33 And he took him aside from the multitude, and put his fingers into his ears, and he spit, and touched his tongue; [\[Mark 8:23\]](#);

34 And looking up to heaven, he sighed, and saith unto him, **Ephphasa**, that is, **Be opened**.

35 And immediately his ears were opened, and the string of his tongue was loosed, and he spoke plain.

36 And he charged them that they should tell no man: but the more he charged them, so much the more a great deal they published *it*; [\[Matt 9:31\]](#);

37 And were beyond measure astonished, saying, He has done all things well: he maketh both the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak. [Gen 1:31](#);

Yahushua feeds the people miraculously

1 In those days the multitude being very great, and having nothing to eat, Yahushua called his disciples *unto him*, and saith unto them, [Matt 15:32](#);

2 I have compassion on the multitude, because they have now been with me three days, and have nothing to eat:

3 And if I send them away fasting to their own houses, they will faint by the way: for some of them came from far.

4 And his disciples answered him, From whence can a man satisfy these *men* with bread here in the wilderness?

5 And he asked them, **How many loaves have you?** And they said, Seven.

6 And he commanded the people to sit down on the ground: and he took the seven loaves, and gave thanks, and brake, and gave to his disciples to set before *them*; and they did set *them* before the people.

7 And they had a few small fishes: and he blessed, and commanded to set them also before *them*.

8 So they did eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken *meat* that was left seven baskets.

9 And they that had eaten were about four thousand: and he sent them away.

refuses to give a sign to the Pharisees

10 And immediately he entered into a boat with his disciples, and came into the parts of Dalmanutha. [Matt 15:39](#);

11 And the Pharisees came forth, and began to question with him, seeking of him a sign from heaven, tempting him. [Matt 12:38](#); [Matt 16:1](#); [Luke 11:29](#); [John 6:30](#); [[John 2:18](#)];

12 And he sighed deeply in his spirit, and saith, **Why does this generation seek after a sign? verily I say unto you, There shall no sign be given unto this generation.** [Matt 16:4](#);

13 And he left them, and entering into the boat again departed to the other side.

admonishes his disciples to beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, and of the leaven of Herod

14 But they had forgotten to take bread, neither had they in the boat with them more than one loaf.

15 And he charged them, saying, **Take heed, beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, and of the leaven of Herod.** [Matt 16:6](#); [Luke 12:1](#);

16 And they reasoned among themselves, saying, *It is* because we have no bread.

17 And when Yahushua knew *it*, he saith unto them, **Why reason you, because you have no bread? perceive you not yet, neither understand? have you your heart yet hardened?** [Mark 6:52](#);

18 Having eyes, see you not? and having ears, hear you not? and do you not remember?

19 When I brake the five loaves among five thousand, how many baskets full of fragments took you up? They say unto him, Twelve. [Matt 14:17](#); [Matt 14:20](#); [Mark 6:38](#); [Luke 9:13](#); [John 6:9](#);

20 And when the seven among four thousand, how many baskets full of fragments took you up? And they said, Seven. [Matt 15:36-37](#);

21 And he said unto them, **How is it that you do not understand?**

gives a blind man his sight

22 And he cometh to Bethsaida; and they bring a blind man unto him, and besought him to touch him.

23 And he took the blind man by the hand, and led him out of the town; and when he had spit on his eyes, and put his hands upon him, he asked him if he saw ought. [Mark 7:33](#); [Mark 7:32](#); [[Luke 4:40](#)]; [[John 9:6](#)];

24 And he looked up, and said, I see men as trees, walking.

25 After that he put *his* hands again upon his eyes, and made him look up: and he was restored, and saw every man clearly. [Luke 4:40];

26 And he sent him away to his house, saying, **Neither go into the town, nor tell *it* to any in the town.**

acknowledges that he is the Messiah who should suffer and rise again

27 And Yahushua went out, and his disciples, into the towns of Caesarea Philippi: and by the way he asked his disciples, saying unto them, **Whom do men say that I am?** Matt 16:13; Luke 9:18;

28 And they answered, John the Baptist: but some *say*, Elias; and others, One of the prophets. Matt 14:2;

29 And he saith unto them, **But whom say you that I am?** And Peter answereth and saith unto him, you are the Messiah. Matt 16:16; John 6:69; [John 11:27];

30 And he charged them that they should tell no man of him.

31 And he began to teach them, that the Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected by the elders, and the chief priests, and the scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again. Matt 16:21; Matt 17:22; Matt 20:18; Mark 9:31; Mark 10:33; Luke 9:22; Luke 18:31; Luke 24:7; [Matt 27:63]; [Matt 28:6]; [Mark 9:30]; [Mark 10:32]; [Luke 17:25]; [Luke 24:6]; [Luke 24:44];

32 And he spoke that saying openly. And Peter took him, and began to rebuke him.

33 But when he had turned about and looked on his disciples, he rebuked Peter, saying, **Get you behind me, Satan: for you savourest not the things that be of Elohim, but the things that be of men.** 2Sam 19:22;

and exhorts to patience in persecution for the profession of the gospel

34 And when he had called the people *unto him* with his disciples also, he said unto them, **Whosoever desires to follow me, let him deny himself, and take up his stake, and follow me.** Matt 10:38; Matt 16:24; Luke 9:23; Luke 14:27;

35 **For whosoever will save his life shall lose it; but whosoever shall lose his life for my sake and the gospel's, the same shall save it.** Matt 10:39; Matt 16:25; Luke 9:24; Luke 17:33; John 12:25;

36 **For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own being?**

37 **Or what shall a man give in exchange for his being?** Ps 49:8; [Matt 16:26];

38 **Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.** Matt 10:32; Luke 9:26; Luke 12:8; 2Tim 2:12; 1John 2:23; [Luke 12:9]; [1John 2:28];

Yahushua is transfigured

- 1** And he said unto them, **Verily I say unto you, That there be some of them that stand here, which shall not taste of death, till they have seen the kingdom of Elohim come with power.** [Matt 16:28](#); [Luke 9:27](#);
- 2** And after six days Yahushua taketh *with him* Peter, and James, and John, and leadeth them up into a high mountain apart by themselves: and he was transfigured before them. [Matt 17:1](#); [Luke 9:28](#);
- 3** And his raiment became shining, exceeding white as snow; so as no fuller on earth can white them.
- 4** And there appeared unto them Elias with Moses: and they were talking with Yahushua.
- 5** And Peter answered and said to Yahushua, Master, it is good for us to be here: and let us make three tabernacles; one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elias.
- 6** For he wist not what to say; for they were sore afraid.
- 7** And there was a cloud that overshadowed them: and a voice came out of the cloud, This is my beloved Son: heed him. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 1:11](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [Deut 18:19](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[John 6:27\]](#); [\[John 8:18\]](#);
- 8** And suddenly, when they had looked round about, they saw no man any more, save Yahushua only with themselves.
- 9** And as they came down from the mountain, he charged them that they should tell no man what things they had seen, till the Son of man were risen from the dead. [Matt 17:9](#); [Luke 9:36](#);
- 10** And they kept that saying with themselves, questioning one with another what the rising from the dead should mean.

He instructs his disciples concerning the coming of Elias

- 11** And they asked him, saying, Why say the scribes that Elias must first come? [Mal 4:5](#); [Matt 11:14](#); [Luke 1:17](#); [\[Matt 17:10\]](#);
- 12** And he answered and told them, **Elias verily cometh first, and restoreth all things; and how it is written of the Son of man, that he must suffer many things, and be set at nought.** [Ps 22:6](#); [Isa 53:4](#); [Dan 9:26](#); [\[Isa 53:3\]](#); [\[Luke 1:17\]](#);
- 13** **But I say unto you, That Elias is indeed come, and they have done unto him whatsoever they listed, as it is written of him.** [Mal 4:5-6](#);

casts forth a deaf and dumb spirit

- 14** And when he came to *his* disciples, he saw a great multitude about them, and the scribes questioning with them.
- 15** And immediately all the people, when they beheld him, were greatly amazed, and running to *him* saluted him.
- 16** And he asked the scribes, **What question you with them?** [\[Matt 17:14\]](#);
- 17** And one of the multitude answered and said, Master, I have brought unto you my son, which has a dumb spirit; [Matt 17:14](#); [Luke 9:37-38](#); [\[Luke 9:37\]](#);
- 18** And wheresoever he taketh him, he teareth him: and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth away: and I spoke to thy disciples that they should cast him out; and they could not.
- 19** He answereth him, and saith, **O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him unto me.**
- 20** And they brought him unto him: and when he saw him, immediately the spirit tare him; and he fell on the ground, and wallowed foaming. [Mark 1:26](#);
- 21** And he asked his father, **How long is it ago since this came unto him?** And he said, Of a child.
- 22** And oftentimes it has cast him into the fire, and into the waters, to destroy him: but if you canst do any thing, have compassion on us, and help us.
- 23** Yahushua said unto him, **If you canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth.** [Luke 17:6](#);

24 And immediately the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help you mine unbelief.

25 When Yahushua saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, you **dumb and deaf spirit, I charge you, come out of him, and enter no more into him.**

26 And *the spirit* cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead.

27 But Yahushua took him by the hand, and lifted him up; and he arose.

28 And when he was come into the house, his disciples asked him privately, Why could not we cast him out? [Matt 17:19](#);

29 And he said unto them, **This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting.**

foretells his death and resurrection

30 And they departed thence, and passed through Galilee; and he would not that any man should know *it*. [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 17:22](#); [Matt 20:18](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Matt 10:33](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [Luke 24:7](#);

31 For he taught his disciples, and said unto them, **The Son of man is delivered into the hands of men, and they shall kill him; and after that he is killed, he shall rise the third day.** [[Matt 16:21](#)]; [[Matt 17:22](#)]; [[Matt 28:6](#)]; [[Mark 8:31](#)]; [[Mark 10:32](#)]; [[Luke 9:22](#)]; [[Luke 9:44](#)]; [[Luke 17:25](#)]; [[Luke 18:31](#)]; [[Luke 24:6](#)]; [[Luke 24:44](#)];

32 But they understood not that saying, and were afraid to ask him.

exhorts his disciples to humility

33 And he came to Capernaum: and being in the house he asked them, **What was it that you disputed among yourselves by the way?** [Matt 18:1](#); [Luke 9:46](#); [Luke 22:24](#);

34 But they held their peace: for by the way they had disputed among themselves, who *should be* the greatest. [[Matt 18:1](#)];

35 And he sat down, and called the twelve, and saith unto them, **If any man desire to be first, *the same* shall be last of all, and servant of all.** [Matt 20:27](#); [Mark 10:43](#);

36 And he took a child, and set him in the midst of them: and when he had taken him in his arms, he said unto them, [Mark 10:16](#);

37 Whosoever shall receive one of such children in my name, receiveth me: and whosoever shall receive me, receiveth not me, but him that sent me. [Matt 18:5](#); [Luke 9:48](#); [John 13:20](#); [[Luke 10:16](#)];

bidding them not to prohibit such as are not against them, nor to give offence to any of the faithful

38 And John answered him, saying, Master, we saw one casting out demons in thy name, and he followeth not us: and we forbad him, because he followeth not us. [Luke 9:49](#);

39 But Yahushua said, **Forbid him not: for there is no man which shall do a miracle in my name, that can lightly speak evil of me.** [1Cor 12:3](#);

40 For he that is not against us is on our part.

41 For whosoever shall give you a cup of water to drink in my name, because you belong to the Messiah, verily I say unto you, he shall not lose his reward. [Matt 10:42](#); [[Matt 25:40](#)]; [[Heb 6:10](#)];

42 And whosoever shall cause one of *these* little ones that believe in me to sin, it would be better for him to have a millstone hung around his neck, and be thrown into the sea. [Matt 18:6](#); [Luke 17:2](#); [[Luke 17:1](#)];

43 And if thy hand offend you, cut it off: it is better for you to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: [Deut 13:6](#); [Matt 5:30](#); [Matt 18:8](#); [[Matt 5:29](#)];

44 **Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.** [Isa 66:24](#); [[Luke 16:24](#)];

45 And if thy foot offend you, cut it off: it is better for you to enter halt into life, than having two feet to be cast into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched:

46 Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.

47 And if thine eye offend you, pluck it out: it is better for you to enter into the kingdom of Elohim with one eye, than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire:

48 Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.

49 For every one shall be salted with fire, and every sacrifice shall be salted with salt. [Lev 2:13](#);

50 Salt *is* good: but if the salt have lost his saltness, wherewith will you season it? Have salt in yourselves, and have peace one with another. [Matt 5:13](#); [Luke 14:34](#); [Rom 12:18](#); [Heb 12:14](#); [[Col 4:6](#)];

Yahushua disputes with the Pharisees touching divorcement:

- 1** And he arose from thence, and cometh into the coasts of Judaea by the farther side of Jordan: and the people resort unto him again; and, as he was wont, he taught them again. [Matt 19:1](#);
- 2** And the Pharisees came to him, and asked him, Is it lawful for a man to put away *his* wife? tempting him. [\[Matt 19:3\]](#);
- 3** And he answered and said unto them, **What did Moses command you?**
- 4** And they said, Moses suffered to write a bill of divorcement, and to put *her* away. [Deut 24:1](#); [Jer 3:1](#); [Matt 5:31](#); [\[Matt 5:32\]](#);
- 5** And Yahushua answered and said unto them, **For the hardness of your heart he wrote you this precept.**
- 6** **But from the beginning of the creation Elohim made them male and female.** [Gen 1:27](#); [Matt 19:4](#); [\[Gen 5:2\]](#);
- 7** **For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and cleave to his wife;** [Gen 2:24](#); [1Cor 6:16](#); [Eph 5:31](#);
- 8** **And they twain shall be one flesh: so then they are no more twain, but one flesh.** [\[1Cor 6:16\]](#);
- 9** What therefore Elohim has joined together, let not man put asunder. [1Cor 7:10](#);
- 10** And in the house his disciples asked him again of the same *matter*.
- 11** And he saith unto them, **Whosoever shall put away his wife, and marry another, committeth adultery against her.** [Matt 5:32](#); [Matt 19:9](#); [Luke 16:18](#); [1Cor 7:10](#);
- 12** **And if a woman shall put away her husband, and be married to another, she committeth adultery.**

blesses the children that are brought unto him

- 13** And they brought young children to him, that he should touch them: and *his* disciples rebuked those that brought *them*. [Matt 19:13](#); [Luke 18:15](#);
- 14** But when Yahushua saw *it*, he was much displeased, and said unto them, **Let the little children come to me, do not forbid them: for of such is the kingdom of Elohim.** [Matt 18:3](#); [Matt 19:14](#); [1Cor 14:20](#); [1Pet 2:2](#);
- 15** Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of Elohim as a little child, he shall not enter therein.
- 16** And he took them up in his arms, put *his* hands upon them, and blessed them. [Matt 19:15](#); [Mark 9:36](#);

resolves a rich man how he may inherit life everlasting

- 17** And when he was gone forth into the way, there came one running, and kneeled to him, and asked him, Good Master, what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life? [Matt 19:16](#); [Luke 18:18](#);
- 18** And Yahushua said unto him, **Why callest you me good? there is none good but one, that is, Elohim.**
- 19** **you knowest the commandments, Do not commit adultery, Do not kill, Do not steal, Do not bear false witness, Defraud not, Honour thy father and mother.** [Exod 20:13](#); [Exod 21:12](#); [Deut 5:17](#); [Rom 13:9](#);
- 20** And he answered and said unto him, Master, all these have I observed from my youth.
- 21** Then Yahushua beholding him loved him, and said unto him, **One thing you lackest: go thy way, sell whatsoever you hast, and give to the poor, and you shall have treasure in heaven: and come, take up the stake, and follow me.** [Matt 6:19](#); [Luke 12:33](#); [1Tim 6:17](#);
- 22** And he was sad at that saying, and went away grieved: for he had great possessions.

tells his disciples of the danger of riches

- 23** And Yahushua looked round about, and saith unto his disciples, **How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of Elohim!** [Prov 11:28](#); [Matt 19:23](#); [Luke 18:24](#); [\[Matt 13:22\]](#); [\[Mark 4:19\]](#); [\[Luke 8:14\]](#);

24 And the disciples were astonished at his words. But Yahushua answereth again, and saith unto them, Children, how hard is it for them that trust in riches to enter into the kingdom of Elohim! [Job 31:24];

25 It is easier for a rope to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of Elohim.

26 And they were astonished out of measure, saying among themselves, Who then can be saved?

27 And Yahushua looking upon them saith, With men *it is impossible*, but not with Elohim: for with Elohim all things are possible. Job 42:2; Jer 32:17; Zech 8:6; Luke 1:37;

promises rewards to them that forsake any thing for the gospel

28 Then Peter began to say unto him, Lo, we have left all, and have followed you. Matt 4:20; Matt 19:27; Luke 5:11; Luke 18:28; [Mark 1:18];

29 And Yahushua answered and said, Verily I say unto you, There is no man that has left house, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my sake, and for the sake of the gospel,

30 But he shall receive a hundredfold now in this time, houses, and brethren, and sisters, and mothers, and children, and lands, with persecutions; and in the world to come eternal life.

31 But many *that are* first shall be last; and the last first. Matt 19:30; Matt 20:16; Luke 13:30;

foretells his death and resurrection

32 And they were in the way going up to Jerusalem; and Yahushua went before them: and they were amazed; and as they followed, they were afraid. And he took again the twelve, and began to tell them what things should happen unto him, Matt 16:21; Matt 17:22; Matt 20:18; Mark 8:31; Mark 9:31; Luke 9:22; Luke 18:31; Luke 24:7; [Matt 20:17];

33 *Saying*, Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be delivered unto the chief priests, and unto the scribes; and they shall condemn him to death, and shall deliver him to the Gentiles: [Matt 16:21]; [Matt 17:22]; [Mark 8:31]; [Luke 9:22]; [Luke 17:25]; [Luke 24:6]; [Luke 24:44];

34 And they shall mock him, and shall scourge him, and shall spit upon him, and shall kill him: and the third day he shall rise again. [Matt 27:63]; [Matt 28:6];

bids the two ambitious suitors to think rather of suffering with him

35 And James and John, the sons of Zebedee, come unto him, saying, Master, we would that you should do for us whatsoever we shall desire. Matt 20:20;

36 And he said unto them, *What would you that I should do for you?*

37 They said unto him, Grant unto us that we may sit, one on thy right hand, and the other on thy left hand, in thy glory.

38 But Yahushua said unto them, you know not what you ask: can you drink of the cup that I drink of? and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with? Matt 20:22; Luke 12:50;

39 And they said unto him, We can. And Yahushua said unto them, you shall indeed drink of the cup that I drink of; and with the baptism that I am baptized withal shall you be baptized:

40 But to sit on my right hand and on my left hand is not mine to give; but *it shall be given to them* for whom it is prepared. Matt 25:34;

41 And when the ten heard *it*, they began to be much displeased with James and John. Matt 20:24;

42 But Yahushua called them *to him*, and saith unto them, you know that they which are accounted to rule over the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and their great ones exercise authority upon them. Matt 20:25; Luke 22:25;

43 But so shall it not be among you: but whosoever will be great among you, shall be your minister: 1Pet 5:3; [Matt 20:27]; [Mark 9:35];

44 And whosoever of you will be the chiefest, shall be servant of all.

45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many. John 13:14; Phil 2:7; Eph 1:7; Col 1:14; 1Tim 2:6; Titus 2:14;

and restores to Bartimaeus his sight

46 And they came to Jericho: and as he went out of Jericho with his disciples and a great number of people, blind Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus, sat by the highway side begging. [Matt 20:29](#); [Luke 18:35](#);

47 And when he heard that it was Yahushua of Nazareth, he began to cry out, and say, Yahushua, you Son of David, have mercy on me.

48 And many charged him that he should hold his peace: but he cried the more a great deal, you Son of David, have mercy on me.

49 And Yahushua stood still, and commanded him to be called. And they call the blind man, saying unto him, Be of good comfort, rise; he calleth you.

50 And he, casting away his garment, rose, and came to Yahushua.

51 And Yahushua answered and said unto him, **What will you that I should do unto you?** The blind man said unto him, Lord, that I might receive my sight.

52 And Yahushua said unto him, **Go thy way; thy faith has made you whole.** And immediately he received his sight, and followed Yahushua in the way. [Matt 9:22](#); [Mark 5:34](#);

Yahushua rides with triumph into Jerusalem

- 1** And when they came nigh to Jerusalem, unto Bethphage and Bethany, at the mount of Olives, he sendeth forth two of his disciples, [Matt 21:1](#); [Luke 19:29](#);
- 2** And saith unto them, *Go your way into the village over against you: and as soon as you be entered into it, you shall find a colt tied, whereon never man sat; loose him, and bring him.*
- 3** And if any man say unto you, Why do you this? say you that the Lord has need of him; and immediately he will send him hither.
- 4** And they went their way, and found the colt tied by the door outside in the street; and they untied it.
- 5** And certain of them that stood there said unto them, What do you, loosing the colt?
- 6** And they said unto them even as Yahushua had commanded: and they let them go.
- 7** And they brought the colt to Yahushua, and cast their garments on him; and he sat upon him. [John 12:14](#); [2Kgs 9:13](#);
- 8** And many spread their garments in the way: and others cut down branches off the trees, and strawed them in the way. [\[John 12:12\]](#);
- 9** And they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna; Blessed *is* he that cometh in the name of the Lord: [Ps 118:26](#);
- 10** Blessed *be* the kingdom of our father David, that cometh in the name of the Lord: Hosanna in the highest.
- 11** And Yahushua entered into Jerusalem, and into the temple: and when he had looked round about upon all things, and now the eventide was come, he went out unto Bethany with the twelve. [Matt 21:12](#); [Matt 21:14](#); [Luke 19:45](#); [John 2:14](#);

curses the fruitless fig-tree

- 12** And on the morrow, when they were come from Bethany, he was hungry: [Matt 21:18](#);
- 13** And seeing a fig tree afar off having leaves, he came, if haply he might find any thing thereon: and when he came to it, he found nothing but leaves; for the time of figs was not yet. [\[Matt 7:17\]](#);
- 14** And Yahushua answered and said unto it, *No man eat fruit of you hereafter for ever.* And his disciples heard *it*.

purges the temple

- 15** And they come to Jerusalem: and Yahushua went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the tables of the moneychangers, and the seats of them that sold doves; [Matt 21:12](#); [Luke 19:45](#); [John 2:14](#);
- 16** And would not suffer that any man should carry *any* vessel through the temple.
- 17** And he taught, saying unto them, *Is it not written, **My house shall be called of all nations the house of prayer?** but you have made it a den of thieves.* [Matt 21:13](#); [Luke 19:46](#); [1Kgs 8:29](#); [Isa 56:7](#); [Jer 7:11](#);
- 18** And the scribes and chief priests heard *it*, and sought how they might destroy him: for they feared him, because all the people was astonished at his doctrine. [John 7:19](#); [\[Luke 19:47\]](#); [\[John 7:30\]](#);
- 19** And when even was come, he went out of the city.

exhorts his disciples to steadfastness of faith, and to forgive their enemies

- 20** And in the morning, as they passed by, they saw the fig tree dried up from the roots. [\[Matt 21:18\]](#);
- 21** And Peter calling to remembrance saith unto him, Master, behold, the fig tree which you cursedst is withered away.
- 22** And Yahushua answering saith unto them, *Have faith in Elohim.*

23 For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be you removed, and be you cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith. [Matt 17:20](#); [Matt 21:21](#); [Luke 17:6](#); [\[1Cor 13:2\]](#);

24 Therefore I say unto you, What things soever you desire, when you pray, believe that you receive *them*, and you shall have *them*. [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:7](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 15:17](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5-6](#); [1John 3:22](#); [1John 5:14](#); [\[Matt 21:22\]](#); [\[John 15:7\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#); [\[Jas 1:5\]](#);

25 And when you stand praying, forgive, if you have ought against any: that your Father also which is in heaven may forgive you your trespasses. [Matt 6:14](#); [Col 3:13](#); [\[Matt 18:22\]](#); [\[Eph 4:32\]](#); [\[Jas 2:13\]](#);

26 But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses. [Matt 18:35](#);

and defends the lawfulness of his actions by the witness of John, who was a man sent of Elohim

27 And they come again to Jerusalem: and as he was walking in the temple, there come to him the chief priests, and the scribes, and the elders, [Matt 21:23](#); [Luke 20:1](#); [\[Matt 21:15\]](#);

28 And say unto him, By what authority do you these things? and who gave you this authority to do these things? [Exod 2:14](#); [Acts 4:7](#); [Acts 7:27](#);

29 And Yahushua answered and said unto them, *I will also ask of you one question, and answer me, and I will tell you by what authority I do these things.*

30 The baptism of John, was *it* from heaven, or of men? answer me.

31 And they reasoned with themselves, saying, If we shall say, From heaven; he will say, Why then did you not believe him?

32 But if we shall say, Of men; they feared the people: for they all considered John to be a prophet indeed. [Matt 14:5](#); [Mark 6:20](#);

33 And they answered and said unto Yahushua, We cannot tell. And Yahushua answering saith unto them, *Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these things.*

In a parable of the vineyard let out to wicked husbandmen Yahushua foretells the reprobation of the Jews, and the calling of the Gentiles

- 1** And he began to speak unto them by parables. **A certain man planted a vineyard, and set a hedge about it, and digged a place for the winefat, and built a tower, and let it out to husbandmen, and went into a far country.** [Matt 21:33](#); [Luke 20:9](#); [Ps 80:8](#); [Isa 5:1](#); [Jer 2:21](#); [Jer 12:10](#);
- 2** And at the season he sent to the husbandmen a servant, that he might receive from the husbandmen of the fruit of the vineyard.
- 3** And they caught him, and beat him, and sent him away empty.
- 4** And again he sent unto them another servant; and at him they cast stones, and wounded him in the head, and sent him away shamefully handled.
- 5** And again he sent another; and him they killed, and many others; beating some, and killing some.
- 6** Having yet therefore one son, his wellbeloved, he sent him also last unto them, saying, They will reverence my son.
- 7** But those husbandmen said among themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and the inheritance shall be ours. [Ps 2:8](#); [Gen 37:18](#); [Matt 26:3](#); [John 11:53](#);
- 8** And they took him, and killed him, and cast him out of the vineyard.
- 9** What shall therefore the lord of the vineyard do? he will come and destroy the husbandmen, and will give the vineyard unto others.
- 10** And have you not read this scripture; **The stone which the builders rejected is become the head of the corner:** [Ps 118:22](#); [Isa 28:16](#); [Matt 21:42](#); [Luke 20:17](#); [Acts 4:11](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [1Pet 2:6](#);
- 11 This was the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?**
- 12** And they sought to lay hold on him, but feared the people: for they knew that he had spoken the parable against them: and they left him, and went their way.

He avoids the snare of the Pharisees and Herodians about paying tribute to Caesar

- 13** And they send unto him certain of the Pharisees and of the Herodians, to catch him in his words. [Matt 22:15](#); [Luke 20:20](#);
- 14** And when they were come, they say unto him, Master, we know that you are true, and carest for no man: for you regardest not the person of men, but teachest the way of Elohim in truth: Is it lawful to give tribute to Caesar, or not?
- 15** Shall we give, or shall we not give? But he, knowing their hypocrisy, said unto them, **Why tempt you me? bring me a penny, that I may see it.**
- 16** And they brought it. And he saith unto them, **Whose is this image and superscription?** And they said unto him, Caesar's.
- 17** And Yahushua answering said unto them, **Render to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to Elohim the things that are Elohim's.** And they marvelled at him. [Matt 17:25](#); [Matt 22:21](#); [Rom 13:7](#); [[Luke 23:2](#)];

convicts the Sadducees of error, who denied the resurrection

- 18** Then come unto him the Sadducees, which say there is no resurrection; and they asked him, saying, [Matt 22:23](#); [Luke 20:27](#); [Acts 23:8](#);
- 19** Master, Moses wrote unto us, If a man's brother die, and leave his wife behind him, and leave no children, that his brother should take his wife, and raise up seed unto his brother. [Deut 25:5-6](#); [[Deut 25:5](#)];
- 20** Now there were seven brethren: and the first took a wife, and dying left no seed.
- 21** And the second took her, and died, neither left he any seed: and the third likewise.

22 And the seven had her, and left no seed: last of all the woman died also.

23 In the resurrection therefore, when they shall rise, whose wife shall she be of them? for the seven had her to wife.

24 And Yahushua answering said unto them, **Do you not therefore err, because you know not the scriptures, neither the power of Elohim?**

25 For when they shall rise from the dead, they neither marry, nor are given in marriage; but are as the angels which are in heaven. [Matt 22:30](#); [1John 3:2](#);

26 And as touching the dead, that they rise: have you not read in the book of Moses, how in the bush Elohim spoke unto him, saying, **I am the Elohim of Abraham, and the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob?** [Exod 3:6](#); [Matt 22:31-32](#); [Acts 7:32](#); [Heb 11:16](#); [\[1Kgs 18:36\]](#);

27 He is not the Elohim of the dead, but the Elohim of the living: you therefore do greatly err.

resolves the scribe, who questioned of the first commandment

28 And one of the scribes came, and having heard them reasoning together, and perceiving that he had answered them well, asked him, Which is the first commandment of all? [Matt 22:34](#); [Luke 10:25](#);

29 And Yahushua answered him, **The first of all the commandments is, Hear, O Israel; The Lord is our Elohim, the Lord alone:** [Deut 6:4](#); [Deut 10:12](#); [Luke 10:27](#); [\[Deut 4:35\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#);

30 **And you shall love the Lord thy Elohim with all thy heart, and with all thy being, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength:** this *is* the first commandment.

31 And the second *is* like, *namely* this, you **shall love thy neighbour as thyself.** There is none other commandment greater than these. [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [Rom 13:9](#); [Gal 5:14](#); [Jas 2:8](#); [\[Matt 19:19\]](#);

32 And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master, you have said the truth: **for there is one Elohim; and there is none other besides Him:** [\[Deut 4:35\]](#); [\[2Sam 7:22\]](#);

33 And to love Him with all your heart, and with all your understanding, and with all your being, and with all your strength, and to love your neighbour as yourself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices.

34 And when Yahushua saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, you **are not far from the kingdom of Elohim.** And no man after that dared ask him *any question.*

refutes the opinion that the scribes held of Yahushua

35 And Yahushua answered and said, while he taught in the temple, **How say the scribes that the Messiah is the Son of David?** [Matt 22:41](#); [Luke 20:41](#);

36 For David himself said by the Holy Spirit, **The YAHWEH said to my Lord, Sit you on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool.** [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Heb 1:13](#); [Heb 10:13](#);

37 David therefore himself calleth him Lord; and whence is he *then* his son? And the common people heard him gladly.

bidding the people to beware of their ambition and hypocrisy

38 And he said unto them in his doctrine, **Beware of the scribes, which love to go in long clothing, and love salutations in the marketplaces,** [Matt 23:5-6](#); [Luke 11:43](#); [Luke 20:46](#); [\[Matt 23:6\]](#);

39 And the chief seats in the synagogues, and the uppermost rooms at feasts:

40 Which devour widows' houses, and for a pretence make long prayers: these shall receive greater damnation. [Matt 23:13](#); [Luke 20:47](#); [2Tim 3:6](#); [Titus 1:11](#);

and commends the poor widow for her two mites, above all

41 And Yahushua sat over against the treasury, and beheld how the people cast money into the treasury: and many that were rich cast in much. [Luke 21:1](#); [2Kgs 12:9](#);

42 And there came a certain poor widow, and she threw in two mites, which make a farthing.

43 And he called *unto him* his disciples, and saith unto them, **Verily I say unto you, That this poor widow has cast more in, than all they which have cast into the treasury:** [2Cor 8:12](#);

44 For all *they* did cast in of their abundance; but she of her want did cast in all that she had, *even* all her living.

MARK THIRTEEN

Yahushua foretells the destruction of the temple

1 And as he went out of the temple, one of his disciples saith unto him, Master, see what manner of stones and what buildings *are here!* [Matt 24:1](#); [Luke 21:5](#); [[Matt 24:3](#)];

2 And Yahushua answering said unto him, *Seest you these great buildings? there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.* [1Kgs 9:7-8](#); [Mic 3:12](#); [Luke 19:44](#);

3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives over against the temple, Peter and James and John and Andrew asked him privately, [Matt 24:3](#); [Luke 21:7](#);

4 Tell us, when shall these things be? and what *shall be* the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled? [Acts 1:6](#);

5 And Yahushua answering them began to say, *Take heed lest any man deceive you:* [Jer 29:8](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [2Thess 2:2-3](#); [1John 4:1](#);

6 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am he; and shall deceive many. [Jer 14:14](#); [Jer 23:21](#);

7 And when you shall hear of wars and rumours of wars, be you not troubled: for *such things must needs be*; but the end *shall not be yet*.

8 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be earthquakes in various places, and there shall be famines and troubles: these *are* the beginnings of sorrows. [Isa 19:2](#);

the persecutions for the gospel

9 But take heed to yourselves: for they shall deliver you up to councils; and in the synagogues you shall be beaten: and you shall stand before rulers and kings for my sake, for a testimony against them. [Matt 10:17](#); [Matt 24:9](#); [Luke 21:12](#); [John 15:19](#); [John 16:2](#); [Rev 2:10](#);

that the gospel must be preached to all nations

10 And the gospel must first be published among all nations.

11 But when they shall lead *you*, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what you shall speak, neither do you premeditate: but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak you: for it is not you that speak, but the Holy Spirit. [Matt 10:19](#); [Luke 12:11](#); [Luke 21:4](#); [[Exod 4:12](#)]; [[Luke 21:14](#)];

12 Now the brother shall betray the brother to death, and the father the son; and children shall rise up against *their* parents, and shall cause them to be put to death. [Ezek 38:21](#); [Mic 7:6](#);

13 And you shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake: but he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. [Matt 10:22](#); [Matt 24:13](#); [Luke 21:19](#); [Rev 2:7](#); [Rev 2:10](#); [[Luke 21:17](#)];

that great calamities shall happen to the Jews

14 But when you shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing where it ought not, (let him that readeth understand,) then let them that be in Judaea flee to the mountains: [Matt 24:15](#); [Luke 21:20](#); [Dan 9:27](#); [Luke 21:21](#); [[Luke 21:22](#)];

15 And let him that is on the housetop not go down into the house, neither enter *therein*, to take any thing out of his house:

16 And let him that is in the field not turn back again for to take up his garment.

17 But woe to them that are with child, and to them that give suck in those days!

18 And pray you that your flight be not in the winter.

19 For *in* those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which Elohim created unto this time, neither shall be.

20 And except that the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved: but for the elect's sake, whom he has chosen, he has shortened the days.

- 21 Then if any man shall say to you, Lo, here *is* the Messiah; or, lo, *he is* there; believe *him* not: Matt 24:23; Luke 21:8; [Luke 17:21]; [Luke 17:23];
- 22 For false messiahs and false prophets shall rise, and shall show signs and wonders, to seduce, if *it were* possible, even the elect. Deut 13:1; 2Thess 2:11;
- 23 But take you heed: behold, I have foretold you all things.

and the manner of his coming to judgment

- 24 But in those days, after that tribulation, the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, Isa 13:10; Ezek 32:7; Joel 2:31; Joel 3:15; Matt 24:29; Luke 21:25; Rev 6:12;
- 25 And the stars of heaven shall fall, and the powers that are in heaven shall be shaken.
- 26 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory. Dan 7:10; Matt 16:27; Matt 24:30; Mark 14:62; Luke 21:27; Acts 1:11; 1Thess 4:16; 2Thess 1:10; Rev 1:7;
- 27 And then shall he send his angels, and shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from the uttermost part of the earth to the uttermost part of heaven.
- 28 Now learn a parable of the fig tree; When her branch is yet tender, and puts forth leaves, you know that summer is near: Matt 24:32; Luke 21:29;
- 29 So you in like manner, when you shall see these things come to pass, know that it is nigh, *even* at the doors.
- 30 Verily I say unto you, that this generation shall not pass, till all these things be done.
- 31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away. Ps 102:26; Isa 40:8; Isa 51:6; Heb 1:11; [Matt 24:35];

the hour whereof being known to none, every man is to watch and pray, that we be not found unprovided, when he comes to each one particularly by death

- 32 But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father. Matt 24:36; Acts 1:7;
- 33 Take you heed, watch and pray: for you know not when the time is. Matt 24:42; Matt 25:13; Luke 12:40; Luke 21:36; 1Thess 5:6;
- 34 *For the Son of man is* as a man taking a far journey, who left his house, and gave authority to his servants, and to every man his work, and commanded the porter to watch. [Luke 19:12];
- 35 Watch you therefore: for you know not when the master of the house cometh, at even, or at midnight, or at the cockcrowing, or in the morning: [Matt 25:13];
- 36 Lest coming suddenly he find you sleeping.
- 37 And what I say unto you I say unto all, Watch.

A conspiracy against Yahushua

1 After two days was *the feast of* the passover, and of unleavened bread: and the chief priests and the scribes sought how they might take him by craft, and put *him* to death. [Matt 26:2](#); [Luke 22:1](#); [John 11:55](#); [John 13:1](#); [\[John 11:47\]](#); [\[Acts 4:27\]](#);

2 But they said, Not on the feast *day*, lest there be an uproar of the people.

Precious ointment is poured on his head by a woman

3 And being in Bethany in the house of Simon the jar maker, as he reclined, there came a woman having an alabaster box of ointment of spikenard very precious; and she broke the box, and poured *it* on his head. [Matt 26:6](#); [Luke 7:37](#); [John 11:2](#); [John 12:3](#); [\[Matt 26:7\]](#); [\[Luke 7:36\]](#); [\[John 12:1\]](#);

4 And there were some that had indignation within themselves, and said, Why was this waste of the ointment made?

5 For it might have been sold for more than three hundred pence, and have been given to the poor. And they murmured against her. [\[John 12:5\]](#);

6 And Yahushua said, *Let her alone; why trouble you her? she has wrought a good work on me.*

7 *For you have the poor with you always, and whensoever you will you may do them good: but me you have not always.* [Deut 15:11](#); [\[Matt 26:11\]](#); [\[John 12:8\]](#);

8 *She has done what she could: she is come beforehand to anoint my body to the burying.* [\[John 12:7\]](#);

9 *Verily I say unto you, Whosoever this gospel shall be preached throughout the whole world, *this* also that she has done shall be spoken of for a memorial of her.*

Judas sells his Master for money

10 And Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went unto the chief priests, to betray him unto them. [Matt 26:14](#); [Luke 22:4](#); [\[Luke 22:3\]](#);

11 And when they heard *it*, they were glad, and promised to give him money. And he sought how he might conveniently betray him.

Yahushua himself foretells how he shall be betrayed by one of his disciples

12 And before the feast of unleavened bread, when they killed the passover, his disciples said unto him, Where will you that we go and prepare that you may eat the passover? [Matt 26:17](#); [Luke 22:7](#); [Exod 12:17](#);

13 And he sendeth forth two of his disciples, and saith unto them, *Go you into the city, and there shall meet you a man bearing a pitcher of water: follow him.*

14 *And whosoever he shall go in, say you to the goodman of the house, The Master saith, Where is the guestchamber, where I shall eat the passover with my disciples?*

15 *And he will show you a large upper room furnished *and* prepared: there make ready for us.*

16 And his disciples went forth, and came into the city, and found as he had said unto them: and they made ready the passover.

17 And in the evening he cometh with the twelve. [Matt 26:20](#); [Luke 22:14](#);

18 And as they sat and did eat, Yahushua said, *Verily I say unto you, One of you which eateth with me shall betray me.* [Ps 41:9](#); [Acts 1:17](#); [\[Luke 22:21\]](#); [\[John 13:21\]](#);

19 And they began to be sorrowful, and to say unto him one by one, *Is it I?* and another *said, Is it I?*

20 And he answered and said unto them, *It is one of the twelve, that dippeth with me in the dish.*

21 *The Son of man indeed goes, as it is written of him: but woe to that man by whom the Son of man is betrayed! good were it for that man if he had never been born.*

after the passover prepared, and eaten, institutes his last supper

22 And as they did eat, Yahushua took bread, and blessed, and brake *it*, and gave to them, and said, *Take, eat: this is my body.* [Matt 26:26](#); [Luke 22:19](#); [1Cor 11:23](#);

23 And he took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave *it* to them: and they all drank of it. [John 18:3];
24 And he said unto them, *This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.*
25 *Verily I say unto you, I will drink no more of the fruit of the vine, until that day that I drink it new in the kingdom of Elohim.*

declares beforehand the flight of all his disciples, and Peter's denial

26 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives. [Matt 26:30];
27 And Yahushua saith unto them, *All you shall be offended because of me this night: for it is written, **I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered.*** Matt 26:31; John 16:32; Zech 13:7;
28 *But after that I am risen, I will go before you into Galilee.* Matt 26:32; Matt 28:10; Mark 16:7; [Matt 28:16];
29 But Peter said unto him, Although all shall be offended, yet *will* not I. [John 13:37];
30 And Yahushua saith unto him, *Verily I say unto you, That this day, *even* in this night, before the cock crow twice, you shall deny me thrice.* Matt 26:34; Luke 22:34; John 13:38; [Matt 26:75];
31 But he spoke the more vehemently, If I should die with you, I will not deny you in any wise. Likewise also said they all. John 13:37;
32 And they came to a place which was named Gethsemane: and he saith to his disciples, *Sit you here, while I shall pray.* Matt 26:36; Luke 22:39; John 18:1;
33 And he taketh with him Peter and James and John, and began to be sore amazed, and to be very heavy;
34 And saith unto them, *My being is exceeding sorrowful unto death: tarry you here, and watch.* John 12:27;
35 And he went forward a little, and fell on the ground, and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour might pass from him. Luke 22:41;
36 And he said, *Abba, Father, all things *are* possible unto you; take away this cup from me: nevertheless not what I will, but what you wilt.* John 6:38;
37 And he cometh, and finds them sleeping, and saith unto Peter, *Simon, sleepest you? couldst not you watch one hour?* Matt 26:40; Luke 22:45;
38 *Watch you and pray, lest you enter into temptation. The spirit truly *is* ready, but the flesh *is* weak.* Gal 5:17;
39 And again he went away, and prayed, and spoke the same words.
40 And when he returned, he found them asleep again, (for their eyes were heavy,) neither wist they what to answer him.
41 And he cometh the third time, and saith unto them, *Sleep on now, and take *your* rest: it is enough, the hour is come; behold, the Son of man is betrayed into the hands of sinners.*
42 *Rise up, let us go; lo, he that betrayeth me is at hand.*

Judas betrays him with a kiss

43 And immediately, while he yet spoke, cometh Judas, one of the twelve, and with him a great multitude with swords and staves, from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders. Matt 26:47; Luke 22:47; John 18:3; [Acts 1:16];
44 And he that betrayed him had given them a token, saying, Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he; take him, and lead *him* away safely.
45 And as soon as he was come, he goes immediately to him, and saith, Master, master; and kissed him. 2Sam 20:9;

He is apprehended in the garden

46 And they laid their hands on him, and took him.
47 And one of them that stood by drew a sword, and smote a servant of the high priest, and cut off his ear. [Luke 22:50]; [John 18:10];

48 And Yahushua answered and said unto them, **Are you come out, as against a thief, with swords and with staves to take me?** [Luke 22:52];
49 **I was daily with you in the temple teaching, and you took me not: but the scriptures must be fulfilled.** Ps 22:6; Ps 69:9; Luke 24:25;
50 And they all forsook him, and fled. Job 19:13; Ps 88:8;
51 And there followed him a certain young man, having a linen cloth cast about *his* naked *body*; and the young men laid hold on him:
52 And he left the linen cloth, and fled from them naked.

falsely accused and impiously condemned of the Jews' council

53 And they led Yahushua away to the high priest: and with him were assembled all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes. Matt 26:57; Luke 22:54; John 18:13; John 18:24;
54 And Peter followed him afar off, even into the palace of the high priest: and he sat with the servants, and warmed himself at the fire. [Luke 22:55]; [John 18:15];
55 And the chief priests and all the council sought for witness against Yahushua to put him to death; and found none. Matt 26:59; Acts 6:13;
56 For many bore false witness against him, but their witness agreed not together.
57 And there arose certain, and bore false witness against him, saying,
58 We heard him say, I will destroy this temple that is made with hands, and within three days I will build another made without hands. Mark 15:29; John 2:19;
59 But neither so did their witness agree together.
60 And the high priest stood up in the midst, and asked Yahushua, saying, Answerest thou nothing? what *is it which* these witness against you? Matt 26:62;
61 But he held his peace, and answered nothing. Again the high priest asked him, and said unto him, are you the Messiah, the Son of the Blessed? Isa 53:7; Acts 8:32;
62 And Yahushua said, **I am: and you shall see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.** Dan 7:13; Matt 16:27; Matt 24:30; Matt 25:31; Luke 21:27; Acts 1:11; 1Thess 4:16; 2Thess 1:10; Rev 1:7; [Matt 26:64]; [Mark 13:26]; [Luke 22:69];
63 Then the high priest rent his clothes, and saith, What need we any further witnesses?
64 **you** have heard the blasphemy: what think you? And they all condemned him to be guilty of death.

shamefully abused by them

65 And some began to spit on him, and to cover his face, and to buffet him, and to say unto him, Prophecy: and the servants did strike him with the palms of their hands. Job 16:10; Isa 50:6; John 19:3; [2Chr 18:23]; [Luke 22:63];

and thrice denied of Peter

66 And as Peter was beneath in the palace, there cometh one of the maids of the high priest: Matt 26:58; Matt 26:69; Luke 22:55; John 18:16-17;
67 And when she saw Peter warming himself, she looked upon him, and said, And you also were with Yahushua of Nazareth. [John 18:18];
68 But he denied, saying, I know not, neither understand I what you sayest. And he went out into the porch; and the cock crew.
69 And a maid saw him again, and began to say to them that stood by, This is *one* of them. Matt 26:71; Luke 22:58; John 18:25;
70 And he denied it again. And a little after, they that stood by said again to Peter, Surely you are *one* of them: for you are a Galilaean, and thy speech agreeth *thereto*.
71 But he began to curse and to swear, *saying*, I know not this man of whom you speak.

72 And the second time the cock crew. And Peter called to mind the word that Yahushua said unto him,
Before the cock crow twice, you shall deny me thrice. And when he thought thereon, he wept. [Matt 26:34;](#)
[Luke 22:61;](#) [John 13:38;](#) [John 18:27;](#)

Yahushua brought bound, and accused before Pilate

1 And immediately in the morning the chief priests held a consultation with the elders and scribes and the whole council, and bound Yahushua, and carried *him* away, and delivered *him* to Pilate. [Ps 2:2](#); [Matt 27:1](#); [Luke 22:66](#); [Luke 23:1](#); [John 18:28](#); [Acts 3:13](#);

2 And Pilate asked him, are you the King of the Jews? And he answering said unto him, you **sayest it**. [Matt 27:11](#); [Luke 23:3](#); [John 18:33](#);

3 And the chief priests accused him of many things.

4 Then Pilate asked him again, saying, Have you nothing to say? Look how many charges they bring against you. [Matt 27:13](#); [John 19:10](#);

5 But Yahushua yet answered nothing; so that Pilate marvelled. [\[Isa 53:7\]](#);

Upon the clamour of the common people, the murderer Barabbas is loosed, and Yahushua delivered up to be crucified

6 Now at *that* feast he released unto them one prisoner, whomsoever they desired. [Matt 27:15](#); [Luke 23:17](#); [John 18:39](#);

7 And there was *one* named Barabbas, *which lay* bound with them that had made insurrection with him, who had committed murder in the insurrection. [Matt 27:16](#); [Luke 23:19](#); [John 18:40](#);

8 And the multitude crying aloud began to desire *him to do* as he had ever done unto them.

9 But Pilate answered them, saying, Will you that I release unto you the King of the Jews?

10 For he knew that the chief priests had delivered him for envy.

11 But the chief priests moved the people, that he should rather release Barabbas unto them. [Matt 27:20](#); [Luke 23:18](#); [John 18:40](#); [Acts 3:14](#); [\[Acts 3:13\]](#); [\[Acts 13:28\]](#);

12 And Pilate answered and said again unto them, What will you then that I shall do *unto him* whom you call the King of the Jews?

13 And they cried out again, Crucify him.

14 Then Pilate said unto them, Why, what evil has he done? And they cried out the more exceedingly, Crucify him. [\[Luke 23:13\]](#);

15 And *so* Pilate, willing to content the people, released Barabbas unto them, and delivered Yahushua, when he had scourged *him*, to be crucified. [Matt 27:26](#); [John 19:1](#); [\[Luke 23:24\]](#);

He is crowned with thorns, spit on, and mocked

16 And the soldiers led him away into the hall, called Praetorium; and they call together the whole band. [Matt 27:27](#); [John 19:2](#);

17 And they clothed him with purple, and platted a crown of thorns, and put it about his *head*,

18 And began to salute him, Hail, King of the Jews!

19 And they smote him on the head with a reed, and did spit upon him, and bowing *their* knees worshipped him.

20 And when they had mocked him, they took off the purple from him, and put his own clothes on him, and led him out to crucify him.

faints in bearing his stake

21 And they compel one Simon a Cyrenian, who passed by, coming out of the country, the father of Alexander and Rufus, to bear his stake. [Matt 27:32](#); [Luke 23:26](#);

22 And they bring him unto the place Golgotha, which is, being interpreted, The place of a skull. [Matt 27:33](#); [Luke 23:33](#); [John 19:17](#); [\[John 19:16\]](#);

23 And they gave him to drink wine mingled with myrrh: but he received *it* not. [\[Ps 69:21\]](#);

24 And when they had crucified him, they parted his garments, casting lots upon them, what every man should take. [Matt 27:35](#); [Luke 23:34](#); [John 19:23](#); [Ps 22:18](#); [\[Ps 22:16\]](#);

25 And it was the third hour, and they crucified him.

26 And the superscription of his accusation was written over, THE KING OF THE JEWS. [Matt 27:37; Luke 23:38; John 19:19;](#)

hangs between two thieves

27 And with him they crucify two thieves; the one on his right hand, and the other on his left.

28 And the scripture was fulfilled, which saith, **And he was numbered with the transgressors.** [Isa 53:12; Luke 22:37;](#)

suffers the triumphing reproaches of the Jews

29 And they that passed by railed on him, wagging their heads, and saying, Ah, you that destroyest the temple, and buildest *it* in three days, [Ps 22:7; Ps 69:20; Ps 109:25; Matt 27:39; Luke 23:35; John 2:19; \[Mark 14:58\];](#)

30 Save thyself, and come down from the stake.

31 Likewise also the chief priests mocking said among themselves with the scribes, He saved others; himself he cannot save.

32 Let the Messiah the King of Israel descend now from the stake, that we may see and believe him. And they that were tortured with him reviled him.

33 And when the sixth hour was come, there was darkness over the whole land until the ninth hour. [Matt 27:45; Luke 23:44;](#)

34 And at the ninth hour Yahushua cried with a loud voice, saying, **Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?** which is, being interpreted, **My Elohim, my Elohim, why have you forsaken me?** [Ps 22:1; Matt 27:46;](#)

35 And some of them that stood by, when they heard *it*, said, Behold, he calleth Elias.

36 And one ran and filled a sponge full of vinegar, and put *it* on a reed, and gave him to drink, saying, Let alone; let us see whether Elias will come to take him down. [Ps 69:21; John 19:29;](#)

37 And Yahushua cried with a loud voice, and gave up the ghost. [\[Luke 23:46\];](#)

38 And the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom. [2Chr 3:14; Matt 27:51; Luke 23:45;](#)

but is confessed by the centurion to be the Son of Elohim

39 And when the centurion, which stood over against him, saw that he so cried out, and gave up the ghost, he said, Truly this man was the Son of Elohim. [Matt 27:54; Luke 23:47;](#)

40 There were also women looking on afar off: among whom was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James the less and of Joses, and Salome; [Matt 27:55; Luke 23:49; Ps 38:11; \[John 19:25\];](#)

41 (Who also, when he was in Galilee, followed him, and ministered unto him;) and many other women which came up with him unto Jerusalem. [Luke 8:2-3;](#)

and is honourably buried by Joseph

42 And now when the even was come, because it was the preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath, [Matt 27:57; Luke 23:50; John 19:38;](#)

43 Joseph of Arimathea, a honourable counsellor, which also waited for the kingdom of Elohim, came, and went in boldly unto Pilate, and craved the body of Yahushua. [\[Luke 23:50\];](#)

44 And Pilate marvelled if he were already dead: and calling *unto him* the centurion, he asked him whether he had been any while dead.

45 And when he knew *it* of the centurion, he gave the body to Joseph.

46 And he bought fine linen, and took him down, and wrapped him in the linen, and laid him in a sepulcher which was hewn out of a rock, and rolled a stone unto the door of the sepulcher. [Matt 12:40; Matt 26:12; Matt 27:60; Luke 23:53;](#)

47 And Mary Magdalene and Mary *the mother* of Joses beheld where he was laid.

An Angel declares the resurrection of the Messiah to three women

- 1** And when the Sabbath was past, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the *mother* of James, and Salome, bought aromatic spices, that they might go and anoint him. [Matt 28:1](#); [Luke 24:1](#); [John 20:1](#);
- 2** And very early in the morning the first of the weeks, they went to the sepulcher at the rising of the sun.
- 3** And they said among themselves, Who shall roll us away the stone from the door of the sepulcher?
- 4** And when they looked, they saw that the stone was rolled away: for it was very great.
- 5** And entering into the sepulcher, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white garment; and they were frightened. [Matt 28:2](#); [John 20:12](#); [\[John 20:11\]](#); [\[Acts 10:30\]](#);
- 6** And he saith unto them, Be not frightened: you seek Yahushua of Nazareth, which was crucified: he is risen; he is not here: behold the place where they laid him. [Matt 28:5](#); [Luke 24:5](#); [\[Acts 13:30\]](#);
- 7** But go your way, tell his disciples and Peter that he goes before you into Galilee: there shall you see him, as he said unto you. [Acts 1:3](#); [Acts 13:31](#); [1Cor 15:5](#); [Matt 26:32](#); [Matt 28:10](#); [Mark 14:28](#); [\[Matt 28:7\]](#);
- 8** And they went out quickly, and fled from the sepulcher; for they trembled and were amazed: neither said they any thing to any *man*; for they were afraid. [Matt 28:8](#); [Luke 24:9](#); [John 20:18](#);

the Messiah himself appears to Mary Magdalene

- 9** Now when *Yahushua* was risen, early the first *day* of the week he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom he had cast seven demons. [John 20:14](#); [John 20:16](#); [Luke 8:2](#); [\[Matt 28:9\]](#);
- 10** *And* she went and told them that had been with him, as they mourned and wept. [\[Luke 24:9\]](#); [\[Luke 24:22\]](#); [\[John 20:18\]](#);
- 11** And they, when they had heard that he was alive, and had been seen of her, believed not.

to two going into the country

- 12** After that he appeared in another form unto two of them, as they walked, and went into the country. [Luke 24:13](#);
- 13** And they went and told *it* unto the residue: neither believed they them.

then to the apostles

- 14** Afterward he appeared unto the eleven as they sat at meat, and upbraided them with their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they believed not them which had seen him after he was risen. [Luke 24:36](#); [John 20:19](#); [1Cor 15:5](#); [\[Acts 1:3\]](#); [\[Acts 10:40\]](#); [\[Acts 13:31\]](#);

whom he sends forth to preach the gospel

- 15** And he said unto them, **Go you into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.** [Matt 28:19](#); [John 15:16](#); [\[John 20:21\]](#); [\[Acts 10:42\]](#);
- 16** **He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be judged.** [John 3:18](#); [John 12:48](#);
- 17** **And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out demons; they shall speak with new tongues;** [Luke 10:17](#); [Acts 5:16](#); [Acts 8:7](#); [Acts 16:18](#); [Acts 19:12](#); [Acts 2:4](#); [Acts 10:46](#); [Acts 19:6](#); [\[Acts 2:43\]](#); [\[Acts 4:30\]](#); [\[Acts 5:12\]](#);
- 18** **They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.** [Luke 10:19](#); [Acts 28:5](#); [Acts 28:8](#);

and ascends into heaven

19 So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of Elohim. [Luke 24:50-51](#); [Acts 1:9](#); [[Luke 9:51](#)]; [[Luke 24:51](#)]; [[John 6:62](#)]; [[Acts 1:2](#)]; [[1Tim 3:16](#)];

20 And they went forth, and preached every where, the Lord working with *them*, and confirming the word with signs following. Amen. [Acts 1:2](#); [1Tim 3:16](#); [Acts 14:3](#); [Heb 2:4](#); [[Acts 19:11](#)];

Luke

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#)

LUKE ONE

The preface of Luke to his whole gospel

- 1** Forasmuch as many have taken in hand to set forth in order a declaration of those things which are most surely believed among us,
2 Even as they delivered them unto us, which from the beginning were eyewitnesses, and ministers of the word;
3 It seemed good to me also, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write unto you in order, most excellent Theophilus,
4 That you mightest know the certainty of those things, wherein you have been instructed.

The conception of John the Baptist

- 5** There was in the days of Herod, the king of Judaea, a certain priest named Zacharias, of the course of Abia: and his wife *was* of the daughters of Aaron, and her name *was* Elisabeth. [1Chr 24:10](#);
6 And they were both righteous before Elohim, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless.
7 And they had no child, because that Elisabeth was barren, and they both were *now* well stricken in years. [\[Mal 4:5\]](#);
8 And it came to pass, that while he executed the priest's office before Elohim in the order of his course,
9 According to the custom of the priest's office, his lot was to burn incense when he went into the temple of the Lord. [Heb 9:6](#); [Exod 30:7](#); [Lev 16:17](#);
10 And the whole multitude of the people were praying without at the time of incense.
11 And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense.
12 And when Zacharias saw *him*, he was troubled, and fear fell upon him.
13 But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear you a son, and you shall call his name John. [Luke 1:60](#);
14 And you shall have joy and gladness; and many shall rejoice at his birth. [Luke 1:58](#);
15 For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Spirit, even from his mother's womb. [Judg 13:4](#);
16 And many of the children of Israel shall he turn to the Lord their Elohim. [Mal 4:6](#); [Matt 11:14](#);
17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, **to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children**, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord. [Matt 3:2](#); [Mark 9:12](#); [Mal 4:6](#); [\[Matt 11:14\]](#); [\[Mark 9:11\]](#); [\[Luke 1:76\]](#); [\[John 3:28\]](#);
18 And Zacharias said unto the angel, Whereby shall I know this? for I am an old man, and my wife well stricken in years. [Gen 17:17](#);
19 And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of Elohim; and am sent to speak unto you, and to show you these glad tidings.
20 And, behold, you shall be dumb, and not able to speak, until the day that these things shall be performed, because you believest not my words, which shall be fulfilled in their season.
21 And the people waited for Zacharias, and marvelled that he tarried so long in the temple.
22 And when he came out, he could not speak unto them: and they perceived that he had seen a vision in the temple: for he beckoned unto them, and remained speechless.
23 And it came to pass, that, as soon as the days of his ministration were accomplished, he departed to his own house.

24 And after those days his wife Elisabeth conceived, and hid herself five months, saying,
25 Thus has the Lord dealt with me in the days wherein he looked on *me*, to take away my reproach among men. [Gen 30:23](#); [Isa 4:1](#);

and of the Messiah

26 And in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from Elohim unto a city of Galilee, named Nazareth, [\[Dan 8:16\]](#);
27 To a virgin betrothed to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin's name *was* Mary. [Matt 1:18](#);
28 And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, you *that are* highly favored, the Lord *is* with you: blessed are you among women.
29 And when she saw *him*, she was troubled at his saying, and cast in her mind what manner of salutation this should be.
30 And the angel said unto her, Fear not, Mary: for you have found favor with Elohim.
31 And, behold, you shall conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shall call his name YAHUSHUA. [Isa 7:14](#); [Matt 1:21](#); [\[Matt 1:1\]](#); [\[Luke 2:21\]](#); [\[John 1:14\]](#);
32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord Elohim shall give unto him the throne of his father David: [Isa 54:5](#); [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Isa 9:7](#); [\[Jer 23:5\]](#); [\[Acts 2:30\]](#); [\[Rom 1:3\]](#);
33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end. [1Chr 22:10](#); [Ps 45:6](#); [Ps 89:36](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Dan 7:14](#); [Dan 7:27](#); [Mic 4:7](#); [Heb 1:8](#); [\[1Chr 17:14\]](#); [\[Isa 16:5\]](#); [\[Dan 2:44\]](#); [\[Dan 6:26\]](#);
34 Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man? [\[Matt 1:18\]](#);
35 And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Spirit shall come upon you, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow you: therefore also the holy one to be born shall be called the Son of Elohim.
36 And, behold, thy cousin Elisabeth, she has also conceived a son in her old age: and this is the sixth month with her, who was called barren. [\[Heb 11:11\]](#);
37 For with Elohim nothing shall be impossible. [Job 42:2](#); [Jer 32:17](#); [Zech 8:6](#); [Matt 19:26](#); [Luke 18:27](#); [\[Gen 18:14\]](#); [\[Mark 10:27\]](#);
38 And Mary said, Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word. And the angel departed from her.

The prophecy of Elisabeth and of Mary, concerning the Messiah

39 And Mary arose in those days, and went into the hill country with haste, into a city of Juda;
40 And entered into the house of Zacharias, and saluted Elisabeth.
41 And it came to pass, that, when Elisabeth heard the salutation of Mary, the babe leaped in her womb; and Elisabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit:
42 And she spoke out with a loud voice, and said, Blessed are you among women, and blessed *is* the fruit of thy womb.
43 And whence *is* this to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me?
44 For, lo, as soon as the sound of your greeting reached my ears, the baby in my womb leaped for joy.
45 And blessed *is* she that believed: for there shall be a performance of those things which were told her from the Lord. [Luke 11:28](#);
46 And Mary said, My being magnifies the Lord, [\[1Sam 2:1\]](#);
47 And my spirit has rejoiced in Elohim my Saviour.
48 For he has regarded the low estate of his handmaiden: for, behold, from henceforth all generations shall call me blessed.
49 For he that is mighty has done to me great things; and holy *is* his name.
50 And his mercy *is* on them that fear him from generation to generation. [Exod 20:6](#);

- 51** He has showed strength with his arm; he has scattered the proud in the imagination of their hearts. [Isa 51:9](#); [Isa 52:10](#); [Ps 33:10](#); [1Pet 5:5](#); [\[Ps 118:16\]](#); [\[Luke 14:11\]](#);
- 52** He has put down the mighty from *their* seats, and exalted them of low degree. [1Sam 2:8](#); [Ps 113:6](#);
- 53** He has filled the hungry with good things; and the rich he has sent empty away. [Ps 34:10](#); [\[1Sam 2:5\]](#);
- 54** He has holpen his servant Israel, in remembrance of *his* mercy; [Isa 30:18](#); [Isa 41:9](#); [Isa 54:5](#); [Jer 31:2](#); [Jer 31:20](#);
- 55** As he spoke to our fathers, to Abraham, and to his seed for ever. [Gen 17:19](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Ps 132:11](#);
- 56** And Mary abode with her about three months, and returned to her own house.

The nativity and circumcision of John

- 57** Now Elisabeth's full time came that she should be delivered; and she brought forth a son.
- 58** And her neighbours and her cousins heard how the Lord had showed great mercy upon her; and they rejoiced with her. [Luke 1:14](#);
- 59** And it came to pass, that on the eighth day they came to circumcise the child; and they called him Zacharias, after the name of his father. [Gen 17:12](#); [Lev 12:3](#);
- 60** And his mother answered and said, Not *so*; but he shall be called John. [Luke 1:13](#);
- 61** And they said unto her, There is none of thy kindred that is called by this name.
- 62** And they made signs to his father, how he would have him called.
- 63** And he asked for a writing table, and wrote, saying, His name is John. And they marvelled all.
- 64** And his mouth was opened immediately, and his tongue *loosed*, and he spoke, and praised Elohim.
- 65** And fear came on all that dwelt round about them: and all these sayings were noised abroad throughout all the hill country of Judaea.
- 66** And all they that heard *them* laid *them* up in their hearts, saying, What manner of child shall this be! And the hand of the Lord was with him.

The prophecy of Zacharias, both of the Messiah

- 67** And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Spirit, and prophesied, saying,
- 68** Blessed *be* the Lord Elohim of Israel; for he has visited and redeemed his people, [\[Luke 7:16\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:12\]](#);
- 69** And has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David; [Ps 132:17](#); [\[Ps 132:11\]](#);
- 70** As he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began: [Ps 72:12](#); [Isa 40:10](#); [Jer 23:6](#); [Jer 30:10](#); [Dan 9:27](#);
- 71** That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us;
- 72** To perform the mercy *promised* to our fathers, and to remember his holy covenant;
- 73** The oath which he swore to our father Abraham, [Gen 22:16](#); [Ps 105:9](#); [Jer 31:33](#); [Heb 6:13](#); [Heb 6:17](#); [\[Heb 6:14\]](#);
- 74** That he would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear, [Heb 9:14](#); [\[Isa 43:21\]](#); [\[Rom 6:13\]](#);
- 75** In holiness and righteousness before him, all the days of our life. [1Pet 1:15](#); [\[Eph 1:4\]](#); [\[Col 1:22\]](#);

and of John

- 76** And you, child, shall be called the prophet of the Highest: for you shall go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways; [Luke 1:17](#); [Mal 4:5](#); [\[Mal 3:1\]](#);
- 77** To give knowledge of salvation unto his people by the remission of their sins, [Luke 3:3](#);
- 78** Through the tender mercy of our Elohim; whereby the dayspring from on high has visited us, [Mal 4:2](#);
- 79** To give light to them that sit in darkness and *in* the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace. [Isa 9:2](#); [Isa 42:7](#); [Isa 43:8](#); [Isa 49:9](#); [Isa 60:1](#); [\[Ps 27:1\]](#);
- 80** And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, and was in the deserts till the day of his showing unto Israel. [Luke 2:40](#); [\[Luke 2:52\]](#);

Augustus taxes all the Roman empire

1 And it came to pass in those days, that there went out a decree from Caesar Augustus, that all the world should be taxed.

2 (*And* this taxing was first made when Cyrenius was governing Syria.)

3 And all went to be taxed, every one into his own city.

4 And Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judaea, unto the city of David, which is called Bethlehem; (because he was of the house and lineage of David:) [Mic 5:2](#); [John 7:42](#); [1Sam 16:4](#); [Matt 1:1](#); [[Matt 2:1](#)];

5 To be taxed with Mary his betrothed wife, being pregnant.

The nativity of Yahushua

6 And so it was, that, while they were there, the days were accomplished that she should be delivered.

7 And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn. [Matt 1:25](#); [[John 1:14](#)];

An angel relates it to the shepherds, and many sing praises to Elohim for it

8 And there were in the same country shepherds abiding in the field, keeping watch over their flock by night.

9 And, lo, the angel of the Lord came upon them, and the glory of the Lord shone round about them: and they were sore afraid.

10 And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people. [[Isa 9:6](#)];

11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is the Messiah the Lord.

12 And this *shall be* a sign unto you; you shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger.

13 And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising Elohim, and saying, [Dan 7:10](#); [Rev 5:11](#);

14 Glory to Elohim in the highest, and on earth peace among people with whom He is pleased. [Isa 57:19](#); [Eph 2:17](#); [[Ps 148:1](#)]; [[Luke 19:38](#)];

The shepherds glorify Elohim

15 And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another, Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing which is come to pass, which the Lord has made known unto us.

16 And they came with haste, and found Mary, and Joseph, and the babe lying in a manger.

17 And when they had seen *it*, they made known abroad the saying which was told them concerning this child.

18 And all they that heard *it* wondered at those things which were told them by the shepherds.

19 But Mary kept all these things, and pondered *them* in her heart.

20 And the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising Elohim for all the things that they had heard and seen, as it was told unto them.

Yahushua is circumcised

21 And when eight days were accomplished for the circumcising of the child, his name was called YAHUSHUA, which was so named of the angel before he was conceived in the womb. [Gen 17:12](#); [Lev 12:3](#); [John 7:22](#); [Matt 1:21](#); [Luke 1:31](#); [[Matt 1:25](#)];

Mary purified

22 And when the days of her purification according to the law of Moses were accomplished, they brought him to Jerusalem, to present *him* to the Lord; [Lev 12:6](#); [[Num 3:13](#)];

23 (As it is written in the law of the Lord, **Every male that openeth the womb shall be called holy to the Lord;**) [Exod 13:2](#); [Num 3:13](#); [Num 8:16-17](#); [[Num 8:17](#)];

24 And to offer a sacrifice according to that which is said in the law of the Lord, **A pair of turtledoves, or two young pigeons.** [Lev 12:8](#); [[Lev 5:7](#)];

Simeon and Anna prophesy of Yahushua

25 And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name *was* Simeon; and the same man *was* just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Spirit was upon him.

26 And it was revealed unto him by the Holy Spirit, that he should not see death, before he had seen the Lord Messiah.

27 And he came by the Spirit into the temple: and when the parents brought in the child Yahushua, to do for him after the custom of the law,

28 Then took he him up in his arms, and blessed Elohim, and said,

29 Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in peace, according to thy word: [Gen 46:30](#);

30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation, [Ps 98:2](#); [Isa 52:10](#);

31 Which thou hast prepared before the face of all people; [Acts 28:28](#);

32 A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of thy people Israel. [Isa 42:6](#); [Isa 49:6](#); [Acts 13:47](#); [[John 9:5](#)];

33 And Joseph and his mother marvelled at those things which were spoken of him.

34 And Simeon blessed them, and said unto Mary his mother, Behold, this *child* is set for the fall and rising again of many in Israel; and for a sign which shall be spoken against; [Isa 8:14](#); [Rom 9:32](#); [1Pet 2:9](#); [Acts 28:22](#); [[2Cor 2:16](#)];

35 (Yea, a sword shall pierce through thy own being also,) that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed.

36 And there was one Anna, a prophetess, the daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Aser - she was of a great age, and had lived with a husband seven years from her virginity; [[Acts 2:17](#)]; [[1Tim 5:5](#)];

37 And she *was* a widow of about eighty-four years - who departed not from the temple, worshipping with fastings and prayers night and day. [1Sam 1:22](#);

38 And she coming in that instant gave thanks likewise unto the Lord, and spoke of him to all them that looked for redemption in Jerusalem.

who increases in wisdom

39 And when they had performed all things according to the law of the Lord, they returned into Galilee, to their own city Nazareth.

40 And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, filled with wisdom: and the grace of Elohim was upon him. [Luke 1:80](#);

questions in the temple with the doctors

41 Now his parents went to Jerusalem every year at the feast of the passover. [Exod 23:15](#); [Exod 23:17](#); [Lev 23:5](#); [Deut 16:1](#); [[1Sam 1:24](#)];

42 And when he was twelve years old, they went up to Jerusalem after the custom of the feast.

43 And when they had fulfilled the days, as they returned, the child Yahushua tarried behind in Jerusalem; and Joseph and his mother knew not *of it*.

44 But they, supposing him to have been in the company, went a day's journey; and they sought him among *their* kinsfolk and acquaintance.

45 And when they found him not, they turned back again to Jerusalem, seeking him.

46 And it came to pass, that after three days they found him in the temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, both hearing them, and asking them questions.

47 And all that heard him were astonished at his understanding and answers. [Matt 7:28](#); [Mark 1:22](#); [Luke 4:22](#); [Luke 4:32](#); [John 7:15](#);

48 And when they saw him, they were amazed: and his mother said unto him, Son, why have you thus dealt with us? behold, thy father and I have sought you sorrowing.

49 And he said unto them, **How is it that you sought me? wist you not that I must be about my Father's business?**

50 And they understood not the saying which he spoke unto them. [Luke 9:45](#); [Luke 18:34](#);

and is obedient to his parents

51 And he went down with them, and came to Nazareth, and was subject unto them: but his mother kept all these sayings in her heart.

52 And Yahushua increased in wisdom and stature, and in favor with Elohim and man. [1Sam 2:26](#); [Luke 1:80](#);

The preaching and baptism of John

- 1** Now in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar, Pontius Pilate being governor of Judaea, and Herod being tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip tetrarch of Ituraea and of the region of Trachonitis, and Lysanias the tetrarch of Abilene, [\[Luke 23:7\]](#);
- 2** Annas and Caiaphas being the high priests, the word of Elohim came unto John the son of Zacharias in the wilderness. [Acts 4:6](#); [\[John 18:13\]](#); [\[Acts 13:24\]](#);
- 3** And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins; [Matt 3:1](#); [Mark 1:4](#); [\[Luke 1:77\]](#); [\[John 1:6\]](#);
- 4** As it is written in the book of the words of Esaias the prophet, saying, **The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare you the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.** [Isa 40:3](#); [Matt 3:3](#); [Mark 1:3](#); [John 1:23](#);
- 5** **Every valley shall be filled, and every mountain and hill shall be brought low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough ways *shall be* made smooth;**
- 6** **And all flesh shall see the salvation of Elohim.** [Ps 98:2](#); [Isa 52:10](#);
- 7** Then said he to the multitude that came forth to be baptized of him, O generation of vipers, who has warned you to flee from the wrath to come? [Matt 3:7](#); [Matt 23:33](#); [\[Mark 1:5\]](#); [\[John 3:23\]](#);
- 8** Bring forth therefore fruits worthy of repentance, and begin not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham to *our* father: for I say unto you, That Elohim is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham. [Matt 3:9](#); [John 8:39](#); [Acts 13:26](#); [\[Matt 3:8\]](#);
- 9** And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: every tree therefore which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. [Matt 3:10](#); [Matt 7:19](#);
- 10** And the people asked him, saying, What shall we do then? [Acts 2:37](#); [\[Acts 9:6\]](#); [\[Acts 16:30\]](#);
- 11** He answereth and saith unto them, He that has two coats, let him impart to him that has none; and he that has meat, let him do likewise. [Jas 2:13](#); [Jas 2:15](#); [1John 3:17](#);
- 12** Then came also publicans to be baptized, and said unto him, Master, what shall we do?
- 13** And he said unto them, Exact no more than that which is appointed you.
- 14** And the soldiers likewise demanded of him, saying, And what shall we do? And he said unto them, Do violence to no man, neither accuse *any* falsely; and be content with your wages.

his testimony of Yahushua

- 15** And as the people were in expectation, and all men mused in their hearts of John, whether he were the Messiah, or not;
- 16** John answered, saying unto *them* all, I indeed baptize you with water; but one mightier than I cometh, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to unloose: he shall baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire: [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:8](#); [John 1:26](#); [Acts 1:5](#); [Acts 11:16](#); [Acts 19:4](#); [Isa 44:3](#); [Joel 2:28](#); [Acts 2:4](#); [Acts 11:15](#); [\[Mark 1:7\]](#); [\[John 1:15\]](#); [\[John 3:26\]](#);
- 17** Whose fan *is* in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and will gather the wheat into his garner; but the chaff he will burn with fire unquenchable. [Matt 3:12](#);
- 18** And many other things in his exhortation preached he unto the people.

Herod imprisons John

- 19** But Herod the tetrarch, being reprov'd by him for Herodias his brother Philip's wife, and for all the evils which Herod had done, [Matt 14:3](#); [Mark 6:18](#); [\[Mark 6:17\]](#);
- 20** Added yet this above all, that he shut up John in prison.

Yahushua, baptized, receives testimony from heaven

- 21** Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Yahushua also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened, [Matt 3:13](#); [Mark 1:9](#); [John 1:32](#); [\[Mark 1:10\]](#);

22 And the Holy Spirit descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, you are my beloved Son; in you I am well pleased. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 9:7](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [[Mark 1:11](#)]; [[John 1:32](#)]; [[John 5:37](#)]; [[John 6:27](#)]; [[John 8:18](#)];

The age and genealogy of Yahushua from Joseph upwards

23 And Yahushua himself began to be about thirty years of age, (being as was supposed the son of Joseph), *grandson* of Heli, [Matt 13:55](#); [John 6:42](#);

24 Which was of Matthat, which was of Levi, which was of Melchi, which was of Janna, which was of Joseph,

25 Which was of Mattathias, which was of Amos, which was of Naum, which was of Esli, which was of Nagge,

26 Which was of Maath, which was of Mattathias, which was of Semei, which was of Joseph, which was of Juda,

27 Which was of Joanna, which was of Rhesa, which was of Zorobabel, which was of Salathiel, which was of Neri,

28 Which was of Melchi, which was of Addi, which was of Cosam, which was of Elmodam, which was of Er,

29 Which was of Jose, which was of Eliezer, which was of Jorim, which was of Matthat, which was of Levi,

30 Which was of Simeon, which was of Juda, which was of Joseph, which was of Jonan, which was of Eliakim,

31 Which was of Melea, which was of Menan, which was of Mattatha, which was of Nathan, which was of David,

32 Which was of Jesse, which was of Obed, which was of Booz, which was of Salmon, which was of Naasson,

33 Which was of Aminadab, which was of Aram, which was of Esrom, which was of Phares, which was of Juda,

34 Which was of Jacob, which was of Isaac, which was of Abraham, which was of Thara, which was of Nachor, [Gen 11:10-25](#);

35 Which was of Saruch, which was of Ragau, which was of Phalec, which was of Heber, which was of Sala,

36 Which was of Arphaxad, which was of Sem, which was of Noe, which was of Lamech, [[1Chr 1:24](#)];

37 Which was of Mathusala, which was of Enoch, which was of Jared, which was of Maleleel, which was of Cainan,

38 Which was of Enos, which was of Seth, which was of Adam, which was of Elohim. [Gen 5:3](#);

LUKE FOUR

The temptation and fasting of Yahushua

1 And Yahushua being full of the Holy Spirit returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness, [Matt 4:1](#); [Mark 1:12](#);

2 Being forty days tempted of the devil. And in those days he did eat nothing: and when they were ended, he afterward hungered. [Exod 34:28](#); [1Kgs 19:8](#);

3 And the devil said unto him, If you be the Son of Elohim, command this stone that it be made bread.

4 And Yahushua answered him, saying, **It is written, That man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of Elohim.** [Deut 8:3](#); [Matt 4:4](#);

5 And the devil, taking him up into a high mountain, showed unto him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time.

6 And the devil said unto him, All this power will I give you, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it.

7 If you therefore will worship me, all shall be thine.

8 And Yahushua answered and said unto him, **Get you behind me, Satan: for it is written, you shall worship the Lord thy Elohim, and Him only shall you serve.** [Deut 6:13](#); [Deut 10:20](#); [1Sam 7:3](#);

9 And he brought him to Jerusalem, and set him on a pinnacle of the temple, and said unto him, If you be the Son of Elohim, cast thyself down from hence:

10 For it is written, **He shall give his angels charge over you, to keep you:** [Ps 91:11](#);

11 And in their hands they shall bear you up, lest at any time you dash thy foot against a stone. [\[Ps 91:12\]](#);

12 And Yahushua answering said unto him, **It is said, you shall not tempt the Lord thy Elohim.** [Deut 6:16](#);

13 And when the devil had ended all the temptation, he departed from him for a season.

He begins to preach

14 And Yahushua returned in the power of the Spirit into Galilee: and there went out a fame of him through all the region round about. [Matt 4:12](#); [Mark 1:14](#); [John 4:43](#); [Acts 10:37](#);

15 And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of all.

The people of Nazareth admire his gracious words, but being offended, seek to kill him

16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day, and stood up for to read. [Matt 13:54](#); [Mark 6:1](#); [John 4:43](#); [Neh 8:4-5](#); [\[Matt 4:12\]](#); [\[Matt 13:53\]](#);

17 And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written, [\[Isa 61:1\]](#);

18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he has sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, [Isa 61:1](#); [Matt 11:5](#); [Isa 42:7](#); [Isa 61:1-2](#); [\[Mark 1:38\]](#); [\[John 20:21\]](#); [\[Acts 10:38\]](#);

19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

20 And he closed the book, and he gave it again to the minister, and sat down. And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on him.

21 And he began to say unto them, **This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.**

22 And all bore him witness, and wondered at the gracious words which proceeded out of his mouth. And they said, Is not this Joseph's son? [Isa 50:4](#); [Matt 13:54](#); [Mark 6:2](#); [Luke 2:47](#); [John 6:42](#); [\[John 7:27\]](#);

23 And he said unto them, you will surely say unto me this proverb, Physician, heal thyself: whatsoever we have heard done in Capernaum, do also here in thy country. [Matt 4:13](#);

24 And he said, Verily I say unto you, No prophet is accepted in his own country. [Matt 13:57](#); [Mark 6:4](#); [John 4:44](#);

25 But I tell you of a truth, many widows were in Israel in the days of Elias, when the heaven was shut up three years and six months, when great famine was throughout all the land; [1Kgs 17:7](#); [Jas 5:17](#); [[1Kgs 17:9](#)];

26 But unto none of them was Elias sent, save unto Sarepta, a city of Sidon, unto a woman that was a widow.

27 And many lepers were in Israel in the time of Eliseus the prophet; and none of them was cleansed, saving Naaman the Syrian. [2Kgs 5:14](#);

28 And all they in the synagogue, when they heard these things, were filled with wrath,

29 And rose up, and thrust him out of the city, and led him unto the brow of the hill whereon their city was built, that they might cast him down headlong. [[John 8:59](#)]; [[John 10:39](#)]; [[Acts 7:58](#)];

30 But he passing through the midst of them went his way,

31 And came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and taught them on the Sabbath days. [Matt 4:13](#); [Mark 1:21](#); [[Matt 4:12](#)];

32 And they were astonished at his doctrine: for his word was with power. [Matt 7:29](#); [Mark 1:22](#); [[Luke 2:47](#)];

He cures one possessed of a devil

33 And in the synagogue there was a man, which had a spirit of an unclean devil, and cried out with a loud voice, [Mark 1:23](#);

34 Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with you, you Yahushua of Nazareth? are you come to destroy us? I know you who you are; the Holy One of Elohim.

35 And Yahushua rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him. And when the devil had thrown him in the midst, he came out of him, and hurt him not.

36 And they were all amazed, and spoke among themselves, saying, What a word is this! for with authority and power he commandeth the unclean spirits, and they come out.

37 And the fame of him went out into every place of the country round about.

Peter's mother-in-law

38 And he arose out of the synagogue, and entered into Simon's house. And Simon's wife's mother was taken with a great fever; and they besought him for her. [Matt 8:14](#); [Mark 1:29](#);

39 And he stood over her, and rebuked the fever; and it left her: and immediately she arose and ministered unto them.

and various other sick persons

40 Now when the sun was setting, all they that had any sick with various diseases brought them unto him; and he laid his hands on every one of them, and healed them. [Matt 8:16](#); [Mark 1:32](#); [Mark 7:32](#); [Mark 8:23](#); [Mark 8:25](#);

The demons acknowledge Yahushua, and are reproved for it

41 And demons also came out of many, crying out, and saying, you are the Messiah the Son of Elohim. And he rebuking them suffered them not to speak: for they knew that he was the Messiah. [Mark 1:34](#); [Mark 3:11](#);

He preaches through the cities of Galilee

42 And when it was day, he departed and went into a desert place: and the people sought him, and came unto him, and stayed him, that he should not depart from them. [Mark 1:35](#);

43 And he said unto them, I must preach the kingdom of Elohim to other cities also: for therefore am I sent. [[Mark 1:38](#)];

44 And he preached in the synagogues of Galilee.

Yahushua teaches the people out of Peter's boat

1 And it came to pass, that, as the people pressed upon him to hear the word of Elohim, he stood by the lake of Gennesaret, [Matt 13:2](#); [Mark 4:1](#);

2 And saw two boats standing by the lake: but the fishermen were gone out of them, and were washing *their* nets.

3 And he entered into one of the boats, which was Simon's, and prayed him that he would thrust out a little from the land. And he sat down, and taught the people out of the boat. [\[Matt 13:2\]](#);

in a miraculous taking of fishes, shows how he will make him and his partners fishers of men

4 Now when he had left speaking, he said unto Simon, **Launch out into the deep, and let down your nets for a draught.** [John 21:6](#);

5 And Simon answering said unto him, Master, we have toiled all the night, and have taken nothing: nevertheless at thy word I will let down the net.

6 And when they had this done, they inclosed a great multitude of fishes: and their net brake. [\[John 21:6\]](#);

7 And they beckoned unto *their* partners, which were in the other boat, that they should come and help them. And they came, and filled both the boats, so that they began to sink.

8 When Simon Peter saw *it*, he fell down at Yahushua's knees, saying, Depart from me; for I am a sinful man, O Lord.

9 For he was astonished, and all that were with him, at the draught of the fishes which they had taken:

10 And so *was* also James, and John, the sons of Zebedee, which were partners with Simon. And Yahushua said unto Simon, **Fear not; from henceforth you shall catch men.** [Jer 16:16](#); [Ezek 47:9](#); [Matt 4:19](#); [Mark 1:17](#);

11 And when they had brought their boats to land, they forsook all, and followed him. [Matt 4:20](#); [Matt 19:27](#); [Mark 10:28](#); [Luke 18:28](#); [\[Mark 1:18\]](#);

cleanses the leper

12 And it came to pass, when he was in a certain city, behold a man full of leprosy: who seeing Yahushua fell on *his* face, and besought him, saying, Lord, if you wilt, you canst make me clean. [Matt 8:2](#); [Mark 1:40](#);

13 And he put forth *his* hand, and touched him, saying, **I will: be you clean.** And immediately the leprosy departed from him.

14 And he charged him to **tell no man: but go, and show thyself to the priest, and offer for thy cleansing, according as Moses commanded, for a testimony unto them.** [Lev 13:2](#); [Lev 14:2](#); [Matt 8:4](#); [\[Matt 9:30\]](#); [\[Matt 12:16\]](#); [\[Luke 17:14\]](#);

15 But so much the more went there a fame abroad of him: and great multitudes came together to hear, and to be healed by him of their infirmities.

prays in the wilderness

16 And he withdrew himself into the wilderness, and prayed.

heals one sick of the palsy

17 And it came to pass on a certain day, as he was teaching, that there were Pharisees and doctors of the law sitting by, which were come out of every town of Galilee, and Judaea, and Jerusalem: and the power of the Lord was *present* to heal them. [\[Mark 2:1\]](#);

18 And, behold, men brought in a bed a man which was taken with a palsy: and they sought *means* to bring him in, and to lay *him* before him. [Matt 9:1](#); [Mark 2:3](#); [Acts 9:33](#); [[Matt 9:2](#)];

19 And when they could not find by what *way* they might bring him in because of the multitude, they went upon the housetop, and let him down through the tiling with *his* couch into the midst before Yahushua.

20 And when he saw their faith, he said unto him, **Man, thy sins are forgiven you.**

21 And the scribes and the Pharisees began to reason, saying, Who is this which speaketh blasphemies? Who can forgive sins, but Elohim alone? [Ps 32:5](#); [Isa 43:25](#);

22 But when Yahushua perceived their thoughts, he answering said unto them, **What reason you in your hearts?**

23 **Whether is easier, to say, Thy sins be forgiven you; or to say, Rise up and walk?**

24 **But that you may know that the Son of man has power upon earth to forgive sins,** (he said unto the sick of the palsy,) **I say unto you, Arise, and take up thy couch, and go into thine house.**

25 And immediately he rose up before them, and took up that whereon he lay, and departed to his own house, glorifying Elohim.

26 And they were all amazed, and they glorified Elohim, and were filled with fear, saying, We have seen strange things to day.

calls Matthew the Publican

27 And after these things he went forth, and saw a publican, named Levi, sitting at the receipt of custom: and he said unto him, **Follow me.** [Matt 9:9](#); [Mark 2:14-15](#); [[Mark 2:13](#)];

28 And he left all, rose up, and followed him.

eats with sinners, as being the physician of beings

29 And Levi made him a great feast in his own house: and there was a great company of publicans and of others that sat down with them. [Matt 9:10](#); [Mark 2:15](#); [Luke 15:1](#); [[Acts 16:34](#)];

30 But their scribes and Pharisees murmured against his disciples, saying, Why do you eat and drink with publicans and sinners?

31 And Yahushua answering said unto them, **They that are whole need not a physician; but they that are sick.**

32 **I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.** [Matt 9:13](#); [Luke 19:10](#); [1Tim 1:15](#); [[Mark 2:17](#)]; [[Luke 15:7](#)];

foretells the fastings and afflictions of the apostles after his ascension

33 And they said unto him, Why do the disciples of John fast often, and make prayers, and likewise *the disciples* of the Pharisees; but thine eat and drink? [Matt 9:14](#); [[Matt 6:16](#)]; [[Mark 2:18](#)];

34 And he said unto them, **Can you make the children of the bridechamber fast, while the bridegroom is with them?** [Isa 62:5](#); [2Cor 11:2](#);

35 **But the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then shall they fast in those days.**

and illustrates the matter by the parable of old bottles and worn garments

36 And he spoke also a parable unto them; **No man puts a piece of a new garment upon an old; if he does, not only will the new one rip, but the piece from the new will not match the old.**

37 **And no man puts new wine into old bottles; else the new wine will burst the bottles, and be spilled, and the bottles shall perish.** [Matt 9:17](#); [Mark 2:22](#);

38 **But new wine must be put into new bottles; and both are preserved.**

39 **No man also having drunk old *wine* immediately desireth new: for he saith, The old is better.**

LUKE SIX

Yahushua reproves the Pharisees

1 And it came to pass on the second Sabbath after the first, that he went through the corn fields; and his disciples plucked the ears of corn, and did eat, rubbing *them* in *their* hands. [Deut 23:25](#); [Matt 12:1](#); [Mark 2:23](#); [\[John 9:14\]](#);

2 And certain of the Pharisees said unto them, Why do you that which is not lawful to do on the Sabbath days? [Exod 20:10](#); [\[John 5:10\]](#);

3 And Yahushua answering them said, **Have you not read so much as this, what David did, when himself was a hungered, and they which were with him;** [1Sam 21:6](#);

4 **How he went into the house of Elohim, and did take and eat the showbread, and gave also to them that were with him; which it is not lawful to eat but for the priests alone?** [Lev 24:9](#);

5 And he said unto them, That **the Son of man is Lord also of the Sabbath.** [Matt 12:8](#); [Mark 2:28](#);

6 And it came to pass also on another Sabbath, that he entered into the synagogue and taught: and there was a man whose right hand was withered. [Matt 12:9](#); [Mark 3:1](#);

7 And the scribes and Pharisees watched him, whether he would heal on the Sabbath; that they might find an accusation against him.

8 But he knew their thoughts, and said to the man which had the withered hand, **Rise up, and stand forth in the midst.** And he arose and stood forth.

9 Then said Yahushua unto them, **I will ask you one thing; Is it lawful on the Sabbath days to do good, or to do evil? to save life, or to destroy it?**

10 And looking round about upon them all, he said unto the man, **Stretch forth thy hand.** And he did so: and his hand was restored whole as the other. [2Sam 13:6](#);

11 And they were filled with madness; and communed one with another what they might do to Yahushua.

chooses apostles

12 And it came to pass in those days, that he went out into a mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to Elohim. [Matt 14:23](#); [\[Mark 6:46\]](#);

13 And when it was day, he called *unto him* his disciples: and of them he chose twelve, whom also he named apostles; [Matt 10:1](#); [Mark 3:13](#); [Mark 6:7](#); [Luke 9:1](#); [\[John 6:70\]](#);

14 Simon, (whom he also named Peter,) and Andrew his brother, James and John, Philip and Bartholomew,

15 Matthew and Thomas, James the *son* of Alphaeus, and Simon called Zelotes,

16 And Judas *the brother* of James, and Judas Iscariot, which also was the traitor. [\[Acts 1:17\]](#);

heals the diseased

17 And he came down with them, and stood in the plain, and the company of his disciples, and a great multitude of people out of all Judaea and Jerusalem, and from the sea coast of Tyre and Sidon, which came to hear him, and to be healed of their diseases; [Matt 4:25](#); [Mark 3:7](#);

18 And they that were vexed with unclean spirits: and they were healed.

19 And the whole multitude sought to touch him: for there went virtue out of him, and healed *them* all. [Mark 5:30](#);

preaches to his disciples before the people

20 And he lifted up his eyes on his disciples, and said, **Blessed be you poor: for yours is the kingdom of Elohim.** [Matt 5:2](#); [\[Matt 5:3\]](#);

21 Blessed *are you* that hunger now: for you shall be filled. Blessed *are you* that weep now: for you shall laugh. Isa 65:13; Isa 61:3; Isa 66:10; [Matt 5:4];

22 Blessed are you, when men shall hate you, and when they shall separate you *from their company*, and shall reproach *you*, and cast out your name as evil, for the Son of man's sake. Matt 5:11; 1Pet 2:19; 1Pet 3:14; 1Pet 4:14;

23 Rejoice you in that day, and leap for joy: for, behold, your reward *is* great in heaven: for in the like manner did their fathers unto the prophets. Acts 5:41; Acts 7:51; [Matt 5:12];

24 But woe unto you that are rich! for you have received your consolation. Amos 6:1; Amos 6:8; [Jas 5:1];

25 Woe unto you that are full! for you shall hunger. Woe unto you that laugh now! for you shall mourn and weep. Isa 65:13; Jas 4:9; Jas 5:1;

26 Woe *unto you*, when all people shall speak well of you! for so did their fathers to the false prophets.

27 But I say unto you which hear, Love your enemies, do good to them which hate you, Exod 23:4; Prov 25:21; Matt 5:44; Rom 12:20; 1Cor 4:12; [Lev 19:18];

28 Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you. Luke 23:34; Acts 7:60; [1Cor 4:12];

29 And unto him that smiteth you on the *one* cheek offer also the other; and him that taketh away thy cloke forbid not *to take thy* coat also. 1Cor 6:7; [Matt 5:39]; [Rom 12:19];

30 Give to every man that asketh of you; and of him that taketh away thy goods ask *them* not again. Deut 15:7; Matt 5:42;

31 And as you would that men should do to you, do you also to them likewise. Matt 7:12;

32 For if you love them which love you, what thank have you? for sinners also love those that love them. Matt 5:46;

33 And if you do good to them which do good to you, what thank have you? for sinners also do even the same.

34 And if you lend *to them* of whom you hope to receive, what thank have you? for sinners also lend to sinners, to receive as much again. Deut 15:8; Matt 5:42; [Deut 23:19];

35 But love you your enemies, and do good, and lend, hoping for nothing again; and your reward shall be great, and you shall be the children of the Highest: for he is kind unto the unthankful and *to* the evil. Matt 5:45; [Deut 15:10]; [Matt 5:42];

36 Be you therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful.

37 And judge not, and you shall not be judged: condemn not, and you shall not be condemned: forgive, and you shall be forgiven: Matt 7:1; Rom 2:1; 1Cor 4:5; [Jas 3:1];

38 Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that you mete withal it shall be measured to you again. Prov 10:22; Prov 19:17; Matt 7:2; Mark 4:24; [Prov 14:22];

39 And he spoke a parable unto them, Can the blind lead the blind? shall they not both fall into the ditch? Isa 42:19; Matt 15:14;

40 The disciple is not above his master: but every one that is perfect shall be as his master. Matt 10:24; John 13:16; John 15:20;

41 And why beholdest you the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but perceivest not the beam that is in thine own eye? Matt 7:3;

42 Either how canst you say to thy brother, Brother, let me pull out the mote that is in thine eye, when you thyself beholdest not the beam that is in thine own eye? you hypocrite, cast out first the beam out of thine own eye, and then shall you see clearly to pull out the mote that is in thy brother's eye. Prov 18:17;

43 For a good tree bringeth not forth corrupt fruit; neither does a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. Matt 7:17; Matt 12:33;

44 For every tree is known by his own fruit. For of thorns men do not gather figs, nor of a bramble bush gather they grapes. Matt 7:16;

45 A good man out of the good treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart bringeth forth that which is evil: for of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaketh. Matt 12:35; Matt 12:34;

46 And why call you me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say? [Mal 1:6](#); [Matt 7:21](#); [Matt 25:11](#); [Luke 13:25](#); [Rom 2:13](#); [Jas 1:22](#);

47 Whosoever cometh to me, and heareth my sayings, and doeth them, I will show you to whom he is like: [Matt 7:24](#); [[Jas 1:23](#)];

48 He is like a man which built a house, and digged deep, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock.

49 But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built a house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great.

Yahushua finds a greater faith in the centurion, a Gentile than in any of the Jews

- 1** Now when he had ended all his sayings in the audience of the people, he entered into Capernaum. [Matt 8:5](#);
- 2** And a certain centurion's servant, who was dear unto him, was sick, and ready to die.
- 3** And when he heard of Yahushua, he sent unto him the elders of the Jews, beseeching him that he would come and heal his servant.
- 4** And when they came to Yahushua, they besought him instantly, saying, That he was worthy for whom he should do this:
- 5** For he loveth our nation, and he has built us a synagogue.
- 6** Then Yahushua went with them. And when he was now not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to him, saying unto him, Lord, trouble not thyself: for I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof:
- 7** Wherefore neither thought I myself worthy to come unto you: but say in a word, and my servant shall be healed.
- 8** For I also am a man set under authority, having under me soldiers, and I say unto one, Go, and he goes; and to another, Come, and he cometh; and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth *it*.
- 9** When Yahushua heard these things, he marvelled at him, and turned him about, and said unto the people that followed him, **I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel.**

heals his servant, being absent

- 10** And they that were sent, returning to the house, found the servant whole that had been sick.

raises from death the widow's son at Nain

- 11** And it came to pass the day after, that he went into a city called Nain; and many of his disciples went with him, and much people.
- 12** Now when he came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow: and much people of the city was with her.
- 13** And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her, and said unto her, **Weep not.**
- 14** And he came and touched the bier: and they that bore *him* stood still. And he said, **Young man, I say unto you, Arise.** [Acts 9:40](#);
- 15** And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.
- 16** And there came a fear on all: and they glorified Elohim, saying, That a great prophet is risen up among us; and, That Elohim has visited his people. [Luke 24:19](#); [John 4:19](#); [John 6:14](#); [John 9:17](#); [Luke 1:68](#); [[Matt 21:46](#)]; [[John 7:12](#)]; [[John 7:40](#)];
- 17** And this rumour of him went forth throughout all Judaea, and throughout all the region round about.

answers John's messengers with the declaration of his miracles

- 18** And the disciples of John showed him of all these things. [Matt 11:2](#);
- 19** And John calling *unto him* two of his disciples sent *them* to Yahushua, saying, are you he that should come? or look we for another?
- 20** When the men were come unto him, they said, John Baptist has sent us unto you, saying, are you he that should come? or look we for another?
- 21** And in that same hour he cured many of *their* infirmities and plagues, and of evil spirits; and unto many *that were* blind he gave sight.

22 Then Yahushua answering said unto them, Go your way, and tell John what things you have seen and heard; how that the blind see, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, to the poor the gospel is preached. [Isa 29:18; Isa 35:5; Isa 61:1; \[Matt 15:30\];](#)

23 And blessed is *he*, whosoever shall not be offended in me.

testifies to the people what opinion he held of John

24 And when the messengers of John were departed, he began to speak unto the people concerning John, What went you out into the wilderness for to see? A reed shaken with the wind? [Matt 11:7;](#)

25 But what went you out for to see? A man clothed in soft raiment? Behold, they which are gorgeously appparelled, and live delicately, are in kings' courts.

26 But what went you out for to see? A prophet? yes, I say unto you, and much more than a prophet.

27 This is *he*, of whom it is written, **Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before you.** [Mal 3:1; Mark 1:2; \[Matt 11:10\]; \[John 1:6\]; \[John 3:28\];](#)

28 For I say unto you, Among those that are born of women there is not a greater prophet than John the Baptist: but he that is least in the kingdom of Elohim is greater than he.

29 And all the people that heard *him*, and the publicans, justified Elohim, being baptized with the baptism of John.

30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of Elohim against themselves, being not baptized of him.

inveighs against the Jews, who with neither the manners of John nor of Yahushua could be won

31 Whereunto then shall I liken the men of this generation, and what are they like? [Matt 11:16;](#)

32 They are like unto children sitting in the marketplace, and calling one to another, and saying, We have piped unto you, and you have not danced; we have mourned to you, and you have not wept.

33 For John the Baptist came neither eating bread nor drinking wine; and you say, He has a devil. [Matt 3:4; Mark 1:6;](#)

34 The Son of man is come eating and drinking; and you say, Behold a gluttonous man, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners!

35 But wisdom is justified of all her children.

and suffering his feet to be washed and anointed by a woman who was a sinner, he shows how he is a friend to sinners, to forgive them their sins, upon their repentance

36 And one of the Pharisees desired him that he would eat with him. And he went into the Pharisee's house, and he reclined. [Matt 26:6; Mark 14:3; John 11:2; John 12:3;](#)

37 And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that *Yahushua* reclined in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment, [\[Matt 26:7\]; \[Mark 14:3\]; \[John 11:2\]; \[John 12:1\];](#)

38 And stood at his feet behind *him* weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe *them* with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed *them* with the ointment. [\[1Tim 5:10\];](#)

39 Now when the Pharisee which had invited him saw *it*, he spoke within himself, saying, This man, if he were a prophet, would have known who and what manner of woman *this is* that toucheth him: for she is a sinner. [Luke 15:2;](#)

40 And Yahushua answering said unto him, **Simon, I have somewhat to say unto you.** And he saith, Master, say on.

41 There was a certain creditor which had two debtors: the one owed five hundred pence, and the other fifty.

42 And when they had nothing to pay, he frankly forgave them both. Tell me therefore, which of them will love him most?

43 Simon answered and said, I suppose that *he*, to whom he forgave most. And he said unto him, you have rightly judged.

44 And he turned to the woman, and said unto Simon, Seest you this woman? I entered into thine house, you gave me no water for my feet: but she has washed my feet with tears, and wiped *them* with the hairs of her head. [1Tim 5:10];

45 you gave me no kiss: but this woman since the time I came in has not ceased to kiss my feet.

46 My head with oil you didst not anoint: but this woman has anointed my feet with ointment.

47 Wherefore I say unto you, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little. [Rom 5:20];

48 And he said unto her, Thy sins are forgiven. Matt 9:2;

49 And they that sat at meat with him began to say within themselves, Who is this that forgiveth sins also? Matt 9:3;

50 And he said to the woman, Thy faith has saved you; go in peace.

Women minister unto Yahushua of their substance

1 And it came to pass afterward, that he went throughout every city and village, preaching and showing the glad tidings of the kingdom of Elohim: and the twelve *were* with him,

2 And certain women, which had been healed of evil spirits and infirmities, Mary called Magdalene, out of whom went seven demons, [Matt 27:55-56](#); [Mark 16:9](#); [[Matt 27:55](#)]; [[Mark 15:41](#)]; [[Luke 23:55](#)];

3 And Joanna the wife of Chuza Herod's steward, and Susanna, and many others, which ministered unto him of their substance.

Yahushua, after he had preached from place to place, attended by his apostles, propounds the parable of the sower

4 And when much people were gathered together, and were come to him out of every city, he spoke by a parable: [Matt 13:3](#); [Mark 4:2](#); [[Matt 13:1](#)]; [[Mark 4:1](#)];

5 A sower went out to sow his seed: and as he sowed, some fell by the way side; and it was trodden down, and the fowls of the air devoured it.

6 And some fell upon a rock; and as soon as it was sprung up, it withered away, because it lacked moisture.

7 And some fell among thorns; and the thorns sprang up with it, and choked it.

8 And other fell on good ground, and sprang up, and bore fruit a hundredfold. And when he had said these things, he cried, *He that has ears to hear, let him hear.* [[Matt 7:17](#)];

9 And his disciples asked him, saying, What might this parable be? [Matt 13:10](#); [Mark 4:10](#);

10 And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of Elohim: but to others in parables; that **seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand.** [2Cor 3:5](#); [Matt 11:25](#); [2Cor 3:14](#); [Isa 6:9](#); [Ezek 12:2](#); [Matt 13:14](#); [Mark 4:12](#); [John 12:40](#); [Acts 28:26](#); [Rom 11:8](#);

11 Now the parable is this: The seed is the word of Elohim. [Matt 13:18](#); [Mark 4:13](#); [[Mark 4:14](#)];

12 Those by the way side are they that hear; then cometh the devil, and taketh away the word out of their hearts, lest they should believe and be saved.

13 They on the rock *are they*, which, when they hear, receive the word with joy; and these have no root, which for a while believe, and in time of temptation fall away. [Matt 13:20](#); [Mark 4:16](#);

14 And that which fell among thorns are they, which, when they have heard, go forth, and are choked with cares and riches and pleasures of *this* life, and bring no fruit to perfection. [Matt 19:23](#); [Mark 10:23](#); [Luke 18:24](#); [1Tim 6:9](#); [[1Tim 6:17](#)];

15 But that on the good ground are they, which in a honest and good heart, having heard the word, keep *it*, and bring forth fruit with patience.

and the candle

16 No man, when he has lighted a candle, covereth it with a vessel, or puts *it* under a bed; but setteth *it* on a candlestick, that they which enter in may see the light. [Matt 5:15](#); [Mark 4:21](#); [Luke 11:33](#);

17 For nothing is secret, that shall not be made manifest; neither *any thing* hid, that shall not be known and come abroad. [Job 12:22](#); [Matt 10:26](#); [Mark 4:22](#); [Luke 12:2](#);

18 Take heed therefore how you hear: for whosoever has, to him shall be given; and whosoever has not, from him shall be taken even that which he seemeth to have. [Matt 13:12](#); [Matt 25:29](#); [Mark 4:25](#); [Luke 19:26](#);

declares who are his mother, and brethren

19 Then came to him *his* mother and his brethren, and could not come near him because of the crowd. [Matt 12:46](#); [Matt 13:55](#); [Mark 3:31](#);

20 And it was told him *by certain* which said, Thy mother and thy brethren stand without, desiring to see you. [[Matt 12:46](#)];

21 And he answered and said unto them, **My mother and my brethren are these which hear the word of Elohim, and do it.** [John 15:14](#); [2Cor 5:16](#);

rebukes the winds

22 Now it came to pass on a certain day, that he went into a boat with his disciples: and he said unto them, **Let us go over unto the other side of the lake.** And they launched forth. [Matt 8:23](#); [Mark 4:35-36](#); [[Mark 4:35](#)];

23 But as they sailed he fell asleep: and there came down a storm of wind on the lake; and they were filled *with water*; and were in jeopardy.

24 And they came to him, and awoke him, saying, Master, master, we perish. Then he arose, and rebuked the wind and the raging of the water: and they ceased, and there was a calm.

25 And he said unto them, **Where is your faith?** And they being afraid wondered, saying one to another, What manner of man is this! for he commandeth even the winds and water, and they obey him. [Job 26:12](#); [Ps 107:25](#);

casts the legion of demons out of the man into the herd of swine

26 And they arrived at the country of the Gadarenes, which is over against Galilee. [Matt 8:28](#); [Mark 5:1](#);

27 And when he went forth to land, there met him out of the city a certain man, which had demons long time, and ware no clothes, neither abode in *any* house, but in the tombs.

28 When he saw Yahushua, he cried out, and fell down before him, and with a loud voice said, What have I to do with you, Yahushua, you Son of Elohim most high? I beseech you, torment me not.

29 (For he had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For oftentimes it had caught him: and he was kept bound with chains and in fetters; and he brake the bands, and was driven of the devil into the wilderness.)

30 And Yahushua asked him, saying, **What is thy name?** And he said, Legion: because many demons were entered into him.

31 And they besought him that he would not command them to go out into the deep. [[Rev 9:1](#)];

32 And there was there a herd of many swine feeding on the mountain: and they besought him that he would suffer them to enter into them. And he suffered them.

33 Then went the demons out of the man, and entered into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the lake, and were choked.

34 When they that fed *them* saw what was done, they fled, and went and told *it* in the city and in the country.

35 Then they went out to see what was done; and came to Yahushua, and found the man, out of whom the demons were departed, sitting at the feet of Yahushua, clothed, and in his right mind: and they were afraid.

36 They also which saw *it* told them by what means he that was possessed of the demons was healed.

is rejected of the Gadarenes,

37 Then the whole multitude of the country of the Gadarenes round about besought him to depart from them; for they were taken with great fear: and he went up into the boat, and returned back again. [Acts 16:39](#);

38 Now the man out of whom the demons were departed besought him that he might be with him: but Yahushua sent him away, saying, [Mark 5:18](#);

39 **Return to thine own house, and show how great things Elohim has done unto you.** And he went his way, and published throughout the whole city how great things Yahushua had done unto him.

40 And it came to pass, that, when Yahushua was returned, the people *gladly* received him: for they were all waiting for him. [[Mark 5:21](#)];

41 And, behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue: and he fell down at Yahushua's feet, and besought him that he would come into his house: [Matt 9:18](#); [Mark 5:22](#);

42 For he had one only daughter, about twelve years of age, and she lay a dying. But as he went the people thronged him.

heals the woman of her bloody issue

43 And a woman suffering from a hemorrhage for twelve years, who had spent all her living upon physicians, and could not be healed by anyone, [Matt 9:20](#); [Mark 5:25](#); [Lev 15:25](#);

44 Came behind *him*, and touched the border of his garment: and immediately her hemorrhaging stanchd.

45 And Yahushua said, **Who touched me?** When all denied, Peter and they that were with him said, Master, the multitude throng you and press you, and sayest you, **Who touched me?**

46 And Yahushua said, **Somebody has touched me: for I perceive that virtue is gone out of me.**

47 And when the woman saw that she was not hid, she came trembling, and falling down before him, she declared unto him before all the people for what cause she had touched him, and how she was healed immediately.

48 And he said unto her, **Daughter, be of good comfort: thy faith has made you whole; go in peace.** [[Matt 9:22](#)];

and raises from death Jairus's daughter

49 While he yet spoke, there cometh one from the ruler of the synagogue's *house*, saying to him, Thy daughter is dead; trouble not the Master. [Mark 5:35](#);

50 But when Yahushua heard *it*, he answered him, saying, **Fear not: believe only, and she shall be made whole.**

51 And when he came into the house, he suffered no man to go in, save Peter, and James, and John, and the father and the mother of the maiden. [[Matt 9:23](#)];

52 And all wept, and bewailed her: but he said, **Weep not; she is not dead, but sleepeth.** [John 11:11](#);

53 And they laughed him to scorn, knowing that she was dead.

54 And he put them all out, and took her by the hand, and called, saying, **Maid, arise.**

55 And her spirit came again, and she arose immediately: and he commanded to give her meat.

56 And her parents were astonished: but he charged them that they should tell no man what was done.

Yahushua sends his apostles to work miracles, and to preach

- 1** Then he called his twelve *disciples* together, and gave them power and authority over all demons, and to cure diseases. [Matt 10:1](#); [Mark 3:13](#); [Mark 6:7](#); [Luke 6:13](#);
- 2** And he sent them to preach the kingdom of Elohim, and to heal the sick. [Matt 10:7](#);
- 3** And he said unto them, **Take nothing for *your* journey, neither staves, nor scrip, neither bread, neither money; neither have two coats apiece.** [Matt 10:9](#); [Mark 6:8](#); [Luke 22:35](#); [[Luke 10:4](#)];
- 4** And whatsoever house you enter into, there abide, and thence depart. [[Matt 10:11](#)];
- 5** And whosoever will not receive you, when you go out of that city, shake off the very dust from your feet for a testimony against them. [Matt 10:14](#); [Mark 6:11](#); [Luke 10:11](#); [Acts 13:51](#); [Acts 18:6](#); [[Luke 10:10](#)];
- 6** And they departed, and went through the towns, preaching the gospel, and healing every where.

Herod desires to see Yahushua

- 7** Now Herod the tetrarch heard of all that was done by him: and he was perplexed, because that it was said of some, that John was risen from the dead; [Matt 14:1](#); [Mark 6:14](#); [[Luke 23:8](#)];
- 8** And of some, that Elias had appeared; and of others, that one of the old prophets was risen again.
- 9** And Herod said, John have I beheaded: but who is this, of whom I hear such things? And he desired to see him. [[Mark 6:17](#)];

The apostles return

- 10** And the apostles, when they were returned, told him all that they had done. And he took them, and went aside privately into a desert place belonging to the city called Bethsaida. [Mark 6:30](#); [Matt 14:13](#); [Mark 6:31-32](#); [[Mark 6:32](#)];
- 11** And the people, when they knew *it*, followed him: and he received them, and spoke unto them of the kingdom of Elohim, and healed them that had need of healing. [[Mark 6:34](#)];

Yahushua feeds five thousand

- 12** And when the day began to wear away, then came the twelve, and said unto him, Send the multitude away, that they may go into the towns and country round about, and lodge, and get victuals: for we are here in a desert place. [Matt 14:15](#); [Mark 6:35](#); [John 6:5](#);
- 13** But he said unto them, **Give you them to eat.** And they said, We have no more but five loaves and two fishes; except we should go and buy meat for all this people. [Matt 14:16](#); [Mark 6:37](#); [John 6:9](#); [[Matt 16:9](#)]; [[Mark 6:38](#)]; [[Mark 8:19](#)]; [[John 6:5](#)];
- 14** For they were about five thousand men. And he said to his disciples, **Make them sit down by fifties in a company.**
- 15** And they did so, and made them all sit down.
- 16** Then he took the five loaves and the two fishes, and looking up to heaven, he blessed them, and brake, and gave to the disciples to set before the multitude. [1Sam 9:13](#);
- 17** And they did eat, and were all filled: and there was taken up of fragments that remained to them twelve baskets.

enquires what opinion the world had of him; foretells his passion

- 18** And it came to pass, as he was alone praying, his disciples were with him: and he asked them, saying, **Whom say the people that I am?** [Matt 16:13](#); [Mark 8:27](#);
- 19** They answering said, John the Baptist; but some *say*, Elias; and others *say*, that one of the old prophets is risen again. [Matt 14:2](#);

20 He said unto them, **But whom say you that I am?** Peter answering said, the Messiah of Elohim. [John 6:69](#); [\[John 11:27\]](#);

21 And he straitly charged them, and commanded *them* to tell no man that thing;

22 Saying, **The Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be slain, and be raised the third day.** [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 17:22](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 9:31](#); [Mark 10:33](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [Luke 24:7](#); [\[Matt 27:63\]](#); [\[Matt 28:6\]](#); [\[Mark 9:30\]](#); [\[Mark 10:32\]](#); [\[Luke 17:25\]](#); [\[Luke 24:6\]](#); [\[Luke 24:44\]](#);

proposes to all the pattern of his patience

23 And he said to *them* all, **If any *man* will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his stake, and follow me.** [Matt 10:38](#); [Matt 16:24](#); [Mark 8:34](#); [Luke 14:27](#);

24 For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: but whosoever will lose his life for my sake, the same shall save it. [Matt 10:39](#); [Matt 16:25](#); [Mark 8:35](#); [Luke 17:33](#); [John 12:25](#);

25 For what is a man advantaged, if he gain the whole world, and lose himself, or be cast away? [\[Matt 16:26\]](#);

26 For whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he shall come in his own glory, and *in his* Father's, and of the holy angels. [Matt 10:33](#); [Mark 8:38](#); [Luke 12:9](#); [2Tim 2:12](#); [1John 2:23](#); [\[Matt 10:32\]](#);

27 But I tell you of a truth, there be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the kingdom of Elohim. [Matt 16:28](#); [Mark 9:1](#);

The transfiguration

28 And it came to pass about an eight days after these sayings, he took Peter and John and James, and went up into a mountain to pray. [Matt 17:1](#); [Mark 9:2](#);

29 And as he prayed, the fashion of his countenance was altered, and his raiment *was* white *and* glistening.

30 And, behold, there talked with him two men, which were Moses and Elias:

31 Who appeared in glory, and spoke of his decease which he should accomplish at Jerusalem.

32 But Peter and they that were with him were heavy with sleep: and when they were awake, they saw his glory, and the two men that stood with him.

33 And it came to pass, as they departed from him, Peter said unto Yahushua, Master, it is good for us to be here: and let us make three tabernacles; one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elias: not knowing what he said.

34 While he thus spoke, there came a cloud, and overshadowed them: and they feared as they entered into the cloud.

35 And there came a voice out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: hear him. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 1:11](#); [Mark 9:7](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [Col 1:13](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [Deut 18:19](#); [Acts 3:22](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[John 6:27\]](#); [\[John 8:18\]](#);

36 And when the voice was past, Yahushua was found alone. And they kept *it* close, and told no man in those days any of those things which they had seen. [\[Matt 17:9\]](#); [\[Mark 9:9\]](#);

He heals the lunatic

37 And it came to pass, that on the next day, when they were come down from the hill, much people met him. [Matt 17:14](#); [Mark 9:17](#);

38 And, behold, a man of the company cried out, saying, Master, I beseech you, look upon my son: for he is mine only child.

39 And, lo, a spirit taketh him, and he suddenly cries out; and it teareth him that he foameth again, and bruising him hardly departeth from him.

40 And I besought thy disciples to cast him out; and they could not.

41 And Yahushua answering said, **O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you, and suffer you? Bring thy son hither.**

42 And as he was yet a coming, the devil threw him down, and tare *him*. And Yahushua rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the child, and delivered him again to his father.

again forewarns his disciples of his passion

43 And they were all amazed at the mighty power of Elohim. But while they wondered every one at all things which Yahushua did, he said unto his disciples,

44 Let these sayings sink down into your ears: for the Son of man shall be delivered into the hands of men. [Matt 17:22](#); [Mark 9:31](#);

45 But they understood not this saying, and it was hid from them, that they perceived it not: and they feared to ask him of that saying. [Luke 2:50](#); [Luke 18:34](#);

commends humility

46 Then there arose a reasoning among them, which of them should be greatest. [Matt 18:1](#); [Mark 9:33](#); [Luke 22:24](#);

47 And Yahushua, perceiving the thought of their heart, took a child, and set him by him,

48 And said unto them, *Whosoever shall receive this child in my name receiveth me: and whosoever shall receive me receiveth him that sent me: for he that is least among you all, the same shall be great.* [Matt 18:5](#); [Mark 9:37](#); [John 13:20](#); [Luke 10:16](#); [Matt 23:11](#); [Luke 14:11](#); [Luke 18:14](#); [[Luke 22:26](#)];

49 And John answered and said, Master, we saw one casting out demons in thy name; and we forbade him, because he followeth not with us. [Mark 9:38](#);

50 And Yahushua said unto him, *Forbid him not: for he that is not against us is for us.* [Matt 12:30](#); [Luke 11:23](#);

bids them to show mildness towards all, without desire of revenge

51 And it came to pass, when the time was come that he should be received up, he stedfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem, [Mark 16:19](#); [Acts 1:2](#); [1Tim 3:16](#);

52 And sent messengers before his face: and they went, and entered into a village of the Samaritans, to make ready for him. [[John 4:9](#)];

53 And they did not receive him, because his face was as though he would go to Jerusalem. [John 4:9](#);

54 And when his disciples James and John saw *this*, they said, Lord, will you that we command fire to come down from heaven, and consume them, even as Elias did? [2Kgs 1:10](#); [2Kgs 1:12](#);

55 But he turned, and rebuked them, and said, you *know not what manner of spirit you are of.*

56 For the Son of man is not come to destroy men's lives, but to save *them*. And they went to another village. [John 3:17](#); [John 12:47](#);

Various people would follow him, but upon conditions

57 And it came to pass, that, as they went in the way, a certain *man* said unto him, Lord, I will follow you whithersoever you go. [Matt 8:19](#);

58 And Yahushua said unto him, *Foxes have holes, and birds of the air have nests; but the Son of man has not where to lay his head.* [[2Cor 8:9](#)];

59 And he said unto another, *Follow me.* But he said, Lord, suffer me first to go and bury my father. [Matt 8:21](#);

60 Yahushua said unto him, *Let the dead bury their dead: but go you and preach the kingdom of Elohim.* [Matt 8:22](#);

61 And another also said, Lord, I will follow you; but let me first go bid them farewell, which are at home at my house. [1Kgs 19:20](#);

62 And Yahushua said unto him, No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of Elohim. [Prov 26:11](#); [Phil 3:14](#); [Heb 6:5](#); [2Pet 2:20](#);

Yahushua sends out at once seventy disciples to work miracles, and to preach

- 1** After these things the Lord appointed other seventy also, and sent them two and two before his face into every city and place, whither he himself would come.
- 2** Therefore said he unto them, The harvest truly *is* great, but the labourers *are* few: pray you therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he would send forth labourers into his harvest. [Matt 9:37](#); [John 4:35](#); [2Thess 3:1](#);
- 3** Go your ways: behold, I send you forth as lambs among wolves. [Matt 10:16](#); [[Matt 23:34](#)]; [[Luke 11:49](#)];
- 4** Carry neither purse, nor scrip, nor shoes: and salute no man by the way. [Matt 10:9](#); [Mark 6:8](#); [Luke 9:3](#); [Luke 22:35](#); [2Kgs 4:29](#);
- 5** And into whatsoever house you enter, first say, Peace *be* to this house. [Matt 10:12](#); [Mark 6:10](#);
- 6** And if the son of peace be there, your peace shall rest upon it: if not, it shall turn to you again.
- 7** And in the same house remain, eating and drinking such things as they give: for the labourer is worthy of his hire. Go not from house to house. [1Cor 10:27](#); [Lev 9:13](#); [Deut 24:14](#); [Deut 25:4](#); [Matt 10:10](#); [1Cor 9:4](#); [1Cor 9:14](#); [1Tim 5:18](#);
- 8** And into whatsoever city you enter, and they receive you, eat such things as are set before you: [[Matt 10:11](#)];
- 9** And heal the sick that are therein, and say unto them, The kingdom of Elohim is come nigh unto you. [[Matt 10:8](#)];
- 10** But into whatsoever city you enter, and they receive you not, go your ways out into the streets of the same, and say, [Matt 10:14](#); [Mark 6:11](#); [Luke 9:5](#);
- 11** Even the very dust of your city, which cleaveth on us, we do wipe off against you: notwithstanding be you sure of this, that the kingdom of Elohim is come nigh unto you. [Acts 13:51](#); [Acts 18:6](#); [[Luke 9:5](#)];
- 12** But I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable in that day for Sodom, than for that city. [[Matt 10:15](#)]; [[Mark 6:11](#)]; [[1Pet 4:17](#)];

pronounces a woe against certain cities

- 13** Woe unto you, Chorazin! woe unto you, Bethsaida! for if the mighty works had been done in Tyre and Sidon, which have been done in you, they had a great while ago repented, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. [[Matt 11:20](#)];
- 14** But it shall be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment, than for you.
- 15** And you, Capernaum, which are exalted to heaven, shall be thrust down to hell.
- 16** He that heareth you heareth me; and he that despiseth you despiseth me; and he that despiseth me despiseth him that sent me. [Matt 10:40](#); [Mark 9:37](#); [John 13:20](#); [1Thess 4:8](#); [[Luke 9:48](#)];

The seventy return with joy; he shows them wherein to rejoice, and thanks his Father for his grace

- 17** And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the demons are subject unto us through thy name. [[Mark 16:17](#)];
- 18** And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. [Rev 12:8-9](#); [[Rev 12:9](#)];
- 19** Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. [Mark 16:18](#); [Acts 28:5](#);
- 20** Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven. [Exod 32:32](#); [Isa 4:3](#); [Dan 12:1](#); [Phil 4:3](#); [[1Thess 5:16](#)]; [[Heb 12:23](#)];
- 21** In that hour Yahushua rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank you, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that you have hid these things from the wise and prudent, and have revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight. [Matt 11:25](#); [Job 5:12](#); [Isa 29:14](#); [1Cor 1:19](#); [1Cor 2:7-8](#); [2Cor 3:14](#); [[1Cor 1:21](#)];

22 And he turned him unto *his* disciples, and said, All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and *he* to whom the Son will reveal *him*. Ps 8:6; John 3:35; John 17:2; 1Cor 15:27; Phil 2:10; Heb 2:8; John 1:18; John 6:44; John 6:46; [Matt 11:27]; [Matt 28:18]; [John 10:15];

magnifies the happy estate of his church

23 And he turned him unto *his* disciples, and said privately, Blessed *are* the eyes which see the things that you see: Matt 13:16;

24 For I tell you, that many prophets and kings have desired to see those things which you see, and have not seen *them*; and to hear those things which you hear, and have not heard *them*. 1Pet 1:10; [John 8:56];

teaches the lawyer how to attain eternal life, and to take every one for his neighbour that needs his mercy

25 And, behold, a certain lawyer stood up, and tempted him, saying, Master, what shall I do to inherit eternal life? [Matt 22:35]; [Mark 12:28];

26 He said unto him, What is written in the law? how readest you?

27 And he answering said, you shall love the Lord thy Elohim with all thy heart, and with all thy being, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbour as thyself. Deut 6:5; Deut 10:12; Deut 30:6; Lev 19:18; Rom 13:9; Gal 5:14; Jas 2:8; [Matt 22:37]; [Mark 12:29];

28 And he said unto him, you have answered right: this do, and you shall live.

29 But he, willing to justify himself, said unto Yahushua, And who is my neighbour?

30 And Yahushua answering said, A certain *man* went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, which stripped him of his raiment, and wounded *him*, and departed, leaving *him* half dead.

31 And by chance there came down a certain priest that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side.

32 And likewise a Levite, when he was at the place, came and looked *on him*, and passed by on the other side.

33 But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came where he was: and when he saw him, he had compassion *on him*,

34 And went to *him*, and bound up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine, and set him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him.

35 And on the morrow when he departed, he took out two pence, and gave *them* to the host, and said unto him, Take care of him; and whatsoever you spendest more, when I come again, I will repay you.

36 Which now of these three, thinkest you, was neighbour unto him that fell among the thieves?

37 And he said, He that showed mercy on him. Then said Yahushua unto him, Go, and do you likewise.

reprehends Martha, and commends Mary her sister

38 Now it came to pass, as they went, that he entered into a certain village: and a certain woman named Martha received him into her house.

39 And she had a sister called Mary, which also sat at Yahushua's feet, and heard his word. Acts 22:3;

40 But Martha was cumbered about much serving, and came to him, and said, Lord, dost you not care that my sister has left me to serve alone? bid her therefore that she help me.

41 And Yahushua answered and said unto her, Martha, Martha, you are careful and troubled about many things:

42 But one thing is needful: and Mary has chosen that good part, which shall not be taken away from her. Ps 27:4;

Yahushua teaches us to pray, and that instantly

- 1** And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples.
- 2** And he said unto them, *When you pray, say, Our Father which are in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done, as in heaven, so in earth.* [Matt 6:9](#); [\[Acts 21:14\]](#);
- 3** Give us day by day our daily bread.
- 4** And forgive us our sins; for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation; but deliver us from evil.
- 5** And he said unto them, *Which of you shall have a friend, and shall go unto him at midnight, and say unto him, Friend, lend me three loaves;*
- 6** For a friend of mine on his journey has come to me, and I have nothing to set before him?
- 7** And he from within shall answer and say, Trouble me not: the door is now shut, and my children are with me in bed; I cannot rise and give you.
- 8** I say unto you, though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity he will rise and give him as many as he needeth.
- 9** And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and you shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. [Matt 7:7](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 15:7](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5-6](#); [1John 3:22](#); [1John 5:14](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#);
- 10** For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh finds; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.

assuring us that Elohim will give all good things to them that ask him

- 11** If a son shall ask bread of any of you that is a father, will he give him a stone? or if *he ask* a fish, will he for a fish give him a serpent? [Matt 7:9](#);
- 12** Or if he shall ask an egg, will he offer him a scorpion?
- 13** If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?

He, casting out a dumb devil, rebukes the blasphemous Pharisees

- 14** And he was casting out a devil, and it was dumb. And it came to pass, when the devil was gone out, the dumb spoke; and the people wondered. [Matt 9:32](#); [Matt 12:22](#); [\[Mark 7:32\]](#);
- 15** But some of them said, He casteth out demons through Beelzebub the chief of the demons. [Matt 9:34](#); [Matt 12:24](#); [Mark 3:22](#); [\[Matt 10:25\]](#);
- 16** And others, tempting *him*, sought of him a sign from heaven. [Matt 16:1](#);
- 17** But he, knowing their thoughts, said unto them, *Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and a house divided against a house falleth.* [Matt 12:25](#); [Mark 3:24](#);
- 18** If Satan also be divided against himself, how shall his kingdom stand? because you say that I cast out demons through Beelzebub.
- 19** And if I by Beelzebub cast out demons, by whom do your sons cast *them* out? therefore shall they be your judges.
- 20** But if I with the finger of Elohim cast out demons, no doubt the kingdom of Elohim is come upon you.
- 21** When a strong man armed keepeth his palace, his goods are in peace:
- 22** But when a stronger than he shall come upon him, and overcome him, he taketh from him all his armour wherein he trusted, and divideth his spoils. [Col 2:15](#);
- 23** He that is not with me is against me: and he that gathereth not with me scattereth. [Matt 12:30](#); [\[Luke 9:50\]](#);

24 When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest; and finding none, he saith, I will return unto my house whence I came out. [Matt 12:43](#);

25 And when he cometh, he finds *it* swept and garnished.

26 Then goes he, and taketh *to him* seven other spirits more wicked than himself; and they enter in, and dwell there: and the last *state* of that man is worse than the first. [John 5:14](#); [Heb 6:4-5](#); [Heb 10:26](#); [2Pet 2:20](#);

and shows who are blessed

27 And it came to pass, as he spoke these things, a certain woman of the company lifted up her voice, and said unto him, Blessed *is* the womb that bore you, and the paps which you have sucked.

28 But he said, yes **rather, blessed *are* they that hear the word of Elohim, and keep it.** [Matt 7:21](#); [John 6:29](#); [Rom 2:13](#); [\[Prov 8:32\]](#); [\[Prov 19:16\]](#); [\[Luke 1:45\]](#); [\[Jas 1:22\]](#);

preaches to the people

29 And when the people were gathered thick together, he began to say, **This is an evil generation: they seek a sign; and there shall no sign be given it, but the sign of Jonas the prophet.** [Jonah 1:17](#); [Jonah 2:10](#); [\[Matt 12:38\]](#); [\[Matt 16:1\]](#); [\[Matt 16:4\]](#); [\[Mark 8:11\]](#); [\[John 2:18\]](#); [\[John 6:30\]](#);

30 For as Jonas was a sign unto the Ninevites, so shall also the Son of man be to this generation. [\[Jonah 1:17\]](#);

31 The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with the men of this generation, and condemn them: for she came from the utmost parts of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and, behold, a greater than Solomon *is* here. [1Kgs 10:1](#); [2Chr 9:1](#); [Matt 12:42](#); [\[1Kgs 10:2\]](#);

32 The men of Nineve shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it: for they repented at the preaching of Jonas; and, behold, a greater than Jonas *is* here. [Jonah 3:5](#); [\[Matt 12:41\]](#);

33 No man, when he has lighted a candle, puts *it* in a secret place, neither under a bushel, but on a candlestick, that they which come in may see the light. [Matt 5:15](#); [Mark 4:24](#); [Luke 8:16](#); [\[Mark 4:21\]](#);

34 The light of the body is the eye: therefore when thine eye is pure, thy whole body also is full of light; but when *thine eye* is evil, thy body also *is* full of darkness. [Matt 6:22](#);

35 Take heed therefore that the light which is in you be not darkness.

36 If thy whole body therefore *be* full of light, having no part dark, the whole shall be full of light, as when the bright shining of a candle gives you light.

and reprehends the outward show of holiness in the Pharisees, scribes, and lawyers

37 And as he spoke, a certain Pharisee besought him to dine with him: and he went in, and sat down to meat.

38 And when the Pharisee saw *it*, he marvelled that he had not first washed before dinner. [Mark 7:3](#);

39 And the Lord said unto him, **Now do you Pharisees make clean the outside of the cup and the platter; but your inward part is full of ravening and wickedness.** [Matt 23:25](#); [Titus 1:15](#);

40 You fools, did not he that made that which is without make that which is within also?

41 But rather give alms of such things as you have; and, behold, all things are clean unto you. [Isa 58:7](#); [Dan 4:27](#); [Luke 12:33](#);

42 But woe unto you, Pharisees! for you tithe mint and rue and all manner of herbs, and pass over judgment and the love of Elohim: these ought you to have done, and not to leave the other undone. [Matt 23:23](#); [1Sam 15:22](#); [Hos 6:6](#); [Mic 6:8](#); [Matt 9:13](#); [Matt 12:7](#);

43 Woe unto you, Pharisees! for you love the uppermost seats in the synagogues, and greetings in the markets. [Matt 23:6](#); [Mark 12:38](#); [Luke 20:46](#);

- 44** Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you are as graves which appear not, and the men that walk over *them* are not aware *of them*. [Matt 23:27](#);
- 45** Then answered one of the lawyers, and said unto him, Master, thus saying you reproachest us also.
- 46** And he said, Woe unto you also, you lawyers! for you lade men with burdens grievous to be borne, and you yourselves touch not the burdens with one of your fingers. [Isa 10:1](#); [Matt 23:4](#); [Acts 15:10](#);
- 47** Woe unto you! for you build the sepulchers of the prophets, and your fathers killed them. [Matt 23:29](#);
- 48** Truly you bear witness that you allow the deeds of your fathers: for they indeed killed them, and you build their sepulchers.
- 49** Therefore also said the wisdom of Elohim, I will send them prophets and apostles, and *some* of them they shall slay and persecute: [Matt 10:16](#); [Luke 10:3](#); [John 16:2](#); [Acts 7:51](#); [Heb 11:35](#); [[Matt 23:34](#)];
- 50** That the blood of all the prophets, which was shed from the foundation of the world, may be required of this generation;
- 51** From the blood of Abel unto the blood of Zacharias, which perished between the altar and the temple: verily I say unto you, It shall be required of this generation. [Gen 4:8](#); [Heb 11:4](#); [2Chr 24:21](#);
- 52** Woe unto you, lawyers! for you have taken away the key of knowledge: you entered not in yourselves, and them that were entering in you hindered. [Matt 23:14](#);
- 53** And as he said these things unto them, the scribes and the Pharisees began to urge *him* vehemently, and to provoke him to speak of many things:
- 54** Laying wait for him, and seeking to catch something out of his mouth, that they might accuse him.

Yahushua preaches to his apostles to avoid hypocrisy, and fearfulness in publishing his doctrine

- 1** In the mean time, when there were gathered together an innumerable multitude of people, insomuch that they trode one upon another, he began to say unto his disciples first of all, **Beware you of the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy.** [Matt 16:16](#); [Mark 8:15](#); [[Matt 16:6](#)];
- 2** For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hid, that shall not be known. [Job 12:22](#); [Matt 10:26](#); [Mark 4:22](#); [Luke 8:17](#);
- 3** Therefore whatsoever you have spoken in darkness shall be heard in the light; and that which you have spoken in the ear in closets shall be proclaimed upon the housetops.
- 4** And I say unto you my friends, Be not afraid of them that kill the body, and after that have no more that they can do. [Isa 51:7](#); [Jer 1:8](#); [Matt 10:28](#); [[Ezek 2:6](#)];
- 5** But I will forewarn you whom you shall fear: Fear him, which after he has killed has power to cast into hell; yes, I say unto you, Fear him.
- 6** Are not five sparrows sold for two farthings, and not one of them is forgotten before Elohim? [Matt 10:29](#);
- 7** But even the very hairs of your head are all numbered. Fear not therefore: you are of more value than many sparrows. [1Sam 14:45](#); [2Sam 14:11](#); [1Kgs 1:52](#); [Luke 21:18](#);
- 8** Also I say unto you, Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of man also confess before the angels of Elohim: [Matt 10:32](#); [[Mark 8:38](#)]; [[Rev 3:5](#)];
- 9** But he that denies me before men shall be denied before the angels of Elohim. [Matt 10:33](#); [Mark 8:38](#); [Luke 9:26](#); [2Tim 2:12](#); [1John 2:23](#);
- 10** And whosoever shall speak a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him: but unto him that blasphemeth against the Holy Spirit it shall not be forgiven. [1John 5:16](#); [[Matt 12:31](#)]; [[Mark 3:28](#)];
- 11** And when they bring you unto the synagogues, and *unto* magistrates, and powers, take you no thought how or what thing you shall answer, or what you shall say: [Matt 10:19](#); [Mark 13:11](#); [Luke 21:14](#);
- 12** For the Holy Spirit shall teach you in the same hour what you ought to say. [[Exod 4:12](#)];

warns the people to beware of covetousness, by the parable of the rich man who set up greater barns

- 13** And one of the company said unto him, Master, speak to my brother, that he divide the inheritance with me.
- 14** And he said unto him, **Man, who made me a judge or a divider over you?**
- 15** And he said unto them, Take heed, and beware of covetousness: for a man's life consisteth not in the abundance of the things which he possesseth. [1Tim 6:7](#);
- 16** And he spoke a parable unto them, saying, The ground of a certain rich man brought forth plentifully:
- 17** And he thought within himself, saying, What shall I do, because I have no room where to bestow my fruits?
- 18** And he said, This will I do: I will pull down my barns, and build greater; and there will I bestow all my fruits and my goods. [[Jas 4:13](#)];
- 19** And I will say to my being, being, you have much goods laid up for many years; take thine ease, eat, drink, *and* be merry. [Eccl 11:9](#); [1Cor 15:32](#); [Jas 5:5](#); [[Eccl 2:1](#)];
- 20** But Elohim said unto him, you fool, this night thy being shall be required of you: then whose shall those things be, which you have provided? [Ps 52:5](#); [Jer 17:11](#); [Ps 39:6](#); [[Job 27:8](#)];
- 21** So *is* he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward Elohim.

We must not be over careful of earthly things

22 And he said unto his disciples, Therefore I say unto you, Take no thought for your life, what you shall eat; neither for the body, what you shall put on. Ps 55:22; Matt 6:25; Phil 4:6; 1Tim 6:8; 1Pet 5:7; [Ps 37:5]; [Prov 16:3];

23 The life is more than meat, and the body *is more* than raiment.

24 Consider the ravens: for they neither sow nor reap; which neither have storehouse nor barn; and Elohim feedeth them: how much more are you better than the fowls? Job 38:41; Ps 147:9;

25 And which of you with taking thought can add to his stature one cubit? Matt 6:27;

26 If you then be not able to do that thing which is least, why take you thought for the rest?

27 Consider the lilies how they grow: they toil not, they spin not; and yet I say unto you, that Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these.

28 If then Elohim so clothe the grass, which is to day in the field, and to morrow is cast into the oven; how much more *will he clothe* you, O you of little faith?

29 And seek not you what you shall eat, or what you shall drink, neither be you of doubtful mind.

30 For all these things do the nations of the world seek after: and your Father knoweth that you have need of these things.

but seek the kingdom of Elohim

31 But rather seek you the kingdom of Elohim; and all these things shall be added unto you. 1Chr 3:13; Ps 37:25;

32 Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom. [Luke 22:29];

give alms

33 Sell that you have, and give alms; provide yourselves bags which wax not old, a treasure in the heavens that faileth not, where no thief approacheth, neither moth corrupteth. Matt 19:21; Luke 16:9; Matt 6:20; 1Tim 6:19; [Mark 10:21]; [Luke 11:41];

34 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

be ready at a knock to open to our Lord whensoever he comes

35 Let your loins be girded about, and *your* lights burning; Eph 6:14; 1Pet 1:13;

36 And you yourselves like unto men that wait for their lord, when he will return from the wedding; that when he cometh and knocketh, they may open unto him immediately.

37 Blessed *are* those servants, whom the lord when he cometh shall find watching: verily I say unto you, that he shall gird himself, and make them to sit down to meat, and will come forth and serve them.

38 And if he shall come in the second watch, or come in the third watch, and find *them* so, blessed are those servants. Matt 24:42;

39 And this know, that if the goodman of the house had known what hour the thief would come, he would have watched, and not have suffered his house to be broken through. Matt 24:43; 1Thess 5:2; 2Pet 3:10; Rev 3:3; Rev 16:15;

40 Be you therefore ready also: for the Son of man cometh at a hour when you think not. Matt 24:44; Matt 25:13; Mark 13:33; Luke 21:34; 1Thess 5:6; [Matt 24:42]; [Luke 21:36];

Yahushua's ministers are to see to their charges

41 Then Peter said unto him, Lord, speakest you this parable unto us, or even to all?

42 And the Lord said, Who then is that faithful and wise steward, whom *his* lord shall make ruler over his household, to give *them their* portion of meat in due season? Matt 24:45; Matt 25:21; 1Cor 4:2;

43 Blessed *is* that servant, whom his lord when he cometh shall find so doing.

44 Of a truth I say unto you, that he will make him ruler over all that he has.

45 But if that servant say in his heart, My lord delayeth his coming; and shall begin to beat the menservants and maidens, and to eat and drink, and to be drunken;

46 The lord of that servant will come in a day when he looketh not for *him*, and at a hour when he is not aware, and will cut him in sunder, and will appoint him his portion with the unbelievers.

47 And that servant, which knew his lord's will, and prepared not *himself*, neither did according to his will, shall be beaten with many *stripes*. [Jas 4:17](#);

48 But he that knew not, and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few *stripes*. For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required: and to whom men have committed much, of him they will ask the more.

and look for persecution

49 I am come to send fire on the earth; and what will I, if it be already kindled?

50 But I have a baptism to be baptized with; and how am I straitened till it be accomplished! [Matt 20:22](#); [Mark 10:38](#);

51 Suppose you that I am come to give peace on earth? I tell you, Nay; but rather division: [Matt 10:34](#); [Mic 7:6](#);

52 For from henceforth there shall be five in one house divided, three against two, and two against three.

53 The father shall be divided against the son, and the son against the father; the mother against the daughter, and the daughter against the mother; the mother in law against her daughter in law, and the daughter in law against her mother in law. [[Mic 7:6](#)];

The people must take this time of grace

54 And he said also to the people, When you see a cloud rise out of the west, immediately you say, There cometh a shower; and so it is. [Matt 16:2](#); [[Matt 16:1](#)];

55 And when you *see* the south wind blow, you say, There will be heat; and it cometh to pass.

56 You hypocrites, you can discern the face of the sky and of the earth; but how is it that you do not discern this time?

because it is a fearful thing to die without reconciliation

57 Yes, and why even of yourselves judge you not what is right?

58 When you go with thine adversary to the magistrate, *as you are* in the way, give diligence that you may be delivered from him; lest he hale you to the judge, and the judge deliver you to the officer, and the officer cast you into prison. [Prov 25:8](#); [Matt 5:25](#);

59 I tell you, you shall not depart thence, till you have paid the very last mite.

Yahushua preaches repentance upon the punishment of the Galilaeans and others

- 1** There were present at that season some that told him of the Galilaeans, whose blood Pilate had mingled with their sacrifices.
- 2** And Yahushua answering said unto them, Suppose you that these Galilaeans were sinners above all the Galilaeans, because they suffered such things?
- 3** I tell you, Nay: but, except you repent, you shall all likewise perish.
- 4** Or those eighteen, upon whom the tower in Siloam fell, and slew them, think you that they were sinners above all men that dwelt in Jerusalem?
- 5** I tell you, Nay: but, except you repent, you shall all likewise perish.

The fruitless fig-tree may not stand

- 6** He spoke also this parable; A certain *man* had a fig tree planted in his vineyard; and he came and sought fruit thereon, and found none. [Jer 8:13];
- 7** Then said he unto the dresser of his vineyard, Behold, these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree, and find none: cut it down; why cumbereth it the ground?
- 8** And he answering said unto him, Lord, let it alone this year also, till I shall dig about it, and dung *it*:
- 9** And if it bear fruit, *well*: and if not, *then* after that you shall cut it down.

He heals the crooked woman

- 10** And he was teaching in one of the synagogues on the Sabbath.
- 11** And, behold, there was a woman which had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bowed together, and could in no wise lift up *herself*.
- 12** And when Yahushua saw her, he called *her to him*, and said unto her, **Woman, you are loosed from thine infirmity.**
- 13** And he laid *his* hands on her: and immediately she was made straight, and glorified Elohim. [Ps 146:8];
- 14** And the ruler of the synagogue answered with indignation, because that Yahushua had healed on the Sabbath day, and said unto the people, There are six days in which men ought to work: in them therefore come and be healed, and not on the Sabbath day. Exod 20:9; Deut 5:13; Ezek 20:12; [Exod 35:2]; [Lev 23:3];
- 15** The Lord then answered him, and said, you hypocrite, does not each one of you on the Sabbath loose his ox or *his* ass from the stall, and lead *him* away to watering? Exod 23:5; Deut 22:4; Luke 14:5;
- 16** And ought not this woman, being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan has bound, lo, these eighteen years, be loosed from this bond on the Sabbath day? [Luke 19:9];
- 17** And when he had said these things, all his adversaries were ashamed: and all the people rejoiced for all the glorious things that were done by him.

shows the powerful working of the word in the hearts of his chosen, by the parable of the grain of mustard seed, and of leaven

- 18** Then said he, **Unto what is the kingdom of Elohim like? and whereunto shall I resemble it?** Matt 13:31; Mark 4:30;
- 19** It is like a grain of mustard seed, which a man took, and cast into his garden; and it grew, and waxed a great tree; and the fowls of the air lodged in the branches of it.

20 Again he said, *Whereunto shall I liken the kingdom of Elohim?* [Matt 13:33](#);

21 It is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened.

exhorts to enter in at the strait gate

22 And he went through the cities and villages, teaching, and journeying toward Jerusalem. [Matt 9:35](#);
[Mark 6:6](#);

23 Then said one unto him, Lord, are there few that be saved? And he said unto them,

24 Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able. [Matt 7:13](#);

25 When once the master of the house is risen up, and has shut the door, and you begin to stand without, and to knock at the door, saying, Lord, Lord, open unto us; and he shall answer and say unto you, I know you not whence you are: [Matt 25:11](#); [Luke 6:46](#); [Matt 25:12](#); [[Matt 7:21](#)]; [[Matt 7:23](#)]; [[Matt 25:41](#)];

26 Then shall you begin to say, We have eaten and drunk in thy presence, and you have taught in our streets. [[Matt 7:22](#)];

27 But he shall say, I tell you, I know you not whence you are; depart from me, all you workers of iniquity. [Matt 7:23](#); [Ps 6:8](#); [Matt 25:12](#); [Matt 25:41](#);

28 There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth, when you shall see Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and all the prophets, in the kingdom of Elohim, and you *yourselves* thrust out. [Matt 8:12](#); [Matt 13:42](#); [Matt 24:51](#); [Matt 8:11](#); [[Matt 22:13](#)]; [[Matt 25:30](#)];

29 And they shall come from the east, and *from* the west, and from the north, and *from* the south, and shall sit down in the kingdom of Elohim. [Isa 2:2](#); [Mal 1:11](#); [Matt 8:11](#);

30 And, behold, there are last which shall be first, and there are first which shall be last. [Matt 19:30](#); [Matt 20:16](#); [Mark 10:31](#);

and reproves Herod and Jerusalem

31 The same day there came certain of the Pharisees, saying unto him, Get you out, and depart hence: for Herod will kill you.

32 And he said unto them, Go you, and tell that fox, Behold, I cast out demons, and I do cures to day and to morrow, and the third *day* I shall be perfected. [[Song 2:15](#)];

33 Nevertheless I must walk to day, and to morrow, and the *day* following: for it cannot be that a prophet perish out of Jerusalem.

34 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, which killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto you; how often would I have gathered thy children together, as a hen *gathers* her brood under *her* wings, and you would not! [Matt 23:37](#); [Ps 17:8](#); [Ps 91:4](#); [[1Thess 2:15](#)];

35 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate: and I say unto you, you shall not see me, until *the time* come when you shall say, **Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord.** [Ps 69:25](#); [Isa 1:7](#); [Jer 7:34](#); [Mic 3:12](#); [Matt 23:38](#); [Acts 1:20](#); [Ps 118:26](#);

Yahushua heals the dropsy on the Sabbath

1 And it came to pass, as he went into the house of one of the chief Pharisees to eat bread on the Sabbath day, that they watched him.

2 And, behold, there was a certain man before him which had the dropsy.

3 And Yahushua answering spoke unto the lawyers and Pharisees, saying, **Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath day?** [Matt 12:10];

4 And they held their peace. And he took *him*, and healed him, and let him go;

5 And answered them, saying, **Which of you shall have an ass or an ox fallen into a pit, and will not immediately pull him out on the Sabbath day?** Exod 23:5; Deut 22:4; Luke 13:15;

6 And they could not answer him again to these things. [Matt 22:2];

teaches humility

7 And he put forth a parable to those who were invited, when he marked how they chose out the chief rooms; saying unto them, [Prov 25:7];

8 When you are invited of any *man* to a wedding, sit not down in the highest room; lest a more honourable man than you be invited of him;

9 And he that bade you and him come and say to you, Give this man place; and you begin with shame to take the lowest room.

10 But when you are invited, go and sit down in the lowest room; that when he that bade you cometh, he may say unto you, Friend, go up higher: then shall you have worship in the presence of them that sit at meat with you. Prov 25:6-7;

11 For whosoever exalteth himself shall be humbled; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted. Job 22:29; Prov 29:23; Matt 23:12; Luke 1:51; Luke 18:14; Jas 4:6; Jas 4:10; 1Pet 5:5; [Luke 9:48]; [1Pet 5:6];

to feast the poor

12 Then said he also to him that bade him, **When you makest a dinner or a supper, call not thy friends, nor thy brethren, neither thy kinsmen, nor *thy* rich neighbours; lest they also bid you again, and a recompence be made you.** Neh 8:10; Prov 3:28;

13 But when you makest a feast, call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind: [Prov 3:9];

14 And you shall be blessed; for they cannot recompense you: for you shall be recompensed at the resurrection of the just. [Matt 6:4]; [John 11:24];

under the parable of the great supper, shows how worldly minded men, who condemn the word of Elohim, shall be shut out of heaven

15 And when one of them that sat at meat with him heard these things, he said unto him, Blessed *is* he that shall eat bread in the kingdom of Elohim.

16 Then said he unto him, **A certain man made a great supper, and bade many:** Isa 25:6; Matt 22:2; Rev 19:7; Rev 19:9;

17 And sent his servant at supper time to say to them that were invited, Come; for all things are now ready.

18 And they all with one *consent* began to make excuse. The first said unto him, I have bought a piece of ground, and I must needs go and see it: I pray you have me excused.

19 And another said, I have bought five yoke of oxen, and I go to prove them: I pray you have me excused.

20 And another said, I have married a wife, and therefore I cannot come.

21 So that servant came, and showed his lord these things. Then the master of the house being angry said to his servant, Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the city, and bring in hither the poor, and the maimed, and the halt, and the blind.

22 And the servant said, Lord, it is done as you have commanded, and yet there is room.

23 And the lord said unto the servant, Go out into the highways and hedges, and compel *them* to come in, that my house may be filled.

24 For I say unto you, That none of those men who were invited shall taste of my supper.

Those who will be his disciples, to bear their stake must make their accounts beforehand, lest with shame they revolt from him afterward

25 And there went great multitudes with him: and he turned, and said unto them,

26 If any *man* comes to me, and does not love less his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yes, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple. [Deut 13:6](#); [Deut 33:9](#); [Matt 10:37](#);

27 And whosoever does not bear his stake, and come after me, cannot be my disciple. [Matt 10:38](#); [Matt 16:24](#); [Mark 8:34](#); [Luke 9:23](#);

28 For which of you, intending to build a tower, sitteth not down first, and counteth the cost, whether he have *sufficient* to finish *it*?

29 Lest haply, after he has laid the foundation, and is not able to finish *it*, all that behold *it* begin to mock him,

30 Saying, This man began to build, and was not able to finish.

31 Or what king, going to make war against another king, sitteth not down first, and consulteth whether he be able with ten thousand to meet him that cometh against him with twenty thousand?

32 Or else, while the other is yet a great way off, he sendeth an ambassador, and desireth conditions of peace.

33 So likewise, whosoever he be of you that forsaketh not all that he has, he cannot be my disciple.

and become altogether unprofitable, like salt that has lost its savour

34 Salt *is* good: but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be seasoned? [Matt 5:13](#); [Mark 9:50](#);

35 It is neither fit for the land, nor yet for the dunghill; *but* men cast it out. He that has ears to hear, let him hear.

The parable of the lost sheep

1 Then drew near unto him all the publicans and sinners for to hear him. [Matt 9:10](#); [Mark 2:15](#); [Luke 5:29](#);

2 And the Pharisees and scribes murmured, saying, This man receiveth sinners, and eateth with them. [\[Luke 7:39\]](#);

3 And he spoke this parable unto them, saying,

4 What man of you, having a hundred sheep, if he lose one of them, does not leave the ninety and nine in the wilderness, and go after that which is lost, until he find it? [Matt 18:12](#); [\[Ps 119:176\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:25\]](#);

5 And when he has found *it*, he layeth *it* on his shoulders, rejoicing.

6 And when he cometh home, he calleth together *his* friends and neighbours, saying unto them, Rejoice with me; for I have found my sheep which was lost. [1Pet 2:10](#);

7 I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, which need no repentance. [Luke 5:32](#);

of the piece of silver

8 Either what woman having ten pieces of silver, if she lose one piece, does not light a candle, and sweep the house, and seek diligently till she find *it*?

9 And when she has found *it*, she calleth *her* friends and *her* neighbours together, saying, Rejoice with me; for I have found the piece which I had lost.

10 Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of Elohim over one sinner that repenteth.

of the prodigal son

11 And he said, A certain man had two sons:

12 And the younger of them said to *his* father, Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth *to me*. And he divided unto them *his* living.

13 And not many days after the younger son gathered all together, and took his journey into a far country, and there wasted his substance with riotous living. [\[Prov 29:3\]](#);

14 And when he had spent all, there arose a mighty famine in that land; and he began to be in want.

15 And he went and joined himself to a citizen of that country; and he sent him into his fields to feed swine.

16 And he would fain have filled his belly with the husks that the swine did eat: and no man gave unto him.

17 And when he came to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger!

18 I will arise and go to my father, and will say unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and before you,

19 And am no more worthy to be called thy son: make me as one of thy hired servants.

20 And he arose, and came to his father. But when he was yet a great way off, his father saw him, and had compassion, and ran, and fell on his neck, and kissed him. [Acts 2:39](#); [Eph 2:12](#); [Eph 2:17](#);

21 And the son said unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son.

22 But the father said to his servants, Bring forth the best robe, and put *it* on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on *his* feet:

23 And bring hither the fatted calf, and kill *it*; and let us eat, and be merry:

24 For this my son was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found. And they began to be merry.

25 Now his elder son was in the field: and as he came and drew nigh to the house, he heard musick and dancing.

26 And he called one of the servants, and asked what these things meant.

27 And he said unto him, Thy brother is come; and thy father has killed the fatted calf, because he has received him safe and sound.

28 And he was angry, and would not go in: therefore came his father out, and intreated him.

29 And he answering said to *his* father, Lo, these many years do I serve you, neither transgressed I at any time thy commandment: and yet you never gave me a kid, that I might make merry with my friends:

30 But as soon as this thy son was come, which has devoured thy living with harlots, you have killed for him the fatted calf.

31 And he said unto him, Son, you are ever with me, and all that I have is thine.

32 It was meet that we should make merry, and be glad: for this thy brother was dead, and is alive again; and was lost, and is found.

The parable of the unjust steward

- 1** And he said also unto his disciples, There was a certain rich man, which had a steward; and the same was accused unto him that he had wasted his goods.
- 2** And he called him, and said unto him, How is it that I hear this of you? give an account of thy stewardship; for you may be no longer steward.
- 3** Then the steward said within himself, What shall I do? for my lord taketh away from me the stewardship: I cannot dig; to beg I am ashamed.
- 4** I am resolved what to do, that, when I am put out of the stewardship, they may receive me into their houses.
- 5** So he called every one of his lord's debtors *unto him*, and said unto the first, How much owest you unto my lord?
- 6** And he said, A hundred measures of oil. And he said unto him, Take thy bill, and sit down quickly, and write fifty.
- 7** Then said he to another, And how much owest you? And he said, A hundred measures of wheat. And he said unto him, Take thy bill, and write fourscore.
- 8** And the lord commended the unjust steward, because he had done wisely: for the children of this world are in their generation wiser than the children of light. [Eph 5:8](#); [1Thess 5:5](#);
- 9** And I say unto you, Make to yourselves friends of the mammon of unrighteousness; that, when you fail, they may receive you into everlasting habitations. [Matt 6:19](#); [Matt 19:21](#); [1Tim 6:19](#); [[Luke 12:33](#)];
- 10** He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much: and he that is unjust in the least is unjust also in much.
- 11** If therefore you have not been faithful in the unrighteous mammon, who will commit to your trust the true *riches*?
- 12** And if you have not been faithful in that which is another man's, who shall give you that which is your own?
- 13** No servant can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. you cannot serve Elohim and mammon. [Matt 6:24](#);

Yahushua reproves the hypocrisy of the covetous Pharisees

- 14** And the Pharisees also, who were covetous, heard all these things: and they derided him. [Matt 23:13](#);
- 15** And he said unto them, you are they which justify yourselves before men; but Elohim knoweth your hearts: for that which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of Elohim. [Ps 7:9](#); [1Sam 16:7](#);
- 16** The law and the prophets *were* until John: since that time the kingdom of Elohim is preached, and every man presseth into it. [Matt 11:12-13](#); [[Matt 11:12](#)];
- 17** And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail. [Ps 102:26](#); [Isa 40:8](#); [Isa 51:6](#); [Matt 5:18](#);
- 18** Whosoever puts away his wife, and marrieth another, committeth adultery: and whosoever marrieth her that is put away from *her* husband committeth adultery. [Matt 5:32](#); [Matt 19:9](#); [Mark 10:11](#); [1Cor 7:10](#);

The parable of the rich man and Lazarus the beggar

- 19** There was a certain rich man, which was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day: [[Jas 5:5](#)];
- 20** And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores,
- 21** And desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores.

22 And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried;

23 And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom.

24 And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. [Isa 66:24](#); [Mark 9:44](#);

25 But Abraham said, Son, remember that you in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and you are tormented. [Job 21:13](#); [[Gal 6:7](#)]; [[Jas 2:13](#)]; [[Jas 5:5](#)];

26 And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that *would come* from thence.

27 Then he said, I pray you therefore, father, that you wouldest send him to my father's house:

28 For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment.

29 Abraham saith unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. [Isa 8:20](#); [Isa 34:16](#); [John 5:39](#); [Acts 17:11](#);

30 And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent.

31 And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.

Yahushua teaches to avoid occasions of offence

1 Then said he unto the disciples, *It is impossible but that offences will come: but woe unto him, through whom they come!* [Matt 18:7](#); [Mark 9:42](#); [\[1Cor 11:19\]](#);

2 *It were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and he cast into the sea, than that he should offend one of these little ones.* [\[Matt 18:6\]](#); [\[Mark 9:42\]](#);

and to forgive one another

3 *Take heed to yourselves: If thy brother trespass against you, rebuke him; and if he repent, forgive him.* [Lev 19:17](#); [Prov 17:10](#); [Matt 18:15](#); [Jas 5:19](#);

4 *And if he trespass against you seven times in a day, and seven times in a day turn again to you, saying, I repent; you shall forgive him.* [Matt 18:21](#);

The power of faith

5 And the apostles said unto the Lord, Increase our faith.

How we are bound to Elohim, and not he to us

6 And the Lord said, *If you had faith as a grain of mustard seed, you might say unto this sycamine tree, Be you plucked up by the root, and be you planted in the sea; and it should obey you.* [Matt 17:20](#); [Matt 21:21](#); [Mark 11:23](#); [\[Mark 9:23\]](#); [\[John 14:12\]](#); [\[1Cor 13:2\]](#);

7 *But which of you, having a servant plowing or feeding cattle, will say unto him by and by, when he is come from the field, Go and sit down to meat?*

8 *And will not rather say unto him, Make ready wherewith I may sup, and gird thyself, and serve me, till I have eaten and drunken; and afterward you shall eat and drink?*

9 *Does he thank that servant because he did the things that were commanded him? I think not.*

10 *So likewise you, when you shall have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done that which was our duty to do.*

Yahushua heals ten lepers

11 And it came to pass, as he went to Jerusalem, that he passed through the midst of Samaria and Galilee.

12 And as he entered into a certain village, there met him ten men that were lepers, which stood afar off:

13 And they lifted up *their* voices, and said, Yahushua, Master, have mercy on us.

14 And when he saw *them*, he said unto them, *Go show yourselves unto the priests.* And it came to pass, that, as they went, they were cleansed. [Lev 13:2](#); [Lev 14:2](#); [Matt 8:4](#); [Luke 5:14](#);

15 And one of them, when he saw that he was healed, turned back, and with a loud voice glorified Elohim,

16 And fell down on *his* face at his feet, giving him thanks: and he was a Samaritan.

17 And Yahushua answering said, *Were there not ten cleansed? but where *are* the nine?*

18 *There are not found that returned to give glory to Elohim, save this stranger.*

19 And he said unto him, *Arise, go thy way: thy faith has made you whole.*

20 And when he was demanded of the Pharisees, when the kingdom of Elohim should come, he answered them and said, *The kingdom of Elohim cometh not with observation:*

21 *Neither shall they say, Lo here! or, lo there! for, behold, the kingdom of Elohim is within you.* [Matt 24:23](#); [Mark 13:21](#); [Luke 21:7-8](#);

Of the kingdom of Elohim, and the coming of the Son of Man

22 And he said unto the disciples, The days will come, when you shall desire to see one of the days of the Son of man, and you shall not see *it*.

23 And they shall say to you, See here; or, see there: go not after *them*, nor follow *them*. [Matt 24:23](#); [Mark 13:21](#); [[Matt 24:26](#)];

24 For as the lightning, that lighteneth out of the one *part* under heaven, shineth unto the other *part* under heaven; so shall also the Son of man be in his day.

25 But first must he suffer many things, and be rejected of this generation. [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 17:22](#); [Matt 20:18](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 9:31](#); [Mark 10:33](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [Luke 24:6-7](#);

26 And as it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. [Gen 6:2](#); [Gen 7:7](#); [Matt 24:37-38](#); [1Pet 3:20](#); [[Matt 24:37](#)];

27 They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all. [[Gen 7:7](#)]; [[Gen 7:21](#)];

28 Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they built;

29 But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed *them* all. [Gen 19:24](#); [Deut 29:23](#); [Isa 13:19](#); [Jer 50:40](#); [Hos 11:8](#); [Amos 4:11](#); [Jude 1:7](#);

30 Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed.

31 In that day, he which shall be upon the housetop, and his stuff in the house, let him not come down to take it away: and he that is in the field, let him likewise not return back.

32 Remember Lot's wife. [Gen 19:26](#);

33 Whosoever shall seek to save his life shall lose it; and whosoever shall lose his life shall preserve it. [Matt 10:39](#); [Matt 16:25](#); [Mark 8:35](#); [Luke 9:24](#); [John 12:25](#);

34 I tell you, in that night there shall be two *men* in one bed; the one shall be taken, and the other shall be left. [Matt 24:40-41](#); [1Thess 4:17](#); [[Matt 24:40](#)];

35 Two *women* shall be grinding together; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

36 Two *men* shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

37 And they answered and said unto him, Where, Lord? And he said unto them, Wheresoever the body *is*, thither will the eagles be gathered together. [Job 39:30](#); [Matt 24:28](#);

Of the importunate widow

- 1** And he spoke a parable unto them *to this end*, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint; [Rom 12:12](#); [Eph 6:18](#); [Col 4:2](#); [1Thess 5:17](#);
- 2** Saying, There was in a city a judge, which feared not Elohim, neither regarded man:
- 3** And there was a widow in that city; and she came unto him, saying, Avenge me of mine adversary.
- 4** And he would not for a while: but afterward he said within himself, though I fear not Elohim, nor regard man;
- 5** Yet because this widow troubleth me, I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming she weary me.
- 6** And the Lord said, Hear what the unjust judge saith.
- 7** And shall not Elohim avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them? [Rev 6:10](#);
- 8** I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?

Of the Pharisee and the publican

- 9** And he spoke this parable unto certain which trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and despised others:
- 10** Two men went up into the temple to pray; the one a Pharisee, and the other a publican.
- 11** The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, Elohim, I thank you, that I am not as other men *are*, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. [Isa 1:15](#); [Isa 58:2](#); [Rev 3:17-18](#);
- 12** I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I gain.
- 13** And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as *his* eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, Elohim be merciful to me a sinner. [\[2Cor 7:10\]](#);
- 14** I tell you, this man went down to his house justified *rather* than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall be humbled; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted. [Job 22:29](#); [Prov 29:23](#); [Matt 23:12](#); [Luke 14:11](#); [Jas 4:6](#); [Jas 4:10](#); [1Pet 5:5](#); [\[Luke 9:48\]](#);

Of Children brought to Yahushua

- 15** And they brought unto him also infants, that he would touch them: but when *his* disciples saw *it*, they rebuked them. [Matt 19:13](#); [Mark 10:13](#);
- 16** But Yahushua called them *unto him*, and said, Suffer little children to come unto me, and forbid them not: for of such is the kingdom of Elohim. [Matt 18:3](#); [Matt 19:14](#); [1Cor 14:20](#); [1Pet 2:2](#);
- 17** Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of Elohim as a little child shall in no wise enter therein.

A ruler would follow Yahushua, but is hindered by his riches

- 18** And a certain ruler asked him, saying, Good Master, what shall I do to inherit eternal life? [Matt 19:16](#); [Mark 10:17](#);
- 19** And Yahushua said unto him, Why callest thou me good? none *is* good, save one, *that is*, Elohim.
- 20** You knowest the commandments, Do not commit adultery, Do not kill, Do not steal, Do not bear false witness, Honour thy father and thy mother. [Exod 20:13](#); [Deut 5:17](#); [Rom 13:9](#); [Eph 6:2](#); [Col 3:20](#); [\[Deut 5:16\]](#); [\[Deut 5:18\]](#);
- 21** And he said, All these have I kept from my youth up.

22 Now when Yahushua heard these things, he said unto him, yet **lackest you one thing: sell all that you hast, and distribute unto the poor, and you shall have treasure in heaven: and come, follow me.** [Matt 6:19;](#) [Matt 19:21;](#) [1Tim 6:19;](#)

23 And when he heard this, he was very sorrowful: for he was very rich.

24 And when Yahushua saw that he was very sorrowful, he said, **How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of Elohim!** [Prov 11:28;](#) [Matt 19:23;](#) [Mark 10:23;](#) [\[Matt 13:22\];](#) [\[Mark 4:19\];](#) [\[Luke 8:14\];](#)

25 For it is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of Elohim.

26 And they that heard *it* said, Who then can be saved?

27 And he said, **The things which are impossible with men are possible with Elohim.** [Job 42:2;](#) [Jer 32:17;](#) [Zech 8:6;](#) [Luke 1:37;](#) [\[Matt 19:26\];](#)

The reward of them that leave all for his sake

28 Then Peter said, Lo, we have left all, and followed you. [Matt 4:20;](#) [Matt 19:27;](#) [Mark 10:28;](#) [Luke 5:11;](#) [\[Mark 1:18\];](#)

29 And he said unto them, **Verily I say unto you, There is no man that has left house, or parents, or brethren, or wife, or children, for the kingdom of Elohim's sake,** [Deut 33:9;](#)

30 Who shall not receive manifold more in this present time, and in the world to come life everlasting. [Job 42:12;](#)

He foretells his death

31 Then he took *unto him* the twelve, and said unto them, **Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written by the prophets concerning the Son of man shall be accomplished.** [Matt 16:21;](#) [Matt 17:22;](#) [Matt 20:17;](#) [Mark 8:31;](#) [Mark 9:31;](#) [Mark 10:32;](#) [Luke 9:22;](#) [Luke 24:7;](#) [Ps 22:6;](#) [Isa 53:7;](#) [\[Mark 9:30\];](#) [\[Luke 17:25\];](#) [\[Luke 24:6\];](#) [\[Luke 24:44\];](#)

32 For he shall be delivered unto the Gentiles, and shall be mocked, and spitefully entreated, and spitted on: [Matt 27:2;](#) [Luke 23:1;](#) [John 18:28;](#) [Acts 3:13;](#)

33 And they shall scourge *him*, and put him to death: and the third day he shall rise again. [\[Matt 27:63\];](#) [\[Matt 28:6\];](#)

34 And they understood none of these things: and this saying was hid from them, neither knew they the things which were spoken. [\[Luke 2:50\];](#) [\[Luke 9:45\];](#)

and restores a blind man to his sight

35 And it came to pass, that as he was come nigh unto Jericho, a certain blind man sat by the way side begging: [Matt 20:29;](#) [Mark 10:46;](#)

36 And hearing the multitude pass by, he asked what it meant.

37 And they told him, that Yahushua of Nazareth passeth by.

38 And he cried, saying, Yahushua, you Son of David, have mercy on me.

39 And they which went before rebuked him, that he should hold his peace: but he cried so much the more, you Son of David, have mercy on me.

40 And Yahushua stood, and commanded him to be brought unto him: and when he was come near, he asked him,

41 Saying, **What will you that I shall do unto you?** And he said, Lord, that I may receive my sight.

42 And Yahushua said unto him, **Receive thy sight: thy faith has saved you.**

43 And immediately he received his sight, and followed him, glorifying Elohim: and all the people, when they saw *it*, gave praise unto Elohim.

Of Zacchaeus a publican

1 And *Yahushua* entered and passed through Jericho.

2 And, behold, *there was* a man named Zacchaeus, which was the chief among the publicans, and he was rich.

3 And he sought to see Yahushua who he was; and could not for the press, because he was little of stature.

4 And he ran before, and climbed up into a sycomore tree to see him: for he was to pass that *way*.

5 And when Yahushua came to the place, he looked up, and saw him, and said unto him, *Zacchaeus, make haste, and come down; for to day I must abide at thy house.*

6 And he made haste, and came down, and received him joyfully. [\[Acts 16:34\];](#)

7 And when they saw *it*, they all murmured, saying, That he was gone to be guest with a man that is a sinner.

8 And Zacchaeus stood, and said unto the Lord; Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken any thing from any man by false accusation, I restore *him* fourfold.

9 And Yahushua said unto him, *This day is salvation come to this house, forsomuch as he also is a son of Abraham.* [Luke 13:16;](#)

10 *For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.* [Matt 10:6; Matt 15:24; Matt 18:11; Acts 13:46; \[Matt 9:13\]; \[Mark 2:17\]; \[Luke 5:32\]; \[John 3:16\]; \[1Tim 1:15\];](#)

The ten pieces of money

11 And as they heard these things, he added and spoke a parable, because he was nigh to Jerusalem, and because they thought that the kingdom of Elohim should immediately appear.

12 He said therefore, *A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom, and to return.* [Matt 25:14; Mark 13:34;](#)

13 *And he called his ten servants, and delivered them ten pounds, and said unto them, Occupy till I come.*

14 *But his citizens hated him, and sent a message after him, saying, We will not have this *man* to reign over us.*

15 *And it came to pass, that when he was returned, having received the kingdom, then he commanded these servants to be called unto him, to whom he had given the money, that he might know how much every man had gained by trading.*

16 *Then came the first, saying, Lord, thy pound has gained ten pounds.*

17 *And he said unto him, Well, you good servant: because you have been faithful in a very little, have you authority over ten cities.*

18 *And the second came, saying, Lord, thy pound has gained five pounds.*

19 *And he said likewise to him, Be you also over five cities.*

20 *And another came, saying, Lord, behold, *here is* thy pound, which I have kept laid up in a napkin:*

21 *For I feared you, because you are an austere man: you takest up that you layedst not down, and reapest that you didst not sow.*

22 *And he saith unto him, Out of thine own mouth will I judge you, you wicked servant. you knewest that I was an austere man, taking up that I laid not down, and reaping that I did not sow: 2Sam 1:16; Matt 12:37;*

23 *Wherefore then gave not you my money into the bank, that at my coming I might have required mine own with usury?*

24 *And he said unto them that stood by, Take from him the pound, and give *it* to him that has ten pounds.*

25 (And they said unto him, Lord, he has ten pounds.)

26 For I say unto you, That unto every one which has shall be given; and from him that has not, even that he has shall be taken away from him. [Matt 13:12](#); [Matt 25:29](#); [Mark 4:25](#); [Luke 8:18](#);

27 But those mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay *them* before me.

Yahushua rides into Jerusalem with triumph

28 And when he had thus spoken, he went before, ascending up to Jerusalem.

29 And it came to pass, when he was come nigh to Bethphage and Bethany, at the mount called *the mount* of Olives, he sent two of his disciples, [Matt 21:1](#); [Mark 11:1](#);

30 Saying, Go you into the village over against *you*; in the which at your entering you shall find a colt tied, whereon yet never man sat: loose him, and bring *him hither*.

31 And if any man ask you, Why do you loose *him*? thus shall you say unto him, Because the Lord has need of him.

32 And they that were sent went their way, and found even as he had said unto them.

33 And as they were loosing the colt, the owners thereof said unto them, Why loose you the colt?

34 And they said, The Lord has need of him.

35 And they brought him to Yahushua: and they cast their garments upon the colt, and they set Yahushua thereon. [John 12:14](#); [2Kgs 9:13](#);

36 And as he went, they spread their clothes in the way. [\[John 12:12\]](#);

37 And when he was come nigh, even now at the descent of the mount of Olives, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise Elohim with a loud voice for all the mighty works that they had seen;

38 Saying, **Blessed *be* the King that cometh in the name of the Lord:** peace in heaven, and glory in the highest. [Ps 118:26](#); [Luke 2:14](#); [Eph 2:14](#);

39 And some of the Pharisees from among the multitude said unto him, Master, rebuke thy disciples.

40 And he answered and said unto them, **I tell you that, if these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out.** [Hab 2:11](#);

weeps over it

41 And when he was come near, he beheld the city, and wept over it, [\[John 11:35\]](#);

42 Saying, **If you hadst known, even you, at least in this thy day, the things *which belong unto thy peace!* but now they are hid from thine eyes.**

43 **For the days shall come upon you, that thine enemies shall cast a trench about you, and compass you round, and keep you in on every side,**

44 **And shall lay you even with the ground, and thy children within you; and they shall not leave in you one stone upon another; because you knewest not the time of thy visitation.** [1Kgs 9:7-8](#); [Mic 3:12](#); [Matt 24:1-2](#); [Mark 13:2](#); [Luke 21:6](#); [\[Matt 24:2\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:12\]](#);

drives the buyers and sellers out of the temple

45 And he went into the temple, and began to cast out them that sold therein, and them that bought; [\[Matt 21:12\]](#); [\[Mark 11:11\]](#); [\[Mark 11:15\]](#); [\[John 2:14\]](#);

46 Saying unto them, **It is written, My house is the house of prayer: but you have made it a den of thieves.** [1Kgs 8:29](#); [Isa 56:7](#); [Jer 7:11](#); [Matt 21:13](#); [Mark 11:17](#);

teaching daily in it. The rulers seek to destroy him, but fear the people

47 And he taught daily in the temple. But the chief priests and the scribes and the chief of the people sought to destroy him, [Mark 11:18](#); [John 7:19](#); [John 8:37](#); [\[John 7:30\]](#);

48 And could not find what they might do: for all the people were very attentive to hear him.

Yahushua avouches his authority by a question of John's baptism

- 1** And it came to pass, *that* on one of those days, as he taught the people in the temple, and preached the gospel, the priests and the scribes came upon *him* with the elders, [Matt 21:23](#); [Mark 11:27](#); [Acts 4:7](#); [Acts 7:27](#);
- 2** And spoke unto him, saying, Tell us, by what authority do you these things? or who is he that gave you this authority?
- 3** And he answered and said unto them, **I will also ask you one thing; and answer me:**
- 4** **The baptism of John, was it from heaven, or of men?**
- 5** And they reasoned with themselves, saying, If we shall say, From heaven; he will say, Why then believed you him not?
- 6** But if we say, Of men; all the people will stone us: for they be persuaded that John was a prophet.
- 7** And they answered, that they could not tell whence *it was*.
- 8** And Yahushua said unto them, **Neither tell I you by what authority I do these things.**

The parable of the vineyard

- 9** Then began he to speak to the people this parable; **A certain man planted a vineyard, and let it forth to husbandmen, and went into a far country for a long time.** [Ps 80:8](#); [Isa 5:1](#); [Jer 2:21](#); [Jer 12:10](#); [Matt 21:33](#); [Mark 12:1](#);
- 10** **And at the season he sent a servant to the husbandmen, that they should give him of the fruit of the vineyard: but the husbandmen beat him, and sent *him* away empty.**
- 11** **And again he sent another servant: and they beat him also, and entreated *him* shamefully, and sent *him* away empty.**
- 12** **And again he sent a third: and they wounded him also, and cast *him* out.**
- 13** **Then said the lord of the vineyard, What shall I do? I will send my beloved son: it may be they will reverence *him* when they see him.**
- 14** **But when the husbandmen saw him, they reasoned among themselves, saying, This is the heir: come, let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours.** [Ps 2:8](#); [Heb 1:2](#); [Gen 37:18](#); [Ps 2:1](#); [Matt 26:3](#); [Matt 27:1](#); [John 11:53](#);
- 15** **So they cast him out of the vineyard, and killed *him*. What therefore shall the lord of the vineyard do unto them?**
- 16** **He shall come and destroy these husbandmen, and shall give the vineyard to others.** And when they heard *it*, they said, Elohim forbid.
- 17** And he beheld them, and said, What is this then that is written, **The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?** [Ps 118:22](#); [Isa 8:14](#); [Isa 28:16](#); [Matt 21:42](#); [Mark 12:10](#); [Acts 4:11](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [1Pet 2:4](#); [1Pet 2:7](#);
- 18** **Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.** [Isa 8:15](#); [Zech 12:3](#); [Dan 2:34](#); [[Matt 21:44](#)];

Of giving tribute to Caesar

- 19** And the chief priests and the scribes sought to lay hands on him that very hour; but they afraid: for they perceived that he had spoken this parable against them. [[Matt 21:45](#)]; [[John 7:30](#)];
- 20** And they watched *him*, and sent forth spies, which should feign themselves just men, that they might take hold of his words, that so they might deliver him unto the power and authority of the governor. [Matt 22:16](#); [Mark 12:13](#); [[Matt 22:15](#)];

21 And they asked him, saying, Master, we know that you sayest and teachest rightly, neither acceptest you the person *of any*, but teachest the way of Elohim truly:

22 Is it lawful for us to give tribute unto Caesar, or no?

23 But he perceived their craftiness, and said unto them, **Why tempt you me?**

24 **Show me a penny. Whose image and superscription has it?** They answered and said, Caesar's.

25 And he said unto them, **Render therefore unto Caesar the things which be Caesar's, and unto Elohim the things which be Elohim's.** [Matt 17:25](#); [Matt 22:21](#); [Rom 13:7](#); [\[Luke 23:2\]](#);

26 And they could not take hold of his words before the people: and they marvelled at his answer, and held their peace.

He convinces the Sadducees, that denied the resurrection

27 Then came to *him* certain of the Sadducees, which deny that there is any resurrection; and they asked him, [Matt 22:23](#); [Mark 12:18](#); [Acts 23:8](#);

28 Saying, Master, Moses wrote unto us, If any man's brother die, having a wife, and he die without children, that his brother should take his wife, and raise up seed unto his brother. [Deut 25:5](#);

29 There were therefore seven brethren: and the first took a wife, and died without children.

30 And the second took her to wife, and he died childless.

31 And the third took her likewise; and in like manner *the rest of* the seven also: but they left no children, and died.

32 Last of all the woman died also.

33 Therefore in the resurrection whose wife of them is she? for seven had her to wife.

34 And Yahushua answering said unto them, **The children of this world marry, and are given in marriage:**

35 **But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage:**

36 Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of Elohim, being the children of the resurrection. [1John 3:2](#);

37 Now that the dead are raised, even Moses showed at the bush, when he calleth the Lord the Elohim of Abraham, and the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob. [Exod 3:6](#); [Acts 7:32](#); [Heb 11:16](#); [\[1Kgs 18:36\]](#);

38 For he is not a Elohim of the dead, but of the living: for all live unto him.

39 Then certain of the scribes answering said, Master, you have well said.

40 And after that they dared not ask him any *question at all*.

How Yahushua is the Son of David

41 And he said unto them, **How say they that the Messiah is David's son?** [Matt 22:42](#); [Mark 12:35](#); [\[Matt 22:41\]](#);

42 And David himself saith in the book of Psalms, **The YAHWEH said unto my Lord, Sit you on my right hand,** [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Heb 1:13](#); [Heb 10:13](#);

43 **Till I make thine enemies thy footstool.**

44 David therefore calleth him Lord, how is he then his son?

He warns his disciples to beware of the scribes

45 Then in the audience of all the people he said unto his disciples,

46 Beware of the scribes, which desire to walk in long robes, and love greetings in the markets, and the highest seats in the synagogues, and the chief rooms at feasts; [Matt 23:5-6](#); [Mark 12:38-39](#); [Luke 11:43](#); [\[Matt 23:6\]](#); [\[Mark 12:38\]](#);

47 Which devour widows' houses, and for a show make long prayers: the same shall receive greater damnation. [Matt 23:13](#); [Mark 12:40](#); [2Tim 3:6](#); [Titus 1:11](#);

Yahushua commends the poor widow

- 1** And he looked up, and saw the rich men casting their gifts into the treasury. [2Kgs 12:9](#); [Mark 12:41](#);
2 And he saw also a certain poor widow casting in thither two mites.
3 And he said, *Of a truth I say unto you, that this poor widow has cast in more than they all:* [2Cor 8:12](#);
4 For all these have of their abundance cast in unto the offerings of Elohim: but she of her penury has cast in all the living that she had. [\[Mark 13:11\]](#);

He foretells the destruction of the temple, and of the city Jerusalem

- 5** And as some spoke of the temple, how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, he said, [Matt 24:1](#); [Mark 13:1](#); [\[Isa 13:10\]](#);
6 *As for these things which you behold, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.* [1Kgs 9:7](#); [Mic 3:12](#); [Luke 19:44](#); [\[Matt 10:21\]](#);
7 And they asked him, saying, Master, but when shall these things be? and what sign *will there be* when these things shall come to pass? [\[Matt 24:3\]](#); [\[Mark 13:3\]](#); [\[Luke 17:21\]](#);
8 And he said, *Take heed that you be not deceived: for many shall come in my name, saying, I am he; and the time draweth near: go you not therefore after them.* [Jer 29:8](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [Col 2:18](#); [2Thess 2:2](#); [1John 4:1](#); [Jer 14:14](#); [Jer 23:21](#); [\[Matt 24:23\]](#); [\[Mark 13:21\]](#);
9 But when you shall hear of wars and commotions, be not terrified: for these things must first come to pass; but the end *is* not by and by.
10 Then said he unto them, Nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: [Isa 19:2](#);
11 And great earthquakes shall be in various places, and famines, and pestilences; and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven. [\[Matt 24:9\]](#);
12 But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute *you*, delivering *you* up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake. [Matt 10:17](#); [Matt 24:9](#); [Mark 13:9](#); [John 16:2](#); [Rev 2:10](#); [Acts 4:3](#); [Acts 5:18](#); [Acts 12:4](#); [Acts 16:24](#); [Acts 25:23](#);
13 And it shall turn to you for a testimony.
14 Settle *it* therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what you shall answer: [Matt 10:19](#); [Mark 13:11](#); [\[Luke 12:11\]](#);
15 For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist. [Exod 4:12](#); [Isa 54:17](#); [Matt 10:19](#); [Acts 6:10](#); [\[Matt 24:29\]](#);
16 And you shall be betrayed even by parents and relatives and friends and brothers; and they shall put *some* of you to death. [Mic 7:6](#); [Acts 7:59](#); [Acts 12:2](#);
17 And you shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake. [Matt 10:22](#); [Mark 13:13](#);
18 But there shall not a hair of your head perish. [1Sam 14:45](#); [2Sam 14:11](#); [1Kgs 1:52](#); [Matt 10:30](#); [\[Luke 12:7\]](#);
19 In your patience possess you your beings. [\[Matt 10:22\]](#); [\[Matt 24:13\]](#); [\[Mark 13:13\]](#); [\[Heb 10:36\]](#);
20 And when you shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. [Dan 9:27](#); [Matt 24:15](#); [Mark 13:14](#);
21 Then let them which are in Judaea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto. [\[Mark 13:14\]](#);
22 For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. [Dan 9:26-27](#); [Matt 24:15](#); [Mark 13:14](#);
23 But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people.
24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. [Rom 11:25](#);

the signs also which shall be before the last day

25 And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; [Isa 13:10](#); [Ezek 32:7](#); [Joel 2:31](#); [Joel 3:15](#); [Matt 24:29](#); [Mark 13:24](#); [Rev 6:12](#);

26 Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken.

27 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. [Dan 7:10](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Matt 24:30](#); [Matt 25:31](#); [Matt 26:64](#); [Mark 13:26](#); [Mark 14:62](#); [Acts 1:11](#); [2Thess 1:10](#); [Rev 1:7](#);

28 And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh. [Rom 8:23](#); [\[Eph 4:30\]](#);

29 And he spoke to them a parable; Behold the fig tree, and all the trees; [Matt 24:32](#); [Mark 13:28](#);

30 When they now shoot forth, you see and know of your own selves that summer is now nigh at hand.

31 So likewise you, when you see these things come to pass, know you that the kingdom of Elohim is nigh at hand.

32 Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away, till all be fulfilled.

33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away. [Ps 102:26](#); [Isa 51:6](#); [Matt 24:35](#); [Heb 1:11](#);

He exhorts them to be watchful

34 And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and *so* that day come upon you unawares. [Rom 13:13](#); [1Thess 5:6](#); [1Pet 4:7](#); [\[Prov 23:20\]](#); [\[Luke 12:40\]](#); [\[Eph 5:18\]](#);

35 For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. [1Thess 5:2](#); [2Pet 3:10](#); [Rev 3:3](#); [Rev 16:15](#);

36 Watch you therefore, and pray always, that you may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man. [Matt 24:42](#); [Matt 25:13](#); [Mark 13:33](#); [Luke 12:40](#); [1Thess 5:6](#);

37 And in the day time he was teaching in the temple; and at night he went out, and abode in the mount that is called *the mount* of Olives. [John 8:2](#);

38 And all the people came early in the morning to him in the temple, for to hear him.

The Jews conspire against Yahushua

1 Now the feast of unleavened bread drew nigh, which is called the Passover. [Exod 12:15](#); [Matt 26:2](#); [Mark 14:1](#); [\[John 13:1\]](#);

2 And the chief priests and scribes sought how they might kill him; for they feared the people. [Ps 2:2](#); [John 11:47](#); [Acts 4:27](#);

Satan prepares Judas to betray him

3 Then entered Satan into Judas surnamed Iscariot, being of the number of the twelve. [Matt 26:14](#); [Mark 14:10](#); [John 13:27](#); [\[John 13:2\]](#);

4 And he went his way, and communed with the chief priests and captains, how he might betray him unto them. [\[Matt 26:14\]](#); [\[Mark 14:10\]](#);

5 And they were glad, and covenanted to give him money.

6 And he promised, and sought opportunity to betray him unto them in the absence of the multitude.

The apostles prepare the passover

7 Then came the day of unleavened bread, when the passover must be killed. [Matt 26:17](#); [Mark 14:12-13](#); [\[Mark 14:12\]](#);

8 And he sent Peter and John, saying, **Go and prepare us the passover, that we may eat.**

9 And they said unto him, Where will you that we prepare?

10 And he said unto them, **Behold, when you are entered into the city, there shall a man meet you, bearing a pitcher of water; follow him into the house where he entereth in.**

11 And you shall say unto the goodman of the house, The Master saith unto you, Where is the guestchamber, where I shall eat the passover with my disciples?

12 And he shall show you a large upper room furnished: there make ready.

13 And they went, and found as he had said unto them: and they made ready the passover.

14 And when the hour was come, he sat down, and the twelve apostles with him. [Matt 26:20](#); [Mark 14:17](#);

15 And he said unto them, **With desire I have desired to eat this passover with you before I suffer:**

16 For I say unto you, I will not any more eat thereof, until it be fulfilled in the kingdom of Elohim.

17 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and said, Take this, and divide *it* among yourselves:

18 For I say unto you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the kingdom of Elohim shall come.

Yahushua institutes his holy supper

19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake *it*, and gave unto them, saying, **This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.** [Matt 26:26](#); [Mark 14:22](#); [1Cor 11:23-24](#); [\[1Cor 11:23\]](#);

20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, **This cup *is* the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.**

covertly foretells of the traitor

21 But, behold, the hand of him that betrayeth me *is* with me on the table. [Matt 26:23](#); [Mark 14:18](#); [John 13:21](#);

22 And truly the Son of man goes, as it was determined: but woe unto that man by whom he is betrayed! [Ps 41:9](#); [John 13:18](#); [Acts 1:6](#);

23 And they began to enquire among themselves, which of them it was that should do this thing.

rebukes the rest of his apostles from ambition

24 And there was also a strife among them, which of them should be accounted the greatest. [\[Matt 18:1\]](#); [\[Mark 9:33\]](#); [\[Luke 9:46\]](#);

25 And he said unto them, The kings of the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and they that exercise authority upon them are called benefactors. [Matt 20:25](#); [Mark 10:42](#);
26 But you *shall not be* so: but he that is greatest among you, let him be as the younger; and he that is chief, as he that serves. [1Pet 5:3](#); [Luke 9:48](#);
27 For whether *is* greater, he that sitteth at meat, or he that serveth? *is* not he that sitteth at meat? but I am among you as he that serveth. [Matt 20:28](#); [John 13:14](#); [Phil 2:7](#);
28 you are they which have continued with me in my temptations.
29 And I appoint unto you a kingdom, as my Father has appointed unto me; [Luke 12:32](#);
30 That you may eat and drink at my table, and sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel. [Matt 19:28](#); [Rev 3:21](#); [[1Cor 6:2](#)];

assures Peter his faith should not fail

31 And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan has desired *to have* you, that he may sift *you* as wheat: [1Pet 5:8](#);
32 But I have prayed for you, that thy faith fail not: and when you are converted, strengthen thy brethren.
33 And he said unto him, Lord, I am ready to go with you, both into prison, and to death. [[Matt 26:33](#)]; [[John 13:37](#)];

and yet he should deny him thrice

34 And he said, I tell you, Peter, the cock shall not crow this day, before that you shall thrice deny that you knowest me. [Matt 26:34](#); [Mark 14:30](#); [John 13:38](#);
35 And he said unto them, When I sent you without purse, and scrip, and shoes, lacked you any thing? And they said, Nothing. [Matt 10:9](#); [Mark 6:8](#); [Luke 9:3](#); [[Luke 10:4](#)];
36 Then said he unto them, But now, he that has a purse, let him take *it*, and likewise *his* scrip: and he that has no sword, let him sell his garment, and buy one.
37 For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me, **And he was reckoned among the transgressors:** for the things concerning me have an end. [Isa 53:12](#); [Mark 15:28](#);
38 And they said, Lord, behold, here *are* two swords. And he said unto them, **It is enough.**

He prays in the mount, and sweats blood

39 And he came out, and went, as he was wont, to the mount of Olives; and his disciples also followed him. [Matt 26:36](#); [Mark 14:32](#); [John 8:1](#); [John 18:1](#); [[Matt 26:30](#)];
40 And when he was at the place, he said unto them, **Pray that you enter not into temptation.**
41 And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's cast, and kneeled down, and prayed, [Matt 26:39](#); [Mark 14:35](#);
42 Saying, **Father, if you be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.** [John 6:38](#); [[Acts 21:14](#)];
43 And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him.
44 And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground. [John 12:27](#); [Heb 5:7](#);
45 And when he rose up from prayer, and was come to his disciples, he found them sleeping for sorrow, [[Mark 14:37](#)];
46 And said unto them, **Why sleep you? rise and pray, lest you enter into temptation.**

is betrayed with a kiss

47 And while he yet spoke, behold a multitude, and he that was called Judas, one of the twelve, went before them, and drew near unto Yahushua to kiss him. [Matt 26:47](#); [Mark 14:43](#); [John 18:3](#);

48 But Yahushua said unto him, **Judas, betrayest you the Son of man with a kiss?**

49 When they which were about him saw what would follow, they said unto him, Lord, shall we smite with the sword?

he heals Malchus' ear

50 And one of them smote the servant of the high priest, and cut off his right ear. [Matt 26:51](#); [Mark 14:47](#); [\[John 18:10\]](#);

51 And Yahushua answered and said, **Suffer you thus far.** And he touched his ear, and healed him.

52 Then Yahushua said unto the chief priests, and captains of the temple, and the elders, which were come to him, **Be you come out, as against a thief, with swords and staves?** [Matt 26:55](#); [Mark 14:48](#);

53 **When I was daily with you in the temple, you stretched forth no hands against me: but this is your hour, and the power of darkness.**

he is thrice denied of Peter

54 Then took they him, and led *him*, and brought him into the high priest's house. And Peter followed afar off. [Matt 26:57](#); [Mark 14:53](#); [John 18:12](#); [John 18:24](#); [\[John 18:13\]](#); [\[John 18:15\]](#);

55 And when they had kindled a fire in the midst of the hall, and were set down together, Peter sat down among them. [Matt 26:69](#); [Mark 14:54](#); [Mark 14:66](#); [John 18:16](#); [John 18:25](#); [\[John 18:18\]](#);

56 But a certain maid beheld him as he sat by the fire, and earnestly looked upon him, and said, This man was also with him.

57 And he denied him, saying, Woman, I know him not.

58 And after a little while another saw him, and said, you are also of them. And Peter said, Man, I am not. [\[Mark 14:69\]](#); [\[John 18:25\]](#);

59 And about the space of one hour after another confidently affirmed, saying, Of a truth this *fellow* also was with him: for he is a Galilaean.

60 And Peter said, Man, I know not what you sayest. And immediately, while he yet spoke, the cock crew.

61 And the Lord turned, and looked upon Peter. And Peter remembered the word of the Lord, how he had said unto him, **Before the cock crow, you shall deny me thrice.** [Matt 26:34](#); [Matt 26:75](#); [Mark 14:72](#); [John 13:38](#); [John 18:27](#);

62 And Peter went out, and wept bitterly.

shamefully abused

63 And the men that held Yahushua mocked him, and smote *him*. [Matt 26:67](#); [Mark 14:65](#); [Job 16:10](#); [Isa 50:6](#); [John 19:3](#);

64 And when they had blindfolded him, they struck him on the face, and asked him, saying, Prophecy, who is it that smote you? [\[Matt 26:68\]](#);

65 And many other things blasphemously spoke they against him.

and confesses himself to be the Son of Elohim

66 And as soon as it was day, the elders of the people and the chief priests and the scribes came together, and led him into their council, saying, [Ps 2:2](#); [Matt 27:1](#); [Mark 15:1](#); [John 18:28](#);

67 are you the Messiah? tell us. And he said unto them, **If I tell you, you will not believe:**

68 **And if I also ask *you*, you will not answer me, nor let *me* go.**

69 **Hereafter shall the Son of man sit on the right hand of the power of Elohim.** [Dan 7:9](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Matt 24:30](#); [Matt 25:31](#); [Matt 26:64](#); [Mark 14:62](#); [Acts 1:11](#); [1Thess 1:10](#); [Rev 1:7](#);

70 Then said they all, are you then the Son of Elohim? And he said unto them, you **say that I am.**

71 And they said, What need we any further witness? for we ourselves have heard of his own mouth.

Yahushua is accused before Pilate, and sent to Herod

- 1** And the whole multitude of them arose, and led him unto Pilate. [Matt 27:2](#); [Mark 15:1](#); [John 18:28](#); [[Matt 20:19](#)]; [[Luke 18:32](#)];
- 2** And they began to accuse him, saying, We found this *fellow* perverting the nation, and forbidding to give tribute to Caesar, saying that he himself is the Messiah a King. [Matt 17:25](#); [Matt 22:21](#); [Mark 12:17](#); [Luke 20:25](#); [Rom 13:7](#); [Acts 17:7](#); [[Matt 27:1](#)];
- 3** And Pilate asked him, saying, are you the King of the Jews? And he answered him and said, you **sayest** *it*. [Matt 27:11](#); [Mark 15:2](#); [John 18:33](#);
- 4** Then said Pilate to the chief priests and *to* the people, I find no fault in this man. [[John 18:38](#)];
- 5** And they were the more fierce, saying, He stirreth up the people, teaching throughout all Jewry, beginning from Galilee to this place.
- 6** When Pilate heard of Galilee, he asked whether the man were a Galilaean.
- 7** And as soon as he knew that he belonged unto Herod's jurisdiction, he sent him to Herod, who himself also was at Jerusalem at that time. [Luke 3:1](#);

Herod mocks him

- 8** And when Herod saw Yahushua, he was exceeding glad: for he was desirous to see him of a long *season*, because he had heard many things of him; and he hoped to have seen some miracle done by him. [Luke 9:7](#);
- 9** Then he questioned with him in many words; but he answered him nothing.
- 10** And the chief priests and scribes stood and vehemently accused him.
- 11** And Herod with his men of war set him at nought, and mocked *him*, and arrayed him in a gorgeous robe, and sent him again to Pilate.

Herod and Pilate are made friends

- 12** And the same day Pilate and Herod were made friends together: for before they were at enmity between themselves. [Acts 4:27](#);

Barabbas is desired of the people, and is loosed by Pilate, and Yahushua is given to be crucified

- 13** And Pilate, when he had called together the chief priests and the rulers and the people, [Matt 27:23](#); [Mark 15:14](#); [John 18:38](#); [John 19:4](#);
- 14** Said unto them, you have brought this man unto me, as one that perverteth the people: and, behold, I, having examined *him* before you, have found no fault in this man touching those things whereof you accuse him:
- 15** No, nor yet Herod: for I sent you to him; and, lo, nothing worthy of death is done unto him.
- 16** I will therefore chastise him, and release *him*.
- 17** (For of necessity he must release one unto them at the feast.) [Matt 27:15](#); [Mark 15:6](#); [John 18:39](#);
- 18** And they cried out all at once, saying, Away with this *man*, and release unto us Barabbas: [Acts 3:14](#); [[Matt 27:20](#)]; [[Mark 15:11](#)]; [[Acts 3:13](#)]; [[Acts 13:28](#)]; [[Acts 21:36](#)];
- 19** (Who for a certain sedition made in the city, and for murder, was cast into prison.) [[Matt 27:16](#)]; [[Mark 15:7](#)]; [[John 18:40](#)];
- 20** Pilate therefore, willing to release Yahushua, spoke again to them.
- 21** But they cried, saying, Crucify *him*, crucify him.
- 22** And he said unto them the third time, Why, what evil has he done? I have found no cause of death in him: I will therefore chastise him, and let *him* go.

23 And they were instant with loud voices, requiring that he might be crucified. And the voices of them and of the chief priests prevailed.

24 And Pilate gave sentence that it should be as they required. [Matt 27:26](#); [Mark 15:15](#); [John 19:16](#);

25 And he released unto them him that for sedition and murder was cast into prison, whom they had desired; but he delivered Yahushua to their will.

He tells the women, that lament him, the destruction of Jerusalem

26 And as they led him away, they laid hold upon one Simon, a Cyrenian, coming out of the country, and on him they laid the stake, that he might bear *it* after Yahushua. [Matt 27:32](#); [Mark 15:21](#); [[John 19:17](#)];

27 And there followed him a great company of people, and of women, which also bewailed and lamented him.

28 But Yahushua turning unto them said, **Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not for me, but weep for yourselves, and for your children.**

29 For, behold, the days are coming, in the which they shall say, **Blessed *are* the barren, and the wombs that never bare, and the paps which never gave suck.** [[Hos 9:14](#)];

30 Then shall they begin to say to the mountains, Fall on us; and to the hills, Cover us. [Isa 2:19](#); [Hos 10:8](#); [Rev 6:16](#); [Rev 9:6](#);

31 **For if they do these things in a green tree, what shall be done in the dry?** [Jer 25:29](#); [1Pet 4:17](#); [[Ezek 20:47](#)];

32 And there were also two other, malefactors, led with him to be put to death. [John 19:18](#);

33 And when they were come to the place, which is called Calvary, there they crucified him, and the malefactors, one on the right hand, and the other on the left. [Matt 27:33](#); [Matt 27:38](#); [Mark 15:22](#); [John 19:18](#); [[Ps 22:16](#)]; [[John 19:17](#)];

prays for his enemies

34 Then said Yahushua, **Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do.** And they parted his raiment, and cast lots. [Acts 7:60](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [Ps 22:18](#); [Matt 27:35](#); [Mark 15:24](#); [John 19:23](#); [[Isa 53:12](#)]; [[Matt 5:44](#)]; [[Luke 6:28](#)];

35 And the people stood beholding. And the rulers also with them derided *him*, saying, He saved others; let him save himself, if he be the Messiah, the chosen of Elohim. [Matt 27:39](#); [Mark 15:29](#);

36 And the soldiers also mocked him, coming to him, and offering him vinegar,

37 And saying, If you be the king of the Jews, save thyself.

38 And a superscription also was written over him in letters of Greek, and Latin, and Hebrew, **THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS.** [Matt 27:37](#); [Mark 15:26](#); [John 19:19](#);

Two evildoers are crucified with him

39 And one of the malefactors which were hanged railed on him, saying, If you be the Messiah, save thyself and us.

40 But the other answering rebuked him, saying, Dost not you fear Elohim, seeing you are in the same condemnation?

41 And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds: but this man has done nothing amiss.

42 And he said unto Yahushua, Lord, remember me when you come into thy kingdom.

43 And Yahushua said unto him, **Verily I say unto you today, shall you be with me in paradise.** [[John 5:24](#)];

44 And it was about the sixth hour, and there was a darkness over all the land until the ninth hour. [Matt 27:45](#); [Mark 15:33](#);

45 And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst. [Matt 27:51](#); [Mark 15:38](#);

His death

46 And when Yahushua had cried with a loud voice, he said, **Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit:** and having said thus, he gave up the ghost. [Ps 31:5](#); [Matt 27:50](#); [Mark 15:37](#); [John 19:30](#); [Acts 7:59](#);

47 Now when the centurion saw what was done, he glorified Elohim, saying, Certainly this was a righteous man. [Matt 27:54](#); [Mark 15:39](#);

48 And all the people that came together to that sight, beholding the things which were done, smote their breasts, and returned.

49 And all his acquaintance, and the women that followed him from Galilee, stood afar off, beholding these things. [[Matt 27:55](#)]; [[Mark 15:40](#)]; [[John 19:25](#)];

His burial

50 And behold, a man named Joseph, a member of the council, a good and a righteous man - [Matt 27:57](#); [Mark 15:43](#); [John 19:38](#); [[Mark 15:42](#)];

51 he had not agreed with the council and their action - *he was* from the Judean town of Arimathea, who was also waiting for the kingdom of Elohim.

52 He went unto Pilate to ask for the body of Yahushua.

53 And he took it down, wrapped it in a linen cloth, and placed it in a tomb cut out of the rock, where no one had yet been buried. [Matt 12:40](#); [Matt 26:12](#); [Matt 27:59](#); [Mark 15:46](#); [[Matt 27:60](#)];

54 And that day was preparation day, *an annual*/Sabbath was drawing near.*

**Yahushua died on Passover, Nissan 14 which fell on Wednesday that year. The following day Nissan 15 was an annual Sabbath, first day of unleavened bread.*

55 And the women who came with him from Galilee followed, to see the tomb, and how his body was laid. [Luke 8:2](#);

56 Then they went back home to prepare spices and ointments. And rested on the Sabbath according to the commandment.

Yahushua's resurrection is declared by two angels to the women that come to the sepulcher

- 1** Now on the first of the weeks, very early in the morning, they went to the sepulcher, bringing the spices which they had prepared, and certain *others* with them. [Matt 28:1](#); [Mark 16:1](#); [John 20:1](#);
- 2** And they found the stone rolled away from the sepulcher.
- 3** And they entered in, and found not the body of the Lord Yahushua.
- 4** And it came to pass, as they were much perplexed thereabout, behold, two men stood by them in shining garments: [\[Matt 28:5\]](#); [\[John 20:11\]](#); [\[Acts 10:30\]](#);
- 5** And as they were afraid, and bowed down *their* faces to the earth, they said unto them, Why seek you the living among the dead? [\[Mark 16:6\]](#);
- 6** He is not here, but is risen: remember how he spoke unto you when he was yet in Galilee, [Matt 16:21](#); [Matt 17:22](#); [Matt 20:18](#); [Mark 8:31](#); [Mark 9:31](#); [Mark 10:33](#); [Luke 9:22](#); [Luke 18:31](#); [\[Matt 27:63\]](#); [\[Matt 28:6\]](#); [\[Luke 17:25\]](#); [\[Luke 24:44\]](#); [\[Acts 13:30\]](#);
- 7** Saying, **The Son of man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again.** [\[Matt 16:21\]](#); [\[Matt 20:17\]](#); [\[Mark 8:31\]](#); [\[Mark 9:30\]](#); [\[Mark 10:32\]](#); [\[Luke 9:22\]](#); [\[Luke 18:31\]](#);
- 8** And they remembered his words, [John 2:22](#);

These report it to others

- 9** And returned from the sepulcher, and told all these things unto the eleven, and to all the rest. [Matt 28:8](#); [Mark 16:10](#); [\[Mark 16:8\]](#); [\[John 20:18\]](#);
- 10** It was Mary Magdalene, and Joanna, and Mary *the mother* of James, and other *women that were* with them, which told these things unto the apostles.
- 11** And their words seemed to them as idle tales, and they believed them not.
- 12** Then arose Peter, and ran unto the sepulcher; and stooping down, he beheld the linen clothes laid by themselves, and departed, wondering in himself at that which was come to pass. [John 20:3](#); [John 20:6](#);

Yahushua himself appears to the two disciples that went to Emmaus

- 13** And, behold, two of them went that same day to a village called Emmaus, which was from Jerusalem *about* threescore furlongs. [Mark 16:12](#);
- 14** And they talked together of all these things which had happened.
- 15** And it came to pass, that, while they communed *together* and reasoned, Yahushua himself drew near, and went with them. [Luke 24:36](#); [Matt 18:20](#);
- 16** But their eyes were holden that they should not know him.
- 17** And he said unto them, **What kind of conversation *is* this that you have one to another, as you walk, and are sad?**
- 18** And the one of them, whose name was Cleopas, answering said unto him, are you only a stranger in Jerusalem, and have not known the things which are come to pass there in these days?
- 19** And he said unto them, **What things?** And they said unto him, Concerning Yahushua of Nazareth, which was a prophet mighty in deed and word before Elohim and all the people: [Luke 7:16](#); [John 4:19](#); [John 6:14](#); [\[John 9:17\]](#);
- 20** And how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him to be condemned to death, and have crucified him.
- 21** But we trusted that it had been he which should have redeemed Israel: and beside all this, to day is the third day since these things were done. [Acts 1:6](#);
- 22** Yes, and certain women also of our company made us astonished, which were early at the sepulcher; [Matt 28:8](#); [Mark 16:10](#); [John 20:18](#);
- 23** And when they found not his body, they came, saying, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which said that he was alive.

24 And certain of them which were with us went to the sepulcher, and found *it* even so as the women had said: but him they saw not.

25 Then he said unto them, **O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken:** [Matt 26:54]; [Mark 14:49];

26 **Ought not the Messiah to have suffered these things, and to enter into his glory?** Isa 50:6; Isa 53:5; Phil 2:7; Heb 12:2; 1Pet 1:11; [Acts 14:22]; [2Tim 3:12];

27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself. Gen 3:15; Gen 22:18; Gen 26:4; Gen 49:10; Deut 18:15; Ps 132:11; Isa 7:14; Isa 9:5; Isa 40:10; Jer 23:5; Jer 33:14; Ezek 34:23; Ezek 37:25; Dan 9:24; Mic 7:20; [John 5:39]; [Acts 3:18];

28 And they drew nigh unto the village, whither they went: and he made as though he would have gone further.

29 But they compelled him, saying, Abide with us: for it is toward evening, and the day is far spent. And he went in to tarry with them. Gen 19:3; Acts 16:15; Heb 13:2;

30 And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed *it*, and brake, and gave to them.

31 And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight.

32 And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?

33 And they rose up the same hour, and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven gathered together, and them that were with them,

34 Saying, The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon. 1Cor 15:5; [Acts 10:40];

35 And they told what things *were done* in the way, and how he was known of them in breaking of bread.

afterwards he appears to the apostles, and reproves their unbelief

36 And as they thus spoke, Yahushua himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, **Peace be unto you.** Mark 16:14; John 20:19; 1Cor 15:5; [Matt 18:20]; [Luke 24:15];

37 But they were terrified and frightened, and supposed that they had seen a spirit.

38 And he said unto them, **Why are you troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts?**

39 **Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit has not flesh and bones, as you see me have.** [1John 1:1];

40 And when he had thus spoken, he showed them *his* hands and *his* feet.

41 And while they yet believed not for joy, and wondered, he said unto them, **Have you here any meat?** John 21:10;

42 And they gave him a piece of a broiled fish, and of a honeycomb.

43 And he took *it*, and did eat before them.

44 And he said unto them, **These *are* the words which I spoke unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and *in* the prophets, and *in* the psalms, concerning me.** Luke 24:6; Matt 16:21; Matt 17:22; Matt 20:18; Mark 8:31; Mark 9:31; Mark 10:33; Luke 9:22; Luke 18:31;

45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures, [Acts 8:35]; [1John 5:20];

46 And said unto them, **Thus it is written, that the Messiah should suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:** Ps 22:6; Acts 17:3;

gives them a charge

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. Acts 13:38; 1John 2:12; Acts 2:4; [Acts 17:30]; [Acts 20:21];

48 And you are witnesses of these things. [Acts 1:4]; [Acts 1:8];

promises the Holy Spirit

49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry you in the city of Jerusalem, until you be endued with power from on high. [John 14:26](#); [John 15:26](#); [John 16:7](#); [Acts 1:4](#);

and so ascends into heaven

50 And he led them out as far as to Bethany, and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them. [Acts 1:12](#); [[Mark 16:19](#)]; [[John 6:62](#)];

51 And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them, and carried up into heaven. [Mark 16:19](#); [Acts 1:9](#);

52 And they worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem with great joy:

53 And were continually in the temple, praising and blessing Elohim. Amen.

John

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#)

JOHN ONE

The divinity, humanity, office, and incarnation of Yahushua the Messiah

- 1** In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. [Prov 8:22](#); [1John 1:1](#); [1John 1:2](#); [[Prov 8:23](#)]; [[John 17:5](#)]; [[Rom 9:5](#)]; [[Rev 19:13](#)];
- 2** The same was in the beginning with Elohim. [John 17:5](#); [[John 5:20](#)];
- 3** All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made. [Gen 1:3](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:16](#); [Heb 1:2](#);
- 4** In him was life; and the life was the light of men. [John 5:26](#); [1John 5:11](#); [John 8:12](#); [John 9:5](#); [John 12:46](#); [[Ps 27:1](#)]; [[John 11:25](#)]; [[John 14:6](#)];
- 5** And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not. [John 3:19](#);
- 6** There was a man sent from Elohim, whose name *was* John. [John 1:33](#); [Mal 3:1](#); [Matt 3:1](#); [Mark 1:2](#); [Mark 1:4](#); [Luke 3:3](#); [Luke 7:27](#);
- 7** The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all *men* through him might believe.
- 8** He was not that Light, but *was sent* to bear witness of that Light.
- 9** *That* was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world. [John 8:12](#); [John 9:5](#); [John 12:46](#); [[John 12:35](#)]; [[1John 1:5](#)];
- 10** He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. [Heb 1:2](#); [Heb 11:3](#);
- 11** He came unto his own, and his own received him not.
- 12** But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of Elohim, *even* to them that believe on his name: [Isa 56:5](#); [Rom 8:15](#); [Gal 3:26](#); [2Pet 1:4](#); [1John 3:1](#); [[Gal 4:5](#)]; [[1John 3:2](#)]; [[1John 5:1](#)];
- 13** Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of Elohim. [[1Cor 15:50](#)];
- 14** And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth. [Isa 7:14](#); [Matt 1:16](#); [Luke 1:31](#); [Luke 2:7](#); [Matt 17:2](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [Col 1:19](#); [Col 2:9](#); [[Isa 40:5](#)]; [[1Tim 3:16](#)]; [[Heb 2:14](#)]; [[2Pet 1:16](#)]; [[1John 1:1](#)];

The testimony of John

- 15** John bore witness of him, and cried, saying, This was he of whom I spoke, He that cometh after me is preferred before me: for he was before me. [John 1:26](#); [John 1:30](#); [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:7](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [[John 3:26](#)]; [[John 5:33](#)];
- 16** And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace. [Col 2:10](#); [[Col 1:19](#)];
- 17** For the law was given through Moses, *but* grace and truth came by Yahushua the Messiah. [Exod 20:1](#); [[John 14:6](#)]; [[Gal 3:19](#)]; [[Heb 7:19](#)];
- 18** No man has seen Elohim at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he has declared *him*. [Exod 33:20](#); [Deut 4:12](#); [John 6:46](#); [1Tim 6:16](#); [1John 4:12](#); [Matt 11:27](#); [[Luke 10:22](#)];
- 19** And this is the record of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, Who are you? [John 5:33](#);
- 20** And he confessed, and denied not; but confessed, I am not the Messiah. [John 3:28](#); [Acts 13:25](#);
- 21** And they asked him, What then? are you Elias? And he saith, I am not. are you that prophet? And he answered, No. [Deut 18:18](#); [[John 3:28](#)];
- 22** Then said they unto him, Who are you? that we may give an answer to them that sent us. What sayest you of thyself?
- 23** He said, I *am* **the voice of one crying in the wilderness, Make straight the way of the Lord,** as said the prophet Esaias. [Isa 40:3](#); [Matt 3:3](#); [Mark 1:3](#); [Luke 3:4](#); [[John 3:28](#)];
- 24** And they which were sent were of the Pharisees.

25 And they asked him, and said unto him, Why baptizest you then, if you be not that Messiah, nor Elias, neither that prophet? [Deut 18:18](#);

26 John answered them, saying, I baptize with water: but there standeth one among you, whom you know not; [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:7](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [Acts 1:5](#); [Acts 11:16](#); [Acts 19:4](#); [\[John 1:15\]](#); [\[John 3:26\]](#);

27 He it is, who coming after me is preferred before me, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. [\[Mark 1:7\]](#); [\[John 5:33\]](#);

28 These things were done in Bethabara beyond Jordan, where John was baptizing. [\[John 10:40\]](#);

29 The next day he seeth Yahushua coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of Elohim, which taketh away the sin of the world. [John 1:36](#); [Isa 53:5](#); [Isa 53:7](#); [\[1Cor 5:7\]](#);

30 This is he of whom I said, After me cometh a man which is preferred before me: for he was before me. [\[John 1:15\]](#);

31 And I knew him not: but that he should be made manifest to Israel, therefore am I come baptizing in water.

32 And John bore record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. [Matt 3:16](#); [Mark 1:10](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [\[Luke 3:21\]](#);

33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize in water, the same said unto me, Upon whom you shall see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he who baptizes with the Holy Spirit. [Matt 3:11](#); [\[John 1:6\]](#); [\[John 5:37\]](#); [\[John 6:27\]](#); [\[John 8:18\]](#);

34 And I saw, and bore record that this is the Son of Elohim. [\[John 3:26\]](#);

35 Again the next day after John stood, and two of his disciples;

36 And looking upon Yahushua as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of Elohim! [John 1:29](#); [Exod 12:3](#); [Isa 53:7](#); [Acts 8:32](#);

37 And the two disciples heard him speak, and they followed Yahushua.

38 Then Yahushua turned, and saw them following, and saith unto them, **What seek you?** They said unto him, Rabbi - which is to say, being interpreted, Master - where dwellest you?

The calling of Andrew, Peter, etc

39 He saith unto them, **Come and see.** They came and saw where he dwelt, and abode with him that day: for it was about the tenth hour.

40 One of the two which heard John *speak*, and followed him, was Andrew, Simon Peter's brother.

41 He first finds his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, We have found the Messiah, which is, being interpreted, the Anointed.

42 And he brought him to Yahushua. And when Yahushua beheld him, he said, you **are Simon the son of Jona: you shall be called Cephas**, which is interpreted Peter. [Matt 16:18](#);

43 The day following Yahushua would go forth into Galilee, and finds Philip, and saith unto him, **Follow me.**

44 Now Philip was of Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter. [John 12:21](#);

45 Philip finds Nathanael, and saith unto him, We have found him, of whom Moses in the law, and the prophets, did write, Yahushua of Nazareth, the son of Joseph. [John 21:2](#); [Gen 3:15](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 49:10](#); [Deut 18:18](#); [2Sam 7:12](#); [Isa 4:2](#); [Isa 7:14](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 40:10-11](#); [Isa 53:1](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Jer 33:14](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Zech 6:12](#); [Zech 9:9](#); [\[Deut 18:15\]](#); [\[John 5:39\]](#); [\[Acts 7:37\]](#);

46 And Nathanael said unto him, Can there any good thing come out of Nazareth? Philip saith unto him, Come and see. [\[John 7:41\]](#); [\[Acts 3:22\]](#);

47 Yahushua saw Nathanael coming to him, and saith of him, **Behold an Israelite indeed, in whom is no guile!**

48 Nathanael saith unto him, Whence knowest you me? Yahushua answered and said unto him, **Before that Philip called you, when you were under the fig tree, I saw you.**

49 Nathanael answered and saith unto him, Rabbi, you are the Son of Elohim; you are the King of Israel.

50 Yahushua answered and said unto him, **Because I said unto you, I saw you under the fig tree, believest you? you shall see greater things than these.**

51 And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter you shall see heaven open, and the angels of Elohim ascending and descending upon the Son of man. [Gen 28:12;](#)

JOHN TWO

Yahushua turns water into wine

- 1** And the third day there was a marriage in Cana of Galilee; and the mother of Yahushua was there: [\[John 4:46\];](#)
- 2** And both Yahushua was called, and his disciples, to the marriage.
- 3** And when they wanted wine, the mother of Yahushua saith unto him, They have no wine.
- 4** Yahushua saith unto her, **Woman, what have I to do with you? mine hour is not yet come.**
- 5** His mother saith unto the servants, Whatsoever he saith unto you, do *it*.
- 6** And there were set there six waterpots of stone, after the manner of the purifying of the Jews, containing two or three firkins apiece. [Mark 7:3;](#)
- 7** Yahushua saith unto them, **Fill the waterpots with water.** And they filled them up to the brim.
- 8** And he saith unto them, **Draw out now, and bring *it* unto the head steward.** And they brought *it*.
- 9** When the head steward tasted the water that was made wine, and knew not where it came from - but the servants who had drawn the water knew - the head steward called the bridegroom,
- 10** And saith unto him, Every man serves good wine first; and then the worse when *guests* are drunk. *But* you have kept the good wine until now.
- 11** This beginning of miracles did Yahushua in Cana of Galilee, and manifested forth his glory; and his disciples believed on him. [\[John 4:46\];](#)

departs into Capernaum

- 12** After this he went down to Capernaum, he, and his mother, and his brethren, and his disciples: and they continued there not many days.

and to Jerusalem

- 13** And the Jews' passover was at hand, and Yahushua went up to Jerusalem,

where he purges the temple of buyers and sellers

- 14** And found in the temple those that sold oxen and sheep and doves, and the changers of money sitting: [Matt 21:12; Mark 11:15; Luke 19:45; \[Mark 11:11\];](#)
- 15** And when he had made a scourge of small cords, he drove them all out of the temple, and the sheep, and the oxen; and poured out the changers' money, and overthrew the tables;
- 16** And said unto them that sold doves, **Take these things hence; make not my Father's house a house of merchandise.**
- 17** And his disciples remembered that it was written, **The zeal of thine house will devour me.** [Ps 69:10; \[Ps 69:9\];](#)

He foretells his death and resurrection

- 18** Then answered the Jews and said unto him, What sign showest you unto us, seeing that you do these things? [Matt 12:38; Matt 16:1; Mark 8:11; Luke 11:29; John 6:30;](#)
- 19** Yahushua answered and said unto them, **Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.** [Matt 26:61; Matt 27:40; Mark 14:58; Mark 15:29; \[John 10:18\]; \[Rom 1:4\];](#)
- 20** Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and will you rear it up in three days?
- 21** But he spoke of the temple of his body.
- 22** When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Yahushua had said. [Luke 24:8;](#)

Many believe because of his miracles, but he will not trust himself with them

23 Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast *day*, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did. [\[John 5:23\]](#);

24 But Yahushua did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all *men*, [\[Prov 15:11\]](#);

25 And needed not that any should testify of man: for he knew what was in man. [1Sam 16:7](#); [1Chr 28:9](#); [Ps 7:9](#); [Ps 103:14](#); [Jer 11:20](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 20:12](#); [John 6:64](#);

JOHN THREE

Yahushua teaches Nicodemus the necessity of regeneration

- 1** Now there was a man of the Pharisees, named Nicodemus, a ruler of the Jews: [John 19:39](#);
- 2** He came to him by night, and said unto him, Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher who has come from Elohim: for no man can do these miracles that you do, except Elohim be with him. [John 7:50](#); [John 19:39](#); [John 9:16](#); [John 9:33](#); [Acts 10:38](#);
- 3** Yahushua answered and said unto him, **Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of Elohim.**
- 4** Nicodemus saith unto him, How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born?
- 5** Yahushua answered, **Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a man be born of water and *of* the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of Elohim.** [Titus 3:5](#);
- 6** That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. [Rom 8:5](#); [\[Job 14:4\]](#);
- 7** Marvel not that I said unto you, you must be born again.
- 8** The wind bloweth where it listeth, and you hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goes: so is every one that is born of the Spirit. [\[Eccl 11:5\]](#);
- 9** Nicodemus answered and said unto him, How can these things be? [John 6:52](#);
- 10** Yahushua answered and said unto him, **are you a master of Israel, and knowest not these things?**
- 11** Verily, verily, I say unto you, We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen; and you receive not our witness. [John 7:16](#); [John 8:28](#); [John 12:49](#); [John 14:24](#); [John 3:32](#); [\[John 8:38\]](#);
- 12** If I have told you earthly things, and you believe not, how shall you believe, if I tell you *of* heavenly things?
- 13** And no man has ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, *even* the Son of man which is in heaven. [John 6:62](#); [Eph 4:9](#); [\[John 6:58\]](#); [\[John 15:18\]](#);

of faith in his death

- 14** And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: [Num 21:9](#); [2Kgs 18:4](#); [John 8:28](#); [John 12:32](#); [\[Num 21:8\]](#);
- 15** That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life. [John 3:36](#);

the great love of Elohim towards the world

- 16** For Elohim so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. [Rom 5:8](#); [Rom 8:31](#); [1John 4:9](#); [John 3:36](#); [Luke 19:10](#); [1John 5:10](#); [\[John 4:14\]](#); [\[John 6:27\]](#); [\[John 6:40\]](#); [\[John 6:47\]](#); [\[John 6:54\]](#); [\[John 11:25\]](#); [\[Acts 16:31\]](#); [\[Rom 8:32\]](#);
- 17** For Elohim sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. [Luke 9:56](#); [John 9:39](#); [John 12:47](#); [1John 4:14](#);

and the condemnation for unbelief

- 18** He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of Elohim. [John 5:24](#); [John 6:40](#); [John 6:47](#); [John 20:31](#); [\[Mark 16:16\]](#); [\[John 12:48\]](#);
- 19** And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil. [John 1:5](#); [\[John 7:7\]](#);
- 20** For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reprov'd. [\[Job 24:16\]](#); [\[Eph 5:13\]](#);
- 21** But he that doeth truth cometh to the light, that his deeds may be made manifest, that they are wrought in Elohim. [Eph 5:8](#); [Eph 5:13](#);

Yahushua baptizes in Judea

22 After these things came Yahushua and his disciples into the land of Judaea; and there he tarried with them, and baptized. [John 4:1](#);

The baptism, witness, and doctrine of John concerning Yahushua

23 And John also was baptizing in Aenon near to Salim, because there was much water there: and they came, and were baptized. [Matt 3:6](#); [Mark 1:5](#); [Luke 3:7](#); [[Mark 1:4](#)]; [[John 10:40](#)]; [[Acts 13:24](#)];

24 For John was not yet cast into prison. [Matt 14:3](#);

25 Then there arose a question between *some* of John's disciples and the Jews about purifying.

26 And they came unto John, and said unto him, Rabbi, he that was with you beyond Jordan, to whom you barest witness, behold, the same baptizeth, and all *men* come to him. [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:7](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [John 1:15](#); [John 1:26](#); [John 1:34](#); [[John 4:1](#)];

27 John answered and said, A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven. [[1Cor 4:7](#)];

28 You yourselves bear me witness, that I said, I am not the Messiah, but that I am sent before him. [John 1:20](#); [Mal 3:1](#); [Matt 11:10](#); [Mark 1:2](#); [Luke 1:17](#); [Luke 7:27](#); [John 1:21](#); [John 1:23](#);

29 He that has the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled.

30 He must increase, but I *must* decrease.

31 He that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is earthly, and speaketh of the earth: he that cometh from heaven is above all. [John 8:23](#);

32 And what he has seen and heard, that he testifieth; and no man receiveth his testimony. [John 5:30](#); [John 8:26](#); [John 12:49](#); [John 14:10](#); [[John 3:11](#)];

33 He that has received his testimony has set to his seal that Elohim is true. [Rom 3:4](#);

34 For he whom Elohim has sent speaketh the words of Elohim: for Elohim giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*. [Eph 4:7](#); [[Isa 42:1](#)];

35 The Father loveth the Son, and has given all things into his hand. [Matt 11:27](#); [Matt 28:18](#); [Luke 10:22](#); [John 5:22](#); [John 17:2](#); [Heb 2:8](#); [[John 5:20](#)]; [[John 13:3](#)];

36 He that believeth on the Son has everlasting life: and he that obeys not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of Elohim abideth on him. [John 3:16](#); [John 6:47](#); [1John 5:10](#); [[John 3:15](#)]; [[John 11:25](#)]; [[Acts 16:31](#)]; [[Rom 1:17](#)];

Yahushua talks with a woman of Samaria, and reveals himself unto her

- 1** When therefore the Lord Yahushua learned that the Pharisees had heard that he made and baptized more disciples than John - [John 3:26](#); [\[John 3:22\]](#);
- 2** Though Yahushua himself baptized not, but his disciples -
- 3** He left Judaea, and departed to Galilee.
- 4** Now it was necessary that he passed through Samaria.
- 5** Therefore he came a town of Samaria called Sychar, near the plot of land that Jacob gave to his son Joseph. [Gen 33:19](#); [Gen 48:22](#); [Josh 24:32](#);
- 6** Now Jacob's well was there. Yahushua therefore, being wearied with *his* journey, sat thus on the well: *and* it was about the sixth hour.
- 7** There cometh a woman of Samaria to draw water: Yahushua saith unto her, **Give me to drink.**
- 8** For his disciples went to town to buy food.
- 9** Then saith the woman of Samaria unto him, How is it that you, being a Jew, askest drink of me, a woman of Samaria? - since the Jews do not associate with the Samaritans. [Luke 9:52-53](#); [John 8:48](#); [\[Luke 9:53\]](#); [\[Acts 10:28\]](#);
- 10** Yahushua answered and said unto her, **If you knewest the gift of Elohim, and who it is that saith to you, Give me to drink; you wouldest have asked of him, and he would have given you living water.** [\[Isa 9:6\]](#);
- 11** The woman saith unto him, Sir, you have nothing to draw with, and the well is deep: from whence then have you that living water? [Jer 2:13](#);
- 12** are you greater than our father Jacob, which gave us the well, and drank thereof himself, and his children, and his cattle?
- 13** Yahushua answered and said unto her, **Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:** [John 6:58](#);
- 14** **But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.** [John 3:16](#); [John 6:27](#); [John 6:35](#); [John 6:54](#); [John 7:38](#); [\[John 6:40\]](#);
- 15** The woman saith unto him, Sir, give me this water, that I thirst not, neither come hither to draw.
- 16** Yahushua saith unto her, **Go, call thy husband, and come hither.**
- 17** The woman answered and said, I have no husband. Yahushua said unto her, you **have well said, I have no husband:**
- 18** **For you have had five husbands; and he whom you now have is not thy husband: in that you spoke truly.**
- 19** The woman saith unto him, Sir, I perceive that you are a prophet. [Luke 7:16](#); [Luke 24:19](#); [John 6:14](#); [\[John 9:17\]](#);
- 20** Our fathers worshipped in this mountain; and you say, that in Jerusalem is the place where men ought to worship. [Deut 12:5](#); [Deut 12:11](#); [1Kgs 9:3](#); [2Chr 7:12](#);
- 21** Yahushua saith unto her, **Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when you shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father.** [\[1Thess 4:9\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:8\]](#);
- 22** **You worship you know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews.** [2Kgs 17:29](#); [Gen 12:3](#); [Gen 18:18](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Heb 7:14](#);
- 23** **But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.**
- 24** **Elohim *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth.** [2Cor 3:17](#); [\[Phil 3:3\]](#);
- 25** The woman saith unto him, I know that Messiah is coming who is called The Anointed; when he comes, he will tell us everything. [\[Deut 18:18\]](#);
- 26** Yahushua saith unto her, **I who speak unto you am *he*.** [John 9:37](#);

His disciples marvel

27 And upon this came his disciples, and marvelled that he talked with the woman: yet no man said, What seekest you? or, Why talkest you with her?

28 The woman then left her waterpot, and went her way into the city, and saith to the men,

29 Come, see a man, which told me all things that ever I did: is not this the Messiah? [\[Matt 12:23\];](#)

30 Then they went out of the city, and came unto him.

He declares to them his zeal for Elohim's glory

31 In the mean while his disciples prayed him, saying, Master, eat.

32 But he said unto them, **I have meat to eat that you know not of.**

33 Therefore said the disciples one to another, Has any man brought him *ought* to eat?

34 Yahushua saith unto them, **My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work.** [\[John 17:4\];](#)

35 **Say not you, There are yet four months, and *then* cometh harvest? behold, I say unto you, Lift up your eyes, and look on the fields; for they are white already to harvest.** [Matt 9:37; Luke 10:2;](#)

36 **And he that reapeth receiveth wages, and gathereth fruit unto life eternal: that both he that soweth and he that reapeth may rejoice together.**

37 **And herein is that saying true, One soweth, and another reapeth.**

38 **I sent you to reap that whereon you bestowed no labour: other men laboured, and you are entered into their labours.**

Many Samaritans believe on him

39 And many of the Samaritans of that city believed on him for the saying of the woman, which testified, He told me all that ever I did.

40 So when the Samaritans were come unto him, they besought him that he would tarry with them: and he abode there two days.

41 And many more believed because of his own word;

42 And said unto the woman, Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Saviour of the world, the Messiah. [John 17:8; \[John 7:41\]; \[1John 2:2\];](#)

He departs into Galilee, and heals the ruler's son that lay sick at Capernaum

43 Now after two days he departed thence, and went into Galilee. [\[Matt 4:12\]; \[Mark 1:14\]; \[Luke 4:14\]; \[Luke 4:16\];](#)

44 For Yahushua himself testified, that a prophet has no honour in his own country. [Matt 13:57; Mark 6:4; Luke 4:24;](#)

45 Then when he was come into Galilee, the Galilaeans received him, having seen all the things that he did at Jerusalem at the feast: for they also went unto the feast.

46 So Yahushua came again into Cana of Galilee, where he made the water wine. And there was a certain nobleman, whose son was sick at Capernaum. [John 2:1; John 2:11;](#)

47 When he heard that Yahushua was come out of Judaea into Galilee, he went unto him, and besought him that he would come down, and heal his son: for he was at the point of death.

48 Then said Yahushua unto him, **Except you see signs and wonders, you will not believe.** [1Cor 1:22;](#)

49 The nobleman saith unto him, Sir, come down ere my child die.

50 Yahushua saith unto him, **Go thy way; thy son liveth.** And the man believed the word that Yahushua had spoken unto him, and he went his way.

51 And as he was now going down, his servants met him, and told *him*, saying, Thy son liveth.

52 Then enquired he of them the hour when he began to amend. And they said unto him, yosterday at the seventh hour the fever left him.

53 So the father knew that *it was* at the same hour, in the which Yahushua said unto him, **Thy son liveth:** and himself believed, and his whole house.

54 This *is* again the second miracle *that* Yahushua did, when he was come out of Judaea into Galilee.

Yahushua on the Sabbath day cures him that was diseased eight and thirty years

- 1** After this there was a feast of the Jews; and Yahushua went up to Jerusalem. [Lev 23:2; Deut 16:1;](#)
- 2** Now there is at Jerusalem by the sheep *market* a pool, which is called in the Hebrew tongue Bethesda, having five porches.
- 3** In these lay a great multitude of impotent folk, of blind, halt, withered.
- 4** [*Spurious verse not in earlier manuscript*]
- 5** And a certain man was there, which had an infirmity thirty and eight years.
- 6** When Yahushua saw him lie, and knew that he had been now a long time *in that case*, he saith unto him, will **you be made whole?**
- 7** The impotent man answered him, Sir, I have no man, when the water is troubled, to put me into the pool: but while I am coming, another steppeth down before me.
- 8** Yahushua saith unto him, **Rise, take up thy bed, and walk.** [Matt 9:6; Mark 2:11; Mark 5:24; \[Isa 35:6\];](#)
- 9** And immediately the man was made whole, and took up his bed, and walked: and on the same day was the Sabbath. [John 9:14;](#)

The Jews therefore cavit, and persecute him for it

- 10** The Jews therefore said unto him that was cured, It is the Sabbath day: it is not lawful for you to carry *thy* bed. [Exod 20:10; Deut 5:13; Jer 17:21; Matt 12:2; Mark 2:24; Luke 6:2;](#)
- 11** He answered them, He that made me whole, the same said unto me, **Take up thy bed, and walk.**
- 12** Then asked they him, What man is that which said unto you, **Take up thy bed, and walk?** [\[Exod 16:35\];](#)
- 13** And he that was healed wist not who it was: for Yahushua had conveyed himself away, a multitude being in *that* place.
- 14** Afterward Yahushua finds him in the temple, and said unto him, **Behold, you are made whole: sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto you.** [Matt 12:45; John 8:11; \[Luke 11:26\];](#)
- 15** The man departed, and told the Jews that it was Yahushua, which had made him whole.
- 16** And therefore did the Jews persecute Yahushua, and sought to slay him, because he had done these things on the Sabbath day.

He answers for himself, and reproves them, showing by the testimony of his Father

- 17** But Yahushua answered them, **My Father worketh hitherto, and I work.** [John 14:10; \[Prov 8:30\]; \[John 10:36\];](#)
- 18** Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he not only had broken the Sabbath, but said also that Elohim was his Father, making himself equal with Elohim. [John 7:19; \[Matt 12:14\]; \[John 10:33\]; \[John 19:7\];](#)
- 19** Then answered Yahushua and said unto them, **Verily, verily, I say unto you, The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doeth, these also doeth the Son likewise.** [John 5:30; John 8:38; John 9:4; Isa 54:5; John 10:30; John 14:9; John 17:5;](#)
- 20** For the Father loveth the Son, and showeth him all things that himself doeth: and he will show him greater works than these, that you may marvel. [John 1:2; John 3:35; John 7:16; John 8:28; John 14:24; \[John 12:49\];](#)
- 21** For as the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth *them*; even so the Son quickeneth whom he will.
- 22** For the Father judgeth no man, but has committed all judgment unto the Son: [Matt 11:27; John 3:35;](#)
- 23** That all *men* should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which has sent him. [John 2:23;](#)

24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, has everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life. [John 3:18](#); [John 6:40](#); [John 6:47](#); [John 8:51](#); [Luke 23:43](#); [[John 11:25](#)];

25 Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of Elohim: and they that hear shall live. [Eph 2:1](#); [Eph 2:5](#); [1Tim 5:6](#); [[1Pet 4:6](#)];

26 For as the Father has life in himself; so has he given to the Son to have life in himself; [[John 1:4](#)];

27 And has given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man. [[John 17:2](#)];

28 Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear his voice, [1Thess 4:16](#);

29 And shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation. [Dan 12:2](#); [Matt 25:34](#); [Matt 25:46](#); [[John 11:24](#)];

30 I can of mine own self do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which has sent me. [John 6:38](#); [[John 3:32](#)]; [[John 5:19](#)];

of John

31 If I bear witness of myself, my witness is not true. [John 8:14](#);

32 There is another that beareth witness of me; and I know that the witness which he witnesseth of me is true. [Isa 42:1](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#);

33 **you** sent unto John, and he bore witness unto the truth. [John 1:15](#); [John 1:19](#); [John 1:27](#);

34 But I receive not testimony from man: but these things I say, that you might be saved.

35 He was a burning and a shining light: and you were willing for a season to rejoice in his light.

of his works

36 But I have greater witness than *that* of John: for the works which the Father has given me to finish, the same works that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father has sent me. [1John 5:9](#); [John 10:25](#);

37 And the Father himself, which has sent me, has borne witness of me. **you** have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape. [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 1:11](#); [Mark 9:7](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [John 1:33](#); [John 6:27](#); [John 8:18](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [Exod 33:20](#); [Deut 4:12](#); [1Tim 6:16](#); [1John 4:12](#); [[1John 5:9](#)];

38 And **you** have not his word abiding in **you**: for whom he has sent, him **you** believe not.

and of the scriptures, who he is

39 Search the scriptures; for in them **you** think **you** have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me. [Isa 34:16](#); [Luke 16:29](#); [Acts 17:11](#); [Deut 18:18](#); [Luke 24:27](#); [John 1:45](#);

40 And **you** will not come to me, that **you** might have life.

41 I receive not honour from men.

42 But I know **you**, that **you** have not the love of Elohim in **you**.

43 I am come in my Father's name, and **you** receive me not: if another shall come in his own name, him **you** will receive. [[Matt 24:5](#)]; [[John 7:28](#)]; [[John 8:42](#)];

44 How can **you** believe, which receive honour one of another, and seek not the honour that *cometh* from Elohim only? [John 12:43](#);

45 Do not think that I will accuse **you** to the Father: there is *one* that accuseth **you**, *even* Moses, in whom **you** trust.

46 For had **you** believed Moses, **you** would have believed me: for he wrote of me. [Gen 3:15](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 28:14](#); [Deut 18:18](#);

47 But if **you** believe not his writings, how shall **you** believe my words?

Yahushua feeds five thousand men with five loaves and two fishes

- 1** After these things Yahushua went over the sea of Galilee, which is *the sea* of Tiberias. [Mark 6:32];
- 2** And a great multitude followed him, because they saw his miracles which he did on them that were diseased.
- 3** And Yahushua went up into a mountain, and there he sat with his disciples.
- 4** And the passover, a feast of the Jews, was nigh. Exod 12:18; Lev 23:5; Lev 23:7; Num 28:16; Deut 16:1;
- 5** When Yahushua then lifted up *his* eyes, and saw a great company come unto him, he saith unto Philip, **Whence shall we buy bread, that these may eat?** Matt 14:14; Mark 6:34; Luke 9:13; [Mark 6:35]; [Luke 9:12];
- 6** And this he said to prove him: for he himself knew what he would do.
- 7** Philip answered him, Two hundred pennyworth of bread is not sufficient for them, that every one of them may take a little. [Num 11:22];
- 8** One of his disciples, Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, saith unto him,
- 9** There is a lad here, which has five barley loaves, and two small fishes: but what are they among so many? 2Kgs 4:43; [Matt 16:9]; [Mark 6:38]; [Mark 8:19]; [Luke 9:13];
- 10** And Yahushua said, **Make the men sit down.** Now there was much grass in the place. So the men sat down, in number about five thousand.
- 11** And Yahushua took the loaves; and when he had given thanks, he distributed to the disciples, and the disciples to them that were set down; and likewise of the fishes as much as they would. 1Sam 9:13; [2Kgs 4:43]; [Acts 27:35];
- 12** When they were filled, he said unto his disciples, **Gather up the fragments that remain, that nothing be lost.**
- 13** Therefore they gathered *them* together, and filled twelve baskets with the fragments of the five barley loaves, which remained over and above unto them that had eaten.
- 14** Then those men, when they had seen the miracle that Yahushua did, said, This is of a truth that prophet that should come into the world. Luke 7:16; Luke 24:19; John 4:19; [John 7:12]; [John 7:40]; [John 9:17];

Thereupon the people would have made him king

- 15** When Yahushua therefore perceived that they would come and take him by force, to make him a king, he departed again into a mountain himself alone. [Matt 14:23]; [John 18:36];

but withdrawing himself, he walks on the sea to his disciples

- 16** And when even was *now* come, his disciples went down unto the sea, Matt 14:23; Mark 6:47;
- 17** And entered into a boat, and went over the sea toward Capernaum. And it was now dark, and Yahushua was not come to them. [Matt 14:22]; [Mark 6:45];
- 18** And the sea arose by reason of a great wind that blew.
- 19** So when they had rowed about five and twenty or thirty furlongs, they see Yahushua walking on the sea, and drawing nigh unto the boat: and they were afraid.
- 20** But he saith unto them, **It is I; be not afraid.**
- 21** Then they willingly received him into the boat: and immediately the boat was at the land whither they went.
- 22** The day following, when the people which stood on the other side of the sea saw that there was none other boat there, save that one whereinto his disciples were entered, and that Yahushua went not with his disciples into the boat, but *that* his disciples were gone away alone;
- 23** (Howbeit there came other boats from Tiberias nigh unto the place where they did eat bread, after that the Lord had given thanks:)

24 When the people therefore saw that Yahushua was not there, neither his disciples, they also got into the boats, and came to Capernaum, seeking for Yahushua.

25 And when they had found him on the other side of the sea, they said unto him, Rabbi, when camest you hither?

reproves the people flocking after him, and all the fleshly hearers of his word

26 Yahushua answered them and said, Verily, verily, I say unto you, you seek me, not because you saw the miracles, but because you did eat of the loaves, and were filled.

27 Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for him has Elohim the Father sealed. John 6:40; John 6:54; John 3:16; John 4:14; Matt 3:17; Matt 17:5; Mark 1:11; Mark 9:7; Luke 3:22; Luke 9:35; John 1:33; John 5:37; John 8:18; 2Pet 1:17; [John 10:36]; [Heb 13:9];

28 Then said they unto him, What shall we do, that we might work the works of Elohim?

29 Yahushua answered and said unto them, This is the work of Elohim, that you believe on him whom he has sent. 1John 3:23; [Luke 11:28]; [Phil 1:6]; [1Thess 1:3];

30 They said therefore unto him, What sign showest you then, that we may see, and believe you? what dost you work? Matt 12:38; Matt 16:1; Mark 8:11; Luke 11:29; 1Cor 1:22; [John 2:18];

31 Our fathers did eat manna in the desert; as it is written, He gave them bread from heaven to eat. Exod 16:4; Exod 16:14; Num 11:7; Ps 78:24; 1Cor 10:3; [Exod 16:15]; [Ps 78:25];

declares himself to be the bread of life to believers

32 Then Yahushua said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Moses gave you not that bread from heaven; but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.

33 For the bread of Elohim is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world.

34 Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread.

35 And Yahushua said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst. Isa 55:1; John 4:14; John 7:37;

36 But I said unto you, That you also have seen me, and believe not.

37 All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out. [John 8:47];

38 For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me. Matt 26:39; Mark 14:36; Luke 22:42; John 5:30;

39 And this is the Father's will which has sent me, that of all which he has given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day. John 10:28; John 17:12; John 18:9;

40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day. John 6:27; John 6:54; John 3:16; John 4:14; [John 3:18]; [John 5:24];

41 The Jews then murmured at him, because he said, I am the bread which came down from heaven.

42 And they said, Is not this Yahushua, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? how is it then that he saith, I came down from heaven? Matt 13:55; Mark 6:3; [Luke 3:23]; [Luke 4:22];

43 Yahushua therefore answered and said unto them, Murmur not among yourselves.

44 No man can come to me, except the Father which has sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. John 6:65; Song 1:4; [Luke 10:22]; [2Thess 3:2];

45 It is written in the prophets, **And they shall be all taught of Elohim.** Every man therefore that has heard, and has learned of the Father, cometh unto me. Isa 54:13; Jer 31:33; Heb 8:10; Heb 10:16; [Jer 31:34]; [Heb 8:11];

46 Not that any man has seen the Father, save he which is of Elohim, he has seen the Father. Matt 11:27; Luke 10:22; John 1:18; John 7:29; John 8:19; [John 10:15];

47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me has everlasting life. John 3:16; John 3:36; [John 3:18]; [John 5:24]; [John 11:25]; [Acts 16:31];

48 I am that bread of life.

49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness, and are dead. Exod 16:4; Num 11:7; Ps 78:24; [Exod 16:12];

50 This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die.

51 I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. [John 11:26](#); [Heb 10:5](#); [Heb 10:10](#); [[1Cor 11:27](#)];

52 The Jews therefore strove among themselves, saying, How can this man give us *his* flesh to eat? [John 3:9](#);

53 Then Yahushua said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except you eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, you have no life in you.

54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, has eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day. [John 6:27](#); [John 6:40](#); [John 3:16](#); [John 4:14](#);

55 For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed.

56 He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.

57 As the living Father has sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.

58 This is that bread which came down from heaven: not as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead: he that eateth of this bread shall live for ever. [John 3:13](#); [[Exod 16:12](#)]; [[John 4:13](#)];

59 These things said he in the synagogue, as he taught in Capernaum.

60 Many therefore of his disciples, when they had heard *this*, said, This is a hard saying; who can hear it? [[1Cor 1:23](#)];

61 When Yahushua knew in himself that his disciples murmured at it, he said unto them, **Does this offend you?**

62 *What* and if you shall see the Son of man ascend up where he was before? [Mark 16:19](#); [Luke 24:50](#); [John 3:13](#); [Acts 1:9](#); [Eph 4:8](#); [[Eph 4:9](#)];

63 It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, *they* are spirit, and *they* are life. [2Cor 3:6](#); [[1Cor 11:27](#)];

64 But there are some of you that believe not. For Yahushua knew from the beginning who they were that believed not, and who should betray him. [John 2:25](#); [John 13:11](#);

65 And he said, Therefore said I unto you, that no man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father. [John 6:44](#); [[Heb 8:11](#)];

Many disciples depart from him

66 From that *time* many of his disciples went back, and walked no more with him. [[1Cor 1:23](#)];

67 Then said Yahushua unto the twelve, **Will you also go away?**

Peter confesses him

68 Then Simon Peter answered him, Lord, to whom shall we go? you have the words of eternal life. [Acts 5:20](#);

69 And we believe and are sure that you are that Messiah, the Son of the living Elohim. [Matt 16:16](#); [Mark 8:29](#); [Luke 9:20](#); [John 11:27](#);

Judas is a devil

70 Yahushua answered them, **Have not I chosen you twelve, and one of you is a devil?** [Luke 6:13](#);

71 He spoke of Judas Iscariot *the son* of Simon: for he it was that should betray him, being one of the twelve.

Yahushua reproves the ambition and boldness of his kinsmen

- 1** After these things Yahushua walked in Galilee: for he would not walk in Jewry, because the Jews sought to kill him.
- 2** Now the Jews' feast of tabernacles was at hand. [Lev 23:34](#);
- 3** His brethren therefore said unto him, Depart hence, and go into Judaea, that thy disciples also may see the works that you do.
- 4** For *there is* no man *that* doeth any thing in secret, and he himself seeketh to be known openly. If you do these things, show thyself to the world.
- 5** For neither did his brethren believe in him. [Mark 3:21](#);
- 6** Then Yahushua said unto them, *My time is not yet come: but your time is always ready.*
- 7** *The world cannot hate you; but me it hateth, because I testify of it, that the works thereof are evil.* [John 14:17](#); [John 15:18](#); [John 3:19](#);
- 8** *Go you up unto this feast: I go not up yet unto this feast; for my time is not yet full come.* [John 8:20](#);
- 9** When he had said these words unto them, he abode *still* in Galilee.

goes up from Galilee to the feast of tabernacles

- 10** But when his brethren were gone up, then went he also up unto the feast, not openly, but as it were in secret.
- 11** Then the Jews sought him at the feast, and said, Where is he? [John 11:56](#);
- 12** And there was much murmuring among the people concerning him: for some said, He is a good man: others said, Nay; but he deceiveth the people. [John 9:16](#); [John 10:19](#); [John 7:40](#); [Matt 21:46](#); [Luke 7:16](#); [John 6:14](#);
- 13** Howbeit no man spoke openly of him for fear of the Jews. [John 9:22](#); [John 12:42](#); [John 19:38](#);

teaches in the temple

- 14** Now about the midst of the feast Yahushua went up into the temple, and taught.
- 15** And the Jews marvelled, saying, How knoweth this man letters, having never learned? [\[Luke 2:47\]](#);
- 16** Yahushua answered them, and said, *My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me.* [John 3:11](#); [John 8:28](#); [John 12:49](#); [John 14:10](#); [John 14:24](#); [\[John 5:20\]](#); [\[John 8:38\]](#);
- 17** *If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of Elohim, or whether I speak of myself.*
- 18** *He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory: but he that seeketh his glory that sent him, the same is true, and no unrighteousness is in him.* [\[John 8:49\]](#);
- 19** *Did not Moses give you the law, and yet none of you keepeth the law? Why go you about to kill me?* [Exod 20:1](#); [Exod 24:3](#); [Acts 7:53](#); [Matt 12:14](#); [Mark 3:6](#); [John 5:18](#); [John 10:39](#); [John 11:53](#); [\[Mark 11:18\]](#); [\[Luke 19:47\]](#); [\[John 7:30\]](#);
- 20** The people answered and said, you have a devil: who goes about to kill you? [John 8:48](#); [John 8:52](#); [John 10:20](#);
- 21** Yahushua answered and said unto them, *I have done one work, and you all marvel.*
- 22** *Moses therefore gave unto you circumcision; - not because it is of Moses, but of the fathers - and you on the Sabbath day circumcise a man.* [Lev 12:3](#); [Gen 17:10](#); [\[Luke 2:21\]](#);
- 23** *If a man on the Sabbath day receive circumcision, that the law of Moses should not be broken; are you angry at me, because I have made a man every whit whole on the Sabbath day?*
- 24** *Judge not according to the appearance, but judge righteous judgment.* [Deut 1:16-17](#); [Prov 24:23](#); [Jas 2:1](#); [\[Deut 1:16\]](#);
- 25** Then said some of them of Jerusalem, Is not this he, whom they seek to kill?
- 26** But, lo, he speaketh boldly, and they say nothing unto him. Do the rulers know indeed that this is the very Messiah? [\[John 18:20\]](#);

27 Howbeit we know this man whence he is: but when the Messiah cometh, no man knoweth whence he is. [Matt 13:55](#); [Mark 6:3](#); [Luke 4:22](#);

28 Then cried Yahushua in the temple as he taught, saying, you both know me, and you know whence I am: and I am not come of myself, but he that sent me is true, whom you know not. [John 5:43](#); [John 8:42](#); [John 8:26](#); [Rom 3:4](#);

29 But I know him: for I am from him, and he has sent me. [John 10:15](#); [[John 6:46](#)]; [[John 8:42](#)];

30 Then they sought to take him: but no man laid hands on him, because his hour was not yet come. [Mark 11:18](#); [Luke 19:47](#); [Luke 20:19](#); [John 7:19](#); [John 8:37](#); [John 8:20](#);

31 And many of the people believed on him, and said, When the Messiah cometh, will he do more miracles than these which this *man* has done? [John 8:30](#);

32 The Pharisees heard that the people murmured such things concerning him; and the Pharisees and the chief priests sent officers to take him.

33 Then said Yahushua unto them, yet a little while am I with you, and *then* I go unto him that sent me. [John 16:16](#);

34 You shall seek me, and shall not find *me*: and where I am, *thither* you cannot come. [John 8:21](#); [John 13:33](#);

35 Then said the Jews among themselves, Whither will he go, that we shall not find him? will he go unto the dispersed among the Gentiles, and teach the Gentiles?

36 What *manner of* saying is this that he said, you shall seek me, and shall not find *me*: and where I am, *thither* you cannot come?

37 In the last day, that great *day* of the feast, Yahushua stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. [Lev 23:36](#); [Isa 55:1](#); [John 6:35](#); [Rev 22:17](#); [[Isa 12:3](#)]; [[Isa 32:15](#)];

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture has said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. [Isa 12:3](#); [[Isa 35:6](#)]; [[Isa 44:3](#)]; [[John 4:14](#)]; [[Acts 2:17](#)];

39 (But this spoke he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Spirit was not yet *given*; because that Yahushua was not yet glorified.) [Isa 44:3](#); [Joel 2:28](#); [Acts 2:17](#);

Various opinions of him among the people

40 Many of the people therefore, when they heard this saying, said, Of a truth this is the Prophet. [Matt 21:46](#); [Luke 7:16](#); [John 6:14](#); [[John 7:12](#)];

41 Others said, This is the Messiah. But some said, Shall the Messiah come out of Galilee? [John 4:42](#); [John 1:46](#);

42 Has not the scripture said, That the Messiah cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was? [Ps 132:11](#); [Mic 5:2](#); [Matt 2:6](#); [[Luke 2:4](#)];

43 So there was a division among the people because of him.

44 And some of them would have taken him; but no man laid hands on him.

The Pharisees are angry that their officers took him not, and chide with Nicodemus for taking his part

45 Then came the officers to the chief priests and Pharisees; and they said unto them, Why have you not brought him?

46 The officers answered, Never man spoke like this man.

47 Then answered them the Pharisees, Are you also deceived?

48 Have any of the rulers or of the Pharisees believed on him? [Isa 33:18](#); [John 12:42](#); [1Cor 1:20](#); [1Cor 2:8](#); [[1Cor 1:26](#)]; [[Jas 2:5](#)];

49 But this people who knoweth not the law are cursed.

50 Nicodemus saith unto them, (he that came to Yahushua by night, being one of them,) [John 3:2](#); [John 19:39](#);

51 Does our law judge *any* man, before it hear him, and know what he doeth? [Exod 23:1](#); [Lev 19:15](#); [Deut 1:17](#); [Deut 17:8](#); [Deut 19:15](#);

52 They answered and said unto him, are you also of Galilee? Search, and look: for out of Galilee ariseth no prophet.

53 And every man went unto his own house.

Yahushua delivers the woman taken in adultery

- 1** Yahushua went unto the mount of Olives. [Luke 22:39];
- 2** And early in the morning he came again into the temple, and all the people came unto him; and he sat down, and taught them. [Luke 21:37];
- 3** And the scribes and Pharisees brought unto him a woman taken in adultery; and when they had set her in the midst,
- 4** They say unto him, Master, this woman was caught in the very act of committing adultery.
- 5** Now Moses in the law commanded us, that such should be stoned: but what sayest you? Lev 20:10; Deut 22:22;
- 6** This they said, tempting him, that they might have to accuse him. But Yahushua stooped down, and with *his* finger wrote on the ground, *as though he heard them not*.
- 7** So when they continued asking him, he lifted up himself, and said unto them, **He that is without sin among you, let him first cast a stone at her.** Deut 17:7;
- 8** And again he stooped down, and wrote on the ground.
- 9** Now when they heard *it*, went out one by one, beginning at the eldest, and Yahushua was left alone with the woman standing before him.
- 10** When Yahushua had lifted up himself, he said unto her, **Woman, where are those thine accusers? has no man condemned you?**
- 11** She said, No man, Lord. And Yahushua said unto her, **Neither do I condemn you: go, and sin no more.** John 5:14;

He declares himself the light of the world, and justifies his doctrine

- 12** Then spoke Yahushua again unto them, saying, **I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.** Isa 42:16; John 1:9; John 9:5; John 12:35-36; [Ps 27:1]; [John 1:4]; [John 12:35]; [John 12:46]; [1John 1:5];
- 13** The Pharisees therefore said unto him, you bearest record of thyself; thy record is not true.
- 14** Yahushua answered and said unto them, though **I bear record of myself, yet my record is true: for I know whence I came, and whither I go; but you cannot tell whence I come, and whither I go.** John 5:31;
- 15** **You judge after the flesh; I judge no man.**
- 16** **And yet if I judge, my judgment is true: for I am not alone, but I and the Father that sent me.**
- 17** **It is also written in your law, that the testimony of two men is true.** Num 35:30; Deut 17:6; Deut 19:15; Matt 18:16; 2Cor 13:1; Heb 10:28;
- 18** **I am one that bear witness of myself, and the Father that sent me beareth witness of me.** Matt 3:17; Matt 17:5; Mark 1:11; Mark 9:7; Luke 3:22; Luke 9:35; John 1:33; John 5:37; John 6:27;
- 19** Then said they unto him, Where is thy Father? Yahushua answered, you **neither know me, nor my Father: if you had known me, you should have known my Father also.** John 16:3; John 14:9; [John 6:46];
- 20** These words spoke Yahushua in the treasury, as he taught in the temple: and no man laid hands on him; for his hour was not yet come. John 7:30; [John 7:8];
- 21** Then said Yahushua again unto them, **I go my way, and you shall seek me, and shall die in your sins: whither I go, you cannot come.** John 7:34; John 13:33; [John 8:24];
- 22** Then said the Jews, Will he kill himself? because he saith, **Whither I go, you cannot come.**
- 23** And he said unto them, you **are from beneath; I am from above: you are of this world; I am not of this world.** John 3:31;
- 24** **I said therefore unto you, that you shall die in your sins: for if you believe not that I am *he*, you shall die in your sins.** John 8:21; [John 12:48];
- 25** Then said they unto him, Who are you? And Yahushua saith unto them, **Even *the same* that I said unto you from the beginning.**

26 I have many things to say and to judge of you: but he that sent me is true; and I speak to the world those things which I have heard of him. [John 7:28](#); [Rom 3:4](#); [John 15:15](#); [[John 3:32](#)];

27 They understood not that he spoke to them of the Father.

28 Then said Yahushua unto them, *When you have lifted up the Son of man, then shall you know that I am, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father has taught me, I speak these things.* [Num 21:9](#); [2Kgs 18:4](#); [John 3:14](#); [John 12:32](#); [John 3:11](#); [John 7:16](#); [John 12:49](#); [John 14:10](#); [John 14:24](#); [[John 5:20](#)];

29 And he that sent me is with me: the Father has not left me alone; for I do always those things that please him. [John 14:10](#); [John 16:32](#);

30 As he spoke these words, many believed on him. [John 7:31](#);

promises freedom to those who believe

31 Then said Yahushua to those Jews which believed on him, *If you continue in my word, then are you my disciples indeed;*

32 And you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free. [Rom 6:18](#); [Gal 5:1](#); [1Pet 2:16](#);

answers the Jews that boasted of Abraham

33 They answered him, We be Abraham's seed, and were never in bondage to any man: how sayest you, you shall be made free? [Matt 3:9](#);

34 Yahushua answered them, *Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.* [Rom 6:20](#); [2Pet 2:19](#); [[Rom 6:16](#)];

35 And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: *but* the Son abideth ever.

36 If the Son therefore shall make you free, you shall be free indeed. [Rom 8:2](#);

37 I know that you are Abraham's seed; but you seek to kill me, because my word has no place in you. [[Luke 19:47](#)]; [[John 7:30](#)];

38 I speak that which I have seen with my Father: and you do that which you have seen with your father. [John 3:11](#); [John 7:16](#); [John 12:49](#); [John 14:10](#); [John 14:24](#); [[John 5:19](#)];

39 They answered and said unto him, Abraham is our father. Yahushua saith unto them, *If you were Abraham's children, you would do the works of Abraham.* [Rom 2:28](#); [Rom 9:7](#); [[Matt 3:9](#)]; [[Luke 3:8](#)]; [[Rom 9:6](#)]; [[Gal 4:23](#)];

40 But now you seek to kill me, a man that has told you the truth, which I have heard of Elohim: this did not Abraham. [John 17:17](#);

41 You do the deeds of your father. Then said they to him, We be not born of fornication; we have one Father, *even* Elohim. [[2Thess 2:9](#)];

42 Yahushua said unto them, *If Elohim were your Father, you would love me: for I proceeded forth and came from Elohim; neither came I of myself, but he sent me.* [John 5:43](#); [John 7:29](#); [[John 7:28](#)];

43 Why do you not understand my speech? *even* because you cannot hear my word.

44 You are of *your* father the devil, and the lusts of your father you will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it. [1John 3:8](#); [Gen 3:1](#); [2Cor 11:3](#); [Jude 1:6](#); [[Gen 3:5](#)];

45 And because I tell *you* the truth, you believe me not.

46 Which of you convicts me of sin? And if I say the truth, why do you not believe me?

47 He that is of Elohim heareth Elohim's words: you therefore hear *them* not, because you are not of Elohim. [John 6:37](#); [John 10:26-27](#); [1John 4:6](#); [[John 10:27](#)];

answers their reviling, by showing his authority and dignity

48 Then answered the Jews, and said unto him, Say we not well that you are a Samaritan, and have a devil? [John 7:20](#); [John 10:20](#); [[Matt 10:25](#)]; [[Mark 3:22](#)]; [[John 4:9](#)]; [[1Pet 2:23](#)];

49 Yahushua answered, *I have not a devil; but I honour my Father, and you do dishonour me.* [John 7:18](#);

50 And I seek not mine own glory: there is one that seeketh and judgeth.

51 Verily, verily, I say unto you, If a man keep my saying, he shall never see death. [John 5:24](#); [John 11:25](#);

52 Then said the Jews unto him, Now we know that you have a devil. Abraham is dead, and the prophets; and you sayest, **If a man keep my saying, he shall never taste of death.** [John 7:20]; [John 10:20];

53 Are you greater than our father Abraham, which is dead? and the prophets are dead: whom makest you thyself? Heb 11:13;

54 Yahushua answered, **If I honour myself, my honour is nothing: it is my Father that honoureth me; of whom you say, that he is your Elohim:**

55 Yet you have not known him; but I know him: and if I should say, I know him not, I shall be a liar like unto you: but I know him, and keep his saying.

56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw *it*, and was glad. Gen 17:17; Luke 10:24; Heb 11:13; [Rom 4:20];

57 Then said the Jews unto him, you are not yet fifty years old, and have you seen Abraham?

58 Yahushua said unto them, **Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.**

and conveys himself from their cruelty

59 Then took they up stones to cast at him: but Yahushua hid himself, and went out of the temple, going through the midst of them, and so passed by. Luke 4:29; John 10:31; John 10:39; John 11:8;

The man that was born blind restored to sight

- 1** And as *Yahushua* passed by, he saw a man which was blind from *his* birth.
- 2** And his disciples asked him, saying, Master, who did sin, this man, or his parents, that he was born blind?
- 3** Yahushua answered, **Neither has this man sinned, nor his parents: but that the works of Elohim should be made manifest in him.** [John 11:4](#);
- 4** **I must work the works of him that sent me, while it is day: the night cometh, when no man can work.** [John 5:19](#);
- 5** **As long as I am in the world, I am the light of the world.** [Isa 42:6](#); [Luke 2:32](#); [John 1:9](#); [John 8:12](#); [John 12:35](#); [John 12:46](#); [Acts 13:47](#); [\[John 1:4\]](#); [\[1John 1:5\]](#);
- 6** When he had thus spoken, he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and he anointed the eyes of the blind man with the clay, [Mark 8:23](#); [\[Isa 35:5\]](#); [\[John 11:37\]](#);
- 7** And said unto him, **Go, wash in the pool of Siloam,** (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing. [\[Ps 146:8\]](#);

He is brought to the Pharisees

- 8** The neighbours therefore, and they which before had seen him that he was blind, said, Is not this he that sat and begged? [Acts 3:2](#);
- 9** Some said, This is he: others *said*, He is like him: *but* he said, I am *he*.
- 10** Therefore said they unto him, How were thine eyes opened?
- 11** He answered and said, A man that is called Yahushua made clay, and anointed mine eyes, and said unto me, **Go to the pool of Siloam, and wash:** and I went and washed, and I received sight.
- 12** Then said they unto him, Where is he? He said, I know not.

They are offended at it, and excommunicate him

- 13** They brought to the Pharisees him that before was blind. [\[John 11:4\]](#);
- 14** And it was the Sabbath day when Yahushua made the clay, and opened his eyes. [Matt 12:1](#); [Mark 2:23](#); [Luke 6:1](#); [John 5:9](#);
- 15** Then again the Pharisees also asked him how he had received his sight. He said unto them, He put clay upon mine eyes, and I washed, and do see.
- 16** Therefore said some of the Pharisees, This man is not of Elohim, because he keepeth not the Sabbath day. Others said, How can a man that is a sinner do such miracles? And there was a division among them. [John 9:33](#); [John 3:2](#); [John 7:12](#); [John 10:19](#);
- 17** They say unto the blind man again, What sayest you of him, that he has opened thine eyes? He said, He is a prophet. [Luke 7:16](#); [Luke 24:19](#); [John 4:19](#); [John 6:14](#);
- 18** But the Jews did not believe concerning him, that he had been blind, and received his sight, until they called the parents of him that had received his sight.
- 19** And they asked them, saying, Is this your son, who you say was born blind? how then does he now see?
- 20** His parents answered them and said, We know that this is our son, and that he was born blind:
- 21** But by what means he now seeth, we know not; or who has opened his eyes, we know not: he is of age; ask him: he shall speak for himself.
- 22** These *words* spoke his parents, because they feared the Jews: for the Jews had agreed already, that if any man did confess that he was the Messiah, he should be put out of the synagogue. [John 7:13](#); [John 12:42](#); [\[John 16:2\]](#);

23 Therefore said his parents, He is of age; ask him.
24 Then again called they the man that was blind, and said unto him, Give Elohim the praise: we know that this man is a sinner. [Josh 7:19](#);
25 He answered and said, Whether he be a sinner *or no*, I know not: one thing I know, that, whereas I was blind, now I see.
26 Then said they to him again, What did he to you? how opened he thine eyes?
27 He answered them, I have told you already, and you did not hear: wherefore would you hear *it* again? will you also be his disciples?
28 Then they reviled him, and said, you are his disciple; but we are Moses' disciples.
29 We know that Elohim spoke unto Moses: *as for* this *fellow*, we know not from whence he is.
30 The man answered and said unto them, Why herein is a marvellous thing, that you know not from whence he is, and yet he has opened mine eyes.
31 Now we know that Elohim heareth not sinners: but if any man be a worshipper of Elohim, and doeth his will, him he heareth. [Prov 15:29](#); [Prov 28:9](#); [Isa 1:15](#); [Mic 3:4](#); [\[Job 27:9\]](#); [\[Job 35:12\]](#);
32 Since the world began was it not heard that any man opened the eyes of one that was born blind. [\[Ps 146:8\]](#);
33 If this man were not of Elohim, he could do nothing. [\[John 3:2\]](#); [\[John 9:16\]](#);
34 They answered and said unto him, you were altogether born in sins, and dost you teach us? And they cast him out. [\[John 16:2\]](#);

but he is received of Yahushua, and confesses him

35 Yahushua heard that they had cast him out; and when he had found him, he said unto him, **Dost you believe on the Son of Elohim?**
36 He answered and said, Who is he, Lord, that I might believe on him?
37 And Yahushua said unto him, you **have both seen him, and it is he that talketh with you.** [John 4:26](#);
38 And he said, Lord, I believe. And he worshipped him.

Who they are whom the Messiah enlightens

39 And Yahushua said, **For judgment I am come into this world, that they which see not might see; and that they which see might be made blind.** [John 3:17](#); [John 12:47](#); [Matt 13:13](#); [\[1Tim 1:13\]](#);
40 And *some* of the Pharisees which were with him heard these words, and said unto him, Are we blind also?
41 Yahushua said unto them, **If you were blind, you should have no sin: but now you say, We see; therefore your sin remaineth.** [\[1Tim 1:13\]](#);

Yahushua is the door, and the good shepherd

- 1** Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a robber.
- 2** But he that entereth in by the door is the shepherd of the sheep.
- 3** To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice: and he calleth his own sheep by name, and leadeth them out.
- 4** And when he puts forth his own sheep, he goes before them, and the sheep follow him: for they know his voice.
- 5** And a stranger will they not follow, but will flee from him: for they know not the voice of strangers.
- 6** This parable spoke Yahushua unto them: but they understood not what things they were which he spoke unto them.
- 7** Then said Yahushua unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep.
- 8** All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers: but the sheep did not hear them.
- 9** I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture. [John 14:6](#); [\[Rom 5:2\]](#); [\[Eph 2:18\]](#); [\[Eph 3:12\]](#); [\[Heb 10:19\]](#);
- 10** The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have *it* more abundantly.
- 11** I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep. [Isa 40:11](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Heb 13:20](#); [1Pet 5:4](#); [\[Ps 23:1\]](#); [\[Ezek 34:31\]](#);
- 12** But he that is a hireling, and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep. [Zech 11:16](#); [\[Zech 11:17\]](#);
- 13** The hireling fleeth, because he is a hireling, and careth not for the sheep.
- 14** I am the good shepherd, and know my *sheep*, and am known of mine. [2Tim 2:19](#);
- 15** As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep. [Matt 11:27](#); [Luke 10:22](#); [John 6:46](#); [John 7:29](#);
- 16** And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, *and* one shepherd. [Ezek 37:22](#);
- 17** Therefore my Father loves me, because I lay down my life, that I might take it again. [Isa 53:12](#);
- 18** No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father. [John 2:19](#); [\[John 14:31\]](#);

Various opinions of him

- 19** There was a division therefore again among the Jews for these sayings. [John 7:12](#); [John 9:16](#);
- 20** And many of them said, He has a devil, and is mad; why hear you him? [John 7:20](#); [John 8:48](#); [John 8:52](#);
- 21** Others said, These are not the words of him that has a devil. Can a devil open the eyes of the blind? [Exod 4:11](#); [Ps 94:9](#); [Ps 146:8](#);
- 22** And it was at Jerusalem the feast of the dedication, and it was winter.

He proves by his works that he is the Messiah the Son of Elohim

- 23** And Yahushua walked in the temple in Solomon's porch. [1Kgs 6:3](#); [Acts 3:11](#); [Acts 5:12](#);
- 24** Then came the Jews round about him, and said unto him, How long dost you make us to doubt? If you be the Messiah, tell us plainly.
- 25** Yahushua answered them, I told you, and you believed not: the works that I do in my Father's name, they bear witness of me. [John 5:36](#);
- 26** But you believe not, because you are not of my sheep, as I said unto you. [\[John 8:47\]](#);
- 27** My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me: [John 8:47](#); [\[1John 4:6\]](#);

28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand. [John 6:39](#); [John 17:12](#); [John 18:9](#);

29 My Father, which gave *them* me, is greater than all; and no *man* is able to pluck *them* out of my Father's hand.

30 I and *my* Father are one. [Isa 54:5](#); [John 5:19](#); [John 14:9](#); [John 17:5](#); [[John 12:45](#)];

escapes the Jews

31 Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him. [John 8:59](#); [John 11:8](#);

32 Yahushua answered them, **Many good works have I showed you from my Father; for which of those works do you stone me?**

33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we stone you not; but for blasphemy; and because that you, being a man, makest thyself Elohim. [John 5:18](#); [[John 19:7](#)];

34 Yahushua answered them, **Is it not written in your law, **I said, you are gods?**** [Ps 82:6](#);

35 If he called them gods, unto whom the word of Elohim came, and the scripture cannot be broken;

36 Say you of him, whom the Father has sanctified, and sent into the world, you blasphemest; because I said, I am the Son of Elohim? [John 6:27](#); [John 5:17](#);

37 If I do not the works of my Father, believe me not. [John 15:24](#);

38 But if I do, though you believe not me, believe the works: that you may know, and believe, that the Father *is* in me, and I in him. [John 14:11](#); [John 17:21](#); [[John 14:10](#)];

and goes again beyond Jordan, where many believe on him

39 Therefore they sought again to take him: but he escaped out of their hand, [Luke 4:29](#); [John 8:59](#); [[Matt 12:14](#)]; [[Mark 3:6](#)]; [[John 7:19](#)];

40 And went away again beyond Jordan into the place where John at first baptized; and there he abode. [John 1:28](#); [John 3:23](#);

41 And many resorted unto him, and said, John did no miracle: but all things that John spoke of this man were true.

42 And many believed on him there.

Yahushua raises Lazarus, four days buried

- 1** Now a certain *man* was sick, *named* Lazarus, of Bethany, the town of Mary and her sister Martha.
- 2** (It was *that* Mary which anointed the Lord with ointment, and wiped his feet with her hair, whose brother Lazarus was sick.) [Matt 26:6](#); [Mark 14:3](#); [Luke 7:37](#); [John 12:3](#); [[Matt 26:7](#)]; [[Luke 7:36](#)]; [[John 12:1](#)];
- 3** Therefore his sisters sent unto him, saying, Lord, behold, he whom you lovest is sick.
- 4** When Yahushua heard *that*, he said, **This sickness is not unto death, but for the glory of Elohim, that the Son of Elohim might be glorified thereby.** [John 11:40](#); [John 9:13](#); [[John 9:3](#)];
- 5** Now Yahushua loved Martha, and her sister, and Lazarus.
- 6** When he had heard therefore that he was sick, he abode two days still in the same place where he was.
- 7** Then after that saith he to *his* disciples, **Let us go into Judaea again.**
- 8** *His* disciples say unto him, Master, the Jews of late sought to stone you; and go you thither again? [John 8:59](#); [John 10:31](#);
- 9** Yahushua answered, **Are there not twelve hours in the day? If any man walk in the day, he stumbleth not, because he seeth the light of this world.**
- 10** **But if a man walk in the night, he stumbleth, because there is no light in him.**
- 11** These things said he: and after that he saith unto them, **Our friend Lazarus sleepeth; but I go, that I may awake him out of sleep.** [Matt 9:24](#); [Mark 5:39](#); [Luke 8:52](#);
- 12** Then said his disciples, Lord, if he sleep, he shall do well.
- 13** Howbeit Yahushua spoke of his death: but they thought that he had spoken of taking of rest in sleep.
- 14** Then said Yahushua unto them plainly, **Lazarus is dead.**
- 15** **And I am glad for your sakes that I was not there, to the intent you may believe; nevertheless let us go unto him.**
- 16** Then said Thomas, which is called Didymus, unto his fellowdisciples, Let us also go, that we may die with him.
- 17** Then when Yahushua came, he found that he had *lain* in the grave four days already.
- 18** Now Bethany was nigh unto Jerusalem, about fifteen furlongs off:
- 19** And many of the Jews came to Martha and Mary, to comfort them concerning their brother.
- 20** Then Martha, as soon as she heard that Yahushua was coming, went and met him: but Mary sat *still* in the house.
- 21** Then said Martha unto Yahushua, Lord, if you hadst been here, my brother had not died.
- 22** But I know, that even now, whatsoever you will ask of Elohim, Elohim will give *it* you.
- 23** Yahushua saith unto her, **Thy brother shall rise again.**
- 24** Martha saith unto him, I know that he shall rise again in the resurrection at the last day. [Dan 12:2](#); [Luke 14:14](#); [John 5:29](#);
- 25** Yahushua said unto her, **I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:** [John 1:4](#); [John 5:24](#); [John 14:6](#); [John 3:16](#); [John 3:36](#); [John 6:47](#); [1John 5:10](#); [[John 8:51](#)];
- 26** **And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest you this?** [John 6:51](#);
- 27** She saith unto him, yes, Lord: I believe that you are the Messiah, the Son of Elohim, which should come into the world. [Matt 16:16](#); [Mark 8:29](#); [Luke 9:20](#); [John 6:69](#);
- 28** And when she had so said, she went her way, and called Mary her sister secretly, saying, The Master is come, and calleth for you.
- 29** As soon as she heard *that*, she arose quickly, and came unto him.
- 30** Now Yahushua was not yet come into the town, but was in that place where Martha met him.
- 31** The Jews then which were with her in the house, and comforted her, when they saw Mary, that she rose up hastily and went out, followed her, saying, She goes unto the grave to weep there.

32 Then when Mary was come where Yahushua was, and saw him, she fell down at his feet, saying unto him, Lord, if you hadst been here, my brother had not died.

33 When Yahushua therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews also weeping which came with her, he groaned in the spirit, and was troubled,

34 And said, **Where have you laid him?** They said unto him, Lord, come and see.

35 Yahushua wept. [Luke 19:41](#);

36 Then said the Jews, Behold how he loved him!

37 And some of them said, Could not this man, which opened the eyes of the blind, have caused that even this man should not have died? [John 9:6](#);

38 Yahushua therefore again groaning in himself cometh to the grave. It was a cave, and a stone lay upon it.

39 Yahushua said, **Take you away the stone.** Martha, the sister of him that was dead, saith unto him, Lord, by this time he stinketh: for he has been *dead* four days.

40 Yahushua saith unto her, **Said I not unto you, that, if you wouldst believe, you should see the glory of Elohim?** [\[John 11:4\]](#);

41 Then they took away the stone *from the place* where the dead was laid. And Yahushua lifted up *his* eyes, and said, **Father, I thank you that you have heard me.**

42 **And I knew that you hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said *it*, that they may believe that you have sent me.** [John 12:30](#);

43 And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, **Lazarus, come forth.**

44 And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Yahushua saith unto them, **Loose him, and let him go.** [John 20:7](#); [\[John 12:9\]](#);

Many Jews believe

45 Then many of the Jews which came to Mary, and had seen the things which Yahushua did, believed on him.

46 But some of them went their ways to the Pharisees, and told them what things Yahushua had done.

The high priests and Pharisees gather a council against Yahushua

47 Then gathered the chief priests and the Pharisees a council, and said, What do we? for this man doeth many miracles. [Ps 2:2](#); [Matt 26:3](#); [Mark 14:1](#); [Luke 22:2](#); [Acts 4:27](#); [John 12:19](#); [\[Acts 4:16\]](#);

48 If we let him thus alone, all *men* will believe on him: and the Romans shall come and take away both our place and nation.

Caiaphas prophesies

49 And one of them, *named* Caiaphas, being the high priest that same year, said unto them, you know nothing at all,

50 Nor consider that it is expedient for us, that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not. [John 18:14](#);

51 And this spoke he not of himself: but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Yahushua should die for that nation;

52 And not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of Elohim that were scattered abroad. [Eph 2:14-16](#);

53 Then from that day forth they took counsel together for to put him to death. [\[Matt 12:14\]](#); [\[Matt 21:38\]](#); [\[Mark 3:6\]](#); [\[Mark 12:7\]](#); [\[Luke 20:14\]](#); [\[John 7:19\]](#);

Yahushua hides himself

54 Yahushua therefore walked no more openly among the Jews; but went thence unto a country near to the wilderness, into a city called Ephraim, and there continued with his disciples.

At the passover they enquire after him, and lay wait for him

55 And the Jews' passover was nigh at hand: and many went out of the country up to Jerusalem before the passover, to purify themselves. [\[Mark 14:1\];](#)

56 Then sought they for Yahushua, and spoke among themselves, as they stood in the temple, What think you, that he will not come to the feast? [John 7:11;](#)

57 Now both the chief priests and the Pharisees had given a commandment, that, if any man knew where he were, he should show *it*, that they might take him.

Yahushua excuses Mary anointing his feet

- 1** Then Yahushua six days before the passover came to Bethany, where Lazarus was which had been dead, whom he raised from the dead. [Matt 26:6](#); [Mark 14:3](#); [Luke 7:37](#); [John 11:2](#);
- 2** There they made him a supper; and Martha served: but Lazarus was one of them that sat at the table with him.
- 3** Then took Mary a pound of ointment of spikenard, very costly, and anointed the feet of Yahushua, and wiped his feet with her hair: and the house was filled with the odour of the ointment. [\[Matt 26:7\]](#); [\[Mark 14:3\]](#); [\[Luke 7:36\]](#); [\[John 11:2\]](#);
- 4** Then saith one of his disciples, Judas Iscariot, Simon's *son*, which should betray him,
- 5** Why was not this ointment sold for three hundred pence, and given to the poor? [Mark 14:5](#);
- 6** This he said, not that he cared for the poor; but because he was a thief, and had the bag, and bore what was put therein. [John 13:29](#);
- 7** Then said Yahushua, **Let her alone: against the day of my burying has she kept this.** [Mark 14:8](#);
- 8** **For the poor always you have with you; but me you have not always.** [Deut 15:11](#); [Matt 26:11](#); [Mark 14:7](#);

The people flock to see Lazarus

- 9** Much people of the Jews therefore knew that he was there: and they came not for Yahushua's sake only, but that they might see Lazarus also, whom he had raised from the dead. [John 11:44](#);

The chief priests consult to kill him

- 10** But the chief priests consulted that they might put Lazarus also to death;
- 11** Because that by reason of him many of the Jews believed Yahushua more and more.

Yahushua rides into Jerusalem

- 12** On the next day much people that were come to the feast, when they heard that Yahushua was coming to Jerusalem, [Matt 21:8](#); [Mark 11:8](#); [Luke 19:36](#);
- 13** Took branches of palm trees, and went forth to meet him, and cried, Hosanna: **Blessed *is* the King of Israel that cometh in the name of the Lord.** [Ps 118:26](#);
- 14** And Yahushua, when he had found a young ass, sat thereon; as it is written, [\[Matt 21:7\]](#); [\[Mark 11:7\]](#); [\[Luke 19:35\]](#);
- 15** **Fear not, daughter of Sion: behold, thy King cometh, sitting on an ass's colt.** [Isa 62:11](#); [Zech 9:9](#); [Matt 21:5](#);
- 16** These things understood not his disciples at the first: but when Yahushua was glorified, then remembered they that these things were written of him, and *that* they had done these things unto him.
- 17** The people therefore that was with him when he called Lazarus out of his grave, and raised him from the dead, bore record.
- 18** For this cause the people also met him, for that they heard that he had done this miracle.
- 19** The Pharisees therefore said among themselves, Perceive you how you prevail nothing? behold, the world is gone after him. [John 11:47](#);

Greeks desire to see Yahushua

- 20** And there were certain Greeks among them that came up to worship at the feast: [Acts 8:27](#);
- 21** The same came therefore to Philip, which was of Bethsaida of Galilee, and desired him, saying, Sir, we would see Yahushua. [John 1:44](#);
- 22** Philip cometh and telleth Andrew: and again Andrew and Philip tell Yahushua.

He foretells his death

23 And Yahushua answered them, saying, **The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified.** [John 13:32](#); [John 17:1](#);

24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a grain of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit. [1Cor 15:36](#);

25 He that loveth his life shall lose it; and he that hateth his life in this world shall keep it unto life eternal. [Matt 10:39](#); [Matt 16:25](#); [Mark 8:35](#); [Luke 9:24](#); [Luke 17:33](#);

26 If any man serve me, let him follow me; and where I am, there shall also my servant be: if any man serve me, him will *my* Father honour. [John 14:3](#); [John 17:24](#);

27 Now is my being troubled; and what shall I say? Father, save me from this hour: but for this cause came I unto this hour. [Matt 26:37-39](#); [Mark 14:34](#); [Luke 22:44](#); [[Matt 26:38](#)];

28 Father, glorify thy name. Then came there a voice from heaven, *saying*, I have both glorified *it*, and will glorify *it* again.

29 The people therefore, that stood by, and heard *it*, said that it thundered: others said, An angel spoke to him.

30 Yahushua answered and said, **This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes.** [John 11:42](#);

31 Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out. [John 16:11](#); [Eph 2:2](#); [John 14:30](#); [Col 2:15](#);

32 And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all *men* unto me. [Num 21:9](#); [2Kgs 18:4](#); [John 3:14](#); [John 8:28](#); [[John 18:32](#)];

33 This he said, signifying what death he should die.

34 The people answered him, We have heard out of the law that the Messiah abideth for ever: and how sayest you, **The Son of man must be lifted up?** who is this Son of man? [2Sam 7:16](#); [1Chr 22:10](#); [Ps 45:6](#); [Ps 89:36](#); [Ps 110:4](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Jer 23:6](#); [Ezek 37:26](#); [Dan 2:44](#); [Dan 7:14](#); [Dan 7:27](#); [Mic 4:7](#); [Heb 1:8](#);

35 Then Yahushua said unto them, yet **a little while is the light with you. Walk while you have the light, lest darkness come upon you: for he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goes.** [John 12:46](#); [John 1:9](#); [John 8:12](#); [John 9:5](#); [Jer 13:16](#); [Eph 5:8](#); [1Thess 5:4](#); [[1John 1:5](#)]; [[1John 2:10](#)];

36 While you have light, believe in the light, that you may be the children of light. These things spoke Yahushua, and departed, and did hide himself from them.

The Jews are generally blinded

37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:

38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spoke, **Lord, who has believed our report? and to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed?** [Isa 53:1](#); [Rom 10:16](#);

39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,

40 He has blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with *their* eyes, nor understand with *their* heart, and be converted, and I should heal them. [Isa 6:9](#); [Ezek 12:2](#); [Matt 13:14](#); [Mark 4:12](#); [Luke 8:10](#); [Acts 28:26](#); [Rom 11:8](#); [[2Cor 4:4](#)];

41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spoke of him. [Isa 6:1](#);

yet many chief rulers believe, but do not confess him

42 Nevertheless among the chief rulers also many believed on him; but because of the Pharisees they did not confess *him*, lest they should be put out of the synagogue: [John 7:13](#); [John 7:48](#); [John 9:22](#); [[John 16:2](#)]; [[John 19:38](#)];

43 For they loved the praise of men more than the praise of Elohim. [John 5:44](#);

therefore Yahushua calls earnestly for confession of faith

44 Yahushua cried and said, He that believeth on me, believeth not on me, but on him that sent me.

45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me. [John 10:30](#); [John 14:9](#);

46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness. [John 12:35](#); [Isa 42:6](#); [Isa 49:6](#); [John 1:9](#); [John 8:12](#); [John 9:5](#); [Acts 13:47](#); [[John 1:4](#)];

47 And if any man hear my words, and believe not, I judge him not: for I came not to judge the world, but to save the world. [John 3:17](#); [John 9:39](#); [[Luke 9:56](#)];

48 He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, has one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day. [John 3:18](#); [John 8:24](#); [Mark 16:16](#);

49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak. [Deut 18:18](#); [John 3:11](#); [John 5:20](#); [John 7:16](#); [John 8:28](#); [John 14:10](#); [John 14:24](#); [John 16:13](#); [[John 3:32](#)]; [[John 8:38](#)];

50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

Yahushua washes the disciples' feet, and exhorts them to humility and love

- 1** Now before the feast of the passover, when Yahushua knew that his hour was come that he should depart out of this world unto the Father, having loved his own which were in the world, he loved them unto the end. [Matt 26:2](#); [Mark 14:1](#); [Luke 22:1](#);
- 2** And during supper, the devil having now put into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's *son*, to betray him; [John 13:27](#); [Luke 22:3](#);
- 3** Yahushua knowing that the Father had given all things into his hands, and that he was come from Elohim, and went to Elohim; [Matt 11:27](#); [John 3:35](#); [John 16:28](#);
- 4** He riseth from supper, and laid aside his garments; and took a towel, and girded himself.
- 5** After that he poureth water into a basin, and began to wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe *them* with the towel wherewith he was girded.
- 6** Then cometh he to Simon Peter: and Peter saith unto him, Lord, dost you wash my feet?
- 7** Yahushua answered and said unto him, **What I do you knowest not now; but you shall know hereafter.** [Matt 3:14](#);
- 8** Peter saith unto him, you shall never wash my feet. Yahushua answered him, **If I wash you not, you have no part with me.**
- 9** Simon Peter saith unto him, Lord, not my feet only, but also *my* hands and *my* head.
- 10** Yahushua saith to him, **He that is washed needeth not save to wash *his* feet, but is clean every whit: and you are clean, but not all.** [John 15:3](#);
- 11** For he knew who should betray him; therefore said he, you **are not all clean.** [John 6:64](#);
- 12** So after he had washed their feet, and had taken his garments, and was set down again, he said unto them, **Know you what I have done to you?**
- 13** **You call me Master and Lord: and you say well; for *so* I am.** [Matt 23:8](#); [Matt 23:10](#); [1Cor 8:6](#); [1Cor 12:3](#); [Phil 2:11](#);
- 14** **If I then, *your* Lord and Master, have washed your feet; you also ought to wash one another's feet.** [Gal 6:1-2](#); [[Matt 20:28](#)]; [[Mark 10:45](#)]; [[Luke 22:27](#)]; [[Gal 6:2](#)]; [[Phil 2:7](#)];
- 15** **For I have given you an example, that you should do as I have done to you.** [1Pet 2:21](#); [1John 2:6](#); [[Phil 2:5](#)];
- 16** Verily, verily, I say unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord; neither he that is sent greater than he that sent him. [Matt 10:24](#); [Luke 6:40](#); [John 15:20](#);
- 17** If you know these things, happy are you if you do them.

He foretells and discovers to John by a token, that Judas should betray him

- 18** I speak not of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but that the scripture may be fulfilled, **He that eateth bread with me has lifted up his heel against me.** [Ps 41:9](#); [Matt 26:23](#); [1John 2:19](#); [[Matt 10:36](#)]; [[Luke 22:22](#)]; [[John 15:16](#)]; [[Acts 1:16](#)];
- 19** Now I tell you before it come, that, when it is come to pass, you may believe that I am *he*. [John 14:29](#); [John 16:4](#);
- 20** Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that receiveth whomsoever I send receiveth me; and he that receiveth me receiveth him that sent me. [Matt 10:40](#); [Luke 10:16](#); [[Matt 18:5](#)]; [[Matt 25:40](#)]; [[Mark 9:37](#)]; [[Luke 9:48](#)]; [[Gal 4:14](#)]; [[Heb 6:10](#)];
- 21** When Yahushua had thus said, he was troubled in spirit, and testified, and said, **Verily, verily, I say unto you, that one of you shall betray me.** [Matt 26:21](#); [Mark 14:18](#); [Luke 22:21](#); [Acts 1:17](#); [1John 2:19](#); [[Matt 26:20](#)];
- 22** Then the disciples looked one on another, doubting of whom he spoke.
- 23** Now there was leaning on Yahushua's bosom one of his disciples, whom Yahushua loved. [John 20:2](#); [John 21:7](#); [John 21:20](#);
- 24** Simon Peter therefore beckoned to him, that he should ask who it should be of whom he spoke.

- 25** He then lying on Yahushua's breast saith unto him, Lord, who is it?
- 26** Yahushua answered, **He it is, to whom I shall give a sop, when I have dipped it.** And when he had dipped the sop, he gave *it* to Judas Iscariot, *the son* of Simon.
- 27** And after the sop Satan entered into him. Then said Yahushua unto him, **That you do, do quickly.** [Luke 22:3]; [John 13:2]; [1Cor 11:27];
- 28** Now no man at the table knew for what intent he spoke this unto him.
- 29** For some *of them* thought, because Judas had the bag, that Yahushua had said unto him, Buy *those things* that we have need of against the feast; or, that he should give something to the poor. John 12:6;
- 30** He then having received the sop went immediately out: and it was night.

commands them to love one another

- 31** Therefore, when he was gone out, Yahushua said, **Now is the Son of man glorified, and Elohim is glorified in him.**
- 32** If Elohim be glorified in him, Elohim shall also glorify him in himself, and shall immediately glorify him. John 12:23; John 17:1; [John 17:4];
- 33** Little children, yet a little while I am with you. you shall seek me: and as I said unto the Jews, Whither I go, you cannot come; so now I say to you. John 7:34; John 8:21;
- 34** A new commandment I give unto you, That you love one another; as I have loved you, that you also love one another. Lev 19:18; Matt 22:39; John 15:12; Eph 5:2; 1Thess 4:9; 1Pet 4:8; 1John 3:23; 1John 4:21; [Col 3:14]; [1John 2:8]; [1John 3:11]; [2John 1:5];
- 35** By this shall all *men* know that you are my disciples, if you have love one to another. 1John 2:5; 1John 4:20;

and forewarns Peter of his denials

- 36** Simon Peter said unto him, Lord, whither go you? Yahushua answered him, **Whither I go, you canst not follow me now; but you shall follow me afterwards.** John 21:18; 2Pet 1:14;
- 37** Peter said unto him, Lord, why cannot I follow you now? I will lay down my life for thy sake. Matt 26:33; Mark 14:29; Luke 22:33; [Mark 14:31];
- 38** Yahushua answered him, will you lay down thy life for my sake? Verily, verily, I say unto you, The cock shall not crow, till you have denied me thrice. Matt 26:34; Mark 14:30; Luke 22:34; [Matt 26:75]; [Mark 14:72]; [Luke 22:61]; [John 18:27];

Yahushua comforts his disciples with the hope of heaven

- 1** Let not your heart be troubled: you believe in Elohim, believe also in me.
- 2** In my Father's house are many mansions: if *it were* not *so*, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.
- 3** And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, *there* you may be also. [John 12:26](#); [John 17:24](#); [\[John 14:28\]](#); [\[1Cor 11:26\]](#);
- 4** And whither I go you know, and the way you know.

professes himself the way, the truth, and the life, and one with the Father

- 5** Thomas saith unto him, Lord, we know not whither you go; and how can we know the way?
- 6** Yahushua saith unto him, **I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.** [Heb 9:8](#); [John 1:17](#); [John 1:4](#); [John 11:25](#); [John 10:9](#); [\[Rom 5:2\]](#); [\[Eph 2:18\]](#); [\[Eph 3:12\]](#); [\[Heb 10:19\]](#);
- 7** If you had known me, you should have known my Father also: and from henceforth you know him, and have seen him.
- 8** Philip saith unto him, Lord, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us.
- 9** Yahushua saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet have you not known me, Philip? he that has seen me has seen the Father; and how sayest you *then*, show us the Father? [John 10:30](#); [\[John 5:19\]](#); [\[John 8:19\]](#); [\[John 12:45\]](#); [\[John 17:5\]](#); [\[2Cor 4:4\]](#);
- 10** Believest you not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works. [John 10:38](#); [John 14:24](#); [John 7:16](#); [John 8:28](#); [John 12:49](#); [John 16:13](#); [John 17:21](#); [John 5:17](#); [\[John 3:32\]](#); [\[John 8:29\]](#); [\[John 8:38\]](#); [\[John 16:32\]](#);
- 11** Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works' sake. [\[John 10:38\]](#); [\[John 17:21\]](#);
- 12** Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater *works* than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father. [Matt 21:21](#); [Luke 17:6](#); [Acts 5:12](#); [Acts 19:11](#);

assures their prayers to be effectual

- 13** And whatsoever you shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:7](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 15:7](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [1John 3:22](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#); [\[John 17:4\]](#); [\[1John 5:14\]](#);
- 14** If you shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*.

requires obedience

- 15** If you love me, keep my commandments. [John 14:21](#); [John 14:23](#); [John 15:10](#); [1John 5:3](#);

promises the Comforter

- 16** And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;
- 17** *Even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but you know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. [\[John 7:7\]](#);

- 18** I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you. [Matt 28:20](#);
- 19** Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but you see me: because I live, you shall live also.
- 20** At that day you shall know that I *am* in my Father, and you in me, and I in you.
- 21** He that has my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him. [\[John 14:15\]](#); [\[John 15:10\]](#);

22 Judas saith unto him, not Iscariot, Lord, how is it that you will manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world?

23 Yahushua answered and said unto him, *If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.* [John 14:15]; [John 15:10]; [1John 3:24];

24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which you hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me. John 14:10; John 7:16; John 8:28; John 12:49; John 16:13; [John 3:11]; [John 5:20]; [John 8:38];

25 These things have I spoken unto you, being yet present with you.

26 But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you. Luke 24:49; John 15:26; John 16:7; Acts 2:4; John 16:13; [Acts 1:4];

and leaves his peace with them

27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid. Phil 4:7; [John 16:33];

28 **you** have heard how I said unto you, I go away, and come *again* unto you. If you loved me, you would rejoice, because I said, I go unto the Father: for my Father is greater than I. John 14:3; [1Cor 11:3];

29 And now I have told you before it come to pass, that, when it is come to pass, you might believe. John 13:19; John 16:4;

30 Hereafter I will not talk much with you: for the prince of this world cometh, and has nothing in me. John 12:31; John 16:11; Eph 2:2;

31 But that the world may know that I love the Father; and as the Father gave me commandment, even so I do. Arise, let us go hence. John 10:18; Heb 10:5; [Isa 50:5];

The union of Yahushua and his members shown under the parable of a vine

- 1 I am the true vine, and my Father is the husbandman.
- 2 Every branch in me that beareth not fruit he taketh away: and every *branch* that beareth fruit, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit. [Matt 15:13](#);
- 3 Now you are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you. [John 13:10](#);
- 4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can you, except you abide in me.
- 5 I am the vine, you *are* the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me you can do nothing. [\[1Cor 1:9\]](#);
- 6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast *them* into the fire, and they are burned. [Ezek 15:2](#); [Matt 3:10](#); [Matt 7:19](#); [Col 1:23](#);
- 7 If you abide in me, and my words abide in you, you shall ask what you will, and it shall be done unto you. [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:7](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [1John 3:22](#); [1John 5:14](#);
- 8 Herein is my Father glorified, that you bear much fruit; so shall you be my disciples.
- 9 As the Father has loved me, so have I loved you: continue you in my love. [\[Jas 4:4\]](#);
- 10 If you keep my commandments, you shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love. [John 14:15](#); [John 14:21](#); [John 14:23](#); [1John 5:3](#); [\[1John 3:24\]](#); [\[2John 1:6\]](#);
- 11 These things have I spoken unto you, that my joy might remain in you, and *that* your joy might be full.
- 12 This is my commandment, That you love one another, as I have loved you. [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [John 13:34](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [1Pet 4:8](#); [1John 3:23](#); [1John 4:21](#); [\[Col 3:14\]](#); [\[1John 2:8\]](#); [\[1John 3:11\]](#); [\[2John 1:5\]](#);
- 13 Greater love has no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. [Rom 5:7](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1John 3:16](#);
- 14 You are my friends, if you do whatsoever I command you. [Matt 12:50](#); [2Cor 5:16](#); [Gal 5:6](#); [Gal 6:15](#); [Col 3:11](#); [\[Song 1:9\]](#); [\[Mark 3:35\]](#); [\[Luke 8:21\]](#);
- 15 Henceforth I call you not servants; for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth: but I have called you friends; for all things that I have heard of my Father I have made known unto you. [John 8:26](#);
- 16 You have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that you should bring forth fruit more and more, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever you shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you. [John 13:18](#); [Eph 1:4](#); [Matt 28:19](#); [Mark 16:15](#); [Col 1:6](#); [\[Acts 10:42\]](#); [\[Col 1:10\]](#);
- 17 These things I command you, that you love one another. [\[Mark 11:24\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#);

The hatred of the world

- 18 If the world hate you, you know that it hated me before *it hated* you. [John 3:13](#); [\[John 7:7\]](#); [\[1John 3:13\]](#);
- 19 If you were of the world, the world would love his own: but because you are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you. [John 17:14](#); [Gal 1:10](#); [\[Mark 13:9\]](#);
- 20 Remember the word that I said unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they have kept my saying, they will keep yours also. [Matt 10:24](#); [Luke 6:40](#); [John 13:16](#); [Matt 24:9](#); [John 16:2](#); [\[Matt 10:17\]](#);
- 21 But all these things will they do unto you for my name's sake, because they know not him that sent me. [Matt 10:22](#); [John 16:3](#); [\[John 17:25\]](#);
- 22 If I had not come and spoken unto them, they had not had sin: but now they have no cloke for their sin. [Rom 4:15](#); [Rom 5:20](#); [\[Rom 7:8\]](#); [\[Gal 3:19\]](#);
- 23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.
- 24 If I had not done among them the works which none other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father. [John 10:37](#);

25 But *this cometh to pass*, that the word might be fulfilled that is written in their law, **They hated me without a cause.** [Ps 35:19](#); [Ps 69:4](#);

The office of the Holy Spirit

26 But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, *even* the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me: [John 14:26](#); [John 16:7](#); [Acts 5:32](#); [Luke 24:49](#); [[Acts 1:4](#)]; [[Acts 2:4](#)];

27 And you also shall bear witness, because you have been with me from the beginning. [Acts 1:8](#); [Acts 1:21](#); [Acts 5:32](#); [[Acts 2:32](#)];

Yahushua comforts his disciples by the promise of the Holy Spirit, and his ascension

- 1** These things have I spoken unto you, that you should not be offended.
- 2** They shall put you out of the synagogues: yes, the time cometh, that whosoever killeth you will think that he doeth Elohim service. [John 9:22](#); [John 9:34](#); [John 12:42](#); [\[Matt 10:17\]](#); [\[Matt 23:34\]](#); [\[Matt 24:9\]](#); [\[Mark 13:9\]](#); [\[Luke 11:49\]](#); [\[Luke 21:12\]](#); [\[John 15:20\]](#);
- 3** And these things will they do unto you, because they have not known the Father, nor me. [John 15:21](#); [1Cor 2:8](#); [\[John 8:19\]](#); [\[John 17:25\]](#); [\[Acts 13:27\]](#);
- 4** But these things have I told you, that when the time shall come, you may remember that I told you of them. And these things I said not unto you at the beginning, because I was with you. [John 13:19](#); [John 14:29](#);
- 5** But now I go my way to him that sent me; and none of you asketh me, Whither go you?
- 6** But because I have said these things unto you, sorrow has filled your heart.
- 7** Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you. [Luke 24:49](#); [John 14:26](#); [John 15:26](#); [\[Acts 1:4\]](#);
- 8** And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:
- 9** Of sin, because they believe not on me;
- 10** Of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and you see me no more;
- 11** Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged. [John 12:31](#); [John 14:30](#); [Eph 2:2](#); [Col 2:15](#);
- 12** I have yet many things to say unto you, but you cannot bear them now.
- 13** Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will show you things to come. [John 14:26](#); [John 12:49](#); [\[John 14:10\]](#); [\[John 14:24\]](#); [\[Acts 2:4\]](#);
- 14** He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall show *it* unto you.
- 15** All things that the Father has are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall show *it* unto you. [John 17:10](#);
- 16** A little while, and you shall not see me: and again, a little while, and you shall see me, because I go to the Father. [John 7:33](#);
- 17** Then said *some* of his disciples among themselves, What is this that he saith unto us, A little while, and you shall not see me: and again, a little while, and you shall see me: and, Because I go to the Father?
- 18** They said therefore, What is this that he saith, A little while? we cannot tell what he saith.
- 19** Now Yahushua knew that they were desirous to ask him, and said unto them, Do you enquire among yourselves of that I said, A little while, and you shall not see me: and again, a little while, and you shall see me?
- 20** Verily, verily, I say unto you, That you shall weep and lament, but the world shall rejoice: and you shall be sorrowful, but your sorrow shall be turned into joy.
- 21** A woman when she is in travail has sorrow, because her hour is come: but as soon as she is delivered of the child, she remembereth no more the anguish, for joy that a man is born into the world. [Isa 26:17](#);
- 22** And you now therefore have sorrow: but I will see you again, and your heart shall rejoice, and your joy no man taketh from you. [John 20:20](#);

assures their prayers made in his name to be acceptable

- 23** And in that day you shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever you shall ask the Father in my name, he will give *it* you. [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:7](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 15:17](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [1John 3:22](#); [1John 5:14](#);

24 Hitherto have you asked nothing in my name: ask, and you shall receive, that your joy may be full. [Matt 7:7]; [Matt 21:22]; [Mark 11:24]; [Luke 11:9]; [John 14:13]; [John 15:7]; [Jas 1:5]; [1John 3:22]; [1John 5:14];

25 These things have I spoken unto you in proverbs: but the time cometh, when I shall no more speak unto you in proverbs, but I shall show you plainly of the Father.

26 At that day you shall ask in my name: and I say not unto you, that I will pray the Father for you:

27 For the Father himself loveth you, because you have loved me, and have believed that I came out from Elohim. John 17:8; [John 17:25];

28 I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again, I leave the world, and go to the Father. John 13:3; [John 20:17];

29 His disciples said unto him, Lo, now speakest you plainly, and speakest no proverb.

30 Now are we sure that you knowest all things, and needest not that any man should ask you: by this we believe that you camest forth from Elohim. John 21:17;

31 Yahushua answered them, Do you now believe?

32 Behold, the hour cometh, yes, is now come, that you shall be scattered, every man to his own, and shall leave me alone: and yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me. Zech 13:7; Matt 26:31; Mark 14:27; John 8:29; John 14:10;

Peace in Yahushua, and in the world affliction

33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me you might have peace. In the world you shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world. Isa 9:6; John 14:27; Rom 5:1; Eph 2:13; Col 1:20; [Acts 10:36]; [Eph 2:14]; [1John 5:4];

Yahushua prays to his Father

- 1** These words spoke Yahushua, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, **Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify you:** [John 12:23](#); [John 13:32](#); [\[Isa 12:4\]](#); [\[Mark 6:41\]](#); [\[Heb 5:7\]](#);
- 2** As you have given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as you have given him. [Ps 8:6](#); [Matt 11:27](#); [Matt 28:18](#); [Luke 10:22](#); [John 3:35](#); [John 5:27](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Phil 2:10](#); [Heb 2:8](#);
- 3** And this is life eternal, that they might know you the only true Elohim, and Yahushua the Messiah, whom you have sent. [Isa 53:11](#); [Jer 9:23](#); [\[Deut 6:4\]](#); [\[Phil 3:8\]](#); [\[Col 2:2\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:5\]](#); [\[2Pet 1:2\]](#); [\[1John 3:23\]](#);
- 4** I have glorified you on the earth: I have finished the work which you gave me to do. [John 13:32](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 4:34](#); [John 19:30](#); [\[Isa 12:4\]](#);
- 5** And now, O Father, glorify you me with thine own self with the glory which I had with you before the world was. [John 1:1-2](#); [John 10:30](#); [John 14:9](#); [\[John 1:2\]](#); [\[John 5:19\]](#);
- 6** I have manifested thy name unto the men which you gave me out of the world: thine they were, and you gave them me; and they have kept thy word. [\[Isa 12:4\]](#);
- 7** Now they have known that all things whatsoever you have given me are of you.
- 8** For I have given unto them the words which you gave me; and they have received *them*, and have known surely that I came out from you, and they have believed that you didst send me. [John 16:27](#); [\[John 4:42\]](#); [\[John 17:25\]](#);
- 9** I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them which you have given me; for they are thine.
- 10** And all mine are thine, and thine are mine; and I am glorified in them. [John 16:15](#);
- 11** And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to you. Holy Father, keep through thine own name those whom you have given me, that they may be one, as we *are*.
- 12** While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that you gave me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled. [John 6:39](#); [John 10:28](#); [John 18:9](#); [Isa 8:18](#); [Heb 2:13](#); [Ps 109:8](#);
- 13** And now come I to you; and these things I speak in the world, that they might have my joy fulfilled in themselves.
- 14** I have given them thy word; and the world has hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. [John 15:19](#); [\[2Tim 3:12\]](#);
- 15** I pray not that you should take them out of the world, but that you should keep them from the evil. [\[2Thess 3:3\]](#);
- 16** They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.
- 17** Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth. [John 8:40](#); [\[2Sam 7:28\]](#);
- 18** As you have sent me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world. [John 20:21](#);
- 19** And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth. [1Cor 1:2](#); [1Cor 1:30](#); [1Thess 4:7](#);
- 20** Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word;
- 21** That they all may be one; as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that you have sent me. [John 10:38](#); [John 14:11](#); [Gal 3:28](#); [\[John 14:10\]](#);
- 22** And the glory which you gave me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one:
- 23** I in them, and you in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that you have sent me, and have loved them, as you have loved me.
- 24** Father, I will that they also, whom you have given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which you have given me: for you lovedst me before the foundation of the world. [John 12:26](#); [John 14:3](#);
- 25** O righteous Father, the world has not known you: but I have known you, and these have known that you have sent me. [John 15:21](#); [John 16:3](#); [John 17:8](#); [John 16:27](#);
- 26** And I have declared unto them thy name, and will declare *it*: that the love wherewith you have loved me may be in them, and I in them. [\[Isa 12:4\]](#);

Judas betrays Yahushua

1 When Yahushua had spoken these words, he went forth with his disciples over the brook Cedron, where was a garden, into the which he entered, and his disciples. [2Sam 15:23](#); [Matt 26:36](#); [Mark 14:32](#); [Luke 22:39](#); [[Matt 26:30](#)];

2 And Judas also, which betrayed him, knew the place: for Yahushua oftentimes resorted thither with his disciples.

3 Judas then, having received a band *of men* and officers from the chief priests and Pharisees, cometh thither with lanterns and torches and weapons. [Matt 26:47](#); [Mark 14:23](#); [Luke 22:47](#); [[Mark 14:43](#)]; [[Acts 1:16](#)];

4 Yahushua therefore, knowing all things that should come upon him, went forth, and said unto them, *Whom seek you?*

5 They answered him, Yahushua of Nazareth. Yahushua saith unto them, *I am he*. And Judas also, which betrayed him, stood with them.

The officers fall to the ground

6 As soon then as he had said unto them, *I am he*, they went backward, and fell to the ground.

7 Then asked he them again, *Whom seek you?* And they said, Yahushua of Nazareth.

8 Yahushua answered, *I have told you that I am he: if therefore you seek me, let these go their way:*

9 That the saying might be fulfilled, which he spoke, *Of them which you gave me have I lost none*. [John 6:39](#); [John 10:28](#); [John 17:12](#);

Peter smites off Malchus' ear

10 Then Simon Peter having a sword drew it, and smote the high priest's servant, and cut off his right ear. The servant's name was Malchus. [Matt 26:51](#); [Mark 14:47](#); [Luke 22:50](#);

11 Then said Yahushua unto Peter, *Put up thy sword into the sheath: the cup which my Father has given me, shall I not drink it?* [Matt 20:22](#); [Matt 26:39](#);

Yahushua is taken, and led unto Annas and Caiaphas

12 Then the band and the captain and officers of the Jews took Yahushua, and bound him, [[Matt 26:57](#)]; [[Luke 22:54](#)];

13 And led him away to Annas first; for he was father in law to Caiaphas, which was the high priest that same year. [Matt 26:57](#); [Mark 14:53](#); [Luke 22:54](#); [Luke 3:2](#);

14 Now Caiaphas was he, which gave counsel to the Jews, that it was expedient that one man should die for the people. [John 11:50](#);

Peter's denial

15 And Simon Peter followed Yahushua, and *so did* another disciple: that disciple was known unto the high priest, and went in with Yahushua into the palace of the high priest. [Matt 26:58](#); [Mark 14:54](#); [Luke 22:54](#);

16 But Peter stood at the door without. Then went out that other disciple, which was known unto the high priest, and spoke unto her that kept the door, and brought in Peter. [[Matt 26:69](#)]; [[Mark 14:66](#)]; [[Luke 22:55](#)];

17 Then saith the damsel that kept the door unto Peter, are not you also *one* of this man's disciples? He saith, I am not.

18 And the servants and officers stood there, who had made a fire of coals; for it was cold: and they warmed themselves: and Peter stood with them, and warmed himself. [Matt 26:69](#); [Mark 14:67](#); [Luke 22:55](#);

Yahushua examined before Caiaphas

19 The high priest then asked Yahushua of his disciples, and of his doctrine.

20 Yahushua answered him, *I spoke openly to the world; I ever taught in the synagogue, and in the temple, whither the Jews always resort; and in secret have I said nothing*. [John 7:26](#); [[Acts 26:26](#)];

21 Why askest you me? ask them which heard me, what I have said unto them: behold, they know what I said.

22 And when he had thus spoken, one of the officers which stood by struck Yahushua with the palm of his hand, saying, Answerest thou the high priest so? [Jer 20:2](#); [Acts 23:2](#);

23 Yahushua answered him, **If I have spoken evil, bear witness of the evil: but if well, why smitest thou me?**

24 Now Annas had sent him bound unto Caiaphas the high priest. [Matt 26:57](#); [Mark 14:53](#); [Luke 22:54](#);

Peter's second and third denial

25 And Simon Peter stood and warmed himself. They said therefore unto him, are not you also *one* of his disciples? He denied *it*, and said, I am not. [Matt 26:71](#); [Mark 14:69](#); [Luke 22:58](#); [[Matt 26:69](#)]; [[Luke 22:55](#)];

26 One of the servants of the high priest, being *his* kinsman whose ear Peter cut off, saith, Did not I see you in the garden with him?

27 Peter then denied again: and immediately the cock crew. [John 13:38](#); [[Mark 14:72](#)]; [[Luke 22:61](#)];

Yahushua arraigned before Pilate

28 Then led they Yahushua from Caiaphas unto the hall of judgment: and it was early; and they themselves went not into the judgment hall, lest they should be defiled; but that they might eat the passover. [Matt 27:1](#); [Mark 15:1](#); [Luke 22:66](#); [Luke 23:1](#); [Acts 10:28](#); [Acts 11:3](#); [[Matt 20:19](#)]; [[Luke 18:32](#)];

29 Pilate then went out unto them, and said, What accusation bring you against this man?

30 They answered and said unto him, If he were not a malefactor, we would not have delivered him up unto you.

31 Then said Pilate unto them, Take you him, and judge him according to your law. The Jews therefore said unto him, It is not lawful for us to put any man to death: [[Matt 20:19](#)];

32 That the saying of Yahushua might be fulfilled, which he spoke, signifying what death he should die. [Matt 20:19](#); [John 12:32](#);

33 Then Pilate entered into the judgment hall again, and called Yahushua, and said unto him, are you the King of the Jews? [Matt 27:11](#); [Mark 15:2](#); [Luke 23:3](#);

34 Yahushua answered him, **Sayest thou this thing of thyself, or did others tell it you of me?**

35 Pilate answered, Am I a Jew? Thine own nation and the chief priests have delivered you unto me: what have you done?

His kingdom

36 Yahushua answered, **My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews: but now is my kingdom not from hence.** [John 6:15](#); [1Tim 6:13](#);

37 Pilate therefore said unto him, are you a king then? Yahushua answered, you **sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.** [[1Tim 6:13](#)];

38 Pilate saith unto him, What is truth? And when he had said this, he went out again unto the Jews, and saith unto them, I find in him no fault *at all*. [Matt 27:24](#); [Luke 23:4](#); [[Luke 23:13](#)];

39 But you have a custom, that I should release unto you one at the passover: will you therefore that I release unto you the King of the Jews? [Matt 27:15](#); [Mark 15:6](#); [Luke 23:17](#);

The Jews prefer Barabbas

40 Then cried they all again, saying, Not this man, but Barabbas. Now Barabbas was a robber. [Acts 3:14](#); [Matt 27:16](#); [Mark 15:7](#); [Luke 23:19](#); [[Matt 27:20](#)]; [[Mark 15:11](#)]; [[Acts 3:13](#)];

Yahushua is scourged, crowned with thorns, and beaten

1 Then Pilate therefore took Yahushua, and scourged *him*. [Matt 27:26](#); [Mark 15:15](#);

2 And the soldiers platted a crown of thorns, and put *it* on his head, and they put on him a purple robe, [\[Matt 27:27\]](#); [\[Mark 15:16\]](#);

3 And said, Hail, King of the Jews! and they smote him with their hands. [\[Matt 26:67\]](#); [\[Mark 14:65\]](#); [\[Luke 22:63\]](#);

Pilate is desirous to release him, but being overcome with the outrage of the Jews, he delivers him to be crucified

4 Pilate therefore went forth again, and saith unto them, Behold, I bring him forth to you, that you may know that I find no fault in him. [\[Luke 23:13\]](#);

5 Then came Yahushua forth, wearing the crown of thorns, and the purple robe. And *Pilate* saith unto them, Behold the man!

6 When the chief priests therefore and officers saw him, they cried out, saying, Crucify *him*, crucify *him*. Pilate saith unto them, Take you him, and crucify *him*: for I find no fault in him. [\[Acts 13:28\]](#);

7 The Jews answered him, We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of Elohim. [Lev 24:16](#); [John 5:18](#); [John 10:33](#);

8 When Pilate therefore heard that saying, he was the more afraid;

9 And went again into the judgment hall, and saith unto Yahushua, Whence are you? But Yahushua gave him no answer.

10 Then saith Pilate unto him, Speakest you not unto me? knowest you not that I have power to crucify you, and have power to release you? [\[Mark 15:4\]](#);

11 Yahushua answered, you **couldst have no power at all against me, except it were given you from above: therefore he that delivered me unto you has the greater sin.**

12 And from thenceforth Pilate sought to release him: but the Jews cried out, saying, If you let this man go, you are not Caesar's friend: whosoever maketh himself a king speaketh against Caesar. [Acts 17:7](#);

13 When Pilate therefore heard that saying, he brought Yahushua forth, and sat down in the judgment seat in a place that is called the Pavement, but in the Hebrew, Gabbatha.

14 And it was the preparation of the passover, and about the sixth hour: and he saith unto the Jews, Behold your King!

15 But they cried out, Away with *him*, away with *him*, crucify him. Pilate saith unto them, Shall I crucify your King? The chief priests answered, We have no king but Caesar. [Gen 49:10](#); [\[Acts 21:36\]](#);

16 Then delivered he him therefore unto them to be crucified. And they took Yahushua, and led *him* away. [Matt 27:26](#); [Mark 15:22](#); [Luke 23:24-25](#); [\[Luke 23:24\]](#);

17 And he bearing his stake went forth into a place called *the place* of a skull, which is called in the Hebrew Golgotha: [Matt 27:31](#); [Matt 27:33](#); [Mark 15:22](#); [Luke 23:26](#); [Luke 23:33](#); [\[Heb 13:12\]](#);

18 Where they crucified him, and two other with him, on either side one, and Yahushua in the midst. [\[Luke 23:32\]](#); [\[Luke 23:33\]](#);

19 And Pilate wrote a title, and put *it* on the stake. And the writing was, YAHUSHUA OF NAZARETH THE KING OF THE JEWS. [Matt 27:37](#); [Mark 15:26](#); [Luke 23:38](#);

20 This title then read many of the Jews: for the place where Yahushua was crucified was nigh to the city: and it was written in Hebrew, *and* Greek, *and* Latin.

21 Then said the chief priests of the Jews to Pilate, Write not, The King of the Jews; but that he said, I am King of the Jews.

22 Pilate answered, What I have written I have written.

They cast lots for his garments

23 Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Yahushua, took his garments, and made four parts, to every soldier a part; and also *his* coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top throughout. [Matt 27:35](#); [Mark 15:24](#); [Luke 23:34](#); [[Ps 22:16](#)];

24 They said therefore among themselves, Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be: that the scripture might be fulfilled, which saith, **They parted my raiment among them, and for my vesture they did cast lots.** These things therefore the soldiers did. [Ps 22:18](#);

He commends his mother to John

25 Now there stood by the stake of Yahushua his mother, and his mother's sister, Mary the *wife* of Cleophas, and Mary Magdalene. [Matt 27:55](#); [Mark 15:40](#); [Luke 23:49](#);

26 When Yahushua therefore saw his mother, and the disciple standing by, whom he loved, he saith unto his mother, **Woman, behold thy son!**

27 Then saith he to the disciple, **Behold thy mother!** And from that hour that disciple took her unto his own *home*.

He dies

28 After this, Yahushua knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith, **I thirst.** [Ps 69:21](#);

29 Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar: and they filled a sponge with vinegar, and put *it* upon hyssop, and put *it* to his mouth. [Matt 27:48](#); [[Mark 15:36](#)];

30 When Yahushua therefore had received the vinegar, he said, **It is finished:** and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost. [John 17:4](#); [[Luke 23:46](#)];

His side is pierced

31 The Jews therefore, because it was the preparation, that the bodies should not remain upon the stake on the Sabbath day - for that Sabbath day was a high day - besought Pilate that their legs might be broken, and *that* they might be taken away.

32 Then came the soldiers, and brake the legs of the first, and of the other which was crucified with him.

33 But when they came to Yahushua, and saw that he was dead already, they brake not his legs: [[Num 9:12](#)];

34 But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water. [1John 5:6](#);

35 And he that saw *it* bore record, and his record is true: and he knoweth that he saith true, that you might believe. [[John 21:24](#)];

36 For these things were done, that the scripture should be fulfilled, **A bone of him shall not be broken.** [Exod 12:46](#); [Num 9:12](#); [[Ps 34:20](#)];

37 And again another scripture saith, **They shall look on him whom they pierced.** [Zech 12:10](#); [[Ps 22:16](#)]; [[Rev 1:7](#)];

He is buried by Joseph and Nicodemus

38 And after this Joseph of Arimathaea, being a disciple of Yahushua, but secretly for fear of the Jews, besought Pilate that he might take away the body of Yahushua: and Pilate gave *him* leave. He came therefore, and took the body of Yahushua. [Matt 27:57](#); [Mark 15:42](#); [Luke 23:50](#); [John 12:42](#); [[John 7:13](#)];

39 And there came also Nicodemus, which at the first came to Yahushua by night, and brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred pound *weight*. [John 3:1](#); [John 7:50](#); [[John 3:2](#)];

40 Then took they the body of Yahushua, and wound it in linen clothes with the spices, as the manner of the Jews is to bury. [[John 20:5](#)];

41 Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden; and in the garden a new sepulcher, wherein was never man yet laid.

42 There laid they Yahushua therefore because of the Jews' preparation *day*; for the sepulcher was nigh at hand.

Mary comes to the sepulcher

1 On the first of the weeks, Mary Magdalene came early, when it was yet dark, to the sepulcher, and saw that the stone had been taken away from the sepulcher. [Matt 28:1](#); [Mark 16:1](#); [Luke 24:1](#);

2 Then she ran, and came to Simon Peter, and to the other disciple, whom Yahushua loved, and said to them, They have taken away the Lord out of the sepulcher, and we know not where they have laid him. [John 13:23](#); [John 21:7](#); [John 21:20](#);

so do Peter and John, ignorant of the resurrection

3 Peter therefore went forth, and that other disciple, and came to the sepulcher. [Luke 24:12](#);

4 So they ran both together: and the other disciple did outrun Peter, and came first to the sepulcher.

5 And he stooping down, *and looking in*, saw the linen clothes lying; yet went he not in. [John 19:40](#);

6 Then came Simon Peter following him, and went into the sepulcher, and seeth the linen clothes lie, [\[Luke 24:12\]](#);

7 And the napkin, that was about his head, not lying with the linen clothes, but wrapped together in a place by itself. [John 11:44](#);

8 Then went in also that other disciple, which came first to the sepulcher, and he saw, and believed.

9 For as yet they knew not the scripture, that he must rise again from the dead. [Ps 16:10](#); [Acts 2:25](#); [Acts 2:31](#); [Acts 13:35](#);

10 Then the disciples went away again unto their own home.

Yahushua appears to Mary Magdalene

11 But Mary stood without at the sepulcher weeping: and as she wept, she stooped down, *and looked* into the sepulcher, [Matt 28:1](#); [Mark 16:5](#); [Luke 24:4](#);

12 And seeth two angels in white sitting, the one at the head, and the other at the feet, where the body of Yahushua had lain. [\[Mark 16:5\]](#);

13 And they say unto her, Woman, why weepest you? She said unto them, Because they have taken away my Lord, and I know not where they have laid him.

14 And when she had thus said, she turned herself back, and saw Yahushua standing, and knew not that it was Yahushua. [Matt 28:9](#); [Mark 16:9](#);

15 Yahushua said unto her, *Woman, why weepest you? whom seekest you?* She, supposing him to be the gardener, said unto him, Sir, if you have borne him hence, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him away.

16 Yahushua said unto her, *Mary*. She turned herself, and said unto him, Rabboni; which is to say, Master. [\[Mark 16:9\]](#);

17 Yahushua said unto her, *Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my Elohim, and your Elohim*. [Ps 22:22](#); [Matt 28:10](#); [Heb 2:11](#); [John 16:28](#);

18 Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and *that* he had spoken these things unto her. [Matt 28:8](#); [Mark 16:10](#); [Luke 24:9](#); [\[Mark 16:8\]](#); [\[Luke 24:22\]](#);

and to his disciples

19 Then the same day at evening, being the first *day* of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled for fear of the Jews, came Yahushua and stood in the midst, and said unto them, *Peace be unto you*. [Mark 16:14](#); [Luke 24:36](#); [1Cor 15:5](#); [\[Acts 1:3\]](#); [\[Acts 10:40\]](#); [\[Acts 13:31\]](#);

20 And when he had so said, he showed unto them *his* hands and his side. Then were the disciples glad, when they saw the Lord. [John 16:22](#);

21 Then said Yahushua to them again, **Peace be unto you: as my Father has sent me, even so send I you.** [Isa 61:1](#); [Matt 28:19](#); [Mark 16:15](#); [Luke 4:18](#); [John 17:18](#); [\[Acts 1:2\]](#);

22 And when he had said this, he breathed on *them*, and said unto them, **Receive you the Holy Spirit:** [\[Matt 16:19\]](#);

23 **Whose soever sins you remit, they are remitted unto them; and whose soever sins you retain, they are retained.** [Matt 16:19](#); [Matt 18:18](#);

The incredulity and confession of Thomas

24 But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Yahushua came.

25 The other disciples therefore said unto him, We have seen the Lord. But he said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe. [\[Ps 22:16\]](#);

26 And after eight days again his disciples were within, and Thomas with them: *then* came Yahushua, the doors being shut, and stood in the midst, and said, **Peace be unto you.**

27 Then said he to Thomas, **Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless, but believing.** [1John 1:1](#);

28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my Elohim. [\[Zech 13:9\]](#); [\[1John 5:20\]](#);

29 Yahushua said unto him, **Because you have seen me, you have believed? Blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed.** [1Pet 1:8](#); [\[Matt 13:16\]](#);

The Scripture is sufficient to salvation

30 And many other signs truly did Yahushua in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book: [John 21:25](#);

31 But these are written, that you might believe that Yahushua is the Messiah, the Son of Elohim; and that believing you might have life through his name. [\[John 3:18\]](#); [\[1John 5:13\]](#);

Yahushua appearing again to his disciples is known of them by the great draught of fishes

- 1** After these things Yahushua showed himself again to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias; and on this wise showed he *himself*. [\[Acts 1:3\]; \[Acts 13:31\];](#)
- 2** There were together Simon Peter, and Thomas called Didymus, and Nathanael of Cana in Galilee, and the *sons* of Zebedee, and two other of his disciples. [John 1:45; Matt 4:21; Mark 1:19;](#)
- 3** Simon Peter said unto them, I go a fishing. They say unto him, We also go with you. They went forth, and entered into a boat immediately; and that night they caught nothing.
- 4** But when the morning was now come, Yahushua stood on the shore: but the disciples knew not that it was Yahushua.
- 5** Then Yahushua said unto them, **Children, have you any meat?** They answered him, No.
- 6** And he said unto them, **Cast the net on the right side of the boat, and you shall find.** They cast therefore, and now they were not able to draw it for the multitude of fishes. [Luke 5:4; Luke 5:6-7;](#)
- 7** Therefore that disciple whom Yahushua loved said unto Peter, It is the Lord. Now when Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he girt *his* fisher's coat *unto him* - for he was naked - and did cast himself into the sea. [John 13:23; John 20:2; \[John 21:20\];](#)
- 8** And the other disciples came in a little boat - for they were not far from land, but as it were two hundred cubits - dragging the net with fishes.
- 9** As soon then as they were come to land, they saw a fire of coals there, and fish laid thereon, and bread.
- 10** Yahushua said unto them, **Bring of the fish which you have now caught.** [Luke 24:41;](#)
- 11** Simon Peter went up, and drew the net to land full of great fishes, a hundred and fifty and three: and for all there were so many, yet was not the net broken.

He dines with them

- 12** Yahushua said unto them, **Come and dine.** And none of the disciples dared ask him, Who are you? knowing that it was the Lord.
- 13** Yahushua then came, and taketh bread, and giveth them, and fish likewise.
- 14** This is now the third time that Yahushua showed himself to his disciples, after that he was risen from the dead.

earnestly commands Peter to feed his lambs and sheep

- 15** So when they had dined, Yahushua said to Simon Peter, **Simon, son of Jonas, lovest you me more than these?** He said unto him, yes, Lord; you knowest that I love you. He said unto him, **Feed my lambs.** [\[1Cor 9:7\];](#)
- 16** He said to him again the second time, **Simon, son of Jonas, lovest you me?** He said unto him, yes, Lord; you knowest that I love you. He said unto him, **Feed my sheep.**
- 17** He said unto him the third time, **Simon, son of Jonas, lovest you me?** Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest you me? And he said unto him, Lord, you knowest all things; you knowest that I love you. Yahushua said unto him, **Feed my sheep.** [John 16:30; \[Prov 15:11\];](#)

foretells him of his death

- 18** Verily, verily, I say unto you, When you were young, you girdedst thyself, and walkedst whither you wouldest: but when you shall be old, you shall stretch forth thy hands, and another shall gird you, and carry you whither you wouldest not. [John 13:36; Acts 12:3; 2Pet 1:14; \[Acts 12:4\];](#)

19 This spoke he, signifying by what death he should glorify Elohim. And when he had spoken this, he said unto him, **Follow me.** [2Pet 1:14](#);

20 Then Peter, turning about, seeth the disciple whom Yahushua loved following; which also leaned on his breast at supper, and said, Lord, which is he that betrayeth you? [John 21:7](#); [John 13:23](#); [John 20:2](#);

21 Peter seeing him said to Yahushua, Lord, and what *shall* this man *do*?

rebukes his curiosity touching John

22 Yahushua said unto him, **If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to you? follow you me.**

23 Then went this saying abroad among the brethren, that that disciple should not die: yet Yahushua said not unto him, He shall not die; but, **If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to you?**

The conclusion

24 This is the disciple which testifieth of these things, and wrote these things: and we know that his testimony is true. [John 19:35](#);

25 And there are also many other things which Yahushua did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written. Amen. [John 20:30](#);

Acts

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#) [23](#) [24](#) [25](#) [26](#) [27](#) [28](#)

ACTS ONE

Yahushua, preparing his apostles to the beholding of his ascension, gathers them together unto the mount Olivet, commands them to expect in Jerusalem the sending down of the Holy Spirit, promises after a few days to send it, and ascends into heaven in their sight

- 1** The former treatise have I made, O Theophilus, of all that Yahushua began both to do and teach,
2 Until the day in which he was taken up, after that he through the Holy Spirit had given commandments unto the apostles whom he had chosen: [Mark 16:19](#); [Luke 9:51](#); [1Tim 3:16](#); [John 20:21](#); [[Mark 16:20](#)];
3 To whom also he showed himself alive after his passion by many infallible proofs, being seen of them forty days, and speaking of the things pertaining to the kingdom of Elohim: [Mark 16:14](#); [John 20:19](#); [John 21:1](#); [1Cor 15:5](#); [[Matt 28:10](#)]; [[Mark 16:7](#)]; [[Acts 13:31](#)];
4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but **wait for the promise of the Father, which you have heard of me.** [Luke 24:48-49](#); [John 14:26](#); [John 15:26](#); [John 16:7](#); [[Luke 24:49](#)]; [[Acts 2:33](#)];
5 **For John truly baptized with water; but you shall be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days hence.** [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:8](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [John 1:26](#); [Acts 11:16](#); [Acts 19:4](#); [Isa 44:3](#); [Joel 2:28](#); [Acts 2:4](#); [Acts 11:15](#);
6 When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, will you at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel? [Matt 24:3](#); [[Mark 13:4](#)]; [[Luke 22:22](#)]; [[Luke 24:21](#)];
7 And he said unto them, **It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father has put in his own power.** [Matt 24:36](#); [[Mark 13:32](#)];
8 **But you shall receive power, after that the Holy Spirit is come upon you: and you shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.** [Acts 2:4](#); [Isa 2:3](#); [Luke 24:48](#); [John 15:27](#); [Acts 2:32](#); [[Acts 3:15](#)];
9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight. [Mark 16:19](#); [Luke 24:51](#); [[John 6:62](#)]; [[Acts 1:22](#)];

After his ascension they are warned by two angels to depart, and to set their minds upon his second coming

- 10** And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel; [Matt 28:3](#);
11 Which also said, you men of Galilee, why stand you gazing up into heaven? this same Yahushua, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as you have seen him go into heaven. [Dan 7:13](#); [Matt 24:30](#); [Mark 13:26](#); [Luke 21:27](#); [1Thess 1:10](#); [2Thess 1:10](#); [Rev 1:7](#); [[Matt 25:31](#)]; [[Matt 26:64](#)]; [[Mark 14:62](#)]; [[Luke 22:69](#)]; [[1Cor 11:26](#)]; [[Jude 1:14](#)];

They accordingly return, and, giving themselves to prayer, choose Matthias apostle in the place of Judas

- 12** Then returned they unto Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet, which is from Jerusalem a Sabbath day's journey. [[Matt 24:20](#)]; [[Luke 24:50](#)];
13 And when they were come in, they went up into an upper room, where abode both Peter, and James, and John, and Andrew, Philip, and Thomas, Bartholomew, and Matthew, James *the son* of Alphaeus, and Simon Zelotes, and Judas *the brother* of James.
14 These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women, and Mary the mother of Yahushua, and with his brethren. [Matt 13:55](#); [[Acts 2:1](#)]; [[Acts 2:46](#)];

15 And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said, (the number of names together were about a hundred and twenty,)

16 Men *and* brethren, this scripture must needs have been fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit by the mouth of David spoke before concerning Judas, which was guide to them that took Yahushua. [Ps 41:9](#); [Matt 26:23](#); [John 13:18](#); [Matt 26:47](#); [Mark 14:43](#); [John 18:3](#);

17 For he was numbered with us, and had obtained part of this ministry. [Matt 10:4](#); [Mark 3:19](#); [Luke 6:16](#); [[Matt 26:21](#)]; [[Mark 14:18](#)]; [[John 13:21](#)]; [[Acts 20:30](#)];

18 Now this man purchased a field with the reward of iniquity; and falling headlong, he burst asunder in the midst, and all his bowels gushed out. [2Sam 17:23](#); [Matt 27:5](#);

19 And it was known unto all the dwellers at Jerusalem; insomuch as that field is called in their proper tongue, Aceldama, that is to say, The field of blood. [Matt 27:8](#); [[Matt 27:7](#)];

20 For it is written in the book of Psalms, **Let his habitation be desolate, and let no man dwell therein: and let another take his office.** [Ps 69:25](#); [Ps 109:8](#); [[Matt 23:38](#)]; [[Luke 13:35](#)];

21 Wherefore of these men which have companied with us all the time that the Lord Yahushua went in and out among us, [Acts 6:3](#); [[John 15:27](#)];

22 Beginning from the baptism of John, unto that same day that he was taken up from us, must one be ordained to be a witness with us of his resurrection. [Acts 1:9](#);

23 And they appointed two, Joseph called Barsabas, who was surnamed Justus, and Matthias. [Acts 6:6](#);

24 And they prayed, and said, you, Lord, which knowest the hearts of all *men*, show whether of these two you have chosen, [1Sam 16:17](#); [1Chr 28:9](#); [1Chr 29:17](#); [Ps 7:9](#); [Jer 11:20](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 20:12](#); [Acts 15:8](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [[Prov 15:11](#)];

25 That he may take part of this ministry and apostleship, from which Judas by transgression fell, that he might go to his own place.

26 And they gave forth their lots; and the lot fell upon Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

ACTS TWO

The apostles, filled with the Holy Spirit, and speaking various languages, are admired by some, and derided by others

1 And when the day of Pentecost had come, they were all with one accord in one place. [Lev 23:15; Deut 16:9; Acts 1:14;](#)

2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.

3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.

4 And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance. [Matt 3:11; Mark 1:8; Luke 3:16; John 14:26; John 15:26; John 16:13; Acts 11:15; Acts 19:6; Mark 16:17; Acts 10:46; \[Luke 24:47\]; \[Acts 1:5\]; \[Acts 1:8\]; \[Acts 5:32\]; \[Acts 11:16\]; \[1Pet 1:12\];](#)

5 And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.

6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.

7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?

8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,

10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,

11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of Elohim.

12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?

13 Others mocking said, These men are full of new wine.

whom Peter disproves

14 But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, you men of Judaea, and all you that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:

15 For these are not drunken, as you suppose, seeing it is *but* the third hour of the day.

16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 **And it shall come to pass in the last days, said Elohim, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:** [Isa 44:3; Ezek 11:19; Ezek 36:27; Joel 2:28; Zech 12:10; John 7:38; Acts 10:45; Luke 2:36; Acts 21:9; \[Isa 32:15\]; \[Ezek 39:29\]; \[John 7:39\];](#)

18 **And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:** [\[Isa 44:3\];](#)

19 **And I will show wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:**

20 **The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before that great and notable day of the Lord come:** [\[Rev 6:12\];](#)

21 **And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.** [Joel 2:32; Rom 10:13;](#)

22 You men of Israel, hear these words; Yahushua of Nazareth, a man approved of Elohim among you by miracles and wonders and signs, which Elohim did by him in the midst of you, as you yourselves also know:

23 Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of Elohim, you have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain: [Acts 4:28; Acts 5:30; \[Matt 18:7\];](#)

24 Whom Elohim has raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it. [Acts 10:40](#);

25 For David speaketh concerning him, **I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved:** [Ps 16:8](#); [\[John 20:9\]](#);

26 Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope:

27 Because you will not leave my being in hell, neither will you suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. [\[Acts 13:35\]](#);

28 you have made known to me the ways of life; you shall make me full of joy with thy countenance.

29 Men *and* brethren, let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, that he is both dead and buried, and his sepulchre is with us unto this day. [1Kgs 2:10](#); [Acts 13:36](#);

30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that Elohim had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up the Messiah to sit on his throne; [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Luke 1:32](#); [Acts 13:23](#); [Rom 1:3](#); [2Tim 2:8](#);

31 He seeing this before spoke of the resurrection of the Messiah, that his being was not left in Hades, neither his flesh did see corruption. [Ps 16:10](#); [Acts 13:35](#); [\[John 20:9\]](#);

32 This Yahushua has Elohim raised up, whereof we all are witnesses. [John 15:27](#); [Acts 1:8](#); [\[Acts 3:15\]](#);

33 Therefore being by the right hand of Elohim exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, he has shed forth this, which you now see and hear. [Acts 5:31](#); [Phil 2:9](#); [Acts 1:4](#); [Acts 10:45](#); [\[Heb 2:9\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:21\]](#);

34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he said himself, **The YAHWEH said unto my Lord, Sit you on my right hand,** [Ps 110:1](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Eph 1:20](#); [Heb 1:13](#); [\[Matt 22:44\]](#); [\[Mark 12:36\]](#); [\[Luke 20:42\]](#); [\[Heb 10:12\]](#);

35 Until I make thy foes thy footstool.

36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that Elohim has made that same Yahushua, whom you have crucified, both Lord and Messiah.

he baptizes a great number that were converted

37 Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do? [Zech 12:10](#); [Luke 3:10](#); [Acts 9:6](#); [Acts 16:30](#);

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be immersed in water every one of you in the name of Yahushua the Messiah for the remission of sins, and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. [\[Acts 3:19\]](#);

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our Elohim shall call. [Joel 2:28](#); [Eph 2:13](#); [\[Luke 15:20\]](#);

40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.

who afterwards devoutly and charitably converse together; the apostles working many miracles, and Elohim daily increasing his church

41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand beings.

42 And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.

43 And fear came upon every being: and many wonders and signs were done by the apostles. [Mark 16:17](#); [Acts 5:12](#);

44 And all that believed were together, and had all things common; [Deut 15:4](#); [Acts 4:32](#);

45 And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all *men*, as every man had need. [Isa 58:7](#); [Acts 4:35](#);

46 And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat with gladness and singleness of heart, [Acts 1:14](#); [Acts 20:7](#);

47 Praising Elohim, and having favor with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved. [Acts 5:14](#); [Acts 11:21](#);

ACTS THREE

Peter preaching to the people that came to see a lame man restored to his feet

- 1** Now Peter and John went up together into the temple at the hour of prayer, *being* the ninth *hour*.
2 And a certain man lame from his mother's womb was carried, whom they laid daily at the gate of the temple which is called Beautiful, to ask alms of them that entered into the temple; [Acts 14:8](#); [John 9:8](#); [\[Isa 35:6\]](#);
3 Who seeing Peter and John about to go into the temple asked an alms.
4 And Peter, fastening his eyes upon him with John, said, Look on us.
5 And he gave heed unto them, expecting to receive something of them.
6 Then Peter said, Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I you: In the name of the Messiah, Yahushua of Nazareth rise up and walk. [Acts 4:10](#);
7 And he took him by the right hand, and lifted *him* up: and immediately his feet and ancle bones received strength. [\[Acts 4:21\]](#);
8 And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, and praising Elohim.
9 And all the people saw him walking and praising Elohim:
10 And they knew that it was he which sat for alms at the Beautiful gate of the temple: and they were filled with wonder and amazement at that which had happened unto him.
11 And as the lame man which was healed held Peter and John, all the people ran together unto them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly wondering. [\[1Kgs 6:3\]](#); [\[John 10:23\]](#);

professes the cure not to have been wrought by his or John's own power or holiness, but by Elohim, and his son Yahushua, and through faith in his name

- 12** And when Peter saw *it*, he answered unto the people, you men of Israel, why marvel you at this? or why look you so earnestly on us, as though by our own power or holiness we had made this man to walk?

withal reprehending them for crucifying Yahushua

- 13** The Elohim of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the Elohim of our fathers, has glorified his Son Yahushua; whom you delivered up, and denied him in the presence of Pilate, when he was determined to let *him* go. [Matt 27:20](#); [Mark 15:11](#); [Luke 23:18](#); [John 18:40](#); [\[Matt 27:2\]](#); [\[Mark 15:1\]](#); [\[Luke 18:32\]](#);
14 But you denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you; [\[Matt 27:20\]](#); [\[Mark 15:11\]](#); [\[Luke 23:18\]](#); [\[John 18:40\]](#);
15 And killed the Prince of life, whom Elohim has raised from the dead; whereof we are witnesses. [Acts 1:8](#); [Acts 2:32](#); [\[Acts 5:30\]](#); [\[Acts 5:31\]](#);
16 And his name through faith in his name has made this man strong, whom you see and know: yes, the faith which is by him has given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.

which because they did it through ignorance, and that thereby were fulfilled Elohim's determinate counsel, and the Scriptures

- 17** And now, brethren, I wot that through ignorance you did *it*, as *did* also your rulers. [\[Acts 13:27\]](#); [\[1Cor 2:8\]](#); [\[1Tim 1:13\]](#);
18 But those things, which Elohim before had showed by the mouth of all his prophets, that the Messiah should suffer, he has so fulfilled. [Isa 50:6](#); [Isa 53:5](#); [Luke 24:27](#);

he exhorts them by repentance and faith to seek remission of their sins, and salvation in the same Yahushua

19 Repent you therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord; [Acts 2:38](#);

20 And he shall send Yahushua the Messiah, which before was preached unto you:

21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which Elohim has spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.

22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, **A prophet shall the Lord your Elohim raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall you hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.** [Deut 18:15](#); [Deut 18:18-19](#); [John 1:46](#); [Acts 7:37](#); [[Matt 17:5](#)]; [[Luke 9:35](#)];

23 And it shall come to pass, *that* every being, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people. [[Matt 20:19](#)];

24 **yes**, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days.

25 **you** are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which Elohim made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, **And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.** [Gen 22:18](#); [Gal 3:8](#); [[Gen 12:3](#)]; [[Gen 18:18](#)];

26 Unto you first Elohim, having raised up his Son Yahushua, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities. [[Matt 10:6](#)]; [[Acts 13:26](#)]; [[Acts 13:46](#)];

The rulers of the Jews, offended with Peter's sermon

1 And as they spoke unto the people, the priests, and the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees, came upon them,

2 Being grieved that they taught the people, and preached through Yahushua the resurrection from the dead.

imprison him and John

3 And they laid hands on them, and put *them* in hold unto the next day: for it was now eventide. [\[Luke 21:12\];](#)

4 Howbeit many of them which heard the word believed; and the number of the men was about five thousand.

After, upon examination Peter boldly avouching the lame man to be healed by the name of Yahushua, and that by the same Yahushua only we must be eternally saved

5 And it came to pass on the morrow, that their rulers, and elders, and scribes,

6 And Annas the high priest, and Caiaphas, and John, and Alexander, and as many as were of the kindred of the high priest, were gathered together at Jerusalem. [\[Luke 3:2\];](#)

7 And when they had set them in the midst, they asked, By what power, or by what name, have you done this? [Exod 2:14; Matt 21:23; Acts 7:27; \[Mark 11:28\]; \[Luke 20:1\];](#)

8 Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said unto them, you rulers of the people, and elders of Israel, [\[1Pet 3:15\];](#)

9 If we this day be examined of the good deed done to the impotent man, by what means he is made whole;

10 Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of the Messiah, Yahushua of Nazareth, whom you crucified, whom Elohim raised from the dead, *even* by him this man stands here before you whole. [\[Acts 3:6\];](#)

11 This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner. [Ps 118:22; Isa 28:16; Matt 21:42; Mark 12:10; Luke 20:17; Rom 9:33; 1Pet 2:7;](#)

12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved. [Matt 1:21; Acts 10:43; 1Tim 2:5; \[1John 2:12\];](#)

they command him and John to preach no more in that name, adding also threatening

13 Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men, they marvelled; and they took knowledge of them, that they had been with Yahushua.

14 And beholding the man which was healed standing with them, they could say nothing against it.

15 But when they had commanded them to go aside out of the council, they conferred among themselves,

16 Saying, What shall we do to these men? for that indeed a notable miracle has been done by them *is* manifest to all them that dwell in Jerusalem; and we cannot deny *it*. [John 11:47;](#)

17 But that it spread no further among the people, let us straitly threaten them, that they speak henceforth to no man in this name.

18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Yahushua. [\[Acts 5:28\];](#)

19 But Peter and John answered and said unto them, Whether it be right in the sight of Elohim to hearken unto you more than unto Elohim, judge you. [Acts 5:29;](#)

20 For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard.

21 So when they had further threatened them, they let them go, finding nothing how they might punish them, because of the people: for all *men* glorified Elohim for that which was done. [Acts 5:26](#); [Acts 3:7-8](#);

22 For the man was above forty years old, on whom this miracle of healing was showed.

whereupon the church flees to prayer

23 And being let go, they went to their own company, and reported all that the chief priests and elders had said unto them. [Acts 12:12](#);

24 And when they heard that, they lifted up their voice to Elohim with one accord, and said, Lord, you are Elohim, which have made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is: [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#);

25 Who by the mouth of thy servant David have said, **Why did the heathen rage, and the people imagine vain things?** [Ps 2:1](#);

26 **The kings of the earth stood up, and the rulers were gathered together against the Lord, and against his Messiah.**

27 For of a truth against thy holy child Yahushua, whom you have anointed, both Herod, and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together, [Matt 26:3](#); [Mark 14:1](#); [Luke 22:2](#); [John 11:47](#); [\[Matt 18:7\]](#); [\[Luke 23:12\]](#);

28 For to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done. [\[Acts 2:23\]](#);

29 And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak thy word, [\[Eph 6:19\]](#);

30 By stretching forth thine hand to heal; and that signs and wonders may be done by the name of thy holy child Yahushua. [Mark 16:17](#);

And Elohim, by moving the place where they were assembled, testifies that he heard their prayer; confirming the church with the gift of the Holy Spirit, and with mutual love

1 And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and they spoke the word of Elohim with boldness. [Acts 16:26](#); [\[Acts 16:25\]](#);

32 And the multitude of them that believed were of one heart and of one being: neither said any *of them* that ought of the things which he possessed was his own; but they had all things common. [Acts 2:44](#); [1Pet 3:8](#);

33 And with great power gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Yahushua: and great grace was upon them all.

34 Neither was there any among them that lacked: for as many as were possessors of lands or houses sold them, and brought the prices of the things that were sold,

35 And laid *them* down at the apostles' feet: and distribution was made unto every man according as he had need. [Isa 58:7](#); [\[Acts 2:45\]](#);

36 And Joses, who by the apostles was surnamed Barnabas, (which is, being interpreted, The son of consolation,) a Levite, *and* of the country of Cyprus, [\[Acts 11:24\]](#);

37 Having land, sold *it*, and brought the money, and laid *it* at the apostles' feet.

ACTS FIVE

After that Ananias and Sapphira his wife for their hypocrisy, at Peter's rebuke had fallen down dead

- 1** But a certain man named Ananias, with Sapphira his wife, sold a possession,
2 And kept back *part* of the price, his wife also being privy *to it*, and brought a certain part, and laid *it* at the apostles' feet.
3 But Peter said, Ananias, why has Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Spirit, and to keep back *part* of the price of the land?
4 Whiles it remained, was it not thine own? and after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? why have you conceived this thing in thine heart? you have not lied unto men, but unto Elohim.
5 And Ananias hearing these words fell down, and gave up the ghost: and great fear came on all them that heard these things.
6 And the young men arose, wound him up, and carried *him* out, and buried *him*.
7 And it was about the space of three hours after, when his wife, not knowing what was done, came in.
8 And Peter answered unto her, Tell me whether you sold the land for so much? And she said, yes, for so much.
9 Then Peter said unto her, How is it that you have agreed together to tempt the Spirit of the Lord? behold, the feet of them which have buried thy husband *are* at the door, and shall carry you out.
10 Then fell she down immediately at his feet, and yielded up the ghost: and the young men came in, and found her dead, and, carrying *her* forth, buried *her* by her husband.
11 And great fear came upon all the church, and upon as many as heard these things.

and that the rest of the apostles had wrought many miracles

- 12** And by the hands of the apostles were many signs and wonders wrought among the people; (and they were all with one accord in Solomon's porch. [Mark 16:17](#); [Acts 2:43](#); [\[1Kgs 6:3\]](#); [\[John 10:23\]](#); [\[John 14:12\]](#);
13 And of the rest dared no man join himself to them: but the people magnified them.

to the increase of the faith

- 14** And believers were the more added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women.) [\[Acts 2:47\]](#); [\[Acts 11:21\]](#);
15 Insomuch that they brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid *them* on beds and couches, that at the least the shadow of Peter passing by might overshadow some of them.
16 There came also a multitude *out* of the cities round about unto Jerusalem, bringing sick folks, and them which were vexed with unclean spirits: and they were healed every one. [Mark 16:17](#); [Acts 8:7](#); [Acts 16:18](#); [Acts 19:12](#);

the apostles are again imprisoned

- 17** Then the high priest rose up, and all they that were with him, (which is the sect of the Sadducees,) and were filled with indignation,
18 And laid their hands on the apostles, and put them in the common prison. [\[Luke 21:12\]](#);

but delivered by an angel bidding them preach openly to all

- 19** But the angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors, and brought them forth, and said, [Acts 12:7](#); [Acts 16:26](#);
20 Go, stand and speak in the temple to the people all the words of this life. [\[John 6:68\]](#);

when, after their teaching accordingly in the temple

21 And when they heard *that*, they entered into the temple early in the morning, and taught. But the high priest came, and they that were with him, and called the council together, and all the senate of the children of Israel, and sent to the prison to have them brought.

22 But when the officers came, and found them not in the prison, they returned, and told,

23 Saying, The prison truly found we shut with all safety, and the keepers standing without before the doors: but when we had opened, we found no man within.

24 Now when the high priest and the captain of the temple and the chief priests heard these things, they doubted of them whereunto this would grow.

25 Then came one and told them, saying, Behold, the men whom you put in prison are standing in the temple, and teaching the people.

26 Then went the captain with the officers, and brought them without violence: for they feared the people, lest they should have been stoned. [Matt 21:26](#); [Acts 4:21](#);

27 And when they had brought them, they set *them* before the council: and the high priest asked them,

28 Saying, Did not we straitly command you that you should not teach in this name? and, behold, you have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine, and intend to bring this man's blood upon us. [Acts 4:18](#); [[Matt 27:25](#)];

and before the council

29 Then Peter and the *other* apostles answered and said, We ought to obey Elohim rather than men. [Acts 4:19](#);

30 The Elohim of our fathers raised up Yahushua, whom you slew and hanged on a tree. [Acts 3:15](#); [Deut 21:23](#); [Acts 10:39](#); [Acts 13:29](#); [1Pet 2:24](#); [[Acts 2:23](#)];

31 Him has Elohim exalted with his right hand *to be* a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins. [Acts 2:33](#); [Acts 3:15](#); [Phil 2:9](#);

32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Spirit, whom Elohim has given to them that obey him. [John 15:27](#); [Acts 2:4](#); [[John 15:26](#)];

they are in danger to be killed; but through the advice of Gamaliel, a great counsellor among the Jews, they are kept alive, and are only beaten

33 When they heard *that*, they were cut *to the heart*, and took counsel to slay them.

34 Then stood there up one in the council, a Pharisee, named Gamaliel, a doctor of the law, had in reputation among all the people, and commanded to put the apostles forth a little space; [[Acts 22:3](#)];

35 And said unto them, you men of Israel, take heed to yourselves what you intend to do as touching these men.

36 For before these days rose up Theudas, boasting himself to be somebody; to whom a number of men, about four hundred, joined themselves: who was slain; and all, as many as obeyed him, were scattered, and brought to nought. [Acts 21:38](#);

37 After this man rose up Judas of Galilee in the days of the taxing, and drew away much people after him: he also perished; and all, *even* as many as obeyed him, were dispersed.

38 And now I say unto you, Refrain from these men, and let them alone: for if this counsel or this work be of men, it will come to nought: [Prov 21:30](#); [Isa 8:10](#); [Matt 15:13](#);

39 But if it be of Elohim, you cannot overthrow it; lest haply you be found even to fight against Elohim. [Acts 9:5](#); [Acts 23:9](#);

40 And to him they agreed: and when they had called the apostles, and beaten *them*, they commanded that they should not speak in the name of Yahushua, and let them go. [[Matt 23:34](#)];

for which they glorify Elohim, and cease no day from preaching

41 And they departed from the presence of the council, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer shame for his name. [Matt 5:12](#); [[Luke 6:23](#)]; [[2Cor 7:4](#)];

42 And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Yahushua the Messiah.

The apostles, desirous to have the poor regarded for their bodily sustenance, as also careful themselves to dispense the word of Elohim, the food of the being

1 And in those days, when the number of the disciples was multiplied, there arose a murmuring of the Grecians against the Hebrews, because their widows were neglected in the daily ministration.

2 Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples *unto them*, and said, It is not reason that we should leave the word of Elohim, and serve tables. [Exod 18:17](#);

recommend

3 Wherefore, brethren, look you out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. [Deut 1:13](#); [Acts 1:21](#); [Acts 16:2](#); [1Tim 3:7](#); [[1Tim 3:8](#)];

4 But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word.

and with the church's consent ordain seven chosen men to the office of deaconship

5 And the saying pleased the whole multitude: and they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, and Philip, and Prochorus, and Nicanor, and Timon, and Parmenas, and Nicolas a proselyte of Antioch: [Acts 11:24](#); [Acts 21:8](#);

6 Whom they set before the apostles: and when they had prayed, they laid *their* hands on them. [Acts 1:23](#); [Acts 8:17](#); [Acts 13:3](#); [1Tim 4:14](#); [1Tim 5:22](#); [2Tim 1:6](#);

The word of Elohim prevails

7 And the word of Elohim increased; and the number of the disciples multiplied in Jerusalem greatly; and a great company of the priests were obedient to the faith. [Acts 19:20](#); [[Acts 12:24](#)];

Stephen, full of faith and the Holy Spirit, confuting those with whom he disputed, is brought before the council, and falsely accused of blasphemy against the law and the temple

8 And Stephen, full of faith and power, did great wonders and miracles among the people.

9 Then there arose certain of the synagogue, which is called *the synagogue* of the Libertines, and Cyrenians, and Alexandrians, and of them of Cilicia and of Asia, disputing with Stephen.

10 And they were not able to resist the wisdom and the spirit by which he spoke. [Exod 4:12](#); [Isa 54:17](#); [Luke 21:15](#);

11 Then they suborned men, which said, We have heard him speak blasphemous words against Moses, and *against* Elohim. [Matt 26:59](#);

12 And they stirred up the people, and the elders, and the scribes, and came upon *him*, and caught him, and brought *him* to the council,

13 And set up false witnesses, which said, This man ceaseth not to speak blasphemous words against this holy place, and the law: [[Matt 26:59](#)]; [[Mark 14:55](#)];

14 For we have heard him say, that this Yahushua of Nazareth shall destroy this place, and shall change the customs which Moses delivered us.

15 And all that sat in the council, looking stedfastly on him, saw his face as it had been the face of an angel.

Stephen, permitted to answer to the accusation of blasphemy

1 Then said the high priest, Are these things so?

shows that Abraham worshipped Elohim rightly, and how Elohim chose the fathers

2 And he said, Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken; The Elohim of glory appeared unto our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran,

3 And said unto him, **Get you out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and come into the land which I shall show you.** [Gen 12:1](#);

4 Then came he out of the land of the Chaldaeans, and dwelt in Charran: and from thence, when his father was dead, he removed him into this land, wherein you now dwell. [\[Gen 11:31\]](#); [\[Gen 12:5\]](#);

5 And he gave him none inheritance in it, no, not *so much as* to set his foot on: yet he promised that he would give it to him for a possession, and to his seed after him, when *as yet* he had no child. [Gen 12:7](#); [Gen 13:15](#); [\[Gen 23:4\]](#); [\[Gen 24:7\]](#); [\[Gen 28:4\]](#);

6 And Elohim spoke on this wise, That his seed should sojourn in a strange land; and that they should bring them into bondage, and entreat *them* evil four hundred years. [Gen 15:13](#); [Gen 15:16](#); [Exod 12:40](#); [Gal 3:17](#);

7 And the nation to whom they shall be in bondage will I judge, said Elohim: and after that shall they come forth, and serve me in this place. [Gen 15:16](#); [Exod 3:12](#);

8 And he gave him the covenant of circumcision: and so *Abraham* begat Isaac, and circumcised him the eighth day; and Isaac *begat* Jacob; and Jacob *begat* the twelve patriarchs. [Gen 17:10](#); [Gen 21:2](#); [Gen 25:24](#); [Gen 29:32](#); [Gen 30:5](#); [Gen 35:23](#); [\[Gen 17:11\]](#); [\[Gal 4:22\]](#);

9 And the patriarchs, moved with envy, sold Joseph into Egypt: but Elohim was with him, [Gen 37:4](#); [Gen 37:28](#); [Ps 105:17](#); [\[Gen 37:11\]](#); [\[Gen 39:2\]](#); [\[Gen 45:4\]](#);

10 And delivered him out of all his afflictions, and gave him favor and wisdom in the sight of Pharaoh king of Egypt; and he made him governor over Egypt and all his house. [Gen 41:40](#); [\[Gen 41:37\]](#);

11 Now there came a dearth over all the land of Egypt and Chanaan, and great affliction: and our fathers found no sustenance. [Gen 41:54](#); [Ps 105:16](#);

12 But when Jacob heard that there was grain in Egypt, he sent out our fathers first. [Gen 42:1](#); [\[Gen 42:2\]](#);

13 And at the second *time* Joseph was made known to his brethren; and Joseph's kindred was made known unto Pharaoh. [Gen 45:4](#);

14 Then sent Joseph, and called his father Jacob to *him*, and all his kindred, threescore and fifteen beings. [\[Gen 45:13\]](#); [\[Gen 46:27\]](#); [\[Exod 1:5\]](#); [\[Deut 10:22\]](#);

15 So Jacob went down into Egypt, and died, he, and our fathers, [Gen 46:5](#); [Gen 49:33](#); [\[Gen 50:13\]](#);

16 And were carried over into Sychem, and laid in the sepulcher that Abraham bought for a sum of money of the sons of Emmor *the father* of Sychem. [Gen 50:13](#); [Exod 13:19](#); [Josh 24:32](#); [Gen 23:16](#); [\[Gen 23:17\]](#); [\[Gen 33:18\]](#); [\[Gen 49:31\]](#);

17 But when the time of the promise drew nigh, which Elohim had sworn to Abraham, the people grew and multiplied in Egypt, [Exod 1:7](#); [Ps 105:24](#);

18 Till another king arose, which knew not Joseph. [\[Exod 1:8\]](#);

19 The same dealt subtilly with our kindred, and evil entreated our fathers, so that they cast out their young children, to the end they might not live. [\[Exod 1:10\]](#); [\[Exod 1:22\]](#);

before Moses was born, and before the tabernacle and temple were built

20 In which time Moses was born, and was exceeding fair, and nourished up in his father's house three months: [Exod 2:2](#); [Exod 6:20](#); [Num 26:59](#); [1Chr 23:13](#); [Heb 11:23](#);

21 And when he was cast out, Pharaoh's daughter took him up, and nourished him for her own son. [\[Exod 2:5\]](#);

22 And Moses was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and was mighty in words and in deeds.

23 And when he was full forty years old, it came into his heart to visit his brethren the children of Israel. [Exod 2:11](#);

24 And seeing one *of them* suffer wrong, he defended *him*, and avenged him that was oppressed, and smote the Egyptian: [Exod 2:11](#);

25 For he supposed his brethren would have understood how that Elohim by his hand would deliver them: but they understood not. [\[1Sam 2:27\]](#);

26 And the next day he showed himself unto them as they strove, and would have set them at one again, saying, Sirs, you are brethren; why do you wrong one to another? [Exod 2:13](#);

27 But he that did his neighbour wrong thrust him away, saying, **Who made you a ruler and a judge over us?** [Acts 7:35](#); [Exod 2:14](#); [Matt 21:23](#); [Acts 4:7](#); [\[Gen 19:9\]](#); [\[Mark 11:28\]](#); [\[Luke 20:1\]](#);

28 will you kill me, as you diddest the Egyptian yosterday?

29 Then fled Moses at this saying, and was a stranger in the land of Madian, where he begat two sons. [\[Exod 2:15\]](#);

30 And when forty years were expired, there appeared to him in the wilderness of mount Sina an angel of the Lord in a flame of fire in a bush. [Exod 3:2](#);

31 When Moses saw *it*, he wondered at the sight: and as he drew near to behold *it*, the voice of the Lord came unto him,

32 *Saying, I am the Elohim of thy fathers, the Elohim of Abraham, and the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob.* Then Moses trembled, and dared not behold. [Exod 3:6](#); [Matt 22:32](#); [Heb 11:16](#); [\[1Kgs 18:36\]](#); [\[Mark 12:26\]](#); [\[Luke 20:37\]](#);

33 Then said the Lord to him, **Put off thy shoes from thy feet: for the place where you standest is holy ground.** [Josh 5:15](#);

34 I have seen, I have seen the affliction of my people which is in Egypt, and I have heard their groaning, and am come down to deliver them. And now come, I will send you into Egypt. [\[Exod 3:7\]](#);

35 This Moses whom they refused, saying, Who made you a ruler and a judge? the same did Elohim send *to be* a ruler and a deliverer by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush. [\[Exod 3:10\]](#); [\[Acts 7:27\]](#);

36 He brought them out, after that he had showed wonders and signs in the land of Egypt, and in the Red sea, and in the wilderness forty years. [Exod 7:1-25](#); [Exod 8:1-32](#); [Exod 9:1-35](#); [Exod 10:1-29](#); [Exod 11:1-10](#); [Exod 13:1-22](#); [Exod 14:1-31](#); [Exod 16:1](#); [Deut 1:3](#);

that Moses himself witnessed of the Messiah

37 This is that Moses, which said unto the children of Israel, **A prophet shall the Lord your Elohim raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall you hear.** [Deut 18:15](#); [Deut 18:18](#); [John 1:45](#); [Acts 3:22](#); [Matt 17:5](#);

38 This is he, that was in the church in the wilderness with the angel which spoke to him in the mount Sina, and *with* our fathers: who received the lively oracles to give unto us: [Exod 19:3](#); [Gal 3:19](#);

39 To whom our fathers would not obey, but thrust *him* from them, and in their hearts turned back again into Egypt,

40 Saying unto Aaron, **Make us gods to go before us: for *as for* this Moses, which brought us out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.** [Exod 32:1](#);

41 And they made a calf in those days, and offered sacrifice unto the idol, and rejoiced in the works of their own hands.

42 Then Elohim turned, and gave them up to worship the host of heaven; as it is written in the book of the prophets, **O you house of Israel, have you offered to me slain beasts and sacrifices *by the space of* forty years in the wilderness?** [Amos 5:25](#);

43 Yes, you took up the tabernacle of Moloch, and the star of your god Remphan, figures which you made to worship them: and I will carry you away beyond Babylon. [Amos 5:26-27](#);

and that all outward ceremonies were ordained, according to the heavenly pattern, to last but for a time

- 44** Our fathers had the tabernacle of witness in the wilderness, as he had appointed, speaking unto Moses, that he should make it according to the fashion that he had seen. [Exod 25:40](#); [Heb 8:5](#); [[Exod 26:30](#)];
- 45** Which also our fathers that came after brought in with Joshua into the possession of the Gentiles, whom Elohim drave out before the face of our fathers, unto the days of David; [Josh 3:14](#); [[Acts 13:22](#)];
- 46** Who found favor before Elohim, and desired to find a tabernacle for the Elohim of Jacob. [1Sam 16:1](#); [Ps 89:20](#); [Acts 13:22](#); [2Sam 7:2](#); [1Chr 17:1](#); [Ps 132:5](#); [[1Sam 16:13](#)];
- 47** But Solomon built him a house. [1Kgs 6:1](#); [1Chr 17:12](#);
- 48** Howbeit the most High dwelleth not in temples made with hands; as said the prophet, [1Kgs 8:27](#); [Acts 17:24](#); [[Isa 66:1](#)];
- 49** **Heaven *is* my throne, and earth *is* my footstool: what house will you build me? said the Lord: or what *is* the place of my rest?** [2Chr 6:33](#); [Isa 66:1](#); [Matt 5:34](#); [Matt 23:22](#); [[1Kgs 8:27](#)]; [[2Chr 2:6](#)]; [[2Chr 6:18](#)];
- 50** **Has not my hand made all these things?** [Gen 1:4](#);

reprehending their rebellion, and murdering of the Messiah, the Just One, whom the prophets foretold should come into the world

- 51** You stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, you do always resist the Holy Spirit: as your fathers *did*, so *do* you. [Neh 9:16-17](#); [Jer 6:10](#); [[Matt 23:31](#)]; [[Luke 6:23](#)]; [[Luke 11:49](#)];
- 52** Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which showed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom you have been now the betrayers and murderers: [[Matt 23:34](#)]; [[1Thess 2:15](#)];
- 53** Who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept *it*. [Exod 19:3](#); [Exod 24:3](#); [John 7:19](#); [Gal 3:19](#); [Heb 2:2](#);

Whereupon they stone him to death, who commends his being to Yahushua, and humbly prays for them

- 54** When they heard these things, they were cut to the heart, and they gnashed on him with *their* teeth.
- 55** But he, being full of the Holy Spirit, looked up stedfastly into heaven, and saw the glory of Elohim, and Yahushua standing on the right hand of Elohim,
- 56** And said, Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of Elohim.
- 57** Then they cried out with a loud voice, and stopped their ears, and ran upon him with one accord,
- 58** And cast *him* out of the city, and stoned *him*: and the witnesses laid down their clothes at a young man's feet, whose name was Saul. [1Kgs 21:13](#); [Luke 4:29](#); [Acts 22:20](#);
- 59** And they stoned Stephen, calling upon *Elohim*, and saying, Lord Yahushua, receive my spirit. [Ps 31:5](#); [Luke 23:46](#); [[Luke 21:16](#)];
- 60** And he kneeled down, and cried with a loud voice, Lord, lay not this sin to their charge. And when he had said this, he fell asleep. [Matt 5:44](#); [Luke 23:34](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [[Luke 6:28](#)];

ACTS EIGHT

By occasion of the persecution in Jerusalem, the church being planted in Samaria, by Philip the deacon, who preached, did miracles, and baptized many

1 And Saul was consenting unto his death. And at that time there was a great persecution against the church which was at Jerusalem; and they were all scattered abroad throughout the regions of Judaea and Samaria, except the apostles. [Acts 22:20](#); [Acts 11:19](#); [\[Matt 10:23\]](#); [\[Acts 14:6\]](#); [\[Jas 1:1\]](#);

2 And devout men carried Stephen *to his burial*, and made great lamentation over him. [Gen 23:2](#); [Gen 50:10](#); [2Sam 3:31](#);

3 As for Saul, he made havock of the church, entering into every house, and haling men and women committed *them* to prison. [Acts 9:1](#); [Acts 22:4](#); [Acts 26:9](#); [1Cor 15:9](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [1Tim 1:13](#); [\[Phil 3:6\]](#);

4 Therefore they that were scattered abroad went every where preaching the word. [Matt 10:23](#); [Acts 11:19](#);

5 Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached the Messiah unto them.

6 And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spoke, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did.

7 For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed *with them*: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed. [Mark 16:17](#); [Acts 5:16](#); [Acts 16:18](#); [Acts 19:11](#); [\[Isa 35:6\]](#);

8 And there was great joy in that city.

among the rest Simon the sorcerer, a great seducer of the people

9 But there was a certain man, called Simon, which before in the same city used sorcery, and amazed the people of Samaria, giving out that himself was some great one: [Acts 13:6](#);

10 To whom they all gave heed, from the least to the greatest, saying, This man is the great power of Elohim.

11 And to him they had regard, because that of long time he had amazed them with sorceries.

12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of Elohim, and the name of Yahushua the Messiah, they were baptized, both men and women.

13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.

Peter and John come to confirm and enlarge the church; where, by prayer and imposition of hands giving the Holy Spirit

14 Now when the apostles which were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of Elohim, they sent unto them Peter and John:

15 Who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Spirit: [\[Acts 13:3\]](#);

16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Yahushua.)

17 Then laid they *their* hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit. [Acts 6:6](#); [Acts 13:3](#); [Acts 19:6](#); [1Tim 4:14](#); [1Tim 5:22](#); [2Tim 1:6](#); [\[Acts 10:44\]](#);

when Simon would have bought the like power of them, Peter sharply reproving his hypocrisy and covetousness, and exhorting him to repentance, together with John preaching the word of the Lord, return to Jerusalem

18 And when Simon saw that through laying on of the apostles' hands the Holy Spirit was given, he offered them money, [\[Matt 10:8\]](#);

19 Saying, Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may receive the Holy Spirit.

20 But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with you, because you have thought that the gift of Elohim may be purchased with money. [Matt 10:8](#);

21 You have neither part nor lot in this matter: for thy heart is not right in the sight of Elohim.

22 Repent therefore of this thy wickedness, and pray Elohim, if perhaps the thought of thine heart may be forgiven you. [\[Lam 3:29\]](#);

23 For I perceive that you are in the gall of bitterness, and *in* the bond of iniquity. [\[Deut 29:18\]](#);

24 Then answered Simon, and said, Pray you to the Lord for me, that none of these things which you have spoken come upon me. [Num 21:7](#); [\[1Kgs 13:6\]](#);

25 And they, when they had testified and preached the word of the Lord, returned to Jerusalem, and preached the gospel in many villages of the Samaritans.

but the angel sends Philip to teach and baptize the Ethiopian Eunuch

26 And the angel of the Lord spoke unto Philip, saying, Arise, and go toward the south unto the way that goes down from Jerusalem unto Gaza, which is desert.

27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a believer from Ethiopia, a court official of Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship, [John 12:20](#);

28 Was returning, and sitting in his chariot, reading Isaiah the prophet.

29 Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot. [\[Acts 21:8\]](#);

30 And Philip ran near, and heard him read the prophet Isaiah, and said, "Do you understand what your are reading?"

31 And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.

32 The place of the scripture which he read was this, **He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth:** [Isa 53:7](#); [\[Matt 27:14\]](#); [\[Mark 14:61\]](#); [\[John 1:36\]](#);

33 **In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? for his life is taken from the earth.**

34 And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray you, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man?

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Yahushua. [Luke 24:45](#);

36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what does hinder me to be baptized? [Acts 10:47](#);

37 And Philip said, If you believest with all thine heart, you may. And he answered and said, I believe that Yahushua the Messiah is the Son of Elohim.

38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.

39 And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing.

40 But Philip was found at Azotus: and passing through he preached in all the cities, till he came to Caesarea.

Saul, going towards Damascus, is stricken down to the earth, and led blind to Damascus

1 And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the disciples of the Lord, went unto the high priest, [Acts 8:3](#); [Acts 22:4](#); [Acts 26:9](#); [1Cor 15:9](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [1Tim 1:13](#); [\[Acts 9:13\]](#); [\[Phil 3:6\]](#);

2 And desired of him letters to Damascus to the synagogues, that if he found any of this way, whether they were men or women, he might bring them bound unto Jerusalem.

3 And as he journeyed, he came near Damascus: and suddenly there shined round about him a light from heaven: [Acts 22:6](#); [1Cor 15:8](#); [2Cor 12:2](#); [Acts 26:13](#); [\[1Cor 9:1\]](#);

4 And he fell to the earth, and heard a voice saying unto him, **Saul, Saul, why persecutest you me?**

5 And he said, Who are you, Lord? And the Lord said, **I am Yahushua whom you persecutest.** [Acts 5:39](#);

6 **Arise, and go into the city, and it shall be told you what you must do.** [Luke 3:10](#); [Acts 2:37](#); [Acts 16:30](#);

7 And the men which journeyed with him stood speechless, hearing a voice, but seeing no man. [Dan 10:7](#);

8 And Saul arose from the earth; and when his eyes were opened, he saw no man: but they led him by the hand, and brought *him* into Damascus.

9 And he was three days without sight, and neither did eat nor drink.

is called to the apostleship

10 And there was a certain disciple at Damascus, named Ananias; and to him said the Lord in a vision, **Ananias.** And he said, Behold, I *am here*, Lord.

11 And the Lord *said* unto him, **Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and enquire in the house of Judas for *one* called Saul, of Tarsus: for, behold, he prayeth,** [Acts 21:39](#); [Acts 22:3](#);

12 **And has seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting *his* hand on him, that he might receive his sight.**

13 Then Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he has done to thy saints at Jerusalem: [Acts 9:1](#); [1Cor 15:9](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [1Tim 1:13](#);

14 And here he has authority from the chief priests to bind all that call on thy name.

15 But the Lord said unto him, **Go thy way: for he is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel:** [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Rom 1:1](#); [Gal 1:15](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [1Tim 2:7](#); [2Tim 1:11](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#); [\[Gal 1:16\]](#); [\[1Tim 1:1\]](#);

16 **For I will show him how great things he must suffer for my name's sake.** [Acts 21:11](#); [2Cor 11:23](#);

17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Yahushua, that appeared unto you in the way as you camest, has sent me, that you mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Spirit. [Acts 22:12](#); [\[1Cor 9:1\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:8\]](#);

and is baptized by Ananias

18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized.

19 And when he had received meat, he was strengthened. Then was Saul certain days with the disciples which were at the time in Damascus. [\[Acts 26:20\]](#);

He preaches the Messiah boldly

20 And immediately he preached the Messiah in the synagogues, that he is the Son of Elohim.

21 But all that heard *him* were amazed, and said; Is not this he that destroyed them which called on this name in Jerusalem, and came hither for that intent, that he might bring them bound unto the chief priests?

22 But Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus, proving that this is the Messiah.

The Jews lay wait to kill him

23 And after that many days were fulfilled, the Jews took counsel to kill him:

24 But their laying await was known of Saul. And they watched the gates day and night to kill him. [2Cor 11:32](#);

25 Then the disciples took him by night, and let *him* down by the wall in a basket. [Josh 2:15](#); [1Sam 19:12](#); [\[Matt 10:23\]](#); [\[Acts 17:10\]](#);

26 And when Saul was come to Jerusalem, he tried to join himself to the disciples: but they were all afraid of him, and believed not that he was a disciple. [Acts 22:17](#);

27 But Barnabas took him, and brought *him* to the apostles, and declared unto them how he had seen the Lord in the way, and that he had spoken to him, and how he had preached boldly at Damascus in the name of Yahushua. [Acts 11:25](#);

28 And he was with them coming in and going out at Jerusalem, and speaking boldly in the name of the Lord Yahushua. [\[Acts 22:17\]](#); [\[Acts 26:20\]](#);

so do the Grecians, but he escapes both

29 And he disputed against the Grecians: but they went about to slay him.

30 *Which* when the brethren knew, they brought him down to Caesarea, and sent him forth to Tarsus. [\[Acts 21:39\]](#);

The church having rest, Peter heals Aeneas of the palsy

31 Then had the churches rest throughout all Judaea and Galilee and Samaria, and were edified; and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit, were multiplied.

32 And it came to pass, as Peter passed throughout all *quarters*, he came down also to the saints which dwelt at Lydda.

33 And there he found a certain man named Aeneas, which had kept his bed eight years, and was sick of the palsy. [\[Matt 9:2\]](#); [\[Luke 5:18\]](#);

34 And Peter said unto him, Aeneas, Yahushua the Messiah maketh you whole: arise, and make thy bed. And he arose immediately.

35 And all that dwelt at Lydda and Saron saw him, and turned to the Lord.

and restores Tabitha to life

36 Now there was at Joppa a certain disciple named Tabitha, which by interpretation is called Dorcas: this woman was full of good works and acts of charity which she did.

37 And it came to pass in those days, that she was sick, and died: whom when they had washed, they laid *her* in an upper chamber.

38 And forasmuch as Lydda was nigh to Joppa, and the disciples had heard that Peter was there, they sent unto him two men, desiring *him* that he would not delay to come to them.

39 Then Peter arose and went with them. When he was come, they brought him into the upper chamber: and all the widows stood by him weeping, and showing the coats and garments which Dorcas made, while she was with them.

40 But Peter put them all forth, and kneeled down, and prayed; and turning *him* to the body said, Tabitha, arise. And she opened her eyes: and when she saw Peter, she sat up. [\[Luke 7:14\]](#);

41 And he gave her *his* hand, and lifted her up, and when he had called the saints and widows, presented her alive.

42 And it was known throughout all Joppa; and many believed in the Lord.

43 And it came to pass, that he tarried many days in Joppa with one Simon a tanner.

ACTS TEN

Cornelius, a devout man, being commanded by an angel, sends for Peter

- 1** There was a certain man in Caesarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian *band*,
2 A devout *man*, and one that feared Elohim with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to Elohim always.
3 He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of Elohim coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius.
4 And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before Elohim. [\[Matt 6:6\]](#);
5 And now send men to Joppa, and call for *one* Simon, whose surname is Peter:
6 He lodges with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side.
7 And when the angel which spoke unto Cornelius was departed, he called two of his household servants, and a devout soldier of them that waited on him continually;
8 And when he had declared all *these* things unto them, he sent them to Joppa.
9 On the morrow, as they went on their journey, and drew nigh unto the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the sixth hour: [2Kgs 4:33](#); [Matt 6:6](#); [\[Acts 11:5\]](#);
10 And he became very hungry, and would have eaten: but while they made ready, he fell into a trance,

who by a vision is taught not to despise the Gentiles

- 11** And saw heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending unto him, as it had been a great sheet knit at the four corners, and let down to the earth:
12 Wherein were all manner of fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air.
13 And there came a voice to him, Rise, Peter; kill, and eat.
14 But Peter said, Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten any thing that is common or unclean. [Lev 11:4](#); [Deut 14:7](#); [\[Lev 11:2\]](#);
15 And the voice spoke unto him again the second time, What Elohim has cleansed, *that* call not you common. [Matt 15:11](#); [Rom 14:17](#); [Rom 14:20](#); [1Tim 4:4](#); [Titus 1:15](#); [\[Mark 7:15\]](#); [\[Rom 14:14\]](#);
16 This was done thrice: and the vessel was received up again into heaven.

and is commanded by the Spirit to go with the messenger to Caesarea

- 17** Now while Peter doubted in himself what this vision which he had seen should mean, behold, the men which were sent from Cornelius had made enquiry for Simon's house, and stood before the gate,
18 And called, and asked whether Simon, which was surnamed Peter, were lodged there.
19 While Peter thought on the vision, the Spirit said unto him, Behold, three men seek you. [\[Acts 11:12\]](#);
20 Arise therefore, and get you down, and go with them, doubting nothing: for I have sent them. [Acts 15:7](#);
21 Then Peter went down to the men and said, Behold, I am he whom you seek: what *is* the cause wherefore you are come?
22 And they said, Cornelius the centurion, a just man, and one that feareth Elohim, and of good report among all the nation of the Jews, was warned from Elohim by a holy angel to send for you into his house, and to hear words of you.
23 Then called he them in, and lodged *them*. And on the morrow Peter went away with them, and certain brethren from Joppa accompanied him.
24 And the morrow after they entered into Caesarea. And Cornelius waited for them, and had called together his kinsmen and near friends.

Cornelius shows the occasion of his sending for him

- 25** And as Peter was coming in, Cornelius met him, and fell down at his feet, and worshipped *him*.

26 But Peter took him up, saying, Stand up; I myself also am a man. [Acts 14:14](#); [Rev 19:10](#); [Rev 22:9](#); [[Acts 14:15](#)];

27 And as he talked with him, he went in, and found many that were come together.

28 And he said unto them, you know how that it is an unlawful thing for a man that is a Jew to keep company, or come unto one of another nation; but Elohim has showed me that I should not call any man common or unclean. [Exod 23:32](#); [Exod 34:15](#); [Deut 7:2](#); [John 4:9](#); [John 18:28](#); [Acts 11:3](#); [Acts 15:8](#); [Eph 3:6](#); [[Gal 2:14](#)]; [[Eph 3:5](#)];

29 Therefore came I *unto you* without gainsaying, as soon as I was sent for: I ask therefore for what intent you have sent for me?

30 And Cornelius said, Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, [Matt 28:3](#); [Mark 16:5](#); [Luke 24:4](#);

31 And said, Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of Elohim.

32 Send therefore to Joppa, and call hither Simon, whose surname is Peter; he is lodged in the house of *one* Simon a tanner by the sea side: who, when he comes, shall speak unto you.

33 Immediately therefore I sent to you; and you have well done that you are come. Now therefore are we all here present before Elohim, to hear all things that are commanded you of Elohim.

As he preaches the Messiah to Cornelius and his company

34 Then Peter opened *his* mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that Elohim is no respecter of persons: [Deut 10:17](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 34:19](#); [Rom 2:11](#); [Gal 2:6](#); [Eph 6:9](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#);

35 But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him. [Isa 56:6](#);

36 The word which *Elohim* sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Yahushua the Messiah: (he is Lord of all:) [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 52:7](#); [John 16:33](#); [Rom 5:1](#); [Col 1:20](#); [[Eph 2:14](#)];

37 That word, *I say*, you know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached; [Isa 9:1](#); [Isa 9:2](#); [Matt 4:12](#); [Mark 1:14](#); [Mark 1:38-39](#); [Luke 4:14](#);

38 How Elohim anointed Yahushua of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for Elohim was with him. [Ps 45:7](#); [Isa 61:1](#); [Luke 4:18](#); [[John 3:2](#)];

39 And we are witnesses of all things which he did both in the land of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they slew and hanged on a tree: [[Acts 5:30](#)];

40 Him Elohim raised up the third day, and showed him openly; [Mark 16:14](#); [Luke 24:34](#); [John 20:19](#); [Acts 2:24](#); [1Cor 15:5](#);

41 Not to all the people, but unto witnesses chosen before of Elohim, *even* to us, who did eat and drink with him after he rose from the dead. [[1Cor 15:5](#)];

42 And he commanded us to preach unto the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of Elohim *to be* the Judge of quick and dead. [Matt 28:19](#); [Mark 16:15](#); [John 15:16](#); [Acts 17:31](#);

43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins. [Gen 3:15](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 49:10](#); [Deut 18:15](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Isa 4:2](#); [Isa 7:14](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 40:10](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Jer 33:14](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Ezek 37:24](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Mic 7:20](#); [Acts 15:9](#); [[Jer 31:34](#)]; [[Acts 4:12](#)];

the Holy Spirit falls on them, and they are baptized

44 While Peter yet spoke these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all them which heard the word. [Acts 8:17](#);

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Spirit. [[Acts 2:17](#)]; [[Acts 2:33](#)];

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify Elohim. Then answered Peter, [Mark 16:17](#); [Acts 2:4](#);

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Spirit as well as we? [Acts 8:36](#); [Acts 11:17](#);

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.

Peter, being accused for going in to the Gentiles

1 And the apostles and brethren that were in Judaea heard that the Gentiles had also received the word of Elohim.

2 And when Peter was come up to Jerusalem, they that were of the circumcision contended with him,

3 Saying, you wentest in to men uncircumcised, and didst eat with them. [Exod 23:32](#); [Exod 34:15](#); [Deut 7:2](#); [John 18:28](#); [\[Acts 10:28\]](#);

4 But Peter rehearsed *the matter* from the beginning, and expounded *it* by order unto them, saying,

makes his defence

5 I was in the city of Joppa praying: and in a trance I saw a vision, A certain vessel descend, as it had been a great sheet, let down from heaven by four corners; and it came even to me: [Acts 10:9](#);

6 Upon the which when I had fastened mine eyes, I considered, and saw fourfooted beasts of the earth, and wild beasts, and creeping things, and fowls of the air.

7 And I heard a voice saying unto me, Arise, Peter; slay and eat.

8 But I said, Not so, Lord: for nothing common or unclean has at any time entered into my mouth. [Lev 11:4](#); [Deut 14:7](#);

9 But the voice answered me again from heaven, What Elohim has cleansed, *that* call not you common.

10 And this was done three times: and all were drawn up again into heaven.

11 And, behold, immediately there were three men already come unto the house where I was, sent from Caesarea unto me.

12 And the Spirit bade me go with them, nothing doubting. Moreover these six brethren accompanied me, and we entered into the man's house: [Acts 10:19](#); [Acts 15:7](#);

13 And he showed us how he had seen an angel in his house, which stood and said unto him, Send men to Joppa, and call for Simon, whose surname is Peter;

14 Who shall tell you words, whereby you and all thy house shall be saved.

15 And as I began to speak, the Holy Spirit fell on them, as on us at the beginning. [\[Mark 1:8\]](#); [\[Luke 3:16\]](#); [\[Acts 1:5\]](#); [\[Acts 2:4\]](#); [\[Acts 19:6\]](#);

16 Then remembered I the word of the Lord, how that he said, **John indeed baptized with water; but you shall be baptized with the Holy Spirit.** [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:8](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [John 1:26](#); [Acts 1:5](#); [Acts 2:4](#); [Acts 19:4](#); [Isa 44:3](#); [Joel 2:28](#);

17 Forasmuch then as Elohim gave them the like gift as *he did* unto us, who believed on the Lord Yahushua the Messiah; what was I, that I could withstand Elohim? [Acts 15:9](#); [\[Acts 10:47\]](#);

which is accepted

18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified Elohim, saying, Then has Elohim also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.

The gospel being spread in Phenice, and Cyprus, and Antioch, Barnabas is sent to confirm them

19 Now they which were scattered abroad upon the persecution that arose about Stephen travelled as far as Phenice, and Cyprus, and Antioch, preaching the word to none but unto the Jews only. [Acts 8:1](#); [Acts 8:4](#);

20 And some of them were men of Cyprus and Cyrene, which, when they were come to Antioch, spoke unto the Grecians, preaching the Lord Yahushua.

21 And the hand of the Lord was with them: and a great number believed, and turned unto the Lord. [Acts 2:47](#); [Acts 5:14](#);

22 Then tidings of these things came unto the ears of the church which was in Jerusalem: and they sent forth Barnabas, that he should go as far as Antioch.

23 Who, when he came, and had seen the grace of Elohim, was glad, and exhorted them all, that with purpose of heart they would cleave unto the Lord. [Acts 13:43](#); [Acts 14:22](#);

24 For he was a good man, and full of the Holy Spirit and of faith: and much people was added unto the Lord. [Acts 4:36](#); [Acts 6:5](#);

25 Then departed Barnabas to Tarsus, for to seek Saul: [Acts 9:27](#);

The disciples there are first called Messianic

26 And when he had found him, he brought him unto Antioch. And it came to pass, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the disciples were called Messianic first in Antioch.

They send relief to the brethren in Judea in time of famine

27 And in these days came prophets from Jerusalem unto Antioch.

28 And there stood up one of them named Agabus, and signified by the spirit that there should be great famine throughout all the land of Israel: which came to pass in the days of Claudius Caesar. [Acts 21:10](#);

29 Then the disciples, every man according to his ability, determined to send relief unto the brethren which dwelt in Judaea: [\[Acts 24:17\]](#); [\[1Cor 16:2\]](#); [\[2Cor 8:4\]](#); [\[2Cor 9:1\]](#);

30 Which also they did, and sent it to the elders by the hands of Barnabas and Saul. [Acts 12:25](#); [\[Gal 2:10\]](#);

ACTS TWELVE

King Herod persecutes the Messianic followers, kills James, and imprisons Peter; whom an angel delivers upon the prayers of the church

- 1** Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth *his* hands to vex certain of the church.
- 2** And he killed James the brother of John with the sword. [Matt 4:21](#); [\[Luke 21:16\]](#);
- 3** And because he saw it pleased the Jews, he proceeded further to take Peter also. (Then were the days of unleavened bread.) [\[John 21:18\]](#);
- 4** And when he had apprehended him, he put *him* in prison, and delivered *him* to four quaternions of soldiers to guard him; intending after Passover to bring him forth to the people. [John 21:18](#); [\[Luke 21:12\]](#);
- 5** Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing of the church unto Elohim for him.
- 6** And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door kept the prison.
- 7** And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon *him*, and a light shined in the prison: and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from *his* hands. [Acts 5:19](#); [Acts 16:26](#);
- 8** And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals. And so he did. And he said unto him, Cast thy garment about you, and follow me. [\[Mark 6:9\]](#);
- 9** And he went out, and followed him; and wist not that it was true which was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision.
- 10** When they were past the first and the second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth unto the city; which opened to them of his own accord: and they went out, and passed on through one street; and forthwith the angel departed from him. [Acts 16:26](#);
- 11** And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord has sent his angel, and has delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and *from* all the expectation of the people of the Jews. [Dan 6:22](#);
- 12** And when he had considered *the thing*, he came to the house of Mary the mother of John, whose surname was Mark; where many were gathered together praying. [Acts 4:23](#); [\[Acts 15:37\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);
- 13** And as Peter knocked at the door of the gate, a damsel came to hearken, named Rhoda.
- 14** And when she knew Peter's voice, she opened not the gate for gladness, but ran in, and told how Peter stood before the gate.
- 15** And they said unto her, you are mad. But she constantly affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, It is his angel.
- 16** But Peter continued knocking: and when they had opened *the door*, and saw him, they were astonished.
- 17** But he, beckoning unto them with the hand to hold their peace, declared unto them how the Lord had brought him out of the prison. And he said, Go show these things unto James, and to the brethren. And he departed, and went into another place. [Acts 13:16](#); [Acts 19:33](#); [Acts 21:40](#);
- 18** Now as soon as it was day, there was no small stir among the soldiers, what was become of Peter.
- 19** And when Herod had sought for him, and found him not, he examined the keepers, and commanded that *they* should be put to death. And he went down from Judaea to Caesarea, and *there* abode.

Herod in his pride taking to himself the honour due to Elohim, is stricken by an angel, and dies miserably

- 20** And Herod was highly displeased with them of Tyre and Sidon: but they came with one accord to him, and, having made Blastus the king's chamberlain their friend, desired peace; because their country was nourished by the king's *country*.

21 And upon a set day Herod, arrayed in royal apparel, sat upon his throne, and made an oration unto them.

22 And the people gave a shout, *saying, It is* the voice of a god, and not of a man.

23 And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not Elohim the glory: and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost.

After his death, the word of Elohim prospers

24 But the word of Elohim grew and multiplied. [Isa 55:11](#); [Acts 6:7](#);

Saul and Barnabas return to Antioch

25 And Barnabas and Saul returned from Jerusalem, when they had fulfilled *their* ministry, and took with them John, whose surname was Mark. [\[Acts 11:30\]](#); [\[Acts 13:5\]](#); [\[Acts 15:37\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);

ACTS THIRTEEN

Paul and Barnabas are chosen to go to the Gentiles

1 Now there were in the church that was at Antioch certain prophets and teachers; as Barnabas, and Simeon that was called Niger, and Lucius of Cyrene, and Manaen, which had been brought up with Herod the tetrarch, and Saul. [Acts 14:26](#); [\[Rom 16:21\]](#);

2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Spirit said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Rom 1:1](#); [Gal 1:15](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [1Tim 2:7](#); [2Tim 1:11](#); [Matt 9:38](#); [Rom 10:15](#); [Heb 5:4](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#); [\[Gal 1:16\]](#); [\[Eph 3:2\]](#);

3 And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid *their* hands on them, they sent *them* away. [Acts 6:6](#); [Acts 8:15](#); [Acts 19:6](#); [Acts 14:26](#); [\[Acts 8:17\]](#); [\[1Tim 4:14\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:22\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:6\]](#);

4 So they, being sent forth by the Holy Spirit, departed unto Seleucia; and from thence they sailed to Cyprus.

5 And when they were at Salamis, they preached the word of Elohim in the synagogues of the Jews: and they had also John to *their* minister. [Acts 12:25](#);

Of Sergius Paulus, and Elymas the sorcerer

6 And when they had gone through the isle unto Paphos, they found a certain sorcerer, a false prophet, a Jew, whose name *was* BarYahushua: [Acts 8:9](#); [Acts 19:13](#);

7 Which was with the deputy of the country, Sergius Paulus, a prudent man; who called for Barnabas and Saul, and desired to hear the word of Elohim.

8 But Elymas the sorcerer (for so is his name by interpretation) withstood them, seeking to turn away the deputy from the faith. [Exod 7:11](#); [2Tim 3:8](#);

9 Then Saul, (who also *is called* Paul,) filled with the Holy Spirit, set his eyes on him,

10 And said, O full of all subtilty and all mischief, you child of the devil, you enemy of all righteousness, will you not cease to pervert the right ways of the Lord?

11 And now, behold, the hand of the Lord *is* upon you, and you shall be blind, not seeing the sun for a season. And immediately there fell on him a mist and a darkness; and he went about seeking some to lead him by the hand.

12 Then the deputy, when he saw what was done, believed, being astonished at the doctrine of the Lord.

Paul preaches at Antioch that Yahushua is the Messiah

13 Now when Paul and his company loosed from Paphos, they came to Perga in Pamphylia: and John departing from them returned to Jerusalem. [Acts 15:38](#);

14 But when they departed from Perga, they came to Antioch in Pisidia, and went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day, and sat down.

15 And after the reading of the law and the prophets the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, you men *and* brethren, if you have any word of exhortation for the people, say on.

16 Then Paul stood up, and beckoning with *his* hand said, Men of Israel, and you that fear Elohim, give audience. [Acts 12:17](#); [Acts 19:33](#); [Acts 21:40](#);

17 The Elohim of this people of Israel chose our fathers, and exalted the people when they dwelt as strangers in the land of Egypt, and with a high arm brought he them out of it. [Exod 1:1](#);

18 And about the time of forty years suffered he their manners in the wilderness. [Exod 16:35](#); [Num 14:34](#); [Ps 95:10](#);

19 And when he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Chanaan, he divided their land to them by lot. [Josh 14:2](#);

20 And after that he gave *unto them* judges about the space of four hundred and fifty years, until Samuel the prophet. [Judg 2:16](#); [Judg 3:9](#);

21 And afterward they desired a king: and Elohim gave unto them Saul the son of Cis, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, by the space of forty years. [1Sam 8:5](#); [Hos 13:11](#); [1Sam 9:15](#); [1Sam 10:1](#);

22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave testimony, and said, **I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.** [1Sam 16:12](#); [1Sam 13:14](#); [Ps 89:20](#); [Acts 7:45](#); [\[1Sam 16:13\]](#); [\[Isa 11:1\]](#); [\[Acts 7:46\]](#);

23 Of this man's seed has Elohim according to *his* promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Yahushua: [\[Acts 2:30\]](#); [\[Rom 1:3\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:8\]](#);

24 When John had first preached before his coming the baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel. [Matt 3:1](#); [Mark 1:2](#); [Luke 3:2](#); [John 3:23](#);

25 And as John fulfilled his course, he said, Whom think you that I am? I am not *he*. But, behold, there comes one after me, whose shoes of *his* feet I am not worthy to loose. [John 1:20](#); [Matt 3:11](#);

26 Men *and* brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth Elohim, to you is the word of this salvation sent. [Acts 13:46](#); [Matt 10:6](#); [Acts 3:26](#); [\[Luke 3:8\]](#);

27 For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every Sabbath day, they have fulfilled *them* in condemning *him*. [John 16:3](#); [Acts 3:17](#); [1Cor 2:8](#); [1Tim 1:13](#);

28 And though they found no cause of death *in him*, yet desired they Pilate that he should be slain. [Matt 27:20](#); [Mark 15:11](#); [Luke 23:18](#); [John 19:6](#);

29 And when they had fulfilled all that was written of him, they took *him* down from the tree, and laid *him* in a sepulcher. [\[Acts 5:30\]](#);

30 But Elohim raised him from the dead: [Matt 28:6](#); [Mark 16:6](#); [Luke 24:6](#);

31 And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses unto the people. [Mark 16:14](#); [John 20:19](#); [John 21:1](#); [Acts 1:3](#); [1Cor 15:5](#); [\[Matt 28:10\]](#); [\[Mark 16:7\]](#);

32 And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers, Elohim has fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he has raised up Yahushua again; [Gen 3:15](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 49:10](#); [Deut 18:15](#); [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Isa 4:2](#); [Isa 7:14](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 40:10](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Jer 33:14](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Ezek 37:24](#); [Dan 9:24-25](#);

33 As it is also written in the second psalm, you **are my Son, this day have I begotten you.** [\[Ps 2:7\]](#); [\[Heb 1:5\]](#); [\[Heb 5:5\]](#);

34 And as concerning that he raised him up from the dead, *now* no more to return to corruption, he said on this wise, **I will give you the sure mercies of David.** [Isa 55:3](#);

35 Wherefore he said also in another *psalm*, you **shall not suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.** [Ps 16:10](#); [Acts 2:27](#); [\[John 20:9\]](#); [\[Acts 2:31\]](#);

36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of Elohim, fell on sleep, and was laid unto his fathers, and saw corruption: [1Kgs 2:10](#); [Acts 2:29](#);

37 But he, whom Elohim raised again, saw no corruption.

38 Be it known unto you therefore, men *and* brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins: [Luke 24:47](#); [1John 2:12](#); [\[Rom 3:28\]](#); [\[Rom 10:4\]](#); [\[Gal 2:16\]](#); [\[Gal 3:24\]](#);

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. [Rom 3:28](#); [Rom 8:3](#); [Gal 2:16](#); [Heb 7:19](#); [Rom 10:4](#);

40 Beware therefore, lest that come upon you, which is spoken of in the prophets;

41 Behold, you despisers, and wonder, and perish: for I work a work in your days, a work which you shall in no wise believe, though a man declare it unto you. [Isa 28:14](#); [Hab 1:5](#);

The Gentiles believe

42 And when the Jews were gone out of the synagogue, the Gentiles besought that these words might be preached to them the next Sabbath.

43 Now when the congregation was broken up, many of the Jews and religious proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas: who, speaking to them, persuaded them to continue in the grace of Elohim. [Acts 11:23](#); [Acts 14:22](#);

but the Jews gainsay and blaspheme, whereupon they turn to the Gentiles, of whom many believe

44 And the next Sabbath day came almost the whole city together to hear the word of Elohim.

45 But when the Jews saw the multitudes, they were filled with envy, and spoke against those things which were spoken by Paul, contradicting and blaspheming.

46 Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of Elohim should first have been spoken to you: but seeing you put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles. [Acts 13:26](#); [Matt 10:6](#); [Acts 3:26](#); [Exod 32:10](#); [Isa 55:5](#); [Matt 8:12](#); [Matt 21:43](#); [Rom 10:19](#); [\[Matt 15:24\]](#); [\[Luke 19:10\]](#);

47 For so has the Lord commanded us, *saying*, **I have set you to be a light of the Gentiles, that you should be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.** [Isa 42:6](#); [Isa 49:6](#); [Luke 2:32](#); [\[John 9:5\]](#); [\[John 12:46\]](#);

48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

49 And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.

The Jews raise a persecution against Paul and Barnabas, who go to Iconium

50 But the Jews stirred up the devout and honourable women, and the chief men of the city, and raised persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and expelled them out of their coasts. [2Tim 3:11](#); [\[Acts 15:26\]](#);

51 But they shook off the dust of their feet against them, and came unto Iconium. [\[Matt 10:14\]](#); [\[Mark 6:11\]](#); [\[Luke 9:5\]](#); [\[Luke 10:11\]](#); [\[Acts 18:6\]](#);

52 And the disciples were filled with joy, and with the Holy Spirit.

ACTS FOURTEEN

Paul and Barnabas are persecuted from Iconium

- 1** And it came to pass in Iconium, that they went both together into the synagogue of the Jews, and so spoke, that a great multitude both of the Jews and also of the Greeks believed.
- 2** But the unbelieving Jews stirred up the Gentiles, and made their minds evil affected against the brethren. [\[2Tim 3:11\]](#);
- 3** Long time therefore abode they speaking boldly in the Lord, which gave testimony unto the word of his grace, and granted signs and wonders to be done by their hands. [Mark 16:20](#); [Acts 19:11](#); [Heb 2:4](#);
- 4** But the multitude of the city was divided: and part held with the Jews, and part with the apostles.
- 5** And when there was an assault made both of the Gentiles, and also of the Jews with their rulers, to use *them* despitefully, and to stone them,
- 6** They were ware of *it*, and fled unto Lystra and Derbe, cities of Lycaonia, and unto the region that lies round about: [Matt 10:23](#); [Acts 8:1](#);
- 7** And there they preached the gospel.

At Lystra Paul heals a cripple, whereupon they are reputed as gods

- 8** And there sat a certain man at Lystra, impotent in his feet, being a cripple from his mother's womb, who never had walked: [Acts 3:2](#); [\[Isa 35:6\]](#);
- 9** The same heard Paul speak: who stedfastly beholding him, and perceiving that he had faith to be healed,
- 10** Said with a loud voice, Stand upright on thy feet. And he leaped and walked. [Isa 35:6](#);
- 11** And when the people saw what Paul had done, they lifted up their voices, saying in the speech of Lycaonia, The gods are come down to us in the likeness of men. [Acts 28:6](#);
- 12** And they called Barnabas, Jupiter; and Paul, Mercurius, because he was the chief speaker.
- 13** Then the priest of Jupiter, which was before their city, brought oxen and garlands unto the gates, and would have done sacrifice with the people.
- 14** *Which* when the apostles, Barnabas and Paul, heard *of*, they rent their clothes, and ran in among the people, crying out, [\[Acts 10:26\]](#); [\[Rev 19:10\]](#); [\[Rev 22:9\]](#);
- 15** And saying, Sirs, why do you these things? We also are men of like passions with you, and preach unto you that you should turn from these vanities unto the living Elohim, which made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all things that are therein: [Acts 10:26](#); [Rev 19:10](#); [Rev 22:9](#); [Gen 1:1](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Ps 124:8](#); [Ps 146:6](#); [Rev 14:7](#); [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#); [\[Neh 9:6\]](#); [\[Acts 17:24\]](#);
- 16** Who in times past suffered all nations to walk in their own ways. [Ps 81:12](#); [\[Ps 147:20\]](#);
- 17** Nevertheless he left not himself without witness, in that he did good, and gave us rain from heaven, and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness. [Rom 1:19](#);
- 18** And with these sayings scarce restrained they the people, that they had not done sacrifice unto them.

Paul is stoned

- 19** And there came thither *certain* Jews from Antioch and Iconium, who persuaded the people, and, having stoned Paul, drew *him* out of the city, supposing he had been dead. [2Cor 11:25](#); [\[Acts 15:26\]](#); [\[2Tim 3:11\]](#);
- 20** Howbeit, as the disciples stood round about him, he rose up, and came into the city: and the next day he departed with Barnabas to Derbe.

They pass through various churches, confirming the disciples in faith and patience

21 And when they had preached the gospel to that city, and had taught many, they returned again to Lystra, and *to* Iconium, and Antioch,

22 Strengthening the spirits of the disciples, exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of Elohim. [Acts 11:23](#); [Acts 13:43](#); [Matt 10:38](#); [Matt 16:24](#); [Luke 24:26](#); [2Tim 3:12](#); [[Matt 7:14](#)]; [[1Thess 3:3](#)];

23 And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.

24 And after they had passed throughout Pisidia, they came to Pamphylia.

25 And when they had preached the word in Perga, they went down into Attalia:

Returning to Antioch, they report what Elohim had done with them

26 And thence sailed to Antioch, from whence they had been recommended to the grace of Elohim for the work which they fulfilled. [Acts 13:1](#); [[Acts 13:3](#)];

27 And when they were come, and had gathered the church together, they rehearsed all that Elohim had done with them, and how he had opened the door of faith unto the Gentiles.

28 And there they abode long time with the disciples.

Great dissensions arise touching circumcision

1 And certain men which came down from Judaea taught the brethren, *and said*, Except you be circumcised after the manner of Moses, you cannot be saved. [Gal 5:2](#); [Gen 17:10](#); [Lev 12:3](#); [[Gal 1:7](#)]; [[Titus 1:10](#)];

2 When therefore Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and disputation with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain other of them, should go up to Jerusalem unto the apostles and elders about this question. [Gal 2:1](#);

3 And being brought on their way by the church, they passed through Phenice and Samaria, declaring the conversion of the Gentiles: and they caused great joy unto all the brethren.

4 And when they were come to Jerusalem, they were received of the church, and *of* the apostles and elders, and they declared all things that Elohim had done with them.

The apostles consult about it

5 But there rose up certain of the sect of the Pharisees which believed, saying, That it was needful to circumcise them, and to command *them* to keep the law of Moses.

6 And the apostles and elders came together for to consider of this matter.

7 And when there had been much disputing, Peter rose up, and said unto them, Men *and* brethren, you know how that a good while ago Elohim made choice among us, that the Gentiles by my mouth should hear the word of the gospel, and believe. [Acts 10:20](#); [Acts 11:12](#);

8 And Elohim, which knoweth the hearts, bore them witness, giving them the Holy Spirit, even as *he did* unto us; [1Chr 28:9](#); [1Chr 29:17](#); [Ps 7:9](#); [Jer 11:20](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 20:12](#); [[Acts 1:24](#)]; [[Acts 10:28](#)];

9 And put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith. [Acts 10:43-44](#); [[Acts 10:43](#)]; [[Acts 11:17](#)]; [[Rom 10:12](#)]; [[1Cor 1:2](#)];

10 Now therefore why tempt you Elohim, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear? [Matt 23:4](#); [[Luke 11:46](#)];

11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Yahushua the Messiah we shall be saved, even as they. [Eph 2:8](#); [Titus 3:4](#); [[Eph 2:5](#)]; [[Titus 3:5](#)];

12 Then all the multitude kept silence, and gave audience to Barnabas and Paul, declaring what miracles and wonders Elohim had wrought among the Gentiles by them.

13 And after they had held their peace, James answered, saying, Men *and* brethren, hearken unto me:

14 Simeon has declared how Elohim at the first did visit the Gentiles, to take out of them a people for his name.

15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written,

16 After this I will return, and will build again the tabernacle of David, which is fallen down; and I will build again the ruins thereof, and I will set it up: [Amos 9:11-12](#); [[Amos 9:11](#)];

17 That the residue of men might seek after the Lord, and all the Gentiles, upon whom my name is called, said the Lord, who doeth all these things.

18 Known unto Elohim are all his works from the beginning of the world.

19 Wherefore my sentence is, that we trouble not them, which from among the Gentiles are turned to Elohim:

20 But that we write unto them, that they abstain from pollutions of idols, and *from* fornication, and *from* things strangled, and *from* blood. [Exod 20:3](#); [1Cor 8:1](#); [1Cor 10:20](#); [1Thess 4:3](#); [Gen 9:4](#); [[Acts 16:4](#)];

21 For Moses of old time has in every city them that preach him, being read in the synagogues every Sabbath day.

and send their determination by letters to the churches

22 Then pleased it the apostles and elders, with the whole church, to send chosen men of their own company to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas; *namely*, Judas surnamed Barsabas, and Silas, chief men among the brethren:

23 And they wrote *letters* by them after this manner; The apostles and elders and brethren *send* greeting unto the brethren which are of the Gentiles in Antioch and Syria and Cilicia: [\[Acts 21:25\]](#);

24 Forasmuch as we have heard, that certain which went out from us have troubled you with words, subverting your beings, saying, you *must* be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no *such* commandment: [Gal 2:4](#);

25 It seemed good unto us, being assembled with one accord, to send chosen men unto you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul,

26 Men that have hazarded their lives for the name of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Acts 13:50](#); [Acts 14:19](#);

27 We have sent therefore Judas and Silas, who shall also tell *you* the same things by mouth.

28 For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things;

29 That you abstain from meats offered to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from fornication: from which if you keep yourselves, you shall do well. Fare you well. [Exod 20:3](#); [1Cor 8:1](#); [Gen 9:4](#); [Lev 17:14](#); [1Thess 4:3](#);

30 So when they were dismissed, they came to Antioch: and when they had gathered the multitude together, they delivered the epistle:

31 *Which* when they had read, they rejoiced for the consolation.

32 And Judas and Silas, being prophets also themselves, exhorted the brethren with many words, and confirmed *them*.

33 And after they had tarried *there* a space, they were let go in peace from the brethren unto the apostles.

34 Notwithstanding it pleased Silas to abide there still.

35 Paul also and Barnabas continued in Antioch, teaching and preaching the word of the Lord, with many others also.

Paul and Barnabas, thinking to visit the brethren together, disagree, and travel different ways

36 And some days after Paul said unto Barnabas, Let us go again and visit our brethren in every city where we have preached the word of the Lord, *and see* how they do.

37 And Barnabas determined to take with them John, whose surname was Mark. [Acts 12:12](#); [Acts 12:25](#); [Col 4:10](#); [2Tim 4:11](#); [Phlm 1:24](#);

38 But Paul thought not good to take him with them, who departed from them from Pamphylia, and went not with them to the work. [\[Acts 13:13\]](#);

39 And the contention was so sharp between them, that they departed asunder one from the other: and so Barnabas took Mark, and sailed unto Cyprus;

40 And Paul chose Silas, and departed, being recommended by the brethren unto the grace of Elohim.

41 And he went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the churches.

ACTS SIXTEEN

Paul having circumcised Timothy

1 Then came he to Derbe and Lystra: and, behold, a certain disciple was there, named Timotheus, the son of a certain woman, which was a Jewess, and believed; but his father *was* a Greek: [\[Acts 20:4\]](#); [\[Rom 16:21\]](#); [\[Phil 2:19\]](#); [\[1Thess 3:2\]](#); [\[1Tim 1:2\]](#);

2 Which was well reported of by the brethren that were at Lystra and Iconium. [Acts 6:3](#);

3 Him would Paul have to go forth with him; and took and circumcised him because of the Jews which were in those quarters: for they knew all that his father was a Greek. [1Cor 9:20](#); [Gal 2:3](#);

4 And as they went through the cities, they delivered them the decrees for to keep, that were ordained of the apostles and elders which were at Jerusalem. [Acts 15:20](#);

5 And so were the churches established in the faith, and increased in number daily.

6 Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of Galatia, and were forbidden of the Holy Spirit to preach the word in Asia,

and being called by the Spirit from one country to another

7 After they were come to Mysia, they tried to go into Bithynia: but the Spirit did not allow them.

8 And they passing by Mysia came down to Troas. [2Cor 2:12](#);

9 And a vision appeared to Paul in the night; There stood a man of Macedonia, and prayed him, saying, Come over into Macedonia, and help us.

10 And after he had seen the vision, immediately we endeavoured to go into Macedonia, assuredly gathering that the Lord had called us for to preach the gospel unto them.

11 Therefore loosing from Troas, we came with a straight course to Samothracia, and the next *day* to Neapolis;

12 And from thence to Philippi, which is the chief city of that part of Macedonia, *and* a colony: and we were in that city abiding certain days.

13 And on the Sabbath we went out of the city by a river side, where prayer was wont to be made; and we sat down, and spoke unto the women which resorted *thither*.

converts Lydia

14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, which worshipped Elohim, heard *us*: whose heart the Lord opened, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul.

15 And when she was baptized, and her household, she besought *us*, saying, If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house, and abide *there*. And she compelled us. [Gen 19:3](#); [Gen 33:11](#); [Judg 19:21](#); [Luke 24:29](#); [Heb 13:2](#);

and casts out a spirit of divination

16 And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, a certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination met us, which brought her masters much gain by soothsaying: [1Sam 28:7](#); [Acts 19:24](#);

17 The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, These men are the servants of the most high Elohim, which show unto us the way of salvation.

18 And this did she many days. But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command you in the name of Yahushua the Messiah to come out of her. And he came out the same hour. [Mark 16:17](#); [\[Acts 5:16\]](#); [\[Acts 8:7\]](#);

for which cause he and Silas are whipped and imprisoned

19 And when her masters saw that the hope of their gains was gone, they caught Paul and Silas, and drew *them* into the marketplace unto the rulers, [2Cor 6:5](#); [\[2Cor 7:5\]](#);

20 And brought them to the magistrates, saying, These men, being Jews, do exceedingly trouble our city, [1Kgs 18:17](#); [Acts 17:6](#);

21 And teach customs, which are not lawful for us to receive, neither to observe, being Romans.

22 And the multitude rose up together against them: and the magistrates rent off their clothes, and commanded to beat *them*. [2Cor 11:25](#); [1Thess 2:2](#);
23 And when they had laid many stripes upon them, they cast *them* into prison, charging the jailor to keep them safely: [\[2Cor 7:5\]](#);
24 Who, having received such a charge, thrust them into the inner prison, and made their feet fast in the stocks. [\[Luke 21:12\]](#);

The prison doors are opened

25 And at midnight Paul and Silas prayed, and sang praises unto Elohim: and the prisoners heard them. [Acts 4:31](#);
26 And suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken: and immediately all the doors were opened, and every one's bands were loosed. [Acts 5:19](#); [Acts 12:7](#); [\[Acts 4:31\]](#); [\[Acts 12:10\]](#);
27 And the keeper of the prison awaking out of his sleep, and seeing the prison doors open, he drew out his sword, and would have killed himself, supposing that the prisoners had been fled.
28 But Paul cried with a loud voice, saying, Do thyself no harm: for we are all here.
29 Then he called for a light, and sprang in, and came trembling, and fell down before Paul and Silas,
30 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved? [Luke 3:10](#); [Acts 2:37](#); [Acts 9:6](#);

The jailor is converted

31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, and you shall be saved, and thy house. [John 3:16](#); [John 3:36](#); [John 6:47](#); [1John 5:10](#);
32 And they spoke unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, immediately.
34 And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in Elohim with all his house. [Luke 5:29](#); [Luke 19:6](#);

and they are delivered

35 And when it was day, the magistrates sent the serjeants, saying, Let those men go.
36 And the keeper of the prison told this saying to Paul, The magistrates have sent to let you go: now therefore depart, and go in peace.
37 But Paul said unto them, They have beaten us openly uncondemned, being Romans, and have cast *us* into prison; and now do they thrust us out privily? nay verily; but let them come themselves and fetch us out.
38 And the serjeants told these words unto the magistrates: and they feared, when they heard that they were Romans.
39 And they came and besought them, and brought *them* out, and desired *them* to depart out of the city. [Matt 8:34](#); [\[Mark 5:17\]](#); [\[Luke 8:37\]](#);
40 And they went out of the prison, and entered into *the house of* Lydia: and when they had seen the brethren, they comforted them, and departed.

Paul preaches at Thessalonica, where some believe

1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews:

2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three Sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures, [\[1Thess 2:2\]](#);

3 Expounding and proving that the Messiah had to suffer, and rise again from the dead; and that this Yahushua, whom I preach unto you, is the Messiah. [Ps 22:6](#); [Matt 16:21](#); [Luke 24:46](#);

4 And some of them believed, and consorted with Paul and Silas; and of the devout Greeks a great multitude, and of the chief women not a few. [Acts 28:24](#);

and others persecute him

5 But the Jews which believed not, moved with envy, took unto them certain lewd fellows of the baser sort, and gathered a company, and set all the city on an uproar, and assaulted the house of Jason, and sought to bring them out to the people. [\[Rom 16:21\]](#); [\[1Thess 2:14\]](#);

6 And when they found them not, they drew Jason and certain brethren unto the rulers of the city, crying, These that have turned the world upside down are come hither also; [Acts 16:20](#);

7 Whom Jason has received: and these all do contrary to the decrees of Caesar, saying that there is another king, *one* Yahushua. [Luke 23:2](#); [John 19:12](#);

8 And they troubled the people and the rulers of the city, when they heard these things.

9 And when they had taken security of Jason, and of the other, they let them go.

He is sent to Berea, and preaches there

10 And the brethren immediately sent away Paul and Silas by night unto Berea: who coming *thither* went into the synagogue of the Jews. [Acts 9:25](#);

11 These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so. [Isa 34:16](#); [Luke 16:29](#); [John 5:39](#);

12 Therefore many of them believed; also of honourable women which were Greeks, and of men, not a few.

Being persecuted by Jews from Thessalonica

13 But when the Jews of Thessalonica had knowledge that the word of Elohim was preached of Paul at Berea, they came thither also, and stirred up the people. [1Thess 2:14](#); [\[1Thess 2:16\]](#); [\[Heb 12:15\]](#);

14 And then immediately the brethren sent away Paul to go as it were to the sea: but Silas and Timotheus abode there still.

15 And they that conducted Paul brought him unto Athens: and receiving a commandment unto Silas and Timotheus for to come to him with all speed, they departed. [Acts 18:5](#);

he comes to Athens, and disputes and preaches the living Elohim, to them unknown

16 Now while Paul waited for them at Athens, his spirit was stirred in him, when he saw the city wholly given to idolatry.

17 Therefore disputed he in the synagogue with the Jews, and with the devout persons, and in the market daily with them that met with him.

18 Then certain philosophers of the Epicureans, and of the Stoicks, encountered him. And some said, What will this babbler say? other some, He seemeth to be a setter forth of strange gods: because he preached unto them Yahushua, and the resurrection.

19 And they took him, and brought him unto Areopagus, saying, May we know what this new doctrine, whereof you speakest, *is*?

20 For you bringest certain strange things to our ears: we would know therefore what these things mean.

21 (For all the Athenians and strangers which were there spent their time in nothing else, but either to tell, or to hear some new thing.)

22 Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars' hill, and said, you men of Athens, I perceive that in all things you are too superstitious.

23 For as I passed by, and beheld your devotions, I found an altar with this inscription, TO THE UNKNOWN GOD. Whom therefore you ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.

24 Elohim that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands; [Gen 1:1](#); [2Chr 6:30](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Ps 124:8](#); [Ps 146:6](#); [Isa 66:1](#); [Acts 14:15](#); [Rev 14:7](#); [Acts 7:48](#); [\[2Chr 2:6\]](#); [\[Neh 9:6\]](#);

25 Neither is worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things; [Gen 2:7](#);

26 And has made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and has determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation; [Deut 32:8](#); [\[Gen 11:8\]](#); [\[Heb 2:11\]](#);

27 That they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him, though he be not far from every one of us:

28 For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.

29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of Elohim, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by are and man's device. [Isa 40:18](#);

30 And the times of this ignorance Elohim winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent: [Luke 24:47](#);

31 Because he has appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by *that* man whom he has ordained; *whereof* he has given assurance unto all *men*, in that he has raised him from the dead. [Acts 10:42](#);

whereby, though some mock, many are converted unto the Messiah

32 And when they heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked: and others said, We will hear you again of this *matter*.

33 So Paul departed from among them.

34 Howbeit certain men clave unto him, and believed: among the which *was* Dionysius the Areopagite, and a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

ACTS EIGHTEEN

Paul labours with his hands, and preaches at Corinth to the Gentiles

- 1** After these things Paul departed from Athens, and came to Corinth; [[1Cor 2:3](#)];
- 2** And found a certain Jew named Aquila, born in Pontus, lately come from Italy, with his wife Priscilla; (because that Claudius had commanded all Jews to depart from Rome:) and came unto them. [Rom 16:3](#); [1Cor 16:19](#); [2Tim 4:19](#);
- 3** And because he was of the same craft, he abode with them, and wrought: for by their occupation they were tentmakers. [Acts 20:34](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [2Cor 11:9](#); [2Cor 12:13](#); [1Thess 2:9](#); [2Thess 3:8](#); [[1Cor 2:3](#)];
- 4** And he reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath, and persuaded the Jews and the Greeks.
- 5** And when Silas and Timotheus were come from Macedonia, Paul was pressed in the spirit, and testified to the Jews *that* Yahushua *was* the Messiah. [Acts 17:15](#);
- 6** And when they opposed themselves, and blasphemed, he shook *his* raiment, and said unto them, Your blood *be* upon your own heads; I *am* clean: from henceforth I will go unto the Gentiles. [Matt 10:14](#); [Acts 13:51](#); [[Mark 6:11](#)]; [[Luke 9:5](#)]; [[Luke 10:11](#)];
- 7** And he departed thence, and entered into a certain *man's* house, named Justus, *one* that worshipped Elohim, whose house joined hard to the synagogue.
- 8** And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized. [1Cor 1:14](#);

The Lord encourages him in a vision

- 9** Then spoke the Lord to Paul in the night by a vision, **Be not afraid, but speak, and hold not thy peace:** [Acts 23:11](#);
- 10** **For I am with you, and no man shall set on you to hurt you: for I have much people in this city.**
- 11** And he continued *there* a year and six months, teaching the word of Elohim among them. [[1Cor 4:15](#)];

He is accused before Gallio the deputy, but is dismissed

- 12** And when Gallio was the deputy of Achaia, the Jews made insurrection with one accord against Paul, and brought him to the judgment seat,
- 13** Saying, This *fellow* persuadeth men to worship Elohim contrary to the law.
- 14** And when Paul was now about to open *his* mouth, Gallio said unto the Jews, If it were a matter of wrong or wicked lewdness, O you Jews, reason would that I should bear with you: [Acts 25:11](#);
- 15** But if it be a question of words and names, and *of* your law, look you *to it*; for I will be no judge of such *matters*.
- 16** And he drave them from the judgment seat.
- 17** Then all the Greeks took Sosthenes, the chief ruler of the synagogue, and beat *him* before the judgment seat. And Gallio cared for none of those things.

Afterwards passing from city to city, he strengthens the disciples

- 18** And Paul *after this* tarried *there* yet a good while, and then took his leave of the brethren, and sailed thence into Syria, and with him Priscilla and Aquila; having shorn *his* head in Cenchrea: for he had a vow. [Num 6:18](#); [Acts 21:23](#); [[1Cor 9:20](#)];
- 19** And he came to Ephesus, and left them there: but he himself entered into the synagogue, and reasoned with the Jews.
- 20** When they desired *him* to tarry longer time with them, he consented not;
- 21** But bade them farewell, saying, I must by all means keep this feast that comes in Jerusalem: but I will return again unto you, if Elohim will. And he sailed from Ephesus. [1Cor 4:19](#); [Heb 6:3](#); [Jas 4:15](#);

22 And when he had landed at Caesarea, and gone up, and saluted the church, he went down to Antioch.

23 And after he had spent some time *there*, he departed, and went over *all* the country of Galatia and Phrygia in order, strengthening all the disciples.

Apollos, being more perfectly instructed by Aquila and Priscilla, preaches the Messiah with great efficacy

24 And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria, an eloquent man, *and* mighty in the scriptures, came to Ephesus. [1Cor 1:12](#); [\[1Cor 3:5\]](#); [\[Titus 3:13\]](#);

25 This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spoke and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing only the baptism of John.

26 And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto *them*, and expounded unto him the way of Elohim more perfectly. [\[Rom 16:3\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:6\]](#);

27 And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace: [1Cor 3:6](#);

28 For he mightily refuted the Jews, *and that* publicly, showing by the scriptures that Yahushua was the Messiah.

The Holy Spirit is given by Paul's hands

- 1** And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples, [1Cor 1:12](#); [\[1Cor 3:6\]](#);
- 2** He said unto them, Have you received the Holy Spirit since you believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Spirit.
- 3** And he said unto them, Unto what then were you baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.
- 4** Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Yahushua the Messiah. [Matt 3:11](#); [Mark 1:4](#); [Luke 3:16](#); [John 1:26](#); [Acts 1:5](#); [Acts 11:16](#); [\[Mark 1:8\]](#);
- 5** When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Yahushua.
- 6** And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Spirit came on them; and they spoke with tongues, and prophesied. [Acts 8:17](#); [Acts 11:15](#); [\[Mark 16:17\]](#); [\[Acts 2:4\]](#); [\[Acts 13:3\]](#); [\[1Tim 4:14\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:22\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:6\]](#);
- 7** And all the men were about twelve.

The Jews blaspheme his doctrine, which is confirmed by miracles

- 8** And he went into the synagogue, and spoke boldly for the space of three months, disputing and persuading the things concerning the kingdom of Elohim.
- 9** But when some were hardened, and believed not, but spoke evil of that way before the multitude, he departed from them, and separated the disciples, disputing daily in the school of one Tyrannus. [2Tim 1:15](#);
- 10** And this continued by the space of two years; so that all they which dwelt in Asia heard the word of the Lord Yahushua, both Jews and Greeks. [\[Acts 20:18\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:15\]](#);
- 11** And Elohim wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul: [Mark 16:20](#); [Acts 14:3](#); [\[John 14:12\]](#); [\[Acts 8:7\]](#); [\[Heb 2:4\]](#);
- 12** So that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them. [\[Mark 16:17\]](#); [\[Acts 5:16\]](#);

The Jewish exorcists

- 13** Then certain of the vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Yahushua, saying, We adjure you by Yahushua whom Paul preacheth. [\[Matt 7:21\]](#); [\[Acts 13:6\]](#);
- 14** And there were seven sons of *one* Sceva, a Jew, *and* chief of the priests, which did so.
- 15** And the evil spirit answered and said, Yahushua I know, and Paul I know; but who are you?

are beaten by the devil

- 16** And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.
- 17** And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Yahushua was magnified.
- 18** And many that believed came, and confessed, and showed their deeds. [Matt 3:6](#);

Conjuring books are burnt

- 19** Many of them also which used curious ares brought their books together, and burned them before all *men*: and they counted the price of them, and found *it* fifty thousand *pieces* of silver.
- 20** So mightily grew the word of Elohim and prevailed. [Isa 55:11](#); [\[Acts 6:7\]](#);

Demetrius, for love of gain, raises an uproar against Paul

21 After these things were ended, Paul purposed in the spirit, when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia, to go to Jerusalem, saying, After I have been there, I must also see Rome. [Rom 15:25](#); [Gal 2:1](#); [\[Gal 2:2\]](#);

22 So he sent into Macedonia two of them that ministered unto him, Timotheus and Erastus; but he himself stayed in Asia for a season. [\[Rom 16:23\]](#);

23 And the same time there arose no small stir about that way. [2Cor 1:8](#);

24 For a certain *man* named Demetrius, a silversmith, which made silver shrines for Diana, brought no small gain unto the craftsmen; [Acts 16:16](#);

25 Whom he called together with the workmen of like occupation, and said, Sirs, you know that by this craft we have our wealth.

26 Moreover you see and hear, that not alone at Ephesus, but almost throughout all Asia, this Paul has persuaded and turned away much people, saying that they be no gods, which are made with hands: [Ps 115:4](#); [Jer 10:3](#);

27 So that not only this our craft is in danger to be set at nought; but also that the temple of the great goddess Diana should be despised, and her magnificence should be destroyed, whom all Asia and the world worshippeth.

28 And when they heard *these sayings*, they were full of wrath, and cried out, saying, Great *is* Diana of the Ephesians.

29 And the whole city was filled with confusion: and having caught Gaius and Aristarchus, men of Macedonia, Paul's companions in travel, they rushed with one accord into the theatre. [Acts 20:4](#); [Acts 27:2](#); [Col 4:10](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);

30 And when Paul would have entered in unto the people, the disciples suffered him not.

31 And certain of the chief of Asia, which were his friends, sent unto him, desiring *him* that he would not adventure himself into the theatre.

32 Some therefore cried one thing, and some another: for the assembly was confused; and the more part knew not wherefore they were come together.

33 And they drew Alexander out of the multitude, the Jews putting him forward. And Alexander beckoned with the hand, and would have made his defence unto the people. [\[Acts 12:17\]](#); [\[Acts 13:16\]](#);

34 But when they knew that he was a Jew, all with one voice about the space of two hours cried out, Great *is* Diana of the Ephesians.

which is appeased by the townclerk

35 And when the townclerk had appeased the people, he said, you men of Ephesus, what man is there that knoweth not how that the city of the Ephesians is a worshipper of the great goddess Diana, and of the *image* which fell down from Jupiter?

36 Seeing then that these things cannot be spoken against, you ought to be quiet, and to do nothing rashly.

37 For you have brought hither these men, which are neither robbers of temples, nor yet blasphemers of your goddess.

38 Wherefore if Demetrius, and the craftsmen which are with him, have a matter against any man, the law is open, and there are deputies: let them implead one another.

39 But if you enquire any thing concerning other matters, it shall be determined in a lawful assembly.

40 For we are in danger to be called in question for this day's uproar, there being no cause whereby we may give an account of this concourse.

41 And when he had thus spoken, he dismissed the assembly.

ACTS TWENTY

Paul goes to Macedonia, and thence to Troas

1 And after the uproar was ceased, Paul called unto *him* the disciples, and embraced *them*, and departed for to go into Macedonia. [1Tim 1:3](#);

2 And when he had gone over those parts, and had given them much exhortation, he came into Greece,

3 And *there* abode three months. And when the Jews laid wait for him, as he was about to sail into Syria, he purposed to return through Macedonia.

4 And there accompanied him into Asia Sopater of Berea; and of the Thessalonians, Aristarchus and Secundus; and Gaius of Derbe, and Timotheus; and of Asia, Tychicus and Trophimus. [Acts 19:29](#); [Acts 27:2](#); [Col 4:10](#); [1Cor 1:14](#); [Acts 16:1](#); [Eph 6:21](#); [Col 4:7](#); [2Tim 4:12](#); [Titus 3:12](#); [Acts 21:29](#); [2Tim 4:20](#); [\[Rom 16:21\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);

5 These going before tarried for us at Troas.

6 And we sailed away from Philippi after the days of unleavened bread, and came unto them to Troas in five days; where we abode seven days.

He continues preaching after Sabbath

7 And upon the end of Sabbath, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight. [\[Acts 2:46\]](#);

8 And there were many lights in the upper chamber, where they were gathered together.

Eutychus having fallen down dead is raised to life

9 And there sat in a window a certain young man named Eutychus, being fallen into a deep sleep: and as Paul was long preaching, he sunk down with sleep, and fell down from the third loft, and was taken up dead.

10 And Paul went down, and fell on him, and embracing *him* said, Trouble not yourselves; for his life is in him. [1Kgs 17:21](#); [2Kgs 4:34](#); [\[2Kgs 4:35\]](#);

11 When he therefore was come up again, and had broken bread, and eaten, and talked a long while, even till break of day, so he departed.

12 And they brought the young man alive, and were not a little comforted.

He continues his travels

13 And we went before to ship, and sailed unto Assos, there intending to take in Paul: for so had he appointed, minding himself to go on foot.

14 And when he met with us at Assos, we took him in, and came to Mitylene.

15 And we sailed thence, and came the next *day* over against Chios; and the next *day* we arrived at Samos, and tarried at Trogyllium; and the next *day* we came to Miletus.

16 For Paul had determined to sail by Ephesus, because he would not spend the time in Asia: for he hasted, if it were possible for him, to be at Jerusalem the day of Pentecost. [Acts 21:4](#); [Acts 21:12](#);

and at Miletum he calls the elders together, tells them what shall befall to himself

17 And from Miletus he sent to Ephesus, and called the elders of the church.

18 And when they were come to him, he said unto them, you know, from the first day that I came into Asia, after what manner I have been with you at all seasons, [Acts 19:10](#); [\[2Cor 11:28\]](#);

19 Serving the Lord with all humility of mind, and with many tears, and temptations, which befell me by the lying in wait of the Jews:

20 And how I kept back nothing that was profitable *unto you*, but have showed you, and have taught you publickly, and from house to house,

21 Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward Elohim, and faith toward our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Matt 3:2](#); [Mark 1:15](#); [Luke 24:47](#);

22 And now, behold, I go bound in the spirit unto Jerusalem, not knowing the things that shall befall me there:

23 Save that the Holy Spirit witnesseth in every city, saying that bonds and afflictions abide me. [\[Acts 21:4\]](#); [\[Acts 21:11\]](#);

24 But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might finish my course with joy, and the ministry, which I have received of the Lord Yahushua, to testify the gospel of the grace of Elohim. [Acts 21:13](#); [Gal 1:1](#); [Titus 1:4](#); [\[Titus 1:3\]](#);

25 And now, behold, I know that you all, among whom I have gone preaching the kingdom of Elohim, shall see my face no more.

26 Wherefore I take you to record this day, that I *am* pure from the blood of all *men*.

27 For I have not shunned to declare unto you all the counsel of Elohim.

commits Elohim's flock to them

28 Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to feed the church of the Lord and Elohim, which he has purchased with his own blood. [1Pet 5:2](#); [Eph 1:7](#); [Col 1:14](#); [1Pet 1:19](#); [Rev 5:9](#); [\[Rom 9:5\]](#); [\[Heb 9:12\]](#); [\[Rev 1:5\]](#);

warns them of false teachers

29 For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. [2Pet 2:1](#); [\[Jude 1:18\]](#);

30 Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them. [Ps 41:9](#); [Matt 16:21](#); [Acts 1:17](#); [1John 2:19](#); [\[1Cor 11:19\]](#);

31 Therefore watch, and remember, that by the space of three years I ceased not to warn every one night and day with tears.

commends them to Elohim

32 And now, brethren, I commend you to Elohim, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.

33 I have coveted no man's silver, or gold, or apparel. [1Cor 9:12](#); [2Cor 11:9](#); [2Cor 12:13](#); [\[2Cor 12:14\]](#);

34 Yes, you yourselves know, that these hands have ministered unto my necessities, and to them that were with me. [Acts 18:3](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [1Thess 2:9](#); [2Thess 3:8](#); [\[1Thess 4:11\]](#);

35 I have showed you all things, how that so labouring you ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Yahushua, how he said, **It is more blessed to give than to receive.** [\[Eph 4:28\]](#);

prays with them, and departs

36 And when he had thus spoken, he kneeled down, and prayed with them all. [Acts 21:5](#);

37 And they all wept sore, and fell on Paul's neck, and kissed him,

38 Sorrowing most of all for the words which he spoke, that they should see his face no more. And they accompanied him unto the ship.

Paul calls at the house of Philip, whose daughters prophesy

1 And it came to pass, that after we were gotten from them, and had launched, we came with a straight course unto Coos, and the *day* following unto Rhodes, and from thence unto Patara:

2 And finding a ship sailing over unto Phenicia, we went aboard, and set forth.

3 Now when we had discovered Cyprus, we left it on the left hand, and sailed into Syria, and landed at Tyre: for there the ship was to unlade her burden.

4 And finding disciples, we tarried there seven days: who said to Paul through the Spirit, that he should not go up to Jerusalem. [Acts 21:12](#); [Acts 20:23](#); [\[Acts 20:16\]](#);

5 And when we had accomplished those days, we departed and went our way; and they all brought us on our way, with wives and children, till *we were* out of the city: and we kneeled down on the shore, and prayed. [\[Acts 20:36\]](#);

6 And when we had taken our leave one of another, we took ship; and they returned home again.

7 And when we had finished *our* course from Tyre, we came to Ptolemais, and saluted the brethren, and abode with them one day.

8 And the next *day* we departed, and came unto Caesarea: and we entered into the house of Philip the evangelist, which was *one* of the seven; and abode with him. [Acts 6:5](#); [Acts 8:29](#);

9 And the same man had four daughters, virgins, which did prophesy. [Joel 2:28](#); [Acts 2:17](#);

Agabus, foretelling what should befall him at Jerusalem, he will not be dissuaded from going thither

10 And as we tarried *there* many days, there came down from Judaea a certain prophet, named Agabus. [Acts 11:28](#);

11 And when he was come unto us, he took Paul's girdle, and bound his own hands and feet, and said, Thus said the Holy Spirit, So shall the Jews at Jerusalem bind the man that owneth this girdle, and shall deliver *him* into the hands of the Gentiles. [Acts 21:33](#); [Acts 20:23](#); [\[Acts 9:16\]](#); [\[2Cor 11:23\]](#);

12 And when we heard these things, both we, and they of that place, besought him not to go up to Jerusalem. [\[Acts 20:16\]](#); [\[Acts 21:4\]](#);

13 Then Paul answered, What mean you to weep and to break mine heart? for I am ready not to be bound only, but also to die at Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Yahushua. [Acts 20:24](#);

14 And when he would not be persuaded, we ceased, saying, The will of the Lord be done. [Matt 6:10](#); [Luke 11:2](#); [Luke 22:42](#);

15 And after those days we took up our carriages, and went up to Jerusalem.

16 There went with us also *certain* of the disciples of Caesarea, and brought with them one Mnason of Cyprus, an old disciple, with whom we should lodge.

He comes to Jerusalem

17 And when we were come to Jerusalem, the brethren received us gladly.

18 And the *day* following Paul went in with us unto James; and all the elders were present.

19 And when he had saluted them, he declared particularly what things Elohim had wrought among the Gentiles by his ministry.

20 And when they heard *it*, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, you seest, brother, how many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law:

21 And they are informed of you, that you teachest all the Jews which are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, saying that they ought not to circumcise *their* children, neither to walk after the customs.

22 What is it therefore? the multitude must needs come together: for they will hear that you are come.

23 Do therefore this that we say to you: We have four men which have a vow on them; [\[Acts 18:18\]](#); [\[1Cor 9:20\]](#);

24 They take, and purify thyself with them, and be at charges with them, that they may shave *their* heads: and all may know that those things, whereof they were informed concerning you, are nothing; but *that* you thyself also walkest orderly, and keepest the law. [Num 6:18];

25 As touching the Gentiles which believe, we have written *and* concluded that they observe no such thing, save only that they keep themselves from *things* offered to idols, and from blood, and from strangled, and from fornication. Acts 15:23; Exod 20:3; 1Cor 8:1; Gen 9:4;

26 Then Paul took the men, and the next day purifying himself with them entered into the temple, to signify the accomplishment of the days of purification, until that an offering should be offered for every one of them. Acts 24:6;

where he is apprehended, and in great danger, but by the chief captain is rescued

27 And when the seven days were almost ended, the Jews which were of Asia, when they saw him in the temple, stirred up all the people, and laid hands on him, [Acts 24:18];

28 Crying out, Men of Israel, help: This is the man, that teacheth all *men* every where against the people, and the law, and this place: and further brought Greeks also into the temple, and has polluted this holy place. [Acts 24:6];

29 (For they had seen before with him in the city Trophimus an Ephesian, whom they supposed that Paul had brought into the temple.) Acts 20:4; 2Tim 4:20;

30 And all the city was moved, and the people ran together: and they took Paul, and drew him out of the temple: and forthwith the doors were shut. [Acts 26:21];

31 And as they went about to kill him, tidings came unto the chief captain of the band, that all Jerusalem was in an uproar.

32 Who immediately took soldiers and centurions, and ran down unto them: and when they saw the chief captain and the soldiers, they left beating of Paul.

33 Then the chief captain came near, and took him, and commanded *him* to be bound with two chains; and demanded who he was, and what he had done. Acts 21:11; [Acts 23:27]; [Eph 3:1]; [2Tim 1:8]; [Heb 10:34];

34 And some cried one thing, some another, among the multitude: and when he could not know the certainty for the tumult, he commanded him to be carried into the castle.

35 And when he came upon the stairs, so it was, that he was borne of the soldiers for the violence of the people.

36 For the multitude of the people followed after, crying, Away with him. Luke 23:18; John 19:15; Acts 22:22;

and requests, and is permitted to speak to the people

37 And as Paul was to be led into the castle, he said unto the chief captain, May I speak unto you? Who said, Canst you speak Greek?

38 *are* not you that Egyptian, which before these days madest an uproar, and leddest out into the wilderness four thousand men that were murderers? [Acts 5:36];

39 But Paul said, I am a man, a Jew of Tarsus, *a city* in Cilicia, a citizen of no mean city: and, I beseech you, suffer me to speak unto the people. Acts 9:11; Acts 9:30; [Acts 22:3];

40 And when he had given him licence, Paul stood on the stairs, and beckoned with the hand unto the people. And when there was made a great silence, he spoke unto *them* in the Hebrew tongue, saying, [Acts 12:17]; [Acts 13:16];

Paul declares at large how he was converted to the faith

1 Men, brethren, and fathers, hear you my defence *which I make* now unto you.

2 (And when they heard that he spoke in the Hebrew tongue to them, they kept the more silence: and he said,)

3 I am verily a man, a Jew, born in Tarsus, *a city* in Cilicia, yet brought up in this city at the feet of Gamaliel, *and* taught according to the perfect manner of the law of the fathers, and was zealous toward Elohim, as you all are this day. [Acts 9:11](#); [Acts 21:39](#); [2Cor 11:22](#); [Acts 5:34](#); [\[Luke 10:39\]](#); [\[Rom 10:2\]](#); [\[Phil 3:6\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:3\]](#);

4 And I persecuted this way unto the death, binding and delivering into prisons both men and women. [Acts 8:3](#); [Acts 9:1](#); [Acts 26:9](#); [1Cor 15:9](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [1Tim 1:13](#); [\[Acts 22:19\]](#);

5 As also the high priest bears me witness, and all the estate of the elders: from whom also I received letters unto the brethren, and went to Damascus, to bring them which were there bound unto Jerusalem, for to be punished.

6 And it came to pass, that, as I made my journey, and was come nigh unto Damascus about noon, suddenly there shone from heaven a great light round about me. [Acts 9:3](#); [1Cor 15:8](#); [2Cor 12:2](#);

7 And I fell unto the ground, and heard a voice saying unto me, **Saul, Saul, why persecutest you me?**

8 And I answered, Who are you, Lord? And he said unto me, **I am Yahushua of Nazareth, whom you persecutest.**

9 And they that were with me saw indeed the light, and were afraid; but they heard not the voice of him that spoke to me. [Dan 10:7](#);

10 And I said, What shall I do, Lord? And the Lord said unto me, **Arise, and go into Damascus; and there it shall be told you of all things which are appointed for you to do.**

11 And when I could not see for the glory of that light, being led by the hand of them that were with me, I came into Damascus.

12 And one Ananias, a devout man according to the law, having a good report of all the Jews which dwelt *there*, [Acts 9:17](#);

13 Came unto me, and stood, and said unto me, Brother Saul, receive thy sight. And the same hour I looked up upon him.

14 And he said, The Elohim of our fathers has chosen you, that you should know his will, and see that Just One, and should hear the voice of his mouth. [\[1Cor 9:1\]](#);

15 For you shall be his witness unto all men of what you have seen and heard.

16 And now why delay? Arise, and get immersed in water, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.

and called to his apostleship

17 And it came to pass, that, when I was come again to Jerusalem, even while I prayed in the temple, I was in a trance; [Acts 9:28](#); [\[Acts 9:26\]](#); [\[Acts 26:20\]](#); [\[2Cor 12:2\]](#); [\[Eph 3:3\]](#);

18 And saw him saying unto me, **Make haste, and get you quickly out of Jerusalem: for they will not receive thy testimony concerning me.** [Matt 10:14](#); [\[1Cor 9:1\]](#);

19 And I said, Lord, they know that I imprisoned and beat in every synagogue them that believed on you: [Acts 22:4](#);

20 And when the blood of thy martyr Stephen was shed, I also was standing by, and consenting unto his death, and kept the raiment of them that slew him. [Acts 7:58](#); [Acts 8:1](#);

21 And he said unto me, **Depart: for I will send you far hence unto the Gentiles.** [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Gal 1:15](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [1Tim 2:7](#); [2Tim 1:11](#); [\[Acts 26:20\]](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#); [\[Gal 1:16\]](#); [\[Eph 3:3\]](#);

At the very mentioning of the Gentiles the people exclaim on him

22 And they gave him audience unto this word, and *then* lifted up their voices, and said, Away with such a *fellow* from the earth: for it is not fit that he should live. [Acts 21:36](#);

23 And as they cried out, and cast off *their* clothes, and threw dust into the air,

He would have been scourged

24 The chief captain commanded him to be brought into the castle, and bade that he should be examined by scourging; that he might know wherefore they cried so against him.

but claiming the privilege of a Roman, he escapes

25 And as they bound him with thongs, Paul said unto the centurion that stood by, Is it lawful for you to scourge a man that is a Roman, and uncondemned? [\[Heb 11:35\]](#);

26 When the centurion heard *that*, he went and told the chief captain, saying, Take heed what you do: for this man is a Roman.

27 Then the chief captain came, and said unto him, Tell me, are you a Roman? He said, yes.

28 And the chief captain answered, With a great sum obtained I this freedom. And Paul said, But I was *free* born.

29 Then immediately they departed from him which should have examined him: and the chief captain also was afraid, after he knew that he was a Roman, and because he had bound him.

30 On the morrow, because he would have known the certainty wherefore he was accused of the Jews, he loosed him from *his* bands, and commanded the chief priests and all their council to appear, and brought Paul down, and set him before them.

As Paul pleads his cause

1 And Paul, earnestly beholding the council, said, Men *and* brethren, I have lived in all good conscience before Elohim until this day. [Acts 24:16](#);

Ananias commands them to smite him

2 And the high priest Ananias commanded them that stood by him to smite him on the mouth. [1Kgs 22:24](#); [Jer 20:2](#); [John 18:22](#); [\[2Chr 18:23\]](#); [\[Acts 24:1\]](#); [\[1Cor 4:11\]](#);

3 Then said Paul unto him, Elohim shall smite you, you whited wall: for sittest you to judge me after the law, and commandest me to be smitten contrary to the law? [Deut 17:9](#); [\[Exod 22:28\]](#); [\[Matt 23:27\]](#);

4 And they that stood by said, Revilest you Elohim's high priest?

5 Then said Paul, I wist not, brethren, that he was the high priest: for it is written, you **shall not speak evil of the ruler of thy people**. [Exod 22:28](#);

6 But when Paul perceived that the one part were Sadducees, and the other Pharisees, he cried out in the council, Men *and* brethren, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee: of the hope and resurrection of the dead I am called in question. [Acts 24:21](#); [Acts 26:6](#); [Phil 3:5](#); [\[Acts 28:20\]](#);

Dissension among his accusers

7 And when he had so said, there arose a dissension between the Pharisees and the Sadducees: and the multitude was divided.

8 For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit: but the Pharisees confess both. [Matt 22:23](#); [Mark 12:18](#); [Luke 20:27](#);

9 And there arose a great cry: and the scribes *that were* of the Pharisees' part arose, and strove, saying, We find no evil in this man: but if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him, let us not fight against Elohim. [Acts 25:25](#); [Acts 26:31](#); [\[Acts 5:39\]](#);

10 And when there arose a great dissension, the chief captain, fearing lest Paul should have been pulled in pieces of them, commanded the soldiers to go down, and to take him by force from among them, and to bring *him* into the castle.

Elohim encourages him

11 And the night following the Lord stood by him, and said, **Be of good cheer, Paul: for as you have testified of me in Jerusalem, so must you bear witness also at Rome**. [Acts 18:9](#); [\[1Cor 9:1\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:8\]](#);

12 And when it was day, certain of the Jews banded together, and bound themselves under a curse, saying that they would neither eat nor drink till they had killed Paul. [Acts 23:21](#); [Acts 23:29-30](#); [\[Acts 23:20\]](#);

13 And they were more than forty which had made this conspiracy.

The Jews' laying wait for Paul

14 And they came to the chief priests and elders, and said, We have bound ourselves under a great curse, that we will eat nothing until we have slain Paul.

15 Now therefore you with the council signify to the chief captain that he bring him down unto you to morrow, as though you would enquire something more perfectly concerning him: and we, or ever he come near, are ready to kill him.

16 And when Paul's sister's son heard of their lying in wait, he went and entered into the castle, and told Paul.

17 Then Paul called one of the centurions unto *him*, and said, Bring this young man unto the chief captain: for he has a certain thing to tell him.

18 So he took him, and brought *him* to the chief captain, and said, Paul the prisoner called me unto *him*, and prayed me to bring this young man unto you, who has something to say unto you.

19 Then the chief captain took him by the hand, and went *with him* aside privately, and asked *him*, What is that you have to tell me?

is declared unto the chief captain

20 And he said, The Jews have agreed to desire you that you wouldest bring down Paul to morrow into the council, as though they would enquire somewhat of him more perfectly. [Acts 23:12](#);

21 But do not you yield unto them: for there lie in wait for him of them more than forty men, which have bound themselves with an oath, that they will neither eat nor drink till they have killed him: and now are they ready, looking for a promise from you. [\[Acts 23:12\]](#);

22 So the chief captain *then* let the young man depart, and charged *him*, *See you* tell no man that you have showed these things to me.

23 And he called unto *him* two centurions, saying, Make ready two hundred soldiers to go to Caesarea, and horsemen threescore and ten, and spearmen two hundred, at the third hour of the night;

24 And provide *them* beasts, that they may set Paul on, and bring *him* safe unto Felix the governor.

25 And he wrote a letter after this manner:

26 Claudius Lysias unto the most excellent governor Felix *sendeth* greeting.

He sends him to Felix the governor

27 This man was taken of the Jews, and should have been killed of them: then came I with an army, and rescued him, having understood that he was a Roman. [Acts 21:33](#);

28 And when I would have known the cause wherefore they accused him, I brought him forth into their council:

29 Whom I perceived to be accused of questions of their law, but to have nothing laid to his charge worthy of death or of bonds. [\[Acts 23:12\]](#);

30 And when it was told me how that the Jews laid wait for the man, I sent immediately to you, and gave commandment to his accusers also to say before you what *they had* against him. Farewell.

31 Then the soldiers, as it was commanded them, took Paul, and brought *him* by night to Antipatris.

32 On the morrow they left the horsemen to go with him, and returned to the castle:

33 Who, when they came to Caesarea, and delivered the epistle to the governor, presented Paul also before him.

34 And when the governor had read *the letter*, he asked of what province he was. And when he understood that *he was* of Cilicia;

35 I will hear you, said he, when thine accusers are also come. And he commanded him to be kept in Herod's judgment hall.

ACTS TWENTY-FOUR

Paul being accused by Tertullus the orator

1 And after five days Ananias the high priest descended with the elders, and *with* a certain orator *named* Tertullus, who informed the governor against Paul. [Acts 23:2](#); [[Matt 10:18](#)];

2 And when he was called forth, Tertullus began to accuse *him*, saying, Seeing that by you we enjoy great quietness, and that very worthy deeds are done unto this nation by thy providence,

3 We accept *it* always, and in all places, most noble Felix, with all thankfulness.

4 Notwithstanding, that I be not further tedious unto you, I pray you that you wouldest hear us of thy clemency a few words.

5 For we have found this man *a* pestilent *fellow*, and a mover of sedition among all the Jews throughout the world, and a ringleader of the sect of the Nazarenes:

6 Who also has gone about to profane the temple: whom we took, and would have judged according to our law. [Acts 21:28](#); [[Acts 21:26](#)];

7 But the chief captain Lysias came *upon us*, and with great violence took *him* away out of our hands,

8 Commanding his accusers to come unto you: by examining of whom thyself may take knowledge of all these things, whereof we accuse him.

9 And the Jews also assented, saying that these things were so.

answers for his life and doctrine

10 Then Paul, after that the governor had beckoned unto him to speak, answered, Forasmuch as I know that you have been of many years a judge unto this nation, I do the more cheerfully answer for myself:

11 Because that you may understand, that there are yet but twelve days since I went up to Jerusalem for to worship.

12 And they neither found me in the temple disputing with any man, neither raising up the people, neither in the synagogues, nor in the city: [Acts 25:8](#); [Acts 28:17](#);

13 Neither can they prove the things whereof they now accuse me.

14 But this I confess unto you, that after the way which they call heresy, so worship I the Elohim of my fathers, believing all things which are written in the law and in the prophets:

15 And have hope toward Elohim, which they themselves also allow, that there shall be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust.

16 And herein do I exercise myself, to have always a conscience void of offence toward Elohim, and *toward* men. [Acts 23:1](#);

17 Now after many years I came to bring alms to my nation, and offerings. [Acts 11:29](#); [Rom 15:25](#); [[Gal 2:10](#)];

18 Whereupon certain Jews from Asia found me purified in the temple, neither with multitude, nor with tumult. [Acts 21:27](#);

19 Who ought to have been here before you, and object, if they had ought against me.

20 Or else let these same *here* say, if they have found any evil doing in me, while I stood before the council,

21 Except it be for this one voice, that I cried standing among them, Touching the resurrection of the dead I am called in question by you this day. [Acts 23:6](#); [Acts 28:20](#);

22 And when Felix heard these things, having more perfect knowledge of *that* way, he deferred them, and said, When Lysias the chief captain shall come down, I will know the uttermost of your matter.

23 And he commanded a centurion to keep Paul, and to let *him* have liberty, and that he should forbid none of his acquaintance to minister or come unto him. [Acts 27:3](#); [Acts 28:16](#);

He preaches the Messiah to the governor and his wife

24 And after certain days, when Felix came with his wife Drusilla, which was a Jewess, he sent for Paul, and heard him concerning the faith in the Messiah.

25 And as he reasoned of righteousness, temperance, and judgment to come, Felix trembled, and answered, Go thy way for this time; when I have a convenient season, I will call for you.

The governor hopes for a bribe, but in vain

26 He hoped also that money should have been given him of Paul, that he might loose him: wherefore he sent for him the oftener, and communed with him.

At last, going out of his office, he leaves Paul in prison

27 But after two years Porcius Festus came into Felix' room: and Felix, willing to show the Jews a pleasure, left Paul bound. [Acts 25:14;](#)

The Jews accuse Paul before Festus

- 1** Now when Festus was come into the province, after three days he ascended from Caesarea to Jerusalem.
- 2** Then the high priest and the chief of the Jews informed him against Paul, and besought him,
- 3** And desired favor against him, that he would send for him to Jerusalem, laying wait in the way to kill him.
- 4** But Festus answered, that Paul should be kept at Caesarea, and that he himself would depart shortly *thither*. [\[Matt 10:18\];](#)
- 5** Let them therefore, said he, which among you are able, go down with *me*, and accuse this man, if there be any wickedness in him.
- 6** And when he had tarried among them more than ten days, he went down unto Caesarea; and the next day sitting on the judgment seat commanded Paul to be brought.
- 7** And when he was come, the Jews which came down from Jerusalem stood round about, and laid many and grievous complaints against Paul, which they could not prove.

He answers for himself

- 8** While he answered for himself, Neither against the law of the Jews, neither against the temple, nor yet against Caesar, have I offended any thing at all. [Acts 24:12; Acts 28:17;](#)
- 9** But Festus, willing to do the Jews a pleasure, answered Paul, and said, will you go up to Jerusalem, and there be judged of these things before me?
- 10** Then said Paul, I stand at Caesar's judgment seat, where I ought to be judged: to the Jews have I done no wrong, as you very well knowest.

and appeals unto Caesar

- 11** For if I be an offender, or have committed any thing worthy of death, I refuse not to die: but if there be none of these things whereof these accuse me, no man may deliver me unto them. I appeal unto Caesar. [Acts 18:14;](#)
- 12** Then Festus, when he had conferred with the council, answered, have you appealed unto Caesar? unto Caesar shall you go.
- 13** And after certain days king Agrippa and Bernice came unto Caesarea to salute Festus.

Afterwards Festus opens his matter to king Agrippa

- 14** And when they had been there many days, Festus declared Paul's cause unto the king, saying, There is a certain man left in bonds by Felix: [Acts 24:27;](#)
- 15** About whom, when I was at Jerusalem, the chief priests and the elders of the Jews informed *me*, desiring *to have* judgment against him.
- 16** To whom I answered, It is not the manner of the Romans to deliver any man to die, before that he which is accused have the accusers face to face, and have licence to answer for himself concerning the crime laid against him. [Deut 17:4;](#)
- 17** Therefore, when they were come hither, without any delay on the morrow I sat on the judgment seat, and commanded the man to be brought forth.
- 18** Against whom when the accusers stood up, they brought none accusation of such things as I supposed:
- 19** But had certain questions against him of their own superstition, and of one Yahushua, which was dead, whom Paul affirmed to be alive.
- 20** And because I doubted of such manner of questions, I asked *him* whether he would go to Jerusalem, and there be judged of these matters.
- 21** But when Paul had appealed to be reserved unto the hearing of Augustus, I commanded him to be kept till I might send him to Caesar.

22 Then Agrippa said unto Festus, I would also hear the man myself. To morrow, said he, you shall hear him.

and he is brought forth

23 And on the morrow, when Agrippa was come, and Bernice, with great pomp, and was entered into the place of hearing, with the chief captains, and principal men of the city, at Festus' commandment Paul was brought forth. [\[Luke 21:12\];](#)

24 And Festus said, King Agrippa, and all men which are here present with us, you see this man, about whom all the multitude of the Jews have dealt with me, both at Jerusalem, and *also* here, crying that he ought not to live any longer.

Festus clears him of having done any thing worthy of death

25 But when I found that he had committed nothing worthy of death, and that he himself has appealed to Augustus, I have determined to send him. [Acts 23:9; Acts 26:31;](#)

26 Of whom I have no certain thing to write unto my lord. Wherefore I have brought him forth before you, and specially before you, O king Agrippa, that, after examination had, I might have somewhat to write.

27 For it seemeth to me unreasonable to send a prisoner, and not withal to signify the crimes *laid* against him.

Paul, in the presence of Agrippa, declares his life from his childhood

- 1** Then Agrippa said unto Paul, you are permitted to speak for thyself. Then Paul stretched forth the hand, and answered for himself:
- 2** I think myself happy, king Agrippa, because I shall answer for myself this day before you touching all the things whereof I am accused of the Jews:
- 3** Especially *because I know* you to be expert in all customs and questions which are among the Jews: wherefore I beseech you to hear me patiently.
- 4** My manner of life from my youth, which was at the first among mine own nation at Jerusalem, know all the Jews;
- 5** Which knew me from the beginning, if they would testify, that after the most straitest sect of our religion I lived a Pharisee.
- 6** And now I stand and am judged for the hope of the promise made of Elohim unto our fathers: [Gen 3:15; Gen 22:18; Gen 26:4; Gen 49:10; Deut 18:15; 2Sam 7:12; Ps 132:11; Isa 4:2; Isa 7:14; Isa 9:6; Isa 40:10; Jer 23:5; Jer 33:14; Ezek 34:23; Ezek 37:24; Dan 9:24; Mic 7:20; \[Acts 23:6\]](#);
- 7** Unto which *promise* our twelve tribes, instantly serving *Elohim* day and night, hope to come. For which hope's sake, king Agrippa, I am accused of the Jews.
- 8** Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that Elohim should raise the dead?
- 9** I verily thought with myself, that I ought to do many things contrary to the name of Yahushua of Nazareth. [Acts 8:3; Acts 9:1; Acts 22:4; 1Cor 15:9; Gal 1:13; 1Tim 1:13;](#)
- 10** Which thing I also did in Jerusalem: and many of the saints did I shut up in prison, having received authority from the chief priests; and when they were put to death, I gave my voice against *them*.
- 11** And I punished them oft in every synagogue, and compelled *them* to blaspheme; and being exceedingly mad against them, I persecuted *them* even unto strange cities.

and how miraculously he was converted, and called to his apostleship

- 12** Whereupon as I went to Damascus with authority and commission from the chief priests,
- 13** At midday, O king, I saw in the way a light from heaven, above the brightness of the sun, shining round about me and them which journeyed with me. [Acts 9:3;](#)
- 14** And when we were all fallen to the earth, I heard a voice speaking unto me, and saying in the Hebrew tongue, *Saul, Saul, why persecutest you me? it is hard for you to kick against the pricks.*
- 15** And I said, Who are you, Lord? And he said, *I am Yahushua whom you persecutest.*
- 16** *But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto you for this purpose, to make you a minister and a witness both of these things which you have seen, and of those things in the which I will appear unto you; [Eph 3:3];*
- 17** *Delivering you from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send you,*
- 18** *To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto Elohim, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me. Isa 60:1;*
- 19** Whereupon, O king Agrippa, I was not disobedient unto the heavenly vision:
- 20** But showed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to Elohim, and do works meet for repentance. [Acts 9:19; Acts 9:28; Acts 22:17; Acts 22:21;](#)
- 21** For these causes the Jews caught me in the temple, and went about to kill *me*. [Acts 21:30;](#)
- 22** Having therefore obtained help of Elohim, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:
- 23** That the Messiah should suffer, *and* that he should be the first that should rise from the dead, and should show light unto the people, and to the Gentiles.

Festus charges him with being mad, whereunto he answers modestly

24 And as he thus spoke for himself, Festus said with a loud voice, Paul, you are beside thyself; much learning makes you mad.

25 But he said, I am not mad, most noble Festus; but speak forth the words of truth and soberness.

26 For the king knoweth of these things, before whom also I speak freely: for I am persuaded that none of these things are hidden from him; for this thing was not done in a corner. [John 18:20](#);

27 King Agrippa, believest you the prophets? I know that you believest.

Agrippa is almost persuaded to be a Messianic

28 Then Agrippa said unto Paul, Almost you persuadest me to be a Messianic follower.

29 And Paul said, I would to Elohim, that not only you, but also all that hear me this day, were both almost, and altogether such as I am, except these bonds. [1Cor 7:7](#);

30 And when he had thus spoken, the king rose up, and the governor, and Bernice, and they that sat with them:

The whole company pronounce him innocent

31 And when they were gone aside, they talked between themselves, saying, This man doeth nothing worthy of death or of bonds. [Acts 23:9](#); [Acts 25:25](#);

32 Then said Agrippa unto Festus, This man might have been set at liberty, if he had not appealed unto Caesar.

Paul shipping towards Rome

1 And when it was determined that we should sail into Italy, they delivered Paul and certain other prisoners unto *one* named Julius, a centurion of Augustus' band.

2 And entering into a ship of Adramyttium, we launched, meaning to sail by the coasts of Asia; *one* Aristarchus, a Macedonian of Thessalonica, being with us. [2Cor 11:25](#); [\[Acts 19:29\]](#); [\[Acts 20:4\]](#); [\[Col 4:10\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);

3 And the next *day* we touched at Sidon. And Julius courteously entreated Paul, and gave *him* liberty to go unto his friends to refresh himself. [Acts 24:23](#); [Acts 28:16](#);

4 And when we had launched from thence, we sailed under Cyprus, because the winds were contrary.

5 And when we had sailed over the sea of Cilicia and Pamphylia, we came to Myra, *a city* of Lycia.

6 And there the centurion found a ship of Alexandria sailing into Italy; and he put us therein.

7 And when we had sailed slowly many days, and scarce were come over against Cnidus, the wind not suffering us, we sailed under Crete, over against Salmone;

8 And, hardly passing it, came unto a place which is called The fair havens; nigh whereunto was the city *of* Lasea.

9 Now when much time was spent, and when sailing was now dangerous, because the fast was now already past, Paul admonished *them*, [\[2Cor 11:25\]](#);

foretells of the danger of the voyage

10 And said unto them, Sirs, I perceive that this voyage will be with hurt and much damage, not only of the lading and ship, but also of our lives.

but is not believed

11 Nevertheless the centurion believed the master and the owner of the ship, more than those things which were spoken by Paul.

12 And because the haven was not commodious to winter in, the more part advised to depart thence also, if by any means they might attain to Phenice, *and there* to winter; *which is* a haven of Crete, and lies toward the south west and north west.

13 And when the south wind blew softly, supposing that they had obtained *their* purpose, loosing *thence*, they sailed close by Crete.

They are tossed to and fro with tempest

14 But not long after there arose against it a tempestuous wind, called Euroclydon.

15 And when the ship was caught, and could not bear up into the wind, we let *her* drive.

16 And running under a certain island which is called Clauda, we had much work to come by the boat:

17 Which when they had taken up, they used helps, undergirding the ship; and, fearing lest they should fall into the quicksands, strake sail, and so were driven.

18 And we being exceedingly tossed with a tempest, the next *day* they lightened the ship;

19 And the third *day* we cast out with our own hands the tackling of the ship.

20 And when neither sun nor stars in many days appeared, and no small tempest lay on *us*, all hope that we should be saved was then taken away.

21 But after long abstinence Paul stood forth in the midst of them, and said, Sirs, you should have hearkened unto me, and not have loosed from Crete, and to have gained this harm and loss.

22 And now I exhort you to be of good cheer: for there shall be no loss of *any man's* life among you, but of the ship.

23 For there stood by me this night the angel of Elohim, whose I am, and whom I serve,

24 Saying, Fear not, Paul; you must be brought before Caesar: and, lo, Elohim has given you all them that sail with you.

25 Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer: for I believe Elohim, that it shall be even as it was told me.

26 Howbeit we must be cast upon a certain island. [Acts 28:1](#);

27 But when the fourteenth night was come, as we were driven up and down in Adria, about midnight the shipmen deemed that they drew near to some country;

28 And sounded, and found *it* twenty fathoms: and when they had gone a little further, they sounded again, and found *it* fifteen fathoms.

29 Then fearing lest we should have fallen upon rocks, they cast four anchors out of the stern, and wished for the day.

30 And as the shipmen were about to flee out of the ship, when they had let down the boat into the sea, under colour as though they would have cast anchors out of the foreship,

31 Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, Except these abide in the ship, you cannot be saved.

32 Then the soldiers cut off the ropes of the boat, and let her fall off.

33 And while the day was coming on, Paul besought *them* all to take meat, saying, This day is the fourteenth day that you have tarried and continued fasting, having taken nothing.

34 Wherefore I pray you to take *some* meat: for this is for your health: for there shall not a hair fall from the head of any of you. [Matt 10:30](#);

35 And when he had thus spoken, he took bread, and gave thanks to Elohim in presence of them all: and when he had broken *it*, he began to eat. [1Sam 9:13](#); [John 6:11](#); [1Tim 4:3](#);

36 Then were they all of good cheer, and they also took *some* meat.

37 And we were in all in the ship two hundred threescore and sixteen beings.

38 And when they had eaten enough, they lightened the ship, and cast out the wheat into the sea.

39 And when it was day, they knew not the land: but they discovered a certain creek with a shore, into the which they were minded, if it were possible, to thrust in the ship.

40 And when they had taken up the anchors, they committed *themselves* unto the sea, and loosed the rudder bands, and hoised up the mainsail to the wind, and made toward shore.

and suffer shipwreck

41 And falling into a place where two seas met, they ran the ship aground; and the forepart stuck fast, and remained unmoveable, but the hinder part was broken with the violence of the waves. [2Cor 11:25](#);

42 And the soldiers' counsel was to kill the prisoners, lest any of them should swim out, and escape.

43 But the centurion, willing to save Paul, kept them from *their* purpose; and commanded that they which could swim should cast *themselves* first *into the sea*, and get to land:

yet all come safe to land

44 And the rest, some on boards, and some on *broken pieces* of the ship. And so it came to pass, that they escaped all safe to land.

Paul, after his shipwreck, is kindly entertained of the barbarians

- 1** And when they were escaped, then they knew that the island was called Melita. [Acts 27:26](#);
- 2** And the barbarous people showed us no little kindness: for they kindled a fire, and received us every one, because of the present rain, and because of the cold.
- 3** And when Paul had gathered a bundle of sticks, and laid *them* on the fire, there came a viper out of the heat, and fastened on his hand.
- 4** And when the barbarians saw the *venomous* beast hang on his hand, they said among themselves, No doubt this man is a murderer, whom, though he has escaped the sea, yet vengeance suffereth not to live.

The viper on his hand hurts him not

- 5** And he shook off the beast into the fire, and felt no harm. [Mark 16:18](#); [Luke 10:19](#);
- 6** Howbeit they looked when he should have swollen, or fallen down dead suddenly: but after they had looked a great while, and saw no harm come to him, they changed their minds, and said that he was a god. [Acts 14:11](#);
- 7** In the same quarters were possessions of the chief man of the island, whose name was Publius; who received us, and lodged us three days courteously.

He heals many diseases in the island

- 8** And it came to pass, that the father of Publius lay sick of a fever and of a bloody flux: to whom Paul entered in, and prayed, and laid his hands on him, and healed him. [Matt 8:14](#); [\[Mark 16:18\]](#);
- 9** So when this was done, others also, which had diseases in the island, came, and were healed:
- 10** Who also honoured us with many honours; and when we departed, they laded *us* with such things as were necessary.

They depart towards Rome

- 11** And after three months we departed in a ship of Alexandria, which had wintered in the isle, whose sign was Castor and Pollux.
- 12** And landing at Syracuse, we tarried *there* three days.
- 13** And from thence we fetched a compass, and came to Rhegium: and after one day the south wind blew, and we came the next day to Puteoli:
- 14** Where we found brethren, and were desired to tarry with them seven days: and so we went toward Rome.
- 15** And from thence, when the brethren heard of us, they came to meet us as far as Appii forum, and The three taverns: whom when Paul saw, he thanked Elohim, and took courage.
- 16** And when we came to Rome, the centurion delivered the prisoners to the captain of the guard: but Paul was suffered to dwell by himself with a soldier that kept him. [Acts 24:23](#); [Acts 27:3](#);

He declares to the Jews the cause of his coming

- 17** And it came to pass, that after three days Paul called the chief of the Jews together: and when they were come together, he said unto them, Men *and* brethren, though I have committed nothing against the people, or customs of our fathers, yet was I delivered prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans. [Acts 24:12](#); [Acts 25:8](#);
- 18** Who, when they had examined me, would have let *me* go, because there was no cause of death in me.

19 But when the Jews spoke against *it*, I was compelled to appeal unto Caesar; not that I had ought to accuse my nation of.

20 For this cause therefore have I called for you, to see *you*, and to speak with *you*: because that for the hope of Israel I am bound with this chain. [Acts 23:6](#); [Acts 24:21](#); [\[Eph 6:20\]](#);

21 And they said unto him, We neither received letters out of Judaea concerning you, neither any of the brethren that came showed or spoke any harm of you.

22 But we desire to hear of you what you thinkest: for as concerning this sect, we know that every where it is spoken against. [\[Luke 2:34\]](#);

23 And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into *his* lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of Elohim, persuading them concerning Yahushua, both out of the law of Moses, and *out of* the prophets, from morning till evening. [Gen 3:15](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 49:10](#); [Deut 18:15](#); [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Isa 4:2](#); [Isa 7:14](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 40:10](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Jer 33:14](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Ezek 37:24](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Mic 7:20](#);

After his preaching some were persuaded, and some believed not

24 And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not. [Acts 17:4](#);

25 And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spoke the Holy Spirit by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers,

26 Saying, **Go unto this people, and say, Hearing you shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing you shall see, and not perceive:** [Isa 6:9](#); [Ezek 12:2](#); [Matt 13:14](#); [Mark 4:12](#); [Luke 8:10](#); [John 12:40](#); [Rom 11:8](#); [\[2Cor 3:14\]](#);

27 **For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.**

28 Be it known therefore unto you, that the salvation of Elohim is sent unto the Gentiles, and *that* they will hear it. [\[Luke 2:31\]](#);

29 And when he had said these words, the Jews departed, and had great reasoning among themselves.

Yet he preaches there two years

30 And Paul dwelt two whole years in his own hired house, and received all that came in unto him,

31 Preaching the kingdom of Elohim, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

Romans

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#)

ROMANS ONE

Paul commends his calling to the Romans

1 Paul, a servant of Yahushua the Messiah, called *to be* an apostle, separated unto the gospel of Elohim, [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Gal 1:15](#);

2 (Which he had promised before by his prophets in the holy scriptures,) [Gen 3:15](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 49:10](#); [Deut 18:15](#); [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Isa 4:2](#); [Isa 7:14](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 40:10](#); [Jer 23:5](#); [Jer 33:14](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [Ezek 37:24](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Mic 7:20](#);

3 Concerning his Son who was made of the seed of David according to the flesh; [Matt 1:1](#); [Luke 1:32](#); [Acts 2:30](#); [Acts 13:23](#); [2Tim 2:8](#);

4 And declared *to be* the Son of Elohim with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead, Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Isa 54:5](#); [John 2:19](#); [Rom 9:5](#); [1John 5:20](#);

5 By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name: [\[Rom 12:3\]](#); [\[Eph 3:2\]](#);

6 Among whom are you also the called of Yahushua the Messiah:

7 To all that be in Rome, beloved of Elohim, who have been called, who have been set apart for Him: Grace to you and peace from Elohim our Father, and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [1Cor 1:2](#); [Eph 1:1](#); [\[1Cor 1:3\]](#); [\[2Cor 1:2\]](#); [\[Gal 1:3\]](#); [\[Phil 1:2\]](#); [\[Col 1:2\]](#); [\[1Thess 1:1\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:2\]](#); [\[2Pet 1:2\]](#);

8 First, I thank my Elohim through Yahushua the Messiah for you all, that your faith is spoken of throughout the whole world.

and his desire to come to them

9 For Elohim is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I make mention of you always in my prayers; [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [2Tim 1:3](#); [\[Eph 4:17\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:7\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:21\]](#); [\[2Tim 4:1\]](#);

10 Making request, if by any means now at length I might have a prosperous journey by the will of Elohim to come unto you. [Rom 15:23](#); [Rom 15:32](#); [\[1Thess 3:10\]](#);

11 For I long to see you, that I may impart unto you some spiritual gift, to the end you may be established; [1Thess 3:10](#); [Rom 15:29](#);

12 That is, that I may be comforted together with you by the mutual faith both of you and me.

13 Now I would not have you ignorant, brethren, that oftentimes I purposed to come unto you, (but was let hitherto,) that I might have some fruit among you also, even as among other Gentiles. [1Thess 2:18](#); [\[Rom 15:22\]](#);

14 I am debtor both to the Greeks, and to the Barbarians; both to the wise, and to the unwise. [1Cor 9:16](#);

15 So, as much as in me is, I am ready to preach the gospel to you that are at Rome also.

What his gospel is

16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of the Messiah: for it is the power of Elohim unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek. [Ps 40:9](#); [2Tim 1:8](#); [1Cor 1:18](#); [1Cor 15:2](#);

17 For therein is the righteousness of Elohim revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith. [Rom 3:21](#); [Phil 3:9](#); [Hab 2:4](#); [John 3:36](#); [Gal 3:11](#); [Heb 10:38](#);

Elohim is angry with sin

18 For the wrath of Elohim is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness; [\[Eph 4:17\]](#);

19 Because that which may be known of Elohim is manifest in them; for Elohim has showed *it* unto them. [Acts 14:17](#);

20 For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, *even* his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse: [Ps 19:1](#);

What were the sins of the gentiles

21 Because that, when they knew Elohim, they glorified *him* not as Elohim, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. [Deut 28:28](#);

22 Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools,

23 And changed the glory of the uncorruptible Elohim into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things. [2Kgs 17:29](#);

24 Wherefore Elohim also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: [\[2Thess 2:11\]](#);

25 Who changed the truth of Elohim into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen.

26 For this cause Elohim gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: [Lev 18:22-23](#);

27 And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompence of their error which was meet.

28 And even as they did not like to retain Elohim in *their* knowledge, Elohim gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient;

29 Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers,

30 Backbiters, haters of Elohim, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents,

31 Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful:

32 Who knowing the judgment of Elohim, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them. [Hos 7:3](#);

ROMANS TWO

No excuse for sin

1 Therefore you are inexcusable, O man, whosoever you are that judgest: for wherein you judgest another, you condemnest thyself; for you that judgest do the same things. [2Sam 12:5](#); [Matt 7:1](#); [1Cor 4:5](#); [\[Luke 6:37\]](#);

2 But we are sure that the judgment of Elohim is according to truth against them which commit such things. [\[Isa 42:20\]](#);

3 And thinkest you this, O man, that judgest them which do such things, and do the same, that you shall escape the judgment of Elohim?

4 Or despisest you the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of Elohim leadeth you to repentance? [2Pet 3:15](#); [Isa 30:18](#); [\[1Pet 3:20\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);

5 But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of Elohim; [Rom 9:22](#); [\[Jas 5:3\]](#);

No escape from judgment

6 Who will render to every man according to his deeds: [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [1Cor 3:8](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Gal 6:5](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [Rev 22:12](#); [\[Job 34:11\]](#); [\[Prov 24:12\]](#); [\[Rev 20:12\]](#);

7 To them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honour and immortality, eternal life:

8 But unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath, [2Thess 1:8](#);

9 Tribulation and anguish, upon every being of man that doeth evil, of the Jew first, and also of the Gentile;

10 But glory, honour, and peace, to every man that worketh good, to the Jew first, and also to the Gentile:

11 For there is no respect of persons with Elohim. [Deut 10:17](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 34:19](#); [Acts 10:34](#); [Gal 2:6](#); [Eph 6:9](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#);

12 For as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law: and as many as have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law;

13 (For not the hearers of the law *are* just before Elohim, but the doers of the law shall be justified. [Matt 7:21](#); [Jas 1:22](#); [1John 3:7](#); [\[Matt 7:24\]](#); [\[Matt 7:26\]](#); [\[Luke 6:46\]](#); [\[Luke 11:28\]](#);

Gentiles cannot

14 For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves:

15 Which show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and *their* thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;)

16 In the day when Elohim shall judge the secrets of men by Yahushua the Messiah according to my gospel. [Matt 25:31](#);

nor Jews

17 Behold, you are called a Jew, and retest in the law, and makest thy boast of Elohim, [Rom 9:4](#);

18 And knowest *his* will, and approvest the things that are more excellent, being instructed out of the law;

19 And are confident that you thyself are a guide of the blind, a light of them which are in darkness, [\[Matt 23:3\]](#);

20 An instructor of the foolish, a teacher of babes, which have the form of knowledge and of the truth in the law. [\[Jer 2:8\]](#);

21 You therefore which teachest another, teachest you not thyself? you that preachest a man should not steal, dost you steal?

22 You that sayest a man should not commit adultery, dost you commit adultery? you that abhorrest idols, dost you commit sacrilege?

23 You that makest thy boast of the law, through breaking the law dishonourest you Elohim?

24 **For the name of Elohim is blasphemed among the Gentiles through you,** as it is written. [Isa 52:5](#); [Ezek 36:23](#); [[Ezek 36:20](#)];

25 For circumcision verily profiteth, if you keep the law: but if you be a breaker of the law, thy circumcision is made uncircumcision.

26 Therefore if the uncircumcision keep the righteousness of the law, shall not his uncircumcision be counted for circumcision?

27 And shall not uncircumcision which is by nature, if it fulfil the law, judge you, who by the letter and circumcision dost transgress the law?

28 For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; neither *is that* circumcision, which is outward in the flesh: [John 8:39](#); [Rom 9:7](#); [[Jer 9:26](#)]; [[Rom 9:6](#)];

29 But he *is* a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision *is that* of the heart, in the spirit, *and* not in the letter; whose praise *is* not of men, but of Elohim. [Deut 10:16](#); [Jer 4:4](#); [Phil 3:2-3](#); [Col 2:11](#); [[Rom 7:6](#)]; [[Phil 3:3](#)];

The Jews' prerogative

1 What advantage then has the Jew? or what profit *is there* of circumcision?

2 Much every way: chiefly, because that unto them were committed the oracles of Elohim. [Ps 147:19](#); [Rom 9:4](#);

which they have not lost

3 For what if some did not believe? shall their unbelief make the faith of Elohim without effect? [Num 23:19](#); [Rom 9:6](#); [2Tim 2:13](#);

4 Certainly not: yes, let Elohim be true, but every man a liar; as it is written, **That you mightest be justified in thy sayings, and mightest overcome when you are judged.** [John 3:33](#); [Ps 116:11](#); [Ps 51:4](#); [\[Job 40:8\]](#); [\[Ps 143:2\]](#); [\[John 7:28\]](#); [\[John 8:26\]](#);

5 But if our unrighteousness commend the righteousness of Elohim, what shall we say? *Is* Elohim unrighteous who taketh vengeance? (I speak as a man) [\[Job 34:17\]](#);

6 Certainly not: for then how shall Elohim judge the world? [\[Gen 18:25\]](#);

7 For if the truth of Elohim has more abounded through my lie unto his glory; why yet am I also judged as a sinner?

8 And not *rather*, (as we be slanderously reported, and as some affirm that we say,) Let us do evil, that good may come? whose damnation is just.

howbeit the law convicts them also of sin

9 What then? are we better *than they*? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin; [Gal 3:22](#);

10 As it is written, **There is none righteous, no, not one:** [Ps 14:3](#); [Ps 53:3](#); [\[Gen 6:5\]](#); [\[Ps 14:1\]](#);

11 There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after Elohim. [\[Ps 53:2\]](#);

12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one. [\[Ps 53:1\]](#);

13 Their throat *is* an open sepulcher; with their tongues they have used deceit; the poison of asps *is* under their lips: [Ps 5:9](#); [Ps 140:3](#);

14 Whose mouth *is* full of cursing and bitterness: [Ps 10:7](#);

15 Their feet *are* swift to shed blood: [Prov 1:16](#); [Isa 59:7](#); [\[Prov 6:18\]](#);

16 Destruction and misery *are* in their ways:

17 And the way of peace have they not known:

18 There is no fear of Elohim before their eyes. [Ps 36:1](#);

19 Now we know that what things soever the law said, it said to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before Elohim.

therefore no flesh is justified by the law

20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law *is* the knowledge of sin. [Gal 2:16](#); [Rom 7:7](#); [Heb 7:18](#); [\[Gal 3:11\]](#); [\[Titus 3:5\]](#);

21 But now the righteousness of Elohim without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets; [Rom 1:17](#); [Phil 3:9](#); [\[Heb 7:19\]](#);

22 Even the righteousness of Elohim *which is* by faith of Yahushua the Messiah unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference: [\[Rom 10:12\]](#);

23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of Elohim;

24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Yahushua the Messiah: [Isa 53:5](#); [\[2Cor 5:19\]](#); [\[1John 4:10\]](#);

25 Whom Elohim has set forth *to be* a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of Elohim; [2Cor 5:19](#); [Col 1:20](#); [Heb 4:16](#); [1John 4:10](#); [Exod 25:17](#); [\[1John 2:2\]](#);

26 To declare, *I say*, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Yahushua.

27 Where *is* boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay: but by the law of faith. [\[Eph 2:9\]](#);

but all, without difference, by faith, only

28 Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. [Acts 13:38](#); [Rom 8:3](#); [Gal 2:16](#); [Heb 7:25](#); [\[Acts 13:39\]](#); [\[Titus 3:5\]](#); [\[Heb 7:19\]](#);

29 *Is he* the Elohim of the Jews only? *is he* not also of the Gentiles? yous, of the Gentiles also:

30 Seeing *it is* one Elohim, which shall justify the circumcision by faith, and uncircumcision through faith. [\[1Tim 2:5\]](#);

and yet the law is not abolished

31 Do we then make void the law through faith? Certainly not: yes, we establish the law.

Abraham's faith was imputed to him for righteousness

- 1** What shall we say then that Abraham our father, as pertaining to the flesh, has found? [Isa 51:2](#);
- 2** For if Abraham were justified by works, he has *whereof* to glory; but not before Elohim. [\[Titus 3:5\]](#);
- 3** For what said the scripture? **Abraham believed Elohim, and it was counted unto him for righteousness.** [Gen 15:6](#); [Gal 3:6](#); [Jas 2:23](#);
- 4** Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt.
- 5** But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.
- 6** Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom Elohim imputeth righteousness without works, [\[Ps 32:1\]](#); [\[Titus 3:5\]](#);
- 7** *Saying*, **Blessed *are* they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered.** [Ps 32:1](#); [\[Num 23:21\]](#);
- 8** **Blessed *is* the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin.**
- 9** Is this blessedness then for the circumcision *only*, or for the uncircumcision also? For we say that faith was counted to Abraham for righteousness. [\[Gen 15:6\]](#);

before he was circumcised

- 10** How was it then reckoned? when he was in circumcision, or in uncircumcision? Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision.
- 11** And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which *he had yet* being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also: [Gen 17:11](#); [\[Isa 45:23\]](#);
- 12** And the father of circumcision to them who are not of the circumcision only, but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham, which *he had* being yet uncircumcised.

By faith only he and his seed received the promise

- 13** For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, *was* not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith.
- 14** For if they which are of the law *be* heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect: [Gal 3:18](#);
- 15** Because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, *there is* no transgression. [John 15:22](#); [Rom 5:20](#); [Rom 7:8](#); [Gal 3:19](#);

Abraham is the father of all that believe

- 16** Therefore *it is* of faith, that *it might be* by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all, [Isa 51:2](#);
- 17** (As it is written, **I have made you a father of many nations,**) before him whom he believed, *even* Elohim, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were. [Gen 17:4](#); [\[Gen 13:16\]](#); [\[Heb 11:3\]](#);
- 18** Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations; according to that which was spoken, **So shall thy seed be.** [Gen 15:5](#); [Heb 11:12](#); [\[Gen 15:6\]](#);
- 19** And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about a hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sarah's womb: [\[Gen 18:11\]](#);
- 20** He staggered not at the promise of Elohim through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to Elohim; [John 8:56](#); [Heb 11:11](#); [Heb 11:18](#);
- 21** And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform. [Ps 115:3](#);
- 22** And therefore it was counted to him for righteousness. [\[Gen 15:6\]](#);
- 23** Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; [Rom 15:4](#);

Our faith also shall be counted to us for righteousness

24 But for us also, to whom it shall be counted, if we believe on him that raised up Yahushua our Lord from the dead;

25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification. [\[Isa 53:5\];](#)

Being justified by faith, we have peace with Elohim

1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with Elohim through our Lord Yahushua the Messiah: [Isa 32:17](#); [John 16:33](#); [Eph 2:13](#); [\[Acts 10:36\]](#); [\[Eph 2:14\]](#); [\[Phil 4:7\]](#); [\[Col 1:20\]](#);

and joy in our hope

2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of Elohim. [John 10:9](#); [John 14:6](#); [Eph 2:18](#); [Eph 3:12](#); [Heb 10:19](#); [1Cor 15:1](#); [Heb 3:6](#);

3 And not only *so*, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience; [Jas 1:3](#); [\[Jas 1:2\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:6\]](#);

4 And patience, experience; and experience, hope:

5 And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of Elohim is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given unto us. [\[Phil 1:20\]](#);

6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time the Messiah died for the ungodly. [Eph 2:1](#); [Phil 2:13](#); [Heb 9:15](#); [1Pet 3:18](#); [\[Heb 9:28\]](#);

7 For scarcely for a righteous man will one die: yet perhaps for a good man some would even dare to die. [\[John 15:13\]](#);

that since we were reconciled by his blood, when we were enemies

8 But Elohim commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, the Messiah died for us. [Heb 9:15](#); [1Pet 3:18](#); [\[John 3:16\]](#); [\[Heb 9:28\]](#); [\[1John 4:9\]](#);

9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

we shall much more be saved, being reconciled

10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to Elohim by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

11 And not only *so*, but we also joy in Elohim through our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, by whom we have now received the atonement.

As sin and death came by Adam

12 Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: [Gen 3:6](#); [1Cor 15:21](#); [Gen 2:17](#); [Rom 6:23](#); [\[Job 14:4\]](#); [\[Rev 22:16\]](#);

13 (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law.

14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come. [\[Gen 3:6\]](#);

15 But not as the offence, so also *is* the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of Elohim, and the gift by grace, *which is* by one man, Yahushua the Messiah, has abounded unto many.

16 And not as *it was* by one that sinned, *so is* the gift: for the judgment *was* by one to condemnation, but the free gift *is* of many offences unto justification.

so much more righteousness and life by Yahushua the Messiah

17 For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Yahushua the Messiah.)

18 Therefore as by the offence of one *judgment came* upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one *the free gift came* upon all men unto justification of life. [\[1Cor 15:21\]](#);

19 For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.

Where sin abounded, grace did superabound

20 Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound: [John 15:22](#); [Rom 4:15](#); [Rom 7:8](#); [Gal 3:19](#); [Luke 7:47](#);

21 That as sin has reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Yahushua the Messiah our Lord.

We may not live in sin

1 What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound?

for we are dead unto it

2 Certainly not. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? [\[Col 3:3\];](#)

as appears by our baptism

3 Know you not, that so many of us as were baptized into Yahushua the Messiah were baptized into his death? [Gal 3:27;](#)

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as the Messiah was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. [Col 2:12; Rom 8:11; Phil 3:10-11; Eph 4:23; Col 3:10; Heb 12:1; 1Pet 2:2; \[Eph 4:24\]; \[1Pet 2:1\];](#)

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness of his* resurrection: [Rom 8:11; Col 3:1;](#)

6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with *him*, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. [Gal 2:20; Gal 5:24; Phil 3:10; 1Pet 4:1-2;](#)

7 For he that is dead is freed from sin. [1Pet 4:1;](#)

8 Now if we be dead with the Messiah, we believe that we shall also live with him: [2Tim 2:11; \[Eph 2:5\];](#)

9 Knowing that the Messiah being raised from the dead dieth no more; death has no more dominion over him. [Rev 1:18;](#)

10 For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto Elohim. [1Pet 2:24;](#)

11 Likewise reckon you also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto Elohim through Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. [\[1Pet 2:24\];](#)

Let not sin reign any more

12 Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that you should obey it in the lusts thereof.

13 Neither yield you your members *as* instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto Elohim, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members *as* instruments of righteousness unto Elohim. [Luke 1:74; Rom 12:1; Gal 2:20; Heb 9:14; 1Pet 4:2;](#)

14 For sin shall not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace.

15 What then? shall we sin, because we are not under the law, but under grace? Certainly not.

16 Know you not, that to whom you yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants you are to whom you obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? [John 8:34; 2Pet 2:19; \[Rom 12:1\];](#)

17 But Elohim be thanked, that you were the servants of sin, but you have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you.

because we have yielded ourselves to the service of righteousness

18 Being then made free from sin, you became the servants of righteousness. [John 8:32; Gal 5:1; 1Pet 2:16; \[Rom 8:2\];](#)

19 I speak after the manner of men because of the infirmity of your flesh: for as you have yielded your members servants to uncleanness and to iniquity unto iniquity; even so now yield your members servants to righteousness unto holiness.

20 For when you were the servants of sin, you were free from righteousness. [John 8:34;](#)

21 What fruit had you then in those things whereof you are now ashamed? for the end of those things *is* death.

22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to Elohim, you have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life. [\[Rom 8:2\];](#)

and for that death is the wages of sin

23 For the wages of sin *is* death; but the gift of Elohim *is* eternal life through Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. [Gen 2:17](#); [Rom 5:12](#); [1Cor 15:21](#); [Jas 1:15](#); [1Pet 1:3](#);

No law has power over a man longer than he lives

1 Know you not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law has dominion over a man as long as he liveth?

2 For the woman which has a husband is bound by the law to *her* husband so long as he liveth; but if the husband be dead, she is loosed from the law of *her* husband. [1Cor 7:39](#); [1Cor 7:2](#); [1Cor 7:10](#);

3 So then if, while *her* husband liveth, she be married to another man, she shall be called an adulteress: but if her husband be dead, she is free from that law; so that she is no adulteress, though she be married to another man. [Matt 5:32](#);

But we are dead to the law

4 Wherefore, my brethren, you also are become dead to the law by the body of the Messiah; that you should be married to another, *even* to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto Elohim. [Gal 2:19](#); [1Pet 4:1](#);

5 For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death.

6 But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not *in* the oldness of the letter. [Rom 2:29](#); [2Cor 3:6](#);

Yet is not the law sin

7 What shall we say then? *Is* the law sin? Certainly not. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, you shall not covet. [Rom 3:20](#); [Heb 7:18](#); [Exod 20:17](#); [Deut 5:21](#);

8 But sin, taking occasion by the commandment, wrought in me all manner of concupiscence. For without the law sin *was* dead. [John 15:22](#); [Rom 4:15](#); [Rom 5:20](#); [Gal 3:19](#);

9 For I was alive without the law once: but when the commandment came, sin revived, and I died.

10 And the commandment, which *was ordained* to life, I found *to be* unto death.

11 For sin, taking occasion by the commandment, deceived me, and by it slew *me*.

but holy, just and good

12 Wherefore the law *is* holy, and the commandment holy, and just, and good. [1Tim 1:8](#);

13 Was then that which is good made death unto me? Certainly not. But sin, that it might appear sin, working death in me by that which is good; that sin by the commandment might become exceeding sinful.

14 For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin. [Isa 52:3](#);

15 For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. [Gal 5:17](#);

as I acknowledge, who am grieved because I cannot keep it

16 If then I do that which I would not, I consent unto the law that *it is* good.

17 Now then it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me.

18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but *how* to perform that which is good I find not. [Gen 6:5](#); [Gen 8:21](#);

19 For the good that I would I do not: but the evil which I would not, that I do.

20 Now if I do that I would not, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me.

21 I find then a law, that, when I would do good, evil is present with me.

22 For I delight in the law of Elohim after the inward man: [Eph 3:16](#);

23 But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. [Gal 5:17](#); [\[Jas 4:1\]](#);

24 O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death?

25 I thank Elohim through Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of Elohim; but with the flesh the law of sin.

They that are in the Messiah, are free from condemnation

1 *There is* therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Yahushua the Messiah, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Yahushua the Messiah has made me free from the law of sin and death. [John 8:36](#); [Rom 6:18](#); [Rom 6:22](#); [Gal 5:1](#);

3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, Elohim sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: [Acts 13:39](#); [Rom 3:28](#); [Gal 2:16](#); [Heb 7:18](#); [2Cor 5:21](#); [Gal 3:13](#); [[Heb 7:19](#)];

4 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

What harm comes of the flesh

5 For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. [1Cor 2:14](#); [[John 3:6](#)];

6 For to be carnally minded *is* death; but to be spiritually minded *is* life and peace. [[Gen 6:5](#)];

7 Because the carnal mind *is* enmity against Elohim: for it is not subject to the law of Elohim, neither indeed can be.

8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please Elohim.

9 But you are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of Elohim dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of the Messiah, he is none of his. [1Cor 3:16](#);

10 And if the Messiah *be* in you, the body *is* dead because of sin; but the Spirit *is* life because of righteousness.

11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Yahushua from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up the Messiah from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you. [Rom 6:4-5](#); [1Cor 6:14](#); [2Cor 4:14](#); [Eph 2:5](#); [Col 2:13](#); [[Rom 6:4](#)]; [[Rom 6:5](#)]; [[2Cor 5:4](#)];

12 Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh.

and what good of the Spirit

13 For if you live after the flesh, you shall die: but if you through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, you shall live.

14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of Elohim, they are the sons of Elohim. [Gal 5:18](#);

15 For you have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but you have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. [1Cor 2:12](#); [2Tim 1:7](#); [Isa 56:5](#); [Gal 3:26](#); [Gal 4:5-6](#); [[John 1:12](#)]; [[Gal 4:6](#)]; [[Eph 1:13](#)]; [[Heb 2:15](#)]; [[2Pet 1:4](#)]; [[1John 3:2](#)];

16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of Elohim: [2Cor 1:22](#); [2Cor 5:5](#); [Eph 1:13](#); [Eph 4:30](#); [[1John 5:10](#)];

17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of Elohim, and joint-heirs with the Messiah; if so be that we suffer with *him*, that we may be also glorified together. [2Tim 2:11-12](#); [[2Cor 4:10](#)]; [[Eph 1:11](#)]; [[Phil 3:10](#)]; [[2Tim 2:12](#)];

18 For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time *are* not worthy *to be compared* with the glory which shall be revealed in us. [Matt 5:12](#); [2Cor 4:10](#); [2Cor 4:17](#); [Phil 3:20](#); [1Pet 4:13](#); [1John 3:1-2](#); [[1John 3:2](#)];

The glorious deliverance all things long for

19 For the earnest expectation of the creation waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of Elohim. [[2Pet 3:16](#)];

20 For the creation was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who has subjected *the same* in hope,

21 Because the creation itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of Elohim.

22 For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now.

23 And not only *they*, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the sonship, *to wit*, the redemption of our body. [Luke 21:28](#); [\[2Cor 5:2\]](#); [\[Eph 1:14\]](#); [\[Eph 4:30\]](#);

24 For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why does he yet hope for? [\[Col 3:3\]](#);

25 But if we hope for that we see not, *then* do we with patience wait for *it*.

26 Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. [Matt 20:22](#); [Jas 4:3](#);

27 And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what *is* the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to *the will of* Elohim.

28 And we know that all things work together for good to them that love Elohim, to them who are the called according to *his* purpose. [\[Song 8:7\]](#);

was beforehand decreed from Elohim

29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate *to be* conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. [Col 1:18](#);

30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

31 What shall we then say to these things? If Elohim *be* for us, who *can be* against us? [Num 14:8](#); [\[Ps 118:6\]](#); [\[John 3:16\]](#);

32 He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things? [Gen 22:12](#); [Isa 53:5](#); [John 3:16](#); [\[Isa 50:8\]](#);

33 Who shall lay any thing to the charge of Elohim's elect? *It is* Elohim that justifieth. [Isa 50:8](#);

34 Who *is* he that condemneth? *It is* the Messiah that died, yes rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of Elohim, who also maketh intercession for us. [Heb 7:25](#);

35 Who shall separate us from the love of the Messiah? *shall* tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?

36 As it is written, **For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.** [Ps 44:22](#); [1Cor 4:9](#); [2Cor 4:11](#);

37 Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.

Nothing can sever us from his love

38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,

39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creation, shall be able to separate us from the love of Elohim, which is in Yahushua the Messiah our Lord.

Paul is sorry for the Jews

1 I say the truth in the Messiah, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Spirit, [Rom 1:9](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [1Thess 5:27](#); [\[1Tim 2:7\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:21\]](#); [\[2Tim 4:1\]](#);

2 That I have great heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart.

3 For I could wish that myself were accursed from the Messiah for my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh: [Exod 32:32](#); [Rom 10:1](#);

4 Who are Israelites; to whom is the sonship, and the glory, and the covenants, and the giving of the law, and the service, and the promises; [Deut 7:6](#); [Rom 2:17](#); [Rom 3:2](#); [Eph 2:12](#);

5 Whose *are* the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh the Messiah *came*, who is over all, Elohim blessed for ever. Amen. [Jer 23:6](#); [John 1:1](#); [Acts 20:28](#); [Rom 1:4](#); [Heb 1:8-10](#); [\[1John 5:20\]](#);

6 Not as though the word of Elohim has taken none effect. For they *are* not all Israel, which are of Israel: [Num 23:19](#); [Rom 3:3](#); [2Tim 2:13](#); [John 8:39](#); [Rom 2:28](#);

All of Abraham not of the promise

7 Neither, because they are the seed of Abraham, *are they* all children: but, **In Isaac shall thy seed be called.** [Gal 4:23](#); [Gen 21:12](#); [Gal 3:29](#); [Heb 11:18](#); [\[John 8:39\]](#); [\[Rom 2:28\]](#); [\[Gal 4:28\]](#);

8 That is, They which are the children of the flesh, these *are* not the children of Elohim: but the children of the promise are counted for the seed. [Gal 4:28](#);

9 For this *is* the word of promise, **At this time will I come, and Sarah shall have a son.** [Gen 18:10](#);

10 And not only *this*; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, *even* by our father Isaac; [Gen 25:21](#);

11 (For *the children* being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of Elohim according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth;) [\[Titus 3:5\]](#);

12 It was said unto her, **The elder shall serve the younger.** [Gen 25:23](#);

13 As it is written, **Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.** [Mal 1:2](#);

14 What shall we say then? *Is there* unrighteousness with Elohim? Certainly not. [Deut 32:4](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 34:10](#); [\[Job 36:23\]](#);

15 For he said to Moses, **I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion.** [Exod 33:19](#);

16 So then *it is* not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of Elohim that showeth mercy.

17 For the scripture said unto Pharaoh, **Even for this same purpose have I raised you up, that I might show my power in you, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth.** [Exod 9:16](#); [\[Exod 11:10\]](#);

Elohim's sovereignty

18 Therefore has he mercy on whom he will *have mercy*, and whom he will he hardeneth.

19 *you* will say then unto me, Why does he yet find fault? For who has resisted his will?

20 Nay but, O man, who are you that repliest against Elohim? **Shall the thing formed say to him that formed *it*, Why have you made me thus?** [Isa 45:9](#); [Jer 18:6](#); [\[Job 16:21\]](#);

21 Has not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour? [2Tim 2:20](#); [\[Matt 20:15\]](#);

22 *What* if Elohim, willing to show *his* wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction: [\[Rom 2:5\]](#);

23 And that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had before prepared unto glory,

24 Even us, whom he has called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles?

The calling of the Gentiles and rejecting of the Jews, foretold

25 As he said also in Osee, **I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved.** [Hos 2:23](#); [[Hos 1:10](#)];

26 And it shall come to pass, *that* in the place where it was said unto them, you *are* not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living Elohim. [Hos 1:10](#); [1Pet 2:10](#); [[Hos 2:23](#)];

27 Esaias also cries concerning Israel, though the number of the children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant shall be saved: [Isa 10:22](#); [[Rom 11:5](#)];

28 For he will finish the work, and cut *it* short in righteousness: because a short work will the Lord make upon the earth.

29 And as Esaias said before, **Except the Lord of Sabaoth had left us a seed, we had been as Sodoma, and been made like unto Gomorrha.** [Isa 1:9](#); [Gen 19:24](#); [Isa 13:19](#); [Jer 50:40](#); [Ezek 16:46](#);

30 What shall we say then? That the Gentiles, which followed not after righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness which is of faith.

31 But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, has not attained to the law of righteousness. [Rom 10:2](#); [Rom 11:7](#);

The cause of the Jews' stumbling

32 Wherefore? Because *they sought it* not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone; [[Luke 2:34](#)];

33 As it is written, **Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.** [Ps 118:22](#); [Isa 8:14](#); [Isa 28:16](#); [Matt 21:42](#); [1Pet 2:6](#); [Ps 2:12](#); [Prov 16:20](#); [Jer 17:7](#); [[Ps 22:5](#)]; [[Mark 12:10](#)]; [[Luke 20:17](#)]; [[Acts 4:11](#)]; [[Rom 10:11](#)]; [[1Pet 2:8](#)];

The Scripture shows the difference between the righteousness of the law, and that of faith

- 1** Brethren, my heart's desire and prayer to Elohim for Israel is, that they might be saved. [\[Rom 9:3\];](#)
- 2** For I bear them record that they have a zeal of Elohim, but not according to knowledge. [Acts 22:3; Rom 9:31; Gal 4:17;](#)
- 3** For they being ignorant of Elohim's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of Elohim.
- 4** For the goal at which the law aims *is* the Messiah, who offers righteousness to every one who trusts. [Matt 5:17; Acts 13:38; 2Cor 3:13; Gal 3:24; \[Acts 13:39\];](#)
- 5** For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, **That the man which doeth those things shall live by them.** [Lev 18:5; Ezek 20:11; Gal 3:12; \[Neh 9:29\];](#)
- 6** But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, **Say not in thine heart, Who shall ascend into heaven?** (that is, to bring the Messiah down *from above*;) [Deut 30:12;](#)
- 7** Or, **Who shall descend into the deep?** (that is, to bring up the Messiah again from the dead.)
- 8** But what said it? **The word is nigh you, *even* in thy mouth, and in thy heart:** that is, the word of faith, which we preach;
- 9** That if you shall confess with thy mouth the Lord Yahushua, and shall believe in thine heart that Elohim has raised him from the dead, you shall be saved.
- 10** For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

and that all, both Jew and Gentile, that believe, shall not be confounded

- 11** For the scripture said, **Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.** [Isa 28:16; Rom 9:33; \[Ps 2:12\]; \[Ps 25:3\];](#)
- 12** For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him. [Acts 15:9; Rom 3:22;](#)
- 13** **For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.** [Joel 2:32; Acts 2:21;](#)
- 14** How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?
- 15** And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, **How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!** [Isa 52:7; Nah 1:15; \[Acts 13:2\];](#)
- 16** But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias said, **Lord, who has believed our report?** [Isa 53:1; John 12:38;](#)
- 17** So then faith *cometh* by hearing, and hearing by the word of Elohim.

and that the Gentiles shall receive the word and believe

- 18** But I say, Have they not heard? yous verily, **their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world.** [Ps 19:4;](#)

Israel was not ignorant of these things

- 19** But I say, Did not Israel know? First Moses said, **I will provoke you to jealousy by *them that are no people*, and by a foolish nation I will anger you.** [Deut 32:21; \[Acts 13:46\];](#)
- 20** But Esaias is very bold, and said, **I was found of them that sought me not; I was made manifest unto them that asked not after me.** [Isa 65:1;](#)
- 21** But to Israel he said, **All day long I have stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient and gainsaying people.** [Isa 65:2;](#)

Elohim has not cast off all Israel

1 I say then, Has Elohim cast away his people? Certainly not. For I also am an Israelite, of the seed of Abraham, *of* the tribe of Benjamin. [Jer 31:37](#); [2Cor 11:22](#); [Phil 3:5](#); [[Lev 26:44](#)]; [[Ps 94:14](#)];

2 Elohim has not cast away his people which he foreknew. Wot you not what the scripture said of Elias? how he maketh intercession to Elohim against Israel, saying,

3 Lord, they have killed thy prophets, and digged down thine altars; and I am left alone, and they seek my life. [1Kgs 19:10](#);

4 But what said the answer of Elohim unto him? **I have reserved to myself seven thousand men, who have not bowed the knee to *the image of Baal*.** [1Kgs 19:18](#);

5 Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace. [Rom 9:27](#);

6 And if by grace, then *is it* no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if *it be* of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work. [Deut 9:4](#); [[Titus 3:5](#)];

Some were elected, though the rest were hardened

7 What then? Israel has not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election has obtained it, and the rest were blinded [Rom 9:31](#);

8 (According as it is written, **Elohim has given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;**) unto this day. [Isa 29:10](#); [Isa 6:9](#); [Ezek 12:2](#); [Matt 13:14](#); [Mark 4:12](#); [Luke 8:10](#); [John 12:40](#); [Acts 28:26](#); [[2Cor 3:14](#)];

9 And David said, **Let their table be made a snare, and a trap, and a stumblingblock, and a recompence unto them:** [Ps 69:22](#);

10 Let their eyes be darkened, that they may not see, and bow down their back always. [[Ps 69:23](#)];

11 I say then, Have they stumbled that they should fall? Certainly not: but *rather* through their fall salvation *is come* unto the Gentiles, for to provoke them to jealousy.

12 Now if the fall of them *be* the riches of the world, and the diminishing of them the riches of the Gentiles; how much more their fulness?

13 For I speak to you Gentiles, inasmuch as I am the apostle of the Gentiles, I magnify mine office: [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Gal 1:16](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [1Tim 2:7](#); [2Tim 1:11](#);

14 If by any means I may provoke to emulation *them which are* my flesh, and might save some of them.

15 For if the casting away of them *be* the reconciling of the world, what *shall* the receiving *of them be*, but life from the dead?

There is hope of their conversion

16 For if the firstfruit *be* holy, the lump *is also holy*: and if the root *be* holy, so *are* the branches.

17 And if some of the branches be broken off, and you, being a wild olive tree, wert grafted in among them, and with them partakest of the root and fatness of the olive tree; [Jer 11:16](#);

The Gentiles may not exult over them

18 Boast not against the branches. But if you boast, you bearest not the root, but the root you.

19 you will say then, The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in.

20 Well; because of unbelief they were broken off, and you standest by faith. Be not highminded, but fear:

21 For if Elohim spared not the natural branches, *take heed* lest he also spare not you.

22 Behold therefore the goodness and severity of Elohim: on them which fell, severity; but toward you, goodness, if you continue in *his* goodness: otherwise you also shall be cut off.

23 And they also, if they abide not still in unbelief, shall be grafted in: for Elohim is able to graff them in again. [2Cor 3:16](#);

24 For if you wert cut out of the olive tree which is wild by nature, and wert grafted contrary to nature into a good olive tree: how much more shall these, which be the natural *branches*, be grafted into their own olive tree?

25 For I would not, brethren, that you should be ignorant of this mystery, lest you should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in. [Luke 21:24](#);

for there is a promise of their salvation

26 And so all Israel shall be saved: as it is written, **There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:** [Ps 14:7](#); [Isa 27:9](#); [Isa 59:20](#); [Jer 31:31-34](#); [2Cor 3:16](#); [Heb 8:8](#); [Heb 10:16](#); [\[Lev 26:44\]](#);

27 **For this *is* my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins.** [\[Heb 10:16\]](#);

28 As concerning the gospel, *they are* enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election, *they are* beloved for the fathers' sakes.

29 For the gifts and calling of Elohim *are* without repentance. [\[Jas 1:17\]](#);

30 For as you in times past have not believed Elohim, yet have now obtained mercy through their unbelief:

31 Even so have these also now not believed, that through your mercy they also may obtain mercy.

32 For Elohim has concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all. [Gal 3:22](#);

Elohim's judgments are unsearchable

33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of Elohim! how unsearchable *are* his judgments, and his ways past finding out! [Ps 36:6](#); [\[Job 5:9\]](#); [\[Job 9:10\]](#); [\[Prov 25:2\]](#);

34 **For who has known the mind of the Lord? or who has been his counsellor?** [Isa 40:13](#); [1Cor 2:16](#); [\[Job 15:8\]](#); [\[Job 21:22\]](#);

35 Or who has first given to him, and it shall be recompensed unto him again? [Job 41:11](#); [\[Job 35:7\]](#); [\[Ps 16:2\]](#);

36 For of him, and through him, and to him, *are* all things: to whom *be* glory for ever. Amen. [Prov 16:4](#); [1Cor 8:6](#);

Elohim's mercies must move us to please Elohim

1 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of Elohim, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto Elohim, *which is* your reasonable service. [1Pet 2:5](#); [Rom 6:13](#); [Rom 6:16](#); [[Rev 1:6](#)];

2 And be not conformed to this world: but be you transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what *is* that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of Elohim. [1John 2:15](#); [Eph 5:17](#); [1Thess 4:3](#);

No man must think too well of himself

3 For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think *of himself* more highly than he ought to think; but to think soberly, according as Elohim has dealt to every man the measure of faith. [Rom 1:5](#); [Eph 4:7](#); [1Cor 12:11](#); [[1Cor 4:6](#)];

4 For as we have many members in one body, and all members have not the same office: [1Cor 12:27](#); [Eph 1:23](#); [Eph 4:16](#); [Eph 5:23](#); [Col 1:24](#); [[1Cor 12:12](#)];

5 So we, *being* many, are one body in the Messiah, and every one members one of another. [1Cor 12:4](#); [2Cor 10:13](#); [1Pet 4:10](#); [[1Cor 10:17](#)]; [[1Cor 12:27](#)]; [[Eph 1:23](#)]; [[Eph 4:12](#)]; [[Eph 4:16](#)]; [[Eph 5:23](#)]; [[Eph 5:30](#)]; [[Col 1:24](#)];

but everyone attend on that calling wherein he is placed

6 Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us, whether prophecy, *let us prophesy* according to the proportion of faith; [1Cor 12:4](#); [[1Cor 12:11](#)]; [[Eph 4:7](#)]; [[1Pet 4:10](#)];

7 Or ministry, *let us wait* on *our* ministering: or he that teacheth, on teaching; [1Cor 12:10](#); [1Pet 4:10-11](#); [[1Cor 13:2](#)];

8 Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: he that giveth, *let him do it* with simplicity; he that ruleth, with diligence; he that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness. [Matt 6:1-3](#); [Deut 15:7](#); [2Cor 9:7](#); [[Matt 6:2](#)];

Love, and many other duties are required of us

9 *Let* love be without hypocrisy. Abhor that which is evil; cleave to that which is good. [Ps 97:10](#); [Amos 5:15](#); [[Isa 1:16](#)];

10 *Be* kindly affectioned one to another with brotherly love; in honour preferring one another; [Eph 4:2](#); [Heb 13:1](#); [1Pet 1:22](#); [1Pet 2:17](#); [Phil 2:3](#); [1Pet 5:5](#);

11 Not slothful in business; fervent in spirit; serving the Lord;

12 Rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer; [Rom 15:13](#); [1Thess 5:16](#); [Heb 10:36](#); [Heb 12:1](#); [Jas 5:7](#); [Luke 18:1](#); [Eph 6:18](#); [Col 4:2](#); [1Thess 5:17](#);

13 Distributing to the necessity of saints; given to hospitality. [1Cor 16:1](#); [Heb 13:2](#); [1Pet 4:9](#);

14 Bless them which persecute you: bless, and curse not. [Matt 5:44](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [[Job 31:30](#)];

15 Rejoice with them that do rejoice, and weep with them that weep. [[Job 30:25](#)]; [[Prov 25:20](#)];

16 *Be* of the same mind one toward another. Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits. [Rom 15:5](#); [1Cor 1:10](#); [Phil 2:2](#); [Phil 3:16](#); [1Pet 3:8](#); [Prov 3:7](#); [Isa 5:21](#); [[2Cor 13:11](#)];

17 Recompose to no man evil for evil. Provide things honest in the sight of all men. [Prov 20:22](#); [Matt 5:39](#); [1Cor 6:7](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [2Cor 8:21](#); [1Pet 2:12](#); [[Prov 17:13](#)]; [[Prov 24:29](#)]; [[Phil 2:14](#)]; [[1Pet 3:9](#)];

18 If it be possible, as much as lies in you, live peaceably with all men. [Mark 9:50](#); [Heb 12:14](#); [[2Cor 13:11](#)];

Revenge is especially forbidden

19 Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves, but *rather* give place unto wrath: for it is written, **Vengeance is mine; I will repay, said the Lord.** [Matt 5:39](#); [Luke 6:29](#); [Deut 32:35](#); [Heb 10:30](#); [[Lev 19:18](#)]; [[Prov 24:29](#)];

20 **Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing you shall heap coals of fire on his head.** [Prov 25:21](#); [Matt 5:44](#); [[Luke 6:27](#)];

21 Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.

Subjection, and many other duties, we owe to the magistrates

- 1** Let every being be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of Elohim: the powers that be are ordained of Elohim. [Titus 3:1](#); [1Pet 2:13](#); [Prov 8:15](#); [Dan 4:32](#);
- 2** Whosoever therefore resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of Elohim: and they that resist shall receive to themselves damnation.
- 3** For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. will you then not be afraid of the power? do that which is good, and you shall have praise of the same: [\[Ecd 8:5\]](#);
- 4** For he is the minister of Elohim to you for good. But if you do that which is evil, be afraid; for he beareth not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of Elohim, a revenger to *execute* wrath upon him that doeth evil.
- 5** Wherefore you must needs be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake.
- 6** For for this cause pay you tribute also: for they are Elohim's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing.
- 7** Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute *is due*; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honour to whom honour. [Matt 22:21](#); [\[Matt 17:25\]](#); [\[Mark 12:17\]](#); [\[Luke 20:25\]](#); [\[Luke 23:2\]](#);

Love is the fulfilling of the law

- 8** Owe no man any thing, but to love one another: for he that loveth another has fulfilled the law. [Gal 5:14](#); [1Tim 1:5](#);
- 9** For this, you **shall not commit adultery, you shall not kill, you shall not steal, you shall not covet**; and if *there be* any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, you **shall love thy neighbour as thyself**. [Exod 20:13](#); [Deut 5:17](#); [Matt 19:18](#); [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [Mark 12:31](#); [Gal 5:14](#); [Jas 2:8](#); [\[Mark 10:19\]](#); [\[Luke 10:27\]](#); [\[Luke 18:20\]](#);
- 10** Love worketh no ill to his neighbour: therefore love *is* the fulfilling of the law.

Gluttony and drunkenness, and the works of darkness, are out of season in the time of the Gospel

- 11** And that, knowing the time, that now *it is* high time to awake out of sleep: for now *is* our salvation nearer than when we believed. [Eph 5:14](#); [1Thess 5:6](#); [\[Eph 5:16\]](#);
- 12** The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light. [1Thess 5:5](#); [Col 3:8](#); [\[Jas 1:21\]](#);
- 13** Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. [Phil 4:8](#); [1Thess 4:12](#); [Luke 21:34](#); [1Thess 5:6](#); [1Cor 6:10](#); [Eph 5:5](#); [Jas 3:14](#); [\[Prov 23:20\]](#);
- 14** But put you on the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, and make not provision for the flesh, to *fulfil* the lusts *thereof*. [Gal 3:27](#); [1Pet 2:11](#); [\[Gal 5:16\]](#); [\[Gal 5:24\]](#);

Men may not condemn nor condemn one another for things indifferent

- 1** Him that is weak in the faith receive you, *but* not to doubtful disputations. [\[Gal 6:1\];](#)
- 2** For one believeth that he may eat all things: another, who is weak, eateth herbs. [\[Col 2:16\];](#)
- 3** Let not him that eateth despise him that eateth not; and let not him which eateth not judge him that eateth: for Elohim has received him. [Col 2:16;](#)
- 4** Who are you that judgest another man's servant? to his own master he standeth or falleth. yes, he shall be holden up: for Elohim is able to make him stand. [Jas 4:12;](#)
- 5** One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day *alike*. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind. [Gal 4:10; Col 2:16;](#)
- 6** He that regardeth the day, regardeth *it* unto the Lord; and he that regardeth not the day, to the Lord he does not regard *it*. He that eateth, eateth to the Lord, for he giveth Elohim thanks; and he that eateth not, to the Lord he eateth not, and giveth Elohim thanks. [1Cor 10:31; 1Tim 4:3; \[1Cor 10:30\];](#)
- 7** For none of us liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself. [2Cor 5:15; Gal 2:20; 1Thess 5:10; 1Pet 4:2; \[Gal 2:19\];](#)
- 8** For whether we live, we live unto the Lord; and whether we die, we die unto the Lord: whether we live therefore, or die, we are the Lord's.
- 9** For to this end the Messiah both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living.
- 10** But why dost you judge thy brother? or why dost you set at nought thy brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of the Messiah. [Matt 25:31; 2Cor 5:10; \[Matt 26:64\];](#)
- 11** For it is written, ***As I live, says the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to Elohim.*** [Isa 45:23; Phil 2:10;](#)
- 12** So then every one of us shall give account of himself to Elohim. [Ps 62:12; Jer 17:10; Jer 32:19; Matt 16:27; Rom 2:6; 1Cor 3:8; 2Cor 5:10; Gal 6:5; Rev 2:23; Rev 22:12; \[Rev 20:12\];](#)

but take heed that they give no offence in them

- 13** Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in *his* brother's way. [1Cor 10:32; 2Cor 6:3;](#)
- 14** I know, and am persuaded by the Lord Yahushua, that *there is* nothing unclean of itself: but to him that esteemeth any thing to be unclean, to him *it is* unclean. [Matt 15:11; Acts 10:15; 1Cor 8:4; 1Tim 4:4;](#)

which the apostle proves unlawful by many reasons

- 15** But if thy brother be grieved with *thy* meat, now walkest you not charitably. Destroy not him with thy meat, for whom the Messiah died. [1Cor 8:11;](#)
- 16** Let not then your good be evil spoken of:
- 17** For the kingdom of Elohim is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit. [1Cor 8:8; \[Matt 15:11\]; \[Mark 7:15\]; \[Acts 10:15\]; \[Heb 13:9\];](#)
- 18** For he that in these things serveth the Messiah *is* acceptable to Elohim, and approved of men.
- 19** Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another.
- 20** For meat destroy not the work of Elohim. All things indeed *are* pure; but *it is* evil for that man who eateth with offence. [Titus 1:15; \[Matt 15:11\]; \[Mark 7:15\]; \[Acts 10:15\];](#)
- 21** *It is* good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor *any thing* whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak. [1Cor 8:13;](#)
- 22** **have** you faith? have *it* to thyself before Elohim. Happy *is* he that condemneth not himself in that thing which he alloweth.
- 23** And he that doubteth is judged if he eat, because *he eateth* not of faith: for whatsoever *is* not of faith is sin. [Titus 1:15;](#)

The strong must bear with the weak

1 We then that are strong ought to bear the infirmities of the weak, and not to please ourselves. [1Cor 9:22](#); [Gal 6:1](#); [[Gal 6:2](#)];

We must not please ourselves

2 Let every one of us please *his* neighbour for *his* good to edification.

for the Messiah did not so

3 For even the Messiah pleased not himself; but, as it is written, **The reproaches of them that reproached you fell on me.** [Ps 69:9](#); [Isa 53:4-5](#);

4 For whatsoever things were written before were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope. [Rom 4:23-24](#); [[Rom 4:23](#)]; [[1Cor 10:11](#)];

5 Now the Elohim of patience and consolation grant you to be likeminded one toward another according to Yahushua the Messiah: [Rom 12:16](#); [1Cor 1:10](#); [Phil 2:2](#); [Phil 3:16](#); [1Pet 3:8](#); [[2Cor 13:11](#)];

6 That you may with one mind *and* one mouth glorify Elohim, even the Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah.

but receive one another, as the Messiah did us all

7 Wherefore receive you one another, as the Messiah also received us to the glory of Elohim.

both Jews and Gentiles

8 Now I say that Yahushua the Messiah was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of Elohim, to confirm the promises *made* unto the fathers:

9 And that the Gentiles might glorify Elohim for *his* mercy; as it is written, **For this cause I will confess to you among the Gentiles, and sing unto thy name.** [2Sam 22:50](#); [Ps 18:49](#);

10 And again he said, **Rejoice, you Gentiles, with his people.** [Deut 32:43](#);

11 And again, **Praise the Lord, all you Gentiles; and laud him, all you people.** [Ps 117:1](#);

12 And again, Esaias said, **There shall be a root of Jesse, and he that shall rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him shall the Gentiles trust.** [Isa 11:10](#); [Rev 5:5](#); [Rev 22:16](#);

13 Now the Elohim of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that you may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Spirit. [[Rom 12:12](#)];

14 And I myself also am persuaded of you, my brethren, that you also are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge, able also to admonish one another.

Paul excuses his writing

15 Nevertheless, brethren, I have written the more boldly unto you in some sort, as putting you in mind, because of the grace that is given to me of Elohim,

16 That I should be the minister of Yahushua the Messiah to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of Elohim, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Spirit.

17 I have therefore whereof I may glory through Yahushua the Messiah in those things which pertain to Elohim.

18 For I will not dare to speak of any of those things which the Messiah has not wrought by me, to make the Gentiles obedient, by word and deed,

19 Through mighty signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of Elohim; so that from Jerusalem, and round about unto Illyricum, I have fully preached the gospel of the Messiah.

20 **yes**, so have I strived to preach the gospel, not where the Messiah was named, lest I should build upon another man's foundation:

21 But as it is written, **To whom he was not spoken of, they shall see: and they that have not heard shall understand.** [Isa 52:15](#);

22 For which cause also I have been much hindered from coming to you. [Rom 1:13](#); [1Thess 2:18](#);

23 But now having no more place in these parts, and having a great desire these many years to come unto you; [Rom 15:32](#); [Rom 1:10](#); [1Thess 3:10](#); [2Tim 1:4](#);

24 Whensoever I take my journey into Spain, I will come to you: for I trust to see you in my journey, and to be brought on my way thitherward by you, if first I be somewhat filled with your *company*.

25 But now I go unto Jerusalem to minister unto the saints. [Acts 19:21](#); [Acts 24:17](#); [[Gal 2:10](#)];

26 For it has pleased them of Macedonia and Achaia to make a certain contribution for the poor saints which are at Jerusalem. [[2Cor 8:4](#)]; [[2Cor 9:1](#)];

27 It has pleased them verily; and their debtors they are. For if the Gentiles have been made partakers of their spiritual things, their duty is also to minister unto them in carnal things. [1Cor 9:11](#); [Gal 6:6](#); [[1Thess 5:12](#)]; [[1Tim 5:17](#)];

and promises to see them

28 When therefore I have performed this, and have sealed to them this fruit, I will come by you into Spain.

29 And I am sure that, when I come unto you, I shall come in the fulness of the blessing of the gospel of the Messiah. [Rom 1:11](#);

and requests their prayers

30 Now I beseech you, brethren, for the Lord Yahushua the Messiah's sake, and for the love of the Spirit, that you strive together with me in *your* prayers to Elohim for me; [2Cor 1:11](#);

31 That I may be delivered from them that do not believe in Judaea; and that my service which *I have* for Jerusalem may be accepted of the saints; [2Thess 3:2](#);

32 That I may come unto you with joy by the will of Elohim, and may with you be refreshed. [Rom 15:23](#); [Rom 1:10](#);

33 Now the Elohim of peace *be* with you all. Amen. [[2Thess 3:16](#)];

Paul wills the brethren to greet many

- 1** I commend unto you Phebe our sister, which is a servant of the church which is at Cenchrea:
- 2** That you receive her in the Lord, as becometh saints, and that you assist her in whatsoever business she has need of you: for she has been a succourer of many, and of myself also.
- 3** Greet Priscilla and Aquila my helpers in Yahushua the Messiah: [Acts 18:2](#); [Acts 18:26](#); [\[2Tim 4:19\]](#);
- 4** Who have for my life laid down their own necks: unto whom not only I give thanks, but also all the churches of the Gentiles.
- 5** Likewise *greet* the church that is in their house. Salute my wellbeloved Epaenetus, who is the firstfruits of Achaia unto the Messiah. [\[Phlm 1:2\]](#);
- 6** Greet Mary, who bestowed much labour on us.
- 7** Salute Andronicus and Junia, my kinsmen, and my fellowprisoners, who are of note among the apostles, who also were in the Messiah before me.
- 8** Greet Amplias my beloved in the Lord.
- 9** Salute Urbane, our helper in the Messiah, and Stachys my beloved.
- 10** Salute Apelles approved in the Messiah. Salute them which are of Aristobulus' *household*.
- 11** Salute Herodion my kinsman. Greet them that be of the *household* of Narcissus, which are in the Lord.
- 12** Salute Tryphena and Tryphosa, who labour in the Lord. Salute the beloved Persis, which laboured much in the Lord.
- 13** Salute Rufus chosen in the Lord, and his mother and mine.
- 14** Salute Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermas, Patrobas, Hermes, and the brethren which are with them.
- 15** Salute Philologus, and Julia, Nereus, and his sister, and Olympas, and all the saints which are with them.
- 16** Salute one another with a holy kiss. The churches of the Messiah salute you. [1Cor 16:20](#); [2Cor 13:12](#); [1Thess 5:26](#); [1Pet 5:14](#);

and advises them to take heed of those which cause dissension and offences

- 17** Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which you have learned; and avoid them. [Col 2:8](#); [Titus 3:10](#); [2John 1:10](#); [Matt 18:17](#); [2Thess 3:6](#); [2Tim 3:5](#); [\[Matt 7:15\]](#); [\[Phil 3:18\]](#); [\[Heb 13:9\]](#);
- 18** For they that are such serve not our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, but their own belly; and by good words and fair speeches deceive the hearts of the simple. [Phil 3:19](#); [Ezek 13:18](#);
- 19** For your obedience is come abroad unto all *men*. I am glad therefore on your behalf: but yet I would have you wise unto that which is good, and simple concerning evil. [Matt 10:16](#); [1Cor 14:20](#);
- 20** And the Elohim of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with you. [\[2Thess 3:16\]](#);

and after sundry salutations ends with praise and thanks to Elohim

- 21** Timotheus my workfellow, and Lucius, and Jason, and Sosipater, my kinsmen, salute you. [Acts 16:1](#); [Phil 2:19](#); [Col 1:1](#); [1Thess 3:2](#); [1Tim 1:2](#); [Acts 13:1](#); [Acts 17:5](#); [Acts 20:4](#);
- 22** I Tertius, who wrote *this* epistle, salute you in the Lord.
- 23** Gaius mine host, and of the whole church, saluteth you. Erastus the chamberlain of the city saluteth you, and Quartus a brother. [Acts 19:22](#); [2Tim 4:20](#); [\[1Cor 1:14\]](#);
- 24** The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with you all. Amen.

25 Now to him that is of power to establish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Yahushua the Messiah, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began, [Eph 3:20](#); [Eph 1:9](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:26](#); [2Tim 1:10](#); [Titus 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:20](#); [\[1Cor 2:7\]](#); [\[Eph 3:3\]](#); [\[Col 1:25\]](#);

26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting Elohim, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:

27 To Elohim only wise, *be* glory through Yahushua the Messiah for ever. Amen. [\[Jude 1:25\]](#);

First_Corinthians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#)

FIRST CORINTHIANS ONE

After his salutation and thanksgiving

- 1** Paul, called *to be* an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah through the will of Elohim, and Sosthenes *our* brother,
- 2** Unto the church of Elohim which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Yahushua the Messiah, called *to be* saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Yahushua the Messiah our Lord, both theirs and ours: [John 17:19](#); [Acts 15:9](#); [1Thess 4:7](#); [Rom 1:7](#); [Eph 1:1](#); [2Tim 2:22](#);
- 3** Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from Elohim our Father, and *from* the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Rom 1:7](#); [2Cor 1:2](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [\[Gal 1:3\]](#); [\[2Thess 1:2\]](#);
- 4** I thank my Elohim always on your behalf, for the grace of Elohim which is given you by Yahushua the Messiah;
- 5** That in every thing you are enriched by him, in all utterance, and *in* all knowledge; [Col 1:9](#); [\[Col 2:7\]](#);
- 6** Even as the testimony of the Messiah was confirmed in you:
- 7** So that you come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah: [Phil 3:20](#); [Titus 2:13](#);
- 8** Who shall also confirm you unto the end, *that you may be* blameless in the day of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [1Thess 3:13](#); [1Thess 5:23](#); [\[1Cor 10:13\]](#);
- 9** Elohim *is* faithful, by whom you were called unto the fellowship of his Son Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. [1Cor 10:13](#); [1Thess 5:24](#); [Jer 32:40](#); [John 15:5](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [1John 1:3](#);

he exhorts them to unity

- 10** Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, that you all speak the same thing, and *that* there be no divisions among you; but *that* you be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment. [Rom 12:16](#); [Rom 15:5](#); [Phil 2:2](#); [Phil 3:16](#); [1Pet 3:8](#); [\[2Cor 13:11\]](#);
- 11** For it has been declared unto me of you, my brethren, by them *which are of the house* of Chloe, that there are contentions among you. [\[1Cor 3:3\]](#);

and reproves their dissensions

- 12** Now this I say, that every one of you said, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of the Messiah. [1Cor 3:4](#); [Acts 18:24](#); [1Cor 16:12](#); [\[Acts 19:1\]](#); [\[1Cor 3:5\]](#); [\[Titus 3:13\]](#);
- 13** Is the Messiah divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were you baptized in the name of Paul?
- 14** I thank Elohim that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Gaius; [Acts 18:8](#); [Rom 16:23](#); [\[Acts 20:4\]](#);
- 15** Lest any should say that I had baptized in mine own name.
- 16** And I baptized also the household of Stephanas: besides, I know not whether I baptized any other. [1Cor 16:15](#); [1Cor 16:17](#);
- 17** For the Messiah sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the torture stake of the Messiah should be made of none effect. [1Cor 2:1](#); [1Cor 2:4](#); [2Pet 1:16](#); [\[1Cor 2:13\]](#);

Elohim destroys the wisdom of the wise

- 18** For the preaching of the stake is foolishness to them that are perishing; but unto us who are being saved it is the power of Elohim. [Rom 1:16](#);
- 19** For it is written, **I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent.** [Job 5:12](#); [Isa 29:14](#); [\[Job 12:17\]](#); [\[Matt 11:25\]](#); [\[Luke 10:21\]](#);
- 20** Where *is* the wise? where *is* the scribe? where *is* the disputer of this world? has not Elohim made foolish the wisdom of this world? [Isa 33:18](#); [\[John 7:48\]](#);

by the foolishness of preaching

21 For after that in the wisdom of Elohim the world by wisdom knew not Elohim, it pleased Elohim by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe. [Matt 11:25](#); [Luke 10:21](#); [[1Cor 15:2](#)];

22 For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom: [Matt 12:38](#); [Matt 16:1](#); [John 4:48](#); [[John 6:30](#)];

23 But we preach the Messiah crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness; [Matt 11:6](#); [John 6:60](#); [John 6:66](#); [[Gal 5:11](#)];

24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, the Messiah the power of Elohim, and the wisdom of Elohim. [Col 2:3](#);

25 Because the foolishness of Elohim is wiser than men; and the weakness of Elohim is stronger than men.

and calls not the wise, mighty, and noble

26 For you see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, *are called*: [John 7:48](#); [Jas 2:5](#);

27 But Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty;

but the foolish, weak, and men of no account

28 And base things of the world, and things which are despised, has Elohim chosen, yes, and things which are not, to bring to nought things that are:

29 That no flesh should glory in his presence.

30 But of him are you in Yahushua the Messiah, who of Elohim is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption: [Jer 23:5](#); [John 17:19](#);

31 That, according as it is written, **He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.** [Isa 65:16](#); [Jer 9:23-24](#); [2Cor 10:17](#); [[Jer 9:23](#)];

He declares that his preaching, though it bring not excellency of speech, or of human wisdom, yet consists in the power of Elohim

- 1** And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of Elohim. [1Cor 2:4](#); [1Cor 1:17](#); [\[2Pet 1:16\]](#);
- 2** For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Yahushua the Messiah, and him crucified.
- 3** And I was with you in weakness, and in fear, and in much trembling. [Acts 18:1](#); [Acts 18:3](#); [2Cor 10:10](#); [\[1Cor 4:10\]](#);
- 4** And my speech and my preaching *was* not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power: [1Cor 2:1](#); [1Cor 1:17](#); [2Pet 1:16](#); [\[1Cor 2:13\]](#); [\[1Cor 4:20\]](#); [\[1Thess 1:5\]](#);
- 5** That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of Elohim. [2Cor 4:7](#);

and so far excels the wisdom of this world, and human sense, that the natural man cannot understand it

- 6** Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought: [Job 28:21](#); [Jas 3:15](#); [1Cor 15:24](#);
- 7** But we speak the wisdom of Elohim in a mystery, *even* the hidden *wisdom*, which Elohim ordained before the world unto our glory: [Rom 14:24](#); [1Cor 4:1](#); [\[Matt 11:25\]](#); [\[Luke 10:21\]](#);
- 8** Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known *it*, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. [Matt 11:25](#); [John 7:48](#); [Acts 13:27](#); [2Cor 3:14](#); [John 16:3](#); [Acts 3:17](#); [1Tim 1:13](#);
- 9** But as it is written, **Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which Elohim has prepared for them that love him.** [Isa 64:4](#); [\[Ps 31:19\]](#);
- 10** But Elohim has revealed *them* unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yes, the deep things of Elohim. [Matt 13:11](#); [2Cor 3:18](#); [\[2Cor 3:16\]](#);
- 11** For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of Elohim knoweth no man, but the Spirit of Elohim. [Prov 27:19](#); [Jer 17:9](#);
- 12** Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of Elohim; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of Elohim. [Rom 8:15](#);
- 13** Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Spirit teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. [1Cor 2:4](#); [1Cor 1:17](#); [2Pet 1:16](#);
- 14** But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of Elohim: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned. [\[Rom 8:5\]](#); [\[Phil 4:7\]](#);
- 15** But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man. [Prov 28:5](#);
- 16** **For who has known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him?** But we have the mind of the Messiah. [Isa 40:13](#); [Rom 11:34](#); [\[Job 21:22\]](#);

Milk is fit for children

1 And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, *even* as unto babes in the Messiah. [[Heb 5:12](#)];

2 I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto you were not able *to bear it*, neither yet now are you able. [Heb 5:12](#); [1Pet 2:2](#);

Strife and division, arguments of a fleshly mind

3 For you are yet carnal: for whereas *there is* among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are you not carnal, and walk as men? [1Cor 1:11](#); [Gal 5:19](#); [Jas 3:16](#);

4 For while one said, I am of Paul; and another, I *am* of Apollos; are you not carnal? [1Cor 1:12](#);

5 Who then is Paul, and who *is* Apollos, but ministers by whom you believed, even as the Lord gave to every man? [Acts 18:24](#); [1Cor 1:12](#); [1Cor 16:12](#);

6 I have planted, Apollos watered; but Elohim gave the increase. [Acts 18:26](#); [Acts 19:1](#); [[Acts 18:27](#)]; [[1Cor 9:7](#)];

He that planteth and he that watereth, are nothing

7 So then neither is he that planteth any thing, neither he that watereth; but Elohim that giveth the increase.

8 Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour. [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Gal 6:5](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [Rev 22:12](#); [[Job 34:11](#)];

The ministers are Elohim's fellow-workmen

9 For we are labourers together with Elohim: you are Elohim's husbandry, you *are* Elohim's building. [2Cor 6:1](#); [Eph 2:20](#); [Col 2:7](#); [1Pet 2:5](#);

10 According to the grace of Elohim which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. [[Eph 2:20](#)];

the Messiah the only foundation

11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Yahushua the Messiah. [Isa 28:16](#); [Matt 16:18](#);

12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;

13 Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. [Isa 8:20](#); [Isa 48:10](#); [Jer 23:29](#); [1Pet 1:7](#); [1Pet 4:12](#);

14 If any man's work abide which he has built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

15 If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.

Men the temples of Elohim, which must be kept holy

16 Know you not that you are the temple of Elohim, and *that* the Spirit of Elohim dwelleth in you? [1Cor 6:19](#); [2Cor 6:16](#); [Heb 3:6](#); [1Pet 2:5](#); [[Rom 8:9](#)];

17 If any man defile the temple of Elohim, him shall Elohim destroy; for the temple of Elohim is holy, which *temple* you are.

18 Let no man deceive himself. If any man among you seemeth to be wise in this world, let him become a fool, that he may be wise. [Prov 3:7](#); [Isa 5:21](#);

The wisdom of this world is foolishness with Elohim

19 For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with Elohim. For it is written, **He taketh the wise in their own craftiness.** [Job 5:13](#);

20 And again, **The Lord knoweth the thoughts of the wise, that they are vain.** [Ps 94:11](#);

21 Therefore let no man glory in men. For all things are yours;

22 Whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come; all are yours;

23 And you are the Messiah's; and the Messiah *is* Elohim's. [\[1Cor 11:3\]](#);

In what account the ministers ought to be had

- 1** Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of the Messiah, and stewards of the mysteries of Elohim. [Matt 24:45](#); [2Cor 6:4](#); [Col 1:25](#); [Titus 1:7](#); [[1Cor 2:7](#)];
- 2** Moreover it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful. [Luke 12:42](#);
- 3** But with me it is a very small thing that I should be judged of you, or of man's judgment: yes, I judge not mine own self. [[Matt 7:1](#)];
- 4** For I know nothing by myself; yet am I not hereby justified: but he that judgeth me is the Lord. [Exod 34:7](#); [Job 9:2](#); [Ps 143:2](#);
- 5** Therefore judge nothing before the time, until the Lord come, who both will bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts: and then shall every man have praise of Elohim. [Matt 7:1](#); [Rom 2:1](#); [Dan 7:10](#); [Rev 20:12](#); [[Job 12:22](#)]; [[Ecd 12:14](#)]; [[Luke 6:37](#)];
- 6** And these things, brethren, I have in a figure transferred to myself and *to* Apollos for your sakes; that you might learn in us not to think *of men* above that which is written, that no one of you be puffed up for one against another. [Prov 3:7](#); [Rom 12:3](#);

We have nothing which we have not received

- 7** For who maketh you to differ *from another*? and what have you that you didst not receive? now if you didst receive *it*; why dost you glory, as if you hadst not received *it*? [John 3:27](#); [Jas 1:17](#);
- 8** Now you are full, now you are rich, you have reigned as kings without us: and I would to Elohim you did reign, that we also might reign with you.

The apostles spectacles to the world, angels, and men

- 9** For I think that Elohim has set forth us the apostles last, as it were appointed to death: for we are made a spectacle unto the world, and to angels, and to men. [Ps 44:22](#); [Rom 8:36](#); [2Cor 4:11](#); [Heb 10:33](#);
- 10** We *are* fools for the Messiah's sake, but you *are* wise in the Messiah; we *are* weak, but you *are* strong; you *are* honourable, but we *are* despised. [1Cor 2:3](#);
- 11** Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no certain dwellingplace; [Acts 23:2](#); [[Phil 4:12](#)];
- 12** And labour, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it: [Acts 18:3](#); [Acts 20:34](#); [1Thess 2:9](#); [2Thess 3:8](#); [Matt 5:44](#); [Luke 6:28](#); [Luke 23:34](#); [Acts 7:60](#); [Rom 12:14](#); [[Luke 6:27](#)];

the filth and offscouring of the world

- 13** Being defamed, we intreat: we are made as the filth of the world, *and are* the offscouring of all things unto this day. [[Matt 5:44](#)];
- 14** I write not these things to shame you, but as my beloved sons I warn *you*. [1Thess 2:11](#); [[2Cor 6:13](#)];

yet our fathers in the Messiah

- 15** For though you have ten thousand instructors in the Messiah, yet *have you* not many fathers: for in Yahushua the Messiah I have begotten you through the gospel. [Acts 18:11](#); [Gal 4:19](#); [Phlm 1:10](#); [Jas 1:18](#); [[1Cor 9:1](#)];

whom we ought to follow

- 16** Wherefore I beseech you, be you followers of me. [1Cor 11:1](#); [Phil 3:17](#); [1Thess 1:6](#); [2Thess 3:9](#);
- 17** For this cause have I sent unto you Timotheus, who is my beloved son, and faithful in the Lord, who shall bring you into remembrance of my ways which be in the Messiah, as I teach every where in every church. [[1Tim 1:2](#)];
- 18** Now some are puffed up, as though I would not come to you.

19 But I will come to you shortly, if the Lord will, and will know, not the speech of them which are puffed up, but the power. [Acts 18:21](#); [Heb 6:3](#); [Jas 4:15](#);

20 For the kingdom of Elohim *is* not in word, but in power. [1Cor 2:4](#); [1Thess 1:5](#); [2Pet 1:16](#);

21 What will you? shall I come unto you with a rod, or in love, and *in* the spirit of meekness?

The incestuous person

1 It is reported commonly *that there is* fornication among you, and such fornication as is not so much as named among the Gentiles, that one should have his father's wife. [Lev 18:8](#); [Deut 27:20](#);

2 And you are puffed up, and have not rather mourned, that he that has done this deed might be taken away from among you.

3 For I verily, as absent in body, but present in spirit, have judged already, as though I were present, *concerning* him that has so done this deed, [Col 2:5](#); [\[2Cor 2:6\]](#);

4 In the name of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, when you are gathered together, and my spirit, with the power of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah,

5 To deliver such an one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Yahushua. [1Tim 1:20](#);

is cause rather of shame unto them than of rejoicing

6 Your glorying *is* not good. Know you not that a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump? [Gal 5:9](#);

The old leaven is to be purged out

7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For even the Messiah our passover is sacrificed for us: [Isa 53:7](#); [John 1:29](#); [1Cor 15:3](#);

8 Therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, neither with the leaven of malice and wickedness; but with the unleavened *bread* of sincerity and truth. [Exod 12:3](#); [Exod 12:15](#); [Deut 16:3](#); [\[Exod 12:8\]](#); [\[Eph 5:11\]](#);

9 I wrote unto you in an epistle not to company with fornicators: [Deut 7:2](#); [Matt 18:17](#); [2Cor 6:14](#); [Eph 5:11](#); [2Thess 3:14](#);

Hienous offenders are to be shamed and avoided

10 Yet not altogether with the fornicators of this world, or with the covetous, or extortioners, or with idolaters; for then must you needs go out of the world.

11 But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such an one no not to eat. [Num 12:14](#); [Matt 18:17](#); [2Thess 3:14](#); [2John 1:10](#); [\[2Thess 3:6\]](#);

12 For what have I to do to judge them also that are without? do not you judge them that are within?

13 But them that are without Elohim judgeth. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person. [Deut 13:5](#);

The Corinthians must not vex their brethren, in going to law with them

1 Dare any of you, having a matter against another, go to law before the unjust, and not before the saints?

2 Do you not know that the saints shall judge the world? and if the world shall be judged by you, are you unworthy to judge the smallest matters? [Matt 19:28](#); [Luke 22:30](#); [[Rev 3:21](#)];

3 Know you not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?

4 If then you have judgments of things pertaining to this life, set them to judge who are least esteemed in the church.

5 I speak to your shame. Is it so, that there is not a wise man among you? no, not one that shall be able to judge between his brethren?

especially under infidels

6 But brother goes to law with brother, and that before the unbelievers.

7 Now therefore there is utterly a fault among you, because you go to law one with another. Why do you not rather take wrong? why do you not rather *suffer yourselves to be defrauded*? [Prov 20:22](#); [Matt 5:39](#); [Rom 12:17](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [1Pet 3:9](#); [[Lev 19:18](#)]; [[Luke 6:29](#)];

8 Nay, you do wrong, and defraud, and that *your* brethren.

The unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of Elohim

9 Know you not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of Elohim? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor passive homosexual partners, nor sexual perverts,

10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of Elohim. [Gal 5:19](#); [Eph 5:5](#); [Rev 22:15](#); [[Rom 13:13](#)]; [[Gal 5:21](#)]; [[Gal 6:7](#)]; [[Col 3:6](#)];

11 And such were some of you: but you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the name of the Lord Yahushua, and by the Spirit of our Elohim. [Eph 2:2](#); [Col 3:7](#); [Titus 3:3](#); [Heb 10:22](#);

12 All things are lawful unto me, but all things are not expedient: all things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any. [1Cor 10:23](#);

13 Meats for the belly, and the belly for meats: but Elohim shall destroy both it and them. Now the body *is* not for fornication, but for the Lord; and the Lord for the body.

14 And Elohim has both raised up the Lord, and will also raise up us by his own power. [Rom 8:11](#); [2Cor 4:14](#);

Our bodies are the members of the Messiah, and temples of the Holy Spirit: they must not therefore be defiled

15 Know you not that your bodies are the members of the Messiah? shall I then take the members of the Messiah, and make *them* the members of a harlot? Certainly not.

16 What? know you not that he which is joined to a harlot is one body? **for two**, said he, **shall be one flesh**. [Gen 2:24](#); [Matt 19:5](#); [Mark 10:8](#); [Eph 5:31](#); [[Mark 10:7](#)];

17 But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.

18 Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.

19 What? know you not that your body is the temple of the Holy Spirit *which is* in you, which you have of Elohim, and you are not your own? [1Cor 3:16](#); [2Cor 6:16](#); [Eph 2:21](#); [Heb 3:6](#); [1Pet 2:5](#);

20 For you are bought with a price: therefore glorify Elohim in your body, and in your spirit, which are Elohim's. [1Cor 7:23](#); [Gal 3:13](#); [Heb 9:12](#); [1Pet 1:18](#);

He treats of marriage

1 Now concerning the things whereof you wrote unto me: *It is* good for a man not to touch a woman.

2 Nevertheless, *to avoid* fornication, let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband. [Rom 7:2];

3 Let the husband render unto the wife due benevolence: and likewise also the wife unto the husband. 1Pet 3:7;

shewing it to be a remedy against fornication

4 The wife has not power of her own body, but the husband: and likewise also the husband has not power of his own body, but the wife.

5 Defraud you not one the other, except *it be* with consent for a time, that you may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency. Joel 2:16; [Exod 19:15]; [Eccl 3:5];

6 But I speak this by permission, *and* not of commandment.

7 For I would that all men were even as I myself. But every man has his proper gift of Elohim, one after this manner, and another after that. Acts 26:29; Matt 19:12; 1Cor 12:11; [Matt 19:11];

8 I say therefore to the unmarried and widows, It is good for them if they abide even as I.

9 But if they cannot contain, let them marry: for it is better to marry than to burn. 1Tim 5:14;

and that the bond thereof ought not lightly to be dissolved

10 And unto the married I command, yet not I, but the Lord, Let not the wife depart from *her* husband: Mal 2:14; Matt 5:32; Matt 19:9; Mark 10:11; Luke 16:18; [Matt 19:6]; [Mark 10:9]; [Rom 7:2];

11 But if she depart, let her remain unmarried, or be reconciled to *her* husband: and let not the husband put away *his* wife.

12 But to the rest speak I, not the Lord: If any brother has a wife that believeth not, and she be pleased to dwell with him, let him not put her away.

13 And the woman which has a husband that believeth not, and if he be pleased to dwell with her, let her not leave him.

14 For the unbelieving husband is sanctified by the wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified by the husband: else were your children unclean; but now are they holy.

15 But if the unbelieving depart, let him depart. A brother or a sister is not under bondage in such *cases*: but Elohim has called us to peace.

16 For what knowest you, O wife, whether you shall save *thy* husband? or how knowest you, O man, whether you shall save *thy* wife? 1Pet 3:1;

17 But as Elohim has distributed to every man, as the Lord has called every one, so let him walk. And so ordain I in all churches. [Matt 19:11];

18 Is any man called being circumcised? let him not become uncircumcised. Is any called in uncircumcision? let him not be circumcised.

19 Circumcision is nothing, and uncircumcision is nothing, but the keeping of the commandments of Elohim *is what matters*. [Gal 5:6];

Every man must be content with his vocation

20 Let every man abide in the same calling wherein he was called. Eph 4:1; Phil 1:27; Col 1:10; 1Thess 2:12;

21 Are you called *being* a servant? care not for it: but if you may be made free, use *it* rather. [Col 3:11];

22 For he that is called in the Lord, *being* a servant, is the Lord's freeman: likewise also he that is called, *being* free, is the Messiah's servant.

23 You are bought with a price; be not you the servants of men. 1Cor 6:20; Heb 9:12; 1Pet 1:18;

24 Brethren, let every man, wherein he is called, therein abide with Elohim.

Virginity wherefore to be embraced

25 Now concerning virgins I have no commandment of the Lord: yet I give my judgment, as one that has obtained mercy of the Lord to be faithful.

26 I suppose therefore that this is good for the present distress, *I say*, that *it is* good for a man so to be.

27 Are you bound unto a wife? seek not to be loosed. are you loosed from a wife? seek not a wife.

28 But if you marry, you have not sinned; and if a virgin marry, she has not sinned. Nevertheless such shall have trouble in the flesh: but I spare you.

29 But this I say, brethren, the time *is* short: it remaineth, that both they that have wives be as though they had none;

30 And they that weep, as though they wept not; and they that rejoice, as though they rejoiced not; and they that buy, as though they possessed not;

31 And they that use this world, as not abusing *it*: for the fashion of this world passeth away. [Isa 40:6](#); [Jas 1:10](#); [Jas 4:14](#); [1Pet 1:24](#); [1John 2:17](#); [[Jas 1:11](#)];

32 But I would have you without carefulness. He that is unmarried careth for the things that belong to the Lord, how he may please the Lord: [1Tim 5:5](#);

33 But he that is married careth for the things that are of the world, how he may please *his* wife.

34 There is difference *also* between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman careth for the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit: but she that is married careth for the things of the world, how she may please *her* husband.

and for what respects we may either marry, or abstain from marrying

35 And this I speak for your own profit; not that I may cast a snare upon you, but for that which is comely, and that you may attend upon the Lord without distraction.

36 But if any man think that he behaveth himself uncomely toward his virgin, if she pass the flower of *her* age, and need so require, let him do what he will, he sinneth not: let them marry.

37 Nevertheless he that standeth stedfast in his heart, having no necessity, but has power over his own will, and has so decreed in his heart that he will keep his virgin, doeth well.

38 So then he that giveth *her* in marriage doeth well; but he that giveth *her* not in marriage doeth better.

39 The wife is bound by the law as long as her husband liveth; but if her husband be dead, she is at liberty to be married to whom she will; only in the Lord. [Rom 7:2](#);

40 But she is happier if she so abide, after my judgment: and I think also that I have the Spirit of Elohim. [1Thess 4:8](#);

To abstain from meats offered to idols

- 1** Now as touching things offered unto idols, we know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffeth up, but love edifieth. [\[Acts 15:20\]](#); [\[Acts 15:29\]](#); [\[Acts 21:25\]](#);
- 2** And if any man think that he knoweth any thing, he knoweth nothing yet as he ought to know.
- 3** But if any man love Elohim, the same is known of him.
- 4** As concerning therefore the eating of those things that are offered in sacrifice unto idols, we know that an idol *is* nothing in the world, and that *there is* none other Elohim but one. [Rom 14:14](#); [1Cor 10:19](#); [Deut 4:39](#); [Eph 4:6](#); [\[Deut 6:4\]](#); [\[Gal 4:8\]](#); [\[Eph 4:5\]](#);
- 5** For though there be that are called gods, whether in heaven or in earth, (as there be gods many, and lords many,)
- 6** But to us *there is but* one Elohim, the Father, of whom *are* all things, and we in him; and one Lord Yahushua the Messiah, by whom *are* all things, and we by him. [Mal 2:10](#); [Eph 4:6](#); [Rom 11:36](#); [John 13:13](#); [1Cor 12:3](#); [Phil 2:11](#); [\[Deut 6:4\]](#); [\[Eph 4:5\]](#);
- 7** Howbeit *there is* not in every man that knowledge: for some with conscience of the idol unto this hour eat *it* as a thing offered unto an idol; and their conscience being weak is defiled. [1Cor 10:28](#); [\[1Cor 10:27\]](#);

We must not abuse our Messianic liberty, to the offence of our brethren

- 8** But meat commendeth us not to Elohim: for neither, if we eat, are we the better; neither, if we eat not, are we the worse. [Rom 14:17](#);
- 9** But take heed lest by any means this liberty of yours become a stumblingblock to them that are weak. [Gal 5:13](#);
- 10** For if any man see you which have knowledge sit at meat in the idol's temple, shall not the conscience of him which is weak be emboldened to eat those things which are offered to idols;

but must bridle our knowledge with love

- 11** And through thy knowledge shall the weak brother perish, for whom the Messiah died? [Rom 14:15](#);
- 12** But when you sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, you sin against the Messiah.
- 13** Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend. [Rom 14:21](#); [2Cor 11:29](#);

He shows his liberty

- 1** Am I not an apostle? am I not free? have I not seen Yahushua the Messiah our Lord? are not you my work in the Lord? [Acts 9:3](#); [Acts 9:17](#); [Acts 22:14](#); [Acts 22:18](#); [Acts 23:11](#); [1Cor 15:8](#); [2Cor 12:2](#); [1Cor 4:15](#);
- 2** If I be not an apostle unto others, yet doubtless I am to you: for the seal of mine apostleship are you in the Lord. [\[2Cor 12:12\]](#);
- 3** Mine answer to them that do examine me is this, [\[1Thess 2:6\]](#); [\[2Thess 3:9\]](#);
- 4** Have we not power to eat and to drink? [1Cor 9:14](#); [1Thess 2:6](#); [2Thess 3:9](#); [\[Matt 10:10\]](#); [\[Luke 10:7\]](#);
- 5** Have we not power to lead about a sister, a wife, as well as other apostles, and *as* the brethren of the Lord, and Cephas? [Matt 8:14](#);
- 6** Or I only and Barnabas, have not we power to forbear working? [\[2Thess 3:9\]](#);

and that the minister ought to live by the Gospel

- 7** Who goes a warfare any time at his own charges? who planteth a vineyard, and eateth not of the fruit thereof? or who feedeth a flock, and eateth not of the milk of the flock? [2Cor 10:4](#); [1Cor 3:6-8](#); [John 21:15](#); [1Pet 5:2](#);
- 8** Say I these things as a man? or says not the law the same also?
- 9** For it is written in the law of Moses, you **shall not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn**. Does Elohim take care for oxen? [Deut 25:4](#); [1Tim 5:18](#); [\[1Pet 5:7\]](#);
- 10** Or saith he *it* altogether for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, *this* is written: that he that ploweth should plow in hope; and that he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope. [\[1Cor 10:11\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:6\]](#);
- 11** If we have sown unto you spiritual things, *is it* a great thing if we shall reap your carnal things? [Rom 15:27](#); [Gal 6:6](#); [\[1Thess 5:12\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:17\]](#);
- 12** If others be partakers of *this* power over you, *are* not we rather? Nevertheless we have not used this power; but suffer all things, lest we should hinder the gospel of the Messiah. [Acts 20:33](#); [2Cor 11:9](#); [2Cor 12:13](#); [\[2Cor 11:7\]](#);
- 13** Do you not know that they which minister about holy things live *of the things* of the temple? and they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar? [Deut 18:1](#);
- 14** Even so has the Lord ordained that they which preach the gospel should live of the gospel. [Lev 19:13](#); [Deut 24:14](#); [Deut 25:4](#); [Matt 10:10](#); [Luke 10:7](#); [1Tim 5:18](#); [\[1Cor 9:4\]](#); [\[Phil 2:29\]](#);

yet that himself has of his own accord abstained

- 15** But I have used none of these things: neither have I written these things, that it should be so done unto me: for *it were* better for me to die, than that any man should make my glorying void.
- 16** For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yes, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel! [Rom 1:14](#);
- 17** For if I do this thing willingly, I have a reward: but if against my will, a dispensation *of the gospel* is committed unto me.

to be either chargeable unto them

- 18** What is my reward then? *Verily* that, when I preach the gospel, I may make the gospel of the Messiah without charge, that I abuse not my power in the gospel.
- 19** For though I be free from all *men*, yet have I made myself servant unto all, that I might gain the more.
- 20** And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law; [Acts 16:3](#); [Acts 18:18](#); [Acts 21:23](#);
- 21** To them that are without law, as without law, (being not without law to Elohim, but under the law to the Messiah,) that I might gain them that are without law. [Gal 2:3](#);

or offensive unto any, in matters indifferent

22 To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all *men*, that I might by all means save some. [Rom 15:1](#); [1Cor 10:33](#); [Gal 6:1](#);

23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with *you*.

Our life is like unto a race

24 Know you not that they which run in a race run all, but one receiveth the prize? So run, that you may obtain. [Gal 2:2](#); [Gal 5:7](#); [Phil 2:16](#); [2Tim 4:7](#); [Heb 6:18](#); [[Phil 3:14](#)]; [[Heb 12:1](#)];

25 And every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they *do it* to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. [2Tim 2:4](#); [2Tim 4:8](#); [1Pet 1:4](#); [1Pet 5:4](#);

26 I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air:

27 But I keep under my body, and bring *it* into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

The sacraments of the Jews are types of ours

1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that you should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; [Exod 13:21](#); [Num 9:18](#); [Deut 1:33](#); [Neh 9:12](#); [Neh 9:19](#); [Ps 78:14](#); [Ps 105:39](#); [Exod 14:22](#); [Josh 4:23](#); [Ps 78:13](#); [[Exod 40:38](#)];

2 And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea;

3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat; [Exod 16:15](#); [[Ps 78:25](#)]; [[John 6:31](#)];

4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was the Messiah. [Exod 17:6](#); [Num 20:11](#); [Ps 78:15](#);

5 But with many of them Elohim was not well pleased: for they were overthrown in the wilderness. [Num 26:65](#); [[Ps 78:31](#)]; [[Jude 1:5](#)];

6 Now these things were our examples, to the intent we should not lust after evil things, as they also lusted. [Num 11:4](#); [Num 11:33](#); [Ps 106:14](#);

and their punishments

7 Neither be you idolaters, as *were* some of them; as it is written, **The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play.** [Exod 32:6](#); [[2Cor 6:16](#)];

8 Neither let us commit fornication, as some of them committed, and fell in one day three and twenty thousand. [Num 25:1](#); [Num 25:9](#); [Ps 106:29](#);

9 Neither let us tempt the Messiah, as some of them also tempted, and were destroyed of serpents. [Num 21:5](#); [Ps 106:14](#); [[Num 21:6](#)];

10 Neither murmur you, as some of them also murmured, and were destroyed of the destroyer. [Exod 16:2](#); [Exod 17:2](#); [Num 14:36](#); [Ps 106:25](#); [[Exod 16:3](#)]; [[Num 14:37](#)]; [[Heb 3:17](#)];

examples for us

11 Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come. [Rom 15:4](#); [1Cor 9:10](#); [Phil 4:5](#); [Heb 10:25](#);

12 Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall.

We must flee from idolatry

13 There has no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but Elohim *is* faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that you are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that you may be able to bear *it*. [1Cor 1:8](#); [1Thess 5:24](#); [2Pet 2:9](#); [[1Cor 1:9](#)]; [[Heb 12:4](#)];

14 Wherefore, my dearly beloved, flee from idolatry. [[2Cor 6:16](#)];

15 I speak as to wise men; judge you what I say.

16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of the Messiah? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of the Messiah?

17 For we *being* many are one bread, *and* one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread. [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#);

18 Behold Israel after the flesh: are not they which eat of the sacrifices partakers of the altar?

19 What say I then? that the idol is any thing, or that which is offered in sacrifice to idols is any thing? [1Cor 8:4](#);

20 But *I say*, that the things which the Gentiles sacrifice, they sacrifice to demons, and not to Elohim: and I would not that you should have fellowship with demons. [Lev 17:7](#); [Deut 32:17](#); [[Acts 15:20](#)]; [[Eph 5:11](#)];

We must not make the Lord's table the table of demons

21 You cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of demons: you cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of demons. [[1Cor 11:27](#)]; [[2Cor 6:14](#)];

22 Do we provoke the Lord to jealousy? are we stronger than he?

23 All things are lawful for me, but all things are not expedient: all things are lawful for me, but all things edify not. [1Cor 6:12](#);

and in things indifferent we must have regard of our brethren

24 Let no man seek his own, but every man another's *wealth*. [1Cor 13:5](#); [Phil 2:4](#); [[Phil 2:21](#)];

25 Whatsoever is sold in the shambles, *that* eat, asking no question for conscience sake:

26 **For the earth *is* the Lord's, and the fulness thereof.** [Exod 19:5](#); [Ps 24:1](#); [Ps 50:12](#); [[Job 41:11](#)];

27 If any of them that believe not bid you *to a feast*, and you be disposed to go; whatsoever is set before you, eat, asking no question for conscience sake. [Luke 10:7](#); [1Cor 8:7](#);

28 But if any man say unto you, This is offered in sacrifice unto idols, eat not for his sake that showed it, and for conscience sake: **for the earth *is* the Lord's, and the fulness thereof:** [[Job 41:11](#)]; [[Ps 24:1](#)]; [[Ps 50:12](#)]; [[1Cor 8:7](#)];

29 Conscience, I say, not thine own, but of the other: for why is my liberty judged of another *man's* conscience?

30 For if I by grace be a partaker, why am I evil spoken of for that for which I give thanks? [Rom 14:6](#); [1Tim 4:3](#);

31 Whether therefore you eat, or drink, or whatsoever you do, do all to the glory of Elohim. [Col 3:17](#); [[Rom 14:6](#)];

32 Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the church of Elohim: [Rom 14:13](#); [[2Cor 6:3](#)];

33 Even as I please all *men* in all *things*, not seeking mine own profit, but the *profit* of many, that they may be saved. [1Cor 9:22](#);

He reproves them, because in holy assemblies

1 Be you followers of me, even as I also *am* of the Messiah. [1Cor 4:16](#); [Phil 3:17](#); [1Thess 1:6](#); [2Thess 3:9](#); [[2Thess 3:7](#)];

2 Now I praise you, brethren, that you remember me in all things, and keep the ordinances, as I delivered *them* to you.

3 But I would have you know, that the head of every man is the Messiah; and the head of the woman *is* the man; and the head of the Messiah *is* Elohim. [Eph 5:23](#); [John 14:28](#); [1Cor 3:23](#); [1Cor 15:27](#);

their men prayed with their heads covered

4 Every man praying or prophesying, having *his* head covered, dishonoureth his head.

5 But every woman that prayeth or prophesieth with *her* head uncovered dishonoureth her head: for that is even all one as if she were shaven.

and women with their heads uncovered

6 For if the woman be not covered, let her also be shorn: but if it be a shame for a woman to be shorn or shaven, let her be covered. [Num 5:18](#); [Deut 22:5](#);

7 For a man indeed ought not to cover *his* head, forasmuch as he is the image and glory of Elohim: but the woman is the glory of the man. [Gen 1:26-27](#); [Gen 5:1](#); [Gen 9:6](#); [Col 3:10](#); [[Gen 1:27](#)]; [[Prov 12:4](#)];

8 For the man is not of the woman; but the woman of the man. [Gen 2:18](#); [Gen 2:21](#); [[Gen 2:22](#)];

9 Neither was the man created for the woman; but the woman for the man.

10 For this cause ought the woman to have power on *her* head because of the angels.

11 Nevertheless neither is the man without the woman, neither the woman without the man, in the Lord.

12 For as the woman *is* of the man, even so *is* the man also by the woman; but all things of Elohim.

13 Judge in yourselves: is it comely that a woman pray unto Elohim uncovered?

14 Does not even nature itself teach you, that, if a man have long hair, it is a shame unto him?

15 But if a woman have long hair, it is a glory to her: for *her* hair is given her for a covering.

16 But if any man seem to be contentious, we have no such custom, neither the churches of Elohim. [1Tim 6:4](#); [[1Tim 6:5](#)];

and because generally their meetings were not for the better, but for the worse

17 Now in this that I declare *unto you* I praise *you* not, that you come together not for the better, but for the worse.

18 For first of all, when you come together in the church, I hear that there be divisions among you; and I partly believe it.

19 For there must be also heresies among you, that they which are approved may be made manifest among you. [Matt 18:7](#); [Luke 17:1](#); [Acts 20:30](#); [1John 2:19](#);

20 When you come together therefore into one place, *this* is not to eat the Lord's supper.

as, namely, in profaning with their own feast the Lord's supper

21 For in eating every one taketh before *other* his own supper: and one is hungry, and another is drunken.

22 What? have you not houses to eat and to drink in? or despise you the church of Elohim, and shame them that have not? What shall I say to you? shall I praise you in this? I praise *you* not.

23 For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, That the Lord Yahushua the *same* night in which he was betrayed took bread: [Matt 26:26](#); [Mark 14:22](#); [Luke 22:19](#);

24 And when he had given thanks, he brake *it*, and said, **Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me.**

Lastly, he calls them to the first institution thereof

25 After the same manner also *he took* the cup, when he had supped, saying, **This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink *it*, in remembrance of me.** [[Zech 9:11](#)];

26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. [John 14:3](#); [Acts 1:11](#);

27 Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink *this* cup of the Lord, unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. [Num 9:10](#); [Num 9:13](#); [John 6:51](#); [John 6:63-64](#); [John 13:27](#); [1Cor 10:21](#);

28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of *that* bread, and drink of *that* cup. [2Cor 13:5](#);

29 For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.

30 For this cause many *are* weak and sickly among you, and many sleep.

31 For if we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. [Ps 32:5](#); [Prov 18:17](#);

32 But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world.

33 Wherefore, my brethren, when you come together to eat, tarry one for another.

34 And if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that you come not together unto condemnation. And the rest will I set in order when I come.

Spiritual gifts

- 1** Now concerning spiritual *gifts*, brethren, I would not have you ignorant.
2 You know that you were Gentiles, carried away unto these dumb idols, even as you were led.
3 Wherefore I give you to understand, that no man speaking by the Spirit of Elohim calleth Yahushua accursed: and *that* no man can say that Yahushua is the Lord, but by the Holy Spirit. [Mark 9:39](#); [John 13:13](#); [1Cor 8:6](#); [[Phil 2:11](#)];

are diverse

- 4** Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit. [Rom 12:6](#); [1Pet 4:10](#); [[Rom 12:5](#)];
5 And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord.
6 And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same Elohim which worketh all in all.

yet all to profit withal

- 7** But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal.

And to that end are diversely bestowed

- 8** For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;
9 To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;
10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *various* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues: [[Rom 12:7](#)];
11 But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will. [Rom 12:3](#); [Rom 12:6](#); [Eph 4:7](#); [1Cor 7:7](#); [2Cor 10:13](#);

that by the like proportion, as the members of a natural body tend all to the mutual decency

- 12** For as the body is one, and has many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also *is* the Messiah. [Rom 12:4-5](#); [Eph 4:16](#);
13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether *we be* Jews or Gentiles, whether *we be* bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. [Gal 3:28](#); [[Col 3:11](#)];
14 For the body is not one member, but many.
15 If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body?
16 And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body?
17 If the whole body *were* an eye, where *were* the hearing? If the whole *were* hearing, where *were* the smelling?
18 But now has Elohim set the members every one of them in the body, as it has pleased him.
19 And if they were all one member, where *were* the body?
20 But now *are they* many members, yet but one body.
21 And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of you: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you.

service

- 22** Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary:
23 And those *members* of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our uncomely *parts* have more abundant comeliness.

24 For our comely *parts* have no need: but Elohim has tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that *part* which lacked:

25 That there should be no schism in the body; but *that* the members should have the same care one for another.

and succour of the same body

26 And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honoured, all the members rejoice with it.

so we should do for one another, to make up the mystical body of the Messiah

27 Now you are the body of the Messiah, and members in particular. [Rom 12:5](#); [Eph 1:23](#); [Eph 4:12](#); [Eph 5:23](#); [Col 1:24](#); [[Rom 12:4](#)]; [[1Cor 10:17](#)]; [[Eph 4:16](#)]; [[Eph 5:30](#)];

28 And Elohim has set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. [Eph 4:11](#); [Eph 2:20](#);

29 *Are* all apostles? *are* all prophets? *are* all teachers? *are* all workers of miracles?

30 Have all the gifts of healing? do all speak with tongues? do all interpret?

31 But covet earnestly the best gifts: and yet show I unto you a more excellent way.

All gifts

1 Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not love, I am become *as* sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal.

2 And though I have *the gift of* prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not love, I am nothing. [Matt 7:22](#); [Rom 12:7](#); [Matt 17:20](#); [Matt 21:21](#); [Mark 11:23](#); [Luke 17:6](#);

how excellent soever, are nothing worth without love

3 And though I bestow all my goods to feed *the poor*, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not love, it profiteth me nothing.

The praises thereof

4 Love suffereth long, *and* is kind; love envieth not; love vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, [Prov 10:12](#); [1Pet 4:8](#);

5 Does not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; [1Cor 10:24](#); [Phil 2:4](#); [\[Phil 2:21\]](#);

6 Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; [2John 1:4](#);

7 Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. [\[Prov 10:12\]](#);

8 Love never faileth: but whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail; whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease; whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away.

9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.

10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.

11 When I was a child, I spoke as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.

12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known. [2Cor 3:18](#); [\[2Cor 5:7\]](#);

and prelation before hope and faith

13 And now abideth faith, hope, love, these three; but the greatest of these *is* love.

Prophecy is commended

1 Follow after love, and desire spiritual *gifts*, but rather that you may prophesy.

and preferred before speaking with tongues

2 For he that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto Elohim: for no man understandeth *him*; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries.

3 But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men *to* edification, and exhortation, and comfort.

4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.

5 I would that you all spoke with tongues, but rather that you prophesied: for greater *is* he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive edifying.

by a comparison drawn from musical instruments

6 Now, brethren, if I come unto you speaking with tongues, what shall I profit you, except I shall speak to you either by revelation, or by knowledge, or by prophesying, or by doctrine?

7 And even things without life giving sound, whether pipe or harp, except they give a distinction in the sounds, how shall it be known what is piped or harped?

8 For if the trumpet give an uncertain sound, who shall prepare himself to the battle?

9 So likewise you, except you utter by the tongue words easy to be understood, how shall it be known what is spoken? for you shall speak into the air.

10 There are, it may be, so many kinds of voices in the world, and none of them *is* without signification.

11 Therefore if I know not the meaning of the voice, I shall be unto him that speaketh a barbarian, and he that speaketh *shall be* a barbarian unto me.

Both must be referred to edification

12 Even so you, forasmuch as you are zealous of spiritual *gifts*, seek that you may excel to the edifying of the church.

13 Wherefore let him that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue pray that he may interpret.

14 For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful.

15 What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also. [Eph 5:19](#); [Col 3:16](#);

16 Else when you shall bless with the spirit, how shall he that occupieth the room of the unlearned say Amen at thy giving of thanks, seeing he understandeth not what you sayest?

17 For you verily givest thanks well, but the other is not edified.

18 I thank my Elohim, I speak with tongues more than you all:

19 yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, that *by my voice* I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an *unknown* tongue.

20 Brethren, be not children in understanding: howbeit in malice be you children, but in understanding be men. [Matt 18:3](#); [Matt 19:14](#); [Eph 4:14](#); [1Pet 2:1-2](#); [[Mark 10:14](#)]; [[Luke 18:16](#)]; [[Rom 16:19](#)]; [[1Pet 2:1](#)];

21 In the law it is written, **With *men of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto this people; and yet for all that will they not hear me, saith the Lord.*** [Deut 28:49](#); [Isa 28:11](#);

as to their true and proper end

22 Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not: but prophesying *serveth* not for them that believe not, but for them which believe.

23 If therefore the whole church be come together into one place, and all speak with tongues, and there come in *those that are* unlearned, or unbelievers, will they not say that you are mad?

24 But if all prophesy, and there come in one that believeth not, or *one* unlearned, he is convicted by all, he is judged by all:

25 And thus are the secrets of his heart made manifest; and so falling down on *his* face he will worship Elohim, and report that Elohim is in you of a truth.

The true use of each is taught

26 How is it then, brethren? when you come together, every one of you has a psalm, has a doctrine, has a tongue, has a revelation, has an interpretation. Let all things be done unto edifying.

and the abuse taxed

27 If any man speak in an *unknown* tongue, *let it be* by two, or at the most *by* three, and *that* by course; and let one interpret.

28 But if there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church; and let him speak to himself, and to Elohim.

29 Let the prophets speak two or three, and let the other judge. [1John 4:1];

30 If *any thing* be revealed to another that sitteth by, let the first hold his peace. [1Thess 5:19];

31 For you may all prophesy one by one, that all may learn, and all may be comforted.

32 And the spirits of the prophets are subject to the prophets.

33 For Elohim is not *the author* of confusion, but of peace, as in all churches of the saints. [2Thess 3:16];

Women are forbidden to speak in church

34 Let your women keep silence in the churches: for it is not permitted unto them to speak; but *they are commanded* to be under obedience, as also saith the law. 1Tim 2:12; Gen 3:16; Eph 5:22; Col 3:18; Titus 2:5; 1Pet 3:1;

35 And if they will learn any thing, let them ask their husbands at home: for it is a shame for women to speak in the church.

36 What? came the word of Elohim out from you? or came it unto you only?

37 If any man think himself to be a prophet, or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things that I write unto you are the commandments of the Lord.

38 But if any man be ignorant, let him be ignorant.

39 Wherefore, brethren, covet to prophesy, and forbid not to speak with tongues.

40 Let all things be done decently and in order. [Col 2:5];

By the Messiah's resurrection

- 1** Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also you have received, and wherein you stand; [Gal 1:11](#); [[Rom 5:2](#)];
- 2** By which also you are saved, if you keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless you have believed in vain. [Rom 1:16](#); [1Cor 1:21](#);
- 3** For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that the Messiah died for our sins according to the scriptures; [Isa 53:7](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Dan 9:26](#); [1Cor 5:7](#); [1Pet 2:24](#); [[Isa 53:5](#)];
- 4** And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures: [Ps 16:10](#); [Isa 53:9](#); [Jonah 1:17](#); [Matt 12:40](#); [Isa 53:8](#);
- 5** And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve: [Luke 24:34](#); [Acts 10:41](#); [John 20:19](#); [[Matt 28:10](#)]; [[Mark 16:7](#)]; [[Mark 16:14](#)]; [[Luke 24:36](#)]; [[Acts 1:3](#)]; [[Acts 10:40](#)]; [[Acts 13:31](#)];
- 6** After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some are fallen asleep.
- 7** After that, he was seen of James; then of all the apostles.
- 8** And last of all he was seen of me also, as of one born out of due time. [Acts 9:3](#); [Acts 9:17](#); [Acts 23:11](#); [1Cor 9:1](#); [2Cor 12:2](#); [[Acts 22:6](#)];
- 9** For I am the least of the apostles, that am not meet to be called an apostle, because I persecuted the church of Elohim. [Eph 3:8](#); [Acts 8:3](#); [Acts 9:1](#); [Acts 22:4](#); [Acts 26:9](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [1Tim 1:13](#); [[Acts 9:13](#)];
- 10** But by the grace of Elohim I am what I am: and his grace *which was bestowed* upon me was not in vain; but I laboured more abundantly than they all: yet not I, but the grace of Elohim which was with me. [2Cor 11:23](#); [2Cor 12:11](#);
- 11** Therefore whether *it were* I or they, so we preach, and so you believed.

he proves the necessity of our resurrection, against all such as deny the resurrection of the body

- 12** Now if the Messiah be preached that he rose from the dead, how say some among you that there is no resurrection of the dead?
- 13** But if there be no resurrection of the dead, then is the Messiah not risen:
- 14** And if the Messiah be not risen, then *is* our preaching vain, and your faith *is* also vain.
- 15** **yes**, and we are found false witnesses of Elohim; because we have testified of Elohim that he raised up the Messiah: whom he raised not up, if so be that the dead rise not.
- 16** For if the dead rise not, then is not the Messiah raised:
- 17** And if the Messiah be not raised, your faith *is* vain; you are yet in your sins.
- 18** Then they also which are fallen asleep in the Messiah are perished.
- 19** If in this life only we have hope in the Messiah, we are of all men most miserable.
- 20** But now is the Messiah risen from the dead, *and* become the firstfruits of them that slept. [1Pet 1:3](#); [Col 1:18](#); [Rev 1:5](#);

The fruit

- 21** For since by man *came* death, by man *came* also the resurrection of the dead. [Gen 2:17](#); [Gen 3:6](#); [Rom 5:12](#); [Rom 5:18](#); [Rom 6:23](#);
- 22** For as in Adam all die, even so in the Messiah shall all be made alive. [[1Thess 4:15](#)];
- 23** But every man in his own order: the Messiah the firstfruits; afterward they that are the Messiah's at his coming.
- 24** Then *cometh* the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to Elohim, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. [1Cor 2:6](#); [[2Pet 3:16](#)];

25 For he must reign, till he has put all enemies under his feet. [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [Eph 1:20](#); [Col 3:1](#); [Heb 1:13](#); [Heb 10:12](#); [\[Matt 22:44\]](#); [\[Mark 12:36\]](#); [\[Luke 20:42\]](#); [\[John 17:2\]](#);

26 The last enemy *that* shall be destroyed *is* death.

27 For he has put all things under his feet. But when he saith, all things are put under *him, it is* manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him. [Ps 8:6](#); [Matt 11:27](#); [Matt 28:18](#); [Eph 1:22](#); [Heb 2:8](#); [\[Luke 10:22\]](#); [\[1Cor 11:3\]](#);

28 And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that Elohim may be all in all.

29 Else what shall they do which are baptized for the hope of the dead, if the dead rise not at all? Why are they then baptized for the hope of the dead?

30 And why stand we in jeopardy every hour?

31 I protest by your rejoicing which I have in Yahushua the Messiah our Lord, I die daily. [\[2Cor 1:10\]](#);

32 If after the manner of men I have fought with beasts at Ephesus, what advantageth it me, if the dead rise not? **let us eat and drink; for to morrow we die.** [Isa 22:13](#); [Isa 56:12](#); [\[Gen 25:32\]](#); [\[Luke 12:19\]](#);

33 Be not deceived: evil associations corrupt good manners. [\[Ps 1:1\]](#);

34 Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of Elohim: I speak *this* to your shame. [\[1Thess 4:5\]](#); [\[1Thess 5:6\]](#);

and the manner thereof

35 But some *man* will say, How are the dead raised up? and with what body do they come? [Ezek 37:3](#);

36 You fool, that which you sowest is not quickened, except it die: [John 12:24](#);

37 And that which you sowest, you sowest not that body that shall be, but bare grain, it may chance of wheat, or of some other *grain*:

38 But Elohim giveth it a body as it has pleased him, and to every seed his own body.

39 All flesh *is* not the same flesh: but *there is* one *kind of* flesh of men, another flesh of beasts, another of fishes, *and* another of birds.

40 *There are* also celestial bodies, and bodies terrestrial: but the glory of the celestial *is* one, and the *glory* of the terrestrial *is* another.

41 *There is* one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars: for *one* star differeth from *another* star in glory.

42 So also *is* the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption; it is raised in incorruption: [Dan 12:3](#); [Matt 13:43](#);

43 It is sown in dishonour; it is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness; it is raised in power:

44 It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body.

45 And so it is written, **The first man Adam was made a living being;** the last Adam *was made* a quickening spirit. [Gen 2:7](#);

46 Howbeit that *was* not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual.

47 The first man *is* of the earth, earthy: the second man *is* the Lord from heaven. [\[Gen 2:7\]](#);

48 As *is* the earthy, such *are* they also that are earthy: and as *is* the heavenly, such *are* they also that are heavenly.

49 And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly. [2Cor 4:11](#);

50 Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of Elohim; neither does corruption inherit incorruption. [John 1:13](#);

and of the changing of them that shall be found alive at the last day

51 Behold, I show you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, [1Thess 4:16](#); [\[Phil 3:21\]](#); [\[1Thess 4:15\]](#);

52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. [Matt 24:31](#); [1Thess 4:16](#);

53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal *must* put on immortality. [2Cor 5:4](#);

54 So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, **Death is swallowed up in victory.** [Isa 25:8](#); [Hos 13:14](#); [Heb 2:14](#);

55 **O death, where *is* thy sting? O grave, where *is* thy victory?** [[Hos 13:14](#)];

56 The sting of death *is* sin; and the strength of sin *is* the law.

57 But thanks *be* to Elohim, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [1John 5:5](#);

58 Therefore, my beloved brethren, be you stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as you know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.

He exhorts them to relieve the want of the brethren at Jerusalem

- 1** Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do you. [\[Rom 12:13\]; \[Gal 2:10\];](#)
- 2** Upon the first *day* of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as *Elohim* has prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come. [Acts 11:29; 2Cor 8:4; 2Cor 9:1;](#)
- 3** And when I come, whomsoever you shall approve by *your* letters, them will I send to bring your liberality unto Jerusalem.
- 4** And if it be meet that I go also, they shall go with me.
- 5** Now I will come unto you, when I shall pass through Macedonia: for I do pass through Macedonia. [2Cor 1:15;](#)
- 6** And it may be that I will abide, yes, and winter with you, that you may bring me on my journey whithersoever I go.
- 7** For I will not see you now by the way; but I trust to tarry a while with you, if the Lord permit.
- 8** But I will tarry at Ephesus until Pentecost.
- 9** For a great door and effectual is opened unto me, and *there are* many adversaries.

Commends Timothy

- 10** Now if Timotheus come, see that he may be with you without fear: for he worketh the work of the Lord, as I also *do*.
- 11** Let no man therefore despise him: but conduct him forth in peace, that he may come unto me: for I look for him with the brethren.
- 12** As touching *our* brother Apollos, I greatly desired him to come unto you with the brethren: but his will was not at all to come at this time; but he will come when he shall have convenient time. [\[1Cor 1:12\]; \[1Cor 3:5\];](#)

and after friendly admonitions

- 13** Watch you, stand fast in the faith, quit you like men, be strong.
- 14** Let all your things be done with love.
- 15** I beseech you, brethren, (ye know the house of Stephanas, that it is the firstfruits of Achaia, and *that* they have addicted themselves to the ministry of the saints,) [\[1Cor 1:16\];](#)

concludes his epistle with various salutations

- 16** That you submit yourselves unto such, and to every one that helpeth with *us*, and laboureth.
- 17** I am glad of the coming of Stephanas and Fortunatus and Achaicus: for that which was lacking on your part they have supplied. [\[1Cor 1:16\];](#)
- 18** For they have refreshed my spirit and yours: therefore acknowledge you them that are such. [\[1Thess 5:12\];](#)
- 19** The churches of Asia salute you. Aquila and Priscilla salute you much in the Lord, with the church that is in their house. [\[Acts 18:2\]; \[Phlm 1:2\];](#)
- 20** All the brethren greet you. Greet you one another with a holy kiss. [Rom 16:16; 2Cor 13:12; 1Thess 5:26; 1Pet 5:14;](#)
- 21** The salutation of *me* Paul with mine own hand. [\[2Thess 3:17\];](#)
- 22** If any man love not the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, let him be banned. O Lord, come!
- 23** The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with you.
- 24** My love *be* with you all in Yahushua the Messiah. Amen.

Second_Corinthians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#)

SECOND CORINTHIANS ONE

Paul salutes the Corinthians

1 Paul, an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah by the will of Elohim, and Timothy *our* brother, unto the church of Elohim which is at Corinth, with all the saints which are in all Achaia: [Phil 1:1](#); [\[Eph 1:1\]](#);

2 Grace *be* to you and peace from Elohim our Father, and *from* the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Rom 1:7](#); [1Cor 1:3](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#);

he encourages them against troubles, by the comforts and deliverances which Elohim had given him, as in all his afflictions

3 Blessed *be* Elohim, even the Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, the Father of mercies, and the Elohim of all comfort; [Eph 1:3](#); [1Pet 1:3](#);

4 Who comforteth us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort them which are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of Elohim. [2Cor 7:6](#);

5 For as the sufferings of the Messiah abound in us, so our consolation also aboundeth by the Messiah. [Ps 34:19](#); [Ps 94:19](#);

6 And whether we be afflicted, *it is* for your consolation and salvation, which is effectual in the enduring of the same sufferings which we also suffer: or whether we be comforted, *it is* for your consolation and salvation. [2Cor 4:17](#);

7 And our hope of you *is* stedfast, knowing, that as you are partakers of the sufferings, so *shall you be* also of the consolation.

so particularly in his late danger in Asia

8 For we would not, brethren, have you ignorant of our trouble which came to us in Asia, that we were pressed out of measure, above strength, insomuch that we despaired even of life: [Acts 19:23](#);

9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in Elohim which raiseth the dead: [Jer 17:5](#); [Jer 17:7](#);

10 Who delivered us from so great a death, and does deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver *us*; [1Cor 15:31](#); [\[2Tim 3:11\]](#);

11 *you* also helping together by prayer for us, that for the gift *bestowed* upon us by the means of many persons thanks may be given by many on our behalf. [Rom 15:30](#); [Phil 1:19](#); [2Cor 4:15](#);

And calling both his own conscience and theirs to witness of his sincere manner of preaching the immutable truth of the gospel

12 For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of Elohim, we have had our conduct in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.

13 For we write none other things unto you, than what you read or acknowledge; and I trust you shall acknowledge even to the end;

14 As also you have acknowledged us in part, that we are your rejoicing, even as you also *are* ours in the day of the Lord Yahushua. [Phil 2:16](#); [1Thess 2:19](#);

he excuses his not coming to them, as proceeding not of lightness, but of his lenity towards them

15 And in this confidence I was minded to come unto you before, that you might have a second benefit; [1Cor 16:5](#);

16 And to pass by you into Macedonia, and to come again out of Macedonia unto you, and of you to be brought on my way toward Judaea.

17 When I therefore was thus minded, did I use lightness? or the things that I purpose, do I purpose according to the flesh, that with me there should be yes yes, and nay nay? [\[Jas 5:12\]](#);

18 But *as* Elohim *is* true, our word toward you was not yes and nay. [Matt 5:37](#); [Jas 5:12](#); [\[1Thess 5:24\]](#);

19 For the Son of Elohim, Yahushua the Messiah, who was preached among you by us, *even* by me and Silvanus and Timotheus, was not yes and nay, but in him was yes.

20 For all the promises of Elohim in him *are* yes, and in him Amen, unto the glory of Elohim by us.

21 Now he which establisheth us with you in the Messiah, and has anointed us, *is* Elohim; [\[1John 2:20\]](#);

22 Who has also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts. [Rom 8:16](#); [2Cor 5:5](#); [Eph 1:13](#); [Eph 4:30](#);

23 Moreover I call Elohim for a record upon my being, that to spare you I came not as yet unto Corinth. [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [1Tim 5:21](#); [2Tim 4:1](#);

24 Not for that we have dominion over your faith, but are helpers of your joy: for by faith you stand. [1Pet 5:3](#);

SECOND CORINTHIANS TWO

Having shown the reason why he came not to them

- 1** But I determined this with myself, that I would not come again to you in heaviness.
2 For if I make you sorry, who is he then that maketh me glad, but the same which is made sorry by me?
3 And I wrote this same unto you, lest, when I came, I should have sorrow from them of whom I ought to rejoice; having confidence in you all, that my joy is *the joy* of you all. [2Cor 8:22](#); [Gal 5:10](#);
4 For out of much affliction and anguish of heart I wrote unto you with many tears; not that you should be grieved, but that you might know the love which I have more abundantly unto you.
5 But if any have caused grief, he has not grieved me, but in part: that I may not overcharge you all.

he requires them to forgive and to comfort that excommunicated person

- 6** Sufficient to such a man *is* this punishment, which *was inflicted* of many. [1Cor 5:3](#);
7 So that contrariwise you *ought* rather to forgive *him*, and comfort *him*, lest perhaps such a one should be swallowed up with overmuch sorrow.
8 Wherefore I beseech you that you would confirm *your* love toward him.
9 For to this end also did I write, that I might know the proof of you, whether you be obedient in all things.

even as himself also upon his true repentance had forgiven him

- 10** To whom you forgive any thing, I *forgive* also: for if I forgave any thing, to whom I forgave *it*, for your sakes *I forgave it* in the person of the Messiah;
11 Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices.

declaring withal why he departed from Troas to Macedonia

- 12** Furthermore, when I came to Troas to *preach* the Messiah's gospel, and a door was opened unto me of the Lord, [Acts 16:8](#); [\[Titus 1:4\]](#);
13 I had no rest in my spirit, because I found not Titus my brother: but taking my leave of them, I went from thence into Macedonia.

and the happy success which Elohim gave to his preaching in all places

- 14** Now thanks *be* unto Elohim, which always causeth us to triumph in the Messiah, and maketh manifest the savour of his knowledge by us in every place. [Col 1:27](#); [\[Mark 4:11\]](#);
15 For we are unto Elohim a sweet savour of the Messiah, in them that are saved, and in them that perish: [\[2Cor 4:3\]](#); [\[2Thess 2:10\]](#);
16 To the one *we are* the savour of death unto death; and to the other the savour of life unto life. And who *is* sufficient for these things? [Luke 2:34](#); [\[Isa 28:13\]](#);
17 For we are not as many, which corrupt the word of Elohim: but as of sincerity, but as of Elohim, in the sight of Elohim speak we in the Messiah. [\[2Cor 4:2\]](#);

Lest their false teachers should charge him with vain glory, he shows the faith and graces of the Corinthians to be a sufficient commendation of his ministry

- 1** Do we begin again to commend ourselves? or need we, as some *others*, epistles of commendation to you, or *letters* of commendation from you? [2Cor 5:12](#); [2Cor 10:8](#); [\[2Cor 10:12\]](#);
- 2** You are our epistle written in our hearts, known and read of all men:
- 3** *Forasmuch as you are* manifestly declared to be the epistle of the Messiah ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living Elohim; not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart. [Exod 24:12](#); [Exod 34:1](#); [Jer 31:33](#); [Ezek 11:19](#); [Ezek 36:26](#); [Heb 8:10](#);
- 4** And such trust have we through the Messiah to Elohim-ward:
- 5** Not that we are sufficient of ourselves to think any thing as of ourselves; but our sufficiency *is* of Elohim; [Phil 2:13](#); [\[Luke 8:10\]](#); [\[Heb 13:21\]](#);

Whereupon entering a comparison between the ministers of the law and of the gospel

- 6** Who also has made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life. [2Cor 5:18](#); [Heb 8:6](#); [Heb 8:8](#); [\[John 6:63\]](#); [\[Rom 7:6\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:20\]](#);
- 7** But if the ministration of death, written *and* engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not stedfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which *glory* was to be done away: [Exod 24:12](#); [Exod 34:1](#); [Deut 10:2](#); [Exod 34:30](#); [\[Exod 34:29\]](#); [\[Exod 34:33\]](#);
- 8** How shall not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious?
- 9** For if the ministration of condemnation *be* glory, much more does the ministration of righteousness exceed in glory.
- 10** For even that which was made glorious had no glory in this respect, by reason of the glory that excelleth.
- 11** For if that which is done away *was* glorious, much more that which remaineth *is* glorious.

he proves that his ministry is so far the more excellent, as the gospel of life and liberty is more glorious than the law of condemnation

- 12** Seeing then that we have such hope, we use great plainness of speech:
- 13** And not as Moses, *which* put a vail over his face, that the children of Israel could not stedfastly look to the end of that which is abolished: [Exod 34:35](#); [Rom 10:4](#); [\[Exod 34:33\]](#);
- 14** But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same vail untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which *vail* is done away in the Messiah. [Isa 6:10](#); [Ezek 12:2](#); [Matt 13:11](#); [Acts 28:26](#); [Rom 11:8](#); [\[Mark 4:11\]](#); [\[Luke 8:10\]](#); [\[Luke 10:21\]](#); [\[1Cor 2:8\]](#);
- 15** But even unto this day, when Moses is read, the vail is upon their heart.
- 16** Nevertheless when it shall turn to the Lord, the vail shall be taken away. [Matt 13:11](#); [Rom 11:23](#); [1Cor 2:10](#); [\[Rom 11:26\]](#);
- 17** Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord *is*, there *is* liberty. [John 4:24](#);
- 18** But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, *even* as by the Spirit of the Lord. [1Cor 13:12](#); [2Cor 5:7](#); [\[1Cor 2:10\]](#);

He declares how he has used all sincerity and faithful diligence in preaching the gospel

- 1** Therefore seeing we have this ministry, as we have received mercy, we faint not;
2 But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of Elohim deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of Elohim. [2Cor 2:17](#); [2Cor 6:4](#);
3 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: [2Cor 2:15](#); [2Thess 2:10](#);
4 In whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of the Messiah, who is the image of Elohim, should shine unto them. [Isa 6:10](#); [John 12:40](#); [John 14:9](#); [Phil 2:6](#); [Col 1:15](#); [Heb 1:3](#); [[2Thess 2:9](#)];
5 For we preach not ourselves, but Yahushua the Messiah the Lord; and ourselves your servants for Yahushua's sake.
6 For Elohim, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, has shined in our hearts, to *give* the light of the knowledge of the glory of Elohim in the face of Yahushua the Messiah. [Gen 1:3](#); [2Pet 1:19](#);

and how the troubles and persecutions which he daily endured for the same did redound to the praise of Elohim's power

- 7** But we have this treasure in earthen vessels, that the excellency of the power may be of Elohim, and not of us. [2Cor 5:1](#); [1Cor 2:5](#);
8 *We are* troubled on every side, yet not distressed; *we are* perplexed, but not in despair;
9 Persecuted, but not forsaken; cast down, but not destroyed;
10 Always bearing about in the body the dying of the Lord Yahushua, that the life also of Yahushua might be made manifest in our body. [Rom 8:17](#); [Gal 6:17](#); [Phil 3:10](#); [2Tim 2:11-12](#); [1Pet 4:13](#); [[Matt 5:10](#)]; [[Rom 8:18](#)]; [[2Tim 2:12](#)];
11 For we which live are always delivered unto death for Yahushua's sake, that the life also of Yahushua might be made manifest in our mortal flesh. [Ps 44:22](#); [Matt 5:11](#); [Rom 8:36](#); [1Cor 4:9](#); [1Cor 15:49](#); [Col 3:4](#);

to the benefit of the church

- 12** So then death worketh in us, but life in you.
13 We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written, **I believed, and therefore have I spoken**; we also believe, and therefore speak; [Ps 116:10](#);
14 Knowing that he which raised up the Lord Yahushua shall raise up us also by Yahushua, and shall present *us* with you. [Rom 8:11](#); [1Cor 6:14](#);
15 For all things *are* for your sakes, that the abundant grace might through the thanksgiving of many redound to the glory of Elohim. [2Cor 1:11](#);

and to the apostle's own eternal glory

- 16** For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward *man* is renewed day by day.
17 For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding *and* eternal weight of glory; [Ps 30:5](#); [Matt 5:12](#); [Rom 8:18](#); [1John 3:2](#); [[Isa 26:20](#)]; [[2Cor 1:6](#)];
18 While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen *are* temporal; but the things which are not seen *are* eternal.

That in his assured hope of immortal glory

1 For we know that if our earthly house of *this* tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of Elohim, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. [2Cor 4:7](#);

2 For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven: [Rom 8:23](#);

3 If so be that being clothed we shall not be found naked. [Rev 3:18](#); [Rev 16:15](#);

4 For we that are in *this* tabernacle do groan, being burdened: not for that we would be unclothed, but clothed upon, that mortality might be swallowed up of life. [Rom 8:11](#); [1Cor 15:53](#);

5 Now he that has wrought us for the selfsame thing *is* Elohim, who also has given unto us the earnest of the Spirit. [Rom 8:16](#); [2Cor 1:22](#); [Eph 1:13](#); [Eph 4:30](#);

6 Therefore *we are* always confident, knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord:

7 (For we walk by faith, not by sight:) [1Cor 13:12](#); [2Cor 3:18](#); [[Col 3:3](#)];

8 We are confident, *I say*, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.

and in expectation of it, and of the general judgment, he labours to keep a good conscience

9 Wherefore we labour, that, whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him.

10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of the Messiah; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he has done, whether *it be* good or bad. [Matt 25:32](#); [Rom 14:10](#); [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [1Cor 3:8](#); [Gal 6:5](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [Rev 22:12](#); [[Job 34:11](#)]; [[Eccl 12:14](#)]; [[Rev 20:12](#)];

11 Knowing therefore the terror of the Lord, we persuade men; but we are made manifest unto Elohim; and I trust also are made manifest in your consciences.

not that he may herein boast of himself

12 For we commend not ourselves again unto you, but give you occasion to glory on our behalf, that you may have somewhat to *answer* them which glory in appearance, and not in heart. [2Cor 3:1](#); [2Cor 10:8](#); [[2Cor 10:12](#)];

13 For whether we be beside ourselves, *it is* to Elohim: or whether we be sober, *it is* for your cause.

but as one that, having received life from the Messiah, endeavours to live as a new creation to the Messiah only

14 For the love of the Messiah constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:

15 And *that* he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again. [Rom 14:7](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [1Thess 5:10](#); [1Pet 4:2](#); [[Gal 2:19](#)];

16 Wherefore henceforth know we no man after the flesh: yes, though we have known the Messiah after the flesh, yet now henceforth know we *him* no more. [Matt 12:50](#); [John 15:14](#); [Gal 5:6](#); [Gal 6:15](#); [Col 3:11](#); [[Mark 3:35](#)]; [[Luke 8:21](#)];

17 Therefore if any man *be* in the Messiah, *he is* a new creation: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. [Isa 43:18](#); [Rev 21:5](#); [[Gal 5:6](#)]; [[Eph 2:10](#)]; [[Heb 3:4](#)];

and by his ministry of reconciliation, to reconcile others also in the Messiah to Elohim

18 And all things *are* of Elohim, who has reconciled us to himself by Yahushua the Messiah, and has given to us the ministry of reconciliation; [Col 1:20](#); [1John 2:2](#); [1John 4:10](#); [[2Cor 3:6](#)];

19 To wit, that Elohim was in the Messiah, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and has committed unto us the word of reconciliation. [Rom 3:24-25](#); [Col 1:20](#); [[Rom 3:25](#)]; [[1John 4:10](#)];

20 Now then we are ambassadors for the Messiah, as though Elohim did beseech *you* by us: we pray *you* in the Messiah's stead, be you reconciled to Elohim. [2Cor 3:6](#); [[Eph 6:20](#)];

21 For he has made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of Elohim in him. [Isa 53:9](#); [1Pet 2:22](#); [1John 3:5](#); [Isa 53:12](#); [Rom 8:3](#); [Gal 3:13](#); [[Heb 4:15](#)];

That he has approved himself a faithful minister of the Messiah by his exhortations

1 We then, *as* workers together *with him*, beseech *you* also that you receive not the grace of Elohim in vain. [1Cor 3:9](#); [Heb 12:15](#);

2 (For He says, **I have heard you in an acceptable time, and in a day of salvation have I helped you:** behold, now *is* an accepted time; behold, now *is* a day of salvation.) [Isa 49:8](#);

and by integrity of life

3 Giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed: [Rom 14:13](#); [1Cor 10:32](#);

and by patient enduring all kinds of affliction and disgrace for the gospel

4 But in all *things* approving ourselves as the ministers of Elohim, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses, [1Cor 4:1](#); [2Cor 11:23](#); [[2Cor 4:2](#)];

5 In stripes, in imprisonments, in tumults, in labours, in watchings, in fastings; [[Acts 16:19](#)];

6 By pureness, by knowledge, by longsuffering, by kindness, by the Holy Spirit, by love unfeigned,

7 By the word of truth, by the power of Elohim, by the armour of righteousness on the right hand and on the left, [[Eph 6:14](#)];

8 By honour and dishonour, by evil report and good report: as deceivers, and yet true;

9 As unknown, and yet well known; as dying, and, behold, we live; as chastened, and not killed; [Ps 118:18](#); [Isa 26:19](#);

Of which he speaks the more boldly among them because his heart is open to them

10 As sorrowful, yet always rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and yet possessing all things.

11 O you Corinthians, our mouth is open unto you, our heart is enlarged. [[2Cor 7:3](#)];

12 You are not straitened in us, but you are straitened in your own bowels. [[2Cor 12:15](#)];

and he expects the like affection from them again

13 Now for a recompence in the same, (I speak as unto *my* children,) be you also enlarged. [1Cor 4:14](#);

exhorting them to flee the society and pollutions of idolaters, as being themselves temples of the living Elohim

14 Be you not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship has righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion has light with darkness? [Deut 7:2](#); [1Cor 5:9](#); [1Sam 5:1-2](#); [1Kgs 8:21](#); [1Cor 10:21](#); [Eph 5:11](#);

15 And what concord has the Messiah with Belial? or what part has he that believeth with an infidel?

16 And what agreement has the temple of Elohim with idols? for you are the temple of the living Elohim; as Elohim has said, **I will dwell in them, and walk in *them*; and I will be their Elohim, and they shall be my people.** [1Cor 10:7](#); [1Cor 10:14](#); [1Cor 3:16](#); [1Cor 6:19](#); [Eph 2:21](#); [Heb 3:6](#); [1Pet 2:5](#); [Exod 29:45](#); [Lev 26:11](#); [Ezek 37:26](#); [[Zech 2:10](#)];

17 Wherefore come out from among them, and be you separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean *thing*; and I will receive you, [Isa 52:11](#); [Rev 18:4](#); [[Lev 5:2](#)];

18 And will be a Father unto you, and you shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty. [Jer 31:1](#);

He proceeds in exhorting them to purity of life

1 Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of Elohim.

and to bear him like affection as he does to them

2 Receive us; we have wronged no man, we have corrupted no man, we have defrauded no man.

Whereof lest he might seem to doubt, he declares what comfort he took in his afflictions by the report which Titus gave of their godly sorrow, which his former epistle had wrought in them

3 I speak not *this* to condemn *you*: for I have said before, that you are in our hearts to die and live with *you*. [2Cor 6:11-13](#);

4 Great *is* my boldness of speech toward you, great *is* my glorying of you: I am filled with comfort, I am exceeding joyful in all our tribulation. [Matt 5:12](#); [Acts 5:41](#); [Phil 2:17](#); [Col 1:24](#);

5 For, when we were come into Macedonia, our flesh had no rest, but we were troubled on every side; without *were* fightings, within *were* fears. [Acts 16:19](#); [Acts 16:23](#);

6 Nevertheless Elohim, that comforteth those that are cast down, comforted us by the coming of Titus; [2Cor 1:4](#);

7 And not by his coming only, but by the consolation wherewith he was comforted in you, when he told us your earnest desire, your mourning, your fervent mind toward me; so that I rejoiced the more.

8 For though I made you sorry with a letter, I do not repent, though I did repent: for I perceive that the same epistle has made you sorry, though *it were* but for a season.

9 Now I rejoice, not that you were made sorry, but that you sorrowed to repentance: for you were made sorry after a godly manner, that you might receive damage by us in nothing.

10 For godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death. [2Sam 12:13](#); [Matt 26:75](#); [Luke 18:13](#);

11 For behold this selfsame thing, that you sorrowed after a godly sort, what carefulness it wrought in you, yes, *what* clearing of yourselves, yes, *what* indignation, yes, *what* fear, yes, *what* vehement desire, yes, *what* zeal, yes, *what* revenge! In all *things* you have approved yourselves to be clear in this matter.

12 Wherefore, though I wrote unto you, *I did it* not for his cause that had done the wrong, nor for his cause that suffered wrong, but that our care for you in the sight of Elohim might appear unto you.

and of their loving-kindness and obedience toward Titus, answerable to his former boastings of them

13 Therefore we were comforted in your comfort: yes, and exceedingly the more joyed we for the joy of Titus, because his spirit was refreshed by you all.

14 For if I have boasted any thing to him of you, I am not ashamed; but as we spoke all things to you in truth, even so our boasting, which *I made* before Titus, is found a truth. [\[Titus 1:4\]](#);

15 And his inward affection is more abundant toward you, whilst he remembereth the obedience of you all, how with fear and trembling you received him.

16 I rejoice therefore that I have confidence in you in all *things*.

He stirs them up to a liberal contribution for the poor saints at Jerusalem, by the example of the Macedonians

1 Moreover, brethren, we do you to wit of the grace of Elohim bestowed on the churches of Macedonia; [\[Gal 2:10\];](#)

2 How that in a great trial of affliction the abundance of their joy and their deep poverty abounded unto the riches of their liberality.

3 For to *their* power, I bear record, yes, and beyond *their* power *they were* willing of themselves;

4 Praying us with much intreaty that we would receive the gift, and *take upon us* the fellowship of the ministering to the saints. [Acts 11:29; Rom 15:26; 1Cor 16:2; 2Cor 9:1;](#)

5 And *this they did*, not as we hoped, but first gave their own selves to the Lord, and unto us by the will of Elohim.

6 Insomuch that we desired Titus, that as he had begun, so he would also finish in you the same grace also. [\[Titus 1:4\];](#)

by commendation of their former forwardness

7 Therefore, as you abound in every *thing*, *in* faith, and utterance, and knowledge, and *in* all diligence, and *in* your love to us, *see* that you abound in this grace also.

8 I speak not by commandment, but by occasion of the forwardness of others, and to prove the sincerity of your love.

by the example of the Messiah

9 For you know the grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, that, though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that you through his poverty might be rich. [Luke 9:58;](#)

10 And herein I give *my* advice: for this is expedient for you, who have begun before, not only to do, but also to be forward a year ago.

11 Now therefore perform the doing *of it*; that as *there was* a readiness to will, so *there may be* a performance also out of that which you have. [\[1Pet 4:10\];](#)

12 For if there be first a willing mind, *it is* accepted according to that a man has, *and* not according to that he has not. [Matt 12:43; Luke 21:3; Prov 3:28; 1Pet 4:10; \[Mark 12:43\];](#)

13 For *I mean* not that other men be eased, and you burdened:

and by the spiritual profit that shall redound to themselves thereby

14 But by an equality, *that* now at this time your abundance *may be a supply* for their want, that their abundance also may be *a supply* for your want: that there may be equality:

15 As it is written, **He that *had gathered much had nothing over; and he that *had gathered little had no lack.**** [Exod 16:18;](#)

commending to them the integrity and willingness of Titus, and those other brethren, who upon his request, exhortation, and commendation, were purposely come to them for this business

16 But thanks *be* to Elohim, which put the same earnest care into the heart of Titus for you. [\[Titus 1:4\];](#)

17 For indeed he accepted the exhortation; but being more forward, of his own accord he went unto you.

18 And we have sent with him the brother, whose praise *is* in the gospel throughout all the churches;

19 And not *that* only, but who was also chosen of the churches to travel with us with this grace, which is administered by us to the glory of the same Lord, and *declaration of* your ready mind:

20 Avoiding this, that no man should blame us in this abundance which is administered by us:

21 Providing for honest things, not only in the sight of the Lord, but also in the sight of men. [Rom 12:17](#); [\[1Pet 2:12\]](#);

22 And we have sent with them our brother, whom we have oftentimes proved diligent in many things, but now much more diligent, upon the great confidence which *I have* in you. [\[2Cor 2:3\]](#); [\[Gal 5:10\]](#);

23 Whether *any do enquire* of Titus, *he is* my partner and fellowhelper concerning you: or our brethren *be enquired of, they are* the messengers of the churches, *and* the glory of the Messiah.

24 Wherefore show you to them, and before the churches, the proof of your love, and of our boasting on your behalf.

He yields the reason why, though he knew their forwardness, yet he sent Titus and his brethren beforehand

1 For as touching the ministering to the saints, it is superfluous for me to write to you: [Acts 11:29](#); [Rom 15:26](#); [1Cor 16:2](#); [2Cor 8:4](#); [[Gal 2:10](#)];

2 For I know the forwardness of your mind, for which I boast of you to them of Macedonia, that Achaia was ready a year ago; and your zeal has provoked very many.

3 Yet have I sent the brethren, lest our boasting of you should be in vain in this behalf; that, as I said, you may be ready:

4 Lest haply if they of Macedonia come with me, and find you unprepared, we (that we say not, you) should be ashamed in this same confident boasting.

5 Therefore I thought it necessary to exhort the brethren, that they would go before unto you, and make up beforehand your bounty, whereof you had notice before, that the same might be ready, as *a matter of bounty*, and not as *of covetousness*.

And he proceeds in stirring them up to a bountiful alms, as being but a kind of sowing of seed

6 But this *I say*, He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully. [Prov 11:24](#); [Gal 6:7](#); [[Prov 22:9](#)]; [[Matt 25:40](#)];

7 Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, *so let him give*; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for Elohim loveth a cheerful giver. [Deut 15:7](#); [Rom 12:8](#); [Exod 25:2](#); [Exod 35:5](#);

8 And Elohim *is* able to make all grace abound toward you; that you, always having all sufficiency in all *things*, may abound to every good work:

9 (As it is written, **He has dispersed abroad; he has given to the poor: his righteousness remaineth for ever.** [Ps 112:9](#); [[Prov 11:25](#)];

which shall return a great increase to them

10 Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for *your* food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness;) [[Ecd 11:2](#)];

11 Being enriched in every thing to all bountifulness, which causeth through us thanksgiving to Elohim.

12 For the administration of this service not only supplies the want of the saints, but is abundant also by many thanksgivings unto Elohim;

and occasion a great sacrifice of thanksgivings unto Elohim

13 Whiles by the experiment of this ministration they glorify Elohim for your professed subjection unto the gospel of the Messiah, and for *your* liberal distribution unto them, and unto all *men*; [[Deut 18:1](#)];

14 And by their prayer for you, which long after you for the exceeding grace of Elohim in you.

15 Thanks *be* unto Elohim for his unspeakable gift.

Against the false apostles, who disgraced the weakness of his person and bodily presence, he shows the spiritual might and authority with which he was armed against all adverse powers

1 Now I Paul myself beseech you by the meekness and gentleness of the Messiah, who in presence *am* base among you, but being absent *am* bold toward you:

2 But I beseech *you*, that I may not be bold when I am present with that confidence, wherewith I think to be bold against some, which think of us as if we walked according to the flesh.

3 For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh:

4 (For the weapons of our warfare *are* not carnal, but mighty through Elohim to the pulling down of strong holds;) [Eph 6:13](#); [Jer 1:10](#); [\[1Cor 9:7\]](#);

5 Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of Elohim, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of the Messiah;

6 And having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience, when your obedience is fulfilled.

assuring them that at his coming he will be found as mighty in word as he is now in writing, being absent

7 Do you look on things after the outward appearance? If any man trust to himself that he is the Messiah's, let him of himself think this again, that, as he *is* the Messiah's, even so *are* we the Messiah's.

8 For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord has given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed: [2Cor 13:10](#); [\[2Cor 3:1\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:12\]](#);

9 That I may not seem as if I would terrify you by letters.

10 For *his* letters, say they, *are* weighty and powerful; but *his* bodily presence *is* weak, and *his* speech contemptible. [\[1Cor 2:3\]](#);

11 Let such an one think this, that, such as we are in word by letters when we are absent, such *will we be* also in deed when we are present.

and withal taxing them for reaching out themselves beyond their compass, and vaunting themselves of other men's labours

12 For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves: but they measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise. [2Cor 3:1](#); [2Cor 5:12](#);

13 But we will not boast of things without *our* measure, but according to the measure of the rule which Elohim has distributed to us, a measure to reach even unto you. [Eph 4:7](#); [\[Rom 12:5\]](#); [\[1Cor 12:11\]](#); [\[2Cor 11:18\]](#);

14 For we stretch not ourselves beyond *our measure*, as though we reached not unto you: for we are come as far as to you also in *preaching* the gospel of the Messiah:

15 Not boasting of things without *our* measure, *that is*, of other men's labours; but having hope, when your faith is increased, that we shall be enlarged by you according to our rule abundantly,

16 To preach the gospel in the *regions* beyond you, *and* not to boast in another man's line of things made ready to our hand.

17 But he that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord. [Isa 65:16](#); [Jer 9:23](#); [1Cor 1:31](#);

18 For not he that commendeth himself is approved, but whom the Lord commendeth. [Prov 27:2](#);

Out of his jealousy over the Corinthians, who seemed to make more account of the false apostles than of him, he enters into a forced commendation of himself

- 1** Would to Elohim you could bear with me a little in *my* folly: and indeed bear with me.
- 2** For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have betrothed you to one husband, that I may present *you as* a chaste virgin to the Messiah. [Lev 21:13](#); [\[Num 25:11\]](#); [\[Matt 9:15\]](#); [\[Mark 2:19\]](#); [\[Luke 5:34\]](#); [\[Rev 14:4\]](#);
- 3** But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in the Messiah. [Gen 3:4](#); [John 8:44](#);
- 4** For if he that cometh preacheth another Yahushua, whom we have not preached, or *if* you receive another spirit, which you have not received, or another gospel, which you have not accepted, you might well bear with *him*. [Gal 1:8](#);

of his equality with the chief apostles

- 5** For I suppose I was not a whit behind the very chiefest apostles.
- 6** But though *I be* rude in speech, yet not in knowledge; but we have been thoroughly made manifest among you in all things.

of his preaching the gospel to them freely, and without any charge to them

- 7** Have I committed an offence in abasing myself that you might be exalted, because I have preached to you the gospel of Elohim freely? [1Cor 9:12](#);
- 8** I robbed other churches, taking wages *of them*, to do you service.
- 9** And when I was present with you, and wanted, I was chargeable to no man: for that which was lacking to me the brethren which came from Macedonia supplied: and in all *things* I have kept myself from being burdensome unto you, and *so* will I keep *myself*. [Acts 20:33](#); [2Cor 12:13](#); [1Thess 2:9](#); [2Thess 3:8](#); [Phil 4:15](#); [\[Acts 18:3\]](#); [\[1Cor 9:12\]](#); [\[Phil 4:10\]](#);
- 10** As the truth of the Messiah is in me, no man shall stop me of this boasting in the regions of Achaia.
- 11** Wherefore? because I love you not? Elohim knoweth.
- 12** But what I do, that I will do, that I may cut off occasion from them which desire occasion; that wherein they glory, they may be found even as we. [\[Gal 4:17\]](#);

shewing that he was not inferior to those deceitful workers in any legal prerogative

- 13** For such *are* false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves as apostles of the Messiah.
- 14** And no marvel; for Satan disguises himself as an angel of light.
- 15** Therefore *it is* no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.
- 16** I say again, Let no man think me a fool; if otherwise, yet as a fool receive me, that I may boast myself a little.
- 17** That which I speak, I speak *it* not after the Lord, but as it were foolishly, in this confidence of boasting.
- 18** Seeing that many glory after the flesh, I will glory also. [2Cor 10:13](#); [2Cor 12:5-6](#);
- 19** For you suffer fools gladly, seeing you *yourselves* are wise.
- 20** For you suffer, if a man bring you into bondage, if a man devour *you*, if a man take *of you*, if a man exalt himself, if a man smite you on the face.

21 I speak as concerning reproach, as though we had been weak. Howbeit whereinsoever any is bold, (I speak foolishly,) I am bold also. [Phil 3:4](#);

22 Are they Hebrews? so *am* I. Are they Israelites? so *am* I. Are they the seed of Abraham? so *am* I. [Acts 22:3](#); [\[Rom 11:1\]](#); [\[Phil 3:5\]](#);

and in the service of the Messiah, and in all kinds of sufferings for his ministry, far superior

23 Are they ministers of the Messiah? (I speak as a fool) I *am* more; in labours more abundant, in stripes above measure, in prisons more frequent, in deaths oft. [1Cor 15:10](#); [Acts 9:16](#); [Acts 21:11](#); [2Cor 6:4](#);

24 Of the Jews five times received I forty *stripes* save one. [Deut 25:3](#);

25 Thrice was I beaten with rods, once was I stoned, thrice I suffered shipwreck, a night and a day I have been in the deep; [Acts 16:22](#); [Acts 14:19](#); [Acts 27:9](#); [Acts 27:41](#); [\[Acts 27:2\]](#);

26 *In* journeyings often, *in* perils of waters, *in* perils of robbers, *in* perils by *mine own* countrymen, *in* perils by the heathen, *in* perils in the city, *in* perils in the wilderness, *in* perils in the sea, *in* perils among false brethren;

27 In weariness and painfulness, in watchings often, in hunger and thirst, in fastings often, in cold and nakedness. [\[Phil 4:12\]](#);

28 Beside those things that are without, that which cometh upon me daily, the care of all the churches. [Acts 20:18](#);

29 Who is weak, and I am not weak? who is offended, and I burn not? [1Cor 8:13](#);

30 If I must needs glory, I will glory of the things which concern mine infirmities.

31 The Elohim and Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, which is blessed for evermore, knoweth that I lie not. [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [\[1Tim 5:21\]](#); [\[2Tim 4:1\]](#);

32 In Damascus the governor under Aretas the king kept the city of the Damascenes with a garrison, desirous to apprehend me: [Acts 9:24](#);

33 And through a window in a basket was I let down by the wall, and escaped his hands.

For commending of his apostleship, though he might glory of his wonderful revelations

- 1** It is not expedient for me doubtless to glory. I will come to visions and revelations of the Lord.
- 2** I knew a man in the Messiah above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: Elohim knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven. [Acts 9:3](#); [Acts 22:17](#); [1Cor 15:8](#); [\[Acts 22:6\]](#); [\[1Cor 9:1\]](#);
- 3** And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: Elohim knoweth;)
- 4** How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.
- 5** Of such an one will I glory: yet of myself I will not glory, but in mine infirmities. [\[2Cor 11:18\]](#);
- 6** For though I would desire to glory, I shall not be a fool; for I will say the truth: but *now* I forbear, lest any man should think of me above that which he seeth me *to be*, or *that* he heareth of me.
- 7** And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. [Job 2:6](#);
- 8** For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me.

yet he rather chooses to glory of his infirmities

- 9** And he said unto me, My grace is sufficient for you: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of the Messiah may rest upon me.
- 10** Therefore I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for the Messiah's sake: for when I am weak, then am I strong.

blaming them for forcing him to this vain boasting

- 11** I am become a fool in glorying; you have compelled me: for I ought to have been commended of you: for in nothing am I behind the very chieftest apostles, though I be nothing. [1Cor 15:10](#);
- 12** Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds. [1Cor 9:2](#);
- 13** For what is it wherein you were inferior to other churches, except *it be* that I myself was not burdensome to you? forgive me this wrong. [1Cor 9:12](#); [2Cor 11:9](#); [\[Acts 18:3\]](#); [\[Acts 20:33\]](#); [\[1Thess 2:9\]](#); [\[2Thess 3:8\]](#);

He promises to come to them again; but yet altogether in the affection of a father

- 14** Behold, the third time I am ready to come to you; and I will not be burdensome to you: for I seek not yours, but you: for the children ought not to lay up for the parents, but the parents for the children. [Acts 20:33](#);
- 15** And I will very gladly spend and be spent for you; though the more abundantly I love you, the less I be loved. [2Cor 6:12](#);
- 16** But be it so, I did not burden you: nevertheless, being crafty, I caught you with guile.
- 17** Did I make a gain of you by any of them whom I sent unto you?
- 18** I desired Titus, and with *him* I sent a brother. Did Titus make a gain of you? walked we not in the same spirit? *walked we* not in the same steps?
- 19** Again, think you that we excuse ourselves unto you? we speak before Elohim in the Messiah: but *we* *do* all things, dearly beloved, for your edifying.

although he fears he shall to his grief find many offenders, and public disorders there

20 For I fear, lest, when I come, I shall not find you such as I would, and *that* I shall be found unto you such as you would not: lest *there be* debates, envyings, wraths, strifes, backbitings, whisperings, swellings, tumults: [\[Gal 5:15\]](#);

21 *And* lest, when I come again, my Elohim will humble me among you, and *that* I shall bewail many which have sinned already, and have not repented of the uncleanness and fornication and lasciviousness which they have committed.

He threatens severity, and the power of his apostleship, against obstinate sinners

1 This *is* the third *time* I am coming to you. **In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established.** [Num 35:30](#); [Deut 17:6](#); [Deut 19:5](#); [Matt 18:16](#); [John 8:17](#); [Heb 10:28](#); [[Deut 19:15](#)];

2 I told you before, and foretell you, as if I were present, the second time; and being absent now I write to them which heretofore have sinned, and to all other, that, if I come again, I will not spare:

3 Since you seek a proof of the Messiah speaking in me, which to you-ward is not weak, but is mighty in you.

4 For though he was crucified through weakness, yet he liveth by the power of Elohim. For we also are weak in him, but we shall live with him by the power of Elohim toward you.

And, advising them to a trial of their faith

5 Examine yourselves, whether you be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know you not your own selves, how that Yahushua the Messiah is in you, except you be reprobates? [1Cor 11:28](#);

6 But I trust that you shall know that we are not reprobates.

and to a reformation of their sins before his coming

7 Now I pray to Elohim that you do no evil; not that we should appear approved, but that you should do that which is honest, though we be as reprobates.

8 For we can do nothing against the truth, but for the truth.

9 For we are glad, when we are weak, and you are strong: and this also we wish, *even* your perfection.

10 Therefore I write these things being absent, lest being present I should use sharpness, according to the power which the Lord has given me to edification, and not to destruction. [2Cor 10:8](#);

he concludes his epistle with a general exhortation and a prayer

11 Finally, brethren, farewell. Be perfect, be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace; and the Elohim of love and peace shall be with you. [Rom 12:16](#); [Rom 15:5](#); [1Cor 1:10](#); [Phil 2:2](#); [1Pet 3:8](#); [Rom 12:18](#); [Heb 12:14](#); [[2Thess 3:16](#)];

12 Greet one another with a holy kiss. [Rom 16:16](#); [1Cor 16:20](#); [1Thess 5:26](#); [1Pet 5:14](#);

13 All the saints salute you.

14 The grace of the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, and the love of Elohim, and the communion of the Holy Spirit, *be* with you all. Amen.

Galatians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#)

GALATIANS ONE

He wonders that they have so soon left him and the gospel

1 Paul, an apostle, (not of men, neither by man, but by Yahushua the Messiah, and Elohim the Father, who raised him from the dead;) [Titus 1:4](#); [\[Acts 20:24\]](#); [\[Titus 1:3\]](#);

2 And all the brethren which are with me, unto the churches of Galatia:

3 Grace *be* to you and peace from Elohim the Father, and *from* our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, [Rom 1:7](#); [1Cor 1:3](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [\[Col 1:2\]](#); [\[1Tim 1:2\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:2\]](#);

4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of Elohim and our Father: [Matt 20:28](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [Titus 2:14](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [\[Eph 5:25\]](#);

5 To whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

6 I marvel that you are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of the Messiah unto another gospel:

7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of the Messiah. [Acts 15:1](#);

and accurses those that preach any other gospel than he did

8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. [2Cor 11:4](#); [\[1Kgs 13:18\]](#);

9 As we said before, so say I now again, If any *man* preach any other gospel unto you than that you have received, let him be accursed.

10 For do I now persuade men, or Elohim? or do I seek to please men? for if I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of the Messiah. [1Thess 2:4](#); [Jas 4:4](#); [\[John 15:19\]](#); [\[1John 2:15\]](#);

He learned the gospel not of men, but of Elohim

11 But I certify you, brethren, that the gospel which was preached of me is not after man. [1Cor 15:1](#); [\[Eph 3:3\]](#);

12 For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught *it*, but by the revelation of Yahushua the Messiah. [Eph 3:3](#);

13 For you have heard of my conduct in time past in the Jews' religion, how that beyond measure I persecuted the church of Elohim, and wasted it: [Acts 8:3](#); [Acts 9:1](#); [Acts 22:4](#); [Acts 26:9](#); [Phil 3:6](#); [1Tim 1:13](#); [\[Acts 9:13\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:9\]](#);

and shows what he was before his calling

14 And profited in the Jews' religion above many my equals in mine own nation, being more exceedingly zealous of the traditions of my fathers.

15 But when it pleased Elohim, who separated me from my mother's womb, and called *me* by his grace, [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [\[Jer 1:5\]](#); [\[Acts 22:21\]](#); [\[Rom 1:1\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:11\]](#);

16 To reveal his Son in me, that I might preach him among the heathen; immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood: [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [Matt 16:17](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:7\]](#);

and what he did immediately after it

17 Neither went I up to Jerusalem to them which were apostles before me; but I went into Arabia, and returned again unto Damascus.

18 Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to see Peter, and abode with him fifteen days.

19 But other of the apostles saw I none, save James the Lord's brother.

20 Now the things which I write unto you, behold, before Elohim, I lie not. [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [1Tim 5:21](#); [2Tim 4:1](#); [[Phil 1:8](#)];

21 Afterwards I came into the regions of Syria and Cilicia;

22 And was unknown by face unto the churches of Judaea which were in the Messiah:

23 But they had heard only, That he which persecuted us in times past now preacheth the faith which once he destroyed.

24 And they glorified Elohim in me. [[1Sam 10:12](#)];

GALATIANS TWO

He shows when he went up again to Jerusalem, and for what purpose

1 Then fourteen years after I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, and took Titus with *me* also. [Acts 15:2](#); [\[Acts 19:21\]](#);

2 And I went up by revelation, and shared with them that gospel which I preach among the Gentiles, but privately to them which were of reputation, lest by any means I should run, or had run, in vain. [Acts 19:21](#); [\[1Cor 9:24\]](#);

and that Titus was not circumcised

3 But neither Titus, who was with me, being a Greek, was compelled to be circumcised: [Acts 16:3](#); [1Cor 9:21](#); [\[Titus 1:4\]](#);

4 And that because of false brethren unawares brought in, who came in privily to spy out our liberty which we have in Yahushua the Messiah, that they might bring us into bondage: [Acts 15:24](#);

5 To whom we gave place by subjection, no, not for a hour; that the truth of the gospel might continue with you.

6 But of these who seemed to be somewhat, (whatsoever they were, it maketh no matter to me: Elohim accepteth no man's person:) for they who seemed *to be somewhat* in conference added nothing to me: [Deut 10:17](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 34:19](#); [Acts 10:34](#); [Rom 2:11](#); [Eph 6:9](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#);

7 But contrariwise, when they saw that the gospel of the uncircumcision was committed unto me, as *the gospel* of the circumcision *was* unto Peter;

8 (For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles:) [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Gal 1:16](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:7\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:11\]](#);

9 And when James, Cephas, and John, who seemed to be pillars, perceived the grace that was given unto me, they gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship; that we *should go* unto the heathen, and they unto the circumcision.

10 Only *they would* that we should remember the poor; the same which I also was forward to do. [Acts 11:30](#); [Acts 24:17](#); [Rom 15:25](#); [1Cor 16:1](#); [2Cor 8:1](#); [2Cor 9:1](#);

and that he resisted Peter, and told him the reason

11 But when Peter was come to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be blamed.

12 For before that certain came from James, he did eat with the Gentiles: but when they were come, he withdrew and separated himself, fearing them which were of the circumcision.

13 And the other Jews dissembled likewise with him; insomuch that Barnabas also was carried away with their hypocrisy.

why he and others, being Jews, do believe in the Messiah to be justified by faith, and not by works

14 But when I saw that they walked not uprightly according to the truth of the gospel, I said unto Peter before *them* all, If you, being a Jew, livest after the manner of Gentiles, and not as do the Jews, why compellest you the Gentiles to live as do the Jews? [Acts 10:28](#);

15 We *who are* Jews by nature, and not sinners of the Gentiles,

16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Yahushua the Messiah, even we have believed in Yahushua the Messiah, that we might be justified by the faith of the Messiah, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified. [Acts 13:38](#); [Rom 3:28](#); [Rom 8:3](#); [Heb 7:18](#); [Rom 3:20](#); [Gal 3:11](#); [\[Acts 13:39\]](#); [\[Titus 3:5\]](#); [\[Heb 7:19\]](#);

17 But if, while we seek to be justified by the Messiah, we ourselves also are found sinners, *is* therefore the Messiah the minister of sin? Certainly not.

18 For if I build again the things which I destroyed, I make myself a transgressor.

19 For I through the law am dead to the law, that I might live unto Elohim. [Rom 7:4](#); [Rom 14:7](#); [2Cor 5:15](#); [1Thess 5:10](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [1Pet 4:2](#);

and that they live not in sin, who are so justified

20 I am crucified with the Messiah: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but the Messiah liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of Elohim, who loved me, and gave himself for me. [Gal 1:4](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [Titus 2:14](#); [[Rom 6:6](#)]; [[Rom 6:13](#)]; [[Rom 14:7](#)]; [[1Cor 1:9](#)]; [[2Cor 5:15](#)]; [[Gal 5:24](#)]; [[1Thess 5:10](#)]; [[Heb 9:14](#)]; [[1Pet 4:2](#)];

21 I do not frustrate the grace of Elohim: for if righteousness *come* by the law, then the Messiah is dead in vain. [Heb 7:11](#);

GALATIANS THREE

He asks what moved them to leave the faith, and hang upon the law

- 1** O foolish Galatians, who has bewitched you, that you should not obey the truth, before whose eyes Yahushua the Messiah has been evidently set forth, crucified among you? [Gal 5:7](#);
- 2** This only would I learn of you, Received you the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?
- 3** Are you so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are you now made perfect by the flesh?
- 4** Have you suffered so many things in vain? if *it be* yet in vain. [\[Ps 143:2\]](#);
- 5** He therefore that ministereth to you the Spirit, and worketh miracles among you, *doeth he it* by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith?

They that believe are justified

- 6** Even as Abraham believed Elohim, and it was counted to him for righteousness. [Gen 15:6](#); [Rom 4:3](#); [Jas 2:23](#);
- 7** Know you therefore that they which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham.
- 8** And the scripture, foreseeing that Elohim would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel unto Abraham, *saying*, **In you shall all nations be blessed.** [Gen 12:3](#); [Gen 18:18](#); [Gen 22:18](#); [Gen 26:4](#); [Gen 49:10](#); [Acts 3:25](#); [\[Gal 3:16\]](#);

and blessed with Abraham

- 9** So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham.

And this he shows by many reasons

- 10** For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, **Cursed *is* every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.** [Deut 27:26](#); [\[Jer 11:3\]](#); [\[Jas 2:10\]](#);
- 11** But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of Elohim, *it is* evident: for, **The just shall live by faith.** [Rom 3:20](#); [Gal 2:16](#); [Hab 2:4](#); [Rom 1:17](#); [Heb 10:38](#);
- 12** And the law is not of faith: but, **The man that doeth them shall live in them.** [Lev 18:5](#); [Ezek 20:11](#); [Rom 10:5](#); [\[Neh 9:29\]](#);
- 13** the Messiah has redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, **Cursed *is* every one that hangeth on a tree:** [Rom 8:3](#); [2Cor 5:21](#); [Deut 21:23](#); [\[1Cor 6:20\]](#);
- 14** That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Yahushua the Messiah; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.
- 15** Brethren, I speak after the manner of men; though *it be* but a man's covenant, yet *if it be* confirmed, no man disannulleth, or addeth thereto. [Heb 9:17](#);
- 16** Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is the Messiah. [Gal 3:8](#);
- 17** And this I say, *that* the covenant, that was confirmed before of Elohim in the Messiah, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect. [Gen 15:13](#); [Exod 12:40](#); [Acts 7:6](#);
- 18** For if the inheritance *be* of the law, *it is* no more of promise: but Elohim gave *it* to Abraham by promise. [Rom 4:14](#);
- 19** Wherefore then *serveth* the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; *and it was* ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator. [John 15:22](#); [Rom 4:15](#); [Rom 5:20](#); [Rom 7:8](#); [Acts 7:38](#); [Acts 7:53](#); [Deut 5:5](#); [John 1:17](#); [\[1Tim 2:5\]](#); [\[Heb 2:2\]](#);
- 20** Now a mediator is not *a mediator* of one, but Elohim is one.
- 21** *Is* the law then against the promises of Elohim? Certainly not: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.

22 But the scripture has concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Yahushua the Messiah might be given to them that believe. [Rom 3:9](#); [Rom 11:32](#);

23 But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.

24 Wherefore the law was our guardian until the Messiah, that we might be justified by faith. [Matt 5:17](#); [Acts 13:38](#); [Rom 10:4](#);

25 But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster.

26 For you are all the children of Elohim by faith in Yahushua the Messiah. [Isa 56:5](#); [John 1:12](#); [Rom 8:15](#); [Gal 4:5](#); [\[2Pet 1:4\]](#); [\[1John 3:2\]](#);

27 For as many of you as have been baptized into the Messiah have put on the Messiah. [Rom 6:3](#); [\[Rom 13:14\]](#); [\[Col 2:12\]](#);

28 There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free, there is neither male nor female: for you are all one in Yahushua the Messiah. [John 17:21](#); [\[1Cor 12:13\]](#); [\[Col 3:11\]](#);

29 And if you *be* the Messiah's, then are you Abraham's seed, and heirs according to the promise. [Gen 21:12](#); [Rom 9:7](#); [Heb 11:18](#);

We were under the law till the Messiah came, as the heir is under the guardian till he be of age

1 Now I say, *That* the heir, as long as he is a child, differeth nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all;

2 But is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father.

3 Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world:

4 But when the fulness of the time was come, Elohim sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, [Gen 49:10](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Matt 5:17](#); [[Eph 1:10](#)];

But the Messiah freed us from the law

5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. [John 1:12](#); [Gal 3:26](#); [[Rom 8:15](#)];

6 And because you are sons, Elohim has sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. [Rom 8:15](#); [[1John 3:2](#)]; [[1John 5:10](#)];

therefore we are servants no longer to it

7 Wherefore you are no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then a heir of Elohim through the Messiah.

8 Howbeit then, when you knew not Elohim, you did service unto them which by nature are no gods. [1Cor 8:4](#);

9 But now, after that you have known Elohim, or rather are known of Elohim, how turn you again to the weak and beggarly elements, whereunto you desire again to be in bondage? [Col 2:20](#);

10 You observe days, and months, and times, and years. [Rom 14:5](#); [Col 2:16](#);

11 I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.

12 Brethren, I beseech you, be as I *am*; for I *am* as you *are*: you have not injured me at all.

13 you know how through infirmity of the flesh I preached the gospel unto you at the first.

He remembers their good will to him, and his to them

14 And my temptation which was in my flesh you despised not, nor rejected; but received me as an angel of Elohim, *even* as Yahushua the Messiah. [Mal 2:7](#); [Matt 10:40](#); [John 13:20](#);

15 Where is then the blessedness you spoke of? for I bear you record, that, if *it had been* possible, you would have plucked out your own eyes, and have given them to me.

16 Am I therefore become your enemy, because I tell you the truth?

17 They zealously affect you, *but* not well; yes, they would exclude you, that you might affect them. [Rom 10:2](#); [2Cor 11:12](#);

18 But *it is* good to be zealously affected always in *a* good *thing*, and not only when I am present with you.

19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until the Messiah be formed in you, [1Cor 4:15](#); [Phlm 1:10](#); [Jas 1:18](#);

20 I desire to be present with you now, and to change my voice; for I stand in doubt of you.

21 Tell me, you that desire to be under the law, do you not hear the law?

and shows that we are the sons of Abraham by the freewoman

22 For it is written, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a freewoman. [Gen 16:2](#); [Gen 16:15](#); [Gen 21:2](#); [Acts 7:8](#); [Heb 11:11](#);

23 But he *who was* of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman *was* by promise. [John 8:39](#); [Rom 9:7](#); [[Gen 21:2](#)];

24 Which things are an allegory: for these are the two covenants; the one from the mount Sinai, which gendereth to bondage, which is Agar.

25 For this Agar is mount Sinai in Arabia, and answereth to Jerusalem which now is, and is in bondage with her children.

26 But Jerusalem which is above is free, which is the mother of us all. [Rev 21:2](#); [[Heb 12:22](#)];

27 For it is written, **Rejoice, you barren that bearest not; break forth and cry, you that travailest not: for the desolate has many more children than she which has a husband.** [Isa 54:1](#);

28 Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are the children of promise. [Rom 9:7-8](#); [[Rom 9:8](#)];

29 But as then he that was born after the flesh persecuted him *that was born* after the Spirit, even so *it is* now. [Gen 21:9](#);

30 Nevertheless what saith the scripture? **Cast out the bondwoman and her son: for the son of the bondwoman shall not be heir with the son of the freewoman.** [Gen 21:10](#);

31 So then, brethren, we are not children of the bondwoman, but of the free.

He wills them to stand in their liberty

1 Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith the Messiah has made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage. [John 8:32](#); [Rom 6:18](#); [1Pet 2:16](#); [Isa 9:4](#); [[Rom 8:2](#)];

2 Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if you be circumcised, the Messiah shall profit you nothing. [Acts 15:1](#);

and not to observe circumcision

3 For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law.

4 the Messiah is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; you are fallen from grace.

5 For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith.

6 For in Yahushua the Messiah neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; but faith which worketh by love. [Matt 12:50](#); [John 15:14](#); [1Cor 7:19](#); [2Cor 5:17](#); [Gal 6:15](#); [Col 3:11](#); [1Thess 1:3](#); [[2Cor 5:16](#)];

7 You did run well; who did hinder you that you should not obey the truth? [Gal 3:1](#); [[1Cor 9:24](#)];

8 This persuasion *cometh* not of him that calleth you.

9 A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump. [1Cor 5:6](#);

10 I have confidence in you through the Lord, that you will be none otherwise minded: but he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be. [2Cor 2:3](#); [2Cor 8:22](#);

11 And I, brethren, if I yet preach circumcision, why do I yet suffer persecution? then is the offence of the stake ceased. [1Cor 1:23](#);

12 I would they were even cut off which trouble you. [Josh 7:25](#); [[Heb 12:15](#)];

but rather love, which is the sum of the law

13 For, brethren, you have been called unto liberty; only *use* not liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another. [1Cor 8:9](#); [1Pet 2:16](#); [Jude 1:4](#);

14 For all the law is fulfilled in one word, *even* in this; you **shall love thy neighbour as thyself**. [Rom 13:8](#); [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [Mark 12:31](#); [Jas 2:8](#); [[Matt 19:19](#)]; [[Luke 10:27](#)]; [[Rom 13:9](#)]; [[1Tim 1:5](#)];

15 But if you bite and devour one another, take heed that you be not consumed one of another. [2Cor 12:20](#);

16 *This* I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and you shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh. [Rom 13:14](#); [1Pet 2:11](#);

17 For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would. [Rom 7:15](#); [[Matt 26:41](#)]; [[Mark 14:38](#)]; [[Rom 7:23](#)];

18 But if you be led of the Spirit, you are not under the law. [[Rom 8:14](#)];

He reckons up the works of the flesh

19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, [1Cor 3:3](#); [Jas 3:14](#); [[1Cor 6:10](#)]; [[Eph 5:5](#)]; [[Col 3:6](#)]; [[1Tim 5:24](#)];

20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, [[Jas 3:16](#)];

21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of Elohim. [1Cor 6:10](#); [Eph 5:5](#); [Col 3:6](#); [Rev 22:15](#); [[1John 3:15](#)];

and the fruits of the Spirit

22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, [Eph 5:9](#);

23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. [1Tim 1:9](#);

24 And they that are the Messiah's have crucified the flesh with its passions and lusts. [Rom 6:6](#); [Rom 13:14](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [1Pet 2:11](#);

and exhorts to walk in the Spirit

25 If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.

26 Let us not be desirous of vain glory, provoking one another, envying one another.

He moves them to deal mildly with a brother that has slipped

1 Brethren, if a man be overtaken in a fault, you which are spiritual, restore such an one in the spirit of meekness; considering thyself, lest you also be tempted. [Rom 14:1](#); [Rom 15:1](#); [1Cor 9:22](#); [[John 13:14](#)]; [[2Tim 2:25](#)];

and to bear one another's burden

2 Bear you one another's burdens, and so fulfil the law of the Messiah. [Matt 11:29](#); [John 13:14](#); [Rom 15:1](#); [1Thess 5:14](#);

3 For if a man think himself to be something, when he is nothing, he deceiveth himself.

4 But let every man prove his own work, and then shall he have rejoicing in himself alone, and not in another.

5 For every man shall bear his own burden. [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [1Cor 3:8](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [Rev 22:12](#); [[Rev 20:12](#)];

to be liberal to their teachers

6 Let him that is taught in the word share with him that teacheth in all good things. [Rom 15:27](#); [1Cor 9:11](#); [[Phil 2:29](#)]; [[1Thess 5:12](#)]; [[1Tim 5:17](#)];

7 Be not deceived; Elohim is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. [1Cor 6:10](#); [Luke 16:25](#); [[Job 4:8](#)]; [[2Cor 9:6](#)];

8 For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.

and not weary of well-doing

9 And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not. [2Thess 3:13](#);

10 As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all *men*, especially unto them who are of the household of faith. [1Tim 5:8](#); [[Eph 2:19](#)];

11 You see how large a letter I have written unto you with mine own hand.

He shows what they intend that preach circumcision

12 As many as desire to make a fair show in the flesh, they constrain you to be circumcised; only lest they should suffer persecution for the stake of the Messiah.

13 For neither they themselves who are circumcised keep the law; but desire to have you circumcised, that they may glory in your flesh.

He glories in nothing, save in the stake of the Messiah

14 But may it never be that I should glory, save in the stake of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world.

15 For in Yahushua the Messiah neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision, but a new creation. [Matt 12:50](#); [John 15:14](#); [2Cor 5:16](#); [Gal 5:6](#); [Col 3:11](#);

16 And as many as walk according to this rule, peace *be* on them, and mercy, and upon the Israel of Elohim. [Ps 125:5](#); [[Phil 3:16](#)];

17 From henceforth let no man trouble me: for I bear in my body the marks of the Lord Yahushua. [2Cor 4:10](#);

18 Brethren, the grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with your spirit. Amen.

Ephesians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#)

EPHESIANS ONE

After the salutation

1 Paul, an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah by the will of Elohim, to the saints which are at Ephesus, and to the faithful in Yahushua the Messiah: [Rom 1:7](#); [1Cor 1:2](#); [2Cor 1:1](#);

2 Grace *be* to you, and peace, from Elohim our Father, and *from* the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Gal 1:3](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [\[1Cor 1:3\]](#); [\[2Cor 1:2\]](#); [\[Col 1:2\]](#); [\[1Thess 1:1\]](#); [\[Titus 1:4\]](#);

and thanksgiving for the Ephesians

3 Blessed *be* the Elohim and Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, who has blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly *places* in the Messiah: [2Cor 1:3](#); [1Pet 1:3](#); [\[2Tim 1:9\]](#);

he treats of our election

4 According as he has chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: [John 15:16](#); [1Tim 1:9](#); [Luke 1:75](#); [Eph 5:27](#); [Col 1:22](#); [2Tim 1:9](#); [Titus 2:12](#); [\[Eph 2:10\]](#); [\[Titus 3:5\]](#);

5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Yahushua the Messiah to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

and adoption by grace

6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he has made us accepted in the beloved. [Matt 3:17](#); [\[Isa 42:1\]](#);

7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace; [Acts 20:28](#); [Col 1:14](#); [Heb 9:12](#); [1Pet 1:18](#); [\[Matt 20:28\]](#); [\[Mark 10:45\]](#); [\[1Tim 2:6\]](#); [\[Rev 5:9\]](#);

8 Wherein he has abounded toward us in all wisdom and prudence;

9 Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he has purposed in himself: [Rom 16:25](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:26](#); [2Tim 1:9](#); [Titus 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:20](#); [\[Col 1:25\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:10\]](#);

10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in the Messiah, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; *even* in him: [Gen 49:10](#); [Dan 9:24](#); [Gal 4:4](#);

which is the true and proper fountain of man's salvation

11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will: [Rom 8:17](#);

12 That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in the Messiah.

And because the height of this mystery cannot be easily attained unto

13 In whom you also *trusted*, after that you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that you believed, you were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, [Rom 8:15](#); [2Cor 1:22](#); [2Cor 5:5](#); [Eph 4:30](#); [\[Rom 8:16\]](#);

14 Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory. [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 7:6](#); [Deut 14:2](#); [Deut 26:18](#); [Rom 8:23](#); [1Pet 2:9](#); [\[Eph 4:30\]](#);

15 Wherefore I also, after I heard of your faith in the Lord Yahushua, and love unto all the saints, [Phil 1:3](#); [Col 1:3](#); [1Thess 1:2](#); [2Thess 1:3](#); [\[Col 1:9\]](#);

he prays that they may come to the full knowledge and possession thereof in the Messiah

16 Cease not to give thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers; [\[1Thess 1:2\]](#);

- 17** That the Elohim of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him:
- 18** The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that you may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints,
- 19** And what *is* the exceeding greatness of his power to us-ward who believe, according to the working of his mighty power, [Col 2:12](#); [\[Eph 2:8\]](#); [\[Eph 3:7\]](#);
- 20** Which he wrought in the Messiah, when he raised him from the dead, and set *him* at his own right hand in the heavenly *places*, [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Col 3:1](#); [Heb 1:3](#); [Heb 10:12](#); [1Pet 3:22](#); [\[Heb 1:13\]](#); [\[Heb 8:1\]](#);
- 21** Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:
- 22** And has put all *things* under his feet, and gave him *to be* the head over all *things* to the church, [Ps 8:6](#); [Matt 28:18](#); [1Cor 15:27](#); [Heb 2:8](#); [\[Eph 5:23\]](#); [\[Col 1:18\]](#);
- 23** Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all. [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#); [Eph 4:16](#); [Eph 5:23](#); [\[Rom 12:4\]](#); [\[Eph 4:12\]](#);

By comparing what we were by nature, with what we are by grace

- 1** And you *has he quickened*, who were dead in trespasses and sins; [Rom 5:6](#); [Col 2:13](#); [[John 5:25](#)]; [[Col 3:7](#)]; [[Titus 3:3](#)];
- 2** Wherein in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: [1Cor 6:11](#); [Col 3:7](#); [Titus 3:3](#); [John 12:31](#); [John 14:30](#); [John 16:11](#); [Eph 6:12](#); [[2Thess 2:9](#)];
- 3** Among whom also we all had our conduct in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. [[Job 14:4](#)];
- 4** But Elohim, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, [[Col 1:13](#)]; [[Titus 3:5](#)];
- 5** Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with the Messiah, (by grace you are saved;) [Rom 6:8](#); [Rom 8:11](#); [Col 3:1](#); [Col 3:3](#); [Acts 15:11](#); [Titus 3:5](#); [[John 5:25](#)];
- 6** And has raised *us* up together, and made *us* sit together in heavenly *places* in Yahushua the Messiah:
- 7** That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in *his* kindness toward us through Yahushua the Messiah.
- 8** For by grace are you saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of Elohim: [Matt 16:17](#); [Eph 1:19](#); [[Acts 15:11](#)];
- 9** Not of works, lest any man should boast. [Rom 3:27](#); [Col 1:29](#); [[Titus 3:5](#)];

he declares that we are made for good works: and being brought near by the Messiah, should not live as Gentiles and foreigners, as in time past, but as citizens with the saints, and the family of Elohim

- 10** For we are his workmanship, created in Yahushua the Messiah unto good works, which Elohim has before ordained that we should walk in them. [2Cor 5:17](#); [Eph 1:4](#); [Eph 4:24](#); [Titus 2:14](#); [[Heb 3:4](#)];
- 11** Wherefore remember, that you *being* in time past Gentiles in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands;
- 12** That at that time you were without the Messiah, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without Elohim in the world: [Rom 9:4](#); [[Luke 15:20](#)];
- 13** But now in Yahushua the Messiah you who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of the Messiah. [[John 16:33](#)]; [[Acts 2:39](#)]; [[Rom 5:1](#)]; [[Heb 10:19](#)];
- 14** For he is our peace, who has made both one, and has broken down the middle wall of partition *between us*; [Isa 9:6](#); [Mic 5:5](#); [John 16:33](#); [Acts 10:36](#); [Rom 5:1](#); [Col 1:20](#); [[Hos 1:11](#)]; [[Luke 19:38](#)]; [[John 11:52](#)];
- 15** Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, *even* the law of commandments *contained* in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, *so* making peace;
- 16** And that he might reconcile both unto Elohim in one body by the stake, having slain the enmity thereby:
- 17** And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh. [Isa 57:19](#); [Eph 3:12](#); [[Luke 2:14](#)]; [[Luke 15:20](#)];
- 18** For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. [John 10:9](#); [John 14:6](#); [Rom 5:2](#); [Eph 3:12](#); [Heb 10:19](#);
- 19** Now therefore you are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of Elohim; [Gal 6:10](#);
- 20** And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Yahushua the Messiah himself being the chief corner *stone*; [1Cor 3:9-10](#); [Isa 28:16](#); [Matt 16:18](#); [1Cor 3:10](#); [Rev 21:14](#); [1Pet 2:4](#); [[Ps 118:22](#)]; [[1Cor 3:9](#)]; [[1Cor 12:28](#)];
- 21** In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto a holy temple in the Lord: [Eph 4:16](#); [1Cor 6:19](#); [2Cor 6:16](#);
- 22** In whom you also are built together for a habitation of Elohim through the Spirit.

The hidden mystery that the Gentiles should be saved was made known to Paul by revelation

1 For this cause I Paul, the prisoner of Yahushua the Messiah for you Gentiles, [Acts 21:33](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [Phil 1:7](#); [Phil 1:13-14](#); [Phil 1:16](#); [Col 4:3](#); [2Tim 1:8](#); [Phlm 1:1](#); [[2Tim 2:9](#)];

2 If you have heard of the dispensation of the grace of Elohim which is given me to you-ward: [Rom 1:5](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [Acts 13:2](#);

3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote before in few words, [Acts 22:17](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Acts 26:16-17](#); [Gal 1:11-12](#); [Rom 14:24](#); [[Gal 1:12](#)];

4 Whereby, when you read, you may understand my knowledge in the mystery of the Messiah)

5 Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; [Acts 10:28](#); [[1Tim 3:16](#)];

6 That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in the Messiah by the gospel: [[Acts 10:28](#)];

7 Whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of Elohim given unto me by the effectual working of his power. [Eph 1:19](#); [Col 2:12](#);

and to him was that grace given, that he should preach it

8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of the Messiah; [1Cor 15:9](#); [1Tim 1:15](#); [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Gal 1:16](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [1Tim 2:7](#); [2Tim 1:11](#); [[Rom 11:13](#)]; [[Eph 3:2](#)];

9 And to make all *men* see what *is* the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world has been hid in Elohim, who created all things by Yahushua the Messiah: [Rom 16:25](#); [Eph 1:9](#); [Col 1:26](#); [2Tim 1:10](#); [Titus 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:20](#); [Gen 1:3](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [John 1:3](#); [Col 1:16](#); [Heb 1:2](#); [[Col 1:25](#)]; [[Heb 11:3](#)];

10 To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly *places* might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of Elohim, [1Pet 1:12](#); [[Ps 103:21](#)];

11 According to the eternal purpose which he purposed in Yahushua the Messiah our Lord:

12 In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him. [John 10:9](#); [John 14:6](#); [Rom 5:2](#); [Eph 2:18](#); [Heb 10:19](#); [[Eph 2:17](#)];

He desires them not to faint for his tribulation

13 Wherefore I desire that you faint not at my tribulations for you, which is your glory. [Phil 1:14](#); [1Thess 3:3](#); [Col 1:24](#); [[2Tim 2:9](#)];

and prays that they may perceive the great love of the Messiah toward them

14 For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah,

15 Of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named,

16 That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; [Eph 6:10](#); [[Rom 7:22](#)];

17 That the Messiah may dwell in your hearts by faith; that you, being rooted and grounded in love, [Col 2:7](#);

18 May be able to comprehend with all saints what *is* the breadth, and length, and depth, and height;

19 And to know the love of the Messiah, which passeth knowledge, that you might be filled with all the fulness of Elohim.

20 Now unto him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us, [Rom 16:25](#); [[1Kgs 3:13](#)];

21 Unto him *be* glory in the church by Yahushua the Messiah throughout all ages, world without end. Amen.

EPHESIANS FOUR

He exhorts to unity

- 1** I therefore, the prisoner of the Lord, beseech you that you walk worthy of the vocation wherewith you are called, [Gen 17:1](#); [1Cor 7:20](#); [Phil 1:27](#); [Col 1:10](#); [1Thess 2:12](#); [\[Eph 3:1\]](#); [\[Phil 1:7\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:8\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:9\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:1\]](#);
- 2** With all lowliness and meekness, with longsuffering, forbearing one another in love; [Col 1:11](#); [Col 3:12](#); [1Thess 5:14](#); [\[Rom 12:10\]](#);
- 3** Endeavouring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. [\[Col 3:14\]](#); [\[Heb 13:1\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:22\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:17\]](#);
- 4** *There is* one body, and one Spirit, even as you are called in one hope of your calling;
- 5** One Lord, one faith, one baptism, [Deut 4:39](#); [Mal 2:10](#); [1Cor 8:4](#); [1Cor 8:6](#);
- 6** One Elohim and Father of all, who *is* above all, and through all, and in you all. [\[1Cor 8:4\]](#); [\[1Cor 8:6\]](#);

and declares that Elohim therefore gives various gifts unto men

- 7** But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of the Messiah. [Rom 12:6](#); [1Cor 12:11](#); [2Cor 10:13](#); [1Pet 4:10](#); [\[John 3:34\]](#); [\[Rom 12:3\]](#);
- 8** Wherefore he saith, **When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.** [Ps 68:18](#); [\[John 6:62\]](#);
- 9** (Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth? [John 3:13](#); [John 6:62](#);
- 10** He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.)

that his church might be edified

- 11** And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; [1Cor 12:28](#); [\[Jer 3:15\]](#);
- 12** For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of the Messiah: [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#); [Eph 1:23](#); [Eph 5:23](#); [Col 1:24](#);
- 13** Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of Elohim, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of the Messiah:
- 14** That we *henceforth* be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, *and* cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive; [1Cor 14:20](#); [Matt 11:7](#); [\[Heb 13:9\]](#);
- 15** But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, *even* the Messiah: [Eph 5:23](#); [Col 1:18](#);

and grow up in the Messiah

- 16** From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplies, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love. [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#); [Eph 2:21](#); [\[Rom 12:4\]](#); [\[1Cor 12:12\]](#); [\[Eph 1:23\]](#);
- 17** This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that you henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, in the vanity of their mind, [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 1:18](#); [1Pet 4:3](#);

He calls them from the impurity of the Gentiles

- 18** Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of Elohim through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: [1Thess 4:5](#);
- 19** Who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness.
- 20** But you have not so learned the Messiah;
- 21** If so be that you have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Yahushua:

22 That you put off concerning the former conduct the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; [Col 3:9](#); [Heb 12:1](#); [1Pet 2:1](#); [[Col 3:5](#)]; [[Col 3:8](#)];

23 And be renewed in the spirit of your mind; [[Rom 6:4](#)]; [[1Pet 2:1](#)];

to put on the new man

24 And that you put on the new man, which after Elohim is created in righteousness and true holiness. [Rom 6:4](#); [Col 3:10](#); [1Pet 4:2](#); [[Gen 1:27](#)]; [[Eph 2:10](#)];

to cast off lying

25 Wherefore putting away lying, **speaking every man truth with his neighbour:** for we are members one of another. [Zech 8:16](#); [[Col 3:9](#)];

26 Be you angry, and sin not: let not the sun go down upon your wrath: [Ps 4:4](#); [[Matt 5:25](#)];

27 Neither give place to the devil. [Jas 4:7](#); [1Pet 5:9](#);

28 Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with *his* hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth. [Acts 20:35](#); [1Thess 4:11](#); [2Thess 3:8](#); [2Thess 3:12](#);

and corrupt communication

29 Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers. [Matt 12:36](#); [Eph 5:3-4](#); [[Eph 5:3](#)];

30 And distress not the holy Spirit of Elohim, whereby you are sealed unto the day of redemption. [Rom 8:16](#); [2Cor 1:22](#); [2Cor 5:5](#); [Eph 1:13](#); [Luke 21:28](#); [Rom 8:23](#); [Eph 1:14](#);

31 Let all bitterness, and wrath, and anger, and clamour, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice: [Col 3:19](#);

32 And be you kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as Elohim for the Messiah's sake has forgiven you. [Phil 2:1](#); [Col 3:12](#); [Matt 6:14](#); [Mark 11:25](#); [Col 3:13](#);

After general exhortations to love

- 1** Be you therefore followers of Elohim, as dear children;
2 And walk in love, as the Messiah also has loved us, and has given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to Elohim for a sweetsmelling savour. [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [1John 3:23](#); [1John 4:21](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [Titus 2:14](#); [1Pet 3:18](#); [Heb 8:3](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [[Matt 22:39](#)]; [[John 15:13](#)]; [[Gal 1:4](#)]; [[Eph 5:25](#)]; [[Col 3:14](#)]; [[Jas 2:8](#)]; [[1John 3:16](#)]; [[2John 1:5](#)];

to flee fornication

- 3** But fornication, and all uncleanness, or covetousness, let it not be once named among you, as becometh saints; [Mark 7:21](#); [Eph 4:29](#); [Col 3:5](#); [[Josh 23:7](#)]; [[Heb 12:16](#)];

and all uncleanness

- 4** Neither filthiness, nor foolish talking, nor jesting, which are not convenient: but rather giving of thanks. [[Matt 12:36](#)];
5 For this you know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, has any inheritance in the kingdom of the Messiah and of Elohim. [1Cor 6:10](#); [Gal 5:19](#); [Col 3:5](#); [Rev 22:15](#); [[Rom 13:13](#)]; [[Gal 5:21](#)]; [[Col 3:6](#)];
6 Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of Elohim upon the children of disobedience. [Jer 29:4](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Mark 13:5](#); [Luke 21:8](#); [Col 2:4](#); [Col 2:18](#); [2Thess 2:3](#); [1John 4:1](#); [[Matt 7:15](#)]; [[2Thess 2:2](#)]; [[Heb 13:9](#)];

not to converse with the wicked

- 7** Be not you therefore partakers with them.
8 For you were sometimes darkness, but now *are you* light in the Lord: walk as children of light: [1Thess 5:4](#); [[Luke 16:8](#)]; [[John 3:21](#)]; [[John 12:35](#)]; [[1Thess 5:5](#)]; [[Jas 3:13](#)];
9 (For the fruit of the Spirit *is* in all goodness and righteousness and truth;) [Gal 5:22](#);
10 Proving what is acceptable unto the Lord.
11 And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove *them*. [Matt 18:17](#); [1Cor 5:8](#); [1Cor 10:20](#); [2Cor 6:14](#); [2Thess 3:14](#); [[Ps 1:1](#)]; [[1Cor 5:9](#)];
12 For it is a shame even to speak of those things which are done of them in secret.
13 But all things that are reprov'd are made manifest by the light: for whatsoever makes manifest is light. [John 3:20-21](#); [[John 3:21](#)];
14 Wherefore he saith, **Awake you that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and the Messiah shall give you light.** [Rom 13:11](#); [1Thess 5:6](#); [[Isa 9:2](#)];

to walk warily

- 15** See then that you walk circumspectly, not as fools, but as wise, [Col 4:5](#);
16 Redeeming the time, because the days are evil. [Rom 13:11](#); [[Col 4:5](#)];
17 Wherefore be you not unwise, but understanding what the will of the Lord *is*. [Rom 12:2](#); [1Thess 4:3](#);

and to be filled with the Spirit

- 18** And be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit; [Prov 23:29](#); [Isa 5:11](#); [Isa 5:22](#); [Luke 21:34](#); [[Prov 23:20](#)]; [[Titus 1:7](#)];
19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord; [Col 3:16](#); [[1Cor 14:15](#)]; [[Jas 5:13](#)];
20 Giving thanks always for all things unto Elohim and the Father in the name of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah; [Col 3:17](#); [1Thess 5:18](#);
21 Submitting yourselves one to another in the fear of Elohim.

he descends to the particular duties, how wives ought to obey their husbands

22 Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. [Gen 3:16](#); [1Cor 14:34](#); [Col 3:18](#); [Titus 2:5](#); [1Pet 3:1](#);

23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as the Messiah is the head of the church: and he is the saviour of the body. [1Cor 11:3](#); [Eph 1:22](#); [Eph 4:15](#); [Col 1:18](#); [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#); [Eph 1:23](#); [Eph 4:12](#); [Col 1:24](#); [[Rom 12:4](#)];

24 Therefore as the church is subject unto the Messiah, so *let* the wives *be* to their own husbands in every thing. [[1Tim 2:12](#)];

and husbands ought to love their wives

25 Husbands, love your wives, even as the Messiah also loved the church, and gave himself for it; [Col 3:19](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [Gal 1:4](#); [[1Pet 3:7](#)];

26 That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, [Titus 3:5](#); [1Pet 3:21](#);

27 That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish. [Col 1:22](#); [[Eph 1:4](#)]; [[1Thess 4:3](#)]; [[Rev 14:5](#)];

28 So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself. [[Gen 2:24](#)];

29 For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church:

30 For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#); [[Gen 2:23](#)];

31 **For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.** [Gen 2:24](#); [Matt 19:5](#); [Mark 10:7](#); [1Cor 6:16](#);

even as the Messiah does his church

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning the Messiah and the church.

33 Nevertheless let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself; and the wife *see* that she reverence *her* husband.

The duty of children towards their parents

1 Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right. [Col 3:20](#); [\[1Tim 5:4\]](#);

2 Honour thy father and mother; (which is the first commandment with promise;) [Exod 20:12](#); [Deut 5:16](#); [Deut 27:16](#); [Matt 15:4](#); [Mark 7:10](#); [\[Luke 18:20\]](#);

3 That it may be well with you, and you may live long on the earth.

4 And, you fathers, provoke not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord. [Deut 6:7](#); [Deut 6:20](#); [Ps 78:4](#); [Prov 19:8](#); [Prov 29:17](#); [\[Prov 19:18\]](#);

of servants towards their masters

5 Servants, be obedient to them that are *your* masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as unto the Messiah; [Col 3:22](#); [1Tim 6:1](#); [Titus 2:9](#); [1Pet 2:18](#);

6 Not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but as the servants of the Messiah, doing the will of Elohim from the heart;

7 With good will doing service, as to the Lord, and not to men:

8 Knowing that whatsoever good thing any man doeth, the same shall he receive of the Lord, whether *he* *be* bond or free. [\[Job 34:11\]](#); [\[Ps 62:12\]](#);

9 And, you masters, do the same things unto them, forbearing threatening: knowing that your Master also is in heaven; neither is there respect of persons with him. [Col 4:1](#); [Deut 10:17](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 34:19](#); [Acts 10:34](#); [Rom 2:11](#); [Gal 2:6](#); [Col 3:25](#); [1Pet 1:17](#); [\[Lev 25:43\]](#);

Our life is a warfare, not only against flesh and blood, but also spiritual enemies

10 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. [\[Eph 3:16\]](#);

11 Put on the whole armour of Elohim, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. [Col 3:12](#); [1Thess 5:8](#);

12 For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high *places*. [Eph 2:2](#);

The complete armour of a Messiahnic

13 Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of Elohim, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. [2Cor 10:4](#);

14 Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; [Luke 12:35](#); [1Pet 1:13](#); [Isa 59:17](#); [2Cor 6:7](#); [\[Job 29:14\]](#); [\[1Thess 5:8\]](#);

15 And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace;

16 Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith you shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.

17 And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of Elohim: [Isa 59:17](#); [1Thess 5:8](#); [Heb 4:12](#); [Rev 2:16](#); [\[Rev 1:16\]](#);

and how it ought to be used

18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints; [Luke 18:1](#); [Rom 12:12](#); [Col 4:2](#); [1Thess 5:17](#);

19 And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel, [Acts 4:29](#); [2Thess 3:1](#); [\[Col 4:3\]](#);

20 For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak. [2Cor 5:20](#); [Acts 28:20](#);

Tychicus is commended

21 But that you also may know my affairs, *and* how I do, Tychicus, a beloved brother and faithful minister in the Lord, shall make known to you all things: [Col 4:7](#); [Acts 20:4](#); [Titus 3:12](#);

22 Whom I have sent unto you for the same purpose, that you might know our affairs, and *that* he might comfort your hearts. [2Tim 4:12](#);

23 Peace *be* to the brethren, and love with faith, from Elohim the Father and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah.

24 Grace *be* with all them that love our Lord Yahushua the Messiah in sincerity. Amen.

Philippians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#)

PHILIPPIANS ONE

Paul testifies his thankfulness to Elohim, and his love towards them, for the fruits of their faith, and fellowship in his sufferings

- 1** Paul and Timotheus, the servants of Yahushua the Messiah, to all the saints in the Messiah Yahushua which are at Philippi, with the bishops and deacons: [\[2Cor 1:1\];](#)
- 2** Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from Elohim our Father, and *from* the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Rom 1:7; 1Pet 1:2;](#)
- 3** I thank my Elohim upon every remembrance of you, [Eph 1:15; Col 1:3; 1Thess 1:2; 2Thess 1:3;](#)
- 4** Always in every prayer of mine for you all making request with joy,
- 5** For your fellowship in the gospel from the first day until now;
- 6** Being confident of this very thing, that he which has begun a good work in you will perform *it* until the day of Yahushua the Messiah: [John 6:29; 1Thess 1:3;](#)
- 7** Even as it is meet for me to think this of you all, because I have you in my heart; inasmuch as both in my bonds, and in the defence and confirmation of the gospel, you all are partakers of my grace. [Eph 3:1; Eph 4:1; Col 4:3; Col 4:18; 2Tim 1:8; \[2Tim 2:9\];](#)
- 8** For Elohim is my record, how greatly I long after you all in the bowels of Yahushua the Messiah. [Rom 1:9; Rom 9:1; 2Cor 1:23; 2Cor 11:31; Gal 1:20; 1Thess 2:5; 1Tim 5:21; 2Tim 4:1;](#)

daily praying to him for their increase in grace

- 9** And this I pray, that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and *in* all judgment;
- 10** That you may approve things that are excellent; that you may be sincere and without offence till the day of the Messiah;
- 11** Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Yahushua the Messiah, unto the glory and praise of Elohim.

he shows what good the faith of the Messiah had received by his troubles at Rome

- 12** But I would you should understand, brethren, that the things *which happened* unto me have fallen out rather unto the furtherance of the gospel;
- 13** So that my bonds in the Messiah are manifest in all the palace, and in all other *places*; [\[Eph 3:1\];](#)
- 14** And many of the brethren in the Lord, waxing confident by my bonds, are much more bold to speak the word without fear. [Eph 3:13; 1Thess 3:3;](#)
- 15** Some indeed preach the Messiah even of envy and strife; and some also of good will:
- 16** The one preach the Messiah of contention, not sincerely, supposing to add affliction to my bonds: [\[Eph 3:1\];](#)
- 17** But the other of love, knowing that I am set for the defence of the gospel.
- 18** What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, the Messiah is preached; and I therein do rejoice, yes, and will rejoice.
- 19** For I know that this shall turn to my salvation through your prayer, and the supply of the Spirit of Yahushua the Messiah, [2Cor 1:11;](#)
- 20** According to my earnest expectation and *my* hope, that in nothing I shall be ashamed, but *that* with all boldness, as always, *so* now also the Messiah shall be magnified in my body, whether *it be* by life, or by death. [Rom 5:5;](#)

and how ready he is to glorify the Messiah either by his life or death

21 For to me to live *is* the Messiah, and to die *is* gain.

22 But if I live in the flesh, this *is* the fruit of my labour: yet what I shall choose I wot not.

23 For I am in a strait between two, having a desire to depart, and to be with the Messiah; which is far better:

24 Nevertheless to abide in the flesh *is* more needful for you.

25 And having this confidence, I know that I shall abide and continue with you all for your furtherance and joy of faith; [[Phlm 1:22](#)];

26 That your rejoicing may be more abundant in Yahushua the Messiah for me by my coming to you again.

exhorting them to unity

27 Only let your conduct be as it becometh the gospel of the Messiah: that whether I come and see you, or else be absent, I may hear of your affairs, that you stand fast in one spirit, with one mind striving together for the faith of the gospel; [Gen 17:1](#); [1Cor 7:20](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [Col 1:10](#); [1Thess 2:12](#); [1Thess 4:1](#);

and to fortitude in persecution

28 And in nothing terrified by your adversaries: which is to them an evident token of perdition, but to you of salvation, and that of Elohim.

29 For unto you it is given in the behalf of the Messiah, not only to believe on him, but also to suffer for his sake;

30 Having the same conflict which you saw in me, and now hear *to be* in me.

Paul exhorts them to unity, and to all humbleness of mind, by the example of the Messiah's humility and exaltation

- 1** If *there be* therefore any consolation in the Messiah, if any comfort of love, if any fellowship of the Spirit, if any bowels and mercies, [Eph 4:32];
- 2** Fulfil you my joy, that you be likeminded, having the same love, *being* of one accord, of one mind. Rom 12:16; Rom 15:5; 1Cor 1:10; Phil 3:16; 1Pet 3:8; [2Cor 13:11];
- 3** Let nothing *be done* through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves. Rom 12:10; 1Pet 5:5;
- 4** Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others. 1Cor 10:24; 1Cor 13:5; [Exod 23:4];
- 5** Let this mind be in you, which was also in the Messiah Yahushua: Matt 11:29; John 13:15; 1Pet 2:21; 1John 2:6;
- 6** Who, being in the form of Elohim, thought it not robbery to be equal with Elohim: 2Cor 4:4; Col 1:15; Heb 1:3; [Heb 5:8];
- 7** But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: Ps 8:5; Matt 20:28; John 13:14; [Mark 10:45]; [Luke 22:27]; [Luke 24:26]; [Heb 2:9]; [Heb 2:14]; [Heb 2:17]; [Heb 4:15];
- 8** And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the stake. Heb 2:14; Heb 2:17; Heb 4:15; Heb 2:9; Heb 12:2; [Isa 50:5];
- 9** Wherefore Elohim also has highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name: Acts 2:33; Heb 1:4; [Acts 5:31]; [1Pet 1:21];
- 10** That at the name of Yahushua every knee should bow, of *things* in heaven, and *things* in earth, and *things* under the earth; Isa 45:23; Rom 14:11; [Luke 10:22]; [John 17:2]; [Rev 5:3];
- 11** And *that* every tongue should confess that Yahushua the Messiah *is* Lord, to the glory of Elohim the Father. John 13:13; 1Cor 8:6; 1Cor 12:3;

to a careful proceeding in the way of salvation, that they be as lights to the wicked world

- 12** Wherefore, my beloved, as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.
- 13** For it is Elohim which worketh in you both to will and to do of *his* good pleasure. 2Cor 3:5; [Rom 5:6]; [Heb 13:21];
- 14** Do all things without murmurings and disputings: Rom 12:17; 1Pet 2:12; 1Pet 4:9;
- 15** That you may be blameless and harmless, the sons of Elohim, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom you shine as lights in the world; Prov 4:18; Matt 5:14; [1Pet 2:12];

and comforts to him their apostle, who is now ready to be offered up to Elohim

- 16** Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of the Messiah, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain. 2Cor 1:14; 1Thess 2:19; [1Cor 9:24];
- 17** Yes, and if I be offered upon the sacrifice and service of your faith, I joy, and rejoice with you all. 2Cor 7:4; [Col 1:24];
- 18** For the same cause also do you joy, and rejoice with me.

He hopes to send Timothy to them, and Epaphroditus also

- 19** But I trust in the Lord Yahushua to send Timotheus shortly unto you, that I also may be of good comfort, when I know your state. Acts 16:1; Rom 16:21; 1Thess 3:2;
- 20** For I have no man likeminded, who will naturally care for your state.

- 21** For all seek their own, not the things which are Yahushua the Messiah's. [1Cor 10:24](#); [1Cor 13:5](#);
- 22** But you know the proof of him, that, as a son with the father, he has served with me in the gospel.
- 23** Him therefore I hope to send presently, so soon as I shall see how it will go with me.
- 24** But I trust in the Lord that I also myself shall come shortly.
- 25** Yet I supposed it necessary to send to you Epaphroditus, my brother, and companion in labour, and fellowsoldier, but your messenger, and he that ministered to my wants.
- 26** For he longed after you all, and was full of heaviness, because that you had heard that he had been sick.
- 27** For indeed he was sick nigh unto death: but Elohim had mercy on him; and not on him only, but on me also, lest I should have sorrow upon sorrow.
- 28** I sent him therefore the more carefully, that, when you see him again, you may rejoice, and that I may be the less sorrowful.
- 29** Receive him therefore in the Lord with all gladness; and hold such in reputation: [1Cor 9:14](#); [Gal 6:6](#); [1Thess 5:12](#); [1Tim 5:17](#); [Heb 13:17](#);
- 30** Because for the work of the Messiah he was nigh unto death, not regarding his life, to supply your lack of service toward me.

PHILIPPIANS THREE

He warns them to beware of the false teachers of the circumcision

1 Finally, my brethren, rejoice in the Lord. To write the same things to you, to me indeed *is* not grievous, but for you *it is* safe. [Phil 4:4](#); [Jas 1:2](#); [1Pet 4:13](#);

2 Beware of dogs, beware of evil workers, beware of the concision. [Isa 56:10](#); [[Rom 2:29](#)];

3 For we are the circumcision, who worship in the Spirit of Elohim, and rejoice in Yahushua the Messiah, and have no confidence in the flesh. [Deut 10:16](#); [Deut 30:6](#); [Jer 4:4](#); [Rom 2:29](#); [Col 2:11](#); [John 4:24](#);

showing that himself has greater cause than they to trust in the righteousness of the law

4 Though I might also have confidence in the flesh. If any other man thinketh that he has whereof he might trust in the flesh, I more: [2Cor 11:21](#);

5 Circumcised the eighth day, of the stock of Israel, *of* the tribe of Benjamin, an Hebrew of the Hebrews; as touching the law, a Pharisee; [2Cor 11:22](#); [Gen 49:27](#); [Acts 23:6](#); [[Rom 11:1](#)];

6 Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless. [Acts 8:3](#); [Acts 9:1](#); [Acts 22:3-4](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [1Tim 1:13](#);

which notwithstanding he counts as dung and loss, to gain the Messiah and his righteousness

7 But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for the Messiah. [Matt 13:44](#);

8 Yes doubtless, and I count all things *but* loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Yahushua the Messiah my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them *but* dung, that I may win the Messiah, [Isa 53:11](#); [Jer 9:23](#); [John 17:3](#); [Col 2:2](#);

9 And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of the Messiah, the righteousness which is of Elohim by faith: [Rom 1:17](#); [Rom 3:21](#);

10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death; [Rom 8:17](#); [2Cor 4:10](#); [2Tim 2:11-12](#); [1Pet 4:13](#); [[Rom 6:4](#)]; [[Rom 6:6](#)]; [[2Tim 2:12](#)];

11 If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.

therein acknowledging his own imperfection

12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Yahushua the Messiah.

13 Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but *this* one thing *I do*, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,

14 I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of Elohim in Yahushua the Messiah. [1Cor 9:24](#); [2Tim 4:7](#); [[Luke 9:62](#)];

He exhorts them to be thus minded

15 Let us therefore, as many as be perfect, be thus minded: and if in any thing you be otherwise minded, Elohim shall reveal even this unto you.

16 Nevertheless, whereto we have already attained, let us walk by the same rule, let us mind the same thing. [Gal 6:16](#); [Rom 12:16](#); [Rom 15:5](#); [1Cor 1:10](#); [Phil 2:2](#); [1Pet 3:8](#);

and to imitate him

17 Brethren, be followers together of me, and mark them which walk so as you have us for an ensample. [1Cor 4:16](#); [1Cor 11:1](#); [1Thess 1:6](#); [2Thess 3:9](#); [1Pet 5:3](#);

and to decline the ways of carnal Messiahnic

18 (For many walk, of whom I have told you often, and now tell you even weeping, *that they are* the enemies of the stake of the Messiah: [Rom 16:17](#);

19 Whose end *is* destruction, whose Elohim *is their* belly, and *whose* glory *is* in their shame, who mind earthly things.) [[Rom 16:18](#)];

20 For our citizenship is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Yahushua the Messiah: [Heb 13:14](#); [1Cor 1:7](#); [1Thess 1:10](#); [Titus 2:13](#); [[Rom 8:18](#)];

21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself. [1Cor 15:51](#); [Col 3:4](#); [1John 3:2](#);

From particular admonitions

1 Therefore, my brethren dearly beloved and longed for, my joy and crown, so stand fast in the Lord, *my* dearly beloved. [1Thess 2:19](#);

2 I beseech Euodias, and beseech Syntyche, that they be of the same mind in the Lord.

3 And I intreat you also, true yokefellow, help those women which laboured with me in the gospel, with Clement also, and *with* other my fellowlabourers, whose names *are* in the book of life. [Exod 32:32](#); [Ps 69:28](#); [Rev 3:5](#); [Rev 20:12](#); [Rev 21:27](#); [\[Luke 10:20\]](#); [\[Rev 13:8\]](#); [\[Rev 17:8\]](#);

he proceeds to general exhortations

4 Rejoice in the Lord always: *and* again I say, Rejoice. [1Thess 5:6](#); [\[Phil 3:1\]](#); [\[1Thess 5:16\]](#);

5 Let your moderation be known unto all men. The Lord *is* at hand. [1Cor 10:11](#); [Heb 10:25](#); [\[Titus 3:2\]](#);

6 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto Elohim. [Ps 55:22](#); [Matt 6:25](#); [1Tim 6:8](#); [1Tim 6:17](#); [1Pet 5:7](#); [\[Luke 12:22\]](#);

7 And the peace of Elohim, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Yahushua the Messiah. [John 14:27](#); [Rom 5:1](#); [1Cor 2:14](#);

8 Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things *are* honest, whatsoever things *are* just, whatsoever things *are* pure, whatsoever things *are* lovely, whatsoever things *are* of good report; if *there be* any virtue, and if *there be* any praise, think on these things. [Rom 13:13](#); [1Thess 4:3-5](#); [\[1Thess 4:3\]](#); [\[1Thess 5:22\]](#);

9 Those things, which you have both learned, and received, and heard, and seen in me, do: and the Elohim of peace shall be with you. [\[1Thess 5:23\]](#); [\[2Thess 3:16\]](#);

shewing how he rejoiced at their liberality towards him lying in prison, not so much for the supply of his own wants as for the grace of Elohim in them

10 But I rejoiced in the Lord greatly, that now at the last your care of me has flourished again; wherein you were also careful, but you lacked opportunity. [2Cor 11:9](#);

11 Not that I speak in respect of want: for I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, *therewith* to be content. [1Tim 6:6](#); [\[Heb 13:5\]](#);

12 I know both how to be poor, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. [1Cor 4:11](#); [2Cor 11:27](#);

13 I can do all things through the Messiah which strengtheneth me.

14 Notwithstanding you have well done, that you did share with my affliction.

15 Now you Philippians know also, that in the beginning of the gospel, when I departed from Macedonia, no church shared with me as concerning giving and receiving, but you only. [2Cor 11:9](#);

16 For even in Thessalonica you sent once and again unto my necessity.

17 Not because I desire a gift: but I desire fruit that may abound to your account.

18 But I have all, and abound: I am full, having received of Epaphroditus the things *which were sent* from you, an odour of a sweet smell, a sacrifice acceptable, wellpleasing to Elohim. [Heb 13:16](#);

And so he concludes with prayer and salutations

19 But my Elohim shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by Yahushua the Messiah.

20 Now unto Elohim and our Father *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

21 Salute every saint in Yahushua the Messiah. The brethren which are with me greet you.

22 All the saints salute you, chiefly they that are of Caesar's household.

23 The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with you all. Amen.

Colossians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#)

COLOSSIANS ONE

After salutation Paul thanks Elohim for their faith

- 1** Paul, an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah by the will of Elohim, and Timotheus *our* brother, [[Rom 16:21](#)];
2 To the saints and faithful brethren in the Messiah which are at Colosse: Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from Elohim our Father and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Rom 1:7](#); [Gal 1:3](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [[Titus 1:4](#)];
3 We give thanks to Elohim and the Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, praying always for you, [Eph 1:15](#); [Phil 1:3](#); [1Thess 1:2](#); [2Thess 1:3](#);
4 Since we heard of your faith in Yahushua the Messiah, and of the love *which you have* to all the saints,
5 For the hope which is laid up for you in heaven, whereof you heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel; [1Pet 1:4](#);
6 Which is come unto you, as *it is* in all the world; and bringeth forth fruit, and is growing, as *it does* also in you, since the day you heard *of it*, and knew the grace of Elohim in truth: [Mark 4:8](#); [John 15:16](#);

confirms the doctrine of Epaphras

- 7** As you also learned of Epaphras our dear fellowservant, who is for you a faithful minister of the Messiah; [Col 4:12](#); [Phlm 1:23](#);
8 Who also declared unto us your love in the Spirit.

prays further for their increase in grace

- 9** For this cause we also, since the day we heard *it*, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that you might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding; [Eph 1:15](#); [1Cor 1:5](#);
10 That you might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of Elohim; [Gen 17:1](#); [1Cor 7:20](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [Phil 1:27](#); [1Thess 2:12](#); [John 15:16](#);
11 Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness; [[Eph 4:2](#)];
12 Giving thanks unto the Father, which has made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light:
13 Who has delivered us from the power of darkness, and has translated *us* into the kingdom of his dear Son: [Eph 2:4](#); [1Thess 2:12](#); [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [2Pet 1:17](#); [[Matt 12:18](#)]; [[Mark 1:11](#)]; [[Mark 9:7](#)]; [[Luke 3:22](#)]; [[Luke 9:35](#)];

describes the true Messiah

- 14** In whom we have redemption, *even* the forgiveness of sins: [Acts 20:28](#); [Eph 1:7](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [1Pet 1:19](#); [[Mark 10:45](#)]; [[1Tim 2:6](#)]; [[Heb 9:12](#)]; [[Rev 5:9](#)];
15 Who is the image of the invisible Elohim, the firstborn over all creation: [2Cor 4:4](#); [Phil 2:6](#); [Heb 1:3](#); [Rev 3:14](#);
16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether *they be* thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him: [Gen 1:3](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [John 1:3](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Heb 1:2](#); [[Ps 103:21](#)]; [[Heb 11:3](#)];
17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.
18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all *things* he might have the preeminence. [Eph 1:22](#); [Eph 4:15](#); [Eph 5:23](#); [1Cor 15:20](#); [Rev 1:5](#); [[Rom 8:29](#)];
19 For it pleased *the Father* that in him should all fulness dwell; [John 1:14](#); [John 1:16](#); [Col 2:9](#); [[1John 4:10](#)];
20 And, having made peace through the blood of his stake, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, *I say*, whether *they be* things in earth, or things in heaven. [2Cor 5:18](#); [1John 4:10](#); [Isa 9:7](#); [John 16:33](#); [Acts 10:36](#); [Rom 5:1](#); [Eph 2:14](#); [[Rom 3:25](#)]; [[2Cor 5:19](#)]; [[1John 2:2](#)];

encourages them to receive Yahushua the Messiah, and commends his own ministry

21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in *your* mind by wicked works, yet now has he reconciled

22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unreproveable in his sight: [Luke 1:75](#); [Eph 1:4](#); [Eph 5:27](#); [2Tim 1:9](#); [Titus 2:12](#);

23 If you continue in the faith grounded and settled, and *be* not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which you have heard, *and* which was preached to every creature which is under heaven; whereof I Paul am made a minister; [John 15:6](#);

24 Who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up that which is behind of the afflictions of the Messiah in my flesh for his body's sake, which is the church: [2Cor 7:4](#); [Eph 3:13](#); [Phil 2:17](#); [2Tim 2:10](#); [Rom 12:5](#); [1Cor 12:27](#); [Eph 4:12](#); [Eph 5:23](#); [[Rom 12:4](#)]; [[2Tim 2:9](#)];

25 Whereof I am made a minister, according to the dispensation of Elohim which is given to me for you, to fulfil the word of Elohim; [Rom 14:24](#); [Eph 1:9](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [2Tim 1:10](#); [Titus 1:4](#); [1Pet 1:20](#); [[1Cor 4:1](#)];

26 *Even* the mystery which has been hid from ages and from generations, but now is made manifest to his saints: [Matt 13:11](#); [[Rom 16:25](#)]; [[Eph 1:9](#)]; [[Eph 3:9](#)]; [[2Tim 1:10](#)]; [[Titus 1:2](#)]; [[1Pet 1:20](#)];

27 To whom Elohim would make known what *is* the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is the Messiah in you, the hope of glory: [2Cor 2:14](#); [1Tim 1:1](#);

28 Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Yahushua the Messiah:

29 Whereunto I also labour, striving according to his working, which worketh in me mightily. [\[Eph 2:9\]](#);

Paul still exhorts them to be constant in the Messiah

- 1** For I would that you knew what great conflict I have for you, and *for* them at Laodicea, and *for* as many as have not seen my face in the flesh;
- 2** That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of Elohim, and of the Father, and of the Messiah; [Isa 53:11](#); [Jer 9:23](#); [John 17:3](#); [Phil 3:8](#); [[Col 3:14](#)];
- 3** In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. [1Cor 1:24](#);

- 4** And this I say, lest any man should beguile you with enticing words. [Col 2:18](#); [Eph 5:6](#);
- 5** For though I be absent in the flesh, yet am I with you in the spirit, joying and beholding your order, and the steadfastness of your faith in the Messiah. [1Cor 5:3](#); [1Cor 14:40](#);
- 6** As you have therefore received Yahushua the Messiah the Lord, *so* walk you in him:
- 7** Rooted and built up in him, and established in the faith, as you have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving. [Eph 3:17](#); [1Cor 1:5](#); [[1Cor 3:9](#)];

to beware of philosophy, and vain traditions

- 8** Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after the Messiah. [Rom 16:17](#); [Heb 13:9](#); [[Matt 7:15](#)];
- 9** For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily. [John 1:14](#); [Col 1:19](#);
- 10** And you are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power: [John 1:16](#);
- 11** In whom also you are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of the Messiah: [Deut 10:16](#); [Jer 4:4](#); [Rom 2:29](#); [Phil 3:3](#);
- 12** Buried with him in baptism, wherein also you are risen with *him* through the faith of the operation of Elohim, who has raised him from the dead. [Rom 6:4](#); [Gal 3:27](#); [Eph 1:19](#); [Eph 3:7](#);
- 13** And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, has he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses; [Eph 2:1](#); [[Rom 8:11](#)];
- 14** Blotting out the certificate of debt that was against us, expressed in ordinances opposed to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to the stake;
- 15** *And* having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a show of them openly, triumphing over them in it. [Gen 3:15](#); [Matt 12:29](#); [Luke 11:22](#); [John 12:31](#); [John 16:11](#); [[Mark 3:27](#)];
- 16** Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of a holy day, or of the new moon, or of the Sabbath *days*: [Lev 11:2](#); [Rom 14:2](#); [Gal 4:10](#); [Lev 23:2](#); [[Rom 14:3](#)]; [[Rom 14:5](#)]; [[Heb 13:9](#)];
- 17** Which are a shadow of things to come; but *let* the body of the Messiah. [Heb 8:5](#); [Heb 10:1](#);

worshipping of angels

- 18** Let no man cheat you of your reward in a false humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he has not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind, [Jer 29:8](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [2Thess 2:3](#); [1John 4:1](#); [[Matt 15:9](#)]; [[Mark 7:7](#)]; [[Luke 21:8](#)]; [[Col 2:4](#)]; [[2Thess 2:2](#)];
- 19** And not holding the Head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increaseth with the increase of Elohim.

and legal ceremonies, which are ended in the Messiah

- 20** Wherefore if you be dead with the Messiah from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are you subject to ordinances, [Gal 4:9](#); [[Matt 15:9](#)]; [[Mark 7:7](#)];
- 21** (Touch not; taste not; handle not;
- 22** Which all are to perish with the using;) after the commandments and doctrines of men? [Isa 29:13](#); [Matt 15:9](#); [Titus 1:14](#);

23 Which things have indeed a show of wisdom in will worship, and humility, and neglecting of the body; not in any honour to the satisfying of the flesh. [1Tim 4:8](#); [1Tim 5:23](#);

COLOSSIANS THREE

He shows where we should seek the Messiah

- 1** If you then be risen with the Messiah, seek those things which are above, where the Messiah sitteth on the right hand of Elohim. [Eph 1:20](#); [\[Rom 6:5\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:25\]](#); [\[Eph 2:5\]](#); [\[Heb 8:1\]](#); [\[Heb 10:12\]](#);
- 2** Set your mind on things above, not on things on the earth.
- 3** For you are dead, and your life is hid with the Messiah in Elohim. [Rom 6:2](#); [Rom 8:24](#); [2Cor 5:7](#); [\[Eph 2:5\]](#);
- 4** When the Messiah, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall you also appear with him in glory. [Phil 3:21](#); [1John 3:2](#); [\[2Cor 4:11\]](#);

He exhorts to mortification

- 5** Mortify therefore your members which are upon the earth; fornication, uncleanness, inordinate affection, evil concupiscence, and covetousness, which is idolatry: [Eph 4:22](#); [Eph 5:3](#); [1Thess 4:5](#); [Eph 5:5](#); [\[Heb 12:16\]](#); [\[Rev 22:15\]](#);
- 6** For which things' sake the wrath of Elohim cometh on the children of disobedience: [1Cor 6:10](#); [Gal 5:19](#); [Eph 5:5](#); [Rev 22:15](#); [\[Gal 5:21\]](#);
- 7** In the which you also walked some time, when you lived in them. [1Cor 6:11](#); [Eph 2:1](#); [Titus 3:3](#); [\[Eph 2:2\]](#);
- 8** But now you also put off all these; anger, wrath, malice, blasphemy, filthy communication out of your mouth. [Eph 4:22](#); [Heb 12:1](#); [Jas 1:21](#); [1Pet 2:1](#); [\[Rom 13:12\]](#);
- 9** Lie not one to another, seeing that you have put off the old man with his deeds; [Eph 4:25](#); [\[Eph 4:22\]](#);

to put off the old man, and put on the Messiah

- 10** And have put on the new *man*, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him: [Rom 6:4](#); [Gen 1:26](#); [Gen 5:1](#); [Gen 9:6](#); [1Cor 11:7](#); [\[Gen 1:27\]](#); [\[Eph 4:24\]](#);
- 11** Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond *nor* free: but the Messiah *is* all, and in all. [Gal 3:28](#); [Gal 5:6](#); [Gal 6:15](#); [1Cor 7:21-22](#); [1Cor 12:13](#); [\[Matt 12:50\]](#); [\[John 15:14\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:16\]](#);

exhorting to love, humility, and other several duties

- 12** Put on therefore, as the elect of Elohim, holy and beloved, bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering; [Eph 4:32](#); [Eph 6:11](#); [1Thess 1:4](#); [\[Eph 4:2\]](#);
- 13** Forbearing one another, and forgiving one another, if any man have a quarrel against any: even as the Messiah forgave you, so also *do* you. [Matt 6:14](#); [Mark 11:25](#); [Eph 4:32](#); [\[Matt 18:22\]](#);
- 14** And above all these things *put on* love, which is the bond of perfectness. [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [1John 3:23](#); [1John 4:21](#); [Eph 4:3](#); [Col 2:2](#);
- 15** And let the peace of Elohim rule in your hearts, to the which also you are called in one body; and be you thankful.
- 16** Let the word of the Messiah dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord. [Eph 5:19](#); [\[1Cor 14:15\]](#); [\[Jas 5:13\]](#);
- 17** And whatsoever you do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Yahushua, giving thanks to Elohim and the Father by him. [Eph 5:20](#); [1Thess 5:18](#); [\[1Cor 10:31\]](#);
- 18** Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as it is fit in the Lord. [Gen 3:16](#); [1Cor 14:34](#); [Eph 5:22](#); [Titus 2:5](#); [1Pet 3:1](#);
- 19** Husbands, love *your* wives, and be not bitter against them. [Eph 5:25](#); [\[Eph 4:31\]](#); [\[1Pet 3:7\]](#);
- 20** Children, obey *your* parents in all things: for this is well pleasing unto the Lord. [Eph 6:1](#); [\[Luke 18:20\]](#);
- 21** Fathers, provoke not your children *to anger*, lest they be discouraged.

22 Servants, obey in all things *your* masters according to the flesh; not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but in singleness of heart, fearing Elohim: [Eph 6:5](#); [1Tim 6:1](#); [Titus 2:9](#); [1Pet 2:18](#);

23 And whatsoever you do, do *it* heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men;

24 Knowing that of the Lord you shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for you serve the Lord the Messiah.

25 But he that doeth wrong shall receive for the wrong which he has done: and there is no respect of persons. [\[Deut 10:17\]](#); [\[2Chr 19:7\]](#); [\[Job 34:11\]](#); [\[Job 34:19\]](#); [\[Ps 62:12\]](#); [\[Acts 10:34\]](#); [\[Rom 2:11\]](#); [\[Gal 2:6\]](#); [\[Eph 6:9\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:17\]](#);

COLOSSIANS FOUR

He exhorts them to be fervent in prayer

- 1** Masters, give unto *your* servants that which is just and equal; knowing that you also have a Master in heaven. [Eph 6:9](#); [\[Lev 25:43\]](#);
- 2** Continue in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving; [Luke 18:1](#); [Rom 12:12](#); [Eph 6:18](#); [1Thess 5:17](#);
- 3** Withal praying also for us, that Elohim would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of the Messiah, for which I am also in bonds: [Eph 6:19](#); [2Thess 3:1](#); [\[Eph 3:1\]](#); [\[Phil 1:7\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:9\]](#);
- 4** That I may make it manifest, as I ought to speak.

to walk wisely toward them that are not yet come to the true knowledge of the Messiah

- 5** Walk in wisdom toward them that are without, redeeming the time. [Eph 5:15](#); [Eph 5:16](#);
- 6** Let your speech *be* always with grace, seasoned with salt, that you may know how you ought to answer every man. [Mark 9:50](#); [\[Song 4:3\]](#);
- 7** All my state shall Tychicus declare unto you, *who is* a beloved brother, and a faithful minister and fellowservant in the Lord: [Acts 20:4](#); [Eph 6:21](#); [2Tim 4:12](#);
- 8** Whom I have sent unto you for the same purpose, that he might know your estate, and comfort your hearts;
- 9** With Onesimus, a faithful and beloved brother, who is *one* of you. They shall make known unto you all things which *are done* here. [Phlm 1:10](#);

He salutes them, and wishes them all prosperity

- 10** Aristarchus my fellowprisoner saluteth you, and Marcus, sister's son to Barnabas, (touching whom you received commandments: if he come unto you, receive him;) [Acts 27:2](#); [Acts 15:37](#); [2Tim 4:11](#); [\[Acts 19:29\]](#); [\[Acts 20:4\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);
- 11** And Yahushua, which is called Justus, who are of the circumcision. These only *are my* fellowworkers unto the kingdom of Elohim, which have been a comfort unto me.
- 12** Epaphras, who is *one* of you, a servant of the Messiah, saluteth you, always labouring fervently for you in prayers, that you may stand perfect and complete in all the will of Elohim. [Col 1:7](#); [Phlm 1:23](#);
- 13** For I bear him record, that he has a great zeal for you, and them *that are* in Laodicea, and them in Hierapolis.
- 14** Luke, the beloved physician, and Demas, greet you. [2Tim 4:11](#); [2Tim 4:10](#); [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);
- 15** Salute the brethren which are in Laodicea, and Nymphas, and the church which is in his house. [\[Phlm 1:2\]](#);
- 16** And when this epistle is read among you, cause that it be read also in the church of the Laodiceans; and that you likewise read the *epistle* from Laodicea.
- 17** And say to Archippus, Take heed to the ministry which you have received in the Lord, that you fulfil it. [\[Phlm 1:2\]](#);
- 18** The salutation by the hand of me Paul. Remember my bonds. Grace *be* with you. Amen. [2Thess 3:17](#); [Heb 13:3](#); [\[Phil 1:7\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:8\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:9\]](#);

First_Thessalonians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#)

FIRST THESSALONIANS ONE

The Thessalonians are given to understand both how mindful of them Saint Paul was at all time in thanksgiving, and prayer

1 Paul, and Silvanus, and Timotheus, unto the church of the Thessalonians *which is* in Elohim the Father and *in* the Lord Yahushua the Messiah: Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from Elohim our Father, and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Rom 1:7](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [\[2Thess 1:2\]](#);

2 We give thanks to Elohim always for you all, making mention of you in our prayers; [Eph 1:16](#); [Phil 1:3](#); [Col 1:3](#); [2Thess 1:3](#); [\[Eph 1:15\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:3\]](#); [\[Phlm 1:4\]](#);

3 Remembering without ceasing your work of faith, and labour of love, and patience of hope in our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, in the sight of Elohim and our Father; [John 6:29](#); [\[Gal 5:6\]](#); [\[Phil 1:6\]](#);

4 Knowing, brethren beloved, your election of Elohim. [\[Col 3:12\]](#);

and also how well he was persuaded of the truth and sincerity of their faith and conversion to Elohim

5 For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance; as you know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. [1Cor 2:4](#); [1Cor 4:20](#); [1Thess 2:1](#);

6 And you became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Spirit: [1Cor 4:16](#); [1Cor 11:1](#); [Phil 3:17](#); [2Thess 3:9](#); [\[2Thess 3:7\]](#);

7 So that you were ensamples to all that believe in Macedonia and Achaia.

8 For from you sounded out the word of the Lord not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith to Elohim-ward is spread abroad; so that we need not to speak any thing.

9 For they themselves show of us what manner of entering in we had unto you, and how you turned to Elohim from idols to serve the living and true Elohim; [\[1Thess 2:1\]](#);

10 And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, *even* Yahushua, which delivered us from the wrath to come. [Acts 1:11](#); [Phil 3:20](#); [2Thess 1:10](#); [Rev 1:7](#); [\[Luke 22:69\]](#); [\[Jude 1:14\]](#);

In what manner the gospel was brought and preached to the Thessalonians, and in what sort also they received it

- 1** For yourselves, brethren, know our entrance in unto you, that it was not in vain: [1Thess 1:5](#); [1Thess 1:9](#);
- 2** But even after that we had suffered before, and were shamefully entreated, as you know, at Philippi, we were bold in our Elohim to speak unto you the gospel of Elohim with much contention. [Acts 16:22](#); [Acts 17:2](#);
- 3** For our exhortation *was* not of deceit, nor of uncleanness, nor in guile: [\[Matt 24:4\]](#);
- 4** But as we were allowed of Elohim to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but Elohim, which trieth our hearts. [Gal 1:10](#); [\[1Tim 1:11\]](#);
- 5** For neither at any time used we flattering words, as you know, nor a cloke of covetousness; Elohim *is* witness: [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Tim 5:21](#); [2Tim 4:1](#);
- 6** Nor of men sought we glory, neither of you, nor yet of others, when we might have been burdensome, as the apostles of the Messiah. [1Cor 9:3](#); [2Thess 3:9](#); [\[1Cor 9:4\]](#);
- 7** But we were gentle among you, even as a nurse cherisheth her children:
- 8** So being affectionately desirous of you, we were willing to have imparted unto you, not the gospel of Elohim only, but also our own beings, because you were dear unto us.
- 9** For you remember, brethren, our labour and travail: for labouring night and day, because we would not be chargeable unto any of you, we preached unto you the gospel of Elohim. [Acts 18:3](#); [Acts 20:34](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [2Cor 11:9](#); [2Cor 12:13](#); [2Thess 3:8](#); [\[2Thess 3:9\]](#);
- 10** You *are* witnesses, and Elohim *also*, as to how holy and just and blameless our conduct was toward you who believe: [\[2Thess 3:7\]](#);
- 11** As you know how we exhorted and comforted and charged every one of you, as a father *does* his children, [\[1Cor 4:14\]](#);
- 12** That you would walk worthy of Elohim, who has called you unto his kingdom and glory. [Gen 17:1](#); [1Cor 7:20](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [Phil 1:27](#); [Col 1:10](#); [\[Col 1:13\]](#); [\[1Thess 4:1\]](#);
- 13** For this cause also thank we Elohim without ceasing, because, when you received the word of Elohim which you heard of us, you received *it* not *as* the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of Elohim, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.
- 14** For you, brethren, became followers of the churches of Elohim which in Judaea are in the Messiah Yahushua: for you also have suffered like things of your own countrymen, even as they *have* of the Jews: [Acts 17:5](#); [Acts 17:13](#); [\[2Thess 1:5\]](#);
- 15** Who both killed the Lord Yahushua, and their own prophets, and have persecuted us; and they please not Elohim, and are contrary to all men: [Acts 7:52](#); [Matt 23:37](#); [Luke 13:34](#); [\[Matt 23:31\]](#);
- 16** Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved, to fill up their sins always: for the wrath is come upon them to the uttermost. [Acts 17:13](#);
- 17** But we, brethren, being taken from you for a short time in presence, not in heart, endeavoured the more abundantly to see your face with great desire.

A reason is rendered both why Paul was so long absent from them, and also why he was so desirous to see them

- 18** Wherefore we would have come unto you, even I Paul, once and again; but Satan hindered us. [Rom 1:13](#); [Rom 15:22](#);
- 19** For what *is* our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? *Are* not even you in the presence of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah at his coming? [2Cor 1:14](#); [Phil 2:16](#); [Phil 4:1](#); [\[2Thess 1:4\]](#);
- 20** For you are our glory and joy.

Saint Paul testifies his great love to the Thessalonians, partly by sending Timothy unto them to strengthen and comfort them; partly by rejoicing in their well-doing

- 1** Wherefore when we could no longer forbear, we thought it good to be left at Athens alone;
- 2** And sent Timotheus, our brother, and minister of Elohim, and our fellow labourer in the gospel of the Messiah, to establish you, and to comfort you concerning your faith: [Acts 16:1](#); [Rom 16:21](#); [Phil 2:19](#); [[1Tim 1:2](#)];
- 3** That no man should be moved by these afflictions: for yourselves know that we are appointed thereunto. [Eph 3:13](#); [Phil 1:14](#); [Acts 14:22](#); [2Tim 3:12](#);
- 4** For verily, when we were with you, we told you before that we should suffer tribulation; even as it came to pass, and you know.
- 5** For this cause, when I could no longer forbear, I sent to know your faith, lest by some means the tempter have tempted you, and our labour be in vain.
- 6** But now when Timotheus came from you unto us, and brought us good tidings of your faith and love, and that you have good remembrance of us always, desiring greatly to see us, as we also *to see* you:
- 7** Therefore, brethren, we were comforted over you in all our affliction and distress by your faith:
- 8** For now we live, if you stand fast in the Lord.
- 9** For what thanks can we render to Elohim again for you, for all the joy wherewith we joy for your sakes before our Elohim;

and partly by praying for them, and desiring a safe coming unto them

- 10** Night and day praying exceedingly that we might see your face, and might perfect that which is lacking in your faith? [Rom 1:10-11](#); [Rom 15:23](#); [2Tim 1:4](#); [[Rom 1:11](#)]; [[2Tim 1:3](#)];
- 11** Now Elohim himself and our Father, and our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, direct our way unto you.
- 12** And the Lord make you to increase and abound in love one toward another, and toward all *men*, even as we *do* toward you:
- 13** To the end he may establish your hearts unblameable in holiness before Elohim, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah with all his saints. [1Cor 1:8](#); [1Thess 5:23](#); [2Thess 2:17](#);

He exhorts them to go forward in all manner of godliness

1 Furthermore then we beseech you, brethren, and exhort *you* by the Lord Yahushua, that as you have received of us how you ought to walk and to please Elohim, *so* you would abound more and more. [Phil 1:27](#); [1Thess 2:12](#);

2 For you know what commandments we gave you by the Lord Yahushua.

3 For this is the will of Elohim, *even* your sanctification, that you should abstain from fornication: [Rom 12:2](#); [Eph 5:27](#); [Phil 4:8](#); [\[Acts 15:20\]](#); [\[Acts 15:29\]](#); [\[Eph 5:17\]](#); [\[Heb 12:16\]](#);

4 That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour;

5 Not in the lust of concupiscence, even as the Gentiles which know not Elohim: [1Cor 15:34](#); [Eph 4:18](#); [\[Col 3:5\]](#);

to live holily and justly

6 That no *man* go beyond and defraud his brother in *any* matter: because that the Lord *is* the avenger of all such, as we also have forewarned you and testified.

7 For Elohim has not called us unto uncleanness, but unto holiness. [John 17:19](#); [1Cor 1:2](#);

8 He therefore that despiseth, despiseth not man, but Elohim, who has also given unto us his holy Spirit. [Luke 10:16](#); [1Cor 7:40](#);

to love one another

9 But as touching brotherly love you need not that I write unto you: for you yourselves are taught of Elohim to love one another. [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Pet 4:8](#); [1John 3:23](#); [John 4:21](#); [\[Col 3:14\]](#); [\[Jas 2:8\]](#); [\[1John 4:21\]](#); [\[2John 1:5\]](#);

10 And indeed you do it toward all the brethren which are in all Macedonia: but we beseech you, brethren, that you increase more and more;

and quietly to follow their own business

11 And that you study to be quiet, and to do your own business, and to work with your own hands, as we commanded you; [2Thess 3:7](#); [2Thess 3:12](#); [Acts 20:34](#); [Eph 4:28](#);

12 That you may walk honestly toward them that are without, and *that* you may have lack of nothing. [\[Rom 13:13\]](#);

and last of all, to sorrow moderately for the dead

13 But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that you sorrow not, even as others which have no hope. [Lev 19:28](#); [Deut 14:1](#); [2Sam 12:20](#);

14 For if we believe that Yahushua died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Yahushua will Elohim bring with him.

15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive *and* remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep. [1Cor 15:22](#); [1Cor 15:51](#); [\[2Pet 3:16\]](#);

16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of Elohim: and the dead in the Messiah shall rise first: [Matt 24:31](#); [1Cor 15:52](#); [2Thess 1:7](#); [\[Matt 25:31\]](#); [\[Matt 26:64\]](#); [\[Mark 13:26\]](#); [\[Mark 14:62\]](#); [\[John 5:28\]](#); [\[1Cor 15:51\]](#);

And unto this last exhortation is annexed a brief description of the resurrection, and second coming of the Messiah to judgment

17 Then we which are alive *and* remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord. [\[Matt 24:40\]](#); [\[Luke 17:34\]](#);

18 Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

He proceeds in the former description of the Messiah's coming to judgment

- 1** But of the times and the seasons, brethren, you have no need that I write unto you.
- 2** For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. [Matt 24:43](#); [2Pet 3:10](#); [Rev 3:3](#); [Rev 16:15](#); [[Luke 12:39](#)]; [[Luke 21:35](#)];
- 3** For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. [2Thess 1:9](#); [[Job 15:21](#)];
- 4** But you, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief. [Eph 5:8](#); [[John 12:35](#)];
- 5** You are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness. [Luke 16:8](#); [Eph 5:8](#); [Rom 13:12](#);
- 6** Therefore let us not sleep, as *do* others; but let us watch and be sober. [Rom 13:11](#); [Rom 13:13](#); [Eph 5:14](#); [Luke 21:36](#); [1Cor 15:34](#); [[Mark 13:33](#)]; [[Luke 12:40](#)]; [[Luke 21:34](#)]; [[Phil 4:4](#)]; [[1Pet 5:8](#)];
- 7** For they that sleep sleep in the night; and they that be drunken are drunken in the night.
- 8** But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for a helmet, the hope of salvation. [Isa 59:17](#); [Eph 6:14](#); [[Job 29:14](#)]; [[Eph 6:11](#)]; [[Eph 6:17](#)];
- 9** For Elohim has not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Yahushua the Messiah,
- 10** Who died for us, that, whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him. [Rom 14:7](#); [2Cor 5:15](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [1Pet 4:2](#); [[Gal 2:19](#)];

- 11** Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also you do.
- 12** And we beseech you, brethren, to know them which labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you; [Rom 15:27](#); [1Cor 9:11](#); [1Cor 16:18](#); [Gal 6:6](#); [Phil 2:29](#); [1Tim 5:17](#); [Heb 13:7](#); [Heb 13:17](#);
- 13** And to esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake. *And* be at peace among yourselves.
- 14** Now we exhort you, brethren, warn them that are unruly, comfort the feebleminded, support the weak, be patient toward all *men*. [[Gal 6:2](#)]; [[Eph 4:2](#)];
- 15** See that none render evil for evil unto any *man*; but ever follow that which is good, both among yourselves, and to all *men*. [Lev 19:18](#); [Prov 20:22](#); [Prov 24:29](#); [Matt 5:39](#); [Rom 12:17](#); [1Cor 6:7](#); [1Pet 3:9](#); [[Prov 17:13](#)];

and gives various precepts

- 16** Rejoice evermore. [Matt 5:12](#); [Luke 10:20](#); [Rom 12:12](#); [Phil 4:4](#);
- 17** Pray without ceasing. [Luke 18:1](#); [Rom 12:12](#); [Col 4:2](#); [[Eph 6:18](#)];
- 18** In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of Elohim in Yahushua the Messiah concerning you. [Eph 5:20](#); [[Col 3:17](#)];
- 19** Quench not the Spirit. [1Cor 14:30](#);
- 20** Despise not prophesyings.
- 21** But prove all things; hold fast that which is good. [1John 4:1](#);
- 22** Abstain from all appearance of evil. [Phil 4:8](#);

and so concludes the epistle

- 23** And the very Elohim of peace sanctify you wholly; and *I pray Elohim* your whole spirit and being and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [1Cor 1:8](#); [Phil 4:9](#); [1Thess 3:13](#); [[2Thess 3:16](#)];
- 24** Faithful *is* he that calleth you, who also will do *it*. [1Cor 1:9](#); [1Cor 10:13](#); [2Cor 1:18](#); [2Thess 3:3](#);
- 25** Brethren, pray for us.

26 Greet all the brethren with a holy kiss. [Rom 16:16](#); [1Cor 16:20](#); [2Cor 13:12](#); [1Pet 5:14](#);

27 I charge you by the Lord that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren. [\[Rom 9:1\]](#); [\[1Tim 5:21\]](#);

28 The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with you. Amen.

Second_Thessalonians

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

SECOND THESSALONIANS ONE

Paul certifies them of the good opinion which he had of their faith, love, and patience

1 Paul, and Silvanus, and Timotheus, unto the church of the Thessalonians in Elohim our Father and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah:

2 Grace unto you, and peace, from Elohim our Father and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [1Cor 1:3](#); [1Thess 1:1](#); [1Pet 1:2](#);

3 We are bound to thank Elohim always for you, brethren, as it is meet, because that your faith groweth exceedingly, and the love of every one of you all toward each other aboundeth; [Eph 1:15](#); [Phil 1:3](#); [Col 1:3](#); [1Thess 1:2](#); [\[Phlm 1:4\]](#);

4 So that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of Elohim for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations that you endure: [1Thess 2:19](#);

5 *Which is* a manifest token of the righteous judgment of Elohim, that you may be counted worthy of the kingdom of Elohim, for which you also suffer: [Jude 1:6](#); [1Thess 2:14](#);

6 Seeing *it is* a righteous thing with Elohim to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you; [Zech 2:8](#);

7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Yahushua shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, [1Thess 4:16](#);

8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not Elohim, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah: [2Pet 3:7](#); [Rom 2:8](#); [\[2Pet 3:12\]](#);

9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power; [Isa 2:19](#); [\[1Thess 5:3\]](#);

10 When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day. [Acts 1:11](#); [1Thess 1:10](#); [Rev 1:7](#); [\[Matt 24:30\]](#); [\[Matt 25:31\]](#); [\[Mark 13:26\]](#); [\[Mark 14:62\]](#); [\[Luke 21:27\]](#); [\[Jude 1:14\]](#);

and therewithal uses various reasons for the comforting of them in persecution, whereof the chief is taken from the righteous judgment of Elohim

11 Wherefore also we pray always for you, that our Elohim would count you worthy of *this* calling, and fulfil all the good pleasure of *his* goodness, and the work of faith with power:

12 That the name of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah may be glorified in you, and you in him, according to the grace of our Elohim and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah.

Paul urges them to continue steadfast in the truth received

1 Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, and *by* our gathering together unto him,

2 That you be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of the Messiah is at hand. [Jer 29:8](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [Col 2:18](#); [1John 4:1](#); [[Mark 13:5](#)]; [[Luke 21:8](#)]; [[Heb 13:9](#)];

shows that there shall be a departure from the faith

3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for *that day shall not come*, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; [Matt 24:23](#); [1Tim 4:1](#); [1John 2:18](#); [[Eph 5:6](#)]; [[Col 2:18](#)];

4 Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called Elohim, or that is worshipped; so that he as Elohim sitteth in the temple of Elohim, showing himself that he is Elohim. [Dan 11:36](#);

5 Remember you not, that, when I was yet with you, I told you these things?

6 And now you know what withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time.

7 For the mystery of iniquity already works: only he who now letteth *will let*, until he be taken out of the way. [[1John 4:3](#)]; [[Rev 17:5](#)];

8 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming: [Job 4:9](#); [Isa 11:4](#); [[Ps 149:6](#)]; [[Rev 18:8](#)];

and a discovery of Anti-Messiah, before the day of the Lord come

9 *Even him*, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, [John 8:41](#); [2Cor 4:4](#); [Eph 2:2](#); [Deut 13:1](#); [Rev 13:13](#); [[Rev 16:14](#)];

10 And with every kind of evil deception in them that are perishing; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. [2Cor 2:15](#); [2Cor 4:3](#);

11 And for this cause Elohim shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: [Rom 1:24](#); [1Tim 4:1](#); [[Matt 24:24](#)]; [[Mark 13:22](#)];

12 That they all might be judged who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

13 But we are bound to give thanks always to Elohim for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because Elohim has from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth:

14 Whereunto he called you by our gospel, to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah.

and thereupon repeats his former exhortation, and prays for them

15 Therefore, brethren, stand fast, and hold the traditions which you have been taught, whether by word, or our epistle. [2Thess 3:6](#);

16 Now our Lord Yahushua the Messiah himself, and Elohim, even our Father, which has loved us, and has given *us* everlasting consolation and good hope through grace,

17 Comfort your hearts, and establish you in every good word and work. [1Thess 3:13](#);

SECOND THESSALONIANS THREE

Paul craves their prayers for himself

1 Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have *free* course, and be glorified, even as *it is* with you: [Matt 9:38](#); [Eph 6:19](#); [Col 4:3](#); [[Luke 10:2](#)];

2 And that we may be delivered from unreasonable and wicked men: for all *men* have not faith. [Rom 15:31](#); [John 6:44](#);

testifies what confidence he has in them

3 But the Lord is faithful, who shall establish you, and keep *you* from evil. [1Thess 5:24](#); [John 17:15](#);

4 And we have confidence in the Lord touching you, that you both do and will do the things which we command you.

makes request to Elohim in their behalf

5 And the Lord direct your hearts into the love of Elohim, and into the patient waiting for the Messiah.

gives them various precepts, especially to shun idleness, and ill company

6 Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, that you withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us. [2Thess 3:14](#); [1Cor 5:11](#); [Titus 3:10](#); [2Thess 2:15](#); [[Rom 16:17](#)]; [[2Tim 3:5](#)];

7 For yourselves know how you ought to follow us: for we behaved not ourselves disorderly among you; [1Cor 11:1](#); [1Thess 1:6-7](#); [1Thess 2:10](#); [[1Thess 4:11](#)];

8 Neither did we eat any man's bread for nought; but wrought with labour and travail night and day, that we might not be chargeable to any of you: [Acts 18:3](#); [Acts 20:34](#); [1Cor 4:12](#); [2Cor 11:9](#); [2Cor 12:13](#); [1Thess 2:9](#); [[Eph 4:28](#)];

9 Not because we have not power, but to make ourselves an ensample unto you to follow us. [1Cor 9:3](#); [1Cor 9:6](#); [1Thess 2:9](#); [1Cor 4:16](#); [1Cor 11:1](#); [Phil 3:17](#); [1Thess 1:6](#); [[1Cor 9:4](#)]; [[1Thess 2:6](#)];

10 For even when we were with you, this we commanded you, that if any would not work, neither should he eat.

11 For we hear that there are some which walk among you disorderly, working not at all, but are busybodies.

12 Now them that are such we command and exhort by our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, that with quietness they work, and eat their own bread. [1Thess 4:11](#); [Eph 4:28](#);

13 But you, brethren, be not weary in well doing. [Gal 6:9](#);

14 And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. [2Thess 3:6](#); [Matt 18:17](#); [1Cor 5:9](#); [[1Cor 5:11](#)]; [[Eph 5:11](#)];

15 Yet count *him* not as an enemy, but admonish *him* as a brother.

and then concludes with prayer and salutation

16 Now the Lord of peace himself give you peace always by all means. The Lord *be* with you all. [Rom 15:33](#); [Rom 16:20](#); [1Cor 14:33](#); [2Cor 13:11](#); [Phil 4:9](#); [1Thess 5:23](#);

17 The salutation of Paul with mine own hand, which is the token in every epistle: so I write. [1Cor 16:21](#); [Col 4:18](#);

18 The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with you all. Amen.

First_Timothy

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#)

FIRST TIMOTHY ONE

Timothy is put in mind of the charge which was given unto him by Paul at his going to Macedonia

- 1** Paul, an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah by the commandment of Elohim our Saviour, and Lord Yahushua the Messiah, *which is* our hope; [Acts 9:15](#); [Col 1:27](#);
- 2** Unto Timothy, *my* own son in the faith: Grace, mercy, *and* peace, from Elohim our Father and Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. [Acts 16:1](#); [1Thess 3:2](#); [1Cor 4:17](#); [Gal 1:3](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [[Rom 16:21](#)]; [[2Tim 1:2](#)];
- 3** As I besought you to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that you mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine, [Acts 20:1](#);
- 4** Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith: *so do*. [1Tim 4:7](#); [1Tim 6:20](#); [2Tim 2:16](#); [Titus 1:14](#); [Titus 3:9](#); [1Tim 6:4](#); [[2Tim 2:23](#)];

Of the right use and end of the law

- 5** Now the end of the commandment is love out of a pure heart, and *of* a good conscience, and *of* faith unfeigned: [Rom 13:8](#); [Gal 5:14](#);
- 6** From which some having swerved have turned aside unto vain jangling;
- 7** Desiring to be teachers of the law; understanding neither what they say, nor whereof they affirm.
- 8** But we know that the law *is* good, if a man use it lawfully; [Rom 7:12](#);
- 9** Knowing this, that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient, for the ungodly and for sinners, for unholy and profane, for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for manslayers, [Gal 5:23](#); [[Eph 1:4](#)];
- 10** For whoremongers, for sodomites, for kidnappers, for liars, for perjurers, and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine;

Of Saint Paul's calling to be an apostle

- 11** According to the glorious gospel of the blessed Elohim, which was committed to my trust. [1Tim 6:15](#); [1Thess 2:4](#);
- 12** And I thank Yahushua the Messiah our Lord, who has enabled me, for that he counted me faithful, putting me into the ministry;
- 13** Who was before a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and injurious: but I obtained mercy, because I did *it* ignorantly in unbelief. [Acts 8:3](#); [Acts 9:1](#); [Acts 22:4](#); [Acts 26:9](#); [1Cor 15:9](#); [Gal 1:13](#); [John 9:39](#); [John 9:41](#); [Acts 3:17](#); [[Acts 9:13](#)]; [[Acts 13:27](#)]; [[1Cor 2:8](#)]; [[Phil 3:6](#)];
- 14** And the grace of our Lord was exceeding abundant with faith and love which is in Yahushua the Messiah.
- 15** This *is* a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Yahushua the Messiah came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief. [Matt 9:13](#); [Mark 2:17](#); [Luke 5:32](#); [Luke 19:10](#); [1John 3:5](#); [[Eph 3:8](#)];
- 16** Howbeit for this cause I obtained mercy, that in me first Yahushua the Messiah might show forth all longsuffering, for a pattern to them which should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting.
- 17** Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise Elohim, *be* honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen. [[1Chr 29:11](#)]; [[Ps 10:16](#)]; [[1Tim 6:15](#)]; [[1John 4:12](#)]; [[Jude 1:25](#)];
- 18** This charge I commit unto you, son Timothy, according to the prophecies which went before on you, that you by them mightest war a good warfare; [1Tim 6:12](#);

19 Holding faith, and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck: [1Tim 3:9](#);

and Hymenaeus and Alexander

20 Of whom is Hymenaeus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme. [2Tim 2:17](#); [2Tim 4:14](#); [1Tim 5:5](#); [[1Cor 5:5](#)];

That it is meet to pray and give thanks for all men, and the reason why

- 1** I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, *and* giving of thanks, be made for all men;
- 2** For kings, and *for* all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. [Jer 29:7](#);
- 3** For this *is* good and acceptable in the sight of Elohim our Saviour;
- 4** Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth. [Ezek 18:23](#); [2Pet 3:9](#);
- 5** For *there is* one Elohim, and one mediator between Elohim and men, the man Yahushua the Messiah; [John 17:3](#); [Rom 3:30](#); [Gal 3:19](#); [Heb 9:15](#); [\[Acts 4:12\]](#); [\[Heb 7:25\]](#); [\[1John 2:1\]](#);
- 6** Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time. [Matt 20:28](#); [Eph 1:7](#); [Col 1:14](#); [\[Mark 10:45\]](#);
- 7** Whereunto I am ordained a preacher, and an apostle, (I speak the truth in the Messiah, *and* lie not;) a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and verity. [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Gal 1:16](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [2Tim 1:11](#); [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#);
- 8** I will therefore that men pray every where, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting. [John 4:21](#); [Ps 134:2](#);

How women should be attired

- 9** In like manner also, that women adorn themselves in modest apparel, with shamefacedness and sobriety; not with broided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array; [Titus 2:3](#); [1Pet 3:3](#);
- 10** But (which becometh women professing godliness) with good works.
- 11** Let the woman learn in silence with all subjection. [\[Gen 3:16\]](#);

They are not permitted to teach

- 12** But I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence. [1Cor 14:34](#); [Gen 3:16](#); [Eph 5:24](#);
- 13** For Adam was first formed, then Eve. [Gen 1:27](#); [Gen 2:22](#);
- 14** And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived was in the transgression. [Gen 3:6](#);

They shall be saved, notwithstanding the testimonies of Elohim's wrath, in childbirth, if they continue in faith

- 15** Notwithstanding she shall be saved in childbearing, if they continue in faith and love and holiness with sobriety.

FIRST TIMOTHY THREE

How bishops and deacons, and their wives should be qualified

- 1** This *is* a true saying, If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work. [\[Ezek 3:17\];](#)
- 2** A bishop then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behaviour, given to hospitality, apt to teach; [Titus 1:6; 2Tim 2:24; \[Titus 1:8\];](#)
- 3** Not given to wine, no striker, not greedy of filthy lucre; but patient, not a brawler, not covetous; [\[Titus 1:7\]; \[1Pet 5:2\];](#)
- 4** One that ruleth well his own house, having his children in subjection with all gravity;
- 5** (For if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the church of Elohim?)
- 6** Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil.
- 7** Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil. [\[Acts 6:3\];](#)

- 8** Likewise *must* the deacons *be* grave, not doubletongued, not given to much wine, not greedy of filthy lucre; [Acts 6:3;](#)
- 9** Holding the mystery of the faith in a pure conscience. [1Tim 1:19;](#)
- 10** And let these also first be proved; then let them use the office of a deacon, being *found* blameless.
- 11** Even so *must* *their* wives *be* grave, not slanderers, sober, faithful in all things.
- 12** Let the deacons be the husbands of one wife, ruling their children and their own houses well.
- 13** For they that have used the office of a deacon well purchase to themselves a good degree, and great boldness in the faith which is in Yahushua the Messiah. [Matt 25:21;](#)

and to what end Paul wrote to Timothy of these things

- 14** These things write I unto you, hoping to come unto you shortly: [\[2Tim 1:13\];](#)

Of the church, and the blessed truth therein taught and professed

- 15** But if I tarry long, that you may know how you oughtest to behave thyself in the house of Elohim, which is the church of the living Elohim, the pillar and ground of the truth. [2Tim 2:20; \[Titus 1:7\];](#)
- 16** And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory. [John 1:14; Eph 3:5-6; Mark 16:19; Luke 9:51; Acts 1:2; \[Mark 16:20\]; \[1John 5:20\];](#)

He foretells that in the latter times there shall be a departure from the faith

1 Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of demons; [2Tim 3:1](#); [2Pet 3:3](#); [Jude 1:18](#); [Matt 24:23](#); [2Thess 2:3](#); [[2Thess 2:11](#)]; [[2Pet 2:1](#)];

2 Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron;

3 Forbidding to marry, *and commanding* to abstain from meats, which Elohim has created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth. [Gen 1:29](#); [Gen 9:3](#); [Rom 14:6](#); [1Cor 10:30](#); [[Matt 15:6](#)]; [[Mark 7:13](#)]; [[Acts 27:35](#)];

4 For every creature of Elohim *is* good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: [Gen 1:31](#); [Acts 10:15](#); [Rom 14:14](#);

5 For it is sanctified by the word of Elohim and prayer.

And to the end that Timothy might not fail in doing his duty, he furnishes him with various precepts, belonging thereto

6 If you put the brethren in remembrance of these things, you shall be a good minister of Yahushua the Messiah, nourished up in the words of faith and of good doctrine, whereunto you have attained. [2Tim 1:5](#); [2Tim 3:14-15](#);

7 But refuse profane and old wives' fables, and exercise thyself *rather* unto godliness. [1Tim 1:4](#); [1Tim 6:20](#); [2Tim 2:16](#); [Titus 1:14](#); [Titus 3:9](#);

8 For bodily exercise is profitable for a little time: but godliness is profitable unto all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come. [Col 2:23](#); [[1Pet 3:9](#)];

9 This *is* a faithful saying and worthy of all acceptance.

10 For therefore we both labour and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living Elohim, who is the Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe.

11 These things command and teach.

12 Let no man despise thy youth; but be you an example of the believers, in word, in conduct, in love, in spirit, in faith, in purity. [Titus 2:15](#); [Titus 2:7](#); [1Pet 5:3](#);

13 Till I come, give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine.

14 Neglect not the gift that is in you, which was given you by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery. [Acts 6:6](#); [Acts 8:17](#); [Acts 13:3](#); [Acts 19:6](#); [1Tim 5:22](#); [2Tim 1:6](#);

15 Meditate upon these things; give thyself wholly to them; that thy profiting may appear to all.

16 Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this you shall both save thyself, and them that hear you.

Rules to be observed in reproofing

- 1** Rebuke not an elder, but intreat *him* as a father; *and* the younger men as brethren; [Lev 19:32](#);
- 2** The elder women as mothers; the younger as sisters, with all purity.

Of widows

- 3** Honour widows that are widows indeed.
- 4** But if any widow have children or nephews, let them learn first to show piety at home, and to requite their parents: for that is good and acceptable before Elohim. [Gen 45:10-11](#); [Matt 15:4](#); [Mark 7:10](#); [Eph 6:1-2](#);
- 5** Now she that is a widow indeed, and desolate, trusteth in Elohim, and continueth in supplications and prayers night and day. [1Cor 7:32](#); [Luke 2:36](#); [[1Tim 1:20](#)];
- 6** But she that liveth in pleasure is dead while she liveth. [[Matt 8:22](#)]; [[John 5:25](#)];
- 7** And these things give in charge, that they may be blameless.
- 8** But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he has denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel. [Gal 6:10](#);
- 9** Let not a widow be taken into the number under threescore years old, having been the wife of one man,
- 10** Well reported of for good works; if she have brought up children, if she have lodged strangers, if she have washed the saints' feet, if she have relieved the afflicted, if she have diligently followed every good work. [1Pet 4:9](#); [Gen 18:4](#); [Gen 19:2](#); [Luke 7:38](#); [Luke 7:44](#);
- 11** But the younger widows refuse: for when they have begun to wax wanton against the Messiah, they will marry;
- 12** Having damnation, because they have cast off their first faith.
- 13** And withal they learn *to be* idle, wandering about from house to house; and not only idle, but tattlers also and busybodies, speaking things which they ought not. [Titus 2:3](#);
- 14** I will therefore that the younger women marry, bear children, guide the house, give none occasion to the adversary to speak reproachfully. [1Cor 7:9](#);
- 15** For some are already turned aside after Satan.
- 16** If any man or woman that believeth have widows, let them relieve them, and let not the church be charged; that it may relieve them that are widows indeed.

Of elders

- 17** Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the word and doctrine. [Rom 15:27](#); [1Cor 9:11](#); [Gal 6:6](#); [Phil 2:29](#); [1Thess 5:12](#); [Heb 13:17](#);
- 18** For the scripture saith, you **shall not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn**. And, **The labourer is worthy of his reward**. [Deut 25:4](#); [1Cor 9:9](#); [Lev 19:13](#); [Deut 24:14](#); [Matt 10:10](#); [Luke 10:7](#); [[1Cor 9:14](#)];
- 19** Against an elder receive not an accusation, but before two or three witnesses. [Deut 19:15](#);
- 20** Them that sin rebuke before all, that others also may fear.
- 21** I charge you before Elohim, and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, and the elect angels, that you observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality. [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [1Thess 5:27](#); [1Tim 6:13](#); [Deut 17:4](#); [Deut 19:18](#); [[2Tim 4:1](#)];
- 22** Lay hands suddenly on no man, neither be partaker of other men's sins: keep thyself pure. [Acts 6:6](#); [Acts 8:17](#); [Acts 13:3](#); [Acts 19:6](#); [1Tim 4:14](#); [2Tim 1:6](#);

A precept for Timothy's health

23 Drink no longer water, but use a little wine for thy stomach's sake and thine often infirmities. [Ps 104:15](#); [\[Col 2:23\]](#);

Some men's sins go before unto judgment, and some men's follow after

24 Some men's sins are open beforehand, going before to judgment; and some *men* they follow after. [Gal 5:19](#);

25 Likewise also the good works *of some* are manifest beforehand; and they that are otherwise cannot be hid.

Of the duty of servants

1 Let as many servants as are under the yoke count their own masters worthy of all honour, that the name of Elohim and *his* doctrine be not blasphemed. Eph 6:5; Col 3:22; Titus 2:9; 1Pet 2:18;

2 And they that have believing masters, let them not despise *them*, because they are brethren; but rather do *them* service, because they are faithful and beloved, partakers of the benefit. These things teach and exhort.

Not to have fellowship with newfangled teachers

3 If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, *even* the words of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness;

4 He is proud, knowing nothing, but doting about questions and strifes of words, whereof cometh envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings, 1Tim 1:4; 2Tim 2:23; Titus 3:9; [1Cor 11:16];

5 Perverse disputings of men of corrupt minds, and destitute of the truth, supposing that gain is godliness: from such withdraw thyself. 1Cor 11:16;

Godliness is great gain

6 But godliness with contentment is great gain. Prov 15:16; Heb 13:5; [Phil 4:11];

7 For we brought nothing into *this* world, and *it is* certain we can carry nothing out. Job 1:21; Job 27:19; Ps 49:17; [Luke 12:15];

8 And having food and raiment let us be therewith content. Prov 27:26; Ps 55:22; Matt 6:25; 1Pet 5:7; [Luke 12:22]; [Phil 4:6]; [Heb 13:5];

9 But they that will be rich fall into temptation and a snare, and *into* many foolish and hurtful lusts, which drown men in destruction and perdition. Prov 11:28; Matt 13:22; Jas 5:1; [Mark 4:19]; [Luke 8:14];

and love of money the root of all evil

10 For the love of money is a root of all evil: which while some coveted after, they have erred from the faith, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows. Exod 23:8; Deut 16:19; Prov 15:16;

What Timothy is to fly, and what to follow

11 But you, O man of Elohim, flee these things; and follow after righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meekness. 2Tim 2:22;

12 Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto you are also called, and have professed a good profession before many witnesses. 1Tim 1:18;

13 I give you charge in the sight of Elohim, who quickeneth all things, and *before* Yahushua the Messiah, who before Pontius Pilate witnessed a good confession; 1Tim 5:21; Deut 32:39; 1Sam 2:6; Matt 27:11; John 18:37; [John 18:36]; [2Tim 4:1];

14 That you keep *this* commandment without spot, unrebukeable, until the appearing of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah:

15 Which in his times he shall show, *who is* the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords; 1Tim 1:17; Rev 17:14; Rev 19:16; [1Tim 1:11];

16 Who only has immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto; whom no man has seen, nor can see: to whom *be* honour and power everlasting. Amen. Exod 33:20; Deut 4:12; 1John 4:12; [John 1:18]; [John 5:37];

and whereof to admonish the rich

17 Charge them that are rich in this world, that they be not highminded, nor trust in uncertain riches, but in the living Elohim, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy; Mark 4:18; Luke 8:14; [Job 31:24]; [Mark 10:21]; [Phil 4:6];

18 That they do good, that they be rich in good works, ready to distribute, willing to share;

19 Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come, that they may lay hold on eternal life. Matt 6:20; Luke 12:33; Luke 16:9; [Matt 19:21]; [Luke 18:22];

To keep the purity of true doctrine, and to avoid profane janglings

20 O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding profane *and* vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called: [1Tim 1:4](#); [1Tim 4:7](#); [2Tim 2:16](#); [Titus 1:14](#); [Titus 3:9](#);

21 Which some professing have erred concerning the faith. Grace *be* with you. Amen.

Second_Timothy

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#)

SECOND TIMOTHY ONE

Paul's love to Timothy, and the unfeigned faith which was in Timothy himself, his mother, and grandmother

1 Paul, an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah by the will of Elohim, according to the promise of life which is in Yahushua the Messiah,

2 To Timothy, *my* dearly beloved son: Grace, mercy, *and* peace, from Elohim the Father and Yahushua the Messiah our Lord. [Gal 1:3](#); [1Tim 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [\[Titus 1:4\]](#);

3 I thank Elohim, whom I serve from *my* forefathers with pure conscience, that without ceasing I have remembrance of you in my prayers night and day; [Acts 22:3](#); [Rom 1:9](#); [1Thess 1:2](#); [1Thess 3:10](#);

4 Greatly desiring to see you, being mindful of thy tears, that I may be filled with joy; [\[Rom 15:23\]](#); [\[1Thess 3:10\]](#);

5 When I call to remembrance the unfeigned faith that is in you, which dwelt first in thy grandmother Lois, and thy mother Eunice; and I am persuaded that in you also. [\[1Tim 4:6\]](#);

He is exhorted to stir up the gift of Elohim which was in him

6 Wherefore I put you in remembrance that you stir up the gift of Elohim, which is in you by the putting on of my hands. [Acts 6:6](#); [Acts 8:17](#); [Acts 13:3](#); [Acts 19:6](#); [1Tim 4:14](#); [1Tim 5:22](#);

7 For Elohim has not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind. [Rom 8:15](#);

to be steadfast and patient in persecution

8 Be not you therefore ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me his prisoner: but be you partaker of the afflictions of the gospel according to the power of Elohim; [Rom 1:16](#); [Acts 21:33](#); [Eph 3:1](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [Col 4:18](#); [Phlm 1:1](#); [Phlm 1:9](#); [Phlm 1:13](#); [\[Phil 1:7\]](#); [\[2Tim 2:9\]](#);

9 Who has saved us, and called *us* with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Yahushua the Messiah before the world began, [Eph 1:3](#); [Titus 3:4-6](#); [\[Eph 1:4\]](#); [\[Eph 1:9\]](#); [\[Col 1:22\]](#); [\[Titus 2:12\]](#); [\[Titus 3:5\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:20\]](#);

10 But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Yahushua the Messiah, who has abolished death, and has brought life and immortality to light through the gospel: [Rom 16:25](#); [Eph 1:9](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:26](#); [Titus 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:20](#); [Isa 25:8](#); [Heb 2:14](#); [\[Col 1:25\]](#);

11 Whereunto I am appointed a preacher, and an apostle, and a teacher of the Gentiles. [Acts 9:15](#); [Acts 13:2](#); [Acts 22:21](#); [Gal 1:15](#); [Gal 2:8](#); [Eph 3:8](#); [1Tim 2:7](#); [\[Rom 11:13\]](#);

12 For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day. [\[1Pet 1:4\]](#);

and to persist in the form and truth of that doctrine which he had learned of him

13 Hold fast the form of sound words, which you have heard of me, in faith and love which is in Yahushua the Messiah. [1Tim 3:14](#);

14 That good thing which was committed unto you keep by the Holy Spirit which dwelleth in us.

Phygellus and Hermogenes, and such like, are noted, and Onesiphorus is highly commended

15 This you knowest, that all they which are in Asia be turned away from me; of whom are Phygellus and Hermogenes. [Acts 19:10](#); [[Acts 19:9](#)];

16 The Lord give mercy unto the house of Onesiphorus; for he oft refreshed me, and was not ashamed of my chain: [2Tim 4:19](#); [[Matt 25:36](#)];

17 But, when he was in Rome, he sought me out very diligently, and found *me*.

18 The Lord grant unto him that he may find mercy of the Lord in that day: and in how many things he ministered unto me at Ephesus, you knowest very well.

Timothy is exhorted again to constancy and perseverance, and to do the duty of a faithful servant of the Lord in dividing the word aright, and staying profane and vain babblings

- 1** You therefore, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Yahushua the Messiah.
- 2** And the things that you have heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit you to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also. [Titus 1:5](#);
- 3** You therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Yahushua the Messiah.
- 4** No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of *this* life; that he may please him who has chosen him to be a soldier. [1Cor 9:25](#);
- 5** And if a man also strive for masteries, yet is he not crowned, except he strive lawfully.
- 6** The husbandman that laboreth must be first partaker of the fruits. [1Cor 9:10](#);
- 7** Consider what I say; and the Lord give you understanding in all things.
- 8** Remember that Yahushua the Messiah of the seed of David was raised from the dead according to my gospel: [2Sam 7:12](#); [Ps 132:11](#); [Isa 11:1](#); [Matt 1:1](#); [Acts 2:30](#); [Acts 13:23](#); [Rom 1:3](#);
- 9** Wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, *even* unto bonds; but the word of Elohim is not bound. [Eph 3:13](#); [Col 1:24](#); [Eph 3:1](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [Phil 1:7](#); [Col 4:3](#); [Col 4:18](#); [2Tim 1:8](#);
- 10** Therefore I endure all things for the elect's sakes, that they may also obtain the salvation which is in Yahushua the Messiah with eternal glory. [\[Col 1:24\]](#);
- 11** *It is* a faithful saying: For if we be dead with *him*, we shall also live with *him*: [Rom 6:8](#); [\[Rom 8:17\]](#); [\[2Cor 4:10\]](#); [\[Phil 3:10\]](#);
- 12** If we suffer, we shall also reign with *him*: if we deny *him*, he also will deny us: [Rom 8:17](#); [2Cor 4:10](#); [Phil 3:10](#); [1Pet 4:13](#); [Matt 10:33](#); [Mark 8:38](#); [Luke 9:26](#); [Luke 12:9](#); [\[Matt 5:10\]](#); [\[Matt 10:32\]](#); [\[1John 2:23\]](#);
- 13** If we believe not, yet he abideth faithful: he cannot deny himself. [Num 23:19](#); [Rom 3:3](#); [Rom 9:6](#); [\[Titus 1:2\]](#);
- 14** Of these things put *them* in remembrance, charging *them* before the Lord that they strive not about words to no profit, *but* to the subverting of the hearers.
- 15** Study to show thyself approved unto Elohim, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.
- 16** But shun profane *and* vain babblings: for they will increase unto more ungodliness. [1Tim 1:4](#); [1Tim 4:7](#); [1Tim 6:20](#); [Titus 1:14](#); [Titus 3:9](#);

Of Hymenaeus and Philetus

- 17** And their word will eat as does a canker: of whom is Hymenaeus and Philetus; [\[1Tim 1:20\]](#);
- 18** Who concerning the truth have erred, saying that the resurrection is past already; and overthrow the faith of some.

The foundation of the Lord is sure

- 19** Nevertheless the foundation of Elohim standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are his. And, Let every one calls upon the name of the Messiah depart from iniquity. [John 10:14](#);
- 20** But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. [Rom 9:21](#); [\[1Tim 3:15\]](#);
- 21** If a man therefore purge himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, *and* prepared unto every good work.

He is taught whereof to beware, and what to follow after, and in what manner the servant of the Lord ought to behave himself

22 Flee also youthful lusts: but follow righteousness, faith, love, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart. [1Tim 6:11](#); [[1Cor 1:2](#)]; [[Heb 12:14](#)];

23 But foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strifes. [1Tim 1:4](#); [1Tim 6:4](#); [Titus 3:9](#);

24 And the servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all *men*, apt to teach, patient, [1Tim 3:2](#);

25 In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if Elohim perhaps will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth; [Gal 6:1](#);

26 And *that* they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will.

He warns him of the times to come

- 1** This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come. [1Tim 4:1](#); [2Pet 2:3](#); [Jude 1:18](#); [[Matt 24:12](#)]; [[2Pet 2:1](#)]; [[2Pet 3:3](#)];
- 2** For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, [[Matt 15:6](#)]; [[Mark 7:13](#)];
- 3** Without natural affection, trucebreakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good,
- 4** Traitors, heady, highminded, lovers of pleasures more than lovers of Elohim;
- 5** Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away. [Matt 18:17](#); [Rom 16:17](#); [2Thess 3:6](#); [Titus 3:10](#); [2John 1:10](#);

describes the enemies of the truth

- 6** For of this sort are they which creep into houses, and lead captive silly women laden with sins, led away with various lusts, [Matt 23:13](#); [Titus 1:11](#); [[Mark 12:40](#)]; [[Luke 20:47](#)];
- 7** Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.
- 8** Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, so do these also resist the truth: men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith. [Exod 7:11](#); [[Acts 13:8](#)];
- 9** But they shall proceed no further: for their folly shall be manifest unto all *men*, as theirs also was.

propounds unto him his own example

- 10** But you have fully known my doctrine, manner of life, purpose, faith, longsuffering, love, patience,
- 11** Persecutions, afflictions, which came unto me at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra; what persecutions I endured: but out of *them* all the Lord delivered me. [Acts 13:50](#); [Acts 14:2](#); [Acts 14:19](#); [Ps 34:19](#); [2Cor 1:10](#); [[Ps 34:18](#)];
- 12** Yes, and all that will live godly in Yahushua the Messiah shall suffer persecution. [Matt 16:24](#); [Luke 24:26](#); [John 17:14](#); [Acts 14:22](#); [1Thess 3:3](#); [[Ps 34:19](#)];
- 13** But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived.
- 14** But continue you in the things which you have learned and have been assured of, knowing of whom you have learned *them*; [[1Tim 4:6](#)];
- 15** And that from a child you have known the holy scriptures, which are able to make you wise unto salvation through faith which is in Yahushua the Messiah.

and commends the holy scriptures

- 16** All scripture *is* given by inspiration of Elohim, and *is* profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: [2Pet 1:20](#); [[2Pet 1:21](#)];
- 17** That the man of Elohim may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.

He exhorts him to do his duty with all care and diligence

1 I charge you therefore before Elohim, and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom; [Rom 1:9](#); [Rom 9:1](#); [2Cor 1:23](#); [2Cor 11:31](#); [Gal 1:20](#); [Phil 1:8](#); [1Thess 2:5](#); [1Tim 5:21](#); [1Tim 6:13](#);

2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.

3 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; [\[Heb 13:9\]](#); [\[Jude 1:18\]](#);

4 And they shall turn away *their* ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.

5 But watch you in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, make full proof of thy ministry.

certifies him of the nearness of his death

6 For I am now ready to be offered, and the time of my departure is at hand. [2Pet 1:14](#);

7 I have fought a good fight, I have finished *my* course, I have kept the faith: [\[1Cor 9:24\]](#); [\[Phil 3:14\]](#);

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing. [1Cor 9:25](#); [1Pet 5:4](#); [\[Jas 1:12\]](#);

wills him to come speedily unto him, and to bring Marcus with him, and certain things which he wrote for

9 Do thy diligence to come shortly unto me:

10 For Demas has forsaken me, having loved this present world, and is departed unto Thessalonica; Crescens to Galatia, Titus unto Dalmatia. [Col 4:14](#); [Phlm 1:24](#);

11 Only Luke is with me. Take Mark, and bring him with you: for he is profitable to me for the ministry. [Col 4:14](#); [Acts 15:37](#); [Col 4:10](#); [Phlm 1:24](#);

12 And Tychicus have I sent to Ephesus. [Acts 20:4](#); [Col 4:7](#); [\[Eph 6:22\]](#); [\[Titus 3:12\]](#);

13 The cloke that I left at Troas with Carpus, when you come, bring *with you*, and the books, *but* especially the parchments.

warns him to beware of Alexander the smith

14 Alexander the coppersmith did me much evil: the Lord reward him according to his works: [1Tim 1:20](#);

15 Of whom be you ware also; for he has greatly withstood our words.

informs him what had befallen him at his first answering

16 At my first answer no man stood with me, but all *men* forsook me: *I pray Elohim* that it may not be laid to their charge.

17 Notwithstanding the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me; that by me the preaching might be fully known, and *that* all the Gentiles might hear: and I was delivered out of the mouth of the lion.

18 And the Lord shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve *me* unto his heavenly kingdom: to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.

and soon after he concludes

19 Salute Prisca and Aquila, and the household of Onesiphorus. [Acts 18:2](#); [Rom 16:3](#); [\[2Tim 1:16\]](#);

20 Erastus abode at Corinth: but Trophimus have I left at Miletum sick. [\[Acts 20:4\]](#); [\[Acts 21:29\]](#); [\[Rom 16:23\]](#);

21 Do thy diligence to come before winter. Eubulus greeteth you, and Pudens, and Linus, and Claudia, and all the brethren.

22 The Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with thy spirit. Grace *be* with you. Amen.

Titus

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

TITUS ONE

For what end Titus was left in Crete

1 Paul, a servant of Elohim, and an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah, according to the faith of Elohim's elect, and the acknowledging of the truth which is after godliness;

2 In hope of eternal life, which Elohim, that cannot lie, promised before the world began; [Num 23:19](#); [2Tim 2:13](#); [Rom 16:25](#); [Eph 1:9](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:26](#); [1Pet 1:20](#); [[2Tim 1:10](#)];

3 But has in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of Elohim our Saviour; [Acts 20:24](#); [Gal 1:1](#);

4 To Titus, *mine* own son after the common faith: Grace, mercy, *and* peace, from Elohim the Father and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah our Saviour. [2Cor 2:12](#); [2Cor 7:14](#); [2Cor 8:6](#); [2Cor 8:16](#); [Gal 2:3](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [Col 1:2](#); [2Tim 1:2](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [[Acts 20:24](#)]; [[Gal 1:1](#)]; [[Col 1:25](#)];

5 For this cause left I you in Crete, that you should set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed you: [2Tim 2:2](#);

How they that are to be chosen ministers ought to be qualified

6 If any be blameless, the husband of one wife, having faithful children not accused of riot or unruly. [1Tim 3:2](#);

7 For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of Elohim; not selfwilled, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre; [Matt 24:45](#); [1Cor 4:1](#); [1Tim 3:15](#); [Lev 10:9](#); [Eph 5:18](#); [1Tim 3:3](#); [1Pet 5:2](#);

8 But a lover of hospitality, a lover of good men, sober, just, holy, temperate; [1Tim 3:2](#);

9 Holding fast the faithful word as he has been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convict the gainsayers.

10 For there are many unruly and vain talkers and deceivers, specially they of the circumcision: [Acts 15:1](#);

The mouths of evil teachers to be stopped

11 Whose mouths must be stopped, who subvert whole houses, teaching things which they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake. [Matt 23:13](#); [2Tim 3:6](#); [[Mark 12:40](#)]; [[Luke 20:47](#)];

and what manner of men they be

12 One of themselves, *even* a prophet of their own, said, The Cretians *are* always liars, evil beasts, slow bellies.

13 This witness is true. Wherefore rebuke them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith;

14 Not giving heed to Jewish fables, and commandments of men, that turn from the truth. [Isa 29:13](#); [Matt 15:9](#); [Col 2:22](#); [1Tim 1:4](#); [1Tim 4:7](#); [1Tim 6:20](#); [[Mark 7:7](#)]; [[2Tim 2:16](#)]; [[Titus 3:9](#)];

15 Unto the pure all things *are* pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving *is* nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled. [Matt 15:11](#); [Acts 10:15](#); [Rom 14:20](#); [Matt 23:35](#); [Rom 14:23](#); [[Matt 23:26](#)]; [[Mark 7:15](#)]; [[Luke 11:39](#)];

16 They profess that they know Elohim; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate.

TITUS TWO

Directions given unto Titus both for his doctrine and life

- 1** But speak you the things which become sound doctrine:
- 2** That the aged men be sober, grave, temperate, sound in faith, in love, in patience.
- 3** The aged women likewise, that *they be* in behaviour as becometh holiness, not false accusers, not given to much wine, teachers of good things; [1Tim 2:9](#); [1Pet 3:3](#); [1Tim 5:13](#);
- 4** That they may teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children,
- 5** *To be* discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of Elohim be not blasphemed. [Gen 3:16](#); [1Cor 14:34](#); [Eph 5:22](#); [Col 3:18](#); [1Pet 3:1](#);
- 6** Young men likewise exhort to be sober minded.
- 7** In all things showing thyself a pattern of good works: in doctrine showing uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity, [1Tim 4:12](#); [1Pet 5:3](#);
- 8** Sound speech, that cannot be condemned; that he that is of the contrary part may be ashamed, having no evil thing to say of you. [1Pet 2:12](#); [1Pet 2:15](#); [1Pet 3:16](#);
- 9** *Exhort* servants to be obedient unto their own masters, *and* to please *them* well in all *things*; not answering again; [Eph 6:5](#); [Col 3:22](#); [1Tim 6:1-2](#); [1Pet 2:18](#); [[1Tim 6:1](#)];

Of the duty of servants

- 10** Not purloining, but showing all good fidelity; that they may adorn the doctrine of Elohim our Saviour in all things.
- 11** For the grace of Elohim that bringeth salvation has appeared to all men,
- 12** Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world; [Eph 1:4](#); [Col 1:22](#); [2Tim 1:9](#); [1John 2:16](#);
- 13** Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great Elohim and our Saviour Yahushua the Messiah; [1Cor 1:7](#); [Phil 3:20](#);
- 14** Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works. [Gal 1:4](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [Eph 2:10](#); [[Exod 19:5](#)]; [[Ps 135:4](#)]; [[Mark 10:45](#)];
- 15** These things speak, and exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Let no man despise you. [1Tim 4:12](#);

TITUS THREE

Titus is yet further directed by Paul, both concerning the things that he should teach and not teach

- 1** Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work, [Rom 13:1-3](#); [1Pet 2:13](#); [[Rom 13:1](#)];
- 2** To speak evil of no man, to be no brawlers, *but* gentle, showing all meekness unto all men. [Phil 4:5](#);
- 3** For we ourselves also were sometimes foolish, disobedient, deceived, serving various lusts and pleasures, living in malice and envy, hateful, *and* hating one another. [1Cor 6:11](#); [Eph 2:1](#); [Col 3:7](#); [1Pet 4:3](#); [[Eph 2:2](#)];
- 4** But after that the kindness and love of Elohim our Saviour toward man appeared, [[Acts 15:11](#)]; [[2Tim 1:9](#)];
- 5** Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit; [Eph 1:4](#); [2Tim 1:9](#); [Rom 3:20](#); [Rom 3:28](#); [Rom 4:2](#); [Rom 4:6](#); [Rom 9:11](#); [Rom 11:6](#); [Gal 2:16](#); [Eph 2:9](#); [Acts 15:11](#); [Eph 2:4](#); [[John 3:5](#)]; [[Eph 2:5](#)]; [[Eph 5:26](#)];
- 6** Which he shed on us abundantly through Yahushua the Messiah our Saviour; [Ezek 36:25](#);
- 7** That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.
- 8** *This is* a faithful saying, and these things I will that you affirm constantly, that they which have believed in Elohim might be careful to maintain good works. These things are good and profitable unto men.
- 9** But avoid foolish questions, and genealogies, and contentions, and strivings about the law; for they are unprofitable and vain. [1Tim 1:4](#); [1Tim 4:7](#); [1Tim 6:20](#); [Titus 1:14](#); [[1Tim 6:4](#)]; [[2Tim 2:16](#)]; [[2Tim 2:23](#)];

He is to reject obstinate heretics

- 10** After the first and second admonition, reject a man who is a heretic; [Matt 18:17](#); [Rom 16:17](#); [2Thess 3:6](#); [2Tim 3:5](#); [2John 1:10](#);
- 11** Knowing that he that is such is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself.

He appoints him time and place wherein he should come unto him

- 12** When I shall send areemas unto you, or Tychicus, be diligent to come unto me to Nicopolis: for I have determined there to winter. [Acts 20:4](#); [Eph 6:21](#); [2Tim 4:12](#);
- 13** Bring Zenas the lawyer and Apollos on their journey diligently, that nothing be wanting unto them. [Acts 18:24](#); [1Cor 1:12](#);
- 14** And let ours also learn to maintain good works for necessary uses, that they be not unfruitful. [[2Pet 1:8](#)];
- 15** All that are with me salute you. Greet them that love us in the faith. Grace *be* with you all. Amen.

Philemon

Paul rejoices to hear of the faith and love of Philemon, whom he desires to forgive his servant Onesimus, and lovingly to receive him again

- 1** Paul, a prisoner of Yahushua the Messiah, and Timothy *our* brother, unto Philemon our dearly beloved, and fellowlabourer, [Eph 3:1](#); [Eph 4:1](#); [\[2Tim 1:8\]](#);
- 2** And to *our* beloved Apphia, and Archippus our fellowsoldier, and to the church in thy house: [Col 4:17](#); [Rom 16:5](#); [1Cor 16:19](#); [Col 4:15](#);
- 3** Grace to you, and peace, from Elohim our Father and the Lord Yahushua the Messiah.
- 4** I thank my Elohim, making mention of you always in my prayers, [1Thess 1:2](#); [2Thess 1:3](#);
- 5** Hearing of thy love and faith, which you have toward the Lord Yahushua, and toward all saints;
- 6** That the communication of thy faith may become effectual by the acknowledging of every good thing which is in you in Yahushua the Messiah.
- 7** For we have great joy and consolation in thy love, because the bowels of the saints are refreshed by you, brother.
- 8** Wherefore, though I might be much bold in the Messiah to enjoin you that which is convenient,
- 9** Yet for love's sake I rather beseech you, being such an one as Paul the aged, and now also a prisoner of Yahushua the Messiah. [\[2Tim 1:8\]](#);
- 10** I beseech you for my son Onesimus, whom I have begotten in my bonds: [Col 4:9](#); [1Cor 4:15](#); [Gal 4:19](#);
- 11** Which in time past was to you unprofitable, but now profitable to you and to me:
- 12** Whom I have sent again: you therefore receive him, that is, mine own bowels:
- 13** Whom I would have retained with me, that in thy stead he might have ministered unto me in the bonds of the gospel: [\[2Tim 1:8\]](#);
- 14** But without thy mind would I do nothing; that thy benefit should not be as it were of necessity, but willingly.
- 15** For perhaps he therefore departed for a season, that you should receive him for ever;
- 16** Not now as a servant, but above a servant, a brother beloved, specially to me, but how much more unto you, both in the flesh, and in the Lord?
- 17** If you count me therefore a partner, receive him as myself.
- 18** If he has wronged you, or oweth you ought, put that on mine account;
- 19** I Paul have written *it* with mine own hand, I will repay *it*: albeit I do not say to you how you owest unto me even thine own self besides.
- 20** Yes, brother, let me have joy of you in the Lord: refresh my bowels in the Lord.
- 21** Having confidence in thy obedience I wrote unto you, knowing that you will also do more than I say.
- 22** But withal prepare me also a lodging: for I trust that through your prayers I shall be given unto you. [Heb 13:2](#); [Phil 1:25](#);
- 23** There salute you Epaphras, my fellowprisoner in Yahushua the Messiah; [Col 1:7](#); [Col 4:12](#);
- 24** Marcus, Aristarchus, Demas, Lucas, my fellowlabourers. [Acts 12:12](#); [Acts 12:25](#); [Acts 15:37](#); [Col 4:10](#); [2Tim 4:11](#); [1Pet 5:13](#); [Acts 19:29](#); [Acts 20:4](#); [Acts 27:2](#); [Col 4:14](#); [2Tim 4:10](#);
- 25** The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with your spirit. Amen.

Hebrews

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#)

HEBREWS ONE

the Messiah in these last times coming to us from the Father

1 Elohim, who at sundry times and in various manners spoke in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,

2 Has in these last days spoken unto us by *his* Son, whom he has appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds; [Matt 21:38](#); [Gen 1:3](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [John 1:3](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:16](#); [\[Ps 82:8\]](#); [\[Luke 20:14\]](#); [\[John 1:10\]](#);

3 Who being the brightness of *his* glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; [2Cor 4:4](#); [Phil 2:6](#); [Col 1:15](#); [\[Eph 1:20\]](#); [\[Heb 12:2\]](#);

is preferred above the angels, both in person and office

4 Being made so much better than the angels, as he has by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. [Phil 2:9](#); [\[Ps 89:26\]](#);

5 For unto which of the angels said he at any time, you **are my Son, this day have I begotten you?** And again, **I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son?** [Ps 2:7](#); [Acts 13:33](#); [Heb 5:5](#); [2Sam 7:14](#); [1Chr 22:10](#); [\[1Chr 17:13\]](#);

6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of Elohim worship him. [Ps 97:7](#);

7 And of the angels he saith, **Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.** [Ps 104:4](#);

8 But unto the Son *he saith*, **Thy throne, O Elohim, *is* for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness *is* the sceptre of thy kingdom.** [Ps 45:6](#); [\[Luke 1:33\]](#); [\[John 12:34\]](#); [\[Rom 9:5\]](#);

9 **You have loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore Elohim, *even* thy Elohim, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.** [\[Ps 33:5\]](#); [\[1John 2:20\]](#);

10 And, you, **Lord, in the beginning have laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands:** [Ps 102:25](#);

11 **They shall perish; but you remainest; and they all shall wax old as does a garment; [Isa 51:6](#); [2Pet 3:7](#); [2Pet 3:10](#); [\[Matt 24:35\]](#); [\[Mark 13:31\]](#); [\[Luke 21:33\]](#);**

12 **And as a vesture shall you fold them up, and they shall be changed: but you are the same, and thy years shall not fail.** [\[Job 36:26\]](#); [\[Ps 102:26\]](#);

13 But to which of the angels said he at any time, **Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?** [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Eph 1:20](#); [Heb 10:12](#); [\[Matt 22:44\]](#); [\[Mark 12:36\]](#); [\[Luke 20:42\]](#);

14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

We ought to be obedient to Yahushua the Messiah

1 Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let *them* slip.

2 For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward; [Acts 7:53](#); [Gal 3:19](#); [Gen 19:17](#); [Gen 19:26](#); [Deut 27:26](#);

3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard *him*; [Heb 12:25](#); [Matt 4:17](#); [Mark 1:14](#);

4 Elohim also bearing *them* witness, both with signs and wonders, and with various miracles, and gifts of the Holy Spirit, according to his own will? [Mark 16:20](#); [Acts 14:3](#); [Acts 19:11](#);

and that because he vouchsafed to take our nature upon him

5 For unto the angels has he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak.

6 But one in a certain place testified, saying, **What is man, that you are mindful of him? or the son of man, that you visitest him?** [Ps 8:4](#); [\[Job 7:17\]](#); [\[Ps 144:3\]](#);

7 **You madest him a little lower than the angels; you crownedst him with glory and honour:**

8 **You have put all things in subjection under his feet.** For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing *that is* not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him. [Ps 8:6](#); [Matt 28:18](#); [1Cor 15:27](#); [Eph 1:22](#); [\[Luke 10:22\]](#); [\[John 3:35\]](#); [\[John 17:2\]](#);

9 But we see Yahushua, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of Elohim should taste death for every man. [Acts 2:33](#); [Phil 2:7-8](#); [\[Phil 2:8\]](#);

10 For it became him, for whom *are* all things, and by whom *are* all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.

11 For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified *are* all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren, [Acts 17:26](#); [\[John 20:17\]](#);

12 Saying, **I will declare thy name unto my brethren, in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto you.** [Ps 22:22](#);

13 And again, **I will put my trust in him. And again, Behold I and the children which Elohim has given me.** [Ps 18:2](#); [Isa 8:18](#); [\[2Sam 22:3\]](#); [\[John 17:12\]](#);

as it was necessary

14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; [John 1:14](#); [Phil 2:7](#); [Isa 25:8](#); [Hos 13:14](#); [1Cor 15:54](#); [2Tim 1:10](#); [\[Phil 2:8\]](#);

15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. [Rom 8:15](#);

16 For verily he took not on *him the nature of* angels; but he took on *him* the seed of Abraham.

17 Wherefore in all things he had to be made like *his* brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things *pertaining to* Elohim, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people. [Phil 2:7](#); [Heb 4:15](#); [\[Phil 2:8\]](#);

18 For in that he himself has suffered being tempted, he is able to succour them that are tempted. [Heb 4:15-16](#); [\[Heb 4:15\]](#);

the Messiah is more worthy than Moses

1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Yahushua the Messiah; [Heb 4:14](#); [Heb 6:20](#); [Heb 8:1](#); [Heb 9:11](#);

2 Who was faithful to him that appointed him, as also Moses *was faithful* in all his house. [Num 12:7](#);

3 For this *man* was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, inasmuch as he who has built the house has more honour than the house.

4 For every house is built by some *man*; but he that built all things *is* Elohim. [2Cor 5:17-18](#); [Eph 2:10](#);

5 And Moses verily *was* faithful in all his house, as a servant, for a testimony of those things which were to be spoken after; [Deut 18:15](#); [Deut 18:18](#);

6 But the Messiah as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end. [1Cor 3:16](#); [1Cor 6:19](#); [2Cor 6:16](#); [1Pet 2:5](#); [Rom 5:2](#);

therefore if we believe not in him, we shall be more worthy punishment than hardhearted Israel

7 Wherefore (as the Holy Spirit saith, **To day if you will hear his voice**, [Ps 95:7](#); [Heb 4:7](#); [[Heb 3:15](#)];

8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness: [Exod 17:2](#);

9 When your fathers tempted me, proved me, and saw my works forty years. [[Ps 95:9](#)];

10 Wherefore I was grieved with that generation, and said, They do always err in *their* heart; and they have not known my ways.

11 So I swore in my wrath, They shall not enter into my rest.) [Num 14:21](#); [Deut 1:34](#);

12 Take heed, brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living Elohim.

13 But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.

14 For we are made partakers of the Messiah, if we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end;

15 While it is said, **To day if you will hear his voice, harden not your hearts, as in the provocation.** [Heb 3:7](#);

16 For some, when they had heard, did provoke: howbeit not all that came out of Egypt by Moses.

17 But with whom was he grieved forty years? *was it* not with them that had sinned, whose carcases fell in the wilderness? [Num 14:36](#); [Ps 106:26](#); [1Cor 10:10](#); [Jude 1:5](#); [[Num 14:29](#)]; [[Ps 95:10](#)];

18 And to whom swore he that they should not enter into his rest, but to them that believed not? [Deut 1:34](#);

19 So we see that they could not enter in because of unbelief.

The rest of Messiahncs is attained by faith

- 1** Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left *us* of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.
- 2** For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard *it*.
- 3** For we which have believed do enter into rest, as he said, **As I have sworn in my wrath, if they shall enter into my rest:** although the works were finished from the foundation of the world. [Ps 95:11](#);
- 4** For he spake in a certain place of the seventh *day* on this wise, **And Elohim did rest the seventh day from all his works.** [Gen 2:2](#); [Exod 20:11](#); [Exod 31:17](#); [\[Deut 5:12\]](#);
- 5** And in this *place* again, **If they shall enter into my rest.**
- 6** Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief:
- 7** Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David, **To day,** after so long a time; as it is said, **To day if you will hear his voice, harden not your hearts.** [Ps 95:7](#); [Heb 3:7](#);
- 8** For if Joshua had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day.
- 9** There remains therefore a Sabbath rest to the people of Elohim.
- 10** For he that is entered into his rest, he also has ceased from his own works, as Elohim *did* from his.
- 11** Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.

The power of Elohim's word

- 12** For the word of Elohim *is* quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of being and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and *is* a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart. [Eccl 12:11](#); [Isa 49:2](#); [Eph 6:17](#); [\[Ps 149:6\]](#); [\[Rev 1:16\]](#); [\[Rev 2:16\]](#);
- 13** Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things *are* naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do. [Ps 33:13](#); [\[Job 26:6\]](#); [\[Job 34:22\]](#); [\[Ps 139:8\]](#);

By our high priest Yahushua, the Son of Elohim

- 14** Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Yahushua the Son of Elohim, let us hold fast *our* profession. [Heb 3:1](#); [Heb 6:20](#); [Heb 8:1](#); [Heb 9:11](#);
- 15** For we have not a high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as *we are*, *yet* without sin. [Heb 2:18](#); [Phil 2:7](#); [Isa 53:9](#); [2Cor 5:21](#); [1Pet 2:22](#); [1John 3:5](#); [\[Phil 2:8\]](#); [\[Heb 2:17\]](#);

we may and must go boldly to the throne of grace

- 16** Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need. [Rom 3:25](#);

The honour of our Saviour's priesthood

1 For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things *pertaining* to Elohim, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins:

2 Who can have compassion on the ignorant, and on them that are out of the way; for that he himself also is compassed with infirmity.

3 And by reason hereof he ought, as for the people, so also for himself, to offer for sins. [Lev 9:7](#); [Lev 16:6](#); [Heb 7:26](#); [[Heb 7:27](#)];

4 And no man taketh this honour unto himself, but he that is called of Elohim, as *was* Aaron. [2Chr 26:16](#); [Exod 28:1](#); [1Chr 23:13](#); [[Acts 13:2](#)];

5 So also the Messiah glorified not himself to be made a high priest; but he that said unto him, you **are my Son, to day have I begotten you**. [Ps 2:7](#); [Acts 13:33](#); [Heb 1:5](#);

6 As he saith also in another *place*, you **are a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec**. [Ps 110:4](#); [Heb 7:17](#);

7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared; [Matt 26:39](#); [Matt 27:46](#); [Matt 27:50](#); [John 17:1](#); [[Luke 22:44](#)];

8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered; [Phil 2:6](#);

9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

10 Called of Elohim a high priest after the order of Melchisedec.

Negligence in the knowledge thereof is reprov'd

11 Of whom we have many things to say, and hard to be uttered, seeing you are dull of hearing.

12 For when for the time you ought to be teachers, you have need that one teach you again which *be* the first principles of the oracles of Elohim; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. [1Cor 3:1-3](#); [[1Cor 3:2](#)];

13 For every one that useth milk *is* unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe.

14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, *even* those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.

He exhorts not to fall back from the faith

1 Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of the Messiah, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward Elohim,

2 Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands, and of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment.

3 And this will we do, if Elohim permit. [Acts 18:21](#); [1Cor 4:19](#); [Jas 4:15](#);

4 For *it is* impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Spirit, [Matt 12:31](#); [Heb 10:26](#); [1John 5:16](#); [[Matt 12:45](#)]; [[Luke 11:26](#)]; [[2Pet 2:20](#)];

5 And have tasted the good word of Elohim, and the powers of the world to come, [[Luke 9:62](#)];

6 If they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of Elohim anew, and put *him* to an open shame.

7 For the earth which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed, receiveth blessing from Elohim:

8 But that which beareth thorns and briers *is* rejected, and *is* nigh unto cursing; whose end *is* to be burned.

9 But, beloved, we are persuaded better things of you, and things that accompany salvation, though we thus speak.

10 For Elohim *is* not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which you have showed toward his name, in that you have ministered to the saints, and do minister. [Prov 14:31](#); [Matt 10:42](#); [Matt 25:40](#); [Mark 9:41](#); [John 13:20](#);

but to be steadfast

11 And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end:

diligent, and patient to wait upon Elohim

12 That you be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.

because Elohim is most sure in his promise

13 For when Elohim made promise to Abraham, because he could swear by no greater, he swore by himself, [[Gen 22:16](#)]; [[Ps 89:35](#)]; [[Luke 1:73](#)];

14 Saying, **Surely blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply you.** [Gen 12:3](#); [Gen 17:4](#); [Gen 22:16](#); [Ps 105:9](#); [Luke 1:73](#);

15 And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise.

16 For men verily swear by the greater: and an oath for confirmation *is* to them an end of all strife. [Exod 22:11](#);

17 Wherein Elohim, willing more abundantly to show unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed *it* by an oath: [[Ps 89:35](#)]; [[Isa 46:10](#)]; [[Luke 1:73](#)];

18 That by two immutable things, in which *it was* impossible for Elohim to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us: [[1Cor 9:24](#)];

19 Which *hope* we have as an anchor of the being, both sure and steadfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;

20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, *even* Yahushua, made a high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec. [Heb 3:1](#); [Heb 4:14](#); [Heb 8:1](#); [Heb 9:11](#); [[Ps 110:4](#)];

the Messiah Yahushua is a priest after the order of Melchisedec

- 1** For this Melchisedec, king of Salem, priest of the most high Elohim, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him; [Gen 14:18](#);
- 2** To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace; [\[Ps 85:10\]](#);
- 3** Without father, without mother, without descent, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life; but made like unto the Son of Elohim; abideth a priest continually.
- 4** Now consider how great this man *was*, unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave the tenth of the spoils.
- 5** And verily they that are of the sons of Levi, who receive the office of the priesthood, have a commandment to take tithes of the people according to the law, that is, of their brethren, though they come out of the loins of Abraham: [Num 18:21](#); [Deut 18:1](#); [Josh 14:4](#); [2Chr 31:5](#);
- 6** But he whose descent is not counted from them received tithes of Abraham, and blessed him that had the promises. [Gen 14:20](#);
- 7** And without all contradiction the less is blessed of the better.
- 8** And here men that die receive tithes; but there he *receiveth them*, of whom it is witnessed that he liveth.
- 9** And as I may so say, Levi also, who receiveth tithes, payed tithes in Abraham.
- 10** For he was yet in the loins of his father, when Melchisedec met him.

and so far more excellent than the priests of Aaron's order

- 11** If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need *was there* that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron? [Gal 2:21](#);
- 12** For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.
- 13** For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar.
- 14** For *it is* evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spoke nothing concerning priesthood. [Isa 11:1](#); [Matt 1:3](#); [\[John 4:22\]](#);
- 15** And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest,
- 16** Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life.
- 17** For he testifieth, you **are a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec**. [Ps 110:4](#); [Heb 5:6](#);
- 18** For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof. [\[Rom 3:20\]](#); [\[Rom 7:7\]](#); [\[Rom 8:3\]](#); [\[Gal 2:16\]](#);
- 19** For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope *did*; by the which we draw nigh unto Elohim. [Acts 13:39](#); [Rom 3:28](#); [Rom 8:3](#); [Gal 2:16](#); [John 1:17](#); [Rom 3:21](#);
- 20** And inasmuch as not without an oath *he was made priest*:
- 21** (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, **The Lord swore and will not repent, you are a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec**;) [Ps 110:4](#);
- 22** By so much was Yahushua made a surety of a better testament.
- 23** And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death:
- 24** But this *man*, because he continueth ever, has an unchangeable priesthood.
- 25** Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto Elohim by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them. [1Tim 2:5](#); [1John 2:1](#); [\[Rom 3:28\]](#); [\[Rom 8:34\]](#);
- 26** For such a high priest became us, *who is* holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens; [\[Heb 5:3\]](#);

27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself. [Lev 9:7](#); [Lev 16:6](#); [Heb 5:3](#);

28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, *maketh* the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.

By the eternal priesthood of the Messiah the Levitical priesthood of Aaron is abolished

1 Now of the things which we have spoken *this is* the sum: We have such a high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens; [Heb 3:1](#); [Heb 4:14](#); [Heb 6:20](#); [Heb 9:11](#); [Eph 1:20](#); [Col 3:1](#); [Heb 12:2](#);

2 A minister of the sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle, which the Lord pitched, and not man.

3 For every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices: wherefore *it is* of necessity that this man have somewhat also to offer. [Eph 5:2](#);

4 For if he were on earth, he should not be a priest, seeing that there are priests that offer gifts according to the law:

5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of Elohim when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, **See**, saith he, **that you make all things according to the pattern showed to you in the mount.** [Col 2:17](#); [Heb 10:1](#); [Exod 25:40](#); [Acts 7:44](#); [[Exod 26:30](#)];

6 But now has he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. [2Cor 3:6](#);

and the temporal covenant with the fathers, by the eternal covenant of the Gospel

7 For if that first *covenant* had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.

8 For finding fault with them, he saith, **Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:** [Jer 31:31-34](#); [[Jer 31:31](#)]; [[Rom 11:26](#)]; [[2Cor 3:6](#)]; [[Heb 10:16](#)];

9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord.

10 For this *is* the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a Elohim, and they shall be to me a people: [Jer 31:33](#); [Zech 8:8](#); [[John 6:45](#)]; [[2Cor 3:3](#)]; [[Rev 21:7](#)];

11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest. [John 6:45](#); [John 6:65](#); [1John 2:27](#);

12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.

13 In that he saith, A new *covenant*, he has made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old *is* ready to vanish away.

The description of the rites and bloody sacrifices of the law

- 1** Then verily the first *covenant* had also ordinances of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary. [\[Exod 25:10\];](#)
- 2** For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein *was* the candlestick, and the table, and the showbread; which is called the sanctuary. [Exod 26:1; Exod 36:1; Lev 24:5;](#)
- 3** And after the second veil, the tabernacle which is called the Holiest of all;
- 4** Which had the golden censer, and the ark of the covenant overlaid round about with gold, wherein *was* the golden pot that had manna, and Aaron's rod that budded, and the tables of the covenant; [Exod 25:10; Exod 16:33; Num 17:10; Exod 34:29; 1Kgs 8:9; 2Chr 5:10; \[Exod 25:16\]; \[Exod 25:21\];](#)
- 5** And over it the cherubims of glory shadowing the mercyseat; of which we cannot now speak particularly. [Exod 25:22; \[Exod 25:18\]; \[Exod 25:20\];](#)
- 6** Now when these things were thus ordained, the priests went always into the first tabernacle, accomplishing the service *of Elohim*. [Num 28:3; \[Luke 1:9\];](#)
- 7** But into the second *went* the high priest alone once every year, not without blood, which he offered for himself, and *for* the errors of the people: [Heb 9:25; Exod 30:10; Lev 16:2; Lev 16:34;](#)
- 8** The Holy Spirit this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing: [John 14:6;](#)
- 9** Which *was* a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience;
- 10** Which *stood* only in meats and drinks, and various washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed *on them* until the time of reformation. [Lev 11:2; Num 19:7;](#)

which are far inferior to the dignity and perfection of the blood and sacrifice of the Messiah

- 11** But the Messiah being come a high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; [Heb 3:1; Heb 4:14; Heb 6:20; Heb 8:1;](#)
- 12** Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption *for us*. [Acts 20:28; Eph 1:7; Col 1:14; Heb 10:10; 1Pet 1:19; Rev 1:5; Rev 5:9; \[Exod 29:16\]; \[1Cor 6:20\]; \[1Cor 7:23\];](#)
- 13** For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: [Lev 16:14; Num 19:4; Heb 10:4;](#)
- 14** How much more shall the blood of the Messiah, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to Elohim, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living Elohim? [1John 1:7; Rev 1:5; Gal 1:4; Eph 5:2; Titus 2:14; Luke 1:74; Rom 6:13; Gal 2:20; 1Pet 4:2; \[Gal 2:19\]; \[Col 1:14\];](#)
- 15** And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions *that were* under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance. [Rom 5:6; 1Pet 3:18; \[Rom 5:8\]; \[1Tim 2:5\];](#)
- 16** For where a testament *is*, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator.
- 17** For a testament *is* of force after men are dead: otherwise it is of no strength at all while the testator liveth. [Gal 3:15;](#)
- 18** Whereupon neither the first *testament* was dedicated without blood.
- 19** For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people, [\[Exod 29:16\]; \[Zech 9:11\];](#)
- 20** Saying, **This *is* the blood of the testament which Elohim has enjoined unto you.** [Exod 24:8; Matt 26:28;](#)
- 21** Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry. [\[2Chr 29:22\];](#)

22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.

23 *It was* therefore necessary that the patterns of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these.

24 For the Messiah is not entered into the holy places made with hands, *which are* the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of Elohim for us:

25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others; [Heb 9:7](#); [Exod 30:10](#); [Lev 16:2](#); [Lev 16:34](#); [[Lev 16:14](#)];

26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world has he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.

27 And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment: [[Job 30:23](#)];

28 So the Messiah was once offered to bear the sins of many; and to them who eagerly await His coming He will appear a second time not to bear sin but to bring salvation. [Rom 5:6](#); [Rom 5:8](#); [1Pet 3:18](#);

The weakness of the law sacrifices

- 1** For the law having a shadow of good things to come, *and* not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect. [Col 2:17](#); [Heb 8:5](#);
- 2** For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins.
- 3** But in those *sacrifices there is* a remembrance again *made* of sins every year.
- 4** For *it is* not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins. [Lev 16:14](#); [Num 19:4](#); [Heb 9:13](#);
- 5** Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, **Sacrifice and offering you wouldest not, but a body have you prepared me:** [Ps 40:6](#); [Isa 1:11](#); [Jer 6:20](#); [Amos 5:21](#); [\[Isa 50:5\]](#); [\[John 6:51\]](#); [\[John 14:31\]](#);
- 6** In burnt offerings and *sacrifices* for sin you have had no pleasure.
- 7** Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O Elohim.
- 8** Above when he said, **Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and *offering* for sin you wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure *therein*;** which are offered by the law;
- 9** Then said he, **Lo, I come to do thy will, O Elohim.** He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second.

The sacrifice of the Messiah's body once offered

- 10** By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Yahushua the Messiah once *for all*. [Heb 9:12](#); [\[John 6:51\]](#); [\[Rev 5:9\]](#);
- 11** And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins:
- 12** But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of Elohim; [Ps 110:1](#); [Acts 2:34](#); [1Cor 15:25](#); [Eph 1:20](#); [Col 3:1](#); [Heb 1:13](#);
- 13** From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool. [\[Matt 22:44\]](#); [\[Mark 12:36\]](#); [\[Luke 20:42\]](#);

for ever has taken away sins

- 14** For by one offering he has perfected for ever them that are sanctified.
- 15** *Whereof* the Holy Spirit also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,
- 16** **This *is* the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;** [Jer 31:31-34](#); [Rom 11:27](#); [Heb 8:8](#); [\[John 6:45\]](#); [\[Rom 11:26\]](#);
- 17** **And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.**
- 18** Now where remission of these *is, there is* no more offering for sin.

An exhortation to hold fast the faith with patience and thanksgiving

- 19** Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Yahushua, [John 10:9](#); [John 14:6](#); [Rom 5:2](#); [Eph 2:13](#); [Eph 3:12](#); [\[Eph 2:18\]](#);
- 20** By a new and living way, which he has consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;
- 21** And *having* a high priest over the house of Elohim;
- 22** Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water. [Ezek 36:25](#); [\[1Cor 6:11\]](#); [\[Heb 12:24\]](#);
- 23** Let us hold fast the profession of *our* faith without wavering; (for he *is* faithful that promised;)
- 24** And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works:

- 25** Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some *is*; but exhorting *one another*: and so much the more, as you see the day approaching. [\[1Cor 10:11\]](#); [\[Phil 4:5\]](#);
- 26** For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, [Num 15:30](#); [Matt 12:31](#); [Heb 6:4](#); [2Pet 2:20](#); [1John 5:16](#); [\[Matt 12:45\]](#); [\[Luke 11:26\]](#);
- 27** But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries.
- 28** He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses: [Num 35:30](#); [Deut 17:6](#); [Deut 19:15](#); [Matt 18:16](#); [2Cor 13:1](#); [\[John 8:17\]](#);
- 29** Of how much sorer punishment, suppose you, shall he be thought worthy, who has trodden under foot the Son of Elohim, and has counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and has done despite unto the Spirit of grace?
- 30** For we know him that has said, **Vengeance *belongeth* unto me, I will recompense, saith the Lord.** And again, **The Lord shall judge his people.** [Deut 32:35](#); [Rom 12:19](#); [Deut 32:36](#);
- 31** *It is* a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living Elohim.
- 32** But call to remembrance the former days, in which, after you were illuminated, you endured a great fight of afflictions;
- 33** Partly, whilst you were made a gazingstock both by reproaches and afflictions; and partly, whilst you became companions of them that were so used. [\[1Cor 4:9\]](#);
- 34** For you had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that you have in heaven a better and an enduring substance. [Acts 21:33](#); [Matt 5:12](#);
- 35** Cast not away therefore your confidence, which has great recompence of reward.
- 36** For you have need of patience, that, after you have done the will of Elohim, you might receive the promise. [Luke 21:19](#); [\[Rom 12:12\]](#); [\[Heb 12:1\]](#);
- 37** **For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.** [Hab 2:3](#); [Hag 2:6](#); [1Pet 1:6](#); [1Pet 5:10](#);
- 38** Now the just shall live by faith: but if *any man* draw back, my being shall have no pleasure in him. [Hab 2:4](#); [Rom 1:17](#); [Gal 3:11](#);
- 39** But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the being.

What faith is

- 1** Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.
- 2** For by it the elders obtained a good report.
- 3** Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of Elohim, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear. [Gen 1:1](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [John 1:10](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:16](#); [Rom 4:17](#);
- 4** By faith Abel offered unto Elohim a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, Elohim testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaketh. [Gen 4:4](#); [Matt 23:35](#); [\[Luke 11:51\]](#); [\[Heb 12:24\]](#); [\[1John 3:12\]](#);
- 5** By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because Elohim had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased Elohim. [Gen 5:24](#); [\[Gen 5:22\]](#);

Without faith we cannot please Elohim

- 6** But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to Elohim must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

The worthy fruits thereof in the fathers of old time

- 7** By faith Noah, being warned of Elohim of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith. [Gen 6:13](#); [\[Gen 6:22\]](#);
- 8** By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went. [Gen 12:4](#); [\[Gen 12:1\]](#);
- 9** By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as *in* a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise: [\[Gen 37:1\]](#); [\[Gen 47:9\]](#);
- 10** For he looked for a city which has foundations, whose builder and maker *is* Elohim.
- 11** Through faith also Sara herself received strength to conceive seed, and was delivered of a child when she was past age, because she judged him faithful who had promised. [Gen 17:19](#); [Gen 21:2](#); [Luke 1:36](#); [\[Gen 18:11\]](#); [\[Rom 4:20\]](#); [\[Gal 4:22\]](#);
- 12** Therefore sprang there even of one, and him as good as dead, *so many* as the stars of the sky in multitude, and as the sand which is by the sea shore innumerable. [Gen 15:5](#); [Gen 22:17](#); [Rom 4:18](#); [\[Gen 13:16\]](#);
- 13** These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. [John 8:53](#); [Gen 23:4](#); [Gen 47:9](#); [\[Ps 39:12\]](#); [\[Ps 119:19\]](#); [\[John 8:56\]](#);
- 14** For they that say such things declare plainly that they seek a country.
- 15** And truly, if they had been mindful of that *country* from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have returned.
- 16** But now they desire a better *country*, that is, a heavenly: wherefore Elohim is not ashamed to be called their Elohim: for he has prepared for them a city. [Exod 3:6](#); [Matt 22:32](#); [Acts 7:32](#); [\[Mark 12:26\]](#); [\[Luke 20:37\]](#);
- 17** By faith Abraham, when he was tried, offered up Isaac: and he that had received the promises offered up his only begotten *son*, [Gen 22:10](#); [\[Gen 22:2\]](#);
- 18** Of whom it was said, **That in Isaac shall thy seed be called:** [Gen 21:12](#); [Rom 9:7](#); [Gal 3:29](#); [\[Rom 4:20\]](#);
- 19** Accounting that Elohim *was* able to raise *him* up, even from the dead; from whence also he received him in a figure.
- 20** By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau concerning things to come. [Gen 27:28](#); [Gen 27:39](#);
- 21** By faith Jacob, when he was a dying, blessed both the sons of Joseph; and worshipped, *leaning* upon the top of his staff. [Gen 48:15](#); [Gen 47:31](#);
- 22** By faith Joseph, when he died, made mention of the departing of the children of Israel; and gave commandment concerning his bones. [Gen 50:24](#);

- 23** By faith Moses, when he was born, was hid three months of his parents, because they saw *he was* a proper child; and they were not afraid of the king's commandment. [Exod 2:2](#); [Acts 7:20](#); [[Exod 2:5](#)];
- 24** By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; [[Exod 2:11](#)];
- 25** Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of Elohim, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; [Ps 84:10](#);
- 26** Esteeming the reproach of the Messiah greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward.
- 27** By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible. [[Exod 10:29](#)];
- 28** Through faith he kept the passover, and the sprinkling of blood, lest he that destroyed the firstborn should touch them. [Exod 12:21](#); [[Exod 12:23](#)]; [[Exod 12:28](#)];
- 29** By faith they passed through the Red sea as by dry *land*: which the Egyptians attempting to do were drowned. [Exod 14:22](#);
- 30** By faith the walls of Jericho fell down, after they were compassed about seven days. [Josh 6:20](#);
- 31** By faith the harlot Rahab perished not with them that believed not, when she had received the spies with peace. [Josh 6:23](#); [Jas 2:25](#); [Josh 2:1](#); [[Josh 6:22](#)];
- 32** And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and *of* Barak, and *of* Samson, and *of* Jephthae; *of* David also, and Samuel, and *of* the prophets: [Judg 6:11](#); [Judg 4:6](#); [Judg 13:24](#); [Judg 11:1](#); [Judg 12:7](#); [1Sam 17:45](#); [1Sam 12:20](#); [[Judg 6:14](#)]; [[Judg 16:28](#)];
- 33** Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions, [Judg 14:6](#); [1Sam 17:34](#); [Dan 6:22](#);
- 34** Quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, turned to flight the armies of the aliens. [Dan 3:25](#); [1Sam 20:1](#); [1Kgs 19:3](#); [2Kgs 6:16](#); [Ps 42:9](#); [Ps 6:8](#); [Isa 38:21](#);
- 35** Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection: [1Kgs 17:23](#); [2Kgs 4:36](#); [Acts 22:25](#); [[Luke 11:49](#)];
- 36** And others had trial of *cruel* mockings and scourgings, yes, moreover of bonds and imprisonment: [Jer 20:2](#);
- 37** They were stoned, they were sawn asunder, were tempted, were slain with the sword: they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins; being destitute, afflicted, tormented; [1Kgs 21:13](#); [2Kgs 1:8](#); [Matt 3:4](#);
- 38** (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and *in* mountains, and *in* dens and caves of the earth.
- 39** And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise:
- 40** Elohim having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect.

An exhortation to constant faith, patience, and godliness

1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which so easily besets *us*, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, [Rom 6:4](#); [Eph 4:22](#); [Col 3:8](#); [1Pet 2:1-2](#); [Rom 12:12](#); [Heb 10:36](#); [1Cor 9:24](#); [[1Pet 2:1](#)]; [[1Pet 4:1](#)];

2 Looking unto Yahushua the author and finisher of *our* faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the stake, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of Elohim. [Luke 24:26](#); [Phil 2:8-9](#); [1Pet 1:11](#); [Heb 1:3](#); [Heb 8:1](#); [[Phil 2:8](#)];

3 For consider him that endured such contradiction of sinners against himself, lest you be wearied and faint in your minds.

4 You have not yet resisted unto blood, striving against sin. [1Cor 10:13](#);

5 And you have forgotten the exhortation which speaketh unto you as unto children, **My son, despise not you the chastening of the Lord, nor faint when you are rebuked of him:** [Job 5:17](#); [Prov 3:11](#); [Rev 3:19](#);

6 For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth.

7 If you endure chastening, Elohim dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the father chasteneth not?

8 But if you be without chastisement, whereof all are partakers, then are you bastards, and not sons.

9 Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected *us*, and we gave *them* reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live? [[Num 16:22](#)]; [[Num 27:16](#)]; [[Isa 57:16](#)];

10 For they verily for a few days chastened *us* after their own pleasure; but he for *our* profit, that *we* might be partakers of his holiness.

11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.

12 Wherefore lift up the hands which hang down, and the feeble knees; [Isa 35:3](#);

13 And make straight paths for your feet, lest that which is lame be turned out of the way; but let it rather be healed.

14 Follow peace with all *men*, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord: [Rom 12:18](#); [2Tim 2:22](#); [Matt 5:8](#); [[Ps 34:14](#)]; [[Mark 9:50](#)]; [[2Cor 13:11](#)];

15 Looking diligently lest any man fail of the grace of Elohim; lest any root of bitterness springing up trouble *you*, and thereby many be defiled; [2Cor 6:1](#); [Deut 29:18](#); [Acts 17:13](#); [Gal 5:12](#);

16 Lest there *be* any fornicator, or profane person, as Esau, who for one morsel of meat sold his birthright. [Eph 5:3](#); [Col 3:5](#); [1Thess 4:3](#); [Gen 25:33](#);

17 For you know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears. [Gen 27:36](#); [[Gen 27:34](#)]; [[Gen 27:38](#)];

18 For you are not come unto the mount that might be touched, and that burned with fire, nor unto blackness, and darkness, and tempest, [Exod 19:10](#); [Exod 20:21](#); [Exod 19:16](#); [Deut 5:22](#); [[Exod 19:12](#)];

19 And the sound of a trumpet, and the voice of words; which *voice* they that heard intreated that the word should not be spoken to them any more: [Exod 20:19](#); [Deut 5:25](#); [Deut 18:16](#); [[Deut 5:27](#)];

20 (For they could not endure that which was commanded, And if so much as a beast touch the mountain, it shall be stoned: [Exod 19:13](#);

21 And so terrible was the sight, *that* Moses said, I exceedingly fear and quake:)

A commendation of the new testament above the old

22 But you are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living Elohim, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels, [Gal 4:26](#); [Rev 3:12](#); [Rev 21:10](#); [[Rev 5:11](#)];

23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to Elohim the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, [Luke 10:20](#);

24 And to Yahushua the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than *that* of Abel. [Heb 10:22](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [Gen 4:10](#); [Heb 11:4](#);

25 See that you refuse not him that speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused him that spoke on earth, much more *shall not* we *escape*, if we turn away from him that *speaketh* from heaven: [Heb 2:3](#);

26 Whose voice then shook the earth: but now he has promised, saying, yet **once more I shake not the earth only, but also heaven.** [Hag 2:6](#);

27 And this *word*, yet once more, signifieth the removing of those things that are shaken, as of things that are made, that those things which cannot be shaken may remain.

28 Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve Elohim acceptably with reverence and godly fear: [1Pet 2:5](#);

29 For our Elohim *is* a consuming fire. [Deut 4:24](#); [\[Exod 24:17\]](#); [\[Deut 9:3\]](#);

Diverse admonitions as to love

1 Let brotherly love continue. [Rom 12:10](#); [Eph 4:3](#); [1Pet 1:22](#); [1Pet 2:17](#); [1Pet 4:8](#);

2 Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares. [Rom 12:13](#); [1Pet 4:9](#); [Gen 18:1](#); [Gen 19:1](#); [[Gen 18:2](#)]; [[Gen 19:3](#)]; [[Job 31:32](#)]; [[Matt 25:35](#)]; [[Luke 24:29](#)]; [[Acts 16:15](#)]; [[Phlm 1:22](#)];

3 Remember them that are in bonds, as bound with them; *and* them which suffer adversity, as being yourselves also in the body. [Matt 25:36](#); [[Col 4:18](#)];

to honest life

4 Marriage *is* honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers Elohim will judge.

to avoid covetousness

5 *Let your* conduct *be* without covetousness; *and be* content with such things as you have: for he has said, **I will never leave you, nor forsake you.** [Exod 23:8](#); [Deut 16:19](#); [Prov 15:16](#); [Phil 4:11](#); [1Tim 6:6](#); [1Tim 6:8](#); [Deut 31:6](#); [Deut 31:8](#); [Josh 1:5](#); [1Chr 28:20](#); [[Matt 6:19](#)]; [[1Pet 5:7](#)];

6 So that we may boldly say, **The Lord *is* my helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me.** [Ps 56:4](#); [Ps 118:6](#);

to regard Elohim's preachers

7 Remember them which have the rule over you, who have spoken unto you the word of Elohim: whose faith follow, considering the outcome of *their* conduct. [Heb 13:17](#); [[1Thess 5:12](#)];

8 Yahushua the Messiah the same yosterday, and to day, and for ever.

to take heed of strange doctrines

9 Be not carried away with various and strange doctrines. For *it is* a good thing that the heart be established with grace; not with meats, which have not profited them that have been occupied therein. [Jer 29:8](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Rom 16:17](#); [Eph 4:14](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [Col 2:16](#); [2Thess 2:2](#); [2Tim 4:3](#); [1John 4:1](#); [John 6:27](#); [Rom 14:17](#); [[Col 2:8](#)];

to confess the Messiah

10 We have an altar, whereof they have no right to eat which serve the tabernacle.

11 For the bodies of those beasts, whose blood is brought into the sanctuary by the high priest for sin, are burned without the camp. [Exod 29:14](#); [Lev 4:21](#); [Lev 6:30](#); [Lev 16:27](#); [Num 19:3](#); [[Lev 4:12](#)];

12 Wherefore Yahushua also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate. [John 19:17-18](#);

13 Let us go forth therefore unto him without the camp, bearing his reproach.

14 For here have we no continuing city, but we seek one to come. [Phil 3:20](#);

15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to Elohim continually, that is, the fruit of *our* lips giving thanks to his name. [Hos 14:2](#); [[Jonah 2:9](#)];

to give alms

16 But to do good and to share forget not: for with such sacrifices Elohim is well pleased. [Phil 4:18](#);

to obey governors

17 Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your beings, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that *is* unprofitable for you. [Phil 2:29](#); [1Thess 5:12](#); [1Tim 5:17](#); [Ezek 3:18](#); [Ezek 33:8](#); [[Heb 13:7](#)];

to pray for the apostles

18 Pray for us: for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly.

19 But I beseech *you* the rather to do this, that I may be restored to you the sooner.

The conclusion

20 Now the Elohim of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Yahushua, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, [Isa 40:11](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [John 10:11](#); [1Pet 5:4](#);

21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, through Yahushua the Messiah; to whom *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen. [2Cor 3:5](#); [Phil 2:13](#);

22 And I beseech you, brethren, suffer the word of exhortation: for I have written a letter unto you in few words.

23 Know you that *our* brother Timothy is set at liberty; with whom, if he come shortly, I will see you.

24 Salute all them that have the rule over you, and all the saints. They of Italy salute you.

25 Grace *be* with you all. Amen.

James

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#)

JAMES ONE

We are to rejoice under the stake

1 James, a servant of Elohim and of the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, to the twelve tribes which are scattered abroad, greeting. [Acts 8:1](#); [1Pet 1:1](#);

2 My brethren, count it all joy when you fall into various temptations; [Matt 5:11](#); [Rom 5:3](#); [1Pet 1:6](#); [\[Phil 3:1\]](#);

3 Knowing *this*, that the trying of your faith worketh patience. [Rom 5:3](#); [1Pet 1:7](#);

4 But let patience have *her* perfect work, that you may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

to ask patience of Elohim

5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of Elohim, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. [Prov 2:3](#); [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:7](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [John 16:24](#); [1John 3:22](#); [1John 5:14](#); [\[Prov 2:6\]](#); [\[Luke 11:9\]](#); [\[John 14:13\]](#); [\[John 15:7\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#);

6 But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed.

7 For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord.

8 A double minded man *is* unstable in all his ways.

9 Let the brother of low degree rejoice in that he is exalted:

10 But the rich, in that he is made low: because as the flower of the grass he shall pass away. [\[Ps 103:15\]](#); [\[Isa 40:6\]](#); [\[1Cor 7:31\]](#); [\[Jas 4:14\]](#); [\[1Pet 1:24\]](#); [\[1John 2:17\]](#);

11 For the sun is no sooner risen with a burning heat, but it withereth the grass, and the flower thereof falleth, and the grace of the fashion of it perisheth: so also shall the rich man fade away in his ways. [Isa 40:6](#); [1Cor 7:31](#); [Jas 4:14](#); [1Pet 1:24](#); [1John 2:17](#);

12 Blessed *is* the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord has promised to them that love him. [Job 5:17](#); [2Tim 4:8](#); [1Pet 5:4](#); [Rev 2:10](#); [Matt 10:22](#); [Matt 19:28-29](#);

and in our trials not to impute our weakness, or sins, to him

13 Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted of Elohim: for Elohim cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth he any man: [\[Prov 19:3\]](#);

14 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed.

15 Then when lust has conceived, it bringeth forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death. [\[Rom 6:23\]](#);

16 Do not err, my beloved brethren.

17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning. [Prov 2:6](#); [1Cor 4:7](#); [Isa 14:27](#); [Isa 46:10](#); [Mal 3:6](#); [Rom 11:29](#); [\[Num 23:19\]](#);

18 Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth, that we should be a kind of firstfruits of his creatures. [1Cor 4:15](#); [Gal 4:19](#); [1Pet 1:23](#); [\[1Pet 1:3\]](#);

but rather to hearken to the word, to meditate on it, and to do thereafter

19 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath: [Prov 17:27](#); [Eccl 5:2](#);

20 For the wrath of man worketh not the righteousness of Elohim.

21 Wherefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your beings. [Rom 13:12](#); [Col 3:8](#);

22 But be you doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. [Matt 7:21](#); [Luke 11:28](#); [Rom 2:13](#); [1John 3:7](#); [[Luke 6:46](#)];

23 For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass: [Luke 6:47](#); [[Matt 7:26](#)]; [[Jas 2:14](#)];

24 For he beholdeth himself, and goes his way, and immediately forgetteth what manner of man he was.

25 But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth *therein*, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed. [Matt 5:19](#); [[Matt 7:24](#)];

Otherwise men may seem, but never be, truly religious

26 If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion *is* vain. [Ps 34:13](#); [Jas 3:6](#); [1Pet 3:10](#); [[Jas 3:2](#)];

27 Pure religion and undefiled before Elohim and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, *and* to keep himself unspotted from the world.

It is not agreeable to Messianic profession to regard the rich, and to despise the poor brethren

- 1** My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, *the Lord* of glory, with respect of persons. [Lev 19:15](#); [Deut 16:19](#); [Prov 24:23](#); [Matt 22:16](#); [[Deut 1:17](#)]; [[John 7:24](#)];
- 2** For if there come unto your assembly a man with a gold ring, in goodly apparel, and there come in also a poor man in vile raiment;
- 3** And you have respect to him that weareth the gay clothing, and say unto him, Sit you here in a good place; and say to the poor, Stand you there, or sit here under my footstool:
- 4** Are you not then partial in yourselves, and are become judges of evil thoughts?
- 5** Hearken, my beloved brethren, Has not Elohim chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he has promised to them that love him? [John 7:48](#); [1Cor 1:26](#); [Exod 20:6](#); [1Sam 2:30](#); [Prov 8:17](#); [Matt 5:3](#);
- 6** But you have despised the poor. Do not rich men oppress you, and draw you before the judgment seats?
- 7** Do not they blaspheme that worthy name by the which you are called?
- 8** If you fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, you **shall love thy neighbour as thyself**, you do well: [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [Mark 12:31](#); [Rom 13:9](#); [Gal 5:14](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [[Matt 19:19](#)]; [[Luke 10:27](#)];
- 9** But if you have respect to persons, you commit sin, and are convicted of the law as transgressors.
- 10** For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one *point*, he is guilty of all. [Deut 27:26](#); [Matt 5:19](#); [Gal 3:10](#);
- 11** For he that said, Do not commit adultery, said also, Do not kill. Now if you commit no adultery, yet if you kill, you are become a transgressor of the law. [Exod 20:14](#); [Matt 5:27](#);
- 12** So speak you, and so do, as they that shall be judged by the law of liberty.

rather we are to be loving and merciful

- 13** For he shall have judgment without mercy, that has showed no mercy; and mercy rejoiceth against judgment. [Matt 6:15](#); [Matt 18:35](#); [Mark 11:25](#); [Luke 16:25](#); [[Luke 3:11](#)];

and not to boast of faith where no deeds are

- 14** What *does it* profit, my brethren, though a man say he has faith, and have not works? can faith save him? [Matt 7:26](#); [Jas 1:23](#);
- 15** If a brother or sister be naked, and destitute of daily food, [Luke 3:11](#); [1John 3:17](#); [[Matt 25:36](#)];
- 16** And one of you say unto them, Depart in peace, be you warmed and filled; notwithstanding you give them not those things which are needful to the body; what *does it* profit?

which is but a dead faith

- 17** Even so faith, if it has not works, is dead, being alone.
- 18** Yes, a man may say, you have faith, and I have works: show me thy faith without thy works, and I will show you my faith by my works.

the faith of the demons

- 19** You believest that there is one Elohim; you do well: the demons also believe, and tremble. [Mark 1:24](#);
- 20** But will you know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead?

not of Abraham

- 21** Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar? [Gen 22:10](#); [[Gen 22:9](#)];
- 22** Seest you how faith wrought with his works, and by works was faith made perfect?

23 And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, **Abraham believed Elohim, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness:** and he was called the Friend of Elohim. [Gen 15:6](#); [Rom 4:3](#); [Gal 3:6](#); [[Song 5:1](#)]; [[Isa 41:8](#)];

24 You see then how that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only.

nor Rahab

25 Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent *them* out another way? [Josh 2:1](#); [Josh 6:23](#); [Heb 11:31](#);

26 For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also.

We are not rashly or arrogantly to reprove others

- 1** My brethren, be not many masters, knowing that we shall receive the greater condemnation. [Matt 23:8](#); [Matt 7:1](#); [Luke 6:37](#); [[Matt 23:7](#)];
- 2** For in many things we offend all. If any man offend not in word, the same *is* a perfect man, *and* able also to bridle the whole body. [Ps 34:13](#); [Jas 1:26](#); [[2Chr 6:36](#)]; [[Prov 18:21](#)];
- 3** Behold, we put bits in the horses' mouths, that they may obey us; and we turn about their whole body. [[Ps 32:9](#)];
- 4** Behold also the ships, which though *they be* so great, and *are* driven of fierce winds, yet are they turned about with a very small helm, whithersoever the governor listeth.

but rather to bridle the tongue, a little member, but a powerful instrument of much good, and great harm

- 5** Even so the tongue is a little member, and boasteth great things. Behold, how great a matter a little fire kindleth! [Prov 12:18](#); [Prov 15:2](#);
- 6** And the tongue *is* a fire, a world of iniquity: so is the tongue among our members, that it defileth the whole body, and setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell. [[Jas 1:26](#)];
- 7** For every kind of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea, is tamed, and has been tamed of mankind:
- 8** But the tongue can no man tame; *it is* an unruly evil, full of deadly poison.
- 9** Therewith bless we Elohim, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude of Elohim. [Gen 1:27](#);
- 10** Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.
- 11** Does a fountain send forth at the same place sweet *water* and bitter?
- 12** Can the fig tree, my brethren, bear olive berries? either a vine, figs? so *can* no fountain both yield salt water and fresh.

They who are truly wise are mild and peaceable without envying and strife

- 13** Who *is* a wise man and endued with knowledge among you? let him show out of a good conduct his works with meekness of wisdom. [Eph 5:8](#);
- 14** But if you have bitter envying and strife in your hearts, glory not, and lie not against the truth. [Rom 13:13](#); [[Gal 5:19](#)];
- 15** This wisdom descendeth not from above, but *is* earthly, sensual, devilish. [1Cor 2:6-7](#); [[1Cor 2:6](#)];
- 16** For where envying and strife *is*, there *is* confusion and every evil work. [1Cor 3:3](#); [Gal 5:20](#);
- 17** But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, *and* easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.
- 18** And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace of them that make peace.

We are to strive against covetousness

1 From whence *come* wars and fightings among you? *come they* not hence, *even* of your lusts that war in your members? [Rom 7:23](#); [1Pet 2:11](#);

2 You lust, and have not: you kill, and desire to have, and cannot obtain: you fight and war, yet you have not, because you ask not.

3 You ask, and receive not, because you ask amiss, that you may consume *it* upon your lusts. [Matt 20:22](#); [Rom 8:26](#); [\[Job 27:9\]](#);

intemperance

4 You adulterers and adulteresses, know you not that the friendship of the world is enmity with Elohim? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of Elohim. [John 15:9](#); [Gal 1:10](#); [1John 2:15](#);

pride

5 Do you think that the scripture saith in vain, The spirit that dwelleth in us lusteth to envy? [Num 11:29](#);

6 But he giveth more grace. Wherefore he saith, **Elohim resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble.** [Prov 3:34](#); [1Pet 5:5](#); [\[Prov 29:23\]](#); [\[Matt 23:12\]](#); [\[Luke 14:11\]](#); [\[Luke 18:14\]](#);

7 Submit yourselves therefore to Elohim. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. [Eph 4:27](#); [1Pet 5:9](#);

8 Draw nigh to Elohim, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse *your* hands, you sinners; and purify *your* hearts, you double minded. [Isa 1:15](#);

9 Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and *your* joy to heaviness. [Matt 5:4](#); [\[Luke 6:25\]](#);

10 Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up. [Job 22:29](#); [Prov 29:23](#); [Matt 23:12](#); [Luke 14:11](#); [Luke 18:14](#); [1Pet 5:6](#);

detraction and rash judgment of others

11 Speak not evil one of another, brethren. He that speaketh evil of *his* brother, and judgeth his brother, speaketh evil of the law, and judgeth the law: but if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge.

12 There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy: who are you that judgest another? [Rom 14:4](#);

and not to be confident in the good success of worldly business, but mindful ever of the uncertainty of this life, to commit ourselves and all our affairs to Elohim's providence

13 Go to now, you that say, To day or to morrow we will go into such a city, and continue there a year, and buy and sell, and get gain: [Luke 12:18](#); [\[Prov 27:1\]](#); [\[Ecd 6:12\]](#);

14 Whereas you know not what *shall be* on the morrow. For what *is* your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away. [Isa 40:6](#); [1Cor 7:31](#); [Jas 1:10](#); [1Pet 1:24](#); [1John 2:17](#); [\[Job 7:7\]](#); [\[Job 14:1\]](#); [\[Jas 1:11\]](#);

15 For that you *ought* to say, If the Lord will, we shall live, and do this, or that. [Acts 18:21](#); [1Cor 4:19](#); [Heb 6:3](#);

16 But now you rejoice in your boastings: all such rejoicing is evil.

17 Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doeth *it* not, to him it is sin. [Luke 12:47](#);

Wicked rich men are to fear Elohim's vengeance

- 1** Go to now, you rich men, weep and howl for your miseries that shall come upon *you*. [Prov 11:28](#); [Amos 6:1](#); [Luke 6:24](#); [1Tim 6:9](#); [\[Matt 6:19\]](#); [\[Luke 6:25\]](#);
- 2** Your riches are corrupted, and your garments are moth-eaten.
- 3** Your gold and silver is cankered; and the rust of them shall be a witness against you, and shall eat your flesh as it were fire. you have heaped treasure together for the last days. [Matt 6:19](#); [Rom 2:5](#);
- 4** Behold, the hire of the labourers who have reaped down your fields, which is of you kept back by fraud, cries: and the cries of them which have reaped are entered into the ears of the Lord of sabaoth. [Lev 19:13](#); [Deut 24:14](#); [\[Job 24:11\]](#);
- 5** You have lived in pleasure on the earth, and been wanton; you have nourished your hearts, as in a day of slaughter. [Job 21:13](#); [Luke 16:19](#); [Luke 16:25](#); [\[Luke 12:19\]](#);
- 6** You have condemned *and* killed the just; *and* he does not resist you.

We ought to be patient in afflictions, after the example of the prophets, and Job

- 7** Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and has long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain. [\[Rom 12:12\]](#);
- 8** Be you also patient; establish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh.
- 9** Grudge not one against another, brethren, lest you be condemned: behold, the judge standeth before the door.
- 10** Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience.
- 11** Behold, we count them happy which endure. you have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy. [Matt 5:11](#); [Job 1:21-22](#); [Lev 14:18](#); [Ps 103:8](#);

to forbear swearing

- 12** But above all things, my brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, neither by the earth, neither by any other oath: but let your yes be yes; and *your* nay, nay; lest you fall into condemnation. [Matt 5:34](#); [2Cor 1:17-18](#); [\[2Cor 1:18\]](#);

to pray in adversity, to sing in prosperity

- 13** Is any among you afflicted? let him pray. Is any merry? let him sing psalms. [Eph 5:19](#); [Col 3:16](#);

to acknowledge mutually our several faults, to pray one for another

- 14** Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord: [Mark 6:13](#);
- 15** And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.
- 16** Confess *your* faults one to another, and pray one for another, that you may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.
- 17** Elias was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain: and it rained not on the earth by the space of three years and six months. [1Kgs 17:1](#); [Luke 4:25](#);
- 18** And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain, and the earth brought forth her fruit. [1Kgs 18:45](#);

and to reduce a straying brother to the truth

- 19** Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him; [Matt 18:15](#); [\[Luke 17:3\]](#);

20 Let him know, that he which converteth the sinner from the error of his way shall save a being from death, and shall hide a multitude of sins. [Prov 10:12](#); [1Pet 4:8](#);

First_Peter

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#)

FIRST PETER ONE

He blesses Elohim for his manifold spiritual graces

- 1** Peter, an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah, to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, [Jas 1:1](#);
- 2** Elect according to the foreknowledge of Elohim the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Yahushua the Messiah: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied. [Heb 12:24](#); [Rom 1:7](#); [1Cor 1:3](#); [Gal 1:3](#); [Eph 1:2](#); [2Pet 1:2](#); [Jude 1:2](#); [\[Exod 24:8\]](#); [\[2Cor 1:2\]](#); [\[Phil 1:2\]](#); [\[Col 1:2\]](#); [\[1Thess 1:1\]](#); [\[2Thess 1:2\]](#); [\[1Tim 1:2\]](#); [\[2Tim 1:2\]](#); [\[Titus 1:4\]](#);
- 3** Blessed *be* the Elohim and Father of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, which according to his abundant mercy has begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Yahushua the Messiah from the dead, [2Cor 1:3](#); [Eph 1:3](#); [Rom 6:23](#); [Jas 1:18](#); [1Cor 15:20](#);
- 4** To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, [Col 1:5](#); [2Tim 1:12](#); [\[1Cor 9:25\]](#); [\[1Pet 5:4\]](#);
- 5** Who are kept by the power of Elohim through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.
- 6** Wherein you greatly rejoice, though now for a season, if need be, you are in heaviness through manifold temptations: [Rom 5:3](#); [Jas 1:2](#); [Heb 10:37](#); [1Pet 5:10](#); [\[Zech 13:9\]](#);
- 7** That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Yahushua the Messiah: [Isa 48:10](#); [1Cor 3:13](#); [Jas 1:3](#); [1Pet 4:12](#);
- 8** Whom having not seen, you love; in whom, though now you see *him* not, yet believing, you rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory: [John 20:29](#); [\[Song 1:4\]](#); [\[Matt 13:16\]](#);
- 9** Receiving the end of your faith, *even* the salvation of *your* beings.

shewing that the salvation in the Messiah is no news, but a thing prophesied of old

- 10** Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace *that should come* unto you: [Gen 49:10](#); [Dan 2:44](#); [Hag 2:7](#); [Zech 6:12](#); [\[Matt 13:17\]](#); [\[Luke 10:24\]](#);
- 11** Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of the Messiah which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of the Messiah, and the glory that should follow. [Dan 9:24](#); [Ps 22:6](#); [Isa 53:3](#); [\[Luke 24:26\]](#); [\[Heb 12:2\]](#);
- 12** Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Spirit sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into. [Acts 2:4](#); [Eph 3:10](#);

and exhorts them accordingly to a godly conduct, forasmuch as they are now born anew by the word of Elohim

- 13** Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Yahushua the Messiah; [Luke 12:35](#); [Eph 6:14](#); [\[1Pet 5:8\]](#);
- 14** As obedient children, not fashioning yourselves according to the former lusts in your ignorance:
- 15** But as he which has called you is holy, so be you holy in all manner of conduct; [Luke 1:75](#);
- 16** Because it is written, **Be you holy; for I am holy.** [Lev 11:44-45](#); [Lev 19:2](#); [Lev 20:7](#); [\[Lev 11:44\]](#);

17 And if you call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man's work, pass the time of your sojourning *here* in fear: [Deut 10:17](#); [2Chr 19:7](#); [Job 34:19](#); [Acts 10:34](#); [Rom 2:11](#); [Gal 2:6](#); [Eph 6:9](#); [Col 3:25](#); [[Job 34:11](#)]; [[Ps 62:12](#)];

18 Forasmuch as you know that you were not redeemed with corruptible things, *as* silver and gold, from your vain conduct *received* by tradition from your fathers; [1Cor 6:20](#); [1Cor 7:23](#); [[Eph 1:7](#)];

19 But with the precious blood of the Messiah, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot: [Acts 20:28](#); [Heb 9:12](#); [Rev 1:5](#); [[Exod 12:5](#)]; [[Matt 20:28](#)]; [[Col 1:14](#)]; [[1John 1:7](#)]; [[Rev 5:9](#)];

20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you, [Rom 16:25](#); [Eph 1:9](#); [Eph 3:9](#); [Col 1:26](#); [2Tim 1:9](#); [Titus 1:2](#); [[Col 1:25](#)]; [[2Tim 1:10](#)];

21 Who by him do believe in Elohim, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in Elohim. [Acts 2:33](#); [Phil 2:9](#);

22 Seeing you have purified your beings in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, *see that you* love one another with a pure heart fervently: [Rom 12:10](#); [Eph 4:3](#); [Heb 13:1](#); [1Pet 2:17](#);

23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of Elohim, which liveth and abideth for ever. [Jas 1:18](#); [1John 3:9](#);

24 **For all flesh *is* as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:** [Isa 40:6](#); [1Cor 7:31](#); [Jas 1:10](#); [Jas 4:14](#); [1John 2:17](#); [[Job 7:7](#)]; [[Job 14:2](#)]; [[Ps 103:15](#)]; [[Jas 1:11](#)];

25 **But the word of the Lord endureth for ever.** And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you. [[Isa 40:8](#)];

He exhorts them from the breach of charity

- 1** Wherefore laying aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil speakings, [Matt 18:3](#); [Rom 6:4](#); [1Cor 14:20](#); [Eph 4:23](#); [Col 3:8](#); [Heb 12:1](#); [[Eph 4:22](#)];
- 2** As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that you may grow thereby unto salvation: [\[Matt 18:3\]](#); [[Matt 19:14](#)]; [[Mark 10:14](#)]; [[Luke 18:16](#)]; [[Rom 6:4](#)]; [[1Cor 3:2](#)];
- 3** If so be you have tasted that the Lord *is* gracious. [Ps 34:8](#);

shewing that the Messiah is the foundation whereupon they are built

- 4** To whom coming, *as unto* a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of Elohim, *and* precious, [Eph 2:20](#); [[Ps 118:22](#)]; [[Luke 20:17](#)];
- 5** You also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to Elohim by Yahushua the Messiah. [Heb 3:6](#); [Rev 1:6](#); [Rev 5:10](#); [Rom 12:1](#); [Heb 12:28](#); [[Isa 61:6](#)]; [[1Cor 3:9](#)]; [[1Cor 3:16](#)]; [[1Cor 6:19](#)]; [[2Cor 6:16](#)];
- 6** Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, **Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.** [Isa 28:16](#); [[Ps 2:12](#)]; [[Matt 21:42](#)]; [[Mark 12:10](#)]; [[Rom 9:33](#)];
- 7** Unto you therefore which believe *he is* precious: but unto them which be disobedient, **the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,** [Ps 118:22](#); [Matt 21:42](#); [Acts 4:11](#); [[Isa 8:14](#)]; [[Luke 20:17](#)];
- 8** And **a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence,** *even to them* which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed. [Isa 8:14](#); [Rom 9:33](#); [[Jude 1:4](#)];
- 9** But you *are* a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people; that you should show forth the praises of him who has called you out of darkness into his marvellous light: [Exod 19:5](#); [Deut 7:6](#); [Deut 14:2](#); [Deut 26:18](#); [Eph 1:14](#); [Rev 1:6](#); [Rev 5:10](#); [[Exod 19:6](#)]; [[Ps 135:4](#)]; [[Isa 61:6](#)]; [[Luke 2:34](#)]; [[Rev 20:6](#)];
- 10** Which in time past *were* not a people, but *are* now the people of Elohim: which had not obtained mercy, but now have obtained mercy. [Hos 1:10](#); [Hos 2:23](#); [Rom 9:26](#); [[Luke 15:6](#)];

He beseeches them also to abstain from fleshly lusts

- 11** Dearly beloved, I beseech *you* as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the being; [Rom 13:14](#); [Gal 5:16](#); [[Ps 39:12](#)]; [[Gal 5:24](#)]; [[Jas 4:1](#)];
- 12** Having your conduct honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by *your* good works, which they shall behold, glorify Elohim in the day of visitation. [Rom 12:17](#); [2Cor 8:21](#); [Phil 2:15](#); [Titus 2:8](#); [1Pet 3:16](#); [Matt 5:16](#); [Luke 1:68](#); [Luke 19:44](#); [[Phil 2:14](#)];

to be obedient to magistrates

- 13** Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; [Rom 13:1](#); [Titus 3:1](#);
- 14** Or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well.
- 15** For so is the will of Elohim, that with well doing you may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men: [Titus 2:8](#); [[1Pet 3:16](#)];
- 16** As free, and not using *your* liberty for a cloke of maliciousness, but as the servants of Elohim. [John 8:32](#); [Rom 6:18](#); [Gal 5:1](#); [[Gal 5:13](#)];
- 17** Honour all *men*. Love the brotherhood. Fear Elohim. Honour the king. [Rom 12:10](#); [1Pet 5:5](#); [Eph 4:3](#); [Heb 13:1](#); [1Pet 1:22](#); [Matt 22:21](#);

and teaches servants how to obey their masters

18 Servants, *be* subject to *your* masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward. [Eph 6:5](#); [Col 3:22](#); [1Tim 6:1](#); [Titus 2:9](#);

19 For this *is* thankworthy, if a man for conscience toward Elohim endure grief, suffering wrongfully. [Matt 5:10](#); [[Luke 6:22](#)];

patiently suffering for well doing, after the example of the Messiah

20 For what glory *is it*, if, when you be buffeted for your faults, you shall take it patiently? but if, when you do well, and suffer *for it*, you take it patiently, this *is* acceptable with Elohim. [1Pet 3:14](#); [1Pet 4:14](#);

21 For even hereunto were you called: because the Messiah also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that you should follow his steps: [John 13:15](#); [Phil 2:5](#); [1John 2:6](#);

22 Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth: [Isa 53:9](#); [2Cor 5:21](#); [1John 3:5](#); [[Heb 4:15](#)];

23 Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed *himself* to him that judgeth righteously: [Matt 27:39](#); [John 8:48-49](#); [[Deut 32:35](#)]; [[Matt 5:44](#)];

24 Who his own self bore our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes you were healed. [Isa 53:4](#); [Matt 8:17](#); [Rom 6:11](#); [[Isa 53:5](#)]; [[Acts 5:30](#)]; [[Rom 6:10](#)]; [[1Cor 15:3](#)];

25 For you were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your beings. [Isa 53:6](#); [Ezek 34:6](#); [Luke 15:4](#); [[Ps 23:1](#)]; [[1Pet 5:4](#)];

He teaches the duty of wives and husbands to each other

- 1** Likewise, you wives, *be* in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conduct of the wives; [Gen 3:16](#); [1Cor 14:34](#); [Eph 5:22](#); [Col 3:18](#); [Titus 2:5](#); [\[1Cor 7:16\]](#);
- 2** While they behold your chaste conduct *coupled* with fear.
- 3** Whose adorning let it not be that outward *adorning* of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel; [1Tim 2:9](#); [Titus 2:3](#);
- 4** But *let it be* the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, *even the ornament* of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of Elohim of great price.
- 5** For after this manner in the old time the holy women also, who trusted in Elohim, adorned themselves, being in subjection unto their own husbands:
- 6** Even as Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him lord: whose daughters you are, as long as you do well, and are not afraid with any amazement. [Gen 18:12](#); [\[Gen 3:16\]](#);
- 7** Likewise, you husbands, dwell with *them* according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers be not hindered. [Eph 5:25](#); [Col 3:19](#); [\[1Cor 7:3\]](#);

exhorting all men to unity and love

- 8** Finally, *be you* all of one mind, having compassion one of another, love as brethren, *be* pitiful, *be* courteous: [Rom 12:16](#); [Rom 15:5](#); [1Cor 1:10](#); [Phil 2:2](#); [Phil 3:16](#); [\[Acts 4:32\]](#); [\[2Cor 13:11\]](#);
- 9** Not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing; knowing that you are thereunto called, that you should inherit a blessing. [Lev 19:18](#); [Prov 20:22](#); [Prov 24:29](#); [Matt 5:39](#); [Rom 12:17](#); [1Cor 6:7](#); [1Thess 5:15](#); [Matt 25:34](#); [1Tim 4:8](#); [\[Prov 17:13\]](#);
- 10** For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile: [Ps 34:12](#); [Jas 1:26](#);
- 11** Let him eschew evil, and do good; let him seek peace, and ensue it. [Ps 37:27](#); [Isa 1:16](#); [3John 1:11](#);
- 12** For the eyes of the Lord *are* over the righteous, and his ears *are open* unto their prayers: but the face of the Lord *is* against them that do evil. [\[Ps 33:18\]](#); [\[Ps 34:15\]](#);
- 13** And who *is* he that will harm you, if you be followers of that which is good?

and to suffer persecution

- 14** But if you suffer for righteousness' sake, happy *are you*: and be not afraid of their terror, neither be troubled; [Matt 5:10](#); [1Pet 2:20](#); [1Pet 4:14](#); [Isa 8:12](#); [Jer 1:8](#); [\[Ezek 2:6\]](#); [\[Ezek 3:9\]](#); [\[Luke 6:22\]](#);
- 15** But sanctify the Lord Elohim in your hearts: and *be* ready always to *give* an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear: [Job 1:21](#); [Ps 119:46](#); [Acts 4:8](#);
- 16** Having a good conscience; that, whereas they speak evil of you, as of evildoers, they may be ashamed that falsely accuse your good conduct in the Messiah. [Titus 2:8](#); [1Pet 2:12](#); [1Pet 2:15](#);
- 17** For *it is* better, if the will of Elohim be so, that you suffer for well doing, than for evil doing.
- 18** For the Messiah also has once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to Elohim, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit: [Rom 5:6](#); [Heb 9:15](#); [Heb 9:28](#); [\[Rom 5:8\]](#); [\[Eph 5:2\]](#);

He declares also the benefits of the Messiah toward the old world

- 19** By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison; [1Pet 4:6](#); [\[2Pet 2:5\]](#);
- 20** Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of Elohim waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight beings were saved by water. [Gen 6:5](#); [Gen 6:3](#); [Gen 6:14](#); [Matt 24:37](#); [Luke 17:26](#); [Rom 2:4](#); [Gen 8:18](#); [2Pet 2:5](#); [\[Gen 6:18\]](#); [\[Gen 7:7\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);

21 The like figure whereunto *even* baptism also now saves us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward Elohim,) by the resurrection of Yahushua the Messiah: [Eph 5:26](#);

22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of Elohim; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him. [Eph 1:20](#);

He exhorts them to cease from sin by the example of the Messiah, and the consideration of the general end that now approaches

- 1** Forasmuch then as the Messiah has suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind: for he that has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin; [Heb 12:1](#); [Rom 6:7](#); [[Rom 6:6](#)]; [[Rom 7:4](#)];
- 2** That he no longer should live the rest of *his* time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of Elohim. [Rom 14:7](#); [2Cor 5:15](#); [Gal 2:20](#); [Eph 4:24](#); [1Thess 5:10](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [[Rom 6:13](#)]; [[Gal 2:19](#)];
- 3** For the time past of *our* life may suffice us to have wrought the will of the Gentiles, when we walked in lasciviousness, lusts, excess of wine, revellings, banquetings, and abominable idolatries: [Eph 4:17](#); [[Titus 3:3](#)];
- 4** Wherein they think it strange that you run not with *them* to the same excess of riot, speaking evil of *you*;
- 5** Who shall give account to him that is ready to judge the quick and the dead.
- 6** For for this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to Elohim in the spirit. [John 5:25](#); [1Pet 3:19](#);
- 7** But the end of all things is at hand: be you therefore sober, and watch unto prayer. [1John 2:18](#); [Luke 21:34](#); [[1Pet 5:8](#)];
- 8** And above all things have fervent love among yourselves: **for love shall cover the multitude of sins.** [Prov 10:12](#); [[John 13:34](#)]; [[John 15:12](#)]; [[1Cor 13:4](#)]; [[1Thess 4:9](#)]; [[Heb 13:1](#)]; [[Jas 5:20](#)]; [[1John 3:23](#)]; [[1John 4:21](#)]; [[2John 1:5](#)];
- 9** Use hospitality one to another without grudging. [Rom 12:13](#); [Heb 13:2](#); [Phil 2:14](#); [[Job 31:32](#)]; [[1Tim 5:10](#)];
- 10** As every man has received the gift, *even so* minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of Elohim. [Prov 3:28](#); [Rom 12:6](#); [2Cor 8:11](#); [[Rom 12:5](#)]; [[Rom 12:7](#)]; [[1Cor 12:4](#)]; [[2Cor 8:12](#)]; [[Eph 4:7](#)];
- 11** If any man speak, *let him speak* as the oracles of Elohim; if any man minister, *let him do it* as of the ability which Elohim giveth: that Elohim in all things may be glorified through Yahushua the Messiah, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen. [Jer 23:22](#);

and comforts them against persecution

- 12** Beloved, think it not strange concerning the fiery trial which is to try you, as though some strange thing happened unto you: [Jer 48:10](#); [1Cor 3:13](#); [1John 1:7](#); [[1Pet 1:7](#)];
- 13** But rejoice, inasmuch as you are partakers of the Messiah's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, you may be glad also with exceeding joy. [[Rom 8:18](#)]; [[2Cor 4:10](#)]; [[Phil 3:1](#)]; [[Phil 3:10](#)]; [[2Tim 2:12](#)];
- 14** If you be reproached for the name of the Messiah, happy *are you*; for the spirit of glory and of Elohim resteth upon you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified. [Matt 5:10](#); [1Pet 2:20](#); [1Pet 3:14](#); [[Matt 5:11](#)]; [[Luke 6:22](#)];
- 15** But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or *as* a thief, or *as* an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters.
- 16** Yet if *any man suffer* for following the Messiah, let him not be ashamed; but let him glorify Elohim on this behalf.
- 17** For the time *is come* that judgment must begin at the house of Elohim: and if *it first begin* at us, what shall the end *be* of them that obey not the gospel of Elohim? [Jer 25:29](#); [Luke 23:31](#); [Luke 10:12](#); [[Prov 11:31](#)];
- 18** **And if the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear?** [Prov 11:31](#);
- 19** Wherefore let them that suffer according to the will of Elohim commit the keeping of their beings *to him* in well doing, as unto a faithful Creator.

He exhorts the elders to feed their flocks

1 The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of the Messiah, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed:

2 Feed the flock of Elohim which is among you, taking the oversight *thereof*, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; [Acts 20:28](#); [1Tim 3:3](#); [Titus 1:7](#); [\[1Cor 9:7\]](#);

3 Neither as being lords over *Elohim's* heritage, but being ensamples to the flock. [2Cor 1:24](#); [Phil 3:17](#); [1Tim 4:12](#); [Titus 2:7](#); [\[Ezek 34:4\]](#); [\[Matt 20:26\]](#); [\[Mark 10:43\]](#); [\[Luke 22:26\]](#);

4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, you shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away. [Isa 40:11](#); [Ezek 34:23](#); [John 10:11](#); [Heb 13:20](#); [1Pet 2:25](#); [1Cor 9:25](#); [2Tim 4:8](#); [Jas 1:12](#); [1Pet 1:4](#);

the younger to obey

5 Likewise, you younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. yes, all *of you* be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility: for **Elohim resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble.** [Rom 12:10](#); [Phil 2:3](#); [Prov 3:34](#); [Jas 4:6](#); [\[Prov 29:23\]](#); [\[Matt 23:12\]](#); [\[Luke 1:51\]](#); [\[Luke 14:11\]](#); [\[Luke 18:14\]](#); [\[1Pet 2:17\]](#);

6 Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of Elohim, that he may exalt you in due time: [Job 22:29](#); [Prov 29:23](#); [Matt 23:12](#); [Luke 14:11](#); [Jas 4:10](#); [\[Matt 18:4\]](#);

7 Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you. [Ps 55:22](#); [Matt 6:25](#); [Luke 12:22](#); [Phil 4:6](#); [1Tim 6:8](#); [1Cor 9:9](#); [Heb 13:5](#); [\[Ps 37:5\]](#); [\[Prov 16:3\]](#);

and all to be sober, watchful, and constant in the faith

8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: [1Thess 5:6](#); [1Pet 1:13](#); [1Pet 4:7](#); [Job 1:7](#); [Luke 22:31](#);

and to resist the cruel adversary the devil

9 Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world. [Eph 4:27](#); [Jas 4:7](#);

10 But the Elohim of all grace, who has called us unto his eternal glory in union with the Messiah, after that you have suffered a while, make you perfect, establish, strengthen, settle *you*. [Heb 10:37](#); [1Pet 1:6](#);

11 To him *be* glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

12 By Silvanus, a faithful brother unto you, as I suppose, I have written briefly, exhorting, and testifying that this is the true grace of Elohim wherein you stand.

13 The *church that is* at Babylon, elected together with *you*, saluteth you; and *so does* Marcus my son. [\[Phlm 1:24\]](#);

14 Greet you one another with a kiss of love. Peace *be* with you all who belong to the Messiah. Amen. [Rom 16:16](#); [1Cor 16:20](#); [2Cor 13:12](#); [1Thess 5:26](#);

Second_Peter

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#)

SECOND PETER ONE

Confirming them in hope of the increase of Elohim's graces

1 Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Yahushua the Messiah, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of Elohim and our Saviour Yahushua the Messiah: [\[Rev 22:16\]](#);

2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of Elohim, and of Yahushua our Lord, [Rom 1:7](#); [1Pet 1:2](#); [Jude 1:2](#); [John 17:3](#);

3 According as his divine power has given unto us all things that *pertain* unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that has called us to glory and virtue:

4 Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these you might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. [Isa 56:5](#); [John 1:12](#); [Rom 8:15](#); [Gal 3:26](#);

he exhorts them, by faith, and good works, to make their calling sure

5 And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge;

6 And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness;

7 And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness love.

8 For if these things be in you, and abound, they make *you that you shall* neither *be* barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. [Titus 3:14](#);

9 But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and has forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. [Isa 59:10](#); [Zeph 1:17](#);

10 Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you shall never fall:

11 For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Yahushua the Messiah.

whereof he is careful to remind them, knowing that his death is at hand

12 Wherefore I will not be negligent to put you always in remembrance of these things, though you know *them*, and be established in the present truth.

13 **yes**, I think it meet, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by putting *you* in remembrance; [2Pet 3:1](#);

14 Knowing that shortly I must put off *this* my tabernacle, even as our Lord Yahushua the Messiah has showed me. [2Tim 4:6](#); [John 21:18-19](#); [\[John 13:36\]](#); [\[John 21:18\]](#); [\[John 21:19\]](#);

15 Moreover I will endeavour that you may be able after my decease to have these things always in remembrance.

and warns them to be constant in the faith of the Messiah, who is the true Son of Elohim, by the eyewitness of the apostles beholding his majesty, and by the testimony of the Father, and the prophets

16 For we have not followed cunningly devised fables, when we made known unto you the power and coming of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah, but were eyewitnesses of his majesty. [1Cor 1:17](#); [1Cor 2:1](#); [1Cor 2:4](#); [1Cor 4:20](#); [Matt 17:1](#); [John 1:14](#); [1John 1:1](#); [[1Cor 2:13](#)];

17 For he received from Elohim the Father honour and glory, when there came such a voice to him from the excellent glory, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. [Matt 3:17](#); [Matt 17:5](#); [Mark 1:11](#); [Mark 9:7](#); [Luke 3:22](#); [Luke 9:35](#); [Col 1:13](#); [[Matt 12:18](#)]; [[Matt 17:1](#)]; [[John 1:14](#)]; [[John 5:37](#)]; [[John 6:27](#)];

18 And this voice which came from heaven we heard, when we were with him in the holy mount.

19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto you do well that you take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts: [2Cor 4:6](#); [Rev 22:16](#);

20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. [[2Tim 3:16](#)];

21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of Elohim spoke *as they were* moved by the Holy Spirit. [2Tim 3:16](#);

He foretells them of false teachers, showing the impiety and punishment both of them and their followers

1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. [Deut 13:1](#); [Matt 24:11](#); [Acts 20:29](#); [1Tim 4:1](#); [2Tim 3:1](#); [\[1John 4:1\]](#); [\[2John 1:7\]](#); [\[Jude 1:4\]](#); [\[Jude 1:18\]](#);

2 And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of.

3 And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not. [Jude 1:4](#); [\[2Tim 3:1\]](#);

4 For if Elohim spared not the angels that sinned, but cast *them* down to hell, and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment; [Jude 1:6](#); [Rev 20:3](#); [\[Job 4:18\]](#); [\[Rev 20:2\]](#);

5 And spared not the old world, but saved Noah, a preacher of righteousness, along with seven others, when Elohim brought the flood upon the ungodly world; [Gen 7:23](#); [1Pet 3:19](#); [\[Gen 6:18\]](#); [\[Gen 7:1\]](#); [\[Matt 24:37\]](#); [\[1Pet 3:20\]](#);

6 And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrha into ashes condemned *them* with an overthrow, making *them* an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly; [Gen 19:24](#); [Deut 29:23](#); [Isa 13:19](#); [Jer 50:40](#); [Ezek 16:49](#); [Hos 11:8](#); [Amos 4:11](#); [Jude 1:7](#);

from which the godly shall be delivered, as Lot was out of Sodom

7 And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conduct of the wicked: [Gen 19:7-8](#); [\[Gen 19:9\]](#);

8 (For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed *his* righteous being from day to day with *their* unlawful deeds;) [Ps 119:158](#);

9 The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished: [1Cor 10:13](#);

and more fully describes the manners of those profane and blasphemous seducers, whereby they may be the better known, and avoided

10 But chiefly them that walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous *are they*, selfwilled, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities.

11 Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord. [\[Jude 1:9\]](#);

12 But these, as natural brute beasts, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption; [Jer 12:3](#); [Jude 1:10](#);

13 And shall receive the reward of unrighteousness, *as* they that count it pleasure to riot in the day time. Spots *they are* and blemishes, sporting themselves with their own deceivings while they feast with you; [\[Jude 1:12\]](#);

14 Having eyes full of adultery, and that cannot cease from sin; beguiling unstable beings: a heart they have exercised with covetous practices; cursed children:

15 Which have forsaken the right way, and are gone astray, following the way of Balaam *the son* of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness; [Num 22:7](#); [Num 22:21](#); [Jude 1:11](#); [\[Num 22:32\]](#); [\[Num 31:16\]](#);

16 But was rebuked for his iniquity: the dumb ass speaking with man's voice forbad the madness of the prophet. [Num 22:21](#); [\[Num 22:23\]](#); [\[Num 22:28\]](#);

17 These are wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest; to whom the mist of darkness is reserved for ever. [Jude 1:12](#);

18 For when they speak great swelling *words* of vanity, they allure through the lusts of the flesh, *through much* wantonness, those that were clean escaped from them who live in error. [\[Jude 1:16\];](#)

19 While they promise them liberty, they themselves are the servants of corruption: for of whom a man is overcome, of the same is he brought in bondage. [John 8:34; Rom 6:16;](#)

20 For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Yahushua the Messiah, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. [Heb 6:4; Heb 10:26; Matt 12:45; \[Luke 9:62\]; \[Luke 11:26\]; \[1John 5:16\];](#)

21 For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known *it*, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.

22 But it is happened unto them according to the true proverb, **The dog *is* turned to his own vomit again;** and the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire. [Prov 26:11;](#)

He assures them of the certainty of the Messiah's coming to judgment, against those scorners who dispute against it

- 1** This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; in *both* which I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance: [2Pet 1:13](#);
- 2** That you may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour:
- 3** Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts, [1Tim 4:1](#); [2Tim 3:1](#); [Jude 1:18](#);
- 4** And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as *they were* from the beginning of the creation. [Ezek 12:22](#); [\[Jer 17:15\]](#);
- 5** For this they willingly are ignorant of, that by the word of Elohim the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water: [Gen 1:9](#); [Ps 24:2](#);
- 6** Whereby the world that then was, being overflowed with water, perished: [Gen 7:10](#); [Gen 7:21](#);
- 7** But the heavens and the earth, which are now, by the same word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men. [2Pet 3:10](#); [Ps 102:26](#); [Isa 51:6](#); [Heb 1:11](#); [2Thess 1:8](#);

warning the godly, for the long patience of Elohim, to hasten their repentance

- 8** But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day *is* with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day. [Ps 90:4](#);
- 9** The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance. [Hab 2:3](#); [2Pet 3:15](#); [1Pet 3:20](#); [Isa 30:18](#); [Rom 2:4](#); [Ezek 18:32](#); [Ezek 33:11](#); [1Tim 2:4](#);

He describes also the manner how the world shall be destroyed

- 10** But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. [Matt 24:43-44](#); [1Thess 5:2](#); [Rev 3:3](#); [Rev 16:15](#); [\[Matt 24:43\]](#); [\[Luke 12:39\]](#); [\[Luke 21:35\]](#); [\[Heb 1:11\]](#); [\[2Pet 3:7\]](#);

exhorting them, from the expectation thereof, to all holiness of life

- 11** *Seeing* then *that* all these things shall be dissolved, what manner *of persons* ought you to be in *all* holy conduct and godliness,
- 12** Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of Elohim, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? [Ps 50:3](#); [2Thess 1:8](#);
- 13** Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness. [Isa 65:17](#); [Isa 66:22](#); [Rev 21:1](#);
- 14** Wherefore, beloved, seeing that you look for such things, be diligent that you may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless.
- 15** And account *that* the longsuffering of our Lord *is* salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him has written unto you; [Rom 2:4](#); [\[2Pet 3:9\]](#);

and again to think the patience of Elohim to tend to their salvation, as Paul wrote to them in his epistles

16 As also in all *his* epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as *they do* also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction. [Rom 8:19](#); [1Cor 15:24](#); [1Thess 4:15](#);

17 You therefore, beloved, seeing you know *these things* before, beware lest you also, being led away with the error of the wicked, fall from your own stedfastness.

18 But grow in grace, and *in* the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Yahushua the Messiah. To him *be* glory both now and for ever. Amen.

First_John

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#)

FIRST JOHN ONE

He describes the person of the Messiah, in whom we have eternal life, by a communion with Elohim

1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life; [John 1:1](#); [John 1:14](#); [2Pet 1:16](#); [Luke 24:39](#); [John 20:27](#); [[Rev 19:13](#)];

2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen *it*, and bear witness, and show unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;) [[John 1:1](#)];

3 That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that you also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship *is* with the Father, and with his Son Yahushua the Messiah. [[1Cor 1:9](#)];

4 And these things write we unto you, that your joy may be full.

to which we must adjoin holiness of life, to testify the truth of that our communion and profession of faith, as also to assure us of the forgiveness of our sins by the Messiah's death

5 This then is the message which we have heard of him, and declare unto you, that Elohim is light, and in him is no darkness at all. [John 1:9](#); [John 8:12](#); [John 9:5](#); [John 12:35-36](#);

6 If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth:

7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Yahushua his Son cleanseth us from all sin. [Heb 9:14](#); [1Pet 1:19](#); [Rev 1:5](#); [[1Pet 4:12](#)]; [[Rev 5:9](#)];

8 If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. [1Kgs 8:46](#); [2Chr 6:36](#); [Job 9:2](#); [Ps 143:2](#); [Prov 20:9](#); [Eccl 7:20](#); [[Job 15:14](#)];

9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. [Ps 32:5](#); [Prov 28:13](#);

10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us. [[1Kgs 8:46](#)]; [[Job 15:14](#)];

He comforts them against the sins of infirmity

1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that you sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Yahushua the Messiah the righteous: [1Tim 2:5](#); [Heb 7:25](#);

2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for *the sins* of the whole world. [Rom 3:25](#); [2Cor 5:18](#); [Col 1:20](#); [1John 4:10](#); [John 4:42](#); [1John 4:14](#);

Rightly to know Elohim is to keep his commandments

3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.

4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. [1John 4:20](#);

5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of Elohim perfected: hereby know we that we are in him. [John 13:35](#);

6 He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked. [John 13:15](#); [1Pet 2:21](#); [\[Phil 2:5\]](#);

7 Brethren, I write no new commandment unto you, but an old commandment which you had from the beginning. The old commandment is the word which you have heard from the beginning. [2John 1:5](#);

8 Again, a new commandment I write unto you, which thing is true in him and in you: because the darkness is past, and the true light now shineth. [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#);

to love our brethren

9 He that saith he is in the light, and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now. [\[Lev 19:17\]](#);

10 He that loveth his brother abideth in the light, and there is none occasion of stumbling in him. [1John 3:14](#); [John 12:35](#);

11 But he that hateth his brother is in darkness, and walketh in darkness, and knoweth not whither he goes, because that darkness has blinded his eyes. [\[Lev 19:17\]](#);

12 I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake. [Luke 24:47](#); [Acts 4:12](#); [Acts 13:38](#);

13 I write unto you, fathers, because you have known him *that is* from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because you have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because you have known the Father.

14 I have written unto you, fathers, because you have known him *that is* from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because you are strong, and the word of Elohim abideth in you, and you have overcome the wicked one.

and not to love the world

15 Love not the world, neither the things *that are* in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. [Rom 12:2](#); [Gal 1:10](#); [Jas 4:4](#);

16 For all that *is* in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. [\[Titus 2:12\]](#);

17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of Elohim abideth for ever. [Ps 90:10](#); [Isa 40:6](#); [1Cor 7:31](#); [Jas 1:10](#); [Jas 4:14](#); [1Pet 1:24](#); [\[Jas 1:11\]](#);

We must beware of seducers

18 Little children, it is the last time: and as you have heard that an anti-Messiah shall come, even now are there many anti-Messiahs; whereby we know that it is the last time. [Matt 24:5](#); [2Thess 2:3](#); [\[1Pet 4:7\]](#); [\[1John 4:3\]](#);

19 They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would *no doubt* have continued with us: but *they went out*, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us. [Ps 41:9](#); [Acts 20:30](#); [1Cor 11:19](#); [\[John 13:18\]](#); [\[John 13:21\]](#);

from whose deceits the godly are safe, preserved by perseverance in faith, and holiness of life

20 But you have an unction from the Holy One, and you know all things. [Ps 45:7](#); [Ps 133:2](#); [2Cor 1:21](#); [Heb 1:9](#);

21 I have not written unto you because you know not the truth, but because you know it, and that no lie is of the truth.

22 Who is a liar but he that denies that Yahushua is the Messiah? He is anti-Messiah, that denies the Father and the Son. [\[1John 4:3\]](#);

23 Whosoever denies the Son has not the Father either. [Luke 12:9](#); [2Tim 2:12](#); [\[Mark 8:38\]](#); [\[Luke 9:26\]](#);

24 Let that therefore abide in you, which you have heard from the beginning. If that which you have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, you also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father.

25 And this is the promise that he has promised us, *even* eternal life.

26 These *things* have I written unto you concerning them that seduce you.

27 But the anointing which you have received of him abideth in you, and you need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it has taught you, you shall abide in him. [Jer 31:34](#); [Heb 8:11](#);

28 And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before him at his coming. [Mark 8:38](#); [1John 3:2](#);

29 If you know that he is righteous, you know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of him. [\[1John 3:7\]](#);

He declares the singular love of Elohim towards us, in making us his sons

1 Behold, what manner of love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of Elohim: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not. [John 1:12](#); [\[Rom 8:18\]](#);

2 Beloved, now are we the sons of Elohim, and it does not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. [Isa 56:5](#); [John 1:12](#); [Rom 8:15](#); [Gal 3:26](#); [Gal 4:6](#); [Matt 5:12](#); [Rom 8:18](#); [2Cor 4:17](#); [Phil 3:21](#); [Col 3:4](#); [\[Matt 22:30\]](#); [\[Mark 12:25\]](#); [\[Luke 20:36\]](#); [\[1John 2:28\]](#);

who therefore ought obediently to keep his commandments

3 And every man that has this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.

4 Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law. [1John 5:17](#);

5 And you know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin. [Isa 53:12](#); [1Tim 1:15](#); [Isa 53:9](#); [2Cor 5:21](#); [1Pet 2:22](#); [\[Heb 4:15\]](#);

6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth has not seen him, neither known him. [\[3John 1:11\]](#);

7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous. [1John 2:29](#); [\[Rom 2:13\]](#); [\[Jas 1:22\]](#);

8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of Elohim was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil. [\[John 8:44\]](#);

9 Whosoever is born of Elohim does not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of Elohim. [1John 5:18](#); [1Pet 1:23](#);

10 In this the children of Elohim are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of Elohim, neither he that loveth not his brother.

as also to love one another as brethren

11 For this is the message that you heard from the beginning, that we should love one another. [1John 3:23](#); [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#);

12 Not as Cain, *who* was of that wicked one, and slew his brother. And wherefore slew he him? Because his own works were evil, and his brother's righteous. [Gen 4:8](#); [Heb 11:4](#); [\[Jude 1:11\]](#);

13 Marvel not, my brethren, if the world hate you. [John 15:18](#);

14 We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not *his* brother abideth in death. [1John 2:10](#);

15 Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer: and you know that no murderer has eternal life abiding in him. [Matt 5:21](#); [Gal 5:21](#); [\[Lev 19:17\]](#);

16 Hereby perceive we the love *of Elohim*, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down *our* lives for the brethren. [John 15:13](#); [Eph 5:2](#);

17 But whoso has this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels *of compassion* from him, how dwelleth the love of Elohim in him? [Deut 15:7](#); [Luke 3:11](#); [Jas 2:15](#);

18 My little children, let us not love in word, neither in tongue; but in deed and in truth.

19 And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him.

20 For if our heart condemn us, Elohim is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things.

21 Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, *then* have we confidence toward Elohim.

22 And whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in his sight. [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:8](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [1John 5:14](#); [\[Matt 7:7\]](#); [\[John 15:7\]](#); [\[John 16:23\]](#);

23 And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Yahushua The Messiah, and love one another, as he gave us commandment. [John 6:29](#); [John 17:3](#); [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [1Pet 4:8](#); [1John 4:21](#); [\[Col 3:14\]](#); [\[1John 3:11\]](#); [\[2John 1:5\]](#);

24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he has given us. [John 14:23](#); [John 15:10](#); [1John 4:12](#);

He warns them not to believe all who boast of the Spirit

1 Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of Elohim: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. [Jer 29:8](#); [Matt 24:4](#); [Eph 5:6](#); [Col 2:18](#); [Matt 7:15-16](#); [1Cor 14:29](#); [1Thess 5:21](#); [Matt 24:5](#); [Matt 24:24](#); [2Pet 2:1](#); [2John 1:7](#); [[Matt 7:15](#)]; [[Mark 13:5](#)]; [[Luke 21:8](#)]; [[2Thess 2:2](#)]; [[Heb 13:9](#)];

2 Hereby know you the Spirit of Elohim: Every spirit that confesseth that Yahushua The Messiah is come in the flesh is of Elohim:

3 And every spirit which does not acknowledge Yahushua is not of Elohim: and this is that *spirit* of anti-Messiah, whereof you have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world. [1John 2:22](#); [1John 2:18](#); [2Thess 2:7](#);

4 You are of Elohim, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world. [[2Chr 32:8](#)];

5 They are of the world: therefore speak they of the world, and the world heareth them.

6 We are of Elohim: he that knoweth Elohim heareth us; he that is not of Elohim heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error. [John 8:47](#); [John 10:27](#);

and exhorts to brotherly love

7 Beloved, let us love one another: for love is of Elohim; and every one that loveth is born of Elohim, and knoweth Elohim.

8 He that loveth not knoweth not Elohim; for Elohim is love.

9 In this was manifested the love of Elohim toward us, because that Elohim sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him. [John 3:16](#); [Rom 5:8](#);

10 Herein is love, not that we loved Elohim, but that he loved us, and sent his Son *to be* the propitiation for our sins. [Rom 3:24](#); [2Cor 5:19](#); [Col 1:19](#); [Rom 3:25](#); [1John 2:2](#); [[2Cor 5:18](#)]; [[Col 1:20](#)];

11 Beloved, if Elohim so loved us, we ought also to love one another.

12 No man has seen Elohim at any time. If we love one another, Elohim dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us. [Exod 33:20](#); [Deut 4:12](#); [John 1:18](#); [1Tim 1:17](#); [1Tim 6:16](#); [1John 3:24](#); [[John 5:37](#)];

13 Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he has given us of his Spirit.

14 And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son *to be* the Saviour of the world. [[John 3:17](#)]; [[1John 2:2](#)];

15 Whosoever shall confess that Yahushua is the Son of Elohim, Elohim dwelleth in him, and he in Elohim. [[1John 5:5](#)];

16 And we have known and believed the love that Elohim has to us. Elohim is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in Elohim, and Elohim in him.

17 Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.

18 There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear has torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love.

19 We love him, because he first loved us.

20 If a man say, I love Elohim, and hateth his brother, he is a liar: for he that loveth not his brother whom he has seen, how can he love Elohim whom he has not seen? [1John 2:4](#); [[John 13:35](#)];

21 And this commandment have we from him, That he who loveth Elohim love his brother also. [Lev 19:18](#); [Matt 22:39](#); [John 13:34](#); [John 15:12](#); [Eph 5:2](#); [1Thess 4:9](#); [1Pet 4:8](#); [1John 3:23](#); [[Col 3:14](#)]; [[2John 1:5](#)];

He that loves Elohim loves his children, and keeps his commandments

1 Whosoever believeth that Yahushua is the Messiah is born of Elohim: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him. [John 1:12](#);

2 By this we know that we love the children of Elohim, when we love Elohim, and keep his commandments.

which to the faithful are not grievous

3 For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous. [John 14:15](#); [John 15:10](#); [Matt 11:29-30](#); [[Matt 11:30](#)];

4 For whatsoever is born of Elohim overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, *even* our faith. [John 16:33](#);

5 Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Yahushua is the Son of Elohim? [1Cor 15:57](#); [1John 4:15](#);

6 This is he that came by water and blood, *even* Yahushua the Messiah; not by water only, but by water and blood. [[John 19:34](#)];

7 And it is the Spirit that bears witness, because the Spirit is truth.

8 For there are three that bear witness, the spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three are in agreement.

Yahushua is the Son of Elohim

9 If we receive the witness of men, the witness of Elohim is greater: for this is the witness of Elohim which He has testified of His Son. [John 5:37](#); [[John 5:36](#)];

10 He that believeth on the Son of Elohim has the witness in himself: he that believeth not Elohim has made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that Elohim gave of his Son. [John 3:36](#); [Rom 8:16](#); [Gal 4:6](#); [[John 3:16](#)]; [[John 11:25](#)]; [[Acts 16:31](#)];

11 And this is the record, that Elohim has given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. [John 1:4](#);

12 He that has the Son has life; *and* he that has not the Son of Elohim has not life.

13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of Elohim; that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe on the name of the Son of Elohim. [John 20:31](#);

and able to hear our prayers

14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: [Jer 29:12](#); [Matt 7:8](#); [Matt 21:22](#); [Mark 11:24](#); [Luke 11:9](#); [John 14:13](#); [John 15:7](#); [John 16:24](#); [Jas 1:5](#); [1John 3:22](#); [[Matt 7:7](#)]; [[John 16:23](#)];

15 And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.

16 If any man see his brother sin a sin *which is* not unto death, he shall ask, and he shall give him life for them that sin not unto death. There is a sin unto death: I do not say that he shall pray for it. [Num 15:30](#); [1Sam 2:25](#); [Matt 12:31](#); [Mark 3:29](#); [Luke 12:10](#); [Heb 6:4](#); [Heb 10:26](#); [2Pet 2:20](#); [[Matt 12:32](#)]; [[Mark 3:28](#)];

17 All unrighteousness is sin: and there is a sin not unto death. [1John 3:4](#);

18 We know that whosoever is born of Elohim sinneth not; but he that is begotten of Elohim keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not. [1John 3:9](#);

19 *And* we know that we are of Elohim, and the whole world lies in wickedness. [[Exod 32:22](#)];

20 And we know that the Son of Elohim is come, and has given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, *even* in his Son Yahushua the Messiah. This is the true Elohim, and eternal life. [Luke 24:45](#); [Isa 9:6](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Isa 54:5](#); [John 20:28](#); [Rom 9:5](#); [1Tim 3:16](#); [[Rom 1:4](#)];

21 Little children, keep yourselves from idols. Amen.

Second_John

He exhorts a certain honourable matron, with her children, to persevere in Messianic love and belief

- 1** The elder unto the elect lady and her children, whom I love in the truth; and not I only, but also all they that have known the truth;
- 2** For the truth's sake, which dwelleth in us, and shall be with us for ever.
- 3** Grace be with you, mercy, *and* peace, from Elohim the Father, and from the Lord Yahushua the Messiah, the Son of the Father, in truth and love.
- 4** I rejoiced greatly that I found of thy children walking in truth, as we have received a commandment from the Father. [\[1Cor 13:6\];](#)
- 5** And now I beseech you, lady, not as though I wrote a new commandment unto you, but that which we had from the beginning, that we love one another. [1John 2:7; John 13:34; John 15:12; Eph 5:2; 1Thess 4:9; 1Pet 4:8; 1John 3:23; 1John 4:21;](#)
- 6** And this is love, that we walk after his commandments. This is the commandment, That, as you have heard from the beginning, you should walk in it. [John 15:10;](#)
- 7** For many deceivers are entered into the world, who confess not that Yahushua the Messiah is come in the flesh. This is a deceiver and an anti-Messiah. [Matt 24:5; Matt 24:24; 2Pet 2:1; 1John 4:1;](#)

lest they lose the reward of their former profession

- 8** Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but that we receive a full reward.
- 9** Whosoever transgresseth, and abideth not in the doctrine of the Messiah, has not Elohim. He that abideth in his doctrine, he has both the Father and the Son.

and to have nothing to do with those seducers that bring not the true doctrine of Yahushua

- 10** If there come any unto you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into *your* house, neither bid him Elohim speed: [Rom 16:17; 2Tim 3:5; Titus 3:10; \[1Cor 5:11\];](#)
- 11** For he that biddeth him Elohim speed is partaker of his evil deeds.
- 12** Having many things to write unto you, I would not *write* with paper and ink: but I trust to come unto you, and speak face to face, that our joy may be full. [\[3John 1:13\];](#)
- 13** The children of thy elect sister greet you. Amen.

Third_John

He commends Gaius for his piety

- 1** The elder unto the wellbeloved Gaius, whom I love in the truth.
- 2** Beloved, I wish above all things that you may prosper and be in health, even as thy being prospereth.
- 3** For I rejoiced greatly, when the brethren came and testified of the truth that is in you, even as you walkest in the truth.
- 4** I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth.

and hospitality

- 5** Beloved, you do faithfully whatsoever you do to the brethren, and to strangers;
- 6** Which have borne witness of thy love before the church: whom if you bring forward on their journey after a godly sort, you shall do well:

to true preachers

- 7** Because that for his name's sake they went forth, taking nothing of the Gentiles.
- 8** We therefore ought to receive such, that we might be fellowhelpers to the truth.

complaining of the unkind dealing of ambitious Diotrephes on the contrary side

- 9** I wrote unto the church: but Diotrephes, who loveth to have the preeminence among them, receiveth us not.
- 10** Wherefore, if I come, I will remember his deeds which he doeth, prating against us with malicious words: and not content therewith, neither does he himself receive the brethren, and forbiddeth them that would, and casteth *them* out of the church.

whose evil example is not to be followed

- 11** Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of Elohim: but he that doeth evil has not seen Elohim. [Ps 37:27](#); [Isa 1:16](#); [1Pet 3:11](#); [1John 3:6](#);

and gives special testimony to the good report of Demetrius

- 12** Demetrius has good report of all *men*, and of the truth itself: yes, and we *also* bear record; and you know that our record is true.
- 13** I had many things to write, but I will not with ink and pen write unto you: [2John 1:12](#);
- 14** But I trust I shall shortly see you, and we shall speak face to face. Peace *be* to you. *Our* friends salute you. Greet the friends by name.

Jude

He exhorts them to be constant in the profession of the faith

1 Jude, the servant of Yahushua the Messiah, and brother of James, to them that are sanctified by Elohim the Father, and preserved in Yahushua the Messiah, *and* called:

2 Mercy unto you, and peace, and love, be multiplied. [1Pet 1:2]; [2Pet 1:2];

3 Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort *you* that you should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints.

False teachers are crept in to seduce them, for whose evil doctrine and manners horrible punishment is prepared

4 For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our Elohim into lasciviousness, and denying the only Lord Elohim, and our Lord Yahushua the Messiah. 2Pet 2:1; 1Pet 2:8; 2Pet 2:3; [Gal 5:13];

5 I will therefore put you in remembrance, though you once knew this, how that the Lord, having saved the people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed them that believed not. Num 14:29; Num 26:64-65; Ps 106:26; 1Cor 10:5; Heb 3:17; [Num 14:37];

6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. 2Pet 2:4; [John 8:44]; [2Thess 1:5];

7 Even as Sodom and Gomorrha, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire. Gen 19:24; Deut 29:23; Isa 13:19; Jer 50:40; Ezek 16:49; Hos 11:8; Amos 4:11; Luke 17:29; 2Pet 2:6;

8 Likewise also these *filthy* dreamers defile the flesh, despise dominion, and speak evil of dignities.

9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, dared not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, **The Lord rebuke you.** Dan 10:13; Dan 12:1; Rev 12:7; 2Pet 2:11; Zech 3:2; [Deut 34:6];

10 But these speak evil of those things which they know not: but what they know naturally, as brute beasts, in those things they corrupt themselves. 2Pet 2:12;

11 Woe unto them! for they have gone in the way of Cain, and ran greedily after the error of Balaam for reward, and perished in the gainsaying of Core. Gen 4:8; 1John 3:12; Num 22:7; Num 22:21; 2Pet 2:15; Num 16:1; [Num 22:23]; [Num 22:28];

12 These are spots in your feasts of love, when they feast with you, feeding themselves without fear: clouds *they are* without water, carried about of winds; trees whose fruit withereth, without fruit, twice dead, plucked up by the roots; 2Pet 2:13; 2Pet 2:17;

13 Raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness for ever. Isa 57:20;

14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, Gen 5:18; Dan 7:10; Acts 1:11; 1Thess 1:10; 2Thess 1:10; Rev 1:7; [Gen 5:21];

15 To execute judgment upon all, and to convict all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard *speeches* which ungodly sinners have spoken against him. Matt 12:36;

16 These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouth speaks proudly, flattering people to gain advantage. 2Pet 2:18;

17 But, beloved, remember you the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah;

18 How that they told you there should be mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts. Acts 20:29; 1Tim 4:1; 2Tim 3:1; 2Tim 4:3; 2Pet 2:1; 2Pet 3:3;

19 These be they who separate themselves, sensual, having not the Spirit.

whereas the godly, by the assistance of the Holy Spirit, and prayers to Elohim, may persevere, and grow in grace, and keep themselves, and recover others out of the snares of those deceivers

20 But you, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Spirit,

21 Keep yourselves in the love of Elohim, looking for the mercy of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah unto eternal life.

22 And of some have compassion, making a difference:

23 And others save with fear, pulling *them* out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.

24 Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present *you* faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy,

25 To the only wise Elohim our Saviour, *be* glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen. [Rom 14:26](#); [1Tim 1:17](#);

Revelation

[1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [9](#) [10](#) [11](#) [12](#) [13](#) [14](#) [15](#) [16](#) [17](#) [18](#) [19](#) [20](#) [21](#) [22](#)

REVELATION ONE

The preface

1 The Revelation of Yahushua the Messiah, which Elohim gave unto him, to show unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified *it* by his angel unto his servant John: [\[Rev 22:6\]](#); [\[Rev 22:16\]](#);

2 Who bore record of the word of Elohim, and of the testimony of Yahushua the Messiah, and of all things that he saw.

3 Blessed *is* he that readeth, and they that hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things which are written therein: for the time *is* at hand. [Rev 22:7](#); [Rev 22:10](#);

John's salutation to the seven churches of Asia

4 John to the seven churches which are in Asia: Grace *be* unto you, and peace, from him which is, and which was, and which is to come; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne; [Rev 1:8](#); [Exod 3:14](#); [Rev 4:8](#); [Rev 11:17](#); [Rev 16:5](#); [\[Rev 3:1\]](#);

5 And from Yahushua the Messiah, *who is* the faithful witness, *and* the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood, [Isa 55:4](#); [Rev 3:14](#); [1Cor 15:20](#); [Col 1:18](#); [Acts 20:28](#); [Heb 9:12](#); [Heb 9:14](#); [1Pet 1:19](#); [1John 1:7](#); [Rev 5:9](#);

6 And has made us kings and priests unto Elohim and his Father; to him *be* glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen. [1Pet 2:9](#); [Rev 5:10](#); [Rom 12:1](#); [1Pet 2:5](#); [\[Isa 61:6\]](#); [\[Rev 20:6\]](#);

The coming of the Messiah

7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they *also* which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen. [Dan 7:13](#); [Matt 24:30](#); [Matt 25:31](#); [Acts 1:11](#); [1Thess 1:10](#); [2Thess 1:10](#); [Jude 1:14](#); [Zech 12:10](#); [John 19:37](#); [\[Matt 26:64\]](#); [\[Mark 13:26\]](#); [\[Mark 14:62\]](#); [\[Luke 21:27\]](#); [\[Luke 22:69\]](#);

His glorious power and majesty

8 *I am Alpha and Omega*, saith the Lord, *which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty*. [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Rev 21:6](#); [Rev 22:13](#); [\[Rev 1:4\]](#); [\[Rev 4:8\]](#); [\[Rev 11:17\]](#); [\[Rev 16:5\]](#);

9 I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Yahushua the Messiah, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of Elohim, and for the testimony of Yahushua the Messiah.

10 I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, [Rev 4:2](#); [\[Rev 21:10\]](#);

11 Saying, *What you seest, write in a book, and send it unto the seven churches which are in Asia; unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis, and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea*.

12 And I turned to see the voice that spoke with me. And being turned, I saw seven golden candlesticks;

13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks *one* like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle. [Ezek 1:26](#); [Dan 7:13](#); [Rev 14:14](#); [Rev 15:6](#); [\[Dan 10:5\]](#);

14 His head and *his* hairs *were* white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes *were* as a flame of fire; [Dan 7:9](#); [Rev 19:12](#); [\[Rev 2:18\]](#);

15 And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters. [Rev 14:2](#); [\[Rev 10:1\]](#);

16 And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went a sharp twoedged sword: and his countenance *was* as the sun shineth in his strength. [Isa 49:2](#); [Eph 6:17](#); [Heb 4:12](#); [Rev 2:16](#); [Rev 19:15](#); [\[Ps 149:6\]](#); [\[Rev 2:12\]](#); [\[Rev 3:1\]](#);

17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; **I am the first and the last:** [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Isa 48:12](#); [[Zech 12:10](#)]; [[Rev 2:8](#)];

18 I *am* he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death. [Rom 6:9](#); [Job 12:14](#); [Isa 22:22](#); [Rev 3:7](#); [Rev 20:1](#);

19 Write the things which you have seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter;

20 The mystery of the seven stars which you sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks are the seven churches. [Mal 2:7](#);

REVELATION TWO

What is commanded to be written to the angels, that is, the ministers of the churches of Ephesus

- 1 Unto the angel of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks;
- 2 I know thy works, and thy labour, and thy patience, and how you canst not bear them which are evil: and you have tried them which say they are apostles, and are not, and have found them liars:
- 3 And have borne, and have patience, and for my name's sake have laboured, and have not fainted.
- 4 Nevertheless I have *somewhat* against you, because you have left thy first love.
- 5 Remember therefore from whence you are fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto you quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except you repent.
- 6 But this you hast, that you hatest the deeds of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate. [Rev 2:15](#); [\[Rev 12:14\]](#);
- 7 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of Elohim. [Gen 2:9](#); [Rev 22:2](#); [\[Matt 24:13\]](#); [\[Mark 13:13\]](#);

Smyrna

- 8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive; [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Rev 1:17](#);
- 9 I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty, (but you are rich) and *I know* the blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but *are* the synagogue of Satan. [\[Rev 3:9\]](#);
- 10 Fear none of those things which you shall suffer: behold, the devil shall cast *some* of you into prison, that you may be tried; and you shall have tribulation ten days: be you faithful unto death, and I will give you a crown of life. [\[Matt 10:17\]](#); [\[Matt 10:22\]](#); [\[Matt 24:9\]](#); [\[Matt 24:13\]](#); [\[Mark 13:9\]](#); [\[Mark 13:13\]](#); [\[Luke 21:12\]](#); [\[Jas 1:12\]](#);
- 11 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death. [Matt 13:9](#);

Pergamos

- 12 And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write; These things saith he which has the sharp sword with two edges; [Rev 2:16](#); [Rev 1:16](#);
- 13 I know thy works, and where you dwellest, *even* where Satan's seat *is*: and you holdest fast my name, and have not denied my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas *was* my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth.
- 14 But I have a few things against you, because you have there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balac to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication. [Num 22:23](#); [Num 24:14](#); [Num 25:1](#); [Num 31:16](#); [\[Ps 106:28\]](#);
- 15 So have you also them that hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitans, which thing I hate. [\[Rev 2:6\]](#);
- 16 Repent; or else I will come unto you quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth. [Isa 49:2](#); [Eph 6:17](#); [Heb 4:12](#); [Rev 1:16](#); [\[Rev 2:12\]](#); [\[Rev 19:15\]](#);
- 17 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give some of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth *it*.

Thyatira, and what is commended or found wanting in them

18 And unto the angel of the church in Thyatira write; These things saith the Son of Elohim, who has his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet *are* like fine brass; [Rev 1:14-15](#);

19 I know thy works, and love, and service, and faith, and thy patience, and thy works; and the last *to be* more than the first.

20 Notwithstanding I have a few things against you, because you sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols. [1Kgs 16:31](#); [2Kgs 9:7](#);

21 And I gave her space to repent of her fornication; and she repented not.

22 Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they repent of their deeds.

23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that **I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.** [1Sam 16:7](#); [1Chr 28:9](#); [1Chr 29:17](#); [Ps 7:9](#); [Jer 11:20](#); [Acts 1:24](#); [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Gal 6:5](#); [Rev 20:12](#); [\[1Cor 3:8\]](#); [\[Rev 22:12\]](#);

24 But unto you I say, and unto the rest in Thyatira, as many as have not this doctrine, and which have not known the depths of Satan, as they speak; I will put upon you none other burden.

25 But that which you have *already* hold fast till I come. [Rev 3:11](#);

26 And he that overcometh, and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations: [Ps 2:8](#);

27 **And he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers:** even as I received of my Father. [\[Ps 2:9\]](#); [\[Rev 12:5\]](#); [\[Rev 19:15\]](#);

28 And I will give him the morning star.

29 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

REVELATION THREE

The angel of the church of Sardis is reproved

1 And unto the angel of the church in Sardis write; These things saith he that has the seven Spirits of Elohim, and the seven stars; I know thy works, that you have a name that you livest, and are dead. [Rev 1:4](#); [Rev 1:16](#);

2 Be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die: for I have not found thy works perfect before Elohim.

exhorted to repent, and threatened if he do not repent

3 Remember therefore how you have received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. If therefore you shall not watch, I will come on you as a thief, and you shall not know what hour I will come upon you. [Rev 3:19](#); [Matt 24:43](#); [1Thess 5:2](#); [2Pet 3:10](#); [Rev 16:15](#); [[Luke 12:39](#)]; [[Luke 21:35](#)];

4 You have a few names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy.

5 He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels. [Exod 32:32](#); [Ps 69:28](#); [Phil 4:3](#); [Rev 20:12](#); [Rev 21:27](#); [Matt 10:32](#); [Luke 12:8](#); [[Rev 13:8](#)];

6 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

7 And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, **he that has the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth**; [Rev 3:14](#); [Job 12:14](#); [Isa 22:22](#); [Rev 1:18](#);

The angel of the church of Philadelphia

8 I know thy works: behold, I have set before you an open door, and no man can shut it: for you have a little strength, and have kept my word, and have not denied my name.

9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved you. [Rev 2:9](#);

is approved for his diligence and patience

10 Because you have kept the word of my patience, I also will keep you from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth. [[Matt 10:22](#)]; [[Matt 24:13](#)];

11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which you hast, that no man take thy crown. [Rev 2:25](#);

12 Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my Elohim, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my Elohim, and the name of the city of my Elohim, *which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my Elohim: and I will write upon him my new name.* [1Kgs 7:21](#); [Rev 22:4](#); [Rev 21:2](#); [Rev 21:10](#); [[Heb 12:22](#)];

13 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

14 And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginner of the creation of Elohim; [Rev 1:5-6](#); [Col 1:15](#); [[Rev 1:5](#)]; [[Rev 3:7](#)];

the angel of Laodicea rebuked for being neither hot nor cold

15 I know thy works, that you are neither cold nor hot: I would you wert cold or hot.

16 So then because you are lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will spue you out of my mouth.

17 Because you sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that you are wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: [[Luke 18:11](#)];

18 I counsel you to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that you may be rich; and white raiment, that you may be clothed, and *that* the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that you may see. [2Cor 5:3](#); [Rev 7:13](#); [Rev 16:15](#); [Rev 19:8](#);

and admonished to be more zealous

19 As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent. [Job 5:17](#); [Prov 3:12](#); [Heb 12:5](#); [\[Rev 3:3\]](#);

the Messiah stands at the door and knocks

20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me.

21 To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne. [Matt 19:28](#); [1Cor 6:2](#); [\[Luke 22:30\]](#);

22 He that has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

REVELATION FOUR

John sees the throne of Elohim in heaven

1 After this I looked, and, behold, a door *was* opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard *was* as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said, Come up hither, and I will show you things which must be hereafter.

2 And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and *one* sat on the throne. [\[Rev 1:10\];](#)

3 And he that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and *there was* a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald.

The four and twenty elders

4 And round about the throne *were* four and twenty other thrones: and upon the thrones I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold. [\[Rev 19:14\];](#)

5 And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunderings and voices: and *there were* seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of Elohim. [\[Ps 97:4\]; \[Rev 5:6\]; \[Rev 16:18\];](#)

The four beasts full of eyes before and behind

6 And before the throne *there was* a sea of glass like unto crystal: and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, *were* four living creatures full of eyes before and behind. [Rev 15:2;](#)

7 And the first living creature *was* like a lion, and the second living creature like a calf, and the third living creature had a face as a man, and the fourth living creature *was* like a flying eagle. [\[Ezek 1:10\];](#)

8 And the four living creatures had each of them six wings about *him*; and *they were* full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord Elohim Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. [Isa 6:3; Rev 1:4; Rev 1:8; Rev 11:17; Rev 16:5; \[Isa 6:2\];](#)

9 And when those living creatures give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever,

The elders lay down their crowns, and worship him that sat on the throne

10 The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying,

11 You are worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for you have created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created. [Rev 5:12; \[Rev 5:9\];](#)

REVELATION FIVE

The book sealed with seven seals

1 And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals. [Ezek 2:10](#);

2 And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, Who is worthy to open the book, and to loose the seals thereof?

3 And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look thereon. [Rev 5:13](#); [Phil 2:10](#);

4 And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open the book, neither to look thereon.

5 And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, has prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof. [Gen 49:9-10](#); [Isa 11:10](#); [Rom 15:12](#); [Rev 22:16](#);

6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of Elohim sent forth into all the earth. [Zech 3:9](#); [Zech 4:10](#); [Rev 4:5](#);

7 And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne.

8 And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four *and* twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. [Rev 14:2](#); [Ps 141:2](#); [\[Rev 8:3\]](#);

which only the Lamb that was slain is worthy to open

9 And they sung a new song, saying, you are worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for you were slain, and have redeemed us to Elohim by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; [Rev 14:3](#); [Rev 4:11](#); [Acts 20:28](#); [Eph 1:7](#); [Col 1:14](#); [Heb 9:12](#); [Heb 10:10](#); [1Pet 1:19](#); [1John 1:7](#); [\[Ps 33:3\]](#); [\[Rev 1:5\]](#);

10 And have made us unto our Elohim kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth. [Exod 19:6](#); [1Pet 2:5](#); [1Pet 2:9](#); [Rev 1:6](#); [\[Isa 61:6\]](#); [\[Rev 20:6\]](#);

11 And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands; [Dan 7:10](#); [Heb 12:22](#); [\[Luke 2:13\]](#);

Therefore the elders praise him, and confess that he redeemed them with his blood

12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing. [Rev 4:11](#);

13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying, Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, *be* unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever. [\[1Chr 29:11\]](#); [\[Ps 148:1\]](#); [\[Rev 5:3\]](#);

14 And the four living creatures said, Amen. And the elders fell down and worshipped.

The opening of the seals in order, and what followed thereupon, containing a prophecy to the end of the world

1 And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the noise of thunder, one of the four beasts saying, Come and see.

2 And I saw, and behold a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer. [Rev 19:11;](#)

3 And when he had opened the second seal, I heard the second beast say, Come and see.

4 And there went out another horse *that was* red: and *power* was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword.

5 And when he had opened the third seal, I heard the third beast say, Come and see. And I beheld, and lo a black horse; and he that sat on him had a pair of balances in his hand.

6 And I heard a voice in the midst of the four beasts say, A measure of wheat for a penny, and three measures of barley for a penny; and *see* you hurt not the oil and the wine. [Rev 9:4;](#)

7 And when he had opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth beast say, Come and see.

8 And I looked, and behold a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.

9 And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the beings of them that were slain for the word of Elohim, and for the testimony which they held: [Rev 20:4;](#) [Rev 19:10;](#)

10 And they cried with a loud voice, saying, How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost you not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth? [\[Luke 18:7\];](#) [\[Rev 20:4\];](#)

11 And white robes were given unto every one of them; and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellowservants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they *were*, should be fulfilled. [\[Rev 20:4\];](#)

12 And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the whole moon became as blood; [Acts 2:20;](#) [\[Mark 13:24\];](#) [\[Luke 21:25\];](#)

13 And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind. [\[Isa 34:4\];](#)

14 And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places.

15 And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains;

16 And said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb: [Isa 2:19;](#) [Hos 10:8;](#) [Luke 23:30;](#) [Rev 9:6;](#)

17 For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand?

An angel seals the servants of Elohim in their foreheads

1 And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree. [\[Rev 9:14\];](#)

2 And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living Elohim: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, [\[Rev 11:8\];](#)

3 Saying, Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our Elohim in their foreheads. [Rev 9:4; Ezek 9:4;](#)

The number of them that were sealed: of the tribes of Israel a certain number

4 And I heard the number of them which were sealed: *and there were* sealed a hundred *and* forty *and* four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel. [Rev 14:1;](#)

5 Of the tribe of Juda *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Reuben *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Gad *were* sealed twelve thousand. [\[Rev 11:8\];](#)

6 Of the tribe of Aser *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Nephtalim *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Manasseh *were* sealed twelve thousand.

7 Of the tribe of Simeon *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Levi *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Issachar *were* sealed twelve thousand.

8 Of the tribe of Zabulon *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Joseph *were* sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Benjamin *were* sealed twelve thousand.

Of all the other nations an innumerable multitude, which stand before the throne, clad in white robes, and palms in their hands

9 After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; [\[Rev 19:14\];](#)

10 And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our Elohim which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. [\[Ps 3:8\];](#)

11 And all the angels stood round about the throne, and *about* the elders and the four living creatures, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped Elohim,

12 Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, *be* unto our Elohim for ever and ever. Amen.

13 And one of the elders answered, saying unto me, What are these which are arrayed in white robes? and whence came they? [\[Rev 3:18\];](#)

Their robes were washed in the blood of the Lamb

14 And I said unto him, Sir, you knowest. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

15 Therefore are they before the throne of Elohim, and serve him day and night in his temple: and he that sitteth on the throne shall dwell among them.

16 **They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat.** [Isa 49:10; Ps 121:6;](#)

17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and Elohim shall wipe away all tears from their eyes. [Ps 23:1; Isa 25:8; Rev 21:4;](#)

At the opening of the seventh seal

1 And when he had opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven about the space of half a hour.

Seven angels have seven trumpets given them

2 And I saw the seven angels which stood before Elohim; and to them were given seven trumpets.

3 And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto him much incense, that he should offer *it* with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne. [Rev 5:8](#); [\[Ps 141:2\]](#);

4 And the smoke of the incense, *which came* with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before Elohim out of the angel's hand. [Ps 141:2](#);

5 And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast *it* into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake. [\[Rev 16:18\]](#);

Four of them sound their trumpets and great plagues follow

6 And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound.

7 The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of the land was burnt up, and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.

8 And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood;

Another angel puts incense to the prayers of the saints on the golden altar

9 And the third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships were destroyed.

10 And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters;

11 And the name of the star is called Wormwood: and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.

12 And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.

13 And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are about to sound! [\[Rev 9:12\]](#); [\[Rev 11:14\]](#); [\[Rev 12:12\]](#);

At the sounding of the fifth angel, a star falls from heaven, to whom is given the key to the bottomless pit

1 And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. [Luke 8:31](#); [Rev 17:8](#); [[Rev 9:11](#)];

He opens the pit, and there come forth locusts like scorpions

2 And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit.

3 And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power.

4 And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of Elohim in their foreheads. [Rev 6:6](#); [Ezek 9:4](#); [Rev 7:3](#);

5 And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment *was* as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man.

6 And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them. [Isa 2:19](#); [Jer 8:3](#); [Hos 10:8](#); [Luke 23:30](#); [Rev 6:16](#);

7 And the shapes of the locusts *were* like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads *were* as it were crowns like gold, and their faces *were* as the faces of men. [Exod 10:4](#);

8 And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as *the teeth* of lions.

9 And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings *was* as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle.

10 And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power *was* to hurt men five months.

11 And they had a king over them, *which is* the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue *is* Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue has *his* name Apollyon. [Rev 9:1](#);

The first woe past

12 One woe is past; *and*, behold, there come two woes more hereafter. [Rev 8:13](#); [[Rev 11:14](#)];

The sixth trumpet sounds

13 And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before Elohim,

Four angels are let loose, that were bound

14 Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates. [Rev 7:1](#);

15 And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for a hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men.

16 And the number of the army of the horsemen *were* two hundred thousand thousand: and I heard the number of them.

17 And thus I saw the horses in the vision, and them that sat on them, having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone: and the heads of the horses *were* as the heads of lions; and out of their mouths issued fire and smoke and brimstone.

18 By these three was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which issued out of their mouths.

19 For their power is in their mouth, and in their tails: for their tails *were* like unto serpents, and had heads, and with them they do hurt.

20 And the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship demons, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk: [Ps 115:4-7](#); [Ps 135:15](#);

21 Neither repented they of their murders, nor of their sorceries, nor of their fornication, nor of their thefts.

REVELATION TEN

A mighty strong angel appears with a book open in his hand

1 And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow *was* upon his head, and his face *was* as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire: [Matt 17:2](#); [Rev 1:15](#);

2 And he had in his hand a little book open: and he set his right foot upon the sea, and *his* left *foot* on the earth,

3 And cried with a loud voice, as *when* a lion roareth: and when he had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices.

4 And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write: and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered, and write them not. [Dan 8:26](#); [Dan 12:4](#);

5 And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, [Dan 12:7](#);

He swears by him that lives for ever, that there shall be no more time

6 And swore by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be time no longer: [Rev 11:15](#); [\[2Chr 2:12\]](#);

7 But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of Elohim should be finished, as he has declared to his servants the prophets.

8 And the voice which I heard from heaven spoke unto me again, and said, Go *and* take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth.

John is commanded to take and eat the book

9 And I went unto the angel, and said unto him, Give me the little book. And he said unto me, Take *it*, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey. [Ezek 3:1](#); [\[Ezek 2:8\]](#);

10 And I took the little book out of the angel's hand, and ate it up; and it was in my mouth sweet as honey: and as soon as I had eaten it, my belly was bitter. [\[Ezek 3:3\]](#);

11 And he said unto me, you must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues, and kings.

REVELATION ELEVEN

The two witnesses prophesy

1 And there was given me a reed like unto a rod: and was told, Rise, and measure the temple of Elohim, and the altar, and count them that worship therein. [Ezek 40:3-49](#); [Ezek 41:1-26](#); [Ezek 42:1-20](#); [Ezek 43:1-27](#);

2 But the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty *and* two months. [Rev 13:5](#);

3 And I will give *power* unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred *and* threescore days, clothed in sackcloth. [\[Rev 12:6\]](#);

4 These are the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the Elohim of the earth. [Zech 4:3](#); [Zech 4:14](#);

5 And if any man will hurt them, fire proceedeth out of their mouth, and devoureth their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed.

They have power to shut heaven, that it rain not

6 These have power to shut heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will. [1Kgs 17:1](#); [Exod 7:1-25](#); [Exod 8:1-32](#); [Exod 9:1-35](#); [Exod 10:1-29](#); [Exod 12:1-51](#);

The beast shall fight against them, and kill them

7 And when they shall have finished their testimony, the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them. [Dan 7:21](#); [Rev 13:7](#); [Rev 13:11](#);

They lie unburied

8 And their dead bodies *shall lie* in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified. [Rev 7:2](#); [Rev 7:5](#); [Rev 18:10](#);

9 And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and a half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves.

10 And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth.

and after three and a half days rise again

11 And after three days and a half the Spirit of life from Elohim entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them.

12 And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, Come up hither. And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them.

13 And the same hour was there a great earthquake, and the tenth part of the city fell, and in the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand: and the remnant were frightened, and gave glory to the Elohim of heaven.

The second woe is past

14 The second woe is past; *and*, behold, the third woe cometh quickly. [Rev 8:13](#); [Rev 9:12](#); [Rev 15:1](#);

The seventh trumpet sounds

15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become *the kingdoms* of our Lord, and of his the Messiah; and he shall reign for ever and ever. [\[Rev 10:6\]](#);

16 And the four and twenty elders, which sat before Elohim on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped Elohim,

17 Saying, We give you thanks, O Lord Elohim Almighty, which are, and wast, and are to come; because you have taken to you thy great power, and have reigned. [Rev 1:4](#); [Rev 1:8](#); [Rev 4:8](#); [Rev 16:5](#); [\[Rev 19:6\]](#);

18 And the nations were angry, and thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that you should give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and them that fear thy name, small and great; and should destroy them which destroy the earth.

19 And the temple of Elohim was opened in heaven, and there was seen in his temple the ark of his testament: and there were lightnings, and voices, and thunderings, and an earthquake, and great hail.
[Rev 15:5](#); [\[Rev 16:21\]](#);

REVELATION TWELVE

A woman clothed with the sun travails

1 And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars:

2 And she being with child cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered.

3 And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.

The great red dragon stands before her, ready to devour her child

4 And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.

5 And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto Elohim, and *to* his throne. [Ps 2:9](#); [Rev 2:27](#);

when she is delivered she flees into the wilderness

6 And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared of Elohim, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred *and* threescore days. [Rev 11:3](#); [[Rev 12:14](#)];

Michael and his angels fight with the dragon, and prevail

7 And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, [[Jude 1:9](#)];

8 And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. [Dan 2:35](#); [[Luke 10:18](#)];

9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. [Luke 10:18](#); [Rev 20:2](#);

10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our Elohim, and the power of his the Messiah: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our Elohim day and night.

11 And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.

12 Therefore rejoice, you heavens, and you that dwell in them. Woe to the earth and the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he has but a short time. [Ps 96:11](#); [Isa 49:13](#); [Rev 8:13](#);

The dragon, being cast down into the earth, persecutes the woman

13 And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man *child*. [[Gen 3:13](#)];

14 And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent. [Rev 2:6](#); [Rev 12:6](#);

15 And the serpent cast out of his mouth water as a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away of the flood.

16 And the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed up the flood which the dragon cast out of his mouth.

17 And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of Elohim, and have the testimony of Yahushua the Messiah.

A beast rises out of the sea with seven heads and ten horns, to whom the dragon gives his power

1 And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy. [Dan 7:20](#); [Rev 17:3](#); [\[Rev 17:9\]](#); [\[Rev 17:12\]](#);

2 And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as *the feet* of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

3 And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast. [\[Rev 13:12\]](#);

4 And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who *is* like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? [Rev 18:18](#);

5 And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to make war forty *and* two months. [Rev 11:2](#);

6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against Elohim, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.

7 And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations. [Dan 7:21](#); [Rev 11:7](#);

8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world. [Exod 32:33](#); [Phil 4:3](#); [Rev 3:5](#); [Rev 20:12](#); [Rev 21:27](#); [Rev 17:8](#); [\[Rev 22:19\]](#);

9 If any man have an ear, let him hear.

10 He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints. [Gen 9:6](#); [Matt 26:52](#); [Rev 14:12](#);

Another beast comes out of the earth

11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke as a dragon. [Rev 11:7](#);

12 And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed. [Rev 19:20](#); [Rev 13:3](#); [\[Rev 20:4\]](#);

13 And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men, [2Thess 2:9](#); [Rev 16:14](#);

causes an image to be made of the former beast

14 And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by *the means of* those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live. [Deut 13:1](#); [Matt 24:24](#); [Rev 16:14](#); [Rev 19:20](#); [\[Rev 16:2\]](#);

and that men should worship it

15 And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. [Rev 19:20](#); [\[Rev 20:4\]](#);

and receive his mark

16 And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: [Rev 19:20](#); [\[Rev 16:2\]](#); [\[Rev 20:4\]](#);

17 And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name. [Rev 14:11](#);

18 Here is wisdom. Let him that has understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number *is* Six hundred threescore *and* six. [Rev 17:9](#);

REVELATION FOURTEEN

The Lamb standing on mount Sion with his company

- 1** And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him a hundred forty *and* four thousand, having his name and his Father's name written in their foreheads. [Rev 7:4](#);
- 2** And I heard a voice from heaven, as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great thunder: and I heard the voice of harpers harping with their harps: [Rev 1:15](#); [Rev 5:8](#);
- 3** And they sung as it were a new song before the throne, and before the four beasts, and the elders: and no man could learn that song but the hundred *and* forty *and* four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth. [Rev 5:9](#); [\[Ps 33:3\]](#);
- 4** These are they who were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they who follow the Lamb wherever He goes. These were redeemed from among men, as firstfruits unto Elohim and to the Lamb. [2Cor 11:2](#);
- 5** And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault. [Zeph 3:13](#); [Eph 5:27](#);

An angel preaches the gospel

- 6** And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people,
- 7** Saying with a loud voice, Fear Elohim, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters. [Gen 1:1](#); [Ps 33:6](#); [Ps 124:8](#); [Ps 146:6](#); [Acts 14:15](#); [Acts 17:24](#); [\[Neh 9:6\]](#);

The fall of Babylon

- 8** And there followed another angel, saying, Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication. [Isa 21:9](#); [Jer 51:8](#); [Rev 18:2](#); [Rev 16:19](#); [Rev 17:5](#); [Rev 18:10](#); [Rev 18:21](#); [\[Isa 25:2\]](#); [\[Rev 18:3\]](#);
- 9** And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive *his* mark in his forehead, or in his hand,
- 10** The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of Elohim, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: [Rev 18:6](#); [Rev 16:19](#); [Rev 20:10](#); [Rev 19:20](#);
- 11** And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. [Rev 19:3](#); [\[Isa 34:10\]](#); [\[Rev 13:17\]](#);
- 12** Here is the patience of the saints: here *are* they that keep the commandments of Elohim, and the faith of Yahushua. [Rev 13:10](#);
- 13** And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed *are* the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: yes, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them.
- 14** And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud *one* sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle. [Ezek 1:26](#); [Dan 7:13](#); [Rev 1:13](#); [\[Ps 104:3\]](#); [\[Ps 110:6\]](#);

The harvest of the world

- 15** And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for you to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe. [Joel 3:13](#); [Matt 13:39](#);
- 16** And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped.
- 17** And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle.
- 18** And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe.

19 And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast *it* into the great winepress of the wrath of Elohim. [Rev 19:15](#);

The winepress of the wrath of Elohim

20 And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand *and* six hundred furlongs. [Isa 63:3](#);

REVELATION FIFTEEN

The seven angels with the seven last plagues

1 And I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvellous, seven angels having the seven last plagues; for in them is filled up the wrath of Elohim. [Rev 11:14](#);

2 And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, *and* over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of Elohim. [Rev 4:6](#);

The song of them that overcame the beast

3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of Elohim, and the song of the Lamb, saying, Great and marvellous *are* thy works, Lord Elohim Almighty; just and true *are* thy ways, you King of the nations. [Ps 111:2](#); [Ps 139:14](#); [Ps 145:17](#); [\[2Sam 22:31\]](#); [\[Rev 16:7\]](#); [\[Rev 19:2\]](#);

4 Who shall not fear you, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for you only are holy: for all nations shall come and worship before you; for thy judgments are made manifest. [Jer 10:7](#);

5 And after that I looked, and, behold, the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened: [Rev 11:19](#);

6 And the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and having their breasts girded with golden girdles. [Rev 1:13](#); [\[Rev 21:9\]](#);

The seven vials full of the wrath of Elohim

7 And one of the four beasts gave unto the seven angels seven golden vials full of the wrath of Elohim, who liveth for ever and ever.

8 And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of Elohim, and from his power; and no man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled. [Exod 40:34](#); [1Kgs 8:10](#); [Isa 6:4](#);

REVELATION SIXTEEN

The angels pour out their vials of wrath

1 And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels, Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of Elohim upon the earth.

2 And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and *upon* them which worshipped his image. [Exod 9:9-11](#); [Rev 13:16-17](#); [Rev 13:14](#);

3 And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead *man*: and every living being died in the sea. [Exod 7:20](#);

4 And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became blood.

5 And I heard the angel of the waters say, you are righteous, O Lord, which are, and wast, and shall be, because you have judged thus. [Rev 1:4](#); [Rev 1:8](#); [Rev 4:8](#); [Rev 11:17](#);

The plagues that follow

6 For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and you have given them blood to drink; for they are worthy. [Matt 23:34](#); [\[Isa 49:26\]](#);

7 And I heard the altar say, Even so, Lord Elohim Almighty, true and righteous *are* thy judgments. [Rev 15:3](#); [\[Rev 19:2\]](#);

8 And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire.

9 And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of Elohim, which has power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory. [Rev 16:11](#); [Rev 16:21](#);

10 And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain,

11 And blasphemed the Elohim of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds. [\[Rev 16:9\]](#); [\[Rev 16:21\]](#);

12 And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared.

13 And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs *come* out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet.

14 For they are the spirits of demons, working miracles, *which* go forth unto the kings of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of Elohim Almighty. [2Thess 2:9](#); [Rev 13:13](#); [Rev 19:20](#); [Rev 17:14](#); [Rev 19:19](#); [Rev 20:8](#); [\[Ps 110:6\]](#); [\[Rev 13:14\]](#); [\[Rev 20:3\]](#);

the Messiah comes as a thief. Blessed are they that watch

15 Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed *is* he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame. [Matt 24:43](#); [Luke 12:39](#); [1Thess 5:2](#); [2Pet 3:10](#); [Rev 3:3](#); [Rev 3:18](#); [\[Luke 21:35\]](#); [\[2Cor 5:3\]](#);

16 And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon. [\[Rev 20:3\]](#);

17 And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done. [Rev 21:6](#);

18 And there were voices, and thunders, and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, *and* so great. [Rev 4:5](#); [Rev 8:5](#);

19 And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon came in remembrance before Elohim, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. [Rev 14:8](#); [Rev 18:5](#); [Jer 25:15](#); [Rev 14:10](#); [\[Rev 17:18\]](#);

20 And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found.

21 And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, *every stone* about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed Elohim because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great. [Rev 11:19](#); [Rev 16:9](#); [Rev 16:11](#);

A woman arrayed in purple and scarlet, with a golden cup in her hand sits upon the beast

- 1** And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will show unto you the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters:
- 2** With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication. [Rev 18:3](#); [\[Rev 18:9\]](#);
- 3** So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns. [Rev 17:8](#); [Rev 13:1](#);
- 4** And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: [Rev 18:16](#);

which is great Babylon, the mother of all abominations

- 5** And upon her forehead *was* a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH. [2Thess 2:7](#); [\[Rev 14:8\]](#);
- 6** And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Yahushua: and when I saw her, I was greatly astonished. [Rev 18:24](#);
- 7** And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst you marvel? I will tell you the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which has the seven heads and ten horns.
- 8** The beast that you sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is. [Exod 32:32](#); [Phil 4:3](#); [Rev 13:8](#); [\[Rev 9:1\]](#); [\[Rev 17:3\]](#); [\[Rev 22:19\]](#);

The interpretation of the seven heads

- 9** And here *is* the mind which has wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth. [Rev 13:18](#); [Rev 13:1](#);
- 10** And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, *and* the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.
- 11** And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goes into perdition.

and the ten horns

- 12** And the ten horns which you sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast. [Dan 7:20](#); [Rev 13:1](#);
- 13** These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast.

The victory of the Lamb

- 14** These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him *are* called, and chosen, and faithful. [Rev 16:14](#); [1Tim 6:15](#); [Rev 19:16](#); [\[Deut 10:17\]](#);
- 15** And he saith unto me, The waters which you sawest, where the whore sitteth, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues. [Isa 8:7](#);

The punishment of the whore

- 16** And the ten horns which you sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire. [Rev 18:8](#);
- 17** For Elohim has put in their hearts to fulfil his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of Elohim shall be fulfilled.

18 And the woman which you sawest is that great city, which reigneth over the kings of the earth. [Rev](#)
[16:19](#);

Babylon is fallen

1 And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory.

2 And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of demons, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. [Isa 21:9](#); [Jer 51:8](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [Isa 13:21](#); [Isa 34:14](#); [Jer 50:39](#); [Isa 34:11](#); [[Isa 25:2](#)];

3 For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies. [Rev 14:8](#); [Rev 17:2](#); [[Rev 18:9](#)];

People commanded to depart out of her

4 And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that you be not partakers of her sins, and that you receive not of her plagues. [Gen 19:12](#); [Isa 48:20](#); [Isa 52:11](#); [Jer 51:6](#); [Jer 51:45](#); [2Cor 6:17](#); [[Jer 50:8](#)];

5 For her sins have reached unto heaven, and Elohim has remembered her iniquities. [Rev 16:19](#);

6 Reward her even as she rewarded you, and double unto her double according to her works: in the cup which she has filled fill to her double. [Rev 14:10](#); [[Num 25:18](#)]; [[Ps 137:8](#)];

7 How much she has glorified herself, and lived deliciously, so much torment and sorrow give her: for she saith in her heart, I sit a queen, and am no widow, and shall see no sorrow. [Isa 47:8](#); [[Isa 47:7](#)];

8 Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine; and she shall be utterly burned with fire: for strong *is* the Lord Elohim who judgeth her. [2Thess 2:8](#); [Rev 17:16](#);

The kings of the earth, with the merchants and mariners, lament over her

9 And the kings of the earth, who have committed fornication and lived deliciously with her, shall bewail her, and lament for her, when they shall see the smoke of her burning, [Rev 18:3](#); [Rev 17:2](#); [Rev 18:18](#); [[Ezek 26:17](#)]; [[Ezek 27:27](#)];

10 Standing afar off for the fear of her torment, saying, Alas, alas, that great city Babylon, that mighty city! for in one hour is thy judgment come. [Isa 21:9](#); [Jer 51:1](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [[Rev 11:8](#)];

11 And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her; for no man buyeth their merchandise any more:

12 The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and of pearls, and fine linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet, and all thyine wood, and all manner vessels of ivory, and all manner vessels of most precious wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble,

13 And cinnamon, and odours, and ointments, and frankincense, and wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat, and beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots, and slaves, and beings of men. [Ezek 27:13](#);

14 And the fruits that thy being lusted after are departed from you, and all things which were dainty and goodly are departed from you, and you shall find them no more at all.

15 The merchants of these things, which were made rich by her, shall stand afar off for the fear of her torment, weeping and wailing,

16 And saying, Alas, alas, that great city, that was clothed in fine linen, and purple, and scarlet, and decked with gold, and precious stones, and pearls! [Rev 17:4](#);

17 For in one hour so great riches is come to nought. And every shipmaster, and all the company in ships, and sailors, and as many as trade by sea, stood afar off, [[Ps 107:23](#)];

18 And cried when they saw the smoke of her burning, saying, What *city is* like unto this great city! [Rev 18:9](#); [Isa 34:10](#); [Rev 13:4](#); [[Rev 19:3](#)];

19 And they cast dust on their heads, and cried, weeping and wailing, saying, Alas, alas, that great city, wherein were made rich all that had ships in the sea by reason of her costliness! for in one hour is she made desolate.

The saints rejoice for the judgments of Elohim upon her

20 Rejoice over her, you heaven, and you holy saints and apostles and prophets; for Elohim has avenged you on her. [Rev 19:2](#);

21 And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast *it* into the sea, saying, Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all. [Jer 51:64](#); [[Rev 14:8](#)];

22 And the voice of harpers, and musicians, and of pipers, and trumpeters, shall be heard no more at all in you; and no craftsman, of whatsoever craft *he be*, shall be found any more in you; and the sound of a millstone shall be heard no more at all in you; [Jer 25:10](#); [Ezek 26:13](#);

23 And the light of a candle shall shine no more at all in you; and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride shall be heard no more at all in you: for thy merchants were the great men of the earth; for by thy sorceries were all nations deceived. [Jer 7:34](#); [Jer 16:9](#); [Jer 25:10](#);

24 And in her was found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth. [Rev 17:6](#);

Elohim is praised in heaven for judging the great whore, and avenging the blood of his saints

1 And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying, Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our Elohim: [\[Ps 3:8\]](#);

2 For true and righteous *are* his judgments: for he has judged the great whore, which did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and has avenged the blood of his servants at her hand. [Rev 15:3](#); [Rev 16:7](#); [Deut 32:43](#); [Rev 18:20](#);

3 And again they said, Alleluia. And her smoke rose up for ever and ever. [Isa 34:10](#); [Rev 14:11](#); [Rev 18:18](#);

4 And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped Elohim that sat on the throne, saying, Amen; Alleluia.

5 And a voice came out of the throne, saying, Praise our Elohim, all you his servants, and you that fear him, both small and great.

6 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord Elohim omnipotent reigneth. [Rev 11:17](#);

The marriage of the Lamb

7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife has made herself ready. [Matt 22:2](#); [Luke 14:16](#);

8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. [\[Rev 3:18\]](#);

9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed *are* they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of Elohim. [Rev 21:5](#); [\[Luke 14:16\]](#); [\[Rev 22:6\]](#);

The angel will not be worshipped

10 And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See you *do it* not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Yahushua: worship Elohim: for the testimony of Yahushua is the spirit of prophecy. [Rev 22:8](#); [Acts 10:26](#); [Acts 14:14](#); [Rev 22:9](#); [\[Acts 14:15\]](#); [\[Rev 6:9\]](#);

11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him *was* called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he judges and makes war. [Rev 6:2](#); [\[Ps 96:13\]](#);

12 His eyes *were* as a flame of fire, and on his head *were* many crowns; having titles written and he had a title written, that no man knew, but he himself. [Rev 1:14](#);

13 And he *was* clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of Elohim. [Isa 63:1](#); [John 1:1](#); [1John 1:1](#); [\[Isa 63:2\]](#);

14 And the armies *which were* in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. [Matt 28:3](#); [Rev 4:4](#); [Rev 7:9](#);

15 And out of his mouth goes a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty Elohim. [Rev 19:21](#); [Rev 2:16](#); [Ps 2:9](#); [Rev 2:27](#); [Isa 63:3](#); [Rev 14:19-20](#); [\[Rev 1:16\]](#); [\[Rev 14:19\]](#);

16 And he has on *his* vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND YAHWEH OF LORDS. [1Tim 6:15](#); [Rev 17:14](#);

The fowls called to the great slaughter

17 And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the great supper of Elohim; [Jer 12:9](#); [Ezek 39:17](#);

18 That you may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all *men*, both free and bond, both small and great.

19 And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army. [\[Rev 16:14\]](#);

20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone. [Deut 13:1](#); [Matt 24:24](#); [Rev 13:12-13](#); [Rev 16:14](#); [Rev 13:16](#); [Rev 13:15](#); [Dan 7:11](#); [Rev 20:10](#); [Rev 14:10](#); [[Matt 25:41](#)]; [[Rev 13:12](#)]; [[Rev 13:14](#)];

21 And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which *sword* proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh. [\[Rev 19:15\]](#);

Satan bound for a thousand years

1 And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. [Rev 1:18](#);

2 And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, [2Pet 2:4](#); [Rev 12:9](#);

3 And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season. [Rev 20:8](#); [Rev 16:14](#); [Rev 16:16](#); [[2Pet 2:4](#)];

4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and *I saw* the beings of them that were beheaded for the witness of Yahushua, and for the word of Elohim, and had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received *his* mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with the Messiah a thousand years. [Rev 6:10](#); [Rev 6:9](#); [Rev 13:12](#); [Rev 13:15](#); [Rev 13:16](#); [Rev 6:11](#);

5 (But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished.) This *is* the first resurrection.

The first resurrection; they blessed that have part therein

6 Blessed and holy *is* he that has part in the first resurrection: on such the second death has no power, but they shall be priests of Elohim and of the Messiah, and shall reign with him a thousand years. [Isa 61:6](#); [1Pet 2:9](#); [Rev 1:6](#); [Rev 5:10](#);

Satan let loose again

7 And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison,

Gog and Magog

8 And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom *is* as the sand of the sea. [Ezek 38:2](#); [Ezek 39:1](#); [Rev 16:14](#); [[Ps 110:6](#)]; [[Rev 20:3](#)];

9 And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from Elohim out of heaven, and devoured them.

The devils cast into the lake of fire and brimstone

10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are too, and they shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever. [Dan 7:11](#); [Rev 19:20](#); [Rev 14:10](#);

11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.

The last and general resurrection

12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before Elohim; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is *the book* of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. [Exod 32:32](#); [Ps 69:28](#); [Phil 4:3](#); [Rev 3:5](#); [Rev 21:27](#); [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Gal 6:5](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [[Dan 7:10](#)]; [[1Cor 4:5](#)]; [[Rev 13:8](#)];

13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.

14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. [[Rev 21:8](#)];

15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

A new heaven and a new earth

1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. [Isa 65:17](#); [Isa 66:22](#); [2Pet 3:13](#);

2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from Elohim out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. [Rev 21:10](#); [Rev 3:12](#); [[Gal 4:26](#)];

3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of Elohim *is* with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and Elohim himself shall be with them. [Ezek 43:7](#); [[Exod 29:45](#)];

4 And Elohim shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. [Isa 25:8](#); [Rev 7:17](#); [[Isa 35:10](#)];

5 And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful. [Isa 43:19](#); [2Cor 5:17](#); [Rev 19:9](#); [[Rev 22:6](#)];

6 And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely. [Rev 16:17](#); [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Rev 1:8](#); [Rev 22:13](#); [Isa 55:1](#);

7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his Elohim, and he shall be my son. [Zech 8:8](#); [Heb 8:10](#);

8 But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death. [Rev 22:15](#); [Rev 20:14-15](#);

9 And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will show you the bride, the Lamb's wife. [Rev 15:6-7](#);

The heavenly Jerusalem, with a full description thereof

10 And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from Elohim, [Rev 1:10](#); [Rev 21:2](#); [Heb 12:22](#); [[Rev 3:12](#)];

11 Having the glory of Elohim: and her light *was* like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal;

12 And had a wall great and high, *and* had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are *the names* of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel:

13 On the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates.

14 And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. [Eph 2:20](#);

15 And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof. [Ezek 40:3](#); [Zech 2:1](#);

16 And the city lies foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs. The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal.

17 And he measured the wall thereof, a hundred *and* forty *and* four cubits, *according to* the measure of a man, that is, of the angel.

18 And the building of the wall of it was *of* jasper: and the city *was* pure gold, like unto clear glass.

19 And the foundations of the wall of the city *were* garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation *was* jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, a chalcedony; the fourth, an emerald;

20 The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, a chrysoprasus; the eleventh, a jacinth; the twelfth, an amethyst.

21 And the twelve gates *were* twelve pearls; every several gate was of one pearl: and the street of the city *was* pure gold, as it were transparent glass.

22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord Elohim Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

She needs no sun, the glory of Elohim being her light

23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of Elohim did lighten it, and the Lamb *is* the light thereof. [Isa 60:19](#); [Zech 14:7](#); [Rev 22:5](#); [[Ps 27:1](#)];

The kings of the earth bring their riches unto her

24 And the nations of them which are saved shall walk by means of its light: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. [Isa 60:3](#);

25 And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there. [Isa 60:11](#); [Rev 22:5](#); [[Zech 14:7](#)];

26 And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.

27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither *whatsoever* worketh abomination, or *maketh* a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life. [Exod 32:32](#); [Ps 69:28](#); [Phil 4:3](#); [Rev 3:5](#); [Rev 20:12](#); [[Joel 3:17](#)]; [[Zech 14:21](#)]; [[Rev 13:8](#)];

The river of the water of life

1 And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of Elohim and of the Lamb. [Ezek 47:1](#); [Zech 14:8](#);

The tree of life

2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, *was there* the tree of life, which bore twelve *manner of* fruits, *and* yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree *are* for the healing of the nations. [Rev 2:7](#); [\[Ezek 47:7\]](#); [\[Ezek 47:12\]](#);

3 And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of Elohim and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him:

4 And they shall see his face; and his name *shall be* in their foreheads. [Rev 3:12](#);

The light of the city of Elohim is himself

5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord Elohim giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever. [Isa 60:19](#); [Zech 14:7](#); [Rev 21:23](#); [\[Rev 21:25\]](#);

6 And he said unto me, These sayings *are* faithful and true: and the Lord Elohim of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. [Rev 19:9](#); [Rev 21:5](#); [Rev 1:1](#);

7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed *is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book*. [Rev 1:3](#);

8 And I John saw these things, and heard *them*. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. [\[Rev 19:10\]](#);

The angel will not be worshipped

9 Then saith he unto me, See you *do it* not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship Elohim. [Acts 10:26](#); [Acts 14:14](#); [Rev 19:10](#); [\[Acts 14:15\]](#);

10 And he saith unto me, Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand. [Dan 8:26](#); [Dan 12:4](#); [Rev 1:3](#);

11 He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous, let him be righteous still: and he that is holy, let him be holy still.

12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward *is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be*. [Ps 62:12](#); [Jer 17:10](#); [Jer 32:19](#); [Matt 16:27](#); [Rom 2:6](#); [Rom 14:12](#); [1Cor 3:8](#); [2Cor 5:10](#); [Gal 6:5](#); [Rev 2:23](#); [\[Job 34:11\]](#); [\[Prov 24:12\]](#);

13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. [Rev 1:8](#); [Rev 21:6](#); [Isa 41:4](#); [Isa 44:6](#); [Isa 48:12](#);

14 Blessed *are* they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.

15 For without *are* dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie. [1Cor 6:10](#); [Eph 5:5](#); [Col 3:5-6](#); [\[Zech 14:21\]](#); [\[Gal 5:21\]](#); [\[Col 3:6\]](#); [\[Rev 21:8\]](#);

16 I Yahushua have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, *and the bright and morning star*. [Rev 1:1](#); [Isa 11:10](#); [Rom 5:12](#); [Rev 5:5](#); [2Pet 1:1](#); [\[Rom 15:12\]](#); [\[2Pet 1:19\]](#);

17 And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely. [Isa 55:1](#); [John 7:37](#); [\[Song 8:14\]](#);

Nothing may be added to the word of Elohim, nor taken therefrom

18 For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, Elohim shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: [\[Deut 4:2\]](#); [\[Deut 12:32\]](#); [\[Prov 30:6\]](#);

19 And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, Elohim shall take away his share in the tree of life, and in the holy city, and *from* the things which are written in this book. [Deut 4:2](#); [Deut 12:32](#); [Prov 30:6](#); [Rev 13:8](#); [Rev 17:8](#);

20 He which testifieth these things saith, **Surely I come quickly.** Amen. Even so, come, Lord Yahushua.
[\[Song 8:14\];](#)

21 The grace of our Lord Yahushua the Messiah *be* with all the saints. Amen.